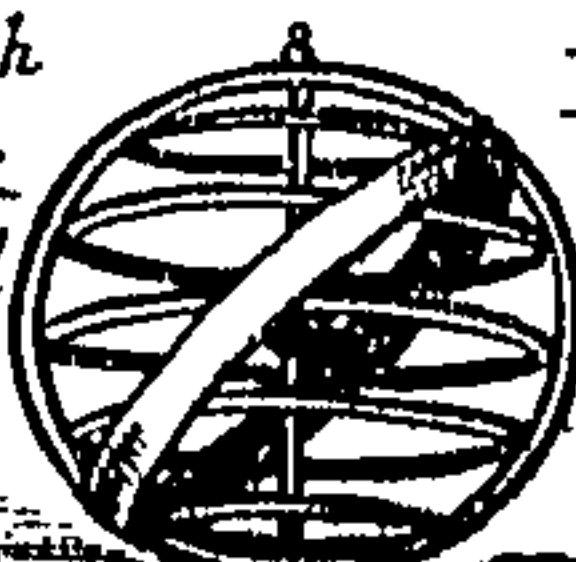




COSMOGRAPHY.
in foure Bookes
Contayning the
CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORY
of the whole **WORLD**, and all
the Principall Kingdomes,
Provinces, Countries,
Isles, Seas, &c.
By **Peter Heylyn**
Virgil Aeneid;

Quae regio in terris nostri non plena laboris

The 7th
corrected &
by Edmund



Edition
Enlarged
Bohun Esq.

LONDON
Printed for Edw. Brewster,
Rich. Chiswell, Benj. A. Cooke,
Tho. Hodgskin, & Tho. Bennet,
1703.

COSMOGRAPHY

IN

FOUR BOOKS.

CONTAINING THE

Chorography and History

OF THE WHOLE

WORLD:

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and
the Isles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN*, D. D.

Improv'd with an Historical Continuation to the Present Times,
By *EDMUND BOHUN*, Esq;

With a large and more Accurate INDEX, than was in any of
the former Editions, of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants,
Peoples, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Islands, Forts, Bays, Capes, Fo-
rests, &c. of any Remarque in the whole World: Revised and cleared from
a multitude of Mistakes, which had crept into former Impressions.

AND

Five New-Engrav'd MAPS, according to the best and most exact Projection.

P^r-^r_n mb

Act. xvii. 24, 26.

*Deus qui fecit mundum & omnia quæ in eo sunt;----- fecit ex uno omne genus
hominum, inhabitare super universam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos
habitationis eorum.*

Plin. in Proœm. l. 7.

*MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Maria, Insulæ, insignes Urbes, ad hunc
modum se habent.*

L O N D O N,

Printed for *Edw. Brewster, Ric. Chiswell, Benj. Tooke, Tho. Hodgkin, and
Tho. Bennet.* MDCCIII.

T O T H E

R E A D E R.

*The AUTHOR rendreth this Account of his
Undertaking and Performance in the following
WORK.*

IT is a great complaint with many, That they want Time, either to undertake great Matters, or to accomplish those they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by *Seneca*, that we do not so much want, as waste it: *Non parum temporis habemus, sed multum perdimus*, as that Author hath it. We trifle out too much of our precious time, as he well observeth, *Aut male agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo*; either in doing ill, or nothing, or else things impertinent: and then cry out, that we want time convenient to perform those Duties which are expected from us in our several places. Nor have we only time enough to spend, but some time to spare; some privacies and retreats from Business; some breathing fits from the Affairs of our *Vocations*: and even of them (those times of leisure and recess) we are to render an account, in *Cato's* Judgment; *Otiū reddendam rationem judicabat Cato*, as we read in *Tully*. In which accompt, as all Men generally are concerned, so am I interessed therein as much as any. For being, by the unhappiness of my Destiny, or the infelicity of the Times, deprived of my Preferments, and divested of my Ministerial Function, (as to the ordinary and publick exercise thereof) I cannot chuse but say, I have leisure enough; the opportunity of spending more idle Hours (if I were so minded) than I ever expected or desir'd. And though, perhaps, I could have spent those times of leisure, which the change of my Affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my self, and more to the advantage of my private Fortunes, yet that of *Cato* did so over-balance me, that I was willing to do somewhat which might witness to ensuing Times, how I had passed away those Hours, and employed that Leisure. And when I was considering of some particulars within the compass of my Power, and answerable to that small stock of Books which I had recruited, (mine own being taken from me, and disposed of, contrary unto publick Order,) I was requested by some Friends,

of no common Quality, to review my *Geography*; to make it more compleat and useful to an *English Reader*; my vacancy from business used by them as an Argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when first made, with neglect enough; my desuetude from those younger Studies, my great want of Books, the sad complexion of the Times, and the unhandsome entertainment which my Endeavours for the Publick had lately met with, seeming sufficient to dissuade me from the Undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to enjoy my own; or to employ my self in order to a *Publick Service*, when not alone my private Fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church, was destroyed and dissipated. But afterwards, being pressed unto it by some Members of Parliament, whom I found loth to be denied, and by some others of great Rank, but such different *Interesses*, that I wondred how they could all center upon the same *Proposal*: I thought it, at the last, a more *Christian Duty*, to satisfy the honest desires of so many Men, than to sacrifice any longer to my own Privacy and Retiredness, to which I had intended to devote my self. So I resolved to venture on it, though well I saw that my condition in so doing might be resembled unto that of the *Israelites* in the Land of *Egypt*, of whom the *Task-Masters* did expect the full tale of *Bricks*, and yet denied them their accustomed allowance of *Straw* and *Stubble*. My case, in this, not much unlike unto that of the Duke of *Alva*, who being under the displeasure of the King of *Spain*, in quality of a Prisoner, without the least assurance of recovering the King's favour, or his own Liberty; and yet employed, in that Conjuncture, for the Conquest of *Portugal*, was wont to say, *That he was sent to Conquer Kingdoms with his Fetters on*.

And here I cannot but remember a pretty Accident which betel me in the Month of *January*, *An. 1640.* at what time it had been my ill fortune to suffer under some misapprehensions
A
which

which had been entertain'd against me, and to be brought before the *Committee for the Courts of Justice*, on the complaint of Mr. *Prynne*, then newly return'd from his Confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them, I confess, I was, with a great deal of ingenuous patience; but most despihtfully reviled and persecuted with excessive both noise and violence, by such as thronged about the Doors of that *Committee*, to expect the Issue: it being as natural to many weak and inconsiderate Men, as it is to Dogs, to bark at those they do not know, and to accompany each other in those kinds of Clamours. And though I had the happiness to come off clear, without any censure, and to recover by degrees, amongst knowing Men, that estimation which before had been much endangered, yet such as took up Matters upon trust and hear-say, looked on me as a Person forfeited and marked out for ruine. Amongst others, I was then encountred, in my passage from *Westminster* to *White-Hall*, by a tall big Gentleman, who thrusting me rudely from the Wall, and looking over his Shoulder on me in a scornful manner, said, in a hoarse Voice, these words, *Geography is better than Divinity*; and so passed along. Whether his meaning were, That I was a better *Geographer* than *Divine*; or that *Geography* had been a Study of more credit and advantage to me in the eyes of Men, than *Divinity* was like to prove, I am not able to determine. But sure I am, I have since thought very often of it; and that the thought thereof had its influence on me, in drawing me to look back on those younger Studies, in which I was resolved to have dealt no more: and thereto in the Preface to my *Microcosm*, had obliged my self.

And it is possible enough, that, in respect of that general Promise, I may lie under the censure of Inconstancy, and breach of Covenant, in that I had solemnly declared in the aforesaid Preface, that the Reader should not fear any further enlargements, which might make him repent his (then) present Markets; that it had receiv'd my last hand; and that from thenceforth I would look upon it as a Stranger only. But it was meant withal, and expressed accordingly, unless it were for the amending of such Errors, of which, by the strength of my own judgment, or any ingenious information, I should be convicted. And Errors, I must needs say, I have found so many on this last perusal, and those not only verbal, but material too, as did not only free me from that Obligation, but did oblige me to a further Review thereof. For being written in an Age on which the pride of Youth, and Self-opinion, might have some predominancies; I thought it freer from Mistakes, than I since have found it. And those Mistakes, by running through eight Editions, (six of them without my perusal or supervising) so increased and multiplied, that I could no longer call it mine, or look upon it with any tolerable degree of patience. So that in case the importunity of Friends had not inforced me, in a manner, upon this imployment, the necessity

of consulting my own Fame, and leaving the Work fair behind me, to succeeding Times, would have perswaded me, in the end, to do somewhat in it. Which, though the last, was not the least of those inducements which inclined me to the undertaking of this present Work.

Having thus plainly and ingenuously laid down the Reasons which did induce, though not encourage me unto this performance; it is now fit I should declare what I have done in it, and what the Reader may expect from so great Enlargements. And first, the Reader is to know, that my design originally, was only to look over the former Book, to give it a Review, to purge it of the Errors which it had contracted; and not so much to make a new Book, as correct the old. But when I had more seriously considered of it, I found sufficient reason to change that purpose, to make it new both in Form and Matter; and to present it to the World with all those advantages which a new Book might carry with it. The greater pains I took about it, the greater I conceived would be the benefit which might from thence redound to those who should please to read it. And I would willingly so fain comply with all expectations, that the short Taper of my Life should give light to others, in the consuming of it self. *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, may well become a *Christian's* Mouth, though an Heathen spake it. But if all Expectations be not satisfied in the compleateness of the Work, (as I fear they will not) I desire it may not be ascribed unto any neglect or fault of mine, but to the wants and difficulties which I was to struggle with. Books I had few to help my self with, of my own; nor live I near so rich a Clergy, (most of the Benefices of these parts being poor and mean) as to supply my self from them with such Commodities. The greatest helps I had, was from *Oxford-Library*; which, though but nine or ten Miles off from my present Dwelling; yet the charge and trouble of the Journey, with the loss of time, made my visits to that place less frequent; and consequently the neighbourhood thereof less useful to me, than the generality of the Design might well comport with. So that when all things are considered as they ought to be, it rather may be wondred at, by an equal Reader, how I could come to write so much, with so little helps, upon a Subject of such a large and diffused variety, than that in any part thereof I have writ too little. And to say truth, the Work so prospered in my Hand, and swelled so much above my thought and expectation, that I hope I may, with modesty enough, use those words of *Jacob*, *Voluntas Dei fuit, ut cito occurreret mihi quod volebam*; The Lord God brought it to me, as the *English* reads it.

In the pursuance of this Work, as I have taken on my self the parts of an *Historian* and *Geographer*, so have I not forgotten that I am an *English-man*; and, which is somewhat more, a *Church-man*. As an *Englishman*, I have been mindful, upon all occasions, to commit to Me-

mory

mory the noble Actions of my Country, exploited both by Sea and Land, in most parts of the World; and represented on the same *Theaters* upon which they were acted. And herein I have followed the Example of the great *Annalist*, *Baronius*; who pretending, in that great and laborious Work, a sincere History of the Church, and no more than so; yet tells the Pope, in his Epistle, that he principally did intend the same, *pro Sacrarum Traditionum Antiquitate, & Autoritate Romanæ Ecclesiæ*; to manifest therein the Antiquity of such Traditions, and for defence of that Authority and Power, which at this Day are taught and exercised in the Church of *Rome*. And so much I may also say of my self in this performance, though without any by design to abuse the Reader, That though the *History* and *Chorography* of the World be my principal business, yet I have apprehended every modest occasion of Recording the Heroick Acts of my Native Soil, and filing on the Registers of perpetual Fame, the Gallantry and brave Achievements of the People of *England*; exemplified in their many Victories and signal Services in *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, *Scotland*, *Belgium*; in *Palestine*, *Cyprus*, *Africa* and *America*, and indeed, where not? Nor have I pretermitted their great Zeal and Piety, in converting to the Faith so many of the *German* and Northern Nations, *Franconians*, *Thuringians*, *Hassians*, *Saxons*, *Danes*, *Frisons*; as also amongst the *Scots* and *Picts*; together with those of *Lithuania*, and the People of *Norway*; by that means more enlarging Christ's Kingdom, than they did their own. And as I have been zealous to Record the Actions, so have I been as careful to assert the Rights of the *English* Nation, inherent personally in their Kings, by way of publick Interest in the Subject also; as the whole Body doth partake of that sense and motion which is originally in the Head. And of this kind I reckon the true stating of the Title of the Kings of *England* to the Crown of *France*; demonstrating the Vassalage of the Kingdom of *Scotland* to the Crown of *England*; vouching the legal Interest of the *English* Nation, in right of the first Discovery of *Primier Seizure*, to *Estotiland*, *Terra Corterialis*, *New-found-Land*, *Novum Belgium*, *Guiana*, the Countries near the *Cape of good Hope*, several of the *Indian* Islands, and some other places, against all Pretenders: insinuating the precedency of the *English* Kings before those of *Spain*; their Sovereignty and Dominion in the *British* Ocean; with the great benefit which might from thence arise unto us, invaded and almost ingrossed by the *Hanse* and *Hollanders*. And yet there is another thing which speaks me more an *English-man*, than all these together; which I shall fall on soon enough, and indeed too soon, the sadness of the Subject being well considered.

Next, as a *Church-man*, I have taken more especial notice of the ancient and present face of *Christianity*, in all parts of the World; the planting and Government of Churches, the *He-*

terodoxies and Opinions of those several Sects into which it doth now stand dismembred. By which it will appear most clearly, amongst other things, that the Doctrine and Government of the Church, were of equal standing; that this Government was no other than that of *Bishops*; and that wheresoever *Christianity* did find any admittance, *Episcopacy* was admitted also as a part thereof; the Gospel being in most places first Preached by Bishops, or growing to esteem and strength under their Authority. And it is found on these *Researches*, that as *Episcopacy* was coeval with the Church it self, so the *Subordination* of *Bishops* to their several *Primates*, and the *Co-ordination* of those *Primates* among themselves in the common Government thereof, was of such antiquity (as being settled and confirmed in *St. Cyprian's* time, who flourished in the Year 255.) that it is hard to trace the beginnings of it. *Debere* *Episcopos in commune Ecclesiam regere*, is a noted *Maxim* in *St. Hierom*; but practically true in the *Communicatorie*, and *Formative*, of the Elder Ages: Which happy course, had it been preserved, *Episcopacy* had been so far from being made a *Stump* for Antichrist to mount into his Throne, as the *Smectymnians* falsely charge it, that it had served rather as a *Martingal* to have kept him down from lifting up his Head too high above the rest of his Brethren. And that this course was not preserved, came not intentionally from the Popes, (for that by *Antichrist* they mean the Popes of *Rome*, is a thing past question) but from the Inundations of the barbarous Nations; though I confess the Popes were apt enough to make the best advantage of those various Accidents which the distresses of the Church did present unto them. For by the overflowing of the barbarous Nations *Christianity* was either quite extinguished, or the Authority of the *Primates* trodden under foot; or that Intelligence and Commerce which had been anciently amongst them, interdicted on good reasons of State, by such *Heathen* or *Mahometan* Princes, under whom they lived. And then, how easie was it for the Pope, in the new planting of the Gospel in these Western parts, (done either by his Ministers, or by his encouragement) to give unto the Bishops of his own appointing, such a limited Power, as might make them more and more obnoxious unto his Commands, and afterwards to lessen their Authority, as he saw occasion, by granting large *Exemptions* to Monasteries, Convents, and Cathedrals; with *Jurisdiction* over the *Parochial* Churches which belonged unto them? So that it is most evident in the course of Story, that the Popes never came unto their height, nor could obtrude their Superstitions and Novations on the Church of *CHRIST*, till they had weakened, by degrees, the *Episcopal* Power. Followed, in that design, though on different ends, by *Wicliff*, and some others in the Ages since, who have driven on their private Projects under the colour and pretence of a *Reformation*. *Episcopacy*, as it was coeval

with the Church of *CHRIST*, so was it the best and strongest Buttress in that Sacred Building. The weakning or subverting of which Primitive Order, did either prostitute the Church to the Lust and Tyranny of that proud Usurper, or expose the Patrimony thereof unto Spoil and Rapine; or finally, subject it to the *Anarchy* and licentiousness of *Heterodoxies*, and confused Opinions. But I fear I have digressed too far in this speculation.

As a *Geographer*, I have been punctual and exact in giving unto every Province its peculiar Bounds, in laying out their several Land-marks, tracing the course of most of the principal Rivers, and setting forth the situation and estate of the chiefest Towns, and did once think of beautifying the Work, with as many Maps as the several States and Kingdoms which are here described. But upon further consideration, how much it would encrease the Book both in bulk and price, and consequently make it of less publick use than I did intend it; I laid by those thoughts, and rested satisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World; by which the Reader may discern how each Country lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much less all the Towns and Cities which are here expressed; and on the other side, may meet with many Towns of inferior note, which are here omitted. And herein I have took some pains in searching out the first Inhabitants of each several Country, as far as I could see by the light of Letters, or go by probable Conjectures in finding out the place of such ancient Cities as are now decayed, not easily visible in their Ruins; and adding to such Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Original Names. A thing as necessary to the understanding of the Histories of those Elder Times, as the knowledge of the present Names is to the more delightful reading of our modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note, fit to be specified and insisted on in a Work of this nature; yet would I not have the Reader look for such a punctual enumeration and description of them, as he may meet withal in those who have written the *Chorography* of some Country only; or think himself unsatisfied in his expectation, if he find not here the situation and affairs of each Town of War, or the Quartering-place of every Company or Troop of Soldiers, which are presented to him in the Weekly News-Books. In all Countries there are many places which either by the advantage of their situation, or some present exigency of Affairs, are fortified and made Towns of War; or otherwise remarkable for some signal Battel, in these late Bussles and Commotions of the Christian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and consequently not within the compass of this Discourse; and yet perhaps may grow as famous and considerable in the times to come, as many of the mightier Cities now decayed and ruined. He that shall think the Work imperfect (though I confess it to be

nothing but Imperfections) for some deficiencies in this kind, may be liken'd to the Country-fellow in *Aristophanes*, (if my Memory fail not) who picked a great quarrel with the Map, because he could not find where his own farm stood. And such a Country Customer I did meet with once, a Servant of my Elder Brother's, sent by him with some Horses to *Oxon*, to bring me and a Friend of mine unto his House; who having lost his way, as we passed through the Forrest of *Witchwood*, and not able to recover any beaten Track, did very earnestly intreat me to lead the way, till I had brought him past the Woods, to the open Fields. Which when I had refused to do, as I had good reason; alledging, that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him: *That's strange*, said he, *I have heard my Old Master, your Father say, That you made a Book of all the World; and cannot you find your way out of the Wood?* Which being spoken out of an honest simplicity, not out of any pretence to Wit, or the least thought of putting a blunt Jest upon me, occasioned a great deal of Merriment for a long time after; but I hope to meet with no such Readers. The greatness of the Bulk, and consequently of the Price, makes me somewhat confident, that none but Men of Judgment and Understanding will peruse these Papers; and such as they, will look for no more particulars, than the nature of a general Discourse will fitly bear. Perfection and Exactness is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is observed by *Aristotle* in his Second Book of his *Ethicks*, ἐπ' ὅσον ἡ περὶ ἡμῶν φύσις ἐπιδέχεται. as far forth as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And so much if I have attained unto, it is all which can with reason be expected from me. To look for more, were as improper and absurd, (in the words of *Aristotle*) as for an *Artist* to expect Tropes of Rhetorick from a Mathematician, or Demonstrations from an Orator.

Lastly, As an Historian, I have traced the Affairs of each several Country, from the first Inhabitants thereof, (such as the *Latins* call *Aborigines*; and the *Greeks* *Αὐτόχθονες*) till these latter times. Which that I might be sure to do on a good Foundation, I have took more than common Care to settle all the first Adventurers (after the proud attempt at *Babel*) in their right Plantations; and that too in the way of an *Introduction*, that I might the better know where I was to find them, and to go on with their Affairs with the less disturbance. The rest of their Occurrences, I have summed into so short an *Abstract*, as may be useful to the Learned, in the way of a *Remembrancer*; to the less knowing Man in the way of a Tutor: Brevity, in this kind, I have much endeavoured; but so as to avoid all obscurity also. Nor have I only kept my self to the Story of Kingdoms, or the greater *Signeuries*, Estates or Nations, which are or have been of the greatest consideration in the sway of the World: But looked on the Estates of such Dukes, Earls, and inferior Princes, as in their

To the Reader.

their times have had the Government of those parts which gave Title to them ; whose Actions and Successions are distinctly specified, and all such Alterations noted, as have hapned either in the ruine of such Estates, or the Translating of them from one House to another. The Catalogues and Successions of which Royal and Illustrious Families, I have drawn down unto the year 1648. towards the expiring of which year, I began to set my self upon this Employment. And there I fix, as on the top of some dreadful *Precipice*, which one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of such a nature, that either to speak of them, or to hold our peace, is a like unsafe. In such a case it is best to keep at a distance. For though truth be the best Mistress which a Man can serve, (*Magis amica veritas*, said the great Philosopher) yet it is well observed withal, that if a Man follow her too close at the heels, she may chance to kick out his Teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as also out of that compassionate Affection which a true *English-man* ought to bear his Native Country, although in my approaches towards these present Times, I have took notice, in some other places, of such Battels, Sieges, and Successes in the Chances of War, as have hapned in these later days: I have forbore to take the least notice of those Tragedies of Blood and Death, which have been lately acted on the Stage of *England*. I cannot but with grief confess, that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the late Wars against our selves: in which there have been more pitched-Fields, more strong places taken, more notable Traverses of State, and Exploits of War, than all the World can parallel in an equal time. But I have too much *English* Bowels to please my self in the recital, or to look back on those unfortunate Adventures, which I should rather chuse to cover with the *Act of Oblivion*, or bury in the Grave of perpetual Silence. How gladly I could have Recorded these Exploits of War, had they been exercised on a Subject more proper for them, my willingness to take notice, upon all occasions, of the Actions and Atchievements of the *English* Nation, will bear witness for me. But the employing of that Valour against our selves, as if not to be Conquered, but by one another, strikes such horror in me, that I cannot think thereof, without much affrightment; nor intimate thus much of it, without great *Reluctancies*. I fear it may be said too truly of our late Embroilments, as the Historian of the Civil-Wars betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, *Causa hujus Belli eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*; that they were principally occasioned by a surfeit of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own Prosperities; and that Prayer and Passage in the publick Liturgy (*Give Peace in our time, O Lord*) did not relish with us: How happy had it been, if we have found some other Field to have tried our Valour in? And made some Foreign Country, that *Aceldama*, which so fatally was made at home? The dishonour which we suffered

in the Isle of *Rhee*, when beat thence ingloriously by the *French*, the forcible and long detention of the *Palatinate*, by the Power of the *Spaniards*; the barbarous Butchery at *Ambona*; and the beating up of the *Spanish* Fleet within the protection of our Castles, by those of *Holland*; the Insolencies of the *Scots*; and the Rebellions of the *Irish*, might well have stirred some Indignation in an *English* Breast. And had we fought upon those scores, or on none but them, our Victories had deserved the honour of a solemn *Triumph*, denied by the old *Roman* Laws to a Civil War: But our infelicity (as it seems) was like that of *Rome*, in following those unnatural Wars with such Animosities; when the unrevengeed death of *Crassus*, the blood of so many thousand of their slaughtered Citizens, and the shameful lots of so many of the *Roman* Ensigns, should rather have invited them to the Conquest of the *Parthian* Empire. Of which, thus feelingly the Poet:

*Cumque superba foret Babylon spolianda
Trophæis,
Bella geri placuit, nullos habitura Trium-
phos,*

(constrain'd
And when proud *Babylon* should have been
To give us back our Ensigns lately gain'd:
We rather chose such Quarrels to pursue,
For which no *Triumph* could be justly due.

But such is the condition and vicissitude of humane Affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much less of certainty. The greatest Monarchies of the World, the *Babylonian*, *Persian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, have all had their periods, nothing remaining of them now, but the Name and Memory. And what is now become of those mighty Cities of the East, *Ninive*, *Babylon*, *Ecbatana*, *Susa*, with the rest mentioned in the Scriptures, and in *Classical* Authors? Are not their very Ruines now become Invisible? Where are the puissant Families of the *Achæmenides* of *Persia*, the *Seleucidae* of *Syria*, the *Pharaohs* and *Ptolomies* of *Egypt*, the *Cæsars* of *Italy*, the *Merovignians* and *Carolo-vignians* of the Realm of *France*, and the *Plantagenets* of *England*? Are they not all extinct and gone, not to be found but by the benefit of Story, and some ancient Monuments? And if it be so, as it is, with the greatest Monarchies, the most mighty Cities of the World, we must not think that smaller Kingdoms and Estates, can either be so evenly ballanced, or so surely founded, as not to be obnoxious also to the same vicissitudes. And being that saying of *Optatus* is most undoubtedly true, *Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is but a part of the Commonwealth, we must not hope to find it in a better posture than the Civil State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it subsists and flourisheth. The Church must needs miscarry in the ruine of the Civil State; and may miscarry, many times, although the Civil State receive no such alterations. Compared, for this reason, to the Moon, by the ancient Fathers who had observed her in her Prime, in her Encrea-

ses,

ses, and her Full; and finally, had not only seen her in the *Wane* also, but sometimes too under some horrible *Eclipses*. Which various condition of the *Militant Church*, the Scriptures and succeeding Stories have set forth so fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonstrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the *Philistines*, the Temple destroyed by the *Chaldeans*, and profaned by the *Syrians*, the Apostacy of Ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a short time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and estate of the *Jewish Church*. And find we not the same for the *Christian* also, in the removing of the *Candlestick* from the *Asian Churches*; and making them, together with those of *Greece* and *Aegypt*, and all the flourishing Churches in the East and South, to languish and decay remedilessly under the merciless Encroachments of the *Turks* and *Saracens*? He must be more than blind that sees not, more savage than those merciless Men; that grieves not at their sad condition: but a dead Member, at the most, of *Christ's* Mystical Body, who feels not in himself the suffering of those wretched *Christians*.

If now we look into the causes of that Desolation which hath hapned in the Civil State of those mighty Empires; to what can we impute it, but their crying Sins? the Pride of the *Babylonians*, the Effeminacy of the *Persians*, the Luxury of the *Greeks*: and such an Aggragation of Vices amongst the *Romans* (or Western *Christians*) before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a scandal unto *Christianity*. *In nobis patitur Christus opprobrium, in nobis patitur lex Christiana maledictum*, as the devout *Salvian* then complained. Thus also in reference to the Church, did not the Idolaters of the Ten Tribes hasten in the *Affyrians*? The shedding of the Blood of so many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the *Chaldeans* first, and the *Romans* afterwards? Do we not find the *Arianism* of the Eastern Churches, to usher in the inundation of the *Saracens*; the *Donatism* of the South, to have set open a wider Door to let in the *Vandals*? Did not the *Saxons* follow on the heels of *Pelagianism*, as soon almost as entertained amongst the *Britains*? If so, as most undoubtedly it was in the days of old, why should we think but that the Superstitions and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, the Sacrilege and Faction of the Churches of the Reformation, shall at the last receive the like Retribution? Or that the Divine Justice is so fast asleep, that our Sins must cry as loud as the Priests of *Baal* did under their God, before it be awakened by us? Assuredly, we are no less Sinners, than any of those on whom the Tower of the Divine Vengeance hath so heavily fallen; whose Blood the *Pilates* of all Ages have mingled with their solemn and Religious *Sacrifices*: and therefore have no cause to hope, but that unless we do repent, we shall likewise perish.

The serious consideration of all these particulars, hath made those alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here a-

mongst our selves, the less strange unto me. For is there any of these things, whereof it may be said, *Ecce hoc est novum, Behold this is new? Eccl. 1. 10.* Have they not been already in the times before us? Do we not find it positively affirm'd by the wisest Man that ever was, *That which hath been, is now; and that which is to be, hath already been? Nihil enim novum est sub sole*, for there is no new thing under the Sun, *Eccles. 3. 15.* and *1. 11.* And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably say thus much of my self, That the observation of the fall of so many great and puissant Empires, the Extirpation of so many mighty and Renowned Families, the Desolation of so many flourishing *Christian Churches*, as the composing of this Book did present me with, (though formerly no Strangers to me in the course of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my Soul under the mighty hand of God, than either the sense of my own Misfortunes, or any other moral consideration which had come before me. And I could wish, the Reader may receive so much benefit by it, (besides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them) that the Mighty Man may learn hereby, not to glory in his greatest Strength, nor the Wise to glory in his Wisdom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great Designs. Let the great Leaders of these times in the Art of War, consider the sad ends of *Joab*, the General of *David's* Forces; and of *Belisarius*, the Commander of *Justinian's* Armies: whereof the one was slain ingloriously at the *Horns* of the *Altar*, after all his Services; the other forced to beg his bread at the *Gates* of the *Temple*. Let the great Masters of Wit, and *State-craft*, have before their eyes the unsuccessful ends of *Achitophel*, the Oracle of the times he lived in; and of *Cæsar Borgia*, proposed by *Machiavel*, for the Pattern of a Politick Prince: of which, the one laid violent Hands upon himself, because his *Counsel* was not followed; the other, after the default of his Projects, and a long Imprisonment to boot, forced to fly his Country, and slain obscurely in an Ambush. Let all Men lay unto their hearts the Ebbs and Floods, those Alterations and Vicissitudes, to which all Humane Power is subject; the slippery Foundations of that Might and Greatness which is not laid upon the Principles of Justice, and regulated by the *Maxims* of *Christian Piety*; and, that even those which have Dominion over others, have a God too, above themselves, to whom they are to render an account of all their Actions. Not such a God as that of *Lewis* the Eleventh of *France*; of whom it is reported, that he wore a Leaden Medal in his Bonnet, in the form of a *Crucifix*: which, when he had caused any Man to be killed, whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands and kiss it, desiring it to pardon him that one Murder more, and it should be the last which he would commit. Such mockeries as these may be well put on a *Leaden god*; but the God of Heaven and Earth,

To the Reader.

Earth, will not be so *mocked*: who being *totus oculus*, and *totum lumen*, as the Father calleth him, can easily discern our Intents and Purposes, notwithstanding those Disguises which are put upon them; and see the nakedness of Sin in its ugliest Shape, though appalled with the *Fig-leaves* of the best pretences, which the self-deceiving Wit of Man can patch up together. God is the same God now, as in former times, *Primus ad extremum similis sibi*, yesterday, and to day, and the same for ever; and will not put up those Affronts which the Impieties of Men do afflict him with: though in regard of his great patience, and long-suffering, they may flatter their poor Souls, and say, *Tush, God doth not see it*.

Lastly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other *Patron* than himself, to whom to Dedicate this Work, and from whom to receive protection and encouragement in it. The time was when I might have said with *Seneca*, *Unus mihi erat pro Populo*, that one Man was to me instead of all Men: the Powers of all the *People* being virtually united in him. But now, as the case stands, I must be fain to invert those words, *Populus mihi est pro uno*; the body of the *Nation*

is to me, in this respect as the *Head* before. Unto them therefore I present it, and that not improperly: A General Survey of all the World, the Government, Affairs, and Successes of it, requiring a more general *Patron* than particular *Treatates*. But because all the *People* in the Body *Collective*, have not Abilities to Read, much less to Judge; and that many of those who can do both, may neither have the List nor Leisure to pursue these Papers: I look on the *Nobility*, *Clergy*, *Gentry*, as their *Representatives* in this kind; to whose favourable and ingenious acceptance, I submit the same. Which if I can attain unto, it is all I aim at. And it will be no small Comfort to me, in the midst of so many Sorrows as are round about me, that I have been useful to the Publick, or added any thing by my Studies unto the Honour and Content of the *English Nation*: whose Peace and Happiness is heartily commended to Almighty God, by

The Author of these following Papers.

PETER HEYLIN.

An Advertisement to the Reader concerning this large and exact Table, much wanted and desired in the First and Second, and now annexed to the Third and Fourth Impression of this Book.

HOW well it is observed, *That Humane Industry cannot begin and finish any thing at one and the same time*, this famous Book may be an instance; whose *first Edition* was but the *Monogram*, and *rude Draught*, to a more exact Composure; the *second* adding much Matter and Method to the *first*; and the *third* and *fourth* adding Matter, Method, and a most exact and full Table of both, to the *second*, containing all the Provinces, Kingdoms, States, Principalities, Continents, Isles, Promontories, Isthmus's, Seas, Rivers, Havens, Mart-Towns, Cities, Strong-holds, with their Longitudes, Latitudes, Situations, Plantations, Inhabitants, Ancient and Modern Names; and the Book and Page where they are satisfactorily discoursed of.

A Table (that notwithstanding every Methodical Book, such as this is, is its own Index: Every great Memory, like that of *Cæsar*, carrieth a Table of all Books in his Brain; and every hopeful Student makes his own Table to all Classical Authors) that carrieth with it its own Commendation.

1. To those that have not time to read Books, but Indexes. 2. To those that have not patience to go through the whole *Body*, and yet Curiosity to observe the Remarkable parts of Geography. 3. To those that would recollect what they have forgotten of their Reading. 4. To those that upon any emergent occasion, would see the Situation, Rivers, Havens, Strong-holds, Garrisons, Longitudes, Latitudes, Commodities, Products, Curiosities, Inhabitants, Genius, Condition, and History of any place in the World. 5. To those that read any Ancient or Modern Histories; or other Authors, and would be satisfied in the *Scene* of the Actions they read of, and the Situation of the Places there mentioned. 6. To those that aiming at exactness this way, would compare all the Ancient and Modern Geographers. And 7. To all the Perusers of this Book, that complained of the intolerable defects of former Tables and Indexes; of which number the Learned Compiler of this Table, who drew it up for his own Satisfaction, and publisheth it for the Publick, is one who wisheth others as much benefit in the easie way of Perusing it, as he had in the more toilsom way of Collecting it.

The Matter added to this Impression, is much; and all under the Author's own Hand, not long before he died; putting to it (as he said truly to his Friend that was with him in the perusal of it) *his last hand*.

To my BROTHER the A U T H O R.

TH^Y first-press'd Grapes did yield approved Wine,
Such as did praise it self; yet to endear
Our Approbation thou dost here refine
Those former Fruits; and, for our better Cheer,
Present'st us with a pure and stronger Vine:

Lest, else, some curious taste might it distaste,
If so, it had needs my Second Bush? 'Tis Waste.
Yet well thy choice Minerva merits this,
This Ivy Garland, everlasting Green;
Which, like the Muses Cup, proportion'd is,
Wherout thou drink'st, wherein their Liquors been.
Nor wouldst thou scape the lash of Nemesis.

If, with Diogenes, thou shouldst refuse
To let the Thirsty drink there-hence 'Twere News.
Thy Book's an Ark, which all the World contains;
And well may bear a short Encomion.
'Tis slender Meed; yet who such Pay disdains?
Good Wine may have a Bush, though it need none.
~~Nor let these Lines of mine seem partial strains.~~

Thy Work ingenious is, and Vertue's Brood,
Like it, increaseth with due praise. 'Tis Good.

Much Pains it cost, much Cost, and Labour more:
Fame's breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchase Praise:
The Muses Seat ascends an hundred score:
And Honour's Journey lies not in plain ways.
Who to Parnassus high-crown'd top will sore,
Must with elaborate Quill climb up: and such
Thy tender Genius boasteth thee. 'Tis Much!
Too much indeed it were, but that in part,
The Guerdon of well-doing, is the doing
Fame and Reward, but wait up n thine Art;
Which yet deserves that in this Forward going,
Thy Fortunes may even ballance thy Desert.
But Fortune's base, and sells the Wages due
To Worth, unto her Favourites. 'Tis True.
The Earth thy Ground-plot is, Geography'd;
Kings, sometimes, are thy Subjects, peopling it.
Thy Story, History hath beautify'd,
Pen'd by the vigour of an Home-bred Wit:
Whose Art hath travell'd all the World beside,
And can of every Country well declare
Th' Occurrents, Nature, Site, and Bounds. 'Tis Rare.

Thus, that the Earth, so young, thou compass hast,
Is Rare, True, Much, Good, News, and my Bush Wast.

Edw. Heylin. J. C.
æ Sco. Int. Temp.

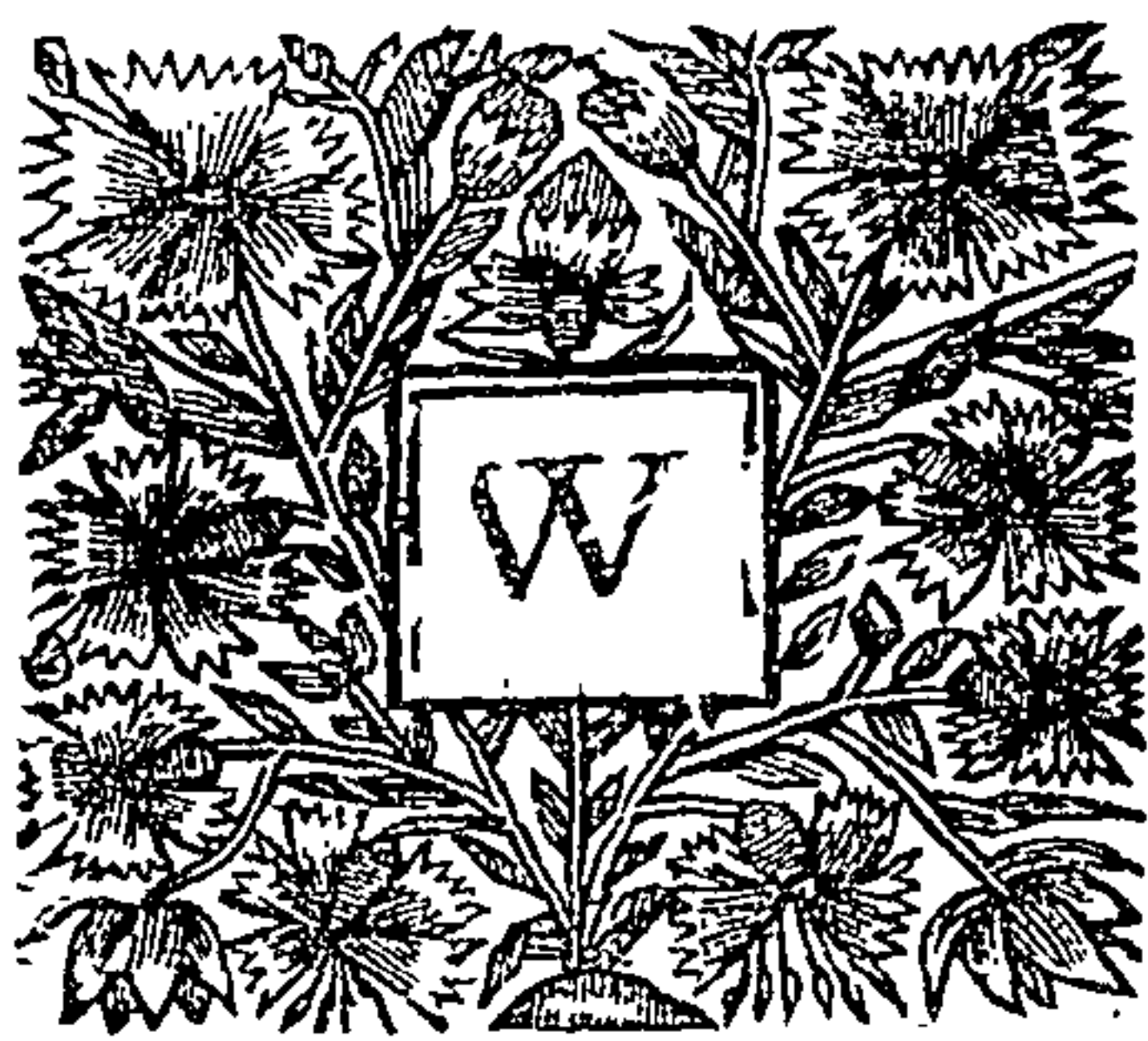
A General Introduction

To the following

W O R K.

CONTAINING,

The Creation of the World by Almighty GOD, and the Plantation of the same by the Sons of Men; the necessary use of History and Geography, as well for understanding the Affairs of the Ages past, as for Converse and Correspondence with the Nations present; together with a brief View of some General Præcognita which necessarily are required unto the Knowledge of each.



WITH great both Piety and Prudence did the Apostles in their Summary of the *Christian Faith*, join our Belief in God the Father Almighty, with that Clause or Article of making or Creating the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply a making (*Is not he thy Father which hath made thee?* saith the Prophet *Moses*, Deut. 32. 6.) so who but an Almighty Father could by his meer Word, without any pre-existent Matter, create that goodly Edifice of Heaven and Earth, which we behold with so much Wonder and Applause? A Work so full of wonder to the ancient *Gentiles*, that some of them made the World a God. *Vis illum* (i. e. *Deum*) *mundum vocare? non falleris*; as it is in *Seneca*: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the World, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the World a God, as God to be the Soul of the World, yet might they very well have said as one since hath done, That the World is nothing else but God unfolded and manifested in the Creature. *Nil aliud mundus universus, quam Deus explicatus*, as *Cusanus*, a late Cardinal, hath it. For certainly the special Motives which did induce God unto this great Work, were a desire and purpose to manifest his Power, to exercise his Providence, and declare his Goodness. Not that God needed to have made the World in regard of Himself; for the World we know was made in the beginning of Time, but God is Infinite and Eternal before all Times: but that it seemed good to Him to Create it last, as a thing most conducive to his Praise and Glory; the Heavens declaring the Glory of God, and the Earth shewing his handy-work, saith the Royal Psalmist. Some measuring the God of Heaven by their own Affections, and finding nothing so agreeable to their own Dispositions as to be in Company, conceive that God being at last weary of his own Solitude, did create the World, that he might have the company of the Angels in Heaven, and make a start into the Earth (when he saw occasion) to recreate himself with the Sons of Men. *Que beata esse solitudo quæat?* What happiness (saith *Hortensius*) can there be in Solitude? To which *Lactantius*, Lib. 1. Cap. 7. not being furnished with a better, doth return this Answer; That God cannot be said to be alone; *habet enim Ministros quos voca-*

mus Nuncios, as having the Society of the Angels. But then *Lactantius* must suppose that the Angels were co-eternal with God himself, which were to make all Gods, and no God at all; or else his Answer is no Answer, as to that Objection. How much more oppositely might he have thus replied unto *Hortensius*, That the Supreme contentment possible to Almighty God is by reflecting on Himself, and in Himself contemplating in his own infinite Glories: which being co-eternal with Himself, even from all Eternity, he needed no more Company before the World was made, than he hath done since. *Lactantius* being himself a Man of a very great Reading (though indeed a better *Humanitarian* than *Divine*) could not but know these sweet delights which a Man habited in Learning takes in Contemplation, and the good society he hath of his own dear Thoughts, when he is most retired from the sight of Men. And if the wise *Gentile* could affirm so sadly, *Numquam minus solus quam cum solus esset*, that he was never less alone than when he was by himself, what need can any rational Man suppose in Almighty God, of having more company than Himself, to delight Himself in? If this suffice not for an Answer to that needless Question, *What God did before he made the World*; let him take that of *Augustine* on the like occasion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is said to have returned this Answer; *Fabricasse inferos curiosus*, that he made Hell for all such troublesome and idle Questionists. Which resolution of that Father is by *Sabinus*, a late Dutch Poet, moulded into this handsome Epigram.

*Dum Christum Libycis Pater Augustinus in oris
Assistit, & peragit munus in æde suam;
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi
Esse docens verbo cuncta creata Dei:
Impius assurgit, verbisq; proteritis, Afer;
Ergo Opifex rerum quid faciebat? ait;
Aut, Quibus intentus fallebat tempora curis,
Mundus adhuc novidum cum fabricatus erat?
Præsul ad hæc Libycus, fabricavit tartara, dixit,
His quos scrutari talia mente juvat.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

When Reverend *Austin* did in *Africa* preach,
And in Gods House the ruder People teach,
As he the World's Creation prov'd and taught,
That God made all things by his Word, of nought;
A sawcy Swain upstarting needs would know,
How God before that did his time bestow:
And what to spend his Thoughts upon, he had,
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made.

To which the Father tartly thus ; He then
Made Hell for thee, and such audacious Men.

But not to spend more time in answering so vain a caption, suffice it us to know, that it pleased God at last when it seemed best unto his infinite and eternal wisdom, to create the World, and all things visible and invisible in the same contained. A time it had, in which it first began to be, which before was not ; This *Moses* calls *Principium*, a beginning simply. In the beginning God created the Heaven and the Earth, in the first words of the Book of *Genesis* : which is all one as if he had said, the Heaven and Earth had a beginning ; or that this unformed *Mafs* or *Chaos* which he entituled there by the name of *Heaven and Earth*, was the beginning or first draught of those several things which after were created in their proper times ; that is to say, the first in order of time, because made before them, not in order of causality, as the causes of them. *Cælum & terra, in principio, (i. e.) ante omnia facta sunt*, saith *Simon Pottius* in his *Scholies* on St. *John's* Gospel. So that whether we do expound those words, that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning ; or that *Moses* by these words did mean, that out of that Matter which he calls *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning, or first Matter, all things were created, it comes all to one ; because it is thereby acknowledged that the first Matter was created by Almighty God, and therefore of necessity to have a beginning. And to this truth we have not only the Authority and consent of Scripture, but of the greatest part of the old *Philosophers* ; guided thereto by this impossibility in nature, that any visible work, whether it be *natural* or *artificial*, should either give it self a being, or have that being which it hath from no cause precedent. For from that Principle *Tully* argueth very rightly in his most excellent Book, *De natura Deorum*, that as a Man coming into a goodly House, in which he found nothing but Rats and Mice, could not conceive that either the House had built it self, or had no other Maker but those Rats and Mice which were nested in it ; so neither can it be imagined, that either this World should be eternal, or a self-existency ; or was composed by any finite natural Agent of what sort soever. And this is that which is more briefly and expressly said by the Apostle, *viz.* That every house is built by some man, but he that built all things is God, *Heb.* 3. 4. It is true, that *Aristotle* being a very great enquirer into the Works of Nature, conceiv'd the World to be eternal ; and yet not always constant unto that Opinion. But then it is as true withal, that there was something else that inclin'd him to it, than a meer admiration of the Works of Nature. *Democritus* and some others had been of Opinion, that the World was made in the beginning, *fortuitis atomorum concurfionibus*, by the accidental union or conjunction of those several parcels, of which the Universe consisted ; and that Man himself was but *voluntaria elementorum concretio*, a voluntary mixture of all the Elements, as *Minutius* hath observed out of their Writings. To which absurd Opinion (as it was no better) though it found a general imbracement amongst many of the old *Philosophers*, when *Aristotle* knew not how to submit his most exquisite Judgment ; and yet was destitute of such further light, as might more fully have instructed him in its true Original : He rather chose to grant the World to be eternal, than to be made of such ridiculous, and unsound, though eternal Atoms. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab æterno esse, quam aliquando ex æterna deformitate emerfisse.* *Valesius* in his Book *de Sacra Philosophia* so pleads the case in his behalf ; and I thank him for it : who am (I must confess) a great Friend of *Aristotle's*, whom some account for the *Præcurfor* of our Saviour Christ in *rebus naturalibus*, as *John the Baptist* was in *divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reason tell us only this, that the whole World had a beginning ; but, by the help of Scripture, and the Works of some Learned Men, we are able to point out the time when it did begin ; or to compute how many Years it is precisely from

the first beginning, without any notable difference in the calculation. For though it be most truly said, *Citius inter Horologias quam Chronologias* ; that Clocks may sooner be agreed than Chronologers, yet most Chronologers in this point come so near one another, that the difference is scarce observable. From the beginning of the World to the Birth of Christ, in the account of *Beroaldus*, are 3928 Years, 3945 in the computation of the *Genevians*, 3960 in the esteem of *Luther*, and 3963 in the calculation of *Melancthon* : between whom and *Beroaldus* (being the least and the greatest) there is but 35 Years difference, which in so long a course of time can be no great matter. Now if unto the calculation made by *Beroaldus*, which I conceive to be the truest, we add 1648 since the Birth of Christ, the total of the time since the World's Creation, will be 5576 Years, neither more nor less. A thing which I the rather have insisted on, because that from this *Epoche* or *Ara* of the World's Creation, we shall compute the times of such King and Princes, as reigned and flourished in the World before the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour.

It being then resolved as a thing undoubted, that God made the World, and that He made it in such time as Himself pleased ; let us next look upon the matter and the method which it pleased the Divine Majesty to make use of, in this wondrous work.

First, For the matter, out of which all things were created, I take it, as before was said, to be that which *Moses* in the first words of *Genesis* calls the *Heaven and the Earth*, because they were so in *potentia* ; but after telleth us more explicitly, that that which he calleth *Earth*, was *inanes & vacua*, without form and void ; and that which he calleth *Heaven* was but an over-cast of darkness, or *tenebræ super faciem Abyssi*, as the vulgar reads it. Of which *Chaos* or confused *Mafs* we thus read in *Ovid*, who questionless had herein consulted with the Works of *Moses*, being before his time communicated to the Learned Gentiles :

*Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Cælum,
Unus erat tota naturæ vultus in Orbe,
Quem dixere Chaos, rudis indigestaq; moles,
Nec quicquam nisi pondus iners, congestaq; eodem
Non bene junctarum discordia semina rerum, &c.*

Which I shall English from G. S. with some little change.

Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were framed,
One face had Nature which they *Chaos* named ;
An indigested lump, a barren load,
Where jarring Seeds of things ill-join'd abode.
No Sun as yet with light the World adorns,
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waning Horns :
Nor hung the self-poiz'd Earth in thin Air plac'd,
Nor had the Ocean the vast Shores embrac'd.
Earth, Sea, and Air, all mixt ; the Earth unstable,
The Air was dark, the Sea unnavigable.
No certain form to any one assign'd ;
This, that resists ; for in one body join'd
The cold and heat, the dry and humid fight,
The soft and hard, the heavy with the light.

Out of this *Chaos* or first Matter, did God raise the World, according to those several parts and lineaments which we see in it, not as out of any pre-existent Matter which was made before, and had not God for the Author or first Maker of it ; but as the first preparatory Matter which himself had made, including in the same *potentially* both the Form and Matter of the whole Creation, except the Soul of Man only, which God breathed into him. And therefore it is truly said, that God made all things out of *nothing* ; not out of *nothing* as the Matter out of which it was made, for then that *nothing* must be *something* ; but as the *terminus à quo*, in giving them a real and corporal being, which before they had not, and did then first begin to have by the meer force and efficacy of his powerful Word. And though it be a *Maxim* in the Schools of Philosophy, *Ex nihilo nil fit*, that *nothing* can be made of *nothing* ; that every thing which hath a being doth

doth require some matter which must be pre-existent to it, yet this must either be condemned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divinity, or else be limited and restrained to *Natural Agents*, which cannot go beyond the Sphere of their own activity; *Invisible* and *Supernatural Agents* are not tyed to Rules, no riot in the production of the works of Nature; though Nature, constituted and established in a certain course, work every thing by line and measure as a certain Rule. And so it was with God in the Worlds Creation; he did not only make the World, but he made it out of *nothing*, by his Word alone: *Dixit & facta sunt*. He spake the Word and they were made, saith the Royal Psalmist, *Psal. 33. 9*. There went no greater Pains nor Matter to the whole Creation, but a *Dixit Deus*: And this not only said by *Moses*, but by *David* too, *Verbo Domini firmati sunt Cæli, & spiritu oris ejus omnis virtus eorum*, v. 6. i. e. By the Word of the Lord were the Heavens made, and all the Hosts thereof by the Breath of his Mouth. In which it is to be observed, that though the Creation of the World be generally ascribed to God the Father, yet both the Son and the Holy Ghost had their parts therein; *Verbo Domini*, by the Word of the Lord were the Heavens made, saith the Prophet *David*. *In the beginning was the Word; all things were made by him, and without him was nothing made*, saith *St. John* the Apostle. The Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters, saith *Moses* in the Book of the Law: *Et spiritu oris ejus*, and by the Breath (or Spirit) of his Mouth were all the Hosts of Heaven created, saith *David* in the Book of *Psalms*, Made by his Word, and yet not made together in one instant of Time. In the first day he laid the Foundation and no more; in the five next, he raised the Building: and this he did, to teach us men deliberation, in our words and actions: and to set forth withal unto us, both his Power and Wisdom. His Power he manifested in the Method of the whole Creation, in that he did produce what Effects he pleased, without the help of Natural Causes: as giving Light unto the World before he had created either Sun or Moon; making the Earth fruitful, and to bring forth Plants, without the Influence or Motion of the Heavenly Bodies. And for his Wisdom he expressed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the very Beasts of the Field before he had provided them of Fodder and sufficient Herbage; nor made Man after his own Image, before he had finished all the rest of his Works, fitted his House, and furnished it with all things necessary both for Life and Pleasures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at last comes Man into the World: and he doth make his entrance with a greater Pomp than any of the rest of the Creatures which were before him. They came in with no other Ceremony, than a *Dixit Deus*; but in the Workmanship of Man, there was a Consultation held by the blessed Trinity. It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*, Let us make Man; each Person contributing somewhat (as it were) to his Composition. For God the Father as the chief Workman, or principal Agent, gave him Form and Feature; in which he did imprint his own Heavenly Image. The Son, who is the Living and Eternal Word, gave him Voice of Speech, that so he might be able to set forth Gods Praises. The Holy Ghost, the Lord and giver of Life, (as the Nicene Fathers truly call him) breathing into his Nostrills the Breath of Life, whereby he became a Living Spirit. In this one Creature, was amassed whatever thing was excellent in the whole Creation; the quantity or substance of Inanimate Creatures, the Life of Plants, the Sense of Beasts, and the Understanding of Angels. In this one Creature did God shew the excellency of his Power and Wisdom, in printing on him his own Image, and giving him dominion over all the Works of his Hands, which Image of God they look for it in a very wrong place who hope to find it in Mans Body, though of a gallant Composition and erected Structure. The Heathen Orator was able in this Point to inform some Erroneous Christians. *Ad Divinam imaginem propius accedit huma-*

na virtus quam figura, Man doth approach more near to the Image of God, in the Endowments of his Mind, than in the Structure of his Body, as divinely *Cicero*. And as for that dominion which God gave him over the Works of his Hands, the Patent is at large laid down in the first of *Genesis*. For God no sooner said, *Faciamus Hominem*. Let us make Man after our own Image, but presently he adds this Charter of Supreme Authority, *And let him have dominion over the Fish of the Sea, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over the Cattle, and over all the Earth*. A more particular Explication of those several Points, wherein that Image and this Power do consist especially, I shall not take upon me or endeavour now; as being not of this place and purpose: Which only is to shew, that as man in the very Act of his Creation participated more of the Divine Image than all other Creatures: So was he by Gods special Grant enfeoffed with a larger Power than any of the rest could pretend unto. Man, though made lower than the Angels, is in this above them; that all the Creatures of the World were made to be his Servants, and to attend upon his Pleasure. And yet this great and mighty Prince, this general Lord of all the World, and the Creatures in it (setting aside the dignity of his first Creation) doth come into the World in a worse condition than any of the Creatures which were made to serve him, naked, and impotent, and speccless, without use of Reason; neither of Power to help himself, or ask help of others. Whereof *Lactantius*, in my mind, gives a very good Reason, who telleth us, that God sends Man into the World, *nudum & inermem*, naked and weak, and undefenced against all Violences and Dangers; whereas all Creatures else, *munita indumentis naturalibus & armata sunt*, are naturally both armed and cloathed, and able to relieve themselves. And this he doth unto this end, that Man being naturally destitute of those outward helps, might make use of his inward faculties of Judgment, Wit and Understanding, in furnishing himself with that which he wants by nature. For hereunto the first original of all Manufactures and mechanick Arts is to be referred, as is most plain and evident from the Book of God, in which we see, that presently upon the procreation of Mankind, *Abel* betook himself to keeping Sheep, and *Cain* to Husbandry; *Jubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and such Musical Instruments; and *Tubal Cain* to work upon Brass and Iron, two Metals very necessary to most kind of Trades. The like may be supposed in all other Mysteries and Arts of Living, though there be no express mention of them in those early days; except it be the Art of Building, or the Carpenters Trade, which no question is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain's City*, and *Noah's Ark* is most clearly evidenced. God made the World, and fitted it with all things necessary for the Life of Man, leaving Man to provide himself of such additions as rather serve for Comforts and Conveniences in the way of his living, than the Necessities of his Life.

Here then we have the Works of God, and the Works of Men to be considered, in pursuit of our present Argument. The Works of God in shadowing the Earth with Trees and Forests, interlacing it with Chrystal streams, and capacious Rivers; enriching it with fruitful and delicious Vales, adorning it with lofty Mountains, and stocking both the Hills and Vales with all sorts of Cattel. But nothing more sets forth the Power and Wisdom of Almighty God, as it relates to these particulars, than that most admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continual Traffick and Commerce with one another: Some Countries being destitute of those Commodities with which others abound; and being plentiful in those which the others want. Insomuch that as in the body of Man, that *Microcosm*, or little World, the Head cannot say, that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other Members of the rest: So neither in the Body of the World, can *Europe* say to *Asia*, or *Spain* to *England*, I have no need of your Commodities, or am not wanting

in those things whereof thou boastest an abundance. Something there is in every Country which may be spared to supply the defect of others; and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandise: Of which, thus *Du-Bartas* in his Colonies,

Hence come our Sugars from Canary Isles;
From Candie Currans, Muscadels, and Oyls.
From the Moluccoes Spices; Balsamum
From Egypt; Odours from Arabia come.
From India Gums, rich Drugs, and Ivory;
From Syria Mummy; black, red Ebony
From burning Chus; from Peru, Pearls and Gold;
From Russia Furs to keep the Rich from cold.
From Florence Silks; from Spain Fruit, Saffron, Sack;
From Denmark Amber, Cordage, Firrs and Flax.
From France and Flanders Linnen, Wood and Wine;
From Holland Hops; Horse from the banks of Rhine.
From England Wool. All Lands, as God distributes,
To the Worlds treasure pay their sundry tributes.

This, as *Du-Bartas* speaks of the present times, so questionless the same, or the like Commerce held good in the first Ages of the Worlds Creation; God furnishing all Countries from the first beginning with some Staple Commodities, for the benefit of themselves and others; for the maintaining of that intercourse between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the closer in the bonds of Amity. And to this end also serve those several Manufactures wherewith some Countries do abound in respect of others; but looked on, in the present Book, as the Works of Men. And of this kind also are the several Politics and Forms of Government. For though all Magistracy in it self be from God originally, and that the Monarchical Form comes nearest to the Government used by God himself: Yet being that some Politics are meerly but humane inventions, all Government and Magistracy is called an Ordinance of man in holy Scripture, 1 Pet. 2. 13. But those particular Works of Men, which are the most considerable part of our present Subject, are Castles, Towns, and Cities of most eminent note, which thrive and prosper in the World, according as they do partake of those Conveniences which conduce most to their Magnificence and Greatness. Of these *Boterus* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of those many we shall touch upon the Principal only; passing by those of lesser note, as pleasantness of Sight, fruitfulness of Soil, salubrity of Air, and such like obvious Observations. First then there is required to the Magnificence and Splendor of Cities a Navigable River, or some such easie passage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual course and trade of Merchants; as *Venice*, *London*, *Amsterdam*. Secondly, some Staple Manufactures or Commodities which will draw the like resort of Merchants, though the conveniency of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in *Nuremberg* in *Germany*, a dry Town but mightily Traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince; for, *ubi Imperator, ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continual confluence of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all sorts of Trades: And by this means *Madrid*, not long since a poor beggarly Village, is grown the most populous City in all *Spain*. Fourthly, the Residence of the Nobility, beautifieth a City with stately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of *Italy* so much excell ours in *England*, their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the most part in their Country-houses. Fifthly, the Seats or Tribunals of Justice, on which both Advocates and Clients are to give attendance; as in the Parliamentary Cities in *France*, and Spires in *Germany*. Sixthly, Universities and Schools of Learning, to which the Youth from all parts are to make resort; which hath been long the chief cause of the flourishing of *Oxford*, *Cambridge*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls and Taxes; most men being most desirous to inhabit there, where their Income will be greatest, their Privileges largest, and their Disbursements least: So *Naples*,

Florence, *Venice*, having been desolated by Plagues, were again suddenly re-peopled, by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And last of all, the opinion of Sanctity; either for the Reliques of Saints, or some noted Shrines, or the residence of some Famous Man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the least Adamant which draws people to it, to the great enriching of some Cities. And of this *Rome* it self can give us two most pregnant Evidences: The one in reference to the Popes, and these latter times; that famous Town not otherwise subsisting now, than by the constant residence of the Popes and Cardinals; whose absence while the Papal See was kept at *Avignon*, had made it over-grown with Briars and Brambles, and buried it almost in its own sad Ruines. The other, in the person of *Titus Livius* the Historian; to see which man there came so many from the Coasts of *France* and *Spain*, that *St. Hierome* elegantly saith, *Quos ad sui contemplationem Roma non traxerat, unius hujus hominis fama perduxit; qui jam urbem tantam ingressi, aliud extra Urbem quaerent.*

Such are the Causes of the Greatness and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might possibly be looked at by the first Builders of Cities, I mean by *Cain* before the Flood, and by *Nimrod* after; who aimed more at the love of Empire, and self-preservation, than at the general good of Mankind, or the particular Wealth of those amongst whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expressly in the Book of God, That being possessed with this Fear, that every one that found him would lay hands upon him and slay him, in revenge of the blood of *Abel*, He builded a City and called it by the name of his Son *Enoch*, Gen. 4. 17. Builded a City? For what reason? To fortifie and secure himself against all revenge, as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppress his Neighbours, as *Josephus* witnesseth. Neither was this the only City of the first Ages, though none but this be mentioned in the Book of God. That which the Scripture saith of *Jubal*, that he was the Father of such as dwell in Tents, and of such as have Cattel; that is to say, he was the first of those that lived upon Pasturage, and followed their Cattel up and down with their moveable Tents, not having any certain Home or Habitations, as the wild *Arabes* now, and the ancient *Nomades*; is proof sufficient, that the residue of all Mankind lived a more civil kind of Life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* be of any credit (as in these things I think he is) he will inform us, that the City of *Joppa* was built before the Flood; that the King thereof was named *Cepha*; and that his name, and the name of his Brother *Phineas*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of Stone. But whether this be so, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the West, whereupon *Joppa* stood, as the Land of *Nod* on the East side of *Paradise*, where *Cain* built his City, were peopled long before the Flood; and so were most of the other parts of the World besides: And if well peopled in all, or most parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, yea and Cities too, as well for necessary Habitation, as for Strength and Safety. Now that the World was thoroughly peopled before the Flood, seems clear to me by that great and universal Deluge, which God was pleased to bring upon the Face of all the Earth: For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of Waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people of it guilty of oppression in the sight of God? Besides, it is expressly said in the Holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 350 years after the Flood in the largest account, and not 300 in the shortest; there were Kings of *Egypt*, and of the *Philistins*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinaar*, *El-lasar*, *Elam*, and of the Nations who questionless had their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldea* and *Mesopotamia* in the time of *Abraham* had their several Cities, as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan* in the other; and that *Damascus* the chief City of *Syria* was then founded also:

Not

Not to say any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the Land of *Shinaar*, (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Nineve*, *Resen*, *Rebobo*, and *Chalab* in the Land of *Assyria*, mention whereof is made in the 10th of *Genesis*. And it is found in good and credible Au-

* Sir John Marlham has clearly proved that Ninus lived many Ages after Abraham, and not many before Xerxes. *Chronus Canon* pag. 476.

thors, that *Ninus* the third *Assyrian* Monarch* (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having subdued the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia*, invaded *Bactria* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horse, and 10600 armed Chariots; and was encountred by *Zoroaster*, the King thereof, with an Army of 400000. The credibility whereof, if it were disputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Ctesias* for his Author, *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of Men and upwards; and yet was over-match'd, and slain by an *Indian* King. If then within the space of four hundred Years, we find the Eastern Parts to be so well planted, so many Kings possessed of their Regal Thrones, and many of them able to impress such infinite Armies, why may we not conclude, that in the course of 1656 Years (for so long it was from the Creation to the Flood) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; especially considering the long Lives of Men, amounting to eight hundred, or nine hundred Years; and consequently the long time they had to apply themselves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am apt enough to be of *Mercator's* Opinion, who placing the sixteen Dynasties of the Kings of *Egypt* (where *Eusebius* begins to calculate the *Egyptian* times) at the first planting of that Country by the Sons of *Noah*, reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the Flood, and to reach very near the times of the first Creation. That, *Misraim* the Son of *Ham* was possessed of *Egypt*, within two hundred Years after the Flood, is a truth undoubted. Nor see I any cause to doubt, but that in the like space of time from the first Creation, it might be planted also by the Sons of *Adam*: considering, as we ought to do, that in the Infancy of the World, when the Bodies of Men were most perfect and of greatest vigour, they observed no degree of Kindred or Consanguinity; nor tied themselves so strictly to one Woman as they should have done. And for the Names of all the Kings of those several Dynasties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, such as that of *Seth*; or upon Altars of Stone, as in those of *Joppa*; or *Misraim* might have them by Tradition from the hands of *Noah*, and so deliver them by Tale unto his Posterity; the *Egyptians* being generally very good *Heralds*, and

† Marlham has made all this clear as the Light, since the Death of Dr. Heylin, and proved those Egyptian Dynasties to be contemporary, three or more at a time, which now being printed one after another, make that specious show of Antiquity.

standing very much on their own Antiquity†. And if this may be said of *Egypt* (as for my part I see no reason but it may) then may the like be said of all Countries else, that they had their several Kings and Rulers, and Set-Forms of Government: the Fathers of Families in those times, having the Command and Sovereignty over all that descended of them. Nor make I any question of it, but they had several Languages and Forms of Speech, at least to the Dialect and Pronunciation; although the Radicals of the Language might remain the same. But being there are no Remainers of this first Plantation, unless we will give credit to some Jewish Fables, who tell us of some Giants who saved themselves upon Mount *Sion*; or that of *Nicholas Damascenus*, who speaks of some that saved themselves on an high Hill called *Haris*, in some part of *Armenia*, I shall the less insist upon it. Nor had I stood so long upon these first

Ages, which *Moses* passeth over with so short a Narrative, but that it is affirmed by *Porcius*, a right learned Jesuit, that neither *Egypt* nor *Assyria*, nor the rest of the World, was planted and inhabited before the Flood; and that upon no stronger reason, for ought I can find, but that it is affirmed in the last words of the tenth of *Genesis*, That by these (that is to say, by the Posterity of the Sons of *Noah*) were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood. Out of which words he thus concludeth, *Quo significatur, talem divisionem non fuisse ante Diluvium*; by which it doth appear (saith he) that in the times before the Flood was no such division.

'Tis true, that this division of the World by the Sons of *Noah*, hath the best evidence in Scripture, because there is express Text for it, which is not for the first Plantations. But looking on the great encrease of Mankind before the Flood, that saying of *Berosus* will prove tantamount to a Text of Scripture, *ad comparandis novas sedes necessitatem compulisse*, that they were driven by necessity to seek new dwellings, the necessity of providing Victuals for themselves and their Families, being as strong a motive unto such dispersions, as the Confusion of Tongues was afterwards. The difference is, that that which such necessity would have done in long tract of time, the Confusion of Tongues did in an Instant: not only making those proud Builders to give over the finishing of the Tower which they had begun; but to unite themselves with such, whose Language came most near to that which themselves were Masters of. It was high time, no question, to desist from this proud Attempt, when the Labourer understood not what the Workmen called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his expectation. But because some Plantations had no reference to the Confusion of Tongues, but were made before it, or on the sending out of such Colonies as were nearest to the place where the *Ark* did rest, I think it not amiss to resolve that Question touching the resting of the *Ark*, on which the Plantations of the East have so great dependance. All that the Scripture telleth us of it, is, that the *Ark* resteth on the Mountains of *Ararat*, but where those Mountains are, that it telleth us not. I know *Josephus* and some other of more eminent Note, (but such as ground themselves upon his Authority) affirm, those Mountains of *Ararat* to be the Hills of *Armenia*: which they do chiefly on these Reasons: First, because *Armenia* is called *Ararat* in the Book of God, as it is confessedly; And secondly, Because of an old Tradition countenanced by *Berosus*, and some others of the ancient Writers cited by *Josephus*, affirming, that on the *Gordian* Mountains in *Armenia major*, some of the reliques of the *Ark* were remaining in their times, and used as a preservative against Inchantments. Which notwithstanding, I incline rather to the Opinion of *Goropius Becanus* (who amongst many strange Whimseys broached some notable Truths) by whom the *Ark* is said to rest on the top of Mount *Caucasus* in the Confines of *Tartary*, *Persia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greatest consequence: the first whereof is grounded upon evident reason; the second on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon Reason, is the exceeding populousity of those Eastern Countries, into which none of those by whom the World was planted after the Confusion of Languages, are yet reported to have travelled with their several Colonies, by any who have took most pains in this discovery. Those infinite numbers which *Staurobat*, one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians*, brought into the Field against *Semiramis*; and the vast Army of *Zoroaster*, the King of *Bactria*, conducted out of that one Province against *Ninus*, are proof enough, that those Countries were of an elder Plantation,* than to be a second or third Casting of some other Swarm settled in *Persia* or *Assyria* after the Confusion. For *Ninus*, who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchild of *Nimrod*; and I must needs look upon it, as a thing impossible, that those vast Ar-

mies

mies which *Semiramis* was able to raise out of all her Dominions, should be encountered by one King with an equal force, and that of his own Subjects only; if that one King, and those his Subjects had been some late Colony of those new Plantations, and not possessed of a Country peopled and inhabited before that *Confusion*. Nor was it but upon some good ground, that the *Scythians* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucasus*) were generally esteemed the most ancient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Egyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitors with this publick Verdict, *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*: which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the *Ark* unto them (though perhaps that ground long since forgotten, was not stood upon) and the dwelling of *Noah* and his Children near the place of the *Ark*, till numbers and necessity compelled them to enlarge their Border. And in the enlarging of their Borders, I shall make no question, but that such Parts as lay nearest, were peopled and possessed before those which lay furthest off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages since. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument, yet it falls short of that which comes from the Text it self, both in authority and weight; where it is said of the Heads of those several Families which afterwards joined together in the building of *Babel*, that *As they went from the East, they found a Plain in the Land of Shinaar, and there they abode*, Gen. 11. 2. If then they came from the East to the Land of *Shinaar*, as the Text saith plainly that they did, it might well be, that they came from those Parts of *Asia*, on the South of *Caucasus*, which lie East of *Shinaar*, though somewhat bending to the North; impossible they should come from the *Gordiean* Mountains in the greater *Armenia* (supposed to be the Hills which the *Ark* did rest on) which lie not only full North of *Shinaar*, but many degrees unto the West. For *Babylonia*, or *Shinaar*, is situate in the Latitude of 35, and the Longitude of 79 and 80. The Latitude of the *Gordiean* Mountains in 41, and their Longitude in 75. By which accompt those Mountains are six Degrees more Northwards, and five Degrees more Westwards than the Land of *Shinaar*: by no means to be reckoned on the East of that Valley, except we make *Moses* (whose hand God guided in his Books) to speak God knows what, or, in plain terms, to speak plain nonsense. And though the Scripture be so clear, that it needs no Commentary, yet the perplexities I find amongst those of the other Opinion, in sifting out of the authority of so plain a Text, do add, in my conceit, some moment and weight unto it. For some will have the Mountains of *Ararat* to be indeed on the North of the Land of *Shinaar*, but with some bending towards the East; which, were it true, as nothing is more truly false; *Moses* had never told us that they came from the East; but from some Countries of the North, which lay towards the East. Others will have a double progress of the Heads of those several Families: First, from the Mountains of *Ararat*, or the Plains of *Armenia*, to the Fields of *Affryia* and *Susiana*; And secondly, from thence to the Land of *Shinaar*. But of this first Journey there is *ne gry quidem*, not so much as any one syllable in all the Scripture; besides the needlessness of making them go so far about, and to cross over the great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, whereas they had a shorter and an easier passage. *Capellus*, singular by himself, quarrelleth with the Translation (received without dispute by all other Critics) and will not have *Hebrew Kedom* to be rendred East, but to signifie that Region, whatsoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kedom* the Son of *Ismael*, of whom we find mention, Gen. 25. 15. But then, besides his quarrel with all other Translations, he supposed a former progress from the Mountains of *Ararat* to that Land of *Kedom*, and consequently falleth into a part of the Error before refuted. *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Affryians* called all those parts of their Empire beyond *Tigris*, the Eastern, and those on this side of it the

Western, would thence conclude, that these Heads may be said by *Moses* to have come from the East, because they came from one of the Eastern Provinces of the *Affryian* Empire. Every way faulty in this point: For, besides that the greatest part of *Armenia* lieth on the North of *Tigris*, and the least part of it on the West, and therefore not within the compass of the Eastern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this division was in use in the time of *Moses*, we may as rationally conclude, and with less absurdity, that the first Inhabitants of *Britain*, might have been said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any Writer of that time, to come out of the West (though he well knew they came from *Gaul*, which is plainly East of it) because *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the West parts of the Empire.

Having thus fortified our Opinion both with Scripture and Reason, the Arguments produced against us will be easily answered. For though *Armenia* be granted to be the Country of *Ararat*; yet the Mountains of *Ararat* may extend beyond the Country. That mighty ridge of Mountains which beginning in *Asia* the less, run as far as *India* (by the Ancients commonly called Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Moses* the Mountains of *Ararat*, because that was the first Country of the greater *Asia* by which they passed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly; just as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it, though it washed many Shores besides: Or as some Hills with us are called *Malvern* Hills, because they are highest near that Village, though they extend themselves into other Lordships. And as for the Authority of Tradition, and the Testimony of humane Writers, which (as before was said) are brought in for an help, touching some Reliques of the *Ark* to be seen on the *Gordiean* Mountains; I look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For first *Berosus* (followed herein by all the rest) reports it only on the ground of uncertain hear-say; which is a weak Staff for so heavy a Cause to rely upon. Secondly, To balance the Authority of *Berosus* (if of any credit in this case) we have the testimony and authority of *Portius Cato*, as ancient almost as he, affirming positively, *In Scythia Saga renatum esse mortale genus*, that Mankind was repaired in that part of *Scythia*, which after was possessed by the *Sacans*: and they, we know, dwelt in those parts of *Scythia* which lay next to *Bactria*, a Province of the *Persian* Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucasus*. And Thirdly, unto one Tradition to oppose another; those of Mount *Caucasus* do averr, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, near the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah's* Plantation: Of which we shall speak more when we come to *Tartary*.

It is now time I should go forwards with the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide dispersions; for whom it was high time to comfort themselves with such as they could understand; the necessity of Discourse and Conference on that fatal Accident, making them lay aside their old Acquaintances, and join themselves to others of their own new Language. I know that many Learned Men, according to the number of Names laid down in the tenth of *Genesis*, being seventy, have made so many Languages to have been spoken upon that *Confusion*: And that of those, twenty six being the Posterity of *Sem*, dispersed themselves about *Asia* the greater; thirty others of the Loins of *Cham*, Peopled *Africk*, *Arabia*, and *Syria*; and that the fourteen which remain, being the Issue of *Japhet*, withdrew themselves towards *Europe*, and the lesser *Asia*. But this, as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a vain conceit, though many more improbable, have passed for currant. It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sons, eleven in all, had but one Language amongst them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the Land of *Canaan*. And as for *Jostan* and his Sons, being thirteen in number, considering that he was the younger Brother of *Phaleg*, in whose time this *Confusion* happen'd; it is most probable, and avowed for a certain

certain truth, that either none of them were born, or, if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the design of the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and consequently could not be within the curse of confounded Languages. So, here is near a third part of the Seventy to be taken off, as possibly might all the Sons of *Aliraim* be, if it were worth the while to insilt upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the dispersion into the said three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but false enough, if understood of any present separation of the Sons of *Noah*, into parts so far remote and distant from one another. For what needed any such remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one near another, and so enjoy that civil intercourse, and mutual Society which the nature of Mankind doth most delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joining themselves to Men of the same Language with them, did first set down upon the places near the Valley of *Shinaar*: and from thence propagated and dispersed themselves into further Countries, as either the necessity of providing of Victuals, or seeking better and more fruitful Habitations for themselves and theirs, or the desire of being out of the reach of some potent Neighbours, whose Yoke they found too heavy for their Necks to bear, did enforce them to it. And being so settled to their Minds, the addition of a few more Years brought the like necessity of sending Colonies farther off, as they grew more or less populous in their Generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongst whom one Swarm sends out another, that begets a *Castling*, till the whole Ground or Garden grow too small to hold them. For thus (to seek no further for an instance of it) the *Gauls* first planted *Britain*; the *Britains*, *Ireland*, and *Irish Scotland*, and the *Iles*. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to sustain, and too narrow to contain their Multitudes, *angustos se fines habere arbitantes*, as in *Cæsar's Commentaries*, intended to plant themselves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* flying the dreadful Sword of *Jeshuab* the Son of *Nun*, sought them out dwellings further off from the present danger, whereof we shall speak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements did the first People after the Flood, distribute and disperse themselves into several Parts, as their Posterities have done since, and will do to the end of the World, in all probability: Giving their own Names, or some Names of their own imposing, upon the Countries planted or discovered by them. And though the length, and consuming nature of time, hath either changed or worn out the Names imposed by the first *Adventurers*, I mean the first *Planters* after the Flood: yet all the Footsteps of Antiquity are not so defaced, but that some Nations and Cities have preserved the Memory of their first Founders and true Parents. In the discovery whereof, as *Josephus* in his Book of *Jewish Antiquities* did first lead the way, and gave good light to those who have travelled in it, so a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the Tenth of *Genesis*, Sir *Walter Raleigh* in his excellent History, and lately by *Bochartus*, a French Writer, in his

† See also Dr. Stillingfleet in his *Origines Sacrae*.

Book called *Geographia Sacra*. † Out of those Learned Labours, and some Animadversions of mine own, I shall here say somewhat concerning the Plantation of the World by the Sons of *Noah*; leaving the more exact and punctual description of it under the History of those several Lands and Countries which were planted by them.

First therefore to begin with the Posterity of *Sem*, as those who fixed themselves in *Asia*, without wandering further; we find *Sem* to have had five Sons, that is to say, *Elam*, *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud* and *Aram*; of whom there is no Issue on Record in Holy Scripture, but only

of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*; and of these two there are four Sons given to *Aram*, viz. *Uz*, *Hull*, *Gether*, and *Mefech*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Schub*. To *Schub* was born *Heber*; to *Heber*, *Phaleg*, the Ancestor of *Abraham*, and *Jectan*, the Father of those thirteen Sons, whose Names we shall rehearse hereafter, if occasion be. From *Elam*, who is first named, did descend the *Elamites*, a People bordering on the *Medes*, and therefore oft-times join'd together in the Scriptures, as, *Go up, O Elam, Besiege, O Media*, *Esa. 21. 2.* And all the Kings of *Elam*, all the Kings of the *Medes*, *Jer. 25. 25.* And in the Second of the *Acts*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in Rank and File, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principal City of this People was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the second of *Maccab. 6. 2.* sufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there consecrated to *Diana*. A City seated on the Banks of the River *Eubus*, and neighbouring close to *Susiana*, which therefore is sometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan. 8. 2.* I was (saith he) in the Palace of *Susa*, in the Province of *Elam*: where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* only, but as it gave denomination unto all those Nations whom they after mastered. The second Son of *Sem* is *Assur*, of whom there is no question made amongst the Learned, but that he was the Father of the *Assyrians*, called *Assyres* in some old *Greek* Writers: Not of the whole People of that great and unweildy Empire, who sometimes generally pass by the name of *Assyrians*, but of the People of *Assyria*, strictly and properly so called, as it denote the Country about *Nineve* (the Regal City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Juxta hunc circuitum Adiabene*, *Assyria prius temporibus vocata*, as in *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Lib. 33.* *Arphaxad* comes next after *Assur*, and him *Josephus* makes to be the Father of the *Chaldeans*, called anciently *Arphaxadei*, if he tells us true. But others tell us, and that more probable perhaps, that he planted in that part the *Assyria* which was first called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arraphitis*; by which name it occurreth in the Tables of *Ptolomy*. *Lud* the fourth Son is generally said to be the Father of the *Lydians*, a People of *Asia* the less; the names of *Lud*, and *Lydi* (or *Lydi* as the *Græcians* call them) being much alike. And it is possible enough that some of the Posterity of this *Lud* might afterwards settle in those Parts, and call the Country by the name of *Lud*, their common Ancestor; as the Posterity of *Abraham* took unto themselves the name of *Hebrews* from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their Father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* should in Person go so far from the rest of the Sons of *Sem*, I cannot easily imagine; for, *Aram* the fifth and last (as they stand in order of the Text) sets himself down close by his Brethren in the Land of *Syria*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Aramites* was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the several Provinces which were hence denominated, we shall hereafter speak more fully, when we come to *Syria*. Only take now this testimony and acknowledgment from the Pen of *Strabo*. *Quos nos Syros vocamus, ipsi Syri Aramēnios & Arameos vocant.* Those (saith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themselves *Arameans*, or *Aramenians*. In, and about the same Parts did the four Sons of *Aram* set themselves and their Families; *Uz* in that part of *Syria* which is called *Syria Damascena*, or *Aram Dammejek*: the building of the great City of *Damascus* being generally ascribed unto him: and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damascus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hull*, or *Chull*, the next Son of *Aram*, whom both *Josephus* and *S. Hieron* settle in *Armenia*, or *Aramenia*, as in *Strabo*: and that not improbably, considering that there is a Region in *Armenia*, which *Stephanus* calls *Cholobetene*; and divers Cities in that tract, which still preserve the Radicals of *Hul*, or *Chul*, as *Cholus*, *Cholnata*, *Cholimnam*, *Colla*, and *Colana*, whereof mention is made in the Tables of *Ptolomy*. For *Gether*, the third Son of *Aram*;

Aram; it is not yet agreed on where to find his Dwelling. *Josephus*, contrary to all reason, placeth him in *Bactria*; and *Mercer*, with as little, in *Caria*, a Province of the lesser *Asia*, and *Acarnania* of *Greece*. *Junius* sets him down in the Province of *Cassiotis*, and *Selcusis*, near his Father *Aram*, where *Ptolomy* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nations called by *Pliny*, *Gindareni*: *Bochartus* on the Banks of the River *Centrites*, which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Getri*, as he conjectureth it might be, the Controversie were at an end. But being that we find in *Ptolomy*, a City of *Albania* (which bordereth on *Armenia*) called *Getara*, and a River of the same Country called *Getras*; I see no cause why we should seek further for the Seat of *Gether*; though the Greek Copies (more subject to corruption in the times of Ignorance, than the Latin were) instead of *Getara* read *Gagara*. But if this be too far to set him, we shall find *Mus* or *Musch*, the last Son, planted nearer hand, even in the Northern Parts of *Syria*, towards *Mesopotamia*, near the Hill called *Mafius*: at the Foot whereof there is a People, which *Stephanus* called *Mafieni*; and thereabouts a River which in *Xenophon* is named *Masca*. Both which do evidently declare from what Root they come.

Come we next to the second Branch of the House of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*, whom we left settled in the Region of *Arapachitis*, in or near *Assyria*. Not far from which, in *Susiana*, a Province of the *Persian* Empire, there is a City of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Ptolomy's* Tables, and the 23d Book of *Amianus Marcellinus*. And unto this the Authority of *Eustathius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, Σάλα ἀπ' ἧς Σουσιανοί, The People of *Susiana* came from *Sala*. But this, as I conceive, must be understood only of that Part of this People, which lived in and about the City of *Sala*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Susians*, or *Susiani*, which borrowed their denomination from another Root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the People of the *Hebraei*, or *Hebrews*, do derive their Name: And to him *Phaleg* his first-born, who in all probability gave name to the Town called *Phalga*, situate on the River *Euphrates*, not far from *Seleucia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book *de Urbibus*, and by *Ptolomy* in his *Geography*; where it is placed right on the Banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Chaboras* mingles Waters with it; but there corruptly called *Pharga*, instead of *Phalga*.

But the great increase of *Sem's* Posterity came by *Joktan*, the second Son of *Eber*, the Father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whose Names are on Record in the tenth of *Genesis*, where it is said, that *their dwelling was from Mesha, as thou goest to Sephar, a Mount in the East*. And here I must crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath wronged *Joktan* and his Sons into a little Corner of *Arabia Felix*, where I can find no room for them, and less reason to place them. For being that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his Posterity, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himself confesseth, it must needs be, that they had spread themselves over all the Country, before any of the Sons of *Joktan* were of Age sufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Joktan* is credibly supposed not to have been born when such of *Noah's* Posterity as are mention'd *Gen. 10.* dispersed themselves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his Children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledge in two several places. First, granting that neither *Phaleg* nor *Joktan* were present at the building of *Babel*, *multo minus Joktanis filii post aliquot annos geniti*; much less the Sons of *Joktan*, begot many years after, *Lib. 1. c. 16.* And secondly, affirming that *Joktan* and his Children came not within the Curse of *Confounded Languages*, *quia nondum erant geniti*, because then unborn, *c. 15.* Hereupon I conclude it to be very improbable that *Joktan* and his Children should find room in the best parts of *Arabia Felix*, which *Chus* and his Posterity

had inhabited so long before. And as it is improbable that the Sons of *Chus* would plant themselves in the worst part of the Country for so many Ages, and leave the best and richest of it for some new Adventurers: So it is impossible that the Sons of *Joktan* should either be removed so far from the rest of the House of *Arphaxad*, who were all planted on the East of the River *Tygris*, as was before shewed: or that they should be able, had they been so minded, to break through the whole Countries of the *Assyrians*, *Chusites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmost Corners of *Arabia Felix*. He that believes they did, or could, must have a stronger Faith than mine; but it shall never conduce any thing to his *Justification*. Nor am I moved at all at that which seems to me to be his weightiest Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joseph Ben Abdallarif*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers, affirm, that *Joktan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Hagar* the Concubine and Servant of *Abraham*; because that People so report it for their greater Glory.

And for the several Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whose Original he ascribes to the Sons of *Joktan*, I see so many transpositions of Syllables, alterations even of Radical Letters, such and so many wrested Originations, as by the like liberty of making *quidlibet ex quolibet*, it were no difficult matter to find place for them in any Country whatsoever. For how extorted and unnatural are the Derivations of the *Allumacote* from *Almodad*, of the *Manita* from *Abimail*, of the *Joharita* from *Jobab*? How impossible is it that *Jarech* should give name to the Isle which *Ptolomy* calleth Νῆσος Ἰερὰκον, *Insula Jeracuma* or *Accipitrum*, as the Latin hath it; that is to say, the Isle of *Hawks*, from the abundance of *Hawks* which were therein bred: There being another Island of the same Name near unto *Sardinia* (so called for the self-same Reason) and a Town called *Farax* in *Hammoniaca*, a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jarech* might as well lay claim (if that would carry it) as to this *Jeracum*, or *Accipitrum*, in the Gulf of *Arabia*? How improbable that *Ophir* should give name to *Urphre*, a poor Isle of the *Red Sea*, *Obal* to *Sinus Avalites* in *Aethiopia*, on the other side of that Gulf? Or that *Dicla* must be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reason, but because the Word signifieth a *Palm-tree*, of which that Country yields good plenty, as if some other Countries did not yield as much? These and some other Reasons hereafter following have made me bold to differ from that learned Man in this particular, whose Industry and Abilities I do otherwise honour; and rather to look for *Joktan* and his Sons in the East-part of the World, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with reference to the Wilderness, or Land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Genesis* was written) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet so far I must yield to that learned Man, that some of the Descendants of *Joktan* in long tract of time, moved with the Rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themselves upon the Sea-Coasts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this Day, moved with the Wealth and Trade of *India*, have possess'd themselves of many of the Ports and Pieces on the Shores thereof.

Now the Text telleth us of the Sons of *Joktan*, that *their dwelling was from Mesha, as thou goest to Sephar, a Mount of the East*; so that by these two Boundaries, *Mesha* and *Sephar*, their Habitation must be found. I know *Bochartus* would have *Mesha* to be *Musa*, a noted Port-Town on the South-west of *Arabia Felix*, and *Sephar* to be the City of *Sephar* in the South-east of that Country; that City giving name to some Mount adjoining. But being they both lie directly South of the place in which *Moses* wrote, I cannot see how this Position can agree with the Word of Scripture; and therefore we must look for both in some other place. And first to find out *Mesha*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himself, who maketh *Mesh*, the last of the Sons of *Aram*, the Son of *Sem* (accord-

(according to the general Opinion of most Writers else) to be planted in the Mountainous tracts of *Mesopotamia*, from him called *Mons Masius*, more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a *Mount of the East*; if it be the Southern part of *Mount Imaus*, by *Ptolomy* named *Bitigo*, by the Moderns *Gates* extending from *Mount Caucasus*, to the *Cape Comari* in the hither *India*, as *Postellus* a right learned Man doth conceive it to be: We have, without more difficulty, found out the dwellings of the Sons of *Joktan*, according to the bounds laid down in Holy Scripture. But for fear this may not satisfy, for want of some Seconds to *Postellus* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a City of *Aria*, directly East from *Mons Masius*, or the dwellings of *Mesb*; both in the East parts of the World, with reference unto the place in which *Moses* writ: *Mons Masius* being placed by *Ptolomy* in the 74 degree of *Longitude*, and the 37 of *Latitude*; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more towards the East, but with no more than two degrees of *Latitude* super-added to it. And this agreeth to the position assigned to the Sons of *Joktan*, by *Josephus*, *Eusebius*, and *St. Hierome*; the emendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Josephus*, that the *Joktanites* possessed all that Tract, ἀπὸ Κωπηνῶ ποταμῆς Ἰνδου, ἕως πρὸς αὐτὸν Σέραι τινὰς, which lieth about *Kophenus*, a River of *India*, together with such parts of *Syria* as did border near it. These words being borrowed from *Josephus*, both by *Eusebius* and *S. Hierom*; the first instead of *Syria* reads *Seria*; and the other *Feria*, but neither rightly: there being no such place in the World as *Feria*; and *Syria* and *Seria* (or the Country of the *Seres*) lying too far off to border on *Cophenus* a River of *India*. *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we should there read *Aria*, and withal granting, as he may, that *Aria* in the largest latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Parapomifus* and *Arachosia*, extendeth as far East-ward as the River *Cophenus*. So that we have found out a dwelling for the Sons of *Joktan*, betwixt *Mons Masius* and *Siphare*, a Town of *Aria*: which probably might give name to some Mount adjoining, as *Saphar* by *Bochartus* is supposed to do to some of the *Arabian Hills* bordering near unto it. And as these situations do agree exactly with the meaning of those ancient Writers, so is it also very suitable to the other Plantations of the Sons of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all dispute, that *Phaleg* and *Joktan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when so many of the residue of *Noah's* Posterity removed towards *Shinar*; kept themselves under the tuition of their Grandfather *Noah*; or at least wandred not from the Plantation of their Father *Arphaxad*, till *Joktan's* Sons being grown to be Fathers of Families, were forced to cast about for new Habitations. And when necessity compelled them to seek new Seats, I would fain know why they should think of making to themselves a way to *Arabia Felix*, through Countries peopled and possessed a long time before; when they had Elbow-room enough on the East of *Tygris*, and the unpeopled Countries of some parts of *India* lay so near at hand.

Nor want we as good evidence, and as little forced for some of their Plantations in the Eastern parts, as *Bochartus* hath fancied for them in *Arabia*: For *Almodad* might probably be the Founder of *Almodena*, the Metropolis of *Mesopotamia*, not far from *Mesia* or *Mons Masius* the Western Boundary: and *Farab* of the Nation of the *Arachosians* inhabiting near *Siphare* the Eastern limit, assigned unto the Sons of *Joktan*. With what an easie change might *Obal* or *Cobal* be supposed to be the Father of the *Cabolites* of *Paropamisus*? *Hadoram* of the *Orites* an *Indian* People near unto the other? But these North-Eastern Parts being Peopled, or not very pleasant, how many of the Sons of *Joktan* shall we find in the Southern parts of *India*? *Bochartus* himself confesseth that the Land of *Ophir* (another of the Sons of *Joktan*) was a part of *India*, but whether *Sumatra*, *Taprobane*, or *Aurea Chersonesus*, I

dispute not here. Like evidence there is for *Saba*, remembrances of whose Name are found in *Sabalaffi* one of the mouths of the River *Indus*: *Sabana*, a City of the *Golden Chersonese*, a River in the same Tract named *Sabanus*, and a City called *Sabe*: besides the whole Nation of the *Sabæi* mentioned by *Dionysius* in his *Periegesis*. And though some late Criticks read it *Siba* instead of *Sabæi*, (as that there was an *Indian* Nation called *Siba* is confessed on all sides:) yet seeing *Eustathius* finds the *Sabæi* in this Country also, I cannot see but that there should be room enough in *India* for both People to dwell in. For *Abimail*, another of the Sons of *Joktan*, we find more evident footsteps of him in the *Mali* or *Malli*, an *Indian* People in *Maleta* and *Maliba*, two Towns of *India*, in *Maleus* an *Indian* Mountain, and finally in *Malæi Colon*, a Promontory of *Aurea Chersonesus*, then in the *Manitæ* of *Bochartus*. For if *Abimail* signifie the Father of the *Mali*, as he saith it doth, he was more like to be the Father of the *Muli*, commonly and literally so called, whom we find in *India*, than that we should be forced to look for them in the *Manitæ*, or look for the *Manitæ* in the House of *Abimail*. If *Diela* must be planted in *Arabia Felix* for no better reason than because the word signifieth a *Palm*, whereof there is plenty in that Country; I doubt not but to find as many *Palms* to plant by amongst the *Indians*, as *Bochartus* doth among the *Arabians*. And finally, if *Chatramis*, or *Chatramatilis* an *Arabian* Region have such resemblance to the name of *Chatsarmaveth*, as to take that Appellation from him, as *Bochartus* telleth us it did, we may conclude with equal, if not better reason, that the *Chadramasitæ* an *Indian* People, seated upon the mouth of the River *Indus*, upon whose streams some of the residue of his Brethren had their Habitations, had their first Original from that *Chatsarmaveth*. For *Havilah* or *Chavilah*, the Ancients generally set him in the *Indies* also, not far from *Saba* and *Ophir* two of his Brethren: to whose authority I submit, because I find a Province in the *Golden Chersonese*, called the Kingdom of *Ava*, and thought to be so called from this very Man. And I conceive the like also of the rest of the *Joktanites*, whose Habitations might be found in *India*, or near *Mesb* and *Sepha*, if one would take that liberty of Criticising, altering, and transposing Letters, as *Bochartus* doth, only to fix them in a place where they never were. Suffice it that this short Essay may inform the Reader, that *Bochartus* was too confident a lover of his own Opinion, where he affirms, *Nec locum alium Sephar nomine, nec ulla posterorum Joktan in Aria aut India vestigia jam superesse*; that is to say, that there is no such place as *Sephar*, nor any track or footprint of the Sons of *Joktan* to be found in *Aria*, or the *Indies*. The contrary whereof is so clearly evidenced.

These were the Generations and Dispersions of the Sons of *Shem*, contracted in a narrower compass than either the Posterity of *Cham* or *Japhet*: of whom the first, besides the great footing which he had in *Asia*, did possess all *Africk*, and the other, besides his share in the greater *Asia*, filled almost all the lesser *Asia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Isles thereof, with his fruitful Progeny. And first beginning with *Cham*, we find him the Father of four Sons, that is to say, *Cush*, *Misraim*, *Phut* and *Canaan*; of which, only *Phut* the third Son hath no issue assigned him. To *Cush* the Eldest Son were born *Seba* and *Havilah*, and *Sabtah*, *Nimrod*, *Sabtecha*, and *Raamah*, who was the Father of *Sheba* and *Dedan*. And unto *Misraim* the Second Son were born *Ludim*, and *Ananim*, *Lehabim*, *Nephtubim*, *Pathrusim*, *Captchorim*, and *Casubim*, who was the Father of *Philistim*. Of *Canaan* and his Issue we shall speak hereafter. In the mean time we will dispose of these first branches of the stock of *Cham*, beginning first with *Chus* the eldest, and so descending to the rest of this first Line. And first for *Chus* though it be generally said both by the *Greek* and *Jewish* Writers, that he was the Father of the *Æthiopians* in the heart of *Africa*; yet upon better search he is found to have gone no further than *Arabia*, possessing him-

himself of a good part of that which is called *Petrea*, and some part of *Arabia Felix*. For whereas *Zippora* the Wife of *Moses*, was daughter unto *Jethro* the Priest or Prince of *Madian*, *Exod. 2. v. 16, &c.* and yet is called an *Athiopian Woman*, in the 12th. of *Numb. v. 1.* It must needs be, that by *Athiopian* in the last place must be meant an *Arabian*: for *Madian* doubtless was a City of *Arabia* near unto the *Red Sea*, as is apparent by *Josephus* for the *Jews*, *Ptolomy* for the *Grecians*, and *S. Hieron* for the *Latin Writers*. But we shall canvass this more thoroughly in its proper place: the strength of Reason serving for a supplement of that one defect, which is, that there is no remainder of the Name of *Chus* in any of the Cities, Promontories, Hills, or Rivers of all that Country, by which his planting there might be made more evident. *Sheba*, the eldest Son of *Chus*, sets himself down on the Shores of the *Red Sea*, as near his Father as he could; becoming the Original of the great and wealthy Nation of the *Sabeans*; and so much celebrated City of *Saba*, memorable for abundance of the best Frankincense, being their *Metropolis* or head City. A Nation seated in the most Southern part of this *Peninsula*, subject in *Solomon's* time to that famous Lady called in the Old Testament, from her Country, the Queen of *Sheba*; and in the new Testament from the situation of it, the Queen of the *South*: the holy Spirit in both places giving her an ample and remarkable testimony.

For *Havilah* or *Chavilah*, the second of the Sons of *Chus*, most probable it is that he possessed himself of that part of *Arabia* which lay nearest unto *Babylonia*, and that he gave name to that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Pison* is said to encompass, *Gen. 2. 21.* Some footsteps of his name remain in the *Chaulotæi* of *Eratosthenes* the *Chaulasti* of *Festus Anienus*, but more plainly in the *Chavilei* of *Pliny*; being all three but one People, though thus diversly named; and all of them planted towards the *Persian Gulf*, and so to *Babylon*. On the same Shore of the *Persian Gulf*, we are to look for *Sabta* the third Son of *Chus*, where *Ptolomy* informs us of a City called *Saphta*, and of an Island in the same Gulf called *Sophta* also. From whence in probability some of this People might pass over into *Persia*, on the other side of the Gulf, and there gives names to the *Sabtei*, which by the transposition of the Letter *T*, are by *Ptolomy* called the *Stabæi*. That *Nimrod* the fourth Son of *Chus* did first plant himself in *Babylonia*, the Scripture is so plain and positive, that nothing need be added to it. Of *Sabteca* the fifth Son, I confess I can find no tract in any of the ancient Authors. For why we should admit of so great a change, as first, of *B* into *M*, and then of *T* into *D*, (which could not easily be done by very careless Transcribers) and so find *Stabeca* in *Samidace*, a City or Country of the *Carmanians* on the *Persian* side of the Gulf, I can see no reason: And therefore rather chuse to mingle him and his Posterity with the Son of *Sabta*, and the Children of his Brother *Regma*, all planted on the same Shore of the *Persian Gulf*. For that *Regma* (our *English Bibles* call him *Raama*) was settled on the Banks of the Bay of *Persia*, hath so good authority, that there is no dispute to be made of that: *Ptolomy* placing there the City of *Regma* (*Regama* it is called in the *Latin Translation*) by which name it occurreth in *Stephanus* also in his Book *De Urbibus*, *Kαὶ Ῥήγμα μετὰ τὸν Περσικὸν κόλπον*. And *Regma*, on the *Persian Gulf*, as his words there are. And not far from thence we are to look for his Son *Sheba*; both being joined together in the Book of God; and both there are said to busie and employ themselves in the Trade of Merchandizing: *The Merchants of Shebah and Raamah* (saith the Text) *they were thy Merchants; they occupied in thy Fairs with chief of all Spices, and with all precious Stones, and Gold*, *Ezek. 27. 22.* So that the Nations of the *Sabeans*, though descended at the first from several Parents, inhabited the lower parts of *Arabia Felix*, from one Sea to the other, as evidently appeareth by those words of *Pliny*; where he informeth us most truly,

that the *Sabeans*, an *Arabian People*, well known for their abundance of Frankincense, *ad utraque maria perfectis gentibus habitare*, had spread themselves over all the Country, even from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Persia*. Finally, in the same Tract we find *Dedan* the other Son of *Regma*, and the last of all the Sons of *Chus*: there being on the mouth of the *Persian Gulf* (but on the *Arabian Coast* thereof) not only a City, but a Province called by the name of *Dedan*, which both *Ortelius*, and some other late Geographers do take notice of. And more than so, the Prophet *Ezekiel* joins him with his Brother *Sheba*, and makes them both to follow the same trade of Merchandize; *The men of Dedan were thy Merchants*, Chap. 27. 15. *Sheba and Dedan, and the Merchants of Tarshish*, Chap. 38. 13. *They brought thee horns of Ivory and Ebony*, saith the Prophet in the former Text.

The head of the next House of the Race of *Cham*, was *Misraim*, the second Son, of whom it is generally affirmed, that leaving his elder Brother *Chus* and his Posterity, in the rich and delectable Countries of *Arabia Felix*, and the next parts to *Babylonia*, or the Land of *Shinaar*, he went with his own Son and his Brother *Phut*, into *Africa*, and there planted *Egypt*. Of this there is no question amongst the Learned, though all the tracks and footsteps of *Misraim* be quite worn out: unless any thing of it were preserved in the word *Mesori*, by which the *Egyptians* anciently called the first Month in the Year; or in that of *Mesre*, by which name the *Arabians* call *Egypt* to this day: But being *Egypt* is called *Misraim* in the *Hebrew Bibles*, that only is sufficient without further evidence. And therefore leaving him in *Egypt*, let us look after his Son *Ludim*, whom he sent to People *Athiopia*, the next Country to him. For that this *Ludim* was the Father of those *Athiopians*, many good reasons are alledged. First, from the Text of *Isaiab*, Chap. 66. 19. and *Jer. 46. 9.* where *Lud* is said to be very skilful in drawing the Bow; which agrees punctually with the Character given unto the *Athiopians* by *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and others of the ancient Writers. Secondly, From the joining of the Children or People of *Ludim* with those of *Phul*, in the place of *Isaiab* before cited: which *Phul* may very probably be the City which the *Grecians* call *Phila*, situate not far from *Syene*, on the very borders of *Athiopia*, and anciently inhabited both by the *Athiopians* and *Egyptians*, as *Strabo*, and some others of the Ancients witness. Thirdly, from the conjunction of the Children of *Lud* or *Ludim*, with those of *Chus*, on the Gulf of *Arabia*, and those of *Phut*, or *Lybians*, on the other side of Mount *Atlas*, both next neighbours to them; as in *Ezek. 30. 5.* and that of *Jer.* above-mentioned; (where our *English* very strangely rendereth *Ludim* by the name of *Lydians*) which dwell too far off both from *Chus* and *Phut*, to be joined together in one action. But of this, more than enough already, the arguments being so strong, and so most demonstrative. I go on therefore to the next; only observing by the way, that the *Athiopians* mentioned in the Texts of our *English Bibles*, are not these of *Africa*, but the *Chusites* of *Arabia Felix*; our Translators always rendering *Chus* by *Athiopia*. The *Ananim*, who come next, I know not where to find, or in what place to look for them, unless they were the same with the *Amantes* of *Solinus*, and the *Hammanientes* of *Pliny*, a People seated on the Sea-side near the greater *Syrtis*, to which the neighbourhood of the *Lebaim* may give some Countenance; who seem to be the same with the People of *Lybia*, a Province seated betwixt *Egypt* and *Cyrenaica*, and were called *Libyægyptii* by the old Geographers, to difference them from the Inhabitants of the greater *Lybia*, whereof more hereafter. For the *Naphtubim*, I am also at a loss, unless we find them somewhere in *Cyrenaica*; and that some remnant of the name be in *Apruchisanum*, which occurs in *Ptolomy*. But for the *Patrusim*, I think no question need be made, but that they were the People of that Province of *Egypt*, which in divers

vers places of the Scripture is called *Pathros*, as *Esa.* 11. 11. *Jer.* 44. 1. *Ezek.* 29. 14. and seems to be that part of *Egypt* which is called *Thebais*, where *Ptolomy* placeth *Pathyris*, an In-land Town not far from *Thebe*, (and *Pathyris*, the Greek or *Septuagint* term *that*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Pathros*.)

Hitherto we have found the Nations which descended from the Sons of *Misraim* in *Egypt*, and the Countries adjoining to it. And there or thereabouts, we are to look for *Cophthorim*, and *Castubim*, the two Sons remaining. I know there hath been great pains taken to find the *Castubim* in *Colchis*, and the *Cophthorim* in *Cappadocia*, or *Pontus*, not far from *Trabezond*, where notwithstanding there is no track of the Names remaining. But this being so far off from *Egypt*, in, and near which both *Misraim* himself, and all the rest of his Sons were planted, I can by no means yield to it, though to content such Learned Men as would fain have it so, I think it possible enough that some of the *Egyptians* in succeeding times, moved with the fame of that great Wealth which *Colchis* was supposed to yield to some Adventurers, might leave their native Soil to inhabit there. And therefore I think rather, with the Learned *Junius*, that the *Castubim* were first planted in the Region of *Cassiotis*, (not far from *Damiata*, a chief Town of *Egypt*) which retains somewhat of the Name; and so doth *Coptus*, an old City of *Egypt*, of the name of *Cophthorim*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Cophthi*, which at this day is given to the Christians of *Egypt*, may not be thought to have its first rise from *Cophthorim*, rather than that they are so called *quasi Agophtii*, corruptly for *Agyphtii*, I must needs say I am not satisfied. Besides, it being clear in Scripture, that the *Castubim* and *Cophthorim* dwelt near together, and that the *Philistins* are said to descend from *Castubim*, if *Castubim* should go for *Colchis*, and *Cophthorim* for *Cappadocia*, we must first carry them I know not how far off from the rest of their Brethren, against the method of all Plantations; and then bring the *Philistins* back again from *Colchis*, to find a dwelling on the Borders of the Land of *Egypt*, from whence their Ancestors and Allies were so far remote. Whereas by settling these two Nations amongst the rest of their Brethren, the Journey of the *Philistins* unto *Canaan*, and settling themselves in the possessions of the *Avim* (a *Canaanitish* People) whom they had subdued, *Deut.* 2. 25. is both easie and natural. But before we follow these *Philistins* further in their new Plantation amongst the *Canaanites*, we will first see what became of *Phut*, the Third Son of *Cham*. And if we guide our selves in this *Labyrinth* by the clue of Antiquity, we shall find him settled West of his Brother *Misraim*, and so the *Atlantick* Ocean, the Lake of *Tritonis* parting their Dominions. Some Relicts of the Name there were in the time of *Josephus*, who telleth us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Pliny* makes mention of it; also *Ptolomy* takes notice of a River in those Parts called *Pthurb*, which comes very near it. And so doth *Isidore*, *Origin.* 1. 2. But *St. Hierom*, in my mind, puts it out of doubt, whose words I shall put down, and so leave *Africa*; *Phut* *Lybie*, à quo & *Mauritanie* *fluvius* usque ad præsens *Phut* dicitur, omnisque circa eum *Regio* *Phytensis* cuius rei multi *Scriptores* tam *Græci* quam *Latini* testes sunt. Where we have not only a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*, and many ancient Writers both Greek and Latin called to witness to it.

And now we should proceed to *Canaan* and his Sons (eleven in all) being the fourth and last branch of the House of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or near the Land of *Canaan*, we shall find him there; or meet with them in such Plantations and Colonies as they sent abroad, under the Title of *Phœnicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whose *Tents* God promised to enlarge, as indeed he did; spreading his Branches over *Europe*, the lesser *Asia*, and a great part of the greater also. To him were born seven Sons in all; that is to say, *Gomer* and

Magog, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Tubal*, *Mesech*, and *Thyras*: Of which the Issue of two only are upon Record, viz. *Askenaz*, *Riphat*, and *Togarma*, the Sons of *Gomer*; *Elisha*, *Tarshish*, *Kittim*, and *Dodanim*, the Sons of *Javan*. And first for *Gomer* and his Sons, the first possessed themselves of convenient Dwellings in the greater and the lesser *Asia*: *Gomer* himself first planting in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long retained his Name; and after changing that unpleasant and unfruitful Dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the City *Cimmeris*, in the days of *Pliny*, did preserve his Memory. For that the Posterity and People of *Gomer*, called at first *Gomerians*, came to take the name of *Cimmerians*, as of *Cimbri* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongst the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himself in the Greater *Phrygia*, so did his eldest Son *Askenaz* in *Phrygia Minor*, and the Country of *Troas*, spreading himself along upon the *Hellepont*, and those *Greek* Seas, as far as *Bitthynia*. In all which places there were left some memory of this Plantation. For in *Bitthynia* there is a Bay called *Sinus Ascanius*, together with a River and a Lake of the same name also. And in the lesser *Phrygia*, and the Country of *Troas*, there was both a City and a Province adjoining, anciently known by the name of *Ascania*, and the *Ascanie Insula* also on the Coast thereof. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in Honour of this *Askenaz*, the Kings and great Men of those Parts, took the name of *Ascanius*. Of which Name, besides *Ascanius* the Son of *Aeneas*, we find a King mention'd in the second of *Homer's* *Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the Siege of *Troy*. In the same Quarters of the World we find *Riphat* also, the Founder of the *Riphei*, a People dwelling in the East parts of *Bitthynia*, and spreading also over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are some Remnants of his Name to be found amongst the Ancients. For, besides that *Josephus* saith expressly, that the *Paphlagonians* anciently were called *Rephei*, there is mentioned in *Apollonius's* *Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebaeus*, which rising in *Bitthynia*, emptieth it self into the *Pontus Euxinus*, near to *Paphlagonia*; of which River *Pliny* also doth inform us: and *Stephanus* doth not only acquaint us with the River it self, but tells us also of a Region of the same Name, and of a People thereabouts, which are called *Rhebei*. Nor need we look much further to find out the seat of *Togarma* the third Son of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not only joineth with his Father, as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lie Northwards of *Judea*; *Gomer* and all his bands, the house of *Togarma* in the North Quarters, and all his bands, cap. 38. 6. So that they do not guess amiss, who place *Togarma* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*: a Country not only bordering near to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the North of the Land of *Canaan*, but very well stocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horses, as *Strabo* testifieth in the Eleventh Book of his *Geography*; with which Commodities they traded at the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the same Prophet tells us of them, *Chap.* 27. 14. But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarma's* Dwelling must be found in *Cappadocia*; we must first know that the Greek Translators call him generally by the name of *Togarma*; and then, that anciently there was a People in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calleth *Trocmi*, and *Tully* *Trogmi*; by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmeni*, and *Trogmades* in the Council of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyriacus* Bishop of the *Trogmades* (*Κυριακὸς Ἐπισκοπὸς Τρογμάδων*) is often mentioned.

Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the Sons of *Gomer*, we will next pursue the rest of the Sons of *Japhet*, except *Javan* only, whom with his Four Sons we will keep together. And the next Son of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much dispute and difference amongst our *Antiquaries*, some making him the Father of the *Scythians*, and some of the *Goths*, and others finally of the *Tartars*; all of them thinking that such terrible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but such terrible Nations. And possible enough it is, that

some of his Posterity in succeeding times, finding their own Seats too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards, and be the Founders of some *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nation; but that *Magog* himself in his first Plantation, should wander so far out of the way from the rest of his Brethren, when he had Elbow-room enough amongst them, I cannot easily imagine. When therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogareus*, betwixt *Iberia* and *Colchis*; and read in *Pliny*, that the City of *Cælo-Syria*, which the *Gracians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themselves called *Magog*; I shall not trouble my self to look for *Magog* any where else, than in those Countries where they have left such evident Land-marks to discern themselves by. But this we shall the better see, by looking out the Dwellings of his two Brethren, *Mesech* and *Tubal*, who being joined together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek.* 38. 2. and 39. 1. are very unlike to have their dwellings far asunder: or that they could concur in any publick Action against the *Jews*, according to the scope and purpose of the Holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Mesech*, whom the Ancients named *Mosoch*, seated himself on the North and North-East of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and so unto the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that Tract runs a ridge of Hills, which *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Moschici*, dilterminating *Colchis* from *Armenia*, and both from *Iberia*; and most like to be the dwelling of *Mesech* or *Mosoch*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, because *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally join together with *Mesech*, is by most Writers said to have settled himself in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Josephus* also telling us, that anciently the *Iberi* were called *Theobeli*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on some new occasion. And hereunto the constant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives some good authority, who boast of their descent from *Tubal*; which can no otherwise be granted, than as they were a Colony of these *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*; and where one of the principal Rivers is still called *Iberus*. For *Madaï*, the third Son of *Japhet*, it is most plain by the Authority of Scripture (were there no proof else) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who, in the Book of *Daniel*, and that of *Hester*, are represented to us by no other name than that of *Madaï*.

Thus having took a view of those who fixt themselves in either, or in both the *Asia's*; let us look on *Thyras*, *Javan*, and the Sons of *Javan*, who not contented with their dwellings in the *lesser Asia*, filled all *Europe* by degrees with their numerous Progenies. And first beginning with *Javan*, as the Elder Brother, most Authors make him the Original of those *Greek* Nations which pass under the general Names of *Iones*; and there is very good ground for the assertion, considering that the *Greek* Translators of the Bible, instead of *Javan*, read *Jovan*, and that all those who elsewhere ordinarily are called *Iones*, are by *Homer*, one of the ancientest of the *Greeks*, named *Iaones*. Now *Javan* and *Jaon* sound so like each other, that one may very well conclude, that they were the same: A Name not only proper to the *Athenians* and their Colonies, (though probable enough first belonging to them of *Attica*) but comprehending the *Bæotians* and *Acæans* also; yea, and extending also into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan.* 8. 21. where *Alexander* the Great, in the *Hebrew* is called King of *Javan*, which we English *Græcia*. Nor do we much dis-join *Javan* from the rest of that Stock, by carrying him cross the Seas into another part of the World; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his second Plantation; and leaving him well settled in the *greater Phrygia*, and his Son *Askenaz* in the *lesser*; might then with very little trouble (and no improbability at all) pass over the *Hellepont*, and plant himself in *Attica*, called at first *Ionia*, saith *Plutarch* in the Life of *Theseus*. Or if any one notwithstanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will ra-

ther think with *Heccatæus*, that the *Iones* came out of *Asia* into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpose) I shall not much contend against that Opinion; so it be also granted on the other side, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the Shores of *Asia*, passed over into *Greece*, as a Land unoccupied. With *Javan* went *Elisha* his Eldest Son, the Father of the *Æoles*, or *Æolians*, on the *Asian* side, as *Josephus* hath it; and the Founder of *Elis* in *Peloponnesus*, and Planter of the *Græcian* Isles, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel* 27. 7. are called the Isles of *Elisha*. And it agrees exceeding well with the Isles of *Greece*, what by the Prophet is affirmed of the Isles of *Elisha*; namely, that the Inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Blue* and *Purple*, in which some of the *Grecian* Isles were such excellent Artisans, that *Carpathus* had the name of *Porphyry*, and *Cithera* was called *Πορφυρεάρα*, only from the abundance of *Purple* which they had amongst them. Not to say any thing of *Coos*, *Nisyros*, and *Gyarus*, and some other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors for that Commodity.

A shorter Journey, but withal a far shorter Territory, fell to the lot of *Tarshish* the second Son; whom *Javan*, when he travelled further upon new Discoveries, left settled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the *lesser Asia*; where either he, or some of his Posterity, in honour of him, built the City of *Tarsus*, the Principal City of that Province. For that *Tarshish* in those early days should go into *Spain*, and there build *Tartessus*, I take to be a strange, (if not idle) Romance; that Town being built by the *Phœnicians*, many Ages after, without relation unto *Tarshish*, or his Memory either. What Voyages or Plantations those of *Cilicia* or *Tarsus* made in times succeeding, as I no where find, so it is not material to my present purpose; which principally is to settle the Sons of *Noah* in their first Habitations. On therefore unto *Cittim*, the third Son of *Javan*, whom *Josephus* setteth first in the Isle of *Cyprus*, where he finds a City called *Citium*, the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, thence surnamed *Kiritid's*. *Josephus* is herein followed by *St. Hierom*, in his Notes on *Genesis*, in whose time (as *Pintus* telleth in his Comment on *Ezekiel*) the Town of *Citium* was still standing; so do *Eustathius* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* sets him further off, giving the name of *Cittim* unto *Macedonia*. After that (saith the Author) *Alexander* the Son of *Philip*, went forth of the Land of *Chethim*, and slew *Darius* King of the *Persians* and *Medes*, *Cap.* 1. 1. And after in the 8th. Chapter of the same Book, Verse 5. *Perses*, King of *Macedon*, is called King of the *Cittims*. But this doth no way contradict that of his first planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reason of the neighbourhood of his Brother *Tarshish* (*Cilicia* and the City of *Tarsus* lying near unto it:) But finding in time that Island to be either too barren, or too small for his People; and that the other parts both of *Greece* and *Asia*, were taken up already by the first Adventurers, he might finally fix himself, or some of his Posterity, in *Macedonia*, as a spare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he, or any of his Sons, did plant first in *Italy*, which I see *Bochartus* would fain have; were against the method of Plantations; and he must give them Wings to fly that conveyerh them thither, when as yet Mankind was not taught the use of Shipping, or not accustomed at least to make long Voyages. But that in course of time, as the World grew fuller, and that *Greece* was not able to contain its multitudes, some of the Race of *Cittim* might pass over into *Italy*, the passage thither from some of the Ports of *Greece* being short and easie, I am apt enough to believe, and in its proper place shall declare my self for it. Nor can I otherwise agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom against all right and reason he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rhodanus*, one of the principal of that Country, to be named of him; whom the *Greeks*, mistaking the *Lotter Daleris* for that of *Rosh* (as indeed the

Let-

Letters are so like, that one may very easily be mistook for the other) most commonly present unto us by the name of *Rhodanim*. Admitting which, it is more proper, in my mind, to settle *Rhodanim* for a while in the Isle of *Rhodes*, lying so near the Dwellings of his other Brethren; till wanting room for the increase of his Posterity in so small an Island, he might coast along the Shores of *Peloponnesus*, and fix himself finally in *Epirus* by his Brother *Elisha*; where in the Province of the *Molossians*, we shall find a City called *Dodona*, without any such mistake or change of Letters, as before is mentioned. For that the three furthest parts of *Europe*, in respect of *Asia*, should be planted all at once by these Sons of *Javan*, is so incredible an imagination, that he must have a very strong fancy, or be of very light belief, which can entertain it. Finally, as for *Tyras*, the last Son of *Japhet*, having accompanied his Brother *Javan* to the Shores of *Asia*, and seeing him passed over the Seas to *Greece*, he took the opportunity of the next Strait or *Fretum* (since called *Thracius Bosphorus*) and fixed himself in *Thrace*, which Country he gave name unto, as most Writers testify. Nor want there such apparent footsteps of the name of *Thyras*, besides the name of *Thracia* (as some spell the word) which may add good authority to this general testimony; there being both a River and an Haven-Town not far from *Byzantium*, which *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Mela* call *Athyra*; a River and Town called *Tyras* in the Province of *Mæsia*, bordering next to *Thrace*, whereof most of all the old *Geographers* have taken notice; and finally, the *Thracians* calling their God, *Mars*, by the name of *Thyras*. Not to say any thing of *Tereus*, *Therops*, and some others of the Kings of *Thrace*, whose Names come very near unto that of *Thyras*, as the Founder of their Nations.

Thus have we seen the several Generations and Dispersions of the Sons of *Noah*, so far forth as their Names are registred in Holy Scripture: these being the Heads and Leaders of those several Tribes which joined together in the project of the building of *Babel*, and afterwards dispersed themselves, as before was shewn. But that no more than these (I mean Heads of Families) descended in so long a time from the Loins of *Noah*; that they should have towards the new peopling of the World, in an hundred Years, (for so long it must be at least from the Flood to the building of *Babel*) no more than sixteen Sons in all; and ten of those sixteen go childless also to the Grave, is not a thing to be imagined. Nor is it to be thought, that all the People which were born since the Flood till then, could meet together at one place as by inspiration; or being met, would join together in a work of so little profit; or, that if *Noah* or *Shem* had been there amongst them, they would not have dissuaded them from that foolish Enterprize. And therefore I should rather be of their Opinion, which think that *Noah* fixed himself in those Parts, which lay nearest to the place where the Ark took Land: And having planted as far Eastward as he thought convenient, sent out the surplussage of his People under the conduct of one or more of these Undertakers; directing them perhaps to the Land of *Shinaar*, where himself had dwelt before the Flood. Where being come, and destitute of graver and more sober Counsels, they fell upon that vain attempt, which became their ruine; and made them scatter and disperse themselves into so many Companies. For in my mind Sir *Walter Raleigh* pleads the point exceeding strongly, that it must needs be that *Noah* was settled in the East, and had well peopled all those parts which lay nearest to him, before he sent his Troop abroad upon new Discoveries. For being it is expressly said in Holy Scripture, that as they went from the East, they found a plain in the Land of *Shinaar*; it must needs follow, without Controversie, that they came from the East Countries into *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*, and not from any part of *Armenia*, (as the vulgar Opinion is) which lay North thereof. Now that the Countries whence they came were not left

utterly desolate upon this remove, but very sufficiently provided both of Men and Cities, appeareth by those huge Armies which *Zoroaster* the King of *Babylonia*, and *Staurobates* a King of the *Indians*, were able to bring into the Field. Of whom the first being invaded by *Ninus* the *Assyrian* Monarch, encountered him with an Army of 400000 fighting Men; the other on the like occasion outvied *Semiramis* for numbers: and yet her Army did consist, as we read in *Diodorus Siculus*, of three millions and an half of Men, besides 10000 armed Waggon; whereof if we believe but the third part, it may serve to prove that the East must needs be planted before this Expedition towards *Babylonia*. For considering that *Ninus*, the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the third in descent from *Nimrod*, (that is to say, the Son of *Belus* the Son of *Nimrod*) it had been a most impossible thing that such a vast increase should be made only out of Colonies in so short a time as needs must be between the planting of the Countries before specified, and these two great Actions; unless God raised them out of Stones, or by some such Miracle, to abate the pride of these Usurpers over other Nations. Without a Miracle of this nature (which I conceive no wise Man would expect to find) it is, I say, a thing impossible that *Staurobates* should exceed *Semiramis* in number of Men, as *Diodorus* saith he did; he being but a Castling of a second Swarm, and she the great Commandress of that part of the World from whence he came upon a second or a third Plantation. Add unto this, that those who have recorded the Acts of *Alexander the Great*, assure us, that he found more Cities, and Sumptuosities in that little Kingdom of *Perus*, which lay side by side to the East of the River *Indus*, than in all his other Travels and Undertakings: And this may serve instead of a further evidence, that the East Countries were not planted after this dispersion, but built, and peopled, and reduced under forms of Government, as soon as any in the World. Nor know I elsewhere to find either *Noah* himself, or *Shem* and *Japhet*, unless they staid behind with their Father *Noah*, or were disposed of by themselves in their several Quarters: there being none of those, though most diligent Men, who have writ of the Plantations of the World upon this dispersion, that either speak of any Nations planted by them, or of their settling in the Colonies of any one of their descendants. Which is to me a very strong Argument that they came not with the rest to the Plains of *Shinaar*, but carried still in those Habitations wherein God had placed them.

Against this I can see but two Objections of any moment; one from the Text, the other from an old Tradition among the *Jews*. That from the Text is gathered from those words of *Moses*, where having made his Catalogue of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, he adds, And by these were the Nations divided in the Earth, after the Flood, Gen. 10. v. ult. But these words, as I take it, do relate only unto that division which was made upon occasion of the Confusion of Languages, when they were forced to give over their work, and sort themselves into several Companies, and not to such Plantations as were made before; who being all of one Tongue, tho' in divers Dwellings, could not be looked upon as several and divided Nations. For the Tradition of the *Jews*, 'tis this that from the beginning of the World to the building of *Babel*, that Language which in after-times was called the *Hebrew*, was the common Language of Mankind; and that it did continue uncorrupt in the House of *Eber*; (whence it had the name) because he joined not with the rest in that proud and ungodly undertaking. Hence it may possibly be objected, that if there were any others of the off-spring of *Noah*, which came not with the rest to the Plains of *Shinaar*, and consequently had no hand in that vain attempt, they could not come within the curse of Confounded Languages, but must needs speak the *Hebrew* Tongue, as well as those descended of the Loins of *Heber*. But against this Tradition, and the consequences of it, there are some things to be objected.

For

For first it is but a Tradition, and therefore of no sure foundation to build upon. And secondly, it is such a Tradition as holds no good coherence with the truth or story; it being a most clear and demonstrative truth, that the Hebrew Tongue was not the Language which *Abraham* brought with him out of *Chaldea* and *Mesopotamia*, but that which he found spoken in the Land of *Canaan* at his coming thither, to which both he and his Posterity did conform themselves. Or had it been the Language of *Heber*, as they say it was, (but most undoubtedly was not) yet, thirdly, had this been a privilege conferred on *Heber*, that he and his Posterity should speak the Original Language without alteration or corruption, it must have been extended to all those of the House of *Joktan*, which descended from him; as also to the House of *Laban* in *Padan-Aram*, and to the *Moabites* and the *Ammonites* as the Seed of *Lot*; and finally to the *Ishmaelites* and *Idumians*, descended of *Abraham* and *Esau*; and not be limited and confined only to the House of *Jacob*. Either all these must be partakers of so great a privilege, because their Father *Heber* had obtained it for himself and his: or else it was not such a Privilege, or given so universally and incommunicably to the House of *Heber*, as they say it was. So the Tradition falls to Ground, as to this particular. And then admitting it for true, that those who stayed behind with *Noah* spake the same Language which was common to the Fathers before the Flood, (be it the Hebrew, or what else soever it was) I see no reason to the contrary, but that it might in time be branched into several Languages or *Dialects* of the same one Language, by the commerce and intercourse which they had with Nations of a different Speech; as well as those of *Judah*, in so short a time as the Captivity of *Babylon*, had lost the purity of that Language which they so much brag of; and could not understand their own Bibles at their coming home, but by an *Interpreter*. Of which see *Neb.* 8 7, 8.

But to proceed: On this dispersion of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, it came to pass, that though they all descended from one common Root, yet by the situations of their several Dwellings, they came to be of several Tempers and Affections; in which they were so different from one another, that it might seem they had been made at first out of several Principles, and not at all derived from one common Parent. Of which thus *Du Bartas*.

O see how full of wonders strange, is Nature!

Siub in each Climate, not alone in stature,

Strength, colour, hair; but that Men differ do,

Both in their Humours and their Manners too.

The Northern Man is fair, the Southern soul;

That's white, this black, that smiles, and this doth frowl.

Tb' one's blithe and frolick, tb' other dull and froward;

Tb' one's full of courage, tb' other a fearful coward, &c.

The ground or reason of which difference is to be attributed to the different Tempers of those Countries in which they live, and to the different influences of the Heavenly Bodies on those several Countries which do continue still the same, though many times the Countries do shift and change their old Inhabitants. *Hinc illa ab antiquo vitia, & patria sorte durantia, quæ totas in historiis gentes aut commendant aut notant*, saith a modern but judicious Author. Two or three evidences of this truth will make it clear and evident to a practical Judgment, which otherwise might appear obscure in the search of Causes. *Florus* hath told us of the *Gauls*, *Primum eorum impetum esse majorem quam virorum; secundum minorem quam feminarum*. Which is the same which *Rob. Dallington* hath told us of the Modern *French*, 'That he begins an Action like Thunder, and ends in a smoke. *Ut sunt Gallorum subita ingenia*, saith *Cæsar* of the ancient *Gauls*: and I believe the present *French* are altogether as rash and hair-brain'd, as the other were. *Gallia fecundia Confidorum*, was part of the Character of the *Gauls* in the time of *Juvenal*; and it is told us of the *French*, by some late Observers,

that there are commonly more Law-Trials amongst them in one Year, than have been in *England* since the Conquest. And yet the old *Gauls* in a manner are wholly rooted out of the Country, the several Nations of *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Britains*, *Normans*, and *Goths*, being in possession of their several Dwellings. Thus also it is said by *Tacitus* of the ancient *Germans*, *Diem noctemque continuare potando, nulli opprobrium*; that it was no disgrace to any, to spend the whole Day and Night in Drinking; and more than so, *De jungendis affinitatibus, de bello denique & pace, in conviviiis consultare*; that they consulted over their Cups of their weighty business. Since which time, though all *Germany* hath shifted almost all her old Inhabitants, and taken in new Colonies of *Swedes*, *Avars*, *Thuringians*, *Danes*, *Sclaves*, *Huns*, *Saxons*, and other Nations; yet still those ill Customs are as much in use amongst them, as ever formerly. To go a little farther off; the old Philosopher *Anacharsis* tells us of the ancient *Grecians*, that at the beginning of their Feasts they used little Goblets, *πλινθέντες δὲ ἐν μεγάλῳ πίνουσιν*, and greater towards the end, when they were almost drunken: which Custom still remains amongst them, as *G. Sandys* observeth, notwithstanding the great length of time, and all the other changes of State and People which have happen'd since. I shall not speak here of the effeminateness of the *Asiatick*, or the cruelty or implacableness of the *African* Nations, being as great now as in any of the former times, notwithstanding the great and numerous Plantations of the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Sarazens*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, successively and respectively in these several Countries. And therefore I conclude this Point in these words of *Barclay*, *Hæret itaque in omni gente vis quedam inconcussa, quæ hominibus pro conditione terrarum in quibus nasci contigerint, sua fata diriserit* (There is a certain irremovable force fixed in all Countries, which assigns to every of them their Fates, according to the nature of the Lands in which they happen to be born.)

Nor is this all the consequent of this dispersion of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*; the separation of their Persons producing, first an alteration of Affections, and that engendring natural *Animosities*: which seconded by their several Interesses and Reasons of State, hath left almost no People without some such Enemy which doth particularly and perversly cross them in all their Counsels. Concerning which, take here the Observation of that notable Statesman and Historian, *Philip de Comines*: which though it be with reference to the Meridian of his own time only, yet it may be accommodated generally to all States and Ages, "*In rebus humanis ita comparatum est, ut nullus fere sit populus quem non amulus aliquis exerceat, &c.*" It is (saith he) so ordered in the state of humane Affairs, that there is almost no Nation without a more particular Enemy. The *English* are Enemies to the *French*, the *Scots* to the *English*; the *Portuguese* have the like inveterate hatred against the *Spaniards*. The Princes of *Italy* enjoy great Possessions without any good Title; but are continually opposed by the more potent Cities of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, and *Luca*. The *Aragonian* Kings of *Naples* have found perpetual Enemies of the Dukes of *Anjou*; as have the Dukes of *Millain*, of the House of *Orleans*. The Princes of *Italy* and the *Florentines*, have a flitch at *Venice*; as the States of *Genoa*, and *Sienna*, have against the *Florentines*. In *Germany* the Animosities have been great and of long continuance between the Houses of *Austria* and *Bavaria*; the hatred grown beyond all hopes of Reconciliation, which is between the *Switzers* and the *Austrian* Family. The Dukes of *Cleve* and *Gulick* are always upon ill terms with their Neighbours of *Gelderland*: and in the North, the Cities on the *Baltick* Seas have their continual Quarrels with the

* The Houses of Austria and Bavaria, at the Reformation, continuing firm to the R. C. Religion, when most of the other great Families of Germany forsook it. This has ever since united these two Families in the straightest Alliance that is possible.

"Kings

"Kings of Denmark. Nor are the Enmities any thing less, if they be not greater, which are discernable amongst the People of Asia and Africk, than those that are above-remembered. So far and to this purpose saith that noble and judicious Writer.

The consideration of which Points, if there were no other, were of it self sufficient to shew the necessary use of History and Geography, as well for the understanding the Affairs of the Ages past, as for Commerce and Correspondency with the Nations present. For had no Histories been written in the former times, in what dull ignorance had we lived of all those occurrences which do so much concern the whole state of Mankind, and are our principal directors in Life and Action? in which respect the Orator most truly calleth it, *Magistrum vitæ*. For upon the credit of this, History, the examples of our Ancestors, the grounds of civil Prudence, and the Fames of Men do most especially depend. And certainly, to draw back the Mind to the contemplation of Matters long ago passed; to search out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedom, and the life of expression, such things as are found out on a diligent search; to represent unto our Eyes the Changes of Times, the Characters of Persons, the uncertainties of Counsels, and the Conveyances of Actions, the Subtleties of Pretentions, and the Secrets of State; must of necessity be a work of as publick Use, as it is of great both Pains and Judgment. Besides, it gives a kind of eternity to all such Men, who by their Counsels or Achievements have deserved nobly of those Kingdoms and Common-wealths wherein they lived. And thereupon the Orator doth not only call it, *Magistrum vitæ*, but *Lucem veritatis, Testem temporis, Nuntiam vetustatis, & Vitæ memoriam*. According to which Character I find these Verses set before a Chronicle of some Kings of England (more worth than all the Book besides;)

*For though in these days Miracles be fled,
Yet this shall of good Histories be said,
They call back time that's past, and give life to the dead.*

Nor want there other Motives to endear unto us the use of History, besides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding Times; and the eternity (if I may say so) which it conferreth on the Actors themselves, by the preservation of their names from the ruins of time, and the pit of Oblivion. For first, it stirreth Men to Virtue, and deters them from Vice, by shewing forth the glorious Memories of vertuous Men, and the ill favour which is left behind Men of ungodly life; and especially keeps Persons of most eminent place from letting loose the reins unto all licentiousness, by representing this to their consideration, That all their Actions shall be laid open one day to the view of the Vulgar. Secondly, It hath been a principal Conserver of most Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of so many of the old Philosophers; out of which, a perfect body of Philosophy, and others of the Liberal Arts hath been collected and digested. Thirdly, It is the best School-master in the Art of War, and teacher of Stratagems; and in that can practically afford more punctual directions, than can be otherwise obtained; and is withal the best Assistant to the Statesman or Politician, who from hence draw their Observations and Conclusions; and become thereby serviceable to their Prince and Country, though they never travelled more than amongst their Books. So Archimedes in his Study, and Demosthenes in his Orators Gown, endangered more the Enemies of their several Countries, than the Athenians and Syracusans, did by dint of Sword. And last of all, besides these civil Benefits and Considerations, and the great help which it affords in the way of Discourse; there is no particular branch of Knowledge more useful for the true and perfect understanding of holy Scripture, than that of Ecclesiastical and Profane History; or which gives clearer light to many dark Passages thereof, especially in the Prophetical Writings of either Testament.

This, as it shews the necessary use and benefit which redounds from History, so doth it serve to utter in that commendation which belongs to the study of Geography also; without some knowledge wherein, the study of History is neither so pleasant nor so profitable, as a judicious Reader would desire to have it. 'Tis true Geography without History hath life and motion, but very unttable, and at random; but History without Geography, like a dead Carcass, hath neither life nor motion at all, or moves at least but slowly on the Understanding. For what delight or satisfaction can any Man receive from the reading of Story, without he know somewhat of the Places, and the Conditions of the People which are therein mentioned? In which regard Ammianus Marcellinus the Historian, hath deserved very well of all his Readers; premising to the Actions of every Country some brief Description of the place and chief Towns therein. For though the greatness of the Action doth ennoble and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledge of the place, which adds delight and satisfaction unto the reading of the Story, which conveys it to us. History therefore and Geography, like the two Fires or Meteors which Philosophers call Castor and Pollux, if joined together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threatened both with a certain Shipwrack; and are like two Sisters dearly loving, not without pity (I had almost said impiety) to be kept asunder. So as that which Sir Philip Sidney said of Argalus and Parthenia,

*Her being was in him alone,
And she not being he was none;*

may be as justly said of History and Geography, as of those two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the study of Geography, which is exceeding useful to the reading of the Holy Scriptures, as in discovering the situation of Paradise, the bounds and borders of those Countries which are therein mentioned; especially with relation to the Travels of the Patriarchs, Prophets, Evangelists, and Apostles yea of Christ himself; not otherwise to be comprehended and understood, but by the help of Geographical Tables and Descriptions. Besides this, it is useful to most sorts of Men, as to Astronomers, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in several Countries; their several Influences and Aspects, their rising and setting, according to different Horizons. Secondly, to Physicians, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of Mens Bodies, according to the Climes they live in; the nature and growth of many Simples, and Medicinal Drugs, whereof every Country under Heaven hath some more natural and proper to it self, than to any others. Thirdly, To States-men, who from hence draw their knowledge of the nature and disposition of those People with whom they are to negotiate; the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms, and the neighbouring Countries, with the extent of their respective Dominions by Sea and Land; without the exact knowledge of which, there would be a perpetual Seminary of Wars and Discord. Fourthly, To Merchants, Mariners, and Soldiers; the several Professors of which kinds of life, find nothing more necessary for them in their several Callings, than a competent knowledge in Geography; which presents to them many notable advantages, both for their Profit and Contentment. Finally, by the study of Geography, a Man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far less danger and expence, acquaint himself with the particular descriptions of Kingdoms, Provinces, Cities, Towns, and Castles, with all things considerable in the same, together with the Customs, Manners, and Dispositions of all Foreign Nations: And that too in as full a manner, as if he had survey'd the one, and observ'd the other, by a personal visit of the Places represented to him.

Such is the necessary use which Men of ingenious Studies and Professions, do, and may make of History, and Geography, in the course of their Callings and Im-

ployments. And there are some things also necessary to the Knowledge of each, that we may study them with the greater benefit and contentation. To *History*, it is only requisite that it be defined, distinguished from such writings as do seem to challenge the Name of Histories; and that somewhat be premised of those several *Epoches*, from which all People do begin their Computations. But to *Geography* it is needful not only that we do define it, but that we explicate those Terms, or second *Notions*, which are not obvious to the Understanding of every Reader. First then for *History*, if we consult the Name or *Quid nominis* of it, it is derived ἀπὸ τῆς ἱστορίας, i. e. *videre*; and therefore properly doth signifie a Relation of such remarkable Actions at which the Author was an Eye-witness, if not an Agent, *Apud veteres enim* (saith *Isidore*) *nemo scribebat Historiam nisi is qui interfuisset, & ea quæ scribenda essent, vidisset.* But now the customary use of the Word hath taught it a more ample Signification. *History* being defined to be *A perfect Relation of all Occurrences observable, hapning in the State whereof it is written, described by the Motives, Pretexes, Consultations, Speeches and Events; a special care being had both of Time and Place.*

As for the Writings which do challenge the Name of *History*, but indeed are really distinguished from it, they are *Commentaries, Annals, Diaries, or Journals, and Chronologies.* First, *Commentaries* set down only a naked continuance of Events and Actions, without the Motives and Designs, the Councils, Speeches, Occasions and Pretexes of Business. So that *Cæsar* with more Modesty than true propriety of Speech, applied the Name of *Commentaries* to the best *History* in the World, A *History* commended by King *James* to his Son Prince *Henry*, above all other prophane Authors, both for the sweet flowing of the Style, and the worthiness of the Matter it self. *For I have ever* (saith he) *been of this Opinion, that, of all Ethnick Emperors or great Captains, he hath farthest exceeded, both in his Practice and in his Precepts, for Martial Affairs.* Which makes me the more wonder at the strange and unjust Censure of *Justus Lipsius*, who calls them *Nudum & simplicem narrationem*, for being entituled *Commentaries*, they do (saith he) *nil polliceri præter nomen*; with Pride and Arrogance enough. 2. For *Annals* next; they are a bare recital only of the Actions happening every year, without regard had to the Causes and Pretexes, or any of the chief Ingredients required in *History*. So that *Tacitus* had no other reason to give the name of *Annals* to his excellent Work, than that it is distinguished by the Years of the *Consuls*. Otherwise there is no great difference as unto the Matter betwixt an *History* and an *Annal*, the Subject of them both, being matter of State; and not such trivial things as Triumphs, Pageants and such like, which stand not with the Gravity and Authority of Historical *Annals*; betwixt which and a *Diary*, the same *Tacitus* (speaking of some magnificent Structures which were built that year) doth make this difference, *Res illustres Annalibus, talia diurnis Urbis Aetis mandari*, that Matters of the greater moment were committed to *Annals*, and unto *Diaries* the Acts and Accidents of a meaner nature. 3. But *Diaries*, besides this difference in point of Matter, are distinguished from *Annals* also in point of Time; a *Diary* or *Journal*, as the Name imports, containing the Actions of each day; of which kind was the *Chronicle* call'd for by *Abasuerus*, in which the Actions of his Court were referred to *Journals*, and in the which he found the Relation of the Treason intended against him by his Eunuchs. And of this kind was that of King *Edward* the sixth, mentioned in the *History* of his Life by Sir *John Hayward*. 4. Last of all for *Chronologies*; they are only bare supputations of times, with some brief touch of the Actions therein hapning, such as are those of *Eusebius, Pamelius, Calvisius, and Helvicus*; of which last I dare give that testimony which *Paterculus* affords to *Ovid*, viz. that he is *perfectissimus in forma operis sui*; though he and all the rest are Debtors to *Eusebius* for the incredible pains taken by him in his excellent *Chronicon*. Out of these four, as out of the

four Elements, the Quintessence of *History* is extracted: borrowing from *Annals* Time, from *Diaries* and *Commentaries* Matter, from *Chronologies* consent of Time and Coeternity of Princes; and thereto adding of her own all such other Ornaments in which these four are found defective.

That which remains, is to premise somewhat of those several *Epoches*, from whence particular States, Nations, and People, make their Computations. These have been very different in former times, according to the several occasions took in several Countries. The *Jews* had several *Epoches* peculiar to themselves alone, and one in common with their Neighbours. Those which they had amongst themselves were first from the Creation of the World, or the beginning of Time; Secondly, from the universal Deluge, which hapned *A.M.* 1656. Thirdly, from the Confusion of Tongues, *A.M.* 1786. Fourthly, from *Abraham's* Journey out of *Chaldæa* into *Canaan*, *A.M.* 2021. Fifthly, from their deliverance out of *Egypt*, *A.M.* 2453. Sixthly, from the first Year of Jubilee, *A.M.* 2499. Seventhly, from the building of *Solomon's* Temple, *An.* 2932. And lastly, from the Captivity of *Babylon*, *An.* 3368. That which they had common with other Nations, was the *Æra* or *Epoch* of the Victory of the *Greeks*, which took beginning on the first Victory which *Seleuchus* had against *Antigonus*, which was in *A.M.* 3637. An Accompt much used by the *Jews, Chaldæans, Syrians*, and other Nations of the East. But the *Chaldæans* also had their own *Epoch* or Accompt apart, reckoning their time from the first Year of *Nabonasser* (*Salmonasser* he is called in Scripture) which being 438 Years before this of *Seleuchus*, must fall in *A.M.* 3201. Next for the *Græcians*, they reckon'd a long while by *Olympiades*, the first of which is plac'd in the Year of the World 3174. (of which more hereafter.) But this Accompt perishing under the *Constantinopolitans*, they reckoned after by *Indictions* (an Accompt devised by *Justinian*;) every *Indiction* containing 15 Years, the first beginning *A. Chr.* 513. which amongst *Chronologers* is still used. The *Romans* reckoned first from the Foundation of their City, which was *A.M.* 3213. and afterwards from the sixteenth Year of *Augustus's* Empire, (being that which is properly called the *Roman Æra*) *A.M.* 3936. An Accompt used by the *Spaniards* (where it first began) till the Reign of *Pedro* the fourth of *Arragon*, who abrogated it in his Dominions, *An. Chr.* 1350. followed therein by *John* the first of *Castile*, *An.* 1383. and then at last by the King of *Portugal* also, 1415. The *Christians* generally do reckon from the Birth of *CHRIST*, but this they did not use till the Year 600. following in the mean time the Accompt of the Empire. And finally, the *Mahometans* begin their *Hegira* (for so they call the time of their Computation) from the flight of their Prophet *Mahomet* from *Mecca*, when he was driven thence by the *Phylarchæ*, which hapned *An. Chr.* 617. Of these we shall make use generally but of two alone, those namely of the World's Creation and our Saviour's Birth; and of the building of *Rome*, and the flight of *Mahomet*, in things that do relate to those several States.

Next for *Geography*, we will first define it, and after explicate such terms or second notions, as are not obvious to the understanding of every Reader. First, for the definition of it, it is said by *Ptolomy* to be a description of the whole Earth, or the whole Earth imitated by writing and delineation, with all other things generally annexed unto it. Ἡ Γεωγραφία μιμησις ὅσῃ διὰ γραφῆς (and not διαγραφῆς, as it is commonly but corruptly read) τῆ κατελημμένης ἑ γῆς μέρους ὅλη καὶ ὅς ἐστιν ὡς τὸ συνειρημένον, as his own Words are. In which we look not on the Earth simply as it is an Element, for so it belongeth to *Philosophy*; but as it is a Spherical Body proportionably compos'd of Earth and Water, and so it is the Subject of *Geography*.

First, for the Earth, which is the first Part of this Body, it is affirmed by the best Writers to be 21600 Miles in compass; which is de-

It appears by an exact Com-
mensuration, that there are
70 English Miles in a Degree,
so that the circumference of the
Earth is 25200 Engl. Miles.

mon-

monstrable enough: For being there are in every of the greater Circles 360 Degrees, every Degree being reckon'd at 60 Miles: let 360 be multiplied by 60, and the *Product* will be 21600 as before is said. So that if it were possible to make a Path round about the Earth, an able Footman going constantly 24 Miles a Day, would compass it in 900 Days.

The Earth is divided, in respect of Men into the right hand and the left: In respect of it self, into parts Real and Imaginary.

To *Poets* which turn their Faces towards the *Fortunate Islands* (so memorized and chanted by them) which are situated in the West; the North is the right hand, and the South the left.

To the *Augures* of old, and in our Days to *Priests* and Men in Holy Orders, who usually in their Sacrifices and divine Oblations, convert themselves unto the East, the South is the right hand, and the North the left.

To *Astronomers*, who turn their Faces towards the South, because that way the motions of the *Planets* may be best observed, the West is the right hand, and the East the left.

Finally, to *Geographers*, who, by reason they have so much to do with the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, do turn their Face towards the North; the East is the right hand, and the West the left.

The *Real* parts of the Earth are divided commonly into *Continents*, *Islands*.

A *Continent* is a great quantity of Land not separated by any Sea from the rest of the World, as the whole Continent of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*; or the Continents of *France*, *Spain*, *Germany*.

An *Island* is a part of Earth environed round about with some Sea or other; as the Isle of *Britain*, with the Ocean; the Isle of *Sicily*, with the Mediterranean: and therefore in *Latin* it is called *Insula*, because it is situate *in salo*, as some derive it.

Touching the *Continent* I have nothing in general to enlarge, till we come to the particular *Choreography* and description of them. But for *Islands* (leaving the disquisition of their being, or not being before the Flood) there are four cases to which they may be thought to owe their Original. 1. An *Earthquake*, which works two ways towards their production: First, when by it one part of a Country is forcibly torn away from the other; and so *Eubœa* was divided from the rest of *Attica*: And Secondly, when some vehement Wind or Vapour being shut up in such parts of the Earth as be under the Sea, raiseth the Earth above the Water; whereunto the Original of most of those *Islands*, which are far remote from any part of the Continent, is probably to be referred. 2. Great Rivers at their entry into the Sea carry with them abundance of Gravel, Dirt, and Weeds; which if the Sea be not the more working, will in time settle to an Island. So the Corn which *Tanquinius* sowed in the *Campus Martius*, being cut down by the People and cast into *Tiber*, settled together and made the *Holy Island*. So the River *Nichelous* caused the *Echinades*, as we shall more at large declare; and so the Island of *Loanda* in the Kingdom of *Congo*, is said to have been made out of the Sands of the Ocean, and the Mire of the great River *Laanza*, cast into an heap, and at last formed into an Island. 3. The Sea violently beating on some small *Isthmus*, weareth it through, turneth the *Peninsula* into a compleat *Ile*. Thus was *Sicily* divided from *Italy*, *Cyprus* from *Syria*, *England* from *France*, and *Hight* from the rest of *England*. And 4. sometimes as it catcheth and worketh on some places, so it voluntarily leaveth and abandoneth others, which in some time grow to be *Islands*, and new Land under foot. So it is thought the *Iles* of *Zealand* have been once part of the main Sea: And *Foslegan* proveth it, because that the Husbandmen in Tilling and Manuring the Ground, find sometimes Anchors here and there fixt, but very often the Bones of huge and great Fishes, which could by no accident come hither. To

these kind of *Islands*, *Tybbago* in *Ondalandia*, saith,

— *Nulli factus ex se parte terras,
Et procul à pelago conche jacere mirare,
Et totus inventa est in mœdibus umbra summa.*

Ofte have I seen that *Island*, which once I knew
Part of the sea; so that a Man might view
Huge Shells of Fishes in the upland Ground;
And on the Mountain tops old Anchors fund.

As concerning the situation of *Islands*, whether commodious or not, this is my Judgment. I find in *Machiavel*, that for a City whose People covet no Empire but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitful; because in such Seats they are compelled to work and labour, by which they are freed from Idleness, and by consequence from Riotousness: but for a City whose Inhabitants desire to enlarge their Confines, a fertile place was rather to be chosen than a barren, as being more able to nourish multitudes of People. The like I say of *Islands*. If a Prince desire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode than an Island; as being by it self and nature sufficiently defensible. But if a King be minded to add continually to his Empire, an Island is no fit seat for him; because partly by the uncertainty of Winds and Seas, partly by the longsomeness of the ways, he is not so well able to supply and keep such Forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereof is *England*, which hath even to admiration repelled the most puissant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the causes above-mentioned, cannot thrive any of her winnings on the firm Land, though she hath attempted and achiev'd as many glorious Exploits as any Country in the World.

The Continent and Island are sub divided into *Peninsula*, *Isthmus*, *Promontorium*.

Peninsula quasi pene Insula, is a tract of Land, which being almost encompassed round by Water, is joined to the firm Land by some little *Isthmus*; as *Peloponnesus*, *Taurica*, and *Peruana*.

Isthmus is that narrow neck of Land which joineth the *Peninsula* to the Continent; as the Streights of *Dariene* in *America*, and of *Corinth* in *Greece*.

Promontorium is a high Mountain which shooteth it self into the Sea, the utmost end of which is called a *Tireland*, or *Cape*, as the *Cape of good Hope* in *Africa*, *Cape Comari* in *India*, &c.

The *Imaginary* parts of the Earth are such which not being at all in the Earth, must yet be supposed to be so, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the Earth, answerable to them in Heaven, in name.

These Circles are either the Greater or Lesser: in both which there are 360 Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater than those in the lesser; and every Degree in the greater is 60 Miles.

The greater Circles are either Immutable, as the *Æquator*. Mutable, as the *Horizon*, *Meridian*.

The *Æquator* is a great Circle going round about the Terrestrial Globe from East to West. It passeth through *Libassia*, *Sumatra*, *Guiana*, &c. The use of it is to shew the *Latitude* of any Town, *Promontory*, &c. Now the *Latitude* is the distance of a place South or North from the *Æquator* or middle of the World; and must be measured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian*.

The *Meridian* is a great Circle rounding the Earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a Man liveth; but the chief and best *Meridian* passeth through the Island *St. Michael* one of the *Azores*. The use of it is to shew the *Longitude* of any place. Now the *Longitude* of a City, *Cape*, &c. is the distance of it East and West from the first *Meridian*, and is usually measured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Æquator*.

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, designing so great a space of the Earth, as a quick sight can ken in an open Field.

Field. The use of it is to discern the divers risings and settings of the Stars.

The lesser Circles either are noted with some name, as Tropical of Cancer, Capricorn; Polar, either Arctick, Antartick; noted with no distinct name, and are the Parallels.

The Tropick of Cancer (so called of the Celestial Sign Cancer) is distant from the Equinoctial 23 Degrees Northward, and passeth through Barbary, India, China, and Nova Hispania.

The Tropick of Capricorn, equally distant from the Equator Southward, passeth through Ethiopia inferior, and the midst of Peruana. And this is to be observed in these Tropicks, that when the Sun is in the Tropick of Cancer, our days are at the longest; and when he is gone back to the Tropick of Capricorn, the days are at the shortest. The first they call the Summer, the last they call the Winter Solstice; the first happening on, or about St. Barnaby's Day in June; the last on, or about St. Lucy's Day in December.

The Arctick Circle (so called for that it is correspondent to the Constellation in Heaven called the Bear, in Greek *Arctos*) is distant from the Tropick of Cancer 45 Degrees, and passeth through Norway, Muscovy, Tartary, &c.

The Antartick (so called because opposite to the other) is as much distant from the Tropick of Capricorn, and passeth through Terra Australis Incognita. The use of these four Circles is to describe the Zones.

The Zones are spaces of Earth included betwixt two of the lesser nominated Circles; they are in number five, one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or Torrid Zone, is betwixt the two Tropicks, continually scorched with the presence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or Frigid Zones, are situate between the two Polar Circles, and the very Poles; continually wanting the neighbourhood of the Sun.

The two Temperate Zones are betwixt the Tropick of Cancer, and the Arctick; and 'twixt the Tropick of Capricorn, and the Antartick Circles, enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold; so that the parts next the Torrid Zone are the hotter, and the parts next the Frigid Zone are the colder.

These five Zones are disposed according to the order of the Zones in Heaven; of which thus Ovid *Metamor.* 1.

Utque duæ dextra cælum, totidemq; sinistra

Parte secant Zonæ, quinta est ardentior illis;

Sic onus inclusum numero distinxit eodem

Cura Dei totidemq; plagæ tellure premuntur.

Quarum quæ media est, non est habitabilis æstu;

Nix tegit alta dæus: totidem inter utramq; locavit,

Temperiemq; dedit, mista cum frigore flamma.

And as two Zones do cut the Heavens right-side,

And likewise other two the left divide,

The midst in heat excelling all the rest;

Even so it seem'd to the Creator best;

That this our World should so divided be,

That with the Heavens in Zones it might agree.

The midst in heat; the outward most excel

In Snow and Ice, scarce fit for Men to dwell.

Betwixt these two Extreames, two more are fixt,

Where Heat with Cold indifferently is mixt.

Parallels, called also *Equidistants*, circle the Earth from East to West, and are commonly ten Degrees asunder: Such are the Parallels which are set down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another sort of Parallels, two of which go to a Clime. These are called *Artificial Parallels*, because they shew the difference of the *Artificial Days*; and are of an unequal breadth, as we shall see in the Table following. The use of these lesser Parallels is to shew the *Climates*.

Now a Clime, or Climate, is a space of the Earth contained betwixt three Parallels, the middlemost whereof divideth it into two equal Parts: serving for setting out the length and shortness of the days in every Country.

For under the Equator the Days are of the just length of 12 Hours; but afterwards they encrease the length of half an Hour for every Clime, till they come to the length of 24 Hours, without Night at all; which length attained, they encrease no more by Hours, but by Weeks and Months, till they come to the length of half a Year. So that we are to reckon 24 Climes Northward, and as many Southward: Those Northward known by the proper name of the place or City over which the middle Parallel of the Climes doth pass, as *Dia Meroes*, *Dia Sienes*, &c. Those on the South by the same names, with the condition of *Anti-Dia-Sienes*, *Anti-Dia-Meroes*, &c. 'Tis true, the ancient *Cosmographers* made but seven Climes in all; at the most but nine. Nor needed they to add more, as the cause stood with them; the extent of the habitable World towards each of the Poles, not being so fully known to them, as it is to us.

And here, because those Climes are not of equal breadth or extent of Latitude, but grow narrower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard, it is impossible to describe them under any Rule: I have thought fit to add this ensuing Table, partly framed out of the Commentaries of *Clavius* on the Works of *John de Sacro Bosco*, and partly out of *Hues* his Book, *Of the use of the Globes*. The whole divided into seven Columns. In the first whereof is shewed what Climes are inhabited by the *Amphiscii*, *Periscii*, and *Heteroscii*, which terms we shall anon expound. In the second, is set down the number of the Climes themselves. In the third, the number of the Parallels. In the fourth, the length of the Days in Summer. In the fifth, the distance of every Clime and Parallels from the Equator. In the seventh, the name of the Town or place through which the middlemost of the three Parallels doth pass in this manner following.

Here follows the Table of the Climes.

A second use of these Parallels and other Circles, is for distinction of Men in their several Dwellings, who are (according as they are treated of in *Geography*) divided in respect of their shadows into *Amphiscii*, *Periscii*, *Heteroscii*; and in respect of their site and position, into *Antæci*, *Periæci*, and *Antipodes*. 1. *Amphiscii* are such as dwell between the two Tropicks; so called, because their shadows are both ways; sometimes (when the Sun is North) to the South; sometimes (when the Sun is South) to the North.

2. *Periscii* are such as dwell beyond the Polar Circles so called, because their shadows are on all sides of them.

3. *Heteroscii* are such as dwell in either of the two temperate Zones; so called, because their shadows reach but one way, viz. in our Zone, to the North only; as in the other, to the South only.

4. *Antæci* are such as dwell under the same Meridian, and the same Latitude or Parallel equally distant from the Equator; the one Northward, the other Southward: the Days in both places being of a length; but the Summer of the one, being the others Winter.

5. *Periæci* are such as dwell in the same Parallel, on the same side of the Equator, how distant soever they be East and West; the season of the Year, and the length of Days being to both alike; but the ones Mid-night being the others Noon.

6. *Antipodes* are such as dwell Feet to Feet, so as a right Line drawn from the one unto the other, passeth from North to South, through the Center of the World. These are distant 180 Degrees, which is half the compass of the Earth. They differ in all things, as Seasons of the Year, Length of Days, Rising and Setting of the Sun, with the like. A matter reckoned so ridiculous and impossible (if not somewhat worse) in the former times, that *Bonifacio*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, hapning to see a Tractate written by *Virgilius* Bishop of *Salzburg*, touching the *Antipodes*; and not knowing what damnable Doctrine might

Inhabitants belonging to several Cli- mates.	Climes.	Paral- lels.	The longest summer Day.		Latit. & Elevati- on of the Pole.		The breadth of the Climates		The places by which the Climes pass.	
			H.	Scr.	Deg.	Sc.	Deg.	Sc.		
Amphiscii.	0	0 1	12 12	0 15	0 4	0 18	4 4	18	The beginning from the Aequator.	
	1	2 3	12 12	30 45	8 12	34 43	8 8	25	Sinus Arabicus, or the Red Sea.	
	2	4 5	13 13	0 15	16 20	43 33	7 7	50	Meroe an Island of Nilus in Ægypt.	
	3	6 7	13 13	30 45	23 27	10 36	7 7	3	Siene a City in Africa.	
Heteroscii.	4	8 9	14 14	0 15	30 33	47 45	6 6	9	Alexandria in Ægypt.	
	5	10 11	14 14	30 45	36 39	30 2	5 5	17	Rhodes and Babylon.	
	6	12 13	15 15	0 15	41 43	22 22	4 4	30	Rome and Hellespont.	
	7	14 15	15 15	30 45	45 47	29 20	3 3	48	Venice and Millain.	
	8	16 17	16 16	0 15	19 50	21 13	3 3	13	Podolia and the lesser Tartary.	
	9	18 19	16 16	30 45	51 53	58 17	2 2	44	Batavia and Wittenburgh.	
	10	20 21	17 17	0 15	54 55	29 34	2 2	17	Rostoch.	
	11	22 23	17 17	30 45	56 57	37 34	2 2	0	Ireland in Muscovy.	
	12	24 25	18 18	0 15	58 50	26 14	1 1	40	Bohuse a Castle in Norway.	
	13	26 27	18 18	30 45	59 60	59 40	1 1	26	Gothland.	
	14	28 29	19 19	0 15	61 61	18 53	1 1	13	Bergen in Norway.	
	15	30 31	19 19	30 45	62 62	25 54	1 1	0	Wiburg in Finland.	
	16	32 33	20 20	0 15	63 63	22 46	0 0	52	Arotia in Sweden.	
	17	34 35	20 20	30 45	64 64	6 30	0 0	44	The mouth of Darecally a River in Sweden	
	18	36 37	21 21	0 15	64 65	49 6	0 0	36	Divers places of Norway.	
	19	38 39	21 21	30 45	65 65	21 35	0 0	29	Suecia, Alba Russia.	
	20	40 41	22 22	0 15	65 65	47 57	0 0	22	With many Islands.	
	21	42 43	22 22	30 45	66 66	26 14	0 0	17	Thereunto adjoining.	
	22	44 45	23 23	30 15	66 66	20 5	0 0	11	Wanting special Names.	
	23	46 47	23 23	30 45	66 66	29 30	0 0	5	And Land-marks	
	24	48	24	0	66	31	0	0	Islands under the Artick Circle.	
	Periscii.	Here the Climates are ac- counted by the Months, from 66 Degrees 31 Minutes where the Day is 14 Hours unto the Pole it self, sit at 90 Degrees, where the artificial Day is six Months.								
		Months.								
		1 67 15								
2 69 30										
3 71 20										
4 78 20										
5 84 0										
6 90 0										
These Climates are supposed to pass by divers Islands within the Artick Circle, as Groenland, Island, Greenland; wherein, as yet, for the narrowness of these Climates coming near together, and the uncertainty of Observation, no special places have been assigned as to the other.										

might be couched under that strange name, made complaint first to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and after to Pope *Zachary*, *An.* 745. by whom the poor Bishop (unfortunate only in being Learned in such a time of Ignorance) was condemned of Heresie. But *Boniface* might the rather be excused, in regard that many of his betters fell also on the self-same Error. For venerable *Bede*, a Man whose Books Archb. *Boniface* was not worthy to carry, esteemeth the Opinion touching the *Antipodes*, to be no better than a Fable; *neque enim Antipodarum allatenus est fabulis accommodandus assensus*, in his Book *de Ratione temporum*, cap. 32. And yet the marvel is the less, considering that he lived in the darker times of the Church, when the state of Learning was in its declination; when *S. Augustine* and *Lactantius*, and some others of the Ancient Writers, who lived when Learning was at the very height, condemn this point of the *Antipodes*, for an incredible ridiculous Fable: whose words I could put down at large, did I think it necessary. So that we of these Ages have very good cause (to use the words of the late *L. Verulam*) to congratulate the present times, in that the World in these our Days, have *through-lights* made in it, after a wonderful manner; whereby we clearly see those things, which either were unknown, or but blindly guessed at by the Ancients.

But to proceed, the second part of the *Terrestrial Globe* is the *Water*, which making but one *Globe* with the *Earth*, is yet higher than it. This appears, first, because it is a Body not so heavy; Secondly, It is observed by Sailors, that their Ships move faster to the Shore than from it; whereof no reason can be given but the height of the Water above the Land. Thirdly, To such as stand on the Shore, the Sea seems to swell into the form of a round Hill, till it puts a bound upon our sight. Now that the Sea hovering thus over and above the Earth, doth not over-whelm it, must be ascribed only to his Power and Providence, who, *hath made the Waters to stand on a heap, who hath set them a bound that they should not pass, nor turn again to cover the Earth.* The other Affections and Properties of the Sea, as motion, saltness, and the like, I willingly omit, as belonging rather to Philosophers, than this present Argument.

The Sea or Water is divided into, 1. *Oceanus*. 2. *Mare*. 3. *Fretum*. 4. *Sinus*. 5. *Lacus*. 6. *Flumina*.

Of which, and other Waters, thus said *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*.

*Tum Freta diffudit, rapidisq; tumescere ventis
Fussit, & ambitæ circumdare littora terræ.
Addidit & Fontes, & Stagna immensa, Lacusq;
Fluminaq; obliquis cinxit declivia ripis, &c.*

Which may be Englished to this purpose.

He spread the Seas, which then he did command
To swell with Winds, and compass round the Land:
To those he adds Springs, Ponds, and Lakes immense,
And Rivers, which their winding Borders fence.
Of those not few, Earth's thirsty Jaws devour,
The rest their Streams into the Ocean pour;
When in that liquid Plain with freer Wave,
The foamy Cliffs instead of Banks they lave.

And for *Oceanus* the Ocean, is that general Collection of all Waters, which encompasseth the Earth on every side. A Point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laugh'd at by *Herodotus* in the former Times; who counted it a gross Absurdity for any Man to relate or write, that the Earth was round, or encompassed about with the main Ocean. But Modern Navigations have found that to be true, which we held ridiculous; and which the most Learned in those Times knew rather by Conjecture than by Demonstration. Nor were those Ages so acquainted with those ebbs and flowings of the Ocean, and all those other Seas and Rivers which have intercourse with it, as the meanest Sailor at the present. The natural causes of the which seeming so full of difficulty to the best of the Ancients, Experience hath taught us to ascribe wholly to the Moon; at whose Full

and Prime the Tides are ever highest, and the Sea most furious. For as soon as the Moon cometh forth from under our Horizon, the Sea beginneth to swell, and floweth towards the East, (as it were to wait upon her, or bear her Company) till she come unto the height of our Meridian: After which, till her setting or Western fall, the Sea abateth or decreaseth, which we call the Ebb. And when she passeth out of our Horizon towards the Antipodes, the Ocean begins to swell till the height of Midnight, and coming towards our Hemisphere doth again abate. In brief, From the New Moon till the First Quarter the Sea decreaseth; from the First Quarter to the Full it is said to spring: from the Full to the Last Quarter it is said to nepe; and from the Last Quarter to the Prime it springs again. As for the uncertainty of the Tides, varying every Day, it is not so perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof know well when to look for it; the next Days Tide coming for the most part, one Hour ten Minutes after the time it hapned on the Day foregoing.

2. *Mare*, the Sea, is a part of the main Ocean, to which we cannot come but through some Fretum or Strait; as *Mare Mediterraneum*. And it takes name, First, either from the adjacent Shore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*; *Mare Tyrrhenum*, from the Coast of *Tuscany*: Or, Secondly, from the first Discoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus*, who first found it; Or, Thirdly, from some remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*, from the drowning of *Icarus*, the son of *Dædalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a Strait is a part of the Ocean, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into some Sea, or out of some Sea into the Ocean, as the Strait of *Hellepont*, *Gibraltar*, *Fretum Davies*, &c.

4. *Sinus*, a Creek or Bay, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling Shore, wherewith it is almost environed; as *Sinus Persicus*, *Corinthiacus*, &c. and this is sometimes called a Gulf, as the Gulf of *Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a Lake, is a great body or collection of Waters, which hath no visible intercourse with the Sea, or influx into it; as the Lake of *Thrasymene* in Italy; the *Lacus Asphaltites*, or the Dead Sea, in the Land of *Canaan*. and of this kind properly is the *Mare Caspium*, though by reason of the greatness of it, it is called a Sea.

6. *Flumina*, or *Fluvius*, is a Watercourse continually running, whereby it differeth from *Stagnum*, or a standing Pool, issuing from some Spring or Lake, and emptying it self into some part of the Sea, or some other great River; the mouth or out-let of which is called *Ostium*: *Tiberinaque longe Ostia*, as the Poet hath it. These are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continual sustenance from the Air; which piercing the open chinks or Chasms of the Earth, and congealed by the extrem cold of that Element, dissolves into Water (as we see the Air in Winter-nights to be melted into a pearly Dew, flicking on our Glass-windows;) and being grown to some quantity, will (like *Hannibal* in the Alps) either find a way, or make a way to vent its superfluity. Which beginning is seconded by the Ocean, which running through the hidden passages of the Earth, joineth it self with this aerial Vapour, and continueth the begun current. This Sea-water (though in it self of a salt and brackish favour, yet) passing through divers windings and turnings of the Earth, is deprived of all unpleasantness, and by how much the Spring-heads of Rivers are remote from the Sea, by so much usually are their Waters affected with a delightful relish. Rivers having thus entred themselves into a good course, are never without the assistance of neighbouring Springs and Waters; by whose addition they augment their Streams, till they dischannel themselves into the Sea. Now there is of Rivers a treble use: First, That out of them Drink may be afforded to Man and Beast: Secondly, That running through the Earth, as Blood through the Body, by interlacing it, and sometimes overwhelming it, it might make the Earth able to produce those Fruits which are neces-

necessary for the Life of Man The last use of Rivers, is, easiness and speediness of Conduct; and hereto are required four Conditions: First, the *Depth*, because deep Waters sustain the bigger burdens, and on them Navigation is more safe. Secondly, *Pleasantness*, whereby the Passage is ealie both with the Stream and against it: whereas in Rivers of a violent Current, or such as fall down by great *Locks* or *Cataracts*, the sailing or rowing up the Waters is as dangerous as laborious. Thirdly, The *Thicknes* of the Water; for by how much the more slimy and gross a Water is, by so much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or breadth, is better for Navigation, by reason of its fatness, than the pure and thin Waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, The *Broadness* of the Channel, that Ships and other Vessels may conveniently wind and turn, and give way to each other. Some of the old *Philosophers* reputed this conduct so dangerous, that one of them being asked, whether he thought the Living or the Dead were the greater number, would not declare himself, because he knew not in which rank to place such as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that Men never committed greater Folly in their Lives than in venturing to go by Water, when they might have gone by Land. I am none of that Sect, yet I cannot but hold with him that said, *Dulcissima est ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio juxta terram.*

The chief Rivers of *Europe*, are *Danubius*, and the *Rhene*; of *Africa*, *Nilus* and *Niger*; of *Asia*, *Ganges* and *Euphrates*; of *America*, *Orenoque* and *Maragnan*. Of which, and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over these particulars both of *Earth* and *Water*, which are considerable in *Geography*, and come within the compass of those *Annexaries* of each which *Ptolomy* calleth τὰ συνμύενα: And having so done, may discover where the difference lieth between *Geography* and *Chorography*; which to some Men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, seem to be the same. For howsoever a *Chorographer* doth describe a Country by the Bounds, Rivers, Hills, and most notable Cities, yet it is still but the description of some Place or Country, and not of the whole *Earth* universally, which is the proper work of a *Geographer*. So that *Chorography* differeth from *Geography* as a part from the whole: that being, as *Ptolomy* doth very handsomely express it, like the painting of an Eye or an Ear, or some other Member; this, as the picturing of the Head, or whole Body of Man. But *Geography*, in its full latitude, comprehendeth not *Chorography* only, but *Topography* and *Hydrography* also. Of these the last is the delineation of the Sea by its several Names, Ports, Promontories, Creeks, and other affections; as also of great Lakes and Rivers: which is most necessary for the use of *Mariners*, and is best done by *Petrus de Medina*, *Peter Nonnius* in his *Regula Artis Navigandi*, and *Johannes Aurigarius* in his *Speculum Nauticum*, the chief Writers in the Art of *Pilotism*.

2. *Topography* is the description of some particular Place or City; of which kind was the Book of *Stephanus*, πρὸ πόλεων, or *de Urbibus*, among the Ancients; and the *Theatrum Urbium* written by *Bruinus* in these latter times, *Stow's* Book of the *Survey of London*, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and such as these. And of this kind is the

description of the *Vale of Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and of those the *Elysian Fields*, the Gardens of *Alcinous*, and the *Hesperides* in the ancient Poets.

3. *Chorography* (as before was said) is the exact description of some Kingdom, Country, or particular Province of the same; unless this last may fall more properly under the notion of *Topography*. Of this kind the description of the several Estates of *Greece*, written by *Pausanias*, is of most use and reputation of all the Ancients: as that of *Cambden Clarenceux*, for the Isle of *Britain*; of *Lewis Guicciardine*, for the *Low-Countries*; *Leander* for *Italy*, &c. are amongst the Modern.

4. *Geography* finally is an aggregate of all these together, borrowing from *Hydrography* the description of Seas and Waters; from *Topography*, that of Towns, Cities, and particular Places; and from *Chorography*, the delineations of Regions, Provinces, and Kingdoms, which brought into body, make up that Portraiture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every considerable part thereof in Writing; which, according to *Ptolomy's* definition before-mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geography*. In the advancement of which Studies, those which have took most pains, with the greatest benefit to Posterity, are the said *Ptolomy*, *Pliny*, and *Strabo* for the elder times: *Mercator*, *Maginus*, and *Ortelius*, for the later Ages. Of which the two first lived in the times of *Antonius Pius*, the Roman Emperor, *An. Chr.* 141. or thereabouts; the other in the Reign of *Tiberius Caesar*, the unworthy Successor of *Augustus*: the three last flourishing in the Days of our Fathers, about some 80 Years ago.

Thus have I briefly summed up those general *Præcognita*, which I conceive are necessary to the knowledge and understanding as well of *History* as of *Geography*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt, ariseth that universal comprehension of *Natural* and *Civil* Story, which by a proper and distinct name may be termed *Cosmography*. And this may well be reckoned amongst mixed Stories; for it hath from *Natural History* or *Geography*, the Regions themselves, together with their Sites, and several Commodities; from *Civil History*, Habitations, Governments, and Manners; and from the *Mathematicks*, the *Climates* and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coasts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the utility and excellency of which Study I need say no more, than what hath been already spoken of the several Parts, whereof this is only the Result, desiring pardon of the Reader, that I have Christened these imperfect and unworthy Papers by so noble a name; which I desire they may deserve, though I fear they will not. However, I will give the venture, and make as speedy and as profitable a discovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the most observable things therein; according to the best light which the reading of *Histories* and *Geographical* Discourses hath supplied me with; beseeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him seems best, to bless me in the undertaking; and furnish me with fit Abilities both of strength and judgment to go through with it. *Ipse enim est qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere*; as the Scripture hath it: And so on in God's Name.

COSMOGRAPHY.

The First Book.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY

OF

ITALY, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*,
SPAIN, and *BRITAIN*, with the
ISLES thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN*.

Florus in Proœm. l. i.

Populus Romanus à Rege Romulo ad Cæsarem Augustum ita late per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non unius Populi, sed generis humani factò discant.

Velleius Patercul. Hist.

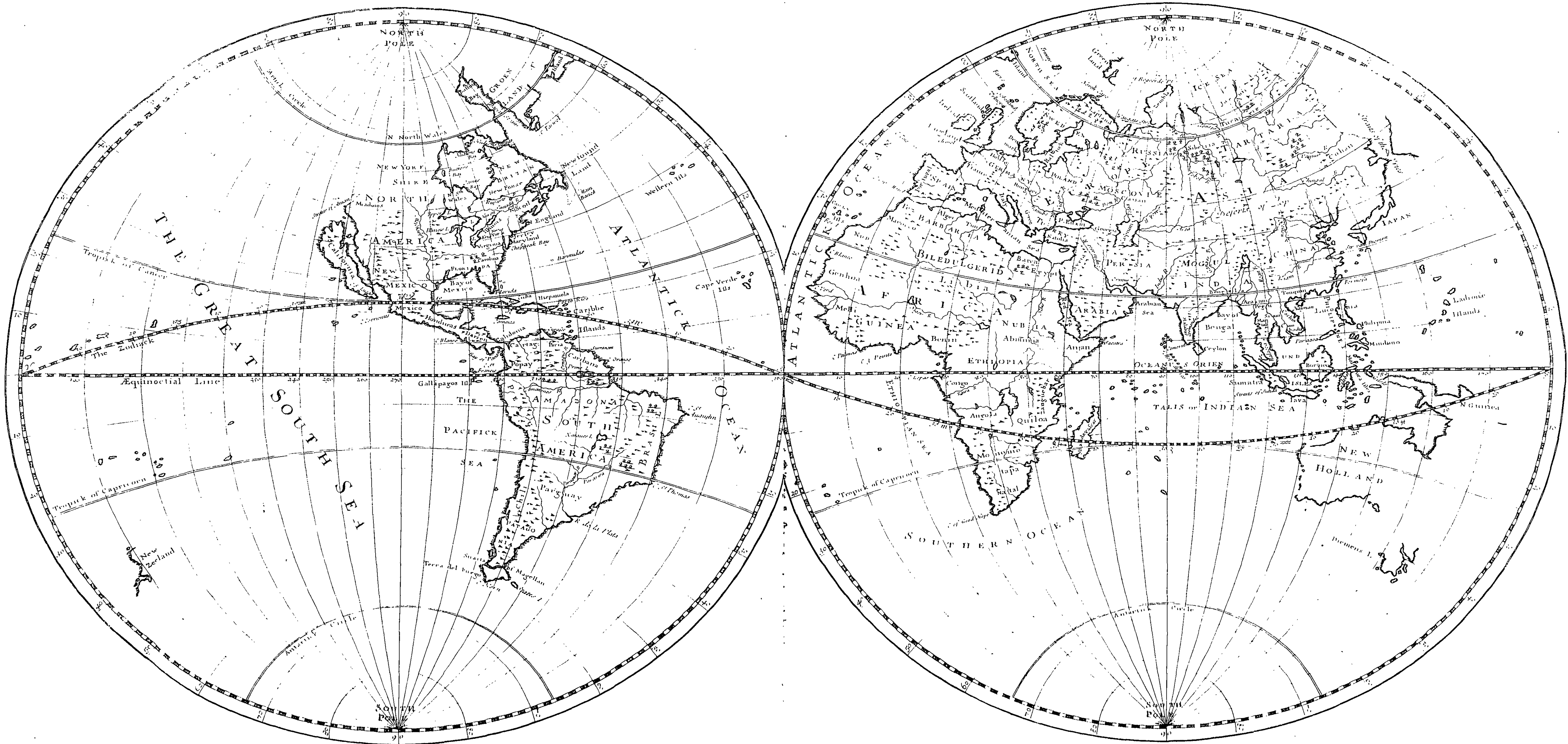
Quemadmodum Urbem Imperiorumque, ita & Gentium nunc floret fortuna, nunc senescit, nunc interit.



L O N D O N,

Printed by *Tho. Hodgkin*, MDCCI.

A NEW MAP OF THE WORLD



COSMOGRAPHY.

The First BOOK.

CONTAINING,

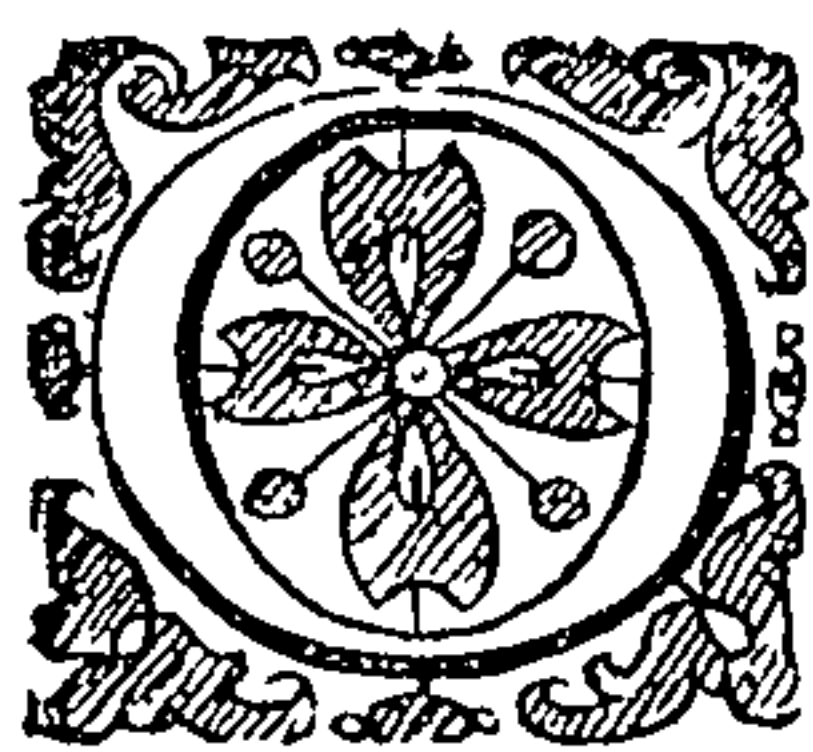
The CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY of *ITALY*,
the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and
BRITAIN, with the *ISLES* thereof.

OF THE

WORLD:

And First of

EUROPE.



Of the Creation of the World by Almighty God, and the Plantations of the same by the Sons of Men, sufficient hath been spoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all those Parts united into one *Compositum*; called therefore by the *Grecians* *Τὸ Πᾶν* and *Τὸ Ὀλον*, because the *Summa Totalis*, and general comprehension of all things existent. In which respect 'tis called by the *Latins*, *Universum*, a name of multitude, but of a multitude united (*Universi qui in uno loco versī*, say the old *Grammarians*.) The great Body of the World, like the Body of Man, though it have many Parts and Members, is but one Body only. A Body of so perfect and exact a form, of so compleat a *Symmetry*, in respect of the particular Parts, and all those Parts so beautified and adorned by the God of Nature, that from the elegancy and beauties of it, it was called *κόσμος* by the *Grecians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*, both Names declaring the Composure of it to be full of Ornament; and all those Ornaments conducting Mankind to the knowledge of God. For (as the *Christian Advocate* reasoneth very strongly,) as he which comes into an House, and seeth all things in it ordered in a beautiful and comely order, *utrisq; præesse crederet Dominum, &c.* must needs conceive, both that the House had some wise Lord and Master who had so contrived it, and that such Lord and Master of it was of more worth and excellency than the House and Furniture: So (saith he) whosoever doth observe the most eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, must needs conceive there is some great and more glorious power who did first create it; disposing of all things therein in such excellent manner.

This Contemplation, together with the notions of a Deity, which naturally are ingrafted in the Soul of Man; hath trained up all Men in the practice of some Religion though few (comparatively) so happy as to be practised in the true. For though the knowledge and worship of the true God, by reason of some accessions in *America*, and the *Indies*, be more generally diffused than in former

times; yet is the least part of the World possessed by them who make profession of that Worship. For dividing the whole World into thirty parts, it hath been found by such as have laboured in this search, that nineteen of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worship Stocks and Stones for gods, even the works of Mens hands. Of the eleven parts which are remaining, six are possessed by *Jews*, *Turks*, and *Sarazens*; who though they have the knowledge of the God that made them, yet abnegating, or not worshipping the Lord that bought them, they have no part or portion in the true Religion. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion, the other three being divided betwixt those of the Church of *Rome*, and such as otherwise differing in some Opinions, pass generally by the name of *Protestant* or Reformed Churches. Which as it sheweth how small a portion of the World is possessed by *Christians*, who only (though not all of them) have reason to pretend to the true Religion: So doth it shew (I note this only by the way) how falsely those of *Rome* make multitude of Professors to be a sign of the True Church; and then conceive themselves to be such a multitude, as corresponds unto that sign. Faulty alike both in the Position and the Application: For if the multitude of Professors be a sign of the Church, the True Church should be found rather amongst the *Heathens* or *Mahometans*, than amongst the *Christians*: or if they do restrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to those who make profession of the *Christian* Faith: those of the *Greek* Communion possessing two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the Members of the Church of *Rome*, though possibly of less esteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that brag of *Bellarmino* (though otherwise more modest than the rest of the *Jesuits*) affirming positively and expressly, *Romanam Ecclesiam universum plane orbem possidere, i. e.* That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it self. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more special notice of the state of Religion in the several Provinces of the World, to which now I hasten; premising first this Scheme of those

those feveral Parts, into which it doth now stand divided.

The World is divided into two Parts; unknown or not fully discovered; and is divided commonly into *Borealis* and *Australis*: the laſt taking up the Southern Continent; the other lying on the North of *Europe* and *America*; whereof we ſhall ſay ſomewhat at the end of this Work.

Known, either {
Anciently, as { *Europe*.
 { *Aſia*.
 { *Africa*.
 { Lately, as *America*.

Europe is joined to *Aſia*, by that ſpace of Earth which is between the heads of *Tanaïs* and *Diuna*; *Aſia* is joined to *Africa*, by the *Egyptian Iſthmus*; *America* is divided (as moſt conjecture) from all of them. *Europe* is ſeparated from *Aſia*, by a Line drawn from the Bay of *St. Nicholas*, to the head of *Tanaïs*, from thence by that River it ſelf all the length of his courſe, then by *Palus Mæotis*, the *Euxine Sea*, the *Thracian Boſphorus*, the *Propontis*, the *Hellespont*, and the *Ægean*. *Aſia* is parted from *Africa* by the *Red-Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*: and *Africa* from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater than *Europe*, *Aſia* than *Africa*, *America* than *Aſia*.

Europe is bounded on the North by the *Frozen Ocean*, on the Weſt by the *Atlantick Ocean*, and on the South by the *Mediterranean Sea*; by which it is ſeparated from *Africa*. Theſe three are ſo notorious, that all are agreed about them; but the fourth is a little difficult: But however, it is parted by the *Ægean Sea*, now call'd the *Archipelago*; the *Euxine Sea*, now call'd *Mare Maggiore* by the *Italians*, and the *Black Sea* by the *Turks*; the *Palus Mæotis*, now call'd *Mare delle Zabacche*; and the River *Tanaïs*, now call'd the *Don*. Thus far the Ancient and the Modern Geographers are agreed: But then the River *Tanaïs* extends but a ſmall part of that vaſt Tract, between the *Palus Mæotis* and the *Frozen Sea*; to ſupply which the latter Geographers have taken in the River *Ob* or *OB*, which was altogether unknown to the Ancients; but after all, there is a great ſpace of Land which has no natural Boundary, but is to be ſupplied by a Line drawn from that part of the *Tanaïs* which lies next the *Worga*, to that part of the *Ob* which is neareſt to it. *Cluverius*. *Baudrand*.

They which have entertained a fancy of reſembling every Country to things more obvious to the ſight and Underſtanding, have liken'd *Europe* to a Dragon; the Head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two Wings *Italy* and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiouſly impertinent, in reſembling *France* to a Lozenge or *Rhomboides*; *Belgium* to a Lion; *Britain* to an Ax; *Ireland* to an Egg; *Peloponneſus* to a Plantane Leaf; *Spain* to an Ox-hide ſpread on the Ground; *Italy* (which indeed holdeth beſt proportion) to a Man's Leg; with divers the like *Phantaſms* of a capricious Brain; theſe Countries no more reſembling them, than Pictures made when Painting was in her Infancy, under which they were ſain to write, *This is a Lion*, and *this is a Whale*, for fear the Spectators might have taken one for a Cock, and the other for a Cat.

EUROPE, though the leaſt (as being in length but 2800, in breadth but 1200 Miles) is yet of moſt renown amongſt us. *Fiſt*, Becauſe of the temperature of the Air, and fertility of the Soil. *Secondly*, From the ſtudy of Arts, both ingenious and mechanical. *Thirdly*, Becauſe of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies. *Fourthly*, From the purity and ſincerity of the *Chriſtian* Faith. *Fiſtly*, Becauſe we dwell in it, and ſo fiſt place it.

Cluverius reckons its greateſt extent from *Cape St. Vincent* in *Spain*, to the Mouth of the River *Ob* to be 900 *German Miles*; and from *Cape Matapan* in the *Morea*, to *Noort Kyn*, or the North Cape in *Lapland* to be 550 of the ſame Miles, fiſteen of which Miles make a Degree.

EUROPE is generally ſaid ſo to be called from *Europa*, the Daughter of *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the ſhape of a Bull; or as ſome Hiſtories ſay, by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*: as others in a Ship whoſe Beak had the Portraiture of a Bull upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Iſle of *Crete*, ſhould give denomination to the whole Continent of *Europe*, whereof that Iſland is ſo inconfiderable, and ſo ſmall a part, I muſt confeſs I ſee no reaſon. *Goropius Becanus*, who holds the *High Dutch* to be the primitive Language which was ſpoke in *Paradiſe*, and loves to fetch all Names from thence; not thinking it convenient, that *Europe* being fiſt inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, ſhould be beholding to the *Grecians* for its Name; will have it called *Europe*, *quæſi Ver-hop*, by the tranſpoſition of the two laſt Letters; *Ver* ſignifying excellent, and *hop* a multitude (whence we uſe to ſay, *as thick as Hops*) becauſe *Europe* contains a multitude of excellent People. And on the other ſide, *Bochartus*, a *French* Writer, loving as much to bring all Names from the *Phœnician* or *Punick* Tongue, will have it called *Europe* from *Ur-appa*, which ſignifieth in that Language a beautiful Countenance, becauſe the *Europeans* much excelled the *Africans* in whiteness of Skin, and clearneſs of Complexion. But in my mind *Herodotus* hath beſt determined of the Controverſie, who telleth us plainly, *Ὁνόμαζεν τὴν Ἑυρώπην, ὅτι ὅστις ἦν ὁ Ἀέρος, &c.* That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of *Europe*, and who fiſt called it ſo. And yet conſidering there is a Province in *Thrace* called *Europe*, (whereof more hereafter) why might not the *Aſiatics* give the name of *Europe* to this part of the World, according to the name of that Province which lay neareſt to them? as the *Romans* did the name of *Africa* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof, which they fiſt brought under their Obedience? Or as the *Europeans* gave the name of *Aſia* to the greateſt of the three known parts of the World; which properly and originally belonged unto *Aſia Minor* (as it ſince was called;) or rather to thoſe parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*; as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in convenient place.

The fiſt Inhabitants of *Europe*, as hath been ſhewn in part already, and ſhall be ſhewn more fully in its proper place, were the Sons of *Japhet*; amongſt whom, as the Scripture telleth us, *The Iſles of the Gentiles were divided*, *Gen. 10. 5.* which includes all the Continent of *Europe*, and the Iſles adjoining. For beſides that it is compaſſed about with the *Cyclades* and other Iſles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Iſles of *Candy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, the Iſles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent; *Europe* it ſelf was formerly taken for an Iſland; as being invironed round with Water, ſaving where it is joined on the North-Eaſt to *Aſia the Great*, which very few of the Ancients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countries of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the Poſterity of *Japhet*, but ſo many *Peninſula's*, or *Demi-Iſlands*, invironed almoſt round with one Sea or other? Nor was the Name and Memory of *Japhet* ſo much forgotten by the Children which deſcended of him; but that the *Greeks*, who were the fiſt of their *European* Plantations, retained it a long time in their *Japetus*, whom they make to be the Son of *Cælum* and *Terra*, and the Father of the wife *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *Jatus Japeto*, in the fiſt Book of his *Metamorphoſis*. So that we ſee how punctually the fiſt part of God's Bleſſing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would enlarge the borders of *Japhet*, *Gen. 9. 27.* The ſecond part thereof, that he ſhould dwell in the Tents of *Shem*, though it was long before it came to the accompliſhment, yet it came at laſt; and that both in the literal and myſtical ſenſe. *Fiſt*, in the literal, when the Poſterity of *Japhet*, both *Greek* and *Romans*, made themſelves Maſters of *Judea*, or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eaſtern Parts, promiſed to,

to, and possessed by, the Seed of *Sem*. Next in the *mystical*, when God was pleased to break down the *partition Wall*, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the House of *Japhet*, into the body of the *Church*: which for a long time was restrained to the Line of *Sem*.

Europe may be considered as it stands divided into the *Continent*, and the *Islands*: the *Continent* lying all together; the *Islands*, as they are dispersed in the *Greek*, *Aegean*, *Cretan*, and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatick* and the *Mediterranean*, and in the *British* and *Northern Ocean*. But in this work we shall discover them, and discourse of them in this following order, dividing *Europe* into, 1. *Italy*. 2. *The Alps*. 3. *France*. 4. *Spain*. 5. *Britain*. 6. *Belgium*. 7. *Germany*. 8. *Denmark*. 9. *Swethland*. 10. *Russia*. 11. *Poland*. 12. *Hungary*. 13. *Sclavonia*. 14. *Dacia*. and 15. *Greece*; and speak of the several *Islands*, as they relate to some or other of these greater Countries.

In all which Countries, and Islands belonging to them, besides the *Latin Tongue*, which is now rather *Scholastical* than *National*; and besides the *Italian*, *French*, and *Spanish*, being but as so many corruptions of the *Latin*: and besides the *English*, which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latin*, and *French*, there are in all fourteen Mother-Tongues, which owe nothing at all to the *Roman*; that is to say, 1. *Irish*, spoken in *Ireland*, and the West of *Scotland*; 2. *British*, or *Welsh*, in *Wales*, and some parts of *Cornwal*; 3. *Cantabrian*, or *Basquish* in *Biscay*, about the *Pyrenean Hills*, and near to the *Cantabrian Ocean*; 4. *Arabick* in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Alpuxarras*; 5. *Finnick*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*; 6. *Dutch*, (though with different *Dialects*) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Swethland*; 7. *Cauchian*, which the *East-Friezlanders* (or *Cauchi*) speak among themselves, though to Strangers they speak the common *Dutch*; 8. *Sclavonish*, in *Sclavonia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, and almost all the parts of the *Turkish Empire*; 9. *Illyrian*, on the East side of *Istria*, and the Isle of *Veggia*; 10. *Greek*, in most Provinces and Isles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themselves; 11. *Hungarian*, and 12. *Epirotique* in the mountainous Places of those Countries; 13. *Fazygian*, on the North-side of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*; and 14. *Tartarian*, in the *Taurica Chersonesus*, and other *European* parts of that barbarous People. And this shall serve for *Europe* in the general notion. Descend me now to the particular Kingdoms, Regions, and Islands of it; beginning first of all with *Italy*, contrary to the usage of most *Geogra-*

phers; who commonly begin with *Spain* or *Ireland*, as being the furthest Countries Westward, and consequently nearest to the first Meridian, from whence the *Longitude* was reckoned. Which we shall do by reason of that great influence which the *Romans* had in most parts of *Europe*, and many parts of the World besides, in matters as well *Civil* and *Ecclesiastical*, which much depended on the Power of that Empire, formerly, and on the *Usurpations* of that Church in the latter days.

The Great *Ortelius*, saith *Pliny*, call'd *Europe*, *Altricem Victoris omnium Gentium Populi, terrarumque Pulcherimam*. The Nurse of that People (the *Romans*) which hath conquered all the rest, and the most beautiful of all Lands that are known. And tho' it is certainly the least of all the four great Parts into which the World stands now divided, yet as *Ortelius* goes on. It is of great Fertility, naturally Temperate (being seated in the Northern Temperate Zone) and therefore enjoying the Blessings of a Temperate Air; and its Soil producing Fruits of all sorts, Wine and Trees equal to the best, which make it extremely pleasant to the Eye. It is also adorn'd with Cities, Towns, and Villages, and a numerous Progeny of Men beyond any of the rest. Its Inhabitants are not only more numerous in Proportion, but much more Civil and Ingenious; so that tho' it is less than any of the other three in extent, yet it is, and ever was thought much more excellent than any of the other; and besides its present Grandeur it is venerable on the Account of the *Macedonian* and *Roman Empires*. Thus far that Great Man.

Dr. Heylin has observed, That the Ancient Prediction was soon verified, *God shall enlarge Japheth*, in that the Posterity of that Patriarch had so much a larger share than *Cham* in *Asia*, and all *Europe* besides, but it seems but reasonable to me to observe, that this Prediction has received a considerable accomplishment in the discovery of the *West-Indies*, or *America*, by the *Europeans*; by which the bounds of that Patriarch are in these our times dilated to vast Countries unknown to the Ancients, and in a great degree unknown yet to us too.

Tho' the two first Empires were in *Asia*, yet neither of them had one Acre of Land in *Europe*; and on the other side the *Macedonian Empire* was almost all of it in *Asia*, and the *Roman* took in a great part of *Africa*, so that no part of *Europe* was ever yet in Bondage to any *Asiatick* or *African Prince* (except the short time when the *Sarazens* reigned,) but on the contrary a great part of *Africa* and *Asia* are at this Day subject to *European Princes*, and the best and greatest part of *America*.

O F I T A L Y.

ITALY once the Empress of the greatest part of the (then known) World, is compassed with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tyrrhenian* Seas, except it be towards *France* and *Germany*, from which it is parted by the *Alps*; so that it is in a manner a *Peninsula* or *Demi-Island*. But more particularly it hath on the East, the lower part of the *Adriatick* and the *Ionian* Sea, by which it is divided from *Greece*; on the West the River *Varus*, and some part of the *Alps*, by which it is parted from *France*; on the North in some part the *Alps*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the other parts the *Adriatick*, which divides it from *Dalmatia*; and on the South the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuscan* Seas, by which it is separated from the main Land of *Africa*.

It containeth in length from *Augusta Prætoria* (now called *Aost*) at the foot of the *Alps*, unto *Otranto* in the most Eastern Point of the Kingdom of *Naples*, 1020 Miles; in breadth from the River *Varo*, which parts it from *Provence*, to the Mouth of the River *Arso* in *Friuli*, where it is broadest, 410 Miles; about *Otranto*, where it is narrowest, not above 25 Miles; and in the middle Parts from the Mouth of *Pescara*, in the *Adriatick* or upper Sea, to the Mouth of *Tiber* in the *Tuscan* or Lower Sea, 126 Miles. The whole compass by Sea, reckoning in the windings and turnings of the Shore, comes to 3038 Miles, which added to the 410 Miles which it hath by Land, make up in all 3448 Miles. But if the Coast on each side be reckoned by a straight Line, then it falls very short of this proportion, amounting in the total, as *Castaldo* computes it, to no more than 2550 Miles. The whole Country lieth under the fifth and sixth *Climates* of the Northern Temperate Zone, which it wholly taketh up: so that the longest Day in the most Northern Parts is fifteen Hours, and three fifth parts of an Hour; the longest in the Southern Parts, falling short a full Hour and no more of that length.

But these dimensions must be understood of *Italy* in the present latitude and extent thereof, and not as it was called and counted in the times of the *Romans*, neither in the growth nor flourishing Fortunes of that State; the bounds of *Italy* on the West, and North-western Parts being then the River *Rubicon*, which runneth into the *Adriatick*, not far from *Ravenna*, and the River *Arno*, which runneth into the *Tyrrhenian* Seas by the Port of *Ligorn*. All that lay West-wards toward the *Alps*, as it was possessed by the *Gauls*, so it had also the name of *Gallia*, and for distinction sake, of *Gallia Cis-Alpina*, and *Togata*, whereof we shall speak more when we come to *Lombardy*. And it continued (though a Province of the *Roman* Empire) distinct from *Italy*, until the Empire of *Augustus*; who dividing *Italy* for the better Government thereof into eleven Provinces or Regions, divided *Gallia Cis-Alpina* into several Parts, (whereof more anon) and reckoned them as Provinces or Members of the body of *Italy*.

The Names hereof so bounded as before, are said to have been very many, according to their several Nations which were anciently of most power and authority in it; or to the several fancies of the Name giver: whereof some being the Names only of particular Provinces, were by a *Metonymy*, taken for, and applied to the whole. Of

this last sort, to omit others of less note, were *Latium*, and *Ausonia*; the *Ausones* being a People dwelling about *Cales*, a Town of *Campania*; and *Latium*, that particular Province which lieth on the East of *Tiber*, so called, as most Writers are of Opinion, à *latendo*, from hiding; because *Saturn* being driven from *Crete* by *Jupiter*, *hic latebat abditus*, did here live concealed:

——— *Latiumq; vocari*

Maluit, his quoniam latuisset tutus in oris, as the Poet hath it.

Nor was this *Virgil's* fancy only, but a Tradition generally followed and allowed of by the greatest Writers, as by *Eutropius*, and *Herodian*, and by *Minucius Felix* also, though *Varro* pretending to more than ordinary knowledge in Antiquity, would have it called *Latium*, quod lateat inter præcipitia Alpium & Appennini, as *Servius* in his Notes on *Virgil*, because it lieth hidden (as it were) under the Precipices of the *Alps* and *Appennine* Hills; which cannot possibly be said of *Italy* properly and anciently so called, no part whereof came near the *Alps*. The more general Names of the whole Country, were, 1. *Hesperia*, from *Hesperus* the Son of *Atlas*, as the Poets say, or rather as *Macrobius* is of opinion, from *Hesperus* the Evening-Star, as being seated Westward in regard of *Greece*. 2. *Oenotria*, either from the abundance and excellency of the Wines, Wine being called οἶνος by the *Grecians*; or, as most think, from *Oenotrius* an *Arcadian* King, one of the first Planters of the Country: And 3. *Italia*, the name at first of that part of this Continent which was afterward called *Calabria*; shut up first between *Golfo de Chilaci* (called anciently *Sinus Scylleticus*) on the South, and *Sinus Lameticus*, part of the Bay or Gulf of *Tarentum*, on the South side of it, for so saith *Aristotle* in the Seventh Book of his *Politicks*, Cap. 10. τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς πατρὸς τῆς Ἑυρώπης Ἰταλίαν πρὸ ὀνόμα λαβεῖν, &c. that is to say, That part of Europe which lieth between the Bay *Sylleticus* and the Bay *Lameticus*, took the name of *Italy*, the Golfs being distant from each other about half a days Journey. And this Tradition he received (as he there affirmeth) from the best Antiquaries of that Country. The like occurs in *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, out of *Antiochus Syracusanus*, a more ancient Author; the like in *Strabo*, lib. 6. so named from *Italus*, a chief Commander of some Nations; who first settled here, and by degrees communicated to the rest of this Continent. Of these three last, thus the Poet *Virgil*.

*Est locus, Hesperiam Graii cognomine dicunt,
Terra antiqua, potens armis, atq; ubere gleba,
Oenotrii coluere viri; nunc Parna, minores
Italiam dixisse, ducis de nomine, Gentem.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

That which the Greeks *Hesperia* call'd, a place
Great both in Arms and Wealth, first planted was
By the *Oenotrians*; since, if Fame not lie,
Was from their Chieftain's Name call'd *Italy*.

Who and from whence this *Italus* was, we shall see e're long. Mean time we will take notice of the consent or harmony, which is betwixt *Aristotle* and this Poet: it being said by *Aristotle* in the Seventh of his *Politicks*, cap. 10. that

that *Italus* having taught the *Oenotrians* the Arts of Husbandry, who before were wandring Shepherds only, he caused them by his own name to be called *Italians*. Let us next take a view of those honorary Attributes which have been given unto this Country, so denominated from him; by *Aethicus*, called *Regina Mundi*, the Queen or Empress of the World; by *Mamertinus* one of the old Panegyrist, *Gentium Domina*, the Mistress of the Nations; by others, *Paradisus Mundi*, the terrestrial Paradise. But what need more be said then is spoken by *Pliny*, who hath adorned *Italy* with this following Panegyrick; *Italia terrarum omnium alumna, eadem & parens, numine Deum electa quæ Cælum ipsum clareus faceret, sparsa congregaret imperia, ritus mollirot, tot populorum discordes linguas sermones commercio ad colloquia distraberet, & humanitati hominem daret.* *Italy* (saith he) the Parent, and withal the Foster-child of all other Nations, was elected by the Providence of the Gods, to make (if possible) the very Heavens themselves more famous: To gather the scattered Empires of the World into one body, to temper the barbarous Rites of uncivilized people, to unite the disagreeing Languages of so many Men by the benefit of one common Tongue; and in a word to restore Man to his humanity. A very high *Encomion* doubtless; and yet not much more than the place deserves, with reference to the times when the Author lived.

The People anciently, (and to this day they still partake somewhat of those qualities) were wary of behaviour, sparing of expence, and most greedy of glory, according unto that of *Tully*, *Semper appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras nationes sunt Romani*: by which he doth not mean those only who lived within the walls of the City of *Rome*, but also their *Italian* Neighbours and Associates, *Romans* by privilege and freedom, though not by Birth. They have twice given the Law to the fairest, and most puissant parts of the World; once by their *Valour*, when the greatest part of the (then known) World was brought under the obedience of the State of *Rome*, the standing body of whose Armies was principally compounded of *Italian* Bands: And secondly by their *Wit*, by which they have subdued a great part of *Christendom*, to the obedience of the Pope and Court of *Rome*, the standing body of whose Council (though he have Ministers of all tempers and Nations) do specially consist of *Italian* Heads. In former times here lived the renowned Captains, *Camillus* the Sword, and *Fabius Maximus* the Buckler of *Rome*; the two *Scipios*, one of which subdued *Africk*, and the other *Asia*; *Pompey* the Great, who extended the *Roman Empire* Eastwards to the banks of *Euphrates*; *Cæsar*, the greater of the two, enlarging it Westward to the *British*, and the *Belgick* Ocean; besides infinite others of less note in respect of these, though most deserving in themselves. Here flourished also the famous Orators, *Cicero*, *Hortensius*, and *Antonius*; the renowned Historians, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, and *Salustius*; the memorable Poets *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus*, and *Propertius*; *Plautus* and *Terence* the Comedians; the Satyrists, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, and *Persius*. So equally were they favoured both by *Mars* and the *Muses*, that it is not easie to determine whether they were most eminent in Arts or Arms. What Men of special eminence it hath since produced, we shall see hereafter, when we are come to take a view of *Italy* as it stands at present; and to that place we shall defer our Observations of the Air; and disposition of the Soil, with such other particulars as have received little or no alteration in the change of times.

Italy was anciently divided, as most Countries else, into Tribes and Nations, as the *Latines*, *Sabines*, *Tuscans*, *Samnites*, *Campani*, *Picentini*, *Piceni*, *Ligures*, *Tarentini*, *Lucani*, and others of inferior note; whom we shall meet with in the description of those several States into which it doth now stand divided. But all those Nations being severally vanquished by the *Roman* puissance, and made up into one body, whereof *Rome* was the head; it pleased *Augustus* to divide it into eleven Regions, as before was said, that is to say, *Liguria*, *Ætæria*, *Latium*, *Campania*, *Umbria*, *Samnium*, the *Picenum*, *Gallia*, *Italia*, *Transpadana*, *Venetia*,

and *Histria*. In the time of the Emperor *Antoninus*, the Provinces of *Italy* were encreased to sixteen, the bounds of the former Regions being somewhat altered; and the three Isles of *Sicily*, *Corfica*, and *Sardinia*, with the two *Rhetia's* first and second, added to the number. But this distribution also received some change in the time of *Constantine* the Great, who altering both the names and bounds of the former Province, and adding one more to them, made seventeen in all, that is to say, 1. *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, 2. *Picenum Suburbicarium*, 3. *Campania*, 4. *Apulia* and *Calabria*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Samnium*, 7. *Lucania* and the *Bruttii*, 8. *Sicily*, 9. *Corfica*, and 10. *Sardinia*, which made up the Prefecture of the City of *Rome*; 11. *Flaminia* and *Picenum Annonarium*, 12. *Venetia*, 13. *Æmylia*, 14. *Liguria*, 15. *Alps Cottiæ*, 16. *Rhetia prima*, and 17. *Rhetia secunda*, which made up the Diocese of *Italy*, properly and especially so called, whereof *Milain* was first the Metropolitan City, *Aquilia* afterwards.

The Language heretofore was diverse; according to the several Provinces and People of it. In *Apulia*, they used the *Messapian* Tongue: in that which is now called *Calabria*, they spake the *Greek*; in *Ætæria*, they used the *Tuscan*; and the *Latin* in *Latium*: Which last so altered in short time by reason of the Commerce they had with the conquered Nations, that the Articles of the Peace made between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, at the expulsion of the *Tarquins*, could not be understood (as *Polybius* saith) by the best *Antiquaries* of his time. And yet the time between the making of those Articles, and the time of *Polybius*, who was contemporary with *Scipio Africanus*, passed not above 300 years. That the *Latin* Tongue was afterwards at any time spoke generally in all parts of the *Roman Empire*, or of *Italy* it self, as I see some hold, I can by no means be perswaded; it being by special favour granted to the *Cumans*, dwelling but an hundred miles from the walls of *Rome*, that they should use the *Roman* Language: which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if the *Italian* People dwelling out of *Latium* had used it formerly. And yet this hapned not above 140 years before the times of the Emperors, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, and a great part of *Spain*. It's true, the *Latin* Tongue in succeeding times came to be understood in most parts of *Italy*, by reason of the *Roman* Colonies which were planted among them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continual resort to *Rome* on their several businesses: It being a great point of the *Roman* State, not only to have their Laws written, and judgment pronounced by the *Prætors* for the several Provinces, in the *Latin* only; but to give audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the subject Nations, save only in the *Latin* Tongue, their own proper Language. Yet for all this, it never grew to such extent as to be the Language of the whole Empire, no nor of *Italy* it self, no more than the *English* Tongue is natural or national to the *Welsh*, or *Irish*, though it be generally understood (for the very same reasons) by all of the better sort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French* and *Spanish*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* Tongues, occasioned by the inundations of the barbarous Nations: But rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein, proceeded from that weak impression which the *Latin* Tongue had made amongst them, whilst they were under the obedience of that puissant Empire; and that the *Italian* Tongue, as it is now spoken, could not receive so great a change from the Barbarous Nations, none of which carried long amongst them, but the *Goths*, and *Lombards*; nor they so long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eastern parts) as to be either the occasions or authors of the alteration. So that the present Language of *Italy* is a decompound, made up especially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*; some notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the North, and West, some of the *Gothish*, in the midst, about *Rome* it self, and not a little of the *Greek*, in the East of *Naples*.

And

And as the Language, so the Religion of the Country, hath received some change. The Christian Faith was first preached in Rome it self, and in Rome first preached by Saint Peter, who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of Claudius. The two Apostles Peter and Paul, are generally said by the ancient Writers, to be the first who preached the Gospel in that City, *A duobus Apostolis Petro & Paulo Romæ fundata & constituta est Ecclesia*, saith the old Father Irenæus Lib. 4. Cap. 3. To one of these, the first preaching of the Gospel there is to be referred? both being Bishops of that City: That is to say, St. Peter of the Churches of the Circumcision; St. Paul of those which consisted specially of the Gentiles. Now that the Gospel was preached there before Paul's coming, is evident by his Epistle written to the Romans, at Cenchrea the Port-Town of Corinth, six years at least before his being brought to Rome; in which he testified that their Faith was famous over all the World; and therefore could not count him who had never been there, for the planter of it: And as St. Peter was the first Preacher of the Gospel at Rome, so sent he his Disciples to promulgate it in most parts of Italy. The Roman Martyrologies reckon up eight Bishops of St. Peter's making for so many of the principal Cities of this Country: That is to say, Epaphroditus (not he whom St. Paul speaks of in his Epistle to the Philippians) for Terracina, of old called Anxur, Hermagoras for Aquileia, Paulinus for Luca, Apollinaris for Ravenna, Marcus for Atina, Prodocimus for Padua, Marcianus for Syracuse, and Pancratius for Tauromenium in the Isle of Sicily. But whether St. Peter planted it, or St. Paul watered it, certain I am that GOD only gave it the increase. It could not else have prospered under such a Tyranny, as many, if not most of the Roman Emperors did earnestly endeavor to suppress it with. But *Sanguis Martyrum semen Ecclesiæ*; the watering of it with the blood of so many Martyrs, made it grow the faster. And this small grain of Mustard-seed waxed to so great a Tree, as over-shadowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire; and did not only stand it out against all Tempests, but in conclusion did suppress that Superstition and Idolatry, for whose sake all those Princes, till the time of Constantine, did more or less, labour to destroy it. How much it hath receded since those times from its primitive purity, and how it did degenerate into Worldly pomp, and Secular policy, by the design and arts of those who boast themselves to be Successors to that great Apostle, shall be a little touched at, in the story of the Roman Papacy. Suffice it in this place to say, that all the people of this Country, partly in reference to the Pope, partly for fear of the Inquisition, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the Protestant Doctrine (of which they are taught to believe many monstrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of Rome.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternal life, have either been stopped or else corrupted by the Popes of Rome; the Rivers which do water this most flourishing Garden, still preserve their Beds, and run unmixed and uncorrupted in the same Channels, as before they did. And of these Italy hath as many as any one Country, but none of any long course, by reason that all parts of it are so near some Sea; most of which rising from the Alps, or the Apennine Hills, by melting of the Snows in Winter and casualty of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often overflow the Country, and for the most part leave an ill Air behind them. Those of chief note are, 1. The River Po or Padus (the Greeks call it Eridanus) into which Phaeton is said to have been dreached when he fell from Heaven. It riseth in the Alps, runneth through Lombardy, which it divideth into Cispadanum and Transpadanum; and having taken in thirty lesser streams, falls with seven mouths into the Adriatick Sea not far from Venice. 2. Rubicon, now called Pissatello, anciently the North-bound of Italy; *Hic fluvi- us quondam Italiæ finis*, as it is in Pliny. It runneth into the Adriatick Sea not far from Rimini, or Ariminum, now the Port-town to Ravenna, the Haven of Ravenna be-

ing long since choked; but of this River more in another place. 3. Arnus, L' Arno, which rising in the Apennine falleth into the Tuscan Sea, and anciently divided Italy on that side from the Cisalpine Galls: On the banks hereof standeth the fair City of Florence. 4. Ticinus, Tecino, Tesino, which gave name to the City of Parvy, called of old Ticinum; it riseth in the Alps, and emptieth it self into the Lake called Lacus Verbanus. 5. Liris now called Gariglia, stained with the blood of French and Spaniards, in their quarrels for the Realm of Naples, and no less unfortunately memorable for the drowning of Peter de Medices. 6. *Cuique fuit rerum Promissa Potentia*, Tiberis.

And Tiber, unto which was given

The Power of all things under Heaven.

It riseth from the Apennine Hills, not far from Aretium (now Arezzo) a Town of Tuscany (which it parted from the Roman Latium, and the Land of the Sabines) and gliding gently near Cita de Castello, Perugia, and the old Oriculum, passeth by Rome, and falleth into the Tuscan or lower Sea, at Ostia. Here is also, 7. The Lake of Thrasyrmene, near which Annibal defeated Flaminius the Consul and his whole Army, opening thereby his passage to the Gates of Rome; and 8. The famous River of Metaurus, Metramo, Metro, where the Romans overcame Asdrubal the Brother of Annibal, and thereby made a way to the ruin of Carthage. Others of less note shall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Country, those of most note are the Alps, and the Apennine, of which the residue in a manner are but spurs and branches. Of these the Alps being also appertaining to France and Germany, or rather containing many large and entire Provinces which belong to neither, deserve a Tractate by it self. The Apennine, being proper only to this Country, but so that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, shall be spoken of here. A ledge of Hills which take beginning near Savona, a Town of the Commonwealth and Country of Genoa, situate on the Mediterranean, and fetching a little compass Northwards, extend to the furthest part of Italy, dividing it almost in the very midst: That part thereof which lieth towards the Tyrrhenian, or Tuscan Sea, being called Cisapennina; Transapennina, that which lies towards the Adriatick. Passing in one entire body as far as Ascoli, a Town of Marca Anconitana (a Province belonging to the Pope) where they are at the highest; it is there parted into two horns or branches, whereof one runs out to the mount of Gargano, and so unto the Land of Otranto; the other spreadeth it self as far as Calabria, those being the most Eastern Provinces of this noble Continent. In all this long Course of 700 Miles, there is but one River Offanto (Afidus) that crosseth it near the City of Conza in the Kingdom of Naples, called the Apennine as some say, a Penna, by which word the Latins used to signifie the top or summit of an Hill, by reason of the height and sharp points thereof; as others say, *quasi Alpes Panina*, because first overcome by Annibal and his Carthaginians, who the Roman Writers did call by the name of *Pani*. The Inhabitants hereof by Virgil named *Apenninicolæ*. But otherwise reducible to some of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain most of the Hills of Italy from Savona Eastwards, are but the excursions; which being of less note, shall be spoken of as they lie before us in the way.

To proceed now to so much of the History of Italy as concerns the general; we are to know that the first Inhabitants of it (not to say any thing of the fictions of Frier Annius under the name of Berosus, who will needs have Noah himself come hither shortly after the Flood) were doubtless of the race of Cittiim or Kittim the fourth Son of Javan, one of the Sons of Japhet. Who being planted by their Father in that part of Greece, which was since called Macedon, and after spreading themselves further as their numbers increased, peopled Atolia and the Countries adjoining to it: From whence, desirous of a warmer and more fertile soil, they came in tract of time to the Coasts

Coasts of *Dalmatia*, and thence to this Country since called *Italy*. That they did spring originally from the seed of *Cittim* (or *Kittim*, as the Greek pronounce it) wants not very good Authors. For thus *Eusebius*, Κίτις ἐξ ἑλαφίων ἢ δι' ἑλαφίων, that is to say, from the *Kitians*, or Children of *Kittim*, descended the *Latins* and the *Romans*. The same occurs also in the *Chornicon* of *Alexandria*. So also faith *Cedrenus* in his *Annals*, but with more punctuality. *Telephus* (faith he) the Son of *Hercules*, reigned in *Italy*, and after him his Son *Latinus*, ἐς τοὺς Κιτάλιος ἐκγονοὺς Λατίνους, from whom the *Ketians* were named *Latins*. The same in other words faith *Suidas*. Nor want there some remainders of this Name in approved Writers, besides these Authorities; there being a Town in *Latium* called *Ketea*, mentioned in *Dionysius Halicarnassens*, and a River named *Ketus* not far from *Cumæ*, whereof *Aristotle* speaketh in his Book *de Mirabilibus*. And that they came immediately from the *Ætoliens*, besides the other Arguments which *Reinmeccens* useth in this point, the nearness, or identity rather of the Names doth seem to intimate. For *Ætolia* being written in the Greek, *Aitolia*, and the Letter O being changed into A according to the *Ætolic* Dialect, which was that used by the *Ætoliens*; the alteration of the Name from *Aitolia* and *Aitolians*, to *Italia* and *Italians*, will be thought very easie, if not natural; the rather in regard there is an Island near *Italy* in the *Tuscan* Sea, peopled originally by these very *Ætoliens*, which in ancient times was called *Æthalia*. And if by such an easie alteration of one Letter only, *Italy* may derive its first plantation from the *Ætoliens*, as no doubt it may; then may that *Italus*, the Chieftain of whom *Virgil* speaks, be no other than *Aitolus*, some Man of principal mark and eminency amongst that People, who had the Conduct of this Colony, when they came for *Italy*. And this I should believe much rather, than that this *Italus* was the Name of a King of *Sicily*: It being more probable that *Sicily* should borrow its first Planters out of *Italy*, than *Italy* should borrow either Name or People from so small a Kingdom; especially considering that the name of *Aitolus* was famous in those parts of *Greece*, ever since *Aitolus*, the Son of a King of *Elis*, was Founder of the *Ætolian* Kingdom. The way thus shewn, and the passages into *Italy* laid open, it was not long before the *Pelagii*, another Greek Nation, found the way into it: After whom *Saturn* out of *Crete*, and *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, with their several Followers, came and settled there. Not to say any thing of those several Colonies, which coming out of *Peloponnesus*, and the Parts of *Achaia*, planted themselves so thick in the East of *Italy*, now called *Calabria*, that of long time it had the name of *Magna Græcia*. So that the *Grecians* made the main gross or body of the *Italy* People: To which the coming of some *Tuscans* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, a Prince of *Lydia* in *Asia Minor*, served but as an *Accessary*, and altered nothing of the Principal. The last that settled here, were some of the Relicks of *Troy*, under the conduct of *Aneas*; who flying from their Native Country, and enraged Enemies, were first cast upon the Coasts of *Africk*; where having staid a while to refresh his Companies (we shall hereafter take an occasion to consider of the Fable of his loves with *Dido*) he set Sail for *Italy*, being the place assigned him by the Gods for his Seat and Empire, whither he came with fifteen Ships, which might contain, according to the rate which *Thucydides* alloweth to the Vessels then used, to the number of 1200 Men. And there he landed, as it proved, in an happy Hour: For he was no sooner arrived, but he was lovingly cherished and entertained by *Latinus* King of the *Latins*, or of *Latium*; whose chief City or Seat-Royal was then called *Laurentum*; who much esteeming of this Stranger, as a Man whose Fame had been his Harbinger, thought he could neither manifest his love sufficiently, nor bind him fast enough unto him, but by betrothing him unto *Lavinia*, his only Daughter. Hence grew the Wars betwixt *Aneas*, and

Turnus King of the *Rutuli*, a former Suitor, which ended in the death of the *Rutulian* Rival, contained *Aneas* and his *Trojans* in a sure possession. For now growing with the *Latins*, or *Laurentini*, into a more constant bond of Friendship, by many Inter-marriages and Mutual-kindnesses, they built the Town of *Laurentum*, called so in honour of their Queen, intending it for the Seat-Royal of the Princes of the *Italy* Line. But long it did not hold that state: For *Aneas*, the Son of *Aeneas* by his former Wife, to avoid all occasions of Contention with his Mother-in-Law, left her (being dead) in possession of *Laurentum*, and built *Longa Alba*; which being surrendered by *Julus* the Son of *Aeneas* to his Half-Brother *Sylvius*, became the constant Habitation of the *Sylvian* Kings, till the building of *Rome*, and final ending of the Race of the *Latin* Kings. The Names of whom (for there occurs little of their Actions) we are next to shew; taking along with us these few Kings which reigned in those parts of *Italy*, before the coming of *Aneas*.

A. M. The Kings of *Italy* of the *Aborigines*.

- 2637 1 *Janus*, the first King of the *Aborigines*, who lived in the same time with *Boor* and *Ruth*; He received *Saturn* flying out of *Crete* from *Jupiter*, and left him his Kingdom at his Death. He is said to be the Founder of the City of *Genoa*, and to have given name to the Hill in *Rome* called *Janiculus*, on which it was supposed that he had his Dwelling.
- 2 *Saturn*, who taught the People the use of dunging of their Lands, and for that cause was honoured by them as a God, under the Name of *Stercutius*, as *St. Austine* hath it. He reigned first together with *Janus*, and afterwards by himself alone: The whole time of both their Reigns was 33 Years.
- 2670 3 *Picus*, well skilled in divination by the flight and chattering of *Birds*, and therefore feigned by the Poets to be turned into a *Ye*. He entertained *Evander* and his *Arcadians*, giving them the Hill (called after *Arventine*) to build upon, 37.
- 2707 4 *Tamius*, the Son of *Picus*, and the Husband of *Fatua*, in whose time *Hercules* came into *Italy*, vanquished the Giants of *Cremona*, and killed the Giant *Cacus*, who had fled from him out of *Spain*, 44.
- 2751 5 *Latinus*, the Son of *Tamius*, who entertained *Aneas* coming from the Wars and destruction of *Troy*, and gave him his Daughter *Lavinia* to Wife, with his Kingdom after him in Dower, 36.
- 2787 6 *Lavinia*, Daughter to *Latinus*, and Queen of the *Latins*, married to *Aneas*, whom she outlived, he being slain in his Wars against *Mexentius*, the King of *Tuscany*; the Son or Successor of that *Mexentius* (an ungodly Tyrant) whom *Aneas* had before slain in his War with *Turnus* and the *Latins*, 7.

Kings of the *Latins* of the *Trojan* or *Sylvian* Race.

- 2787 1 *Aneas* the Son of *Anchises*, and Husband of *Lavinia*, slain in his Wars against *Mexentius*, King of the *Tuscans* or *Ætrurians*, as before is said, 3.
- 2790 2 *Ascanius*, the Son of *Aneas* by *Cressa* his former Wife: for fear of whom, *Lavinia* being great with Child, fled into a Wood, and was there delivered of a Son called *Sylvius*. He removed the Seat Royal from *Laurentum* to *Longa Alba*, a City of his own building, 38.
- 2828 3 *Sylvius Posthumus*, the Son of *Aneas* by *Lavinia*, preferred to the Kingdom by the love of the People, before *Julus*, the Son of *Ascanius*, (the

(the Founder of the *Julian* Family) from whom all the Kings of this Race had the Name of *Sylvii*, *Fulus* being honoured with the chief Priesthood (an Office next in dignity to that of the King) which he translated afterwards unto his Posterity, 29.

A. M.

2857 4 *Aeneas Sylvius*, 31.2888 5 *Latinus Sylvius*, 50.2938 6 *Alba Sylvius*, so called because of his beautifying and repairing the City *Alba*, then in some decay : or probably, because there he had his Birth, 39.2977 7 *Capetus Sylvius*, 24.3001 8 *Capys Sylvius*, said to be the Founder of the City of *Capua*; which shews that he extended his Dominion farther than the Province of *Latium*, 28.3029 9 *Capetus Sylvius*, 13.3024 10 *Tyberinus Sylvius*, from whom the River *Tiber* derives that name, being formerly called *Albula*, 8.3050 11 *Agrippa Sylvius*, 40.3090 12 *Alladius Sylvius*, who to make himself the more terrible to his Subjects, studied a way to imitate the Thunder; but was killed at last by a real Thunder-clap from Heaven, 19.3109 13 *Aventinus Sylvius*, who gave the name to the Hill *Aventine*, 37.3146 14 *Procras Sylvius*, 23.3169 15 *Amulius Sylvius*, the younger Son of *Procas*, setting aside his Brother *Numitor*, obtained the Kingdom for himself, slain at last by *Romulus*, and *Numitor* settled in the Throne, 42.3211 16 *Numitor*, the 21 King from *Janus*, and the last King of the *Latins*, restored by *Romulus* to the Throne; and after the short Reign of one Year only, deprived by him both of Life and Kingdom. After whose death the *Latins*, or *Albans*, had no more Kings, but kept themselves as a Free-Estate, till subdued to *Rome*, 1.

A. M.

The Kings of *Rome*.3213 1. *Romulus*, the Founder of *Rome*; he made peace with *Tatius*, King of the *Sabines*, coming against him to revenge the ravishment of their Women; incorporating him and his into his new City, and by that means adding thereto a fair and goodly Territory, 37.3251 2 *Numa*, the first Author of the *Roman* Ceremonies, 43.3294 3 *Tullus Hostilius*, who enlarged the borders of *Rome* by the Conquest of *Alba*, the Mother City of the *Latins*, and vanquished the *Fidenates*, 32.3326 4 *Ancus Martius*, who built *Ostia* on the mouth of *Tiber*, to be an Haven to the City, 24.3350 5 *Tarquinius Priscus*, who subdued many of the *Tuscan* Nations, increased the number of the Tribes and Senators, and added the *Triumphal* Ornaments, 38.3388 6 *Servius Tullus*, who first caused the People to be enrolled, and brought into *cense*, 44.3432 7 *Tarquinius Superbus*, Son to the former *Tarquinius*. He vanquished the *Gabii*, and took the Towns of *Ardea*, *Osticulum*, and *Suessa Pometia*: but for his own insolent Behaviour, and a Rape committed on *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatin*, by his Son *Sextus*, he and his whole Race were driven out of the Town, Anno Mund. 3457. U. C. 244. when he had reigned 25. Years.

After this, the *Romans* loathing the name of King, caused two Officers to be chosen out of the *Patricii*, or chief Citizens, to whom they gave the name of *Consuls*, à *Consulendo*, from Counselling of, and consulting the good of the Common-wealth, *Ut consulere se suis civibus meminerint*, saith the Historian, (That they might remember, consult, or take care of the welfare of the People) their Name being a *Memento* of their Charge or Duty. And in this Office they resolved to have always two, and those but only for a Year, *Ne vel solitudine vel mora potestas corrumpetur*: That neither the Intireness or Continuance of this high Office might corrupt it. And though some had the fortune to be *Consuls* two or three Years together, yet every new Year they were anew chosen, and so their Offices reckoned as several; neither do we find any to have been elected for less than a Year, unless upon the Death or Deposition of a former, until the Civil Wars. But then, *Cum belli civilis præmia festinari ceperunt*, when the Services done in the Civil Wars required a quicker turn in requital, the *Consulship* was given only for some part of the Year, and ordinarily for two Months: The first *Consuls* being named *Ordinarii*, in whose Names the Writings for the whole Year were dated; the other *Minores*, or *Honorarii*, which only served to make up a number. For so ambitious were the *Romans* of this Honour, that when *Maximus* died in the last Day of his *Consulship*, *Caninius Rebilus* petitioned *Cæsar* for that part of the Day that remained: whence that so memorated Jest of *Tully*, *O vigilantem Consulem, qui toto consulatus sui tempore somnum oculis non vidit!* O vigilant Consul! who during the whole time of his Office never slept. And when *Cecina* was by the Senate degraded from this Honour on the Day in which he was to have resigned it, one *Roscius Regulus* obtained the Office from *Vitellius* for the Day remaining: But as the Historian noteth, *Magno cum irrisu accipientis, tribuentisque*: To the great content of him that gave, and of him that took it. Now as the *Romans* did thus exceed the first number of *Consuls*, so sometimes fell they short of it. The first that was sole Consul was *Pompey* in the beginning of the Civil Wars, viz. A. U. C. 403. The next, one *Varanes*, U. C. 410. This Office, from the first Institution, to the final period of it, continued at the least in name (for the Emperors had of long time assumed

Concerning this it is to be understood, that *Amulius* having chased his Eldest Brother *Numitor* out of the Country, and possessed himself of the Throne, caused his Brothers Daughter *Rhea* (for preventing an Issue by her) to be shut up in the Temple of *Vesta*. Where she proving the Mother of two Sons, was according to the Law buried quick, and her Children by the cruel Tyrant cast out to be devoured of Wild Beasts. They were found by *Faustulus* the Kings Shepherd, Nursed by his Wife, for her infamous Life called *Lupa* (whence came the Fable, that they were suckled by a Wolf) and being grown to Mens estate, slew the Tyrant *Amulius*, placing their Grand-father *Numitor* in the Royal-Throne; whom not long after they deprived both of Life and Kingdom. Of these the eldest was named *Romulus*, and the younger *Rhemus*, who leaving *Alba* to the short possession of their Grand-father *Numitor*, laid the Foundation of the most Famous City of *Rome*; which *Romulus* first hanelled with the Blood of his Brother *Rhemus*, who had disdainfully leapt over the Walls of his new City. This City he made an *Asylum* or place of Refuge for all comers, of what desperate estate soever, and having ranked them into order, made himself their King. A People of so base a Nature, that their Neighbours refused to give them any of their Daughters in Marriage: So they were destitute of Wives, and consequently not like to continue a People long; till on a Proclamation made of some Plays and Pastimes, many of the *Sabine* Women flocked thither to behold the Sports, whom the *Romans* seized on, and forced an unwilling consent from them, to become their Wives. From such a base and low beginning did this City rise to be the Empress of the World.

assumed the Power and Prerogative appertaining to it) the space of 1084 years, though not without many intermissions of the Name and Title, by the several interpolings of the *Decemviri*, the *Dictators*, and the *Consular Tribunes*; of which more anon. The last *Consul* was one *Basilus*, in the time of *Justinian*, A. C. 542. The two first were *Collatinus* the Husband of *Lucretia*, and *Junius Brutus*, by whose Instigation the People had took Arms against the House of the *Tarquins*. A Man so zealous in defence of the common Liberty, so resolutely bent to make good what he had begun, and so extremely opposite to the Royal Race, that he not only caused *Collatine* to resign his Office within the year, because he was of the Blood of the *Tarquins*, but executed his own Sons for holding *Correspondence* and *Intelligence* with them. But though the Government were changed, the old Design was followed, which the Kings had laid for the enlarging of their Empire; but followed with so slow a pace, by reason of their Factions and Divisions, that it was full 500 years before they could be Masters of *Italy*. A matter not unworthy of our consideration, that the *Italians* should hold out so long a time against the puissance of the *Romans*; when in less than half that time ensuing, they did possess themselves of almost all *Europe*, and many goodly Kingdoms and Provinces both in *Asia* and *Africk*. So difficult a thing it was (as is said by *Florus*) *dare caput Italiae*, to contract the many Limbs of *Italy* into one Body, and unite them under one Head.

But to proceed, after *Italy* was fully conquered by them, they fell upon the *Carthaginians*, as their nearest Neighbours; whose Overthrow in the end of the first *Punick War*, A. U. C. 512. gave them the full possession of *Sicily*, (except the State of *Syracusa*) and the Isle of *Sardinia*. After that being molested in their Trade by the *Illyrian* Pyrates; and finding them countenanced therein by the Queen of that Nation, they made a fortunate War against her, and brought that puissant People to become their Tributaries, A. U. C. 525. The second *Carthaginian War*, managed by *Annibal* in the bowels of *Italy*, had almost put a period to the glories of their Commonwealth. But that being also ended to their advantage by the conquest of *Spain*, they quarrelled with *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had aided *Annibal*, compelled him to accept of peace (A. U. C. 555) on their own terms, and after outed his Son *Perseus* of all his Dominions, making *Macedon* a Province of *Rome*, and all the rest of *Greece* but their Tenants at will. Nor was it long before they picked a Quarrel with *Antiochus* the great King of *Syria*, made him abandon his possession of the *Lesser Asia*, A. U. C. 562. and finally prevailed so successfully in all their Actions, that there was neither King nor Commonwealth that could stand in their way, until the State being burthened with its too much Greatness, began to totter of it self.

Two things there were, which much conduced to the advancement of the *Romans* to their Power and Greatness, besides the Providence of *God* which had so disposed it: which were the great Encouragements which they gave their Soldiers, and the Triumphant manner of reception which they used to bestow upon their *Generals* when they returned home with Honour and Victory. For when any of their *Generals* did so return, he was permitted to enter sitting on a glorious Chariot, the Spoils which he had got in War being carried before, the Prisoners he had taken following bound at the heels of his Chariot; his Soldiers compassing him about with their several Crowns according to the quality of their well-deservings; and all the *Fathers* of the City, attended by the Priests and principal Ladies going out to meet him. The first beginning of which Custom is ascribed to *Romulus*, who in the War with *Acron* King of the *Ceninenfes* made against him in revenge of the Rape committed by the *Romans* on the *Sabine Women*, seeing his People give ground, called for help to *Jupiter*, and vowed if he overcame King *Acron*, to offer up his Armour to him. *Acron* being vanquished, the Conqueror cutteth down a fair

young Oak, and hangeh on it all the Armour of the vanquished King: then girding his Gown close unto him, and putting on his Head a Garland of Lawrel, he laid the Oak upon his shoulders and marched towards the City, his Army following, and singing an *Epinicion*, or Song of Victory. To this we must refer the original and beginning of *Triumphs*. But, *Nil est inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the saying is. *Tarquinius Priscus* long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the purple Robe, and the Triumphant Chariot drawn with four Horses. The other Pomps came afterwards, as they grew both in Power and Pride. Now of these *Triumphs* there were two sorts; the greater, which was properly called a *Triumph*; and the lesser, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many circumstances. For 1. The *Triumpher* made his Entrance in a Royal Chariot, and was met only by the Senators in their Robes; but the *Ovator* made his entrance on foot, and was met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of *Rome*. 2. The *Triumpher* had a Laurel Crown, and entred with a noise of Drums and Trumpets; but the *Ovator* had only a Garland of Firr, with Flutes and Hautboys playing before him. 3. The *Triumpher* was attired in a Garment of State, which they called *Vestis Trabeata*, but the *Ovator* in a plain purple Gown only. 4. In a *Triumph*, the Soldiers cried out, *Io Triumphe*; but in an *Ovation*, they ingeminated only O, O, O, from the often doubling of which Word, it had (as some think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5. And lastly, the *Triumpher* used to sacrifice a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovator* a Sheep only, from whence the Name is properly to be derived.

Now there was three Cases in which the Conqueror was to be content with this lesser Triumph. 1. If the number of Enemies whom they slew in Battle exceeded not 5000 Men; or that he had not so much overcome them by force, as by perswasion or subtilty. 2. If the War had been slight, cursory, or not lawfully managed. And 3. If it were against an Ignoble Enemy. And of this last we have a fair Instance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the Victory in the *Servile War*, (a Victory of great Importance to the State of *Rome*) was yet content with an *Ovation*, *ne Triumphi dignitatem Servili inscriptione violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the greater *Triumphs*, they were indeed very full of Magnificence; the Pomp whereof, who list to see, may find it in the Triumph of *Paulus Aemilius* described by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been said, we may conjecture somewhat at the Glories of it.

And yet this Honour was not always vouchsafed to those who had best deserved it, there being many ways whereby it might be forfeited or denied in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatness of the Men of War. For, 1. Sometimes it was denied a victorious General, by the strength of a contrary Faction; and so *Pompey* denied *Metellus* the honour of a Triumph for the Conquest of *Crete*. 2. Sometimes the Conqueror himself is willing to decline it for fear of Envy: And so *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his Conquest of *Sicily*, having *Triumphed* twice before, refused that Honour; his Reason was *ὡς φόβον αἰχρὴν δὲ τερτῷ δεῖαμβον*, for fear his third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy. 3. Sometimes the Soldiers, having been ill paid, or otherwise not well treated by their Commanders, opposed them in their suit for it: and this was the case of *Paulus Aemilius*, who questionless had missed this Honour for not dividing amongst them the Spoils of *Greece*, as he once had promised, if *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their own case, had not stickled hard for him with the Soldiers. 4. It was sometimes denied, because the General had born no publick Office in the Commonwealth: for so in *Livy*, when *Lentulus* coming *Proconsul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the *Fathers* answered, that he had indeed done things worthy of that Honour, but that they had no Precedent for it, *ut qui neque Consul, neque Dictator, neque Praetor Res gessisset, Triumpharet*. 5. Sometimes the *Generals* themselves omitted it for the furtherance of

some of their other purposes : And so *Cæsar* coming towards *Rome* a Victor, at the same time the *Consuls* were to be chosen, laid aside his demand of the *Triumph* to sue for the *Consulship* ; it being the custom that such as demanded the *Triumph* should abide without the City, and such as sued for the *Consulship* must of necessity be within. 6. Sometimes it was denied, when the War had been undertaken without the Command of the *Senate* : in which respect the *Triumph* was denied unto *Manlius* on the Conquest of *Galatia* by him, to the great enlargement of the Empire, *quia causam Belli Senatus non approbavit*, because he had no Commission from the *Senate* for it. 7. There was no *Triumph* granted if the War had been Civil, because in all such Wars whosoever was Conqueror, the Common-wealth was a loser by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Metellus* having vanquished *Sertorius* and his Party in *Spain*, would have it called a *Foreign*, not a *Civil* War, because they would not lose their *Triumph*. *Externum magis id bellum quam Civile videri voluerunt, ut triumpharent*. 8. If the Victory had not been obtained without great loss on the *Romans* side ; in which regard, *Valerius*, after his Conquest of the *Gauls*, was denied this Honour, *Quia magis dolor civibus amissis, quam gaudium fuis hostibus prevaluit*, saith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9. And lastly, The *Triumph* was denied a *General*, if the Service had not been performed in his own Province : And so we find that when *Livius* and *Nero*, being *Consuls*, had vanquished *Asdrubal*, *Livius* only had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the Man that had won the Day, because the Field was fought in the Province of *Livius*, to which *Nero* came but as an *Accessory*, or *Assistent* to him.

And these are all, or at the least the principal causes of hindering or omitting this great Honour, indeed the greatest that the *Free-State* could be capable of. But after when the *Common wealth* was changed into a *Monarchy*, it began to be laid aside for altogether, as too great for Subjects ; and was first purposely neglected by *Vespasianus Agrippa*, the Establisher of *Augustus* in the *Roman* Empire, who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain *Rebellions* in *Asia*, and his quiet settling of that Country ; to give *Posterity* an example, refused to accept it. And this example being (as it were) a rule to others, occasioned that this Custom was in short time quite laid aside ; and that no Man under the degree of an *Emperor* triumphed solemnly ; all others from thenceforth, being content with the *Triumphal* Ornaments, *μónαις ἡ ἐννίκαις ἵμασι*, in the words of *Dion*. And though *Belisarius* having subdued the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, is said (600 Years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph* ; yet in propriety of Speech, it was nothing but an honourable presenting of himself and his Prisoners before the *Emperor*, and was so far from the magnificence of a *Roman Triumph*, that it wanted many of the Solemnities used in an *Ovation*. Nor did the *Emperors* themselves much affect this Honour, either because too popular, or too chargeable, or that they thought it was beneath the *Imperial Majesty* ; the last (as I remember) that made use thereof to set forth his Glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his Victories over the *Germans*, and the *Blemysæ*, a People of *Africk*, in or about the Year 284 of our Saviour's Birth.

In the next place look we on the Incouragements and Rewards of the Common-Soldiers : For, besides the setting out of Lands and Dwellings for the poorer sort, in which they might rest themselves when they were past Service ; and besides the large *Donatives* which the *General* in his *Triumph* did bestow upon them, they had their *Mural Crown* for him that first scaled the Walls, a *Naval Crown* for him that first boarded the Enemies Ships, a *Camp Crown*, or *Corona Castrensis*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy ; a *City Crown*, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preserved the Life of a *Roman Citizen*. Not to say any thing of those

Chains and Bracelets which Soldiers of inferior Merit were adorned withal : By which Encouragements and the good Conduct of their Counsels in the *Senate*, the *Roman Affairs* succeeded so prosperously, and their Dominions were enlarged so immensely, that never any Commonwealth had so large a growth.

And yet the greatness of this State is neither totally, nor only to be attributed to the *Consular* Government. For though the Walls of this great Building were raised by the *Consuls*, yet the Foundation of the same was laid by the *Kings*, and the Roof thereof laid on by the *Emperors*. Nay, be it spoken to the Honour of *Monarchical* Government, whensoever any great and imminent Danger did seem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aside their confidence in the rule of their *Consuls*, and betake themselves to the Command of one Sovereign Officer, whom they called *Dictator*. Of which, and other the Changes hapning in the State of *Rome*, take this short Abstract from *Corn. Tacitus*. "*Urbem Romam a principio Reges habuere, &c.*" The City of *Rome* was "in the beginning governed by Kings. Liberty and the Consulship *L. Brutus* brought in. The *Dictators* were chose but for a time. The *Decemviri* passed not two Years, neither had the *Consular* Authority of the *Triunes* of the Soldiers any long continuance, or *Cinna's* or *Sylla's* Dominion. *Pompey* and *Crassus* quickly yielded to *Cæsar's* Forces ; *Lepidus* and *Anthony* to *Augustus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of these publick Changes : Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were instituted only on a particular occasion for the reforming of the Laws by those of *Athens* ; and the *Military Tribunes* of *Consular* Authority ordained to divert Common People from seeking after the *Consulship* ; I shall here say nothing. But as for the *Dictators*, being Officers of a Supreme Power, and such as made way for the *Emperors* in the close of all ; I shall enlarge a little further. They were called *Dictators à dictando*, because they prescribed what they pleased unto the People ; which they were bound to execute and not dispute. Hence that memorable Jest of *Julius Cæsar*, who being told that *Sylla* had resigned his *Dictatorship*, though by the Decree of *Senate* made perpetual to him ; return'd this Answer, that *Sylla* was an unlearned Man, *dictare nesciit*, and therefore knew not how to *dictate*, or to play the *Dictator*. They were also called *Populi Magistri*, or the Peoples Masters, because from them lay no Appeal unto the People (as did from all the rest of the *Roman* Magistrates) during the whole time of their Command, which ordinarily continued for six Months ; yet so, that if they did in the mean time settle the Affairs of the Commonwealth, they resigned it sooner ; if the necessities of the State required a longer continuance in it, they were chosen again. The Names of as many of them as I have met withal, I have here subjoined together with the Services they did the Publick, in the time of their Office.

The Dictators of Rome.

A. U. C.

- 253 1 *Titus Largius*, chosen upon occasion of a general War made by the *Latins* upon *Rome* ; the first that ever had this Office.
- 257 2 *Aulus Posthumius*, chosen to pursue that War, which he ended with the slaughter of 30000 of the *Latins*.
- 295 3 *L. Quintius Cincinnatus*, chosen to this Office from the Plough, overcame the *Volsci* ; chosen again *An. U. C.* 314. to suppress the Sedition raised by *Sp. Melius*.
- 328 4 *Amilius Mamercus*, overcame the *Veientes* and the *Fidenates*, and was thrice in eleven Years called unto this Office.
- 338 5 *Pub. Servilius*, who finally vanquish'd the *Fidenates* and the *Larvicani*, chosen first in 320.

A. U. C.

- 354 6 *Furius Camillus*, who finally destroyed the City
 aliis of the *Viti*, and being chosen a second time,
 359 A. U. C. 362. 366. preserved his Country from
 the *Galls*: thrice chosen after this upon new
 occasions.
- 375 7 *Tit. Quintius Cincinnatus*, chosen in the War a-
 gainst the *Latins*: He took *Præneste* and eight
 other Cities in twenty Days.
- 385 8 *L. Manlius*, elected in the time of a grievous
 Pestilence, to find a way for the appeasing of
 the gods.
- 396 9 *C. Sulpitius*, against the *Gauls*, whom he beat.
- 418 10 *Martius Rutilus*, the first *Dictator* chosen out of
 aliis the *Commons*.
- 421 11 *L. Papyrius*, subdued the *Samnites*, A. 444.
- 429 12 *Cossus*; by whom the *Samnites* were again van-
 quished.
- 437 13 *Emilius*, who also overcame the *Samnites*.
- 442 14 *Sulpitius Longus* made *Dictator*.
- 15 *Lentulus* who triumphed also over the *Samnites*.
- 451 16 *I. Bubulcus*, who finally subdued the *Aequi* and
 the *Volsci*.
- 452 17 *M. Valerius Dictator*, overcame the *Tuscians* and
Marsians.
- 18 *Corn. Rufinus*.
- 466 19 *App. Claudius Cæcus* was chosen.
- 467 20 *Q. Hortensius*, chosen for appeasing a difference
 betwixt the Senate and the Commons, who
 had fortified himself in *Faniculum*, one of the
 Hills whereon *Rome* stood.
- 505 { 21 *Cl. Glizias*, forced to resign his Office to
 22 *Atilius Colatinus*, the first that exercised his Of-
 fice out of *Italy*: he was chosen in the first
Punick War.
- 536 23 *Fabius Maximus*, chosen in the War against
Annibal.
- 537 24 *M. Junius*, chosen upon the great defeat which
 the *Roman Forces* had at the Battel of *Cannæ*.
- 545 25 *L. Manlius Torquatus*, chosen upon the death of
Marcellus Consul, slain by *Annibal*.
- 672 26 *L. Sylla*, (descended from that *Corn. Rufinus*,
 who had been formerly in this Office) having
 by force of Arms suppressed the Faction of
Marius and *Cinna*, made himself Master of the
 City, and caused himself to be chosen *Perpetual Dictator*, after the Office had been inter-
 mitted for the space of 127 Years: which
 Office having exercised with a great deal of
 Cruelty, he resigned with as great a Confi-
 dence.
- 707 27 *C. Julius Cæsar* descended from *Julus* the Son
 aliis of *Ascanius*, who was the second King of the
 704 *Trojan Race*, having conquered *Britain*, and
 added all *Gaul Transalpine* to the *Roman Em-
 pire*; and finding himself unworthily requited
 by the Faction of *Pompey*, passed with his Ar-
 my after him into *Greece*: and having van-
 quished him in the Fields of *Pharsalia*, and
 made himself absolutely Master of the *Roman
 Empire*; took to himself the supreme Go-
 vernment thereof, under the Title of *Dictator*;
 which having managed for the space of five
 Years, he was murdered in the Senate-house
 by *Brutus* and *Cassius*.

Before the time of these perpetual *Dictators*, the *Romans* having some Enemies or other that opposed the progress of their Fortunes, had not the leisure to contend with one another in a publick way; or if they did, their differences and seditions were soon composed. But being grown so great as to fear no Enemy; and the Estate so vast, that it was grown too mighty for a popular

Government; then they began to practise on the Peoples Patience, and to project the sharing of the Empire amongst the Great Ones. Concerning which, take here this short *Epitome*, which I find in *Tacitus*. "*Rebus modicis æqualitas facile habebatur, &c.* While (saith he) our Dominions were but small, Equality was easily maintained among us. But after we had subdued the World, and destroyed all Kings and Cities that stood in our way, or might work our annoyance; when we had leisure to seek after Wealth without peril, there arose hot Contentions betwixt the Nobility and Commons. Sometimes the factious *Tribunes* carried it away, sometimes the *Consuls* had the better: and in the City and common *Forum*, (Market-place) some little Skirmishes (the beginning of our Civil Wars) were sometimes seen. Afterwards, *C. Marius* one of the meanest of the Commonalty, and *L. Sylla* the most cruel of all the Nobility, by force of Arms overthrowing the *Free-State*, reduced all to an absolute Government. To them succeeded *Cn. Pompeius*, a little closer in his Projects, but nothing better minded to the Common-wealth: *Et nunquam postea nisi de Principatu quæsitum*; and never after that was any other point debated, than who should get the Sovereignty unto himself. So *Tacitus*: and he stateth it rightly. For after *Pompey* had revived the Controversie, and had found *Cæsar* a better Disputant than himself; *Augustus*, *Antonius*, and *Lepidus* (on the Death of *Cæsar*) made good the Argument, attracting all Power unto themselves by the name of *Triumviri*: till *Augustus* having out-witted *Lepidus*, and vanquished *M. Antony* at the Battel of *Actium*, became sole Sovereign of the State, by the name of Prince; *Et cuncta bellis civilibus fessa, nomine Principis sub imperium accepit*: And when all were weary of the Civil Wars, under the name of Prince, he subject all to his Sovereignty, as that Author hath it.

But touching those great Alterations in the State of *Rome*, the contentions for the chief Command, and the reduction of it into a *Monarchy* by *Augustus Cæsar*, I published a Discourse in the Year 1631. (but written many Years before) under the title of *AUGUSTUS*, or, *An Essay of those Means and Counsels whereby the Commonwealth of Rome was altered, and reduced to a Monarchy*. Which being but short, so pertinent to the present business, and so well entertained when it came abroad; I hope it will not be improper or unprofitable to subjoin it here. The Reader may either peruse it, or pretermitt it, as his fancy guides him. And here it followeth in these words.

They which have heretofore written of *Commonwealths*, have divided them into three Species: First, The Government of the King: Secondly, Of the Nobles: And Thirdly, of the People. Either of these is again subdivided into good and evil: The evil being only the good corrupted; the good nothing else but the bad refined. So is the Government of a King divided into a *Monarchy*, and a *Tyranny*: Of the Nobles, into *Aristocracy* and *Oligarchy*: Of the People, into a *Republick*, and *Democracy*. All these, as well in general, as in the several Couplets, have a secret inclination to change the one into the other; and to make a *Pythagorical* transmigration (as it were) into each others Being. I need not stand on many Instances. The Commonwealth of *Rome* ("into whose Stories whosoever looks, will judge them rather to contain the acts of the whole World, than a particular Nation) will serve for all. *Romulus* at the foundation of his City, reserved unto himself the chief Sovereignty, leaving it entire to his Successors. *Numa*, *Ancus*, *Tullus*, *Tarquin* the Elder, and *Servius*, governed themselves so moderately, and the People so justly, that they affected not *Tyranny*, nor the Commons Liberty. They appeared more desirous

to fill the *Coffers* of their Subjects than their own *Treasuries*: And when necessity compelled them to a Tax, they rather seemed to shear their Sheep than fleece them. But *Tarquin* the Second, commonly called *Superbus*, a Man of insupportable Vices, having by violence enthronized himself in that Chair of State, which (had not his ambitious Spirit been impatient of delay) would have been his rightful Inheritance, made his Government answerable to his entrance, cruel and bloody. How many Men, eminent as well by their own Vertue, as their Parents Nobility, did he cut off? How many did he for no cause promote, to make their fall the more remarkable? What part of the Senate was free from slaughter? What corner of the City from Lamentations? Yet this was not all. The miserable *Romans* were visited with three Plagues at once; *Pride* in the Father, *Cruelty* in the Mother, and *Lust* exorbitant in their Son *Sextus*, a true Copy of the old *Originals*. Either of these had been more than enough to exercise the People's Patience. But meeting all at one time, it seemed that nothing could now be added to the wretchedness of the one, and the wickedness of the other. *Brutus* (a Name fatal to Tyrants) did easily persuade the *Commons* to shake off this Yoke: For they, as well desirous of *Novelties*, as sensible of *Oppressions*, had long since murmured at the present State, and wanted nothing but a Head to break out into actual Rebellion. So the *People* got the *Freedom*, and the *Kings* lost the *Sovereignty* of the City.

2. *Brutus*, although he wanted no fair Title to the Crown, yet either perceiving how odious the name of *King* was grown; or perhaps willing to be rather the first *Consul* than the last *Prince*, instituted a new form of Government: Wherein the sway of all was referred to the *Fathers* of the City; out of whom two were annually chosen as chief of the rest. And herein certainly he dealt very advisedly: For had he sought to confirm himself in the *Kingdom*, what could Men judge, but that not love to his Country was the cause that stirred him to take Arms, but desire of Rule? Again, besides that, secure *Privacy* is to be preferred before hazardous *Royalty*; What hope had he to keep the Seat long, having by his own example taught the People both the *Theory* and *Practice* of *Rebellion*? Under this new *Aristocracy* the *Roman* Affairs succeeded so prosperously, their Dominions were enlarged so imminently, that it may well be questioned whether the *Roman* Fortune caused their Greatness, or their Valour commanded their Fortune. For the Governours not seeking Wealth but Honour, or not their own Wealth, but the Publick, did so demean themselves both in Peace and War, that there was between all a virtuous emulation who should most benefit his Country. An happiness which was too great to continue long. The People had as yet no written Laws: *Custom* bearing most sway, the rest of the Law locked up in the Breast of the *Judges*. To avoid such Inconveniencies as might hence ensue, there were some Men, conceived to be as sound in Judgment, as honest in their Actions, deputed by a general Commission, to take an abstract of the *Grecian* Laws: according to the tenour whereof the People were to frame their Lives, the *Judges* their Sentences. Here followed the *Oligarchy* or *Decemvirate*, State of *Rome*, but long it lasted not. For these new *Lords* joining Forces together, made themselves rich with the Spoil of the People, not caring by what unlawful means they could purchase either Profit or Pleasure. *Appius Claudius*, one of the *Decemviri*, was the break-neck of this Government. He, unmindful of *Lucretia* and the *Tarquins*, lusted after *Virginia*, a Woman though of low condition, yet such a Woman in whom Beauty and Vertue strove for the preheminnence. The Issue was, that she (to save her Honour) was slain by her own Father in an open Assembly of the People; *Appius* forced to make away himself in Prison; and the rest of that *Magistracy* abdicating their Offices, the *Consuls* were for a time restored.

3. The People flesh'd with this Victory, and calling to

mind how their Ancestors had in like manner banished the *Kings*, began to know their own strength, and stomach'd it exceedingly, that they on whose Shoulders the frame of the State was supported, should be so much under the command of others; that they who were *Lords* abroad, should be below the condition of *Slaves* at home. Hereupon they raise a tumult under the Conduct of their *Tribune*, *Canuleius*. Nor could they by any persuasions be induced to lay down Arms till they had obtained a Decree, That from thenceforth the *Nobles* and the *Commons* might promiscuously be married. And this was the first step to the *Republick*. The gaining this new *Privilege*, put them in possibility of obtaining greater. They now sue to be capable of the *Consulship*. The *Fathers* consulting of this demand, wisely foresaw, that to grant their Petition, or to deny it, was alike dangerous. For were it utterly dashed, it was to be feared the People would again forsake the City; and yet make their stay more insolent and insupportable, if it were granted. *C. Claudius*, one who by his honourable behaviour, was by both Parties had in an equal degree of reverence, quickly proposed a middle course, whereby the fury of the Multitude might be appeased, without blemish to the *Consular* Dignity. He constituted six Annual Officers, equally chosen out of the *People* and the *Nobles*, calling them *Tribuni Militum Consularis Potestatis*. This Office continued, but not without many *Interstitions*, the space of 78 Years. Which time expired, and some experience being had of the Peoples Government, the *Lords* of the Senate did decree, That one of the *Consuls* should from thenceforth be chosen by, and out of the *Commons*; that they should be capable of all *Magistracies*, yea, even of the *Dictatorship*. So that now *Vertue* was as speedy a Ladder to climb unto *Honours*, as *Nobility of Birth*; and a Good Man as much respected as a Great. A rare felicity of the times.

4. The People being thus mixt with the *Nobles*, as well in Marriages as Honours; one would have thought that this *Common-wealth*, being thus equally poised, had been immortal. But as in the *Natural* Body there can be no exact and *Arithmetical* proportion of the Humours and Elements, without some *Predominancy*; so in the *Body Politick* can there be no equal mixture of the *Plebeians* and *Patricians*, without the supremacy of the one or the other. The People had, presently after the institution of the *Consuls*, raised a Commotion, and withdrew themselves into *Mount Aventine*. Nor could they be intreated to return into the City, till there were granted unto them peculiar Officers called *Tribuni Plebis*, or Protectors of the *Commons*. These being not long after by the *Common* Council pronounced to be *Sacrosancti*, and inviolable, began to heave the *Popular* State too high, and thrust the *Aristocratical* too low; not regarding to lose the love of the one, so they might get the applause of the other. Insomuch, that matters of Judgment were devolved from the *Fathers* to the *Commons*; and the authority of the *Senate* trod under foot by the *People*. Nay, they proceeded so far, that *Marius* being *Tribune*, threatened to send *Cotta* the *Consul* unto Prison. And *Sulpitius* in the same Office made the *Consuls* forsake the *Senate-house*, and slew one of their Sons, whose Heels were not nimble enough to fly away. And now were the *Romans* governed by that form of Rule, than which there is no lower. So that as well by an inevitable necessity in Nature, as the ordinary course of *Policies*, there must be a reverting to the first, and *Monarchical* Authority. For questionless it fareth many times with a *Common-wealth* as with the *Sun*, which runneth through all the signs of the *Zodiack*, till it return to the place where its motion first began. And the *Platonick* Year of reducing of all things to the same beginning, continuance, and period, how false soever in the Books of Nature, is in some sort true in the change of Government.

5. The way down Hill is easie and ordinary, but to ascend unto the top requireth both Wit to frame the Steps,

Steps, and courage to give the Attempt. So was it here also with the *Romans*: They had naturally, and almost insensibly fallen from a *Monarchy* to a *Populacy* or *Democracy*: But to ascend from a *Populacy* to a *Monarchy*, required many steps and degrees in many, much industry in all. *Marius* and *Sylla*, well skilled in feeding the Humours of the *People*, were the first that attempted, and severally mounted to such a height of Command, as never durst any promise to them, nor they hope for themselves. *Marius* was of a harsh and stern Nature, equally cruel to the *Enemies* in War, and the *People* in Peace; one whose Birth the *Romans* might have had just cause to curse, had he not saved them from the *Cimbri*. *Sylla* was one whose Carriage none could enough commend before, or sufficiently condemn after his Prosperity. A Man whose Peace was far more bloody than his Wars; a better Subject than a Prince.

These two gave way to each other, and both to Death. Next these, as well in Factions and Designs, as Blood and Alliance, succeeded *Cæsar* and *Pompey*: Two Men never truly parallel'd since their own times. *Cæsar* had a Wit to invent so pregnant, a Heart to execute so stout, and to both a Fortune so favourable, that he durst undertake what no Man dared; and his Performances commonly were answerable to his Undertakings. *Pompey*, a Man greater than his own or his Friends wishes, had triumphed over all the Parts of the known World; and could he but have brooked an *Equal*, he had never met *Superior*. Had these two lived in divers Ages, or exercised their Valour on the common Enemy, the World had been too little to yield them employment. But turning their Forces one against the other, *Pompey* overthrown in the *Field*, was basely murdered in *Egypt*: And *Cæsar* victoriously Conqueror in *Thessaly*, was barbarously massacred in the *Capitol*. And though none of these four Worthies could settle the *Monarchy* in himself, yet this shall be to their eternal Memory recorded, that they first opened a passage to others, and first moved the Stone, which rowling along, tumbled the *People* out of the Government.

6. After the overthrow of *Pompey*, and death of *Cæsar*, the *Common-wealth* might have recovered *Liberty*, if either *Cæsar* had left no Heir, and *Pompey* no Children: or rather, if *Antonius*, a Man of an unquiet and turbulent Spirit, had not begun new Troubles. For he knowing the Affection of the *common People* unto young *Octavius*, *Cæsar's* Heir; and hearing the continual report of his approach to *Rome* for his Inheritance, did by Decree of the *Senate* restore *Sextus* the Son of *Pompey* to his Blood and Honours; hoping that they two, inheriting their Fathers Hatreds, would, like Pellets in a Boys Pot-gun, drive out each other; and so he might remain Lord of the whole. But young *Octavius* was too old to be so fetch'd over, and had moreover more desire to revenge his Father's Death on *Brutus* and *Cassius*, than turn himself upon an Enemy that neither had done, nor could do him any hurt. At his first entrance into *Rome* he declared himself *Cæsar's* Heir, though some regarding more his Welfare than Honour dissuaded him from it. His Retinue at his Entrance was but small, his Behaviour gentle and courteous, so that all had cause to love him, none to fear him. His first business was to *Antonius*, then possessed of all *Cæsar's* Estate. His Words as modest as his Petition just. *Antonius's* answer somewhat churlish, forbidding him to meddle in matters of State, adding that he was too young to take upon him the Name of *Cæsar*, and so dismissed him unsatisfied, and with Discontentments. *AUGUSTUS* (for by that Name we mean to call him, though he was not yet so called) perceiving that *Antonius's* Answer, though in shew but a delay, was in effect a denial, insinuated into the Acquaintance of *Cicero*, then potent among the *Senators*, and a capital Enemy of *Antonius*; by whose means the *Lords* of the *Senate* began to cast great Affection towards him. Next in a solemn Oration to the *People*, he let

them know, how he intended to have distributed his Father's Wealth among them; and how *Antonius* did unjustly detain it from them both. Certainly, there is not any thing prevaileth sooner with the ignoble Man than hope of Gain. No sooner had he finished his Speech, and given away that to them, which he thought impossible to get for himself, but all was in a tumult. None was so sparing of his words, but he had some Curse in store for *Antonius*; every one vowing the destruction of that Man, whom they supposed to deprive them of *AUGUSTUS* Donative.

7. In this Hurly-burly *Antony* quits the Town, and is by the general voice of the Houses declared an Enemy to the State. An Army is given to *Hocius* and *Panla*, then *Consuls*: *AUGUSTUS*, aged but 18 Years, being proclaimed *Imperator*, and made head of the League against the common Foe. *AUGUSTUS*, as he loved not to absent from a necessary War, so he always used to reserve himself from the dangers of it; and therefore he committed the whole Enterprize unto the *Consuls*: well knowing that though the Officers and Soldiers took most pains to get the Victory, yet would the Honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas if any thing fell out to the Army not well, his being a *Non-agent* in the business, would bring his Honour off without stain. The *Consuls* therefore proceeded in the War against *Antony*: who seeing little possibility of prevailing, resolved to sell the loss of his own Liberty and his Soldiers Lives, at a dear rate. And indeed the Fortune of the Day was so equally shared, that as the *Consuls* might boast of the vanquishment of *Antony*, so *Antony* might triumph in the death of the *Consuls*.

AUGUSTUS had now as much as he could desire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his Service. He therefore applies himself so to them, that giving that among them which he had in present, and promising them greater Favours, according as his Fortune and their Valour should advance him; he bound them unto him in an eternal bond of Allegiance, and made them the first step by which he ascended the *Royalty*. The *Lords* of the *Senate* hearing of the Young-Man's Fortune, thought it best to strangle these hopes even in their Cradles, and to that end, decree the Honour of overcoming *Antony*, not to belong to *AUGUSTUS*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whose defence (being besieged by *Antony* in *Mutina*) their Army had been levied. Nor did they think this frost of unexpected unkindness, sufficient to nip the blossom of his hopes; but they denied him the *Consulship*. These harsh proceedings compelled *AUGUSTUS* (his Honour now lying at stake) to enter *Rome* as Conqueror, and force the *Fathers* to grant him his desires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aimed at, he generally shewed himself grateful to all, and particularly to some of the Soldiers, paying them what was behind by promise, and openly protesting that without their Aid he durst not have adventured into the *Capitol*. So by keeping his Day with the *Military Men*, and shewing his noble and generous Nature in a thankful commemoration of their Service; he added stronger Bonds to such as were already his own, and won many daily to his side, which before were either *neutral*, or *Adversaries*.

8. *Antony* in the mean time was not idle, but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puissant Army, he posted thither, and so far prevailed with the Soldiers, that he was admitted into the Camp; where the *General* entertained him with all expressions of love and welcome. *Antony* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, soon perswaded him to lead his Forces into *Italy*; promising him no less than the Lordship of the World, if he durst but shew his Face to the *Romans*. *AUGUSTUS* having continual news of this Combination, and fearing much the prowess of *Antony*, now strengthen'd; conceived no course so fitting and convenient to his ends, as to join Friendship, and to enter in-

to Confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either, but because being destitute of means to resist them, and also to revenge the Death of his Father *Julius*, which he much laboured; he might with their Forces oppress *Cassius* and *M. Brutus*, and, as occasion fell out, deal with them being severed. This League was solemnly confirmed by a bloody *Proscription* immediately following. Wherein, to be revenged on their *Enemies* they betrayed their *Friends*. A lamentable and ruthful time; good and bad, rich and poor, being alike subject to the slaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Caesar's* Government thought to be the *Golden Age*; and every one began to curse *Brutus* and *Cassius* as the Authors of these present Miseries; whom they but lately honoured as the Restorers of the Common Liberty. Nay, the very Kings were deemed tolerable, and such as lived in their Days, happy. The poor *Romans* had not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrants*: Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us Men, that we know not our own happiness in the fruition, but the want. Two of these *Triumviri* glutted themselves with Blood, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the People. *Augustus* on the contrary, shewed himself much grieved at this barbarous Cruelty; so that his consent seemed rather forced than voluntary. But this *Proscription*, though in it self cruel and tyrannical, produced some good and profitable effects in the *Republick*. For when by this *Proscription* and the ensuing Civil War, the stoutest of the Nobles and Commons were made away, few being left which durst endeavour to recover the old Liberty; *Augustus* did the more easily establish his Monarchy, and restore Peace to the City. Moreover, the prosecution of this Cruelty so incensed the People against *Antony* and *Lepidus*, that *Augustus*, whom most held excusable, found them always his fast Friends, if not for love to him, yet in spite to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antony* and *Augustus* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joint-forces march against *Brutus* and *Cassius*; both overthrown by *Antony*; whom *AUGUSTUS* did therefore put upon that Service, as well to diminish *Antony's* Forces, as to keep his own entire. As for himself, either he in policy suffered himself to be driven out of the Field by *Brutus*, to make *Antony* more work; or else indeed durst not abide the Battel. Such end had *Brutus* and *Cassius*, two Men whom Fortune seemed to be in love with on the sudden, and did as suddenly forsake them. *Brutus* the more accomplished Man; *Cassius* the more expert Soldier. I pass over *AUGUSTUS's* Wars in *Italy*, *Antony's* in *Asia*, the discontents between them, and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia*, Sister to the one, and Wife to the other *Emperor*. As also how joining Forces together to oppress *Sextus*, then lording it over the Sea, and proud with the Conquest of *Sicilia*; they received him into the Confederacy, and joined the Island of *Sardinia* to his other Conquests. To recompence which kindness, *Sextus* invited the two Generals aboard his *Admiral-Gally*: and after a bountiful Entertainment, returned them safe to their Camps. I scarce have ever heard of so great an over-sight among so many able Politicians. And much I marvel with my self, upon what confidence *Augustus* and *Antony* durst so far trust their Persons to a reconciled Enemy: or on what reason *Sextus* having both of them in his Power, would let slip so slightly that advantage, greater than which was never offered to a discontented and ambitious Person. This I am sure of, that he afterwards repented it, and could have wished that he had harken'd to the Voice of *Menas* his old Servant, who had perswaded him to make his best of that opportunity. The Kings of *France* and *Arragon*, of old Enemies made new Friends, had the like interview at *Savona*: which that notable Historiographer and States-man *Guicciardine* describeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet, in the like case, have many, and, as I think, worthily

condemned *Lewis XI.* of *France*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy*, the Arch-politicians of those Days, in that *Lewis* at *Peronne* put himself into the hands of *Charles* his Enemy, who also after a short restraint, dismissed him.

10. These solemn expressions of Amity between the three *Generals* being thus ended, and *Antony* gone for *Egypt*, *AUGUSTUS* then began to contrive his establishment in the *State*; though with the ruine of his *Colleagues*. He beginneth first with *Sextus*, having by Gifts and Promises drawn *Menas* unto his side, who by reason of his inwardness with his Master, knew most of his Designs. By the direction of this *Menas*, and the assistance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Sextus*; who flying death in *Europe* by the hand of *AUGUSTUS*, found it in *Asia* by the commandment of *Antony*. After this Victory, *AUGUSTUS*, either having, or pretending a Quarrel against *Lepidus*, entred into his Camp, seizeth his Person, and depriving him of all Honours, confineth him to *Rome*. A Man that half against his Will, stumbling upon the Government, had beyond any desert of his, enjoyed ten Years continuance of Empire and Prosperity. An Action of a very high nature, and such as *AUGUSTUS* durst not have ventured on, if *Antony* had been in *Italy*. He therefore advisedly removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the same. It hath been ever a chief *Maxim* in *Court-Policy*, to remove that Man out of the way, under pretence of some honourable Charge, whom we intend either to cast from his present Honours, or else to make less potent with Prince and People. For which cause also *AUGUSTUS* perswaded *Antony's* absence from the City to bring him at the last into discredit and contempt. For well he knew that his dotage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many Inconveniencies: neither could his neglecting the *State*, to riot with his *Lemman*, be other than distastful to the *Lords* and *People*. Next, he commanded his Sister *Octavia* to leave her Husband *Antony's* House; yet privately he perswaded her to live there still, and bring up his Children; that so the *Romans* seeing her noble demeanour and love to her Husband, might the more heartily detest him, who so ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To add more Fuel to this flame of Hatred, he readeth *Antony's* Will unto the People, in which many of the *Roman* Provinces were bequeathed to *Cleopatra's* Children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antony* likewise preferred many Bills against *AUGUSTUS*, as that he had deposed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided *Italy* among his own Soldiers only, that he had not restored the Ships borrowed to make War against *Sextus*.

11. These Discontents seconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both resolute to refer all to the decision of a Battel. *Antony* had a Fleet consisting of 500 Ships, high built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph than a Fight. His Land Forces consisted of 100000 Foot, and 12000 Horse: *Augustus* had the like number of Horsemen, 80000 Foot, and 250 good Men of War, snug and close, built more for use than ostentation. The Rendezvous is *Actium*, a place seeming to be marked out for notable designs: Here being fought also in our Fathers Days, that famous Battle, wherein the *Venetians* gave the World to understand, that the *Turks* Forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antony* was on the Offensive-side, and therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onset by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whose words were Oracles, perswaded him to the Sea-fight; not that she thought it more safe, but that, if *Antony* lost the Day, she might with more facility escape. To this resolution, when most of the Captains had for fear agreed; one of the old Soldiers thus bluntly gain-said it. "What a miserable Security art thou possessed with, most noble Emperor! Where is that ancient fore-sight wherewith thou hast formerly prevented all Disasters, and turned the Enemies devices on their own Heads? Consider with thy self, most noble

noble General, what uncertain Friends the Wind and Sea are? To how fickle an Element thou dost trust the Fortunes? Let the *Egyptians* and *Phenicians*, old *Mermen*, born and nurs'd up in the Sea, follow this kind of warfar. But let us thy true *Roman* Spirits try our Valour on the firm Land, and there fight for thy Empire, and our own Lives. "Perhaps thou dost mistrust our Faith: Look here, *Antony*, (with that he opened his Bosom) and thou shalt see many an honourable Scar got in thy Service. "We are now too old to learn new Treasons: Alter therefore thy Resolution, and to please a Woman, cast not away so many of thy faithful Followers. Certainly the irresistible Powers of Heaven when they decree a Man's Destruction, overthrow those Counsels by which he should escape it. *Antony* turns his deaf Ear to this Soldier's wholesome Advice, and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two or three Kisses, (as if from the Fountain of her Lips he had derived all his Courage) without any more Ceremony prepareth unto the Battle.

12. *AUGUSTUS* on the other side, seeing a necessity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his Vessels were more useful, and better man'd, though fewer than his Enemies: That his Men to him were faithful, and by reason of their many Victories, in good heart: From *Antony* were daily revolted some Kings and Captains of note, to the great encouragement of the one side, and disheartning of the other. The whole charge of the War he committed to *M. Vespasianus Agrippa*, who failing in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Gallies whatsoever might be impediments to the Valiant or shelter for the Cowardly; all that was cumbersome to his own Men, or advantageous to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and the Battles ready to join, *Augustus Caesar* standing where he might see and be seen of all, is said to make this or the like Oration. "Fellows and Companions in Arms, I suppose it needless to hearten you, which never were acquainted with Fear; or bid you overcome, which never yet knew what it was, not to vanquish. Conquest hath always sat upon the edge of your Swords, and Victory been written in your Foreheads. Be not now backward to add this one to your other Triumphs. When after the death of my Father *Julius* of famous memory, I first dealt in matters of War, I rather found than made you good Soldiers. And during this twelve years service under me, neither have you been wanting in the Duty of faithful Followers, nor I (I hope) of a vigilant and grateful Leader. Sure I am, I expressed my self as far as I could, and more I would, had I been able. Let not the number, nor the greatness of the adverse Gallies any ways affright you. The hugeness of their Bulks make them unapt for employment; and the multitude, one clogging and hindring the others, may as much further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us in multitudes of Men, we them in number of Soldiers. The meaning of the Word *Pilot* is unknown among them. And for their *Mariners*, the best of them are but *Carters*, *Reapers* and *Harvest-men*, raked out of the Field; the rest, the Excrement of common Prisons, wherewith the Vessels are loaded, not manned. The General is indeed a fit Captain for such a selected Company. It is the same *Antony*, whom you once drove out of the Field before *Mutina*. I verily perswade my self, that neither he dares think of recovering, or you of losing your former glories. It is the same *Antony*, who being shamefully chased out of *Parthia*; only in that he was not vanquished, proclaimed himself *Victor*. It is the same *Antony*, who intended to make *Rome* subject to the *Agyptians*; and to distribute the *Provinces* purchased with the Blood and Virtue of our Ancestors, amongst *Iras* and her fellow Chamber-maids. Nay indeed it is not *Antony* at all, but the shadow only of that substance, which now is hid in *Cleopatra's* Cabin. Courage then brave Men of Arms; be, as you have still been, *Conquerors*. To speak more, were to detain you from Victory. Only this, Call to mind your ancient Valour. Remember that I am *Cesar*, you *Romans*.

13. This Speech animated the new Soldiers, and confirmed the old; so that with a general Acclamation they gave the Assault. Death, Wounds, and Blows, dild in divers Fashions, and served in by several Men, were the best Delicates prepared for these unwelcome Visitants. *Cleopatra* beholding the Battle, and doubting the success, through the thickest of *Antony's* Fleet, made away with the 60 Gallies appointed for her Guard. This Disorder made the breach, at which the Victory entred. *Antony* seeing her flight, left his Squadron also; and being taken into her Gally, hoisted sail for *Agypt*: Herein playing the part of a cowardly Soldier, whilst each of his Soldiers executed the Office of a courageous General. For they so absolutely persisted in the Fight, that *AUGUSTUS* was fain to offer them Mercy sooner than they would demand it, and divers times before they would accept it. At last they all swear Allegiance unto him. The Victory being thus gotten, *AUGUSTUS* (no loser of Advantages) speedeth into *Agypt*, which he reduceth into the form of a *Province*; making the People pay for fine, twenty millions of Gold. By receiving this Money, he so weakened them that they had no ability to raise an After-war; and by distributing part of it among his Soldiers, he confirmed them in obedience. As for *Antony*, he seeing his Fortunes desperate, redeemed the Honour lost in his Life, by a noble Heroick Death. And *Cleopatra* ended her Life not long after also. A Woman more well-favoured, than fair; well-spoken, rather than either. *Antony's* Courtiers had seen many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; Men being chained to her by the Ears, rather than by the Eyes.

14. I willingly omit *AUGUSTUS's* entry into *Rome*, as also the state and magnificence of his *Triumph*. His Victory he used so justly, that none felt the fury of the War, but such as were slain in the Battle. To assure himself of *Antony's* Adherents, was his first care: To which end he burnt in the *Common Forum* the Coffers of *Antony*, unopened; wherein all his Letters from his Friends in *Rome* had been inclosed; well knowing that as long as any thought themselves suspected Adversaries, they would never shew themselves true Friends. To the *Senators* and *Magistrates* he made sumptuous Feasts; to the *Common People* he exhibited magnificent and pleasing Stage-Plays; and with all Variety of Pleasure, banished from both, as well sorrow for the old *Proscription*, as fear of a new. But this was only as a preparation to his main Design. There were two Men most dear unto him, and privy to his Counsel, *Mecenas* and *Agrippa*; which in the Object of their love, differed only in this; *Mecenas* was a lover of *AUGUSTUS*, *Agrippa* of the *Emperor*. *Mecenas* was of the rank of *Knights*, a Man of good and bad parts equally compounded; when his Business required care, vigilant and circumspect; at leisure time, excellently riotous. *Agrippa* was the first of his house; a Man alike fit for Camp and Counsel; one neither careless of a good Name, nor covetous of a great. For altho' he only was the Man which vanquished *Sextus* and *Antony*; yet well skilled in the Humours of Princes, he gave *AUGUSTUS* the honour of all his Conquests; making the Virtue not the Reward, but the end of his Actions. So by doing nobly, and speaking modestly of it, he was without Envy, but not without Glory. With these two, *AUGUSTUS* withdrew into a private Closet, and then spake unto them in this sort. He made first unto them a long Discourse of the Civil Wars; then added. "That having by his Fortune, and the Valour of his Soldiers, put an end to the Troubles; he was unresolved what to do; whether to resign the Empire to the People, or retain it still in his own hands: That in a Business of such importance, he durst not rely altogether on his own wisdom; That he had made them his Judges, as Men that could speak soundly, and durst speak freely: That he knew them to have more care of his Honour, than Profit; but of the *Common-wealth*, more than both; That his Counsels, which course soever he took, would not be by them

‘them thrown out, rejected, or eliminated. He there-
 ‘fore intreated them to consider what was to be done,
 ‘and to give up their Opinions in it.

15. *Agrippa* after a short silence thus began. ‘I know
 ‘thou canst not but marvel, O *Cæsar*, that I who under
 ‘thine Empire, am sure to be beyond president exalted,
 ‘should persuade thee to live private. But I esteem more
 ‘thy Honour, than my Profit; the Publick Good, than
 ‘my Particular Preferment. And yet perhaps my Coun-
 ‘sel shall be as profitable, if not as plausible as the contra-
 ‘ry. I know thee to be no way delighted with Lies and
 ‘Flattery, and will therefore deal with thee freely and
 ‘plainly. Thou hast indeed put a period to the *Civil*
 ‘Wars, but to what end, unless thou dost restore unto the
 ‘Common-wealth that *Liberty* for which the Wars were rai-
 ‘sed? What benefit can the People reap from thy *Victory*,
 ‘if thou dost use it only as an Instrument for their grea-
 ‘ter Bondage? Dost thou think that the *Romans* having
 ‘so many hundred Years maintained their Liberty, will
 ‘now be willing to forgo it? No, *Cæsar*, no, flatter not
 ‘thy self with these hopes. *Marius* the younger, and
 ‘*Sertorius*, were quickly cut off, when their ends were
 ‘once known; and *Julius* thy Father of happy memory,
 ‘did not long live, after his Actions seemed to bring the
 ‘Common Liberty in hazard. And shall we think that there
 ‘is no true *Roman* spirit surviving? no *Brutus* living to
 ‘attempt the like against thee? Believe me, *Cæsar*, be-
 ‘lieve me, it is far better not to meddle with the Empire
 ‘at all, than to be forced to abandon it. But say, Di-
 ‘vine Providence will so protect thee that thou mayst
 ‘out-live such Practices; shalt thou also not out-live thy
 ‘Glories? This present Age perchance will not censure
 ‘thine Actions, because it dares not; but Posterity, free
 ‘from all Respects of love or hatred, cannot but call
 ‘them into question, and brand thy Enterprize with
 ‘Ambition, and perhaps Tyranny. If thy Designs pro-
 ‘per, they will judge thee to have risen unjustly; if o-
 ‘therwise, to have fallen deservedly. How much better
 ‘then were it, now when thine Honour is without ble-
 ‘mish, and thy Reputation unstained, to resign thy Au-
 ‘thority? Indeed when *Sextus* lorded it over the Sea, and
 ‘*Antony* over *Aegypt*, it might have been thought want of
 ‘spirit, to have deposed thy self from the Government.
 ‘But now to do it, when thou art without *Rival* in the
 ‘Empire; now when thou art Commander of the World’s
 ‘Forces, now when the People and Senate lie prostrate at
 ‘the feet of thy mercy, were to strike dumb detraction,
 ‘and to make future Ages admire thy Temper. Thou
 ‘art at this present the Joy and Comfort of the World;
 ‘there is wanting to thee neither Wealth nor Fame. Here
 ‘then fix thy Foot. For go but one step beyond this,
 ‘non ultra, and thou wilt run into a boundless Ocean of
 ‘perils, which have no end, but the end of thy Life and
 ‘Reputation.

16. ‘Not so, excellent *Agrippa*, replied *Mecænas*. I
 ‘never heard good Pilot find fault with Sea-room, or of
 ‘more Vessels cast away in the Ocean, than in the Straits,
 ‘and narrow passages. Our Republick is a Ship fraught
 ‘with divers Nations. She hath been long tossed on the
 ‘waves of *Civil Dissensions*, long driven up and down with
 ‘the wind of Ambition, and there is now no place so
 ‘fit for her safety, as the unlimited Ocean of one Man’s
 ‘power. This Empire at first-rising, seemed not to re-
 ‘quire a Monarch; but it is now grown too unwieldy to
 ‘be without one. Take then upon thee, O *Cæsar*, this
 ‘Empire; or, to say better, do not forsake it. I should
 ‘never thus advise thee, did I conceive any possible Incon-
 ‘veniencies. The Senate doth allow thee a competent
 ‘guard of valiant and faithful Soldiers; whom then
 ‘shouldst thou fear? Nay, ill may I prosper, if I see any
 ‘cause of fear, were thy Guard cashiered. Enemies thou
 ‘hast none: For such as were, are either already slain by
 ‘thy Valour, or made thy fast Friends, by thy Bounty and
 ‘Clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will a little
 ‘touch at thy Father *Julius*. He, too good a Soldier to

‘be a States-man, was too heady and violent in establish-
 ‘ing his Government. Nor could he cunningly temporize,
 ‘and suffer the People insensibly, and by degrees, to drop
 ‘into bondage; but oppresses them all at once. Again, he
 ‘committed a great *Solécism* in State, when discharging
 ‘his Guard, he sought to retain that Empire by fair means,
 ‘which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, O *Cæ-*
 ‘*sar*, to be of a more wary and cunning behaviour. Learn
 ‘also to work out thy own safety by *Pompey’s* Misfor-
 ‘tunes. He after the finishing of the *Pontic War*, at *Brun-*
 ‘*dusum*, disbanded his Army; and thereby merited to
 ‘be accounted an honest and moderate Man. Certainly
 ‘he shewed himself in the course of this Action, rather
 ‘virtuous than fortunate or politick. For presently he
 ‘began to be contemned, and by his improvident weak-
 ‘ning of himself, made an open passage to his own ruin.
 ‘I commended his Modesty more than his Brain; nei-
 ‘ther did he himself, on better Considerations, approve
 ‘his own doings; and therefore he resolved, had he been
 ‘Victor in *Pharsalia*, never to have committed the like
 ‘oversight. So it is, and so it will fall out with thee, O
 ‘*Cæsar*, if in this Action thou propose him to be thy
 ‘Pattern. It is not safe, *Agrippa* saith, to take the Em-
 ‘pire; less safe it is, to refuse it. A settled and innative
 ‘Vice it is in Man, never to endure that any not above
 ‘our own rank should over-top us. *Rome’s* second Foun-
 ‘der, *Camillus*; *Scipio* that scourge of *Carthage*, were dis-
 ‘graced; and *M. Coriolanus* banished by our Ancestors;
 ‘only because their worth had lifted them above the or-
 ‘dinary pitch of Subjects. Do not thou hope to fear bet-
 ‘ter than thy Prodecessors. Heretofore, perchance thou
 ‘mightst have sought the Empire to satisfy thy Ambiti-
 ‘on: The Empire must now be thy Refuge and *Asylum*.
 ‘Credit me, the Lords of the Senate after so many years
 ‘of Obedience, know not how to Govern; neither canst
 ‘thou, having so long been a Governour, learn Obedience.
 ‘True it is, that in matters of domestical Business, a Man
 ‘may stop and desist where he will: but in the getting
 ‘of an Empire, there is no mean between the Death of
 ‘an Enemy and the Life of a Prince. Thou hast already
 ‘gone too far to retire. Now thou must resolve to be
 ‘*Cæsar* or Nothing. To say more were superfluous. Thine
 ‘own Discretion will suggest unto thee better Argu-
 ‘ments. Only this I know, that thou hast in thee too
 ‘much *Julius*, not to be an Emperor.

17. *AUGUSTUS* seemed to incline to this latter
 Opinion, whether moved with *Mecænas’s* Oration, espe-
 cially his instance in *Pompey*, or that he was before resol-
 ved to follow that course, is uncertain. Howsoever,
 seeming with great attention to observe their Speeches,
 and gathering their several Reasons and Motives toge-
 ther, he made this reply. ‘A most hard thing it is for a
 ‘divided Mind to make a well join’d Answer. Divided I
 ‘am, and troubled between your two Opinions; loth to
 ‘follow either, since in so doing I must offend one.
 ‘Yet since there is a necessity of Resolution, I intend,
 ‘though I like well of thy Advice *Agrippa*, to follow
 ‘thine *Mecænas*. In doing which, I am but an Instru-
 ‘ment of the *Destinies*, to put their Wills in execution.
 ‘Often have I heard my Father *Octavius* report, how *Ni-*
 ‘*gidius*, famous for his Skill in *Judiciary Astrology*, told
 ‘him once in open Senate, That he had begotten an Em-
 ‘peror for the Romans. As also how *M. Cicero*, so re-
 ‘nowned for Wit and Eloquence, dreamed, that he saw *Ju-*
 ‘*piter* place me on the top of the Capitol, with a Whip in
 ‘mine Hand. Certainly, if the Powers of Heaven pro-
 ‘mise me so great an Empire, I will not be wanting to
 ‘my self; but will add by my Industry to their Influence.
 ‘To further my Designs, I do desire you, nay, I conjure
 ‘you both, that as you have been ever ready in your
 ‘Counsels, so you would not now be backward in any
 ‘necessary Assistance. This said, they presently enter in-
 ‘to a new Conference, how to manage a Business of this
 weight; what Senators to acquaint with their Intent, how
 to dispose of the Army, not yet cashiered; with what
 Plum-

plummet it were best to found the Minds of the common People, and to oblige all sorts unto him. This Consultation ended, *AUGUSTUS* continued his affability to the *People*, and respect to the *Nobles*. An Opportunity he had to express himself to both. There was at that time a Famine, which shrewdly raged among the *Commons*. To the poorer sort he distributed Corn, *gratis*; to others, at a mean price. Riches and Honours he communicated to both sorts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the ancient Freedom. Such parts of the City as were destroyed by casualty of Fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civil Wars*, he re-edified. Houses of *Common-Assemblies* he repaired, Temples consecrated to the Gods, he spared no cost to adorn and beautify. And finally, so freely diffused his Bounty, that there was no part or member of the City, which had not some taste of it. Next, he dismissed his Soldiers, assigning them Lands and Habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: That so the People might conceive his *Resignation* to be real; and yet if need were, his Forces might be quickly re-assembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecenas* wanting for their parts, to promote the cause, but carefully acquainted some of the *Senate* with it, who stood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had stood indifferent.

18. The Foundation thus laid, and the *Senate* sat, *AUGUSTUS* rose from his Seat, and spake to this or the like effect. "When I consider with my self the infinite extent of the *Roman Empire*; I protest I stand at a maze: marvelling how such, as heretofore, have raised Combustions in the State, durst undertake the sole Administration of it. What Nation in the World hath not either begged their Peace at our Gates; or felt the Fury of our Wars at their own? What Countries have we not harried with Fire and Sword; making the rising and setting of the Sun the Bounds of our Dominions? It must questionless proceed from an over-weening Conceit in them of their own Abilities, who thought themselves so fit to undergo that Burthen, which none but the Immortal Gods can carry. Of my self I will not say much: Only, I hope, I may say with Modesty, that I am not inferiour to *Cinna*, nor it may be to *Sylla*: Yet have I found in my self by late Experience, how unable I was to manage the Affairs of State, even then when I had two *Co-adjutors*. There is no *Atlas* of Strength sufficient to bear up this *Heaven*, no *Star* of Influence sufficient to animate this *Sphere*; nor one *Form* of Virtue sufficient to actuate this *Matter*. Neither indeed is it fit, that the *Republick* which ought to be Immortal, should depend only on the Life and Welfare of one Man. There never was, since the beginning of Time, a City replenished with greater store of worthy and able Men, either to consult or execute. Never was there seen so grave and discreet a *Consistory*; never so many of both sorts, so fit to govern. I have by your Directions, and the Valour of your Soldiers, put an end to all home-bred Quarrels. I have been your Instrument to reduce Peace internal and external to your City; and desire now no other Guerdon or Recompence for any former Services, than a quiet and private Life; free from all such Dangers and Inconveniences, as are inseparably annexed to the Sovereignty. Now therefore, (and may my Action be auspicious and fortunate to my Country) do I resign my Authority; committing my self and the *Common-wealth* into the Hands of the *Senate* and *People* of *Rome*."

19. This Oration ended, there followed a soft and silent buzzing in the House. Some supposed this Speech not to have so much Truth as Art and Cunning; yet smothered their Conceits for fear of After-claps. Others were Creatures of his own making, and they hoping to rise in the fall of their Country, would not hear of a Resignation. Some few of the wiser sort thought it not expedient, to put the Reins again into the Hands of

the Multitude. The rest out of a sluggish and phlegmatick Constitution, chose rather the present Ease with Security, than to strive to recover the old with Danger. All therefore with a joint-consent proclaim him sole Emperor, and solemnly entreat him to save the *Common-wealth*, otherwise running to inevitable Ruin. He for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly persilled to desire him: At last wearied with the Clamours of all in general, and Importunity of some in particular; he by little and little yielded to their Requests, taking upon him the *Empire* for ten Years, with this Proviso, That if before that time expired, he could fully settle and order the present State, he would give up his Charge. This he gave out not with a purpose of performance, (for at the end of every *Quinquennium* he renewed his Lease of the Government;) But that the People seeing so nigh a possibility of regaining their *Liberties*, might not practise against him. Whereas, had he for term of Life received the Supreme Authority, he had no doubt hastened his own Overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithete *Perpetual*, was the destruction of *CAESAR*: And yet a great Respect was had also in the choice of the Title. The Name of *King* he refused, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much desired it; lest they should suppose that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the People called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garments; desiring them to discharge him of a Name so hated: and being once called Lord, (*Dominus*) he forbade all that Title by publick Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted; well knowing, that the like glorious Attributes were heaped on his Father *Julius* by them which least loved him, only to this end, that growing more and more into hatred he might the sooner be dispatched. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Common-people*, led more by Appearances than Truth, discerned Names more plainly than Execution: and that the only course to make Greatness stand firmly, was to receive extraordinary Power under a Title not offensive. The Name also of *AUGUSTUS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been something in him more than mortal) he refused nor; as a Title expressing more Dignity and Reverence than Authority. And having pleased himself in the choice of his Title, he next proceeded to the establishment of his Power, which he thus pursued.

20. When first at the Hands of the *Lords* of the *Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Cohorts* of *Prætorian* Soldiers for the guard of his Person; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double Wages of a *Legionary* Soldier, to make them more vigilant and heedful in their Charge. Over these he appointed two *Prefects* or *Governours*, (*Captains of the Guard* we may best term them) To commit the charge to one only, might breed Danger, to more, Confusion. *Agrippina*, to settle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom she had at her devotion, the sole Captain: and *Nymphidius*, fallen from his hopes of setting *Galba* besides the Cushion; desired the Command of the *Guard*, as the next step to Sovereignty. In choice of these Captains, he observed two Rules: First, he ever chose them, *ex ordine Equesstri*, not *Senatorio*; lest that, so high a Dignity joined to so high a Birth, might startle their Resolutions to some Designs against his Quiet. Secondly, he made choice of two such as were of contrary Humours, and somewhat at odds; that so the ill Intents of the one (if they should harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the other; and both, in a noble Emulation, should contend to be most forward in his Service. The next Course which he took for his own Security, was a Law he made to curb the Wills and Attempts of the great ones. For whereas it hath been formerly unlawful to question a Bondman, in matters concerning the Life and Death of his Lord; *AUGUSTUS* passed an Act, that all such Bondmen

should be first sold to him, or the Commonwealth. By means whereof he kept the Lords, before presuming on the secrecie of their Slaves, from all close and private Conspiracies against him. Having thus strengthened his Person, he assumed to himself the *Imperial, Censorial, and Tribunitian Authority*, together with the *Sacerdotal Dignity*. As *Emperor* and *General* of the Men of War, he could press Soldiers, raise Taxes, proclaim Wars, make Peace; yea, and put to death the very best and stoutest of the *Senators*. As *Censor*, it was in his power to reform corrupt Manners, enquire after Mens Carriages, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he listed; to place and displace the People from a more honourable Tribe, to a less honourable. Yet would he not be called *Censor* as a name too inferiour; but accepted the Prerogatives of it, after the surrendry of *Manutius*, and his Associate, two Men so unfit for that *Magistracy*, that they could object no Crime to old or young, of which themselves were not guilty. The *Tribunitian Authority* enabled him to hinder any thing attempted against his liking. It preserved his Person from all contumely and injury; giving him power to punish, as an execrable Person, (yea, and without any formality of the Law) whosoever had offended him either in Word or Deed. As for the Pontifical Dignity, it made him a little more Reverenced, not more Potent. Only it added to his Title the stile of *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Bishop*; and made him of authority amongst the Priests, and in sacred Matters, things that concerned Religion. The light of Reason taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a Prince, to have command on all his People; He had been else but half a *Monarch*, such as some Princes are with us; who quit their *Clergy* to be governed by a *Foreign Head*.

21. These several Prerogatives annexed together, seem not yet sufficient: And therefore he so cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a general Exemption from the *Coactive power* of the Law. Which once obtained, he seriously bends his thoughts to settle the Commonwealth; and so to settle it, that by uniting all Parties, and giving satisfaction to all *Interests*, it might not be obnoxious to such frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein when he had consulted the ancient Platforms, he found no small difficulty. The form described by *Plato*, shewed rather how a City ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Aristotle*, though bred in the *Free-States* of Greece, was a friend to *Monarchy*; but his discourses dark, and speculative, and not easily reduced to practice. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority, the Nobles too little, the King none. The old *Carthaginian Legislators* attributed too much to Riches, too little to Vertue. The *Persian* Law-makers indulged to the King too much, to the Subject nothing. And on the other side, *Lycurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, ascribed too little to the King, and too much to the Senate. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of some particular Laws, than the Framer of a Commonwealth. *Phaleas*, and *Hippodamus*, as unimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old Patterns did come home to his purpose; and withal considering with himself, that the unmixt Forms of Rule were not equally ballanced, and by consequence subject unto change: He resolved to frame his Commonwealth out of the perfections of the three good Forms, their imperfection being rejected; reserving to himself the Supreme Majesty, to the Senate eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in a just and fit proportion. And to say truth, he did so mix the Sovereignty of one, with the Liberty of all; that both the Lords and People, without fear of Bondage or Sedition, enjoyed their accustomed Freedoms. The Consuls and Nobles of the City assembled as formerly they used; matters of State they handled by themselves; Ambassadors of foreign Nations they heard, and dispatched. The Commons did assemble in the *Comitia*, to enact Laws

and elect Magistrates, as in the free Commonwealth; Yet so that nothing was done without the consent and privacy of the Prince, who for the most part nominated the successive Magistrate, leaving the confirmation of him to the People. So that the change, as he contrived it, was not violent and at once, but by degrees, and by the silent approbation of both Estates, as seeming to consist more in the alteration of the Magistrate, than of the Laws.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the first care he took, was to confirm Religion in the same state in which he found it. I mean Religion, as the *Romans* used the word, for those particular, though Idolatrous Forms of Worship, which to their several Gods had been used among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or chief Bishop of the City; yet very wisely he forbore it. It is not safe for Princes that are settled in a long descent of Government, to be too active in such changes: But it is dangerous to attempt it in a green State, and in an Empire not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more sensible of the smallest alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raise more frequent broils about it. The *Romans* specially were exceeding tender in this point. The ancient *Ediles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no external either Gods or Ceremonies, to be introduced into the City. And by *Emilius* it was enacted for a Law, That none should offer Sacrifice in any publick place, after a new and Foreign fashion. Excellent therefore was the Counsel which *Mecænas* gave him when he first undertook the Empire, viz. "That he should follow constantly the Religion which he found established, and compel others also to do the like. For, Foreign and strange Rites (saith he) will offend the People, work many inconvenient alterations in the Civil State; yea, and most likely will occasion many both Seditions and Conspiracies. Words which he spake not to the Air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehensive of the best Advice. Nor did *AUGUSTUS* ever shew himself more careful in any one Act of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mecænas* noted, we find true in these latter Ages; in times more skilful of Obedience, than the most quiet hour of *AUGUSTUS*'s Government. No one thing more hath caused so frequent and so general Rebellions in the States of *Christendom*, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it, as a pious resolution in a late mighty Monarch: Better some few corruptions should be suffered in a Church than still a Change.

23. Religion thus established, in the next place the welfare of the whole Empire consisted chiefly in reforming of the City; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the City the corruption was most apparent in the Senate itself. With them therefore he beginneth, well knowing that crimes in Men of eminent place end not in themselves; but by degrees become diffused among their Clients and Followers. Now in the Senate were many and desertless Men, who had been taken into it during the Civil Wars; as they could court the People, and humour such as were most potent. Of these he expelled none by his own power; but making a Speech to them in the Senate, of the ancient order and present confusion of the House, he first exhorted them to look back on their former Lives, and to judge of their own Abilities and Merits, for so honourable a Room. Then he desired some of them to pick out such among them, as were in disposition factious, and in life faulty, but loth to conceive so ill of their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that the great Thief leadeth the less to the Gallows; and as *Commynes* observeth, that after the Battel of *Montlberry*, Offices were taken from many for flying away, and conferred on such as ran ten Miles beyond them: So remained many in the Senate, neither less vicious, nor less violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than some others whom

whom they had removed. *AUGUSTUS* therefore joyning to him *Agrippa*, proceeded to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the feeling of his Affairs, that none should have a voice in that famous Council, but such as were of able Judgment, honest Repute, and well affected to his Service and the Commonwealth. An Enterprize which he esteemed so dangerous, that he permitted entrance to no *Senator* till he were searched: Himself wearing a *Brigandine* under his Gown; and being invironed with ten of the most couragious and best beloved of the whole company. Such as he found in either kind inexcusable, he discharged from their attendance; electing such in their places, which were either ennobled for their Wisdom, or noted-moderation, or otherwise strong in their dependants. Yet so that greatness of Revenue was esteemed neither a fit Patronage for any, if they were offensive; nor a just cause to challenge interest in the House. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the Mind, than those of Fortune, he relieved with honourable Pensions; and finally he bestirred himself so resolutely, that all confessed that they had need of such a wise Physician, to cure the dull Consumption, whereinto the *Commonwealth* was fallen.

24. In other things he seldom did proceed against them, as of himself; but when that any of them had conspired his ruin, he referred them to the judgment of their Fellows. And this he did partly to reserve unto the Court the ancient Prerogative; partly not to be Judge and Party in his own Cause: But principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counterfeiting a wretchless contempt of his adversaries, used, when he was least suspected, under hand and by public Officers, to work their Destruction. Many also of them whom the *Senate* had condemned he would freely pardon: Conceiving truly, that the questioning of Men of high Calling, would produce as much Terror, though it argued not so much rigour as the punishment. Yet if extremity of Law was used towards some few, it was to settle quietness in the whole; and as it were a particular blood-letting for the general health. Those who had followed the Factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not so only, but by manifesting his Works by his Deeds, and adding Trusts and Honours to his Pardons; he made his Chair of State more settled, and immoveable. So *Cæsar*, by erecting the fallen and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own Statues stand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he bridled the Nobles, was an Edict by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travel out of *Italy*. For well he knew, that an Empire unsettled, and Provinces not quieted; the Presence and Authority of Men of that Rank, might raise greater Troubles, than could be easily suppressed. Examples he wanted not, that especially of *Cato*; who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, stirred such a War against *Cæsar* in *Africk*, that he never bought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether to imprison them, he licensed them at their pleasure, to visit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonoyse*, Provinces close to the Continent of *Italy*, altogether unfurnished for Wars; and indeed such, as by reason of the variety of pleasures in them used, were more likely to weaken their minds, than to arm their bodies.

25. Now to give the *Senate* some sweet meat to their sower sawce, he as much honoured and revered that Order, as ever it was in the *Free-State*; submitting himself to their Judgments, and appearing of his own accord, at most of their days of Session. Out of those he chose fifteen alterable every half year, to be of his *Privy-Council*; but then changing them for others, that so all of them might participate of that honour, and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his Secrets. At his ontrance into the *Senate*, he used courteously to salute the *Lords*; and so likewise at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julius*, so much to slight the *Lords* of that House, as he always did: Never making to them any Obeisance; no

not then, when they came to tell him what Honours were decreed unto him. This Reformation of the great Ones, soon made the lower sort more careful; both to observe good Order, and to learn Obedience. Yet did not *AUGUSTUS* refer all to *President*, but somewhat to *Precept*. The *Roman Knights* he enforced to yield an account of their Lives; a course full of Health and Wisdom: Idleness being the root of all private Vices, and publick Disorders. To the *Commons* in their *Comitia* and other Meetings, he prescribed Laws and Orders as himself listed. The old Authority of the *Tribunes*, dashed in the *Dictatorship* of *Sylla*, he would not restore. He suffered them to intercede for the *People*, but not to prefer or hinder any *Bill*, to the advancement or the prejudice of their *Estate*. Without this *Curb*, the *Common sort* would never have suffered him to sit fast in the *Saddle*. For had the people had their *Tribunes*, and had the *Tribunes* had their ancient Dignity and Power, which they had usurped, there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Government. So different are the ends of the *Common-people*, especially if nuzled in a factious Liberty, from the designs of Sovereign Princes.

26. The City thus reformed in the principal Errors, and Defects of it; he again exhibiteth unto them divers pleasures; as shews of Fencers, Stage-plays, Combats of wild Beasts, publick Dancing, with variety of other delightful Spectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change; as fearing least their Cogitations, for want of other Objects, would fix themselves upon his actions, and the old *Freedom*. And therefore when some of his more severe and rigid Counsellors advised him to interdict all such Publick Pastimes, alledging, that the Meetings of the People at those Sports, and in so great numbers, might at last end in some great Tumult and Sedition, to the endangering of his Person, and Destruction of his whole Estate; it was thus over-ruled by *Mæcenus* (his most trusty Favourite) *Expedit tibi, O Cæsar, plebem sic occupatam esse*, That it best agreed with his Affairs, to have the minds of the People taken up with these Sports and Pastimes; by which being sweetened and appeased, they were the less sensible of the yoke he had put upon them. But as for Horse-races, Tilts, and Turnaments, as he gladly cherished them, so he permitted them only to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That so that City being the Seat-Town of his Empire, might be stored with good Horses, and expert Riders. Such of the *Commons* as were behind hand, he relieved: And when that many of them had made him Heir to their Goods, he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any Prince but a *Tyrant*, presently restoring to the Children of the Deceased the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of *AUGUSTUS*; as true a *Guardian* of Orphans, as a Father of his Country. Such Princes as gape covetously after other Mens Possessions, seldom enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treasures of Kings are then greatest, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he seemed to leave unto the People, which they thought most pleasing, *Liberty of Speech*: Wherein sometimes they were so licentious, that they spared not *Agrippa* himself, so potent with the *Emperor*. But he, good Man, never using the Prince's favour to the prejudice of any, seemed not to mark their taunts and slanders; whether with greater Moderation or Wisdom, I cannot tell. Neither did *AUGUSTUS* scape their foolish *Pasquils* and infamous *Libels*. All which he winked at, knowing that contumelies of that nature slighted and contemned, soon vanish of themselves; but if repined and flormed at, seem to be acknowledged. A Temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of Wisdom in both of them. It is the misery of the best Princes, even when they do well to be ill spoken of. And therefore many times such follies are with more policy dissembled than observed, by the greatest Kings.

27. As for this lavishness of the Tongue, it is a humour that springeth for the most part, rather from a delight in prating, than any malice of the Heart: And they which use it are more troublesome than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the fat Men, but the lean and spare. And so *AUGUSTUS* thought, that not Men liberal of speech, but silent, close and sparing of their words, were most likely to raise Tumults. Moreover, as long as the Common People retained this Liberty of Speech, they were the less sensible of the loss of Liberty in State. Whereas in the days of *Domitian*, when not only they were prohibited to commune together, but even their secret sighs and Tears were registred, then began they to look back with a serious Eye on the old and common Liberty. Neglect is the best remedy for this Talking vein. When the humour is spent, the People will cease on their own accords: Till then, no forces can compel them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Vitellius* of great folly, for hoping by force to hinder the continual reports of *Vespasians* Revolt; that being the only way to increase, not diminish the rumor. And as much he extolleth (I will not say how fitly) the Reign of Prince *Nerva*; wherein it was lawful for the Subject to think what he would, and speak what he thought.

28. These courses though he took to rectifie the Senate, and content the People, yet he stayed not here. There were too many of both sorts, dangerous and unquiet spirits, who stomached his proceedings; and under pretence of the ancient Liberty, were apt to any bold Attempt, and sudden Alteration. These as he winked at for the present, so he employed them (as occasion served) in his foreign Wars: Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Soldiers had displeased him, in their *Mutinies* and *Tumults*, would lead them presently unto some desperate and dangerous Service: So weakning both his Foes which lay next unto him, and punishing those Soldiers, which had disobeyed him. For, though *AUGUSTUS* had thrice shut the Temple of *Janus*, and cherished Peace, no Emperor more, of so large a Territory; yet when he saw his times, and that Mens minds were active, and their thoughts disquieted, he could find presently occasion for some new employment. In this a Body Politick may be compared most fitly to the Body Natural. When we are full of blood, and our spirits boiling, there is not any *Physick* better than *Phlebotomy*. But if a Vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our estate commonly is dangerous, and almost incurable. So Princes, when their People are tumultuous and apt to mischief; or that their thoughts are working, and hearkening after Action, do commonly employ them in some Service far from home, that there they may both vent their Anger, and employ their Courage. For let them stay at home to confirm their practices, and grow at last into a faction, the State will suffer in it, if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer instance of this truth, than the proceeding of our fifth *Henry*, and the times next following: Whose foreign Wars kept us all quiet here at home, wasted those humours, and consumed those fiery spirits, which afterwards, the Wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdom.

29. But his main work was to content the Soldiers, and to make them sure. Some of which he dispersed as before I said, all about *Italy*, in thirty two Colonies; as well for the defence of the Country, as for their more speedy re-assembly, if need should require. Abroad amongst the Provinces were maintained upon the common charge twenty three Legions with their aids; besides 10000 of his Guard, and those which were appointed for the bridling and safety of the City. As to all of them he shewed an excellent thankfulness for their faithful services: So in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whose name the Histories of that Age have not remembred. This latter had valiantly behaved himself at the Battel of *Actium*: And being summoned to appear before the Lords of the Senate, in a matter which concerned his Life, cried to *AUGUSTUS*

for Succour, who assigned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breast, and shewing him the marks of many Wounds; These (quoth he) have I received, *AUGUSTUS*, in thy Service, never supplying my place by a Deputy. Which said, the Emperor descending to the Bar, pleaded the Soldiers Cause, and won it. Never did Sovereign Prince, or any that command in Chief, lose any thing by being bountiful of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly spreading it self over all the Provinces, did so indear him to the Military Men, that they all thought their services well recompensed, in his graciousness to that one Man. And now were they so far given over to him, that the Honours conferred on *Agrippa*, could not increase their love; well it might their admiration. *Agrippa* was of a mean and common Parentage. But supplying the defects of his Birth with the perfections of his Mind, he became very potent with *AUGUSTUS*; who not only made him *Consul*, but his Companion in the *Tribunitian Authority*, and *Provoost* of the City. So many Titles were now heaped on him, that *Mecenas* perswaded the Prince, to give him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife: Affirming it impossible for *Agrippa* to live safe, considering how open new Creatures lie to the attempts of malicious Men, unless he were ingrafted into the Royal Stem of the *Cæsars*. On which cause questionless, for the stronger establishment of his new Honours, *Sejanus* afterwards attempted, but not with the like Success, the like Match with *Livia*, *Tiberius's* Daughter-in-Law.

30. The Senate, People, and Men of War, thus severally reduced to a Mediocrity of power and content, the next labour is to alter the old, and establish a new Government of the City it self. To effect which, he dashed all former Laws, by which the *Allies* and *Confederates* of the State were made free *Denizens* of the Town. That he conceived to be a way to draw the whole Empire into one City; and by the monstrous growth and encrease of that, to make poor the rest. Therefore this Priviledge he communicated unto a few only; partly that in the times of dearth, the City might not so much feel the want of Sustenance; and partly that so ancient an honour might not be disesteemed; but principally lest *Rome* replenished with so huge a multitude of stirring and unruly Spirits, should grow too headstrong to be governed in due order. The greatest and most populous Cities, as they are pronest unto Faction and Sedition; so is the danger greatest, both in it self, and the example, if they should Revolt. This provident course notwithstanding there were in *Rome* Men more than enough; and among them not a few Malecontents, and Murmurers at the present State, such as contemned the *Consuls*, and hated the Prince. To keep these in compass, *AUGUSTUS* (it being impossible for him to be still resident at *Rome*, and dangerous to be absent) constituted a *Provoost* of the City for the most part chosen out of the *Senators*; assigning him a strength of 6000 Men, called *Milites Urbani*, or the City Soldiers. To him he gave Absolute and Royal Authority, both in the Town and Territory near adjoining, during his own absence. To him were Appeals brought from the other Magistrates; and finally to his Tribunal were referred all Causes of Importance, not in *Rome* only, but the greatest part of *Italy*. *Masalla* was the first *Provoost*; but proof being had of his insufficiency, the charge was committed to *Agrippa*: Who did not only settle and confirm the City, but did the best he could to free the adjoining parts of *Italy* from Thieves and Robbers; and stopped the courses of many other troublers of the present State. And yet he could not with that power either so speedily, or so thoroughly reform all those mischiefs, which in the late unsettled times were become predominant, as he did desire.

31. It is recorded that in the Civil Wars of *Marinus* and *Sylla*, one *Pontius Telesinus* of the *Marinian* Faction, told his General, That he did well to scour the Country, but *Italy* would never want Wolves as long as *Rome* was so

so fit a Forest, and so near to retire unto. The like might have been spoken to *Agrippa*; That he did well to clear the common *Roads* and *Passages*, but *Italy* would never want *Thieves*, whilst *Rome* was so good a place of *Refuge*. For though he did, as far as humane Industry could extend, endeavour a general *Reformation* both within the City and without; yet neither could he remedy, nor foresee all *Mischiefs*. Still were they many, and those great Disorders committed in the Night-season; when as no Eye, but that to which no Darknes is an Obstacle, could discern the *Malefactors*. For in the first *Proscription*, many Men used to walk the Streets well weaponed; pretending only their own safety; but indeed it was to make their best advantage of such Men as they met either in unfrequented Lanes and Passages, or travelling as their occasions did direct them, in the Night. To repress therefore the foul Insolencies of these *Sword-men*, *AUGUSTUS* did ordain a *Watch*, consisting of 7000 *Free-men*, their Captain being a *Gentleman of Rome*. In the day time, the *Guard* of the *Town* was committed to the *Provost*, and his City Soldiers; These *Vigils* resting in their standing Camps. In the Night-season, one part took their Stations in the most suspicious places of the City; another, in perpetual Motion traversed the Streets; the rest lying in the *Corps du Guard*, to relieve their Companions. By which means he not only remedied the present Disorders, but preserved the City from danger of Fire also: Yea, and secured himself from all Night-tumults, which carry with them (though but small) more Terror and Affrightment, than greater Commotions in the Day. Never till now were the common People Masters of their own, both Lives and Substance. And now was travel in the Night, as safe, tho' not so pleasant, as at Noon.

32. The People and City thus settled, his next study is to keep the *Provinces* in a liking of the change. But little *Rhetorick* needed to win their liking, who had long desired the present Form of *Government*: mistrusting the *Peoples* Regiment, by reason of *Noblemens* Factions, Covetousness of *Magistrates*, the *Laws* affording no security, being swayed hither and thither by Ambition and Corruption. These *Provinces* when he first took the *Government*, he thus divided; *Asia*, *Africa*, *Numidia*, *Bætica*, *Narbonensis*, *Sicilia*, *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, all *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, being quiet and peaceable *Provinces*, of known and faithful Obedience, he assigned unto the *Senate*. But the new-conquer'd *Regions*, such as had not digested their loss of Liberty, with whom any Rebellion or War was to be feared, he retained under his own Command. Such were *Terraconensis*, *Lusitanica*, *Lugdunensis*, *Germany*, *Belgica*, *Aquitania*, *Syria*, *Cilicia*, *Egypt*, *Dalmatia*, *Mysia*, *Pannonia*, &c. And this he did, as he gave out, to sustain the danger himself alone, leaving unto the *Senate* all the sweets of Ease: But the Truth was to keep them without Arms, himself always strong, and in a readiness. The notable Effects of which Counsel did not discover themselves only by the establishment of the *Empire* in his own Person during Life, and the continuance of it in the House of the *Cæsars* (though Men of most prodigious Vices) after his decease: but in some of the Ages following also. For when the Family of the *Cæsars* was extinct in *Nero*, the *Imperial* *Provinces* being so strong, and perceiving the *Consular* so weak; assumed to themselves the creating and establishing of the following *Princes*. Thus *Galba* was made Emperor by the *Spanish* and *French* Legions, *Vitellius* by the *Germans*, *Vespasian* by the *Syrian*, and *Pannonian*: The *Consular* *Provinces* never stirring, either to prevent their Attempts, or to revenge them. And when they adventured once to advance *Gordian* to the Throne, all they could do, was but to betray the poor old Man and all his Family to a tragick end. And yet he did not so appropriate those *Provinces* to the *Senate*, but that they also (as well as those which he reserved unto himself) were specified particularly in his private Register. In

which (the better to manage the Affairs of the *Empire*) he had set down what Tributes every of them paid, what Presents they sent in, what Customs in them were levied. That Book also comprehended the Wealth of the publick Treasury, and necessary Charge issuing out of it: What number of Citizens and Allies there were in Arms; what Strength there was by Sea: with all other Circumstances, the Extent, Strength, Riches, and Particulars of his Estate. *William* of *Normandy* did the like at his first entrance into *England*, when he commanded that *Censual Roll* of all this Kingdom, which we call *Dooms-day Book*, or the *Roll of Winton*; according unto which Taxations were imposed, and Aids exacted. The greatest Princes have not thought it a Disparagement to be good Husbands, to know the Riches of their Crowns, and have an eye to their *Intrads*.

33. *Britain* was left out of this *Bead-Roll*, either because from thence there neither was much hope of Profit, nor much fear of Hurt; or else because being more desirous to keep than enlarge the *Monarchy*, he thought it most expedient to confine it within the Bounds appointed by Nature. *Danubius* on the North, *Mount Atlas* on the South, *Euphrates* on the East, and the main Ocean on the West, did both bound his Empire and defend it. Some Kingdoms have their Limits laid out by Nature, and those which have adventured to extend them further have found it fatal. The *Persians* seldom did attempt to stretch their Territory beyond *Oxus*, but they miscarried in the Action. And what was that poor River, if compared unto the Ocean? Many who loved Action, or expected Preferment by the Wars, incited him unto the Conquest and Plantation of these Counties; affirming, "That the barbarous People were naturally bad Neighbours; and though for the present not very strong, nor well skill'd in Arms, yet might a weak Enemy in time gather great Strength: That he ought to pursue the War for his Father *Julius*'s sake, who first shewed that Island to the *Romans*: That it yielded both Refuge and Supply to Malecontents of *Gaul*, and Enemies in *Germany*: That he would lose the Benefit of a wealthy Country, stored with all manner of Provision, and the Command of a valiant Nation, born (as it were) unto the Wars: That it was an Apostasie from Honour, to lie still, and add nothing to the Conquest of his Ancestors: That he was in all Equity bound, as far as in him was, to reduce to Civility from Barbarism, so many proper and able Men. But to these Motives he reply'd, "That he had already refused to wage War with the *Parthian*, a more dangerous Neighbour, and far worse Enemy than the *Britains*: That he had waste and desert Ground enough in his Dominions, for many a large Plantation, when he saw it needful: That he had constantly refused, though with great Facility he might, to conquer any more of the barbarous Nations: That, as in the National Body, a surfeit is more dangerous than fasting; so in the Body Politick, too much is more troublesome than too little; That the *Roman* Monarchy had already exceeded the *Persian* and *Macedonian*; and to extend it further, was the next way to make it totter and fall by its own weight. That he had learn'd in the Fable not to lose the Substance by catching at the Shadow. And finally, that many puissant Nations lay in and about *Britany*, against whom *Garrisons* must be kept, and he feared the Revenues would not quit the Cost. And so the Enterprize of *Britain* was quite laid aside.

34. For the assurance of the *Provinces* already conquered, he dispersed into them 23 *Legions*, with their *Aids*; whose Pay only, besides Provision of Corn, and Officers Wages, amounting to five Millions and an half of our *English* Pounds, and somewhat more, were so duly paid unto the *Armies*, that we read seldom in the Histories of that Empire, of any Mutiny amongst the Soldiers for want of Pay. An Happiness, whereof these Ages have been little guilty. For the amassing of this Treasure, and defraying

defraying of this Charge, *AUGUSTUS* made not use only of his own Revenue. Wars which are undertaken, and Soldiers that are levyed for the Common Safety, ought in all reason to be maintained on the Common Purse. The Grandeur and Security of an *Empire*, concerns in all respects, as much the *People* as the *Prince*. For which cause he erected an Exchequer in the City, which was called *Ararium militare*, or the *Soldiers Treasury*; whereto the twentieth part of every Mans Estate was brought, according to the true and perfect valuation. This was esteemed an heavy Burden at the first; and indeed it was, but that the *People* felt the sweetness and effects of it in the Common safety. In that respect, the Interest was greater than the Principal Subjects that have a care either of the common Peace or Honour, will not repine at Payments and Taxations, though more than ordinary. It is a poor conceit to think that Princes either are able or obliged, to maintain the Wars without assistance from their *People*: Or that the Treasures which in these respects they give the King, they do not give unto themselves. I may perhaps repute him for a cunning *Sophister*, but never for a faithful Subject, which coyns distinctions betwixt the welfare of the King and the Weal of the Kingdom. These *Legions* he employed as occasion was, either to curb the Natives, or secure the Borders. The *Roman Empire* seldom had such perfect Peace, but that there were employments always for the Soldiers. If that they had in any place a short Cessation from the Wars, yet they were not idle. Idleness doubtless is the greatest enemy to *Martial Discipline*. Therefore he kept them at such times perpetually busied, either in paving *Bogs*, or in draining *Marishes*. By means whereof, he made not only many of the *Barbarous Countries*, both fruitful in themselves, and profitable to the Chequer: But thereby also he secured his own Affairs, and disarmed his Enemies. For many times the *Barbarous People* trusting to such advantages, were apt too often to Rebel; and having got themselves within those Myres and Fastnesses, stood on their Guard, as in some fashionable or defensible Fortrefs. The surest means to keep a conquered *People* from all occasion of Revolting, is to lay waste their Wood-lands, and make all parts passable. The opportunity of a safe retreat, makes not more Thieves than Rebels.

35. Those whom he placed over his Provinces and Armies, he neither would remove under three years Government, nor yet continue after five. A longer stay might teach them too much cunning in practising on the dispositions of the *People*, and perhaps prompt them to work into the favour of the Natives, and the Men of War: And so at last establish in themselves a Sovereignty. *Cesar's* long stay in *Gaul*, (a second five years being added unto that which was first allowed him) made him so potent with the *People*, and gracious with the *Soldiers*, that in the end he brought the *Roman Empire* under his Subjection. And on the other side, to take them from their charges under three years continuance were to have called them home, before they were well learned in the Customs and the Nature of the Provinces; so making them unable to instruct their Successors: As for the Men whom he employed in those Commands, he cull'd them always out of the most valiant and upright in the Camp and Senate. A *Prince* more willing and desirous not to employ Men likely to offend, than after the offence to punish and chastise them for it.

36. Besides his Forces by Land, he also maintained at Sea two invincible Armadoes. The one lay at Anchor near *Ravenna*, in the upper Sea, to awe and defend *Dalmatia*, *Crete*, *Greece*, *Cyprus*, *Asia*, &c. The other at *Misenum* in the lower Sea, to protect and keep under *Gaul*, *Spain*, *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, &c. Neither was this the only use of two such puissant Fleets, but in all probability they were to cleanse the Sea of *Pirates*; to have a care to the conducting of the *Tributes* and *Customs* into the

Exchequer; and served also for transporting *Corn*, and other necessary Provisions, for the Sustainance and Relief of the City. In the ensuing *Civil Wars*, these two Navies proved to be of great Importance: The Revolt of them giving as great a blow to the one side, as a comfort to the other. The principal assurance of *Osbo* in his Wars, was the immoveable fidelity of the *Misenian Fleet*; and the siding of the other with *Vespasian* brake the hearts of *Vitellius's* best followers.

37. Now as he thus strengthened the Provinces in general, so he did cast an especial eye on three particulars, viz. *Italy*, *Gaul*, and *Egypt*. *Italy* founded *Rome* the Metropolis of the Empire; and therefore he ought to be well assured of its good faith and allegiance to him. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Bellum sociale* raised by the people of that Country, in the *Free State*, more shook and endangered the Empire, than the Invasions of *Pyrrhus* or *Annibal*. Therefore as formerly he planted in it two and thirty Colonies, of old and trusty Soldiers, to keep it sure unto himself; so now he did divide it into eleven Regions, each having peculiar *Magistrates* and *Under-Officers*. This not so much to ease the *City-Prætor*, although he had employment enough at *Rome*; but because it was thick-set, and as it were overlaid with *People*, whose rising might endanger the *Common-wealth*. So by his Colonies he kept a Garison upon them, as it were, that they could not revolt: And by his Officers and *Ju-stiticians* (as I may call them) he set so strait a Watch about them, that they durst not practise.

38. *Gaul*, now called *France*, was both a large and fertile Country, stored with a people valiant in all attempts, and in many desperate. A *People* with which the old *Romans* fought rather to maintain their own liberty, than to increase their Dominions; a Tribe or Colony of which had sacked the City of *Rome*, and endangered the *Capitol*. A people finally, with whom the *Romans* durst not make War, till they had almost all the residue of the World in subjection. The remembrance of their ancient Reputation, and store of Money, might occasion many desperate practices against the quiet of the Empire. The readiest way to keep them in Obedience, was to keep them poor: For without Wealth high *Stomachs* may well feed on the hope of Liberty, but digest it never. *Licinius*, his *Freed-man*, was the fittest fellow for such an Office, who is presently made the *Task-master* of the Province. The *Gauls* used to pay a Monthly Tribute, which he much enhaunsed (besides private and petty means of proling) by making fourteen Months in a year. The *Solicitors* of that people at *Rome* make complaint to *AUGUSTUS*. He sometimes yielded unto them, sometimes excused his *Freed-man*; some things he would not know, many he would not believe, others he dissembled. *Licinius*, to make up his peace, sent to the Emperor all his Treasure, and that huge Mass of Gold and Silver by those unlawful means heaped up together: which he not only willingly received, but his turn being served, and the *Gauls* not a little impoverished; he recalled *Licinius*, and sent *Tiberius* to settle the Province. So old and common a thing it is with great Princes, to suffer their *Vice-Roys*, and *Under-Officers* to suck like *Spunges*, the Wealth of the Subject, till they are quite full; and then to squeeze them into their own Coffers.

39. But the Province whose tuition and defence he principally regarded, was *Egypt*; not so much for the valour and courage of the Inhabitants, as the natural strength and situation of the place. *Alexander of Macedon* having annexed it to his Empire, never committed the entire Government and Jurisdiction thereof to one Man; fearing lest he presuming on the Wealth of the *People*, and site of the Country, would settle the possession in himself. And so *AUGUSTUS* calling to mind as well the multitude, as the levity and inconstancy of the Natives; that it was very rich in Coyn, and the *Roman Granary* (as serving the City four Months yearly with *Corn*) not only trusted not the rule thereof into the hands

hands of any of the *Senators*, but expressly forbid any of that Order (without his special permission) to sojourn there. It is a Principle in *State*, never to license Men of great Houses, and credit among the *People*, to have free access into that *Countrey*, whose Revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Wherefore it was a weakness doubtless in the Council of King *Henry* the sixth, to suffer *Richard* Duke of *York*, to pass at leisure into *Ireland*; where he had harbour and relief, and whence he brought Supply both of Men and Money. But to return to *Egypt*, *Germanicus* entering once into *Alexandria*, only to see the *Antiquities* of it, and return; stirred such Suspicions and Distractions in the jealous Head of *Tiberius*, that he spared not sharply to rebuke him for it. *Vespasian* also being by the *Syrian Legions* chosen Emperor, first assured himself of *Egypt*, as the Key of the Sea and Land; with a small Power, against a strong Host easily defended. This Place he resolved to make his *Sanctuary*, if his Designs succeeded not luckily. And to this place he hastened, after the defeat of the *Vitellian Army*, that so detaining the ordinary Provision of Victuals, he might by Famine compel the City of *Rome* to stand at his Devotion. The Government of this Province was by *AUGUSTUS* always committed to some one of the *Roman Gentry*, as less able, by reason of his low Condition, to work against the Prince's Safety. Neither would he allow his Deputy the glorious Attributes of *Lieutenant*, *Legatus*, *Proconsul*, or *Prætor*: *Captain*, or *President* of *Egypt*, was their highest Title: there being even in Titles no small Motives to Ambition.

40. *AUGUSTUS* having by these means reduced both the City and Provinces under his absolute Command; and being now declining in Strength, by reason of a sudden and violent Sickness, began to call his Wits to Counsel, how to dispose of the Estate after his decease. Male-child he never had any. His Daughter *Julia*, a Woman of immodest Carriage, never made further use of her Father's Greatness, than that she satisfied her Lusts with the greater Insolence. *Marcellus*, his Sister's Son, and *Julia's* Husband, was a young Man of an ingenious Disposition, and seemingly capable of the Fortunes which attended for him. Him, being yet young, *AUGUSTUS* preferred to the Pontifical Dignity and *Edileship*: Yet once upon his Sickness, he privately determined to choose another Successor in the Commonwealth, rather than his own Family, and not to leave the Empire to *Marcellus*, who he held unable to undergo it, but to his Companion in Arms, *Agrippa*, a Man daunted neither with adverse, nor altered with prosperous Fortunes. This *Marcellus* afterwards so stomached, that he began to grutch at *Agrippa's* Greatness, and to bear a vigilant Eye on his Plots and Actions: Contrarily, *Agrippa*, unwilling to offend him; under whose future Government he was in all likelihood to end the rest of his Days, with much ado obtained leave to retire unto *Lesbos*: that so his Absence either might allay, or remove the Displeasure conceived against him by the young Prince. An Action full of Wisdom and Magnanimity. For though *AUGUSTUS's* chief End was to discountenance the popular Dependencies of his Son, by the Favours heaped on his *Servant*; yet did *Agrippa* know, that a Favourite ought to have so much in him of the *Persian Religion*, as to worship the *Rising-Sun* also; and that he should resemble old *Janus* with two Faces, with the one looking on the King regnant, with the other on the Prince successive.

41. *Marcellus* being dead, *Agrippa* returning, married his Widow, and on her begat two Sons, *Caius* and *Lucius*; whose Actions afterwards afforded such variety for Censure, that there was wanting neither much reason to commend, nor little to condemn them. On these two, or at least one of them, *AUGUSTUS* now grown aged, resolves to settle the Estate; and, if they failed, upon such others, as by the Liberty of the Laws, he might adopt: Adoption in the Estimation of the *Roman Laws* being indeed another Nature. Posterity, whether

it be natural, or only legal, is the best Support of the *Arms Imperial*: such as both fortifies the Prince, and assures the Subject. Yet this he did, not without much Reluctancy, and a great Conflict in his Mind. Sometimes his Thoughts suggested to him, that the designed Successors draw to them all the Attendance and Respect, from the Prince in possession; that they have always a lingering desire to be actually settled in the Throne: That they suppose the Life of the present Prince too tedious, not caring by what means it were shortened. That sometimes it is pernicious, yea even to the appointed Successor himself also. On the other side his better Thoughts prompted him to consider, in what a miserable distraction he should leave the Empire, if sudden Death should take from him an Ability to nominate his Heir: The fear conceived in the whole City at his last Sickness: That *Lycus* of *Lydia*, was of all hands condemned, for leaving his Kingdom to the sharpest Sword: That the Commonwealth fallen into Dissentions, could not be settled again without a lamentable War, and a bloody Victory: That the People seeing him Childless would not only condemn him, but perhaps endeavour to recover the old Liberty, though with the ruine of the State: That it was the Custom of Tyrants, to desire the eternizing of their Deaths, by the downfall of their Countries. His Mind thus distracted and perplexed, at last he brake in this manner. Thou hast, *Octavian*, a Wolf by the Ears, which to hold still, or let go, is alike dangerous. Many Inconveniences may ensue, if thou dost not declare thy Successor; more if thou dost. The good of the Republick consisteth in knowing the future Prince. Thine own Welfare dependeth upon the Concealment. The Common Good is to be preferred before any private: Yet ought Charity to begin at home. No, *Octavian*, no: As thou hast receiv'd, so shew thy self worthy of the Title of *Pater Patriæ*. Yea, and perhaps this Designation may secure thine own Estate. For what will it profit the People to conspire against thee; when they shall see a Successor at hand, either of thine own Body, or thine own appointment, ready to take thy Place, and revenge thy Wrongs?

42. Thus resolved, he adopteth *Caius* and *Lucius*; desiring, though he made shew to the contrary, they should be *Consuls elect*, and called *Princes of the Youth*. Yet wisely forecasting the Dangers incident to himself, if they should make their abode in *Rome*; he sendeth them with honourable Charge into the Provinces abroad: as well to exercise them in Feats of War, as to take away all Cause of Faction in the Court, and Sedition in the City. Which Mystery of State, as it was anciently practised by most Princes, so at this Day by the Grand Seignior; who always sendeth his eldest Son unto *Amasia*, as Governour thereof; from whence, till the death of his Father, he never returneth. In these Journeys died the two young Princes; a Misfortune which *AUGUSTUS* bore nobly; neither banishing Grief, with a Stoical Apathy; nor spending the time in womanish Lamentations. Having performed due Rites to the Dead, he adopted his Wife's Son, *Tiberius*: A Man, for the conveniency and ripeness of his Age, not unfit; in Feats of Arms, not unexpert; in Humane Learning, not ignorant; but withal suspected to be cruelly given, and possessed with the hereditary Pride of the *Claudian Family*. A strange Medley of vertuous and vicious Qualities! *Tiberius*, such was the Will of his Father, to establish the Succession with more Stays than one, adopted *Germanicus*, his Brother *Drusus's* Son, then commanding over eight Legions in *Germany*: which done, he speedeth to his Charge in *Illyricum*. This Man *AUGUSTUS* appointed to be his Successor, as it was afterwards (and not improbably) conjectured, neither in care to the State, nor in love to the Party; but to win Honour to himself; and to make the *Roman People* again wish for him, when they should see that infinite disproportion in all Royal and Kingly Qualities, between the old and now Emperors.

A Fetch, after imitated by *Tiberius*, in the Adoption of *Caius Caligula*.

43. The last (though not the least) help of the *Empire's* establishment, was the long life and reign of our *AUGUSTUS*: As having ruled the State 16 years before, and 34 years after his confirmation in the *Sovereignty*, by the *Senate* and *People*. All the young Men in the City were born after the first *Decennium* of the *Monarchy*. Most of the old Men, during the Civil Wars: Few had seen what was the ancient form of *Government* in the *Common-wealth*: many did not desire it: For at the present, enjoying *Peace* both at home and abroad; and hearing what sad and tragical reports their Fathers made of the former Troubles and *Proscriptions*, they contented themselves with the new *Government*; as more esteeming a secure and happy *Subjection*, than a dangerous and factious *Liberty*. By which long time of *Empire*, and the policies already recited, besides many others, which I can neither learn by Relation, nor gather by *Presumptions*; did *AUGUSTUS* so firmly settle the *Roman Monarchy*, that it continued some hundred of years without alteration: though all his immediate Successors were in a manner Monsters, incarnate Devils, and indeed any thing rather than Men. *Tiberius*, *Caius*, *Claudius*, *Nero*, *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, both by their own *Tyrannies*, and their Bondmens *Extortions*, would have ruined any *Monarchy* not founded by *AUGUSTUS*.

44. To speak concerning the *Domestical Affairs* of this *Emperor*, is beyond my *Theme*. As either how far he suffered himself to be ordered by his Wife *Livia*; or whether he used variety of Women; not so much to satisfy an inordinate Appetite, as by so many Women to fish out the secret designs of many Men. He was too exact a Statesman to be perfect in *Soldiery*; and in all his Wars was prosperous by Fortune rather than by Valour, or his Captains Valour than his own. The *Common-wealth*, which he found weak and in *Rubbish*, he left *Adamantine*, and *Invincible*. In Behaviour he was Affable and Gracious; in his Discourse, Sententious; to the good, of a most sweet Disposition; to the lewd and dishonest, harsh and unpleasant. Friendship he contracted with few, and that slowly; but to them whom he once loved, constant and bountiful to the last. Finally such a one he was, of whom I will only say, what I find spoken of *Severus*; 'It had been an ineffable benefit to the *Common-wealth* of *Rome*, if either he had never died, or never been born.

Thus having drawn the picture of this puissant and prudent Prince (though I confess with too much shadow) I now proceed unto the Catalogue of the *Roman Emperours*: in which I shall take notice of such of their Actions only, as had relation to the Publick, either in the improvement or decrease of their Power and Empire; or point to any single matter which concerns the Church.

The Roman Emperors.

A. M.

3902 1 *Julius Caesar* the last of the *Dictators*, and the first of the *Emperors*: In Memory of whom the following Emperors were called *Cæsars* till the time of *Adrian*; when it became the Title of the Heir apparent, or designed Successor; the first who had it in that sense being *Aelius Verus*, though he lived not to enjoy the Empire.

3906 2 *C. Octavianus Caesar*, to whom the Senate gave the name of *Augustus*; who added unto the *Roman Empire* the Provinces of *Noricum*, *Pannonia*, *Rhætia*, a great part of *Spain*, and the whole Kingdom of *Egypt*.

A. Chr. In his time the Lord *CHRIST* was born. 56.

17 3 *Tiberius Nero*, the Son-in-Law of *Augustus*, subdued many of the *German Nations*; and added *Gallia* and *Cappadocia* to the Empire.

In his time *CHRIST* suffered. 23.

39 4 *Caius Caligula*, the Son of *Germanicus*, Son of *Drusus*, the Brother of *Tiberius* and of *Agrippina*, Niece to *Augustus Caesar*, by his Daughter *Julia*. 3.

43 5 *Claudius Caesar*, Uncle to *Caligula*, Brother of *Germanicus*, and Son of *Drusus* by *Antonia*, Niece to *Augustus* by his Sister *Octavia*; added *Britain*, and *Mauritania*, to the *Roman Empire*. 13.

57 6 *Domitius Nero*, Son of *Agrippina*, and *Agrippina*, Daughter to *Germanicus*, the last of the *Cæsars*. He made the *Cœtian Alpes* a Province of the Empire, and brought the *Armenians* to receive their Kings from the *Roman Emperors*; and was the first that raised any publick Persecution against the *Christians*. An. 67. 13.

7 *Sergius Galba*, chosen by the *French* and *Spanish Legions*.

8 *Salvius Otho*, made Emperor by the *Prætorian Soldiers*.

9 *Aul. Vitellius*, elected by the *German Legions*.

71 10 *Flavius Vespasianus*, chosen by the *Syrian* and *Judean Armies*, subverted utterly the *Common-wealth* of the *Jews*, by the valour and prowess of his Son *Titus*; and brought *Archaia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Thrace*, and *Syria Comagene*, under the Form of *Roman Provinces*. 9.

80 11 *Titus Vespasianus*, the fortunate Conqueror of the *Jews*. 2.

82 12 *Fl. Domitianus*, who raised the second Persecution against the *Christians*. An. 96. aliis 92. 15.

97 13 *Nerva Cocceius*, a noble Senator, but no *Roman* born; as all the rest had been before him, but not many after him. 2.

99 14 *Ulpus Trajanus*, by Birth a *Spaniard*, adopted by *Nerva*: He made *Dacia* a Province of the Empire, carried the *Roman Armies* over *Euphrates*, subduing *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria*, and raised the third Persecution against the *Christians*. An. 110. aliis 101. 19.

118 15 *Aelius Adrianus*, who utterly exterminated the *Jewish Nation*, and continued the Persecution begun by *Trajan*. 20.

138 16 *Antoninus Pius*, whose friendship was sought by the very *Indians*. 24.

162 17 *Marcus Antoninus*, surnamed the Philosopher, associated *L. Verus* in the Government, by whose valour he subdued the *Parthians*. He raised the fourth Persecution against the Church. An. 167. 19.

181 18 *L. Antoninus Commodus*, Son to *Marcus*, the first Emperor that had been hitherto born in the time of his Fathers Empire. 13.

194 19 *Aelius Pertinax*, made Emperour against his will. 20 *Didius Julianus*, who bought the Empire of the Soldiers.

195 21 *Septimius Severus*, took *Ctesiphon* from the *Parthians*, subdued the Provinces of *Osroene*; and raised the Fifth Persecution, An. 195. 18.

213 22 *Bassianus Caracalla*, Son to *Severus*. 7.

220 23 *Opilius Macrinus*, made Emperor by the Men of War six Months.

221 24 *Varius Heliogabalus*, the supposed Son of *Caracalla*, three years and two months.

225 25 *Alexander Severus*, Cousen of *Varius*. 13.

238 26 *Maximinus*, a fellow of obscure Birth; who being advanced to the Empire, raised the sixth Persecution. An. 237. 6.

241 27 *Gordian*, elected by the Senate against *Maximinus*. 6.

247 28 *Philip*, an *Arabian*, supposed by some to be a Christian. 7.

- 252 29 Decius, slain in War against the Goths; the Author of the Seventh Persecution raised against the Church. An. 252.
- 254 30 Gallus Hostilianus. 2.
- 256 31 Emilianus the Moor.
- 256 32 Valerianus, the Author of the Eighth Persecution, An. 259. He was taken Prisoner by Sapore, King of Persia, and made to serve him for a Footstool. 9.
- 261 33 Gallienus, Son to Valerianus, in whose time the 30 Tyrants ingrossed unto themselves several parts of the Empire. 7.
- 267 34 Claudius II, who after a short and troublesome time, left it to
- 268 35 Quintillus his Brother, who enjoyed the same but 17 days.
- 269 36 Valer. Aurelianus, restored again the ancient Discipline, suppressed all the Invaders of the Empire, and vanquished the Goths; but was a greater Persecutor of the Church. An. 278. 6.
- 275 37 Annianus Tacitus, descended from Tacitus the Historian.
- 277 38 Florianus, an Emperor of two Months only.
- 277 39 Valerius Probus. 6.
- 282 40 Aurelius Carus, together with his two Sons Carinus and Numerianus. 6.
- 283 41 Dioclesian, first associated Maximianus by the name of Emperor, or Augustus; and afterwards Galerius of Dacia, and Constantius Chlorus, by the name of Cæsars. He had had continual Wars against the Persians, and raised the Tenth Persecution against the Church, An. 302. which held so long, and was so vehement withal, that as St. Hierome writes, there were 5000 slain for every day in the year, save the first of January. He afterwards resigned the Empire, and lived in private at Salona. 20.
- 306 42 Constantius Chlorus, a friend to Christians. 2.
- 306 43 Constantine, Son of Chlorus, surnamed Magnus, or the Great, the first Emperor that countenanced the Gospel, and embraced it publickly; which he is said to have done on this occasion. At the same time that he was saluted Emperor in Britain, Maxentius was chosen at Rome by the Prætorian Soldiers; and Licinius named Successor by Maximianus, the Associate of his Father Chlorus. Being pensive and solicitous upon these distractions, he cast his eyes up towards Heaven, where he saw in the Air a lightsome Pillar in the form of a Cross, wherein he read these words, *ἐν τούτῳ νικά*, *In hoc vince*; and the next night our Saviour appearing to him in a Vision, commanded him to bear that figure in his Standard, and he should overcome all his Enemies. This he performed, and was accordingly Victorious, from which time he not only favoured the Christians, but became a very zealous Professor of the Faith and Gospel. I know Zosimus an Heathen Historian, partly out of Malice to the Christians in general, and partly a particular grudge to the Emperor Constantine, reporteth otherwise of the Causes of his Conversion: But the authority and consent of all Christian Writers, who deliver it as before is told, is far to be preferred before the testimony of one single Heathen, had he not been biassed (as he was) by his disaffections, he Reigned 30 years 10 months.

Before this time it is observed, that few (if at all any) of the Roman Emperors died a natural death, as after they generally did. From Julius Cæsar unto Constantine there were 40 in all. Of which Julius was openly murdered in the Senate; Augustus made away by his Wife Li-

via; as Tiberius afterwards by Mecro; Caligula was slain by Cassius Chæreas; Claudius poisoned by his Wife Agrippina; Nero, and Otho, laid violent hands upon themselves; Galba, and Vitellius, massacred by the soldiers; Domitian by Stephanus, Commodus by Letus and Electus, Pertinax and Julianus by the Soldiers of their Guard; Caracalla by the command of Macrinus; Macrinus, Elagabalus, Alexander, Maximinus, Maximus, and Balbinus successively by the Men of War; Gordianus by Philip, Philip by the Soldiers; Hostilianus by Gallus and Emilianus; and they by the Soldiers; Valerianus died a Prisoner in Parthia; Florianus was the author of his own end; Aurelianus murdered by his Household Servant; Gallienus, Quintillus, Tacitus and Probus, by the fury of the Military Men. And yet I have omitted out of this Account such of the Emperors as were tumultuously made by the Army, without the approbation of the Senate; as also the Cæsars, or designed Successors of the Empire; most of which got nothing by their designation and adoption, but *ut citius interficerentur*. Some of these were cut off for their Misdemeanors; some for seeking to revive again the ancient Discipline; and some that others might enjoy their places. The chief cause of these continual Massacres, proceeded originally from the Senate, and Emperors themselves. For when the Senators had once permitted the Soldiers to elect Galba, and had confirmed that Election; Evulgato (saith Tacitus) *imperii arcano principem alibi quam Romæ fieri posse*: when that Secret was once discovered, that an Emperor might be made in another place than Rome, more Emperors were made abroad in the Field by the Legions, than at home by the Senators. Secondly from the Emperors alone, who by an unseasonable love to their Guard-Soldiers, so strengthened them with Privileges, and nuzzled them in their licentious Courses, that on the smallest Rebuke, they which were appointed for the safety of the Princes, proved the Authors of their Ruine: So truly was it said by Augustus in Dion, *Metuendum est esse sine custode, sed multo magis a custode metuendum est*: It is a fearful thing to be without Guards, but it is more fearful to have them. The last cause (be it *causa per accidens*, or *per se*) was the Largess which the new Emperors used to give unto the Men of Service; a Custom begun by Claudius Cæsar, and continued by all his Successors: In so much that the Empire became saleable, and many times he which had most had it. As we see in Dion, when Sulpitianus offering twenty *Sestertiums* to each Soldier, was (as if they had been buying a stock at Gluck) out-bidden by Julianus, who promised them five and twenty *Sestertiums* a Man. So that Herodian justly complaineth of this Donative; *Id initium causæque militibus fuit, ut etiam in posterum turpissimi contumacissimique evaderent, sic ut avaritiæ indies, ac principum contemptus, etiam ad sanguinem usque proverberent*. That is to say, From this occasion and beginning, the Soldiers every day grew more shameless, and less regardful of their Prince: So that their Covetousness encreasing, and the contempt they had of their Emperors waxing more and more, ended at last in the frequent shedding of their Bloods, in hope to have a better Market of the next Successor: So as the Emperor Constantine wanted not good reason, besides their siding against him for Maxentius, to cashier these Guards, as grown more dangerous than useful to Imperial Majesty. And so accordingly he did, levelling their standing Camp to the very ground, disbanding the whole Company, or putting them under other Officers, and to other Services, by means whereof they were not able to create the like Disturbances, or dispose of the Empire as before. And for the Captains of these Guards which before were two (*Præfetti Prætorio* in the Latin) he encreased their number unto four (one for each quarter of the Empire) giving them a Civil Jurisdiction in exchange for the Military Command which they had before, and casting them behind in place after the *Patricii*, an Order of his own devising.

As for the extent and latitude of the *Roman Empire*, whilst it remained one intire Body (as it was before the time of *Constantine*, who at his death divided it among his Sons) it was in length about three thousand Miles, namely from the *Irish Ocean* West, to the River *Euphrates* on the East; and in breadth, it reached from the *Danubius* Northward to Mount *Atlas* on the South, about two thousand Miles. And though the *Romans* had extended their Dominions somerimes farther East, and North; yet could they never quietly settle themselves in those Conquests. Nature (it seemeth) had appointed them these bounds, not so much to limit the *Empire*, as to defend it. For the Enemies found those Rivers, by reason of the depth of the Channel, and violent current of the Stream, as a couple of impregnable Fortresses; purposely (as it were) erected to hinder them from harrasing the *Romans* Countries.

The Revenues of it *Lipsius* in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*, esteemeth to be about one hundred and fifty Millions of Crowns; and that they were no less, may be made more than probable by these reasons: 1. It is affirmed by divers, and among others by *Boterus*, that the yearly Revenues of the King of *China* amount to one hundred and twenty Millions of Crowns. And if this be true (as few question it) we cannot in proportion guess the whole Empire of the *Romans* to yield less than one hundred and fifty Millions; especially considering what Arts-Masters the *Romans* were, in levying and raising their Taxes and customary Tributes. 2. The *Legionary* Soldiers which were dispersed over the Provinces, received in ordinary pay, (besides provision of Corn, Apparel, and Officers wages) five Millions, 516062 pounds and ten shillings of our Money; which amounteth unto sixteen Millions of Crowns, or thereabout. In the City it self were kept in continual Pay, seven thousand Soldiers of the Watch, four thousand or six thousand for the defence of the City, and ten thousand for the Guard of the Emperor's Person. The two first had the same Wages, the last the double Wages of a *Legionary* Soldier. Add hereto the expences of the Palace, and other means of disbursements, and I think nothing of the sum can be abated. 3. We read that *C. Caligula* spent in one year two Millions and seven hundred thousand of *Sestertiums*; how *Nero* most lavishly gave away two Millions and one hundred thousand of *Sestertiums*; and how *Vitellius* in few Months, was nine hundred thousand *Sestertiums* in Arrerages; every *Sestertium* being valued at seven pound sixteen shillings three pence: all of them huge and infinite sums. 4. When *Vespasian* came to the Empire, the Exchequer was so impoverished, that he professed in open Senate, that he wanted to settle the Common-wealth forty Millions of *Sestertiums*, amounting to three hundred and twelve Millions of our *English* Money: which Prostration (saith *Sueton*) seemed probable, *Quia & male partis optime usus est*. Now unless the ordinary Revenues came to as much, or more than we have spoken, by what means could this extraordinary sum be raised? 5. We may guess at the general Revenue by the Moneys issuing out of particular Provinces; and it is certain, that *Egypt* afforded the *Ptolomies* twelve thousand Talents yearly: Neither had the *Romans* less, they being more perfect in inhansing, than in abating their Intrado. *France* was by *Cesar* cessed at the yearly Tribute of twenty Millions of Crowns. And no doubt the rest of the Provinces were rated accordingly. 6. And lastly, the infinite sums of Money given by the Emperors in way of largesse, are proofs sufficient for the greatness of the Income. I will instance in *Augustus* only, and in him, omitting his Donatives at the Victory of *Actium*, and the rest, I will specify the Legacy at his Death: He bequeathed (by his Testament, as we read in *Tacitus*) to the common sort, and the rest of the People, three pound eight shillings a Man to every Soldier of the *Prætorian* Bands, seven pounds sixteen shillings three pence; and

to every *Legionary* Soldier, of the *Roman* Citizens, four pound ten shillings six pence: which amounted to a mighty mass of Money.

The Arms or Ensigns of this Empire when it was up and in flourishing, was the *Eagle*: Not born, as now in Colours, and a Banner; but in an Image or Portraiture on the top of a Spear; or other long piece of wood, to be fixed in the Earth at pleasure. This Ensign, Spear and Eagle together, they called the *Labarum*: *Quæ signa quod quasi labantia hastis appenderentur Labara dixerunt*, saith *Lipsius*, *Epist. Qu. Ep. 5*. The use as of this, so of other Standards, *Lyra* giveth us in his Notes on the second of *Numbers*, namely, *ut ad eorum aspectum, bellatores dividantur & uniantur*, to call together, and distribute the Soldiers according to occasion. And certainly for this end and purpose were those Ensigns first invented. Afterwards they were applied to the distinguishing of Tribes and Families; and at last bestowed by Kings and Princes as the honorary marks of well-deserving: Those which had been the Ensigns of War, so becoming the Ornaments of Peace. At what time the form of this *Labarum* was altered, and began to be born in Colours, I have not yet read. It is now an *Eagle* *Saturn*, in a Field *Sol*, which kind of bearing the *Heralds* call *most rich*. It was first born by *Ca. Marius* in his second Consulship, and in his Wars against the *Cimbri*; from him conveyed to *J. Caesar*, who was allied to him in design and person; and so derived unto the Emperors, his Successors.

But to proceed, *Constantine* having settled his affairs in peace, and cashiered the *Prætorian* Guards, fell to new modelling the Empire; which he conceived to be too cumbersome and unweildy to be governed by the former Polity; as indeed it was. And first of all, he augmented the *Roman* Provinces to the number of one hundred and twenty, or thereabouts; over every one of which he ordered a particular *Præfident*; that had his residence in the chief City of that Province. Then he reduced these Provinces under fourteen *Dioceses*, (for so he called the greater distributions of his Empire) seven of which were in the East parts thereof, that is to say, the *Diocese* of *Egypt*, of the *Orient*, of *Asia*, of *Pontus*, *Thrace*, *Dacia*, and *Macedon*: And as many also in the West, viz. the *Præfecture* of the City of *Rome* (which I count for one,) the *Diocese* of *Italy*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*, of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. Finally instead of the two *Præfecti* *Prætorio*, which had the command of the *Prætorians*, he ordained four for the quarters of the Empire: That is to say, the *Præfectus-Prætorio Italiae*, under whom were the *Dioceses* of *Italy*, *Africa*, and *Illyricum*: *Præfectus-Prætorio Galliarum*, who had under him the *Dioceses* of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. 3. The *Præfectus-Prætorio Orientis*, who had command over the *Dioceses* of *Egypt*, the *Orient*, the *Asian*, the *Pontic* and *Thracian* *Dioceses*. And 4. the *Præfectus-Prætorio Illyrici*, under whose superintendence, besides *Illyricum* it self, were the *Dioceses* of *Macedon* and *Dacia* only, each of these *Præfects* having a *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant in the several *Dioceses* under his Authority, who fixed their Residence in the head City of the *Diocese*. And this I have the rather noted, because of the relation which the Polity of the *Christian* Church had to this Division: it being so ordered in the best and purest times thereof, that in every City where the Emperors had an Officer, whom they called *Defensor Civitatis*, the *Christians* should have a *Bishop*; in every chief City of the Province a *Metropolitan*, and over every *Diocese* an *Archbishop* or *Primate*, from whom lay no Appeal unto any other. And so far *Constantine* did well; if at the least the casting of the Empire into so many *Dioceses* was of his devising. But I have reason to believe, that it was more ancient: The Patriarchs or Primates of *Rome*, *Carthago*, *Alexandria*, *Antioch*, and other of the greater Churches, being settled in a Preheminence of Jurisdiction over the Provinces, and *Metropolitans* assigned to them long time before the Council of *Nice*, and

and consequently before the Empire (nay the birth) of *Constantine*, who possibly might act no more in this great business, than the assigning of a *Præfectus-Prætorio* to each several Quarter, and the allotting of the *Dioceses* unto each *Præfectus*. But whether it were so or not, certain it is, that he committed divers Errors, which did more prejudice the Empire, than any thing that had been done by his Predecessors. First, in translating the Imperial Seat from *Rome* to *Byzantium*; by which transplantation, the Empire lost much of its natural vigour: as we see by experience of Plants and Flowers, which being removed from the place of their natural growth, lost much of their Vertue which was formerly in them. On which reason *Camillus* would not suffer the *Romans* to remove their Seat unto the City of the *Veii*, newly conquered by him: but to prevent them in it, set fire on the Town, and so consumed it, *ut nunc Veios fuisse, laboret Annalium fides*, as my Author hath it. A second fault of this *Constantine* was the dividing the Empire amongst his Sons, which only concerned himself. For though it was quickly re-united in the Person of *Constantius* (his Brethren dying without Issue;) yet his Example being followed by others, the Empire was after torn into many pieces, to the destruction of the whole. 'Tis true, the former Emperors used sometimes to associate some Partner with them; but so that they did manage it as one sole Estate: *Constantine* (if I remember rightly) being the first which parcelled it into several Sovereignities, each independant of the other, allotting to *Constantius*, *Greece*, *Thrace*, and all the Provinces of the East; to *Constans*, *Italy*, *Illyricum*, *Africk*; to *Constantine*, *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. The third fault of this Emperor was his removing the *Legions* and *Colonies* which lay before on the Northern Marches, into the Eastern parts of his Dominions, pretending to use them as a bulwark against the *Persians*; laying thereby those passages open, at which not long after the barbarous Nations enter'd, and subdued the West. For though instead of these *Colonies* he planted Garisons and Forts in convenient places, yet these being filled with Soldiers, for the most part out of other Countries, fought not as in defence of their native Soil, (as the *Colonies* would and must have done) but on the first onset of those *Barbarians* abandoned them to the will of the Enemy. So that *Zozimus* (though in other of his reports about this Prince he bewrayeth much Malice) doth call him, nor untruly, the first subverter of that flourishing Monarchy. To these three we may add a fourth, which concerns the Emperors in general; namely, their stupid negligence and degenerate Spirits, which shewed it self most visible in the last of

The Western Emperors.

A. C.

Constantine the Great died in the Year of Christ, 338.

341 1 *Constance*, the youngest Son of *Constantinus Magnus*, his Brother *Constantine* being dead, in the third Year of his Reign, remained sole Emperor of the West. 13.

354 2 *Constantius*, the other of *Constantine's* Sons succeeded *Constans* in his part, after his decease; uniting the divided Empire into one Estate. He reigned 24 Years, 5 Months, and died in the Year of Christ, 361.

365 3 *Julian the Apostate*.

4 *Jovian*, a Catholick Christian Prince of seven Months.

366 5 *Valentinian*, Emperor of the West, his Brother *Valens* ruling in *Constantinople*, and the Eastern parts.

377 6 *Valentinian II.* youngest Son of the former *Valentinian*, 17 Years.

381 In the fifth Year of *Valentinianus II.* *Theodosius the Great* was made Emperor of the East, he reigned 16 Years and died in the Year of Christ, 396.

397 7 *Honorius* the second Son of *Theodosius* the Emperor, (his elder Brother *Arcadius* reigning in the East) in whole time *Alarick* with the *Goths* invaded *Italy*, sacked *Rome*, and made themselves Masters of the Country, which afterwards they left in exchange for 26. others assign him 28. In the Year of Christ 411. *Rome* was taken by *Alarick*, King of the *Goths*; which was the first time it fell into the hands of the barbarous Nations.

425 8 *Valentinian III.* during whose time *Attila* and the *Hunnes* made foul work in *Italy*; and the *Vandals* seized upon *Africk*, as they did on *Italy* and *Rome* also after his decease: Murdered by *Maximus* a *Roman* (whose Wife he had trained into the Court, and ravished) as shall be shewn hereafter on another occasion. He was Son unto *Constantius Cæsar* by *Placidia* Sister to *Honorius*, and Widow of *Authulfus* King of the *Goths*. He reigned 3 Years.

455 9 *Maximus* having slain *Valentinian* the Third, succeeded in the Empire; but on the coming of the *Vandals*, whom *Euloxia* the Wife of *Valentinian* (who had some inkling of the manner of her Husband's death) had drawn into *Italy*, he was stoned to death by his own Soldiers, 1.

456 10 *Avitus*, chosen Emperor in a military Tumult.

457 11 *Majoranus*. 4.

461 12 *Severus*. 6.

467 13 *Anthemius*, who at the end of five Years was slain (as were the three before him) by *Recimer* a *Suevian* born, the chief Commander of the Armies, who had an aim to get the Empire for himself, but died as soon as he had vanquished and slain *Anthemius*.

471 14 *Olybrius*, an Emperor of four Months only.

472 15 *Glycerius*, another of as little note: As also was

474 16 *Julius Nepos*, deposed by *Orestes* a noble *Roman*, who gave the Empire to his Son, called at first *Momillus*; but after his assuming the Imperial Title, he was called as in contempt *Augustulus*.

475 17 *Augustulus*, the last of the Emperors who resided in *Italy*, vanquished by *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli* and *Turingians*, an ominous thing, that as *Augustus* raised his Empire, so an *Augustulus* should ruin it. In the Year of Christ, 477.

But though *Augustulus* lost the Empire, yet *Odoacer* was not suffered to enjoy it long: † He Reigned 16 Years and 6 Months. This was the first of the barbarous Kings that reigned peaceably in Italy. *Zeno* the Emperor of the East sending *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* to expel him thence, and to possess himself of *Italy*, the reward of his Valour. And this the Emperor did the rather, partly because the *Goths* were Christians, and in good terms of correspondency with him: but principally to remove the active Nation somewhat further off, who lay before too near the borders of his own Dominions. And that he might dismiss them with the greater content and honour, he made *Theodorick* a *Patrician* of the *Roman* Empire; an Honour first devised by the Emperor *Constantine*; and of so high esteem from the first Institution, that they who were dignified therewith, were to have precedency of the *Prætorii Præfeli*, who before took place next to the Emperor himself. Nor did the famous *Charlemain* set upon it any lower estimate, in case he did not add much unto it; when to the Title of Emperor of the *Romans*, he added that of a *Patrician* in the stile Imperial. *Theodorick* thus authorized and encouraged, marches toward *Italy*; and having vanquished *Odoacer*, secures himself in his new Conquests by divers politick proceedings; first by Alliances abroad, and then by Fortresses at home. To fortify himself abroad he took to Wife *Adelbeida*, Daughter to *Clodoveus* (or *Clowis*) King of the *French*; marrying his Sister

Sister *Hemelfride* to *Thorismund*, King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, *Amalasunta*, a second Daughter to *Eutharicus* a Prince of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and *Ammelberge* his Niece, to *Hermandfridus* King of the *Turingians*. Being thus back'd with these Alliances with his Neighbour Princes, (all equally concern'd in the subverting of the *Roman Empire*) he built Towns and Forts along the *Alps*, and the Shores of the *Adriatick*, to impede the passage of the barbarous Nations into *Italy*. His Soldiers and Commanders he dispersed into most parts of the Country; partly to keep under the *Italians*, of whose wavering and unconstant Nature he was somewhat doubtful; partly to unite both People in a mixture of Language, Marriages, and Customs; and partly that he might more easily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. *Italy*, which before was made a thorow-fare to the barbarous Nations, and quite disordered by the frequent Inundations of Lust and Rapine; he reduced to such a peaceable and settled Government, that before his Death they had quite lost the memory of their former Miseries: instead whereof a general felicity had diffused it self over all the Country. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, strengthen'd, and beautified. In his Wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of Peace, and in his private Carriage discreet and affable. Finally, (as *Velleius* saith of *Moroboduus*) he was *Natione magis quam ratione Barbarus*: And went the most judicious way to establish his Dominion in *Italy*, of any of the Barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the *Roman Provinces*, which he left thus confirmed and settled unto his Successors.

A. Chr. The Kings of the *Goths* in *Italy*.

- 493 1 *Theodorick*, of whom before; who to his Conquest of *Italy* added that of *Illyricum*, as also the appendant Islands to both those Countries; and wrested *Provence* in *France*, from the *Goths* of *Spain*. 33 Years.
- 527 2 *Athalaricus*, Nephew to *Theodorick* by his Daughter *Amalasunta*, who in the minority of her Son managed the Affairs of the *Goths* in *Italy*. Fearing some danger out of *Greece*, she restored *Provence* to the *French*, and by their aid drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skilful in the Languages of all those Nations which had any Commerce with the *Roman Empire*, insomuch that *pro miraculo fuerit ipsum audire loquentem*, saith *Procopius* of her. 8 Years.
- 534 3 *Theodatus*, the Son of *Hemelfride*, the Sister of *Theodorick*, succeeded on the untimely Death of *Athalaricus*: Who being in War with the *Romans*, (or rather with the *Greek Emperors*, endeavouring to recover *Italy* from the hands of the *Goths*) and desiring before-hand to know his success; was willed by a *Jew* to shut up a certain number of Swine, and to give some of them the names of *Goths*, and unto others the names of *Romans*. Which done, and going to the Styes not long after, they found the Hogs of the *Gothish* Faction all slain, and those of the *Roman* half unbristled: And thereupon the *Jew* foretold, That the *Goths* should be discomfited, and the *Romans* lose a great part of their strength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called *Ovoquanta*, and hath been prohibited by a General Council. The loss of this Battel (won by *Belisarius*, Commander of the Armies of the Emperor *Justinian*) drew on the loss of *Rome*, and the East parts of *Italy*, (with the Realm of *Naples*) and occasioned the death of *Theodatus*, slain shortly after these great losses by the *Goths* themselves, 3.

- 537 4 *Vitiges*, chosen by the *Goths*, besieged and taken in *Ravenna* by the said *Belisarius*. 3.
- 540 5 *Idobaldus*, Governour of *Verona*, on the calling home of *Belisarius*, chosen by the *Goths*, and by them not long after slain. 1.
- 541 6 *Ardaricus*, of whom nothing memorable. 1.
- 542 7 *Thalas*, a right valiant Prince, recovered all which had been got from his Predecessors, and sacked *Rome* in the sight of *Belisarius*, (then returned into *Italy*), as not able to hinder him. Vanquished and killed in fight by *Narfes*, in the 11th of his Reign. 11.
- 353 8 *Teyas*, the last King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, who being vanquished by *Narfes* in the fourteenth Year of his Reign, submitted himself to the Eastern Emperors: but after breaking out again, he was finally discomfited, and slain by *Narfes*, not far from the City of *Nocera*. *Ann.* 567. After which time, the *Goths* and the *Italians* mingled in Blood and Language, became one Nation.

But the Miseries of *Italy*, and those Western parts were not so to end. No sooner had God freed them from the rod of his Visitation, which he had laid upon them in the times of *Persecution*, formerly remembered; and giving them Peace within their Dwellings; but they became divided into *Schisms* and *Factions*: and after wallowed in those Sins; which a continual surfeit of Prosperity hath commonly attending on it. Insomuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about these times, complains of that high hand of wickedness, wherewith they did provoke the patience of Almighty God; the Lives of *Christians* being grown so deplorably wicked, that they became a scandal to the Faith and Gospel. *In nobis patitur Christus opprobrium, in nobis patitur lex Christiana maledictum*; Christ is reproached on our Account, and the Christian Law cursed, saith that godly Bishop. So that their Sins being ripe for Vengeance, God sent the barbarous Nations, as his Executioners, to execute his Divine Justice on these impenitent Men, and made them sensible, though *Heathens*, that it was God's work they did, and not their own, in laying such Afflictions on these Western parts. *Ipsi fatebantur non suum esse quod facerent, agi enim se & perurgeti divino jussu*, They confessed that they did not their own work, because they were forced and urged to it by a Divine Command; as the said godly Bishop doth inform us of them. On this impulsion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they first wasted *Spain*, and then harassed *Africk*: And at the same time, did *Attila* the *Hun* insert into his Royal Titles the Stile of *Malleus Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*; acknowledging thereby his own apprehension of some special and extraordinary calling to this publick Service. Nay, as *Jornandes* doth report, some of these barbarous People did not stick to say, That they were put on this employment by some Heavenly Visions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In prosecution of the which, in less time than the compass of 80 Years, this very *Italy* (though anciently the strength and seat of that Empire) was seven times brought almost unto desolation, by the Fire and Sword of the Barbarians, viz. First by *Alarick*, King of the *Goths*, who sacked *Rome*, *Naples*, &c. 2. By *Attila*, King of the *Huns* who razed *Florence*, wasted *Lombardy*, and not without much difficulty was diverted from the Spoil of *Rome*, by the Intercession of Pope *Leo*. 3. By *Gensericus* King of the *Vandals*, who also had the Sackage of *Rome* it self. 4. By *Biorgus* King of the *Alani*, in the time of the Emperor *Majoranus*. 5. By *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli*, who drove *Augustulus* the last Western Emperor out of his Estate; and twice in thirteen Years laid the Country desolate. 6. By *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, called in by *Zeno*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, to expel *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*. And, 7. by *Gundebald* King

King of the *Burgundians*, who having ranfack'd all *Lombardy*, returned home again, leaving poffeffion to the *Goths*. As for thefe *Goths*, being the firft and laft of thofe barbarous Nations who had any thing to do in the Spoil of *Italy*, after they had reigned here under eight of their Kings, for the fpace of 72 Years, they were at laft fubdued by *Belifarius* and *Narfes*, two of the braveft Soldiers that had ever ferved the Eaftern Emperors; and *Italy* united once more to the Empire, in the time of *Juftinian*. But *Narfes* having governed *Italy* about feventeen Years, and being after fuch good Service moft difpleafingly ufed by *Sophia* (never the wifer for her Name) the Wife of the Emperor *Juftinus*, abandon'd the Country to the *Lombards*. For the Empreſs envying his Glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Government, but fent him word, *That ſhe would make the Eunuch (for ſuch he was) come home and ſpin among her Maids*. To which the difcontented Man returned this Answer, *That he would ſpin her ſuch a Web, as neither ſhe nor any of her Minions ſhould ever be able to unweave*. And thereupon he opened the Paſſages of the Country to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*; who coming into *Italy* with their Wives and Children, poſſeſſed themſelves of all that Country which anciently was inhabited by the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, calling it by their own Names *Longobardia*, now corruptly *Lombardy*. Nor ſtaid he there, but made himſelf Maſter of the Countries lying on the *Adriatick*, as far as to the Borders of *Apulia*: and for the better Government of his new Dominions, erected the four famous Dukedoms, 1. Of *Friuli* at the Entrance of *Italy*, for the admiſſion of more Aids if occaſion were, or the keeping out of new Invaders: 2. Of *Turin*, at the Foot of the *Alpes* againſt the *French*: 3. *Benevent*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*, againſt the Incuſions of the *Greeks*, then poſſeſſed of *Apulia*, and the other Eaſtern Parts of that Kingdom: And 4. of *Spoleto*, in the miſt of *Italy*, to ſuppreſs the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more unto his Succeſſors.

A. Ch. The Lombardian Kings of Italy.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|-----|
| 568 | 1. Alboinus. | 6. |
| 574 | 2. Clephes. | 1. |
| Interregnum annorum. 11. | | |
| 586 | 3. Autharis. | 7. |
| 593 | 4. Agilulfus. | 25. |
| 618 | 5. Adoaldus. | 10. |
| 628 | 6. Ariaoldus. | 11. |
| 639 | 7. Richaris, or Rotharis. | 16. |
| 655 | 8. Radoaldus. | 5. |
| 660 | 9. Aribertus. | 9. |
| 669 | 10. Gundibertus. | 1. |
| 670 | 11. Grimoaldus. | 9. |
| 679 | 12. Garibaldus, menſ. | 3. |
| 679 | 13. Partarithus. | 18. |
| 698 | 14. Cunibertus. | 12. |
| 710 | 15. Luitbertus. | 1. |
| 711 | 16. Rainbertus. | 1. |
| 712 | 17. Aribertus II. | 12. |
| 723 | 18. Asprandus menſ. | 3. |
| 723 | 19. Luitprandus. | 21. |
| 744 | 20. Hildebrandus, menſ. | 6. |
| 744 | 21. Rachifus. | 6. |
| 750 | 22. Aſtulfus. | 6. |
| 756 | 23. Deſiderius, the laſt of the Lombards. | 18. |

of whom more anon. In the mean time, we will look into the Story of ſome of the former Kings, in which we find ſome things deſerving our conſideration. And firſt beginning with *Alboinus*, the firſt of this Catalogue: Before his coming into *Italy* he had waged War with *Cunimundus*, a King of the *Gepidae*; whom he overthrew, and made a Drinking-cup of his Skull. *Rofamund* Daughter of this King he took to Wife; and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that deteſted

Cup; which ſhe ſo ſtomached, that ſhe promiſed one *Helmichild*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her ſelf and the Kingdom of *Lombardy*. This when he had conſented to, and performed accordingly, they were both ſo extremely hated for it, that they were fain to flee to *Ravenna*, and put themſelves into the Protection of *Longinus* the *Exarch*. Who partly out of a deſire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be poſſeſſed of that Maſs of Treafure which ſhe was ſaid to bring with her; but principally hoping by her Power and Party there, to raiſe a beneficial War againſt the *Lombards*, perſwaded her to diſpatch *Helmichild* out of the way, and take him for her Husband: to which ſhe willingly agreed. *Helmichild* coming out of a Bath called for Drink, and ſhe gives him a ſtrong Poyſon; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the ſtrange Operation of it how the Matter went, he compelled her to drink the reſt: ſo both died together. 2. *Clephes*, the ſecond King extended the Kingdom of the *Lombards* to the Gates of *Rome*; but was ſo tyrannical withal, that after his Death, they reſolved to admit of no more Kings, diſtributing the Government among thirty Dukes. Which Diviſion, though it held not above twelve Years, was the chief cauſe that the *Lombards* failed of being the abſolute Lords of all *Italy*. For the People having once caſt off the Yoak of Obedience, and taſted ſomewhat of the Sweetneſs of licentious Freedom, were never after ſo reduced to their former Duty, as to be aiding to their Kings in ſuch Atchievements as tended more unto the Greatneſs of the King, than the Gain of the ſubject. 3. *Cunibert* the 14th King was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly required. For being to encounter with *Alachis* the Duke of *Trent*, who rebelled againſt him, one of the Clergy knowing that the King's Life was chiefly aimed at by the Rebels, put on the Royal Robe, and thruſt himſelf into the Head of the Enemy, where he loſt his own Life, but ſaved the King's. 4. *Aribert*, the 17th King, gave the *Celtian Alpes*, containing *Piedmont*, and ſome part of the Dutchy of *Millain*, to the Church of *Rome*: which is obſerved to be the firſt Temporal Eſtate that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the Foundation of that Greatneſs which they after came to. 5. The 19th King was *Luitprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia* and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchate*, having firſt won *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchy* thereof *An* 741. The laſt *Exarch* being called *Euty-chus*. But the *Lombards* long enjoy'd not his Conqueſts; for *Pepin* King of *France*, being by Pope *Stephen III.* ſolicited to come into *Italy*, overthrew *Aſtulfus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The laſt King was *Deſiderius*, who falling at odds with *Adrian* the Firſt, and beſieging him in *Rome*, was by *Charles* the Great, Succeſſor to *Pepin*, beſieged in *Pavy*, and himſelf with all his Children taken Priſoners, *An* 774. And ſo ended the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having endured in *Italy* 206 Years. *Lombardy* was then a Province of the *French*, and after of the German Empire: Many of whoſe Emperors uſed to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Biſhops of *Millain*, with an Iron Crown; which was kept at *Modocum*, now called *Monza*, a ſmall Village. This *Charles* confirmed his Father's former Donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Marca Anconitana*, and the Dukedom of *Spoleto*. For theſe and other Kindneſſes, *Charles* was by Pope *Leo IV.* on *Chriſtmas-day* crowned Emperor of the Weſt, *Anno* 801. whoſe Succeſſors ſhall be reckoned when we come to the Story of *Germany*. At this Diviſion of the Empire, *Irene* was Empreſs of the Eaſt; to whom and her Succeſſors was no more allotted than the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria* (the Eaſt Parts of the Realm of *Naples*) being then in poſſeſſion of the *Greeks*. To the Popes were confirmed or given by this Emperor and his Father, almoſt all the Lands which they poſſeſs at this Day; though afterwards extorted from them by the following Emperors, or under colour of their Title; by many ſeveral ways and means brought again unto them,

as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place. The *Venetians*, in that little they then had, remained *sui juris*. The rest of *Italy*, containing all the other Provinces of the Kingdom of *Naples*, together with *Tuscany*, *Friuli*, *Trevignia*, and whatsoever is at this Day in the possession of the Dukes of *Milan*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Montferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piedmont*, together with *Liguria*, or the States of *Genova*, was reserved by *Charles* unto himself, and in his life-time given by him to *Pepin* his second Son, with the Stile or Title of King of *Italy*. But long it did not rest in the House of *France*; the Princes of the *Lombards* wresting it from the Line of *Charles*, and after weakning and dividing it by their several Factions, till in the end, instead of an united Kingdom, there rose up many scattered Principalities, as shall hereafter be declared. But first we must proceed to the Kings of *Italy*, of which we shall endeavour as exact a Catalogue, as the Confusions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italy*, of the French, Italian, and German Lines.

1. *Pepin*, Son of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
2. *Barnard*, Son of *Pepin*.
3. *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperor, and King of *France*.
- 841 4. *Lotharius*, Emperor, eldest Son of *Ludovicus*. 15.
- 856 5. *Ludovicus II.* Emperor, eldest Son to *Lotharius*. 20.
- 876 6. *Carolus Calvus*, Emperor, the youngest Son of *Ludovicus Pius II.*
7. *Caroloman*, Nephew to *Ludovicus Pius*, by *Ludovicus* his second Son, surnamed the *Ancient*.
8. *Carolus Crassus*, or the Fat Emperor. Brother of *Caroloman*, the last King of *Italy* of the House of *Charles*: he died Anno 888.
- 888 9. *Guy*, Duke of *Spoletto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, both of the *Longobardian* Race, of the Kingdom of *Italy*, and in fine carrieth it against him; and was crown'd Emperor of *Italy* by *Formosus*, upon the *Saracens* invading *Italy* in the Year 891.
- 894 10. *Lambert*, the Son of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Stephen VI.* in 897. He was confirmed Emperor again in the Year 904. and was slain in the Year 910. by the Earl of *Milan*.
- 900 11. *Ludovick*, Son of *Boson* Earl of *Ardenne*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by some Writers called only Earl of *Provence*; upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italy*; and is made King.
- 917 12. *Berengarius*, Duke of *Friuli*, vanquished *Ludovicus*, is made King of *Italy*; and at last overcome by the *Hungarians*; who having wasted the Country, returned back again.
- 915 13. *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*, called into *Italy* against *Berengarius*, religned it in exchange for the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Cousin.
- 923 14. *Hugh D'Arles*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kingdom of *Italy* upon this Resignation; but after many Troubles, was at last ousted of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France* in the Year 945.
- 926 15. *Lothaire*, Emperor, and sole King of *Italy*.
- 946 16. *Berengarius II.* Son of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the *Italians* as Protector to *Lotharius* the Son of *Hugh*; besieging *Adelhais* the next Heir of *Italy* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken Prisoner by the Emperor *Otbo*.
- 951 17. *Otbo* called into *Italy* by *Adelhais*, Daughter to *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italy*; marrieth the Lady, and in her Right is King of *Italy*.
- 974 18. *Otbo II.* Son of the former *Otbo*, marrieth *Theophania* Niece to *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Con-*

- stantinople, and hath *Calabria* for her Dower, 20.
- 984 18. *Otbo III.* Emperor and King of *Italy*, in whose Minority the Kingdom was usurped by
19. *Harduicus*, a Man of great Power in *Italy*, who kept it all the time of *Otbo*; till being broken with long Wars by *Henry* the succeeding Emperor, he was forced to quit it.
20. *Henry*, the second Emperor of that Name, having thrice vanquished *Harduicus*, got the Kingdom of *Italy*, and left the same unto the Emperors his Successors: the Title of *Italy* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire; and the Country governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by such Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time sent thither. But long it staid not in that State. For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Policy, to weaken the Imperial Power in *Italy*, without which their own Grandeur could not be maintained; stirred up continual Factions and Wars against them; and by that means, and by the Censures of the Church, which they denounced according as they saw occasion, did so astonish and distract them, that in the end the Emperors began to lay aside the Affairs of *Italy*, by which they reaped more Trouble than the Profit came to. Infomuch that *Rodolphus Habsburgensis*, a valiant and a politick Prince, finding the ill Success which *Henry* the Fourth and Fifth, and *Frederick* the First and Second, Emperors of more Puissance than himself, had found in their *Italian* Actions and Pretensions, resolved to rid his Hands of that troublesome and fruitless Province; and to that end made as much Money as he could of that Commodity, which he saw he was not like to keep. And yet he sold good Penny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their Liberties but six thousand Crowns; the Citizens of *Luca*, ten thousand; others, as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reason, why he went not into *Italy* to look to the Affairs thereof, as his Predecessors had done before him: he is said to have returned for answer that Conceit of the *Fox*, for his not going to attend (as other Beasts did) at the Lion's Den:

Quia me vestigia terrent,
Omnia te adversum spectantia, nulla retrorsum.

That is to say;

I dare not go, because no Track I see
Of any Beast returning towards me.

Which faulty and improvident Resolution being followed by too many of his Successors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themselves the great Disposers of the Affairs of *Italy*; but many petty Princes thereby took occasion of getting all they could lay hold on for themselves, and others. For by this means, the *Scaligers* made themselves Masters of *Verona*, the *Passariens* of *Mantua*, the *Carrarians* of *Padua*, the *Baillons* of *Bononia*, and by the same the *Florentines* got *Pistoia*, and *Ferrara* was possessed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry VII.* provoked by these Indignities, made a Journey thither, reduced many of the revolted Cities to their former Obedience, and was crowned King at *Millain* with the Iron-Crown; as were also *Ludovicus Bavarus*, and *Charles IV.* two of his Successors: yet found they in conclusion such small benefit by the Enterprize, as did not quit Charge and Trouble which it put them to. So in

in the end *Italy* was left wholly in a manner to the Pope's disposing, who gave away to others what they could not manage; or otherwise confirmed those Men in their Usurpations, whom they found already possessed of the Emperors Countries, and bound them by that means the faster to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their Estates in Fee: the Emperors having nothing left them but the empty Title, nor exercising the Imperial Power there any other way, than by changing Earldoms into Marquises, and Marquises to Dukedoms, which they often did for ready Money, or Reward of Service, or to preserve some Shadow of their ancient Interest.

And now we are to look on *Italy* as under a new Face of things, not only in regard of several Principalities and Forms of Government; but as replenished with new Colonies or Sets of People, differing from the old in Manners as well as Language. And though the Soil be now as it was before, yet hath that also found some change in the different Production of the natural Fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and Works of Art. For now, besides their Corn and Wine, which anciently were the Staple Commodities of this Country, they supply the rest of Christendom with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffatics, Sattins, Grograins, Rash, Fustians, Gold-wire, Allom, Armour, Glasses, and such like Commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy; who being for the most part Gentlemen of Noble Houses, not only lose not the Esteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Merchandise (as in other places;) but by reason that they are possessed of Estates in Land, which they manage by their Bailiffs and other Servants, they are become the wealthiest Merchants in all *Christendom*.

Nor do the Gentry come behind them in all manner of Affluence, which can be possibly enjoyed in so rich a Soil. Their Lands they set not at a Rent, but at thirds and halves, according as the Soil is more or less fruitful; seldom abiding in the Country, but only for a Month or two in the Summer times; but then they entertain themselves with their Musick and Mistresses under the fragrant Hedges and shady Bowers, in as much Solace and Delight as may be desired. The residue of the Year they spend in Cities, and places of the most resort, for change of Company. But, on the other side, the Country Farmer lives a drudging and laborious Life, liable to all the Taxes and Impositions which are laid on the Land; the Landlords part coming in clearly without any Disbursements or Defalcations; insomuch that it is Proverbially, but most truly said, That *the rich Men in Italy are the richest, and the poor Men the poorest in all the World*.

Our Learned Author has, without doubt, truly represented the State of *Italy*, as it appeared to him from Authors perhaps written threescore or an hundred Years ago; but all the later Travellers agree (as one of them expresseth it,) That when a Man sees what *Italy* was an Age or two ago, not to go back so far as to remember what *Rome* was once, he can hardly imagine how such a Fall, such a Dispeopling, and such a Poverty could befall a Nation and Climate, that Nature has made one of the richest in the World, or of *Europe* at least. Those *Italians* that have seen the Wealth and Abundance that is in *England* and *Holland*, though their Sun is less favourable, and their Climate is more unhappy, and then come home to see their Towns deserted, and their Inhabitants in Rags, speak of this sometimes with an Indignation that is too sensible to be at all times kept within Bounds. And a little after he tells us, That considering it has a kind Sun, long and happy Summers, and mild Winters, a fruitful and rich Soil, and every thing that the Inhabitants can wish for on Nature's part, to render them the Envy of the World, they are yet become the Scorn and Contempt of all that see them. And as much as the *Dutch* seem to have acted in spite of Nature on the

one hand, in rendering themselves much more considerable than she intended they should be: So the Governments of *Italy* seem to have reversed the Design of Nature as much on the other Hand, by reducing the Inhabitants to such a degree of Misery, in spite of all her Bounty. Thus not only one, but all our late Travellers, represent the present State of *Italy*, as the most poor, desolate, ruin'd Country in the whole Christian World.

But then the two Common-wealths of *Venice* and *Genova* have managed their Business something better. Their Territories are at least full of People, tho' they do not abound so much in Wealth, especially the former of these; for the latter is much the more wealthy as to its Inhabitants. The Reasons of these great Changes are supposed to be, first, the change of the Current of the Trade of the World from the Eastern to the Western Parts: The vast quantity of Silks Imported by the *East-India* and *Turkey* Trades into other Parts, and there Manufactur'd. So that *Italy* has now lost all that Trade, as far as concerns a Foreign Consumption. The Reformation has had its share too by abating the Resort and the Wealth of *Italy*. And after all, their Princes have abated nothing of their Taxes: So that the Inhabitants are not only impoverished, but utterly, in many places, extirpated, or driven into other Countries; and where there are any left, they seem to be as poor and miserable as can be imagined, and utterly unable to defend their Country against any Foreigner that shall ever hereafter invade them.

All the Wealth that is now to be found in *Italy* is lodged in their Convents, Churches, and Clergy, where it serves to no other End but to amuse the Minds of the People, to sink their Trade and dispeople their Country, by inviting too many to bury themselves alive in those plentiful, rich, easie Retirements: And those that are left in the World are so dispirited and worn out by their Miseries and Poverty, that they are not able to supply the Nation with a sufficient number of Inhabitants.

I suppose this to be enough to be said of the present State of *Italy* in the General; the rest being much better to be said in the several places to which each Particular belongs.

The People generally are grave, respective and ingenious. Excellent Men (said once an *Italianized Italian*) but for these three things; that is to say, in their Lusts they are unnatural, in their Malice unappeasable, in their Actions deceitful. To which might be added, that they will blaspheme rather than swear, and murder a Man sooner than slander him. But this perhaps may be the fault but of some particulars: It being observed by moderate and impartial Men, that they are obedient to their Superiors, to Inferiors courteous, to their Equals full of all Civilities, to Strangers affable, and most desirous by all fair and friendly Offices to win their Loves. In Apparel they are said to be very modest, in the Furniture of their Houses sumptuous, at their Tables neat, sober of Speech, Enemies of all ill Reports of others; and of their own Reputation so exceeding tender, that whosoever slandereth any one of them, if it come unto the Parties Ear he is sure to die for it. Of Money and Expence he is very thrifty, and loves to be at no more Cost than he is sure to save by, or receive great Thanks for: But otherwise for civil Carriage and Behaviour, surpassing all the Gentry of the World besides. Only in Strictness to their Wives they exceed all Reason; of whom they are so extremely jealous, that they shut them up all Day from the common view, and permit them liberty of Discourse with few or none. The Lock used by a Gentleman of *Venice* to be assured of his Wife's Chastity in the time of his absence, is so known a Story that it needs no Report. But touching the predominancy of this jealous Humour in most Southern Nations, we shall speak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet, if that be true, which

is proverbially spoken of the Women of *Italy*, the Husbands have more reason for this strict Restraint than other Nations are aware of. For though they be for the most part witty in Speech, and modest in the outward appearance, as much as any; yet it is said of them in the way of Proverb, *That they are as Magpies at the Door, Saints in the Church, Goats in the Garden, Devils in the House, Angels in the Streets, and Syrens in the Windows*, not wanting on this Ground to set out themselves with all advantages of Art, their being few amongst them who use not painting, and other the sophistical Helps to fallacious Beauty; and thereupon they have a Saying, *That if God make them Tall and Fat* (for the Title of a *Goodly Woman* is much prized amongst them) *they will make themselves Fair*.

The Language of both Sexes is very courtly and fluent, all of them speaking the *Courtezan*, or Court-Language; notwithstanding the diversity of Dialects which is amongst them. For tho' there be a remarkable difference betwixt the *Florentine* and *Venetian*, the *Millanese* and the *Roman*, the *Neapolitan* and the *Genoese*; yet it is hard to be discerned by the Tone or Pronunciation what Language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is best spoken in the Great Duke's Country, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Sienna*, but in *Florence* especially; in which City *Guicciardine* the Historian, *Boccace* the Author of the *Decameron*, and other great Masters of the *Italian* Language, did live and flourish in their times.

For other Men of Note both for Arts and Arms, *Italy* hath afforded many since the fall of the Empire, viz. *Aeneas Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the Name of *Pius* the Second; 2. *Marsilius Patavinus*, a stout Defender of the Imperial Rights; 3. *Petrarch*, a Roman born; 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Restorer of polite Literature in *Italy*; 5. *Rodolphus Volaterranus*; And 6. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians; 7. *Guido Bonatus*, a famous Astrologer; 8. *Ariosto*, and 9. *Tasso*, the most renowned Poets of their times, and the latter never fellowed since; 10. *Sixtus Senensis*, one of the best Antiquaries of the Nation, and a great Divine; 11. *Bellarmino*, and 12. *Baronius*, the Buttreffes and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Arms: 1. *Ludovicus Conius*, the first Restorer of the Honour of the *Italian* Solliery; 2. *Forti Bracchi*, and 3. *Nic lao Picinino*, two of his training up in the Feats of Chivalry; 4. 5. *Sforza*, the Father, and the Son; of which the Son attained by his Valour to the Dukedom of *Millain*; 6. *Christopher Columbus*, a *Genoese*; 7. *Americus Vesputius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebastian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the fortunate Discoverers of *America*; 9. *Andrea D' Oria*, Admiral of the Navies to *Charles* the Fifth, and 10. *Ambrose Spinola* (both *Genoese*) Commander of the Armies of *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*: Which last being once upbraided by *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, as issued from a Race of Merchants, (though otherwise of a very ancient and noble Family) returned this tart and sudden Answer, *That he thought it a greater Honour to him, being a Merchant, to have the command of so many Princes; than it could be unto the other, though a Prince by Birth, to be under the command of so many Merchants*.

The usual Division of *Italy* is into six Parts; 1. *Lombardy*, 2. *Tuscany*, 3. The Land of the Church, 4. *Naples*, 5. *Riviere de Genoa*, and 6. the Land of *Venice*: And of them there is passed this Censure according to the principal Cities; i. e. *Rome* for Religion, *Naples* for Nobility, *Millain* for Beauty, *Genoa* for Stateliness, *Florence* for Policy, and *Venice* for Riches. But take it as it stands at the present time; and *Italy* is best divided into

The Kingdoms of { *Naples*. 1. 96.
 { *Sicily*. 1. 67.
 { *Sardinia*. 73

The Land or Patrimony of the Church. 79
The Great Dukedom of *Tuscany*. 106.

The Common-wealths of { *Venice*. 97.
 { *Genoa*. 112.
 { *Lucia*. 112. { *Millain*. 118
 { { *Mantua*. 121.
The Estates of { The Dukedoms of { *Modena*. 124
 { *Lombardy*, i. e. { *Parma*. 122
 { { *Monteferrat*.
 { The Principality of *Piedmont*.

The Kingdom of N A P L E S.

THE Kingdom of *N A P L E S* is invironed on all sides with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tuscan* Seas, excepting where it joineth on the West to the Lands of the Church; from which separated by a Line drawn from the Mouth of the River *Tronto* (or *Druentus*) falling into the *Adriatick*, to the Spring-head of *Axofenus*. By which Account it taketh up all the East of *Italy*; the Compass of it being reckon'd at 1468 Miles.

It hath been called sometimes the Realm of *Pouille*, from *Pouille* or *Apulia*, a chief Province of it; the first Possession of the *Normans* (the Founders of this Kingdom) in these Parts of *Italy*; but called most commonly the Realm of *Sicil*, on this side of the *Phare*, to difference it from the Kingdom of the Isle of *Sicil*, lying on the other side of the *Phare*, or Strait of *Messana*. The Reason of which improper Appellation proceeded from *Roger* the first King hereof, who being also Earl of *Sicil*, and keeping there his fixed and ordinary Residence, when he got the Favour to be made King, desired (in Honour of the Place where he most resided) to be created by the Name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And that indeed is the true and ancient Name of the Kingdom; the Name and Title of King of *Naples* not coming into use till the *French* were dispossessed of *Sicil* by the *Aragonians*; and nothing left them but this part of the Kingdom; of which the City of *Naples* was the Regal Seat, called therefore in the following times, the Kingdom of *Naples*; and by some of the *Italian* Writers, the Kingdom only.

This is esteemed to be the most fertile place in all *Italy*, abounding in all things necessary for the Life of Man, and in such also as conduce to Delight and Physick; viz. Many Springs, and Medicinal Waters, Baths of divers Vertues, sundry Physical Herbs. It hath also an excellent breed of Horses, which may not be transported but by the leave of the King, or at least the *Viceroy*; great Store of Allom, Mines of divers Metals, and the choicest Wines, called anciently *Vina Massica*, and *Falerna*, frequently mention'd by the Poets. And as for Merchandise, to *Alexandria* they send Saffron, to *Genoa* Silks, to *Rome* Wines, and to *Venice* Oyl, &c.

The very Mountains of this Kingdom, which are near half of the Soil, are fruitful (as a late Traveller tells us) and produce either Wine or Oyl in great abundance; the latter of which is Exported now most commonly by the *English* for Soap and other Manufactures: So that many thousands of Tuns is every Year brought from thence. There Corn is Exported to *Spain* by the *English* and *Hollanders* to that degree, that many of the poorer Inhabitants are famished in plentiful Years for want of Food.

The Noblemen or Gentry hereof, live of all Men the most careless and contented Lives; and like the Tyrant *Polycrates* in the elder Stories, have nothing to trouble them, but that they are troubled with nothing. And there is a great number of them too, there being reckon'd in this Realm in the time of *Ortelius*, 13 Princes, 24 Dukes, 25 Marquesses, 90 Earls, and 800 Barons; and those not only Titular, as in other places, but Men of great Power and Revenue in their several Countries; in somuch that the yearly Income of the Prince of *Bisignan* is said to be 100000 Crowns, one Year with the other; the Princes of *Salerno* and *S. Severine* being near as great. They are all bound by their Tenure to serve the King in his Wars; which gives them many Privileges, and great command

command over the common Subject: whereby as they were made the abler to assist the King, upon any foreign Invasion; so are they in condition also of raising and countenancing such defections as have been made from King to King, and from one Family to another, as sorted best with their ambitious and particular interests. For not alone the Nobles, but in general as many of the common People as can be spared from Husbandry, are more addicted to the Wars, than they are to Merchandise: The Nobles in pursuit of honour, and the Peasant out of desire of being in action; so that the greatest part of the Forces which serve the Spaniard in the Low-Countries, are sent from hence. To which, the humour which they have from the highest to the lowest, of going bravely in Apparel, serves exceeding fitly. An humour which is so predominant in both Sexes, that though the Peasant lives all the rest of the week in as great fervility and drudgery, as his Lord doth in pride and jollity; yet on the Sundays and Saint-days, he will be sure to have a good Suit to his Back, though perhaps he hath no meat for his Belly. And for the Women, she that works hard both day and night for an hungry living, will be so pranked up on the Sundays and other Festivals, or when she is to shew her self in some publick place, that one who did not know the humour, might easily mistake her for some noble Lady.

One who lately travell'd this Kingdom assures us, that the present Sloath and Laziness of this People, renders them incapable of making those Advantages of so rich a Soil, that a more industrious sort of People would find out: For it amazeth a Stranger to see in their little Towns all the Men of the Town walking in the Market-places in their torn Cloaks, and doing nothing. So that as they have not hands enough for their Soil, so those they have are generally too little employed, that it is no wonder to see their Soil produce so little, that in the midst of all that abundance that Nature hath set before them, they are one of the poorest Nations in Europe.

The principal Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. Sybaris, 2. Bosentus, 3. Pescara, 4. Trontus, 5. Aufidus, 6. Salinellus, 7. Vomanus, 8. Salinus, and 9. Gariglian. The most famous of which are Aufidus and Gariglian. The first as being the only River of Italy, which rising on the South-side of the Apennine, forceth a breach through it to the upper Sea: but more for the great Battel fought on the Banks thereof, called the Battel of Cannæ, of which more hereafter. The other no less famous for those many Battels, which have been fought near it between the French and the Spaniard, for the Kingdom of Naples: especially that famous Battel between the Marquis of Saluzzes, General of the French, and Gonsalvo, Leader of the Spaniards; the loss of which Victory by the French, was the absolute confirmation of the Realm of Naples to the Spaniards. More famous is this River for the death of Peter de Medices, who being banished his Country at the coming of King Charles VIII. into Italy, and having divers times in vain attempted to be reimpatriate, followed the French Army hither, and after the loss of the day, took Ship with others, to fly to Cajeta; but over-charging the Vessel, she sunk and drowned them all. But most famous is it, in that Marius, that excellent, though unfortunate Captain, being by Sylla's Faction driven out of Rome, hid himself stark naked in the dirt and weeds of this River: where he had not lain long, but Sylla's Soldiers found him, and carried him to the City of the Minturnians, being not far off. These Men, to please Sylla, hired a Cimber to kill him, which the fellow attempting (such is the vertue of Majesty even in a miserable fortune) run out again crying, he could not kill C. Marius. This River was of old called Liris; and towards its influx into the Sea expatiated into Lakes and Fens, called the Lakes of Minturni, from a City of that name adjoining.

This Kingdom is divided into the Provinces of 1. Terra di Lavoro, 2. Abruzzo, 3. Puglai, or Apulia. 4. Terra di Otranto, 5. Calabria Superior, 6. Calabria Inferior, and

7. the Isles of Naples. Some of which have some smaller Territories adjoining to them, which we shall meet withal as they come in our way.

The Latter Geographers have divided this Kingdom into these Provinces, Terra di Lavoro, 2. Il Principato Citra, 3. Il Principato Ultra, 4. La Basilicata, 5. La Calabria Citra, 6. La Calabria Ultra, 7. La Terra di Otranto, 8. La Terra di Bari. 9. Il Abruzzo Citra, 10. L. Abruzzo Ultra, 11. L. Contado di Molise, and 12. La Capitanata.

TERRA di LAVORO is bounded on the North with Abruzzo, from which separated by the Apennine Hills, on the East with the River Silarus, which parteth it from the lower Calabria; on the South with the Tyrrhenian or Tuscan Sea, and on the West with Latium, or Campagna di Roma; from which divided by the River Gariglian; called anciently Campania Felix, in regard of the wonderful fertility of it, and that it was the Seat or Dwelling of the Campi; by some modern Latinists called Campania Antiqua, to difference it from Latium, which they now call Campana di Roma, or Campania Nova. And for the other name of Terra di Lavoro, or Terra Laboratoris, it was given to it, from the continual labour of the Husbandmen in cultivating the ground, and carrying in the fruits thereof: But neither the Reason, nor the Name so new, as some suppose. But, I am sure, as old as Pliny, who calleth these parts sometimes by the name of Laboria, sometimes of Campus Laborinus; and gives this reason of the name, quod ingens in eo colendo sit labor, because of the great pains it requires to till it, and the great profit reaped by them who did till and manure it.

Baudrand, who divided this Kingdom into more Provinces, bounds it on the North with Abruzzo, on the East by the County di Molise, and the Principato Ultra on the South by the Principato Citra, and on the West by the Sea and Campana di Roma.

The Country is so exceeding fruitful in Wines and Wheat, that by Florus the Historian it is called Cereis & Bacchi certamen, and deservedly too. For in this noble Region one may see large and beautiful Fields overshadowed with rich Vines, thick and delightful Woods, sweet Fountains, and most wholsom Springs of running Waters; useful as well for the restoring of Mans Health, as Delight and Pleasure. And in a word, whatsoever a covetous mind can possibly aim at, or a carnal covet.

Towns of note here were many in the elder times. The principal whereof, 1. Cajeta, seated on a fair and capacious Bay, from the crookedness whereof it is thought by Strabo, to have took the name; the word in the Latonian Language signifying crooked. Other will have it so called from Kaiw, Uro, with reference to the burning of the Fleet of Aeneas by the Trojan Ladies, for fear of being forced again to go to Sea, where they had been so extremely tossed in their former Voyages. But why that Fact committed on the furthest Coasts of Sicil, should be so solemnly commemorated here on the shores of Italy, I can see no reason: And therefore we may far more probably derive it from Cajeta, the Nurse of Aeneas, in memory of whom, being buried here, or hereabouts, Aeneas is affirmed to have built this Town. Of which thus the Poet, Aeneid. lib. 7.

*Tu quoque littoribus nostris Aeneia natrix,
Æternam moriens famam, Cajeta, dedisti.*

That is to say,

*Aeneas Nurse, Cajeta by her death,
Did to these shores an endless fame bequeath.*

But on what ground soever it first had this name, it is assuredly a place of great strength and consequence; and of so special importance for the Estate of this Kingdom, that (as Comines hath observed) if King Charles VIII. had but only forfeited it and the Castle of Naples, the Realm had never been lost. The Spaniards have taken

ken this care now, and not only fortified it; but maintain a good Garrison in it, ever since they were possess'd of it. 2. *Naples*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom, a beautiful City, containing seven Miles in compass. It was once called *Parthenope*, and falling to ruine, was new built, and called *Neapolis*. Among other things here is an Hospital, the Revenues whereof is 60000 Crowns yearly, wherewith, besides other good Deeds, they nourish in divers parts of the Kingdom, 2000 poor Infants. In this City, the Disease called *Morbus Gallicus*, or *Neapolitanus*, was first known in *Christendom*. This City is seated on the Sea-shore, and fortified with four strong Castles, *viz.* 1. *Castel Capodua*, where the Kings Palace was, 2. *Ermo*, 3. *Castel del Ovo*, or the Castle of the Egg, and 4. *Castel Nuovo*, or the new Castle. But nature hath not done much less to her Fortifications, than the hand of Art, the Town being for the most part environed by Sea, or Mountains not to be ascended without great difficulty and disadvantages. Which Mountains, as they serve on that side as a bank to the City, so do they furnish the Citizens with most generous Wines; and being once ascended, yield a gallant prospect both for Sea and Land. A City honoured by the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*, and the continual resort, if not constant residence of most of the great Men of the Realm, which makes the private buildings to be very graceful, and the publick stately. And yet it had increased much more in buildings, than it is at present, if the King had not forbidden it by special Edict. And this he did, partly, at the perswasion of his Noblemen, who feared that if such a restraint were not laid upon them, their Vassals would forsake the Country to inhabit here, so to enjoy the Privileges and the Exemptions of the Regal City; but principally upon jealousy and point of State, the better to prevent all Revolts and Mutinies, which in most populous Cities are of greatest danger. On Saturday the 5th of June, 1688. about the 22th hour there happened in *Naples* a dreadful Earthquake, and (though it lasted not long) the old Colledge of the Jesuits was ruin'd by it, and the great Chapel of their new College with three other Chapels Adjoyning, the Magnificent Arch erected before the Church of the *Theatins*, fell together with those great and ancient Columns which formerly made a part of the Temple of *Castor* and *Polux*, four only of which escaped, and those much shaken: The next day was another great shock, which threw down many of the Houses that were shaken the day before; So that a third part of the City was ruin'd by this Calamity. 3. *Capua*, once the Head of the *Campani*, seated in a delicious and luxurious Soyl, and one of the three Cities which the old *Romans* judged capable of the Seat of the Empire, the other two being *Carthage*, and *Corinth*. Being distressed by the *Sammites*, they were fain to cast themselves into the Arms of the *Romans*, who did not only take them into their protection, but suffered them to live according to their own Laws, as a free Common-wealth; rather like a Confederate than a Subject-State. Which freedom they enjoyed, till after the Revolt to the *Carthaginians*; when being reduced to their Obedience by force of Arms, they lost all their Liberties, and hardly escaped its fatal and final Ruine: Drawing the whole Nation of the *Campani* with divers lesser States, which depended on them, into Bondage with it; *A. U. C.* 542. *Appius* and *Flaccus* being Consuls. The pleasures of this place was it which enervated the victorious Army of *Annibal*, who wintered here after the great defeat given to *Terentius Varro* at the Battel of *Cannæ*; whence came the saying, *Capuam esse Cannas Annibali*. In after times it was Ruin'd first by *Genferick* King of the *Vandals*, and being Rebuilt by *Narsetes*, it was again Ruin'd by the *Lombards*; That City which now bears the name of *Capua*, was built about the year 856. and notwithstanding the strength of its Castle, the nearness of the River *Volturno*, and the fertility of the Soil, is sensibly decaying, as *Baudrand* assures us upon his own Knowledg. 4. *Cuma*,

a City once of great Power and Beauty, till *Campania* was subdued by the *Romans*; after which, it decayed in both. Near hereunto was the Cave or Grot of one of the *Sibyls*, called from hence *Cumæa*; and not far off the Lake called *Lacus Avernus*, the stink whereof is said to have poysoned Birds as they flew over it; supposed by ignorant Antiquity for the entrance of Hell. And finally, from this place it was, that *Aeneas* is fabled by the Poets to have gone down to the infernal Ghosts, to talk with his Father: now it is an heap of Ruins and desolate. 5. *Nola*, where *Marcellus* discomfited the Forces of *Annibal*, and thereby gave the *Romans* to understand, that he was not invincible, now in a tolerable State and a Bishops See. 6. *Puteoli*, a small Town standing on a Creek of the Sea, just opposite to *Baiæ*, on the other side of it; from which distant about three Miles and a half. Both Towns remarkable for the Bridge built betwixt them by *Caligula*, composed of sundry Vessels joyned together in such sort, that there was not only fair and large passage over it, but Victualling Houses on both sides of it: Over which Bridge thus made, he marched and remarched in Triumphal Robes, as if not only the Earth, but the very Seas were made subject to him. And this he did (as himself afterwards affirmed to some of his Friends) to awe the Ocean; and imitate (if not exceed) the like acts of *Xerxes* and *Darius*, mentioned in the ancient Writers, as also to terrifie the *Britains*, and the *German* Nations, with the report of such a notable exploit; or (as some thought) to fulfil the Prophecie of one *Thrasibulus* a Fortune-teller of those times, who had been often heard to say in the Life-time of *Tiberius* (his next immediate Predecessor) that it was as impossible for *Caius* to succeed in the Empire, as it was for him to ride on Horseback from *Baule* to *Puteoli*. 7. Not far hence, on a Semicircular Bay, stands the City of *Baiæ* (whereof *Baule* before mentioned is a part) so called as they, from *Baius*, one of the Companions of *Ulysses* in his Navigations. A City in the flourish of the *Roman* Empire of five Miles in length, and two in breadth; so wonderfully endued by Nature, and adorned by Art, that no place in the World was thought comparable to it:

Nullus in Orbe locus Baiis præluet amœnis.

Few places in the World there are
With pleasant *Baiæ* to compare. As it is in *Horace*.

A City beautified with magnificent Temples, multitude of Baths, or *Bannia's*, Imperial Palaces, stately Buildings, and the adjoyning Mannor-houses of the principal *Romans*, whom the pleasures of the place invited hither; and was indeed too great and sensible a Monument of the Lasciviousness and Luxury of that prosperous People, of which the *Ambubaia* mentioned in the *Satyrist* is sufficient proof: (though some fetch the *Etymologie* of the word far enough from *Rome*, deriving it from *Ambub*, a *Syrian* word signifying a Pipe, from whence the *Latines* give this name to their Minstrels) now so demolished by War, and devoured by Water, that there is nothing of it to be seen but some scattered Ruines. 8. *Misenum*, seated near a great Hill, or Promontory of the same name, at the foot whereof there is a large and capacious Harbour; where *Augustus* keeping one Navy, and another at *Ravenna* in the upper Sea, awed the whole *Roman* Empire. But these were places of renown in the former times; all which, excepting *Naples*, are now only known by what they have been, not by what they are. The principal Cities at this time, are (next to *Naples* it self) *Sessa*; the *Simuffa* or *Suiffa* of the ancients, and now the Title of a Dukedom to the house of *Cordova* in *Spain*, derived from *Gonsalvo* the great Captain, of whom more hereafter. 2. *Aversa*, a Town of great strength and consequence, second to few in all the Kingdom, but forced to yield (though the Earl of *Monpensier*,

Monpensier then Vice-roy of the Realm for *Charles VIII.* were in Person in it) to the good fortune of *Gonsalvo*, spoken of before ; the whole Kingdom following shortly after. 3. *Ceano*, 4. *Salvi*, 5. *Venafre*, and 6. *Caserte*, with others, to the number of 22, besides 166 Castles or defensible places. Here is also in this Tract the Hill called *Gallicanum*, where *Annibal* that great Master in the Art of War, frighted that wary Captain *Fabius Maximus*, by the stratagem of two thousand Oxen, carrying fire in their Horns ; by which device he freed himself out of those difficult Straits, in which he was at that present. And in this Country there is also the Hill *Vesuvius*, that casteth out flames of fire, the smoke of which stifled *Pliny Senior*, coveting to search the cause of it. The flame hereof brake forth cruelly also during the Reign of *Titus*, casting out not only such store of smoke, that the very Sun seemed to be in the Eclipse, but also huge Stones ; and of Ashes such plenty, that *Rome*, *Africk*, and *Syria*, were even covered ; and *Herculanum*, and *Pompeii*, two Cities in *Italy* were overwhelmed with them. There were heard dismal noises all about the Province ; and Giants of incredible bigness seen to stalk up and down, about the top and edges of the Mountain ; which extraordinary accident either was a cause, or presage of the future Pestilence which raged in *Rome* and *Italy* long after. This Mountain has at several times since the Birth of our Saviour raged horribly, and done great Damages : The Learned *Julius Cæsar Recupitus* has set down twelve of these Irruptions, the last of which was in the Year 1631. since which time the Mountain has been left desolate ; for before it was planted with Vineyards and pleasant Orchards. This Mountain is now call'd, *Il monte di somma*.

On the East side of this *Campania*, and properly (as anciently it was esteem'd) a part thereof, lieth that little Territory, which *Alfonso*, King of *Naples*, caused to be called the *Principate*, bounded upon the East with *Calabria inferior*, or that part thereof which is called the *Basilicate* ; from which parted by the River *Silarus*. It extends 33 Miles in length, and 10 in breadth : and was of old the Seat of the *Picentini* : a Colony of the *Piceni* dwelling on the *Adriatick*. Principal places of it, 1. *Massa*, by the *Italians* called *Marso*, of more note for the Hills adjoining, than any great beauty or antiquity it hath in it self. Those Hills now called *Monte Marso*, but known to the *Romans* by the name of *Montes Massici* ; of special estimation for the rich Wines called *Vina Massica*. 2. *Nuceria*, nine Miles from the Sea, in a very plentiful and delicious Soil : And a Bishop's See under the Archbishop of *Salerno*. 3. *Rivelli*, a City not long since built, which for the elegancy of the buildings hardly yields to *Naples*. 4. *Malfi*, or *Amalphi*, an Archbishop's See, in which it is supposed that the Mariner's Compass was first found out. It is situate on the Sea-side, and giveth name to the coast of *Amalfe*, fenced with Hills or Mountains of so great an height, that to look down into the Vallies or the Sea adjoining, makes Men sick and giddy. A Town of great note (were there nothing else to commend it to our observation) for the finding out of the *Mariner's Compass*, (as before is said) devised and contrived here about the Year 1300. by one *John Flavio*, a Native or Inhabitant of it. 5. *Salerno*, about a Mile from the Sea, the Title of the Prince of *Salerno*, and an University, but chiefly for the study of *Physick*, the Doctors of which wrote the Book called *Schola Salerni*, dedicated to a King of *England* : not to King *Henry VIII.* as it is conceived, for then the Commentary on it, written by *Arnoldus Villanovanus*, (who lived about the Year 1313.) must needs have been before the Text. And therefore I conceive it dedicated either to King *Richard I.* or King *Edward I.* who in their Journeys towards the *Holy-Land*, might bestow a visit on this place, and give some honorary encouragement to the Students of it. Besides these, there are said to be in this small Territory, fifteen other good Towns, and two hundred and thir-

teen Castles or walled places ; but these the principal.

II. North of *Campania* lieth the Province now called *ABRUZZO*, bounded on the East with *Puglia*, or *Apulia* ; on the West with *Marca Anconitana* ; on the North with the *Adriatick Sea* ; and on the South with the *Apennine*. It is called *Aprutium* by the *Latins*, but the reason of the name not agreed upon : divided anciently between the *Picentes* and the *Samnites* : the *Picentes* taking up those parts which lay next the *Adriatick* : the rest (being far the greater part) was possessed by the *Samnites*. These last (for of the others we shall speak elsewhere) a People which held longer Wars with the States of *Rome*, than almost all *Italy* besides ; as keeping them in continual action for the space of Seventy Years together, besides many after-claps. In which long course of Wars, the *Romans* were so hardly put to their shifts, that they were four times fain to have recourse to the last refuge ; which was the chusing of *Dictators* ; and yet came off so often with success and victory, that it afforded them the honour of thirty Triumphs. But these *Samnites*, as they were a potent, so they were also a compound Nation ; consisting of the *Ferentani*, *Caraceni*, *Peligni*, *Precatini*, *Vestini*, *Hirpini*, and *Samnites*, properly so called ; into which Name the rest of the inferior Tribes were after swallowed. The chief City of the whole was called *Samnium*, whence they had their Name ; which in the conclusion of the War was so defaced by *Papyrius* the *Roman* Consul, *ut hodie Samnium in ipso Samnio requiratur*, that not improperly (saith *Florus*) a Man might ask where *Samnium* stood, even in the middle of the City, which hapned A. U. C. 481.

The River of *Pescara* runneth through the midst of it, and divideth it into Parts, whereof the one containeth 5 Cities, and 150 Castles, or walled Places ; the other, 184 Castles, and 4 Cities. The principal Cities of the whole, 1. *Arpinum*, once the chief Town of the *Arpinates* and the Country of *M. Tullius Cicero*, that famous Orator, now a poor Village called *Arpino*. 2. *Beneventum*, heretofore called *Maleventum*, as we find in *Pliny*, because the Winds hereabouts are so fierce and violent, that Men could not sit upon their Horses ; but had at last that name of *Beneventum*, from the pleasant Plains and spacious Valleys which lie round about it ; in like manner as the Country of the old *Allobroges*, exchanged the name of *Malvoy* into that of *Salvoy*. It was one of the four Dukedoms which the *Lombards* erected, when they first came into *Italy*, for the better assuring of their Conquest ; and was given to the Church of *Rome* by the Emperor *Henry IV.* in exchange of a certain Tribute remitted by Pope *Leo IX.* to the Church of *Bamberg*, where the said Emperor was born, and is still under the Command of the Popes of *Rome*. The 5th. of June 1688. this City was intirely ruin'd by an Earthquake ; the Inhabitants, supposed to be about 6000, for the most part perishing. The Archbishop was also buried in the Ruines of his Palace, but taken out alive with one Wound on his Head ; so that this may be esteem'd the Catastrophe of this ancient City, which will hardly be rebuilt. 3. *Aquila*, built by the Emperor *Frederick* the Second, King of *Naples*, to assure the Realm upon that Quarter : Now the Capital of the further *Abruzzo*, and an independant Bishop's See, translated hither in the Year 1252. by Pope *Alexander IV.* It is seated on an Hill by the Banks of the River *Pescara* (*Aternus*) 60 Miles from *Rome* to the S. E. 4. *Lanciana Anxianum*, an Archbishop's See ever since the Year 1562. and the Capital of the *Hither Abruzzo* ; it stands upon the River *Helirino*, four Miles from the *Adriatick*, a Town of great Trade, and much resorted to by Merchants at her Annual Marts. 5. *Ortona*, the Port-Town unto *Lanciana*. 6. *Teranum*, or *Teran*, (*Ptolomy* calls it *Inter-amna*) anciently the Metropolis of the *Precatini*. 7. *Citra di Chiety*, situate on a Hill some seven Miles from the Sea, heretofore known by the name of *Theate*. 8. *Aquino*, the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas* the great Shoolman, who first brought the

scattered limbs of Popery into a body. Here stood also 9. The old Town *Corfinium*, the chief City of the *Peligni*, made good a while by *Domitius Aenobarbus* against *Julius Cæsar*, in his first following after *Pompey*, then retired from *Rome*. And seven Miles hence, 10. *Sulmo*, honoured with the Birth of *Ovid*, that renowned Poet, as himself testifieth.

*Sulmo mihi patria est, gelidis uberrimus undis,
Millia qui nonies distat ab Urbe decem.*

Full of cool Streams *Sulmo*, my native Land,
From the great City ninety Miles doth stand.

There belongeth also to *Abruzzo*, the Country of *Molise*, in which are 104 walled Places or Castles, and four considerable Towns; the principal of which is *Bovianum*, or *Boiano*, now a Bishop's See, in former times a Colony of the *Romans*, by *Pliny* called *Bovianum Undecumanorum*, to difference it from another in this Tract, of the same Name, which he calls *Bovianum vetus*. 2. *Lupatiba*, of which little memorable. In this Country also (I mean *Abruzzo*) are the Streights called *Furcæ Caudinæ*, in which when the *Samnites* and their Confederates had so inclosed the *Romans*, that there was no possibility to escape, they sent to *Herennius*, a Man for his Age much honoured, and for his Wisdom much followed by them, to know what they should do with the captive Enemies. Word was returned, that they should send them home safe, and without dishonour. Thinking the old Man had not been well informed of the state of the business, they sent to him again, and he advised, that they should put them all to the Sword. These contrary Answers made them judge amiss of the Old Man's Brain; and therefore following their own fancies, they spoiled the *Romans*, and disarmed them, and despightfully used them, and so sent them home. Which when *Herennius* came to know, he much lamented the imprudence of so rash an Action; but much more the destruction of his Country, as a consequent of it. Telling them, after their return, that had they given the *Romans* a safe and honourable deliverance from the present danger, they had made them their Friends for many Ages, or had they put unto the Sword so many of their Soldiers and chief Commanders, they had disabled them for long time from pursuing the War: The middle course which they had taken would be their undoing; and so accordingly it proved. For the *Romans* not being made their Friends by so odious a benefit, but hatching Revenge for the Disgrace, soon renewed the War; and under the conduct of *Papyrius* subdued the Country, and handled the poor conquered People with the like despight. An excellent Precedent unto Princes and those in Power, how to proceed towards Men of Quality and Rank, when they have them under; which must be, *either not to strike at all, or to strike home, and to the purpose*. *Nic. Machiavil*, in his *Florentine History*, taxeth *Rinaldo of Albizi* for committing a great *Solecism* in point of State, in that hating *Cosmo de Medices*, and desiring to remove him from his publick managery of Affairs, he thought it was sufficient to procure his Banishment: which *Cosmo*, afterwards returning, paid in better Coin. Whereupon he inferreth this notable Aphorism, that Great Persons must not at all be touched, or if they be, must be made sure from taking Revenge. Yet do I not interdict a Prince, or any Supreme Governours, the use of Mercy. I know it is the richest Jewel which adorns the Crown. Nor dare I take upon me to direct the use of that excellent Vertue: Only I shall observe what usage hath been commonly afforded towards such Persons after their *Delinquencies*, whose Liberty or Life may create danger to the Publick. The first is present Execution; for *Mortui non mordent*, as the saying is: a Course more to be allowed where it cannot, than commended where it may be spared. The second is either close Imprisonment under trusty Guards,

or else confinement to the House and Custody of some trusty Statesman: in which great caution also is to be observed. For, besides that nothing is more ordinary than the escape of great Prisoners, either by corrupting or deceiving their Keepers. We find in our Histories, how *Dr. Morton*, Bishop of *Ely*, being committed to the custody of the Duke of *Buckingham*, by King *Richard III.* not only procured his own liberty, but brought about that Duke to the contrary Faction. The last, which is in all times the gentlest, and in some cases the safest, is not only an absolute pardon of Life, and a grant of Liberty; but an endearing of the Party *delinquent*, by giving him some Place of Honour, or committing unto his fidelity some Office of Trust, it being the nature of most Men, that where they are not trusted, they are never true; and that as long as they lie under suspect and jealousy, they will be apt to entertain some thoughts of their lost condition. And of this kind of dealing with a Person *delinquent* we have a pregnant Instance in the Emperor *Otho*, who not only pardoned *Marius Celsus*, one of *Galba's* Faction, and a chief one too, but put him in place nearest to him, and made him one of his principal Leaders, in the following War against *Vitellius*. His reason was, *Ne hostis metum reconciliationis adhiberet*, lest lying aloof as a pardoned Enemy, he might conceive the breach were but bad made up. And on the other side, *Marius Celsus* proved so sensible of the Obligation, that he continued faithful to him to the very last; and lost his Life in the pursuance of his Quarrel: shewing thereby, that Persons of a generous and noble disposition, are more obliged by Favours, than restrained by Terror. But it is now time I should free my self of these *Furcæ Caudinæ*, and sport my self a while in the Plains of *Apulia*.

But I must note, before I take my leave hereof, that these two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abruzzo*, make up the greatest, richest, and best peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*. And therefore when the Kingdom was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority both of Claim and Power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to those two for Wealth and Greatness, and were assigned over to the *Spaniards*, as lying most conveniently for the Realm of *Sicily*.

III. *PUGLIA* is bounded on the West, with *Abruzzo*; on the East, with *Terra di Otranto*; on the North, with the *Adriatick Sea*; on the South, with *Calabria*. It contains the whole Country called of old *Apulia*; from whence the *Puglia* of the *Italians*, and the *Pouille* of the *French* are to be derived.

The whole Country containeth in it, besides Villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Castles and walled Places, with 13 Cities of good note. The most considerable of which we shall meet withal in our *Chorography* of the several parts, divided anciently by *Ptolomy*, and since him, by *Leander*, into *Apulia Daunia*, and *Apulia Pencetia*: the former subdivided into the *Capitanate*, and *Pouille the Plain*; the latter into *Bari*, and the Land of *Otranto*. For that the Land of *Otranto*, (though now a Province of it self) did sometimes pass in the account of *Apulia*, seems to me most probable, in that all the East parts of this Kingdom were held by the *Constantinopolitan Emperors* (after the coming in of the *Lombards*) by no other names than those of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: and by no other names than those were assigned over unto *Otho II.* of *Germany*, on his Marriage with *Theophania*, Niece to one of those Emperors. And I conceive that it was then laid unto *Apulia*, rather than to *Calabria*, first, in regard that the old Inhabitants were the same in both; the *Iapyges*, *Messapians*, and *Salentini*, possessing promiscuously all this Tract from Mount *Garganus* in *Daunia*, to the Promontory called *Iapygium* in the most Eastern Angle of the Land of *Otranto*. And secondly, in regard that the People of both have a Disease peculiar only to them-

themselves, occasioned by the biting of a little Serpent, called a *Tarantula*, not curable but by Musick only. This said, we will proceed in our Survey of the Parts. And first,

APULIA DAUNIA, is that part hereof which lieth next to *Abruzzo*, from which parted by the River *Phiternus* (now called *Fortore*) and so extending Eastwards to the River *Aufidus*, (*L' Offanto* the *Italians* call it) where it meets with *Peucetia*. The reason of the Name is not yet agreed on. But I find no more probable conjecture of it, than that it should be called thus of *Daunus*, the Son of *Danae* by *Pilumnus*, once the King of this Country; it being reported in the Legends of those elder times, that *Danae* being deliver'd of *Perseus* whom she had by *Jupiter*, was by her Father the King *Acrisius*, expos'd to the mercy of the Seas; by which she was wafted with her young Son to the Coasts of this Province, here taken up by a poor Fisher, and by him carried to the Court, where the King became so enamoured on her, that he took her to Wife, and by her was Father to this *Daunus*. But *Daunus* had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his Father, when either by Force or Composition, he was fain to leave it to *Diomedes* King of *Archia*: who at the end of the *Trojan* War, wherein he was principal Actor, hearing of the libidinous Courses of his Wife *Aegiale*, abhorred the thought of living with her; and so came with his People to this Country; where he fixt his Dwelling, and built the City of *Argyrippa*, whereof more anon. But as for *Daunus*, though he was not able to keep the possession of this Country, yet he bequeathed his Name unto it; and afterwards withdrawing into *Latium* with such of his Subjects as were willing to follow his Adventures, he became there the chief Head of the *Rutuli*, and built among them the Town of *Ardea*, his chief Seat at the coming of *Aeneas* into *Italy*; betwixt whom and *Turnus*, the Son of this *Daunus*, grew that deadly Feud, so celebrated in the Works of *Virgil*.

In this part hereof is the Lake of *Lefina*, so called from a City of that name adjoining to it, made of the Waters of *Phiternus*, and some other Rivers, which there lose themselves; in compass forty Miles, and well stor'd with Fish: the Eels hereof the largest that have been seen. Another Lake called *Arduarius*, more memorable, though not so great, it being said hereof by *Pliny*, that the Waters of it are neither diminished by draining, nor increased by Land-floods. Here is also the Mount *Garganus*, known by that name in *Virgil*, but now called *S. Angelo*, high, steep, and full of cragg'd Rocks: twenty Miles in compass, but that extent diversified into Hills and most pleasant Valleys, well wooded, and well stor'd with Waters: here being one Lake (besides many others) called *Lacus Varanus*, said to be thirty Miles in circuit. A place defensible by Nature, and so strong by Art, that it is commonly the last piece in the Realm of *Naples*, which is given up to the Invader: as appears plainly by the keeping of it by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens* for many Years, after the *Normans* had possessed themselves of the rest of the Kingdom.

The whole divided by *Alphonso* (in his new modelling of this Kingdom) into two parts, the greatest and most flourishing called *Pouille* the *Plain*, from the condition of the Soil which is plain and level, not so much swelled with Hills as the rest of *Apulia*: for which cause called *Puglia Piana* by the modern *Italians*. Interjected betwixt which and *Abruzzo*, lieth a small Territory, by the said King *Alphonso* called the *CAPITANATE*, destitute both of Woods and Rivers, and consequently not so populous as the rest of this Province: well furnished notwithstanding with all sorts of Grain, and stor'd with large and spacious Pastures, which breed such infinite Herds of Cattel, that the Tribute thence arising was valued at 80000 Crowns *per An.* in the time of *Guicciardine*, and by him reckon'd one of the best Revenues of the Realm of *Naples*. Of which Tribute when the *French* could receive no part, by reason that on the division which they made

with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* (spoken of before) this Territory as a part of *Apulia*, did belong to the *Spaniards*, they brake out into open War, pretending that the Country appertained to them, (as indeed it lay very near their part) and thereby gave a just occasion to the *Spaniards*, a more diligent Nation, and more intent upon their Work, to worm them by degrees out of all the Kingdoms.

Chief places of the whole *Daunia*: 1. *Luceria*, the *Nuceria* of *Ptolemy*, and the *Radua* of *Suetonius*; as rich as it is ancient, and honour'd with an Episcopal See. Of late Years it has been made a Dukedom, and conferr'd by the King of *Spain* upon the Family of *Barberino*. 2. *Alcoli*, of old called *Afculus*, and sometimes *Afculari Satrianum*, to difference it from another of that Name in *Anconitana*; the Stile and Honour of a Duke. 3. *Troia*, a Duke's Title also, built by the Eastern Emperors in a place of strength and great advantage, to restrain the Insolencies of the *Sarazens*, then infesting this Country. These three in that part of it which is called the *Capitanate*. Then in the other part called *Pouille* the *Plain*. 4. *Sipontum*, once a *Roman* Colony, and an Archbishop's See, which Honour it enjoyed till destroyed by the *Sarazens*. 5. *Maufredonia*, founded near the place of the former, by *Maufred* the *Bastard* King of *Naples*, the better to assure these Parts of his Kingdom, about the Year 1256. A stately and magnificent City, the Seat of the Archbishop of *Siponto*; beautified with a capacious Harbour for receipt of Ships, and an impregnable Castle for defence thereof. Being some Years since taken and plundered by the *Turks*, the Memory of that Calamity has made it little, poor, and ill inhabited. 6. *Salpe*, of great Antiquity, but not else observable. 7. *Severine*, of a newer Date, but more rich and populous. 8. As ancient and as famous as the best among them; the poor Village of *Cannæ*, situate near the Mouth or Influx of the River *Aufidus*; *ignobilis Apulie vicus*, as it is in *Florus*, but such as afterwards grew more notable for the great Defeat which *Annibal* there gave to *Paulus Emilius* and *Terentius Varro* the *Roman* Consuls, of whose Army he slew 42700 on the very place. Which Victory had he husbanded as he might have done, he had utterly subverted the State of *Rome*: so that it was most tartly (as most truly) said by *Mahomet* General of his Horse, *Vincere scis Annibal Victoria uti velis*; that he knew better how to get, than to use his Victory. 9. But of most note in this part of *Apulia* was the Town *Argyrippa* or *Argyrippa*, as some call it, founded by *Diomedes* in the Skirts of Mount *S. Angelo* towards the sea, and in that part of this Country, which then (or afterwards) was held by the *Lipyges*, of which thus *Virgil* in the sixth of the *Aeneids*.

*Ille Urbem Argyripam Patriæ de nomine Gentis
Victor Gargani condebat Iapygis arvis.*

And being Victor, he a City builds
Near *Garganus* in the *Iapygian* Fields,
And called it *Argyrippa*, by the name
Of some known place i'th' Land from which he came.

By which we may also conclude, that it took this Name with reference to some Town of *Atolia*, which was the native Country of *Diomedes*. For although I know that many of the ancient Writers suppose it to have been first called *Argos Iippium*, with relation to a famous City of that Name in *Peloponnesus*; and after by contraction or corruption to be named *Argyrippam*; yet those Words of *Patriæ de nomine Gentis*, do perswade me otherwise; *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Country of *Argolis*, where that City stood; nor in the whole *Demi-Island* of *Peloponnesus*, whereof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called also *Diomedea*, and *Urbs Diomedis*, because of this Foundation, and his Royal Seat, after his fixing in his Country; but at the last it came to be called *Argyp*, and by that Name was known in the time

time of the *Roman* Greatness; now no where to be found but in the Ruins of Time, and the Records of Antiquity, unless it be in a poor Village called *Sarpy*, where *Nigar* findeth it.

APULIA PEUCETIA, extendeth from the Banks of the River *Aufidus* on the West, to the Land of *Otranto* on the East: So called, as some conceive, from *Peucetius*, the Brother of *Oenotrus*, which may be probable enough, this being the first Country at which *Oenotrus* touched, when he came unto *Italy* with his People. *Bochartus*, a great Enemy of all Traditions will have it called *Peucetia*, ἀπὸ τῶν πευκῶν, for that great quantity of Pitch which these Countries yield, as the Word signifieth in the *Greeks*. But whatsoever was the reason of the ancient Name, that of the present is well known and agreed upon from *Bari* the chief City hereof, being now called *Barri*.

Places of most importance in it; 1. *Barri*, seated near the Sea, but without a Haven, yet in so rich a Soil, and so well inhabited, that it is a fair and wealthy City, and the chief of this part of *Apulia*, taking name from hence. *Baudrand* gives it an indifferent good Haven upon the *Adriatick* Sea; however it is certainly an Archbishop's See, and now gives Name to the Province now commonly called *Terra di Bari*. This is now also well fortified against the *Turks* and Pirates. 2. *Barlatte*, by the Modern *Latinists* called *Barulum*, situate in or near the place of the old *Canusium*; an Haven Town, and of so great importance reckoned for one of the four strong Holds of *Italy*, in the middle Ages; the other three being *Crema* in *Lombardie*, *Prato* in *Tuscani*, and *Fabrianum* now called *Fabiano* in *Anconitana*. It lies upon the *Adriatick* Sea, 24 Miles to the West of *Bari*, and is a large and a beautiful City. 3. *Monopolis*, a Port-Town also, not very large, but of a neat elegant Building; new built, and the Title of a Marquis, and a Bishop's See. 4. *Tranum*, an ancient City, and an Archbishop's See, but at this time better built than peopled, by reason of some Defects in the Harbour upon which it standeth. These three last, together with *Mausfredonia* in the other *Apulia*, pawned by the Kings of *Naples* (when first invaded by the *French*) to the State of *Venice*; but recovered from them not long after by *Ferdinand* the Catholick, when possessed of that Kingdom. 5. *Bitonto*, an Archbishop's See also; one of which was a notable Stickler in the Council of *Trent*. 6. *Polignano*, on a rocky Hill, the Honourary Title of a Marquis, and a See Episcopal. 7. *Molfette*, which gives Title to a Prince, but not else considerable. 8. *Vigilla*, now called *Bisogli*, a Bishop's See, situate near the *Adriatick* amongst craggy Rocks. 9. *Venosa*, a strong Place, and of great Importance; one of the last Towns which held good for the *French*, in the recovery of this Kingdom from *Charles VIII*. The *Venusium* of the ancient *Romans*, and the Birth-place of *Horace*, hence called *Venusinus*. Nothing considerable of these People in point of Story, but that confederating with *Tarentum* against the *Romans*, as the *Calabrians*, *Bruttii*, and *Lucani* did; they were all forced to submit to the Power of *Rome* at the end of the War, *A. U. C.* 481. *Papyris Censor* and *Sp. Carvilius* being the second time Consuls.

IV. *TERRA di OTRANTO*, as it is now called, was once the Eastern part of *Apulia Daunia*, unto which it joyneth, from which parted only by a Line drawn from *Brundisium* to *Tarentum*; of which more anon. Thus called from *Otranto*, the chief Town hereof, the Seat and Habitation in the elder times of the *Salentini*, the *Iapyges*, and the *Messapii*, and is accordingly intituled in ancient Authors by the several Names of *Iapygia*, *Messapia*, and *Salentina*. They were the last People of *Italy* which held out against *Rome*, and sunk immediately after the *Tarentini*, upon whose Fate they did depend, *An. U. C.* 487. *Junius Pera* and *Fabius Pictor*, the two Consuls then, triumphing for it. Of these three Nations the *Iapyges* were of greatest Fame, or of greatest Infamy. *Cretans*, originally sent in quest of *Glaucus* the Son of *Minos*,

whom when they could not find, and durst not return without him, they fixed here their dwelling, *Iapyx* the Son of *Dædalus* being their Captain and Conductor, and from him denominated. Growing into Estate and Power, they became not only so luxurious in their course of Life, and effeminate in their Dress and Habit, that they were a Scorn and Scandal to the Neighbour-nations; but so regardless of their Gods, that in the end they threw down all their Images, and destroyed their Temples; punished at last for these high Insolencies by Balls of Fire falling on them from the Heavens, with which the whole Stock of them were almost extirpated. The Promontory called *Iapygium*, being the extream point of this Country towards *Greece*, now better known by the Name of the Cape of *St. Mary*, did take Name from this People; and from thence the North-west Wind (or the West-north-west) which the *Latines* generally call *Caurus*, frequently blowing from this Coast, had the Name of *Iapyx*, occurring by that Name in the 8. of *Aeneids*, and in *Horace*, *Carm. l. 1. Ode 4.*

But to proceed: this Country is invironed on all parts, with the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas, saving where it joineth to *Apulia* by an *Isthmus* of about 30 Miles in breadth; reaching from *Brundisium* in the *Adriatick* or upper Sea, to *Tarentum* on the Gulf or Bay thence named in the *Ionian* Sea; and is from Land to Land, as you go by Water, about 200 Miles in Compass. The Soil hereof is very fruitful if well manured, abounding in Corn, Oil, Melons, Citrons, Saffron, and other Commodities of good Price; for which they never want the Company of the Merchants of *Genoa*. They are many times much endanger'd by *Grashoppers*, which commonly devour all wheresoever they come, and would in one Night consume whole Fields of standing Corn, if Divine Providence by sending the Birds called *Gaines* amongst them, did not provide a Remedy for so great a Mischiefe. The greatest defect hereof is the want of Waters, and therefore probably enough may be the *Siticulosa Apulia*; spoken of by *Horace*; which notwithstanding, they have very rich Pastures. The People are conceived to be the simplest, or most void of Craft, of any in *Italy*; perhaps because they have so little Commerce with their own Countrymen, and so much with Strangers.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Lecci*, *Aletium* in Latin, a rich Town, well built, and very well peopled. 2. *Castro*, a Sea-Town, but not well fenced by Art or Nature, which hath made it very often a Prey to the *Turks*. 3. *Gallipolis*, a Town built on so craggy a Rock, that it is conceived to be unconquerable. 4. *Brundisium*, the Head Town of the *Salentini*, once glorying in the most capacious Haven of all the World; from whence there was continual Passage into *Dalmatia*, *Epirus*, *Macedon*, and the rest of *Greece*. Here was it that *Pompey* took ship to fly from *Cæsar*, and *Cæsar* took Shipping also to pursue after him: when to encourage the Pilot, who was afraid of the Storm, he cryed out, *Cæsarem vebis & fortunam ejus*. It was first built by the *Atolians*, under the Conduct of one *Diomedes*, and called *Bronteson*, which in the *Messapian* Tongue signifieth the Horn or Head of a Stag, which it much resembleth: from whence the *Latines* give it the Name of *Brundisium*. At this Day it is but a mean Town, the Haven of it being so choaked, that a Gally can very hardly enter. 5. *Hydruntum*, a very ancient Town, and an Archbishop's See, and yet still reasonably well peopled, having a strong Castle upon a Rock for its Defence, and a capacious Port for Traffick; the principal at the present of all the Province, which is therefore called *Terra Hydruntina*, by our modern *Latinists*. It is now called *Otranto*, and is a place of such importance, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* the Great, *Anno* 1481. put all *Italy* into such a fear, that *Rome* was quite abandon'd: Not well inhabited again, till the Expulsion of the *Turks* in the Year next following.

Pass we on next to the two *Calabria's*, so called from the *Calabri*, an ancient People of this Tract, inhabiting that

that Part hereof which formerly had been called *Magna Græcia*, now *Calabria Superior*, with a part of the Country of the *Salentini*, lying on the Northern side of the Gulf of *Tarento*, now called by the Name of *Otranto*. But the Greek Emperors being possessed of these parts of *Italy*, when the more Western parts thereof were under the *Goths* and *Lombards*, extended the Name of *Calabria*, as far as to the Strait of *Messana*, taking the Country of the *Brutii*, now *Calabria Inferior*, into the Account: and making but two Provinces of their whole Estate, which was left in this Continent by the Names of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: of which *Apulia* contained all the Country on the Coast of the *Adriatick*, from *Abruzzo* to the extreme Point or Promontory in the Land of *Otranto*, called anciently *Iapygium*, now the Cape of *St. Mary*; *Calabria*, all the rest of these Parts of *Italy*, which lie between the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Bay of *Tarentum*. So that the ancient *Calabria* was but part of this; and of that *Ennius* the old Poet was a Native, as is affirmed by *Ovid* in his 3. *de Arte*.

Ennius emeruit Calabris in montibus hortos.

Old *Ennius* his Garden tills
Among the steep *Calabrian* Hills.

Now called the *Basilicate*, and reckon'd as a Member of the lower *Calabria*.

But leaving these Matters of remote Antiquity, let us behold the Country as it standeth at the present; divided of late times into *Inferior* and *Superior*, in which distinct Capacities we shall look upon it. Premising only by the way, that this Country is the Title of the eldest Son of the Kings of *Naples*; who were from hence called the Dukes of *Calabria*; and that before it was subjected to these Kings, it had a King of its own; *Holofernes*, whose Daughter *Flora* was married unto *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, being King hereof, *An. 1098*.

V. *CALABRIA SUPERIOR*, called formerly *Magna Græcia*, from many great and famous Cities founded there by the *Grecians*, hath on the East the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea; on the West *Lucania*, now called the *Basilicate*; from which it is divided by the *Apennine*, and the River *Crathis*; on the North *Sinus Tarentinus*, or the Gulf of *Tarento*; and on the South and South-East, *Calabria Inferior*, and *Golfo di Squillacy*, of old called *Sinus Scilleticus*. The principal Cities at this time are, 1. *Belcastro*, eight Miles from the Sea, where once stood *Petilia*. 2. *Besignan*, the Title of a Prince, fortified with a very strong Castle, and endowed with the best Revenues of any Principality or other Nobleman of Title in all the Kingdom. 3. *Macera*, an Archbishop's See, a rich Town and well peopled. 4. *Rossano Rosanum*, three Miles from the Sea, a well fortified City, and situate in a very fruitful and pleasant Soil. 5. *Altavilla*, which gives Title also to a Prince. 6. *Terra Nova*, given with the Title of Duke to *Gonsalvo Fernandes de Cordova*, commonly called the great Captain, as a Reward of his signal Service in the Conquest of the Realm of *Naples*: and still enjoyed (together with the Title of Duke of *Sessa*) by the House of *Cordova*.

As for the chief Cities of the *Greeks* in the former times, they were *Locris*, founded by the *Locrians*, a People of *Achaia*. Here lived the Law-maker *Salencus*, who ordering Adultery to be punished with the loss of both Eyes, was compelled to execute the Law on his own Son, as the first Offender. Therefore to shew the Love of a Father, and the Sincerity of a Judge, he put out one of his Son's Eyes, and one of his own. He also provided in his Laws, That no Woman should be attended in the Street with more than one Maid, but when she was drunk; That she should not go abroad at Night, but when she went to play the Harlot; That she should not wear Gold or Imbroidered Apparel, but when she meant to set her self to open Sale; and that Men

should not wear Rings and Tissues, but when they went about the prostituting of some Woman; and many others of this Mould. By means whereof both Men and Women were restrained from all extraordinary Trains of Attendants, and Excess of Apparel; the common Consequents of a long and prosperous Tranquility. It was also famous in old times for the Victory which *Eumomus*, an excellent Musician, obtained against *Aristonius* of *Rhegium*, another of the same Profession. For though *Aristonius* had made his Prayers to *Apollo*, the God of Musick, for his good Success; yet *Eumomus* plainly told him, that Nature was against them in this Contention, which had made all the Grasshoppers mute on that side the Water. And so accordingly it hapned. For when the Day appointed came, *Eumomus* had the ill hap to break one of his Harp-strings, even in the middle of his Musick; when presently a Grasshopper leaped upon his Harp, and supplied most melodiously the place of the broken String; and by that means obtained the Victory to *Eumomus*. An Accident not unworthy of the Muse of *Strada*, in his personating of the Poet *Claudian*. And though I bind not any Man to believe this Tale (though of *Strabo's* telling) yet there are very good Authors for thus much thereof, that on the one side of the River *Alax*, which parteth *Locris* from *Rhegium*, the Grasshoppers do merrily sing; but on the other side, which is that towards *Rhegium*, they are always silent. 2. *Tarentum*, a Town of no less note, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Tarentinus*; first built by the *Spartans*; the People whereof having a great command on the Country adjoining, were one of the last *Italian* Nations taken in by the *Romans*. *Nam quis post Tarentinos auderet*: For who durst stir when once the *Tarentines* were vanquished? saith the Historian. For in the Ruine of this Estate, the *Apulians*, *Lucani*, *Brutii*, and the neighbouring *Calabrians* being all confederate together in defence thereof, were brought under the command and power of *Rome*, *A. U. C. 578*. all which (from the beginning of the *Tarentine* War some nine years before) were either a free People, or in a kind of Subjection to this mighty City; but never felt the Force of the *Roman* Puissance. So that the War began but *A. U. C. 472*. and ended in the total subjection of these several Nations; *An. 482*. *Papyr. Censor*, and *Sp. Carvilius* being then the second time Consuls, as before was said. In the defence of this People did *Pyrrhus* war against the *Romans*; the hope of getting this place by *Annibal*, was the loss of *Capua*: finally here lived *Archytas*, so famous for his flying Dove. 3. *Crotone*, the Inhabitants whereof were once so active, that at one *Olympick* Meeting, the Victors were all of this one Town. Their Glory much decayed in a Battel against the *Locrians*, in which one hundred and twenty thousand of them and their Confederates were vanquished by fifteen thousand of the Enemy. 4. *Amyche*, a Town inhabited formerly by *Pythagoras*, who having been often terrified with a false Report of the approach of their Enemies, published a Law, prohibiting all such Reports. By which means their Enemies coming unawares, possessed themselves of it. Hence grew the Proverb, *Amyclas silentium perdidit*; and hence that notable Saying of *Lucilius*, who being commanded to be silent, returned this Answer, *Mibi necesse est loqui, scio enim Amyclas silentio periisse*: 5. *Sybaris*, a City built by the *Grecians* after the Destruction of *Troy*; the People whereof were Lords of 25 good Towns, and could arm 30000 Men. A people so effeminate, that they permitted no Smith nor Brazier, no not so much as a Cock to live among them, because they would not have their Sleeps disturbed: But the Fiddlers and Musicians were in high request; which advantage the *Crotonians* taking, (with whom then in Hostility) they entred the Town in the Habit of Musicians, and so mastered it. Before which Accident there had been a Prophecy, that the Town should never be taken, till Men were more esteemed than the Gods themselves. It hapned that a Slave being grievously beaten by his Master, and obtaining no pardon for the

the Gods sake, upon whom he called, fled to the Monument of some of his Masters Ancestors, and was pardoned by him; which coming to the ears of *Amyris* the Philosopher, he forsook the Town, most Men holding him mad in a time of no danger to leave so delicate a Seat: whence came the Proverb, *Amyris insanit*, applied to such as under the pretence of madness or folly do provide for their safety.

VI. *CALABRIA INFERIOR* is bounded on the North with *Calabria superior*, from which parted by the River *Crathis*, and a branch of the *Apennine*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Strait of *Messana*; on the West with that part of *Campania* which is called the *Principate*: and on the East with a part of the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea. It was anciently the habitation of the *Bruti*, whom the Greek Writers generally call *Bretti*; and their Country *Bretania*; upon which ground, some of our modern Criticks (envying so great an honour to the Isle of *Great Britain*) have transferred to this Province the Birth of *Constantine*, the first *Christian* Emperor. These *Brutti* being first conquered by the *Romans*, with the rest of *Italy*, after the defeat of *Cannæ*, took part with *Carthage*, and was for a long time the retreat of *Annibal*, whom the *Romans* had shut up in this corner. A Country not much short in fruitfulness of the rest of the Kingdom; and having the advantage of so much Sea, is the better situate for Traffick. At one extremity hereof, is the Promontory called by *Ptolemy*, *Leuco-Petra*, now *Labo di Spartimento*; all along which, especially in the month of *May*, are taken great store of *Tunnies* (a Fish which much resembleth Mans flesh) which being barrellled up are sold to Mariners. Here are two Rivers also of a very strange nature; of which the one called *Crathis*, makes a Mans Hair yellow, and dieth Silk white; the other named *Busentus*, causeth both Hair and Silk to be black and swarthy.

The Principal Cities of it are, 1. *Consentia*, an ancient Town comprehending seven little Hills, and a Castle on the top of one of them, which commandeth both the Town and Country adjoining. It is built betwixt the said two Rivers, and is still reasonable rich, though not so wealthy now as in former times. 2. *Rhegium* or *Rhegio*, on the Sea-shore, opposite to *Messana* in the Isle of *Sicily*, which is supposed to have broken off from the rest of *Italy*, and that this Town had the name of *Rhegium* from the Greek word *ρήγνυμι*, which signifieth to break off, or to tear asunder. A Town in former times very well Traded, but left desolate in a manner since the year 1594. when it was fired by the *Turks*. 3. *Castrovillare*, seated upon the top of a very high Mountain. 4. *Belmont*, and 5. *Altamont*, two very fair Towns, whose names sufficiently express their pleasant and lofty Situations. 6. *St Euphémie*, from whence the Bay which anciently was called *Sinus Lametinus*, or *Lameticus*, is now called *Golfo de St. Euphémie*. 7. *Nicastro*, three Miles from the Sea, the same with *New-castle* in *English*.

On the West side of this *Calabria*, and properly a part thereof, but reaching to the North as far as *Apulia*, standeth that Mountainous Country, which in the subdivision of these Provinces by King *Alfonso*, was called the *BASILICATE*; anciently the Seat of the *Lucani*, and therefore called *Lucania* by the elder *Latinists*. Divided from the *Principate*, or West parts of *Campania*, by the River *Silarus*. A Country heretofore very unsafe for Travellers, by reason of the difficult ways, and assured company of Thieves, but now reduced to better order. It containeth in it 93 walled places, and nine Towns or Cities, the chief whereof are, 1. *Possidonia*, or *Pest*, a City situate in so clement and benign a Soyl, that Roses grow there thrice a year. 2. *Polycastro*, on the Sea-shore, as the former is, honoured with the title of a Dukedom. And *Dion* or *Diamum*, a more midland City, near which there is a Valley twenty Miles in length, and four Miles in breadth; which for all manner of delights, and fruitfulness, yields to none in *Naples*.

VII. The *ISLES* of *NAPLES* are either in the

Adriatick, and *Tuscan* Seas, or in the Bay of *Puteoli*. In the *Adriatick* Sea, are the Islands of *Diomedes*, right against *Apulia*, where it encountreth with *Abruzzo*: so called from *Diomedes* King of *Atolia*, who after the end of the *Trojan* War, (in which he was so great a stickler) settled himself in some part of *Apulia*; the principal whereof are, *St. Maries*, *St. Dominico*, and *Tremitana*. 2. The Island of *Acates*, over against the Town of *Gallipolis*. 3. *St. Andrews* in the Bay of *Tarentum*. 4. And finally, the two Islands of *Dioscoros* and *Calypso*, over against the Cape of *Licina*, now called *Colonne*, in the upper *Calabria*. Of all which there is little famous. In the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas, are the Islands of *Pontia* and *Pandataria* (now called *Palmarde*) as little famous as the other; save that the last is memorable in the *Roman* Stories, for the confinement of *Agrippina* the Wife of *Germanicus*, and Mother of *Caligula*, by the appointment of the Emperour *Tiberius Nero*.

Those in the Gulf or Bay of *Puteoli* are of better note. The principal whereof are, 1. *Ischia*, heretofore called *Oenotris*, from its plenty of Wine, wherewith it aboundeth to this day; as also with Allom, Sulphur and most excellent Fruits. It is in compass 18 Miles, and so begirt with Rocks and dangerous Cliffs, that it is accessible at one entrance only, and that too fortified with a strong and impregnable Cittadel: And therefore chosen by King *Ferdinand* for his place of Refuge, when he was outed of his Kingdom by *Charles VIII*. Here is also good plenty of Hares and Conies. 2. *Prochita*, now called *Procita*, about six Miles in circuit, wherein are very wholsom Baths, good store of Conies, Hares and Pheasants; the Shore replenished with Fish, and the Land with Fountains. *John de Prochitis*, who plotted the *Sicilian Vespers*, was once Lord of this place; but afterwards for a reward of that service, made *Vice-Roy* of *Valentia*, a Kingdom of *Spain*. 3. *Capree*, a small rocky Island, having no Haven, nor convenient station for Ships, but of a mild and temperate Air, much beautified by *Augustus Caesar*, in regard that an old sapless Tree upon his casual landing here, did bud forth afresh. After that, it was much honoured by his retirement from Affairs of State; and as much dishonoured by *Tiberius* his next Successor, who withdrawing hither many times from his Court at *Rome*, made it the Theater of his Cruelties, and most filthy Lusts. It hath a little City of the same name, having a Fortrefs, and a Bishops See; and another Town called *Anacapra*, inhabited by Fishermen, and Shipwrights belonging to the Navy of *Naples*. Into this Island they used to confine Offenders in former times, and sometimes also at this day. 4. *Anaria*, a small Island given by *Augustus* to the *Neapolitans* in exchange for *Capree*, whose before it was.

There are few Nations under the Sun, who have suffered under more changes and alterations of State, than the Inhabitants of this Kingdom. For being at the first a mixture of several Nations, some of them preyed upon the others, till they were all subdued (as hath been shewed before) by the Power of *Rome*. In the declining of her Fortunes, they followed for the most part the *Carthaginians*, and took part with *Annibal*; and he being called home, they returned again to their old obedience. When *Italy* was subdued by the *Goths*, it became subject to that People, as *Sicil*, and the rest of those Islands did; and when the *Lombards* Lorded it in the *Roman* Provinces, all *Naples* fell into their hands, except *Apulia* and *Calabria*; which the Greek Emperour having conquered from the *Goths* with the rest of *Italy*, kept (but with much difficulty) to themselves. In the division of the Empire betwixt *Carolus Magnus* and *Irene*, these two last Provinces only were assigned to the *Constantinopolitans*; the rest to *Charles*, and his Successors: both outed of their several parts by the prevailing *Sarazens*, under the Conduct of *Sabba*, and other successive Generals. These partly dispossessed by the Emperour *Otho I.* and his *Almain* Forces; challenging a right herein,

herein, as King of *Italy*, that right confirmed and enlarged by the Marriage of *Otho II.* with *Theophania*, Niece to *Nicephorus Phocas* the Eastern Emperour, who brought *Apulia* and *Calabria* for her Dower and Portion. But long the *Germans* had not held it, when they were again expelled by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens*, joyning together against them as a common Enemy; who afterwards held bitter Wars against one another, for the sole command. During these Wars, it hapned that one *Dran-got*, a Gentleman of *Normandy*, having in the presence of Duke *Robert* (the Father of *William* the Conquerour) slain one *Repostel*, a Gentleman of like quality; to avoid the Justice of the Prince, and the practices of *Repostels* Kindred, fled into this Country; attended by such of his Followers, as either did depend upon his Fortunes, or had been medlers in the Fray. Where being come, the Duke *Benevent*, Vicegerent to the Eastern Emperor, took them into pay. Their entertainment being bruited in *Normandy*, and a report raised withal, That the *Greeks* hearkned after Men of Valour and Action; caused many private Gentlemen to pass over the *Alpes*, and there to hew themselves out a more prosperous fortune than formerly they had enjoyed. The fortunate success of which last Adventures, drew thither also *Tancred*, the Lord of *Hauteville*; who with his twelve Sons came into *Apulia*, An. 1008. and in short time not only drove the *Sarazens* thence, but the *Grecians* also, as Men that had broke Covenant with them in the division of the Booty. For *William* the Son of *Tancred*, combining with *Melorco*, Governour of *Apulia* for the Greek Emperour, and with the Princes of *Capua* and *Salern*, Men of power and honour, for the Conquest of *Sicil* (which the *Sarazens* then wholly held) agreed amongst themselves to divide the places conquered by them into four equal parts; one for each Adventurer. But when the *Sarazens* were driven out, *Melorco* having new Supplies sent him out of *Greece*, seized on the possession of the whole Island in the Emperour's name. Which injury *William* commonly dissembled, till *Melorco's* Forces were dispersed, and then he suddenly set upon him; first took the City of *Melfi*, and after by degrees, most of the other Towns and places which the *Greeks* held in *Italy*: Of which both he and his Successors kept possession by the Title of Dukes of *Calabria* only. Of these (though all of eminent Vertue) there were two besides this *William*, of special Fame. 1. *Robert Guiscard*, the third Son of *Tancred*, the most valiant Captain of his time, and chief establisher of the *Normans* power in *Italy*, to which he added in conclusion the Isle of *Sicil*, together with the City of *Naples* it self, and all the Lands which lye betwixt it and *Rome*. 2. *Bohemund*, the eldest Son of this *Robert*, who going with *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and others of the Western *Christians* to the Holy Land, was for his signal merit invested with the Kingdom of *Antioch*; inherited by his Children after his Decease.

But to proceed: This *Guiscard* at his Death, (but not without some wrong to the Children of his Brother *William*, whom he had dispossessed of all by the Pope's Authority) gave *Sicil*, with the Title of Earl, to his Son *Rogero*; and his Estates in *Italy* to his other Son *William*: Who going to *Constantinople* to marry with the Emperour's Daughter, was outed of his part by his Brother *Roger*, made not long after, by the Pope the first King of this Family.

The Kings of *Naples* of the *Norman* Line.

- 1125 1 *Roger*, Earl of *Sicil*, created by Pope *Calixtus II.* King of both the *Sicilies*, at the Town of *Benevent*; which City in requital of so great a favour, he restored again unto the Church, from which it had been taken (after the first Donation of it) by the German Emperours. 24.
- 1150 2 *William*, the Son of *Roger*, who to assure him-

self of his Kingdoms, was content to take them as a gift from the hands of Pope *Adrian IV.* to be holden for ever in Fee of the Church of *Rome*. 21.

- 1170 3 *William II.* Son of the former *William*, who left a Daughter called *Constance*, who became a Nun. 26.

- 1196 4 *Tancred*, the base Son of *William II.* excluded his Sister from the Crown, but was sententially deposed by Pope *Celestine III.* who had an aim to get the Kingdom for himself. But when he saw that *Tancred* was too strong for him, out of meer spight to be defeated of his purpose, he called in the *Germans*, the ancient enemies of his See; and gave the Lady *Constance*, then almost fifty years of Age, in Marriage unto *Henry VI.* 2.

The German Line.

- 1198 5 *Henry*, the sixth of that name, Emperour, and Duke of *Schwaben*, succeeded on his Marriage with the Lady *Constance*. 4.

- 1202 6 *Frederick*, Son of the Emperour *Henry* and Queen *Constance*, Crowned at the Age of three years, afterwards Emperour by the name of *Frederick II.* he had to Wife the Daughter of *John di Bren*, the titular King of *Iherusalem*, of which the Kings of *Naples* have ever since had the title of Kings; and in the rights of this Kingdom, the Kings of *Spain*. 48.

- 1250 7 *Conrade*, the Son of *Frederick*, King of *Naples* and *Sicil*, as also Emperour and Duke of *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*; poisoned (as it was conceived) by his base Brother *Manfred*. 4.

- 1254 8 *Manfroy* or *Manfred*, base Son of *Frederick*, and Duke of *Benevent*, first governed the Kingdom as Protector unto *Conradine*, the Son of *Conrade*; but after took it to himself against the will of Pope *Urban IV.* who being weary of the *Germans*, called in *Charles* Duke of *Anjou*, and the Earl of *Provence*, Brother *Lewis X.* of *France*: It being usual with the Popes (as *Machiavel* very well observeth) to call new Men into *Italy*, and stir up new Wars for their own Ambition; not suffering any to possess that long which themselves (through their weakness) could not hold; and practising the overthrow of those very Men, whom themselves had raised to power and greatness.

The French Line.

- 1261 9 *Charles*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, overcame King *Manfred*, and was after Crowned by Pope *Urban IV.* who conditioned with him, that neither he nor his Successors should assume the Empire; and that they should pay fifty thousand Crowns per annum as a Rent to the Church. This *Charles* did also vanquish *Conradine* the Son of *Conrade*, the last of the Royal House of *Suevia*, whom he caused to be beheaded at *Naples*. After which bloody Act, neither he nor any of his Posterity, did either quietly or long enjoy these Kingdoms. For in his own time *Peter* King of *Aragon*, claimed the Kingdom of *Naples*, in right of *Constance* his Wife, Daughter of *Manfred*: betwixt whom and *Charles*, a single combat was appointed to be fought in *Bourdeaux*, before King *Edward I.* of *England*, to decide the Controversie. But whilst *Charles* there expected him, he seized on *Sicil*. The French being all murdered in that famous Massacre commonly call'd the *Sicilian Vespers*. Anno 1281. This *Charles* reigned three and twenty years.

1284 10 *Charles II.* Son of *Charles I.* formerly Prisoner in *Sicil* to *Peter* of *Aragon*, was ransomed by the procurement of *K. Edward* above named for 30000 Marks. By *Mary*, Daughter of *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, he had fourteen Children: The most pertinent of which (to our purpose) were *Charles* surnamed *Martel*, King of *Hungary* in right of his Mother; *Robert* King of *Naples*; *John* of *Durazzo*, and a Daughter (whose name I find not) married to *Charles*, Earl of *Valois*, who in her right obtained the Earldom of *Anjou*. 26.

1310 11 *Robert*, the second Son of *Charles II.* 32.

1342 12 *Joan*, the Niece of *Robert* by his Son *Charles*, first married *Andrew* the second Son of *Charles* King of *Hungary*, whom she hanged at her window for insufficiency; and for her second Husband had *Lewis*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who over-straining himself to satisfy her carnal Appetite, died. Her third Husband was *James*, Prince of *Majorca*, a gallant young Gentleman, whom she beheaded for lying with another Woman. Her fourth, *Otho* of *Brunswick*, a tough Soldier, who had the good fortune to out-live her. She was twice driven out of her Kingdom by *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, Brother of *Andrew* her first Husband: Restored the first time by the power of Pope *Clement* the sixth; but at the second time taken and hanged at the same window where she had hanged her first Husband. But first, out of an hatred to her next Heirs of the House of *Hungary*, she adopted *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, (descended from *Charles* Earl of *Valois* spoken of before) for her Heir and Successor.

The Hungarian Line.

1381 13 *Charles III.* Son to *Lewis*, and Nephew of Prince *John* of *Durazzo* before mentioned, by the power of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, and the favour of Pope *Urban V.* was made King of *Naples*. He overthrew and killed in Battel Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*, his Competitor, and after the death of King *Lewis* of *Hungary*, succeeded in that Kingdom also; but long he had not Reigned therein, when poysoned (as it was supposed) by the old Queen Mother, to advance her Daughter to that Throne. 5.

1386 14 *Ladislaus*, Son of *Charles III.* having a quarrel with the Pope, made a Voyage Royal unto *Rome*, where he forced his entry, and was there triumphantly received: On which displeasure the Pope called in *Lewis II.* Duke of *Anjou*, who gave *Ladislaus* a great overthrow. Infomuch, as *Ladislaus* used to say, that if *Lewis* had followed his Victory the first day, he had been master of his Kingdom and Person too; if the second, of his Kingdom, but not of his Person: But not pursuing it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to flee to *Rome*, and give over the Enterprize. 29.

1415 15 *Joan II.* Sister of *Ladislaus*, of as much levity, but not altogether of so ill a fame as the former *Joan*: observing the unprosperous successes of the House of *Anjou* she adopted for her Heir *Alphonso V.* of *Aragon*; who had some claim unto the Kingdom as the direct Heir of *Pedro*, or *Peter III.* and *Constance* the Daughter of King *Manfred*, spoken of before. But finding him to stand too much on his own Right, and to be too forward in

taking a possession of it before her Death, she Revoked that Adoption, and made a new grant of that Estate to *Lewis IV.* Duke of *Anjou*, and after his Decease to his Brother *Rene*, or *Renatus*: Both vanquished by the *Aragonians*.

The Aragonian Line.

1434 16 *Alfonso* King of *Aragon*, partly by Conquest, and partly by Adoption, having got the Kingdom, left it well settled unto *Ferdinand*, his natural Son. 24.

1458 17 *Ferdinand*, the base Son of *Alfonso* (the lawful Sons inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, *Sicil*, &c.) succeeded in the Realm of *Naples*. 36.

1494 18 *Alfonso II.* Son of *Ferdinand*, in whose time the *French* began to aim at the Realm of *Naples*. This King and his two Predecessors were of the order of the Garter.

1494 19 *Ferdinand II.* Son of *Alfonso II.* ousted of his Estate and Kingdom by *Charles VIII.* Son of King *Lewis XI.* of *France*, whom *Rene* the last Duke of *Anjou* had made the sole Heir of all his Titles and Possessions. And though *Charles* upon his Conquest was solemnly Crowned, yet posting back again into *France* before he had settled his Affairs in this Kingdom, and having much discontented the chief Men of the *Ajouin* Faction, he lost it suddenly to the same *Ferdinand*, from whom he had so suddenly won it.

1497 20 *Frederick II.* Brother of *Alfonso II.* and Uncle of this last *Ferdinand*, succeeded him in Estate, and was the sixth King that had reigned in *Naples* within the compass of three years: That is to say, *Ferdinand I.* *Alfonso II.* *Ferdinand II.* *Charles* of *France*, the second *Ferdinand* again, and then this *Frederick*. Finding himself betrayed by the *Spaniards*, he submitted himself to *Lewis XII.* King of *France*, and yielded up his Kingdom to him. And indeed what else could that poor Prince do, when he saw his own Blood, and such as had taken his Realm into their protection, conspiring against him?

For when *Charles* made his passage towards *Naples*, *Ferdinand* the Catholick, sent *Gonsalvo*, (who was afterward for his Valour surnamed the Great Captain) with some Forces to resist the *French* Invaders. But when the *French* were expelled, *Gonsalvo* would not leave the Country, because his Master had not as yet sent for him. In the mean time it was agreed between *Lewis* of *France*, and this *Ferdinand*, that they should joyntly set upon the Kingdom of *Naples*: That having won it, the *French* should possess *Abruzzo*, and *Lavoro*; the *Spaniards*, *Puglia*, and both *Calabrias*: That the first should be entituled King of *Naples*; the other, Duke of *Apulia*. This Confederacy was kept secret till the *French* Forces were come to *Rome*; and *Gonsalvo* possessed (under pretence of defending it) of all *Calabria*. So that it was no marvel that they made themselves Masters of the Country. An action in which the *French* dealt very unadvisedly, in bringing into *Italy* where he was before the sole Moderator, another King as great as himself, to whom as to his Rival, his Enemies might have recourse on all occasions; and the *Spaniards* as unnaturally, in betraying for the moiety of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own Blood, under pretence and promise of Succours. But the two Kings did not continue long in good terms of Partnership. For the *Spaniards* being more intent upon their Advantages, soon picked a quarrel with the *French*, within two or three years drove them out of all, and to this day

day keep it; though both this *Lewis*, and his Successors *Francis I.* and *Henry II.* have divers times, and with great effusion of Blood, attempted the recovery of it.

The Spanish, or Castilian Line.

- 1503 21 *Ferdinand III.* surnamed the *Catholic*, King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, &c. and *Naples*. 1.
 1516 22 *Charles V.* Emperour, King of *Spain*, and the IV. of that name in *Naples*. 43.
 1558 23 *Philip II.* of *Spain*, and the first of *Naples*. 40.
 1598 24 *Philip III.* of *Naples*, 3d of *Spain*. 22.
 1621 25 *Philip IV.* of *Naples*, 4th of *Spain*. 45.
 1666 26 *Charles II.* of *Spain*, and 5th of *Naples*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, *Seme of Flower de Lucés*, Or, a File of three Labels, *Gules*.

The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 20000 are due to the Pope for Chief-Kent; and the rest so exhausted in maintaining Garrisons upon the Natives, and a strong Navy against the *Turks*, that the King of *Spain* receiveth not a fourth part *de claro*.

Here are in this Kingdom
 Arch-bishops 20. Bishops 127.

The Kingdom of SICILIA.

BEFORE we can come into the Isle of *Sicily*, we must first cross that branch of the *MEDITERRANEAN* Sea, which is called the *Fare*, or Strait of *Messana*; where the passage is so strait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and a half. In other parts, as the Sea grows wider, it is distant from the main Land of *Italy* near 300 Miles; that is to say, from the Town of *Drepanum* in *Sicily*, to the City of *Naples*. As for the *Mediterranean* Sea, it is so called because it interlaceth the midst of the Earth; extending from the Straits of *Gibraltar* on the West, to the Coast of *Palestine* on the East; and so dividing *Africk* both from *Europe* and *Asia minor*. In the Scriptures, *Josh. i. 4.* it is called by the name of *Mare magnum*, or the great Sea: Great in comparison of the dead Sea, and the Sea of *Galilee*, lying on the other side of the Land of *Palestine*; but small enough if compared to the Ocean, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Besides which general Name of the *Mediterranean*, it hath also many particular Names, as the *Adriatick*, *Agean*, *Ionian*, and *Carpathian* Sea, where it bordereth upon *Greece*, and *Anatolia*; *Mare Libycum*, where it runneth by the shores of *Africk*: With reference to *Italy* called in some parts *Mare Tyrrhenum*, in others *Mare Ligusticum*; in some parts *Mare Siculum*, and in others *Mare Sardoum*, &c. And as the *Cameleon* is said to apply it self to the colour of the nearest adjacent Body; so this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the nearest shores. These Seas are also called by some modern Writers, in imitation of the *French*, by the name of the *Levant*, or the Seas of the *Levant*; because in respect of *France*, *Spain*, *Britain*, *Germany*, &c. they lie towards the East; the word *Levant* signifying in the *French*, a rising up, and more especially the Sun-rising. The principal Islands of this Sea which relate to *Italy* (for of others we shall speak in their proper places) are those of *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, and some Isles adjoining unto these.

SICILY, environed round with the lower or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, contains seven hundred Miles in compass; and is supposed to have been joined to *Italy* in former times, being then a *Peninsula*, or Demi-Island, such as *Peloponnesus*; and joined to the Continent by as narrow an *Isthmus*. The reason of that Name we shall see anon. The Learned *Cluverius*, who measured this

Island, found the North side 255 Miles, its Southern 190. and its Western side 150, in all 595. Miles in Compass.

The separating of it from the main Land of *Italy*, is by the Poets ascribed to *Neptune*, who with his three forked Mace, or *Trident*, broke it off from the Land, in favour of *Jocastus* the Son of *Aeolus*; that so he might inhabit there with the greater Safety, being environed round with Waters: which though it be a Fable or Poetical fiction, yet with some help from the *Mythologists*, may be made a story. For if by *Aeolus* and *Neptune*, we understand the Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the rest of *Italy*, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of some Earthquakes, to which this Island is still subject, which might in time consume and wear away the Earth. Nor wants there very good reason for this supposition; as, 1. The narrowness of the Strait, exceeding not a Mile and a half; insomuch as at the taking of *Messana* by the *Carthaginians*, many of the People saved themselves by swimming over this Strait, into the opposite parts of *Italy*. 2. The shallowness of it, being found upon a diligent sounding, not to be above eight fathom deep. Then 'tis observed, that the Land on both sides is very brittle, full of Caves and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea, on this separation; and that on the *Italian* Coast where the Strait is narrowest, there stands a City of old called *Rhegium*, which signifieth a breach or cutting off, from the *Greek* word *ῥήγνμι*, which signifies to break off, or violently to pull asunder; and is supposed to be so called upon this occasion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is so great and dangerous in this narrow Chanel, so subject unto blustering winds issuing out of the hollow Caverns of the Earth; that the breaking off of this Island from the rest of *Italy*, is a thing most incredible. Which dangerous nature of the passage, being also full of Rocks, and unsafe by reason of the Whirl-pools, occasioned it to be called by *Florus* the Historian, *Fabulosis infame monstribus fretum*; chiefly so called with reference to *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, of which many fabulous things are reported by the ancient Poets. Of these *Charybdis* is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on *Sicily* side, which violently attracting all Vessels that come too nigh it, devoureth them, and casteth up their wracks at the shore of *Tauromenium*, not far from *Catana*. Opposite to this in *Italy*, standeth the dangerous Rock *Scylla*, at the foot of which many little Rocks shoot out, on which the water strongly beating, making that noise, which the Poets feign to be the barking of Dogs. The passage between these two being to unskilful Mariners exceeding perillous, gave beginning to the Proverb;

Incidit in Scyllum cupiens vitare Charybdim.

Who seeks *Charybdis* for to shun,
 Doth oftentimes on *Scylla* run.

But there are other things which made *Sicily* famous in old times, besides these two, as *viz.* the punishment of the Giant *Enceladus*, for his attempt against the Gods: the frequent burning of *Aetna* (under which he is fabled to be shut up) being supposed to proceed from his sulphurous Breath. Secondly, the Birth of *Ceres* in this Isle; and Thirdly, the Rape of *Proserpine*. To these two last the Isle was consecrated in those days; to *Ceres* in regard she first taught the People to sow Corn, whence the word *Ceres* is often used in the Poets to signify Bread, and other necessary Provisions for Life, as *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, To *Proserpine*, because bestowed upon her by *Pluto*, to please her after the Ravishment committed on her.

It is situated under the fourth Climate, the longest day being 13 hours and a half: And was once called *Trinacria*, because it shoots forth into the Sea with three Capes or Promontories: *viz.* 1. *Pelorus*, now *Capo de Foro*,
 K 2 to

to the North. 2. *Pachynus*, now *Capo Passaro*, to the West. And 3. *Lilybæum*, now *Capo Boii*, or *Capo Caro*, to the South. This last looketh towards *Carthage*, and the Shores of *Africk*, from which distant 180 Miles. And of this *Strabo* doth affirm, that a Man of quick and strong sight getting up into a Watch-Tower that stood in this Cape, descried a Fleet setting Sail out of the Haven of *Carthage*; and told the *Lilybæans* their bigness and number. That this is true, I dare not say: for besides the unlikelihood of kenning at so great a distance; we are taught by Philosophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular Form, swelleth it self into the fashion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put bound to the eye-sight. From these three corners, this Country was (as we have said) called *Trinacris*, or *Trinacria*, according to that of *Ovid*.

*Terra tribus scopulis vastum procurrit in æquor;
Trinacris à positu, nomen adepta, loci.*

An Island with three corners braves the Main,
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth gain.

The first Inhabitants that we find to have dwelt in this Country, are the huge Giants so often mentioned in the *Odysses* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Læstrigones* and *Cyclopes*; of which last rank was the so much famous *Polyphemus*, who with so much humanity entertained *Ulysses*, and his Companions. These were afterwards rooted out by the *Sicani*, a People of *Spain*, who called it *Sicania*. As for the Name of *Sicilia*, some derive it from *Sicileus*, a supposed King of *Spain*, who is fabled to have conquered this Country. But the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Island: to which having mastered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the West and the Northern part, to the East and South, they left their Name. At their first landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Messana*, together with *Naxos*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another Italian People named the *Morgetes*, being driven thence by the *Oenotrians*; and fate down in that part of the Island where stood the City of *Morgentum*, built by them at their first arrival. The first of all the *Greeks* who set footing in it (not to say any thing of the coming of *Minos* hither in the pursuit of *Dædalus*, having more in it of the Fiction than Historical truth) where the *Chalcideans*, a People of the Isle *Eubæa*, now called *Negropont*; who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Architas* of *Corinth*, with his Fellow-Adventurers, by whom *Syracuse* was either first built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next them the *Rhodians* and *Cretans* sent some Colonies hither, the first Founders of *Gela*; and after of the renowned City of *Agrigentum*: And not long after a new Plantation sent from *Sparta* built *Heraclea*. The Citizens of *Megaritis*, another State of *Greece*, sent a Colony also, who built *Selinus*. And did those of *Messene* also, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beautified it, and gave unto it, so repaired, the name of *Messana*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* being so great undertakers of publick business, and very powerful in Shipping, would sit still, when so fair a booty did invite their Industry: who seizing on the Promontories of *Pachynus* and *Lilybæum*, and some of the adjoining Islands; did fortifie them for the better securing of the Trade which they had in *Sicily*. But all these several Adventurers having several Interesses, joined not together in the work of an absolute Conquest; but planting themselves only on the Sea-shores, altered not the name by which they found it called at their coming thither.

The People are Ingenuous, Eloquent, and Pleasant, but withal very Unconstant, and so full of Talk, that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerræ Siculæ*. They are also said to be of a very Envious, Suspicious, and Distrustful Nature, incapable of Injuries, and vehement in

pursuit of Revenge, as appears by that great slaughter which they made of the *French*: yet withal Courteous enough to Strangers, and Parastical enough to their Superiors. They have been famous heretofore for many notable Inventions, *Aristotle* ascribing to them the Art of Oratory, and first making of *Pastoral Eclogues*; *Pliny* of Clocks, (or rather of Hour-Glasses; for Clocks were but a late Invention, and that of the *Flemmings*;) and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; which last were brought by *Archimedes* unto great perfection.

The Christian Faith was first preached here, by some of the Disciples of *St. Peter*, whom he sent hither at his first coming to *Rome*; of which *Pancratius* (whom we call commonly *St. Pancrace*) is said to have been the first Bishop of *Tauromenium*, and *Martianus* of *Syracuse*. They are now generally of the Religion authorized by the Popes of *Rome*; that of the *Greek Church* being rather connived at than allowed of; in the Communion whereof here are thought to be Ten thousand Souls, but looked on by the rest as *Schismatical* People. For the most part they use the *Italian Language*, but very much altered by the *Greek*, *Arabian*, *Norman*, *French* and *Spanish* Tongues; to which Nations they have been severally subject, since the time of the *Romans*. The total number of the People is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The Soil is incredibly fruitful in Wine, Oil, Honey, Minerals of Gold, Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which last Commodity the Natives sell in Canes unto the *Venetians*, and buy it again of them when it is Refined; and thereby letting Strangers go away with the best part of their Gains; as generally they do in all other Merchandize; which they permit to be exported, rather than put themselves to the trouble of Trafficking abroad in Foreign Nations. There are also Gems of *Agates*, and *Emeralds*. It yieldeth also great store of the richest Silks, which grow plentifully about *Messana*; variety of most excellent and delicious Fruits, both for Taste and Colour: with such abundance of all sorts of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romani populi*, or the Granary of the *Roman Empire*; and doth now furnish some parts of *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, besides *Malta*, and the adjacent Isles, with that which she can spare of her superfluities. Nay, *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and Store-house of the City of *Rome*, in regard of Corn, but adds that it was accounted a well-furnished Treasury; as being able of it self, without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain, and furnish the greatest Army, with Leather, Corn, and Apparel. And if *Diodorus Siculus* may be credited in it, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and some other places, Wheat did grow of it self, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in some parts of the Isle, the Soil is so exceeding fruitful, that it yields unto the Husbandman an hundred measures of Corn for one. And certainly the Corn of this Country must needs yield a wonderful increase, the King of *Spain* receiving an hundred thousand Crowns yearly for the Custom of Wheat. In this Country is the Hill *Hybla*, so famous for Bees and Honey; near which there was a City of the same Name also, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is also the Hill *Ætna*, now called *Montgibel*, which continually sendeth forth flames of Fire, to the astonishment of all beholders. The most famous Conflagrations in the former times were presently before the breaking out of the War in *Sicily*, which the *Roman Writers* call *Bellum servile*, not pacified but by the slaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms against *Rome*; and shortly after the death of *Julius Cæsar*, portending those Proscriptions and bloody Wars, which did after follow. And to this day such extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it self is of that height, that it is ten Miles from the top to the bottom, and may be easily discerned by Sailors at an hundred Miles distance; the lower parts thereof being very

very fruitful, the middle shaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow, a great part of the Year, notwithstanding the frequent vomiting of Flames and Cinders. But these eruptions of Fire are not now so ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuel to it being wasted by continual burnings; so that the Flames which issue hence are hardly visible but by Night, though the smoke shew it self the most part of the Day. And when it doth break out, which is commonly once in three or four Years; it falleth in great flakes on the Vales adjoining; to the destruction of the Vintage, and great loss of the Country. But that, they say, is recompenced by the plenty of the following Years; the ashes thereof so batling and enriching the Soil, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongst our selves, that the Turf taken from the Ground and burnt to ashes, and so spread on Land and ploughed into it, doth yield a very great improvement, even to barren Soils. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Devonshiring* of Land, because there first used; but in *Hampshire* it was called, as I remember (having been unfortunately too long a Stranger there) by the name of *burning and beaking*. But to return again to *Ætna*, into this fiery Furnace the Philosopher *Empedocles* cast himself, that he might be reputed a God.

——— *Deus immortalis haberi*

Dum cupit Empedocles, ardentem fervidus Ætnam
Influit ———

As *Horace*, in his Book *de Arte Poetica*.

Empedocles to be a God desires,
And casts himself into th' *Ætnean* fires.

The reason of these fires is the abundance of Sulphur and Brimstone, contained in the bosom of the Hill; which is blown by the Wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth, as by a pair of Bellows. Through these chinks also there is continually more fuel added to the Fire, the very Water adding to the force of it: As we see that Water cast on Coals in the Smiths-Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reason of this flame is thus set down by *Ovid*.

Ista bitumineæ rapiunt incendia vires;
Luteaq; exiguis ardescunt sulphura flammis.
Atq; ubi terra cibos alimentaq; debita flammæ
Non dabit, absumptis per longum viribus ævum,
Naturæq; suum nutrimentum deerit edaci,
Non feret Ætna famem, desertaq; deseret ignes.

A rozen Mould these fiery flames begin,
And clayie Brimstone aids that fire within:
Yet when the slimy Soil consumed, shall
Yield no more food to feed the fire withal,
And Nature shall restrain her nourishment,
The flame shall cease, hating all famishment.

Under this Hill some Poets feign the Giant *Enceladus* to have been buried, as before is said, whose hot breath fired the Mountain lying on his Face. Others suppose it to be the Shop of *Vulcan*, and the *Cyclops*; and the gross Papists take it for the place of *Purgatory*; all alike infallible.

This Island has in all times been extremely liable to the furies of Earthquakes; but that which happen'd the 11th of *January*, in the Year 1693. is one of the most dreadful that has been read of; in which perished intirely *Sentini* and 3000 Inhabitants; *Carlantini*, *Augusta* and 5000 Souls; *Noto* and 7000 Souls; *Specafurno* and 3000; *Scicbilo* and 8000; *Catania* and 18000 Souls; the greatest part of *Minoo*, a Royal City, and in it 3000 Souls; *Savagoza* and 6000: In all there was an account taken of 73680 Persons that perished; and yet many great

Towns perished, with most of the Inhabitants, of which no account could be taken.

The principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Taretta*, anciently called *Terius*. 2. *Himera*, neighboured by Mount *Hybla*, much famed for Honey. 3. *Iaurus*. 4. *Hypsa*. 5. *Acasus*, of great note for its precious Stones. None of them much observable for length or breadth, but that defect supplied by the commodiousness of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Island, and by the benefit of Fountains and fresh-water Lakes. Most memorable amongst these, 1. The Lake called *Palicoro*, (now *Napthia*) which for three Months doth cast forth Water very hot, but of very ill smell; of which there is mention made in *Pliny*, by the name of *Ephintia*. 2. A Fountain near the foot of *Ætna*, the Water whereof is sharp like *Vinegar*, and sometimes boileth; into which a piece of Cloth cast, being before steeped in Water mixed with Gall, becomes suddenly black. 3. Another Fountain near *Drepanum*, the Water of which, as soon as drunk, provoketh looseness. All which effects proceed from that sulphureous and bituminous Matter, of which the whole Island is exceeding full. 4. *Arthusa*, of greater fame among the Ancients than all the rest; especially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of *Greece*) having swallowed up one hundred and forty lesser Streams, and losing it self under the Ground, is thought to empty it self into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both; and seems to be sufficiently proved, by the several Instances of a wooden Dish or Cup lost in the River *Alpheus*, and found rising up in this River; and by the Leaves of certain Trees growing on the Banks of that *Greek* River, and swimming on this in great abundance; there being none of these Trees in all *Sicily*. *Decatur Alpheus* (saith *Mela*) *se non consociare pelago; sed subter maria, terraq; depressus, huc agere alveum, atq. hic se rursus extollere.*

This Island is famous for the worthy Scholars she once produced, viz. *Æschylus*, the first Tragedian of fame; who being bald through Age, once walked in the Fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald Pate for a white Rock, let a Shellfish fall on it, of that bigness that it beat out his Brains. 2. *Diodorus Siculus*, that famous Historian. 3. *Empedocles*, the first inventor of *Rhetorick*; and his fellow *Gorgias*. 4. *Euclide*, the textuary Geometrician, who taught in *Megaris*. 5. *Archimedes*, a most worthy Mathematician, the first Author of the Sphere; of which Instrument he made one of that art and bigness, that one standing within, might easily perceive the several motions of every Celestial Orb. He made also divers Military Engines, which in the Siege of *Syracusa* sorely vexed the *Romans*, and was at last slain in his Study by a common Soldier in the sack of the Town, to the great grief of the General *Marcellus*. 6. *Epicharmus*, the first Inventor of Comedies. And 7. *Theocritus*, the first Author of Pastoral Eclogues. In the latter times, *Nicolas*, Abbot of *Palermo*, a Learned Canonist, and Cardinal of the Church of *Rome*, commonly called *Panormitanus*, was of greatest fame.

In *Pliny's* time there were reckoned in this Island seventy two Cities, of which only twelve are now remaining. The whole divided at this time into three small Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Val de Noto*, 2. *Mazara*, and 3. *Mona*; to which the Isles adjoining may add a fourth.

1. *VALLIS de NOTO* taketh up the Eastern parts of the Island. The chief Cities of which are 1. *Syracusa*, once the Metropolis of the whole Island, and a most flourishing Common-wealth: it was (as *Tully* reports) the greatest and goodliest City of all that were possessed by the *Greeks*; for situation very strong; and of an excellent prospect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both sides of it, was for the most part environed with beautiful Buildings; and that part of it which was without the City, was on both sides banked up, and sustained with very fair Walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodliest City of the *Greeks*, as *Tully* tells us, but

but one of the greatest also in the World, as is said by *Strabo*; by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmost Wall thereof, (for it was environed with three Walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compass, which of our measure cometh to eighteen Miles. It was compounded of four Towns made up into one, that is to say, *Insula* (or the Isle) *Acradine*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*, besides the Fort called *Hexapla*, which commanded the rest; the greatness of all which, the Ruines and Foundations of it do still demonstrate. It standeth North of the Promontory called *Pachynus*, and was built by *Architas* of *Corinth*, about the time of *Jotham* King of *Judab*; who being for an unnatural Rape, committed on a young Gentleman, banished his Country, together with his Friend and Companion *Miscellus*; consulted with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they should dispose of themselves. The Oracle demanding whether they most affected Wealth, or Health: *Miscellus* answereth Health, and *Architas* Wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to settle himself at *Crotona* in *Italy*, and the other here. Nor did the Oracle deceive him in his expectation; this Town by reason of its beautiful and commodious Port, proving of greatest Trade and Wealth next to *Carthage* itself, in those times of the World. It was the Custom of this Town, when any of the Citizens grew too potent, to write his name in an Olive-leaf; which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to banishment for five years, and was called *Petalism*, from the Greek word *πέταλον*, signifying a Leaf. Yet could not this Device so well secure them in the possession of their so much desired Freedom, but that this City fell oftner into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the World. That which is now remaining of it is the work of *Augustus*, who after a second Destruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, sent a Colony hither, and built upon the Isle, and the parts near unto it. But now the whole Isle (*Ortygia* the Ancients called it) is taken up with a very strong Castle; the whole City also being very well walled, and held by a Garrison of *Spaniards*. *Sandys* our Countreyman who saw this Place, gives us no other Account of its present State, than that it is strongly wall'd, and not far removed on both sides from the Sea, the point whereon it doth stand being but narrow towards the West, and so maketh by Land a difficult Approach, without which are the Ruines of the old City, and the principal Gate is on the South side, and near the West end. The Garrison consisted then of 200 *Spaniards*, and 300 Townsmen; besides certain Housemen of the Countrey adjoining who serve by turns, and are sent out every Night to scour and guard the Sea Coast. The Winter is very Temperate, but the Summer is exceeding hot and not Healthful; the Town is mostly supplied by an old Aquaduct, which brings their Water near the Town from the nearer Mountains; but then there are some Springs in and about the Town.

2. *Noto*, which gives name to this whole Division; a City which heretofore contended with *Syracuse* in point of Greatness; situate on a very high Rock, unaccessible on all sides but by one narrow passage; and having under the Cape of *Passari* a very fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of *Sicil* on that side. *Noto* ruined intirely the 11th of *January* 1693. with the destruction of 7000 of its Inhabitants. 3. *Augusta*, situate on the Shore also, and of so large a Haven, that it could never be fortified; Built in 1229. and Fortified in 1232. by *Frederick* the Emperor, made stronger by the *Spaniards* by cutting it off from the Continent, and adding three Castles, Surprized by the *French* in 1675. Abandon'd by them in 1678. Intirely destroyed by an Earthquake, and the firing its Magazens the 11th of *January*, 1693. with the loss of 6000 of its Inhabitants. 4. *Castro Giovanni*, a Town of about four thousand Families, situate in a wholsom Air, and a fruitful Soil, which they hold to be the very Naval and exact middle of the Island. It

is also much prized for Mines of most excellent Salt. 5. *Lentini*, famous for its Lake, whose Fishing is farmed for eighteen thousand Crowns yearly: It was anciently called *Leontium*, and stood somewhat North of *Syracusa*; with which continually in War, either to preserve their own Liberties, or get the Sovereignty of the other. 6. *Enna*, a midland Town, whence *Pluto* is said to have ravished *Proserpine*: In after-times the Dwelling of that *Syrus Ennus*, who stirred up the *Roman* Slaves against their Lords; and having broke open the common Prisons, and received all such as came unto him, patched up an Army of forty Thousand. This War the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum Servile*, ended at last but with no small difficulty, by the Valour and good Fortune of *P. Rupilius*. A. U. C. 650.

2. *M A Z A R A* containeth all the West parts of the Island. The chief Cities thereof, 1. *Agrigentum*, now called *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Bull, which he had made for the destruction and torture of others. Of which aptly *Ovid*.

— *Nec enim lex justior ulla est,
Quam necis Artifices arte perire sua.*

Most just it is, a Man should be tormented
With that, which first his cruel Wit invented.

It was said anciently of the People of this City, that they built as if they should never die, and eat as if they were sure to live no longer. 2. *Palermo*, anciently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phenicians*; now the chief City of *Sicil*, and the Seat of the *Spanish* Vice-roy; situate on the West Cape of the Island looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large Streets, delicate Buildings, strong Walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no natural Port appertaining to it, (*Drepanum* serving anciently as the Port thereof) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*, a work of vast expence, and worthy of the greatness of *Rome*. It is also an Archbishops See, and an University. 3. *Monreal*, commonly called *Morreal*, famous for the Church, the Archbishops See; built by *William II.* King of *Sicily*, and endowed with a large Revenue about the year 1182. It is called in *Latine*, *Mons Regalis*. 4. *Drepanum*, now called *Trepani*, situate on a Promontory thrusting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybaeum*, a Town well fortified, in regard of the ill Neighbourhood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage on these Coasts; and having the command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are said to be the best Seamen of *Sicil*. 5. *Mazara*, which gives name unto all this Vale, situate South of *Lilybaeum*, and not far from *Selinus*. This is a Bishops See under the Archbishop of *Palermo*, a Seaport Town, having a Large, Safe, Convenient, Haven, and therefore is well fortified against the *Moors*. It lies 30 Miles from *Trapano* to the South. 6. *Eryx*, situate on a Mountain overlooking the Sea; said by the Ancients to have took this name from *Eryx* the Son of *Venus*, slain here by *Hercules*: Memorable in those elder times for being the Seat of King *Acestes*, who so kindly entertained *Aneas*, and his wandring *Trojans*: And a magnificent Temple, in which *Venus* was worshipped, and from thence was called *Erycina*, as, *Sive tu mavis Erycina ridens*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the last Town which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicil*. On the surrendry whereof by *Amilcar* the Father of *Annibal*, at the end of the first *Punick* War, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongst other things, that the *Carthaginians* should relinquish all the Claim or Title which they had to any part of this Island; which thereby fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracusa* excepted only;) who, whatsoever colour they were pleased to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by Ambition and Covetousness. And therefore in my mind *Florus* states it rightly, who saith, that it was undertaken *specio quidem juvandi Socios, re autem sollicitante Præda*;

i. e. under pretence of aiding the *Mamertines*, who had put themselves into their protection, but in plain terms to get possession of the Island which lay fit for *Italy*. Now, and long since a Ruine only, the place on which it stood being called *Mount St. Julian*. 7. *Segesta*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Eryx*, near unto which the *Trojan Ladies*, weary of their many long and dangerous Voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Aeneas*; on which occasion it was built. Peopled at first by such of the more old and feeble *Trojans*, (*Longævoſque ſenes, & feſſas æquore matres*, as the Poet hath it) who choſe rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Aeneas*, in his queſt of *Italy*. Called then *Aceſta*, in honour of King *Aceſtes*, ſpoken of before, part of whoſe Kingdom it was made; afterwards *Egeſta* from *Egeſtas* one of *Trojan Race*, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at laſt *Segeſta*.

3. *MONA* lieth on the North-Eaſt of the Iſland, oppoſite unto *Vallis de Noto*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nicoſia*, in the Mid-land. 2. *Milaſe*, on the Northern Promontory. 3. *Meffana*, a City of great ſtrength and beauty juſt oppoſite to *Rhezo* in *Italy*. It was the firſt Town which the *Romans* had in this Iſland, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Soldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for the defence of the City; who finding themſelves too ſtrong for the *Citizens*, made themſelves Maſters of the place; but being withal too weak to hold it, choſe rather to ſurrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper Owners. Hence the beginning of the firſt War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time, of the moſt beautiful Building of any in *Sicil*; and peopled by the wealthieſt ſort both of Merchants and Gentlemen, who live here in great pleaſure (if not voluptuouſneſs) as having plenty of all neceſſary Proviſions, Fruits of all kinds, delicious Wines, and Snow to moderate and qualify the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elſewhere in the Country. On the Weſt ſide there ſtands a ſtrong Citadel, highly mounted, and well Garriſoned, which commands the Town: and not far off a very high Lanthorn where Lights are kept burning all Night long, for the direction of ſuch Mariners as are to paſs thoſe dangerous Streights; which from this *Phare* or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the *Phare* of *Meffana*. The Haven of this Town is the faireſt of *Sicil*, whoſe entrances are ſo ſtrongly Sconced and Bulwarked, that the People let their Gates (in deriſion of the *Turks*) ſtand always open. It is alſo an Archbiſhops See. The *Spaniards* treating the Inhabitants of this powerful and rich City very ill, in the Year 1674. they revolted, and call'd in the *French*, who defended this Place againſt the *Spaniards*, till the 16th of March 1678. but then being over-powered, they ſurrender'd it, without ſecuring the Townſmens Privileges; ſo that this City was doubly ruin'd by this Attempt to relieve it ſelf. 4. *Catana*, ſo often vexed by *Dionyſius* the Tyrant of *Syracufe*; more ancient than beautiful: ſeated on the North ſide of a great (but hollow) Bay, not eaſily approached by Ships, and therefore neither held by any Garriſon, nor much traded by Merchants; the Riches of the Place conſiſting principally in the fruitfulneſs of the Soil, the habitation of many of the Gentry, and by being a ſmall University. It was once a Colony of the *Naxians*. And ſo was alſo *Tauromenium*, the fifth Town of note in this part of the Iſland, called ſometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*; a Ruine only of what was in the former days: a place by Nature of great ſtrength, but over-topped by *Syracuſa* and *Meffana*, betwixt which it ſtandeth. It was in this part of the Country that the *Cyclopes* dwelt, there being three little Rocky Iſlands (now not Inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclopum Scopuli*. *Charles* the Fifth wall'd and fortiſi'd this City againſt the *Turks*; ſince which there has been an Haven forced by *Pieris*, to promote its Trade: but in the Year 1669. it ſuffered very much by an Irruption of

Mount *Atna*, which has abated much of its former Wealth. The 11th of January 1693. it was intirely ruined by an Earthquake, with the deſtruction of 18000 of its Inhabitants.

4. On the Weſt part of *Sicil* lie the *AOLIAN* or *Vulcanian* Iſlands, heretofore only ſeven, and all almoſt of equal bigneſs; now eleven in number. The firſt name derived from *Aeolus*, once Lord of them, who being well ſkilled in divining from what Coaſts the Winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the Smoke aſcending from them) occaſioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan* the God of Fire; by reaſon of the continual flames of Fire from thence evaporating in thoſe elder days. But now the matter of thoſe flames being waſted in long tract of time, there is only one of them which burneth, now called *STROMBOLO*; by ſome Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundneſs of it. An Iſland of about ten Miles compaſs, but ſuch as ſeems to be no other than a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof iſſueth continually a flame like a burning Beacon, eaſily diſcernable far off, but at Nights eſpecially: a place ſo full of horror to the neighbouring Iſlanders, that they and many others of the *Romiſh Catholicks* conceive it to be Hell it ſelf. And yet in thoſe parts where the rage of the Fire offendeth not, it is of a very fruitful Soil, and apt for Tillage.

2. But the faireſt and beſt peopled of thoſe Iſlands, is that of *LIPARA*, ſome ten Miles in circuit, (from whence the reſt are called the *Liparean Iſles*) ſo named from *Lipara* the chief Town, ſaid to be built in the time of *Joſiah* King of *Judah*; the See of a Biſhop, under the Archbiſhop of *Meffana*. The Iſland generally fruitful, well furniſhed with *Allom*, *Sulphur*, and *Bitumen*; and with ſome hot medicinal Baths, which are much frequented, and from thence called *Thermeffa*, by the ancient Writers. It was formerly of ſo great Wealth, that falling into the diſpleaſure of *Agathocles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracufe*) they were able to buy their peace of him, at the ſum of one hundred Talents of Gold; which Sum they had no ſooner paid, but the Tyrant for a farewell, robbed their very Temples. Unprosperous in his Actions always after that Adventure. Nor ſped it better with the *Turks*, who in the Year 1544. laid the Country deſolate; in which condition it remained, till *Charles* the Fifth replenished it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very ſtrongly againſt all Invaſions.

3. Not far off lieth another of theſe Iſlands, now called *FAFOGNANA*, or *Fauciana*, but anciently *Aguſa*, conceived to be the ſame which *Livy* and *Florus* call *Agates*: in which there is a fair and capacious Bay, able to receive the greateſt Navies; and near to which *Lucretius Catulus* the Conſul gave the *Carthaginians* their laſt blow at Sea, which drew along with it the ſurrender of *Eryx*, and the loſs of *Sicil*. *Denyme*, *Ericoſæ*, *Eunymos*, and *Phœnicſæ*, four other of theſe Iſlands, but of leſſer note, I paſs over willingly; and make haſte to.

4. *HIERO*, the ſeventh and laſt of theſe Iſlands of any conſideration, and the eighth in tale, called alſo *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worſhipped; ſaid to have firſt appeared above the Water at ſuch time as *Scipio African* died. A barren, ſtony, and uninhabited place, by reaſon of the Fires which formerly have flamed ſo hideouſly (eſpecially in the Year 1444.) that it made not only the reſt of theſe Iſlands, but all *Sicily* tremble. Near unto this Iſle was fought the firſt Naval fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*: Before which time the *Romans* had never uſed the Seas, as being totally employed in the Conqueſt of *Italy*, inſomuch that when they had built their Gallies, they were ſain to exerciſe their Men in rowing, by placing them on two Seats near the Water with Oars in their hands. Which notwithstanding, having deviſed an Engine like a grappling Hook, they ſo faſten'd the adverſe Fleet unto them, that the whole Fight ſeemed a Land-battel fought upon the Sea. The Victory fell unto the *Romans*, *C. Duillius* the Conſul, then commanding in

in chief; and honoured with the first *Naval Triumph* that was ever solemnized at *Rome*.

After the Island of *Sicily* was once known to the *Greeks*, they sent from all their chief Cities several Colonies, who planted on the Sea-Coasts of the Country, as before noted. But so as they never united themselves in a body together, but had their several Estates and particular ends; whereby they came to be divided into many Factions, and at last made themselves a prey to as many Tyrants. *Phalaris* lording it at *Agrigentum*, *Panæti* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuse*, *Cleander* at *Gela*, and when one Faction grew too weak to resist the other, they called in several Foreign Nations to abet their Quarrel. For on this ground the *Carthaginians* were first called into *Sicily* by the *Messanians*, against the *Agrigentines*. And on the same was managed here a great part of the *Peloponnesian Wars*: the *Athenians* siding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with the *Syracusans*: in which the whole power of *Athens* was broken by Sea and Land; and their two Generals *Nicias* and *Demosthenes* murdered in Prison. But because *Syracuse* was a City of the greatest Authority, and of greatest influence over the rest of *Sicily*, we shall more punctually insist on the State-affairs thereof. The Government of which at first was popular, as it was in most of the *Greek Colonies*, according to the platforms which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Aristocratical*, when *Gelon* made himself King of it, about 26 Years after the expulsion of the *Tarquins* at *Rome*; whom with as many as succeeded in the Royal Dignity, take a long as followeth.

The Tyrants, or Kings of *Syracusa*.

A. M.

- 3465 1. *Gelon*, the Prince or Lord of *Gela*, taking advantage of the Quarrels in *Syracusa*, betwixt the Magistrates and People, made himself Master of the City; and was chosen King. A valiant and prudent Prince, by whom 150000 *Carthaginians* were slain in Battel for their first welcom into *Sicil*. 7.
- 3472 2. *Hiero*, the Brother of *Gelon*, a valiant King also, but a rude and covetous Man, whereby he lost the love of his People. 11.
- 3484 3. *Thrasybulus*, Brother of *Hiero*, whose Government proved so cruel and unsupportable, that it held not above ten Months; who being forced into Exile by the *Syracusans*, the People did a while enjoy their Liberty; but withal fell into those Factions, which after 60 Years made them lose it again.
- 3544 4. *Dionysius*, that so famous Tyrant, from being General of the Forces of the *Syracusans*, made himself their King: A Man of great Vices, but great Vertues withal. He brought almost all *Sicily* under his obedience, and the Town of *Rhegium* in *Italy*; reigning in all 38 Years.
- 3582 5. *Dionysius II.* succeeding his Father in his Kingdom and Vices, but not in Valour or Wisdom, was first outed by *Dion* a noble Gentleman of *Syracuse*; and afterward taken Prisoner by *Tymoleon* of *Corinth*, to which City he was sent, and there died in Exile.
- 3635 6. *Agathocles*, by trade a Potter, after that a Soldier: 20 Years after the death of *Tymoleon*, made himself King of *Syracuse*. To draw the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil*, he passed over into *Africk* and besieged *Carthage*; which example *Scipio* after followed, but with better fortune. 29.
- 3681 7. *Hiero II.* of a Commander of their Armies chosen King of *Syracuse*, by a Party which he had made amongst them. In his time brake out the first *Punic War*, the *Romans* being called in by the *Mamertines*, who held *Messana* against the *Carthaginians*; the Lords at that

time of the greatest part of the Island. 56.
3737 8. *Hieronymus*, the Son of *Hiero*, after whose death *Syracuse* and all *Sicil* became subject to *Rome*, by the fortunate conduct of *Marcellus*.

Of these eight Kings, the six first commonly pass under the name of *Tyrants*; from whence and from some others of like disposition, who lorded it over the rest of the free Cities of *Sicil*, the name of *Siculi Tyranni* grew into a Proverb. But of all none more hated than the two *Dionysii*, who were so odious, that there were continual Execrations poured on them; only one old Woman praying for the Life of the latter. Who being asked the cause, made answer, that she knew his Father to have been a monstrous and wicked Tyrant; on whom when the Curses of the People have prevailed, and obtained his Death; this his Son succeeded, worse by far than he; for whose Life she was resolved to pray, lest after his Death the Devil himself should come amongst them. But to proceed; after these *Tyrants*, as they called them, were rooted out, and the Island was conquered by *Marcellus*, it always followed the fortune of the *Roman Empire*. It fell into the hands of *Genfericus*, King of the *Goths*, in the Year 440. and was recovered from them by *Belisarius*, in the Reign of *Justinian*, about the Year 535. till in the partition of that Empire, it fell together with *Apulia* and *Calabria*, into the power of the *Greeks*. In the declining of whose Greatness, this Island having been miserably pillaged and spoiled by the Emperor *Constantine*, An. 669. became a prey to the *Saracens*, under whom it continued from the Year 827 to the Year 1070. It was in the mean time granted to the *Normans* by Pope *Nicholas* the Second, in the Year 1058. who held both this and the Realm of *Naples*, in Fee of the Church, under the Title of Kings of both *Sicils*. From that time forwards it ran the fortune of that Kingdom, subject unto the Princes of the *Norman* and *German* Lines; till the Death of *Conrade*, no interruption intervening. After whose Death when *Manfroy* or *Manfred*, the base Son of the Emperor *Frederick*, and Brother of *Conrade*, had forcibly made himself King of these Countries; it was offered to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, Brother to *Henry III.* of *England*: a Prince of such Riches, that he was able to dispense an hundred Marks *per Diem*, for ten Years together, which, according to the Standard of those times, was no small sum. But the Conditions which the Pope proposed were so impossible for the Earl to perform, that his Agent told him, he might as well say to his Master, *I will give thee the Moon; catch, climb up, and take it.* The Earl refusing it, it was offered the King for his second Son *Edmund*, who was invested by the gift of a Ring in 1255. and Money coined in his Name by the Popes appointment, with the Inscription of *Aimundus Rex Siciliae*. But the King not being able to pursue the business, because then overburthened by his Barons Wars, and the Pope having sucked no small store of Treasure from him; it was in the Year 1263. given unto *Charles* Earl of *Provence* and *Anjou*, Brother to *Louis X.* Under him those Countries jointly continued subject till the Year 1281. in which his Competitor, *Peter* of *Aragon*, claiming it in right of his Wife, Daughter of *Manfroy* before-mentioned, promising him to fight a single Combat before our King *Edward I.* at *Bordeaux*, failed of his Word; and in the mean time so contrived it, that at the sound of a Bell tolling to Prayers, all the *French-men* in *Sicily* were cruelly massacred. This exploit is known now under the name of *Vesperis Siculi*; and was managed by *John de Prochita*, a Gentleman of the Realm of *Naples*, whom *Charles* had dispossessed of the Isle of *Prochita*, whereof he had been formerly Lord; and not content to do him such a piece of Injustice, added a further Insolency to it, in the forcing his Wife. Provoked with these two Injuries, the abused Gentleman plots with King *Pedro* of *Aragon*, to make him Master of the Isle of *Sicily*, where he had very good Intelligences; and where the
French,

French by reason of their Lusts and Insolencies had so exasperated the Natives, that they were capable enough of any such impressions, as a Man sharing with him in his Sufferings could imprint upon them. According to the compact made, *Don Pedro* riggeth out his Navy, under pretence of some exploit against the *Moors*, and anchoreth in the Port of *Sardinia*, there to expect how well the Tragedy would be acted; which fell out so agreeably to his expectation, that in one instant as it were, on the signal given, the *French* were universally murdered in all parts of the Island: The People being so enraged, that they would not spare Women great with Child, if supposed to have been got by any of that hated Nation; and *Pedro* coming in with his Navy as the deed was done, was by the general consent of all sorts of People crowned King of *Sicily*. A bloody policy, I confess, which as the *Actors* learned of the *English Saxons*, who had made like riddance of the *Danes*; so did they teach it to the *French*, who practised it on the *Hugonots* of *France*, in that horrid Massacre of *Paris*, An. 1572. This *Sicilian* Massacre was an Act which so provoked the Pope, that he solemnly accursed the King, and caused many of the neighbouring Princes to arm against him. But the Fox fared never the worse for that: who did so order his Affairs, that he did both clear his own Country of those Enemies which on the Pope's Curse had come in against him; and settled *Sicily* more firmly in obedience to him. Since which time this Island hath belonged to the House of *Aragon*, but not always in possession of the Kings thereof, being a while governed as a State apart by its own Kings, whose Succession followeth.

Kings of *Sicily*, of the House of *Aragon*.

- 1281 1. *Pedro*, or *Peter I.* King of *Aragon* by Birth, of *Sicily* in right of his Wife, the choice of the People, and the Legacy of *Coradine* (the last of the Royal Line of *Suevia*) but principally by the power of the Sword.
- 1285 2. *James*, the second Son of *Pedro*, King of *Sicily*, after the death of his Brother *Alfonso*, succeeded in *Aragon*, to which Crown he added the Isle of *Sardinia*.
- 1296 3. *Frederick*, the Brother of *James*, on his Brothers taking the Crown of *Aragon*, got possession of *Sicily*. By *Frederick Alfonso*, a younger Son of this *Frederick*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* came into this Family.
- 1336 4. *Peter*, or *Pedro II.* Son of *Frederick*.
- 1342 5. *Frederick II.*
6. *Peter*, or *Pedro III.*
7. *Lewis*, Son to *Peter III.*
- 1355 8. *Frederick III.* in the Life of *Lewis* his Brother called Duke of *Athens*; after his death succeeded in the Kingdom of *Sicily*.
- 1389 9. *Martin*, Son to *Martin I.* King of *Aragon*, succeeded in the right of his Wife *Blanch*, Daughter of *Frederick III.* and dying without Issue, gave the Kingdom unto *Martin* his Father.
- 1409 10. *Martin II.* of *Sicily*, and the first of *Aragon*, of which last he was King by birth, and of the former by the gift of his Son. After which time the Isle of *Sicily* being again united to the Crown of *Aragon*, was never separated from it; except it were when *John* King of *Aragon* gave it to *Ferdinand* his Son, the better to fit him for the Bed of *Isabel* Princess of *Castile*, with whom the Match was then in treaty; and when the Emperor *Charles V.* gave it, with *Naples*, unto *Philip*, his eldest Son, on his Marriage with *Mary* Queen of *England*, who thereupon was stiled King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Jerusalem*. But this held only for a Year: his Father shortly after resigning to him all his Kingdom, whereby it became joined to *Spain* again.

The Revenues of this Kingdom are by some said to be but 800000, but as others say, a Million of Ducats, most of which is again disbursed on the entertainment of the *Vice-Roy*, and the defence of the Island. The Arms are, Or, four Pallets *Gules* (being those of *Aragon*) betwixt two Flanches *Sargent*, charged with as many Eagles *Sable*, beaked *Gules*, which was the bearing of *Manfrey*, King of *Naples*, and *Sicily*, spoken of before, who gave those Arms with reference to his descent from the *German* Emperors.

This Island, for the number of its Nobility, compares with *Naples*, as having in the time of *Ortelius*, 80 Years ago, 7 Princes, 4 Dukes, 12 Marquesses, 14 Earls, 1 Viscount, 48 Barons: Men of Authority and Power in their several Territories, and therefore not permitted to live much in the Island, the greatest part of their time being spent in the Court of *Spain*, but more to satisfy that King upon reason of State, than any affection of their own to so long an exile: But notwithstanding this, the Policy of the Inhabitants of this Island forced the *Spaniards* to recal all their Taxes in the Year 1647. And for the Government of the Church,

Here are Archbishops 3. Bishops 9.

The Kingdom of SARDINIA.

THE Island and Kingdom of *SARDINIA* lieth West from *Sicily*, from the nearest point whereof called *Cape Boii*, or *Cape Coro*, it is distant about 200 Miles. It is in length 180 Miles, 90 in breadth, 560 in the circuit; and is situate under the fourth Climate, the longest Day being 14 Hours.

In the time of *Aristotle* it was called *Ichnusa*, next *Sandaliotis*, from the resemblance which it hath to a Man's Shoo or Sandal; and finally *Sardinia*, from *Sardus* the Son of *Hercules*, who coming out of *Africk* possessed the same. For this there is sufficient authority amongst the Ancients. Of the first Names, saith *Pliny* in as plain terms as may be, that *Timeus* called *Sardinia Sandaliotis*, and *Myrsilus*, *Ichnusa*, from the similitude which it hath to the Shoo-sole, or impression of a Man's Foot on the Ground; *Sardiniam Timeus Sandaliotin appellavit ab effigie solea*; *Myrsilus, Ichnusam à similitudine vestigii*. And for the last, nothing can be more plain than that of *Pausanias*, who tells, that the first who came by Shipping into *Sardinia*, were certain *Africans* under the conduct of *Sardus* the Son of *Maceris*, whom the *Agyptians* called by the name of *Hercules*; who coming into this Island then called *Ichnusa*, τὸ ὄνομα ὡπὸ τοῦ Σάρδω τέτι μετέβαλεν ἢ ἰππης, caused it after his own Name to be called *Sardinia*. For further evidence whereof, the People in the *Latin* Tongue are called *Sardi*; the adjoining Sea *Mare Sardinum*. And to this Name it was so constant, that no following Plantations from other Countries were ever able to alter it. Some Companies of *Attica*, led by *Iolaus*, came and settled here, where they built *Olbia*, and *Agrillis*: leaving a Memory of *Iolaus* their Captain in some places, which remained in the time of *Pausanias*, called *Iolaia*; and taking to themselves for his sake the Name of *Iolatenses*. And after the destruction of *Troy*, some of that scattered Nation came and planted in some void parts of the Island; kept to themselves the Name of *Ilienses*, and by that Name are mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Livy*. But neither of these Nations did attempt the change of the Name, because not of ability to suppress or out-power the Natives. Nor could the *Carthaginians* do it, though a more puissant Nation than the former were; and such as by the nearness of their habitation (*Sardinia* being distant but 160 Miles from *Africk*) had all advantages to make (as at last they did) a full Conquest of it: building therein the Cities of *Charmus*, *Chalaris*, and *Sulchi*: and holding it until it was unjustly extorted from them by the *Romans*, at the end of the first *Punic* War,

War, at what time *Carthage* was in danger to be ruined by the revolt of her own *Mercenaries*, and so not able to resist.

But of the Name and first Plantations of this Island we have said enough. Let us now look upon the place, in which it is reported, that there is neither Wolf nor Serpent, neither venomous nor hurtful Beast, but the Fox only, and a little Creature like a Spider, which will by no means endure the light of the Sun, except held by violence. Some Pools it hath, and those very plentiful of Fish; but generally so destitute of River-water, that they are fain to keep the Rain which falls in Winter, for their use in Summer. By means whereof, and for that there is no passage for the Northern Winds, being obstructed by the high Mountain near Cape *Lugudori*, the Air is generally unhealthy, if not pestilential: Infomuch that *Tully* writing to his Brother *Quintus*, being then in this Island, adviseth him to remember, as in point of Health, that he was in *Sardinia*; and speaking of *Tigellius*, a *Sardinian* born, saith of him, that he was more pestilent than the Country which bred him.

The Soil is very fertile in respect of *Corfica*, but barren if compared with *Sicily*, which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman, than any natural defect in the Soil it self. Well stored with all sorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheese and Hides which are sent hence yearly into *Italy* and other places. The Horses hereof, hot, head-strong, and hard to be broken, but will last long. The Bullocks naturally amble, so that the Country-man rideth them as familiarly as they do in *Spain* on Mules and Asses. Here is also the Beast called *Mufrones*, or *Muscrones*, found in *Corfica* also, but in no other part of *Europe*; somewhat resembling a Stag, but of so strong an Hide, that it is used by the *Italians* instead of Armour: Of the Skin of which, carried to *Cordova* in *Spain*, and there dressed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally, here is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is said he will die with Laughter; whence came the Proverb, *Rifus Sardonicus*. The truth of which report I shall not dispute, tho' it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poy'ous nature, causeth Men to die with such a Convulsion or attraction of Sinews, that they seem to grin, or laugh at the time of their death.

The People are small of Stature, of Complexion inclining unto swarthiness, and that either by reason of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their *African* extraction: their Behaviour much participating of that People also. So slothful in the times of the *Romans*, that they were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compel them to work; but now esteemed a very painful and laborious Nation. Much given to Hunting, and so prone to Rebellion, that the *Spaniard* permitteth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceable among themselves, and in some measure courteous unto Strangers also. Their Language a corrupt *Catalonian*; their Diet on Meats common on gross; their Apparel in the Towns (especially that of the Women) gorgeous, in the Villages fordid.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make most shew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their Neighbourhood to their Pope, and their subjection to the *Spaniard*, have imposed upon them. But in their practice of it they are loose enough, going to *Mass* on *Sundays* and *Saints-days*; which done they fall a dancing in the midst of the Church, singing in the mean time Songs too immodest for an *Alle-bouffe*. Nay, it is thought that their *Clergy* it self is the most rude, ignorant, and illiterate of any People in *Christendom*; saying their *Masses* rather by rote, than reason, and utterly unable to give any account of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, *viz.* Cape *Lugudori*, toward *Corfica*; and Cape *Cagliari*, towards *Africk*; the first the east, and withal mountainous and

barren; the last the larger, level, and by much more fruitful. Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Calaris*, first built by the *Carthaginians*, and situate in that point of the Island which lieth nearest to *Africk*; which from hence took the name of Cape *Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of such fame, when it was first taken by *Gracchus*, for the use of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs urbium*; and was destroyed by the said *Gracchus*, the better to disable the Natives from rebelling against the Conquerors. Being new built again in more settled times, it was a second time destroyed by the *Sarazens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Pisans*, at such time as they were Masters of this part of the Island. Very well fortified by Nature, as seated on the top of an Hill; and hath under it a spacious and goodly Haven, much frequented by Merchants. The Town it self adorned with a beautiful Temple, being the See of an Archbishop, many fair Turrets, and the constant Residence of the Vice-Roy: from whose authority it is exempt by especial privilege, as to the legal Government of it; and ordered by a Common-Council of its own Citizens. 2. *Bossa*, on the West side of the Island, another Arch-Episcopal See. 3. *S. Reparata*, on the North, looking towards *Corfica*. 4. *Aquilastre*, on the Western Shores. 5. *Saffary*, a Town of consequence, where they have an *Aqueduct* twelve Miles long, reaching from thence unto *S. Gavius*. 6. *Alghes-bosa*, a good Town situate in a wholesome Air, and a fertile Soil, and having a fair Haven of six miles in length, in which the Ships of *Genoa* and *Catalonia* do most commonly ride. 7. *Orestagne*, a large Town, but very ill peopled, by reason of a bad Air which proceeds from the Fens; the Country about which gives title to the Marquess of *Orestagne*. 8. *Turrita*, once a *Roman* Colony, now little better than a ruine; yet giving title to the third Archbishop of this Island, who is called in Latin, *Turritanus*. Here are also in divers parts of this Island the remainders of sundry Towers and Forts which the People call *Noracks* from *Nora*, one of the Sons of *Geryon*; who (as they think) came into this Country, and built the first dwelling or mansion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath so much in it of Historical and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from *Spain* came and planted here, under the conduct of one *Nora*; somewhat before the expedition of the *Atticks* under *Iolans*, as *Pausanias* testifieth.

This Island taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is said, was first under the immediate Jurisdiction of the *Praefect* of the City of *Rome*; but after by *Justinian* was made a Province of his new Diocess of *Africk*; and as a part thereof, or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Sarazens*, Anno 807. From them recovered by the joint-forces of the *Pisans* and the *Genoese*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called Cape *Cagliari*, being allotted to the *Pisans*; and the Northern towards *Corfica*, to those of *Genoa*. But the *Genoese* not content with the partage, (their portion of the Island being less in quantity, and worse in quality) began to quarrel with the *Pisans*, and at the last to break into open Wars. To part the Fray, Pope *Boniface VIII.* bestowed it on *James* King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoese*, Anno 1324. became Master of it. The *Aragonian* before that did pretend some Title to it, in right of the Kingdom of *Sicily*, then in his possession; to some preceding Kings whereof it had once been subject: and having backed that Claim by the Pope's Donation, who challenged it as a part of *St. Peter's* Patrimony; incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpose of performance, that being only a device to fetch him off from the Party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered: and was as suddenly laid by, as if it had done the feat intended in the Proposition.

The

The Government hereof is by a Vice-roy, who resides at *Calaris*, and must of necessity be a *Spaniard*, under whom are two Deputy Governors, *Spaniards* also; the one for *Cape Cagliari*, the other for *Cape Lugudori*. Inferior Officers of Command may be of the Natives. What Profits arise hence to the Crown of *Spain*, I have nowhere found. The Arms hereof are said to be Or, a Cross Gules, betwixt four *Sarazens* heads Sable, curled Argent. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moors*: but first taken (as some say) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occasion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moors* which were found severed from their Bodies in the Battel of *Alcoraz*, Anno 1094. won by *Don Pedro*, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

There are divers small Islands about *Sardinia*, as 1. *Ifola Rossa*, heretofore called *Pbintanis*. 2. the Isle of *Hercules*, now called *Asinaria*. 3. *St. Peters*, anciently *Hieracum*, or *Accipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Island,
Archbishops 3. Bishops 15.

The Land of the CHURCH.

WEST of the Realm of *Naples*, lieth the LAND OF THE CHURCH, extended North and South from the *Adriatick* to the *Tuscan* Seas. Bounded on the North-East with the River *Trontus*, on the South-east with the *Axofenus*, by which two parted from that Kingdom; as on the North-West by the River *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which separated from the State of *Venice*; and on the South-West with the River *Pisico*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuscany*, or the State of the *Florentine*.

By this Accompt the Pope's Dominion taketh up the whole middle of *Italy*; having in breadth from the one Sea unto the other above two hundred Miles, and in the length along the *Adriatick* to the furthest parts of *Romandiola*, above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth most fitly for the command of all the rest, it being very easie for the Popes to convey their Forces by Sea or Land, into what part thereof they please. And were it not that the Popes commonly are of several Factions; and that the Successor pursueth not the designs of his Predecessors, but hath his own ends to himself, which for the most part are driven on without consideration of encreasing the publick *Patrimony*; it is not possible, but that the Pope long before this time, had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, considering the extraordinary fertility of the Soil, able to spare Provisions for the greatest Armies; the multitudes of People which it may afford, in regard they are so seldom consumed by Wars; and that the Men of this Dominion (but chiefly those of *Rome*, and the parts adjoining, are conceived to be the best Soldiers of *Italy*; as retaining some sparks of their Ancestors Valour, together with their Gravity, Magnificence, and a certain greatness of Courage, which seems to be particular to them of this Nation. And they preserve also to this day so much of the ancient *Roman*, as to prefer any kind of Life before Trades or Merchandize. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dressed, and all things done exactly in the way of Husbandry: yet for their *Manufactures* they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both sides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little cost might be made very useful: yet do they no way improve their Fortunes, or the publick *Patrimony* in the way of *Traffick*; which is the main defect of the *Papal Policy*, and filleth a rich Country full of poor and indigent Persons. Those who have

of late Years travel'd into *Italy* represent things quite otherwise. One of our own Country-men thus expresseth himself: "All the way from *Florence*, through the Great Duke's Country, looked so sad that I concluded it must be the most dispeopled of all *Italy*; but indeed I changed my Note, when at *Pont Centino* I came into the Popes Territories, where there was a rich Bottom all uncultivated, and not so much as stock'd with Cattel: But as I pass'd from *Fiascone* to *Viterbo*, this appear'd yet more amazing, for a vast Champion Country lay almost quite desolate; and that wide Town hath yet few Inhabitants, and those looked so poor and miserable, that the People in the ordinary Towns in *Scotland*, and in its worst places, make a better appearance. And within a Day's Journey of *Rome*, tho' the Soil was rich, and lay so sweetly, that it far exceeds any thing I ever saw out of *Italy*; yet it had neither Inhabitants in it, nor Cattel upon it to the tenth part of what it would bear; and a little after, as I went out of *Rome*, on the other side towards *Naples*, and on the way to *Civita Vecchia*, a vast rich Champion Country that runs all along to *Terracina*, which is a hundred Miles from the former, and is in many places twelve and twenty Miles broad, is abandoned to such a degree, that as far as ones Eye can see there is often not so much as one House to be seen, but on the Hills that are on the North side of this Valley: And by this dispeopling of the Country the Air is now become so unwholesome, that it is not safe to lodge a Night in it, especially in the Summer, the Water for want of draining rotting the Ground, and producing such noisome Steams, that it is felt even in *Rome* it self; and if it were not for the Breezes that come from the Mountains it would be intolerable.

This Learned Author ascribes all this desolation to the ill Government of the Popes, who being Elective, are yet Absolute in their Temporal Powers, and each of them endeavouring to make the best he can possibly for the benefit of his own Family, it has been by degrees reduced to this miserable state of Desolation and Ruine. The Popes have not been contented of late Years to tax their Subjects too high, but they have the preemption of all the Corn too that grows in the Ecclesiastical State, so that no Profit is made by the Owners out of the Tillage of the Soil, all that going wholly to the Pope: And as the Apostle observes, *He that ploughs must plough in hope*, that is, to be the better for it one Day, intimating, that without this Hope, no Man would plough. So here it is literally fulfill'd, and no Man takes care for more than will be needful for his own Family; so that it is thought a fourth part of the Inhabitants of *Rome* it self have left that City within the last ten Years. So that what ever the Pope anciently might have done, it is most certain at this day he is not able to defend his Country against any Prince that is able to bring 20000 Men into the Field.

In the Year 1557. when Pope *Paul* the Fourth forced *Philip* the Second into a War against him, that Prince took above a hundred Towns from him with a small Army; and if he had not been strangely addicted to this See, he might easily have strip'd it of all its Territories, and have taken *Rome* it self: And since that time it was never able to do any thing against any of the greater States of *Italy*. And when *Paul* the Fifth Interdicted the *Venetians*, in the Year 1606. and threatned a War against him, the *French* and *Spaniards* refusing to assist him, he was forced to an ignoble Peace, purely for want of Force to compel that State to submit to him. *Baudrand* who travel'd over all the Pope's Territories, speaks of the Desolations of it in every place, tho' he was a zealous *Roman Catholick*. And I have heard the same things from many other who have travel'd over his Dominions. But to proceed to the description of the Pope's Estate: it containeth the Provinces of 1. *Romandiola*. 2. The Territory of *Ferrara*. 3. The Estate of *Urbine*. 4. *Marca*

Anconitana. 5. *Ducato Spoletano* with *Sabinia*. 6. *St. Peter's Patrimony*, and 7. *Campagna di Roma*.

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the River *Isaurus* (now called *Foglio*) by which parted from the Dukedom of *Urbina* on the East, to the Dukedom of *Parma* on the West, from which parted by the River *Panaro*, called of old *Scultenna*: and from the *Apennine* on the South to *Padus*, and the *Adriatick* on the North. It was called anciently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminius* the Roman Consul, who having won it from the *Gauls*, planted Colonies in it, and had the honour (though he pursued this War against the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better passage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Causeway, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia*. Chief Rivers hereof, besides those spoken of already, which are only borderers; 1. *Ariminum*, now called *Marechia*; and 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Pissatello*, betwixt *Ariminum* and *Ravenna*, of which more anon.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Bononia* (or *Boulogne*) seated in a spacious Plain near the *Apennine* Hills, a very populous City, of a round form, and a great circuit: the building Antique, seeming for the most part to be the work of the *Lombards*, the foundation of the Houses of Free-stone, the rest of Bricks; built with arched Cloysters towards the Street, under which one may walk dry in the greatest Rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief University of *Italy*, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civil Law is much studied here, insomuch that from hence proceeded the famous Civilians *Johannes Andreas*, *Aza*, *Bartolus*, and *Socinus*. I believe they have built Castles in the Air, which ascribe the founding of this University to *Theodosius II.* The Charter of whose foundation dated *Anno 423.* is an idle and foolish thing. For there it is said that at the institution there were present *Gualter* Earl of *Poitiers*, Ambassador for the King of *England*; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, for the King of *France*: When at that time, neither those Earldoms, or those Kingdoms were in *rerum natura*. It is situate on the River *Aposa*, and was by former Writers called *Felsina*. Near unto this Town in a Demy-Island called *Forcelli*, was that meeting between *Augustus*, *Anthony*, and *Lepidus*; wherein they agreed on the *Triumvirate*, dividing the Empire and City of *Rome* among themselves: which Combination was confirmed by the ensuing *Proscription*; wherein, that they might be revenged on *Cicero*, *Lepidus* proscribed his Brother; *Antonius*, his Uncle. 2. *Remini*, anciently called *Ariminum*, seated on the mouth of the River *Ariminum*, of no great note, but for giving name unto this City, and now called *Marechia*. The City large, and seated in a plentiful and pleasant Soyl, abundantly productive of Wines, Figs and Olives; wealthy withal, the Trade which formerly enriched *Ravenna*, being for the most part managed here. Divided by the River into the City and the Suburbs, but joyned together by a fair and stately Bridge built over it by *Augustus Cæsar*, who also erected in the City a *Triumphal Arch*. It is situate somewhat East of the River *Rubicon*, which in those times divided *Italy* from *Gaul*: Upon the Bank whereof, looking towards this Town, there was an old Marble Pillar, having on it a *Latine* Inscription to this purpose, *viz. Leave hereby Colours, and lay down thine Arms, and pass not with thy Forces beyond Rubicon; whosoever goeth against this command; let him be held an enemy to the People of Rome.* Which Rule when *Cæsar* had transgressed, and surprized this City, he so frightened *Pompey* and his Faction, that they abandoned *Italy* and *Rome* it self, and withdrew themselves into *Epirus*. It is said that *Cæsar* dreamed the night before, that he carnally knew his own Mother: whereby the Soothsayers gathered that he should be Lord of *Rome*, which was the common Mother of them all. Which Dream, and several Prodigies hapning at the same time with it, did so encourage him in his Enter-

prise, that he is said, at the passing over *Rubicon*, to have said these words, *Eamus quod nos Deorum ostente, &c.* Let us go whither the Sins of our Enemies, and the Prodigies of the Gods do call us. In memory of which venturous, but fortunate action, he caused a Monument to be erected in this City, with his Name and Titles. It was anciently a *Roman Colony*, and in the Bustles hapning betwixt the Pope and the Emperour, was seized on by the *Malatesti*, as *Bononia* was by the *Bentivoli*, two potent Families of these parts; who held them in defiance of the Popes of *Rome*, till they were reduced again unto the Church, by Pope *Julio* the Second. 3. *Cervia*, on the *Adriatick* Sea, where there is made so much Salt, that they furnish therewith all their Neighbours of *Marca Anconitana*, and a great part of *Lombardy*: the Pope receiving for his Customs of this one Commodity, no less than 60000 Crowns per annum. 4. *Furlii*, (called of old *Forum Livii*) one of the Towns belonging properly to the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, seated in a very pleasant Air, and a fruitful Soyl, betwixt two fresh Streams; of which the one is called *Ronchus*, and the other *Montonus*. 5. *Faventia*, now called *Faenza*, on the banks of *Anemus*, a calm gentle River; an ancient City, but well peopled: much benefited by the Flax which groweth in the adjoining Fields, and the Earthen Vessels which they vend to most parts of *Italy*. It was first given unto the Popes by *Desiderius* the last King of the *Lombards*, whom they but sordidly requited for so great a courtesie. 6. *Sarsina*, an old City, seated at the foot of the *Apennine*, the birth place of *Plautus* the Comedian; 7. *Imola*, anciently called *Forum Cornelii*, and 8. *Cesena*, Cities both of them of no small Antiquity; but this last the fairer built, the better peopled, and the more strongly fortified: there being a strong Castle on the top of an Hill, the work of *Frederick II.* Emperour and King of *Germany*. This Town, with that of *Sarsina*, spoken of before, seem to be seated on the banks of the River *Rubicon*, now called *Pissatello*. 9. *Ravenna*, situate in the embracements of two Rivers, called *Montonus* and *Ronchus*: by the confluence whereof at their fall or influx into the *Adriatick*, it was once beautified with one of the fairest Havens in the World, and for that cause made the Road of one of the two Navies, which *Augustus* always kept manned to command the whole Empire of *Rome*: the other riding at *Misenus* in *Campania*. This of *Ravenna*, being in the upper Sea, awed and defended *Dalmatia*, *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Asia*, &c. the other at *Misenus*, in the lower Sea, protected and kept under *France*, *Spain*, *Africk*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, &c. The Walls of this City are said to have been built or repaired by *Tiberius Cæsar*; the whole City to have been much beautified by *Theodoricus* King of the *Goths*, who built here a most stately and magnificent Palace; the ruins whereof are still easily discernable. The private buildings are but mean, the publick ones are of a grave, but stately structure. Of which the principal heretofore was the Church of *St. Mary the Round*, whose Roof was of one entire Stone, and honoured with the rich Sepulcher of the said King *Theodorick*: which the Soldiers (in the sack of this City by the *French*, *An. 1512.*) pulled down together with the Church it self, only to get the Jewels and Medals of it. The principal at the present is the Church of *St. Vitalis*, the Pavement hereof is all of Marble, and the Walls all covered with precious Stones of many sorts, but unpolished as they were taken out of Mines; which sheweth as well the Magnificence as Antiquity of it. The *Patriarchs* of this City, in regard it was so long the Regal and Imperial Seat, have heretofore contended for precedency with the Popes themselves: not brought to yield the place to those proud pretenders, till *Donus II.* in the short time of his Papacy about the year 975. did in fine prevail. And this they did upon good reasons, this City having been anciently the *Metropolis* of the Province called *Flaminia*, afterwards honoured with the Seat of the Emperour *Honorius*, and his

his Successors; next of the *Gothish* Kings, then of the *Exarchs*, and last, of its *Patriarchs*. And it was chosen for this purpose, because of the plentiful Territory, since covered with water; and the conveniency of the Haven, at this day choked: though lately by expence of a great deal of Treasure, the Fens about the City have been very much drained; and the Bogs in some places turned to fruitful Fields, to the great benefit hereof both for health and pleasure; but however it begins now to decline again, and is at this day in a waisting condition.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently together with the Territories of *Ferrara*, and some part of *Trevigiana*, the Habitation of the *Boii*, who with the *Senones*, the *Insubres*, and the *Cenomani*, made up the whole body of the *Cisalpine Gauls*, of whom more hereafter. Finding the *Romans* grown too near them, by whom the *Senones* their next Neighbours had been rooted out, they thought it was high time to bestir themselves, especially after the defeat given them by the Consul *Minutius*, who carried the War home unto them; which never any of the *Romans* had done before. For after this, under *Carolamus* their King, they set upon *Marcellus* the Consul, killing 3000 of his men, but vanquished and subdued by him in a following Battel. Vanquished again not far from *Mutina* by *Cornelius Merula*, with the loss of 14000 of their men, they called both the *Insubrian* and *Transalpine Gauls* to come in to aid them. But being then vanquished also at the Battel of *Telamon* (of which more in *Lombardy*) A. U. C. 528. they were followed home, and utterly subdued by the Consul *Flaminius*, as before was said: after which times this Country following the same fortunes with the rest of *Italy*, became subject to the *Goths*, as a part of their *Italian* Conquests: whose Kingdom here was no sooner destroyed by *Narses*, but the *Lombards* entred. To give a stop to whose successes, and preserve so much unto the Empire as was not already conquered by them; it was thought good by *Justine II.* to send thither an Imperial Officer of principal command and note, whom he honoured with the Title of *Exarch*. His residence settled at *Ravenna*, as standing most commodiously to hinder the incursions of the barbarous Nations; and withal to receive such aids from the Eastern parts, as his occasions did require. These *Exarchs* having divided *Italy* into many Governments, appointed over each some Supreme Commander, dignified with the name of Dukes. And even the City of *Rome* it self (so far then was it from being subject to the Pope in *Temporal* matters) had a chief Officer of this kind (accountable to the *Exarch*, and subordinate to him) whose Government was called the *Roman Dukedom*. That which they kept unto themselves as their own peculiar, contained the Cities of *Ravenna*, *Rhegium*, *Mutina*, *Bononia*, *Classi*, *Forli*, *Forlimpoli*, *Sarfino*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*: which ten Cities, with the Territories belonging to them, made up that *District* which properly was called the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*; much mentioned in the Histories of the middle times, by reason of the continual Wars which they had with the *Lombards*, but newly entred when this Magistracy had its first beginning. The names of these *Exarchs* are as follow.

The Exarchs of Ravenna.

A. C.

- 570 1 *Longius* 21.
- 591 2 *Smaragdus* 4.
- 595 3 *Romanus Patricius*.
- 596 4 *Gallinicus* 13.
- 609 5 *Smaragdus* 3.
- 612 6 *Joh. Lamigius* 4.
- 616 7 *Elutherius* 5.
- 621 8 *Isaacus Patricius* 24.
- 645 9 *Theodorus Calliopia* 10.
- 655 10 *Olympius* 2.
- 657 11 *Theodorus Calliopia* II. 30.
- 687 12 *Joh. Plotina* 15.

702 13 *Theophilus* 25.

727 14 *Paulus*.

728 15 *Eutichus* 12. In the days of this *Exarch*, *Ravenna* was taken from the Empire, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, An. 744. But regained by *Charles* the Great, and by him given to the Bishops of *Rome*, together with *Anconitana* and *Spoleto*, as a requital for the Kingdom of *France*, confirmed unto King *Pepin* his Father, by the consent and authority of the Popes. The Donation of this *Exarchate* to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the *Exarchs*, and partly to make the people obedient to those Prelates, changed the Name of the Country from *Flaminia* (by which Name it was formerly known) to *Romandiola*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithstanding which Donation, or Original Grant, the Popes enjoyed not long the possession of it: The Emperors of *Germany*, and their Vicegerents in *Italy*, wresting it by strong hand out of the possession of the Church; and giving it to such as deserved well of them, and were most likely, or most able to uphold their Faction. And so it stood, till the late Popes conspiring with the *French* King, *Louis* the twelfth, and *Francis* the first, brought them into *Italy*, Anno 1519. and by their Aids, and by the Censure of the Church, so prevailed in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna*, and some other places, out of the hands of the *Venetians*, ejected many petit Princes out of other Cities, which they pretended to belong to *St. Peter's* Patrimony; and thereby got possession of all those Territories, which lie betwixt the State of *Venice*, and the *Marches* of *Ancona*.

The Territory of *FERRARA* lieth in the very skirts of *Romandiola* towards the *Venetian*, extending one hundred and sixty Miles in length, and about fifty in breadth: The soil thereof exceeding rich, but subject to the overflowings of the River *Po*; which makes the Air in many places to be somewhat unwholsom. And though as well the former Dukes as the Popes, who are now Lords hereof have been at great charge in raising high Banks and Ramparts to keep in the Waters; yet could not this resist the violence of the River, falling from so high a Spring, and seconded with so great Land-floods (as sometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them, do they what they can. The places of most note herein, are 1. *Graffignan* in the borders of *Tuscany*, near the *Apennine*. 2. *Carpi*, a place of great importance, seated in the midst of this Dukedom; belonging heretofore to the house of the *Pici*. But partly by exchange made with *Marcus Picus*, partly for one hundred thousand Crowns in ready Money, given unto *Lionel Pico*, once the Lord hereof; it was by *Charles* the 5th incorporated into this Estate. 3. *Commachia*, seated in the Marshes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Este*, were at first called only Lords of *Commachia*; a place which yielded great profit to the former Dukes, by the fishing of Eels; but it is now small and very little inhabited, by reason of the badness of the Air. 4. *Saxole*, given by Duke *Alphonso* in exchange for *Carpi*. Here is also the Territory and Lordship of the *Polesin*, the cause of so many Quarrels and Contentions between the ancient Dukes of *Ferrara* and the States of *Venice*. But the chief honour of this Dukedom is in the Capital City that which denominates the whole. *Ferrara* a City of five Miles in compass, so called from the Iron Mines which are about it; commodiously seated on the River *Po*, which by reason of its breadth, depth and violent swiftness of the current, is a sufficient Rampart to it on that side; the other sides being fortified with a strong Wall, and a spacious Mote. In the middle of the City is a fair and spacious Market place, into which do open on all sides about twenty Streets, all of them half a Mile in length; and all so straight and evenly built, that the furthest end of each of them may be easily seen. Near to this Market-place is a little Island, in which the former Dukes had a stately Palace, called *Belvedere*, from the fair Prospect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the North-

North-side of the City a large Park for pleasure. The other Houses are for the most part built of fair Free-stone, not joining unto one another as in other Cities, but at pretty distance with neat Gardens between. *Ariosto*, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioso*, and *Hierome Savonarolo* the Prophetical Frier, were both of them Natives of this place: of which the first lieth here entombed, the last for preaching against the Pope, was burnt at *Florence*.

In the declining of the Power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City, together with *Faenza*, was given by *Desiderius* their last King, to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by so great a benefit. But being taken from them by the Emperors of the House of *Schwaben*, it was again recovered by the prowess of the Countess *Mathildis*, *in. 1107.* who took it, with many other Towns in *Italy*, from the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, and at her death conferred the same upon the Church. The Popes once more possessed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azo* of the House of *Este*, a Man of great sway in the Affairs of *Italy*, who valiantly had defended it against *Ezelinus*, Vicegerent of *Frederick* the Second. This was the first of this Family who had *Ferrara* in propriety: His Ancestors being called before, the Marquesses of *Este*, and sometimes Marquesses of *Ferrara*, (but in Title only) as Governors hereof in behalf of the Pope of *Rome*. *Obizo* the Grandchild of this first *Azo*, obtained of *Rodolphus* the First, (who was willing to make what Money he could of his Lands in *Italy*) the Cities of *Rhegium* and *Modena*; that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legate of Pope *Benedict* the Ninth, with the Pope's consent, *Anno 1304.* Other Improvements there were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of War, but none of them continued constant in their possession but these three Cities and the Territories adjoining to them. As for this Family *de Este* (*Familia Atestina*, it is called in *Latin*) it took this name from *Esta*, or *Ateste*, a small Town in the Seignury of *Venice*, conferred upon the Ancestors of this *Azo*, by *Charles* the Great: And for the Chiefs or Princes of it, they have been of great Authority and Power in their several times, commanding sometimes the *Venetian* Armies, and sometimes the Pope's; great favourers of Learned Men, and advancers of Learning; insomuch that the *Reinaldo's* and *Rogero's* of *Este*, make up a great part of the Poems of *Ariosto* and *Tasso*, two of the greatest Wits of *Italy*; and finally allied to many of the best Houses of *Christendom*. The Catalogue of whom, since they were made the Hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here subjoined.

The Dukes and Marquesses of Ferrara.

- 1236 1 *Aelius*, or *Azo de Este*, the Ninth of that Name, but first Hereditary Marquess of *Ferrara*, by the Grant of the Pope.
- 1264 2 *Obizo*, the Sixth of that Name, Grandson to *Azo*, by his Son *Reinaldo*, second Marquess of *Ferrara*.
- 1293 3 *Azo* the Tenth of *Este*, and Second of *Ferrara*, Son to *Obizo*.
- 1308 4 *Francisco*, Brother to *Azo* the Second, after whose death, *Anno 1312.* *Ferrara* for a time was under the command of the Popes.
- 1312 5 *Alabrandinus*, Brother of *Franciscus*, who had the Title to, but not the Possession of *Ferrara*.
- 1315 6 *Reinaldo* the Third of *Este*, and the First of *Ferrara*, recovered *Ferrara* from the Pope, and cast out his Garisons, 1317.
- 1335 7 *Obizo* II. Brother of *Reinaldo*.
- 1352 8 *Alabrandino* II. Son of *Obizo*.
- 1361 9 *Nicolaus*, the Second of *Este*, and First of *Ferrara*, Brother of *Alabrandino*, whose Children being young he dispossessed of the Estate.
- 1388 10 *Albertus*, Brother of *Nicolas*, the Founder of

the University of *Ferrara*, *Anno 1392.*

- 1382 11 *Nicolas* II. base Son of *Albertus*.
- 1441 12 *Leonellus*, the base Son of *Nicolas*, in the minority of his Brother *Hercules*, begot in lawful Wedlock, invaded the Estate, and held it
- 1450 13 *Borsius*, another of the base Sons of *Nicolas* the Second, succeeded *Leonel* in the Estate; who being made Duke of *Mutina*, by *Frederick* the Third, was by Pope *Paul* created Duke of *Ferrara* also, *Anno 1470.*
- 1471 14 *Hercules*, the lawful Son of *Nicolas* the Second, made Knight of the Garter, by King *Edward* IV.
- 1505 15 *Alphonso*, the Son of *Hercules*.
- 1534 16 *Hercules* II. Son of *Alphonso*.
- 1559 17 *Alphonso* II. who dying without lawful issue, *Anno 1595.* Pope *Clement* VIII. challenged this Estate in right of the Church; and partly by Force, partly by Composition (whereof we shall say more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*.

The yearly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thousand Crowns; now not so much worth unto the Pope, by reason of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Reggio*; of which more hereafter.

One of our Country-men who travell'd here, assures us, that this Dutchy of *Ferrara* is at this Day so abandon'd, that there were not Hands enough to Mow their Grass, which we saw (saith he) withering in their Meadows, to our no small wonder. And the City of *Ferrara* is at this Day in no better condition, there being in it whole sides of Streets without one Inhabitant. The Poverty also of this Place appears in their Churches, which are mean and poorly adorn'd. And this want of People has also infected the Air, for want of draining the Fens and Bogs; so that without doubt the Revenues of this Dukedom are very much abated.

The Arms of these Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illustrious Family, and for the strangeness of the Coat, I shall here put down) were Pale-wise of three pieces, 1. *Partie per Fesse*, in a chief Or, an Eagle displayed Sable, membred, langued, and crowned Gules; and in Base Azure, three Flowers de Lys Or, within a Border indented Or and Gules. 2. Gules, two Keys in Saltier, the one Or, the other Argent, charged in Fesse, with an Eschocheon of pretence Azure, supporting an Eagle of the third, membred and crowned of the second. Over all in chief a Papal Crown Or, garnished with sundry Gems Azure and Purple. The 3. as the first Counterplaced. Which Coat, upon the falling of the House of *Ferrara*, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*, as descended of it.

3. From the Territory of *Ferrara* proceed we to the Estate of *Urbine*; both Dukedom, and distinct Estates till these later times: this last the younger of the two, and consequently (as in the ordinary course of Nature) the survivor also; but swallowed at last into the Pope-dome as the other was. Bounded on the West with the River *Isaurus* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from *Romandiola*, on the East from *Marca Anconitana*, on the North with the *Adriatick*, and on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from *Tuscany*. So called from *Urbine* the chief City of it, and the Ducal Seat. It is in length about 60 Miles, 35 in breadth: Some pieces and Estates belonging anciently to the Church, lying intermingled with the Lands and Seigneuries which belonged to the Dukes.

The Soil is very fruitful of Corn, Wine, and Oil, plentiful of Figs, and other Fruits of most pleasant taste; and in a word, affording all things necessary for the Life of Man. But the Air is generally unwholesome, especially about *Pesaro* and *Fossembrune*, by reason of the low flats and overflows of the Water. The principal Commodities

dities which they vend abroad, are the Wines of *Pesaro*, sold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dried Figs, which they vend unto *Bologne*, and other places.

The most famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Metremo*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reason of that great Battel fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Asdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Consuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*: in which, after a long and hot Dispute, the Victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000 of the *Carthaginians* slain, (as *Livy* writeth) and 5400 taken prisoners. *Polybius* speaks of a less number both slain and taken; and like enough it is that *Livy*, to advance the honour of that Family, might enlarge a little. But whatsoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this Victory turned the tide of the *Roman* Fortune, which from this time began to flow amain upon them: the Citizens of *Rome* beginning at this time to Trade and Traffick, to follow their Affairs, and make Contracts and Bargains with one another, which they had long forbore to do; and that with as secure a confidence, as if *Annibal* were already beaten out of *Italy*. This famous River riseth in the *Apennine* Hills, and passing by *Fossombrone*, a Town of this Dukedom, falls into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned into this Dukedom seven Towns or Cities, (four of which are Episcopal Sees) and three hundred Castles. The principal of which are, 1. *Urbine*, one of the most ancient Cities of *Italy*, which both *Tacitus* and *Pliny* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Duke's ordinary seat in Summer. It is seated at the foot of the *Apennine* Hills, in a very rich and pleasant soil, built in the fashion of a Miter, and therefore called *Urbinas*, quod urbes binas continere videbatur. *Francisco Ubaldo* the first Duke, built here a very sumptuous Palace, and therein founded a most excellent Library, replenished with a great number of rare Books, covered and garnished with Gold, Silk, and Silver; all scattered and dispersed in the time that *Cæsar Borgia* seized on the Estate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the History of *England*, which passeth under his name, was a Native here: an History of worth enough as the times then were, except only in such passages as concern the Pope (the Collector of whose *Peter-pence* he was then in *England*) whose Credit and Authority he preferreth sometimes, before truth itself. This City was made an Archbishops See in the year 1563. 2. *Pisaurum*, now called *Pesara*, the strongest Town of all the Dukedom, two Miles in compass, and fortified according to the modern Art of War: the Fortifications of it being first begun by *Francisco Maria*, and perfected by *Guido Ubaldo*, his Son and Successor; the ordinary Seat of the Duke in Winter, well Garrisoned, and therefore trusted with the publick Armory. It is seated near the shore of the *Adriatick*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Isaurus*, which parts it from *Romagna*: populous, of handson Buildings, and a very strong Wall, the Soil exceeding Rich, but the Air so bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating too much Fruits, nothing is more frequent here than Funerals, especially in the Month of *August*; few of the Inhabitants living to be fifty years old. 3. *Senogalle*, called anciently *Sena Gallica*, (*Gallica* being added to it to difference it from another of that name in *Tuscany*) a strong and well fenced City near the River *Metaurus*, over which there is a Bridge consisting of eighty Arches, made of that length, not so much in regard of the breadth of the Chancel, as the frequent overflowings of that turbulent Water. 4. *Fossombrone*, called in old Authors *Forum Sempronii*, for Air and Soil of the same nature with *Pisaurum*; bought by D. *Frederick* of *Galeazzo Malateste* for thirteen hundred Florins of Gold. 5. *Cabo* or *Cagli* on the Sea. 6. *S. Leon*, a good Town and the chief of the Countries of *Montefeltre*, which is a limb of this Dukedom. 7. *Fano*, not far from the Sea, an Episcopal City, and anciently belonging to the Church of *Rome*: of old times called *Fanum fortune*, for a Temple there erect-

ed to the Goddess *Fortune* (*Te facimus Fortuna tem*, as the Poet hath it.) 8. *Eugubium* (now called *Auribus*) a Town belonging to these Princes, but properly within the bounds of the *Spoletan* Dukedom; and the we shall hear further of it. Of the Castles the principal are *Mari-vola*, and the Rock of *S. Leon*, which are the last that held good for Duke *Guido Ubaldo* against *Cæsar Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinoys*, Son to Pope *Alexander* the sixth; and the first which did return again under his Obedience. For which cause when he fled the second time from the said *Borgia*, he dismantled all his other Castles, as being more likely to admit than resist the Invader; and these two last being very well fortified, he left to keep possession of the Country for him.

Here is also within the limits of this Estate, the Dukedom of *CAMERINO*, an ancient and well peopled Town, of a strong natural situation amongst the Hills: an Estate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *Verena* till the time of Pope *Paul* the third; when *Julia di Verana* the Heir thereof, conveyed it by marriage unto *Guido Ubaldo* Duke of *Urbine*. But the Pope pretending an Escheat for want of Heirs Males, made himself Master of it by force of Arms: and gave it to his Son *Pietro Farnesi*, whom afterwards with the consent of the Colledge of Cardinals he made Duke of *Parma*; and settled *Camerino* on the Church, as it still continues.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently the Habitation of the *Senones*; a Nation of the *Cisalpine* Gauls, who only had the honour of sacking *Rome*, to which City it continued subject, till the declining of the Empire in the time of *Honorius*. They being rooted out at last (of which more in *Lombardy*) and the Country peopled with *Roman* or *Latine* Colonies, it followed the same fortunes with the rest of *Italy*, till the time of *Conradine* the last Duke of the Imperial House of *Schwaben*, when *Urbine* was first subdued by the Earls of *Montfeltre*, whose Successors increasing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Eugubio* to it. And in the Bustles betwixt *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor, and Pope *Clement* the sixth, Anno 1345. *Gelasso de Montfeltre* held it by no other Title, but as the Emperor's *Vicegerent*. This Family enjoyed it till the year 1444 by the Title only of Earls of *Montfeltre*, and Lords of *Urbine* when *Frederick Ubaldo*, for his singular and surpassing Valour, was by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, created the first Duke hereof: to hold as Feudatories of the Church, and paying 2240 Crowns for an Annual quit-rent. A man of such repute for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the sixth, made *Knight of the Garter*; in recompence of which high honour, the *English* to this day enjoy many Privileges in these Dominions. *Guido Ubaldo*, this Duke's Son, lost his Estate to *Cæsar Borgia*; after whose death he did recover it again by the power and favour of Pope *Julio* the second, to whom succeeded *Francisco Maria di Rovero*, his Sisters Son, in whose Family it continued till now of late, as will appear by this ensuing Catalogue of

The Dukes of Urbine.

- 1444 1 *Frederick Ubaldo*, of the ancient Family *de Montfeltre* the first Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the Garter.
- 2 *Guido Ubaldo*, Son of *Frederick*, for a while outed of this Dukedom by *Cæsar Borgia*. He was Knight also of the Garter.
- 3 *Francisco Maria di Rovero*, Sisters Son and next Heir to *Guido Ubaldo*, was in his own right Lord of *Senogallia*, and had *Pisauro* from the Pope in reward of his many Services done unto the Church; disleized for a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.
- 4 *Laurence de Medices*, Father of *Catherine de Medices* the French Queen, and of *Alexander* the 1. Duke of *Florence*; was for a while made Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the 10th (being of that Family

Family) but lost it shortly after to Duke *Francisco*, who after the Death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his Estate again, and died possessed of the Dukedom.

1538 5 *Guido Ubaldi II.* Son of Duke *Francisco*.

6 *Francisco Maria II.* Son of *Guido 2d.*, whose line expired, it escheated not long since (for want of Heirs Males) to the Church of *Rome*. This Prince in the year 1631. resigned his State whilst he lived into the hands of the Pope, to prevent any Contest after his Death about it.

The Revenues of this Dukedom were reckoned to have been 100000 Crowns *per annum*; but might have been raised to a greater Sum, had not the Dukes preferred the love and ease of their Subjects, before the filling of their own Coffers. He was able to raise 1200 good Soldiers out of this Estate; and more the people would supply, if they had occasion. The Arms hereof *Azure a Tower Argent.* environed with Flower de Lyces Or.

4. *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bound on the West with the State of *Urbine*; on the East with the River of *Trontus*, or *Druentus*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*; on the South with the *Apennine Hills*, by which parted from the *Spoletan* Dukedom; on the North with the *Adriatick*. The Reason of the Name we shall have anon.

It was formerly the dwelling of the *Picentes*, who possessed all these parts on the Coasts of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the East, to that of *Aufidus* on the West. For aiding the *Tarentines* their Allies, in their War against *Rome*, they were invaded and subdued by the *Romans* A. U. C. 485. which was about five years before the first *Punick* War, under the Conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were so great and multitudinous a Nation, that they were numbred to amount to 360000, which were then brought under the Command and Vassalage of the *Roman* Empire. When *Italy* was divided into no more than eight Regions, these *Picentes* only made up one; so did they also when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonini*, they made up one of the sixteen Provinces, into which *Italy* was divided by those Emperors; and the same repute it held in the time of *Constantine*, *Picenum* making always one. *Afculum caput gentis*, as *Florus* calls it, which was the Head of their Nation, being the Metropolis of the Province Called in those times *Picenum Annonarium*, partly by reason of the abundance of Grain which it did produce; and partly to distinguish from the dwelling of the *Picentini*, which from its nearness unto *Rome*, had the name of *Picenum Suburbicarium*; that part of *Campania* at this time, which is called the *Principate*. In the declining of the Empire, it was first called *Marca Fermiana*, from *Firmo*: once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of most importance in the Country; but by transferring the chief Seat from *Firmo* to *Ancona*, in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Anconitana*. The chief Rivers, besides those named already, which are only borderers, are, 1. *Chientus*, 2. *Sentinus*, and 3. *Potentia*; all rising in the *Apennine*, and passing with a sweet course to the *Adriatick* Sea.

The chief Towns, 1. *Ancona*, seated on the Hill *Cimmerius* shooting into the Sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperor; one of the fairest of the World, not so much for Capacity, as the Pleasantness and Beauty of it: the Descents down unto the Water being made of Marble, and very Delectable walking on all sides of it. The City itself is begirt with Hills, on one of which Pope *Clement* the seventh built a very strong Castle. Anno 1532. under pretence of defending the Town against the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the People in more full Subjection, who till that time, did yearly choose their own Magistrates, and lived according to their own Laws, like a Commonwealth. 2. *Recanati* (heretofore *Alia Recina*,) seated upon the banks of the River *Mulso*, renowned for the

great concourse of Merchants from all parts of *Europe*, at her Annual Marts; and a vein of the most excellent Wines. 3. *Firmo*, surnamed the *Strong*: in former times of most esteem in all the Province which was hence called *Marca Fermiana*; and to this day, a place of great Strength and Consequence; and an Archbishops See. 4. *Macerata*, now of most credit, by reason that the Popes *Legat* keeps his Residence there, and with him the Chancery for his Marquisate. 5. *Loretto*, called in *Latin* *Lauretana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified against the *Turks*, and other Pirates who once spoiled the same, and might be easily tempted thither on the like occasions: The Church here being admirable rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts, to pay their Devotions unto our Lady of *Loretto*, and behold her Miracles. Concerning the Removal of whose Chamber hither, on our description of *Palestine*, you shall meet with a very proper Legend. 6. *Ascoli*, surnamed the *Fair*, seated at the influx of the River *Druentus*, and on the furthest side of it towards *Abruzzo*, to which by some it is ascribed. Anciently the chief City of the *Picentes*, as before is said, and then called *Afculum*, Conquered by the *Romans*, under the Conduct of *Sempronius*, A. U. C. 485. Nigh unto this City, was fought the second Battle between *C. Fabritius* and the *Romans* on the one side, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirots* on the other; wherein the Victory (as *Plutarch* telleth us) fell to the King, having slain 6000 of his Enemies; but yet with such loss on his side also, that he affirmed to some of his Friends and Followers, *That such another Victory would quite undo him*; and with such apparency of Valour and Vertue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this Acclamation; *O quam facile esset orbem vincere, aut mihi, Romanis militibus, aut me rege, Romanis!* This Town also was the seat of the War called *Bellum sociale*, raised by the people of *Italy* against the *Romans*; *Popedius* being both Author of the Rebellion, and Captain. They for a while sorely shaken the State of *Rome*; but at last were vanquished, and this Town by *Strabo* *Pompeius* forced and spoiled. 7. *Adria*, now not otherwise famous, than that it gave Denomination to the adjoining Sea, and the Emperor *Adrian*. 8. *Humana*, which together with *Ancona*, was given to Pope *Zachary*, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The succeeding Popes after the giving of this Inch, took the whole Ell.

5. Having surveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we must next cross the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Ancona* from the Dukedom of *SPOLETO* (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italians* call it) which takes up the Western part of that Province, which the old *Romans* called *Umbria*: and therefore before we come to the description of this, we must a little look on the state of that. A Country bounded on the East with the River *Aniene*, dividing it from the East parts of *Latium*; on the West with *Tuscia* or *Fetruria*; on the North, with the *Apennine*; on the South, with the reaches or windings of the *Tiber*, the main body of *Latium*, and with that part of *Tuscany* which is now called *St. Peter's Patrimony*. So called, because being situate under the shade of the *Apennine Hills*, it was *Regio Umbrosa*. Some give another reason of it, and think that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri, quasi* *Opusca*, as men that had escaped the Deluge; because so ancient a people, that no body could tell the Original of them.

But whatsoever was the reason of the Name, they were a stout and valiant people, and gave the first check to *Annibal's* Career, after his great Victory at *Thrasymene*, repulsing him with loss and shame from the Walls of *Spoleto*: yet not of power sufficient, for all their Valour, to preserve their Country from the *Tuscans*, who are said to have destroyed in it 300 good Towns. Made by that means, if not plainly subject, yet so obnoxious to the will and pleasure of the *Victors*, that at their instance or command they sided with them in a War against the

Romans

Romans (whom formerly they had found very quiet Neighbours:) and by the *Romans* were subdued together with the rest of the Confederates then in Arms against them, *A. U. C.* 458. *Decius* and *Qu. Fabius* then the fifth time Consuls, which was about 7 years before *Annibal* fell into their Country. After which time in such esteem, that it was one of the eleven Regions into which *Italy* was divided by *Augustus Cæsar*; and finally, together with *Tuscia*, made up a Province of the Empire.

As for the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, it taketh up the Western parts of the Province of *Umbria*, as before was said, included betwixt the *Apennine*, the *Tiber*, and the River *Nar*, by which last, (now called *Nera*) it is divided from *Sabinia*, or the Land of the *Sabines*. The Country of a mixt nature, equally composed of very rough Hills, and yet most delectable Vallies; exceeding plentiful of all Necessaries, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary fecundity of the Women. The Wine hereof is much commended by *Martial*, as the best of *Italy*.

De Spoletanis quæ sunt carissima lagenis

Malueris, quam si Musta Falerna bibas. That is to say,

If with *Spoleta* bottles once you meet,

Say that *Falerno* Must is not so sweet.

Places of great note herein, 1. *Spoletum*, built partly on the Hill, and partly on the lower ground; the residence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Longobardians*, who governed as Vice-roys, or Lord Presidents, of the remoter parts of that Kingdom: from whence the Country round about it, was called *Ducato Spoletano*. It is still a Town of good esteem, populous, and of handsome Building; and hath a strong Fortrefs for defence thereof, built upon the Ruins of an old *Amphitheatre*: To which men pass over a great Bridge of Stone, upheld by 24 great Pillers, which joyns two Mountains together; having between them a deep Valley, but narrow and without any Water. *Theodorick* the *Goth* built a fair Palace in this City, rebuilt by *Narses*, but since ruined. 2. *Eugubium* (now called *Augubio*) seated on the foot of the *Apennine*; in or near that place where anciently stood that City which *Pliny* calls *Fuginium*; *Ptolomy* *Iluvium*; utterly subverted by the *Goths*. A Town well seated in a fruitful and wealthy Soil, and blessed with an industrious People: acknowledging the Dukes of *Urbine* for Lords thereof, till that Estate was swallowed up into the Popedom. 3. *Nuceria*, (now *Nocera*) in *Pliny's* time called *Alfatina*, at the foot also of the *Apennine*; the People of which in former times much traded in their wooden Vessel. 4. *Assisium*, or *Assises* destroyed almost to nothing in the Civil Wars of *Italy*, and only famous at this time, for a See Episcopal, and being the Birth-place of *St. Francis*; the founder of the *Franciscans*, or *Cordeliers*, as the *French* call them, but we in *England* the *Gray-Friers*. 5. *Citta de Castello*, anciently *Tripberdum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6. *Tuderum*, now called *Todi*, seated near the *Tiber*, on the declivity of a rich and fruitful Hill.

The rest of *Umbria* towards the East, not being within the compass of the *Spoletan* Dukedom, but under the command of the Popes of *Rome*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, because the dwelling in times past, of the ancient *Sabins*: who being taken into *Rome*, and made Free Denizens of that City in the time of *Romulus*, upon the League concluded Betwixt him and *Tatius*, then the King of this people, for a long time lived under the protection of that mighty City. But after joyning with the *Latins* in a War against it, they were subdued by *Curius Dentatus* the *Roman* Consul, and made a Subject Province of that Commonwealth, *A. U. C.* 463. But though the *Sabins*, at this time bear away the name, yet were they not sole Masters of it in these elder times; the greatest part hereof being possessed by some Nations of the *Umbri*, whom by a general name they called *Vilumbri*, (the *Sabines* interjected betwixt them and *Rome*) and as a Member of that Body, subdued together with the rest of *Umbri* by the conquering *Romans*. Afterwards in the division of *Italy* made by *Antoninus*, it was called *Nursia*; and in that made by *Constantine*, it was

contained within the new Province of *Umbria*; *Rate* being the *Metropolis*, or head City of both. This Province is bounded on the North by the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, on the East by *Abruzzo*, on the South by *Campagna di Roma*, and on the West by *St. Peter's* Patrimony, cut off by the River *Tiber*. A Territory of no great Circumference, but abundantly fruitful in Oyl or Olives, Vines and Fig-trees: watered with the River *Perusia*, which runneth through the very midst of it; and with the Lake called anciently *Lacus Velinus* (now *Lacus Umbertinus*) esteemed to be the Centre or Navel of *Italy*, by some ancient Writers; the waters of which are of such a nature, that in short time they will cleave a piece of wood with a coat of stone, and yet yieldeth excellent Trouts, and other good Fish. The Towns and Cities of most note, are, 1. *Reate* (now called *Rate*) an ancient City, and the *Metropolis* heretofore of all this Tract; as well when it was called *Nursia*, as when it was under the name of *Valeria*. 2. *Nursia*, a City no less ancient, seated among the Hills, which for the most part are covered with Snow; from which Town, being heretofore of more Reputation, the Province of *Nursia*, spoken of in the *Itinerary* of *Antoninus*, took Denomination. 3. *Magliano*, a pleasant and well-peopled Town, at this time the principal of this Territory. It is seated upon the *Tiber* 25 Miles North of *Rome*, and was made the Bishops See by Pope *Alexander* the VI. in the year 1495. 4. *Oriculum*, built amongst many fruitful Hills, a Mile from *Tiber*. 5. *Narnia*, the Country and Birth-place of the Emperour *Nerva*, the first of all the Emperours not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The Soil about it is of so different and strange a nature, that it is said to be made dirty by the Sun and Winds, and dusty by Rain: The City well peopled, and a Bishops See, seated upon a very steep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar* (now *Negro*) from which perhaps it took the name. A City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Luitprandus*, King of the *Lombards*; of which the Popes of *Rome* having got possession, never left practising till they had got into their power all the rest of the Country. Little else famous in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Western part thereof, is the Lake called *Lacus Vademonius*, near to *Amelia*, now called *Amelia*, a Town of the Dukedom, where *Dolabella* overthrew such of the *Senones*, a valiant Nation of the *Galls*, as had escaped the Sword of *Camilus*, *Quinctius*, *Curius*, and other fortunate Commanders in the Wars against them; *Ne quis extaret in ea gente* (saith the Historian) *qui incensam à se Romanis gloriaretur*: a former slaughter being made of them by *Camilus*, on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eastern limit of these *Umbri*.

5. *S. P. E. T. E. R. S. P. A. T. R. I. M. O. N. I.*, properly and specially so called, is that part of *Tuscan* which appertains unto the Church; bounded upon the East with *Tiber*, which divides it from *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*: on the West, with the River *Pisces*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentario* and parteth it from the Estate of the great Duke of *Tuscan*; on the North, with the *Apennine* and the *Spoletan* Dukedom, on the South with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. It took this new name presently on the donation of the Countess *Matildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, *An.* 1115. (*Paschal* the second sitting in the Chair of *Rome*) to be the *Patrimony* of *S. Peter*, and his Successors in that See. A Country not inferior unto any in *Italy*, for the fertility of the Soil: but for the most part of an unhealthy Air, by reason of the frequent overflowsings of *Tiber*, and the thick Woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and cleanse it.

The principal Cities, and places of most observation, are 1. *Perugia*, formerly called *Perusia*; a famous Town; in which *Augustus* besieged *L. Antonius* the Brother, and *Fulvia* the Wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*, who when they had in vain attempted to seduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this City; which also at the last, yielded to the more fortunate Emperour. *Augustus* afterwards, having much adorned and beautified it, caused it to be

called *Augusta*; but it returned not long after, to its ancient name. *Totila* King of the *Goths* lay seven years before this City to reduce it, after which *Narsetes* General to the Emperor of the East, rebuilt and adorn'd it. It is seated very pleasantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Alpentine*, in a very rich and fruitful Soil; well built both for the publick and private Structures; a Bishops See and made an University, *An.* 1090. In the distractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperors and the Popes this City was seized on by the *Baillons*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Oddies*, an opposite Faction to them, having got together a strong party of Male-contents, so suddenly entred one night into the City, that the *Baillons* began to fly: Nor was there any thing to hinder them from being Masters of the Palace, but the Chain which was drawn cross the Gate. One of the Soldiers going about to cut this Chain, and wanting room to wield his Arm, cried aloud *Give back*; which words being heard, but not well understood by those furthest off, put them to their heels; and the foremost, which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too. So the City was saved. 2. *Orvieto*, seated on so high a Rock, that it is no small terrour to look down from the top of it, into the Vallies beneath; in which there is a Church of a wondrous lightness, and yet the windows of the same (if we may credit *Adrianus*, who reports it) are made of Alabaster, instead of Glasse. 3. *Viterbo*, famous for the long residence of the Popes, at such time as they were affronted by the Roman Senators. Dr. *Burnet* tells, this great and wide Town, which is of great compass, has but few Inhabitants, and they look so poor and miserable, that the people in the ordinary Towns in the worst places of *Scotland*, make a better appearance. 4. *Civita Vecchia* (called anciently *Centumcellæ*) the only useful Haven that belongeth to *Rome*; which being ruined by the *Saracens*, was rebuilt by the Popes; new named, and fortified with a very strong Castle for the defence of their Shipping. In the year 1688. the Pope ordered a new Fort to be built here, to secure his Fleets and this City. 5. *Porto*, seated on the mouth of *Tiber*, over against *Ostia*; but cannot make one good Haven betwixt them both; a Bishops See, who is one of the seven Cardinals which is always assistant to the Pope. 6. *Farnese*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *Farnesis*, now Dukes of *Parma*. 7. *Bracciano*, which gives the Title of a Duke to a branch of the *Ursins*, a well-known Family of those parts. 8. *Bacchano*, near the last in sound, although not in site: compassed round about with Hills in form of a Theatre, having a fair Lake in the mid't; out of which runneth the River *Cremera*, near which the *Fabii* were slain.

Here was in this Country also the City of the *Veii*, affirmed to be as big as *Athens*, but questionless of great Wealth and Power; in a War against which, managed for the most part by the aforesaid *Fabii*, 306 of them were slain in a day, at the Battle of *Cremera*, a petit River of the *Tuscans*: only one little Child of them being left at home, who restored the House; and was the Ancestor of that *Fabius Maximus* who preserved *Italy*, in the Wars with *Annibal*. Of which great slaughter, thus saith *Ovid*.

— Veientibus Arvis

Ter centum *Fabii*, ter cecidere duo.

— On the *Ventine* Plain

Three hundred and six *Fabii* were slain.

This City of the *Veii* was at last after a ten years Siege taken by *Furius Camillus* *A.U.C.* 359. and by him levelled with the Earth; because he found that the common people of *Rome* had a mind to leave their own City, and inhabit here. Here is also that fatal River of *Allia*, nigh unto which *Brennus* and his *Galls*, (that people, as shall be shown hereafter, having 200 years before been drawn into *Italy*, by the sweet taste of the *Italian* Wines) slaughtered the *Romans*: the Roman Army at that time consisting of 40000 Soldiers, most of them being raw and unexperienced; the *Galls* not more in number, but naturally of a more fierce and hardy courage, and withal so big-boned, that it seemeth they were born to be the terror of Mankind, and the ruin of Cities. Which overthrow at *Allia*, and the vanquishment of the *Fabii*, hapning in one day, though in divers years, occasioned the old *Romans* to put that day among those unfortunate days, on which they never did attempt

any business of importance. The like custom, whether on Superstition, or fear of Ill-luck, is used by many *Christians*; and especially on *Childermas-day*: on which *Philip de Comines* telleth us, that *Lewis* the 11th used not to debate of any matter, but accounted it a sign of some great misfortune towards him, if any man communed with him of his Affairs; and would be marvelously displeased with those that were near him, if they troubled him with any matter whatsoever. In this particular, little less superstitious (if not more) than the ancient *Romans*. And finally, here is the famous Lake called *Thrasymene* (now *Lago di Perugia*, from the nearness of it to that City) where *Annibal* slew *Flaminius* the Consul, and 15000 of his *Romans*: Which fight continued three hours, with so great an eagerness, that the Soldiers perceived not a terrible Earthquake which at that time happened.

6. *CAMPAGNA di ROMA*, containeth that part of *Italy*, which anciently was called *Latium*, the Habitation of the *Latins*, and Seat of *Rome*; so called, for that it is adjoyning to that famous City, as the more proper Territory, and the Precinct thereof. It is sometimes also called *Campania nova*, to difference it from *Campania* properly so called; the Seat and Dwelling of the *Campanians*. It is bounded on the East with the said *Campania*, from which it is parted by the River *Azofenus*; on the West with *Tiber*; on the North with *Umbria*, or the now *Ducato Spoletano*, and *Sabinia*; and on the South with the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuscan* Sea: and came unto the Popes by no other Title, than as they had the Sovereignty and Possession of the City of *Rome*, to which it always it did belong.

The old Inhabitants were the *Latins*, as before is said, but subdivided into many petit and inferior Tribes, such as the *Aqui*, *Volsci*, *Fidenates*, and others of as little note, to the number of thirty, all vanquished piece-meal by the *Romans*, first under the Conduct of their Kings, and then of their Consuls and Dictators. Broken at last by *L. Quintius* the Dictator, *A.U.C.* 295. they became associates with the *Romans*, and so continued for the space of 100 years and upwards. But growing insolent on the sack of that City by the *Galls*, and impudently requiring that one Consul yearly should be chosen by and from themselves, they drew the *Romans* into Arms; by whom subdued under the leading of *Manlius Torquatus*, and *Decius Mus*, then Consuls, *A.U.C.* 413. Subject from that time afterwards to the State of *Rome*, but enjoying greater Privileges than the rest of the conquered Nations did, excepting such to whom the like were granted by especial favour. It is now one of the most desolate and dispeopled Countries of all *Italy*, and for want of draining, scarce possible to be again Peopled, at least not without great Hazard and Charge, as a late Traveller assures us, who saw it.

The chief place of it in old times was the City of *Alba*, then the Seat-Royal of the *Latin* or *Sylvian* Kings, ruined by *Tullius Hostilius* the third King of *Rome*, in which War *Rome* and *Alba* being laid at the Stake, the whole Action was committed by the *Romans* to the *Horatii*; to the *Curiatii*, by the *Albans*, being three Brethren of each side; in which it happened that two of the *Horatii* were first slain, and the third counterfeiting a slight severed his Enemies, and so slew them; whereby the *Albans* ever after became subject to *Rome*. 2. *Lavinium*, built by *Aeneas* in honour of his Wife *Lavinia*. 3. *Antium*, honoured many times with the Seat and Retirement of the Emperors: the Country round about affording variety of Recreations. The people once very strong in Shipping till the taking of the Town by *Marius* a Roman Consul, who having broke their Forces at Sea, brought with them into *Rome* the Beaks of their Ships and other Vessels, with which he decked and beautified the Pulpit for Orations (in the common *Forum*), which have generally ever since been called *Rostra*. This was the chief City of the ancient *Volsci*, a people very strong in Shipping, though without an Haven: afterwards much frequented by the principal *Romans* in their Retirements from the City, so that for pompous and stately Buildings it might compare with any other. Out of the Ruins of this Town long ago destroyed, sprang the new City called *Neptunum*, situate on a Rock near unto the Sea, the

the steepness of which gives it natural strength enough ; and yet it is fortified besides with two strong Castles, surveying the Sea, and commanding the shore. 4. *Ardea* the chief Town of the *Rutuli*, and the seat of *Turnus*, the Rival and Competitor of *Aneas*: afterwards taken by *Superbus* the last King of the *Romans*, to which when the *Gauls* had taken *Rome*, the miserable Citizens were compelled to fly. 5. *Gabii*, taken also by the same *Superbus*, whose Son *Sextus* counterfeiting some dislike of his Fathers Cruelties, fled to the *Gabii*, by whom providently entrusted with the command of their City, which he betrayed unto the *Romans*. 6. *Ostia*, anciently the Port-Town to *Rome*, built at the mouth of *Tiber*, by *Ancus Martius*, the fourth King of *Rome*; but the Haven hath been long since dammed up, to stop the passage of the Enemies Ships unto the City. The Bishop of this Town useth to consecrate the Pope. 7. *Præneste*, first, conquered by the *Romans* under *Qu. Cincinnatus* the Dictator. Nothing so much endamaged this City as its natural and artificial Fortifications: For when the *Romans* in the times of Sedition abandoned the Town, they used to make this place their refuge. Among others *Marius* the younger made it the Seat of War, against *L. Sylla*: but perceiving the unsuccessfulness of his affairs, here killed himself; and *Sylla* entering it as Conquerour, put 12000 of the Citizens to the Sword. It hath since been so often sacked, that it is very short now of its former lustre; but still it holds the reputation of a Bishops See. 8. *Tibur*, an ancient City also, and seated in a healthy Air. It is now called *Tivoli*, where there is a Fountain, which with artificial Engines moved with Water, representeth the notes of divers Birds. A device very rare (it seemeth) in the time of *Adrianus*, who reporteth it; but now grown ordinary. In the perfection of which Art, as almost all Civil Nations may pretend a share; so I conceive that the priority herein doth belong of right unto the *French*: whose Master-pieces in this kind do far exceed the rest of *Europe*. For in the Kings house at *St. Germain*, seven Miles from *Paris* (if it be lawful for me to digress a little on this Argument) one may behold the Statua of a Nymph, sitting before a pair of Organs: whose fingers by the help of Water, are taught to manage the keys in so due an order, and the instrument to yield such a Musick to it, as comes exceeding near the Organ, if it be not the same; her head in the mean time jolting from one shoulder to another, like an old Fiddlers at a *Wake*; there being also not far off, the counterfeits of divers Mills, who very busily plyed their work till the Musick sounded, and then stood still as if enchanted with the noise. In another place, upon the drawing of a Curtain, one may see two *Tritons* riding on their *Dolphins*, in a Sea of Water; each of them with a shell in his hand, which interchangeably and in turns served instead of Trumpets. In a third, the story of *Perseus* and *Andromeda* most lively acted; and in a fourth, *Orpheus in sylvia positus*, *Orpheus* playing on a Viol, the Trees moving, and the wild Beasts dancing in two rings about him, by the artificial guidance of the Waters only; the pretty Birds in every place so chirping out their several and respective notes, that the hearer would conceive himself to be in some pleasant Grove. But it is time to go from *Tivoli* to 9. *Velitri* (called anciently *Velitrae*, and then a City of the *Volsci*) famous for the Birth of the Emperor *Augustus*, and the dwelling of the *Octavian* Family; a place most delectably seated amongst the Vines; which yields as rich Wines as most in *Italy*. 10. *Anxur*, so called of the Temple which was here dedicated to *Jupiter*; surnamed *Anxurus*, that is, *Beardless*; first built by the *Spartans*, who flying from the severity of *Lycurgus* his Laws, did here seat themselves, after a Colony of the *Volsci*, and at last of the *Romans*. But this Town being destroyed by the tyranny of time, there starteth up 11. *Taracina* in the place thereof, seated upon a Mountain, but near the Sea, which it embraceth like a half Moon (it is now called the Bay of *Mola* :)

this City lying on the one horn thereof, in the very extremity of the Popes Dominions; and that of *Caietan* on the other, which is the first Port-Town of the Realm of *Naples*. The Country hereabouts hath most pleasant Orchards, of Citrons, Oranges, and Limons; the Oranges having at the same time both ripe and green Fruits, and represents a kind of Summer in the dead of Winter.

Such other things as are remarkable in this *Campagna* (heretofore called *Latium*) but more by what they have been, than they are at the present, are 1. *Tigulum*, a Village which belonged to *Tully*, who here composed his excellent Book, called the *Tusculan Questions*. 2. *Ferme*; built by the *Lacians*, heretofore the delight and solace of the ancient *Romans*, now visible only in its ruins. 3. *Præverum*, once the chief City of the *Volci*, and the Seat of *Camilla*, a noble *Amazonian* Lady; who aided *Turnus* the *Rutulian*, in his sharp War against *Aeneas* and the *Trojans*, where she lost her life. 4. *Circe*, an old City (in the place whereof now stand *S. Elia*) the Habitation of *Circe*, that so much celebrated *Sorceress*; of whom, and her enchanting of *Ulysses* and his Companions, there is so much upon Record, in the ancient Poets. Near to which is the head-land called the *Circian Promontory*, the repercussion of the Waves by whose Southern *Basis* makes a dreadful noise; and gave occasion to the fabulous inventions of the roaring of Lions, howling of Dogs, &c. which were heard about that Witches dwelling.

But the great glory of *Latium*, and indeed not of *Italy* only, but of all the World, was, that the famous City of *ROME* was seated in it, being built on the East side of *Tiber*; now much enlarged by the increase of 42 lesser Streams or Rivers. It is distant from the Sea about 15 Miles, first built, as Frier *Leander* a great *Italian* Antiquary is of opinion, by *Roma* Daughter or Wife to one of the *Latin* Kings. But being forsaken and forlorn, by reason of the unwholsom Air coming from the Fens, was rebuilt by *Romulus*, much pleased with the natural strength of the situation; and therefore like to make a good Town of War. And this tradition I should rather subscribe unto, than that it was called *Rome* from *Romulus*; who had he pleased to challenge the honour to himself, might better have caused it to be called *Romulea* (of which name there was a Town among the *Samnites*) then to call it *Roma*. But whatsoever greatness it did after come to, it was small enough (God knows) at first; the City comprehending the Mount *Palatine* only, and therefore not a Mile in compass; the Territory not extending as *Strabo* witnesseth, above six Miles from the City; and the Inhabitants thereof at the first general Muster, amounting at the most to 3300 Men. So inconsiderable they were as well in quality as numbers, that their Neighbours thought it a disparagement to bestow their Daughters on them; and therefore they were fain to get themselves Wives by a slight of Wit: proclaiming solemn Plays and Pastimes to be held in *Rome*, and Ravishing the Women which came thither to behold the Sports. The Kings succeeding much enlarged it. Mount *Aventine*, and the Hill *Janiculum* on the other side of the Water, being walled and added to it by *Ancus Martius*; as *Quirinalis*, *Esquilinus*, and *Viminalis*, were by *Servius Tullus*; *Capitolinus* and Mount *Calvus*, came not in till afterwards. But at the last it was improved to such an height, that in the flourishing times of that Common-wealth, the men increased to the number of 463000, and the compass of the Town unto 50 Miles; there being on and about the walls 740 Towers. And in this number of 463000 men, I reckon neither Servants, Women, nor Children, but men able to bear Arms; *Free-Denizens*, and such as were inrolled into *Cense*, or the Subsidie-Books. To which if we should add their Wives, Children, and Servants, we cannot probably conjecture them to have been fewer than three or four Millions: and so *Lipsius* is of opinion,

in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*. The most memorable Buildings of it, were first the *Capitol*, founded by *Terquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the spoils of their conquered Neighbours; saved from the fury of the *Galls* by the cackling of Geese. *Tacitus* calleth this house *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, auspicio a majoribus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Civil Wars of *Sylla* and *Marius*; and again in the Wars of *Vespasian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Vespasian* carried the first basket of Earth; after him the Nobility did the like, to make the people more forward in the service, and perhaps the custom of laying the first stone in a building, or driving the first nail in a timber-work, by him whose Edifice it is; hath, from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2. Here was the Temple of *Janus* open in the time of Wars, and shut in the time of Peace; which, during all their Monarchy, hapned but thrice: namely during the Reign of *Augustus*, after the first *Punic* War, and in the time of *Numa*. 3. Here was the Bridge called *Pons Sublicus*, on which *Horatius Cocles* resisted the whole Army of King *Porcena*, *Tarquin*, and the *Tuscan*s; till the Citizens behind had broken down the Bridge, received him swimming to the bank with joyful Acclamations, and saved their City from present Ruin. Here lived the famous Writers, so much renowned in the stories of elder times; here flourished the exact *Marital* Discipline, so memorized by ancient *Historiographers*: and finally, here were laid up the Spoils and Trophies of all *Europe*.

ROME, as now it standeth lower on the bank of *Tiber* upon *Campus Martius*, (where it was built after the inundation of the *Goths* and *Vandals*) is in compass about eleven Miles, within which compass is not a little waste ground. The Inhabitants of all sorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergymen and Courtiers; that is to say, such as have their dependance on the Court of *Rome*, either by holding Offices and places of Employment under the Popes, or by attending on his Person, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates, who are there abiding; or otherwise being of the Retinue of such foreign Ambassadors as are always commorant in the City, to follow the Negotiations of their several Masters; all which must needs amount to a very great number. It was first built on the East-side of the River in the Territory of *Latium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins; and here and there some Churches and scattered Houses (except it be a little on the North-East of the River, from the Gate called *Del populo*, to the Island of *Tiber*;) the rest, especially towards the South, being taken up with pastures and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it stands is on the West side of the water, and the *Holy Island*, consisting of three distinct parts or members. Of these the least is that which they call *La Isola*, but anciently the *Holy Island*; first made an Island by the Corn, Straw, and other goods of the *Tarquins*, which the Senate not vouchsafing to convert to any publick or private use, commanded to be flung into the River; where it sunk and settled to an Island, called afterwards the *Holy Island*, from a Temple herein built unto *Asclepius*, brought thither from *Epidaurus*, in the shape of a Serpent. This Island is not above a quarter of a Mile in length, and hardly half so much in breadth; but full of stately Churches and beautiful Houses. Next to this is that which they call *Trastevere*, or *Trans-Tiberina*; but of old *Janiculo*, from the Mountain of that name included in it: Called also *Civitas Ravennatium*, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Soldiers which *Augustus* kept at *Ravenna* against *Antonius*; and after placed in this out-part of the City, which by reason of the unwholsomeness of the Air, is inhabited only by Artizans and poor People; yet compassed about with Walls, except on that side next the water, and adorned with many goodly Churches and some handson Buildings. But the chief glory of the City consisteth in

that part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North-side of the other, but dis-joynd from it; compassed about with Walls by Pope *Leo* the 4th. and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1. The Church of *S. Peter*, which were it once finished, would be one of the rarest Buildings in all the World. 2. The Castle of *S. Angelo*, impregnable unless by Famine. 3. The Popes Palace, called *Belvidere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compassed about with a very high Wall, by Pope *Nicolas* the fifth. And had its Name from the fair prospect which it hath: in the same sense, as *Belvoir* Castle here in *England*, the Barony and Mansion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A Palace of magnificence and receipt enough. 4. The Library of the Hill *Vatican*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican Library*: a Library first founded by *Sextus* the Fourth, who not only stored it with the choicest Books he could pick out of *Europe*: but allowed also a large Revenue for the perpetual Augmentation of it. *Bibliothecam Palatinam in vaticano, toto terrarum orbe celeberrimam, adveclis ex omni Europa libris construxit; proventusq; certos, &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Barbun* sacked *Rome*, *anno* 1527. it was much defaced and ransacked; but by the succeeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame, and beauty. *Rome* is now an University, which was founded by *Urbain* the Fourth, at whose request *Thomas Aquinas* professed here. Pope *Nicolas* the Fifth was a Special Benefactor to the same; and after him, *Leo* the Tenth, who revived the *Greek Learning* and Language, which were in these parts almost forgotten. And finally, to this place are brought all the Treasures of those parts of Christendom subject to the Popes Authority: partly for the expence of Strangers, which do there remain on their several pleasures or occasions; and partly for the expeditions which are there obtained, for the Investitures of Bishopsricks, and Bulls of Benefices, Indulgences and other matters of Court-busy-water; and partly in the Pensions, which are paid there to the Cardinals and other Ministers of those Kings and Princes, which know best how to make their ends of the Popes Ambitions. So that it may be truly said, there came not more Tributes into old-*Rome* from the conquered Provinces, than hath been brought into the New from the Subject Churches which have submitted to the power of the *Roman* Prelates: and that they have as great command now under the pretence of Religion, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it said by *Proper* of *Aquitane*, (if memory fail not).

*Roma caput mundi, quicquid non possidet Annis,
Religione tenet;*

That is to say,

What *Rome* subdu'd not with the Sword,
She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the *Genius* of the ancient City, the Power and natural Courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the same against the Bravery and Assaults of all foreign Enemies: This City during the time of the ancient *Romans*, being never took but by the *Galls*; but since *Pontifical*, it hath been made a prey to all Barbarous Nations, and never was besieged by any that did not take it. In a Word, the City of *Rome* as now it standeth, is but the carcass of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruins; and the cause of them, her sins.

The Popes do much brag of the foundation of their Church, and the Authority of *St. Peter*; whose being there is indeed constantly attested by most ancient Writers; insomuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet *propter Scriptorum consensum*, in regard of the unanimous consent of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The silence of the Scriptures is a *Negative Argument*, and concludes nothing to the contrary; against so great a Cloud of unquestioned Witnesses, as soberly and positively have affirmed the same.

same. And yet I would not have it thought by the capacious *Romanists*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Pope's *Supremacy*, because he sits in *Peter's Seat*: no more than it did make for *Vibius Rufus* (as *Dion* doth relate the story) to attain *Tully's Eloquence*, or *Cæsar's Power*, because he married *Tully's Widow*, and bought *Cæsar's Chair*: Though the poor Gentleman did befool himself with this opinion, that he should be Master of them both. Of which see *Lib. LVII.* And yet the Popes rely so much upon this fancy, of being the direct Heirs of *St. Peter*, and all his Preeminencies, that all things which they say or do, must be intited to *St. Peter*. Their Throne must be *St. Peter's Chair*, their Church *St. Peter's Ship*, their Lands *St. Peter's Patrimony*, their Tributes and Exactions must be called *Peter-pence*, their Excommunications fulminated in *St. Peter's Name*; and all their Bulls and Faculties sealed with *St. Peter's Signet*. Nay; they went so far at the last, that Pope *Stephen* not being contented to be *Peter's Successor*, did take upon him in plain terms to be *Peter himself*. For being distressed by *Ambrobus* King of the *Lombards*, he sends for aid unto King *Pepin* in this following stile. *Petrus Ap. v. J. E. S. U. CHRISTI, &c. i. e. Peter the Apostle of J. E. S. U. CHRISTI, to you the most illustrious King Pepin, and to all Bishops, Abbots, &c. I the Apostle Peter, whose Apostles you are, admonish that you presently come and dwell in this City, &c. And do but you not, but trust assuredly, that I myself, as if I stood before you, do thus exhort you, &c. And that I Peter the Apostle of God, will at the last day, all you mutual kindnesses, and prepare you Tabernacles in the Heavens.* Baronius who records this Letter, Anno 755. numb. 17. was, it seems, pretty well perswaded of it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation or *Parænesis* to the State of *Venice*, being then upon some differences with Pope *Paul* the Fifth, he stileth him in plain terms thus, *Paulus Idemque Petrus vicem Christi agens in terris, i. e. Paul, who is also Peter, and Christ's Vicegerent, &c.* but leaving these imaginary claims and challenges of *St. Peter's Privileges*, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker Ages, two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power, in the more knowing and discerning times of *Christianity*. Of which the principal was, the Orthodoxy of the Bishops or Popes of *Rome*, their eminent and sincere Profession of the Faith of *Christ*; when almost all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schiſm*, or wasted and subverted by the fraud of *Heresie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of Doctrine; the Communion of it much desired by all true *Christians*, and a repair thither for relief and shelter in the times of trouble, made by the Orthodox Professors under persecution. And of these times, and this condition of that Church, we are to understand such passages of the ancient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and set it above all the batteries and assaults of *Heresie*. Such is that passage of *St. Cyprian*, *Romanos esse ad quos persilia non potest habere accessum*, lib. 1. ep. 3. and that of *Hierome*, *Romanam fidem (i. e. Romanorum fidem) Apostolica voce laudatam, quomodo præstigiis non recipere*, in *Apol. cont. Rufin* and many others of that kind. Which passages it were as foolish and ridiculous to apply to all following times, the condition of that Church being different from what then it was; as to accommodate all those *Elogies* and Commendations to the present City of *Rome*; which the Orators and Panegyrist of the elder times have hyperbolically ascribed to old *Rome* in her greatest Glories. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperial City; which drawing to it such a multitude of Suiters and Attendants from all parts of the World, could not but add much to the Power and Reputation of those Prelates, who had the happiness and honour to be Resident there;

and thereby opportunity to gain more *Disciples*, to settle more doubts of Conscience, and decide more Controversies than any other could expect. And so we are to understand that passage in *St. Jerome*, in which he saith, *habere Ecclesiam prætorie potestatis, et Principatorem, et quod omnium in ecclesia Presulatus, et quod omnia in ecclesia præstigia.* And so they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent *Princeps* than other Cities. But when that more potent *Prætor* failed to be at *Rome*, by the removal of the Imperial Seat to *Constantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*, then did the Bishops of *Constantinople* and *Ravenna*, dispute with effect *Rome* for Superiority; the chief Seat of Religion in the commonly following the Seat of the Empire. And in this claim the Patriarch or Bishop of *Constantinople* prevailed so far, that with the consent of *Agatho* and the *French*, he took upon him the Title of *Universal Bishop*. Gregory the Great (of whom it is said that he wrote the worth Bishop of all that were before him, and to all that came after him) was at that time Bishop of *Rome*; who sharply inveighed against him, and the *French* the Patriarch of *Constantinople* for this, and partly maintained, that what he called himself *Universal Bishop*, was the fore-runner of *Antichrist*. As for himself it is probable that he took notice of *Agatho's* *Universal Bishop*, more in opposition to him, of *Constantinople*, than with an intent to be formally so. To which the Patriarch of *Rome* reply, that *Gregory* did not at all clearly condemn this Title, but only blamed *Agatho* for assuming it. The Patriarch for assuming to himself that Authority, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be: For then either in the old Bulls of the former Popes, we should find mention of this Title; or else Pope *Gregory* would have assumed it to himself, lest the World might take notice to whom of right it did belong. But *Agatho*, who next but one succeeded *Gregory* having farther aims, applied himself to *Agatho* that he should by and by having murdered the Emperor *Maximus*, his Wife and Children, and thereby got the personal hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire, the better to assure himself of *Italy*, whose Revolt he feared, and chose out *Basiliface*, to be the *Orthodox* Bishop, and Head of the Church. To such a good beginning, such a gracious Patron do the Popes stand indebted for that Power and Empire, which now they challenge to themselves over all the Church.

Now as the Bishop of *Constantinople*, and *Ravenna*, did challenge a priority or precedency of the Popes of *Rome*; by reason that they were respectively honoured with the Seat *Imperial*; so were there divers other Bishops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Cyprus*, *Millon*, which claimed an equality with them; and would by no means yield them any Superiority. For trial of whose claim, we must look back on somewhat which hath been said before; where it is shewn that the *Roman Empire* was divided into fourteen *Dioeceses*; each *Dioecesis* being subdivided into several Provinces; each Province comprehending many several Cities: then, that in every of those Cities, where the *Romans* had their *Dioecesis*, the *Christians* also had a Bishop; in the *Metropolis* of each Province, which commonly was the Seat of the *Roman Prefect*, the *Christians* had their *Metropolitan*; and that in each principal City of each several *Dioecesis*, wherein the *Patriarch* of that *Dioecesis* had fixed his dwelling, there did the *Christians* place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous *Maxim* of *Optatus* *Reipublica non est in Ecclesia, sed Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth, and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Council of *Chalcedon*, raised this superstructure, *Εκκλησιαστικὰς τῆς ἡμετέρας, &c.* that the Honours of the Church should be accommodated unto those in State. So that according to this Platform, the *Primates* of the Church were of equal power, each of them limited and restrained to his proper Sphere; out of the which if he presume once to act, he moved irregularly, and in his *Excentricks*.

tricks. And for those *Primates*, I shall give you once for all, this general Muster, that is to say the Patriarch or Pope of *Rome*, for the Diocese or Præfecture of that City; the Primate or Archbishop of *Millain*, for the Diocese of *Italy*; of *Syrmium*, for that of *Illyricum*; of *Lyons*, for that of *France*; of *York*, for *Britain*; *Toledo*, for *Spain*, and of *Carthage*, for *Africk*. Then for the East parts of the Empire, there was the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, for the Diocese of *Egypt*; of *Antioch*, for that of the *Orient*; the Primate or Archbishop of *Ephesus*, for the Diocese of *Asia*; of *Nicomedia*, for that of *Pontus*; of *Bizantium*, or *Constantinople* for that of *Thrace*; of *Thessalonica*, for the Diocese of *Greece*, and of *Justiniana prima*, for that of *Dacia*. Amongst all which there was a mutual Correspondence and Co-ordination, for the general Government of the Church; maintained by Letters of intercourse, which they called *Literas formatas*, and *Communicatorias*; but no subordination, and much less subjection, unto one another, as doth appear most evidently by the Canons of the Council of *Nice*, assigning to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the custom of the former times. As for the Diocese or Patriarchate of the Popes of *Rome*, it contained in it those ten Provinces, which were immediately subject to the Præfect or Provost of that City (an Officer first instituted by *Augustus Cæsar*) that is to say, the Provinces of *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, *Picenum Suburbicarium*, *Campania*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Samnium*, *Lucana* and the *Bruttii*, in the main Land of *Italy*; and the three Islands of *Sicily*, *Corfica*, and *Sardinia*. In which regard, (I mean as to the immediate Government of those Provinces by the Præfect of the City of *Rome*) as they are called *Regiones Suburbicariæ*, by *Ruffinus* an *Italian* Writer, so anciently the Pope himself was called *Urbicus*, or the City Bishop, as appears plainly by *Optatus*, who calleth Pope *Zepherinus*, *Zepherinus Urbicus*. But the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up daily by a steady and constant watchfulness upon all occasions, to increase the Grandeur of that See; and taking to themselves the honour to be *Vindices Canonum*, the strict and punctual preservers of the ancient Discipline, which took extremely well with all sorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindices Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters, and at last the Rulers, or rather the Over-rulers of the Canons; and from the chief Labourers in the Vineyard, they became the Landlords: which was the honour aimed at, and at last obtained by the foresaid *Boniface*, whom that cruel and butcherly Tyrant *Phocas* made the Head of the Church, the sixty sixth Bishop and first Pope of *Rome*: the *Latin* word *Papa* coming from the old Greek *πάππας*, signifying a Father. A Title at the first common unto other Bishops, as is evident to any one, who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this appropriated unto those of *Rome*. Of these Popes, their Succession, and times of Government, our *Chronologers* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to see, agreeing exactly with another. The reasons whereof, as I conceive, are, 1. The frequent *Vacancies*; and 2. the many *Schisms* which have hapned in it; and 3. the *Anti-Popes* in them created: The Writers of those times accounted him only among the Popes, to whose faction they were most devoted. This Catalogue ensuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helvicus*, *Freigius*, *Bellarmino*, and *Onuphrius*, whose differences I have reconciled as well as possibly I could: premonishing the Reader, that where the number of years which every Pope is found to sit in the *Papal Chair*, makes not up the full number from his first admission, to the coming in of his Successor; it must be understood by some *Schism* or *Vacancy*, hapning in the Interval, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occur amongst the Ancients, in the first succession, some placing of them thus, *Linus*, *Cletus*, *Clemens*; some *Linus*, *Clemens*, *Cletus*; and finally some others putting *Clemens* the first, I know no better way to compole the same then to af-

firm (as many of the Fathers do) that *St. Peter* and *St. Paul* were Co-founders of the Church in *Rome*; *St. Peter* of the Church of the *Circumcision*, and *St. Paul* of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Bishop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succession in this manner following.

The Bishops of Rome.

A. Ch.			
44	1	St. Peter, Bishop of the Churches of the Circumcision.	
70	2	Cletus, or Anacletus, Successor to St. Peter in the Churches of the Circumcision. 23.	
59	1	St. Paul, Bishop of the Churches of the Gentiles.	
70	2	Linus, Successor to St. Paul in the Church of the Gentiles. 11.	
81	3	Clemens having succeeded Linus first in the Church of the Gentiles, did after Anno 93. succeed Cletus also in the Church of the Jews, reckoned by some the next Successor to St. Peter, because the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the Gentiles not being founded, or not distinguished from the other, till some years after Peter's coming.	
103	4	Anacletus 9	385 38 Syricius 13.
112	5	Euaristus 9.	398 39 Anastasius 4.
121	6	Alexander 16 m. 5 d.	402 40 Innocentius 15.
131	7	Sixtus 10.	417 41 Zosimus 1 m. 4.
142	8	Teliphorus 12.	419 42 Bonifacius 5.
154	9	Hyginus 4.	424 43 Celestinus 8 m. 5.
158	10	Pius 9.	432 44 Sixtus III. 8.
167	11	Anicetus 8 m. 9.	440 45 Leo magn. 21.
175	12	Soter 4.	461 46 Hilarius 6 m. 10.
179	13	Eleutherius 15.	468 47 Simplicius 15 m. 5.
194	14	Victor 9.	483 48 Felix III. 9.
203	15	Zepherinus 18.	491 49 Gelasius 4.
221	16	Calistus 5.	497 50 Anastasius II. 2.
226	17	Urbanus 6 m. 7 d.	499 51 Symmacus 15.
233	18	Pontianus 5.	514 52 Hormisdas 9.
238	19	Antherus 1.	523 53 Joannes I. 2 m. 9. d.
239	20	Fabianus 14.	526 54 Felix IV. 4.
253	21	Cornelius 2.	530 55 Bonifacius II. 1.
255	22	Lucius 1 m. 8.	532 56 Joannes II. 3.
256	23	Stephanus 3 m. 3.	535 57 Agapetus 1.
260	24	Sixtus, or Xistus II. 2.	536 58 Sylvester 1.
262	25	Dionysius 10.	537 59 Vigilius 18.
272	26	Felix 2 m. 5 d.	555 60 Pelagius 5.
275	27	Eutychianus 8.	563 61 Joannes III. 10.
283	28	Caius 13.	573 62 Benedictus 4.
296	29	Marcellinus 8.	578 63 Pelagius II. 12.
304	30	Marcellus 5.	590 64 Gregorius Mag. 14.
309	31	Eusebius 2.	605 65 Sabinianus 1. the last of the Roman Bishops, not having that arrogant Title of Universal Bishop, or Head of the Church.
311	32	Miltiades 3.	
314	33	Sylvester 22.	
336	34	Marcus m. 8.	
337	35	Julius 15 m. 5.	
352	36	Liberius 15 cui viro Felix successit.	
367	37	Damasus 18.	

The Popes of Rome challenging a Supremacy over all the Church.

606	1	Bonifacius III. 3.	679	14	Agatho 4.
607	2	Bonifacius IV. 8.	683	15	Leo II. m. 10.
615	3	Deus-dedit 3.	684	16	Benedictus II. 1.
618	4	Bonifacius V. 5 m. 10.	685	17	Joannes V. 1.
624	5	Honorius 13.	686	18	Conon m. 11.
634	6	Severinus 2.	688	19	Sergius 13.
639	7	Joannes IV. 2.	701	20	Joannes VI. 3.
641	8	Theodorus 7 m. 5.	704	21	Joannes VII. 3.
649	9	Martinus 6.	707	22	Sisinnius d. 20.
654	10	Eugenius 2 m. 9.	707	23	Constantinus 7.
657	11	Vitalianus 14.	714	24	Gregorius II. 17.
671	12	A-Deo-Datus.	731	25	Greg. III. 10 m. 9.
677	13	Domnus 1 m. 5 d.	742	26	Zacharias 10.
			752	27	Stephanus

752	27	Stephanus II. d. 4.	965	71	Benedictus V. 1.	1187	114	Gregorius VIII. m. 2.	1503	158	Pius III. d. 26.
752	28	Stephanus III. 5.	966	72	Foannes XIV. 7.	1188	115	Clemens III. 3.	1503	159	Julius II. 10.
757	29	Paulus I. 10.	973	73	Benedictus VI. m. 6.	1191	116	Celestine III. 6.	1513	160	Leo X. 9.
767	30	Constantinus II. 1.	974	74	Domnus II. 1. m. 3.	1198	117	Innocent III. 17.	1522	161	Adrian VI. 2.
768	31	Stephanus IV. 4.	975	75	Bonifacius VII. 1.	1216	118	Honorius III. 10.	1524	162	Clemens VII. 10.
772	32	Adrianus I. 23.	976	76	Benedictus VII. 8.	1227	119	Gregorius IX. 14.	1534	163	Paulus III. 15.
796	33	Leo III. 20.	984	77	Foannes XV. 1.	1241	120	Celestine IV. d. 17.	1550	164	Julius III. 5.
816	34	Stephanus V. m. 7.	985	78	Foannes XVI. 10.	1243	121	Innocent IV. 11.	1555	165	Marcellus II. d. 22.
817	35	Paschalis 7.	995	79	Foannes XVII. 4.	1254	122	Alexander IV. 6.	1555	166	Paulus IV. 5.
824	36	Eugenius II. 3.	999	80	Gregorius V. 3 m.	1261	123	Urbanus IV. 3.	1560	167	Pius IV. 6.
827	37	Valentinus d. 4.	999	81	Sylvester II. dictus Necromanticus 4.	1265	124	Clemens IV. 3.	1567	168	Pius V. 5.
827	38	Gregorius IV. 16.				1271	125	Gregorius X. 14.	1572	169	Gregorius XIII. 13.
843	39	Sergius II. 3.	1003	82	Foannes XVIII. m. 5.	1275	126	Innocent V. m. 5.	1585	170	Sixtus V. 5.
846	40	Leo IV. 8.	1003	83	Foannes XIX. 6.	1276	127	Adrian V. d. 19.	1590	171	Urban VIII. d. 12.
854	41	Foannes VIII. vulgo Pope JOAN. 2.	1009	84	Sergius IV. 3.	1276	128	Foannes XXI. d. 8.	1590	172	Greg. XIV. m. 9.
			1012	85	Benedictus VIII. 12.	1277	129	Nicolas III. 4.	1591	173	Innocent IX. m. 1.
856	42	Benedictus III. 2.	1024	86	Foannes XX. 8 m. 9.	1281	130	Martinus IV. 4.	1592	174	Clement VIII. 13.
858	43	Nicolaus 10.	1033	87	Benedictus IX. 12.	1285	131	Honorius IV. 4.	1605	175	Leo XI. d. 26.
868	44	Adrianus II. 5.	1045	88	Sylvester III. m. 1.	1288	132	Nicolas IV. 4.	1605	176	Paulus V. 16.
873	45	Foannes IX. 10.	1045	89	Benedictus X. m. 1.	1294	133	Celestine V. m. 6.	1621	177	Greg. XV. 2.
883	46	Martinus II. 1.	1045	90	Gregorius VI. 1 m. 7.	1295	134	Bonifacius VIII. 8.	1623	178	Urban VIII. 21.
884	47	Adrianus III. 1.	1047	91	Clemens II. m. 9.	1303	135	Benedictus IX. m. 8.	1644	179	Innocent X. 11.
885	48	Stephanus VI. 6.	1047	92	Damasus II. d. 23.	1305	136	Clemens V. 9.	1655	180	Alexander VII. 13.
891	49	Formosus 4.	1049	93	Leo IX. 5.	1316	137	Foannes XXII. 18.	1667	181	Clement IX.
895	50	Bonifacius VI. d. 15.	1055	94	Victor II. 2.	1334	138	Benedictus X. 7.	1670	182	Clement X.
896	51	Stephanus VII. 1.	1057	95	Stephanus X. 1 m. 6.	1342	139	Clemens VI. 10.	1676	183	Innocent XI.
897	52	Romanus m. 4.	1059	96	Nicolaus II. 2 m. 6.	1352	140	Innocent IV. 1.	1689	184	Alexand. the VIII.
897	53	Theodorus II. d. 20.	1062	97	Alexander II. 11.	1362	141	Urban 5. 8.			a Venetian Nobleman by
897	54	Foannes X. 2.	1073	98	Gregorius VII. dictus Hildebrandus 12.	1371	142	Gregorius XI. 7.			Birth, and now 79 years of
899	55	Benedictus IV. 2.				1378	143	Urban VI. 11.			Age. He was called formerly
903	56	Leo V. d. 40.	1086	99	Victor III. 1.	1389	144	Boniface IX. 14.			Cardinal Ottoboni, Bishop
903	57	Christophorus m. 7.	1087	100	Urbanus II. 12.	1404	145	Innocent VII. 2.			of Porto, and Sub-Dean of
903	58	Sergius III. m. 7.	1099	101	Paschalis II. 18.	1406	146	Gregorius XII. 2.			the Coll. of Cardinals. And
910	59	Anastafius III. 2.	1118	102	Gelasius II. 1.	1409	147	Alex. V. m. 10.			was Elected Pope the 6th
912	60	Lando m. 6.	1119	103	Calistus II. 6.	1410	148	Foannes XXIII. 5.			of October. His Prophetick
912	61	Foannes XI. 15.	1125	104	Honorius II. 5.	1417	149	Martin V. 13.			Motto is <i>Pœnitentia Gloriosa</i> ,
928	62	Leo VI. m. 6.	1130	105	Innocens II. 13.	1431	150	Eugenius IV. 16.			as that of his Predecessor
929	63	Stephanus VIII. 2.	1143	106	Celestine II. m. 5.	1447	151	Nicolaus V. 8.			was <i>Bellua insatiabilis</i> . He
931	64	Foannes XII. 5.	1144	107	Lucius II. m. 11.	1455	152	Calistus III. 3.			died the first of February,
936	65	Leo VII. 4.	1145	108	Eugenius III. 8.	1458	153	Pius II. ante dictus			1691.
940	66	Stephanus IX. 3.	1153	109	Anastafius IV. 1.			Aneas Sylvius 6.	1691		Innocent XII. was E-
943	67	Martinus III. 3.	1154	110	Adrian IV. 4.	1464	154	Paulus II. 7.			lected July 12. Aged 76
946	68	Agapetus II. 9.	1159	111	Alexand. III. 22.	1471	155	Sixtus IV. 12.			Years, four Months, and
956	69	Foannes XIII. 8.	1181	112	Lucius III. 4.	1484	156	Innocent VIII. 7.			was before Cardinal Pigna-
964	70	Leo VIII. 1.	1185	113	Urban III. 2.	1492	157	Alexander VI. 11.			tello Archbishop of Naples.

To these one hundred seventy nine Popes add the sixty five Bishops which preceded that arrogant Title of *Universal*, and they make up the full number of two hundred forty four. How many are to come, he must be a cunning man that can determine. And yet such cunning men there have been, who have determined positively, but withal, Prophetically, of the number of Popes; by name St. *Malachy*, one of the first Apostles of the *Irish* Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day. Of whom there is remaining in *Messinghams* Collection of the *Irish* Saints, a certain number of *Mottoes*, in the Latin Tongue; agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes successively to one another, according to the order of those several *Mottoes*: and there unto this Prophesie annexed, that when so many Popes had sat in St. *Peters* Chair, either the World should end, or the Popedom fail. The Book was shewed to me by the Author, when I was at *Paris*, and the Popes names in order joyned to every *Motto*, as far as the time of *Urban*, who last deceased; which I compared as well as memory would serve me, and found the *Mottoes* and the Popes to be very answerable. The *Motto* for Pope *Urban*, which I took most notice of, was, *Lilium* and *Rosa*: a *Motto* very suitable to the principal Action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the *English Rose*, and the *French Lilly*; in the marriage of *Charles* King of *England*, and *Madam Henrietta Maria* the Princess of *France*; which that Pope earnestly promoted, in his speedy and

cheerful granting of the Dispensation. And to take from me all suspicion of Imposture, this *Messingham* shewed me an old Book written by one *Wion* a *Fleming* and printed near 200 years before his Collection; in which the *Mottoes* stood as in his they did, and comparing the *Mottoes* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of *Urban*, and that *Motto* to jump even together. From *Urban* downwards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottoes* more to come; by consequence, if this *Malachy* were as true a Prophet as one *Malachy* was, just so many Popes, and then the Popedom to be ruined, or the World to end. But I hope God for his *Elects* sake will abridge those days, and not permit the Superstitions and the Corruptions of that Church to endure so long; nor so many Assertors and Defenders of those *Roman Heterodoxies*, to be added to the former number. Out of the Stories of all which (permitting many things of less consideration) I will only select some few passages, for the better understanding of their State and Story.

1. *Pelagius* the first, ordained that *Hereticks* and *Schismatics* should be punished with temporal Death; which severity continueth still: and that none should be preferred to Ecclesiastical Dignities by Gifts, and Bribes; which pious order is long since antiquated.

2. *Vitalianus*, first brought *Organs* into the Divine Service of the Church of *Rome*, to be used with the singing or vocal Musick formerly in use; which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes succeeding.

3. *Constantine* was so generally beloved of all Men, that

that going to *Constantinople*, *Justinian* the second kist his Feet in sign of Honour, which some of the ambitious Popes in times succeeding, drew into example, and at last brought into a custom, as it still continueth.

4. *Paschal* the first, caused the Priests of certain Parishes in *Rome*, by reason of their nearness to his Person, their presence at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*. Now Mates for Kings, and numbred about 70, but more or fewer at the sole pleasure of the Popes.

5. *Eugenius* the second, took to himself within the Territories of the Church, the Authority of creating Dukes, Earls and Knights; as the *Exarch* of *Ravenna* had used to do.

6. *Sergius* the second, was the first that changed his Name. For thinking his own Name, *Becca di Porco*, or *Swines-mouth*, not consonant to his Dignity, he caused himself to be called *Sergius*; which precedent his Successors following, do also vary their Names. So that if one be a Coward he is called *Leo*; if a Tyrant, *Clemens*; if an Atheist, *Pius*, or *Innocent*: if a Rustick, *Urbanus*; and so for the rest.

6. *John* the eighth, is by most Men confessed to be a Woman, and is usually called Pope *Joan*. To avoid the like Disgrace, the *Porphyry Chair* was ordained; *ubi ab ultimo diacono, &c.* so that both in a literal and mystical Sense, this Woman may not unfitly be called, *The Whore of Babylon*. The Name of this Female Pope, the *Romish Chronologers* have not inserted into the Catalogue; the reason, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & sexum muliebrem*. And from hence it is that in the common Catalogues, these Popes that have called themselves *Johns*, are so ill ordered; some making that *John* which succeeded *Adrian* the second, *An. 872.* to be the 8th, and others the 9th. *Platina* only of all the *Pontificians* reckoneth Pope *Joan* as the 8th of the *Johns*, and so forward: in which particular I have followed his Authority. And it is probable enough, that God might suffer that proud See to fall into such an Infamy, the better to humble the ensuing Popes, in the times of their greatest ruff and flourish; or to prevent the brag of that continued Succession, they so much pretend to. More of this Argument, (as to the truth of the story in matter of Fact) he that lists to see, may satisfy himself in Mr. *Cooks* Book of Pope *Joan*; who most industriously hath answered all Objections, which hath been made against it by those of *Rome*.

8. *Nicholas* the first, the better to fasten the Clergy to the See of *Rome*, and make them the less Obnoxious to their natural Princes, was the first who did by Law restrain them from Marriage; saying, that it was more honest to have to do with many Women privately, than openly to keep a Wife: and some of his Successors followed it so close, that a Priest of *Placentia* being accused to have Wife and Children, was deprived of his *Benefice*; but upon proof made, that she was the Wife of another man, and his *Strumpet* only, he was again restored to it.

9. *Adrian* the third, ordained, that the Emperour from thenceforth should have no more to do with the Election, or Confirmation of the Pope, but that it should be left wholly to the *Roman* Clergy.

10. *Formosus* was so ill beloved, and of such a general Disesteem, that Pope *Stephen* the Seventh caused his Body to be unburied, all his Acts Reversed, two of his Fingers to be cut off, and then the mangled Carcase to be again interred among the *Laity*. And though these Acts of *Stephen* were adjudged illegal, both by *John* the tenth, and Pope *Romanus*, two of his Successors; and the doings of *Formosus* justified: yet *Sergius* the third caused his corrupt and putrified Body to be taken once more out of the Grave; and his Head to be cut off, as if still alive. So little did the *Infalibility* of *S. Peters* Chair preserve these Popes from falling into gross and irreconcilable contradictions.

11. *John* the twelfth, was the next after *Sergius* the

second that changed his Name; a very Wicked, Cruel and Libidinous Man: who coming to that place by his Fathers greatness, cut off the Nose of one Cardinal, and the Hand of another, for that they had signified to the Emperor *Otho* the first, what a Scandal all the Church did suffer by his detestable Life; and finally, being taken in Adultery, was slain by the Husband of the Woman.

12. *Gregory* the fifth, finding the power of the Emperour, as long as it continued in a way of Succession, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withal incensed against the *Romans*, who, till that time retained some shadow of an Empire; projected the Election of the future Emperours, by the Princes of *Germany*; by which the *Germans* were distracted into Factions, and the *Romans* weakned; and so a door left open to the Popes of *Rome*, to make their ends upon them both.

13. *Stephen* the tenth, brought the Church of *Milan* to be under the Obedience of the Popes of *Rome*, which till that time had challenged an Equality with them; as before Pope *Domnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for some time had challenged the precedency of them.

14. *Gregory* the seventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet Man, who first adventured to draw the *Premises* laid down by some of his Predecessors into a conclusion: Excommunicating the Emperor *Henry IV.* for meddling with the *Investitures* of Bishops, and causing *Rodulph* Duke of *Svevia* to rebel against him. A man, much favoured against the Princes of her own House by the Countess *Matilda*; who is said to be so much his Friend, that for his sake she left the company of her Husband, and disherited her right Heirs, settling her whole Estates in *Italy*, on the See of *Rome*. And though the Emperor had the better of this Pope, and made him flee out of *Rome*, and die in Exile; yet he was fain at last to submit himself to Pope *Paschal* the second, (who had Armed his own Son against him) to attend bare-foot at his own door, and cry *peccavi*.

15. *Sergius* the third, ordained the bearing of Candles in the Feast of the Purification of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemas* day.

16. *Sergius* the fourth, was the first that on *Christmas* Night, with divers Ceremonies did Consecrate Swords, Roses, or the like; to be sent as tokens of Love and Honour to such Princes as deserved best of them, or whom they desired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth sent a consecrated Rose to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, requesting him to Banish *Luther*: and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fifth of *Scotland*, to engage him in a War against *Henry* the Eighth, who had then withdrawn himself and his Kingdom, from the Pope's commands.

17. *Nicholas* the second took from the *Roman* Clergy the election of Popes, and gave it to the Colledge of *Cardinals*.

18. *Celestine* the second, was the Inventer of that mad manner of Cursing, or *Anathematizing*, by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19. *Alexander* the third, pursuing the desperate course of *Gregory* the seventh, Excommunicated the Emperor *Frederick I.* and by raising War against him in every place; brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to prostrate himself at his feet: when the Pope treading on his Neck, said aloud, *Super Aspidem & Basiliscum, &c.* profanely applying those words to the present occasion. And when the Emperor, to put the better colour on his disgrace, meekly replied, *Non tibi sed Petro*; the Pope not willing to lose his part of so great a glory, subjoyned as angrily, *Et mihi & Petro*.

20. *Innocent* the third held a Council in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope should have the correction of all *Christian* Princes: and that no Emperor should be acknowledged, till he had sworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Chan* of *Tartary*; who when he hath dined, commands

commands his Trumpeters to sound, and make Proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may sit down to Dinner. He brought in the Doctrine of *Transubstantiation*, and ordained that there should be a *Pix* made to cover the consecrated (but now *Transubstantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is also said to have first imposed *Auricular Confession* upon the People.

21. *Nicholas* the Third, was the first Pope who practised to enrich his Kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuscany*; and to raise the rest to great Advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Machiavel* very well observeth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Pope's Kinsfolks or Posterity, so afterwards they studied no one thing more than to prefer their own Blood; inasmuch that they have not only laboured (as he saith) to make them Princes, but if it were possible would procure the Popedom to be made hereditary. So he, with probability enough. For so dearly do they love their *Nephews* (by which name they use to call their Bastards) that it was very justly said by Pope *Alexander* the Third, *The Laws forbid us to get Children, and the Devil hath given us Nephews in their stead.*

22. *Boniface* the Eighth, of whom it is said, *That he entred like a Fox, reigned like a Lion, and died like a Dog*; by his general Bull exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and Payments unto Temporal Princes. Which being complied with by the Clergy of *England*, King *Edward I.* put them out of his Protection; and so the Pope's Bull left roaring here. He caused the Book of the Canon Law, called the *Decretals* to be first set out; and instituted the Feast of *Jubilee* to be held in *Rome* every hundredth Year; but by *Clement* the Sixth it was brought unto the fiftieth Year, and since reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Boniface*, who in that great concourse of People which repaired to *Rome*, to observe his new Feast of *Jubilee*, (to which every one that did repair was to have a plenary remission of all his sins) shewed himself one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperor; and caused two Swords to be born before him every day, in sign that all Power Ecclesiastical and Temporal did belong unto him.

23. *Clement* the Fifth was the first that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* saleable. For seeing (said he) that one drop of our Saviour's Blood had been enough to have saved all Mankind, and yet that all his Blood was shed, the over-plus was left to the Church as a standing Treasure, to be disposed of by St. *Peter* and his Successors. And hereunto, to make his Treasure the more inexhausted, he added the Merits of the Virgin *Mary*, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the Insolencies of the People of *Rome*, he removed the Papal See to *Avignon* in *France*, where it continued for the space of seventy Years.

24. *Clement* the Sixth had an ill time of it. For in his Papacy the Emperor gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church, to such as formerly had usurped them; to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which Title the *Malteſti* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordelaſſi* of *Forli*, the *Vareni* of *Camerine*, the *Bentivolies* of *Bononia*, the *Manfredi* of *Faenza*, &c. Which Estates were never recovered to the Church, till the time of Pope *Julio* the Second, though conquered from the present owners in the time of *Alexander* the Sixth, by *Cæſar Borgia* his Son; who had an aim of settling them, and perhaps the Papacy it self, on the *Borgian* Family.

25. *Gregory* the Eleventh, returned the Papal Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveyed himself by Sea in private, for fear of being with-held by the *French*; and being come thither, found the chief parts of the City so over-grown with Briars and Bushes, and the principal Buildings of it so decayed and ruinous, that a little longer absence would have made it desolate.

26. *Paul* the Second, endeavoured to encrease the Majesty of the Popedom by Arms and Avarice, and ex-

ceeded all his Predecessors in pomp and shew; causing his *Miter* to be enriched with Diamonds, Saphyrs, Emeralds, and other Stones of great price; and augmenting the splendor of the Cardinals with a Scarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the Fourth had graced with *Red Hats* before. He brought the *Jubilee* from fifty Years to twenty-five.

27. *Sixtus* the Fourth ordained a constant Guard to attend his Person. He very much beautified and repaired the City of *Rome*, and was the first Founder of the *Vatican* Library. But on the other side he is said by some, to have set all Offices and Preferments to Sale, and to have builded in *Rome* Stews of both Sexes, to bring in Beads, and to authorize our Ladies *Psalter*.

28. *Alexander* the Sixth, setting aside all modesty, was the first that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Bastards) to be his Sons. By one of which, the *Cæſar Borgia* before-named, he recovered *Forli*, *Imola*, and many other Estates from the present owners, on a design of settling them in his own Family, as before is said, and to that end called in the *French*, who after made such foul work in *Italy*.

29. *Julio* the Second had more in him of the Soldier, than the Prelate; recovering many Towns unto the Church, which had been formerly usurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cæſar Borgia*; and keeping *Italy* in his time in continual Wars. This is the Pope who passing over the Bridge of *Tiber*, brandished his Sword, and threw his Keys into the River; saying that if *Peter's* Keys would not serve his turn, then *Paul's* Sword should do it.

30. *Leo* the Tenth was indeed a great favourer of Learning, but of great Prodigality, and vast Expence. For maintenance whereof he sent his saleable *Indulgences* into *France* and *Germany*; which businesses being indifferently handled by his Ministers, occasioned *Luther* in *Germany*, and *Zuinglius* among the *Switzers*, first to write against them; and afterwards to question many points of Popish Doctrine. In pursuance of which Quarrel, the Pope of *Rome* burnt *Luther's* Books, whom he declared an Heretick; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg* with the Pope's Canon Law, whom he declared to be a Persecutor, a Tyrant, and the very *Antichrist*. Which flame increased so fast, and enlarged so far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papal Monarchy.

31. *Pius* the Fourth, continued the Council formerly called at *Trent* by Pope *Paul* the Third, but interrupted and laid aside from one Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby settled and confirmed the Interest of the Church of *Rome*, caused it to be received as *Oecumenical*; though the *Italian* Bishops being most of them the Pope's Creatures, did more than double the number of all the rest; and yet some of the rest also were but nicely *Titulars*. He added also a new Creed consisting of twelve Articles to be added to that of the *Apostles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of *Rome*. But of the words and actions of these Ghostly Fathers we have said enough, if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinal, for giving to St. *Peter's* Picture too much of the *Red*, replied, *That he had made him so, as blushing at the Lives of those who were called his Successors.*

At the time of our Author's Writing, *Innocent* the Tenth was possess'd of the Papal Throne, and therefore nothing is said of him. *Brietius* saith of him, That he was a Man of greater Courage than was to have been expected from a Man of his Years and Birth, and fixed in his Resolves; under whom the *Jansenists* were condemn'd: But *Olympia* his Brother's Wife gave his Reputation some blemish by her too great Power over him; he being less careful than was fit in so suspicious a Nation, of giving Men the opportunity of traducing and defaming him.

Alexander the Seventh was elected the seventh of April 1655. He received *Christina*, Queen of *Sweden*, into

Rome with great Magnificence. And repaired the City and Haven of *Civita Vecchia* for the building and entertaining his Gallies; the Popes before this time not having any Naval Forces of their own. He also promoted the *Pyrenean Treaty of Peace* between *France* and *Spain*, in the Year 1659. He changed the Papal Custom from carrying the Host in a sitting Posture in the publick Procession into that of Kneeling. Lastly, He consecrated *Francis de Sales*, Bishop of *Geneva*, and was a great Builder of Churches, and a great admirer of the Virgin *Mary*, whom he stild in an Inscription, *Pacis Arbitra*. He sate thirteen Years.

Clement the Ninth was elected the twentieth of *June*, 1667. This Pope Canonized *St. Rose* of *Panama*, in the Year 1668. And *St. Peter* of *Alcantara* in *Spain*, a *Minorite*; And *St. Magdalen* of *Pazzi*, a *Carmelite Nun*. He sate three Years.

Clement the Tenth was elected the 29th of *April*, 1670. He Canonized Pope *Pius V.* in the Year 1672. *Cajetan*, the Founder of the *Theatins*; *Francis Borgia*, General of the *Jesuits*; *Lewis Bertrand*, a *Dominican*; and *Margaret*, Queen of *Scotland*. He sate six Years.

Innocent the Eleventh, the present Pope, was elected the 21st Day of *September* 1676. There ought little to be said of him, because living; but Christendom is certainly much indebted to him for having contributed so very much as he has done to the recovery of *Hungary* out of the Hands of the *Turks*. He died the 12th of *Aug.* 1689. This Pope had the good fortune in his life time to please all the World but the *French King*, with whom he was imbroil'd to the Hour of his Death, on the score of the *Franchises* and other *Ecclesiastical Concerns*: He was no Friend to the *Jesuits*, nor they to him; which Society, by the Intrigues with *France*, procured the troublesome Process against Seignior *Michael Molino*, and the *Quietists*; who were ruined by the *Inquisition*, after the Author's Doctrines had been twice tried and acquitted by that *Unholy Office*. *Molino* is said to have died some small time before this Pope, who had ever been his Friend, and was so far suspected; that the *Inquisitor* came to examine the *Infallible Father*, and try whether he were sound in the Faith; and perhaps he had been deposed as a *Quietist*, but for the scandal it might have given to the Northern Hereticks, who yet smil'd to see *Infallibility* suspected: But the *Inquisitors* being twice deceived by this sly Heretick themselves, are the less to be blamed that they were jealous of their *Spiritual Infallible Father*, whose *Inerrability* was never intended for any but *Lay-mens belief*.

I have extracted this short Account of the four last Popes, and their Elections, out of a Book stiled *Historia summorum Pontificum per eorum Numismata*: Written by *Claud du Molinet*, a Regular Canon, and Printed at *Paris* in the Year 1679. and Dedicated to this present Pope.

As for the *Temporal Power* and Greatness of the Popes of *Rome*, there is a pretended *Donation* of the Emperor *Constantine*; by which the City of *Rome* it self, most part of *Italy* and *Africk*, and all the Islands of those Seas are conferred upon them: the forgery whereof is very learnedly shewn by our learned *Cracanthorp*, in his Discourse upon that subject. But that *Donation* might most justly be suspected of Fraud and Forgery, though no body had took the pains to detect the same; considering how fearful the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof disputed: inasmuch that many Leafs are razed out of *Guicciardine* by the *Inquisition*, where it had been questioned. For in that place the Historian not only denieth the said feigned *Donation*, but affirms that divers learned Men reported, That *Constantine* and *Sylvester* (to whom it is said to have been made) lived in divers Ages. Then sheweth, how base and obscure the Authority of the Pope was in *Rome* it self, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of *Italy*. 2. That in the institution of the *Exarchate*, the Popes had nothing to do with the *Temporal Sword*, but lived as subject to the

Emperors. 3. That they were not very much obeyed in matters *Spiritual*, by reason of the corruption of their Manners. 4. That after the overthrow of the *Exarchate*, the Emperors now neglecting *Italy*, the *Romans* began to be governed by the Advice and Power of the Popes. 5. That *Pepin* of *France*, and his Son *Charles*, having overthrown the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, gave unto the Popes the *Exarchate*, *Urbine*, *Ancona*, *Spoleto*, and many other Towns, and Territories about *Rome*. 6. That the Popes in all their Bulls and Charters, expressed the date of them in these following words; *Such a one our Lord the Emperor reigning*. 7. That long after the translation of the Empire from *France* to *Germany*, the Popes began to make open protestation, that the *Pontifical Dignity* was rather to give Laws to the Emperors than receive any from them. 8. That being thus raised to an earthly Power, they forgot the salvation of Souls, sanctity of Life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards Men: And that to raise Arms, to make War against *Christians*, to invent new devices for getting of Money, to prophane sacred things for their own ends, and to enrich their Kindred and Children, was their only study. And this is the substance of *Guicciardine* in that place; an Author above all exception. He was a Man whom the Popes employed in many businesses of principal importance, so that no hate to them, but love to the truth, made him write thus much. As for the City of *Rome*, so unlikely is it to have been given by *Constantine*, that neither *Pepin* nor *Charles* his Son, (though more beholding to the Popes than that Emperor was) could be induced to part with it. *Lewis*, surnamed *Pius*, is said to have been the first Donor of it, and a Copy of his *Donation* is found in the third Book of *Volaterran*, subscribed by the Emperor, his three Sons, ten Bishops, eight Abbots, fifteen Earls, and the Pope's Library-Keeper: yet notwithstanding it is thought, by many very learned and judicious Men, that really there was no such matter; but that all this was forged by *Anastasis* the Pope's *Bibliothecarian*, or Library-Keeper, who is cited as a witness to the *Donation*. And yet to put the matter further out of question, let us next hear what that great Politician and Statesman, the Recorder of *Florence*, *Nic. Machiavel*, hath observed in this case. 'Rome (saith he) was always subject to the Lords of *Italy*, till *Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*, removed his Seat to *Ravenna*; for thereby the *Romans* were enforced to submit themselves to the Bishops, *An.* 430. or thereabouts. And talking of the estate of the Popedom, *An.* 931. he states it thus. 'In *Rome* were elected yearly out of the Nobility two *Consuls*, who according to the ancient Custom ruled that City. Under them was appointed a Judge to minister Justice to the People. There was also a Council of twelve Men, which gave Governours unto the Towns subject to *Rome*. And for the Pope, he had in *Rome* more or less Authority, according to the favour which he found with the Emperors, or others then most mighty; but the leaving of *Italy* by the *German* Emperors settled the Pope in a more absolute Sovereignty over the City. And yet it seems they were not of such absolute Power, but that the *Romans* tugged hard with them for their Liberties. Concerning which he tells us, in another place, 'That the ambition of the People of *Rome* did at that time, viz. *An.* 1010. make much War with the Popes; and that having helped the Pope to drive out the Emperor, and altered the Government of the City as to them seemed good, suddenly they became Enemies to him; and the Popes received more Injuries at their Hands, than at any other *Christian Princes*; and that even in those days when the Censures of the Popes made all the West of the World to tremble, yet even then did the People of *Rome* rebel, and both the Popes and the People studied for nothing so much, as how one of them might overthrow the

* This was in the Year 493.

'Au-

Authority and Estimation of the other.

But for the Method and Degrees by which the Popes ascended to their Temporal Greatness, take here an extract of the Story taken out of the best Authors, by the most Reverend Father in God the late Lord Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work against *Fisher the Jesuit*. The Pope (saith he) being chosen anciently by the *Clergy* and People of *Rome*, used always to receive from the Emperor's Hands a ratification of that choice: insomuch that about the Year 579. when all *Italy* was on fire with the *Lombards*, and *Pelagius* the Second constrained through the necessity of the times, to enter upon the Popedom without the Emperor's leave; *St. Gregory*, then a Deacon, was shortly after sent in an Embassy to excuse it. But when the *Lombards* grew so great in *Italy*, and the Empire was so infested with the *Saracens*, and such changes hapned in all parts of the World, as that neither for the present the Homage of the Pope was useful to the Emperor, nor the Protection of the Emperor, available for the Pope; by this means was the Bishop of *Rome* left to play his own Game by himself. A thing which as it pleased him well enough, so both he and his Successors made great advantage by it. For being grown to that eminence by the favour of the Emperors, and greatness of that City and place of his abode, he then found himself the more free, the greater the Tempest was that beat upon the other. And then first he set himself to alienate the Hearts of the *Italians* from the Emperor, in which he did prevail so far, that *Theophylact* the *Exarch* coming into *Italy*, was opposed by the Soldiers, who wished better to the Pope, than to the Emperor; and the Emperor's own Governour was fain to be defended from his own Soldiers by the power of the Pope, who had gotten an Interest in them against their own Master. Next he opposed himself against him; and about the Year 710, Pope *Constantine* the First did openly affront *Philippicus* the Emperor, in defence of Images, as *Onuphrius* telleth us. After him, *Gregory* the Second and Third, took up his Example, and did the like by *Leo Isaurus*. By this time the *Lombards* began to pinch very close, and to vex on all sides not only *Italy*, but *Rome* too. This drives the Pope to seek a new Patron, and very fitly he meets with *Charles Martel* in *France*, that famous Warriour against the *Saracens*. Him he imployeth in defence of the Church against the *Lombards*; and the Address seems very advisedly taken, it proved so fortunate to them both. For in short time it dissolved the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having then stood Two hundred and four Years, which was the Pope's Security: and it brought the Crown of *France* into the House of *Charles*, and shortly after the Western Empire. And now began the Popes to be great indeed. For by the bounty of *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles*, that which was taken by him from the *Lombards*, was given to the Pope; that is to say, the *Exarchate*, and all that lay betwixt the *Apennine* and the River *Po*; so that now he became a Temporal Prince. But when *Charles* the Great had set up the Western Empire, then he resumed the Ancient and Original Power to govern the Church, to call Councils, and to order Papal Elections. And this Power continued for a time in his Posterity; for *Gregory* the Seventh was confirmed in the Popedom by the same *Henry* the Fourth, whom he afterwards deposed. And it might have continued longer, if the succeeding Emperors had had Abilities enough to secure, or vindicate their own Rights. But the Pope keeping a strong Council about him, and meeting with some weak Princes, and those oft-times distracted with great and dangerous Wars, grew stronger till he had got the better; yet was it carried in succeeding times with great changes of Fortune, and different success; the Emperor sometimes plucking from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperor; winning and losing Ground, as

their Spirits, Abilities, Aids and Opportunities were; till at last the Pope settled himself on the Grounds laid by *Gregory* the Seventh, in that great Power which he now useth in and over these parts of the *Christian* World. A Power first exercised (saith he in another place) by this Pope *Gregory* the Seventh, and made too good upon the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, as by Pope *Adrian* the Fourth, *Alexander* the Third, with some others, upon *Friederick Barbarossa*. And others of the Emperors were alike served when they did not submit. And for this, I hope his Holiness was not to be blamed. For if the Emperor kept the Pope under for divers Years together, against all reason; the Pope, as *Bellarmino* affirms, being never subject to the Emperor, and wanting force to stand on his own *Prerogative*: I hope the Pope having now got Power enough, may keep the Emperors under foot, and not suffer them any more to start before him.

Having thus a little glanced at the means, by which the great Power of the Church of *Rome* was first obtained; let us next consider of those Policies, by which this Papal Monarchy hath been so long upheld in esteem and credit. We may divide them into three Heads. 1. Those by which they have insinuated and screwed themselves into the Affections and Affairs of the greatest Princes. 2. Those by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to secure their estate: And 3. those by which they keep the People in obedience and ignorance.

1. Concerning the first. First, The Donation of several Kingdoms to them which have no right nor title, but by these Grants of the Pope, cannot but bind them fast to uphold that Power, without which they could lay no claim to that which they are possessed of. Of which sort was the confirmation of the Kingdom of *France* to the House of *Pepin*; of *Naples* to the House of *Schawbun*, and *Anjou*; of *Navarre* to the *Spaniards*. 2. The readiness of their Ministers to kill such as resist them, cannot but necessitate Princes to seek their Friendship, and hold fair with them: especially since by a Writ of Excommunication, they can arm the Subjects against their Sovereign; and without the charge of levying one Soldier, either destroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent Wars raised by them against the Emperors of *Germany*, and that against King *John* in *England*, by these Papal summations only; the poysoning of the said King *John* by a Monk of *Swinehead*, and killing of King *Henry* the Third of *France*, by *Jaques Clement*, are full proofs of this. 3. Then followeth their allowance of Marriages prohibited both by God and Nature; the issue of which cannot but uphold the Pope's Authority, without which their Birth would be illegitimate, and consequently themselves incapable of the Estates they are born unto: And by this means they do more strengthen themselves by the unlawful Marriages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawful Marriages of his own. Nothing more fastned Queen *Mary* of *England* to the See of *Rome*, than the Question that was raised about the Marriage of her Mother to King *Henry* the Eighth; the lawfulness of which depended chiefly on the dispensation of Pope *Julio* the Second. 4. Then cometh in their dispensing with the Oaths of Princes, when they conceive themselves induced upon reason of State, to fly off from those Leagues and break off those Treaties, which have been solemnly made and sworn betwixt them and their Neighbours. By means whereof, such Princes think themselves not perjured, because dispensed with by the Pope; and commonly get something in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot be unthankful unto the Papacy. Examples of this kind are obvious in all times and Stories. 5. Next comes the choosing of the younger Sons of great Princes into the rank of Cardinals; which obligeth the whole Stock or Family to the Papal Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes

are preferred without charge to their Fathers, or any diminution of the Regal Patrimony. 6. And as by these courses he holds in with all *Christian Princes* generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; so hath he fastned more particularly on the King of *Spain*; whereof we shall speak further when we come to that Country.

2. Concerning the second: 1. So it is that their Estate hath the firmeft foundation of any, as being built on the Consciences of Men possessed with an opinion of their *Infallibility*, and that undoubted Power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but also over Hell and Purgatory. 2. Then comes the innumerable Preferments at their disposing, for Men of all Humours and Affections; as having in their Power the disposing of almost all the Benefices and Bishopricks in *Italy*, half of those in *Spain*, divers in *Germany* and *France*: which keepeth the *Clergy*, and all such as are that way studied, in a perpetual dependance upon that See; especially injoying by it many notable Privileges, which those of the *Temporality* are not capable of. 3. Consider next the multitude of *Monks* and *Friers*, whose very being depends wholly upon his Authority; every *Monastery* and *Convent* being a Garrison (as it were) to defend the Papacy, and train up a *Militia* of *Spiritual Janizaries*; Men most affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of these it is conceived, that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at least may be fit for action; and all maintained at other Mens cost, themselves not disbursing one Penny towards it. 4. Their *Pardons* and *Indulgences* are a great increase to their Revenue: some of them as unlimited as that of Pope *Boniface* the Eighth, which was for 82000 Years to all that could say such a Prayer of *St. Augustines*; and that for every Day, *Toties quoties*. 5. Their practising on *Penitents*, whom they perswade in the very agony of their Souls, that there is no Salvation for them, but by giving part of their Estates unto the Church. 6. Nor have they found any small advantage to their Power and Patrimony by the invention of *Spiritual Fraternities*, which are Appurtenances (as it were) to the Orders of *Friers*, and may in number perhaps equal them. Into these the *Lay-People* of all sorts, Men and Women, Married and Single, desire to beinrolled; as hereby injoying the spiritual Prerogatives of *Indulgences*, and a more speedy dispatch out of *Purgatory*.

3. Concerning the third. 1. They deter the People from reading the Scripture, alledging unto them the perils that may incur by mis-interpretation. 2. They breed an *Antipathy* between the *Papists* and the *Protestants*; insomuch that a *Papist* may not say *Amen* unto a *Protestant's Deo Gratias*. They debar them from all sound of the Religion, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers, and hiding their own Treatises, in which the Tenor of the *Protestants* is recited only to be confuted; insomuch that in all *Italy* one shall seldom meet with *Bellarmines* Works, or any of the like nature to be sold. 4. They have, under pain of Excommunication, prohibited the *Italians* from *Travel* and *Traffick* with *Heretical* Countries, or such places where those contagious sounds and lights (as they term them) might make them return infected. 5. The *Severity*, or *Tyranny* rather of the *Inquisition* (of which we shall speak more at large when we come to *Spain*) crusheth not only the beginnings, but the smallest suspicions of being this way addicted. And 6. the People thus restrained from *Travel*, are taught to believe, that the *Protestants* are Blasphemers of God and all his Saints; that in *England* Churches are turned to Stables, the People grown barbarous and eat young Children; that *Geneva* is a professed Sanctuary for Roguery, and the like. We have yet two latter Examples of their dealing in this kind. First, The gross slander of the *Apostacy* (or as they call it the *Reconciliation*) unto their Church, of the Right Reverend Father in God *Dr. King*, not long since the Lord Bishop

of *London*, a Prelate of too known a Faith and Zeal, to give occasion for such a Calumny. The second, A Book by them published, and commonly sold in *Italy* and *France*, containing a Relation of God's Judgments, shewn on a sort of *Protestant Heretick*, by the fall of an House in *St. Andrew's Parish* in *London*, in which they were assembled to hear a *Geneva Lecture*, Oct. 26. A. D. 1623. By which dealing the simple People are made to believe that to be a Judgment on us of the *Protestant Party*, which the Authors of that Pamphlet well know to be a Calumny in regard of us; and a sad Chance (I will not say a Judgment) which befel their own, by the fall of a Chamber in *Black-Fryers*, where they were met to hear the Sermon of one *Drury* a *Popish Priest*, and that too on the fifth of *November*, in their own Account, being the 26th of *October* before-mentioned.

The Popedom being thus cunningly and strongly founded, it cannot be if the Popes had been chosen young, or of the same Family, (so that the Successor had not often crossed the Designs of his Predecessor) but that this new Monarchy had been greater and better established, than ever the old *Roman Empire* was in her greatest glory. And to say truth, I have wondered with my self, that some of the more active Popes especially, such as were chosen young, and had the happiness to descend of Noble Families, did never seek the settling of this Estate in their own Posterity: especially considering the good *Precedents* which they had before them, both in sacred and in civil Stories. The *High Priesthood* in the Church of *Jewry* went from Father to Son; and why should any Man think it inconvenient to follow the example of Almighty God, in making the *High Priesthood* in the Church of *Christ* to be also hereditary, not elective? The *Saracens*, who were as great Masters for Wit and Policy, as any those Ages did produce, pursued that Precedent; governed by *Hereditary Caliphs* many Years together, until the *Sultans* their *Vicegerents* (ambitiously affecting the supreme Command) rooted out their Races. And if the same obligation lie on the Masters of Religions or mixt Orders, for preserving the Rules and Statutes of their foundation; as is upon the Pope by the fundamental Ordinances of the *Conclave*, as it seems to do; why might not the Popes as well dispense with those *Constitutions*, and turn the Popedom into an Hereditary Estate; as *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, and *Gottardus* of *Denmark*, Masters of the *Dutch Knights* in *Prussia* and *Livonia*, in their times have done? Nor can I see, but that such an alteration as I speak of, might be altogether as contenting to the Princes of Christendom, as the like change from an unsettled popular Government to an Hereditary Monarchy, was formerly unto the Provinces and People of the State of *Rome*. Of which it is affirmed by that noble Historian and Statesman *Tacitus*, *Neque Provinciae illum rerum statum abnuebant, suspecto Senatus populique imperia ob certamina Potentium, & avaritiam Magistratuum; invalido Legum auxilio, quæ vi, ambitu, postremo pecuniâ turbabantur*, The Provinces (saith he) disliked not the alteration, to whom the Government of the *Senate* and *People* had been long distastd, by reason of the Factions of the great Ones, and covetousness of their Officers: the Laws affording no security at all, as being sway'd up and down by force, ambition, and corruption. The Popedom settled in one House, would prove more constant in the preservation of all Leagues and Treaties, more careful to preserve the Interest of their Estate, more useful to the Confederates and Allies thereof upon all occasions, than it is at present; where the Popes so often change their sides, and shift their Factions; the Successor many times esteeming it his greatest glory to rescind all the Acts of his Predecessor. And possible enough it is that *Cæsar Borgia* the Son of *Alexander VI.* might have some such ends, when it was covenanted betwixt him and *Lewis XII.* of *France*, that being declared General of the Churches Forces, and giving his helping hand to that King in the Conquest of *Milain*; he should be aided by him

him in recovering all the Lands of the Church, which the Dukes of *Urbine* and *Camerine*, the Families of the *Malatesti*, *Baillons*, and *Bentivogli*, with divers others of less note, did possess in *Italy*. Which having got into his hands, had not his Father's sudden death, and his own dangerous sickness happening at the same time, cut off his design; it had been a matter of no great difficulty (if of any at all) to have made himself absolute Master of *Rome*, and of all the Lands of the Church, and to have left the same established in the *Borgian* Family. It is true, that such an alteration would be very distastful to the ambition of the Cardinals, who by the deaths (natural or violent, it matters not) of the present Pope, aspire by all means both of love and money to that high dignity. But for my part, I cannot see how all the wit in the *Conclave* had been able to hinder it, if *Alexander*, on a purpose to poison some of that number whom he had invited to a Supper, by a meer mistake of his Cup-bearer, had not poisoned himself, (even in the very heat of the business then almost effected) and so made frustrate the device.

But passing by this imagination of an *Hereditary* Popedom, let us behold it as *Elective*, and look upon the form and order observed in it. Now the Election of the Pope is made most commonly in this place, and manner. In the Popes Palace on the Hill *Vatican*, are among other Buildings five Halls, two Chapels, and a Gallery seventy foot long. The Gallery is appointed for Conference, one Chapel for the Mass, and for the Election; the other with the Halls are for the Cardinals Lodgings. Every Hall hath two rows of Chambers, which are purposely for the time, made of green or Violet Cloth. To each Cardinal is allowed four Servants, to lie in his Chamber. They that are once within, are compelled, unless they be sick, still to continue there; and such as are once out, are no more permitted to go in, lest by that means, the Cardinals should maintain intelligence with any foreign Princes. To this *Conclave* (for by this name the place of the Election is called) is but one door, to which belongeth four Locks, and as many Keys. One Key is in the keeping of the Cardinals; one, of the City-Bishops; one, of the *Roman* Nobility, and one, of the *Master of the Ceremonies*. There is in this door a Wicket or Hatch, which is opened only at Dinners and Suppers, whereof the *Master of the Ceremonies* keepeth a Key. At this hole the Cardinals Servants receive their Meat; every dish being first diligently searched, lest any Letters should be conveyed in them. As for the Lodgings, they have neither holes nor windows to give light; so that there they make day of Wax-Candles; And lest the Pope should be made by force, both the City and *Conclave* are strongly guarded. When the Cardinals are going to Election, the Privileges of the Cardinals are recited, which every one sweareth to observe, in case he be chosen Pope. Then the *Master of the Ceremonies* ringing a Bell, calleth them to Mass: Which ended, there is brought to every Cardinal a Chair, and therein a Scroll of all the Cardinals names. Before the Altar is set a Table covered with a Purple Cloth, whereupon is set a Chalice, and a Silver Bell, and about it six Stools, on which sit two Cardinal Bishops, two Cardinal-Priests, and two Cardinal-Deacons. Every Cardinal writeth his voice in a piece of paper, goeth to the Altar, prayeth God to guide him in the Election, putteth his voice into the Chalice, and departeth to his Seat. The first Bishop taketh out all the Papers, and delivereth them to the first Deacon; who unfoldeth each of them, readeth (without mentioning the name of the *Elect*) the name of the *Elect*: and every Cardinal in his particular Scroll, noteth how many voices every one hath. The account being made, the *first Priest* having the like Scroll, pronounceth who hath most voices: Which done, the *Priest* ringeth a Silver Bell; at which call the *Master of the Ceremonies* bringeth in a Pan of Coals, and burneth all the little Papers, wherein the names of the

Elect were written. He that hath the most voices (so that his voices exceed the proportion of two parts of three) is acknowledged Pope, and adored by the rest of the Cardinals: but if they exceed not this number, they must begin all anew. If in the space of thirty days the Election be not fully ended, then must the Cardinals be kept from Fire, Light, and Victuals, till they are fully agreed. The Wicket which we before mentioned, is called the *Golden Gate*, at which stands an infinite number of poor people; on whom the new Pope, having opened that Gate, bestoweth his Fatherly Benediction, and remitteth to them all their sins. Then striketh he continually on the same door with a *Golden Mallet*; which whilst he is doing, workmen without break it open. The Chips, Stones, Dust, and Dirt which fall from the Gate, while it is opening, are gathered and preserved as choicest *Reliques*; and the *Golden Mallet* is usually given to that Cardinal, who is in most grace with the new Pope.

This is the ordinary way of the Popes Election, but subject to much Faction and Division among the Cardinals, and that in times of less deceit than the present are: Inasmuch as after the death of Pope *Clement IV.* the differences among them held for two years and more. Which gave occasion to one of them to say in scorn, that *they must uncover the roof of the House to make way for the Holy Ghost to come upon them*. And there is now much more corruption and abuse in it, than ever formerly, as buying Voices, setting up some for states and tearing Scrutinies, every Cardinal desiring to have a Pope of his own, or his Prince's Faction. So that we find it written of an old *Sicilian* Cardinal, who after long absence came to the Election of a Pope, where he expected that incessant Prayers, as in times of old, should have procured some fit man to be pointed out to them for the *Vicar of Christ*: That, finding nothing but canvassing, promising rewards, and threatening for Voices in the choice; *Ad hunc modum* (saith he) *funt Pontifices Romani?* and so returned unto his Country, and saw *Rome no more*.

The ordinary *Temporal* Revenue of the Papacy arising out of Land-rents, Imposts upon Commodities, and sale of Offices, *Boterus* maketh to be better than two Millions of Crowns; but the extraordinary, and *Spiritual*, to be far beyond. For it is said of *Pius Quintus*, who late Pope six years only, that he got from the *Spanish* Clergy 14 Millions. And though he was a very great Builder, which spent him a great deal of money, yet he so managed his Estate, that he laid up four Millions of Crowns in the Castle of *St. Angelo*. *Sixtus V.* took from the *Jesuits* at one clap 20000 Crowns of yearly rent, (because they were too rich for men professing poverty:) and having sat but five years, had coffered up five Millions of Gold; four of which his Successors *Gregory XIV.* spent in less than a year. Out of *France* they received no less than a Million of Crowns yearly. Out of *England*, when it was the Pope's *Potus inexhaustus*, they and their Followers extracted no less than 60000 Marks *per annum*, which amounteth to 120000 pounds of our present Money; and was more than the King's standing Revenue did attain unto: Yet was this in the time of King *Henry III.* before their avarice and rapine was at the height. And of late days no longer than since the Reign of King *Henry VIII.* besides their *Peter-pence*, which was an Annual Rent upon every Chimney in the Realm, first granted to the Pope by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, Anno 730. or thereabouts, and afterwards confirmed by *Ethelwolf*, the second Monarch of *England*; besides their first Fruits, Tenths, and all other exactions: it was made evident that in some few years then last past, the Popes had received out of *England* no less than 160000 *l.* Sterling for the confirmation of Episcopal Elections only. By which we may conjecture what vast sums they drew hence on all other occasions. Let other Countries subject to the Pope's Authority be accordingly rated,

ted, and the total will amount to a sum incredible. Next add to this the sums of money they receive from particular persons, for Pardons, for Dispensations with unlawful Marriages; the profits arising from Pilgrimages, from the death and Funerals of great Persons, from the Indulgences granted to Abbies and Convents, in all which the Popes have a share; and it would puzzle a good *Arithmetician* to state his *Intrado*. So truly was it said by Pope Sixtus IV. that *a Pope could never want money, as long as he was able to hold a Pen in his hand*. Yet notwithstanding, their Treasury for the most part is but low and empty. For 1. the State they kept, because of that great honour which they have above other Princes, which is to be maintained at a great expence (for the more worship the more cost, as the saying is) is very chargeable unto them; their ordinary Guards standing them in no less than 30000 Crowns *per annum*. 2. The large allowances which they are fain to give unto their Legates, Nuntios, and other Ministers, keep their Coffers low; the entertainment of their ordinary Nuntios in the Courts of Christian Princes, amounting to no less than 1200 Crowns a Month to each. And 3. their greedy desire to enrich their Sons or Kinsmen with the Treasures of the Church (with which humour Pope Sixtus V. being of poor and obscure Birth, was never touched) keeps them always bare. Add unto these the excessive gorgeousness of the Papal Vestments (in which vanity every one seeketh to excel the other) especially that of their Triple-Crown, which must needs put them to great charge, and continual issues of their Treasure. And for an evidence of this last, we find that Clement V. who first transferred his See to Avignon, to shew his gallantry to the French (probably unacquainted with the like fine sight) had his Crown thick set with Carbuncles and precious Stones; one of which being lost by a fall from his Horse, was valued at 6000 Ducats.

As for the Forces of the Church, the Pope is able to impress as great a number of Land-Soldiers out of his Estate, as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of Italy. Paul III. sent to the aid of Charles V. in the Wars of Germany, 12000 Foot, and 500 Horse, and yet raised his own Family to the Dukedom of Parma. Pius V. sent to the aid of Charles IX. against the Hugonots, 4000 Foot, and 1000 Horse, which Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when Clement undertook the War of Ferrara, he raised out of his Estate 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse in less than a Month; which was more than most Princes in Europe could possibly have done. And for the Valour of his Soldiers, and Ability of his Commanders, they retain so much (as before was said) of their Ancestors Virtues, that there are thought to be many Families in the Estate of the Church, able to furnish all the Common-wealths and Princes of Christendom, with sufficient Captains. What and how little he is able to do by Sea, may be best seen out of the aid which he sent to the Venetians, at the famous Battel of Lepanto, wherein he furnished them with no more than twelve Gallies; and those too hired of the Duke of Florence: The Venetians in the Adriatick, and the Florentines in the Tuscan Seas, having all the Trade, and consequently all the power in the Seas of Italy. It is true, the Pope was bound by the Capitulation, to bear the fifth part of the charge of the War, and with the help of the rest of the Princes of Italy (who were to march under his colours) to set forth 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horse: Which is as great an Argument of his riches and power by Land, as the other is of his weakness at Sea.

Having a purpose in the prosecution of this Work, to mention such particular Orders of Knighthood, as most Countries have given beginning to; I will here set down the Orders of such Popish Spiritual Knights or Friars, which his holy Benediction hath erected, and far allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the Original of a Monastical Life; and then we will make special mention of some of the Ro-

mish Votaries of both Sexes. Know then, that under the seventh Persecution raised against the Church by Decius, one Paulus, born at Thebes in Egypt, retired to a private Cave under the foot of a Rock, Anno 260. Here he is said to have lived one hundred years, and to have been seen of no man but one Anthony, who was at his death. This Anthony was the first that followed the example of Paulus, a man of a noble House, and one that sold all his Estate, that he might the more privately enjoy himself. He lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the Father of the Monks. To these beginnings doth Volidore Virgil refer the Original of the Monks, and Religious Orders; the name Monk coming from the Greek *Μοναχ*, because of their lonely and solitary Lives. Those of the Religious Orders are called *Fratres*, and in English Friars, from the French word *Frere*, which signifieth a Brother; and that either because of their brotherly Co-habitation; or else because they are *Fratres in malo*, Brethren in mischief and design.

The foundation of Monastical life thus laid by Paulus, and Antony; the World increased so fast in Monks and Eremites, that it seemed necessary to prescribe them Orders. Hereupon St. Basil gathered them together, living formerly dispersed; and is said to be the first that built them Monasteries. He is also said to have ordained the three Vows, of Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience; to have instructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the service of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching. Of this Order there are not many in the Latin Church, but good plenty of them in the Greek. They are bound to abstain from all kind of Flesh, and are called Monks of St. Basil, by the name of that Father; amongst the Writings of which Father, the Rules for these Monasticks are set down at large.

II. The next who prescribed Orders was S. Augustine, born in the year 350, who being thirty years of Age, is said to have obtained a Garden without the Walls of Hippo, for private Contemplations. Twelve only he assumed into his Society, living with them in all Integrity, and wearing a leathern Girdle to distinguish them from Monks. Branched afterwards into two several and distinct Orders, the one called by the name of *Canons Regular*, whose chief House here in England was St. John's near Colchester; the other called commonly *Austin Friars*, or the *Eremites* of St. Austin, as others call them; Of such esteem formerly in the University of Oxford, that all who took the Degree of a Master of Arts, were to submit themselves to their Oppositions in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, *in Augustinensibus responderit vel opposuerit*, still retained among them. Their House in London stood in Broad-street, of which a part of the Church still standeth, converted to a Church for the use of the Dutch; the rest demolished, and in the place thereof a stately Mansion erected by Sir William Pawlet the first Marquess of Winchester, and Lord Treasurer of England. These make the first Order of the *Friars Mendicants*. The first Monastery of them was erected at Paris by William Duke of Guien, Anno 1155. and Anno 1200. they began to flourish in Italy, by the favour of John Lord of Mantua. The other branches of this Tree, are 1. the Monks of St. Hierom, 2. the Carmelites, 3. the Croychet Friars, and 4. the Dominicans.

1. The Monks of St. Hierom challenge their original from the worthy Father of the Church, so called. They flourish especially in Spain, where there are thirty two Monasteries of them; their chief House being St. Bartholomews of Lupina; and have taken unto themselves the Rule of Saint Austin. Their Robe is a white Cassock, under a tawny Cloak.

2. The Carmelites, so called from Mount Carmel in Syria, pretend their Original from Elias, and John the Baptist. They only allowed at first the Rule of S. Basil; and were confirmed in Europe by Honorius the Third. They are by some called *Jacobines*; from a Church dedicated to St. James, where they had their first Convent;

vent; and by us, the *White Friars*, from the colour of their Habit. Their House in *London* stood in *Fleetstreet*, converted since into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, besides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of *St. Austin*, by *Dona Fresca* (or *Teresa*) a *Spanish* Woman; who made them also certain Constitutions, confirmed by *Pius IV.* Anno 1565.

3. The *Friars of St. Cross*, *Crossed*, or *Crouched Friars*, were first ordained by *Cyriacus* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, who shewed to *Heena* the place where the Cross was hidden; hence this Order, which being almost decayed, was restored first by *Urban II.* and afterwards by *Innocent III.* under the Rule of *St. Austin*. Their Robe is Watchet, and in their hands they carry the Figure of the Cross. Their House in *London* near the *Tower*, still retains its name.

4. The *Dominicans*, or *Friars Preachers*, were instituted by *S. Dominick* a *Spaniard*. He put himself in this Order with sixteen of his Disciples, under the Rule of *St. Austin*, Anno 1206. and had his Device confirmed by *Honorius* the Third. Their duty is to preach the Gospel in all places unto the farthest parts of the World; which both they did, and their Successors since have done, not at home only, but in *India* and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are called by us *Black-Friars*, from the Colour of their Habits. and are the third Order of *Friars Mendicants*. Their House in *London* stood near *Ludgate*, and took up the whole Precinct, which is still called *Black-Friars*; though nothing be remaining of it but the very name.

III. The third that prescribed Orders was *St. Benedict*, born at *Nursia*, in the Dutchy of *Spoleto*, Anno 472. He gathered the *Monks of Italy* together, gave them a Rule in Writing, caused them to be called *Benedictines*, or *Monks of St. Benedict*; and lived till he had seen twelve Monasteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew so populous, that there have been of it 29 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Archbishops, 4000 Bishops, besides some thousands of Canonized Saints, which they use to brag of. Their Habit is a loose Gown of black, reaching down to the ground with a Hood of the same; an under-garment of white woollen, and Boots on their Legs. The other principal streams of this Fountain are, 1. the *Monks of Clugnie*, 2. of *Carthusia* 3. of *Cisteaux*, 4. the *Celestines*.

1. The *Monks of Clugnie*, are so called from the Abbey of *Clugnie* in the County of *Burgundy*, the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the first that reformed the *Benedictines*, then fallen from their former integrity, Anno 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperors, that all such Abbies as would come under the compass of his Reforms (which were in all about two hundred) should be called the *Congregation of Clugnie*, and that they might call their Chapters, and dispatch their common businesses, when and as often as they pleased.

2. The *Carthusians* were first instituted by one *Bruno*, a *German* Doctor of Divinity, at the Town of *Carthusia* in *Dauphin*, Anno 1080. His followers which were at the first but six, have at this day 93 Monasteries. They eat no Flesh, live by Couples, labour with their Hands, Watch, Pray, and never meet together but on Sundays. Their House in *London* by corruption and long tract of time, got the name of the *Charter-House*, (the *Monks* themselves being corruptly called the *Charter-House-Monks*) now better known by the name of *Sutton's Hospital*; from the Hospital of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of *London*.

3. The *Monks of Cisteaux* were first instituted by one *Robert*, Abbot of *Moleme*, Anno 1090, or thereabouts; who together with 21 of the most Religious of his Covent, retired to *Cisteaux* in *Burgundy* Dutchy; hence the name. About five years after, one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order, who built and repaired

forthem 16 Abbies. Their Robe is a white Callock, girt with a girdle of wool, the rest black. They were by us called *White Monks*; and the common *Benedictines*, *Black Monks*; both from the colour of their Habits.

4. The *Celestines* owe their Original to *Peter de Mero* a *Sannite*, born Anno 1250, who being afterwards for his Sanctity chosen Pope, was called *Celestine V.* He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated; and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory XI.* There are at this present 124 Monasteries of them.

IV. The fourth and last that prescribed new Orders to the *Monasticks*, was *St. Francis of Assis* in the Dutchy, of *Spoleto*. He fell from Merchandize which was his first Profession, unto the study of Religion, going barefoot, and behaving himself very penitently: whereupon, great store of Disciples following him, he gave them a rule in Writing, by which they are bound to profess absolute beggary, and are not permitted to carry any money about them, or more Victuals than will for the present serve themselves and their Brethren. This they observe punctually in their own Persons, but give themselves leave to have a Boy with them, to do both without scruple. *St. Francis* desired they should be called *Minors*, to shew their humility; but they are generally called *Franciscans*, by the name of their founder. By the *French*, called *Cordeliers*, because of the knotty Cord which they wear about them instead of a Girdle; by us, the *Gray-Friars*, from the colour of their upper Garment. Their House in *London* stood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloysters, and some other the publick Offices, do still stand entire; the whole converted to an Hospital for poor Children by King *Edward VI.* in the latter end of his Reign, now best known by the name of *Christ-Church*. Their Rule and Order was confirmed by *Innocent III.* Anno 1212, and is the fourth and last of the *Friars Mendicants*, or *begging Friars*. The other principal Children of this Father, are 1. the *Minims*; and 2. the *Capuchins*.

1. The *Friars Minims*, were first founded by *Franciscus de Pola*, a *Neapolitan*, Anno 145, according to a correct copy of the Rule of *St. Francis of Assis*. His followers keep always a true Lenten Fast, unless in case of Sickness. The Robe is a dark tawny, and Hood of the same hanging to their Girdles.

2. The *Capuchins*, (so called from their Cowl or Capouch) were ordained by one *Matthew Basi* of *Ancona*; Frier *Lewis* his Companion obtained for them of the Pope, the Habit and Rule of *St. Francis*, Anno 1526. In the space of 42 years they increased to 2240 Associates, had 222 Monasteries, and were divided into 15 Provinces. They are bound by their Rule to spend their time in prayer, and are generally thought to be the devoutest of all the Orders *Monastical*.

I shall now speak of the *Jesuites*, but that I cannot bring them under any Rule, as being a people neither simply *Lay* nor *Priests*, nor merely *secular* nor *regular*, but all together. They were founded by *Ignatius Loyola*, born in *Navarre*, who being in his youth addicted to the Wars, was lamed in one of his Legs: After which maim betaking himself to the study of Religion, he framed this Order, consisting at the first of Ten only. *Paul III.* did confirm it, Anno 1548, confining the number within sixty, which he after enlarged *ad infinitum*. They are now the greatest Politicians, fondest Scholars, and chiefest Upholders of the *Romish* See: So that the only way to Re-establish the *Romish* Religion in any Land, is to plant a Colledge of *Jesuites* in it. To the three Vows of *Poverty*, *Obedience*, and *Chastity*, common to all other Orders, *Ignatius* at the Institution of this, added the Vow of *Mission*: whereby his Followers are bound to obey their *General*, or the Pope, without demanding any reason, in all dangerous and hazardous attempts whatsoever, whether it be undertaking some tedious Voyage, for the propagation of the *Romish* Religion, or the Massacring of any Prince whose Life is a hin-

hindrance to their proceedings. It is reported, that a *Jesuit* being in the midst of his Mass, which they call the Sacrifice of the Altar, was sent by *Ignatius*; to whom, leaving off his Mass, he went immediately. *Ignatius* having no business wherein to employ him, told him, he only sent for him to try his Obedience; and withal profanely added, that *Obedience is better than Sacrifice*: and this is called the blind Obedience of the *Jesuits*. To leave them then as they are, the greatest Disturbers of the quiet of *Europe*; I have heard a worthy Gentleman, now with God, say many times, that till the *Jesuits* were taken from the Church of *Rome*, and the peevish *Puritan* (or *Presbyterian*) Preachers out of the Churches of *Great Britain*, he thought there would never be any peace in *Christendom*; with what a true presaging Spirit, the Event hath shewed.

Corrivals with the *Jesuits* in Power and Learning, and almost coætaneous in point of time, are the *Oratorians*, founded by *Philip Nerio* a *Florentine*, Anno 1564. Who marking the great sway which the *Jesuits* began to have, and the danger which the Church might run, if that Order were not equally ballanced by some other of as much Ability, first established this, consisting altogether of Priests; that by their diligence in preaching of the lives of the Saints, and other heads of practical and moral Duties, they might divert the torrent of the peoples Affection from the brood of *Ignatius*. The renowned Cardinal *Cæsar Baronius*, *Francis Bourdino*, afterwards Bishop of *Avignon* in *France*, and one *Alexander Fidelis*, were the three first whom he admitted to his Rule, initiated in *St. Hierom's Church* at *Rome* by Pope *Pius IV.* with great zeal and chearfulness; to whom, as to some of his Predecessors, the power and practices of the *Jesuits* were become suspicious. They increased speedily (being countenanced on so good grounds) to great numbers, and a proportionable Revenue, as much esteemed of for their knowledge in *Ecclesiastical History*, and *Practical Divinity*, as the others for *Philosophy*, *Tongues*, and the study of *Controversies*; and more accepted of in most places, because not usually intermeddling in Affairs of State. So evenly looked on by the Popes, that the *Jesuits* could not obtain the Canonization of their *Ignatius*, till the *Oratorians* were grown rich enough to celebrate that of their *Nerius* also: which hapned in the short Popedom of *Gregory XV.* Anno 1622.

To conclude this Discourse of *Monks* and *Friers*, I will say somewhat of their severest kind of *Recluse*, which is the *Anachoret*, or *Anchoret*, so called from ἀναχωρέω, because they use to live retired from Company. They are kept in a close place, where they must dig their Graves with their Nails; badly clad, and worse dieted; not to be pitied for all that, because their restraint of liberty is voluntary; yet to be sorrowed for in this, that after such an earthly *Purgatory*, they shall find instead of an *Eage*, bone serve, a *Quis quæsit hæc de manibus vestris?*

But concerning these Orders of *Monks* and *Friers*, certain it is, that at their first institution they were a People much revered for their holy life; as men that for Christs sake had abandoned all their Poms and Vanities of the World. And questionless they were then a people altogether mortified, and who by their very Aspects, would gain upon the Affection of the hardest Heart; insomuch that not only mean men, but greater personages also did desire to be buried in a *Frier's* weeds; as *Francis* the Second Marquess of *Mantua*, *Albertus Pius* another Prince of *Italy*; *Isabel* the renowned Queen of *Castile* and *Aragon*, Wife of *Ferdinand* the Catholick; and in late times the great Scholar *Christopher Longolius*. But as *Plorus* saith of the Civil Wars between *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, *Causa hujus Belli, eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*, we may say also of these *Friers*: The greatness of their wealth, which many on a superstitious Devotion had bequeathed unto them, brought them first to a neglect

of their former devout and religious carriage; next to a wretchedness of their credits, and consequently into contempt: So that there was not a people under Heaven that was more infamous in themselves, or more scornfully abused by others. Hence the vulgar sayings of the People, that *Friers wear Crosses on their Breasts; because they have none in their Hearts*; and that, *when a Frier receiveth the Razor, the Devil entreth into him*; and the like. Nay, *Sir Thomas Moor*, who lost his Head in the Pope's quarrel, sticks not in his *Utopia*, to call them *Errones Maximos*; and would have them comprehended within the Statutes of Vagabonds and sturdy Beggars. Now to shew both the humours of Respect and Contempt, used severally to these *Monks* and *Friers*, as men stood affected; there goeth a Tale, how the Lady *Moor*, *Sir Thomas* his Wife, finding by chance a *Friers* Girdle, shewed it to her Husband with great joy, saying, *Behold Sir Thomas, a step towards Heaven*: Whereunto with a scornful laugh he returneth this answer, that *he feared that step would not bring her a step higher*. And as for their retiredness and solitary course of Life, so it is that many Kings, especially of the *Saxons* in the time of their *Heptarchy*, have abandoned their Scepters to enjoy it: And *Berclay* in his *Argenis*, under the person of *Aneroeslus*, hath defended it in such Princes, as have Cloistered themselves to enjoy the solitude of a Convent. Which notwithstanding, Philosophers have defined a man to be ζῶν πολιτικόν, a Creature principally made for civil Conversation; the Poets say, *Nascitur indignè per quem non nascitur alter*, that he dieth indebted to the World, who leaveth no Posterity behind him: And the *Jews*, which live in great numbers even in *Rome* it self, abhor this unfociable kind of living, and prefer a civil sociableness much before it; as to Nature more agreeable, to Man more profitable, and consequently to God more acceptable. And having spoken thus much of the *Monks* and *Friers*, descend we now unto the *Nuns*.

And indeed I should much wrong the *Friers*, if I should deprive them of the company of their dearest *Votaries*, and therefore take somewhat of them also. Called anciently *Moniales* from the Greek word Μονή, from their living alone; whence we also had the names of *Monks* and *Monasteries*, in the middle times called *Nuns*, from *Nonna* an *Egyptian* word, (for *Egypt* in old times was not meanly furnished with such *Eremites*) which also signifieth a solitary and lonely life. A word in some of the barbarous *Latines* very much in use. *Scholastica* the Sister of *St. Benedict*, was the first who collected them into Companies, and prescribed them Rules. They are shaved as *Monks* are, and vow (as they do) perpetual Poverty and Virginity. Which last how well they keep, let *Clemangis* testifie; who telleth us, that *Puellam velare idem est hac publice eam ad scortandum exponere*, to veil a Nun, and prostitute her for a common Harlot, were terms equivalent. And one *Robinson*, who lived for a time in the *English Nunnery* at *Lisbon*, hath told us, that he found a hole in the Garden-wall covered over with Morter, in which were hidden the bones of many newborn children, which their unnatural Mothers had murdered and thrown in there. But of these I will instance only in two Orders, viz. that of *St. Clare*, as being the strictest; and that of *St. Briget* which enjoyeth most liberty.

1. *St. Clare* was a Knight's Daughter of *Assis*, where *St. Francis* was born, with whom she was contemporary, and with whose austere life she was so affected, that she forsook her Fathers House, and followed him. Having learned her *Lirrie* of that *Frier-monger*, she devised an Order of Religious Women, and had it confirmed by Pope *Honorius III.* Anno 1225. Her followers vow Poverty and Virginity, as before was said, go barefoot, feed meanly, and are more straitned in their course of life, than those of any other Order. By their Foundress, out of a desire to conform the better to the Rule and Order of *St. Francis*, they were called *Minorites*, or *Mineres*,

nores, and gave name to the place near the *Tower-hill* in *London*, where they had their House, called from them the *Minories*.

2. *St. Briget* was a Queen of *Swethland*, and coming to *Rome* on devotion, obtained of Pope *Urban III.* Anno 1370. or thereabouts, that *Friers* and *Nuns* might in some places live together. For being a Woman, and a Widow, she knew best (as it seemeth) what was good for both Sexes; and so devised such a Rule, as contented both. But little needed this co-habitation or living together under the shelter of the same Roof. For they had formerly been joyned in carnal Affections, though parted by Walls; neither were the *Visitations* of the *Friers* so fruitless, but that the *Nuns* did fructifie by them. These *Friers* and *Nuns*, though they live under the same Roof, are prohibited from coming to one another but on special occasions: The *Foundress* so ordering it, that the *Nuns* should lie in the upper Rooms, and the *Friers* in the lower. The *Confessor* also is denied access into their Chambers, but shriveth them through an *Iron-Gate*, by which his Lodging is parted from the *Lady Abbess's*. And herein lieth the *Mystery of Iniquity*. For *Robinson*, whom before I named, tells us, that at the time of his service in the *English Nunnery* at *Lisbon*, he was shewed a way by which this uncharitable Grate, which seemed to keep the *Friers* from the company of their *Female friends*, might be, and was on such occasions, usually removed, and the access made free and open to each others Beds. Which if it be truly said of these, may be suspected also in all the rest of this Order, and in most also of the others.

And now I return unto my *Friers*, which besides the maintenance which by their Founders is allotted for their present Subsistence, are kept in a continual hope and possibility of attaining to the highest honours which that Church can give, if they continue constant in their due Obedience. For there is not one of them which hopeth not to be the *Prior* of his Convent; 2. *Provincial* of his Order, in that Country where he liveth; 3. and then the *General* of this Order. Next none more likely than the *Generals* to be chosen *Cardinals*, and out of the *Cardinals* one of necessity must be chosen (and why not he, as well as any of the Pack?) to be *Pope* of *Rome*. So first and sweet a Companion of man is *Hope*, that being the last thing that leaves him, it makes all toyl supportable, all difficulties conquerable.

The Popedom containeth
Archbishops 44. Bishops 57.

The Seignury of VENICE.

NORTH of the Lands of the Church from *Romandiola* to the *Alps*, lie the *Italian* Provinces of the State of *VENICE*, bounded upon the South with the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the rest of *Romandiola*; on the West, with the Dukedom of *Millain*; on the North, with the main Body of the *Alpes*; and on the East, with the *Adriatick* and the River *Arfia*, by which last parted from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province. These *Italian* Provinces extend from East to West 240 Miles, from N. to S. 100 Miles. Besides which, it commands a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Island of *Candy*, *Corfu*, *Cephalonia*, *Ithaca*, *Zant*, *Cithera*, and certain others of less note. The length of their Dominions by Sea and Land extending above a thousand Miles, but the breadth not answerable.

The nature of the Soil, and the principal Rivers which refresh it, we shall see anon in the description of the Provinces into which it is divided. According to which Provinces and the chief Cities of them, the Character of the people may best be taken: it being said Proverbially by the *Italians*, that the *Venetians* themselves are stately,

crafty, and greedy; the *Veronians* studious and faithful; the *Paduans* fierce, the *Vincenians* eager on Revenge; those of *Friuli*, grateful, but inconstant; those of *Hytria*, neither long livers, nor of very great Courage. That in the Conduct of a War, those of *Venice* bring Silver; those of *Trevise*, Swords; that the *Brescians* are fit to dig in Trenches; those of *Bergamo* to lay Ambushes; those of *Padua* to manage Horses. And of the Women it is said, that those of *Croma* are deceitful, those of *Venice* insolent, those of *Vincenza* constant; those of *Verona* gracious; those of *Trevise* jealous, those of *Bologna* diligent, and the *Bergomask* crafty.

But not to dally longer in these proverbial Characters (though they carry a great deal of truth in them) certain it is, that the *Venetians* themselves do affect a great deal of Gravity in their Actions, speak very little at the Table, very severe where they have Authority, and many times in the excess. And yet such is the constant temper of their Government, and their Impartiality in doing Justice, that they are very well obeyed, and generally well beloved of all their Subjects (notwithstanding the heavy pressures which are laid upon them) as well in *Italy* as without. Esteemed in former times good Soldiers both by Sea and Land, maintaining Wars continually with the *Turks* in *Palestine*; the Emperors of *Constantinople*, in *Greece* it self, the *Genese* by Sea, and their Neighbours of *Italy* in this Continent. But of late times they have more studied to preserve, than enlarge their Dominions; and that too rather by expence of money, than the loss of blood, and by Wit rather than by Valour. So fortunate in this last kind of practice, that *Machiavel* observed of them in his time, that *whatsoever they lost by War, they recovered by Treaty*. A pregnant evidence whereof we shall see anon.

To proceed now to the description of such of the Provinces and Estates of this Common-wealth, as pass under the account of *Italy*, they are these that follow, that is to say, 1. *Marca Trevigiana*, 2. *Friuli*, 3. *Hytria*, 4. the *Italian* Isles of the *Adriatick*; of which now in order; leaving the other Members of this Estate to be considered in their proper places.

1. *MARCA TREVIGIANA* is bounded on the South with the River *Atbesis*, and the most Northern branch of the *Po*, which from some Limekilns near adjoining, they now call *Fornaces*, by which parted from the Territory of *Ferrara* and the rest of *Romagna*; on the West, with the Rivers *Mineius* and *Sarca*, and the Lake of *Benacus*, (now called *Lago de Garda*, from a little Town of that name adjoining) by which parted from the Dutchy of *Millain*; on the East, with *Friuli*, and the Gulf of *Venice*; and on the North with the *Alps* which divide it from *Tirelus*, a Province of *Germany*. In the time of great *Augustus Caesar*, this Tract together with *Friuli*, the next Neighbouring Province, had the name of *Venetia*, from the *Veneti*, the old Inhabitants thereof; and by that name made one of those eleven Regions, into which he then divided *Italy*. How it obtained this new Name we shall see anon.

The principal Rivers of this Tract are, 1. *Brenta*, called anciently *Meduacus Major*, which rising in the *Alps* not far from *Trent*, and watering the fields of *Padua*, passeth into the Sea, near the City of *Venice*, making up the famous Haven of *Malamocco*. 2. *Bachilio* called anciently *Meduacus Minor*, which riseth also in the *Alpes*; and passing by *Vincenza*, emptieth it self into the *Brenta*. And 3. *Atbesis*, now called *Adige*, which springeth also out of the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and having taken many lesser streams into its Chancel, passeth by *Verona*, and after is divided into two great Branches; whereof the one falls into the Sea, the other loseth it self in the midst of the Marishes.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Vincenza*, now call'd *Vincenza*, one of the twelve Cities built by the *Tuscani*, or *Ettrurians* on this side of the *Apennine*; pleasantly seated on the banks of the River *Bachilio*, and another navigable water called *Retone* (*Erotenus* formerly.) The Territory

tory of the City not more large than fruitful, abounding with all store of fruits, and yielding an excellent kind of Wine, which from thence is vended unto *Venice*. The Buildings of it for the most part of polished Stone, whereof the Fields adjoining afford special Quarries; and the Inhabitants generally an industrious People, making a great quantity of Silks, with which they do adorn themselves, and supply their Neighbours. It has also at this day more of its old Liberty, than any Town under the States of *Venice*, which appears in the Riches of their Palaces and Churches, many of which are new built. It has also a Modern Theater, built in imitation of the Ancient *Roman* Theaters, as *Dr. Burnet* acquaints us, who saw this Place. *Dr. Brown* agrees with him as to the Theater, and the beauty of its Buildings; Adding, that the Bishoprick is valued at 12000 Ducats a year. By reason of divers Hills very near, it can never be made strong, or able to make any significant Resistance, on which account it has been forced to change Masters as often as it has been Attack'd, and at last voluntarily Surrendered it self to the *Venetians*, in the year 1404. *Shoars* in his *Itinerary*, is of Opinion, that if a Mountain that lies near it were taken within the Walls, it would be as strong as any Town in *Italy*, which belongs to the *Venetians*; he saith it is four Miles in Compass with its Suburbs; That it is double Wall'd, has 8 Gates, and 7 Bridges, and about 30000 Inhabitants. This City was taken by *Maximilian I.* in the year 1509. and restored to the *Venetians* by a Treaty in 1516. 2. *Treviso*, seated on the Banks of the River *Silus*, (which runneth through the middle of it) in the midst of a large and spacious Plain, abounding even to Admiration, with most excellent Wheat, and all other Necessaries. A City of no ancient Name, not mentioned by *Ptolomy*, nor others of the old *Geographers*; but of sufficient note in the latter times, for being the Residence or Seat of those Provincial Governours (*Marquesses* they are sometimes called) which the *Lombardian* Kings sent hither to defend their Borders. Hence it gave name to all the Country, in *Latin* called *Marca Trevisiana*, or *Tarvisiana*, as some call it, taken by the *Venetians*, and lost again divers times; but was finally conquered Anno 1384. or thereabouts, *Antonia Venieri* being Duke of *Venice*. It is an handsom City, adorn'd with good Houses, Churches, Towns and Fountains, and abundantly furnished with good Wines and Fruits. *Dr. Brown*. 3. *Padua*, formerly called *Patavium*, built by *Antenor*, whose Tomb is still here to be shown. From him named *Antenorica*, as some report, but after called *Patavium* quasi *Padavium*, from its nearness to the River *Po*, and the Fens thereof. Situate in so delectable and sweet a Soyl, that *Constantius Palaeologus* was used to say, that did not the Authority of the Scriptures persuade him otherwise, he should look for *Paradise* no where else; than in *Perfuari Pativina amenitate*, amongst the flourishing and delightful sweetnesse of the *Paduan* field. A Town of great esteem in the time of the *Romans*, who much resorted to the same, and much frequented at the present for the University here established, Anno 1220. famous for Physicians, who have here a Garden of *Simples*; of good name also for the birth of *Livy* the Historian, *Julius Paulus* a Civil Lawyer his Contemporary, *L. Aruntius Stella*, and *C. Valerius Flaccus*, two famous Poets celebrated by *Martial*: and in the latter times of *Marsilius Patavinus* a *Minorite* Frier, who wrote so Learnedly in behalf of the Emperor, against the Pope, *Fr. Zabarella* the Civilian, *Mic. Savanarola* the Physician, *Maginus* the Geographer, and divers others. It was much renowned in former times for the Humanity of Men, and Chastity of the Women; which last so eminent and famous, that as chaste as one of *Padua*, grew into a Proverb. Hereunto alludeth *Martial*, speaking of his Lascivious Writings;

Tu quoq; nequitias nostri lususq; libelli,

Uda puella leges, sis Patavina licet.

Young Maids my wanton lines will long to see,
And read them o're, though *Patavines* they be.

The City after much Vicissitude of Fortune fell into the power of the *Venetians*, with all her Territories, being in compass one hundred and eighty Miles, *An. 1400.* *Michael Steno* then Duke; *Vicenza* being won about the same time also. The *Venetians* in memory of the stout Resistance this City made, have ever govern'd it with more than ordinary strictness; so that it has the least Liberty of any City under the State; the quarrels of the Scholars have also ruin'd the University; the Nobility are almost quite extinguished by their own faults, and all these Calamities have made it extremely poor and unfrequented, though it is eight Miles in Compass, and shews many noble Palaces, the Monuments of its ancient Wealth and Splendor. The outward Wall is very strong (saith *Dr. Brown*) being well fortified according to the modern Rules of Fortification in the time of *Leonardo Loredaro*, Duke of *Venice*; The Revenues of its Church are thought to be 100000 Crowns the year. This City has also the most perfect ancient *Arena* of a Theater, that is any where Extant. 4. *Brescia*, the second City for Bigness and Beauty in all *Lombardy*. It is also the Seat of an Archbishop, who is an Earl, a Marquess, and a Duke. Her Territories are in length one hundred, in breadth fifty Miles; which the Citizens, together with their Freedom, bought of *Otho* the German Emperor, but lost it to *Philip Maria Visconti*, Duke of *Milain*, Anno 1421. to whom they yielded upon certain Conditions; which being broken by the Duke, they gave themselves unto the *Seignury of Venice*, Anno 1434. *Francis Foscarei* being then Duke; under whom it continueth to this day. The City is very populous, the Air sound and good, the Soil exceeding plentiful of Corn, Wine and Fruits; and having in it Mines both of Iron and Copper, to the great enriching of the people. It was anciently the chief of the *Cenomani*, who coming out of *Gaul*, drove the *Tuscanes* hence, and seated themselves in their Habitations, till finally conquered by the *Romans*. It is situate on a little River called *Garcia*, which runneth through the middle of it; and is said to contain at this time 50000 Inhabitants. 5. *Verona*, so called (as some conceit it) quasi *vere una*; or as others, quasi *Brenonia*, because built by *Brennus*; both false and frivolous alike. It is situate on the Banks of the River *Atthesis*, and is counted the first City of the second Rank of the Cities of *Italy*; proud in the Birth of *Catullus*, a well-known Poet; and in an *Amphitheatre* (a remainder of the *Roman* greatness) able to contain 80000 Persons. The Territories hereof are sixty five Miles in length, forty Miles in breadth, enriched with many medicinal Herbs, (especially on Mount *Baldus*, an Hill therein) where the Physicians go a Simpling. *Dr. Brown* in his Travels has given a very large account of the History and Situation of the City of *Verona*, and especially of its *Amphitheatre*, the Representation of which he has given us. He saith, the City is a Round, of about six Miles in Compass, strengthened by the *Venetians* with Bastions, and having three Forts or Castles, and four Bridges over the *Adige*; yet after all, the Town is very poor and had little Trade or Money stirring, as another Traveller assures us. 6. *Bebriacum*, or *Bedriacum*, as some Writers call it, two days march from *Verona*, now a small Borough named *Labinia*, and never of any great note when it was at the best. Remarkable in the *Roman* Stories for the defeat here given by the *Vitellians* unto *Otho's* Army; and after by *Vespasian's* Forces unto those of *Vitellius*. By *Tacitus* called in that regard *duabus Romanis cladibus notus & infestus Vicus*. 7. *Crema*, a Town of no great Antiquity, but situate in a wealthy Soil, well peopled, and as well built for the private Edifices: so strongly fortified, that it is reckoned the chief Bulwark of the *Seignury of Venice* against the *Milaneses*, on the borders of which State it standeth; yet at this day a small, poor, ill peopled Place, as *Dr. Burnet* saith. First built about the year 970. by some remnants of the

Antbro-

Anthropomorphites, who on the destruction of *Parnassus* (a Town of *Lombardy*) where before they lived, abjured their Heresie, and were permitted to build here. Honoured in succeeding times with a See Episcopal; and either the Birth-place, or preferment of *John Cremenfis*, a Roman Cardinal, who being by Pope *Honorius* sent into *England*, Anno 1225, to dissuade the Clergy-men from Marriage, and having in a Convocation of the Clergy, called for that purpose, highly advanced the honour of a single life, and shewed the inconvenience and unfitness of Marriage, in men preferred unto *Holy Orders*; was the night following (to the great discredit both of his Cause and Person) taken in Adultery. 8. *Bergomo*, or *Bergamo*, a right ancient Town, but very well built, seated upon the side of an Hill, and having a very large and beautiful Suburb; the Territory whereof hath many rough and craggy Mountains, the spurs and excursions of the *Alpes*; but withal many rich and delightful Vallies intermingled with them. The people of this City and Country are said to speak the coarsest Language of any in *Italy*, but to have as fine Wits as the best. Places of more inferiour note are, 1. *Este*, (*Ateste* in most Latine Writers) whence came the Family *D'Este*, late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 2. *Linicum*, a strong Garrison on the borders of *Mantua*; as 3. *Castel-Franco* is towards *Ferrara*; and 4. *Seravalle*, of most remarkableness for the great quantity of Armour which is therein made. 5. *Feltria*, which still preserves its old name of *Feltria*; most memorable at the present for a See Episcopal. 6. *Altina*, a Bishops See also, but destroyed and ruined.

This Province being anciently a part of the *Cisalpine Gaul*, fell to the power of the *Romans* at the end of the second *Punic* War; and being conquered by the *Romans*, did continue theirs, till first the *Goths*, and afterwards the *Lombards* became Masters of it. Afterwards in the fall of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, it fell first unto the *French*, and after to the *German* Empire; from which by many mean conveyances, it came at last to *Ottocarus*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Austria*, who bought the same of *Ulricus* the last Duke of *Carinthia*: Whose Predecessor probably had been seized hereof, from the time that *Henry* Son of *Engelbert*, Præfect of *Histria*, adopted by *Henry* of *Epperstein* Duke of *Carinthia*, or *Karnten*, succeeded him in that Estate. Upon a Reconciliation made betwixt this *Ottocarus* and *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg* (then Emperor of *Germany*) it was added (together with *Austria* it self) unto the Patrimony of that Family, sold by Duke *Leopold IX.* to the *Carara's*, then Lords of *Padua*; in ruine of whose Estate and Family, it fell (together with that City) into the power of the *Venetians*, who still hold the same.

2. *FRIULI* hath on the East the River *Formio*, which parteth it from *Histria* and *Carniola*; on the West, *Marca Trevisana*, and a branch of the *Alpes* dividing it from *Tyrol*; on the North the main Body of the *Alpes*, which divide it from *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, two Provinces of *Germany*; and on the South, the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It is called *Forum Julii* in the *Latine* (of which that of *Friuli* is divided) from *Julius Cæsar*, who conducting his Armies this way, built the Town so named; and from that march of his, the *Alpes* adjoyning, as it is thought, had the name of *Julia*. By some Writers of the middle times it is called *Regio Aquilegensis*, as appertaining for the most part, by the gift of the Emperors *Otho* and *Conradus*, to the Church, or Patriarchate of *Aquileia*; and by the common people of *Venice* for the most part, *Patria*, or the Country, because from these parts they derive their first Original. In which regard part of the Region of *Venetia*, as before was said.

The Country is in a manner square, each side fifty Miles; watered with the Rivers of 1. *Hydra*, heretofore of no small fame for the Silver Mines; 2. *Tiliaventum*, rising from the *Alpes*, and Navigable towards the latter end of its course, but broken into many Channels (seven

at least in number) which makes it not so Navigable as it would be otherwise; most of these Channels being shallow, and easily forded, but swift and violent withal, by reason of their fall from the neighbouring Hills. 3. *Natisio*, neighboured by the famous City of *Aquileia*. 4. *Timavus*, mentioned in the first of the *Æneid*, which rising out of the *Alpes*, and running under ground for the space of 330 furlongs, breaketh out again; and being branched into nine Channels, falleth into the Gulf or Bay of *Trieste*. By *Niger* it is now called *Lancon*; but by *Luander* named *Timavo*. The Soil sufficiently fruitful, except towards the *Alpes*, and yielding a very pleasant Wine, which *Pliny* did prefer before any in *Italy*.

Towns herein of most note and consequence, 1. *Aquileia*, or *Aquilgia*, as some call it, made the Metropolis first of the Province of *Histria* and *Ventia*, by the Emperor *Antoninus*; as afterwards of the whole Diocess of *Italy*, by the Western Emperors. Honoured in that regard with the seat of the *Præfectus Prætorie*, or of his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant; translated from *Milano* to this City, as the Gate of *Italy*, by which the barbarous Nations were to make their entrance; never so like to be shut out, as by the power and presence of so great an Officer. After this time, and on this occasion, the Bishop hereof had the Title of Patriarch. And here the Patriarchal See had not long continued, when the City was destroyed by *Attila*, that furious Hun, 370. of the Citizens being slain with the Sword, the rest removing to some places of more safe Abode. Re-edified afterwards by *Nero*, but never able to recover its former Lustre. After which time fearing the like miseries from the hands of the *Lombards*, the Patriarchal See was removed to *Udine*, as the safer place, and settled in the Title of *Gradus*; yet so, that the succeeding Bishops of *Aquileia* (for they stayed at *Venice* only till the times were quiet) do still retain the Dignity and Name of *Patriarchs*, as well as those of *Grada* do, and with better reason. For besides the honour which it had in being made the seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, it had been formerly more honoured with the residence of *Augustus Cæsar*, who here kept his Court; whence it had the name of *Roma altera*, or a second *Rome*; and of *Tiberius* who lived here with *Julia* the Daughter of the said *Augustus*, before his coming to the Empire. As for the City it self, it is situate on the River *Natisio*, but not well inhabited at the present; partly because of the ill Air, partly by the removal of the Patriarch thence, drawn by the *Venetians* of late times, for good reasons of State, to fix his dwelling in their City, and drawing after him a great Resort of Bishops, and others of the Clergy of his Jurisdiction, principally by the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, attracting all Trade unto it self. Most memorable in old History for enduring that famous Siege against *Maximinus*, for the safety of the Empire of *Rome*, and her Emperors *Maximus* and *Valentinus*. In whose cause the Citizens hereof were so resolutely faithful, that they bereaved the Women (willing to lose that invaluable Ornament of their Sex, for the common good) of the hair of their Heads to make Bow-strings withal. Nor did this pious constancy of theirs want an happy issue; for they beheld the Tyrant headless under their Walls (slain by the hands of his own Soldiers) and saw the Metropolis of the World preserved by their Loyalty. And yet the matter was not ended with the death of the Tyrant, the Soldiers and People laying hands on his Children also, and putting all to the Sword. Of which cruelty being asked the reason, they returned this answer, *That not a Whelp was to be spared of so ill a Litter*; none of the brood of such a Cur; or in the Language of the Author, *Pessimi Canis Catulus non est relinquendus*. 2. *Trieste*, of old called *Tergestum*, from whence a spacious Bay adjoyning had anciently the name of *Sinus Tergestinus*, and is now called *Golfo de Trieste*. The Bay replenished principally with the water of the River *Timavus*, which with many Streams doth fall into it, and is therefore by the Inhabitants of that

Gulf or Bay, called *Fons Maris*, as *Polybius* in *Strabo* telleth us. The Town of greater Antiquity than Observation, mentioned by *Pliny*, and some others of the ancient Writers, but not else considerable. 3. *Montefalcon*, famous for its medicinal Herbs. 4. *Porto Gruare*, of old called *Portus Romatinus*, an Haven-Town, as the Name importeth. 5. *Concordia*, in former times of no small esteem; but so demolished by *Attila* the Hun, that it is now nothing but a Ruine. The people hereof betaking themselves to the Islands in the Marishes of *Venice*, where they planted in *Tourcellan*, *Muriano*, *Constaniaca*, and some others were adjoining to them, of which more hereafter. 6. *Urina*, or *Uden*, the fairest and largest at this time of all the Province, containing about five Miles in compass, and about 15000 Inhabitants. Honoured for a time with the Patriarchal See, removed hither from *Aquilegia*, at some Siege thereof: of which though long ago deprived, yet it is still the ordinary Seat of the *Procurator* or Principal Governour, sent from *Venice* hither. 7. *Palma*, a new Town, as being built by the *Venetians* no longer since than the year 1593. but held to be the best fortified of any in *Italy*. The Learned Dr. *Edward Brown* who saw this Place, saith it is the largest regular Fortification he ever saw. It hath nine Bastions, bearing the Names of so many Noble *Venetians*, which have little to be excepted against but their round ears; on each Curtain there are two Cavaliers, and the Rampart is much higher than the Wall, upon which there are planted 100 good Guns, and many more are in readiness upon all occasions. The Ditch is thirty Paces broad, and twelve deep, always kept dry to make the Town more healthful; but may be fill'd upon occasion like that of *Vienna*. In the center of the Town is fix'd a Standard over a Triple Wall, from which the three Gates and six Streets may all be seen, and in the middle of the Bridge is a Drawbridge made with such Artifice, that the Sentinel may by only touching an iron with his Foot, upon the discovery of any Danger, draw up the Bridge. And they were then making a Half-Moon before every Gate for its further security. And they had before made a Cut from the Sea to the Town capable of good Vessels, and broad and deep enough to bring in Provisions and Supplies. 8. *Ciudad de Austria*, first built by *Julius Caesar*, in some of his Marches towards *Gaul*, by whom it was called *Julium*, after *Forum Julii*, whence the name of *Friuli* (*Districtus Foro-Julienfis*, as the *Latines* call it) came unto the Province. But being taken and repaired by some Princes of the *Austrian* Family (on the borders of whose Estate it standeth) it got this new name of *Ciudad de Austria*.

This Province anciently was the Seat of the *Euganei*, inhabiting this Tract and part of *Marchia Trevigiana*. But those being vanquished by the *Veneti*; and the *Veneti* by the *Cisalpine Gauls*, it became finally subject to the State of *Rome*, and in the fall of that great Empire was one of the four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards*, when they conquered *Italy*; the other three being *Turin*, *Benevent*, and *Spolet*. the Family of the *Berengarii* were once Dukes hereof; three of which were of special fame, and two of them Competitors for the Kingdom of *Italy*. But this Family being suppressed by the Emperor *Otho*, he gave a great part of the Country to the Church of *Aquileia*; to which almost all the rest was added by the Emperor *Conrade*; yet so that there were divers petit Lords, who had got Estates in it; the name of Duke remaining unto some of the ancient Race. One of which named *Luitprandus*, envying to the *Venetians* their increase of Dominion, made War against them: which ended in the loss of his Country, Anno 1020, or thereabouts; ever since subject to that State: the Patriarch of *Aquileia* (whose Authority in this Country began to decline, in the rising of the State of *Venice*)

surrendring all his interest also to that powerful Signeury as better able to defend it against all Pretenders, Anno 1420. But notwithstanding this surrendring, the Patriarch hath still large Possessions and Revenues here, and still retains his Jurisdiction over the Prelates of this Country, and those of *Histria* and *Trevigiana* (20 in all, or thereabouts) six only which are those of the Isles of *Venice*, continuing at this day under him of *Grada*.

HISTRIA is invironed on the East, West, and South, with the *Adriatick*, in the manner of a Demy-Island, or Peninsula, save where it toucheth on *Friuli*; and on the North is parted from *Carinthia*, with the Alps of *German y*. The Country very woody, and full of Quarries, affording Materials to *Venice*, both for Ships and Houses; not comparable for fertility to the rest of *Italy*; and of Air so sickly and unwholsom, that the *Venetians* were compelled to hire people to dwell there, and afterwards to grant them many large Immunities. It is two hundred Miles in compass, watered with the Rivers of 1. *Formio*, which they now call *Risano*; 2. *Nauportus*, called at this day *Quietus*; and 3. *Arfia*, which runneth into the Gulf of *Quevero*, called anciently *Sinus Flanaticus*, and divides this Country from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province.

The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Cape de Istria*, called in *Pliny's* time *Agide*; and being afterwards repaired by the Emperor *Justin*, was called *Justinopolis*. But being taken and destroyed by the *Genoese*, and rebuilt again, it took the name of *Caput Histriae*, or *Cape d' Istria*; because the principal of the Province and Bishops See. Of this See was *Vergerius* Bishop, about the time of *Luther's* first preaching in *Germany*; who with *Antonio de Dominis* Archbishop of *Spalato*, were of most note of any of these parts of the World, that fell off from the Church of *Rome* to the Protestant party, and therefore shall be spoken of in more particulars; *Spalato* in his proper place, and *Vergerius* here. Being a man of great industry, and eminent parts, he was by many of the Popes employed in *Germany* against *Luther*. In which Negotiation he behaved himself with such Dexterity, and gave such content unto the Pope, that *Paul 3. An. 1541*. intended to have made him Cardinal; had not some who envied him that honour, accused him of *Lutheranism*. To purge himself he began to write a Book, entituled, *Against the Apostata's of Germany*, in the pursuit whereof, pondering of *Luther's* Reasons he became of his Opinion; which being known, he was driven from *Justinople*. He submitted himself and his Cause to the Fathers at *Trent*, but could not get a hearing. Thence he went to the *D. of Mantua*, from him to the State of *Venice*; but no where finding protection, he retired unto the *Grisons*, and there preached, till *Christopher Duke of Wittenberg* Anno 1548, placed him in his University of *Tubing*, and there allowed him a sufficiency of Maintenance. It was built by *Justinus* (as before) the Nephew of *Justinian*, the Emperour, as a Fortrefs against the incursions of the barbarous People. 2. *Pola*, built by the *Colchians*, at their first coming thither, the Name in their Language importing as much as the place of Banishment. It was after made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Pietas Julia*; but being first destroyed by *Attila*, after by the *Genoese*, it recovered the old Name again; and still continueth with the Title of a See Episcopal. It abutteth upon *Sinus Flanaticus*, or the Gulf of *Quevero*. It is now a strong, but small place, having not above seven or eight hundred Inhabitants, as Mr. *Wheeler* tells us, who saw it. 3. *Parenza*. 4. *Plum*. 5. *Cita Nova*, all of them seated in the Midland, and not much observable, but that *Parenze*, and *Cita Nova* are Episcopal Sees: This last being anciently called *Emonia*, whence the Bishop hath the Name of *Emonensis*. 6. *Rovigno*, in a little Island, and mounted on a high Hill, not unfruitful in Olives, beautified with a convenient Port, and that defended also by a very strong

strong Castle. The Town but poor, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, from which distant not above twenty Miles; inhabited for the most part by Mariners and skilful Pilots, hired by such Ships as are bound for *Venice*, to conduct them safely over the Bars of *Malamocco*. The Country adjoining mountainous and somewhat wild; but those Mountains covered on the outside with Physical Simples; and yielding many Quarries of most excellent Marble, which so adorn the *Venetian* Palaces.

It is recorded that the *Histrions* were a People of *Colchis*, who being sent by King *Aeta* to pursue *Jason* and the *Argonauts*, were driven up this Gulf: and either for fear of the King's Anger, or not daring to venture their weak Vessel to so long a Voyage, as from hence to *Colchis* whence they came, stayed in this Country. It was after that time called *Japigia*, from *Japus* an *Ætolian*, who first planted here, and took the name of *Istria* from the *Istri*, a People on the Banks of *Ister*, or *Danubius*; who made up a considerable part of this Plantation. Siding with the *Ætolians* in their Wars against the *Romans*, and making many Inroads and Excursions on them; they were invaded first by *Manlius*, without leave of the Senate: and him they charged with such a Fury, that they beat him out of his Camp. Where finding plenty of Wine, and all store of Provisions, they fell roundly to it, till *Manlius* having rallied his Men again, charged them in their Cups, and killed 8000 in the place, their miserable King being so hotly pursued by the Victors, that he was fain to kill himself for fear of Captivity. This was in *Anno U. C.* 575. *Cl. Pulcher*, the next Consul perfected the Conquest. *Sempronius* long time after that, *sc. An. U. C.* 625. reduced it to the form of a Province. So it continued to the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who joining it to that of *Venice* (or *Venetia*) made out of both the eleventh and last Region of *Italy*. Under the *Romans* they continued whilst that Empire stood, and after the decay thereof regained their Liberties; which they enjoyed till by Piracy molesting the *Venetians*, they lost many of their Towns to Duke *Petro Candiano*, *An.* 938. and the whole Country was made Tributary, by the Valour of the Duke *Henry Dondolo*, about the Year 1390. After which, many times rebelling, they were still re-conquered.

4. The fourth Member of this Estate, with respect to *Italy*, are some ISLANDS in the *Adriatick*; which being principally under the command of this Commonwealth, is commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; a Gulf extending in length 700 Miles, in breadth 140 Miles, in some places less; so called of *Adria* once a famous Haven Town (as before was said) at the mouth of *Eredanus* or *Po*: Concerning which we are to know, that though this Gulf or Bay, of the *Adriatick* extended no farther than the Eastern parts of *Dalmatia*, where the Sea beginneth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* Sea, was of greater length. Extended by the Ancients over the *Ionian*, and thence South-westward till it meeteth with the *Tuscan* Seas; and Southward till it come to the Coast of *Africk*, insomuch as *Mare Libycum*, or the Sea of *Africk*, is by *Orosius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For speaking of the Province of *Tripolis* (a Province of *Africk*) properly and especially so called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*, as he doth the Isle of *Crete*, on the South-side of it, with the *Libyan* Sea, *quod & Adriaticum vocant*, which they also call the *Adriatick*, as his own words are: The like might also be made evident out of other Authors, both *Greek* and *Latin*: which I note here because *Paul's* being tossed up and down in the Sea of *Adria*, as is said, *Acts* 27. 27. and being after cast on Shore in the Isle of *Malta*, occasioned some to think this *Melite* or *Malta* to be that Island of *Dalmatia*, which is now called *Melida*, being seated in the Bay or Gulf of *Adria*, whereas the Text speaks plainly of that Isle of *Malta*, which lieth in the furthest parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the Coasts

of *Africk*. But to return to this Gulf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempestuous and unsafe, as appeareth by *improbo iracundior Adria*, in *Horace*; the *Minax Adriaticum* in *Catullus*; and in the *Ventofitumor Adria*, in *Seneca's Thyestes*. But when the Empress *Helena* had found the Cross on which *CHRIST* suffered, she caused one of the three Nails with which his Body was fastned to it, to be thrown of purpose into this Sea; since which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the Life of Pope *Sylvester* (and cites *St. Ambrose* for his Author) it hath been very calm and quiet; the second Nail being made into a Bridle for her Son *Constantine's* Horse, and a Crest for his Helmet of the third. Put not to trust too much to the truth of this Miracle, certain it is that the *Venetians* are Lords of it by reason of their Naval Power: and that it is every Year espoused to the Duke of *Venice*, by the solemn casting in of a Wedding Ring; and every Year baptized on *Epiphany-Day*, by the Bishop of *Zant*. When this last Ceremony took beginning I am yet to seek. But for the first, which is performed with a great deal of State, every *Holy Thursday*, the Duke, and all the *Magnificos*, being rowed in the *Bucintaur* (which is a rich and stately Galley made for such Solemnities, and capable of 200 Persons, whence it had the Name) it took beginning from Pope *Alexander* the Third: Who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, fled unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook; *Sebastian Cyani* being then Duke: in prosecution of whose Quarrel, the *Venetians* encountred *Otho*, the Emperor's Son, vanquished him, and restored the Pope. The Duke returning back in Triumph with his Royal Prisoners, was thus saluted by the Pope. *Cyani, Take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremony which on this Day (the Ascension-Day) shall be yearly observed both by thee and thy Successors; that so Posterity may know that you have purchased the dominion thereof by your Valour, and made it subject to you, as a Wife to her Husband.*

The principal Islands of this Sea lie on the other side thereof, on the Coast of *Dalmatia*: Some few there are upon this side, but those (as well as these under the command of this Signeury) neither great nor famous. Of these the chief are, 1. *MALAMOCCO*, in Latin *Metuacum*, situate on the South-west end of the Bank or Causey, called *Il Lido*; now only considerable for the Haven, which is large and deep, made by the influx of *Meduacus* before mentioned; in which the greater Ships do ride, till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to cross the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Duke's Palace, and an Episcopal See: the See of *Padua* being translated hither, at the sack of that City by the *Lombards*. But the Duke's Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Episcopal See to the Island of *Chioggia*; it is now inhabited for the most part by none but Seamen. 2. *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the same Name, honoured with a Bishop's See, (the Bishop of *Altina* with much People with him, for fear of the said *Lombards* retiring hither) but by reason of the ill Air not very well Peopled. 3. *MURIANUM*, or *MURIANO*, three Miles in compass, and but one from *Venice*, of a sound Air, and very well inhabited, the People whereof make the best *Venice* Glasses, so much used in all Parts. 4. *CHIOGGIA*, called in Latin *Fossa Clodia*, a little West of *Malamocco*, at the very entrance into the Marishes from the *Adriatick*: distant from *Venice* 25 Miles; to which it served instead of a Bulwark. There is a Town in it of the same Name, to which the Bishop's See was removed from *Malamocco*, *Anno* 1103, and near to which are many Salt-pits, which yield great gain unto the People, and as much unto the Commonwealth. Near to this Island the *Genoese* so discomfited the *Venetians* in a Fight at Sea, that thereupon, (the taking of the Island following shortly after) they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoese* being grown too insolent on their good success, made the City desperate; who putting all to hazard, fell again upon

upon them, beat them, pursued them home, and there utterly crushed them; as we shall tell you more at large when we come to *Genoa*. 5. *POUEGLIA*, five Miles from the City, first Peopled by some who had raised a Commotion in the City, on the death of *Pietro Tradinice*, the thirteenth Duke. After which much increased both in Wealth and Buildings, till destroyed by the *Genoese*. It is called *Pupilia* by the Latins. 6. *JUDECHIA*, (in Latin called *Judaica*) so named from the *Jews* who did there inhabit; not above half a Mile from the City, and not very large; but liberally furnished with most pleasant Gardens. These and the rest reckoned as Members of *Trevigiana* or appendants on it.

Betwixt these Islands and the main Land of *Friuli*, lieth a shoal of little Islets, in and amongst which standeth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Common-wealth, and the glory of *Italy*. These Islets 72 in number, but joined together by many Bridges, of which here are said to be 4000 at least, besides 10000 Boats for passage from one Isle to the other. The compass of the whole aggregate Body said to be eight Miles, the Buildings fair, and generally adorned with Glass-Windows; an Ornament not common in *Italy*; where the Windows for the most part are made with Paper to let in the Light; and that Paper oiled all over to keep out the wet. The number of the Inhabitants estimated at 300000. By the situation one would think, that it was denominated from *Venetia*, which in the old Latin signifieth the seething or frothing of the Sea. *VENETIA maris exæstivatio est quæ ad littus veniat*, saith the old *Glossary* upon *Isidore* out of *Marcus Varro*. But the truth is, that it was so called from the *Veneri*, the old Inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli*; who to avoid the fury of the barbarous *Huns*, then threatening *Italy*, abandoned the main Land, and built this City in the Bogs and Marishes of the Sea adjoining. And that it might afford them the greater safety, they not only built it in the most inward part of the *Adriatick* Sea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; but in the midst of many Lakes of Salt-water, extending ninety Miles in compass, and having on the East the said *Adriatick* Sea for the length of 550 Miles: betwixt which and the said Lakes, there is a Bank or Causeway which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by Nature to defend the Islands which lie in this Lake, from the violent fury of the Sea. A Causeway of 35 Miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in seven places only, which serve as well to keep the Lakes always full of Water, as for the passages of Vessels to and from the City. Known by the names of the Ports of 1. *Brondolo*. 2. *Chioza*, 3. *Malamocco*, 4. The three Castles, or the Castles of *Lio*, 5. *S. Erasmus*, 6. *Lito Maggiore*, or the great Shore; and 7. the *Treports*: of which that of *Brondolo* lieth most to the South-west, and that of *Treports* to the North-west of the said great Causeway. And through every one of these there is a safe passage for Ships and Barks of smaller burden, the bigger being compelled to lie at Anchor on the South side of the City, near to the Ports of *Malamocco*, and the Castles of *Lio*, which are well Fortified, and there must remain till they are brought in by skilful Pilots, who know the Passages, which by reason of the shifting of the Sands, change very often. On the West and North sides, it is compassed with very deep Marishes, about five Miles distant from the Land; and on the South with many Islands, in which are several Churches and Monasteries, like so many Forts, which lie between it and those parts of *Italy*, which are not under the obedience of the Common-wealth, so that it is impossible to be taken, but by an Army which can stretch 150 Miles in compass. It is built, as before is said, on 72 Islands, 60 of which lie close together round about the *Rialto*, the other at a greater distance. Of these the principal, 1. *Heraclea* near the firm Land of *Trevigiana*, Peopled at first by such as followed *Magnus*, Bishop of *Udorza*, who to avoid the fury of the *Lombards* came and planted here: calling the

Island and the Town which they founded in it by the Name of *Heraclea*, in honour of *Heracles* the Eastern Emperor in whose time it hapned. Made by this means a Bishop's See, and being grown populous withal, it was honoured with the first Seat of the Dukes of *Venice*, removed by *Theodorus* the seventh Duke to *Malamocco*, and from thence finally to *Rialto*. Destroyed by *Pepon*, King of *Italy*, Son of *Charles* the Great, it was re-edified in the time of *Angelo Partitiano* the tenth Duke, and called *Cita Nova*; more memorable at this time for the Antiquity of the Bishop's See, than the number of Citizens. 2. *Jesulan*, neighbouring to *Heraclea*, first planted by some Country People, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, brought with them a great drove of Mares and of Horses, whence it had the name of *Equilese*, or *Equilia*. Made afterwards a Bishop's See also, by the name of *Jesulanus* or *Equilianus*. 3. *Grada*, on the same part of the City also, but more towards the North, inhabited as first by such of the City of *Aquileia* as betook themselves thither to avoid the Tyranny of the *Hunnes*: but made more eminent than before, by *Paul* the Patriarch of that City, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, transported to this Island the Reliques and Treasures of his Church; and settled where the Church of *S. Euphemia* had been built before. And though *Helie* who succeeded *Paul*, obtained of Pope *Pelagius* XI. Anno 580. that the Bishops of *Grada* should from thenceforth have the title of *Patriarchs*, and be esteemed the *Metropolitans* of the City and Country of *Venice*; yet the *Aquileian* would not so be robbed of his ancient Privileges, and therefore stirred up many suits and disputes about it. The business compromised at last to this effect, that the Patriarch of *Aquileia* should enjoy his ancient Jurisdiction over all the Churches in the Continent which belonged unto him: and that he of *Grada*, with the Title and Stile of *Patriarch*, should have like Jurisdiction over the Churches in the Islands; that is to say, the Bishopricks of *Heraclea* (or *Cita Nova*) *Equilia*, *Torcellan*, *Chioggia*, *Caprula*, and *Castella Olindo*. His habitation near the Church of *S. Sylvestri*, in the third Region of the City, called *de Canaregio*. 4. *Caprula*, towards the openings of the *Adriatick*, a Bishop's See before the time of *Charles the Great*, but not else observable: none of these four, nor of the residue of the twelve, which be remote from the *Rialto*, being much inhabited at the present. *Castello Olindo*, or *Olivaller*, as some call it; situate at the East end of the City, not far from the Causeway called *Il Lido*, of old a City of it self (as the former were) now joined by a Bridge to the rest of *Venice*; of most note for the Cathedral Church of *S. Peter*, and the Palace of the *Venetian* Patriarch: this City having been made a Bishop's See by Pope *Adrian* the First, Anno 774. with Jurisdiction over the Isles of *Olivolla*, *Rialto*, *Lapria*, and *Dorsedura*. His Title first *Castellanensis*, but afterwards, the Bishop of *Venice*, because the best part of the City did belong unto him, invested by the Duke, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Grada*, whose suffragans they were till the Year 1450. At what time Pope *Eugenius* IV. (a Native of the City of *Venice*) advanced the Bishops hereof to the Dignity and Name of Patriarch; assigning the Churches of *Dalmatia* (of which they were intituled *Primates*) for their Jurisdiction. By means whereof, and by perswading him of *Aquileia* to fix his Dwelling here also, as before is said, there are no fewer than three Patriarchs which have their constant habitation in the City of *Venice*. 6. *Rialto*, which is of most esteem and reputation, so called *quasi Rivo alto*, because the Marishes are there deeper than in other places; or *quasi Ripa alta*, because it lay higher above the Waters than the other Islands. For which reasons that Island getting reputation above the rest, most of the Gentlemen settled their dwellings in the same; and drew thither in the end, the Duke's Palace also, insomuch that in some ancient Writings the whole City hath been called *Rialto*; many old *Records* being dated in such and such a Year of the *Rialto*. But as they did increase in numbers,

ters, so were they fain to spread themselves from one Isle to another; till in the end they built on all the Islands which lay near together, and might conveniently be joined by Boats or Bridges. By this *Rialto* runs the Passage called the *Grand Canale*, being in length about 1300 Paces, and some forty in breadth; adorned on both sides with stately and magnificent Palaces; and covered with incredible numbers of Boats called *Gondolas*, very neatly built, and veiled over with Cloth, so that the Passengers may go unseen and unknown, without the molestation of Sun, Wind, or Rain. For publick Buildings it hath in it 70 Parish Churches, to each of which belongeth a Market-place and a Well, 31 Cloysters of Monks, 28 of Nuns, besides Chapels and Alms-houses.

The principal Church of this City is that of *S. Mark*, the Patron of their Common-wealth, whose body they report to have been brought hither from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and intombed herein; affirmed by some to be the richest and goodliest Church in all the World. The building of *Mosaic Work*, of which they boast themselves to have been the Authors. A kind of work by the *Grecians* called *Αἰδισαγία*, and by the *Latin Writers* *Musiva*, *Musica*, and *Musaica*, wrought out of Stones or Metals of divers colours, into the shape of Flowers, Knots, Birds, Beasts, and other Fancies of the Workman; yet done with such exactness of Skill and Judgment, that it seemeth to be all one Stone, the work rather of Nature than Art. A Church of admirable Work both within and without, compacted of most rare pieces of Marble, Porphyry, and a rich Stone which the *Lapidaries* called *Ophitis*, because it is speckled like a Snake: adorned on the outside with 148 Pillars of Marble, and eight of Porphyry near the Door; besides 600 Marble Pillars of a lesser size, which carry up an open Gallery round about the Church; from whence the Magistrates and others of the principal Citizens behold such Shews as are presented in the Market-place adjoining to it. The Church in length not above 200 Foot of *Venice* measure, nor above 50 in breadth; the Roof whereof being of an *Orbicular* form, lieth open at the very top, where the light comes in, there being no Windows in all the Church, as commonly the Churches in *Italy* are exceeding dark, either to strike in the Spectators a religious reverence, or to make their Candles shew the better. And for the inside of the Church, the Riches of it are so great, Images so glorious, the furniture of the Altars so above comparison, that all the Treasures of the State may seem to be amassed in the decking of it. And yet as goodly and as glorious as the Fabrick is, it is still unfinished; and, as some think, is kept unfinished on purpose, partly to draw on other Benefactors to advance the Work, the benefit of whose liberality may be employed unto the use of the publick Treasury; and partly, lest Revenues which are given already should be resumed by the Heirs of the deceased, if the work were ended. So infinitely doth the furniture of the Church exceed the sumptuousness and beauty of the Church itself.

Of other of the publick Buildings, the Council-house the Ducal Palace, Monasteries, Churches, and the like, though stately and magnificent Structures, I forbear to speak. Nor shall I here say any thing of their private Houses, so large and beautified, that here are said to be no fewer than 200 (most of them on the *Grand Canale*) able to entertain and lodge the best King in Christendom. All I shall add, and so leave this City, will be a word or two of their *Arsenal*, and publick *Magazine*. In the first of which they have in readiness 200 Gallies, with Rooms for Cables, Masts, Sails, Victuals, and Ammunition of all sorts; able thereby to set out a Navy to Sea on the shortest warning. And in the other it is said, that they have Arms sufficient for 100000 Soldiers of all sorts; amongst which are affirmed to be a thousand Coats of Plate, garnished with Gold, and covered with Velvet, fit for the use and wearing of the greatest Princes. But of their Power and Forces both

by Sea and Land, we shall speak more shortly. In the mean time I take my leave of this gallant City in this following Epigram of *Sannazarus*, one of our late *Italian Poets*, viz.

*Viderat Adriacis Venetam Neptunus in undis
Stare urbem, & toto ponere jura mari:
Nunc mihi Terpeias quantum vis Jupiter, arces
Objice, & illa tui mœnia Martus. ait.
Si Pelago Tiberim præfers, Urbem affice utramque;
Illam homines dicis, hanc posuisse deos.*

In English thus:

*Neptune saw Venice in the Adrian stand,
And all the Sea brought under her command;
Now Jove, said he, thy Roman Towers object,
And those proud Walls which Mars did once protect,
Before the Sea if Tiber thou prefer,
Behold both Cities, and thou wilt aver,
That Men build Rome; the Gods plac'd Venice there.*

Proceed we now unto their Story: and if we look upon them in their first Original, we shall find them to have been a People of *Paphlagonia* (a Province of *Asia* the lesser) called the *Heneti*, who aiding *Priamus*, King of *Troy*, in his ten Years Wars against the *Greeks*, where they lost their King, named *Philemenes*, (or *Philemon* as some call him) chose rather to seek out new Dwellings, than return with shame unto their old. Upon this resolution they join themselves to *Antenor*, who with some remnant of the *Trojans*, had the same design; and failing as the Wind and Sea conducted them, arrived at last in those parts of *Italy* now called *Friuli*. So witnesseth the Poet, saying,

*Antenor potuit, mediis elapsus Achivis,
Illyricos penetrare Sinus, atque intima tutus
Regna Liburnorum, & fontes superare Timavi.*

Antenor through the *Greeks* could force his way,
And safely piercing the *Illyrian* Bay,
Cross the *Liburnian* Realms, and conquer all,
From fierce *Timavus* Fountain, to his fail.

Here landing they subdued the *Euganei* (who before inhabited this Tract) and possessed their Dwellings; the Name of *Heneti* being changed into that of *Veneti*. But this perhaps not done till subdued by the *Galls*, and made part of *Gallia Cisalpina*; agreeably to the name of the *Veneti*, an old Gallick Nation, opposite to the Isle of *Britain*. When those *Galls* were vanquished by the *Romans*, the Name and Nation of these *Veneti* was so considerable, that their Territory had the Name of *Venetia*; and together with *Histria*, made one Province of the *Roman* Empire. And here they lived in peace and safety under the protection of the Empire, till the terrible Noise of the great Preparation of the *Hunns*; for the Conquest of *Italy* occasioned many of the principal Men, with their several Retinues, to betake themselves to the Islands, and inaccessible Marishes of the *Adriatick*; where in the place now called *Rialto*, they laid the foundation of this City, *March 25. Anno 421.* exceedingly increased by the destruction of *Aquileia*, and the neighbouring Cities by *Attila*, and the said *Barbarians. Anno 456.* at what time it begun to be called *Venetia*, by the name of their Nation. Not much increased in Power and Greatness, at the fall of the *Lombardian* Kingdom; though so considerable at that time, that in the Division of *Italy* made by *Charles* the Great, betwixt himself, the *Popes* and the *Eastern Emperors*; the *Venetians* were left at liberty, as a Free-Estate: and they deserved to be left in a free condition, considering how notably they had freed themselves from *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles*, who invaded them with a puissant Army, and was well beaten for his labour, though at first successful. After which making use of their situation, they grew not only rich in Trade, but strong in Shipping; and thereby did good service

service to the Western Princes, in their Wars against the *Turks* in the *Holy Land*. And they served themselves well by it too: getting in one Expedition only (that namely, in which the Empire of *Constantinople* was made a Prey unto the *Latins*, Anno 1200.) all the Islands which they have at the present, in the *Aegean* and *Ionian* Seas; many in those Seas which they have lost; and not a few good Towns in *Peloponnesus*, since conquered from them by the *Turks*. Contending with the *Genoese* for the Sovereignty of the *Mediterranean*, they received so great a Blow at the Naval Battel near *Chioggia* (spoken of before) that they had utterly lost all, if the Enemy could have used his Fortune with moderation. But being recovered of the Blow, after many various Successes and Events of War, Anno 1381. they got the better of them, and made them quiet: by means whereof being Lords *Paramount* at Sea, they next cast their Eyes on the main Land of *Italy*, which now they were at more leisure to look after, than they had been formerly. The *Histrrians* had before infested them with Piracy, and were punished for it, in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loss of many of their Towns; but in the Year 1390. the whole Country is brought under the command of this Common-wealth. *Padua* with a great part of *Trevigiana* then appendant on it, they extorted from the noble Family of the *Carrari*, Anno 1405. The City of *Vincentia* they possessed themselves of in the same Year also: and not long after fully perfected their Conquest of *Histrria*, with the Revolts whereof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they most improved their Estate, was by a constant watching of their Opportunities, taking advantage of the Factions and Frictions amongst their Neighbours, and working their own Greatness out of others Ruines. By means whereof they came possessed of many Places, of right belonging to the Empire, and the Church of *Rome*; as also of some Towns pertaining to the Dutchy of *Milain*; and four of the best Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples*: not giving Aid to any of their distressed Neighbours, without the Mortgage or direct Sale of some Piece or other. Which sordid kind of Merchandizing drew all the Princes of those Parts, (confederated together in a League at *Cambray*, Anno 1508.) to make War upon them; every one to recover by strong hand, what the *Venetian* had extorted from them in their necessity. And the Confederates thrived so well, that *Maximilian* the Emperor recovered to the Empire the Towns and Territories of *Padua*, *Vincentia*, *Verona*, *Triest*, *Friuli*, and whatsoever else he laid claim unto; the Popes, in right of the Church, regained *Ravenna*, *Cervia*, *Rimini* (or *Ariminum*), and *Faventia*; *Lewis XII.* of *France*, in right of the Dutchy of *Milain*, *Bergamum*, *Crema*, *Cremona*, *Brixia*: the King of *Spain*, in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Manfredonia*, *Trona*, *Barlette*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick*; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Rovigo*, and the Duke of *Mantua* the Town of *Affulia*. So that the *Venetians* being (like the Jay) stripped of all their Feathers, were fain to quit the firm Land, and betake themselves unto the Isles and Marishes of their City; having not one Foot of all their whole Dominion left them in *Italy*, but their Seas and Islands. And yet in very little time, partly by working on the Pope to whom they quitted all their Interests in the Towns aforesaid; and partly by dividing the rest of the Confederates from one another; they recovered all that they had lost in a little time, except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of *Spain*.

The Government is *Aristocratical*, managed only by the principal Men of all the City, both for Birth and Breeding; the common People having no Authority in Affairs of State. The chief Officers at the first were many, whom they called *Tribunes*: but experience being had of that Confusion, which a multitude of Governors carrieth for the most part with it, in the Year 697. they

made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their *Duke*. Under these Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now enjoy: The Authority of which Dukes was at first more absolute, but by degrees restrained and limited within narrower bounds. He that beholdeth him in his Robes, his Gravity and outward Port, and the respect given him by the People, would think no Prince could be more absolute and supream. But look upon him in the exercise and power of Government, and he is nothing in the World but an empty Title. For notwithstanding that he enjoyeth so great a Dignity, yet hath he full power in nothing, not being able to determine in any point, without the presence of his *Counsellors* (being six in number) who always sit with him, and dispatch Affairs both publick and private; as namely, giving audience to Ambassadors from Foreign States, receiving Letters from their own Ministers, granting of Privileges, and the like, in which the *Duke* can do just nothing, if four (at least) of these *Counsellors* be not present with him. And yet these *Counsellors* without him may conclude of any thing: Nay, he is so restrained in all things to the Power of the *Senate*, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their consent; and by them is prescribed an Order in his own Apparel; so that he is but little better than a Prisoner when within the City; and a Traytor, if he stir abroad: at the best but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority; as being allowed out of the common Treasury no more than 40000 *Ducats* a Year, towards his Expence and Entertainment. As for the Sovereignty of the State, that resides wholly in the *Senate*; but representatively in the *Duke*, the six *Counsellors*, and the three Heads or Presidents of the *Forty*, which are those Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The *Senate* or *Great Council*, consists of all the Gentlemen of *Venice*, above five and twenty Years of Age, which may amount to the number of two thousand five hundred, though seldom half that number do assemble at once, by reason of their several Employments in Affairs of the Common-wealth, in other places; who usually do meet together every *Sunday* Morning, and on the Morning of other *Festivals*, where they choose Magistrates, and distribute Governments, and other matters of the State. But because such great Bodies move but slowly, and are not very capable of Trust and Secrecy, they parcel this great Council into lesser Members; whereof the principal are the *Pregadi*, and the *Council of Ten*. That of the *Pregadi* consisteth of 120, in which they treat of and determine matters of the greatest importance; and therein conclude commonly of such principal Points, as formerly have been proposed and treated of in the great Assembly: And in this Council, besides the 120 before-mentioned, the *Duke*, the six *Counsellors*, and the *Council of Ten*, and all such as have born any publick Office, have their Voice or Suffrage. This is that Council which properly and more especially is called the *Senate*; in which nothing is to be concluded or passed into Acts, except four of the six *Counsellors* be present at them, and that sixty at the least of their whole number give their suffrage to it. Then for the *Council of Ten*, their Power is universal, over all Affairs, such as the other Councils may not meddle with, as to conclude of War or Peace, to put in execution what they think most necessary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment: which if they were first treated of in the General Council or Assembly, and after in that of the *Pregadi*, as they ought to be in common course, could not be possibly managed with such speed and secrecy as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Council, with the Prince and his six Assistants, the *supream Majesty* of the State doth reside especially. Some other Officers there are, and those of great Authority and Reputation, as the *Procurators* of *St. Mark*, which have the charge of the publick Treasures, and the *Avogadori* or *Tribunes* as one might call them)

them) of the People, being three in all; one of which must be always present in all Consultations, lest any thing should pass to the prejudice, and infringement of the Privileges of the Common People.

For the whole body of the City consisteth either of the *Gentlemen*, or of Artificers and Commons. These last are the Descendants and Progeny of such as came to settle here when the State was fixed; invited to dwell here, and to follow their Occupations by several Privileges and Immunities which were offered to them, and these they neither admit into any of their Councils, nor into any of the Offices of Trust and Power, except it be two, that namely of the Chancellor, and the principal Secretaries, which pertain only to the People. The other are the Issue or Descendants of those who first laid the foundation of their City and Common-wealth: and these they have in such respect, and so high esteem, that to make any Stranger (how great and eminent soever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greatest Honour they can bestow; and not bestowed but upon the best deserver. *Henry III.* of France taking this City in his way out of Poland, thought himself graced with this Attribute, which they are very dainty and sparing of, it being the highest Honour which they vouchsafe to impart to such Commanders of their own, and Ambassadors of other Princes as have well deserved it. And that this Honour may be kept up to the very height, and their Nobility grow not too cheap by being too numerous, neither the younger Sons of these *Gentlemen* within the City, or of the *Noblemen*, in the Country are permitted to marry. But otherwise they suffer them to satisfy their Lusts with too much impunity; and for their sakes allow of *Stews*, as an evil not to be avoided on the former grounds.

Now, as *Orbo* in *Tacitus* said to the *Prætorian Soldiers*, *Princeps à Senatu oritur, Senatus à vobis*: so out of these Gentlemen are chosen the Senators, out of them the Duke. His election by *Contarenius* is described in this manner: In the vacancy of the place, all the Gentry above thirty Years of Age are assembled. So many as meet cast their Names into a Pot; and in another are just so many Balls, of which thirty only are gilt. Then a Child draweth for each, till the thirty gilt ones be all drawn, for which thirty the Child draweth again the second time out of another Pot, that hath only nine gilt Balls. The nine so drawn nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again selected by the same kind of Lot. These twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by Lot set apart. These nine nominate forty five, who are by Lot again reduced unto eleven. These eleven choose forty one of the best and chiefest of the *Senators*; who after an Oath taken severally, to choose whom they judge worthiest, write in a Scrole every one whom he best liketh. The Scroles are mingled together, and then drawn, the fitness of the Persons then drawn is discussed, and he that hath most Voices above five and twenty, is the Man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudged with due Solemnities to be created their Duke. By the like kind of Lottery do they choose Gentlemen in the Senate, and make publick Officers, insomuch that *Contarenius*, who hath committed unto Writing these publick Forms, conceiveth (I will not say how rightly) that the *Venetian* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato's* Platform.

But whether this be so or no, certain it is, that this Common-wealth thus constituted, and modelled, as before is said, hath lasted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the World, either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it only preserved it self in the same condition, but may most justly be accounted one of the strongest Bulwarks of *Christendom* against the incroachments of the *Turks*: the Wars whereof hath procured Peace, and the Peace thereof hath procured Plenty to the rest of *Europe*. Insomuch that it may well be said, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and *Italy* the Face of *Europe*, so *Venice* is the Eye of *Italy*, the fair-

est, strongest, and most active part in that powerful Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome*, by some *Pythagorean* transmigration had passed into the Body of this powerful State, and animated it with all the Virtues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and constant Temper. From so base and abject a beginning is this City grown to be one of the best Supporters of the Arms of *Europe*.

As for the Religion of this State, they tolerate that of the *Greek Church*, but they themselves profess no other than that of the Church of *Rome*: yet with such caution and respect to their own Authority, that they suffer not the Clergy to enjoy those Privileges, which they possess in other Countries, to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the Quarrel betwixt them and Pope *Paul* the Fifth, in which the *Signeury* stood stilly to their ancient Rights, and caused Mass to be duly said, notwithstanding all their Churches were under the Interdict; banished the *Jesuits* for ever out of their Dominions, for sticking too busily in behalf of the Pope: and in the end prevailed so far by their constant Courage, that the Pope was fain to give over the Cause, and reconcile them to the Church, without any submission. A notable example to all Christian Princes, how to behave themselves towards those of *Rome*; who are not to be gained upon but by such resistances. So easie a thing it is for Men of Constancy and Courage to shake off that Yoke, which Papal Tyranny and Superstition hath imposed upon them.

In managing their Wars they anciently observed two Rules, which most conduced to the enlargement and security of their Common-wealth. The first was the exempting of their own Citizens from the Wars (not out of Jealousie, but care of their preservation) unless compelled to the contrary by extream necessity: the body of their Armies being compounded out of the Provincial Subjects, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof they did not only keep their City in the same condition, able at any time, and at all times, to give Law to the rest of their Dominions; but wasted the hot and boiling Spirits of their Subjects, in the Wars abroad; which otherwise might have made too much work at home. The other was the entertaining of some neighbouring Prince to be the General of their Forces; whom in the conclusion of the Service they dismissed with Honour and Reward. And by this course they avoided Faction, and prevented Servitude: Either or both of which might have hapned by employing any of their own Great Ones in the chief Commands, who (after the example of *Julius Cæsar* in the State of *Rome*) having a strong Party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himself their Prince. But this was only in the conduct of their Wars in *Italy*, and in such times when the State was not so well ballanced as it hath been since.

As for the Forces of the State, we may behold them in relation to Sea or Land. Their Land-Forces which they have in continual pay, for defence of their Dominion, consist of 28000 Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers inrolled and paid; and besides those, they have a choice Band of 4000 Musquetiers, for exercising of which, they keep yearly Musters, as well to improve them in Experience, as to proportion them some Gratuities, according to their well-deservings. And as for Horse, they maintain constantly 6000 Men at Arms, well appointed and paid; the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italy*. And yet besides this constant and ordinary establishment, they are able to bring great Forces into the Field; as appeareth by their Army against *Lewis XII.* in which without disfurnishing any of their Forts and Garrisons, they had 2000 Men of Arms, 3000 light Horse, 30000 Foot, most of their own natural Subjects, saving that they were interlined with some Bands of *Switzers*, to which People they give yearly Pensions, to be assured of their Aid upon all occasions. Then for the Sea-Forces, besides that they keep fifty Gallies in continual action, for defence of the *Adriatick*, and that they have no less than 200 more laid up in the Arsenal, with

with all manner of Tackling and Ammunition appertaining to them: They have 10000 Men enrolled to serve at the Oar, and may raise as many as they please for those kind of Services, out of those parts of *Sclavonia*, which are subject to them. But the great evidence of the Power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet set out against the *Grand Signieur* for the War of *Cyprus*, *An.* 1570. in which they manned out one great Gallion, eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall Ships, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of lesser burden; being in all one hundred and eighty seven Sail, fit for present Service. To give the total Sum in brief, they held a War by Sea and Land for seven Years together, against all the Princes of *Christendom* (excepting *England*) confederated against them by the League at *Cambray*: In all which time they neither wanted Men nor Money; and in the end, were the least losers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture also at the greatness of the publick Treasury, and of the yearly Income which supplies the same. For though it be conceived, that their ordinary standing Revenue be but four Millions of *Ducats* yearly (which yet is more than any *Christian Prince* can boast of, except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other ways to advance their Treasury, by laying new Imposts on Commodities as they see occasion; which needs must rise to vast and most considerable Sums, in a City of the greatest Traffick of any in *Europe*, and perhaps in all the World besides. And yet besides such Customs and Imposts as they lay on Merchandise, there is nothing which the People do eat or drink, for which they pay not something to the publick Treasury; over and above which the poorest Labourer in the whole *Sig-neury* payeth his *Poll-money* also. Infomuch that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Christians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turk*, than under the *Venetians*. Without such helps, (though heavy and burdensome to the Subject) they could not possibly have spent twelve Millions in the War against *Selimus II.* and as many a little before that, in the enterprise of *Ferrara*, and the War raised against them by the League at *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembred.

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no *Sovereign Princes*, nor such as do succeed each other in the right of Inheritance; yet being they are always Men of most eminent Note, and that in their Names all the business of State is acted, and all Writings dated, I will subjoin a Catalogue of them to this present; to the end that meeting with their Names in the course of History, we may the better know in what times they lived.

The Dukes of Venice.

697	1	<i>Paulus Anafestus</i>	21.	950	23	<i>Petro Candiano IV.</i>
728	2	<i>Marcel Tegalien</i>	10.	970.	24	<i>Petro Urseola.</i>
727	3	<i>Hippateus Ursus</i>	11.	972	25	<i>Vital Candiano.</i>
<i>An Interregnum of six Years.</i>						
742	4	<i>Theodatus Hippateus.</i>	985	27	<i>Petro Urseola II.</i>	
755	5	<i>Galla of Malamocco.</i>	1003	28	<i>Otho Urseola.</i>	
756	6	<i>Dominico Monegarta.</i>	1020	29	<i>Petro Barbolani.</i>	
760	7	<i>Maurice Galbata.</i>	1021	30	<i>Dominico Flabenico.</i>	
783	8	<i>John Galbata.</i>	1031	31	<i>Dominico Contareni.</i>	
799	9	<i>Obelerius.</i>	1059	32	<i>Dominico Silvio.</i>	
804	10	<i>Angelus Partitarius.</i>	1072	33	<i>Vitalis Falerius.</i>	
822	11	<i>Justinian Partitarius.</i>	1084	34	<i>Vitalis Michaeli.</i>	
824	12	<i>John Partitarius.</i>	1090	35	<i>Ordelausus Falerius.</i>	
833	13	<i>Petro Tradonico.</i>	1105	36	<i>Dominico Michaeli.</i>	
859	14	<i>Ursus Partitarius.</i>	1118	37	<i>Petrus Polanus.</i>	
876	15	<i>John Partitarius.</i>	1136	38	<i>Dominico Morosini.</i>	
881	16	<i>Petro Candiano.</i>	1143	39	<i>Vitalis Michaeli II.</i>	
	17	<i>Dominico Tribuno.</i>	1160	40	<i>Sebastian Ziani.</i>	
	18	<i>Petro Tribuno.</i>	1165	41	<i>Aura Maripiere.</i>	
905	19	<i>Ursus Badoareus</i>	1179	42	<i>Henrico Dondolo.</i>	
925	20	<i>Petro Candiano II.</i>	1193	43	<i>Petro Ziani.</i>	
932	21	<i>Petro Badoario.</i>	1216	44	<i>Jacobi Tepuli.</i>	
935	22	<i>Petro Candiano III.</i>	1236	45	<i>Marino Morosini.</i>	

1240	46	<i>Renieri Zeno.</i>	1511	78	<i>Andrea Gritti.</i>
1256	47	<i>Lorenzo Tepuli.</i>	1527	79	<i>Petro Laude.</i>
1263	48	<i>Jacobo Contareni.</i>	1533	80	<i>Francisco Donati.</i>
1267	49	<i>Giovanni Dondolo.</i>	1540	81	<i>Antonio Trevisani.</i>
1276	50	<i>Petro Gradenico.</i>	1541	82	<i>Francisco Vivieri.</i>
1298	51	<i>Marino Georgio.</i>	1543	83	<i>Lorenzo Prioli.</i>
1299	52	<i>John Sourance.</i>	1547	84	<i>Hierome Prioli.</i>
1315	53	<i>Francisco Dondolo.</i>	1555	85	<i>Petro Loredani.</i>
1329	54	<i>Barthol Gradonico.</i>	1560	86	<i>Lewis Mocenico.</i>
1330	55	<i>Andrea Dondolo.</i>	1567	87	<i>Sebastian Venieri.</i>
1342	56	<i>Marinus Falerius.</i>	1578	88	<i>Nicola di pont.</i>
	57	<i>John Gradonico.</i>	1586	89	<i>Paschal Cicogne.</i>
1343	58	<i>John Dauphin.</i>	1596	90	<i>Marino Grimani.</i>
1348	59	<i>Lorenzo Celso.</i>	1606	91	<i>Leonardo Donati.</i>
1352	60	<i>Marco Cornaro.</i>	1612	92	<i>Antonio Memmo.</i>
1355	61	<i>Andrea Contareni.</i>	1615	93	<i>Giovanni Bembo.</i>
1371	62	<i>Michael Morosini.</i>	1618	94	<i>Nicholao Donati.</i>
	63	<i>Antonio Veniere.</i>	1618	95	<i>Antonio Priuli.</i>
1389	64	<i>Michael Steno.</i>	1623	96	<i>Francisco Contareno.</i>
1402	65	<i>Thomazo Micenico.</i>	1630	97	<i>Giovanni Corrello.</i>
1412	66	<i>Francisco Foscaro.</i>	1648	98	<i>Francisco Erixzo.</i>
1447	67	<i>Paschal Malipiere.</i>	1656 99		<i>Contareno.</i>
1452	68	<i>Christophero Moro.</i>			<i>Cornaro.</i>
1461	69	<i>Nicolao Troni.</i>	1658 100		<i>Bertruccio Valetio,</i>
1463	70	<i>Nicolao Marcelli.</i>			<i>he died Oct. 19.</i>
1464	71	<i>Petro Moceneci.</i>	1658	100	<i>Johannes Pezaro,</i>
1465	72	<i>Andrea Vendramine.</i>	1659 101		<i>he died Oct. 19.</i>
1467	73	<i>John Mocenico.</i>			<i>Dominico Contareno.</i>
1474	74	<i>Marco Barbado.</i>	1684	102	<i>Marc Antonio Gi-</i>
	75	<i>Augustino Barbado.</i>	1688 103		<i>ussiani, Jan. 26.</i>
1489	76	<i>Leonardo Loredani.</i>			<i>Francisco Morisini.</i>
1509	77	<i>Antonio Grimani.</i>	1688 103		<i>April 3.</i>

The principal Orders of *Knighthood* in this Republick are 1. of *S. Mark*, who is the Patron of this City, instituted in the Year 1330. and renewed again (being grown somewhat out of use) *An.* 1562. The Honour is commonly bestowed on the Person present, sometimes by Letters Patents on a Party absent; as lately upon *Daniel Heinsius*, one of great eminence for Learning in the *Netherlands*. The Person chosen is to be of Noble Blood, at the least a Gentleman, the Word or Motto of the Order, is, *Pax tibi Marce.*

2. Of the glorious *Virgin*, first instituted by *Bartholomew of Vincentia*, *An.* 1222. Their Charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them is) the peace of *Italy*. It was allowed of by Pope *Urban the Fourth*, *An.* 1262. The Arms of this Order are a purple Cross between certain Stars. The Habit a white Surcoat over a Russet Cloak; and seems to be as well a Religious as a Military Institution, like to the *Spanish Orders*, and that of *Malta*.

There are in the Provinces of this Common-wealth before described,
Patriarchs 2. Bishops 16.

The Great Dukedom of TUSCANY.

HAVING thus run along the Coast of the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, from the Lands of the Church, unto the *Alpes*, which divide *Italy* from *Germany*; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuscan* or *Lower Sea* from the said *Lands of the Church*, to that part of the *Alpes* which divide *Italy* from *France*. And in the first place we meet with the Dukedom of *Florence*, or the Estate of the Great Duke of *Tuscany*; divided on the East from *St. Peter's Patrimony*, by the River *Pisoo*; on the West from the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, by the River *Macra*, and the strong Fort of *Sarazena* on the North

North from *Ramandiola*, and *Marca Anconitana*; by the *Apennine Hills*, and on the South side it is bounded with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian Seas*.

It taketh up the greatest and goodliest part of all that which anciently was called *Tuscany* from the Greek word *ἱεῖν*, which signifieth to *Sacrifice*; of which act of Religious Worship, or rather of some superstitious Ceremonies appertaining to it, they are conceived to be the Authors. And to say truth, they were much given to *South-sayings* and Divinations, and such like Vanities of *Gentilism*: *Tages*, that *Merlin* of the old World, first appearing here, from whom they learned the greatest part of their Superstitions. So that this Name was adventitious and accidental. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenia*, from *Tyrrhenus*, the Son of *Atys*, King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in these parts about the time that *Gedeon* judged the Tribes of *Israel*. But these Names signified the same both Country and People, though in divers Languages, and with respect to different Originations: the name of *Tyrrheni*, and *Tyrrhenia* being most used by the *Greeks*; as that of *Tysci*, and *Tyscia*, by their Neighbours of *Rome*, who also called the People *Hetrusci*, and the Country *Hetruria*, from a particular Province of it which was so entituled. Anciently it extended as far Eastward as the Banks of *Tiber*, the other bounds being then as they are at the present; and in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation. Who not content to be restrained within the *Apennine* and the *Tiber*, wasted three hundred Towns of the *Umbri*, the next bordering Nation: and built twelve Cities on the other side of the Mountains, that is to say, *Adria*, *Verona*, *Vincentia*, *Trent*, *Bergamo*, *Mantua*, *Como*, *Vercellæ*, *Novara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Rhegium*, all of esteem and reputation to this very day. They were the first Nation that carried an *Offensive War* to the Gates of *Rome*, when they gave aid to the *Tarquins* under King *Porfena*; and held it out on the *Defensive* as long as any: No People in all *Italy* standing more stily in defence of their common Liberties, than the *Falisci*, and *Veientes*, two *Hetrurian* Tribes. But nothing could withstand the fortune of that growing Empire. Twelve Nations of them were brought under by *Tarquinius Priscus*, who from hence brought to *Rome* the *Fasces* and Triumphal Ornaments, and other embellishments of State: the *Veii* and *Falisci*, by the Sword of *Camillus*; the Conquest perfected by the Conduct of *Valerius Corvinus*, and *Fulv. Contumalus*, A. U. C. 455. So the *Tuscans* were subdued at last, after they had been governed by their own Kings 1132 Years; that is to say, from *Tarchon Priscus*, their first King, A. M. 2550, to *Turenus Ceso*, their last King, A. M. 3668.

The chief Towns of it in those times were, 1. *Veii*, and 2. *Perusia*, spoken of before. 3. *Fesulæ*, then of very great fame, now a poor Village hard by *Florence*. 4. *Aggillina*, situate not far from the Lake of *Thrasymene*, which from hence was called *Vadum Aggillinum*, the chief Town of the *Tuscans*, at the coming of *Aneas* into *Italy*, and the Seat Royal of *Mezentius*, that noted Tyrant so often mentioned by *Virgil*. First built by the *Pelasgi*, a Greek People, and by them thus named, afterwards by mistake called *Cære*: by like mistake as *Peru*, *Jucatan*, and others of the *American* Provinces, got their present Names; as shall there be shewn. For the *Tuscans*, or the *Romans* as others say, demanding in their Language of a Country Fellow, the name of the place, was answered in his Language, *ἰεῖς*, that is to say, *God save you*, or *God speed you*: which word they taking for the Name of the Town, did ever after call it *Cære*. Memorable in old time for the Baths adjoining, from hence called *Balnea Cæretana*; more for the preservation of the *Vestal Fire*, and the other Holy Things of *Rome*, when that Town was taken by the *Galls*. Rewarded hereupon with all the Privileges of *Rome*, except right of Suffrage: from whence the Tables, in which the *Roman Censors* used to enroll the Names of those whom they deprived of their Votes in *Senates*, or any other

publick Council, were called *Cærites Tabulæ*. 5. *Phaleria*, on the Sea side, the principal Town of the *Falisci*, of which there is some remainder extant in the Village called *Falaris*. 6. *Clusium*, the Seat Royal of King *Porfena*; for aiding which against the *Galls*, the *Romans* drew upon themselves the fury of that turbulent People. *Pisa*, *Arretium*, and such others as are still in being, we shall speak of afterwards.

The Rivers and the Soil do remain as formerly, though the first altered in their Names. The principal of which are, 1. *Arnus*, spoken of before, in the general survey of *Italy*. 2. *Sercius*, by *Ptolomy* called *Boactus*; a River which by the excellency of its Carps and Trouts, makes some amends to the People for its violent Land-floods. 3. *Palia*, as violent and dangerous as the other, but not so profitable; which falleth into *Tiber*, near *Orviette*. 4. *Martha*, by *Ptolomy* called *O'a*. Here is also the Lake *Volfinius*, which is twenty four Miles in compass; and that called anciently *Sabatennis*, but now *Laco Braciani*, from which Water was conveyed to *Rome*. By reason of these and other Lakes, and the frequent over-flowings of the Rivers, the Country in former times was full of Bogs, which made the Air unhealthy, and the Ways unpassable; it being in the Flats and Marishes of *Hetruria*, that *Annibal* was turmoiled; losing herein the greatest part of his Elephants, and one of his Eyes. But since those times, partly by the industry of the People, and the great providence of the Princes, the Fens in most places are well drained, and the Bogs converted to firm Land; whereby the Air is rectified, and the Ways made pleasant; care being also taken, by great Banks and Ramparts, to keep the Rivers for the most part within their Channels: So that the Country is now full of very spacious Fields, and fruitful Vallies, swelled here and there with pleasant Mountains, little inferior in fertility to the richest Vales; abundantly well stored with delicious Wines, and plentiful, in a word, of all the blessings of Nature; save that the parts about *Florence* are defective in Wheat, the want of which is supplied from the Fields of *Sienna*, where there is plenty enough of it for themselves and their Neighbours; though no such superfluity, as to spare any of it unto other Provinces.

But to return unto the Story, *Tuscany* being thus brought under the command of *Rome*, was made the second of those eleven Regions, into which *Italy* was divided by *Augustus Cæsar*. In the division of it made by *Antoninus*, and in that of *Constantine*, it made with *Umbria*, one of the ten Provinces, which was immediately subject to the *Præfett* of the City of *Rome*. Afterwards, in the declination of the *Roman Empire*, it became a Member of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, then of the *French*, and finally of the *German Empire*: during which times, it was governed by an Officer of Trust and Power, whom I find sometimes called the *Marquess*, sometimes Duke of *Tuscany*; who had here more or less Authority, as they could work on the necessities of their several Princes. *Desiderius*, the last King of the *Lombards*, had been Duke of *Tuscany*, and so was *Albericus* in the time of the *Berengarii*; and *Guido* is called *Marquess* of it, under the Reign of *Henricus Auceps* the *German Emperor*. Afterwards, as the Popes grew in Power and Greatness, so they made bold to intermeddle in the Affairs of this Province; giving it one while to the Kings of *Naples*, another while to the Dukes of *Anjou*, making some challenge to that Kingdom. In which distractions the *Florentines* first bought their own Liberty of the Emperor *Rodolphus Habsburgensis*; and after purchased the Town and Territory of *Cortona*, of *Ladislaus*, King of *Naples*; that of *Arezzo*, for 40000 *Florens*, of Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*. After this time they husbanded their Affairs so well, that they became one of the most considerable Estates in *Italy*; and at the last by taking in *Pisa* and *Sienna*, they got the absolute Dominion of the best and largest part of *Tuscany*; which now is under the Com-

mand of the *Great Duke*, and may be branched most fitly into these four parts; that is to say, the Cities and Territories of 1. *Florence*, 2. *Pisa*, 3. *Sienna*, and 4. the *Islands* situate in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

1. And first, the Territory or Estate of *Florence* taketh up the North part of this great Dukedom, having the *Apennine* on the North, and the Estates of *Pisa* and *Sienna* on the South. On the East it has the Dukedoms of *Urbino* and *Spoleto*; and on the West the States of *Pisa* and *Luca*. It is so called from the City of *FLORENCE*, situate nigh unto the Conflux of the Rivers *Arno* and *Chianus*; the former passing through the midst of the City, which is joined together with four Bridges of Stone: Environed with Mountains, which do serve as a Fortrefs against Invasions, and for defence against the Winds: First built by *L. Sylla* that bloody *Dictator*; afterwards made a Colony by the *Triumviri*, *Augustus*, *Antoni*, and *Lepidus*; from the flourishing situation of it being called *Florentia*. The *Lombards*, upon some displeasure, razed it to the Ground, but it was rebuilt by *Charlemagne*; to whom, and whose Successors, they continued faithful, as long as they had any thing to do with the State of *Italy*; but after they betook themselves to the *Papal* Faction, and were as rigid *Guelfs* as any. On this foundation it now stands, and is indeed a very fair and flourishing City, agreeable to the Name; the Streets being very straight and large, paved with square Stone, and always kept exceeding clean; the ordinary Buildings beautiful above any in *Italy*, besides many fair and stately Palaces adorned with *Statues*. The principal of the Palaces is that of the *Great Duke*, taking up the room of fifty Houses which were wont to stand there, capable of a great Retinue: and for the largeness of the Building, the Architecture and Ornaments of it, as also for the Gardens, Fountains, Statues, and other Accessaries, equalling, if not surpassing, the goodliest Palaces in all *Europe*. The like may also be affirmed of the *Cathedral*, highly commended for the excellency of the Workmanship, but that especially of the Steeple, which both for stuff and structure is beyond compare. This Church is called commonly the *Annunciata*, and worthily accounted one of the chief Ornaments of *Florence*: in which the City there are besides, so many excellent Pieces and curious Rarities, that the Arch-duke *Charles* was wont to say, that it was a City not to be seen but on Holy-days. As for the Inhabitants of this City, and the Parts adjoining, they are a very industrious People, and generally said to be of a very great Wit, subtle Heads, and of much insight into Business: and yet Count *Imbalt*, a *French* Gentleman, was used to say, *Non sapete dove consistesse l'ingegno tanto celebrato di Fiorentini*, That he could never find where that great Wit of the *Florentines* lay. *Guicciardine*, the Historian, was without doubt a notable Statesman; and *Machiavel*, once the Recorder of this City, a Man of as shrewd a Brain as any; and so were the two *Cosimo's* of the House of the *Medices*: but whether all the *Florentines*, or the major part of them, be of such extraordinary Wit, as they say they are, I am not very well resolved; nor is it much material to enquire into it. This City is now much sunk both as to its Wealth and its People, it being supposed now not to have above 50000 Souls in it, tho' about forty Years agoe it had 90000.

The other Cities and chief Places of this first division, are 1. *Fesulae*, once a *Roman* Colony, now a small Village called *Piesoli*, situate in the streight of the *Apennine*, not far from *Florence*, which is thought to have risen chiefly from the ruins of it; most memorable for the great defeat here given by *Stilico*, to the great Army of the *Goths*, conducted into *Italy* under *Rhadagustus*. 2. *Pistoria*, or *Pistora*, seated on the foot of the *Apennine*, but ruined with his own dissentions; of which the greatest and most lasting, were those betwixt the *Neri* and *Bianchi* (or the black Men and the white) which divided *Florence*; and that between the *Guelfs* and *Gibellines*,

which here took beginning, and for a long time exercised the Peace of *Christendom*. This last began (as some say) upon the quarrel of two Brothers, of which the one named *Guelfo*, stood for the Pope, the other named *Gibellino*, declared for the Emperor. The Quarrel spreading into Parties, called the *Guelfs* and the *Gibellines*, became at last the wonder and amazement of all good People; insomuch as some are of Opinion, that the fiction of the *Elfs* and *Goblins*, wherewith we use to fright young Children was derived from hence. As for the City itself, it is seated in a fair and goodly Plain, compassed with Mountains; the Streets paved with Free-stone, and the Church (which is Cathedral) with Marble. It was first walled by *Desiderius* the last King of the *Lombards*, when he was Governour of this Province; but for all that was forced to submit it self to the Power of the *Florentine*, by whom it was subdued, Anno 1150. when as yet themselves were not the absolute Masters of their own City. 3. *Volterra* built among the Mountains, the Birth-place of *Linus* Successor to *St. Peter* in the See of *Rome*. It standeth on the top of an Hill, the Walls thereof made of square Stone six Foot long, which are very neatly joined together without Mortar; and in those Walls five Gates for entrance, each Gate having near unto it a very fair Fountain. The Marble Statues, and some Epitaphs in *Tuscan* Letters, do evidently declare it to be very ancient. In this Town was born *Rodolphus Volterrano*, one of the greatest Restorers of Learning in the West Parts of the World. 4. *Monte Pulciano*; in *Latin* called 4 *Mons Politianus*, a well fortified City, and the birth-place of *Angelus Politianus*, the Reviver of the *Latin* or *Roman* Elegancies. 5. *Prato*, another strong piece of this part also, neighboured by a retiring place of the Great Dukes, called *Pratoline*, a right pleasant Village, beautified with a magnificent Palace; in which, besides many other Singularities, are most curious Water-works, equal, if not superior unto those of *Tivoli*. 6. *Cortona*, an ancient 6 City of the *Tuscans*, situate at the Foot of the *Apennine*; sold to the *Florentines* by *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*. 7. *Aretium*, or *Arezzo*, one of the ancient Cities of the 7 *Tuscans* also, and sold to the *Florentines* as the other was; this being bought for 40000 *Florens* of *Lewis* of *Anjou*, then the Pope's *Viceroy* in this Country. 8. *Borgo San Sepulchro*, seated on the *Tiber*, near, or within the *Spoletan* Dukedom; added to this *Signeury* by *Cosmo de Medices*, the first of that Name; by whom bought of Pope *Eugenius* IV. for the Sum of 25000 *Florins*, and laid unto the Patrimony of this Common-wealth, to which it serveth for a Bulwark on that side of this Country.

To this division also we may best refer the small, but rich *Signeury* of *Massa*, situate on the borders of the State of *Genoa*. Chief Towns whereof, 1. *Massa* it self, 1 which gives the Title of a Marquis to the Lord hereof, of the Family of the *Malestines*. 2. *Carara*, three Miles 2 off from *Massa*, and more near the Sea; of great fame for its Quarries of whitest Marble (much used in the time of the *Roman* greatness) and a breed of the fairest Women in *Italy*. The Prince hereof a Feudatary to the Duke of *Florence*; but amongst his own Vassals absolute enough. It is now in the Possession of the Family of *Cibo*.

2. The second Member of this Estate is the City and Territory of *PISA*, lying towards the Sea, betwixt the *Genoese* on the West, and the Territory of *Sienna* on the East. The City first built by the *Pisae*, a People of *Elis* in *Greece*: who following old *Nestor* from *Troy*, were by the violence of the Wind driven upon this Coast: and here upon the River *Arno*, where it meeteth with *Serchio*, did erect this Town. In the distractions of the Empire it stood up for it self, and grew so potent, that at one time they waged War both with the *Venetians* and the *Genoese*. They were once Masters of *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, and the *Baleares*; but finally being discomfited by the *Genoese*, near the Isle of *Giglio*, An. 1369. they submitted themselves to the Protection of *Charles* IV. by

by whom it was made free. Not long after, it was taken by *John Galeaze* the first Duke of *Millain*, Anno 1404. by *John Marid*, his Son and Successor sold unto the *Florentines*; from whose command they freed themselves by popular violence. The *Florentines* upon this besieged them, and brought them to that extremity of Hunger, that they were ready to be starved. But such was the humanity of the Besiegers, that when they entered the Town, every man carried Victuals in his hand in stead of Weapons, to beget, as it were, new life in that rebellious People. This Victory the *Florentines* got by the Valour and Conduct of Sir *John Hawkwood*, whom the *Italians* call *Giovanni di Aguto*; who being first a Taylor in *Essex*, afterwards served *Edward III.* in his *French Wars*, where he was Knighted. And when upon the Peace concluded after the Battel of *Poitiers*, he wanted Employment, he entered with his Regiment into *Italy*, and put himself into the pay of the *Florentines*, then in War with this City: who for his Valour, have honoured him with a very fair Tomb and Monument. When *Charles VIII.* went into *Italy*, the *Pisans* again revolted; and were not without much Labour and great Charges, reduced to their former Obedience. As for the City itself, it is almost as big as *Florence*; this being five Miles in compass, and that but six; but very short of it in the number of people, *Florence* being said to contain 90000 Souls, *Pisa* not a third part of that proportion; yet hath it very good advantages to make it populous, that is to say, the publick *Arsenal* for Shipping, an University for Students, and the See of an Archbishop: The Cathedral Church of which, is a very beautiful piece of Work, the Gates thereof are Brass, and the Steeple of it of such Artificial and exquisite Building, that it sheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwholsomness of the Air over-balance all these fair Advantages.

The next place of Importance within the Territory of this City is the Town and Haven of *Ligorn*, (*Liburnum* it is called in *Latine*) seated upon the influx of the River *Arno*; well fortified against the *Genoese*, by whom the Works were once slighted, Anno 1297. Upon a reconciliation made between those States, it returned again to its old Masters. And when the *Pisans* were sold over to the *Florentines*, by the Duke of *Millain*; *Thomas Fregosa* Duke of *Genoa*, seized upon this place, and sold it also to the same Chapmen, for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke *Cosmo* and his two Sons it is much improved in Strength and Beauty; and so well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the strongest Cities in *Christendom*: Cities I say, and not Castles, the Castles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Millain*, being held to be the strongest Forts in the World. After this comes in 3. *Peira Sancta*, on the West side of the *Arno*, (a place of great Consequence and Strength) one of the best pieces of the *Pisans* when a Free-Estate, against their old Enemies the *Genoese*, towards whom it standeth. 4. *Terraciola*, Eastward of *Ligorn*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. 5. *Castellona*, an Episcopal See. 6. *Porto Barrato*, bordering on the Seignury of *Sienna*, now nothing but a station for Ships (not much used for that) but heretofore beautified with one of the best Cities of the *Tuscans*, called *Populonia*.

3. The third member of this Dukedom is the City and Territory of *S I E N N A*, lying betwixt the Estate of *Pisa*, and the Land of the Church. The City said to be built by *Brennus*, who did there put his old sickly men to sojourn, and called it *Sena*: the birth-place of *Aneas Sylvius*, called afterwards Pope *Pius II.* of *Francis Piccolomini*, after Pope *Pius III.* and of *Sixtus* (hence surnamed) *Senensis*, the greatest Scholar of the three, if not of all the Age he lived in. By *Antonine* in his *Itinerarium* called *Sena Julia*, to disfigure it perhaps from another of that name near the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallica*. Built near the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Treiffa*; but built (which makes the Situation of it ex-

ceeding pleasant) upon an high Hill, on which there is a Castle that commands the Town; the Streets thereof even and very plain, centring in a large and spacious Market-place; near to which is a very fair Palace used for a Senate-house in the Free-Common-Wealth, and on the South-side near the Walls the Cathedral Church, reputed to be one of the fairest in *Italy*, having only one door into it, to which there is an ascent by fair Marble Stairs, of which the Pavement is made also. Having long held the *Gibelline* or Imperial Faction, it bought its liberty at an easie rate, of the Emperor *Rodolphus I.* After it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*; and finally was made over to *Cosmo de Medices* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of *Spain*, Anno 1558. in consideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French*, and other services expected for the time to come. *Cosmo* being thus invested in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the first Prince who had the absolute command of it, after the constitution of their Common-wealth, neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but only as called in by their several Factions; and suffered to have Garrisons in it of their own people, by the agreement of their Party. And, to say truth, it stood with good reason of State, that the *Florentine* should use all his wit to get this City; and having got it, use all means to assure it to him. For, besides that great accession which it made unto his Estate; by adding thereunto the yearly income of 150000 Ducats, above all expences: it was also to be carefully looked on as a Rival, which had long time stood in competition with it, for the sovereign command of *Tuscany*. Besides there had been mighty Animosities between the Cities; the *Florentine* being always of the *Guelfes*, and the *Siennays* of the *Gibelline* Faction. A Faction at last so generally distasted in all *Italy*, and so abominable to the Popes, that on *Ashwednesday*, when the Pope being to cast Ashes on the Heads of the Cardinals, was to have said, *Memento, O homo, quod cinis es, & in cinerem converteris*, according to the usage of the Church of *Rome*: seeing a *Gibelline* amongst them, he forgot himself, and said thus unto him. *Memento, O homo, quod Gibellinus es, & cum Gibellinis morieris*. Of chief note next unto *Sienna*, are 1. *Montalcino* (*Mons Alcinus* in *Latine*) a place of great strength both by industry and situation. 2. *Castro Cartaldo* seated upon a lofty Hill, most memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John Boccace*, one of the best Wits of his time, as his *Decameron* declareth; buried here with a sorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of transcribing. 3. *Soana*, an Episcopal City; as also are 4. *Pienza*, 5. *Crosetto*, and 6. *Chiusi*; this last, the *Clusum* of the ancient *Tuscans* spoken of before. Besides these are 26 walled Towns within this Signury, but of no great observation in the course of business.

There belonged also unto this Common-wealth, when a State distinct, some Ports and Pieces on the Sea, which when it was consigned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniards*: partly thereby to keep those Princes at his devotion, but principally that by holding so many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his Girdle the Keys of *Italy*, and become Lord Paramount of those Seas. Of those the principal, if not all, 1. *Piombino*, in *Latine* called *Plumbinum*, from some Mines of Lead; adorned with a strong Castle, and a plentiful Territory: the Castle in the hands of the *Spaniard*, but the Town and Territory in possession of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole Rents of the Estate. 2. *Port Telamon*, Eastward of *Piombino*, so called of old from *Telamon*, an adjoining Promontory, and known by this name in *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marius*. Accounted the chief City of *Tuscany* in those elder times, but most remarkable for the great Battel fought near unto it betwixt the *Romans* and the *Gauls*, A. U. C. 529. the Army of the *Gauls* consisting of 70000 Horse and Foot; that of the

Romans

Romans little (if at all) inferior to it. A fight in which *Attilius*, one of the Consuls being slain, the Victory was gotten by *Amilius* his Colleague, with the slaughter of 40000 of the Enemies. and the taking of 10000 Prisoners: *Aneroestus* and *Congolianus* two Kings of the *Transalpine Gauls* being slain or taken. A Victory which drew after it the total subjugation of the *Cisalpine Gauls*, which followed within three years after. 3. *Orbitello*, drawing more towards the East, the *Cossa* of the ancient Writers. 4. *Monte Argentorati*, a Promontory or *Peninsula*, thrusting it self into the Sea, over against *Orbitello*, by the *Latines* called *Mons Argentarius*: and thought by some who have observed the situation, strength, and extent thereof, to be the fittest place for a Royal City to be built in, to command those Seas. 5. *Port Hercule*, which still retains its ancient name, imparted to it from some Temple of *Hercules*, which was founded in it; situate near the Eastern *Isthmus* of the said *Peninsula*. 6. *Porto-Longone*, a piece of special consequence for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cause of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the Conquest of *Naples*) but again recovered by the *Spaniard*, who doth now possess it.

The fourth and last Member of this Estate, are the Islands in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principal whereof is, 1. *Ilva*, not above ten Miles from *Piombino*, called anciently *Æthalia*, by the vulgar *Elba*. *Pliny* affirmeth it to contain in compass a hundred Miles, but it proves upon a just measurement, to be but fifty. Not very well furnished with Corn, and less with Fruits; but plentiful in Mines of Iron; as formerly for Steel and Copper: for which, especially for Steel of great esteem in the time of *Virgil*, as appeareth by that passage in the tenth of his *Æneids*, where it is called

Insula inexhaustis Calybum generosa metallis.

A noble Isle, and known full well,
For unexhausted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is supplied by Iron; which Iron is of so strange a nature, that every 25 year it reneweth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilst it is in the Island, but must be carried somewhere else. It affordeth also Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty; and in some parts the Loadstone also. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Piombino*, who not being able to defend it against the *Turks*, if they should at any time invade it, resigned it, by the Counsel of *Charles V.* unto *Cosmo di Medices* the Duke of *Florence*: reserving to themselves the Revenues of it, and the Government of all the Towns and Villages therein, except those that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair Haven, called *Porto Ferrario*, capable to receive any great Fleet that should come thither, and therefore if the *Turks* and *Moors* had been Masters of it, they might easily have commanded all the Coasts adjoyning, as well in *Provence* as *Italy*. For the defence hereof, there are two strong Castles, situate on two little Mountains, on each side one; so fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable, having also good store of Cannon, and all sorts of Warlike Ammunition. In the year 1555. a Potent *Turkish* Fleet coming into these Seas to assist the *French* against the *Spaniards*, and having tried their fortunes unsuccessfully upon the *Piombino*, they made a Descent upon this Island, and attempted *Porto Ferrario*, but were beaten off with great Slaughter. But as to *Cosmopolis*, *Baudrand* assures us, there is no such Town in the Island. And not far off stands a strong Town built by the same Duke *Cosmo*, and by him called *Cosmopolis*; well fortified, and made the seat of his New Order of *St. Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

The second Island of note is *Giglio*, called *Igium* anciently, just opposite to *Monte Argentorato*, and having some 25 Miles in compass; near unto which the *Genoese* so discomfited the *Pisani* in a fight at Sea, that they

were never able to recover their former puissance. 3. *Capraria*, not far from *Ligorn*, so called from its abundance of Goats; and for the same reason *Ægilora*, by the Greek Geographers: as 4. *Gallinaria*, not far off, took name from abundance of Hens. Of the rest nothing memorable, but that some of them do occur in the ancient Writers; of which sort are 1. *Melorta*, heretofore *Lanelum*, not far from *Capraria*. 2. *Lanusi*, formerly *Artemesia*, in which there is a very good Haven. 3. *Gorgona*, 4. *Troja*, and 5. the small Islands which are called *Formicæ*. 6. To these we may add also the Isle of *Planasia*, more memorable than the rest, for the banishment and death of *Agrippa Posthumus*, the Nephew of *Augustus Cæsar* by his Daughter *Julia*; here murdered by the command of *Tiberius*, to prevent all future competition to the State imperial, situate somewhat nearer unto *Corfica*, than the rest of these Islands.

As for the *MEDICES*, whose Posterity are now Dukes hereof, they were in the *Free-State* (as *Machiavel* informs us in his *Florentine History*) accounted in the chief rank of the popular Nobility: Those being such of the ancient Nobles, as, to be capable of the Magistracy, and publick Offices (then wholly shared among the Commons) had as it were degraded themselves, and became part of the Commonalty. About the year 1410. *John de Medices*, (the first great raiser of his House) stoutly maintaining the Liberties of the People against the great ones, was by them so honoured and enriched, that he not only got a great Party, but almost a Sovereignty in the City. To him succeeded his Son *Cosmo*, one of the greatest Statesmen of those times; who did not only much reform the Civil Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the addition of *Casentino*, *Burgo*, *St. Sepulchro*, and some other pieces. Dying in the year 1464. he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medices* his Son, whose whole time was consumed in suppressing such Factions, as had at home been raised against him; and at his death left all his Power, and the great Wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater measure of his Fathers Vertues) to *Laurence* and *Julian* his two Sons. The People after his decease, either desirous of Novelties, as most people are; or fearing to be made Hereditary to this powerful Family, seemed to encline to one of the *Soderini*, a Man of plausible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciously considering, that new Houses as they are easily honoured, so are they as soon abandoned by the fickle Multitude; conferred all the dependencies which were cast upon him, on these two young men of the *Medices*: as being descended from a Family which had long governed the City. Against these two the *Pazzi*, a potent House in *Florence*, conspired, and at Mass they slew *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* escaped; the blows which were struck at him, being received by one of his Servants, whom two days before he had delivered out of prison. For this fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Archbishop of *Pisa*, who had been of the Conspiracy. To revenge the death of this Bishop, Pope *Paul II.* excommunicated the *Florentines*; and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo*, to divert this mischief, went in person to *Naples*; where he grew so much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetual League made between them. After his death 1492. his Son *Peter*, having very improvidently delivered *Pisa* and *Ligorn*, with other pieces, to the *French* King, was, together with his whole Family, banished. *John de Medices*, the Son of *Laurence*, the Brother of *Peter*, being made Pope, by the Name of *Leo X.* restored again his Family; who not long after his death were again exiled. This disgrace *Julio di Medices*, Son to the above named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement VII.* not enduring, procured *Charles V.* to besiege it: which request was granted, and the City after two years resistance, yielded. The Emperour then gave it to *Alexander Medices* (Grandchild to *Peter*, by his Son *Laurence*) Anno 1531. And he to restrain the Insolencies of the People,

ple, built a strong Cittadel in the Town. This *Alexander* was a Prince of parts good enough, had he not been too much addicted to Lust and Wantonness; which being observed by *Laurence di Medices* his own Cousin, he trained him to a secret place, under colour of bringing him to the Bed of a beautiful Lady, and there basely murdered him. Which done, instead of calling the people to take Arms for recovery of their lost liberty, as he first intended, he fearfully left the City, and fled towards *Venice*. So that before the people had notice of the accident, the Head of the *Medices* consulted together, and sent for *Cosmo di Medices*, dwelling in the Country with his Mother (and then about eighteen years of Age) to be their Prince: as being next Heir-Male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperour. This *Cosmo* proving an excellent Statesman, and a fortunate Commander, so swayed the Affairs of *Italy*, that *Philip II.* of *Spain* to be assured of his friendship, gave him the Signeury of *Sienna*, out of which he had lately driven the *French*; and *Pius IV.* had an intent to have crowned him King of *Tuscany*. But *Philip* of *Spain* (though otherwise his special friend) thwarted that intent, as loth to have in *Italy* any more Kings than himself. After in the year 1570. *Pius V.* crowned the same *Cosmo* in the Court of *Rome*, with the Title of Great Duke of *Tuscany*, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Duke's Coronet he caused to be engraven these words, *Pius Quintus Pont. Max. ob eximiam dilectionem & religionis Catholicæ zelum, præcipuumque justitiæ studium, donavit.* Thus forward were these Popes to honour this Family; but their Successors have been otherwise affected to it. For when one of Duke *Cosmo's* Successors did since intreat a succeeding Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuscany*; the Pope not liking so Lordly a Title, made answer, that he was content, *He should be a King in Tuscany, but not King of Tuscany.* A Scholar-like distinction, but not so satisfactory to the point proposed.

The Princes of the House of *Medices*,
in the Free estate.

A. D.

- 1410 1. *John di Medices*, the first advancer of the Family to publick greatness.
- 1433 2. *Cosmo di Medices*, the Son of *John*, called the Father of the Common-wealth.
- 1464 3. *Peter* the Son of *Cosmo*.
- 1472 4. *Laurence di Medices*, Son of *Peter*, the great advancer of Learning in *Italy*.
- 1492 5. *Peter di Medices II.* exiled upon the coming in of *Charles VIII.*
- 1512 6. *Laurence di Medices II.* Son of *Peter*, exiled together with his Father; made Duke of *Urbino* by Pope *Leo X.* He was the Father of *Catherine di Medices*, French Queen. In the year 1512. *Ferdinand* the Catholick King of *Spain*, restored the *Medices*, but the *Florentines* again expelled this Family in the year 1529. which was their last struggle for their Liberty.

The Dukes of *Florence*, and Great
Dukes of *Tuscany*.

A. D.

- 1531 1. *Alexander di Medices*, the Son of *Laurence*, the first Duke of *Florence*, slain by his Citizens in a Tumult, though he had married a natural Daughter of *Charles* the Vth, whose Forces were Masters of the City.
- 1537 2. *Cosmo II.* the next Heir of *Alexander*, descended from *Laurence*, a Brother of the first *Cosmo*; the wisest Statesman of his time.
- 1574 3. *Francis di Medices*, Son of *Cosmo II.* Father of *Mary* the French Queen.
- 1587 4. *Ferdinand di Medices*, the Brother of *Francis*.
- 1609 5. *Cosmo III.* Son of *Ferdinand*

1621 6. *Ferdinand II.* Son of *Cosmo di Medices*, the twelfth of this Family, the sixth Duke of *Florence*, and the fifth of *Tuscany*, born in the year, 1610.

1670 7. *Cosmus* the III. Son of *Ferdinand II.* born in the year 1642. and at this time Duke of *Florence*. Dr. *Heylin* reckons one of this Name who lived before the Family was exalted to this Honour, and then he is the IVth of that Name, and the VIIth Duke of *Florence*: he succeeded his Father in the year 1670. May 26. He hath a Son called *Crafft*, in the year 1688. married *Violanta Beatrix*, Daughter of *Ferdinand Maria*, Elector and Duke of *Bavaria*: the Revenues of this Family are said to be 18 Millions of Duckats, by which excessive Tribute, the Dominions of this Prince are in a great degree desolate, the Inhabitants removing into the States of *Genova*, *Venice*, and the *Grijons* and *Swiss*.

The length of this Estate is 20 Miles, the breadth in some places not much inferior, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which Tract, the Great Duke hath but one considerable Port on the main Land, which is that of *Ligorn*; so that his strength in Shipping is not very great: and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Traffick, and not suffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Country) and carried thence in foreign Vessels. For otherwise being an industrious People, and well trained in Manufactures, their power at Sea must needs be greater than it is: the Great Dukes Fleet consisting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliasles. And for his Power by Land, he hath in readiness (sixteen thousand Foot of his own Subjects, well Trained and Mustered under experienced Commanders, to serve him upon all occasions; and an hundred Men at Arms, and 400 Light-horsemen, well paid, as well in times of Peace, as in time of War. And besides these, he keeps so many Forts and Towns in continual Garrison, that his Estate is said to be made of Iron.

What the Revenues of it were in the Free-Estate, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifest, in that having in those five years, wherein they waged War against the Duke of *Millain*, spent three Millions and an half of Florens; their Treasury was so far from being exhausted, that the next year they besieged and endangered the City of *Luca*. Since the altering of the Common-wealth into a Dukedom, and the addition of a Territory and City of *Sienna*, the Revenues of the Duke are conceived to be a Million and a half of Ducats yearly. Of which 600000 Crowns are raised yearly out of the Dominion of the City of *Florence*, 150000 more out of that of *Sienna*; the Customs arising out of the Port of *Ligorn*, amount yearly to 130000 Ducats, the Toll of Mill-stones only unto 160000; that of Salt, Mines, and Iron, falls not short of that; in all a Million and 200000 Ducats. Then hath the Duke his Stock going amongst the Bankers, and Trades as much as any in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countries he loseth the priviledges of a Nobleman, that betakes himself to Trade and Merchandize. He useth also to buy up almost all the Corn which is brought into the Country out of other parts, and sell it again at his own price; forbidding any to be sold till all his be vend. The rest is made up by *Excise* upon all Commodities, even unto very Herbs, and Sallads, which lies very heavy on the Subject, the poor especially: insomuch that it was tartly said, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui sub Medicis vivit misere vivit*; applying an old rule in a new sense.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Estate, is that of *St. Stephen*, instituted by *Cosmo di Medices*, An. 1561. and dedicated to *St. Stephen*, because upon the Festival of *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, being the sixth of *August*,

gust, he won the famous Battel of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius IV.* confirmed it the same year, and granted them all the Priviledges which they of *Malta* enjoy, conditioned that those of this Order should make a Vow of Charity, of Conjugal Chastity, and Obedience; they are to be nobly born, and in lawful Wedlock; of the *Romish* Church, and without note of Infamy. The Robe is of white *Chamlet*, with a red Cross on their left side, as well upon their Military Garment, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally against the *Turks* and *Moors*, for which cause settled first at *Pisa*, being near the Sea; but after at *Cosmopolis* in the Isle of *Ilva*. The number of them is uncertain; the *Great Duke* the supreme Master of it. Other Orders are commonly simple, but this mixt; being partly Religious, partly Honourary.

The Arms are Or, five Torteaux Gules, two, two, and one, and one in chief Azure, charged with three Flower de Lucies of the rest.

Here are in this Estate
Archbishops 3. Bishops 26.

The State of LUCA.

IN the West part of *Tuscany*, betwixt the Estate of the *Great Duke*, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lieth the City of *Luca*, so called from *Lucumo*, a King of the *Tuscans*, who is said to have built it; situate on the River *Serchius*, not far from the Mountains of *Luna*, whence the Country is at this day called *Lunagiana*. It is about three Miles in compass, and contains about 24000 Inhabitants, who generally are a courteous and modest People, Men of good Judgment, and Discreet, and by their Wisdoms have preserved themselves a free Common-wealth, notwithstanding the attempts of more powerful Neighbours: and they are very industrious also, and well seen in *Manufactures*, especially in weaving Silks and Cloth of Gold, which they taught the *Florentines*. The City seated in a Plain, compassed with Mountains on all sides except towards *Pistoia*: so strongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City, *Zara* in *Dalmatia*, *Canea* in the Isle of *Candy*, and the Town of *Ligorn*, were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was less known) to be the four strongest Towns in the *Christian* World. The Streets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad Free-stone, and most easie to walk on: the Buildings very fair, built of Free-stone also, and beautified with pleasant Gardens. On the North-west stands a very strong Castle, near which lieth the Cathedral, stately paved with Marble, but very dark, as most of the *Popish* Churches, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the great Captains, *Cæsar*, *Pompey*, and *Crassus*, so pernicious to the *Roman* Republick. For *Pompey* desirous to maintain his Authority, *Cæsar* to get Honour, and *Crassus* to increase his Wealth, here united their Councils: *Pompey's* Authority to be upheld by *Cæsar's* Arms, and *Crassus* his Riches, *Cæsar's* continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey's* Power, and *Crassus* his Money; and *Crassus* his Estate to be secured by *Pompey's* Greatness, and *Cæsar's* Military Reputation. This done, they made a partition of the *Roman* Provinces among themselves, assigning *Gaul* to *Cæsar*, *Spain* to *Pompey*, and to *Crassus*, *Syria*; which strong Confederacy was the cause of that alteration which after followed in that State. For *Crassus* being slain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cæsar* wanting a third Man to poize the ballance, fell first to discontents, then to Civil Wars, which at last made *Cæsar* Lord of *Rome*. Upon which meeting, and the breach which succeeded afterwards, was grounded that so memorated Speech of *Cicero*, that is to say, *Utinam Pompeius cum Cæsare societatem aut nunquam iniisset aut nunquam diremisset.*

But to return again to the Affairs of *Luca*, in the declining of the Empire, it became possessed by the *Goths*, from them recovered by *Narses* with the rest of *Italy*. After this it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Boniface* the Father of that notable *Virago*, the Countess of *Mathildis*: who being deceased without Issue, and the Emperours pretending to it as to an Escheat, the Citizens made a common purse, and bought their Liberty of their Emperour *Rodolphus* for 10000 Crowns. Some say the Money was disbursed for them by a Cardinal. But notwithstanding this Purchase, and their Title by it, the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* seized upon it again; under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Castruccio*, who had made himself absolute Master of it. By a German Garrison there left it was sold to the *Genoese*; and having passed through many hands, the Emperour *Charles IV.* got it once again: of whom they once more purchased their desired Liberties for 25000 *Florens* of Gold; and to secure themselves thereof, demolished the Castle built by *Castruccio*. But being not able to maintain it by their proper strength they have put themselves under the protection of their Potent Neighbours; changing their Patrons, as conducted most to their preservation: and finding no security from *Genoa*, and as little from *Florence*, both which they severally tried; they put themselves at last into the Protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, and in that right are patronized by the Kings of *Spain*.

The Territories of this City extend in compass eighty Miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* it self, being that of *Luna*, a Bishops See; all the rest ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good Air, and very well Peopled: which yield a Revenue to the publick Treasury of 80000 Crowns *per annum*; and out of which the State is able to raise (if there be occasion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. A great strength for so small a Signeury, but all too weak to save them from the *Great Duke's* clutches, if he did seriously attempt to force it, and would venture on the displeasure of the Catholick King: besides that, it is thought that he receives more profit thence in Gifts and Presents, by letting it stand as it is, than it would yield (considering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principal Magistrate is called the *Gonsalonere*, changeable every second Month; assisted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every six Month also; during which time they live together in the Palace, or common Hall. Other inferior Officers I insist not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Bishops only, which acknowledge the Archbishop of *Florence* for their *Metropolitan*.

The Common wealth of GENOA.

DIRECTLY West of *Tuscany*, from which it is divided by the River *Macra*, lieth the Country anciently called *Liguria*, now *Riviera di Genoa*, the Coast of *Genoa*, because it lieth along the Sea of *Genoa*; and by some, *Il Genovesate*, from *Genoa* the *Metropolis* of this Country and Common-wealth. A Common-wealth once of a larger Reputation and Authority than it is at the present; commanding heretofore the Islands of *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*, in the *Mediterranean*; *Lesbos*, and *Cbio*, with some others in the *Greekish* Seas; the Town of *Capha*, or *Throdosta* in the *Taurican Chersonese*; *Pera*, on the other side of *Constantinople*; and a good part of *Tuscany*.

It was also then so strong both in Men and Shipping, that they sent seven several Armies to the Wars of the *Holy Land*: and in the space of three days only armed once upon occasion of present service, eight and fifty Gallies, and eight *Pamphyli* (being Vessels of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and sixty Oars apiece;) and at an other time, one hundred and sixty six Gallies, at a sudden pinch.

pinch. By the advantage of this strength, they beat the *Pisans* out of *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, and the *Baleares*; compelling him to pay 135000 Crowns for their Peace; they got a good share in the division of the Empire of *Constantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Latins*, and held a very strong hand over the *Venetians*. These last they had once in so great an exigence, having vanquished their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Island of *Chioggia*, not far from *Venice*, that the Senate sent them a blank Charter, bidding them write down what Conditions they pleased, which should be readily condescended to. But *Peter Doria*, Admiral of the *Genoan* Fleet, unseasonably proud of his Advantage, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his own disposal. Whereupon the *Venetians*, now made desperate, assault the secure *Genoese*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they always had the worst, losing their Islands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*; *Capba* and *Pera* with their Islands in the *Greek Seas*, to the Great *Turk*; most of their Holds in *Tuscany*, to the *Florentines*: their power at the last being so broke by the *Venetians*, that in the end they were not able to set out a Navy fit for an Enterprize. But these Misfortunes were occasioned principally by their own Divisions; the City being miserably torn in pieces by continual Factions: first betwixt the *Dorii* and *Spinoli* on the one side, the *Elisci* and *Grimaldi* on the other, Anno 1174. Secondly, of the *Negri* and *Mollani*, against the *Salvatici* and *Embriaci*, An. 1289. Thirdly, between the *Spinoli* and *Dorii* themselves, An. 1336. And fourthly between the Nobility and the Commons, 1339. Which Factions did so weaken them both at home and abroad, that having lost the greatest part of their Estate, they were fain to put themselves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the rest; having now nothing left them but *Liguria* and the Isle of *Corfica*.

1. *LIGURIA*, hath on the West the River *Varus*, rising about the edge of *Provence* in *France*; on the East, the River *Magra*, by which parted from *Tuscany*: on the North the *Apennine Hills*; and on the South the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian Seas*. It is in length an hundred and forty Miles; that is to say, from the Port of *Lima* in the East, to that of *Monaco* in the West, which lieth near to *Provence*; but the breadth not answerable to the length: and is divided generally into two Parts or Provinces, the East and the West, both centring upon *Genoa* the principal City.

The old *Ligurians* were a stout and warlike Nation, light and swift of Body, well practised in laying Ambushes, and not discouraged by an Overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the nature of their Country served them very well, being rough, mountainous and woody, and full of straight and dangerous Passages; and in this Tract few open Towns, but many well-fortified Castles, so that without much labour, they could neither be taken nor besieged. And if at any time they were vanquished in the open field, they had recourse unto these Castles, and other Fastnesses, hemmed round about with Woods and Mountains, in which they plaid their after-game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principal of their Tribes were the *Decenti*, *Oxilii*, *Eubariades*, and *Inganni*; all at last vanquished by the *Romans*, after the second *Punic* War: but not without much labour and pains, by reason of the Woods and Marishes and Mountains, within and behind which they retired and saved themselves, insomuch that it was held a matter of more difficulty to find than to conquer them; *Aliquanto major erat labor invenire quàm vincere*, are the words of my Author. They did divers times after this much molest the *Romans*, till at last *Posthumus* so disarmed them, that he scarce left them Instruments to plough the Earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Masters. In the division of whose large Territories by *Augustus Cæsar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of *Italy*; as it was also one of the seventeen Provinces into which *Italy* was divided by the

Emperour *Constantine*: *Millain* at that time the *Metropolis* or Head-City of it. What kind of Men they were in the breaking of the Western Empire, may be known by their Actions both by Sea and Land, spoken of before: now more addicted to Merchandise than War, but most of all to Usury. A Vice which the Christians learned of the *Jews*, and are now thought to equal, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the saying of a merry fellow, that in Christendom there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough. And when answer was made, that of all these there was rather too great a plenty than any scarcity, he replied, that if there were Scholars enough, so many would not be double or treble Beneficed; if Gentlemen enough, so many Peasants would not be ranked among the Gentry; and if *Jews* enough, so many Christians would not profess Usury. The Women are very fair and comely, wearing for the most part their hair in Tresses, which they cast over their Backs: they wear no upper Garments but of Cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws; but their under Garments of the purest stuff. The Women here are privileged above all in *Italy*, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publicly. Which liberty it is likely they gained at such time as the *French* were Masters of this Estate; who do allow their Wives such excess of Liberty, as no *Italian* would allow of in a common *Curtizan*. And though it cannot be affirmed, that the Women of the Country, or the City it self, do abuse this liberty; yet the *Italians* being generally of a different humour, reckon them to be past all shame; as they esteem the *Genoan* Merchants (who make little reckoning of their promises, if not bound by Writing) to be men without Faith. Of which and other things concerning this Estate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne senza legni*, &c. that is to say, *Mountains without Wood, Seas without Fish, Men without Faith, and Women without Shame*.

The Country, as before said, is very Mountainous in the In-lands, and full of craggy Rocks towards the Sea: so that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidst those Hills are Valleys of as rich a Vein, as most others in *Italy*, abounding in Citrons, Limons, Olives, Oranges, and the like Fruits; with such Variety of Flowers at all times of the year, that the Markets are seldom unfurnished of them in the Month of *December*. It yieldeth also great plenty of most pleasant Wines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermozza*; and another which they call *Le lagrime di Christo*, or *lacrymæ Christi*: This last so pleasing to the Taste, that it is said, a *Dutchman* tasting of it as he travelled in these parts, fetched a great sigh, and brake out into this expression: How happy had it been with us, *si Christus lacrymatus esset in nostris regionibus*, if Christ had shed some of his Tears in the Country of *Germany*! Their greatest want is that of Corn, and therefore they do supply themselves out of other places.

The principal Towns and Cities of it in the Eastern part, are, 1. *Sarezana*, a strong Fortrefs against the *Florentines*, and one of the best pieces of this Republick. It is seated in a fruitful Plain, defended by a great Ditch and a Wall, and has an ancient Castle flank'd with four Walls: not far from it lyes *Sarzanella*, a Fort built by *Castraccio*. 2. *Pont-Remuli* (*Pons Remuli*, as the *Latines* call it) of as great consequence as that, but possessed by the *Spaniards*. 3. *Lerigi*, a Haven in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian Sea*. 4. *Sestri*, a reasonable good place, remarkable for as white Bread, and as pleasant Wine as any in *Italy*. 5. *Fino*, a Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, anciently called *Portus Delfinus*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatness: but they are set so thick, and intermingled with so many goodly Houses, both on the Hills and the Valleys, that for the space of twenty Miles, the whole Country seems to be one continual Building.

In the West part the Towns of most importance are 1. *Monaco*, of old called *Monæcus*, and *Portus Hercules*, beautified with a commodious Haven; belonging not long

since to the *Spaniard*, who bought it for 100000 Crowns of the *Grimaldi*, then its proper Owners; but of late in the year 1641. gotten by the *French*, under colour of a late Contract, who still are possessed of it, and maintain a Garrison in it, under pretence of protecting the Family of *Grimaldi*, in their ancient Possession; and to that purpose have very strongly fortified it. This Town stands two Miles from *Nizza* to the East. 2. *Vintimiglio*, a good Town, and sweetly seated. 3. *Savona*, taken by the *Genoese*, An. 1250. before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the interview betwixt *Ferdinand* the Catholic, and *Lewis XII.* of *France*, Anno 1507. who having been deadly Enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the *French* by the *Spaniard*, met at this Town, and here most strangely relied upon one another: *Lewis* first boarding *Ferdinand's* Gally; and *Ferdinand* for divers days feasting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his possession, as Protector of the Estate of *Genoa*. Which kind of Interviews (I note this only by the way) as they chance but seldom; so when they do, they prove for the most part dangerous unto one of the Parties: great enmities not being easily forgot by persons of a publick Interest: Nay, that notable Statesman *Philip de Comines* utterly disliketh all such meetings of Princes, though in Amity and good Correspondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis XI.* of *France*, and *Henry* of *Castile*; who meeting purposely, Anno 1463. to change some friendly words together, took such dislike at each others Persons and Behaviour, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an Interview betwixt *Edward IV.* of *England*, and the same King *Lewis*: and betwixt *Frederick* the Emperour, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; with divers others. His Reasons I purposely omit, as not pertinent to my present undertaking, and make hast again unto the Town: which is about a Mile and a half in Circuit, and hath many stately Buildings in it. It was called anciently *Sabate* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords: Being taken from the *Genoese* by the *Visconti*, and the *Sforza's*, Dukes of *Millain*, from them by the *French*, and at last recovered again by those of *Genoa*. I further note, that this one Town hath yielded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, viz. *Gregory VII.* *Julio II.* and *Sixtus IV.* which is as much as *Genoa* it self can brag of. This Town of *Savona*, had belonging to it a convenient Haven, which *Andrew Doria* endeavoured to Ruine, by sinking two great Vessels in the Mouth of it: Since which the *French* demanding the Town to make of it a Magazine of Salt, the States not only refused it, but also ordered the Mouth of the Harbour to be stopped with Masons Work, which have intirely and irrecoverably ruin'd it. 4. *Nola*, upon the Seaside, a commodious Haven. 5. *Finali*, a goodly Port-Town also, and very well fortified: honoured a long time with the Title of a Marquisate, one of the seven founded by the Emperour *Otho*, (of which more hereafter;) but taken from the last Marquis by the Count of *Fuentes*, then Governour of *Millain* for the King of *Spain*, and Garrisoned immediately with 200 *Spaniards*, the poor Marquis being put off with an Annual Pension, Anno 1602. *Bandrand* saith in the year 1599. it was sold to the *Spaniards* by *Sforzia Andrea*, the last Marquis. 6. *Milefino*, a small Town adjoining, possessed upon the same right by the *Spaniard* also; who by these pieces hath a strong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7. But the great Ornament of those parts of *Italy*, is the City of *Genoa*, first built, say some, by *Janus* the Son of *Saturn*, as others say, by *Janus Genius Priscus*, an *Italian* or *Tuscan* King. But by whomsoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miserably destroyed by *Mago* the Brother of *Annibal*, A. U. C. 534. repaired by *Lucretius Surrius*, at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whose Cause and Quarrel it was ruined: once again spoiled and wasted by *Rotharis* a great Prince of the *Lombards*, An. 660. or thereabouts: but built more beautiful than before by *Charles* the Great, about the year 806. On his Foun-

dation it now stands, situate on the shore of the *Liguftick* or *Ligurian* Seas, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an Hill, full of stately Palaces, it giveth a most pleasant and magnificent Prospect. It is in compass six Miles, of an Orbicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art; towards the Land by Art and Nature; there being but one way to come to it by Land, and that over steep and craggy Rocks. The Streets are narrow, paved with Flint, and most of them on the sides of the Hill; which is the reason that they use Horse-litters here instead of Coaches, and most of the better sort are carried on mens shoulders in *Sedans* or Chairs; which from hence came hither into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada Nuova*, or the *New-street*, reaching from the West to North-east, is of a very fair breadth; each House whereof is built with such Kingly Magnificence, that it is thought to be the fairest Street in the World. In all the rest the Buildings for the height of two Stories are made of Marble, curiously wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be used any higher. The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, safe from the violence of Tempests, and well fortified: so that the *Spaniards* use to say, that were the Catholic King absolute Lord of *Marseilles* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in *Italy*, he might command the whole World. After the re-edifying of it by *Charles* the Great, the People here continued subject to his Successors, till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of *Italy*, made them free, Anno 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318. when being shrewdly weakned in their Estate, they were fain to give themselves to Pope *John XXII.* after to *Robert* King of *Naples*. (About the year 935. this City was burnt by the *Sarazens*.) But being soon weary of a foreign Government, the People in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Boeca Negra* to be their Duke, Anno 1339. which Government continued till the *French* were called in by the *Guelfian* Faction, in the Reign of *Charles VII.* under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling thence the *French* for their many Insolencies, they put themselves under the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, Anno 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of those Princes, in great Tranquility, who never carried towards them any rigorous Hand; save that once Duke *Lodowick Sforza* exacted of them a great Mass of Money. But as the Tale goeth, his Agent being invited to the House of a *Genoese*, and walking in a Garden with him, was shewed an herb growing there, called *Basil*, which stroaking gently, he smelt thence a most pleasing savour, but as unfavoury a smell when he strained it hard. The *Genoese* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Lodowick* will gently stroak the hand of his puissance over this City, it will prove pliant to him by Obedience; but may chance to prove Rebellious if he do oppress it. But *Lodowick* being taken Prisoner by King *Lewis XII.* they first came under the command of the *French*, and then of the *Spaniard*, according as those Nations had possession of the State of *Millain*; and after many Changes and Alterations, obtained again their freedom of King *Francis I.* Which being not able to preserve by their proper strength, they finally put themselves under the shelter of the *Spaniard*, who is now their Protector; and that not for nought; he being indebted to them, Anno 1600. a Million and a half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18 Millions, cut off by the Popes Authority; that so the King might be indebted to that See; for most of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-Masters of this City. The same course of non-payment the King took with the rest of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Ausburg*, and the rest, insomuch that it was commonly said in *Italy*, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the Exchange in one day, than *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter had ever made good in all his life. And thus you see this great City which commanded the Ocean, the Lady of so many Islands, and a great Moderator of the Affairs of *Italy*, fain to put her self in-

to the protection of a foreign Prince, and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treasure; which he continually raiseth from them in the way of Loan, of which he often proves but a sorry Pay-master. And if the Wars he had with *England* did so drain their Purfes (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*, that made him so indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no question but the Revolt of *Catalogne*, and the lasting Wars made against him by the *French* in so many places; have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithstanding this people do so thrive under his protection, and drew so great commodity from their Trade with *Spain*, that it is thought their private Men were never richer, the publick Treasury never fuller than it is at the present. Additions. In the year 1674. *Levis* the 14th the now King of *France*, sent a powerful Fleet of 90 Sail, and Bomb'd this City five days together without any interruption, after which they made several Attacks by detached parties, which landed in several places, but were so warmly entertain'd by the *Spaniards*, who came in to the Relief of the *Genoise*, so that having spent all their Bombs, and plagued this City from the 17th of *May*, till the 28th, they were then forced to set Sail for *France*, having in this Action burnt the Ducal Palace, and about a third part of the City, most of their stately Churches, Hospitals, Monasteries, and noble Buildings being laid in Ashes, or very much damnified. The design of the *French* King, was to have made himself Master of it; but fail'd by his continuing the Bombing too long before they landed, the Terror turning into Rage and Revenge in the Delay.

C O R S I C A is an Island in the *Liguistick* or *Ligurian* Sea, opposite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is distant about sixty Miles; and lying just north of the Isle of *Sardinia*, from which it is distant seven Miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty Miles, seven in breadth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fifth Climate, the longest day being almost fifteen hours.

The people are stubborn, poor, unlearned; supposed to be more cruel than other Nations, and so affirmed to be by *Cæsar* in his Book of *Commentaries*; the Progeny, as some say, of the 52 Daughters of *Thespius*, who being all got with child in one Night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea; by which they were brought unto this Island, after peopled by them. From one of these Sons named *Cyrnus*, the Island had the name of *Cyrnos*, by which it oftentimes occurreth in such old *Greek* Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Amnius* his Authors. And that of *Eusebium*, a far more credible Writer, is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corfica*, from a Woman so named, dwelling in the Coast of *Liguria*; who following her Bull hither, was the first that discovered it. But these Originals I look on, the first especially, as the worst kind of *Romances*: the Name of *Cyrnos* being more like to be derived from the *Punick Keranoth*, which signifies a Horn or Corner, by reason of the many Promontories with which it shoots into the Sea. *Corfica insula multis promontoriis argulosa est*, as it is in *Isidore*, Lib. 15. cap. 6. And for the Name of *Corfica*, I should derive it rather from the *Corfi* (by which name the Inhabitants thereof are called in most *Latine* Writers) one of the two Nations of most note in the Neighbouring Island of *Sardinia*. *Celeberrimi ea populorum Balari, & Corfi*, as we find in *Pliny*. Which *Corfi*, or some of them, being overborn by some new Invaders (which the Island of *Sardinia* was seldom free of) were fain to shift their seat, and came over hither.

This Country yieldeth excellent Dogs for Game, good Horses, fierce Mastiffs; and a Beast called *Musoli*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Island, and *Sardinia* only; but there came *Mufrones*, or *Mucrones*, (for I conceive they are the same under divers names) said to be horned like Rams, and skinned like Stags; which skin

is of such incredible hardness, that the Beast being cast headlong against a Rock, receives no hurt, but nimbly flies from his Enemies to his Den.

The Soil by reason of the Mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in it) is not very fruitful; producing Corn in less plenty, but the best Wines, and such as the old *Romans* well relished, in good measure. It produceth also Oyl, Figs, Raisins, and Honey: the first three in a mediocrity of goodness, the last somewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholsom. It aboundeth also with Allom, Box-trees, Iron Mines, and the Tree called *Taxus*, whose poysonous Berries, though in taste pleasing, are much fed on by Bees, and therefore thought to be the cause of the bitterness of the Honey. In some few places where the Rivers have their Currents, especially towards *Liguria*, it recompenseth by its fertility, in bearing all manner of Grains, the barrenness of the Mountains. Which Mountains cutting through the midst of it, divide the whole Island into *Cismontanum*, being that towards *Genoa*; and *Transmontanum*, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet so, that the People on each side call themselves the *Cismontanes*, and the other the *Transmontanes*. Both of them speak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spanish*.

For Rivers, there are none of note; the principal of these which the Island yields being called *Gola*, and *Travignano*. And as for Cities, some of the Ancients reckoned 33. which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Castles only; there being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman Colonies*, the one planted by *Marius*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Alleria*; a place of some Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Bishops See. But now the place of most Importance, is the Town of *Bastia*, seated in the North-east part of the Island, opposite almost unto *Alleria*, with a commodious Haven to it, and a strong Garrison to defend it: as being the ordinary Seat of the Governour sent hither from *Genoa*; and of the Bishop of *Alleria*, who makes there his Residence. 2. *Alarze*, a reasonable strong Town, and a Bishop See; and so is also 3. *Nebbio*, called *Chastunum* by *Ptolemy*. Then there is 4. *Porto Urechio*, built not long since in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony sent from *Genoa*. 5. *St. Florence*, a Port-town in the Northern part in the midst betwixt *Nebbio* and *Mariana*; and 6. *St. Bonifacio*, called by *Ptolemy*, *Portus Syracusanus*, just opposite unto it in the South corner of the Isle; both of them places of good safety, and capable of the greatest Vessels that frequent those Seas.

Who were the first Inhabitants is not easily known. That the *Phœnicians* or *Tyrians* had some footing here, is manifest by that of *Callimachus* an old *Greek* Poet, who calleth it *Φοινικία Κόρη*, the *Phœnician*, *Cyrnus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthaginians* and *Tyrrheni* (which questionless he mistook for *Tyrii*) cast the *Phœnices* out of his Island. But whether these *Phœnices* did first inhabit, or only had a Colony in some part thereof, is not demonstrable from those Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a Conquest of it, and held it till the time of the first *Punick War*; when they were driven thence by the Valour of *Cornelius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally subdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman Province*, till some time after; when it was fully conquered by *C. Pappius*, A. U. C. 541. This Island and *Sardinia* at the first being joyned together, governed by one *Prætor* only; but afterwards made two distinct Provinces, immediately subject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*, and consequently Members of the *Roman Patriarchate*. In the falling of the *Roman Empire*, it became a Prey unto the *Vandalis*, who used to send their condemned Persons out of *Africa* hither, to sell Timber for Shipping; the Country even till then being very much overgrown with Woods. Afterwards with the rest of the Islands of the *Mediterranean*, it was

under the power of the *Saracens*, against whom *Ademar* the Count or Governour of *Genoa*, armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquished them in a fight at Sea, but lost his Life in the Action: which notwithstanding the *Genoese* following their good Fortune, seized on the Island, and carried thence thirteen of the Enemies Ships. The *Pisans* after this got possession of it, but being vanquished by the *Genoese* in the fight near *Giglio* (before mentioned) they were fain to leave it to the Conquerors. Since that, it hath always followed the fortune of *Genoa*, save that it remained somewhat longer than that City did in the hands of the *French*, who in the year 1554. seized on it by the Aid of the *Turks*, whom (to the great dishonour of Christianity) they entertained in their Wars against *Charles V.* but in the end, restored it to the Common-wealth, upon the Peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, Anno 1559. And for securing of this Island to the State of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handsom Project, imploying none but natural *Genoese* to serve in the Garrisons of the Islands, the better to keep under this untractable People; and filling all their Garrisons upon the Continent with natural *Corficans*, whereby the Island is unfurnished of its ablest Men, who also serve for Hostages of the Publick Faith.

Having thus taken a brief view of the several Parts and Members of this *Common-wealth*, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. First for the Government, the principal of their Magistrates hath the name of *Duke*; as titular as the Duke of *Venice*, but of less Esteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of Life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called most properly the *Mayor of Genoa*. For this two years he dwells in the publick Palace, and hath 500 *Germans* for the Guard of his Person; in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth some resemblance of a *Negative Voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his House as a private Person, but so, that during Life he hath the Office of a *Procurator* in the Common-wealth. To him there are assistant eight principal Officers, who sit upon the same Form with him, and continue in their Office for two years also; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Signeury*: but he, and they, in matters of most Weight and Moment, subordinate to the *General Council*, consisting of 400 Persons, all of them Gentlemen of the City: who with the Nine before remembred do constitute the Body of the Common-wealth. Under this Form they have continued ever since, by the Power and Goodness of *Andreas Doria* (who might have made himself their Prince) they were discharged of their Subjection to the *French*, Anno 1528. never in danger of Relapsing to their former Servitude, but in the reasonable practice of the *Filicchi*, a remarkable Family of the City; who hoping to possess themselves of the *Principality* under the Protection of the *French*, had so laid their Plot, that *Augustine de Filicchi*, who was designed to be their Duke, had in the Night-time seized on the Navy, and slain *John Doria* who had the command thereof. But leaping from one Galley to another, to make sure of all, stumbled and fell into the Sea, where he and his ambitious Treasons were both drowned together.

As for their Forces, there are within the *Signeury* 10000 Men ready to arm at any time, as they see occasion; 25 Gallies always ready in the Publick Arsenal, and four continually at Sea for the defence of their Trading. Sufficient strength to save them from a petit force, though not to guard them from the power of a strong Invader. But the chief strength which they rely on, is the King of *Spain*; whose protection, though it costs them dear, is worth their Money; and they have prospered so well by it, that notwithstanding all the Losses which they have sustained, it is supposed that the Reve-

nue of the Common-wealth (besides the Treasury of *St. George*, which is very rich, and managed as a distinct Body from the Publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no less than 430000 Crowns per annum.

And for the Treasury of *St. George*, though it contain no part of the Publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers, as a State distinct; yet it is of such ready use, so able at all times to furnish the Republick with vast sums of Money; that the security and preservation of this Common-wealth depends much upon it. The Institution and Administration whereof, together with the Benefit which from hence reboundeth unto this Estate, I cannot better present to the Readers View, than in the words of *Machiavel*, the greatest Politick of his times; who in his History of *Florence* hath expressed it thus: '*Post diuturnum illud bellum quod Genocenses multis abhinc annis cum Venetis gessere, &c.* After that tedious War between the *Genoese* and *Venetians*, was ended in the year 1281. and that the *Genoese* found themselves unable to repay those Moneys, which they had taken up of their private Citizens in pursuit thereof, they thought it best to assign their ordinary Taxes over to them, that so in tract of time the whole debt might be satisfied; and for that end allotted them a common Hall, there to deliberate and determine of their Affairs. These Men, thus made the Masters of the publick Taxes, elect among themselves a Common-Council of an hundred; and over them eight Officers of special power, to order and direct the rest, and to dispose of the *Intrado*: which Corporation so established, they intituled *St. Georges Bank*. It hapned afterward, that the Republick wanting more Moneys, was glad to have recourse unto *St. George*; who growing Wealthy by the orderly managing of his Stock, was best able to relieve them in their Necessities: and as before they assigned their Taxes over to him, so now, *ditionem suam oppignorabant*, they mortgaged all their Domain. So that *St. George* continually waxing richer, and the States poorer, this Corporation became possessed at last, of almost all the Towns and Territories of the Common-wealth; all which they governed by their own Magistrates, chosen by common suffrage from among themselves. It followed hereupon, that the common People bearing less respect unto the Publick, applied themselves unto *St. George*; this being always orderly and prudently governed, that many times inclining to Tyranny: this never changing Officers, or form of Government, that subject to the proud ambitious Lusts of each Usurper, whether Domestick or Foreign. Insomuch that when the two potent Families of the *Fregosi* and *Adorni*, contended for the Sovereignty in this Estate, most of the People looked upon it as a quarrel which concerned them not: *St. George* not meddling more in it, than to take an Oath of the prevailing Faction, to preserve his Liberties. *Rarissimo sane exemplo, &c.* A most excellent and rare thing (saith he) never found out by any of the old Philosophers in their imaginary forms of a Common-wealth, that in the same State, and the same People, one may see at the same time both Tyranny and Liberty, Justice and Oppression, Civility and Misgovernment: This only Corporation preserving in the Common-wealth its ancient Lustre. So that in case *St. George* should in the end become possessed of the remainder of the Patrimony and Estate thereof, as it is possible it may, the State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled with that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpose that great Master of State-craft; a Man of less Impiety, and more regular Life, than some of those who have traduced him for an Atheist.

Here are within this Common-wealth,
Archbishops 1. Bishops 14.

The Estates of LOMBARDY.

LOMBARDY is bounded on the East with *Romandiola*, and the Estate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the West, with that part of the *Alpes* which divides *Italy* from *France*; on the North, (reckoning *Marca Travigiana* within the bounds hercof) with that part of the *Alpes* which lieth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*.

It was called anciently *Gallia Cisalpina*, whereof we shall speak more anon, and took this new Name from the *Lombards* or *Longobardi*, a People of *Germany* (of whom we have already spoken, but shall speak more at large when we come to *Hungary*;) who coming out of *Pannonia* possessed themselves of a great part of *Italy*; but left their Name to this Tract only. A Tract of Ground of which it may be truly said, that, as *Italy* is the Garden of *Europe*, so *Lombardy* is the Garden of *Italy*, or the fairest Flower in all that Garden. A Country of so rich a mixture, that such another piece of Ground for beautiful Cities, goodly Rivers, for Fields and Pastures shaded with such excellent Fruits, for plenty of Fowl, Fish, Corn, and Wine, cannot be found again in our Western World: So that it is no wonder, that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain* have strived so eagerly, and with such an effusion of Christian Blood for the Duchy of *Millain*, a part only (though the richest part) of this goodly Country; and but a spot of Earth compared to their own Dominions.

Anciently it was of more extent than now it is, containing besides the Principalities hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevigiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the Name of *Gallia Cisalpina*: called *Gallia* from the *Galls*, who being drawn over the *Alpes* by the taste of the sweet *Italian* Wines, in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, King of *Rome*, under the Conduct and Command of *Belovesus*, Son of *Ambigatus*, King of the *Celtae*, subdued the Natives, and possessed themselves of all the Country, from the West parts of the *Tuscan* Sea and *Apennine* Hills, to the *Adriatick*; and from the *Alpes* to the River *Rubicon* on the North-east, and the River *Arno* on the South-east. *Cisalpina* it was called, because it lay on that side of the *Alps* which was near to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the other side of the Mountains, which had the Name of *Transalpina*. It was also called *Gallia Togata*, because the People of it being civilized, conformed themselves to the *Roman* Habit: that on the other side of the *Alps* being called *Braccata*, because they kept themselves to their former Mantles (resembling those now worn by the vulgar *Irish*) which by the *Latins* were called *Braccæ*. For though the word *Braccæ*, in some of our common Dictionaries, be rendred Gally-flops or Breeches (and possibly the word *Breeches* may be thence derived) which made me conceive, that the Habit heretofore of those *Galls* was a kind of *Trouzes*, such as those usually worn by the *Irish* Foot-men: yet when I find in approved Authors, that it was *Tunica Sago imposita*, a Garment which they wore over their Coats and Cassocks, I conceive I had good reason to translate it otherwise.

They were generally divided into four great Nations, that is to say, 1. The *Insubres*, inhabiting from the *Alps* to the River *Arno*, and consequently spreading over the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Mantua*, *Piemont*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Florence*. 2. The *Genomani*, who lay next the *Insubres*, possessing the greatest part of *Trevigiana*. 3. The *Boii*, taking up the rest of *Trevigiana*, with the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, and so much of *Romandiola* as lieth on the North-west side of the River *Rubicon*. 4. The *Senones*, who passing over the *Rubicon*, inhabiting the rest of *Romandiola* and the Dukedom of *Urbine*. Of these the *Senones* (or *Sennones* as *Ptolomy*

calls them) were of greatest fame. These were the Men that under the conduct of *Brennus*, having defeated the *Roman* Armies at the Battel of *Allia*, followed their Victory unto *Rome*, which they sacked and burned: nothing made good in all the City but the Capitol only, which also had been taken by them, *ni anferes deo vultu entibus vigilassent*, as *St. Austin* scoffs it, if the *Galls* had not been more watchful than their Gods or Guards. Failing herein they compounded for 100 pound weight of Gold to forsake the City: but before the Money was received, they were assaulted by *Camillus*, driven out of the Town, and vanquished in a set Battel, about eight Miles off; who is therefore called *Rome's second Founder*. This hapned *Anno U. C. 364*. Vanquished again at the River *Aniene*, by *T. Quintilius* the Dictator; and after that *Anno U. C. 404*. by the said *Camillus*, being then 80 Years of Age, in the *Pontine* Fields: they got the *Boii* to assist them, and after joined with the *Samnites*, *Turcans*, and other Nations in a common War. But being for the most part beaten, and the War carried to their own Doors, a little before the coming of *Pyrrhus* into *Italy*, by *M. Curius* the Consul; they were by him driven out of their own Country; and finally so slaughtered by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Uadimon*, *Anno U. C. 476*. that there was scarce any left of all that Nation, to brag that any of their Ancestors had set fire on *Rome*.

The *Senones* being thus destroyed, the *Romans* suffered the rest of the *Gallick* Nations to remain in quiet till the end of the first *Punic* War, when being grown of more strength, and at very good leisure, they took up Arms against the *Boii*, who fearing the like fortune as the *Senones* had found before, called to their Aid both the *Insubrians* and *Transalpines*; making in all an Army of 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horse. *An. U. C. 528*. Discomfited by *Æmilius* the *Roman* Consul, near *Talamon* a City of *Tuscany*, with a slaughter of 40000 of their Men; they were set upon in their own Country shortly after by the Consul *Fiaminius*, vanquished and mulcted with the loss of one half thereof, most of them after this disaster passing into *Germany*, where we are like to hear more of them. And for the *Insubres* and *Cenomani*, being thus left unto themselves (the remainders of the *Transalpines* excepted only) they were invaded the next Year after, (*Anno U. C. 431*.) under the Consuls *M. Claudius Marcellus*, and *Cornelius Scipio*: to whom upon the loss of their Armies, and some of their best Towns, they did yield themselves: the *Romans* so becoming Masters of all this Country. And yet it was accounted as a Province distinct from *Italy*, until the settling of the Empire in *Augustus* *Cæsar*, who dividing *Italy* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Cisalpina*; that is to say, *Gallia*, *Venetia*, and *Italia Transpadana*; as afterwards it made up four of the seven Provinces of the *Diocesi* of *Italy*, according to the distribution of it which was made by *Constantine*. How it came with the rest of *Italy* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the rest of that Kingdom, had been shewn already. Won by the *French*, and from the *French* transferred with the Empire to the Kings of *Germany*; it did so far preserve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperors were sometimes Crowned at *Millain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdom of *Lombardy*: as at *Aken* (a Town of *Cleveland*) with a Silver Crown for the Realm of *Germany*; and with a Golden Crown at *Rome*, for the sacred Empire. But the Emperor being weakened by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Country was torn from it; and parcelled, in conclusion, amongst many Princes, as it still continueth.

The *Lombards* being Masters of it, and having given it their own Name, divided it by the River *Po* into *Longobardia Cispadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Apennine* Mountains: and *Transpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alpes*: the first of which the old *Romans* called *Æmilia*, from *Æmilius Lepidus*, the Founder of the City of *Reggio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconsul

of it. In the division of *Italy* by *Augustus Cæsar* it had the name of *Gallia*. The other was by him honoured with the Name of *Italia Transpadana*, by which Name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*; and by him called, *Florentissimum Italiae latus*, the most flourishing part of all *Italy*. But this division being long since worn out of use, and the whole Country being cantoned into many Estates, as before was said, we will consider it at the present as it stands divided into the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, which with *Travigiana*, described already, make up *Transpadana*; and those of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Montferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Cispadana*.

The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THE Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the East, the Estates of *Mantua* and *Parma*; on the West, *Piemont*, and some part of *Switzerland*, one of the Provinces of the *Alpes*; on the North *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, the *Apenine* which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the habitation of the *Insu-bres*, originally a Tribe of the *Hedui*, inhabiting in those Parts of the *Gallia* beyond the *Alpes*, which now make up the Dukedom of *Burgundy*: but crossing the Mountains with the rest of the *Gallick* Nation, spoken of before, they settled here, built the City of *Millain*, and finally became one of the greatest Tribes of the *Cisalpine Gauls*: from thence this Country hath the name of *Insubrium Ducatus* in some of the nearer Modern Writers; but commonly is called *Ducatus Mediolanensis*, from *Mediolanium*, or *Millain*, the chief City of it.

Principal Rivers of it, 1. *Padus*, 2. *Addua*, 3. *Ollus*, and 4. *Ticinus*; of which somewhat hath been said already; and besides those it hath also in it the Lake called anciently *Lacus Larius*, but now *Lago di Como* (from the City of *Como* which it neighboureth) 60 Miles in length.

The chief Cities and Places of note, are, 1. *Modocum*, not far from *Millain*, of more fame than greatness; the fame thereof arising from the Iron Crown kept in a Monastery here, wherewith some of the Emperors have been Crowned by the Archbishops of *Millain*. A Custom taken up from the Kings of *Ostrogoths*, who are said to have first used the same, in testimony that they had won their Estates by Iron. 2. *Pavie* or *Papia*, seated on the Flood *Ticinus*, united to *Millain* by *John Galeazzi*, the first Duke thereof; made an University by *Charles IV.* Anno 1261. And famous for the Battel in which *Francis I.* of *France* was taken Prisoner by *Charles V.* Anno 1525. It is seated, as before was said, on the Flood *Ticinus*, about four Miles from the *Po*, or *Padus*: the River carrying at this City so great a breadth, that the Bridge over it is no less than 200 walking Paces long, built of Free-stone, and covered over-head with a Roof supported all along with Pillars. From this River the City itself was anciently called *Ticinum*: and took the Name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or, as some say, *quasi Patria Piorum* (the two first Syllables of those words being joined together) by reason of the many Godly Men it did produce. It lieth in length from East to West, a very fair Street dividing it in the very midst: on the West side whereof are two handsome Market-places, and a strong Castle built by *Galeazzi*, the first Duke of *Millain*; whose Tomb, together with that of *Luitprandus*, King of the *Lombards*, are here still remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being so pleased with the situation of the place, that they made it the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom. The Cathedral here is one of the best endowed in *Italy*, if not in *Europe*; the Revenues of it amounting to 300000 Crowns per Annum. 3. *Como*, the birth-place of both the *Plinies*; a rich and handsome Town situate on the South side of the *Lacus Larius*, which from this Town hath now the Name of

Lago di Como: into which Lake and through it runs the *Addua*, and yet the Waters do not mingle: that of the River patling over those of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair Houses and handsome Villages, which do much beautifie the place; and in the midst thereof an Island called *Comacina*, in which there was a strong Fortrefs in former times, wherein the *Longobardian* Kings did preserve their Treasure. 4. *Lodi*, or *Lauda* in the *Latin*, seated in a prosperous Soil, and blessed with a painful and industrious People. This Town was built by *Frederick* the Emperor, in the Year 1204. and is now a pitiful Frontier Town towards the States of *Venice*. There was another Town of the same Name, much more ancient, and a *Roman* Colony, but which was ruin'd by the Citizens of *Millain* in the Year 1158. 5. *Novara*, situate upon an high Hill, in which live many ancient and noble Families, of right belonging to the *Spaniard*, as Dukes of *Millain*; but at the time when *Maginus* wrote, consigned over, upon some Conditions, to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town, though it appertained to the Dukes of *Millain*, is situate within the Dukedom of *Montferrat*; and so is, 6. *Alexandria* also, once a poor small Village, known by the Name of *Roboretum*, from a Grove of Oaks adjoining to it: afterwards being raised to its present Greatness, by the joint Purfes of the Citizens of *Cremona*, *Millain*, and *Placentia*; in honour of the Emperor it was called *Cæsarea*. But in short time these People siding with the Popes, drew on themselves the Anger of the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*; who having in a manner desolated the City of *Millain*, the People thereof, at the destruction of the City retired to this Town; calling it, in honour of Pope *Alexander III.* whose part they then took against the Emperor, by the Name of *Alexandria*, which it still retaineth. It is now the strongest Outwork of the whole Duchy, well fortified against all Assaults and Batteries which may come from *France*. 7. *Marignan*, situate South from *Millain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Switzers*, by King *Francis I.* and now the Title of a Marquis. 8. *Cremona*, situate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and healthful Soil; an ancient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautiful City to this Day; and of such fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the Name of *Cremona the Faithful*. It was built in the first Year of the second *Punick* War, and burnt to the Ground by *Vespasian's* Soldiers, after the defeat of *Vitellius* his Forces: which defeat was given under the Walls of this Town. For when *Antonius*, *Vespasian's* General, first after his Victory entred into it, he went into a Bath to wash away the Sweat and Blood from his Body; where finding the Water somewhat too cold, he said by chance, that it should anon be made hotter. Which words the Soldiers applying to their greedy desires, set fire on the Town, and spent four Days in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Vespasian* it was again re-edified, and is now grown famous for the high Tower, from which the by-word, *Unaturreis in Cremona, unus Petrus in Roma, unus Portus in Ancona*. 9. *Millain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole Diocess of *Italy*; called therefore *Μητρεινολις ἢς Λυδίας*, the Metropolis or Mother City of *Italy*, as *Dionysius* one of the Bishops hereof, is called the Metropolitan of *Italy* by *S. Athanasius*. At this time the fairest and the biggest of all *Lombardy*, having a Castle so strongly fortified, with natural and artificial Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable; but so narrow and full of Buildings, that it could not stand out against a good Army, or resist a shoure of Bombs three Days. A City very populous, containing 200000 Persons; and of great Trade, here being private Shops equalling the publick Store-houses of other places; the People consequently so rich, that the Wife of every Mechanick will flant it in her Silks and Tassies. The Trade now falls mightily by the vast Importations that the *East-India* Companies bring into *Europe*, to the great abatement of their

their Trade and Wealth. This City is said to have been built by the *Gauls*, 359 Years before Christ. It is seven Miles in circuit, and honoured with an University, wherein flourished *Hermolaus Barbarus*, *Cælius Rhodoginus*, and *Cardanus*. Seated it is in as commodious a Soil as any in *Italy*, environed with Water by two great Channels; the one drawn from the River of *Addua*, the other from the *Tesio* or *Atthesio*, which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in so great abundance, that things there are of very cheap rates; and add much also to the industry of the Inhabitants in the vending and dispersing of their Manufactures, which are of great esteem in most parts of the World. The Buildings of the City generally are fair and stately, but three especially commended for their Magnificence; that is to say, The Castle, the Hospital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth use to glory, that *Barnabas* the Apostle was its first Bishop, and *St. Ambrose* one of his Successors; that formerly their Bishop stood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much privileged as that; and that since those times they have given unto the World four Popes, that is to say, *Alexander II.* *Urban III.* *Celestine V.* and of late *Gregory XIV.*

As for the Fortunes of it, it continued in the Power of the *French*, and the King of *Italy* of that Nation, from the destruction of the *Lombards*, till the Kingdom of *Italy* fell from the House of *Charles* the Great, and came at last into the hands of the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued till the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, from whose obedience it revolted Anno 1161. in behalf of Pope *Alexander III.* the Emperor divers times defacing the City, and the People still ministering fresh occasions of dislike and quarrel. *Beatrice* the Wife of *Frederick* coming to see the City, without any ill Intentions to it, was by the irreverent People first Imprisoned, and then most barbarously used; for setting her upon a Mule, they turned her Face towards the Tail, which they made her hold instead of a Bridle; and having thus shewed her up and down the City, they brought her unto one of the Gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible Affront, the Emperor besieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the People to die without Mercy, but such as would undergo this Ransom: Between the Buttocks of a skittish and kicking Mule, there was fastned a bunch of Figs; one or more of which, such as desired to live must snatch out with their Teeth, their Hands bound behind them, as the Mule was pacing through the Streets. A condition which most of them accepted; and thereupon gave occasion to the Custom used among the *Italians*, who when they intend to scoff or disgrace a Man, are wont to put their Thumb betwixt two of their Fingers, saying, *Ecco la Fico*; a disgrace answerable to that of making Horns (in *England*) to him that is suspected to be a Cuckold. The City after this rebelling, and again taken by the Emperor, he levelled it unto the Ground, pulled down the Walls, and caused the whole Ground on which it stood to be plowed up, and sowed with Salt; seeming to threaten by that Emblem, that it should never be re-edified. Which notwithstanding, the City was not only new built again, but the Pope, with the help of these *Millanese* and *Venetians*, had at last the better of the Emperor; whom he enjoined, after a vile submission, to undertake a Journey to the *Holy Land*. Freed from the Emperor, they began to live after the form of a Republick; in which condition they continued about 56 Years: when *Orso*, surnamed *Visconti* (*quasi vis Comes*, because he was Lord of *Millain* and *Angerona*) assumed the Title to himself, and setled it upon that Family after his decease; but so that for the most part they were under the Command of the *German* Emperors, and to them accomptable. *Galeazzo I.* so called (as some write) because the Cocks crowed more than ordinarily at the time of his Birth, added to the Estate hereof the Cities of *Crema*,

and *Cremona*. In the Person of *John Galeazzo* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperor *Wenceslaus*, for 100000 Crowns in ready Money; which *John* increased so mightily in Wealth and Power, that he had 29 Cities under his Command; and died as he was going to *Florence* to be crowned King of *Tuscany*. To him succeeded *John Maria*, and after him his Brother *Philip*: who in his life had married his only Daughter (but illegitimate) to *Francisco Sforza*, the best Commander of his times; and at his Death appointed *Alfonso* of *Aragon*, King of *Naples*, for his Heir and Successor. Before *Alfonso* could take any benefit of this designation, *Sforza* was quietly possessed both of the City and the loves of the People. This *Francis Sforza* (I must needs crave leave to tell this Story) was the Son of *James Attendulo*, a plain Country-man, who going to his Labour with his Ax in his Hand, whilst a great Army was passing by him, compared the Misery and unpleasingness of his present Condition with those fair probabilities which a Martial Life did present unto him; and being in a great dispute within himself what were best to do, he presently fell upon a resolution of putting the Question to the determination of the Heavenly Providence, by casting his Ax unto the top of a Tree next to him, conditioning with himself, that if the Ax came down again, he would contentedly apply himself to his wonted Labour; but if it hung upon the Boughs, he would betake himself unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in passage. He did so, the Ax hung upon the Boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived so well in that Employment, that he became one of the best Captains of his Time, surnamed *de Cotonagla* from the place of his Dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatness of his noble Courage. By *Antonia*, the Daughter of *Francis di Casalis*, the Lord of *Cortona*, he was the Father of this *Francis Sforza* whom now we speak of, who was so fortunate a Commander in the Wars of *Italy*, that to oblige him to his Party, *Philip*, the Duke of *Millain*, bestowed his Daughter upon him, and thereby a fair Title to this great Estate, which he successively obtained against all Pretenders. In his Line it continued till the coming of *Lewis XII.* of *France*, the Son of *Charles*, and Nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentina*, the sole Daughter of *John Galeazzo*, the first Duke; who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforza* (betrayed by the *Switzers*) into his Hands, carried him Prisoner into *France*, and possessed himself of the Estate. Outed not long after by the Confederate Princes of *Italy*, who were jealous of so great a Neighbour; he left the Cause and Quarrel unto *Francis I.* his next Successor in that Kingdom; in pursuance whereof, it is said by *Bellay*, a *French* Writer, that the use of Muskets was first known. But *Francis* being, in conclusion, taken at the Battel of *Pavie*, and carried Prisoner into *Spain*, for his release, was forced to release all claim unto this Estate. A release long before endeavoured by some *French* Politicians, because the Pretensions hereunto had brought such damage unto that Crown: and no less eagerly opposed by Chancellor *Prat* (on the same reason that *Scipio Nasica* did oppose the destruction of *Carthage*, that is to say) because it did not only keep the *French* Nation in continual discipline of War, but served for a purgation of idle and superfluous People. Yet notwithstanding this Release, *Francis* renewed the War again, and laid Siege to *Millain*, then under the Command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a *Spanish* Garrison: during which War, the wretched *Millanese* endured the worst of Miseries: For first the Governour, under colour of providing Pay for his Soldiers, got all the Victuals of the Town into the Castle, to be sold again at his own price: which many of the poorer sort not able to pay, perished of Famine in the Streets. And on the other side, his Soldiers which were quartered in most parts of the City, used when they wanted Money, to chain up their Hells, and then to put them to a Ransom. Such as upon this barbarous usage fled out of the City, had their Goods

confiscate: On which there followed such a disconsolate desolation, that the chief Streets were overgrown with Nettles and Brambles. In this miserable estate it continued, till *Charles* the Emperor having totally driven out the *French*, restored it to *Francis Sforza*, Brother to the last Duke *Maximilian*, and Son of that *Lodowick*, who to advance himself unto this Estate, had most improvidently taught the *French* the way into *Italy*. But this *Francis* dying without Issue, and the House of *Sforza* failing in him, the Emperor entered on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the same to his Successors in the Realm of *Spain*. This said, we will sum up the whole Story of this Estate, in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Millain*.

- 1277 1. *Otho Visconti*, Archbishop of *Millain*.
- 1295 2. *Matthew*, Brothers Son to *Otho*, confirmed in his Command of *Millain* by *Albertus* the Emperor.
- 1322 3. *Galeaze Visconti*, Son of *Matthew*, disseised of his Command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperor.
- 1329 4. *Aëtio Visconti*, Son of *Galeaze*, confirmed in his Father's Power by the same *Lewis* the Emperor.
- 1339 5. *Luchino Visconti*, Brother to *Galeaze*.
- 1349 6. *John Visconti*, the Brother of *Luchino*.
- 1354 7. *Galeaze II.* Son of *Stephen*, the Brother of *John*.
- 1378 8. *John Galeaze*, Son of the first *Galeaze*, created by the Emperor *Wenceslaus*, the first Duke of *Millain*, An. 1395.
- 1402 9. *John Maria*, Son of *John Galeaze*, slain by the People for his horrible Tyrannies.
- 1412 10. *Philip Maria*, the last of the *Visconti* which commanded in *Millain*; a Prince of great Power in swaying the Affairs in *Italy*. He died Anno 1446. the *Millanese* for some Years resuming their former Liberty.
- 1446 11. *Francis Sforze*, in right of his Wife *Blanch*, the base Daughter of *Philip*, seconded by the power of the Sword, admitted Duke by the general consent of the People of *Millain*, one of the Knights of the Noble Order of the Garter.
- 1461 12. *Galeaze Sforze*, a valiant but libidinous Prince, cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
- 1477 13. *John Galeaze Sforze*, privately made away (as it was supposed) by his Uncle *Lodowick*.
- 1494 14. *Lodowick Sforze*, the Son of *Francis*, and Brother of *Galeaze*, who to secure himself of his ill-got Dukedom, drew the *French* into *Italy*.
- 1501 15. *Lewis XII.* of *France*, Son unto *Charles*, and Nephew to *Lewis*, Duke of *Orleans*, by *Valentina*, Daughter to *John*, the first Duke of *Millain*, vanquished *Lodowick*, carried him Prisoner into *France*, and took the Dukedom to himself.
- 1513 16. *Maximilian Sforze*, the Son of *Lodowick*, restored to the Dukedom by the Power of the *Switzers* and *Venetians*; but again outed of it by *Francis I.* Son-in-law and Successor to King *Lewis XII.* in the Kingdom of *France*.
- 1529 17. *Francis Sforze*, Brother of *Maximilian*, restored to the Estate, and the *French* expelled by the Puissance of *Charles V.* who after the Death of this Duke *Francis* (the last of the *Sforzes*) Anno 1535. united it for ever to the Crown of *Spain*.

This Dukedom is not now of such great Extent, and Power, as in former Times; there being but nine Cities remaining of those 29 which were once under the Command of the Dukes hereof, the rest being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*, the Dukes of *Mantua*, and *Parma*; and yet is this accompted the prime Dukedom of *Christendom* (as *Flanders* was accounted the prime

Earldom of it) affording the Annual Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of *Spain*. A good Revenue, might it come clear unto his Coffers. But what with the discharge of his Garrison-Soldiers, the defraying of his Vice-Roy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Ministers, it is conceived that he spends more on it than he getteth.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Serpent *Azure*, Crowned Or; in his Gorge, an Infant *Gules*. Which was the Coat-Armour of a *Sarazen*, vanquished by *Otho* the first of the *Visconti* in the *Holy Land*.

Here are in this Dukedom,
Archbishop 1. Bishops 6.

The Dukedom of *MANTUA*.

THE Dukedom of *MANTUA* is bounded on the West, with *Millain*; on the East, with *Romandiola*; on the North, with *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Country about *Mantua* is reasonably good, and yieldeth all sorts of Fruits, being well manured: plentiful in Corn and Pastures, the very High-ways by the Fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow there intermingled in every place, as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be so civil and well-bred as the rest of *Italy*; childish in their Apparel, without manly gravity; poor in the entertainment of their Friends, and exacting all they can from Strangers.

The places in it of most note are, 1. *Mercaria*, bordering next to *Millain*. 2. *Bozilia*, a small, but pleasant Habitation, belonging to some Princes of the Ducal Family; built with fair Cloysters towards the Street, in which Passengers may walk dry in the greatest Rain. 3. *Petula*, a small Village, but as famous as any, in regard it was the place wherein *Virgil* was born, but generally said to be born in *Mantua* (*Mantua Virgilio gaudet*, as the old Verse is) because the Village is so near the City of *Mantua* (being but two Miles distant) that his Birth might very well be ascribed unto it. 4. *Mantua*, seated on the River *Nincis*, now called *Sarca*, which coming out of *Lago di garda* falleth not far off into the *Po*, from whence there is a passage unto *Venice*. By Nature strong, environed on three sides with a running Water, half a Mile in breadth; and on the fourth side with a Wall. The Dukes, to take their pleasure on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Bucintaur*, five Stories high, and capable of two hundred Persons (whence it had the Name) furnished very richly both for State and Pleasure. *Oonus*, the Son of *Manto* the Prophetess, the Daughter of *Tiresias*, is said to have been the Founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mother's Names; but I more than doubt it, though *Virgil*, a Native of those parts, do report it so; this City being one of those which the *Tuscans* built beyond the *Apennine*, as the soundest Antiquaries do affirm. Made memorable (by whosoever built at first) in the declining times of Christian purity, for a Council holden in it, An. 1061. wherein it was decreed, that the choosing of the Pope should from thenceforth belong unto the Cardinals; a Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperors, was first by *Constantine III.* surnamed *Pogonatus*, given to the Clergy and People of *Rome*, in the time of Pope *Benedict II.* Anno 684. resumed by *Charles* the Great, when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the College of Cardinals. But to return unto the Town: on the East-side of a Bridge of about 500 Paces long, covered over head, and born up with Arches, stands the Duke's Palace for the City; and not far thence the *Domo*, or Cathedral Church of *St. Peter*. The Palace very fair and stately, but far short for the pleasures and delights thereof, of his Palace at *Marmirolo*, five Miles from the City; which though

though it be of a low Roof (after the manner of ancient Buildings) yet it is very richly furnished, and adorned with very beautiful Gardens; able to lodge, and give content to the best Prince in Christendom. Here are also many other Towns, as 5. *Caprana*, and 6. *Luccra*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the the Fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be observed that *Mantua* followed for long time the Fortunes of the Western Empire; till given by *Otho II.* Son to *Theobald* Earl of *Canossè*, for the many good Services he had done him. *Boniface* who succeeded him, had to Wife *Beatrix*, the Sister of *Henry II.* and by her was the Father of *Mathildis*, that famous Warriouress, who carried so great a stroke in the state of *Italy*. Being dispossessed of her Estate by *Henry III.* she joined in Faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and dismembered from the Empire many goodly Territories, which at her Death (having had three Husbands, but no Issue) she gave in Fee for ever to the See of *Rome*, An. 1115. After her Death, *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that Protection failing them, by little and little, it was brought under the Family of the *Bonacelsi*; who lording it over a free People with too great severity, contracted such a general hatred, that *Assavino*, the last of them, was slain in the Market-place by the People, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman, who presently with great applause took to himself the Government of the Estate, Anno 1328. which hath continued in his House to this very day, with a great deal of lustre: Whose successors take here as followeth, under the several Titles of

The Lords, Marquisses, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

Showartus gives us this Account of the first Original of this Family; *Hugo*, Son of *Hugo*, Earl of *Province*, the Grand-child of *Lotharius III.* Great Grand-child of *Lotharius II.* which last was the Son of *Lotharius* the Emperor; marrying a Daughter of the Family of *Gonzaga*, of *Lombardy*, obtained the Investiture of this Principality from *Adelbertus*, a Kinsman, in the Year 1009. and left it to his Son *Gerhard Gonzaga Aloisius*, or *Lewis Gonzaga*, who under *Charles III.* in the Year 1329. was made Captain of *Mantua*, was the Eleventh in the Succession from *Gerhard*.

A. Cbr.

- 1328 1. *Lewis Gonzaga*, the first of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.
- 1366 2. *Guido*, Son of *Lewis*.
- 1369 3. *Lodowick*, or *Lewis II.* Son of *Guido*.
- 1382 4. *Francis Gonzaga*, Son of *Lewis II.* highly extolled by *Pagio* the *Florentine*, for his Wisdom and Learning; who valiantly repulsed the attempts made against his Estate by *John Galeaze*, the first Duke of *Millain*.
- 1407 5. *John Francisco Gonzaga*, created the first Marquiss of *Mantua*, by the Emperor *Sigismond*, in 1433. Sept. 22.
- 1444 6. *Lodowick*, or *Lewis III.* Son of *John Francisco*, who entertained the Emperor *Frederick*, and the King of *Denmark* with great magnificence.
- 1478 7. *Frederick*, Son of *Lewis III.*
- 1484 8. *Francis II.* Son of *Frederick*.
- 1519 9. *Frederick II.* Commander of the Armies of the Pope, and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles V.* with great solemnity; by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua* 1530. and declared Marquiss of *Montferrat*, in right of his Wife.
- 1540 10. *Francis III.* Son of *Frederick II.* Duke of *Mantua* and Marquiss of *Montferrat*.
- 1550 11. *William*, the Brother of *Francis III.* created the first Duke of *Montferrat*.
- 1587 12. *Vincent*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferrat*.

13. *Francis IV.* Son of *Vincent*, had to Wife *Margaret*, the Daughter of *Charles Emmanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, and by her a Daughter named *Mary*; in whose behalf the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the War against her Uncle for *Montferrat*.
- 1613 14. *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *Francis IV.* succeeded him in both Estates, notwithstanding the opposition of the Duke of *Savoy*.
15. *Vincent II.* the Brother of *Ferdinand*, and of *Francis IV.*
- 1628 16. *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers*, in *France*, by his Mother's Line; and of *Mantua* and *Montferrat*, by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third Son of *Frederick I.* Duke of *Mantua*: succeeded on the death of *Vincent II.* but not without great opposition of the *Spanish* Faction, who sacked *Mantua*, distressed *Cremona*, and much impoverished both Estates. But the Business was at last composed by the Power of the *French*, and the Investiture conferred upon him by the hands of the Emperor.
- 1637 17. *Charles III.* Son of *Charles II.* and Grand son of *Charles I.* succeeded his Grand-father, his Father dying in the Year 1631.
- 1665 18. *Ferdinand Charles*, the present Duke of *Mantua*, was born Aug. 31. 1652. he married *Isabella Clara*, Daughter of *Leopold V.* Arch-duke of *Austria*, but has no Children by her.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Montferrat* also) are in circuit nigh unto those of *Florence*; but his Revenues fall much short, which amount to about 50,000 Ducats only; but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burthensome to his Subjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all sides Land-locked from Navigation and Traffick.

The chief Order of Knighthood in these Dukedoms, is, of *The Island of our Lord JESUS CHRIST*, instituted Anno 1608. The Author of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Marriage was solemnized between his Son *Francis* and Lady *Margaret*, Daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It consisteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantuan* Dukes are Sovereigns; and was allowed by Pope *Claude V.* The Collar hath Threads of Gold laid on Fire, and interwoven with these words, *Domine Probasti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, supporting three drops of Blood, and circumscribed with *Nil in a trile recepto*. It took this Name, because in *St. Andrew's* Church in *Mantua*, are said to be kept as a most precious Relique, certain drops of our Saviour's Blood (thou canst not, O Reader but believe it) with a piece of the Sponge.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Cross *Patee Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*, membered of the second, under an Escutcheon in *Fesse*, charged quarterly with *Gules*, a Lion *Or*, and *Or* three Bars *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom,
Archbishop 1. Bishops 4.

The Dukedom of MODENA.

THE Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoining to them; both of them situate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Cispadana*; and consequently partake of the Pleasures and Commodities of it.

The People of this Dukedom are said to be better natured than most of *Italy*; those of *Modena* being quick in their Resolution, eate to be pacified when wronged, and friendly in their entertainment of Strangers; the *Reggians* being affable, of present Wits, and fit for any thing

thing they can be employed in: the Women in both Towns of a middle disposition, neither too courtly, nor too forward, as in other places.

The first principal City is that of *Modena*, anciently better known by the Name of *Mutina*, and famous in those times for the first Battel betwixt *Anthony* and *Augustus Caesar*; this latter being then not above eighteen Years of Age, and yet made head of a new League against *Antonius*, whom the Senate and People looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the War was left to *Hofius* and *Pansa*, then Consuls; the fortune of the Day so equal, that *Anthony* left the Field, and the Consuls their lives, leaving *Augustus* the absolute command of a powerful Army, into whose favour he did so cunningly work himself, that he made them the foundation of his future greatness. It was at that time a *Roman Colony*, but being ruined by the fury of the *Goths* and *Lombards*, was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, situate near the *Apennine* in a very good Soil, and of indifferent fair Buildings. In the distractions of *Italy*, betwixt the Emperor's and the Popes, *Guido* the Pope's Legate, and then Bishop thereof, consigned it over to *Azzo* of the House of *Este*, Lord of *Ferrara*, Anno 1304. the Pope himself consenting to it, upon the payment of a yearly Tribute of 10000 Crowns: since which time it hath been for the most part in the Power of that House: *Borjuss*, the Marquis of *Ferrara*, being by *Frederick III.* made Duke of *Mantua*. 2. *Reggio*, the second Town of note, hath tasted much of the same fortune; at first a *Roman Colony* called *Legium Lepidi*, afterwards ruined by the *Goths* when they came first into *Italy*, repaired and compassed with a Wall by its own Inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of *Canossè*. But being weary of that Yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in those bustling times, they gave themselves unto *Obizzo*, the Father of *Azzo*, Anno 1292. and after that in the Year 1326. to the See of *Rome*. Passing through many other hands, it was at last sold for 60000 Ducats to the *Visconti*, Lords of *Millain*, Anno 1377. and in the end recovered by the House of *Este*, Anno 1409. and gave the Title of a Duke to the aforesaid *Borjuss*, whom *Frederick III.* made Duke of *Modena* and *Reggio*, 1452.

The Successors of this *Borjuss* are before laid down in the Succession of *Ferrara*, who held the whole Estate together till the death of *Alfonso* the last Duke. He dying without lawful Issue, Anno 1595. left his Estate to *Cesar de Este*, his Nephew by a base Son called *Alphonso* also; betwixt whom and Pope *Clement VIII.* a War was threatened for the whole; but at last compromised upon these conditions, That the Church of *Rome* should have *Ferrara*, with all the Lands and Territories appertaining to it, as the Estate anciently holden of that See; and that *Modena* and *Reggio* being *Imperial Fiefs*, should remain to *Cesar*, but to be held in Fee of the Papal Throne. Duke *Cesar* to have leave to carry away all his moveable Goods, to sell such of his Lands as were not of the ancient Domain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordnance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, became a new erect'd State, distinct, and independant of any other: each City being well fortified, and garrisoned, and furnished with Ordnance for defence thereof. But what they yield unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raise out of his Estates, I cannot positively determine; but by the Tribute formerly paid unto the Popes for the City of *Mutina*, and the rich Territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukes of *Ferrara*, I conceive they cannot yield less than 100000 Crowns of yearly Income. The Arms of this D. the same with those of *Ferrara*, before blazon'd.

Schomartius gives this Account of the Pedigree of this House: *Alphonso I.* Duke of *Ferrara*, had a natural Son by *Laura Rustachia*, called *Alphonso*, and made by him Marquis of *Cesio*, and he was the Father of *Cesar de Este*,

who by *Alphonso II.* Duke of *Ferrara*, was appointed Heir of the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, by the consent of *Maximilian II.* and *Rudolphus II.* Emperors of *Germany*: but his Succession was opposed by *Clement VIII.* Pope of *Rome*. His Successor (saith he) was *Francis I.* who was the Father of *Alphonso*.

- 1597 1. *Cesar d' Este*, Grand-child of *Alfonso*, the first Duke of *Ferrara*, and became the first Duke of *Modena* (of this Branch) by an Agreement made with Pope *Clement VIII.* Jan. 11. 1598.
- 1628 2. *Alphonso*, Son of *Cesar d' Este*.
- 1644 3. *Francis I.* Son of *Alphonso*, Father of *Mary* late Queen of *England*.
- 1658 4. *Alfonso II.* Son of *Francis*.
- 1662 5. *Alphonso III.* born in the Year 1660. and succeeded *Alfonso* his Father when he was but two Years old.

The Dukedom of PARMA.

THE Dukedom of *PARMA* hath on the North the Dukedom of *Millain* and *Mantua*, from which it is parted by the *Po*; on the South the *Apennine*, which divideth it from *Liguria*; on the East the Country of *Modena* and *Romandiola*, from which last parted by the River *Scultenna*, now called *Panaro*; on the West *Montferrat*: situate, as *Modena* is, in *Lombardia Cispadana*; and much of the same nature both for Soil and Air, and other the Commodities of those parts of *Italy*.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Parma*, an ancient City, and made a Colony of the *Romans* at the end of the second *Punic* War; as *Mutina* and *Aquileia* at the same time were. It is seated on a small River of the same Name, which runneth almost through the midst of it; beautified with very handsome Buildings, and peopled by a Race of ingenious Men, whether they do betake themselves to Arts or Arms. The Grounds about this City are of excellent Pasturage, and yield great plenty of the Cheese which is called *Permesan*. 2. *Placentia*, *Piacenza*, seated on the *Po*, one of the first Colonies which the *Romans* planted amongst the *Cisalpine Gauls*, and famous for the resistance which it made both to *Annibal*, and *Asdrubal*, who severally in vain besieged it; made afterwards the Metropolis of the Province of *Æmilia*, yet nothing the less beautiful for so great an Age. The Fields adjoining have the same commendation with those of *Parma* for most excellent Cheese; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth; 3. *Mirandula*, a proper Town built in the time of *Constantine*, the Son of *Constantine* the Great; the Patrimony of the Noble Family of the *Pici* (of which was *Picus de Mirandula* that renowned Scholar) but held by them as Feudatories to the Dukes of *Parma*. 4. *Brixello*, called anciently *Brixellum*, not far from the chief City of *Parma*, of no great note at the present time, but memorable in the *Roman* Story for the death of the Emperor *Otho*, who here killed himself. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrown by *Valens* and *Cecina*, Commanders of the Forces of *Vitellius*, then his Competitor for the Empire, he rather chose to fall by his own Sword, than that the *Romans* should be forced for his sake, to renew the War: And this he did with so much honour to himself, that many of his Soldiers slew themselves at his Funeral Pile; not out of consciousness of Crime, or for fear of Punishment, but to testify their affections to him, and to follow such a brave example as was laid before them. So as we may truly say of him, as he is said by *Tacitus* to have said of himself, viz. *Alii diutius imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit*. 5. *Monticella*, in the middle way almost between *Parma* and *Placentia*, and opposite unto *Cremona*, a chief Town of the Duchy of *Millain*, from which parted by the River *Po*.

These Towns (as others in these parts) have been partakers of the diversities of Fortune, as being (after the declining of the Western Empire) sometimes under

der the *Venetians*, most times under the *Millanoy*s; and at last conquered by Pope *Julius II.* in the confusions and distructions of the Dukedom of *Millain*, under the two last Princes of the House of *Sforza*. By *Paul III.* being of the House of the *Farnesis*, the Cities of *Parma* and *Placentia* with their *Appendixes*, were given unto his Son *Petro Aleigi* (or *Petrus Aloysius*, as the *Latins* call him) with the Title of Duke, Anno 1545. The Signeury of *Camierine*, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of *Urbis*, being given in recompence to the Church. This *Petro* being a Man of most vicious Life, had amongst other Villanies committed an unspeakable violence on the Person of *Cosmos Chirius* the Bilhop of *Fanum*; and soon after poysoned him. For which most detestable Fact, he received no other chastisement of his Father than this, *Hæc vitia me non commonstratore didicit*, that he was sure he had not learnt those Vices by his example. But going on in these wicked courses, he was slain at last by Count *John Aguzzola*, and *Placentia*, after a short Siege, yielded to *Ferdinand Gonzaga* (Vice-Roy in *Millain* for the Emperor *Charles V.*) conceived to be privy to the Murder. *Octavian*, the Son of *Petro Luigi*, hearing what had hapned, fortified himself in *Parma* as well as he could; but being hated by the new Pope, and distrustful, not without good cause of the Emperor's Purposes, he had quite lost all, if *Henry II.* of *France* had not taken him into his Protection; for the Emperor *Charles* fully determined (notwithstanding that *Octavian* had married his base Daughter) to have made himself Lord of the Town; and the *French King* was loth to see so great a strength added to the Emperor's possession in *Italy*. When the War had now lasted four Years, *Philip II.* (who afterward succeeded *Charles*) considering how necessary it was for his Affairs in *Italy*, to have this *Octavian* his Friend, restored unto him the City of *Plaisance* or *Placentia*, and so withdrew him from the *French Faction*, Anno 1557. Yet because he would be sure to keep his House in a perpetual dependance on *Spain*, he restored it not absolutely at the present, but held the Citadel thereof with a *Spanish Garrison*, till the Year 1583. when in regard of the good services which *Alexander*, Prince of *Parma*, had done him in his Wars against the *Hollanders*, and others of the revolted Provinces; he caused it to be surrendred into the hands of his Father *Octavian*. By which, and by his settling upon this House the Town and Territory of *Novara*, in the Dukedom of *Millain*, and other personal Favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it; the Kings of *Spain* seem to have given some satisfaction to this House for stepping betwixt them and the Kingdom of *Portugal*; to which they might have made such a probable Title, as would have troubled his Estate, had they stood upon it,

The Dukes of *Parma*.

A. Chr.

- 1545 1. *Petro Luigi Farnesis*, Son to *Paul III.* made by the Pope, his Father, the first Duke of *Parma*.
- 1550 2. *Octavian Farnesis*, Son to *Petro Luigi*, married *Margaret*, base Daughter of *Charles V.* afterwards Governess of the *Netherlands*.
- 1586 3. *Alexander*, Son of *Octavian* and *Margaret* of *Austria*, one of the most renowned Soldiers of his time, Governour of the *Netherlands* for King *Philip II.*
- 1592 4. *Rainutio Farnesis*, Son of *Alexander* and *Mary* of *Portugal*, eldest Daughter of *Edward* Son to King *Emanuel*, one of the Competitors for that Crown.
- 1622 5. *Odoardo* or *Edward Farnesis*, Son of *Rainutio*.
- 1646 6. *Rainutio II.* succeeded *Edward* his Father, in the Year 1660. April 29 He married *Isabel*, the Daughter of *Amideus Victor*, Duke of *Savoy*, who died in 1662. after which he married *Isabella d'Este*, by whom he has one Son named *Odoardo*. And he is now marry-

ing *Hedewick Elizabeth Amalia*, Daughter of *Philip William*, Elector Palatine, and Sister to the Emperess of *Germany*, and the Queens of *Spain* and *Portugal*.

The Dukedom of MONTFERRAT.

THE Dukedom of *MONTFERRAT* is situate betwixt *Lombardy* and *Piemont*, on the Rivers of *Tenarus* and *Po*, on the East and West; extended North and South in a Line or Branch from the *Alpes* to the borders of *Liguria*; of which last it was sometimes counted part, and called *Liguria Cisapennina* for distinction sake.

It took this Name either *à monte ferrato*, from some Mountain of it stored with Iron; or else *à monte feraci*, as some rather think, from the fertility of the Mountains. And to say truth, though the whole Country seem to be nothing else than a continual heap of Mountains; yet are they Mountains of such wonderful fruitfulness, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in *Europe*.

It is bounded on the East by the Dukedom of *Millain* and the States of *Genoua*; on the North with the Territories of *Vercelli*, *Biella*, and *Canavese*; on the West by *Piedmont*, cut off by the *Appennine*; and on the South by *Millain*. The Territory of *Canavese* was a part of it, but in the Year 1631. was granted to the Duke of *Savoy*.

The principal River of it is the *Tenarus* above-mentioned, which springing out of the Hills about *Barceis*, a Town of the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, falleth into the *Po* not far from *Pavie*. The principal Cities of it are 1. *Alba*, called by *Pliny Alba Pompeia*, situate on the Banks of the said River, in a rich and fertile Soil, but a very bad Air: near to which, in a poor Village called *Zobia*, the Emperor *Pertinax* was born, who being of mean and obscure Parents, after the Death of *Commodus*, was called by the Conspirators to the *Roman Empire*. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the Soldiers, he was by the *Pratorian Guards* (hating their Princes for their Vertues, as much as formerly for their Vices) most cruelly murdered; and the Imperial Dignity sold to *Julianus* for 25 *Sestertiums* a Man. This City, in the Year 1631. was yielded to the Duke of *Savoy*, and is now in a declining State. 2. *Casal*, vulgarly called *St. Vas*, from the Church there dedicated to *St. Evastus*, (or *St. Vas*, as they speak it commonly) the strongest Town in all this Country; well built and peopled with many ancient and noble Families, of which the Family of *St. George* is one of the principal; and made a Bishop's See by Pope *Sixtus IV.* Anno 1474. It was in former times the chief Seat of the House of *Montferrat*, and for that cause compassed with a strong Wall and a fair Castle; but of late fortified after the modern manner of Fortifications, and strengthened with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincent Gonzago*, as the surest Key of his Estate; in which new Citadel the Governour of the Province holds his usual residence. It is now under the Duke of *Mantua*, but so Garrison'd by the *French*, that they are indeed the Masters of it. 3. *Aigue*, in Latin *Aquensis*, famous for its Baths or Fountains of hot and Medicinal Waters. 4. *St. Savoyons*, where there is a very strong Fortress, as there is also in 5. *Ponsture*, or *Pont di Stura*, so called of the River *Stura*. 6. *Osoniano*, anciently *Ocimianum*, the old seat of the first Marquisses of this *Montferrat*. 7. *Balzale*. 8. *Liburn*, and many others of less note.

Here are also within the limits of this Dukedom, the Towns of *Ast*, *Cherian*, and *Chivasso*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the description of whose Country

we may speak more of them, together with *Novara* and *Alexandria*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Millain*, which we have spoken of already. And hereunto also I refer the strong (and in those times) impregnable Fortrefs, by the *Latin* Historians called *Fraxinetum*, from some Grove of *Ashes* near unto it: situate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the Sea, by consequence better able to defend it self and admit relief; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saracens* at such time as they had footing in these parts of *Italy*: First took and fortified by them in the Year 891. recovered afterwards by the Prowess and good Fortune of *Otho* the Emperor, deservedly surnamed the Great, about sixty Years after. Of great note in the Stories of those middle times: By *Luitprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence*; by *Blondus*, and *Leander*, near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvii*; and finally, by *Sigonius* in the *Coctian Alpes*: and so most fit unto be referred to this Country, though now so desolated that there is no remainders of the ruins of it.

This Country was made a Marquisate by *Otho* II. 985. one of the seven by him erected and given to the seven Sons of *Waleran* of *Saxony*, who had married his Daughter *Adelbeide*. A Military Family, conspicuously eminent in the Wars of *Greece*, and the *Holy-Land*; where they did many Acts of singular Merit; insomuch as *Baldwin* and *Conrade*, issuing from a second Branch hereof, were made Kings of *Jerusalem*; and *Boniface*, one of the Marquisses, got the Kingdom of *Theffaly*, and many fair Estates in *Greece*. But the Male-issue failing in Marquis *John*, the Estate fell to *Theodorus Palæologus*, of the Imperial Family of *Constantinople*, who had married the Heir-General of the House, continuing in his Name till the Year 1534. when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the Person of Duke *William Gonzaga* raised to the honour of a Dukedom, as it still continueth, the best and richest part of the Duke's Estate, and the fairest Flower in all his Garden. The residue of the Story may be best collected out of the following Catalogue of

The Marquisses of *Montferat*.

A. Ch.

- 185 1. *William*, one of the Sons of *Waleran* and *Adelbeide*, made the first Marquess of *Montferat*.
2. *Boniface*, the Son of *William*.
3. *William* II. who accompanied the Emperor *Conrade* III. and St. *Lewis* of *France* to the *Holy-Land*.
- 1183 4. *Boniface* II. Son of *William* II. his younger Brother, *William* being designed King of *Jerusalem*, and *Reyner*, another of them, made Prince of *Theffaly*, succeeded his Father in *Montferat*. Aiding his Nephew *Baldwin*, the Son of *William*, in recovering the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, he was took Prisoner by *Guy* of *Lusignan*, Competitor with him for that Title.
5. *William* III. Son of *Boniface*, poysoned in the *Holy Land*, where he endeavoured the restoring of his Brother *Conrade*, to that languishing Kingdom.
6. *Boniface* III. Son of *William* III. for his Valour in taking of *Constantinople*, made King of *Theffaly*.
- 1254 7. *Boniface* VI. Son of *Boniface* III. added *Forcelli* and *Isperdium* unto his Estate.
8. *John*, surnamed the *Just*, the last of this House.
9. *Theodorus Palæologus*, Son of the Emperor *Andronicus Palæologus* the Elder, and *Island* his Wife, Daughter of *Boniface* IV.

10. *John Palæologus*, Son of *Theodore*.
11. *Theodorus* II. Son of *John*, a great Builder and Endower of Religious-Houses.
12. *Jacobus Johannes*, Son of *Theodore* II.
13. *John* III. eldest Son of *Jacobus Johannes*.
- 1464 14. *William* IV. Brother of *John* III. Founder of the City and Monastery of *Casal*.
- 1487 15. *Boniface* V. Brother of *John* and *William*, the two last Marquisses, invested by the Emperor *Frederick* IV. *Blanca Maria*, the Daughter of *William*, surrendering her Estate unto him.
16. *William* V. Son of *Boniface* V.
- 1518 17. *Boniface* VI. Son of *William* V.
- 1530 18. *John George*, Brother of *William* V. succeeded his Nephew in the Estate which he held but four Years. After whose Death, An. 1534: this Marquisate was adjudged to *Frederick* the First, Duke of *Mantua*, who had married *Margaret*, Daughter of *William* V. and next Heir to *George*.

Whose Successors may be seen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*.

The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Chief *Argent*.

Here are in this Estate,
Archbishop 0. Bishops 4.

And now according to my method, I should proceed to the Description and Story of the Principality of *Piemont*, the last and most Western part of *Italy*. But being it lieth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alpes*, was anciently a part of the Province called *Alpes Coctiæ*, and is now part of the Estate of the Duke of *Savoy*, we will defer till we come to those *Alpine Provinces*, which are next to follow. And so much shall suffice for *Italy*, in which there are, besides those of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3.
Archbishops 35. Bishops 292.
Universities 17.

V I Z.

In the Land of the Church.

Rome.
Bononia.
Ferrara.
Perusia.
In *Sicil*,
Palermo.
Catana.

In the Signeury of *Venice*.

Venice.
Padua.
Verona.

In the Dukedom of *Tuscany*.

Florence.
Pisa.
Siena.

In *Naples*.

Naples.
Salern.

In *Lombardy*.

Adillain.
Parvic.
Mantua.

And so much for *Italy*.

O F T H E A L P E S.

BEfore we can come out of *Italy* into *France*, we must cross the *Alpes*, a ridge of Hills where-with (as with a strong and defensible Rampart) *Italy* is assured against *France* and *Germany*. They are said to be five Days Journey high, covered continually with Snow, from the whiteness whereof they took this Name; that in the *Sabine* Dialect being called *Alpum*, which in the *Latin* was called *Album*.

They begin about the *Mediterranean* or *Ligustick* Seas, and crossing all along the Borders of *France* and *Germany*, extend as far as to the Gulf of *Cornero*, in the Province of *Istria*; and are in several Parts called by several Names, which we will muster up as they lie in order from the *Mediterranean* to the *Adriatick*. And first those which lie nearest to the *Mediterranean*, are for that cause called *Maritimæ*, from the nearness to *Liguria*, called by some *Ligusticæ*. 2. Then follow those called *Cœtiæ*, from *Cœtius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: And 3. Those named *Graie*, from the passage of *Hercules* and his *Græcian* Followers, of which, both amongst the Poets and Historians, there is very good evidence. 4. After we come to the *Pœninæ*, so named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Latin* Writers called by the Name of *Pœni*; or from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, worshipped by the *Veragri*, the Inhabitants of it. 5. Next come we to the *Leponticæ*, so named from *Lepontii*, who did there inhabit: As 6. the *Rhætica*, which lie next to them, from the *Rhæti*, once a powerful People of that mountainous Tract. 7. Then follow those called *Julicæ*, from the passage of *Julius Cæsar* over them, in his march towards *Gaul*: and so at last we come unto those called *Carnicæ*, extending to the Shores of the *Adriatick*, denominated from the *Carni*, who did here inhabit, and who gave Name also to *Carniola*, an adjoining Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of these mountainous Countries, besides the *Allobroges*, *Veragri*, *Leponti*, *Rhæti*, and *Carni*, spoken of before, were the *Sedani*, *Salii*, *Valenses*, *Vacontii*, and divers others of less note and estimation; all vanquished by the indefatigable industry of the *Romans*. After whose subjugation, and the settlement of the *Roman* Empire, these Mountains, and some part of the Vales adjoining, made five several Provinces, viz. the Province of the *Cœlian Alps*, containing *Wallisland* and *Piemont*. Secondly, of *Rhetia Prima*, comprehending the *Grisons*, and part of the Dukedom of *Millain*, now in possession of the *Switzers*; both which were Members of the Diocess of *Italy*. Thirdly, Of the *Alpes Maritimæ*, now part of *Dauphine* and *Provence*. Fourthly, Of the *Graie* and *Pœninæ Alps*, and the greatest part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, including some part of *Savoy*, and most part of *Switzerland*; both which were Members of the Diocess of *Gaul*. And fifthly, Of *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending, *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts near hand, which were Members of the Diocess of *Illyricum Occidentale*. The People anciently as now, by reason of their drinking Snow-Water dissolving from the tops of the Hills, and sometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataracts* of *Nilus* are said to do, were generally troubled with a swelling in the Throat, which the *Latins* call *Struma*, being the same with that which we call the *Kings-Evil*, because by special privi-

lege curable by the Kings of *France* and *England*. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of these vast Hills, the lowest are the *Carnicæ* and *Maritimæ*, lying nearest to the several Seas before remembered: The *Cœtiæ* and the *Graie* not so high, but that the Passages lie open for the most part of the Year. The rest, by reason of their deep and dreadful *Precipices*, their tedious and steep Ascents, narrow Ways, dangerous craggy Rocks, fierce Whirlwinds, and huge Balls of Snow, tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the Mountains, are hardly passable by Horse, not at all by Waggon: And yet amongst these dreadful Hills, there are observed to be some Valleys of great fertility, not giving ground for fruitfulness to the best in *Europe*; and for the sweetness of the temperature going much beyond them. With such an equal hand doth the heavenly Providence dispence the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation, that Plenty bordereth upon Want, and Pain on Pleasure.

And yet for all the difficulty and danger of these *Alpine* Passages, Covetousness, or Curiosity, or Desire of Conquest, have found a way to make them passable in many places; and that not only for private and particular Passengers, but for vast Multitudes and numerous Armies, such as those led by *Annibal* and *Julius Cæsar*. But especially the barbarous People found out five ways to break into *Italy*, which hath been since much travelled by divers Nations, of which three be out of *France*, and two out of *Germany*. The first from *France* is through *Provence*, and so close to the *Ligustick Seas*; easiest for private Passengers, but too strait and narrow for great Armies; there being many Passages in the Country of *Nizze*, so narrow that ten Men may make head against ten thousand; as in that called the *Pœni* of the *Virgin* for one. The second is over the Hills called *Genève*, into the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, and to the other parts of *Lombardy*, which was the way that *Charles VIII.* marched towards *Naples*, and by the *Italians* is commonly called *Strada Romana*, because the ordinary Passage betwixt *France* and *Rome*. The third way is over the greater *Cenis*, (which some call the lesser *St. Bernard*) so to *Aost* or *Turin*; which (if we may believe Antiquity) was first opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*; who found the Passages so closed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with Fire and Vinegar, whence that so memorable saying, *Viam Annibal, aut inveniet, aut faciet*. From the passage of those Worthies, this Tract, and that adjoining were called *Alpes Graie*, and *Pœninæ*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is most certain that he took in his March; then these *Pœninæ* must take Name from the Passage of *Asdrubal*, or of some part of *Annibal's* Army, which probably was too great to go all one way; or else from the Mountain God *Pœninus*, as before was said.

The first way out of *Germany* into *Italy*, is through the Country of *Grisons*, by the *Valtolin*, which the *Spaniard* seized into his hand. So that by the keeping of the *Veltlyn*, or *Valtolin*, and manning of the Fort *Fuentes*, which he also erected; he was in a manner the Lord of this Passage; not only to the discontent of the Na-

Natives, but to the distaste of his Neighbours the *Savoyards* and *Venetians*. (But it was afterwards restored to the *Grisons*, under whom it now is.) The other way out of *Germany* into *Italy*, is through the Country of *Tirol* by the Towns of *Innsbruck*, and *Trent*. This Passage is commanded by the Castle and Fort of *Eresberg*, seated on the Confines of this Country towards *Suevia*, and from *Innsbruck*, is two days journey distant. Which Fort, in the War which the *Protestant* Princes made against *Charles V.* was surprized by Captain *Scherteline*, so to hinder the coming of the Pope's Forces into *Germany*: for which the Emperour so hated him, that when all the rest of that Faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proscript*, his Head being valued at 4000 Crowns. The taking also of this Fort, and the Castle adjoining, by *D. Maurice* of *Saxony*, made the said *Charles* then being in *Innsbruck*, to fly out of *Germany*; and shortly after to resign his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*.

Out of these Mountains rise the Springs of many of the most renowned Rivers in these west Parts of the World; as, 1. The *Rhine*, which springeth from two several Fountains, the one which they call the *Nearer Rhine*, out of the *Lepontia*; and the other which they term the *Vorder*, or further *Rhine*, out of the *Rhetica*, which meet together about a Dutch Mile from *Chur* the chief Town of the *Grisons*, and so go on by *Constance* to *Germany*. 2. *Rhofne*, which riseth in that part of the *Lepontia*, which is called *Die Furche*, about two Dutch Miles from the head of the *Nearer* or *Hinder Rhine*, and so through *Wallisland* in *France*. 3. *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath his head in a branch of the *Cottian* or *Cœlian Alps*, heretofore called *Mons Vesulus*, and so through *Piemont* into *Italy*. Out of them also spring the Rivers of *Russe*, *Durance*, and *Athesis*, the first a *Dutch*, the second a *French*, and the third an *Italian* River also; not to say any thing of others of inferiour note. The great Lakes which are found in this Mountainous Tract, we shall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countries and Estates here situate, which bordering upon *Italy*, *France*, and *Germany*, and partaking somewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themselves to be free and absolute Estates supreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of these *Alpine* Countries, which are under the command of the *German* Princes, as some parts of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, together with *Tirol*, *Carniola*, and the rest which belongs to *Austria*, shall be considered in the History of those States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the rest, which as they lie entire together without intermixture, so they are absolute in themselves, and owe no Suit nor Service unto any other, we will consider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *A L P E S* then, or the *Alpine* Provinces, call them which you will, are bounded on the East with *Tirol* in *Germany*, and the Dukedom of *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italy*, on the West; with *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and *La Bress*, parts of the Continent of *France*, on the North, with the County of *Burgundy* in *France*, and *Suevia* or *Schwaben* in *High Germany*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea; called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Transjurana*, because it contained that part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Jour*. A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Basil*, and not far from the *Rhine*, passeth South-ward by the Lakes of *Biele-Zee*, *Norrenburger-Zee*, and that called *Lemane*, till it come almost unto the *Rhofne*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, from the Country of *Burgundy*.

It lieth under the sixth Climate, and some part of the seventh, so that the longest day in Summer is fifteen hours and three quarters. Of different nature in regard both of Soil and People; which will best shew it self in the survey of the several Provinces, into which divided; that is

to say, 1. the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 2. the Signeury of *Geneva*; 3. the Resorts of *Wallisland*; 4. the Cantons of the *Switzers*; and 5. the Leagues of the *Grisons*. Which several States, though they be reckoned to belong to the *German Empire*, and that the Bishops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Basil*, are generally accounted for Princes of it: yet they neither come unto the *Diets*, nor are subject to the publick Taxes, nor comprehended within any of those ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein spoken partakes somewhat of all three, as before was said: The *French* being wholly spoke in *Savoy*, the lower *Wallisland*, and generally by the *Switzers*, bordering on the Lake *Leman*; the *Dutch* being common to the greatest part of the *Switzers*, the *Grisons* about *Chur*, and the upper *Wallisland*: and finally the *Italian* used by the generality of the *Grisons*, the *Præfectures* appertaining unto them and the *Switzers* both in *Piemont*, and those parts of *Savoy* which lie next unto it.

The principal Soldiers of these Mountainous Provinces, 1. *Rodolph*, Earl of *Habsburg*, the Founder of the present *Austrian* Family. 2. *Thomas*, and 3. *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, this last surnamed *Charlemain II.* 4. *Emanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes hereof, Commander of the Armies of the King of *Spain*. 5. *John Tzerclas*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, General of the Imperial Armies in the War of *Germany*. For Scholars of more special note, for which we are beholden to these Countries, we have 1. *Philip Theophrastus Bombastus à Boenham*, commonly called *Paracelsus*, the Author, or *Instaurator* of *Chymical* *Phylick*; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he saith himself: A Man of most prodigious Parts, and of no mean Vices. 2. *Zuinglius*, one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3. *Musculus*, and 4. *Oecolampadius*, two Divines, his Seconds. 5. *Henry Bullinger*, one of the same profession also. 6. *Sebastian Castalio*, of as much learning as the best of them, though of different Judgment. 7. *Dan. Tossanus* the *Hebrician*. To which we may add 8. *Calvin* also, who though he had his Birth in *France*, had his Being here; and never grew to any Eminency in Fame or Learning, till he was settled in *Geneva*.

For matter of Religion, it is of a very mixt condition also in all these Countries: That of the *Romish* only having publick countenance in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and *Piemont*; but so that the Reformed is tolerated in some parts thereof; especially in the next parts of *Daulphine*, to which the Neighbourhood of *Geneva* gives a great increase. In *Switzerland* there are four Cantons which are wholly for the Reformation, viz. *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Basil*, and *Schaffhausen*: Seven that stands wholly for the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, i. e. *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Friburgh*, and *Solothurn*: in *Apenzel*, and *Glarus*, they allow of both. The *Grisons* are confusedly divided betwixt both Religions; but the *Italian* *Præfectures* admit no other but the *Romish*. The cause of which division came upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*, a Canon of the Church of *Zurich*: who being animated with *Luther's* good Success in *Germany*, began about the year 1519. to preach against the *Mass* and *Images*, and other the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*. In which his Party so encreased, than on a publick Disputation, which was held at *Zurich*, the *Mass* was abrogated in that Canton by the Authority of the Senate, Anno 1526. and *Images* destroyed at *Bern*, 1528. After which prosperous beginnings, the Reformation began to spread it self amongst the *Confederates*; and had prevailed farther both in *France* and *Germany*, but for a difference which arose betwixt him and *Luther* about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which *Luther* did not only maintain a real Presence, but a *Consubstantiation* also in the sacred Elements; which *Zuinglius* maintained to be only a bare sign and representation of *Christs* blessed Body. For reconciling this difference, wherein the Enemies of both did extremely triumph; a Conference was held between them at *Marsburg*, a Town of *Hassia*, by the procurement of that *Landgrave*, but without success:

cess: *Luther* professing that he durst not agree in that point with *Zuinglius*, *Ne principes suos interpretatione tantopere Pontificiis exosa, magis inuisos redderet*; for fear of drawing too great hatred on the Princes of his own profession. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiquitarians*, and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally cast upon one another; to the great hinderance of the Cause which they had in hand: yet so that the *Lutheran* Opinions got ground in *Germany*, the *Zuinglians* amongst these Mountains, and in *France* it self; and finally prevailed by the means of *Calvin* in many parts in *Germany* also. But hereof more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the Story of those Countries, before they were divided into so many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitants hereof (mentioned before) were conquered severally by the *Romans*; as shall be shewn in the description of the several Provinces: Won from the *Romans* by the *Burgundians*, in the time of *Honorius* the Western Emperor, they became a Member of their Kingdom: except the Country of the *Grisons*, and some parts of *Switzerland*, which fell under the *Almans*: united afterwards in the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, of the *French* erection, when subdued by that Nation. But *Charles* the Bald, the last of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, having united it to the Kingdom of *France*, divided that Kingdom into three Estates; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this side of the *Soasne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soasne*, and the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. This last, containing the greatest part of all these *Alpine* Provinces (except *Piemont* only) was by the said *Charles* given to *Conrade* a *Saxon* Prince; the Son of *Witiking* III. and younger Brother of *Robert*, the first Earl of *Anjou*; by the Name of Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane* or *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. *Rodolph* his Son and Successor, by *Eudes* the King of *France*, his Cousin German, was honoured with the Title of King, to make him equal at the least, with *Boson* Earl of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soasne*, whom *Charles* the *Gross*, about the same time had made King of *Arles*. But *Rodolph* finding it offensive to the *German* Emperor, abandoned it on the death of *Eudes*, and took to himself the Title of Duke. The residue of the Story we shall have in the following Catalogue of

The Earls, Dukes and Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*.

1. *Conrade* the first Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane*.
- 890 2. *Rodolph*, Earl, King, and Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*.
- 912 3. *Rodolph* II. elected King of *Italy* against *Berengarius*; which Title he exchanged with *Hugh de Arles*, who was chosen by another Faction for the possession of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*; on the assuming of which Crown, he resigned this Dukedom to his Brother *Boson*.
4. *Boson* the Brother of *Rodolph* II. succeeded his Brother in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Jour*; as afterwards he succeeded *Rodolph*, his Brothers Son, in the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.
- 965 5. *Conrade* II. Son of *Boson*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, and Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*.
- 990 6. *Rodolph* III. Son of *Conrade*, who dying without Issue, left his Estates to *Henry* surnamed the *Black*, the Son of his Sister *Gisela*, by *Conrade* II. Emperor and King of *Germany*: united so unto the Empire, till by the bounty and improvidence of some following Emperors, it was cantoned into many parts, of which more anon.

It is now time to lay aside this Discourse as to the general condition and affairs of these *Alpine* Provinces; and to look over the particulars; beginning first with

the Estate of the Duke of *Savoy*, situate wholly in the Mountains, and lying next to *Italy*, where before we left.

The Dukedom of SAVOY.

THE Dukedom of *SAVOY* is bounded on the East with *Millain* and *Monferrat* in *Italy*; on the West, with *Dauphine* in *France*; on the North, with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*; and on the South, with *Provence*, and the *Mediterranean*. The Country of so different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one Character: and therefore we must look upon it in the several parts into which divided; that is to say, 1. the Principality of *Piemont*, and 2. *Savoy*, especially so called.

1. *P I E M O N T*, in *Latin* called *Regio Pedemontana*, because situate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both Languages imports) is bounded on the East, with *Millain*, and *Monferrat*; on the West, with *Savoy*, on the North, with the *Swizers*, and on the South, it runneth in a narrow Valley to the *Mediterranean*, having *Monferrat* on the one side, *Provence* and a part of the *Alpes* upon the other. The Country wonderfully fertile compared with *Switzerland* and *Savoy*, which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferiour to the rest of *Italy*. It containeth, besides *Baronies*, and *Lordships*, 15 *Marquises*, 52 *Earldoms*, 16 *Castles* or *Walled* places: and is so populous withal, that once a *Piemontese* being demanded the extent of his Country, made answer, that it was a *City* of three hundred *Miles* in compass.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Turin*, called of old *Augusta Taurinorum*, because the head City of the *Taurini*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract: from which *Taurini*, it deriveth the name of *Turin*, and not as some conceive from the River *Doria*, on whose bank it standeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of *Savoy* (who is the Lord of this Country) the See of an Archbishop, and an University, in which the renowned Scholar *Erasmus* took his degrees in Divinity. It is situate on the River *Po*, in a place very important for the guard of *Italy*; for which cause the *Romans* sent a Colony hither, and the *Lombards* made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoyning to it is a Park of the Dukes of *Savoy*, watered with the *Doria*, *Sture*, and *Po*, six Miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleasant Fountains; which make it one of the sweetest situations in *Europe*. 2. *Mondoni*, seated on the swelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it; in one of which the Dukes of *Savoy* built a Church and Chapel to the blessed Virgin; intended for the burial place of the Ducal Family. It is the best peopled Town, for the bigness of it, of any in *Italy*. 3. *Augusta Prætorina*, now called *Aost*, situate in the furthest corner of *Italy* to the North and West. 4. *Vercelli*, a strong Town bordering upon *Millain*, to which it formerly belonged; and was given first in Dower with *Blanch* the Daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, to *Amade* III. Duke of *Savoy*; anciently the chief Town of the *Libyri*, who together with the *Salassi* and *Taurini*, were the old Inhabitants of this Country. 5. *Inuria*, called by *Ptolomy* *Eporedia*, situate at the very jaws of the *Alpes*, an Episcopal City. 6. *Nicea*, or *Nizze*, an Haven on the *Mediterranean*, at the influx of the River *Varus*, which divides it from *Provence*; beautified with a Cathedral Church, the Bishops Palace, a Monastery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place so naturally strong, that when as yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it resisted the whole Forces of *Barbarossa* the Turkish Admiral, *An*. 1543. lying before it with a Navy of two hundred Sail, and battering it continually with incredible fury. First fortified by Duke *Charles*, upon occasion of some words of the Duke of *Bourbon*, who passing this way with his Army, Behold, faith

faith he, a situation of which they know not the Importance: the Citadel being after added by *Emanuel Philibert*, and Garrisoned for the most part with 400 Soldiers. 7. *Suse*, seated in the ordinary Thorow-fare betwixt *France* and *Italy*, called of old *Segovio*; and honoured in those times with a stately Sepulchre of King *Coelius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: one of the seven Marquifates in the middle times erected by the Emperor *Otho*. 8. *Pignarolle*, fortified with a Castle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoining Valleys, sold by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to *Lewis XIII.* of *France*, together with the Fort and Valley of *Peroufa*, (and in them both to the number of ten or twelve Towns and Villages) for the sum of 494000 Crowns, to be for ever in the Propriety and Sovereignty of the Kings of *France*; and thereby giving to the *French* a commodious pass from *Daulphine* into *Italy* upon all occasions, and no small influence and command on his own Estates. 9. *Quiers*, adorned with many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10. *Ville Franche*, a place of great strength, more towards the Sea. 11. *Savillan*, seated in so pleasant a Country, that Duke *Emanuel Philibert* had once a purpose to settle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Estate. 12. *Busque*, a Marquifate, another of the seven erected for the Sons of *Valeran*. 13. Hereunto we may add the City of *Aost* (though properly within the limits of *Montferrat*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*; and now to be compared, for the greatness and beauty of her Palaces, to the most stately Cities of *Lombardy*; situate betwixt the two Rivers of *Po* and *Tenarus*, very rich and populous.

Here is also in this Country the Marquifate of *Saluzzes*, (of the same erection as the former, but a greater Estate) the cause of so many differences betwixt *France* and *Savoy*. The principal Town whereof is called also *Saluzzes* (from the *Salassi* questionless who dwelt hereabouts) seated about the Spring of the River *Po*; reasonably big, and fortified with a very large Castle, fitted with Rooms for all Uses, and for every Season. 2. *Carmanvogla*, which gave name to that famous Captain, who carried so great a sway in the Wars of *Italy*. A Town so fortified and stored with all sorts of Ammunition, that it is thought impregnable. 3. *Ravelle*, a well fortified place. 4. *Doglian*, the Thorow-fare for the greatest part of the Trade which is driven betwixt *Piemont*, and the River of *Genoa*. The Arms hereof *Argent*, a Chief *Gules*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Salassi*, *Libyci*, and *Taurini*, as before is said, all vanquished by the *Romans*, and their Country made a Province of that Empire, by the Name of the Province of *Alpes Cottia*, in the time of *Nero*; of which *Genoa* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. The present are descended for the most part of the *Heruli*, who under the conduct of *Odoacer* conquered *Italy*; whereof he was proclaimed King by the *Romans* themselves, but *Odoacer* being vanquished near *Verona*, by *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, the *Heruli* had this Country allotted to them by the Conquerour for their Habitation. They had not held it long when subdued by the *Lombards*, of whose Kingdom it remained a part, till given by *Aripert* the seventeenth King of the *Lombards*, to the Church of *Rome*; affirmed by some to be the first Temporal Estate that ever the Popes of *Rome* had possession of. But lying far off, and that Donation not confirmed by the Kings succeeding, the Popes got little by the gift: so that in the subverting of the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, it was at the devotion of the Kings of *Italy*; of the House of *Charles* the Great: and afterwards of his Successors in the Empire, by whom distracted into several Estates and Principalities. *Thomas* and *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, made themselves Masters of the greatest part of it, by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210. the latter in the year 1256. Since that time the first Son of *Savoy* is stiled Prince of *Piemont*. The Marquifate of *Saluzzes* containing almost all the rest,

was added by the Marriage of a Daughter of this Marquifate, with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, An. 1481. Of which Marriage though there was no Issue, yet the *Savoyards* always held it as their own, till the *French* upon as good a Title possessed themselves of it: Recovered by the *Savoyard*, Anno 1588. the Civil Wars then hot in *France*. But finding that he was not able to hold it against *Henry IV.* (who looked upon it as a door to let his Forces into *Italy*) he compounded with him, Anno 1600. the Country of *Bresse* being given in exchange for this Marquifate: of which, together with the residue of *Piemont*, and some pieces of importance in the Dukedom of *Montferrat*, that noble Family of *Savoy* doth now stand possessed.

The Arms of this Principality are *Gules*, a Cross *Argent*, charged with a Label of three points *Azure*.

2. *SAVOY*, strictly and especially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Waltisland*, and part of *Piemont*; on the West, with *Daulphine*, and *La Bresse*; on the South, with some parts of *Daulphine* only; and on the North with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Country is for the most part Hilly and Mountainous, overspread with the branches of the *Alpes*, healthy enough, as commonly all Hill Countries are, but not very fruitful, except some Valleys which lie nearest to the Western Sun, and the plain tract about the *Lemanian* Lake, lying towards *Geneva*. By reason of the difficult and narrow ways, and those full of Thieves, it was once called *Malvoy*: but the passages being opened by the Cost and industry of the People, and purged of Thieves by good Laws and exemplary Justice, it gained the name of *Savoy* or *Salvoy*, quasi *salva via*: as *Maleventum*, a Town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like considerations got the name of *Benevent*. By the *Latines* of these later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the ancient Writers; who knew it by no other name than that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The common People are naturally very dull and simple, so gross of understanding for all their continual converse with other Nations, who take this Country in their way to *Italy*, that they believe the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greatest Prince in the World: and so unwarlike, that a few Men of another Nation, well trained and disciplined, will make a great number of them flee. But on the other side, the Gentry are of a very pleasing conversation, civil, ingenious, and effecting all good Exercise: so that there may be daily seen in *Chambery*, as much good Company, and as well appointed and behaved, as in many of the best Towns of *France* or *Italy*. The number of both sorts (taking in *Piemont* who are not interested in the first place of this Character) are thought to be 800000.

The chief Cities are, 1. *Chambery*, situate on the banks of the River *L'Arch*, in a very pleasant Valley, compassed round with Mountains; the principal of the Dukedom on that side of the *Alpes*: honoured with the Dukes Court when he resideth in this Country, the ordinary seat of Justice, and many neat Houses which belong to the Gentry, fortified of late with a strong Castle and sufficient Outworks; but not recovered of the damage it received Anno 1600. when it was forced by King *Henry IV.* of *France*, in his Wars with *Savoy*. 2. *Tarentaise*, an Archbishops See, situate in the midst of the Mountains, heretofore the *Metropolis* of the Province of the *Alpes Graia*, and *Peminae*, and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum*, from the *Centrones* who inhabited about this Tract. 3. *Lunebourg* in the Country of the old *Medulli*; betwixt which and *Suse*, a Town of *Piemont*, lieth the most ordinary rode betwixt *France* and *Italy*. 4. *Aquo belle*, situate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5. *Rapallo*, a sweet and fruitful situation, on the South-side of the Lake *Lemanus*, the chief Town of the Signeury of *Fossigny*: where *Amadeo I.* Duke of *Savoy*, having given over his Estate, lived a Monastick

naſtick life, and was thence choſen Pope by the Fathers at *Baſil*, Anno 1440. 6. *Nun* or *Nevidum* (by ſome of the old *Latines* called *Noviodunum*) an ancient City, laid deſolate in or before the time of *Julius Cæſar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Veſpaſian*; the Seat of late times of the Biſhops of *Geneva*, ſince their expulſion out of that City. 7. *Bele*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhofne*. 8. *Albon*, founded about the year 456. 9. *Conflans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*, but otherwiſe of ſmall importance. 10. *Annuntiada*, not much obſervable, but for being the feat or place of Solemnities, for an Order of Knights called by that name. 11. *Maurienne*, or *St. John de Maurienne*, an Archbiſhops See, ſituate in the Valley of the *Alpes* ſo called; the chief City of the old *Medulli*, who dwelt hereabouts; from whence the Princes of this Houſe were firſt entituled Earls of *Maurienne* only. 12. *Charboniers*, a well fortified place. Here is alſo the ſtrong Town and Fort of *Montmelian*, which held out four Months againſt *Henry IV.* and many thouſand ſhot of French Canon, Anno 1600, and the impregnable Fortreſs of *St. Catbarines*, which yet ſubmitted to that King, the Government whereof being denied to the Duke *Byron*, plunged him into diſcontent and Treason, to the loſs of his Head.

The many Tribes in and about this Mountainous Country, of which we have mentioned ſome before, paſs generally in ſome ancient Writers, by the name of *Allobroges*; becauſe the moſt powerful of them all. Of whom the firſt mention which we find in ſtory, is the Atonement made by *Hannibal* in his paſſage this way, between *Bruncus* and his Brother, about the Succeſſion of the Kingdom. Afterwards ſiding with the *Salii* a *Gallick* Nation, in a War againſt *Marſeilles*, then a Confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their banks: by whom they were in fine ſubdued, with the loſs of no leſs than 120000 *Gauls* under the ſeveral conducts of *Cn. Domitius Aenobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*: by which laſt *Bitutius* or *Bitultus* King of the *Auverni*, one of the Confederates, was led in Triumph unto *Rome*. The Country and People at that time were much alike, *Cæſum atrox perſuacaci ingenio*, a ſharp Air, and a ſtubborn People, as it is in *Florus*: not without commendation in the following Ages, for diſcovering *Catalines* Conſpiracy, by which the whole *Roman* State was in danger of ruine. After which we find *Coſtius*, one of the Kings of theſe *Allobroges*, to have been in ſpecial favour with *Auguſtus Cæſar*: affirmed to be the Founder of twelve Cities in this mountainous Tract; whence it had the name of *Alpes Coſtiae*; and by that name reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor *Nero*. In the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and paſſed, with other rights of that falling Kingdom, to the Emperours of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the laſt King. To whom it did continue ſubject till the year 999: in which *Berald* of *Saxony*, Son of *Hugh* of *Saxony* (which *Hugh* was Son of *Otho*, and Brother to *Otho III.*) for killing *Mary* the laſcivious Wife of his Uncle, fled from *Germany*; and ſetled himſelf here, near *France*. His Son *Humbert*, (ſurnamed *Blanchmanis*, that is *White-band*) was by the ſpecial favour of the Emperor *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*; which is a Town of this Country, Anno 1027. And by his Marriage with *Adela*, the Daughter and Heir of the Marquis of *Suſa*, added that noble Marquiſate (one of the ſeven erected by *Otho II.* and given amongſt the Sons of *Waleran*) unto his Eſtate. *Humbert II.* gained by Conqueſt the Town and Territory of *Tarentaiſe*; as *Ame*, or *Amadee III.* did the Countries of *Vaulx*, and *Chablais*, Anno 1240. or thereabouts. *Ame*, or *Amadee IV.* by the Marriage of *Sibylle*, Daughter and ſole Heir of *Ulrick* Earl of *Breſſe*, added that Earldom to his Houſe: as *Ame* or *Amadee IX.* did the Town and Territory of *Vercelli*, upon the Contract betwixt *Philibert* his Son and Succeſſor, with *Blanch* the baſe Daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, who afterwards was married unto *Fran-*

cis Sforza. *Ame*, or *Amadee II.* Earl of *Maurienne* was by the Emperor *Henry V.* inveſted with the Title of *Savoy*; and *Amadee VIII.* created the firſt Duke, by the Emperor *Sigismund*, Anno 1397. But the main improvement of the Power and Patrimony of this Houſe, came by the Valour and good Succeſs of the two Earls, *Thomas*, who in the year 1210. and *Peter* one of his Sons and Succeſſors (for his manifold Conqueſts, ſurnamed *Charlemain* the *Junior*) An. 1256. by Conqueſt got a great part of *Piedmont*; to which the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, containing almoſt all the reſt, was united by a marriage of the Daughter of the Marquiſate, to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*: and though he died without Iſſue by her, Anno 1489. yet his Succeſſors ſtill kept the poſſeſſion of it, till *Francis I.* pretending ſome Title to it in the right of his Mother (a Daughter of the Houſe of *Savoy*) laid it unto the Crown of *France*; from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the French Civil Wars, Anno 1588. and now is peaceably poſſeſſed. The Country of *Breſſe* being given to the French, for their pretenſion to this Marquiſate, Anno 1600. Theſe Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the Faction of *Spain*, eſpecially ſince the French Kings took in the leſſer States bordering on them, as *Burgundy*, *Bretagne*, &c. *Charles III.* ſided ſo conſtantly with the Emperor *Charles V.* that denying *Francis I.* a paſſage for his Army through the Country into *Italy*, he was by the ſaid King deſpoiled of his Eſtates, An. 1536. The Emperor to recover it left nothing undone, but in vain; for the French encountering his force in the open Field, vanquiſhed them, with the ſlaughter of fifteen thouſand of his Men. In the year 1558. peace being made between *Henry* and *Philip*, Succeſſors to thoſe great Princes, *Emanuel Philibert*, Son to Duke *Charles*, was reſtored to all his Rights. His Son and Succeſſour having married *Katherine* the Daughter of King *Philip II.* depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithstanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them; his Sons receiving thence many great Penſions and Preferments. For at the ſame time Prince *Amadee Victorio* the ſecond Son, during the life of *Philip* his Elder Brother, was chief Commander of that King's Gallies; and had in Penſion a hundred thouſand Crowns per annum; *Philibert* the third Son, was Vice-roy of *Sicil*: *Maurice IV.* a Cardinal, had a moiety of the Revenues of the Archbiſhoprick of *Toledo*; and *Don Thomaza*, though then young, had his Penſions alſo. But *Amadee Victorio*, who ſucceeded him, marrying *Madam Chriſtiane*, a Daughter of King *Henry IV.* of *France*, changed his dependences, and held more cloſe to *France* than any of his Predeceſſors: but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Eſtates, future times will ſhew. For leaving his Heir a *Minor*, in the hands of his Mother, the French upon pretence of preſerving the Country for him, againſt the incroachments of the *Spaniard*, have made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt parts of it: which when they will reſtore to the proper Owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the

Earls and Dukes of Savoy.

- 999 1 *Beral* of *Saxony*, he was Marquis of *Maurienne* and Earl of *Savoy*, and died in the year 1023.
- 1027 2 *Humbert*, the firſt Earl of *Maurienne*.
- 1048 3 *Ame*, or *Amadee I.* or *Oddo*, he was (after his Father) Lord of *Chableſia*, and *Valeſia*: and *Auguſta*, Marquis of *Italy*, and *Suſa*, and Duke of *Turin*; the latter Part of the Title being acquired by himſelf. He died (ſaith *Showartus*, in the year 1191. and was ſucceeded by *Amadeus* the II. Father of *Humbert II.*
- 1076 4 *Humbert II.*
- 1109 5 *Ame*, or *Amadee II.* the firſt Earl of *Savoy*, died in an Expedition into *Paleſtine*, in the year 1149.
- 1154 6 *Humbert III.* died in 1186.

- 1201 7 Thomas, Son of Humbert.
 1234 8 Ame, or Amadee III.
 1246 9 Boniface, Son of Ame III: died in 1263.
 1256 10 Peter, a young Son of Earl Thomas, called Charlemagne the less, died in 1285.
 1268 11 Philip, Brother of Peter.
 1285 12 Ame, or Amadee IV. Nephew of Thomas VII. Earl, by a Son named Thomas. This Prince was called the Great. In the year 1310. he was by Henry VI. created a Prince of the Empire. He was born in the year 1249. and died the 16th. of Octob. 1323.
 1323 13 Edward, Son of Ame IV.
 1329 14 Ame, or Amadee V. the Brother of Edward.
 1342 15 Ame, or Amadee VI.
 1383 16 Ame, or Amadee VII.
 1397 17 Ame, or Amadee VIII. the first Duke of Savoy; he was born 1383, 4 Sept. In 1416. the 19th of Feb. he was created Duke of Savoy by Sigismund the Emperor, and in 1434. he resigned to his Son Lewis, and died in the year 1451.
 1434 18 Lewis, Son of Ame VIII. was born in 1402. In the year 1432. he married Ann de Lusignan, Daughter of Jane King of Cyprus, and died in the year 1465.
 1491 19 Ame, or Amadee IX. who died in 1472. and was succeeded by Charles the II. who died in 1490. so that Philibert here is Excluded.
 1475 20 Philibert, Son of Ame IX.
 1481 21 Charles, Brother of Philibert.
 1489 22 Charles II. Charles John Amidæus Duke of Savoy, and King of Cyprus, was born in 1488. and died without Issue in 1496.
 1495 23 Philip II. Son of Lewis the second Duke, was born 5 Feb. 1438. In the year 1497. he resigned the Government to his Son Philibert.
 1496 24 Philibert II. who was born in 1480.
 1504 25 Charles III. the Brother of Philibert, outed of his Estate by King Francis I.
 1559 26 Emanuel Philibert, born in 1528. the 8th of July restored upon his Marriage with Margaret, the Daughter of King Francis I. made Knight of the Garter by Queen Mary.
 1580 27 Charles Emanuel, died Anno 1630. he was born the 12th of Jan. 1562. and was a Learned and Wise Prince, but unfortunate in War.
 1630 28 Ame X. called also Amadee Victorio, Son of Charles Emanuel, married Christiane the Daughter of King Henry IV.
 1637 29 Lewis Ame, or Amidæus, a Child of seven years of Age, succeeded his Father in the Dukedom of Savoy, under the Government of his Mother, but he dying young.
 1637 30 Charles Emanuel II. Son of Amadee Victor, or Ame X. at the Age of three years succeeded his Father. He was born in the year 1634. 20th of June, and opened an University at Turin in 1675. He died, and was much lamented by his Subjects.
 1675 31 Victor Amadee II. who was born the 17th of May 1666. succeeded his Father Charles Emanuel at the Age of IX. years, his Mother was a French Lady, Daughter of Charles Ame Duke of Nemours, and promoted the French Interest to the damage of her Son, and his Countries. In the year 1684. 9th of April he married Ann Mary Daughter of Philip Duke of Orleans, and of the Princess Henrietta, Daughter of Charles the First of England, by whom he has two Daughters, but no Sons.
 Thomas Francis Prince of Carignan, the youngest Son of Charles Emanuel Duke of Savoy, was born the 21st of December 1596. and in 1624. he married Mary of Bourbon, Daughter of Charles Earl of Soissons, by whom he had

Emanuel Philibert Ame, 2. Joseph Emanuel, and 3. Eugenius Mauritius. The last of these three married Olympia, a Niece of Cardinal Mazarin in 1657. and had by her Lewis Thomas Count de Soissons, born the 15th of December 1657. who married in the year 1682 2 Philip B. in 1659. 3. Lewis Julius B. 1660. 4 Emanuel in 1663. and 5. Francis Eugenius in 1665. Philip and Lewis are both dead, the rest are living, and some of them or their Children, will succeed this Duke of Savoy, if he has no Male Issue.

The Forces of this Duke consist especially in his Forts and Garrisons, whereof he hath good store in Savoy and Piemont, well fortified, and plentifully furnished with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him so to have, considering what dangerous Neighbours he hath near him, and that his Country is a continual thoroughfare, for the Armies both of France and Spain, upon all occasions. Nor doth it less conduce to his preservation, that he hath so many retreats of natural strength, as are not easily accessible by a conquering Army: of which last fort is, amongst many others, the Valley of Aost (which some reckon for a part of Savoy, and some of Piemont) so strong by reason of the narrow Entries, the uneasie Passages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it; that those who have made themselves Masters of the rest of the Country, durst never attempt it. And of the first, besides those formerly described, is the Town of Nizze, so fortified and flanked upon all accesses, that it seems rather to be an Assembly of Forts, than a single Fortress. Out of which Garrisons the Duke is able to draw great Forces for present service; besides the readiness of the Piemontese upon all occasions, which are for the most part given to Arms.

The ordinary Revenue of this Dukedom (taking Piemont) are said to be above a Million of Crowns per annum. But his extraordinary is so great, that Duke Charles Emanuel, during the Wars with Henry IV. in a very few years drew out of Piemont only 11 Millions of Crowns; besides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Soldiers. By which it may appear, that the Dukes are not like to want Money to serve their turns, when they shall desire it of their Subjects; and yet not charge them more than they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Dukes Estate, is that of the *Annuntiada*, ordained by Amadee the first Duke, at what time he defended Rhodes from the Turks, An. 1409. Their Collar is of fifteen Links, to shew the fifteen Mysteries of the Virgin: at the end is the Portraiture of our Lady, with the History of the *Annuntiation*. Instead of a Motto, these Letters, *F. E. R. T. id est, Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenuit*, are Engraven in every Plate or Link of the Collar: each Link being interwoven one within the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights are fourteen, besides the Duke, who is the Sovereign of the Order: the Solemnity was held anciently on our Lady-day, in the Castle of St. Peter in Turin; but of late time in the Town of *Annuntiada*, from hence so denominated. So from this Victory (for every repulse of the Besieger, is a Victory to the Besieged) there arose a double effect; first, the Institution of this Order; Secondly, the Assumption of the present Arms of this Duchy, where are G. a Cross. This being the Cross of St. John of Jerusalem, whose Knights at that time were Owners of the Rhodes. Whereas before, the Arms were Or, an Eagle displayed with two heads, Sable, Armed Gules, supporting in Fesse, an Escutcheon of Saxony, that is Barwise six pieces Sable and Or, a Bend flowered Vert. A Coat belonging to the Emperors of the House of Saxony, from whom the first Earls of Savoy did derive themselves.

3. The Signeury of GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedom of Savoy, formerly subject to its Bishops, acknowledging the Dukes of Savoy for the Lord in chief: now reckoned as a *Free-state*, bordering close upon the *Switzers*, and with them Confederate; and so more properly within the course and compass of the *Alpine* Provinces. It is situate on the South-side of the Lake *Lemane*, opposite to the City of *Lozane* in the Canton of *Beren*, from which it is distant six Dutch Miles: the River *Rhosne* (having passed through the Lake with so clear a colour, that it seemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it) runneth through the lower part thereof, over which there is a passage by two fair Bridges. This lower part is seated on a flat or level, the rest on the ascent of an Hill: the Buildings fair and of free Stone, well fortified on both sides both by Art and Nature; in regard of the pretensions of the Duke of Savoy (whom they suffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealousies of State. The compass of the whole City is about two Miles, in which there are supposed to be about sixteen or seventeen thousand Souls. One of their Bridges is more ancient, and better fortified than the other, belonging anciently to the *Switzers* (or *Helvetians*, the old Inhabitants of that Tract) but broken down by *Julius Cæsar*, to hinder them from passing that way into *Gallia*.

The People of the Town are generally of good Wits in the managery of publick Business, but not very courteous towards Strangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modest and thrifty in Apparel, and speak for the most part the *Savoyard*, or worst kind of *French*: So that the great resort of young Gentlemen thither, is not so much to learn that Language (which is no where worse taught) as out of an opinion which their Parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is no where so purely practised and professed as there. By means whereof, the fry or seminary of our Gentry being seasoned in their youth with *Genevan* Principles, have many times proved disaffected to the Forms of Government (as well *Monarchical* as *Episcopal*) which they found established here at home, to the great embroilment of the State, in matters of most near concernment. The Women are said to be more chaste (or at least more reserved) than in any other place in the World: which possibly may be ascribed to that severity, with which they punish all Offenders in that kind. Dancing by no means tolerated in publick or private; *Adultery* expiated by no less than Death: *Fornication*, for the first Offence, with nine days fasting upon Bread and Water in Prison; for the second, with Whipping; for the third, with Banishment. But notwithstanding this severity, they make love in secret, and are as Amorous in their dalliances, as in other places.

The Territories of it are very small, extending not above two Leagues and a half from any part of the Town: but the Soil, if well manured, bringeth Grain of all sorts, and great store of Wine. There is likewise plenty of Pasture and feeding Grounds, which furnish the City with Flesh-meats. Butter, and Cheese, at very reasonable Rates: the nearness of the Lake affording them both Fish and Wild-Fowl in good measure, and amongst others (as some say) the best *Carps* in *Europe*.

But the main Improvement of this State is by the Industry of the People, and the convenient situation of the City it self: the City being situate very well for the Trade of Merchandize, in regard it is the ordinary passage for Transporting Commodities out of *Germany*, to the Marts at *Lions*; and from thence back again to *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and some parts of *Italy*. And for the industry of the People, it is discernable in that great

store of Armour, and Apparel, and other Necessaries, brought from hence yearly by those of *Bern*: and their Manufactures in Sattin, Velvet, Taffatee, and some quantities of Cloth, (fine, but not durable) transported hence yearly into other places.

The Sovereignty of this City was anciently in the Earls hereof, at first *Imperial Officers* only, but at last the hereditary Princes of it. Betwixt these and the Bishops (Suffragans to the Metropolitan of *Vienna* in *Dauphine*) grew many quarrels for the absolute command thereof. In fine, the Bishops did obtain of the Emperor *Frederick I.* that they and their Successors should be sole Princes of *Geneva*; free from all Taxes, and not accountable to any but the Emperour. Which notwithstanding, the Earls continuing still to molest the Bishops, they were fain to call unto their Aid the Earl of *Savoy*; who took upon him first as Protector only, but after by degrees as the Lord in Chief. For when the rights of the Earls of *Geneva*, by the Marriage of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*, with *Beatrice* a Daughter of this Earls, fell into that House, then *Amé* or *Amadee VI.* of that Name, obtained of the Emperor *Charles IV.* to be *Vicar-general* of the Emperor in his own Country, and in that right superiour to the Bishop in all *Temporal* matters: and *Amé* or *Amadee* the first Duke, got from Pope *Gregory* (to the great prejudice of the Bishops) a Grant of all the *Temporal Jurisdiction* of it. After which time the Bishops were constrained to do homage to the Dukes of *Savoy*, and acknowledge them for their Sovereign Lords: the Authority of the Dukes being grown so great (notwithstanding that the people were immediately subject to their Bishop only) that the Money in *Geneva* was stamped with the Dukes Name and Figure: Capital Offenders were pardoned by him; no Sentence of Law executed till his Officers were first made acquainted; nor League contracted by the People of any *Vandit* without his privity and allowance: and finally the Key of the Town presented to him as often as he pleased to lodge there; as once (for instance) to Duke *Charles III.* coming thither with *Beatrice* his Wife, a Daughter of *Portugal*. And in this state it stood till the year 1528. the Bishop being all this while their immediate Lord, and having *jus gladii & alias civilis jurisdictionis partes*, as *Calvin* himself confesseth in an Epistle to Cardinal *Sadelet*. But in that year, Religion being then altered in the Canton of *Bern*, near adjoyning to them, *Viret* and *Farel* did endeavour it in *Geneva* also. But finding that the Bishop and his Clergy did not like their doings, they screwed themselves into the People, and by their Aid in a popular Tumult, compelled the Bishop and his Clergy to abandon the Town. And though the Bishop made them many fair Overtures, out of an hope to be restored to his Estate; yet would they never harken to him, nor admit of him any more being once thrust out. Nor did they only in that Tumult alter the Doctrine and Orders of the Church before established; but changed the Government of the State also; disclaiming all Allegiance both to Duke and Bishop, and standing on their own Liberty, as a *Free-Commonwealth*. And though all this was done by *Viret* and *Farel*, before *Calvin*'s coming to that City, which was not till the year 1536, yet being come, *suffragio meo comprobavi*, as he saith himself, no Man was forwarder than he to approve the Action.

But *Calvin* being come amongst them, made their Divinity Reader, and one of the ordinary Preachers, he first Negotiated with them to Abjure the *Papacy*, and never more admit their Bishop; to which he found a cheerful and unanimous consent in all the People. Then finding that no *Ecclesiastical Discipline* was in use among them, he dealt with them to admit of one of his own composing: which at last he obtained also, but with very great difficulty; and got it ratified by the Senate, July 20. 1537. The next year after, the people weary of this Yoak, and he and his Colleagues (*Farel* and

and *Coraldus*) as resolute to hold them to it; they were all three banished the Town in popular humour; and with like levity sued to, to return again: to which he would by no means yield, except they would oblige themselves by a solemn Oath, to admit of such a Form of Discipline, as he with the Advice of their other Ministers should prescribe unto them. This being condescended to by that fickle Multitude, he returns in Triumph to *Geneva*, September the thirteenth 1541. and got his new Discipline established on the twentieth of November following. The sum of the Device was this; All Ministers to be equal among themselves; two Lay-men to be super-added unto every Minister; the Minister to continue for term of life; the Lay-Elders to be annually chosen; these being met together to be called the *Presbytery*; and to have power of Ordination, Censures, Absolution, and whatsoever else was acted by the Bishop formerly. Hitherto it related to *Geneva* only, which being but one City, and a small one too, was not capable of more than one *Presbytery*. The names and notions of *Classical*, *Provincial*, and *National* Assemblies, came not in till afterwards, as it got ground in Kingdoms, and larger Provinces. This Platform though of purpose framed to content the people; yet since the Lay Officers were to be but annual, and after subject to the lash, like other Mortals; it gave but sorry satisfaction unto wiser Men. And being built withal on a false Foundation, was for a long time hardly able to stand alone, and fain at twelve years end to borrow a support from *Zurich*, and others of the *Protestant Cantons*: whom *Calvin* earnestly solicited to allow his project, against which one *Perinus*, and some principal Citizens, had begun to spurn. And so we have the true beginning of the *Genevan* Discipline, begotten in Rebellion, born in Sedition, and nursed up by Faction.

Being born in the World by the means aforesaid, some other helps it had to make it acceptable, and approved of in other Churches. As first the great content it gave to the *Common People*, to see themselves entrusted with the weightiest matters of Religion; and thereby an equality with, if not (by reason of their number, being two for one) a Superiority above their Ministers: Next the great Reputation, which *Calvin* for his diligence in Writing and Preaching, had attained unto; made all his *Disciples* as Authentick amongst some Divines, as ever the Popes *Ipe dixit* in the Church of *Rome*. Whereby it came to pass, in a little time, that only those Churches which embraced the Doctrines and Discipline authorized by *Calvin*, were called the *Reformed Churches*: those in High Germany, and elsewhere, which adhered to *Luther*, being generally called by no other names than the *Lutherans* or the *Lutheran Churches*; as not reformed enough from the dregs of *Rome*. Then comes in his endeavours to promote the Platform, in all other Churches which he had calculated for the Meridian of *Geneva* only: commending it to *Gasper Olevianus*, Minister of the Church of *Triers*, as appears by his Letters dated April the twelfth 1560. Congratulating the Reception of it in the Churches of *Poland*, as appeareth by others of his Letters. And for the last help, comes in *Beza*, who not content to recommend it as convenient, for the use of that Church (beyond which *Calvin* did not go) imposed it as a matter necessary upon all the Churches: so necessary, *ut ab ea recedere non magis liceat, quam ab ipsius Religionis placitis*, that it was utterly as unlawful to recede from this, as for the most natural points of the Christian Faith. So he, *Epist.* 83. By means whereof their Followers in most of the *Reformed Churches* drove on so furiously, that rather than their Discipline should not be admitted, and the *Episcopal Government* destroyed in all the Churches of *CHRIST*, they were resolved to depose Kings, ruine Kingdoms, and to subvert the fundamental Constitutions of all Civil States. And hereunto their own Ambition gave them spur enough, affecting the Supremacy in their several Parishes; that they themselves might Lord it over

God's Inheritance, under pretence of setting *CHRIST* upon his Throne. Upon which love to the Preheminence, they did not only prate against the Bishops, with malicious words (as *Diotrephes* for the same reason did against the Apostles) but not therewith content, neither would they themselves receive them, nor permit them that would, casting them out of the Church with Reproach and Infamy. Which proud Ambition in the ordinary *Parochial* Minister, was cunningly fomented by some great Persons, and many Lay-persons in all places, who under-hand aimed at a further end: the one to raise themselves great Fortunes out of Bishops Lands; the other to keep those Tythes themselves, to which by the Law they only were to nominate some deserving Person. Such were the helps by which this new device of *Calvin* was dispersed and propagated.

But to return unto *Geneva*, though *Calvin* for his time did hold the Chair as a perpetual Moderator, and *Beza* too, until *Danæus* set him beside the Cushion: yet after that, the power of the *Presbytery* was shrewdly lessened in *Geneva*, and the good Members so restrained in the exercise of it; that they have no power to convent any Man before them, but by the Authority of a *Syndick*, or Civil Magistrate. And as for Maintenance, they hold their Ministers so strictly to a sorry pittance, as would be sure to keep them from presuming too much on their power in the *Consistory*. Tythes of all sorts were to be taken up for the use of the State, and laid up in the publick Treasury; and stipends issued out to maintain the Ministry: but those so mean, that *Beza's* Stipend whilst he lived, hardly amounted to eighty pounds per annum, the residue of the City Ministers not to sixty pounds, those of the Villages adjoining, having hardly forty pounds; enough to keep them always poor, and miserably obnoxious to the wealthier Citizens. And that they may not steal the Goose, and stick up a Feather, the State doth use to make some poor allowance to the Wives and Daughters of their deceased Ministers, if they die poor, or leave their Children unprovided, or otherwise have deserved well in the time of their lives. In respect hereof, though the Ministers are very strict in forbidding Dancing, and have writ many Tracts against it; yet to give some content to the common People (who have not leisure to attend it at other times) they allow all Man-like Exercises on the Lords-day, as shooting in Pieces, Long-bows, Cross-bows, and the like, and that too in the Morning, both before and after the Sermon, so it be no impediment to them, from coming to the Church at the times appointed.

As for the Government of the State, it is directed principally by the Civil or Imperial Laws; the Judge whereof is called the *Lieutenant-Criminal*; before whom all Causes are tried, and from whom there lieth no Appeal; unless it be unto the Council of two hundred, whom they call the *Great Council*, in which the supreme power of the State resideth. Out of this Council of two hundred, there is chosen another *Lesser Council* of five and twenty, and out of them four principal Officers whom they call the *Syndicks*, who have the sole managing of the Common-wealth; except it be in some great matter, as making Peace or War, Offensive or Defensive Leagues, hearing Appeals, and such like general concerns; which the great Council of two hundred must determine of. They have a Custom superadded to the Civil Law, that if any Malefactor from another place flie to them for Refuge, they punish him after the custom of the place in which the crime was committed. Otherwise their Town being on the borders of divers Princes, would never be free from Vagabonds. Examples hereof I will assign two: the first of certain Monks, who robbing their Convents of certain Plate, and hoping for their wicked pranks at home, to be the welcomer thither, were at their first acquaintance advanced to the Gallows. The second is of a Spanish Gentleman, who having fled his Country for Clipping and Counterfeiting the King's Gold, came to

to this Town, and had the like reward. And when for defence he alledged, that he understood their City being free, gave Admission to all Offenders; *True* (said they) *but with an intent to punish them that offended*: a distinction which the *Spaniard* never till then learned, but then it was too late.

As for their ordinary *Revenue*, it is proportionable to their Territory, if not above it, conceived to amount to 60000 pounds *per annum*; which they raise upon the *Decim* of the Bishop, and the *Tithes* of the Church, and on such *Impositions*, as laid upon the Flesh and Merchandise. But they are able to raise greater sums if there be occasion, as appears plainly by the sending of 45000 Crowns to King *Henry III.* before they had been long settled in their own Estates.

And as for *Military Forces*, they are able to impress two thousand Men, and have Arms of all sorts for so many in the publick *Magazines*: as also twelve or fourteen Pieces of Ordnance, with all manner of Ammunition appertaining to them, and on the Lake some Gallies in continual readiness, against the dangers threatned them by the Dukes of *Savoy*. And for the greater safety of their Estate, and the preservation of their *Religion*, they joyned themselves in a constant and perpetual League with the Canton of *Bern*, Anno 1582. communicating to each other the freedom of their several Cities; and by that means, are reckoned for a Member of the Commonwealth of the *Switzers*, which is no small security to their Affairs. But their chief strength, as I conceive, is, that Neighbouring Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke; or any other Potentate of more strength than he. Infomuch that when that Duke besieged it, Anno 1589. they were aided from *Venice* with four and twenty thousand, and from *England*, with thirteen thousand Crowns, from *Florence* with Intelligence of the Enemies purposes. Another time, when the Pope, the *French King*, the *Spaniard*, and *Savoyard* had designs upon it, the Emperor offered them assistance both of Men and Money: yea, and sometimes the Dukes of *Savoy* have assisted them against the others, as being more desirous that the Town should remain as it doth, than fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for such petit States, to be more safe by the interest of their jealous Neighbours, than any Forces of their own.

The Arms of *Geneva*, when under the command of the Earls thereof were Or, a Cross *Azure*. But for the Title of *Geneva*, after it had been born a while by the Earls of *Savoy*, it was given to *Philip*, youngest Son of *Ame* or *Amadee* the first Duke, to *Janus* the third Son of *Louis* the second Duke; and finally, to *Philip* Duke of *Nemours*, the fourth Son of *Philip* the seventh Duke of *Savoy*, in whose Posterity (Dukes of *Nemours*) it doth still continue.

4. WALLISLAND.

Eastward from *Savoy*, in a long and deep bottom of the *Alpes Penine*, lyeth the Country of *WALLISLAND*: so called either *quasi Wallenland*, or the Land of the *Valenses*, once the Inhabitants of the Country about *Martinacht*, a chief Town hereof; or *quasi Valleys-land*, or the Land of *Valleys*, of which it totally consists. It reacheth from the Mountain *de Finken*, to the Town of *St. Maurice*, where again the Hills do close, and shut up the Valley; which is so narrow in that place, that a Bridge laid from one Hill to another (under which the River *Rhosne* doth pass) is capable of no more than one Arch only, and that defended with a Castle and two strong Gates. On other parts it is environed with a continual Wall of steep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a crust of Ice; not passable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by single Passengers: so that having but that one entrance to it,

which before we spake of, no Citadel can be made so strong by Art, as this whole Country is by Nature. But in the bottom of those craggy and impassable Rocks lies a pleasant Valley, fruitful in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and most delicate Fruits; and happily enriched with Meadows, and most excellent Pastures, which yield a notable increase of Cheese and Butter: and in the Country about *Sion* they discovered in Anno 1544. a Fountain of Salt; and have also many hot Baths, and Medicinal Waters very wholesom. Of Springs and River-water, they are very destitute; having scarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhosne*, with a great deal both of Charge and Trouble (the common People using Snow-water for the most part for Domestick uses:) which made one pleasantly observe, that they pay dearer for their Water, than they do for their Wine. Cattel they have sufficient to serve their turn, and amongst others, a wild *Buck*, equal to a *Stag* in bigness, footed like a *Goat*, and horned like a *Fallow-deer*, leaping with wonderful Agility from one Precipice to another, and so not easily caught but in Summer time, for then the heat of that season makes him blind. It is in length from East to West 100 Miles, but its breadth is between fifteen and thirty.

It is divided into the *Upper* and the *Lower Wallisland*: the *Upper* lying towards the Mountain *de Finken*, in the very bottom of the Valley: and the *Lower* stretching out to the Town of *St. Maurice*, which is at the opening of the same: the length of both said to be five ordinary days Journey, but the breadth not answerable. The *Upper Wallisland* containeth the seven *Reforts* of 1. *Sion*, or *Sedune*, 2. *Leuck*, 3. *Brig*, 4. *Nies*, 5. *Rawren*, 6. *Sider*, 7. *Gombes*, in which are reckoned thirty Parishes, the *Lower* comprehending the six *Reforts* of 1. *Gurdia*, 2. *Airdoa*, 3. *Sallien*, 4. *Martinacht*, 5. *Jurament*, and 6. *St. Maurice*: in which are 24 Parishes. The people in both parts said to be courteous towards Strangers, but very rough and churlish towards one another.

The several *Reforts* before mentioned, are named according to the names of their principal Towns: which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1. *Sedunum*, *Sittim*, or *Sion*, a Bishops See, suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Tarentumise*; the chief of all this little Country: of no great beauty in it self, but neat and gallant in respect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhosne*, under a Mountain of two tops; on the one of which being the lower, is seated the Cathedral Church, and the Canon's Houses; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadful precipice, a very strong Castle, the Dwelling-place of the Bishop in the heat of Summer: which being built upon an Hill of so great an height, and so hazardous an ascent, is impossible almost to be took by force; the sharpness of the Rocks keeping it from the danger of Assaults, and the highness of the Hill from the reach of the Gun-shot. 2. *Martinacht*, by *Cæsar* called *Oëtodurus*, and *Civitas Valensium* by *Antonius*, remarkable for its Antiquity only. 3. *St. Maurice*, or *St. Morits*, anciently *Auganum*, the Key of the whole Country; but in Winter especially, when all the other Passages are frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town, which for that cause is very well manned and fortified to avoid surprisal; and therefore also chosen for the Seat of the Governor of the *Lower Wallisland*.

This Country now called *Wallisland*, is in most *Latini* & Writers called by the name of *Valisia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Valensia*, as the *Dutch* or *English* name for *Wallenland*: which name I should conceive it took from the *Valenses*, the old Inhabitants of this Valley, of whom *Oëtodurus* (now called *Martinacht*) is by *Antonius* made to be the *Metropolis*, or principal City. It was made subject to the *Romans* by *Julius Cæsar*, at such time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Western parts of the *Roman Empire* unto *Charles* the Great, was by him given to *Theodinus* Bishop of *Sion*,
Ann

Anno 805. Under his Successors they continued to this very Day ; but so, as that the Deputies of the *seven Re-forms* have not only Voices with the *Canons* in his Election, but being chosen and invested unto the place, they join with him also in the *Diets* for choosing Magistrates, redressing Grievances, and determining matters of the State. The *Lower Wallisland* obeyeth the *Upper*, made subject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no sway in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governors agree of. The same Religion is in both, being that of *Rome*. For maintenance whereof they combined themselves with the seven *Popish Cantons* of *Switzerland*, Anno 1572. or thereabouts; as also for their mutual defence and preservation against foreign Enemies, and keeping Amity and Concord amongst one another.

5. SWITZERLAND.

NEXT unto *Wallisland* lieth the Country of the *SWITZERS*, having on the East, the *Grisons*, and some part of the *Tirol* in *Germany*; on the West, the *Mountain Four*, and the *Lake of Geneva*, which parts it from *Savoy* and *Burgundy*; on the North, *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*, another Province also of the upper *Germany*; and on the South *Wallisland* and the *Alps*, which border on the Dukedom of *Millain*.

The whole Country heretofore divided into three parts only, that is to say, 1. *Argow*, so called from the River *Aax*, whose chief Town was *Lucern*. 2. *Wislisburgow*, so called from *Wislispurg*, an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*. And 3. *Zurichgow*, so named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this present the Town of most note in all this Tract; but since the falling of these Countries from the House of *Austria*, divided into many *Cantons* and other Members; of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner overgrown with craggy Mountains, but such as for the most part have grassy-tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadows, and nourishing Pastures, which breed them a great stock of Cattel, their greatest Wealth. And in some places yields plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increase of Corn also, if care and industry be not wanting on the Husbandman's part, but neither in so great abundance, as to serve all necessary uses, which want they do supply from their neighbouring Countries. And tho' it stand upon as high ground as any in *Christendom*, yet is no place more stored with Rivers, and capacious Lakes; which do not only yield them great abundance of Fish, but serve the People very well in the way of Traffick, to disperse their several Commodities from one *Canton* to another: Of which the principal are *Bodensee*, and the *Lake of Cell*, made by the *Rhene*; *Genesee*, or the *Lake of Geneva*, by the *Rhone*; *Walldstetsee*, and the *Lake of Lucern*, made by the *Russe*; *Namunburger* and *Bieter-sees*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurich see*, by the River of *Limat*, or *Limachus*.

It is in length two hundred and forty Miles, an hundred and eighty in breadth; conceived to be the highest Country in *Europe* (as before is said) the Rivers which do issue from it running through all quarters of the same; as *Rhene*, through *France* and *Belgium*, North; *Po*, through *Italy* to the South; *Rhodanus*, through part of *France*, to the Western Ocean; and the *Inn*, which falling into the *Danubius*, passeth through *Germany* and *Hungary*, into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Country is, such are the Inhabitants of rude and rugged dispositions, more fit for Arms than any civil Occupations, capable of Toil and Labour, which the necessities of their Country do inure them to, not able otherwise to afford them an hungry livelihood: the Poverty whereof makes them seek for Service, which they

shift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their superfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to spare greater multitudes to a foreign War, than a Man would easily imagine. In a word, the People are naturally honest, frugal, and industrious, impartial in the administration of Justice, and great lovers of Liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of such a reputation, on the defeats given by them to *Charles* of *Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himself able to take the Field, or stand his own ground in defence of his Dominions, if he had not *Switzers* in his Army: And to advance their Reputation, the Wars which followed in *Italy* about the *Dutchy of Millain*, served exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Country, they could be hired better cheap by the *French* or *Spaniards*, than any Army could be brought out of *France* or *Spain*. And having had some good Successes to increase their Fame, they grew so terrible at last, that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Guien*, were more afraid of one Band of *Swiss*, than of all the rest of the *French* Army. But being found withal to be false and treacherous, and easily bought off by the better Purse (which they most evidently discovered in betraying *Duke Lodowick Sforza*, who had put himself and his Estate into their hands) and those *Italian* Wars growing unto an end, they did decay so fast in their Reputation, that first the neighbouring Princes could do well without them; and at last used them not at all, or at least very sparingly. And now it is their honour that they are chosen of the Guard to the *French* King, and the Popes of *Rome*, and the Dukes of *Genoa*; and that the greatest Princes of *Europe* give them yearly Pensions. Which Pensions were given heretofore to be assured of their Aid upon all occasions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other side.

For matter of Religion it is proportionably mixt; some of the *Cantons* being wholly *Popish*, some wholly *Protestant*; in others, both Religions used promiscuously. At first the differences were so eagerly pursued on both sides, that notwithstanding the mediation of some potent Neighbours, it broke out into a Civil War; the *Cantons* of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, and *Zug*, (which the *Latin* Writers of this Story call the *Quinquagici*) arming against *Zurich*, *Bern*, and others which adhered to *Zuinglius*. In the beginning of which War the *Protestant* Party was discomfited, *Zuinglius* himself slain in the head of the Battel, and his Body burnt; his Heart remaining in the midst of the Fire whole and untouched; as *Archbishop Cranmer's* also did, when all the rest of his Body was consumed to Ashes. But those of the *Reformed* Party would not so give over. Another Field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverse Party. Wearied at last with reciprocal Defeats, they agreed the business, indulging each to other the free exercise of their own Religions: So it continueth at this Day, diversity of Opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick Interest, nor giving any interruption to that bond of Peace which was so firmly knit amongst them in their first Confederacy.

In the Year 1656. there arose a War between the *Protestant* and *R. C. Cantons* on this occasion: All the *Cantons* have a right by Agreement to make what Regulations concerning matters of Religion they think fit, without prejudice to the General League. Now the *Popish Cantons* have made Laws, That it shall be Capital to any to change their Religion; and on a set Day every Year they go all to Mass, and the Masters of Families swear to continue true to the State, and firm in their Religion to their Lives end; and so they pretend they punish their falling into Heresy with Death and Confiscation of Goods, because it is a violation of the Faith which is solemnly sworn. But on the other hand, in the *Protestant Cantons*, such as turn are only obliged to go and live out of the *Canton*; but for their Estates they still preserve them, or are permitted to sell them.

In the Year aforesaid, some of the Canton of *Schwitz* changing their Religion and retiring to *Zurich*, their Estates were Confiscated; and some others that had also changed, but had not left the Canton, were taken and beheaded. *Zurich* demanded the Estate of the Refugees; but instead of granting this, the Cantons of *Schwitz* demanded back their Subjects, that they might proceed against them as Delinquents, &c. But those of *Zurich* and *Bern* thought this was both Inhumane and Unchristian, tho' the Deputy of *Basil* was of another Mind, and thought they ought to be deliver'd up, which extreamly disgusted those of *Zurich*. Those of *Schwitz* hereupon committed some Insolencies upon the Subjects of *Zurich*, and refused to give satisfaction; upon all which, a War follow'd between the Protestant and the other Cantons. The Cantons of *Bern* and *Zurich* raised an Army of 25000 Men, which was commanded by Mr. d' *Erlack*, the greatest Man amongst them, but it was dispersed in several Bodies, the R. C. Cantons drew out not above 6000 Men, yet they surprized Mr. d' *Erlack* with a body not much superior to theirs, and both sides, after a short Engagement, run; the Cannon of the Canton of *Bern* was left in the Field a whole Day unregarded, and then those of *Lucern* carried them off. And soon after the War was ended by a Treaty.

Long since that there arose another Quarrel between these two Religions, upon this occasion: In the Canton of *Apenzel*, as the two Religions are tolerated, so they are separated in different Quarters, the Canton being equally divided between them, and each Party living in their proper part; but in *Glaris* they are mixt, and the R. C. Family not above 200. and those too so poor that some of them every Day changed their Religion; the other R. C. Cantons seeing the danger of losing their Interest intirely in that Canton, and being set on by a Court, made use of some Complaints that were brought by the Papists of *Glaris*, as if the prevailing of the other Religion exposed them to much Injustice and Oppression; and upon that they proposed that the Canton should be equally divided into two halves, as *Apenzel* was: This was extreamly unjust, the R. C. not being the tenth part, perhaps not the twentieth of the Canton; but then neither was it easie for the other Protestant Cantons to come in to their Assistance, *Glaris* being situated in the midst of the R. C. Cantons: However they of *Glaris* resolved to perish rather than to yield to this Injustice; and all the Protestant Cantons were resolved to assist them in case of force; but at last, by the Interposition of the Popes Nuncio, the business was composed, upon condition that in all Suits of Law between those of different Religions, two thirds of the Judges should be always of the Religion of the Defendant. Whilst this Contest was on foot the French fortified *Hunningben*, within a Mile of *Basil*, to the great Terror of all the Cantons of both Religions, when they came to consider it in cold Blood.

Now for the Body of their State, it consists of three distinct Parts or Members, which are to be considered in this Discourse, viz. the *Swisse* themselves, the *Præfectures* which are subject to them, and the States that are Confederates with them. The *Swisse* are subdivided into thirteen Cantons, that is to say, *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Bern*, *Zurich*, *Basil*, *Friburg*, *Soloturn*, *Apenzel*, *Glaris*, and *Schaffhausen*. These properly make the body of that Commonwealth, enjoying many Rights, Privileges and Preheminences which the others do not; as power to determine of War and Peace, to dispose of the *Præfectures*, and divide amongst themselves the spoil of the Enemy. The first Confederacy was made betwixt the Cantons of *Switz*, and *Underwald*, Anno 1315. Of which the *Switz* being the most potent, the most exasperated, and that which did most hotly prosecute the Combination, gave to the rest the Name of *Switzers*, first made for ten Years only in defence of themselves against the Violences of *Albert I.* Emperor and Duke of *Austria*;

intending to alienate them from the *Swiss*, and to put them by strong hand to his own Faith, Anno 1315. but made perpetual after their great Victory obtained against Duke *Leopold*, Son of *Albert*, in the Field of *Mortgarten*, of which more anon. *Lucern* was added to the three, Anno 1332. *Zug*, *Zurich*, and *Glaris*, came not into the Confederacy till the Year 1352. nor *Bern* until the Year next after. *Friburg* and *Soloturn* came in Anno 1481. *Basil* and *Schaffhausen* united with them in the Year 1501. And *Apenzel*, which was the last which was admitted into their Confederacy, Anno 1513. So that there passed within little of two hundred Years, from the first beginning of these Leagues, to the finishing of them.

The second Member of this Body, are the Towns and States Confederates with them, for the preservation of their common Liberties, viz. the Town and Abbot of *St. Gall*, the Towns of *Rotuel*, *Mulhausen*, *Muenzburg*, and *Biel*, situated on the Lake thence named: or which the first belonged heretofore to the Earls of *Longeville* in France, the latter to the Bishops of *Basle* with the City and Signeury of *Geneva*: And of these, *Rotuel* and *Mulhausen* are confederate with all the Cantons; the rest with some particulars only. The Abbot of *St. Gall* first entered into League with *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and *Glaris*, for the preservation of his Lands and Towns then revolting from him: and the Town following his example, confederated with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, the better to preserve themselves from the power of their Abbot, who was before their natural and immediate Lord. This was in Anno 1452. *Rotuel* and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Towns in the Province of *Schawben*, confederated in a perpetual League with all the Cantons, the first Anno 1515. the other 1519. *Neuenberg*, *Biel*, and *Geneva*, with *Bern* only.

As for the *Præfectures* of the *Switzers*, they are such lesser parcels and additaments, as have accrued to their Estate, and are subject unto their Authority; either by Gift, Purchase, or the chance of War; some lying in *Switzerland* it self, some amongst other parts of the *Alpes*, and some in *Italy*. These are the Towns and Countries of *Baden*, *Breggarten*, *Millingen*, *Rappenswyl*, *Wagenthal*, interposed here and there amongst the *Switzers*: the Town and Country of *Sargans*, lying amongst the *Rhetian Alpes*, not far from the *Grisons*; and *Rhineck*, lying in a Valley of the *Alpes*, on the left Shore of the *Rhere*, near the Lake of *Conflans*; and finally, the Valleys of *Locarno*, *Magia*, and *Lugano Mendrisio*, and *Belinzano*, situate in and amongst the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Millain*, to which they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfectures* of *Baden* and *Mellingen*, appertain to the eight first Cantons: *Wagenthal*, the *Sargans*; and *Rhineck* to the seven first Cantons; *Rappenswyl* to *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, and *Glaris*, and *Thurgow* unto the ten first Cantons; *Belinzano* to the three first only; and all the rest of the *Italian Præfectures* to the Cantons generally, excepting *Apenzel*, which was not entered into the Confederacy when these *Præfectures* were given unto the *Switzers*, by *Maximilian Sforza*, Duke of *Millain*; which was in Anno 1513 some Months before the taking in of *Apenzel* to the rest of the Cantons.

Such is the number of the Cantons, *Præfectures*, and States-confederate, amongst all which there are few Towns or Cities of any note: there being no City nor walled Towns in the Cantons of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwalden*, *Glaris*, *Apenzel*, nor in any of the States-confederate situate amongst the *Switzers*, but *St. Gall* only, nor in any of the *Præfectures*, but that of *Baden*. So that the places worthy of consideration are not like to be many. Of those that are, the principal are, 1. *Zurich*, a large City, and a renowned University, situate on both sides of the River *Liman*, where it issueth out of the Lake called *Zurich-See*. It had anciently two Monasteries in it, in one of which *Huldéricus Zuīnglius* was a Canon, slain near this Town in the Battel spoken of before, Anno 1531.

now

now giving Name to the most honourable of the *Cantons*, to which belongeth the authority of summoning the general *Diets*, as of those also of the *Protestants*; the Legate thereof presiding in both Assemblies. 2. *Friburg*, situate on the River *Sana*, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky Hill, founded by *Bertold*, the fourth Duke of *Züringen*. 3. *Solothurn*, (the *Solothurum* of *Antoninus*) on the River *Aar*, famous for the Martyrdom of *S. Ursus*, and his 66 *Theban* Soldiers, in the time of the Emperor *Dioclesian*. A Town of great Antiquity, but not so old by far as the People make it; who would have it to be built in the time of *Abraham*. 4. *Basil*, so called either of a *Basilisk* slain at the building of the City; or of the German word *Pasel*, signifying a Path; or of *Βασιλεία*, signifying Kingly. It was built *Anno* 382. and is famous for an University founded by *Pius II.* *Anno* 1459. It was made a *Canton*, *Anno* 1501. and is honoured with the Sepulchers of *Oecolampadius*, *Erasmus*, *Pontanus*, *Glarieus*, and *Hottoman* the famous Civilian. In this City, *Anno* 1431. was held that notable Council wherein though the Papal Authority was then at the height, it was declared that a *General Council* was above the Pope. What was then enacted, was immediately put in practice; the Council deposing Pope *Eugenius IV.* and placing in his room *Amadeus*, Duke of *Savoy*, afterward called *Felix* the IV. who having held the See nine Years, in a time of *Schism*, did willingly, in order to the peace of *Christendom*, resign the Popedom to *Nicholas V.* who had before been chosen by the opposite Faction. The City is great, rich, and populous, sometimes a Town Imperial, still a Bishop's See; the Bishop being subject to the Archbishop of *Besanson*, in the County of *Burgundy*; seated upon the River *Rhene* (where it receiveth *Weis* and *Byrsa*, two lesser Brooks) by which it is divided into the greater *Basil* lying towards *France*, and the lesser lying towards *Germany*. 5. *Lucern*, situate on both sides of the *Russe*, where it issueth out of the Lake of *Lucern*; so called from *Lucern*, i. e. the Lanthorn which was placed here on an high Tower, to give light to Watermen in the Night. A City well Traded and frequented by Strangers, because the ordinary Road from *Germany* into *Italy*, passing from hence through the Country of the *Grisons*; and in regard that the *Diets* for the *Papish Cantons*, which heretofore were held at *Uren*, are removed hither. Not far from this Town is the Mountain called *Pilates Hill*, of *Pontius Pilate*, whose Ghost (as the common People are made to believe) doth walk once a Year on the Banks of this Lake in his Judge's Robes. And to be sure the fiction shall not be confuted, they add, That whosoever seeth him shall die that Year. 6. *Bern*, compassed almost round with the River *Aar*, and taking up the whole extent of a little Mountain; the Houses of Free Stone, neatly and uniformly built. A Town which gives Name to the largest and most potent of all the *Cantons*; one of the first which did embrace the *Reformation*, and the first of all which purged it self of Images, those excellent Instruments of Superstition and Idolatry, defaced here in a popular Tumult, *Anno* 1548. 7. *Laufanna*, in the Canton of *Bern*, a Bishop's See, suffragan to the Archbishop of *Besanson*, seated on the Banks of the Lake of *Lemane*, and compassed with Mountains always covered with Snow, which open themselves on the East side only, which is towards *Italy*. 8. *Schaffhausen*, the only Town of all the *Cantons*, which lieth on the other side of the *Rhene*; of right belonging unto *Suevia*, or *Schawben*, a Province of *Germany*, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this *Confederacy*.

Next for the *Praefectures* and *Confederate States*; they have not many Towns of note (excepting *Rotwel*, and *Amibausen*, two Imperial Cities, which properly belong to another place.) Of those which be, the principal amongst the *Confederates*, lying within the bounds of this Country, is the Town of *St. Gall* (*Sengal* as they corrupt; call it) an Imperial City, situate amongst the

Mountains near the *Boden-See*, a rich, populous, and well-governed Town, taking Name from the Monastery of *St. Gall*, a famous *Scot*, and the Apostle of those parts, *Anno* 630. or thereabouts; the Abbot of which having great Possessions in this Tract (before *Apenzel* and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The *Anabaptists* were once very prevalent here, in so much that one of them cut off his Brother's Head in the presence of his Father and Mother, and said (according to the humour of that Sect, who boast much of Dreams, Visions, and Enthusiasms) that *God commanded him so to do*. The principal amongst the *Praefectures* is the Town of *Baden*, or (to difference it from *Baden* a Marquisate in *Germany*) the *Upper-Baden*, seated on a little Mountain near the River *Limat*, almost in the middle of the Country; and for that cause the place of meeting for the Council of *Estate* of all the *Confederates*. It taketh Name from the Baths here being, two of which only are publick, the rest in private Houses; conscious, as it is thought, to much lasciviousness. For whereas it is said of *Adrian*, that *Lavacra pro sexibus separavit*; here Men and Women promiscuously bathe together; and which is worst, in private: whereas *Munster* telleth us, *Cernunt viri uxores tractari, cernunt cum alienis loqui, & quidem solum cum solo*; and yet are not any of them disturbed with Jealousie. The Baths are much frequented, yet not so much for Health as Pleasure. Their chiefest Vertue is the quickning Power they have upon barren Women. But as the *Friars* use to send Men whose Wives are fruitless, in Pilgrimage to *St. Joyce*, the Patroness of fruitfulness, and in the mean time to lie with their Wives; so it may be with good reason thought, that in a place of such liberty as this is, the lusty young Gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation on barren Women, than the Waters of the Bath it self. No other Town of eminent note amongst the *Praefectures* of the *Swisses*, except *Rhineck* it self, the seat of the Governour for the *Switzers*, situate near the Lake of *Constance*; and none of any note at all amongst the *Italian Praefectures*, except *Belinzana* and *Locarno*, neither of them containing four hundred Houses, and those none of the handsomest.

Within the limits of this Country, and in that part thereof which was called *Argow*, containing the now *Cantons* of *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, *Glarona*, and *Lucern*, with some of the adjoining parts of *Germany*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Savoy*, did sometimes stand the famous and renowned Castle of *HABSPURG*; from the Lords whereof, the House of *Austria*, and most of the Kings and Princes of the Christian World do derive themselves. First founded, as some say, by *Ottobert* the third Prince of this Line, at or before the Year 700. as others say, by *Rapato*, the Son of *Betzeline*, about the Year 1020. situate on the River *Aar* (by the *Latins* called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now so decayed, that there is no tracing of the Ruines: Preserved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, descended in a direct Line from *Segebert*, the eldest Son of *Theodebert*, King of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*; first settled in these Parts by *Clotaire II.* King of the *French*, with the Titles, as some say, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the *Lower Almain* being that which is now called *Suevia* or *Schawben*, an adjoining Province of *Germany*) Being soon weary of that empty, but invidious Title, they were sometimes called Earls of *Habsburg*, by the Name of this Castle; sometimes Earls of *Altemberg*, another Castle not far off, of their own foundation. And after, closing in with the Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*, and the German Emperors, they received of them a great part of the Country of *Argow*; from which some of them were called Earls of *Argow*. Not known distinctly by the Title of Earls of *Habsburg*, till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned, when those of *Altemberg* and *Argow* became discontinued. Howsoever we will here lay down the whole Succession of this famous Family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of

The Earls of *Habsburg*.

A. Chr.

635

1. *Sigibert*, Son of *Theodobert* King of *Metz*, by *Clotaire* the second of that Name, French King, dispossessed of the Kingdom of his Father, and afterwards by him indowed with a great part of those Countries, which are now called *Switzerland*, with the Title of Duke of *Upper Almain*.
2. *Sigibert II.* Son of *Sigibert I.* Duke of *Upper Almain*.
3. *Ottobert*, or *Otbirt*, the Son of *Sigibert II.* the Founder, as some say, of the Castle of *Altemburg*, and *Habsburg*, of which promiscuously called Earl.
4. *Bebo*, the Son of *Ottobert*, the last Duke of *Upper Almain*; which Title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg*, and *Habsburg*.
5. *Robert*, or *Rotber*, as some call him, the Son of *Bebo*, Earl of *Altemburg*.
- 766 6. *Hertopert*, the Son of *Robert*, who added unto his Estate that part of *Schwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Brisgow*.
7. *Rampert*, the Son of *Hertopert*, who flourished Anno 814. at what time he procured the Canonization of *S. Trutpertus*.
8. *Guntram*, the Son of *Rampert*, Earl of *Altemburg*.
9. *Luitbard*, the Son of *Guntram*.
- 900 10. *Luitfride*, the Son of *Luitbard*.
- 929 11. *Hunifride*, the Son of *Luitfride*, who added unto his Estates the Territory now called *Sungow*, bordering on *Alsatia*, a Province of *Germany*; recovered after his Decease by the Dukes of *Schwaben*.
- 950 12. *Guntram II.* Son of *Hunifride*, the first who took unto himself the Title of Earl of *Argow*: from whose second Son named *Berthilo*, descended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, possessed of almost all *Brisgow*, and a good part of *Switzerland*, which they inherited from *Berthold*, the Son of *Gebiro*, the third Son of *Guntram*; who having founded the Castle of *Zeringen*, and acquired great possessions in adjoining parts of *Schwaben*, left them at his Decease (being childless) to *Berthold* the Son of *Berthilo*, and his Cousin *German*.
13. *Betzo*, or *Betzeline*, the eldest Son of *Guntram II.* Earl of *Argow*.
14. *Rapato*, Son of *Betzeline*, the Founder or Repairer of the Castle of *Habsburg*, from whence both he and his Successors were constantly called Earls of *Habsburg*, Great Grand-father by *Theodorick* his youngest Son, of *Rodolph* Earl of *Rhinefelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, elected Emperour (at the instigation of the Pope) against *Henry IV.*
15. *Warner*, by some called *Berenger*, or *Berangarius*, the Son of *Rapato*.
- 1096 16. *Orbo*, the Son of *Warner* or *Berenger*.
- 1108 17. *Warner II.* Son of *Orbo*, enriched by the Emperour *Henry IV.* with some fair Estates belonging to the Dukes of *Schwaben*.
18. *Albert*, the Son of *Warner II.* surnamed the Rich.
19. *Albert II.* surnamed the Wise, Son of *Albert I.* added to his Estates a great part of the *Upper Alsatia*; which he had by the Right of *Hedwig* his Wife, one of the Daughters and Heir of *Simon*, the last Earl thereof.
- 1238 20. *Rodolph*, the fortunate Son of *Albert II.* added to his Estate the rest of the *Upper Elzate*, elected Emperour of the *Romans*, Anno 1273. Of which he made so good advantage, that

he added unto his Estates the great Dukedom of *Austria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereunto belonging, and laid the first Foundation of the *Austrian* greatness; of which more in *Germany*. Here only note, that besides the following Princes of the House of *Austria*, those of the line Collateral still retained the Titles of Earls of *Habsburg* (according to the ill custom of *Germany*) increased with the addition of the Earldom of *Kyburg*, of which more hereafter: and so continued till the expiring of that Line in the Person of *Rodolph IV.* the last that bare the Title of Earl of *Habsburg*, Anno 1356. by whose death many fair Estates were added to the *Austrian* Family.

Having on the occasion of these Earls of *Habsburg*, beheld so much of the Affairs of this Country, as related unto that puissant and illustrious Family, let us go forward to the rest: first taking in our way the ancient Estate hereof in the time of the *Romans*. At what time this whole mountainous Tract, containing many several Nations (some of them spoken of before) was comprehended under the general name and notion of the *Helvetii*; the greatest and most populous of all the rest: so called, as *Veslegan* will have it, *Quasi Hel-vites*, or the *Vites* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Vites* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of *Cimbrick Chersonese*, which is now called *Jutland*; and from those dwelling in the middle, betwixt both extremes in the little Province still called *Voitland*. Grown by long Peace, and want of opportunity by Traffick into foreign Parts, to so great a Multitude, that the Country barren of itself, was no longer able to maintain them, they set fire on their Towns and Houses, and with a general Resolution, went to seek new Dwellings. The total number of Men, Women, and Children, which went upon this desperate Action, are said to have amounted to the number of 3680000, whereof 90000 were fighting Men. They had not long before overthrown *L. Cassius* a Roman Consul, slain the Consul himself and sold his Soldiers for Bond-slaves: upon the apprehension of which good Success, they thought no body able to withstand them. But they found *Cæsar* of a stronger metal than *L. Cassius*; who having stopped their passage by hewing down the Bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown strong enough to bid them Battel; so waited them in several Skirmishes and Defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild those Towns and Villages, which they had destroyed before this Enterprize: which he upon delivery of Hostages, did vouchsafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the least, two Millions of them perished in this journey, and not so much by the Sword (though that spared them not) as for want of Necessaries. After this they continued Members of the *Roman* Empire, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian III.* by the *Burgundians* and *Almains*, betwixt whom divided; the River *Russ* parting their Dominions. From them being taken by the *French*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; some parts first taken out: and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habsburg*, as before was noted. Given with the rest of that Kingdom to the Emperour *Conrade* the second, by *Rodolph* the last King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperours (as their custom was) into divers States; most of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schwaben*, the Earls of *Habsburg*, *Kyburg*, *Werdenburg*, &c. and the Dukes of *Zeringen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as Heirs to many of the other, by the Dukes of *Austria*. By means of which united Titles, the *Austrian* Family was possessed of so much of this Country, as now makes up five Cantons, and as many of the principal *Præfectures*; that is to say, the Cantons of *Zug*, *Glarona*, *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Schaffhausen*; the

Præfectures of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Mellingen*, *Wagenthall*, *Ropelwyl*; together with a great part of the Country of *Targow*, wherein stands the City of *St. Gall*, now a Confederate with the *Switzers*; some of the rest, as *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, being brought under by the Power of the Emperor *Albert*, the Son of *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, who had a purpose to unite them to the House of *Austria*; because obnoxious also to the Power of those Princes. But the People being at last over-burthened by the tyranny of those Governours, whom the Dukes of *Austria*, and their other Lords had sent among them; seeing withal the Empire by the Pope's Fulminations distracted into many Factions, and the *Austrian* Family weakned by a sub-division of that great Estate into many parcels; they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League amongst themselves, for defence of their Liberty, into which first entred those of *Switz*, *Uren*, and *Underwalden*, Anno 1385. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1513. as was before noted. At their first beginning to take Arms, *Frederick* one of the many Dukes of *Austria* (to whose share they fell) sent his Brother *Leopold* against them with a puissant Army, which they encountred near *Mortgarten*, a Village of the now *Canton* of *Underwalden*, and there overthrew him: but more by the convenience of those narrow passages, through which his Army was to march, than by any Valour. In which it was no small help to them, that the ways were all so filled with Ice, that he was able to do no service with his Horse, and his Soldiers so amazed at the present difficulties, that the *Confederates* only casting Stones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoining. This hapned in the year 1315. Grown confident by this Success, they brought the new *Canton* of *Lucern* into their Confederacy by the force of Arms, Anno 1332. and that of *Zurich* by their Reputation and like hope of Liberty, Anno 1351. in which year those of *Zug*, and *Glaris* invaded by the former five, and willing to discharge themselves of their Lordly Masters, were united to them, as was the new *Canton* of *Bern* in the year next following. In the year 1381. the Towns of *Solothurn* and *Friburg* descended from the House of *Zeringen*, (at the expiration of that Line) upon those of *Habsburg*, revolted from their natural Lords, and admitted *Cantons*, occasioned *Leopold*, Son of *Albert* the short, and Brother of *Albert* IV. Duke of *Austria*, to make War upon them: in which War being vanquished and slain near *Sempach*, a Village of the *Canton* of *Lucern*, with the Flower of his Nobility and Gentry, Anno 1386. and the succeeding Dukes not venturing any more against them, the residue of the *Cantons* and *Confederates* were in time made up.

Having thus cleared themselves of the House of *Austria*, they continued free and unmolested, but never came to any Reputation for their Valour, till the War made upon them by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, whom they discomfited in three great Battels, and slew him also in the third. A War commenced by him at the first on small occasions, and less hope; the Country being so barren, and the People so poor, that their Embassadour to the Duke (as *Comines* reporteth) protested, that if all their Country-men were taken, they would not be able to pay a Ransom, to the value of the Spurs and Bridle-bits in his Camp. Certainly at that time they were so poor, that they knew not what Riches was. For having won the first Battle at *Granson* (the other two were those of *Morat* and *Nancy*) one of the goodliest *Pavilions* in the World, was by them torn in pieces, and turned into Breeches and Side-coats: divers silver Plates and Dishes, they sold for a *French* *Sous* (each *Sous* a little more than an *English* Penny) supposing them to be but Pewter; and a great Diamond of the Dukes, which was the goodliest Jewel in *Christendom*, was sold to a Priest for a *Guilder*; and by him again to some of the Lords of the Country for three *franks*. After their Valour

shewed in these Battels, *Lewis* XI. took them into Pension, giving them yearly forty thousand Crowns, viz. twenty thousand to the *Cantons*, and twenty thousand to particular Persons: and bowed so much beneath the Majesty of the most *Christian* King, as to term himself one of the *Burgesses* of their Corporation; and to contend with the Duke of *Savoy*, which of them should be held for their first *Allie*. By these Arts, and the nearness of their Forces for those occasions, he wrested *Burgundy* out of the hands of *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*; and *Lewis* XII. won *Millain* from *Ludowick Sforze*, whom they perfidiously betrayed, as was said before. Upon the merit of these Services, they required an Augmentation of their Pensions: which when this *Lewis* XII. denied, they withdrew themselves from the Amity of the *French*, and entred into the Service of Pope *Julio* II. who therefore stiled them the *Defenders of the Church*, An. 1510. The fruits of which Entertainment was the Defeat of the whole Forces of King *Lewis*, and the loss of *Millain*; into which *Maximilian Sforze*, the Son of *Ludowick*, was solemnly re-instated by the *Confederates*: who to oblige the *Switzers* more firmly to him, gave them those Towns and Valleys in the *Alpes* of *Italy* (formerly Members of that Dukedom) which now belong unto the *Switzers*, reckoned amongst the *Præfectures* of their Common-wealth. *Francis* I. in pursuance of his claim to *Millain*, gave them a great and memorable overthrow at the Battel of *Marignan*. Yet afterwards considering what Damage his Realm had sustained by the Revolt of the Auxiliaries to his Enemies, he renewed the *Confederation* with them, on Condition that he should restore the ancient Pension of forty thousand Crowns; Secondly, that he should pay unto them at certain terms, six hundred thousand Crowns; Thirdly, that he should entertain four thousand of them in his pay continually; Fourthly, that for the restoring of such places as they had taken from the Dutchy of *Millain*, he should give unto them thirty thousand Crowns: Fifthly, that he should give them three Months pay beforehand: Sixthly and lastly, that *Maximilian Sforze*, whom they had estated in *Millain*, and were now going to dispossess, might by the King be created Duke of *Nemours*, endowed with twelve thousand *franks* of yearly Revenue, and married to a Daughter of the blood Royal. On these conditions, as honourable to them, as burthensome to the King, was the League renewed, An. 1522. since which time, they have obtained, that six hundred of their Country are to be of the *French* King's Guard; five hundred of which wait without at the Gates of the Courts, the other hundred in the great Hall. And yet the *French* Kings did not so ingross the Market, though they raised the price of the Commodity, but that all other Princes might have them also for their Money: the Kings of *Spain* and others bidding fair for them, but never going so high as the *French* had done. At last, upon the differences which grew amongst themselves in point of Religion, they grew to be divided also in point of Pension: the *Papish* *Cantons* taking Pensions of the Pope, and the King of *Spain*; the *Protestants* of the *French*, the mixt, of both; and all of the *Venetians*. By which means being bribed and corrupted by all, they came in very little time to be trusted of none. Which sudden sinking of that Fame and Reputation which they had attained to, together with the Reasons of it; that notable Statesman and Historian *Guicciardine* doth describe as followeth: "The Name (saith he) of this wild and uncivil Nation, hath got great honour by their Concord, and glory by Arms. For being fierce by Nature, inured to War, and exact keepers of Military Discipline, they have not only defended their own Country, but have won much praise in Foreign parts: which doubtless had been greater, if they had fought to enlarge their own Empire, and not for Wages, to enlarge the Empire of others; and if nobly they had propounded unto themselves any other ends than the gain

gain of Money; by the love whereof being made abject, they have lost the opportunity of becoming fearful to Italy. For since they never came out of their Confines, but as *Mercenary Men*, they have had no publick fruit of their Victories: but by their Covetousness, have become intolerable in their Actions, where they overcame, and in their demands with other Men; yea, at home froward and obstinate in their conclusions, as well as following their commands, under whose pay they serve in War. Their chief Men have Pensions of several Princes to favour them in their publick Meetings; and so private profit being preferred before the good of the publick, they are apt to be corrupted, and fall at discord amongst themselves, with great lessening of their Reputation, which they had gotten amongst Strangers. So he, relating the Occurrences of the year 1511, which the following issue of Affairs hath fully verified.

As for the Government of this State, it is meerly popular, and that not only in the particular Cantons, but the aggregate Body of their Council: the Gentry and Nobility being either rooted up in those long Wars which were betwixt them and their Vassals, justly provoked by those intolerable pressures and exactions which they laid upon them; or else worn out of memory and observation, for want of sway and suffrage in the Councils of the Common-wealth. Only in *Schaffhausen*, *Basil*, and *Zurich*, are some Gentry left, not capable of any place or suffrage in the Senate of the said Cantons (from which they are excluded by the common People, because they joyned not with them in their first Revolt) unless they wave their Gentry, and be enrolled amongst the number of *Plebeians*. The rest they have (it seemeth) in so poor esteem, that *Porters* and *Mechanicks* of the meanest Trades, in all occasions of War, are numbred with and amongst these Gentlemen; making up one Society only, and joyning with them in electing the Master of their Company, who is one of the Senate. But because that every Canton hath his proper Magistrates, but more or fewer, according as it is in greatness, or in the number of its several *Resorts*, or Sub-divisions; it will not be amiss to shew what number of *Resorts* are in every Canton: that is to say, in *Unterwalden* only two, in *Switz* six, in *Uri* ten, in *Zug* five, in *Glaris* or *Glarona* fifteen, in *Apenzel* six, in *Lucern* seven, in *Solothurn* no more than one, in *Friburg* nineteen, in *Basil* and *Schaffhausen* but one a piece (the Cantons there and in *Solothurn*, reaching but little further than the Towns themselves) in that of *Zurich* thirty one, and thirty in that of *Bern*; in all one hundred forty and eight. Of these consists the body of this Common-wealth. In ordering whereof, every particular Canton hath its proper Magistrate, chosen by the Commonalty of that Canton (whom they call the *Huaman*) together with a standing Council assistant to him, chosen out of the People, for the directing and disposing of their own Affairs; which meet and sit in the chief Town and Village of that *Distric*. But if the Cause concern the Publick, then every Canton sendeth one or more Commissioners to the general *Diets*; where they determine of the business which they meet about, according to the major part of the Votes: the Commissioners of every Canton having one Vote only, though many may be sent from each, to add the greater weight to their Consultations. The place of meeting is most commonly at the Town of *Baden*, in respect of the Commodity of the Inns and Houses, the pleasant situation and famous Medicinal Baths: and because it is seated in the very centre of *Switzerland*, and subject to the eight first Cantons. And here they do determine of War, Peace, and Leagues; of making Laws, of sending, receiving, and answering Embassadors; of Governments, and distributing the publick Offices; and finally, of difficult Causes and Appeals, referred unto the judgment of the Great Council, in which the City *Zurich*, chief of the Cantons, hath the first place, not by Antiquity, but Dignity, and of old

Custom hath the greatest Authority of calling together this Great Council, signifying by Letters to each Canton, the Cause, Time, and Place of Meeting: yet so, that if any Canton think it for the publick good, to have an extraordinary meeting of their Commissioners, they write to them of *Zurich* to appoint the same. That which the greater number do resolve upon, is without delay put in execution.

The Forces of these *Swisse* consist altogether of Foot, Horse being found unserviceable in this Mountainous Country. And of these Foot, *Boterus* reckoneth that they are able to raise sixscore thousand. Which possibly may be true enough, if it be understood of all that be able to bear Arms. For otherwise *de facto*, the greatest Army that ever they brought into the Field, consisted but of one and thirty thousand Men, which was that where-with they aided the Confederate States of Italy against the French, and restored *Maximilian Sforze* to the Dukedom of *Millain*. Their ordinary standing Forces are conceived to be sixteen or seventeen thousand, which they may bring into the Field, leaving their Towns and Forts well furnished. And for their Revenue, it is not like to be very great, considering the poverty of their Country, and their want of Traffick with other Nations. That which is ordinary and in common, ariseth out of the Annual Pensions which they receive from Foreign States; the profits arising out of their *Dutch* and *Italian* Prefectures, the Impost laid on Wines sold in Taverns, and Corn used by Bakers; and the Rents of a dissolved Monastery called *Kings field* (or *Conings-field*) because many Kings and Queens have been Cloistered there, amounting to forty thousand Guldans yearly. Which Monastery was built in the year 1380. in memory and honour of the Emperor *Albertus*, slain by his Nephew *Spanthack*, not far from *Basil*. Their extraordinary doth consist of Spoils that be gotten in the War; which if it be managed in common, are divided in common; but if by two or three of the Cantons only, the rest can claim no share in the booty gotten.

But this is only in relation to the *Switzers* themselves.

For otherwise taking in the Confederate States as well without as within the bounds of that Country, they are able to raise fifty or three-score thousand Men; that is to say, the *Switzers* themselves seventeen thousand Men, the *Grisons* ten thousand, those of *Wallisland* six thousand, the Abbot and Town of *St. Gall* four thousand, the City of *Geneva* two thousand; besides what *Rotwel* and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Cities, are able to contribute towards it; the Dukes of *Savoy* being bound by their ancient Leagues to aid them with six hundred Horses, at his own charges; besides two thousand six hundred Crowns in Annual Pensions. But the Revenue of those States is ordered by it self apart, and never comes within the computation of the publick; unless it be on the repulsing of a common Enemy, in which they are equally concerned. In which case, and others of a general interest, they communicate both Heads and Purfes: the Delegates and Commissioners of all the States of this Confederacy, meeting together to consult of the Common Cause, which Meeting they entitle the Great Council. But this is very seldom held, publick Affairs being generally ordered by the Commissioners of the *Switzers* only, though they themselves disclaim the Name of *Switzers*, as too mean and narrow, and call themselves *Eidienossen*, that is to say, Partakers of the sworn Leagues. More of this Common-wealth he that lists to see, may satisfy himself in *Simler*, who purposely and punctually hath described the same.

The Leagues of the GRISONS.

THE Country of the *GRISONS* comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lieth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhene*, *Im*, *Adice* or *Athesis*, and

Adua: being bounded on the East, with the Country of *Tirol*; on the West with *Switzerland*; on the North with *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and a part of the *Switzers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Country far more Mountainous than any of this *Alpine* Tract, and having less natural Commodities to boast it self of, more than the Fountains of those Rivers before mentioned.

The People of it by most *Latine* Writers of these times, are called by the Name of *Rheti*, the Country *Rhetia*: and so far properly enough, as that the ancient *Rheti* did inhabit all the Lands possessed by the *Grisons*: though the *Grisons* do not inhabit a fourth part of those Lands, which were possessed heretofore by the ancient *Rheti*: For anciently the *Rheti* did extend their Dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of *Italy*, to the River of *Danow*, *Danube*; comprehending besides this of the *Grisons*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and so much also of the *Switzers*, as was not in possession of the old *Helvetii*. Within which Tract there were not only many rich Valleys and fruitful Fields; but a most pleasant Race of Wines called *Vina Rhetica*, much drank of by *Augustus Cæsar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no Man can conceive to grow in this barren Country. More properly *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth this Tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, Mountainous Fields, which the continual Snow made to look of an hoary hue: and by allusion thereunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the present by the Name of *Graunpuntner*, that is to say, the hoary or gray Confederates.

As for the *Rheti*, take them in the former Latitude, they were subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius*, the Sons-in-law and adopted Children of *Augustus Cæsar*, A. U. C. 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, viz. *Rhetia prima*, and *Rhetia secunda*, both of them appertaining by *Constantines* new Model, to the *Dioceß* of *Italy*. A Nation in the first Original of *Italian* Race, and so more properly to be assigned to that *Dioceß*; but had inhabited this Tract from the time that *Bellovesus* the Gaul seized on part of *Tuscany*, expelling thence the ancient Inhabitants thereof: who under the Conduct of *Rhetus*, a great Man amongst them, possessed themselves of these Mountains, and afterwards of the Vales adjoining, which they called *Rhetia*, by the name of their Captain General. This happened in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, in the first Cradle, as it were, of the *Roman* Empire. In the declining Age whereof, during the Reign of *Valentinian III.* and *Anastasius*, those parts which lay nearest unto *Germany*, and were worth the Conquering, were subdued by the *Almains*, and *Boiarians*; by them Incorporated with the rest of their several States. The residue of this Mountainous Tract, as not worth the looking after, continued a Member of the Empire, till given by *Charles the Great* to the Bishop of *Chur*; whose Successors, being several ways molested by their potent Neighbours, confederated with the *Switzers* for their mutual Aid and Preservation, Anno 1497. By whose Aid they so valiantly made good their ground against the *Austrians*, that at the last, after the loss of twenty thousand Men on both sides, the points in difference were accorded, and a Peace concluded.

This is the substance of this Story, as to former times, to which there cannot much be added in the way of History; little or no alteration happening in their Affairs, but a more perfect settling of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we must observe that this whole Tract is call into three Divisions; that is to say, the *Upper League* or *Liga Grisa*. 2. *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the League of the House of God. 3. The *Lower League* called also *Liga Ditture*, or the League of the ten Commonalties. The eighth *Italian Prefectures* will make a fourth. Their Buildings generally in the three first being cold and mountainous, are of Free-stone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with Snow: the Windows thereof glazed and large, of which for the said three parts of the year they only open a little quarry of

Glass, and presently shut it close again; the outside of the Windows having leaves of Wood, to keep the heat of their Stows from going out, or any cold from coming in. And as for Travelling, the ways are for the most part unsafe and dangerous, by reason of the straight Passages, dreadful Precipices, and those almost continual Bridges which hang over the terrible falls and Cataracts of the River *Rhene*, descending with great violence from the highest Mountains: huge Hills of Snow tumbling into the Valleys, with a noise as hideous, as if it were a clap of Thunder.

For the Particulars, the *Upper League* lieth in the highest and most mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of *Italy*, having therein those vast Mountains of *Locknannier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of which the two Streams of the *Rhene* have their first Original. By the *French* it is called *Ligo Grise*, or the *Gray League*, (the word *Gris*, or *Grise*, in that Language, being *Gray* in ours) in the same sense as the *Dutch* call it *Graunpuntner*, that is, *Confederati cani*, which we may render properly the *Confederate Grise-pates*: either because the Mountains are continually covered with a perriwig of hoary *Isicles*, or from the Heads of the People, *Gray* before their time. It consisteth of nineteen *Resorts* or Commonalties, according to the number of their Vales and Villages, of which four only speak the *Dutch*, all the rest a corrupt *Italian*: and was the first which did confederate with the *Switzers*, from whence the Name of *Grisons* came unto the rest, who after joyned with them in the same Confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of Note. The principal of those that be, are 1. *Ilanter*, the place sometimes of the *General Diets* for these Leagues. 2. *Diserntis*, where is a very rich Monastery. 3. *St. Bernardino*, situate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*. 4. *Mafex*, sometimes an Earldom, giving name to the Valley *Mafexer-tal*. 5. *Galanckter*, whence the Vale so named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6. *Ruffia*, situate on the River *Muesa*, near *Belinzano*, on the skirts of *Italy*. This League is composed of 28 Communities, of which 18 are Papists, and the rest are Protestants, the Communities of the two Religious live Neighbourly together; yet they will not suffer those of another Religion to live amongst them, so that every Community is intirely of the same Religion, and if any one change, he must go into another Community. Burnet.

2. The second League, is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the League of the House of God, so called because it was the proper Patrimony of the Bishop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the *Middle League*, as being situate between the *Upper League* on the West, and the *Lower League* upon the East. It is the greatest of the three, containing twenty one *Resorts* or Commonalties: of which nine lie on this side the tops of the Mountains towards *Germany*, the rest towards *Italy*: and yet two only speak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of most note are 1. *Tintzen*, the *Timetio* of *Antoninus*, seated amongst high and inaccessible Mountains, betwixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2. *Mur*, (called *Murus* by the same *Antoninus*) in the Valley of *Bergel*; a Valley extending from the head of the River *Mura*, towards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian Prefectures*. 3. *Stalla*, called *Bervia*, by the *Italians*, because the way doth in that place divide it self. 4. *Jacomo* (in the Valley of *Compolschin*) called *Travafede* by *Antoninus*. 5. *Sinnada*, in the Valley of *Engadin*. And 6. *Chur*, by some *Coira*, but more truly *Curia*, so called from the long stay that *Constantine* the Great made here with his Court and Army, in a War intended against the *Germans*; built afterwards by some part of his Forces which continued here, Anno 357. about half a *Dutch* Mile from the meeting of the two streams of the *Rhene*, in form Triangular, the Buildings indifferent in themselves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hill; in one corner of which standeth the *Closo*, and therein the Cathedral Church, a stately Edifice, but more in accompt of the Natives who have seen

no fairer, than it is with Strangers: and near the Church the Bishop's Palace, and the Houses of the Canons, all well built, and handsomely adorned. The Bishop of this City, and of all the Country of these Leagues (for they received their Bishop and the Faith together, Anno 489.) acknowledgeth the Archbishop of Mentz for their Metropolitan; is reckoned for a Prince of the Empire, and the rightful Lord both of this City and the whole League: but on the Introduction of the Reformed Religion, which they had from the Switzers and Genevians, the Citizens withdrew themselves from their Obedience to the Bishop, and govern the City in the manner of a Free-State. So far conformable to him, for their own preservation, that as the Bishop and his Canons, with the rest of this League, upon occasion of the wrongs done them by the House of Austria; Lords of the Neighbouring Tirol; joyned in Confederacy with the seven first Cantons of the Switzers (which was in the year 1498.) So did the Citizens of Chur, after they had withdrawn themselves from the command of their Bishops, concur with them at last in that mutual League. In this there are 24 Communities, and the Burgo-Master of Coire is ever the Head of the League, and they are almost all Protestants; yet the Papists are scarcely kept in Order by the Persons of Quality amongst them, who see their Interest: In all the three Leagues the Protestants are said to be two thirds. Burnet.

3. The third League of these Grisons, is the Lower League, called also *Liga Dittusa*, or the League of the ten Jurisdictions; situate close upon Tirol, in the Northeast part of the whole Country. Of all the ten, two only, which are those of *Malans* and *Meienfeld*, obey the joyn't commands of the three Leagues of the Grisons; the other eight being subject to the Arch-Duke of Austria under whom they are suffered to enjoy their ancient Privileges, for fear of uniting with the Switzers; which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common League, Anno 1436. conditioning their mutual defence against all Enemies, preservation of their Peace, and maintenance of their Privileges; reserving notwithstanding their Obedience to their natural Lords. In which respect, and by reason of the Interest and Society which they have with the rest of the Grisons, they are in friendship with the Swisse, but in no Confederacy. City or walled Town they have none. The chief of those they have, are 1. *Castels*, the Seat of the Government for the Arch-Duke of Austria; 2. *Malans*, and 3. *Meienfeld*, both bordering upon the Rhene. 4. *Tanauas*, giving name to the first and greatest of the ten Jurisdictions, the chief Town of this League, in which are held the General Diets for the same; and where are kept Monuments and Records which concern their Privileges. In this League is the Mountain called *Rhæticon mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Prettigower-berg*, because it is at the end of the Valley which the Dutch call *Prettigow*.

4. As for the Italian Praefectures they are eight in number, and were given unto the Grisons by *Maximilian Sforze*, Duke of Millain, Anno 1513. at such time as he gave the like Present to the Cantons of Switzerland. Of these the first is called *Plurs*, so called from the chief Town of the same name, in Latine *Plura*, once seated in a Plain at the foot of the Alps, near the River *Maira*, the chief of sundry Villages lying in the same bottom; now nothing but a deep and bottomless Gulf. For on the 26th of August 1618, an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinkling of an eye 1500 people, (Burnet saith 2200.) and left no sign or ruine of a Town there standing; but in the place thereof a great Lake of some two Miles length. 2. *Chiaranna*, situate in a pleasant Valley so called, near the River *Maira*, and ten Italian Miles from the Lake of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the Dutch *Clevenertal*, or the Valley of *Cleven*, more near unto the ancient name. 3. The *Valtoline*, *Vallis Tolina* in the Latine, a pleasant

Valley, extending threescore Miles in length, from the head of the River *Aada*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*, and two Miles in breadth: the Wines thereof are much commended, and frequently transported on this side the Alps. It is divided into six Praefectures, according to the names of the principal Towns. The chief whereof, are 1. *Bormio*, seated near the head of the River *Aada*. 2. *Tesio*, the chief Fortrefs of the whole Valley. 3. *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the Seat of the Governour, or Lieutenant General of the whole Country. This Valley lying opportunely for the passage of the King of Spain's Forces out of *Millain* into *Germany*, by the Practices and Treasons of *Rodolphus Planta*, one of the Natives of it, and of the *Romish* Religion, was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governour of *Millain*, Anno 1622. the whole Country brought under the obedience of that King, Chur it self forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* settled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joyn't Forces of the French, Venetians and *Savoyards*, the whole Valley was recovered from the Spaniards, and after a long Treaty between France and Spain, the Grisons re-estated in their just possessions, Anno 1635. save that the Spaniard still holds the Fort of *Fuentes*, for the safer passage of his Forces, if occasion be. This is one of the richest Valleys in the World, in which there are three Harvels some years, yet the Grisons draw nothing thence but some small inconsiderable Fines, ten or twelve thousand Crowns being thought a great deal.

Such is the State of three Leagues considered severally, and apart from one another. In reference to the whole, they make up one Government, or Common-wealth; for ordering whereof they hold a General Diet, once in every year, consisting of threescore and three Commissioners: that is to say, 28 from the Upper League, 23 from the League of the House of God, and 14 from the League of the ten Jurisdictions. These have Authority to determine of Appeals from the common Praefectures, to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Embassies, and Laws, which concern the Publick: yet so, that in a point of Judicature, it is lawful to appeal unto the Commonalties of every League, who have Authority if need be, to Reverse the Sentence; the Causes being severally proposed, and passed by the major part of the Voices. The Government of each League, popular, is amongst the Switzers.

Dr. Burnet who lately travell'd these Countries observes, That Switzerland lies between France and Italy, that are both of them Countries incomparably more rich and better furnished with all the Pleasures and Conveniences of Life than it is; and yet Italy is almost quite dispeopl'd, and the People that remain in it, are reduced to a misery that can scarce be imagin'd, by those who have not seen it: And France is in a great measure dispeopl'd, and the Inhabitants are reduced to a Poverty, that appears in all the Marks in which it can shew it self, both in their Houses, Furniture, Cloaths, and Looks.

On the contrary, Switzerland is extream full of People, and in every place in the Villages, as well as in their Towns, one sees all the Marks he can look for of Plenty and Wealth. Their Houses and Windows are in good case, and the High-ways are well maintained, all the People are well Cloath'd, and every one lives at his ease.

This Observation surprized me (saith he) yet more in the Country of the Grisons, who have almost no Soil at all, being situate in Valleys that are almost washed away with the Torrents that fall from the Hills, and yet those Vallies are well Peopl'd, and every one lives Happily and at ease, under a gentle Government, whilst other Rich and Plentiful Countries are reduced to such Miseries; that as many of the Inhabitants are forced to change their Seats, so those who stay behind, can scarce live and pay those grievous Impositions that are laid

laid upon them. The *Peasants* on the contrary in *Bern* are some of them worth 100000. Crowns and 10000 commonly, they paying no Duties to the Publick. The liberty of this Country is such (saith the same Author in another place) that the Natives when they have made up Estates elsewhere, are glad to leave even *Italy*, and the best parts of *Germany*, and to come and live amongst those Mountains, of which the very sight is enough to fill a Man with Horror.

On the contrary, *Lombardy* which is certainly the beautifullest Country that can be imagined, the ground lies so even, it is so well watered, so sweetly divided by rows of Trees: in a vast extent of Soil of above 200 Miles long and 100 broad, in which the whole Country is equal to the loveliest spots in all *England* or *France*, and has all the sweetness of *Holland* or *Flanders*, but

with a warmer Sun, and a better Air, caused by the nearness of the Mountains; so that it seems the most desirable place in the World to live in; yet after all the Government is so excessive severe, that there is nothing but Poverty and Beggary over all this rich Country, so that a Traveller in many places finds almost nothing, if he does not buy his Provisions in the great Towns, and carry them with him.

There are in these *Alpine* Provinces,

Archbishops 2. Bishops 13.

Universities 4.

i. e.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>Turin.</i> | 3. <i>Basil.</i> |
| 2. <i>Geneva.</i> | 4. <i>Zurich.</i> |

O F

FRANCE.

HAVING thus crossed the *Alpes*, we may indifferently dispose our selves for *France* or *Germany*. But, we will follow the Course and Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, which first passed into *France*, before it meddled with the *Germans*; and had brought *Spain* and *Britain* under the Form of *Roman* Provinces, when *Germany* was looked on at a greater distance.

FRANCE then according to the present dimensions of it, is bounded on the East, with a branch of the *Alpes*, which divide *Dauphine* from *Piemont*; as also, with the Countries of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, and some parts of *Germany*, and the *Netherlands*; on the West, with the *Aquitain Ocean*, and a Branch of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North, with the *English Ocean*, and some parts of *Belgium*; and on the South, with the rest of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and the *Mediterranean*.

The Figure of it, is almost Square, each side of the *Quadrature* being reckoned 600 Miles in length. But, they that go more exactly to work upon it, make the length hereof to be 660 *Italian* Miles; the breadth 570. only; the whole Circumference to amount to 2040. Seated in the Northern Temperate Zone, between the middle *Parallel* of the Fifth *Clime*, where the longest day is 15 hours; and the middle *Parallel* of the Eighth *Clime*, where the longest day is 16 hours and an half.

It hath this present Name of *France*, from the *Franci*, or *Franks*, a people of *Germany*, who seized upon those parts of it which lay nearest to the *Rhene*, in the time of *Valentinian III.* and, having afterwards subdued *Paris*, and made it the Seat-Royal of their growing Empire, they caused the Country thereabouts to be called *France*. Which Name, as they enlarged their Borders, they imposed on, or communicated rather, to the rest of this Country, and to those parts of *Germany* also, which were conquered by them. At which time, for distinction sake, they called the East parts of their whole Empire by the Name of *Osten-reich*, or *Austrasia*, lying now wholly out of *France*, in *Germany*, and that part of *Belgium* which is subject to the King of *Spain*: and for the West parts thereof they have the Name *Westen-riech*, or *Westrasia*, (in the barbarous *Latine* of that Age) *West France*, or *Francia Occidentalis*; to which the Name of *France* was at last appropriated, according to the limits before laid down.

Anciently, it was called *Gallia*, and the people, *Galli*; and by that Name occurs, most commonly, in the Writers of the *Roman* story: and *Gallia Transalpina*, because situate on the furthest side of the *Alpes*, from *Italy*, to difference it from the Country of those *Gauls*, which being planted in those parts which we now call *Lombardy*, was called *Cisalpinia*: Sometimes it was called *Galatia* also, and by that name known amongst the *Greeks*: by *Ptolomy* called *Celto-Galatia*, or the *Galatia* of the *Celtæ*, a potent Nation of old *Gaul*; to distinguish it from *Galatia*, one of the Provinces of *Asia minor*, denominated from the *Galatians*, or *Gauls*, of this Country. Whence it became so named, is not yet determined. Some think it was called *Gallia*, from the Greek word *Γαλα* (*Gala*) signifying Milk, *quia Lacteos*, i. e. *albos homines producebant*, for the milky and white complexion of the People, compared to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, who first imposed it. Others, and amongst them, *Diodorus Siculus*, derive the name from *Galata*, a Son of *Hercules*; to which that of *Galatia* comes as near as may be. That *Hercules* was sometimes in this Country, is affirmed also by *Ammianus Marcellinus*; who further adds, That after he had suppressed those Tyrants which oppressed the people, he begat many Children on the principal Women; *Et eas partes quibus imperitabant, nominibus suis appellasse*, Lib. 11. Who gave their own names to those parts over which they ruled. But, in another place, acknowledging, That the *Grecians* call this people, *Galatæ*, (*ita enim Gallos sermo Græcus appellat*) he telleth us from *Timogenes* an ancient Author, one very diligent in the search of the *Gallick* Antiquities, that the *Aborigines*, or first Inhabitants hereof, called themselves *Celtæ*, by the name of one of their Kings, whom they highly honoured; *Et matris ejus vocabulo Galatas*, and *Galatæ*, from the Name of his Mother *Galata*; who, and properly enough, might be a Daughter of *Hercules*, mistook by *Diodorus*, for one of his Sons.

Of the Original of this People, more anon. In the mean time, we may take so much notice of the ancient *Gaul* as to affirm him (out of *Cæsar*, and other Authors) to be quick-witted, of a sudden and nimble apprehension; but withal, very rash and hair-brain'd (*ut sunt subita Gallorum ingenia*, is a note set upon them by the Pen of *Cæsar*:) so full of Law-suits and Contentions, that their Lawyers never wanted work. *Gallia Caussidicos*,

fidicos, &c. as that Poet hath it, of vehement Affections, and precipitate in all their Actions, as well Military as Civil; falling on like a Clap of Thunder, and presently going off in Smoke. *Primus impetus major quam virorum, secundus minor quam feminarum*, was a part also of their Character, in the time of *Florus* the Historian. And though the present *French* be generally of another Original; yet there is so much of the old *Gaul* still left among them, either by the impression of the Heavenly Bodies, or by Inter-marriages with the *Gauls*, as they overcame them; that all the Qualities are still predominant in the *French*; not differing from the ancient *Gaul*, but in Name and Habit. For further evidence whereof, take with you a Comparison, homely I must confess, but to the life expressing the nature of the *French*, compared with the *Dutch* and *Spanish*, in matters of War. The *French* is said to be like a *Flea*, quickly skipping into a Country, and soon leaping out of it; as was the Expedition of *Charles VIII.* into *Italy*. The *Dutch* is said to be like a *Louse*, slowly mastering a place, and as slowly (yet at last) driven out of their hold; as was their taking and losing of *Ostend* and *Gulick*. The *Spaniard* is said to be like a *Crab*, or *Pediculus inguinalis*, which being once crept into a place, is so rooted there, that nothing but the extremity of Violence can fetch him out again. In which, I think I need not instance; it being generally observed, that the *Spaniards* will endure all possible hardship, before they will part with any thing that they are possessed of. It is used also for a By-word, *That the Italian is wise before-hand, the Dutch in the time of Action, and the French after it is done*: a Wisdom much like that of the ancient *Gauls*. Nor are they less Litigious than the old *Gauls* were: insomuch as it is thought, that there are more Law-suits tried among them in seven Years, than have been in *England* from the Conquest, till the time of King *James* the First. They are great Scoffers, yea even in matters of Religion, as appeareth by the Story of a Gentleman lying sick on his Death-bed, who, when the Priest had perswaded him, that the Sacrament of the Altar was the very Body and Blood of CHRIST, refused to eat thereof, *because it was Friday*. Nor can I forget another in the same extremity; who seeing the Host (for so they call the Consecrated Elements) brought unto him by a Lubberly Priest, said, *That CHRIST came to him, as he entred into Jerusalem, riding upon an Ass*. As for the Women, they are said to be witty, but apish, wanton, and incontinent; where a Man at his first entrance may find Acquaintance; and at his first Acquaintance may find an entrance. So *Dallington* in his *View of France* describeth them. But I have since heard this Censure condemned of some Uncharitableness, and the *French* Gentlewomen highly magnified for all those Graces which may beautify and adorn that Sex. And it is possible enough, that it may be so in some particulars, though it be more than any Man would guess at, that cometh amongst them. For, generally at the first sight you shall have them as familiar with you, as if they had known you from your Cradle; and are so full of Chat and Tattle, even with those they know not, as if they were resolved sooner to want Bread than Words; and never to be silent but in the Grave.

As to the Persons of this People, they are commonly of a middle Stature, and for the most part, of a slight making; their Complexion being generally hot and moist, which makes them very subject to the heats of Lust, and easily inclinable unto those Diseases which are concomitants thereof. Their Constitution somewhat tender, if not delicate; which rendreth them impatient of Toil and Labour; and is, in part, the cause of those ill Successes which have hapned to them in the Wars; in which they have lost as much for want of Constancy and Perseverance in their Enterprizes, as they have gained by their Courage in the Undertaking. And for the Women, they are, for the most part, very persona-

ble, of straight Bodies, slender Wastes, and a fit symmetry of proportion in all the rest; their Hands white, long, and slender, and easily discernable to be so; for, either they wear no Gloves at all, or else so short, as if they were cut off at the Hand-wrist. To these, the Complexion of their Faces, and the Colour of their Hair, too much inclining to the black, holds no true Decorum. 'Tis true, the Poets commend *Læda* for her black Hair, and not unworthily; *Læda fuit nigris conspicienda comis*, as it is in *Ovid*. But this was specially, because it set off, with the greater lustre, the amiable sweetness of her Complexion; for in that case, the Hair doth set forth the Face, as Shadows commonly do a Picture; and the Face so becometh the Hair, as a *Field Argent* doth a *Sable bearing*; which kind of Coat, our *Critical Heralds* call the *most fair*. But when a black Hair meets with a brown or swarthy Complexion, it falls short of that attractiveness of Beauty which *Ovid*, being so great a *Crafts-Master* in the *Art of Love*, did commend in *Læda*.

The chief Exercises they use, are, 1. *Tennis*; every Village having a *Tennis-Court*, *Orleanse* 60, *Paris* many hundreds. 2. *Dancing*; a sport to which they are so generally affected, that were it not so much inveighed against by their straight-laced Ministers, it is thought that many more of the *French Catholics* had been of the *Reformed Religion*. For, so extremely are they bent upon this disport, that neither Age nor Sickness, no nor Poverty it self, can make them keep their Heels still when they hear the Musick. Such as can hardly walk abroad without their Crutches, or go as if they were troubled all day with a *Sciatica*, and perchance have their raggs hang so loose about them that one would think a swift Galliard might shake them into their nakedness, will to the *Dancing-green* howsoever, and be there as eager at the sport as if they had left their several Infirmities and Wants behind them. What makes their Ministers (and indeed, all that follow the *Genevian Discipline*) inveigh so bitterly against *Dancing*, and punish it with such severity when they find it used, I am not able to determine, nor doth it any way belong unto this Discourse. But being it is a Recreation which this People are so given unto, and such a one as cannot be followed but in a great deal of Company, and before many Witnesses and Spectators of their Carriage in it, I must needs think the Ministers of the *French Church* more nice than wise, if they chuse rather to deter Men from their Congregations by so strict a *Stoicism*, than indulge any thing unto the jollity and natural gaiety of this People, in matters not offensive but by accident only.

The Language of this People is very voluble and pleasant; but rather *Elegant* than *Copious*; and therefore much troubled for want of proper words to find out *Periphrases*: besides that very much of it is expressed in the Action; the Head and Shoulders move as significantly towards it, as the Lips and Tongue; and he that hopeth to speak it with any good Grace, must have somewhat in him of the *Mimick*. A Language enriched with great plenty of *Proverbs*, and consequently, a great help to the *French* humour of Scoffing; and so naturally disposed for Courtship, as makes all the People Complementary; the poorest *Cobler* in the Parish, hath his *Court Cringes*, and his *Beaubenisste de Cour*, his *Court-Holy-Water*, (as they call it) as perfectly as the best *Gentleman-Huissier* in *Paris*. Compared with that of other Nations, the Language of the *Spaniards* is said to be *Manly*; the *Italian*, *Courty*; and the *French*, *Amorous*. A sweet Language it is, without question, the People leaving out in their Pronunciation, many of their Consonants; and thereby giving occasion to this By-word, *That the French-man pronounceeth not as he writes, singeth not as he pricketh, nor speaketh as he thinketh*. In the Original thereof, it is a compound of the old *Gallick*, *German*, and *Latin* Tongues; the old *Gallick* being questionless the same with the *Welsh* or *British*, as appeareth clearly by these

these Reasons. 1. The *Latin* words are known to have been received from the *Romans*; and the *German* words, at the coming in of the *Franks* and *Burgundians*; but the *Welsh* words which they have, we can give no reason, but that they are the remainder of their ancient Language; of which *Welsh* words which still continue in that Language, *Camden* in his *Britannia* reckoneth not a few. 2. It is said by *Tacitus*, that the *Britans* were the Descendants of the *Gauls*: and this he proveth, as by other Arguments, so from the identity or near resemblance of the Language which both Nations speak. *Utriusque sermo haud multum diversus*, as his own words are. And 3. It is said by *Cæsar*, That the *Gauls* used to pass into *Britain*, to be instructed in the Rights and Learning of the *Druids*; which sheweth that both People speak but one common Tongue; there being in those times, no one Learned Language which other Nations studied, besides their own.

The Soil is extraordinary fruitful, and hath three Load-stones to draw Riches out of other Countries, *Corn*, *Wine*, and *Salt*; in exchange for which, there is yearly brought into *France* 1200000 *l.* Sterling; the Custom of *Salt*, only to the King, being estimated at 1700000 Crowns *per Annum*. And indeed the benefit arising on this one Commodity, is almost incredible; it being constituted by the King's Edict, (which is all in all) That no Man shall have any *Salt* for Domestick uses, (except by special Privilege, and that dearly paid for) but what he must buy of the King's Officers, and that upon such prices too as they please to sell it. Nor can it but be very well stored with *Fish*; for, besides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the Clergy only, are said to be 135000. Their other Merchandizes are *Beeves*, *Hogs*, *Nuts*, *Woods*, *Skins*, vast quantities of all sorts of Linnen. And, to say truth, there are not many Countries in the Christian World to which Nature hath been so prodigal of her choicest Blessings, as she hath to this, the Fields thereof being large and open, and those so intermingled with *Corn* and *Vines*, and every Hedge-row so beset with choice of Fruits, that never any covetous or curious Eye had a fairer object. And yet so miserable is the condition of the common Peasant; partly, by reason of the intolerable Taxes laid upon him by the King; and partly, by those great, but uncertain Rents which are set upon him by his Landlord, (for the poor Husbandman is *Tenant* only at the will of his Lord) that there is many one amongst them who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Vines, that never drinks Wine, nor eats good Bread, from one end of the Year unto the other.

The Christian Faith was planted first amongst the *Gauls*, by some of *St. Peter's* Disciples, sent hither by him at his first coming to *Rome*: *Xystus*, *Fronto*, and *Julianus*, the first Bishops of *Rhemes*, *Perigord*, and *Mantis*, (*Cenomanensium*, in the *Latin*) being said to be of his ordaining in the *Martyrologies*. The like may be affirmed (but on sure grounds) of *Trophimus*, the first Bishop of *Arles*; for, on a Controversie betwixt the Archbishops of *Vienna* and *Arles*, for the dignity of the *Metropolitan*, in the time of Pope *Leo I.* it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Bishop of *Arles*, *Quod prima inter Gallias*, &c. That *Arles* of all the Cities of *Gaul*, did first obtain the happiness of having *Trophimus* ordained Bishop thereof by the hands of *St. Peter*. Nor is *St. Paul* to be denied the honour of sending some of his Disciples thither also to preach the Gospel; *Crescens* sent by him, as he telleth us, 2 *Tim.* 4. into *Galatia*, being the first Bishop of *Vienna*, spoken of before, as, not the *Martyrologies* only, but *Ado Viennensis*, an ancient Writer of that Church, doth expressly say. And that it was into this Country that he sent that *Crescens* at that time, and not unto *Galatia* in *Asia minor*, the Testimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret*, which affirm the same, and that which hath been said before of this Name of *Galatia*, may confirm sufficiently. But Christianity being destroyed by the *French* at their first coming

hither, was again planted by the industry of *St. Remigius* the first Bishop of *Rhemes*; *Clodius*, or *Clodoveus V.* King of the *French*, giving way unto it for his Wives sake, who was zealous in it; and after taking unto himself that holy Calling, on a great Victory which he won against the *Almains*; by whom, being over-laid in the day of Battle, he made his Prayers to *CHRIST*, whom his Wife *Clotilda* worshipped; vowing to be of that Religion if he got the Victory; which Vow he had no sooner made (as the Story telleth us) but *Alemannos invasit timor*, a sudden fear fell upon the *Almains*, and the *French* were Conquerors.

At this time they are divided in Religion, as in other places; some following the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*; and others, that of those Reformed Churches which adhere to *Calvin*. But this division is more ancient than *Calvin's* Days; the same Opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the *Romish* Church) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenses*, *Waldenses*, or *Pauperes de Lugduno*, (the *Vauds* as the *French* Writers call them) of whom we shall speak more when we come to *Lyons*. Suffice it in this place to note, That the Doctrine of the Reformed Churches was not new in *France*, when *Zuinglius* first preached against the superstitions of the Mass, and the worship of Images; and *Calvin* travelled in advancing the Reformation, though much suppressed as to the outward profession of it. But, being revived by their endeavours, it sprung out again, and spread it self so speedily in this Kingdom, that there were reckoned in the Year 1560, above 1240 Churches of them; which cannot, in such a long time, but be wonderfully augmented, though scarce any of them having escaped some Massacre or other. Of these Massacres two are most memorable, *viz.* that of *Merindol* and *Chabriers* as being the first; and the Massacre of *Paris*, as being the greatest. That of *Merindol* hapned in the Year 1545, the Instrument of it being *Minier*, the President of the Council of *Aix*; for, having condemned this poor People of *Herésie*, he mustred a small Army, and set fire on the Villages: They of *Merindol* seeing the flame, with their Wives and Children fled into the Wood, but were there butchered, or sent to the Gallies. One Boy they took, placed him against a Tree, and shot him with Calivers; 25 which had hid themselves in a Cave, were in part stifled, in part burned. In *Chabriers* they so inhumanly dealt with the young Wives and Maids, that most of them died immediately after. The Men and Women were put to the Sword; the Children were Re-baptized, 800 Men were murdered in a Cave, and 40 Women were put together in an old Barn, and burned. Yea, such was the Cruelty of these Soldiers to these poor Women, that when some of them had clambred to the top of the House, with an intent to leap down, the Soldiers beat them back again with their Pikes. The Massacre of *Paris* was more cunningly plotted: A Peace was made with the Protestants; for the assurance whereof, a Marriage was solemnized between *Henry* of *Navarre*, chief of the Protestant Party, and the Lady *Marguerite*, the King's Sister. At this Wedding there assembled the Prince of *Conde*, the Admiral *Coligni*, and divers others of chief note; but there was not so much Wine drunk, as Blood shed at it. At Midnight the Watch-Bell rung, the King of *Navarre* and the Prince of *Conde* are taken Prisoners, the Admiral murdered in his Bed, and 30000 at the least, of the greatest and most potent Men of the Religion, sent by the way of the *Red Sea*, to find the nearest Passage to the Land of *Canaan*, Anno 1572. yet notwithstanding these Massacres, and the long and frequent Wars which were made against them by their Kings, they grew so numerous, and got unto so great a Power, that partly by Capitulations with the *French* Kings, at the end of every Civil War, but principally, by the connivance of King *Henry IV.* who was sometimes the Head of their Party, they had gotten above three hundred walled Towns and Garrisons, and were

were absolute Masters; in effect; of all those Provinces which lie along the *Aquitain* Shore, and the *Pyrenees* from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the River of *Loyre*. But, being grown too insolent by reason of so great a Strength, and standing upon Terms with the King, as a *Free-Estate*, (the *Commonwealth* of *Rochel*, as King *Henry IV.* was used to call it) they drew upon themselves the Jealousie and Fury of King *Lewis XIII.* Who seeing that he could not otherwise dissolve the Knot of their Combination, than by the Sword, drew it out at last; and was so fortunate in the success of his Undertakings, that in two Years (*viz.* Anno 1621, 1622.) he stripped them of all their Walled Towns, except *Montalban* and *Rochel* only; and those two he reduced not long after, by the Power of his Arms, leaving them nothing to rely on for their future Security, but the Grace and Clemency of their King, promoted by their Obedience and Integrity. And it hath sped so well with them since that time, that they never had the exercise of their Religion with so much freedom, as they have hitherto enjoyed since the reducing of their Forts and Garrisons to the Kings obedience. The state of things at present is well understood.

The other Party in Religion, having the countenance of the State, and the prescription and possession of so many Years to confirm the same, is in as prosperous a condition, both for Power and Patrimony, as any that acknowledgeth the Authority of the Popes of Rome. In point of Patrimony, the Author of the *Cabinet* computes the Tythes and Temporal Revenues of the Clergy, besides Provisions of all sorts, to 80 Millions of Crowns; but this Accompt is disallowed by all knowing Men. *Bodin* reporteth from the Mouth of *Monsieur Allemant*, one of the Presidents of Accompts in *Paris*, that they amount to 12 Millions, and 300000 of their *Livres*, which is 1200000 *l.* of our *English* Money; and he himself conceiveth, that they possess seven parts of twelve, of the whole Revenues of that Kingdom. The Book, entituled, *Comment d'Etat*, gives a lower estimate; and reckoning that there are in *France* 200 Millions of *Arpens*, (which is a measure somewhat bigger than our *Acre*) assigneth 47 Millions, which is near a fourth part of the whole, to the *Gallican Clergy*. And then it is resolved by all, that the *Baisemain*, (as they call it) which consists of Offerings, Churchings, Burials, *Diriges*, and such like Casualties, amounteth to as much *per Annum* as their standing Rents. Upon which ground Sir *Edwin Sandys* computed their Revenue at six Millions yearly. And to say truth, there needs a very great Revenue to maintain their Numbers; there being reckon'd in this Kingdom, 13 Archbishops, 104 Bishops, 1450 Abbots, 540 Arch-Priories, 12320 Priories, 567 Nunneries, 700 Convents of Friars, 259 *Commanderies* of *Malta*; besides the Colleges of the *Jesuits*, which being of a late Foundation, are not here accompted. And for the *Parish-Priests*, they are reckoned at 130000 of all sorts, taking in *Deacons*, *Sub-deacons*, and all those of Inferiour Orders, which have some Ministry in their Churches, the number of which was reckon'd, in the time of King *Lewis XI.* to be little less than 100000. But then, 'tis like, that *Chanteries* and *Free Chapels* went in that account; or else the *Hugonots* in the Wars have destroyed more Churches than they are like to build again in haste; there being found in *France*, on a just Accompt, no more than 27400 *Parish-Churches*, besides *Oratories* and *Chapels of Ease* appertaining to them: In which there are supposed to live 15 Millions of People, whereof the Clergy, and the Ministers depending on them, do make up three Millions, which is a fifth part of the whole. And for their Power, the *Gallican Clergy* stands more stoutly to their natural Rights, against the Usurpations and Encroachments of the See of *Rome*, than any other that lives under the Pope's Authority; which they acknowledge so far only, as consistent with their own Privileges, and the Rights of their Sovereign. For neither did they in long

time submit to the Decrees of the Council of *Trent*, nor have they yet admitted of the *Inquisition*; nor yield such store of Gift to the Pope's Mill, as probably might rebound to him from so rich a Clergy. And for his Temporal Power over Kings and Princes, it is a Doctrine so averse from the Positions and Principles of the *Gallican Church*, that in the Year 1610. the Divines of *Paris* published a Declaration, in which it was affirmed, that the Doctrine of the Pope's Supremacy was an erroneous Doctrine, and the ground of that Hellish Position, of Deposing and Killing Kings. And this, indeed, hath constantly been the Doctrine of the *Gallican Church*, since the time of *Gerson*, maintaining the Authority of a Council, above that of the Pope.

But to proceed; The Men most eminent for Learning of either side, have been, (besides those mentioned in the *Alpine* Provinces) *Peter du Moulin*, highly commended for his Eloquence, by the Pen of *Balsac*: *Fr. Junius*, a moderate and grave Divine; *Chamier* the Controverser, and *Philip de Moruey*, Lord of *Plessis*. Of the other Party, *Claudius Espenceus*, a *Sorbon* Doctor, the famous Cardinal of *Peron*; *Genebrard* the Historian, *Petarvius* a learned Jesuit, &c. In the middle times, *St. Bernard*, Abbot of *Clarevalle*; *Pet. Lombard*, Bishop of *Paris*; *John Gerson*, Chancellor of that University, More anciently, *Prosper* of *Aquitain*, *Cassianus* the Hermit, *Irenaeus* the renowned Bishop of *Lyons* (though not here a Native.) And as to Men of other Studies, *Ausonius* the Poet, *Hottoman* and *Gotfredus*, the Civilians; *Duarenus* the Canonist, *Barn. Brissonus* the great Antiquary, *Isaac Casaubon* that renowned Philologer, *Budaeus* that great Master of the Greek Language, *Thuanus* the Historian, *Laurentius* the Anatomist, &c. And as for Military Men, it hath been famous for the Valour of *Clouis*, the first Christian King of the *French*; *Charles Martel*, that stout Champion of the Church against the *Sarazens*; and *Charles* the Great, the Fourth of the Western Empire. In the middle times for *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, one of the Nine Worthies, (as they call them;) the Son of *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*: and in these latter Days, for King *Henry IV.* *Francis* and *Henry*, Dukes of *Guise*; *Charles* Duke of *Bayonne*, *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, &c.

The Laws of this Kingdom are either *Temporary*, and alterable at pleasure; or *Fundamental*, which neither King or Parliament (as they say) can alter. Of this last sort, the principal are, the *Salique* Law, and the Law of *Apennages*. By that of the *Apennage*, the younger Sons of the King are not to have partage in the Kingdom with their Elder Brother. Which Law was made by *Charles* the Great, before whose time we find the Children of the Kings estated in their several Thrones, and the Realm parcelled out among them into many Kingdoms. But by this Law they are to be entituled to some Dutchy or County, (though they are content sometimes with Annual Pensions) with all the Rights and Profits thereunto belonging; all matters of Regality (as Levying Taxes, Coinage, and the like) excepted only; which upon the failing of the Masculine Line, do return again unto the Crown. The Name thereof derived from *Albarnago*, a German Word, signifying a Portion.

But the main Law they stand on, is the *Salique* Law, by which the Crown of *France* may not descend unto the Females, or fall from the Lance to the Distaff, as their saying is. Which Law, one undertaking to make good out of Holy Writ, urged that Text of *St. Matthew*, where it is said, *Mark the Lilies*, (which are the Arms of *France*) and see how they neither labour nor spin. This Law they pretend to have been made by *Pharamond*, the first King of the *French*; and that the words, *Si aliqua*, so often used in it, gave the Name of the *Salique* Law. But *Huillan*, one of their best Writers, affirms, That it was never heard of in *France*, till the Time of *Philip* the Long, Anno 1315. and that it could not possibly be made by *Pharamond*; who though he was the first King of the

French, had not one Foot of Ground in *France*: *Clodeon*, the Son of *Pharamond*, being the first of the *French* Kings which passed over the *Rhine*; their third King, *Merovee*, the first that ever fixed his Seat in the modern *France*. Others say, it was made by *Charles the Great*, after the Conquest of *Germany*, where the incontinent Lives of the Women, living about the River *Sala*, (in the Modern *Misnia*) gave both the Occasion and the Name. *De terra vero Salica, nulla portio hereditatis mulieri veniat, sed ad virilem Sexum tota terræ hereditas perveniat*, are the words thereof. This *Terra Salica*, the Learned *Selden*, in his *Titles of Honour*, Englisheth, *Knights Fee*, or Land that is holden by *Knights Service*, as our Lawyers call it; and proveth this Interpretation by a Record of the Parliament of *Bordeaux*, cited by *Bodinus*; where an old Will or Testament being once produced, in which the *Testator* had bequeathed unto his Son all his *Salique* Land, it was resolved by the Court, That thereby was meant, his Land holden in *Knights Service*. And then the sense thereof must be, That in Lands holden of the King by *Knights Service*, or the like Military Tenure, the Male-Children should inherit only, because the Females could not perform those Services for which those Lands were given, and by which they were holden. And for this there may be good reason, tho' in *England* we deal not so unkindly with the Female Sex, but permit them after the Age of 15 Years to enjoy such Lands, because they may then take such Husbands as are able to do the King those Services which the Law requireth. But this Interpretation (how good and genuine indeed soever it be) cannot stand with the *French* Gloss: For then the Crown, being held of none but God, and so not properly to be called a *Fee* or *Feife*, could not be brought within the compass of the *Salique* Law, because not to be counted for *Salique* Land. Give them therefore their own Gloss, their own Etymology and Original; and let us see by what right their Kings Daughters are excluded from their Succession to the Diadem. For first, supposing that to be the *Salique* Land which lieth about the River *Sala*, in the Modern *Misnia*, I would fain know how it could reach unto the King's Daughter in *France*, so far distant from it; or with what honesty they can lay on them the like brand of Incontinency, as was supposed to have been found in those Women of *Germany*? And next, supposing that the Law had been made by *Pharamond*, I would fain learn how it can be applied to the Crown of *France*, to which *Pharamond* had then no Title, nor so much as one Foot of Land on that side of the *Rhine*. And finally, supposing that the Law was made in such general terms, as to extend to all the Countries, which the *French* in time to come should conquer, and consequently unto *France* when once conquered by them: I would then ask, Whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or to all subordinate Estates which were holden of it; if unto all Estates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give Sentence in behalf of *Charles of Blus*, against *John de Montfort*, in the Succession to the Dukedom of *Britaigne*: *Charles* claiming by his Mother, the Niece of *Arthur II.* by his second Son *Guy*; whereas *John de Montfort* was the third Son (and the next Heir Male) of the said Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of *France*, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedom from the true Heirs of *Anne* the Dutcheß, whose Daughter and Heir, the Lady *Claude* being married unto *Francis I.* had Issue *Henry II.* and other Children: Which *Henry*, besides *Francis II.* *Charles IX.* *Henry III.* and *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, all dying without Issue, had a Daughter named *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth*, married to *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, by whom she was made the Mother of *Isabella*, the late Arch Dutcheß, and of *Catherine*, the Wife of *Charles Emmanuel*, the late Duke of *Savoy*. Not to say any thing of the Pretensions of the House of *Lorain*, descending from the Lady *Claude*,

the second Daughter of King *Henry II.* and Sister of *Isabel* or *Elizabeth*, Queen of *Spain*. Nor do we find, that the *French* so stand upon this Law, as not to think, that a Succession by and from the Females, is, in some Cases, their best Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thrust his Master *Childerick* into a Monastery, to make good his Title to the Crown, (or some colour for it) derived his Pedigree from *Plythilda*, one of the Daughters of *Clotaire I.* married to *Ausbert* the Grandfather of that *Arnulphus*, who was the first *Mayre* of the Palace of *Pepin's* Family. As also how *Hugh Capet*, putting aside *Charles* of *Lorain*, the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his lawless Action the more seemingly lawful, drew his Descent from some of the Heirs General of *Charles the Great*; his Mother *Adelheid* being the Daughter of the Emperor *Henry I.* surnamed the *Fowler*; who was the Son of *Otho*, Duke of *Saxony*, by *Luitgardis*, the Daughter of the Emperor *Arnulph*, the last Emperor of the *Romans* (or *Germans*) of the House of *Charles*. And it is said of *Lewis IX.* so renowned for Sanctity amongst them, that he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet Conscience, till it was proved unto him, that by his Grand-mother, the Lady *Isabel* of *Hainalt*, he was descended from *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Charles* of *Lorain*. Add here, that this supposed *Salique* Law, not only crosseth the received Laws of all Nations else, which admit of Women to the Succession in their Kingdoms, where the Crown descends in a Succession; and have a great respect both unto their Persons and Posterities, in such Kingdoms also where the Kings are said to be Elective, as in *Poland*, *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*; but that even *France* it self hath submitted to the Imperious Command of two Women of the *Medices*; and at the present to the Government of a *Spanish* Princess. So that it is evident, that this Law, by whomsoever made, and how far soever it extended, is of no such force, but that the *Labels* of it may be easily cut in pieces by an *English* Sword well whetted, if there were no other Bar to the Title of *England*, than the Authority and Antiquity of the *Salique* Law.

But for my part (if it be lawful for me to dispute this Point) I am not satisfied in the right of the *English* Title; supposing the *Salique* Law to be of no such force as the *French* pretended, and measuring the Succession in the Crown of *France*, to be according to Successions in the Realm of *England*, on which King *Edward III.* seem'd to ground his Claim. For if there were no *Salique* Law to exclude Succession by the Females, as the *English* did pretend there was not; yet could not *Edward*, coming from a Sister of the three last Kings, which reigned successively before *Philip* of *Valois*, against whom he claimed, be served in course, before the Daughters of those Kings (or the Males at least descending of them) had had their turns in the Succession of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren two left Issue, viz. *Lewis* and *Philip*. *Lewis* surnamed *Hutin*, Son of *Philip the Fair*, and *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, who was King of *Navarre*, in right of his Wife; from which Marriage issued all the succeeding Kings of that Realm, the Rights whereof are now in the House of *Bourbon*. *Philip* the second Brother, surnamed *the Long*, by *Joan* the Daughter of *Othelin* Earl of *Burgundy*, had a Daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, from whom descended those great Princes of the Race of *Burgundy*, the Rights whereof are now in the House of *Spain*. If then there were no *Salique* Law to exclude the Women and their Sons, *Charles* King of *Navarre*, the Son of Queen *Joan* and *Philip de Eureux*, descended from *Lewis Hutin* the elder Brother, and *Lewis de Malarine* Earl of *Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the Son of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the Daughter of *Philip the Long*, the second Brother, must have precedency of Title before King *Edward III.* of *England*, descended from a Sister of the said two Kings, their Issue severally and respectively, before

fore any claiming or descending from the said King *Edward*. So that *K. Edward III.* had some other Claim than what is commonly alledg'd for him in our *English* Histories; or else he had no Claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive, so wise a King would not have ventured on a business of so great consequence, without some colourable Title; tho' what this Title was is not declared, for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore, that he went upon some other grounds, than that of *ordinary Succession* by the Law of *England*, and claimed that Crown as the *eldest Heir Male* and nearest Kinsman to the last King. For being Sister's Son to the King deceased, he was a degree nearer to him than either the *K. of Navarre* or the *E. of Flanders*, who were the Grandchildren of his Brethren: and having priority of either in respect of Age, had a fair Title before either to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on these grounds *K. Edward* might the rather go, because he found it a *ruled Case*, in the dispute about the Succession in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. For though *K. Edward I.* measuring the order of Succession by the Laws of *England*, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who should hold it of him, gave Sentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grandchild of the eldest Daughter of the *E. of Huntington*, yet was this Sentence disavowed and protested against by the other Competitors. *Robert Bruce* Son of the second Daughter of the said Earl of *Huntington*, as a degree nearer to the last King, though descended from the younger Sister, who not only thought himself wronged in it, but had the whole *Scotish* Nation for him to assert his Right; by whose unanimous consent his Son was called to the Government of the Realm of *Scotland*, during the Life of *Baliol*, and his Patron both. Proximity in Blood to the King deceased, was measured by nearness of Degrees, not descent of Birth, and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of *England*, as *Bruce* had formerly possessed himself of the Crown of *Scotland*; so on the same, though different from the Laws of *Castile*, did *Philip II.* ground his Claim to the Crown of *Portugal*. For being eldest Son of *Mary* the Sister of *Henry* the last King (and this was just King *Edward's* Case to the Crown of *France*) he thought himself to be preferred before the Prince of *Parma*, and the Duke of *Bragance*, descended from the Daughters of *Edward* the said King's Brother, because the eldest Male of the Royal Blood, and nearer to the said *K. Henry* by one degree. In the pursuance of which Title, as *Philip* openly avowed, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him than the Laws of *Castile*; so in like case, the Laws of *France* might be more favourable to *K. Edward*, than the Laws of *England*. In Claims to Crowns, the Rules of *Regal Succession* differ in many Countries; and in few Countries are the same with that of the Succession into mean Estates; as may be proved by many particulars in the Realm of *England*, in which the *Law of the Crown* differeth very much from the *Law of the Land*; as in the Case of *Parceners*, the *Whole Blood*, (as our Lawyers call it) the *Tenure of Courtessie*, and some others, were this a time and place fit for it. But to return again to *France*; Whether the *Salique Law* were in force or not, it made not much to the prejudice of King *Edward III.* though it served *Philip the Long* to exclude the Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*; and *Charles the Fair* to do the like with the Daughter of *Philip*; as it did *Philip of Valois* to dispossess the whole Lineage of King *Philip le Bel*.

Machiavel accounteth this *Salique Law* to be a great happiness to the *French* Nation, not so much in relation to the unfitness of Women to govern (for therein some of them have gone beyond most Men) but because thereby the Crown of *France* is not endangered to fall into the hands of Strangers. Such Men consider not how great Dominions may by this means be incorporate to the Crown. They remember not how *Maud* the Empress being married to *Geoffry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourain* and *Main*, conveyed those Countries to the Diadem of *England*, nor what rich and fertile Provinces were added to *Spain*, by

the Match of the Lady *Joan* to Arch-Duke *Philip*. Neither do they see those great Advantages of Power and Strength which *England* now enjoyeth by the conjunction of *Scotland*, proceeding from a like Marriage. Yet there is a saying in *Spain*, that as a Man shall desire to live in *Italy*, because of the civility and ingenious Natures of the People; and to die in *Spain*, because there the *Catholic Religion* is so sincerely professed: so he should wish to be born in *France*, because of the nobleness of that Nation, which never had any King but of their own Country.

The chief Enemies to the *French* have been the *English* and *Spaniards*. The former had here great Possessions, divers times plagued them, and took from them their Kingdom; but being called home by Civil Distentions, lost all. At their departure, the *French* scotfully asked an *English* Captain, *When they would return?* who feelingly answered, *When you find us greater than now.* The *Spaniards* began but of late with them, yet have they taken from them *Navarre*, *Naples*, and *Milain*: they dispossessed them in *Florida*; poisoned the Dauphine of *Vienna*, (as it was generally conceived) murdered their Soldiers in cold Blood, being taken Prisoners in the Isle of *Tercera*; and by their Faction raised even in *France* itself, drove *Henry III.* out of *Paris*, and most of his other Cities; and at last caused him to be murdered by *Jaques Clement*, a *Dominican Friar*. The like they intended to his Successor *K. Henry IV.* whose coming to the Crown they opposed to their utmost Power, and held a tedious War against him. Concerning which last War, when they sided with the Duke of *Mayenne*, and the rest of those Rebels which called themselves the *Holy League* (of which the Duke of *Guise* was the Author) against the two Kings *Henry III.* and *IV.* a *French* Gentleman made this excellent Allusion; for being ask'd the cause of these Civil Broils, he replied, they were *Spania* and *Mania*; seeming by this answer to signify *Strife*, *penury*, and *Maria*, *fury*; which are indeed the causes of all intestine Tumults; but covertly therein implying the King of *Spain*, and the Duke of *Mayenne*: since which time the *French*, upon the turn of Fortune, (notwithstanding the cross Marriages between the Kings of both Kingdoms, and their several Sisters) have had as great a hand upon the *Spaniards*, ousting them by their Plots and Practises of the whole Kingdom of *Portugal*, and the Country of *Catalogne* in the main Land of *Spain* itself, and of many of the best parts of *Arrous*, *Hainault*, and other of the *belgick* Provinces, by the force of Arms. So little constancy there is, either in the Favours of Fortune, or the Affection of great Princes, that no wise Man can trust the one, or depend safely on the other. For in the former times, as we read in *Comines*, there were no Princes more friendly than these two, the Kings of *Castile* and *France*, being the nearest confederate Princes in *Christendom*. For their League was between King and King, Realm and Realm, Subject and Subject; which they were all bound under great Curses to keep inviolable. But of late times, especially since the beginning of the Wars betwixt *Charles V.* and *Francis I.* for the Dukedom of *Milain*; there have not been greater Animosities, nor more implacable Enmities betwixt any Nations, than betwixt *France* and *Spain*. Which seconded by the mutual Jealousies they have of each other, and the diversity of Constellations under which they live, hath produced such dissimilitude betwixt them in all their ways, that there is not greater contrariety of Temper, Carriage, and Affections, betwixt any two Nations in the World, than is between these Neighbours, parted no otherwise from one another, than by passable Hills. First, in the *Actions* of the *Soul*, the one *Active* and *Mercurial*, the other *Speculative* and *Saturnine*; the one sociable and discursive, the other reserved and full of thought; the one so open, that you cannot hire him to keep a secret; the other so close, that all the *Rhetorick* in the World cannot get it out of him. Next in their *Fashion* and Apparel, the *French* wears

his Hair long, the *Spaniard* short; the *French* goes thin and open to the very Shirt, as if there were continual Summer, the *Spaniard* so wrapt up and close, as if all were Winter; the *French* begins to button downward, and the *Spaniard* upwards; the last always constant in his Fashion, the first intent so much on nothing as on new fancies of Apparel. Then for their Gate, the *French* walk fast, as if pursued on an *Arrest*, the *Spaniard* slowly, as if newly come out of a *Quartan Ague*; the *French* go up and down in clusters, the *Spaniards* but by two and two at the most; the *French* *Lacqueys* march in the Rere, and the *Spanish* always in the Van; the *French* sings and danceth as he walks the Streets, the *Spaniard* in a grave and solemn posture, as if he were going a *Procession*. The like might be observed of their Tune, their Speech, and almost every Passage in the Life of Man: for which I rather chuse to refer the Reader to the ingenious *James Howell's* Book of *Instructions for Travel*, than insist longer on it here. Only I add, that of the two so different Humours, that of the *Spaniard* seems to be the more approvable. Inasmuch as the *Neopolitans*, *Milleanois*, and *Sicilians*, who have had trial of both Nations, chuse rather to submit themselves to the proud and severe Yoke of the *Spaniards*, than the Lusts and Insolencies of the *French*, not sufferable by Men of even and well-balanced Spirits. And possible enough it is, that such of the *Netherlands*, as have of late been won to the Crown of *France*, will find so little comfort in the change of their Masters; as may confirm the residue to the Crown of *Spain*, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Country, next to the *Pyrenees* which part *France* from *Spain*, the *Jura* or *Jura*, which separates it from *Savoy* and *Switzerland*; and the *Vauze* or *Vogesus*, which divides it from *Lorraine*, are those which *Cæsar* calleth *Gabenna*, *Ptolomy* *Cimmeni*, being the same which separate *Auvergne* from *Languedoc*, called therefore the Mountains of *Auvergne*; the only ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of *France*, which for the most part is plain and champain; the others before-mentioned, being Common unto this, with the bordering Provinces.

This Country is wonderfully stored with Rivers, the chief whereof, 1. *Sequana* or *Seine*, which arising in *Burgundy*, watering the Cities of *Paris* and *Roan*, and receiving into it nine navigable Streams, disburdeneth it self into the *British* Ocean. 2. *Some*, in *Latin* called *Samona*, which rising near the Town of *St. Quintin*, first cutteth between *Picardy* and *Artois*, afterwards passeth through the fair City of *Amiens*, and the goodly Town of *Abbeville*, and finally having received eight lesser Streams, loseth it self in the same Sea also. 3. *Ligeris* or *Loyre*, on which are seated *Nantes* and *Orleans*. It riseth about the Mountains of *Auvergne*, (being the greatest in *France*) and having run 600 Miles, and augmented his Channel with the entertainment of 72 lesser Rivulets, mingleth his sweet Waters with the brackish *Aquitane* Ocean. 4. *Rhodanus*, or the *Rhofne*, which springeth from the *Alpes*, three *Dutch* Miles from the head of the *Rbene*, passeth by *Lions* and *Avignon*; and having taken in thirteen lesser Brooks, falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from *Arles*. 5. The *Soasne*, by the old *Latines* called *Araris*, which rising out of the Mountain of *Vogesus* or *Vauze*, in the borders of *Lorraine* and *Alsatia*, divideth the two *Burgundies* from each other; and falleth into the *Rhofne*, at the City of *Lions*. 6. *Garumna* or the *Garond*, which issuing out of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, passing by *Toulouse* and *Bordeaux*, and having swallowed up sixteen lesser Rivers (of which the *Dordonne* is the chief) disburdeneth it self into the *Aquitane* Ocean, near the Town of *Blay*: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean, and the influx of the River *Dordonne*, being called the *Garonne*. Of these it is said Proverbially, that the *Seine* is the richest, the *Rhofne* the swiftest, the *Garond* the greatest, and the *Loire* the sweetest. And by these and many other Rivers this Kingdom is enriched with 34 excellent

Havens, having all the properties of a good Harbour; that is to say, 1. Room, 2. Safety, 3. Easiness of defence, 4. Resort of Merchants.

As for so much of the Story hereof as concerneth the whole, it was first peopled, if we may give credit to *Strabo*, (as I think we may not in this point) by *Samothres* the sixth Son of *Japhet* (affirmed by them, and such as adhere unto them, to be that Son of his, who in the Scripture is called *Mesich*) in the Year of the World 1806. But those which are better conversant in the course of History have utterly laid aside this device of *Annals*. Even *Functius*, though a great *Berosian*, doth confess ingenuously, *Quis hic Samothres fuerit, incertum est*, that it is unresolved who this *Samothres* was. And *Vignier*, a *French* Antiquary, doth confess with *Functius*, *Mais un ne sçay quil il estoit*, that no body can tell us who he was. They who have better studied this Point than *Annals*, derive the *Gauls* from *Gomer*, *Japhet's* eldest Son, whose Offspring were first called *Gomerians*, afterwards *Cimmerians*, at last *Cimbri*: first planted (as before was said) in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long preserved his Memory, and after changing that unfruitful and unpleasant dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, wherein the City *Cimmeris* did retain somewhat of his Name, in the times of *Pliny*. Afterwards his Posterity proceeded further in the lesser *Asia*, and in long tract of time filled *Germany*, *Gaul*, and *Britain*, with his numerous Issues: the *Gauls* and *Cimbri* being clearly of the same Original, though known amongst the *Romans* by two different Names. From whence they had the Names of *Gauls*, and *Celts*, and *Galatæ*, hath been shewn before. It shall suffice us now to add, that being originally of the *Cimbri*, and having somewhat in them of the Blood of *Hercules*; they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whose Love no King could secure himself from imminent Dangers. They were very sparing in their Diet, and used to fine any one that outgrew his Girdle. With these Men the *Romans* fought at first for their own Preservation, rather than out of any hope by the Conquest of them to improve either their Fame or their Dominions. Inasmuch that when they had invaded *Italy* with a numerous Army, in favour of the *Cisalpine Gauls*, under the Conduct of *Aneroestus* and *Congelians*, two of their Kings, and pierced as far as *Telamon*, a City of *Tuscany*, the *Romans* thought they had done enough in discomfiting their Forces, and clearing their own Provinces of them; not holding it for a point of Wisdom to pursue them, or invade their Country; though by the conquest of *Liguria*, but few Years before, they had enlarged their Dominions to the Borders of it. But to enumerate more particularly their great Achievements in the Wars, these were they who under the Conduct of *Bellovesus*, passing over the *Alpes*, conquered the nearest Parts of *Italy*, called afterwards *Gallia Cisalpina*; and under that of *Segovesus* over-run all *Germany*, and following their Successes as far as *Scythia*, founded the potent Nation of the *Celto-Scythæ*. These were the Men, whose Issue under the Command of *Brennus*, discomfited the *Romans* at the River *Allia*, sack'd the City, and besieged the Capitol, *An. M.* 3577. *U. C.* 365. In which Action they so terrified the *Romans*, that after their expulsion from *Rome* by *Camillus*, there was a Law made, that the Priests, though at all other times exempted from Military employments, should be compelled to the War, if ever the *Gauls* came again. And finally, these were the Men, who under the Command of *Belgus*, and another *Brennus*, ransack'd *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*, in which they spoiled and plunder'd the Temple of *Delphos*; for which Sacrilege they were visited with the Pestilence. Such as survived this Plague went into *Asia*, and there gave Name to that Country now called *Galatia*, of whom thus *Dubartus*:

The ancient *Gaul*, in roving every way,
As far as *Phæbus* darts his golden Ray;

Sciz'd

Seiz'd *Italy*; the World's proud Mistress sackt,
Which rather *Mars* than *Romulus* compact.
Then spoils *Pysidia*, *Myssia* doth enthrall,
And midst of *Asia* plants another *Gaul*.

Yet at last the *Romans* undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almost all the residue of the (then known) World. Attempting first by *Fulvius Flaccus*, a Roman Consul, called in by the *Maffilienses* to assist them against the *Salii* their unquiet Neighbours, *A. U. C.* 628 that part hereof which afterwards was called *Narbonensis*, being brought into the form of a Roman Province at the conclusion of the War against the *Allobroges* and *Arverni*, (undertaken on the like complaint of the *Hedui*) about five years after. Not totally subdued until the time of *Julius Caesar*, and not easily then. For though the War was managed then by the ablest Captain that ever the State of *Rome* gave life to; yet was it not more easily vanquished by the Valour and Fortune of the *Romans*, than by want of good intelligence and correspondence amongst themselves. Nor did they sell their liberty so good cheap, as those other Nations, with whom the *Romans* had to deal: *Cæsar* himself affirming, That he had slain 1192000 of them before they would submit to the Roman Yoke. But at the last they were brought under the power of *Rome*, by whom the whole Country was divided into these four parts, viz. 1. *Narbonensis*, called so from the City of *Narbon*, then a Roman Colony, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Dauphine*, and some part of *Savoie*, called also *Braccata* at the first Conquest by the *Romans*, from the usual Habit of the People (resembling the Mantles used by the Wild Irish) called in *Latine*, *Braccæ*: attempted first by *Fulvius Flaccus*, in his War against the *Salii*, as before is said; and finally subdued, *A. U. C.* 633. by *Fabius Maximus*; and *Cn. Domitius Enobarbus*, in their War against the *Allobroges*, and their Confederates, before mentioned, about 70 years before the coming in of *Julius Cæsar*. 2. *Aquitania*, so called from the City of *Aquæ Augustæ* (now *D'Acqs*, in *Guienne*) lying upon the *Pyrenees*, and the wide Ocean, which comprehenderh the Provinces of *Gascogne*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoygne*, *Limosin*, *Quercu*, *Perigort*, *Berry*, *Bourbonnois*, and *Auvergne*; extending from the *Pyrenees* to the River *Loyre*, and consequently stretching over all the middle of *Gaul*. 3. *Celteca*, so named from the valiant Nation of the *Celtæ*; called also *Lugdunensis*, from the City of *Lions*; and *Comata* from the long Hair worn amongst this People, extending from the *Loyre* to the *British Ocean*, and comprehending the Provinces of *Bretagne*, *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Touren*, *Main*, *Le Beausse*, the Isle of *France*, part of *Champagne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the County of *Lyonnois*. 4. *Belgica*, from the *Belgæ*, a potent Nation of that Tract, taking up all the East parts of *Gaul*, viz. *Picardy*, the rest of *Champagne*, the County of *Burgundy*, together with so much of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, as lieth on this side of the *Rhene*, belonging now unto the Empire and the Kings of *Spain*. In the new modelling of the Empire by *Constantine* the Great, *Gaul* was appointed for the Seat of one of the four *Præfecti Prætorio*, designed the four Quarters of it. His Title *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*; his Government extending over the Diocesses of *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Britain*: This Diocess of *Gaul* being cast into seventeen Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Lugdunensis Prima*, 2. *Secunda*, 3. *Tertia*, 4. *Quarta*. 5. *Belgica prima*. 6. *Secunda*, 7. *Germania prima*, 8. *Secunda*, 9. *Narbonensis prima*, 10. *Secunda*, 11. *Aquitania prima*, 12. *Secunda*, 13. *Novempopulonia*, 14. *Viennensis*, 15. *Maxima Sequanorum*, 16. *Alpes Graia & Pennina*, 17. *Alpes Maritimæ*. Of these seventeen *Germania prima & secunda*, all *Belgica prima*, and a great part of *secunda*, all that of the *Alpes Graia & Pennina*, and so much of *Maxima Sequanorum*, as lieth in *Switzerland*; are now dismembred from the name and accompt of *France*. What principal Nations of the *Gauls*, and what Provinces of the present *France*, the rest contained, shall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it stood not in this state: for within fifty years after the death of *Constantine*, during the Reign of *Honorius* and *Theodosius*, the *Burgundians* a great and populous Nation, were called in by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Western Emperor, to keep the borders of the Empire against the *French*; then ready with some other of the Barbarous Nations to invade the same. The *Goths* not long after by agreement with the same *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were vested in *Gaul Narbonnois*, by the gift of that Emperor; with a good part of *Tarraconensis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitain* being after added, in regard of the Service they had done the Empire, in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*, then likely to have made a great impression on that Country. And in the Reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long hovered on the Banks of the *Rhene*, taking advantage of the distractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; first made themselves Masters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after, spread themselves over all the rest of the Provinces which had not been subdued by the *Goths* and *Burgundians*; excepting a small corner of *Armorica*, then possessed by the *Britains*. So that the *Romans* being outed of all the Country, it was divided between the Nations above mentioned, and that with more equality than could be imagined: The *Goths* possessing all *Aquitain*, and *Narbonensis*, containing now the Provinces of *Provence*, *Languedoc*, *Gascogne*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoygne*, *Poitou*, *Berry*, *Limosin*, *Perigort*, *Quercu* and *Auvergne*; the *Burgundians* having for their share, the *Alpine* Provinces, together with *Nivernois*, *Bourbon*, *Beau-Jolois*, *Forrest*, the Countries of *Lionnois*, *La Bresse*, *Dauphine*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them so denominated. The rest (except that part thereof which we now call *Bretagne*) was possessed by the *French*, who in short time repulsed the *Visigothes*, or *Western-Goths*, (then busie in the Conquest of *Spain*) out of all the Provinces of the Roman *Aquitain*, by the Valour of *Clouis* the Great, their first Christian King, before they could challenge a Prescription of 60 years. Nor was it long before *Provence* also was resigned to *Theoderick* the *French* King of *Mets* by *Amalasunta*, Queen of the *Ostro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; nothing being left unto that Nation, of all their *Gallick* Conquests, but *Languedoc* only. In which respect, the *Gothish* Provinces of *Gaul*, (except *Provence* only) together with so much of the *Burgundians* which was after laid to *West-France*, shall pass in the account of the *French* part of this Country; the rest of the *Burgundian* Conquests which lie within the bounds of the Modern *France*, (having *Provence* added to them) shall be considered by themselves in the description and affairs of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, a distinct Realm from that of *France*, and not reduced but by peace-meal, and by several Titles; (and yet not wholly so neither) to the Crown thereof. Finally, of the *French* themselves, and the succession of their Kings, we will speak at last, when we have brought all the chief Parts and Provinces of this flourishing Country into their possession. The principal Provinces are, 1. *France*, specially so called, 2. *Champagne*, 3. *Picardy*, 4. *Normandy*, 5. *Bretagne*, 6. The Estates of *Anjou*, with its Members, 7. *La Beausse*, 8. *Nivernois* 9. The Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependent on it; being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the first conquests of the *French*. Then following the chief Provinces of the *Gothish* Kingdom; that is to say, 10. *Berry*, 11. *Poitou*, 12. *Limosin*, 13. *Perigort*, and 14. *Quercu*, 15. *Aquitain*, with the Members of it; and 16. *Languedoc*: and last of all, the *Burgundian* Kingdom, of which there now remain in *France*, the Countries of 17. *Provence*, 18. *Dauphine*, 19. *La Bresse*, 20. *Lionnois*, 21. The *Dutchy*, 22. The County of *Burgundy*, 23. The Islands of the *Aquitain*, and *Gallick Ocean*, in the close of all. Of some of which, *La Norve*, a *French* Author, hath passed this Censure: The Men of *Berry*, are Lechers; they of *Touren*, Thieves; they of *Languedoc*, Traytors; they of *Provence*, Atheists; they of *Rhemes*, (or *Champagne*) Superstitious; they of

Nor-

Normandy, insolent; they of Picardy proud, &c. *sic de cæteris*. But here we are to understand that all these Provinces (though passing by the name and account of France) are not under the Command of the French King; the Isles of *Ferley* and *Guernsey*, being possessed by the English, the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Charolois*, by the King of Spain; the Dutchy of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorain*; the Principality of *Orange*, to the House of *Nassau*; and *Avignon*, to the Popes of *Rome*. And on the other side, the French Kings are possessed of some Towns and Cities not lying within the bounds of France, as the Imperial Cities of *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*; lying within the Dukedom of *Lorain*, the Fort and Pass of *Pignerolle*, in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and the Port of *Monaco*, in *Liguria*; *Base Navarre*, in *Spain*; not to say any thing of their late acquets in *Spain* and *Flanders*, which I look not on as part of the French Dominions. Since that the French have taken in *Lorain*, *Alsatia*, and the *Franche Compté* and *Strasburg*, and made a much greater Progress in the Spanish Netherlands, than they had done at the time of the Authors writing, which shall be accounted for in the proper places.

FRANCE, especially so called.

THE first place which the Franks or French had for their first Habitation was by that People honoured with the Name of *FRANCE*; the first green Turf of Gallick ground, by which they took *Livery* and *Seisin* of all the rest. A Province now bounded on the East, with *Champagne*; on the North, with *Normandy*; on the West and South, with *La Beausse*. To difference it from the main Continent of France, it is called the *Ile of France*, as being circled almost round with several Rivers; that is to say, the *Oise* on the North, the *Eure* on the West, the *Velle* on the East, and a Vein-reveret of the *Sein*, towards the South. A Country not so large as many of the French Provinces; but such as hath given Name unto all the rest; it being the Fate of many small, but puissant Provinces, to give their Names to others which are greater than they, if conquered and brought under by them. For, thus we see the little Province of *Poland*, to have mastered and given Name to the *Mazovii*, *Pruteni*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia*, *Europæa*, as that of *Musco*, to the Province of *Asiatica*. And thus have those of *Sweden* conquered and denominated almost the great Peninsula of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the smallest Provinces. And thus this Island being the Seat-Royal of the French in *Gallia*, gave name to all the residue of it, as they made it theirs. A Country generally so fruitful and delectable, (except in *Gastinois*) that the very Hills thereof are equal to the Valleys in most places of Europe: but the Vale of *Montmorence* (wherein *Paris* standeth) scarce is to be followed in the World. An argument whereof may be, that when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundy*, and their Confederates, besieged that City with an Army of 100,000 Men, neither the Assailants without, nor the Citizens within, found any scarcity of Victuals; and yet the Citizens, besides Soldiers, were reckoned at 50,000.

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica secunda*, & *Lugdunensis quarta*; the chief Inhabitants thereof being the *Parisi*, the *Bellovaci*, and the *Silvanectes*: and is now divided into four parts, that is to say, the Dukedom of *Valois*, 2. *Gastinois*, 3. *Heurepoix*, and that which is properly called the *Ile of France*; by some, the *Provost*, or *County of Paris*.

1. Dukedom or County of *VALOIS*, lieth under *Picardy*: the principal Cities of it, 1. *Senlis*, (in *Latine*, *Silvanectum*) a Bishops See. 2. *Compeignis*, (*Compendium*) seated on the River *Oise*, a retiring place of the French

Kings for Hunting, and other Country pleasures. 3. *Beauvois*, the chief City of the *Bellovaci*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cassarmagus*; a fair, large, well-traded Town; from which the Country round about hath the name of *Beauvoisin*. The Patrimony, in former times, of *Roger*, the third Son of *Theobald*, the second Earl of *Blais*, and younger Brother of *Oden*, the first Earl of *Champagne*, who enjoyed it with the Title of Earl of *Beauvois*: and at his death gave it for ever to the Bishops hereof: for anciently this City was a See Episcopal; the Bishop whereof is one of the twelve Peers of France. *Philip*, one of the Bishops here in times succeeding, a Military Man, and one that had much damnified the English Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard I.* The Pope being made acquainted with his Imprisonment, but not the cause of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an Ecclesiastical Person, and one of his beloved Sons. The King returned unto the Pope the Armour in which the Bishop was taken in, and these words engraven on the same, *Vide an hæc sit tunica filii tui, vel non*; being the words which *Jacobs* Children speak to him, when they presented him with the Coat of their Brother *Joseph*, which the Pope viewing, swore, that it was rather the Coat of a Son of *Mars*, than a Son of the Church: and so left him wholly to the Kings pleasure. 4. *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the County of *Beauvoisin*, memorable for giving the Title of Earl of *Clermont* to *Robert* the fifth Son of the King, *St. Lewis*, before his marriage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*: afterwards, to the eldest Sons of that Princely Family: and finally, to *Catharine de Medices*, created Counsellors of *Clermont* and *Boulogne*, at her marriage with *Henry* Duke of *Orleans*, Succellor to King *Francis I.* in the Realm of France. 5. *Luzarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Soissons*. 6. *Brenonville*, 7. *St. Loup*, on the Confines of *Picardy*, so called from a Monastery dedicated to *St. Lupus*, Bishop of *Trois* in *Champagne*, sent into Britain with *St. Germanus*, to suppress the *Pelagian* Heresies, which were there beginning. But of this part of France, nothing more observable, than that it gave denomination to the Royal Family of the French Kings, (thirteen in number) from hence entituled *de Valois*: beginning in *Philip de Valois*, Anno 1328. and ending in *Henry III.* Anno 1589. As for the Earls hereof, (from whom that adjunct or denomination had its first Original) the first who had the Title of Earl of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the second Son of *Philip III.* in right of his Wife; Earl of *Anjou* also: after whose death, it descended upon *Philip de Valois*, his eldest Son, who carried the Crown of France from our *Edward III.* On his assuming of the Crown, it fell to *Lewis* his second Brother; and he deceasing without Issue, Anno 1391. to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Son of *Charles V.* amongst the Titles of which House, it lay dormant, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis XII.* and lately given unto the *Monsieur*, or Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to *Lewis XIII.* and Uncle to King *Lewis XIV.* now reigning, upon the first Reconciliation made betwixt him and his Brother; adding thereby to his Estate, no less than 100000 pounds Sterling of yearly Rents, which make up 1000000 *Franks* or *Livres*, in the French account. I only add, that *Charles*, the first Earl of this Family, as he was the Son of *Philip III.* Brother of *Philip IV.* surnamed the Fair; and Father of *Philip de Valois*: so was he Uncle to *Lewis Hutin*; *Philip the Long*, and *Charles the Fair*, all in their order Kings of France. In which regard it was said of him, That he was the Son, Brother, Father, and Uncle of Kings; yet no King himself.

2. The second part of this Province, is called *HEUREPOIX*; beginning at the little Bridge of *Paris*, on the River of *Sein*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verine*; which divides it from *Gastinois*. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Charenton*, three Miles from *Paris*, where the French Protestants of that City have their Church for Religious Exercises, it being not permitted them to hold their Assemblies in any Walled Cities, or Garrison Towns, for fear of any sudden surprize,

prize, which so great a Multitude might easily make. Which Church (or Temple, as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Parisians*, on the news of the Duke of *Mayennes* death, slain at the Siege of *Montalban*, Anno 1622. was presently re-edified by the command of the Duke of *Mombason*, then Governour of the *Ile of France*, at the charge of the State: to let those of the Reformed Party understand that it was their *Disobedience*, and not the *Religion*, which caused the King to Arm against them. 2. *Corbeil*, seated on the confluence of *Seine* and *Essons*. 3. *Moret*, which gives the Title of an Earl to one of the natural Sons of *Henry IV.* begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 4. *Melun*, by *Cæsar* called *Melodunum*, the principal of this *Hurepoix*, and the Seat of the *Bailiff* for this Tract. Here is also in this part the Royal Palace of *Fountainbleau*, so called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongst which it standeth; but otherwise seated in a solitary and woody Country, fit for Hunting only; and for that cause much visited by the *French Kings* in their times of leisure; and beautified with so much cost by King *Henry IV.* that it is absolutely the stateliest and most magnificent Pile of Building in all *France*.

3. *GASTINOIS*, the most dry and barren part of this Province, but rich enough, if compared with other places; lieth between *Paris*, and the Country of *Orleans*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Estampes*, in the middle way betwixt *Paris* and *Orleans*, on the very edge of it, towards *La Beausse*, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a Colledge of *Chanoins*, with the ruins of an ancient Castle; which together with the Walls and demolished Fortifications of it, shew it to have been of great importance in the former times: given, with the Title of an Earl, by *Charles Duke of Orleans*, then Lord hereof, to *Richard* the third Son of *John of Montford*, Duke of *Bretagne*, in marriage with his Sister the Lady *Marguerette*; from which Marriage issued *Francis* Earl of *Estampes*, the last Duke of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montleberry*, famous for the Battle betwixt King *Lewis XI.* and *Charles* Earl of *Charolois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) in which both sides ran out of the Field, and each proclaimed it self the Victor. It standeth in the Road betwixt *Paris* and *Estampes*. And so doth, 3. *Castres*, of the bigness of an ordinary Market-Town; not to be mentioned in this place, but for a Chamber or Branch of the Court of *Parliament*, here settled by King *Henry IV.* for the use and benefit of his Subjects of the *Reformed Religion*; in *Latine* called *Camera Castrensis*. 4. *Nemours*, upon the River of *Loyre*, the chief of *Gastinois* in Name, but not in Beauty, (wherein inferiour to *Estampes*) a Town which hath given the Title of Duke to many eminent Persons of *France*. Here is also in this part, the County of *Rochfort*, and the Towns of 1. *Milly*. 2. *Montargis*, &c. More there occur, yet not worth the noting in this part of the Country, but that being part of the possessions of *Hugh* the Great Constable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*. It was given by him, together with the Earldom of *Anjou*, to *Geoffry*, surnamed *Gryffagonelle*, a right noble Warrior, and a great stickler in behalf of the House of *Anjou*, then aiming at the Crown it self, which at last they carried. Continued in his Line till the time of *Fulk II.* (the fifth Earl of *Anjou* of this Family) who gave it back again to King *Philip I.* that by his help he might possess himself of the Earldom of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his elder Brother. Never since that, dismembred from the Crown of *France*, in Fact or Title.

4. But the great glory of this Province, is that which is more properly called the *ISLE OF FRANCE*, and sometimes κατ' ἐξοχήν, the *Ile*, caused by the Circlings and Embracements of the Rivers of *Seine*, and *Marne*; the abstract of the whole Beauties and Glories of *France*, which in this rich and pleasant Valley are summed up together.

Chief places in it, 1. *St. German*, seated on the ascent of an Hill seven Miles from *Paris*, down the water; a pretty neat and handfom Town, honoured with one of the fairest Palaces of the *French Kings*; which being built (like *Windfor*) on the top of a fine Mountain, on the Rivers side, affordeth an excellent Prospect over all the Country. The excellent Water-works herein, have been described on occasion of those of *Tivoli*, a Town of the Popes in *Campagna di Roma*, so much extolled by the *Italians*. It was first built by *Charles V.* surnamed the *Wise*; beautified by the *English*, when they were possessed of this Country; but finally, re-edified and enlarged by King *Henry IV.* who brought it into that Magnificence in which now we see it. It took name from *St. German*, Bishop of *Auxerre*, Companion with *St. Lupus* before mentioned, in the *British Journey* against *Pelagius*. 2. *Posse*, upon the same River, or rather on the confluence of it, and the *Marne*, which falleth into the *Seine*; situate not far from *St. German*, a Bailiwick belonging to the *Provost* of *Paris*, and one of his seven Daughters, as they use to call them. 3. *Chantilly*, the chief Seat of the Dukes of *Montmorency*, the ancientest and most noble Family of all *Christendom*, whose Ancestors were the first fruits of the Gospel in this part of *Gaul*, and used to stile themselves, *Les premiers Chrétiens, & plus vieilles Barons de la France*, i. e. The first *Christians*, and most ancient Barons of *France*. A Family that hath yielded unto *France* more Admirals, Constables, Marshals, and other like Officers of Power, than any three in all the Kingdom; now most unhappily extinct in the Person of *Henry* the last Duke, executed by the command of the late Cardinal of *Riclieu*, for siding with the *Monsieur* (now Duke of *Orleans*) against King *Lewis XIII.* his Brother. The Arms of which illustrious and most noble Family, (for I cannot let it pass without this honour) were Or, a Cross Gules, cantoned with sixteen *Alerions Azure*, four in every Canton. What these *Alerions* are, we shall see in *Lorain*: take we notice now, that from the great possessions which this Noble Family had in all this Tract, it was, and is still called the *Vale of Montmorency*. 4. *St. Denis*, some three Miles from *Paris*, so called of a Monastery built here by *Dagobert*, King of *France*, about the year 640. in memory of *St. Denis*, or *Dionysse*, the first Bishop of *Paris*, martyred (on *Mont-martyr*, an Hill adjoining) in the time of *Domitian*. Some of the *French Kings*, because it lay so near to *Paris*, bestowed a Wall upon the Town, now not defensible; nor otherwise of any consideration, but for a very fair Abby of *Benedictines*, and therein the Sepulchres of many of the *French Kings* and Princes: neither for Workmanship nor Cost, able to hold comparison with those at *Westminster*. But being the Sepulture of their Kings, the *French Men* use to say facetiously, that to this place none of their Kings do ever go with a good will. In this Town also is the Church of *St. Maclon*, where the Kings, with a Fast of nine days, and other Penances, use to receive the famous Gift of healing the *Kings-Evil*, with nothing but a Touch: a Privilege enjoyed only by those Kings, and the Kings of *England*. 5. *St. Cloud*, (or the Town of *St. Claudus*) unfortunately memorable for the Murder of King *Henry III.* who lying here at a Siege of *Paris*, from whence he was compelled to flee by the *Guisian* Faction, was wretchedly assassinated by *Jaques Clement*, a Monk employed in that service by the Heads of the *Holy League*. 6. *PARIS*, the chief City, not of this Isle alone, but of all the Kingdom. By *Cæsar*, and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, called *Civitas Parisiorum*, from the *Parisians*, a Nation of *Gaul Caltrick*, whose chief City it was: by *Strabo* called *Leutetia*, *Lucotefia* by *Ptolomy*, quasi in *Luto sita*, as some conjecture from the dirtiness of the Soil in which it standeth. A Soil so dirty, (as commonly all rich Countries are) that though the Streets hereof are paved, (which they affirm to be the work of King *Philip Augustus*) yet every little dash of rain, makes them very

very slippery; and worse than so, yields an ill savour to the Nose. The Proverb is, *Il déstaint comme la fange de Paris*, It stinketh like the dirt of Paris: but the Author of the Proverb might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il pout*, &c. It stinketh like the dirt of Paris: no stink being more offensive than those Streets in Summer. It is in compass about eight Miles, of an Orbicular Form, pleasantly seated on the divisions of the *Sein*: a fair, large, and capacious City, but far short of the brags which the *French* make of it. It was thought in the time of King *Louis XI.* to contain 500000 People of all sorts and ages; which must be the least: the same King at the entertainment of the *Spanish* Embassadors, shewing 140000 of this City in Arms, all in a Livery of red Cassocks, with white Crosses. A gallant sight, though possibly the one half of them were not fit for Service: the *Parisians* being for the most part an effeminate People, wanton enough, and apt to mutiny upon all occasions; but little addicted to the Wars, as appears plainly by their suffering King *Henry IV.* to hold *St. Dennis* so long against them, with no considerable Garrison, and by that means to shut them up from all relief on that side of their City. And yet their multitudes, which since the time of that King, must needs be very much increased, are the chief strength of the Town; the Fortifications being weak, and of ill assurance: insomuch that when once a *Parisian* bragged, that their Town was never taken by force, an *English* Man returned this Answer, That it was, because on the least distress it did use to Capitulate. It is seated (as before was said) on the River *Sein*, which serveth it with Boats and Barges, (as the *Thames* Westward doth *London*) the River ebbing and flowing no higher than *Pont de l'Arche*, 75 Miles distant from the City.

We may divide it into four parts; The Town, the City, the University, and the Suburbs. *La Ville*, or that part of it which is called *The Town*, is situate on the North side of the River; the biggest, but poorest part of the Four, inhabited by Artizans and Tradesmen of the meaner sort. In this part are the *Hôtel de Ville*, or the *Guild-Hall*, for the use of the Citizens: the *Arsenal*, or Armory, for the use of the King; and that Magnificent Building called the *Place-Royal*, new built and beautified at the charges of King *Henry IV.* for Tilts and Tournaments, and such Solemnities of State. And in this also, near the banks of the River stands the Kings Palace of the *Château*; a place of more Fame than Beauty; and nothing answerable to the report which goes commonly of it. A Building of no Elegance or Uniformity; nor otherwise remarkable, but for the vast Gallery begun by King *Henry IV.* and the fine Gardens of the *Tuilleries* adjoining to it. *The City* is that part of it which takes up the Circumference of a little Island, made by the embracements of the *Sein*; joyned to the other parts on both sides, by several Bridges. *The Paris* or *Lutetia* of the old *Gauls* was no more than this, the *Town* on the one side, and the *University* on the other, being added since. This is the richest part, and best built of the whole *Compositum*. And herein standeth the *Palace*, or *Courts of Parliament*; the *Chappel* of the *Holy Ghost*, and the Church of *Notre-dame*, being the Cathedral; of ancient times a Bishops See, but of late raised unto the Dignity of a *Metropolitan*. On the South side of the River lieth that part which is called the *University*, from an University here founded by *Charles the Great*, *An.* 792. at the perswasion of *Alcuinus* an *English*-Man, the Scholar of *Venerable Bede*, and the first Professor of Divinity here. It consisteth of 52 Colledges or places for Study, whereof 40 are of little use; and in the rest, the Students live at their own charges, as in the Halls at *Oxon*, or *Inns of Court*, or *Chaucery* at *London*; there being no Endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the Colledge of *Navarre*. Which possibly may be the reason why the Scholars here are generally so Debauched and Insolent: a ruder rabble than the which, are hardly to be found in the *Christian* World. Sensible of this mischief, and the cause thereof, *Francis I.*

whom the *French* call the *Father of the Muses*, at the perswasion of *Reuchline* and *Budeus*, these great Restorers of the *Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages, intended to have built a Colledge for 600 Students, and therein to have placed Professors for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 300000 Crowns of yearly Revenue, for their constant Maintenance. But it went no further than the purpose; prevented by the inevitable stroke of Death, from pursuance of it. In bigness this is little inferiour to the Town of *Ville*, and not superior to it for Wealth and Beauty; few Men of any Wealth and Credit, affecting to inhabit in a place of little Government. The fourth and last part, is the Suburbs, (or the *Faux-bourgs*, as the *French* call them) the principal whereof is that of *St. Germain*, (so called from an ancient Abby of that name) the best part of the whole Body of *Paris*, for large Streets, sweet Air, choice of the best Company, magnificent Houses, pleasant Gardens, and finally, for all those Contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of most populous Cities.

Here are also in this Isle, the royal House of *Madrid*, a retiring-place of the Kings, built by King *Francis I.* at his return from his Imprisonment in *Spain*. 2. *Rueil*, a sweet Country-house of the late Queen-Mothers. And, 3. *Bois de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our *Henry V.* I add this only, and so end; That this Isle hath always followed the Fortune of the Crown of *France*; never dismembered from the Sovereignty of the same, though sometimes out of the possession of the *French* Kings; as when the *English* kept it against *Charles VII.* and the *Leaguers* against *Henry IV.* A thing which hardly can be said of any other of the Provinces of this flourishing Country: The *French* Kings of the Race of *Merouee*, and *Charles the Great*, alienating from the Crown, many goodly Territories, contented only with a bare and titular *Homage* from them. By means whereof, more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was shared first amongst the great Princes of the *French*; which afterwards, by Inter-marriages, and other Titles, fell into the hands of Strangers; most of them Enemies of this Crown, and jealous of the Grandeur and Power thereof. Which kept the *French* Kings generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiscations, Marriages, and such other means, they reduced all these *Rivulets* to their first and original Channel; as shall be shewn in the pursuance of this Work.

2. CHAMPAGNE.

CHAMPAGNE is bounded on the North, with *Picardy*; on the South, with the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the East, with *Lorain*; on the West, with *France* specially so called.

The Country, for the most part, very plain, and pleasant, (whence it had the name) adorned with shady Woods, and delectable Meadows, fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat, in elder times, of the *Tricasses*, *Catalauni*, *Remi*, the *Lingones*, and *Senones*, (of which last Tribe or Nation, were those *Cisalpine Gauls* who sacked *Rome* under the Conduct of *Brennus*) part of them *Celts*, and part *Belgians*; and so accordingly disposed of the *Belgians*, into the Province of *Belgica secunda*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Rhemes*: the *Celts* into *Lugdunensis quarta*, of which the *Metropolis* was *Sen*; both Cities seated in this Country, the chief Rivers of it, 1. *Blaise*, 2. *Marne*. 3. *Yonne*. 4. *Sault*.

Chief places of that part hereof which belonged to *Belgica secunda*, or the Province of *Rhemes*, are 1. *Chalon*, on the River *Marne*, an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Rhemes*; called anciently, *Civitas Catalaunorum*. 2. *Joinville*, situate on the same River, belonging

longing to the House of *Guise*; the eldest Son of which Family, is called *Prince of Joinville*: in the Castle whereof, seated upon an high and inaccessible Hill, is to be seen the Tomb of *Claude*, the first Duke of *Guise*; the richest Monument of that kind in all *France*. The Barony of *William* Lord *Joinville*, third Son of *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and of *Ida* his Wife, who brought the Dukedom of *Bretagne* for her Dower or Portion; and Brother of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorain*, and Kings of *Jerusalem*. But whether it came to him by the gift of his Mother, as part of the Dukedom of *Fouillon*, or that he had it by his Wife, a Daughter of *Theobald* Earl of *Champagne*, I am not able to determine. Left by him after his decease, to *Godfrey* his youngest Son (*Thierri*) his eldest Son succeeding his Uncle *Baldwin* in the Dukedom of *Lorain*: upon the failure of whose Line, it fell unto the Duke of *Lorain*, as next Heir thereof, and so unto the Dukes of *Guise*, as descended from them. 3. *St. Urten*, a Town of the Territory of *Joinville*, from which it is about two Leagues distance. 4. *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Castle of so great strength, that in the Civil Wars of *France*, *An. 1614.* it endured 1100 shot of Cannon, and yet was not taken. 5. *Vassy*, upon the River *Saône*; a Town of as sweet a situation, as most in *France*. These last situate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallage*: so named, as I conceive, from the River *Vasle*. 6. *Vatry*, upon the confluence of the *Sault* and *Marne*, the chief Town and Bailage of that part which is named *Parthois* (*Agr. Erctensis* in the *Latine*;) so called of 7. *Perthe*, another Town thereof, but now not so eminent. 8. *Chaumont*, upon the *Marne*, the chief Town of *Bassigni*, and strengthened with a Castle mounted on a craggy Rock. 9. *Delfor*, or *St. Desir*, (*Fanum Sancti Desiderii*) royally fortified after it had been ruined, *An. 1544.* 10. *Rhemes*, (*Durocortorum Rhemorum*) an Archbishops See, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, situate on the River of *Vasle*. At this City, the Kings of *France* are most commonly crowned, that so they may enjoy the Unction of a sacred Oyl, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof; which, as they say, came down from Heaven and never decreaseth. How true this is, may be easily seen in that *Gregory of Tours*, who is so prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it, but especially (for *Argumentum ab auctoritate negative parum valet*) since the Legend informeth us, that this Holy Oyl was sent from Heaven at the anointing of *Clouis*, the first Christian King of the *French*. Whereas *Du Haillan*, one of their most judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the Great, to have been their first anointed King; and that there was none *de la premiere lignee cincl, ny sacre à Rhemes, ny ailleurs*, none of the first or *Merovingian* line of Kings had been anointed at *Rhemes* or elsewhere. But sure it is, (let it be true or false, no matter) that the *French* do wonderfully reverence this (their sacred) Oyl; and fetch it with great solemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the Prior, sitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent; the Archbishop hereof, (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and such Bishops as are present, going to the Church-doors to meet it, and leaving for it with the Prior, some competent Pawn; and on the other side, the King, when it is brought unto the Altar, bowing himself before it with great humility. But to return to the Town; it took this name from the *Rhemi*, once a potent Nation of these parts, whose chief City it was, and now an University of no small esteem: in which among other Colledges, there is one appointed for the Education of young *English* Fugitives. The first Seminary for which purpose, (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Down*, *An. 1568.* A second at *Rome* by Pope *Gregory XIII.* A third at *Valladolid* in *Spain* by *K. Philip II.* A fourth in *Lorain*, a Town of *Brabant*: And a fifth here (so much do they affect the gaining of the *English* to the *Romish* Church) by the Dukes of *Guise*. This Colledge had been famous for nothing but their version of the

New Testament into *English*. 11. *Ligny*, upon the River *Sault*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunensis maxima*, or the Province of *Sens*, the places of chief Note are 1. *Sens*, *Civitas Senonum* in *Antoninus*, anciently the Metropolis of that Province, by consequence the See of an Archbishop also. The Country hereabouts called *Le Paris Senonis*, was part of the Habitation of the ancient *Senones*, some of which passing over the *Alpes*, with other Nations of the *Gauls*, planted those parts which afterwards were for long time called *Gallica Cisalpine*. Of which the *Senones* were the most valiant, though far less in numbers; as those which had not only the honour of sacking *Rome*, but of managing an offensive War against that State, for the space of 100 years and upwards. What afterwards became of them had been shewed already when we were in *Lombardy*. 2. *Lagny* or *Civitas Lingunum*, (by *Ptolemy* called *Audemaurum*) situate in the Contines of *Burgundy*, not far from the Fountain or Spring head of the *Seine*: the See of a Bishop, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*. 3. *Troy*, *Civitas Tricassium*, seated on the *Seine*; a fair, strong and well-traded City, honoured with the Title of the Daughter of *Paris*, a See Episcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne* next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our *French* and *English* Histories, for the meeting of *Charles VI.* and *Henry V.* Kings of *France* and *England*, in which it was agreed, that the said King *Henry*, espousing *Katharine* Daughter of that King, should be proclaimed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of *France*; into which he should succeed on the said Kings death, and be the Regent of the Realm for the time of his Life, with divers other Articles best suiting with the Will and Honour of the Conqueror. 4. *Provence*, (by *Cæsar* called *Agendicum*) seated upon the *Seine*, in a pleasant Country, abounding in all fragrant Flowers, but especially with the sweetest Roses, which being transplanted into other Countries, are called *Provence Roses*. 5. *Meaux*, seated on the River *Marne*, anciently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Pliny* and others of the old Writers mention in this Tract; now honoured with a Bishops See, and neighboured by 6. *Monceaux*, beautified with a magnificent Palace, built by *Katherine de Medices*, Queen Mother of the three last Kings of the House of *Valois*. 7. *Montereau*, a strong Town on the Confluence of the *Seine* and the *Yonne*. 8. *Chateau-Thierry*, (*Castrum Theodorici*, as the *Latines* call it) situate on the River *Marne*. These five last, situate in that part of *Champagne* which lieth next to *France*, specially so called; known of long time by the name of *Brie*; which being the first or chief possession of the Earls of *Champagne*, occasioned them to be sometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and sometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here 9. *Auxerre*, in former time a City of the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, but now part of *Champagne*; of which more hereafter. And 10. *Fontenay*, a small Town in *Auxerrois*, in the very borders of this Province; memorable for the great Battle fought near it, *An. 841.* between the Sons and Nephews of *Ludovicus Pius*, for their Fathers Kingdoms: in which so many thousands were slain on both sides, that the Forces of the *French* Empire were extremely weakened; and had been utterly destroyed in pursuit of this unnatural War, if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a Peace between them; allotting unto each some part of that vast Estate, dismembred by that means into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, *Lorain*, *Burgundy*: never since brought into one hand, as they were before.

Adjoining unto *Champagne* also, where it looks towards *Lorain*, lies the Country and Duchy of *BAR*; belonging to the Dukes of *Lorain*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of *France*; but of late years seized on by the King of *France*. The Country commonly called *BARROIS*, environed for the most part with the two streams of the River *Marne*; of which the one rising in the edge of *Burgundy*, and the other in the borders of *Lorain*, do meet together at *Chalons*, a City of *Champagne*. Places of most Importance in it, 1. *Bar le due*, so called

called to distinguish it from *Bar* on the River *Seine*, and *Bar* upon the River *Albi*; a well fortified Town. 2. *La Motte*, 3. *Ligni*. 4. *Arqu*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. Of what Antiquity this Dukedom is, and by whom first founded and made an absolute Estate, I am yet to seek; though probable it is, that it might take its first Rise (as many other petit Signeuries did) out of the ruin and dismembring of the Kingdom of *Lorain*, or otherwise might be erected by the Earls Palatines of *Champagne*, out of some part of that Estate. But whether it were so or not, certain it is, that it came first to the present House of *Lorain*, by the gift of *René* Duke of *Alençon*, and titular King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, &c. who succeeded in it in the right of *Yoland* or *Violant* his Mother, Daughter of *Don John I.* King of *Aragon*, and of *Island* or *Violant*, the Heir of *Bar*; and dying gave the same, together with the Towns of *Lambeck* and *Orgen*, to *René* Duke of *Lorain*, his Nephew by the Lady *Violant* his Daughter. From this *René*, it was taken by *Lewis XI.* who having put a Garrison into *Bar*, repaired the Wall, and caused the Arms of *France* to be set on the Gates thereof. Restored again by *Charles VIII.* at his going to the Conquest of *Naples*: to buy him out by that means (if I guess aright) of his Pretensions to that Kingdom, which were fair and specious, since which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorain*, till the year 1633. when seized on by *Lewis XIII.* upon a Judgment and Arrest of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, in regard the present Duke had not done his Homage to the King as he ought to have done by the *Treaty* in 1659. It was again restored to the Duke, who enjoyed it till the year 1674. when the present French King *Lewis the XIV.* reatsumed it.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, two Barbels back to back, Or; *Some* of Cross Crozier, *Barbe*, of the second.

But to return again to *Champagne*; it pleased *Hugh Capet* at his coming to the Crown of *France*, to give the same to *Eudes* or *Odon*, Earl of *Blais*, (whose Daughter he had married in his private Fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom) with all the Rights and Privileges of a County Palatine. Which *Eudes*, or *Odon*, was the Son of *Theobald* Earl of *Blais*, and Nephew of that *Gerlon*, a noble Dane, to whom *Charles the Simple* gave the Town and Earldom of *Blais*, about the year 92, and not long after the time that he conferred the Country of *Neustria* upon *Rollo* the Norman, whose Kinsman and Assistant this *Gerlon* was in harassing and warring the Coasts of *France*. In the Person of *Theobald* the third, the Earls hereof became Kings of *Navarre*, descended on him in right of the Lady *Blanche* his Mother, Sister and Heir of King *Sancho* the eighth, Anno 1234. By the Marriage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, and Countess of *Champagne*, to *Philip* the fourth of *France*, surnamed the Fair, both these Estates were added to the Crown of *France*: enjoyed by him and his three Sons one after another, though not without some prejudice to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*. But the three Brethren being dead, and *Philip* of *Valois* succeeding in the Crown of *France*, he restored the Kingdom of *Navarre* to the said Lady *Joan*: and for the County of *Champagne* (which lay too near the City of *Paris* to be trusted in a foreign hand) he gave unto her and her Posterity, as in the way of exchange, some certain Towns and Lands in other places; though not of equal value to so rich a Patrimony.

Count Palatines of Champagne.

An. Chr.

- 999 1 Odo, Earl of Champagne, Brie, Blais and Touraine, Son of *Theobald* the elder Earl of *Blais*.
- 1032 2 Stephen, Earl of Champagne, and *Blais*, Father of *Stephen* Earl of *Blais*, and King of *England*.
- 1101 3 *Theobald*, eldest Son of *Stephen*.
- 1151 4 *Henry*, Son of *Theobald*, a great adventurer in the Wars of the Holy Land.

- 1181 5 *Henry II.* an Associate of the Kings of *France* and *England* in the Holy Wars; King of *Hierusalem*, in right of *Isabel* his Wife.
- 1196 6 *Theobald II.* Brother of *Henry*, added unto his House the hopes of the Kingdom of *Navarre*, by his Marriage with the Lady *Blanche*, Sister and Heir of *Sancho* 8.
- 1201 7 *Theobald III.* Earl of *Champagne*, Son of *Theobald* the second, and the Lady *Blanche*, succeeded in the Realm of *Navarre*, An. 1234.
- 1269 8 *Theobald IV.* Son of *Theobald* the 3. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
- 1271 9 *Henry IV.* Son of *Theobald* the 4. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
- 1284 10 *Philip IV.* King of *France*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
- 1313 11 *Lewis Hutin* Son of *Philip* King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
- 1315 12 *Philip the Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
- 1320 13 *Charles the Fair*, Brother of *Philip* King of *France* and *Navarre*, and the last Earl of *Champagne*; united after his decease by *Philip de Valois* to the Crown of *France*: the Earldom of *March*, near *Angoulesme*, being given for it, in exchange to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*, and Queen of *Navarre* married to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, in her right, honoured with that Crown, from whom descend the Kings of *France* and *Navarre*, of the House of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of these Palatines of *Champagne*, were *Argent*, two Bends cotized, potencee and counterpotencee of three pieces, Or.

3. PICARDIE.

PICARDIE hath on the East, the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and *Lorain*; on the West, some part of *Normandy*, and the *English* Ocean; on the North, the Counties of *Artois* and *Hainault*; and on the South *Champagne*, and *France* strictly and specially so called. A Country so well stored with Corn, that it is accounted the Granary or Store-house of *Paris*; but the few Wines which it produceth are but harsh, and of no good relish, especially in the Northern and colder parts of it.

The ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Suessiones*, *Ambiani*, and *Veromandui*, considerable Nations of the *Belgæ*; and therefore reckoned into the Province of *Belgica secunda*: but why they had the name of *Picards*, I am yet to seek. Omitting therefore the Conjectures of other Men, some of the which are groundless, and the rest ridiculous; I only say, as *Robert* Bishop of *Auranches* hath affirmed before me, *Quos itaq; ætas nostra Picardos appellat, were Belgæ dicendi sunt, qui postmodum in Picardotum transmigrarunt.*

The whole Country as it lieth from *Calais* to the Borders of *Lorain*, is divided into the *higher* and the *lower*: the *lower* subdivided into *Sainterre*, *Ponthieu*, *Boulognois*, and *Guisnes*: the *higher* into the *Vidimate* of *Amiens*, *Veromandois*, *Rethelois*, and *Tierache*; in every of which there are some places of Importance and Consideration.

In *Lower PICARDIE* and the County of *GUISNES*, the chief Towns, 1. *Calais*, by *Cæsar* called *Portus Icius* (as the adjoining Promontory, *Promontorium Icium*, by *Ptolemy*) a strong Town close upon *Artois*, at the entrance of the *English* Chanel: taken by *Edward* the third after the Siege of eleven Months, Anno 1347. and lost

lost again by Queen *Mary* in less than a fortnight, Anno 1557. So that had *Monsieur de Cordes* then lived, he had had his wish; who used to say, That, *he would be content to lye seven years in Hell, on condition that Calais were taken from the English.* The loss of which Town was a great blow to our Estate, for till that time we had the Keys of France at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto Queen *Mary*, who sickning presently upon it, said to those which attended her, That, *if she were opened, they should find Calais next her Heart.* It was taken also by Cardinal *Albert* from the French, in the year 1596. for the King of Spain; but soon after restored to them by a Treaty of Peace. 2. *Hamme*, a strong piece, one of the best Out-works of Calais. 3. *Fiennes*, on the borders towards Artois, which with the Country joyning to it, made an ancient Barony; the Patrimony in times past of the Earls of St. Paul, by whom given to *Theobald* the younger Brother of *Lewis* Earl of St. Paul and Constable of France, (of whom more hereafter) and from that Family conveyed to the House of *Egmond*, by the marriage of *Francis* Heir hereof to *John* Earl of *Egmond*, who died in the year 1528, and was the Father of that Earl, who after was beheaded by the Duke of *Alva*, Anno 1568. 4. *Andres*, more towards the borders of *Boulognois*, memorable for the interview of *Henry* the Eighth, and *Francis* the first; and many meetings of the English and French Commissioners. 5. *Guînes*, which gives name to this Division, called the County of *Guînes* (of which the Land of *Oye* wherein Calais stood (by the French called commonly *Pais de Calais*) was esteemed a part.) The Earldom anciently of the illustrious House of *Graie*, of which more anon.

2. In BOULOGNOIS, neighbouring on the Country of *Guînes*, the places of most note, 1. *Blackness*, a strong Fort on the Sea-side, betwixt Calais and Boulogne. 2. *Caftillon*, opposite to Boulogne, on the other side of the water. 3. *Boullenberg*, more within the Land, an Out-work to Boulogne. 4. Boulogne, by *Pliny* called *Portus Gesforiacus*, part of the Country of the *Morini*, spoken of by *Cæsar*; divided into the Base or Low Town lying on the shore side, well built, and much frequented by Passengers, going to, or coming out of England; and the High Town standing on the rise of an Hill, well garisoned for defence of the Port beneath it, and honoured with a Bishops See, translated hither from *Tournay* when that City was taken by the English. The Town and Country taken by King *Henry* the eighth, with infinite expence of Treasure, Anno 1544. but yielded not long after by King *Edward* the sixth: the French redeeming it at less than a fourth part of the Money, which the gaining of it had cost the Crown of England. As for the Fortunes of this Country, it was once an Earldom of it self, during which time it gave one King unto *Hierusalem*, and another to England. The first Earl of it which we meet with, was that *Eustace*, who by his marriage with *Ida*, the Daughter of *Geofrey* or *Godfrey* the Second, Duke of *Lorain*, added the Dutchy of *Bouillon* in *Gaul-Belgick* to his Earldom of Boulogne. To him succeeded in both these Titles and Estates, *Godfrey*, surnamed of *Bouillon* his eldest Son: who after the death of *Godfrey* the third, his Cousin-German, attained unto the Dukedom of *Lorain*, and finally was the first and most renowned King of the Western Christians Reigning in *Hierusalem*. *Godfrey* being dead, *Eustace* the youngest of his Brethren became Earl of Boulogne: whose Daughter *Maud* brought this Estate and Title of *Stephen* of *Blais*, who afterwards was King of England. *Eustace* the only Son of *Stephen* dying without Issue, the Rights hereof remained in his Sister *Mary*, the Abbess of *Ramsay*, married to *Matthew*, Brother of *Philip* of *Elfrats*, Earl of *Flanders*. And though *Matthew* was commanded by the Pope to restore her again unto the Abbey out of which he had taken her; yet he kept this Country for her Children. Conveyed by *Ida* the eldest Daughter of this Bed to *Reginald* of *Chastres*, her third Husband; by *Maud* his Daughter to *Philip*, second Son of *Philip Augustus* King of France by another *Maud*,

(he dying without Issue) to *Alfonso* of Portugal, who succeeding after in that Kingdom, sent her back to *Boulogne*; and finally by *Joan* Daughter and Heir of *William*, this *Alfonso*, Grandchild to *Philip* Earl of Artois, the Son of *Charles* Duke and Earl of Burgundy; to whom she brought *Philip* their only Son, Successor to his Grand-father in the said Estates, and to his Mother in this Earldom. But he deceasing without Issue, An. 1361, and *Joan* nor leaving any Children by King *John* of France, whom she married after the death of her first Husband, it fell by some other of the Heirs General to the *De la Tour* of *Auboygn* (the Ancestors of the now Dukes of *Breillon*) continuing in that Family till the year 1477, when bought by *Lewis* the eleventh of France of *Bertrand de la Tour*, the better to assure his Kingdom on that side against the English then possessed of the Country of *Guînes*. The purchase being made, *Lewis* the now Proprietor, did Homage for it to the Virgin *Mary*, in the chief Church thereof called *Notre Dame*, bare-headed, on his knees, without Spurs or Girdle: and offered to her Image a massie Heart of Gold of 2000 Ounces; Capitulating that from thenceforth he and his Successors would hold that Earldom of her only, in perpetual Homage; and at the change of every Vassal, present her with a golden Heart of the same weight. Since which time never aliened from the Crown of France; nor giving Title unto any but to *Katherine de Medicis* Wife of *Henry* the Second, created Countess of *Boulogne* and *Clermont*, when first married to him, he being then Duke of Orleans only.

The Arms hereof under the ancient Earls of Boulogne, were Or, a Banner Gules, tuffed Purple: those of *De la Tour*, being a Tower embattelled Sable; but the colour of the Field I do no where find.

3. PONTHEU, so called from the Bridges, built for conveniency of passage over the moorish Flats thereof, belonged formerly to the English; to whom it came by the Marriage of *Eleanor*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, by *Joan* the Daughter and Heir of *Simon*, the last Earl hereof, to King *Edward* the first. Towns of most note in it, 1. *Abbeville*, seated on the *Some*, well fortified, and as strongly garrisoned, as a Frontier Town upon Artois: on one side unassailable by reason of a deep and moorish Fen, which comes up close to it; beautified with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (*Abbatia Villa* in the *Latine*) and the See of a Bishop. 2. *Monstreville*, a well fortified Town, in the way betwixt *Abbeville* and Boulogne, and a strong out-work unto Paris. 3. *Cressie*, where King *Edward* the third defeated the great Army of *Philip de Valois*, in the first Onsets for that Kingdom, Anno 1343. And 4. *Treport*, a small Haven on the East of *S. Valeries*. Some place the Earldom of *S. Paul* in this Country of *Pontbien*, others more rightly in Artois, where we mean to meet with it. The Arms hereof were Or, three Bends Azure.

4. And as for the Country of *SAINTIERRE*, which is the fourth part of the Lower Picardy, the chief Towns of it are, 1. *Peronne*, upon the River *Some*, where *Lewis* the eleventh, the greatest Master of State-craft for the times he lived in, put himself most improvidently into the hands of *Charles* of Burgundy, who as improvidently dismissed him. 2. *Roy*, and 3. *Mont Didier*, (*Mons Desiderii* in Latin) both of them strong Towns upon the Frontier; but otherwise of little fame in former Stories.

In the Higher Picardy, being that part of this Country which lieth furthest from the Sea, the first division which occurreth, is the *Vidamate* of *AMIEENS*, so called of the fair City of *Amiens*, and the *Vidame*, or chief Governour of it. Which honour, as it is peculiar to the French only, so *Mills* in his Edition of *Glovers Catalogue of Honour*, will have but four at all in France, viz. this of *Amiens*, *Chalons*, *Garbory*, and that of *Chartres*. But certainly in France there are many more of them; as at *Rhemes*, *Mans*, &c. and formerly as many as it had Bishops; the *Vice-dominus*, or *Vice-dame*, being to the

Bishop in his *Temporals*, as the Chancellor in his *Spirituals*; or as the *Vice-comites* (*Viscounts*) were anciently to the Provincial Earls in their Courts of Judicature; or to give you an Example nearer home, and of more resemblance, these *French Vidames* were unto their several and respective Bishops, as the *Temporal Chancellor* (in this Realm) of the Bishoprick of *Durham*, or the *High Steward* of the Bishoprick of *Ely*, to those several Bishops.

Places of most note herein, 1. *Corbie*, a Town of great Importance, and strongly garrisoned, situate on the Frontier towards the *Netherlands*. 2. *Chaume*, on the same Frontier also, but of less consideration, the Honorary Seat and Title of the present *Vidame*. 3. *Piquigni*, situate on a pretty ascent of ground overlooking the *Some*, on the left hand of the River betwixt *Amiens* and *Abbeville*, the ordinary Seat of the former *Vidames*; more famous for the interview of *Edward* the IV. of *England*, and *Lewis* the XII. than for giving the name of *Picardy* to all the Provinces which *Mercator* only of all Writers doth ascribe unto it. 4. *Crouy*, an obscure Village now, but formerly of special Note for a goodly Castle, commanding over the adjoining Territory, and giving name to the illustrious Family, hence surnamed of *Crouy*, descended from the Kings of *Hungary*, and the Progenitors of the Dukes of *Arschot*, and Princes of *Chimay*, in the *Netherlands*; before their translating to which Countries by the Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were entituled Earls of *Guines*. 5. *Amiens* it self, seated upon the *Some* above *Piquigni*, the River being there divided into many Streams for the use and service of the Town; well built, with very strong Walls and deep ditches: the loss whereof, when taken by Archduke *Albert*, in 1597. much hazarded the Affairs and Reputation of King *Henry* the Fourth, and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former Works an impregnable Citadel. But the chief glory of this City is in the Cathedral, the fairest and most lovely Structure in the West of *Europe*: so beautified within and adorned without, that all the excellencies of Cost and Architecture seem to be met together in the Composition. The Fronts of our Cathedrals of *Wells* and *Peterburgh*, the rich Glasse in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the costly Imagery, and arched Butresses in the Chapel at *Westminster* (before the late defacements of those Cathedrals) might serve as helps to set forth the full beauties of it. The Towns and Territories anciently under the command of the Bishops of it, whose Officers for the Temporal Government hereof called *Vice-domini* or *Vidames*, were at first eligible by the Bishops, and accountable to them, but by degrees engrossing all power unto themselves, they became Hereditary, and gave the name of the *Vidamate* of *Amiens* to this part of *Picardy*. The present *Vidame* of it is the Duke of *Chaume*, who being one of the younger Brothers of *Monsieur de Luynes* (chief Favourite to K. *Lewis* 13.) obtained in Marriage the Daughter and Heir of the former *Vidame*, with whom he had the Town and Castle of *Piquigni*, the chief command of these parts, and a Rent of 9000 *l. per Annum*, honoured thereupon by the power and favours of his Brother, with the Title of the Duke of *Chaume*, and Peer of *France*, Anno 1620, or thereabouts.

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, pass we on next to *VEROMANDUIS*, the ancient Habitation of the *Veromandui*, the fairest and largest part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferior to the best of *France* in the number of neat and populous Cities.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Soissons*, called anciently *Augusta Suessionum*, the chief City of the *Suessiones* or *Suessones*: and the last Hold which the *Romans* had in all *Gaul*; lost by *Siagritus*, Governour for the Western Emperor, to *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*. In the division of his Kingdom, made the seat Royal of *Clotaire*, the Son of this *Clouis*; and of *Aripert*, and *Chilperick*, the Sons of *Clotaire*. from hence entituled Kings of *Soissons*; their Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica secunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardy*, and *Cham-*

pagne, as we call them now. But *Soissons* having long since lost the honour of a Regal Seat, hath of long time been made the honorary Title of the Counts of *Soissons*, a Branch of the Royal stock of *Bourbon*; a Bishop See, and situate on the River of *Aisne*. In this City *Pepin* was first proclaimed King of *France* in the year 752. 2. *Laon*, a Bishops See also, the Bishop whereof is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, an Earl of *Laon*; the Town in *Latine*, *Laudunum*. 3. *Noyon*, in *Latin*, *Noviodunum*, an Episcopal See also. 4. *Chapelle*, a strong piece, one of the best Out-works of *Paris* against the *Netherlands*. 5. *D'Orleans*. 6. *La Fere*, and *Hun*, places of great strength also, but more near the Frontiers. And 7. *S. Quintin*, anciently the chief City of the *Veromandui*, then called *Augusta Veromanduorum*: called afterwards *S. Quintin*, from that Saint here worshipped, as the Patron *Deus tutelar*is of it. A place of great Importance, for the Realm of *France*; and so esteemed in the opinion of the Earl of *Charlais*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) and King *Lewis* the XI. the first of which never digested the restoring of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no less than 400000 Crowns; the latter never would forgive the Earl of *St. Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his Service. A Town of greater note in succeeding times, for the famous Battel of *St. Quintin*, Anno 1557, wherein King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, with the help of the *English*, under command of the Earl of *Pembroke*, overthrew the whole Forces of the *French*, made themselves Masters of the Town, and thereby grew so formidable to the *French* King, that the Duke of *Guise* was in post haste sent for out of *Italy* (where his Affairs began to prosper) to look unto the safety of *France* it self. As for the Fortunes of this part it was once an Earldom of it self, and an Earldom of as great Antiquity as the most in *France*, it being one *Heribert* or *Hebert* Earl of *Veromandois*, who in pursuance of the quarrel of the House of *Anjou*, surprised *Charles* the Simple, and carried him Prisoner to *Peronne*, where he after died; for which deservedly hanged by *Lewis*, Surnamed *Tranfmareine* the Son of *Charles*, when he became possessed of his Fathers Kingdom; by the Daughter and Heir of another *Hebert*, conveyed in Marriage unto *Hugh* surnamed the Great, one of the younger Sons of King *Henry* the first of *France*, succeeding in her right into the Title and Estate of Earl of *Veromandois*, and by that name renowned in the first Wars for the Holy Land. By *Elizabeth* the Niece of this *Hugh*, the Daughter of *Rodolphus* his eldest Son married to *Philip* of *Elzatz* Earl of *Flanders*, it was added unto that Estate; but shortly after given by the same *Philip* (having no Children of his own) in Dower with *Isabel* his Niece, Daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainault*, unto *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, and since united to that Crown, not giving since that time the Title of Earl or Duke to any, for ought I can find.

III. More towards *Hainault* and *Lorain* lieth the Country of *RETHELOIS*, so called of *Rethel* the chief Town, well fortified as the rest of the Frontier places, but of most note among the *French*, in that the Eldest Sons of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have usually been entituled Earls, and Dukes of *Rethel*; united to that Family by the marriage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the Daughter and Heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*, An. 1312, or thereabouts. 2. *S. Monbaud*, a Town of consequence and strength. 3. *Sygni*, a strong piece belonging to the Marquis of *Vieuville*. 4. *Casteau-Portion*, of more beauty, but of like importance. The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Rethel* were *Gules*, three Rakes-heads indented Or.

IV. Finally in the Dutchy of *TIERASCHE*, the last part of the higher *Picardy*, we have the Town of *Guise*, of some note for the Castle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducal Family of *Lorain* (on the borders whereof it standeth) from hence entituled Dukes of *Guise*. A Family which within a little compass of time produced two Cardinals, the one entituled of *Guise*, the other of *Lorain*; six Dukes, that is to say, the D. of *Guise*, *Moyenne*,
ne,

ne, *Aumal*, *Elbeuf*, *Aguillon*, and *Chevrouse*; the Earl of *Samarive*; and besides many Daughters married into the best Houses in *France*, one married to *James* the Fifth King of the *Scots*. The first, and he that gave the rise unto all the rest of this potent Family, was *Claud*, Son to *Rene*, the second Duke of *Lorain*, who passing into *France* to take possession of the Patrimony allotted to him, followed King *Henry I.* in the War of *Italy*, where he behaved himself so valiantly at the Battel of *Marignan*, in which he had the chief Command of the *German* Auxiliaries, that the King always after held him in a great esteem, and married him to *Anto Reette* of *Bourbon*, Daughter of *Francis*, Earl of *Vendosme*; in respect of which Alliance, and his other Merits, he was honoured with the Title of Duke of *Guise*; the Father (amongst other Children) of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, Wife of *James* the Fifth, and Grandmother of *James* the Sixth, the first Monarch of *Britain*. The second was *Francis*, who endanger'd the Realm of *Naples*, resisted the Siege of the Emperor *Charles* at *Mets*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Calice* from Queen *Mary*, and was at last treacherously slain at the Siege of *Orleanse*, by one of the *Hugonots* named *Polrot*, (on the Instigation of some of the Chiefs of that Faction) Anno 1563. The third was *Henry*, that great Enemy of the Protestants, who contriv'd the great Massacre at *Paris*, and almost dispossed *Henry* the Third of all *France*: He began the Holy League, and was finally slain at *Blais*, by the Command of King *Henry* the Third. But we must know that this Town did anciently belong to the Dukes of *Lorain*: and had given the Title of Earl of *Guise* to *Frederick*, the second Son of *John*, and *Charles* the third Son of *Rene*, both the first of those Names; before *Claud* of *Lorain* was advanced to the Title of Duke; as being part of the Estate and Patrimony of the Barons of *Joinville*, of whom we spake before when we were in *Champagne*. Of most note, next to *Guise* it self, is, 2. *Ripemont* on the South of *Guise*. 3. *Chastelet*, upon the borders towards *Luxembourg*, a strong Town, and one of the best Out-works of *France*. 4. *Mazucers*, upon the *Maesc* or *Meuse*, a place of great strength and like importance, belonging properly to the Dukes of *Mevers* (as chief Lords thereof) in right of their descent from the House of *Retbel*: fortified with a strong Citadel for defence of the place, and that Citadel well garrisoned by the *French* King, for defence of this Border; laid to the Government of *Champagne*, though a Town of *Picardy*, and therefore made by some to belong to that Province also.

As for the state of this whole Province, I do not find that it was ever passed over by the *French* Kings unto any one Hand; as almost all the rest of *France* had been at some time or other, but distracted unto divers Seigneuries and several Lordships (all of them absolute in themselves, and scarce affording to the *French* King the slight Tribute of Homage) the particulars whereof we have seen before; some of which fell to the Crown of *France* by Confiscations, some by lawful Marriages, and others by Conquest; some held of *England*, some of the Earls of *Arton*, and others of *Flanders*, and lastly of the Dukes of *Burgundy*, as Lords of those Provinces; those which depended upon *England*, being seized on by *Charles* the Seventh, on the loss of *Normandy* by the *English*; as those which held of *Burgundy*, were by *Lewis* his Son, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles*, at the Battel of *Nancy*, An. 1476.

4. NORMANDY.

NORMANDY is bounded on the East with the River *Some*, and part of *Picardy*, on the West with *Bretagne*, and some part of the Ocean, on the North with

the *English* Chanel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South, with *France* especially so called, and the County of *Main*. It made up the whole Province of *Lugdunensis secunda*, in the time of the *Romans*; the Metropolis whereof was *Rouen*; and in the Greatness of the *French* Empire had the Name of *Neustria*, commonly so called for *Hibernia*; the Name of *Hibernia* or *Hibernia*, being given by some to this part of the Realm of *Hibernia*, as that of *Neustria* or *Neustria* to a part of *England*. Afterwards being bestowed upon the *Normans* by *Charles the Simple*, it was called *Normandy*.

This flourishing and rich Dukedom of *Normandy*, for largeness of Extent, multitudes of People, number and stateliness of Cities, fertility of Soil, and the commodiousness of the Seas, may worthily be accounted the chief of *France*. Well water'd with the River *Some*, which runneth quite through it; as do also 2. the *Orne*, and 3. the *Aven*: not to say any thing of 4. *Robee*, 5. *Ante*, and 6. *Reinelle*, and many others of less Note. In length it reacheth about 170 Miles, and about 60 in breadth, where it is narrowest; containing in that round the largest and fairest Corn Fields that are to be seen in all *France*. Of all other natural Commodities it is extream plentiful, excepting Wines; which the Northern coldness of the Climate admits not of, or sparingly at the best, and of no perfection. The People of it formerly renowned for Feats of Arms, the Conquerors of *England*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Kingdom of *Antich* in the East; at this time thought to be of a more sharp and subtil wit, than the rest of the *French*; *Scavans au possible ed procees & plaideries* (saith *Orelus* of them) especially in the quilllets of Law.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*: the *Lower* containing the Sea-coasts, and the *Higher*, the more Inland Parts. Principal Cities of the whole, 1. *Constance*, (call'd by the *French* *Contances*) a Bishop's See, the Spire or Steeple of whose Cathedral, is easily discernable afar off, both by Sea and Land; and serveth Sailors for a Land-mark. From hence the Country hereabouts hath the Name of *Constantine*. 2. *Auranches* situate on a Rock, with a fair prospect over the *English* Chanel, but more near to *Bretagne*, than the other, the chief City of the *Abrincantes*, called *Ingena* by *Ptolomy*; now a Bishop's See. 3. *Cain* (*Cadomum* in *Latin*) an Episcopal See as the other; strong, populous, and well built, seated upon the River *Orne*, second in reputation of the whole Province, but more especially famous for the Sepulcher of *William* the Conqueror, the University founded here by King *Henry* the Fifth of *England*, and for the long resistance which it made against him, in his Conquest of *Normandy*, in the Year 1417. 4. *Bayeux* (the *Civitas Baiocassium* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Country round about hath the Name of *Belsin*. Memorable of a long time for a See Episcopal. One of the Bishops whereof, called *Odo*, Brother unto *William* the Conqueror, by the Mother's side, was by him created Earl of *Kent*; and afterwards, on some just displeasure, committed Prisoner. For which, when quarrelled by the Pope, (the Clergy being then exempted from the Secular Powers) he returned this Answer, *That he had committed the Earl of Kent, not the Bishop of Bayeux*: by which distinction he avoided the Pope's displeasure. 5. *Rouen*, of old *Rotbomagum*, pleasantly seated on the *Seine*, and water'd with the two little Riverets of *Robee* and *Reinelle*, which keep it very sweet and clean. The City for the most part well built, of large Circuit and great Trading; the second for Bigness, Wealth, and Beauty in all *France*: anciently the Metropolis of this Province, and an Archbishop's See; and honoured of late times with a Court of Parliament, erected here by *Lewis* the Twelfth, Anno 1501. In the Cathedral Church hereof (a reverend, but no beautiful Fabrick) is to be seen the Sepulcher of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the Sixth; which when an envious Courtier perswaded *Charles* the Eighth to deface; God forbid (said he

he) that I should wrong him, being dead, whom living all the Power of France was not able to withstand; adding withal, that he deserved a better Monument than the English had bestowed upon him. And to say truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, short of the Merits of the Man, and carrying no proportion to so great a Virtue. 6. *Falaise*, upon the River *Ante*, once of Strength and Note; the dwelling-place of *Arlette*, a Skinner's Daughter, and the Mother of *William the Conqueror*; whom Duke *Robert*, passing through the Town, took such notice of, (as he beheld her in a Dance amongst other Damosels) that he sent for her to accompany him that Night in Bed, and begot on her *William the Bastard*, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*. Her immodesty that Night said to be so great, that either in regard thereof, or in spite to her Son, the English called all Strumpets by the Name of *Harlots*, the word continuing to this Day. 7. *Verneville*, (*Vernolium* in Latin) in former Times accounted one of the Bulwarks of *Normandy* against the French. Of which it is reported, that when News was brought to *Richard the First*, that *Philip*, surnamed *Augustus*, the French King, had laid Siege unto it, he should say these words; *I will never turn my back, till I have confronted those cowardly Frenchmen*. For performance of which Princely word, he caused a Passage to be broken through the Palace of *Westminster*, and came so unexpectedly upon his Enemies, that they raised their Siege, and hasted homewards. 8. *Alançon*, of most note for giving the Title of Earl and Duke to many Princes of the Royal Family of *Valois*, beginning in *Charles de Valois*, the Father of *Philip de Valois*, French King; and continuing for eight Successions, till the Death of *Charles the Fourth*, Duke of this Line: conferred occasionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Family. 9. *Lysieux*, on the North-east of *Alançon*, a Bishop's See, the chief Town of the *Lexovii*; as 10. *Caux*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Cæsar* in these Parts. 11. *Eureux*, an Episcopal See also, by *Ptolomy* called *Mediolanium*, the chief City anciently of the *Eburones*, and still a rich and flourishing Town; the third in estimation of all this Province, and made an Earldom in the Person of *Lewis* a younger Son of *Philip the Third*, whose Son, called *Philip*, by his marriage with *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis Hutin*, attained unto the Crown of *Navarre*. But this Town, with many fair Estates in this Country, which depend on it, being seized on by the French in the time of *Charles the Son* of this *Philip*, for some Practices against that Kingdom; there was after given to *Charles the Third*, and last King of this House, in compensation for the same, Anno 1406. the Title of Duke of *Nemours*, with a good Sum of ready Money, and a Pension of 1200*l.* Sterling, yearly, issuing out of the Revenues of *Brie* and *Champagne*. 12. *Guisors*, a strong Frontier Town towards France, whilst *Normandy* was in the hands of the English, or under its own Dukes and Princes; notable for the many Repulses given unto the French. And 13. *Pontoyse*, another Frontier upon France; so called of the Bridge on the River of *Oyse*, (which divides France from *Normandy*) on which the Town is situate, and by which well fortified on that side; but taken at the second coming of *Charles the Seventh*, after an ignominious flight hence, upon the noise only of the coming of the Duke of *York*, Commander at that time of the Province, and the English Forces. 14. *Albemar*, contractedly *Aumerl*, most memorable for giving the Title of Earl to the Noble Family *De Fortibus*, Lords of *Holderness* in *England*; and of Duke to *Edward* Earl of *Rutland*, after Duke of *York*. Made more famous by *Charles II.* by creating the Loyal General Monk (the Restorer of the English Monarchy) Duke of *Albemar*, the seventh Day of *July*, 1660. In which Honour his only Son *Christopher* succeeded him, in the Year 1669. More towards the Sea, 15. *S. Valeries*, seated on a small, but secure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-haven*. 16. *Dieppe*, at the Mouth of a little River so named, opening in a

large and capacious Bay; a Town of Trade, especially for the *New-found-Land*; remarkable for its Fidelity to *Henry IV.* in the midst of his Troubles; when the Confederates of the *Guisian* Faction, called the *Holy League*, had outed him of almost all the rest of his Cities, compelled him to betake himself hither, (from whence he might more easily hoise Sail for *England*) and called him in derision, *The King of Dieppe*. 17. *New-Haven*, the Port-Town to *Rouen* and *Paris*, situate at the Mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence, by great Ships, navigable as far as *Rouen*; by lesser, unto *Pont de l'Arch*, 70 Miles from *Paris*; the Bridge of *Rouen* formerly broken down by the English, to secure the Town, lying unrepared to this Day, by means of the *Parisians*, for the better trading of their City. By the French it is called *Hav're de grace*, and *Franciscopolis* by the *Latins*; repaired and fortified (the better to confront the English) by King *Francis* the First, and from thence so named. Deliver'd by the Prince of *Conde* and his Faction, into the hands of Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a Town of Caution, for the Landing of such Forces as she was to send to their Relief, in the first Civil War of France about Religion; and by the help of the same Faction, taken from her again, as soon as their Differences were compounded. By means whereof, the *Hugonots* were not only weaken'd for the present; but made incapable of any Succours out of *England* for the time to come; and the next Year were again warred on by their King, with more heat than formerly. 18. *Harflew*, and 19. *Honflew*, both situate on the Banks of the *Seine*, but of little notice at the present, because not capable of any great Shipping; nor useful in the way of Trade, by reason of the interposition of *New-haven*, betwixt them and the Sea; the former famous notwithstanding in our English Stories; as the first Town which that Victorious Prince King *Henry the Fifth*, attempted and took in, in France. 20. *Churburg*, (the *Latins* call it *Cæsar's Burgum*) on the Sea-side also, the last Town which the English held in the Dukedom of *Normandy*: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Eureux*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; till alienated by *Charles the Third* of *Navarre*, on the composition before-mentioned; but being garrisoned by the English for King *Henry the Sixth*, it held out a Siege of seven Months, against the Forces of France.

Here are also in this Dukedom the Towns of 21. *Tankerville*, and 22. *Enve*, which have given the Title of Earls to the Noble Family of the *Greys*, and *Bourchiers* in *England*; as also those of 23. *Harcourt*, 24. *Longueville*, and 25. *Aumal*, which have given the Title of Duke and Earl to some of the best Houses in France.

In this Country also is the little Signeury of *IVIDOT*, heretofore said to be a free and absolute Kingdom; advanced to that high Dignity by *Clotaire*, the seventh King of the French; who having abused the Wife of one *Gautier de Ividot*, (so called because of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent Revenge) killed the Man himself, to make some satisfaction to his Family for so great an Injury, erected the Lordship of *Ividot* to the Estate of a Kingdom; and gave unto the Heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Walter*) all the Prerogatives of a free and absolute Monarch, as, to make Laws, Coin Money, and the like. From hence the French call a Man that hath but small Demains to maintain a great Title, a *Roy d'Ividot*. At last, but at what time I know not, it fell again to a Lordship, and belongeth now to the House of *Bellay* in *Bretagne*.

There belonged also to this Dukedom, but rather as subject to the Dukes of *Normandy*, than part of *Normandy* it self, the County of *PERCH*, situate betwixt it and the Province of *La Beausse*, of which now reckoned for a part; and was divided into the higher and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nogent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch* *Gowet*, or the lower *Perch*, and that it took that adjunct from *Rotrou*, the second Earl of this County, the Founder

der or Repairer of it, to difference it from another of that Name, called *Nogent le Roy*, a Town of *Champagne*.
 2. *Mortaigne*, or *Moriton*; of most note in the higher *Perch*, especially for giving the Title of an Earl to *John*, the youngest Son of King *Henry* the Second, after King of *England*; as in the times succeeding to the Lord *Edmund Beauford*, after Duke of *Somerset*. The whole, first made a distinct Estate, in the Person of *Arnulph* of *Hesdin*, the first Earl hereof. Whose Son and Successor, named *Rotrou*, (of great Note in the Wars of *Spain* against the *Moors*, in behalf of *Alfonso* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, An. 1110.) by *Maud* the natural Daughter of *Henry* the First of *England*, unfortunately drowned with her Brother *William*, as they crossed the Seas; had one only Daughter, named *Magdalen*, (or as some say, *Margarete*) the Wife of *Garcia*, the seventh King of *Navarre*, and Mother of King *Sancho*, surnamed the *Wise*, from whom all the Kings of *Navarre* have since descended. But this Family being extinct in a short time after, the Estate fell unto the *English*, as Dukes of *Normandy*; and so continu'd till the seizure of *Normandy* by the *French*, in the time of King *John*. After which time, the Title of Earl of *Perch* was given to *Charles* Earl of *Valois* and *Alanson*, Father of *Philip de Valois*, French King, of *Lewis* Earl of *Anjou*, and of *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Alanson*; in which House of *Alanson* it continu'd, and was commonly the Title of the eldest Sons of the Dukes thereof.

But to return again to the Country of *Normandy*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Caletes*, *Eburones*, *Lexovii*, *Abrimantes*, spoken of before; the *Bellocassi*, or *Venelocassi*, about *Rouen*; the *Salares* and *Baiocenses*, about *Sees* and *Baieux*: all conquered first by the powerful *Romans*; the *Romans* after by the *French*, and the *French* by the *Normans*. These last, a People of the North, inhabiting those Countries which now make up the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Swethland*, and *Norway*, united in the Name of *Normans*, in regard of their Northernly situation; as in our History and Description of those Kingdoms, we shall shew more fully. Out of those Parts they made their first irruption about the Year 700, when they so ransacked and plagued the Maritime Towns of *France* and *Belgium*, that it was inserted in the Litany, *From Plague, Pestilence, and the fury of the Normans*, good Lord, &c. To quiet these People, and to secure himself, *Charles the Simple* gave them a part of *Neustria*, (from them since called *Normannia*) or *Normandy*, together with the Sovereignty of *Bretagne*; enjoy'd by them and their Posterity for many Ages. Their first Duke was *Rollo*, Anno 912. from whom in a direct Line, the sixth was *William the Bastard*, Conqueror, and King of *England*, Anno 1067. After this *Normandy* continued *English* till the Days of King *John*; when *Philip Augustus* seiz'd on all Estates in *France*, as Forfeitures, Anno 1202. The *English* then possessing the Dukedoms of *Normandy* and *Aquitain*; the Earldoms of *Anjou*, *Touren*, *Main*, *Poitou*, and *Limousin*; being in all a far greater and better portion of the Country, than the Kings of *France* themselves possessed. The *English* after this recovered this Dukedom, by the Valour of King *Henry* the Fifth; and having held it thirty Years, lost it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth; the *English* then distracted with domestick Factions. After which double Conquest of it from the Crown of *England*, the *French* distrusting the Affections of the *Normans*, and finding them withal a stubborn and untractable People, have miserably oppress'd them with Tolls and Taxes, keeping them always poor and in a low condition; in so much as it may be said of them, that they are the most beggarly People that ever had the luck to live in so rich a Country. But it is time to look on

The Dukes of *Normandy*.

An. Chr.

- 912 1 *Rollo* of *Norway*, made first Duke of *Normandy*, by *Charles the Simple*; by whose perswasion Baptized, and called *Robert*.
- 917 2 *William*, surnamed *Longespee*, from the length of his Sword.
- 942 3 *Richard*, the Son of *Longespee*.
- 980 4 *Richard II.* Son of the former.
- 1026 5 *Richard III.* Son of *Richard II.*
- 1028 6 *Robert*, the Brother of *Richard III.*
- 1035 7 *William* the base Son of *Robert*, subdued the Realm of *England*; from thence called the Conqueror.
- 1093 8 *Robert II.* eldest Son of *William the Conqueror*, put by the Kingdom of *England* by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refused the Crown of *Hierusalem*, then newly conquered by the Forces of the Christian Princes of the West. Outed at last, Imprisoned, and deprived of Sight by his Brother *Henry*; he lived a miserable Life in the Castle of *Cardiffe*, and lieth buried in the Cathedral Church of *Gloucester*.
- 1102 9 *Henry I.* King of *England*.
- 1134 10 *Stephen*, King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*.
- 1161 11 *Henry Plantagenet*, Duke of *Normandy*, and after King of *England*; of that Name the second.
- 1189 12 *Henry III.* surnamed *Court-mantle*, Son of *Henry II.* made Duke of *Normandy* by his Father.
- 1199 13 *Richard I.* surnamed *Cœur de Lion*, King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*, Son of *Henry II.*
- 1199 14 *John* the Brother of *Richard*, King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*, outed of his Estates in *France*, by King *Philip Augustus*, An. 1202. before whom he was accused of the Murder of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the Ditches of the Castle of *Rouen*, where he was Imprisoned; but sentenced *Causa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this, *Normandy* still remained united to the Crown of *France*, (the Title only being born by *John de Valois*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the Fifth, during the Life-time of his Father) till the Conquest of it by the Valour of King *Henry* the Fifth, Anno 1420. which was 218 Years after it had been seized on by King *Philip Augustus*, and having been holden by the *English* but 30 Years, was lost again, Anno 1450. in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth. Never since that dismembred from the Crown of *France*, saving that *Lewis* the Eleventh, the better to content the Confederate Princes, conferred it, in Appennage, on his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, Anno 1465. but within two Months after, took it from him again, and gave him in exchange for it, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, which lay further off from his Associates.

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times I can hardly say. That they were very fair and great, appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who saith that he had seen raised in *Normandy* 95000*l.* Sterling Money; which was a vast Sum of Money in those times. As also by this testimony of the Duke of *Burgundy*, who held King *Lewis* the Eleventh to be weaken'd a whole third part in his Estate, by giving *Normandy* in Portion to the Duke of *Berry*. Now they amount

amount unto as much as the Kings *Treasures* and *Toll-masters* are pleased to draw out of it.

The Arms of *Normandy* were *Gules*, two *Leopards Or*, which with the single *Leopard*, or *Lyon*, being added for the *Dutchy of Aquitain*, make the Arms of *England*.

5. BRETAGNE.

BRETAGNE is bounded on the East with *Normandy*, and the County of *Maine*; on the South with *Anjou*, and *Poitou*; on all other parts with the *English* or *Gallick Ocean*. Watered upon the South-side with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Anjou*; but so as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lieth on the South-side of that River, betwixt it and *Poitou*.

It was first called *Armorica*, from its situation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. But how it came by this new Name, is not well agreed on. The general Opinion is, That it took this Name from the neighbouring *Britains*, brought over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling against the Emperor *Gratian*, Anno 389, by whom this Province was subdued; and from them named *Britania Minor*, Little *Britain*. An Argument whereof may be, that the Language of this People hath still no small affinity with the *Welsh* or *British*; there being a Tradition also, that the *Britains* who first came over hither and married the Women of this Country, cut out their Tongues, for fear they should corrupt the Language of their Posterity. And to this Conquest by the *Britains*, these old Verses give this further Countenance.

*Vicit Aremoricas animosa Britannia Gentes,
Et dedit imposto, nomina prisca, jugo.*

That is to say,

Gaul-Armorick, the *Britains* overcame,
And to the conquered Province gave their Name.

Notwithstanding the most probable Opinion seemeth to be, that it took this Name from the *Britanni*, an old *Gallick* People, mentioned by *Pliny* in *Gaul-Belgick*; retiring hither on the Invasions and Incursions of the Barbarous Nations; though possibly those *Britanni* of *Gallia-Belgica*, might be as well some Colony of the *Island-Britain*, as the *Belgæ*, a great Nation in the *Isle of Britain*, are said to have been a People of *Gallia-Belgica*. The reason is, because there was no Author before *Geoffrey of Monmouth*, who takes notice of this transporting of the *Insular Britains*, by the Tyrant *Maximus*; no Ancient Author, *Greek* or *Latin*, making mention of it. And for the *Welsh* or *British* Words, which are still remaining in the Language, they are conceived to be of no other than a remainder of the old *Gallick* Tongue, which was originally the same with the ancient *British*, as is elsewhere proved.

The Province is in compass 200 *French Leagues*, pleasant and fruitful; beautified with many shady Woods, and spacious Downs; sufficiently well stored with all manner of Grain; but destitute of Wine and the choicest Fruits, by reason of the Northernly situation of it. Divided commonly into *Hault* or *Highb-Bretagne*, and *Basse* or *Low Bretagne*: the first containing the more Eastern, and the last the Western parts hereof. Neither of the two much furnished with navigable or notable Rivers; the defect of which, the neighbourhood of the Sea supplieth, affording it more capacious Havens, and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens; those of most note in the *Highb Bretagne*, are 1. *S. Malo*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every High-water it

is encompassed. A Bishop's See, and a Port very much frequented by the *French* and *Spanish*, who use here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes spoiled by the *English*, in the Wars with *France*, especially since the time of King *Henry the Seventh*. 2. *Blauet*, a safe, but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the same Name also. Impregably fortified by the *Spaniard*, Anno 1590. when taking opportunity of the broil in *France*, and pretending a good Title to this Dukedom, on the expiring of the Male-Issue of King *Henry the Second*, he thought by this Door to have entred on the whole Estate; but quitted it again on the general Peace made between the Crowns. 3. *S. Brieu*, (by the *Latins* called *Emum Sancti Brioci*) a Bishop's See, and a well-traded Port, seated upon the *English* Chanel. 4. *Vannes*, a Bishop's See also, situate on a capacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Valain*; the chief Town of the *Venti*, whom *Cæsar* placeth in this Tract, and makes them to be the mightiest People of all the *Armoricans*; strongest in Shipping, and best seen in Affairs at Sea. 5. *Croissie*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the only Haven of this part on the *Gallick Ocean*. Then in *Low Bretagne*, or the more Western Parts thereof, there is, 6. *Bresse*, seated upon a spacious Bay of the Western Ocean; the Key and Bulwark of this Country, and the goodliest Harbour of all *France*. 7. *Morlaix*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8. *S. Pol de Leon*, and 9. *Triguier*, both Bishops Sees, both situate on the Sea-shore, and both the chief Towns of the *Offismi*, whom *Ptolomy* and *Strabo* place upon this Coast: the first of them neighboured by the *Promontory*, which they call *Le Four*, the *Goræum* of *Ptolomy*. 10. *Kemper Corentin*, a Bishop's See also, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Cornoville*, (and called so for the same reason as *Cornwall* in *England* is) situate not far from the *Foreland*, which they call *Penmarch*, opposite to *Le Four*, spoken of before. A Sea-Town this, but not much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can find. 11. *Conquet*, a well-frequented Road, not far from *Brest*.

Chief places in the Midlands, 1. *Nantes*, the principal City of the *Nannentes*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Condevincinum*) a large, fair, strong, and populous City, seated upon the *Loir*, a Bishop's See, and the Metropolis of *Bretagne*. 2. *Reues*, anciently the chief Town of the *Rhedones*, (called *Condate* by *Ptolomy*) now a Bishop's See, and the Parliament-City for this County, established here, Anno 1553. which maketh it very populous, and of great resort, though not fully two Miles in compass. 3. *Del*, an Episcopal City also, but unwholsomly seated among Marshes. 4. *Dinan*, a rich and pleasant Town on the River *Nance*. 5. *L' Amballe*, the chief Town of the *Ambiliates*, spoken of by *Cæsar*. 6. *Roban*, the Title and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Rohan*, descended from a Branch of the Ducal Family of *Bretagne*, by *Mary* the second Daughter of Duke *Francis the First*, and Wife of *John*, then Viscount of *Roban*. 7. *Anjenis*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendosme*, and the Head of his Estates in *Bretagne*. Of which possessed in the right of his Wife, the Daughter of the Duke of *Mencoueur* by the Heir of *Martignes*, another of this Ducal Family. 8. *Chasteau-Briant*, a strong piece on the borders of *Normandy*. 9. *Cliffon*, the chief Town of the *Dutchy of Raiz*, being that part of *Bretagne* which lieth on the South-side of the *Loire*, a strong Town, and fortified with a very good Castle.

The *Britains*, whosoever they were in their first Original, were questionless one of the first Nations that possessed any part of *Gaul*, after the Conquest of the *Romans*. Governed at first by their own Kings, the most considerable of which, was that *Aldroenus* or *Auldran*, the Son of *Solomon*; who at the Suit of the *Insular Britains*, then distressed by the *Scots* and *Picts*, (as *Geoffrey of Monmouth* telleth the Story) sent over *Constantine* his Brother with a compleat Army to their Aid; who having valiantly repulsed the Enemy, was made King of *Britain*, An. 433. Of whose Posterity more there. Those of *Armorica* being broken

broken by the Puissance of *Charles the Great*, abandoned the Name of *Kings*, and satisfied themselves with the Title of *Earls*; assumed first by *Alain le Rebre*, *An. 874.* but as some say, *An. 859.* which was somewhat sooner. By *Peter of Dreux*, the sixteenth Earl; challenging his Estate in Right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Sister of *Arthur*, and Daughter of *Constance*, by *Guy of Thouars*, her third Husband; the better to secure his Title, this Earldom was made subject to the Vassalage of the Crown of *France*, in the time of *Lewis the Ninth*; by whom *John* called the *Red*, the Son of this *Peter*, was created the first Duke of *Bretagne*; as being of the Blood-Royal of *France*, descended lineally from *Robert* the first Earl of *Dreux*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis the Gros*. Yet notwithstanding this subjection to the Kings of *France*, the Dukes hereof reserved to themselves the Sovereign Power, as to write themselves, *By the Grace of God*, the privilege of coining Gold, &c. and stood so high upon their Terms, that *Francis* the last Duke, denied to do his Homage to *Charles* the Seventh, either upon his Knees, or without his Sword, according to the former Custom: For which, being quarrelled by *Lewis IX.* the Son of *Charles*, who was at better leisure to pursue the business, than his Father was, he joined himself with *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, in a War against him; and thereby drew upon himself that ruine which he endeavoured to avoid. For, in conclusion, *Charles* of *Berry*, as it was thought, was poyson'd; *Charles* of *Burgundy* lost his Life at the Battel of *Nancie*, 1476. and a great part of his Estate was conquered by the *French* King. And *Francis* this Duke, having embarked himself in the same troublous Ocean, must needs suffer Shipwrack with his Copartners. The *French* King invadeth *Bretagne*; the Duke over-charged with Melancholy, dies, 1488. leaving *Anne* his Daughter and Heir, in the Power of *Charles VIII.* the Son and Successor of this *Lewis*; who contracts a Marriage with the Orphan, and uniteth *Bretagne* to *France*. There were many Impediments which might have hindered this Marriage, but *Charles* breaketh through them all. First, *Charles* himself had been formerly contracted to the Arch-Duke *Maximilian's* Daughter; but this he held void, because the young Lady was not of Age at the time of the Contract. 2. *Anne* the Dutcheß was also contracted to *Maximilian*; and this he held invalid also, because that being his Homager, she could not bestow herself without his consent. 3. *Maximilian* had by proxy married her, which Marriage he consummated by a Ceremony in those Days unusual: For his Ambassador, attended with a great Train of Lords and Ladies, bared his Leg unto the Knee, and put the same within the Sheets of the Dutcheß, taking possession thereby of her Bed and Body. But *Charles* consulting with his Divines, was told, That this pretended Consummation was rather an invention of Court, than any way firm by the Laws of the Church; and therefore of no power to hinder his pursuit of this Marriage, so advantageous to his Crown. What else remains touching the union of this Dukedom to the Realm of *France*, we shall see anon; having first looked over the Succession of those Princes, who under several Titles have governed the Estate thereof, according to the best light we can get from Story.

Kings of the Britains of Gaul-Armorick.

- 385 1 *Conan*, placed here by *Maximus*.
 2 *Grallon*, Son of *Conan*.
 3 *Solomon*, Son of *Grallon*.
 4 *Auldran*, or *Aldroenus*, the Son of *Solomon*.
 5 *Bodis*, Son of *Auldran*.
 6 *Hoel*, Son of *Bodis*.
 7 *Hoel II.* Son of *Hoel* the First.
 8 *Alain*, Son of *Hoel* the Second.
 9 *Hoel III.* Son of *Alain*.

10 *Solomon II.* Son of *Hoel* the Third.

11 *Alain II.* Grandchild to *Solomon* the Second, the last King of *Bretagne*, of the Race of *Conan*; who dying without Issue, left his Kingdom unto many Competitors, by whom distracted into many petty Tyrannies and at last subdued by *Charles* the Great. And though they did again recover their Liberty and Kingdom, in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, who next succeeded; yet they did not hold it long in quiet. Inasmuch, as after the murder of two or three Usurpers of the Royal Title, *Alain*, surnamed *Le Rebre*, laid aside that insidious Name of King, would be called only Earl of *Bretagne*. His Successors follow.

Earls and Dukes of Bretagne.

- 874 1 *Alain le Rebre*.
 2 *Indicael* and *Colodack*, Sons of *Alain*.
 3 *Mathruden*, Son in Law of *Alain le Rebre*.
 4 *Alain II.* Son of *Mathruden*.
 5 *Conan*, descended from King *Solomon* the Third.
 6 *Geofrey*, Son of *Conan*.
 7 *Alain III.* Son of *Geofrey*.
 8 *Conan II.* Son of *Alain*.
 9 *Hoel*, Sisters Son of *Conan* the Second.
 10 *Alain IV.* called *Fergent*, Son of *Hoel*.
 11 *Conan III.* Son of *Alain*.
 12 *Eudon*, Husband of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Conan*.
 13 *Conan IV.* Son of *Eudon*.
 14 *Geofrey II.* Son of *Henry III.* King of *England*, Husband of *Constance*, Daughter and Heir of *Conan* the Fourth.
 1186 15 *Arthur*, Son of *Geofrey*.
 1202 16 *Peter* of *Breux*, in right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Sister of *Arthur*.
 1250 17 *John*, the first Duke of *Bretagne*.
 1287 18 *John II.* Son of *John* the First.
 1305 19 *Arthur II.* Son of *John* the Second.
 1312 20 *John III.* Son of *Arthur* the Second.
 1341 21 *John* Earl of *Montfort*, Brother's Son of *Arthur*.
 1399 22 *John V.* Son of *John* of *Montfort*.
 1442 23 *Francis*, the Son of *John* the Fifth.
 1450 24 *Peter*, the Brother of Duke *Francis*.
 1457 25 *Arthur III.* second Son of *John* Earl of *Montfort*.
 1457 26 *Francis II.* Son of *Richard* Earl of *Estampes*, the Brother of Duke *Arthur III.* the last Duke of *Bretagne*, of whom sufficiently before.
 1484 27 *Charles VIII.* French King, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Francis II.*
 1498 28 *Lewis XII.* French King, succeeded on the Death of *Charles*, in the right of the said *Anne*, whom he took to Wife; and to make a way unto her Bed, divorced himself from the Lady *Joan* his former Wife, Daughter of *Lewis XI.*
 1515 29 *Francis III.* of *Bretagne*, and first of *France*, succeeded in the Dukedom in right of *Claude* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Lewis XII.* and of *Anne* of *Bretagne*; by whom being made the Father of so many Children, that he had little cause to fear that the Crown would be separated from his House; in the Year 1532. being the seventeenth of his Reign and Government, caused an Act to pass, with the consent of the States of *Bretagne*, for the inseparable uniting of that Dukedom to the Kingdom of *France*, and by that means divested his Posterity of it. For this Male-Issue failing in King *Henry III.* the Rights hereof descended on the Heirs general, that is to say, on *Isabel*, Daughter of *Philip II.* of *Spain*, and of the Lady *Isabel*; or *Elizabeth* his Wife;

the eldest Daughter of Henry II. and Niece to the said Francis I. and after her decease (dying without Issue) on the Lady Catharine her Sister, married to Charles Emanuel Duke of Savoy: For whom, when Philip of Spain claimed this Estate, the French pretended a Law against it of their own devising, viz. That no Estate being incorporated into that Crown, could be aliened from it. A proper Law, and Cousin-German to the Salique; but such as served their turn by the help of the English, who desired not to have the Spaniards so near Neighbours to them.

Most of our former Earls of Richmond were Earls and Dukes of this House. Their Arms were Ermin.

6. The Dukedom and Estates of ANJOU.

THE Dukedom and Estates of ANJOU, taking them in the full Latitude and extent thereof, are bounded on the East with La Beaulle; on the West, with Bretagne, and part of Poitou; on the North, with Normandy; and on the South, with part of Berry and Poitou. In which circumference are comprehended the three small Provinces of Anjou, Tourein, and Main; most commonly accounted of as Parts and Members of La Beaulle, the ancient Inhabitants whereof, in the times of the Romans, were the Andes, as Cæsar (or the Andegavii as Pliny) calls them, the Turones, and the Cenomani, accounted afterwards a part of the Province of Lugdunensis tertia.

The Country for the most part is very fruitful and pleasant, especially in Tourein; as is the whole Tract upon the Loire. Anjou is somewhat the more hilly, but otherwise little inferior to Tourein, affording plenty of White Wines, the best in France; and yielding from those Hills above 40 Riverets, falling into the Loire from thence; the chief whereof are Mayenne, 2. Vienne, 3. Dive, and 4. Sarre.

1. ANJOU, called Andegavia by the Latins, is situate in the midst betwixt Main and Tourein, so called from the Andegavi, the old Inhabitants of these Parts. It is bounded on the North by Main, on the West by Bretagne, on the South by Poitou, and on the East by Tourein. Principal Cities are, 1. Angiers, (by Ptolomy called Juliomagus) of a large circuit, and well built, the See of a Bishop, reckoning in it 15 Parishes besides the Cathedral. It is seated on the River Sarre in a very good Air, and therefore chosen for the Seat of an University, founded here by Lewis II. Duke of Anjou, the Son of King John, Anno 1288. 2. Beaufort, a Town belonging formerly to the Dukes of Lancaster, in which John of Gaunt so much delighted, that he caused all the Children that he had by Catharine Swinford, his third Wife, to be called Beauforts: which Beauforts were afterwards Dukes of Somerset and Exeter, and Earls of Dorset. This Town came to the House of Lancaster, by the marriage of Blanch of Artois, unto Edmund surnamed Crouch back, second Son to our Henry III. created by his Father, the first Earl of Lancaster. Memorable in these latter times for giving the Title of a Dutches to Madam Catharine, the beloved Mistress of King Henry IV. by whom she was Mother of Cæsar, now Duke of Vendosme, and of Alexander not long since the Grand Prior of France. With reference to which, the second Son of the Duke of Vendosme is honoured at this present with the Title of Duke of Beaufort; as the eldest with relation to his Mother was made Duke of Mercœur. This Title was by Charles II. in the Year 1682, given to the Noble and Loyal Henry Somerset, Marquis of Worcester, then created Duke of Beaufort. 3. Baugie, near which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the English and the French, wherein the English lost the Day; and Thomas Duke of Clarence, Brother to Henry V.

was there unfortunately slain, Anno 1422. 4. Saumur, pleasantly situate on the Loire, and for long time one of the Cautionary Towns in the hands of those of the Reformed Religion; of whom it is the only entire University in this Kingdom, especially famous for the Learned Philip du Morney, Lord of Pleffis, sometimes the Governour hereof. 5. Loches, seated on the River Indre, the Castle whereof being mounted on a steep high Rock, is thought to be one of the strongest Pieces of all France. 6. La Fleche, of special Name at the present for a College of Jesuits, one of the fairest in this Kingdom: The word in the French Tongue signifieth an Arrow (whence those who make Bows and Arrows have the Name of Flechers.) At Nola, in the Realm of Naples, there is another College of them called D'Arque, the Bow: on which one wittily composed this ensuing Distich.

Arcum Nola dedit, dedit illis alma Sagittam
Gallia: quis Funem, quem meruere, dabit?

That is to say,

Nola the Bow, and France the Shaft did bring,
But who shall help them to the Hempen-string?

2. On the South-east of Anjou, lieth the Country of TOUREIN, the ancient Seat of the Turones; which for the wholesomeness of the Air, the pleasantness of the Country, and admirable plenty of all Commodities, is by some called the Garden of France. Principal Cities in it, 1. Amboise, pleasantly seated on the Loire, and beautified with one of the fairest Castles in France, both for the gallantry of the Building, and beautifulness of the Prospect. 2. Tours, by Ptolomy called Cæsarodunum, and the Turennum Civitas of Antoninus, the Metropolis of Lugdunensis tertia, and an Archbishop's See; a fair, rich, and well-traded Town, situate on the Banks of the Loire, in a most sweet and pleasant Country. Famous, in that those of the Reformed Religion, from the Gate of S. Hugo, at which they use to issue out to their Assemblies in the Fields, had the Name of Hugonots. Given to them, as some others think, as the Disciples of the Night-walking Spirit (or Robin-Goodfellow) which they call S. Hugó, in regard they had their first Meetings, for the most part, in the Nights; as had the Primitive Christians in the times of their Persecutions. Some, more improbably, (and indeed ridiculously) derive the Name from the first words of an Apology which they are fabled to have made to the King; which were, Huc nos venimus: fancying, that as the Protestants did derive that Appellation from the words Protestants, and Protestamur, so often used by them in their Apology to Charles V. so from those words, Huc nos, came the Name of Hugonots, or Huc-nots. But more assuredly famous for the great Battel fought near it by Charles Martel, Mayre of the Palace, and Father of Pepin King of France, against an Army of 400000 Moors, led by Alderamen, Lieutenant General in Spain, for Evelid or Ifcan the great Caliph: of which 370000 lost their Lives in the place, An. 734. 3. Laudun. 4. Richlieu, pleasantly seated in a rich and flourishing Soil, as the Name importeth. Of no great note, till the time of the late great Cardinal of Richlieu, who took Name from hence, by whom it was made one of the neatest Towns (for the bigness of it) in all this Kingdom, and honoured with the Titles of a Dukedom and Pairrie of France.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for of Anjou we shall speak more at large anon) it had a while its own Proprietary Earls of the House of Blais, conferred by Hugh Capet upon Odon Earl of Blais and Champagne: and by him given, together with the Earldom of Blais, to Theobald, or Thibald his eldest Son, (his second Son, named Stephen, succeeding in Champagne;) who in the Year 1043. was vanquished and slain by Charles Martel, Earl of Anjou, and this Province seized on by the

the Victor, who afterwards made *Tours* his ordinary Seat and Residence. Part of which Earldom it continued, till the seizure of *Anjou*, and all the rest of the *English* Provinces in *France*, on the Sentence passed upon King *John*. After which time dismembred from it was confer'd on *John* the fourth Son of King *Charles VI.* with the Stile and Title of Duke of *Tourein*; and he deceasing without Issue, it was bestowed with the same Title, on *Charles* the eldest Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* (in the Life of his Father;) the same who afterwards succeeding in the Dukedom of *Orleans*, was taken Prisoner by the *English* at the Battel of *Agincourt*, kept Prisoner 25 Years in *England*, and finally was the Father of King *Lewis XII.*

3. On the North side of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Normandy*, lieth the Province of *MAINE*; *Comitatus Cenomannensis* in our *Latin* Writers: So called of the *Cenomanni*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract in the Time of *Cæsar*; some of which, with the *Boii*, *Senones*, and other Nations of the *Gauls* had in the former time passed over the *Alps*, and there possessed themselves of those Countries, which now pass under the Name and accompt of *Lombardy*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Mans*, *Cenomannensium Civitas* in *Antoninus*, by *Ptolemy* called *Vindinum*; seated on the meeting of *Huive* and *Sartre*; the principal of the Province, and a Bishop's See; most memorable in the elder times for giving the Title of an Earl to that famous *Rowland*, the Silter's Son of *Charlesmagne*, one of the *Twelve Peers* of *France*, (the subject of many notable Poems, under the Name of *Orlando Inamorato*, *Orlando Furioso*, besides many of the old Romances) who was Earl of *Mans*. 2. *Mayenne*, on the Banks of a River of the same Name, (*Meduana* in *Latin*) the Title of the second Branch of the House of *Guise*; famous for *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, who held out for the League against *Henry IV.* A Prince not to be equalled in the Art of War, only unfortunate in employing it in so ill a Cause. 3. *Vitruv*, upon the edge of *Bretagne*, of which little memorable. 4. *La Val*, not far from the head of the River *Mayenne*, of note for giving both Name and Title to the Earls of *Laval*, an ancient Family, allied unto the Houses of *Vendosme*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and other the best of *France*. Few else of any note in this little Country; which once subsisting of it self under its own natural Lords and Princes, was at last united to the Earldom of *Anjou*, by the marriage of the Lady *Guiburge*, Daughter and Heir of *Helie*, the last Earl hereof, married to *Foulk* Earl of *Anjou*, *An. 1083.* or thereabouts. The Fortunes of which great Estate it hath always followed, since that time.

But as for *Anjou* it self, the principal part of this goodly Patrimony, it was by *Charles the Bald* conferred on *Robert* a *Saxon* Prince, for his Valour shewn against the *Normans*, *An. 870.* which *Robert* was Father of *Eudes* King of *France*, of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of *Robert* who succeeded in the Earldom of *Anjou*; Competitor with *Charles the Simple* for the Crown it self, as the next Heir to his Brother *Eudes*, who died King thereof. Slain in the pursuit of this great Quarrel, he left this Earldom, with the Title of Earl of *Paris*, and his Pretensions to the Crown, unto *Hugh* his Son, surnamed the Great; who, to make good his Claim to the Crown, against *Lewis IV.* Son of *Charles the Simple*, conferred the Earldom of *Anjou*, and the Country of *Gastinois*, on *Geofrey* surnamed *Gryfagonelle*, a renowned Warriour, and a great stickler in his Cause, in whose Race it continued near 300 Years. How the two Countries of *Main* and *Tourein* were joined to it, hath been shewn before. *Geofrey* the Son of *Foulk III.* married *Maud*, Daughter to *Henry I.* of *England*, and Widow of *Henry* the Fourth Emperor; from whom proceeded *Henry II.* King of *England*, and Earl of *Anjou*. But *John* his Son, forfeiting his Estates in *France* (as the *French* pretended) *Anjou* returned unto the Crown; and afterwards was conferred by King *Lewis IX.* on his Brother *Charles*; who in right of *Beatrix* his Wife was Earl of *Provence*,

and by Pope *Urban IV.* was made King of *Naples* and *Sicily*. Afterwards it was made a Dukedom by King *Charles V.* (*Tourein* being first dismembred from it) in the Person of *Lewis* of *France*, his second Brother to whom this fair Estate was given, as second Son of King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and consequently the next Heir to *Charles de Valois*, the last Earl hereof (the King his Brother yielding up all his right unto him.) Finally it returned again unto the Crown in the time of *Lewis XI.* The Earls and Dukes hereof having been vested with the Diadems of several Countries, following in this order.

The Earls of *Anjou* of the Line of *Saxony*.

- 870 1 *Robert* of *Saxony*, the first Earl of *Anjou*.
- 875 2 *Robert II.* Competitor for the Crown of *France* with *Charles the Simple*, as Brother of *Eudes* the last King.
- 922 3 *Hugh the Great*, Lord of *Gastinois*, Earl of *Paris*, Constable of *France*, and Father of *Hugh Capet*.
- 926 4 *Geofrey Gryfagonelle*, by the Donation of *Hugh the Great*, whose Party he had followed in the War of *France*, with great Fidelity and Courage.
- 938 5 *Foulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, the Son of *Geofrey*.
- 987 6 *Geofrey II.* surnamed *Martel*, for his great Valour.
- 1047 7 *Geofrey III.* Nephew of *Geofrey II.* by one of his Sisters.
- 1075 8 *Foulk II.* Brother of *Geofrey III.* gave *Gastionis* (which was his proper Inheritance) to King *Philip I.* that by his help he might recover the Earldom of *Anjou* from his part, wherein he was excluded by his Brother *Geofrey*.
- 1080 9 *Geofrey IV.* Son of *Foulk II.*
- 1083 10 *Foulk III.* Brother of *Geofrey*, King of *Jerusalem*, in the right of *Millisend* his Wife.
- 1143 11 *Geofrey V.* surnamed *Plantagenet*.
- 1150 12 *Henry II.* King of *England*, Son of Earl *Geofrey* and *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of King *Henry I.*
- 1162 13 *Geofrey VI.* third Son of King *Henry II.* made Earl of *Anjou* on his marriage with *Constance*, the Heir of *Bretagne*.
- 1186 14 *Arthur*, Son of *Geofrey* and *Constance*.
- 1202 15 *John*, King of *England*, succeeded on the death of *Arthur*; dispossessed of his Estates in *France* by *Philip Augustus*, immediately on the death of *Arthur*, *An. 1202.*

Earls and Dukes of *Anjou*, of the Line of *France*.

- 1262 1 *Charles*, Brother of King *Lewis IX.* Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, King of *Naples*, and *Sicilia*, &c.
- 1315 2 *Charles* of *Valois*, Son of *Philip III.* Earl of *Anjou*, in right of his Wife, Neece of the former *Charles*, by his Son and Heir of the same Name; the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King.
- 1318 3 *Lewis* of *Valois*, the second Son of *Charles*, died without Issue, *Anno 1325.*
- 1376 4 *Lewis* of *France*, the second Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, created the first Duke of *Anjou*, by King *Charles* his Brother; and adopted by *Qu. Joan* of *Naples*, King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Jerusalem*, and E. of *Provence*.
- 1385 5 *Lewis III.* Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence* and *Main*; titular King of *Sicil*, *Naples*, and *Jerusalem*.
- 1416 6 *Lewis IV.* Successor to his Father in Estate and Titles.
- 1430 7 *Rene*, the Brother of *Lewis*, by the adoption of *Qu. Joan II.* was for a while possessed of *Naples*; but presently outed by *Alfonso* of *Aragon*, and died the titular K. of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Jerusalem*; the Father of *Q. Margarite*, Wife of *Henry VI.* and Duke of *Bar*, in right of *Violant* his Mother.

1480 8. *Charles* Earl of *Main*, Nephew to *Rene* by his third Brother *Charles*, at his decease left *Anjou*, and all the rest of his Estates to King *Lewis* XI. Anno 1481. Since which never otherwise aliened, than as an honorary Title of the third Son of *France*.

It is to be observed here (according to our method in other places) that *Rene* King of *Sicil*, &c. and Duke of *Anjou*, instituted an Order of *Knighthood*, called of the *Croissant*; the Knights whereof carried a *Crescent*, or Half moon, on their right Arms, with this Motto, *L'Os en Croissant*; encouraging them thereby to seek the increase of Valour and Reputation.

The Arms of this Dukedom, were *France*, a Border Gules.

7. LA BEAUSSSE.

LA BEAUSSSE, (not reckoning in the Provinces last before described) is bounded on the East, with *France* specially and primarily so called; on the West, with *Anjou*, *Maine*, *Touren*, and some part of *Berry*; on the North, with *Normandy*; and on the South, with *Nivernois*, and the rest of *Berry*. It is called *Bellia* in *Latin* Writers; both Names derived from the pleasantness and beauties of it; this Country being not only looked on as the Garden of *France*, but the Nurse of the great City of *Paris*, which from the Breasts thereof receiveth the best part of its sustenance.

The principal Nations of the whole in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Carnutes*, which inhabited the greatest part, and the *Samnitæ* near the *Loire*, part of *Gallia Celtica*, and cast into the Province of *Lugdunensis quarta*, by the Emperor *Constantine*. Divided by the *French* into the *Higher*, the *Lower*, and the *Intermediate*.

1. The *HIGHER BEAUSSSE* is that part which lieth next to *Normandy*, of which the principal Towns are, 1. *Dreux*, seated upon the River *Eureux*, supposed to be the Seat of the ancient *Druides*, who held here their *Parliaments* or *Sessions* for administration of Justice. The Title and Inheritance of *Robert*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis* the *Grosse*, and Grand-father of that *Peter* of *Dreux*, who succeeded *Arthur*, the Son of *Geoffrey Plantagenet*, in the Earldom of *Bretagne*. Near this Place, in the Year 1562. was a fierce Battel between the *Hugonots* and the *Roman Catholics*, in which the Prince of *Conde* was taken. 2. *Montfort*, an Earldom, the Title and Estate of *John* Earl of *Montfort*, surnamed the *Valiant*, who succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, by the aid of the *English*, Anno 1341. 3. *Chartres*, called anciently *Carnutum Civitas*, (but by *Ptolomy*, *Atricum*) from whence the Country hereabouts was called *Le Paris Chartrain*: seated in an uneven place, varied with fertile rising Hills, so that the East side stands upon the top of an Hill, and the West spreads it self in the bottom of a Plain, through the midst whereof runs the River *Eure*, which as soon as it comes to the Walls of the City, on the South-side, divides it self into three Branches, two whereof encompass the City round about, and the third running through the midst thereof, serveth the Town with many Mills for the use of the People; doth afterwards unite it self with the rest into one main Channel. A very fair and goodly City, a Bishop's See, and one of the *Vidamates* of *France*; anciently giving the Title of an Earldom also to the House of *Blois*, from the time that *Theobald* the second Earl of *Blois* extorted it by strong hand from the Bishops hereof, about the Year 950, continuing in the possession of that Family till the Year 1200, or thereabouts, when sold by *Mabeult* or *Maud*, the Heir Proprietor hereof, Wife of *Hugh de Chastillon*, in her Right, called Earl of *Blow*, to King *Philip* the Fair,

for an Annual Pension of 4000 Livres. 4. *Anneau*, a Town of the Territory of *Chartres*, memorable for the great slaughter made here by *Henry* Duke of *Guise*, of the *German Auxiliaries*, invading *France* with a right formidable Army in behalf of the *Hugonots*, Anno 1587.

2. The *LOWER BEAUSSSE* is that which lieth towards *Nivernois* and *Berry*; and is subdivided into *Sologne* and *Orleanois*. In *SOLOGNE*, which lieth close to *Berry*, the chief places of note, are, 1. *Romarantin*, seated on the *Souldre*, the chief Town of this Tract. 2. *Mellenzay*. 3. *La Ferte*, or *La Ferte St. Bernard*, of which nothing memorable. In *ORLEANOIS*, which lieth more Northwards upon the River *Loyre*, are 1. *Targeau*, a Town once of very great strength, and one of the Out-works of *Orleans*. 2. *Cleri*, called also *Cleri of Notre-dame*, from the Church there built unto our Lady. 3. *Tury*, and 4. *Angerville*, both in the ordinary Road betwixt *Paris* and 5. *Orleans*, the principal City of all *Beauisse*, called *Genabum* in the time of *Cæsar*; repaired, or rather new built by the Emperor *Aurelius*, Anno 276. from thence named *Aurulia*, the Country round about it *Aurelianensis*, now *Orleans* and *Orleanois*. The Country generally very fruitful, and yielding a most excellent and delicious Wine; which for the strength and intoxicating power thereof, is banished the *French* King's Cellar by especial Edict. The City very pleasant, seated on the River *Loyre*, well built, situate in a sweet Air, and planted with a Civil and Ingenuous People; who are said to speak the best Language of any in *France*. For a time it was the chief Seat of a distinct Kingdom, (according to the unprovident humour of the *Merovignians*) the Lot of *Clodomire* Son of *Clowis* the Great, and of *Guntram* Son of *Clotaire*, both Kings of *Orleans*; as also was *Theodorick*, the second Son of *Childebert* King of *Mets*, on the death of *Guntram*. But *Sigibert* his Son, being vanquished by *Clotaire* II. this Kingdom extending to the Shores of the *Aquitain* Ocean, was added unto that of *France*. *Orleans* since that time, content with the lower Title, hath of late oftentimes with great prudence, been made the honorary Title of the second Sons of *France*, called Dukes hereof, the first who had the Title being *Philip* II. Son of *Philip de Valois*, from a base Son of whose, the Earls of *Dunois*, and Dukes of *Longeville* do derive themselves, and *Lewis* the second Son of *Charles* I. Grand-father of *Lewis* XI. *French* King. It is a See Episcopal, a Balivick, or *Siege Præsidential*, and an University. The See Episcopal founded in the Church of *St. Croix*, miserably ruined by the *Hugonots* in the Civil Wars, out of meer hatred to the Name. The *Siege Præsidential* settled here by King *Henry* II. 1551. for the ease of his Subjects of these Parts, in Suits not worth the troubling of the Courts of *Paris*. The University erected by King *Philip le bel*, An. 1312. though to speak properly, it be an Hall only for the reading of the *Civil Laws*, the only Learning there professed, and for that considerable. A Town now not of so great strength as in former times, when for some Months it held out against the whole Power of the *English*; rescued from them at last by the Valour of *Joan the Virgin*, whose Statue (like a Man of Arms) is still preserved on the Bridge-Gate of this City; near which great *Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, had his fatal Blow.

The *MIDDLE* or intermediate *BEUASSSE* lieth betwixt the former; in which the places of chief note are, 1. *Blois*, seated also on the *Loire*, in a sound Air and fruitful Country; the Nursery for the most part of the King's Children, for that cause much resorted to by the Nobility, and honoured sometimes with the residence of the Kings themselves; it being in the Council Chamber of the King's House here, that *Henry* of *Lorain*, Duke of *Guise*, the chief Contriver of the terrible Massacre at *Paris*, and Author of the *Holy League*, was slain by the Command of King *Henry* III. Anno 1589. 2. *Chastillon*, the chief Town of the Earldom of *Dunois*, (the Honour and Estate of *John* Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Bastard of Orleans*, one of the best Soldiers of

his time, and so approved by his Exploits against the English) mounted upon the top of an high Hill, at the confluence of the *Loire*, and *Aigre*. 3. *Larvadin*, most remarkable for giving Name and Honour to a noble Family, which depending upon the House of *Vendôme* (to the *Signeury* whereof it doth belong) brought forth that valiant Commander, *Monsieur de Tardin*, a faithful and courageous Follower of King *Henry IV.* in his long War against the *Leaguers*. 4. *Vendôme*, (*Vindocinum* in *Latine*) the chief Town of the Dukedom of *Vendôme*; not otherwise of note than for the Earls and Dukes which have born this Title; of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now Regnant, I have thought fit to add the ensuing Catalogue; premising first, that this Earldom came to the House of *France* by the marriage of *Katharine* Daughter and Heir of *John*, the last Earl of the former Race, to *John I.* the Earl of the other Family.

Earls and Dukes of *Vendôme*.

- 1386 1 *John* of *Bourbon*, Grandchild of *Lewis I.* Duke of *Bourbon*, the first Earl of *Vendôme* of this Family.
- 1432 2 *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, a Confederate with *Joan* the *Virgin* in her Actions against the *English*.
- 1446 3 *John* of *Bourbon* II. from whom descended the Princes of *Roche-Surjon*, and the Dukes of *Montpensier*.
- 1472 4 *Francis* of *Bourbon*.
- 1495 5 *Charles* of *Bourbon*, the first Duke of *Vendôme*, from whose youngest Son, called *Lodowick*, or *Lewis*, descended the now Princes of *Conde*, and Earls of *Soissons*.
- 1532 6 *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendôme*, and King of *Navarre*.
- 1562 7 *Henry* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendôme*, and King of *Navarre*, afterwards King of *France* also, by the name of *Henry IV.*

8 *Cæsar* de *Vendôme*, one of the Sons of *Henry IV.* by the Dutcheß of *Beaufort*, created by his Father Duke of *Vendôme*, and once designed his Successor in the Crown of *France*. Afterwards by the procurement of the King his Father, married to the Daughter and Heir of *Philibert Emanuel*, Duke of *Mercoeur*, (a younger Branch of the House of *Lorain*) possessed of a fair and goodly Estate in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in the Right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the House of *Martignes* (a Branch of the Family of those Dukes.) By means whereof the Duke of *Vendôme* hath not only a large Inheritance, but great Authority in that Country.

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Vendôme*, were and are, *Azure*, six Flower de *Lyces*, Or, 3, 2, 1. Those of the former Family affirmed by *Bara* to have been *France*, on a Bend *Gules*, three *Lions* or, Or.

But the great Lords of this Country were the Earls of *Blois*, possessed not only of the Earldom of *Chartres*, (a fair and goodly *Signeury*) in the highest *Beauvais*, but also of the whole Country of *Tourain*, a better Patrimony and Estate than that; which how they were alienated from this House, we have seen before. And as for the Earldom of *Blois* it self, it contained a large and gallant Patrimony in the middle *Beauvais*, thereto belonging; which being after sold to the Dukes of *Orleans*, gave the first greatness to that House. As for the Earls of *Blois* themselves, they fetch their Pedigree from one *Gerlon* a noble *Dane* (Companion in Arms unto *Rollo* the first Duke of *Normandy*) in his acquiring of that Dukedom, by *Charles* the *Simple*, created the first Earl hereof, An. 920, or thereabouts, branching it self into the Houses of *Blois* and *Champagne*; sometimes united into one Person, but for the most part, and at last divided into two great Families; *Stephen* King of *England*, commonly called *Stephen* of *Blois*, derived both his Name and Parentage from the Earls of this House, as being Son of *Theobald*, the fifth Earl of *Blois*, by *Maud*

one of the Daughters of *William* Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*, surnamed the Conqueror. From this *Theobald* the Earls of *Blois* continued in the Masculine Line, till the year 1219, under nine Princes in the Total: of the House of *Gerlon*. And then it fell by the Heirs general, to the noble Family of *Orléans*, continuing theirs till the year 1301, when sold by *Guy* de *Chastillon*, the last Earl of that House, to *Louis* Duke of *Orléans*, he being then Childless, and wholly governed by his Wife (a Daughter of the House of *Normandy*) who could not otherwise maintain her great prodigality, but by ready Money. United finally to the Crown by *Louis* the Grandson of this *Louis*, on his Succession to the Kingdom after *Charles VIII.*

The Arms of these great Earls were *Gules*, three *Palis*, *Vaire*, a *Chief* Or.

8. NIVERNONIS.

NIVERNONIS is bounded on the North, with *Loire* *Beauvais*; on the South, with *Bourbon*; on the East with *Champagne*; and on the West with *Berry*; so called from *Nivernum*, or *Nevers*, the chief Town thereof. This small Province is bounded by *Burgundy* thus, on the East it has the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, on the South *Bourbon*, on the West *Berry*, and on the North *Orléans*.

This is the smallest Province in all this Continent, but to be handled here apart, because not easily reducible unto any other, as all the rest of the lesser Provinces may be. The Soil not very fruitful of Corn or Wine, but plentifully stored with rich Pastures, and well shaded with Woods, in which are found some Mines of Iron, interspersed with Silver, and many Quarries of good Stone, of much use for Building. The Territory being but small, we cannot look for many Towns of Note and Consequence. Of those that be the principal are, 1. *Pontignè*, remarkable for an ancient Abbey, the Burial place of some of the old Earls of *Nevers*. 2. *Nevers* it self upon the *Loire*, beautified with a Bridge of twenty Arches, but otherwise not great or fair, though the chief of this small Country, and the seat of the Dukes. The Reputation which it hath, proceeding specially from the Antiquity thereof, and the Earls and Dukes from thence denominated. *John Cassimir* King of *Poland* died in this City in the year 1672. It is also a Bishops See, under the Archbishop of *Sens*.

Once part of the *Burgundian* Conquests, and from them won by the *French*; it came to have Princes of its own, almost as early as any other Country in the Realm of *France*. Who was the first that had the Title of Earl of *Nevers*, and therewithal the Lordship of this Estate, I can no where find; but sure I am, that in the year 1001, both the Estate and Title were enjoyed by *Laudin* a Nobleman of the *Burgundian* Race, who on the death of *Henry IV.* Duke of *Burgundy*, was like to have seized on that Estate, in despite of *Robert* King of *France*, who pretended to it: Passing through many Families, it came at last to the House of *Burgogne*, in the Person of *Odo*, the Son of *Hugh* the fourth of that Name, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Heir-General of *Nevers*; and from that to the House of *Flanders*, by the marriage of *Toland*, or *Burgogne*, to *Robert* of *Bethune*, Earl of *Flanders*, 1512, whose Son, named *Lewis*, married the Heir of *Retbel*, uniting by that marriage these Estates under his command. Together with the rest of the Rights of *Flanders*, it came again by marriage, to *Philip* the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*; who with the liking and consent of his elder Sons, (otherwise well provided for) conferred both it and *Retbel*, on his third Son *Philip*, whose Niece *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *John* of *Burgogne*, brought it in marriage to *Adolph* of *Cleve*, her Husband, An.

An. 1484. In the Person of *Francis*, the fourth Earl of this House, it was made a Dukedom; and by his Daughter *Henrietta*, Sister and Heir of *Francis* the last Prince of this Family, was brought in Dower to *Lewis de Gonzaga*, second Son of *Frederick* Duke of *Mantua*, An. 1563. whose Son *Charles* succeeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedom of *Nevers*, and *Vincent* of *Gonzaga*, his Cousin German, in the Dukedom of *Mantua*. And here it is to be observed, that though this Estate hath passed through so many Families; yet the Rights and Regalities thereof, have been still continued; not being hitherto reduced (for ought that I can find) under any of the Parliaments of *France*, as all the rest of that Kingdom is, but such parts thereof as are either under other Princes, or else enjoy the Privileges of a free Estate.

The Arms hereof are, *Azure*, within a Border Compunc, *Gules*, and *Argent*, three *Flower de Lyces*, Or.

9. The Dukedom of BOURBON.

THE Dukedom of *BOURBON*, in the full power and extent thereof, comprehended *Bourbonois*, *Forrest*, *Beau-jolois*, and *Auvergne*; all now reverted to the Crown.

1. *BOURBONNOIS* hath on the East, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the West, *Berry*; on the North, *Nivernois*, and a Corner of *Gastinois*; on the South, *Auvergne*: so called from *Bourbon*, (for distinction sake, called *Bourbon Archenbault*) the chief Town thereof. The Country very well Wooded, and of excellent Pasturage; which makes the People more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to Tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loire*, *Yonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted Navigable; besides *Aron*, *Acolin*, *Lixentes*, *Lambois*, and some lesser Streams.

It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*: in the *Higher*, which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of note than that of *Montaigne*, situate in the Country of *Combraille*; the *Signeury*, as I take it, of *Michael de Montagne*, the Author of the Book of *Essays*. But in the *Lower Bourbonois*, are, 1. *Molins*, esteemed the Center of all *France*; situate on the *Allier*, a *Baillage*, and the chief Town of this Country; the River yielding great plenty of Fish, but of *Salmons* specially; the Town adorned with a fair Castle, and that beautified with one of the finest Gardens in *France*; in which are many Trees of *Lenimons* and *Oranges*. 2. *Bourbon Archenbault*, and 3. *Bourbon Ancie*: the former of the two, seated upon the *Loire*, and giving name to the whole Province; of great resort by reason of its *Medicinal Waters*. 4. *St. Porcin*, and 5. *Varennes Ganat*, upon the Frontiers of *Auvergne*, 6. *Chancelle*, 7. *Charroux*, 8. *Palisse*, 9. *Sourvigni*, 10. *Amant*.

The ancient Inhabitants were part of the *Hedui*, who being waisted in their Wars against the *Romans*, a great part of their Country was, by *Julius Cæsar* conferred on the *Boii*, a German Nation, who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaul*, and unwilling upon their Defeat to go home again, were by him planted in this Tract, at the request of the *Hedui*, who desired it of him: and possibly the *Hedui* might be willing to have these *Boii* dwell amongst them, not only to fill up their numbers, and Manure the wast Grounds of their Country; but in regard of some nearer Tie that was between them: it being conceived by many Learned Men, that these *Boii*, which together with these *Cenomanni*, *Senones*, and other *Gallick* Nations, crossed over the *Alpes*, had been originally of these parts: and being driven out of *Italy* by the conquering *Romans*, fell into *Germany*, and from thence sent those Auxiliaries to attend the *Helvetians* in their Journey, spoken of before. Made subject to the Ro-

mans, with the rest of *Gallia*; and by them reckoned as a part of *Aquitania*: it continued under their command, till the coming of the *Burgundians*, by whom it was subdued, and made a part of their Kingdom; in the subverting of which Kingdom, it was (together with *Beau-jolois*) subdued by the more powerful *French*; and how disposed of afterwards, we shall see anon, having first taken a view of the other Provinces.

2. *FORREST*, is bounded on the East, with *Beau-jolois*; on the West, with *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Bourbonois*, and on the South with a part of *Languedoc*. The Country populous and large, but not very fruitful; hilly and mountainous, much of the nature of the Woodlands. The Air a little of the coldest to afford good Wines; but that sufficiently recompenced by abundance of Pit-coal; by which they have very good Fires at a cheap rate. The People are conceived to be none of the wisest, but withal, very greedy and covetous of Gain.

The chief Towns in it, are, 1. *Mont-brison*, seated on the *Loire*. 2. *Feurs*, seated on the same River, called anciently, *Forum Segusianorum*, the chief Town of the *Segusiani*, or *Secusiani*, whom *Cæsar* and others mention in this part of *Gaul*. 3. *St. Stephen*, (or *Estienne*) in *Feurien*, near the head of that River. 4. *St. Germans*. 5. *St. Rimberg*. 6. *St. Bennet le Chasteau*. 7. *St. Guermier*, &c. of which little memorable.

This Country of *Forrest* was anciently a part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; dismembred from it at or about the same time with *Beau-jolois*; and was held by a long succession of Earls Proprietaries of it, as a State distinct, till *Regnaud*, Lord of *Forrest*, the Son of Earl *Guy*, by the marriage of *Isabel*, Daughter and Heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beau-jeu*, joyned them both together; which was about the year 1265; parted again after his decease, An. 1280. *Guy* being his eldest Son, succeeding in *Forrest*, and *Lewis* his second Son, in *Beau-jeu*. How they became united in the House of *Bourbon*, we shall see anon.

3. *BEAU JOLOIS*, so called from *Beau-jeu*, the chief Town hereof, taketh up the Tract of ground betwixt the *Loire* and the *Soasne*; and betwixt *Lionnois* and *Forrest*. A Country of no great extent, but very remarkable for the Lords and Princes of it: who have been Men of great Eminence in the several times. The chief Town of it, is *Beau-jeu* beautified with a goodly Castle, pleasantly seated on the brow of a rising Mountain, from whence perhaps it took the Name; as the great Keep in *Farnham* Castle, was in the same sense, and for the same pleasant situation, called *Joyeux Guard*, in the time of *Lancelot du lake*, whose that Castle was. Which appears further by a Tower built by *Constantine*, by *Guiscard* the third of that Name, Lord hereof, (being then Embassador to the Emperor, from King *Philip Augustus*) with this Inscription, *Turris Belli-jocensis*; which there continued to be seen a long time after. 2. *Belle-ville*, where is an Abby founded by *Humbert II.* Anno 1158. 3. *Ville-Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert IV.* whose Son *Guiscard III.* above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Franciscans*, called to this day, *Minorette*. 4. *Noironde*. 5. *St. Maurice*. 6. *Ulse*. 7. *Obches*, concerning which, there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forrests*, and these Lords of *Beau-jeu*.

This Country, as that other of *Forrest*, was once part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; in the partage of which Estate, it fell to *Ompbroy*, one of the Brothers of Earl *Artand*, Anno 989, whose Successors had no other Title than Lords of *Beau-jeu*. They were most of them Men of great Piety, Founders of many Collegiate and Conventual Churches; some of them Men of Action also: *Humbert the second*, and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the Holy Land; *Richard II.* in those against the *English*; *Guiscard IV.* made Constable of *France*, by King *Louis IX.* But the House failing in this *Guiscard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forrest*, as before is said, in the Person of *Regnaud*, Earl thereof whose Son and Successor,

for, called *Lewis*, was also Constable of *France*; as *Edward*, the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, a Marshal of it. But at the last it fell into the hands of a lewd and wicked Prince, *Edward II.* who being imprisoned at *Paris* for his great Offences, and overlaid with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*, made a Donation, or Free-gift, of all his Signeuries, to *Lewis* Duke of *Bourbon*, surnamed the Good; the direct Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the eldest Son of *Regnaud* Earl of *Forrest*, the Lord of *Beau-jeu* above mentioned, and consequently of next kin to him, *An.* 1400.

4. *AUVERGNE* hath on the East, *Forrest*, and *Lyonois*; on the West, *Limosin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*; on the South, part of *Languedoc*; and on the North, *Berry*, and *Bourbonois*. It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Lower* being called *Limaigne*, is fruitful in a very eminent degree. The *Higher*, mountainous and barren. In this last, the Towns of chief note are, 1. *St. Flour*, a Bishops See of an impregnable situation. 2. *Arilla*, on the River *Fourdain*, defended with a strong Castle on the top of a Rock. 3. *Beauregard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4. *Carlat*. 5. *Murat*. 6. *Billon*, of which little observable in ancient Stories. In the *Lower*, called *Lemaigne*, from a River of that Name which falls into the *Allier*: there is, 1. *Clermont*, a Bishops See, fair and pleasing for the situation, and Fountains descending from the Hills of the higher *Auvergne*, the chief City of the whole Province. Most memorable in these latter Ages, for the Council here called by Pope *Urban II.* *Anno* 1067. in which, by the Artifice of the Pope, the Christian Princes of the West engaged themselves in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes, to enlarge both their Territories and their Power. It was first raised out of the ruins of *Gergovia*, the head City of the *Auverni*, in the time of *Cæsar*; and the Seat-royal of *Vercingetorix*, King of that Nation, who so long put him to his trumps with the Army of 138000 Men: now a small Village called *Gergeau*. 2. *Rion*, in which resides the Seneschal, or chief Governour of the *Lower Auvergne*. 3. *Montpensier*, of great note for the Princes of the House of *Bourbon*, once Dukes hereof; beginning in *Lewis* the first Earl, Son of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, *An.* 1415. and ending in *Henry* the last Duke; whose Daughter and Heir was married to the Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Lewis XIII.* 4. *Montferant*. 5. *Yffoire*. 6. *Brioude*. 7. *Aiguepreffe*. 8. *Turenne*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *Delatours*, heretofore Earls of *Boulogne*, now Sovereigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon*; to whom it hath for some Ages since, given the Title of *Viscount*. A Family descended from the Heirs general of *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, Father to *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorain*, and King of *Jerusalem*.

The Country first inhabited in the times of the *Romans*, by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*; whose King *Bituitus*, was taken Prisoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the War against the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and other of their Confederates. Not fully conquered, till *Cæsar* had subdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*; remaining, in the often changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergne*: Heretofore part of the great Dutchy of *Aquitain*; remaining subject to those Dukes, till *William* the eighth Duke, and fourth of that name, gave it in portion with one of his Daughters, whose name I find not, nor the name of her Husband neither; of whom there is nothing on Record, but that he took up Arms against *Lewis VI.* who began his Reign *An.* 1110. By the Heir-general of this House, it was conveyed in marriage to *John* the second Son of *Guigne IV.* and *Beatrice*, Dauphin of *Viennois*; in whose Line it continued under the Title of the Dauphins of *Auvergne*, till *Berault*, the last Earl or Dauphin of it. Who having married the Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the Son of *Regnaud* above-

mentioned, had by her a Daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Estates married to *Lewis* the Good, the third Duke of *Bourbon*; to whom *Edward* the last Lord of *Beau-jeu*, made a Donation or Surrendry of that Signeury also, uniting in his Person the distinct Estates of *Bourbon*, *Beau-jeu*, *Forrest*, and *Auvergne*.

And as for *Bourbonois* it self, in the distractions of the *French* Empire by the Posterity of *Charles* the Great, who most improvidently Cantoned it into many great Estates, and petit Signeuries, it fell unto the share of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, descended from the ancient House of *Burgogne*; who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis IX.* for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* (in *Beauvoisin*) his fifth Son, married him to *Beatrice*, Daughter and Heir of *Archenbald Dampierre*, the last of that House. *Lewis* the Son of this *Robert*, was the first Duke of this Line; whose Successors and their Atchievements, follow in this Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of Bourbon.

- 1308 1 *Robert*, Son of King *Lewis IX.* Earl of *Clermont*; the first Lord of *Bourbon* of the House of *France*.
- 1317 2 *Lewis*, the first Duke of *Bourbon*; Peer, and Chamberlain of *France*: from whose second Son *Jaques*, comesthe House of *Vendosme*.
- 1341 3 *Peter*, Peer, and Chamberlain; slain in the Battle of *Poitiers*, *An.* 1356.
- 1356 4 *Lewis II.* called the Good; in whose Person all these Estates were first united: Peer, and Chamberlain of *France*, and Governour of *Charles VI.*
- 1410 5 *John*, Peer, and Chamberlain; taken Prisoner at the Battle of *Agincourt*, and died in *England*: the Root of the Family of *Montpensier*.
- 1434 6 *Charles*, Peer, and Chamberlain; General of the Army against the *English*, in the *Isle* of *France*.
- 1456 7 *John II.* Peer, Chamberlain, and Constable of *France*.
- 1487 8 *Peter II.* Brother of *John*; Peer, Chamberlain, and Regent of *France*, in the absence of *Charles VIII.*
- 1503 9 *Charles* Earl of *Montpensier*, Duke of *Bourbon*, in the right of *Susan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Peter* the second, Duke of *Bourbon*. After whose death, being slain at the sack of *Rome*, *An.* 1527. without Issue, his Estate fell unto the Crown; and so continued till by the Sentence of Arrest of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, *Auvergne*, *Forrest*, and *Beau-jeu*, were adjudged to *Madam Louise*, Mother of *Lewis* the first Duke of *Montpensier*, and Daughter and Heir of *Gilbert de Bourbon*, Earl of *Montpensier*, the Nephew of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, (the first of that Name) of which House she was the only surviving Heir; from whence descended *Henry*, the last Duke of that Family, spoken of before. And for the Title of *Auvergne*, it was used customarily, by the eldest Sons of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpensier*; till given to *Charles*, natural Son of King *Charles IX.* called from hence, the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*; who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, was in the year 1604. made Prisoner by King *Henry IV.* released by King *Lewis XIII.* *An.* 1616. and within two years after made Duke of *Angolessin*; in whose Posterity it remaineth.

The Arms of these Dukes were, 1. *France*, a Baston, *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. 2. Or, a Dauphin Palm, *Azure*, for the County of *Auvergne*. 3. Or, a Lion Sable, armed *Gules*, under a Label of five pieces of the same, for the Signeury of *Beau-jeu*. The Arms of the Earldom of *Forrest*, I am yet to seek. But anciently, the Arms of *Bourbon*, when under the *Dampierres*, were Or, a Lion Rampant *Gules*, environed with Cockle shells of *Azure*.

10. BERRIE.

HAVING thus taken a view of those several Provinces which (except *Bretagne*) were the first Purchases of the French in the modern France; and so much of the Burgundian Conquests, as were either laid to the Kingdom of West-France, or else were necessarily to be passed over in the course of our Journey: let us next look on those which were possessed by the Goths. And first we will begin with BERRIE, (as next in situation with those before described) bounded on the East, with *Bourbonnois* and *Nivernois*; on the West, with *Poictou*, and part of *Teurein*, on the North with *La Beausse*; on the South, with *Limousin*; in *Latine* called *Biturigum regio*, from the *Bituriges*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract; by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and some others, called the *Bituriges Cubi*, to difference them from the *Bituriges Ubisci*, dwelling about *Bordeaux*.

The Country watered in the East with the River *Laure*; in the South, with the *Eage*; in the North, with the *Chur*; and in the Inland parts, with *Indre*, *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Eure*, and others which we shall meet withal anon: of no great note, but such as much conduce to the fruitfulness of it; affording it the benefit of fat Pastures and flourishing Meadows; which breed great multitudes of Cattle, and such flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a Man for lying in excess of numbers, they use to say, *Eye, Sir, there are not so many Sheep in Berrie*.

It containeth in it 33 Walled Towns; the chief whereof are, 1. *Bourges*, a Town of great strength by Nature, and as well fortified by Art, situate in a low Flat, amongst deep impassable Bogs and Marishes, caused by the overflowing of the *Auron*, *Yeure*, *Malon*, and *Aurette*; small Riverets, but of great waters when they meet together: by means whereof it may be easily drowned at the approach of an Enemy: for that cause made the Fastness and Retreat of *Charles VII.* in his long Wars against the English, possessed at that time of *Paris*, and the greatest part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time fain to feast it here with a Rump of Mutton, and a Chick, and that but upon high days neither. From his constant abode here, and that withal he had been Duke of this Country, in the life of his three elder Brethren, by the English in derision called King of Berrie. A large, fair, and rich Town it is, the Seat of an Arch-bishop: a Siege-presidial, and one of the best Universities in France, especially for the Study of the Civil-Laws, first founded by King *Lewis IX.* and afterwards restored and perfected by *Charles Duke of Berrie*, the Brother of King *Lewis XI.* Some Fabulous Founders, and Ridiculous Originations, have been thought of for it, as, that it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grandchild of *Noah*; by whom called *Bytaguges*, which in the corruption of the following times, came (forsooth) unto *Bituriges*; which Etymology, were it as dear bought, as it is far fetch'd, might be good for Ladies; and then it would be good for somewhat. Others, no less absurdly, will have it called *Brituris*, quasi *Biturris*, from two fair Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here: one of the two, in part, still standing: and unto this, they say, alludeth an old *Grammarians*, thus:

Turribus à binis, inde vocor Bituris.

From two Towers which were builded here,
The Name of *Bituris* I bear.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges*, (the *Biturigum Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that Name in the division of old Gaul by the Emperor *Constantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania prima*; of which this Country was a part. 2. *Viarron*, or *Viarzon*, pleasantly seated amongst Woods, Vines, and Ri-

vers; the Rivers *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Cher*, and *Yeure*, meeting hereabouts, built in or near the place of the old *Avaricum*, a Town of great Note and Strength in the time of *Cæsar*: the Revolt whereof gave such a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to stretch his Wits and Valour on the very Tenter-hooks, before it was again recovered. 3. *Concreffant*, on the River *Souldre*, beautified with a strong and magnificent Castle. 4. *Chateau-Roux*, on the River *Indre*: of which little memorable. 5. *Iffaudun*, on the River *Theo*, the Baliage for that part of the Country. 6. *Montfulcon*, an ancient Barony. 7. *Argenton*, on the River *Creuse*, the Title and Estate of *Philip de Comines*, hence called *Signeur de Argenton*, who writ the History of France under *Lewis XI.* in which he dived so far into, and writ so largely of, the greatest Affairs of State, that Queen *Katharine de Medices* used to say, That he had made as many Hereticks in State Policy, as *Luther* had done in Religion. 8. *Sancerre*, seated on a high Hill near the River *Loire*; by some *Latine* Writers called *Xantodorum*; but most generally said to be so called, quasi *sacrum Ceres*, from the Goddess *Ceres*, herein worshipped in the times of *Gentilism*. A Town of great Consequence and Strength; and as such, assigned over to the *Hugonots*, *An.* 1569. as a Town of Caution for their Security, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon. Famous not long after, for enduring a most desperate and tedious Siege under *Charles IX.* by whom those Articles were almost no sooner made than broken. Before which time it was not under the command of the French Kings, but under the direct Dominion of its own Princes, called the Earls of *Sancerre*, who had the Sovereignty thereof: but being taken by the Kings Forces upon this occasion, *An.* 1573. and the Walls thrown down, a Garrison was put into the Castle, to keep it for the time to come at the Kings Devotion, the Rents and Profits of it still remaining to the true *Proprietaries*.

Here is also in this Province, the Town and Signeury of *Aubignie*, adorned with many Priviledges, an ample Territory, and a beautiful Castle: Bestowed by *Charles VI.* on *Robert*, the second Son of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in Scotland, for his many signal Services against the English; and is still the honourary Title and Possession of the second branch of that Noble and Illustrious Family, hence called by the Name of Lords of *Aubignie*.

But as for *Berry* it self, and the Fortunes of it, we may please to know, that the old Inhabitants of it, were the *Bituriges Cubi*, (or the *Bituriges Liberi*, as some Writers call them) subdued but not without great difficulty, by the matchless *Cæsar*: in the first division of *Gallia*, made part of *Aquitain*; and in the new-modelling of that Province, by the Emperor *Constantine*, a part of *Aquitania prima*, won from the Romans by the Goths, and from them by the French. It was for long time under the command of Provincial-Governours, one of which, called by the Name of *Godfrey*, obtained that Dignity from *Hugh Capet*; and his Posterity enjoyed that Office under the Kings of France, till the days of King *Henry I.* of whom the Inheritance and Estate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the Descendents of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as *Proprietary*, in his own Right; when desirous to make one in the Holy Wars, he sold it back again to King *Philip I.* (the better to furnish himself for that Expedition) *An.* 1096. to be united to the Crown after his decease. Since which time, the Sovereignty of it hath been always in the Crown of France; but the Possession and Revenue sometimes given, with the Title of Duke, for a Portion to some of the Kings younger Sons, to be holden of them in *Apeuage*, under the Sovereignty and Command of the Donor, and his Successors. The first of those that held this Title, was *John*, a younger Son of *John King of France*, and Uncle to *Charles VI.* during whose Reign, betwixt this Duke and those of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, the Realm of France was miserably distracted into Broils and Factions. The second was another *John*, Son of *Charles VI.* who dying in his

his Minority, was succeeded in this Title by his Brother *Charles*, Successor to his Father in the Crown it self. The fourth and last, (for it had no more than four Dukes in all) was *Charles*, the youngest Son of King *Charles VII.* who siding with the Earl of *Charolois*, did so much trouble the Affairs of *France* under *Lewis XI.* by whom he was made Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Guienne* afterwards ; but held neither long. After whose death, it was united to the Crown ; never since separated from it : but though it never had Duke since, it hath had three Dutchesses ; first giving the Title of Dutchess to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis XI.* and Wife to *Lewis XII.* then Duke of *Orleans*, estated herein by her said Husband ; when coming to the Crown he divorced her from him, to make room for the Lady *Anne*, Dutchess of *Bretagne*, the Widow of *Charles VIII.* his Predecessor. Conferred after her decease, but on more honourable grounds, by King *Francis I.* on the Lady *Margaret* his Sister, first married to *Charles* Duke of *Alanson* ; and after his decease, to *Henry* of *Albert*, King of *Navarre*, the last that had this Title, being another *Margaret*, Daughter of the said King *Francis*, married to *Philibert Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*.

II. POICTOU.

POICTOU is bounded on the East, with *Touren*, *Berry*, and *Limosin* ; on the North with *Bretagne*, and *Anjou* ; on the South with *Xaintoigne*, a Member of the Dukedom of *Aquitain* ; and on the West, with the *Aquitain* Seas.

It is called in *Latine*, *Pictavia*, from the *Pictones*, as *Ptolomy*, *Cæsar*, and some others ; or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old Inhabitants hereof ; and is a Country so great and plentiful, that there are numbred in it 1200 Parishes, and three Bishopricks. A strong Argument of the populoufness and largeness of it. Besides the goodness of the Soil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it ; that is to say, a large Sea coast, some capacious Harbours, not a few Navigable Rivers emptying themselves into the Sea : besides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin* or *Clavins*, the *Creuse*, and *Vienne*, their Rivers falling into the *Loire* ; which also glides along on the North hereof.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Poitiers*, in *Latine* *Pictavis*, seated upon the *Clin*, or *Clavins* ; by *Ptolomy* called *Augustoritum* : the largest City for compass of ground within the Walls, next to *Paris* it self, but containing in that circuit, Meadows, Cornfields, and other vast Grounds. It is an University, especially for the Study of the *Civil-Law* ; and a See *Episcopal* : one of the Bishops hereof being *St. Hilarie*, surnamed *Pictavensis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a stout Champion of the *Catholick* Faith against the *Arians*, though countenanced in their Heresie by the Emperor *Constantius*. 2. *Sauri*, upon the River *Charente*, near the edge of *Xaintoigne*. 3. *Talmont*, upon the shores of the Ocean. 4. *Beauvoir*, a Sea-Town also, and a reasonable good Port, near the Confines of the *Bretagne*. 5. *Roche-sur-yon*, so called from its situation on the *Yon*, or *Ion* ; which gave the Title of Prince to one of the Branches of the Royal Race of *Bourbon*. 6. *Lusignan*, on the River *Ion* ; also denominated the noble Family of *Lusignan*, sometimes Kings of *Hierusalem*, and afterwards of *Cyprus* ; which last they had in exchange for the first, by the donation of King *Richard* the first of *England*. 7. *Luçon*, or *Lusson*, seated upon a navigable Arm of the Sea : sufficiently famous in being the *Episcopal* See of the renowned Cardinal of *Richelieu*, who so long managed the Affairs of *France* for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8. *Malefais*, a Bishops See also. 9. *Thouars*, which gives the Title of Duke to the ancient Family of *Tremovile*, from which the Dukes of

Bretagne did derive themselves ; from the time that *Constance* the Daughter and Heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geofry Plantaganet* her first Husband, had *Guy* of *Thouars* for her second. 10. *Chastel Herauld*, (or *Castrum Herald*) on the River *Vienne* ; of which *James Hamilton* Earl of *Arran*, in *Scotland*, by the gift of King *Henry* the second of *France*, the better to assure him to the *French* Faction there, against the *English*, had the Title of Duke.

In the *Vine-fields* of this Country, within two Leagues of *Poitiers*, was fought that memorable Battle between *John* of *France*, and *Edward* the Son of King *Edward* the third, surnamed the *Black Prince* ; who being distressed by number of the *French*, would willingly have departed on honourable Terms : which the *French* not accepting, instead of Conquest, found a fatal Overthrow. The greatness and particulars whereof, we shall hereafter see in the like of King *John*. For they presuming on their own Strength, to their disadvantage, bereft the Enemy of all opportunity of retiring ; whereas ordinary Policy would instruct the leader of an Army, to make his Enemy, if he would fly, a Bridge of Gold, as Count *Potillan* used to say. Hereupon *Themistocles* would not permit the *Grecians* to break the Bridge made over the *Hellepont*, by *Xerxes*, lest the *Persians* should be compelled to fight, and so happen to recover their former losses : and *Charles* the sixth lost his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry* the fifth, in his march to *Calice*. For, where all way of Flight or Retreat is stopt, the basest Soldier will rather dye with glory in the front of his Battle, than fly and be killed with ignominy. So true a Mistress of hardy Resolutions, is Dispair, and no less true this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight, and he will kill the Devil*. On the contrary, it hath been the use of divers Politick Captains, to make their own Soldiers fight more resolutely, by taking from them all hope of safety, but by Battle. So did *William* the Conqueror, who at his arrival into *England*, burnt the Ships which transported his Army : thereby giving the Soldiers to understand, that their Lives lay in the strength of their Arms, and courage of their Hearts ; not in the nimbleness of their Heels. *Tariffe*, the Leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, burnt likewise all his Navy, one only *Pinnace* excepted ; which he reserved to carry tidings of his Success. So when *Charles Martel* encountered that infinite Host of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the People of *Tours* to open the Gates only to the Victors. Then he led his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the Banks thereof, certain Troops of Horse-men, to kill all such as fled out of the Field. Hereby informing his Men, that there was to them no more *France*, than what they fought on, unless they were Conquerors. In like manner, the same *Themistocles* cunningly working the *Persians* to enclose the *Greek* Navy on every side, enflamed the *Grecians* with such courage, by a necessity of fight, that they gave their Enemies the most memorable defeat that ever happened on those Seas.

But to proceed, the People of this Province have more in them of the old *Gaul*, than any in *France* ; as lying so betwixt the borders of the *Goths* and *French*, that it was never thoroughly planted or possessed by either. An Argument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, subtil, crafty, and contentious, than the rest of their Country-men ; and have a *Dialect* by themselves, much differing from the common *French*, having many words mixt with it, questionless some remainders of the ancient *Gallick*, which the natural *Frenchmen* understand not. In the division of *Gaul* by the Emperor *Constantine*, they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania Secunda* ; and, as a part thereof, won from the *Romans*, with *Limosin*, *Perigord*, and *Quercu*, by *Furicus* King of the *Goths* in *Spain*. Of whose Kingdom it continued part, till those *Goths* were dispossessed of their hold in *France*, by *Clouis* the fifth King of the *Franks*, surnamed the *Great*. After which it belonged to the Kings of that People ; by the Posterity of *Charles*

the Great, assigned to some Provincial Governors, with the Title of *Earls*. One of which being named *Ebles*, (of the old *Gotbifh* Race, if I guefs right) by the laft Will and Testament of *William* the *Debonaire*, Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earl of *Auvergne*, fucceeded in that fair Eftate. *Poitou*, by this means, made a part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, came with it at the laft to the Kings of *England*, as fhall there be fhewn; and being theirs, was given with the Title of Earl, by King *Henry* the Second, to *Richard*, furnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, who was after King. Seized upon by the *French*, in that unfortunate Reign of King *John*, with the reft of the *English* Provinces, Anno 1202. *Alphonfo*, Brother to *Lewis* the Ninth, is made Earl of *Poitou*: and being again recovered by King *Henry* the Third, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the Barons Wars, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the Affairs of *Germany*, of which, by fome of the Electors, he was chofen Emperor, it was fully conquered by the *French*; and never fince difinembred from that Crown, for ought I can find. For, though in the more active Times of King *Edward* the Third, fome of the beft Towns and Pieces of it were poffeffed by the *English*; yet were they loft again foon after, according to the various fuccelfes and events of War.

12. LIMOSIN, 13. PERIGORT, 14. QUERCU.

THEfe Provinces I have joyned together, becaufe for the moft part they have followed the fame Fortune; being fometimes *French*, and fometimes *English*, according to the fuccelfes of either Nation.

1. *LIMOSIN*, the largeft of the three, hath on the Eaft, *Bourbonnois*; on the Weft, *Perigort*; on the North and North-weft, *Poitou*, and *Berry*; on the South *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higher*, properly called *Limofin*; and the *Lower* commonly called *La Marche*; both parts, but fpecially *La Marche*, which lieth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous, and not very fruitful; but of a free and open Air; inhabited by a People of a more ftaid and fober nature than the reft of the *French*, frugal in expence, and moderate in Diet; only fo great devourers of Bread, that they are grown into a *By-word*.

The chief Towns in *La Marche*, or the *Lower Limofin*, are, 1. *Lalles*, feated in a rough and hilly Country, a Bifhops-See. 2. *Uzarche*, feated amongft the Mountains, on the River *Vezere*, a very fierce and violent Current; with which fo fortified on all fides, that it is thought to be a very ftrong and fecure dwelling. 3. *Treniac*, 4. *Doufinac*, 5. *Belmont*, 6. *Meiffac*, 7. *Brive le Gaillard*, &c. In the *Higher Limofin*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Limoges*, a Bifhop's See, the principal of the *Lemovices*, from whom denominated by *Ptolomy*, called *Ratiastum*. A neat, but no large City; rich, populous, and inhabited by a People of fo great an Industry, that they compel every one to Work; and is therefore by the *French* called the *Prifon of Beggars*; feated on the *Vienne*. At the taking of it, in 1371. when revolted, *Edward* the *Black Prince* could by no means be allured to pity the diftrefsed Citizens, till purfuing Enemies he faw three *French* Gentlemen make Head againft his Army; the confideration of whole Magnanimity drew him to pity, where before he avowed Revenge. 2. *Chaluz*, at the befieging of which, our *Richard* the Firft was flain by a Shot from an *Arbalift*; the ufe of which Warlike Engine, he firft fhewed to the *French*: Whereupon a *French* Poet made thefe Verfes on the Perfon of *Atropos*.

*Hoc volo, non alia Richardum morte perire,
Ut, qui Francigenis Baliftæ primitus ufum*

*Tradidit, ipfe fui rem primitus experiatur:
Quamq; aliis docuit, in se vim sentiat artis.*

It is decreed, thus muft great *Richard* die,
As he that firft did teach the *French* to dart.
An *Arbalift*; 'tis juft he firft fhould trie
The ftrength, and tafte the fruits of his own Art.

The Man that shot him, was called *Bertram de Gardens*; who being brought before the King, (for the King neglecting his Wounds, never gave over the Affault till he gained the place) boldly juftified his Action, as done in the fervice of his Country; and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had caufed to be flain. Which heard, the King not only caufed him to be fet at liberty, but gave him an hundred Shillings *Sterling*, in reward of his Gallantry. 3. *Soubfterrein*, on the confines of *Berry*. 4. *Confoulat*, 5. *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne*, 6. *Boiffon*, 7. *Birat*, of which nothing memorable.

2. *PERIGORT* hath on the Eaft, *Auvergne* and *Quercu*, on the Weft, *Xaintoigne*; on the North, *Limofin*; and on the South, fome part of *Gascoigne*. The Country and People are much of the fame condition with that of *Limofin*; faving that *Perigort* is the more woody; and thofe Woods plentiful of Chefnuts. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Perigieux*, the principal City of the *Petregoræ*, by *Ptolomy* called *Veffena*, now a Bifhop's See; fome foot-fteps of which Name remain in a part of *Perigieux*, (for the Town, it is divided into two parts) which to this Day is called *Vefune*; in which ftandeth the Cathedral Church, and the Bifhop's Palace. The whole City feated in a very pleafant Valley, inviron'd with Downs, affording a moft excellent Wine, and having in it, as a mark of the *Roman* Greatnefs, the ruins of a large and fpacious *Amphitheater*, 2. *Bergerac*, feated on the great River *Dordogne*. 3. *Sarlat*, a Bifhop's See. 4. *Nontron*, defended with a very ftrong Caftle. 5. *Miramont*, 6. *La Roche*. 7. *Marfay*, where is a Well which ebberh and floweth according to the pulse of the River of *Bourdeaux*. And 8. *Angolefme*, in the North-weft, towards *Xaintoigne*, the Seat of the *Engolifmenfes*, in the time of the *Romans*, now a Bifhop's See; feated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almoft encompassed: the other fide being defended by a fteep and rocky Mountain. A Town of great importance when poffeffed by the *English*; being one of their beft Out-works for defence of *Bourdeaux*; one of the Gates thereof being to this Day called *Chande*, feems to have been the work of Sir *John Chandois*, Banneret, one of the firft Founders of the moft Noble Order of the *Garret*; then recovered from the *English* by *Charles* the Fifth, it was beftowed on *John*, the third Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Grand-father of King *Francis* the Firft, with the Title of an Earldom only, An. 408. Afterwards made a Dukedom in the Perfon of the faid King *Francis*, before his coming to the Crown. And for the greater honour of it, as much of the adjoining Country was laid unto it, as maketh up a Territory of about 24 *French* Leagues in length: and 15 in breadth: within which circuit are the Towns of *Chafteau-neif*, and *Coignat*, on the River of *Charente*. 3. *Roche Fautcon*, 4. *Chabannes*, 5. *Meriville*, 6. *Villaboier*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the Title of Duke to *Charles* Earl of *Auvergne*, An. 1618. the bafe Son of *Charles* the Ninth, confequently extracted from the Houfe of *Angolefme*.

3. *QUERCU*, or *Quercy*, is encompassed about with *Limofin*, *Perigort*, *Languedoc*, and *Auvergne*; a populous Country, for the bignefs, (being one of the leaft in all *France*) and very fruitful withal, though fomewhat mountainous. The principal places in it, 1. *Cabors*, the chief City of the *Cadurci* in the times of the *Romans*; ftill a great, ftrong, and well-traded Town, and the See of a Bifhop, who is alfo the *Temporal* Lord of it; feated upon the River *Loch*. From hence defcended and took Name the Noble Family of *Caworoth de Cadurcis*, in *Latin*: out of which, by a Daughter of *Patrick de Cadurcis*, Lord of *Og-*

more and *Kidwelly*, in the Marches of *Wales*, married to *Henry the Third*, Earl of *Lancaster*, come the Kings of *England*, and most of the Royal Houses in *Europe*. 2. *Montalban*, a Bishop's See also; built on the top of an high Mountain, and so well fortified by all advantages of Art, that it is thought to be the most defensible of any in *France*: of which it gave sufficient proof in that notable Resistance which it made to King *Lewis the Thirteenth*, in his Wars against those of the *Religion*, Anno 1622. 3. *Senlac*, upon the River *Dordonne*. 4. *Nigrepellisse*, another of the Towns possessed by the Protestant Party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis the Thirteenth*, Anno 1621. but in *November* following, they murdered the King's Garrison, and the next Year denied admision to the King. Taken at last, *An.* 1622. by the King in Person: the Punishment did exceed the Crime. For, the Men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deserved, but many of the Women also; some of them having their Secret Part rammed with Gun-powder, and so torn in pieces by the unpattern'd Barbarism of the merciless and revengeful Soldiers. 5. *Château-Sarasin*, a strong Town on the *Garond*. 6. *Nazaret*. 7. *Burette*, &c.

The ancient Inhabitants of these three Provinces, were the *Lemovices*, the *Petrocorii*, and the *Cadurci* beforementioned; of which the *Lemovices*, and *Cadurci*, were cast into the Province of *Aquitania Prima*; the *Petrocorii*, and *Engolismenses*, into *Aquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire, seized on by the *Goths*; but from them speedily extorted by the conquering *French*. Afterwards, when King *Henry the Third of England* released his Right in the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Poitou*, *Anjou*, *Touren*, and *Main*; *Lewis IX* to whom his Release was made, gave him in satisfaction of all former Interesses, 200000 *l.* of *Anjorian* Money, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the County of *Naintoigne*, as far as to the River of *Charente*, with the Province of *Limosin*. And on the Capitulation made betwixt *Edward the Third of England*, and *John of France*, then Prisoner to him; *Perigort* and *Queren* (among other Conditions) were consigned over to the *English*, discharged of all *Refort* and *Homage* to the Crown of *France*. After which times respectively, they remained all three in the possession of the *English*, until their final expulsion by King *Charles the Seventh*, never since that dismembred from the Crown of *France*.

15. AQUITAIN.

THE Dukedom of *AQUITAIN*, the greatest and goodliest of all *France*, contained the Provinces of 1. *Naintoigne*, 2. *Guienne*, 3. *Gascogne*; with the Isles of *Oleron* and *Rees*, and other Islands in the *Aquitanick* or *Western Ocean*.

NAINTOIGNE is bounded on the East with *Limosin* and *Perigort*; on the West with the *Aquitanick Ocean*; on the North with *Poitou*; and on the South with *Guienne*. So called from *Saintes*, one of the principal Cities of it; as that from the *Santonnes*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whose chief City it was. The River *Charente* running through the middle; and so on the North border of it, emptieth it self into the Ocean, just opposite to the Isle of *Oleron*; having first taken in the *Seugne*, and the *Boutonne*, two lesser Rivers.

The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Saintes*; by *Ptolomy* called *Mediolanum*; by *Antoninus* *Civitas Santonum*, seated upon the *Charente*; a Bishop's See, and the Seneschallie for the County. 2. *S. John de Angelie*, situate on the *Boutonne*, a Town once impregnablely fortified; whereof it hath given sufficient testimony in the Civil Wars of *France* about *Religion*, until the fatal time was come, in which the great Power of that Party was to be dissolv'd;

at what time, (*viz.* Anno 1621.) after a Siege of forty Days, it was taken by King *Lewis the Thirteenth*, the Fortifications demolished, the Town left open, and commanded from that time forwards to be called by the Name of *Lewis Bourg*. Bourg *sur la Mer*, upon the *Dordonne*; which, for the wideness of it, is here called a Sea. 4. *Retraicte*, seated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond* and the *Dordonne*. 5. *Blaye*, the most Southern Town of all this Country, defended with a strong Castle, and a goodly Garrison for securing the Passage unto *Bordeaux*; this Town being seated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 6. *Rochelle*, *Republ.* in the present *Language*; but anciently called *Santonum Portus*, as the chief Haven of the *Santons*; a well-noted Port in the most Northern part of *Naintoigne*; from whence the Country hereabouts is called *ROCHELLOIS*. The Town seated in the inner part of a fair and capacious Bay; the entrance of which is well assured by two very strong Forts, betwixt which there is no more space than for the passage of a good Ship; every Night closed up with a mally Chain, and the whole Town either environed with deep Marishes, or fortified with such Bulwarks, Trenches, and other Works of Modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the safest retreat for those of the *Reformed Religion*, in the time of their Troubles; as may be seen by the Story of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the second Civil-War, *An.* 1568. many Towns considering how ill the former Peace had been observed, refused to take in any of the King's Garrison, or permit any of the *Papists* to bear Arms amongst them; of which *Rochel* was one; which also, contrary to the King's Command, maintained a Navy for their safety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that hither the Queen of *Navarre*, and her Son, retired, as to a place of safety, *An.* 1572. *Rochel* alone, of all the *French* Towns, held good for the *Protestants*, and is by *Monieur Joinville* on all sides blocked up; but the Siege soon raised, and *Rochel*, *Montalban*, *Santerre*, with others, made cautionary for the Peace ensuing, *An.* 1575. besieged by *Biron* the Elder, with an Army of 50000 Men, and 60 Pieces of Artillery: *Charles the Ninth*, *Henry Duke of Anjou*, the Duke of *Anmal*, &c. being also present at the Service: it held out from the beginning of *March* till the seventh of *June*, and was then freed, the City having in one Month endured 13000 Shot, and the King lost 20000 Men, amongst them, the Duke of *Anmal* for one. *An.* 75 and 78, it was attempted by *Landreau*, the Isle of *Ree* taken, but soon recovered: the King of *Navarre* and Prince of *Conde*, after the defeat, being received in Triumph. Anno 1577. besieged to Sea-ward by *Lansac*; who being also beaten back, a Peace was made, and eight cautionary Towns more added to their former strength. In the Troubles of 85, and 88, the Princes above-named made it their Retreat; and from thence issued to divert the Purposes of the Duke of *Mercoeur*. The next Year, *Henry the Third* being slain, and the King of *Navarre* seated in the Throne, the *Protestants* encreased exceedingly in Power and Number, and taking advantage of the minority of *Lewis the Thirteenth*, govern'd themselves a part as a *Free Estate*, *Rochel* being made the Head of their Common-wealth; fortified to that end with 12 Royal Bastions of Free-stone, with double Ditches, deep and broad in the bottom, abundantly furnished with Powder and Ammunition, 150 Pieces of Cannon, besides Culverins and smaller Pieces, with Victuals, and all other necessaries to endure a Siege; and grown unto so great Wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or six-score Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns apiece. This drew upon them the great Wars in the Year 1621, and 1622. which ended in the loss of their Garrisons, except *Rochel* and *Montalban*; those to remain in pledge with the Protestant Party, but for three Years, on which time expired, the *Rochellers* were again besieged both by Sea and Land, the Isle of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet

broke at Sea, and the mouth of their Haven so barred up with Ships chained together, and sunk into it, and other Works of stupendious greatness, in the very Ocean, that no Foreign Succors out of *England*, (whosoever really intended, and bravely followed) had been able to come to their Relief. In the end, having endured all the extremities of a tedious Siege, they yielded themselves to the King's mercy, *An. 1628. Montalbon, Nismes*, and other places newly fortified, submitted at the same time also. 7. *Marans*, a great Town, and of great Importance, seated by the Ocean-Sea, in a low fenny place, as it were in a *Peninsula*, and so encompassed on every side with Marshy watry grounds, that there is no access to the Works thereof, but by very few, and those narrow Passages. 8. *Chastillon*, and 9. *Saubize*, places of good strength also, but of great note: the first for giving a surname to a Noble Family, out of which issued formerly the Earls of *Blois*, and of late times, *Gasper de Colligni*, and *Monsieur D'Andalet*, his Brother; much mentioned in the Wars of *France* about *Religion*: the latter giving the Title of a Duke to a younger Son of the House of *Roban*; as great a stickler in that Cause, as those Brethren were.

II. *GUIENNE*, the second Province of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, is bounded on the North with *Xaintoigne*, from which parted by the River of *Dordonne*; on the South with *Gascoigne*, on the East with *Perigort*, and on the West with the *Aquitainick* Ocean, from the *Pyrenean* Hills, to the River of *Bordeaux*. The reason of the name I could never learn. Some think it a corruption of the old Name *Aquitain*; and very probably. The Country generally plentiful of Corn and Wine; the one being vented into *Spain*, and the other into *England*. The People, as those of *Xaintoigne* also, tall of Stature, of able Bodies, haters of Servitude and Baseness, and well practised in Arms; which qualities of the Mind, and constitution of Body, (being therein so different from the rest of *France*) it is possible enough they might have from the *English*, who for 300 years were possessed of the Country, and have left many tracts of their Language in it.

The principal Rivers of this Province, are the *Garond* and the *Dordonne*, meeting together at *Retraicte*, a Town of *Xaintoigne*; and thence in one Channel falling into the Ocean; the Country betwixt these two Rivers, being called *Le Pais entre les deux mers*; or, The Country betwixt the two Seas: the Rivers hereabouts resembling a small Sea in wideness. Of lesser note are, 1. *Journe*, 2. *Baize*, 3. *Lot*, and 4. *Lisse*, falling into the *Garond* in their several places.

Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Bordeaux*, seated on the South bank of the *Garond*, not far from the Sea, amongst the Marshes. The chief City of the *Bituriges*, who possessed this Tract; and for distinction's sake, were called *Bituriges Ubisci*; those of *Bourges*, being called *Bituriges Cubi*. It was after called *Burdegala*, and *Civitas Burdegalensium*, the Metropolis at that time of *Aquitania secunda*, consequently, an Archbishops See, as it still continueth. After a rich, and populous City, beautified with many good Buildings, an University founded here by King *Lewis* the 11th, and a large Cathedral. It was made *Parliamentary* for *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoining by King *Charles* the 7th, *An. 1453*, not long after the expulsion of the *English* thence; and is one of the most noted *Empories* in all the Kingdom; frequented very much by the *Dutch* and *English*, for *Gascoigne* Wines: over which last the *French* are so jealous, that they permit them not to come up the River, till they have unladen all their *Ordinance* at the Port of *Blaye*. This City in the year 1650. had some broils with the Court, which ended in a Siege, by which the City was reduced. The Country hereabouts is, from this Town, called *Bourdalois*. 2. *Fronsac*, lying in the Country betwixt the two Seas, (as they call it) which gives the Title of a Duke to the Noble Family of the Earls of *St. Paul*, now Dukes of *Fronsac*, and to the Country round about, the name of *Fronsadaise*. 3. *Libourne*, at the confluence of the two great

Rivers, opposite to *Retraicte* in *Xaintoigne*. 4. *Soulac*, at the influx of the *Garond*, in the *Peninsula*, or *Demi-Island*, called the Country of *Medoc*. 5. *Baionne*, a Sea-Town, and Episcopal See fronting on the Coast of *Spain*. 6. *S. John de Luz*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains; all about which the People speak the *Basquish*, or old *Gascoigne* Language, being the same with that of *Biscay*. 7. *D'Acqs*, an Episcopal See, by *Ptolomy* called *Aquæ Augustæ*, (*Civitas Aquensium*, by *Antonius*) from whence this part of *Gaul* had the name of *Aquitain*. These three last, being all of them Frontier Towns, are strongly fortified. 8. *Bazas*, (called *Cossum* by *Ptolomy*) the chief City of the *Vasates*, whom *Antonius* placeth in this Tract: now a Bishops-See, situate on the borders of *Gascoigne*: in the Country from hence called *Bazadas*. Towns of less note, 1. *Esparrez*, 2. *St. Basil*, 3. *Reule*, 4. *Chasteau-Moron*, 5. *Monseguer*, 6. *Saint-erre*, &c. Here is also in this Province, the Country of *Buche*, lying along the Sea-Coast, from *Baionne* to *Medoc*; a barren, poor, and wretched Country, the worst piece of *France*; only remarkable for the Lords or Owners of it, formerly of the House of *Foix*: of which the most remarkable were *Gaston de Foix*, for his many signal Services against the *French*, created Earl of *Kendal*, and Knight of the *Garter*, by the said King *Henry*; but better known in *English* Stories, by the Name of *Capitol*, or *Capau de Buche*; the Lords hereof having no higher Title than that of *Captain*.

III. *GASCOIGNE*, the third and largest part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, hath on the East, *Languedoc*; from which parted by the River *Garond*, on the West, the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*: on the North, *Perigort*, *Quercu*, and some part of *Guienne*; and on the South, a main Tract of the *Pyrenees*, running on to *Languedoc*. The Country generally fruitful, but of Wines especially; brought hence to *Bordeaux*, as the staple for that Commodity, and thence transported into *England* in great abundance.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the *Auscii*, *Lecleres*, *Convenares*, *Conserani*, &c. making up a great part of the Province of *Novempopulonia*, united in this name of *Gascoigne*, on the Conquest of it by the *Vascones*, a Spanish Nation, who fell in here during the Reign of *Dagobert* the 11th King of the *French*. And though subdued by *Clouis* the second, Son of *Dagobert*; yet they left their Name unto the Country, divided afterwards according to the chief *Signeuries* and Estates thereof, into 1. the Principality of *Bearn*, 2. the Earldom of *Foix*, 3. *Comminges*, 4. *Begorre*, 5. *Armagnac*, 6. *Albert*, and 7. the Country of *Agenous*.

1. The Principality of *BEARNE*, is situate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, where they joyn to *Languedoc*; so called from *Bearnium*, principal City of this Tract, mentioned by *Antoninus*, and others of the ancient Writers. The Country of good Pasturage, though amongst the Mountains; affording plenty of Cattel, Butter, and in some places Wines also, little inferiour in Taste and Colour, to the best of *France*; and many Medicinal Springs issuing from the Hills adjoining.

The Religion here, as generally in all *Gascoigne*, is that of the Reformed Churches, introduced about the year 1560. or rather, then confirmed by publick Authority of the King and Queen of *Navarre*, at what time the *Mass*, *Tythes*, Church-Lands, and the Prelates Votes in *Parliament*; (according to the *Genevian* way of Reformation) were condemned together. And so it stood till the year 1620, when by the Power and Authority of *Lewis* the 13, King of *France* and *Navarre*, the Prelates were restored to their Votes and Lands; the Clergy to their *Tythes*, and *Mass* caused also to be said in some of their Churches: yet so, that those of the Reformed were left unto the free exercise of their own Religion, as in former times.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Orthes*, the same which anciently was called *Bearnium*. 2. *Lescar*, a Bishop's See, the ancient Seat and Habitation of the Prin-

ces of *Bearn*. 3. *Oleron*, a Bishop's See also, mounted upon a high Hill in the more mountainous parts of the Country. 4. *Saincterra*, well garrisoned since the reduction of this Country to the King's Obedience. 5. *Pau*, the principal of all the Province, honoured with a *Parliament* or Court of *Judicature* for all the Country; and a fair Palace of the Prince, built by *Henry of Albert*, King of *Navarre*, and Lord of *Bearn*; the Seat of him and his Successors, till the coming of *Henry the Fourth* to the Crown of *France*. 6. *Grenade*, upon the Frontier towards *Begorre*.

This Country for a long time followed the fortune of *Aquitain*; and in the general dismembring of the *French* Empire, had its own *Proprietaries*, who were the absolute Lords of it, acknowledging no superior for ought I can find. The principal of which was that *Gaston* (a Name very frequent in this Family) who in the Year 1118 accompanied with many Noble Persons of *France*, assisted *Alphonso* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon* at the Siege of *Saragossa*; in the course of which Action he did so good Service, that he was not only much honoured, but liberally rewarded for it; both he and his Posterity enjoying many Privileges in the conquered City. By the Heir general of this *Gaston*, married to *William de Moncada*, Seneschal of *Catalogne*, and of great Possessions in that Country, the Lordship and Sovereignty of *Bearn* fell unto that Family about the Year 1220. but long it did not tarry in it: For *William* being slain in the Conquest of the Isle of *Majorca*, An. 1228. left his Estates to *Gaston de Morcada* his eldest Son; who much increased them by the addition of the Earldom of *Begorre*, and many other goodly Pieces, accruing to him in the Right of his Wife *Martha*, Heir hereof, whereof more anon. Grown by this means to such Authority and Esteem in the Court of *Aragon*, that (being without Issue Male) *Constance* his eldest Daughter was thought a Match of great advantage to *Alphonso*, eldest Son of King *James* the First. But dying without Issue by her, Anno 1260. the Sovereignty of *Bearn*, with all the Appendixes thereof both in *France* and *Spain*, became united to the Earldom of *Foix*, (an Estate equal to it both in Power and Patrimony) by the Marriage of *Roger Bernard* the ninth Earl of *Foix*, who succeeded in that Earldom, Anno 1262. with *Margaret de Moncada*, another Daughter of this *Gaston*, and Heir of *Bearn*. Afterwards being much increased both in Power and Honour (by the addition of the Earldom of *Comminges*, the Visconty of *Narbon*, and the Signeury of *Buche* in *Guienne*, to this House of *Foix*) it was added to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the Marriage of *Gaston* Earl of *Foix*, and Sovereign of *Bearn*, with *Eleanor* the Heir of that Kingdom, Anno 1481. descending with that Crown upon *Henry of Bourbon*, King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France*, by the Name of *Henry the Fourth*; but governed by him always as a State distinct, without relation or resort to the Crown of *France*. But *Lewis* the Thirteenth his Son, finding some inconvenience in that distinction, incorporated it for ever to the rest of his Dominions, Anno 1620. though not without some opposition from the Subjects of *Bearn*, which he was fain to over-bear by his Personal Presence, and the advantage of such Forces as he carried with him. Since reckon'd as a part of that Kingdom, awed, as the rest of *France*, by Forts and Garrisons, and governed in Civil Matters by the Parliament established at *Pau*: the Judges and Counsellors thereof at the King's appointing.

2. The Earldom of *FOIX*, situate on the West of *Languedoc*, *Commingeois* interposing betwixt it and *Bearn*, Chief Towns hereof, are, 1. *Mascreols* on the *Garond*, a Bishop's See. 2. *Parnieres*, a Bishop's See also, seated on the River *Lagiere*. 3. *Foix*, on the same River, called in Latin, *Fuxium*, and the Earls hereof *Comites Fuxenses*; the chief Seat of the *Flussates*, in the times of the *Romans*; now giving Name to all the Country. 4. *Mirande*, in the County of *Esterac*, and the chief thereof; but other-

wife of no great account. 5. *Savardum*, and 6. *Monbault*, two strong Pieces. 7. *Mirepoix*, (*oppidum Miropense*) a Bishop's See also, but of no note otherwise. The old Inhabitants of this Tract, besides the *Flussates* above-mentioned, were called *Vascei*, perhaps of the abundance of Kine bred in the Pastures hereof: upon which ground, the Earls of *Foix* have for their Arms, Four Cows passant Gules, horned and hoofed Azure, in a Field Or.

The first of these Earls was *Bernard* of *Carcaffone*, advanced to this Honour by *Raimond* Earl of *Tholouse*, who had then the Sovereignty hereof, Anno 1062. The Patrimony hereof much increased by Marriage (no one Family more) many fair Lands in the Marishes of *Provence* being added to it by *Estmienne*, Wife of *Roger* the Second; not a few Signeuries in *Catalonia*, by *Cecil* Daughter of Earl *Raimond*, Wife of *Roger* the Third; the Earldom of *Castelbon*, by *Bruniceu* Wife of *Roger Bernard* the first; the Earldom of *Comminges* by *Eleanor* the Wife of *Gaston* the Second. Besides all which, in or about the Year 1262. *Roger Bernard*, the Ninth Earl, united *Bearn* to his Estate as before is said; whose Grandchild *Isabel* (the Male Issue failing) conveyed the whole Estate to *Archembald*, Lord or Captain of *Buche*, in the Province of *Guienne*. *Gaston*, the Nephew of this *Archembald* by his eldest Son *John*, was for his many good Services to *Charles* the Seventh, made a Peer of *France*: and did not only purchase this Visconty of *Narbon*, from the Lords whereof he was descended by *Mairguard*, Wife of *Roger Bernard* the Second; but by his Marriage with *Eleanor* or *Beaumont*, Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, united that Kingdom to his House, though he enjoyed it not in his own Person. By means of which Alliances, and other improvements of his Estate, his Family grew to so great Power and Reputation, that there were four Queens at one time descended from it, viz. *Catharine* Queen of *Navarre*, *German* Queen of *Aragon*, *Anne* Queen of *France*, *Anne* Queen of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. Before which time (I mean the Addition of *Navarre* to their other Estates) the Earls of *Foix* were in so high esteem in the Court of *France*, that in all publick Ceremonies they took place of the Earls of *Vendusme*, though extracted from the Royal Blood, and lived in a condition equal to most Kings in Christendom. In which regard, as also that the later Kings of *Navarre* and present Kings of *France*, are descended of them, it will not be amiss to subjoyn here the Catalogue of

The Earls of Foix.

A. C.

- | | | |
|------|----|--|
| 1062 | 1 | <i>Bernard</i> the younger Son of <i>Roger</i> Earl of <i>Carcaffon</i> , the first Earl of <i>Foix</i> . |
| 1096 | 2 | <i>Roger</i> , the Son of <i>Bernard</i> , an Adventurer in the first War for the <i>Holy Land</i> . |
| 1111 | 3 | <i>Roger</i> II. Son of <i>Roger</i> the First. |
| 1144 | 4 | <i>Roger</i> III. Son of <i>Roger</i> the Second. |
| 1188 | 5 | <i>Raimond</i> , <i>Roger</i> Son of <i>Roger</i> the Third, a great Stickler for the Earls of <i>Tholouse</i> , in favour of the <i>Albigenses</i> , and their Opinions. |
| 1223 | 6 | <i>Roger Bernard</i> , the Inheritor of his Father's Opinions, as well as of his Estates and Fortunes. |
| 1241 | 7 | <i>Roger</i> IV. surnamed <i>Rosfer</i> , a Companion of the King <i>S. Lewis</i> in the <i>Holy Land</i> . |
| 1255 | 8 | <i>Roger Bernard</i> II. Son of <i>Rosfer</i> . |
| 1262 | 9 | <i>Roger Bernard</i> III. who added <i>Bearn</i> and its Appendixes unto his Estates. |
| 1306 | 10 | <i>Gaston</i> the Son of <i>Roger Bernard</i> the Third, and of <i>Margaret de Moncade</i> the Heir of <i>Bearn</i> . |
| 1315 | 11 | <i>Gaston</i> II. Son of <i>Gaston</i> the First, a great Enemy to the <i>English</i> in behalf of <i>Philip de Valois</i> ; and as great a Friend to the King of <i>Aragon</i> against the <i>Moors</i> , in which Wars he was slain. |
| 1344 | 12 | <i>Gaston</i> III. for his beauty surnamed <i>Phabus</i> , inferior for Revenue and the Port he lived in, to few Kings in Christendom. |

- 1390 13 *Matthew* Earl of *Castelbon*, Son of *Roger Bernard* Earl of *Castelbon*, the second of *Gaston* the First; designed Successor to *John* King of *Aragon*, whose eldest Daughter he had married, but dispossessed thereof by the Duke of *Monlanc*.
- 1399 14 *Archembald* Captain of *Buche*, and *Isabel* Sister and Heir of *Matthew* Earls of *Foix*.
- 1413 15 *John* Son of *Archembald*, a great Enemy to the *English* in behalf of *Charles* the Seventh of *France*: his younger Brother *Gaston*, as great a Friend unto the *English*, succeeding in the Estate of *Buche*. From *Peter* the second Son of this *John*, descended *Odet de Foix*, Lord of *Lautrech*, so renowned in the Wars of *Italy*.
- 1436 16 *Gaston IV.* Son of *John*, a principal Agent in the Conquest of *Guienne* from the *English*; by his Marriage with *Eleanor*, Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, advanced his House unto that Kingdom; Grandfather by *John* Viscount of *Narbonne* his second Son to *Gaston de Foix* Duke of *Nemours*, slain at the taking of *Ravenna*, Anno 1512.
- 1472 17 *Francis Phæbus*, Nephew of *Gaston* the Fourth, and of *Eleanor* of *Navarre*, by their Son *Gaston* Prince of *Viane*, succeeded his said Grandfather in the Earldom of *Foix*, and his Grandmother in the Realm of *Navarre* about seven Years after.
- 1483 18 *Catharine* the Sister and Heir of *Francis*, by her married with *John* Earl of *Albert*, added that Earldom also to the House of *Foix*.
- 1517 19 *Henry* of *Albert*, Son of *John* and *Catharine*, King of *Navarre*, Sovereign of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*, by his Marriage with the Lady *Margaret*, Sister to King *Francis* the First, added the greatest part of the Lands of *Armaignac* unto his Estate.
- 1556 20 *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme*, and *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* of *Albert*, Kings of *Navarre*, Sovereigns of *Bearn*, and Earls of *Foix*.
- 1572 21 *Henry II.* Son of *Joan* and *Antony*, King of *Navarre*, Sovereign Lord of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*; on the murder of *Henry* the Third of *France* succeeded also in that Kingdom by the Name of *Henry* the Fourth, Anno 1589. the Father of *Louis* the Thirteenth, and Grandfather of King *Louis* the Fourteenth, now reigning, *Ann.* 1648.

And so having brought the Earls of *Foix* to the Crown of *France* it is time to leave them. The Arms of these great Earls we have seen before.

3. The Earldom of *BEGORRE*, *Bigorre* is situate North of *Bearn*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains; so called from the *Bigerrones*, the old Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæsar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoining Principality of *Bearn*, live a leprous and infectious People of noisome Breaths, deformed Bodies, and ghastly Villages, in which regard not suffered to have any Commerce with other People, nor to inherit any Lands; but only to apply themselves to Drudgery, and the basest of mechanick Trades. From their great misshapen Heads called *Capets* or *Gabets*.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Figueres*, famous for Medicinal Baths. 2. *Lourde*, of which nothing memorable. 3. *Tarbes*, (*Antonine* called *Imfabica*) seated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a strong Castle, an Episcopal See, and the Seneschallie for all the County of *Begorre*. Which Country having for long time its own Proprietary Earls, under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Crown of *Navarre*, from the Kings whereof they were extracted, or those Kings from them; was at the last, by the Marriage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of

Esquibat the last Earl, to *Basan* Viscount of *Marfan* and *Gabardan*, added to that House. Whose Daughter *Matthee*, marrying to *Gaston* Prince of *Bearn*, increased that Principality with those goodly pieces of *Marfan*, *Gabardan*, and *Begorre*; all brought into the House of *Foix*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this *Gaston*, married to *Roger-Bernard*, as before is said.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, a Cross *Argent*; by *Inigo Arista* the Son of *Simon*, Earl of this Country called to the Crown of *Navarre*, made the Arms of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Arms thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vert*, a Cross in chief, *Gules*; which Arms are said to be took by *Gratia Ximines* the first King of *Navarre*, from such a Sign appearing to him in the Sky, before his first Battel with the *Moors*.

4. The Earldom of *COMMINGES* lieth betwixt *Bearn* and *Foix*, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to border Eastward on *Begorre*. Divided into the *Higher* and more mountainous part, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and the *Lower*, which hath somewhat more of the Valley in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Convenae* and *Conserani*. The principal places at present in the *Lower Comminges* are, 1. *Lombes*, a Bishop's See, but of late erection. 2. *Moret*, upon the River *Garonne*. 3. *Samatan*. 4. *Lieffe en Dordon*. And in the *Higher* there is, 1. *Conserans*, once the chief Town of the *Conserani*, now a Bishop's See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Hills. 2. *S. Bernard*, of old called *Civitas Convenarum*, a Bishop's See also, and the chief City of this Earldom. 3. *S. Beat*. 4. *S. Bregoa*, 5. *Moregeau*, or *Mons Regius*. 6. *Silliers*, &c.

Of the Estate of this Earldom I have little to say, but that it was united to the House of *Foix*, by the Marriage of *Eleanor*, the Daughter of an Earl hereof, to *Gaston* the second of that Name, and the eleventh Earl of this House. Given afterwards notwithstanding to a *Spaniard* called *Rodrigo de Villandrada*, by *Charles* the Seventh. But in the end restored again to the House of *Foix*, by the Prowess and great Services of *Gaston* the Fourth, who caused his Uncle *Matthew*, the youngest Son of *Archembald* and *Isabel* Earls of *Foix* to be settled in it, according to the Will and Purpose of his Father *Archembald*, who had given it to him. But falling to the Crown again, it was conferred on *John* of *Lescon*, a Bastard of the Earl of *Armaignac*, who was Earl of *Comminges*, and one of the Marshals of *France*, in the time of King *Louis* the Eleventh. The Arms of these Earls were *Gules*, four Orelles in Saltier, *Argent*.

5. The Earldom of *ARMAIGNAC*, the greatest of all these Estates considered severally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and so extendeth it self to the Banks of the River *Garond*. Principal Towns are, 1. *Aux*; upon the River *Gez*, anciently called *Augusta Auscorum*; the Metropolis or Head City of the Province of *Novempopulonia*; by consequence an Archbishop's See: The Revenues whereof are said to be the greatest of any Prelates in *France*, computed at no less than 40000 *l. per Annum*. 2. *Leffoure*, a Bishop's See called of old *Lefforatum*, in our modern *Latin* *Leffodurum*. A Town so well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armaignac*, that it held out a Siege of three Months against the Forces of *France*; but since it came into the hands of the *French* Kings, so strengthened and embattelled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the strongest Bulwark of the Kingdom on this side, and their surest Fortress against *Spain*. 3. *Lisle de Jourdain*, which hath the Title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns, of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, by *John* the Fourth Earl of *Armaignac*, *Ann.* 1421. 4. *Aurillac*. 5. *Auzan*. 6. *Chastelneau*. 7. *Malbonrquer*. 8. *Nestes*, of which little memorable.

The Earls of *Armaignac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*. *Sancho* the Great, having subdued some Lands in *Gascoigne*, which he conferred on *Grasius* a younger Son of his, with the Title of Earl of *Armaignac*, Anno 1014. On which Foundation it increased so fast, both

both in Power and Honour, that *Bernard* the fourth Earl hereof came to be Constable of *France*. And so did *John* the Fourth of that Name, by the favour of King *Charles* the Seventh; who also writ himself, *By the Grace of God* Earl of *Armaignac*; according to the stile of Sovereign Princes. A Man of so considerable Power in these parts of *France*, that the Marriage of a Daughter of his to our *Henry* the Sixth, was thought the best means for establishing his Estate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, that by breaking of this Alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cause of the loss of the King's Pieces in *France*. This Greatness made him subject to the Jealousie of King *Lewis* the Eleventh, who worried him out of his Estate and his Life together. *Charles* (Brother of this *John*) succeeded by the favour of King *Charles* the Eighth. After whose Death the said Estate was seized on to the use of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the First to *Charles* Duke of *Alanson*, (whose Grandfather had married with a Sister of the said Earl *John*) and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, the said King's Sister, who, after the decease of the Duke of *Alanson*, brought it to *Henry* of *Albert*, and King of *Navarre*, her second Husband; returning so to the Original from whence first it came.

The Arms of these great Princes, were quarterly 1. *Argent*, a Lyon *Azure*, 2. *Gules*, a Leopard Lyon *Or*, the 3. &c.

6. The Earldom of *ALBERT* is situate on the North-west of *Armaignac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is 1. *Nerac*, seated on the River of *Raize*; the only place of strength and moment in all this Estate. 2. *Chastell-Falone*, well seated to disturb the Trade betwixt *Bordeaux* and *Gascoigne*, but not able to endure a Siege. 3. *Mont de Marsan*, and 4. *Tartas*, both seated on the River *Ladour*, and all four formerly Towns of Caution for those of the *Reformed Religion*; of which this Country is so full, that the *Papish Religion* had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the smallest of the six, and of least Antiquity, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the rest into it. For *John*, the Son of *Alan* Earl of *Albert*, by his Marriage with *Catharine*, Daughter and sole Heir of *Gaston*, Son of *Gaston* of *Foix*, and of *Leanora* Princess of *Navarre*, added to his Estate the Signeuries of *Bearn*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And *Henry* of *Albert* his Son, by marrying the Lady *Margaret*, Sister of King *Francis* the First, united to it those of *Armaignac* and *Comminges*. By *Jean* the Daughter of this *Henry*, the whole Estate was brought to *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme*, and Father to King *Henry* the Fourth becoming so united to the Crown of *France*, from which it was at first dismembred.

The Arms of these Earls were Quarterly, 1. *France*; 2. *Gules*, a Border ingrailed *Arg*. The 3. &c.

7. As for the Country of *AGENOIS*, the last part of *Gascoigne*, it never had other Hearts (after it left off to be French) than the Dukes of *Aquitain*. The principal Cities of it, 1. *Agen*, a rich, populous, and well-traded Town, seated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitful Country; a Bishops See, a Seneschallie, and held to be the fairest in *Gascoigne*. 2. *Condon*, a Bishop's See also, from which the parts adjoining are called *Condonnois*. 3. *Villenuisne*. 4. *Claerac*. 5. *Marman*. 6. *Foy*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of those several Members which make up the great Body of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; let us next look on the Estate of the whole thus brought together; which in the declination of the *Roman Empire*, was given unto the *Goths*, before possessed of all *Gallia Narbonensis*, by *Valentinian* the Third, as a reward for their Service driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Goths* had not held it, when they were outed of it by *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*, continuing under his Successors till *Ludovicus Pius* made it a Kingdom and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngest Son. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the Son of this *Pepin*, being dispossessed by *Charles the Bald*, it was by him conferred on *Ra-*

nulph, of the House of *Burgundy*, for his many good Services against the *Normans*, Anno 844. Whose Successor take here in this order following.

The Dukes of Aquitain.

- | | | |
|------|----|---|
| 844 | 1 | <i>Ranulph</i> of <i>Burgundy</i> , first Duke of <i>Aquitain</i> . |
| 875 | 2 | <i>William</i> , Earl of <i>Auvergne</i> , Nephew of <i>Ranulph</i> . |
| 902 | 3 | <i>Ebles</i> , Earl of <i>Poitiers</i> , succeeded in <i>Aquitain</i> , and <i>Auvergne</i> , by the Will and Testament of Duke <i>William</i> . |
| 911 | 4 | <i>Ebles</i> II. Son of <i>Ebles</i> the First. |
| 935 | 5 | <i>William</i> II. the Son of <i>Ebles</i> the Second. |
| 970 | 6 | <i>William</i> III. Son of <i>William</i> the Second. |
| 1019 | 7 | <i>Guy</i> , the Son of <i>William</i> the Third. |
| 1021 | 8 | <i>William</i> IV. Son of <i>Guy</i> . |
| 1086 | 9 | <i>William</i> V. Son of <i>William</i> the Fourth. |
| 1156 | 10 | <i>Louis</i> the Seventh of <i>France</i> , in right of <i>Blanche</i> his Wife, sole Heir of <i>William</i> the Fifth. |
| 1152 | 11 | <i>Henry</i> Duke of <i>Normandy</i> , and Earl of <i>Anjou</i> , &c. in right of <i>Eleanor</i> his Wife, divorced from <i>Louis</i> on pretence of some consanguinity, after King of <i>England</i> . |
| 1169 | 12 | <i>Richard</i> , King of <i>England</i> , the Son of <i>Henry</i> . |
| 1199 | 13 | <i>John</i> , King of <i>England</i> , the Brother of <i>Richard</i> , who forfeiting his Estates in <i>France</i> , on a judicial Sentence pronounced against him for the (supposed) murder of his Nephew <i>Arthur</i> Duke of <i>Bretagne</i> and the rest of the <i>English</i> Provinces were seized on by the <i>French</i> , Anno 1202. But notwithstanding this Arrest, the <i>English</i> still continued their Pretensions to it, till at last it was agreed betwixt King <i>Louis</i> the Ninth of <i>France</i> , and <i>Henry</i> the Third of <i>England</i> , An. 1259. that the <i>English</i> should rest satisfied with <i>Guienne</i> , the bounds whereof were to be the <i>Pyrenees</i> on the South, and the River of <i>Charente</i> on the North, comprehending therein also the Country of <i>Limosin</i> ; and that on his Investiture into this Estate, he should relinquish all his Rights in <i>Normandy</i> , <i>Anjou</i> , <i>Touren</i> , <i>Maine</i> , &c. In consideration whereof he should have 50000 Crowns in ready Money. On this accord, the Kings of <i>England</i> became Homagers to the Crown of <i>France</i> , which sometimes they omitted, sometimes did it by Proxy, but never in Person, till <i>Philip de Valois</i> required it of King <i>Edward</i> the Third and because such Duties are not often personally done by Sovereign Princes, <i>Du Serres</i> shall describe the formality of it. The place designed for this Exploit was the Church of <i>Amiens</i> , "to which <i>Edward</i> came (saith he) with such a Train, as was intended rather to the Honour of himself than the French King. Royally attired he was, with a long Robe of Crimson Velvet, powdered with Leopards of Gold, his Crown upon his Head, his Sword by his side, and golden Spurs upon his Heels. <i>Philip</i> attended by the chief Officers of the Realm, sat upon his Throne, apparelled in a long Robe of Purple Velvet, powdered with <i>Flower de Lucis</i> of Gold; his Crown upon his Head, and the Scepter in his Hand. Viscount <i>Melum</i> , the great Chamberlain of <i>France</i> , commanded <i>Edward</i> to take off his Crown, Sword, and Spurs, and to kneel down; which he did accordingly. Then taking both his Hands, and joining them together, he said unto him; <i>You become a Liege-man to the King my Master, who is here present, as Duke of Guienne, and Peer of France, and promise to be faithful and loyal to him; say Yea</i> : and <i>Edward</i> said <i>Yea</i> , and rose. But the Historian notes withal, that <i>Philip</i> paid yearly for this Pageant, the young King never forgetting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made <i>France</i> a field of Blood. And here it is to be observed, that though the Kings of <i>England</i> by this new Investiture, were entituled Dukes of <i>Guienne</i> only, yet they had all the Power and Privileges of Dukes of <i>Aquitain</i> , excepting the Homage of the great Lords and Earls of <i>Gascoigne</i> , which formerly belonged unto them. Infomuch as <i>Richard</i> the Second, though |

though Duke of *Guienne* only in Style and Title, invested his Uncle *John of Gaunt* in that brave Estate, under the Style and Title of Duke of *Aquitain*; summoned to Parliament by that Name by the said King *Richard*. From this Accord betwixt the Kings, the *English* had possession of the Dukedom of *Guienne*, according to the order of their Succession, from the fortieth of King *Henry* the Third, Anno 1259. to the Twenty Ninth of King *Henry* the Sixth, An. 1452. (the intercalation of *John of Gaunt* excepted only:) when outed of all their old Rights in *France*, rather by the good Fortune, than by the Valour of *Charles* the Seventh; the *English* then, divided in Domestick Factions, and not at leisure to look after the Affairs of *France*. Nor do I find, that *Guienne* being thus recovered, was ever dismembred from that Crown, but when King *Lewis* the Eleventh assigned it over to his Brother the Duke of *Berry*, to take him off from joining with the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Burgundy* in a new Confederacy; who held it but two Years, and died the last Duke of *Guienne*, An. 1427.

The Arms of this Dukedom were *Gules*, a Leopard or *Lyon Or*, which joined to the two *Lyons* of *Normandy*, make the Arms of *England*.

16. LANGUEDOC.

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the *Pyrenean Hills*, the Land of *Roussillon*, and the *Mediterranean* on the South; and on the North, with *Forest*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*; on the East, with *Provence* and *Daulphine*; on the West, with *Gascoigne*. Whereas the other *Frenchmen* in an affirmation say *Ouy*, these of this Country say *Oc*; and therefore *Oraclius* conjectures it was call'd *Langue d'oc*. But others think that it took denomination from the *Goths*, who reigning long in this Country, left behind them a smack of their Language; and therefore it was called *Languegotia*, and now *Euphonia gratia*, termed *Langedotia* or *Langedoc*, that is to say, the Country which retaineth the *Gothick* Language. In reference to one or both of which Etymologies this Province is by *Paulus Emilius*, promiscuously called *Gothicana* and *Otilana*; and in relation to the rest, the People hereof in one of *Calvin's* Epistles, are given unto us by the Name of *Populus Linguae Otilanae*.

The Country on those parts which lie next to *Auvergne*, is like the higher parts thereof, mountainous and not very fruitful, in all the rest as rich and pleasant as the best Provinces in *France*; and having the advantages of *Olives*, *Raisons*, *Figs*, *Oranges*, and other Fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neighbouring Province; in that participating the Commodities both of *France* and *Spain*. The People have somewhat in them of the ancient *Goths*, and draw nearer to the Temper of the *Spaniards*, than any other of the *French*; as being accounted very Devout, great vaunters of themselves, affecting Bravery above their Condition and Estates; not caring how they pinch it on the working Days, or at home in private, so they may flaunt it in the Street, and be fine on Holy-Days; The humour also of the Women, and in them more pardonable.

Principal Rivers of this Province, are 1. *Aurance*, 2. *Lieran*, and 3. *Orbe*, emptying themselves into the *Rhofne*; and *Alby*, which disburdeneth it self into the Ocean. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Nismes* (in *Latin*, *Nemausum*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*, now a Bishop's See; where there remain some marks of the *Roman* Greatness, especially the ruins of a spacious Palace built by the Emperor *Adrian*. 2. *Mont-pelier* (in *Latin*, *Mons Pessulanus*) situate on a high Mountain, as the Name imports, some twelve Miles distant from the Sea, an University for the Study of *Physick*, and for that very happily seated, the

Country round about affording great variety of medicinal Herbs. An Earldom of it self in the former times, conveyed by *Mary*, Daughter of *William* the last Lord hereof, to King *Peter* of *Aragon* her Husband; next, made a Member of the Kingdom of *Majorca*; and finally by *James*, the last King of *Majorca*, sold to King *Philip* of *Valois*. Of late one of the strongest Holds which those of the *Reformed Religion* had in this Country; and memorable for the notable resistance which it made against the whole Forces of *Lewis XIII.* in the last Civil Wars about Religion. 3. *Alenb*, and 4. *Carcaffonne*, both Bishops Sees, both seated on the River *Aude*; the People of both speaking a corrupt *French*, with an intermixture of some *Spanish*: Which intermixture of *Spanish*, with that broken *French*, they either have originally from the *Goths* of *Spain*, of whose Kingdom this was once a part; or from their long subjection to the Earls of *Barcelone*, to whom they were conveyed, with other fair Estates in this part of *France*, by the Marriage of *Raymond Borenger* the seventh Earl thereof, with *Almodia* the Daughter of some of the great Lords who then ruled in *Languedoc*, about the Year 1040. And to these Towns, as also unto those of *Nismes* and *Alby*, the Earls of *Barcelone*, and the Kings of *Aragon* (in their right) did pretend a Sovereignty (though they had lost the possession of them) as those of *France* did to the Earldom of *Barcelone*: till mutual Releases made on both sides of each others Claims, by *James* the First of *Aragon*, and the King *S. Lewis*, An. 1260. or thereabouts. 5. *Alby*, commodiously seated on the River so called, the *Civitas Albigensium* of *Antonius*, the chief of this part of *Languedoc*, called from hence, *La Paix Albigeois*; remarkable in Church-History for those great Oppositions to the Corruptions and Errors of the Church of *Rome*, called the *Albigenses*. 6. *Beziers*, upon the River *Orbe*, the *Betiræ* of *Ptolomy*, and *Civitas Beterrasi* of *Antoninus*; a *Roman* Colony of old, now a Bishop's See. 7. *Agde*, called *Agatha* by ancient Writers, remarkable for a Council held there in the Year 450. and for a well frequented Port at the mouth of the River *Egbaud*. 8. *Narbon*, seated on the mouth of the River *Aude*, the Seat of the *Phocenses*, and the first *Roman* Colony (next after *Carthage*) out of *Italy*. In *Italy* it self (to observe so much by the way) were no less than 150 Colonies, 57 in *Africk*, 29 in *Spain*, 26 in *France*, 4 in *England* only, in *Syria* 20, and in other Countries some, but very few in respect of the largeness of the Territories. These Colonies were instituted partly to repress Rebellions in the Conquered Countries; partly to resist a Foreign Enemy, partly to reward the ancient Soldiers, partly to relieve the poorer sort, and partly to purge and empty the City of the superfluity and redundancy of her People. Now if the Question be ask'd, whether a Colony or Fortress be more behoveful, I answered (with *Boterus*, in his *Raggio de stato*, that a Fortress is more fit for sudden use, and a Colony for continuance; the former are quickly erected, and perhaps as soon lost; the other require some time of settling, and are after of a good sufficiency to defend themselves. As we see in our times, the *Spanish* Colonies of *Ceuta* and *Tangier* in *Africk*; and our own of *Calais*, which was the last Town we lost on the firm Land. This *Narbon* was in the Infancy of the *Roman* Empire, the most populous and greatest Town of all *France*; insomuch, as from it all this part of *France* was called *Gallia Narbonensis*. A Province of which *Pliny* delivered us this censure; *Narbonensis Gallia agrorum cultu, morum virorumque dignatione, opum amplitudine, nulli Provinciarum postponenda; diciturque Italia potius quam Provincia*; that is to say, that for fruitfulness of the Soil, and the civility of the People, it was inferior to no Province in the *Roman* Empire. But to return unto the Town, being anciently the *Metropolis* of this Province, it had withal the honour of being an Archbishop's See, which it still continueth; well fortified at the present as a Town of War, fronting *Catalonia* and the Land of *Roussillon*. 9. *La Puy*, the See of a Bishop, who in *Latin* is

is called *Podiensis*; the chief of that part of *Languedoc*, which is named *Velay*, the ancient Seat of the *Vellains*. 10. *Viviers*, on the River *Rhofne*, (by *Pliny* named *Alba Helviorum*) from whence the Country adjoining hath the Name of *Vivarets*. 11. *Rhodes*, or *Rutena*, the principal City of the *Ruteni*, now a Bishop's See; from whence the Country round about hath the Name of *Rouvergn*; though some account this *Rouvergn*, a distinct Province, and no part of *Languedoc*. 12. *Tholouſe*, ſeated on the *Garonne*, anciently the principal City of the *Tectosages* and the *Tolosates*, placed by old Writers in this Tract; now the chief of *Languedoc*, and one of the greatest in all *France*. The Seat of an Archbishop, and an University; ſo ancient, that ſome report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Iſrael*. Here was a Parliamentary Court erected for the adminiſtration of Juſtice in theſe Parts, 1302. As for the Story of *Tholouſe*, it was obſerved, that certain Soldiers having ſtole Sacrilegiouſly ſome Gold out of the Temples of *Tholouſe*, (when it was ſackt by *Cepio* a Roman Conſul) came all to miſerable and unfortunate ends. Hence grew that *Adage*, *Aurum habet Tholoſanum*, applied unto unhappy Men.

But that which deſerves moſt note in the Hiſtory of it, are large and ſpacious Fields about it, called by the Writers of theſe times by the Name of *Campi Catalaunici*, extending in length 100, in breadth 70 French Leagues. In which Fields, Anno 435. was fought that terrible Battle between *Attila*, King of the *Hunnes*, and *Aetius* the Roman Lieutenant in *France*; *Aetius* was ſtrengthened by the *Goths*, *Franks*, *Burgundians*, and *Germans*. *Attila's* Army conſiſted of *Hunnes*, *Eruli*, *Scythes*, *Sarmatians*, *Suevians*, to the number of 500000, of which 180000 that Day loſt their Lives; *Attila* himſelf being driven to that deſperate plunge, that making a Funeral Pile of Horſe Saddles, he would have burned himſelf. But his Enemies weary of well-doing, or *Aetius* politickly fearing, that if *Attila* were quite deſtroyed, the *Goths*, *Franks*, and others of the *Barbarians* then confederate with him, would become too inſolent, gave him leave to retire home through *Italy*; which he haraſſed with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, ſo that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei*. *Aetius*, notwithstanding this good ſervice, was by *Valentinian*, the Emperor of the Weſt, rewarded with the loſs of his Head: By which act, the Emperor (as one truly told him) had cut off his right Hand with his left. And indeed ſo it happen'd: For not long after he himſelf was by *Maximus* murdered, and the Empire of *Rome* irrecoverably deſtroyed. Now that theſe Fields lay hereabouts, and not about *Chalons* in the Province of *Champagne* (as ſome learned and induſtrious Men have been of opinion) I am aſſured by theſe three Reaſons. Firſt, The improbability that *Aetius* having got the Victory, ſhould ſuffer ſuch a vaſt and numerous Army to paſs through the whole length of *France*, from one end to the other, and having waſted all the Country, to break into *Italy*. And ſecondly, the teſtimony of *Jornandes* an ancient Writer, who telleth us, firſt, that before this Fight, *Attila* had beſieged and diſtreſſed the City of *Orleans*; and therefore was not vanquiſhed in the Fields of *Chalons*: and then, that immediately upon the Victory, *Torſimund* the King of the *Goths*, (his Father *Theodorick* being ſlain) in *Campis Catalaunicis*, ubi & pugnaverat, Regia Majeſtate ſubvecltus *Tholoſam* ingreditur; being proclaimed King in thoſe very Fields, entred with great ſtate and triumph into *Tholouſe*, the regal City at that time of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Which plainly proves the places of Battle to be near this City; though poſſibly by the Name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and breadth thereof conſidered) we are to underſtand the whole Country of *Languedoc*.

The old Inhabitants of this Country beſides the *Helvii*, the *Vellains*, the *Tectosages*, and *Albigenſes*, formerly remembered, were the *Agatenſes*, *Betarenſes*, *Gabales*, *Volcae*,

and the *Arverni*; all which, together with ſome others of leſſer note, made the Province of *Narbonenſis prima*, whereof the Metropolis was *Narbon*. In the falling of the Roman Empire aſſigned with the reſt of *Narbonenſis*, and ſome part of *Spain*, to *Attholphus* King of the *Goths*, whom *Honorius* by this Gift, and by beſtowing on him his Siſter *Placida*, bought out of *Italy*. The *Goths* having got ſo good footing in *Gaul*, enlarged their Bounds by taking in the moſt part of *Aquitain*, *Quercy*, and *Lauregne*, but forced to quit them to the *French*, who conquered that from them which they got from the *Romans*; and ſhut them up within the limits of their ſaſt Donation. After this they declined as faſt in *France*, as they thrived in *Spain*; loſing *Provence* to *Theodorick*, King of the *Oſtro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; whoſe Succeſſor *Amalaſunta*, fearing a War from *Greece*, reſigned her Intereſt in *Provence* to *Theodebert* the *French* King of *Aleſs*. Nothing now left unto the *Goths* of their *Gallick* Purchaſes, but this *Languedoc* only; and this they held as long as they had any thing to do in *Europe*, but loſt it finally to the *Moors*, with all *Spain* it ſelf. Recovered from the *Moors* by *Charles Martel*, and added to the reſt of the *French* Empire; it was by *Charles* the Great given to one *Thurſin*, of the Race of the ancient Kings, with the Title of the Earl of *Tholouſe*, on condition that he would be Chriſtened. But long it continued not in his Race, nor in any other; not being ſetled in a way of Lineal Deſcent, till the time of *Raymond* the eighth Earl, Brother to another *Raymond* Earl of *St. Giles* (a Town of *Guienne*) whoſe Grandchild *Hugh*, being an Adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and wanting Money to provide himſelf for that Expedition, ſold his Eſtate herein to his Uncle *Raymond*, the Earl of *St. Giles* before-mentioned. From this time forward we find theſe Earls to be as often called the Earls of *St. Giles*, as the Earls of *Tholouſe*; and by that Name frequently remembered in the *Eastern Stories*; as for his great Valour in the courſe of the *Holy Wars*, eſpecially at the taking of the City of *Tripoli*, given to him (after it became Chriſtian) with the Title of Earl. This *Raymond*, worthily named the Great, Earl of *Tholouſe*, *St. Giles*, and *Tripoli*, had three Sons, all of them ſucceeding; of which the eldeſt was *Bertranſ*, had a baſe Son called *Ponce*, who ſucceeded him in the Earldom of *Tripoli*, the Father of *Raymond*, and Grandfather of another *Raymond*, both Earls of *Tripoli*, and both ſuſpected to be falſe to the Chriſtian Princes in the continuance of thoſe Wars. *Alphonſo* the third Son was alſo the Father of a *Raymond*, the Father of another *Raymond*, who proved a great Maintainer of the *Albigenſes*; and in purſuance of that Cauſe murdered a Legate of the Pope, ſent to Excommunicate him, and ſtrangled his own Brother *Bahbwin*, becauſe he found him not inclinable to his Opinions. For this cauſe warred upon, and vanquiſhed by *Simon de Montfort*, Father of *Simon de Montfort*, the great Earl of *Leiceſter*; and after many Troubles and continual Wars, left his Eſtate and Quarrel to his Son, named alſo *Raymond*, the laſt Earl of this Houſe; who proving alſo a ſtrong Patron of theſe *Albigenſes*, was condemned for a Heretick, curſed by the Pope, and perſecuted by the *French* Kings, *Philip* the Second, *Lewis* the Eighth, and *St. Lewis*. This laſt willing to make a peaceable Compolition, married his Brother *Alphonſo's* ſiſter, Daughter and Heir to Count *Raymond*, with this Condition, That if it ſhould happen theſe two to die without Iſſue, then *Languedoc* ſhould be incorporated to the Crown. *Raymond* agreed, the Marriage was ſolemnized, An. 1249. They both died without Iſſue, 1270. and *Languedoc* returned to the Crown in the Days of *Philip* the Third.

The Names and Succeſſion of theſe Earls, in regard they were Peers of *France*, great Princes, and for the moſt part Men of Action, take in order thus.

The Earls of Tholouse.

An. Chr.

- 779 1 *Thursin* the first Earl of *Tholouse*.
 803 2 *William* made Earl by *Charlemagne*, Peer of
France at the first foundation of that Order.
 828 3 *Isauret Thursin*, Son of *Thursin* the first Earl.
 841 4 *Bertrand*, Son of *Isauret Thursin*.
 894 5 *William II.* of some other House.
 919 6 *Ponce*, a great *Justiciar*, but of unknown Race.
 963 7 *Almaric*, of as obscure Parentage as *Ponce*.
 1003 8 *Raymond*, the Brother of *Raymond* Earl of
St. Giles, advanced by *Robert* King of *France*.
 1052 9 *William III.* Duke of *Aquitain*, succeeded in
right of his Wife, the Daughter of *Raymond*.
 1086 10 *Hugh Aymon*, Son of *William* the Third, sold
his Estate and Earldom to his Uncle *Raymond*.
 1096 11 *Raymond II.* Earl of *St. Giles*, *Tholouse*, and
Tripoli; of great note in the War of the Holy
Land.
 12 *Bertrand*, Son of *Raymond* the Great.
 13 *William IV.* Brother of *Bertrand*.
 1101 14 *Alfonso*, Brother of *William* the Fourth.
 1146 15 *Raymond III.* Son of *Alfonso*.
 1185 16 *Raymond IV.* Son of *Raymond* the Third, the
great Patron of the *Albigenses*.
 1222 17 *Raymond V.* Son of *Raymond* the Fourth, van-
quished and compounded with, by King
Lewis the Saint.
 1249 18 *Alfonso II.* Brother of *St. Lewis*, and Hus-
band of *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of the last
Raymond: after whose Death, and the decease
of *Joan* the Countess, An. 1270. this Earl-
dom was united to the Crown of *France*;
according to the Capitulations before-men-
tioned.

The Arms of this Earldom were *Gules*, a Cross Pom-
melé, of 12 Points, Or.

17. PROVENCE.

PROVENCE is environed with *Languedoc* on the
West; *Daulphine* on the North; the *Mediterranean*
on the South; and on the East with the *Alps*, and the
River *Varus*, which divide it from *Piedmont*, the nearest
of the *Alpine* Provinces. It is in length from East to
West, 44 *French* Leagues from North to South 32 in
Circuit, 158. as *Honorate de Bouche* has shewn in a very
exact description of it lately published.

It took this Name from the *Romans*, who being called
in by the *Maffilians*, to revenge a private Wrong done
them by the *Salii*, the next neighbouring People, whol-
ly possessed themselves of this Country, calling it,
κατ' ἐξοχὴν, *The Provence*. The Country being now di-
vided between several Princes, we must necessarily pre-
mise so much of the Story of it as serves to shew the
time and grounds of that division. In order whereunto
we are first to know, that it long continued part of the
Roman Empire, making up the whole Province of *Nar-*
bonensis Secunda, and part of *Alpes Maritimæ*. How it was
given unto the *Visigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and from them
taken by the *Ostrogoths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*, hath been shewn
in *Languedoc*. Being resigned unto the *French*, it became
a part of the new Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. Made
a distinct Estate in the Person of *Hugh de Arles*, (who
afterwards succeeded in the Kingdom also) by *Roson*
the First, elected Octob. 15. 879. And by this *Hugh de*
Arles, upon his resignation of that Kingdom to *Rodolph*
Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, given unto *William*

his Son, with the Stile and Title of Earl of *Provence*;
confirmed therein by the Emperor *Conrade* the Second,
on whom the Rights of that Kingdom had been trans-
ferred; to be held of him and his Successors in the Em-
pire. In his Posterity it continued, till conveyed to the
Earls of *Barcelone*, by the Marriage of the Lady *Doulce*
with Earl *Raymond Arnold*, Anno 1032. carried, together
with that Earldom, to the Crown of *Aragon*; and finally
by *Beatrix* one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the Third,
the last Earl of this Family, conveyed in Marriage to
Charles Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Lewis* the Ninth of
France, An. 1262. whom *Urban* the Fourth, not long
after, Crowned King of *Naples*. By *Joan* the First, the
fourth from *Charles*, driven out of *Naples* by *Lewis* of
Hungaria, and restored again by the Power of Pope *Cle-*
ment the Fifth; the City and Territory of *Avignon*
(where the Pope resided at that time) is dismembred
from the Earldom of *Provence*, and given in Fee for ever
to the Church of *Rome*: partly to recompence that fa-
vour, and partly for discharge of some old Arrears of
Rent or Tribute, pretended to be due to the See of *Rome*,
for the Realm of *Naples*. A City which had formerly
been under the Protection, and by that Title in the
actual Possession of many of the Popes of *Rome*, ever
since the conviction of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouse*, to whom
it formerly belonged, but held by them in Fee of the
Earls of *Provence*. Not long after this Donation, the
said *Joan* adopted for her Heir and Successor, *Lewis*,
Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles* the Fifth of *France*,
descended lineally from *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, and King
of *Naples*: possessed by this Adoption of the Earldom of
Provence, and a Title to the Realm of *Naples*. *Rene*, the
Grandchild of this *Lewis*, having no Issue-Male survi-
ving, made *Lewis* of *Chalons*, the Prince of *Orange* (ano-
ther Signeury in this Country:) and gave him there-
withal full Power to make Laws, coin Money, and
pardon all Crimes; to write himself *Prince of Orange*, by
the Grace of God, with all the other Prerogatives of an
absolute Prince. This was in the Year 1415. So that
now the Country stands divided betwixt the *French* King,
the Pope, and the Prince of *Orange*; each of them abso-
lute and independent in his own Estate: as long at least
as the *French* King is pleased to give way unto it.

The whole is much of the same nature with *Languedoc*,
before described, but in one part thereof, that namely
between *Marseilles* and *Arles*, different from all the rest
of *France*. By the *French* commonly called *La Croix*: by
the elder Writers, *Campi lapidei*, because all in a manner
overspread with scattered Stones; suppose by *Mela* to
be the place in which *Hercules* encountered *Albion* and
Bergeon the Sons of *Neptune*; whom when he could not
otherwise vanquish, he was by *Jupiter* his Father aided
with a shower of Stones; of which these were feigned
to be the Remainders. A Country which takes up a
good space of Ground, and hath a few poor Towns in it,
but not much inhabited.

In that part of it which belongs to the King, the
Towns of special note are, 1. *Aix*, seated on the *Rhone*,
the Metropolis of *Narbonensis secunda*, and at that time
called *Aquæ Sextiæ*, from *Sextius* the Founder of it (by
whom the *Salii* were subdued in the second Year of
that War) and the hot Baths here. Now, and of long
time, an Archbishop's See, and the chief City of this
Province: and for that reason made the Seat of a Court
of Parliament for this Country, Anno 1501. Most me-
morable in old Story for the great discomfiture of the
Cimbri by *C. Marius*, who not willing to venture on the
Enemy united (for they were no fewer than 300000
fighting Men) and lately fleshed in the Overthrow of
Manlius and *Sepio*, two *Roman* Consuls; permitted them
quietly to pass by his Camp: The *Barbarians* who imput-
ed it to fear or cowardise, scornfully asking his Soldiers,
What service they would command them to *Rome*. But
when, for their easier passage over the *Alps*, they had
divided themselves into three Companies; *Marius* severally

rally setting on them all, put them all to the Sword. *Ea victoria visus meruisse, ne ejus nati Rempub. pœniteret*, By this Victory, and this only, giving cause to the Romans (as *Velleius* hath it) not to be sorry for his Birth. 2. *Arles* in Latin, *Arelatum*, by *Ausonius* called the Rome of France, and in those times so highly prized, that *Constantinus Flavius* being chosen Emperor by the British Legions, in the declining times of the Western Empire, intended to have made it the Imperial Seat. And not less memorable in Church Story for a Council here held in the time of *Constantine the Great*, Anno 313. in which was present *Restitutus* the Bishop of London, and certain other Bishops of the British Church. It was anciently a Roman Colony, and now the See of an Archbishop; situate on the River *Rhofne*, in a low and marshy situation; which natural Strength, seconded by the new Works of King *Henry the Fourth*, have made it one of the best Bulwarks of France, on that side of the Kingdom. Selected for the Seat-Royal of the French Kings of Burgundy, who from thence were called Kings of *Arles*; as the Kings of *Austrasia* or (*East-France*) were called Kings of *Mets*, because they had made choice of that City for the Regal Seat. Between this City and the Sea, but on the other side of the River, runneth a deep Channel, cut with infinite Charge and Industry, by *C. Marius*, for conveyance of Victuals into his Camp, in his War against the *Cimbri* before-named; by *Ptolomy* called *Fossæ Marianæ*, by the French, *Camargue*, a corrupt word made of *Caius Marius*: the Country about which called also by the same Name for the space of 24 Miles, is of excellent Pasturage, and breedeth great abundance of Horses; the chief Town of which is called, 3. *St. Gillis*, 4. *Marseilles*, a known Port on the *Mediterranean*, first built by the *Phœnices*, a Greek Nation of *Asia Minor*, who being banished their Country, came and planted here, about the Reign of *Tarquinius Superbus*, the last King of Rome. It was first only a Confederate City of the Romans, for whose sake, being molested by the *Salii*, and others of the neighbouring Nations, the Roman Legions first entred *Gaul*; afterwards, siding with *Pompey* in the Civil Wars, or at least desirous to stand neutral, it was forced by *Cæsar*, and made a Colony. In the prosperity hereof it drove a great Trade on the *Mediterranean*, and was the Mother of many fair and flourishing Colonies, *Emporia*, *Forum Julium*, *Nicaea*, *Olbia*, dispersed in the adjoining Shores of France, Spain, and Italy. 5. *Glandèves*, anciently called *Glanum*, a Bishop's See, seated upon the *Maritime Alpes*. 6. *Taulon*, by *Ptolomy* called *Tauromentium*, and by some *Tholone*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, well stored with Oil, great quantity of Salt brought hither from the Isle of *Eres*, about three Leagues off; and a kind of Almonds called *Province Almonds*; made by this means one of the most frequented Ports of the *Mediterranean*. 7. *Antibi*, (in Latin, *Antipolis*) a Sea-coast Town near the River *Varo*, one of the farthest of this Country towards Italy. 8. *Feriolis* (the *Forum Julium* of the Ancients) on the *Mediterranean*, founded by the *Massilians*, as before was said, after a Colony of the Romans. 9. *La Grace*, a Bishop's See, more within the Continent. 10. *Cisteron*, on the Borders of *Dauphine*. 11. *Brignols*. 12. *Merindol*, and *Chabriers*, two little Towns amongst the Mountains, towards *Dauphine*; not otherwise of note, but for the horrid Massacre of the Protestants, before described.

II. The Principality of Orange lieth on the North-West of this Province, watered with the Rivers of 1. *Durance*, 2. *Selle*, 3. *Meine*, and 4. *Ecque*; all helping to augment the *Rhofne*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Orange*, seated on the *Meine*, an Episcopal See; famous for many rare and wonderful Antiquities, demonstrating the Roman Greatness, of whom once a Colony; but of most note in the Church-History for a Council held there against the *Semi-Pelagians*, in the Year 444. called *Arauscanum*; the Latin Name of this City became anciently *Arausia*,

in some Writers *Auriacus*, and of late *Aurangis*. This City is a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Arles*, and had anciently a very strong Castle, which in the Year 1660. was destroyed by *Louis XIV.* now King of France. 2. *Epfrang*. 3. *Bois de St. Pol*, more properly, *St. Paul de Vences*, being the *Civitas Vensensium* of *Antoninus*, but not otherwise memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were anciently of the Noble Family of the *Baiffii*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold*, the last of this Family, it was conveyed in marriage to *John de Chalons*, one of the most Noble Houses of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Louis* the Son of this *John*, obtained of *Rene*, Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, the Sovereignty hereof, as before was said. By *Claude* the Heir-general of this House, bestowed in Marriage by King *Francis I.* on Count *Henry of Nassaw*, Ambassador from *Maximilian* the Emperor of Germany, Anno 1514. It was translated to that Family, where it still remaineth.

The Princes of Orange.

- 1475 1 *Louis* of Chalons, first absolute Prince of Orange.
- 2 *William de Chalons*, who submitted his Estate to the Parliament of *Dauphine*, to satisfy King *Louis XI.* by whom restored again to his former Sovereignty.
- 3 *John de Chalons*, a bitter Enemy to King *Louis*, in defence of the Rights of *Mary* Dutcheß of *Burgundy*.
- 1500 4 *Philibert de Chalons*, slain at the Siege of *Florence*, where he commanded the Forces of *Charles* the Fifth, *Claude* his only Sister, and next Heir of that House, being married to *Henry* Earl of *Nassaw*, Anno 1515.
- 1536 5 *Rene* of *Nassaw*, Son of *Henry* and *Claude*, adopted by *Philibert* his Uncle, whom he succeeded in this Estate; slain at the Siege of *Landrecie* in the Netherlands.
- 1544 6 *William* of *Nassaw*, Cousin-german of *Rene*, by whose last Testament left Heir unto his Estates; the great Patron and Assertor of the Belgick Liberties, against the Spaniard; slain by a Partisan of Spain, called *Belthazar*, at *Delfe* in Holland, Anno 1584.
- 1584 7 *Philip* of *Nassaw*, kept as an Hostage all his Life by the King of Spain.
- 8 *Maurice* of *Nassaw*, Brother of *Philip*, Commander of the Forces of the United Provinces.
- 1625 9 *Henry* of *Nassaw* II. Successor to his Brother *Maurice*, in his Offices, Estates, and Honours.
- 1648 10 *William* of *Nassaw* II. the Son and Successor of *Henry*, married to Princess *Mary*, eldest Daughter of *Charles* King of Great Britain, &c. on May-Day, 1641.
- 1650 11 *William* of *Nassaw* III. was born the 14th of November, 1650. nine Days after the Death of his Father. And the first of November, 1677. married the Lady *Mary*, eldest Daughter of *James II.* King of England.

The Revenues of this Principality are about 30000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend Or, 2. Or, a Hunters Horn Azure, stringed *Gules*; the third as, &c. Over all, an Escutcheon of Pretence Chequie, Or and Azure. More briefly thus; Quarterly *Chalons*, and *Aurange*, under an Escutcheon of *Geneva*.

Southward of *Aurange* lieth the Country of *VENASCINE*, as the French call it; *Comitatns Venessinus*, in the Latin; so called from *Avento* (now *Avignon*) the chief City of it. Anciently it had Lords of its own, called Earls of *Venice*, (*Venissa Comites* in the Latin) united to the House of *Savoy*, by the marriage of *Laurentia*; a

Daughter hereof, with Earl *Humbert* the Second, *Anno* 1080, or thereabouts. But this Family of the first Lords coming to an end, it fell (but by what Right, I find not) to the Earls of *Tholouse*, but held by them as *Homagers* (for this Estate) for the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Heresie, brought under the Protection and Patronage of the Popes of *Rome*; the more absolute Sovereignty hereof, and of the City *Aignon*, being setled on them by Queen *Joan*, as before is said. The principal Cities of this Tract, are, 1. *Aignon*, the *Arveno* of *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Mela*; a very fair and flourishing City, pleasantly seated on both sides of the River of *Rhone*; famous for being the Residence of the Popes for Seventy Years; which times the *Romans* remember till this Day, by the Name of the *Babylon in Captivity*; administering, ever since, an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Aignon*. The first Pope that removed hither, was *Clement V.* *An.* 1305. when as yet the Popes had no more right in it, than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome* by *Gregory XI.* *An.* 1377. In this City are said to be seven Palaces, seven Parish-Churches, seven Monasteries, seven Nunneries, seven Inns, and seven Gates. So that if there be any Mystery in the Number of Seven, or any credit to be given to such *Pythagorean* Divinity, the Archbishop of this City may as well be entituled Antichrist as the Pope of *Rome*, if there be nothing but the mystery of this Number to affix it to him. It was made an University at the time of the Popes first settling here; and so still continueth: *Aleiac* the great Emblematist, being here Professor. 2. *Carpentras*, by *Ptolmy* called *Carpentoracte*, a Bishop's See: as is also, 3. *Cavillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a Roman Colony on the River *Durance*: and 4. *Tarascon*, on the *Rhone*, opposite to *Beaucaire* in *Languedoc*; for the Popes dwelling here so long, could not be otherwise attended than by Mitred Prelates. 5. *Vaison*, *Civitas Vasionensium*, of *Antoninus*.

The Revenues of the Popes here are not very great, and those expended all in keeping of Ports and Garrisons, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the Protestants of *Orange*: So that it is supposed, that it is rather a Charge, than a Profit to him; which maketh the People like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more Money to them, than he gathereth from them.

The Arms hereof, when under the old Earls of *Venice*, were *Gules*, two Keys in Saltire Or, stringed Azure. Which seems to have in it some presage, (the Popes pretending to the Keys, as we know they do) that it should one Day become subject to the See of *Rome*.

The old Inhabitants of the whole Country were, as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Massilienses*, *Vasionenses*, and *Vensences*, before mentioned; besides the *Deceates* about *Antibe*, the *Senitii*, and *Sigeflorii*, about *Cisteron*; all conquered by the *Romans* in their first War in *Gaul*, called in to aid those of *Marseilles* against the *Salii*. The Fortune of it since hath been shewn before. Nothing remains now but the Catalogue of

The Earls of Provence.

- 1 *Hugh de Arles*, supposed to be the Son of *Lotharius*, King of *Austrasia*, and *Waldrada* his Concubine; made the first Earl of *Provence*, by *Bolon* the First, King of *Burgundy*. He was after King of *Burgundy* and *Italy* also.
2. *William de Arles*, the Son of *Hugh*.
3. *William II.* surnamed the Younger, Son of *William*.
4. *Gilbert* Earl of *Provence*, the Father of the Lady *Doulce*.
- 1082 5. *Raymond Arnold*, Earl of *Barcelone*, the Husband of the Lady *Doulce* of *Provence*.
- 1173 6 *Berengar Raymond* the second Son of *Raymond*

Arnold, and the Lady *Doulce*; his eldest Brother *Raymond* succeeding in *Barcelone*.

- 7 *Raymond II.* Son of *Berengar Raymond*.
 - 1173 8 *Alfonso*, King of *Aragon*, and Earl of *Barcelone*; the Son and Heir of *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, eldest Son unto *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*.
 - 1196 9 *Alfonso II.* second Son of *Alfonso* the First, succeeded in the Earldom of *Provence*, his eldest Brother *Pedro* inheriting the Realm of *Aragon* and the Earldom of *Barcelone*.
 - 10 *Raymond III.* Son of *Alfonso*, the last Earl of *Provence* of this Line.
 - 1261 11 *Charles of Valois*, Earl of *Anjou*, and in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the Third, Earl of *Provence*. He was also King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, &c.
 - 1282 12 *Charles II.* King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.
 - 1310 13 *Robert* King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.
 - 1342 14 *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*, and Countess of *Provence*.
 - 1371 15 *Lewis*, Duke of *Anjou*, the adopted Son of Queen *Joan*. Earl of *Provence*, and titular King of *Naples*, &c. (of whose descent from *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, we have spoken elsewhere.)
 - 1485 16 *Lewis II.* Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.
 - 1416 17 *Lewis III.* Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.
 - 1430 18 *Renè*, Brother of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, &c.
 - 1480 19 *Charles* Earl of *Main*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Main*, the Brother of *Renè*, succeeded in all the Estates and Titles of his Uncle; and at his Death gave *Provence* to King *Lewis XI.* his Cousin-German, as being the Son of *Charles VII.* and *Mary* Daughter of *Lewis II.* Duke of *Anjou*, Sister of *Lewis III.* and *Renè*, the preceding Dukes, and of *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the last Earl of *Provence*. Immediately on whose Death, Decemb. 19. *An.* 1481. the King sent a Commission to *Palamede de Forban*, Lord of *Sollier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take Possession of the Country in his Name, and Command therein as Lieutenant-General. Since which time, *Provence* never was dismembered from the Crown of *France*, so much as in the way of *Apennage*, or any Honorary Title amongst the King's Children.
- What the Revenues of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to say, having no good Authority to proceed upon. Only I find, that besides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other customary and casual Taxes, there was a Tax called, *The Royal Impost*, being fifteen *Florens* levied upon every Fire; which reckoning 3500 Fires (for such the estimate of them was) amounted yearly unto 56000 *Florens*. Now it is subject to the rigour and uncertainty of the King's Taxations, as well as all the rest of *France*. And so much of those Provinces which properly made up the Kingdoms of the *French* and *Goths*, let us next look on those which at the same time were subdued by the *Burgundians*; whose History, Kingdom, and Estate are to be considered, before we come to the description of their several Provinces.

The Kingdom of BURGUNDY.

THE Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS*, at their first settlement in *Gaul*, contained all those Provinces of the *Roman Empire*, then called the *Alpes Graie*, and *Pennine*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Lugdunensis Prima*, and *Viennensis*; now passing under the Names of the Dukedom and County of *Burgundy*, *Switzerland*, the *Grisons*, *Wallisland*, *Savoy*, *La Bresse*, *Dauphine*, *Lionnois*, *Nivernois*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of Ground, able at once to tempt and satisfy an

ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaul* of their own accord, though of their own accord they drew somewhat near it. In their Original, they were a People bordering near the *Vandals*, if not a Tribe or Sept of them; and dwelling in those parts in which are now the Dukedoms of *Muldenburg*, and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Drusus* and *Tiberius* warred in *Germany*, they were utterly barbarous, living in Tents only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own Language called *Burgs*, gave them the Name of *Burgundians*, amongst the *Romans*: in the same sense as the wild *Arabs* had the Name of *Scenitæ* amongst the *Greeks*, from the like kind of living. In the Year 418 at the instigation of the *Vandals*, they left their own Seats, and planted themselves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the Marquesses of *Baden*, and Electors of *Rhene*. About which time they received the Christian Faith, being then miserably oppressed by the *Hunnes*, breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themselves of that Enemy, they betook themselves to the God of the Christians, and were universally baptized. After which, falling on the *Hunnes*, they slew no less than 30000 of them in one Battle, from that time forwards, never troubled with that barbarous Nation. Christians then they were, and Orthodox in their Profession, before their coming into *Gaul*; and for that reason called in by *Stilico* to oppose the *French*, then threatening an Invasion of the *Roman* Provinces. Upon this Invitation they passed over the River with an Army of 80000 fighting Men, possessing themselves of all which lay from the farthest Shore of the *Leyre*, to the *Alps* of *Italy*; and from the Mountain *Vauge* to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* only excepted, about that same time planted by the *Goths*. Their Government was under Kings: Many according to their Tribes, when they lived in *Germany*: *Monarchical*, when settled in the Realm of *France*, where they had these five.

Kings of the Burgundians.

A. Chr.

- 408 1 *Tabica*, who first brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaul*.
- 2 *Gundioch*.
- 3 *Gundebault*, who harassed *Italy*, then in the possession of the *Goths*, with Fire and Sword; the Uncle of *Clotilda*, Wife to *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*, by her perswasion made inclinable to the Christian Faith.
- 4 *Sigismund*.
- 5 *Gundomar*, the Son of *Sigismund*, first set upon by *Clodomire*, the Son of *Clouis* King of *Orleans*, whom he slew in Battel near *Austun*; but afterward outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Clotair* Kings of *Paris* and *Soissons*, in revenge of the death of their Brother *Clodomire*, and so the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 Years: *Guntram* the Son of *Clotaire*, and *Clouis*, one of the Sons of *Dagobert* the First; being in their Times honoured with the Title of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the first time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* settled amongst the *French*, in the way of Succession, was in the partage of that vast Empire of *Charlemagne*, amongst the Children and Posterity of *Ludovicus Pius*; in constituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckoning, to make this answerable to the other parts of that broken Monarchy. The first of these *French* Kings, was *Charles*, the youngest Son of *Lotharius* Emperor, and King of *Italy*, eldest Son of the said *Lewis the Godly*. The Succession in this order following.

The French Kings of Burgundy.

A. Chr.

- 855 1 *Charles*, youngest Son of the Emperor *Lotharius*, died without Issue.
- 858 2 *Lotharius*, the second King of *Mets*, and *Lewis*

the second Emperor, *Friedrich*, who succeeded in *Burgundy*; the Mountain *Alps* dividing and bounding their Estates.

- 876 3 *Charles the Bald*, King of *France*, and his Brother *Louis*, the first, who was his Uncle to the third Son of *Lotharius*, without Issue, succeeded in the said Estates; which he again divided into three Governments or Members; that is to say, *Burgundy* on this side of the *Loire*, containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Dukedoms of *Alsace* and *Mulden*. 2. *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoie*, *Suzerland*, *Wallisland*, and the Limits of the *Grison*; and 3dly, *Burgundy* on the other side of the *Saone*, lying betwixt the other two, containing the now Counties of *Franche-Comte*, *La Breche*, and *Dauphine*. This last conferred with the Title of Earl, on *Bishop* *Arnold*, by *Charles the Bald*, who had married his Sister *Adelph*; and not long after, in the Person of the said Earl *Arnold*, passed unto a Kingdom by *Charles the Great*, by the Name of the Kingdom of *Alsace* and *Burgundy*. The Kings thereof that follow.

- 4 *Arnold*, Earl of *Alsace*, Husband of *Princess* *Adelph*, the Daughter of *Lotharius* the second, Emperor and King of *Burgundy*, was first by *Charles the Bald* made Earl of *Burgundy* beyond the *Saone*; and afterwards by *Charles the Great*, created the first King of *Alsace* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his Successors of the *German* Emperors.
- 5 *Lewis II* Son of *Boson* and *Hermingrade*, chosen King of *Italy*, but outed by the Faction of *Benengarius*.
- 917 6 *Hugh de Arles*, supposed to be the Son of *Lotharius* the Second, by *Waldrada* his Concubine; succeeded by the Gift of *Lewis*, and was chosen by his Faction there, King of *Italy* also. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he resigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction to that broken Title.
- 926 7 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, succeeded on the resignation of *Hugh de Arles*, his Brother *Boson* being settled beyond the *Jour*.
- 937 8 *Rodolph II*. Son of *Rodolph*, a Prince of so short a Reign, or of so little Note, that he is by some left out of the Catalogue of these Kings.
- 9 *Boson II*. the Brother of *Rodolph* the First; by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.
- 965 10 *Conrade* Son to *Boson* the Second.
- 990 11 *Rodolph III*. Son to *Conrade*; who having no Issue of his Body, gave his Estate to *Conrade* the Second, Emperor of *Germany*, and his Son *Henry*, surnamed *the Black*, whom he had by *Gilese* the Sister of this *Rodolph*; by whom it was united to the *German* Empire, *An.* 1032. In the distractions whereof, following not long after his Decease, the Provincial Earls or Governors for the *German* Emperors, made themselves Masters and Proprietors of their several Provinces, (the Dukedom of *Burgundy* excepted, settled long before) out of which rose the great Estates of the Duke of *Savoie*, the Earls of *Burgundy* and *Provence*, the Dauphins of *Vicnois*, and Lords of *Bresse*, together with the Commonwealths of the *Switzers* and *Grisons*; every poor Bird snatching also some Feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithstanding the dismembring and cantoning of this fair Estate, the succeeding Emperors of *Germany* claimed not only a superintendence over, but a disposal of all the Countries that ever were under the

Com-

command of the King of *Burgundy*: infomuch that the Emperor, *Henry* the sixth, receiving no small part of the Money which our *Richard* the first paid to the Duke of *Austria*, for his Ransom, gave unto the said *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Sovereignty of *Provence*, *Vienne*, *Marſeilles*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lions*, together with the Homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digon* and *St. Giles*. A Royal gift, if either the Emperor had any Dominion over those Countries, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his appointing.

The Arms of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian* Kings, are said to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Arg.* armed *Gules*. Which being said, we will proceed to the description of those Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lye within the bounds of *France*; the rest, which lye beyond the *Four*, having been spoken of already in the *Alpine* Countries, which made up the whole Continent of the *Transjuran Burgundy*.

18 DAULPHINE.

NOrth of the Country of *Provence*, where we left before, lyeth that of *DAULPHINE*; having on the East, *Savoy*, and the *Maritime Alpes*; on the West, *Lionois*, and some part of *Languedoc*, from which divided by the *Rhofne*; and on the North, *La bresse*; and those parts of *Savoy* which lye towards *Piemont*, so called, as some report, from *Dauphine*, Wife of *Guigne* the second; in like manner as *Flanders* is affirmed most probably to have took that name from *Flandrina*, Wife of *Liderick* the second, then one of the last of those Princes who governed in that Country by the name of *Forreſters*.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; the one mountainous, stony, and unfruitful, of the same nature with the *Alpes*, with whose branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitful, but not to be compared with the rest of *France*. The People of the Higher, and more mountainous parts, are generally gross and rude; not capable of Learning, but well enough enclined to Arms and Traffick; and have a custom, that on the coming on of Winter, they send abroad all those which are fit for Travel, whom they call *Bics*, (or *Bisonards*) who seldom return back till *Easter*: none staying at home but old Men, Children, and impotent Persons, which cannot go abroad to get their Livings. Those in the Lower are more civil, but not more given to Labour, than the Mountainous are, nor very covetous of Gain, so they may live at ease, without want or penury. In both parts generally good Soldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The *Lower Dauphine*, together with that part of *Provence*, which lies next to the *Rhofne*, and the adjoining parts of *Savoy*, made up the Province called *Viennoſis*, from *Vienna*, the Metropolis of it, situate on the *Rhofne*, honoured with the Seat of the *Præſectus Prætorio Galliarum*; still the chief City of this Country, and Arch-bishops See, and a Siege *Præſidial*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennois*, and was the Title of the first Proprietaries of this Country, entituled, *Daulphins of Viennois*. To this Town, *Archelaus*, the Son of *Herod*, was Banished by *Augustus Cæſar*. 2. *Valence*, the chief City heretofore of the *Valentini*, then a *Roman* Colony; now a Bishops See, and an University for the Civil Laws: a rich, strong, and well traded Town, seated on the *Rhofne*. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Valentinois*; and hath given Honorary Title to two Persons of more Fame than Honour: the first of which was *Cæſar Borgia*, the Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, who casting off his Cardinals Cap, was made Duke of *Valentinois*, by *Charles* the eighth: the other, *Madam Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of *Henry* the

second, under whom she much ſwayed the Affairs of *France*, and honoured with the Title of Dutcheſs of it. 3. *Grenoble*, (in *Latine Gratianopolis*) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Acuſiani*; the most populous and best built of all this Province; and much resorted to by the Lords and Nobles, by reason of the Court of Parliament here erected. Anno 1453. About this, lieth the Country called 3. *Grifinaudan*. 4. *Ternay*. 5. *Roffillon*. 6. *La Roche*. 7. *Mantelimar*, all along the *Rhofne*. 8. *Romons*, upon the confluence of the *Rhofne*, and the *Ifere*. 9. *Cremien*. 10. *St. Marceline*. 11. *S. Andre*. 12. *Beaurepaire*, more within the Country.

The *Higher Dauphine*, together with those parts of *Provence* which lye next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Maritimæ*; the Metropolis whereof was, 1. *Ebrodunum*, now called *Ambrun*, an Arch-bishops See, and Siege *Præſidial*, seated on a high Rock, in the midst of a pleasant Valley, surrounded with Mountains, under which runs the River *Durance*. The Hilly Country hereabouts is the highest of *France*. 2. *Brianson*, near the head of the River *Durance*, called *Brigantio* by *Antoninus*. 3. *Gappe*, now a Bishops See, formerly the chief City of the *Apencenſes*; the track of whom is still found in the name of the adjoining Territory, called *La Pais Gapencenſis*: memorable for a Synod or Assembly of the *French Protestants* here holden, An. 1603. in which it was determined, and as for an Article of Faith, *That the Pope was Antichrist*, and where the Ministers then assembled, gave Audience to the Ambassadors of Foreign States, as to a Commonwealth distinct from the Realm of *France*: audaciously importuning their King by their several Agents, for liberty of going (whensoever they listed) or sending whensoever they pleased, unto the Councils and Assemblies of all Foreign Nations, which professed the same Religion with them: the Preamble to those Encroachments on the Royal Authority, which after proved the ruine of their Power and Party. 4. *Tricassin*, so called of the *Tricassini*, the old Inhabitants of these parts. 5. *Die*, the *Dia Vocontiorum* of *Antoninus*, a Bishops See, situate on the River *Droſne*: from whence comes those small, but good Stomach-Wines, which we call *Vin Die*. Others affirm, (and perhaps more knowingly) that this Wine is of the growth of *Champagne*, most plentifully growing in the Fields of a Town called *Hey*; from whence it hath the name of *Vin de Hey*; and so contractedly, *Vin Day*. 6. *Chorges*. 7. *Mombrum*. 8. *Effiles*; of which little memorable.

The chief Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, besides the *Tricassini*, *Apencenſes*, *Vaconties*, and *Acuſiani*, before mentioned; and the *Allobroges*, spoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were the *Segulauni*, about *Valence*; the *Decenſes* about *Die*, and the *Carvari* about *Grenoble*. First conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at last by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the surrender of the same to the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued till the year 1100. when *Guigne*, surnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Grifinaudan*, seeing the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, over-born by the Popes, and not able to assert his own rights, seized upon this Province under the Title of Earl of *Viennois*, to which *Guigne* the second, his Son and Successor, gave the name of *Dauphine*, either from his Wife so called, as some; or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Arms, as others say. In this Family it continued till the year 1349. under the Power and Government of these following Princes, entituled,

The Daulphins of Viennois.

A. Cb.

1100 1 *Guigne*, surnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Albon* and *Grifinaudan*, at the time of the Dissolution of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*.

- 1135 2 *Guigne* II. the first and absolute Proprietary, Prince hereof, by the name of the *Daulphin* of *Viennois*.
- 1146 3 *Guigne* III. Son of *Guigne* the second.
- 1152 4 *Beatrice*, Daughter of *Guigne* the Third, first married to *Raymond* the Third, Earl of *Tboloufe*, next to *Hugh* the Third, Duke of *Burgundy*; and finally, to *Guigne* of *Albon*, of the House of the former Earls; all in her right entituled, *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.
- 1280 5 *Andrew*, the Son of *Beatrice* and of *Guigne* the Fourth.
- 1242 6 *Guigne* V. Son of *Andrew*.
- 1283 7 *Humbert* the First, in the right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Guigne* the Fifth.
- 1335 8 *John* the Son of *Humbert*, exercised in continual Wars, as his Father was, with the Earls of *Savoy*.
- 1322 9 *Guigne* VI. Son of *John*, taken Prisoner by *Edward* Earl of *Savoy*, *An.* 1329. and at last slain *An.* 1342.
- 1342 10 *Humbert* II. the younger Son of *John*, and the Brother of *Guigne* the Sixth, the last *Daulphin* of *Viennois*, who being furcharged with Wars by *Anne* (or *Amede*) Earl of *Savoy*, entred into the Order of *Dominican* Friars, at *Lions*; selling his Country at a small rate, to *Philip de Valois*, French King, upon condition, that the eldest Son of *France* should be entituled always *Daulphin* of *Viennois*, and quarter the Arms of *Daulphin*, with those of *France*. The conditions willingly accepted; and *Charles* the Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the Title and Estate, in the very year of the surrendry. Since this time, the eldest Son of *France* is called generally the *Daulphin* of *France*; sometimes the *Daulphin* only, by way of eminency; and many times the *Prince-Daulphin*, to difference him from the *Daulphin* (or *Count-Daulphin*) of *Auvergne*, and perhaps some others. A Title so annexed unto them, that it is not usually laid by on the accession of a greater or superior Dignity: infomuch as *Francis* the eldest Son of *Henry* the Second, (whom he succeeded in the Crown) being King of *Scots* in the right of *Mary* his Wife, was by the French commonly called *Lay Roy Daulphin*, or the King of *Daulphin*. Nor have they the bare Title of this Country only, but the Commands, Profits, and Possession of it, sending their own Governours thereunto; who by an ancient Indulgence, have the greatest Priviledges (confering all Offices within the Province) of any Governours of *France*.

19. LA BRESSE.

LA BRESSE is bounded on the East with *Savoy*; on the West with *Lionois*; on the North with *Charolais* in the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, and some part of the *Aranche* County, and on the South, with *Daulphine*. The reason of the Name I find not. The Country is very fruitful and pleasant, embraced betwixt the Rivers of *Soasne* and *Rhofne*, with which very well watered. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Belley*, a Bishops See. 2. *Bourg*, (for distinction sake called *Bourg en Bresse*) a Town so well fenced, and fortified with so strong a Citadel for command of the Country, that it was thought little inferior to the two impregnable Fortresses of *St. Katherine*, and *Montmelian* in *Savoy*. The Government of which Town and Citadel, was earnestly laboured for by the Duke of *Biron*, then Governour of *Burgundy*, after a repulse on the like suit, for that of *St. Katherine*: but being suspected to hold intelligence with the Duke of *Savoy*, at that time in ill terms with King *Henry* the 4th, it was also denied him: which drew him into discon-

tent, and thereby to his fatal ruine. Afterwards, during the Minority of *Louis* the 13th, *An.* 1611. demolished by special Order of the Council of *France*, for fear of being surprized by the Duke of *Savoy*, during those Contentions. It was of old time called the *Forum Secundanum*, from the *Secusiani*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract. 3. *Castillon*, 4. *Mont Real*, 5. *Bugey*, 6. *Vienne*, of which nothing observable.

This little Province being anciently a part of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, had its own Earls, Proprietary Lords hereof; who held it till the year 1285. at what time *Sybill*, the Daughter and Heir of the Earl of *Bresse* and *Bugie*, (or *Bajsee*, as some Writers call it) conveyed the Estate in marriage to *Anne*, or *Amedee*, the 4th of that Name Earl of *Savoy*. In which House it continued till the year 1602, and then surrendered by Duke *Charles Emanuel*, to King *Henry* the 4th, to silence the pretences which that King made unto the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, and put an end to the War then begun about it: the politick Duke chusing rather to part with an Estate on this side of the Mountains, than to give that active King occasion to look into *Italy*; to which *Savoy* must have been a Thorow-fair, *Piedmont* an ordinary Pass; and where no end could be expected, but the loss of all. Surrendered then it was on good reason of State, and upon that Surrendry united and incorporated with the Crown of *France*, and put under the Government of the Parliament of *Digon*, as it still continueth.

Arms hereof, are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermine*, armed and langued, Or.

20. LIONOIS.

THE Country of *LIONOIS* is bounded on the East with *Bresse*, on the West with *Beau-jolois*, *Forrest*, and *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Burgundy* Dutchy; and on the South, with *Daulphin*, and a part of *Languedec*. So called from *Lions* the chief City; and under that Title made an Earldom by *Charles* the Gros, in the cantoning and dismembring of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*. The Earldom containing at that time not only *Lionois* it self, but also *Forrest* and *Beau-jolois*, before described. The Earls hereof were at first only Provincial Governours; but under the distractions of the German Empire, they shifted for themselves and became Hereditary: but long it held not in one hand. For first, the Earldom of *Forrest*, and the Lordship or Signeury of *Beau-jeu* being taken out of it about the year 990, the rest of the Estate fell in some tract of time to the Bishops and Church of *Lions*; but under the Sovereignty of the French Kings, as Lords Paramount of it.

The places in it of most note are, 1. *Mascon*, (*Matiscorum*) a Bishops See, situate on the *Soasne*, anciently a distinct Earldom from that of *Lions*, one of the five (as that of *Lions* was another) which made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this side of the *Soasne*: one of the Earls hereof, called *William*, flourishing in the year 1000, or thereabouts; whose Son and Successor, named *Otho*, married *Elizabeth* Daughter of *Humbert*, the first Earl of *Maurienne*, (a Title afterwards exchanged for that of *Savoy*) Continuing for some Ages after in this Posterity, it was purchased of *William* the last Earl hereof, and of *Elizabeth* his Wife, by King *Louis* the 9th, and afterwards subjected to the Jurisdiction and Court of *Lions*, as it still continueth. 2. *Eschalus*, on the *Rhofne*, on the South of *Lions*, opposite to *Vienne*, the chief City of the Lower *Daulphine*. 3. *Dandilli*. 4. *Francheville*. 5. *Chau-mont*, and 6. *Lebelle*, all somewhat Westward of that River, but not much observable. 7. *Lions* it self, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Soasne* and the *Rhofne*,

Rhofne, anciently a *Roman Colony*, (testified by many old Inscriptions) and honoured with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the Cities of *France*, to *Augustus Cæsar*: now the most famous Mart of *France*, and an University; By our *Latin Writers* called *Lugdunum*. These Marts in former times were holden at *Geneva*, from thence removed hither by King *Lewis* the 11th. for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When *Julio* the second had Excommunicated *Lewis* the 12th, he commanded by his Apostolical Authority, that they should be returned to *Geneva* again: but therein his pleasure was never obeyed; the Marts continuing still at *LIONS*, as a place more convenient and capacious for that great resort of *French, Dutch* and *Italian Merchants*, which frequent the same. As for the University, questionless it is very ancient, being a seat of Learning in the time of *Caius Caligula*. For in those times before an Altar consecrated to *Augustus Cæsar* in the Temple spoken of before, this *Caligula* did institute some Exercises of the *Greek* and *Roman Eloquence*: the *Victor* to be honoured according to his Merit: the *Vanquished* either to be *ferulated*, or with their own Tongues to blot and expunge their Writings, or to be drowned in the River adjoining. Hence that of *Juvenal*, *Ut Lugdunensem Rhetor dicturus ad aram*, applied to dangerous Undertakings. In the time of the *Romans* first coming into *Gaul*, it was the chief City of the *Hedui*, and *Secufiani*, afterwards the Metropolis of *Lugdunensis Prima*. The Archbishop hereof, is the *Metropolitan* of all *France*; and was so in the time of *S. Irenæus*, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive Church, who was Bishop here.

In this Town lived *Peter Waldo*, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, Emperor of *Germany*; who being a devout and conscientious Man, sensible of the many Errors and Corruptions in the Church of *Rome*, distributed the greatest part of his Riches amongst the Poor, and betook himself to Meditation, and Studying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnal eating of *CHRIST's* Body, the subtraction of the Cup in the blessed Sacrament, in matter of Purgatory, the Supremacy, Adoration of Images, Invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment, he held Opinions contrary to those of *Rome*, and little different from those of the present *Reformed Churches*. And yet it may not be denied, but that amongst some good Wheat, there were many Tares; which gave the juster colour to their Adversaries to exclaim against them. Being much followed in regard of his Piety and Charity, he got unto himself and them the name of *Pauperes de Lugduno*, or the *Poor Men of Lions*, given in derision and contempt. Afterwards they were called *Waldenses*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name opposed and writ against by Fryer *Thomas of Walden*. The *French*, according to their manner of pronunciation, drowning the *L*, and changing the *W*. into *V*, call them commonly *Vaudois*, by which name they occur in the stories of that State and Language. But *Lions* proving no safe place for them, they retired into the more desert parts of *Languedoc*; and spreading on the banks of the River *Alby*, obtained the Name of *Albigenses*, as before was said. Supported by the two last Earls of *Toulouse*, they became very masterful and insolent; insomuch, that they murdered *Trincanel* their Viscount in *Beziers*, and dashed out the Teeth of their Bishop, having taken Sanctuary in *S. Magdalens Church*, one of the Churches of that City. Forty years after which high out-rage, the Divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the *Croisades*, under the conduct of the *French Kings*, and many other noble Adventurers, who sacrificed them in the self same Church, wherein they had spilled the blood of others. About the year 1250. after a long and bloody War, they were almost rooted out of that Country also. The remnants of them, being battered by this Affliction, betook themselves unto the Mountains lying betwixt *Dauphine*, *Pro-*

vence, *Piedmont*, and *Savoy*, where they lived a godly and laborious Life; painfully tilling the Ground, rebuilding Villages, which formerly had been destroyed by War; teaching the very Rocks to yield good Pasturage to their Cattel: insomuch as places which before their coming thither, scarce yielded four Crowns yearly, were made worth 350 Crowns a year, by their Care and Industry. *Lasciviousness* in Speech they used not: *Blasphemy* they abhorred; nor was the name of *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongst them; as their very Enemies could not but confess, when they were afterwards in troubles. The Crimes alledged against them were, that when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no address unto the Saints, nor bowed before such Crosses as were erected in the High-ways, and Streets of Towns. Great crimes assuredly, when greater could not be produced! And so they lived, neither embracing the *Pope's Doctrines*, nor submitting unto his Supremacy, for the space of 300 years, untouched, unquestioned; even till the latter end of the Reign of King *Francis* the first. But then the Persecution raging against the *Lutherans*, they were accused, condemned, and barbarously murdered, in the *Massacres* of *Merindol*, and *Cabriers*, before mentioned. After which time, joyning themselves with the rest of the *Protestant Party*, they lost the name of *Vaudois*, by which called before; and pass in the account of the *Reformed Churches* of *France*; enjoying the same Privileges and Freedom of Conscience, as others of the *Reformed* do. And though I look not on these Men, and their Congregations as Founders of the *Protestant Church*, or of the same Church with them, as I see some do: yet I behold them as Assertors of some Doctrinal Truths, and professed Enemies of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, and therein as the Predecessors of the present *Protestants*.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, were a part of the *Hedui*, that Nation overspreading not this Country only, but *Bourbonnois*, with the whole Dukedom of *Burgundy*. And of these *Hedui*, the *Insubres* are thought by some learned Men to have been a Tribe, who passing over the *Alpes*, together with the *Senones*, and others of the *Gallick Nations*, possessed themselves of those parts of *Italy* which now make up the Dukedom of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, with the parts adjoining. The residue of the story which concerns this Country we have had before.

21. The Dukedom of Burgundy.

THE Dukedom of *BURGUNDY* hath on the East, the *French Country*, and some part of *Savoy*; on the West, *Bourbonnois*; on the North, *Champagne*; on the South, *La Bresse*, *Lionois*, and some part of *Beau-joulois*. A Province so well watered with pleasant and profitable Rivers, that as Queen *Katharine de Medices* used to say of *France*, That it had more fair Rivers than all *Europe*; so we may say of this Country, That it hath more fine Rivers than all *France*: here being the Rivers of 1. *Armancon*, 2. *Seur*, 3. *Curi*, 4. *Torney*, 5. *Valence*, 6. *Dove*, 7. *Brune*, 8. *Sein*, 9. *Louche*, and 10. *Soasne*, (the *Araris* of the ancient Writers) this last dividing the two *Burgundies* from one another. Yet notwithstanding this great plenty of Waters, the Country generally less fruitful than the rest of *France*: hardly yielding sufficient for its own Inhabitants, except Wines only.

Chief Cities in it are, 1. *Dijon*, the Birth-place of *S. Bernard*, seated upon the *Soasne* and *Louche*, in a *Champaign Country*: The Town large, populous, and of much Resort, as being the Seat of the Governour, and *Parliamentary* for the Province, a Parliament being here erected, *An.* 1476. Well fortified on all parts, but especially defended by a strong Castle, called *Talente*, situate on a

Hill adjoyning. It is called *Divio* in the *Latine*; the Bishop hereof *Divionensis*. 2. *Chalons*, (in *Latine*, *Caballinum*) called for distinctions sake, *Chalons* upon *Soasne*, to difference it from *Chalons* upon *Marn*, in *Champagne*: a Bishops See also, as the other is: and gives name to that Noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of *Orange* are extracted) being one of the four ancient Families of *Burgundy*, the other three, *Vienne*, *Neufchattel*, and *Vergie*. 3. *Aulun*, by *Ptolomy* called *Augustodunum*, the chief City of the *Hedui*, now a Bishops See, heretofore the chief of all the Country, some marks of the old splendour being still to be seen: now very ordinary and mean, beautified only with some fair Churches, which the ruins of Time have not yet demolished. 4. *Beauine*, *Beaune*, *Baulne*, *Belua*, seated on the *Burfoize*, in the best and richest Soil of all *Burgundy*; and yielding the best Wines in all *France*: remarkable for an Hospital of so fair a building, that it is thought equal to any Princes Palace in *Europe*; and an impregnable Castle built by King *Louis XII.* 5. *Alize*, now a small Village, but of great Name and Power in the time of *Cæsar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Fortrefs of *Vercingetorix*, besieged herein by the said *Cæsar*; but so besieged, that he had 7000 Men in the Town for defence of the place, and an Army of 30000 *Gauls* at the back of *Cæsar*, to relieve their Fellows. So that he was fain to fortifie his Camp with two Walls, the one against them within the City, and the other against them without: which done, he kept such diligent watch and ward on both sides, that the besieged heard sooner of the discomfiture of their Friends, than they did of their coming. Which fatal News being brought unto them, the Town was yielded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cæsar*; then sitting in his Chair of State, disarmed himself, took off his Horses caparisons; and laying all upon the ground, fate down at *Cæsar's* feet, and became his Prisoner. 6. *Tournus*, encompassed with the *Soasne*. 7. *Semur*, consisting of three parts, each of them severally walled, and strongly fortified. 8. *Verdun*. 9. *Najx*. 10. *St. Ligier*, famous for Medicinal Baths. 11. *Noyors*, on the borders towards *Champagne*. 12. *Auxerre*, by *Antonine* called *Antistodorum*, of most note for the Council held here, *Anno* 627. the Country about which, is called *Auxerrois*; and was an Earldom of it self. The Title and Possession of that *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who was the third Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*; to whom it came in Marriage with his first Wife *Agnes*, the Daughter of the last Earl of the former Race. On the failure of which House, it fell unto that of *Chalons*. by the Marriage of *Isabel*, Niece of the said *Peter*, by his Brother *Robert*, to *John* of *Chalons*, Earl of *Burgundy*: to whom succeeded *John de Chalons*, his eldest Son by that *Venter*, (his second Wife) and finally, was sold by *John de Chalons*, great Grandchild of the said *John* Earl of *Burgundy*, to *Charles* the Fifth of *France*, *An.* 1370. by whom united to the Crown; subjected to the Parliament of *Paris*, and made part of *Champagne*. Here is also within this Country, the great and famous Monastery of *Cîteaux*; the Mother of so many Religious Houses dispersed up and down in *Europe*; from hence denominated, and subject to the Discipline and Rules hereof.

Within the limits of this Dukedom, (on the South parts of it) stands the Earldom of *CHAROLLOIS*, *Caroleum*, heretofore the Title of the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Burgundy*: so called from *Charolles*, *Caroliæ*, the chief Town hereof, situate in the borders of it, towards *La Bresse*: seized upon with the rest of this Dukedom, by *Louis XI.* immediately on the death of Duke *Charles the Walke*: restored again to *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*, by *Henry* the Second, of *France*, on the Peace made at *Cambray*, and subjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundy*, as a part or member of that Estate. So that neither the Governour of the Dukedom for the French King, nor the Parliament of *Dijon*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Lion passant regar-

dant Or, armed *Azure*. By the Treaty of 1659 it was reserved to *Spain*, but is since return'd under the Dominion of *France*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Hedui*, one of the most potent Nations of all *Gaul*: who calling in the *Romans* to aid them in their Quarrels against the *Sequani* and *Auverni*, made them all subject unto *Rome*. In the prosperity whereof, they made up the Province of *Lugdunensis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. Afterwards, in the division of the French Kingdom of *Burgundy*, by *Charles* the Third; this part thereof being called the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, on this side of the *Soasne*, was cantoned into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalons*, *Aulun*, *Lune*, and *Mâcon* whereof the three first laid together by *Odo* or *Eudes* King of *France*, during the Minority of *Charles* the Simple, were given unto his Brother *Richard* (both Sons of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*) under the Style and Title of Duke of *Burgundy*. The Illue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another *Robert*, Son of *Hugh Capet*, King of *France*: and the Male-Issue failing of that Line also, it was devolved (partly by default for want of Heirs Male; and partly in the Right and Title of the Heir-general) to King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Robert* the Third; who with the consent of *Charles* his eldest Son, surnamed the *Wise*, gave it unto his second Son *Philip*, (more worthily surnamed the *Hardy*) together with the Marriage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy*. An Argument of no great Wisdom, as was judiciously observed by King *Louis* the Eleventh. For by this means, those great Estates being united in one Person, and afterwards these Estates improved by as prosperous Marriages; this House of *Burgundy* grew formidable to the Kings themselves, who never left practising against it, till they had brought it to ruine; and once again united this Dukedom to their own Estates, from which at first it was dismembred.

The Dukes of *Burgundy*.

- | | | |
|------|----|---|
| 890 | 1 | <i>Richard</i> of <i>Saxony</i> , the second Son of <i>Robert</i> Earl of <i>Anjou</i> , Brother of <i>Eudes</i> , and Father of <i>Rodolph</i> , Kings of <i>France</i> . |
| 938 | 2 | <i>Gilbert</i> , the second Son of <i>Richard</i> . |
| 964 | 3 | <i>Otho</i> , the Son of <i>Hugh</i> Earl of <i>Paris</i> , surnamed the Great, and Brother of <i>Hugh Capet</i> , King of <i>France</i> ; was Duke of <i>Burgundy</i> , in right of his Wife the Daughter of <i>Gilbert</i> . |
| 976 | 4 | <i>Henry</i> , the Brother of <i>Otho</i> . |
| 1001 | 5 | <i>Robert</i> , King of <i>France</i> , Son of <i>Hugh Capet</i> , succeeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Uncle <i>Henry</i> . |
| 1004 | 6 | <i>Robert II.</i> Son of this <i>Robert</i> , and Brother of <i>Henry</i> King of <i>France</i> . |
| 1075 | 7 | <i>Hugh</i> , the Nephew of <i>Robert</i> , by his Son <i>Henry</i> , became afterwards a Monk of <i>Clugny</i> . |
| 1097 | 8 | <i>Odo</i> , or <i>Otho II.</i> Brother of <i>Hugh</i> . |
| 1102 | 9 | <i>Hugh II.</i> Son of <i>Otho</i> the Second. |
| 1124 | 10 | <i>Odes</i> , or <i>Otho III.</i> Son of <i>Hugh</i> the Second. |
| 1165 | 11 | <i>Hugh III.</i> the Companion, but great Enemy of our <i>Richard</i> the First, in the Wars of the Holy Land. |
| 1193 | 12 | <i>Odes</i> , or <i>Otho IV.</i> Son of <i>Hugh</i> the Third. |
| 1218 | 13 | <i>Hugh IV.</i> an Adventurer with King <i>Louis</i> the Ninth in the Holy Land. |
| 1273 | 14 | <i>Robert III.</i> Son of <i>Hugh IV.</i> which <i>Robert</i> was the Father of <i>Margaret</i> , the Wife of <i>Louis Hutin</i> , King of <i>France</i> and <i>Navarre</i> ; and of <i>Joan</i> , the Wife of <i>Philip de Valois</i> , French King, and Grandmother of <i>Philip</i> the Hardy, after Duke of <i>Burgundy</i> . |
| 1308 | 15 | <i>Hugh V.</i> Son of <i>Robert</i> the Third. |
| 1315 | 16 | <i>Eudes</i> , the Brother of <i>Hugh</i> , was Earl of <i>Burgundy</i> also, in the right of his Wife. |

- 1349 17 Philip the Grandchild of Eudes by his only Son Philip, Duke and Earl of Burgundy, by descent, (who if he had lived, had been also Earl of Flanders and Artois, in right of Margaret his Wife.) But dying young and without Issue, he was succeeded in all his Titles and Estates, by
- 1363 18 Philip II. surnamed the Hardy, Son of John King of France, Son of Philip de Valois, and of Joan Daughter of Robert the third, by King John his Father, with the consent of Charles the 5th his Brother, (in whom the right of this Dukedom was then pretended to remain) made Duke of Burgundy, and married Margaret Daughter of Lewis de Maligne (and consequently Heir of Flanders, and the County of Burgundy) the Widow of his Predecessor.
- 1404 19 John surnamed the Proud, Son of Philip the second, Duke and Earl of Burgundy, and Earl of Flanders and Artois.
- 1419 20 Philip III. surnamed the Good, who added most of the Netherlands to his Estate.
- 1467 21 Charles the Warlike, Earl of Charolois, Son of Philip the Good. After whose death, slain by the Switzers at the Battle of Nancy, Lewis the eleventh seized upon this Dukedom An. 1476. pretending an Escheat thereof, for want of Heirs Males; and so uniting it for ever to the Crown of France: as by like colour of Escheat, King John had formerly entred on it, and given it unto Philip his younger Son, to the prejudice of the Earls of Euvreux, descended from the Daughter and Heir of Lewis Hutin, and of Margaret his Wife, the elder Sister of the Mother of the said King John.

Of the great Wealth and Potency of these last Dukes of Burgundy, we shall speak further when we come to the description of Belgium: the accession whereof to their Estates, made them equal to most Kings in Christendom. But for their Arms, which properly belonged to them as Dukes of Burgundy, they were Bendwise of Or and Azure a Border Gules. Which Coat is usually marshalled in the Scutcheons of the Kings of Spain; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their possession. The reasons of which are probably (for I go but by guess) partly because this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of this Title to the Dukedom it self, in right of which he holdeth such a great Estate.

22. The County of Burgundy.

THE County of BURGUNDY hath on the East, the Mountain Jura, which parts it from Switzerland; on the West, the Dutchy of Burgundy, from which divided by the Saône; on the North, a branch of the Mountain Vange, which runneth betwixt it and Lorraine; on the South, La Bresse. It is reckoned to be 90 Miles in length, about 60 in breadth: and with the Provinces of Dauphine, La Bresse, and Province, made up the Dukedom of Burgundy beyond the Saône; on the Eastern side of which it is wholly situate. This part thereof, now generally called the *French Compté*, or the *Free County*, because not under the command of the French Kings; but living in a more free Estate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The County in some parts very Mountainous, but those Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards, and having, in recompence of a little barrenness, an intermix-

ture of most pleasing and fruitful Valleys, swelling with plenty of all natural Commodities useful unto the life of Man; and for the variety of fresh Streams, and delightful Riverets, inferiour only to the Dutchy.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Besanzon*, called by *Cæsar*, *Vesontio*, then the chief City of the *Sequani*, as afterwards the Metropolis of the Province entitled, *Maxima Sequanorum*; by consequence an Archbishop's See. Seated betwixt two Mountains on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almost encompassed; such Artificial Fortifications being added to it, as make it very strong both by Art and Nature. But this is an Imperial City, not subject to the Government and Command of the Earls of Burgundy; honoured with a small University, founded here An. 1540. by Pope Julius the second, and Charles the fifth. This City in 1651. was exempt from the Empire, and given to the Spaniards, from after which it fell into the hands of the French, and was retaken by the Spaniards in 1654. by the French in 1668, and in 1674. and at last by the Treaty of Nimmeguen in 1678. it was finally left to the French.

2. *Dole*, seated on the same River *Doux*; for Riches, Strength, and Beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County; of which it is the Parliament-City, and consequently of most resort for dispatch of Business. Anciently it was an University for the study of the Civil Laws; but now the University is devoured by a College of *Jesuits*: who fearing lest the Doctrine of the Reformed Churches might creep in amongst the People, not only have debarred them the use of the Protestant Books; but have expressly forbid them to talk of GOD, either in a good sort or a bad. This had in latter times the same fate with *Besanzon*.

3. *Salines*, so called from its salt Fountains, out of which came the greatest part of the Earls Revenue: in which respect, or that it was the Title of *Otho* the Son of *Frederick Barbarossa*, before he did attain the Earldom; the Earls of Burgundy since that time, and the Emperors of Germany, in their right, retain the Name of Lords of *Salines*, in their usual Stile. A City honoured for a while with the Seat of the Parliament, removed hither from *Dole* by King Lewis the eleventh, at such time as he held this County, beholding to him (being a wife and politick Prince) for many wholsom Ordinances, still observed amongst the

4. *Poligni*, the *Bailliage* of the Lower; as 5. *Vescal* is of the Higher Burgundy. 6. *Arbeise*, noted for the best Wines, and 7. *Laxoal*, for Medicinal Baths. 8. *Nazareth*, on the borders of Switzerland, fortified with a very strong Castle; the ordinary feat and retreat from Business, of the last Prince of Orange, of the House of *Chalons*, who had great possessions in this Country. 9. *Gray*, 10. *Chastel-Chalon*, 11. *Quingey*, 12. *Orgelet*. Here is also the great and famous Abbey of *Clugny*, near the Town of *Beaune*; out of which of many Monasteries in the Western Church, had their first Original.

The old Inhabitants of this County, were the *Sequani*, a potent Nation, contending with the *Hedui* and *Arverni*, for the Sovereignty of *Gaul*, till the strife was ended by the Romans, under whom it made, together with Switzerland, the Province of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire, it fell to the Burgundians; and by *Rodolph* the last King of the French, the Kingdom of Burgundy was given to *Conrade* the second Emperor of Germany. After that, reckoned as a part of the German Empire, and governed by such Earls or Provincial Officers, as those Emperors sent thither. *Otho* of Flanders, Son to a Sister of the Emperor *Conrade*, was the first that held it as Proprietary, the other three whom *Paradin* sets before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of Burgundy, being merely official. It was first united to the Dutchy, by the marriage of *D. Eudes*, with *Joan* the Countess. But no Issue coming out of this Bed, it fell into the House of Flanders; and with the Heir of Flanders, unto *Philip* the Hardy, the first Duke hereof, of the Royal Race of *Valois*, An. 1369. *Philip* the Grandchild of this *Philip*, united most of the

Belgick Provinces unto his Estate: after whose death, and the death of *Charles* his Son, at the Battel of *Nancy*, the *Dutchy* was surprized by King *Lewis* the Eleventh, as holden of the Crown of *France*, escheated to him for want of Heirs-males. But the *County*, holden of the Empire, though subdued also by this *Lewis*, was restored again to *Mary* the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*, continuing hitherto in her Issue; as appears evidently by this Catalogue of

The Earls of *Burgundy*.

- 1101 1 *Otho Guillaume*, the first Earl of *Burgundy*, by the Power and Aid of *Robert* King of *France*.
- 1118 2 *Reinald*, Cousin and Heir of *Otho*.
- 1157 3 *Frederick Barbarossa*, Emperor, in right of *Beatrice* his Wife, Daughter of Earl *Reinald*, was Earl of *Burgundy*.
- 1183 4 *Otho*, the youngest Son of *Frederick*.
- 1200 5 *Otho II.* Duke of *Meranie*, part of the Province of *Tirol* in *Germany*, was Earl of *Burgundy* in right of *Beatrice* his Wife, the Daughter of *Otho* the first.
- 1208 6 *Stephen*, Earl of *Chalone*, next Heir of *Gerard* of *Vienne*, and *Joan* his Wife, the second Daughter of *Otho* the first, and Sister of *Beatrice*; acknowledged by his Faction there, for Earl of *Burgundy*, in the life of *Otho* the second, whom he dispossessed, and left the same unto his Son, to the prejudice of *Alice* the Daughter of *Otho*.
- 1234 7 *John*, Son of *Stephen de Chalone*.
- 1269 8 *Hugh* the Son of *John*, married to *Alice* Daughter of *Otho* of *Meranie*; so getting in that pretension also
- 1279 9 *Othelin*, the Son of *Hugh*, Earl of *Artois* in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Robert* Earl of *Artois*.
- 1315 10 *Philip* the Long, King of *France*; Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Othelin*.
- 1331 11 *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Husband of *Joan* of *France*, the eldest Daughter of King *Philip* the Long, and of *Joan* the Countess.
- 1349 12 *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Grandchild of *Eudes*, and of *Joan* his Wife, by their Son *Philip*.
- 1361 13 *Margaret*, the Widow of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and second Daughter of *Philip* the Long, and of *Joan* the Countess, was Countess of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, after the death of her Cousin *Philip*.
- 1383 14 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders* by his Father, and of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, by his Mother.
- 1404 15 *Philip II.* called the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Gift of King *John* his Father, with the consent and approbation of his Brother *Charles* the fifth, was Earl of *Burgundy*, *Flanders*, and *Artois*; as also, Duke of *Nevers* and *Rethel*, in right of *Margarite* his Wife, sole Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*.
- 1419 16 *Antony* the Proud, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, his younger Brother *Philip*, succeeding in the Earldoms of *Nevers* and *Rethel*.
- 1467 17 *Philip III.* called the Good, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*.
- 1476 18 *Charles* the Warlike, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*.
- 1476 19 *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian* of *Austria*, Son of *Frederick* the third, Emperor of *Germany*; in which ho-

- 1482 20 *Philip IV.* Son of *Maximilian*, King of *Castile*, in right of his Wife *Mary*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, King of *Castile*, &c.
- 1516 21 *Charles*, the Son of *Philip*, King of *Spain*, and Emperor of *Germany*, by the Name of *Charles* the fifth.
- 1558 22 *Philip V.* of *Burgundy*, and the second of *Spain*.
- 1598 23 *Philip VI.* of *Burgundy*, and the third of *Spain*.
- 1622 24 *Philip VII.* of *Burgundy*, and the fourth of *Spain*; in whom resteth the possession of the County of *Burgundy*, and the Earldom of *Charollois*; herein not troubled by the *French*, upon the death of *Charles* the Warlike; partly, because it was accounted as a Fief of the Empire; but principally, for fear of giving offence to the Cantons of *Switzerland*, upon whom it bordereth: jealous enough already of the greatness and power of *France*, and so not willing to admit such a potent Neighbour.
- 1665 25 *Charles* the Second King of *Spain*, who being an Infant, *Lewis* the 14th the present King of *France*, in the year 1668. possess'd himself of this Country, which being restored by a Treaty in 1674. he again entered upon it, and possess'd himself of it a second time, the *Spaniards* taking no care of it, as believing the *Switzers* were obliged to defend it for their own Security, as in truth they ought to have done, and do now too late repent they did not. Hereupon the *Spaniards* by the Treaty of *Nimwegen* in 1678. absolutely resigned this Country to the *French*.

The Arms of this Vardom are Azure, a Lion Rampant Or, Some of *Billets Argent*.

23 The Islands in the Aquitain and Gallick Ocean.

HAVING thus took a view of the several Provinces within the Continent of *France*, let us next look upon the ISLANDS which belong unto it, dispersed in the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the Western Ocean. Those in the *Mediterranean* Sea, are of little note; as 1. the Isles of *Eres*, and 2. *Pomignen*, lying against *Provence*: 3. *Alaguelone*, lying against *Languedoc*: and 4. *L'Angueltade*, betwixt both, at the mouth of the *Rhone*, of which there is nothing to be said, but that those of *Eres* are thought to be the *Storchades* of *Ptolomy*; and his *Klacon*, to be *Angueltade*. And if the Isles of *Eres* by the same with the *Storchades*, then one of them must be the *Lerina* which we find in *Pliny*: of most note afterwards for a Monastery founded in it, which gave name to *Vincentius Lerinensis*, or rather *Larinosus*, as most Writers call him: the Island now called *Insula Sancti Honorati*, or *Saint Honoratus*, as *Alfonsus* telleth us. And of as little note in the Western Ocean, are *Belle Isle*, against *Vannes* in *Bretagne*; the *Ile de Dieu*, having in it two or three good Villages; and *Marmosier*, plentiful in Salt, and beautified with a Monastery called the *White Abby*. Of which three last, that of *Belle Isle* hath been of late so fortified by Art, as of old by Nature, that it is thought to be impregnable: the Abbey of the last endowed with

so plentiful a Revenue, that it was thought a competent Preferment for *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, base Brother to King *Henry* the Fourth, to be made Lord Abbot of the same. Those of most note are, 1. *Oleron*, and 2. *Ree*, on the Coast of *Aquitain*; and those of *Fersey*, 4. *Guernsey*, 5. *Sarke*, and 6. *Alderney*, on the shores of *Normandy*: Of which, the four last are under the Kings of *England*; the rest possessed by the *French*.

1. *O L E R O N* is an Island situate over against the Province of *Xaintoigne*, and South unto the Isle of *Ree*, from which little distant. It is the biggest of the two, and makes yearly a very great quantity of Salt, wherewith most of the Provinces of the *Western Ocean* use to be furnished. But it is easie of access, and not very defensible; which makes it of less note both in ancient and modern Stories. The principal Town of it is called *Oleron*, by the Name of the Island. One thing there is for which indeed this Island is of special fame, and that is, that the *Maritime Laws*, which for near 500 years have generally been received by all the States of the Christian World, which frequent the Ocean, (the *Rhodian Laws* being antiquated and worn out of use) for regulating of Sea-affairs, and deciding of Maritime Controversies, were declared and established here, and from thence called the *Laws of Oleron*. And here they were declared and established by King *Richard* the First of *England*, as Lord Paramount of the Seas, immediately on his return from the *Holy Land*: this Island being then in his possession, as a Member of his Dukedom of *Aquitain*: *Quæquidem Leges & Statuta per Dominum Ricardum quondam Regem Angliæ in reditu a Terra Sancta, correctæ fuerunt, interpretata, declarata, & in Insula de Oleron publicata & nominata in Gallica Lingua La Loy d' Oleron, &c.* saith an old Record which I find cited in a MS. Discourse of my late learned Friend Sir *John Burroughs*, (once Keeper of the Records in the Tower of *London*, but afterwards Principal King of Arms, by the name of *Garret*) entituled, *The Sovereignty of the British Seas*. So powerful were the Kings of *England* in the former times, as to give Laws to all that Traded on the Ocean.

2. The Isle of *R E E* is situate over against *Roche*: to which it served for an Out-work on that side thereof. It is in length ten *English Miles*, and about half as much in breadth, well fortified with deep Marishes at the entries of it; to which the many Salt-pits every where intermingled, add a very great strength. Chief places in it are, 1. *La Butte de Mont*, 2. *St. John de Mont*, 3. *St. Hillary*, 4. *St. Martins*, the largest and strongest of them all; from whence the whole Island hath sometimes been called *St. Martins*. After the taking of this Town by *Lewis XIII.* *An.* 1622. (the Duke of *Soubize* then commanding in it for those of *Roche*) it was very well fortified; and since made unfortunately famous for the defeat of the *English Forces* under the Command of *George Duke of Buckingham*. Sent thither to recover the Town and Island, on the Intligation of *Soubize*, who before had lost it, *An.* 1628.

3. *F E R S E Y*, by *Antonine* called *Cæsarea*; situate about ten Miles from the Coast of *Normandy*, within the View and Prospect of the Church of *Constance*, part of which *Diocess* it was: in length containing 11 Miles, 6 in breadth, and in circuit about 33. It is generally very fruitful of Corn, whereof they have not only enough for themselves, but some over-plus to barter at *St. Malo* with the *Spanish Merchants*: and of an Air not very much disposed to Diseases, unless it be an Ague in the end of *Harvest*, which they call *Les Settembres*. The Country stands much upon Inclosures, the Hedges of the Ground well stored with Apples, and those Apples making store of *Sider*, which is their ordinary drink: watered with many pleasant Rivulets, and good store of Fish-ponds, yielding a Carp for tast and largeness inferiour unto none in *Europe*, excepting those of *Guernsey*, which generally are somewhat big-

ger, but not better relished. The People, for the most part, more inclinable to Husbandry, than to Trades or Merchandize; and therein differing very little from those of *Guernsey*, who are more for *Merchandize* than Tillage. It containeth in it 12 Parishes or Villages, having Churches in them, besides the Mansions of the *Seigneurs*, and the chief Men of the Countrey. The principal is *St. Hillarys*, where is the *Coba*, or Court of Justice for all the Island. It is about the bigness of an ordinary Market-Town in *England*: situate on the edge of a little Bay, fortified on the one side with a small Block-house called *Mont St. Aubin*; but on that side which is next the Town, with a very strong Castle, called *Fort Elizabeth*, situate upon craggy Rocks, and encompassed with two Arms of the Sea: so named from Queen *Elizabeth*, who built it to assure the Island against the *French*, and furnished it with thirty pieces of Ordinance, and all other necessities. There is also on the East-side, opposite to the City of *Constance*, high mounted on steep and craggy Rocks, the strong Castle of *Mount Orgeville*; of great Antiquity, repaired by King *Henry* the Fifth; now furnished with forty pieces of Cannon, and made the ordinary Residence of the Governours for the Kings of *England*. This Island stood firm to *Charles* the 2d, in all his Misfortunes, till *October* 22, 1651. when it was by the Forces of the Rebels reduced. In acknowledgment of this their Loyalty, that Prince in the year 1663. sent them a Silver Mace to be hereafter born before their chief Magistrate, as a remembrance of their Fidelity to him.

4. On the North-West of *Fersey*, lyeth the Island of *G U E R N S E Y*, called *Sarnia* by *Antoninus*; in form *Triangular*, each side of nine Miles in length. The Country is of as rich a Soil as the other of *Fersey*, but not so well Cultivated and Manured; the poorer People here, being more given to *Manufactures*, (especially to the knitting of Stockings and Waistcoats) and the rich to Merchandize, many of which, are Masters of good stout Barques, with which they Traffick into *England*, and other places. The whole Island contains ten Villages with Churches; the principal of which, *Saint Peter's Port*; a very neat and well built Town, with a safe Peer for the benefit of Merchants, and the securing of the Haven, capable of handson Barques: a Market-Town, beautified with a very fair Church, and honoured with the *Plaiderie*, or Court of Justice. Opposite whereto, in a little Islet, standeth the Castle of *Cornet*, taking up the whole circuit and dimensions of it; environed on all sides with the Sea, having one entrance only, and that very narrow: well fortified with works of Art, and furnished with no less than 80 pieces of Ordinance for the defence of the Island, but chiefly, to command the adjoining Harbour, capable of 500 as good Ships as any sail on the Ocean. A piece of great Importance to the Realm of *England*, and might prove utterly destructive of the Trade hereof, if in the hands of any Nation that were strong in Shipping. For that cause made the ordinary Seat of the *English Governours*, though of late times not so much honoured with the presence of those Governours, as a place of that Consequence ought to be. Pertaining unto *Guernsey*, are two little Islets, the one called *Jet-bow*, the Governours Park, wherein are some few fallow-Deer, and good plenty of Conies: the other named *Arme*, some three Miles in compass; a dwelling heretofore of *Franciscan Friars*; now not inhabited, but by *Pheasants*; of which, amongst the shrubs and bushes, there is very good store.

5. *A L D E R N E Y*, by *Antonine* called *Arica*, by the *French*, *Aurigni*, and *Aurney*; is situate over against the Cape of the *Lexobii*, in the Dukedom of *Normandy*, which the Mariners at this day call the *Hagge*: distant from which but six Miles only. Besides many Dwelling houses scattered up and down, there is one pretty Town or Village of the same name with the Island, consisting of about an hundred Families; and having, not far off, an Harbour

Harbour made in the fashion of a *Semi-circle*, which they call *La Crabbe*. The whole about eight Miles in compass; of very difficult access, by reason of the high Rocks and Precipices which encompass it on every side, and with a small force easily defensible, if thought worth attempting.

6. And so is also *SARK*, the adjoining Island, being in compass six Miles; not known by any special Name unto the Ancients, and, to say truth, not peopled till the fifth Year of Queen *Elizabeth*; who then granted it in Fee-farm to *Helier de Carteret*, the *Seigneur* of *St. Oen*, in the Isle of *Fersey*, who from thence planted it, and made Estates out of it to several Occupants, so that it may contain now about 50 Households. Before which time it served only for a Common, or Beasts Pasture, to those of *Guernsey*; save that there was an Hermitage, and a little Chappel, for the use of such as the solitariness of the place invited to those Retirements.

These two last Islands are subject to the Governour of *Guernsey*; all four to the Crown of *England*; holden in right of the Dukedom of *Normandy*, to which they anciently belonged; and of which now the sole remainder is in the power of the *English*. Attempted often by the *French*, (the two first I mean) since they seized on *Normandy*, but always with repulse and loss; the People being very affectionate to the *English* Government, under which they enjoy very ample Privileges, which from the *French* they could not hope for. Their Language is the *Norman French*, (though the better sort of them speak the *English* also) their Law, the *Grand Customaire* of *Normandy*, attempted and applied to the use of this People in their Suits and Business, by the *Bayliffs* and *Justiciars* of the two chief Islands. Their Religion, for the main, is that of the *Reformed Churches*; the Government in *Fersey* by the Dean thereof, Suffragan heretofore to the Bishop of *Constance*, now to the Bishop of *Winchester*; in *Guernsey*, by a mixt Consistory of Clergy and Lay-Elders, according to the New Model of *Geneva*; a Government first introduced in both Islands, Anno 1565. being the eighth Year of Queen *Elizabeth*, and abolished again in *Fersey*, Anno 1619. being the seventeenth of King *James*.

But to return again to the Story of *France*, thorow which we have now made our Progress, both by Sea and Land: It took this Name from the *Francks* or *French*, a *German* People, who in the wane of the *Roman* Empire possessed themselves of it: not mentioned by that Name by *Cæsar*, *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, or any of the more ancient Writers. Nor was it taken up by them, for ought appeareth, till an hundred Years after the Death of *Ptolomy*: The first express mention of them occurring in the Reign of *Gallienus*; then ransacking the Coasts of *Gaul*, and joining with *Posthumus* the Rebel, against that Emperor. Afterwards often spoken of in the course of the *Roman* Stories, under the Empire of *Claudius*, *Probus*, *Dioclesian*, and the Sons of *Constantine*; though only in the way of Pillage and Depradation. Their habitation in those times, was from the meeting of the *Rhene* with the River *Moenus*, not far from *Frankford*, where they confined upon the *Almains*, to the *German* Ocean; containing the particular Nations of the *Brueteri*, *Sicambri*, *Salii*, *Cberusci*, *Frisii*, and *Teneteri*, besides some others of less note: and taking up the Countries of *Westphalen*, *Bergen*, *Marck*, and so much of *Cleve* as lieth on the Dutch side of the *Rhene*, the Landtgravedom of *Hessia*, the Dutchy of *Gueldres*, the Provinces of *Zutphen*, *Utrecht*, *Over-ysse*, both *Friesland*s, and so much of *Holland* as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*. United in the Name of *Franks*, to shew that liberty or freedom from the Yoke of Servitude which the *Romans* had endeavoured to impose upon them; and wherewith all the Nations on the other side of the River were supposed to suffer: Governed by Dukes, till the Year 420. when *Pharamond* first took upon himself the Name of King. *Meroveus* their third King, having dispossessed the Sons of *Clodion*, the Son and Successor of *Pharamond*, was the first that fixed

his Seat in *Gaul*; when seeing the *Romans* on the one side put to the worst by *Theodorick* and the *Goths*; and on the other side by the *Burgundians*, they passed over the *Rhene*, and possessed themselves of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, containing all the *Belgick* Provinces on the *French* side of that River, together with the District of *Cologne*, *Galick*, and the rest of *Cleve*, then passing in the account of *Gaul*. His Victories and Fortunes were inherited by *Chilperic*, his Son and Successor, who added *Picardy*, *Champaigne*, and the Isle of *France* to the former Conquest; took *Paris* and made it the Seat of his Kingdom. Afterwards, when they had fully seated themselves here, and thereby opened a free passage to the rest of the Country, they quickly made themselves Masters of all that which formerly had been possessed by the *Romans*; whom they outed of their last hold in *Soissons*, under *Clouis* their fifth King, who also took *Aquitain*, and the Parts adjoining, from the *Visi Goths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*: for these and many signal Victories against the *Almains*, deservedly furnished him the Great; but greater in submitting to the Faith of *CHRIST*, and receiving Baptism, than by all his Victories. *Childebert* and *Clotaire*, the Sons of this *Clouis*, vanquished the *Burgundians*, adding that Kingdom to their own; as *Theodebert* his Grandchild, King of *Mets*, or *Austrasia*, did the Country of *Provence*, resigned unto him by *Amalosunta*, Queen of the *Ostro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*, by whom it had been wrested from the *Goths* of *Spain*. In the Person of *Clotaire* the Second, the Realm of *France* improvidently dismembered into many Kingdoms, amongst the Children of *Clouis* the First; that is to say, the Kingdoms of *France*, *Soissons*, *Orleans*, and *Austrasia*, (of which *Orleans* and *Austrasia* were of long continuance) were again united; whose Successor, *Dagobert* the First, was the last considerable Prince of the *Merovignians*. After this time, the reputation of the *French* Kings of this Line, began to diminish, scarce doing any thing that might ennoble and commend them to succeeding Ages; or leaving any Monument behind them, but their empty Names; which I shall represent in the following Catalogue, according to their several Times; first taking notice, that though the Kings of this first Race did many times divide the Kingdom, as before was said; yet none of them were called Kings of *France*, but those that had their Royal Seat in the City of *Paris*, the rest being called only Kings of *Soissons*, *Mets*, or *Orleans*, according to the Name of their principal Cities. And therefore, leaving those to their proper places, we will here only take a survey of those who passed in the common estimate for the Kings of *France*.

The Kings of France, of the French or Merovignian Line.

A. Chr.

- | | | |
|-----|----|--|
| 449 | 1 | <i>Meroveus</i> , Master of the Horse to <i>Clodion</i> the Son of <i>Pharamond</i> ; from whom this Line of Kings were called <i>Merovignians</i> . 10. |
| 459 | 2 | <i>Chilperic</i> , the Son of <i>Merove</i> . 26. |
| 485 | 3 | <i>Clouis</i> , the first Christian King of the <i>French</i> . 30. |
| 515 | 4 | <i>Childebert</i> , eldest Son of <i>Clouis</i> , his other Brethren reigning in their several places. 45. |
| 560 | 5 | <i>Clotaire</i> , Brother of <i>Childebert</i> , first King of the <i>Soissons</i> , afterwards sole King of the <i>French</i> . |
| 565 | 6 | <i>Cherebert</i> , Son of <i>Clotaire</i> . |
| 574 | 7 | <i>Chilperic</i> II. King of <i>Soissons</i> , and Brother of <i>Cherebert</i> , whom he succeeded in the Kingdom, 14. |
| 588 | 8 | <i>Clotaire</i> II. Son of <i>Chilperic</i> the Second. 44. |
| 632 | 9 | <i>Dagobert</i> , Son of <i>Clotaire</i> the Second. 14. |
| 645 | 10 | <i>Clouis</i> II. Son of <i>Dagobert</i> . 17. |
| 663 | 11 | <i>Clotaire</i> III. Son of <i>Clotaire</i> the Second. 4. |
| 667 | 12 | <i>Chilperic</i> III. Brother of <i>Clotaire</i> the Third, and Son of <i>Clouis</i> the Second. |
| 680 | 13 | <i>Theodorick</i> , Brother of <i>Chilperic</i> . 14. |
| 694 | 14 | <i>Clouis</i> III. Son to <i>Theodorick</i> . 5. |

- 698 15 *Childebert II.* Brother to *Clouis* the Third. 15.
 716 16 *Dagobert II.* Son of *Childebert* the Second. 5.
 722 17 *Chilperic IV.* Son of *Childebert* the Second, and
 Brother of *Dagobert* the Second, opposed by
Charles Martel in behalf of *Clotaire* the fourth
 Son of *Theodorick*, and Brother of *Childebert*
 the Second. 5.
 727 18 *Theodorick II.* Son of *Dagobert* the Second. 15.
 742 19 *Chilperic V.* Son of *Theodorick*, the Second, the
 last of the *Merovingian* Family; deposed by
Pepin, Son to *Charles Martel*; the Pope giving
 approbation to his Proceedings.

This *Pepin* and his Father *Martel*, were *Mayres* of the Palace to the former Kings; which *Mayres* were originally Comptrollers of the King's House, and had nothing to do with the Affairs of State. But *Clotaire* the Third, to ease himself and his Successors of a burden so weighty, made the *Mayres* Vicars-general of his Empire. From henceforward the Kings followed their Pleasures, shewing themselves only on *May-Day*; and then seated in a Chariot, adorned with Flowers, and drawn by four Oxen. As for the *Mayre*, he openeth Pacquets, heareth and dispatcheth Foreign Ambassadors, giveth remedy to the Complaints of the Subjects, maketh Laws, and repealeth them. An Authority somewhat like that of the *Præfetti Prætorio*, in the declining times of the *Roman* Empire; or that of the *Sultans* under the *Mahometan* *Caliphs*, and the Vice Roys of the old *Egyptian* *Pharaohs*. An Office which had been long born by the Ancestors of this *Martel*, ever since the Reign of *Clotaire* the Second; in whose time the *Palatine* or *Mayre* was one *Arnulphus*, descended lineally from *Utilo*, the second Son of *Theodon* the first Duke, and Nephew of *Aldagerius* the last King of the *Boiarians* or *Bavarians*. Which *Utilo* being a Military Prince, and having done good Service to *Theodorick*, the first King of *Austrasia*, or *Metz*, against the *Danes*, then grievously infesting the Coasts of the *Lower Germany*; was by him made Warden of those Marishes, honoured with the Marriage of his Daughter *Plithilda*, and liberally endowed with fair Possessions in that Tract. The fourth from *Utilo* was this *Arnulph*, the first *Mayre* of this House; which Office having long enjoyed, he resigned it to *Ansegisus* his eldest Son, (the first who drew unto himself the managery of the whole Estate) and bidding farewell to the Affairs of the World, became a Priest, and died Bishop of *Metz*, *Anno* 641. Afterwards Canonized a Saint. *Ansegisus* dying in the Year 679, left his Authority and Office to his Nephew *Martin*, Son of *Fodulphus* his younger Brother. But he being slain by *Ebroinus*, one of the Competitors, who a while enjoyed it: *Pepin*, surnamed the *Fat*, Son of *Ansegisus*, revenging his Cousins Death upon *Ebroinus*, and crushing all the opposite Factions which were raised against him, obtained that Honour for himself. And having much advanced the Affairs of *France* by the Conquest of the *Sueves* and *Frisons*, died in the Year 714. Succeeded to in this great Office, after his decease, (for *Grimold* his only lawful Son, and *Theobaldus* the Son of *Grimold*, whom he had successively substituted in the same, died not long before him) by *Charles* his natural Son, begotten on *Albada* his Concubine; from his Martial Prowess called *Martel*: Who in his time did to the Kings of *France* great Service, especially in routing that vast Army of the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in the Battel of *Tours* before-mentioned; thereby not only freeing *France* from the present Danger, but adding *Languedoc* to the Crown, formerly in possession of the *Goths* and *Moors*; for which he was created Duke or Prince of the *French*, yet would he not usurp the Kingdom, or the Title of King, though both at his disposal wholly; it being his ordinary saying, that he had rather rule a King than be one.

To him succeeded *Caroloman* his eldest Son, *Anno* 741. who held the Office but a Year, and then left it to his Brother *Pepin*; who being of less moderation than his

Father was, made such use of his Power, that partly by that means, and partly under colour of an Election, confirmed by Pope *Zachary* the First, he took the Kingdom to himself; and the unfortunate King *Chilperick* had his Poll shaven, and was thrust into a Monastery. For this Investiture, both *Pepin* and *Charles* his Son, did many good Services for the Popes, destroying, on their Quarrel, the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, and giving them most of the Lands which formerly belonged unto the *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*. And on the other side, the Popes to requite these Courtesies, confirmed the former in this Kingdom, by their Papal Power (which then began to bear some sway in the Christian World;) and gave the last (besides the opportunity of attaining the Western Empire) the Title of *Most Christian King*, continued ever since unto his Successors. And, to say truth, he well deserved those Honours, had they been far greater, by many Victories obtained against the Enemies of the Gospel; the several Heathens by his means converted to the Faith of *CHRIST*; the great Abilities he had of Estate and Judgment, enabling him to support the Majesty of the *Roman* Empire. For he not only was sole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times succeeding, into several petit Kingdoms and Principalities, but had added thereunto, by his own proper Virtue, the greatest part of *Italy*, the best part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Pannonia's*, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vast Empire falling into weak Hands, which were not able enough to manage it, decayed in as little time as it was in raising; partly by the unnatural Ambition of the Sons of King *Lewis*, the Godly, the next Successor of this *Charles*; who, to make themselves all Kings, first deposed their Father, and then divided his Estate amongst them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *France*, *Lorrain*, and *Germany*; four of which falling at last into the hands of Strangers, ceased to be *French*, and passed into such Families as proved the greatest Enemies of the Crown of *France*; partly by alienating the best and goodliest Provinces of *France* it self, never again united till these latter Days; which made the *French* Kings less considerable both at home and abroad; which we have touched upon before; and partly by the weakness and unworthiness of the Kings of his Race, there being no question to be made, but *Lewis* the Stammering, *Charles* the Bald, the *Gross*, and the *Simple*, would have found better Attributes if they had deserved them. For by this means, the Issue of this brave Prince grew so despicable in the Eyes of their Subjects, that first *Eudes*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*; and after, *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Uncle of *Eudes* (both of the Race of *Witibundus*, the last Prince of the *Saxons*, and consequently, both Aliens to the House of *Charles*) possessed themselves severally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being depressed and over-born by their opposite Factions; yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on; who being Son of *Hugh* the Great Constable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*, younger Brother of *Eudes*, and near Kinsman of *Rodolph*; never left practising his Party in the Realm of *France*, till he had got possession of the Regal Diadem, wherewith two Princes of this House had been invested formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this second Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjust grounds of an Usurpation, they are these that follow.

The second Race of the Kings of France, of the Carolovian or Boiarian Line.

A. Chr.

- 751 1 *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, succeeded in the Office of *Mayre*, *An.* 742. and having got the Regal Crown, vanquished the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* tributary, and crushed the *Saxons*. 18.

- 769 2 *Charles*, surnamed the Great, the Son of *Pepin*, subdued the Kingdom of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*; conquered the *Boians* and *Avars*, and vanquished the *Saracens* of *Spain*; Crowned Emperor of the West, upon *Christmas-day*, by Pope *Leo III.* An. 800. 46.
- 815 3 *Lewis the Godly*, Son of *Charles* King of *France*, and Emperor, the last sole Monarch of the *French*, deposed by his ambitious and unnatural Sons; the Empire of the *French*, after his Decease, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, *France*, and *Lorrain*; and *France* it self distracted into many Sovereign Estates and Principalities. 26.
- 841 4 *Charles II.* surnamed *Calvus*, or the Bald, youngest Son of *Lewis*, King of *France*, and Emperor; vanquished by *Charles the Gross*, in the War of *Italy*. 38.
- 879 5 *Lewis II.* surnamed *Balbus* or the Stammering, Son of *Charles the Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperor.
- 881 6 *Lewis III.* with *Caroloman* his Brother, the base Sons of *Lewis the Stammering*, Usurpers of the Throne, in the Infancy of *Charles the Simple*.
- 886 7 *Charles III.* surnamed *Craffus*, or the Gross, King of *Germany*, and Emperor; called into *France*, and elected King, during the minority of *Charles the Simple*. 5.
- 891 8 *Odo*, or *Eudes*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, of the Race of *Witikindus*, the last King of the *Saxons*; elected by an opposite Faction, outed *Charles the Gross*. 9.
- 900 9 *Charles IV.* surnamed *Simplex*, or the Simple, the Posthumus Son of *Lewis the Stammerer*, restored unto the Throne of his Fathers; which, after many Troubles raised against him by *Robert the Second*, Earl of *Anjou*, (whom he slew in Battel) he was forced to resign. 27.
- 927 10 *Rodolph* of *Burgundy*, Son of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Brother of *Eudes*, succeeded on the resignation of *Charles the Simple*. 2.
- 929 11 *Lewis IV.* Son of *Charles the Simple*, surnamed *Transmarine*, in regard that during his Fathers Troubles he had lived in *England*, restored unto the Regal Throne on the Death of *Rodolph*; opposed therein by *Hugh* Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of King *Eudes*, by his Brother *Robert* before-mentioned.
- 958 12 *Lotharius*, Son of *Lewis IV.* disturbed in his Possession by *Hugh Capet*, the eldest Son of the said *Hugh*, on the pretension of that House, by which at last he got the Kingdom.
- 977 13 *Lewis V.* Son of *Lotharius*, the last King of the House of *Charles the Great*. After whose Death, (being King only for a Year) the Crown was seized on by *Hugh Capet*; *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain*, Brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the Fifth, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the present Race of the Kings of *France*, founded in *Hugh Capet*; so called from the greatness of his Head, Son of *Hugh the Great*, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert* the Second, Earl of *Anjou*; which *Robert* was the Brother of *Eudes*, and Cousin-german of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*. Who, partly by his own Wits, but chiefly by the weakness of the Mungrel-Issue of *Charles the Great*, having got the Diadem, transmitted it unto his Posterity; the Crown descending in a direct Line from Father to Son, till the Death of *Lewis* the Tenth, surnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to understand, that the Realm of *France* was at

that time shut up within narrower bounds than it is at present: the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandy*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poitou*, *Languedoc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*; besides those Provinces which constituted and made up the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, being aliened and dismembred from it. How they became reduc'd to the Crown again, will be discern'd in the ensuing History, and Succession of

The third Race of the Kings of France, of the Capetine or Saxon Line.

An. Chr.

- 988 1 *Hugh Capet*, of whom sufficiently before. 9.
- 997 2 *Robert*, the Son of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundy* also. 34.
- 1031 3 *Henry*, the eldest Son of *Robert*, his younger Brother *Robert* being settled in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*. 39.
- 1061 4 *Philip*, the Son of *Henry*, who added *Barry* to the Crown. 49.
- 1110 5 *Lewis VI.* Son of *Philip*, surnamed the Good. 28.
- 1138 6 *Lewis VII.* Son of *Lewis* the Sixth, and Adventurer in the War of the *Holy Land*; as also was his Son and Successor.
- 1181 7 *Philip II.* surnamed *Augustus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, with their several Appendixes, were taken from King *John* of *England*. 43.
- 1224 8 *Lewis VIII.* Son of *Philip Augustus*. 3.
- 1227 9 *Lewis IX.* surnamed the Saint, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt* and the *Holy Land*. He restored *Guienne* to the *English*, and added the Earldoms of *Toulouse* and *Macon* to the Crown of *France*. 44.
- 1271 10 *Philip III.* Son of *Lewis* the Ninth. 15.
- 1286 11 *Philip IV.* surnamed the Fair, King also of *Navarre*, in the right of the Lady *Joan* his Wife. 28.
- 1314 12 *Lewis X.* surnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre*, in right of his Mother, whom he succeeded in that Kingdom, An. 1305. after whose Death the Kingdom of *France* was to have descended to *Joan* his Daughter. 2.
- 1315 13 *Philip V.* called the Long, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by Threats, Promises, and other Practices, caused a Law to pass to which he gave the Name of the *Salique Law*, for disabling Women from the Succession to the Crown; and thereby quite excluded his Brother's Daughter: served in the same kind himself, by his Brother *Charles*; who following his Example, excluded, on the same pretence, his Nieces, *Joan* and *Margaret*, the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.
- 1320 14 *Charles IV.* but in true accompt the Fifth of that Name, most commonly called *Charles the Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis*, the two last Kings. After whose Death began the Wars of the *English* for the Crown of *France*; challenged by King *Edward* the Third, as Son and Heir of *Isabel*, the Daughter of King *Philip the Fair*, and Sister to the three last Kings. 7.
- 1328 15 *Philip VI.* surnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Valois*, the second Son of King *Philip* the Third, and Uncle to the three last Kings, succeeded under colour of the *Salique Law*; of which *Charles* it is said, that he was Son to a King, Brother to a King, Uncle to a King, and Father to a King; yet himself was no King. In this Kings Days was fought the famous Battel of *Cressy*, An. 1343. in which the *French* Army consisted of about 70000 Soldiers, the *English* of 11800 only: yet

- yet the Victory fell unto the *English*; by whose Valour fell that Day *John* King of *Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 120 Knights, and 30000 of the common Soldiers. He added unto his Estate, the County *Palatine* of *Champagne*, the County of *Daulphine*, and the City and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.
- 1350 16 *John* the Son of *Philip de Valois*; in whose Reign was fought the Battel of *Poitiers*, wherein *Edward the Black Prince*, (so called for his black Acts upon the *French*) with an handful of wearied Soldiers, (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French* Army, consisting of 40000; of which they slew, besides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Soldiers, and took Prisoners King *John* himself, and *Philip* his Son, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, and 12000 Gentlemen. 14.
- 1364 17 *Charles V.* the Son of *John*, recovered all those places (except only *Calice*) which the *English* had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles the Wise*; but *Lewis XI.* would by no means allow him that Attribute; affirming, that it was but a foolish part to give his younger Brother *Philip* the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withal, the Heir of *Flanders* to Wife. And so it proved in the event.
- 18 *Charles VI.* a weak and distracted Prince; in whose Reign *Henry* the Fifth of *England*, called in by the Faction of *Burgundy*, against that of *Orleans*, married the Lady *Catharine*, Daughter of this King; and was thereupon made Regent of *France*, during the King's Life, and Heir apparent of the Kingdom. But he had first won the great Battel of *Agincourt*, Anno 1415. in which the *English* having an Army but of 15000, vanquished an Army of the *French*, consisting of 52000 Men; of which were slain, 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons; the *English* losing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Soldiers. This unfortunate Prince lost what his Predecessor, *Philip* the Second, had taken from King *John* of *England*, and had not been restored by King *Lewis IX.*
- 1423 19 *Charles VII.* Son of *Charles* the Sixth, after a long and bloody War, recovered from the *English*, (then divided by domestick Dissention) all their Lands and Seigniorics in *France*, except *Calice* only.
- 1461 20 *Lewis XI.* Son of *Charles* the Seventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithal a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicily*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of so great Wants, or such sordid Parsimony, that there is found a reckoning in the Chamber of Accompts in *Paris*, of two Shillings for new Sleeves to his old Doublet; and three Half-Pence for Liquor to grease his Boots.
- 1484 21 *Charles VIII.* Son of *Lewis* the Eleventh, who quickly won, and as soon lost the Kingdom of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the Right of the House of *Anjou*. By the marriage of *Anne* the Heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.
- 1498 22 *Lewis XII.* Son of *Charles*, and Grandson of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, (which *Lewis* was a younger Son of the Fifth,) succeeded as the next Heir-male of the House of *Valois*. He dispossessed *Lodowick Sforza*, of the Dutchy of *Millain*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand the Catholick*; but held neither long. By his Marriage with *Anne* of *Bretagne*, the Widow of his Predecessor, he confirmed that Dukedom to his House; united after to the Realm by an Act of State. After his Death, the *English*, to prevent the growing greatness of *Spain*, began to close in with the *French*, and grew into great Correspondencies with them; infomuch that all the following Kings, until *Lewis XIII.* (except *Francis* the Second, a King of one Year, and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.
- 1515 23 *Francis*, Duke of *Angolessm*, Grandson of *John* of *Angolessm*, one of the younger Sons of the said *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, succeeded on the Death of *Lewis XII.* without Issue Male. Took Prisoner at the Battel of *Pavie*, by *Charles* the Fifth, with whom he held perpetual Wars; he being as unwilling to end a Superior, as the Emperor was to admit an Equal. 32.
- 1547 24 *Henry II.* Son of *Francis*, recovered *Calice* from the *English*, and drove *Charles* out of *Germany*, and took from him *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, three Imperial Cities, ever since Members of this Kingdom.
- 1559 25 *Francis II.* Son of *Henry* the Second, King of the *Scots* also, in the right of *Mary* his Wife.
- 1560 26 *Charles IX.* Brother of *Francis* the Second, the Author of the Massacre at *Paris*. 14.
- 1574 27 *Henry III.* elected King of *Poland*, in the Life of his Brother, whom he succeeded at his Death. The last King of the House of *Valois*, stripped of his Life and Kingdom by the *Guisan* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 15.
- 1589 28 *Henry IV.* King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Vendosme*, succeeded as the next Heir-Male to *Henry III.* in the Right of the House of *Bourbon*, descended from *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, a younger Son of *Lewis* the Ninth. He ruined the *Holy League*, cleared *France* of the *Spaniards*, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid *La Bresse* unto the Crown, together with the Estates of *Bearn*, and *Base Navarre*; and after a ten Years time of Peace, was villainously murdered by *Ravillac*, in the Streets of *Paris*. 21.
- 1610 29 *Lewis XIII.* Son of *Henry* the Fourth; the most absolute King of *France*, since the Death of *Charles the Great*. For to the reduction of the scattered and dismembred Provinces, (the work of his many Predecessors) he added the reduction of all the Forts and Garrisons held by the *Hugonots* in that Kingdom, (three hundred at the least in number) seized on the Dukedom of *Bar*, and surprized that of *Lorraine*; both which he held until his Death. This Prince was born the 27th of September, in the Year 1601. crowned the 18th of October 1610. 32.
- 1642 30 *Lewis XIV.* Son of *Lewis XIII.* and of the Lady *Anne*, eldest Daughter of *Philip* the Third of *Spain*; succeeded at the Age of four Years, under the Government of his Mother: the thirtieth King of the Line of *Capet*, the forty third from *Charles the Great*, and the sixty fourth King of *France* (or rather of the *French*) now living. This Prince was born the fifth of September, 1638. crowned the seventh of June, 1654. He married *Mary Theresia*, Daughter of *Philip IV.* King of *Spain*, in the Year 1659. by whom he had *Lewis (XV.)* now *Daulphine* or Heir of the Crown of *France*, born the 2d of November, 1661. married to *Mary*, Sister to the Elector of *Bavaria*, in the Year 1680.

March 7. by whom he has three Sons, 1. *Lewis Duke of Burgundy*, born the 6th of Aug. 1682. 2. *Philip Duke of Anjou*, born Nov. 19. 1683. 3. *Gaston, Duke of Berry*, born August 31. 1686. The Mother of these Princes died in the Year 1690.

As for the Government of these Kings, it is merely Regal; or, to give it the true Name, *Despotic*; such as that of a Master over his Servants: the King's Will going for a Law; and his Edicts as valid as a Sentence of the Court of Parliament. *Quod principi placuerit Legis habet vigorem*, was a Prerogative belonging to the Roman Emperors, as *Justinian* tells us in his *Institutes*; and the French King's descending from *Charles the Great* claim it as their own. The King's Edicts always ending with these binding words, *Car tel est nostre plaisir*, For such is Our Pleasure. And though he sometimes sends his Edicts to be verified, or approved, in the Parliament of *Paris*; and his Grants and Patents to be ratified in the *Chamber of Accounts*, there holden; yet this is nothing but a meer formality, and point of Circumstance; those Courts not daring to refuse what the King proposeth. It is *Car tel est nostre plaisir*, which there goeth for Law. And by this intimation of his Royal Pleasure, doth he require such Taxes as the necessity of his Affairs, the greediness of his Officers, or the importunity of Suiters do suggest unto him: the Patrimony of the Crown being so exhausted by the riot and improvidence of former Princes, that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, defray his Garrisons, reward such as deserve well of him, and support those that depend upon him, but only by laying what he pleaseth on the backs of his Subjects; against which there is no dispute by the Common People, though many times the great Princes have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them also instrumental to the publick Slavery, the Kings are willing to admit them to some part of their Spoils, to give them some Exemption from those common burdens; and to connive at the oppressing of their Tenants, against all good Conscience: that being so privileged themselves, they may not interrupt the King in his Regal Courses.

As for the French Parliaments, or Assembly of the three Estates, which heretofore were of great Credit and Renown, and looked on as the principal Bulwark of the Publick Liberty, being first discontinued by reason of the sharp and continual Wars which the *English* made in this Kingdom, for the space of a hundred Years and upwards, they afterward became much weaken'd by the Policy of King *Lewis XI.* and the Kings succeeding; and finally, by King *Lewis XIII.* were laid by for ever. For, finding them to retain something still of their ancient Stomach, and apt enough to clash with that absolute Sovereignty which his Predecessors had attained to, he resolved to make no more use of them for the times to come; instead whereof, he ordained another kind of Meeting, which he called *La Assemblée des Notables*; that is to say, the Assembly of some principal Men, composed of some selected Persons out of every Order or Estate (of his own nomination) whereunto should be added some Counsellor out of every one of the eight Courts of Parliament; which, being fewer in number, would not breed such a confusion as the others did, and be withal more pliant and conformable to the King's Desires. Now the eight Courts of Parliament before-mentioned, being but as so many Courts of Judicature, (like to ours in *Westminster*) are these that follow; that is to say, The Parliament 1. Of *Paris*, comprehending the Countries of *France* special, *Champagne*, *Picardy*, the Provinces and Estates of *Anjou*, *La Beauce*, *Berry*, *Poitou*, the Provinces which make up the Dukedom of *Bombon*, with the County of *Lionois*. 2. Of *Rouen* for the Dukedom of *Normandy*. 3. Of *Rennes*, for the Dukedom of *Britagne*. 4. Of *Bordeaux*, for the whole Dukedom of *Aquitain*, (except only *Bearn*) with the Countries of *Limousin* and *Perigord*. 5. Of *Tholouse*,

for the Earldom of *Languedoc* and *Quercu*. 6. Of *Aix*, for the Earldom of *Provence*. 7. Of *Grenoble* for the Country of *Dauphine*. And 8. Of *Dijon*, for the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the small County of *La Breche*; to which is added of late times by King *Lewis XIII.* the little Parliament of *Pau*, for the Country of *Bearn*. Besides which Parliaments, there are certain other Courts in some principal Cities, called *Courts Presidiales*, resembling those with us at *Norwich*, and the *Marches of Wales*, whilst they continued in that Power and Jurisdiction which at first they had. And for the better ordering of the whole Estate, (with reference specially to matters Military) it is divided into twelve several and distinct Governments; that is to say, 1. Of the Isle of *France*, 2. *Burgundy*, 3. *Normandy*, 4. *Guienne*, 5. *Britagne*, 6. *Champagne*, 7. *Picardy*, 8. *Languedoc*, 9. *Provence*, 10. *Dauphine*, 11. *Lionois*, and 12. *Orléans*, for in this order they were ranked by the last King; over every one of which is placed a Governour, with such authority as the Lords Lieutenants have in *England* in their several Counties; all of them carrying Matters with a very high hand on the common People, and sometimes standing on terms also with the Kings themselves; but instrumental notwithstanding to the common Servitude, which hath been laid upon this Nation generally, as before is said.

The Power of the French King over his Subjects, being so transcendent, it cannot be, but that his Forces must be very great, and would be greater than they are, but that they dare not trust the common People with the use of Arms, for fear they should refuse to pay the accustomed Taxes, or forsake their Trades, or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords. But for an Essay of what a French King is able to do in this kind, it is said, that *Charles IX.* in Garrisons and several Armies in the Field, had 15000 Horse, and 100000 Foot, of his own Nation; besides 50000 Horse and Foot of *Swissers*, *Germans*, and others. Nor was this more than what was done by *Lewis XIII.* within few Years past, who had at once five Royal Armies in the Field, in *Italy*, *Spain*, *Germany*, and the *Belgick* Provinces; and kept no fewer than 12000 fighting Men in Pay and Action, for some Years together. Nor did this last King keep up the Military Power of *France* for Land-service only, at so high a pitch, but he also brought the Naval Power thereof into estimation: For whereas the French Kings before his Time, were very weak and inconsiderable on the Seas, and had scarce any Men of War, but what they either hired or borrowed from more Seafaring Nations; this King became so strong in Shipping in a little space, (I doubt some neighbouring Princes in the mean time looked not well about them) that he was able to rig and arm 1000 Sail of good Ships, and upwards, fit for any Service. But to return again to the Power at Land, in which the force of these Kings doth consist especially; it is conceived by some, and affirmed by others, that he is able to bring into the Field for a sudden Service, no less than 60 Companies of Men of Arms, 20 Cornets of Light Horse, and 5 Companies of *Harquebusers* on Horseback, which amount to 10000 in the total; together with 20 Ensigns of French Foot, and 40 of *Swissers*, and yet leave his Garrisons well manned, and his Ports and Frontiers well and sufficiently defended.

What the Revenues are in a State so subject to the Will and Pleasure of the King is hard to say; being also more or less, as the Times and their Occasions vary: according unto which, the Revenues of this Crown have much altered. *Lewis XI.* gathered one Million and a half of Crowns; *Francis I.* brought them to three Millions; his Successor *Henry II.* to six; *Charles IX.* to seven; *Henry III.* to ten; afterwards they were enhanced to fifteenth. And in the Time of *Henry IV.* the Treasurer of the Duke of *Mayenne* did not shame to say, That his Master had more improved the Revenue of *France*, than any King had done before him, advancing it from two to five Millions *Sterling*. A fair *Intrado*, but far short of those

infinite Sums which are exhausted from the People; whereof a tenth part comes not clearly to the King's Exchequer. But what need more be said, than that of *Louis XI.* who used to say, that *France* was a Meadow which he mowed every Year, and as often as he listed, And indeed their Impositions cannot but be great, since there are no less than 30000 Under-Officers employed to gather them. Hence I believe sprung that Will of *Maximilian* the Emperor, which was, that he (if it were possible) might be a God; and that having two Sons, the eldest might be a God after him; and the second, King of France. And this was also the cause, that in the Wars between *Charles V.* and *Francis I.* when the Emperor's Herald had bid defiance to the King, from *Charles* Emperor of Germany, King of Castile, Leon, Aragon, and Naples, Arch-Duke of Austria, &c. with the rest of his Titles; the King commanded the Herald to return the Challenge from *Francis* King of France; commanding him to repeat France as many times as the other had petty Earldoms in his Stile. And on the other side of no less Bravery and Fancie was the saying of the Duke of *Alva*, who being disswaded by one of his Commanders, from the War with the Netherlands, in regard of the great support they were like to have from the Queen of England, the King of Denmark, the Dukes of Saxony and Brunswick, the Earls of Nassau, &c. Tush Man! (said he) there will be more Kings and Princes on our side than theirs; that is to say, the Emperor of Mexico and Peru; the Kings of Naples, Sicily, and Sardinia, the Dukes of Burgundy and Milan, the Earls of Hapsburg, Charolois, &c. But letting pass these flashes and conceits of Wit; certain it is, (to say the truth) considering the compactedness thereof within it self, the admirable fertility of the Soil, the incredible multitudes of People, and the conveniency of situation betwixt Spain, Italy, and Germany; the Name of France might ballance all the others Titles.

The chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom were first of the *Gennet*, founded by *Charles Martel*, Mayre of the French Palace; and so called either from *Jane* his Wife, as *Haillan* would have it, or from the *Gennets* of Spain, over whom he triumphed at the Battel of *Tours*, as *Bellay* writeth. It ended in the Days of *S. Lewis*. The Knights of the Order wore a Ring; wherein was engraven the form of a *Gennet*.

2. Of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers, so called, *quasi pares inter se*; said to be instituted by *Charles the Great*. in his Wars against the *Saracens*. Six of these were of the Clergy, 1. The Archbishop and Duke of *Rhemes*, 2. the Bishop and Duke of *Laon*, 3. the Bishop and Duke of *Lan-gres*, 4. the Bishop and Earl of *Beauvois*, 5. the Bishop and Earl of *Noyon*, and 6. the Bishop and Earl of *Chalons*. And six others of the Temporality, 1. the Duke of *Burgundy*, 2. Duke of *Normandy*, 3. Duke of *Guienne*, 4. Earl of *Tholouse*, 5. Earl of *Champagne*, 6. Earl of *Flanders*. These are they so much memorized in the Legends of the old French Writers, but falsely, and on no ground; it being impossible that those should be of the foundation of *Charles the Great*, in whose Time there were none of those Dukes and Earls, except the Earl of *Tholouse* only. Therefore with better reason it may be thus concluded on, that the *Twelve Peers* were instituted by *Charles the Great*, tho' that Honour not by him appropriated unto any particular Estates and Titles; but left at large to be disposed of according to the personal Merit of the best deservers: it being most sure, that neither *Rowland* nor *Oliver*, nor Duke *Naimes*, nor *Ogier the Dane*, had any of the Titles above-mentioned. But for the fixing of this Dignity in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is said, by some, to have been done by *Hugh Capet*; others refer it to *Louis VII.* in whose Times all those Dukes and Earls were in *Rerum Natura*. But by whomsoever first ordained, the *Temporal Pairries* are extinct, and others of no definite number, created by the Kings, as they see occasion, to gratifie a well deserver. Only at Coronations, and such publick Triumphs, the custom is, to chuse some prin-

cipal Persons out of the Nobility, to represent those *Temporal Peers*; as at the Coronation of *Louis XIII.* the places of the *Temporal Peers* were supplied by the Princes of *Conde* and *Conty*, the Earl of *Souffons*, the Duke of *Nevers*, *Elbeuf*, and *Esperon*; the Ecclesiastical Peers remaining as at first they were. So that tho' *Charles the Great* might devise this Order, and institute the first *Twelve Peers*, as is commonly said; yet was not that high Honour fixed in any of those *Temporal Princes*, till the Times succeeding; but given to Men of several Houses, according to the King's Pleasure, and their well deservings.

3. Of the *Star*; begun by *John* King of France, Anno 1352. They wore about their Necks a Collar of Gold, at which hanged a *Star*; the words, *Monstrant Regibus astra viam*. This Order was disgraced by his Son *Charles*, in communicating it to his Guard; and so it ended.

4. Of *St. Michael*, instituted by King *Louis XI.* Anno 1409. It consisted first of 30 Knights, which afterwards were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damask, down to the Ground, with a Border interwoven with Cockle-shells of Gold, interlaced and furied with Ermins; with an Hood of crimson Velvet, and a long Tippet. About their Necks they wore a Collar woven with Cockle-shells; the word, *Immensi tremor Oceani*. It took the Name from the Picture of *St. Michael* conquering the Devil, which was annexed to the Collar. Some think, that the invocation of *St. Michael*, was in allusion to the tenth of *Daniel*. Others say, he took *St. Michael* in regard of an Apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the Seventh on *Orleans* Bridge, in his Wars against the English. The Seat thereof was first at *St. Michael's Mount*, in *Normandy*, a place which had held longest for the French Kings, against the English; but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. *St. Michael's Day* the time of the Solemnity; and *Mount St. Michael* the Name of the Herald which did attend upon the Order, which in most things are preceded that of the *Garter*.

5. Of the *Holy Ghost*; ordained by *Henry* the Third, Anno 1579. to rectifie the Abuses which had crept into that of *St. Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy Persons: to reduce which to its first esteem, he ordered that the Collar of *St. Michael* should be given to none who had not first been dignified with this of the *Holy Ghost*; into which none to be admitted, but such as can prove their Nobility by three Descents. Their Oath is, to maintain the *Romish Catholick* Religion, and persecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe, a black Velvet Mantle, powdered with Lillies and Flames of Gold; with a Cross and a Dove appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the Name of the *Holy Ghost*, because he was on *Whitsunday* chosen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit Orders, as those of the *Cock* and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorency*; of the *Porcupine*, by them of *Orleans*, and of the *Thistle*, by them of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of the French Kings, in the Days of *Pharamond*, and his three first Successors, were *Gules*, three Crowns, Or. *Clouis the Great* altered them to *Azure*. Some of *Flower de Lucis*, Or; and *Charles* the Sixth, to *Azure*, three *Flower de Lucis*, Or. In which last changes, they were followed by the Kings of England; varying the Coat of France, which they enquartered with their own, as the French Kings did; and by the Princes of the Blood, who bare the Arms of France, with some difference only, for the distinction of their Houses.

There are in FRANCE.

Archbishops 17.

Bishops 107.

And Universities 15. viz.

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. Paris. | 6. Caen. | 11. Montpellier. |
| 2. Orleans. | 7. Rhemes. | 12. Avignon. |
| 3. Bourget. | 8. Bourdeaux. | 13. Lions. |
| 4. Poictiers. | 9. Tholouse. | 14. Besancon. |
| 5. Angiers. | 10. Nismes. | 15. Dole. |

And so much for FRANCE.

THE

T H E

Pyrenean Hills.

Betwixt *France* and *Spain* are the Mountains called *Pyrenæi*, the reason of which Name is very differently reported. Some fetch the original thereof from *Pyrene*, a Nymph, the Daughter of one *Bebrix*; said by old Fblers to have been here ravished by *Hercules*. Others conceive they were so called, because much stricken with Lightnings, those *Celestial Flames*. But being the Name doth most undoubtedly proceed from a *Greek* Word which signifieth *Fire*. The more probable Opinion is, That they took this Name from being fired once by Shepherds, (these Hills being then extreemly overgrown with Woods:) the Flame whereof raged so extreemly, that the Mines of Gold and Silver being melted by the heat thereof, ran streaming down the Mountains many Days together, the fame of which invited many Foreign Nations to invade the Country. Which Accident they place 880 Years before the Birth of our Saviour. Hereunto *Diodorus Siculus*, an old *Greek* Writer, adds no small Authority; who speaking of this Conflagration, (as *Aristotle* and *Strabo* also do) addeth withal, Τὰ μὲν ὄρη διὰ συμβεβηκὸς καλεῖσθαι Πυρηνᾶα ἀπὸ τοῦ πυρὸς συχνῇ ἡμέρῃς ἐπιπλέγουσι: that is to say, these Mountains had the Name of *Pyrenees*, from the Fire which many Days together so extreemly raged. And this Tradition backed by so good Authority, I should rather credit, than fetch the derivation (as *Bochartus* doth) from *Purani*, a *Phœnician* word, signifying dark or shady; though true it is, that these Mountains anciently were very much overgrown with Woods, as before was noted.

But whatsoever was the reason why they had this Name, certain it is, that they have been of long time the natural Bound betwixt the great and puissant Monarchs of *France* and *Spain*; terminating (as it were) their Desires and Purposes against each other, as well as their Dominions; if any thing could put a Bound to the Designs of ambitious Princes. Yet not more separated by these Mountains, than by those Jealousies and Fears which they have long since harboured of one another; each of them manifestly affecting the Supreme Command. So that we may affirm of them, as the Historian doth of others on the like occasion, *Aut montibus, aut mutuo, metu separantur*. The Mountains also make the

Isthmus, or neck of Land, which conjoyns *Spain* to the rest of *Europe*: the *Cantabrian* Ocean fiercely beating on the North-west, the *Mediterranean* Sea more gently washing the South-east thereof. Their beginning at the Promontory now called *Oiarcho*, (the *Oasis* of *Ptolomy*) not far from the City of *Baionne* in *France*, bordering on the Sea *Cantabrick*, from thence continued South-eastwards, betwixt both Kingdoms, to *Cabo de Creux*, (by the Ancients called *Templum Veneris*) on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the City of *Rhoda*, now *Rosus*, one of the Port-Towns of *Catalonia*.

The whole length, not reckoning in the windings and turnings, affirmed to be eighty *Spanish* Leagues, at three Miles to a League. The highest part thereof, by the *Spaniards* called *Canigo*, and by the *Latins* named *Canis*: from which (as it is said by some) there is a prospect in a clear Day, into both the Seas. But whether this be true or not, (for I dare not build any belief upon it) it is no doubt the highest part of all these Mountains; and took this Name from the whiteness and hoariness thereof, as having on its top or summit, a Cap of Snow for most part of the Year. In which respect, as the *Alpes* took their Name, *ab Albo*; that, in the *Sabine* Dialect, being termed *Alpum*, which by the *Latins* was called *Album*, which before we noted; so did Mount *Lebanon*, in *Syria*, take its Name from *Leban*; which in the *Phœnician* Language signifieth White, and *Lebanab*, Whiteness. Such People as inhabit in this mountainous Tract, have been, and shall be mentioned in their proper places. I only add, and so go forwards towards *Spain*, that the barbarous People of these Mountains, compelled *Sertorius*, in his hasty passage into *Spain*, when he fled from the power of *Sylla's* Faction, to pay them Tribute for his Pass: to which when some of his Soldiers murmured, as thinking it dishonourable to a *Proconsul of Rome*, to pay Tribute to the barbarous Nations; the prudent General replied, that *he bought only Time*; a Commodity which they that deal in haughty Enterprises, must needs take up at any rate.

These Hills have acquir'd a considerable addition of Fame by the Treaty of Peace betwixt *France* and *Spain*, commonly called the *Treaty of the Pyrenees*.

O F S P A I N.

HAVING thus crossed the *Pyrenees*, we are come to *SPAIN*, the most Western part of all the Continent of *Europe*; environed on all sides with the Sea, except towards *France*; from which separated by the said Mountains; but more particularly bounded upon the North with the *Cantabrian*, on the West with the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South, with the Straits of *Gibraltar*, on the East with the *Mediterranean*, and on the North-east with those of *Pyrenees*. The figure of it compared, by *Strabo*, to an Ox's Hide spread upon the Ground; the neck whereof being that *Isthmus* which unites it to *France*.

This Country hath in divers Ages been as diversly named. 1. *Hesperia*, either from *Hesperus*, a supposed King hereof, or from *Hesperus* the Evening Star, under which it was supposed to be situate, as being the farthest Country Westward; to difference it from *Italy*, which many of the *Greek* Authors termed *Hesperia*, also named *Hesperia minor*. 2. It was called *Iberia*, either from the famous River *Iberus*; or from the *Iberi*, inhabiting that Country of *Asia* which we now call *Georgia*; as *Celiberia*, from the mixture of those *Asian Iberi*, and the *Celts* of *Gaul*; by which Name it occurreth often in *Appian* of *Alexandria*, and sometimes *Strabo*. 3. *Hispania*, as the soundest Judgments agree, from *Panús* the *Iberian* Captain. For the *Græcians* call it *Σπανία*, as may be proved in many places, that especially of the 15th to the *Romans*, ver. 28. Ἀπελευθερωμαὶ δὲ ὑμῶν εἰς τὴν Σπανίαν, *I will come by you into Spain*. No doubt but from the *Græcians*, the old *Romans* borrowed the Name of *Spania*, which they often used; to which the *Spaniards*, according to their custom, adding *E*, (as in *Escola*, *Escluda*, &c.) made it *Esmania*, and now *Hispania*. In like manner, as the famous City of *Sevil*, called at first, *Spalis*, (according hereunto, the Bishop hereof, in the Council of *Eliberis*, subscribed himself by the Name of *Sabinus Spalensis*) in tract of time was called *Hispalis*. And yet I must not pretermitt the Fancy of *Bochartus*, who fetching the Names of most places from the *Punick* Language, will have it to be called *Spanija*, or *Sphanija*, by the *Carthaginians*, or *Phenicians*, at their first discovery, from *Saphan*, which in the *Punick* Tongue signifies a *Conie*, with which that Country much abounded in the former times, the *Romans* being hence furnished with them. Let the Reader it like as he list.

The greatest length hereof is reckon'd at 800 Miles; the breadth, where it is broadest at 500; the whole circumference, 2480 *Italian* Miles. But *Marina* measuring the compass of it by the bendings of the *Pyrenees*, and the creeks and windings of the Sea, makes the full circuit of it to be 2816 Miles of *Italian* measure. And though according to the smallest computation, it be above 460 Miles in compass, more than *France*; yet it is far short thereof in numbers of People: *France* being thought to contain in it 15 Millions of living Souls; whereas *Spain* is reckon'd to contain but 8 Millions only, which is little more than half the number of the *French*. The reasons of which disproportions, are, 1. The con-

tinual Wars which they had for 900 Years together against the *Moors* in their own Country; by which they were consumed in the very growth. 2. The Expulsion of so many thousand Families of *Jews* and *Moors*, 124000 Families of the one, in the time of *Ferdinand the Catholic*; and 110000 of the other by King *Philip the Third*; which was as the lopping off of a main Limb from the Body Politick, though without any loss to the Ecclesiastical. 3. The unnecessary Wars maintained against all the rest of Christendom, ever since the Time of *Charles the Fifth*, out of meer ambition, before they were well cured of their former Wounds. 4. The infinite Plantations made by them in the *East* and *Western-Indies*, and all along the Sea-coasts of *Africa*; and those great Garrisons maintained in *Milain*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, the *Low-Countries*, and their Towns in *Africk*; consisting, for the most part, of natural *Spaniards*. 5. The barrenness of the Country in many places, unable to sustain great Multitudes, but made more barren than it would be, for want of Men to labour and manure the Land. And 6. and last of all, the Imputency of both Sexes for Generation; the Men being generally more hot upon their Lusts, than able for Generation; and the Women, for the most part, beginning to be Mothers so extremely young, that Nature is decayed and spent in them, before they have run half their course. And 'tis a most true and undoubted Maxim, That the greatness of Cities, and populousness of Kingdoms and Commonwealths, do much depend on the generative Virtue of the Men, and the nutritive Virtue of the Soil in which they live.

It is situate in the more Southernly part of the Northern temperate Zone, and almost in the midst of the fourth and sixth Climates; the longest Day being fifteen Hours and a quarter in length, in the most Northern parts hereof; but in the extream South, near to *Gibraltar*, not above fourteen. Which situation of this Country, rendreth the Air here very clear and calm, seldom obscured with Mists and Vapours; and not so much subject to Diseases as more Northern Regions.

They are a mixt People, descending from the *Goths*, *Moors*, *Jews*, and the ancient *Spaniards*. From the *Jews* they borrow Superstition; from the *Moors* Melancholy; Pride from the *Goths*; and from the old *Spaniards*, the desire of Liberty. The *Jews* first planted here by the Emperor *Adrian*; who having totally banished them their native Country, sent them hither to dwell; the total number of which Plantation is said to amount to 50000 Men, Women, and Children; and yet their numbers much increased in the time of *Ulidor*, *Ulet*, the great Caliph of the *Saracens*; who having made a Conquest of *Spain*, sent hither 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, the better to assure it to him. And so we have the coming in of the *Moors* and *Jews*; the Conquest of it by the *Goths*, and their settling here, shall be shewn hereafter; which several Nations, by long time, and intermarriages together, were at last incorporated into one. For their Condition, it is said that they are highly conceited of themselves, great Braggards, and extremely Proud, even in the lowest

ebb of Fortune. Which last appeareth by the Tale of a poor Cöbler on his Death-bed; who (as *Basilus* in his *Icon Animorum*, reporteth the Story) commanded his eldest Son, coming to him for his last Blessing, *to endeavour to retain the Majesty worthy so great a Family; Memoratis* (said he) *in maiestatem assurgere familia tua dignam.* The same Author relateth another Story to the like purpose. A Woman of this Country, attended on by three of her Brats, went a begging from Door to Door; some French Merchants travelling that way, and pitying her case, offered her to take into their Service the bigger of her Boys: but she, proud, though poor, scorning as she said, that any of her Lineage should endure a Prenticeship, returned this Answer, *Qui aut tu, aut ego, sciamus, in quæ fata sit genitus? For ought she, or any knew, her Son* (simply as he stood there) *might live to be King of Spain.* Not much unlike to these, is that Tale of a Spanish Cavaliero; who being for some Faults by him committed, whipped through the principal Streets of *Paris*, and keeping a sober pace, was advised by a Friend to make more haste, that he might the sooner be out of his Pain. But he, half in Choler, replied, *That he would not lose the least step of his pace for all the whipping in Paris.* For indeed, their Gate is Genet-wise, very stately and majestical.

Of Temperature they are hot and dry, which makes them very much given to Women, and yet not very able for Generation. And this strong inclination unto Women which they find in themselves, makes them so jealous of their Wives, that they permit them not to walk abroad, but when they go to Church; and then too veiled and so hooded, one can hardly see them; and not that neither only, but attended with their Damosels, and some trusty she-friend, that is to give an account of them at their coming back. *Mendoza*, an Ambassador from Spain in Queen Elizabeth's Time, used to find fault with the promiscuous sitting of Men and Women in the Church used here in England, accounting it to be a very great incentive unto *Lasciviousness.* To whom Doctor Dale, one of the Masters of the Requests, is said to have replied, That indeed in Spain, where the People even in the time of Divine Service, could not abstain from impure Thoughts and unclean Gestures, that mingled kind of sitting was not so allowable; but the English were of another Temper, and did not find any inconvenience in it. And it is possible, this humour of Jealousie might be derived on them from the Moors, who in the strict guarding of their Women, were the Spaniards Tutors; it being Death in *Barbary*, to this very Day, for any Man to see one of the *Xeriffes* Concubines; and for them too, if when they see a Man, though but through a Casement, they do not presently cry out. A frenzy which much rageth in most Southern People, but not predominant in the Northern; who do not only suffer their Wives to sit with other Men in the Church, but even in the open and common Baths also; two things which a true Spaniard would rather die an hundred Deaths than give consent to. But though the Women are not permitted to stir abroad, the Men take liberty enough, and are as good smell-Fests as in any Country: it being observed of them by a very good Writer, that howsoever in their own Houses they are temperate and content with little, yet when they go unto a Feast, they are as gluttonous, dainty, and desirous to eat good Chear, as any People whatsoever.

But not to conceal their Virtues, and make our selves merry at their Follies, (wherein all other Nations have a share with them) they are questionless a People very grave in their Carriages, in offices of Piety very devout, and to their King very obedient, whose Greatness they affect more cordially, than any Subjects in the World: exact in doing Justice upon all Offenders, which commonly they administer without partiality: indulgent unto one another, and of their Duties to their Betters not unmindful. But that which deserveth the greatest commendation in them, is an unwearyed Patience in suf-

fering Adversities, accompanied with a resolution to overcome them. A noble quality, of the which in their Italian Discoveries they shewed excellent proofs, and received as glorious Rewards; withal, of very daring Spirits, great Undertakers for the most part; and to say truth, the greatest enlargers of their Dominions, (according to the advantage of their location) of any Nation under Heaven. For having first either exterminated or subdued the Moors, which for many hundreds of Years were possessed of this Continent, the Spaniards lying on the Mediterranean, added to their Estate the Islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca*, the Kingdoms of *Sicily* and *Sardinia*, and the Realm of *Nipis*; the Castilians lying on both sides of the Streights, first took in some of the opposite Towns on the Coast of *Africa*, next, conquered the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Islands*; and finally, discovered and subdued the most part of *America*: the *Portugals* lying with a long Sea-coast on the Western Ocean, possessed themselves of the *Sizores*, most of the Sea-Towns of *Morocco*, and the Land of *Gabon*; and doubling the Cape of good Hope, made themselves Masters of many Ports and Islands of great consequence in the *East Indies*; adding thereto, in fine, the large Country of *Brasil*, in that part of *America* which lay fittest for them: and the *Navarros* (to conclude, though locked up by their greater Neighbours from all Trade at Sea, and consequently enlarging their Dominions that way) adding to their Estates the most part of *Gascogne*, the Palatinate of *Champagne*, the Earldom of *Eureux*, with many fair and large Possessions in the Realm of *France*, thereupon depending.

In reference to the French, it is said, that the French are wiser than they seem; and the Spaniards seem wiser than they are; wherein they agree with many particular Men of other Nations, who according to the Philosopher, *Sapientes potius cupiunt videri & non esse, quam esse & non videri.*

In matters of War, the Spaniards are observed to be generally too heavy, slow, and dull; the French too heady and precipitate; the one losing as many fair occasions by delays, as the other overthroweth by too much haste; but between them both they make one good Soldier; who, according to the present Opportunities, is to make use of the Spur of Courage, or the Bit of Respite. But of the strange and many differences in Temper, Humour, and Affections, between the Spaniards and the French, we have spoke more at large already when we were in France.

The Women are sober, loving their Husbands or Friends; wonderful delicate, curious in Painting or Perfuming: And though they have Wine in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying therein the old English Proverb, that *none are worse shod than the Skoo-makers Wife.* Herein in worse condition than the Women of France; who, though they are restrained from Wine before their Marriage; yet, after that, they take what liberty they list, and are no more restrained from it than the other Sex. But this is the least liberty which the French Women have above the Spanish: these being so watched and over-looked, that it is hardly possible for them to hold speech with any Man, in business of most importance, and much less in matters of Civilities only; those having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the presence of their Husbands, without any distrust or interruption. Heretofore they were wondrous strong; and, beyond belief, patient of the throws of Child-bed: *Strabo* relating how one of these Women being hired for Harvest-work, and finding her travail come upon her, because she would not lose her Days Wages, withdrew her self into a Bush; where, being eased of her burden, she returned from one Labour to another. And many of them, at this Day, use not to keep their Chambers above three Days after their Delivery, and then apply themselves to their Household-business, without either danger or delay.

The

The Language is not the same in all places, though all called the *Spanish*. In *Portugal*, *Catalogne*, and some parts of *Valentia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*; who in these parts have had much Trade and Negotiation. In *Granada*, and some parts of *Andalusia*, it partakes much of the *Moor*; and in the Mountains of *Alpuxarras*, the *Arabick* or *Moorish* Language still remains in use. The Countries bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and *Cantabrian* Ocean, (but *Biscay* specially) have much in them of the Language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made subject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all, is the vulgar *Spanish*, or *Castilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latin*; *Breerwood* in his *Enquiries*, reporting, that he hath seen a Letter, every word whereof was both good *Latin* and good *Spanish*. *Merula* shews a Copy of the like, pag. 300. By reason of which consonancy with the *Latin*, the *Spaniards* call their Language, *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue, are generally the *Gotick*, *Arabick*, and old *Spanish*, and in some places the *French* also, as before is said; those People having made great Conquests, and having had great Negotiations in this Country. It is said to be a very lofty swelling Speech, as if it were fashioned to command.

And as their Language, so their Laws do owe a great part of themselves to the Laws of *Rome*; the Civil or Imperial Laws being generally used amongst them, but intermixt with many Customs of the *Goths*, and the Edicts or Constitutions of their several Kings. Those of the *Goths* being first committed unto Writing, and reduced to order by *Euricus* the first King of the *Goths* in *Spain*: those of *Castile* digested by the command of *Ferdinand III.* Anno 1296. into Seven Books, called the *Partidas*; not finished till the time of his Son *Alphonso*. *Leges Hispaniarum quas partidas vocant, in volumen redegit, as Tarapha* hath told us of him in his *Spanish* History. The like done by King *James* the First, for the Realm of *Arragon*, Ann. 1248. respectively confirmed and ratified by the King's succeeding. Authorized to be read, disputed on in the publick Schools, as well as the *Decretals*, the *Code*, the *Pandect*, or any other part of the Civil or Canon Laws.

The Soil hereof, where it is fertile and productive of the Fruits of Nature, yields not to any part of *Europe*, for Delight, Pleasures, and Commodities; which here appear in greater ripeness and perfection, than in other places. But, for the most part, it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbered with wild and rocky Mountains, or of so hot a nature, and so sandy withal, that it is not very fit for Tillage; and so deficient in Water, as not good for Pasturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremy*, where is is good, no Country better; where bad and barren, few so inconvenient, and not any worse. But this defect of outward Beauty and Commodities, is recompenced by those within, affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and some Mines of Silver; of which last so abundant in preceding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations. And it is said of *Annibal*, that out of one Mine only in the Country of the *Turdetani*, (now part of *Andalusia*) he received 3000 Pound weight daily, for a long time together. The principal Commodities which they vend into other Countries, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Licoras, a fine sort of Wool, Cork, Rosin, Limons, Raisins, Oranges, and Fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the Staff of Life, they are so defective, that they receive the greatest part of what they spend, from *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *France*. Their Cattel neither fair nor many, the Country being not able to breed them; so that their Diet is on Salads, and Fruits of the Earth; every Gentleman being limited what Flesh he shall buy for himself and his Family, which if he send for to the Butcher, or Poulterer, by the smallest Child, able to do the Errand for him, he is sure not to be defrauded in price or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant Fare, as if they surfeited

with the plenty of all Provisions: handsomly checked in that fond humour, by that worthy Soldier, *Sir Roger Williams*, of whom it is said, that hearing once a *Spaniard* thus foolishly bragging of his Country Salads, he gave him this answer, *You have indeed good Sawce in Spain, but we have dainty Beefs, Veals, and Muttons to eat with that Sawce; and as God made Beasts to live upon the Grasse of the Earth, so he made Men to live upon them.* And it is observed, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good Dish to his Supper, you shall find all the Feathers scattered before his Door by the next Morning.

And as it is in private Houses, so for travelling also, the Inns and *Vents* of this Country are very ill provided; infomuch, that most Men that would not go supperless to Sleep, carry their Provision at their Saddle-bows, and Men of worth their Bedding also. So poor and mean is the Entertainment in these places.

Spain is in many places, not to say most, very thin of People, and almost desolate. The Causes are first a bad Religion. 2. The Tyrannical Inquisition. 3. The multitude of Whores. 4. The barrenness of the Soil. 5. The wretched Laziness of the Inhabitants, who stalk about in long Cloaks and Swords. 6. The Expulsion of the *Jews* and *Moors*; the first of which were planted there by *Adrian* the Emperor. 7. Wars and Plantations. In all the Towns, but especially in the South and West parts of *Spain*, a great many Ruins of Houses are seen. About a quarter of a League round a Town you shall see the Ground plowed, and all the rest neglected. There is little Hay, and above half the Kingdom is Mountains. *Mr. Willoughby* in his Travels, P. 493. This Gentleman travelled all over *Spain*.

Here lived in ancient times, the Giants *Geryon*, and *Cacus*, which were quelled by *Hercules*; and in the flourishing of the *Roman* Empire, 1. *Seneca* the Tragedian, and 2. the *Philosopher* of the same Name; a Man of that happy Memory, that he could repeat 2000 Names in the same order that they were rehearsed; as also 3. *Quintilian* the Orator, 4. *Lucan*, and 5. *Martial*, excellent in their kinds. 6. *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer, 7. *Trogus Pompeius*, with his Epitomator; 8. *Justin*, and 9. *Paulus Orosius* the Historian, this last a Christian. In the middle times, 10. *Isidore*, Bishop of *Sevil*, 11. *Julian*, and 12. *Hildephonsus*, Bishop of *Toledo*; and after them, *Eulogius* the Saint and Martyr; Men learned for the times they lived in. Then for the later Ages, 1. The renowned Cardinal *Francis Ximenes*, and 2. *Arias Montanus*, famous for the Editions of the Holy Bible. 3. *Masius*, a learned Commentator. 4. *Orosius*, well seen in the *Latin* Elegancies; and before all, as well in industry as time. 5. *Tostatus*, Bishop of *Avila*; a Man so copious and industrious in his Writings, that it is thought he writ more Sheets than he lived Days. But of late times we find but few of their Works which have passed the Mountains; the *Latin* which they writ, being very coarse, and favouring too much of the *Schoolman*, (wherein their excellency consists) and therefore they set out their Works most commonly in their own Tongue only. The chief for *Soldiery* amongst them, were formerly *Vniatus*, who held out so long against the *Romans*. *Trajan* and *Theodosius*, both *Roman* Emperors. *Theodorick* the Second, King of the *Goths*, the victorious Conqueror of the *Suevians*. *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Cid Ruis Diaz*, famous for their Achievements against the *Moors*; and in late time, *Gonsalvo* the Great Captain who subdued *Naples*; *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Alva*, who conquered *Portugal*, &c.

The *Christian* Faith, if we may believe the old *Spanish* Tradition, was first here planted by *St. James* the Apostle, within four Years after the death of our Redeemer. To which Tradition, though they held very constant a long time together; yet of late Days, *Baronsius*, and other learned Men of the Church of *Rome*, do most deservedly reject it. That *St. Paul* had a purpose of coming hither, is evident in his 15th Chapter to the *Romans*; and that

he did come hither accordingly, is positively affirmed by St. Chrysostom, Theodoret, and divers others of the Fathers; which was in Anno 61. as Baronius thinketh Nor did St. Peter want his part in this great Service, but joined with St. Paul; though not in the Journey, yet in the sending of Bishops and other Presbyters, to second the beginnings made by that Apostle. For it is said expressly in the *Martyrologies*, that Cresiphon, Torquatus, Secundus, Cecilius, Judaeus, Hefychius, and Euphrasius, being at Rome, ordained Bishops by the two Apostles, *ad prædicandum verbum Dei in Hispanias directi*, were dispatched into Spain to preach the Gospel. Bishops, most likely, of those Cities where they suffered Death; the Names of which occur in the *Martyrology*. Under the Empire of the Goths the Faith of CHRIST, which at their coming hither they found right and Orthodox, was defiled with *Arrianism*: not ejurated till the Year 588. when that whole Nation did submit to more Catholic tendencies. But Spain being conquered by the Moors under the conduct of Musa, Lieutenant-General to Uldor Ulit, the Arabian Caliph; and Mahometanism over-spreading the whole face of the Country; such Christians as remained under their Obedience, but few and inconsiderable both for Power and Quality, had the Name of *Musarabes*. Encreasing in Estate and Numbers, by the fortunate Successes of the King of Leon and Navarre, and other Christian Principalities growing up apace; they still retained their old Name, and their ancient Service, distinct from that observed in the Church of Rome; this being called the *Musarabique*, the other the *Gregorian Missal*; the one pretending S. Isidore Archbishop of Sevil, the other S. Gregory Pope of Rome, for the Author of it. And it continued in this state, till the taking of the City and Kingdom of Toledo, by Alfonso King of Castile and Leon, Anno 1083. At what time Bernard a French-man being made Arch-bishop of that City, and Primate of Spain, endeavoured the introduction of the Roman or Gregorian Service; but therein was opposed by the other Prelates, and generally by all the People, sufficiently tenacious of their ancient Forms. At last it was concluded (as the Story telleth us) to commit the decision of the Controversie to a fiery tryal: both Books being cast into the Fire, the *Gregorian* leaping presently out, and the *Musarabique* remaining unhurt in the midst of the Flames. Convinced by this experiment, that both Forms were pleasing to Almighty God, they yielded so far to the desires of the King, (who was zealous in it) that the *Musarabique* being retained in six of the Churches of Toledo, (where it is sung to this Day in a Chappel of the great Church, called *Corpus Domini*) the *Gregorian* or Roman Service should be entertained in the rest of Spain. According unto which Decree, the *Musarabique* (but not until some tract of time) came to be disused; and the *Gregorian* Service first admitted in the Cathedral of Toledo, May 29. An. 1091. And after by degrees, in the rest of the Country.

Since that, they have been constant to the Rites of the Roman Church, and of the Faith and Doctrine therein professed, notwithstanding the great intermixture of Jews and Moors, especially since the setting up of the Inquisition; devised at first about the Year 1478. by Pedro Gonzalez de Mendoza, Archbishop of Toledo, against such converted Jews and Moors as did return again to their Superstition. But he, and those that had the first execution of it, being found so cruel, that, in the compass of nine Years, no fewer than 3000 Families had been destroyed in that Diocese only. In the Year 1481. it was thought fit to moderate the rigour of it, and to commit the managing thereof to some Jacobins or Dominican Friars; who, in the first place, were to have an Eye unto such Apostates, and to Hereticks, Magicians, Sodomites, Blasphemers of the Name of God, &c. confirmed in this Authority by Pope Sixtus the Fourth. This Institution in it self was not only necessary, (as the condition of Affairs then was) but exceeding laudable, had it

been kept within the bounds at first intended. But of late, instead of being used on the Jews and Moors, it hath been turned upon the Protestants, and that with such violence and extremity of Torture, that it is counted the greatest Tyranny, and severest kind of Persecution under Heaven; insomuch that many Papists, who would willingly die for their Religion, abhor the very name and mention of it, and to the Death withstand the bringing in of this Slavery among them. This is it that made the People of Arragon and Naples rebel, Countries where the People are all of the Papal side: And this was it which caused the irremediable revolt of the Low-Countries; the greatest part of that Nation, at the time of their taking Arms, being *Romish Catholics*; yet it is planted and established in Spain and all Italy, (Naples and Venice excepted) the managing thereof committed to the most zealous and rigorous Friars in the whole Pack: The least suspicion of Heresy, affinity, or commerce with Hereticks, reproving the Lives of the Clergy, keeping any Books, or Editions of Books, prohibited, or discounting in matters of Religion, are Offences sufficient. Nay, they will charge Mens Consciences, under the pain of Damnation, to detect their nearest and dearest Friends, if they do but suspect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great secrecy and severity; for first, the Parties accused shall never know their Accuser, but shall be constrained to reveal their own Thoughts and Affections. 2. If they be but convinced of any Error in any of their Opinions, or be gain sayed by two Witnesses, they are immediately condemned. 3. If nothing can be proved against them, yet shall they with infinite Tortures and Miseries be kept in the House divers Years, for a terror unto others. And, 4. If they escape the first brunt with many Torments, and much Anguish; yet the second Question, or Suspicion, brings Death remediless. And as for Torments, and kinds of Death, Phalaris and his Fellow-Tyrants, come far short of these Blood-hounds. And if at last a Man proves innocent, yet all the Estate he has in the World is irrecoverably lost, and the Family undone, how Catholic soever it proves to be. See the History of the Inquisition of Goa lately published.

The administration of this Office, for the more orderly regiment and dispatch thereof, distributed into twelve Courts or supreme Tribunals, for the several Provinces of Spain; no one depending on another, but in some sort subordinate to the general Inquisition, remaining in the Court near the King's Person, which hath a kind of superintendency over those Tribunals: in all of which those of the secular Clergy sit as Judges, the Friars being only used as Promoters to inform the Court, and bring more Grift unto the Mill. Of these Inquisitors, every one hath the Title of Lord, and are a great terror to the neighbouring Peasants. There goeth a Tale, how one of their Lordships desirous to eat of the Pears which grew in a poor Man's Orchard not far off, sent for the Man to come unto him, which put the poor Soul into such a fright, that he fell sick upon it, and kept his Bed: being afterwards informed, that all his Lordship's business with him was to request a Dish of Pears, he pulled up the Tree by the Roots, and carried it unto him with the Fruit upon it. And when he was demanded the reason of that rash and improvident Action, he return'd this Answer, *That he would never keep that thing in his House, which should grieve any of their Lordships cause to send further after him.* Certain it is, that by this means the People of this Kingdom are so kept under, that they dare not hearken after any other Religion, than what their Priests and Friars shall be pleased to teach them; or entertain the Truth if it come amongst them; or call in question any of those palpable and gross Impostures which every Day are put upon them.

For by this means, the People of this Kingdom have been, and still are punctual followers of the Church of Rome,

Rome, and that too in the very Errors and Corruptions of it; taking up their Religion on the Pope's Authority; and therein so tenacious or pertinacious, that the King doth suffer none to live in his Dominions, which profess not the *Roman Catholick* Religion: Of which they have been, since the times of *Luther*, such avowed Patrons, that one of the late Popes being sick, and hearing divers Men to moan his approaching end, uttered some words to this effect: *My Life* (said he) *can nothing benefit the Church, but pray for the prosperity of the King of Spain, as its chief Supporter.* And though he spoke these words of King *Philip II.* yet they hold good in his Successors ever since; being esteem'd the greatest Patrons and Protectors of the *Catholick Cause*; which is indeed the proper interest of this King. For seeing that they have framed to themselves an hope of the *Western Monarchy*; and finding no fitter means of enlarging their own *Temporal*, than by concurring with the Pope in upholding his *Spiritual Empire*, they have linked themselves most fast to that See. To which end, they have taken upon them to be the Executioners of the Pope's *Excommunications*; by which Office, *Ferdinand the Catholick* surprised *Navarre*, not without hope of working the like effect in some course of time, on the rest of the interdicted Estates of *Europe*; as may be seen by the eager following of the *French War* against *Henry the Fourth*, till he had reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*; and the like War managed for many Years together against *Queen Elizabeth of England.* And the pursuit of this *Spanish Monarchy* is so hotly followed by the *Jesuits*, who in all their Perswasions speak not more of One God, or of One Pope, than they do of One King; that they hold it forth for the only means to unite the differences of the Church, and subdue the great Enemy of Religion, the *Turk.* Nor is this only a Conjecture, or a Project of the *Jesuits* only, but a Design avowed and declared in Print, that all the World may take notice of it: and that too in a Book not only licensed by the *Provincial* of the *Dominicans*, and the *Supreme Council* of the *Inquisition*, but by order from the *Lords of the Council*, with the King's *Privilege* and *Comendation* prefixed before it. The Book entituled, *La Conveniencia de los dos Monarquias Catolicas*, &c. The agreement of the two *Catholick Monarchies* of *Rome* and *Spain*, set out in the Year 1612. by one *John de Puente.* In the *Frontispiece* whereof are set two *Scutcheons*, the one bearing the *Cross-Keys* of *Rome*, the other the Arms of *Castile* and *Leon*; In *vinculo pacis*, for the Motto. On the one side of this, there is a Portraiture representing *Rome*, with the Sun shining over it, and darting his Beams upon the Keys, with this Inscription, *Luminare majus ut præsit Orbi & Urbi*, the greater Light to govern the City and the World. On the other side, another Image designing *Spain*, with the Moon shining over that, and darting her Rays on the *Spanish Scutcheon*, with this Impress, *Luminare minus ut subdatur Urbi & dominetur Orbi*, i. e. The lesser Light made to be subject to the City, (understand of *Rome*) but to govern all the World besides. Over all, in the top of the Front or Title Page, in Capital Letters, *Fecit Deus duo Luminaria magna*, God made two great Lights. The whole Book being an indifferent large *folio*, is but a Comment on this Text, which for substance is contained wholly in the *Frontispiece*, but more at large discoursed of in the Volume it self; and plainly shews what is intended, and by whom. And yet perhaps the *Pope* and the *Jesuits* both, may fail in that which is the main of their expectation; and if the Project take effect, the *Spaniard* will then write himself *Luminare majus*, and make the *Pope* content with *Luminare minus*, for his part of the Spoil; and glad to borrow all his Light from the Sun of *Spain.* For, though the Kingdom of *Spain*, and Popedom of *Rome* be thus fraudly combined, yet herein the Popes have over-shot themselves; in that leaning so much to the *Spaniard*, and so immoderately encreasing his Dominion, they do in a manner stand at his Devotion, and may, peradven-

ture, in the end, be forced to cast themselves into his Arms, as their good Lord and Master: For certain it is, that the *Spanish Agents* have openly braved the *Cardinals*, and told them, That they hoped to see the Day wherein the King should offer the Pope half a dozen to be made *Cardinals*, and he not dare to refuse any; and that they themselves should chuse no *Pope* but one of their Master's naming. So great an inconvenience it is, more than possible it may be to the *Popes*, in making this Prince the one and only String to their Bow; and fastning the dependancies of his *Roman Catholicks* upon him alone, excluding *France* and all the other Kings in *Christendom*, of the *Romish Party*, from the honour of it. And yet so firm they are to their *Spanish Principles*, that no Favours either granted to their Persons or Religion, are of value with them, or thought worthy of their Acceptations, if it come from any other *Fountain of Grace*, than the *Court of Spain.* Infomuch as I have heard from a great Minister of State, that when some Favours were obtained for the *English Papists*, on the Treaty of the Match with *Spain*, they were ready with great greediness to embrace the same. But when the same Favours were obtained for them on the Treaty with *France*, not a Man of them would accept them: For which some of their Chiefs being asked the reason, returned this Answer; *That by applying themselves to the French they might lose the Spaniard; and it were great improvidence in them, to change an old and constant Friend, who had never failed them, for one of whose Affections they had no assurance; and such a one as by tolerating Hereticks in his own Dominions, shewed that he was no fit Patron for the Catholicks to rely upon.*

The Affairs of *Spain* are, within forty Years last past, reduced by the *French*, the Revolt of the *Portuguese*, the Infancy of the late King, and the Factions which then obstructed their Counsels, to that low ebb, that the dream of an universal Monarchy may seem long since ended, and their Cares turn'd upon the preserving what they have left, rather than in conquering more, they having been great losers in all their late Wars.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Tagus*, now *Tajo*, celebrated for his Golden Sands; of which the Scepter of the old Kings of *Portugal* is affirmed (by some Writers) to be made; but I have not Faith enough to believe the same. The Head of it is in the Mountain *Seira Molina*, near to *Cuenca*; from the which it runneth by the City *Toledo*; and then smoothly gliding by the Walls of *Lisbon*, doth pay his tribute to the Western Ocean. 2. *Ana*, (now *Guadiana*) which arising about the same place, runneth afterwards under the Ground the space of 15 Miles: and hence the *Spaniards* use to brag, that they have a Bridge whereon 10000 Cattel daily feed. An accident common to many other Rivers; as to *Mole*, a small River in *Surrey*; *Erafinus*, in *Greece*; and *Lycus*, in *Anatolia*, of which last, thus *Ovid*.

*Sic ubi terreno Lycus est epotus hiatu,
Existit procul hinc, alioque renascitur ore.*

So *Lycus*, swallowed by the gaping Ground,
At a new Mouth, far off, is rising found.

But having gotten up again, it loseth it self without recovery in the Western Ocean, on the South of *Portugal*, which is separated from *Estremadura*. 3. *Bætis*, now called *Guadalquivir*, (which in the *Arabick* Language signifieth a great River) ariseth out of the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and passing by *Corduba* and *Sevil*, disburdeneth it self into the Southern Ocean, at the Haven of *S. Lucars de Barameda*. 4. *Iberus*, *Ebro*, which having its Head amongst the Mountains of *Biscay*, passeth on Eastwards by *Saragossa* and *Tortosa*, into the *Mediterranean*; the whole course thereof being 460 Miles, of which it is navigable 200. A River of such note in the time of the *Romans*, that it divided this whole Country, into *Citeriorem* and *Uteriorem*; of which more anon. 5. *Due-*

rus, now *Duero*, which rising in the same Mountain, passeth through *Portugal*, and so unto the Western or *Atlantick* Ocean. 6. *Minus*, *Adinbo*, of which more in *Portugal*.

Chief Mountains, next unto the *Pyrenees* spoken of before, 1. The *Cantabrian* Mountains, called by *Pliny*, *Juga Asturum*; which rising out of a spar or branch of the *Pyrenees*, overspread the Provinces of *Biscay*, *Asturia*, and *Gallicia*, (coasting along the shores of the *Cantabrian* Ocean) where at last they end. 2. *Idubeda*, *Tubal-da*, or *Aurantiis Saltus*, so called by *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers; which beginning not far from the head of the River *Iberus*, followeth the course of that River by the City of *Burgos*, and endeth not far from the influx of it into the *Mediterranean*. 3. *Sierra Morena*, by *Cæsar* called *Saltus Castulonensis*, and *Mons Marianus* by *Ptolemy*; which beginning about the Town *Alcoraz*, coasting along the right-hand shores of the River *Batis*, to the South Seas. 4. *Sierra Nevada*, by *Ptolemy* called *Mons Illipulus*, and *Orospeida* by *Strabo*; but by the *Moors*, the Mountains of *Alpuxaras*. A chain of Hills which thwart the Kingdom of *Granada* from East to West, and amongst which the people to this day speak the *Arabick* Tongue.

The Country is said to have been inhabited by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*. Of whom it is affirmed in the *Berosus* of *Frier Annius*, and by such Chronologers as he hath imposed on by the name of that Author, that in the twelfth year of *Nimrod*, which was 140 years after the Flood, he seated himself in the *Asturia's*, a part of *Spain*, and there built the Town of *S. Uval*. A device so foolish and absurd, that it is not to be honoured with a confutation: for either *Tubal* must come hither by Sea or by Land; if by Land, then must he in the compass of a year or two travel not less than 4000 miles (so far it is, at least, from *Biscay* to the valley of *Shinar*) with Women and Children, through most unpassable Woods and Mountains, which no understanding Man can give belief to. If by Sea, besides the short time he had to provide shipping for so great a company, and so long a Voyage, nothing is more improbable to a sober man than that he should leave *Italy* and *Africk* upon either hand; or pretermitt the opportunity of possessing *Valentia*, *Andaluzia*, *Portugal*, being fruit Countries, to fix himself in the most mountainous, woody, and barren Province of all this Continent. Yet most of our *Berosians* are so confident in it, that they make him the first King of *Spain*; from whom to *Gargarus Melicola* they numbred

25 Kings more, who lasted 988 years: the chief of which are said to be, 1. *Hesperus*, who subdued also *Italy*, named both Countries *Hesperia*; but so that *Italy* was called *Hesperia* the greater, and *Spain* *Hesperia* the less. 2. *Hispanus*, whence they conceit the name of *Hispania* to be derived. 3. *Tagus*, 4. *Batus*, and 5. *Alnus*, whence the three Rivers in *Spain*, so called, must by all means derive their names. 6. *Idubeda*, Godfather, no doubt, to the great Mountain so named. 7. *Sicilius*, from whom the Isle of *Sicily* is said to take denomination. 8. *Hispalius*, who is reported to have built the City *Sevil*, or *Hispalis*. 9. *Brigus*, the Founder of *Flaviobriga*, and other Towns ending in *Briga*. 10. *Lusus*, who gave name to *Lusitania*, now *Portugal*. The Catalogue of which Kings, I desire no man to believe farther, than that of our own State from *Brutus* to *Cassibeline*. A Catalogue so ill contrived, that whereas *Justin* speaks of *Habis*, and *Herodatus* of *Agurthoniis*, *Macrorius* of *Heron*, and *Plutarch* of *Indibilis*, all Kings of *Spain*; none of these are mention'd in it. So that the coming of *Tubal* (in person) hither, is a silly vanity; though we deny not but the *Spaniards*, or some Nations of them, may derive their Pedigree from *Tubal*; as being the descendants of the *Iberi*, whom *Josephus* saith to have been anciently called *Thobelos*: a Name in which are all the Radical Letters of *Tubal*, and which disleth not much from it in sound. For somewhat before the supposed time of *Gargarus Melicola*, the *Iberians* are said to

come in under *Pamir*: divided after his decease, amongst many petit Kings and Princes, for the space of 900 and odd years, even till the first attempt which the *Carthaginians* made upon it; who found here no such Universal or Supream Monarch, as the *Berosian* Fables dream of. During which time, we find nothing more observable and certain in the story of it, than the planting of Colonies on the Sea-coasts, by divers Nations, according to the Custom of those elder times. Of which sort were the Towns of *Emporea* and *Dianium*, founded by the *Massilians*, *Saguntum* by the *Zacynthi* or people of *Zur*, *Rhodu* by the *Rhodians*, as some think; the City and Isle of *Gales*, planted by the *Tyrians*, who after spread themselves over all the Coasts of *Andaluzia*. The first that came in bodies hither, in way of Conquest, were the *Celtæ*, a great and potent Nation of *Gaul*, who mixing themselves with the *Iberi*, caused the whole Country to be called *Celtiberia*: but the time when they came into it is very uncertain. Of the invasion of it by the *Carthaginians*, there is a greater certainty. Who being beaten out of *Sicily* by the conquering *Romans*, *in. V. C. 512*. and not daring to look any more that way, bended their Forces to the West, and passing through the Straights of *Gibraltar*, by the Isles of *Gades*, (their own long before) landed in *Spain* under the conduct of *Amilcar*, the Father of *Annibal*, four years after the loss of *Sicily*. In less than twenty years following, *Amilcar*, (*Asdrubal* his Son in law) and *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, had made almost all *Spain* subject to the *Carthaginians*, even from the Western Ocean to the *Pyrenees*; destroyed *Saguntum*, built new *Carthage*, and struck so great a terrour into all the Country, that had not *Annibal's* design carri'd him to *Italy*, the State of *Carthage* had been absolute Masters of it, without further opposition or resistance. But *Annibal* having taken all his Souldiers with him; and those that came from *Carthage* to command in chief, not being men of parts sufficient to go through with it; they lost it piece-meal to the *Romans*, but in less time than they had been getting it from the *Spaniards*; the valour and good fortune of *Corn. Scipio*, over-ruling the declining power of that mighty State. The last that here commanded for the State of *Carthage* was *Asdrubal* the Son of *Gisgo*; who being beaten by *Scipio* into the Island of *Gades*, left that also to the keeping of *Mago*, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deserted, it forthwith yielded to the *Romans*, the *Carthaginians* after this never possessing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The *Romans* thus becoming Masters of a great part of it, divided it into *Uteriore*, lying from the River *Iberus*, Westward, because furthest off from them; and *Citeriore*, between the said River, and the *Pyrenees*. But having totally subdued it, they divided it into three main parts; 1. *Tarraconensem*, so called of *Tarragon*, the chief City of it, containing *Arragon*, *Navarre*, *Biscay*, *Gallicia*, &c. 2. *Beticam*, so named of the River *Bætis*, which runneth through it; comprehendeth the now Countries of *Granada*, *Andaluzia*, and part of *Estremadura*. 3. *Lusitanicam*, denominated from the *Lusitani*, the most potent people of that part, differing in extent from the present *Portugal*, (though this called *Lusitania*, by our modern *Latins*.) For the old *Lusitania* comprehended part of *Estremadura*, and some part of the two *Castiles*; and no more of the present *Portugal* than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers, *Ana* and *Duero*: that on the South of *Ana*, being laid to *Bætica*; and that on the North of *Duero*, unto *Tarraconensis*. Of these three parts, *Bætica* was in most esteem under the *Romans*; insomuch that it contained 8 *Roman* Colonies, 8 *Municipal* Cities, and 29 other Towns, endued with the Rights and Priviledges of the *Latins*. The reason thereof was, that the people of this Country having been formerly broken by the *Carthaginians*, with more quiet endured the yoke of the *Romans*; whereas the rest, for a long time resisted the entry and Empire of that prevailing City. But to proceed to the affairs of *Rome* in

D d

Spain,

Spain, *Scipio Africanus* laid the first foundation of the Roman Government in this Country: which building, though undertaken by many excellent workmen, was not thoroughly finished till the days of *Augustus*, being almost 200 years since the first attempt. He roofed it, strengthened it, and made it a principal building in his Monarchical City. For the old *Incole* were exceeding valiant and resolute, sometimes disgracing, sometimes endangering the Roman reputation; insomuch that there were more Commanders lost in those Wars, than any other. At first the Romans fought not with the *Spaniards*, but with the *Carthaginians* in Spain: then perished both the *Scipio's*, viz. the Father and the Uncle of *Africanus*. *Viratus* held War for 20 years, *Numantia* held out almost 15. the *Astures* remained unconquered till the time of *Augustus*; and also resolutely maintained their particular liberties, *Ut dijudicari non potuerit* (saith *Paterculus*) *Hispanis an Romanis plus esset in armis roboris, & uter populus alteri pariturus foret*. So that it was not to be determin'd whether the Romans or *Spaniards* were the better Souldiers, or whether of the People in the end would be the Master of the other. Such manner of men were the ancient *Spaniards* under Rome and *Carthage*; the first people of the Continent of Europe, (excepting *Italy*) on which the Romans did begin to enlarge their Empire, and the last that wholly were subdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at the last, and brought under the form of a Province by *Augustus Cæsar*, it was governed by their *Proconsuls*, *Prætors*, and other Magistrates, according to the division before-mentioned. But *Constantine the Great* in his new modelling of the Empire, laying some part of *Africk* to it, made it a *Diocefs* of the Empire; and subject to the *Præfectus Prætorius* for *Gaul*, by whose *Vicarius* it was governed: the whole being then divided into these seven Provinces, viz. 1. *Bætica*, 2. *Lusitania*, bounded as before; 3. *Gallicia*, containing the modern *Gallicio*, *Leon*, and *Oviedo*, the greatest part of the Old *Castile*, and so much of *Portugal* as lieth betwixt the two Rivers of *Minio* and *Duero*, 4. *Carthaginensis*, so called from the City of *New Carthage*, comprehending *New Castile*, *Murcia*, and *Valentia* with the part of the Old *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Andalusia*, 5. *Tarraconensis*, embracing all *Biscay*, *Navare*, and *Catalogne*, with the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Arragon*, 6. *Tingitana*, so called from *Tingis*, (now *Tangier*) a Town of *Africk*, on the opposite Coast, in which are now the great Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Morocco*. And, 7. the Province of the Islands, containing *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Elusa*, and *Frumentaria*. Of which seven Provinces, the three first were *Consulares*, governed by *Proconsuls*; the other four, from their being under *Presidents*, were called *Presidiarie*. Being thus settled, it continued a Roman *Diocefs* till about the year 400, when it was subdued by *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandals*; of which people, their beginning, achievements, and final period, we will speak more when we come to *Africk*, where they fixed themselves; invited thereunto, partly to eschew the ill neighbourhood of the *Goths*, who began to grow too potent for them, and partly to satisfy the desire of *Boniface*, Governour of that Province for the Emperor *Valentinian* the third, against whom he had then rebelled, and wanted such support to make good his action. Those being gone, the *Suevi* and *Alani*, who entred with them, could not long subsist; but were finally broken by the *Goths*, and afterwards dispossessed of their Kingdoms also, (though suffered to remain in the Country still) as shall be shewn hereafter in its proper place. As for the *Goths*, (of whom we shall speak more in *Sweden*, and have already made some mention when we were in *Gaul*) having sacked *Rome*, and wasted *Italy*, under the conduct of *Alaric*; they were bought out of that Country by the gift of *Narbonensis* in *Gaul*, and so much of *Tarraconensis* in *Spain*, as now makes up the Province of *Catalogne*: the composition being ratified by the marriage of *Ataulfus*, the Successor of *Alaric* with *Placidia*, Sister to *Honorius*

the Western Emperor. *Vallia*, or *Wallia*, the next of name and note, (for *Sigerick* who interposed, reigned but one year only, and did nothing in it) Successor of *Ataulfus*, having beaten the *Alani* out of *Lusitania* and *Carthaginensis*, added those Provinces also unto his Estates, and confining the *Vandals* within *Bætica*, was the first of the *Goths* which entituled himself King of the *Goths* in *Spain*. By their agreement with the Romans, they were to keep those Provinces for the use of the Empire, which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations; but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their Agreement, having once beaten the *Alani* out of *Lusitania*, by the Prowess of *Vallia*, and the *Suevi* out of *Bætica*, under the conduct of *Theodorick*, the Brother of *Torismund*, they fell upon the Romans themselves; whom *Euricus*, and his Successors, by little and little, dispossessed of all *Spain* on this side of the Streights. *Tingitana* held out longest, as farthest off, unfortunately attempted by *Theudes* the ninth King of the *Goths*, whose Soldiers being set upon by the Romans on the Lord's day or Sunday, refused to fight in their own defence, and were so miserably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry news of the overthrow. So early did the Superstition of a Lord's day Sabbath prevail upon this melancholick and devout people. But what this *Theudes* could not do, was performed by *Suintilla*; who in the short time of this reign, An. 642, made the Conquest absolute.

Let us next look upon the *Goths* as Lords of *Spain*, and we shall find them to have been *Christians* in Religion, and somewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and conversations with the *Græcians*, before they turned their Forces into the West. Their company more desired in this respect, than that of the *Vandals*; who were not only *Pagans*, but far more barbarous. But these *Goths*, being for long time of the *Arrian* Faction, did grievously afflict and persecute the *Orthodox* Prelates: continuing in this error till the death of *Leonigild* (or *Leutigildis* as some call him) the last Patron and Assertor of it. Their Government Monarchical, but the Kings Elective, though for the most part they kept themselves to the Regal Family:) an Excommunication being laid on such, by the fifth Council of *Toledo*, as went about to alter that established course. Their Rule or Government was Custom, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written Laws being first made by *Euricus*; which the ensuing Princes confirmed and perfected. What else concerneth them, we shall find in the close of this Catalogue of

The Kings of the *Goths* in *Spain*.

A. C.	
420	1 <i>Vallia</i> 20.
440	2 <i>Theodoric</i> 13.
453	3 <i>Thorismund</i> 3.
456	4 <i>Theodoric</i> II. 14.
470	5 <i>Henry</i> , or <i>Euricus</i> 18.
493	6 <i>Alaricus</i> 21.
513	7 <i>Gensfalic</i> 3.
516	8 <i>Amalaric</i> 11.
526	9 <i>Theudes</i> 18.
543	10 <i>Thelegildus</i> 3.
546	11 <i>Agila</i> 5.
551	12 <i>Athanagildus</i> 14.
565	13 <i>Liuba</i> 3.
568	14 <i>Leonigild</i> 18.
586	15 <i>Richared</i> 15.
601	16 <i>Liuba</i> II. 2.
603	17 <i>Victoricus</i> 7.
610	18 <i>Gundebaris</i> 20.
630	19 <i>Sisobulus</i> 9.
639	20 <i>Richared</i> II. 2.
641	21 <i>Suintilla</i> 3.
644	22 <i>Sisenanda</i> 7.
651	23 <i>Suintilla</i> II. 4.

- 655 24 *Tulgas* 2.
 657 25 *Vidisuindus* 10.
 667 26 *Reccesuind* 13.
 680 27 *Bamba* 9.
 689 28 *Ering* 7.
 696 29 *Egypta* 7.
 703 30 *Vitiza* 13.
 716 31 *Roderick*, the last King of the *Goths* in

Spain, elected to the prejudice of the

Sons of *Vitiza*, which after proved the ruin and overthrow of the Kingdom. For though the Kingdom went, for the most part, by Election, and that they had respect to the next of blood, (as at this time in *Poland* and *Bohemia*) very few interlopers being here admitted: yet some there were, who either by their merit, or some opportunity, got the possession of the Kingdom, though not at all relating to the Royal Family. Of which kind were *Theudes* an *Ostro-Goth*, sometimes the Governour hereof for *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, Protector of this Kingdom in the minority of *Amalaric*; and *Theudeselus*, or *Theudegisfus*, Nephew to *Totilas*, one of the Successors to *Theodorick*. The rest of principal note were, 1. *Theodorick* the first, slain in the battle near *Tholouze*, against *Attila* the *Hunn*; in defence of his own Countrey, and the *Roman* Empire. 2. *Theodorick* the second, who beat the Nation of the *Suevi* out of *Bætica*; and 3. *Leonigild*, or *Leutigilde*, who deprived them of *Gallicia* also. 4. *Reccaredus* the first, who first imbraced the *Catholick* Doctrine of the Church, and rejected *Arrianism*; and for that cause first honoured with the Title of the *Catholick King*; afterwards resumed by *Alfonfus* the first King of *Leon*, and made hereditary by *Ferdinand* the King of *Castile*, *Arragon*, &c. Grandfather unto *Charles* the fifth. 5. *Euricus*, or *Henricus* as some call him, as remarkable for *Civil Polity*, as *Reccaredus* for *Piety*; as being the *Lycurgus* or *Legislator* of this People; not governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain customs, or at the pleasure of such Officers as the King set over them. 6. *Suintilla* Son of *Reccaredus* the second, who having in the short time of his reign expelled the *Roman* Forces out of *Tingitana* *An.* 642, was the first Monarch of all *Spain*, whereof *Tingitana*, (though on the other side of the Sea) had been made a Province by the Emperor *Constantine*, as before was said. And of this Province was *Julianus* Governour in the time of *Roderick*, who being of the Faction of the Sons of *Vitiza*, stomached his advancement to the Kingdom; and thereby got the greater portion of the King's displeasure; who sending him upon an Embassy to the *Moors* of *Africa*, in the mean time deflowered his daughter, named *Cava*: which the Father took in such indignation, that he procured the *Moors* (amongst whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into *Spain*. This request they performed under the conduct of *Musa* and *Tariff*, and having made a full Conquest, subjected it to the great *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan* Emperors. It is recorded in a *MSS.* History of the *Saracens*, that at the first coming of *Tariff* into *Spain*, a poor woman of the Country being willingly taken Prisoner, fell down at his feet, kissed them, and told him, that she had heard her Father (who was Letter'd) say, that *Spain* should be conquered by a people whose General should have a Mole on his right shoulder, and in whom one of his hands should be longer than the other. He, to animate his Souldiers against the next encounter, unclothed himself, and shewed the mark, which so encouraged them, that they now doubted not the Victory. *Roderick* had in his Army 130000 Foot, and 35000 Horse. *Tariff* had 30000 Horse and 180000 Foot. The Battle continued seven days together, from morning to night; at last the *Moors* were victorious. What became of King *Roderick* was never known. His Souldiers took one arrayed in their Kings Apparel, whom upon examination they found to be a Shepherd; with whom the King, after the discomfiture, had changed cloaths. It is written also in *Rodericus Toletanus*, that before the coming of

those *Saracens*, King *Roderick*, upon hope of some treasure did open a part of the Palace, of long time forbidden to be touched; but found nothing but Pictures which resembled the *Moors*, with a Prophetic, that whensoever the Palace was there opened, the people there resembled, should overcome *Spain*; and so it hapned, *An.* 721.

The *Moors*, now Lords of *Spain* by the treason of *Julian*, (who having seen the miserable death of his wife and children, was starved in Prison by the *Africans*) permitted the free use of *Religion* to the old Inhabitants; lest they seeking new dwellings for the Liberty of Conscience, should leave their native Soyl desolate. The *Moors* finished their Conquest in five years say some, others, in two; and some again in eight Months. To keep the new conquered Country in subjection, no way was so convenient, as to plant Colonies: but the *Morisco* women would not abandon their old seats. Hereupon *Musa* and *Tariff*, by gifts, pardons, and persuasions, drew many *Christian* women to forsake their *Religion*, whom they married to the Souldiers. Not long after *Ulidor* *Ulit*, the great *Caliph*, sent over about 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, assigning them a convenient portion of Lands, to be held with great Immunities, and upon small Rents. These politick courses notwithstanding, the *Moors* long enjoyed not the sole Sovereignty herein: for the *Christians* having now recovered breath, chose themselves Kings, and the Authority of the *Caliphs* declining, gave the *Moors* liberty to erect divers petit Royalties, many of which, by little and little, were brought under the command of greater and more powerful Princes. So that at last, *Spain* fell into a fifteenfold division. viz. into the Kingdoms and proprietary Estates of 1. *Navarre*, 2. *Biscay*, and 3. *Guipuscoa*, 4. *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 5. *Gallicia*, 6. *Corduba*, 7. *Granada*, 8. *Murcia*, 9. *Toledo*, 10. *Castile*, 11. *Portugal*, and the members of it, 12. *Valentia*. 13. *Catalonia*, 14. the Kingdoms of *Majorca*, and 15. that of *Arragon*: not to say any thing of the petit Kingdoms of *Jaca*, *Algozire*, and *Sevil*, besides others of like nature to them, erected by the factious and divided *Moors*, but of short continuance all of them, and of little note. All now reduced at this day, under the three Governments of *Castile*, *Portugal*, and *Arragon*; the Kingdoms and Estates of *Leon*, *Navarre*, *Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biscay*, *Murcia*, and *Toledo*, being under *Castile*; *Portugal* with *Algarve*, and the Isles of *Azores*, an entire Government of it self; *Valentia*, *Catalonia*, and *Majorca*, under that of *Arragon*.

1. N A V A R R E.

N A V A R R E, the second Kingdom for Antiquity in *Spain*, is bounded on the East with the Principality of *Bern*, in the Kingdom of *France*; on the West, first with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*; and after, with a little River falling into it, near *Calaborra*, by which divided from *Castile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuscoa*, and on the South, with the River *Arragon*, by which divided from that Kingdom. Of larger extent anciently, than it is at the present; the little Province of *Alava*, lying toward *Guipuscoa*, and the whole Countay of *Rioye*, (on the West-side of the River *Ibro*) being taken from it, and reckoned members of *Castile*, by *Alonso* the 4th. Howsoever, we shall look upon it in its ancient bounds, and shall accordingly take notice of the chief Cities and Towns thereof.

It was called at first, the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*, from a Town of that name, situate in the most inaccessible part of the *Pyrenées*; and therefore chose by *Garcia Ximenes*, the first King hereof, for the seat of his Kingdom, as most defensible against the fury of the *Moors*. Afterwards it took the name of *Navarre*, either from *Navois*, signifying a plain and Champaign Country, (first used by *Inigo Arista*, the sixth King, who having taken *Pamplone*,

lone, abandoned the Hill-Countries, and betook himself unto the *Plains*) or from *Navarriero*, the chief of the three parts into which that City was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but a long time after.

The Country, though environed on all sides with mighty Mountains, yet of it self is said to be reasonably fruitful, well watered, and for the most part plain and level, as before is said. It taketh up also some parts of both sides of the *Pyrenees*: the *Spanish* side being fertile, and adorned with Trees; the *French* side generally very bare and naked. That on the *Spanish* side, and on the summits of the Mountains, now possessed by the *Spaniard*, is called *High Navarre*: that on the *French* side, now called *Base or Low Navarre*, estimated at a sixth part of the whole Kingdom, is enjoyed by the *French*; incorporated by King *Lewis* 13, to the Realm of *France*, *An.* 1620.

Places of most importance in *Base Navarre*, 1. *S. Palais*, formerly the Place of Judicature for this part of the Kingdom; but in the year 1620, removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bern*: both *Bern* and *Base Navarre*, which hath before been governed as distinct Estates from the Realm of *France*, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2. *Navareux*, a Town of great importance seven Leagues from *Pau*, well fortified, and as well munitioned, King *Lewis* the 13, finding in it at his coming thither, *An.* 1620, no fewer then 45 Cannons all mounted; besides 40 Culverins and smaller Pieces; with Powder, Bullet, and Victuals, answerable thereunto. 3. *Pied de Port*, or *St. John de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edge of *France* against which formerly a piece of especial strength. 4. *Roncevallis*, or *Roncevaux* situate in the most pleasant Country of all *Navarre*, in the entrance of a small but delightful Valley: famous for the great Battle fought near unto it; in the Straights or entrance of the Mountains leading to this valley; betwixt the *French* under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of *Moors* and natural *Spaniards*, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which Battle by the treachery of *Ganelon*, 40000 of the *French* were slain; and amongst them, *Rowland* Earl of *Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*, and others of the Peers of *France*; of whom so many Fables are reported in the old *Romances*; the first Author of which Fables, passeth under the name of Arch-Bishop *Turpin*, said to be one of those twelve Peers, who taking on him to record the Acts of *Charles* the Great, hath interlaced his Story with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof, the noble acts of that puissant Emperor, and his gallant Followers, are much obscured and blemished by those very Pens, which in the time succeeding did employ themselves to advance the same.

Of special note in *High Navarre*, 1. *Vitoria* first built, or rather re-edified by *Sancho* the 4. King of *Navarre* *An.* 1181, by whom^s thus named in memory of some victory obtained thereabouts against the *Castilians*; whereas before his time it was called *Gasteiz*: as in like case there had been many Towns built by *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the City of *Victory*, which we shall meet withal hereafter. Situate in the place of the ancient *Vellica*, but graced with the privileges and name of a City, by *John* the second of *Castile*, after it came under the Command of that Crown, *An.* 1432. A Town belonging properly to the little Province of *Alava*, and the chief thereof. Which Province being wholly in and amongst the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*: but being extorted from it, *An.* 1200. by *Alphonso* the 4th. of *Castile*, it was in the year 1332. incorporated into that Crown, as a part thereof; as were some other Towns and Members of this Kingdom also, won by the *Castilians*. 2. *Viane*, on the East of the River *Ebro*, well fortified, after the taking of *Logronno* on the other side of the water, (from which distant not above a League) as the Frontier Town against *Castile*. Of greatest note for being the title of the eldest Son of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*; advanced unto this honour by

King *Charles* the third, *An.* 1421. in imitation of the like Custom in *Castile*, where the eldest Son was called Prince of the *Asturias*: but not less memorable for the death of *Cesar Borgia*, slain near unto it in an ambush, after all his wandrings, and interchangeableness of fortunes. For being Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth by birth a *Spaniard*, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquishing the Title, by *Charles* the eighth of *France*, created Duke of *Valentinois*, in the Province of *Dauphine*: during his fathers life, he had reduced under his obedience, divers of the Estates which anciently had belonged to the Church of *Rome*; but after his decease, imprisoned by Pope *Julio* the second, who was jealous (not without good cause) of his plots and practices. From *Rome* he stole unto *Gonzalo*, then Vice-Roy of *Naples* for *Ferdinando* the *Catholic*; who notwithstanding his safe conduct, sent him Prisoner to *Spain*: but breaking Prison (desperately sliding down a window) he came at last into this Kingdom, and was here slain in an *Amigalcado*, as before was said. So many times was *Machiavel*'s great Politician over-reached by Bookmen and Souldiers! 3. *Sobrarbe*, in the most inaccessible parts of the *Pyrenees*; for that cause made the first Seat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entituled from thence the Kings of *Sobrarbe*. Made afterwards a distinct Kingdom from *Navarre*, by *Sancho* the Great, who gave it to *Gonzales* his youngest Son: after whole death (not having issue) it was seized on by *Don Ruymir*, the first King of *Aragon*, and made a member of that Crown. 4. *Sanguessa*, a Town of a large Territory and Jurisdiction, privileged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Estates, and a strong Fortrefs on the borders towards *Aragon*: for which cause formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it sometimes in their hands. 5. *Pampelona*, in the Champaign Country, on the banks of the River *Arga*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom; and the Seat-Royal of its Kings, since the Conquest of it from the *Moors* by *Inigo Arista*, the sixth King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts; that is to say, *Bourg*, *Peuplement*, and *Navarriere*; each having several Officers and Jurisdictions, (the cause of many quarrels and much blood amongst them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magistrate, by King *Charles* the third. An ancient Town, first built by *Pompey* at the end of his Wars against *Sertorius*; in memory of whom called *Pompeopolis* by our modern *Latinists*; but *Pampelun*, more near unto the present name, by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*: now an *Episcopal* See, the seat of the Vice-Roy, and one of the best fortified Towns of all *Spain*. 6. *Moult*, not far from the borders of *France*, where it joyneth on *Guispuscoa*; a place of principal importance: the Castle whereof was one of the last pieces on this side of the Mountains which held out for King *John* of *Albert*, against *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, in his surprisal of this Kingdom. 7. *Montreal*, 8. *Oñte*, and 9. *Tafalla*; all yielded with the rest of this Kingdom, to *Frederick* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*: who had the happiness to subdue this Realm to the Crown of *Castile*, as his Son *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugal*. 10. *Tudele*, on the Eastern bank of the River *Ebro*, took from the *Moors*, by a surprize, by *Rotrou* Earl of *Perch*, (a *Frenchman*) coming with many other noble persons to the aid of *Alfonso*, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, at the siege of *Saragossa*, *An.* 1110. Given by that King unto him, for the reward of his service; and afterwards united to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Magdalen* daughter of Earl *Rotrou*, with *Garcia* the seventh King of *Navarre*, Successor in that Kingdom to the said *Alfonso*. Of late times honoured with a little University there founded by *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, on his surprisal of that Kingdom. 11. *Calaborra*, situate on the Western banks of the *Iberus*, or *Ibro*, by *Ptolomy* called *Calagorina*; by *Strabo*, *Calaguris*; now a Bishops See: taken from *Sancho* the eighth of *Navarre*, by *Alfonso* the fourth of *Castile*, and made a Member of that Kingdom. As also was 12. *Logronno*, in the Country of *Rioja*, on the

the same banks of the River also. 13. *Estella*, bordering on *Castile*, to which adjudged (though on the Eastern side of the River) by *Lewis* the 11th, of *France* made Umpire for the atonement of some differences betwixt *Henry* King of *Castile*, and *John* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; to satisfy that King for his charges in the former Quarrel.

The old Inhabitants thereof, were the *Vascones*, possessed not only of this tract, but of *Biscay*, and *Guipuscoa* also, from them denominated: who passing over the *Pyrenees*, made themselves Masters of that Province which is now called *Gascoigne* by the *French*, and *Vasconia* in *Latin*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, and from them by the *Moors*; it began to be a Kingdom under *Garcia Ximenes*, a noble man of the *Gothish* blood, who with 600 men only began to make head against the *Saracens*, An. 716. first under the title of the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*; and after that, of *Navarre*, for the reasons formerly delivered. The sixth from *Garcia Ximenes*, was *Inigo*, surnamed *Arista*, (so named from his vehemency and heat in War) the Son of *Simon* Earl of *Bigorre* in *Gascoigne*; elected to this Kingdom on the death of *Ximenes* the fifth King, An. 840. or thereabouts, as the next Heir (but in the collateral Line) of *Don Garcia Ximenes* the first King of *Sobrarbe*. To him the taking of *Pampelona* is ascribed most generally, though *Turquet* in his History refer the same to *Garcia* the second King. But certainly the Town was in the hands of the *Moors*, till forced from them by the prowess of *Charlemagne*; by them again recovered after the defeat of *Roncevals*, and held till the time of this King, who possessed himself of it. To this King also is ascribed the first beginning of the Ceremony of Crowning and Anointing, after the manner used by the Kings of *France*. But the old *Roman Provincial*, cited in the *Titles of Honour*, acknowledgeth no such honour to these petit Kings, communicated only, in that time to the Emperors of the East and West, the Kings of *Hierusalem*, *England*, *France*, and *Sicily*. And therefore probable it is, that the custom came into *Navarre* with the House of *Champagne*. Other Kings of most note in the course of Story, were 3. *Fortun*, the second Nephew of *Inigo Arista*, by his Son *Garcia* the third; who added unto his Estate, the Earldom of *Aragon*, descended to him by his Mother, the Daughter and Heir of *Afnarius*, or *Arnario*, the last Earl thereof. 4. *Sancho* the fourth, surnamed the Great, who first assumed unto himself the title of King of *Spain*: his Predecessors using no other title than Kings of *Sobrarbe* and *Navarre*; his Contemporaries calling themselves Kings of *Leon*, *Toledo*, *Sevil*, *Corduba*, according to the names of their several Kingdoms; the *Goths*, Kings of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and so the *Vandals*, and the *Suevi*. Only the Earls of *Barcelone*, at their first erection by the *French*, entituled themselves the Dukes and Marquesses of *Spain*, as if all were theirs, with brag and vanity enough. But this Prince had some good ground for it, as being by inheritance possessed of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; of *Castile* in the right of his Wife *Donna Nugna*, or *Ebra*, Sister and Heir of *Sancho* the last Earl thereof; and by conquest of a great part of the Realm of *Leon*: so that almost all *Spain*, not possessed by the *Moors*, was become his own. Had these Estates remained entire to his Successors, the *Moors*, no doubt, had sooner lost their hold in *Spain*; and the whole Continent been brought under the obedience of one sole Monarch. But this King either loving all his Sons alike, or else offended with the eldest, who most unnaturally had accused his own innocent Mother of the crime of Adultery, divided his Estates amongst them; giving to *Garcia* his eldest Son, the Realm of *Navarre*, with that part of *Leon* which he held by Conquest; to *Ferdinand* his second Son, *Castile*; and *Aragon*, to his base Son *Raymer*; both which he erected into Kingdoms: and finally, to *Gonsales* his third Son, the Realm of *Sobrarbe*, then first dismembred from *Navarre*. By means of which impolitick course, his Sons being all of equal Title and Estates, instead of op-

posing the common Foe, quarrelled with each other, and left the Quarrel as a Legacy to their several Successors: which mischief might have been avoided, if he had not dignified them all with the title of Kings, or left the rest as Homagers unto one Supreme. 5. *Sancho* the fifth, Nephew of *Sancho* the Great, by his Son *Garcia de Nagera*; unnaturally and traitorously slain by his Brother *Raymer*. After whose death, or the short interposition of his Murtherer, this Kingdom was seized on by the Kings of *Aragon*; three of which, viz. *Sancho Ramires*, *Pedro*, and *Alfonso*, did severally and successively enjoy the same. 6. *Alfonso*, the last of the three Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*, surnamed the *Warriour*; who for a time was King of *Castile* also, in right of *Urraca* his Wife; which respect he took unto himself the title of *Emperor of Spain*, though not acknowledged so by others. But finally, dying without issue, and his Brother *Raymer*, or *Raymond*, called the *Monk*, succeeding in *Aragon*, the Kingdom of *Navarre* reverted to *Garcia Raymir*, Lord of *Monzon*, the direct Heir of *Garcia de Nagera*, by *Raymir* Lord of *Calaborra*, his younger Son. 7. *Sancho* the eighth, the Nephew of this *Garcias Raymir*, by his Son *Sancho* the seventh, surnamed the *Wise*, the last King of the Masculine and direct Line of the Kings of *Navarre*; the Kingdom, after his decease, passing by the Females, or Heirs-general, to the Earls of *Champagne*, and so unto the Kings of *France*, the Houses of *Eureux*, *Foix*, *Albert*, and *Endosme*, but never holding above three descents in any one family. By means whereof, these Kings being barred from gaining any thing on the *Mons*, by the interposition of the Kings of *Castile* and *Aragon*; and having no way to enlarge their Revenue or Dominions, by any undertakings or adventures at Sea, as the *Portugals* did: incorporated to their Crown as fair and large possessions in the Realm of *France*, as any of the others did in the *Spanish* Continent. The Principality of *Bearn*, the Earldoms of *Foix* and *Begorre*, united in the person of *Gaston* of *Foix*; as those of *Armaignac* and *Albert*, in the person of *John* Earl of *Albert*; all lying together on the other side of the *Pyrenees*; all added to this Crown by marriage with the Heirs hereof: made up a fairer and wealthier Estate than *Navarre* it self, inferior to few Provinces in the Realms of *Spain*. Not to say any thing of the accession of the Country-palatine of *Champagne*, exchanged afterwards for some Lands in the Country of *La March* in *Limousin*; or of the Earldoms of *Eureux*, and the Duchy of *Endosme*, as lying further off, and of less importance: Nor of the great Kingdom of *France*, now hearth with incorporate, as to the person of the King, though not in the Possession of this Kingdom also. With so much judgement and success did the ensuing Kings (not otherwise able to enlarge their Territories) bestow their Daughters, that the *Disposal* proved as happy to this little Kingdom, as the *Sword* to others. 8. *Charles*, the second of that name, and the 30 King of *Navarre*; whom I mention not for any glorious Actions atchieved in his life (for that was full enough of ignominy) but for the strangeness and hideousness of his death. He was a Prince much given to voluptuousness, and sensual pleasures, which so wasted his spirits, that in his old age he fell into a kind of *letargy*. To comfort his benumbed joynts, he was bound and sewed up naked in a sheet, steeped in boiling *Aqua-vitæ*. The Chyrurgeon having made an end of sewing the sheet, and wanting a knife to cut off the thread, took a Wax-candle that stood lighted by him; but the flame running down by the thread, caught hold on the sheet, which (according to the nature of *Aqua-vitæ*) burned with that vehemency, that the miserable King ended his days in the fire. 9. *John* of *Aragon*, the second Son of *Ferdinand* the first, in the life of his Brother *Alfonso*, was made King of *Navarre*, in right of *Blanche* his Wife, Daughter of *Charles* the third, and on the death of his Brother, King of *Aragon* also. And though his Queen died long before him, in whole right

right he reigned; yet he kept possession of the Kingdom till his death, (reigning fifty four years in all) notwithstanding the opposition made against him by *Charles* Prince of *Viana*, his only Son by that marriage, and Heir apparent of that Crown; whom he vanquished, imprisoned, and at last Poysoned. 10. *John*, Earl of *Albert* in *Gascoigne*, King of *Navarre* in right of *Katharine* his Wife: in whose reign the Kingdom of *Navarre* was seized on by *Ferdinand* the Catholic, Son of the said *John* King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, by a second Wife. The manner of it we shall relate with more Particulars, when we have summed the whole Succession of

The Kings of *Navarre*.

A. C.

- 716 1 *Garcia Ximenes*. 42.
 758 2 *Garcia* II. Son of *Garcia Ximenes*.
 802 3 *Fortunio*. 13.
 815 4 *Sancho Garcia*, the last of the direct Line of *Garcia Ximenes*.
 An Inter-regnum of 4 years.
 844 6 *Inigo*, surnamed *Arista*, Earl of *Begorre*, the next Heir-male of the House of *Garcia Ximenes*. 23.
 867 7 *Garcia* III. surnamed *Inigo*. 18.
 885 8 *Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*. 16.
 901 9 *Sancho* II. called *Abarcha*, Brother of *Fortunio* the second. 19.
 920 10 *Garcia* IV. 49.
 969 11 *Sancho* III. 24.
 993 12 *Garcia* V. surnamed the *Trembler*.
 1000 13 *Sancho* IV. surnamed the *Great*; of whom sufficiently before.
 1034 14. *Garcia* VI. called *de Nagera*, eldest Son of *Sancho*. 20.
 1054 15. *Sancho* V. slain by
 1074 16. *Raymir*, the Brother of *Sancho* the first, dispossessed by
 1076 17. *Sancho* VI. surnamed *Ramyres*, King of *Aragon*. 18.
 1094 18. *Pedro*, King of *Aragon*.
 1104 19. *Alfonso*, called the *Warrier*; the last of the Kings of *Aragon*, reigning in *Navarre*.
 1134 20. *Garcia* VII. Nephew of *Garcia de Nagera*. 16.
 1150 21. *Sancho* VII. surnamed the *Wife*.
 1194 22. *Sancho* VIII. the last of the Male-Issue of *Garcia Ximenes*. 40.
 1234 23. *Theobald*, Earl of *Champagne*, Son of the Lady *Blanch*, Sister and Heir of *Sancho* the 8th. 19.
 1253 24. *Theobald* II. Earl of *Champagne*. 18.
 1271 25. *Henry*, Son of *Theobald* the second. 3.
 1274 26. *John*, the Daughter of *Henry*, married to *Philip* the Fair, of *France*. 31.
 1305 27. *Lewis* Hutin, King of *France*. 10.
 1315 28. *Philip* the Long, King of *France*. 5.
 1320 29. *Charles* the Fair, King of *France*. 8.
 1328 30. *Joan* II. Queen of *Navarre*, the Daughter of *Lewis* Hutin.
 1349 31. *Charles* II. Son of *Joan* and *Philip* of *Eureux*. 37.
 1386 32. *Charles* III. Earl of *Eureux*. 39.
 1425 33. *John*, Prince of *Aragon*, after the death of his elder Brother, King of *Aragon* also; the Husband of *Blanch*, the Daughter of *Charles* the third. 54.
 1479 34. *Leonora*, Daughter of *John* and *Blanch*, the Widow of *Gaston* Earl of *Foix*; a Queen of 15 days only.
 1479 35. *Francis* Phœbus, Grandchild of *Leonora* and *Gaston* of *Foix*, by their Son *Gaston*, Prince of *Viane*.

- 1483 36. *Catharine*, Sister of *Francis*.
 1517 37. *John*, Earl of *Albret*.
 1556 38. *Henry* II. Earl of *Albret*, Son of *John* and *Catharine*.
 1572 39. *Joan* III. Daughter of *Henry* of *Albret*.
 1610 40. *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme* in *France*.
 1610 41. *Henry* III. the Son of *Antony* and *Joan*, after the death of *Henry* the third of *France*, succeeded also in that Realm, by the name of *Henry* the fourth.
 1610 42. *Lewis* II. of *Navarre*, and XIII. of *France*,
 43. *Lewis* III. of *Navarre*, and XIV. of *France*, now living; with whom remain the rights, but not the possession of this Kingdom. For in the reign of *Katharine* and *John* of *Albret*, *Ferdinand* gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the *Moors*, and surprised this Kingdom, altogether unprovided, and destitute of means to make the smallest resistance, Anno 1512. The pretended reason of this surprisal, was an Excommunication laid on these Princes by the Pope, of which this King took upon him to be Executioner; but the true cause was an ancient desire which this King had to possess this frontier Kingdom, it being a strong Bulwark against *France*. It hapned then, that *Lewis* the 12th, having incurred the displeasure of Pope *Julio* the second, was (together with all his adherents) excommunicated, and his and their Estates given to such as could or would subdue them. The King and Queen of *Navarre* were, at this time, both French Subjects: he, in respect of *Albret*, his Paternal Inheritance; and she, of her Estates of *Foix* and *Bearn*: and therefore sided with the French King. *Ferdinand* having (as we said) levied an Army under colour of extirpating the *Moors*, turneth upon the French King, and demanded of these Princes not only a free passage through their Country, but also to have certain places of strength put into his hand, for his better assurance. These unjust demands the *Navarrois* denied. Whereupon *Ferdinand* with all expedition invadeth the Kingdom, the greatest part of which he took without a blow given; the French King being as backward in affording due assistance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The French nettled with this loss, divers times attempted the recovery of it but in vain: for the Spaniard still keepeth those parts of it which lye on that side of the *Pyrenees*, leaving the rest, which lyeth on the French side of those Mountains (being about a sixth part of the whole) to the Descendants of those Princes whom he had dispossessed.

The chief Order of Knighthood was of the *Lilly*, begun by *Garcia* the sixth; their Blazon, a pot of *Lillies*, with the Portraiture of our Lady engraven upon it, their duty, to defend the Faith, and daily to repeat certain *Ave-Maries*.

The Arms of *Navarre*, are *Gules*, a Carbuncle nowed Or. Which Carbuncle having a resemblance unto chains of Gold, is said to have been first taken by *Sancho* the 8th, in memory that he and his Forces had first broken the Fortification made with Chains, about the Pavilion of *Mahomet Enafer*, the *Meramomol* of *Morocco*, at the great fight in *Sierra Morena*; before which time the Arms of this Kingdom had been *Azure*, a Cross *Argent*.

3. BISCAY and GUIPUSCOA.

Of these two we shall speak together, because of the similitude and resemblances which are between them, both in the Country and the People: the names being also forged from the same Original: Bounded on the West, with the Kingdom of *Leon*, on the East with the *Pyrenees*, and *Guyenne* in the Realm of *France*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Ocean; and on the South, with *Navarre* and old *Castile*. Thus named from the *Vascones*, inhabiting the neighbouring Kingdom of *Navarre*, in the time of the *Romans*: part of which people

in the year 640, or thereabouts, passed over unto the further side of the *Pyrenees*, where they took up those parts of *France*, since from the called *Gascoigne*. The rest continuing in their old Seats, or spreading more into the West, toward the *Cantabrians*, gave to those parts the name of *Guipuscoa*, and *Viscaia*, (for so the *Spaniards* write and speak it) now by us called *Biscay*: their language also (which is much different from the rest of *Spain*) being called the *Basquish*, more near in sound to that of the *Vascons*, the original name.

The whole Country is very Mountainous and Woody, yielding but little store of Corn, and less of Wine: the defect of the first being supplied from other Countries; of the last, by *Sider*; for which end they Plant Apples here in great abundance. But from those Woods they draw continually great store of Timber for the building of Ships: and from those Hills there do not only issue pleasant Rivers, (some say 150 in number) of which *Iberus* and *Duero* are said to be two; but such infinite store of Iron and Steel, that no Country yieldeth better, or in greater plenty. Called and accounted for this cause, the *Armory of Spain*; and giving occasion unto *Pliny* to report, that there was in this Country a whole Mountain of Iron. *Murimã Cantabriæ parte; Mons præruptè altus (incredibile dictu) totus ex ea materia est.* lib. 33. cap. 45. Nor do they only furnish all *Spain* with Iron, which they make into Instruments of War, and others for domestick uses: but with Timber also for their shipping, with which so stored, that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Country only.

It is divided commonly into two Parts; the Eastern bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and the Realm of *France*, which is called *GUIPUSCOA*; and the Western, bordering on the Kingdom of *Leon*, which properly is called *BISCAY*: the Town of *Montrico* standing in the Confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the same Original, though by several means united to the Crown of *Castile*: both speak the same *Cantabrian* language, now called the *Basquish*; the People of both being more rude and simple than the rest of *Spain*; but standing much upon their Gentry, according to the custom of most mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that those of *Guipuscoa*, by reason of their traffick and commerce with other Countries, favour a little more of Christianity than the others do, in which the common *Biscains* are so far to seek, that though they have some general notions of God and *CHRIST*, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith, in any tolerable measure. And thus a view being taken of those general notions in which both Countreys are concerned, let us next look upon them in their several and distinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And first for *GUIPUSCOA*. It is Bounded on the West by *Biscay*, on the South by *Alava*, on the North by the Bay of *Biscay*, and on the East by the Kingdom of *Navarre*; and is not above 36 leagues in Compass. The Places of chiefest note in it are, 1. *S. Sebastians*, (*Don Bastia*, as the Vulgar call it) a noted and well traded Port, at the mouth of the River *Gurvineo*; beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrances with two strong Castles founded upon the opposite Rocks, and honoured with an Episcopal Sec. 2. *Tolosa*, (commonly called *Tolosette*) at the confluence of the Rivers *Oria* and *Duarzo*. 3. *Placenza*, on the River *Denia*, inhabited by none but *Black-smiths*, who do attend their Hammers with such endless diligence, that *Vulcan's Forge* may seem to be translated hither out of the Island of *Lemnos*. 4. *Guctaria*, beautified with a safe and convenient Haven; defended from all Winds by a little Island lying before it: the birth-place of *Sebastian del Cabo*, that famous Pilot, the first that sailed about the World: *Magellanus* who went chief in that expedition, perishing in the Action. 5. *Fon-tabria*, at the mouth of the River *Vidosa*, which divides this Country from *Guyenne* in *France*, for that cause very well fortified, and as strongly garrisoned. 6. *Ren-*

teria, situate near a Brook abounding with most excellent Salmons. 7. *Montrico*, at the mouth of the River *Lenia*; the farthest Town heretofore on the edge of *Biscay*. Most of which stand upon or near the Sea, there being but few Towns of note within the Land, (though there enough of scattered Villages, as in *Biscay* also) because of the roughness of the Mountains.

As for the Fortunes and Affairs of this Part of the Country, after the subversion of the Kingdom of the *Goths* in *Spain* (for till that time they followed the same Fortunes with the rest of this Continent) it was at first a member of the Crown of *Navarre*; afterwards wrested from King *Sancho* the sixth, by *Alfonso* the first of *Castile*, An. 1079; by whom committed to the Government of *Lopes Diaz de Haro*, Lord of *Biscay*. Restored again to the Kings of *Navarre*, upon some following Capitulations: It so continued till the year 1200; when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms, and liking better that of *Castile*, they offered themselves to the subjection of *Alfonso* the 4th; who without so much as one blow struck, became Master of all the Country, and left it settled and confirmed unto his Successors, as it hath ever since remained.

2. For *BISCAY* next; it is bounded on the North-West by the Bay of *Biscay*, on the East by the Kingdom of *Navarre*, on the South by that of *Castile*, and on the North, by the *Astures*. The Principal Towns thereof are, 1. *Lar-rabechia*, the chief Town of this Province in elder times; in the chief Church whereof, the Kings of *Spain* as Lords of *Biscay*; use to be solemnly inaugurated, making Oath to maintain the Liberties of the Country and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the People of it. 2. *Berneio*, an old Town also, and amply Privileged; the Franchises whereof, the Kings are solemnly sworn to keep, in the Church dedicated to the Virgin of *S. Euphemia*. 3. *Guernica*, the third Town for antiquity in this part of these Countries. Then of a later date, we have, 4. *Bilbo*, or *Bilboa*, situate some two Leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep Creek thereof; on the other side surrounded with Mountains: built out of the ruins of the old *Flaviobriga*, by *Diego de Hero*, Lord of *Biscay*, An. 1300; and situate the best of any Town in this Country, for Plenty of Victuals, especially for flesh, and most excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all sorts of Weapons, (their chiefest Manufacture) the *Bilbo-blades* in such request being brought from hence. Besides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal also in Wool; by the vent of which Commodities they are grown so wealthy, that here are many Private Merchants which build yearly three or four good Ships for their own trade only. 5. *Laredo*, a Sea Town also, with a capable Port. The landing Place of *Charles* the fifth, when he had relinquished the Empire, and all his other Estates, with resolution to spend the rest of his life in *Spain*, in a Private manner: it being observable, that he was no sooner landed, but the Admiral-ship in which he came, and the greatest Part of the Navy which came with him, perished in the Haven; to shew him (as it were) that there was no receding from this resolution. 6. *Portogalltre*, commodiously seated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houses, and serveth them exceeding fitly for the lading and unlading of their Commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, before the coming in of the *Vascons*, were the *Cantabri*; these subdivided into the several Nations of the *Marbogi*, the *Caristi*, the *Antrigones*, the *Varduli*, and the *Cantabri* properly so called. From these descend the modern *Biscains*. An argument whereof may be their Language, different from the rest of *Spain*; and said by some to have continued in this Country ever since the confusion at *Babel*. And though they overshoot themselves, that go as far as *Babel* for the Pedigree and Antiquity of it: yet that it was the ancient Language of *Spain*, is more than Probable; because this People have ever continued without any mixture of Foreign Nations, as being never thoroughly subdued either by *Romans*, *Carthaginians*, *Goths* or

or *Moors*; and so they remained, as in their Liberties not mastered, so in their Language not altered. In like manner the *Arabick* continueth uncorrupt, in the hilly parts of *Granada*; the Tongue of the old *Britains*, in our *Wales*; and the ancient *Epirotick*, in the high, woody, and more mountainous parts of that Country. And though those of *Guipuscoa* speak the same Language also, yet is it with a greater mixture of other words, (by reason of their neighbourhood with *France*, and commerce with Strangers) than it is in *Biscay*; where the old natural Language, whatsoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the *Biscains* differ from the rest of *Spain* in Language only, but in Customs also; four of which I will here set down as a light to the rest. First, they account themselves free from Taxes and Contributions to the King of *Spain*; yielding them obedience with their *Bodies*, but not with their *Purses*. And when any of the *Spanish* Kings, in their *Progresses*, come to the Frontiers of this Country, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entrencheth into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who proffer him some few small Brass pieces (*Maravides* they call them, whereof 600 go to a Crown) in a Leather Bag, hanged at the end of a Lance: but withall they tell him, that he must not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey. Secondly, They admit no Bishops to come amongst them; and when *Ferdinand* the *Catholic* came in Progress hither, accompanied, amongst others, by the Bishop of *Pampelune*, the people arose in Arms, drave back the Bishop; and gathering all the dust on which they thought he had trodden, cast it into the Sea. Which averiness unto Bishops, as they first took up, in all probability, on some bad usage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and still retain it out of a stubbornness of nature, most peculiar to them: so possible enough it is, that the want of Bishops, and of Episcopal Visitations amongst the *Biscains*, is not the least cause of that ignorance and rudeness (spoken of before) which is found amongst them. Thirdly, they allow not any Priests to live in their Villages, except he bring his *Concubine* with him: conceiving it impossible for them to keep their Wives unto themselves, if the Curate hath not a Woman of his own. Fourthly, The Woman, at all meetings, do first taste of the Cup, and so dispose of it to the men: which custom they have had amongst them ever since *Ogno*, the Countess of *Castile*, attempted to have poisoned her son *Sancho*, in a Cup of Wine.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants, they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of their Country against the *Romans*, when the residue of *Spain* was subdued: and were at last, not without great effusion of blood, and manifest tokens of manly resolution, and heroick spirits on their parts, vanquished by the Darling of Fortune, *Augustus*. Such hilly and mountainous people, are always the last that are conquered, and the first that stand on their own guard: as besides those *Biscains*, the *Navarrois* and *Asturians* here in *Spain*, in respect of the *Moors*; and our *Britains*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a sharp air, and being inured to labour, they prove on occasion good and able men; or that the Forts of Nature's own building are not so easily won, as defended; or that the unpleasantness of the Countrey, and unfruitfulness of the Soil, yield no occasion to strangers to desire an Adventure for it; I take not on me to determine. But being overcome at last, they were first cast into the Province of *Tarraconensis*; and so continued after the new modelling of *Spain*, by the Emperour *Constantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued, till that Empire fell; and then not conquered by the *Goths*, but resigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the rest of that Province. Nor lost they any thing of their ancient and natural courage, by the intermixture of the *Mascons*; continuing still good Souldiers both for

Sea and Land; a stubborn, fierce, and courageous people; impatient of servitude, and not ealie to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The list of all the *Spaniards* that submitted to the fury of the *Moors*, (excepting those of the *Asturias*, never conquered by them) and one of the first Provinces which shook off that yoke: animated and conducted in that undertaking, by *Soria*, descended of the Blood-Royal of *Spain*, Anno 870. made upon that good service, the first Lord of *Biscay*. After this, they continued a free and distinct Estate, under their own Proprietary Lords and Princes of the Noble Family of *Haro*; till that *Spain*, *Don Pedro* the Cruel, violently took it from *Donna Jeanne*, the right Heir of it, Anno 1358. From which *Donna Jeanne*, the eldest Daughter, married to *Ferdinand* the younger Son of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right Heir of *Castile*, issued the Lady *Jeanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the second, and mother of *John* the first, both Kings of *Castile*: by which last, this Country was united to that Crown for ever, Anno 1379. The names of the proprietary Lords of this Estate, we have in this following Catalogue of

The Lords of *Biscay*.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| A. Chr.
870 | 1. <i>Sorai</i> , the Son of <i>Lopes</i> of <i>Biscay</i> , but Nephew by the mother's side to a King of <i>Scotland</i> , the first Lord of <i>Biscay</i> . |
| | 2. <i>Manfio Lopes</i> , the Son of <i>Soria</i> . |
| | 3. <i>Inigo</i> the Deaf, Son of <i>Manfio Lopes</i> . |
| | 4. <i>Lopes Diaz</i> , the Son of <i>Inigo</i> . |
| | 5. <i>Sancho Lopes</i> , the Son of <i>Lopes Diaz</i> . |
| | 6. <i>Inigo</i> II. the base Son of <i>Lopes Diaz</i> ; the two Sons of <i>Sancho Lopes</i> , by reason of their tender years, being set aside. |
| | 7. <i>Lopes Diaz</i> II. Son of <i>Inigo</i> the second. |
| | 8. <i>Diego Lopes</i> , surnamed the <i>White</i> , Son of <i>Lopes Diaz</i> the second. |
| | 9. <i>Lopes Diaz</i> III. Son of <i>Diego Lopes</i> ; the first who took unto himself the surname, of <i>Haro</i> , from a Town of that name, of his foundation. |
| | 10. <i>Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro</i> ; Son of <i>Lopes Diaz</i> the third. |
| | 11. <i>Lopes Diaz</i> IV. Son of <i>Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro</i> . |
| 1257 | 12. <i>Diego Lopes Diaz</i> II. assisted <i>Sancho</i> the second Son of King <i>Alfonso</i> the fifth of <i>Castile</i> , in excluding the Children of <i>Don Ferdinand de la Cerde</i> , his elder Brother; by which <i>Sancho</i> he was after slain. A reward not unsuitable to his bold attempt. |
| 1289 | 13. <i>Diego Lopes de Haro</i> , the Son of <i>Diego</i> |
| 1290 | 14. <i>Diego Lopes</i> III. the Brother of <i>Diego Lopes Diaz</i> the second, the Founder of the Town of <i>Bilboa</i> . |
| 1309 | 15. <i>John</i> of <i>Castile</i> , Brother to King <i>Sancho</i> , and Husband of <i>Mary Diaz de Haro</i> , Daughter of <i>Diego Lopes</i> the second. |
| 1319 | 16. <i>John</i> the Blind; so called, because he had lost an Eye; Son of <i>John</i> of <i>Castile</i> , and <i>Mary Diaz</i> of <i>Haro</i> ; slain by King <i>Alfonso</i> . |
| 1329 | 17. <i>John Nugnes</i> of <i>Lara</i> , in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of <i>John</i> the Blind, (whose name I find not) succeeded after the decease of <i>Donna Maria Diaz</i> . |
| 1350 | 18. <i>Nugno de Lara</i> , an Infant of two years old, succeeded <i>John Nugnes</i> of <i>Lara</i> , his Father. |
| 1351 | 19. <i>Jean</i> and <i>Isabel</i> , the Sisters and Heirs of <i>Nugno de Lara</i> , seized upon by <i>Don Pedro</i> ; and the whole Seignery of <i>Biscay</i> subjected by strong hand to the Crown of <i>Castile</i> , with many other fair Estates which depended on it. |

The Arms of these Lords of *Biscay*, were *Argent*, two Wolves *Sable*, each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the second.

4. LEON and OVIEDO.

THE Kingdom of LEON and OVIEDO, hath on the East, the Country of *Biscay*: on the North, the main *Cantabrian* Ocean: on the South, *Castile*: on the West, *Gallicia*. So called from *Leon* and *Oviedo*, the chief Cities of it, and first Seat of their Kings; the ancientest Kingdom in all *Spain*. By a more ancient name it was called *Asturia*; from the *Astures* who possessed it in the time of the *Romans*: divided into the two general names of *Augustani*, and *Transmontani*; but comprehending the particular Tribes or Nations of the *Pelici*, *Gigari*, *Zoelæ*, and *Lancienfes*.

The Country mountainous and woody, but formerly of some esteem for those small, though swift Horses, which the *Romans* (from hence) called *Asturcones*; we may Read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Geldings: *Asturco Macedonicus*, being used for a *Macedonian* Nag, by *Petronius Arbitor*.

It is divided commonly into two parts; that is to say, 1. *Asturia de Oviedo*, bordering on *Gallicia*, towards the West: and 2. *Asturia Santillana*, confining on *Biscay*, towards the East. From which division of the Country, the eldest Son of *Castile* is called Prince of the *Asturia's* in the plural number; which title some suppose to be given unto them, because it was the first Country which held up against the *Moors*. But indeed, the true Original hereof, is referred by the best *Spanish* Writers, to the time of the marriage of *Catharine*, Daughter of *John of Gaunt*, and in right of her mother *Constance*, the right Heir of *Castile*, unto *Henry* Son of *John* the first then in possession of that Kingdom. For to this new married Couple it was granted, faith *Mariana*, that after the manner of *England*, where the Heir apparent is called *Prince of Wales*, they should be called Princes of the *Asturia's*. In times succeeding, the Towns of *Jean*, *Ubeda*, *Biatia*, or *Bacca*, and *Andujar*, all situate near together in *Andalusia*, and each of them invested with a goodly Territory, were added to the Patrimony and Estate hereof; and so continue to this day.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Sublanco*, now a small Village, but once a Town of so great strength, that it was destroyed by the command of the Emperour *Nerva*, lest it might animate these Mountainers unto a revolt. 2. *LEON*, situate at the foot of the Mountain, not far from the place of the old *Sublanco*, (as it was then called.) The Town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedral; the Bishop whereof acknowledgeth no *Metropolitan* but the Pope alone. Recovered from the *Moors*, An. 722. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of the Kings of *Leon*: by some called *Legio*, because the seventh *Legion* was here lodged: by *Ptolomy* called *Legio Germanica*; and by others, *Gemina*. 3. *S. Andrea*, so named from a Church there built to the honour of *S. Andrew*; by *Ptolomy* called *Flavionavie*; now a well traded Port on the *Cantabrian* Ocean. 4. *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eastern part of *Asturia*. 5. *Ilanes*, where the two *Asturia's* meet together. 6. *Ciudad Real*, in the Western part of *Asturia*, called *Asturia de Oviedo*. 7. *Villa Viciosa*, the only noted Port in this part of the Country. 8. *Aviles*, on the borders of *Gallicia*, near the Sea, and not far from the Promontory called of old *Promontorium Sythicum*, but now *Cabo de Pinus*. 9. *OVIEDO*, called for a time, the City of *Bishops*, because many of the Bishops of *Spain*, dispossessed of their Churches by the *Moors*, had retired thither; and there preserved the line of Episcopal Succession, till their Sees were filled again with Bishops in more happy times. Anciently it was called *Lucus Asturum*, and was of old a Bishop's See; re-edified by King *Froila* the first, in the year 757. Famous enough in giving the Title of a Kingdom to the first Christian Princes, after the Conquest by the *Moors*; called from hence, Kings of

Oviedo. Afterwards, An. 896, in the time of *K. Ordugno* the first, they began to be stiled Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*, and at last, Kings of *Leon* only; *Oviedo* being quite left out of the Regal stile, by *Raymur* the second, An. 940. In the year 1580 there was an University opened here, which never came to any fame in the World. More towards the Inlands of this kingdom, (now reckoned part of old *Castile*) are, 10. *Palencia*, the *Palencia* of *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*, seated on the *river Carrion*, once a small University, till the translation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town first felt the fury of the *Suevians*, when they mastered these parts of *Spain*. 11. *Astorga*, anciently called *Augusta Asturica*, when the *Astures* of this Tract were called *Augustani*; a Bishop's See, fronting on *Gallicia*: happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the lustful king *Vitiza*; who to secure himself in his unlawful pleasures, and to weaken his subjects if they should attempt any thing against him, dismantled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Toledo*, and this *Astorga*. 12. *Benevent*, on the South-east of *Astorga*, which gave the title of Duke to *Frederick* the base Son of king *Henry* the 2d, of *Castile*, the stem of the potent Family of *Spain*, for the times they lived in. 13. *Toro*, the most Southern Town of all this Kingdom: and for that cause well fortified against the encroachments of the *Castilians*, till the uniting of the Kingdoms: made afterwards (as lying nearest to *Castile*, and the Court of the king) the ordinary place of conference with the States of *Leon*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Country, hath been shewn already. When conquered by *Augustus Caesar*, they were made part of the province of *Tarraconensis*; part, afterwards, of the Province of *Gallicia*, by the Emperor *Constantine*. Won from the *Romans*, by the *Goths*; and from them, by the *Moors*; though long they did not lye under their command. For as the lust of *Roderick*, the king of the *Goths* in *Spain*, occasioned the coming in of the *Moors*; so the lust of *Magnutza*, a Moorish Vice-Roy occasioned (though in long course of time) their expulsion thence. For *Magnutza* having employed *Pelagius*, a young Prince of the *Asturia's*, on an Embassie to *Musa* the Lieutenant General of the *Moors*, then residing at *Corduba*, in his absence ravished his Sister; and at his return died by the edge of his Sword. Despairing of pardon for his act, he was fain to stand upon his guard, and fortifie himself in the Mountainous places of this Country; to which many of the old Inhabitants resorted, put themselves under his command, and elected him to be their King: first by the name of King of the *Asturia's*; and after by the title of King of *Leon*, when he had got that City into his hands; as being the City of most note, and the strongest Hold that he was possessed of. The kingdom at the first beginning, contained only the more mountainous parts of the two *Asturia's*; enlarged a little further South, on the taking of *Leon* by this first *Pelagius*. Afterwards, by the valour of *Ordugno* the second, it extended over both *Asturia's*, *Gallicia*, and the Old *Castile*: divided from the *Moors* by the Mountains of *Avila*, and *Segovia*; but more defended by the valour of the people, and Gallantry of their Princes, than it was by those Mountains. Kings of most note; besides the two before remembred, were 1. *Mauregate*, the base Son of *Alphonso* the first; who having by the help of *Abderamen*, King of the *Moors*, obtained the Kingdom, came to a base agreement with them; in which he bound himself to pay them, as an yearly Tribute, 50 Virgins of Noble Families, and as many of inferiour birth: for which he died hated and detested of all men. 2. *Raymur* the first, who so discomfited the *Moors* at the Batel of *Clavigio*, near *Calaborra*, in *Navarre*, An. 836, that from that time the Power and reputation of the Kings of *Corduba* began to languish. 3. *Alfonso* the third, who refused to pay unto the *Moors* the said tribute of Virgins; and for his many Victories against the *Moors*, was surnamed, The Great: who being outed of the Kingdom

dom by his Son *Garcia*, not only patiently digested so great awrong, but willingly became his Son's Lieutenant against the *Moors*. 4. *Veramund* the second, chosen King in the minority of *Raymir* the third; in whose time the *Moors* took *Leon*, and spoiled the Church of *S. James* in *Gallitia*; but were after beaten to their homes with the loss of many of their own Places. 5. *Veramund* the third, who making War against *Ferdinand* the first King of *Castile*, was by him slain in Battle; the Conqueror seizing on his Kingdom in right of *Sancha* his Wife, the Sister of *Veramund*; the three Kings next succeeding, being Kings of both. 6. *Ferdinand* the third, Son of *Alfonso* the 9th. and of *Berengaria*, the younger Sister of *Henry* King of *Castile*; by the Power and Policy of his Mother, seized on the *Castiles*, of right belonging to *Blanch* the elder Sister, Wife of *Lewis*, Son to *Philip* the second, King of *France*: and after the death of his Father, succeeded in *Leon*. Of whom we shall hear more when we come to *Castile*. After this time, these Kingdoms never were divided, but incorporate into one Estate, called for a long time the Kingdom of *Castile* and *Leon*: though afterwards *Leon* was left out of the Regal style, and only that of *Castile* mentioned; except in *Legal Instruments*, *Letters Patents*, and *Instruments* of Negotiation with Foreign Princes. The whole succession of these Kings, the Histories of *Spain* thus Present unto us.

The Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*.

A. CH.

- 716 1. *Pelagius*, of whom sufficiently before. 20
- 736 2. *Fajila*, the Son of *Pelagius*. 2.
- 738 3. *Alfonso*, for his Piety surnamed the *Catholic*, the Son in law of *Pelagius* by his Daughter *Ormifinde*.
- 756 4. *Pbroilla*, the Son of *Alfonso* the *Catholic*, the Founder, or Repairer rather, of *Oviedo*.
- 768 5. *Aurelius*, the Brother of *Pbroilla*. 6.
- 774 6. *Sillo*, the Son in law of *Alfonso* the *Catholic*, by his Daughter *Odefinde*. 9.
- 783 7. *Mauregate*, an Usurper, the bastard Son of *Alfonso*. 6.
- 789 8. *Veramund*, Son to *Froilla*. 6.
- 795 9. *Alfonso* II. surnamed the *Chaste*, the Brother of *Veramund*. 29.
- 824 10. *Raymir* the Son of *Veramund*. 6.
- 830 11. *Ordogno*, Son to *Raymir*. 10.
- 840 12. *Alfonso* III. surnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Ordogno*. 46.
- 886 13. *Garcio*, Son to *Alfonso* the third. 3.
- 889 14. *Ordogno* II. King of *Gallicia*, the Brother of *Garcia*.
- 897 15. *Pbroilla* II. Brother of *Ordogno*. 1.
- 898 16. *Alfonso* IV. Son of *Ordogno*. 6.
- 904 17. *Raymir* II. Brother of *Alfonso*. 19.
- 923 18. *Ordogno* III. Son of *Raymir*. 5.
- 928 19. *Sancho*, surnamed the *Gross*, Brother of *Ordogno* the third. 12.
- 940 20. *Raymir* III. Son of *Sancho*. 17.
- 957 21. *Veramund* II. Brother of *Sancho*. 24.
- 981 22. *Alfonso* V. Son of *Veramund*. 46.
- 1027 23. *Veramund* III. Son of *Alfonso*. 9.
- 1036 24. { *Sancha*, Sister of *Veramund*. } 30.
 { *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile*. }
- 1066 25. *Alfonso*, VI. the younger Son of *Ferdinand* and *Sancha*: first King of *Leon* only; but after the death of *Sancho* elder Brother, he succeeded also in *Castile*. 41.
 { *Urraca*, the Daughter of *Alfonso*. }
- 1107 26. { *Alfonso* VII. King of *Arragon* and *Navarre*. } 13.
- 1120 27. *Alfonso* VIII. the Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, succeeded in *Leon* and *Castile*. 35.

1155 28. *Ferdinand* II. younger Son of *Alfonso*, King of *Leon* only. 31.
 1186 29. *Alfonso* IX. Son of *Ferdinand*. 42.
 1228 30. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Alfonso*, by *Berengaria*, or *Berenguela*, Sister of *Henry* of *Castile*, by the Power and Practices of his Mother, succeeded in the Realm of *Castile*, whilst his Father lived, *An.* 1217. to the Prejudice of *Blanch* her eldest Sister, married to *Lewis* the eighth of *France*; by whom he had *Lewis* the ninth, and other children. Which *Lewis* the ninth, on the marriage of *Blanch* his eldest Daughter, with *Ferdinand* eldest Son of *Alfonso* the fifth, surrendered all rights in the Crown of *Castile* and so confirmed the same more absolutely to the house of *Leon*, *Anno* 1267; that neither this *Ferdinand*, nor *Blanch*, nor any of their Heirs, did attain that Kingdom, disleized thereof by *Sancho* a younger son. The Kingdoms never since that time disjoyned, as they had been twice before since the first uniting.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Argent*, a *Lyon* passant, Crowned *Or*. Which Arms when it was joined to the Kingdom of *Castile*, were quartered with the Coat thereof; that being the first time (as *Cambden* notes) that ever Arms were born Quartered. Followed herein by *Edward* the third of *England*, who not only took unto himself the title of King of *France*, but (to shew his right unto that Crown) quartered the *Flower de Lys* with his *English* Lions.

5. GALLICIA.

GALLICIA, or GALÆCIA, is bounded on the East with the *Asturias*, from which Parted by the River *Mearo*; on the South with *Portugal*, from which divided by the River *Minio*; on the North with the *Cantabrian*; and on the West with the *Atlantick* Oceans. The ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Gallaici*, (whence it had the name) distinguished into the several Tribes of the *Bedyi*, *Sueri*, *Cilini*, *Capori*, and *Lumavi*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*.

The Country, like that of the *Asturias*, mountainous, and almost inaccessible, overspread with the *Cantabrian* Hills; and so the fitter to hold out against Foreign Invasions, in defence of *Liberty* and *Religion*: in that regard chosen for a retiring place by the distressed and vanquished *Christians*, in their first Wars against the *Moors*: Not well inhabited to this day; not so much for the hilliness of the Country, as for want of Water; which defect makes the People generally draw more towards the Sea, were they improve their fortunes by trade and fishing. The barrenness of the Country recompensed heretofore by the rich Mines of gold and silver, which in this Country, and the *Astures*, and some part of *Lusitania*, afforded yearly 2000 pound weight of gold unto the *Romans*, amounting in our money to two millions of Crowns: but now no such Mines found in it of any value. Instead of which, it yieldeth the best Mines for Iron, of any Province of *Spain*; for which their Waters are so proper, that they are said to fortifie and improve the metal.

Places of principal importance, are 1. *Compostella*, an University and Arch-Bishops See, vulgarly called *St. James*, in honour of *St. James*, the Son of *Zebedee*, whom they pretend to be buried here, and of whom there is denominated an Order of Knights: his Reliques said to be kept in the chief Church of it, worshipped by the *Romanists* with great devotion: and drawing to this place a wonderful concourse of people, coming thither on pilgrimage. 2. *Baiona*, not far from the mouth of the River *Minio*. 3. *Corunna*, by *Ptolomy* called *Flaviu Brigantium*; by us *English* the *Groyne*: often mentioned in the story of our Wars with the *Spaniard*, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time; then taken by the *English*: but since, very well fortified to avoid the like surprisal. Divided then, as now, into the *High Town*, and the *Low*; situate on the *Cantabrian* Sea betwixt the Promontory *Tilen-*

Trilencum, now *Cabo Ortogal*, lying towards the East; and that of old called *Nerium*, now *Cabo Finis Terra*; as being the most Western end of the then known World. 4. *Orenus*, upon the *Minia*, a Bishops-See, by *Protony* called *Aque Calide*, from the *Bathes* here being, now much commended for the best Wines. 5. *Tui*, on the River, fronting upon *Portugal*: a Bishops See, in ancient Writers called *Tude*. 6. *Ponto-vedre*, 7. *Ribadeo*: both upon the Sea, both fitted with convenient Harbours.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, as before is said, were the *Gallaici*, one of the last Nations which submitted to the Power of the *Romans*: by whom first made a part of *Tarraconensis*; after a province of it self, by the name of *Gallicia*; the *Asturia's* and some part of the old *Castile* and *Portugal*, being added to it. In the declining of that Empire, the *Suevi*, a potent Nation of *Germany*, accompanying the *Vandals* and *Alani* in their *transigrations*, invaded *Spain*, and first possessed themselves of this Country. But not content with their Estate, they warred on the *Silinges*, (a *Vandal*-Tribe) then possessing *Batica*, whom they vanquished, and took that Province from them, under the conduct of *Rechila* their second King. They added, shortly after, *Lusitania* to their former Conquests: stopped in their career, by *Theoderick* the second, King of the *Goths*: by whom vanquished, and confined again within *Gallicia*, which they enjoyed till the final ruine of their Kingdom by *Leutigild* the *Goth*, Anno 858: reduced then to a Province of the *Gothish* Kingdom. Their habitation before their coming into *Spain*, was in the Eastern part of *Germany*, beyond the *Elb*. Their Religion at the first, under *Rechila* their third King, was very *Orthodox*, and sound. But vanquished by the *Goths*, and obliged unto them for the restoring of their Kingdom, they fell off to *Arianism*: persisting in that *Heresie* for the space of an hundred years, and then again returning to the *Catholic* Faith, under *Theodmire* their King; therein continuing constant till their final overthrow. The Kings hereof (as many as are upon Record) are these that follow.

The Kings of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*.

1. *Hermenericus*; who first brought the *Suevi* into *Spain*, and possessed *Gallicia*; *Aradius* and *Honorius*, then Emperors of the East and West.
2. *Rechila*, who conquered the *Silinges*, and subdued *Batica*.
3. *Rechiarus*, the first Christian King, who won *Lusitania*; afterwards vanquished and slain by *Theoderick*, King of the *Goths*; the *Suevi* for a time becoming subject to that King.
4. *Masdras*, restored unto the Kingdom by *Theoderick*.
5. *Frumarius*, the Son of *Masdras*,
6. *Remismundus*, brother of *Frumarius*, recovered some part of *Lusitania*, and fell off to *Arianism*.
7. *Theodmirus*, the Restorer of the *Catholic* Faith amongst the *Suevi*.
8. *Ariamirus*, Son to *Theodmire*.
9. *Eboricus*, the Son of *Ariamirus*, deposed and slain by *Andeca*.
10. *Andeca*, the last King of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*, or rather the usurper of the Regal Title, served in the same kind by *Leutigildis*, King of the *Goths*, as he had served *Eboricus* his Lord and Master. After which time *Gallicia* was made a Province of the *Gothish* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevi* no more heard of in *Spain*. In times ensuing, it became a part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, by the Kings whereof it was won piece-meal from the *Moors*, as their fortunes favoured them. Erected to a Kingdom by *Alfonso* the third, first named the *Great*, An. 886; and given unto *Ordogno* his second Son: by whose succession to the Crown on

the death of his elder brother *Garcia*, it was again united to the Kingdom of *Leon*; but so as to continue a Realm distinct. In the year 955, the *Gallicians* not brooking the ill qualities of *Rymur* the third, elected *Veramund* for their King, the Son of *Ordogno* the third, and right Heir of the Kingdom: who, coming to the Crown of *Leon* on the death of *Rymur*, did once again unite it unto that Estate. Dismembred from it once more by *Ferdinand* the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, who gave it unto *Garcia* his youngest Son, Anno 1067; but conquered shortly after by *Sancho* the eldest Son of *Ferdinand*; by whom *Garcia* was discomfited and imprisoned, Anno 1081. Never since separated from the Crown of *Castile* and *Leon*: but when *Leon* was severed from *Castile*; going along with *Leon* in those separations till the union of those Kingdoms in the person of *Ferdinand* the second, Anno 1230; the *Castilians* being then grown better Statesmen, than to canton Kingdoms.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, fesse of *Or*, charged with a Chalice crowned *Or*.

6. The Kingdom of *Corduba*

HAVING thus surveyed those Provinces under the Government of *Castile*, which lye at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and on the shores of the Northern or *Castilian* Ocean; we will next look on those which lye more towards the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean*, and so come round at last to *Castile* itself. And first we will begin with the Kingdom of *CORDUBA*, which at first erection of it, contained all those parts of *Spain* conquered by the *Moors*, and not again recovered by the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrow bounds, when subdued by the King of *Castile*; at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andalusia*, *Extramadura*, *Granada*, and the Isle of *Gades*. We will consider it, notwithstanding, in both capacities: In the first and largest notion, as unto the story and affairs thereof, till distracted by the *Moors*, into many Kingdoms: In the last and strictest, as to the *Chorography*, and description of it.

The Kingdom of *Corduba*, as it stood when subdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the East with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the West with *Portugal*, and the Ocean; on the North with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Castile*; and on the South with the Ocean, the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the Midland-Seas: so called from *Corduba* the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

It contained, as before was said, the Provinces of 1. *Andalusia*, 2. *Gades*, 3. *Extramadura*, and 4. *Granada*. But because *Granada* had the fortune to continue a Kingdom, when the rest were conquered, we will consider it by it self; and here proceed to the description of the other three.

1. *Andalusia* is bounded on the East with *Granada*; on the West with the *Atlantic* Ocean, and *Algarve* in *Portugal*: on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extramadura*: on the South, with the Ocean, the Straights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Pliny* it is called *Conventus Cordubensis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief City of it: and after, *Andalusia*, quasi *Pandalusia*, from the *Pandals*; who having won it from the *Romans*, had for some time (and till their expulsion into *Africa*) possessed themselves of it.

This is the most rich and fertile Country of all *Spain*; extremely fruitful of Wine, Oyl, Oranges, (which last being shipped at *Sevil*, and so brought for *England*, are by us called by the name of *Sevil* Oranges) and better furnished with Corn than most part of this Continent; watered with the Rivers, 1. *Anas*, 2. *Oder*, 3. *Batis*, and 4. *Tenot*: which makes it flourish with a continual greenness of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hills, though watered only with the dew of Heaven, do partake also in reasonable measure. The Air hereof, by reason of its Southernly situation, is exceeding

ceeding hot, infomuch that their Corn there is ripe in *April*: but those excessive heats, much moderated by those constant refreshings which the cool winds, breathing from the North, do bestow upon it. In which respect King *Ferdinand* the Catholick did use to say, that it was *best living in the Summer at Sevil*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reason of these cool refreshings; and in the *winter-time at Burgos in old Castile*, which though situate more Northernly, in a very sharp Air, had yet many notable defences against the cold.

The principal Cities and Towns hereof, are 1. *Corduba*, seated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left shore of *Guadalquivir*, overlooking towards the South, a spacious and fruitful plain. First founded by *Marcellus* a Roman Consul, *An. V. C. 601*; employed at that time in the Wars of *Spain*; the first Colony planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the Chief City of *Bætica*. For a long time the Seat of the *Moorish* Vice-Roy, Lieutenant to the great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; after of its own Kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace, a magnificent Castle. Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, it was restored unto the honour of an Episcopal See; which anciently it had, and doth now enjoy. A City of great circuit, but of very few Houses, by reason of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*, and both the *Seneca's*.

*Duosque Senecas, unicumque Lucanum,
Fecunda loquitur Corduba: saith Martial.*

Corduba glorying in her fruitful field,
One *Lucan* and two *Seneca's* did yield.

Nor was it less fruitful of good wits in the times succeeding. For not to say any thing of *Hosius* that renowned Confessor, who was Bishop here in the times of *Constantine*, and before: it was a flourishing University in the time of the *Moors*: *Avicen*, *Averroes*, *Rhasis*, *Almansor*, *Messahalab*, those famous Philosophers and Physicians, being Students or Professors in it. It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence cometh our true *Cordovan* Leather, made of the Skin of a *Sardinian* Beast. Near unto this City is a Wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but Olive-trees. 2. *Jaen*, a Bishops See; remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of *Spain*, ever since the first recovery of it, have stiled themselves Kings of *Jaen*, and use it to this day amongst the rest of their Titles: it having been, before that time, the seat and title of some petit Kings amongst the *Moors*. Not far from hence stood the Famous Town of *Illiturgis*, (by *Ptolomy*, *Illurgis*) mentioned so often in the War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Offuna*, of most note for the Dukes hereof, and a small University founded here, *Anno 1549*. 4. *Eccia*, on the River *Chenil*; of more esteem formerly, than at the present: by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus* called *Astigi*, by *Pliny*, *Augusta Firma*; a Roman Colony, and one of the four *Juridical* Resorts of *Bætica*. 5. *Marchena*, situate on a Hill, where is said to be the best breed of *Gennets*, (a swift race of Horses) not of this Province alone, but of all *Spain*; the River *Bætis* (as it was thought) conveying some secret virtue into them. Of this Race was the Horse which *Cæsar* so loved, that he erected his Statue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the ancient *Lusitani* thought they were begotten by the Wind. 6. *Xeres*, situate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*, and therefore called *Xeros de la Frontera*, (the *Asta* of *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*) famous for the plenty of that Wine which we call *Xeres-Sack*: but more for that great and fatal Battle fought near unto it, betwixt King *Roderick* and the *Moors*; the loss of which, drew along with it the loss of *Spain*. 7. *Medina Sidonia*, so called to distinguish it from a Town of *Castile*, called *Medina Cæli*; the Duke whereof was General of all the Forces both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conquest of

England, *Anno 1583*. The Town called anciently *Sinda*, and *Asido Cæsariana*; the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greatest Prince, for Revenue, in all *Spain*; his Intrado being estimated 130000 Crowns *per annum*. 8. *Algezire*, on the *Seafide*, a Town of such strength and consequence, that it held out a siege 19 months, for the *Moors* of *Africk*, against *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*; to whom surrendered at the last upon Composition, *Anno 1343*. Since which, the Kings of *Castile* have stiled themselves Kings of *Algezire*; not yet discontinued. 9. *Conil*, a Town on the *Seacoasts*, beyond the Ile of *Gades*, part of the Patrimony of the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*. 10. *Gibraltar*, a strong Town, seated at the mouth of the Straights from whence denominated, lying at the foot of the Mountain of *Calpe*, supposed to be one of *Hercules* Pillars, the furthest point Southwards of all *Europe*. 11. *St. Lucar de Barrameda*, (the *Luciferi forum* of the Ancients) the Port-Town to *Seville*, situate at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, or *Guadalquivir*: where the Ships of that rich City ride, either for a fair wind to put to Sea, or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *America*. 12. *Tariffa*, seated at the end of the Promontory which looks towards *Africk*; and so called, because *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, here landed: recovered from the *Moors* by *Sancho* the third of *Castile*, *Anno 1292*, or thereabouts; the first Governour thereof being *Alfonso Peres de Guzman*, the first Founder of the now potent Family of *Medina Sidonia*. Supposed by some to be the *Carteia* of the Ancients. And if so, then a Colony of the *Libertines* (begotten on some unmarried *Spanish* Women, by the *Roman* Souldiers) placed here, and indulged the Priviledges of the *Latins*, by Decree of the Senate, *An. V. C. 600*. Not far from these last Towns, in a little Island made by two branches of the *Bætis*, where it falleth into the Sea, stood the famous 13. *Tartessus*, celebrated in most ancient Writers, for the abundance of Silver which the Mines of it did produce. Which was so great, that (as we read in *Aristotle's* book de *Mirabiliis*) when the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians* first came thither, ὥστε μηκέτι ἔχον ὀναυαζ, μήτε ἐπιδύσασθαι πῶν ἄρρητων, that their Ships were neither able to contain or transport it thence: infomuch that they were fain to make their Anchors, and other Utensils, of Silver. The like commodity the *Grecians* found in their Voyages hither, of which *Heroditus* maketh mention, *Lib. IV*. Hereupon some have been perswaded, that the ships which *Solomon* built to go for *Tarshish*, (whereof we read 1 *Kings* 10. 22.) were bound no further than this place. As for the situation of it, that it was neither *Tariff*, as some, or *Carteia*, as others do conjecture, (though where *Carteia* was be alike uncertain, if it were not the same with *Tariff*) but in a small Island, at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, as before is said doth appear by *Strabo*; who telleth us, that *Bætis* falls into the Sea with two mouths or channels, πάλιν ἐν τῇ μετὰ τὴν χώραν κατοικοῦσιν, ἢ καλῶνται Τάρτησσον, &c. and that in the midst thereof there is a City called *Tartessus*, of the same name with the River, (for *Bætis* antiently was so named) from whence the whole Country thereabouts is called *Tartessus*. The like *Pausanias* saith expressly in his *Eliaca*. Which situation of this Town in an Island, at the mouth of *Bætis*, occasioned *Pliny*, and some others of the antient Writers, to give the name of *Tartessus* to the Ile of *Gades*; whereof more anon.

In the mean time go we on to 14. *Sevil*, (in *Latin*, *Hispalis*) the fairest City, not only of *Andaluzia*, but of all *Spain*. It is in compass six miles, divided into two parts by the *Bætis* but joined together by a strong and beautiful Bridge; the whole environed with beautiful Walls, and adorned with many magnificent and stately Buildings, and Palaces, Churches, and Monasteries; amongst which is that of the *Gertosins*, or *Carthusians*, is endowed with 25000 Crowns of yearly Revenue. It is also the See of an Arch-Bishop, under whose Jurisdiction are said to be 20000 Villages; and a most flourishing

ing University, wherein studied *Avicen* the Moor, that excellent and learned Scholar: Pope *Sylvester* the second, and *Leander*, who was Arch-Bishop hereof, about the year 580; a stout defender of the *Catholic* tendries of the Church against the *Arians*. The University adorned with one of the greatest and goodliest Libraries in the Christian World; furnished by *Diego*, the Son of *Christopher Columbus*, the first Founder of it, with no fewer than 12000 Volumes, in several Languages, gathered together with extraordinary charge and care, and endowed with a very fair Revenue for the maintenance and enlargement of it. Famous in former times, for two Provincial Councils holden here; the first, *Anno* 584; the last, *Anno* 636; and at the present, for that here are continually maintained 30000 *Gennets* for the service of the King; but most of all, for the great traffick of the place. For from this Town the *Castilians* set forwards towards *America*; and here they do discharge the Fleets of Gold and Silver, which they bring from thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagna*, and the Emeralds of *S. Martha*, the Cochineile of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hispaniola*, and in a word, the whole treasure of the *New-found-World*. Here is the publick Emporie of all *Spain*, for her Wines, Oranges, and Oyls; sent from hence in so great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the people use to say in the way of a *By-word*, That if there enter not into *Sevil* 4000 Pipes of Wine every day in the year, the Farmer of the Customs is sure to break; in so much as the Revenues coming out of this City only, are worth a very good Realm to the *Catholic* King: *Maginus* reckoning it at no less than a Million of Crowns yearly. Lastly here resteth the body of *Christopher Columbus*, the fortunate discoverer of the *New World*, with a Latin Epitaph upon his Tomb; but short (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man: Of which more hereafter.

As for the Fortunes of this City, as they relate to Ecclesiastical or Spiritual matters, it hath been long the See of an Arch-bishop, (as before is said) next in revenue and degree unto him of *Toledo*; his revenue estimated at 100000 Crowns per *Annum*; his Jurisdiction reaching over all *Andalusia*, and the *Fortunate Islands*; in which are said to be contained 20000 Villages; the very Diocesses of which, being said to comprehend 2000 Benefices, besides *Frieries*, *Nunneries*, and *Hospitals*, which may make the former computation of the Villages, subject to his Power, as a *Metropolitan*, of more casie credit. Yet not so much considerable for its *Wealth* and *Revenue*, as for being once the See of *Isidore*, so much renowned (considering the time he lived in) for the universality of his learning; who was a Bishop here, called usually *Isidorus Hispalensis*, to distinguish him from another of that Name in *Egypt*, called *Pelusiota*. As for the civil Fortunes of it, in the declining of the *Moors*, when their Estate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became a Kingdom of it self under a Noble Moor named *Allcorexi*, *An.* 966. One of the Kings whereof, called *Almuneamur*, was of so great power, that he had the Regal City of *Corduba*, and the greatest part of *Andalusia* under his command, made subject with the rest of the *Moors* in *Spain*, to the *Miramolins* of *Morocco*, *An.* 1091, till the retreat of *Mahomet Enaser* unto *Africk*, *ann.* 1214. After which, once more made a Kingdom in the person of *Aben Lalle*, a great Prince of the *Moors*; but no longer continuing in that Royal Dignity and Estate, than till the year 1248, when taken and subdued by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, and made a part of his Estate: but so, that it remaineth a Realm distinct in the Regal stile; in which the Kings of *Spain* are called the Kings of *Sevil*.

2. South of *Andalusia*, at the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, stands the Isle of *Gades*, distant from the main land 700 paces, and joined unto it with a Bridge called *Puerto de Suaco*. It is in length 13 miles, of a very fruitful soil; besides the Riches which it gets by Fishing, and making of Salt. First peopled by the *Tyrians*, 562 years

before the Birth of *CHRIST*; subdued by the *Carthaginians*, *ann.* U. C. 236, being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defensive War against the *Spaniards*; and was the last hold which the *Carthaginians* had in *Spain*; out of which beaten by the valour and good fortune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here stood in ancient times a Temple consecrated to the honour of *Hercules*; in which all Sea-fairing-men (at their being here) used to pay their vows, and offer sacrifice, as being arrived at the furthest parts of all the World.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town of *Calpe* and the main Land of *Andalusia*. 2. *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North; 3. *Cadis*, or *Gades*, the chief Town of the Illand, and giving name unto the whole. Situate on the Western part of the whole Ile, on a large Bay serving as a Road for the *Indian Fleet*, by the resort and trade whereof it is much enriched. First founded by the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal City* by the *Romans*; and one of the *Juridical Resorts* for the Province of *Betice*; in whose times it was held to be the noblest and richest in all *Spain*, not yielding to any in the Empire, for greatness, magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality. In so much that here lived at one time, 500 *Roman* Knights; which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* only: Besides the great concourse of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great resort, occasioned *Cornelius Balbus*, a Native of it, to add a new Town to the old, the whole circumference of both being 20 Furlongs. By the *Moors*, at their conquest of *Spain*, it was utterly ruined; but since repaired, well fortified, and made the Magazine for the Ammunition of the *Spanish* Navies. Taken, notwithstanding, in one day by the *English*, under the command of *Charles* Lord *Effingham*, *Robert* Earl of *Essex*, and *Sir Walter Raleigh*; in which they burned the *Indian Fleet*, consisting in 40 Ships, whose Lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the *Spanish* Navy, consisting of 57 Men of War; took the *St. Michael*, and the *St. Andrew*, two great Gallions, and their Luggage, spoiled and carried away more Martial Furniture than could be supplied in many years; and forced the Town, in which they slew and took Prisoners 4000 Foot, and 600 Horse, and brought thence a very great booty in the sackage of it, *Anno* 1596. The fortunacy of which enterprise, gave occasion to one of the *Wits* then living, to frame their excellent *Anagram* on the name of the Earl of *Essex*, (who was looked on as the greatest Adventurer in it) viz. *De'vereux*; *Vere Dux*, which he afterwards cast into this *Distich*.

Vere dux De'vereux, & verior Hercule; GADES
Nam semel hic vidit, vicit at ille simul.

Alcides yields to *De'vereux*; he did see
Thy Beauties (*Cales*) but *De'vereux* conquer'd thee.

Near to this Isle, is that so celebrated Straight, called by some, *Fretum Gaditanum*, for the nearness of it to this Island; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not because *Hercules* did there break out a passage, to let the Ocean into the *Mediterranean*, as the Poets fable; but because of the two Pillars which he caused to be erected on each side of it, with the inscription of *Nil Ultra*, this being supposed to be the furthest Country Westward. But when that supposition was proved untrue by the discovery of *America*, *Charles* the fifth being in those parts, caused two new Pillars to be placed where the old ones stood, or rather, where he thought they stood, and *Plus Ultra* to be written on them. As for those Pillars so much memorized in the ancient Writers, some place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Island; others, on the Promontory of *Calpe* in *Spain*, and that of *Abild* in *Africk*; and some again in two little Islands near those Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtful, and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the Straight, called now

now the *Straight of Gibraltar*, from the Town and Castle of *Gibraltar*, situate on the brink hereof; the *Straight* being in length fifteen miles; and in breadth, where it is narrowest, seven.

EXTREMADURA hath on the East and North, *Castile*; on the West, *Portugal*; and on the South *Andalusia*. It was first called *Beturia* from the River *Batis*, which runneth through it; and for distinction sake, *Beturia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*, then the Inhabitants of this Tract; to difference it from *Beturia Turdulorum*, containing those parts of *Granada* and *Andalusia*, which lye nearest unto *Tarraconensis*. And when first it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the Banks of the River *Duero*, the bounds at that time, of the Kingdom of the *Morisco's*, so called by the Christians, as lying on the extremities or furthest side of that River.

Principal places in it, are, 1. *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, situate near the ruins of *Norba Casaria*, destroy'd by *Petronius* and *Afranius*, two of *Pompey's* Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Cesar*: Now of most note for an Order of Knights here seated, and from hence denominated; whereof more hereafter. 2. *Guadalcanal*, famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold. 3. *Medrida*, situate also on the *Tagus*; first called *Augusta Emerita*, founded and made a Colony by *Augustus Caesar*, who placed herein his old Soldiers, whom the Romans called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief City after that of *Lusitania*; and, by *Aufonius*, preferred before any in *Spain*: Now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: Famous for nothing, but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the Roman greatness. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Wallia*, the first King of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and *Attace*, King of *Alani*, and *Silinges*, (this last a people of the *Vandals*) the victory whereof falling to the *Goths*, caused the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of *Spain*. 4. *Medelino*, near which the River *Guadiana* hideth it self under the ground, for the space of ten leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Discoverer and Conqueror of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5. *Badaios*, a Bishop's See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6. *Guadalupe* on a River of the same name; renowned amongst those of the Church of *Rome*, for the Miracle and Image of our Lady of *Guadalupe*; as much resorted to in *Spain*, as our Lady of *Loretto* in *Italy*. 7. *Placenza*, a Bishops See, near the Hills of *Castile*; amongst which Hills, (by reason of their strength and safety) *Sertorius* made his last retreat, when persecuted by the Romans of the contrary Faction; and where he was most wickedly slain by *Perpenna*, and some other of his own Associates. Not far from hence, if it be not in the self-same place, in a retired and solitary Valley, standeth the Monastery of Saint *Justus*, remarkable for a greater Miracle than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boast of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, the most puissant Monarch, having resigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the rest of his Dominions to his Son *Philip* the second, did here bid farewell unto the World; spending the residue of his time in Prayers and devout Meditations. The greatest Monument and Example of *Self-denial*, which these latter Ages have afforded. Far beyond any abnegation of the World by our Cloystered Monks, or any quitting of their Crowns by some Kings and Emperors in the darker Ages of the Church; who living in time of Ignorance and Superstition, saw not so clearly what they did, (or did it out of weakness, and want of spirit) as this Masculine and Heroick Emperor.

The old inhabitants of these Countries, were the *Turduli*, the *Basuli*, and the *Turditani*, of *Andalusia*, and *Granada*; the *Celtici*, and some part of the *Lusitani* in *Extremadura*; all vanquished by the Romans, during the second *Punick* War, under the fortunate command of *Scipio Africanus*. From them extorted by the *Vandals*,

who passing over into *Africa*, left it to the *Suevians*; left by them to *Theodorick* the fourth King of the *Gths*, who hereby added all *Betica* to his other Dominions. Under the *Goths* it remained subject till their fatal overthrow by the *Moors*, who having made almost an entire Conquest of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at first subject to the Great Caliphs, Lords of the Saracenic Empire; governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Theodor* the first, under whom they first made this Conquest, Anno 714, to *Abdalla*, of the House of *Alaveci*, Anno 757. At what time *Abderamen*, of the line of *Mahomet* the *Impostor*, and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, flying the fall of *Abdalla*, by whom the old Line of the Caliphs, of the Race of *Humeia*, (of which Race this *Abderamen* was) had been dispossessed of that Empire; came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spanish Moors*, cordially affected to his House: whose Government he took upon him, discharged of all subjection and subordination to the Caliphs, or *Mahometan* Emperors, and making it an absolute Kingdom of it self. In his Race it continued without any fraction or subdivision, till the time of *Hizen* the second, the tenth King of these *Spanish Moors*; after whose death, distracted amongst many petit Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moors* of *Africa*; of which more anon. In the mean time, take here the Catalogue of the Kings of these *Moors* of *Spain*, called commonly, from *Corduba* their Royal Seat,

The Kings of Corduba.

- | | | |
|-------|----|--|
| A. C. | | |
| 757 | 1 | <i>Abderamen</i> , the first Sovereign Prince of the <i>Moors</i> in <i>Spain</i> . |
| 787 | 2 | <i>Hizen</i> , the second Son of <i>Abderamen</i> , by whom <i>Zuleima</i> , his elder Brother, was put by his Throne. 7. |
| 794 | 3 | <i>Hali Hatan</i> , the Son of <i>Hizen</i> . 24? |
| 819 | 4 | <i>Abderamen</i> II. Son of <i>Hali Hatan</i> , discomfited by the <i>Christians</i> in the memorable battle of <i>Clavigio</i> , anno 836. |
| 839 | 5 | <i>Mahomet</i> , Son of <i>Abderamen</i> the second, who reduced <i>Toledo</i> , then revolted under his Command. 35. |
| 874 | 6 | <i>Almundie</i> , the Son of <i>Mahomet</i> . 2. |
| 876 | 7 | <i>Abdalla</i> , Brother to <i>Almundie</i> , and as little memorable. 13. |
| 889 | 8 | <i>Abderamen</i> III. surnamed <i>Almanasor</i> , too fortunate in his Wars against the <i>Christians</i> . 50. |
| 939 | 9 | <i>Hali Hatan</i> II. Son of <i>Abderamen</i> the second. |
| 959 | 10 | <i>Hizen</i> II. Son of <i>Hali Hatan</i> ; in the 33 rd year of his reign, deposed for his sloath and negligence, by |
| 989 | 11 | <i>Zuleima</i> , an <i>African Moor</i> , of the Family of <i>Alaveci</i> ; and he expelled by |
| 993 | 12 | <i>Mahomet</i> II. surnamed <i>Almobadi</i> , of the Old House of <i>Humeia</i> ; ousted again by <i>Zuleima</i> , and made King of <i>Toledo</i> . Betwixt these three, and their several Factions, the Kingdom wretchedly torn in pieces, never restored again to its ancient lustre; and finally, made a prey to |
| 1001 | 13 | <i>Hali</i> , another <i>African Moor</i> . 2. |
| 1003 | 14 | <i>Cacin</i> , the Brother of <i>Hali</i> . 4. |
| 1007 | 15 | <i>Hiaia</i> , the Son of <i>Mahomet</i> . Mens. 4. |
| 1007 | 16 | <i>Abderamen</i> IV. a King of 4 weeks only. |
| 1008 | 17 | <i>Mahomet</i> III. poisoned by his own Servants. 1. |
| 1010 | 18 | <i>Hizen</i> III. deposed by the <i>Moors</i> , grown weary of the House of <i>Humeia</i> , of which House he was. |
| 1011 | 19 | <i>Ioar</i> , of <i>Algezire</i> . 3. |
| 1014 | 20 | <i>Mahomet</i> IV, the Son of <i>Ioar</i> , the last King of the <i>Moors</i> in <i>Corduba</i> , before the second Conquest of these parts of <i>Spain</i> by the <i>Moors</i> of <i>Africa</i> . Concerning which, we are to know, that after the great Victory obtained at <i>Clavigio</i> , against <i>Abderamen</i> the second. |

cond, by *Laymir* King of *Leon*, Anno 836, in which the *Moor* lost 60000 of his men; the power and reputation of the *Spanish Moors* began to decline; brought utterly to nothing, by the sloth and negligence of *Hizen* the second; after a long and unprofitable reign, deposed by *Zuleima*, who succeeded. But the *Moors* not easily brooking the command of a new *Usurper*, fell into many Fractions and Divisions amongst themselves: every great man seizing on some part of the Kingdom, which he retained unto himself with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevil*, another of *Toledo*, a third of *Valentia*, a fourth of *Cordova*, &c. the names of which last only, do occur in the former Catalogues; as they which did pretend a Sovereignty over all the rest. And 'twas a sign the Kingdom was in the expiring, when so many Kings succeeded in so few years, after one another: there passing from the deposing of *Hizen* the second, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the fourth, not above 34 years in all; during which time, we find no fewer than ten Kings. The often change of Princes, and short lives of Kings, are the apparent signs of a ruinous State, approaching very near to its expiration; as may be seen by the short lives and reigns of the last *Western* Emperors, nine of them hardly reigning 20 years: as also, of the Kings of the *Goths* in *Italy*, of which the six last held the Throne no longer then the nine *Western* Emperors had done before them. But to proceed: *Mahomet* the last King of this first Rank, having left the stage in the 13th year of his reign, Anno. 1027, we find no good constat of his Successors in the Kingdom of *Corduba*; made inconsiderable by the withdrawing so many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and insolency of which Royetelets and petit Tyrants, forced them at last to call unto their aid the Kings or Miramomolins of *Morocco*, by whom themselves, and all the rest of their Corrivals, were in fine subdued. Under 7 Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spanish Moors* continued subject about 120 years; that is to say, from the first coming in of *Joseph Telephin*, the Miramomoline, Anno 1091; unto the going out of *Mahomet*, surnamed the *Green*, An. 1214. During which time, the affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain* were so well conducted, that they lost nothing to the *Christians*, but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alfonso* the second, in the accompt of *Castile*; the seventh, in accompt of *Leon*, An. 1147: and the City of *Lisbon* taken from them in the same year also by *Alfonso* the first King of *Portugal*. But *Mahomet* the *Green* being vanquished in the great Fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joynt Forces of the confederated *Christians*, Anno, 1214, left off all further care of the *Moors* in *Spain*; after his going thence distracted once again into many Kingdoms, almost as many as great Towns, all of them swallowed up, in a little time, by the Kings of *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongst them, the Kingdom of *Corduba*, not able to stand long on this new Foundation, was ruined and brought under the command of the *Castilians*, by their King *Ferdinand* the second, Anno 1236. Since that time there is no more mention of the Kingdom of *Corduba*.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a *Lion Gules*, armed and crowned of the first, a *Border Azure* charged with 8 *Towers Argent*.

7. GRANADA.

GRANADA is bounded on the West, with *Andalusia*; on the East, with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New-Castile*; on the South with the *Mediterranean* only. So called from *Granada*, the chief-City, and Seat Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 700 miles in compass: a Kingdom of no great extent; but such as contained in it more fair Towns, strong Fortresses, and defensive Places, then the like quantity of Ground in the World besides. The North part of the Country plain; the South parts overspread

with the *Alpuxarra's*, and other spurs and branches of the *Orospeida*. In the time of the *Moors*, wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all sorts of Commodities, the Hills planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Valleys swelling with Corn and Gardens: since their expulsion neither much peopled, nor very fruitful, for want of men to dress and manure the Land.

The principle Cities of it, are 1. *Granada*, situate on two Hills, divided by a Valley, through which runneth the River *Darien*; consisting of four several parts, called *Alhambra*, *Sierre de Sol*, *Granada*, and *Antequerula*: the two first standing on the Hills, the two last in the valley, the whole circuit being about 7 miles, and containing in the time of the *Moorish* Kingdom, about 200000 of Souls. Fenced with strong Walls, fortified with 130 Turrets, and replenished with abundance of wholesome and pleasant Springs. The Merchants and Gentry of the best sort, do dwell in that part which is called *Granada*: the houses of which, are for the most part built of free-stone, with delicate and artificial Masonry, shewing great magnificence; Herein standeth the Cathedral Church, a work of admirable structure: of Figure round, as having sometimes been a *Mahometan Mosquet*. Here is also the place which they call *Alhazar*, representing a little Town, to which are ten Gates. In the *Alhambra* is the Palace of the *Moorish* Kings, covered with Gold, indented with *Mosical* work; and which, by reason of the structure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put amongst the *Wonders* of the world, having withal a goodly prospect over all the Town, lying under it upon the East; a spacious Champ-ign towards the North, and the snowy tops of *Sierra Novano* towards the South. This City is the ordinary Parliament, and Court of Justice, for all the Southern parts of *Spain*, as *Valladolid* is for the Northern: *Madrid*, which is the highest Court, having Jurisdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town first raised out of the ruins of *Illeberis*, situate not far off the Hill *Elvire*, much mentioned in the stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town, there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer sort. 2. *Alabama*, seated amongst steep and craggy Rocks, out of which issue *Medicinal Waters*, occasioning a great resort of the *Spanish* Gentry: the first Town taken by the *Spaniards* in their last long War against the *Moors*, for the recovery of this Kingdom, Anno 1482; and looked on, by the *Moors*, as a sad presage of a ruined and expiring Empire. 3. *Guadix* an Episcopal See, about nine leagues from *Granada*. 4. *Veles Malaga*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cex*; by *Antonius*, *Saxcanum*; situate at the foot of the Mountains called *Alpuxarra's*; a large branch of the *Orospeida* overspreading a great part of this Country: heretofore planted with incredible numbers of *Moors*, who chose to dwell there for the strength and safety of the situation: since their expulsion, desolate, and unfrequented; nothing remaining of them now, but the *Arabick* Language; which is still spoke by these few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this Tract so high, that from the tops hereof a man may easily discern the whole course of the *Streights of Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Ceuta*, and *Tangier* in *Africk*. 5. *Randa*, at the foot of another branch of the *Orospeida*, called from this Town, *Sierra de Ronda*: not far from which, by *Munda*, now a very small Village, was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Cæsar*, and the Sons of *Pompey*, the honour of which fell to *Cæsar*, who then made an end of the *Civil-War*, which that very day, four years before, were begun by *Pompey* the Father. In this fight was *Cn. Pompeius* slain, and his Forces broken; *Cæsar* himself being so put to it, that seeing his Souldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them *Remember, that at Munda they forsook their General*. The shame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onset, which was honoured with a signal and remarkable Victory: this being the last fight that *Cæsar* was in, murdered

dered not long after in the Senate-house. And of this fight he used to say, *That in all other places he fought for his Honour, in this for his life.* 6. *Antequera*, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering close upon *Castile*. 7. *Muxacra*, on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, supposed to be the *Murgis* of *Ptolomy*. 8. *Vera* on the same shore; the furthest Town of *Batiza*, and of this Country, towards *Murcia*: supposed to be the *Virgao* of *Pliny*, from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called *Virgitanus*. 9. *Loxa*, on the River *Darien*, enjoying a situation both strong and pleasant. 10. *Malaga*, or *Malaca*, situate at the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, once sacked by *Crassus* the rich Roman, who flying out of *Spain*, to avoid the Fury of *Marius* and *Cinna*, who had slain his Father and Uncle, hid himself and his Companions, in a Cave hereabouts, for eight Months together: but after hearing of their deaths, issued out, and ranfacked, amongst many other Cities, this *Malaga*. A Town of great Traffick, and much Resort, especially for Raisins, Almonds, *Malaga Sacks*: well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of War; and, to the great prejudice of the *Moors*, taken by *Ferdinand* the Catholick, Anno 1487: the Conquest of the whole kingdom of *Granada*, following not long after. It was since made a Bishops-See, or restored rather to that dignity which it had of old. 11. *Almeria*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, the *Abdera* of *Mela*; a Colony of the *Carthaginians*, and anciently a Bishops-See. 12. *Cartbema*, 13. *Coim*, and 14. *Basa*, more within the Land: this last, the strongest Bulwark of the City of *Granada*, on the North-east whereof it standeth. A place of great strength both by Art and Nature; and by the *Moors* defended with so great a gallantry, that it held out a siege of 7 Months against an Army of 13000 horse, and 24000 Foot, King *Ferdinand* the Catholick, being there in person: and yielded at the last, Decemb. 4. 1489. upon better conditions than any Town had done before it.

As for the Fortunes of this Country, after the Conquest of it by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, it was a part or member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, and so continued till that Kingdom was subdued by the *Spaniards*. But the *Moors* were too stout to yield at once. Having yet ground enough both to secure themselves in, and endow their King: they are resolved, though they had lost one Kingdom, to erect another. And therefore *Corduba* being taken, and that Kingdom ruined, the *Moors*, with *Mahomet Aben Alhamer*, their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themselves unto *Granada*, and there renewed their strength and Kingdom, which lasted 256 years, under 20 Kings; whose names here follow in this Catalogue of

The Kings of Granada.

A. C.	
1236	1. <i>Mahomet Albamar</i> , the last King of <i>Corduba</i> , and the first King of <i>Granada</i> . 36.
1272	2. <i>Mahomet Mir Almir</i> . 30.
1302	3. <i>Mahomet Aben Ezar</i> . 7.
1309	4. <i>Mahomet Aben Evar</i> . 10.
1319	5. <i>Ismael</i> . 3.
1322	6. <i>Mahomet</i> . 12.
1334	7. <i>Joseph Aben Amet</i> . 20.
1354	8. <i>Mahomet Lagus</i> . 23.
1377	9. <i>Mahomet Vermeil</i> . 2.
1379	10. <i>Mahomet Guadix</i> . 13.
1392	11. <i>Joseph II</i> . 4.
1396	12. <i>Mahomet Aben Balva</i> . 11.
1407	13. <i>Joseph III</i> . 16.
1423	14. <i>Mahomet Aben Azar</i> . 4.
1427	15. <i>Mahomet the little</i> . 5.
1432	16. <i>Joseph Abud Almud</i> . 13.
1445	17. <i>Mahomet Osmeu</i> . 8.
1453	18. <i>Ismael II</i> . 9.
1462	19. <i>Muley Alboacen</i> . 20.
1482	20. <i>Mahomet Boabdelin</i> , the last King of the <i>Moors</i> in <i>Spain</i> . Of all which, there is little left upon

Record: their whole time being spent in defending their borders against the encroachments of *Castile*; or else in *Civil-Wars* and discords amongst themselves: in which they were so frequent and sometimes so violent, as if they had no Enemy near them. *Mahomet Aben Evar*, the fourth King, deposed by *Mahomet Aben Levin*; and he again thrust out by *Hismael*, the Son of *Ferrachen*, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treason. *Mahomet*, Son of *Ismael*, murdered by his Subjects. *Joseph* the Son of *Mahomet*, slain by *Mahomet Lagus*, and he again deposed by *Mahomet Vermeil*; who in the end was miserably slain by *Pedro*, the Cruel, of *Castile*, to whom he had fled for help and succour. After this time, they reigned and deposed one another, to the end of their Kingdom; the Successor never staying till the death of his Predecessor, but violently making way for himself to enter on the Government: even *Mahomet Boabdelin*, the last King hereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but setting him besides the Throne, as he himself was for a time, by *Muley Moabdelin* his Uncle; and thereby opening a fair Gate for *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* and *Aragon*, to bring in his Forces to the subduing of them all. Such was the fortune of this Kingdom, that as it began under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Castile*; so it ended under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Castile* also. In the first year, then, of this man's Reign, did the War begin, or rather in the last year of his Father, who by taking *Zabara* from the Christians, gave the first occasion: and in the tenth year of the War, (for so long it lasted) 1492, the Empire of the *Moors* ended in *Spain*, by the valour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick and *Isabel* his Wife, after their first entrance into it more than 760 years.

Such of them as, after the decay of their Kingdom, had a desire to stay in *Spain*, which had for so long time been their native Country, were suffered so to do by the prudent *Victors*, (fearing a desolation of the Country, if they should abandon it) conditioned, that they would be *Christened*. And that they might be known to be as they professed, the *Inquisition* was established in the City of *Granada*, consisting of a certain number of Secular Priests, and Dominican Friars; who finding any counterfeit or Apostate *Christian*, were first gently to reprove and exhort them; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict such punishment on them, as was accustomed in like cases. By the terror of which *Inquisition*, many professed, in shew the *Christian* Faith. But being *Christians* only in the outward shew, and practising on all occasions against the State, the Kings of *Spain* resolved long ago on their *Extermination*; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the year 1609. At what time *Philip* the third having made a peace with *England*, and a Truce with *Holland*; and finding the *Moors* of *Africa* so imbroiled in Wars, that they were not able to disturb him; put that extream rigour in execution, which had before been thought of in their consultations; 1100000 of them being forced to quit this Country, and provide new dwellings; under colour that they went about to free themselves from the *Inquisition*, and to recover their old Liberty lost so long before.

The Forces which the Kings of *Granada*, in the times of their greatest power, were able to raise, were far beyond the amesurement and extent of their Kingdom: not above 700 miles in compals, as before is said: but to exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of necessaries, that within two days space, the King hereof was said to have been able to draw together 50000 Horse, and 200000 Foot, for defence of this Kingdom. *Turquet* reports it so, in his *Spanish History*. But this proved more than they were able to do in their greatest need; when this Kingdom was finally invaded, and at last subdued by *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, Kings of *Spain*: though possibly by reason of their divisions at that time, (some following the Party of *Mahomet Boabdelin*; and others, that of his Uncle *Muley*, chosen King against him) they

they might not join together in a common interest, for the defence of their Estate.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Pomgranate (or Apple of *Granade*) slipped, *Vert*.

8. MURCIA.

MURCIA is bounded on the West, with *Granada*; on the East and North, with *Valencia*, and a part of *Granada*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean Sea*. So called from *Murcia* the chief City. In former times esteemed a rich and wealthy Country, flored with all sorts of fruits; and so abounding in *Silver Mines*, that when the *Romans* were Lords of it, they kept continually four hundred men at work, and received 25000 *Drachma's* of daily profit: Now for the most part barren, and but ill-inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in so small a Country. The Principal, 1. *Murcia*, by *Ptolomy* called *Men-ralio*, seated upon the River *Segura*, a Bishops See, situate in a pleasant and delightful Plain, planted with Pomgranates, and other excellent Fruits: From this, the Country had the name of the Kingdom of *Murcia*. 2. *Carthagena*, or *Nova Carthago*, first built by *Asdrubal* of *Carthage*, the brother of *Annibal*, for the better receiving of such aids, both of men and money, as should come from *Africa*. Situate in a Demi-Island, in the very jaws of the *Mediterranean*: by which, and by a deep Marish on the West-side of it, so impregvably fortified, that if *Scipio*, afterwards called *Africanus*, who then lay at the siege thereof, had not been shewed a way over that Marish, at a dead low water, by poor Fisher men of *Tarragon*, who knew the Secret, he had there lost both his time and his honour. Nothing more memorable in the sackage and spoil thereof, (though there was found abundance of Arms and Treasure) than the virtue of *Scipio*, who finding there many *Spanish Ladies* of great Birth and Beauties, left there as Hostages for the *Spaniards*, with the *Carthaginians*, would not permit any of them to be brought before him, for fear it should betray him to some inconvenience. Being re-edified, it was made a *Roman Colony*, and one of the seven Judicial Reforts of *Tarraconensis*: by *Constantine* made the chief City of the new province of *Carthaginensis*, which was hence denominated. Afterwards twice sacked by the *Goths* and *Vandals*, it lay for a long time buried in its own ruins. And though now again new built and peopled, in the year 1570, it is but small, containing at the most but 600 households, and would be utterly abandoned but for the safety of the place, and the strength thereof garrisoned and fortified very strongly by King *Philip* the second, for fear of a surprisal by the *Turks*; and the security of the Haven (which is withal very large and capacious) coming from a little Island lying at the mouth thereof; by which assured from tempestuous winds, and the violent ragings of the Sea. Hence the occasion of that saying of *Andreas Doria*, Admiral unto *Charles* the fifth, That there were but three safe Ports in the *Mediterranean*; that is to say, *August*, *July*, and this *Carthagena*: meaning, as I conceive, that those two Months being commonly free from tempestuous weather, were of as great safety to the Marriners, as this famous Port. 3. *Lorca*, another Port-Town situate on a Creek more within the Land. 4. *Almanca*, 5. *Surazel*, two strong Towns bordering on *Valencia*; well fortifi'd when *Murcia* and *Valencia* were in several hands. 6. *Cervillan*. 7. *Albama*. 8. *Rus*, &c.

This Country being part of the Province of *Carthaginensis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans* at their first entrance into *Spain*; from them recovered by *Walaia*, the first King of the *Goths* in this part of *Europe*. Together with the rest of *Spain*, it was subdued by the *Moors* of *Africk* in the distractions of whose Empire; after the going hence of the *Moors* of *Africk*, it was made distinct Kingdom by *Aben Hut*, of the Race of the Kings of *Saragossa*, who had seized upon it, anno 1228;

and for a time was the most puissant King of the *Moors* in *Spain*, commanding over this Countrey *Granada*, and a part of *Andalusia*. Invited to a Feast, made drunk, and then basely Murdered by *Aben Aradin*, a false Servant of his, anno 1236. One *Aben Hudiel* seized on the Realm of *Murcia*, disturbed in his possession by *Alboaquis*, the last King hereof. But he not able to defend himself against his Competitor, surrendered it to *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, whom he put into possession of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned that *Alboaquis* should retain the Title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived, and the Sovereignty of *Castile*: And that *Ferdinand* should have one half of the profits of it. This was in the year 1264, after it had continued in the state of a Kingdom 10 years only, united to *Castile* without blood or trouble, and so remains ever since.

9. TOLEDO.

THE Kingdom of *TOLEDO*, so called from *Toledo* the chief City of it, contained once the greatest part of that Country which is now called *New-Castile*; of which it is now reckoned only for a part or member. The Country lying next unto it was anciently the Seat of *Carpentani*, the nature of the Soil we shall find elsewhere.

Principal Cities of this Kingdom: 1. *Toledo*, of great antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius* a *Roman Prator*, at the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a City of good note. Pleasantly seated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many pieces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with thirty Towers standing on the Walls. By reason of the situation of it in the very midst almost of *Spain*, it is passing well inhabited; as well by the Nobility, who reside there for pleasure, and by Scholars, who abide in it for their Studies; as by Merchants, who resort thither for their profit: besides such Soldiers and their Officers, who are continually garrison'd in it for defence thereof. The private buildings generally are but mean and ordinary; though, by far, more handsome in the inside than the outside promiseth: most of them being furnished with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed unto them by the admirable invention of one *James*, a native of *Cremona* in the Dukedom of *Millain*. The Streets narrow, close, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troublesome to walk or go upon, especially in slippery or dirty weather, by reason of its steep and uneven situation on the side of a Rocky Hill: by which, and by the River which almost surrounds it, it is naturally very strong, and well helped by Art. For that cause made the Seat of the *Gothish* Kings: by one of which called *Bomba*, so repaired and beautified, (besides the addition of a strong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by some accounted for the Founder of it. For so we find it in these old Verses:

*Erexit (sautore Deo) Rex inclytus Urbem
Bamba, sua celebrem protendens Gentis honorem.*

That is to say,

King *Bamba* (God assisting) rais'd this Town,
Extending so the ancient *Goths* renown.

When the *Goths* fell, it was in chief estimation amongst the *Moors*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdom; whereof more anon: but under both, (as it continueth to this day) the See of an Archbishop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and President, for the most part, of the *Inquisition*. His Revenue answerable to his Place, the greatest of any *Clergy-man* in the *Christian World*, next to the Popes of *Rome*; as being estimated at 300000 *Crowns per annum*. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 National Councils, here holden in the time of the *Goths*; and is now a famous

mous University for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws, and hath to this day the Temporal Jurisdiction over 17 walled Towns, besides Villages. 2. *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is situate on the River *Ana*; of most fame in these latter times, for an Order of Knights, called the Knights of *Calatrava*; of which more when we come to *Castile*. Neighbour'd by the ruins of the strong and famous City *Castulo*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyresoeni*, a People that dwelt on the other side of the River, suddenly entred and taken. But *Sertorius* following after them by the same Gate, put them all to the Sword; and causing his Men to apparel themselves in the clothes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gyresoeni*; who supposing them to be their own Party, opened their Gates, and were all either slain, or sold for slaves. More of this Town anon, when we come to *Castile*, to which now belonging. 3. *Tabora*, commonly called *Talavera de la Reyna*, or the Queen's *Talavera*; and called so on occasion of an execrable Murder committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widow of *Alfonso* the sixth, on the Lady *Leonore de Guzman*, her Husband's Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleasantly seated on the *Tagus*; supposed to be the *Libora* of *Ptolomy*, and now belonging to the Archbishop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof. *Medina Zelim*, commonly called *Medina Celi*; of great importance when possessed or neighbour'd by the *Moors*. Now of most note for giving the title of Dukes to the illustrious Family *de la Cerde*, descended from *Ferdinand*, the eldest Son of *Alfonso* the fifth, claiming, by that descent, a title to the Crown of *Castile*. What other Towns belonged unto it, we shall see anon.

As for *Toledo* it self, in the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarraconensis*; after that, the Seat-Royal of the *Gothish* Kings; removed hither from *Tholouse* in *Languedoc*: forced by the *Moors*, at their first entrance into *Spain*, an. 716; more prudently aiming at the Head, than the *Goths* possibly expected from such *Barbarians*. In the Confusions of that Kingdom, betwixt the beginning of the Reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the second coming in of the *Moors* of *Africk*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self; continuing in that estate, till taken from *Haia Alchaduchir*, the last King hereof, by *Alfonso* the first King of *Castile*, an. 1083. This *Alfonso* being the youngest Son of *Ferdinand*, the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdom of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that, by his Brother *Sancho* King of *Castile*, he lived in exile with the *Moors*; kindly received and entertained by *Almenon* the Father of this *Haia* King of *Toledo*, till the death of his Brother. After which coming to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*, an. 1073, he picked a quarrel with his Host, and besieged *Toledo*; his long abode there making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitate his designs; which notwithstanding held him a siege of five years, before he could make himself master of it, by him incorporated presently on the taking of it, with the rest of that Kingdom, and made the head of *New-Castile*. But for the Kings hereof, as well those who held it but for life, as those who left the same unto their Posterity, they are these that follow:

The Moorish Kings reigning in Toledo.

A. C.

- 1 Galafroy, King of *Toledo*, in the time of *Charlemagne*, under the Vassalage of the great Caliphs of *Damascus*; subdued by *Abderamen* the first, King or Miromomolin of the *Moors* in *Corduba* of the House of *Humeya*.
- 787 2 *Zuleima*, the eldest Son of *Abderamen* King of *Corduba*, being dispossessed of the Realm of *Corduba*, and the rest of his Estates in *Spain*, by *Hizen* his younger Brother, reigned a while in *Toledo*; of which reigned not long after: *Toledo* from that time continuing a

Member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, till the latter end of the reign of *Abderamen* the second. At what time

- 833 3 *Aben Lope*, (the Son of *Musa Aben Cacia*, Goth by Nation and descent; but a *Moor* by profession; who had caused the *Toledans*, and others of the *Moors* of *Spain*, to rebel against *Abderamen*) assumed unto himself the title of King of *Toledo*: a strict confederate of *Ordogno* the 11th, King of *Leon*; by whom supported in his Wars against those of *Corduba*; but at last vanquished and dispossessed by *Mahomet*, the Son of *Abderamen*, anno 848.
 - 990 4 *Abdalla* a great man among the *Moors*, during the contentions betwixt *Zuleima* and *Hizen* the second, for the realm of *Corduba*, seized on the City of *Toledo*; which he held as King: and kindly entertained *Mahomet Almohadi*, made King of *Corduba* during those contentions; by whom succeeded in this Kingdom.
 - 995 5 *Mahomet*, surnamed *Almohadi*, of the Regal Family of *Humeya*, King of *Corduba*, and dispossessed thereof by the Faction of *Zuleima*, retired to *Toledo*, and was kindly entertain'd by King *Abdalla*, whom he succeeded in this Kingdom.
 - 999 6 *Obeydalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*, slain in his Wars with *Hizen*, the King of *Corduba*, in the first or second year of his reign.
 - 1000 7 *Hairam*, of the same house of *Aben Humeya*, and, probably, the next Kinsman of *Obeydalla*; succeeded him in this Estate, and left the same unto his Posterity, till subdued by the *Spaniards*.
 - 1010 8 *Hizen*, the Son of *Hairac*, of whom nothing memorable.
 - 1045 9 *Ali Manon*, or *Almenon*, as the *Spaniards* call him, the Son of *Hizen*, who entertained *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, when dispossessed of his Estate by his Brother *Sancho*.
 - 1076 10 *Hizen* II. Son of *Ali Maynon*.
 - 1078 11 *Haya*, surnamed *Alcadarbile*, the Son of *Ali Maynon*, and Brother of *Hizen*; a cruel Prince, and ill beloved of his Subjects; which gave occasion unto *Alfonso* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, spoken of before, to invade this Kingdom; by whom at last it was subdued, and *Toledo*, with its Territories, added unto *Castile*, as before is said, anno 1083. By which means there accrued to the Realm of *Castile*, besides *Toledo* it self, and the Towns spoken of already, those of *Illescus*, *Escallona*, *Maqueda*, *Canales*, *Coria*, *Consuegra*, *Berlanga*, *Guadalajara*, *Arienca*, and divers others, now passing in the estimate of *New-Castile*.
- But to conclude, *Toledo* thus reduced under the command of the *Christians*, was forthwith made the Metropolitan City of *Spain*, (in regard of Ecclesiastical or Spiritual matters) as it had been before in the time of the *Goths*: and shortly after honour'd by *Alfonso* with the Title of the Imperial City; that King, upon the conquest hereof, having assumed unto himself the stile of Emperour of *Spain*, but somewhat too affectedly, as the case then stood, there being other Kings in *Spain* as well as he. In which respects he gave unto this City for the Arms hereof, in a Field Azure, a Crown Mitral Imperial Or, garnished with sundry precious Gems Proper; changed afterwards by *Alfonso* the third of *Castile*, and eighth of *Leon*, affecting the same title of Emperour, to an Emperour sitting on his Throne in a Robe of Gold, with a Globe in his left hand, and a Sword in his right. But the Blazon of these Arms I find not, nor much worth the searching: the old Coat being worn again after his decease.

10. CASTILE.

CASTILE is bounded on the East, with *Navarre*, *Aragon*, and part of *Valentia*; on the West, with *Portugal*; on the North, with *Biscay*, *Guipuscoa*, and the *Asturias*; on the South, with *Extremadura*, *Andalusia*, and *Granada*. The Reason of the name we shall have anon.

This was the most prevailing Kingdom of all this Continent; to which the rest are all united either by Marriages or Conquest. Divided commonly into the new and old; parted from one another by the Hills of *Segovia*: the one being called the *Old Castile*, because it was the Ancient Patrimony of the Earls heretofore; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the first Inheritance, by the Conquest of the Realm of *Toledo*, and other pieces, from the *Moors*. The *Old Castile* is the less fruitful of the two; more fit for Pasturage, than Corn, but better stored with that and all sorts of fruits than the neighbouring Countries, which lye betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the *New* more plain and Champian, better stored with Fruits, and furnished with sufficient plenty of Corn, and other provisions necessary for the life of man. The *Old Castile* watered with the Rivers of, 1. *Relanuos*, rising not far from *Burgos*. 2. *Tormes*, passing by *Salamanca*. 3. *Duero*, the Receptacle of the others. The *New* with, 4. *Guadarama*, honoured with the neighbourhood of *Madrid*. 5. *Tævina*, and 6. *Tagus*, the most famous River of all *Spain*.

The *OLD CASTILE* is situate on the North of the *New*; and hath for the chief Cities of it, 1. *Soria*, of great note in the ancient Story, by the name of *Numantia*; which for the space of 14 years, withstood the whole Forces of *Rome*: during which time they valiantly repulsed their Enemies, and forced them to dishonourable Compositions. But finding, at last, no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money, and Goods, laid them in a heap, then set fire on them, and finally burnt themselves in the midst of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Numantia*, to adorn his triumph. 2. *Avila*, situate under the great Mountains, which are called from hence, the Mountains of *Avila*. Known anciently by the name of *Abule*; and by that name giving the title of *Abulensis* to the renowned *Tostatus*, who was Bishop of it. A Man, who in his time was President of the Council to *John* King of *Aragon*; yet could find leisure enough not only to attend his Episcopal Charge, but to compose those learned and painful Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which, and his other Abilities, (besides that which hath before been noted of him) we may take that *Elogie* which *Casaubon* hath given him, in his book against *Baronius*, saying *Laudo acumen viri, si in meliora incidisset Tempora, longe maximi*. 3. *Valladolid*, a fine neat Town, and one of the ancientest Universities of *Spain*: discontinued for a time, by Students, and then restored again by King *Philip* the second, whose birth-place it was; and who erected here a College (amongst others) for the education only of young *English* Fugitives, in the year 1589. Seated upon the River *Pisuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*. By means whereof, and of the King's Court here residing in the summer-times, it became, in little space, a fair, large, populous City, and of great resort, not yielding unto any in *Spain*, except *Lisbon*, and *Sevil*. It is called in *Latin*, *Vallis Olerum*, and *Vallis Oletana*, from the abundance of Olives growing near it: but by *Ptolomy*, *Pintia*. 4. *Segovia*, a Bishops-See, of great trade in clothing; situate under a branch of the Mountain *Idubeda*, called from hence, the Hills of *Segovia*. 5. *Burgos*, near the head of the River *Relanuos* or *Relanzon*, at the foot of the great Mountain *d' Oca*, part of the *Idubeda*: built out of a certain Village lying hereabouts, by *Nagno Bellidus*, a *German* Son in Law unto one of the first Earls of *Castile*. For a long time the seat of those

Kings, since of the Archbishops heretofore; the Cathedral being one of the fairest in *Spain*; built with such art, that Mass may be sung aloud in five several Chappels, without disturbing one another. This City doth contend for Primacy and Precedency, (in *Civil* matters) with that of *Toledo*, of which it hath the first place or vote in all Parliaments or Assemblies of the States of *Castile*. But yet to satisfy *Toledo*, the Controversie is still undecided, and was once finely taken up by one of the *Ferdinands*, saying that *he* would first speak for *Toledo*, and then *Burgos* should do for it self. Without the Walls of this City is a famous Nunnery, called *Delas Fúelgas*, consisting of 150 Religious Women, all of Noble Houses. 6. *Ciudad Rodrigo*, a Bishops-See, on the River *Gual*. 7. *Zamora*, a strong and well-built City, and a Bishops-See, the *Sentica* of *Ptolomy*: situate on the River *Duero*, and now famous for the best Lag-pipe: 8. *Tordesillas*, the *Segisana*, of the Ancients. 9. *Lerma*, not far from *Burgos*, the chief Seat of the Dukes so called; a Prince of great possessions, and the chief of the Family of *Rois*, and *Sandoval*. 10. *Salamanca*, the most famous University of *Spain*, especially for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws: first instituted by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, Anno 1240; and by an Order of the Pope's, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Benonia* in *Italy*, created a *Generale Studium*; wherein there were to be Professors of the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Chaldee*, and *Arabic* Tongues, besides those of the Arts. It was of old called *Salmanica*; is now a Bishops-See, situate on the River *Tormes*, as before was said.

Not far from this City, about the times of our Grandfathers, was discovered in a Valley situate amongst high and impassable Mountains, a kind of *Patagos*, or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain* before. The occasion of this: An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva's*, which he very much valued, flew over those Mountains; and his men not being able to find her at first, they were sent back by the Duke to seek her. Clambring from one Hill to another, they hapned at last upon a large and pleasant Valley, where they spied a company of naked *Savage* people, hunted in amongst many craggy Rocks, The *Salvages*, gazing a while upon them, ran into their Caves, made in the hollows of the Rocks, the best Houses they had: which being observed by the *Spaniards*, they return again unto their Lord, telling him, that instead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him news of a *New world* in the midst of *Spain*, and of a race of People which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they said they obtained belief. And the Duke shortly after went with a Company of *Mulquetiers*, and subdued them easily; they having no offensive Weapons, but only Slings. They worshipped the Sun and Moon, fed upon nothing that had life; but had good store of excellent Fruits, Roots, and Springs of Water, wherewith Nature was well contented. And though their Language was not altogether understood by any; yet many of their words were found to be purely *Basquish*. Reduced, on this discovery, to *Christianity*; but easily discernable from all other *Spaniards*, by their tawny complexions, occasioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beams, from those Rocky Mountains wherewith on all sides they are encompassed. The truth hereof, besides the credit of *James Howell*, in his *Instructions for Foreign Travel*, I have upon enquiry found to be attested by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*; employed there in affairs of publick interest. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly satisfied in the men; whom I conceive to be some remnant of the Ancient *Spaniards*, who hid themselves amongst these Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their Language and Idolatry speak them to be such. For had they either fled from the *Goths* or *Moors*, there had been found some Cross, or other Monument of *Christianity*, as in other places; or some such mixture in their Speech, as would have favoured somewhat of the *Goths* or *Romans*. But it is time I should proceed.

NEW CASTILE is situate on the South of the *Old*. The chief Cities there, 1. *Sigüenca*, a City heretofore of the *Celtiberi*, now a Bishop's See, beautified with a fair Cathedral, supposed to be the *Conilabora* of *Ptolomy*. 2. *Madrid*, upon the *Guadamara*, the *Mantua* of the ancient Writers, now the Seat of the Kings: whose residence there, though the Country be neither rich nor pleasant, hath made it, of a Village, the most populous City in all *Spain*. It is a custom in this Town, that all the upper Rooms in their Houses do belong to the King, except some composition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do use to brag to strangers, that they they have a *City walled with fire*; and then make good the boast, by saying, That it is situate in the midst of Quarries of Flint. 3. *Alcala de Henares*, (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an University of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, by *Francisco de Ximenes*, Cardinal, and Archbishop of *Toledo*; and by him furnished with the ablest men both for Divinity and the Tongues that all *Spain* afforded. By whose joyned diligence and study in turning over so many Copies of the Bibles, gathered together at his charge from all parts of the World, he published the *Complutensian* Edition of the holy Scriptures in the Original *Greek*, *Hebrew*, and *Vulgar Latin*, with the Translation of the *Septuagint* into *Latin* also. A work of very great charge and pains, (taking up 15 years in doing) but of greater profit; there being at the end thereof an *Hebrew Dictionary*, for the understanding of that Language. 4. *Alcoraz* amongst the Mountainous tracts of *Orospeña*, called *Sierra de Alcoraz*; memorable for a great discomfiture given unto the *Moors*, anno 1094. 5. *Molina* in the same Mountainous Tract, hence called *monte de Molina*, remarkable for giving the Title of Lord, to the Kings of *Castile*, who in the Regal stile are called Lords of *Molina*: the Seignury hereof accruing to that Crown, by the marriage of *Sancho* the third, with *Mary* the Daughter of *Alfonso*, the last Lord Proprietary. The Territory large, and the Town of strength; well fortified in the times foregoing, both by Art and Nature. 6. *Cuenca*, seated at the Spring-head of the River *Xucar*, and not far from that of *Tagus* also, amongst the Mountains of *Orospeña*; built by the *Moors* on the top of those craggy Hills, whom it served for an impregnable Fortres against the *Christians*, till taken by *Sancho* the second of *Castile*, anno 1177.

Here also is the *Escorial*, or Monastery of St. *Lawrence*, built by King *Philip* the second: A place (saith *Quade*, who spendeth 13 pages in its description) of that magnificence, that no building, in times past, or this present is comparable to it. The front, toward the West, is adorned with three stately Gates, the middlemost whereof leadeth into a most magnificent Temple, a Monastery in which are 150 *Monks* of the Order of St. *Jerome*, and a College: That on the right hand, openeth into divers Offices, belonging to the Monastery: That on the left, unto Schools and out-houses belonging unto the College. At the four corners, there are four Towers of excellent Workmanship; and for height majestic. Towards the North, is the King's Palace; on the South part divers beautiful and sumptuous Galleries; and on the East-side sundry Gardens and Walks, very pleasing and delectable. It containeth in all 11 several Quadrangles, every one encloystered; and is indeed so brave a structure, that a Voyage into *Spain* were well employed, were it only to see it, and return. Here is also in this Tract the old Town of *Castulo* (the *Castalon* of *Strabo*) then the chief City of the *Carpentani*, and the birth-place of *Himilce*, the Wife of *Annibal*, from whence this whole Tract had the name of *Saltus Castulonensis*, and so called by *Cæsar*; now a poor Village, known by the name of *Castona la Vieja*; in which is somewhat to be found of the ancient ruins. But of this more already, when we were in the Kingdom of *Toledo*; to which it more properly belonged.

The old Inhabitants of these *Castiles*, were the *Vaccæi*, *Pontones*, *Arévaca*, *Oretani*, *Carpentani*, *Dittani*, &c.

From none of which, the name of *Castile* can be deduced, so that we must fetch it either from the *Castellani*, once a People of *Catalogne*; or from some strong fortified Castles erected in the Frontiers against the *Moors*. This last conjecture may seem probable, because the Arms of this Kingdom are *Gules*, a *Castle* tripple-towered, Or. Neither is it any way strange, for Provinces, especially smaller ones, such as at first this was, (though now much extended both in bounds and power) to take their names from a Castle. For (to go no further) even with us, *Richmondshire*, was so called from the Castle of *Richmond*, there built by *Alain*, Earl of *Bretagne*; and *Flintshire* took the denomination from the Castle built of Flint-stones, by *Henry* the second. We may see hereby how much *Cælius Secundus Curio* was deceived, who writeth, that *Alfonso* the third having overthrown *Mahomet Enasfer*, King of *Morocco*, and put 60000 of his men to the Sword; assumed these Arms, that thus named this Kingdom, which was before called the Kingdom of the *Bastitanes*; because that Victory, like a strong Castle, had confirmed his Estates unto him. Whereas, in case there were no other Error in his supposition, the *Bastitanes* were no Inhabitants of *Castile*, but of *Valentia* and *Murcia*, Provinces far enough off from the *Old Castile*, at the first taking of that name. And for the former Etymology, it appeareth most evidently, in that the people are by the *Latins* called *Castellani*: The Country, *Castella*: the same name with those elder *Castellani* which inhabited *Catalogne*. But not to stand upon the name, certain it is, that the Inhabitants hereof, having been conquer'd by the *Romans*, and made a part of their Empire, fell by degrees to the *Alani*, and from them to the *Goths*, as hath been shewed already on some other occasion. From them extorted by the *Moors*, with the rest of *Spain*: recovered, foot after foot, by the Kings of *Leon*; governed under them, at first, by Provincial Earls, Commanders of so many Castles in the Country of the *Vaccæi*, fortified and defended against the *Moors*. *Ordogni* the second, harbouring some suspicions against these Earls, caused them all to be cruelly murdered. The People upon this, revolted from the Crown of *Leon*; govern'd first by Judges, then by Earls again, as an absolute and free Estate. *Ferdinand Gonfalus*, the first that re-assumed the Title of Earl of *Castile*; coming to the Court of *Leon* with a brave Retinue, sold to King *Sancho* an Hawk, and an Horse, of excellent kinds, for a sum of money; conditioned, that if the Money were not paid at the time agreed on, it should be doubled, and redoubled, till the Debt were satisfied. This money, by the negligence of the King's Officers, who looked upon the Contract as a matter of jest, became so great a sum, that the King, to satisfy *Gonfalus*, made him the first Proprietary-Earl of *Castile*, anno 939; releasing the Estate from all acknowledgment to the Kings of *Leon*. *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, as some call her, Sister and Heir of *Garcias* the fourth Earl hereof, brought this Estate by Marriage to *Sancho*, surnamed the Great, King of *Navarre*, anno 1028; by whom it was erected into a Kingdom, and given by him to *Ferdinand* his second Son, anno 1034. Kings of most note and observation in the course of their story, are 1. *Ferdinand* their first King; who added *Leon* to his Kingdom, in right of *Sancha* his Wife, Sister and Heir of *Veramund* the last King thereof, of the race of *Pelagius*. 2. *Alfonso* the first, who subdued the Kingdom of *Toledo*, adding it, by the name of *New Castile*, unto his Estate. 3. *Alfonso* the Fourth, who not only conquered from the Crown of *Navarre*, whatsoever lay on the *Castilian* side on the River *Iberus*, but also the whole Counties of *Alava*, and *Gipuscoa*, all which he united to *Castile*: but grew so great, that he caused himself to be solemnly crowned Emperor of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*, by the Arch-bishop of *Toledo*; and gave his Son *Sancho* the title of King of *Castile*, in his own life time. The chief of the Confederates against *Mahomet Enasfer*, the *Almoravide* of *Morocco*, whom he vanquished in the famous battle

battle of *Muradal*, or *Sierra Moracca*, anno 1215. 4. *Ferdinand* the third, who incorporated *Leon* and *Castile* into one Estate, and added the Kingdoms of *Murcia*, *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, taken from the *Moors*, unto his Dominions. 5. *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, elected Emperor of the *Germans*, but more famous for his eminence in *Astronomy*; the Author of the *Alfonfine Tables*: compiled by many Learned Men assembled together, by his means, in the City of *Toledo*, where, in the compiling of it, it is affirmed by a *Spanish* Writer, that he spent more than the Revenues of the Pope in ten years did amount unto. 6. *Sancho* the 3d. Son of this *Alfonso*, the Author of the great breach in the Line of *Castile*: for having the hap to survive *Ferdinand*, surnamed *de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; he made himself so strong a Party in his Father's Life-time, that he succeeded in the Kingdom, depriving his Brother's Children of their Right therein, though many attempts were made, in their favour, afterwards. *Don Alfonso*, eldest Son of which *Ferdinand* married into *France*, was Father of *Lewis* Earl of *Clermont*; who by *Leonora de Gusmen*, a Daughter of the now house of *Medina Sidonia*, was Father of *Lewis*, *John* and *Isabella de la Cerde*, (in which last, the Male Issue being quite extinct) the whole Rights of that Line remained: brought by her to her Husband *Bernard*, a base Son of the house of *Foix*; created by King *Henry* the second, the first Earl of *Medina Celi*; whose Son, called *Gaston*, left the name of *Foix*, and took unto himself that of *de la Cerde*; continued ever since in his Posterity advanced unto the honour of Dukes of *Medina Celi*, in the person of *Lewis* the first Earl, the better to preserve in memory their descent from, and lawful title to that Crown. And for the better keeping and preserving of their claim unto it, it is affirmed to be the custom of this House, once, at least, in the life time of every Duke, to put up a Petition to the King then reigning, for restitution to the Throne; which the King receiving as of course, doth of course subscribe this Answer to it, viz. *No est lugar*; that is to say, there is no room for him. 8. *Pedro* the *Cruel*, driven out of this Kingdom by *Henry* of *Transtamare*, his Brother, restored again, for a time, by the valour of *Edward* the *Black-Prince*, Son of *Edward* the third. 9. *John*, Son of *Henry* of *Transtamare*, who married his Son *Henry*, to *Katharine* Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, by *Constance*, one of the Daughters of *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*; so uniting both Titles into one. The times in which these Princes, and the rest did reign, appeareth in these Catalogues of the Earls and Kings of *Castile*, which are as follow.

The Earls of *Castile*.

- A. Chr.
- 910 1 *Ferdinand Gonzales* the first Proprietary Earl.
 - 932 2 *Garcias* Son of *Ferdinand*.
 - 983 3 *Sancho*, or *Sanctius*, Son of *Garcias*.
 - 1018 4 *Garcias* II. Son of *Sancho*, slain by Treason; without issue.
 - 1028 5 *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, the Sister of *Garcias* the second, married to *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, Father of *Ferdinand*, made by him the first King of *Castile*.

The Kings of *Castile*.

- A. Chr.
- 1036 1 *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* by the gift of his Father, and of *Leon*, in the right of his Wife. 33.
 - 1067. 2 *Sancho*, Son of *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* only; his younger Brother *Alfonso* succeeding in *Leon*. 6.
 - 1073 3 *Alfonso*, the Brother of *Sancho*, King of *Leon*, and afterwards of *Castile* also.
 - 1108 4 *Uracca*, Queen of *Castile* and *Leon*.
Alfonso II. King of *Navarre* and } 15
Arragon.
 - 1122 5 *Alfonso* III. King of *Castile* and *Leon*, the Son

of *Uracca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, her former Husband.

- 1157 6 *Sancho* II. the elder Son of *Alfonso* the third; his younger Brother *Ferdinand* succeeding in *Leon*. 2.
- 1159 7 *Alfonso* IV. surnamed the Noble, Son of *Sancho* the 2d. 55.
- 1214 8 *Henry*, Son of *Alfonso* the fourth. 3.
- 1217 9 *Ferdinand* II, Son of *Alfonso* the ninth of *Leon*, and of *Berenguela* the Sister of *Henry*, succeeded his Father in *Leon* also, An. 1230; the Kingdoms never since disjoyned, though the title of *Leon* in short time became discontinued.
- 1252 10 *Alfonso* V. surnamed the Wise, Son of *Ferdinand* the second, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, and Emperor Elect. 32.
- 1283 11 *Sancho* III. the second Son of *Alfonso* the fifth; the Children of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother, being set beside. 12.
- 1295 12 *Ferdinand* III. of *Castile*, and IV. of *Leon*, Son of *Sancho* the third. 18.
- 1312 13 *Alfonso* VI. Son of *Ferdinand*. 38.
- 1350 14 *Pedro* the Son of *Alfonso*; for his infinite Tyrannies, surnamed the Cruel. 18.
- 1368 15 *Henry* II. the Bastard-Son of *Alfonso* the 6th, Earl of *Transtamare*. 11.
- 1379 16 *John*, the Son of *Henry* the second. 11.
- 1390 17 *Henry* III. Son of *John*, and Husband of *Katharine*, the Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and the Lady *Constance*, one of the Daughters of King *Pedro*. 17.
- 1406 18 *John* II. Son of *Henry* and *Katharine*. 48.
- 1454 19 *Henry* IV. Son of *John* the second. 21.
- 1475 20 *Isabel*, Sister of *Henry* the Fourth, married to *Ferdinand* V. Son of *John* King of *Arragon*.
 Of whose Acts, and Issue, we will make more ample mention when we shall come to speak of the Monarchy of *Spain*, which began in them, and hath been since continued in their posterity.

The chief Orders of Knighthood within these Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*, long since united into one, were three in all; partly Religious, partly Military; and one Order of Religious persons, not known in any Country but *Spain* alone.

This of the last sort, is called the Order of *Mercy*, or *de la Mercede*; first instituted by King *James* of *Arragon*, in the chief Church of *Barcelone*, anno 1218. Admitted afterwards into the Kingdoms of *Castile*, where of most esteem; but so, that in remembrance of their first foundation, they still retain their ancient Arms, which are those of *Arragon*, viz. a Cross *argent*, and four Bends *Gules* in a field *Or*. Their Habit white; The Rule of their Order, that of *St. Augustine's*; the practice and profession of it, to gather Alms amongst the People wherewith to redeem such Christian Captives, as either by *Piracy*, the chance of War, or by some other means are enthralled to the *Turks* and *Moors*: sending their Agents yearly to *Algiers* and *Fesse*, to inform them of the state, age, and quality, of each several Captive, and after, on instruction from the Brethren of this Society, to deal in the redemption of them. A business which they manage with great care and faithfulness, and are accordingly trusted with great sums of money, given and collected to that end: few men here dying, who give not some Legacy or other to this pious use. Nor are the Kings behind hand in so good a work, promoting it with a liberal Purse, and giving as much ordinarily out of his Estate, as the Brethren have collected in all *Spain* besides. And to say truth, it doth concern him more than others, because they are his Subjects chiefly, for whose redemption the whole sum is given and gathered: religious persons are ransomed first, and then the *Laitie*; the young and serviceable men, before old and impotent: if after the Redemption of the *Spanish* Captives, they have any stock left, they keep it not till another

another year, but therewith ransom Captives of some other Nations. So that this seemeth to succeed in the place of the now antiquated and useles Orders of *Knight-hood*, which were heretofore of great authority and power: that is to say;

1. Of *Calatrava*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Toledo*, abandoned by the *Templers*, (to whom the defence thereof belonged) on the approach of the *Moors*, made good by *Raymond*, the Abbot of *Pisuria*, and the Monks of *Cisteaux*, Anno 1157. For the future preservation and defence whereof, they ordained this Order; which in process of time grew to such estate, that besides eight fair *Priories*, they enjoyed in *Spain* no less than 61 Towns and Castles. The Knights hereof do wear for their habit, a *White Robe*, with a *Red Cross* upon their breasts; confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the third, An. 1164, under the Disciples of *Cisteaux*. Their residence is at the *Castle Corvo*; bound, by their Order, to serve in the Wars against the Infidels: upon which services, they have been sometimes in the field with three hundred great Horse.

2. Of *St. Jago*, instituted by the Canons of *Eloy*, and certain Gentlemen of *Castile*, in imitation of the Order of *Calatrava*; for the security and entertainment of *Christian Pilgrims*, travelling to the Shrine of *St. Jago*, confirmed by the said Pope *Alexander* the third, anno 1175, under the Rule of the *Augustine*. Their Habit is a *White Robe*, with a *Red Cross* like a *Sword*: the companions of it, according to the first Founders, being part *Ecclesiastical*, and part *Secular*: whereof these last are only tied unto the vow of conjugal Chastity. They grew in little time unto such esteem, that besides two Colledges or *Seminaries* in *Salamanca*, and a Colledge in *Sevil*; they had four *Hermitages* in the Mountains, and five *Hospitals* well endowed for the entertainment of Strangers; together with 90 Towns and Castles in several parts of the Kingdom. The whole number of Gentlemen, besides *Friers* serving in their Cures, and other Ministers, are above 600. Their first residence at the Hospital of *S. Mark*, in the Suburbs of *Leon*, on a dislike with *Ferdinand* the second King of *Leon*, removed to *Ucles* in *Castile*, bestowed upon them by *Alfonso* the 4th. Upon this occasion being divided, they have since two Masters, or *Commendadors*, the one called the *Commendador* of *Leon*, who resides at *St. Marks*; the other the *Commendador* of *Castile*, who resides at *Ucles*.

3. Of *Alcantara*, a Town of *Extremadura*, defended by *Ferdinand* of *Leon*, against the *Moors*; where he framed this Order; confirmed by Pope *Lucio*, an. 1183. Others ascribe it to *Alfonso*, the Succellor of that *Ferdinand*, an. 1217; by whom endowed with all the Lands of the *Calatravians*, in the Realm of *Leon*; but acknowledging the superiority thereof, and under the same Rule of *Cisteaux*. Their device at first was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in a field Or, to which hanged a pair of Shackles, as a sign of their subjection to them of *Calatrava*, changed, anno 1411, to a *White Robe*, and a *Green Cross* on their breasts.

I omit here the order of the *Dove* and *Reason*, instituted by King *John* of *Castile*, because of small esteem, and but short continuance: nor shall I now speak any thing of the Arms of the Kingdom, which we have seen before on another occasion. And so much for *Castile*, the first of those Three greater Kingdoms of *Spain*, under which all the rest are now reduced; containing in this Continent all the Provinces and Estates before described; amounting to two third parts of the whole: and many large estates elsewhere, as shall be shewed hereafter in its proper place. Pass we on, next, to *Portugal*; the second, in repute, of the said three Kingdoms not so much for the largeness of the Territories which it had on the Continent, as for its great *Appendices* in all other parts of the World.

11. The Kingdom of Portugal.

THE Kingdom of *PORTUGAL* containeth, 1. *Portugal* it self: 2. *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbiorum*: and 3. the *Tercera's*, or Isles of *Azores*: these last not reckoned parts of *Spain*, by any of our Writers, either o'd or new; but made by us a part hereof, because situate over against *Portugal*, one of the first additions which was made unto it on the Ocean: and finally, because I know not under what head to reduce them better.

And first *PORTUGAL* it self, it is bounded on the North, with the Rivers *Minio* and *Avia*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South, with *Algarve*; on the West, with the *Atlantick Ocean*; and on the East, with the two *Castiles*, and *Extremadura*, from which divided by a Line drawn from *Ribadania*, standing on the *Avia*, to *Badaios*, on the *Anas*, or *Guadiana*. Extended on the Sea-coast from North to South, 400 miles: the breadth of it, in the broadest place (not taking in the Islands into the account) 100 miles; in the narrowest 80: the whole circumference, 879 miles: and in that compass, 1460 Parishes.

It was first called *Lusitania*, from the *Lusitani*, the chief Inhabitants thereof; and took the name of *Portugal*, either from the Haven or Port of *Cale*, now called *Caia*, sometimes a very rich and flourishing *Empory*; or rather from the Haven-Town of *Porto*, at the mouth of *Duerus*; where the *Gaules* (or the *French* rather) used to land their Merchandise: which was therefore called *Portus Gallorum*; and which Town was given in Dower with *Teresa*, the Daughter of *Alfonso* the sixth, to *Henry* of *Lorraine*, with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. Whose Successors coming to be Kings, extended this name to all those Countries which they got from the *Moors*, as it continueth at this day.

The Air is very healthy, the Country for the most part hilly, and bare of Corn, supplied from *France*, and other parts of the North; that which they have, being as good as any in *Europe*, if not better. The soil, and people, in all places, not rich alike. For where the soil is richest, (as in the parts lying on the North of *Duero*) there the people are poorest; in regard of the great distance thereof from *Lisbon*; and so not benefitted by the trading of that wealthy City. And where the soil is poorest, there the people be richest, helping themselves by trade and manufactures; especially by making Silks and Salt, sufficient for themselves, and for other Countries. But where there is a defect of Corn, that defect is otherwise sufficiently recompenced with abundance of Honey, Wine, Oyl, Allom, Fruits, Fish, Salt, white Marble, and some Mines of Silver, &c.

The people of a more plain and simple behaviour, than the rest of *Spain*; and (if we believe the old Proverb) none of the wisest. For whereas the *Spaniards* are said to seem wise, and yet to be Fools; the *French* to seem Fools, and yet to be wise: the *Italians* both to seem wise, and to be so: the *Portugals* are affirmed to be neither wise indeed, nor so much as to seem so. But little different from which is the *Spanish* By-word, which telleth us of the *Portugals*, that they are *Pocos y Locos*; few, and foolish: which others vary with the addition of another part of their Character; saying, they are *Pocos, Sotos y Devotos*, few and Foolish, but withal Devout. They have great animosities (it it be not grown to an *Antipathy*) against the *Castilians*, for bereaving them of their Kingdom and Liberty, though both of late recovered by them: but, when most Fools, were counted for good *Seafaring-men*, and happy in the discovery of foreign Nations.

Rivers it hath of all sorts, both great and small, almost 200. Those of most note, 1. *Minio*, full of Red-Led (from hence called *Minium* by the *Latins*), navigable with small Vessels 100 miles. 2. *Lether*, now *Lavada*. 3. *Mulradas*, now *Mondego*. 4. *Tagus*, 5. *Duerus*, and 6. *Zhu*, these three last common also to the rest of *Spain*; &c.

or *Guardiana*, passing by *Portugal* but for 7 Leagues only; *Tagus* for 18, and *Duero* for 80. None of them navigable for any long space, by Ships of burden; the Rivers of all *Spain* being generally swift of course, restrained within narrow Channels, banked on both sides with very steep Rocks, which make them incommodious for Navigation: insomuch that it is reckoned for a great Prerogative of *Tagus*, and the Realm of *Portugal*, that this River is there navigable with great Ships, fifteen or twenty miles within the Continent. But here that want is somewhat tolerably supplied with three excellent Havens. 1. That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*: and 2. *Porto*, on *Duero*, to the North of *Lisbon*; of which more anon: 3. of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, situate on a Gulf of 20 miles in length, and 3 in breadth: a place of principal importance to those parts of the Realm. Rivers however of great fame; according to whose course, the whole Country was divided, by the Romans, into *Uteriore*, lying beyond *Duero*, Northwards. 2. *Citeriore*, on the South of *Tagus*: and 3. *Interamnem*, betwixt both.

Principal Cities of this part, 1. *Lisbon*, seated upon *Tagus*, a famous City for Traffick; the *Portugals* in all their Navigations setting sail from hence. By the *Latins* called *Olyssippo*, and *Ulyssippo*; because, as some say *Ulysses* built it, coming hither in the course of his ten years travel; a thing meerly fabulous, it being no where found that *Ulysses* did ever see this Ocean. But like enough it is, that this Town being seated conveniently for Navigation, and inhabited by Sea-faring-men, might at the first be consecrated to the memory of so great a Traveler: as *Athens*, being a place of Learning, was dedicated to *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call *Athens*. It is in compass 7 miles, and containeth upwards of 30 Parishes, and in them 2000 houses: all of neat and elegant building. Towers and Towers it numbeth upon the Wall, about 76; Gates toward the Sea-shore, 22. And towards the Continent, situate upon five small Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River: on the highest Hill, an ancient Castle, not strong, but by reason of the situation, serving now only for a Prison of men of quality: the entry of the River being defended by the Castle of *Cascais*; and nearer to the City, by the Fort of *St. Julians*, and the Rock of *Belem*; munitioned with 20 pieces of Ordnance. This City heretofore was honour'd with the Seat of the Kings, since of the Vice-Roys, an Arch-bishops See, the Staple of Commodities for all the Kingdom, and thought to be more worth than the whole Realm beside, said, by some *French* Writers, to be the best peopled City in *Christendom*, next unto *Paris*; and by *Botero* an *Italian*, made to be the fourth Mart-Town of *Europe*; the other three being *Constantinople*, *Paris*, *Mosco*. In which they do great wrong to *London*, as populous, and well-traded, as the best of them all. 2. *Santaren*, on the *Tagus*, so called from *S. Irene*, a Nun of *Tomas*, (a Monastery, in which the old Kings of *Portugal* did use to be crowned) here martyr'd by the *Moors*; by *Ptolomy* called *Scabaliscus* then a *Roman* Colony. 3. *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the end of huge Mountains, called *Montes Lunæ*; whither by reason of the cool refreshings from the Sea, and pleasure of the Woods adjoining, the Kings of *Portugal* used to retire in the heats of the Summer. 4. *Conimbre*, on both sides the River *Mondego*, pleasantly seated amongst Vineyards, and Woods of Olives, a Bishops See, and an University; the Masters whereof made the Commentary on most part of *Aristotle*, called from hence, *Schola Conimbricensis*. Then on the North of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*, are 5. *Braga*, by *Ptolomy* called *Bracoria Augusta*, reckoned by *Antonine* for one of the four chief Cities in *Spain*, the Royal Seat, when time was, of the *Suevian* Kings, and now the See of an Archbishop, contending for the Primacy with him of *Toledo*. 6. *Porto*, the Haven of the *Gauls* on the Mouth of *Duero*. 7. *Miranda*, a Bishops See on the same River. 8. *Bragance*, the Duke whereof is so great a Prince, that it is thought a third part of the People of *Portugal* are his Vassals, and live on his Lands: Originally descended from

Alfonso, natural Son to *John* the first; created by his Father, Earl of *Borcellos*, after Duke of *Bragance*; the latter Dukes, since the time of King *Emanuel*, being withal of the right Royal Blood; two steps of main advantage to the Regal Throne, lately ascended and obtained by *John* Duke of *Bragance*, now called *John* the 4th. And finally, on the South of *Tagus*, betwixt that and the Kingdom of *Algarve*, there is 9. *Ebora* in the midst of a large and spacious Plain, an Archbishop's See, and an University; this last of the Foundation of King *Henry* the Cardinal. 10. *Portelegre*, a Bishops-See. 11. *Olivencia* on the *Guadiana*. 12. *Beia*, by *Pliny* called *Pax Julia*, now *Meau*, and not very well inhabited; but anciently a *Roman* Colony, and one of the three Juridical Resorts of *Lusitania*.

2. The Kingdom of *ALGARVE* lyeth on the South of *Portugal*, from which divided by a line drawn from *Ascorin*, on the Western Sea, to *Odechore*, a Castle on the *Guadiana*: on the East, bounded by *Andalusia*; on the West and South, by the main *Atlantick*. This is the most wild and desert part of all this Kingdom, barren and dry: peopled with few Towns, nor those very populous: hilly and mountainous withal; but yielding, by the benefit of the Sea, a great Trade of Fishing, of Tunny especially; whereof more caught upon this Coast, than in all the Kingdom.

The name is took from the Western situation of it, for so the word *Algarve* signifieth in the *Arabick* Tongue. The utmost end of it, called anciently *Promontorium Sacrum*; now the Cape of *St. Vincent*; because the bones of *S. Vincent*, religiously preserved by the Christians, were here burnt and scattered about by the *Moors*. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Niebla*, the Seat of *Aben Mesad*, once a King of this Countrey. 2. *Silvis*, an Episcopal See, seated in the In-land part. 3. *Villa nova*, situate beyond the Cape. 4. *Tavila*, the *Balsa*, and 5. *Faro*, the *Ossonoba* of *Ptolomy*; both noted Ports on the *Atlantick*. 6. *Lagos*, another Haven-Town also.

This Country, conquer'd by the *Moors*, with the rest of *Spain*, in the distractions of their Power, was for a time under the Sovereignty and Command of the Kings of *Sevil*. Recovered from the *Moors* of *Sevil*, by the Kings of *Morocco*, it became subject unto them till they left this Countrey; and, after their retreat, was parcelled among many Princes. One of which, called *Aben Mesad*, reigning in *Niebla*, and the parts adjoining, being dispossessed of his Estate by *Alfonso* the *Wise*, most of the other Towns and Princes submitted to him, and became his Vassals, anno 1257. More absolutely subdued and made subject to the Crown of *Portugal*, by *Alfonso* the third, anno 1260; to whom the said *Alfonso*, the tenth of that name in *Leon*, and the fifth in *Castile*, had given the same in Dowry with *Beatrice* his Daughter. From which Marriage issued *Dionysius*, or *Denys*, King of *Portugal*, the first that ever used the Title of *Rex Algarbiorum*, anno 1279.

3. The *AZORES* are certain Islands lying in the *Atlantick* Ocean, opposite to the City of *Lisbon*, from which distant but 250 Leagues. Situate betwixt the 38 and 40 degrees of Northern Latitude; and one of them in the first Longitude; which is commonly reckoned from these Islands, as being the most Western part of the *World*, before the discovery of *America*.

They were thus called from the multitude of *Goshawks* which were found there in the beginning; (the word *Azor*, in the *Spanish* Tongue, signifying a *Goshawk*) though at this time there be none of them to be found. Called also the *Flemish* Islands, because first discovered by the *Flemings*; and the great numbers of them in the Isle of *Faial*, (one of the chief of all the pack) where there are yet some Families which resemble the *Flemings* both in their complexion and habit, and not far from the place of their abode, a Torrent, which the *Spaniards* call *Ribera de los Flamengos*, or the River of *Flemings*. They are also called the *Tercera's*, from *Tercera* the Principal Isle among them.

The Air of those Islands is generally good, and subject unto few Diseases, except that which the *Portugals* call the *Blood*; being an imposthumation of the blood, breaking out at the eyes, or other parts of the body. Some other inconveniences they are subject to, proceeding from the humidity of the place; the great winds and storms, of such a violent and strange kind of working, that Bars of Iron as big as a man's arm, have in six years been worn as little as a Straw. All of them well stored with Flesh, Fish, and other things necessary, excepting Salt and Oyl, with which they are furnished out of *Portugal*. Wines they have also for their own use, but not to be transported far, because of their weakness: for which cause also the richer men provide themselves of *Canary* Wines, or those of the Island of *Madera*. Of like nature is their wheat and other Fruits, which hold not good above a year. All of them subject unto Earthquakes, and some to breathings out of fire, which continually sendeth forth fuming vapours. The chief Commodities which they transport into other Countries, are *Canary* Birds for Ladies, Woad for the Diers, Joyners-work, which they sell to the *Spaniards*, and Bees for the victualling of such Ships as come there to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally laborious, excellent Husbands on their grounds; insomuch as they make Vines to grow out of Rocks; much given to Joynery; by which they make many pretty fancies, much esteemed by the *Spaniards*, but not so expert at it, as those of *Nuremberg*. They take great pains to teach the Cattel understanding; the Oxen being taught to know when their Master calleth them. In other things they conform to the *Portugals*, both in their Customs and Apparel, but with some smattering of the *Fleming*, which Nation they affect above any other.

The Islands nine in number; and distinguished by the several names of, 1. *Tercera*. 2. *S. Michael*. 3. *Fayal*. 4. *Gratiosa*. 5. *S. George*. 6. *Pico*. 7. *Corvo*. 8. *Flores*, and 9. *S. Maries*; of which, *S. Michael* and *S. Maries*, lye next to *Spain*; *Tercera* on the North-west of those, (by consequence the third in Order, whence it had the name) *S. George's*, *Gratiosa*, *Pico*, *Fayal*, on the West of that, and finally, those of *Corvo*, and *Flores*, nearest to *America*.

1. *TERCERA*, the chief of all the rest, 18 miles in compass; well stored with Peaches, Apples, Limons, Oranges; and for the Kitchin, with Turneps, Cabages, plenty of Pot-herbs, and as good *Potato-roots*, (which are the best food the people have) as any be in the world; but more esteemed in *Portugal*, than they be in this Island, by reason of their great abundance. Here is also great quantity of the best kind of Woad (which from hence is called *Island Woad*) and a *Plant* about the height of a man which bears no fruit; but hath a Root as profitable as those that do, out of which the People draw a thin and tender film, wherewith they fill their Mattresses instead of Feathers. Fowl enough for the use of man, and yet none of prey. No Port of any safety in it, but that of *Angra*; and that made safe by Art, and not by Nature: the whole begirt with Rocks, which stick out like a pointed Diamond, able to pierce the feet of any who should venture over them. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Praye*, on the Sea side, well walled, but not very well peopled. 2. *S. Barbara*. 3. *S. Sebastian's*. 4. *Gualne*, and 5. *Villa Nova*, Burroughs of good note. 6. *Angra*, the chief, not of this Island only, but of all the nine. The residence of the Governour, and an Archbishops See, who hath in it his Cathedral Church; seated on a convenient Bay, made in the form of a *Crescent*, with two Promontories on each side, (like the two Horns of a half-Moon) bearing into the Sea; each Fortified with a strong Castle for the defence of the Haven: the Town it self also well walled about, and environed with sharp Rocks on all sides. Both Town and Castle well garrisoned, and no less diligently guarded. This, in regard of its great strength, and commodious Haven, is esteemed the principal of these Islands, and communi-

cates its name unto all the rest; though neither nearest unto *Spain*, nor the greatest in compass.

2. *S. MARIES*, so called from the Saint (as *St. Georges* and *St. Michaels* are) unto which it is dedicated, is the most Southern of these Isles, and the next to *Spain*: twelve miles in circuit, inhabited by *Spaniards* only, and those much given unto the making of Earthen Vessels. So naturally fenced with Rocks, that it is, and may be easily kept by the Inhabitants, without the charge of a Garrison. The chief Town of it hath the name of *S. Maries* also, which it either giveth unto the Island, or borroweth from it.

3. *S. MICHAELS*, directly North of *S. Maries*, from which little distant; the biggest in the whole pack, as being 20 miles in length, though the breadth not answerable; much subject unto Earth-quakes and fiery vapours. Of most note among our modern *Geographers*, who have removed hither the first *Meridian* (by which they divide the World into East and West) from the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Islands*, where it was fixed in the time of *Ptolomy*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

And this remove seems countenanced even by Nature it self; it being observed that the *Compass* when it cometh under the *Meridian*, drawn through this Isle, hath little or no variation at all, but pointeth almost directly towards the North; whereas in all other places, or less *Meridians*, East and West, it pointeth not so directly North, but more or less to the North-east, or the North-west; which the Mariners call the *Variation*, or the *North-easting*, and the *North-westing* of the *Compass*. And yet it's observed of late, that there is some more sensible variation of it in this Isle of *S. Michael*, than in that of *Corvo*; which therefore is conceived more fit for the first *Meridian*.

The chief Town hereof, besides many Burroughs and lesser Hamlets, *Punta del Gada*, seated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port; yet more frequented by Strangers, than the Port of *Angra*, because here they may go in and out as they please; but not so in the other.

4. *FAYAL*, 17 or 18 miles in length; plentifully provided with all things necessary for the life of man, and well furnished with Woad, for which Commodity, much frequented by the Merchants of *England*. The chief Town of it, *Dorta*; defended with a Castle, and that guarded by *Spaniards*: both Town and Island taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, anno 1597. This action was called the *Island-Voyage*; undertaken as well to divert the War, which the *Spaniards* threatened to bring to our own doors; as, by seizing some of those Islands, to intercept the *Spanish* Fleet in their return, and to hinder them in their setting out: by which means, wanting their *Indian* Gold, they might be brought to better terms with their Neighbour-Nations. And though the *English* were not able to hold it long, yet it was said that the Booty got in this Expedition, amounted to 40000 Crowns; besides the honour of beating the *Spaniard* upon his own ground. It took the name from its abundance of Beeches.

5. *GRATIOSA*, not above five or six Leagues in compass, but so well furnished with Fruits, that they send much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portugals* only, but so poor, that they are not able to bear the charge of a Garrison. The chief Town of it called *La Plaia*.

6. *S. GEORGES*, twelve miles long, about three in breadth; mountainous, and full of Forests: but those Forests so well stor'd with Cedars, that they use them many times for Shipping, and sometimes for Fuel. The chief Town of it called *St. Georges*, as the Island is.

7. *PICO*, lyeth on the South of the Isle of *St. George*, and took this name from an high Hill in the form of a *Pyramid*, which the *Portugals* generally call a *Pike*, or *Pico*. Replenished with Fruits, some Cedars, and a Tree called *Teixo*, of great bulk, and as much beauty; the wood thereof exceeding hard, red within, and waved; so admirably beautiful, that it is allowed only to the King.

King's Officers, the other Subjects being interdicted the use of it, (but on special licence) by a publick Edict. in bigness, it is second only unto that of *S. Michael*, if not equal to it; hardly so much in length, but of greater breadth. The chief Towns of it, 1. *S. Sebastians*, 2. *Calata de Nesquin*, both upon the Sea, and in the East parts of the Island.

8. *FLORES*, directly East from *Fayal*, so called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Gratiofa* from the like flourishing Verdure of it) is in compass not above 8 miles; but plentifully furnished with Cattel, and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it, *Santa Cruz*. The Isle (though small, yet) twice as big as the Isle of

9. *CORVO*, so called from its abundance of Crows, situate on the North hereof, and but little distant: both very unsafe, and both most miserable poor, by reason of the many Pirates which lie betwixt them, to intercept such Ships as trade to *America*. But this, though much smaller than the others, may in time be of more esteem than any of them, in regard it is conceived to be the most natural place for the first *Meridian*, as before was noted: The Needle here pointing directly to the North without Variation. Which whether it proceed from some secret Inclination of the *Loadstone* to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being situate between the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*, it is drawn equally towards both, by the *magnetical* vertue of the Earth it self, I leave to be disputed by more able Judgments.

These Islands were first discovered and subdued by the *Portugals*, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince *Henry*, Son of *John* the first; who first made the *Portugals* in love with the Seas. And they were also the last Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, which held out for *Don Antonio* the Bastard, against *Philip* the second of *Castile*, against whom the Island of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by *Emanuel de Silva*, with the help of the *French*; but taken at the last by the Marquess of *Santa Cruz*, and the *French*, after promise of Life, cruelly murdered in cold Blood. After which garrison'd at the first by none but *Portugals*. But upon some commotion hapning in that Kingdom, it was thought fit, on some Reason of State, to make sure of the best Islands, by *Spanish* Garrisons; which accordingly were put into the Castle of *Angra* in *Tercera*, the Towns of *Punta del Gada*, in *S. Michaels*; and *Dorta* in *Fayal*. And to say truth, the *Spaniards* had good reason to be careful of them: these Islands being of such importance, as without them the Navigation of the *Indies*, *Aethiopia*, *Brazil*, and *New Spain*, could not be continu'd: because the Fleets which come from those Countries to *Lisbon* or *Sevil*, must, in a manner, of necessity touch upon some of them; as well in following their Course, if they come from the West, as in recovering such Winds as are useful to them, if they came from the East.

But to return again to the main Land of *Portugal*, know that the ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Lusitani*, dwelling betwixt *Tagus* and *Duerus*, the old *Lusitania* being bounded within those Rivers; the *Celtici* and *Turditani*, who took up also some part of *Betica*, dwelling on the South of *Tagus*: and the *Gallaici* *Bracarii*, (so called to difference them from the *Gallaici* *Lucenses*, who possessed *Gallicia*) on the North of *Duerus*. Subjected first unto the *Romans*; by whom accounted one of the three parts of *Spain*. In the declining of their Empire conquer'd by the *Alani*; and from them taken by the *Suevians*; who, for a time, made the City of *Braga* the Royal Seat of their Kings. The *Suevians* lost it to the *Goths*; and the *Goths* to the *Moors*, as hath been shewn already in their several stories. Recovered, in part, by the King of *Leon*; to whom that part continued subject, till given by *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, in Dowry with his base Daughter *Teresa*, to *Henry* of *Lorram*, (whose virtue and good service, merited no less reward) anno, 1099. Who having fortunately governed it

by the title of an *Emperor* for the space of 12 years, left his Son *Alfonso*, Heir both to his Counties and Vertues, honoured with the Title of King of *Portugal*, by the Sovereigns of *Leon*, for his most gallant conduct shewn in the Battel of *Obrigue*, anno, 1139. He reigned, before the Assumption of the Regal Stile, ruled 27 years with a great deal of honour: and he reigned here with no less, 45 years after that Assumption; revered by his friends, and feared by his enemies. So that the whole time of his sitting in the Chair of State, was 72 years; a longer enjoying of Sovereignty, than any Prince since the first beginning of the *Roman* Monarchy. His Successors we shall have in order of the following Catalogue. But we must first tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of most note in the whole Succession, are, 1. *Henry* of *Lorram*, (whom some make a *Burgundian*, of the City of *Besancon*) who coming into *Spain* to the *Holy Wars*, and deserving nobly in the same, was honoured by *Alfonso* the sixth, with his Daughter *Teresa*, and the Town of *Porto* for her Dowry; given to him with the title of the Earl of *Portugal*. He extended his Estate as far as *Conimbre*, on the South of the River *Duero*; that River being before that time, the utmost bound of it that way. 2. *Alfonso* the first King, who took *Lisbon* from the *Moors*, Anno 1247. and made it the Seat of his Kingdom; which he extended Southward, as far as *Algarve*. 3. *Alfonso* the 3d, who partly by Conquest, and partly by Marriage, added *Algarve* to his Estate, getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. He also did prevail so far with *Alfonso* the *Wise*, (never the wiser for so doing) as to get his Realm discharged of the Homage which formerly had been done to the Kings of *Leon*. an. 1270. 4. *Alfonso* the 4th, confederate with the fifth of the same name in *Castile*, against *Alboacen* the *Miramonolin* of *Africk*, at the fight near the River *Salado* not far from *Tariff*; where they discomfited the vast Army of *Moors*, consisting of 470000 Horse and Foot. 5. *John* the first, the base Son of *Pedro* the first; setting aside the Lady *Beatrix*, Queen of *Castile*, the Daughter of *Ferdinand* the first, and the Lawful Children of his Father, being many in number; by force and colour of Election, obtained the Kingdom. Fortified it by his Marriage with the Lady *Philip*, Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, a strong Competitor, at that time, for the Crown of *Castile*: On which relation, this King, the four Kings next succeeding, and two of this Kings younger Sons, were made Knights of the *Garther*. 6. *Edward* the first, that on the day of his Coronation, he was advised by a Jew, (one of his Physicians) learned in *Astrology*, to defer the Ceremony until noon, in regard he found by his Art, that if they did proceed unto it in that conjuncture, his reign would be very short, and full of trouble. But the King, either out of magnanimity, or contempt of that Art, going on with the Ceremony, the Jew's Prediction was found true; for he reigned not fully five years, and with ill success in his attempts against the *Moors*. 7. *Henry* Duke of *Visco*, (*Viscontinus* the *Latins* call it) the second Son of *John* the first, created Knight of the *Garther* by King *Henry* the sixth, an. 1444. By whose encouragement and example, the *Portuguese* began to be affected to Foreign Voyages: discovering in his time, (and, for the most part, under his conduct also) the Islands of *Azora*, *Madera*, *Holy-Port*, those of *Cabo Verde*, and a great part of the Coast of *Africk*, as far as *Guinea*. He dyed anno 1465. 8. *Alfonso* the fifth, who warring on the *Moors* in *Africk*, took from them the strong Towns of *Tangier*, *Alcazar*, and *Arzilla*. 9. *John* the second, under whose reign the *Portugals* fully settled themselves in *Guinea*, and the Realms of *Congo*; discovering all the Coasts and Isles of *Africk*, (not before discovered as far as to the Cape of good hope, anno 1487. planting and fortifying as they passed: the whole discovery of *Africk*, the *East-Indies*, and *Brazil*, being perfected in the Reign of King 10 *Emanuel*, under whom also they discomfited great Armies of the *Turks*

and *Sultans*, of *Egypt*; bringing by Sea the riches of the *East*, into the *West*. 11. *Sebastian*, the Grandchild of King *John*, son of *Emanuel*, embarking himself unadvisedly in the Wars of *Africk*, lost his life (as it is generally supposed) at the battel of *Alcasar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portugals* are of opinion, that he was not killed, but that for shame and sorrow he returned not home; wandering from one place to another, and at last was found and avowed at *Venice*; thence carried to *Naples*, where he was kept three days in a dark Dungeon, without any sustenance but a Knife and a Halter: brought into *Spain* by the King's Command, where at last he dyed. A Man in whom so many circumstances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* used to say, that either he was the true *Sebastian*, or else the Devil in his likeness. But whether true or not, it is not now material; Death having put an end to that disputation; though the controverſie which ensued upon his death, for the Crown of *Portugal*, be not yet decided. For, though King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, succeeded in it next after *Henry* the Cardinal King (who only came upon the stage, that the Competitors might have time to declare their titles); and claimed the Crown as eldest Heir-male, and nearest Kinsman to King *Henry*; yet all the World was not well satisfied in the Justice and Equity of his Demands. In the carrying on of which Affair, he seemed to deal very candidly to the Eyes of men, not biassed by their proper Interest: offering to submit his Title to a Disputation; professing, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Law of *Castile*; and openly acknowledging that if he should chance to dye before the said *Henry*, his eldest Son, as being a degree further off, would come behind some others of the *Pretendants* to it, of whom himself had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry*, and meaning to make sure work after his decease, (*Antonio* the Bastard having got possession of *Lisbon*, and taking on himself as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raised an Army under the command of *Ferdinand de Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, and subdued all that stood against him; *Katherine* the Dutcheſs of *Bragance*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*, surrendring also all her interest and pretensions to him; so entering by a mixt Title of Descent and Arms, anno 1580. Threescore years it was peaceably enjoyed by the King of *Spain*, when suddenly dispossessed by a potent Faction, appearing for *John* Duke of *Bragance*, descended from the youngest Son of King *Emanuel*, which wrought so cunningly and successfully in his behalf, (by the great wit and under-hand practices of Cardinal *Richelieu*, and others, Ministers of the *French*) that the King of *Spain* was sooner disseized of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practice set on foot against him, anno 1636. In which it is to be observed, that as King *Philip* the second, for the better obtaining of this Crown had embroyled the *French*, ingaging, that King in a bloody War against the *Protestants* of that Kingdom; to make him sure enough from troubling him in his present Enterprize: so the *French* Ministers had caused a revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was busied in reducing that Province, the *Portugals* might have opportunity to redeem themselves from the power of the *Spaniards*; whom the Antipathy betwixt the Nations made less pleasant to them. Nor was it a partial defection only, or the loss of *Portugal*, and no more: but a general falling off of the whole Estate in *Africk*, *Asia*, *America*, in the Isles and Continents: the *Accessories* (excepting only the Town of *Ceuta* in *Barbary*, and some of the *Tercera's*) going the same way as the *Principal* did. And here methinks that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be justly taxed for committing a greater *Solacism* in point of State, than ever people did before them; in that, having got the full and peaceable possession of the Crown of *Portugal*, and all the out-parts and Members of it; they continued all the Garrisons and strong Holds of the

whole Estate, in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* it self fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any hesitancy, which, had some of the chief Pieces in every Province, Factory, and Plantation, been brought by little and little (if not all at once) into the power of the *Castilians*; might have been easily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniard* hitherto attempted any thing material, for the recovery of that Kingdom: having been ever since so over-laid by the *French* in *Catalogne*, *Navarre*, *Biscay*, *Flanders*, *Artoys*, and *Italy*; that he hath not had much leisure to attend that business. But leaving him and them to their own affairs, it is time to present you with a Catalogue of

The Kings of Portugal.

A. Ch.

- | | | |
|------|----|--|
| | | <i>Henry</i> the first Earl of <i>Portugal</i> , the Father of |
| 1139 | 1 | <i>Alfonso</i> , the second Earl, and first King of <i>Portugal</i> . 45. |
| 1184 | 2 | <i>Sancho</i> the Son of <i>Alfonso</i> , 28. |
| 1212 | 3 | <i>Alfonso</i> II. Son of <i>Sancho</i> 11. |
| 1223 | 4 | <i>Sancho</i> II. Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the 2d. 34. |
| 1247 | 5 | <i>Alfonso</i> III. Brother of <i>Sancho</i> the 2d. 22. |
| 1279 | 6 | <i>Denys</i> the Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the 3d. 48. |
| 1327 | 7 | <i>Alfonso</i> IV. the Son of <i>Denys</i> . 32. Died in 1383. |
| 1359 | 8 | <i>Pedro</i> , the Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the 4th. 10. |
| 1369 | 9 | <i>Ferdinand</i> , the Son of <i>Pedro</i> , the last King of the lawful Issue of <i>Henry</i> of <i>Lorrein</i> . 18. |
| 1387 | 10 | <i>John</i> the base Son of <i>Pedro</i> , of whom sufficiently before. 48. |
| 1435 | 11 | <i>Edward</i> the Son of <i>John</i> , and of the Lady <i>Philip</i> of <i>Lancaster</i> . 5. born in 1401. |
| 1440 | 12 | <i>Alfonso</i> V. the Son of <i>Edward</i> . 43, born 1432. |
| 1483 | 13 | <i>John</i> II. the Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the 5th. 14. |
| 1495 | 14 | <i>Emanuel</i> , the Nephew of <i>Edward</i> , by his Son <i>Ferdinand</i> , Duke of <i>Visco</i> . 26. born 1469. |
| 1523 | 15 | <i>John</i> III. Son of <i>Emanuel</i> . 38. Born 1502. |
| 1557 | 16 | <i>Sebastian</i> , the Nephew of <i>John</i> the 3d. by his Son <i>Don John</i> ; unfortunately slain in the Fields of <i>Africk</i> in 1578. 21. Born 1554. |
| 1582 | 17 | <i>Henry</i> the Cardinal, Son of King <i>Emanuel</i> , the last of the Male-Issue of <i>Henry</i> of <i>Lorrein</i> . 2. Born in 1420. Died in 1584. |
| 1584 | 18 | <i>Philip</i> the second of <i>Spain</i> , Son of <i>Charles</i> King of <i>Castile</i> , and Emperor, and of the Lady <i>Mary</i> his Wife, Daughter of <i>Emanuel</i> . 18. |
| 1598 | 19 | <i>Philip</i> II. of <i>Portugal</i> , and III. of <i>Spain</i> . |
| 1621 | 20 | <i>Philip</i> III. of <i>Portugal</i> , and IV. of <i>Spain</i> . During his Reign, the <i>Portuguese</i> , weary of the <i>Spanish</i> Government, chose for their King |
| 1640 | 21 | <i>John</i> D. of <i>Bragance</i> , the IV. of that Name: a Prince of great possessions, and of Royal Race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it. He was Proclaimed Decemb. 1. and crown'd the 15th of the same Month. This Prince was Born the 19th of <i>March</i> 1604, and is Descended from <i>Alphonfus</i> a Natural Son of <i>John</i> I. King of <i>Portugal</i> , who was made the First Duke of <i>Braganza</i> , his Grandmother was <i>Catherine</i> the Daughter of <i>Edward</i> , Infant of <i>Portugal</i> . He Reigned to the 6th of <i>November</i> 1656. |

Now that ye may the better see by what title both the Kings of *Spain*, and the Dukes of *Bragance*, claim the Crown of *Portugal*; and what other pretenders there were to it, on the death of *Sebastian*; and what right as well *Antonio* the Bastard, (but alledging a sentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the House of *Savoy*, did pretend unto it: we will lay down their Genealogies from King *Emanuel*, in this following Scheme.

- Emanuel had these Children.*
1. John, King of Portugal. { John, Prince of Portugal. { Sebastian, King of Portugal.
 2. Lewis { Antonio { Christopher, and others.
 3. Henry the Cardinal, King of Portugal.
 4. Edward { 1. Mary, wedded to Alexander Duke of Parma. { Rainuccio Farnesis.
 5. Mary, married to Charles { Philip the II. King the fifth, King of Castile. { of Spain.
 6. Beatrix, married to Charles Duke of Savoy.

By this it may appear how the Claims are grounded: but whether Title will prevail, cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royal Line of Portugal did begin in an Henry, so it ended in an Henry also; the Male-Line failing in the person of the Cardinal King, and the Crown falling (on whomsoever it shall fasten) on the Heirs of the Females.

1656. 22. *Alfonso VI.* Son of John, born in 1643. succeeded his Father, being then a Minor, and under the Tutelage of his Mother. He proved a Prince unfit for Government, and was deposed by his Subjects, and sent into the Island of *Tercera*, where he died in the year 1683.

1668. 23. *Pedro II.* Brother of *Alfonso*, born in 1648, who had at first the Title of Regent, and married his Brothers Wife; but upon his Death, in 1683, He assumed the Title of King of Portugal, and is now living. In the Year 1687 he married *Mary Sophia*, Daughter to *Philip William* Elector Palatine. By his first Wife, he has only one Daughter, *Maria Elizabetha*, born in the year 1669. There was a Prince born of the 2d Marriage, in 1689.

The Principal Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, are 1. Of *Avis*, so called from a Town of that name in Portugal, the Seat thereof: Founded by *Sanctius* or *Sancho* the first, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whose *Green Cross* they wear: but equal to it neither in Power nor Riches.

2. Of *CHRIST*; instituted by *Denys* King of Portugal, who conferred on them all the Lands and Possessions of the exauterated *Templers*, confirmed by Pope *John* the twenty second, anno 1231. Their Robe is a *Black Cassock*, under a *White Surcoat*; over which, a *Red Cross*, streaked in the midst with a white Line: their Duty, to expel the *Moors* out of *Betica*, the next Neighbour to Portugal. To which Crown, they have added many gallant Countries in *Asia*, *Africa*, and *Brazil*; and so improved their own Estates, that all the Isles in the *Atlantick* do belong to them; besides the Rents of the Mine of *St. George*, in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Arms are *Argent*, on five Escucheons *Azure*, as many Bezants in *Saltier* of the first, pointed *Sable*, within a Border of *Gules* charged with seven Towers, *Or*. Which five Escucheons were born in memory of five Kings, whom *Alfonso*, the first King, slew at the battel of *Obrique*, anno 1139; the Border, with the Towers or Castles, being added by *Alfonso* the third, on his Investiture into the Kingdom of *Algarve*, by *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, anno 1257. whose Daughter *Beatrix* he then married, and so conceived himself to have some relation to the Arms of that Kingdom. And so proceed we on to those Provinces which are under the Government of *Arragon*: the third great Body of this State.

The growth of this Family of Portugal we may thus represent; *Alphonfus I.* becoming King of Portugal, *Alphonfus III.* married *Beatrice* the Daughter of *Alphonfus X.* King of *Castile*, and with her had *Algarve*; *John* the Bastard, in the year 1415, took the City of *Ceuta* in *Africa*, his Son in the year 1420 discovered the *Madera* Islands, which, with the *Canary* Islands, became united to this Crown. *Alphonfus 5.* took *Tangier* and some other Towns in *Barbary*. *Emanuel* subdued in the *East-Indies*, *Ormuz*,

Malacca, *Cochin* and *Goa*; and in *Africa*, *Congo*, *Angola*, *St. Thomas*, *Mozambique*, *Melinda*, *Mombazo*, *Zofala*; and in *America*, *Brazile*. They also possess *Maoco* and the *Azora*, and the *Tercera* Islands, so that when Portugal was Conquered by *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, it was one of the richest Nations in *Europe*, and by its Trade and Dominions abroad, of mighty Force and Esteem.

In the year 1640, they regained their former liberty, and with it most of their Ancient Dominions abroad, which were then in their possession; so that the greatest loss they have sustained, has been by the *English* and *Dutch East-India* Company, which has ravished from them *Ormuz*, and a great part of their Trade in the *Indies*, and on the Eastern Shoar to *Africa*; and what they have left there is become very poor, and in probability, will be lost; but in *Brazil* they have had some success, and have beat the *Hollanders* out of that Country. All that the *Portuguese* enjoyed on the Coast of *Barbary*, is lost also to the *Moors* or *Spaniards*. One of the richest Trades the *Portuguese* had was the Trade for Sugars and Tobacco, with which Trade they supplied the World before, but this Trade is now lost to the *English*, whose *Barbado* and *Jamaica* Sugars and *Virginia* Tobacco have outed them, so that *Lisbon* is but the faint Shaddow of what it was in those times.

12. VALENTIA.

VALENTIA hath on the East the *Mediterranean*; on the West, part of *Castile*, and *Arragon*; on the North, *Catalogne*; and *Murcia* upon the South. It is watered with the Rivers, 1. *Xucar*, called of old *Sucron*, and *Surus*. 2. *Guadalander*, signifying a River of pure water: and 3. *Millar*.

This Country standeth in the most temperate and pleasing Air of all *Spain*, full of Gardens and places of wonderful delight, where groweth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn and Fruit: garnished all the year long with sweet smelling Flowers, and miraculously fruitful of Pomgranats, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath also Mines of Silver at *Buriol*; of Gold at *Laudor*; of Iron at *Finistrat*; of Alabaster, at *Piacent*; and of Allom, Lime, and Plaster in many places. From thence also come the best Silks in the World, Cotton of *Murcia*, Crimson, Scarlet, and other precious Colours, and rich Perfumes. Finally, all the Senses of man may be delighted and refreshed with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality, and sweetness, much like that of *Niples*. The delicacy and great pleasures whereof, have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought less Warlike than the other *Spaniards*. The Sheep of this Country also bear the finest Fleeces of any in *Spain*: first stocked with *Cotswold* Sheep from *England*, at the request of *John* King of *Arragon*, anno 1465, by the imprudent courtship of King *Edward* the Fourth.

Places of most note in it are, 1. *Alicante*, a noted Port on the *Mediterranean*, whence come our true *Alicant* Wines, made of their Juice of Mulberries; by *Ptolomy* called *Illicias*; by *Mela*, *Ilice*: from whence the Bay adjoining is called *Sinus Illicitanus*, now the Bay of *Alicante*. 2. *Oribuela*, a Bishops See on the River *Segura*, which divides the Province from *Murcia*. 3. *Segorve*, a Bishops See, by *Ptolomy* named *Segobriga*, the chief City in old times of the *Celtiberi*. 4. *Xelva*, supposed to be the *Incibilis* of *Livy*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5. *Valentia*, a fair, pleasant, and well-traded City, the See of an Archbishop, and giveth name to the whole Province: in its first glory, one of the chief Roman Colonies in these parts of *Spain*: in its last, the Royal Seat of the *Morish* Kings of this Country. Situate three miles from the *Mediterranean*, not far from the mouth of the River *Durias*, now called *Guadalander*: and is by some said to have been heretofore named *Roma*, which signifieth strength. But when the *Romans* mastered it, to distinguish it from their *Rome*, it

was called *Valentia*, which in the *Latin* Tongue, is of the same signification with the *Greek* $\eta \rho \omega \mu \eta$. Here is an University in which Saint *Dominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, studied. 6. *Laurigi*, now a small Village: once a Town of great strength, called *Lauron*: which *Sertorius* besieged, took, and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whose Confederates the *Lauronites* were, stood with his whole Army nigh enough unto the Flame to warm his hands, and yet durst not succour it. It was formerly named *Sucron*, after the name of the River: and his famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Sertorius* here got of *Pompey*; *Pompey's* Army being not only overthrown, but himself, with life, hardly escaping. 8. *Morvedre*, situate in or near the place of the old *Saguntum*: the People whereof, when besieged by *Annibal*, continued so obstinate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they chose rather to burn themselves, than yield up the Town: the occasion of the second War between *Rome* and *Carthage*. First founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this destruction of it, repaired, or re-edified, by the *Romans*, (they could not possibly do less) by whom made a Colony. 9. *Gandia*, which gives the Title of a Duke to the House of *Borgia*, and was the style of *Francisco Borgia*, the eldest Son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, (of this noble Family) called commonly in *Guicciardine*, by the name of the Duke of *Gandy*. 10. *Denia*, seated on the brink of the *Mediterranean*, over which it hath a goodly Prospect; the Marquise of the Duke of *Lerma*: first founded by the *Maffilians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which, is the Promontory of *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*; the Refuge of *Sertorius* in his Wars against *Pompey* and *Metellus*, both of great renown; the one aged and of much experience; the other young, and of high resolutions. And yet *Sertorius* found himself more troubled with the old man's Gravity, than the young man's Gallantry; insomuch as he was used to say, That had it not been for the old Woman *Metellus*, he would have whipped the Boy *Pompey* home with Rods. For he had twice overcome this Great *Pompey*, before *Metellus* was joined in the Action with him: the first time dangerously wounding, and the second time driving him out of the Field. But fighting against both, he was overmatched; and yet seemed rather to retire, than fly before them; the *Spaniards* behaving themselves very valiantly, in the time of these Wars under him: to which *Florus* alludeth, saying, *Necunquam magis apparuit Hispani militis Vigor, quam Romano duce*. At the last, when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* Faction, he was traiterously murdered by *Perpenna*, one of his Associates; for which, *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a Triumph at *Rome*. So high an estimate did they set upon the casual death of this *Postscript*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the *Bastetani*, the *Edetani*, the *Contestani*, and some part of the *Celtiberi*; originally of the Province of *Tarraconensis*; afterwards (in the sub-dividing of that Province by *Constantine*) of *Carthaginensis*. In the declining of the Empire, first subdued by the *Alani*, who were scarce warm in their new dwelling, when disleized by the *Goths*. From the *Goths* taken by the *Moors*, of whose Kingdom reckoned as a Province; till the fatal overthrow given to *Mahomet Enafer*, at the battle of *Sierra Morena*; and the departure of the *Moors* of *Morocco*, to their own Country; which followed presently upon it. By *Zeit Aben-zeit*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self, anno 1214, but taken from him by one *Zaen*, a Prince of the *Moors* of *Spain*, under colour that he had a purpose of turning Christian, and making his Kingdom subject to the Crown of *Arragon* (as indeed he did) anno 1228. Conquered from *Zaen* the new King, before he could enjoy the sweets of a new raised Kingdom, by *James* King of *Arragon*, anno 1238. Since reckoned a Member of that Kingdom, never dismembered from the body of it, since the first uniting. But still so overgrown with *Moors*, (not to be blamed for

loving such an excellent seat) that at the final expulsion of that people by King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer than 22000 Families of them in this little Country.

The Arms hereof were *Gules*, a Tower embattled *Argent* purfled (or pennon'd) *Sable*.

13. CATALONIA.

CATALONIA is bounded on the North-east, with the Land of *Roussillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the East, with the *Mediterranean*; on the South with *Valentia*; on the North and North-west, with *Arragon*. The Country somewhat mountainous, and full of Woods, and not very well cultivated: beholden more, in that respect, for Corn, Fruits and other necessary Provisions, unto the courtesie of the Sea, which serves them out of other Countries, than to the Goodness of the Land. And it is as well watered, as most parts of *Spain*; having in it besides the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Cinia*, which runneth betwixt it and *Valentia*; the Rivers of, 1. *Tardera*, 2. *Lobregat*, 3. *Sigre*, 4. *Francolino*, 5. *Besone*, and 6. *Onbar*.

The name of *Catalonia*, some derive from the *Castellani*, who formerly inhabited some part hereof: others will have it called *Catalonia*, corruptly, for *Gothalamia*, from the mixture of the *Goths* and *Alani*, successively the Masters of it: and some more improbably, from one *Carthalot*, a Nobleman of this Country, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalauni*, an old *French* People of *Languedoc*, the adjoining Province, from whom the fields called *Campi Catalaunici*, near unto *Tholouse*, took denomination. But from what root soever they came, certain it is, that they are generally a stout couragious people, as may be seen by their exploits in most parts of *Greece*, which they miserably spoiled and pillaged many years together; in the time of *Andronicus* the second; to whose aid called in. But then withal, they are a very perverse and obstinate people, little observant of the pleasure or profit of their natural Princes: but on the other side, so zealous in defence of their own Privileges, that they have created more trouble to their Kings under that pretence, than all the rest of the Subjects of *Spain*. Of which we need no other instance, than their late revolt unto the *French*, anno 1638. which drew after it the loss of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the rest of the *Netherlands*. The same unquiet Humour made them, in the year 1652, eject the *French* Garrisons, and return under the Obedience of the King of *Spain*, to whom they are this day subject.

Principal places in it are, 1. *Barcelone*, situate on the *Mediterranean*, near the River *Lobregat*; accommodated with a large and commodious Port, where commonly the *Spanish* Souldiers do embark, which are bound for *Italy*. The Town adorned with large streets, handsom buildings, strong walls, and a very pleasant situation. Called *Barcino* by the ancient Writers, in whose time it was a *Roman* Colony, now honoured with a Bishops See, and the Seat of the Vice-Roy. This City was taken from the *Moors* by St. *Lewis* King of *France*, about the Year 884. 2. *Tarragon*, seated also on the *Mediterranean*, East of the River *Francolino*: built, fortified and peopled by the two *Scipio's*, the Father and Uncle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Fort to *Carthage* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*. Afterwards made the Metropolis of *Tarraconensis*, hence denominated; but stript of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two Miles in compass, and containing not above seven hundred Families. Yet still it holdeth the reputation of an Archbishops See, contending with *Toledo* for the Primacy of all *Spain* (as *Braga* also doth in the Kingdom of *Portugal*;) the controversie being undecided to this very day.

day. 3. *Ampurias*, on the same Sea also: once of great esteem, founded by the *Massilians*, a Roman Colony, and a well-traded Town, as the Name doth signifie: this being the *Emporia*, spoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*; now not observable for any thing, but a safe Road for Ships. 4. *Blamos*, 5. *Palamos*, and 6. *Rosas*, all Ports on the same Sea, but subject unto divers Winds, and not very spacious, this last by *Ptolomy* called *Rhoda*, first founded by the *Rhodians*, or people of the Isle of *Rhodes*, and by them so named. More in the Land, are 7. *Girone*, a small, but handsom built and a well traded Town; a Bishops See, and the Title of the eldest Son of *Arragon*, called Prince of *Girone*. Which Title was first given to *John*, the eldest Son of King *Pedro* the fourth, immediately upon his Birth, anno 1351; and hath since continued. 8. *Tortosa*, on the River *Ebro*, in the most rich and pleasant part of all the Country; recovered from the *Moors*, by *Raymond* the fifth, Earl of *Barcelone*, and Prince of *Arragon*, about the year 1146. The principal Agent in that work, *William Raymond* of *Moncada*, Seneschal of *Catalogne*; rewarded for his good service in it, with a third part of the City. A goodly Town, and of good importance; garrisoned by the *French*, since the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of *Spain*; and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, whilst it continueth in their power, or in the possession of their party. It was retaken in the year 1652. 9. *Urgel*, an Earl's Honour, and a Bishops See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*. 10. *Momblanc*, which heretofore gave the Title of Duke to the second Sons of the Kings of *Arragon*. 11. *Moncada*, once a Town of strength; but of more note for giving denomination to the Noble Family de *Moncada*, Hereditary Seneschals of *Catalogne*, and Lords of *Bearn*. Here is also on the East part, where it joineth with the Land of *Roussillon*, the Promontory called of old, *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabode Creux*. And not far from *Barcelone*, the Mountain called *Montferrato*, on the sides full of *Hermitages* and *Anchorets* Cells; and having towards the summit of it, a Chapel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*; much famed and resorted to by Pilgrims from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image, which is there enshrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province, were the *Castellani*, *Auxitani*, *Indigites*, *Cositani*, with part of the *Ilercones*, and *Iacetani*; all of them part of *Tarraconensis*. In the declining of the Empire, seized on by the *Alani*; and they soon after vanquished, if not possessed by the power of the *Goths*. Lost to the *Moors*, in the general ruine of the whole: from them recovered by the puissance of *Charles* the Great; who having taken the City of *Barcelone*, anno 801, gave it to one *Bernard* a *French-man*, with the Title of Earl, who governed the Country for that Emperour; as *Wilfredus* or *Godfredus*, his Successor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus*, Son to this *Godfrede*, by the gift of *Charles* the Gross, was the first Proprietary; united unto *Arragon* by the Marriage of Earl *Raymond*, with the Heir of that Kingdom. First held in Vassalage of the *French*, but that acknowledgment released to King *James* the first, an. 1260, by the King *St. Lewis*; the King of *Arragon* releasing at the same time, his pretensions and rights of Sovereignty to *Carcasson*, *Beziers*, *Albi* *Nismes*, and some other pieces in *France*, of old belonging to that Crown. But before that, the *Catelauns* had neglected the acknowledgment of their subjection to that Crown; it being ordered by *Alphonso* the second King of *Arragon*, about the year 1180, That the year of the reigns of the Kings of *France*, should no more be used in any Instrument or Writings which concerned that People; but the year only of the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour: which, in effect, was to disclaim the Sovereignty of the Crown of *France*.

The Earls of *Barcelone*.

- A. Cbr.
- | | | |
|------|----|---|
| 884 | 1 | <i>Godfredus</i> , surnamed the <i>Hairy</i> , Son of <i>Wilfredus</i> , the Provincial Governour for the Emperour <i>Ludovicus Pius</i> . |
| 914 | 2 | <i>Miron</i> , Son of <i>Godfredus</i> . |
| 933 | 3 | <i>Godfredus</i> 2. Son of <i>Miron</i> , by some called <i>Seniofrid</i> . |
| 971 | 4 | <i>Borellus</i> , Brother of <i>Miron</i> , and Uncle of <i>Godfredus</i> the second. |
| 993 | 5 | <i>Raymond</i> , Son of <i>Borellus</i> . |
| 1017 | 6 | <i>Berengarius</i> , surnamed <i>Borellus</i> , Son of <i>Raymond</i> . |
| 1035 | 7 | <i>Raymond</i> 2. Son of <i>Berengarius Borellus</i> . |
| 1076 | 8 | <i>Raymond</i> 3. Son of <i>Raymond</i> the second. |
| 1082 | 9 | <i>Raymond</i> 4. Son of <i>Raymond</i> the third, Earl of <i>Provence</i> also in right of <i>Doulce</i> his Wife. |
| 1131 | 10 | <i>Raymond</i> 5. Son of <i>Raymond</i> the fourth, and <i>Doulce</i> Countess of <i>Provence</i> , married <i>Petronilla</i> Daughter of <i>Raymir</i> , or <i>Raymond</i> , the second King of <i>Arragon</i> ; whom he succeeded in that Kingdom, anno 1134. Uniting these Estates together, never since disjoined: the chief Procurer of this Match; being <i>William Raymond</i> of <i>Moncada</i> , spoken of before. |

The Arms hereof, were four Pallets *Gules*, in a field or, now the Arms of *Arragon*. Which Arms were given to *Geoffrey*, surnamed the *Hairy*, the first Earl hereof, by *Lewis* the *Stammering*, Emperour and King of *France*; to whose aid he came against the *Normans* with a Troop of Horse; and being bloody in the fight, desired of the Emperour to give him some Coat of Arms, which he and his Posterity might from thenceforth use. Who dipping his four fingers in the blood of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield, (which was only of Plain Gold, without any Device) saying, *This shall be your Arms hereafter*.

14. The Kingdom of *Majorca*.

THE Kingdom of *MAJORCA* contained the Islands of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuisa*, and *Fruventaria*, in the *Mediterranean*; the Land of *Roussillon*, *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne* in the Continent of *Spain*; and the Earldom of *Montpelier* in *France*.

The Land of *ROUSSILLON*, which is the first Member of this Kingdom, is situate betwixt two Branches of the *Pyrenees*; bounded on the South, with the *Mediterranean*; on the West, with *Catalogne*; or the North, with the said *Pyrenees*; on the East, with *Languedoc* in *France*. Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Helna*, a Bishops-See on the River *Tecbo*. 2. *Colibre*, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a safe and commodious Harbour; but formerly the great and famous City of *Illiberis*, so often mention'd in the Wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Perpignan*, (in *Latin*, *Perpinianum*) built in the year 1068, by *Guinard*, Earl of *Roussillon*, in a pleasant plain on the River *Thelis*, now a rich Town, well traded, and as strongly fortified against the *French*; to whose fury in the time of War, it is still exposed. Besieged by *Henry*, Son to King *Francis* the first, with a puissant Army, an. 1542. partly to be revenged upon *Charles* the fifth, who had before attempted *Marseilles* in *Provence*; and partly to get into his hands the chief door of *Spain*, by which he might at all times enter into that kingdom. But he found here such strong resistance, that he was fain to raise his Siege, with as little honour as *Charles* had gotten by his Expedition which he made into *Provence*. In the year 1642, the *French* took this City and kept it to the year 1659, when by the *Pyrenean Treaty* it was restored to *Spain*. 4. *Salsus*, (the *Salsula* of *Strabo*) a strong place on the Frontier of *Languedoc*; fortified

fortified according to the Rules of modern Fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks against the French. 5. *Roussillon*, a Castle of more honour and antiquity than strength or Beauty; by *Pliny* and other Ancients, called *Ruscino*, the Country *Comitatus Ruscianensis*, now *Roussillon* and the Land of *Roussillon*; accounted heretofore a part of *Gallia Narbonensis*; and added unto *Spain* in the time of the *Goths*. On the death of *Gerrard*, the last proprietary Earl, it was added to the Crown of *Arragon*, by *Alphonso* the second: by *James* the first, laid to the kingdom of *Majorca*; united to the Crown again by King *Pedro* the fourth. After that, sold, or rather pawned by King *John* the second, to *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, for the Sum of 300000 Crowns, anno 1462, and freely returned back again to *Ferdinand* the second, (after called the *Catholic*) by King *Charles* the 8. anno 1493; conditioned that he should not hinder him in the Conquest of *Naples*. Joyning hereto, as a part of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, was the Country of *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne*; the habitation of the *Ceretani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of *Arragon*. The chief Town of those *Ceretani* called *Julia Lybica*; the principal now being hath the name of *Cardono* (or *Sardono*, as the *Spaniards* commonly pronounce) retaining some resemblance to the name of the Nation. The Country lying in the Vallies of the *Pyrenees*, and consequently in a Corner somewhat out of the way, was thought fit to be added to the Land of *Roussillon*, (for the better endowment of this Kingdom) the Fortunes of which it hath since followed, as dependent on it: pawned when that was unto the *French*, and with that restored.

2. The Earldom of *MONTPELIER*, is situate in the Province of *Languedoc*, adjoining to the Land of *Roussillon*: so called from *Montpelier*, the chief City: for the description whereof we must send the Reader back to *France*, having spoken of it there already. All I shall here repeat, is this, That *Mary*, the Daughter of *William* the last Earl thereof, brought it by Marriage to her Husband *Peter* the second King of *Arragon*: and that it was sold to *Philip de Valois*, the French King, by *James* King of *Majorca*, of that name the third. Nothing else memorable in the story and affairs of this little Earldom, but the Fortunes of the two last Countesses of it. Of which the first being Daughter of *Emanuel Comnenus*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, and affianced to *Alphonso* the 2d King of *Arragon*, was brought as far as *Montpelier*, in her way towards *Spain*, and there lodged with her whole retinue, in the house of *William*, then Earl thereof, anno 1174. But hearing that *Alphonso*, contrary to his word and promise, was in treaty of another Marriage with the Princess *Sancha* of *Castile* (which he celebrated very shortly after) and ashamed to return to the Court of her Father, after such an injury; she hearken'd to the counsel of her Lords and Followers, who perswaded her to marry with Earl *William*, then a lusty Bachelor; which was done accordingly. To him she brought a Daughter, named *Mary*, (their only child) afterwards married to *Don Pedro* the 2. Son of *Alphonso*, and successor to him in that Kingdom: So that although the Mother could not have the happiness to be Queen of *Arragon*; yet the Daughter had. But being of no great beauty, the King her Husband grew weary of her, would have been divorced, had the Pope consented: whose consent not being to be had, he forsook her Bed, and betook himself to other Women. Which the Queen not being otherwise able to remedy, prevailed with one of the Grooms of his Chamber, called *Pedro Flavian*, to bring her one night unto his Bed, (when some other Mistress was expected) and by him did conceive that night, as it after proved: the King perceiving the deceit on the morrow morning, was neither well pleased, nor much offended at the honest fraud they had put upon him. Of this conjunction was born a Son at *Montpelier*, whom they named *James*, Successor to his Father in the Kingdom of *Arragon*; and to his Mother (the last Countess of it) in the Earldom of *Montpelier*; united, in his person, into one Estate; and

by him finally parted from it, in the erection of the new Kingdom of *Majorca*, as before was said.

3. The Island of *MAJORCA* is situate in the *Mediterranean*, just over against *Valentia*; from which distant about 60 miles; about 300 miles in circuit, the length above an hundred, the breadth somewhat under; the number of Inhabitants reckoned at 30000. The Land, on all sides towards the Sea, is somewhat mountainous, and barren withal: The Inland's more Champian, and fruitfully yielding sufficient quantity of Oyl, Corn, Wines, and Fruits, for the use of its people. The whole Island is divided into 30 parts (as so many *Wapentakes*) in every one of which are reckoned from 300 to 600 Families. No hurtful Creatures are here bred, except Conies only; and those not hurtful, but by accident; of which more anon.

Places of chief note, in the former times, were 1. *Palma*, and 2. *Pallentia*, which had the rights of *Roman Citizens*, 3. *Cinium*, and 4. *Cunici*, which enjoyed the rights of the *Latins*: and 5. *Cocbri*, (or *Bochorum*) which was in the condition of a Town confederate; besides divers others not so privileged. Of these none left, at this day but *Palma* only, vulgarly called *Majorea*, by the name of the Island: a Bishop's See, the Seat of the *Viceroy* for these Isles, and an *University*: the birth-place of *Raymundus Lullius*, a man of great Wit, and profound Judgment; the Author of some Books in the Art of *Chymistry*, whose Works are read and studied in that University, as *Aristotle's* are in others. This is the greater of the two Islands called *Baleares*, whence it hath the name. Adjoining hereunto, two others of Inferiour note, called *Dragonera* and *Cabrera*; of which nothing memorable.

4. *MINORCA*, so called, because it is the lesser of the *Baleares*; is situate Eastward of *Majorca*, from which distant near 100 miles, of about 60 miles in length, and 150 in circuit: More fruitful than the other, though less in quantity, of rich soyl, which breedeth them great Herds of Cattel, and Mules of the largest size of any in *Spain*; accomodated also with two convenient Havens, the one called *Maon*, the other *Farnessus*. Other considerable places, are, 1. *Minorca*, now so called by the name of the Island; but anciently known by the name of *Magos*; situate in the East part thereof, first founded by the *Carthaginians*, as the name imports. And so was also 2. *Jamno*, seated in the West, (*Duo parva Oppida, quibus a Pœnis indita nomina*, saith *Savetus* Bishop of these Isles, anno 420, or thereabouts.) It is now called *Citadella*, or the little City. Here was also in the midland a third Town, called *Sanjura* by *Pliny*; of which I find no track remaining.

5. *EBUSA*, now called *YVICA*, lyeth between the main Land, and the *Baleares*, opposite to the Promontory of *Ferraria*, in the Realm of *Valentia*; from which distant about 50 miles, and near an hundred miles in compass. The Country plentiful of Corn, and all manner of Fruits, breeding no hurtful Creature, except Conies only which many times destroy their Harvest. The chief Town here, *Yvica* (of old called *Ebusus*) the Inhabitants of which make yearly great store of Salt; wherewith they do not only furnish *Spain*, but some parts of *Italy*.

6. *FRUMENTARIA*, so called from the plenty of Corn, is distant ten miles from *Yvica*, and about 60 miles from the main Land of *Spain*: in circuit about 70 miles. Not well inhabited by reason of the multitude of Serpents; from which called by the *Græcians*, *Ophiusa*, and *Colubaria*, by the *Latins*. Both Islands anciently known by the name of *Pitusa*, and *Pityodes*, from the abundance of *Pines* there growing.

About these Islands are six others of little worth, called 1. *Peda*, 2. *Conirello*, and 3. *Dragonago*. 4. another called *Moncolibre*, betwixt *Majorca*, and the Influx of the River *Iberus*. 5. *Alfaques*, lying in the very Mouth of that River: and 6. *Scombraria*, (anciently called the Island of *Hercules*) over against *Carthagena*; so named from a kind

kind of *Tunny*, in *Latin* named *Scomberi*, of which great shoals use to ly about it. All these, together with the *Baleares*, make up the Province of the Islands, the seventh Province of *Spain*.

But the chief glory of these Islands, were the *BALLES*, so called (is the general conceit is) from the *Greek* word *βαλλειν*, which signifyeth to throw; because the people were so expert in throwing their Slings or Darts: but as *Bochartus* will needs have it, (to the same effect) from *Baal-iaze*, a *Punick* or *Phœnician* word signifying a *Master in the Art of slinging*. An Art so natural and innative to them, that Parents used to give no meat unto their Children, after some set age, but what they could hit down with their *Slings* from the top of a Beam. Of their dexterity at this weapon, there is much mention made in the ancient Writers, as well Historians, as Poets. And from this Exercise they had the name also of *Insulæ Gymnasiæ*; or else, because the people of it used to go naked to the Wars, (and possibly enough, in those first Ages of the world, as at other times also) from the *Greek* word *γυμνός* the same with the *Nudus* to the *Latin*. Nor were they good at *slinging* only, but at *swimming* too; an exercise not ordinarily performed but by naked people: at which the very women are at this day expert; *Biddulph* reporting, in the relation of his travels, that, being becalmed about these Islands, there came a woman swimming from one of them with a Basket of Fruit to sell. But that which made them most talked of in former times, was their harm done them by their Conies; which here, and the neighbouring Continent, encreased so wonderfully, that *Varro* telleth us of a Town in *Spain*, undermined by them: and *Strabo*, that they did not only destroy their Plants, but rooted up many of their Trees. In so much that the Inhabitants did request the *Romans* to give them some new seats to inhabit in; *εὐβάλλειν* ὅτι καὶ τῶν ζώων τέτων, being ejected by those Creatures out of their Possessions, whose multitudes they were not able to resist. And when that could not be obtained, they moved *Augustus Cæsar* (as *Pliny* telleth us) for some aid against them; who, instead of *Souldiers*, sent them *Ferrets*, by which their numbers were diminished in a little time.

These Islands were first planted by the *Tyrians*, or *Phœnicians*, the founders of many of their Cities; one of which, in the Isle of *Ebusus* had the name of *Phœnissa*: From them also they derived the Art of *Slinging*. Made subject to the *Carthaginians*, under the conduct of *Hanno* and *Hamilco*, anno *M.* 3500, or thereabouts, at what time the *Decemviri* governed *Rome*. Under that State they remained subject, till the end of the second *Punick* War: when *Carthage* was no longer able to protect them, made a State of themselves, till conquered by *Metellus*, the Brother of him who subdued *Creet*. The people were much given to Piracy: and seeing The *Roman* Navy sayling by their Coasts, supposed them to be Merchant-men: assaulted them, and at first prevailed. But the *Romans* getting betwixt them and the Shore, discovered from whence they came, and forced them to an unwilling submission: for which *Metellus* was rewarded with the honour of a *Triumph*. Being once made a Province of *Spain*, they always, after that, followed the Fortunes thereof. In the distraction of the Empire of the *Moors* in *Spain* they were united into one Kingdom, by the name of the Kingdom of *Majorca*: won from the *Moors* by *Raymund* Earl of *Barcelona*, with the help of the *Genoese*, anno 1102. By the *Genoese* delivered to the *Moors* again; and from them reconquered by *James* King of *Arragon*, descended from that *Raymund*, anno 1228.

Of these Estates consisted the Kingdom of *Majorca*, erected by *James* the first, immediately (almost) on his recovery of these Islands from the hands of the *Moors*; and by him given unto *James* his second Son; who, fearing the displeasure of his Brother, King *Peter* the third, submitted his new Kingdom to the *Vassalage* of the Crown of *Arragon*. Yet could not this so satisfy the

ambition or jealousies of those mightier Kings, as to preserve his Succeedors in possession of it. By *Pedro* the 4. extorted from King *James*, the fourth and last King thereof, under colour of denying his accustomed *Homage*. So ended

The Kings of *Majorca*, of the House of *Arragon*.

An. Chr.

- 1276 1. *James* the first Son to *James* the first, King of *Arragon*.
- 1412 2. *Sancho*, Son of *James* the first.
3. *James* the II. Son of *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *James* the second.
4. *James* III. Son of *Ferdinand*, overcome and slain in Battel by *Pedro* 4. King of *Arragon*. *Majorca*, and other members of this little Kingdom, remaining ever since united unto that Crown; except *Montpelier*, sold by this *James* unto the *French*, in hope that by their aid, he might be enabled to recover his Kingdom. But being aided by them, and attempting the recovery of it, he was discomfited and slain in the Isle of *Majorca*, an. 1341, as before is said.

The Forces of this little Kingdom may be best estimated by the Army which the *Moors* brought into the field against *James* the first, for defence of the Island of *Majorca*, consisting of 50000 Horse: but better, by the Army of *James* the last King hereof, in defence of his Estates against *Pedro* the 4. (for the *Moors* might possibly be aided by the rest of their Nation) consisting of 3000 Horse, and 15000 Foot, of his natural Subjects.

15. ARRAGON.

ARRAGON, hath on the East, the Land of *Roussillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the West, the two *Castiles*; on the North, *Navarre*; on the South and South-east; *Catalonia*, and some part of *Valentia*. So called from the River *Arragon*, by which it is divided, from the Realm of *Navarre*; where the first Princes of this House having won certain Towns from the hands of the Infidels, commanded as Lords *Marchers*, under the Kings of that Realm: and called themselves, for that reason, the Earls of *Arragon*: spreading the name, as they enlarged their Bounds by ensuing Conquests; as in like manner, the great Earldom of *Mojele*, founded by the disherited Sons of *Cloidon*, second King of the *French*, was named from that River; upon the course whereof, and the parts adjoyning, it was first erected.

The Country lyeth on both sides of the River *Iberus*, and hath also several Riverets, as *Gallego*, *Senga*, *Xalon*, and *Cagedo*, running like so many Veins through the body of it; yet it is generally so destitute of Waters, and so ill inhabited, especially towards the Mountains of the *Pyrenees*; that one may travel many days, and find neither Town, nor House, nor People. But where the Rivers have their course, the case is different, the Valley: yielding plenty both of Corn and Fruits, especially about *Calatajud*, where the Air is good, and the Soil fruitful.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Celtiberi*, who took up a great part of *Tarraconensis*: divided into lesser Tribes not here considerable. These sprung originally from the *Celtæ*, (as before is said) the greatest and most potent Nation of all *Gallia*: who being too populous for their Country, or willing to employ themselves upon new Adventures, passed the *Pyrenees*, and mingled themselves with the *Iberi*. From thence the name of the *Celtiberi*, and *Celtiberia*, according to this of *Lucan*.

—*Profugiant à gente vetusta
Gallorum, Celtæ miscentes nomen Iberi.*

Who being chas'd from *Gaul*, there home did frame,
Of *Celtæ* and *Iberi* mixt, one name. Others

Others of less consideration, were the *Jacetani*, and *Lucetani*, with part of the *Edetani*, and *Illergetes*.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1. *Jacca*, the chief City heretofore of the *Jacetani*, seated amongst the *Pyrenees*; and for that cause chosen for the chief seat and residence of the first Kings of *Arragon*: continued there till the taking of *Saragossa*, by *Alfonso* the first. 2. *Calatajud*, seated on *Xalon*, in the best Country of *Arragon*: so called from *Ajud* a *Moorish* Prince, the first founder of it. Not far from which, upon an Hill, stood the old Town *Bilbilis*, a *Municipium* of the *Romans*, and the birth-place of *Martial*. 3. *Venasque* amongst the *Pyrenees*. 4. *Balbastro*, on the *Senga*, formerly called *Bur-tina*, now a Bishops-See. 5. *Lerida*, on the River *Segre*, as some say; but others place it on the *Senga*: which rising in the *Pyrenees*, divideth *Catalonia* from *Arragon*, and so passeth into *Iberus*, now an University; called formerly *Ilerda*, and famous for the Encounter hapning nigh unto it, betwixt *Herculeius*, Treasurer or *Quæstor* to *Sertorius*; and *Manilius* Proconsul of *Gallia*: wherein *Manilius* was so discomfited, and his Army, consisting of three Legions of Foot; and 1500 Horse, so routed, that he, almost alone, was scarce able to recover this City, few of his Souldiers surviving the overthrow. 6. *Moson*, famous for entertaining the King of *Spain* every third year: at which time the people of *Arragon*, *Valence*, and *Catalogne*, present the King with 600000 Crowns, viz. 300000 for *Catalogne*, 200000 for *Arragon*, and 100000 for *Valentia*. And well may they thus do, for at other times they sit rent-free, as it were, only they acknowledge the King of *Spain* to be the Head of their *Commonwealth*. This Revenue is proportionably, 200000 Crowns a year; all which, if not more, the King again expends, in maintaining his *Vice-Roys* in their several Provinces. 7. *Huesca*, (called of old, *Hofca*) somewhat South of *Jacca*, an University; a place long since dedicated to Learning. For hither *Sertorius* caused all the Noble-mens Sons of *Spain* to be brought, and provided them of School-Masters for the *Greek* and *Latin* Tongues; bearing their Parents in hand, that he did it not only to make them fit to undergo Charge in the *Commonwealth*, but indeed to have them as Hostages for their Fathers Faith and Loyalty towards him. 8. *Saragossa*, on the River *Iberus*; called, at first, *Salduba*, by reason of the Salt-pits there: But being afterwards re-edified by *Cæsar Augustus*, it had the Name of *Cæsarea Augusta*, (whence that of *Saragossa* had its origination) by whom first made a Colony of the *Romans*, and afterwards a *Municipium*, or *Free-borough*, suffered to live according to the Laws of the Country. Under the *Romans*, it was one of the seven *Juridical Resorts* of *Tarracoen-sis*: under the *Moors*, a peculiar Kingdom of it self: and now a Bishop's-See, and an University. Amongst the Kings of it; when it was a Kingdom, two are chiefly famous, viz. 1. *Marsilius*, who joyned with the Confederate *Moors* and *Christians*, against *Charles* the Great, in the Battel of *Roncevaux*. 2. *Aigoland*, of whom there goeth a tale, in Archbishop *Turpine*; that being by the said *Charles* perswaded to become a *Christian*, he came unto the Emperour's Court very well accompanied, according to the time appointed. Where finding many *Lazars*, and poor people before the Gates, attending for their usual Alms from the Emperour's Table: he asked what and who they were; and was answered, that they were the poor Servants of God. Upon which words he speedily returned again, protesting, That he would never serve that God, who could keep his Servants no better. Took from the *Moors*, by *Alphonso* King of *Arragon* and *Navarre*, an. 1118. It was made the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Arragon*; removed hither from *Jacca*: and of late times hath been the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for the Kings of *Spain*. Which together with being an Archbishops See, and an University, hath so enriched it, that it is one of the fairest Cities in all *Spain*, for handsomeness of Streets, and sumptuousness of Palaces, and publick Buildings, containing seventeen Parish-Churches, and fourteen Monasteries; besides

divers Chapells erected in many parts of it to the Virgin *Mary*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Tract, hath been shewn heretofore: loiled from the *Carthaginians* unto the *Romans*; from them to the *Goths*, and finally unto the *Moors*. Recovered from the *Moors*, about the first beginning of the Kingdoms of *Leon* and *Sebrasta*. At which time, one *Aznar*, a man of great puissance and action, possessed himself of some Lands on the bank of the River *Arragon*, to be holden by him and his Successors, of the Kings of *Sobrabia* or *Navarre*, an. 803. The Title of Earl being given unto him, and them, for their better honour. The Earldom of which, from *Aznar*, was *Fortunio Ximines*, whose Daughter *Urraca* being married to *Don Garcia Inigo*, King of *Navarre* anno 867, conveyed this Earldom to that Crown: of which it continued a Member, till *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, erected it into a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Raymir* his natural Son, anno 1034. The whole Succession I shall borrow from the *Spanish Histories*; first taking (as in other places) some short notes of the Princes which have been most observable in the course of the Story. Of which the principal were, 1. *Aznarius*, the first Earl, his Estate then containing some few Towns on the River of *Arragon*: not much enlarged, when made a Kingdom by *Sancho*, King of *Navarre*, surnamed the Great, descended from *Fortunio* the second of *Navarre*, and *Urraca* the Sister and Heir of *Fortunio Ximines*, the last Earl of *Arragon*. 2. *Raymir* the first King, base Son to *Sancho* the Great, advanced to this honour to the prejudice of *Garcia*, eldest Son of *Sancho*, for standing so generally in defence of *Donna Elvira*, the Wife of his Father, wrongtully and unnaturally accused of Adultery, by the said *Garcia* her own Son; against whom he undertook to maintain her Honour in a single Combat. 3. *Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelona*, who by marriage with *Petronilla*, the Heir of *Arragon*, united *Catalonia* unto that Kingdom. 4. *Peter* the second, who on a superstitious zeal, first made his Kingdom tributary to the See of *Rome*, anno 1214. But presently repenting of it, he sided against the Pope, with the *Albigenses*: slain in their cause, by *Simon de Montford*, and the rest of his Associates, in that war. 5. *James* the first, who conquered the Kingdoms of *Valentia* and *Majorca*; and was the first that enlarged his Dominions upon the Seas; being shut up from making any further impression on the *Moors*, by the interjection of *Castile* betwixt him and them. 6. *Peter* the third, pretending a Title unto *Sicilia*, in right of *Constantia* his Wife, the Daughter of *Manfred*, King thereof; and by the last Will of *Corradine*, rightful King both of that and *Naples*; extorted that Island from the *French*, massacred by him at the fatal *Sicilian Vespers*. 7. *James* the second, by whom the Isle of *Sardinia* was added to the Crown of *Arragon*. 8. *Martin*, the last of the *Masculine* Race of the House of *Barcelone*: to whom succeeded, 9. *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, Son of *John* King of *Castile*, and *Leonora*, the Daughter of *Peter* the fourth of *Arragon*. 10. *Alphonso*, Son of *Ferdinand*, adopted by Queen *Joan* the second, got the Kingdom of *Naples*. Of *Ferdinand* the second, surnamed the *Catholick*, we shall speak more anon, in the close of all.

The Earls of *Arragon*.

A. Chr.

1. *Aznarius*, the first Earl, contemporary with *Garcia*, the second King of *Navarre*; under whom he held.
- 775 2. *Aznarius* II. Son of *Aznario* the first.
3. *Galindo*, Son of *Aznario* the second.
4. *Ximines Aznario*, Son to *Galindo*, slain in the Battel of *Ronceval*, against *Charles* the Great.
- 803 5. *Ximines Garcia*, Brother to *Galindo*.
6. *Fortunio Ximines*, Son of *Ximines Garcia*, the last of the Male-Issue of *Aznarius*.

7. *Fortu-*

- 7 *Fortunio II.* King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, in Right from his Mother *Urraca*, the Sister and Heir of *Fortunio Ximenes*, the last Earl of the House of *Aznarius*.
- 901 8 *Sancho*, surnamed *Abarca*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*.
- 920 9 *Garcia*, Son of *Sancho*, King of *Navarre*, &c.
- 909 10 *Sancho II.* of *Arragon*, and III. of *Navarre*.
- 993 11 *Garcias*, surnamed the *Trembler*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, Son to *Sancho III.*
- 1000 12 *Sancho the Great*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Arragon*, in his own Right; and of *Castile* in the Right of *Elvira* his Wife; Monarch of all *Spain*, then in the hands of the *Christians*, except the Kingdom of *Leon* only; erected the Earldom of *Arragon* into a Kingdom, and gave it, for the reason before specified, to his Son *Raymir*.

The Kings of Arragon.

A. Chr.

- 1034 1 *Raymir*. 42.
- 1076 2 *Sancho*, Son of *Raymir*. 18.
- 1094 3 *Pedro*. 14.
- 1108 4 *Alphonso*, Brother of *Pedro*. 26.
- 1134 5 *Raymir II.* the Brother of *Alphonso*.
- 1137 6 { *Petronilla*, Daughter of *Raymir* the Second.
{ *Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelone*.
- 1171 7 *Alphonso II.* Son of *Raymond* and *Petronilla*. 34.
- 1196 8 *Pedro II.* Son of *Alphonso*.
- 1213 9 *James*, Son of *Pedro* the Second. 43.
- 1256 10 *Pedro III.* Son of *James*. 9.
- 1265 11 *Alphonso III.* Son of *Pedro* the Third. 6.
- 1271 12 *James II.* Brother of *Alphonso* the Third. 36.
- 1308 13 *Alphonso IV.* Son of *James* the Second. 8.
- 1316 14 *Pedro IV.* Son of *Alphonso* the Fourth. 51.
- 1367 15 *John*, Son of *Pedro* the Fourth. 8.
- 1375 16 *Martin*, the Brother of *John*. 17.
- 1392 17 *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, the Nephew of *Pedro* the Fourth. 4.
- 1396 18 *Alphonso V.* 42.
- 1438 19 *John II.* Son of *Ferdinand*, and Brother of *Alphonso*: King of *Navarre* also, in right of *Blanch* his Wife. 20.
- 1458 20 *Ferdinand II.* of that Name, of *Arragon*, Son of *John* the Second, King of *Arragon* and *Navarre*, by a second Wife; and the Fifth of that Name, of *Castile* and *Leon*; which Kingdoms he obtained by the Marriage of *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth*, Sister and Heir of *Henry* the Fourth; uniting thereby the great Estates of *Castile* and *Arragon*, and all Appendixes of either. In which regard, he may well challenge the first place in the Catalogue of the Monarchs of *Spain*, to be presented in due season.

In the mean time, to draw to a conclusion of the Affairs and Estate of *Arragon*, we are to understand, that of all the Kingdoms which belong to the *Spaniards*, it is the most privileged, and free from the absolute Command of the Kings of *Spain*; having in it such a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereof to be well nigh *Titular*, or of little more authority than a Duke of *Venice*. For at the first erecting of this Estate, the better to encourage the People to defend themselves against the *Moors*, they had many Privileges indulged them; and, amongst others, the creating of a *Justiciar*, or *Popular Magistrate*; which, like the *Ephori* of *Sparta*, had, in some cases, superiority over their Kings, reversing their Judgments, cancelling their Grants, and sometimes censuring their Proceedings. And though King *Philip* the Second, in the business of *Antonio de Perez*, had made a Conquest of that Kingdom, and annulled all their Privileges, yet after, of his own meer goodness,

he restored them (in part) again, as they continue at this Day.

Chief Orders of *Knighthood* (besides that of *Merite*, spoken of before) in this Kingdom, are 1. Of *S. Savina*, instituted by *Alphonso I.* Anno 1118. to animate the Members of it against the *Moor*. Of the Habits and Customs of this Order, I have met with nothing.

2. Of *Montesa*, instituted by *James* the First, King of *Arragon*, Anno 1270. or thereabouts, endowed with all the Lands of the *Templers* (before dissolved) lying in *Valentia*; together with the Town and Castle of *Alcala*, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the Name. Subject at first unto the Master of the Order of *Calatrava*, out of which extracted; and under the same Rule of *Cistercia*. But after, by the leave of Pope *Bonifacius VIII.* they quitted themselves of that subject on; and, in the year thereof, changed the Habit of *Calatrava*, which before they used, to a *Red Cross* upon their Breasts; now the Badge of their Order.

The Arms of *Arragon*, since possessed by the Dukes of *Barcelone*, are *Or*, four *Pallers* *Gules*; before which, there were *Azure*, a *Cross Argent*.

The Monarchy of Spain

Thus having spoke of *Spain*, and the Estate thereof, when broken and divided into many Kingdoms; let us next look upon it as united into one main body; effected, for the most part, by *Ferdinand* the last King of *Arragon* before mentioned. Before which time, *Spain*, being parcelled into many Kingdoms, was little famous, and less Feared; the Kings thereof, as the Author of the *Politick Dispute*, &c. hath well observed, being only *Kings of Figs and Oranges*. Their whole Puissance was then turned one against another, and small achievements had they out of that Continent, except those of the House of *Arragon*; upon *Sicily*, *Naples*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*. *Thuanus*, a diligent Writer of the History of his own Times, (if in some things he favour not more of the Party than the *Historian*) telleth us, that before this King's Reign, the Name and Glory of the *Spaniards* was like their Country, hemmed in by the Seas on some sides, and the Hills on the other: *Potiusque patuisse extra muros dentibus, quam quicquam memorabile extra suos fines gessisse*: And lay rather exposed to the Invasions of strangers, than was able to do any thing it self abroad. 'Tis true, that *Sancho the Great*, King of *Navarre*, assumed unto himself the Title of King of *Spain*, and that *Alphonso* the Fourth of *Castile*, and the Ninth of *Leon*, caused himself to be crowned Emperor of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*: Titles ambitiously affected upon no good ground, and such as ended with their Persons. But this Prince, worthily named *The Great*, seized on the Kingdom of *Navarre*, conquered *Granada* from the *Moors*, subdued the Kingdom of *Naples*, united *Arragon* to *Castile*, banished 124,000 Families of the *Jews*, began, by the conduct of *Columbus*, the discovery of the *Western Indies*; and finally, by marrying his Daughter *Joan*, to *Philip*, Son of the Emperor *Maximilian*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the greatest part of the *Netherlands*, laid the Foundation of the present *Austrian Greatness*. Continued since by so many Inter-marriages betwixt the *Spanish* and *Imperial* Branches of that potent Family, that *Philip* the Second might have called the Arch-Duke *Albertus*, Brother, Cousin, Nephew, and Son. A strange Medley of Relations. Thus by the Puissance of this Prince, the *Spaniards* became first considerable in the Eye of the World, and grew to be a terror to the Neighbouring Nations. *Nomen Hispanicum obscurum antea & Vicinis penè incognitum, (saith the same Thuanus) tum primum emerfit, tractuque temporis in tantam magnitudinem excrevit, ut formidolosum ex eo & terribile toti terrarum Orbi esse cæperit*: Before this time the Name of *Spain* was obscure, and scarce known to its Neighbours; but

but after this, by degrees it got up, and in a small time grew so great, that it began to be formidable and terrible to the whole World. And he saith true, with reference to the *French* and *Italian* Nations; to whom the *Spaniards* have administered no small matter of fear and terror; though unto others, they appear no such dreadful *Bugbears*. But sure it is, and we may warrantably speak it without any such Impressions of Fear and Terror, that this Kingdom, since that time, is wonderfully both enlarged and strengthened; strongly compacted in it self, with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over all parts of the World; his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the rising and the setting of the Sun; which, before the *Spaniard*, no Monarch could ever say. A greater change than any Man can possibly imagine to have been effected in so short a time, as was between the first Year of *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, and the last Year of *Charles* the Fifth.

Concerning the Title of the *Most Catholic King*, re-attributed to this *Ferdinand*, I find, that *Alphonso* the First of *Oviedo*, was so named for his Sanctity; with whom it died; and was revived in *Alphonso* the Great, the twelfth King of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, by the Grant of Pope *John* the Eighth. After, it lay dead till the Days of this Prince, who re-obtained this Title from Pope *Alexander* the Sixth; either because he compelled the *Moors* to be baptized, banished the *Jews*, and in part converted the *Americans* unto *Christianity*; or because, having united *Castile* to his Dominions, surprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*, and subdued that of *Granada*; he was, in a manner, the *Catholic* or general King of all *Spain*. The last reason seemeth to sway most in the restoration of this Attribute, in that when it was granted and confirmed on *Ferdinand*, by Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, the King of *Portugal* exceedingly stomached at it: *Quando Ferdinandus imperio universam Hispaniam, (saith Mariana) non obtineret, ejus tum non exigua parte penes Reges alios*. It seems *Emanuel* could not think himself a King of *Portugal*, if the Title of the *Catholic King* did belong to *Ferdinand*. Wherein he was of the same Mind as was *Gregory* the Great; who when *John* of *Constantinople* had assumed to himself the Title of the *Oecumenical* or *Catholic Bishop*, advised all Bishops of the World to oppose that Arrogancy; and that upon the self-same reason, *Nam si ille est, Catholicus, vos non estis Episcopi*; for, if *John* were the *Catholic Bishop*, they were none at all. But upon what Consideration soever it was first regranted, it hath been ever since assumed by his Posterity: to whose Crown, as Hereditary, and in common use, as the *Most Christian King* to *France*, the *Defender of the Faith* to *England*.

And yet there was some further reason, why the *Spaniard* might affect the Title of *Catholic King*, his Empire being *Catholic* in regard of extent, (though not of *Orthodoxy* of Doctrine) as reaching not over all *Spain* only, but over a very great part of the World besides. For in right of the Crown of *Castile*, he possesseth the Towns of *Mellila* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Masalquivir*, the Rock of *Velez*, and the *Canary Islands* in *Africa*; the Continent and Islands of all *America*, except *Brasil*, and some Plantations in the North, and in the *Cannibal Islands*, of the *English*, *Hollanders*, and a few poor *French*. In the Right of the Kingdom of *Arragon*, he enjoyeth the Realms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, with many Islands interspersed in the *Mediterranean*; and in the Right of the House of *Burgundy*, the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Charolois*, the greatest part of *Belgium*, with a Title unto all the rest: besides the great Dukedom of *Millain*, the Havens of *Telamon* and *Iumbino*, and many other pieces of Importance in *Italy*, held by Investiture from the Empire. To which if those Estates be added, which accrued to *Philip* the Second by the Crown of *Portugal*, we have the Towns of *Couta*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbary*, the Fortresses of *Aquin*, and *S. George* in *Guinea*; the Isles of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Cape Verd*, *S. Thomas*, *Del Principe*, on this side of the *Cape*, and of *Mosambique* on the other: in

Asia, all the Sea-coast, almost from the Gulf of *Persia* unto *China*, and many strong Holds in the *Moluccoes*, *Bantam*, *Zeilan*, and other Islands; and finally in *America*, the large Country of *Brasil*, extending in length 1500 Miles. An Empire of extent enough, to appropriate to these Monarchs the Stile of *Catholic*.

The Monarchs of Spain.

A. Cbr.

- 1478 1. Ferdinand, King of Arragon, Sicily, Sardinia, Majorca, Valentia, Earl of Catalogne; surprized Navarre, and conquered the Realm of Naples.
- 1502 2. Isabel, Queen of Castile, Leon, Gallicia, Toledo, Murcia, Lady of Biscay, conquered Granada, and discovered America.
- 1516 3. Joan, Princess of Castile, Granada, Leon, &c. and of Arragon, Navarre, Sicily, &c.
- 1516 3. Philip, Arch-Duke of Austria, L. of Belgium.
- 1558 4. Charles, King of Castile, Arragon, Naples, &c. Arch-Duke of Austria, Duke of Millain, Burgundy, Brabant, &c. Earl of Catalogne, Flanders, Holland, &c. Lord of Biscay, Friesland, Utrecht, &c. and Emperor of the Germans. He added the Realms of Mexico and Peru, the Dukedoms of Gelderland and Millain, the Earldom of Zutphen, and the Seigniories of Utrecht, Over-Yssel, and Groynning, unto his Estates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puissance, that had not Francis the First in time opposed him, he had even swallowed all Europe. He was also, for a time, of great strength and reputation, in Tunis, and other parts of Africa, disposing Kingdoms at his pleasure; but the Turk broke his Power there; and being hunted also out of Germany, he resigned all his Kingdoms, and died private, in 1559. 41.
- 1558 4. Philip II. Son of Charles the Fifth, and of Isabel, Daughter of Emanuel King of Portugal; was born in the Year 1527. succeeded his Father, upon his Free Resignation, in the Throne of Spain, in 1556. conquered Portugal in 1580. of more Ambition, but less Prosperity than his Father; fortunate only in his attempt on the Kingdom of Portugal; but that is sufficiently ballanced by his ill Success in the Netherlands, and against the English; for the Hollanders, and their Confederates, drove him out of eight of his Belgick Provinces: the English overthrew his Invincible Armada, intercepted his Plate-Fleets; and by awing the Ocean had almost impoverish'd him; and though he held, for a time, a hard hand upon France, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the Leaguers, yet upon casting up his Accompts, he found that himself was the greater Loser by that undertaking: So zealous in the Cause of the Romish Church, that it was thought that his eldest Son Charles was put to death with his consent in the Inquisition-House, for seeming favourably inclined to the Low-Country-Heretics, as the Spaniards called them. These four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter; but neither of the two that followed. By his first Wife, Mary, Daughter of John IV. King of Portugal, he had Charles, a hopeful Prince, born in 1545. and murdered by him in 1568. out of Jealousie either of his Religion or of his Wife. His second Son was Philip III. afterwards King of Spain. He was born 1578.
- 1598 5. Philip III. finding his Estate almost destroyed by his Father's long and chargeable Wars, first made Peace with England, and then con-

concluded a Truce for 12 Years with the States of the *Netherlands*; which done, he totally banished all the *Moors* out of *Spain*, and was a great stickler in the Wars of *Germany*. He banished 900000 *Moors* out of *Spain*, by which he weakened that Kingdom more than by all their unfortunate Wars.

1621 6. *Philip IV.* Son of *Philip the Third*, got into his Power all the *Lower Palatinate*; but lost the whole Realm of *Portugal*, and the Province of *Catalonia*, with many of his best Towns in *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Brabant*, and some Ports in *Italy*: not yet recovered to that Crown from the Power of the *French*. This Prince, upon a Quarrel which arose in *London*, in the Year 1661. between him and the *French* Ambassador, yielded the Precedence to the *French* to prevent a War. This Prince died in the Year 1665.

1665 7. *Charles II.* succeeded his Father, an Infant of Four Years of Age, under the Guardianship of his Mother, who has not been hitherto very Fortunate. He was born in the Year 1661. *Novemb. 6.* and married first *Mary* the Daughter of *Philip Duke of Orleans* who died in the Year 1689. without Issue; and next, *Mary* the Daughter of *Philip Duke of Newburg*, and *Electoress Palatine*, in the Year 1690.

This Empire consisting of so many several Kingdoms united into one Body, may seem to be invincible. Yet had *Queen Elizabeth* followed the Counsel of her Men of War, she might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 Men she might have taken away his *Indies* from him; without whose Gold the *Low-Country* Army (which is the very best) could not be paid, and by consequence must needs have been dissolved. Nay, *Sir Walter Rawleigh*, in the Epilogue of his most excellent *History of the World*, plainly affirmeth, that with the Charge of 200000 *l.* continued but for two Years, or three at the most, the *Spaniards* might not only have been perswaded to live at peace; but all their swelling and overflowing Streams might be brought back to their natural Channels, and old Banks. Their own Proverb saith, *The Lion is not so fierce as he is painted*; yet the *Americans* tremble at his Name: it's true, and it is well observed by that great Politician *Machiavel*, that things which seem to be and are not, are more feared far off, than near at hand. Nor is this Judgment built upon weak conjectures, but such as shew the Power of *Spain* not to be so formidable, as it's commonly supposed; which I find marshalled to my hand in this manner following: 1. The disjointedness of his Realms, and other Estates, severed by infinite distances both of Sea and Land, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2. The slowness of his Preparations in offensive or defensive Wars; his Forces, of necessity, being long a gathering in places so remote from the Royal Seat, and being gathered, no less subject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for Action. 3. The danger and uncertainty which the most part of his *Forinsique Revenues* are subject to; many times intercepted by Pirates and open Enemies; sometimes so long delayed by cross Winds and Seas, that they come too late to serve the turn. 4. The different Tempers and Affections of a great part of his Subjects, not easily concurring in the same ends, or travelling the same way unto them. 5. The discontentedness of the *Arragonians*, *Portuguese*, and *Italian* Provinces, not well affected, for their private and particular Reasons, unto the *Castilians*; apt to be wrought on by the Ministers of neighbouring Princes, whom jealousies of State keep watchful upon all advantages, for the depressing of his Power. 6. And last of all, the want of People of his own natural Subjects,

whom he may best rely on for the increase and grandeur of his Estates, exhausted and diminished by those ways and means which have been touched upon; without any politic or provident cause, to remedy that defect for the time to come. And tis I look on as the greatest and most sensible Error in the *Spanish* Government. Therein directly contrary to the ancient *Romans*; who finding that nothing was more necessary for great and important Enterprizes, than multitudes of Men, employed all their Studies to increase their numbers, by Marriages, Colonies, and such helps; making their conquered Enemies free *Danizens* of their Common-wealth; by which means the number of the *Roman* Citizens became so great (all being equally interested in the preservation of it) that *Rome* could not be ruined (in *Annibal's* Judgment) by any Forces but her own. But, on the other side, the *Spaniards* employ none in their Plantations, but their own native Subjects; and so many of them also in all their Enterprizes both by Sea and Land, that so many thousands going forth every Year, in the flower of their Age, not one of ten returning home; and those few which return, either lame or Old: the Country is not only deprived of the Men themselves, but also of the Children which might be born. An evidence whereof may be, that *John* the First of *Portugal*, who reigned before the several Voyages and Plantations of that People, was able to raise 40000 Men for the War of *Africk*; whereas *Emanuel*, who lived after those Undertakings, had much ado to raise 20000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, on the same occasion; and *Sebastian*, after that, found as great a difficulty to raise an Army of 12000.

As for the Forces which the King of *Spain* is able to make out of all his Estates, they may be best seen by his Preparations for the Conquest of *England*, *France*, and *Flanders*. In his design for *England*, *Ann. 1588.* he had a Fleet consisting of 150 Sail of Ships, whereof 66 were great Galleons, 4 Galeasses of *Naples*, 4 Gallies, the rest smaller Vessels; fraughted with 20000 Soldiers for Land-service, 9000 Sailors, 800 Gunners, 4000 Pioneers, 2650 Pieces of Ordnance: not reckoning into this Account the Commanders and Volunteers; of which last, there were very great numbers who went upon that Service for Spoil, Merit, or Honour. In the design of *Charles* the Fifth, for the Conquest of *Prance*, he had no less than 50000 in the Field: And in that of *Philip* the Second, for the reducing of *Flanders*, the Duke of *Alva* had an Army, at his first setting forward out of *Italy*, consisting of 8800 *Spanish* Foot, and 1200 Horse, all of them old experienced Soldiers, drawn out of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the Dutchy of *Milain*; 3600 *German* Foot, 300 Lances, and 100 Harquebutiers on Horseback, of the County of *Burgundy*; all old Soldiers also; besides many Volunteers of great Rank and Quality, very well attended, and his old standing Army in the *Belgick* Provinces; a Strength sufficient to have conquered a far greater Country.

Of standing Forces in this Country, he maintaineth in these Realms of *Spain*, but three thousand Horse; and in his Forts and Garrisons, no more than 8000 Foot; his Garrisons being very few, and those upon the Frontiers only, and in Maritime Towns; his Gallies served with Slaves out of *Turkey* and *Barbary*. And yet he is able, on occasion, to raise very great Forces; partly, because the ordinary Subjects are so well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence; and partly in regard there is so great a number of *Feudatories* and Noble men, who are by Tenure to serve personally at their own Charges, for defence of the Realm. And certainly, it must be a considerable Force which the Noblemen of *Spain* are able to raise, considering the greatness of their Revenue, and the number of Vassals which live under them; it being supposed, that the Dukes of *Spain* (of which there were 23 when my Author lived) were able, one with another, to dispend yearly from 50000 Ducats, to 100000; some going very much above that

proportion; and that of 30 Marquesses, and 50 Earls, the poorest had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent, and so ascending unto 50 and 60000. The Arch-Bishops, Bishops, and others of the greater Clergy, being all endowed with fairer Temporal Estates than in most places in Europe, are also bound to serve (though not personally) on the like occasions. And to these Services the Noblemen are for two reasons more forward than the other Feudataries: 1. Because their Honours descend not *de jure* from the Father to the Son, unless confirmed to the Son by the King's acknowledgment and compellation, which makes them more observant of him, than in France or England, where it is challenged as a Birth-right. 2. Because out of the gross body of these Noblemen, the King doth use to honour some with the Title of *Grandees*, privileged to stand cover'd before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the highest Honour which that State can yield, keeps those great Persons in readiness to obey his Pleasure, in hope to come to an Honour of so high esteem.

For the Revenues of this King, which ordinarily arise out of his Estates, (taking Portugal into the Accompt) they are computed at Eleven Millions of Crowns yearly; that is to say, Four from his Dominions in Italy, Two from Portugal and the Appertinents thereof; Three from the West-Indies, and the other two remaining, from his Kingdoms in Spain. Besides this, he receiveth yearly the Revenues of the Masterships of all the great Orders in his Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by Ferdinand the Catholick, not without good Policy and reason of State: the Masters (or *Comendadores*, as they call them) of those several Orders drawing after them such Troops of the Nobility, Gentry, and other dependants; that their Power began to be suspected by the Kings themselves. By which addition there accrue to the Crown (besides the opportunity of preferring Servants of the greatest Merit) above 150000*l.* of yearly Rents. As for his Casualties and extraordinary ways of raising Money, they are very great: reckon'd by the Author of the *General History of Spain* to amount (according to divers Opinions) to Fourteen, Eighteen, and Twenty three Millions of Crowns. For making up of which Sum, he puts in the *First Fruits*, and some part of the *Tenths* of Rectories; and other Church Preferments, amounting to Three Millions yearly. And the Author of the *Politique Dispute*, &c. affirmeth the Pardons sent to the Indies given him by the Pope, to be worth half a Million of Pounds yearly. Add hereunto the fall and disposal of all Offices, which make up a good round Sum; and the free Gifts and Contributions of his Subjects,

which amount unto a good Revenue. For the Kingdom of Naples presents him every third Year with a Million and Twenty thousand Crowns; and Castile only at one time granted a Contribution of Four Millions, to be paid in 4 Years: his Subjects generally being so well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reason of them, which they are not ready to grant; the King of Spain being called in that regard by the Emperor Maximilian, the King of Men. And yet this great King is not counted to be rich in Treasure, his Expences being very great. First, In keeping Forts and Garrisons in many parts of his Estates against the Revolt of the Natives. Secondly, Maintaining so many Frontier places against Foreign Invasions. Thirdly, In the continual pay of an Armada for conducting his Plate-Fleets from America. And last of all, The many and unprofitable Wars of King Philip the Second, so plunged the Crown in the Gulfs of Bankers and Money-Changers, that much of the Revenues of it stand engaged for payment to this very Day.

There are in Spain.

Arch-Bishops 11. Bishops 52.

Universities 18.

i. e.

1. Seville.
2. Granada.
3. S. Jago.
4. Toledo.
5. Valladolid.
6. Majorca.
7. Salamanca.
8. Alcala de Henares.
9. Sigüenza.
10. Eborac.
11. Lisbon.
12. Conimbre.
13. Valentia.
14. Lerida.
15. Huesca.
16. Saragossa.
17. Tudela.
18. Ossuna.

And so much for SPAIN.

Of the OCEAN and ISLES

O F

BRITAIN.

BEFORE we can arrive in *Britain*, the last Western Diocess, we must cross the OCEAN, that *ingens*, and *infinitum Pelagus*, as *Mela* calls it: in comparison of which, the Seas before-mentioned are but as *Ponds* or *Gullets*: a Sea in former times known more by Fame than Trial, and rather wondred at on the Shore side, than any more remote place of it. The *Romans* ventured not on it with their Vessels, unless in the Passage from *France* to *Britain*: And much famed is *Alexander* for his hazardous Voyage on this unruly Sea, he having failed in all 400 Furlongs from the Shore. The Name and Pedigree take here both from the *Poets* and *Etymologists*. The *Poets* make *Oceanus* to be the Son of *Cælum* and *Vesta*, or of Heaven and Earth. They termed him the Father of all things, as, *Oceanumque Patrem rerum*, in *Virgil*, because moisture was necessarily required to the constitution of all Bodies; and usually painted him with a Bulls Head on his Shoulders, (whence *Euripides* called him *Ὠκεῖος Ταυρόκερος*, *Oceanus Tauriceps*) from the bellowing and fury of the Winds; which from it come to the Shore, and to which it is subject. As for the *Children* attributed unto him, they are doubtless nothing but the *Clouds* and *Vapours* hence

arising. The Name of *Ὠκεῖος Oceanus*, some derive from *ὠκεῖος*, *cæler*, because of its *mistiness*; some from *ὠκεῖος*, *finis*, *divido*, because it *cleaveth* and *intenneth* the Earth, And others make it *Ὠκεῖος*, *quasi ὠκεῖος περὶ τὸ ὠκεῖον*, *à celeriter fluendo*, which agreeth in meaning with the first. Particular Names it hath divers, according to the Name of the Shore, by which it passeth, as *Cantabricus*, *Gallicus*, *Britannicus*, &c. The chief Isles of it appertain- ing to *Europe*, besides those called the *Æzores* or *Isles of Tercera*, which we have spoken of when we were in *Portugal*; those of the *Aquitain* Ocean, described in our History of *France*; those of the *Netherlands*, and the *Northern* Seas, which are to be described hereafter in their proper places, are the *British* Islands: by many of the most ancient and approved Writers called simply *BRITAIN*, because united all in that common notion; though afterwards distinguished into the particular appella- tions of *Great Britain*, *Ireland*, and the rest. Of which, as lying in my way betwixt *Spain* and *Germany*; or rather as the next Diocess of the Empire to *France* and *Spain*, under the *Prætorian* *Profectus* of *Gaul*, I am next to speak.

An Advertisement to the Reader.

TH^O *Britain*, since the Year 1640. has been the Scene of more Actions and Changes than any Country in Christendom, a great part of which were over when the Reverend Dr. Heylin wrote, about the Year 1648. yet he did not think it safe to mention any thing of them. And, perhaps, all things consider'd, it is as difficult to do it now as it was then: I shall therefore, in this part of the Work, leave things in almost the same state I found them, only correcting the Errors of the Press.

OF BRITAIN

BRTAIN, according to the largest latitude of that Name and Notion, comprehendeth all those Islands both great and less, which lie in compass about *Albion*, or *Britain* properly so called: by *Ptolemy* called *Britannia*, in the plural number; for speaking of *France* he thus subjoineth, *Ex adverso hujus Britannia Insula*, *Albion ipsi nomen fuit*, *cum Britannia omnes vocarentur*, i. e. Opposite hereunto lieth the Island of *Britain*, which formerly by a more proper Name was called *Albion*, the Name of *Britain* comprehending all the Isles adjoining. And in this latitude and extent we now take the word; the whole dominion of these Islands, distinguish'd into several Names, being united in the Person and under the Command of the King of *Great Britain*: that Name including all the rest, as appendants of it; with reference to this called the *Isles of Britain*, or the *British* Islands. Thus *Aristotle* in his Book *De Mundo* (if the Book be his) *Quo in mari duæ Insulae Britannicae sitæ sunt, quarum maximæ Albion & Ierna*; i. e. In which Sea there are situate two *British* Islands of great note and compass, *Albion* (or *Britain* properly so called) and *Ireland*. *Ptolemy* goeth to work more punctually, and he states it thus; *Completur prima hæc Europæ tabula duas Britannicas insulas, quas Dionysius Bretanides vocat, Hiberniam nempe & Albionem, cum minoribus aliquot adjacentibus insulis, ut sunt Orcades, Ebudæ, Thyle, Mona, & reliquæ suis nominibus expressæ*: that is to say, This first Table of

Europe comprehendeth the two Islands of *Britain*, which *Dionysius* calls the *Bretanides*, namely *Ireland* and *Albion*, with some lesser Islands joyning to it, as the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, *Thule*, *Anglesey*, (or *Man*) and others called by distinct Names. By which we see, first, that the general Name of *Britain* or *British* Islands comprehended all those which are situate in the *British* Ocean: And, secondly, that the greatest and most famous of them, more specially called *Britain* by the following Writers, was anciently called *Albion* by its proper Name. And it was called *Albion*, as many Authors tell me, either from *Albion* the Brother of *Bergian*, the Son of *Nepheus*, mentioned by *Æschylus*, *Dionysius*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, *Pliny*, and others; it being not improper, that the greatest Island of the Ocean should be denominated from a Son of the greatest Sea-god: or from the old word *ἄλβον*, signifying *White* amongst the *Greeks*, (from whence the *Latines* had their *Albani*;) by reason of the white chalky Cliffs, seen by the Mariners afar off as they sailed those Seas.

But to return again to *Britain* in the general notion, and to the several Islands which that Name includeth, we may distinguish them into the *Greater* and the *Lesser*; the *Greater* subdivided into 1. *Great Britain*, or *Britain* specially so called, and 2. *Ireland*; the *Lesser*, 1. the *Orcades*, 2. the *Hebrides*, 3. *Man*, 4. *Anglesey*, 5. the Islands of the *Severn* Sea, 6. the *Welshes*, or Isles of *Sally*, 7. *Hugh*, 8. *Thames*, 9. *Sandwich*, and 10. *Hely* Island.

G R E A T

GREAT BRITAIN.

TO speak much of GREAT BRITAIN or BRITAIN, specially and properly so called, I hold somewhat superfluous, it being our home, and we therefore no strangers to it. Yet as *Mela* once said of *Italy*, *De Italia, magis quia ordo exiget, quam quia monstrari eget, pauca dicentur; nota sunt omnia*; so say I of *Britain*. It is so obvious to the Eye of every Reader, that he needs not the Spectacles of Letters. Yet something must be said, though for method sake, rather than necessity. First then, we will begin with laying out the Bounds thereof (as in other places;) which are, on the East, the *German Ocean*, dividing it from *Belgium*, *Germany*, and *Danemark*; on the West, *S. George's Channel*, which divides it from *Ireland*; and to the North of that, with the main *Vergivian* or *Western Ocean*, of which the Ancients knew no shore; on the North, with the *Hyberborean* or *Deucalionian Ocean*, as *Ptolomy* calls it, extending out to *Iseland*, *Freezeland*, and the ends of the then known World; and on the South, the *English Channel*, which divides it from *France*.

The length hereof from North to South, is reckoned at 620 *Italian Miles*; the greatest breadth from East to West, measured in a right Line, no more than 250 of the same Miles, but by the crooks and bendings of the Sea-Coast, come to 320 Miles: whole circumference accompted 1836 Miles. The greatest Island in the World, except, *Java*, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Madagascar*; and therefore by *Solinus* and some other Ancients (to whom those Islands were not known) called the *Other World*: by other of late time, the *Lady and Mistress of the Seas*. Situate under the 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th Climes; so that the longest Day at the *Lizard Point* in *Cornwall*, (being the most Southern part hereof) containeth 16 Hours and a quarter; at *Berwick*, which is the border of *England* and *Scotland*, 17 Hours three quarters, and one Hour more at *Straitbby-head*, in the North of *Scotland*; where some observe, that there is scarce any Night at all in the Summer *Solstice*, but a darker Twilight. To which alludes the Poet, saying, *Et minima contentos nocte Britannos: Britain content with little Night*. And the *Panegyrist*, in the time of *Constantine*, amongst other Commendations which he gives to *Britain*, saith, that therein is neither extreme cold in Winter, nor any scorching heats in Summer; and that which is most comfortable, *Long Days*, and *very lightsome Nights*. Nor doth the *Panegyrist* tell us only of the temperateness of the Air, or the length of the Days, but of the fruitfulness of the Soil: affirming "*Britain* to be blessed with all the "*Commodities of Heaven and Earth*; such an abundant "*plenty of Corn* as might suffice both for Bread and "*Wine*; the Woods thereof without wild Beasts, the "*Fields without noisome Serpents*, infinite number of "*milch Beasts*, and Sheep weighed down with their own "*Fleeces*. Whereto add that of *Alfred of Beverly*, a Poet of the middle times, saying thus of *Britain*.

*Insula prædives, quæ toto vix eget orbe;
Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope.
Insula prædives, cujus miretur & optet.
Delicias SOLOMON, Octavianus opes.*

A wealthy Island, which no help desires,
Yet all the World supply from her requires;
Able to glut King SOLOMON with Pleasures,
And surfeit great AUGUSTUS with her Treasures.

Proceed we next to the Name of *Britain*, of which find many *Etymologies*, some forced, some fabulous and foolish, and but few of weight. That which hath passed for current in former times, (when almost all Nations did pretend to be of *Trojan Race*) was that it took this Name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Son of *Silvius*, who was the Grand-child of *Aeneas*, and the third King of the *Latines* of the *Trojan Blood*. Which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his Friends and Followers; after a long Voyage, and many wandrings, is said to have fallen upon this Island, to have conquered here a Race of Giants; and having given unto it the Name of *Britain*, to leave the Sovereignty thereof unto his Posterity, who quietly enjoyed the same, till subdued by the *Romans*. This is the sum of the Tradition concerning *Brute*; which tho' received in the darker times of Ignorance, and too much credulity, in these more learned Days hath been laid aside, as false and fabulous. And it is proved, that there was no such Man as *Brutus*, 1. From the newness of his Birth, *Geofry of Monmouth*, who lived in the Reign of King *Henry the Second*, being the first Author which makes mention of him; for which immediately questioned by *Newbrigenfis*, another Writer of that Age. 2. By the silence of all the *Roman Historians*, in whom it had been unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident so remarkable, as the killing of a Father by his own Son (especially when they wanted Matter to fill up the times) and the erecting of a new *Trojan Empire* in so great an Island. 3. By the Arguments which *Cæsar* useth to prove the *Britains* to be derived from the *Galls*, as Speech, Laws, Customs, Dispositions, Making, and the like. 4. And lest it might be said, that though the *Britains* in *Cæsar's* time were of *Gallick Race*, yet there had been a more ancient People, who had their Original from the *Trojans*, *Tacitus* putteth off that dispute with an *Ignoramus*: *Qui mortales initio coluerint, parum compertum est*, It is not well known what Mortals at first inhabited it, saith that knowing Writer. And 5. By the Testimony of all *Roman Histories*, who tell us that *Cæsar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, and never under the Command of one sole Prince, but in times of danger. *Summa Belli administrandi, communi consensu, commissa est Cassivellauno*; The principal Command and Care of the War was by common consent committed to *Cassivellaun*, as it is in *Cæsar*: *Dum singuli pugnabant, universi vincebantur*; Whilst they fought in small Parties they were all at last one after another overcome, as we read in *Tacitus*. To omit therefore that of *Brutus*, and other *Etymons*, as unlikely, but of less Authority; the Name of *Britain* is most probably derived from *Brit*, which in the ancient *British* signifieth *Painted*; and the word *Tain* signifieth a *Nation*; agreeable unto the Custom of the ancient *Britains*, who used to discolour and paint their Bodies, that they might seem more terrible in the Eyes of their Enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted Men; such as the *Romans* called *Picti* in the times ensuing. Which I prefer before the Etymology of *Rochartus*, a right Learned Man, but one that wresteth all Originations to the *Punick* or *Phœnician Language*; by whom this Island is called *Britain* or *Britannica*, from *Barat-anac*, signifying in that Language a Land of *Tynne*, wherewith the Western parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the Isle of *Britain* shall be observed in the description of those Parts into which it now doth stand divided, that is to say. 1. *England*, 2. *Wales*, and 3. *Scotland*.



THE BRITISH

SEA

NORTHERN

MEDITER

PART OF AFRICA





ENGLAND.

ENGLAND is bounded on the East with the German, on the West with the Irish, on the South with the British Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of Tweed and Solway; by which parted from Scotland: Environ'd with turbulent Seas, guarded by inaccessible Rocks; and where those want, preserved against all foreign Invasions by strong Forts and a puissant Navy.

In former times the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edenburgh Fryth* on the East, and the *Fryth of Dunbriton* on the West, (for so far not only the Roman Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend:) the intervenient space being shut up with a Wall of Turfs by *Lollius Urbicus*, in the time of *Antonius Pius*. But afterwards, the Romans being beaten back by the barbarous People, the Province was contracted within narrower Bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperor *Severus*, extending from *Carlisle* to the River *Tine*, the track whereof may easily be discerned to this very Day. A Wall so made, that at every Miles end there is said to have been a Castle, between every Castle many Watch-Towers; and betwixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Brass, conveying the least noise unto one another without interruption; so that News of any approaching Enemy was quickly over all the Border, and resistance accordingly provided. In following times the strong Towns of *Burwick* and *Carlisle* have been the chief Bars, by which we kept the back Door shut; and as for other Forts, we had scarce any on the Frontiers, or Sea-Coasts of the Kingdom; though in the midland Parts too many. Which being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occasioned many to rebel; and did create great trouble to the Norman Kings, till in the latter end of the Reign of King *Stephen*, 1100 of them were levelled to the very ground, and those few which remained dismantled, and made unserviceable. The Maritime Parts were thought sufficiently assured by those Rocks and Cliffs which compass the Island in most parts; and hardly any Castle all along the Shore, except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the French, as the *Key of England*. But in the Year 1538. King *Henry* the Eighth considering how he had offended the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, by his Divorce from Queen *Catharine*; and incurred the displeasure of the Pope, by his falling off from that See; as also that the French King had not only married his Son to a Niece of the Pope, but a Daughter of the King of Scots; thought fit to provide for his own safety, by building in all places where the Shore was most plain and open, Castles, Platforms, and Block-Houses; many of which in the long time of Peace ensuing were much neglected, and in part ruined.

His Daughter, Queen *Elizabeth*, of happy Memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom; for she not only fortified *Portsmouth*, and placed in it a strong Garrison; but walled the Kingdom round with a most stately, royal, and invincible Navy; with which she always commanded the Seas, and vanquished the mightiest Monarch of Europe; whereas her Predecessors, in their Seeservice, for the most part, hired their Men of War from the *Hansemen* and *Genoese*. Yet did neither of these erect any Castles in the inward part of the Realm; herein imitating Nature, who fortifieth the Head and the Feet only, not the middle of Beasts; or some Captain of a Fort, who plants all his Ordnance on the Walls, Bulwarks, and Outworks, leaving the rest by these sufficiently guarded.

The whole Island was first called *Albion*, as before is said, either from the Giant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards France. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which Name being first found in *Athenæus*, amongst the Græcians, and in *Lucretius* and *Cæsar* amongst the Latines; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and all other ancient Writers, except *Ptolomy* only, by whom called *Albion* as at first; continued till the time of *Egbert*, the first Saxon Monarch, who called the Southern parts of the Island by the Name of *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Jutes* and *Saxons* conquered it.

It is in length 320 Miles, enjoying a Soil equally participating of Ground fit for Tillage and Pasture; yet to Pasture more than to Tillage are our People addicted, as a course of life not requiring so many helpers, which must be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain Profits. Hence in former times Husbandry began to be neglected, Villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn Way-beaters; whereof Sir *Thomas Moor*, in his *Utopia*, complaineth, saying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only Men, but whole Houses and Towns. *Oves* (saith he) *quæ tam mites esse, tamque exiguo solent ali; nunc tam edaces, & indomitæ esse cœperant, ut homines devorent ipsos, agros, domos, oppida vastent, ac depopulentur*: Sheep which have been hitherto thought such mild and peaceable Creatures, and contented with little, are now become so devouring and untameable, that they destroy our Lands and Houses, and depopulate and lay waste our Towns. To prevent this mischief, there was a Statute made in the Fourth Year of *Henry* the Seventh, against the converting of Arable Land into Pasture Ground; by which course Husbandry was again revived, and the Soil made so abounding in Corn, that a dear Year is seldom heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and seldom come to maturity, and are more used for the pleasantness of the Shade, than for the hopes of Wine. Most of her other Plenties and Ornaments, are expressed in this old Verse following;

*Anglia, 1. Mons, 2. Pons, 3. Fons,
4. Ecclesia, 5. Fœmina, 6. Lana.*

That is to say,

For 1. Mountains, 2. Bridges, 3. Rivers, 4 Churches fair;
5. Women, and 6. Wooll, *England* is past compare.

1. For the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty Heads, and giving a gallant prospect to the lower Ground; the principal are those of *Mendip* in *Somerset*, *Malvern Hills* in *Worcestershire*, the *Chiltern* of *Buckinghamshire*, *Cotswold* in *Glostershire*, the *Peak* of *Derbyshire*, *York Wolds*, &c. All of them either bowelled with Mines, or clothed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact description of which would require more time than I can spend upon that subject. Proceed we therefore to

2. The Bridges, which are in number 875. The chief of which are, the Bridge of *Rocheſter* over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Bristol* over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London* over *Thames*. This last standing upon 19 Arches, of wonderful strength and largeness, supporteth continual ranges of Buildings, seeming rather a Street than a Bridge; and is not to be parallel'd with any Bridge of Europe; though of late by some defacement made by Fire, Anno 1632. the Buildings are not so contiguous as they were before.

3. The

3. The *Rivers* of this Country are in number 325. The chief is *Thamisis*, compounded of the two Rivers, *Thame* and *Isis*; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the latter beyond *Cirencester* in *Glocestershire*, meet together about *Dorchester* in *Oxfordshire*: The issue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamisis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surry*, *Kent*, and *Essex*; and so weddeth himself to the *Kentish Medway*, in the very jaws of the Ocean. This glorious River feeleth the violence of the Sea more than any River in *Europe*; ebbing and flowing twice a Day, more than 60 Miles: about whose Banks are so many fair Towns and Princely Palaces, that a *German Poet* thus truly spoke,

*Tot campos, sylvas, tot regia tecla, tot hortos,
Artifices excultos dextrâ, tot vidimus arces;
Ut nunc Ausonio Thamisis cum Tibride certet.*

We saw so many Woods and Princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and stately Towers:
So many Gardens dress'd with curious care,
That *Thames* with Royal *Tiber* may compare.

The second River of note, is *Sabrin* or *Severn*. It hath its beginning in *Plinlimmon-Hill* in *Montgomeryshire*, and his end about seven Miles from *Bristol*; washing in the mean space, the Walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester*, and *Glocester*. 2. *Trent*, so called, for that 30 kind of Fishes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 lesser Rivers; who having his Fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent Stream of all the Isle. Yet *Humber* is not, to say truth, a distinct River, having a Spring-head of his own; but rather the Mouth or *Estuarium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely *Toune*, *Darewent*, and especially *Ouse* and *Trent*. And as the *Danow*, *Danube*, having received into its Channel the Rivers *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibiscus*, and divers others, changeth his Name into *Isler*; so also the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the Waters above-named, changeth his Name into this of *Humber*; *Abus*, the old Geographers call it. 4. *Medway*, a *Kentish* River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navy. 5. *Tweed*, the North-East bound of *England*, on whose Northern Bank is seated the strong and impregnable Town of *Berwick*. 6. *Tine*, famous for *New-Castle*, and her inexhaustible Coal pits. These, and the rest of principal note, are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Drayton's* Sonnets:

Our Flood Queen *Thames* for Ships and Swans is crown'd
And stately *Severn* for her Shore is prais'd,
The Crystall *Trent* for Fords and Fish renown'd,
The *Avon's* fame to *Albion's* Cliffs is rais'd.
Concligion *Chester* vaunts her holy *Dee*,
York many Wonders of her *Ouse* can tell,
The *Peak* her *Dove*, whose Banks so fertil be,
And *Kent* will say her *Medway* doth excel.
Cotswold commends her *Isis* to the *Thame*,
Our Northern Borders boast of *Tweed's* fair flood;
Our Western parts extol their *Willies* Fame,
And the old *Lea* brags of *Danish* Blood.

4. The Churches, before the general suppression of Abbies, and spoiling the Church Ornaments, were most exquisite; the chief remaining, are, 1. The Church of *St. Paul*, founded by *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple consecrated to *Diana*: A Fabrick of the largest dimensions of that kind, of any in the Christian World. For whereas the so much celebrated Temple of *S. Sophia* in *Constantinople* hath but 260 Foot in length, and 75 in breadth: this of *S. Paul* is 690 Foot long, and 130 Foot broad, the main Body being 102 Foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was

mounted 482 Foot more. Which Steeple being made with Timber, and cover'd with Lead, was by the carelessness of the Sexton, in the Fifth Year of the Reign of *Q. Elizabeth*, consumed with Fire, which happening in a thundring and tempestuous Day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by Lightning, and was so generally believed till the Hour of his Death: but not many Years since, to disabuse the World, he confest the truth of it; on which discovery, the burning of *St. Paul's* Steeple by Lightning, was left out of our Common Almanacks; where formerly it stood amongst the ordinary *Epoche*, or Accounts of Time. A Church of such a gallant Prospect, and so large dimensions, that had not the late Reparation of it been discontinued, it would have been the statelyest and most majestical Fabrick in the Christian World. This Noble Structure was burnt in the Year 1666. Sept. 3. 2. The Collegiate Church of *St. Peter* in *Westminster*, (wherein I have the honour to be a Prebendary) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of *England*, the Tombs whereof are the most sumptuous, and the Chappel the most accurate piece of Building in *Europe*. 3. The Cathedral Church at *Lincoln*. 4. For a private Church, that of *Radcliff* in *Bristol*. 5. For a private Chappel, that of *King's-College* in *Cambridge*. 6. For curious Workmanship of the Glass, that of *Christ-Church* in *Canterbury*. 7. For the exquisite beauty of the Fronts, those of *Wells* and *Peterborough*. 8. For a pleasant lightsome Church, the Abby Church at *Bath*. 9. For an ancient and reverend Fabrick, the Minster of *York*. And 10. to comprehend the rest in one, our Lady-Church in *Salisbury*, of which take these Verses.

*Mira canam; soles quot continet annus, in una
Tam numerosa, ferunt, æde fenestra micat.
Marmoreasq; tenet fusus tot ab arte columnas,
Comprehensas horas quot vagus annus habet.
Totq; patent portæ, quot mensibus annus abundat:
Res mira, at vera res celebrata fide.*

How many Days in one whole Year there be,
So many Windows in one Church we see.
So many marble Pillars there appear,
As there are Hours throughout the fleeting Year.
So many Gates, as Moons, one Year do view;
Strange Tale to tell, yet not so strange as true.

5. The Women generally are more handsome than in other places, sufficiently endowed with natural Beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophistications. In an absolute Woman, say the *Italians*, are required the parts of a *Dutch-Woman*, from the Girdle downwards; of a *French-Woman*, from the Girdle to the Shoulders; over which must be placed an *English* Face. As their Beauties, so also are their Prerogatives the greatest of any Nation; neither so servilely submissive as the *French*, nor so jealously guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping so true a decorum, that as *England* is termed the Purgatory of Servants, and the Hell of Horses; so it is acknowledged the Paradise of Women. And it is a common by-word among the *Italians*, that if there were a Bridge built over the Narrow Seas, all the Women of *Europe* would run into *England*: For here they have the upper hands in the Streets, the upper place at the Table; the thirds of their Husbands Estates, and their equal share in all Lands, yea even such as are holden in *Knights-service*; Privileges wherewith other Women are not acquainted. Of high esteem in former times amongst foreign Nations, for the modesty and gravity of their Conversation, but of late times so much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they have lost much of their ancient honor and reputation amongst the knowing and more sober Men of foreign Countries, who before admir'd them.

6. The Wool of *England* is of exceeding fineness, especially that of *Cotswold* in *Glocestershire*; that of *Lanster* in *Herefordshire*; and of the Isle of *Wight*. Of this Wool are made excellent Broad-cloths, dispersed all over the World, especially *Hig-Germany*, *Muscovy*, *Turkey* and *Persia*, to the great benefit of the Realm; as well

well in return of so much money which is made of them, as in setting to work so many poor People, who from it receive Sustenance. Before the time of King Edward the third, *English* Men had not the Art, or neglected the use of making Cloth: till whose time our Wool was transported unwrought. And as his Successors have laid Impositions on every Cloth sold out of the Realm; so his Predecessors had, as their occasion required, some certain Customs granted on every Sack of Wool. In the beginning of this *Edward's* Wars with *France*, the Cities and Towns of *Flanders* being then even to admiration rich, combined with him, and aided him in his Wars against that King. And he for his part by the Composition then made, was to give them 140000 *l.* ready money to aid them by Sea and Land, if need required, and to make *Bruges*, then one of the great Mart-Towns of *Christendom*, the Staple for his Wools. Here the Staple continued 15 years, at which time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the King, and he having by experience seen what the benefit of those Staples were, removed them from *Bruges* into *England*. And for the ease as well of his Subjects in bringing their Wools unto the Ports, as of such Foreign Merchants that came to buy; he placed his Staples at *Excester*, *Bristol*, *Winchester*, *Westminster*, *Chichester*, *Canterbury*, *Norwich*, *Lincoln*, *York*, and *Newcastle*, for *England*; at *Caermarthen* for *Wales*; and at *Dublin*, *Waterford*, *Cork* and *Tredub*, for *Ireland*. He further enacted, that no *English*, *Irish*, or *Welsh*-men should transport this Stapled Commodity, no not by Licence (if any such should be granted) on pain of Confiscation, and Imprisonment during the Kings pleasure. Lastly, he allured over hither divers *Flemmings*, which taught our men the making of Clothes (who are now grown the best Cloth-workers in the World;) and to encourage them in that Art. it was by the Statute of the 27th of *Edward* the third, Enacted to be Felony, to carry any Wools unwrought. When *England* had some short time enjoyed the benefit of these Staples, the King removed them to *Calice*, which he had conquered, and desired to make wealthy. From hence they were at several times and occasions translated, now to one, now to another Town in *Belgium*: and happy was that Town, in what Country soever, where the *English* kept a House for this Traffick; the confluence of all People thither to buy, infinitely enriching it. *Antwerp* in *Brabant* long enjoyed the *English* Merchants, till upon some discontents between King *Henry* the Seventh, and *Maximilian* Arch-Duke and Lord of *Belgium*, they removed: but at their return again, were received by the *Antwerpians*, with solemn Procession, Princely Triumph, sumptuous Feasts, rare Banquetings, and other expressions of much Love, but more Joy. And giving of some *Cotswold* Sheep by *Edward* the Fourth, to *Henry* of *Castile*, and *John* of *Arragon*, An. 1465. is counted one of the greatest prejudices, that ever happened to this Kingdom.

The Wool transported bringeth into the Kingdom no less than 1500000 *l.* and the Lead half the sum, so that *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, That before the Wars of the Low-Countries, the *Flemmings* and the *English* bartered Wares, yearly to the value of 12 Millions of Crowns.

The next Commodity to the Wool, though not mentioned in the verse foregoing, are the rich and inexhaustible Mines of *Cole*, *Lead*, and *Tin*: to say nothing of the Mines of *Iron*, as bringing more damage to the Publick by the spoil of Woods, than profit to particular persons in the increase of their Estates. The Mines of *Cole* chiefly enrich *Newcastle* in *Northumberland*, and by that the great City of *London*, and many other good Towns besides; which could not possibly subsist in this general decay of Woods, and neglect of planting, but by this Commodity. The Mines of *Lead* are most considerable in the Peak of *Derbyshire*; those of *Tin* in *Cornwall*, where they dig *Tin* not much inferiour to Silver in fineness. A Commodity which brought great wealth to *England* in

former times, the art of making it not being elsewhere known in *Europe*; till one of the Tin-workers, flying out of *England* for a Murder, passed into *Germany*, An. 1742 and there discovered some Tin Mines in *Münster*, not known before, and set on foot that Trade among them, to the great prejudice (saith my Author) of the *Count of Cornwall*, who had before the sole *Monopoly* of that useful Metall.

To these Particulars, being matter of Profit and Necessity, if I would add such things as are for the Pleasure, I might subjoin the *Bells* and *Parks*; for which this Kingdom is as eminent among foreign Nations, as for any of those mentioned in the said old Verse. The *Bells* so many, tunable, and of such excellent Melody to a Musical Ear (brought more to the command of the skilful Ringer than in former times) that is thought there are more good Rings of *Bells* in this part of the Island, than in half *Christendom* besides, *Parks* more in *England*, than in all *Europe*. The first of which kind for the enclosing of Venison, being that of *Woodstock*, made by King *Henry* the first; whose Example being followed by his Successors, and the Lords and great Men of the Realm; the number so increased in a little time, that at the last, besides 55 *Forests*, and 300 *Chases*, there were reckoned 747 *Parks* in *England*; all well replenished either with Red or Fallow Deer.

And that the Deer might graze with pleasure, and the Sheep with safety, great care was taken by our Predecessors for the destruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old Writers, that *England* never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places; but it is not so; here being store of them, till *Edgar* King of *England* commuted the 20 *l.* of Gold, 300 *l.* of Silver, and 300 head of Cattel imposed as an yearly Tribute by King *Albeldstane* upon *Idwallo* Prince of *Wales*, for the like yearly Tribute of 300 *Wolves*; by which means they were quite rooted out in time, the *Welsh* protesting at last they could find no more.

The Air of this Country is very temperate, neither so hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, because of its Northernly situation; nor so cold in the Winter; because the Air of this Kingdom being gross, cannot so soon penetrate as the thin Air, of those Countries: For to say truth, the Air in the Winter time is thick and foggy, cloudy, and much disposed to mists; especially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: insomuch that many times, the Sun is not seen to shine out clearly for some Weeks together. And thereupon there goeth a Tale, that the great Constable of *Castile* being Ambassadour to King *James* in the first Winter of his Reign, and tarrying here about a Month, is said not to have seen the Sun all the time of his stay, which occasioned him at his going on ship board, to desire such Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to present his humble Service to the King their Master, and to the blessed Sun of Heaven, when they chanced to see him. And something also touching the temperature of the Air, may be ascribed unto the Winds, which participating of the Seas, over which they pass unto us, do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, it might indeed be said, that we were come from Gods blessing into the warm Sun; but it is not so; For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of Fish than ours. Our Oystlers were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficial unto the *Netherlands*, to whom, the *English*-men, reserving to themselves a kind of Royalty, (for the *Dutch* by Custom demand liberty to Fish, of *Scarborough-Castle* in *Yorkshire*) have yielded up the Commodity; by which those States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoverished and condemned for Laziness and Sloth. Besides the loss of Employment for many Men, who using this Trade, might be a Seminary of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and discoveries, cannot but be very prejudicial to the strength and flourishing

flourishing of the Common-wealth, and Empire of England.

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I shall extract some passages out of a M. S. discourse of the late Learned Knight Sir *John Burroughs*, principal King of Arms by the name of *Garter*, entituled, *The Sovereignty of the British Seas*. By which it doth appear, that there is fishing in those Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fish, at all times of the year: and that too in so plentiful a manner, that not long since near *Minne-gal* on the Coasts of *Devonshire*, 500 Tun of Fish were taken in one day, and 3000 pounds-worth in another, near *S. Ives* in *Cornwall*; the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20 Last of Herrings.

Secondly, That almost all Nations hereabouts, as *French*, *Spaniards*, *Netherlands*, and those of the *Hanse*, do mightily improve themselves both in Power and Wealth, by the benefit of the *English* Fishing; insomuch as 10000 Sail of Foreign Vessels (of which 1400 from the Town of *Emden* in *East Friesland* only) are thought to be maintained by this Trade alone.

Thirdly, That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yearly 8000 Vessels of all sorts for this Trade of Fishing on our Coasts, whereby they have a Seminary of 15000 Sailors and Mariners, ready for any publick Service; all which maintain treble that number of Men, Women, and Children, of several Trades upon the Land.

Fourthly, That for the holding up of this Trade, the said *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not so big as many of our Shires, do build 1000 Sail of Ships yearly; and thereby furnishing all the parts of the World (even as far as *Brasil*) with our Commodities; returning home those of other Countries in exchange thereof, which they sell to us many times at their own prices.

Fifthly, That the said *Hollanders* (as appeared upon Computation) made in one year of the *Herrings* only, caught upon these Coasts, the sum of 5 Millions of our pounds, (the Customs and tenth Fish advancing to the publick Treasury no less than 800000 *l.* Sterling:) it being thought, that the *Herrings* caught by those of the *Hanse* Towns, and other Nations, amount to as great a sum as that,

Sixthly, and finally, That by erecting only 250 *Buffes*, (Vessels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not swift of sail) for the *Herring* Fishing, (which is not a sixth part of those which are employed yearly by the *Hollanders*) either at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or private Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated, there would be found employment yearly for 1000 Ships, and at least 20000 Mariners and Fishers at Sea, and consequently for as many Tradesmen and Labourers at Land; by means whereof, besides the vindication of our credit now at such a loss, there would arise in Customs, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Imposts, no less than 300000 *l.* per Annum to the publick Treasury. The prosecution of which Project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once designed by Mr. Attorney Noy, my much honoured Friend. So do I heartily commend it to the Care of the State, and to his Successors in that Office, as the fittest Remembrancers to advance it: there being no readier way than this to make the people wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithstanding these advantages of Fish, the Diet of *England* is, for the most part Flesh; in *London* only there are no fewer than 67500 Beefs, and 675000 Sheep slain, and uttered in a year, besides Calves, Lambs, Hogs-flew, and Poulterers Ware. To prove this, suppose there be in *London* 60 Butchers free of the City, whereof every one, and one with another, killeth an Ox a day, as at least they do. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Foreigners in the Suburbs and Villages sell four for their one. Lastly, count for every Ox ten Sheep, (for this is also certainly known) to be killed and sold, and you have both the numbers above-mentioned. The Earl of *Gondomar*, once the *Spanish* Linger here, having in

some several Market days seen the several Shambles of this great City, said to them who made the discovery with him, That there was more Flesh eaten in a Month in that Town, than in all *Spain* in a year. Now had I skill, who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole Body, I might by this proportion of Flesh consumed in the Head, guess at the Quantity of that which is spent in the Body of the Realm: But that I leave to be determined by an abler hand. The usual and natural drink of the Country is *Beer*, so called from the *French* word *Boire*, (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is said) which, without controversy, is a most wholsom and nourishing Beverage; and being transported into *France*, *Belgium*, and *Germany*, by the working of the Sea, is so purg'd, that it is among them in highest estimation; celebrated by the name of *la Biere d'Angleterre*. And as for the old Drink of *England*, *Ale*, which cometh from the *Danish* word *Ola*, it is questionless in it self, (and without that commixture which some are accused to use with it) a very wholsom Drink; howsoever it pleased a Poet in the time of *Henry* the Third, thus to discant on it:

*Nescio quid monstrum Stygiæ conforme paludi,
Cerviciam plerique vocant nil spissius illa
Dum bibitur, nil clarius est dum mingitur; ergo
Constat quod multas facies in ventre relinquit.*

In *English* thus;

Of this strange Drink so like the *Stygian* Lake,
Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.
Folk drink it thick, and piss it very thin;
Therefore much *Dregs* must needs remain within.

[It is worth observing perhaps, that Dr. *Hyllin* who wrote but 40 years since saith nothing of *Cider*, which is now made in vast quantities, and every day encreasing in quantity, and improving as to the goodness of it, and the more easy ways of making and refining it.]

Now to conclude this general discourse concerning *England*, there goes a Tale, that *Henry* the seventh (whose Breeding had been low and private) being once pressed by some of his Counsel, to pursue his Title unto *France*, returned this Answer: That *France* indeed was a flourishing and gallant Kingdom; but *England* in his mind was a fine Seat for a Country Gentleman, as any could be found in Europe.

Having staid thus long in taking a Survey of the Country it self, together with the chief commodities and pleasures of it; and amongst them of the *Women* also (as the method of the old Verse led me on:) it is now time that we should look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the most part gray-ey'd, pleasant, beautiful, bountiful, courteous, and much resembling the *Italians* in Habit and Pronunciation. In matters of War, (as we are ready to prove) they are both able to endure, and resolute to undertake the hardest Enterprizes: in Peace quiet, and not quarrelsome; in Advice or counsel, sound and speedy. Finally, they are active, hearty and chearful. And yet I have met with some Gentlemen, who upon the strength of a little Travel in *France*, have grown so un-*English* (and so affected, or besotted rather, on the *French* Nation) that they affirm the *English* in respect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and Pblegmatick People; of no dispatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what-not. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger. Perhaps in vilifying their Nation, they had consulted with *Julius Scaliger*, who in the 16. Chap. of his 3^d Book *De re poetica*, giveth of the two most noble Nations, *English* and *Scotish*, this base and unmanly Character, *Gothi belluæ, Scoti non minus Angli perfidi, inflati, feri, contemptores, stolidi, amant inertes, inhospitales, immanes*. His bolt (you see) is soon shot, and so you may happily guess at the quality of the Archer.

Archer. A Man indeed of an able Learning, but of his own worth so highly conceited, that if his too much Learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be too peremptory and arrogant. To revenge a *National* disgrace on a *Personal*, is an ignoble victory. Besides *Socrates* resolution in the like kind in my opinion was very judicious, εἰ δὲ με ὀνείδιξις, δίκλω ἂν αὐτὸς ἐλάγχωνον; If an Ass kick us, we must not put him in the Court. To confute his censure in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too great a trouble; it being a task, which of it self would require a volume. The best is, many shoulders make the burthen light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrel against that proud Man, as ours: for so maliciously hath he there taxed all other people, that that Chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hypercriticks*.

How the *English* and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought most given to their Bellies, do agree and differ in this point; the same *Scaliger* hath thus shewed in one of his Epigrams.

Tres sunt Convivæ, Germanus, Flander & Anglus;
Dic quis edat melius; quis meliusve bibat.
Non comedis Germane, bibis; tu non bibis Angle,
Sed comedis; comedis Flandre, bibisq; bene.

Dutch, Flemmings, English, are your only guests;
 Say which of all doth eat, or drink it best.
 Th' *English* love most to eat, the *Dutch* to swill,
 Only the *Flemming* eats and drinks his fill.

Thus was it in his time with the *English* Nation; though since, I fear, we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more than needs of the *Flemmings* also.

The Nobility of this Country is not of so much unlimited Power, as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes*, *Earls*, and *Marquesses*, being meerly titular: whereas in other places they have some absolute, some mixt Government, so that upon any little distast, they will stand on their own guard, and slight the power of their *Sovereign*. And on the other side, the Commonalty enjoy a multitude of Priviledges above all other Nations; being most free from Taxes, and burdenson Impositions, but what they take upon themselves by their own consent. They have twice in a year (a laudable Custom no where else to be seen) Justice administered even at their own Doors, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order first instituted by King *Henry* the second. They dwell together with the Gentlemen, in Villages, and Towns, which makes them favour of civility and good manners: and live in far greater reputation, than the *Peomen* in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, or *Germany*; being able to entertain a stranger honestly, diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The *Clergie* was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King *Henry* the fifth, against the temporal Revenues of the Church; in which it was suggested, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 1000 Alms-houses, and yet the King might clearly put up 20000 *l.* per Annum into his Exchequer. How true this was, I cannot say. But after this, King *Henry* the Eighth took his Opportunities, to pare away the excrescencies of it; demolishing the Monasteries, and Religious Houses, and paring off the superfluities of Bishopricks and Cathedral Churches: in which he found not a few followers amongst the Ministers and great Officers of State, and Court, in the time of King *Edward* the Sixth, and Queen *Elizabeth*. Yet left they not the *Clergy* so poor and naked, or destitute of the Encouragements and Rewards of Learning, but that they have been still the objects of a covetous envy, that which the former *Harpies* left them, being thought too much:) though for abilities of Learning (I dare boldly say it) not to be parallel'd in the World. For besides

5439 *Parochial Benefices*, being no *Impropriations*; and besides the *Vicarages*, most of which exceed the competency beyond the Seas; there was left in *England* at the time of the *Reformation* under Queen *Elizabeth*, 26 *Bishopricks*, (taking those of *Wales* into the reckoning) 26 *Deaneries*, 60 *Archdeaconries*, and 544 *Dignities* and *Prebends*; most of which, places of fair Revenue. And as for the maintenance of Priests, Monks, and Friars, before the *Reformation* there were reckoned 90 Colledges, besides those in the Universities, 100 Hospitals, 3374 Chantries and Free Chapels, and 645 Abbies and Monasteries: more than half of which had above the yearly income of 200 *l.* in old Rents, many above 2000, and some 4000 almost. So studious were our *Ancestors* both in those times of blindness, and those of a clearer light, to encourage men to Learning, and then reward it.

The Souldiery of *England* is either for the Land or for the Sea. Our Victories by Land are most apparent over the *Irish*, *Scots*, *Cypriots*, *Turks*, and especially, *French*, whose Kingdom hath been fore shaken by the *English* many times, especially twice by King *Edward* the Third, and *Henry* the Fifth: this later making so absolute a Conquest, that *Charles* the Seventh, like a poor *Roy d' Ividet*, confined himself to *Bourges*, where (having cashier'd his Retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper, with a Napkin only laid before him, a rump of Mutton, and two Chickens. And so redoubted even after our expulsion from *France*, (our *Civil Dissensions* rather causing that expulsion than the *Frenchmans* Valour) was the *English* Name in that Country: that in the Wars between King *Charles* the Eighth, and the Duke of *Bretagne*, the Duke, to strike a terrour into his enemies appalled 1500 of his own Subjects in the Arms and Cross of *England*. But as the Ass, when he had on the Lions Skin, was for all that but an Ass and no Lion: so these *Britons*, by the weak resistance they made against their Enemies, shew'd that they were indeed *Britons*, and no *Englishmen*. *Spain* also tasted the valour of our Land-Soldiers, when *John* of Gaunt pursuing his Title to *Spain*, was sent home with 8 Waggon laden with Gold, and an Annual Pension of 10000 Marks; as also when the *Black-Prince* re-established King *Peter* in his Throne. And then also did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puissance of the *English*, when *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* surprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*. For there were then in *Fontarabia*, a Town of *Guipuscoa*, 6000 *English* Foot, who lay there to joyn with this *Ferdinand* in an Expedition against *France*. Concerning which, *Guicciardine* giveth this Item, That the Kingdom of *Navarre* was yielded rather for the fear and reputation of the *English* Forces that were at hand, than by any puissance of the King of *Arragon*. Since those times the *Spaniards* much esteemed us, as appeareth by this Speech of theirs to our Soldiers at the Siege of *Amiens*; You are tall Soldiers, and therefore when you come down to the Trenches, we double our Guards, and look for Blows; but as for those base and cowardly *French*, when they come, we make account we have nothing to do, but play, or sleep on our Rampart. The like the *Netherlands* can testify; only this is the grief of it; The *English* are like *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate to keep them. Not to say any thing of the late, but great experience, which the *English* Souldiery hath gotten by the *Civil Broils* among themselves; at which my heart so aketh, and my hand so trembleth, that I shall only add in the words of *Lucan*,

Hæu! quantum potuit cæli pelagique parari,
Hæc quem Civiles fuderunt sanguine dextræ!

That is to say,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd
 By their dear blood, which *Civil Wars* have drain'd!

As for their Power and Valour at Sea, it may evidently be perceived in the Battel of *Schluse*, wherein King *Edward* the 3^d, with 200 Ships, overcame the *French* Fleet consisting of 500 Sail; of which he sunk 200 and slew 30000 Soldiers. Secondly, at the Battel in 88, wherein a few of the *Queens* Ships vanquished the *invincible Armada* of the *King of Spain* consisting of 134 great *Galleons*, and Ships of extraordinary bigness. Sir *Francis Drake* with 4 Ships took from the *Spaniard* one Million and 189200 Ducats in one Voyage, An. 1587. And again with 25 Ships he awed the Ocean, sacked *S. Jago*, *S. Dominico*, and *Carthagera*; carrying away with him, besides Treasure, 240 Picces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World, by this *Drake* and *Candish*, and the Voyage to *Cales*: as also how one of the *Queens* Ships named the *Revenge*, in which Sir *Richard Greenville* was Captain, with 180 Soldiers (whereof 90 were sick on the balast) maintained a Sea fight for 24 hours against above 50 of the *Spanish* *Galleons*. And though at last after her Powder was spent to the last barrel, she yielded upon honourable terms; yet she was never brought into *Spain*: having killed in that fight more than 10000 of their Soldiers, and sunk four of their greatest Vessels. I omit also the discovery of the Northern Passages, by *Hugh Willoughby*, *Davis*, and *Forbisher*; concluding with that of *Keckerman*, *Hoc certum est, omnibus bodie gentibus navigandi industriâ & peritiâ superiores esse Anglos: & post Anglos, Hollandos*: Though now I know not by what neglect, and discontinuance of those honourable Employments, the *Hollanders* begin to bereave us of our ancient Glories, and would fain account themselves Lords of the Seas, and probably had been so indeed, had not his Majesty by the timely re-inforcing of his Naval Power, An. 1636. recovered again the Dominion of it. It might perhaps not seem unreasonable to give here a short account of the three *Dutch* Wars, which have fallen since the finishing of this Work by the Learned *Dr. Hylin*: The First began by the *Hollanders* in the year 1652. And after three Fights all terminating in their loss, ended in 1654. April 26th. The Second began by the *English* in 1664. and ended the 29th of June 1667. The Third began by the *English* in 1672. and ended the 9th of February 1673, 74. In which tho' we obtained many Signal Victories, and made our Maritim Forces terrible to the World, yet in truth it is heartily to be wished, there may never be any future occasions for such Trophies, it being the Interest of these two Nations, to preserve each other.

The *English* Language is a De-compound of *Dutch*, *French* and *Latine*; which I conceive rather to add to it's perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; since out of every Language we have culled the most significant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected. For it is neither so boysterous as the *Dutch*, nor so effeminate as the *French*; yet as significant as the *Latine*, and in the happy conjunction of two words into one little inferiour to the *Greek*.

The *Christian Faith* was first here planted as some say, by *S. Peter* and *Paul*: more probably (as others say) by *Joseph* of *Arimathea*, whose body they find to have been interred in the Isle of *Avalonia*, where the Abby of *Glastonbury* after flood. But that of his plantation being almost rooted out by long Persecutions, and no supply of Preachers sent from other places: It is now well known that all the Story of *Lucius* is a Fable. *Lucius* a King of *Britain* (and the first *Christian* King of *Europe*) An. 180. or thereabouts, sent his Ambassadors to *Eleutherius* the then Pope of *Rome*, to be furnished with a new supply of *Pastors*, if not to plant, yet at the least to water, and confirm the *Gospel* planted here before; but almost rooted out again by prevailing *Gentilism*. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himself, but by the piety of his Example, and the diligence of the first Preachers sent from *Rome* (being both of them natural *Britains*) it spread by lit-

tle and little over all his Dominions; and in some tract of time over all the Island. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of *Christ*, was forthwith furnished with *Bishops* and *Metropolitans*, according to the number of the Provinces and principal Cities (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as *Christianity* it self. For not to trust herein to the authority of the *British* History, we find three *Bishops* of this Isle subscribing to the Council of *Arles*, An. 314. viz, *Eborius* Bishop of *York*, *Restitutus* Bishop of *London*, and *Adelfus* Bishop of *Colchester*, there called *Colonia Londinensium*; and some of them also present in the Council of *Sardica*, An. 358. concurring with the rest in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Heresies: and the same or others the next year in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the *Britains* were expelled their native Country, or shut up in the mountainous parts of the *Ordovices*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*; they carried *Christianity* and *Bishops* along with them: *Augustine* the Monk finding no fewer than seven Bishops in the *British* Church, when he was sent by *Gregory* the Great to convert the *English*. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as some men suppose) to say that *Augustine* the Monk first Preached the Gospel in *England*, because it must be understood, not with Relation to the *Britains*, but the *English Saxons*; from whom these parts of the Isle had the name of *England*; and from whom both the *Britains*, and the Faith it self were driven into the Mountains of *Wales* and *Cornwal*, and Heathenism introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which it pleased God, that *Gregory* the Great, (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of *Rome*) seeing some handsome youths to be sold in open Market, demanded what and whence they were: to whom it was answered they were *Angli*: and well may they be so called (saith he) for they seem as *Angels*. Asking again of what Province they were amongst the *Angli*; and answer being made of the Province of *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*) therefore (saith he) *De ira Dei sunt liberandi*. And lastly understanding that the King of their Nation was named *Alle*; how fitly (saith he) may he sing *Allelujabs* to the most High God; After which time he seriously endeavoured the Conversion of the *English* Nation; who, being Pope, he happily effected, by the travel and diligence of *Augustine* the Monk, the first Archbishop of *Canterbury*. And so well did the work prosper after this beginning, that not only all the *Saxons* did receive the Gospel, but communicated the Light of it to other Nations: the *Hassians*, *Franconians* and *Turingians*, being converted by *Winfred*; the *Frisons* or *Hollanders* by *Wittikind* the first Bishop of *Utrecht*; the *Saxons* of *Westphalen*, by *Weldrode*, the first Bishop of *Breme*; all of them being *English Saxons*, as we find in *Beda* and some others.

Now as these parts of *Britain* were the first which generally entertained the Gospel, so were they the first also in these latter times, which universally submitted to the Reformation of such corruptions, as had been brought upon them by the power and tyranny of the Church of *Rome*: Endeavoured first in *France*, by the *Albigenses*, and *Waldenses*, as was said before: Who being suppressed and ruined by the Sword of the King of *France*, sheltered themselves in the mountainous parts of *Gascoigne* and *Guienne*, then in possession of the *English*; who by that means became acquainted with their *Tenets*: maintained here publicly by *Wiclef*, and spreading under-hand amongst the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther*, and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in most other Countries received tumultuously, by the power of the people, was here admitted upon mature deliberation, by the authority and consent of the Prince and Prelates; the *Archbishops* in this great Work, without respect unto the Dictates of *Luther* or *Calvin*, looking only on Gods Words and the Primitive Patterns, abolishing such things as were repugnant unto either, but still retaining such Ceremonies in Gods publick Worship, as were agreeable to both, and had been countenanced by the practice

ance of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did observe a greater measure of Christian prudence and moderation, than their Neighbour Churches; which in a meer detestation of the See of Rome, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in use amongst them, because defiled with Popish Errors and abuses; and thereby utterly averting those of the Papal party from joining with them in the Work, or coming over to them when the Work was done: Whereas had they continued an allowable correspondence in these extrinsecals of Religion, with the Church of Rome, their party in the World had been far greater, and not so much stomached as it is. And so it was conceived by the Marquess de Rhosne, after Duke of Sully, and Lord High-Treasurer of France, and one of the chief Men of that Party there: when being sent Ambassadour to King James, from King Henry the fourth, he had observed the Majesty and Decency of Gods publick Service, in some Cathedrals of this Kingdom; Religion would be soon defeated and trod under foot if not preserved and fenced about with the Hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church since the last Conversion, as by the piety and example of Lucius, there were founded three Archbishopsricks, and 25 Bishopricks, according to the number of the Archi-Flamines, and Flamines (whose great Revenues were converted to more sacred uses in the times of Idolatry:) So by the like pious care of Pope Gregory the Great, by whose means this last Conversion happened, Archbishopsricks, and Bishopricks were designed to convenient places; the number 26 in all, to each Province twelve, besides the two Archbishops and Metropolitans: wherein he had the happiness to have his desires fulfilled, though the number was not made compleat till these later days, nor with such equal distribution, as he did intend. For in the Province of York laid waste and desolate by the Danes, and not so soon converted as the other was; the number of the Suffragan Bishops came not up to his purpose, but did as much exceed in the Province of Canterbury: especially when K. Henry the 8th had incorporated Wales with England, and founded five Episcopal Sees out of the Ruines and Revenues of some principal Monasteries; of which none but the Bishoprick of Glesster (and that of the Isle of Man, which maketh up the 27th) were laid unto the Province of York. And so it stood, notwithstanding the alterations of Religion, without any dispute, till Calvin having hammered out his new Presbytery, and recommended it to the use of all Christian Churches (the History whereof we had succinctly in the Alpine Provinces) found many apt Scholars in most places to decry this Order, though consonant to the Word of God and most pure Antiquity.

But the truth is, it was not so much the Authority of Calvin, or the malignant zeal of Beza, or the impetuous clamors of their Disciples, which caused the Episcopal Order to grow out of credit; as the Avarice of some great persons in Court and State, who greedily gaped after the poor remnant of their Possessions. It had been else a miracle that Calvins Platform made only for the use of a private City, and not proportioned, no nor intended at the first, to the state of other Churches, especially where the Bishops had been instrumental in the Reformation: should be so headily received in some Kingdoms, and so importunately and clamorously desired in others.

The most valorous Soldiers of this Country, when possessed by the Britains; were 1. Cassibelane, who twice repulsed the Roman Legions, though conducted by Caesar; and had not a Party here at home been formed against him, he had for ever done the like. 2. Prastufagus, King of the Iceni. 3. Constantine the Great. 4. Arthur, one of the Worlds Nine Worthies. In the times of the Saxons. 5. Guy Earl of Warwick. 6. King Edmund Ironside; and 7. Canutus the Dane. Under the Normans, of most note have been 1. William surnamed the Conqueror. 2. Richard, and 3. Edward, both the first of those names, so renowned in the Wars of the Holy-Land, 4. Edward the 3d, and 5. Edward the Black Prince, his Son, duo fulmina belli, as

famous in the Wars of France: 6. Henry the 5th and 7. John Duke of Bedford his Brother, of equal gallantry with the other. 8. Montacute Earl of Salisbury. 9. Sir John Falstaff, and 10. Sir John Hawkwood, of great esteem for valour in France and Italy: not to descend to later times. And for Sea Captains, those of most note, have been Hawkins, Willoughby, Burroughs, Jenkinson, Drake, Forbisher, Cavendish and Greenville, of some of which we have spoke already, and of the rest we may have an opportunity to speak more hereafter.

Scholars of most renown amongst us, 1. Alcuinus, one of the Founders of the University of Paris. 2. Bede, who for his Piety and Learning obtained the Attribute or Adjunct of Venerabilis. Concerning which, the Legends tell us, that being blind, his Boy had knavishly conducted him to preach to an heap of stones; and that when he had ended his Sermon with the Gloria Patri, the very stones concluded, saying, Amen, Amen, Venerabilis Bede. But other of the Monkish Writers do assign this reason, and both true alike; that at his death some unlearned Priests intending to honour him with an Epitaph, had thus far blundered on a verse, viz. Hic juxta in fossa Bedæ ossa: but because the Verse was yet imperfect, he went to bed to consider of it, leaving a space betwixt the two last words thereof; which in the morning he found filled up in a strange Character, with the word Venerabilis; and so he made his Verse, and Bede (pardon this diversion) obtained that Attribute. 3. Anselm, and 4. Bradwardin, Archbishops of Canterbury, Men famous for the times they lived in. 5. Alexander of Hales, Tutor to Thomas Aquinas, and Bonaventure. 6. Thomas of Walden, the professed Enemy of Wickliffe, against whom he writ, 7. John Wickliffe Parson of Lutterworth in the County of Leicester, who so valiantly opposed the Power and Errors of the Church of Rome, though he vented many of his own. Then since the time of the Reformation, 1. John Jewel Bishop of Salisbury, to whose Learned and Industrious Labours, in defence of the Religion here by Law established, we are still beholden. 2. Dr. John Raynolds, and 3. Mr. Richard Hooker, both of Corpus Christi Colledge in Oxen; the first, a man of infinite reading, the second of as strong a judgment. 4. Dr. Whitaker of Cambridge, the Antagonist of the famous Bellarmine. 5. Dr. Thomas Bilson, and 6. Dr. Lancelot Andrews, both Bishops of Winchester, the Ornaments of their several times. 7. Bishop Montague of Norwich, a great Philologer and Divine. 8. Dr. John Whitgift, and 9. Dr. William Laud, Archbishop of Canterbury. Of which last, and his discourse against Fisher the Jesuite, Sir Edward Dearing his professed Enemy, hath given this Character, that in that Book of his he had muzzled the Jesuits, and should strike the Papists under the fifth rib, when he was dead and gone: and thus being dead, wheresoever his grave should be, P A U L S (whose reparation he endeavoured, and had almost finished) would be his perpetual Monument, and his Book his lasting Epitaph. And as for those who have stood up in maintenance of the Church of Rome, those of most note were Dr. Harding, the Antagonist of Bishop Jewel. 2. Nic. Sanders, and 3. Dr. Thomas Stapleton, to whose Writings the great Cardinal Bellarmine doth stand much indebted. 4. Campian, and 5. Parsons, both Jesuits; and 6. William Raynolds, a Seminary Priest; and the Brother of Dr. John Raynolds spoken of before. Of which two Brothers (by the way) it is very observable, That William was at first a Protestant of the Church of England, and John trained up in Popery beyond the Seas; William out of an honest zeal to reduce his Brother to his Church, made a journey to him; where in a Conference betwixt them it so fell out, that John being overcome by his Brothers Arguments, returned into England, where he became one of the more strict or rigid sort of the English Protestants, and William being convinced by the Reasons of his Brother John, stayed beyond the Seas, where he proved a very violent and virulent Papist. Of which strange accident, Dr. Alabaster, who had made trial of both Religions, and amongst many notable Whimsies;

Whimseys; had some fine Abilities, made this following Epigram; which for the Excellency thereof and the Rareness of the Argument, I shall here subjoin,

*Bella inter geminos plusquam Civilia Fratres,
Traxerat ambiguus Religionis apex.
Ille Reformatæ Fidei pro partibus instat;
Iste Reformandum denegat esse fidem.
Propositis causæ rationibus, alter utrinque;
Concurrere pares, & cecidere pares.
Quod fuit in votis, Fratrem capit alter uterque;
Quod fuit in fatiis, perdit uterque fidem.
Captivi gemini sine captivante fuerunt,
Et victor victi transfuga castra petit.
Quod genus hoc pugna est, ubi victus gaudet uterque;
Et tamen alter-uter se superasse dolet?*

Which excellent Epigram, though not without great disadvantage to the *Latine* Original, I have thus translated:

In points of Faith some undetermin'd Jars,
Betwixt two Brothers kindled Civil Wars.
One for the Churches Reformation stood;
The other thought no Reformation good.
The points propos'd, they traversed the Field
With equal Skill, and both together yield.
As they desir'd, his Brother each subdued;
Yet such their Fate, that each his Faith did lose,
Both Captives, none the Prisoners thence do guide;
The Victor flying to the Vanquish'd side.
Both joyn'd in being Conquer'd, (strange to say)
And yet both mourn'd because both won the day.

And then for men of other Studies, 1. *Lindwood* the Canonist, 2. *Cofins*, and 3. *Cowel*, eminent in the Studies of the Civil Laws, 4. *Braeton*, and 5. *Briton* of old times; 6. *Dier*, and 7. *Coke* of late days, as eminent for their knowledge in the Laws of England. 8. *Johannes de Sacro Bosco*, the Author of the Book of the Sphere; and 9. *Roger Bacon*, a noted Mathematician in the darker times. 10. Sir *Francis Bacon* the Learned Viscount of *S. Albans*, of whom more hereafter. 11. Sir *Thomas More*, Lord Chancellor, one of the Restorers of Learning to the Isle of Great Britain. 12. Sir *Henry Savile* of *Eaton*, the reviver of *Chrysostram*. 13. Sir *Henry Spelman*, a right Learned Antiquary, and a Religious Assertor of the Churches Rights. 14. *Camden*, *Clarenceaux*, the *Pausanias* of the British Islands. 15. *Matthew Paris*, 16. *Roger Hoveden*, 17. *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, 18. *William* of *Malmesbury*, 19. *Matthew* of *Westminster*, and 20. *Thomas* of *Walsingham*; all known Historians. And finally for Poetry, 1. *Gower*, 2. *Lydgate*, a Monk of *Bury*; 3. The Famous *Geoffrey Chaucer*, Brother-in-Law to *John* of *Gaunt* the great Duke of *Lancaster*; of which last Sir *Philip Sidney* used to say, that he marvelled how in those misty times he could see so clearly, and others in so clear times go so blindly after him. 4. Sir *Philip Sidney* himself, of whom and his *Arcadia*, more when we come to Greece. 5. The renowned *Spencer*, of whom and his *Fairy Queen*, in another place. 6. *Sam*, *Daniel*, the *Lucan*, 7. with *Michael Drayton*, the *Ovid* of the English Nation. 8. *Beaumont*, and 9. *Fletcher*, not inferior unto *Terence* and *Plautus*, with 10. my friend *Ben. Johnson*, equal to any of the Ancients for the exactness of his Pen, and the decorum which he kept in the Dramatick Poems, never before observed on the English Theatre. Others there are as eminent both for Arts and Arms, as those here specified, of whom, as being still alive, I forbear to speak; according to that caution of the Historian, saying, *Vivorum ut magna admiratio, ita Censura est difficilis*.

But from the Men to return again unto the Country, we find it to be subject (according to the several respects of Church and State) to a treble division; viz. 1. into 6. Circuits destined to the Itinerary Judges: Secondly,

into 22 *Episcopal Diocesses*. Thirdly, into 40 Shires. The Realm was first divided into Circuits by King *Henry* the Second, who appointed twice in the year, two of the most Grave and Learned Judges of the Land, should in each Circuit administer Justice in the chief or head Towns of every County. Of these Judges, one sitteth on matters Criminal, concerning the Life and Death of Malefactors: the other in Actions Personal, concerning Title of Land, Debts, or the like, between Party and Party. The first Circuit (for we will begin at the West) comprehendeth the Counties of *Wilt*s, *Somer*set, *Devon*, *Cornwal*, *Dor*set, and *Southampton*. The second containeth the Counties of *Oxford*, *Berks*, *Gloucester*, *Monmouth*, *Hereford*, *Worcester*, *Salop*, and *Stafford*. The third hath in it the Counties of *Surrey*, *Sussex*, *Kent*, *Essex*, and *Hartford*. The fourth consisteth of the Shires of *Ruckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntingdon*, *Cambridge*, *Norfolk*, and *Suffolk*. The fifth of the Shires of *Northampton*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Nottingham*, *Darby*, *Leicester*, and *Warwick*. And the sixth and last, of the Shires of *York*, *Durham*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, *Westmorland*, and *Lancaster*. So that in these six Circuits are numbred 38 Shires. The two remaining are *Middlesex*, and *Cheshire*: whereof the first is exempted, because of its vicinity to *London*; and the second as being a County Palatine, and having peculiar Judges and Counsellours to it self.

The second Division, but more ancient far in point of time, is that of *Diocesses*, 22 in all, proportioned according to the number of *Episcopal Sees*, each Diocess having in it one or more *Arch-Deaconries*, for dispatch of Ecclesiastical business; and every *Arch-Deaconry* subdivided into *Rural Deanries*, fewer or more, according to the bigness and extent thereof. Of these there are but four in the Province of *York*, that is to say, the Diocesses of *York*, *Chester*, *Durham*, and *Carlisle*: the other 18 (together with the 4 of *Wales*) being reckoned into that of *Canterbury*. In respect of which great Authority and Jurisdiction, the Archbishops of *Canterbury* had anciently the Titles of *Primates* and *Metropolitans* of all England; and for some Ages before the Reformation, used to take place in all General Councils, at the Popes right Foot. Which Custom took beginning at the Council of *Lateran*, when *Urban* the second called *Anselm*, the Arch-bishop of *Canterbury* from amongst the other Prelates then assembled, and placed him at his right Foot, saying, *Includamus hunc in Orbe nostro tanquam alterius Orbis Papam*. This happened *An*. 1099. They were anciently also *Legati nati*; which honourable Title was first given to Archbishop *Theobald*, by *Innocent* the Second, and continued unto his Successors. And both to honour their calling in the course of their Government, and to have the benefit of their Counsel, being men of Learning; both the Archbishops and the Bishops, were anciently privileged to have their place and suffrage in the Court of Parliament (ever since any Parliaments were first held in England) as Peers of the Realm; and that too in a double respect: first in relation had to their sacred Office, and secondly to those temporal Estates and Baronies, which they held of the King. Yet did they not enjoy in the times of their greatest Power and Flourishing, all the Prerogatives and Privileges of the temporal Barons: as neither being tried by their Peers in Criminal Causes, but left to an Ordinary Jury; not suffered in Examination to make a Protestation upon their honour, to the truth of the Fact, but put unto their Oaths like others of the lower Clergy. As for their Ecclesiastical Courts, it was anciently ordered also, that besides such as appertained to the Archbishops themselves; besides those holden by the Chancellors and Arch-Deacons of every Bishop, in their several Diocesses; and some in many private Parishes which they call *Peculiar*s; and finally, besides the Courts of *Visitation*, held every two years by the Arch-Deacons or their Official, and every third year by the Bishop himself in Person, or his lawful Deputy: there should be also Synods or Convocations, which are the Parliaments of the Clergy, assembled pri-

marily for the Reforming of the Church in Doctrine and Discipline: And secondarily, for granting Tenths and Subsidies to the King: Which Synods, whether they be National or Provincial only, do naturally consist of all the Right Reverend Fathers, the Arch-bishops, Bishops, the Deans, Arch-Deacons, and one Prebend out of each Cathedral, and a certain number of the Clergy, (two for every Diocese) elected by the rest to serve for them in that great Assembly; the Clergy not being bound anciently by any Act, to which they had not given consent by those their *Proxies*: Of which so called and met together, the Bishops sitting by themselves make the Upper-House; the Deans, Arch-deacons, and rest, do constitute the Lower-House of Convocation.

The third and last Division, though the second in course of Time, is that of Shires made by King *Alfride*, both for the easier Administration of Justice; and to prevent such Outrages and Robberies, as (after the Example of the *Danes*) the natural Inhabitants of the Realm began in all places to commit. For over every one of these Shires or Counties, he appointed an *High Sheriff* and divers Officers, to see into the Behaviour of private Men, and to punish such as were *delinquent*: And in times of War either already begun, or intended, he instituted a *Prefect* or *Lieutenant*; to whom he gave authority to see their Musters, their provision of Arms, and if occasion served, to punish such as rebelled or mutined. This wise King ordained also, that his Subjects should be divided into *Tens* or *Tithings*, every of which severally should give Bond for the good appearing of each other; and he who was of that dissolute Behaviour, that he could not be admitted to these *Tithings*, was forthwith conveyed to the House of Correction. By this course every Man was not only careful of his own Actions, but had an Eye to all the Nine for whom he stood bound; as the Nine had over him: insomuch that a poor Girl might travel safely with a Bag of Gold in her Hand, and none durst meddle with her. The ancientest of these Ten Men were called *την ἐξοχήν*, the *Tithing-Men*, Ten of the highest and neighbouring *Tithings*, made the lesser Division, which we call Hundreds; which Name cannot be derived from the like number of Villages, for none of our *Hundreds* are so large; and one of them there is in *Berkshire* which containeth five *Hamlets* only. We have then a division of the Realm into Forty Shires; of the Shires into divers Hundreds, and of the Hundreds into Ten Tithings. And this division made by *Alfride* remains still in force; as also doth the High-Sheriff, and the rest of the subordinate Officers of the High-Sheriff, consisting especially at this time in executing Arrests, assisting the *Itinerary Judges*, gathering the King's Fines and Amerciaments, and raising the *Posse Comitatus*, if occasion be. But for the Civil part of Government in the several Counties, it is most in the hands of such as we call *Justices of the Peace*, authorized by Commission under the Great Seal of *England*; appointed first by that prudent Prince King *Edward* the First, by the Name of *Custodes Pacis*, Guardians of the Peace, and first called *Justices of the Peace* in the 36. of King *Edward* III. Cap. 11. A form of Government so much conducing to the propriety of the Country, and the security of the People, that King *James* the First, Monarch of *Great Britain*, established it by Law in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. Then for the Courts which are still kept in every Shire, they are either the *County Court*, holden every Month, wherein the Sheriff or his sufficient Deputy commonly presideth; or the *Assizes* and Court of Goal delivery, held twice a Year by the *Judges Itinerant*, assisted by the *Justices of the Peace* and other in Commission with them. There are also two Offices in every Hundred chosen out of the Yeomanry, whom we call the *Constable of the Hundred*; who receiving the Precepts or Warrants of the Sheriff, or Justices, dispatcheth them to the Tithing-Man or Petit Constable of each Town and Village, in their several Divisions. And in each Hundred, a Court kept once in three Weeks, by

the Steward of the Hundred, or his Deputy, capable of Pleas or Actions under the value of Forty Shillings, though in some few of these Courts also (as in that of *Slaughter-Hundred* in *Gloucestershire*) the value of the Action, by some special Charter, be left unlimited. The like Court also holden in some ancient Burroughs. And besides these, in every Village, are two *Leet Courts*, and these two holden twice a Year, if occasion be, by the Steward of the Mannor: in the one of which, called the *Court Leet*, there is Enquiry made into Treasons, Felonies, Murders, and other Cases, falling between the King and the Subject; and in the other, which we call by the Name of *Court Baron*, such only as concern the Lord and Tenants, and these last for the most part summoned at the Will of the Lord: So that *Common-law* (we say) good reason for this Affirmation, that *of all the Significations in the World that ever he knew, the Realm of England was the Country in which the Common wealth was best governed*.

To return again unto the Shires, some of them take their Names from the old Inhabitants, as *Cumbria* from the *Cymbri* or ancient *Britains*, *Essex* and *Sussex* from the East and South *Saxons*; some from the Situation of them, as *Northumberland*, *Norfolk*, *Southfolk*, *Devonshire*; this last so called from *Devonam*, a *Welsh* or *British* word, signifying Low Vallies, of which it very much consisteth: Some from the Form or Figure of them, as *Cornwall* from the resemblance which it hath to an Horn; and *Angle* (in *Latin*, *Castrum*) because it lieth in a Canton or Corner of the Island: Some from some Accidents therein, as *Berkshire*, or *Berckshire*, from the abundance of *Bee*, which the *Saxons* call by the Name of *Bee*: the most part from the principal Town of all the County, as *Gloucester*, *Oxford*, and the like. Of these Shires the biggest, beyond all compare, is the County of *York*, out of which 70000 Men may be raised for present Service, if need so require. And in them all are comprehended 879 Parishes, besides those of *Wales*, not reckoning in such Chapels as we call *Chappels of Ease*, in greatness not inferior to many Parishes; 22 Cities, 585 Market Towns which are no Cities; and in the Towns and Villages to the number of 144 Castles, or ruins of Castles; few of them places of Importance, and such as are belonging generally to the Kings, who suffer not any of their Subjects to nest themselves in strong Holds and Castles.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *London*, seated on the *Thames*, by which divided into two parts, conjoined together by a stately and magnificent Bridge, spoken of before. The River capable in this place of the greatest Ships, by means whereof it hath been reckoned a long time for one of the most famous Mart-Towns in *Christendom*; and not long since had so much got preceedency of all the rest, that the greatest part of the Wealth of *Europe* was driven up that River. A City of great Note in the time of the *Roman* Conquest; to whom it was first known by the Name of *Londinium*: a Town at that time of great Trade and Riches; and by them honour'd with the Title of *Augusta*. Increased of late very much in Buildings: contiguous to some Towns and Villages, from which in former times disjoined by some distant intervals: So that the circuit may contain 8 Miles at least; in which space are 132 Parish Churches; the Palace of the King, the Houses of the Nobility, Colleges for the Study of the Laws, I mean not the *Civil Law*, which is *Jus Gentium*, but (as we call it) the *Common Law*, appropriate only to this Kingdom. It is wondrous populous, containing well nigh 600000 People; which number is much augmented in the Term time. Some compare *London* with *Paris* thus; *London* is the richer, the more populous, and more ancient; *Paris* the greater, more uniform, and better fortified. But for my part, as I do not think that *London* is the more populous, so neither can I grant that *Paris* is the greater City, except we measure them by the Walls; for taking in the Suburbs of both, and all that passeth in account by the Name of *London*,

London, I cannot but conceive, that if London were cast into the same orbicular Figure, the circumference of it would be larger than that of Paris. For uniformity of Building, Paris indeed doth go beyond it; but may in that be equalled also in some tract of time, if the Design begun in King James his Reign, tending to the advancement of such Uniformity, be not interrupted. (Whatever that was, the Fire in 1666 has effected in a short time, what could not otherwise have been brought about in many Ages; so that London is now one of the most beautiful and uniform Cities in the World, and perhaps near one third part greater than it was in the Year 1648.) For other things, certain it is that London is the ancients City, as being an Archbishop's See in the time of the Britains, when the Name of Paris was scarce heard of; a Bishop's See at the first conversion of the Saxons: increased so much in Wealth and Honour from one Age to another, that it is grown at last too big for the Kingdom; which, whether it may be profitable for the State or not, may be made a Question. Great Towns in the body of a State, are like the Spleen or Milt in the Body natural, the monstrous growth of which impoverisheth all the rest of the Members, by drawing to it all the animal and vital Spirits, which should give nourishment unto them: And in the end cracked or furcharged by its own fulness, not only sends unwholsome Fumes and Vapours unto the Head, and heavy Pangs unto the Heart, but draws a Consumption on it self. And certainly the overgrowth of great Cities is of dangerous consequence, not only in regard of Famine, such multitudes of Mouths not being easily to be fed, but in respect of the irreparable danger of Insurrections, if once those Multitudes, sensible of their own Strength, oppressed with Want, or otherwise distempered with Faction or Discontent, should gather to an Head, and break out into Action. Yet thus much may be said to the Honour of London, though grown by much too big now for the Kingdom, that it is generally so well governed, and in so good peace, that those Murders, Robberies, and Outrages so frequent in great and populous Cities beyond the Seas, are here seldom heard of. 2. York, in the West Riding of that Country, the second City of England, as the old Verse hath it.

Londinum caput est & Regni urbs prima Britanni,
Eboracum à prima jure secunda venit.

That is to say,

In England, London is the chiefeft Town;
The second place York claimeth as its own.

And so it may, being indeed the second City of the Kingdom, both for Fame and Greatness. A pleasant, large, and stately City, well fortified and beautifully adorn'd, as well with private as publick Edifices; and rich and populous withal. Seated upon the River Ouse or Eare, which divides it in twain; both parts being joined together with a fair Stone Bridge, consisting of high and mighty Arches. A City of great estimation in the time of the Romans, the Metropolis of the whole Province or Diocess of Britain; remarkable for the Death and Burial of the Emperor Severus, and the Birth of Constantine the Great; by consequence the Seat of the Primate of the British Church, as long as Christianity did remain amongst them. Nor stooped it lower when the Saxons had receiv'd the Faith: And notwithstanding those Mutations which beset this Kingdom, under the Saxons, Danes, and Normans, it still preserved its ancient lustre, and increased it too. Adorned with a stately and magnificent Cathedral, inferior to few in Europe; and with a Palace of the Kings, (called the Mannor-House) the Dwelling, in these later Days, of the Lord President of the Court or Council here established by King Henry the Eighth, for the benefit of the Northern Subjects, after the manner of a French Parliament or Presidial Sieges.

This Court is now taken away, having been suppress'd first in the great Rebellion. 3. Bristol, the third in rank of the Cities of England, situate on the meeting of the Frome and Avon, not far from the influx of the Severn into the Ocean: in that regard commodiously seated for Trade and Traffick; the Ships with full Sail coming into the City, and the Citizens with as full Purfes trading into most parts of the World, with good Faith and Fortune. A Town exceeding populous, and exceeding cleanly, there being Sewers made under Ground, for the conveyance of all filth and nastiness, into the Rivers. Churches it hath to the number of eighteen or twenty, reckoning in the Cathedral, and that of Radcliff. The Cathedral first built by Robert Fitz-Harding, Son to a King of Denmark, once a Burgher here, and by him stored with Canons Regular, An. 1248. but made a Bishop's See by King Henry the Eighth, An. 1542. The principal Building next the Church, is an ancient Castle, a piece of such strength, that Maud the Empress having took King Stephen Prisoner, thought it the safest place to secure him in. 4. Norwich, the fourth City of the first Rank, of which more hereafter. 5. Oxford, the first of the second Rank of English Cities, seated upon the Ouse, or Isis; but whether so called as Vadum Isidos, Ousiford, or the Ford of Ouse; or Vada-borum (as the Greeks had their Bosphore in former times) I determine not. An ancient Town, and anciently made a Seat of Learning, co-eval unto that of Paris, if not before it; the University hereof being restored, rather than first founded by King Alured, An. 800. after it had been over-born a while by the Danish Luries; but hereof as an University more anon. This only now, that for the statelyness of the Schools, and publick Library, the bravery and beauty of particular Colleges, all built of fair and polished Stone, the liberal Endowment of those Houses, and notable encouragements of Industry and Learning in the Salary of the Professors in most Arts and Sciences, it is not to be parallel'd in the Christian World. The City of it self well built, and as pleasantly seated, formed in the Figure of a Cross, two long Streets thwarting one another, each of them near a Mile in length; containing in that compass, 13 Parish-Churches, and a See Episcopal founded here by K. Henry the Eighth, An. 1541. The honourable Title of twenty of the noble Family of the Veres, now Earl of Oxon. 6. Salisbury, first seated on the Hill, where now stands Old Salisbury, the Sorbiodunum of the Ancients. But the Cathedral being removed down into the Vale, the Town quickly followed, and grew up very suddenly into great Renown; pleasantly seated on the Avon, (a Name common to many English Rivers) which watereth every Street thereof; and for the populousness of the place, plenty of Provisions, numbers of Churches, a spacious Market-place, and a fair Town-Hall, esteemed the second City of all the West. 7. Gloucester, by Antonine called Glevum, by the Britains Cair Glowv, whence the present Name; the Saxons adding Cester, as in other places. A fine neat City, pleasantly seated on the Severn, with a large Key or Wharf on the Banks thereof, very commodious to the Merchandize and Trade of the place; well built, consisting of fair large Streets, beautified with a fair Cathedral; for the magnificence of the Quire, elegancy of the Cloisters, and graciousness of the Bell-Tower there scarce to be followed in the Kingdom; and situate in such a Vale, that there is nothing wanting to the use of Man except only Wine, which Life or Luxury may require. 8. Chester upon the River Dee, built in the manner of a Quadrate, inclosed with a Wall, which takes up more than two Miles in compass; containing in that compass 12 Parish-Churches, and an old Cathedral dedicated anciently to S. Werburg, Daughter of Wolfre, King of the Mercians, and the Vilitrels of all the Monastries of England. But made a Bishop's See by King Henry VIII. The Buildings generally fair, the Streets wide and open, with Galleries before every Door under which a Man may walk dry from one end to

to the other. The rest of chief Note shall be specified on another occasion, with this advertisement, that the ordinary Cities of *England* are not to be compared with those of *France* and *Italy*: First because the Nobles and Gentry of those Countries live for the most part in the Cities, ours in the Country-Villages; and secondly, because the *Londoners* so ingross all Trading, that they drew thither all the Wealth and Treasure of the Kingdom. By means whereof that every Day increaseth in Wealth and Beauty; the rest (except *Bristol* only) do decay as sensibly; that City being like the *Spleen* in the Body Natural, the monstrous growth whereof starveth all the rest of the Members. *Liene excrescente, reliquum corpus contabescit*, as the Doctors have it.

There are in *England* but two *Universities*, which may equal six, nay ten of all other Countries (so that *Paris* be not in the number) most of them being no better than our Colleges of *Westminster*, *Eaton*, or *Winchester*; and none so liberally endowed as some one of those in the Universities. Of which there are 16 in *Cambridge*, some of them called only by the Name of *Halls*, but these endow'd with Lands and Fellowships as the others are. In *Oxford* there are 18 Colleges endow'd with Lands, besides six *Halls*, where Students live at their own charges: in both of them Professors of the Arts and Sciences, as also of Divinity, Law, Physick, and the Learned Languages, with liberal Salaries, and in each to the number of 3000 Students, so regular in their Lives and Conversation as are not to be found in the World besides. The fairer and more ancient, *Oxford*, which of long time, together with *Paris* in *France*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and *Salamanca* in *Spain*, hath been honour'd with the Title of *Generale studium*. For that the University of *Cambridge*, (though giving upper hand to her Sister of *Oxford*, she may take place of all the Universities in the World besides) is not of so long standing as that of *Oxford*, is evident by the testimony of *Robertus de Remington*, cited by Master *Camden*, viz. *Regnante Edwardo primo*, (it should rather be read *secundo*) *de studio Grantbridge facta est Academia, sicut Oxonium*: where the word *sicut* doth not import an identity of the time, but a relation to *Oxford*, as to the Pattern. We see this truth yet clearer in the Bull of Pope *John XXI.* the contemporary of our *Edward the Second*, as I find in the Work of that great searcher of *Academical Antiquities* Mr. *Brian Twine*, *Apostolica Autoritate statuimus* (saith the Bull) *quod Collegium Magistrorum & Scholarium ejusdem studii* (speaking of *Cambridge*) *Universitas sit censenda*, &c. But what need more than the Resolution of the *Commons* of the first Parliament holden under *K. James*? For when the Clerk of that House had put the Name of *Cambridge* before *Oxford*; they taking disdainfully that *Hysteron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both Universities to be searched, and after search made, gave the place to *Oxford*. But to proceed, the University of *Cambridge*, as it was much of later Foundation, so was it long before it grew into esteem; insomuch, that when *William of Wainfleet*, Bishop of *Winchester*, and Founder of *Magdalen College* in *Oxon*, (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) persuaded King *Henry the Sixth* to erect a College in *Oxford*, as some of the Kings his Predecessors had done before him: *Imo potius Cantabrigiae*, (reply'd the King) *ut duas fieri possit in Anglia Academias habeam*. No, saith the King, in *Cambridge* rather, that so, if possible, I may have two Universities in my Realm of *England*!

As for the Story of this Country, that it was first peopled out of *Gall*, is affirm'd by *Cæsar*, and prov'd by many strong and concluding Arguments; as their Religion, Manners, Languages, Customs, and the nearness of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of *Brute*, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are said to have reign'd here successively before the coming of the *Romans*, certain it is, that *Cæsar* found the Country canton'd into many Kingdoms (four in *Kent* alone) and the People to be very rude and illiterate. Such Learning as they had

was lock'd up in the Breasts of the *Druides*, who committed nothing unto Writing, and by that means kept the People in continual Ignorance, communicating what they knew to none but those of their own Order, and therein being sought to by the *Druides* or *Highs* of *Gaul*; who came over into this Island to them, and did from them receive the knowledge of their sacred Mysteries. Being conquer'd or discover'd rather by *Julius Cæsar*, it was not so much as looked after by the two next Emperors. *Augustus* and *Tiberius* counting it an high point of Wisdom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean; *Caligula* had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durst not follow it: But *Claudius*, his Successor, undertook the Enterprize, solicited thereunto by *Vericus* a noble Briton, who for Sedition, and some practices against the Publick, was expell'd the Country. Hereupon *Aulus Plautius* is sent over with some Roman Forces, by whom and *P. Ostorius Scapula*, his Successor, *Cordigumus* and *Caradocus*, two Kings of the Britains, were severally overcome in Battel, a Roman Colony planted at *Camalodunum*, (now *Maldon* in *Essex*) and the Southern parts thereof reduc'd to the form of a Province. After this time, by little and little, the whole was conquer'd, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Dunbarton* and *Edenburgh*. *Agricola*, in the time of *Domitian*, having the happiness and good fortune to go beyond the furthest of his Predecessors; and so much moderation not to venture farther, where there was nothing to be got but Blows, Cold, and Hunger.

At the first entrance of the *Romans*, the Island was divided into several Nations, each governed by its own Kings and particular Princes, different in their Ends and Counsels, and so more easily subdu'd by united Forces. The principal of which (for it is needless to make mention of inferior Clans) where P. the *Dannoni*, containing *Devonshire* and *Cornwal*, whose chief Cities were *Isea*, now *Exeter* and *Volca*, near the Town of *Falmouth* in *Cornwal*. 2. The *Durotiges*, inhabiting only in the Country of *Dorset*; whose chief City was *Durnium* or *Durnovaria*, which we now call *Dorchester*. 3. The *Belgae*, planted in the County of *Somerset*, *Southampton*, and *Wilt*, whose chief Cities were *Aqua Calida*, now *Bath*; *Venta Belgarum*, now *Winchester*; and *Sorbiadunum* the seat of *Old Salisbury*. 4. The *Attrebatii*, confined within *Berkshire* only, the chief City of whom was *Guallent*, where now is *Wallingford*. 5. The *Regni*, possessed of *Suffex* and *Surrey*, whose chief Cities were *Vindelis*, now *Winchelsey*; and *Neomagus*, situate some ten Miles from *London*. 6. The *Kantiani*, or the *Kentish*, having *Durovernum*, now *Canterbury*; *Dubris*, now *Dover*; and *Rutupia*, now called *Richborough*, for their principal Cities. 7. The *Trinobantes* of *Middlesex*, and *Essex*, where *London*, called afterwards *Augusta Trinobantum*; and *Camalodunum*, the first Roman Colony, now called *Maldon*, the Seat-Royal of *Canobelinus*, King of the *Trinobantes*, in the time of the *Romans*. 8. The *Caticuchlani*, dwelling in the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and *Hartford*, whose Towns of most importance were *Magiovinum*, now called *Dunstable*; and *Verulamium*, (near *S. Albans*) the strongest Hold the Britains had in their Wars with *Cæsar*. 9. The *Iceni*, living in the Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*; their principal Cities being *Villa Faustina*, now *S. Edmundsbury*; *Sito-Magus*, now *Thetford*; *Durois*, now *Godmanchester*; and *Camboritum*, or *Cambridge*. 10. *Coritani*, who took up the whole Counties of *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, *Rutland*, *Nottingham*, *Northampton*, and *Derby*; principal Towns of which were *Lindum*, now *Lincoln*; *Rhage*, where now is *Leicester*, *Guafendæ*, not far from *Stamford*, now called *Bridge-Casterton*; *Algecels*, now *Littleborough*, a small Village near *Newark* upon *Trent*; *Tripontum*, now *Torchester*, not far from *Northampton*. 11. The *Brigantes*, the greatest Nation of the Island, filling all *Yorkshire*, the Bishoprick of *Durham*, *Cumberland*, *Westmerland*, and the County Palatine of *Lancaster*, in a word, all the North of *England*, (except *Northumberland*, the dwelling of the (12) *Outridi*,

dini, whose chief Town was *Bremenniam*, thought now to be *Ribchester* in *Riddefdale*.) Principal places of which large and potent Nation, were *Isaurium*, now *Aldbrough* in the North Riding; *Eboracum* or *York*, in the West Riding; and *Petuaria*, thought to be *Beverly* in the East Riding of *Yorkshire*; *Vinovium*, where now is *Binchester*, in the Bishoprick; *Epiacum*, now *Pap-Castle* in *Cumberland*; *Calatum*, now *Wheallop-Castle* in *Westmerland*; and *Ribgodunum*, now *Rible-Chester* in the County Palatine of *Lancaster*. 13. The *Cornavii*, seated in the Counties of *Chester*, *Salop*, *Worcester*, *Stafford*, and *Warwick*, whose Principal Towns were, *Deurvania*, or *Legio vicesima Vi-Elrix*, now *West-Chester*: *Urconium*, now *Wroxeter*, an ignoble Village: *Pennocrucium*, now *Penkridge*, not far from *Stafford*: *Brannogenium*, now *Worcester*: *Manduessedum*, now *Manchester*, on the River *Ankor*. 14. And last of all, the *Dobuni* of *Oxford* and *Glocester-shires*; Principal Places of the which were *Dorcinia*, now *Dorchester*, seven Miles from *Oxford*, and *Corinium*, or *Cyrencester*, near the Head of the *Thames*. Such Names as are comprehended under the Name of *Wales*, and *Scotland*, shall be remembered when we come to speak of those Countries.

These, and the rest of *Wales* and *Scotland* (as far as the Romans did proceed) being once subdu'd, *Britain* became a Member of the *Roman Empire*; yet so that many of the Tribes had their own Kings, and were suffer'd to govern by their own Law: it being a known Custom amongst the Romans, as we find in *Tacitus*, *Habere servitutis instrumenta & Reges*, to permit Kings sometimes in the conquer'd Countries, making them instrumental to the Peoples Bondage. And it is said of *Lucius Verus*, the Roman Emperor, that having put an end to the *Parthian War*, *Regna Regibus, Provincias Comitibus suis regendas dedisse*: He gave those Kingdoms he had conquer'd to be rul'd by Kings; the Provinces to be govern'd by Provincial Earls. Kings of which kind were *Codigunus* and *Pratusagus*, spoken of by *Tacitus*: *Lucius* before-mentioned, the first Christian King, and *Coilus* the Father of *Helena*, Mother of *Constantine the Great*. But as afterward in the *Heptarchy* of the Saxons, that King who overrul'd the rest, and was of most Power and Estimation, was called the Monarch of the *English*: so probable enough it is, that amongst the *British Kings*, who was in most credit with the Romans, or of most Power amongst his Neighbours, might be permitted to assume the Title of King of *Britain*. The Catalogue of whom from *Cassibelane* to *Constantine*, I have here subjoined, according to the tenor of the *British History*.

The Kings of Britain after the coming in of the Romans.

A. Ch.

1. *Cassibelane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, Commander of the *Britains* in the War against *Julius Caesar*.
2. *Theomantius*.
3. *Cymbeline*.
4. *Guiderius*.
- 45 5. *Arviragus*, by *Hector Boetius*, called *Pratusagus*, in whose time *Britain* was subdued by *Aulus Plantius*, sent hither from the Emperor *Claudius*.
- 73 6. *Marius*.
- 125 7. *Coilus*, the supposed Founder of *Colchester*.
- 180 8. *Lucius* the first Christian King of *Britain*, and of all the World, who dying without Issue, left the Roman Emperor his Heir.
- 207 9. *Severus*, Emperor of *Rome*, and King of *Britain*.
- 211 10. *Bassianus Caracalla*, Son of *Severus*, Emperor of *Rome*, after his Father, who lost the Kingdom of *Britain* to
- 218 11. *Carausius*, a Native of the Island; who rebelling against *Caracalla*, obtained the Kingdom for himself.

225 12. *Alectus*.

232 13. *Asclepiodorus*.

260 14. *Coilus II.* the Father of *Helena*.

289 15. *Constantius*, Emperor of *Rome*, in Right of *Helena* his Wife, succeeded on the Death of *Coilus II.*

16. *Constantine the Great*, the Son of *Helena* and *Constantius*, who added his Estates in *Britain* to the *Roman Monarchy*.

But to proceed, *Britain* being thus made a Member of the *Roman Empire*, it was at first divided into three Provinces only, that is to say, *Britannia prima*, (so called because first subdu'd) containing all the Countries on the South side of the *Thames*, and those inhabited by the *Trinobantes*, *Iceni*, and *Cattieuclani*, whose Metropolis or chief City was *London*. 2. *Britannia secunda*, comprising all the Nations on the further side of the *Severn*, whose chief City was *Caer Leon* upon *Usk*, in the Country of *Monmouth*; and 3. *Maxima Caesariensis*, including all the rest of the Northern border, whereof the Metropolis was *York*; each Province having several Cities, 28 in all. Accordingly, the Church conforming to the Platform of the Civil State, there were appointed for the Government hereof twenty eight Bishops, residing in those several Cities; three of the which residing in the principal Cities, were honoured with the Title of *Metropolitans*, and a superiority over all the Bishops of their several and respective Provinces, and in this state it stood till the time of *Constantine*, who in his new moulding of the Empire, alter'd the Bounds, and enlarg'd the number of the Provinces; adding two more unto and out of the former, viz. *Valentia*, containing all the Country from the Fyrb of *Solway*, and the *Picts Wall* on the South, to the Fyrb of *Edenburg* and *Dunbritton* North, and *Flavia Caesariensis*, comprehending all between *Thames* and *Humber*, the rest betwixt the *Humber* and the Bounds of *Valentia*, continuing under the old Name of *Maxima Caesariensis*, though now made less than any of the other four. The number of the Provinces being thus enlarg'd, he made the whole a full and compleat Diocess of the *Roman Empire* (whereas *Spain* had *Tingitana* added to it, as before was shewn) subordinate, as *Spain* was also the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*, and govern'd by his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General. Of which division, or rather subdivision of the *Roman Provinces*, there was no other alteration made in the *Ecclesiastical Government*, but that the *British Church* became more absolute and independent than it was before; and had a *Primate* of its own (as each Diocess had) residing in the same City with the *Vicar* or Lieutenant-General (which was then at *York*) of as great Power and Jurisdiction in the Isle of *Britain*, as any Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Rome*, or *Antioch*, in their several Patriarchates. The *Metropolitans* were no more than before they were: It being order'd by a Canon of the Council of *Chalcedon*, that their number should not be augmented by any alteration made of the *Roman Provinces*. As for the Forces which the Romans kept here in continual Pay, as well to keep their Coasts and Frontiers against the Enemies, as for retaining of the Natives in their due obedience; they came in all (if *Panciro* be not mistaken in his reckoning) to 23000 Foot and 2000 Horse; three Legions keeping here their constant and continual Residence, that is to say, the sixth Legion, surnamed *Victrix*, at *York*; the twentieth Legion, surnamed also *Victrix*, at *West-Chester*; and the second Legion sometimes at *Isca Danmoniorum*, which we now call *Exeter*, sometimes at *Isca Silurum*, which is now *Caer Leon* upon *Usk*. Which Legions, with their Aids and Cohorts, may well make up the number spoken of before. Of so high estimation was this Island in the State of *Rome*.

Yet could not all these Forces so preserve the Country from foreign Enemies, but that in the declining of the *Roman Empire*, the Saxons made great Spoils on the Coasts thereof; as did the Scots and Picts on the Northern Borders:

ders: Against all which the *Romans* held out well enough, and made good their Ground; till the recalling of the Legions out of *Britain* for defence of *Italy* it self, then waisted and destroyed by the barbarous Nations. Which hapned in or about the Year of Christ 407, and some 470 Years from the first Invasion; *Honorius* being at that time the *Roman* Emperor, and *Victorinus* the last Governour for the Empire in the Isle of *Britain*; for though the noble *Alius*, on the Petition and complaint of the slaughter'd People, unmercifully butcher'd by the *Scots* and *Picts*, sent some small Forces to assist them against those Enemies; yet were they presently called back for the defence of *Gaul*, against the *Hunnes* breaking in upon it. And then the wretched *Britains*, hopeles of all help from *Rome*, and being unable by their own strength to repel the Enemy, by reason of their long ease and disuse of Arms, apply'd themselves to *Aldroenus*, King of *Armorica* in *France*, (called *Little Britain*) a Prince extracted from the same Stock, for Relief and Succour. Whose Brother *Constantine* (according to the *British* Story) passing over with a competent Army; and having valiantly repulsed the barbarous People, was crown'd King of *Britain*, the first of a new Race of Kings which sway'd the Scepter with much trouble and continual conflicts, either against the *Scots* or *Saxons*, till they were finally subdued and shut up in *Wales*. Those of most observation in the course of the Story, were,

1. *Constantine* the first King, and the restorer of the Country to Peace and Quiet, traiterously murder'd by a *Pict*.
2. *Vortiger*, E. of the *Guyfes*, (now *Cornwall*) Protector of *Constantinus* the Son of *Constantine*, taken out of a Monastery; after whose Death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himself, but being unable to defend it against the Enemy, and make his Title also good against the other Children of *Constantine*, first called in the *Saxons*.
3. *Vortimer*, eldest Son of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the *Saxons* in many Battels; but in the midst of his Successes was poyson'd by *Rowena* a *Saxon* Lady, second Wife of *Vortiger*.
4. *Arthur*, one of the World's Nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkish* Writers, and other *Legendaries*, report so many idle and impossible Actions. Doubtless he was a Prince of most perfect Vertue, a great preserver of his Country from approaching ruine, and worthy the Pen of an able *Panegyrist*; by whom his brave Atchievements might have come entire unto us, without the intermixture of those feats of Chivalry, affabulated to him and his Knights of the Round Table. For by the overstraining of some *Monkish* Writers, *Geoffry* of *Monmouth*, and the rest, they have given too just occasion to Posterity to suspect that Vertue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the Story, as admiration of the Persons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur*, and his Nobles only; *Charlemaign*, and the *Twelve Peers* of *France*, Men of great Vertue and Renown, suffering as deeply in the same kind, by the folly of the *French Romances*. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the custom of celebrating the *Nativity* of our Lord and Saviour for the Twelve Days following, with such Pastimes and Sports as are, or have been used of late by the *Lords* of *Misrule* in some Gentlemens Houses; an Institution which the *Scottish* Writers of those times much blame. Perhaps not unjustly; it being a time more fit for our Devotions than such rude Disports. But to proceed, King *Arthur* dying, left the Crown to the 5. *Constantine*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall*, his nearest Kinsman, slain by *Aurelius Conan*, his own Nephew, who succeeded after him: which fraction did so weaken the distressed *Britains*, that they were forced to withaw themselves beyond the *Severn*: as 6. *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*, by the joint Forces of the *Saxons*, to change the plain Countries beyond the *Severn* for the safer but more fruitless Mountains. Of the rest, till *Cadwallader*, there is little left of any certainty, but their Names only; which are thus ranked in the second Race of

The Kings of *Britain*, after the withdrawing of the *Romans*.

A. C.

- | | | |
|-----|--|-----|
| 433 | 1. <i>Constantine</i> . | 10. |
| 443 | 2. <i>Constantius</i> . | 3. |
| 446 | 3. <i>Vortiger</i> , | 18. |
| 464 | 4. <i>Vortimer</i> his Son. | 7. |
| 471 | 5. <i>Vortiger</i> (again) | 10. |
| 481 | 6. <i>Aurelius Ambrosius</i> . | 19. |
| 500 | 7. <i>Uter Pendragon</i> . | 6. |
| 506 | 8. <i>Arthur</i> . | 36. |
| 542 | 9. <i>Constantine II</i> . | 4. |
| 546 | 10. <i>Aurel. Conan</i> . | 30. |
| 576 | 11. <i>Vortipor</i> . | 4. |
| 580 | 12. <i>Malgo</i> . | 6. |
| 586 | 13. <i>Careticus</i> , or <i>Caradoc</i> . | 27. |
| 613 | 14. <i>Cadwan</i> . | 22. |
| 635 | 15. <i>Cadwallan</i> . | 43. |
| 627 | 16. <i>Cadwallader</i> , the last King of the <i>Britains</i> , who on a superstitious Zeal travelled in a Pilgrimage to <i>Rome</i> , there to receive the Habit of a Religious Order from the Hands of Pope <i>Sergius</i> , where he died not long after, Anno 689. After whose death, his Successors were no longer called Kings of <i>Britain</i> , but Kings or Princes of <i>Wales</i> . And there we shall be sure to find them. | |

And so the *Britains* leave the Stage, and the *Saxons* enter; a great and potent Nation amongst the *Germans*, but greater by the aggregation of many People, under their Name and Service, than in themselves; the *Futes* and *Angles* joining with them, and passing in accompt as the same one Nation, their Countries different as their Names until this Conjunction; but neighbouring near enough to unite together: the *Angles* dwelling at the first in that part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese*, which we now call *Sleswick*, where still the Town called *Angolen*, doth preserve their Memory: the *Futes* upon the North of them, where there is still a Province called by the name of *Futeland*; the *Saxons* South of both in the Dukedom of *Holstein*, situate in the very neck of that *Chersonese* where it joineth with *Germany*; Joining their Powers, they spread themselves with good success, to the South and West; of which more hereafter. And growing Master of the Seas, infested with continual Piracies the Coasts of *Britain*, occasioning herein an Officer of great Trust and Power, appointed to defend and scour those Seas, in the *Notitia*, called *Comes Littoris Saxonici*. Known by this means amongst the *Britains*, they were called in by *Vortiger*, to aid him against the *Scots* and *Picts*; whom they overcame in a pitched Field near *Stamford* in the County of *Lincoln*: for so far had the barbarous People marched without any resistance. Rewarded for this Victory with the Isle of *Thanet*, and after with the whole County of *Kent*, they began to quarrel with their Hosts; whom by degrees they dispossessed of all the Country on this side of *Severn*; parcelling it into seven Kingdoms, called the *Saxons Heptarchy*, that is to say, 1. Of *Kent*, 2. Of the *South-Saxons*, 3. Of the *West-Saxons*, 4. Of the *East-Saxons*, 5. Of the *East-Angles*, 6. Of the *North-Humbers*, and 7. of the *Mercians*. The beginning, period, and Kings of which several Kingdoms, and the uniting of them into one Monarchy, we are next to shew.

1. The Kingdom of *KENT*, confined within that County only, was begun by *Hengist*, who with his Brother *Horsus* had the leading of the *Saxon*'s Forces, at their first entry into *Britain*, An. 455. being the sixth Year after their first coming in; who restoring *Paganism* to this Country, when the rest of the Isle was *Christian*, occasioned the distinction of *Kent* and *Christendom*. The *Kentish* afterwards the first of the *Saxons* who received the Gospel, by the preaching of *Augustine* the Monk, the Apostle of the *English Saxons*. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, were 1. *Canterbury*; once the Regal Seat of the

the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Ethelbert*, on his Conversion, to *Augustine* the first Archbishop thereof and his Successors; afterwards the See of those Archbishops, who had here their Palace and Cathedral, the Kings removing to *Reculver*, seated in the East part of the Country, about seven or eight Miles from the Sea, a little Brook serving it thence with some Commodities. A City of more Antiquity and Fame than Beauty; being now ruinous and decay'd, and having nothing in it worth observation, but the Cathedral Church, first founded by *Ethelbert* before-mentioned; but afterwards new built upon his Foundations, in the form it now stands, by Archbishop *Lanfrank*, *Will. Carboyle*, and some other, of their Successors in the said See. The Archiepiscopal Palace is a goodly building, and the ruins of *S. Augustine's* Monastery shew what once it was. 2. *Dover*, anciently called *Dubris*, seated on the Sea-shore, where the passage is shortest into *France*; for that cause Fortified with a strong and (in those Days accounted an) impregnable Castle; esteem'd one of the Keys of *England* and the chief of the *Cinque Ports*; now giving the Title of an Earl to the House of *Hunsdon*, chief of the Family of the *Caries*, nearly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of famous Memory. 3. *Rochester*, seated on the *Medway*, not far from *Chatham* (the station of the Royal Navy) an ancient City, but of no greatness; in former times called *Durobrivis*, after that *Roffa*, thence the Name of *Roff-Chester*; a Bishop's See, the second for Antiquity in all the Island. 4. *Maidstone*, upon the *Medway*, also near the Head thereof, the largest and most beautiful in all this Country, and most commodiously seated for Publick Business.

The Kings of Kent.

A. Chr.

- 455 1 *Hengist*, the first King.
- 488 2 *Esk* or *Osc.*
- 512 3 *Oeta*.
- 532 4 *Immerick*.
- 561 5 *Ethelbert*, the first Christian King of this Country.
- 617 6 *Edbald*.
- 641 7 *Ercmbert*.
- 665 8 *Egbert*.
- 673 9 *Lotharius*.
- 686 10 *Edrick*.
- 693 11 *Wigtred*.
- 720 12 *Egbert II*.
- 749 13 *Ethelbert II*.
- 754 14 *Alricus*.
- 793 15 *Ethelbert III*.
- 797 16 *Guthred*.
- 815 17 *Barldred*, the last King of *Kent*, who lost both Life and Kingdom to *Egbert*, King of *West-Sex*, or the *West-Saxons*, Anno 824. The Progeny of *Hengist* having been before extinguish'd in the Person of *Alricus*, overthrown and slain by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mericians*.

II. The Kingdom of *SOUTHSSEX*, or of the *SOUTHSAXONS*, was begun by *Ella*, a noble Captain of that People, An. 488. It contain'd only the two Counties of *Suffex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated, the first so called *quasi South-Sex*, the Country of the *South-Saxons*; the second *quasi South-Rey*, as lying on the South-side of the River *Thames*, in the same sense as *S. Mary's* Church on the other side of that River (in respect of *London*) is called *St. Mary Over Rey*. The Christian Faith suppress'd here, as in other places, was restored again in the time of King *Ediwalch*, by the preaching of *S. Wilfride*, Archbishop of *York*, living here in Exile. Places of most importance in it, were 1. *Chichester*, built by *Cissa* the second King hereof, and called *Cissancester*, incompass'd almost round with the River *Tavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town of *Suffex*, and a Bishop's See, removed hither from *Seafy*, a Demy-Island, in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror,

where it was first planted by Archbishop *Wilfrid*. 2. *Haflings*, one of the *Cinque-Ports*, in *Suffex* also, the Landing-place of the *Normans*, and famous for the Overthrow of King *Harold* in the Fields adjoining. 3. *Guileford*, upon the River *Wey*, the chief Town of *Surrey*, well built, and having in it two Parish-Churches. 4. *Arundel*, in a Dale or Valley on the River *Arun*, and from thence so named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the *Saxons*, when given by the Testament of King *Alfride*, unto *Anthelm*, his Brother's Son. Of great note for a beautiful and capacious Castle; but more for giving the Title of Earl to the Noble Families of the *Albeney*s, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*; this last of such a large and diffused Nobility, that in the Year 1641, there were no fewer than eight *Howards* in the House of Peers. 5. *Kingston* upon the *Thames*, so called to distinguish it from *Kingston* upon *Hull* in *Yorkshire*; heretofore famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the *English Saxons*, whence it had the Name of *Kingston*, or the King's-Town. This Kingdom had only three Kings, crushed in the infancy thereof by more potent Neighbours.

The Kings of the South-Saxons.

A. Chr.

- 488 1 *Ella*, the first King.
- 514 2 *Cissa*, the Son of *Ella*, who lost his Life and Kingdom to *Cerdic*, King of the *West-Saxons*.
- 590 3 *Cheulin*, King of *West-Sex*, called himself King of the *South-Saxons*.
- 4 *Edelwalch*, or *Ethelwolf*, the first Christian King, overcome and slain in Battel by *Ceadwal*, King of the *West-Saxons*, Anno 687. After whose Death *Berhan* and *Anthum*, two Brethren, took on themselves the Government, with the Title of Dukes or Captains; and held it for a little while. But not being able to withstand the puissance of the *West-Saxons*, this Kingdom was subdued by *Ina*, the Successor of *Ceadwal*; by whom united to that Crown.

III. The Kingdom of *WEST-SEX*, or the *WEST-SAXONS*, the third in order, and that which did in fine prevail over all the rest; contained the Counties of *Cornwall*, *Devon*, *Somerset*, *Dorset*, *Wilt*s, *Southampton*, and *Berks*: begun by *Cerdic*, a noble Commander of the *Saxons*, arriving with new Forces out of *Germany*, Anno 495. who having overcome the *Britains* of this Western Tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entituled himself King of the *West Saxons*, Anno 522. The Christian Faith suppress'd here, as elsewhere, was restored again in the time of *Kingil*, their first Christian King; by the preaching of *S. Birinus*, Bishop of *Dorchester*, near *Oxford*, then a great City, of no fewer than ten Parishes, now reduced to one.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, were 1. *Exeter*, a fair and goodly City, and a Bishop's See, remov'd hither from *Cridington* or *Kirton*, by *Leofricus*, An. 1049. Seated upon the Bank of the River *Ex*, whence the Name of *Excester*; environ'd with deep Ditches, and very strong Walls, in compass about a Mile and half besides the Suburbs, in which are contain'd in all 15 Parish-Churches, besides the Minster, a beautiful and stately Fabrick. 2. *Bath*, so called from the *Baths* there being, the chief City of *Somerset*, by the *Latines* called *Aqua Solis*; by the *Greeks* *Ἰσθία Ἀσφαλα* for the self same reason. Situate in a low Valley, environ'd about with Hills, very steep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and fresh Springs, to the great Commodity of the People. A fine neat Town, and beautified with as neat a Church, heretofore a Monastery, partner with *Wells*, the Bishop's See, in the Stile Episcopal; and gives the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Bourchiers*. 3. *Falmouth* in *Cornwal*, seated upon a large and capacious Bay, so full of Creeks and Roads, capable of the best Ships, that it is said, an hundred Sail of Ships may be lodg'd therein with such

such convenience, that from the top of the one, the Mast of another is not to be seen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater safety with two very strong Castles built by Henry the 8th, that of S. Maudits on the East, and that of Pendinas (commonly called Pendennis) upon the West. 4. *Dorchester*, the chief Town of *Dorsetshire*, which is thence denominated, by *Antoninus* called *Durnovaria*, the principal at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and consequently of no great Trading: not so much famous for ought else as giving the Title of a Marquess to Henry Earl of *Kingsfon*, of the noble Family of the *Pierreponts*. 5. *Wilton*, the head Town, in those times of *Wiltshire*, and a Bishops See, honoured with the Residence of several Bishops. But by translating of the See to *Sarum* (or *Sarisbury*) as the fitter place, and carrying thither therewithal the Thorowfare, which before was here; it fell by little and little into decay; and is now hardly worth the reputation of a Market Town. 6. *Winchester* called *Venta* in the times of the *Romans*, by the *Saxons*, *Vent-ceaster*, situate on the banks of a pleasant River, the Seat Royal of the *West Saxon* Kings, who had here their Palace called *Wolves-eye*: so named from the Kings of the *Welfian* Family, and the situation of it in the circlings of the foresaid River, which the old *Saxons* called an *Eye*: not from the *Wool-Staple* here kept, as some; much less from Cardinal *Wolsey*, as others most absurdly think. The House given after to the Bishops, and made their Palace. The Town in compass two Miles, besides the Suburbs; commodiously seated in a low place, between very steep Hills, by which it is defended both from Cold and Wind: Afflicted very much since those times both by War and Fire. half of the Ground within the Town being Fields and Gardens; but still adorned with a Magnificent Cathedral, and a gallant (but no great) Castle, bravely mounted upon an Hill for defence and prospect; besides a *Colledge*, and an *Hospital* added since those days. 7. *Southampton*, conveniently seated on an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richest Towns in those parts of *England*. Well built, of fair large Streets, beautified with five Parish Churches, and fortified with high Walls, a double Ditch, and a right strong Castle; but the Castle now decayed and ruined. 8. *Reading*, on the banks of the River *Kennet*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: A Town of great Trade for Clothing, well built, and of three Parish Churches; heretofore beautified with a strong Castle, and a goodly Monastery, but both decayed. 9. *Windsor*, called *Windleshores* in the old *Saxon*, situate near the banks of the *Thames* on a rising Ground, which gives it a fair prospect over all the Country; adorned in succeeding times with a Palace Royal of the Kings of *England*, and the Seat of the Order of the *Garter*. 10. *Wallingford*, the *Gualena* of the *Ancients*, and then the chief Town of the *Attrebatii*, as it was afterwards (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the County of *Berks*; a Mile in compass at that time within the Walls, fortified with an impregnable Castle, and adorned with twelve Parishes. So desolated by a Plague, *an.* 1348. that there is now but one Church left, hardly Inhabitants enough to keep that in Repair; and nothing of the Walls left (as not much of the Castle) but the track and ruins.

The Kings of the *West-Saxons*.

A. Ch.	
522	1 Cerdic, the first King, 17.
539	2 Kenric, 29.
568	3 Celinus, or Chendine, 27.
595	4 Celric, 5.
600	5 Ceolwulf, 14.
614	6 Kingil, the first Christian King.
646	7 Kenwaldbin, 31.
677	8 Sigebert, 1.
678	9 Efwil, 2.
680	10 Centwin.

687	11 Ceadwal.
690	12 Ina, who first gave the <i>Peter-pence</i> to the Church of <i>Rome</i> .
725	13 Ethelard, 14.
739	14 Cuthbert, 16.
755	15 Sigebert II. 1.
756	16 Kinulph, 31.
787	17 Bithric, 13.
800	18 Egbert, the most Puissant King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> , who united all the <i>Heptarchie</i> into one Estate, of whom see more among the <i>Monarchs</i> of the <i>Saxons</i> , and the Kings of <i>England</i> .

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the year 527, by *Erchenwin*, descended from *Woden*, the common Progenitor of the *Saxons*; from whom we have the name of *Wednesday*, or *Wodensday*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Counties of *Middlesex*, *Essex*, and so much of *Hartfordshire*, as is in the *Diocess* of *London*. The *Christian* Faith expelled here as in other places, was restored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the Abby Church of S. *Peter* in *Westminster*, by the Preaching of *Melitus* the first Bishop of *London*, after the entrance of the *Saxons*, suppressed again by *Seward*, and *Sigebert*, the Sons of *Sebert*; but settled stronger than before by *Cedd*, the next Bishop. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, besides *London*, spoken of already, were, 1. *Westminster*, situate in those times a Mile from *London*, now adjoining to it. The See of the Archbishop of *London* in the time of the *Britains*; afterwards by the *Saxons* called *Thorn eye*, or the *Thorny Island*; till the new *Minster* built by *Sebert* as before is said, and the *Western* situation of it in regard of *St. Pauls*, built at the same time by *Ethelbert* the King of *Kent*, gained it this new Name. A City honoured with the Seat of the Kings of *East-Sex*, and since those times with that of the Kings of *England*; the name of the Old Palace of the one, and the *New-Palace* of the other, still remaining there; beautified upon that occasion with more stately and magnificent Houses, belonging to the King, Bishops, and Nobility, than all the other in the Kingdom, having of late a new Town added to it in the *Covent Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the *Monks* of *Westminster*) for uniformity of Building, and handsom Streets, inferior to no City of *France* or *Italy*. 2. *Colchester*, the chief Town of *East-sex*, situate near the Sea, on the River *Coln*; a Colony of the *Londoners* in former times, thence called *Colonia Londinensium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Bishops See: from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Ceaster*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Colchester*. A fair and well built Town, and of good Resort, fortified with an old *Roman* Wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3. *Itchenchester* in *Dengey Hundred*, where S. *Ceadda* the second Bishop of *London*, baptized the relapsed *East-Saxon*. 4. *Hartford*, the chief Town of the County so called; by *Beda* named *Herudford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Christianity amongst the *Saxons*; in which S. *Augustine* the Monk, the first Apostle of that People, had a Conference or Consultation with the British Bishops: More memorable in the following times, for giving the Title of an Earl to the illustrious Family, surnamed *De Clare*; the addition of an Honour, and a goodly Patrimony to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*; and at this time, Title of Earl, and Marquess to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The Kings of the *East-Saxons*.

A. Ch.	
527	1 Erchenwin the first King.
587	2 Sleda.
596	3 S. Sebert, the first Christian King.
	4 Seward, and Sigebert.
623	5 Sigebert II. or the Little.
	6 Sigebert III.

- 651 7 *Suthelme*.
 664 8 *Sighere*.
 664 9 *S. Sebba*.
 694 10 *Sigheard*.
 11 *Se fride*.
 701 12 *Offa*.
 719 13 *Selred*.
 774 14 *Sutbred*, the last King of the *East-Saxons* subdued by *Egbert* the great and potent King of *West-Sex*, Anno 828. and his Kingdom made a Member of that rising Monarchy.

V. The Kingdom of the *EAST-ANGLES*, so called from the *Angli* or *English*, which possessed these parts, and that *Eastern* situation of it; begun by *Uffa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, Anno 575 contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgehire*, and the Isle of *Ely*. The Christian Faith first planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Ministry of *Felix a Burgundian*, the first Bishop of the *East Angles*, the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*. Places of most Importance in it, were 1. *Dunwich* on the Sea shore, the first Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for the County of *Suffolk*: then a Town capable of that Dignity, now, ruinous, decayed, and for the greatest part worn into the Sea. 2. *Ipswich* in the same County of *Suffolk* and the chief of the Country, a rich populous, and well traded Empory, consisting of no fewer than twelve Parish Churches. 3. *Norwich*, the head City of *Norfolk*, situate on the River *Tare*, which runs thence to *Yarmouth*, lying out in length a Mile and an half, half as much in breadth, and in that Circuit comprehending about 20 Parishes well walled about with many a *Turret*, and 12 *Gates* for entrance; but hath within it much waste Ground, the City suffering great loss both in Wealth and Buildings, by *Kiss* Rebellion, in the time of King *Edward* the Sixth. Recovered of the first blow by the *Dutch Manufactures*, of the last still languishing: yet still it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedral, the three Palaces of the Bishops, the Dukes of *Norfolk*, and the Earls of *Surrey*, and the Ruins of an ancient Castle of the *Saxons* building. 4. *North Elmham*, the Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for those parts which we now call *Norfolk*: both this and that at *Dunwich* ruined in the *Danish* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 years and here continuing, both Sees united unto one, till removed to 5. *Thetford*, another Town of this County, situate on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the lesser *Ouse*; a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at last removed to *Norwich*. 6. *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that County, by *Antonine* called *Cambohitum*, whence the Modern name: unless we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Grant* (for some call it *Grantbridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reason of the University, said to be founded by *Sigbert*, King of the *East-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda*, that he founded a School for the Education of Children in the ways of good Learning; but he speaketh neither of *University*, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7. *Ely*, situate in the Isle so named, occasioned by the divided streams of *Nen* and *Ouse*, with the overflows of other Rivers; turning a great part of this Tract into Fens and Marshes, the Inhabitants whereof were called *Girvii*: A place of no great Beauty or Reputation, as situate in a foggy and unhealthful Air; but only for a fair Monastery built by *S. Ethelreda*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northumbers*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards rebuilt and replenished with Monks by *Ethelwold* Bishop of *Winchester*, Anno 970. or thereabouts; finally made a Bishops See in the time of King *Henry* the First, Anno 1119.

The Kings of the *East-Angles*.

- A. Ch.*
 575 1 *Uffa*, the first Christian King.
 582 2 *Tutullus*.

- 593 3 *Redwall*, the first King.
 624 4 *Erpenwald*.
 636 5 *S. Sigebert*.
 638 6 *Egric*.
 642 7 *Anna*.
 654 8 *Ethelbert*.
 656 9 *Edenwald*.
 664 10 *Alduff*.
 683 11 *Elywolph*.
 714 12 *Bicorn*.
 714 13 *S. Ethelred*.
 749 14 *Ethelbert II.* treacherously murdered by *Ossa* the great King of the *Mercians*, to whose Court he came an invited Guest, Anno 793. after whose death this Kingdom became subject to the *Mercians*, and then to *Egbert* the *West-Saxon*, governed by Tributary Kings of their own Nation, of whom we have no *con. stat* till the time of
 870 15 *S. Edmund*, descended from *Anna*, the Seventh King hereof, Martyred by the *Danes* for his stout and constant perseverance in the Faith of *CHRIST*; from whence the fair Town of *St. Edmundsbury*, in the County of *Suffolk*, took Denomination. After whose death the Kingdom was possessed by the *Danes*, till vanquished by King *Edward* the Elder, by whom it was united unto the rest of *England*.

VI. The Kingdom of *NORTHUMBERLAND*, so called from the situation on the North of *Humber*, contained the Counties of *York*, *Lancaster*, *Durham*, *Westmerland*, *Cumberland*, and *Northumberland*, properly so called; and all the Southern parts of *Scotland*, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Edinburgh* and *Dunbritton*, formerly reckoned of as Members of the *Roman* Empire. Extorted from the *Britains* by *Occa* the Son, and *Ebisa* the Brother of *Hengist*, Conductors of new Forces hither, (all of the Nation of the *Angli*) by the leave of *Vortiger*; under pretence of guarding these Countries from the inroads of the *Scots* and *Picts*. By them divided into two Provinces, the one called *Deira*, extending from the *Humber*, to the River of *Tees*; the other called *Bernicia*, reaching from *Tees*, to the two *Frythes* before-mentioned; both governed a long while by Dukes, under the Sovereignty and homage of the Kings of *Kent*. In the year 547. Duke *Ella* takes unto himself the Title of King of *Bernicia*, and *Abn. 558*. Duke *Ella*, doth the like in *Deira*. The Towns of most notice in this last (for the former is now reckoned as a part of *Scotland*) besides *York* spoken of before, were 1. *Lancaster*, the chief Town of that County, situate on the River *Len*, which with addition of *Ceaſter* much used by the *Saxons*, made the name thereof; called for the same reason *Longovicus* by the Emperour *Antonine*. The Town not very well peopled nor much frequented, but of sufficient fame in our *English* Annals for those Noble Persons which have successively born the Titles of Earls and Dukes of it; the greatest Princes for Revenue, of any Subjects in *Christendom*, 2. *Kendal*, or *Candale*, situate in a dale on the River *Can*, whence it had the Name; the chief Town of *Westmerland*: built in the manner of a Cross, two long and broad Streets thwarting one another. A rich, populous and well traded Town, especially for the making of fine woollen Cloth, but of more fame for giving the Title of an Earl to *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*; and to *John de Foix*, created Earl hereof by *Henry* the Sixth. 3. *Carlisle*, upon the River *Eden*, a frontier Town betwixt the *Romans* and *Scots*, as now between the *Scotts* and *English*: consumed to ashes in the time of the *Danish* Invasions; afterwards rebuilt by *William Rufus*, made an Episcopal See in the Reign of *K. Henry* the First, and beautified with a Cathedral founded at the persuasion of *Atthelwulfus*, the first Bishop hereof. 4. *Monck-cheſter*, on the Northern banks of the River *Tine*, which maketh there a safe and capacious Haven. Of no great note till the *Norman* Conquest, when

when from a Castle built by Robert Son of William the Conqueror, it was called *New-Castle*: growing from that time forwards to such Wealth and Trading, by the Neighbourhood of the Cole-mines there, that it is now the goodliest Town in all the North; fortified with strong Walls, beautified with five fair Churches, and giving to the L. Will. Cavendish, Viscount Mansfield, the honorary Titles of Earl and Marquess. 5. *Hagulfade*, or *Hex-told*, by the Romans called *Axelodunum*, by the Normans. *Hexam*, a Bishops See in the first time of Christianity amongst these Northumbers, specially so called, converted to the Faith in the time of *Oswald* their tenth King, by the Ministry of *Aiden* the first Bishop of *Lindisfarn*: *Eata* the fifth Bishop, erecting here an Episcopal See, for the better propagation of the Gospel among this People; after a Succession of ten Bishops ruined and suppressed by the Danish furies. 6. *Dunholm*, now *Durham*, situate on a Hill, as the name importeth, a Bishops See, translated hither with the body of St. *Cuthbert*, Anno 990. or thereabouts, from *Lindisfarn*, a small Island on the Coast of *Northumberland*, where it was first erected by S. *Aidamus*, the first bishop thereof: planted in *Lindisfarn*, because of the solitude of the place; translated hither to avoid the fury of the Danes, who then raged extremely in these Quarters. And being settled here, was fortified with such ample Priviledges and Possessions, by the Saxon Kings; that the Bishops were reputed for Count Palatines, at and before the Norman Conquest. 7. *Halifax*, in the West Riding of *Yorkshire*, of great wealth by making of Cloth. 8. *Rippon*, in the same, adorned with a fair Cathedral or Collegiate Church, subordinate to that of *York*. 9. *Godmanham*, (by *Beda* called *Gotmandin Gabam*) famous in those days for a Temple of the Saxon-Idols, burnt down and utterly destroyed by *Coife*, the chief Priest thereof, converted to Christianity by *Paulinus* the first Archbishop of *York*, and the Apostle of the Northumbers in these parts. The Catalogue of the Kings of which mighty Nations, by reason of the division of it into two Kingdoms, as before is said, is very intricate and confused, the Kingdoms being sometimes united, and sometimes dis-jointed. But in regard the most prevalent King of either, was called King of *Northumberland*, the other of *Bernicia* or *Deira* only, I shall accordingly sub-join them in this order following.

The Kings of Northumberland.

A. Ch.

- | | | |
|-----|----|--|
| 549 | 1 | <i>Ida</i> the first King. |
| 560 | 2 | <i>Ella</i> , King of <i>Deira</i> . |
| 589 | 3 | <i>Ethelrick</i> , Son of <i>Ida</i> King of <i>Bernicia</i> . |
| 593 | 4 | <i>Ethelfride</i> . |
| 617 | 5 | <i>Edwin</i> , Son of <i>Ella</i> , the first Christian King. |
| 623 | 6 | <i>Osrick</i> . |
| 634 | 7 | St. <i>Oswald</i> . |
| 645 | 8 | <i>Oswy</i> , who having subdued and slain <i>Oswin</i> King of <i>Deira</i> , was the first absolute King of all <i>Northumberland</i> , no more divided after that. |
| 671 | 9 | <i>Egfride</i> . |
| 686 | 10 | S. <i>Alfride</i> . |
| 705 | 11 | <i>Osfred</i> . |
| 716 | 12 | <i>Kenred</i> . |
| 718 | 13 | <i>Osrick</i> II. |
| 729 | 14 | <i>Ceolnulpb</i> . |
| 738 | 15 | <i>Ogbert</i> . |
| 758 | 16 | <i>Eswulph</i> . |
| 759 | 17 | <i>Edilwald</i> . |
| 765 | 18 | <i>Alured</i> . |
| 774 | 19 | <i>Ethelred</i> . |
| 778 | 20 | <i>Alfwald</i> . |
| 789 | 21 | <i>Osfred</i> II. |
| 794 | 22 | <i>Ethelred</i> II. After whose death, slain by his treacherous and rebellious Subjects (as many of his Predecessors had been before) the Kingdom became distracted into Parts and |

Factions, invaded by the Danes on the one side, the Scots and Picts on the other, who during these Distractions, had possessed themselves of all the Countries on the other side of the *Tweed*. At the last Anno 827. they yielded themselves to *Egbert*, the most Potent King of the *West-Saxons*, ruled by his Deputies for a while, then subdued by the Danes and finally recovered to the Crown of *England*, by *Athelstan* and *Edred*, Anno 950. or thereabouts. Content since that to give the Title of an Earl to some eminent Persons both of English and Norman Races: as it hath done since the first year of King *Richard* the Second; to the Noble Family of the *Per-cies*, descended by *Josceline* of *Brabant*, Brother of *Adolize* the second Wife of King *Henry* the First, from *Charles* the Great, Emperor and King of *France*, and that too in a clearer Line than the Dukes of *Lorain*, who so much brag of it.

VII. The Kingdom of *M E R C I A*, was begun by *Cridda*, or *Criodda*, a great Commander of the Angli, or English Nation, who settling in the heart of *Britain*, where the People were least used to Arms, made themselves Masters of the Counties of *Gloucester*, *Worcester*, *Hereford*, *Salop*, *Chester*, *Stafford*, *Derby*, *Nottingham*, *Leicester*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, *Northampton*, *Warwick*, *Oxon*, *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and the rest of *Hartfordshire*, which bounded in a manner by all the rest of the Saxon Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Meare*, which signifieth a bound or limit. The Christian Faith suppressed here, as in other Kingdoms of the Saxons, was restored again in the Reigns of *Penda*, *Peada*, and *Wulfhere*, by the preaching of St. *Chad* the first Bishop of *Lichfield*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Hereford*, seated on the Banks of the River *Wye*, in the middle of most flourishing Meadows, and no less plentiful Corn Fields; raised out of the Ruines of *Ariconium* here placed by *Antonine*, the Tract of which name it doth still retain. A Bishops See in the time of the Britains, restored to that dignity by the Saxons, An. 680. the honourable Title of the *Bobuns*, once Earls hereof; and afterwards of *Henry* of *Bullingbrook* Duke of *Hereford*. 2. *Worcester*, pleasantly seated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Bishops See, Anno 672, beautified with a fair Cathedral, and every way considerable for situation, number of Churches, neat Buildings, the industry of the Inhabitants, and giving the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Somersets*, extracted by the *Beauforts* from *John* of *Gaunt*. 3. *Litchfield*, the first Bishops See amongst the *Mercians*, founded there Anno 646. by *Oswy* King of the Northumbers, but fixed and settled by St. *Chad* in the Reign of *Wulfhere* King of the *Mercians*; endowed in the very Infancy with such fair Possessions, that in the year 793. *Adulfus* the Bishop hereof, was made Archbishop of the *Mercians*. But it proved only a personal honour, and died with him. 4. *Coventry*, so called from an old *Covent* or Religious House, which gave name unto it; Situate in *Warwickshire*, and now the principal of that County, though esteemed a County of it self: beautified with a goodly Wall, two fair Parish Churches, large Streets, and very handfom Houses. A City of great Trade and Riches, though destitute of all Advantages which a Navigable River might afford it; heretofore of great Fame for a stately Monastery, to which the See Episcopal was for a while removed from *Litchfield*, now a ruine only. 5. *Leicester*, once a Bishops See, the Diocess taken out of *Litchfield*, An. 733. removed to *Dorchester* near *Oxon*, and thence to *Lincoln*. Beautified in those days with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abbey, and a strong Castle; and decayed and ruined by the iniquity and injury of these later times; the Town remaining in as good plight both for Trade and Buildings, as most Towns do which want a Navigable River. Of most fame for the Earls thereof, *Algar* and *Edwin*, noble Saxons, *Simon de Montfort* the *Catiline* and great Incendiary of this Kingdom, the Princes of the House of *Lancaster*, who bore
this

this Title; with some others since. 6. *Derby*, upon the River *Derwent*, a well-traded Town, and of good Resort; adorned with five Churches, a goodly Stone Bridge, and a large Market-place; the honorary Title of the noble Family of the *Stanleys*, created Earls hereof by King *Henry the Seventh*. 7. *Nottingham* seated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an Hill, which overlooks it. For Buildings, fair Streets, and a spacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of most fame for a Royal and Magnificent Castle, which for Strength, Stateliness, and Prospect, may justly challenge the precedency of most in *England*. 8. *Lincoln*, a Town in those days of great strength and note, one of the best Peopled Cities in all the *Heptarchie*; and of great Merchandise and Traffick both by Sea and Land, insomuch that *Remigius*, then Bishop of *Dorchester* thought fit to translate hither the Episcopal See. Now much decayed, and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln was, London is, &c.* The chief fame which now it hath, is for the Minster, one of the stateliest Piles in *England*, and perhaps in *Christendom*; high seated on a Hill, and from thence discerned over all the Country. 9. *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters Town*, from the great sport the Hunters found in the Neighbouring *Forest*, commodiously seated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouse*, rising on the North with a soft ascent, consisting of four Parish Churches, and shews the ruins of a Castle built by *Edward the Elder*, *An. 917*. 10. *Peterburgh*, seated in a Nook or Angle of *Northamptonshire*, were formerly had been a Gulf or Whirlpool of exceeding depth; but made firm ground by *Wulfhere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the Foundations of the Monastery, *Anno 633*. dedicated to *St. Peter*, whence it had this Name; before then called *Medanfhede*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great esteem, as standing out of the way for Trade, and in no plausible place for Health or Pleasure; yet shewing two handfom Streets, a large Market-place, and a fair Parish Church (besides the Abbey) made an Episcopal See by King *Henry the 8th*. 11. *Northampton*, built on the Northern Bank of the River *Antona*, (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it, need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very strong Castle, and seated in so good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpose to remove their University hither. The Noble Family of the *Comptons* are now Earls hereof. 12. *Bedford*, so called from *Beds* and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both sides thereof for the use of Travellers, growing in time to so great bigness as to contain in it five Parish Churches: famous in former times for the great Battel fought in the adjoining Fields, *Anno 572*, in which *Cuthwulf* the Saxon vanquish'd the *Britains*, and became Master of the Country; But more famous for giving the Title of Duke to *John of Lancaster*, Regent of *France* for King *Henry the Sixth*, and *Jasper of Hatfield*, Uncle to King *Henry the 7th*. 13. *St. Albans*, so called from a famous Monastery, here founded by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, in honour of *St. Albans*, the *Proto-Martyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, near adjoining to it; out of the Ruins whereof; decayed by Age, and destroyed by War; arose the present greatness of *S. Albans*, the fairest and best traded Town in the County of *Hartford*. 14. *Buckingham*, the chief Town of the County so called, situate on the River *Ouse*: fortified by King *Edward the Elder* against the *Danes*, *Anno 915*, otherwise not much observable, but for those many noble personages which have had the Title of Dukes hereof.

The Kings of Mercia,

- A. C.
- | | | |
|-----|---|--|
| 582 | 1 | <i>Criodda</i> , the first King. |
| 593 | 2 | <i>Wobba</i> . |
| 614 | 3 | <i>Cheol</i> . |
| 626 | 4 | <i>Penda</i> . |
| 656 | 5 | <i>Penda</i> , the first Christian King. |
| 659 | 6 | <i>Wulf</i> & c. |

- | | | |
|-----|----|--|
| 675 | 7 | <i>Etheldred</i> . |
| 704 | 8 | <i>Kenred</i> . |
| 709 | 9 | <i>Chelred</i> . |
| 716 | 10 | <i>Ethelbald</i> , overcome by <i>Cuthbert</i> King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> , at a Fight near <i>Burford</i> in the County of <i>Oxon</i> , the place first called <i>Battle-lage Hill</i> . |
| 758 | 11 | <i>Offa</i> the Great. |
| 796 | 12 | <i>Egfride</i> . |
| 797 | 13 | <i>Kenwolf</i> . |
| 819 | 14 | <i>Kenelm</i> . |
| 820 | 15 | <i>Cheolwolf</i> . |
| 821 | 16 | <i>Bernulf</i> . |
| 824 | 17 | <i>Ludecan</i> . |
| 826 | 18 | <i>Witblaf</i> , overcome in fight (as were his two Predecessors) by <i>Egbert</i> King of <i>West-Sex</i> , became his tributary. |
| 839 | 19 | <i>Berthulf</i> . |
| 852 | 20 | <i>Burdred</i> , a substituted King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> , and the last King of the <i>Mercians</i> (the short Reign of his six Predecessors, portending that fatal period to be near at hand.) After whose Death, <i>Anno 886</i> , this Kingdom for some few years tyrannized over by the <i>Danes</i> , was united by King <i>Alured</i> to the <i>English</i> Monarchy. |

Such was the Order and Succession of the *Saxon* Kings, during the *Heptarchie*, or division of it into seven Kingdoms; continuing separate and distinct till the prevailing Fortune of the *West-Saxons* brought them all together into one, by the name of *England*. But so, that they were subject for the most part unto one alone, who was intituled *Rex Gentis Anglorum*: those which were stronger than the rest, giving the Law unto them in their several turns; and are these that follow:

The Monarch of the English Saxons in the time of the Heptarchie.

- A. C.
- | | | |
|-----|----|--|
| 455 | 1 | <i>Hengist</i> , King of <i>Kent</i> , who first brought the Saxons into <i>Britain</i> . |
| 481 | 2 | <i>Ella</i> , the first King of the <i>South-Saxons</i> . |
| 495 | 3 | <i>Cerdic</i> , the first King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> . |
| 534 | 4 | <i>Kenric</i> , King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> . |
| 561 | 5 | <i>Cheuline</i> , or <i>Celingus</i> , King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> . |
| 562 | 6 | <i>Ethelbert</i> , King of <i>Kent</i> , the first Christian King of the Saxons. |
| 616 | 7 | <i>Redwald</i> , King of the <i>East-Angles</i> . |
| 617 | 8 | <i>Edwin</i> , King of <i>Northumberland</i> . |
| 634 | 9 | <i>Osvald</i> , King of <i>Northumberland</i> . |
| 643 | 10 | <i>Osmy</i> , King of <i>Northumberland</i> . |
| 659 | 11 | <i>Wulfhere</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> . |
| 675 | 12 | <i>Etheldred</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> . |
| 704 | 13 | <i>Kenred</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> . |
| 709 | 14 | <i>Chelred</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> . |
| 716 | 15 | <i>Ethelbald</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> . |
| 758 | 16 | <i>Offa</i> the Great, King of the <i>Mercians</i> . |
| 794 | 17 | <i>Egfride</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> . |
| 796 | 18 | <i>Kenwolf</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> . |
| 799 | 19 | <i>Egbert</i> , the Son of <i>Almond</i> , King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> , who having vanquished all the rest of the <i>Saxon</i> Kings, and added most of their Estates unto his own, caused the whole united body to be called <i>Engle-lond</i> , or <i>England</i> , in a Parliament or Council held at <i>Winchester</i> , <i>Anno</i> , 819, being the 19th year of his Reign over the <i>West-Saxons</i> ; and by that Name he was then crowned in the presence of his Nobles, and the rest of his Subjects, leaving it unto the rest of his Successors. |

But before we come to the recital of their Names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next considerable Actors on the Stage of *England*, who in the time of this *Egbert*, first invaded the Country, and after exercised the patience of his Posterity, till in fine they got the Kingdom to themselves. Of the Original and first Successes of this People,

People, we shall speak more at large when we come to *Denmark*. Suffice it here to know, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Jutes* and *English* in the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, they thought it not amiss to follow them into *Britain* also; making a discovery of some part of the Coast thereof with three Ships only, *An.* 787, being the first year of *Brithic* (the Father of *Egbert*) King of the *West-Saxons*. Which having done, and prepared themselves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert*, they invaded *Northumberland*, the Isle of *Shepey* in *Kent*, and the Coasts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Reign of the three Kings succeeding, having vanquished the *Northumbrians*, *East-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*; they erected many petty Tyrannies: by *Alfred* first stopped in their Career, by *Edward* the Elder outed of the *East-Angles*, and by *Athelstan* of *Northumberland* also, the *Danes* for some time after being subject to the *English* Government, mixing in Marriages and Alliance, and Incorporated with them, by the Valour and good Fortune of *Swain* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the Person of *Canutus* obtained the Kingdom: who having impolitickly sent back his *Danes* into their Country (as if a Kingdom got by Force, could be held by Favour) opened a way to their exclusion from the Crown; which happened within seven years after his decease. Which said, we come to the Successions of

The Kings of *England* of the *Saxon* Race.

- 819 1 *Egbert*, the last King of the *West-Saxons*, and the first of *England*. 18.
- 837 2 *Ethelwulf*, the eldest Son of *Egbert*. 20.
- 857 3 *Ethelbald*, the eldest Son of *Ethelwulf*. 1.
- 858 4 *Ethelbert*, the Brother of *Ethelbald*. 4.
- 863 5 *Ethelfred*, the Brother of the two former Kings, the third Son of *Ethelwulf*, and as much molested by the *Danes*, as his Brethren were. 10.
- 873 6 *Alfred*, the fourth Son of *Ethelwulf*, who totally united the *Saxon* Heptarchy into one Estate, vanquished the *Danes*, whom he made subject to his commands, though he could not expel them. He divided *England* into Shires, and restored the University of *Oxon*.
- 900 7 *Edward*, surnamed the Elder, the Son of *Alfred*, who recovered the *East-Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he shut up in *Northumberland*. 24.
- 924 8 *Athelstan*, the Son of *Edward*, who subdued the *Britains* of *Cumberland* and *Cornwall*, and compelled the *Danes* to submit themselves to the *English* Government. In his time lived Sir *Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Danish* Champion (the great *Goliath* of that People) near the Walls of *Winchester*. 10.
- 941 9 *Edmund* the Brother of *Athelstan*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under obedience, and the Kingdom of the *Britains* in *Cumberland* utterly subverted.
- 946 10 *Ethel*, the Brother of *Edmund* and *Athelstan*, so fortunate against the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be Christened. 9.
- 955 11 *Edwy*, the Son of *Edmund*.
- 958 12 *Edgar*, the Brother of *Edwy*, surnamed the Peaceable, the most absolute Monarch of *England*, since the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the Tribute of Money, imposed by *Athelstan* on the *Welsh*, was exchanged into a Tribute of *Holwer*. 16.
- 978 13 *Edward* II. Son of *Edgar*, treacherously murdered by his Stepdame, to make way for *E-*

thelred her Son; hence surnamed the *Martyr*, 2.

- 978 14 *Ethelred*, the younger Son of *Edgar*, and half Brother of *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unquietly, which he got unjustly. Oppressed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yearly tribute of 1000 pounds; increased to 4800 pounds within short time after; which monies were raised upon the Subjects, by the name of *Danegeld*. Weary of the exactions, he plotted warily with his Subjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they slept in their Beds; which accordingly was put in execution on *St. Brices Night*, *November* 2. *Anno* 1012. To Revenge this Outrage and Dishonour, *Swaine* King of *Denmark*, with a Fleet of 350 Ships came into *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuissant Prince to fly into *Normandy*; leaving his poor Subjects to the mercy of the *Danish* Tyrant, who miserably plagued them till his death. To whom succeeded his Son *Canute* (*Canutus*) a more temperate Prince; who maugre *Ethelred* now returned, or his Son *Edmond Ironside*, a most valiant King, did in the end possess himself of the whole Kingdom.
- 1016 15 *Edmund* II. surnamed *Ironside*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom, at last divided it with *Canutus*: not long after which he was treacherously and basely murdered, by *Edward*, surnamed the Out-Law, his eldest Son. He was Grandfather of *Edgar Ateling*, and of *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third, King of the *Scots*.

The *Danish* Kings.

- 1017 1 *Canutus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, after the death of *Edmund* the Second, sole King of *England*. He married *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred*, and Daughter of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*. 20.
- 1037 2 *Harald* the base Son of *Canutus*, surnamed *Harfagar*, 3.
- 1041 3 *Canutus* II. commonly called *Hardy Canute*, the lawful son of *Canutus* by *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred* the second, and Mother of *Edward* surnamed the Confessor, the last King of the *Danes* in *England*. After whose death that People having tyrannized in *England* for the space of 255 years, (of which they had reigned only 26) were utterly expelled the Country, or passed in the Account of *English*; *Edward* the Confessor, the youngest Son of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practices of his Mother *Emma*, and the absence of the Children of *Edmund Ironside* his elder Brother, *Anno* 1042.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence as they did, I observe three Customs yet in use amongst us. First, each *English* house maintained one *Dane*, who living idly like the *Drone* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their Labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now when we see an idle fellow, we call him a *Lordane*. 2. The *Danes* used when the *English* drank, to stab them, or cut their Throats: to avoid which Villany, the party then drinking, requested some of the next unto him to be his surety or pledge, whilst he paid nature her due, and hence we have our usual custom of pledging one another. 3. The old *Romans* at the expulsion of their Kings, annually solemnized the *Fugalia*: according to which pattern the joyful *English* having cleared the Country of the *Danes*, instituted the annual Sports of *Hock-tide*; the word in their old Tongue, the *Saxon*,
L. V. importing

importing the time of *Scorning*, or *Triumphing*. This *Solemnity* consisted in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in those days, during which the *Festival* lasted, and was celebrated by the younger sort of both Sexes, with all manner of Exercises, and Pastimes in the Streets, even as *Shrove-tide* yet is. But now time hath so corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no sign of the first institution.

The Saxons Re-enthroned.

A. Ch.

1042

16 *Edward III.* surnamed the *Confessor*, half Brother both to *Edmund Ironside*, and *Hardy-Canute* the Dane, called out of *Normandy*, where he lived with the Dukes his Cousins, succeeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Danish*, *Saxons*, and *Mercian* Laws, one universal and general Law, whence our *Common Law* is thought to have had its Original: which may be true of the *written* Laws, not of the *customary* and *unwritten* Laws; these being certainly more ancient. He was in his life of that holiness that he received power from above to cure many Diseases, amongst others, the swelling of the Throat, called by us the *Kings-Evil*: a Prerogative that continueth *Hereditary* to his Successors of *England*. Finally after his death, he was Canonized for a Saint; and died, having reigned 24 years.

1066

17 *Harald II.* Son to Earl *Godwyn*, was chosen King in the Non-age of *Edgar Atheling*, Grandchild to *Edmund Ironside*, the true Heir of the Kingdom: to which *Harald* might pretend some Title as being born unto Earl *Godwyn* by *Thyra* the base Daughter of *Canutus* the first, Sister by the whole blood to *Harald Harfager*, and of the half blood to *Canutus* the second, the last King of the Danes in *England*. But *William* Duke of *Normandy*, (of which People we have spoke already when we were in *France*, and shall speak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the last *Actors* on the Theatre or Stage of *England*.) This *William* (I say) pretending a Donation from his Cousin, King *Edward the Confessor*,

invaded *England*, slew *Harald*, and with him 66654 of his *English* Soldiers, and possessed himself of the Kingdom; using such Policy in his new Conquest, that he utterly disheartned the *English* from hopes of better fortune. From him beginneth the new account of the Kings of *England*, those of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the first, second, or third, &c.

The Norman Kings.

A. Ch.

1067

1 *William*, surnamed the *Conqueror*, after the vanquishment and death of *Harald*, acknowledged and Crowned King, altered the ancient Laws of *England*, and established those of *Normandy* in the place thereof: governing the People absolutely by the power of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followers, and such as were engaged in the Action with him; from whom most of our ancient Families do derive themselves; those Lands to be holden in *Knights-Service*, which drew along with it the *Wardship* of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.

1089

2 *William II.* surnamed *Rufus*, second Son to the Conqueror, succeeded by the appointment

of his Father, and was Crowned King; slain afterwards in the *New Forest*, by an Arrow levelled at a *Deer*.

1102

3

Henry, for his Learning surnamed *Beau-Clerk*, the third Son of the Conqueror, in the absence of his Brother *Robert* (in the *Holy-Land Wars*) entred on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him also the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-issue, he left one only Daughter whose name was *Maud*; first married to the Emperour *Henry the Fifth*, and after to *Geofry Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Touaine*, and *Maine*. 34.

1136

4

Stephen, second Son of *Stephen* Earl of *Champagne* and *Blois*, and of *Alice* Daughter to the Conqueror, succeeded; who to purchase the peoples love, released the Tribute called *Danegelt*: he spent most of his Reign in War against *Maud* the Empress. 19.

The Saxon Blood restored.

1155

5

Henry II. Son to *Maud* the Empress, Daughter to *Henry the First*, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret* Sister to *Edgar Atheling*, restored the *Saxon* Blood to the Crown of *England*. His Father was *Geofry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Touaine*, and *Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *English* Empire, as also the Dutchy of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Poitou*, by *Eleanor* his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by Conquest. Happy in all things, the unnatural Rebellions of his Sons excepted. 34.

1189

6

Richard, the Son of *Henry*, surnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, warred in the *Holy Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almost driven out of *Syria*, took the Isle of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy Achievements, returning homewards to defend *Normandy*, and *Aquitain* against the *French*, was by Tempest cast upon *Dalmatia*; and travelling through the Dominions of the Duke of *Austria*, was taken Prisoner, put to a grievous Ransom, and after his return slain at the Siege of *Chalus*, in the Province of *Limousin*. 12.

1201

7

John, Brother of *Richard*, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better, as being an unnatural Son to his Father, and an undutiful Subject to his Brother. Distressed for a great part of his Reign by Wars with his Barons, outed of all *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, by the power of the *French*; to whom also he was likely to have lost the Realm of *England*. Finally, after a base submission of himself and his Kingdom to the Popes Legate, he is said to have been poisoned at *Swinsede Abbey*. 17.

1218

8

Henry III. Son of *John*, expelled the invading *French* out of *England*, and by a composition with *Lewis* the 9th, was restored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Successor till the Reign of King *Henry* the 6th. Exhausted by the Pope, and oppressed a long time by his factions and unruly Barons, but at last Victorious. 56.

1274

9

Edward, the Son of *Henry*, awed *France*, subdued *Wales*, brought *Scotland* into subjection, of whose King and Nobility he received homage. 34.

1308

10

Edward II. Son of *Edward* the First, a dilute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the Vulgar, for his immeasurable love to *Pierce Gaveston*, and the *Spencer* w

- was twice shamefully beaten by the Scots : and being deposed by a strong Faction raised against him by his Queen, and Roger Lord Mortimer, was barbarously murdered in Berkeley Castle. 19.
- 1327 11 Edward III. Son of Edward the Second, a most Vertuous and Valorous Prince, brought the Scots to Obedience, overthrew the French in two great Battels, took the Town of Callice, and many fair possessions in that Kingdom. 50.
- 1377 12 Richard II. another of our unfortunate Kings, lost many of his Peers in France, and at last being overawed by his two great Uncles of Lancaster, and Gloucester, and taken Prisoner by his Cousin the Duke of Hereford, he was forced to resign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at Pomfret Castle.

The Lancastrian Line.

- 1392 13 Henry IV. Son to John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster, the fourth Son of Edward the 3d, was by the power of the Sword, but with the consent of the People, settled in the Throne ; and spent his whole Reign in suppressing homebred Rebellions. 15.
- 1414 14 Henry V. the Mirrour of Magnificence, and Pattern of true Vertue, pursued the Title of France, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the French Crown, but lived not to possess the Kingdom. 9.
- 1423 15 Henry VI a Pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned King of France in Paris, which he held during the life of his Uncle John of Bedford, and Humphrey of Gloucester ; after whole deaths, he not only lost France to the French, but England and his life to the Yorkish Faction. 38.

The Yorkish Line.

- 1461 16 Edward IV. Son of Richard Duke of York, the Son of Richard Earl of Cambridge, and Grandson of Edmund of Langley Duke of York, the fifth Son of King Edward the Third, challenged the Crown in right of the Lady Anne his Grandmother, Daughter of Roger Mortimer Earl of March, the Son of Edmund Mortimer Earl of March, and of Philippa, his Wife, sole Daughter of Lionel Duke of Clarence, the third Son of the said King Edward, and elder Brother of John of Gaunt. The claim first set on foot by his Father the Duke of York, who lost his life in pursuance of it in the Battle of Wakefield ; with better fortune and success, pursued by King Edward himself, who finally after nine bloody Battels fought between the Houses (specially that of Towton, in which were slain 36000 English) was quietly seated in the possession of England and Ireland, 23.
- 1484 17 Edward V. his Son, was before his Coronation murdered by his Uncle Richard, in the Tower of London.
- 1484 18 Richard III. Brother of Edward the 4th, a most wicked and tyrannical Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered King Henry the Sixth, and 2. Prince Edward his Son. 3. George Duke of Clarence, his Brother. 4 Hastings a faithful Servant to King Edward. 5. Rivers, Vaughan and Gray, the Queens Kindred. 6. Edward the Fifth, his Sovereign, with his Brother Richard. 7. Henry Duke of Buckingham his dear Friend, and

greatest Coadjutor in these his ungodly practices ; and his own Wife Anne, so to make way to an incestuous Marriage with his Niece Elizabeth, the eldest Daughter of Edward the 4th ; but before the Solemnity, he was slain at Bosworth 3.

The Union of the Families.

- 1487 19 Henry VII. Earl of Richmond, Heir to the House of Lancaster, (as Son of Margaret, Daughter of John Duke of Somerset, Son of John Earl of Somerset, Son of John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster) after the overthrow of Richard, married Elizabeth, Daughter and Heir to Edward the 4th. uniting by that Marriage the divided Families. He was also extracted from the British and French Royal Blood, as being Son to Edmund Tudor Earl of Richmond, Son to Owen Tudor (descended from Cadwallader, the last King of the Britains) and Katherine of France, Widow of Henry the 5th. His whole Wars was against home-bred Rebels, the chief being Lambert, and the Followers and Followers of Perkin Warbeck. 23.
- 1509 20 Henry VIII. Heir to both Families, between which were fought for the Diadem 17 pitched Fields ; in which perished 8 Kings and Princes, 40 Dukes, Marquesses, and Earls, 200000 of the common People, besides Barons and Gentlemen. This King banished the usurped Supremacy of the Popes, and began the Reformation of Religion ; though formerly he had writ a Book against Luther, for which the Pope gave him the honourable Title of The Defender of the Faith ; afterwards made Hereditary by Act of Parliament to his Heirs and Successors. A Prince of great Vices, but of greater Virtues. 38.
- 1547 21 Edward VI. the Son of Henry the 8th, by Jane Seymour his third Wife ; out of whose Womb he is said to be cut, to come into the World, as Caesar was ; but he had neither Caesar's Fortune nor length of Life ; dying very young, and his Affairs conducted by divided Councils ; though otherwise of great hopes, and of a pregnancy of Judgment above his years. 6.
- 1553 23 Mary, the Daughter of King Henry the 8th, by Katherine of Spain, the Widow of his Brother Arthur, restored the Popes Supremacy banished by her Father, with the whole mass of Popery abolished in her Brother's Reign. To which Religion so addicted, that in the short time of her Reign there was more Blood shed, than in the whole 44 years of her Sister Elizabeth. In the last year of her Reign she lost Calice to the French, which proved the loss of her life also, as it was supposed. 5.
- 1558 23 Elizabeth, the Daughter of King Henry the 8th, by the Lady Anne Bullein his second Wife, a most gracious Heroick Princess, was by the Divine Providence of God preserved from the Practices of her Enemies in her Sisters Reign, to sway the Scepter of the Kingdom. She pursued the Reformation of Religion, begun in the times of her Father and Brother ; refined the corrupt Coin brought in by her Father, furnished the Royal Navy with all kind of Warlike Ammunitions ; encreased the Revenue of the Universities, by the Statute of Provisions ; succoured the Scots against the French ; the French Protestants against the Papists, and both against the Spaniard : defended the
- L 1 2 Netherlands

Netherlands against the attempts of *Spain*; commanded the whole Ocean; entred League with the *Muscovite*; and was famous for her Prudence and Government amongst the *Turks*, *Persians*, and *Tartars*, yea, her very Enemies. Finally, she died in the 45 year of her Reign, and the 70. of her Life, on the 24 of *March*, Anno 1602. according to the computation of the Church of *England*, which beginneth the New Year with the Feast of the *Annunciation*. To whom succeeded *JAMES* the Sixth, King of the *Scots*, with the joy of all Men, as the next undoubted Heir of the Crown. Of whom we shall say more when we come to speak of the *Monarchs* of *Britain*, of which he was the first since the fall of the *Roman Empire*, and such more properly than the greatest of all those *Emperors* had been before: None of them having all the North parts of *Britain* it self, or any part of *Ireland* at all, nor many of the *Isles* adjoining, under their Dominion.

In the mean time to look on *England* as a State distinct, we will consider it and the *Kings* thereof, with references to reputation abroad, and power at home; with the *Revenues*, *Arms*, and *Military Orders* of it, as in other places. And first for *Reputation*, when all *Christendom* in the Council of *Constance*, was divided into Nations, *Anglicana Natio* was one of the Principal, and not *Subaltern*; and had its voice of equal balance with the Nations of *France* or *Italy*, in all Affairs concerning the Doctrine, Discipline and Peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the *Kings* hereof in those *General Councils*, and the rank they held among other *Christian Princes*; I find that the *Emperour* of *Germany* was accounted *Major filius Ecclesiae*; the King of *France*, *Minor Filius*; and the King of *England*, *Filius tertius & adoptivus*. The King of *France* in *General Councils*, had place next the *Emperour*, on his right Hand; the King of *England* on his left Hand, and the King of *Scotland* next before *Castile*. Now indeed the King of *Spain* being so much improved, is the *dearly beloved Son of the Church*; and arrogateth to himself the place above all other *Princes*; but in time of Pope *Julius*, the Controversie arising between the Ambassadors of the two *Princes* for Precedency: the Pope adjudged it to belong of right unto *England*. And Pope *Pius* the Fourth, upon the like Controversie arising between the Ambassadors of *France* and *Spain*, adjudged the Precedency to the *French*. And the present King of *France*, *Lewis* the 14th, forced the King of *Spain* to acknowledge that Right, upon a Quarrel arising between their Ambassadors in *London*, in the year 1661.

Touthing the *Souldiery* of *Engl.* and their most notable Achievements, both by Sea and Land, sufficient hath been said already. What Forces the *Kings* hereof have been able to Raise, and may command for present Service, will best be seen by the Action of King *Henry* the 8th at *Bulloign*, the Armies of Queen *Elizabeth* in 88, and the numbers of the Trained Bands of the several Counties. First, for the Action of King *Henry* the 8th, he had in his *Avant Guard* 12000 Foot, and 500 Light Horse in *blew Jackets* with red Guards; in the *Rere-ward* a like number both of Horse and Foot, and in the main Battel 20000 Foot; and 2000 Horse, all in *Red Jackets* and yellow Guards: the whole number 44000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. They drew after them 100 great Pieces, besides small ones, and for conveyance of their Ordnance, Baggage, and other necessities, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horses, besides other Carriages. In the next place for 88. the Queen dispersed in several places on the Southern Coasts of the Kingdom, to hinder the Landing of the Enemy, 25000 Soldiers of both sorts; at *Tilbury*, for the defence of the City of *London*, under the Command of the Earl of *Leicester*, 22000 Foot, and 1000 Horse: and for the Guard of her own Person, under the Lord *Hunsdon*, 84000 Foot, and 2000 Horse: in all the number of 84000 men; besides those goodly Troops which the Nobility and Gentry did present her with, at their own

proper Charges. And as for the Trained Bands, the number of both sorts disciplined and mustered to be ready upon all occasions: in the eighth year of King *James*, (for I have since seen no Muster-Roll of them) amounted to 296130 able men, 141315 armed men, 935 Demilances, 6777 Light-Horse, 19345 Pioneers; besides what was required of *Peers* and *Prelates*, supposed to amount to 20000 armed men, and 4000 Light-Horse. And for their strength at Sea, besides the *Navy Royal*, consisting of about 30 gallant Ships, (besides the lesser Vessels; the best and bravest that any Prince of *Christendom* can boast of as his own propriety; there are such store of *Colliar* and *Merchants* Ships, fit for any Service, that in the year 88 aforesaid, the Queen had 100 Sail of good Ships to oppose the *Spaniards*; and 20 more to wait upon the motions of the Duke of *Parma*. And in the year 1597, she set out for the *Island Voyage*, no fewer than 120 Sail of all sorts, of which 60 were men of War.

As for the *Revenues* of this Kingdom, *Boterus* reckoned them in the time of King *Henry* the 7th, to be no more than 400000 Crowns per annum; but grants, that afterward they were improved to a Million more, by King *Henry* the 8th, the dissolution of Monasteries, and the benefit redounding from the Court of Wards, making that improvement. And to say truth, the Universal Dissolution of Religious Houses of all sorts, did for the time so mightily increase his annual Income, that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentation*, and the Court of *Surveyors*) for the better managing of the same. But these Additions being wasted by his own exorbitant expences, and the several Alienations made by King *Edward* the Sixth; those Courts of new erection were dissolved again; and the Revenue fell so short of its former height, that in the 12th year of Queen *Elizabeth*, the profits of the Crown (besides the Court of Wards, and the *Dutchie* of *Lancaster*) came to no more than to 188197 l. 4 s. Of which 110612 l. 13 s. went that year out upon the Navy, the charge of Household, and other necessary assignments. Since which time the great increase of Trading, both at home and abroad, and the great glut of Money in all parts of the World, hath added very much to the *Intrads*. The certainty whereof as I do not know, so neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hearsay.

The Principal Orders of *Knighthood* are, and were, 1. of the *Round Table*, instituted by *Arthur* King of the *Britains*, and one of the Worlds *Nine Worthies*. It consisted of 150 Knights, whose Names are recorded in the History of King *Arthur*, there were Sir *Ure*, a wounded Knight came to be cured of his hurts; it being his fate that only the best Knight of the Order should be his *Chirurgeon*: The Arms of most of these, with their several *Blazons* (I know not on how good Authority) we find in *Bara*, the *French Herald*. The principal of them were Sir *Lancelot*, Sir *Tristram*, Sir *Lamorock*, Sir *Gawin*, &c. all placed at one *Round Table*, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The *Round Table* hanging in the great Hall at *Winchester*, is falsely called *Arthurs Round Table*, it being not of sufficient Antiquity, and containing but 24 Seats. Of these Knights they are reported many fabulous Stories. They ended with their *Founder*, and are feigned by that *Lucian* of *France*, *Rablais*, to be the Ferry-men of Hell; and that their pay is a piece of mouldy Bread, and a philop on the Nose.

2. Of *S. George*, called commonly the *Garter*, instituted by King *Edward* the Third, to increase Vertue and Valour in the hearts of his Nobility; or as some will, in honour of the Countess of *Salisbury* *Garter*, of which Lady the King formerly had been enamoured. But this I take to be a vain and idle *Romance*, derogatory both to the *Founder*, and the Order; first published by *Polydore Virgil*, a Stranger to the Affairs of *England*, and by him taken upon no better ground than *fama vulgi*, the tradition of the common People; too trifling a Foundation for so great a Building; Common bruit, being so infamous an Historian,

Historian, that wise Men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it. But for this fame or common bruit, the vanity and improbabilities thereof have been elsewhere canvassed. Suffice it to observe in this time and place, that the *Garter* was given unto this Order, in testimony of that bond of Love and Affection, wherewith the *Knights* or *Fellows* of it were to be bound severally unto one another, and all of them jointly to the King as the *Sovereign* of it. So saith the *Register* of the Order, (in which occurreth not one word of the Ladies *Garter*) affirming that King *Edward* did so fit the Habit unto that design, *Ut omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*. But to return unto the Order, there are of it 26 *Knights*, of which the Kings of *England* are *Sovereigns*: And is so much desired for its excellency, that eight Emperors, twenty one Foreign Kings, twenty two Foreign Dukes and Princes, besides divers Noblemen of other Countries have been *Fellows* of it. The Ensign is a blue *Garter*, buckled on the left Leg, on which these words are embroider'd, viz. *Hony soit qui mal y pense*. About their Necks they wear a *Blue Ribbond*, at the end of which hangeth this Image of *St. George*, upon whose Day the *Installations* of the new *Knights* are commonly celebrated.

3. Of the *Bath*, brought first into *England*, 1399. by *Henry* the Fourth. They are created at the *Coronation* of Kings and Queens, and the *Installation* of the Princes of *Wales*. Their Duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the King's Rights. The

Knights thereof distinguished by a *Red Ribbond*, which they wear ordinarily about their Necks, to difference them from *Knights Bachelors*, of whom they have in all places the precedency; unless they be also the Sons of Noblemen, to whom their Birth gives it before all Orders.

4. Of *Baronets*, an Order instituted by King *Jarvis*. the Ninth Year of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of *Ulster*. They have Precedency of the *Knights of the Baths*, but not of those of the *Garter*, nor of the younger Sons of the Nobility. But this being Hereditary, not Personal, and rather Civil than Military, is not so properly to be ranked amongst Orders of Knighthood.

The Arms of the Realm of *England*, are *Mars*, three *Lyons passant Gardant*, *Sol*. The reason why these Arms, quartered with the *French*, took the second place, are, 1. Because that *France* at the time of the first quartering of them, was the larger and more famous Kingdom. 2. That the *French* seeing the honour done to their Arms, might more easily be induced to have acknowledged the *English Title*. 3. Because the *English Arms* were compounded of the *Lion of Aquitaine*, and the two *Lions of Normandy*, being both *French Duchies*.

There were in *England*, at and since the time of the Reformation.

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 26.

W A L E S.

WALES is bounded on all sides with the Sea, except towards *England* on the East; from which separated by the River *Dee*, and a line drawn to the River *Wie*. Anciently it extended Eastwards to the River *Severn*, till by the puissance of *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, the *Welch* or *Britains* were driven out of the plain Countries beyond that River, and forced to betake themselves to the Mountains; where he caused them to be shut up and divided from *England* by an huge Ditch, called in *Welch*, *Claudb Offa*, i. e. *Offa's Dike*: Which Dike beginning at the influx of the *Wie* into the *Severn*, not far from *Chepstow*, extendeth 84 Miles in length, even as far as *Chester*, where the *Dee* is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a Law made by *Harold*, That if any *Welchman* was found with a Weapon on this side of it, he should have his Right-hand cut off by the King's Officers.

The Name of *Wales* some derive from *Ihwallo*, the Son of *Cadwallador*, who with the small remainder of his *British* Subjects, made good the fastnesses of this Country, and was the first who had the Title of King of *Wales*. Others conceive that the Name of *Welch* and *Wales*, was given them by the *Saxons*; who having possessed themselves of all the rest of the Country, called the *Britains*, who lived here by the Name of *Walsh*, which in their Language signifieth as much as *Aliens*; because they differed from them both in their Laws and Language: which is the general Opinion. Most probable it is, that as the *Britains* derive their Pedigree from the *Galls* (as before was proved) so they might still retain the Name; and were called *Wallish* by the *Saxons*, instead of *Gallish*: The *Saxons* used in most Words *W.* for *G.* as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed the rather, because the *Frenchmen* to this day call the Country *Galles*, and the eldest Son of *England*, *La Prince de Galles*: As also that the *Dutch* or *Germans*,

(of whom the *Saxons* are a part) do call such Nations as inhabit on the Skirts of *France*, by the Name of *Wallons*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, before it had the Name of *Wales*, were the *Silures*, possessing the Counties of *Hereford*, *Brecknock*, *Radnor*, *Monmouth*, and *Clamorgan*, all *Glocestershire* beyond the *Severn*, and the South parts of *Worcestershire* on the same side also: their chief Towns, *Ariconium*, now *Hereford*, (not reckon'd since the time of *Offa*, as a part of *Wales*,) *Baleum*, now *Buelth*, in *Brecknock*, *Cobannium*, now *Abergavenny*, in *Monmouth*; *Magni*, now *New Radnor*, in the County so named; and *Bovium*, now *Boverton*, in *Glamorgan*. 2. The *Dimetæ*, possessing *Cardigan*, *Caermarthen*, and *Pembrokeshire*, whose chief Towns were *Loven-tium*, now *New-Castle*, in *Caermarthen*; *Muridunum*, or *Caermarthen* it self: and *Oclopitæ*, where now stands *S. Davids*, by the *Welch* called *Meneu*, whence that Bishop hath the Name of *Menevensis* in *Latin*. 3. The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Anglesey*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; with the North part of *Worcestershire* beyond the River *Severn*, and all *Shropshire*, on the same side of the River. Their chief Towns were *Segontium*, now *Caer Seont*, in *Carnarvonshire*; *Cononium*, now *Convey* in the same County; *Bonium*, where after stood the famous Monastery of *Ban-chor*, in *Flintshire*; and *Mediolanium*, now *Llanvillin*, in the County of *Montgomery*. By these three Nations was all that Tract possessed, which lieth on the other side of the *Severn*. A very stout and hardy People, and so impatient of the Yoke, that two of the three Legions which the *Romans* kept constantly in *Britain*, as before is said, were planted in and near this People, the better to contain them in due obedience; that is to say, the second Legion at *Caer Leon* upon *Urk*, of which more anon; and the twentieth at *Deurvana*, where now stands *West-Chester*.

Chester. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation subject to the Power of *Rome*; and no less difficult to bring them under the Command of the *Saxons*, whom they withstood, when all the rest of *Britain* had been conquered by them; and lived to see their *Victors* overcome by the *Normans*, before themselves had yielded to a foreign Yoke.

The Christian Faith planted amongst the *Britains*, in the time of *Lucius*, they still retained, when all the rest of the Island had been relapsed to *Paganism*: and they retained it not in secret, as afraid to own it, but in a well constituted Church. Insomuch that *Augustine* the Monk, when he first preached the Gospel to the *English Saxons*, found here no fewer than seven Bishops; that is to say, *Herefordensis*, *Tavenfis*, *Paternensis*, *Banchorensis*, *Ebwyensis*, *Wiccienfis*, and *Morganensis*, (or rather *Menevensis*;) all which, excepting only *Paternensis*, do still remain amongst us, though in other Names; *Hereford*, and *Worcester*, (*Wiccienfis*) reckon'd now in *England*; *St. Davids* or *Menevensis*, *Tavenfis* or *Llandaff*, *Bangor*, and *Ebwyensis*, or *St. Asaph*, in *Wales*, according to the present boundaries and limits of it: And as they did retain the *Faith*, so they retained it after the Tradition of their Predecessors; neither submitting unto *Augustine* as Archbishop of *Canterbury*, nor to the Pope from whom he came as *Oecumenical*, or chief Pastor of the Church of *Christ*; nor receiving any new Doctrines or Traditions from them; but standing to those Principles of *Liberty* and *Religion* which they were possessed of, till all the World almost had yielded to that powerful See. Not manumitted from the vassalage and thralldom to it, till they embraced the Reformation of the Church of *England* in Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship; the Liturgy whereof was by the command of Queen *Elizabeth*, translated into the *Welch* or *British*; as the Bible also was by virtue of an Act of Parliament, in the Fifth of that Queen, the care thereof committed to the Bishop of *Hereford*, and the four Bishop's of *Wales*. But because the Bible then set forth was only in a large Church Volume; it was in the beginning of the Reign of King *Charles* reduced to a more portable Bulk, at the cost and charge of my Cousin, Mr. Rowland Heylin, one of the Aldermen of *London*; who also caused the Book called, *The Practice of Piety* to be Printed in that Language for the instruction of the People: and a *Welch* or *British* Dictionary to be made and published, for the understanding of the Language.

But to return unto the Church, and Affairs thereof, for the better ordering of the same, it hath been long ago divided into four Diocesses (besides that of *Hereford*) for the exercise of *Ecclesiastical Discipline*, those Diocesses subdivided into nine Arch-Deconries, as before in *England*: all subject heretofore to their own Primate or Archbishop, residing in the City of *Isca Silurum*, the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Britannia Secunda*, called by the *Welch* or *Britains*, *Caer-Leon*, or the City of the *Legion*, from the second Legion fixt there for defence of the Province; and *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, because situate on the River so named. But this City being too much exposed to the fury of the *Saxons*, the Archiepiscopal See was translated to *Meneu*, standing on a Promontory in the extreame Angle of *Pembrokeshire*, by *David* then Archbishop thereof, and near of Kin to *Arthur*, that renowned King of the *Britains*; from whom, in tract of time, the Name of *Meneu* being left off, the See and City came to be called *St. Davids*. From *David* unto *Sampson* the twenty sixth Archbishop of the *Welch*, (being above 400 Years) did they hold this Dignity; but then the Pestilence extremely raging in these Parts, Archbishop *Sampson* carried with him the *Episcopal Pall*, and therewith the Dignity it self to *Dole* in *Bretagne*. After which time we hear of no Archbishop in *Wales*, in Name and Title, though the Power proper thereunto still remained among them: The *Welch* Bishops acknowledging no other Primate, nor receiving Consecration from any other hands than their

own Bishop of *St. Davids*, till Bishop *Barnard* was compelled to submit himself to the Power and Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in the time of King *Henry the First*.

But its time to look upon the face of the Country, as it stands at the present, which we find Mountainous and Barren; not able to maintain its People but by helps elsewhere. To make amends for which defect, there were some Silver Mines discover'd in it not long since, by *Sir Hugh Middleton*, Knight and Baronet; not only to the great honour of his own Country, but to the Profit and Renown of the whole Island of *Great Britain*. Their chief Commodities are coarse Cloths, entituled commonly by the Name of *Welch Freeze*, and Cottons; which Merchandise was heretofore brought to *Osweestre* (the furthest Town of *Shropshire*) as the common *Empory*; there bought by the Merchants of *Shrewsbury*. But the *Welch* coveting to draw the Staple more into their own Country, occasioned the Merchant to hold off from buying their Commodities; till in the end the Merchant got the better of them, and enforced them to settle the whole Trade at *Shrewsbury*, where it still continueth.

To speak of Mountains in a Country which is wholly Mountainous, were a thing unnecessary; yet of most note are those of 1. *Snowdon*, 2. *Brechin*, 3. *Rardurvaure*, and 4. *Plinlimmon*: Not much observable but for their vast height, and those many notable Rivers which issue from them. The principal whereof are, 1. *Dee*, in *Latin* called *Deva*, arising out of *Rardurvaure Hills* in *Merionethshire*, and running into the Sea not far from *Chester*. Over this River, *Edgar*, King of *England*, was rowed triumphantly in his Barge by eight inferior Kings, Vassals and Tributaries to him, that is to say, *Kenneth*, King of the *Scots*; *Malcolm*, King of *Cumberland*; *Mac-cuis*, King of the *Isles*; *Dufwal*, *Gryffith*, *Howel*, *Jago*, and *Indetbel*, Princes or Kings of *Wales*; using these words to such as attended on him, that then his Successors might call themselves Kings of *England* when they did the like. This was in the Year 973. and the last of his Reign. 2. *Wie*, in *Latin* called *Vaga*, arising from *Plinlimmon-Hills*, and emptying it self into the *Severn* at *Chepstow*. More in the heart of the Country (for these are but borders for the greatest part of their course.) 3. *Conwey*, which rising in *Merionethshire*, and dividing the Counties of *Denbigh* and *Carnarvon*, mingleth with the Sea at *Abur Conwey*. 4. *Tywie*, which rising in *Montgomeryshire*, and passing between the Counties of *Cardigan*, *Pembroke*, and *Caermarthen*, runneth into the Sea a little below *Cardigan*. 5. *Chedlady*, which runneth quite through *Pembrokeshire*, emptieth it self into *Milford-Haven*, one of the most capacious and safest Havens, not of *England* only, but of all the World.

The Men are of a faithful Carriage towards all Men, especially towards one another in a strange Country, and towards Strangers in their own. Of a temper questionless much enclining to *Choler*, as being subject to the Passion by *Aristotle* called *αλεχολία*, by which Men are quickly moved to Anger, and as soon appeased; of all Angers the best and noblest. Their Language (the old *British*) hath the least commixture of foreign words of any in *Europe*; and by reason of its many Consonants and guttural Letters, is not so pleasing as some others in the Pronunciation. A Language not much studied by those of other Nations, in regard that such of the Inhabitants who have addicted themselves to Learning, have rather chose to express themselves in the *Latin* or *English* Tongues, than that of their own Native Country. The principal of which (not to say any thing of *Merlin*, the *Tages* of the *Welch* or *British*) were 1. *Gildas*, for his great knowledge surnamed *Sapiens*. 2. *Geofry of Monmouth*, and 3. *Giraldus Cambrensis*, the Historians; and of later times, 4. *William Morgan*, the Translator of the Bible into *Welch*, for which performance most deservedly made Bishop of *Landaff*. 5. *Sir John Price*, the Antiquary. 6. *Owen*, the Epigrammatist, &c.

The whole Country (not taking in the Counties of *Shropshire* and *Monmouth* into the reckoning) contain in it twelve Shires only; of which, seven were set out by King *Edward* the First; that is to say, *Glamorgan*, *Pembroke*, *Caermarthen*, *Cardigan*, *Merioneth*, *Anglesey*, and *Carnarvon*; the other five, viz. the Counties of *Denbigh*, *Flint*, *Montgomery*, *Radnor*, and *Brecknock*, were after added out of the *Marchlands* by King *Henry VIII*. These twelve Shires are again contracted or subdivided into four Circuits, for the administration of Justice. Of which the first containeth the Counties of *Montgomery*, *Flint*, and *Denbigh*; the second those of *Carnarvon*, *Anglesey*, and *Merioneth*; the third those of *Caermarthen*, *Cardigan*, and *Pembroke*; and the fourth those of *Glamorgan*, *Brecknock*, and *Radnor*.

In these 12 Shires are reckoned one Chase, 13 Forests, 36 Parks, 230 Rivers, and an hundred Bridges. They contain also 1016 Parishes, amongst which, four Cities, 55 Market-Towns, and 41 Castles of the old erection. The Cities small, poor, and inconsiderable. The Market Towns, those especially on the *Marches* and out-parts of the Country, very fair and strong; as being not only built for Commerce and Trade, but fortified with Walls and Castles to keep in the *Welch*; and so employed till the incorporating *Wales* with *England*, took away all occasion of the old Hostilities. And for the Castles in the Inlands, partly by the iniquity of time, which is *edax rerum*, but chiefly by the Policy of the Kings of *England*, who would not suffer any places of strength to remain in a Country almost inaccessible, and amongst Men apt to take the advantage offered; the very ruines of them are now brought to ruine.

But to proceed more particularly, the four Cities (or Episcopal Sees) are 1. *St Davids*, formerly the *Metropolitan* of *Wales*, situate on the Promontory in *Pembrokeshire*, by the Ancients called *Octopitæ*; in a safe place, and far enough from the *Saxons*, whom the *Welch* most feared, but incommodious enough for all the rest of the Clergy to repair unto it; and not so safe neither unto the Inhabitants of it, in respect of sundry other Nations, who have often spoiled and defaced it. For standing near the Sea, it hath been frequently visited and spoiled by the *Danes*, *Norwegians*, and other Pirates; insomuch that the Bishops were enforced to remove their dwelling to *Caermarthen*; which brought the City (small enough before, when it at the biggest) to the condition of a Village. 2. *Llandaffe*, upon the River *Taffe*, whence it took the Name; *Llan*, in the *Welch* or *British*, signifying a Church; *Llandaffe*, the Church upon the *Taffe*: the Bishops whereof derive their Lineal Succellion from those of *Caer-Leon* upon *Uik*, though the Primacy or Archbishop's See were removed to *Menew*, a small Town now it is, God wot, nothing to rank it for a City but the Cathedral Church, and the Prebends Houses. 3. *S Asaph*, a small Town in *Flintshire*, so called from *S. Asaph*, the second Bishop hereof; left here by *Kentigern* a Scot, by whom the Cathedral Church was founded, about the Year 560. situate on the Banks of the River *Elwy*, thence called *Llan-Elwy* by the *Welch*, the Bishop *Elwynensis* in some Latin Writers. 4. *Bangor* upon the *Menai*, a Branch of the *Irish* Sea, of no more beauty and renown than the other three; but only for the Cathedral founded here by the first Bishops, defaced by *Owen Glendower*, and afterwards re-edified by *Henry Dean*, Bishop hereof, *An.* 1496.

Towns of chief note (for these Cities have not so much in them which is worth the noting) are 1. *Shrewsbury*, counted now in *England*, but heretofore the Seat of the Princes of *Powysland*, who had here their Palace; which being burnt in some of their Broils with *England*, is now converted into Gardens for the use of the Townsmen. The Town well traded and frequented by the *Welch* and *English*, the common Empory of both; well built, and strongly situate on a rising Ground, almost encompassed with the *Severn*; that part thereof which is not fenced with the River, being fortified with a very strong Castle,

the work of *Roger de Montgomery*, the first Earl hereof, *Anno* 1067. Over the River, for convenience of Passage, it hath two Bridges, and but two, the one towards *England*, and the other called the *Welch Bridge*, which is towards *Wales*; built by *Leoline* or *Llewellen* the First, one of the Princes of *North-Wales*, whose they conceive to be that *Statua* which is there standing on the Gate. Remarkable since the times of King *Henry* the Sixth, for giving the Title of Earl to the noble Family of the *Talbots*; a Family of great Honour, and as great an Estate, till the parcelling of the Lands betwixt the Daughters and Co-heirs of *Gilbert Talbot*, late Earl hereof; according to the ill Custom of *England*, where many times the Estate goes to the Females, and the Honour (with nothing to maintain it) to the next Heir-Male. 2. *Banbor*, by *Beda* called *Bancornaburg*, a famous Monastery of the *Britains*; containing above 2000 Monks, attending their Devotions at the times appointed, at other times labouring for their livelihood; most cruelly and unmercifully slaughter'd by the *Saxons*, at the instigation of *Austin* the first Archbishop of *Canterbury*, offended that they would not yield unto his Authority. 3. *Carnarvon*, on the *Menai* before-mentioned, not far from *Bangor*, (the Monastery of *Banbor* being in *Flintshire*) well walled, and fortified with a strong Castle by King *Edward* the First, after his Conquest of the Country, formerly much resorted to, for the Chancery and Exchequer of the Princes of *North-Wales*. 4. *Denbigh*, well seated on the Banks of the River *Istrad*, which from thence runs into the *Clwyd*, the fairest River of all those Parts. A Town well traded and frequented, especially since it was made by King *Henry* the Eighth, the head Town of a County; before which time of great resort, as being the head Town of the Barony of *Denbigh*, conceived to be one of the goodliest Territories in *England*; having more Gentlemen holding of it than any other. 5. *Matravall*, not far from *Montgomery*, heretofore a fair and capacious Town, honour'd with the Palace, and made the chief Seat of the Princes of *Powysland*, thence called Kings of *Matravall*; now a poor Village. 6. *Caermarthen*, *Maridunum* anciently, whence the modern Name, the *Britains* adding *Caer* unto it; not called so from *Caer-Merlin*, or the City of *Merlin*, enchanted by the *Lady of the Lake*, in a deep Cave hereabouts, as old Fables and Romances tell us. A fair large Town, beautified with a Collegiate Church; to which there was a purpose in the time of King *Edward* the Sixth, of removing the Episcopal See from *St Davids*. Not far off, on the top of an Hill, stands *Dinevour-Castle*, the chief Seat of the Princes of *South-Wales*, thence called Kings of *Dinevour*; who had their Chancery and Exchequer in the Town of *Caermarthen*. 7. *Haverford West*, situated in the *Chersoneuse*, or *Demy-Island* of *Pembrokeshire*, by the *Welch* called *Ros*; by the *English*, *Little-England* beyond *Wales*, by reason of the *English* Tongue there spoken; a Town the best traded and frequented of all *South-Wales*. 8. *Milford*, in the same County of *Pembroke*, famous for giving Name to the most safe and capacious Haven in all the Island, consisting of sundry Creeks, Bays, and Roads for Ships, which make it capable of entertaining the greatest Navy: The Landing-place of *Henry* the Seventh, when he came for *England*. 9. *Monmouth*, situate at the mouth or influx of the River *Munow*. (where it falleth into the *Wie*) whence it had the Name. A Town belonging anciently to the House of *Lancaster*, the Birth-place of King *Henry* the Fifth, called *Henry* of *Monmouth*. That one particular enough to renown the place, and therefore we shall add no more. 10. *Ludlow*, a Town of great resort, by reason of the Court and Council of the *Marches*, kept here for the most part ever since the incorporating of *Wales* with *England*, for the ease of the *Welch*, and bordering Subjects, in their Suits at Law. Situate on the confluence of the *Tem*, and *Corve*, and beautified with a very strong Castle; the Palace heretofore of some of the Princes of *Wales* of the Blood-Royal of *England*, at such times as they resided in this Country (of

(of which more anon;) and of late times, the ordinary Seat of the Lord *President of Wales*; now reckon'd as all *Shropshire* on that side of the *Severn*, as a part of *England*. Of *Anglesey*, and the Towns thereof, we shall speak hereafter, now taking notice only of *Aberfraw*, the Royal-Seat sometimes of the Princes of *North-Wales*, call'd thence *Kings of Aberfraw*.

The Story of the *Britains* till the time of *Cadwallader* their last King, we have had before. After whose retirement unto *Rome*, the whole Name and Nation became divided into three Bodies; that is to say, the *Cornish Britains*, the *Britains of Cumberland*, and the *Britains of Wales*. The *Cornish Britains* governed by their own Dukes, till the time of *Egbert* the first Monarch of *England*; by whom subdued, *An. 809.* and made a Province of that Kingdom. The *Britains of Cumberland* had their own Kings also, (some of whose Names occur in Story) till the Year 946. when conquered by *Edmund*, King of *England*, the Son of *Athelstan*, their last King being named *Dammilus*, as *Matthew of Westminster* informs us. But the main Body of them getting into the mountainous parts beyond the *Severn*, did there preserve the Name and Reputation of their Country; although their Princes were no longer call'd *Kings of Britain*, but of the *Wallish-men* or *Welch*; and much ado they had to make good that Title; all the plain Country beyond *Severn* being taken from them by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*; and themselves made Tributaries for the rest by *Egbert* before-mentioned, by *Athelstan* afterwards. Which last impos'd a Tribute on them of 20 pounds of Gold, 300 pounds of Silver, and 200 head of Cattel yearly; exchanged in following times for a Tribute of Wolves. But howsoever, they continued for a time the Title of Kings, whose Names are thus set down by *Glover*, in his *Catalogue of Honour*, published by *Milles*.

The Kings of Wales.

A. Ch.

690 1 *Idwallo*, Son of *Cadwallader*.
 720 2 *Roderick*, Son of *Idwallo*. 33.
 755 3 *Conan*, Son of *Roderic*. 63.
 818 4 *Mervin*, the Son in law of *Conan*. 25.
 843 5 *Roderick II.* surnamed the Great, Son of *Mervin*, who divided his Kingdom, small enough before, amongst his Sons; giving *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*, to *Amarawd* his eldest Son; to *Cadel*, his second Son, *Debeubarth*, or *South-Wales*; and *Powys-land* to his youngest Son *Mervin*; conditioned, that the two younger Sons and their Successors, should hold their Estates in Fee of the Kings of *North-Wales*, and acknowledge the Sovereignty thereof, as *Liege-men* and *Homagers*. According unto which appointment, it was ordained in the Constitutions of *Howel Dda*, the Legislator of *Wales*, that as the Kings of *Aberfraw* were bound to pay 63 pounds in a way of Tribute to the Kings of *London*; so the Kings of *Dynevor* and *Altraval*, should pay, in a way of Tribute, the like Sum to the Kings of *Aberfraw*. But notwithstanding the reservation of the Sovereignty to the Kings of *North-Wales*, *Roderick* committed a great *Solacism* in point of State, by this dismembering of his Kingdom, especially at a time when all the Kingdoms of the *Saxons* were brought into one, and that one apt enough upon all occasions to work upon the weakness of the neighbouring *Welch*; which had they continued under one sole Prince, might have preserved their Liberty, and themselves a Kingdom, as well as those of *Scotland*, for so long a time, against the Power and Puissance of the Kings of *England*. Yet was not this the worst of the mischief neither; his Successors subdividing (by his example) their small Estates into many parcels, insomuch that of the Eight tributary Kings which row'd King *Edgar* on the *Dee*, five of them were the Kings or Princes of *Wales*. But *Roderick* did not think of that which was to come, whom we must follow in our Story, according to the division of the

Country made by him into three Estates of *North-Wales*, *South-Wales*, and *Powys-land*.

1. *NORTH-WALES*, or *Guinedth*, contained the Counties of *Merioneth* and *Carnarvan*, the Isle of *Anglesey*, and the greatest parts of *Denbigh* and *Flint-shires*. The chief Towns whereof are *Bangor*, *Denbigh*, *Canarvan*, *Aberfraw*, spoken of before; and some in *Anglesey*, whereof we shall speak more hereafter. The Country (*Anglesey* excepted) the most barren and unfruitful part of *Wales*; but withal the safest and furthest from the danger of the encroaching *English*; which possibly might be the reason why it was set out for the portion of the Eldest Son, in whom the Sovereignty of the *Welch* was to be preserved by the Kings or

Princes of North-Wales.

A. Ch.

877 1 *Amarawd*. 36.
 913 2 *Idwallo*, Son of *Amarawd*.
 3 *Merick*, Son of *Idwallo*.
 4 *James*, or *Jago*, Brother of *Merick*.
 1076 5 *Conan*, Son of *James*, or *Jago*.
 1099 6 *Gryffith* ap *Conan*.
 1120 7 *Owen Guinedth*, Son of *Gryffith*.
 1178 8 *David* ap *Owen*, Son of *Owen Guinedth*.
 1194 9 *Llewellen* ap *Forweth*, the Nephew of *David*.
 1240 10 *David* ap *Llewellen*.
 1246 11 *Llewellen II.* Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David* ap *Llewellen*, the last Prince of *Wales*, of the *British* Race. Of whom it is said, that once consulting with a Witch, he was told by her that it was his destiny, to be carried in triumph through *London*, with a Crown on his Head. Hereupon making some Excursions on the *English* Borders, he drew upon himself the whole part of King *Edward* the First, which not being able to withstand, and the King as unwilling on the other side not to fight with Mountains, Commissioners were appointed to conclude the differences: *Robert Lord Tipstaff*, and some others, for the King of *England*; for the *Welch* Prince, *Grono ap Hygon*, a great Man of that Country, descended from *Brackwal Skybrack*, one of the Princes of *Powys-land*, (from whom if *Cambden Clarenceux* be of any credit, the Author of these Papers doth derive his Pedigree) under whom that Family had the Office of *Hereditary Cup-bearer*, and from thence their Name, *Heylyn*, *Promys*, *sive a poculus*, *que rex in proprium nomen abiit* (saith the *Welch* Dictionary.) By those Commissioners it was concluded and agreed on, that *Llewellen* should enjoy a part of the Country with the Title of Prince, during his Life; the rest in present, and the whole after his Decease, to be surrendred over to the King of *England*. But *David*, the Brother of *Llewellen*, finding himself excluded by this Agreement, from the hope of Succession, incensed his Brother and the *Welch* to a new Revolt; the issue thereof was the taking of *David*, executed by the hand of Justice; and the death of *Llewellen*, slain in Battel near the *Buelth* in *Brecknock-shire*: Whose Head being pitched upon a Stake, and adorned with a Paper Crown, was by a Horseman carried triumphantly through *London*, *An. 1282*. And so the Prophecie was fulfilled. In him ended the Line of the Princes of *North-Wales*, after they had for the space of 405 Years resisted not only the private Undertakers and Adventurers of *England*, but the Forces of many Puissant Monarchs, whose Attempts they always made frustrate, by retiring into the heart of their Country, and leaving nothing for the *English* to encounter with, but their Woods and Mountains. But now the fatal period of the *British* Liberty being come, they were constrained to yield to the stronger. What followed after this, we shall see anon.

The Arms of these Princes was quarterly *Gules* and *Or*, four Lions Passant Guardant counterchanged.

2. **POWYS-LAND** contained the whole Counties of *Montgomery* and *Radnor*, all *Shropshire* beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*, and the rest of *Denbigh* and *Flintshires*; comprehending by the estimation of those times, fifteen *Cantrets*, or *hundreds* of Villages; the word *Cant* signifying an Hundred, and *Tret* a Village. The principal Cities or Towns of it were, *St. Asaph*, *Shrewsbury*, *Matrawal*, spoken of before. A Country more partaking of the nature and fertility of *England*, than the parts belonging unto *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*; but always lying in harms way, by reason of the Neighbourhood of the more potent *English*; and therefore given by *Roderick* to *Mervin*, his youngest Son, partly because he was the youngest; but chiefly because he was a Man of an approved Valour, and so more fit to have his portion upon the Borders. In his Line it continued a long time together, but much afflicted and dismembred by the Earls of *Chester* and *Shrewsbury*, who took from them a good part of *Flint*, *Denbigh*, and *Shropshire*; and by the Princes of *North-Wales*, who cast many a greedy Eye upon it. Of the Successors of Prince *Mervin*, I find no good *Constat*, more than of *Breckwel Skythrac*, before remembred. The last that held it all entire was *Meredith ap Blethyn*, who following the ill example of *Roderick Mawr*, divided it betwixt *Madoc* and *Gryffith*, his two Sons. Of which *Madoc* died at *Winchester*, *An.* 1165. in the time of King *Henry* the Second, his part hereof depending after his decease, on the Fortunes of *Guinedth*: And *Gryffith* was by *Henry* I. made Lord of *Powys* (the stile of Prince left off as too high and lofty.) In his Race it continued till the time of King *Edward* I. to whom, at a Parliament holden in *Shrewsbury*, *Owen ap Gryffith*, the fifth from *Gryffith ap Meredith* before-mentioned, surrendred his Place and Title; and received them of the King again to be holden in *Capite* and *free Baronage*, according to the Custom of *England*. *Avis*, or *Harris*, Daughter and Heir of this *Owen ap Gryffith*, was married unto *John Charleton*, *Valat* (or Gentleman of the Privy-Chamber) to King *Edward* the Second, by whom, in right of his Wife, he was made Lord *Powys*. *Edward* the Fifth also of this Line of the *Charletons*, was the last of that House; his Daughter *Jane* conveying the Estates and Title to the House of the *Greys*; and of them also five enjoyed it, the last Lord *Powys* of the Line or Race of *Mervin*, being *Edward Grey*, who died in the days of our Grand-Fathers. And so the Title lay extinct, until revived again in the Person of Sir *William Herbert* of *Red-Castle*, descended from the *Herberts*, Earl of *Pembroke*; created Lord *Powys*, by King *Charles* the First, *An.* 1629.

The Arms of the Princes of *Powysland*, were Or, a Lyon Rampant, Gules.

3. **SOUTH-WALES**, or *Debenbarth*, contained the Counties of *Monmouth*, *Glamorgan*, *Caermarthen*, *Cardigan*, and *Brecknock*; the greatest and most fruitful part of all *Wales*, but more exposed to the invasion of Foreign Nations, *English*, *Danes*, *Flemings*, and *Norwegians*, by whom the Sea Coasts were from time to time most grievously plagued; insomuch that the Kings and Princes hereof were enforced to remove their Seat from *Caermarthen*, where it was fixt at first, unto *Dynevor* Castle, as a place of greater strength and safety; where it continued till the Princes of it were quite extinct, called from hence *Kings of Dynevor*, as before is said. The chief Towns of it, *Caermarthen*, *Monmouth*, *Landaffe*, *S. Davids*, spoken of already. The Kings and Princes, as far as I can find upon any certainty, are these that follow,

The Princes of South-Wales.

A Chr.

- 877 1 *Cadel*, the Son of *Roderick Mawre*.
- 2 *Howel*.
- 907 3 *Howel Dha*, Sovereign King of *Wales*.
- 948 4 *Owen*, the Son of *Dha*.
- 5 *Meredith*, Son of *Owen*.

- 998 6 *Aeneas*, or *Evenus*, Brother of *Meredith*.
- 7 *Theodorct* the Great.
- 1077 8 *Rhese ap Theodore*.
- 1093 9 *Gryffith ap Rhese*.
- 10 *Rhese II. ap Gryffith*.

11 *Gryffith ap Rhese*, the last Prince of *South-Wales*, of the Line of *Cadel*, after they had with great struggling maintained their Liberty for the space of 300 Years and upwards; but so, that though they still preserved the Title of Princes, they lost a great part of their Country to the *Norman-English*. For in the Reign of *William Rufus*, *Bernard de Norman* a Noble *Norman*, seized upon those Parts which now make the County of *Brecknock*, being then a fair and goodly Lordship: And *Robert Fitz Haymon*, with some other noble Adventurers, made themselves Masters of *Glamorgan*, in which the Posterity of some of them are still remaining. Incouraged by their good success, *Arnulph* of *Montgomery*, in the time of King *Hen*, the First, won from the *Welch* a great part of *Dyvet*, which we now call *Pembrokeshire*; as the Earls of *Warren*, and Lord *Martino*, about the same times did prevail exceedingly in the Conquest of *Cardigan* and *Monmouth*. So that the poor Princes had no Country left entire, but *Caernarthen* only, too little to maintain them in so high a Title. And though this last *Gryffith*, in the time of the Wars in *England*, betwixt *Maud* the Empress, and King *Stephen*, had recovered a great part of his lost Estate; yet neither he nor his did enjoy it long; himself deceasing shortly after, and his two Sons, *Cymmerick* and *Meredith*, being taken by King *Henry* the Second, who most cruelly put out their Eyes: Yet did the *Welch*, as well as possibly they could, endeavour to preserve the Liberty which their Fathers left them; till the Felicity and Wisdom of King *Edward* the First, put an end unto the Wars of *Wales*, and settled them in some degree of Peace and Quiet.

But before we come to speak to this, we are to shew another Catalogue of the Kings and Princes of *Wales*, different from the Succellion of them before laid down; and made according to the History of *Wales*, writ by *Humphrey Lloyd*: this Catalogue containing the Succellion of the greater and predominant Princes, whether of *Gwynedth*, *Debenbarth*, or *Powys-land*; such as gave Law unto the rest, and had the honour to be called *Kings of Wales*, though Princes only of their own proper and particular Countries; as formerly we had a Catalogue of the Monarchs of the *English Saxons*, made out of the Predominant Princes of the *Saxon Heptarchy*. Only we shall find some in the following Catalogue, who were not naturally and lineally Princes of any of the three, and therefore not expressed in the former Tables; but such as by strong hand had intruded into those Estates, to the prejudice of the right Heirs, overpowered by them.

The Kings and Princes of Wales, according to the Welch History.

A. Ch.

- 688 1 *Ivor*, a potent Interloper, upon *Cadwallader's* departure usurped the Kingdom.
- 690 2 *Idwallo*, or *Edwall*, Son of *Cadwallader*, restored unto his Father's Throne.
- 720 3 *Roderick Malbrinnoc*, the Son of *Idwallo*.
- 755 4 *Conan Tiendaetbry*, the Son of *Roderick*.
- 820 5 *Mervin Urich*, in right of *Eisyllt* his Wife, the Daughter of *Conan*.
- 843 6 *Roderick Mawre*, (who divided *Wales* into three Estates) the Son of *Mervin*.
- 877 7 *Amarawdb*, Prince of *Gwynedth*, the Son of *Roderick Mawre*.
- 913 8 *Edwal Voel*, Prince of *Guinedth*, Son of *Amarawdb*; made tributary to *Atbelstan* King of *England*.
- 940 9 *Howel Dha*, (or the Good) Prince of *Debenbarth*, and *Powys*.

M m

948

- 948 10 *Iseval*, and *Iago*, Sons of *Edwal Mael*, to whom King *Edgar* did release the Tribute ordained by King *Atelstan*, to be paid in Money, for a tribute of *Wolves*; of which we spake before when we were in *England*.
- 982 11 *Howel*, the Son of *Iseval*, succeeded in the Kingdom of *Wales*, his Father being still alive, and of right Prince of *Gwynedib*.
- 984 12 *Cadwalan*, the Brother of *Howel*.
- 986 13 *Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Deheubarth*.
- 992 14 *Idwal III.* Son of *Merrick*, the Eldest Son of *Ithwal Mael*; which *Merrick* had been pretermitted, as unfit for Government.
- 1003 15 *Laden ap Blethard*, an Usurper.
- 1015 16 *Llewellyn ap Sitguth*, descended from *Amarawdb*, the first Prince of *Gwynedib*, or *North Wales*.
- 1021 17 *Iago ap Edwal*, Prince of *Gwynedib*, Son of *Idwal* the Third.
- 1037 18 *Gryffith ap Llewellyn*, the Son of *Llewellyn ap Sitguth*, and the Lady *Angharad*.
- 1061 19 *Elthyn*, and *Rhywallon*, Sons of *Angharad*, the Daughter of *Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Deheubarth*, by a second Husband.
- 1073 20 *Triabern ap Caradoc*, Cousin to *Blethyn*.
- 1078 21 *Gryffith*, Prince of *Gwynedib*, Son of *Conan*, the Son of *Iago ap Edwal*, one of the Princes of the same, did Homage to *William* the Conqueror, and was the last that had the Title of King of *Wales*.
- 1137 22 *Owen Gwynedib* Prince of *Gwynedib*, and Sovereign Prince of *Wales*, eldest Son of *Gryffith*.
- 1169 23 *David ap Owen*, Prince of *Gwynedib*, the younger Son of *Owen Gwynedib*.
- 1194 24 *Llewellyn*, Son of *Forwerth*, eldest Son of *Owen Gwynedib*, excluded by *David* his younger Brother.
- 1242 25 *David ap Llewellyn*, Prince of *Gwynedib*, Son of *Llewellyn ap Forwerth*.
- 1246 26 *Llewellyn*, Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David*, the last Sovereign Prince of *Wales*, of the Race of *Cadwalader*; overcome and slain in Battel by King *Edward* the First, *An.* 1282. as before is said; by means whereof the Principality of *Wales* was added to the Crown of *England*.

When King *Edward* had thus fortunately effected this great business, he gave unto his *English* Barons and other Gentlemen of note, many fair Signiorities and Estates; as well to reward them for their service in the Conquest, as to engage so many able Men, both in Purse and Power, for the perpetual defence and subjection of it. As for the Lordship of *Flint*, and the Towns and Estates lying on the Sea coasts, he held them in his own hands, both to keep him self strong, and to curb the *Welsh*: and (wherein he dealt like the politick Emperor *Augustus*) pretending the ease of such as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and Men of employment under himself only.

This done, he divided *Wales* into seven Shires, *viz.* 1. *Glamorgan*, 2. *Caermarthen*, 3. *Pembroke*, 4. *Cardigan*, 5. *Merioneth*, 6. *Caernarvon*, and 7. *Anglesey*, after the manner of *England*. Over each of these, as he placed a particular *English* Lieutenant, so he was very desirous to have one general *English* Vicegerent, over the whole Body of the *Welsh*. But this, when they mainly withstood he sent for his Wife, then great with Child, to *Carnarvon*, where she was deliver'd of a Son. Upon the news whereof the King assembled the *British* Lords, and offered to name them a Governour born in *Wales*, which could not speak one word of *English*, and whose Life no Man could tax. Such a one, when they had all sworn to obey, he named his young Son *Edward*; since which time our Kings eldest Sons are called *Princes of Wales*. There Inve-

stiture is perform'd by the imposition of a Cap of Estate, and a Coronet on his Head that is invested, as a token of his Principality; by delivering into his hand a *Verge*, being the emblem of Government; by putting a Ring of Gold on his Finger, to shew him that now he is a Husband to the Country, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a Patent, to hold the said Principality to him and his Heirs Kings of *England*. By which words the separation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themselves so excellent an occasion, of obliging unto them their eldest Son, when they please. In imitation of this Custom, *more ex Anglia translato* (saith *Mariana*) *John* the First of *Castile* and *Leon*, made his Son *Henry* Prince of the *Asturians*; which is a Country so craggy and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the *Wales of Spain*. And all the *Spanish* Princes even to these times, are honoured with this Title of Prince of the *Asturians*.

Notwithstanding this provident care of *Edward* the First, in establishing his Empire here; and the extremity of Law here used by *Henry* the Fourth, in reducing them to obedience, after the Rebellion of *Owen Glendower*: yet till the time of *Henry* the Eighth, and his Father, (both being extract from the *Welsh* Blood) they seldom or never contained themselves within the bounds of true Allegiance. For whereas before they were reputed as *Aliens*, this *Henry* made them (by Act of Parliament) one Nation with the *English*, subject to the same Laws, capable of the same Preferments, and priviledged with the same Immunities. He added also six Shires to the former number, out of those Countries which were before reputed as the Borders and *Marches of Wales*; and inabled them to send Knights and Burgeses into the *English* Parliaments; so that the Name and Language only excepted, there is now no difference between the *English* and *Welsh*; an happy Union.

The same King *Henry* established for the ease of his *Welsh* Subjects, a Court at *Ludlow* like unto the ordinary Parliaments in *France*; wherein the Laws are ministr'd according to the fashion of the Kings Courts of *Westminster*. The Court consisteth of one *President*, who is, for the most part, of the Nobility, and is generally called, the *Lord President of Wales*; of as many Counsellors as it shall please the King to appoint; one Attorney, one Solicitor, one Secretary, and the four Justices of the Counties of *Wales*. The Town it self (for this must not be omitted; adorned with a very fair Castle, which hath been the Palace of such Princes of *Wales*, of the *English* Blood, as have come into this Country, to solace themselves among their People. Here was young *Edward* the Fifth, at the death of his Father; and here died Prince *Arthur*, eldest Son of *Henry* the Seventh; both being sent hither by their Fathers to the same end, *viz.* by their Presence to satisfy and keep in order the unquiet *Welsh* men. And certainly, as the presence of the Prince was then a terror to the rebellious, so would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable People.

What the *Revenues* of this Principality are, I cannot say, yet we may boldly affirm, that they are not very small, by these reasons following, *viz.* 1. By the Composition which *Llewellyn*, the last Prince of *Wales*, made with *Edward* the First; who being Prince of *North Wales* only, and dispossessed of most of that, was fain to redeem the rest, of the said King *Edward*, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 10000 Pounds of our present Money) to be paid down in ready Coin; and for the residue to pay 1000 *l.* per Annum. And 2dly, by those two circumstances, in the marriage of the Lady *Catharine* of *Spain*, to the above-named Prince *Arthur*. For first, her Father *Ferdinand* being one of the warriest Princes that ever were in *Europe*, giving with her in Dowry 200000 Ducats; required for Jointure, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of *Chester*. And secondly, after the death of Prince *Arthur*, the Nobles of the

the Realm perswaded Prince Henry to take her to Wife; that so great a Treasure as the yearly Revenue of her Jointure might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Arms of the Princes of Wales differ from those of England, only by the addition of a Label of three points. But the proper and peculiar device, and which we commonly, though corruptly, call the *Princes Arms*, is a Coronet beautified with three Ostrich Feathers, and inscribed round with *ICH DIEN*, that is, *I serve*; alluding to that of the Apostle, *The Heir while he is a Child, differeth not from a Servant*. This Coronet was won by that valiant Prince, Edward the Black Prince, at the Battel of Cressie, from John King of Bohemia; who did there wear it, and whom he there slew. Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now shut up my Discourse of Wales, with that

testimony of the People, which Henry the Second used in a Letter to Emanuel Emperor of Constantinople; *The Welch Nation is so adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed Men; ready to spend their Blood for their Country, and pawn their Life for Liberty*. And adding only this, That since their incorporating with the English, they have shewed themselves most loyal, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State; cordially devoted to their King, and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties, and Religion, as well as any of the best of their Fellow-Subjects; whereof they have given good proof in these latter times.

There are in Wales.
Archbishops 1. Bishops 4.

The BORDERS.

Before we come into Scotland, we must of necessity pass through that Batable Ground, lying betwixt both Kingdoms; called, *THE BORDERS*; the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of Military Men, subtle, nimble, and by reason of their often Skirmishes, well-experienced and adventurous. Once the English Border extended as far as unto the Fryth, or Strait of Edinburgh on the East, and that of Dunbritton on the West (the first Fryth, by the Latins called *Bodotria*, and the latter *Gletta*;) betwixt which, where now standeth the Town of Sterling, was an ancient Bridge, built over the River which falleth into the Fryth of Edinburgh; on a Cross standing whereupon, was writ this Passport;

*I am Free-march, as Passengers may ken,
To Scots, to Britains, and to English-men.*

But when England groaned under the burden of the Danish Oppression, the Scots well husbanded that advantage; and not only enlarged their Borders to the Tweed, but also took into their hands Cumberland, Northumberland, and Westmorland. The Norman Kings again recovered these Provinces, making the Borders of both Kingdoms to be Tweed, East; the Solway, West; and the Cheviot-Hills in the midst. Of any great Wars made on these Borders, or any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of Edward the First; who taking advantage of the Scots disagreements about the Successor of Alexander the Third, hoped to bring the Country under the obedience of England. This Quarrel betwixt the two Nations he began, but could not end; the Wars surviving the Author: so that what Velleius saith of the Romans and Carthaginians, I may as well say of the Scots and English. For almost 300 Years together, *aut bellum inter eos populos, aut belli preparatio, aut infida pax fuit*, there was either a War, or a preparation for one, or an uncertain faithless Peace. In most of these conflicts the Scots had the worst. So that Daniel in his History seemeth to marvel how this corner of the Isle could breed so many, had it bred nothing but Men, as were slain in these Wars. Yet in the Reign of

Edward the Second, the Scots (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became so terrible to the English Borderers, that an hundred of them would fly from three Scots. It is a Custom among the Turks, not to believe a Christian, or a Jew, complaining against a Turk, except their Accusation be confirmed by the Testimony of some Turk also; which seldom hapning, is not the least cause why so little Justice is there done to the Christians. In like manner, it is the Law of these Borderers, never to believe any Scots complaining against any English man, unless some other English man will witness for him; and so on the other side. *Ex jure quidam inter limitaneos rato* (saith Camden in his *Elizab.*) *nullus nisi Scotus in Scotum, nullus nisi Anglus in Anglum, testis admittitur*. This Custom making void in this fashion all kinds of Accusations, was one of the greatest causes of the Insolencies of both sides committed. Besides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but sometime were Scots, sometime English, as their present Crimes and Necessities required Protection or Pardon. To keep in this People, and to secure their Borders, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the *Lords Wardens of the Marches*; one being placed over the East, the other over the West, the third over the middle Borders. In England, the Warden of the East Marches had his Seat at Berwick, (a Town of great Strength, and which for the conveniency of its situation, was the first thing which the English took care to defend, and the Scots to surprise) of which he was also Governour. The Warden of the West Marches had his Seat in Carlisle, which Henry the Eighth for that cause well fortified. The Warden of the middle Marches had no set place of residence, but was sometimes in one place, sometimes in another, according as occasion required; the Office being executed for the most part, by the Wardens of the Eastern or Western Marches. But *Imperii medium est, terminus ante fuit*, by the blessed Marriage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of one, which was then the bounds of two Empires; these Officers, and the cause of them, the Wars, are quite extinguished.

SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is the Northern part of *Britain*, separated from *England* by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the *Cheviot-Hills*, extending from the one to the other. It is in length (according to *Polydore Virgil*) 480 Miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place distant from the Sea above 60 Miles, and the Country ending like the sharp point of a Wedge. And for the length assigned unto it by *Polydore*, it must be made up by measuring the Crooks and Windings of the Shores, every where thrusting out with very large *Promontories*, and cutting deep *Indentures* into the Land: For measuring in a strait Line from North to South, the length thereof from *Solway Fryth* to the *Straitby-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten *Italian Miles*; and from *Berwick* unto *Straitby-head*, is a great deal shorter. So that there is no such over-sight in the Maps of *Britain*, nor such necessity to correct them, as was sometimes thought.

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonii*, a chief People of it: sometimes *Albania*, from *Albanie* or *Braid Albin*, a principal Province in the North. But the most usual Name is *Scotia* or *Scotland*; though the reason of the Name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an *Egyptian Pharaoh*; of whom more when we come to *Ireland*. Others with better reason (though that none of the best) from the *Scotti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a *German*, or *Sarmatian* People, of noted fame; whom they will have to seize first on some parts of *Spain*, from thence transplant themselves into *Ireland*; and out of *Ireland* into the *Hebrides* or *Western Islands*, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable Opinion is, that they were no other than mere *Irish*, (whose Language, Habit, and the most barbarous of their Customs, the *Highlanders* or natural *Scots* do still retain) united in the Name of *Scot*, about the declination of the *Roman Empire*: the word *Scot* signifying in their Language, a Body aggregated into one, out of many particulars; as the word *Alman* in the *Dutch*, *Scot illud dicitur*, (saith *Cambden* out of *Matthew of Westminster*) *quod ex diversis rebus in unum acervum aggregatur*. First mentioned by this Name in some fragments of *Porphyry* (who lived about the time of the Emperor *Aurelian*) as they are cited by *S. Hierom*; after the death of *Constantine* much spoken of in approved Authors, as the Confederates of the *Picts*, in harassing the *Roman Province*.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlands*, and the *Lowlands*. The *Highlanders* or *Irish Scots* inhabiting the *Hebrides*, and the West parts of the Continent adjoining to them, more barbarous than the *Wild Irish* at this day; not to be civiliz'd (as King *James* observed in his most excellent *Basilicon Doron*) but by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly *Scots* among them. Amongst the manifold Calamities that afflicted these Kingdoms, between the Years 1640. and 1660. and particularly *Scotland*, one good thing, which was not expected, happened, and that was the civilizing of the *Highlanders*, partly by the Earl of *Montrose*, and partly by the *English*; so that they are now quite another People than they were before, tho' that brave Earl perished in his attempt to restore the Royal Family. The *Lowlanders* or *English Scots* (as I well may call them) inhabiting on this side the two *Fryths* of *Dumblinton* and *Edinburgh*, and the plain Countries along the *German Ocean*, are the more civil of the two, as being of the same *Saxon Race* with the *English*. This is evident, first by their Language, being only a broad

Northern *English*, a Dialect only of that Tongue. 2. By the testimony of the *Highlanders* themselves, who are the true *Scots*, and speak the old *Irish Language*, by whom the *Lowlanders* and the *English* are called by the same Name of *Saxons*. 3. By the general consent of all Historians, affirming that the Kingdom of the *Northumbers* or *English Saxons*, beyond *Humber*, extended as far Northwards as the two *Fryths* before-mentioned; and there continued for the space of 300 Years. And 4. By the confession of some ingenious Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet, That the *Saxons* and *Scots* invading *Britain* much about the same time, the *Saxons* might extort the Eastern Shore lying next their Country, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the *Scots* did all the Western parts which lay next to *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides* or *Western Islands*, from whence they first passed into *Britain*.

The Country for the most part, especially beyond the limits of the *Roman Province*, is very barren and unfruitful, not able to afford sustenance for the Natives of it; were they not a People patient of Want and Hunger, temperate in Diet, and not accustomed unto that Riot and Excess, used commonly in richer and more plentiful Countries. Fruit they have very little, and not many Trees, either for Building or for Fuel; the People holding, as in *France*, at the Will of the Lord, and therefore not industrious to build or plant. Their chief Commodities are coarse Cloth; Fish in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal; of which two last their Mountains do afford some rich undecaying Mines.

The People have been noted by their best Writers, for some barbarous Customs entertain'd amongst them. One of which was, If any two were displeased, they expected no Law, but bang'd it out bravely, one and his Kindred, against the other and his; and thought the King much in their common, if they granted him at a certain day to keep the Peace. This fighting they call their *Feides*, a word so barbarous, that were it to be expressed in *Latin* or *French*, it must be by *Circumlocution*. These deadly *Feides*, King *James* in his most excellent *Basilicon Doron*, adviseth his Son to redress with all care possible; but it pleased God to give him so long a Life as to see it in his own days remedied; wherein he got a greater Victory over that stubborn People, than ever did any foreign Prince, or any of his Predecessors could do before him, an Act indeed truly Royal, and worthy himself. Another Custom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongst the Heathen, and much less in *Christendom*, which took beginning, as the *Scottish* Historians affirm, in the Reign of *Ewen III.* who is the Fifteenth King in their Catalogue, after the first *Fergus*. This *Ewen* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto Lasciviousness, made a Law, that himself and his Successors should have the *Maidenhead*, or first Nights lodging with every Woman, whose Husband held Land immediately from the Crown; and the Lords and Gentlemen of all those whose Husbands were their Tenants or Homagers. This was, it seems, the *Knights-service* which Men held their Estates by; and continued till the Days of *Malcolm Connor*; who, at the request of his Wife *Margaret*, (she was the Sister of *Edgar Atheling*) abolished this Law, and ordained, That the Tenants, by way of commutation, should pay unto their Lords a Mark in Money; which Tribute the *Historians* say is still in force. It was called *Marcheta mulieris*: but whether from *Mark*, a Horse in the old *Gallique* (implying the obscene signification of

Equitare) as Mr. Selden thinks; or from *Marca*, the sum of money by which it was afterwards redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am, that this last Custom was of such a barbarous and brutish Nature, that the Custom of the *Indians* in giving to the *Bramine* the first nights Lodging with their Brides; and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in prostituting their Wives and Daughters to the Lusts and Pleasure of their *Guests*; have not more *unchristianity* in them, than this of those *Scottish* Christians, if I may so call them.

These Customs shew the ancient *Scots* to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civility of the Neighbouring Nation; nor are they so broken of the former, but that they are observed by a *modern Writer*, to be still greedy of Revenge where they find means to take it; as also to be a subtle and politic People, inclined to Factions and Seditions amongst themselves; which he that reads their Stories cannot choose but see. A People, as King *James* observeth in his *Basilicon Doron*, ever weary of the present State, and desirous of Novelties, accustomed to judge and speak rashly of their Kings and Princes; towards whom they have always carried themselves with such untractableness, that more Kings have been betrayed, murdered and deposed by the *Scots*, than by all the Nations in the World. But take them in themselves without these relations, and they are said to be an industrious People, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well versed in *Grammatical Learning*, of which most of their *Gentry* have a smattering. And of most note in point of Learning, have been 1. *Marianus* (surnamed) *Scotus*, and 2. *Hector Boetius*, the Historians. 3. *John Major*, a well known Schoolman, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4. *George Buchanan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unsound States-man; whose History, and Dialogue *De jure Regni*, have wrought more mischief in the World, than all *Machiavel's* Works. Not to have been remembered here, but because he was Pedagogue to 5. King *James*, of most famous memory; whose Printed works declare his large Abilities in all kinds of Learning. 6. *Napier*, the Laird of *Marchiston*. 7, 8. *Barcklay*, the Father and the Son. 9. *John Skene*, the best Antiquary of this Nation. 10. Doctor *John Maxwell*, the late learned Bishop of *Ross*, and my very good friend; besides some others of less note.

The *Christian Religion* was here planted by divers Men according to their several Nations, who did here inhabit amongst the *Low-Landers*, or *Saxon-Scots*, by *Aidan* the first Bishop of *Lindisfarn*, or *Holy-Island*; amongst the *Picts*, inhabiting the South-Eastern parts, by *Ninias*, Bishop of *Candida Casa*, or *Whithorne*, in *Galloway*; amongst the *Northern Picts*, An. 555. and finally amongst the *Scots*, by *Palladius* a Deacon of *Rome*, sent to them hither for that purpose by Pope *Celestine*, An. 435. or thereabouts. And for the Reformation of Religion, overgrown with the rust and rubbish of the *Romish Church*, (degenerated from it self in the latter days) it was here made by a strong hand, according to the judgment of *Knox* and others; not taking counsel with the *Prelates*, nor staying the leisure of the Prince as they did in *England*; but turning Prince and *Prelates*, out of all Authority; made by that means, more naturally subject unto alterations, than it had been otherwise; or only to be made good by the same violence which first introduced it. 'Tis true, that for a while being in danger of the *French*, and of necessity to support themselves by the power and favour of the *English*; they bound themselves by a solemn Subscription, to adhere only to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to observe that form of Worship which was there established. *Religionis cultui, & Ritibus cum Anglis communibus subscripserunt*; as is affirmed by *Buchanan*, their own State-Historian. But no sooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity and leisure to affect their ends; and have endeavoured ever since by practices, and correspondence with that party here, and finally by force of Arms, to thrust their

own Constitutions and Form of Worship on the Church of *England*, which at last ended in the ruine of it even in *Scotland*; and at the Restoration of *Charles* the II. settled that Kingdom under Episcopacy again, though without a Liturgy.

This Kingdom in the Revolution in 1688. received another great change; The Episcopal Party standing at a Gaze, to see what would be the issue of the struggle in *England*: The Presbyterian Party fell into Tumults and Outrageous Violences, and having picked a Convention of their own Creatures, whilst few or none of the other Party endeavoured to be chosen. They fairly voted the *Geneva Discipline* more agreeable to the People of *Scotland*, than Episcopacy; and therefore once more laid it aside, and set up the other. How long it will last is uncertain; but it seems to have no very firm Foundation, by the Violences were used to bring it in, and the Difficulty they have had to keep it. That Convention being kept on foot to this day, for reasons best known to themselves. As for the Government of the Church, it was originally by Bishops, (as in all parts else;) but so as they exercise their Functions and Jurisdictions in all places equally, wheresoever they come: The Kingdom not being divided into *Diocesses*, till the time of *Malcolm* the third An. 1070, or thereabout. Nor had they any Archbishops till the year 1478. The Archbishop of *York* being accounted and obeyed before that time, as the *Metropolitan* of *Scotland*. But being once settled in an orderly and constant Hierarchy, they held the same until the Reformation began by *Knox*, and when he and his Associates approving the *Genevian* Platform, took the advantage of the Minority of King *James* the Sixth, to introduce the *Presbyterian Discipline*, and suppress the Bishops; forbidding them by their own sole Authority, to intermeddle any more in matters which concerned the Church; and Cantoning the Kingdom into *Presbyteries* of their own assigning. And that the King might not be able to oppose their doings, they kept him under by strong hand, Imprisoned him at *Sterling*, made him fly from *Edenburgh*; removed from him all his faithful Servants, and seized upon his principal Fortresses: and in a word, so baffled and affronted him upon all occasions, that he was minded many times to have left the Kingdom, and retire to *Venice*, which doubtless he had done, (as I have heard affirmed by some of great place, and power) had not the hopes of coming at the last to the Crown of *England*, made him stay it out: So that his *Maxim* of *No Bishop, No King*, was not made at random, but founded on the sad experience of his own condition. And though upon the sense of those inconveniencies, which that alteration brought upon him, he did afterwards with great both Policy and Prudence, restore again the Episcopal Order, and settle it both by *Synodical Acts*, and by Acts of Parliament; yet the same restless Spirit breaking out again in the Reign of his Son, An. 1638. did violently eject the Bishops, and suppress the Calling; and set up their *Presbyteries* throughout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous or miraculous things rather of this Country are, 1. The Lake of *Nirton*, part of whose waters do congeal in Winter, and part of them not. 2. That in the Lake of *Lennox*, being 24 Miles in compass, The Fish are generally without Fins, and yet there is great abundance of them. 3. That when there is no wind stirring, the Waters of the said Lake are so Tempestuous, that no Mariner dares venture on it. 4. That there is a Stone called the *Deaf-stone*, 12 foot high, and 33 Cubits thick; of this rare quality, that a Musket shot off on the one side, cannot be heard by a man standing on the other. If it be otherwise (as he must have a strong Faith who believes these wonders) let *Hector Boetius* bear the blame, out of whom I had it.

Chief Mountains of this Kingdom are the *Cheviot Hills* upon the Borders; and Mount *Grampius*, spoken of by *Tacitus*; the safest shelter of the *Picts*, or Northern *Britains*.

ains against the Romans and of the Scots against the English; now called the Hills of *Albany*, or the Mountainous Regions of *Braid Albain*. Out of these springeth the 1. *Tay*, or *Tams*, the fairest River of Scotland, falling into the Sea at *Dundee*, in the East side; and 2. the *Clud*, emptying it self into *Dumbritton Frith*, on the West side of the Kingdom. Other Rivers of most note, are, the 3. *Bance*, emptying it self into the *Frith* of *Edenburgh*; on the Banks whereof was fought that fatal Battel of *Bannocksburn*, of which more anon. 4. *Spey*, 5. *Dee*, the *Clava* of *Ptolomy*; none of them of any long course, by reason that the Country Northward is but very narrow.

In reference to Ecclesiastical Affairs, this Kingdom hath been long divided into 13 Diocesses, to which the Diocess of *Edenburgh* (taken out of that of *S. Andrews*) hath been lately added; and in relation to the Civil, into divers *Counties* and *Sheriffdoms*, which being for the most part hereditary, are no small hindrance to the due execution of Justice. So that the readiest way to redress the mischief (as King *James* advised) is to dispose of them as they fall, or Eleheat to the Crown, according to the laudable custom (in that case) in *England*.

The greatest Friends of the Scots, were the French, to whom the Scots shewed themselves so faithful, that the French King committed the defence of his Person to a select number of Scottish Gentlemen; and so valiant, that they have much hindred the English Victories in France. And certainly the French feeling the smart of the English Puissance alone, have continually heartned the Scots in their Attempts against England, and hindred all means of making Union betwixt them; as appeared, when they brake the Match agreed on, between our *Edward* the Sixth, and *Mary*, the young Queen of Scots. Their greatest Enemy was the English, who overcame them in many Battels, seized once upon the Kingdom, and had longer kept it, if the mountainous and inaccessible Woods had not been more advantagious to the Scots, than their Power; for so much King *James* seemeth to intimate in his Speech at *White hall*, 1607. And though, saith he, the Scots had the favour and good fortune never to be conquered, yet were they never but on the Defensible side; and may in part thank their Hills and inaccessible Passages, that saved them from an utter Overthrow, at the hands of all them that ever pretended to conquer them. But

Jam cunctigena una sumus, sic simus in ævum:

One only Nation now are we,
And let us so for ever be.

The chief Cities are *Edenburgh* (of old called *Castrum Alatum*) in *Lothien*, where is the Kings Palace, and the Courts of Justice. It consisteth chiefly of one Street extending in length one Mile, into which run many pretty lanes; so that the whole compass may be nigh three Miles, extending from East to West on a rising Ground, at the North or West end whereof standeth a strong and magnificent Castle, mounted upon a steep and precipitious Rock, which commandeth the Town; supposed to be the *Alatum Alatum*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*. Under the command, or rather the Protection of which Castle, and through the Neighbourhood of *Leith*, standing on the *Fryth*, and serving as a Port unto it; and finally by the advantage of the Courts of Justice, and the Court Royal, called *Holy-Rood House* it too became rich, populous, well-traded, and the chief of the Kingdom: but withal Factionous and Seditious, contesting with their Kings, or siding against them upon all occasions. No way to humble them, and keep them in obedience to their Sovereign Lords, but by incorporating *Leith*, indulging it with the Priviledges of a City, and removing thither the Seat Royal and the Courts of Judicature; which they more fear than all the Plagues that can befall them. It belonged in former times to the English Saxons, (as all the rest of the Coun-

try from the *Fryth* to *Barwick*) from whom, oppressed by the tyranny of the Danes, it was taken by the Scots and *Picts*, Anno 800, or thereabouts. 2. *Sterling*, situate on the South-side of the *Forth* or *Fryth*, in the Sheriffdom so called; a strong Town, and beautified withal with a very fair Castle, the Birth-place of King *James* the Sixth, the first Monarch of Great Britain. Near to which Town, on the banks of the River *Bannock*, happened the most memorable discomfiture that the Scots ever gave the English; who besides many Lords and 700 Knights and Men of Note, lost in this Fight (as the Scottish Writers do report) 50000 of the common Soldiers (our English Historians confesse 10000, and too many of that) the King himself *Edward* the II. being compelled to flie for his Life and Safety. Some of the Scottish Writers tell us, that the purer sort of Silver, which we call *Sterling-Money*, did take name from hence; they might as well have told us, that all our Silver Bullion comes from *Bullion* in *Luyckland*, or from the Port of *Bulloin* in France; the truth being that it took that name from the *Easterlings* or Merchants of East-Germany, drawn into England by King *John* to refine our Coin. 3. *Glasgo*, in *Cluidisdale*, honoured with an Archbishops See, and a publick School (to which some give the name of an University) founded here by Archbishop *Turnbul*, Anno 1554. 4. *S. Andrews* the chief Town of *Fife*, an Archiepiscopal See, and an University; by the Latines called *Fanum Reguli*; which, and the English Name, it took from the bones of *S. Andrew* the Apostle, translated first from *Patras* in *Peloponnesus*, where he suffered death, unto *Constantinople*; and thence brought hither by a Monk called *Albatus Regulus*, in the year 378. (if they be not mistaken in the time, who made the Story.) Over which Relicks he is said to have built a Monastery, which after grew to be a City; called from the Founder *Fanum Reguli*; in honour of the Saint *S. Andrew*. The Bishop hereof is the Metropolitan of all Scotland; the City seated on the Ocean, near the fall of the *Ethan*, overlooked with a strong and goodly Castle, the Archbishops Seat. 5. *Falkland*, in the same Province or *Fife*, beautified with a retiring House of the Kings, resorting thither, often on recess from Business, or for the commodity and pleasure of Hunting, which the place affords. 6. *Dundee*, in Latine, *Taodunum*, a rich and noted Port at the mouth of the *Taye*, the chief Town of *Angus*. 7. *Aberdon*, at the mouth of the River *Done*, whence it had the name, (the word *Aber* in the British, signifying the mouth or influx of a River) an University, and Bishops See. 8. *Perth*, or *St. Johns Town*, seated on the *Taye*, but in the middle of the Kingdom; walled and replenished with an industrious People: the chief Town of the Sheriffdom of *Perth*. 9. *Scone*, on the farther side of the *Taye*, adorned heretofore with a famous Monastery; the usual place for the inauguration of the Scottish Kings, the fatal stone, on which they did receive the Crown, (the *Palladium* of the Scottish Kingdom) here kept, till the removal of it unto *Westminster*, by King *Edward* the first. Upon which stone there were of old ingraven these Verses.

*Non fallat fatum, Scoti quocunque locatum
Invenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.*

Translated into old Meeter thus:

The Scots shall brook that Realm as native ground,
If Weirds fail not, whereere this Stone is found.

Most happily accomplished in the Succession of King *James* the Sixth, to the Crown of England. 10. *Dumbritton* (*Britannodunum* in the Latine) seated in a grassie Plain, at the fall or influx of the River *Levin* into the *Clud*, upon two steep and precipitious Rocks, flanked on the West with the said two Rivers, and on the East with a miry Flat, drowned at every full Sea: the strongest hold of all the Kingdom, and thought to be impregnable

ble but by Famine or Treason, and the chief Town of the West side of Scotland; the name hereof communicated to the *Fryth* adjoining.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country dwelling within the limits of the Roman Province, were the *Gadeni*, possessing *Tevidale*, *Tweedale*, *March* and *Lothien*, whose chief City was *Castra Alata*, now *Edinburgh*. 2. The *Damnii*, dwelling in *Cluydsdale*, *Lennox*, *Sterling*; and *Menteith*, whose chief City was *Vanduara*, now *Renfrew*; *Lindum*, now *Linlithquo*. 3. The *Selgovæ* inhabited in *Liddisdale*, *Tividale*, *Eskdale*, *Anmondale*, and *Niddisdale*, whose chief place was *Carbantorigum*, now *Caer-Laverock*: and 4. The *Noventes*, containing *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle* and *Cunningham*, Principal places of the which were, *Lucopibia*, now *Withern*, and *Berigonium*, now *Bargenie*. Without the Province amongst the *Picts* or barbarous *Britains*, divided generally into *Caledonii* and *Meatae*, the Nations of most Note were, 5. The *Caledonii* properly so called, taking up all *Strathern*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Albanie*, *Lorn*, *Perth*, *Angus*, and *Fife*. 6. The *Vermes* of *Mernis* and *Mar*. 7. The *Talzali* of *Buquhan*. 8. The *Vacomagi* of *Loquabre* and *Murray*. 9. The *Cantæ* of *Rofs* and *Sutherland*. 10. The *Contini* of *Cathness*; and 11. The *Cornubii* of *Strathnaver*, the furthest Country Northward of all the Island. Chief Towns of which were, *Tamia*, *Banatia*, *Orea*, *Devana*, and *Tuesis*, which we know not where to find upon any certainty.

The fortunes of this People, as they related to the *Romans*, hath been shewed before. On the withdrawing of whose Forces, so much hereof as formerly had belonged to that Empire, was possessed by the *Saxons*, the residue thereof, as formerly, by the *Scots* and *Picts*; save that the *Saxons* not content with that which the *Romans* held, made themselves Masters also of the plain Countries, lying on the *German Ocean*, to which the passage out of *Germany*, was both short and easie. By which accompt, besides those places in the East, they were possessed of the Counties or Sherifffdoms of *Tevidale*, *Tweedale*, *March*, *Lothien*, *Liddisdale*, *Eufedale*, *Eskdale*, *Anmandale*, *Niddisdale*, *Cluydsdale*, *Galloway*, *Carick*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Lennox*, and *Sterling*, being the richest and most flourishing part of the modern *Scotland*. The *Scots* for their part had the Counties of *Cantire*, *Argile*, *Braid-Albin*, (or *Albanie*) *Lorne*, *Loquabre*, and *Strathnaver*, lying on the West and North: the other Northern moiety (excepting some parts near the Coast of the *German Ocean* possessed by the *Saxons*) containing the now Counties of *Cathness*, *Sutherland*, *Rofs*, *Murray*, *Buquhan*, *Marre*, *Mern*, *Angus*, *Atbel*, *Perth*, *Fife*, *Strathern* and *Menteith*, being only left unto the *Picts*. From whence the *Saxons* and *Scots* came into these parts; hath been shewn already. And for the *Picts*, (to omit here the refutation of those who will have them to descend from the *Agathyrsi*, a People of *Scythia*) they were no other than such of the natural *Britains*, as never were brought under the *Roman Empire*, but still preserved their Country in its former Liberty; called therefore by *Tertullian*, in *accessa Romanis loca*, as indeed they were; and using still their ancient Custom of painting their Bodies; after the rest of their Countrymen had conformed themselves to more civil courses, were by the *Romans* called *Picti*: and by that name first mentioned in the *Panegyrick* of *Ennomius*, in the time of *Constantine the Great*. They long possessed these parts, without an *Inmate*, even till the year 424; when the *Irish Scots* wanting room at home, and having formerly possessed themselves of the Western Isles, first set foot in *Britain*: with whom they had continual War, till in the end the *Scots* prevailing, compelled the *Picts* to abandon to them the Western parts, and withdraw themselves into the Eastern. Afterwards growing into better terms with the other, and willing to enlarge their Borders towards the more flourishing South, they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League against the *Britains*; who on all sides, they most miserably tortured, till vanquished and beaten back by the conquering *Saxons*, against whom they contracted a new *Confe-*

deracy. Taking the advantage of the death of *Ethelred* King of the *Northumbers*, and the Invasion of the *Danes* on the rest of *England*; they got into their hands all *Bernicia*, or so much of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*, as lay on the North of *Twede*, and *Solway*; reckoned from that time forwards as a part of their Dominions. But this good Neighbourhood held not long betwixt these two Nations. It hapned at the last, that *Alchian* King of the *Scots*, married *Fergusia*; Sister unto *Hungust*, King of the *Picts*, and had by her a Son called *Alpine*, who after the death of *Hungust* dying without Issue, and having none nearer Kindred, was in the Judgment of the *Scots*, to succeed in that Kingdom. But the *Picts*, alledging a Law of not admitting *Aliens* to the Crown, chose one *Ferretb* of their own Nation, to be their King; with whom *Alpine* contended in a long War, Victorious, for the most part, in conclusion slain. The quarrel notwithstanding did remain betwixt the two unfriendly Nations, till at the last, after many bloody Battels, and mutual over throws (the *Scots* being for the most part on the losing side) *Keneth*, the second of that Name, vanquished *Donsken*, the last King of the *Picts*, with so great a slaughter of his People, that he extinguished not their Kingdom only, but their very Name; passing from that time forwards under that of *Scots*. No mention after this of the *Pictish* Nation; unless perhaps we will believe that some of them passed into *France*; and there, forsooth, subdued that Country which we now call *Picardy*.

As for the Catalogue of the Kings of the *Scots* in *Britain*, I shall begin the same with *Fergus*, the second of that name in the Accompt of their Historians; leaving out that rabble of 39 Kings (half of them at the least before *Christ's* Nativity) mentioned by *Hector Boetius*, *Buchanan*, and others of their *Classick* Authors. Neither shall I offend herein, as I conjecture, the more Judicious and understanding Men of the *Scottish* Nation, (and for others take little care) since I deal no more unkindly with their first *Fergus* and his Successors, than I have done already with our own *Brutus*, and his: The first *Scottish* King that settled himself in the North of *Britain*, is according to the above named *Hector Boetius*, one *Fergus*, which in the time that *Coyl* governed the *Britains*, came (forsooth) into these parts out of *Ireland*. From him, unto *Eugenius*, we have the names of 39 Kings in a continued Succession: which *Eugenius*, together with his whole Nation, is said to have been expelled the Island, by a joynt confederacy of the *Romans*, *Britains*, and *Picts*. Twenty and seven years after the death of this *Eugenius*, they were reduced again into their possessions here, by the Valour and Conduct of another *Fergus*, the second of that name. To this *Fergus* I refer the beginning of this *Scottish* Kingdom in *Britain*, holding the stories of the former 39 Kings to be vain and fabulous. Neither want I probable conjecture for this Assertion, this Expedition of *Fergus* into *Britain* being placed in the 424 year of *CHRIST*, at what time the best Writers of the *Roman* Story, for those times, report the *Scots* to have first seated themselves in this Island.

The Kings of chief note in the course of the whole Succession are, 1. *Alchian*, who died in the year 809. and in his Life contracted the *Offensive* and *Defensive* League with *Charles the Great*, between the Kingdoms of *France* and *Scotland*. The Conditions whereof were, 1. Let this League between the two Kingdoms endure for ever; 2. Let the Enemies unto one, be reputed and handled as the Enemies of the other; 3. If the *Saxons* or *English-men* invade *France*, the *Scots* shall send thither such numbers of Soldiers as shall be desired, the *French* King defraying the charges; 4. If the *English* invade *Scotland*, the King of *France* shall at his own charges send competent assistance unto the King of *Scots*. Never was there any League, which was either more faithfully observed, or longer continued, than this between these two Kingdoms: the *Scots* on all occasions so readily assisting the *French*, that it grew to a Proverb, or by-word, *He that will France win, must win*

with Scotland first begin. 2. *Kenneth* the 2d, who having utterly subdued and destroyed the *Picts*, extended his Dominions over all the present Scotland, deserved to be accounted the first Monarch of it: the *Picts* (being either rooted out, or so few in number, that they passed afterwards in the name and accounts of *Scots*) from that time forwards never mentioned in any Author. 3. *Malcolm* the first, who added *Westmerland* and *Cumberland*, unto his Dominion, given to him by King *Edmund* of *England*, the Son of *Atbelstane*, to have his aid against the *Danes*, or to keep him neutral. After which time, those Counties were sometimes *Scottish*, and sometimes *English*, till finally recovered by King *Henry* the Second, and united to the Crown of *England*; never since disjoyned. 4. *Kenneth* the Third, who by consent of the Estates of his Realm, made the Kingdom *Hereditary*, to descend from the Father to his Eldest Son, before which time (keeping within the compass of the Royal Family) the *Uncle* was sometimes preferred before the *Nephew*; the eldest in years, though furthest off, before the younger Kinsman, though the nearer in Blood. After which time (the opposition and interruption made by *Constantine* the Third, and *Donald* the fourth excepted) only the eldest Sons of these Kings, or the next in Birth, have succeeded ordinarily in that Kingdom. This *Kenneth* was one of those Tributaries and *Vassal* Kings, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee* near *Chester*, in such Pomp and Majesty. 5. *Macbeth* of whom there goeth a famous Story, which shall be told at large anon. 6. *Malcolm* the Third, the Son of *Duncane*, who lived in *England* during the whole time of *Macbeth's* Tyranny; and thence brought into Scotland at his return, not only some *Civilities* of the *English* garb, but the honourary Titles of Earls and Barons, not here before mentioned. At the perswasion of the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, (Sister of *Edgar*, surnamed *Atbeling*, and after his decease the right Heir of the Crown of *England*) he abolished the barbarous Customs spoken of before. He did Homage to *William* the Conqueror for the Crown of *Scotland*, but afterwards siding against him with the *English*, was slain at *Alnwick*. 7. *David*, the youngest Son of *Malcolm* the Third, succeeded (his two Brothers, *Edgar* and *Alexander* dying without Issue) in the Throne of his Father; and in right of his Mother the Lady *Margaret*, Sister and Heir of *Edgar Atbeling*, and Daughter of *Edward* the Eldest Son of *Edmund* the Second, surnamed *Ironside*, King of *England*, had the best Title to that Kingdom also; but dispossessed thereof by the *Norman Conquerors*, with whom by reason of the great puillance of those Kings, and the little love which the *English* bare unto the *Scots*, not able to dispute their Title by force of Arms. From *Maud* the Sister of this *David*, married to *Henry* the First of *England*, descended all the Kings of *England* (King *Stephen* excepted) to Queen *Elizabeth's* death: from *David* all the Kings of *Scotland*, till King *James* the Sixth, who on the death of Queen *Elizabeth*, succeeded in the Crown of *England*, in right of his descent from another *Margaret*, the eldest Daughter of King *Henry* the Seventh. So that in his Person there was not an union of the Kingdoms only, under the Title of *Great Britain*, but a restoring of the old Line of the *Saxon* Kings (of which he was the direct and indubitate Heir) to the Crown of *England*; the possession whereof had for so long time continued in the Posterity of the *Norman Conqueror*. And upon this descent it followeth most undeniably, that though the *Norman Conqueror* got the Crown of *England* by the power of the Sword, from the true Heirs of *Edmund* the II. surnamed *Ironside*; and that his Successors had enjoyed it by no other Title till Queen *Elizabeth's* Death: yet *James*, the first Monarch of *Great Britain*, succeeded by a right descent from the *Saxon* Line; without relation to the Conquest of the *Norman* Bastard. 8. *William*, the Brother of *Malcolm* the Fourth, and Nephew of *David* before mentioned by his Son Prince *Henry*, (who died in the life of his Father) being taken Prisoner at the Battel of *Alnwick*, did Homage

to King *Henry* the Second for the Crown of *Scotland*, and was thereupon restored to his Liberty, and his Realm to peace. What doth occur concerning the succeeding Kings, when their Affairs with *England* and the World abroad became more considerable, we shall see anon.

In the mean time proceed we to the story of *Macbeth*, than which for variety of action, and strangeness of events, I never met with any more pleasing. The Story in brief is thus: *Duncan* King of the *Scots* had two principal men, whom he employed in all matters of Importance, *Macbeth* and *Banquho*. These two travelling together through a Forest, were met by three *Faries*, *Witches* (Weirds the *Scots* call them) whereof the first making obedience unto *Macbeth*, saluted him *Thane* (a Title unto which that of *Earl* afterwards succeeded) of *Glamis* the second, *Thane* of *Cawder*; and the third, King of *Scotland*. This is unequal dealing, saith *Banquho*, to give my friend all the honours, and none unto me; to which one of the *Weirds* made answer, That he indeed should not be a King, but out of his Loyns should come a Race of Kings that should for ever rule the *Scots*. And having thus said, they all suddenly vanished. Upon their arrival to the Court, *Macbeth*, was immediately created *Thane* of *Glamis*; and not long after, some new service of his requiring new recompence, he was honoured with the Title of *Thane* of *Cawder*. Seeing then how happily the Prediction of the three *Weirds* fell out in the former, he resolved not to be wanting to himself in fulfilling the third, and therefore first he killed the King, and after, by reason of his command among the Soldiers, and common People, he succeeded in his Throne. Being scarce warm in his Seat, he called to mind the Prediction given to his Companion *Banquho*; whom hereupon suspecting as his supplanter, he caused him to be killed, together with his whole Posterity; *Fleance* one of his Sons escaping only, with no small difficulty, into *Wales*. Freed as he thought from all fear of *Banquho* and his Issue, he built *Dunfinan* Castle, and made it his ordinary Seat: and afterwards on some new fears, consulting with certain of his *Weirds* about his future Estate, was told by one of them, that he should never be overcome, till *Bernane Wood* (being some Miles distant) came to *Dunfinan* Castle; and by another, that he should never be slain by any man which was born of a Woman. Secure then as he thought, from all future dangers, he omitted no kind of libidinous cruelty, for the space of 18 years; for so long he tyrannized over *Scotland*. But having then made up the measure of his Iniquities, *Macduffe* the Governor of *Fife*, associating to himself some few Patriots, equally hated by the Tyrant, and abhorring the Tyranny, privily met one Evening at *Bernane Wood*; and taking every one of them a Bough in his Hand, (the better to keep them from discovery) marched early in the Morning towards *Dunfinan* Castle, which they took by *Scalado*. *Macbeth* escaping, was pursued by *Macduffe*; who having overtaken him, urged him to the Combat; to whom the Tyrant, half in scorn, returned this Answer, that he did in vain attempt to kill him, it being his destiny never to be slain by any that was born of a Woman. Now then said *Macduffe*, is thy fatal end drawing fast upon thee, for I was never born of a Woman, but violently cut out of my Mother's Belly; which words so daunted the cruel Tyrant, though otherwise a valiant Man, and of great performances, that he was very easily slain; and *Malcolm* Commer, the true Heir of the Crown, seated in the Throne. In the mean time *Fleance* so prospered in *Wales*, that he gained the affection of the Princes Daughter of that Country; and on her begot a Son called *Walter*; who flying out of *Wales*, returned into *Scotland*; and his descent once known, he was not only restored to the Honours and Estates of his Ancestors, but preferred to be Steward of the House of *Edgar*, the Son of *Malcolm* the Third, surnamed *Commer*; the Name of *Stewart* growing hence Hereditary unto his Posterity. From this *Wal-*

ter descended that *Robert Stewart*, who succeeded *David Bruce* in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the Progenitor of nine Kings of the name of *Stewart*, which have Reigned successively in that Kingdom. But now it is time to leave off particulars, and look into the general Succession of

The Kings of *Scots* before the Conquest of the *Picts*.

- A. Ch.
- 424 1 *Fergus*.
2 *Eugenius*.
449 3 *Dongal*.
4 *Constantine*.
5 *Congall*.
6 *Goran*.
7 *Eugenius II*.
8 *Congall II*.
9 *Kinnatcl*.
10 *Aidan*.
604 11 *Kenneth*.
12 *Eugenius III*.
622 13 *Ferquard*.
14 *Donald*.
15 *Ferquard II*.
16 *Malduine*.
17 *Eugenius IV*.
18 *Eugenius V*.
19 *Amberkeleth*.
20 *Eugenius VI*.
21 *Mordoc*.
-30 22 *Erfinus*.
23 *Eugenius VII*.
24 *Fergus II*.
25 *Solvatbins*.
26 *Achairs*.
809 27 *Congall III*.
28 *Dongall II*.
29 *Alpine* slain in a Battel by the *Picts*, in pursuit of his Quarrel for that Kingdom, pretended to belong unto him in the Right of his Mother, Sister, and Heir of *Hungius* the last King thereof.
30 *Kenneth II*. Son of *Alpine*; who utterly subdued and destroyed the *Picts*, extending thereby the *Scottish* Kingdom from one Sea to the other, over all the bounds of modern *Scotland*; of which deservedly accounted the first *Monarch*, the Founder of the new Succession of

The Kings of the *Scots* after the Conquest of the *Picts*.

- An. Ch.
- 839 1 *Kenneth II*. the first sole King of all *Scotland* 17.
856 2 *Donald II*. Brother of *Kenneth* the 2d.
862 3 *Constantine II*. Son of *Kenneth* the 2d.
875 4 *Ethns*, Brother of *Constantine* the 2d.
890 5 *Donald III*. Son of *Constantine* the 2d.
903 6 *Constantine III*, 30.
933 7 *Malcolm*, Son of *Donald* the 3d.
949 8 *Ingulph*, an Intruder. 12.
961 9 *Duffe*, Son of *Malcolm* 1.
991 10 *Kenneth III*. Brother of *Duffe*.
994 11 *Constantine IV*. an Intruder against the Law, and Line of *Kenneth* the 3d.
1004 12 *Malcolm II*. Son of *Kenneth* the 3d opposed by *Grime*, the Nephew of *Duffe*.
1035 13 *Duncan*, Son of *Grime*, succeeded *Malcolm* the second dying without Issue.
1040 14 *Machbeth*, the Tyrant and Usurper.
1057 15 *Malcolm III*. Son of *Duncan*.
1096 16 *Donald IV*. surnamed *Ban*, Brother of *Malcolm* the 3d.

- 1098 17 *Edgar*, Son of *Malcolm* the 3d.
1107 18 *Alexander*, Brother of *Edgar*.
1124 19 *David*, Brother of *Alexander*.
1133 20 *Malcolm*, Son of *David*.
1166 21 *William*, Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth.
1213 22 *Alexander II*. Son of *William*.
1250 23 *Alexander III*. Son of *Alexander* the 2d, after whose death, dying without any Issue, *An* 1285. began that tedious and bloody Quarrel about the Succession of this Kingdom, occasioned by sundry Titles and Pretendants to it: principal whereof were *Bruce* and *Baliol* descended from the Daughters of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, younger Son of *William*, and Great Uncle of *Alexander* the Third, the last of the Male Issue of *Kenneth* the 2, those of nearer Kindred being quite extinct. And when the *Scots* could not compose the difference among themselves, it was taken into consideration by King *Edward* the First of *England*, as the Lord Paramount of that Kingdom; whose selecting 12 *English*, and as many of the *Scots* to advise about it, with the consent of all adjudged it to *John Baliol* Lord of *Galloway*, Son of *John Baliol* and *Derworguilla* his Wife, Daughter of *Alan* Lord of *Galloway*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, the eldest Daughter of the said *David*; who having done his homage to the said King *Edward*, was admitted King.
1300 24 *John Baliol*, an *English*-man, but forgetful both of *English* Birth, and *English* Favours, invaded the Realm of *England* in Hostile manner, and was taken Prisoner by King *Edward*. Who following his blow, made himself Master of all *Scotland*, which he held during the rest of his Life, and had here his *Chancery*, and other Courts. 6.
1306 25 *Robert Bruce*, Son of *Robert Bruce*, Lord of *Annamdale* (Competitor with *Baliol* for the Crown of *Scotland*, in Right of *Isabel* his Mother, the second Daughter of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, and consequently a degree nearer to the King deceased than *Baliol* was, though descended from the elder Sister) was crowned King in the life-time of King *Edward* the First; but not fully possessed thereof until after his death; confirmed therein by the great Defeat given to *Edward* the Second, at the fight of *Bannockburn*, not far from *Sterling*, spoken of before. But he being dead, *Anno* 1322. *Edward* the Third confirmed the Kingdom on
1332 26 *Edward Baliol*, Son of *John Baliol*, rejected by the *Scots* for adhering so firmly to the *English*; who thereupon harried *Scotland* with Fire and Sword. 10.
27 *David Bruce* the Son of *Robert*, restored unto his Fathers Throne by the power of the *Scots*, and a great enemy to the *English*. Invading *England* when King *Edward* was at the Siege of *Calice*, he was taken Prisoner by Queen *Philip*, the Wife of that King, and brought to *Windsor*, where he was Prisoner for a while with King *John* of *France*. Released at last on such conditions as best pleased the Conqueror. 29.
1371 28 *Robert II*. surnamed *Stewart*, King of the *Scots* by descent from the eldest Sister of *David Bruce*, was extracted also from ancient Princes of *Wales* (as was said before:) restoring thereby the *British* Blood to the Throne of *Scotland*.
1390 29 *Robert III*. Son of *Robert* the Second, called *John* before he came to the Crown; in which much over-awed by his own Brother the Duke of *Albany*, who had an aim at it for himself. 16.

- 1406 30 *James*, Son of *Robert* the Third, taken Prisoner by King *Henry* the Fourth of *England*, as he was crossing the Seas for *France*, to avoid the practices of his Uncle. Restored unto his Country in the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the Sixth, after 18 years absence, he was at last most miserably murdered by the Earl of *Arbol*, claiming a right unto that Crown. 42.
- 1448 31 *James* II. slain by the *English* at the Siege of *Roxborough* Castle. 24.
- 1462 32 *James* III. slain by his own rebellious Subjects. 29.
- 1491 33 *James* IV. married *Margaret* the eldest Daughter of King *Henry* the Seventh, but at the soliciting of the *French*, (against the Peace between the Nations) he invaded *England* (in the absence of King *Henry* the Eighth) with 100000 Men; but was met with by the Earl of *Surrey* (having 26000 Men in his Army) nigh unto *Flodden*, where he was slain, together with two Bishops, twelve Earls, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.
- 1514 34 *James* V. Son of *James* the Fourth, and the Lady *Margaret*, kept for a time such good correspondency with the *English*, that in the year 1536, he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred against them, he invaded their Borders in the year 1542: and was met by the Lord *Wharton*, then Warden of the *West* *Marshes*. The Battels being ready to joyn, one Sir *Oliver* *Sinclair* the Kings Favourite, though otherwise of no great Parentage, was by the Kings directions proclaimed *General*: which the *Scottish* Nobility took in such Indignation, that they threw down their Weapons, and suffered themselves to be taken prisoners; there being not one Man slain on either side. The principal Prisoners were the Earls of *Glen-carn*, and *Cassiles*; the Barons *Maxwell*, *O-liphant*, *Somerwell*, *Flemming*, with divers others; besides many of the principal Gentry, 28.
- 1542 35 *Mary*, the Daughter and only lawfully-begotten Child of *James* the Fifth, succeeded in her Cradle unto the Throne; promised in Marriage to King *Edward* the Sixth of *England*; but by the power of the *Hamiltons* carried into *France*, where married to *Francis*, then *Dauphin*, afterwards King of the *French*, of that name the second. After whose death, she married *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, eldest Son of *Matthew* Earl of *Lennox* Outed of her Diminions by a potent Faction, she was compelled to flee into *England*; where after a tedious Imprisonment, she was put to death in *Fotheringhay* Castle in *Northamptonshire*, and interred at *Peterburgh*, *Anno* 1586.
- 1567 36 *James* VI. the Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, and of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, was crowned King in his Cradle also. He married *Anne*, the Daughter of *Christian* the Third, King of *Denmark*; was chose of the Order of the Garter, *Anno* 1590. and succeeded Queen *Elizabeth* in the Realm of *England*, *March* 24. *Anno* 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent fore-sight of *Henry* the Seventh, who having two Daughters, bestowed the Eldest (contrary to the mind of his Council) on the King of *Scots*, and the younger on the King of the *French*, that so, if his own Issue Male should fail, and that a Prince of another Na-

tion must inherit *England*; then *Scotland* as the lesser Kingdom would depend upon *England*, and not *England* wait on *France*, as upon the greater. In which Succession of the *Scots* to the Crown of *England*, the Prophecy of the fatal Stone, spoken of before, did receive accomplishment. And so perhaps might that ascribed in the *Poly-chronicon* to an holy *Anchoret* living in King *Edwards* time, which is this, *Englishmen*, for that they wretched them to Drunkenness, to Treason, and to Retchlesness of Gods House, first by Danes, and then by Normans, and the third time by *Scots*, whom they holden least worthy of all, they shall be overcome. Then the World shall be unstable, and so divers and variable, that the unstableness of thoughts shall be betokened by many manner Diversity of Clothing. For on this Union of the Kingdoms, this Prediction seems to have been accomplished; the Circumstances mentioned in the same so patly agreeing, and the *Scots* never subduing *England*, but by this blessed Victory. Unless perhaps the Accomplishment thereof be still to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great Defeat at *Bannocks bourn*, in which was slain 50000 *English*, as the *Scottish* Writers do report, and the name of *Scot* growing so terrible for a time, that an hundred of the *English* would flee from three *Scots*, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* estimateth at 100000 Crowns, or 30000 Sterling, and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being not Commodity in this Kingdom to allure Strangers to Traffick: the Demain or Patrimony of the Crown, but mean; the Country in most places Barren, and many of the Subjects, those especially of the Out-Isles, and the Western parts, so extreemly barbarous, that they add very small improvement to the publick Treasury.

And answerable to the shortness of their standing Revenue, were their Forces also. For though the Country be very populous, and the Men generally patient both of Cold and Hunger, and inured to Hardship; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces seldom held together above 40 days; and then, if not a great deal sooner, did disband themselves. For the Nobility and Gentry being bound by the Tenure of their Lands, to serve the King in his Wars, and to bring with them such, and so many of their *Vassals*, as the present Service did require; used to provide for themselves and their Followers, Tents, Money, Victuals, Provision of all sorts, and all other Necessaries; the King supplying them with nothing. Which being spent, they usually Disbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reason, why the *Scots* in the time of Hostility betwixt the Nations, made only sudden and tumultuary Incursions into *England*, without any thing of special Moment: and that they have not acted any thing elsewhere in the way of Conquest, but only as Mercenaries to the *French* and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the Army of King *James* the 4th, when he invaded *England* in the time of King *Henry* the Eighth, (being then in *France*) consisted of 100000 fighting Men; yet this I look on only as an Argument of their Populosity; few of those Men being armed or trained up to Service, and therefore easily discomfited by a far less Army. It's true, that in the year 1645. the *Scottish* *Covenanters* raised an Army consisting of 18000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, and 1000 Dragoons; with Arms, Artillery, and Ammunition correspondent to it: which was the gallantest Army, and the best appointed, that ever that Nation did set out in the times foregoing. But then it is as true withal, that this Army was maintained and payed by the two Houses of the Parliament of *England*, at the rate of 30000 *l.* per mensum, and an advance of 100000 *l.* before-hand, the better to invire them to embrace the Action, and prepare Necessaries for it, without any charge unto themselves. And though the Army which they sent into *England* above five years after, under *James* Duke *Hamilton* of *Arran*, was

was little inferiour unto this number, but far superiour to it both in Horfe and Arms, and other necessary appointments: yet it is well known, that the Scots brought nothing but their own Bodies to compound that Army; the Horfe and Arms being such as they had gotten out of England in the former War.

In point of Reputation amongst Foreign Princes, the Kings of the Scots, and their Ambassadors and Agents, had place in all General Councils, and Ecclesiastical Assemblies, before those of Castile: and by the Statists of late times, have been reckoned (with the Kings of England, France, and Spain) for absolute Monarchs. But I conceive that this was only since the first years of King Edward the Third, when they had quitted their Subjection and Vassalage to the Crown of England. For that anciently the Scots were Homagers to the Kings of England, may be apparently demonstrated by these following Arguments. 1. By the Homages, and other Services, and Duties, done by the Kings of the Scots unto those of England: Malcolm the Third, doing Homage unto William the Conqueror; as William, one of his Successors, did to King Henry the Second; and that not only for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of Huntingdon (as by some pretended) but for the very Crown it self: Kenneth the Third, being also one of those eight Tributary or Vassal Kings, which rowed King Edgar over the Dee, as before was noted. 2ly, By the interpoling of King Edward the First, and the submission of the Scots to that interpoling, in determining the controversie of Succession betwixt Bruce and Baliol; as in like case, Philip the Fair adjudged the Title of Artoys, which was holden of the Crown of France, and then in question betwixt the Lady Maud, and her Nephew Robert; or as King Edward the Third, in the right of the said Crown of France, determined of the Controversie betwixt John Earl of Montford, and Charles of Blois, for the Dukedom of Bretagne. 3ly, By the confession and acknowledgment of the Prelates, Peers, and other the Estates of Scotland, subscribed by all their Hands and Seals in the Roll of Ragman; wherein they did acknowledge the Superiority of the Kings of England, not only in regard of such advantages as the Sword had given him, but as of his original and undoubted right. Which Roll was treacherously delivered into the hands of the Scots, by Roger Mortimer Earl of March, in the beginning of the Reign of King Edward the Third. 4ly, By the tacit concession of the Kings themselves, who in their Coins, Commissions, and publick Instruments, assume not to themselves the Title of Kings of Scotland, but of *Reges Scotorum*, or the Kings of the Scots: and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet there is some Superiour Lord (King Paramount as we may call him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. 5ly, By the Judgments and Arrests of the Courts of England, not only in the times of King Edward the First, but in some times since. For when William Wallis, a Scottishman by Birth, and the best Soldier of that Country, was taken Prisoner and brought to London, he was adjudged to suffer death as a Traytor; which had been an illegal and unrighteous judgment, had he been a Prisoner of War, and not looked on by the Judges as a Subject to the Crown of England. The like done in the case of Simon Frezill, another of that Kingdom in the same Kings Reign. In like manner, in the time of K. Edward the Third, it was resolved by the Court, in the Lord Beaumonts Case, when it was objected that one of the Witnesses was a Scot, and therefore as an Alien, not to give his Evidence; that his Testimony was to be allowed of, because the Scots in the Law of England did not go for Aliens. And when one indicted for a Rape in the 13th of Queen Elizabeths Reign, desired a *Medietatem Linguae*, because he was a Scottishman, and so an Alien, it was denied him by the Court, because the Scots were not reputed here as Aliens, but as Sub-

jects rather. So also, when Robert Umfraville, Lord of Kyme, was summoned to the Parliament of England, in the Reign of King Edward the Third, by the name of Robert Earl of Angus, (which is a dignity in Scotland;) and after in a Writ against him was called only by his own name of Umfraville, without any addition of that honour; the Writ was judged to abide; which I conceive the learned Judges had not done, if Scotland had not been reputed to be under the Vassalage of the Kings of England. 6. and lastly, by a Quarter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my custody) granted by King Edward the First, in the last year of his Reign, to Peter Dudge of Stopworth in the County of Chester, one of the Ancestors of my Mother, in which it is expressed, that the said Lands and Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent services, *encomencé son grand Enemy & Rebel, Baliol, Roy d'Escoce & vassal de Angleterre*; that is to say, against his great Enemy and Rebel Baliol King of Scotland, and Vassal of England. A thing so clear, that if King James had not been extremely tender of the honour of his Native Country, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a New Invention in hammering the Case of the *Post-nati* for him; to make the Scots inheritable unto Lands in England. The acknowledgment and Reviver of their old Subjection would have served his turn. But of this Argument enough, and perhaps too much. I only add, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable Person of that Kingdom of Scotland, employed unto the Court in a business of no mean consequence to the Peace and Quiet of his Country: I found him so sensible of the inconveniences of their present Government, by reason of the Kings absence, and the frequent divisions and partialities of his Council there; that he confessed that Nation could be never rich or happy, till they were made a Province of the English Empire; and governed by a Vice-Roy, as Ireland was.

The Principal Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of S. Andrew, instituted by Hungus, King of the Picts, to encourage his Subjects in the War against King Athelstane of England. The Knights did wear about their necks a Collar, interlaced with Thistles, with the Picture of St. Andrew appendant to it: the Motto *Nemo me impune lacessit*. It took this name because after the Battel, Hungus and his Soldiers went all barefoot to S. Andrews, and there vowed that they and their Posterity would henceforth use his Cross as their Ensign (which is a Saltire Argent in a Field Azure) whensoever they take in hand any warlike Enterprize. This Order having been long Extinguished in the year 1687. was revived by James the 2d, King of England.

2. But this Order being expired many Ages since, there is now no Order of Knight-hood in it, (except *Knights Bachelors*) but that of Nova Scotia; ordained by King James, An 1622. for the planting of that Country by Scottish Colonies; in imitation of the Orders of Baronets in England, for the plantation of Ulster. Hereditary, as that also is, but the Knights heretof distinguished by a Ribband of Orange-Tawney.

The Arms are Sol, a Lion Rampant Mars, within a double Tressure Counter-flowered: which Tressure Counter-flowered was added to the Lion by Achaius King of the Scots, at what time he contracted the League with France: signifying (saith Hector Boetius one of their Historians) *Francorum opibus Leonem exinde muniendum*; that the Scotch Lion should be guarded by the riches of France.

Reckoned in Scotland, with
the Isles of it,
Archbishops 2. Bishops 12.

Universities two,
S. Andrews. Aberdeen.

I R E L A N D.

IR E L A N D is invironed on all sides with the Ocean; parted from *Britain* by a violent and unruly Sea, called *S. Georges Chanel*; situate to the West of *Britain*, next unto which it is the biggest Island of *Europe*, containing in length 300, and in breadth 120 Miles; and is seated under the 8th and 10th *Climates*; the longest day being 16 hours and an half in the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts.

It was once called *Scotia*, from the *Scots* who did there inhabit; and *Scotia Minor*, to difference it from *Scotland*, in the Isle of *Britain*. But the general name hereof is *Ireland*; by the *Latines* called *Hibernia*, by the *Greeks*, *Iernia*. And though some frame a wrested *Ety-mologie* from *Iberus*, a *Spanish* Captain; and some from *Irnaulph*, once a supposed Duke hereof; as others, *ab Hyberno acre*, the Winter-like and inclement Air; yet probably the name proceeded from *Erinland*, which signifieth in their own Language a Western Land. And yet I must not pretermitt the *Etymon* given us by *Bochartus*, (more near the name than most of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Ibernae*, a *Phœnician* word, signifying the furthest Habitation; there being no Country known amongst the ancients, which lay West of *Ireland*.

Their own *Chronicles*, or *Fables* rather, tell us, how *Cæsarea*, *Noahs* Neece, inhabited here before the Flood; and how 300 years after the Flood, it was subdued by *Bartholomæus*, a *Scythian*, who overcame here I know not what Giants. Afterward *Nemethus* another *Scythian* Prince, and *Delus* a *Grecian*, came hither, and last of all *Gaotbel*, with his Wife *Scota*, one of *Pharaohs* Daughters, who must needs name this Island *Scotia*. But not to honour such *Topperies* with a confutation, doubtless the first Inhabitants of this Island came out of *Britain*. For *Britain* is the highest Country unto it, and so had a more speedy waftage hither. Secondly, the ancient Writers call this Island, a *British* Island: And thirdly, *Tacitus*, giveth us of this Country this Verdict, *Solum, cœlumque cultus & ingenia hominum, haud multum a Britannia differunt*; the Soil and Air, the Habits and Disposition of the People, were not much unlike the *Britains*. For further evidence whereof, it was observed, at the reduction of *Wales* to the Crown of *England*, by King *Edward* the First, that many of their Laws and Customs were those of the *Irish*; which shews, that they did both descend from the same Original. But then we must observe withal, that they were counted far more barbarous and savage by most ancient Writers, than those of *Britain* are deciphered at the first discovery; said by *Strabo* to be Man-eaters; accustomed (as *Solinus* telleth us) to drink the Blood of those whom they slew in fight. Nor were the Women, though the softer and more tender Sex, free from such wild and savage Customs, it being a constant course amongst them, when they were delivered of a man child, to put some meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a Sword, wishing therewith it might not dye but in the midst of Arms, and the heat of Battel. Both Sexes used to trim themselves with the Teeth of *Fishes*, white as the driven Snow, or the polished Ivory; and therein placed the greatest part of their pride and bravery.

Nor are the modern *Irish* much abhorrent from such barbarous Customs, as plainly shew from what Original they descend; altered but little by converse with more civil Nations. Of natural constitution generally strong and nimble of Body; naughty of Heart, careless of their Lives, patient in Cold and Hunger, implacable in Enmity,

constant in Love, light of Belief, greedy of Glory; and in a word, if they be bad, you shall nowhere find worse; if they be good, you shall hardly meet with better. The Diet, especially of the meer *Irish*, is for the most part, on Herbs, Roots, butter mingled with Oat-flower, Milk, and Beef-broth: eating Flesh many times without Bread, which they digest with *Uisquebaugh*; and give their Bread-corn to their Horses instead of *Provvender*: But more particularly, those of the richer sort in all parts, and of all sorts those which inhabit within the Pale (as they themselves call it) and in such places where the *English* Discipline hath been entertained; conformable to civility, both in Behaviour and Apparel: The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the wild *Irish* of the poorer and inferior sort, most extreemly barbarous; not behaving themselves like *Christians*, scarcely like Men. All of them so tenacious of their ancient Customs, that neither Power, nor Reason, nor the sense of the inconveniences which they suffer by it, can wean them to desert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their use of *Ploughing*, not with such Gears or Harness, as in other places; but by tying the hindmost Horses head to the Tail of the former: which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain; makes them unserviceable by the soon losing of their Tails, and withal is a course of so slow a dispatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a Week, as a good Teem well harnessed would perform in a Day; yet no perswasion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtful and ridiculous Custom. And when the Earl of *Strafford*, the late Lord Deputy had damned it by act of Parliament, and laid a Penalty on such as should after use it, the People thought it such a Grievance, and so injurious to the Nation, that amongst other things demanded towards a *Pacification* of the present Troubles, their Agents and Commissioners insisted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of *Husbandry*, we shall hereafter meet with in another place. Near of kin to which, is a lazie Custom that they have of burning their Straw (rather than put themselves to the pains to thresh it) by that means to part it from the Corn. From which no Reason can dissuade them, nor Perswasions win them. They have among them other Customs as absurd though less inconvenient; as placing a green Bush, on *May-day* before their Doors, to make their kine yield the more Milk; kneeling down to the *New-Moon* as soon as they see it, desiring her to leave them in as good health as she found them; and many others of like nature.

They use a Language of their own, but spoken also in the West of *Scotland*, and the *Hebrides* or Western Islands; which though originally *British*, or a Dialect of it, by reason of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Easterlings*, or *Oost-mans*, and *English Saxons*; hath no affinity with the *Irish*, for ought I can learn.

The Christian Faith was first preached among them by *S. Patrick*, affirmed to be the Nephew of *S. Martin* of *Tours*, Anno 435. Reformed in the more civil parts, and the *English* Colonies, according to the Platform of the Church of *England*: but the *Kernes*, or natural wild *Irish*, (and many of the better sort of the Nation also) either adhere unto the Pope, or to their own Superstitious fancies, as in former times. And to say truth, it is no wonder that they should, there being no care taken to instruct them in the Protestant Religion; either by translating the Bible, or the *English Liturgie*, into their own Language, as was done in *Wales*, but forcing them to come to Church to the *English* Service, which the People understand no more than

than they do the Mass : (Since altered.) By means whereof the *Irish* are not only kept in continual ignorance, as to the Doctrine and Devotions of the Church of *England*, and others of the *Protestant* Churches ; but those of *Rome* are furnished with an excellent Argument, for having the Service of the Church in a Language which the common Hearers do not understand. And therefore I do heartily commend it to the care of the State (when these Distempers are composed) to provide that they may have the Bible, and all other publick means of *Christian* Instruction and Devotion in their natural Tongue.

The Soil of it self is abundantly fruitful, but naturally fitter for Grass and Pasturage, than it is for Tillage : as may be seen in such places where the industry of Man is aiding to the natural goodness of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Country is either over-grown with Wood, or encumbered with vast Bogs, and unwholesome Marshes ; yielding neither Profit nor Pleasure unto the Inhabitants. In some places, as in the County of *Armagh*, so rank and fertile, that the laying of any Soil or Compost on it, doth abate its fruitfulness, and proves the worst Husbandry that can be.

It hath been anciently very famous for the Piety and Religious Lives of the Monks. Amongst whom I can not but remember *Columbus*, and of him this memorable *Apothegm* ; when offered many Preferments to leave his Country, he returned this Answer, *It becomes not them to embrace other Mens Goods, who for Christ's sake had forsaken their own.* Of no less Piety, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz Rafe*, Archbishop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flourished about the Year 1350. A declared enemy of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

It is affirmed of this Island, that (amongst other Privileges which it hath above other Islands) it fostereth no venomous Serpent ; and that no such will live here, brought from other places. Hence of her self we find her speaking in the Poet.

*Ille ego sum Graiis Glacialis Hibernia dicta ;
Cui Deus, & melior norma nascentium Origo ;
Fus commune dedit cum Caeta abrice Torantis,
Angues ne nostris dissimulant sibi in oris.*

I am that Island which in times of old
The *Greeks* did call *Ilibonia*, icy-cold :
Secured by God and Nature from this fear,
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Jove's* Mother dear,
That poisonous Snake should never here be bred,
Or dare to hiss, or hurtful venom spread.

The other Miracles of this Island are, 1. That there is a Lake in the County of *Armagh*, into which if one thrust a piece of Wood, he shall find that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned Iron ; and that which is in the Water, to be turned into a Whetstone : richly deserved by him, if the Tale be false, who did first report it. 2. That the Kine will yield no Milk, if their Calves be not by them ; or at least their Calves-skins stuffed with Straw or Hay. It is said also, that all the breed of this Country are of less size than they be in *England*, except Women and Grey-hounds, and those much bigger than with us.

As for the Clergy of this Country, they have been little beholding to their *Lay-Patrons* in former times ; some of their Bishops being so poor, that they had no other Revenues than the Pasture of two Milch-Beasts. And so far had the Monasteries and Religious Houses been invaded by *Appropriations*, the Churches Rights, that of late times, in the whole Province of *Connaught*, the whole Stipend of the Incumbent was not above forty shillings, in some places not above sixteen : So that the poor *bish* must needs be better fed than taught ; for *Ad tenuitatem Beneficiorum necessario sequitur ignorantia Sacerdotum* Poor Benefices will be filled with ignorant Priests,

said *Panormitan* rightly. But this remedied in part by his Sacred Majesty King *Charles* the Second, Monarch of *Great-Britain*, who liberally (at the Suit of the late Lord Archbishop of *Canterbury*) restored unto this Church all the *Impropriations* and Portions of *Tithes*, which had been vested in the Crown. An Action of most singular Piety and Princely Bounty.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are, 1. The *Shannon*, (the *Senas* of *Ptolemy*) which arising in the Mountains of *Leitrim* in the County of *Connaught*, and making many fair Lakes as it passeth forwards ; loseth it self after a course of 200 Miles (of which sixty Navigable) in the Western Ocean. 2. The *Liff*, by *Ptolemy* called *Liffimus*, neighboured by the City of *Dublin*. 3. *Loudiffe*, or *Black-Water*, as the *English* call it. 4. *Slane*, supposed to be the *Medona* of the ancient Writers. 5. The *Somme*. 6. The *Boyne*, &c. Of which, and others of like note, take this following Catalogue out of the Canto of the Marriage of the *Thames* and *Medway* in the *Edy Queen*.

There was the *Liffe* rowling down the Sea,
The sandy *Slane*, the stony *Lublin*,
The spacious *Boyne*, spreading like a Sea,
The pleasant *Boyne*, the fishy-fruitful *Banne*,
Swift *Arwidiffe*, which of the *Englishman*
Is called *Black-Water* ; and the *Liffar* deep,
Sad *Trowis*, that once his People over-ran,
Strong *Allo* tumbling from *Shenl* cheer steep,
And *Maullo* mine, whose Waves I whilom taught to weep.

There also was the wide-embayed *Moyre*,
The pleasant *Banden* crown'd with many Wood ;
The spreading *Lee*, that like an Island fair
Incloseth *Cork* with his divided flood ;
And hateful *Oure*, late stain'd with *English* Blood,
With many more, ———

So the renowned *Spencer* in his Canto of the marriage of *Thames* and *Medway*.

But besides these Rivers, this Island is in most places well stored with Lakes, yielding great plenty of Fish to the parts adjoining. The principal of which, 1. *Lough Erne*, containing 15 Miles in breadth, and 30 Miles in length ; shaded with Woods, and so replenished with Fish, that the Fishermen complain of too much abundance, and the often breaking of their Nets. It hath also in it many Islands, one most remarkable for the strange and horrid Noises which are therein heard, called therefore by the Vulgar, *St. Patrick's Purgatory*. Almost as big as this is, 2. the Lake of *Corbes*, which loseth it self in the Sea not far from *Galloway*. A Lake of 26 Miles in length, and four in breadth ; said to have in it 30 Islets, abounding with Pine-Trees. 3. *Lough-Boyle*, supposed to be the *Logia* of *Ptolemy*. 4. *Lough-Eaugh*, out of which the River *Banne*, abundantly well stored with Salmons, hath its first Original. And besides these and many others of less note, there are said to be three Lakes in the Province of *Meth*, not far asunder, and having an Intercourse of Waters ; but of so different a Temper, that the Fish which are proper to the one, (for each of them hath its proper and peculiar sorts) will not live in the other ; but either die, or by some secret conveyances, find a way to their own Lake out of which they were brought.

It was divided anciently into five Provinces, each one a Kingdom of it self, that is to say, 1. *Leinster*, 2. *Meth*, 3. *Ulster*, 4. *Connaught*, and 5. *Munster* ; but of late time the Province of *Meth* is reckoned for a Member or part of *Leinster*.

1. *LEINSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Lagenia*, hath on the East, the *Irish* Channel) commonly called *St. George's*

St. George's Channel) by which parted from the Isle of Great Britain; on the West, the River *Nurrie*, (*Neorus*, as the *Latins* call it) which divides it from *Munster*; on the North, the Province of *Meath*; and the main Ocean on the South. The Soil more fruitful generally than the rest of *Ireland*, because better cultivated and manured, as having been longest in the possession of the *English*; from whom a great part of the Inhabitants do derive themselves, and for that reason more conformable to the Civilities and Habit of the *English* Nation. Well watered, besides a large Sea-coast, with many fair and pleasant Rivers, the principal whereof, 1. the *Barrow*, called in *Latin*, *Borgus*, 2. the *Nurrie*, 3. the *Shannon*, 4. the *Liffie*, (the *Labinus* of *Ptolemy*) neighbouring *Dublin* the chief City.

It containeth the Counties of 1. *Dublin*, 2. *Kilkenny*, 3. *Cathlough*, 4. *Kildare*, 5. *Lease*, or *Queens-County*; 6. *Ophalie*, or *Kings-County*, and 7. *Wexford*; in which are comprehended 24 Towns of note, and 88 Castles well fortified, and able to make good resistance against an Enemy. The *English* being forced to fortifie themselves in their Plantations with strong Holds and Fortresses against the incursions of the Natives.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Dublin*, supposed to be the *Eblana* of *Ptolemy*; by the *Irish* called *Balaclogh*; because, being seated in a fenny and moorish Soil, it was built on Piles, as the word doth signifie in that Language. Situate at or near the mouth of the River *Liffe*, which affordeth it a commodious Haven, but that the entrances thereof are many times encumbered with heaps of Sand. The City very rich and populous, as being the *Metropolis* of all the Island, the Seat of the Lord Deputy, an Archbishop's See, and an University; besides the benefits redounding from the Courts of Justice. In these respects well fortified against all emergencies; and adorned with many goodly Buildings, both private and publick. The principal of which are the Castle, wherein the Lord Deputy resideth, built by *Henry Loan-dres*, once Archbishop here: A College founded by *Queen Elizabeth*, to the Honour, and by the Name of the blessed *Trinity*; the Cathedral Church dedicated to *St. Patrick*, the Apostle of the *Irish* Nation; a fair Collegiate Church called *Christ-Church*, besides thirteen others destinated to Parochial Meetings. Being destroyed almost to nothing in the *Danish Wars*, it was re-edified by *Hakon*, surnamed *Harfager*, King of the *Norwegians*, then Masters of most parts of the Island; and after the subjection of it to the Crown of *England*, was peopled with a Colony of *Bristol-Men*. 2. *Wexford*, or *Wexford*, the *Atenapia* of *Ptolemy*, situate on the mouth of the River *Slane*, supposed to be the *Adodona* of the same Author, the first of all the Towns in *Ireland* which received a Colony of *English*. 3. *Kilkenny*, on the River *Nurrie*, the chief Seat of the Bishop of *Offory*, and the fairest Town of all the Inlands: so called, *quasi Cella Canici*, the Cell or Monastery of *Canicus*, a Man of great renown for Piety in these parts of the County. 4. *Kildare*, an Island Town also, and a Bishop's See; but of more note for giving the Title of an Earl to the ancient Family of the *Fitz-Gerards*, of long time honoured with this Title. One of which being much complained of to King *Henry* the Eighth, as a Man of so unquiet and turbulent a Nature, that his Adversaries closed their Charge against him with this Expression, *Finally, all Ireland cannot rule this Earl*; the King replied, that *Then this Earl should rule all Ireland*; and so, for his Jest's sake, made him Lord Deputy of the Kingdom. 5. *Rosse*, once populous, well traded, and of large circumference, now a Ruine only; nothing remaining but the Walls, which were built by *Isabel*, the Daughter of *Richard Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, the fortunate Conqueror of this Island for King *Henry* the Second. 6. *Philip's Town*, the principal of the County of *Ophalie*, or *Kings-County*; so called in honour of King *Philip*; as 7. *Mariborg*, the chief of *Lease*, or the *Queens-County*, was in honour of *Queen*

Mary. 8. *Ligblin*, a place of great importance, well walled and fortified against the incursions of the *Irish* by the Lord Deputy *Bellingham*. 9. *Cathlough*, commonly, but corruptly, *Carlough*, a Town of great strength, and the chief of that County. 10. *Rheban*, not otherwise of note, but that it is conceived to be the *Rhoba* of *Ptolemy*.

2. *METH*, by the *Latines* called *Media*, by *Giraldus*, *Midia*; because situate in the midst of the Island, hath on the South *Leinster*; on the West *Connaught*; on the North, *Ulster*; on the East, the *Irish* Sea, or *St. George's* Channel. A small, but rich and pleasant Province; well stocked with People, and stored with all things necessary for their Sustentation; and for a sweet and wholsom Air not inferior to any. Divided into three Counties only, that is to say, 1. *East-Meth*, 2. *West-Meth*, and 3. *Longford*; containing thirteen Towns of note, and fourteen Castles of good esteem. By reason of which strength, it is called by some Writers, the *Chamber of Ireland*.

Towns of most consequence herein, are, 1. *Trim*, the chief Town of the County of *East-Meth*, the ancient Barony of the *Lacies*; possessed in former times of a fair Revenue in this County, and the Lords of the greatest part of *Ulster*. 2. *Tredagh*, more properly *Drogheda*, situate on the River *Boine* on the edge of *Ulster*, to which Province belongs so much of the Town as lieth on the North side of that River; a very fair and populous City, as well by Art as Nature very strongly fortified, and furnished with a large and commodious Haven. It took the Name of *Drogheda*, from the Bridge there built upon the River for the conveniency of passage (as the word signifies in that Language) and therefore called *Pontana* by some *Latin* Writers. This was one of the first Places *O. Cromwel* took in *Ireland* by Force, who put all he found in it to the Sword, and miserably impoverished the place. 3. *Molinga*, the chief Town of *West-Meth*. 4. *Delvin*, in the same County also, the Barony of the *Nugents*, an ancient Family in this Tract. 5. *Longford*; of most note in the County so named, but not else observable.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for *Leinster* since the first Conquest of it, hath been inseparably annexed to the Crown of *England*) it was first granted in Fee-Farm by King *Henry* the Second, to *Hugh Lacy* a Man of great merit and employment in the Conquest of *Ireland*; who left it unto *Walter* his younger Son. By *Margaret* and *Matilda*, the Nieces of this *Walter*, by his Son *Gilbert*, one moiety hereof came to the *Montimers*, Earls of *March*, and in their Right unto the Crown in King *Edward* the Fourth; and the other moiety to the *Verduns*, by whom dispersed and scattered into divers Families. Accompted for one County only till the time of King *Henry* the Eighth, in whose Reign it was divided into *East-Meth* and *West-Meth*; to which the County of *Longford* was after added, as it continueth to this day.

3. *ULSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Ultonia*; is the largest Province of all *Ireland*, bounded on the South with *Meth* and *Connaught*; on the West, with the vast *Irish* Ocean; on the North, with that part of the Northern Ocean, to which *Ptolemy* gives the Name of *Hyperborean*; and on the East, with *St. George's* Channel. A Country fruitful of it self, but in most places formerly overgrown with Woods, and drowned in Marshes and great Bogs, by the natural slothfulness of the People; made more responsive to the Husbandman, both for Corn and Pasturage, since the late Plantation of the *British*, than in times foregoing.

It is divided into the Counties of, 1. *Louth*, 2. *Carvon*, 3. *Permanath*, 4. *Down*, 5. *Monaghan*, 6. *Armagh*, 7. *Cel-rane*, 8. *Tirconnel*, 9. *Tir Oen*, and 10. *Antrim*. In which are comprehended 14 Towns of note for Commerce and Traffick.

Traffick, and 30 Castles for the defence of the Country, and keeping under the wild Irish; wider and more untractable in these Northern parts, than the rest of Ireland. The whole well watered with a large and spacious Sea, on three sides thereof; many great Lakes in the body of it, besides the Rivers of 1. *Bine*, called in *Latine Binnla*, which divides it from *Meth*, 2. the *Binn*, 3. *Moandae*, and 4. the *Eyn*, belonging to this Province wholly.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Armagh*, on or near the River of *Kahan*, the chief Town of the County so called; and the See of an Archbishop, who is the Primate of all Ireland. An ancient City but so miserably defaced by the *Tir-Oen* Rebellion, that it can scarce preserve the reputation of a Market-Town. 2. *Carlingford*, an ancient Town, both situate on the Sea-side, and both within the County of *Louth*. 4. *Knock-Fergus*, the chief of *Enniskillen*; more properly *Rack-Fergus*, (and in that sense called *Carick-Fergus* by the Irish) so called from *Fergus*, one of the Kings of the *Irish Scots*, who there suffered Shipwreck. Seated upon a large and spacious Bay (the *Vindicta* of *Ptolomy*) which giveth it both a safe and commodious Port; as well by natural situation, as the works of Art, very strongly fortified, by reason of the Neighbourhood of the *Scots in Cantire*, from which little distant. 5. *London-Derry*, a Colony of the *Londoners*, best built of any Town in the North of Ireland. 6. *Dungannon*, the principal Seat and Residence, in former times, of the great *O-Neals*. 7. *Dungall*, the principal of *Tir-Cannell*. 8. *Rohogh*, a small Village at present, but anciently a Bishop's See: fit to be mention'd in this place, in regard it still preserveth some foot steps of the old *Rohogdii*, an Irish Tribe, and placed by *Ptolomy* in this Tract, where they gave Name unto the *Premontory*, by him called *Rohogdium*, now the *Fair-Forland*; as is probably conceived by the Learned *Cambden*.

This, as it is the largest Province of all this Kingdom, so was it with most difficulty subjected to the Crown of England, and reduced to good order and civility. First conquered by *John Curcy*, a valiant *English-man*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Second, by whom he was created Earl of *Ulster*. But being maligned for his eminent Virtues, and after proscribed by King *John*, this Title and Estate were both conferred upon *Hugh Lacie*, the Lord and Conqueror of *Meth*, whom before we spake of. By an Heir General of the *Lacies*, it came unto the *Burghs*, then Lords of *Connaught*; and by the Marriage of *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *Richard de Burgh*, the last Earl of that Family, it came to *Lionel*, Duke of *Clarence*, the second Son (then living) of King *Edward* the Third, as by his Daughter *Philip*, to the Earls of *March*; from them by the like Marriage to the House of *York*, and in the Person of King *Edward* the Fourth, to the Crown again. But being neglected by the *English* in the whole course of their Government, especially in the Wars betwixt *York* and *Lancaster*, it was cantoned in many Estates and Principalities, by the great Lords of the natural Irish; (who had born too great sway here in the former times) and so estranged from the civilities of England, and their Allegiance to that Crown, as if that it had never been in subjection to it. In which estate it did continue (the Kings of England having here no more Power or Profit, than the great ones of the Country were pleased to give them): till the Rebellion first, and afterwards the vanquishment of *Hugh O-neal*, the then Earl of *Tir-Oen*, brought it in full subjection to the English Government, of which more hereafter.

4. *CONNAUGHT*, in *Latin* called *Connacia*, by the Irish *Connaught*, is bounded on the North with *Ulster*; on the West with the main Ocean; on the South with *Munster*, from which parted by the River *Shannon*; and on the East, with *Meth* and some part of *Leinster*. So called from the *Nagnata*, an old Irish Nation; or from *Nagnata* a Port-Town, both placed by *Ptolomy* in this Tract. The Soil of the same temper with that of *Ulster*;

as woody and as full of Bogs till these later times, in which indifferently well cleared of both inconveniences.

It hath been also called by our *English* Writers the County of *Clare*, from *Thom de Clare*, one of the younger sons of *Gilbert de Clare*, Earl of *Gloucester*, on whom it was conferred by King *Edward* the First; and is divided at the present into these five Shires: that is to say, 1. *Larim*, 2. *Roscommon*, 3. *Meth*, 4. *Siege*, and 5. *Galloway* and *Tromond*. In which are comprehended but eight Towns of any consequence for Commerce and Traffick (an argument of the imperfect Plantation of it by the *English* Conquerors); and about 24 Castles for defence of the County, of old erection, besides such Fortresses as have been raised occasionally in these latter Troubles.

Places of most note and observation, 1. *Trim*, an Archbishop's See. 2. *Athlone*, an ancient Town, but decayed and ruinous; of most renown for being the Barony of *John de Birmingham*, a noble *Englishman*, who had great possession in this Tract. 3. *Larim*, the chief Town of the County so named, neighboured by the *Curlew*-Mountains, unfortunately memorable for the great defeat there given the *English* in *Tir-Oen* Rebellion; and by the Spring or Fountain of the River *Shannon* or *Shannon*, whose course we have before described. 4. *Siege*, and 5. *Roscommon*, the chief Town of their several Counties. 6. *Athlone*, a piece of great strength, and the great Key of *Connaught*. 7. *Twemont*, not otherwise much observable, but for giving the Title of an Earl to the Family of *O Brian*, (descended from the Kings of *Connaught*) advanced unto that Honour by King *Henry* the Eighth. 8. *Galloway*, the principal of this Province, a Bishop's See, and the third City of the Kingdom for beauty and bigness. Situate near the fall of the great Lake or River of *Corbet*, in the Western Ocean, defended on that side from the fury of the Sea, and fear of Invasions, by the interposition of some Islands (called the *Isles of Arran*) very strongly fortified. A noted Empory, and lately of so great fame with Foreign Merchants, that an out-landish Merchant meeting with an *Irishman*, demanded in what part of *Galloway* Ireland stood; as if *Galloway* had been the Name of the Island, and *Ireland* only the Name of some Town.

This once a Kingdom of it self, as the rest of those Provinces; the last King whereof was *Roderick*, surnamed the Great, who having a great hand over the rest of the *Royalets*, entitled himself sole Monarch, or King of Ireland. But being forced to submit himself to King *Henry* the Second, his Country at the last was brought into subjection to the Crown of England, by the Valour and good fortune of *William de Burgh*, *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloucester*, *William de Birmingham*, and other Noble Adventurers of the *English* Nation. And though all of them did partake of the fruit of their Labours; yet the greatest part of the Spoil, together with the Title of Lords of *Connaught*, fell to the Family of the *Burghs*; from them to *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, and by degrees unto the Crown, as before was shewn. Cantoned again amongst the *Irish* and degenerate *English*, as *Ulster* was, by the supine neglect of the Kings of England; till the Rebellion of *Tir-Oen*, involving all the chief of the *Irish* Nation in the same cause with him, involved them also consequently in the same destruction.

5. *MOUNSTER*, by the *Latins* called *Momonia*, is bounded on the North with *Connaught*; on the East with *Leinster*; on the West with the *Atlantic* or Western Ocean; and on the South with the *Virginian*. By the natural *Irish* it is called *Mown*, whence the *English* had the Name of *Munster*. A Province, which for rich Towns, commodious Havens, fair Rivers, and the fertility of the Soil, yields not to any in the Kingdom.

It is divided into six Counties, viz. *Limerick*, 2. *Waterford*, 3. *Cork*, 4. *Down*, 5. *Kerry*, and 6. *Tipperary*, which

which two last anciently enjoyed all the Rights of a County Palatine: And in these Shires are comprehended (besides many safe Stations and Roads for Shipping) 24 Towns of Note and Trading, and 66 Castles of old erection.

Places of most observation, 1. *Cassiles*, in the County of *Limerick*, an Archbishop's See, advanced unto that honour by Pope *Eugenius* the Third, about the Year 1150. 2. *Limerick*, the principal of that County, and the fourth in estimation of all the Kingdom: Situate in an Island compassed round about with the River *Shanon*, by which means well fortified; a well frequented Empory, and a Bishop's See; distant from the main Ocean about 60 Miles, but so accommodated by the River, that Ships of Burden come up close to the very Walls. The Castles and the Bridge-pieces of both great strength and beauty, were of the foundation of King *John*, exceedingly delighted with the situation. 3. *Clonmel*, in the County of *Tipperary*, of great strength and consequence. 4. *Holy Cross*, in the same County also, once flourishing by reason of the great resort of Pilgrims, to see and worship there a piece of the Holy Cross, as it was supposed; which supposition, as it drew much Wealth unto the Town, so it obtained the Rights of a County Palatine for the County also. 5. *Thurles* in the same County, which gives the Title of a Viscount to the Earls of *Ormond*, but not else observable. 6. *Waterford*, on the River *Shannon*, a well traded Port, a Bishop's See, and the second City of the Kingdom. Of great fidelity to the *English* since the Conquest of *Ireland*, and for that cause endowed with many ample Privileges. First built by some *Norwegian* Pirates, who though they fixed it in one of the most barren Parts, and most foggy Air of all the Country, yet they made choice of such a safe and commodious Site for the use of Shipping, that of a Nest of Pirates it was afterwards made a Receipt for Merchants, and suddenly grew up to great Wealth and Power. 7. *Cork*, (by the *Latines* called *Corcagia*) the principal of that County, and a Bishop's See; well walled and fitted with a very commodious Haven; consisting chiefly of one Street reaching out in length; inhabited by a civil, wealthy, and industrious People. 8. *Dunkerran*, an old Episcopal See, supposed by some to be the *Ivernus* of *Ptolomy*, but not else observable. 9. *Kinsale*, upon the mouth of the River *Bany*, a commodious Port, opposite to the Coasts of *Spain*, and fortified in *Tir Oen's* Rebellion by a *Spanish* Garrison, under the Command of *Don John de Aquila*; but soon recovered (after the defeat of that Grand Rebel near the Walls hereof) by the Valour and indefatigable Industry of *Charles Lord Mounjoy*, the then Lord Deputy of this Kingdom. 10. *Baltimore*, 11. *Youghall*, and 12. *Berehaven*, all upon the Sea, and all provided of safe Roads and convenient Havens. 12. *Lismore*, of old a Bishop's See, now annexed to *Waterford*, in which Shire it standeth. Nothing in point of Story singular which concerns this Province, but that it was so carefully looked to by the Kings of *England*, that there was appointed over it a peculiar Officer (in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, in power and place next to the Deputy himself) called the Lord President of *Munster*; by whose vigilancy there have happened fewer Rebellions here, than in any Province of this Island.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Island, being originally *Britains* (as before is said) were in the time of *Ptolomy* distinguished into the Nations of *Rhobognii*, *Darnii*, *Volontii*, *Venicii*, and *Erdini*, possessing the Northern parts, now *Ulster*; the *Auteri*, *Cangani*, and *Nagnatae*, inhabiting *Connaught*; the *Velibori*, *Uerni*, *Vedii*, and *Coriondi*, in the South, now *Mounster*; and the *Menapii*, *Cauci*, *Blanii*, *Brigantes*, taking up the Provinces of *Meth* and *Leinster*. Principal Cities of the which were *Eblana*, now *Dublin*; *Menapia*, now *Waterford*; *Nagnata*, which *Ptolomy* honoured with the Title of *Urbs insignis*; *Rbigia*, *Rbeba*, *Malcolicum*, *Labernus*, *Ivernus*, &c. not easily discernable by what Names we may call them now: This Country never being so happy as to come under the Power of the

Romans, the great Masters of Civility and good Letters in the West of *Europe*; and by that means, the Affairs thereof buried in ignorance and Silence Towards the falling of which Empire we find the Nation of the *Scots* to be seated here, and from hence to take possession of the *Hebrides*, or Western Isles, near the Western part of *Britain*, on the North of *Dublin*. Afterwards some of the *Saxon* Monarchs cast their Eyes upon it, and made themselves Masters of *Dublin*, and some other place, but being incumbered with the *Danes*, could not hold them long; being hard to defend their own against the People. The next that undertook the Conquest were the Northern Nations, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Normans*, all passing in the Chronicle of that time under the Name of *Norwegians*; who only scoured along the Coasts in the way of Piracy, till after finding the weakness of the Island, divided among many petit and inconsiderable Princes, they made an absolute Conquest of it under the Conduct of *Turgesius*, whom they elected for their King; soon rooted out by the policy of the King of *Meth*, the only *Irish* Prince who was in favour with the Tyrant. This petit King, by Name *Omo-Lagblien*, had a Daughter of renowned Beauty, whom *Turgesius* demanded of her Father to serve his Lusts; and he seeming willing to condescend to the motion, as if honoured by it, made answer, That beside his Daughter, he had at his disposing many others of more exquisite Beauties, which should all be ready at command. *Turgesius* swallowing this Bait, desired him with all speed to effect the meeting. But the King of *Meth*, attiring in the Habits of Women, a company of young Gentlemen, who durst, for the common Liberty, adventure their several Lives, conducted them to the Tyrant's Bed-chamber, and they, according to the directions given them, (when for that little modesty sake he had in him, he had commanded all his Attendants to avoid the Room) assaulted him, now ready for and expecting more kind embraces, and left him dead in the place. The *Meth* King had by this time acquainted divers of the better sort with his Plot; all which upon a Sign given, rush into the Palace, and put to death all the *Norwegians*, and other Attendants of the Tyrant. After this, the *Reydes* enjoyed their former Dominions, till the Year 1172, in which *Dermot*, *Mac Morough* King of *Leinster*, having forced the Wife of *Murice O Rork*, King of *Meth*, and being by him driven out of his Kingdom; came to the Court of *England* for succour. To this Petition, *Henry II.* then King, condescended; sending him Aid under the leading of *Richard de Clare*, surnamed *Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, who restored King *Dermot*, and brought a great part of the Island under the *English* subjection. *John*, King of *England*, was the first who was entituled Lord of *Ireland*; which Title was granted him by Pope *Urban III.* who for the ornament of his Royalty, sent him a plume of Peacock Feathers: And when *Tir Oen* styled him *Defender of the Irish Liberty*, he was by *Clement VIII.* honoured with the like Plume. But here we are to understand, that tho' the Kings of *England* used no other Title than Lord of *Ireland*, yet were they Kings hereof in Effect and Power, *Lords Paramount*, as we use to say. And tho' themselves retained only the Name of *Lords*, yet one of them gave to one of his *English* Subjects, the honourable but invidious Title of *Duke of Ireland*. And they retained the Title of *Lords*, till the Year 1542, in which *Henry VIII.* in an *Irish Parliament*, was declared King of *Ireland*, as a Name more sacred, and repleat with Majesty, than that of *Lord*: At which time also he was declared to be Supreme Head, under God, of the Church of *Ireland*; and the pretended Jurisdiction of all Foreign Powers, especially the usurped Authority of the Pope of *Rome*, were cod by Law, though still acknowledged by too many of this superstitious and untractable People.

The Government of this Country, since the first conquest by the *English*, hath been most commonly by one Supreme Officer, who is sometimes called the Lord

tenant, most generally the *Lord Deputy* of Ireland; than whom no *Vice-Roy* in all Europe hath greater Power, or comes nearer the Majesty of a King in his Train and State. For his assistance he hath a Privy-Council attending on him, though resident for the most part at *Dublin*; and in emergencies, or cases of more difficult nature proceedeth many times in an arbitrary way, without formalities of Law. And for their Laws, which are the standing Rule of all Civil Government, they owe their being and original to the *English* Parliaments. For in the Reign of King *Henry VII.* Sir *Edward Poynings*, then *Lord Deputy*, caused an Act to pass in the *Irish* Parliament, whereby all Laws and Statutes, which were made in *England* before that time, were to be entertained and stand in force as the *Laws of Ireland*. On which foundation they have raised many *Superstructures* both of Law and Government, enacted in their own Parliaments, summoned by the *Lord Deputy* at the Kings appointment; in which, by another Statute made in the time of the said *Poynings*, the People are enabled to make Laws for their own good Governance, conditioned they were first transmitted to the Court of *England*, to be consider'd of by the King, before they were Voted to in either of the Houses of the *Irish* Parliaments: Which Laws, commonly called *Poyning's Laws*, have hitherto continued in force amongst them; though the last much stomached and repined at, not only as a badge of their subjection to the Crown of *England*, but as a Curb or Martingal to hold them in.

Yet notwithstanding these good *Laws*, and the ample Power of their Commission, the *Lord Deputies* could never absolutely subdue the Island, or bring the People to any civil course of Life; the Fathers inflicting an heavy Curse on all their Posterity, if ever they should sow Corn, build Houses, or learn the *English* Tongue. To this indisposition of the *Irish* themselves, let us add the defects of the King of *England*, and *Irish* Deputies, in matters of civil Policy, as I find them particularized by Sir *John Davies*, in his worthy and pithy Discourse of this Subject: I will only glean a few of them. First then, saith he, a barbarous Country is like a Field overgrown with Weeds, which must first be well broken with the Plough, and then immediately sown with good and profitable Seed; so must a wild and uncivil People be first broken and ploughed up by War, and then presently sown with the Seed of good *Laws* and Discipline; lest the Weeds revive in the one, and ill Manners in the other. Here then was the first defect in our *English* Kings, not to tame and take down the Stomachs and Pride of this People, though either Civil or Foreign Wars perhaps occasioned this neglect; And also the *Irish* Deputies, who at such times as the People upon a small discomfiture, were Crest-fall'n, neglected the so keeping of them by severity of Discipline. The second oversight concerneth particularly our Kings, who gave such large Possessions and Regalities unto the first Conquerors, that the People knew no Authority in a manner, above their own immediate Lords. The *Laws of England* were not indifferently communicated to all the *Irish*, but to some particular Families and Provinces only; insomuch as there were but five great Lords of the natural *Irish*, who had the benefit and protection of the *Laws of England*, that is to say, *O Neal* in *Ulster*, *O Connobor* in *Connaught*, *Mac Murrough* in *Lemster*, *O Malagblin* in *Meth*, and *O Brian* in *Tivomond*, known by the Name of *Quinque Sanguines* in some old Records. By means whereof the rest of the People being in the condition of *Out-Laws*, or at the best of *Aliens*, had no encouragement either to build, or plant, or manure their Land, or to behave themselves as Subjects. A fourth defect was more particularly in the *Deputies* or *Lords Lieutenants*, who having made good and wholesome *Laws* against the barbarous Customs of the common People, and the merciless Oppressions of the Lords, never put any of them in execution; as if they had been made for Terror, not for Reformation. Fifthly, Add unto these (which Sir *John Davies* hath omitted) the little care which was too often taken

by the Kings of *England* in the choice of their *Deputies*. Sometimes conferring that high Office as a Court Preference, without relation unto the Merits of the Person, and sometimes sending Men of weak or broken Fortunes, who attended more their own Profit than their Master's Service, and were more bent to fleece than to feed this flock. Sixthly, And yet besides these Errors of the Kings and Deputies, in point of Government, there was another, and as great in the *Planters* themselves; who building all their Forts and Castles in the open Countries, abandoned the Woods and Bogs, and other Fastnesses to the natural *Irish*; the strength whereof not only animated them to Rebel upon all occasions, but served too fitly to continue them in their ancient Barbarism.

In these terms of wildness and non-subjection stood *Ireland*, till the latter end of Queen *Elizabeth's* Reign, at what time the Rebellion of *Hugh O Neal*, Earl of *Tir-Oen*, had engaged almost all the *Irish* in that desperate Action, which ending in the overthrow of that ingrateful Rebel, and all his Partizans, not only crushed the over-much Power of the *Irish* Nobility, but made the final and full Conquest of the whole Nation. So true it is, that Every Rebellion, when it is suppressed, doth make the Prince stronger, and the Subjects weaker. *Ireland* thus broken and ploughed up, that glorious Queen died a Victor over all her Enemies, and left the sowing of it unto her Successor King *James*, who omitted no part of a skillful *Sad-man*. 1. Then there was an *Amnesia* or Act of Oblivion made, whereby all the Offences against the Crown were remitted, if by such a limited Day the People would sue out their Pardons, and by the same Act, all the *Irish* were manumitted from the servitude of their Lords, and received into the Kings immediate Protection. 2. The whole Kingdom was divided into *Shires*, and *Judges Itinerant* appointed to circuit them; whereby it hath follow'd, that the exactions of the Lords are laid aside, the behaviour of the People narrowly look'd into, the Passages before unknown unto our Soldiers, are laid open by our *Under-Sheriffs* and *Bayliffs*; and the common People seeing the benefit and security they enjoy by the *English* Laws, and loth to plead always by an Interpreter, began to set their Children to School, for the learning of the *English* Tongue. 3. The *Irish* were not rooted out, as in the first Plantation in *Lemster*, and the *English* only settled in their rooms, but were only removed from the Woods, Bogs, and Mountains into the plain and open Country; that being like *wild Trees* transplanted, they might grow the milder, and bear the better Fruit. And 4. whereas there was but one *Freeholder* in a whole County, which was the Lord himself, the rest holding in Villenage, and being subject to the Lords immeasurable Taxations; whereby they had no encouragement to Build or Plant: now the Lord's Estate was divided into two parts, that which he held in demain to himself, which was still left unto him; and that which was in the hands of his *Tenants*, who had Estates made in their Possessions, according to the common course of *England*, paying instead of uncertain *Irish* Taxations, certain *English* Rents; whereby the People have since set their Minds upon repairing their Houses, and manuring their Lands, to the great increase of the private and publick Revenue.

But that which most advanced the reduction of *Ireland* to a settled and civil Government, and rooted it in a subjection to the Crown of *England*, was the voluntary flight of the Earls of *Tyrone* and *Tirconnel*, Sir *John Odaughertie*, and other great Men of the North, possessed of large Territories and great Jurisdictions. Who being both incapable of Loyalty, and impatient of seeing the Kings *Judges*, *Justices*, and other Ministers of State, to hold their *Sessions*, and execute their Commissions of *Oyer* and *Terminer* within the parts where they commanded, without more provocation, or the fear of any danger, but a guilty Conscience, forsook the Country, and left their whole Estates to the Kings disposing. By whose directions, their Lands were seized upon, and sold to several Purchasers, the City of *London* incoffed in a great part of them, a great Plantation

tation made in *Ulster* of *English, Welch, and Scots*, by the united Name of a *British Plantation*; and a new Order of *Knights Baronets* erected in the Kingdom of *England*, for raising Money to advance and endear the work. Which, had it been as cordially effected by the *English*, as it was by the *Scots*; if more of this Nation had gone thither, and not abandoned so great a part of it to the power of the other, it had been better for both Kingdoms, in the conformity of each to one form of Government (which the *Scots*, being factious for another, did not easily brook) and the uniting of both People in the bonds of amity: the *Irish* looking on the *Scot* as a meer *Intruder*, but on the *English* as his old Master, or his *Fellow-Subject*. Howsoever, so great a part of the Country (and that which heretofore was the Nest of the *Rebels*) being thus disposed of, it came to pass that *Ireland*, which before served only as a *Grave* to bury our best Men, and a *Gulf* to swallow our greatest Treasures; being govern'd neither as a Country *Free* nor *Conquer'd*; was brought in some hope, by the prudence and policy of her last Kings and late *Lord Deputies*, to prove an orderly *Common-wealth*, civil in it self, profitable to the Prince, and a good strength to the *British Empire*: For to such Order it was reduc'd, in a little time, that the *wayfaring Men* might travel without danger, the *Ploughman* walk without fear; the Laws administred in every place alike, the Men drawn unto Villages, the Woods and Fastnesses left to Beasts, and all reduc'd to that civility as our Fathers never saw, nor could we well sample out of *ancient Histories*.

The *Revenues* of this Kingdom are said by *Walsingham* in the time of *Edward III.* to have been yearly 40000 *l.* but his Successors, till of late, have scarce got so much as the keeping of it costs them. King *Richard II.* being by the same *Walsingham* reported to have spent 30000 Marks out of his own Purse, over and above the Money which he receiv'd thence. Whether this Country were so profitable to *Edward III.* or no, I determine not, tho' I find good reason to perswade me, that *Walsingham* was not well acquainted with the state of that *Exchequer*. But sure I am, that the *Revenues of the Crown* are more than double what they were in the said Kings Reign, and more du'y paid into the *Exchequer* of that Kingdom than ever formerly; the Profits of the *Custom-House* amounting to 30000 *per An.* in the last Year of King *James's* Reign. Not to say any thing of the great Improvements which were made by the Earl of *Strafford*, in the time of his Government, because they fell together with him.

The strength of this Kingdom consisteth partly in the

situation of it, begirt about with difficult and dangerous Seas; partly in the many Castles first built and fortified by the *English Planters*; and partly in a standing Army continually kept up by the Kings of *England*, for defence of their hold and interest against the *Rebellions* of the *Natives*. What Forces it is able to raise, both of Horse and Foot, could never be conjectur'd at, till now of late. For formerly the Kings of *England* being actually possessed only of those four Countries, which they called the *Pale*, that is to say, the Counties of *Dublin, Louth, Kildare, and Meth* (which last hath since the time of King *Henry VIII.* been subdivided into three) were not able to raise any great Power out of that Estate, but were forced to send Soldiers out of *England* (as occasion was) to preserve their Sovereignty in *Ireland*. The greatest Levy which I read of, was that of 1500 *Irish*, led by the Prior of *Kilmainham* to King *Henry V.* then being at the Siege of *Harflew* in *Normandy*. And on the other side, the great Lords of the natural *Irish*, and degenerate *English*, being divided into Factions amongst themselves, and never joined in any one principle of common Interest, were more inconsiderable than the weak, but united Forces of the Kings of *England*. And tho' most of them at the last were drawn into a Confederacy with the Earl of *Tir-Oen*, to make good his Rebellion, yet find I not that their Army did exceed at any time, the number of 8000 Men; and those not well appointed neither: So that the best estimate which can be made of the Forces of *Ireland*, must be measured by the Armies raised in the late Rebellion, when the *Irish* had both time and leisure to get themselves some reputation in the World, and make provision for a War. In prosecution of which, he who considers the many Armies they have raised, since the first mustering under the Command of *Sir Phelim O'Neal*; the many Defeats which have been given them, and those as many new Recruits after each Defeat; all of them raised out of the Bodies of their own People, without supply from other Countries (besides such as have served against them for the King) must needs conclude that they want not Men enough for Service; nor Skill, nor Courage to attempt the most difficult Enterprizes.

The Arms of *Ireland* are *Azure*, an Harp *Or*, stringed *Argent*. Which Coat, King *James*, (to shew himself the first absolute King of *Ireland*) first caused to be marshalled with the Royal Arms of *Great Britain*.

Reckon'd in *Ireland* at, and since the *Reformation*,

Archbishops 4. Bishops 19.

One University, viz. *Dublin*.

The LESSER ISLANDS.

And now we come at last to the *LESSER ISLANDS*, dispersed in several parts of the *British Ocean*. The chief whereof are, 1. The *Orcades*, 2. *Schetland*, 3. The *Hebrides*, 4. *Man*, 5. *Anglesey*, 6. The Islands of the *Severn Sea*, 7. The *Sorlings*, or Isles of *Scilly*, 8. *Wight*, 9. *Thanet*, 10. *Sunderland*, 11. *Holy Island*.

I. The *ORCADES* or Isles of *Orkney* are in number 32, situate over-against *Cathness*, the most Northern Country of all *Scotland*; and separate from one another by some narrow Straights. The Soil indifferently fruitful, exceedingly well stored with Barley, and great Herds of Cattel; plentiful in Hares and Conies, Cranes and Swans; but destitute of Wheat, and unfurnish'd both of Woods and Trees. But their chief Commodity is their Fish, which the Inhabitants catch upon the Coasts in great abundance. Those of most note in all the cluster, are 1. *Heth*, conceiv'd to be the *Orcis* of *Platony*. 2. *Fair Isle*, on good reason thought to be the *Dumna* of *Pliny*; the chief Town of it being still called by the Name of *Dumna*. 3. *Hey*, taken or mistaken for the *Dumna* of *Pliny*, but not else observable. 4. *Pomona*, the chief of all, in length about 26 Miles, in breadth, where it is broadest six. The chief Town of it *Kirkwall*, honour'd with a Bishop's See, and strengthen'd with two Castles. This Island is well stored with Tin and Lead, and is at this day, by the Inhabitants, call'd *Mainland*.

The People of these Isles (according to *Maginus*) are great drinkers, but no Drunkards; *Bibacissimi sunt incole, nunquam tamen inebriantur*. They use the *Gothish* Language, which they derive from the *Norwegians*, in whose Possessions they once were; and of whose Qualities they still retain some smack. The Isles themselves, in the time of *Solimus*, were not inhabited, being then overgrown with Rushes (now in a measure populous and fertile as before was said) and were first discover'd by *Julius Agricola*, the first that ever sail'd about *Britain*. In later times they were possessed by the *Normans* or *Norwegians*, who held them till the Year 1266. when *Magnus* King of *Norway* surrendered them up to *Alexander* King of *Scotland*; which Surrender some of the succeeding Kings did afterwards ratifie; the claim heretofore being finally relinquish'd by *Christiern I.* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, on the marriage of his Daughter *Margaret* with King *James III.* 1474. others say in 1470. some Money being added to make good the Contract, without which the *Danes* would not forego pretensions to them.

II. Two Days sailing North of these *Orcades*, lieth *SCHETLAND*, an Island belonging to the Crown of *Scotland*; and is by many learned Men, upon very good reasons, supposed to be the *Thule* of the Ancients. For first, it standeth in the 63 degree of *Latitude*, in which *Platony* placed *Thule*. Secondly, It lieth opposite to *Bergen* in *Norway*;

way; against which *Pomponius Mela* hath seated it. And, Thirdly, *Cassper Peucerus* hath observ'd that this *Scheland* is by Mariners called *Thylensel*; a Name in which that of *Thule* is apparently couch'd. That *Island* was not *Thule* (as most say) we shall shew you when we come to *Norway*, and the Northern Islands: Here we add only, That the Ancients did report many strange things of it, and some of them beyond all belief. *Pliny* affirming, that they had no Day here for all the Winter, (*nulla per brumam dies*) as his own words are: with whom agree *Solinus*, and many others; as to that particular *Isidore* adds, (*Origen lib. 14 c. 6.*) *nullum ultra eam diem esse*, that beyond this Isle there was no Day in any place; as if here had been the end of the World and Nature. But *Pytheas* in *Polybius* goes beyond them all, reporting, that in this Isle, there was no distinction of Earth, Air, and Water, ἀνα' ὁμοεικέλι ἐν τῇ τῶν, but a confused mixture of all together, like the Primitive *Chaos* of the Poets. The reason of which strange report was the audaciousness of those who had seen the Island, and thought that whatsoever they said of it would not be disproved, because of the remoteness of it from more civil Countries. So truly and judiciously spoken was that of *Synesius*, a right Learned Prelate, Ἡ Θάλασσα διδύται τοῖς διαπλέ-
ουσι αὐτὴν Ἀνδ' ὅντα καὶ ἀνελεστο ἰδέναι. *Thule*, (saith he) gave those who had sailed unto it the opportunity of lying without controul. An opportunity which many of our Mariners and vulgar Travellers had made too much use of in these last times also.

III. The *HEBRIDES*, *HEBUDAE*, or *Western Islands*, situate on the West of *Scotland*; are in number about 44. The chief whereof, 1. *Ila*, 24 Miles long, and 16 in breadth; plentiful in Wheat, Cattell, and Herds of Deer. 2. *Fona*, famous for the Sepulchers of the old *Scotish* Kings; whose chief Town is *Sodore*, once a Bishop's See, called hence *Sodorenfis*; his Jurisdiction comprehending these Islands with the Isle of *Man*; his See erected by Pope Gregory IV. Anno 840. or thereabouts. His dwelling for the most part of it in the Isle of *Man*, as the wealthier and more pleasant part of his Diocese, till the Conquest of it by the *English*; at what time, those of the *Western Islands* withdrew themselves from his Obedience, and had a Bishop of their own; both of them for a long time called *Sodorenfis*, but at last this took the Name of *Infulanus*, Bishop of the Isles, which he still retains. 4. *Mela*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maleos*, (that of *Ila* before-mentioned being his *Epidia*) mountainous and hilly, but affording good Mines of Lead and Copper, 25 Miles more in compass than that of *Ila*. 4. *Lewis*, or *Lewissa*, the largest of all the *Hebrides*, said to be 60 Miles in length and 30 in breadth the more Western of the two *Ebudae* spoken of by *Ptolomy*; the other being now called *Skye*, famous for the multitude of Sea-Calves in the Creeks thereof. 6. *Racine*, the *Recine* of *Ptolomy*, the smallest of the *Hebrides*, and most near to *Ireland*. The rest of less note, not known, or not inhabited in the time of the *Romans*, and not very well peopled at the present, I forbear to name; some of them rather Rocks than Islands, others scarce having Grass enough to hide their Barrenness. The People of them all, as well in language as Behaviour, resemble the *Wild-Irish*, and are all'd *Red-shanks*; a People, as King *James* affirmeth in his *Basilicon Doron*, utterly rude, and without all shew of civility; such as endure not to be govern'd by Laws, or kept under by Discipline. *Legum severitate, & judiciorum, vetu, se alligari non patiuntur*, saith judicious *Cambden*. Such they are, they came unto the Crown of *Scotland* by a contract betwixt *Magnus* King of *Norway*, and King *Alexander III.* the *Orcades* being bargain'd for at the same time so.

South of the *Hebrides* in the Bay of *Dunbritten Frith*, lieth the Isle of *Rothsay*, (now called *Buthe*) which gives the Title of a Duke to the Prince of *Scotland*; and the Isle of *Arran*, which gives the Title of an Earl to the chief of the *milsons*.

IV. *MAN* is situate just over against the Southern part of *Cumberland*, from which it is distant 25 Miles, and was

judged to belong to *Britain* rather than to *Ireland*; because it foster'd venomous Serpents, brought hither out of *Britain*. By *Ptolomy* it is called *Moneda*, or the further *Mona*. to difference it from that which we call *Anglesey*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*; *Menavia*, by *Orasius* and *Beda*; *Eubonia*, by *Gildas*, an old *British* Writer. The *Welch*, at this day, call it *Menaw*, the Inhabitants *Maning*, and the *English* *Man*. It is in length 30 Miles, in breadth 15, and 8 in some places. The People hate Theft and Begging, and use a Language mixt of the *Norwegians* and *Irish* Tongues. The Soil is abundant in Flax, Hemp, Oats, Barley, and Wheat; with which they use to supply the defects of *Scotland*, if not the Continent it self, yet unquestionably the *Western Isles*, which are a Member of it: For thus writeth the Reverend Father in God *John Mericke*, late Bishop of this Island, in a Letter to Mr. *Cambden*, at such time as he was composing his most excellent *Britannia*, Our Island (saith he) for Cattell, for Fish, and for Corn, hath not only sufficient for it self, but sendeth also good store into other Countries. Now what Countries should need this supply (*England* and *Ireland* being afore-hand with such Provision) except *Scotland*, or some Members thereof, I see not.

Venerable *Bede* numbred in it 300 Families; and now it is furnish'd with 17 Parish Churches; the chief Towns are, 1. *Balacuri*, and 2. *Ruffin*, or *Castle-Town*, the Seat of a Bishop, who tho' he be under the Archbishop of *York*, yet never had any Voice in the *English* Parliament. In this Island is the Hill of *Scaful*, where, on a clear Day, one may see *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*. Here also are bred the *Soland* Geese, of rotten Wood falling into the Water. This Island was taken from the *Britains* by the *Scots*, and from them regain'd by *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*. Afterwards the *Norwegians* seiz'd on it, and made it a Kingdom; the Kings hereof ruling over the *Hebrides*, and some part of *Ireland*. From them taken by *Alexander III.* of *Scotland*, by a mixt Title of Arms and Purchase. After which time it was sometime *English*, sometimes *Scotish*, as their Fortunes varied; till in the end, and about the Year 1340. *William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, descended from the *Norwegian* Kings of *Man*, won it from the *Scots*, and sold it to the Lord *Scrope*, who being condemn'd of Treason, *Henry IV.* gave it to *Henry Piercy*, Earl of *Northumberland*; but he also proving false to his Sovereign, it was given to the *Stanleys*, now Earls of *Derby*.

The Kings of Man, of the Danish or Norwegian Race.

- | | | |
|------|----|--|
| 1065 | 1 | Godred, the Son of Syrric. |
| 1066 | 2 | Fingal, Son of Godred. |
| 1066 | 3 | Godred II. Son of Harold. |
| 1082 | 4 | Lagnan, Eldest Son of Godred II. |
| 1089 | 5 | Donald, Son of Tado. |
| 1098 | 6 | Magnus, King of Norway. |
| 1102 | 7 | Olave the Third, Son of Godred. |
| 1144 | 8 | Godred III. Son of Olave. |
| 1187 | 9 | Reginald, base Son of Godred the Third. |
| 1226 | 10 | Olave, the lawful Son of Godred the Third. |
| 1237 | 11 | Harold, Son of Olave. |
| 1243 | 12 | Reginald II. Brother of Harold. |
| 1252 | 13 | Magnus II. Brother of Reginald. |
| 1266 | 14 | Magnus III. King of Norway, the last King of Man, of the Danish or Norwegian Race. |

The Kings and Lords of Man, of the English Blood.

- | | | |
|------|----|--|
| 1340 | 1 | William Montacute, Earl of Salisbury, King of Man. |
| 1395 | 2 | William Lord Scrope, King of Man. |
| 1399 | 3 | Henry Earl of Northumberland, King of Man. |
| 1403 | 4 | William Lord Stanley, Lord of the Isle of Man. |
| | 5 | John Lord Stanley. |
| | 6 | Thomas Lord Stanley. |
| | 7 | Thomas Lord Stanley, Earl of Derby. |
| 1503 | 8 | Thomas Lord Stanley, Earl of Derby. |
| 1521 | 9 | Edward Lord Stanley, Earl of Derby. |
| 1572 | 10 | Henry Lord Stanley, Earl of Derby. |
| 1593 | 11 | Ferdinando Lord Stanley, Earl of Derby. |
| 1594 | 12 | William Lord Stanley, Earl of Derby. |
| 1642 | 13 | James Lord Stanley, Earl of Derby, Lord of the |

the Isle of *Man*, now living, *An.* 1648. but beheaded by the Order of the *Junto* in 1651. for his Loyalty at *Bolton* in *Lancashire*.

1651 14 *Charles L. Stanley* and *Strang*, who was dispos-
fess'd of the Government of *Man* till 1660.

1672 15 *William Stanley*, Son and Heir of the said *Charles*
K. of *Man*, and E. of *Derby*, who is now living.

They are Kings in effect, though but Lord in Title, as having here all kind of Civil Power and Jurisdiction over the Inhabitants under the *Fife* and *Sovereignty* of the Crown of *England*, together with the nomination of the *Bishop*, whom he presents unto the King for his *Royal Assent*, then to the Archbishop of *York* for his Consecration. And this I take to be the reason why the Bishop of *Man* was no Lord of *Parliament*, none being admitted to that honour, but such as held immediately of the King himself, nor was it reason that they should.

V. *ANGLESEY*, is an Island situate in the *Irish Sea*; over against *Caernarvonshire* in *North-Wales*, from which it is divided by a narrow Strait, which they call the *Monai*: By the *Britains* themselves, as by the *Welch* at this day, it was called the *Mon*, from whence the *Romans* had their *Monai*; but being conquered by the *English*, it obtained the name of *Anglesey*, as one would say, the Island of the *English-Men* (eye in the *Saxon* Language signifying an *Island*.) A place of such a fair Revenue to the Princes of it, that *Llewellyn*, the last Prince of *Wales* being stripped of almost all the rest of his Estates by King *Edward I.* paid to that King a Tribute of 1000 *per Annum* for this Island only.

And to say Truth, the Island is exceeding fruitful both in Corn and Cattel: from whence the *Welch* are liberally stored with both: and therefore it is said proverbially; *Mon Mam Cymri*, that *Anglesey* is the Mother of *Wales*. In length from East to West, about 20 Miles, and 17 in breadth. Containing in that compass 74 Parishes, divided into six hundreds, and hath in it only two Market-Towns; that is to say, 1. *Beaumaris*, seated on a flat or marsh Ground, near the *Monai*, built by King *Edward* the First to secure his Conquest: by whom well walled and fortified as the times then were. 2. *Newburgh*, a Town of no great Antiquity, as the name doth intimate, by the *Welch* called *Rossur*: in former times it had an Haven of some good receipt, but now choaked with Sand. The other places of most note are. 3. *Aberffraw*, a small Village now, but heretofore the Seat Royal of the Kings of *Wales*: and 4. *Holyhead*, seated on a head-land or Promontory thrusting into the Seas, made holy (or thought so at least) by the religious Retirement of Saint *Kuby*, or *Kibius*, one of the Disciples of St. *Hillary* of *Poitiers*; from whence by the *Welchmen* called *Caer Cuby*: of most note for the ordinary passage betwixt *Wales* and *Ireland*. Anciently this Island was the seat of the *Druides*, and brought with no small difficulty under the power of the *Romans*, by *Suetonius Paulinus*: the People fighting in other parts of *Britain* for their Liberty only; but here *pro Aris & Focus* too, for their Religion, Liberty, and their Goods to boot: Being deserted by the *Romans*, with the rest of *Britain*, it remained in the possession of its own natural Princes, till the fatal period of that State, when added to the Crown of *England* by the puissance of King *Edward* the First, by whom made one of the Shires of *Wales*, as it still continues.

Not far from *Anglesey*, somewhat inclining to the South, is the Isle of *Bardsey*, by *Ptolomy* called *Edri*, by *Pliny* *Adros*, by the *Welch* *Enlhy*; extended towards the East with a Rocky Promontory, but rich and fruitful towards the West: the retiring place of many godly and devout *Hermits* in former times. Southwards from hence and over against St. *David's*, are two other Islands, the one called *Selame*, plentiful of wild Honey; the other named by the *Welch* *Lymen*, by the *English* *Ramsay*; thought to be the *Limni* of *Ptolomy*, the *Silimum* of *Pliny*, but not else remarkable.

VI. THE ISLANDS OF THE SEVERN SEA are four in number; of no great note, but I must take them in my passage to the Isles of *Scilly*. Of those the first is *Flat-Holm*; for the flat and level. The 2. *Stekholm*, from the steep

and craggy disposition of it: both by the *Welch* called *Eckm*, and both situate over against the County of *Somerset*. More towards the opening of the Channel, lyeth the Isle of 3. *Chaldey*, called by the *Welchmen* *Inis Pir*, of as small note as the other: and at the very mouth thereof the Isle of 4. *Lundey*, over against *Devonshire*, the principal Island of this Sea: extending two Miles every way; of excellent pasture, well stored with *Conies*, and great plenty of *Pigeons*. Situate a good distance from any part of the Land, in the midst of the salt and brackish Ocean, and yet yielded many Springs of *Fresh-water* for the use of the People; inhabiting for the most part in a Town of the same name with the Island. A place of very great strength and safety; begirt about with dangerous unapproachable Rocks, and having but one way of access into it, and that so narrow, that two Men cannot go a breast.

VI. The Isles of *SCILLY*, in number 145, are situate over against the Western Promontory of *Cornwall*, from which distant 24 Miles; and lyeround together in the manner of a ring or Circle, Discovered first by the *Silures*, a *Phœnician* Colony in *Spain*, opposite against which they lie; thence called *Silures* by *Solinus*: much traded and resorted to by the said *Phœnicians* from the Isle of *Gades*; invited thereunto by the unexhaustible Mines of *Tin*, which they found amongst them. A Trade so great and gainful to them, that they held it a great point of State: *κρυπτεν ἀπὸ πάντων τῶν ἄλλων*, to keep it as a Secret from all the World, as we find in *Strabo*; who adds the story of a *Carthaginian* or *Phœnician* Merchant, incountred in his Voyage hither, by some *Roman* Vessels; and splitting his Ship on the next shore (where he knew the *Romans* would not follow him; rather than let them know to what place he was bound; was rewarded for his honest care, and recompenced for the loss of his Ship and Goods, out of the publick Treasury. From this abundance of *Tin*, the *Græcians* when they came to know them, called them *Cassiterides*: (*Cassiteros* in that Language signifying *Tin*) accordingly *Herodotus*, *ἐπεὶ ἴδεντες οὐδὲν ἄλλο κατὰ τὴν οὐρανὴν ἐκ τῶν ὁ κατὰ πρὸς ἡμῶν ποταμῶν*, affirming that he knew not those Islands called *Cassiterides*, from whence *Tin* was brought. The richness of this Commodity, the pleasures of the Place, and the Western situation of them makes many of the *Græcians* call them *Hesperides*: mistaking them for the *Fortunate Islands*. By *Solinus* they are called *Silures*; as before is said, *Sigdeles* in the corrupt Copies of *Antonius*; *insule Sillinae*, by *Severus Sulpitius*: from whence we have the name of the Isles of *Scilly*. The *Flemings*, I know not why, call them the *Sorlings*. All of them very fruitful in Corn and Herbage, besides the Treasures hid within, well stored with *Conies*, *Cranes*, *Swans*, and most sorts of wild Fowl. Ten of them more esteemed than the rest, are called by the names of 1. *Armath*, 2. *Agnes*, 3. *Sampson*, 4. *Scilly*, 5. *Brefar*, 6. *Susco*, 7. *S. Hellens*, 8. *Arthur*, 9. *S. Maurice*, and 10. *S. Maries*: Of which the most famous in the account of former times, was that of *Scilly*, as giving name unto the rest; but in the present estimate *S. Maries* is accounted the chief of all: 8 Miles in compass; fruitful of all Necessaries, and fortified with a very strong Castle built by Queen *Elizabeth*, well Manned and Garrisoned, for defence of a large and goodly Harbour made amongst these Islands, capable of the greatest Navies.

These Islands first discovered by *Hamilco* a *Carthaginian*, sent by that State to search into the West Coasts of *Europe*, became of great fame afterwards both in *Greece*, and *Italy*; by reason of the Mines of *Tin* spoken of before: So beneficial to the *Romans*, that they used to send hither their condemned Prisoners to work in the Mines; as the best service to be done by their forfeited Lives. And hither amongst others, *Justinus*, a fierce *Triscillianist*, for his factious and seditious Carriage, was sent by *Maximus*; *in Sillinam insulam ultra Britanniam deportatus*, as *Sulpitius* hath it. After the *Romans* had forsaken their hold in *Britain* they returned again into the power and possession of the *Natives*; from whom subdued, and added unto the *English* Crown by *Athelstane* the 8 K. of *England*. Now ordered for Civil matters, as a part of *Cornwall*, for military, by the

their own Captain, subordinate to the Lord Lieutenant of that County; and for the *Tin-Trade*, by the Lord Warden and Court of *Stanneries*. An Officer and Court erected for the benefit and regulating of the *Tinners of Cornwall*, who by reason of their Employment in these *Mines* have many Privileges and Exemptions more than other Subjects; but of late limited and restrained by Acts of Parliament.

VIII. The Isle of *WIGHT* lieth over against *Hampshire*, from which it seemeth to have been divided; the passage betwixt it and *Hurst-Castle* on the opposite shore, being very narrow; and the name of it intimating some such divisions. For by the *Britains* it was anciently called *Guith*, which signifieth a Breach or Separation, from whence the *English* have their *Wight*; the turning of *Gu.* to *W.* being familiar with the *Saxons*, and all other *Dutch* People; and from some Root probably the *Romans* had the name of *Vetis*, *Vetch*, *Wight*, and *Guith* being words of near resemblance, that we need not to travel further for an *Etymologie*. The Island of an *Oval* form 20 Miles in length, and 12 Miles broad about the midt; from thence growing narrower towards each end, to the *East* and *West*. Naturally fenced about on all sides, on the South especially, where it looks towards *France*, on which side inaccessible by reason of the steep and craggy Rocks, the whole length thereof; and not much less safe on the North-West, where the remainder of the Rocks, (which they call the *Shingels*, and the *Needles*) not worn away either at or since the first separation from the other shore, make the passage dangerous; except to single Ships, and those not unacquainted with the course of the Channel. Towards the North-East more flat and level, and therefore fortified with the two Castles of the *Cows* and *Sandham*. There is also the Castle of *Yarmouth* in the West of the Island, and that of *Garesbrook* in the midt (but more towards the North) in which last there is said to be Armour for 5000 Men; and in each Village (of which here are 33, besides many Market-Towns) a piece of Ordnance. Yet do not all these Arms and Castles add so much to the strength of it, as the natural courage of the People; Warlike and Stout, and trained up unto the postures of War from their very Childhood.

The Soil hereof abundantly answereth the pains of the Husbandman, so plentiful of Corn, and all the fruits of good Pasture; that they have not only enough for themselves, but furnish the Markets of *Southampton* and *Portsmouth* (but the last especially) with the greatest part of the Wheat, Flesh, Cheese, and Butter; which is spent amongst them. Insomuch that the Soldiers of *Portsmouth* presuming on the strength of the Town, have been used to say, That if they had the Isle of *WIGHT* to their friend, and the Seas open, they cared not for all the World besides. Their Sheep hereof so fine a Fleece, that the Wool hereof hath the second esteem next to that of *Lemster* (in the Country of *Hereford*) and precedency of that of *Corswold*.

Their chief Towns, 1. *Yarmouth*, on the North-West of the Island, seated on a convenient Haven, which is said to have some resemblance to that of *Rochel*; and that Haven defended with a strong Castle. 2. *Brading*, another Market-Town. 3. *Newton*, an ancient Burrough, and privileged, sending Burgesses to the *English Parliament*. 4. *Garesbrook*, a large Town, and neighboured with an ancient Castle. 5. *Newport*, now the chief of all the Isle, called in the times past *Medena*, afterwards *Novus Burgus de Medena*, at last *Newport*; seated upon an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of lesser burden to the very Key; and by that means populous, well traded, & inhabited by a civil and wealthy People.

The Island first subdued to the *Romans* by the Valour of *Vespasian*, (afterwards Emperour of *Rome*) in the time of *Claudius*. Extorted from the *Britains* by *Cerdick* King of the *West-Saxons*, and by him given to *Stuffa* and *Whitgar*, two of that Nation, who had almost rooted out the old Inhabitants. It was the last Country of the *Saxons* which received the Gospel, and then upon compulsion, too, forced to it by the power as well as the persuasion of *Cedwella* the *West-Saxon* King. Took from the *English* in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, by *William Fitz-Osborn* Earl of *He-*

reford, who thereupon was made the first Lord thereof. From whose Family, by the gift of *Henry II.* it pailed to that of *Redvares*, or *Rivers*, (*de Riparis*) then Earl of *Devonshire*; and on failing of that House, returned to the Crown in the Reign of *Edward the First*. Never so much ennobled as by *Henry the Sixth*, who bearing a great affection to *Henry Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, in the 23 of his Reign crowned him King of *Wight*, An. 1445. Which Title ended with his life about two years after.

IX. *THANET*, is a little Island in the North-East of *Kent*, not far from *Sandwich*, environed on three parts with the Sea, into which it shooteth with a large Promontory called the *North-fore-Land*; the *Cantium* of the ancient Writers: and towards the West, severed from the main Land of *Kent* by the River *Stoure*, which is here called *Yenlade*, but severed so, that by the benefit of a Causeway and passage for the waters in convenient places, it is united to the Continent or main Land of *Kent*. The quality, site, and figure of it, taken in these Rhythms (for I dare hardly call them Verses) extant not long since in a Window of the chief Church there, viz.

*Insula rotunda Thanatos, quam circuit unda,
Nobilis & munda, nulli est in orbe secunda.*

Thanet is round with circling waters bound,

A neat and noble ground, none like it to be found.

Called by *Solinus*, *Athanatos*, in some Copies *Thanatos*, from whence the *Saxons* had their *Thanet*. Famous, as in other things, so in these particulars, that it was the place which the *Saxons* landed at, when they first came into *Britain*; the first *Livery* and *Seisin*, which they had of the whole Kingdom, conferred upon them by the improvident bounty of *Vortiger*, to whose aid called in; and the landing place of *Augustine* the Monk, when he brought the Gospel to the *Saxons*. The whole about two Miles in length, and four in breadth, was reckoned to contain in those times, 600 Families; now very populous for the bigness, and plentiful of all Commodities necessary, but of Corn especially. The People generally are a kind of *Amphibii*, able to get their livings both by Sea and Land, well skilled, as well in steering of a Ship at Sea, as in holding the Plough upon Land; and in both industrious. Of most note in it, 1. *Stonar*, a Port-Town, the usual landing place of the *Saxons*; more memorable for the Sepulchre of *Vortimer*, King of the *Britains*, who having vanquished the *Saxons* in many Battels, and finally driven them out of the Island, desired to be here interred on a conceit, that this dead Corps would fright them from landing any more upon these Coasts. And this perhaps he did in imitation of *Scipio African*, who having had a Fortunate hand against those of *Carthage*, gave order to have his Tomb placed towards *Africk*, to fright the *Carthaginians* from the Coasts of *Italy*.

X. *SUNDERLAND* is an Island only at an high-water, when environed on all sides with the Sea; at other times joyned unto the Land, or of an easie passage from the one to the other: pulled by some Tempest, or by the working of the Sea from the rest of the Land: whence the name of *Sunderland*. Situate in the North-East part of the Bishoprick of *Durham*, over against the influx of the River *Were*. Rich in its inexhaustible Mines of Coal, and for that cause seldom without the company of foreign Merchants, yet not to have been here remembered, but that it hath been thought worthy by our Sovereign Lord King *Charles*, the second Monarch of Great Britain, to confer the Title of Earl to the two Noble Families of the *Scropes* and *Spencers*; the first in the third year of his Reign, An. 1627. the second in the 18th, An. 1642.

XI. The HOLY ISLAND lieth upon the Coast of *Northumberland*, not far from *Berwick*, stretched out in length from East to West, with a narrow point unto the Land, from thence growing broader like a wedge: fortified with a strong Castle, and of great safety, but more Famous for what it hath been, than for what it is. In the dawning of Christianity amongst the *Northumbrians*, made a Bishops See, by *S. Aidanus*, one of the first Apostles of that potent Nation. Selected for this Dignity by that godly

ly Man for the *Solitude* and *Privacy* of it; which made it thought more fit and proper for *Devotion*. The name then *Lindisfarn*; but the *Religious Lives* of so many pious Bishops, Monks, and others of the Clergy as did there inhabit, gained it the name of *Holy Island*. The See continued there 353 years, that is to say, from the year 637, to 990, under 22 Bishops, hence called Bishops of *Lindisfarn*; then removed to *Durham*: the insolencies of the *Danes* (who then raged terribly on those Coasts) compelling them to abandon that *Religious Solitude*.

Thus have we taken a survey of the *British Islands*, and shewn by what means *Ireland* and all the *lesser Islands* became united either to the Crown of *England* or *Scotland*; and those two Kingdoms to each other joyned in the person of the same King, and the participation of his Favours, though different still in Laws, and some forms of Government, as most of the *Estates of Spain*, at the present time. United also in one name, the different Appellations of *England* and *Scotland* being swallowed up, or incorporated rather in that of *GREAT BRITAIN*, which it pleased King *James* to own for his stile *Imperial*. And for a memory thereof, to cause a piece of Gold to be coined of 20 s. (since raised to 22 s.) which he called the *Unity*, stamped on the one side with his picture, and this *Inscription*, *JACOBUS D. GR. MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ FR. ET HIBERNIÆ REX*, and on the other side with his Arms, crowned with this *Motto*, *FACIAM EOS IN GENTEM UNAM*. All we have now to do, is to lay down the names of those puissant Princes, whom God hath raised to be

The MONARCHS of BRITAIN.

1602 1 *James*, the sixth of that name; King of the *Scots*, Son of *Mary Queen of Scots*, Daughter of *James V.* the Son of *James IV.* and of the Lady *Margaret*, eldest Daughter of *Henry VII.* of *England*: which *Margaret* being after married to *Archibald Douglas Earl of Angus*, had a Daughter named *Margaret* also (the only child of her Parents) married to *Matthew Stewart Earl of Lenox*; by whom she was made the Mother of *Henry Lord Darnley*, the Father of King *James VI.* by the said *Mary Queen of Scots*. So that King *James* descending from the eldest Daughter of *Henry VII.* both by Father and Mother, on the expiring of the Line of *Henry VIII.* in the person of Queen *Elizabeth* of famous Memory; was the next Heir to the Crown of *England*, and was accordingly with all joyful Acclamations proclaimed and acknowledged King in the City of *London*, March 24. *An* 1602. (according to the Account of the Church of *England*) a Learned and Religious Prince, a true *Defender of the Faith*, a *Nursing Father of the Church*, and a lover of Learning. He died at *Theobalds*, March 27. 1625. having reigned 23 years, and four days over.

1625 2 *Charles*, second Son of King *James*, and of *Anne of Denmark*, (his elder Brother *Henry* dying long before) the 63 King in descent from *Cerdick*, King of the *West-Saxons*; the 45th King of *England*, in descent from *Egbert*; the 24th from the *Norman Conqueror*; the 64th Monarch of the *English*, and the second Monarch of *Britain*. In the beginning of his Reign he married the Princess *Henrietta Maria*, Daughter to *Henry IV.* and Sister to *Lewis XIII.* French Kings, by whom blest with a *Royal Issue* of Sons and Daughters. The first 12 years of this Princes Reign were to his Subjects most Happy, and to him not Inglorious; but in the year 1637. the *Scots* began to be unquiet, yet this Storm soon was composed, but broke out again the next year, and forced this Prince to enter into a War against them in 1639: which ended in a short liv'd Peace, two Parliaments being call'd in *England* in the year 1640. The last of which proved fatal to this Nation, and the 30th of *January* 1648. basely Murdered that Holy Prince. Banishing his Children, and as much as in them lay, extinguishing the Monarchy of *Great Britain*. They intended to have governed it for the future as a *Common-Wealth*; but the 20th of *April* 1653. *Oliver Cromwell* one of their Generals, put an end to this

Dream, and took upon him the Title of Protector of the *Common-Wealth of England*. The 3d of *September* 1658. This Tyrant went to his own place, and *Richard* his Son succeeded him, who, *April* the 2d following was deserted, and the 7th of *May* the *Rump Parliament* was restored, which was finally dissolved by *General Monk* the 15th of *March* 1659. 60.

1660 3 *Charles* the 2d, Eldest Son of *Charles* the Martyr, was Restored to the rightful Possession of his Fathers Throne the 29th of *May*, to the universal and unspeakable Joy of all *English Men*; who by so many Miseries, had learned to value the Monarchy, as the greatest of their Blessings; he proved a Prince of incomparable Justice, Mercy, and Goodness, and wanted nothing but Children to have made him the eternal Darling, and Admiration of the *English Nation*.

1684 4 *James* the 2d, the second Son of *Charles* the Martyr, and Brother of *Charles* the 2d, Succeeded him the 6th of *February*, 1684. according to the Computation of the Church of *England*. He was born the 13th of *October* 1633. And Married first *Ann*, Daughter of *Edward Earl of Clarendon*, Lord Chancellor of *England*, in the year 1660. by whom he had many Children that are Dead; but there survived *Mary* late Queen of *England*, born the 10th of *May* 1662. Married to *William* Prince of *Orange* the 7th of *November* 1677. *Anne* Born in 1665. Married to *George* Prince of *Denmark* now Queen, the 28th of *July* 1683. Of which there was one Son born the 24th of *July* at *Hampton Court*, Baptized the 28th by the Name of *William*, and declared Duke of *Gloucester* by his late Majesty, since Dead.

The first Wife of *James* the Second, Died in the year 1671. and he Married in 1673. *Mary Eleonora*, Daughter of *Francis Duke of Modena*, from this Marriage the 11th of *June* 1688. there was pretended a Spring, a Prince of *Wales*, which is still living in *France*.

1688 5 *William III.* Prince of *Orange*, and *Mary* Eldest Daughter of *James II.* Succeeded in the Abdicated Throne of *England*. *James II.* having the 11th of *December* 1688. and the three Estates in a Convention having Recognized the Rights of *William* and *Mary*, the 12th of *February* following. The History of which wonderful Revolution, is too long to be here inserted, it being largely unfolded in the *History of the Desertion then Printed*. The Queen died the 28th of *December* 1693. And the Government continued in the King to his Death.

As for the *Forces* and *Revenues* of these *British Monarchs*, we cannot put the estimate of them in a better way, than by laying together that which hath been delivered of each several part; out of which Items the summa totius of the whole both in *Power* and *Treasure*, will be easily gathered. For though these Monarchs never had any occasion to muster and unite the *Forces* of their several Kingdoms upon any one Action, yet by considering what they have been able to do divided; we may conclude of what they may do, if need be, being now united. And so we are to do in marshalling the Arms of the *British Monarchy*, which are 1. Quarterly *France* and *England*, 2ly *Scotland*, 3ly. *Ireland*, the Fourth as the first. I shut up this Discourse of the *British Empire*, with those words of *Scripture* (the *Motto* of another of King *James* his Coins) *QUE T DEUS CONJUNXIT NEMO SEPARET*

The *Revenues* and Government of *England*, received so great a change in the year 1660. upon the Restitution of *Charles* the Second, that it is in vain to attempt a Representation of it here: I shall therefore refer the Reader to that Elaborate piece, which has been so often Printed, call'd the *Present State of England*, where he may satisfy his Curiosity, and in the Interim, what this Learned Author has Written, may stand as the most exact Account of its Ancient State, before the War began.

And so much for *Britain*.

	Lon.	Lat.		Lon.	Lat.
<i>S. Malo</i>	19	49	<i>Rochel</i>	18 15	45 50
<i>Medina Cæli</i>	23 30	41 10	<i>Rome</i>	42 30	42
<i>Millaine</i>	38 30	46 10	<i>Rouen</i>	23 40	48 50
<i>Modena</i>	41 50	35 40	<i>Rhezo</i>	24 0	38 20
<i>Montpelier</i>	25 30	44 10			
<i>Montalban</i>	23	45	<i>Salisbury</i>	18 3	51 10
<i>Messana</i>	45 50	37 50	<i>Saluena</i>	8 5	40 15
<i>Minorca</i>	40 30	40 0	<i>Saragossa</i>	24 15	41 45
			<i>Sevil</i>	7 15	37
<i>Naples</i>	46	39 30	<i>Sion, or Sittia</i>	29	45
<i>Nantes</i>	24 10	47 10	<i>Stirling</i>	20 10	56 20
<i>Narbon</i>	30 20	43 20	<i>Stena</i>	42 20	36 16
<i>Nevers</i>	24	47 10	<i>Siguena</i>	18 2	
<i>Newcastle</i>	22 30	54 57	<i>Syracuse.</i>	40 30	37 30
<i>Nismes</i>	26	44 2			
<i>Norwich</i>	24 55	52 40	<i>Taranatise</i>	29	45
			<i>Tarragon</i>	28 30	38 20
<i>Oleron</i>	24 30	45 30	<i>Tholause</i>	28 40	43 10
<i>Orleans</i>	28 30	48 0	<i>Toledo</i>	16 20	39 40
<i>Orange</i>	26 20	43 20	<i>Trieffe</i>	44 10	46 10
<i>Oxford</i>	22	51 20	<i>Tredah</i>	16 34	54 10
<i>Otranto</i>	49 30	40 20	<i>Turin</i>	31 30	43 45
			<i>Tarentum</i>	48 0	40 30
<i>Pampelun</i>	24 30	43 33			
<i>Paris</i>	23 30	48 40	<i>Valadolid</i>	16 10	42 5
<i>Parvie</i>	44 1	35 5	<i>Valentia</i>	19 20	39 4
<i>Padua</i>	44 45	36 29	<i>Venice</i>	41 40	45 50
<i>Parma</i>	39 20	45 10	<i>Verona</i>	40 40	45 50
<i>Pescara</i>	43 0	30 10	<i>Viterbo</i>	41 50	41 4
<i>Palermo</i>					
<i>Peragia</i>	42 20	43 10	<i>Weymouth</i>	23 50	51
<i>Peter-port in Jersey</i>	23 0	49 20	<i>Winchester</i>	22	52
<i>Pisa</i>	40 30	43 40	<i>Wexford</i>	16 42	53
<i>Placentia</i>	20 40	40 0			
<i>Poictiers</i>	26 30	47	<i>Yarmouth</i>	27 30	53 0
			<i>York</i>	22 25	54 18
<i>Ravenna</i>	44 20	44 20			
<i>Rbernes</i>	25 25	48 30	<i>Zurick</i>	30 20	47
<i>Remes</i>	19	48			

The End of the First Book.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Second Book,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF

*Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swethland, Russia,
Poland, Hungary, Sclavonia, Dacia, and Greece,
with the Isles thereof.*

By PETER HEYLIN.

TACIT. HIST. LIB. 4.

Humanarum rerum possessionem Trans-alpinis gentibus portendi, Druidæ canebant.

SENEC. de Consolat. ad ALBINUM.

*Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur ; Nova Urbium fundamenta jaciuntur, nova
Gentium nomina, extinctis nominibus prioribus, oriuntur.*

L O N D O N,

Printed by *William Richardson.* in the Year MDCCI.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Second Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

A N D

HISTORY

O F

*Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swethland, Russia,
Poland, Hungary, Sclavonia, Dacia, and Greece,
with the Isles thereof.*

O F

BELGIUM.

HAVING pursued the Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire through the four Western Diocesses or Divisions of it, wholly subdued to the Command of that Conquering State: Let us next look on those Countries which lay farther North, and either never felt the force of the *Roman* Armies, or were but Conquered in part, or else were reckoned as the Members of some greater Province. Of this last sort was all that Tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded Eastward with *Westphalen*, *Gulick*, *Cleve*, and the Land of *Triers*, Provinces of the Higher *Germany*; on the West with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*; on the North with the River *Ems*, which parts it from *East-Friseland*; on the South with *Picardie* and *Champagne*, two *French* Provinces; upon the South-East with the Dukedom of *Lorraine*.

By the *Latines* (especially of these last Times) it is called *Belgium*, from the *Belge*, the most potent People of all these Parts; and sometimes also *Germania inferior* or the *Lower Germany*, (in the same sence as by the *English* it is called the *Low-Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low Situation, and the conformity which they have with the *Germans* in Laws, Languages, Customs and Manners. By some it hath been call'd by the aggre-

gate Name of the *Seventeen Provinces*, from the like number of several and distinct Estates united under the Command of the King of *Spain*. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which, though but one of the *Seventeen Provinces*, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*; the People of which were once generally called by the Name of *Flemmings*; and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others; or by reason of the great Trade and Traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or Marts of *Bruges*, (a Town thereof) by the Merchants of all Parts of *Europe*; or in respect that lying nearer than the rest to *France*, *Spain*, *Italy* and *England*, that Name was better known and took notice of. But this was when the whole Country was under the Command of many Princes; of which the Earls of *Flanders* were esteem'd most potent. And though this name continued also after the Incorporating of most of these Provinces in the House of *Burgundy*, at which time they were called the *Estates of Flanders*: Yet since the falling off of *Holland* and the rest of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of *Spain*, it hath lost this Honour, the name of *Flanders* being now restrained within narrower bounds.

But for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name most current amongst the *Latines* of this Age, yet I see little

little reason for it. For first, Old *Belgium* contained in it many fair and large Estates which are not now within the compass of these *Belgick* Provinces; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, *Berg*, *Julliers*, and a great part of *Cleve*, the Bishopricks of *Triers*, *Mentz* and *Colen*, and so much of the Kingdom of *France* as takes up all *Picardy*, with parts of *Champagne* and of *France* specially so called. Secondly, *Gallia Belgica* extended somewhat farther yet, comprehending a great part of the Lower *Palatinate*, all *Alsace*, the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lyeth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*. And thirdly, the whole Provinces of *West-Friseland*, *Groening*, *Over-Yssel*, *Zutphen*, together with all *North-Holland*, and so much of *Gelderland*, and *Utrecht* as lyeth on the farther side of the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, were never counted of as parts of either *Belgium* or of *Belgia Gallica*, though now within the compass of the *Belgick* Provinces) but as parts of *Germany*; clearly without the Limits of the ancient *Gaul*, of which Body *Belgium* was a Limb or Member in the *Roman* estimate.

As for the *Belga*, from whence we have the Names of *Belgium* and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans*, who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themselves within the *Rhene*; esteem'd by *Cesar* to be the Valiantest of the *Gallick* Nations for these three Reasons. 1. They were the farthest from *Provence*, where the *Roman* Civilities and more affable course of Life was embraced. 2. They dwelt on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and so wanted those allurements to Effeminacy which are in Countries of Traffick. 3. They border'd on the *Germans*, a warlike Nation, with whom they were continually in Armes. This People seeing the prosperous success of *Cesar's* Victories in *Gaul*, joined together in a League, and mustered an Army of 269000 fighting Men against him. But seeing they could not draw him out of his Fortresses, they retired again, and that in such disorder, that three Legions (for no more was *Cesar's* Army) put them to an infinite slaughter. After this, *Cesar*, fighting against them severally, overcame them all; and made their Country, and the Country of the bordering *Germans*, whom he also vanquished, subject unto the *Roman* Empire. By *Constantine* the Great it was made part of the Diocess of *Gallia*, and by him cast into five Provinces: that is to say, 1. *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedom of *Lorraine* and the Land of *Triers*, the Metropolis whereof was *Triers*; 2. *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois*, *Picardy*, and the Country of *Cambray*, with parts of *Champagne* and *France* special, of which the Metropolis was *Rhemes*; 3. *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alsatia*, part of the *Palatinate*, and the Bishoprick of *Mentz*, the Metropolitan City of that Province; 4. *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cleveland*, *Brabant*, *Gelderland*, *Utrecht*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Luxemburgh*, *Limbourg*, and the Land of *Colen*, which last was honoured with the Title of Metropolitan; 5. *Maxima Sequanorum*, so called of the *Sequani*, the old Inhabitants thereof, containing the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lyeth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, of which *Basle* was the Mother City. But at this time none of the Provinces above specified are comprehended under the account and name of *Belgium*, but such as were possessed in these latter Ages by the House of *Burgundy*; some petty Seigniories and Estates which properly do belong to *Germany* being added to it: that is to say, the Lordship of *West-Friseland*, given to the Earls of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald; the Earldom of *Zutphen* united unto that of *Gelders* by Earl *Orho* of *Nassau*; and finally the Estate of *Groening*, *Over-Yssel*, and some part of *Utrecht* by *Charles* the Fifth. Under which Name and Notion we do now consider it.

And taking it according to this Name and Notion, it is in compass 1000 *Italian*, or 250 *German* Miles; and is situated in the Northern temperate Zone, under the

7, 8, and 9 Climates: the longest Day in the midst of the 7th Climate, where it doth begin, being 16 hours, in the beginning of the 9th Climate increased to 16 hours three quarters, or near 17 hours. The Air in these latter Days is grown more wholesom than formerly, partly by the wonderful increase of the Inhabitants, and partly by the incredible Industry of the People, who, by draining the Marshes, and converting the standing Waters into running Streams have purged the Air of many gross and unhealthy Vapours, which did thence usually arise in Times foregoing.

The Country is very populous, containing well-nigh Three Millions of Souls; the Men being for the most part well-proportioned, great lovers of our English Beer, unmindful both of good Turns and Injuries, of good Wit for inventing, and of a most indefatigable industry for perfecting the rarest Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; as also for *Arras*-Hangings, *Dornix*, Clocks, Watches, and the perfection of the Mariner's Compass. They restored Musick, and found out divers Musical Instruments, being naturally good Musicians, and generally so given unto it, and so perfect in it, that therefore (till the Art of Musick grew more common) there were not many Great Mens Houses which had not Musicians to teach their Children. To them belongeth also the invention of Chariots, the laying on of Colours with Oyl, the working of Pictures in Glasse, and the making of Worstedes, Seyes, and Tapestries; the making of which and other Stuffs, being driven out of their Country by the Duke of *Alva*, they first taught the *English*. The Women generally are of good Complexion, well-proportioned, especially in the Leg and Foot, honourers of Vertue, active and familiar. Both within doors and without they govern all: which, considering the natural desire of Women to bear Rule, maketh them too imperious and burthenfom.

They use for the most part the *German* and *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect. But in the Provinces adjoining to *France*, that is to say, *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, and some parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, they use the *French*; but the same very corruptly and imperfectly, by reason of that mixture which it hath of the *Dutch* or *German*, yet so that one may easily discern those People to be *French* Originally, or some remainder of the old *Gauls*, mastered by the *French*, but not rooted out: From their Language or first Original called to this day by the name of *Wallons*, the *Germans* usually changing *G* into *W*, as *War* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and in the like cases *Wales* for *Galles*. I know there is another Etymology of the name of *Wallons*; some making them to be of the *Burgundian* Race, who, at their first passing over the *Rhene*, enquired their way of the Country People in these words, *On allons*, i. e. *Whither go we?* which being oft repeated by them, occasioned them to be called *Wallons*: A trim invention doubtless, but of no solidity, nor to be farther honoured with a confutation.

The Country in those parts which lie towards *Germany*, especially on the South-East bordering upon *Cleveland* and *Lorraine*, is somewhat swelled with Hills and over-shaded with Woods, the Relicks of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof: But towards the West and North, where it joins to the Sea, it is plain and level, full of Flats and Marshes, affording very little Corn, but abounding in Pasturage, which yields a great increase of Butter and Cheese, good store of Beeves and Horses of more than ordinary bigness. By reason of which low and level Situation, and the ill Neighbourhood of a troublesom and unruly Sea, it hath been formerly much subject to Inundations; in so much as in the time of King *Henry* the II. *Flanders* was so overflowed, that many thousands of People, whose Dwellings the Sea had devoured, came into *England* to beg new Seats; and were by that King first placed in *Yorkshire*, and then removed to *Pembrokeshire*. Since that,

it hath in *Zeland* swallowed eight of the Islands, and in them 300 Towns and Villages: many of whose Churches and strong Buildings are at a dead low Water to be seen. And as once *Ovid* said of *Helice* and *Buris*, Cities of *Achaia*, so may we of these;

*Invenies sub aquis, & adhuc ostendere nauta
Inclinata solent cum manibus oppida versis.*

That is to say,

The Waters hide them, and the Sailors show
The ruin'd Walls and Steeples, as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into their Countries are Linnen, Scarlets, Worsted, Seyes, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffs; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheese, &c. Of which, excepting Cheese and Butter, there is nothing of the natural grow of the Country: the rest being Manufactures which they make out of such materials as they fetch out of Foreign Regions. But the Commodity which yieldeth them most benefit is that of Fish, not caught upon their own Coast neither, but either in the Northern Seas or the Coast of *England*. The very Herrings which they catch on the Shoars of *England* (to the no small Dishonour of the *English* Nation) bringing them a Revenue (besides what is pursed up by Adventurers) of 440000 Pounds *per Annum*; and that of Cod-fish, which they catch on the Coasts of *Frieseland*, amounting to 150000 Pounds Sterling yearly.

Captains of Note and Eminence it hath bred but few. The People living till of late in perpetual Peace. The chief of those whose Names have been transmitted to us are, 1. *Civilis*, a Prince of the *Batavians*, for subtilty of Wit compared to *Hannibal* and *Sertorius*; of which in the long War against the *Romans*, in the time of *Vespasian*, he gave very good proof. In the middle times, 2. *William* Earl of *Holland*, elected Emperor of *Germany*. 3. *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, Emperor of *Constantinople*. 4. *Philip* the Good, and 5. *Charles* the Warlike, Dukes of *Burgundy*. 6. *Charles* the Fifth, Emperor and King of *Spain*: And of late times the Princes of the House of *Nassau* and *Orange*, transplanted hither in the Regency of *Maximilian* out of higher *Germany*. And to say the truth their Genius doth not lie so much for Land-service as it doth for the Seas; in which they have been very Famous, and not less fortunate. For of this Nation was *Oliver Vander Noort*, the fourth that compassed the World, *Jacob le Maire*, the first discoverer of the Streight or *Fretum*, which now beareth his name, besides divers others. And generally the People are so expert in Navigation, (especially those bordering on or near the Coasts) that they seem born for and to the Seas: many of which being born on Ship-board and bred up at Sea, know no other Country, and brook the Land as ill as a Fish doth the dry ground. Which natural inclination to it, and the necessity they have of employing themselves that way (the Country not being otherwise able to provide sustenance for those multitudes of Men which it doth abound with) hath so exceedingly increased their Shipping, that it is thought that they are Masters of more Vessels of all sorts, taking one with another, than almost all the rest of *Europe*.

Scholars of Note it hath bred many. 1. *Erasmus*, the great restorer of Learning in these parts of the World. 2. *Justus Lipsius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latine* Elegancies. 3. *Joseph Scaliger*, the Son of *Julius*, & *mei nāv mraud dūbō*, a Man not to be fellowed in all parts of Learning; but of equal Arrogance. 4. *Rodolphus Agricola*. 5. *Levinus Lemnius*. 6, 7. *Janus Douza*, the Father and the Son. 8. *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9. *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 10. *Geo Cassander*. 11. *Dr. James Hermin*. 12. *Gerard Vossius*, eminent Divines. And 13. *Hugo Grotius*, of as great Parts (but seasoned with more Modesty and Moderation) as the

Famous *Scaliger*. 14. *Jansenius*, and 15. *Pamelius*, two right learned Men, but of the *Pontifical* Party.

As much unfortunate it hath been in some wretched Hereticks, in none more than in *David George*, born at *Delf* in *Holland*, who called himself *Christ* and King immortal: Flying from *Delf* to *Basil* with his Wife and Children, Anno 1545. he there taught his Doctrine, viz. 1. That the Law and Gospel were unprofitable for the attaining of Heaven; but his Doctrine able to save such as received it. 2. That he was the true *Christ* and *Messias*. 3. That he was not to restore the House of *Israel* by Death or Tribulation, but by Love and Grace of the Spirit. 4. That he had been till that present kept in a place unknown to all the Saints. And that this last Point might obtain the easier credit amongst the People, he bound his Disciples, first, to conceal his Name; secondly, not to reveal of what Condition he had been; thirdly, not to discover the Articles of his Doctrine to any Man in *Basil* without his permission. But for all this great care of his within three days after his Death (which happened in the Year 1556.) his Doctrines being made known, were condemned by the Senate and Church of *Basil*, his Goods confiscate, and his Bones most deservedly taken up and burnt. Of somewhat less Impiety, but of no less Phrensie, was, 2. *John* of *Leyden*, (another Town of the same Province) who from a Taylor was made King of the Anabaptists, when they had raged in *Munster*, and there we shall hear farther of him. 3. *Cappinus*, and 4. *Quintinus*, both *Flemings*; the joint Authors and Co-founders of the Sect of the Libertines.

The Christian Religion was planted in several Provinces by several Men: in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Frieseland*, by *Willibrod* an *English* Man, the first Bishop of *Utrecht*, whence by degrees it gained on the rest of the Country; these being the first People of the *Franks*, or *Germans*, converted totally to the Gospel. In tract of time it fell from the Primitive Purity, participating of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they desired to reclaim themselves, they were therein opposed by the King of *Spain* and his Ministers. Hence the beginning of the Troubles; enlarged afterwards on pretence of Civil Rights invaded and infringed by the *Spaniards* affecting a more absolute Dominion over them than their Laws admitted. At this time, as the Country doth stand divided betwixt the States and the *Spaniards*, so stands it with Religion also: the *Spaniards* permitting only the Religion of the Church of *Rome* within the Provinces and Estates under his Command; and the States General indulging the free use of all Religions (even the very *Jews*) but countenancing only that of the Reformed Churches, according to the Plat-form laid down by *Calvin*.

Chief Forests of this Country are, 1. That of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cæsar* extended from the Banks of *Rhene* as far as *Tournay* one way, and *Champagne* another way, and was in compass 500 Miles in the least accompt. In which circuit there was comprehended the Southern parts of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, all *Limbourg*, *Luxemburg*, *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and *Hainault*, together with the Land of *Gulick* in the Higher *Germany*, as some Writers say. At this time, though the greatest of all *Gaul Belgick*, it reacheth but from *Liege* to *Treconville*, 30 Leagues in length, and yet not all that Wood-land neither, though within the Verge of the Forest: there being much Tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground, the principal of which is the Town of *S. Hubert*, situate almost in the midst of it. 2. *Niepe*, and 3. *Nonnen*, in the Earldom of *Flanders*; the first extending to the Banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up close to *Ypres*. 4. *Pondsberg*, in the Confines of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mont-Gerard*. All these were parts of this great Forest of *Ardenne*, which once overshadowed all this Country. 5. *Normault*, in *Hainault*, in which is much Charcoal made; supposed for that reason

reason to be part of that Forest which the old *French* called *La Charboniere*. 6. *Echterwald*, in *Gelderland*, near *Arnhem*, &c.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Rhene*, which ariseth out of two Springs in the *Lepontian Alps* amongst the *Grisons*, united into one stream near *Chur*; thence passing by the Cities of *Constance*, *Basil*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, *Mentz*, and *Colen*, it is again divided about the Confines of *Gelderland* into four Branches or Channels. Of which the first is called the *Wael*, which running through *Guelderland* by *Nimeguen* and *Bommel*, loseth it self in the *Maes*. The second, which keeps the name of the *Rhene*, passeth by *Arnhem*, from thence in a contracted Channel to *Utrecht*, and so through *Holland* unto *Leyden*. The third, called the *Leck*, taketh his course through the Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Holland*, and so into the Sea betwixt *Dort* and *Rotterdam*. And the fourth called the *Yssel*, which passing by the Towns of *Zutphen* and *Deventer* betwixt *Gelderland* and *Over-Yssel*, emptieth it self into the Ocean near *Amsterdam*. And of these Branches I have given the exacter reckoning, partly because the course of that famous River is otherwise not easie to be observed; and partly because the knowledge of a great part of these Provinces dependeth on the knowledge of the course of this River, it being the middle Branch of the *Rhene* (that which goeth by *Leyden*) which anciently divided *Germany* from *Gallia Belgica*. A River of such Reputation in the ancient Times, that into it the old *Belge* used to cast the Children which they suspected to be illegitimate: For were they born of lawful Bed, they floated on the Waters, if of unlawful they sank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian*, alluding, saith, *Nascentes explorat gurgite Rhenus*. But the great searcher of Antiquities, *Verstegan*, is of Opinion, that thereby they only inured their Children to hardness, and made trial of their Strength; Adultery being rarely found among them, and so these kinds of Experiments needless. 2. *Mosa*, the *Maes*, as the *Dutch*, or the *Meuse*, as the *French* Men call it, which springing from the Mountains of *Vange* in the Confines of *Lorraine*, and not far from the Fountains of the *Seine* and *Marne*, runneth through *Lorraine*, *Luxemburg*, *Luyckland* and *Namur*; from thence by *Ruremond* and *Venlo*, two known Towns of *Guelderland*, where turning towards the West, it taketh in a part of the *Rhene*, and from thence passing by *Maestricht*, divides *Brabant* from *Holland*, watering the Town of *Grave* in the one, and of *Dort* in the other; and fallerh into the Sea not far from *Briel* with so great a violence, that the Waters of it for a long space continue fresh, 3. *Ems*, in *Latine* called *Amisus*, dividing the two *Frieselands*; of which more in *Germany*, 4. *Scaldus*, which arising in *Picardy*, and running through *Artois*, and between *Hainault* and *Brabant*, meeteth with the Sea a little above *Antwerp*. And 5. *Lis* or *Ley*, which runneth quite through *Flanders*. Besides which Rivers, and others of inferior Note, (which we shall meet withal in their proper places) here are great store of Lakes, Pools and Marshes, which do both fortifie the Country, and provide it of Fish: besides many navigable Channels, made by the hand of Man from one River to another, for the convenience of passage, and the more easie transport of their Commodities.

The Shoar of this Country hath been much worn out by the Sea, especially that of the Islands of *Zeland*, and such as lie scattered about *Holland*; where they are defended with Banks and Ramparts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. These Banks are about ten ells in height, and twenty-five in breadth at the bottom: they are made of the hardest Clay that may be gotten, in the inside stuffed with Wood and Stone, on the outside covered with Mats strong and thick made.

The former Inhabitants were divers, and were as differently disposed of in their several Countries. That is to say, the *Atrebat*es in the greatest part of *Artois*; the *Morini* in the rest of *Artois*, and those parts of *Flanders* which make up the Imperial and Dutch *Flanders*; the

Nervi in *Hainault*; *Namur*, and *Flanders Gallicant*, the *Batavi* in *South-Holland*, and so much of *Gelderland* and *Utrecht* as lies on the South-side of the *Rhene*, with the *Menapii* intermixt in the Dukedom of *Gelders*; the *Mattiaci* in the Isles of *Zeland*; the *Aduarici* and part of the *Tongri* in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, with part of the *Treviri* in *Luxemburg*, and of the *Eburones* in *Luyckland* and the Dukedom of *Limburg*: all which were *Belgick Nations*, and therefore anciently accounted of as parts of *Gallia*. Then on the Northern side of the middle Chanel of the *Rhene* there dwelt the *Frisii minores* in *North-Holland*, and so much of the District of *Utrecht* as lies on the farther side of that Channel; the *Frisii majores* in *West-Friesland* and the State of *Groening*; some parts of the *Sicambri* in the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the rest of *Gelderland*, with part of the *Brueteri* in *Over-Yssel*, all *German Nations*, and properly not within the reckoning of *Gallia Belgica*. Those which passed under the account and name of *Belge* being subdued, together with other Tribes of that numerous Nation, by the Valour and good Fortune of *Julius Caesar*, continued subject to the *Romans*, without any notable Disturbance unto their Affairs, but the Rebellion raised against them by *Civilis* Prince of the *Batavians* in the time of *Vespasian*. In the declining of the Empire they were possessed by the *French*, under whom they made a part of the Kingdom of *Metz* or *Ostenreich*, united by *Childerick* the Third to the rest of *France*, and made a Member of that Kingdom; as they continued till the time of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. In the division of whose Empire amongst his Children, the Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* being laid to *France*, the residue of these Countries on this side of the *Rhene* made up a special part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*. Those, on the farther side of the middle Channel of that River, being *German Nations*, gained to the vast Empire of the *French* by *Charles* the Great, in the division of the Spoil spoken of before fell to the share of *Lewis* surnamed the Ancient, the first King of *Germany*, and after his decease to his Successors in that Estate, whether Kings or Emperors. And so we have the whole divided betwixt the three great Kings of *France*, *Lorraine* and *Germany*, by that means subdivided into lesser parcels (no fewer than Nineteen in all) we shall see anon.

In the mean time we are to know, that in the beginning of the *French* Conquests in the rest of *Gallia*, there started up in *Belgica* two great Estates, founded by *Auberon*, *Regnault* and *Ranchaire*, Sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the *French*; who being disherited of their Father's Kingdom by *Merove* Master of his Horse, to whose Tuition and Guardianship they had been committed, betook themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, and the Countries on the Banks of the River *Moselle*; where they Founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Ardenne* (for of the Earldom of *Moselle* we shall speak elsewhere) contained part of the modern *Flanders*, and some part of *Brabant*, together with all *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Limburg*, *Luxemburg*, and the Dukedom of *Bouillon*. Grown to this greatness by the withdrawing of the *French* Forces into richer Conquests, and dismembring of that Empire into many Kingdoms, and trusting too much to that Greatness, they drew upon themselves the jealousy of those mightier Princes: occasioning *Clovis* the Second to give their Country unto *Dagobert* his eldest Son, then King of *Metz*, whom he furnished with convenient Forces for the Conquest of it; *Brumulph*, the then Prince hereof, being by him discomfited and slain in Battel. By *Sigebert*, who succeeded his Father *Dagobert* in the Kingdom of *Metz*, the Earldom of *Hainault* is taken out of it, and given to *Albert*, one of the youngest Sons of *Brumulph*. By *Dagobert* himself, succeeding in the Realm of *France*; (and whilst he lived sole King of the *French*) the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, formerly belonging to these Princes, were dismembred from it, and laid unto two new Estates of his own

own erecting. And probable it is, that either to weaken this great House, or to comply with the ill Customs of those Times; the Earldom of *Namur* might be taken out of it at the same time also, for the portion of some other of the younger Brethren. The rest of the Estate, with the Title of Earl of *Ardenne*, remained unto the eldest Son: whose Posterity, notwithstanding this great diminution, grew to such esteem, that *Judith*, the Widow of *Buin*, and Sister of *Boson*, Earls of *Ardenne*, was thought a fit Wife for *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperor, by whom (the more to Honour his Family) the said *Boson* was created King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. During the Empire of *Otho* the First, the Earldom of *Luxemburg* was divided from it, and given to *Sigefride*, one of the younger Sons of *Ricvine* the preceding Prince, and so perhaps was *Limbourg* also for another of them. The rest remained to *Godfrey* the eldest Son, who by *Matilda*, a Daughter to *Otho* the Second, was Father of another *Godfrey*, who succeeded after *Charles*, and *Otho* the third Duke of *Lorraine*: the Dukedom being ever since enjoyed by the House of *Ardenne*, and there we shall hear farther of it. This said, and so much of the Story opened as concerns the general, we will proceed to a particular Survey of the modern *Belgium*, divided at the present into Seventeen Provinces, besides the two great Bishopricks of *Liege* and *Cambray*, which being always under the protection of the *Belgick* Princes, partakers of their Fortunes, either good or ill, and lying intermixt among their Estates, shall have their turn in the Description of these Countries, divided generally.

into { 2 Bishopricks, { 1. *Liege* or *Luyck*.
 { 2. *Cambray*.
 4 Dukedoms, { 1. *Limbourg*, 2. *Luxemburg*,
 { 3. *Gelderland*, 4. *Brabant*.
 1 Marquifate, viz. of the Holy Empire.
 7 Earldoms, { 1. *Flanders*, 2. *Artois*,
 { 3. *Hainault*, 4. *Namur*,
 { 5. *Zutphen*, 6. *Holland*, 7. *Zeland*.
 5 Baronies, { 1. *West-Friesland*,
 { 2. *Utrecht*, 3. *Over-Yffel*,
 { 4. *Machlin*, 5. *Groening*.

Of these Nineteen, two only did acknowledge the Sovereignty of the Kings of *France*, viz. *Flanders* and *Artois*; the Earls whereof were Homagers unto that Crown, but seldom did descend so low as do their Homage, quitted at last to *Philip* the second King of *Spain*, and his Successors, by King *Henry* the second of *France* in the Treaty at *Cambray*, Anno 1558. The rest were held originally of the *German* Empire, and by *Maximilian* Emperor of *Germany*, and Regent of those Countries for his Son *Philip* (who had a purpose to subject them to the Empire again) were made the Tenth Circle of the Empire, called the *Circle of Burgundy*. But neither since, nor before that time, would the Princes of the House of *Burgundy* acknowledge any such Subjection; but govern'd these Estates as absolute Princes, without relation to the Empire, or Subordination to the Emperor or Imperial Officers; never appearing at the Diets, nor contributing to any Taxes there imposed, not holding themselves bound by any Constitutions which were made therein. So that these several Relations being out of use, we must behold it at this time as it stands divided betwixt the *Spaniards* and the States: beginning first with those Provinces which belong to the *Spaniard*, the true Proprietary of the whole; and therein first with *Flanders*, as of most esteem.

1. *FLANDERS*, and 2. *ARTOIS*.

These two I have thought fit to join together, because at first but one Estate; and though divided for a time, yet after five or six Descents again united, and have so continued ever since.

1. *FLANDERS* is bounded on the East with *Hainault* and *Brabant*, on the West with the *English* or *German* Ocean; on the North with the Seas of *Zeland* and a branch of the *Scheld*, and on the South with part of *Picardy* in *France*, interposing betwixt *Calice* and *Greveling*; in which bounds *Artois* is included. So called, as some say, a *Flando*, because it lieth open to the Winds; as others say, from *Flandbert*, the Son of *Blesinda*, Daughter of *Clodion*, the second King of the *French*. Some fetch it from a Town of this name, situate in that part of the Country where now *Ardenburg* stands; so long since ruined, that very few except themselves could ever hear of it: and others (which I think most probable) from *Flandrina* the Wife of *Lideric* II. the first who governed in these Parts by the name of *Forcster*.

The Soil is indifferently fruitful in Corn and Pasture; the Air healthful, temperate and pleasant. The whole Country not in length above 90 Miles, and in breadth but 60, and yet containing in that compass above thirty Cities (for they reckon all Cities which be walled) and 1154 Villages, which stand so thick, (as needs they must in so narrow a compass) that the *Spaniards*, at their first coming in with King *Philip* the Second, took the whole Province for one Town. Divided commonly into, 1. *Imperial*, 2. *Gallican*, and, 3. *Teutonican*; or, 1. *Flanders Imperial*, 2. *Flanders Gallican*, and, 3. *Flanders Flammeugant*.

1. *FLANDERS FLAMMEUGANT*, which is the greatest of the three, is bounded on the East with *Imperial Flanders* and the River *Scheld*, on the West with the *English* Ocean, on the North with the Seas of *Zeland*, and on the South with *Artois* and *Flanders Gallican*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Gaunt*, in *Latine* called *Gandavum*, seven Miles in compass, but taking in the Suburbs, which are great and large, the whole Circuit is ten Miles at least. One of the greatest Cities in *Europe* for extent of Ground, but not so populous as many of a less capacity; there being much waste Ground even within the Walls. Commodiously seated on the Banks of the *Scheld* and the *Ley*, both which run through it, and make in it Twenty-six Islands, joined together with Ninety-eight Bridges: and had not her many Seditions ruined her Beauties, she might have been the Queen of *Europe*. In this Town were born *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, commonly called *John of Gaunt*, and *Charles* the fifth Emperor, and King of *Spain*: which last, to restrain the People from their old Sedition, which had been very troublesome to his Predecessors, (the *Gauntois* taking on them many times to rule and over-rule their Princes) built a strong Citadel in the place where stood the Abby of *Saint Bavons*. For Churches, Monasteries, and other places of Devotion, there were numbred in it Fifty-five, all of them answerable to the Grandeur and Renown of the City; the private Buildings being also very stately, if not Majestical. But now it is much fallen from its former Glories, the often Seditions of this People drawing upon themselves the Vengeance of their angered Prince; and their Wealth much impaired by the long Wars, and the diversion of their Trading by the *Hollanders*, who command the Seas. This Place was taken by the *French* the 12th of *March*, 1678. but restored to the *Spaniards* by the Treaty of *Nimwegen* in 1679. 2. *Bruges*, or *Brugge*, more within the Land. A Town that hath neither Port nor River, yet formerly of such Wealth, and the People in those Times so willing to shew it, that Queen *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip* the Fair, having been there, and marked the Pomp of the Women, complained that *She was not Queen alone*. The Town of four Miles circuit within the Walls, wonderfully well peopled; the Buildings fair and sumptuous (amongst which Sixty Churches and Religious Houses) the Streets large and straight, and a spacious Market-place, from which the six principal Streets of the City do pass directly on to as many Gates, which is very pleasant to behold. And though the Town hath neither Port nor River, as before was said, yet was it anciently

anciently of so great Trading, that it was accounted one of the four Mart-Towns of Christendom; flourishing chiefly by the benefit of the *English* Cloth, and sensibly decaying when the *English* Traffick was removed hence to *Antwerp*. It was Walled by Earl *Baldwin*, An. 890, is distant three Leagues from the Sea, and seated on a fair and deep Channel made by Art, and filled with the Waters of all the adjoining Fountains and Rivulets; which artificial Channels are in these Countries very frequent, to the great enriching of the whole State. It continues still under the *Spaniards*, and is one of the best Places they have left. 3. *Ypres*, a Town seated very strongly, and almost impregnable, on a small River so named: a reasonable rich Town, and well built, though most of the Houses be of Timber, very well served with Water, conveyed into every House almost in leaden Pipes, of which there is so great a number, that the Foundations of it seem to be laid in Lead. This City was taken by the *French* the 26th of March, 1678. and is still in their Hands. 4. *Bourbourg*, a fine strong Town, but little, pertaining to the *French* King in the Right of the House of *Bourbon*. 5. *Comines*, on the River *Lis*, or *Ley*, beautified with a strong Castle, and an excellent Library; but more in being the Birth-place of *Philip de Comines*, that notable States-Man and Historian. Now under the *French*. 6. *Courtray*, on the same River of *Ley*, one of the ancientest Towns in *Flanders*, yet still continueth well built, of very great strength both by Art and Nature, famous for a great Overthrow given the *French*, Anno 1301. for which the Town was called of long time the *Sepulchre of the Frenchmen*. Taken by the *French* in 1646, and again in 1667, but restored to the *Spaniards* in 1679. 7. *Ardenburg*, (called in Times past *Rodemburgh*) a pretty Town, enriched every Year with a great Horse-Fair every June, and beautified with one of the goodliest Churches in all this Province: the principal Town of that part hereof, which properly is called *Flanders*; that name being first given to the Parts hereunto adjoining, as some conceive, and after by degrees communicated to the rest of the Country. It was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1604, and is still in their power, but wasted to nothing. 8. *Bier-vliet*, both a Town and Island, and furnished with a good and commodious Haven; yet not to be mention'd in this place, but that the salting of Herrings was here first invented by one *William Beukeleme*, who died Anno 1397. 9. *Winocksberg*, so called of a goodly Abbey built upon an Hill in the honour of St. *Winock* an *English* Man of an holy Life, sacked by the *French*, Anno 1538, but since re-edified, and made more beautiful than it was before. Taken by the *French* in 1646, retaken by the *Spaniards* in 1658. 10. *Graveling*, on the Sea-side, which, since the taking of *Calice* by the *French*, hath been made the strongest Town in the Low-Countries. Yet it has been twice taken by the *French* in 1644, and in 1658: Since which last date it has been in their Hands. 11. *Oudenard*, seated on the *Scheld*, a fair strong Town and of very great Traffick, especially for Tapeltry and the finest Linens, which are here made: The Birth-place of *Margaret*, Dutchess of *Parma*, and Mother to *Alexander* Prince of *Parma*, that renowned Souldier. taken by the *French* in 1658, and in 1667, besieged by the *Spaniards* unsuccessfully in 1674, but restored by the Treaty in 1679.

The principal Ports of *Flanders*, being four in number, are all of them seated in this part. 1. *Dunkerck*, a small but safe Port, belonging to the *French* King (as doth *Graveling* also) in the Right of the House of *Vendosme*; but strongly Garrisoned by the *Spaniard*, even in times of Peace, because of the importance of their situation both by Sea and Land. Most memorable in these Days for that the People of it in the times of War so infested the Seas. This Town was taken by the united Forces of *England* and *France* in the Year 1658, June 17. And being put into the Hands of the *English*, was sold to the *French* in the Year 1662. And the present *French* King

has bestowed incredible Cost in Fortifying it, and enlarging and securing the Haven, though to little purpose. 2. *Schuyts*, seated at the Mouth of the Channel of *Bruges*, beautified with a very fair Haven able to contain 500 good Ships; and is now subject to the States, with whose safety it could not well stand to let the *Spaniards* enjoy any safe and large Harbours so near unto them. Over against it lieth the Isle of *Cassander*, famous for the Birth of *George Cassander*, a moderate and learned Papist, formerly as big again as it is at the present, having then a fair Town in it and many rich Villages, of which there is but one remaining (of the same Name with the Island) the rest all swallowed by the Sea. 3. *Nieuport*, a pretty Town, with a very strong Castle, built on a well frequented Haven, but not very safe, and therefore not much used by the Men of War, nor made rich by Paracies, as *Dunkerck*. Near to this Town, Anno 1603. was fought the Field-battel betwixt the Arch-duke *Albert* and the *States*; the Victory, next under God, being gotten for the *States* by the Valour of the *English*, and the excellent Conduct of the *Verees*. 4. *Ostend*, not walled till the Low-Country Wars, and then but with a mud Wall only, and that not finished till the Arch-duke fate down before it: insomuch as the Arch-dutche's *Isabel* is said to have sworn, that she would not shift her Smock till the Town were taken: who, had she kept that rash Oath, had been very lowly; the Town (then Garrisoned with *English*) holding out against the said Arch-duke a Siege of three Years and as many Months. These two East Ports are still in the Hands of the *Spaniards*.

2. *IMPERIAL FLANDERS*, so called, because it was long under the Obedience of Emperors, is severed from *Brabant* by the River *Dender*, and from the *Gallick Flanders* by the River *Scheld*, about *Oudenard*. It was sometimes called *Brabant*, of a Castle of that name, destroyed by *Baldwin le Debonaire*, Earl of *Flanders*; and is now call'd the County of *Alost*, from the chief Town thereof so named; the Jurisdiction whereof, containing 170 Villages, extendeth as far as to the Walls of *Gant*, and the Gates of *Oudenard*. The Town is strong, and indifferently fair, situate on the River *Dender*, most Famous in these Times for a Ear of Hops which is kept there Yearly. 2. *Hulst*, a walled Town, and the chief of the four Towns in the County of *Waes*; the other three being, 3. *Axele*. 4. *Monchaet*. 5. *Affende*; of which little memorable, but that they were all taken from the Empire by the said *Baldwin le Debonaire* in the time of the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth. 6. *Dendermond*, situate at the mouth of the *Dender*, where it entrencheth into the *Scheld*; a strong Town both by Art and Nature, and much enriched by making Fustians, and a weekly Market of Flax. A distinct Signory of it self, with many rich Villages belonging to it; incorporated into the Earldom of *Flanders* by the Marriage of Earl *Lewis de Malaine* with the Lady *Margaret* of *Brabant*, to which House it formerly appertained. 7. *Rupelmond*, on the mouth of the River *Rupel*, where it falleth into the *Scheld*: Famous in former time for an ancient Castle, in which were kept the Monuments and Records of the Earls of *Flanders*; more in late times for being the Birth-place of *Mercator*, that renowned Cosmographer. 8. *Mont-Gerhard*, called by the *French*, *Grandmout*, a fine and pleasant Town seated on the *Dender*. Which three last Towns, together with *Bornhem*, a fair large Village, having some Jurisdiction on the Parts adjoining, made up that Estate which was called the *Proper* or *Domaine* of *Flanders*, because not holden of the Empire or the Kings of *France*, but in the Sovereignty alone of the Earls hereof. This Part of *Flanders* is yet entirely in the Hands of *Spaniards*, though in the Year 1667 they took *Alost*, and kept it till the Peace.

3. *FLANDERS GALlicant*, so called from the *French* Language there spoken, lieth on the South of *Flanders Flammengant*; having *Hainault* on the East, *Artois* on the West, and the Country of *Cambrai* on

on the South. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *L'Isle*, in *Latine*, *Insula*, so called from its Island-like situation, among Ponds, Pools, Marshes, dried up and made firm Land by Earl *Baldwin de Barbu*, who built the Town, Anno 1007. which afterwards was called by *Baldwin de Lisle*, his Son (born in his Town, and hence so named) Anno 1066. The Town made rich by Manufactures and retort of Merchants, accounted the best Town of Traffick, next *Amsterdam* and *Antwerp*, in all the *Netherlands*. Not far from which are to be seen the Ruins of an ancient Castle called *Brug*, the Seat or Mannor-House of the ancient *Foresters*, who had the Government of this Country for the Kings of *France*. Taken by the *French* in 1667. 2. *Doway*, (*Duacum*, in *Latin*) a fair and strong Town seated on the *Scharp*, having many Fountains, good Buildings, and a great number of Churches; made an University by King *Philip* the Second of *Spain*, who built therein a Seminary or Colledge for *English* Fugitives. Taken by the *French* in 1667. 3. *Orchies*, a pleasant Town, and well traded for the making of *Serges*; which, with the other two, make up the three Estates of this part of *Flanders*. 4. *Armentiers*, an unwall'd Town, but of very great Trading; there being yearly 25000 pieces of Cloth sent hence to *Italy*, and thence to *Constantinople*. 5. *Tournay*, (or *Dornick*, as the *Dutch* call it) a great, rich, mighty and strong Town, seated on the *Scheld*, well built, and full of stately and magnificent Churches and Religious Houses, and anciently honoured with a See Episcopal. A Town of great importance, and much contended for betwixt the *Flemmings* and the *French*; but finally fell unto the *French*, as the more puissant Prince; taken from them by *Henry* the Eighth of *England*, Anno 1513. to whom the Citizens paid 100000 Ducats for their present Ransom; restored by him unto the *French*, Anno 1518. for the sum of 600000 Crowns; and finally from them recovered by *Charles* the Fifth, who restored it to the Body of *Flanders*, from which it had been long dismembred; but so that it is govern'd as a State apart, and is called the *Seignioury of Tournes*, having a goodly Jurisdiction over the Country round about it. Taken by the *French* again in the Year 1667. 6. *S. Amand*, in the Country of *Tournes*, pleasantly seated on the *Scharp*; in which is one of the richest Abbeys in all *Flanders*; the Abbot thereof having the temporal and spiritual Jurisdiction over it and the parts about it. And so much for the Chorography of the Earldom of *Flanders*, inhabited by the *Nervii* and *Morini* in the time of *Cesar*. All this part of *Flanders* was resigned to the *French* by the Treaties of *Aix la Chapel*, in the Year 1668, and confirmed by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*.

2. *ARTOIS*, is bounded on the East with *Flanders* *Gallicant* and the Country of *Cambray*, on the South and West with *Picardy*, on the North with *Flanders* *Flammengant* and the River *Lis*. The name is derived from the *Airebates*, the old Inhabitants hereof: the Air exceeding temperate, and the Soil so fruitful, that it serveth as a Granary to a great part both of *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This whole Province was resigned to the *French* by the *Pyrenean* Treaty in the Year 1659, and confirm'd by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*.

On the West part hereof towards *France* lieth the Earldom of *S. Paul*, so called from the chief Town thereof; a goodly Seignioury, and of great Jurisdiction and Revenue, containing, besides many Villages, the good Town of *Pern*, a walled Town, and of great importance. The Earls hereof were lineally derived from *Walleran*, Brother of *Henry* the Seventh Emperor of *Germany* and Earl of *Luxemburg*; the last of which was *Lewis* of *Luxemburg*, made Constable of *France* by King *Lewis* the Eleventh, with whom, as also with *Edward* the Fourth of *England*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, he plaid so many cross Tricks, that having long deluded them all, and kept them in a continual Jealousie of one another, he was at last by Duke *Charles* taken and be-

headed. After whose death this goodly Seignioury fell to the House of *Vendosme* in *France*, by the Marriage of *Francis* Earl of *Vendosme* with *Mary* the Daughter of this *Lewis*, to whom it was adjudged by the Power and Favour of the *French* King's; the Heirs-males being made incapable of Succession in it, by the Attainder and Confiscation of the said last Earl. By means whereof the House of *Vendosme* was intitled to many fair Estates in *Artois*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, and much good Lands in *France*, which they were possessed of; *Francis* the 2d. Son of that *Francis*, and *Francis* the only Son of this, being intitled, whilst they lived, Earl of *S. Paul*, and Dukes of *Tutcheville*.

The Arms of these Earls were *Argent*, a Lion *Gules* armed and crowned *Or*, his Tail forked of the second.

As for the residue of *Artois*, the Towns of most importance in it are, 1. *Arras*, in *Latine* *Atrebatum civitas*, the chief City of the *Atrebat* the old Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cesar*, and still the chief City of this Province; a large, populous and well-fortified City, anciently honoured with a See Episcopal, and stocked with an industrious People, the first makers of the Cloth of *Arras*, which took Name from hence: divided into two distinct Towns, both of them walled, and called by two several Names; the lesser called *La Cite*, subject to the Bishop, beautified with a fair and stately Cathedral Church, and a Library containing many excellent Manuscripts; the lesser called *La Ville*, subject to the Prince, having large Streets, and a rich Monastery of the yearly Revenue of 20000 Crowns. By *Pytolomy* it is called *Regiacum*, seated within a Bow-shot of the River *Scharp*, and heretofore the Metropolitan Town of *Flanders*, till *Artois* was dismembred from it; since which time the chief City of this Province, as before is said. Taken by the *French* in 1640, and unfortunately attacked by the *Spaniards* in 1654. 2. *S. Omar*, a fair Town, and well peopled, seated upon the River *At*, some eight *Dutch* Miles from the Ocean; so called from *S. Omar*, or *Andomar*, Bishop of the *Morini*, who built a Monastery in this place, from which grew the Town, the second of Esteem and Rank in all the Country. Near to it is a goodly Lake of fresh Water, in which are many little Islands affording good Pasturage for Cattel: of which *Lewis Guicciardini* reporteth, that by fastning a Cord unto the Bushes which grow in them, a Man may draw them which way he will; and that under them there are found great number of fishes, who bed themselves there for shelter against the Weather. This City was raised to the Dignity of a Bishops See under the Arch-Bishop of *Cambray* in 1550, instead of *Terovanne*, which was Ruined some few Years before. In 1596 *Philip* II. of *Spain* founded here a Colledge for the *English* Jesuits: In 1639 the *French* besieged it unsuccessfully, but they took it 1677, and had the Possession confirmed by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*. 3. *Bathune*, a strong Town; and seated amongst excellent Pastures, of which the People make great plenty of the best Cheese: which, with the Territory hereof, fell to *Cy* of *Dampiere*, Earl of *Flapders*, in Right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Daniel* the Lord of this Town, honoured in that regard with the Birth of their eldest Son, who from this place had the name of *Robert de Rathunc*. Taken by the *French* in 1645. 4. *Ayre*, on the *Lis*, a strong Town, with a Castle of great Antiquity. Taken by the *French* in 1641, and soon after recovered by the *Spaniards*, but was finally retaken by the former in 1676, and is now in their Hands. 5. *Bupaulme*, a little, but well Fortified Town; and yet more strong, because it cannot be Besieged for want of fresh Water, which is not to be had within three Leagues of it. Taken by the *French* in 1641, and ever since kept by them. 6. *Remy*, an unwall'd Town, but Fenced with a very strong Castle, besieged by the *French*, Anno 1554. but being overcome in a set Field by *Charles* the Fifth, they were fain to raise the Siege and go home again. In the Year 1638 the *French* took and ruined it.

7. *Hesdin*, on the confluence of two little Riverets, *Blangis* and *Canche*; a Frontier Town on the edge of *France*, one of the strongest and most defensible places of all the *Netherlands*, built by *Charles* the Fifth out of the Ruines of old *Hesdin*, which having taken from the French, he commanded it to be razed as no longer serviceable, and raised this Town in stead thereof, somewhat nearer *France*. Which in the Year 1639 was also taken by the French, and resigned to them by the *Pyrenean* Treaty. 8. *Terwin*, or *Teroane*, the *Tervanna* of *Ptolomy*, and *Civitas Morinum* of *Antoninus*, a Frontier Town, held for a long time by the French, by whom thought impregnable, till taken by King *Henry* the VIII. Anno 1513. they changed their Opinion. A Siege not only memorable for the issue of it, but for two other matters of great moment: The one, that the Emperor *Maximilian* came and served in Person under the Colours of *S. George*, with the *English* Cross upon his Breast: The other, that the French intending to victual the Town, had so great an Overthrow, that had the English followed their Fortune, they had opened a fair way to have made themselves Masters of all *France*; the French King being so astonished at the News hereof, that he prepared to fly into *Britagne*. But the English more minded the Spoils and Riches of *Terwin*, than the sequel of an absolute Victory; *Et frui maluerunt victoria, quam uti*, as the Historian said of *Hannibal*. It is now, after many changes of Fortune, in the Hands of the French, and by some reckoned and accounted of as part of *Picardy*. There are, besides these, three walled Towns more, that is to say, *Lillers*, *Lens*, and *La Bassée*, of which little memorable, and to the number of 854 Villages.

These Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* were anciently, if not a part, (as the parts hereof about *Tournay* most undoubtedly were) yet much of the same nature with the great Forest of *Ardenne*, nothing but a continual waste of Woods and Desarts till the Conquest of it by the French; the Sea-coasts being then unpeopled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent Piracies did much vex those Shores, and the inland Countries meanly planted, for want of Corn and other Necessaries for the Life of Man: subject in part to the greatest Princes of *Ardenne*, till the discomfiture of Earl *Brunolph* by *Dagobert*, sole King of the French, by whom about the Year 621 this wild Country, extending then as far as the River *Somme*, and comprehending, besides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardy*, was given unto one *Liderrick de Bucque*, with the Title of *Forester*, to be holden under the Sovereign of that Crown. In whose Posterity it continued with the Title of *Foresters* till the time of *Baldwin* the First, the Son of *Odoacer*, the seventh of the *Foresters*, whose Names occur upon Record; there being a long intermission of their Names and Memories during the Ravagements and Depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having first Ravished, and afterwards Married, *Judith*, Sister to *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperor, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Sovereignty thereof reserved as before it was: in whose Issue it remained intire, till *Philip* the first Earl of that name gave unto *Philip Augustus*, King of *France*, the Country of *Artois* with the Earldom or Country of *Veromandois*, part of *Picardy*, in Marriage with *Isabel* his Niece, Daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainault*. By *Lewis* the Eighth, Son and Successor of *Philip Augustus*, *Artois* was given in Portion to his youngest Son *Robert*, made the first Earl of *Artois* by King *Lewis* the Ninth, Anno 1234. And by the Marriage of *Lewis* the First of *Flanders* with *Margaret* the Heir of *Artois* and of the Earldom of *Burgundy*, both these Estates were added unto this of *Flanders*, now made far mightier than before. And yet before this great accession of Estate it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Millano* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: these Earls being privileged to write themselves *Dei Gratia*, all others *Dei Clementia* only; and *Flanders* being now grown abroad

to so great Esteem, that it was generally used for the *Netherlands*. Finally, by the Marriage of *Margaret* Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip* the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, this great Estate came united to that House, and afterwards was conveyed to that of *Austria*, as shall be shewn hereafter in due time and place. In the mean season let us take a brief survey of

The Earls of *FLANDERS* and *ARTOIS*.

- | | |
|------|--|
| 864 | 1. <i>Baldwin</i> , the first Earl of <i>Flanders</i> . |
| 879 | 2. <i>Baldwin</i> II. |
| 918 | 3. <i>Arnulph</i> , Son of <i>Baldwin</i> the 2d. |
| 960 | 4. <i>Baldwin</i> III. Son of <i>Arnulph</i> . |
| 964 | 5. <i>Arnulph</i> II. Son of <i>Baldwin</i> the 3d. |
| 988 | 6. <i>Baldwin</i> IV. Son of <i>Arnulph</i> . |
| 1029 | 7. <i>Baldwin</i> V. |
| 1067 | 8. <i>Baldwin</i> VI. Earl of <i>Hainault</i> . |
| 1070 | 9. <i>Arnulph</i> III. Earl of <i>Hainault</i> . |
| 1071 | 10. <i>Robert</i> , Son of <i>Baldwin</i> the 5th, and Brother of <i>Baldwin</i> the 6th. |
| 1093 | 11. <i>Robert</i> II. Son of <i>Robert</i> the I. |
| 1111 | 12. <i>Baldwin</i> VII. |
| 1118 | 13. <i>Charles</i> , Son of <i>Canutus</i> , King of <i>Denmark</i> , and <i>Adelize</i> , the Daughter of <i>Robert</i> I. |
| 1127 | 14. <i>William</i> , Son of <i>Robert</i> , the Son of <i>William</i> , the Bastard, Duke of <i>Normandy</i> , and of <i>Alma</i> his Wife, Daughter of <i>Baldwin</i> the 5th. |
| 1132 | 15. <i>Theodorick</i> of <i>Alsace</i> , Nephew of <i>Robert</i> I. by his Daughter <i>Heltrude</i> . |
| 1169 | 16. <i>Philip</i> of <i>Alsace</i> , Son of <i>Theodorick</i> . |
| 1191 | 17. <i>Baldwin</i> VIII. Earl of <i>Hainault</i> , succeeded in Right of <i>Margaret</i> his Wife, Daughter of <i>Theodorick</i> , and Sister of <i>Philip</i> . |
| 1199 | 18. <i>Baldwin</i> IX. Earl of <i>Flanders</i> and <i>Hainault</i> , and Emperor of <i>Constantinople</i> . |
| 1205 | 19. <i>Joan</i> , eldest Daughter of <i>Baldwin</i> the Emperor, first married to <i>Ferdinand</i> , Son of <i>Sancho</i> King of <i>Portugal</i> , and after to <i>Thomas</i> the 3d Son of <i>Thomas</i> Earl of <i>Savoy</i> ; both in her Right called Earls of <i>Flanders</i> . |
| 1244 | 20. <i>Margaret</i> , Sister of <i>Joan</i> , and 2d Daughter of the Emperor <i>Baldwin</i> , Widow of <i>William</i> of <i>Dampierre</i> , governed the Estate of <i>Flanders</i> as long as she lived, admitting <i>William</i> her eldest Son to the Title of Earl, which he continued till his death (being many years before his Mother's) Anno 1255. |
| 1278 | 21. <i>Guy</i> of <i>Dampierre</i> , the second Son of <i>Margaret</i> , admitted to the Title of Earl on the death of his Brother, and to the Estate itself on the death of his Mother. |
| 1304 | 22. <i>Robert</i> III. surnamed of <i>Bethune</i> ; who married <i>Yoland</i> , Heir of <i>Odo</i> of <i>Boulogne</i> , Earl of <i>Nevers</i> , by whom he had a Son call'd <i>Lewis</i> , who married <i>Mary</i> , Daughter and Heir of <i>James</i> Earl of <i>Rethel</i> . |
| 1323 | 23. <i>Lewis</i> , Son of <i>Lewis</i> , and Grandson of <i>Robert</i> the 3d. in right of his Mother Earl of <i>Rethel</i> , in right of his Grandmother Earl of <i>Nevers</i> , and of <i>Flanders</i> in right of his Father and Grandfather. |
| 1347 | 24. <i>Lewis de Malain</i> , Earl of <i>Flanders</i> , <i>Nevers</i> and <i>Rethel</i> , in right of his Father, and of <i>Artois</i> and of <i>Burgundy</i> , in right of his Mother, whom he succeeded at her death, but the time I find not. |
| 1369 | 25. <i>Philip</i> II. surnamed the Hardy, Duke of <i>Burgundy</i> , succeeded in the Earldoms of <i>Flanders</i> , <i>Artois</i> , &c. in right of <i>Margaret</i> his Wife, Daughter and Heir of <i>Lewis de Malain</i> , whom he married solemnly at <i>Gant</i> , An. 1369. Of which <i>Philip</i> and his Successors in these Estates we shall hereafter speak in a place more proper. |

The Earls of *ARTOIS*.

- 1234 1. *Robert of France*, Grandson of *Philip Augustus*, and *Isabel* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the 8th, made the first Earl by *Lewis* the 9th.
- 1245 2. *Robert II.* Son of *Robert*.
- 1302 3. *Otheline*, Earl of *Burgundy*, succeeded in right of *Maud* his Wife, the Daughter of *Robert* the Second.
- 1315 4. *Philip* the Long, King of *France*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, the Daughter and Heir of *Maud* and *Otho*, or *Otheline*.
- 1331 5. *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Philip*.
6. *Philip*, the only Son of *Eudes*, in right of his Mother, Earl of *Artois*, and so called in his Father's life-time.
- 1349 7. *Philip III.* Son of *Philip* the II. and Nephew of *Eudes*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Artois*, who died young and without Issue, Anno 1361.
1361. 8. *Margaret*, Daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and of *Joan* Countess of *Artois* and *Burgundy*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, &c. succeeded *Philip III.* (being then a Widow) in the Earldoms of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, Anno 1361.

The Arms of *Flanders* are *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, langued and armed *Gules*. Those of *Artois* being Semé of Flower-de-Luces *Or*, in a field *Azure*, a File of three Labels, *Gules* charged with as many Castles of the first.

3. *HAINAULT*.

HAINAULT is bounded on the East with *Namur*, on the West with *Flanders*, on the North with *Brabant*, on the South with *Picardy* and *Champagne* in *France*. It was anciently called *Salus Carbonarius*, from the abundance of *Charcoal* made in the Woods and Forests of it; by some Writers of the middle Times, the *Lower Picardy*; by the *Latine* Writers of these Times called *Hamonia*. It seemeth to have taken this new name from the River *Hain* or *Hainat*, which passeth thro' it, and the word *Holt*, signifying a Wood, as being overspread in a manner with the Forests of *Normant*, *St. Amand de Faing*, and that of *Poodsberg*, and then *Hainault* will be quasi *Haine holt*, i. e. a Country of Woods and Forests on the River *Hain*. Thus called originally by the *French*, (as the word importeth;) but by the *Dutch* best known by the name of *Hainegow*, i. e. the Country bordering on *Haine*, as the name signifieth in that Language.

The length thereof is 60 Miles, 48 the breadth; comprehending in that compass 950 Villages, and 24 Towns; in and amongst which there is reckoned one Principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerdoms or *Painies*, 22 Baronies, 26 Abbeys, one Lord Marshal, (besides other Officers of the Prince) descending by Inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The Air hereof is very good, and the Soil Fruitful, by reason the Country is watered with so many Rivers, as the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and several lesser Streams, besides divers Lakes, Marshes, Ponds and Pools, which do much enrich it, the Country abounding in most places with fresh Meadows, and sweet Pastures, good Fruits, and profitable Trees, but especially with great plenty of Corn. Here are also some parts of it notable Mines of Iron and Lead, and excellent Quarries of the best Stone, fit for all kind of Buildings.

The principal of these Towns are, 1. *Mons*, situate at the confluence of *Haine* and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good natural strength unto it; fortified be-

sides with a very strong Wall, three large deep Ditches, and an ancient Castle. The Town is great, beautiful and rich, adorned with sumptuous Buildings, both private and publick, and replenished with wealthy Merchants and Men of Trade; the principal of all the Province, erected into an Earldom by *Charles* the Great, and sometimes used for the style of Earls of *Hainaut*. In this Town is the noble Nunnery of *S. Valdrade*, once a Dutcheis of *Lorraine*, the Nuns whereof are to be Ladies and Gentlewomen of Noble Families, in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns, in the afternoons according to their Birth and Qualities; who when they please may leave the Cloister and be married. The Abbess hath Jurisdiction both in the Town and Country about it, and anciently did put the Earls of *Hainaut* into possession of the State. Another Nunnery like this (but not of such large Revenues) there is at, 2. *Mauberge* on the *Sambre*, a good Town of Merchandise. This Town, and the Earldom thereunto belonging, is still in the Hands of the *Spaniards*, the far greatest part of the Province being subdued by the *French*. In the Year 1678 the latter besieged this City, and were defeated chiefly by the Valour of the *English*, though they were so well Re-entrench'd that they despised their Enemies.

3. *Valenciennes*, seated on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Rouelle*, which make not only in it many pleasant Isles, but pass almost under every Man's House, to the great benefit and delight of the place and People. The sight hereof is so strong by Nature (besides the Fortifications of Art) that on the one side it may be easily made unapproachable by Water, and on the other side is so defended by Hills, that it can hardly be besieged but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large and beautiful Town, especially for publick Building: the chief whereof are the Church of our Lady, built after the ancient manner of Architecture, with sumptuous Arches and goodly Pillars of Marble and Porphyry; the Earl's Palace, and the Town-hall, Buildings of great Magnificence and excellent Workmanship. The Birth-place of *Henry* the Seventh, Emperor of *Germany*, of *Mary* Daughter of *Charles* the Warlike, and of *Froissart* the great French Historian. Finally a Town which, for the Eminence thereof, is governed as a State apart by itself, having under the Jurisdiction of it 3 Towns, 132 Villages, which on occasion of Appeal resort not to the Provincial Council at *Mons*, but the great Council at *Mechlen*. This Town was taken by the *French* in the Year 1677.

4. *Chimay*, upon the River *Blanche*, near a pleasant Forest, which gives the Title of a Prince to the eldest Son of the Duke of *Aerschot*, one of the principal Lords of *Brabant*, who hath here a very goodly Palace.

5. *Halle*, seated on the *Sonne*, which runs through it, a place of great Credit amongst the *Papists*, by reason of an Image of the blessed Virgin famed for many Miracles. Of which see *Lipsius* on that subject.

6. *Beauvais* or *Bavay*, an old Town, at a Pillar whereof begin all the ways leading into *France*, made of Paved-stones by *Brunehaut*, the Wife of *Sigebert* King of *Metz* and *Austrasia*, who with *Fridegonde*, the Wife of *Chilperick*, and *Katharine Medicis*, the Wife of *Henry* the Second, are said to be the Three Furies of *France*.

7. *Landrevie*, on the River *Sambre*, famous for the notable resistance which it made to *Charles* the Fifth, 1543.

8. *Marienburg*, built by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*, Governess here for the said *Charles*, Anno 1524. to serve as a Bulwark against *France*, on which it Frontiereth. Surrendered by the *Spaniards* to the *French* by the *Pyrenean* Treaty, but dismantled.

9. *Philip-Ville*, built and well fortified for the same Reason by King *Philip* the Second. Surrendered by the last mentioned Treaty to the *French*.

10. *Bonchain*, upon the *Scheld*, in the County of *Ostrianand*, which County is the Title of the first Son of *Hainaut*; and by that name *William* the eldest Son of *Albert* Earl of *Hainaut* and *Holland*, was admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the Second. Under the *French*.

11. *Conde*, a good little Town seated on the *Scheld*, the Moiety whereof

whereof belonged heretofore to the House of *Montpensier* in France; as, 12. *Enghein*, a Town of great Trade for Tapestry, to the House of *Vendosme*: from whence the Princes of *Conde*, and Dukes of *Enghein*, do derive their Titles. This Town was taken by the French in 1655, and lost in 1656, but was retaken in 1676, and is still in their Hands. 13. *Beaumont*, upon the knap of a goodly Hill, whence it hath the name; belonging at the present to the Dukes of *Aerschot*, but anciently the Partage of the second Son of the Earls of *Hainault*. 14. *Bins*, or *Binche*, on a branch of the River *Hain*, one of the Jointure-Towns of the Countesses of *Hainault*, much beautified and made a place of Pleasures by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*, to whom it was given by *Charles* the Fifth, (commonly called the *Queen's Paradise*) but burnt and utterly destroy'd by the French, Anno 1554. 15. *Aeth*, seated on both sides of the *Dender*; a little, but a pleasant and wealthy Town; here being held the Staple of Linnen for all this Country, and the Cloth here sold amounting to 200000 Crowns per Annum. This last is yet in the Hands of the *Spaniards*.

As for the History of *Hainault*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Nervii*, the most valiant and most potent People of all the *Gauls*, possessed not only of this Province, but of the whole Earldom of *Namur*, and some part of *Flanders*, able to bring, and *de facto* did bring into the Field, when the *Belga* mustered up their united Forces against *Julius Caesar*, no fewer than 50000 fighting Men. Won from the *Romans* by the French, they became a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, continuing so till the death of *Burnulph*, discomfited and slain in battel by *Dagobert* sole King of the French, whom his Father in his Life-time had made Duke of *Ardenne*, and designed unto the Conquest of it. But the Fury of the War being over, the Parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant* which belonged unto it elapsed upon other Houses, and the rest allotted out amongst his Children, *Alberic*, surnamed the *Orphelin*, one of his younger Sons, was by *Sigebert* King of *Metz* or *Austrasia*, enfeoffed of this Country, by the Name and Title of Earl of *Hainault*. Twice this Estate was added or united to that of *Flanders*. 1. In the Person of *Baldwin* V. Earl of *Flanders*, succeeding hereunto in right of *Richild* his Wife, Daughter of *Regnier* the Third. 2. By the Marriage of *Baldwin* the Sixth of *Hainault* with *Margaret* Countess of *Flanders*, Sister and Heir of *Philip* of *Alsace*, Earl of *Flanders*. But being divided the first time by the Usurpation of *Flanders*, wrested from *Arnulph* the Third by his Uncle *Robert*, and the second time by the Intrusion of *John de Avesnes*, natural Son of *Margaret* the second Daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, into the Estate and Earldom of *Hainault*; it was finally annexed to *Holland* by the Marriage of *John de Avesnes* to *Adelize* or *Aleide*, Daughter and (at the last) Heir of *Florence*, the Fourth Earl of *Holland*, *Zeland*, &c. From which it never was divided, till they were both incorporated into that of *Burgundy*.

The Earls of HAINAULT.

1. *Alberic*, one the younger Sons of *Brunulph* Earl of *Ardenne*.
2. *Waultier*, Son of *Alberic*.
3. *Waultier* II. Son of *Waultier* the first.
4. *Waultier* III. Son of *Waultier* the second.
5. *Albon*, in right of his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Waultier* the third.
6. *Albon* II. Son of the said *Albon* by that Wife.
7. *Manassier*, Son of *Albon* the second.
8. *Regnier*, Son of *Manassier*.
9. *Regnier* II. Son of *Regnier* the first.
10. *Regnier* III. Son of *Regnier* the second.
11. *Baldwin* V. of *Flanders*, and the first of that name in *Hainault*, succeeded in Right of *Richild* his Wife, the sole Daughter to *Regnier* the third.

- 1070 12. *Arnulph*, Son of *Baldwin* and *Richild*, deposed of his Estate and Life by his Uncle *Robert*, who seized on the Earldom of *Flanders*.
- 1071 13. *Baldwin* II. Brother of *Arnulph*, succeeded in *Hainault*.
14. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Baldwin* the second.
15. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Baldwin* the third.
16. *Baldwin* V. Son of *Baldwin* the fourth.
17. *Baldwin* VI. of *Hainault*, Son of *Baldwin* the fifth, and the eighth of that Name in *Flanders*, into which also he succeeded in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Sister and Heir of *Philip* of *Alsace*, Earl of *Flanders*.
- 1199 18. *Baldwin* VIII. of *Hainault*, and IX. of *Flanders*, Emperor of *Constantinople*.
- 1205 19. *Joan*, Countess of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, first married to *Ferdinand* of *Portugal*, and then to *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*.
- 1244 20. *Margaret* the younger Sister of *Joan*, married to *William* of *Bourbon*, Lord of *Dampierre*, by whom she had *William* and *Guy*, both Earls of *Flanders*.
21. *John de Avesnes*, base Son of *Margaret*, begot before her Marriage by *Buschart* her Guardian the Prior of *St. Peters* in *L. Isle*, by Force and Fraud extorted *Hainault* from his Brethren born in lawful Wedlock, and married *Aleide* Daughter and Heir of *Florence*, the 4th Earl of *Holland*; whose Successors in both Estates we shall meet with there, and amongst them with *William* II. Father of *Queen Philippa*, Wife of *Edward* III. one of the most considerable of all the number.

The Arms hereof are quarterly *Flanders* and *Holland*.

4. The Bishoprick of CAMBRAY.

Southward from *Hainault* lieth the Bishoprick of *CAMBRAY*, containing a goodly Town and Territory, reckoned of anciently as a part of *Hainault*, now a State distinct; rather confederate with the Princes of the *Netherlands*, than subject to them.

The principal City hereof is *Cambray* (called in *Latine* *Cameracum*) seated on both sides of the River *Scheld*, a fair, goodly and mighty City, full of People, many of which are rich Merchants, but all of them industrious, especially in making that fine linnen Cloth from hence called *Cameras*, or *Cambrick*. The private Buildings are very fair, but the publick much fairer, especially the Monasteries and other Churches, of which the most remarkable is that of our Lady, an ancient and sumptuous Fabrick, and the See Episcopal; from whence the Country and Territory hereunto adjoining is call'd *Cambresis*, in which are divers Villages and Places of importance. The chief of which are, 1. *Chastellum Cambresis*, six Leagues from the City, remarkable for the Treaty held there betwixt *France* and *Spain*, Anno 1559. in which a Peace was happily settled amongst all the chief Princes of Christendom, after a long and tedious War between those Kings and the Confederates of each: and before that for the Confederacy there made by the said Kings of *France* and *Spain*, the Emperor, the Pope, and many of the Princes of *Italy*, against the Seignoury of *Venice*, Anno 1508. called the *League of Cambray*. 2. *Avesnes le sec*, (so called to distinguish it from *Avesnes* in *Hainault*) near which are digged excellent white Stones for building, little inferior unto Marble.

This Bishoprick was Founded in the Person of *S. Diogenes*, a *Grecian* born, Anno 390, or thereabouts: whose Successors in tract of time became so potent, that at the last the Bishop hereof became both the Lord Spiritual and Temporal of the Town and Territory, honoured with the Title of a Duke, and Prince of the Empire, and was in the end made an Archbishop by Pope *Paul* the Fourth, Anno 1562. And as for the City of *Cambray*,

it was made Imperial by the German Emperors, afterwards by Henry the Fifth, given in Protection to Robert of Jerusalem, Earl of Flanders; and finally settled and confirmed on all his Successors by the Emperor Frederick, Anno 1164. Which notwithstanding the French finding it convenient for them, divers times possessed it: but governing with too great Insolence, they were driven out by the People in the time of Lewis the Eleventh, and the Town yielded voluntarily unto Maximilian, Governour of these Countries for his Son Philip. Charles the Fifth, in the Year 1543, built a strong Citadel in it, pretending that he did it for defence of the Town against the French, but indeed to keep it for himself. After this it was taken by the Duke of Alençon, (Brother of Henry the Third of France) then Governour of the Netherlands, Anno 1582. but regained not long after by the Spaniards, the Inhabitants giving up the Town for want of Victuals. Since that continually possessed by the Spaniards, and by them strongly Garrison'd; but so, that the People still enjoy their ancient Privileges, and are govern'd by their own Laws and Bishops, as in former times. In the Year 1677, Lewis the XIV. the present King of France, after a sharp Defence took this City, and by the Treaty of Nimmeghen had the Possession of it yielded to him.

5. N A M U R.

THE Earldom of NAMUR hath on the East Hainault, on the West the Bishoprick of Liege, on the North Brabant, and on the South Luxemburg; so called from Namur the chief Town of it; *Namuricum* and *Namurcensis Comitatus* in our Latine Writers. The Country is very small, containing only 182 Villages, and four Walled Towns, but plentiful of all Commodities, and replenished with a Loyal and Industrious People. Particularly the Air hereof is very wholesome; the Country water'd with many Rivers and pleasant Brooks (amongst which the Sambre and the Maes) which, besides the benefit of Portage, yield great plenty of Fish. The Hills, whereof it hath not many, are cloathed with Woods, abounding with all kind of Fowl and Vemson; the Valleys eminently fruitful of all sorts of Grain, rich Mines of Lead, Quarries of Marble of all colours, as also of Porphyry or Jasper, and great plenty of Coal. In Mines of Iron so abounding, and that continually hammer'd by a painful People, that Vulcan's Forge may seem to be restored to the World again and seated here; which as it makes the People Wealthy, so it keeps them from Idleness. And as for the Nobility they are generally Valiant, given to all military Exercises fit for their Degrees, and very affectionate to their Princes; The greatest Vertue of a Subject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was said; that is to say, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where resideth the Council for the Country, from which lieth no Appeals but to Mechlin only. Seated it is between two Hills on both sides of the Sambre, which doth there fall into the Meuse. This City is rich, inhabited for the most part by the Nobility, defended with a strong Castle, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, founded here in the Church of S. Albin, Anno 1539. Not far off in the Villages of Ardenne and Monstier are two Nunneries of Ladies, like those of Mons and Maubenge, spoken of in Hainault. 2. *Bovines*, upon the Meuse, sacked by the French, anno 1554. since repaired and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a small Town, but of most exact Fortifications, built by Charles the Fifth, anno 1555. to oppose the French, who had then possessed themselves of Marienburg, a Town of Hainault. 4. *Valencourt*, a little Town, but standing in a goodly and fruitful Country. Of the Villages the chief is Douc, seated on the Meuse or Maes, fortified with a strong Castle, and honoured with the Title of a Viscounty, 2. *Floren*, 3. *Pesere*, and 4. *Sanjon*, of much Beauty and Greatness.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were a part

of the Nervii. It was first made an Earldom by some of the Descendents of the Sons of Clodion, the second King of the French, who being dispossessed of their Father's Kingdom by Meroveus, the Master of his Horse (to whom he had committed the Guardianship or Tutelage of them) were forced to betake themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of Ardenne and the parts adjoining, where they founded the great Earldoms of Ardenne and Moselle, as before is said, divided in succeeding times into many parcels, of which this is one. By what and how many Earls this Earldom was possessed, I am yet to learn, the Estate being small, and consequently the Princes of it not much considerable. They were allied to the Royal House of France, by the Marriage of Albert Earl hereof with Iminegrade, Daughter of Charles of France, the first Duke of Lorraine: and after unto the House of Flanders, by the Marriage of N. the Daughter and Heir of Lorraine, the last Earl of that Race, to Henry the second, Son of Baldwin the eighth of Flanders, and Brother of Baldwin Earl of Flanders, and the first Emperor of the Latines in Constantinople, whom he succeeded in that Empire. After whose death it came by Yoland his Daughter to Peter Earl of Arverne, who succeeded also in the Empire, and after his decease to Philip his younger Son. But he deceasing without Issue, and Robert his elder Brother reigning in Constantinople, it was seized on by Philip the Brother of Henry, who, to assure themselves thereof, took to Wife Mary Daughter of Philip Augustus King of France, by a Niece or Cousin of this Philip it was conveyed in Marriage to Henry Earl of Luxemburg, (the Father by a former Wife of Henry the seventh, Emperor and Earl of Luxemburg) and finally brought back again to the House of Flanders, by the Marriage of Guy of Dampierre Earl of Flanders, with Isabel Daughter of that Henry by the Heir of Namur, and in his Issue it continued (for ought I can find) till it was swallowed up with the rest of the Belgick Provinces, by the House of Burgundy. So that the highest we can go in search of the Earls of Namur, is to the time of Hugh Capet and Charles of Lorraine, which was 540 Years after the coming in of the Sons of Clodion. From which time downwards the Succession is confused and broken, and towards the latter end discontinued for 140 Years. Such as are left upon Record I have drawn together (not without much trouble) in as good order as I could, and here present them in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of N A M U R.

1. *Albert*, Co-temporary of Hugh Capet, spoken of before.
2. *Godfrey* the Son of *Albert*, and Father of *Alice*, Wife of Baldwin the fifth of Hainault, and Mother of Baldwin the sixth of Hainault, and the eighth of Flanders.
3. *Peter*, the Son or Brother of Godfrey.
4. *Henry* the second, Son of Baldwin the eighth of Flanders, in right of N. his Wife, the Heir of Peter, Emperor of Constantinople, also on the death of Baldwin the 9th, his elder Brother.
- 1216 5. *Peter II.* Son-in-Law of Henry Emperor of Constantinople, and Earl of Namur.
- 6, 7. *Philip*, the younger Son of Peter, and John the elder Brother of Henry, both taking to themselves the Title of Earl of Namur, the one at Constantinople, the other in the Netherlands, and both deceasing without Issue.
8. *Philip II.* Brother of John and Henry without Issue also.
9. *John II.* surnam'd of Dampierre, the third Son of William of Dampierre, by Margaret Countess of Flanders, Daughter and Heir of the Emperor Baldwin, succeeding by the gift of his Mother, challenging the disposing of it as next Heir of Philip the second, or in the right paramount

paramount of the Earldom of *Flanders*, enjoyed upon a better Title by.

10. *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*; and elder Brother of *John* the second, in right of *Isabel* his Wife, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg* by the Heir of *Namur*; but I neither find her Name nor Parents.
11. *John* III. Son of *Guy* and *Isabel*.
12. *John* IV. Son of *Guy* by a former Wife, the Brother of *John* III. by the whole Blood, being absent or unfriended, and so put beside.
13. *Guy* II. the Brother of *John* the Fourth by the same Venter.
14. *John* V. Son of *Guy* the second, who in the Year 1307. married a Niece of *Lewis* the Ninth of *France*, by *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, a younger Son.
15. *John* VI. who in the Year 1429 sold his Estate to Duke *Philip* the Good, to be enjoy'd by him on the death of *Theodore*, the next Heir here of, infirm, and (as it seems) without hope of Children.
16. *Theodore*, or *Theodorick*, the last Earl of *Namur*, after whose death Duke *Philip* entred on this Earldom by the former Contract, and as the next Heir of the House of *Flanders* it continuing ever since unto his Posterity.

The Arms hereof are *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, bruised with a Bend *Gules*.

The *Spaniards* are possessed entirely of this Earldom.

6. LUXEMBURG.

LUXEMBURG is bounded on the East with the *Moselle* and the Land of *Triers*, on the West with the *Meuse* or *Maes* and a branch of the Forest of *Ardenne*, on the North with *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and a part of *Hainault*, and on the South with the Dutchy of *Lorraine*; so called from the Castle near the Town of *Luxemburg*, selected by *Sigefride* the first Earl hereof for his Seat and Residence.

The whole is divided into two parts: the Eastern part being called *Favanne*, fruitful of Corn, and yielding withal some Wines, some Mines, and many excellent Quarries of goodly Stone: the Western called *Ardenne*, a remainder of that spacious Forest, which sometimes over-shadowed all this Country, barren of Corn, but very plentiful of Venison, and having of Fowl good store.

The People of this Country are not all of one Language: those nearer *Germany*, as in *Luxemburg*, *Arlun*, *Rodemark*, *Theonville* and the rest on that side speaking the *Dutch*; as those of *Montmedy*, *Marville*, *Dampvillers*, with the rest bordering on *France*, do a corrupt or broken *French*, in which regard the Pleadings held before the Council residing in *Luxemburg* are made in both Languages, that so they may be understood by all that have business there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province than in any other of the Seventeen) speak both Tongues perfectly. A breed of Men full of Vertue, Courtesie, and Hospitality towards one another, and of great Truth and Faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worst Landlords in all these Countries; governing their Subjects and Tenants like the Peasants of *France*, contrary to the use and Liberties of the rest of the *Netherlands*. Both sorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both Law and Lawyers, and for the most part end their Controversies amongst themselves without any Process.

The whole Country containeth in compass about 70 Leagues, or 200 *Italian* Miles, in which are comprehended 23 walled Towns, and 1168 Burroughs and Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Luxemburg* or *Lucemburg*, built in the place where anciently stood the *Augusta Veromanduorum* of *Ptolomy*; and took this new name *quasi Lucis burgum*, from the Image of the Sun there worshipped; seated on the *Alfinuntius* or *Alze*,

which runneth through it; large and of a strong situation, but not very well built, nor yet recovered of the Spoils which the long Wars betwixt the *French* and the *Spaniard* brought upon it before the Treaty of *Cambray*. However it is the chief Town of the Province, honoured with the Residence of the Council hereof, and the Sepulchre of *John* King of *Bohemia*, slain in the Battel of *Cressy* against the *English*, Anno 1348. This City was taken by the *French* in the Year 1684. 2. *Arlun*, on the top of an Hill, so called *quasi Ara Lunæ*, from an Altar consecrated to the Moon in the time of Paganism. 3. *Theonville*, on the *Moselle*, over which it hath a goodly Bridge; a Frontier Town near *Metz* and the Border of *Lorraine*, and for that cause made marvellous strong; but taken by the *French*, anno 1558, and restored the next Year by the Peace of *Cambray*. Retaken by the *French* the Year 1644. 4. *Bostonack*, a fair Town, and very well traded, commonly called the *Paris* of *Ardenne*, in which part it standeth. 5. *Montmedy*, on an high Hill, at the foot of which runneth the River *Chiers*. Taken by the *French* in the Year 1657. 6. *Dampvillers*, once a very strong place; both taken and ransacked by the *French*, anno 1552. 7. *Marville*, upon the *Chiers*, the one half whereof belongeth to the Duke of *Lorraine*, the other to the King of *Spain* as Duke of *Luxemburg*, for which cause it is called *la Ville Commune*. 8. *Rock de March*, fortified with a strong Castle. 9. *Tvois*, a place once of great importance, sacked by the *French*, anno 1552, and restored by the Treaty of *Cambray*, on condition it should never more be walled. 10. *La Fume*, on the *Chiers*, a Town of the same Condition.

In the skirts of this Country towards *France* standeth the Principality of *Sedan*, extended all along the Banks of the River *Maes*, from the Borders of *Lorraine* on the South, to the great Forest of *Ardenne* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* on the North: A small, but very fair Estate, of fruitful Soil, and beautified with many rich Villages, and some Towns of note; the principal whereof are, 1. *Jamais* upon the borders of *Lorraine*, by the Duke whereof it was taken after a long season from the Lady *Charlotte*, the last Heir-general of the House of *Mars*, anno 1585. and laid unto that Dukedom as a part thereof. A place of great importance, and therefore much contended for by each Pretender. 2. *Donchiery*, a strong Town of War, bordering on *Tirascie* in *Picardy*, to which by some it is ascribed. 3. *Sedan*, in *Latin* call'd *Sedunum* ad *Mosam*, because situate on the Banks of the *Maes* or *Mosa*, the usual Residence of the Prince: a fine neat Town, well fortified, and planted with 80 Brass pieces of Ordnance; honoured with a Seat of Learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar-School and an University, is in the Criticism of these Times called a *Schola illustris*, to which Men may send their Children to learn good Letters, though they can take in them no Degrees, that being a Privilege reserved only to the Universities. So that these Schools may be somewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Westminster*, *Winchester* and *Eaton*, but that the younger Students in these last named are more restrained to Rhetorick and Grammar than in the other, though these more liberally endowed for the encouragement and reward of Learning than all the *Schola illustris* of either *Germany*. 4. *Mousson*, a Town of great strength and consequence on the River *Maes*, upon some jealousies of State garrisoned by the *French*, as also in *Sedan* it self, and most of the other good Towns belonging unto this Principality; but so that the Revenues of it, execution of Justice, and all other Rights of Sovereignty, are still enjoyed, as formerly, by the Lords thereof. This small Principality in the Year 1642 was forced to submit to the Crown of *France*.

This Estate anciently was a part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, from which it was dismembred for the Portion of some younger Prince, at such time as *Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon* succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, after *Charles* and *Orto* the first Dukes; or else excepted and reserved by *Godfrey*, surnamed of *Bouillon*, Duke

Duke of *Lorrain*, and King of *Jerusalem*, when he sold the Dukedom of *Bouillon* to the Bishop of *Liege*. By many mean Conveyances and Alterations of the Owners it came at last to the House of *Aremberg*, a Family of great Wealth and Power in *Westphalen*, (a Province of *Germany* not far off) by the Heir-general of which House it was brought in Marriage to *Engelbert* Earl of *Mark*, about the Year 1330, from whom descended *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Sovereign of *Sedan* with the Towns annexed, who succeeding his Mother in the Estates of *Sauss* and *Florence*, Fiefs holden of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, and eagerly affecting to unite the Estates together, (as they had been anciently) purchased the Town and Title of Duke of *Bouillon* of *Eberhard* Earl of *Mark* his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liege*, and consequently Duke of *Bouillon* also. Proud of his Honour, and being somewhat too stiff in maintaining the Rights of his new Dukedom against a Sentence passed in the Imperial Chamber, in a Suit there depending betwixt two of his Vassals, he took up Arms against the Empire, with far more Courage than Discretion. For being in the course of that War worsted by *Charles V.* (for whom he was too weak an Enemy) the Town of *Bouillon*, being taken by the conquering Emperor, was afterwards restored to the Bishops; and nothing but the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon* left to the Princes of *Sedan*. And that he might be able to hold *Sedan*, this *Robert* was fain to return again to the Protection of the *French*, (as his Ancestors from the time of *Charles VIII.* had done before, and died anno 1535, leaving his Titles and Estate unto *Robert* his Son, one of the Marshals of *France*, whose Grandson, called also *Robert*, being a dear Friend and Companion of *Henry* of *Bourbon* King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France* also, dying without Issue at *Geneva*, anno 1588, committed to him the disposal of his Estates, and of the Lady *Charlotte* his only Sister. And he so well discharged his Trust, that (having settled his own Affairs) he gave the Lady in Marriage to *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turenne*, in *France*, (one who had done him very good service in the course of his long War against the Leaguers) and with her the possession of *Sedan*, and the Title of *Bouillon*; whose Posterity do still enjoy it. The whole Succession of these Princes we shall find in *Bouillon*, of which more anon.

But to return again unto the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, it was at first a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, dismembred from it in the time of the Emperor *Orto* the first, by *Sigefride* the Son of *Ricinus* Prince thereof, who, in the division of that Estate amongst his Brethren, had this for his Portion, with the Title of Earl. Of his Successors there is little to be found upon good Record in a constant order of Succession, until the time of *Henry I.* Father of *Henry II.* Emperor of *Germany*, and they of a Royal Progeny of Kings and Princes; two of the which are most considerable, tho' all of them of eminent quality in their several times, viz. 1. *Henry*, elected and crowned Emperor by the name of *Henry VII.* said to be poisoned by a Friar in the holy Chalice, to prevent some Designs he had against the Pope, in asserting the Imperial Power in *Italy*. 2. *John*, the Son of this *Henry*, chosen King of *Bohemia*, in regard of his Marriage with *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Winceflaus* King thereof, the possession of which Realm he left unto his Posterity, advanced unto a Dukedom by *Charles IV.* the eldest Son of this *John*, in the Person of *Winceflaus* his younger Brother. What else concerns it we shall find in this following Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of *LUXEMBURG*.

1. *Sigefride*, the Son of *Ricinus*, Prince of *Ardenne*, the first Earl of *Luxemburg*.
2. *Gilbert*, the Father of *Ogine*, Wife of *Baldwin* the Fourth of *Flanders*; but whose Son I find not.
3. *Godfrey*, Earl of *Namur*, was also Earl of

Luxemburg by the right of Marriage, Father of *Agnes* the Wife of *Simon* the second Duke of *Lorrain*.

4. *Conrade*, perhaps the Son of *Godfrey* by the Daughter of *Luxemburg*, Father of *Catharine*, Wife of *Matthew* the second, Duke of *Lorrain*.
5. *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg*, slain in the Quarrel of *Rainold* Earl of *Geldres*, contending with *John* Duke of *Brabant* for the Dutchy of *Limbourg*.
6. *Henry II.* Son of *Henry I.* by means of his Brother *Baldwin*, Elector of *Triers*, was chosen Emperor of the *Germans*, the seventh of that name, anno 1308, first crowned at *Aken*, and afterwards at *Rome*, one of the last Emperors that meddled in the Affairs of *Italy*.
- 1313 7. *John*, Son of *Henry II.* Earl of *Luxemburg*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Winceflaus* the elder, King of *Bohemia*; upon which he was upon that Marriage elected and crowned King, anno 1311. in the Life of his Father; slain by the *English* in the Battle of *Cressy*, anno 1346.
- 1346 8. *Winceflaus*, the younger Son of *John*, created Duke of *Luxemburg* by his elder Brother *Charles IV.* Emperor and King of *Bohemia*.
- 1383 9. *Winceflaus II.* eldest Son of the said *Charles IV.* Emperor and King of *Bohemia* also, succeeded his Uncle in the Dukedom.
- 1419 10. *Sigismund*, Brother of *Winceflaus*, succeeded *Winceflaus* in all his Estates; to which he added the Crown of *Hungary*, by the Marriage of *Mary*, Daughter of King *Lewis I.*
11. *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *John* Duke of *Goritz*, (a Town of *Lusatia*) the Brother of *Sigismund*, by the gift of *Sigismund* her Uncle, being then alive, the better to fit her for the Bed of *Anthony* of *Bourgogn*, Duke of *Brabant*, after whose decease she married *John III.* Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. But having no Issue by either of them, she sold her Interest in this Dukedom to Duke *Philip* the Good.
12. *Philip* the Good succeeded on the Sale aforesaid made by the said *Elizabeth*, in pursuance of the Contract and Agreement made at her first Marriage, for settling this Estate in the House of *Burgundy*. Of whom, and his Successors in these *Belgick* Provinces, we shall speak hereafter.

The Arms are *B.* six Barrulets *A.* supporting a Lion *G.* crowned and armed *Or.*

7. L. I M B O U R G.

THE greatest of the Estates of *Belgium* for extent of Territory, at the time of their incorporating in the House of *Burgundy*, was that of *Brabant*, comprehending five of the 19 Provinces; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Limbourg* and *Brabant*, the Marquitate of the Holy Empire, and the Seignoury of *Mechlin*, with the Sovereignty of *Liege* or *Luxekland*.

L. I M B O U R G hath on the East the Dukedom of *Gulick*, or *Juliers*, in High *Germany*, on the West the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*. The Soil is fruitful of all necessary Commodities, excepting Wines, the want whereof is recompensed with most excellent Wheat, great store of Fewel, and plenty of the best Iron Mines in all these Countries: all which Commodities it hath of so great excellency in their several kinds, that it is said of them proverbially, That *their Bread is better than Bread, their Fire hotter than Fire, and their Iron harder than Iron*. It is also well stored with Medicinal Simples, and enriched with a Mine of Copperas, (by *Pliny* called *Lapis aerofus*, lib. 34. c. 10.) which being incorporated with

Brass

Brass makes Lattin, and encreaseth the Brass by one third part. *Lapis arosus multum aris habet, & ex eo fusio fit as,* as that Author hath it.

It is one of the least of the *Belgick* Provinces, containing in it but 125 Villages, and no more than five walled Towns or Cities: viz. 1. *Limbourg*, which gives name to the whole Estate, pleasantly seated on a Hill amongst shady Woods, under which runneth the River *Wesdo*; which, having watered the whole Country, emptieth it self into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very strong Castle, mounted upon a steep precipice, of no easie access. This City was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1632, after which it was recovered by the *Spaniards*, from whom it was taken by the *French* in 1675, dismantled in 1677, and restored to the *Spaniards* again in 1678. 2. *Valkenburg*, called by the *French* *Fauquemont*, a reasonable fair Town, with a large Territory, two Dutch miles from *Maestricht*; conquered from *Reynold*, Lord hereof, by *John* the third, Duke of *Brabant*. Now under the *Hollanders*. 3. *Dalem*, a little Town with a Castle, the Territory thereof extending beyond the *Maes*, conquered by *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, of that name the second. 4. *Rhode le Duc*, a little old Town with as old a Castle, half a League from *Valkenburg*. 5. *Carpen*, situate between *Gulick* and *Collen*, beautified with a Collegiate Church and a strong Castle, in which there is a Governor with a good Garrison for defence of the place. Each of these Towns hath Jurisdiction on the parts adjoining, but with Appeal unto the Chancery at *Brabant*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract, and the Bishoprick of *Liege* adjoining, were the *Eburones*. When it was first made an Earldom, I am yet to seek. Most probable it is, that lying within the Verge of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, it was at first a member of that Earldom also, dismembred from it for the Portion of some younger Son, as *Luxemburg* and *Namur* were, or seiz'd on by some strong Pretender, (as *Gulick* was) when *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorraine*, and the direct Heirs of the House of *Ardenne*, were absent in the Wars of the *Holy Land*. But whensoever, and by whomsoever it was made an Earldom, certain it is, that of an Earldom it was made a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, anno 1172. *Henry*, one of the Dukes hereof, married his Daughter *Margaret* to *Godfrey* the third, Duke of *Brabant*, which gave that House some colour to pretend unto it; backed with a better Title on the death of another *Henry*, the last Duke of *Limbourg*, whose next Heir, *Adolph*, sold it to *John*, Duke of *Brabant*; pretending to it in the right of the former Marriage, anno 1293. But *Reynold* Earl of *Cieldres*, thinking himself to have a better Title than *Adolph*, in right of *Ermingrade* his Wife, the Daughter of *Herman*, a late Duke hereof, put in his plea, and challeng'd it by force of Arms: but being vanquished and taken Prisoner by the said Duke *John* in the Battel of *Worancan*, was fain, for his Release, to release all his Claim and Title to the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, after that quietly enjoy'd by the Dukes of *Brabant*, till they fell both together to the House of *Burgundy*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Lion Barrie of ten pieces, *Or* and *Gules*.

8. LUYCK-LAND, or, the Bishoprick of LIEGE.

Westward of *Limbourg*, but a far mightier Estate than it, lieth *LUYCK-LAND*, as the *Dutch*, or the Bishoprick of *LIEGE*, *Leodensis*, as the *Latin* and *French* Writers call it; anciently under the Protection of the Dukes of *Brabant*, and afterwards of the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*, as Lords of that Country. By some it is accompted of and described as a part of *Germany*; but for the reasons before-mentioned, I shall place it here. It is environed on all sides with the *Belgick* Provinces, that is to say, with the Dukedom of *Limbourg* and the Earldom of *Namur* on the East, with *Brabant* on the North and West, on the South with *Luxemburg*.

The Air hereof is very whollom, and the Earth as fruitful, abounding with all kind of Grain and Fruits with some store of Wine; and as for Flesh, Fish, Fowl and Venison, it hath very great plenty, and that too of an excellent taste: less fertile it is in such parts hereof as lie towards *Luxemburg*, in which it is most sweetened with Hills, and over-spread with shady Woods, remainders of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, within which it stood. But the chief Riches of this Country is under Ground, consisting in Mines of Lead and Iron, and some few of Gold; Quarries of Alabaster, mingled with all sorts of Marble; rich veins of Brimstone, and unexhaustible Pits of Coals; which last it hath in such abundance, that there is digged within the compass of one League of the City of *Liege*, not only sufficient for that great City, but so much over-plus, as being sold at mean prices about the Country, amounts unto 100000 Ducats of yearly value. The Coal much sweeter than elsewhere, and of nature contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with Water, and quenched with Oil, and the strong favour of it taken off by casting Salt on it.

The whole Country containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800 Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Liege*, or *Luyck*, (in *Latin*, *Leodium*) situate in a pleasant Valley environ'd with Hills, the *Meuse* entering it in two branches, accompanied with four lesser Riverets, which make in it many delightful Islands. The compass of it is about four Miles; the ordinary Buildings very fair, all built of Stone; the Bishop's Palace a magnificent and sumptuous piece; the Churches in number forty, of which eight are Collegiate, 32 Parochial, all of them for their Riches and Beauty excelling all in any City of *France* or *Germany*. Besides these, there are so many Covents, Monasteries and Religious Houses about the Town, that taking all together they amount to an Hundred, all of them of such fair Revenues, so well endowed, and the Religious Persons thereof so great Authority, that it is called the *Paradise of Priests*, and that deservedly. It is also an University of good Antiquity, wherein were Students at one time 9 Kings Sons, 24 Dukes Sons, 29 Earls Sons, besides Barons and Gentlemen; the greatest part of which were Canons of the Church of *S. Lambert*, which is the Cathedral of the City. Yet notwithstanding it hath tasted of the malice of Fortune as well as others, being first destroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken, and once destroy'd by *Charles* of *Burgundy*, anno 1468. Subject it is unto the Bishop as Lord Temporal of it; from whom (being long since made an Imperial City) there lieth an Appeal to the Chamber of *Spire*. In the Year 1675 the *French* took this City by Surprise, and perceiving they could not keep it, in 1676 pulled down the Castle of it. In the Year 1616 the Bishop of this Diocess founded here a College for the *English* Jesuits. 2. *Dinant*, upon the *Meuse*, near *Namur*, of very great Traffick, till destroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy* in the same Year with *Liege*; hardly recover'd of which Wound; it was again sack'd by King *Henry* II. of *France*, anno 1548. 3. *Nussey*, upon the *Meuse* or *Alou*, also, a League from whence is the fair Nursery of *Thuren*, of the same nature with that of *Mons* and others spoken of before: the like to which there is near, 4. *Bilsen*, another Town of this Bishoprick: the Abbelles of each having the privilege of Coining both Gold and Silver. 5. *Loorz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borcolm*, in the County of *Diofstein*; made a County in the time of *Charles* the Great, the Title and Possession of *Ogier* the Dane, so famous in the History of *Gallen* of *France*, and others of the old Romances. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the Title of a Marquis to the Bishop of *Liege*. 7. *Centron*, or *St. Truden*, a fair Town, so called of the Abbey dedicated to that Saint. 8. *Huy* or *Hoy*, so called of a violent River which there runs into the *Meuse*. 9. *Tungres*, the City of the *Tongri*, which together with the *Eburones* were once the Inhabitants of this Tract; in which are still the Ruines of a Temple consecrated to *Mercurius*: Anciently it was an Episcopal See, translated hence

hence to *Maastricht*, and at last to *Liege*; and in those times so great and of such Renown, that *Atila* the *Hun* destroyed in it 100 Churches; now but a very small Town, and not worth the mentioning but for these Antiquities. Eight Leagues from hence, amongst the shady Thickets of the Forest of *Ardenne*, is, 10. that so celebrated Village, and those famous hot Baths frequented from all the places in *Europe*, called the *Spa*; not so pleasant as wholesome, nor so wholesome as famous. Yet are they good for sundry Diseases, as the Tertian Ague, the Dropsie, the Stone, the Exulceration of the Lungs, the Sciatica, &c. They are of most virtue in *July*, because they are then hottest; and to such as tast them they relish much of Iron, from some Iron Mines, it seemeth, thro' which the Waters run, which feed them. These Baths were of great Fame in the time of *Pliny*, who doth thus describe them: *Tongri Civitas fontem habet insignem, plurimis bullis stillantem ferruginei saporis, quod ipsum non nisi in fine potus intelligitur. Purgat hic corpora, febres tertianas discutit calculorumque vitia.* So he, lib. 31. c. 2. agreeably to the nature of them at this present time.

This Country (not taking the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, though now reckoned as a part thereof, into this account) followed the same Fortunes with the rest of *Belgica*, till the Conquest of it by the *French*, by whom it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*; in the division of which Kingdom between the Kings of *France* and *Germany*, it fell unto the share of the Kings of *France*, as lying almost wholly on the West or *French* side of the River *Maes*, which parted their Possessions in that broken Kingdom. Won from *Lotharius* the *French* King (the last but one of the *Caroline* Race) by *Otho* the 2d. it was by him made part of the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, then by him erected, and continued as a part thereof, till sold by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, to the Bishops of *Liege*, (of which more anon) since which time it hath been the Patrimony of those wealthy Prelates. As for the Bishoprick of *Liege*, it was founded at *Tungres*, as before was said; after the sackage of which City by *Atila*, it was removed anno 498, by *S. Servatius* unto *Maastricht*. But the People of *Maastricht* having martyred *S. Lambert* their Bishop, anno 710, by *Hubert*, his design'd Successor, with the leave of Pope *Constantine*, it was translated to this place, and a Cathedral Church here Founded by the name of *S. Lambert*. His Successors did so well husband their Advantages that they did not only buy the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but the City and Territory of *Liege*, sold unto *Spentus* and *Obertus* successively Bishops of it by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorraine*, at his departure hence to the Holy Land: not much increased since that in Lands, though they be in Titles, the Bishop being stiled a Prince of the Empire, Duke of *Bouillon*, Marquis of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Loerz* and *Hasbain*. Yet are not his ordinary Revenues above 30000 Ducats yearly; his Subjects living very well under him, at easie Rents, and growing for the most part unto good Estates. An argument whereof may be, that when the *Liegeois* had rebelled against *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy* (under whose Protection they were as Dukes of *Brabant*) they bought their Peace of him at the Price of 600000 Florens of the *Rhene*, to be paid in six Years. After which again Rebelling against *Charles*, the Warlike, (as they have been observed to be the most rebellious City in *Europe*, excepting *Gant*) they were able to wage 30000 Men; but not being able to withstand the Forces of their Lord Protector, they fell into that miserable destruction spoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the House of *Austria*: but were counted neutral in Quarrels betwixt the King of *Spain* and the States Confederate, as formerly between the *Spaniards* and the *French*; though many times they suffer in the Contestations.

Southward hereof betwixt it and *Luxemburg*, lieth the Dukedom of *Bouillon*; subject unto the Bishops of *Liege*, but a State distinct, and holden by a different Title.

It taketh up a great part of that Country, which more particularly and specially is called the Forest of *Ardenne*, with the Woods thereof many places over-shadowed; but not unfurnished of fair Towns and wealthy Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Loni*, and, 2. *Musson-Court*, destroyed by *Charles* the Fifth, in his War against *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Duke of *Bouillon*, but, on the Peace ensuing, repair'd again. 3. *Susfi*, and, 4. *Floringe*, Fiefs, as before is said, of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but possessed by the Sovereigns of *Sedan*, since the time that *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Sovereign of *Sedan* had them in Marriage with *Joan* his Wife, the right Heir thereof, from whom came *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, the first Duke of *Bouillon* of that Family. The last a pretty Town, till destroyed by the *French* in the Wars betwixt *Henry* and *Philip* the seconds, Kings of *France* and *Spain*, since passing in account as a principal Village. 5. *Hierk*, in the Forest of *Ardenne*, the cause of the great War betwixt *Charles* the Fifth and *Robert* Duke of *Bouillon*, spoken of before; the Emperor having passed Sentence in behalf of the *Embries*, who laid claim unto it, and *Robert* favouring the Pretensions of the House of *Chinay*. 6. *Bouillon*, built on the side of a Hill near the River *Semois*, a fair large City, and beautified with a goodly Castle on the top of the said Hill, and commanding over a large and goodly Territory, so strong, as well by Art as Nature, that before the use of great Ordnance it was held impregnable; much spoiled in the War betwixt *Charles* the Fifth and *Robert* of *Mark*, and tossed from one Master to another in a little time, for being taken from Earl *Robert* by the power of *Charles*, it was from him gotten by the *French*, anno 1552, and finally restored to the Bishop of *Liege* by the Treaty of *Cambray*, anno 1559, but without prejudice to the Claim and Title of the Prince of *Sedan*. So that there are no fewer than three distinct Families which at this time enjoy the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon*, that is to say, the Bishop of *Liege*, who hath precedency of Title, and the possession of the City; the House of *de la Tour*, who hold *Floringe*, *Susfi*, and some other pieces; and the Heirs-males of the collateral Line of the House of *Mark*, who hold *Lumaine*, *Rochfort*, and some other places, but of less importance. By the Treaty of *Nimwegen* in 1679, That the Dukes of *Bouillon*, who are in possession of it, should peaceably enjoy the same, all Differences being referred to Honorary Arbitrators, and that the Bishops of *Liege* in the mean time should use no Force against the said Dukes.

This Dukedom, once a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, in the division of that Estate betwixt the Children of *Ricvine*, Prince or Earl thereof, fell to the share of *Godfrey* his eldest Son (*Sedan* with its appurtenances then belonging to it) with the Title of Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon*. By *Godfrey* his Son it was united to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, who succeeded into that Estate after *Charles* and *Otho*, and by another *Godfrey* the first Duke of *Lorraine* dismembred from it, and given in Dower with his Sister *Ida*, at her Marriage with *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*. Of these was born the Famous *Godfrey*, commonly called *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, either because he was here educated, or in regard he was Duke hereof before he did attain to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*; who, to provide himself of necessities for the Wars of the Holy Land, (so fortunately conveyed and conducted by him) sold first this Dukedom unto *Obert*, as afterwards the whole Country of *Luxemburg* to *Spentus*, Bishops of *Liege* successively, and their Successors for ever; which though accounted by most Writers for a part of *Luxemburg*, or of the Bishoprick of *Liege*, call it which you will, was notwithstanding held by those great Prelates as a State distinct, and governed under them by the Estates of the Country, from whose Sentence there lay no Appeal. The maintenance of which Privileges, on an Appeal made by the *Embries* unto *Charles* the Fifth, cost *Robert* Earl of *Mark* so dear, who had not long before purchased this Estate of his Brother *Eberhard*, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liege*, as was said before. The

rest of the Story we have had already in our Description of *Sedan*: we will now look upon the Princes which have born these Titles.

The Dukes of *Bouillon* of the House of *Ardenne*.

1. *Godfrey*, the eldest Son of *Ricune*, Prince or Earl of *Ardenne*, the first Earl of *Bouillon*, and Husband of *Matilda*, a Daughter of the Emperor *Otho II*.
2. *Godfrey II*. Son of *Godfrey I*. who in the Year 1004, by adoption of Duke *Otho* his Cousin, and the power of *Henry II*. Emperor, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*.
- 1019 3. *Gozelo*, Brother of *Godfrey II*. Duke of *Lorraine* and *Bouillon*.
- 1044 4. *Godfrey III*. Son of *Gozelo*.
5. *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and *Ida* his Wife, Daughter of *Godfrey III*. by him endow'd at her Marriage with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*.
6. *Godfrey IV*. surnam'd of *Bouillon*, Son of *Eustace* and *Ida*, on the death of his Uncle *Godfrey*, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, anno 1078, and died King of *Jerusalem*. Going unto the Wars of the *Holy Land*, he sold this Dukedom to *Obert* Bishop of *Liege* and his Successors, anno 1096. who did accordingly enjoy it till the Year 1509 or thereabouts; when it was sold by *Everhard* of *Mark* to his Brother *Robert*, of whose Descent and Successors you may take this view, in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Sovereigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon* of the House of *Mark*.

1. *Engelbert*, the ninth Earl of *Mark* in *Germany*, by marrying with the Daughter and Heir of *Aremberg*, added *Sedan*, *Jamais*, &c. to the House of *Mark*.
2. *Everhard*, second Son of *Engelbert* by the Heir of *Aremberg*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
3. *John*, Son of *Everhard*, Earl of *Mark*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
4. *Everhard II*. Brother of *John* Earl of *Mark*, &c.
5. *John II*. Earl of *Mark*, Son of *Everhard II*.
6. *Robert* of *Mark*, the second Son of *John II*. Lord of *Sedan*, his elder Brother *Everhard* succeeding in the Estates of *Aremberg*. He added *Florence* and *Sausi*, Towns of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, to his other pieces.
7. *Robert II*. Son of *Robert I*. Sovereign of *Sedan*, and Duke of *Bouillon*, which Dukedom he purchased of *Everhard* his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liege*.
- 1534 8. *Robert III*. Son of *Robert II*. one of the Marshals of *France*, Sovereign of *Sedan*, and Titulary Duke of *Bouillon*.
- 1556 9. *Henry-Robert*, Son of *Robert III*.
10. *Robert-William*, Son of *Henry-Robert*, zealous in the Reformed Religion, and a great Follower of *Henry* of *Vendosme*, King of *Navarre*, to whom, dying at *Geneva*, anno 1588. he bequeathed the care of his Estates.
11. *Charlotte*, the Siller of *Robert-William*, married by *Henry* of *Navarre* (then King of the *French*) to *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turenne*.
12. *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turenne* in *France*, descended from the Heirs-general of *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* and Duke of *Bouillon*, by Marriage of the Lady *Charlotte*, and the gift of *Henry IV*. of *France*, succeeded in the Sovereignty of *Sedan* and Title of *Bouillon*; a Protestant, and the Founder of the *Schola Illustris* in *Sedan*.

13. *Henry de la Tour*, Son of *Henry* by one of the Daughters of *William* Prince of *Orange*, succeeded his Father in his Estates, but not in his Religion also, which, to ingratiate himself with the *French* King, he exchanged for *Papistry*, made thereupon one of the Marshals of *France*, and now living anno 1648. He was slain in the Year 1675, near *Satzbach* in *Germany*.

9. *BRABANT*. 10. The *MARQUISAT*. And 11. *MECHLIN*.

These I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because they have a long time follow'd the same Fortune, and that the two last do no otherwise differ from the first than the parts from the whole; the *Marquisate* and *Mechlin* being now reckoned as parts of *Brabant*, and included in it.

1. *BRABANT* is bounded on the East with *Luyc-land* or the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the West with the River *Scheld* and a part of *Flanders*, on the North with the *Maes*, which severeth it from *Holland* and *Gelderland*, and on the South with *Hainault*, *Namur*, and a part of *Luyc-land*: so called *quasi* *Brackland*, that is to say, a barren Land, as at first it was; or from the old *Brutus-pantium*, which *Cesar* placeth in this Tract; but from whether of the two is not determined.

The Air hereof is generally very wholesom and good, and the Soil naturally fruitful, excepting *Kempenland*, (being the parts thereof lying towards the North) which being barren of it self, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattle, Soiling the Ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The People live in most freedom, and are the best privileged of any in *Belgium*. A thing for which they are more beholden to the Prince's goodness, than their own great Wits: being noted to be none of the wisest, especially as they grow in age, when most Men learn Wisdom. *Brabant, quo magis senescunt, eo magis stultescunt*, as *Erasmus*.

The length hereof, from *S. Gertruydenburgh* to *Gembours*, North and South, is 22 Dutch or German miles; from *Helmont* to *Bergen op Zoome*, East and West, 20 of the same Miles; the whole compais 80. Within which circuit are contain'd 26 walled Towns and Villages, with Parish-Churches 718; of which the odd 18, called *Franks* or Market-Towns, enjoy the Privileges of walled Towns or Cities, though unwalled themselves.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Hertogen Bosch*, or the *Bosch*, as the Dutch *Bois le Duc*; or *Bolduc*, as the *French*; and *Sylva Ducis*, or *Boscum Ducis*, as the *Latins* call it: each name derived according to their several Languages, from a pleasant Wood, belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*, where the Town now stands, situate on a little River call'd *Dese*, some two Leagues from the *Maes*, near the borders of *Gelderland*. A large and well-built Town, very strongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yearly in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine* 20000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crowns to the Clothier or Draper: Made an Episcopal See, anno 1559, the Cathedral, which is fixed in the Church of *S. John*, being fair and large, and beautified with one of the goodliest Dials in the Christian World. This is the principal Town of *Brabant* (properly and distinctly so called) comprehending under it the four Countries of *Kempenland*, *Maessland*, *Peelland*, and *Ostervick*; and was taken by the Confederate States from the King of *Spain*, after a long and chargeable Siege, anno 1628. 2. *Tilmont*, on the little River *Oer*, once chief of *Brabant*, but long since decayed. 3. *Aerschot*, on the little River *Dennere*, which gives the Title of Duke to them of the noble House of *Croy*, descended from the Kings of *Hungary* (of which we spake before at large when we were in *Picardy*) the Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by *Charles* the Fifth) being Men of greatest Revenue and Authority of any in *Belgium*.

4. *Bergen-*

4. *Bergen-op-Zoom*, so call'd from the River *Zoom* upon which it is situate, about half a League from the influx of it into the *Scheld*, and not far from the Sea, which gives it a reasonable good Haven. A Town of great strength by nature, but more strongly fortified; famous for being made a Marquissate by *Charles* the Fifth, anno 1553; more for the notable Resistance which it made to the Marquis *Spinola*, anno 1622. 5. *Breda*, upon the River *Merck*, a Town pleasantly seated, well fortified, and of great Revenue, having under it the Town and Territory of *Steenberg*, the Franchise of *Rosendale*, and the Seignoury of *Ostcrhout*; the Residence, Barony and chief Town of the Princes of *Orange*, from whom being taken by the Spaniard in the beginning of those Wars, it was again recover'd by some venturous Gentlemen, who hiding themselves in a Boat cover'd over with Turf, were convey'd into the Castle, which they easily master'd, and made the Prince Lord of it again; after retaken by the Spaniard, anno 1625, but now in the possession of its natural Owners, to whom it came by the right of the House of *Nassau*, by the Marriage of *Engelbert* the 7th. Earl of that House, with *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the last Lord hereof, about the Year 1400. This place was made more famous, a Peace being here made between the English and Dutch in the Year 1667, after a bloody War of three Years. 6. *Dijst*, on the River *Denmere*, a good Town and invest'd with a goodly Territory, belonging to the Prince of *Orange*, whose Ancestors of the House of *Nassau* had it in exchange for some other Lands of the Duke of *Cleve*; and in right hereof he is Burgrave of the City of *Antwerp*. 7. *Grinbergen*, an ancient Barony, with a large Jurisdiction, descendible on the youngest Son only, after the manner of *Burg English*, as our Lawyers call it. 8. *Gertrydenberg*, standing on the *Douze*, not far from the influx of it into the *Maes*, the farthest Town in the North of *Brabant*, where it joins to *Holland*; which makes it a matter of dispute betwixt those Provinces, to which of them it doth belong. A Town of great trade for Fishing, plenty of Salmon and Sturgeon being taken here, but of Shads especially, whereof 18000 are sometimes caught in a day, salted, and sent abroad into Foreign Parts. It acknowledgeth the Prince of *Orange* for the Lord thereof, as doth also, 9. *Grave*, a good Town upon the *Maes*, bought by these Princes of the King of *Spain* without content of the States, without whose approbation no part of the Domain is to be dismembred. 10. *Masstricht*, (in Latin *Trajectum ad Mosam*) so called of a Ferry over the *Maes* in former times; supplied now with a goodly Stone Bridge in the place thereof. A fair and goodly Town, beautified with two Collegiate Churches, in one of which the Dukes of *Brabant* were always Canons; subject in part to the Bishop of *Liege*, and partly to the Duke of *Brabant*. The Children are subject to that Prince to whom the Mother was subject at the time of the Birth, without relation to the Father according to that Maxime of the Civil Law, *Partus sequitur ventrem*. And if a Stranger come to live there, he must declare to which of the two he will be subject. Yet is the Duke of *Brabant* the chief Sovereign of it, he only having the power of Coinage, and of granting Pardon to Offenders: and as a Town of this Dukedom it was besieged and taken by the Confederate States, anno 1632. In the Year 1673 it was taken after a sharp resistance by the French; in 1676 the *Hollanders* attempted the reduction of it by Force, but that failing, in 1678 they recovered it by the Treaty of *Nimieghe*n, and have since made it much stronger than it was before.

Here is also within the limits of this Dukedom the Town and Seignoury of *Ravestein*, situate on the Banks of the *Maes*, held by the Dukes of *Cleve* of the Duke of *Brabant*, but no otherwise subject: and on the same River the Town and Country of *Horn*, a Fief Imperial, beautified with a strong Castle and a goodly Territory, in which is *Wiert*, the Residence of the Earls of *Horn*, descended of the ancient House of *Montmorency* in France.

2. The *MARQUISSATE* of the *EMPIRE*, so called because the farthest Bounds and Marches of the German Empire fronting on *Flanders*, which appertained unto the Sovereignty of the Crown of *France*, comprehendeth four of the best Towns in *Brabant*, with very large and spacious Territories adjoining to them: viz. 1. *Lovain*, on the River *Dille*, about four English Miles in compass; but in that compass much of the ground is taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, Meadows and pleasant Fields, which make the situation far more delightful than if all built and peopled. It was the Mother Town of *Brabant*, and sometimes gave the Title of an Earl to the Dukes hereof: afterwards was made an University by Duke *John* the 4th. anno 1426. wherein are contained about 20 Colleges, such as they be, much privileged, and enriched with Pensions for Publick Readers, by King *Philip* II. This Prince in the Year 1606 Founded here a College for the English Jesuits. 2. *Bruxels*, (*Bruxella*) the Seat of the ancient Dukes of *Brabant*, and of the Dukes of *Burgundy* also, after they came to be Lords of those Countries; seated upon the *Simme*, and other sweet Springs and Riverets, which make it one of the sweetest situations in all Europe, having withal a goodly Channel made by Art from *Brussels* to the River *Dille*, and from thence to the *Scheld*, the charge whereof amounted unto 500000 Crowns. It is of the same compass with *Lovain*, the Building sumptuous, and the Town very rich, not only in regard that it is the ordinary Seat of the Prince or his Regent, and the Chancery for all *Brabant* and the Duchy of *Limbourg*; but in regard of the rich Manufactures of Armour and Cloth of *Arras*, of Silk, Gold and Silver, which are there industriously pursued. 3. *Nivelle*, on the borders of *Hainault*, in a very rich and fruitful Soil, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linen which is therein made, but most of all for a very rich Nunnery (or rather a Nursery) of noble Ladies of the same nature with those of *Mons* and others before described. 4. *Antwerp*, situate on a goodly Plain on the River *Scheld*, above 17 Leagues from the Sea, but furnished with 8 Channels, cut out of the River for the Transport of Commodities, one of the which is capable of 100 great Ships. The private Buildings are very handsome, but the publick sumptuous; the chief whereof were reckoned the Church of *Nostre-Dame*, the Bursle, the Town-house, and the House of the Eastlings or Eastern Merchants. Well peopled it is, and of so great Trade in former times, that it was held to be the richest Empory of the Christian World; the Commodities here bought and sold amounting to more in one month than those of *Venice* in two Years. The causes of which sudden growth and encrease of Trading are said to be these. 1. The two Marts holden here every Year, either of them during six Weeks, in which time no Man's Person could be arrested, or his Goods distrained. 2. The King of *Portugal* having in the Year 1503 diverted the course of Merchandise from *Alexandria* and *Venice* to the City of *Lisbon*, kept here his Factories, and sent hither his Spices and other Indian Commodities: for which cause the Merchants in the Year 1516 forsook *Bruges* in *Flanders*, and settled here. And, 3. Many of the Nobility and Gentry, during the long and bloody Wars betwixt *France* and *Spain*, forsook their Country-houses and repaired hither: by means whereof *Antwerp*, in a very little time grew bigger by 3000 Houses than it had been formerly. But as the growth hereof was sudden, so the fall sensible; occasioned through the yoking it with a Cittadel by the Duke of *Alva*, which made Merchants afraid to resort any longer thither, as a place of little freedom and less security; but chiefly by blocking up the Haven and intercepting the Trade at Sea, by the more powerful *Hollanders*, which hath removed this great Traffick to *Amsterdam* and other Towns of their Country. So that now the chief support of it is the Reputation which it hath of being an Imperial City, the place of Receipt for the King's Revenues, and a Bishop's See, Founded here in the Year 1559, which

draweth hither some resort of Lawyers and Churchmen.

3. The *Seignioury* of *MECHLIN* consisteth only of that City and a small Territory of 9 Villages adjoining to it. The City is seated on both sides of the River *Dille*, which ebberh and floweth to the Town and a League above it, and runneth through the very midst, maketh in it a number of small Islands, to the great ornament and commodity of it. A goodly Town containing seven Parish Churches, besides the Cathedral, being the See of an Archbishop, founded here in the Year 1559. Strong, in regard it may easily be drown'd on all sides; and of great Wealth, by reason of the many Manufactures of Linnen, great Artillery of Brasses and Iron, Bells, painted Works, and others of like use and ornament. And being situate in a manner in the Centre of *Brabant*, distant 4 Leagues from *Antwerp*, *Louvain*, and *Bruxels*, it was made by *Charles* the Warlike (who loved the place) the ordinary Seat of the great Council of State, to which Appeals are made from the other Provinces. But yet it was more beautiful in former times than it is at the present; the City being much defaced by firing 200 Barrels of Powder, anno 1546. and by the Sackage of the *Spaniard*, by whom it was taken by force, anno 1572. Most memorable at this time for a famous Nunnery, like to that of *Nivelle*, wherein are sometimes 1600 Nuns, who when they please may leave their Cloister and be married. A Town though in *Brabant*, yet not of it, but a State distinct: for which cause many Women at the time of their Child-birth use to lay down their Bellies in some Village of *Brabant*, that their Children may be capable of the Privileges and Immunities of that Country. The principal of the Villages is named *Leeft* or *Heyst*, pleasantly seated on an Hill, the residue of the Burroughs lying at the foot thereof. Both Town and Villages were the Patrimony heretofore of the noble Family of the *Bertholds*; which failing in the person of *Gaulter*, slain in the Battel of *Worancan* by *John* Duke of *Brabant*, it fell the one half to the Bishop of *Liege*, who sold his moyety to *John* the 2d. Duke of *Brabant*; the other to the Earl of *Geldres*, who in the year 1333 sold his part unto *Lewis* of *Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*. But he sold nothing but the Title; *John* the 3d. Duke of *Brabant* having seized upon it, and added it to his Estate: the occasion of some quarrel between those Princes, composed by the Marriage of *Lewis* with the Heir of *Brabant*.

But to return again unto *Brabant* it self, the ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aduatici* and some part of the *Tongri*: it was accompted by the *Romans* a part of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, and by the *French* a Province of the Kingdom of *East-France* or *Austrasia*; the Southern parts thereof towards *Hainault* under the Governance and Command of the Earls of *Ardenne*; the Northern parts lying towards the Sea, and terribly infested with the Depredation of the *Danes* and *Normans*, committed to the care of some principal Officers, whom they called *Lords Wardens of the Marches*. *Theodebert* Son of *Theodorick* the first King of *Austrasia*, accompanied with *Utilo* a *Boiarian* Prince, having repulled these common Robbers, obtained for *Utilo*, of his Father, the command of those Countries, and possession of a great part of them also, by the Title of Lord Marquis of *Antwerp*: the fourth from whom, called *Arnulph*, was the first Mayor of the Palace (of this House) to the Kings of *France*, made as it were hereditary unto his Successors. By *Dagobert* the first, sole King of the *French*, that part of this Country which was under the Earls of *Ardenne* being taken from them, the whole Estate was conferred on *Ansegisus*, the Son of *Arnulph*, with the Title of Duke of *Brabant*. The Actions and Archievements of so many of them as were Mayors of the Palace we have already seen when we were in *France*. The whole Succession follows here in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Marquesses of *Antwerp* and Dukes of *BRABANT* of the *German* or *Boiarian* Race.

1. *Utilo*, Son of *Theodore*, the first Duke and Nephew of *Aldiagerius*, the last King of the *Boiarians*.
2. *Hugopert*, Son of *Utilo*.
- 563 3. *Asopert*, the Son of *Hugopert*, and Husband of *Plythilda*, Daughter of *Clotaire* the first of *France*.
- 579 4. *Arnoldus*, the Son of *Asopert*.
- 601 5. *Arnulph*, Son of *Arnoldus*, the first Mayor of the Palace of this Family.
- 641 6. *Ansegisus*, Son of *Arnulphus*, Marquis of *Antwerp*, and Mayor of the Palace by *Dagobert* the first made Duke of *Brabant*.
- 679 7. *Pepin*, surnamed the Fat, Son of *Ansegisus*, Successor to his Father in his Honours, Offices and Estates, and was herein succeeded by
- 714 8. *Charles* the bafe Son of *Pepin*, for his valiant Acts surnamed *Martel*, there being no lawful Issue of his Father living.
- 741 9. *Pepin* II. surnamed the Short, Son of *Charles Martel*, having managed the Affairs of *France* from the death of his Father for the space of ten Years, usurped the Kingdom, and was solemnly crowned King at *Soissons* by *Boniface* Archbishop of *Mentz*, on *May-day*, anno 751.

The Dukedom of *Brabant* returning by this means to the Crown of *France*, continu'd a Province of that Kingdom, till the division of the *French* Empire among the Sons and Nephews of *Lewis* the Godly; when it was made a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*. Not long before the fatal period of that Kingdom, having been many years before divided by the River *Meuse* betwixt the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, (each taking to themselves the Title of Kings of *Lorrain*) it was by *Lotharius* the third of *France*, in whose share it lay, conferred on *Charles* his younger Brother, together with the Title of the Dukes of *Brabant*. But indeed this Donation proved of little worth, the greatest part thereof, together with the rest of that part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, which of right belonged unto the *French*, being conquered by the Emperor *Otho* the 2d. and by him added to the Empire. And yet this also fell out in fine to the profit of *Charles*, who being Cousin-german to this *Otho* the 2d. by the Lady *Gerburg*, (Sister of *Otho* the first, and Wife of *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine*, King of *France*, the Father of *Charles*) was by him invell'd into the great Dukedom of *Lorrain*, that Dukedom in the full latitude and extent thereof containing the modern Dukedoms of *Lorrain*, *Gulick* and *Brabant*, with the Lands of *Luyck*, wath part of the Lands of *Triers* and *Colen*. *Brabant* at that time had the name of *Bass* (or *Low*) *Lorrain*, and as in memory thereof, there is a Court for criminal and civil Causes held at *Gennap* (one of the Franks or Market-Towns of *Brabant*) called *La Cour de Lorrain* to this Day: an Estate first erected, as before is said, by the Emperor *Otho* II. who giving it to the said *Charles* of *France*, reserved out of it as a Dower for his said Aunt *Gerburg*, the Towns and Territories of *Louvain*, *Bruxels*, *Nivelle* and *Antwerp*, lying on the Marches of his Dominions towards *France*, which (with reference perhaps to the old Marquisate of *Antwerp*) he honour'd with the Title of *Marquisate of the holy Empire*, anno 981. *Gerburg*, the Sister, and Heir of *Otho* the Son of *Charles* abovementioned being put besides her hopes of that fair Inheritance by her Brother *Otho* (who gave it to *Geofrey* of *Ardenne*) succeeded her Grandmother, the first *Gerburg*, in the Towns and Territories of *Louvain*, *Nivelle* and *Bruxels*, which she conveyed in Marriage to *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Reyner* of *Hainault*, with the Title of Earl of *Louvain*. *Henry* his Son having made himself Master of *Antwerp* also, was by that means possessed of the whole Marquisate, but still retain'd the Title of Earl of *Louvain*. *Geofrey* the 6th Earl, having enlarg'd the

the bounds of his Dominions by the Conquest of the rest of the Country, *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorraine*, being then absent in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, was by the Emperor *Henry* the 5th (whose Sister he married) created the first Duke of *Brabant*. *John*, the first Duke of that name, added hereunto the Duchy of *Limbourg*; and *John* the 3d, the Seigniorie of *Malins* or *Mechlin*. How it became united to the House of *Burgundy* is to be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *LOVAIN* and Dukes of *BRABANT* of the Race of *Charlemagne*.

- 1004 1. *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Regnier* Earl of *Hainault*, made the first Earl of *Lovain*, in Right of *Gerburg*.
- 1015 2. *Henry* the Son of *Lambert*, who took *Antwerp*, making it the head City of the Marquisate of the Holy Empire.
- 1046 3. *Lambert* II. Son of *Henry*.
- 1054 4. *Henry* II. Son of *Lambert* the second.
- 1068 5. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the second.
6. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third.
- 1096 7. *Godfrey*, surnamed *Barbatus*; Brother of *Henry* the Fourth, in Right of his descent from *Charles* Duke of *Lorraine* challenged the Country, and recovered it from the House of *Ardenne*; and finally by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth was created the first Duke of *Brabant*, anno 1108. Father of *Adelize*, the second Wife of our *Henry* the first, and of *Josceline de Lovain*, the Progenitor of the (late) Earl of *Northumberland*.
- 1140 8. *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* II. Son of *Godfrey*.
- 1143 9. *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* III. Son of *Godfrey* the 2d.
- 1183 10. *Henry* V. Son of *Godfrey* the third.
- 1230 11. *Henry* VI. surnamed the Good, Son of *Henry* the fifth.
- 1247 12. *Henry* VII. surnamed the Magnanimous, by whole Marriage with *Sophia*, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, the Lantgravedom of *Hassia* came into this House invested in it the Person of *Henry* his Son by the said *Sophia*.
- 1260 13. *John*, Son of *Henry* the seventh, took in the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and destroyed the potent Family of the *Bertholds*: his younger Brother *Henry*, by another *Venter*, succeeding in *Hassia*.
14. *John* II. Son of *John* the first, bought of the Bishop of *Liege* the moyety or one half of *Mechlin*.
- 1312 15. *John* III, Son of *John* the second, added the whole Estate of *Mechlin* to the Dukedom of *Brabant*.
- 1355 16. *Joan* the eldest Daughter of *John* the third, married to *Winceslaus* the first Duke of *Luxemburg*, but died without Issue.
- 1406 17. *Anthony* of *Bargogn*, Son of *Philip* the Hardy and the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Margaret* the Sister and Heir of *Joan*, after the death of the said *Winceslaus* and *Joan* his Wife, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, his elder Brother *John* giving way unto it, at the request of their great Aunt *Joan*, the Proprietary of it.
- 1415 18. *John* IV. Son of *Anthony* by his first Wife *Joan*, Daughter of *Waleran*, Earl of *Saint Paul*.
- 1426 19. *Philip*, the second Son of *Anthony*, and Brother of *John* the Fourth.
- 1430 20. *Philip* II. called the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son and Heir of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, elder Brother of *Anthony*, on the death of his two Cousin-germans, *John* and *Philip*, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, as the direct Heir of the Lady *Margaret*, Wife

to *Lewis de Malain*, and Daughter of *John* the third, the last Duke of *Brabant*, of the House of *Lovain*. Of whose Successors more in another place.

The Arms hereof are *Sable*, a *Lion Or*.

12. *HOLLAND*. 13. *ZELAND*. 14. *WEST-FRIEZLAND*.

HAVING thus spoken of those Provinces, which still continue in subjection to the King of *Spain* (except some few Towns in *Flanders* and *Brabant*, before mentioned,) let us next look on those which have withdrawn their Obedience from him; beginning first with *Holland* and its Appendices, as of more power and consideration than all the rest. Which though distinct Provinces, and acting in their several Capacities at the present time, yet having been always under the Command of the same Princes they must be joined together in the Story of them, but shall be severally handled as to the Chorography.

HOLLAND hath on the East the *Zuider-See*, *Utrecht* and some part of *Gelderland*, on the West and North the *German Ocean*, on the South the Islands of *Zeland* and some part of *Brabant*. So called, as some think, but with little reason, *quasi Holt-land*, that is to say, a woody Country; as others, *quasi Hollow-land*, from the Bogs and Marshes and unbound footing on the same; and some will have it called so, *quasi Hay-land*, from the great quantity of Hay. But the learned *Junius*, not relishing any of the three, conceives that both his Country and the Isles of *Zeland*, being planted by some Colonies of *Danes* and *Normans* (at the time of the Irruption of those Northern Nations) were called thus with reference to *Seland* and *Oeland*, two Islands of the *Baltick Sea*, out of which they came. The Reader hath good choice, and may please himself.

The Country for the most part lyeth very low, inso-much that they are fain to fence it with Banks and Ramparts to keep out the Sea, and to restrain the Rivers within their bounds; so that in many places one may see the Sea far above the Land, and yet repulled with those Banks: and it is withal so Fenny and full of Marshes, that they are forced to trench it with innumerable Dikes and Channels, to make it firm Land, and fit for dwelling; yet not so firm to bear either Trees or much Grain. But such is the Industry of the People and Trade they drive, that having little or no Corn of their own growth, they do provide themselves elsewhere; not only sufficient for their own spending, but wherewith to supply their Neighbours: having no Timber of their own, they spend more Timber in building Ships and fencing their Water-courses than any Country in the World: having no Wine, they drink more than the People of the Country where it groweth naturally: and finally, having neither Flax nor Wooll, they make more Cloth of both sorts than all the Countries in the World, except *France* and *England*.

The present Inhabitants are generally given to Seafaring Lives, so that it is thought that in *Holland*, *Zeland* and *West-Friesland*, there are 2500 Ships of War and Burthen. The Women are for the most part laborious in making Stuffs: Nay, you will hardly see a Child of four Years of age that is not kept to work, and made to earn its own living; to the great commendation of their Government. The greatest of their natural Commodities is Butter and Cheese; of which, besides that infinite plenty which they spend in their own Houses, and amongst their Garrisons and Ships, they sell as much unto other Countries as comes to 100000 Crowns per annum. By which means, and by the greatness of their Fish-trade, spoken of before, they are grown so wealthy on the Land, and so powerful at Sea, that as *Flanders* heretofore was taken for all the *Netherlands*, so now *Holland* is taken generally for all the Provinces confederated in a League against the *Spaniards*.

The

The whole Compass of it is no more than 180 Miles, no part thereof being distant from the Sea above three hours Journey: and yet, within that narrow Circuit, there are contained no fewer than 23 walled Towns and 400 Villages; some situate in *North*, and others in *South-Holland*, as it stands divided. In *South-Holland* (being that part hereof that lieth next to *Zeland*, and the middle Chancel of the *Rhene*, passing from *Utrecht* unto *Leyden*) the principal Towns are, 1. *Dort*, in *Latin Dordrechtum*, formerly the Staple for *Rhenish* Wines; a large, rich, and well-peopled Town; anciently joined to the firm Land, but in the year 1421 rent from it by the violence of the Sea, and made an Island; of great command upon the Traffick of the *Maes* and the *Wael*, upon whose Confluence it stands, but of most note in these latter times for an Assembly of Divines out of divers Countries following *Calvin's* Doctrine, for Condemnation of the *Lutheran* or *Arminian* Tenets, concerning Universal Grace and Predestination, Anno 1618. 2. *Gorchum*, situate on the *Wael*, where it meeteth with the *Linge*; a Town of great Trade and Riches, by reason of a daily Market of Cheese and Butter brought hither in very great quantity; beautified anciently with a strong Castle and a fair Church, from the Steeple whereof one may behold 22 walled Towns, besides an infinite number of Villages. The Country is round about it called by that People *Van Arckel*, or the Land of *Hercules*, from an opinion, that *Hercules* the German did there appoint his Camp, or rather from some Temple dedicated to him, in the place whereof the Lords of this Tract, who from hence took the name of *Arckel*, (*Arcueli* they are called in our *Latin* Writers) founded a Church unto the Honour of the Virgin *Mary*, in the time of *Thierre* the 2d Earl of *Holland*, by whom they were first settled in this Country. And here they flourish'd as Lords of *Gorchum*, *Leerdam*, and the parts adjoining, till the Year 1416; when falling to *John* Lord of *Egmond*, by *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *John* of *Arckelland*, the last Lord hereof, and Mother of *Arnold* of *Egmond*, Duke of *Geldres*, it was by him sold to *William* the 6th, Earl of *Holland*, and so again united unto that Estate. 3. *Rotterdam*, seated on a Dike or Chancel called the *Rotter*; not far from which at a place named *Rempen* the *Leck*, one of the three main branches of the *Rhene*, falleth into the *Maes*: a strong fair and well-traded Port: the birth-place of the learned *Erasmus*. 4. *Schoon-hoven*, situate on the *Leck*, a fair Town, having a commodious Haven. 5. *Goude*, one of the six principal Towns of *Holland*, rich and well fortified, seated on the River called *Yssel*, which rising about *Ysselstein*, spoken of anon, falleth into the *Leck* at a place called *Ysselmond*, and therefore different from the branch of the *Rhene* so called, which giveth name to *Over-Yssel*. On the same River also stand, 6. *Oudwater*, and 7. *Ysselstein*; this last belonging properly to the Prince of *Orange*; the first of great Trade for making Cables and Cords for Shipping. 8. *Leyden*, or *Lugdunum Batavorum*, an University, founded Anno 1564. The Town consisteth of 41 Islands, to which they pass partly by Boats, partly by Bridges, whereof there are 144, and of them 104 builded with Stone. Here is in this Town a Castle, said to have been built by *Hengist* the Saxon at his return out of *England*. And not far off stood the famous Nunnery of *Rainsburg*, of the same nature with those of *Monts* and *Nivelle* before described; so liberally endowed, that 2000 Persons did there daily receive Relief. 9. *Vianen*, on the *Leck*, a Seignioury distinct from *Holland*, pertaining anciently to the Lords of *Brederode*: and so was also, 10. *Huesden*, a good old Town, once beautified with a fair Castle, and a goodly Territory, but belonging to the Earls of *Cleve*, of which House it had Lords of its own, as acknowledging no subjection to the Earls of *Holland*, from the Year 850, or thereabouts, to the Year 1290, at which time *Theodorick* the 9th of *Cleve* at a merry meeting transferred the Sovereignty thereof to *Florence* Earl of *Holland*, of that name the fifth. Finally, having continued in the possession of 20 Lords of

that Family, on the expiration of that Line in the Person of *John* the 9th dying without Issue, Anno 1334, it was made a Member of this Earldom (after some sharp Disputes with the Dukes of *Brabant*, claiming it by a Resignation of the last Lord *John*) by *William* of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Holland* and *Hainault*, Anno 1361, or thereabouts. 11. *Leerdam*, upon the River *Linge*, which, together with *Ysselstein* before mentioned, fell unto *Philip* Prince of *Orange*, in right of his descent from the Earls of *Bueren*. 12. *Delf*, a Town of great Trade for Cloathing, but more by reason of the Cloth of *England* brought thither in great quantities by the *English* Merchants, than for any great store of their making; by reason of the concourse which that Trade brings with it, rich, large and well built, beautified with spacious Streets and goodly Churches; the birth-place of that monstrous Heretick *David George*, who called himself *King*, and *Christ immortal*, as is before said.

In that part thereof which is called *North-Holland*, lying betwixt the middle Chancel of the *Rhene* and the *Zuider-See*: The Towns or Cities of most importance are, 1. *Alkmaer*, encompassed with deep Fens and Marshes; a rich Town, in regard of the great plenty of Butter and Cheese which is made about it, more than in any place of *Holland*, and famous for the defeat which the Duke of *Alva* received before it. For he in the beginning of the *Low-Country* Troubles, having with the loss of 20000 of his own Men forced *Harlem* in the Year 1573, laid his Siege round about this Town. Had he left any way for the Soldiers to have fled thence, the Town had been abandon'd: but having environ'd them round, he put them to such a resolution, or desperation (choose you whither) that manfully they resisted three of his Assaults, and in the end made him depart with great loss, as well of his Soldiers, as his Reputation. 2. *Amsterdam*, a very fair Haven-Town, where divers times at one tide 1000 Ships of all sorts have been seen to go out and in. So truly said a modern Poet.

*Quod Tagus atque Hermus vehit, & Pactolus, in unum
Vere hunc congestum dixeris esse locum.*

What *Tagus*, *Hermus*, and *Pactolus* bear,

One would conjecture to be heap'd up here.

The people thereby are so rich, that if a Fleet of 300 Sail should come into the Port fraught with all kind of Commodities, in five or six days they would be ready to buy all the Lading. Situate it is on the Gulf called the *Tie*, and the Dike or Chancel called *Amstel*, whence it hath the name of *Amsterdam*, in *Latin*, *Amstelodanum*; built upon Piles like *Venice*, and resembling it in so many points, that it may justly be called the *Northern Venice*. It was first fortified with Towers and Ramparts by *Giselbert* of *Amstel*, about 300 Years ago; but being burnt, through the envy of its Neighbours, it began to be walled, Anno 1482. Grown to this Wealth since the diverting of the Trade from *Antwerp* hither, and for that cause inhabited by Men of all Nations and of all Religions, and those not only tolerated and connived at in private, but openly and freely exercised without any dislike. A greater Confusion (in my mind) than that of *Babel*; this being of Religions, that of Languages only. 3. *Harlem*, on the Lake called *Harlemmeer*, the greatest Town of all *Holland*, and the second for Dignity; well built, and very pleasantly situated amongst many goodly Meadows, near a delightful Forest, and round about environed with wealthy Villages; famous for the invention of Printing, invented here, but perfected at *Mentz* in Higher Germany; the first Book which was ever printed being *Tully's Offices*. It was made a Bishop's See under the Archbishop of *Utrecht* by Pope *Paul IV.* in 1559, and taken and sacked by the *Spaniards* in 1573, with the loss of 20000 of their Men. 4. *Naerden*, on the *Zuider-See*, fortified with a strong Castle, held of the Earls of *Holland* by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, to whom it anciently belonged. 5. *Enchuisen*, on the very point of the Gulf of *Zuider-See*, opposite to *Friesland*, from which not distant two Leagues. A Town of great consequence to the

the Prince of *Orange* in the first revolting of these Countries from the King of *Spain*. For siding with him in that War, and standing conveniently to obstruct the Passages by Sea unto *Amsterdam*, it compelled that City in short time, by stopping all supplies of Victuals and other Necessaries, to yield it self unto the Prince. 6. *Horn*, on the same Gulf also, a rich Town, with a very good Haven, and of so great strength by reason of the multitude of Dikes and Channells which are round about it, that it seems impregnable. 7. *Edam*, upon the same Gulf (of *Zuider-See*) remarkable for the great number of Ships which are built yearly in it, and an incredible number of the best *Holland* Cheeses made in the Country round about it. 8. *Medemblick*, on the Ocean, seated in the best Country of *Holland* for the feeding of Cattel; unwall'd, but enjoying all the Privileges which a walled Town hath, and fortified with a right strong Castle.

The chief of the *Holland* Villages is the *Hague*, or *Graven Hague*, in Latin *Haga Comitum*, because formerly the Court and residence of the Earls of *Holland*, who had here a very large and beautiful Palace, founded by Earl *William*, King of the *Romans*, and therein a choice and excellent Library gathered together by *John Huire*, a Canon Regular of this place, and by him given to *Charles* the Fifth. In former times the Residence of the Council for the Province of *Holland*; as it is now of the Commissioners or Delegates of the Confederate Provinces called by the name of the *States General*. It is now much increased in Buildings of what it was; and yet so great in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine*, that it then contained 2000 Households. The Inhabitants will not wall it, as desiring to have it rather accounted the chief Village in *Europe*, than the second City. The other Villages of note, 2. *Egmond*, 3. *Brederode*, 4. *Wassenaar*, which anciently gave names to three Noble Families; of which none so illustrious and Renowned as that of *Egmond*, descended lineally from *Radbold*, Son of *Adgillis* the King of the *Frisons*, the first Lord of *Egmond*, who died anno 791. Advanced by Marriages to the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, the Seigniouries of *Yffelsstein* and *Bueren*. And finally they were made Earls of *Egmond* by *Maximilian* the Emperor, anno 1592. Both this House and that of *Wassenaar* being now extinct, there is none left but that of *Brederode* for ought I can learn. Near to the last stood the famous Fortrels called *Arx Britannica*, built by *Caligula* in memory of his great Battel upon this Shore. For making shew of a Voyage into *Britain*, to subdue that Island, he boarded his Galley, embattail his Soldiers, caused the Trumpets to sound, gave them the Signal, and then commanded them to gather Cockles. Which Tower or Fortrels was at the Fall of the *Roman* Empire overwhelmed by the Sea; the Ruins whereof at a dead low Water are still to be seen.

Besides these places on the firm Land or Continent, there are some Islands which pertain to the State of *Holland*, called by the general name of *Voorn*, because situate directly against *Holland*: *Voorn*, signifying as much as *before*, or in old *English*, *bevoerne*; but known by their distinct and more proper names of *Somersdike*. 2. *Gauwede*, 3. *Piersehill*, so called of their principal Towns, and, 4. *Voorn* specially so named, the chief of them all, being of a Fat and Fruitful Soil, and plentiful of most sorts of Grain. The principal Towns whereof are, 1. *Briel*, (which we call the *Brill*) a strong Town, and the first that revolted against the *Spaniard*, anno 1572. Cautionary to the *English* with the Town of *Flushing*; chosen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the Passage to *Gertruydenberg* and the rest of *Brabant*, as also to *Delf*, *Dort*, and *Rotterdam*, the greatest Towns of Trade in the South of *Holland*. 2. *Geruliet*, a small Town, but having a Jurisdiction over many Villages. There are also on the North side of *Holland* the Isles of *Wierogen* and *Texel*; of which little memorable, but that the last is furnished with a safe and capacious Bay for receipt of Shipping.

One special accident concerning *Holland* I cannot over-

pass in silence, namely, how *Margaret* Countess of *Henzenberg*, and Sister to *William* King of the *Romans*, being of the age of 42 Years, was delivered at one birth of 365 Children, the one half Males, the other Females, the odd one an Hermaphrodite; all christened at the Church of *Loofduynen*, not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elizabeth*, in two Basins still to be seen in the said Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Utrecht*; all which immediately after died; and with them the Mother.

The Arms of *Holland* of it self, as a State distinct, are Or, a Lion Gules.

ZELAND consisteth of seven Islands, the remainder of 18, the rest whereof the Sea hath swallowed, and in them 300 inhabited Towns. It is severed from *Flanders* with the left Branch or Arm of the *Scheld*, which they call *Honte*, and on the East from *Brabant* with the right Branch of the said River, which still keeps his name; on the North from *Holland* with the Gulf called the *Vlack*, and on the West with the main Ocean from the Kingdom of *England*. So called as some say, *quasi* Sea and Land; but as *Junius* rather thinks, from *Seland*, an Island of *Denmark*, as before was noted.

The Country is generally more Fruitful than the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent Corn, plenty of Coriander, and abundance of Madder used in Dying; the Soil also is very rich in Pasture, but low and marshy: which makes the Air to very unhealthy: and the whole destitute both of Fresh Water and Wood; the want of which last is supplied with Coal out of *England* and *Scotland*, or by Turf digged among themselves but very sparingly, for fear of weakening the Sea Banks.

The whole containeth 8 Towns, and 100 Villages. The Islands which remain are commonly divided into the Western and Eastern, according as they lie with reference to the River *Scheld*. The Western Islands are four in number: That is to say,

1. *WALCHEREN*, (*Valachria* in Latin) lying to the North of *Schuys* in *Flanders*, the richest and most populous of all this Province, in compass 10 Dutch, or 40 Italian Miles. The principal Towns of which are, 1. *Middleburg*, seated on a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the Streets spacious, the Houses and Churches well built, inhabited by wealthy Merchants, and industrious Traders, and of late time, (since the removing of the *English* Trade from *Antwerp*) a most flourishing Empory: So called because built in the midst of the Island; or because built (as saith *Ortelius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named, in honour of his Grandfather *Metellus*, and by him called *Metelli Burgum*. 2. *Flushing*, of great note for its good Port and invincible strength. One of the first Towns which the *Low-Country* Men took from the *Spaniards* by the diligence of *Voorst* a Seaman, and *Monheur de Berland*, then the Bayliff thereof, and not long after put into the hands of the *English* as a Town of Caution; the first Governor of it being the Renowned Sir *Philip Sidney*. A poor Town then it was, God wot, now the Key of the *Netherlands*, without whose Licence no Ship can pass either to or from the City of *Antwerp*; insomuch that if the Duke of *Alva* in the beginning of his Government had bestowed that pains in the fortifying this and others of the Maritime Towns, as he did in the strengthening *Antwerp* and some Midland Cities, he had in all probability hindred the remediless Revolt of these flourishing Countries. Not far off standeth the Fort called the *Rammekins*, once Cautionary to the *English* also, together with the *Briel*, the chief Town in the Isle of *Voorn*, (an Isle of *Holland*) all three being taken from the *Spaniards*, anno 1572. made Cautionary to Queen *Elizabeth*, anno 1585. and finally surrendered by King *James* as the States United, anno 1616. Robert Lord *Lisse* (afterwards created Earl of *Leicester*) the Brother of Sir *Philip Sidney*, then Governor of *Flushing*. 3. *Ramne*, or *Armenyden*, an unwall'd Town, but beautified with one of the goodliest and

and most frequented Havens in all the World; out of which one may sometimes see 500 fail of Ships of great burthen set forwards on their Voyages to several Parts.

4. *Vere*, or *Camfere*, seated in the North part of the Island, which once gave Title to a Marquis, and from the which the Noble Family of the *Veres* (now and of long time Earls of *Oxford*) took denomination. So as it is no marvel that so many of that Family have ventured their Estates and Lives in the Wars of this Country, being their Grandmother in a manner, or their Primitive Parent, from whence they were transplanted into *England*.

2. *SOUTH-BEVERLAND*, situate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brabant*, the greatest of the Isles of *Zeland*; heretofore 20 *Dutch* Miles in compass, but now much diminished by the Rage and Fury of the Sea, by which the Town and Seignoury of *Borsfule*, with all the Countries round about it, was swallowed up, anno 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods and pleasant Thickets, full of Fowl and wild Beasts for Hawking and Hunting. Chief Towns here are, 1. *Romerfwale*, seated on the East toward *Bergen op Zoom*, severed at the same time from the rest of the Island, and made an Island of it self, defended with continual charge from following the sad Fate of the Town of *Borsfule*. 2. *Goes*, or *Tergoes*, on the Northern Coast, a strong Town, well privileged, and the only walled Town in all the Island.

3. *NORTH-BEVERLAND*, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Isle of *Schowen*, in former Times esteemed the Paradise of *Zeland*, and having in it a proper Town called *Chort Cheen*, but so destroyed by the Sea-breach, spoken of before, that there is nothing now remaining but a few poor Villages.

4. *WOLFERSDIKE*, lying betwixt the two *Beverlands*, the smallest of the Western Islands, as having in it no more than two Villages, but replenished with good Store of Pasture.

And these are all which fall in the division of the Western Islands, so called because they lay Westward of the River *Scheld*; as those which they call the Eastern Islands, on the East thereof. Of which last there are three in number.

1. *SCHOWEN*, lying on the South-West of *Holland*; so near unto *North-Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitants could talk together from one shore to the other: but now the Sea hath set them at a greater distance. It containeth in compass six *Dutch* miles. Chief Towns wherein are, 1. *Zireckzee*, the ancientest Town of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choaked up with Beach, yet still reputed for the second Town of all the Province: the whole Trade thereof consisting in Salt and Madder; of which it yields good plenty. Most famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius*, that renowned Philosopher and Physician. 2. *Brouwers-Haven*, inhabited only by Fishermen, not else remarkable.

2. *DOVELAND*, so named from the multitude of Doves or Pigeons, situate between *Schowen* and *Tolen*, in compass about 4 *Dutch* Miles. It hath no good Town in it, but only Country Villages and Gentlemens Farms Surrounded by the Sea, anno 1530, but by the industry and diligence of *Adolph* of *Burgundy*, and the Lord of *Basarecas* in *Flanders* recover'd again, and at the excessive charge of the People hitherto preserved.

3. *TOLLEN*, so called from the chief Town of the Island, where the Earls Toll was wont to be paid, whence it had the name, is situate over against the North-West of *Brabant*, from thence disjoined by a narrow Creek or Arm of the Sea: the second Town of Note being called *S. Martin's Dike*; walled, but not otherwise considerable.

Agreeable to the quality of this Country of *Zeland* are the Arms thereof, being *Or*, a Lion *Gules* rising out of a Sea Wave *Argent* and *Azure*.

WEST-FRIESLAND, hath on the East *Groening-land* and a part of *Westphalen* in *High Germany*, on the

South *Over-ryssel* and the *Zuider-See*, on the North and West the main Ocean. The Country is generally Moorish and full of Fens, unapt for Corn, but yielding great store of Pasturage: which Moorishness of the Ground makes the Air very foggy and unhealthy; nor have they any Fewel wherewith to rectifie it, (except in that part of it which they call *Seven-Wolden*) but Turf and Cow-dung, which adds but little to the sweetness of an unsound Air. Nor are they better stored with Rivers, here being none proper to this Country, but that of *Leewards*, the want of which is supplied by great Channels in most places, which do not only drain the Marshes, but supply them with Water: Which notwithstanding, their Pastures do afford them a good breed of Horses fit for service; plenty of Beeves both great and sweet, the best in *Europe*, next these of *England*; and those in such a large increase, that their Kine commonly brings two Calves, and their Ewes three Lambs at a time.

The Country is divided into three Parts. In the first part, called *WESTERGOE*, lying towards *Holland*, the principal Towns are, 1. *Harlingen*, an Haven Town upon the Ocean, defended with a very strong Castle. 2. *Hindcopen*, on the same Coast also. 3. *Staveren*, an Hanse-Town, opposite to *Enchuisen* in *Holland*, the Town decayed, but fortified with a strong Castle, which secures the Haven. 4. *Francker*, a new University, or a *Schola Illustris*, as they call it. 5. *Sneck*, in a low and inconvenient situation; but both for largeness and beauty the best in this part of the Province, and the second in esteem of all the Country. In *OSTERGOE*, of the East part, lying towards *Groening-land*, the Towns of most note are, 6. *Leeuwarden*, situate on the hinder *Leewards*, the prime Town of *West-Friesland*, and honoured with the Supreme Court and Chancery hereof, from which there lieth no Appeal: a rich Town, well built, and strongly fortified. Made a Bishop's See in 1559. 7. *Dockum*, bordering upon *Groening*, the birth place of *Gemma Frisius*, in *SEVEN-WOLDEN*, or the Country of Seven Forests, so called from so many small Forests joining near together, is no Town of note, being long time a Wood-land Country, and not well inhabited till of late. The number of the walled Towns are 11 in all; of the Villages or Burroughs 345.

To this Province belongeth the Isle of *Schellink*, the shores whereof are plentifully stor'd with Dog-fish, took by the Inhabitants in this manner. The Men of the Island attire themselves with Beasts Skins, and then fall to dancing; with which sport the Fish being much delighted, make out of the Waters towards them; Nets being pitched presently between them and the Water. Which done, the Men put off their Disguises, and the frightened Fish, halting toward the Sea, are caught in the Toils.

Touching the *Frisons*, heretofore possessed of this Country, we shall speak more at large when we come to *East-Friesland*, possessed also by them, and still continuing in the quality of a Free Estate, governed by its own Laws and Princes: Here only taking notice that the Arms of this *Friesland* are *Azure*, semy of Billets *Argent*, two Lions *Or*.

The ancient Inhabitants of these three Provinces were the *Batavi* and *Caninofates*, inhabiting the Island of the *Rhene*, situate betwixt the middle branch thereof and the *Wael*, which now containeth *South-Holland*, *Utrecht*, and some part of *Geldres*; the *Frisii*, dwelling in *West-Friesland* and the North of *Holland*; and the *Mattiaci*, inhabiting in the Isles of *Zeland*. By *Charles* the Bald these Countries, being almost unpeopled by the *Norman* Piracies, were given to *Thierrie*, Son of *Sigebert*, a Prince of *Aquitain*, with the Title of Earl; his Successors acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Crown of *France*, till the time of *Arnulph* the 4th Earl, who turned Homager to the Empire. In *John* II. they became united to the House of *Hainault*, and in *William* III. to that of *Bavaria*; added to the Estates of the Dukes of *Burgundy* in the Person

Person of Duke *Philip* the Good; as appeareth by the Succession of

The Earls of *HOLLAND, ZEELAND,* and Lords of *WEST-FRIESLAND.*

- 863 1. *Thierrie*, or *Theodorick* of *Aquitain*, the first Earl, &c.
- 903 2. *Thierrie* II. Son of *Thierrie* I.
- 988 3. *Thierrie* III. Son of *Theodorick* II.
4. *Arnulph*, who first made this Estate to be held of the Empire; slain in a War against the *Frisons*. From *Sigefride* the second Son of this *Arnulph* came the Lords of *Bredrode*, advanced by Marriages to the Seigniouries of *Genap* and *Vianen*, and many other fair Estates both in *Brabant* and *Holland*.
- 993 5. *Thierrie* IV. Son of *Arnulph*.
- 1039 6. *Thierrie* V. Son of *Theodorick* IV.
- 1048 7. *Florence*, Brother of *Thierrie* V.
- 1062 8. *Thierrie* VI. Son of *Florence*, in whose Minority the Estate of *Holland* was usurped by *Godfrey le Bossu*, Duke of *Lorraine*, by some accounted as an Earl hereof.
- 1092 9. *Florence* II. surnamed the Fat, Son of *Thierrie* VI.
- 1123 10. *Thierrie* VII. who tamed the stomachs of the *Frisons*.
- 1163 11. *Florence* III. a Companion of *Frederick Barbarossa* in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
- 1190 12. *Thierrie* VIII. Son to *Florence* III.
- 1203 13. *William* the Brother of *Thierrie*, and Earl of *East-Friesland*, which Country he had before subdued, supplanted his Niece *Ida*, his Brother's Daughter, but after her decease, dying without Issue, succeeded in his own Right unto the Estate.
- 1223 14. *Florence* IV. Son of *William*.
- 1235 15. *William* II. Son of *Florence* IV. elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, slain in a War against the *Frisons*.
- 1255 16. *Florence* V. the first, as some write, who called himself Earl of *Zeland*: the Title to those Islands, formerly questioned by the *Flemings*, being relinquished to him on his Marriage with *Beatrix*, the Daughter of *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*.
- 1296 17. *John*, the Son of *Florence* V. subdued the rebellious *Frisons*; the last of the Male-Issue of *Thierrie* of *Aquitain*.

Earls of *HAINAUT, HOLLAND, &c.*

- 1300 18. *John* of *Avesnes*, Earl of *Hainault*, Son of *John* of *Avesnes*, Earl of *Hainault*, and of the Lady *Aleide*, Sister of *William* II. and Daughter of *Florence* IV. succeeded as next Heir in the Earldom of *Holland*, &c.
- 1305 19. *William* III. surnamed the Good, Father of the Lady *Philippa*, Wife of our *Edward* III.
- 1337 20. *William* IV. of *Holland*, and II. of *Hainault*, slain in a War against the *Frisons*.
- 1346 21. *Margaret*, Sister and Heir of *William* IV. and eldest Daughter of *William* III. married to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Emperor of the *Germans*, forced to relinquish *Holland* unto *William* her second Son, and to content her self with *Hainault*.
- 1351 22. *William* V. second Son of *Lewis* and *Margaret* (his elder Brother *Stephen* succeeding in *Bavaria*) in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter and Coheir of *Henry* Duke of *Lowest*, succeeded in the Earldom of *Leicester*.
- 1377 23. *Albert*, the younger Brother of *William* V. fortunate in his Wars against the *Frisons*; Earl of *Hainault, Holland, &c.*

- 1424 24. *William* VI. Earl of *Orléans*, and by that name admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Edward* III. eldest Son of *Albert*.
- 1417 25. *Jaqueline*, only Daughter of Earl *William* VI. first married to *John* IV. Duke of *Burgundy*, the Son of *Philip* of *Flanders* from whom divorced under colour of Confiscation, she was married after to *Henry* Duke of *Gloucester*, and then to *John* of *Beaufort*, a private Gentleman being unlawfully married by Duke *John* of *Burgundy*, he surrendered her Estates to Duke *Philip* the Good.
26. *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, Sister of Earl *William* VI. and Daughter of *Albert*, Earl of *Hainault, Holland, &c.* succeeded on the Renunciation of the Lady *Jaqueline*, his Confinergerman, transporting these Estates to the House of *Burgundy*. His Successors we shall meet with shortly in another place.

15. *UTRECHT.* 16. *OVER-YSSSEL.*

THE Bishoprick of *Utrecht*, I mean the temporal Jurisdiction and Estate thereof, contain'd once all that Tract of ground which now makes up the Provinces of *Utrecht, Over-Yssel, and Groeninge*. But *Groeninge* was long since dismembred. *Utrecht* and *Over-Yssel* remaining parts thereof till the Year 1528, then added to the rest of the *Belgick* Provinces by *Charles* V.

UTRECHT hath on the East *Gelderland*, on the West, North and South, environ'd with *Holland*. The Country is very Fruitful, much drier than *Holland*, and so fitter for all sorts of Grain. It containeth 75 Villages, and 5 walled Towns: that is to say, 1. *Wyckat Duerstede*, situate on the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, where it diverteth into the *Leck*; well built, and fortified anciently with a good Castle; supposed to be the *Baravodurum* (spoken of by *Tacitus*, the Mansion at that time of the second Legion. 2. *Rhenen*, upon the same branch or Channel, whence it hath the name: about which is digged abundance of Turf for Fuel. 3. *Amersfort*, on the River *Ems*, (called in Latin *Amisus*) a fair Town, and well peopled. 4. *Montfort* upon the *Yssel*, pleasantly seated, and of great strength, as being anciently a Frontier Town against the *Hollanders*. 5. *Utrecht*, situate on the middle Channel of the *Rhene*: first called *Antonina*, from one of the *Antonines* of *Rome*: but *Dagobert* King of *France* gave it the name of *Trajectum* (or *Ultrajectum*, we now call *Utrecht*) because there was at that time the common Ferry over the River. The Town is large, beautiful, and very sumptuously built, having in it many goodly Churches of which five were anciently Collegiate; besides two famous Monasteries of noble Women, such as those spoken of elsewhere: the private Houses well contrived, most of them having goodly Cellars, vaulted with wonderful Art and Skill, to which the People may resort in all times of danger. Sometime the Seat-Royal of *Radbold*, King of the *Frisons*, then of the Bishops; honoured of old with a Juridical resort for the parts adjoining, and now the principal of this Province. A City so miraculously seated amongst walled Towns, that a Man may go from hence in one day to any one of 50 walled Towns or Cities, thence equally distant; or to any one of 26 Towns to Dinner; and come home to Bed. *Dagobert*, King of *France*, built the present He in the year of Christ 642; *Willebrord* became the first Bishop of it in the year 650. In the year 1527 it submitted to *Charles* the V. In 1550 it was made an Archbishop's See. In 1577 it revolted from the *Spaniards*. In 1636 it was made an University. In 1676 it fell into the hands of the *French* for a short time, who used it very ill two years, and then it recovered its present Liberty.

OVER-YSSSEL, in Latin *Transyl. lania*, so named from its situation beyond the *Yssel*, is bounded on the

East with *Westphalen*, on the West with *Zuider-See*, on the North with *West-Friesland*, on the South with *Gelderland*. The Country is very plain and without Hills, but wet and moorish affording excellent good Pasturage, and not defective in Corn. It is divided into three parts, that is to say, *Twent*, confining upon *Westphalen*; *Yffel-land*, on the River *Yffel*; and *Drent*, beyond the River *Vecht*; in all which are contained 11 Towns, and 100 Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Deventer*, on the River *Yffel*, strong and well fortified, and withal beautiful and well peopled; an Hanse-Town, and the chief of all this Province; first taken from the States by the Earl of *Leicester*, then Governour of those Countries for Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno. 1586, treacherously re-yielded to the *Spaniards* by Sir *William Stanley*, but in the year 1590 again recovered by the States, taken by the *French* in 1672, and deserted in 1674. 2. *Stol*, standing on a little River which runs into the *Vidre*, anciently fortified with a double Ditch, and very strong Ramparts, an Hanse-Town; as is also 3. *Campen*, situate on the left Shore and fall of the *Yffel* into the *Zuider-See*, a fair and large Town, and of very great strength by reason of those inaccessible Marshes among which it is situate. These three are in that part thereof which is called *Yffel-land*, and by some *Saland*, by whom (erroneously) it is supposed to be the Country of the ancient *Salii*. In that part hereof which is called *Twent*, we have the Towns of 4. *Oldenzeel*, 5. *Enschede*, 6. *Delde*, 7. *Almelo*: of which little memorable. And in that of *Drent*, the Town and Castle of *Vallenboven*, standing upon the *Zuider-See*, well served with all sorts of Victuals, and for that cause made the ordinary Residence of the Governour, and supream Council for the whole Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of these two Provinces were some parts of the *Batavi* and *Frisi minores*, for that of *Utrecht*; the *Bructeri* and (as some say) the *Salii* in *Over-Yffel*. Both Provinces belonging anciently to the Episcopal See of *Utrecht*, founded by *Dagobert* King of *France*, who endowed it with great Lands and Territories; the first Bishop being *Willibald*, an *English*-man; who converted these parts to Christianity. His Successors grew to so great power, that they were able to bring 40000 men into the Field, and with great courage did maintain their Estate and Patrimony against the encroaching Earls of *Holland*: but at the last having continued for the space of 900 years, *Henry* of *Bavaria* Bishop hereof, being extremely distressed with War by the Duke of *Geldres*, and driven out of the City of *Utrecht* by his own Subjects, (perhaps upon some humour of Reformation) alienated all the Temporalities of his Bishoprick to *Charles* the 5th, An. 1527. and the next year the Imperialists by one of the Factions were let into *Utrecht*; at what time both the Estates of the Country, and Pope *Clement* the 7. confirmed the Alienation made by the Bishop. After which solemn Acts of theirs the Emperour caused himself to be invested in this Estate by the States of the Empire, (for *Utrecht* was of old an Imperial Fief,) and, for the better Government and Administration of it, divided it into two Provinces as it still continueth. But what this Bishop lost in Power his Successors not long after gained in Title; the Bishop of *Utrecht* being made an Archbishop or Metropolitan, Anno. 1561. But by Reason of the change of Religion which was then working, and the falling off of these Countries, which soon after followed, he had but little joy in his new Preferment.

17. *GELDERLAND*. 18. *ZUTPHEN*,
and 19. *GROENING*.

THE Dukedom of *Gelderland*, at such time as it was first taken in by *Charles* the fifth, contained under it the Duchie of *Geldres*, properly and specially so called, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Town and Seignoury of *Groening*; held by distinct Titles, and governed ever

since their union with the *Belgick* Provinces as distinct Estates.

GELDERLAND is bounded on the East with *Cleveland* and the Earldom of *Zutphen*, on the West with *Holland* and *Utrecht*, on the North with *Over-Yffel* and the *Zuider-See*; and on the South with *Brabant* and the Land of *Gulick*. The Country is flat, having few hills in it, but many pleasant and commodious Woods, especially that called *Echterwaldt*, of Corn and Cattle very fruitful.

The whole Country is generally divided into two parts, 1. The *Veluwe*, contained within the *Zuider-See*, the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, and the *Yffel*; the barren of the two, and the worse inhabited; the people hereof preferring Health before Wealth, as in other places; but affording a more pure Air, and a pleasanter dwelling than the other; the Woods and Forests well replenished with most kind of Game. The *Betuwe* (so called of the *Batavi*, who possessed these parts) intercepted betwixt the said middle Channel of the *Rhene* and the *Wael*, exceeding fruitful in Corn, and of so excellent a Pasturage for the feeding of Cattle, that in the Year 1570. there was a *Gelderland* Bull sold in *Antwerp* which weighed 3200 pounds.

In both divisions (not reckoning in the County of *Zutphen*) are contained 300 Villages, and 16 walled Towns, besides some fortified of late since the Wars began. The chief whereof are, 1. *Nimwegen*, (in *Latine* *Noviomagus*) an Imperial City, ordained by *Charles* the Great, to be one of the three Sieges of the Empire for these outer parts: the other two being *Theonville* in *Luxemburg*, and *Aix* or *Aken* in the land of *Gulick*. And, as a Town Imperial, it had anciently the Priviledge of Coyning money: for which and other Freedoms or immunities indulged unto it, the people did no other service to the Emperours than once a year to send a man to *Aix* or *Aquisgrane* with a Glove full of Pepper. But the Town being sold to the *Geldois* by *William* Earl of *Holland* and King of the *Romans* for 21000 Marks of Silver, Anno. 1248, the power of Coinage fell to those Princes; and yet the Town was brought to do better Service than formerly it had done at *Aken*. The Town is high mounted on the top of an Hill, the *Wael*, which is there large and deep running at the foot of it, rich, great, and populous, having besides the modern Fortifications an ancient Castle, with so goodly a prospect, that from thence one may behold the best part of the Country; built, as some say, by *Julius Caesar* to command those parts. This City in the year 1672. Having made a vigorous Defence against the *French*, was at last forced to yield the year after it was Deserted and became the Seat of the Treaty for Peace, here concluded in the year 1678. between the Emperour and the Kings of *France* and *Spain*, and the States of *Holland*. *Charles* the 2d. of *England*, by his Faithful Minister Sir *Leoline Jenkins*, being the Arbitrator of all these Princes. Under the Jurisdiction of it are, 2. *Tiel*, and 3. *Bomel*, two walled Towns, both situated on the *Wael*, both strong, and having many rich Villages under their command; and 4. *Ghent*, on the *Wael* also, an unwalled Town, but having all the Priviledges which the walled Towns have. Not far off, at the first meeting of the *Wael* and the *Maes*, stands the strong Fort of *S. Andrew*, raised by the Archduke *Albert* to command the passage of those Rivers; but in the year 1600 taken in by *Maurice* Count of *Nassau*, (after Prince of *Orange*) and ever since garrisoned by the States to secure that passage. 5. *Ruermond*, seated on the mouth of the *Ruer*, where it falleth into the *Maes*; a beautiful and well-peopled City, strong by Art and Nature, and seated in a fruitful Country, heretofore of the Diocess of *Luze*, (as *Nimwegen* anciently of *Colen*) but made a See Episcopall by King *Philip* the Second, Anno. 1559. This is the second capital City of *Gelderland*, and hath under the Jurisdiction of it, 6. *Vento*, a strong Town on the *Maes*, in which the Duke of *Cleve* yielded himself to *Charles*

Charles the fifth, An. 1543. 7. *Geldres*, heretofore of such reputation, that it gave name to all the County; and well it doth deserve to do so still, being the only Town in all this Dukedom which neither first nor last hath been won by the *Hollanders*, but still preserved themselves in their Obedience to their natural Princes. 8. *Strael*, or *Straelen*, a well fortified piece; but which, according to the chances of War, hath often changed its Masters. 9. *Arnhem*, the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*, and in those times the Mansion of the tenth Legion, situate on the *Rhene*, not above a mile from the great Channel, which *Drusus*, to keep his Soldiers from idleness, caused them to dig, to let the waters of the *Rhene* into those of the *Yssel*; called therefore by the Ancients *Fossa Drusiana*, by the Modern *Yssel Dort*. The Town is large and well built: the ordinary Residence heretofore of the Dukes of *Gelderland*, who had here their Chancery, and other supreme Courts of Justice. In the Year 1672, it was taken by the *French*, but in 1674, was dismantled and forsaken by them. This is the Third Capital City of *Gelderland*, anciently of the Diocese of *Utrecht*) and hath under the Jurisdiction of it, besides divers Villages, 10. *Wageningen* on the *Rhene*, the same which *Tacitus* calls *Vada*. 11. *Harderwick* on the *Zuider-See*, burnt to the ground *Anno. 1503*, but since re-edified, and now more strong and beautiful than ever formerly. 12. *Hattem*, upon the *Yssel*, a good Town of War, but not else observable.

Within the Limits of this Dukedom stands the Town and County of *Culemborg*, erected into a County by King *Philip the 2.* by reason of the fair Territory which belonged unto it; formerly held in Fee of the Dukes of *Gelderland*, but otherwise not reckoned as a Member of it. 2. The Town and Earldom of *Bueren*, situate on the River *Linge*, having a strong Castle anciently, and a goodly Territory, holden immediately of the Empire, as a Fief Imperial. It was first made an Earldom in the Person of *Frederick* Lord of *Egmond*, Brother's Son to *Arnold* of *Egmond*, the sixth Duke of *Geldres*, created Earl of *Bueren* by *Maximilian*, the first, *An. 1492.* which *Frederick* was Grandfather of the valiant *Maximilian* of *Egmond* Earl of *Bueren*, who died *Anno. 1549.* after whose death it fell at last to *Philip* of *Nassau*, eldest Son of *William* Prince of *Orange*, and of *Ann* the Daughter and Heir of the said *Maximilian* upon the death of the said *Ann*, *Anno. 1551.*

ZUTPHEN, accounted formerly for the fourth capital City of *Gelderland*, now a distinct Province of it self, is bounded on the East with *Westphalen*, on the West with that part of *Gelderland* which is called *Veluwe*, on the North with *Over-Issel*, on the South with *Cleveland*. It containeth 8 walled Towns, besides many Villages; that is to say, 1. *Doetum*, standing on the old *Yssel*, rising out of *Westphalen*. 2. *Doesburg*, where the old *Yssel* falleth into the new *Yssel*, or the Trench called *Fossa Drusiana*, communicating thereunto its name. 3. *Bronckhorst*, a County of it self, which anciently had its particular Governour. 4. *Lochem*, upon the River *Berckel*. 5. *Tjheerenburg*, a Town and County. 6. *Groll*, taken by the Prince of *Orange*, for the *States* Confederate *Anno. 1627.* 7. *Bredervord*, a Town of War, and subject to the change of Masters, as such places are. 8. *Zutphen*, or *Zuidjen*, so called of the Southern situation of it amongst the Fens, on the right shore of the *Yssel*, where it receiveth into it the River *Berckel*, which runs through the Town. A Town indifferently well built, as well for private as publick Edifices; a distinct State in Civil matters, but in Spiritual subject (in former times) to the Bishop of *Munster*. A thing observable and not to be paralleld elsewhere; that the four chief Towns and Quarters of one Province only should appertain (as here in *Gelderland*) to four several Dioceses. Of which there may some reason be assigned for *Zutphen*, in regard it is a State more ancient than that of *Gelderland* it self, and not depending anciently on the fortunes of it; united to it by the Marriage of *Orbo* of *Nassau*, the first Earl of

Gelderland, with *Sophia*, Daughter and Heir of *Wickman* the last Earl of *Zutphen*. So as this Earldom ended, when that first began. After this it continued Subject to the Earls and Dukes of *Geldres*, till the revolt of *Holland* and the other Provinces from the King of *Spain*; at what time it was besieged for the *States* by the Earl of *Leicester*: at the Siege whereof fell that gallant Gentleman Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom our *British* Epigrammatist thus versifieth.

*Digna legi scribis, facis & dignissima scribi;
Scripta probant doctum te tuu, facta probum.*

Thou writ'st things worthy reading, and didst do things worthy writing too:

Thy Acts thy Valour show,

And by thy works we do thy Learning know.

And though upon the loss of that gallant man (Nephew and Heir unto that Earl) the Siege was raised at the present; yet was it re-inforced again, *An. 1590*, and the Town then taken, continuing ever since in the Confederacy of the *States* United. Having been in vain Attack'd by the Bishop of *Munster*, in the Year 1672.

GROENING-LAND hath on the East *East-Friesland*, on the West *West-Friesland*, on the North the main Ocean, on the South *Over-Issel*; so wedged in as it were betwixt both *Frieslands*, that some hold it to be but a part of the West. It containeth under it the Country called the *Ommelands*, (corruptly for the *Emmelands*, as I conjecture, because lying along the River *Em*) and therein 145 Burroughs and Villages. The chief thereof are, 1. *Dam*, near the *Ems*, bordering on *East-Friesland*. 2. *Keykirk*, 3. *Old-Haven* standing on the Sea. 4. As for the Town of *Groening* it self, it is rich, great, and very well built, situate amongst divers small Streams which run through it, and having also divers Channells for conveyance of waters, which adds much to the safety and strength thereof. A Town of great Jurisdiction both within and without, judging absolutely without Appeal in Causes both Civil and Criminal; in Spiritual, subject heretofore to the Bishop of *Munster*, till made one of the new Bishopricks by King *Philip the second*, *Anno. 1559.* And though the Prince in Civil Causes had his Officer or Lieutenant there; yet in Criminal the Town was Sovereign, and granted Pardons as Sovereign of the whole Estate, paying to the Prince for all Duties yearly but 6000 Crowns. Both Town and Country anciently belonging to the Bishops of *Utrecht*, for whose negligence in defending them they submitted their Estate to the Duke of *Gelderland*. But the Dukes of *Saxony* laying some claim to it, disturbed this agreement for a time; during which *Fzardus* the Earl of *East-Friesland* possessed himself of it; but not able to make good his unjust possession sold his Estate therein to the Duke of *Geldres*, *An. 1513*, to whom of right it did belong. Afterwards in the year 1536, they put themselves under the command of *Charles the fifth*, but with the reservation of all their Privileges and ancient Liberties, for preservation of the which, in danger to be over-born by the power of the *Spaniard*, they confederated with the rest of the *United States*, *Anno. 1594*, and so still continue. In the year 1672, it was taken by the *French*, and continued 2 years in Bondage.

The ancient Inhabitants of these Countries were the *Menapii* and *Sicambri*, very valiant people, possessing *Gelderland* and the *maiores Frisi*, which were planted in *Groening* and the rest of *Friesland*. Of these the *Sicambri* were accounted the most valiant People, uniting with other Nations in the name of *French*, and by that name possessing with the rest of those Nations the mighty Empire of the West. In the division whereof by the posterity of *Charles the Great*, these Countries were first part of the Kingdom of *Austrasia* or *East-France*, afterwards of the *German Empire*; governed at the first by Guardians or Protectors created by the people in the Reign of *Charles the Bald*, the two first being *Wickward*, and *Lupold*, (or *Leopold*) two Brethren, who fixing their chief Seat in the Castle of *Geldres*, occasioned the whole

Country to be called *Gelderland*. But they and their Successors, by what Name or Title soever called, were in effect but Provincial Officers, accountable to the Emperors for their Administration; the first free Prince hereof being *Otho* of *Nassau*, who having to his first Wife the Lady *Aleide*, Daughter of *Wickard* the last Guardian, was by the Emperor *Henry* the third made first Earl of *Gelderland*, adding thereto the State of *Zutphen* by a second Marriage, as is said before. In *Rainold* the ninth Earl it was made a Dukedom by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, anno 1339. Sold by Duke *Arnold* (justly incensed at his ungracious Son *Adolph*) to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* for 92000 Florens of ready Money, and an annual Pension, anno 1472. But notwithstanding this Agreement, *Adolph* (upon the death of *Charles*) possessed himself of it, and left it unto *Charles* his Son, who finally surrendered it unto *Charles* the fifth, anno 1547.

Earls and Dukes of *G E L D E R L A N D*.

- 1079 1. *Otho* of *Nassau* the first Earl.
- 1131 2. *Gerard* the Son of *Otho* by his first Wife *Aleide*.
- 1162 3. *Henry* the Son of *Gerard*.
- 1180 4. *Gerard* II. Son of *Henry*.
- 1202 5. *Otho* II. Brother of *Gerard*.
- 1229 6. *Gerard* III. Son of *Otho* II.
- 1271 7. *Otho* III. Son of *Gerard*, who wall'd the Towns of *Ruermond*, *Arnhem*, *Bomel*, *Goch*, *Wageningen*, and *Harderwick*.
- 1326 8. *Rainold*, Son of *Otho* III. taken and imprison'd till his death by
- 1343 9. *Rainold* II. his own Son, created the first Duke of *Geldres* by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* at *Francfort*, anno 1339. liberal to the Poor, and a great Patron of the Muses.
- 1371 10. *Rainold* III. Son of *Rainold* II. molested with continual Wars with his Brother *Edward*, by whom he was taken and imprisoned till his dying day.
- 1371 11. *Edward*, the Son of *Rainold* II. by *Eleanor* the Daughter of *Edward* III. of *England*, his second Wife, died the same Year with his Brother; the last of the male issue of *Otho* of *Nassau*.
- 1371 12. *Mary* (by some call'd *Joan*) Sister of *Edward*, by the same *Venter*, and Wife of *William* Earl of *Gulick*.
- 1371 13. *William*, Son of *William* Duke of *Gulick* and *Mary* of *Geldres*, admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* II.
- 1371 14. *Rainold* IV. the Brother of *William*.
- 1371 15. *Arnold* of *Egmond*, Son of *John* Lord of *Egmond* and *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *Joan*, the Sister of *Rainold* and *William*, the two last Dukes, succeeded in the Estate of *Geldres*; the Dukedom of *Gulick* being seized on by *Adolph*, Son of *William* the first Duke of *Berg*, as the next Heir-male to the two last Dukes. Being afterwards taken, imprisoned, and most barbarously handled by his own Son *Adolph*, and delivered by *Charles* the Warlike, Duke of *Burgundy*, he sold to him his Estates of *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, to be enjoyed by him after his decease, anno 1472.
- 1473 16. *Adolph*, the wicked Son of *Arnold*, dispossessed of his Estate by the said Agreement, which Duke *Charles* enjoyed for his Life, after the death of the said *Charles* was restored to liberty by the *Gauntois*, anno 1467. and made the General of their Forces against *Lewis* XI.
- 1477 17. *Charles*, Son of *Arnold*, after long Wars with the Princes of the Houses of *Burgundy* and *Austria*, pretending the Sale and Legacy of Duke *Arnold* to *Charles* the Warlike, surrendered his Estates unto *Charles* V. to be

enjoyed by him after his decease, if he left no Issue. According to which Contract the Emperor *Charles* succeeded him in *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, anno 1538, being the Year of his Decease; after which time they were accounted in the number of the *Belgick* Provinces.

The Arms hereof were quarterly, 1. *Azure*, a Lion Or, crowned *Gules* for the Dukedom of *Gelderland*; 2. *Azure*, a Lion *Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zutphen*.

Thus have we seen a Country which at the first erecting of these States was nothing in a manner but Bogs and Marshes, and at the best but a continual Wilderness of Woods and Forests, by the great Providence of the Princes, and extream Industry of the People, made the most populous, best planted, and the wealthiest Estate (for the bigness of it) in the whole habitable World. And we have seen those several Estates and Principalities, by Marriages and other Contracts, reduced into the hands of the House of *Burgundy*: under the Princes of which great and illustrious Family, inferior to no Kings of Christendom for Power and Riches (especially under Duke *Philip* the Good) the Subjects hereof did so abound in Wealth and Plenty, that *Philip de Comines*, who then lived, affirmeth, that this Country seemed like the *Land of Promise*. Some thought there was a purpose in this Duke *Philip* of erecting these States into a Kingdom, from which he was diverted by the difference and variety of Laws and Privileges which those People severally lived under, not to be brought without great difficulty and distaste to one form of Government: yet might he have done it, if he would, as himself openly affirmed to the Ambassadors of King *Lewis* XI. But *Charles* his Son, being more bent on the design, negotiated to that end with the Emperor *Frederick*, whom he met at *Triers*, anno 1473. and doubtless had obtain'd his purpose, upon the Marriage of his Daughter with *Maximilian*, *Frederick's* Son (which was then propounded) had not his rash Engagement against the *Swissers*, and his untimely death therein, broke the course of these Projects: which Projects had they took effect, as in all probability they had, but for that Engagement, he had extended his Dominions all along the *Rhene*, and on both sides of it, from the *Alps* to the *German Ocean*, and been the most considerable Prince at that time in Christendom; all *Alsace* in High *Germany* being sold or mortgaged to him by the Duke of *Austria*, the Dukedom of *Lorraine* at his mercy; besides the hopes he had of the Earldom of *Provence*, intended to him by King *Reny*, which would have opened him a way into the *Mediterranean*. He being dead, the Government continued as before it was; each Province having its distinct Laws, and living according to ancient Privileges, till the attempt of *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, most resolutely (but unfortunately) bent to bring them under the command of that Crown, to cancel all their Privileges, and new-mould the Estate according to his own will and pleasure; occasioning thereby the Revolt of a great part of the Country, and the setting up of a new Estate opposite unto him, and destructive of his Interest in it. But before we come unto this Change, we will first look upon the Prince's Power, Revenue, and other things considerable touching this Estate, whilst it stood entire under the Princes of the House of *Burgundy* and

Lords of *B E L G I U M*.

- 1369 1. *Philip* the Hardy, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, the first great raiser of this House.
- 1404 2. *John* the Proud, Duke of *Burgundy*, &c.
- 1419 3. *Philip* the Good added to his Estates the Dukedom of *Brabant* and *Limburg*, the Marquissate and *Mechlin* by the death of his Cousin *Philip*, the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and the Lordship of *West-Friesland*, by

- by the resignation and death of the Countess *Jaqueline*, whose next Heir he was; the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and the Earldom of *Namur*, which he bought for Money.
- 1467 4. *Charles* the Warlike, who bought the Estates of *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, and held them peaceably all his Life.
- 1476 5. *Mary*, the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian*, Son of the Emperor *Frederick*, from whom King *Lewis* the XI. of *France* took the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the greatest part of the Countries of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, unfortunately killed with a fall from her Horse, and an unseasonable Modesty in not suffering the Chirurgeon to dress her wound, the hurt which she had taken being on her thigh.
- 1482 6. *Philip* III. Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, to whom *Charles* VIII. of *France* restored all the places in *Artois* and the County of *Burgundy*, taken by his Father, married *Joan*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, King and Queen of *Spain*.
- 1506 7. *Charles* II. Archduke of *Austria*, King of *Spain*, and Emperor of that name the fifth, added to his Estate in these Countries the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, the Lordships of *Utrecht*, *Over-ysse* and *Groening*.
- 1558 8. *Philip* IV. of *Belgium*, and the second of *Spain*, invading these Countries against their Privileges, was by a great part of them rejected from being their Prince, anno 1581, which made him, after a long and bloody War, to surrender all his Interest in them to
- 1599 9. *Isabella Clara Eugenia*, his Daughter, and *Albert*, Archduke of *Austria*, whom he married to her; during whose Government a Truce for 12 Years was made, and in the Preface to that Truce, the Confederate Estates declared to be treated with as a Free State, to whom the King of *Spain* could pretend no Title.
10. *Philip* V. of *Belgium*, and the 4th of *Spain*, on the decease of the Archduchess *Isabella* his Aunt, succeeded in the possession of some, and the Title unto all the Belgick Provinces.
- 1665 11. *Charles* II. King of *Spain*, succeeded *Philip* his Father, being then an Infant of 4 years of Age.

The ordinary Revenue of these Countries to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, and after to the Kings of *Spain*, before the Breach, were estimated at Three Millions of Crowns yearly; which was more than any King in Christendom at those times received, the *French* only excepted; the very measuring of Corn in the City of *Antwerp* being Farmed yearly for 10000 Crowns in ready Money: but the extraordinary was far greater; the Estates of these Countries in the year 1550 granting to *Charles* V. an Aid which they call the *Noventale*, amounting to 150000 Crowns a Month; and yet the Provinces of *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg*, *Geldres* and *Groening*, were not rated to it. And it is said, that *Philip* II. at his first coming to the Estate, was presented with a Grant of 40 Millions of *Florens*, to be paid in a few Years. So that these Countries were the true Correlative of both his *Indies*; the loss of which, before the making of the Truce, anno 1609, cost him above 100 Millions of Crowns, and the loss of 400000 Men.

The Forces of these Princes by Land may best be seen in the expedition of *Charles* (then Earl of *Charolais*) against *Lewis* XI. whom Duke *Philip* the Good, his Father, furnished to that Enterprize with 9000 Archers, and 1400 Men at Arms, every one of which had five or six great Horses attending on him; and at his setting forward he was told by his Father, (never accompred

for a Braggart) that if he fell into any danger, he should not be abandoned for the want of 10000 fighting Men. The said Duke having thus sent away his Son, and being provoked by the Indignities of those of *Liège* and *Dinant*, who revolted from him, suddenly raised an Army of 28000 Horse, and a proportionable number of Foot, for the chastisement of that proud and rebellious People. And *Charles* himself, succeeding on the death of his Father, in his unprosperous attempt upon the *Switzers*, had no less than 80000 Men at the Battle of *Moratz*. As for their power at Sea, I find not that they kept any standing Navy, nor needed they so to do, as the case stood with them; considering that when they had occasion of any such service, they used to take up all the Ships which they found in their Harbours, (of which there never wanted good store) employing as many as they pleased, and dismissing the rest.

The principal Order of Knighthood ordained by these Princes was that of the *Golden Fleece*, first instituted by Duke *Philip* the Good (in imitation of the Order of St. *George* in *England*), Anno 1430. The Name and Fancy was borrow'd, as some conceive, from *Gideon's* Fleece; from *Jason's* Fleece, as others think; but more probably from the Golden Fleeces of *England*, which brought him in so much Gold and Treasure in the way of Custom. Their Habit is a Collar of Gold interlaced with Irons, seeming to strike fire out of a Flint, (*Ex ferro flammam* being the word;) at the end whereof hung the *Toison d'Or*, or Fleece of Gold. Their number at the first was but 25, (which is the number of Knights of the *English* Garter) increased afterwards by the same Duke *Philip* unto 31. *Charles* the first raised them to 51; and now the King of *Spain* hath assumed a liberty of making as many as he pleaseth: This being the only Military or Civil Order of which those Kings have the bestowing; the Orders of *Alicantara*, *Calatrava*, and the rest of *Spanish* Institutions; being rather Religious and Monastical, at the best but mixt. St. *Andrew's* Day is the day of Installation.

In this great Pomp and Glory did these Princes live as long as they continued in good Terms with the subject Provinces, being Masters of more goodly Jewels, magnificent Furniture for their Houses, and costly Moveables, than any three of the greatest Princes in all *Europe*. And on the other side, the Subjects, whilst they lived in Duty under so great Princes, attained unto the height of all worldly Happiness; in their Apparel excellently gorgeous, in their Feasts and Banquets over-sumptuous, in their Manners dissolute; Vices which usually accompany that kind of Felicity. An Happiness too great to continue long. By the Ambition and Violence of *Charles* the Warlike they were first plunged into a War against *Lewis* the Eleventh, of which they did not only feel the present Miseries, but lost all the Towns and Holds which they had in *Picardy*, with the whole Duchy of *Burgundy*. And by a like, but better-grounded, Ambition of *Charles* the Fifth, they were exercised in continual Wars against the *French*, who miserably harassed and ransacked the Countries of *Luxemburg*, *Hainault* and *Artois*, bordering next unto them. *Charles* at his death commended them to the special care of *Philip* his Son, advising him to use them kindly, as those that were the chief Supporters of his State and Glory; adding, that if he should deal otherwise with them, it would prove the ruine of his Fortunes. And on the other side, the People to obtain his Favour, presented him at his first entrance on the Government with a Grant of Forty Millions of *Florens*, as before was said. But he, transported with Ambition and a Catholick Zeal, not only forgot their Love, but his Father's Counsel; and had no sooner concluded a Peace with *France*, effected by the Treaty of *Cambray*, anno 1559, but presently he cast his Thoughts on the Subjection of this People to his will and pleasure. For they were so fortified with Priviledges, which their former Princes had granted, and the latter had sworn to observe, that he wanted much of that absolute and uncontrollable

controllable command which he strongly aimed at. Some of which Priviledges were, 1. That the Prince could place no stranger amongst them with Jurisdiction over their Estates and Persons, in Offices of War or Justice. 2. The Prince could give nothing to the Clergy; nor 3. Leavy any subsidies without the States of the Country. 4. But the main Prerogative was that of the *Brabanters*, (*viz.*) That if the Prince by violence or wrong did infringe any of the said Charters and *Franchises*, the people, after declaration thereof made, might go to election of a new Prince. This not a little grieved the *Spaniards*, that such base and unworthy people (for so they esteemed them) should in such liberty possess so brave and rich a Country, their King bearing no title of Majesty or absolute command over them. Besides the Reformation of Religion, which then began to grow to some strength, moved the King to reduce them back to the Church of *Rome* by the power and terrour of the *Inquisition*; and by the erecting of some new Episcopal See amongst them, (for before there were but three in all) to settle some more constant course of Ecclesiastical Discipline. Against both which, when the people violently opposed, he then resolved of bringing them by *Spanish* Rhetorick (that is, by the Sword and the Canon) to their old obedience. To these ends he sends the Duke of *Alva*, an old and expert Captain, (as having 60 years been a Souldier) with a puissant Army, to be his Vice-Roy amongst them. He also gave him a Commission of that large extent, that he might place and displace whom he would, and execute all such as he could find opposite to his designs. At that time the two chief men amongst them were the Prince of *Orange*, and Count *Egmont*; the first more potent with the *People*, the latter with the *Souldiers*. Had these two joyned together, they might easily have prevented D. *Alva's* entrance; but *Egmont* was so soothed up with the Letters from *Spain*, that he believed not the intelligence which the Prince had concerning the Duke's Commission. The Earl exhorted the Prince to submit himself to the pleasure of the King, and so to prevent the ruine of his House. The Prince desired the Earl to maintain the Liberty of the Country, as for himself, *He had rather be a Prince without a House, than a Count without an Head*. Being thus resolved, the Prince retires to his County of *Nassau* in High *Germany*; the Earl stayeth to congratulate the entrance of the new Governour: who had no sooner settled himself, but he entrapped the Counts of *Horn* and *Egmont*, and beheaded them, *An. 1567*. Being thus rid of these two, with divers others of good quality, who living would have much hindered his proceedings, he quarter'd his *Spaniards* in the Towns and Provinces, spoiled the people not of their Priviledges only, but their Liberty. Amongst the Reformed he brought in the bloody *Inquisition*; and indeed so tyrannically did he behave himself, that the people were forced to a Defensive War, as well for their Lives as Substance. This was a War of State, not Religion, the most part of the *Hollanders* being Papists at the time of their taking Arms. During these Troubles the Prince of *Orange* was not idle, but he in one place, and Count *Lodowick* his Brother in another, kept Duke *Alva* employed, though divers times not with such fortunate success as they did expect. In the year 1572. *Flushing* was surpris'd by *Voorst* and *Berland*, as we have before said: so also was the *Briel* in *Voorn*, an Island of *Holland*, by the Count de la *March*. And not long after all *Holland*, except *Amsterdam*, followed the fortune and side of the Prince: together with all the Towns of *Zeland*, *Middle-berg* excepted. *Anno. 1573*. Duke *Alva* being recalled, *Don Lewis de Requesens* was appointed Governour; during whose rule many of the *Belgians* abandoned their Country, some flying into *Germany*, others into *France*, most into *England*. After his death, and before the arrival of *Don John*, the Prince and his Party recovered strength and courage again till the coming of the Prince of *Parma*, who brought them into a worse case than ever. Yet, *Anno. 1581*. they declare, by their Writings di-

rected to all people, that *Philip* of *Spain*, was fallen from the Government; and take a new Oath of the People, which bound them never to return to the *Spanish* Obedience. This done, they elect *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, Heir apparent to the *French* King, and then in no small hopes of marrying Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, to be their Lord. But he intending rather to settle a Tyranny in himself, than to derive it from the *Spaniard*, attempted *Antwerp*, put his men into the Town, but was by the valour of the *Burgers* shamefully repulsed: shame of this ignoble enterprise, especially grief for its ill success, took him out of the world. About which time the Estates of these Countries were thus by the Hieroglyphick expressed. A Cow represented the Body of *Belgium*, there stood the King of *Spain* spurring her, the Queen of *England* feeding her, the Prince of *Orange* milking her, and Duke *Francis* plucking her back by the tail, but she foul'd his fingers. During his unfortunate Government, *Parma* prevailed in all places, especially after the death of *William* Prince of *Orange*, treacherously slain with a Pistol, *Anno. 1584*. Now were the poor *Hollanders* truly miserable, desperate of Pardon from their Prince, and having none to lead them, none to protect them, but such as were likely to regard their own profit more than theirs. *England* was the only Sanctuary they had now left; to which they sue, offering the Queen thereof the Sovereignty of their Provinces, who had, if not a Right, yet a plausible Title to them, as being lineally descended from *Edward* the third and *Philip* his Wife, who was Sister and (as some say) Heir to *William* Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. If *Margaret* from whom the Right of *Spain* is derived, were Daughter to Earl *William*, then was our Queen to succeed after *Philip*, who was rejected: If that *Margaret* were (as many write) his younger Sister, then was our Queen the undoubted Heir, her Predecessor *Philippa* being Earl *William's* elder Sister. But that Heroick Queen not disputing the right of the Title, nor intending to her self any thing save the honour of relieving her distressed Neighbours, and providing for her own Estate by this diversion, took them into her Protection. Under which the *Belgian* Affairs succeeded so prosperously (I will not now stand upon the particulars) that before they would hearken to any Treaty of Peace, they forced the King of *Spain* to this Conclusion, that he treated with them as with a free Estate, abstracted from all Right and Title which he might pretend unto the places which they were possessed of. This Peace was concluded *Anno 1609*. Since which time they have kept Garrisons well disciplined, and as well paid: so that these Countries have in these latter days been the *Campus Martius*, or School of defence, for all Christendom, to which the youth of all Nations repair to see the manner of Fortifications, and learn the Art of War, and the use of their Weapons. Thus did they for 40 years hold the staff against a most puissant Monarch, and in the end capitulated with a great advantage; that it is observed, that whereas all other Nations grow poor by War, these only grow rich. Whereupon it is remarkable to consider into what follies and extremities Princes run by using their People to the War. The Kings of *France* place most of their hopes in their Cavalry, because in policy they would not that the vulgar should be exercised in Arms, *Lycorgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedemonians*, that they should never fight often with one enemy: the breaking whereof made the *Thebans* a small Commonwealth, to be their equals in power: whereupon it was tartly said by *Amalcidas* to *Agessilaus* King of *Sparta*, that by his frequent warring on them and fighting with them, he had made the *Thebans* good Soldiers against their wills. The *Turks* won the vast Empire they now possess by making many and speedy Wars. But now that policy being worn out of Fashion, we see that (to omit *Persia*) the little and distracted Kingdom of *Hungary* hath for 200 years resisted their Forces. So was it betwixt the Dukes of *Austria* and the *Switzers*, and so it is between the *Spaniard* and Low-Country-

Country-men; who formerly being accounted a dull and heavy people, altogether unfit for the Wars, by their continual combating with the *Spaniard*, are become ingenious, full of Action, and great managers of causes appertaining to fights, either by Sea or Land. We may hereby also perceive what advantage a small State gaineth by fortifying places and passages: there being nothing which sooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince than to beleaguer a well-fortified Town; for that herein he consumeth his time, and commonly looseth his men, credit and money; as the *Romans* before *Numantia*, the great *Turk* in *Malta*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy* before *Nancie*. For where War is drawn out of Field unto the Walls, the Mattock and Spade being more necessary than the Sword and Spear, there the Valour of the Assailant is little available, because it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as before we brought these several Estates and Provinces into one hand, so now we have broke them into two; the one part continuing in Obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themselves as a State apart. Under the King remain the Dukedoms of *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg* and *Brabant*, some few Towns excepted) the Marquisate of the Empire, the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Artois* and *Flanders*, (except only *Schays*) and the Lordship or Seignoury of *Mechlin*, with many places of importance in the Dutchie of *Geldres*, to countervail the Towns that are held from them in *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Country, and more fruitful in regard of the Commodities there naturally growing, but as much inferiour to the other in power and riches, by reason of their strength in Shipping, by which they have the command at Sea, and thereby draw the whole Trade of Christendom, driven before at *Antwerp*, to *Amsterdam*, and other Towns of their Confederacy. Since our Author wrote, a great part of this Country has in three Great and Bloody Wars been extorted by the *French*, and the rest which remain in the hands of the *Spaniards* is preserved more by the *Hollanders*, *English*, and *Germans*, than by any strength the *Spaniards* have of their own: So that it is now one of the Poorest, weakest and most broken States in Christendom, Harra's'd on all occasions, and without any hope of Deliverance.

For the General Government of these Provinces there is a Regent sent from the Court of *Spain*, whose Authority is generally as great as that of the King; save that all matters of moment pass under the Kings name, and that all Officers of any great trust and concernment are appointed by him, and that all Laws, Decrees, Sentences, and Negotiations are dispatched in his name also. For the assistance of the Regent there is a Privy Council, a Council of State, and a Council of Finances, by whom all things are ordered which concern the Publick, the Regent's Authority co-operating and concurring with them, without which, though they may consult, they can execute nothing. And for the Governance and well ordering of their several Provinces there is in every one of them a Lieutenant or Provincial Government, subordinate to the Regent, and accountable to him; and in each Province a particular Council held in the King's name, consisting of more or less Counsellors, (as the bigness of the Province is) for the most part Doctors or Licentiates of the Civil Laws, with a President at the Head thereof, which in some places they call the *Parliament*, after the manner of the *French*, and in some the *Chancery*. To these Courts all the Subjects do resort for Justice, in Causes both Criminal and Civil: to these are brought Appeals from inferior Judicatures, such as the Courts of great Towns and particular Franchises: and from these lyeth an appeal to the great Council at *Mechlin*, supreme and superintendent unto all the rest.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwise is of publick moment, the Regent sendeth out Letters in the King's name, to com-

mand the Estates, that is to say, the Clergy, the Nobility, and the Principal Towns of every Province, (except those of *Luxemburg*, *Geldres*, *West-Friesland* and *Over-Iffel*, who by special Priviledge cannot be called out of their own Countries) to come before him. The place of their Assembly is for the most part at *Bruxels*, the Court and Residence of the Regent; because the *Libertiers* are also Priviledged not to be summoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the States Assemble not altogether, but those of one Province at a time, so one after another: to whom the President, or some one of the Council of State proposeth in the Princes name that which he demandeth. To which if any Town oppose, then all which the rest have done is of no effect, nothing being granted by the Deputies or States of any Province, but with this condition, that all the rest of the Estates do agree unto it. Without this punctual consent of all parties interrested, the Prince can impose nothing, by their Laws upon the Subject nor alter any thing at all in the publick Government.

And as the people are thus Priviledged in regard of the Prince, so are the Princes and Prelates priviledged in regard of the Pope, it being agreed upon between them.

1. That the Prince is to give Clergy-Benefices, and the Pope to confirm them.
2. That neither Prelate nor Lay-person may be cited to *Rome*, but the Pope to send his Delegates or Commissioners into the Country.
3. The Pope not to give a Benefice, nor grant a Pardon, nor send a Bull into the Country, without the leave of the Prince.
4. That no Clergy-man can buy Lands or other immoveables, without the Princes consent. And
5. That the Prince hath power to visit the Clergy, to see if they be well governed or not; and if they be not, to reform the Abuses.

Great Priviledges, if consider'd rightly, greater than which few Protestant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the Revenue raised by the *Spaniard* out of his part of this Estate, it is not easy to be guessed at; and of that which is, there comes but little to his *Coffers*. The expences of his Court there is as great as ever under any of the former Regents; and his charge of entertaining Souldiers for his Towns and Garrisons greater than before. Nor doth it now stand with reason of State to lay any Arbitrary Taxes upon the people, lest he exasperate them to a second Rebellion, or startle them to some new Confederacy against his Quiet.

Under the Government of the Confederate *States* are the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, excepting some few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniard*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland* and *Zutphen*, the Seignouries of *West-Friesland*, *Streecht*, *Over-Iffel*, *Groning*, the Town of *Schays*, with the Isle of *Cassand* in *Flanders*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchy of *Brabant*. This is the lesser part by far, and far inferiour to the other in regard of the Soil, but the more populous of the two, and by the Industry and great Trading of the people the more rich and powerful. They are governed after their own old Laws, by the particular Estates of every Province, not yet united into one entire Body of a Common-wealth; saving that for the better preservation of their Confederacy, the Commissioners of the several Provinces do consult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States General*.

The Estates of the particular Provinces elected out of the principal Towns and Places of most importance, do order the Affairs thereof according to their ancient Priviledges, Rights, and Customs, as well by themselves as by their Collegues and Officers whom they do appoint; and that as well for matters of State as in point of Justice. For Administration of the which, the Governours, President, and Counsellors of the Provincial Courts, have the cognizance of all Cases, both civil and criminal,

Criminal, and in all Causes of Appeal from inferiour Courts; in each of which they proceed without Appeal, making their Acts and Commissions in the name of the said Governors, Presidents and Council; but pronouncing Sentence and executing Judgment in right of the Sovereignty of the said Province. And these provincial States are chosen generally out of the Plebeians or common People; and the Burghers (at the best) of the greater Townships: the Nobility and Gentry being so worn out, that in all *Holland* and *Zeland* there are not left above three Families of Gentlemen, and those compelled to live after the Plebeian Fashion for fear of Envy, and to avoid the Insolency of the saucy Clowns, who out of rudeness and the desire of Equality, hate nothing more among them than the name of a Gentleman.

Out of these *Provincial States*, which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleasure of the Community for which they serve, are chosen one or more for each several Province, according to the Condition and Capacity of those which are chosen, to reside at the *Hague*, there to consult of the Affairs which concern the Publick: but so, that be they more or less out of every Province they make amongst them but one Suffrage, when any thing is put unto the Vote. And these they call the *States General*, first because a collected Body out of all the Provinces; and, secondly, because they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular Concernment, which are determinable absolutely by the States Provincial, but only in such things as concern the General Good of the whole Estate, as treating with Ambassadors, making War and Peace, &c. For their Assistance in the which, there is a Council of State, made up of the Governors and some eminent Men of every Province, (in which the Ambassador of *England*, as long as we held *Flushing* and the other Cautionary Towns, had his Voice or Suffrage) by whose Advice they dispose of all things which concern the Publick: but so, that if any difficulty do appear in the Businesses, they conclude nothing till they have the Approbation and Consent of the particular Cities and Provinces for which they are chosen; to whom they are accountable for their Administration, and by whom revocable whensoever they please.

The Revenue of this Estate doubtless is exceeding great, the Army which they keep in continual Entertainment consisting of no less than 30000 Men; which they can draw into the Field, leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided; yet so well paid that we never read of any Mutiny amongst them for want there-

of. The whole Charge, with the Entertainment of Captains and superior Officers, is said to amount to 500000*l. per Annum*; raised on the People by Excise laid upon all Commodities, and many Taxes of like nature, so insupportable in themselves, and amongst Men which would be thought to live in a Free State, that should the *Spaniard* or any Prince in Christendom lay but half so much on their Subjects, it would occasion a Revolt. So that whereas one of the first Causes of their falling off from the King of *Spain* was to free themselves from Taxes and Impositions illegally (as they said) enforced upon them; they have drawn on themselves more arbitrary and illegal Payments than any Nation in the World. So little have they got by the Change of Government. Touching their Power at Sea, we have spoke of already. All I shall now add to it is by way of Instance, which is, That in the Year 1587 the King of *Denmark*, on pretence of some displeasure, arrested 608 Ships of theirs of all sorts at one time in the *Sound*; and that the next Year after they set out, upon very short warning, an Hundred good Men of War, to join with *England* against the invincible *Armado*, which then threatened both. To conclude, there is nothing wanting to these Countries wherewith the God of all Blessings doth enrich a Nation, but a gracious Prince, unity of Religion, and a quiet Government: which if it pleased the Almighty to confer upon them, they would surpass all Neighbouring States in Treasure, Potency, Content, and all worldly Happiness.

The Form of their Government is excellently described by Sir *William Temple*, which is done with that accuracy that the *Hollanders* themselves have approved of it, and honoured him by placing his Picture in their State-House at *Nimmeghen*. Their miraculous delivery from that horrible Outrage of the *French* in the year 1672, by the Courage and Prudence of the present Prince of *Orange*, the second Founder of these States, will be also celebrated by Posterity according to its worth, but shall for the present be omitted.

There are in these Countries,

Archbishops 3.
Bishops 15.

Universities 7. { *Lovain, Liege,*
 { *Doway, Leiden,*
 { *Harderwick, Groening.*
 { *Franker.*

And so much for *BELGIUM*.

A Representation of the Order observed in the DYE TS held by the College of PRINCES in GERMANY.

Ecclesiastical Bench.

The Marshal of the Empire.

The Secular Bench.

Austria
Burgundy } by Turns.
Salzburg
Belanzon
The Grand Ma- } in Competi-
ster *Teutonic* } tion.
Bamberg
Wurtzburg } by Turns
Worms
Eichstadi
Spire
Strasbourg
Constance
Ausburg.

The Directoral Table.

AUSTRIA.

Eisenack } In Competition.
Giebs
Weimar
Coburg } In Competition
Altenburg } with *Bavaria*.
Laurack
Zunbrucken or } In Competition
Deuxponts } with *Bavaria*.
Bremen
Nemburg
Simmeren } In Competition with
Lamperen } *Bavaria*.
Bavaria

A cross Bench.

Osnabruck
Lubeck
Magdeburg

Prothocollists.

Prothocollists.

Brandenburg Culmbach
Brandenburg Ansbach
Brunswick Zell
— *Gruben-Hgen*
— *Calemburg*
— *Wolfsmbutel*
Halberstad
Verden or Ferden

The Changeable Houses.
1. { *Pomerania Superior*
 { *Pomerania Inferior*
2. { *Mecklemburg Sverin*
 { *Mecklemburg Gustraw*
3. *Wirtemberg*
4. { *Hesse Cassel*
 { *Hesse Darmstad*
 { *Baden Baden*
5. { *Baden Durlack*
 { *Baden Hochberg*

Saxon Lawemburg
Minden
Holstein { *Gluckstadt*
 { *Gotthorp.*

Savoy
Lucht emburg
Anhalt
Henneberg
Schwerin
Ratzburg
Hirschfels
Nomeni
Montbeliard
Arnberg
Hohenzollen
Egenberg
Lobckowitz.
Salmz

Dietrichstein
Nassau Hadmar
Picolimini
Namssaw Dillenburg
Aursberg
East-Friesland
Furstenberg
Oeringen
Swartzenberg

The Counts of { *Weteraw*
 { *Schwaben* } by Turns
 { *Franconia*
 { *Westphalia*

The PORTAL.
of the
HALL.

The Seats of the STATES in a GENERAL DYET.

ELECTORS.

BRANDENBURG,
BAVARIA,
MENTS.

The EMPEROR or
his Commissioner.

TRIERS.

ELECTORS.

COLEN,
SAXONY,
PALATIN.

The Benches of Ecclesiastical
PRINCES.

The Archduke of *Austria*
The Duke of *Burgundy*
The Archbishop of *Saltzburg*
The Archbishop of *Refanzon*
The Grand Master of the Teutonic Order

The BISHOPS of
Bamberg
Wurtzburg
Wormes
Eichstad
Spire

Strasburg
Constance
Ausburg
Hildesheim
Paderborne
Erfinghen
Ratisbon
Passaw
Trent

Brixzen
Basil
Liege
Osnabruck
Munster
Chur

The ABBOTS of

Fuld
Kempten
Elwangen
Luders
Mourbach

The Grand Master of the
Order of St. JOHN

Bergtesgaden
Weiffenburg
Prume
Stablo
Corbey

The PRELATES of

Schwaben
The Rhene

The Bishop of
Osnabruck
The Bishop of
Lubeck

A cross Bench

The Count of
Papenheim.

The Benches of the Se
cular PRINCES.

The DUKES of

Bavaria
Magdeburg
Palatine Lauter
Simmeren
Newburg
Bremen
Zenbrucken or Deuxpont
Lautreck

Saxony Altenburg
Coburg
Weimar
Gotha
Eisenach

Brandenburg Culmbach
Ansbach
Brumswick Wolfenbuttel
Zell
Crabenhagen
Calemberg

Verden
Halberstad
Pomerania Superior
Pomerania Inferior
Mecklenburg Swerin
Gustrow

Wirttemberg
Hesse Cassel
Darmstadt

Baden Baden
Dourlach
Hochberg

Saxony Lawenburg
Minden
Holstein Gluckstad
Gothorp

Savoy
Leuchtenberg
Anhalt
Henneberg
Swerin
Ratzburg
Hirschfeld

Lorrain
Montbelliard
Aremberg
Hohenzoleern

Eggenberg
Lobcowitz
Salms
Dietrichstein

Nassau
Hademar, and
Sigen
Dilenberg
Aversberg

The COUNTS of
Weteraw
Franconia
Westphalia

The Directoral Table.

IMPERIAL CITIES.

The Bench of the RHENE.

Colen
Aix la Chapelle
Strasburg
Lubeck
Wormes
Spire
Francfort
Wetzlar
Gelnhausen
Haguenaw
Colmar

Schlestad
Weiffenburg
Landaw
Oberenheim
Kaisersberg
*Munster in the Val-
ley of St. Gregory*
Rosheim
Tirchem
Dort Mont
Friedberg.

The Bench of SCHWABEN.

Ratisbone
Ausburg
Nuremberg
Ulm
Memmingen
Kaufbeuren
Efingen
Revelingen
Nortlingen
Dinckelspiel
Bibrach
Alen
Bopfingen
Gingen
Rotenburg
Hall in Schwaben
Rotweil
Uberlingen

Pfulendorff
Weil
Heilbrun
Buchorn
Wangen
Gernond
Lindaw
Ravensburg
Windsheim
Wempfen
Offenbur
Zell a Namersbach
Buchaw upon Tedersee
Lent Kerch
Swinfort
Kempten
Weiffenburg in Nortgow
Gengenbach.

O F G E R M A N Y.

GERMANY is bounded on the East with Prussia, Poland and Hungary; on the West with France, Switzerland, and Belgium; on the North with the Baltick Seas, the Ocean, and some part of Denmark; on the South with the Alps, which part it from Italy. By which account the modern Germany much differeth from that described by Tacitus and others of the Roman Writers: that comprehending the three Kingdoms of Denmark, Norway, and Sweeden, with so much of the Kingdom of Poland as lieth on this side of the River Vistula; but bounded on the East with the Rhene, and on the South with the Danow: the modern Germany containing on the farther banks of those Rivers five whole Roman Provinces, that is to say, Noricum Ripense, and Mediterraneum, Rhatia secunda, Belgica and Germania prima, with some parts of Rhatia prima and Germania secunda: but terminated with the Danes and the Baltick Sea.

It was first called thus by the Romans, (as some conceive) who seeing the People both in Customs, Speech and course of Life so like those of Gallia, called them the Germani to the Gauls; the word Germanus in the Latin signifying a Brother of the whole Blood, (as our Lawyers phrase it) that is to say, a Brother both by Father and Mother; those which have the same Mother, but divers Fathers, being called *Fratres germani*. And of this mind is Strabo, who speaking of the great resemblance which was betwixt these Nations in Manners, Speech, Customs and way of Life, concludes it thus, that the Romans did with very good reason call them Germani, cum fratres, eos, Gallorum hoc nomine vellent ostendere; intending to signifie by that name, that they were the Brethren of the Gauls. But this is to be understood of those People only which dwelt next to Gaul, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vast Continent according to the ancient extent thereof; it being very well observed by Tacitus, that Germany was at first Nationis, non Gentis, nomen, the name of some of the Nations only, not of all the Country; the name in process of time spreading over all that large Tract of ground and those scattered Nations which were either conquer'd by them or incorporate with them. Others will have the name to be meerly Dutch, deriving it from Ger, which signifieth All, and the word Man, signifying in that Language as in ours; whence also they derive the name of Almans, by which they would imply that the Almans or Germans are a very warlike Nation, a People that have in them nihil nisi virile, nothing not worthy of a Man. Bochartus, somewhat near to this, telling us that Ger in the ancient Gallick did signifie as much as Guerre in the modern French, would have them at their first coming over the Rhene to be called Germans by the Gauls, that is to say, Men of War (or Gens de Arms in the present French) by reason of the great and many Victories obtained by them.

The like diversity I find for the name of Almans. For though some gave them the name of Almans from the same Originals from whence they fetch the name of Germans, as was said before, yet others as probably conjecture that they had that name because they consisted of so many several Nations coming out of the North and North-East hither, that they seemed to be a Hotch-potch of all sorts of Men, kneaded into one Name and Nation; which is the conceit of Asinius Quadratus. But for my part, I do conceive (supposing the name of Almans to be Dutch originally) that the whole Country was not called Almain till such time as the Princes of

the Dukedom of Almany (since called Saccia, or Schwaben) did possess the Empire, which continuing in that potent Family near 100 Years, might very well occasion them to be called the Emperors of Almain, or the Almain Race, and so impart that name to the Empire also. And for the Almans naturally and properly so called (of whom we shall speak more when we come to Suevia) I see no Etymology more agreeable to true Antiquity, than to derive the name from Mannus the Son of Tuisco, one of their Gods, and a principal Founder of this Nation, (Tuiscum Deum & filium Mannum; originem gentis conditoresque,) as it is said by Tacitus; the People being called Alemanni (with a double n) in all ancient Writers, as Men that did derive themselves from this Mannus, the Son of Tuisco. In like sorts as (I think) the Marcomanni, inhabiting the Countries of Moravia, were so called, as being the Manni of the Marches, or Outborders of Germany, and not the Markmans, as if they were Men of Mark, the only Men of Fame and Honour of all those Nations; which might as well be pressed from the Dutch Original as that of A'-mana, in the meaning by them pretended. And unto this Opinion I am swayed the rather, because I find the Dutch Nation generally so much inclined to derive their Original from Tuisco, (from whom the Teutones, inhabiting about Brandenburg, may well fetch their Pedegree;) the name of Dutch! and or Dutchmen coming near in sound to Tuisc-land and Tuisc-men. In which I shall subscribe to Verstegan's Opinion, though for the most part I look upon him but as the second part of Goropius Becanus.

But being the Etymologies of the Names of most ancient Nations are very uncertain, and for the most part founded on Conjectures only; let us leave the name a while, and survey the Countrey: the length whereof (according to the truest and exactest measurement) from East to West, that is to say from the Vistula or Weissel to the Rhene, is estimated at 840 Italian Miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to say, from the Ocean to the Town of Brixen in Tyrol, 740 of the same Miles. So that the Figure of it being near a Square, it may take up 3160, miles in compass, or thereabouts. Situate in the Northern temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parellels of the sixth and tenth Climates, the longest day in the most Southern parts, being 15 hours and an half, and in the most Northern 17 hours and a quarter.

In this compass and extent of Ground are supposed to live 10 millions of People. The Men of the poorer sort are laborious, painful, and of a sincere and honest Carriage; the Nobles for the most part either Scholars or Soldiers, and true lovers of Honour; though Tacitus hath otherwise resolved it, affirming that the Gauls fight for Liberty, the Belgians for Honour, and the Germans for Gain. Which yet is true enough of the common Soldiers, who, if they fail of Pay, fail in Courage presently. Of both sorts they are generally tall and big, of great Bones, much Fleth, and large Sinews, but commonly of such a phlegmatick Constitution, that they have not Spirit enough to manage such a mass of Fleth as they bear about them. Which want of natural heat to concoct that Humour makes them for the most part to be Men of a bright or light brown Hair, and fair Complexions. They are little addicted to Venus, and very much to Bacchus; whence the Proverb, *Vivere Germanorum est bibere*; and the old Verses,

Germani possunt cunctos tolerare labores.

O utinam possent tam bene ferre sitim.

The Dutch themselves to labour well inure.

O would they Thirst could half so well endure.

This love unto their Liquor, together with their natural Temper, maketh them fat and corpulent. Whereupon Pope *Julius* the second, stiling the *Spaniards Birds of the Air*, because of their Ambition; the *Venetians and Genoefes Fishes of the Sea*, because so much accustomed to Navigation; called the *Germans* by the name of the *Beasts of the Field*. And when *Augustus* was resolv'd to take unto himself the supreme Government of *Rome*, he was advis'd by *Agrippa* to chuse a Guard of *Germans* to attend upon him. The reason was (as *Dion* giveth it) Because in those great Bodies there was little Malice hidden, and less Subtilty; and that they were a People that took more pleasure to be commanded than to command. In matters of War this People have been formerly in a measure famous; yet not so much by the Valour or Conduct of their Captains (for they have had but few such) as by their own hardiness. They withstood the *Romans* 210 years, afflicting and troubling them more in that space than either the *Carthaginians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, or *Parthians*; and even at the last (saith *Tacitus*) *Triumphati magis sunt quam victi*, They were rather Triumph'd over than Conquer'd. In our times the *Rutters* and *Lansknights* of *Germany* (for so they called their Horse and Foot) have been much employ'd: but more by reason of their numbers, easily rais'd out of so large a Country, than any opinion of their Valour; being slow of motion, dull of apprehension, fearful of putting any thing to the chance of War. By reason of which fearfulness, as they are very cruel upon all advantages, not sparing either age or sex when they get the Victory; so are they apt to run upon any Alarm, not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any persuasions. Inasmuch as *Charles* Count of *Mansfield*, General of an Army of 50000 fighting Men, but most of this Nation, was forced to suffer a small Army of 10000 *Turks* to pass by his Trenches, being then strongly encamp'd before *Sri-gonium*, (now *Gran*) a Town of *Hungary*, and to victual the Town before his face; not daring to set upon them or disturb their purpose, for fear least, being lustily charg'd, his *Germans* would give back and endanger all. (Their latter Wars with the *French* and *Turks* under the prudent and brave Conduct of the Duke of *Lorraine* have within this 20 Years so exalted the Courage and Experience of this Nation, that at this day 10000 *Germans* would as bravely and by God's blessing as successfully Attack and Overcome 50000 *Turks*.) And yet besides these weaknesses, they have some great faults. One of which is a custom, if their Wages be not duly paid (tho' it be in the very midst of a Battel) to cry *Guelts*, *Guelts*, throwing down their Weapons, and suffer themselves to be cut in pieces by the Enemy. And so they served *Frederick* the Elector *Palatine* at the Battel of *Prague*. The other is an extreme humour of Spoil and Plunder; on which they are so bent wheresoever they come, that such as entertain them have just cause to say, that they receive more damage by them than they do by their Enemies. Two undecivable notes of mercenary Valour.

The Women are of a good Complexion, but by reason of their intemperance in eating and drinking, much given to corpulency; Women of a good Carriage (as the saying is) good Bearers, and as fruitful Breeders; servilely obsequious to their Husbands, whom many of good Rank serve at the Table with Trenchers and other necessities; and take away when he hath done, eating the residue apart with and amongst their Maids, scarce sitting down with him once a week; and then too at the lower end, or at some such distance. And though the Women by their Laws have a propriety in their Goods, which they bring with them at their Marriage, or are given them after (so as the Husband hath but the use of them only) and may dispose of them by their last Will at the time of their death; yet is their condition thereby little better, the

Husband being no less churlish and imperious than he would be otherwise. Which made *Caracalla* to say often, that only that Nation knew how to rule their Wives, which added the *Feminine Article to the Sun*, and the *Masculine to the Moon*, as the *Germans* do. Most of them, as well Wives as Virgins, (except Persons of Honour) use to go bare-footed within doors, and seldom put on Shoes or Stockings, but when they are to go abroad on their occasions. A thing that seems the more strange in regard of the extrem coldness of the Country, which is so fierce that generally they lodge between two Feather-beds both in Summer and Winter: and the most Houses have their Stoves, of which the doors and windows are kept very close, as well to retain the heat, as to keep out the cold. Which tho' they may be useful and inoffensive in Gentlemen's houses, yet in the common Inns, where all sorts of People are necessitated to throng together, the ill smells, never purged by admitting any fresh Air, are ready to stifle and choak up the Spirits of raw Travellers, not accustomed to them.

The Diet of *Germany*, *France* and *Italy*, is by a Traveller thus censur'd: The *Germans* have much Meat, but sluttishly dress'd; the *French* little, but nearly cooked; the *Italians* neither the one nor the other. And to say truth, the *Germans* have meat enough; the People being generally of good stomachs, and either by nature or ill custom excessive both in eating and drinking, seldom rising from the Table till they have devour'd all which was set before them. Inasmuch that in some places it is provided by Law, that in their Feasts they shall not sit above five hours at the Table. During which time, if by Intemperance either in eating or drinking a Man disgorge his foul Stomach in his fellow's Lap, or piss under the Table, it is no disgrace to him, nor at any time taken notice of to his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and excessive drinking is not only cherish'd among the Vulgar, but even amongst their greatest Princes; who, besides what they do in this kind themselves, have their drinking Champions, as well to answer all Challenges, as to challenge all comers, contending with each other, as a point of State, whose Cellar shall afford the greatest and most capable Vessels.

The Title of the Father descends to all the Children; every Son of a Duke being a Duke, and every Daughter a Dutchess: a thing which the *Italians* hold so ridiculous that they put it in the fore-front of this facetious Satyr. The Dukes and Earls of *Germany*, the Dons of *Spain*, the Monsieurs of *France*, the Bishops of *Italy*, the Nobility of *Hungary*, the Lords of *Scotland*, the Knights of *Naples*, and the Younger Brethren of *England*, make a poor Company. For by this common assuming of the Father's Honour, and the parting his Lands among all the Brethren, the Nobility is beyond reason multiplied; and no less impoverish'd; there being not long since seventeen Princes of *Anhalt*, and twenty-seven Counts of *Mansfield*; to most of which their Arms have been the best part of their Riches, & nihil nisi arma & manus & in his omnia, as *Tacitus* once said of the ancient *Britains*. And yet there is not one of this poor Nobility that will vouchsafe to marry with the Daughter of the wealthiest Merchant, or suffer any of their Sisters to be married to any under the degree of a Nobleman; nor any juster cause of a Dithering their Children than ignoble Marriages: they never permitting the Issue of such a Bed to succeed in any of their Fees, Estates or Titles: by means whereof, tho' they debar themselves of such accessions of Wealth as Matches of that kind might bring them; yet, to the great honour of their generosity in this particular, they preserve the pure Stream of their Blood from running into muddy Channels, and keep the Spirits of brave Men though they want the Fortunes.

The Languages here spoken are, the *French* in *Lorraine*, and in some Towns of the Bishop of *Triers*; the *Italian* in the highest part of *Tyrol*, which lie next to the Commonwealth of *Venice*; the *Slavonian* spoken in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and some parts of *Lusatia*; and the *High Dutch*, the general Language of the Country. A Language

Language very ancient doubtless, (though I am not so much a *Geropian* as to think it spoken in Paradise, or before the Flood) and such as, by reason of the little or no impression which the *Roman* Armies made upon this Country, hath less commixture with the *Latin* than any which is used in these Western parts, (the *Welch* excepted) and is very harsh by reason of its many Consonants.

This Country was esteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but unpeopled Forests, unprofitable Heaths; and unhealthful Pools. *Germaniam informem terris, asperam cælo, tristem cultu aspectuque*, Germany is a deformed Land, under a sharp Air and both as to the sight and Habit of it sad or unpleasant, as he farther addeth. And such no doubt it was in those times wherein *Tacitus* lived; the people not being civilized, nor the Country cultivated, nor any means found out to rectify the sharpness of that Northern Air. But he who doth observe it now, cannot but confess that there is no Country in the World either better planted, or replenished with more goodly and gallant Cities; being also in most parts both pleasant, healthy and profitable; abounding with Mines of Silver and inferiour Metals, plentiful in Corn and Vines, with which they supply the defect of other Nations, as also with Flesh, Fish, Linnen, Quicksilver, Alum, Saffron, Armour and other Iron-works. The Arable Lands are so spacious in the Eastern parts, that the Husbandman going forward with his Plough in the morning, turneth not back again till noon; so making but two Furrows for his whole daies work. For this *Verstegan* is my Author; and if it be not credible, let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of most eminency in the elder times were 1. *Aminius* the Prince of the *Cherusci*, who overthrew *Quintilius Varus* and the *Roman* Legions. 2. *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*. For the middle Ages, 3. *Otho*, the first, 4. *Frederick Barbarossa*, 5. *Rodolph of Habsburg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*; 6. *Henry*, surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*. And in the last Century of years, 7. *Frederick* the second, Elector *Palatine*, who made good *Vienna* against the *Turks*; 8. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, of whom more hereafter. 9. *Ernest* Earl of *Mansfield*, 10. *John-George* of *Jagerndorf*, 11. *Albert Wallenstein* Duke of *Fridland*, and divers others of late days.

Scholars of note the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; Learning being here so rare in the middle of the eighth Century, that *Vigilius* Bishop of *Salzburg* was condemned of Heresie, for holding that there were *Antipodes*. In the next Age there flourished *Rabanus Maurus*, *Haimo* of *Halberstadt*, *Walafridus Strabus*, men learned for the times they liv'd in. And in the following times, *Ockam*, a stout defender of the Rights of the Empire against the Encroachments of the Pope, *Otho Frisingensis* the Historian, *Albertus Magnus* the Philosopher; of which last it is said, that he made the *Statua*, of a Man, which with the help of Artificial Engines could speak articulately, and was the work of 50 years. Then in the days of our Grandfathers we have 1. *Martin Luther*, that great instrument of the Reformation. 2. *Philip Melancthon*, his Coadjutor in that work, but of more excellent parts, and far better temper; thence called the *Phoenix* of that age. 3. *Joachim Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*. 4. *Martin Chemnitz*, a solid and laborious Writer. 5. *Flacius Illyricus*, the chief Author of the *Magdeburgian Centuries*, and Father of the *Rigid Lutherans*. 6. *Sebastian Munster*, and industrious Cosmographer, and a learned Linguist. 7. *Silburgius*, and 8. *Buxtorfius*, as great Linguists as he, and *John Steidan*, the Learned and Industrious Author of the History of the Reformation. Not to descend to farther instances in those who have so filled the Marts of *Frankfort* in these latter times.

But the greatest excellency of this people lieth in the Mechanical part of Learning, as being eminent for many Mathematical Experiments, strange Water-works, Me-

dicinal Extractions, Chymistry, the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no less benefit than admiration of the World. Amongst which I cannot chuse but instance in that work of *Regiomontanus*, an excellent Mathematician, and a cunning Artizan, spoken of by *Keckerman*; who at the coming of the Emperor *Maximilian* to the City of *Nuremberg*, made a wooden eagle, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meet him; and being come to the place where he was, returned back of its own accord, and so accompanied him to his Lodging. A thing if true (as the Relator was a man of too much gravity to abuse the World with an untruth) exceedingly beyond that Miracle of a flying Dove, for which *Archytas* is so famed amongst the ancients. Exceeded only by himself in a like invention, which was that of an Iron Fly, (the greater Miracle of Art, because less in quantity) which at a Feast, to which he had invited some of his special Friends, flew from his hand about the Room and returned again, as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*; expressed thus by *Divine Du Bartas*.

Once as this Artist, more with mirth than meat,
Feasted some Friends, whom he esteemed great,
From his learn'd hand an Iron Flie flew out,
And, having flown a perfect Round-about,
With wearied wings return'd unto her Master,
And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.
O divine Wit, that in the narrow Womb
Of a small Flie could find sufficient room
For all those Springs, Wheels, Counterpoise & Chains,
Which stood instead of Life, and Spur, and Reins!
And amongst these I reckon *Bertholdus Smart*, a *Franciscan* Frier, the Inventer (though by accident) of that fatal Instrument, the Gun. Studious in Chymistry, he mingled dried Earth, Sulphur, and some other Ingredients, which he had put into a Mortar covered with a stone; and striking Fire to light a Candle, as the night came on, a spark by chance fell into the Mortar, and catching hold of the Sulphur and other Minerals, with great violence blew up the stone wherewith it was covered. Amazed at which, he made trial severally of these Ingredients, to find out which of them it was that produced that effect: which having discovered, he cauled an Iron Pipe to be made, crammed it with Sulphur, Saltpetre, and Stones; and putting fire to it, saw with what violent noise and fury it discharged it self. This Invention he is said to have first communicated to the *Venetians*, Anno 1330, or thereabouts, who having been often vanquished by the *Genoeses*, and driven almost to a necessity of yeilding to them, by the help of their Guns (*Bombards* they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable discomfiture. And this was the first Battle that ever those warlike Pieces had a part in; which not long after put to silence all the Engines and Devices wherewith the Ancients were wont to make their Batteries. The next that made use of this instrument were the Inhabitants of the *Baltick* Sea: and not long after them the *English* at the Siege of *Cullice*, Anno 1347; about which time they began also to be used in *France*: The *French*, it seemeth, learned the use of them from the *English*, and the first benefit received by them, was the death of that famous Leader, *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, who at the Siege of *Orleans* was slain with a great shot, An. 1425. Twenty years after this, An. 1446, they were first used in *Spain*, at the Siege of *Setteville*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Granada*, by the *Castilians*; and after by degrees made common to the rest of that Continent. And being grown common in this Continent, as well unto the *Jews* and *Moors* as unto the *Christians*, it was not long before they taught it the *Turks*. For the *Jews* being forced to abandon *Spain*, Anno 1492, betook themselves to *Greece* and other parts of the *Turks* Dominions, to whom they shewed the Art of making Ordnance, Gunpowder, Harquebusses, sufficiently since used by that people to the hurt of *Christendom*. But somewhat before this the *Turks* had been in part beholden for them to the Wars they had with the *Venetians*; beholden, I say,

for notwithstanding the harm received by them at first, ye afterwards growing expert in managing of them, they gave unto *Ussan Cassanes* and *Hismael* two of the most mighty Emperours of *Persia*, two memorable Overthrows by the help of their great Ordnance only. The *Portugals* were in this Art the Tutors to the *Persians*: for as *Solyman* the *Turkish* Emperour objected against them, they not only aided *Tamas* the *Sophi* with certain Harquebussiers, but also lent him workmen to shew him the use and making of Artillery. These great Pieces at the first invention were rude unwieldy, and charged with Stone-bullets only, but by degrees they came to that perfection, both for the wall and the hand, which now they have. Whether now Archery or Gunning be to be preferred, I stand not here to determine; only this I am sure of, that Victories have been of late purchased with less expence of blood and life than ever formerly. But of this Theam more perhaps hereafter, when we shall come to take the *Parthian* Archery into consideration.

The Religion of this Country it is not easie to name, considering so many are here allowed; *Jews* being intermixt with *Christians*, and these divided into *Papists* and *Protestants*; the latter also divided into *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, &c. The *Christian* Faith was first planted here, if *Dorotheus* Bishop of *Tyre* be of any credit, by *St. Thomas* surnamed *Didymus*, one of the Twelve. But being there is little truit unto his Relations, the best were to say with the *Magdeburgians* and the *Martyrologies*, that the *Germans* had not all the same Apostle; that the Gospel was first preached amongst the *Rhatians* and *Vindelici* by *S. Lucius* of *Cyrene*, amongst those of *Noricum* by *S. Marick*, by *S. Crescens* at *Mentz*, *S. Clement* at *Metz* in *Lorraine*, all of them Apostolical men, and of the number of the 70; after that by *S. Maternus* at *Colen*, and by *S. Eucherius* at *Triers*. That the Faith was planted very early in these Countries, *Irenaus*, the renowned Bishop of *Lions*, *An. 170*, is sufficient evidence, who takes notice of it; and that it prospered very well and took very good root, appeareth by the Bishops of *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Basil*, and *Strasburg*, subscribing to the Council of *Colen* in the Reign of *Constantius*, the Son of *Constantine* the Great, *An. 347*. But the light hereof being extinguished for a time by those barbarous Nations who fell upon these out-parts of the *Roman* Empire, began to shine again on the Conversion of the *French* in all parts of this Country; the Conquests and example of this puissant Nation giving great encouragement thereunto. In which as those of other Countries do not want their honour, so the greatest part thereof belongs to the *English Saxons*; *Wilibrode* the first Bishop of *Utrecht*, *Winnald* of *Aichstat*, *Swibert* of *Verden*, *Willibald* of *Breme*, and especially *Boniface* the Archbishop of *Mentz*, being most gloriously fortunate in that sacred service. The *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, and other farther off, came not in till afterwards. Not fully converted to the Faith, they began to suck in the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; discerned and oppressed by *J. Huss* and *Hierome* of *Prague*, *Bohemian* Divines, who by reason of the Marriage of King *Richard* the second of *England* with the Daughter of *Wenceslaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, had opportunity to be acquainted with the Preachings of *Wicliff*, the Point of whose Doctrine they approved and propagated. But these two being burnt at *Constance* by the decree of that Council, their followers in *Bohemia* would not so give over, but after many sufferings and much blood shed, obtained at last a Toleration of the Emperour *Sigismond* their King, more able to make good his word in his own Dominions, than he had been to save the two Martyrs from the fire at *Constance*, to whom he had granted his safe Conduct for their coming and going. In this condition they remained under the name of those of the *Sub utraque* or *Calistini*, because of their administering the Sacrament in both kinds, till the rising of *Luther*; who justly offended at the impious and unwarrantable Assertions of *Friar Tokel*,

and others of the Pope's Pardon-mongers; first opposed their doings, and after questioned their Authority by which they acted, falling from one point to another, till he had shaken the Foundations of the *Roman* Fabrick. Of the success of his undertaking we shall speak but little, as in a thing well known to all men of knowledge. Suffice it in this place to say that his Doctrine was not only received in *Germany*, but generally imbraced in the great Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Swetthland*, with the Provinces and Islands appertaining to them, in a great part of *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Transylvania*, as far almost as to the banks of the *Euxine* Sea; but for the progress of it here (which we are more especially at this time to enquire into) it was so well approved of, that the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brunswick*, *Lunenbourg*, *Wirttemberg*, *Mecklenberg*, and *Pomerania*, the Marquiss of *Brandenburg*, the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, and most of the free Imperial Cities did adhere unto it, who from their Protestation made at *Spires* (the Imperial Chamber) to that effect, *An. 1529*. had the name of *Protestants*. The next year following they delivered in the Confession of their Faith at *Ausburg*, a City of *Suevia*, thence called *Confessio Augustana*; authorized, or tolerated at least, after a long War, with variable success on both sides, by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, at the Pacification made at *Passaw*, *An. 1552*. and afterwards more fully at *Ausburg*, (where their Confession had first been tendred, *Anno 1555*).

But not to pass over this matter in these generals only, we may know once for all, that in the year 1530, the Protestant Princes having tendred their Confession at *Ausburg*, (as before is said) and finding it not so well received as they did expect, entred into a Confederation at the Town of *Smalkald* (belonging to the Duke of *Saxony*) for defence thereof, and for the Defence of one another in pursuance of it. Into this Confederacy first entred *John Frederick* the Duke of *Saxony* and his Son, *Ernest*, and *Francis* Duke of *Lunenbourg*, *Philip* the Lantgrave of *Hassia*, *George* Marquiss of *Brandenburg*, the Cities of *Straesberg*, *Neurenberg*, *Heilbrun*, *Ruteling*, *Ulm*, *Lindaw*, *Constance*, *Memming*, and *Campedune*. Afterwards, *Anno 1535*, there entred into it *Barnimus* and *Philip* Princes of *Pomeran*, *Ulrick* Duke of *Wirttemberg*, *Robert* Duke of *Zweibrucken*, (or *Bipont*, as some Writers call him) *William* Earl of *Nassau*, *George*, and *Jouchim* Earls of *Anhalt*, the Cities of *Francford*, *Hamborough*, *Ausburg*, *Hanover*, and not long after the *Palsgrave* and King of *Denmark*. But this Confederacy was like to have dashed the business. For *Charles* the fifth looking upon it as a matter of a dangerous consequence to the power and safety of the Empire, and withal instigated thereunto by the Popes of *Rome*, whose interest was no less concerned in it, considering that he could not otherwise untie this Gordian knot, resolved to cut it with the Sword. At first the War succeeded luckily with the Protestant Princes, who armed themselves upon the noise of his Preparations: But there being an equality of Command between the Duke *John Frederick* and *Philip* the Lantgrave, the one sometimes not approving, otherwhiles thwarting the other's projects, the end proved not answerable. Besides the politick Emperour knowing full well that the Forces of confederate States are oftner broken by Delays than Battle, avoided all occasions of fighting, and thereby wearied out this great Army, which, without performing any notable exploit, disbanded it self, every man hasting home to defend his own. But none had more reason so to do than the Duke Electour: For in his absence his Cousin *Maurice* (forgetting the Education he had under him, and how formerly the Duke had conquered for him, and estated him in those parts of *Misnia* (maugre all opposition of the Popish party) which formerly had belonged to Duke *George* his Uncle) combined himself with the Emperour, and invaded the Electours Country; who notwithstanding recovered not only all his own, but a great part also of those Lands and Territories in which he had before estated his ungrateful Kinsman. But while he was in this Career, the Emperour

perour suddenly falls upon him not far from *Mulberg*, (where the Duke was then hearing a Sermon) and by the suddenness of his coming routed his timorous unprovided Army; the Duke himself with some few resolute Gentlemen making head against him, till the most of them were slain, and the Duke taken Prisoner. The next morning he was condemned to loose his head, but pardoned at the last upon some conditions: amongst which it was none of the least, that he should surrender his Estates, and resign the Electoral dignity to be disposed of by the Victor, as also that he should without ransom release Marquis *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, (a busy and unquiet Man) who was then his Prisoner. This done, the Emperour fraudulently intrapped the Lantgrave, as we shall shew more at large hereafter in another place; and carrying on the Wars from one free City to another, compelled them to receive the Mass, and to submit to such Composition as he pleased to grant them; in so much as it was thought that the Emperour gained in this journey a Million and 600000 Crowns, and 500 pieces of great Ordnance. But these Successes were too great and too unjustly grounded to continue long. For *Maurice*, the new Duke Elector, who had married the Lantgrave's Daughter, and engaged himself unto his Children both by Word and Bond (and that too at the Emperour's instance) for his safe returning, conceived himself unworthily dealt with so to be made the instrument of his Father's thralldom, and therefore that he was obliged both in love and honour to leave no way untryed which might gain his Liberty. And withal, finding cause to fear that the course of the Emperour's great successes might end at last in the subversion of the common Liberty, he secretly by an under-hand practice called in the *French*, and raising Forces under the colour of the Emperour's service, gained Marquis *Albert* before mentioned) who had then a running Army in the field) to associate with him, and fell so suddenly on the Emperour, lying then at *Innspruck*, that he compell'd him to run away in post-hast by torch-light, and the Prelates to break off the Council of *Trent*, where at that time they were assembled. Upon which turning of the balance a Peace soon ensued, which brought forth the *Edicts* of *Passaw* and *Ausburg*, spoken of before, the best and surest Pledges of the Peace of *Germany*.

In the mean time, while the *Lutherans* thus played their game, there started up another party, begun at first by *Zuinglius* amongst the *Switzers*, of whose both Doctrine and Success we have spoken there. These, not communicating Counsels, went two several ways, especially in the Points of Consubstantiation and the Real presence; not reconciled in their times, nor like to be agreed upon amongst their followers. For *Calvin*, rising into the esteem and place of *Zuinglius*, added some Tenets of his own to the former Doctrines touching Predetermination, Free-will, Universal Grace, Final Perseverance; (Points fitter for the Schools than a popular Auditory;) by which the differences were widened, and the breach made irreparable: the Cause being followed on both sides with great impatience, as if they did not strive so much for Truth, as Victory. And of the two, those of the *Lutheran* party seemed more violent, (though the other was altogether as irreconcilable) who could not chuse but stomach it, to see themselves undermined and blown up by a new form of Doctrine not tolerated in the *Empire*, but under colour of Conformity to the Confession of *Ausburg*. For *Zuinglianism* being entertained amongst the *French*, a busy and active people, spread it self farther in few years than it was propagated by the *Switzers*, (men of the same temper with the *Dutch*) in all times before. Inasmuch as it did not only prevail in *France*, but by the reputation of *Calvin*, and the diligence of his Followers, was wholly entertained in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, in many parts of the Kingdom of *Toland*, and even in *Germany* it self, in which it got footing in all the Territories of the Counts *Palatines* of the *Rhene*, in some of the Lantgraves of *Hussia*, in the Imperial City of

Straesburg, many of the *Hanse-Towns*, and amongst other Princes and free Cities of inferior note. The rest of *Germany*, containing the Paramount Estates of the House of *Austria*, the Duke Dux of *Bavaria* and *Lorraine*, the Territories of the three Spiritual Electors, and of all the other Bishopsricks in the hands of the Clergy, some of the Marquises of *Bass*, part of the subjects of *Cleve*, and but three of the Imperial Cities, (and those small ones too) that is to say, *Germund*, *Uberlingen*, and *Dussell-Spyel*, (unless some more be added by the great late Successes of the House of *Austria*) remain in their Obedience to the See of *Rome*; all which together will hardly make up one fifth part of this spacious Country, the other four being in the power and possession of the Protestant party: yet so that there be as many Protestants in *Bohemia*, *Austria*, and in other the Estates of the Popish Princes; as there be Papists in the Free Cities of *Framford*, *Nuremberg*, *Ulm*, *Aken*, and some other places, besides the late increase of them in both the *Palatinates*. Of such a speedy growth was the Reformation, that within the space of 40 years it was not only received in all those Countries which do now profess it, but had also got some footing both in *Spain* and *Italy*.

And here perhaps it will not be improper to look upon the means which were chiefly used for the promoting of this Work; by which it came to spread so far in so little time, and next upon the stops and hinderances which were given unto it, by which it was restrained from spreading farther. 1. For the means used in the Advancement of this Work, (next under the Almighty power of the most wise God) they were these especially. 1. The translating of the Scripture into vulgar Languages, which easily discovered the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, both in Doctrinals and Forms of Worship. 2. The diligent Preaching of their Ministry, both in Towns and Villages for the expounding of the Scriptures, and fitting them to the Capacities of the meanest Auditors; which gained exceedingly both on the judgment and affections of the common people; the course of Preaching having been formerly neglected by the Parish Curate, and turned off wholly in a manner to the begging-Friars. 3. The publishing of Books of Practical Piety and Devotions, which mightily inflamed the hearts of all sorts of men; accustomed before to no other Duties than to tell over their *Credo's* and *Pater-Nosters*, and to keep a just account of their *Ave-Maries*, and that most commonly in a tongue which they understood not. 4. The Education of youth, especially in Catechisms containing the whole body of Christian Religion; which once well planted in their minds, could not so easily be pulled up and removed thence by any contrary persuasion. 5. Their continual offers of disputation with the adverse party in a publick audience; which being denied (as generally at the first it was) gave great assurance of the truth and soundness of the one side, as of the falsehood and weakness of the other. 6. Their compiling of Martyrologies and Histories of the Church, which could not but produce an admirable Zeal and Constancy both in the Readers and the Hearers, animated thereunto by those brave Examples which therein was presented to them. One point of Prudence hath been wanting, which is the calling of a General Council of all the Protestant and Reformed Churches, for the composing of the differences which have grown between them. And this I look on as the first and greatest stop to the Reformation from proceeding farther; many men (not improbably) thinking there must be some want of truth in the Foundation of that building, which had such wide and open breaches in the Superstructures. The Tyranny and Terrour of the Inquisition, by which it is kept out of *Spain*, and kept down in *Italy*, and all other parts of the Pope's Obedience, together with those other Policies both to discountenance and suppress it, (which we have spoken of in our description of the Papacy) may come next to this. Then add to these the cares and diligence of the *Jesuits* and Seminary

nary Priests, in applying themselves to all those means which they found so effectual on the other side, thereby not only countermining their Endeavours, but fighting them upon even ground with the self-same Weapons. And last of all, the Plots and Practices of the Papal Ministers in working on the Humours of the opposite Parties, thereby enraging them not only into Tongue-combat and velitations of the Pen, but even to try it out by blows in an open War, once I am sure. By these means they have not only stopped the Progress of the Reformation, but would fain give themselves some hopes to destroy it utterly, and thereby to restore the Pope to that power and splendor which formerly he had attained unto in these parts of Europe. But of these and such like self-flatteries I shall say with *Seneca*, or rather in his words applied to my own Intention:

— *He manus Trojam erigent?*

Parvus habet spes Troja, si tales habet.

That is to say,

Shall these small Jars restore the ruin'd Pope;
Small hopes he hath, if this be all his hope.

As for the Government of their Churches, those that continue in Obedience to the See of *Rome* are under the old form of Archbishops and Bishops, coeval in all *Germany* (as in most places else) with the Faith it self. The *Calvinists* (by which name the *Zuinglianist* now also passeth, if not eaten out) submit themselves for Doctrine, Discipline and Forms of Worship, to *Calvin's* Model; whereof we have spoken more at large when we were in *Geneva*. And for the *Lutherans*, they have divided the Episcopal Function from the Revenues; giving these last to some of their younger Princes, with the Title of *Administrators* of such a Bishoprick; the Function or Jurisdiction to some of the more eminent Clergy, with the Title of a *Superintendent*, assigning to them a Priority both of Place and Power before other Ministers, which they enjoy for term of Life, together with some liberal Maintenance, in proportion to it. In other things, as Order, Habit, and Title of Dignity, they differ not at all from the other Ministers. And over them, in the place of Archbishops, they have their *General Superintendents*; all of them of each sort accomptable to the Supreme Ecclesiastical Consistory, (as formerly to the Provincial or National Synod) made up of Counsellors of State, and the Heads of the Clergy. So that the Form seems to be much the same as in elder times, but is indeed more different than it seems to be; a great part of the alteration being in the Names; and that no other in a manner than by changing the old *Greek* word *Episcopus* into the new *Latin* word *Superintendents*, both signifying an *Overseer*, though in different Languages. And so *Ex Gracis bonis Latinis facere non bonas*, in the Poet's word. Which brings into my mind the Story of a People of *Africk*, who having received much hurt by Tigers, made a Decree that no Man from thenceforth should call them Tigers, but give them a more harmless or less hated name, and then all was well. And as they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of Government, so do they also come up to them in their Forms of Worship; retaining still a settled and prescribed Liturgy for all their Churches, most of the Holy-days observed in the former Ages, the Cross in Baptism, Kneeling at the Communion, and many other innocent and significant Ceremonies, commended to the Church by most pure Antiquity. In point of maintenance they are as defective as the *Calvinists* are; few of their Ministers having Tithes, most of them Pensions or Stipends, and those small ones also, seldom exceeding 2 or 300 *Guldens*, besides Wood for fuel, Corn, and some other Necessaries.

Now because mention hath been made of the *Hanse-Towns* and Imperial Cities, we are to understand that the Cities of this Country are of three sorts. 1. Such as are holden in possession by some of the Princes in way of Inheritance, part of their Patrimony and Estates; as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, *Munich*, *Wittemberg*, &c. 2. Such as are held originally of the Empire it self: which are

called *Free Cities*, for their great Prerogatives of their Coining Money, and governing themselves by their local Ordinances; *Imperial*, in regard they know no Lord or Protector but the Emperor only, to whom they paid two third parts of such Contributions as are assessed in the Assemblies or general Diets, and 1500 *Florens* yearly for themselves and their Territories. They are in number about 60, many of which are of a fair and large Estate; such as are *Nuremberg*, *Ausburg*, *Ingolstadt*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, &c. Of which thus *Guicciardine*: Those, saith he, are called *Free Cities*, which acknowledging by a certain determinate Tribute the Authority of the Empire, do notwithstanding in all other things govern themselves after their own Laws, not seeking to amplify their Territories, but defend their Liberties. 3. The third sort is of those which are called *Hanse-Towns*, or *Hansesteden*, that is (say some) *An zee steden*, Towns upon the Sea; such as those were who first entred into this Confederacy: but at this time the name extends to many in-land Cities, and of no great Trading, joined with then in a League for their common Defence and Preservation. A League made first against the *Danes* and the Earls of *Holstein* by some of the Maritime Towns bordering next unto them, that is to say, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Rostock*, *Wisnar*, *Straelsund*, and *Lunenburg*: but afterwards many other of the Imperial Cities and Towns of Trade associated with them in an offensive and defensive League against all Enemies whatsoever. In number about 72, those of *Livonia* and *Prussia* being taken into the reckoning: many of which are able to put to Sea 150 good Sail of Ships; such as lie more within the Land contributing in Money or otherwise to the common Charge. First handfelled by *Waldemar III.* of *Denmark*, whom they vanquish'd in a Naval Battel. After that, growing into credit, and driving a great Trade in most parts of Christendom, they enjoyed many large and ample Privileges wheresoever they came: call'd amongst us sometimes by the name of *Easterlings*, from their Easterly dwelling: and Merchants of the *Steelyard*, from the place where they stowed their Commodities; and *Guilda Teutonicorum*, in regard of their Nation, for the most part *Dutch*. But the *English* learning so much wit at the last as to make use of their own Shipping, they began here by little and little to decay, and are now almost worn out of memory with us; though still of good esteem and credit in other Countries.

The principal Rivers hereof are, 1. *Danubius*, or the *Danow*, which rising out of *Nigra Silva*, or the *Schwarzenwald*, that is, the *Black Forest*, as the *Germans* call it, at a little Village of *Schwaben* call'd *Den Eschingen*, about two *Dutch Miles* from the shores of the *Rhene* passeth through *Schwaben*, *Bavaria*, *Austria*, &c. by the Cities of *Ulm*, *Regensburg*, *Passau*, *Vienna*, *Rab*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*, beyond which it beginneth to be called *Ister*, by that name most generally known amongst the *Gracians*; and receiving into its Channel, from the long tract of the *Alps*, the *Sarmatian*, and *Carpathian* Mountains, about 60 navigable Rivers, besides lesser Brooks, disgorgeth his full Stomach by several mouths (the names whereof we shall find in *Dacia*) into the lap of the *Euxine* Sea; the whole length of his course 1500 Miles, inso-much as we may say with a Modern Poet,

*Cedere Danubius se tibi, Nile, negat,
O seven mouth'd Nile, I plainly see,
Danow will scarce give way to thee.*

2. *Rhene* (of whose original and course we have spoken more fully when we were in *Belgium*) which running from *Switzerland* through *Germany* and *Belgium*, after a course of 800 Miles, emptieth it self into the *German Ocean*. All which shall be here added is, that it gives the Title of the *Reine-grave* to some Princes of as good Blood as the best in *Germany*, whose Possessions and Estates bordering near unto it they were from thence so called; but of late time decayed (almost to nothing) in their Estates, and living for the most part on the Entertainment of other Princes, whom they serve in their Wars; the

the *Palsgraves* of the *Rhene*, and two at the least of the three Bishops Electors raising themselves upon the ruine of this House. 3. *Elb*, (*Albis*) which springing out of the Mountain of *Risenberg* in the skirts of *Bohemia*, runneth a course of 400 miles and passeth by the Cities of *Dresden*, *Meissen*, *Torgaw*, *Wittenberg*, *Magdeburg*, and *Lawenburg*, Cities of the Electoral and ancient *Saxony*, and so betwixt the Dukedom of *Holstein* (now part of *Denmark*) and the rest of *Germany*. 4. *Oder*, which hath its Fountain in the highermost parts of *Moravia*; and after it hath run its course through *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, of some 300 miles in length, falleth at last into the *Baltick* Sea. 5. *Visurgis*, or the *Weser*, which issuing out of the Hills of *Thuringia*, runneth through *Hessia* and *Westphalen*, to the City of *Breme*, not far from which it falls into the *German* Ocean. 6. *Fistula*, or the *Weyssel*, which rising out of the *Capathian* Mountains betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, first passeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Pole*, then betwixt *Pomeran* and *Prussia*, and so into the *Baltick* Sea; the ancient Boundary of this Country, dividing it from *Sarmatia Europea*. 7. *Moselle*, which rising out of the Mountain *Vague*, in the Confines of *Lorrain* and the County of *Burgundy*, passeth directly thorough *Lorrain*, and the district of *Triers*, by the Cities of *Toul*, *Metz*, and *Triers* it self, beyond which last it falleth into the *Rhene*, at the Town called *Confluentz*. 8. *Sala*, or *Salza*, which rising in the Mountains of *Fitchelberg* in the Borders of the *Upper Palatinate*, and passing by the skirts of *Misnia* and *Saxony* (specially so called, falleth into the *Elb* beyond *Wittenberg*, having first watered the Cities of *Naumberg*, *Mensberg*, and *Jenc*, very observable for being the most Eastern Bounds of the *Saxon* Conquests, by this River parted from the *Slaves*. 9. *Manus*, or the *Maine*, which hath its Spring in the Mountains of *Bohemia*, and passing by the Cities of *Bamburg* and *Wurtzburg*, is received into the *Rhene*, beneath *Frankford*. 10. *Amisus*, or the *Ems*, which hath its Fountain near *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*, and passing between the two *Frieselands*, falleth into the *German* Ocean not far from *Emden*.

Chief Mountains of this mighty Country, besides the *Alps* spoken of before, which run in a long tract betwixt it and *Italy*, are, 1. *Abnoba*, now called *Schwartzenwald*, i. e. *Black Hills*, (the present name both of this Mountain and the Forest of *Martina*, which doth overshadow it) out of which rise the springs of *Danow* and the *Neccar*, two principal Rivers of this Country. 2. The *Sudeta*, incircling *Bohemia*, covered with the Woods called anciently *Gabreta* and *Luna*, now called the Wolds, of *Passaw* and *Behaimer*, from the places adjoining. 3. *Citius* in *Austria*, now called *Culember*, the ancient Bounds betwixt *Pannonia* and *Noricum*, two *Roman* Provinces. 4. *Vogesus*, commonly called *Vague*, and by some *French* Writers *le Monte de Faucities*, which incircling *Lorrain*, divideth it on the East and South from *Alsace* and the County of *Burgundy*. As for the Forests of this Country, besides those spoken of already, that of most note was the Forest of *Hercynia*, (of which all the rest were but Limbs or branches) the beginning whereof was about the Borders of *Switzerland* and *Alsacia*, from thence running Eastward along the course of the *Danow* unto *Transylvania*, and their declining on the left hand through the vast Countries of the *Lituanians*, *Moscovites*, and *Russes*, in which last there are still many vast Deserts of it; the greatest part thereof in *Germany* being long since consumed, in place whereof are many goodly Corn-fields and well-built Cities. A Wood so formidable to the *Romans*, that they durst never venture to search to the end of it; the length thereof after the end of 60 days Journey being undiscoverable, and the farther search into it quite laid aside.

These Boundaries and Land-marks being thus described we shall the better follow the Chorography of this great Continent, according to the several Principalities and Estates therein, having first taken a survey of the ancient condition of it, with so much of the Story as con-

cerns the whole, before it came to be divided into so many hands. The Country was first planted by the posterity of *Gomer*, who, descending from the Mountains of *Albania*, their first Seat, in memory thereof first called *Gomerini*, after *Cimmerini*, by that name known to *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and others of the Ancient Writers, removed into the more fruitful Plains of *Phrygia*, and there built the City *Cimmeris*, which *Pliny* speaks of. But that small Province proving of too narrow a compass to contain his Off-spring, and the adjoining Countries being taken up in the former Plantations, they removed unto the North-west of the *Euxine* Sea, where we find a City of their building called *Cimmerium*, mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*, and the adjoining Streight or *Fretum*, called by the name of *Bosphorus Cimmerius* by the *Greeks* and *Latins*. Driven from these Dwellings by the more powerful *Scythians*, they spread themselves into the West, where they began to be called *Cimbri*, and by that name, and under those of the *Ambrones* and *Tentones*, several Branches of them, intended an Invasion and Conquest both of *Gaul* and *Italy*: wherein they had prevailed in all probability, *nisi isti seculo Marius contigisset*, had not *Marius* happened to have lived in that Age, by whom they were discomfited and destroyed. That these *Gomerians* or *Cimbri* were the first Inhabitants of *Gaul*, *Germany*, and all the Nations of the North and West of *Europe*, is generally agreed upon by all the Learned. Divided they were into several Nations, and those also subdivided into lesser Tribes, and more obscure Families; amongst which those of *Tentones* or *Tuscones*, from which the *Dutch* do so affect to derive themselves, might be some of the principal there settled, and not pleased with that desert dwelling, such of them as dwelt nearest to the *Rhene* passed over that River, and bearing the *Gauls* farther up into the Country, possessed themselves of their Dwellings, enjoying them (till conquered by *Julius Caesar*) without any Rival. But *Caesar*, who moved with the complaints of the *Gauls*, and the insolencies of *Ariovistus* a King of the *Germanes*, (for by that name for the reasons aforesaid the *Romans* called them) marched into their Quarters: the *Roman* Legionaries being so afraid of this dreadful Enemy, *ut testamenta passim in principis scriberentur*, (saith the Historian) that many of them made their Testaments at the Gates of their Camp, before they fell upon the Enemy. Vanquished by *Caesar*, and *Ariovistus* being fled over the *Rhene*, the *Romans*, by command of their General made a Bridge over the River, and rather terrified than conquered the neighbouring *Germanes*; who were more fully brought into subjection by *Drusus*, the adopted Son of *Augustus Caesar*, from thence called *Germanicus*, by whom not only the *Rheti* and *Norici*, then lying out of the bounds of *Germany*, now included in it, were subdued in fine, and brought into the form of *Roman* Provinces; but the whole Country in a manner to the very Ocean was forced to yield obedience to the *Roman* Empire. But this was for so short a time, that it was both won and lost during the Reign and Government of *Augustus Caesar*. So that the whole established Conquests of the *Romans* upon this Country, as it is now bounded, contained no more than the Provinces of *Germania*, and *Belgica Prima*, with part of *Germania Secunda*, belonging unto the Diocels of *Gaul*; the greatest part of the two *Rhetia's* being under the Diocels of *Italy*; *Noricum Mediterraneum* and *Ripense*, with some parts of *Pannonia*, parts of the Diocels of *Illyrium*. But none of these (as lying on the West side of the *Rhene*, and the South of the *Danow*) did ever pass in the account of the ancient *Germany*, the *Germanes* not enduring the yoke so long as to be brought within the number of the *Roman* Provinces. Provoked with the Lust and Insolencies of *Quintilius Varus*, who succeeded *Drusus* in that charge, they set upon him under the conduct of *Arminius*, a chief Prince amongst them, kill him, and utterly cut off three Legions; as we shall see more particularly when we come to *Brunswick*, the ancient Seat of the *Cherusci*,

by whom the Forces of that Empire were driven over the *Rhene*. After which defeat *Augustus* laid aside the Affairs of *Germany*, confining his Empire within the *Rhene*, which *Drusus* had extended to the banks of the Ocean. *Hac clade factum, ut Imperium quod in littore Oceani non steterat, in ripa Rheni fluminis staret*, saith the Historian. Nor did the *Romans* only forbear to revenge this Loss by making a new War upon them; but seemed more careful to defend themselves against those Invasions, than to incur the hazard of a new Defeat; quartering eight Legions with their several Wings and Aid on the shores of the *Rhene*, and four upon the banks of the *Danow*, to keep these People from incroaching on the *Roman* Provinces. But the fatal period of that Empire drawing on a pace, the *French*, *Burgundians*, *Almans*, and other *Dutch* Nations break through their Guards, dispossess the *Romans* of all *Gaul*, *Rhetia*, and *Noricum*, which they share amongst them: till in the end the *French*, prevailing over the rest, extend their Empire over all the modern *Germany*; chiefly perform'd by the valour of *Charles* the Great, created Emperor of the West by the People of *Rome*, and crowned with the Imperial Crown by Pope *Leo* IV. on *Christmas*-day, Anno 801. So that now the old Prophecie of the *Druides*, concerning the removing of the Empire into the West, came to be accomplish'd; tho' *Tacitus* in his time accounted it for a vain and idle Prediction. For when *Civil*: raised a Rebellion amongst the *Batavi* (the *Hollanders* and parts adjoining) against *Vespasian* then newly made Emperor, *possessionem rerum humanarum Transalpinis gentibus portendi Druidæ, canebant*, the *Druides* prophesied of the Translation of the Empire to the *Transalpine* Nations: accomplished, as before is said, in the person of *Charles* the Great, King of *France* and *Germany*. By whom it was divided (for the better ordering or Governance of it) into *West-France*, or *West-rieck*, in the barbarous *Latin* of those times called *Westrasia*, containing the modern *France*, and so much of the *Netherlands* as lieth on the *French* side of the River *M.*; and *Osternick*, (i. e. the Eastern Kingdom) in the *Latin* of those times *Austrasia*, containing so much of the modern *Germany* and *Pannonia* as was possessed by the *French*, with the rest of the *Netherlands*. This was afterwards subdivided into the Kingdoms of *Lorrain* and *Germany*: whereof the first contained all *Germany* within the *Rhene*, together with the *Belgick* Provinces before described, the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois* excepted only; the Kingdom of *Germany* taking up the rest. For in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, the Son of *Charles*, the great Empire of his Father was parcelled out into many Members, as *Italy*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Lorrain* and *Germany*, distributed amongst his Sons and Nephews with the Title of Kings: by means whereof the Kingdoms of *Germany* and *Lorrain*, united in the Person of *Lewis* the Ancient, in little time were alien'd from the House of *Charles*, and left off to be *French*, possessed by the great Princes of *Lorrain*, *Saxony*, *Schamphen*, and *Bavaria*; by them dismembred into many Principalities and inferior States, all passing under the accompt and name of the *Dutch* or *Germans*. The Kings and Emperors of which here follow.

The Kings and Emperors of GERMANY.

A. Ch.

- 801 1. *Charles* the Great, Emperor, King of *France* and *Germany*.
 815 2. *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *France*, *Germany*, and the Emperor of the *Romans*.
 841 3. *Lewis*, surnamed the Ancient, second Son of *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *Germany*, to which anno 876. he united that of *Lorrain* also.
 4. *Charles* the Gros, Son of *Lewis* the Ancient, reigned at first jointly with *Carloman* and *Lewis* his elder Brethren, after their deaths sole King of *Germany*, anno 880. he succeeded *Ludovicus Balbus* in the Title of Emperor, continued unto his Successors; and

during the minority of *Charles* the Simple by a Faction of the *French* Nobility was chosen King of *France*: the whole Estate of *Charles* the Great becoming once again united in the person of one Sovereign Prince.

- 891 5. *Arnulph*, the natural Son of *Carloman*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of *Germany*, and Emperor.
 903 6. *Lewis* or *Ludovicus* IV. (*Lewis* the Brother of *Charles* and *Carloman*, being reckoned for one) King of *Germany*, and Emperor, the lawfully begotten Son of *Arnulph*.
 913 7. *Conrade*, the Son of *Conrade*, the Brother of *Lewis* the 4. the last Prince of the masculine Issue of *Charles* the Great. After whose death the *Francones* and *Saxons*, seeing *Charles* the Simple, King of *France*, overlaid by the *Normans*, or embroiled by the Princes of the House of *Anjou*: took that advantage to transfer the Empire to themselves: and they made choice of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to be their Emperor. A worthy Prince, by whom some Nations of the *Slaves*, the *Hungarians*, and part of *Lorrain* were subdued or added to the Empire.
 929 8. *Henricus*, surnamed *Auceps*, or the Fowler, Duke of *Saxony*, elected by the *German* Princes, but designed by *Conrade*, as being eldest Son of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luitgardis*, Daughter to the Emperor *Arnulph*, and consequently a branch of the *Caroline* Stock.
 938 9. *Otho*, surnamed the Great, the Son of *Henry*, Emperor and King of *Italy* 36 Years.
 974 10. *Otho* II. Son of *Otho* the first, Emperor and King of *Italy*. 10.
 984 11. *Otho* III. Son of *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and the last of that House which had the Title of Emperor and King of *Italy*. After whose death all right of Succession being disclaim'd, the Emperors became elective; but for the most part the Election was engrossed or monopoliz'd (since the Failure of the House of *Saxony*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Austria*, notwithstanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The business was first projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperors less powerful, and distract the *Germans*, whom they feared, into Sides and Factions: confirmed by a Decree of Pope *Gregory* the Fifth, being a Native of that Country.
 1002 12. *Henry* II. surnamed the Saint, Duke of *Bavaria*, the first Emperor elected according to the Constitution of *Gregory* the fifth, but so elected, that he challenged it in a manner by the right of Blood, as being the Grandchild of *Henry* surnamed *Rixofus*, the first Duke of *Bavaria* of the *Saxon* Race) the second Son of *Henry* the first, and consequently the next Heir-male of that House after *Otho* III. compelling some of the Electors, who oppos'd his Title, by the force of Arms to yield unto it. So that the first Emperor who came in by a clear Election, but not without pretension of a Title also, was
 1025 13. *Conrade* II. Duke of *Franconia*, surnamed *Salicus*, Husband to *Luitgardis*, one of the Daughters of *Otho* I. and consequently not a Stranger to the former Family.
 1040 14. *Henry* III. surnamed *Niger*, the Son of *Conrade*.
 1056 15. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the Third, in whose days the Popes began to usurp Authority over the Emperors; insomuch as *Leo* the ninth,

- ninth, having received the Popedom at the Emperours hands, repented himself of it, put off his Papal Vestments, went to *Rome* as a private person, and was there new chosen by the Clergy. This was done by the persuasion of a Monk called *Hildebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7. excommunicated this *Henry*, the first Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*. From which time till the year 1254, there were continual Wars and Thunders betwixt them and the nine following Emperours, some of them being excommunicated, some forced to put their Necks under the Feet of the Pope, others to quit the care of the Common-wealth, and betake themselves unto the Wars of the *Holy Land*, leaving the Pope to do what he list in *Germany*.
1106. 16. *Henry V.* Son of *Henry* the 4. armed by the Pope against his Father; whom he had no sooner succeeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too stiff in the business of Investitures, and raised up the *Saxons* against him; by whom being vanquished, and otherwise afflicted by the Pope's practices, he was forced to submit unto his commands, and was the last Emperour of the House of *Franconia*.
1125. 17. *Lotharius* Duke of *Bavaria*, seizing on the Empire without any Election, was reconciled unto the *German* Princes by the means of *St. Bernard*. He settled the Affairs of *Italy* in two Journeys thither. 13.
1139. 18. *Conrade III.* Son of *Frederick*, the first hereditary Duke of *Sueve* or *Schwaben*, and Sister's Son unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquished *Henry* surnamed the Proud, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and going to the Holy Wars with *Lewis* King of *France*, discomfited the *Turks* near the banks of *Meander*. 15.
1153. 19. *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Sueve* crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3, to whom he was fain at last to submit himself, the Pope insolently treading on his Neck. He went after to the *Holy Land*, where he died, having discomfited the *Turks* in three great Battles. 37.
1190. 20. *Henry VI.* Son of *Frederick*, and King of *Sicily*, in right of *Constance* his Wife, crowned by Pope *Celestine*, who employed him in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*; in his Journey towards which he died at *Alessina*. 8.
1198. 21. *Philip*, Duke of *Sueve*, Brother of *Henry* the 6. excommunicated by the Pope, (who loved not this Family) by whose means *Otto*, the Son of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, was set up against him. The occasion of great Wars among the *Germans*, reconciled by Marriage of *Otto* with a Daughter of *Philip*. 9.
1207. 22. *Otto IV.* Son of *Henry* surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3. by whom not long after he was excommunicated, for taking into his hands some Towns of *Italy* which belonged to the Empire: vanquished in *Brabant* by the Faction raised up against him, he relinquished the Empire to his Competitor.
1212. 23. *Frederick II.* King of *Sicily* and *Naples*, Son of *Henry* the 6. having settled *Germany*, disposed himself for the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, where he recovered the possession of the Realm of *Jerusalem*. He was excommunicated by the Pope at his return into *Italy*, and not long after poisoned.
1250. 24. *Conrade IV.* Son of *Frederick* the last Emperour of the House of *Solms*. After whose death the Empire being distracted by the Pope's practices into many Factions, each Faction chose an Emperour or King of the *Romans*: so that at one time there were elected *Henry* Earl of *Guingua*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, and *Alphonso* King of *Castile*, the renowned Author of the *Alfonso* Tables, and
1254. 25. *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, Brother of *Henry* the third of *England*, the best monied man of all his time, supposed therewith to buy the Suffrages of the Archbishop of *Colen* and Elector *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, *Aug.* 1254. and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into *England*, where he died. After whose death, or an *Interregnum* of 12 years from his Exit rather, the Title was at last accepted by
1273. 26. *Rodolph* Earl of *Habsburg*, a petit Prince, (others of greater Estates and Fortunes not daring to take up the honour) the Raiser of the present *Austrian* Family. This *Rodolph* was the Son of *Albert* the Wise Earl of *Habsburg*, and Landgrave of *Alsacia*, and his Mother was *Hedewig* Countess of *Keyburg*, he was born the 1st. of *May*, 1218, and educated in the Court of *Frederick II.* He gained *Austria* for *Albert* his Eldest Son, and *Suabia* for *Rodolph* his 3d. Son in the Dyet of *Arsburg* in the year 1282, by which he laid the Foundations of the Present Grandure of this Family.
1292. 27. *Adolph*, Earl of *Nassau*, who served in person under King *Edward* the 1. of *England* against the *French*; for which being dis-relished by the *Germans*, he was encountered and slain near the City of *Spires*.
1298. 28. *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, Son of *Rodolphus* the Emperour, to whom Pope *Boniface* the 8. gave the Realm of *France*, of which he had deprived King *Philip* the Fair. But *Albert* would not meddle out of *Germany*, and did nothing in it. He Married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of the Duke of *Carinthia*, and Count of *Tirol* and *Gorickum*. His Empire was not pleasing to any, nor Happy, because he employed all his Thoughts in amazing Treasures. After a short Reign, he was slain at *Rhinefield*, by *John* Duke of *Suabia* his Brother's Son, in the year 1308. This Prince was born the 29th of *July*, 1289, and was the first that brought *Carinthia* and *Tyrol* into this Family. *Rodolphus* his Son, was chosen King of *Bohemia* in the year 1307, and died without Issue. *Frederick* the Fair, his 2d. Son was chosen Emperour in 1314, and maintain'd a War against *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, wherein he was defeated in 1323.
1308. 29. *Henry*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, who made a Journey into *Italy* to recover the Rights of the Empire, (wherein an Emperour had not been seen in 60 years:) supposed to be poisoned in the Chalice by a Frier at *Benevent*, a Town of the Pope's, in 1313. 6.
1314. 30. *Lewis*, Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner; opposed by *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, chose by another Faction, and crowned at *Ronna*, a Town of the Archbishop of *Colen*: but he being defeated, *Lewis* remained sole Emperour, and was excommunicated by Pope *John*, 22, 33.

- 1347 31. *Charles IV.* Son of *John King of Bohemia*, and Grandson of *Henry VII.* crowned with the Iron Crown at *Millain* 1354; the framer of the Golden Bull. 32.
- 1378 32. *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, deformed and vicious; depos'd by the German Princes. 22.
- 1400 33. *Rupertus*, Elector *Palatine*, passed into *Italy* for the recovery of the Dukedom of *Millain*, sold by *Wenceslaus*; but was well beat by *John Galeazzo*, and so returned. 10.
- 1410 34. *Jodocus Barbatus*, Marquis of *Moravia*, Uncle to *Wenceslaus*.
- 1411 35. *Sigismund*, Brother of *Wenceslaus*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, crown'd at *Rome* on *Whitsunday* 1432. He travelled exceedingly for establishing the Peace of Christendom, distracted at that time with three Popes at once; and was a great promoter of the Council at *Constance*. This Prince was very unfortunate in his Wars, and was overthrown by the *Turks* near *Nicopolis* in 1395, and was often beaten by the *Hussites* in *Bohemia*, after he had broken his Faith in the Council of *Constance*. He died in the Year 1437.
- 1438 36. *Albert II.* Duke of *Austria*, Son-in-law of *Sigismund*, whom he succeeded in all his Estates and Titles, excepting *Luxemburg*. 1. This *Albert* was the Son of *Albert IV.* the Son of *Albert III.* the Son of *Frederick the Fair*; and was elected Emperor in the Year 1338. From his time the Imperial Crown fixed in this Family though he enjoyed it but one year.
- 1440 37. *Frederick III.* Duke of *Austria*, the Son of *Ernest of Austria*, and next Heir of *Albert II.* He procured the calling of the Council of *Basil* for the Peace of Christendom, travelling for that cause to *Rome*, where he was declared Emperor, *Anno* 1442. 54.
- 1494 38. *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, who first united the Estates of *Burgundy* to the House of *Austria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went thro' with none. 25. This Prince was born at *Naples* in the Year 1459. He was of a good Disposition and Wit, and a Lover of Learning and learned Men. He was elected King of the *Romans* in the Life of his Father, in the Year 1486. Under him the Reformation began. *Philip* his Son was born in the Year 1478, and died in the Year 1506, leaving *Charles V.* Emperor of *Germany* after his Grandfather; and *Ferdinand* who succeeded *Charles* his Brother in the Empire.
- 1519 39. *Charles V.* King of *Spain*, Son of *Philip King of Spain*, and Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Maximilian* by the Lady *Mary of Burgundy*. A puissant Prince, who had Prisoners at the same time the *French King* and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruin'd the League made by the Protestants at *Smalcald*; took Prisoners the Elector of *Saxony*, and the Landgrave of *Hassia*, drove the great *Turk* from *Vienna*, won the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and in the end resigned all his Estates, and died in a Monastery in the Year 1558. 39.
- 1558 40. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the *Romans* by the procurement of *Charles*, *Anno* 1531. Upon whose Resignation he was chosen Emperor, *Anno* 1558. This Prince was born in *Spain* in the Year 1503. He was crowned King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* in the right of his Wife, in 1527. He had three Sons, *Maximilian II.* Emperor, born in 1527. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, born in 1534. *Charles*, Count of *Stiria* and *Corinthia*, born in 1540.
- 1565 41. *Maximilian II.* the Son of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the *Romans* in the life of his Father, *Anno* 1562, succeeding the Empire after his decease. This Prince reigned peaceably. He died in the Year 1576.
- 1577 42. *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Maximilian*, had great Wars against the *Turk*, with whom in the Year 1600 he concluded a Peace; but being undermined by his Brother *Matthias*, was forced to surrender to him the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and to content himself with *Austria* and the Empire only. These eight last Emperors were all of the Order of the Garter. This Prince was born in the year 1552. He lost *Rab* to the *Turks* in 1594, but recovered it again; *Felaw* in 1596; *Canisa* in 1600; and *Grim* in 1605; which are all recovered again by the present Emperor *Leopold II.* This Emperor was never married.
- 1612 43. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Austria*, in whose time were sown the Seeds of that terrible War which had almost destroy'd the Empire. Having no Children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Gretz* to be declared Successor into his Estates. This Prince was born in the Year 1557, and elected Emperor in 1612. He was married but had no Children, and died in 1619. 7.
- 1619 44. *Ferdinand* of *Gretz*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Charles* of *Gretz*, the younger Son of *Ferdinand* the first; succeeded *Matthias* in all his Estates and Titles. A Prince more zealously affected to the See of *Rome* than any of his Predecessors, and a great Enemy of the Protestant Religion, occasioning thereby that long and bloody War in the Empire of *Germany*, not yet fully ended. This Prince was born in the Year 1579, crown'd King of *Bohemia* in 1617, of *Hungary* in 1618, and elected Emperor in 1619. He began the War in *Bohemia* in 1620.
- 1637 45. *Ferdinand III.* Son of *Ferdinand II.* born in the Year 1608: the 13th of *July* crowned King of *Hungary* in 1625, of *Bohemia* in 1627, chosen King of the *Romans* in 1636, and crown'd Emperor the next Year; broke the great power of the *Swedes*, (call'd in for the support of the *German* liberty, and against the violent resolutions of his Father at the Battel of *Norlingen*) the twelfth Emperor of the House of *Habsburg*, and the ninth of the House of *Austria* without intermission. The cause of which is to be attributed to *Charles V.* who procured in his life time that his Brother might be chosen *Rex Romanorum*, as his Successor in the Empire: a policy which hath been ever since continued by his Successors. And the *Germans* are the more willing to hearken to it, because the *Austrian* Princes are not only Natives of this Country, but better able to back out the Empire in its compleat Majesty than any of the rest of that Nation are. This Prince in the Year 1648 put an end to the destructive Wars of *Germany* by the Peace of *Osnaburg*. He died the 2d of *April*, 1657.
- 1658 46. *Leopold IV.* Son of *Ferdinand III.* born the 9th of *June*, 1640. was elected Emperor of *Germany* after the Death of his Father, the 8th of *July*, 1658. at *Francfort* (*Ferdinand* his

his eldest Brother having been chosen King of the *Romans* in 1653, and Dying of the Small Pox, before his Father in 1654.) This Prince was unfortunate in his first *Turkish* Wars, and in his Wars with the *French*, has not had any great advantage, but in the present War with the *Turks*, has in the space of five years recovered *Transylvania* and almost the whole Kingdom of *Hungary*, and reduced that Potent Empire to the brink of Ruine. This Prince married the third time, *Eleonora* Daughter of *Philip* Duke of *Newburg*, and now Elector *Palatine*, the 6th. of *January*, 1677, by whom he has *Joseph*, born the 16th. *July* 1678. Crowned King of *Hungary* in 1688. King of the *Romans* in 1689. II. *Charles*, born 1st. of *October* 1685, all his Sons by his 2 first Wives are Dead.

And to say truth, it is but need that some great Prince or other be elected to it, who by the power and reputation of his own Estate may preserve the Honour of the Empire, confined in a manner within *Germany*, and there so weakened by the alienating of whole Countries from it, (some Titulary acknowledgment excepted only) that it is nothing in effect but *magni nominis umbra*, the shadow of a mighty body, a meer empty Title. For if we look upon the present state and condition of it, we shall find it otherwise too weak to support the great and swelling Title of the *Roman* Empire. For as for the Empire it self, it hath some Countries reputed as parts of it, which yet acknowledge no Subjection; as *Belgium*, *Switzerland* and *Denmark*: Some do acknowledge a kind of Subjection, but the Princes of them come not to the Imperial Diet; as the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Lorraine*, and some of *Italian* Potentates: Finally, some both confess the Emperour to be their Sovereign, and that they owe Service to his Courts, which are the Princes and Cities of *Germany* only; but those so privileged, so exempted from his commands, so absolute and uncontrollable in their own Estates; that they care little for his power, and not much (if any thing) for his person; of which we shall speak more hereafter, when we come unto the form of the publick Government. In the mean time, if we would know by what occasions the Empire became so infeebled, it may be said, that the reasons and occasions of it have been very many. As first, the weakness and improvidence of the *Caroline* Race, dismembring from it many powerful and wealthy Provinces, reserving only a bare Homage and some slight acknowledgment. 2. The Cunning of the Popes, who from the time of *Henry* the 4. to *Rodolph* of *Habsburg* had by their Excommunications and other practices so exercised the Emperours with intestine troubles, that they forced them in a manner to abandon *Italy*: insomuch that the said *Rodolph* finding the inconvenience of it, sold most of his Estates there to the fairest Chapmen. 3. This done, and the Popes knowing well enough that they could not wax strong in *Italy*, if they did not weaken the Emperour's Estate in *Germany*, they first wrested out of their hands the Investiture of the Bishops, Abbots, and other Ecclesiastical Preferments; who being now made their own Creatures, were so increased both in Revenue and Power by little and little, and fortified with so many Immunities, that some of them grew in time to be free Estates, all of them Princes of the Empire. 4. But fearing that this might not bring the Emperours low enough, they baited them with continual Factions and perpetual Broils: which put them to a necessity of making what Friends they could, though they paid very dearly for them; and taking up what monies they could of the wealthier Cities, paying them in Exemptions and Royal Privileges, when they could not otherwise cancel or discharge the Debt. 5. And unto this, the making of the Empire Elective gave no little help, few of them looking on the Empire but as Tenants

for term of life, and therefore were more likely to discharge such Debts by impairing the publick Patrimony, which they had no hold in, than to diminish any thing of their own Estates. 6. But being the Title of Emperour was the greatest Honour which any of that Nation could be capable of, and such as by good husbandry might be made beneficial unto their posterity, (as we see what good uses have been made of it by the *Austrian* Family, ever since the time of *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*;) who would not part with some of the Imperial Rights, to advance his own House to an equal greatness. And herein many of the Emperours were exceeding faulty, who, to get the Empire to themselves, or leave it after them unto their posterity, dismembred from the same many Towns and fair possessions, given by them to the Electors for their Votes and Suffrages. 7. A thing which the Electors understood sufficiently, and therefore were resolved to make the best of the market, knowing that the Commodity could be bought of none but themselves: as in the Election of *Winceslaus* Son of *Charles* the 4th. of whom it was but Ask, and have what they have a mind to. By means whereof the Princes grew in time so strong, that there were few of them who durst not undertake a War against their Emperours. And this appeareth by the Story of *Charles* the fifth, who though the most puissant Emperour which had reigned in *Germany* since *Charles* the Great, yet found himself so over-matched by these ruffling Princes, that he was willing to resign the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*.

But to proceed: By these and every of these means the Body of the Empire came to be divided into many Estates, and those Estates to be made absolute and independent, as before is said. The principal whereof which being described will make up the Chorography of this great Continent are those of 1. *Cleveland*, 2. the Estates of the three Spiritual Electors, 3. the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, 4. *Alsatia*, 5. *Lorraine*, 6. *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, 7. *Bavaria*, 8. *Austria* and its Appendixes, 9. The Confederation of *Wideraw*, 10. *Franconia*, 11. *Wirttemberg*, and 12. *Baden*, 13. the *Palatinate* of *Northgoia*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, 14. *Bohemia* and the incorporate Provinces, 15. *Pomerania*, 16. *Mecklenburg*, 17. the Marquissate of *Brandenburg*, 18. *Saxony*, and the Members of it, 19. The Dukedoms of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbug*, 20. the Lantgrave of *Hessia*, 21. *Westphalen*, 22. *Frisland*. Such lesser States as, being absolute and free, are of lesser moment, shall be reduced (together with the Imperial Cities) to those several Provinces in which they are included, or out of which they were taken. As for the Province of *Holslein*, or *Holsatia*, though it be Imperial, and in this respect by some accounted as a Province of *Germany*; yet being under the command of the King of *Denmark*, and by all Writers reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, I shall there speak of it. Some of these are thus censured by *Aubanus*, a late Writer. They of *Suevia* (saith he) are Whores, they of *Franconia* Ravishers and Buggerers, they of *Bohemia* Hereticks, those of *Bavaria* Thieves, they of *Saxony* Drunkards, they of *Frisland* and *Westphalia* Swearers, and they of the *Palatinate* Gluttons. But I hope more charitably of them all than so. I know there is another division of this Country, made by the Emperour *Maximilian* at the Diet at *Colen*, Anno. 1522. who, for the better raising both of men and money for all publick services, caused it to be divided into the ten Circles of 1. *Lower Saxony*. 2. *Upper Saxony*. 3. *Westphalia*. 4. Of the *Rhene*. 5. Of the four Electors of that part. 6. *Franconia*. 7. *Suevia*. 8. *Bavaria*. 9. *Austria*, and 10. *Burgundy*. But that before proposed being the more particular, I shall follow that, according to the order before laid down; beginning first with those which, together with the *Belgick* Provinces and the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, contained anciently the Provinces of *Belgica* and *Germania Prima*, and some part of *Germania Secunda*, and made up the Kingdom of *Austrasia* strictly and specially so called.

1. CLEVELAND.

CLEVELAND, or the Estates of the Duke of Cleve, before dismembred and divided betwixt the Competitors for the Dukedom on the death of the last Duke hereof Anno 1609, contained the Dukedoms of Cleve, Gulick and Berg, and the Earldom of Mark, or March, all lying in a ring together. And though these two last lie on the other side of the Rhene, and not so properly within the old Precincts of the Kingdom of Lorrain, or any of the Roman Provinces before named; yet being they belonged all to the same Prince, not parted by the interposition of other Countries, they shall be handled here together as the same Estate.

1. The Dukedom of CLEVE, properly and distinctly so called, hath on the East the Countries of Mark and Berg, with some part of Westphalen, on the West Gelderland, and some part of Limberg, on the North the Earldom of Zutphen and the Land of Over-Yssel, and on the South Gulick, and the Land of Colen. So called from Cleve the chief Town of it.

The Country is very fruitful both for Corn and Pasturage, well stocked with Cattle of all sorts for necessary use and pleasure; hath good store of Fowl, both tame and wild, is blessed also with an healthy Air, and, in a word, with all things needful for the life of man, well water'd with the Rhene, the Roer, the Dussel, the Ezfat, and the Nirs, common to this and the rest of the incorporate Provinces.

The places of most importance in it are, 1. Cleve, (in Latine Clivia) so called because built on the sides of three little Hills, (which the Latines call Clivi) gently descending towards the Banks of the Rhene, which not far off divides it self into several Channels. An ancient Town, and of great note in former time, as appears by many old Foundations and other monuments of Antiquity continually digged up in the Fields adjoining; but chiefly by an old four-square Tower built on the highest of the three Hills, of great height and state, Founded by Julius Caesar as a Bulwark against the Germans inhabiting the farther side of the River. For proof of which, besides the old Tradition constantly maintained, there is an Inscription on the Gates of the Duke's Palace, near adjoining to it, which saith Anno ab Urbe DCXCII. C. Julius Dictator, his partibus subactis, hanc Arcem fundavit, i. e. that in the year, 698, from the building of Rome, Julius Caesar the Dictator, having subdued those parts of the Country, caused this Tower to be built. Dr. Burnet, who lately saw this City, saith it has a charming Situation and Prospect, and a very pure and pleasing Air. The Dutch under Mauritius their General, in the year 1628, seized on this City, which they kept, till the year 1672, when they were outed of it by the French, they again being forced to withdraw, they left it to the Elector of Brandenburg, who was possess'd before of the greatest part of this Dukedom. 2. Santen, on the banks of the Rhene, a Town of great Antiquity, as the Ruins of it do declare; supposed by Pighius to be the Trajana Colonia of the Ancients. 3. Wesel, (in Latine Vesalia) a fair and rich Town, seated on the Confluence of the Rhene with the River of Lippe, which, rising in Westphalia, doth here lose it self: of great note for a Colledge of Secular Canons built here by Eberard the 9th Earl, Anno 840, or thereabouts; and an Hospital liberally endowed for old impotent persons, Founded by Henry de Baers the Dukes Chancellour. A Town not subject to these Dukes, though within the Dukedom, being reckoned an Imperial City, and one of the Hanse-Towns; now neither so Imperial nor so free as formerly: possessed first for the Spaniard with a Garrison of 3000 men (at the beginning of the War of Cleve) by D. Lewis Valasco, and from them taken by the States of the United Provinces, Anno 1628, it has since had the same Fate with Cleve. 4. Burick, on the French side of the Rhene, over against Wesel, amongst goodly Corn

fields and pleasant pastures. 5. Duysburg, or Tuitzburg, in Latine called Teutoburgum, a Town of the ancient Germans, (as the name importeth) situate on the Rhene, betwixt the Angra and the Roer, two noted Rivers. A Town formerly of great Trading, and notably well built; Imperial, and one of the Hanse: but ceased to be Imperial when sold by Rodolph of Habsburg to Theodorick the ninth of that name, Earl of Cleve; together with 6. Cranenburg, another Town of his Dukedom, but of lesser note. 7. Emmerick; on the Rhene, a well frequented Town, remarkable for a very fair School. 8. Rees. 9. Griet, and 10. Griethuisen, all upon the Rhene. 11. Calcar, a Town more within the Land, but not far from the River; grown wealthy by the trade of Cloathing, and the best Beer or Ale in all these parts, sold thence abundantly into the Country round about. Not far from whence, at a place called Auff de Baern, it is supposed that Caesar Germanicus built his Bridge over the Rhene, when he went from Vetera Castra against the Marfi a Nation of Germany. 12. Gennep, upon the Niers nor Nirs, not far from its influx into the Maes: which together with Duiffle and Riexwald were bought of Sigismund, the Emperour, by Adolph the first Duke of Cleve, for a great sum of money.

South of the Land of Cleve, betwixt it and Colen, lieth the County of MUERS, extended all along on the banks of the Rhene; a distinct State, the Earl of which is subject to no other Prince but the Emperour only; so called from Muers, the chief Town of it, situate on the French side of the Rhene, over against Duysburg. Next Towns to which are, 2. Orsey, 3. Augur; of which little memorable. A small Territory, but in a very fruitful Soil. The Neighbourhood whereof to the Land of Colen (to which it serveth as an Outwork upon that side) preserved it in former times, from the Dukes of Cleve, who otherwise, no doubt, either by Arms or Marriage had been Masters of it, as they were of the adjoining Provinces on both sides of the River; this is now under the Prince of Orange.

2. GULICK-LAND, or the Dukedom of Gulick, hath on the East the County of Muers, and the Land of Colen, on the West Gelderland and Limbourg, on the North Cleve, and on the South the rest of the Land of Colen. The Air and Soil are much of the same nature as in Cleve; save that here is a greater plenty of Woad for dying, and a better breed of Horses than in the other. The Seat of the Menapii in the times of old.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1. Gulick, in Latine Juliacum, (whence the French call it Juliers) known by that name in the Itinerary of Antoninus, sufficient proof for the Antiquity thereof, but not otherwise famous; seated upon the River Roer, the chief Seat heretofore of the Dukes of Gulick, before the uniting hereof with Cleve; and since the dissolution of that Estate, possessed sometimes by the States of the united Provinces, and sometimes by the Spaniards, called in by the Competitors to assert their Titles. In the year 1660, it was put by the order of the King of Spain, (who then had it) into the hands of the Duke of Newburg. 2. Ducren, on the same River, the Marcodurum of the old Writers; and of late memorable for the long Siege which it held against Charles the fifth, in his Wars against William Duke of Cleve and Gulick for the Dukedom of Geldres in the year 1545, but in the year 1659, it was also restored by the Spaniards to the Duke of Newburg. 3. Munster Eysel, (in Latine Monasterium Eysalia) so called to distinguish it from Munster of Westphalen, pleasantly seated in a valley begirt with Mountains, not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River Exp, under the Duke of Newburg. 4. Caster, so called of a stately and magnificent Castle, built for defence of this part of the Country. 5. Berken, on the River Exp. 6. Merodon, beautified with a strong Castle, which gives name to an honourable and ancient Family. 7. Enskirck, 8. Berlin, &c.

There is also within the limits of this Dukedom the famous

famous Town of *Aix*, as the *French*, or *Aken*, as the *Germans* call it; famous of old time for the hot Baths both within and without the Town, whence it had the name of *Aix*, or *Aquen*, (in *Latine Aquisgranum*;) situate on the edge of *Limbourg*, in a fruitful Soil, but the Buildings nothing answerable to the fame of the place; inhabited for the most part by Smiths and Brasiers, who drive the greatest Trade herein, working continually on Iron and other metals, with which they are supplied abundantly out of *Liege* and *Limbourg*. The Town is Imperial, but under the Protection of the Dukes of *Cleve*: at the expiration of which Family, under colour of some quarrels about Religion, it was seized on and garrisoned by Marquis *Spinola* for the King of *Spain* in 1614. It was of great fame formerly for the death and sepulture of *Charles* the Great, by him made one of the three seats of the Western Empire, and designed by him to be the place in which the King of the *Romans* should receive his Crown for the Kingdom of *Germany* at the hands of the Archbishops of *Colen*. The Town is supposed to be formerly the wintering Camp of the *Romans*, called in *Tacitus Vetera*, which was taken by *Civilis* in the beginning of his Rebellion against *Vespasian*; during which Wars it is often mentioned by the Writers of those times. They were built and strengthened by *Augustus*, the better to keep under the *Germans*; quippe illis hybernis obsideri premique Germanias Augustus crediderat, because that Garrison was a Curb, as *Augustus* thought, to the *Germans*, as *Tacitus*. At this day, this Town and *Triers* are reputed famous for holy Reliques; here being said to be amongst others the Bearing-cloth wherewith our Saviour was wrapt when he was in his Swadling-clouts, which the Emperor solemnly worshippeth at his Inauguration, Concerning the ambition which the Papists have to be thought possessors of these Reliques: see, I beseech you, how pitifully they have mangled the Head of *S. John Baptist*. They of *Amiens* brag that they have his Face, and so do they of *S. John d' Angelic*. The rest of his Head is at *Malta*; yet is his hinder part of his Scull at *Namer*; and his Brain at *Novum Rostovienfe*: another part of it is at *Maurienne*, another piece at *Paris*; his Jaw at *Wesel*, his Ear at *S. Floures*, his Forehead and Hair at *S. Salvadore's* in *Venice*: another part of his Head is at *Noyon*, and another at *Luca*: Yet is his whole Head entire and unmaimed in *S. Sylvester's* Church at *Rome*. And so no doubt is this Bearing-cloth at more places than one. In the year 1656, This City was all most intirely Ruin'd, by a dismal Fire, and in 1668, there was a famous Treaty concluded here between the present King's of *France* and *Spain*. This City is still Imperial and Free, but under the Protection of the Duke of *Newburg*.

But to return to *Gulick* again. It was once part of the possessions of the Dukes of *Lorraine*; whether laid to it at the first erection of that Dukedom, as some Writers say, or added to it by the Princes of the House of *Ardenne*, when they succeeded in the same, I dare not possibly determine; although the lying of this Country within the ancient Verge or Perambulation of the great Forest of *Ardenne* makes the last in my opinion not to be improbable. It was first made an Earldom of it self in the person of *Eustace*, Brother of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, who seized upon it as his part of the Estate, on the death of *Godfrey*, his eldest brother *Baldwin* being absent in the *Holy-Land*. In the person of *William* the fourth of that name it was made a Marquisate, advanced unto that honour by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Anno 1329, created not long after Duke of *Gulick* by *Charles* the fourth, Anno 1356. His Estate was much augmented about that time, or but shortly after, by his Marriage with *Mary*, Sister and Heir of *Rainold* and *Edward* Dukes of *Geldres*, adding thereby that Dukedom unto this of *Gulick*. His two Sons *William* and *Rainold*, both Dukes successively, dying without Issue, the Estate fell to *Adolphus* Duke of *Berg* or *Monts*, as the next Heir-male, Anno 1425; and finally,

together with that of *Berg*, was added to the Dukedom of *Cleve*, by the Marriage of *Mary* Heir hereof with *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve*, and with it conjoynd till the expiration of that noble Family; whereof more anon.

As for the Estates of *Berg* and *Mark* they had one original, begun by two Brothers, the Sons of *Theoderick* Lord of *Teisterbant*, of the House of *Cleve*: out of which House as they descended, so into that they finally were again resolved, as their first materials. Of these two Brothers, *Adolphus* being the elder, was by the Emperor *Henry* surnamed the Fowler, made Earl of *Altena* Anno 930, or thereabouts; and *Eberard* the younger, by the said Emperour made Earl of *Berg*. But *Eberard* entering a Monastery of his own Foundation, left his Estate and Earldom of *Berg* to the Elder Brother. United thus into one Estate, they became again divided betwixt the Sons of *Adolph*, the 3. of that name, and fourth Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*; *Engelbert* the younger Son enjoying the Estate of *Berg*, and *Eberard* the elder succeeding his Father in that of *Altena*. How they became united to the House of *Cleve*, we shall see hereafter, having first looked over the Chorography or description of them.

3. The Dukedom of *BERG* is bounded on the East with *Westphalen* and the Country of *Mark*, on the West with the *Rhene* from *Wesel* up as high as *Colen*, by which 'tis parted from the Dukedom of *Cleve*, on the North with the River *Lippe*, which separates it from the rest of *Cleve*, and on the South with the Land of *Colen*. So called from the Hilliness of the Country, *Berg* in Dutch signifying an Hill; (as *Burg* doth a Town or Borough;) from whence the Earls and Dukes hereof are called *Montenses* in *Latine*, and *les Contes* and *Ducs de Mont* in *French*. The Country for the most part, in the Vales especially, yields a great store of the best Wheat, and consequently of the purest Bread; and in the Hill-Countries rich Mines of *Cole*, wherewith they do supply their neighbours.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Dusseldorp*, so called of the River *Dussel*, upon which it is situate, the River not far off falling into the *Rhene*, Fortified in the year 1613, by the Duke of *Newburg*. 2. *Adenburg*, built by *Eberhard* the first Earl of *Berg*, the Seat of him and his Successors, till removed to *Dusseldorp*. 3. *Keisersword*, situate on the *Rhene*, belonging anciently to the Empire, but bought for a great sum of Money of *Charles* the 4. by *John* Earl of *Cleve*. 4. *Mulheim*, on the *Rhene* also, just against *Colen* on the other side of the Water; fortified in the year 1614, and made the Receptacle of the Protestants of that Bishoprick, prohibited the free exercise of Religion in their own dwellings; but razed not long after by Marquis *Spinola*, on complaint made by those of *Colen* to the Emperor *Matthias*. 5. *Stelt*, or *Steltium*, on the *Roer*, among the Coal-mines. 6. *Angermund*, on the mouth of the River *Angra*, as the name imports. 7. *Essen*, or *Essendia*, on the borders of the County of *Mark*, once an Imperial, but under the Protection of the Earls of *Berg*, of most note for a Monastery here built by *Alfride* the 4th Bishop of *Hildesheim*, for Fifty Two Nuns and Twenty Canons, liberally endowed, and having great command on the Dorps adjoining.

How *Berg* at first was made an Earldom, how joyned unto *Altena*, and disjoyned again, hath been shewed before. No sooner made a State distinct; but it was added to the Patrimony of the Earls of *Gulick*, by the Marriage of Earl *William* with the Daughter and Heir of *Berg*. Parted again betwixt *William* and *Adolphus*, Sons of *Gerrard* the 2. An. 1247. the first succeeding in the Earldom of *Gulick*, and the last in *Berg*. During this Partage it was made a Dukedom in the person of *William* the first of that name by *Wenceslaus*, the Emperor, Anno 1389. whose Son *Adolphus*, as next Heir, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Gulick*, anno 1423. How both were added unto *Cleve* hath been said already.

The

The Dukes and Earls of

BERG		GULICK.	
A.Ch.		A.Ch.	
1. Engelbert, the first Earl of Berg, distinct from Mark.	1129	1. Eustace, the first Earl of Gulick, distinct from Lorraine.	
2. Adolphus, Son of Engelbert.		2. Un, Son of Eustace.	
3. N. the Sister of Adolphus.		3. William, Earl of Gulick.	
4. Gerrard, Earl of Gulick and Berg.			
5. William II. Son of Gerrard.			
6. Gerrard III. Son of William II.			
1247 7. Adolphus II. younger Son of Gerrard the 2d. took Prisoner by the Archbishop of Colen, (whom not long before he had held in custody) shut up in an Iron Vessel daubed with Honey, and most miserably stung to death by Bees.	1247	7. William III. eldest Son of Gerrard the second.	
		8. Gerrard III. Son of William.	
		9. Gerrard IV. Son of Gerrard the 2d.	
	1325	10. William IV. created first Marquis, after Duke of Gulick.	
1296 8. William III. Son of Adolphus.		1366 11. William V. Duke of Gulick and Geldres, this last accruing to him in the Right of his Mother Mary, Heir of that Estate.	
1337 9. Gerrard III. Son of William the 3d.			
10. William IV. created the first Duke of Berg, An. 1389, outed of the greatest part of his Estate by his Son Adolphus.	1404	12. Rainold, Duke of Gulick and Geldres, who died in the year 1423.	
11. Adolphus III. the Son of William the Fourth, Duke of Berg, succeeded also unto Rainold the last Duke of Gulick, dying without Issue, as the next Heir-male, the Dukedom of Gelderland falling by the Heirs-general to the House of Egmond.			
1434 12. Gerrard IV. of Berg, and V. of Gulick, Son of William, and Brother of Adolphus.			
1475 13. William V. of Berg, and VI. of Gulick, Son of Gerrard.			
1511 14. Mary, Daughter and Heir of William, Dutches of Gulick and Berg, convey'd the whole Estate in Marriage to John the 3d. Duke of Cleve, and Earl of Mark, continuing in that Family till the expiration of it in the Person of John-William, the last Prince hereof, Anno 1610.			

4. The Earldom of MARCH, or MARK, hath on the East and North Westphalia, on the West the Dukedom of Cleve, on the South that of Berg or Monts. So called, as being seated in the Marches of Westphalen, out of which it was taken. The Country for the most part, like the rest of Westphalen, is more fit for Pasturage than Corn, woody, and yielding store of Pawnage to those Herds of Swine with which it plentifully abounds.

Chief places in it are, 1. Werden, upon the River Ruer, on the edge of Westphalia, the People whereof get great Wealth by grazing of Cattel. 2. Soest, (in Latin *Susatum*) for Wealth and Greatness not inferiour to any in Westphalen, (except Munster only) consisting of ten Parishes, and lording it over many rich and pleasant Villages. Anciently it belong'd to the Bishops of Colen; but in the Year 1454, did voluntarily yield it self to the Duke of Cleve, (being then Earl of March also) and was by Duke John the 4th courageously defended against those Prelates. 3. Arnsberg, a fine and pleasant site,

used for a retiring-place by the Electors of Colen, unto whom it belongs. 4. Dortmund (in Latin *Tremonia*) a County anciently of it self, and held immediately of the Empire, possessed by the *Trotmanni*, a Tribe of the *Saxians*, from whence called *Trotmania*, and at last *Tremonia*. 5. *Blancostein*, built commodiously by Adolphus the Fifth of that Name, and first Earl of March; as was also, 6. *Ham*, or *Hammonc*. 7. *Unna*, of which nothing memorable. 8. *Altena*, the first Title of the Earls of this House, before they assumed that of the Earls of March, assumed first by Adolphus the 4th, on the Conquest of some Lands in the Marches of Westphalen, continuing in that Family till united with Cleve. This Earldom, upon the expiring of the Family of Cleve, was seiz'd on by the Duke of Brandenburg, who now enjoys it.

As for the Earldom or Dukedom of CLEVE, out of which it was taken, and to which the rest of those Estates did in time accrue; it was one of the most ancient Estates or Principalities in these Parts of the World, continuing in a direct Line for the space of 900 Years, held by them of the Kings of France, and afterwards of the Kings of Lorraine, till the incorporating of that Kingdom with the German Empire. Begun first by *Elius Grallius*, Companion to *Charles Martel* in his Wars against the *Frisons*, *Saxons* and *Bavarians*, whose Son *Theodorick* added hereto by Marriage the County of *Teisterbant*, containing the Towns and Seigniouries of *Altena* in Westphalen, as also of *Bornel*, *Heunson*, *Bueron*, *Culemburg*, in the Belgick Provinces. By *Baldwin* the sixth Earl was added the Territory of *Twentzen* (in Latin *Regio Tucana*) given him by *Ludovicus Pius*: By *Theodorick* the fifth, the Town and Seignioury of *Dinslack*, settled upon him on his Marriage with *Maltida*, the Heir thereof: By *Theodorick* the 9th the County of *Hulkenrade*, near *Nuys* in the Land of Colen, together with the Towns of *Duysburg* and *Culemburg*, bought of *Rodolphus Habsburgensis*: By *John* his Son, the Town and Territory of *Keiserfwerd*, bought of *Charles* the 4th: By *Adolph* the 29th Earl, the Earldom of March, formerly taken out of it, was again united: By *Adolph* his Successor (made the first Duke hereof by the Emperor *Sigismund*, Anno 1417.) were added the Lordships of *Gennep*, *Duissle*, and *Riexwald*, bought of the said Emperor; together with the County of *Ravenstein*, the Towns of *Leoburg*, *Limers*, and *Hatteren*, for the Ransom of *William* Duke of Berg, and other noble Persons taken Prisoners by him, Anno 1397. By *John*, the first Duke of that name, the Town and Territory of *Soest*: And finally, by *John* the 3d, the Dukedoms of Berg and Gulick, as Heir thereof by his Mother *Mary*, sole Daughter and Heir of *William* the 5th and 6th, the last Duke thereof. To which great height this ancient and noble Family had not long attained, and thereby made themselves and their Sons and Daughters fit Matches for the greatest Princes, but it pleased God to bring it to its fatal end, and by that means to dissipate this brave Estate in the hands of Strangers, as shall be shew'd in the conclusion of this Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of CLEVE.

A.Ch.	
717	1. Elias Grallius, Companion in the Wars of Charles Martel.
732	2. Theodorick, Earl of Cleve, and Lord of Teisterbant.
755	3. Rainold, Son of Theodorick Earl of Cleve, and Teisterbant.
767	4. Canon, of great Fame in Arms under Charles the Great.
778	5. John, Son of Canon, married the Daughter of Michael Curopalates, Emp. of Constantinople.
790	6. Robert, the eldest Son of John.
798	7. Baldwin, the Brother of Earl Robert. After whose death, Anno 830, the Earldom of Teisterbant was taken out of it, and made the Portion of Robert a younger Son; from whom descended the two Houses of March and Berg.

- 830 8. *Ludowick*, Son of *Baldwin*.
 834 9. *Eberhard*, Brother of *Ludowick*, who gave *Teisterbant* to his Brother *Robert*.
 843 10. *Luthardus*, Earl of *Cleve*.
 878 11. *Baldwin II*.
 928 12. *Arnold*.
 968 13. *Wignan*, Son of *Arnold*.
 1004 14. *Conrade*, made an Earl of the Empire in the life of his Father.
 1045 15. *Theodorick II*.
 1088 16. *Theodorick* the 3d. Companion of *Godfrey of Bouillon* in the *Holy-Land*.
 1114 17. *Arnold II*. Brother of *Theodorick* the third.
 1161 18. *Theodorick IV*.
 1205 19. *Arnold III*.
 1218 20. *Arnold IV*.
 1229 21. *Theodorick V*.
 1247 22. *Theodorick VI*.
 1255 23. *Theodorick VII*.
 1271 24. *Theodorick VIII*.
 1271 24. *Theodorick IX*.
 16. *Otho*, Son of *Theodorick*.
 1309 27. *Theodorick X*. Brother of *Otho*.
 1325 28. *John*, Brother of *Theodorick*, and Canon of *Colen*; the last of the line of *Elias Grallius*.
 29. *Adolphus* the 7th of *March*, Son of *Adolph* the 6. of *March*, and *Mary* of *Cleve*, first Archbishop of *Colen* (as six of this House of *March* had been (almost) successively before him) succeeded on the death of his Uncle *John* to the Earldom of *Cleve*, inaugurated there to by *Charles IV*.
 1389 30. *Adolph II*. of *Cleve*, and VIII. of *March*, created the first Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperor *Sigismund* at the Council of *Constance*, anno 1417.
 1443 31. *John III*. Son of *Adolph* Duke of *Cleve*, Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravensstein*.
 1481 32. *John II*. of the Rank of Dukes, and the IV. of the Earls.
 1521 33. *John III*. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, &c. by descent from his Father; and Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg* in Right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *William* the last Duke thereof.
 1539 34. *William*, Son of *John* the 3d. and *Mary* his Wife; Daughter and sole Heir of *William* the last Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*, Father of

Earls of *ALTENA* and *MARCH*.

A. Ch.

834

1. *Robert*, Son of *Baldwin*, to whom the Country of *Teisterbant* was given by *Eberhard*.
2. *Theodorick*, Son of *Robert*, the first Lord of *Altena*.
3. *Adolphus I*. Earl of *Altena*.
4. *Adolphus II*. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
5. *Conrade*, Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
6. *Adolph III*. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
7. *Eberhard*, Earl of *Altena*; his younger Brother *Engelbert* succeeding in *Berg*.
8. *Frederick*, Earl of *Altena*.
9. *Adolphus IV*. created the first Earl of *March*.
- 1249 10. *Engelbert*, Earl of *March* and *Altena*.
11. *Adolphus V*. Son of *Engelbert*.
12. *Engelbert II*. from whom, by a second Wife, the Masculine Issue, of Daughter and Heir of *Aremberg*, descended that Branch of the House of *March*, which till of late were Sovereigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bonillon*.
13. *Adolph VI*. Husband of *Mary* (or *Margaret*) Daughter and Heir of *Theodorick* the 9th. Earl of *Cleve*.

the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the Wives of *Henry* the 8th of *England*. He contended very strongly against *Charles* the 5th for the Dukedom of *Geldres*; but, being too weak for so great an Adversary, made his Submission to him at *Venlo*, and so saved his Estates.

1584 35. *John-William*, Son of the former *William*, during the Life of *Charles Frederick*, his elder Brother, was Bishop of *Munster*; on whose death, anno 1575. he resigned that Dignity, and in the end succeeded his Father in his whole Estates, which he managed with great Piety and Prudence till the Year 1610. and then died Issueless; the last of that ancient and noble Family of the Dukes of *Cleve*. After whose death much quarrel and contention grew about the Succession betwixt the several Competitors and Pretenders to it: of which the principal were, 1. *Leopold*, Archduke of *Austria*, pretending an Investiture from the Emperor *Rodolphus* in the Dukedom of *Juliers*, to whom, for want of Heirs-males the Estate was said to be escheated. 2. *John-George*, Duke of *Saxony*, descended from *Sibyll*, Daughter of Duke *John* the third; at whose Marriage with *John-Frederick* the Elector of *Saxony*, anno 1535, it was said to have been solemnly agreed upon, that on the failing of the Heirs-males of *Cleve*, the Issue of that Marriage should succeed therein. 3. *George-William*, Duke of *Prussia*, Son of *John Sigismund* the Elector of *Brandenburg*, by the Lady *Anne* his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Maria Eleonora*, the eldest Sister and next Heir of the Duke deceased. 4. *Wolfgangus-Gulielmus*, Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Magdalen*, the younger Sister of that *Mary*, who claimed the Estate as nearest Kinsman by one degree to the said last Duke. And though the Right seem'd most apparently on the side of *Brandenburg*, the Estate in tail, pretended by the Duke of *Saxony*, being formerly cut off by Imperial Authority, and that pretended to by the Duke of *Newburg* not of force in *Germany*: yet being that *Leopold* was in Arms, and had already forced a Possession of *Juliers* and of most parts of that Country, the two Princes of *Brandenburg* and *Newburg* soon agreed the controversy, and by the help of the Protestant Princes their Confederates recovered the greatest part of it from the hands of *Leopold*. But the Palatine of *Newburg*, not content with his Partage, first married with a Daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*, and called in the Spanish Arms, under the command of the Marquis *Spinola*, to abet his Quarrel: which made *George-William*, Son of the Elector of *Brandenburg* and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the Forces of the States, under the command of *Maurice*, Earl of *Nassau*, after Prince of *Orange*. The issue of which War was this, that *Spinola* possessed himself of *Wesel*, *Aken*, *Mulheim*, *Dusseldorp*, and most other places of importance in *Berg* and *Gulick*, since surrendered to the Duke of *Newburg*; and the States got into their power some Towns of *Gulick*, with *Ries* and *Emerick* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, and almost the whole County of *Mark*; all since put into the hands of the Duke of *Brandenburg*. And though most parts of these Estates have been delivered since to the rightful Owners, yet other places of importance are detained from them. Which notwithstanding that they both pretend to keep for the use of those Princes in whose cause they stood: yet when such strong Parties keep the Stakes, it is most easie to determine who will win the Game: Such Alterations as have happened in the chance of War, by the reciprocal winning and losing of some Towns on both sides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightful Owners.

The Arms of these Princes were, 1. *Gules* over an Escutcheon in Fesse *Argent*, a Carbuncle pierced, powdered and flower'd *Or*, for the Dukedom of *Cleve*. 2. *Or*, a Lion *Azure*, armed *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Gulick*. The Arms of *Berg* and *March* I have no where found.

2. *The Estates of the Three ELECTOR-BISHOPS.*

ADjoining to the Estates of *Cleve* are those of the *Spiritual Electors* of the Empire of *Germany*, *Colen*, *Mentz* and *Triers*; not so contiguous and conterminous as those of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out severally by their Metes and Boundaries. And first for

COLEN-Land, or the Estate of the Archbishop and Elector of *Colen*. It is bounded on the East with the Dukedom of *Berg*, divided from it by the *Rhene*, on the West with *Gulick*, on the North with *Cleve* it self and the County of *Muers*, and on the South extending to the Land of *Triers*. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Ubii*, in former times possessed of the Countries of *Berg* and *Marck*; but being warred on by the *Germans* bordering next upon them, they were by the Clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lieutenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and by him placed along the *French* side of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the Borders of the *Roman* Empire, as for their own security against that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the *French* in the Reign and under the Conduct of *Childerick*, anno 412. or thereabout; and from the *French* by the Emperor *Otho* the first, anno 949. By *Otho* the second made a part of the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, or at the least given by him unto *Charles* of *France*, the first Duke thereof: after whose death, deceasing without Issue-male, the Town of *Colen* and many other pieces upon the *Rhene* were seized on by *Otho* the third, and by him restor'd to the Empire. Since that time the City of *Colen* hath remained Imperial, and of late times incorporated amongst the *Hanse-Towns*; but the Territory near unto it, and a great part of *Westphalen*, subject immediately to the Bishop. The Bishop's See was first Founded here by *S. Maternus*, one of the Disciples of *S. Peter*, as hath been constantly affirmed by old Tradition: but howsoever it was an Episcopal See, without all question, in the time of *Constantine*, *Maternus*, Bishop hereof, subscribing amongst others to the Council of *Arles*, anno 326. And being *Colen* was in those times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, the Bishop had the power of a Metropolitan; according to the Rule and Observation so often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made Elective, these Bishops, with their Brethren of *Ments* and *Triers*, were made three of the seven which were to nominate and elect the succeeding Emperor: After which time it is no wonder that they grew both in Power and Patrimony.

Places of most importance within this Electorate are, 1. *Bonn*, situate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the most pleasant and fruitful place of all the Country; the ordinary Residence of the Archbishop, whose House or Palace here is said to be one of the fairest in all *Germany*. By *Tacitus* it is called *Bonna*, and sometimes *Castra Bonensia*, the wintering Camp in his time of the Sixth Legion. Dr. *Edward Brown*, who say this Place in the year 1686, assures us it was then not long before Fortified by the Order of the then present Archbishop, and the Direction of one Colonel *Riser*, a blind Man. In the Year 1688, the *French*, under pretence of supporting the Interest of the Cardinal of *Furstemberg*, who was elected Archbishop of this See, put a strong Garrison into *Bonn*, and spent the following Winter in strengthening its Works the 11th of *July*, 1689, the Elector of *Brandenburg* came before it and took by Assault the Fort of *Beul* over-against it on the opposite side of the *Rhene*, from which time it was blockaded to the 21th of *August*; at a distance then he began to fire upon it with his Cannon and Mortars, and drawing Lines of Circumvallation to prevent Sallies: *Mentz* being in the mean time surrendered to the Duke of *Lorrain* the 9th of *September*, the 10th the Elector summoned the Town, which refusing to yield, the 11th he opened the Trenches and began the Approaches, and the 12th of *October* it was surrendered on good terms; the Countercarp having been taken the 9th day

by Storm. 2. *Nuys*, by the same Writer called *Nivesium* (*Nivesu* by *Antoninus*) seated on the *Rip*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; the break-neck of the *Glories* of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, who being resolved to get this Town into his hands, as a convenient pass into *Germany*, lay so long before it, that he lost the opportunity of joining with King *Edward IV.* of *England*, whom he had purposely invited to the War of *France*, and yet was fain to go without it. By means whereof he grew so low in Reputation, that he was undermined by the *French*, defied by the *Lorrainer*, forsook by the *English*, baffled by the *Smitzers*, and at last overthrown and slain by that beggarly Nation. 3. *Ernace*, or *Andernach*, by *Marcellinus* called *Antenacum*, one of the ten Garrisons erected by the *Romans* on the Banks of the *Rhene*, to secure their Province from the *Germans*; the other nine being *Confluentz*, *Boppard*, *Worms*, *Bing*, *Za-bern*, *Altrip*, *Seltz*, *Straesburg*, and *Wassenburg*. 4. *Lintz*, seated on the same River also. 5. *Sontina*, a Town of good repnte. 6. *Zulp*, now a Village of no esteem but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antoninus* call'd *Tolliacum*, most memorable for the great Victory which *Clovis* the first Christian King of the *French* (upon a Vow made in the heat of the Fight to embrace the Gospel) obtained against the whole power of the *Almans*, never presuming after that to invade his Territories. 7. *Rhin-berg*, commonly called *Berck*, the most Northern Town of all the Bishoprick, situate on the *Rhene* (as the name imports) there where the Lands of this Bishop, as also of the Dukes of *Cleve* and the Earls of *Muers* meet upon a point. A Town which for these 60 Years hath been of little use or profit to the right Owner, possessed sometimes by the *Spaniards*, sometimes by the Confederate States; for each commodiously seated, as opening a Passage up the River, and receiving great Customs on all kind of Merchandise passing to and fro. But having finally been possess'd by the *Spaniard* from the year 1606 till 1633, it was then regained for the States by *Henry* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, with the loss of no more than 60 Men: there being found in the Town 30 brass pieces of Ordnance, 70 barrels of Powder, with Victuals and Ammunition of all sorts thereunto proportionable. In the year 1672 this Place was taken by the *French*, and restored to the Archbishop of *Colen*. 8. *Colen*, situate on the *Rhene*, first built by the *Ubii* before-mentioned, and by them called *Oppidum Ubiorum*; afterwards, in honour of *Agrippina* (Daughter of *Germanicus*, and Wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Colonia Agrippina*, and sometimes by way of eminency *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous and magnificent City, containing about five miles in compats, in which are numbred 19 Hospitals, 37 Monasteries of both Sexes, 30 Chapels of our Lady, 9 Parishes, and 10 Collegiate Churches, besides the Cathedral, being a Church of vast greatness, but of little beauty, and not yet finished: the Metropolitan whereof is Chancellor of *Italy*, the second of the three Electors, and writes himself Duke of *Westphalen* and *Angrivaria*. Nigh to this Town did *Cesar* with incredible expedition make a Bridge over the *Rhene*, which more terrified the barbarous Enemy than the reports of his Valour. So powerful is laborious Industry, that it overcometh all disasters, and maketh the most unpassable Waters yield to heroick Resolutions.

In this Town also is said to lie the Bodies of the three wise Men, which came from the East to worship our Saviour, vulgarly called the three Kings of *Colen*. The whole Story is at large written in Tables which are fastened unto their Tombs: the pith whereof is this: The first of them, called *Melchior*, an old Man with a large Beard, offer'd Gold, as unto a King; the second, call'd *Gasper*, a beardless young Man, offer'd Frankincense, as unto God; the third, called *Balthasar*, a Black-moor, with a spreading Beard, offer'd Myrrh, as unto a Man ready for his Sepulchre. That they were of *Arabia*, the Table saith is probable; 1. Because they came from the East,

East, and so is *Arabia* in respect of *Hierusalem*; and, 2. Because it is said in the 72 *Psalm*, *The Kings of Arabia shall bring gifts*. As for their Bodies, they are there said to have been translated by *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*, unto *Constantinople*; from thence by *Eustorfius*, Bishop of *Millain*, removed unto *Millain*; and finally brought hither by *Rainoldus*, Bishop hereof, anno 1164. This is the substance of the History; which for my part I reckon amongst the *Apocrypha*, (except it be their coming from some part of *Arabia*) but have not leisure in this place to refel the Fable.

As for the temporal Estate of the Bishops of *Colen*, it came unto them specially by the munificence of the Emperors of the House of *Saxony*; the Dukedom of *Engern*, containing a good part of *Westphalen*, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno*, once Archbishop hereof, one of the younger Sons of the Emperor *Henry* the first, surnamed the Fowler, with the consent of *Otho* the first, his elder Brother. To which was added not long after the whole Land of *Colen* (as we have formerly described it) by *Otho* the second, which being formerly a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, was taken out of it, and settled on the Bishops hereof, at such time as the Dukedom of *Lorrain* was erected by him; such pieces only as are found on the other side of the *Rhene* (neither great nor many) being added by the Wit and Industry of the following Bishops: exceedingly increased both in Power and Patrimony by the addition of *Liege* to this Electorate; it being of late the constant custom of the Canons of *Liege* to chuse the Archbishop of *Colen* for their Prince and Pastor.

The Names of the Archbishops and Electors of
C O L E N; from *John Bussieres*.

- | | |
|------|---|
| | 1. <i>Heribertus</i> . |
| 1021 | 2. <i>Peregrinus</i> . |
| | 3. <i>Hermannus</i> , Nephew by the Sister of <i>Otho</i> II. Emperor of Germany. |
| | 4. <i>S. Anno</i> . |
| | 5. <i>Hidulphus</i> . |
| 1084 | 6. <i>Sigevinus</i> . |
| 1089 | 7. <i>Hermannus</i> II. |
| 1112 | 8. <i>Frederick</i> . |
| 1132 | 9. <i>Bruno</i> , Count of <i>Altena</i> . |
| 1152 | 10. <i>Arnoldus</i> . |
| 1158 | 11. <i>Hugo</i> . |
| | 12. <i>Arnoldus</i> , Earl of <i>Gelderland</i> . |
| 1161 | 13. <i>Frederick</i> II. Count of <i>Altena</i> . |
| | 14. <i>Reinoldus</i> , Count of <i>Dassell</i> , who brought the three Kings from <i>Assyria</i> . |
| 1187 | 15. <i>Philip</i> ab <i>Heinsberg</i> . |
| | 16. <i>Bruno</i> II. Count of <i>Altena</i> . |
| 1199 | 17. <i>Adolphus</i> , Count of <i>Altena</i> , succeeded <i>Bruno</i> his Brother, who became a Monk. |
| | 18. <i>Bruno</i> de <i>Segelbach</i> III. |
| 1220 | 19. <i>Theodorick</i> , Count of <i>Berg</i> . |
| 1225 | 20. <i>Engelbert</i> , Count of <i>Berg</i> . |
| 1232 | 21. <i>Henry</i> . |
| | 22. <i>Conradus</i> . |
| 1261 | 23. <i>Engelbert</i> II. a <i>Falkenburg</i> . |
| 1280 | 24. <i>Sigefridus</i> de <i>Westerburg</i> . |
| 1299 | 25. <i>Wickboldus</i> , a Baron of <i>Westphalia</i> . |
| | 26. <i>Henry</i> de <i>Varenburg</i> II. |
| | 27. <i>Walram</i> , Earl of <i>Juliers</i> . |
| 1350 | 28. <i>William</i> Genap. |
| | 29. <i>John</i> <i>Varenbourg</i> . |
| | 30. <i>Adolph</i> II. Count of <i>Mark</i> . |
| 1367 | 31. <i>Engelbert</i> II. Count of <i>Mark</i> . |
| 1368 | 32. <i>Cuno</i> de <i>Falkenstein</i> . |
| | 33. <i>Frederick</i> III. Count de <i>Somverden</i> . |
| 1414 | 34. <i>Theodorick</i> II. Count of <i>Muers</i> . |
| 1462 | 35. <i>Rupert</i> , Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> . |
| 1479 | 36. <i>Herman</i> , Landgrave of <i>Hassia</i> . |
| 1508 | 37. <i>Philip</i> II. Count of <i>Dhuin</i> . |
| | 38. <i>Herman</i> II. Count of <i>Weida</i> , depos'd in 1552. |

- | | |
|------|---|
| 1552 | 39. <i>Adolph</i> III. Count of <i>Saumburg</i> . |
| 1556 | 40. <i>Anthony</i> , Count of <i>Saumburg</i> . |
| 1559 | 41. <i>John</i> <i>Gebard</i> . |
| 1562 | 42. <i>Frederick</i> IV. Count de <i>Wiedt</i> . |
| | 43. <i>Salentinus</i> , Count of <i>Isenburg</i> ; he Reigned in the Year 1576. |
| | 44. <i>Gerard</i> de <i>Waldpung</i> , deposed. |
| 1583 | 45. <i>Ernest</i> , Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> . |
| 1612 | 46. <i>Ferdinand</i> , Brother of <i>Maximilian</i> , Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> . |
| 1650 | 47. <i>Maximilian</i> , Nephew of <i>Ferdinand</i> , he died June the 3d, 1688. |
| 1688 | 48. July 19. Prince <i>Clement</i> of <i>Bavaria</i> , Brother to the present Elector, was chosen in competition with Cardinal <i>Furstenburg</i> . The 15th of September the said Election was confirm'd by the Pope, the Cardinal <i>Furstenburg</i> being rejected as Bishop of <i>Strasbourg</i> . This was made the pretence of a War by <i>Lewis</i> XIV. |

Next to the Bishoprick of *Colen* lieth the Land of *TRIERS*, extended all along the course of the *Moselle*, from the Dukedom of *Lorrain* on the South, beyond the Influx of that River into the *Rhene* at the City of *Confluentz*, where it bordereth on the Land of *Colen*. It is bounded on the West with *Luxemburg*, as on the East with that part of *Franconia* which lieth below the confluence of the said two Rivers, and is now called *Rhineweg*; more Southward on that side with the Country of *West-reich* and the Dukedom of *Zweibruck*, parts of the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*. The Country towards *Lorrain* and *Luxemburg* is somewhat wild and barren, more fruitful about *Triers* it self and the Bank of the *Rhene*; in all parts generally more pleasant than profitable, the greatest Riches of it lying in Woods and Minerals. The Bishop's See was here first erected by *Eucherius*, a Disciple and Follower of *S. Peter*. The reality whereof is not only testified by the *Martyrologies*, but by *Methodius*, a Writer of approved Credit, who adds *Valerius* and *Maternus* for his next Successors; the line Episcopal continuing till the Council of *Arles*, anno 326. *Agritius* Bishop of *Triers* subscribing to the Acts thereof. From this time forwards, and before, the Bishop had the Reputation and Authority of a Metropolitan, the City of *Triers* being anciently the Metropolis of *Belgica prima*, within which it stands. It increased exceedingly by being made one of the three Electors of the Spirituality, tho' the last in order, and Chancellor to the Emperor for the Realm of *France*: the Fortunes of which Realm it followed, till wrested from it, with the rest of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, by the German Emperors.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Confluentz*, or *Coblentz*, the Confluents of *Antoninus*, so called because seated on the Confluence or Meeting of the *Rhene* and the *Moselle*; the Station anciently of the first Legion. A populous and well built Town, and seated in a pleasant and fertile Country. This City was taken by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, who drove out the Spanish Garrison, and kept it till the Peace of *Munster*. 2. *Ehrenbreitstein*, over against *Coblentz*, on the other side of the *Rhene*, beautified with a strong Castle of the Bishop's, mounted upon a lofty Hill, which not only gives a gallant Prospect to the Eye, but commands both the Town and River. It was yielded up into the hands of the French by *Philip-Christopher*, Elector of *Trier*, for which he was carried Captive to *Vienna* by the present Emperor's Orders, and in the end of the War the Castle was restored to the Elector. This Castle was began by *Hilinus* Archbishop of *Trier* in the year 1166. 3. *Boppard*, seated on the *Rhene*, and call'd so quasi *Bonport*, from the commodiousness of the Creek (upon which it standeth) for the use of Shipping: one of the Forts (as *Confluentz* before mentioned) also was erected by the Romans on the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* against the Germans; occasioning in time both Towns. It was miserably waited by *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall* and King of the Romans, because

cause the Bishop of *Triers* agreed not unto his Election; but soon recovered of those hurts. The ancient name hereof in the *Itinerary* of *Antonius* is supposed to be *Bodobrica*. It was pawned to the Bishops of *Triers* by *Henry* the 7. and not yet redeemed. 4. *Sarbrucken*, on the edge of *Lorraine*, (by *Antonius* called *Pons Sarnix*) seated on the River or Brook called *Sar*, (whence it had the name) at the fall thereof into the *Moselle*: possessed at the present by a Branch of the House of *Nassau*, (but Homagers of this Elector) entituled hence, according to the Dutch fashion, Counts of *Nassau in Sarbruck*, 5. *Veldentz*, and 6. *Beilstein*, on the *Moselle*, of which nothing memorable. 7. *Treves*, or *Triers*, in *Latine*, *Augusta Trevirorum*, the principal City of the *Treviri*, who possessed this Tract; seated upon the *Moselle* also; the Metropolis of the Province of *Belgica Prima*, and honoured with the Residence of the Vicar or Lieutenant-General for the whole Diocess of *Gaul*; by consequence the Seat of a Metropolitan when it submitted to the Gospel. Of such antiquity it is, that it is said to have been founded 150 years before the City of *Rome*: of no great beauty of it self, and as little Trading; the River nor being capable of Ships of burthen, and the Air generally so clouded and inclined to rain, that it is by some called merrily *Cloaca Planetarum*. It passed sometimes among the number of Imperial Cities, but now acknowledged the Elector for the Lord thereof; by whom it was made an University, one of the ancientest in all *Germany*, and of as much resort for the study of good Arts and Sciences as the best amongst them. This City in the year 1632, was put into the hands of the *French*, to preserve it from the *Swedes*, and continued under them till the year 1645, when it was recovered by the Imperialists. The *French* took it again in 1672, but were forced to surrender it in 1675 with great loss. 8. *Ober-Wesel*, or *Vesalia superior*, (so called to distinguish it from *Wesel* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, which is *Vesalia inferior*, or the *Under-Wesel*) the farthest place of this District, seated on the *Rhene*, not far from *Baccharach* 2 Town of the *Palatinate*; of no great note, but that it is accounted for a Town Imperial.

This Country anciently was part of the great and famous Earldom of *Moselle*, denominated from the River *Moselle*, along the Course whereof it was first erected; an Estate founded by the disherited Sons of *Clodian*, second King of the *French*, at the same time (and on the same occasion also) in which the Earldom of *Ardenne* was erected by them, of which we have already spoken, when we were in *Belgium*: this, of the two, the more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Metz*, as lying nearer to the Court, and so more in sight; the other being farther off, in Countries far less cultivate, but more defensible. This Earldom comprehending, besides this of *Triers*, the Countries of *Zweibrucken* and *West-reich*, and so much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lieth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, occasioned the Princes of it to be much looked after; and they maintained their Port to the very last: insomuch that *Gislebert* or *Gilbert* Earl of *Moselle*, in the time of the Emperor *Henry* the first, surnamed the Fowler, was thought by him a fit Husband for his Daughter *Gerberg*, married after his decease to *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine*, King of *France*; and *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Theodorick*, who came after *Gilbert*, was married to *Henry* surnamed *Gozelo*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and by him made the Mother of another *Henry*, Successor unto *Otho* the 3. in the *Roman* Empire. Impoverished, not a little, both in Power and Patrimony by the erection to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, there grew some Feuds between those Houses, occasioning the Death of *Albert*, another of these Earls, slain (as it is said by *Lacinius*) by *Godfrey*, Son of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*: more probably by some other Prince of the House of *Ardenne*, it not being founded in any other approved Author, that *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was the Father of any Children. But this Difference being reconciled by the Marriage of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Simon* Earl

hereof, with *Thierrie* the 9. Duke of *Lorraine*, and the Family of these Earls expiring in a short time after, this part of the Estate was seized on by the Bishops of *Triers*; that part of the *Palatinate* which lieth on the *Gallick* side of the *Rhene*, by the Bishops of *Metz*, *Spires*, *Worms*, and the Princes *Palatine*; the rest being taken in by the Dukes of *Lorraine*, who do still enjoy it: the Emperors of those times being either willing to it, or not able to help it.

The Succession of the Electors of *Triers*, is thus stated by *John Bussieres*.

- | | |
|------|--|
| 998 | 1. <i>Ludolphus</i> , one of the Family of the Dukes of <i>Saxony</i> . |
| | 2. <i>Adelbert</i> Brother of <i>St. Kunegund</i> the Empress. |
| 1008 | 3. <i>Minguard</i> , or <i>Megingotus</i> . |
| | 4. <i>S. Poppo</i> , Son of <i>Leopold</i> , Marquis of <i>Austria</i> . |
| 1037 | 5. <i>Eberhard</i> , Count <i>Palatin</i> . |
| 1065 | 6. <i>Cuno</i> , or <i>Conrad</i> who was slain. |
| 1066 | 7. <i>Udo</i> , Count of <i>Nellenburg</i> . |
| 1077 | 8. <i>Ado</i> , whom some make the same with the former. |
| 1079 | 9. <i>Engelbert</i> . |
| 1101 | 10. <i>Bruna</i> . |
| 1123 | 11. <i>Grodefridus</i> . |
| 1130 | 12. <i>Meginherus</i> . |
| | 13. <i>Adelbert</i> , II. |
| 1132 | 14. <i>Hilinus</i> . |
| 1154 | 15. <i>Arnolus</i> . |
| 1188 | 16. <i>Johannes</i> . |
| 1213 | 17. <i>Theodorus</i> , Count de <i>Wiedt</i> . |
| 1242 | 18. <i>Arnoldus</i> , II. |
| 1259 | 19. <i>Henricus</i> de <i>Winstegen</i> . |
| 1286 | 20. <i>Boemundus</i> a <i>Vosperg</i> . |
| 1299 | 21. <i>Dietherus</i> , Count of <i>Nassau</i> . |
| 1307 | 22. <i>Baldainus</i> , Count of <i>Luxemburg</i> . |
| 1354 | 23. <i>Boemundus</i> , II. Count de <i>Sarbruck</i> . |
| 1368 | 24. <i>Conrad</i> , Count de <i>Falkenstein</i> . |
| 1388 | 25. <i>Wernherus</i> , Count de <i>Koningstein</i> . |
| 1418 | 26. <i>Otho</i> , Count de <i>Ziegenhaim</i> . |
| 1430 | 27. <i>Rhabanus</i> , ab <i>Helmstat</i> . |
| | 28. <i>Jacob</i> , Baron of <i>Sirk</i> . |
| 1436 | 29. <i>John</i> , Marquis of <i>Baden</i> . |
| 1505 | 30. <i>Jacob</i> , II. Marquis of <i>Baden</i> . |
| | 31. <i>Richard</i> a <i>Grieffenclau</i> . |
| | 32. <i>John</i> a <i>Meznhausen</i> . |
| 1540 | 33. <i>John Lewis</i> ab <i>Hagn</i> . |
| 1547 | 34. <i>John</i> , Count de <i>Isenburg</i> . |
| 1556 | 35. <i>John</i> de <i>Stain</i> . |
| 1567 | 36. <i>Jacob</i> ab <i>Elz</i> . |
| 1599 | 37. <i>Lotharius</i> a <i>Maternich</i> . |
| 1623 | 38. <i>Philip Christopher</i> a <i>Soteren</i> . |
| 1652 | 39. <i>Charles Caspar</i> a <i>Petra</i> . |
| 1676 | 40. <i>John Hugo</i> , Nephew to the former. |

3. The Bishoprick of *METS* is not laid out by Bounds and Limits, as the other, because the Patrimony and Estate thereof doth not lie together, dispersed for the most part about *Franconia*, intermixed with the Lands and Towns of the Princes *Palatine*, the Bishops of *Wormes*, *Spires*, and others. So that the Temporal Estate of this Elector is every way inferior unto those of *Triers* and *Colen*; though superior unto both in place and dignity, he being the first in rank of the whole Electoral Colledge, Chancellour for the Empire, and in all Meetings sitting at the right hand of the Emperor. The Bishop's See was first placed here, as some report by *S. Crescens*, one of the Disciples of *S. Paul*, of whose being sent by him into *Gallia* (for so the ancient Writers understand *Galatia*) the Apostle speaketh 2 *Tim.* 4. Though others with more probability sent him at *Vienna* in *Danphine*. But whether it were here or there, certain it is, that anciently this City was a See Episcopal; *Martine*, the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the

the Council of *Colen*, anno 347. And if a Bishop, certainly a Metropolitan Bishop, this City being in those times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Prima*. But Christianity being worn out of these parts of *Germany* by the Conquest of the *French*, *Almans*, and other Infidels, was again restored in this Tract by *Boniface*; an *Englishman*, the first Archbishop of *Mentz* of this new Plantation, (in and about the time of *Pepin*, surnamed the *Gross*, Major of the Palace to the *French* Kings, and Father of *C. Martel*) who, for the Orthodoxy of his Doctrine, and the number of Churches planted by him, hath been deservedly honoured with the Title of the *Apostle of Germany*.

Towns of most note belonging to the Bishops hereof are, 1. *Mentz* it self, the *Moguntiacum* of the Ancients, so called from the River of *Maine*, formerly *Mogus* and *Mogonus* in the *Latine*, (now better known by the name of *Mainus*) opposite to the fall whereof into the *Rhene* it was built of old, so having the command of both Rivers; and for that cause made the Seat of a *Roman* Officer, commonly called the Duke of *Mentz*, who had a charge of the Frontiers, and especially of those ten Garrisons planted on the Banks of the *Rhene*, spoken of before. It is stretched out in great length on the River's side, but not of answerable breadth; well built, and populous towards the water, in other parts not so well inhabited. The publick Buildings generally are very large and beautiful, the Houses built according to the old *Roman* Model: the most magnificent whereof is the Bishop's Palace, who is the immediate Lord both of the Town and Territory, extended on both sides of the *Rhene*, fruitful in all natural Commodities, and abounding with most excellent Wines. Of good note also for an University here founded by *Theodorick*, one of the Electors; but especially for the Art of Printing, which was here invented, or perfected at the least, and made fit for use. This City was taken by the *Spaniards* in 1631, and 1635, and remained in their hands till the Peace of *Munster* in 1648, and paid to *Goustavus Adolphus* above 10000 Dollers for a Ransom. This Prince built a Bridge over both the *Rhene* and *Main*, the latter of which, was found so convenient, that it is still continued, though the former is taken away. 2. *Bing*, seated on the *Rhene*, another of the Garrison-Towns erected by the *Romans* on the Banks of that River. In a small Island of which, not far from this Town, is a Tower or Castle called the *Moufe-turm*, i. e. the Tower of Mice, built by one *Hatto* (or *Hanno*) Archbishop of *Mentz*, anno 900, or thereabouts, who, in a year of great scarcity, pretending to relieve the poor people oppressed with Famine, caused them to be gathered together into an old Barn, where he burnt them all, saying, they were the Rats and Mice which devoured the Corn. After which barbarous act he was so persecuted by these Vermin, that to avoid them, he was fain to build a Palace in the midst of the *Rhene*, whither the Rats and Mice followed him, and at last devoured him. 3. *Laustein*. 4. *Hasford*. 5. *Oxenford*. 6. *Aldenburg*. 7. *Middleburg*. 8. *Carolsstadt*, the birth place of *Carolsstadius*, of great note in the time of *Luther*. 9. *Bischoffstein*. 10. *Koningsburg*, (*Mons regius* in *Latine*) the Birth-place of *Joannes de Monte regio*, a famous Mathematician, as appeareth by his Comment upon *Ptolomy's Almagest*. Most of which Towns being in *Frankenland*, though of his Electorate, were not gained in gross by these Electors, as were the Land of *Colen* and District of *Triers*, but piece-meal in a manner, and by retail; partly upon the failure of the House of *Schwaben*, Dukes of *Franconia* also, partly by the munificence of the *German* Emperors, but specially by making the best use of their Votes and Suffrages in the Choice of the Emperors, which they did not part withal for nothing. Such Towns hereof as lie on the *French* side of the *Rhene* were gained by like means upon the expiration of the House of *Moselli*.

The Electors of *Mentz*, are thus represented by *John Bussieres*.

- 1001 1. *Willigisus*.
- 1120 2. *Erckenbold Abbas Fuldensis*
- 1031 3. *Aribo*, formerly Count of the *Rhenc*.
- 1050 4. *B. Bardo*, de *oppers-hofen Abbas Fuldensis*, the *Chrysostome* of that Age.
- 1059 5. *Luitpold*.
- 1084 6. *Sigefrid Baron ab Epenstein Abbas Fuldensis*.
- 1088 7. *Wezilo*.
- 1109 8. *Ruchardus Abbot of Erfurt*.
- 1137 9. *Adelbert*, Duke of *Lorrain*.
- 1141 10. *Adelbert*, II. Count de *Sarbrugg*.
- 1142 11. *Matcolphus*.
- 1153 12. *Henry*.
- 1160 13. *Arnold de Selenhofen*, slain by his Subjects.
- 1164 14. *Conrad*, Count de *Wittelsbach*, deposed by the Emperor.
- 1180 15. *Frederick*, Chancellor of *Frederick Barbarossa*, settled by that Prince.
- 1205 16. *Conrad*, restored.
- 1225 17. *Sigefrid*, II. Baron de *Eppenstein*.
- 1248 18. *Sigefrid*, III. Baron de *Eppenstein*.
- 1251 19. *Christian*.
- 1260 20. *Gerard a Minorite*.
- 1282 21. *Wernerus*, Count de *Falchenstein*.
- 1304 22. *Gerard de Eppenstein*.
- 1320 23. *Peter de Achzalt*.
- 1328 24. *Matthias*, Count de *Buocheegg Abbot of Murbach*.
- 1353 25. *Henry*, II. de *Virnberg*.
- 1371 26. *Gerlacus*, Count de *Nassaw*.
- 1373 27. *John*, Count of *Luxemburg*.
- 1388 28. *Adolph*, Count of *Nassaw*.
- 1395 29. *Conrad*, II. Count de *Weinsperg*.
- 1419 30. *John*, Count of *Nassaw*.
- 1434 31. *Conrad*, III. Count of the *Rhene*.
- 1454 32. *Theodorick*, Baron de *Erpach*.
- 1461 33. *Dierherus*, Count de *Isenburg* deposed.
- 1475 34. *Alphonfus*, Count of *Nassaw*.
- 1482 *Dierherus*, restored.
- 1484 35. *Albert*, Duke of *Saxony*.
- 1505 36. *Berthold*, Count of *Henneuberg*.
- 1508 37. *Jacob a Liebenstein*.
- 1508 38. *Uriel a Gemmingen*.
- 1545 39. *Albert*, Marquis of *Brandenburg*.
- 1555 40. *Sebastian ab Heusenstein*.
- 1582 41. *Daniel Brendel ab Homperg*.
- 1601 42. *Wolfgang*, Treasurer of *Dalburg*.
- 1604 43. *John Adamus de Bicken*.
- 1626 44. *John Swicard de Cronberg*.
- 1629 45. *Gerg Frederick Greiffen*.
- 1647 46. *Anselm Cassimir ab Vinstatt*.
- 1673 47. *John Philip a Schonborn*, Bishop of *Wurtsburg*.
- 1679 48. *Daniamus Hartard*.
- 1679 49. *Charles Henry Metternich*.
- 1679 50. *Anselm Francis ab Ingelsheim*.

3. The PALATINATE of the R H E N E.

THE PALATINATE of the R H E N E is bounded on the East with the Dukedom of *Wurtemberg* and some part of *Franconia*, with the residue thereof and the River *Maine* on the North, on the South with *Elsas* or *Alsacia*, and on the West with the Land of *Triers*: extended in length from *Coub* to *Gernersheim*, North and South, 72 miles, and in breadth from *Zweibrucken* to *Lauden*, East and West, 90 miles.

It is called the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Palatinate of Bavaria*, which is called the *Upper*. The *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, because lying on the banks of that famous River. The whole Country is said to be the most pleasant part of all *Germany*, stored with all sorts of Fruits and Metalls, abounding with those cool

Wines which growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rhenish*; adorned with many goodly Towns both for strength, populousness, and beauty; and finally, watered with the famous River of the *Rhene*, and the *Neccar*.

The Religion of this Country, and that of the *Upper Palatinate*, which depends upon it, hath much varied since the first Reformation established by *Frederick* the second according to the Form and Doctrine of the Confession of *Ausburg*; the Doctrine and Discipline of *Calvin* being introduced by *Frederick* the third; the *Lutheran* Form restored again by *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, after his death exchanged by *Frederick* the fourth for that of *Calvin*, as more conducing to the ends of some needy Statists, who could not otherwise raise their Fortunes than by the invading the Tithes and Glebe, and other poor remainders of the Church's Patrimony; of which the Clergy being universally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miserable short Stipends, by the name of a *Competency*, became so contemptible and neglected by all sorts of men, that at the last the Church of the *Palatinate* was in the same condition with the Church of *Israel* under the Reign of *Jeroboam*, when Priests were made out of the meanest of the People. And for the Government of the Churches, though moulded to the *Geneva* Plat-form as near as it might be, yet were those Princes loth to leave too much power in the hands of the Elderships, and therefore did appoint some superior Offices to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inspectores & Præpositos*, their Power being much the same with that of the particular Superintendent amongst the *Lutherans*; and over them a standing Consistory consisting of three Ministers and as many Counsellors of State, of the Prince's nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A Temperament for which they were beholden to *Erastus* a Doctor of Physick in the University of *Heidelberg*, who made this Pill, to purge Presbytery of some Popish humours which secretly lay hid in the body of it. But this whole Model and Religion of the Country is much changed of late; and the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, restored in most parts thereof since the Conquest of them by the *Spaniards* and *Bavarians*, which before we spake of.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Mospach*, a pretty neat Town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a Præfecture, not far from the borders of *Wirttemberg*. 2. *Ladenberg*, near the influx of the same River into the *Rhene*; the moiety whereof was bought by *Rupertus*, the Emperor and *Palatinate* of the Earls of *Hohenloe*, An. 1571, the other moiety belonging to the Bishop of *Wormes*. 3. *Weinheim*, a small Town not far from *Ladenberg*, belonging once to the Archbishop of *Mentz*, but on some controversie arising about the Title, adjudged unto the said *Rupertus* and his Heirs for ever. 4. *Scriffen*, in the same Tract, well seated but not very large, sold with the Castle of *Straluberg* to the said *Rupertus* by *Sifride* (or *Sigefride*) of *Straluberg*, the right Heir hereof, Anno 1347. 5. *Heidelberg*, on the right shore of the *Neccar*, (going down the water) compassed on three sides with Mountains and lying open only toward the West; which makes the Air hereof to be very unhealthy. The chief Beauty of it lyeth in one long Street, extended in length from East to West: on the South-east side whereof is a fair and pleasant Market-place, and not far off a very high Mountain called *Königsstall*, (that is to say, the *Kingly Seat*) upon the middle ascent whereof is the Castle, where the Princes Electors use to keep their Courts; and on the very Summit or top thereof, the ruins of an old Tower blown up with Gun-powder. A Town of no great bigness, nor very populous, there being but one Church in it, which was used in the time of my Author for Prayer and Preaching: the rest being either ruined, or employed unto other uses, if not repaired again, since the *Spaniards* became masters of it, for more frequent Masses. However, it hath the reputation of being the chief City of this *Palatinate*; not long since furnished with a great and gallant Library, which for choice and number of Books

(especially Manuscripts) was thought not to be fellowed in all *Europe*, till matched, if not over-matched, by the famous *Bodleian* Library of *Oxford*. Most of them to the great prejudice of the Protestant Cause were carried to *Rome*, and other places of that party, when the Town was taken by the *Spaniards*, anno 1020. Finally for the Town it self, it was once part of the possessions of the Bishop of *Wormes*, from whom it was taken by the *Palatines*, and it is now famous for being the Seat of the *Palsgraves*, the Sepulchre of *Rodolphus Agricola*, and for a University founded by the Emperor and *Palatine Rupertus*, An. 1346. This City was taken, and retaken several times in the *Swedish* War, but after the Treaty of *Munster* in the year 1649, was at last restored to its own proper Master, the Elector *Palatine*, and is now recovering its ancient Splendor, which was much abated in these troubles. In the year 1688, this City, and with it the whole *Palatinate*, was taken by the *French* with small resistance. 6. *Baccharach*, on the banks of the *Rhene*, so called *quasi Bacchara*, for the excellent Wines. 7. *Coub*, on the other side of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Castle called *Pfalts*, from whence the name *Pfalts-grave*, or *Palsgrave* seemeth to some to have been derived. 8. *Openheim*, a strong Town; which together with *Keisers-Lautern* and *Ingelheim* were given to the *Palatines* by *Wenceslaus*, and after settled on them by *Rupertus* then Emperor and *Palatine* for 100000 Florens, Anno 1402. 9. *Creutznach*, called anciently *Staronesiu*. 10. *Frankendale*, lately a Monastery only, but being well peopled by such of the *Netherlands* who to avoid the fury of the Duke of *Alva* fled hither, is now a Town of principal strength. 11. *Gernersheim*; and 12. *Manheim*, a well fortified Town, seated on the Confluence of *Rhene* and *Neccar*. The 5th of November 1688, it was Invested by the Forces of *France*, under the *Dauphine*, the 8th the Trenches were opened, and the 10th the Town was surrendered.

On the Eastern part of the Country standeth 13. *Laden*; situate on the little River *Tauber*, the farthest bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-east, there adjoining to the rest of *Frankenland*. And on the West-side the Towns of 14. *Newstat*, 15. *Keisers-Lautern*, in *Latine* called *Cæsarea Lutra*, once a Town Imperial, from which, and from its situation on the River *Lauter*, it received this name. This Town was taken the 30th of September 1688, by the Marquis de *Boufflers*; after it had been twice Storm'd, the Garrison surrendring it, almost the whole *Palatinate* followed it without any considerable resistance. 16. *Zweibrucken*, invested with a large and ample Territory round about, called the Country of *Zweibruck*, the Patrimony and Title of a younger House of the *Pfaltsgraves*, whom the *Latine* Writers call *Principes Biontani*, the *French* the Princes of *Deuxponts*. 17. *Simmeren*, on the North-west point of it, where it meets with the district of *Triers*; the Title of another Branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Duke of *Simmeren*, situate in that part of the Country which is called *Westreich*, of which *Zweibrucken* is also part. In all there are contained within the *Palatinate* 24 walled Towns, and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince, most of which they have added to their Estates within little more than 400 years. Such excellent managers have they been of their own Estates, so potent in ordering the affairs of the Empire both in War and Peace, and so ingrafted themselves into the most notable Families of *Germany*, that I may well say with *Irenicus*, *Non est alia Germanicæ Familia cui plus debeat Nobilitas*.

Denpont, one of the places mentioned in this Paragraph, gives Title to one of the Families of the Illustrious *Palatine* Family, Founded in the Person of *John*, Son of *Wilsing* Duke of *Deuxpont*, his Son *John* was Born 1584, he Died in the year 1635, succeeded by *Frederick* his Son, Born 5th of April 1616, he having no Male-Issue, his Estate went to *Frederick Lewis*, Son of *Frederick Cassimer* Brother of *John II*. This Prince was Born in 1619, became Duke of *Deuxpont* in 1661, and being driven out of

of it by the *French*, he Dyed 1st. of *April* 1681, without Issue-Male. So the Right of this Dukedom returned to *Charles Gerard* Son of *John Cassimir*, youngest Son of *John I.*, who afterward upon the Resignation of *Christina* Queen of *Sweden*, became King of *Sweden*, and is now in *Charles* his Son, at present King of *Sweden*, to whom *Lewis* the 14th in the year 1689, offered to restore it, if this Prince would stand Neuter in the present War, which was rejected by that brave Prince. The *French* seized these Countries in the year 1676.

Within the Limits of this Country, and intermingled with the Lands of the Princes *Palatine*, are the Bishopricks of *Spires* and *Worms*; both anciently of great Revenue, but Feudataries for a great part of their Estates to these Electors. Of these more toward the head of the *Rhene*, and on the *Gallick* side thereof, stands the City of *Spires*, by *Ptolomy* called *Neomagus*, from the newness of the building when that name was given; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemetur*, from the *Nemetes*, who possessed this Tract; and sometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth still continue. A Town Imperial, and anciently a Bishop's See; *Tessis* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, Anno 347. A neat Town, and very delectably seated, of great resort, by reason of the Imperial Chamber, the Sovereign Court of Judicature of all the Empire, capable of Appeals from the Tribunals of all Princes and free States thereof. A Court which first followed the Emperor in all his Removes, (as anciently the *King's Bench* in *England*) but by *Maximilian* the Emperour first made sedentary, and fixed at *Frankford*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charles* the fifth. Sufficiently famous in that the name of *Protestants* was here taken up, given to the Princes and free Cities following the Reformed Religion, upon their legal *Protestation* here exhibited. This City was taken, and dismantell'd by *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, so that it was the more easily recovered by the Imperialists in the year 1635. In the year 1688, the *French* took it and carried away all the Records of the Court, and in 1689, Burnt the whole Town down to the Ground, not leaving one building standing, whereupon the *Dyets* agreed to settle this Court at *Weslar*, a City in *Hassia*, 7 Miles from *Frankfort* to the North. More down the water and on the same shore thereof, stands the City of *Wormes*, one of those built upon the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* against the *Germans*; by *Ptolomy* called *Borbetomagus* by *Antonine* *Civitas Wormensis*, whence the modern name; but generally *Civitas Vangionum*, from the *Vangiones*, the old Inhabitants of those parts, whose chief City it was. A Town Imperial as the former, and a See Episcopal as that is, and as ancient too; *Victor* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen* before mentioned. A Town to be observed for the first appearance which *Luther* made before *Charles* the 5th. (the Imperial Chamber then being holden in this City) who, being dissuaded from that Journey by some of his Friends, returned this resolute Answer, That go he would, though there were as many Devils in the Town, as there were Tiles on the Houses. Chief Towns belonging to this Bishop are, 1. *Udenheim*, a Town belonging to the Bishop of *Spires*, whose Residence it sometimes is; conveniently seated for the command of the Country, and therefore upon some design which was then in hand fortified strongly by the Bishop. But this new Fortification, being begun in a time of Peace, gave great occasion of distrust to the neighbouring Princes, who interposed with *Frederick* the fifth, then Prince-Elector, (of whom it was held in chief) to cause the Bishop to desist from the finishing of it. Which when he had refused to do, pleading a Plea from the Emperor *Matthias* to complement the work, the Prince-Elector with the rest of the Confederates beat it down by force. For this contempt they were cited to *Spires*, the Imperial Chamber, in which it was also resolved to proceed suddenly and severely to their condemnation. One of the chief Motives which occasioned that unfortunate Prince

to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*, and consequently the chief cause of the *German Wars*. In managing whereof this Town was thought so commodious, that *Marquis Spinola* caused the works to be raised again, made it the strongest Hold in all those Countries, and caused it to be called by the name of *Philipsburg*. This Fort was taken in the year 1634 by the *Swedes*, surprized the next year after by the *Spaniards*, and in 1644 taken from them by the *French*, in 1676, it was retaken by the Duke of *Lorrain*, and by the Treaty of *Nimwegen* in 1679, restored to the Bishop of *Spire*, the *French* having much improved its Fortifications whilst it was in their hands. In the year 1688, the *French* suddenly entered into a War against the *Germans*, upon no other provocation than the Jealousie of the prosperity of their Arms against the *Turks* in *Hungary*, and began the War with the Attack of this place. The 27th of *September*, their Forces came before it, the 3d. of *October* the Trenches were opened, the 6th the *Dauphine* came thither, and the first of *November*, it was surrendered to him after a stout defence, which it might have maintain'd much longer, the Garrison being Great, and the *French* much incommoded by the Waters, Raines and Cold Season of the Year. 2. *Rottenberg*, originally belonging to the Bishops of *Spires*, but of late times possessed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of lesser note I forbear to mention. In the year 1688, *Lewis* the 14th (of *France*) having began a War on the Eight pretences against the Empire, and more particularly against this Elector, after he had taken *Philipsburg*, proceeded and took *Heidelberg*, *Wormes*, *Spires*, *Oppenheim*, and *Manheim*, and a War ensuing of all *Europe* for the recovery of these Countries, he burnt and destroyed all these Cities, and Ruin'd all the *Palatinate* in Cold Blood, alledging he ought to destroy what could not be kept, that it might be of no use to his Enemies, he carrying the Inhabitants Captive into *Alsacia* and *France*.

The first Inhabitants of this Country on the *French* side of the *Rhene* where the *Nemetes* and *Vangiones* spoken of before the other side the *Intuerge*. That on the West side of the River was first conquered by the *Romans*, and from them by the *French*, of whose Empire it remained a part, but so that it was subject more immediately to the Earls of *Moselle*, first under the Sovereignty and Vassalage of the Kings of *Metz*, and after of the Kings of *Lorrain*. In the dividing of which Kingdom between the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, it became subject to the Empire, but still possessed by those of *Moselle* as it was before. Elcheating to the Empire on the expiration of that Family, partly by force of Arms, partly by paying down ready Money, and partly too by selling of their Voices, as they saw occasion, it was gained by the Electors *Palatine*: and so also that part of it which lies on the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*, which being anciently and properly a part of *Frankenland*, followed the fortunes of that Country, till the failure of the House of *Schwaben*, and then devolved unto the Empire, as the other did. By little and little it got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperor's Household, (such as the Majors of the Palace to the *French* Kings at the first institution) had first the honour of Counts *Palatine* bestowed upon them, and afterwards the place of an Elector in the choice of the Emperor. But where their Estates then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what Provinces or people they had subject to them *nullo inveni scriptum*, I could never find any good Reason to build on, saith the Learned *Munster*; their habitation and possession in and of these parts (acquired for the most part by Arms and Money) not being above 460 years standing at the utmost. Likely it is, they had their Residence for the most part in the Emperor's Palace, living upon their Rents (as other great Officers of Court in these latter times) the Dignity and Authority of so great a place seeming sufficient to content them: but were called *Count Palatines* of the *Rhene*, because their Jurisdiction and Authority lay most especially in those parts of the Empire which were towards that River.

ver. Afterwards, on the Marriage of *Otho*, the second of that name, Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gertrude*, the Daughter of *Henry* the Elector *Palatine*, this Office with the Electoral Dignity fell into that House, possessed at that time of those parts of *Franconia*, and the Earldom of *Moselle*, who not long after, on the dividing of that Estate betwixt *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the Sons of *Ludovick* the 2d, Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, made up this *Palatinate*. A State which suddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care and good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperor and Elector *Palatine*, partly by the weakness and ambition of *Wenceslaus*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and partly by the valour of *Frederick* the Prince Elector. Of these the first bought in the Towns of *Weinheim*, *Ladenburg*, *Scrieffen*, and the Castle of *Straluberg*, with their Lands and Territories. The second gave unto the *Palatines*, for their Voices in his Election, three strong Towns of the Empire, viz. *Keisers Lautern*, *Ingelheim*, and *Openheim*. And the last took in Battel, anno 1452, the Earls of *Wirttemberg*, the Marquis of *Baden*, the Bishop of *Spire*, and the Archbishop of *Mentz*, and ransomed them on what condition he pleased. More particularly the Earl of *Wirttemberg* (for it was not yet erected into an Dukedom) payed for his ransom 100000 Florens; the Bishop of *Mentz* redeemed himself for 450000 Florens; the Bishop of *Spire* gave for his liberty the Towns of *Rottenberg* and *Wersaw*; and the Marquis of *Baden* yielded up in lieu of his freedom the Country of *Spanheim*, of which *Crcutz-nach* is a part, the Towns of *Besiken* and *Binheim*, the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a Town over against *Gernersheim*, and his Royalties between this *Gernersheim* and *Seltz*, a Town of *Alsatia*, in Fishing and Hunting. So having brought these Princes unto their Estates, let us next take a view of those who have successively enjoy'd both the State and Title, as far as we can go by the light of Story.

Electors *Palatinate* of the *R H E N E*.

A. Ch.

1. *Henry*, Count *Palatine* in the time of *Otho* the third, by him ordained to be one of the six Electors.
2. *Sigefride*, the Son of *Adelheid*, Wife of this *Henry* the Elector, by a former Husband.
3. *Ezeline* and *Conrade*, Sons of *Sigefride*.
4. *Ludolphus*, Son to *Ezeline*.
5. *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fifth.
6. *Frederick*, Son to *Frederick* Duke of *Schmaben*, Nephew to the Emperor *Conrade* the third.
- 1180 7. *Henry* II. surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*.
- 1195 8. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the Lion, and Husband of *Clementia*, Daughter of *Conrade*, Duke of *Schmaben* and Elector *Palatine*.
9. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third, in the life of his Father, the last Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointment of the Emperor, the Dignity from henceforwards becoming hereditary.
- 1227 10. *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, of that name the second, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene* in right of *Gertrude* his Wife, Sister and next Heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, confirm'd therein by the Emperor *Frederick* the second.
- 1269 11. *Ludovicus*, Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, the Son of *Otho*: Born in 1229.
- 1294 12. *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, succeeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and Electoral Dignity; *Northgoia*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his part, to make even the Scale, his younger Brother *Ludovicus* succeeding in *Bavaria*.

This Prince was the second Son of *Lewis*, he was born in the year 1274, and was the Founder of the *Rudolphian* Line; and opposing *Albert* the Emperor he was forced into *England* in the year 1315, and there died in the year 1319.

- 1313 13. *Adolphus*, surnamed the Simple, resigned the Electoral Dignity to his Brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter Man to undertake it. Born in 1300.
- 1327 14. *Rodolphus* II. on the Resignation of *Adolphus*: Born in 1309.
- 1337 } 15. *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Rodolphus* the second, Founder of the University of *Heidelberg*, anno 1346.
- 1353 }
- 1390 } 16. *Rupertus* II. Son of *Adolphus* the Simple. This Prince maintained a War against the *Hanse*-Towns, and vanquish'd their Armies. He also in the Year 1387 refounded the University of *Heidelberg*, and died in the year 1398, the 12th of *February*.
- 1385 }
- 1398 17. *Rupertus* III. elected Emperor in the place of *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1406. made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the Fourth.
- 1410 18. *Ludovicus* II. surnamed *Cacus* and *Barbatus*, the eldest Son of *Rupertus* the Emperor, married *Blanch*, Daughter to King *Henry* the Fourth of *England*.
- 1439 19. *Ludovicus* III. Son of *Lewis* the second. He managed divers Wars against the *Turks* in *Palestine*; and in *Germany*, being President of the Council of *Constance*, gave Sentence to *John Huz* and *Jerome* of *Prague*. He died in the Year 1439, and was succeeded by *Lewis* the Peaceable, who died in the Year 1449.
- 1451 20. *Frederick*, Brother of *Ludovicus*, during the Minority of *Philip*, his said Brother's Son, succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, and added much to that Estate by his personal Virtue.
- 1478 21. *Philip*, the Son of *Lewis* the third; pretended to the Dukedom of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his Wife; but after a long and bloody War was forced to go without it.
- 1508 22. *Ludovicus* IV. Son of *Philip*: Born in 1478. This Prince was a great lover of Peace, he saved *Luther* in the Dyet of *Worms* when designed to be burnt as *John Huz*. In the year 1532 he obtained the first Peace of Religion, and died the 16th of *March*, 1544.
- 1544 23. *Frederick* II. Brother of *Lewis* the Fourth, who first introduced the Reformed Religion into the *Palatinate* in 1546. He was born 1483, delivered *Vienna* from the *Turks*, and died in 1556.
- 1556 24. *Otho-Henry*, Son of *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Frederick* and *Lewis*, the last of the direct Line of this House of *Bavaria*. Born in 1502, he was Heir by his Mother to the Duchy of *Newburg*; embraced the Reformation in 1542; and after he was Elector began the Library of *Heidelberg*.
- 1559 25. *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmeren*, descended from *Stephen* *Palatine* of *Zweibruck* or *Bi-pont*, younger Son of the Emperor *Rupert*, succeeded on the decease of *Otho-Henry* without Issue. He was born in 1515. This Prince introduced the *Calvinist* way into the *Palatinate*, by which he reaped much trouble.
- 1576 26. *Ludovicus* V. Son of *Frederick* the third, a munificent Benefactor to the University of *Heidelberg*: Born in 1539, July 4. He was as much addicted to the *Lutheran*, as his Father

Father was to the *Calvinist* Religion, but was a peaceable and a wise Prince, that hated to embroil himself in other Mens Concerns.

- 1583 27. *Frederick IV.* Son of *Lewis the Fifth*, married *Ludovico* or *Louisa*, Daughter of *William*, and Sister of *Maurice*, Princes of *Orange*. Born in 1547, the 5th of *May*. He Fortified *Manheim* in 1606, and improved the University of *Heidelberg*: His Father, tho' a *Lutheran*, finding his Subjects most *Calvinists*, brought up his Son in that Religion.

- 1610 28. *Frederick V.* Son of *Frederick the 4th.* Born in 1596; married the Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *James King of Great Britain*. In danger of being proscribed for demolishing the Works of *Udenheim*, he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*. But worsted at the Battle of *Prague*, and warred upon by the *Bavarian* and the *Spaniard*, he lost both that and his own native Estates and Dignities; of which he was deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperor: the *Lower Palatinate* being assigned over to and conquered by the King of *Spain*; the *Upper Palatinate*, with the Electoral Dignity, bestowed on the Duke of *Bavaria*. Restored to the possession of the most part of his Country by the power of the *Swedes*, he died at *Mentz*, November 29. 1632. the whole Country falling again not long after under the Power and Government of the former Conquerors.

- 1631 29. *Charles Ludovick*, born Decemb. 22. 1617. the Heir both of his Father's Estates and Misfortunes too; not yet admitted to his Honours, (contrary to the Fundamental Constitution of the Empire, by which the Sons of the Electors and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Father's Offences) but in fair hopes to be restored thereto in part, by the Pacification made at *Munster* this present year 1648: which I pray God to prosper, for the peace of afflicted Christendom. This Prince recovered part of his Dominions by the Treaty of *Munster* in the Year 1648, and was made the eighth Elector. He died the 28th of *August*, 1680.

- 1680 30. *Charles-Lewis*, Son of the former, born the 31th of *March*, 1651. succeeded his Father the 28th of *August*, 1680. being then in *England*. This Prince married *William-Ernestina*, Daughter of *Frederick the third*, King of *Denmark*, the 20th of *September*, 1671, and was a Prince of great Prudence and Clemency, greatly honoured and beloved by his Subjects. He died without Issue, and in him ended the Male Line of *Frederick III.*

- 1688 31. *Philip-William*, Duke of *Newburg*, born the 25th of *October*, 1615. succeeded in the *Palatinate*; who is descended from *Lewis the Black*, Brother of *Frederick III.* Duke of *Simmeren*, both Sons of *Stephen* the younger Son of *Rupert III.* Emperor of *Germany*. He is said to be a Magnanimous, Prudent, and Religious Prince, extremely zealous for his Religion (which is that of the Church of *Rome*) and the publick Peace. By *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *George*, Landgrave of *Hess*, he is the Father of *Eleonora Magdalena Theresa*, the present Empress of *Germany*, who was married to that Prince in 1676. His eldest Son is *John-William*.

- 1688 32. *Joseph*, born the 19th of *April*, 1658. A War being made upon the *Palatinate* in the Year 1688 by *Lewis XIV.* King of *France*, the

old Prince seeing his Country likely to be ruined, surrendered it to the Prince his Son, as better able to defend it. The *French* however took all the *Palatinate*; and a War ensuing, and they not able to defend it, they burnt to the Ground *Heidelberg*, *Wormes*, *Spire*, *Oppenheim*, and *Manheim*, and all the Villages and Castles in this delicate Country, not sparing any thing Sacred or Profane which they could destroy by Fire and Gunpowder in the Year 1689, and then were forced to leave it. He died *September* 2. 1690. Aged 75.

- 1690 33. *John-William*, Son of the former.

Now to proceed to the Civil State, and the Concernment of these Princes. The *Palgrave* hath many Privileges above the Electors of either sort. He taketh place of the Duke of *Saxony*, and Marquis of *Brandenburg*, because *Henry* the Palatine was descended of *Charles the Great*: for which cause he is also, in the vacancy of the Empire, Governor of the Western parts of *Germany*. In which Office he had power to alienate or give Offices, to take Fealty and Homage of the Subjects, and which is most, to sit in the Imperial Courts, and give Judgment of the Emperor himself. And look whatsoever shall in the vacancy of the Empire be by the *Palatines* enacted, that the new Emperors are by Oath to confirm and ratifie.

The Revenues of these Princes were conceived to be about 100000*l.* per *Annum*; nor could they be supposed at less: the Silver Mines about *Amberg* only in the *Upper Palatinate*, yielding 60000 Crowns a Year, and passage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 Crowns more; besides the Demefine Lands, and the Lands of the Church, incorporated (since the Reformation) into their Estate.

The Arms hereof are *Diamond*, a *Lion Topaz*, Armed and Crowned *Ruby*.

4. ALSATIA.

ALSATIA (or *ELSAZ*, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the Marquissate of *Baden*, and some parts of *Schwaben*; on the West with the Mountain *Vange* or *Vogesus*, which separateth it from *Lorraine*; on the North with the *Palatinate*; on the South (where it groweth very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Country for the pleasantness and fertility of it inferior to none in *Germany*: called therefore *Elisaz*, (as some think) *quasi Edelsaz*, that is to say, a noble *Seat*; derived more probably by others from the River *Ill*, the only River of note in all this Tract, and called so, *quasi Illisaz*, the *Seat* or situation on the River *Ill*.

It is divided generally into the *Lower* and *Upper*, to which the Country called *Singow* may come in for a third. The *LOWER ALSATIA* is that which bordereth on the *Palatinate*, so called because farther off from the Mountains, and down the Water in respect of the course of the *Rhene*. A Country so abundantly fruitful in Wine and Corn (with which it furnisheth some parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour-Countries) that it is generally called *Germanie Nutrix*, or the Nurse of *Germany*; by *Winphlegius*, the *Epitome*, or Abstract of it. Chief Towns therein are, 1. *Strasbourg*, so called from the multitude of Streets (the *Dutch* call them *Stracts*) anciently *Argentoratum*, and then *Argentina*, from the Roman Exchequer or Receipt, here kept in the time of their Greatness; or from some Mines of Silver which were found about it. A stately, rich, and populous City, well stored with publick Garners and Cellars of Wine against times of Dearth; situate on the two Rivers *Ill* and *Brusch*, where they both fall into the *Rhene*, by which, and by the helps of Art, it is very strongly fortified: designed from the first Foundation for a Town

a Town of War, this being another of the Towns which the Romans built to defend the Rhene against the Germans; now an Imperial City, and a See Episcopal, the Bishop whereof is Lord of the Lower Alsatia. The Church Cathedral is one of the fairest in all Germany, much famed for a Clock of most admirable Workmanship, and a Steeple of as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 Foot in height, the highest of any in Christendom, higher (if the measure of it be not mistaken) by 40 Foot than the Steeple of St. Paul's in London before the firing of it.

Of this thus saith the Poet in *Adrianus*,

Urbs praeclara situ, ripis contermina Rheni,

Maxima cui celsæ metiuntur moenia turris.

Straesburg on Rhene's inamell'd Banks doth lie,

Whose Tower even bids defiance to the Sky.

The Reformation began to be entertained in this City in the Year 1522, and was settled in 1529. For the defence of which it entred into a League with the Reformed Cantons in 1638, and opened an University in 1566. The 29th of September, 1681, the present King of France, Lewis XIV. suddenly surprized this City in a time of Peace, who has since spent very much in the Fortifying of it, but has not as yet attempted any change of the Religion publicly professed. 2. *Zabern*, or *Alsfaz Zabern*, the Taberne of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old Roman Garrisons, destroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the Apostate, then Emperor; now the chief place of Residence for the Bishops of *Straesburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Justice kept by his Officers in this City for the Lower *Alsatia*. 3. *Altrip*, so called from *Alta ripa*, from the high banks of the River on which it is seated; another of the Towns or Forts, which the Romans, like politick Conquerors, built on the West side of the Rhene, to prohibit the Incurfions of the barbarous Nations. And so was, 4. *Seltz*, seated on the Rhene, betwixt *Straesburg* and *Zabern*. And, 5. *Weissenburg*, more towards the *Palatinate*, now a Town Imperial, but seated on the River *Lutra*, not far from its fall into the Rhene; encompassed with little Hills and delightful Groves, the River gently washing the Walks thereof, and adding much to it both of strength and beauty. 6. *Hagenaw*, between *Seltz* and *Straesburg*, but not so near unto the Rhene as either of them; first Walled by *Frederick Barbarossa*, Anno 1164, and since that time of great importance for command of the Country, but seated in a sandy and unfruitful Soil; frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Lantgraves of *Elfsass* for the Commodities of Hunting. This City by the Treaty of *Munster* was assigned to the French, and in the Year 1675 was besieged unsuccessfully by the Imperialists, yet the French have since Demolished its Works. More from the Rhene, 7. *Stechfelt*, corruptly so called for *Steffansfelt*, from the Monastery of S. Stephen there Founded. 8. *Hafle*, on the *Brusch*, &c.

Places of the most importance in the HIGHER AL-SATIA are, 1. *Ruffach*, on the River *Ombach*, belonging to the Bishops of *Straesburg*, of old called *Rubeanum*, from the red colour of the Earth, well built, invironed with a double Suburb; in ancient times of great resort by the Roman Nobility much taken with the Fruitfulness and Pleasures of it, and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Country round about it, by reason of their vigorous proceedings against Thieves; from whence the Germans have a Proverb, That the old Gallows at *Ruffach* is made of Oak. Taken by *Turenne* in 1675. 2. *Ensheim*, or *Ensfheim*, on the River *Ill*, anciently the Station of the Tenth Legion, and then called *Aruncis*; now of most note for the Supreme Court of Justice there held for *Brisgow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alsatia*, by the Archdukes of *Austria*, the chief Lords thereof. 3. *Colmar*, an Imperial City, raised out of the Ruines of old *Argentaria*, destroyed by *Attila* and the *Huns*; well built, and situate almost in the very Navel of *Alsatia*, not above an hours Journey from the foot of the Mountains, but in a fruitful and rich Soil both for Corn and

Pasturage, the Country hereabouts being very well watered with the *Lauch*, *Duro*, *Fech*, and *Ill*. The French in the Year 1673 dismantled this Place. 4. *Schlestad*, in the modern Latin, *Selestadium*, but by the Ancients called *Eleebus*, the Station at that time of the Nineteenth Legion; afterwards of great Fame for a Church here built by *Hildegardis*, Dutcheß of *Schwaben*, anno 1044. according to the pattern of the Temple of *Jerusalem*, which in tract of time became the richest Monastery in all these parts. It is situate in a very fertile and delightful Soil, having the Rhene on the one side, and some spurs of the Mountain *Vauge*, shadowed with Groves of Chestnuts upon the other; walled in the time of *Frederick* the second, about the Year 1216, and on the East defended with impassible Fens. Dismantled at the same time with the former. 5. *Gebwiler*, and 6. *Watweil*, both seated near the aforesaid Mountains, and both subject to the Abbot of *Murbach*. 7. *Keisersberg*. 8. *Turcheim*, two Imperial Towns, but not otherwise memorable; as neither are many of the rest, but for name and number: there being reckoned within this small Province of *Elfsass* (not including *Sungow*) 46 Cities and Towns begirt with Walls, besides Castles, Forts and Villages, almost innumerable; and amongst them more Free and Imperial Cities than in any one Province of the Empire, except *Schwaben* only.

The Southern part of *Elfsass*, bordering on the Canton of *Basil*, is commonly call'd by the name of *SUNGOW*, in Latin, *Sungovia* and *Sungoia*, but in former times the Dukedom of *Pfirt*, from *Pfirt* the chief Town of it, and the Duke's Seat. The Country is very plentiful in Corn and Wine, (as the rest of *Elfsass*) affording good store of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Mulhausen*, on the River *Ill*, heretofore under the command of the Bishops of *Straesburg*, as were also *Keisersberg* and *Colmar*; but being taken in by *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, after his advancement to the Empire, it was made Imperial, and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2. *Befort*, remarkable for a Collegiate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, in which lie buried 13 Earls and as many Countesses. 3. *Maszmunster*, so called from a Monastery of Nuns there Founded by *Maso*, a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4. *Thann*, a neat Town, beautified with the fair Castle of *Engelburg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty Hill. 5. *Morsmunster*, so named of an ancient Monastery there Founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, most of them great Builders of Religious Houses. 6. *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the River *Ill*. 7. *Pfirt* it self, seated on the *Ill*, not far from *Altkirk*, in a Country heretofore overgrown with Woods and Forests, whence it had the name, called by the French, *le Paris de Ferrette*, (corruptly for *le Pai de Forest*) by the Dutch moulded into *Pfirt*: by which name (of the County of *Ferrette*) it is called by *Philip de Comines* and other French Writers; and by that name pawned by *Sigismund* the Archduke to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, made by that means too near a Neighbour to the *Switzers*, as it proved in fine.

Westward hereof, betwixt it and the County of *Burgundy*, lyeth the Town and Earldom of *MONTEBELGARD*, (*Montis Belgardium* in the Latin) united by the Marriage of *Henrica*, Daughter and Earl of *Henry* the first Earl hereof, anno 1396. to the House of *Wirtenberg*. Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Clarewang*, 2. *Passewang*, 3. *Grans*, all anciently beautified with Castles; and 4. *Montbelgard*, a Town of great strength, proud of a Castle-Royal on the top of a fair and lofty Mountain, whence it took that name: once the Seat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the House of *Wirtenberg*; but now both Town and Castle in the power of the French, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, caused a good Garrison of their own to be put into them, anno 1633, under pretence of keeping them for the Children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirtenberg*, to whom the Inheritance belonged. *Eberhard* the sixth Earl of *Wirtenberg*, by a Marriage in the Year 1439, obtained

ained this Dukedom, it continued united to that Dukedom to the year 1608, when it was separated and given to,

- 1608 1. *Lewis Frederick*, Son of *Frederick* Duke of *Wittenberg*, who was born the 29th of *January* 1586, was the first of this Line.
- 1631 2. *Leopold Frederick* Son of *Lewis*.
- 1662 3. *George*, II. Son of *Lewis*, Brother of *Leopold*, in the year 1684, he was expelled out of his Dominions by the *French*, and lives now in *Exile*. He has one Son, *Leopold Eberhard*, who was born the 21th of *March*, 1670. And may one day succeed in this Dukedom.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract were the *Tribochi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Rauraci*; first conquered by the *Romans*, then subdued by the *Almans*, after by the *French*, and by them made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*; in the fall of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the *German Empire*. Governed for the Emperors by Provincial Earls, in the *Dutch* language called *Lantgraves*: at first officary only and accountable to the Emperours under whom they served; in the end made hereditary, and successional unto their posterities. The first hereditary Lantgrave is said to be *Theodorick* in the Reign of *Otho* the third: after whose death the Empire being made elective: gave the Provincial Governours some opportunities to provide for themselves. In his Male-Issue it continued till the Reign of *Frederick* the 2. who began his Empire, *anno* 1212, and died *anno* 1250; during which interval this Estate was conveyed by Daughters to *Albert* the 2. Earl of *Habsburg*, *Albert* Earl of *Hohenburg*, and *Lewis* Earl of *Oetingen*. *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, Son of this *Albert*, afterwards Emperor of the *Germans*, marrying with *Anne* the Daughter of the Earl of *Hohenloe*, became possessed also of his part of the Country; which added to his own, made up the whole upper *Elfsa*, continued since that time in possession of the House of *Austria*, descended from him. The third part, comprehending all the Lower *Alsatia*, was not long after sold by the Earl of *Oetingen* to the Bishop of *Strasbourg*, whose Successors hold it to this day, assuming to themselves the Title of the *Lantgraves* of *Elfsa*. But as for *Saugom*, or the County of *Pfirt*, that belonged anciently to the Princes of the House of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illustrious Family, by the death of *Conradine* the last Duke, *anno* 1268, that great Estate being scattered into many hands, it was made a distinct Earldom of it self. And so it continued till the year 1324, when *Ulrick* the last Earl dying without Issue-Male, left his Estate betwixt two Daughters: whereof the one, named *Anne*, conveyed her part in Marriage to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, surnamed the short, Grandchild of *Rodolphus* the Emperor before mentioned; the other, named *Elizabeth*, sold her moiety to the said *Albert* for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been always in the possession of the Dukes of *Austria*, (save only for the time in which it was pawned or mortgaged, together with *Alsatia*, to the Duke of *Burgundy*) governed in Civil matters and points of Judicature by the Parliament or Court of *Ensheim* in the Upper *Elfsa*. This intire Country is now in the hands of the *French*, and was yielded to them by the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648, and by the surprize of *Strasbourg*, in the year 1681. They are become the intire Masters of it.

5. L O R R A I N.

THE Dukedom of *LORRAIN* is bounded on the East with *Elfsa*, and that part of the lower *Palatinate* which passeth by the name of *West-reich*; on the West with the River *Meuse*, or *Maes*, with part of the Country of *Barrois* in *France*, (belonging to the Duke hereof) and part of *Champagne*; on the North with *Luxemburg* and the Land of *Trier*; and on the South with the County of *Burgundy*, from which, and from the Pro-

vince of *Elfsa*, it is parted by the *Meuse* or *Maes*, wherewith it is encompassed on the sides. Assigned unto *Lotharius*, second son of *Lothar* the Emperor, (who was eldest Son of *Lewis* the Great with the style of a Kingdom; from thence called *Lorraine* by the *Dutch*, *Lot-reigne* by the *French*; from which the modern name of *Lorraine*, and the Latin *Lutharugia* are to fetch their Pedigree.

The Country is in length about four days journey, almost three in breadth, much overgrown with Forests, and swelled with Mountains, the spurs and branches of *Vogesus*, and the once vast Wilderness of *Ardenne*; yet so sufficiently stored with all manner of necessities, that it needeth no supply out of other places. Some Lakes it hath which yield great quantity of Fish; one more especially 14 miles in compass, the Fish whereof yields to the Duke's Coffers 20000 *l.* yearly. It affordeth also divers Metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in some places Pearls: *Chalcedonians* also of such bignets, that whole Drinking-cups are made of them, and a matter of which they make the purest Glasses, not to be parallell'd in *Europe*. They have also a goodly breed of Horses, equal to those of *Barbary*, or the Countrey of *Naples*.

The people, by reason of their neighbourhood to and commerce with *France*, strive much to imitate the *French* in garb and fashion; but one may easily see that it is not natural: they have much in them also of the *Dutch* humour of Drinking, but far more moderately than the *Dutch* themselves. Generally they are a politic and an hardy Nation; not otherwise able to have held their Estate so long against the *French* Kings, and the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppressed with Taxes; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince, and useful unto one another. Their Language is for the most part *French*, as in *Artois*, *Luxemburg*, *Triers*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the *French* Monarchy in former times: not so refined and elegant as is spoke in *France*, nor so corrupt and coarse as that of *Montbeliard* and the County of *Burgundy*.

I know that many, in respect of the *French* language, spoken here among them, account this Country among the Provinces of *France*, and usually describe it so in their Charts and Writings: but I have placed it with more reason (as I conceive) amongst those of *Germany*; first, in regard that a Duke hereof is a Prince of the Empire; but especially because that, in the division of the Kingdom of *Lorraine* betwixt the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, whatsoever lay on the East-side of the River *Meuse* (as this Dukedom of *Lorraine* for the most part doth) was reckoned in the share or portion of the *German* Emperors.

The Rivers of chief note are, 1. *Meuse*, or the *Meurte*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and passing with a swift stream by the walls of *Nancy*, glides along fairly for a good space within sight of the *Moselle*, into which at last it falls near *Conde*. 2. *Meuse*, the *Merse*, or *Maes*, whose spring and course hath been already described in *Belgium*. 3. *Moselle*, famous for the design which *Lucius Verus*, Governour for the Emperor *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it ariseth in the Mountain *Vange*, not far from the head of the River *Saône*, and disburtheneth it self into the *Rhene* at *Confluentz*; he intended to have cut a deep Chancel from the head of this unto the other, so to have made a passage from the Ocean to the Mediterranean, the *Saône* emptying it self into the *Rhose*, a chief River of *France*, as the *Moselle* doth into the *Rhene*. 4. *Selle*, which mingleth waters with the *Moselle* not far from *Metz*. 5. *Sar*, 6. *Marne*, 7. *Voloy*, with others of less note: all of them plentiful of Salmons, Perches, Tenches, and the best sorts of fish, as in their Lakes are great store of Carps, some of them three foot long, and of excellent taste.

Principal Cities in it are, 1. *Metz*, by *Ptolomy* called

Dividorum, *Metis* and *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*, the chief City of the *Mediomatrices*, who possessed this Tract. It is seated in a pleasant Plain at the confluence of the *Selle* and *Moselle*; the Royal Seat, in former times of the *French* Kings of *Austrasia*, hence called Kings of *Metz*; long before that a Bishop's See, as it still continueth. 2. *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Ptolemy*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, so called from the *Leuci*, the Inhabitants of it and the Tract about it; pleasantly seated on the *Moselle*, and anciently honoured with a See Episcopal. 3. *Verdun*, an ancient Episcopal See also, the *Civitas Verodunensium* of *Antoninus*, seated on the *Meuse* or *Maas*. The Town or Territory adjoining in preceding times belonged to the great Princes of the House of *Ardenne*, at and before the time that they attained the Dukedom of *Lorraine*: but whither they had it in right of their Patrimonial Estate, as lying in the North part of this Country towards *Luxemburg*, as it well might be, or that it came to them in the right of Marriage with some Daughter of the House of *Moselle*, or other Heirs thereof, I have no where found. But howsoever it came to them, it gave unto this House the Title of Earls of *Verdun*, used in their Style, till swallowed with the rest in that of *Lorraine*. The Bishop whereof, as also those of *Metz* and *Toul*, (being the only ones of this Country of *Lorraine*) acknowledge the Archbishop of *Triers* for their Metropolitan. All of them were in the number (heretofore) of Imperial Cities, possessed of large and goodly Territories and of great Revenue; but taken by the *French* King *Henry* the 2. Anno 1552, during the Wars between *Charles* the fifth, and the Protestant Princes of *Germany*, under colour of aiding them against the Emperor. And though *Charles* tryed all ways to recover them to the Empire again, and to that end maintained a long and desperate Siege against the City of *Metz*: yet was the Town so gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guise*, that he was fain to raise his Siege, and go off with dishonour. Since that, they have been always under the subjection of *France*; a Parliament being erected at *Metz* for the ease of the people, as in other Provinces of that Kingdom.

Of such Towns as immediately belong to the Duke of *Lorraine*, the principal are *Nancie*, not great, but of a pleasant and commodious site, well watered by the River *Alenche* or *Alante*, and fortified better than before, in the year 1587, on occasion of a great Army of the *Germans* passing into *France* to aid the Protestants: most commonly the Duke's Seat, and famous for the Discomfiture which *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* here suffered, with the loss of his life. In the Year 1633, it was taken by *Lewis* 13 King of *France*, and in 1661, by *Lewis* the 14th, who dismantled it, but in 1673, he began to Fortifie it again, and has since made it much stronger than before. 2. *S. Nicolas*, a Town so populous, well seated, and neatly built, that were it walled, it would hardly yield precedence unto *Nancie* it self; so called from a Church here built to the honour of *S. Nicolas*, Bishop of *Myra* in the lesser *Asia*, whose body they pretend to be buried here, or at least some part or Relick of it to be here inshrined, occasioning a great resort of Pilgrims and other people. *Pont a Mousson*, about 4 leagues from *Nancie*, so called from a Bridge on the River *Mousson* upon which it standeth, of special note for a small University lately founded in it, and for giving the Title of a Marquess to the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Lorraine*, called commonly and contractedly Marquess du Pont, *Marchio Muso-Pontanus* by our modern Latinists. 4. *Vaucouleur*, the Birth-place of *Joan* the Virgin, to whose Miracles and Valour the *French* attribute the delivery of their Country from the power of the *English*. But being at last taken Prisoner, she was by the Duke of *Bedford*, then Regent of *France*, condemned and burnt for a Witch. Of which crime, I for my part do conceive her free. Nor can I otherwise conceive of her and her brave exploits, than as of a lusty Lass of *Lorraine*, tutored and trained up by the practice of the Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the Bastard of

Orleans, and so presented to *Charles* the seventh, the King, as if sent immediately from Heaven. A proper carried on of purpose, (as the most intelligent of the *French* Writers say) *pour faire revenir la couronne des Francois*, to revive the drooping spirits of the beaten *French*, not to be raised again but by help of a Miracle. Upon the sight of her *Statue* on the Bridge of *Orleans*, a friend of mine did adventure on a Copy of Verses in her commendation, too long to be inserted here, but they ended thus,

She dy'd a Virgin: 'Twas because the earth
Bred not a man whose valour and whose birth
Might merit such a Blessing. But above
The Gods provided her an equal Love,
And gave her to Saint *Denys*. She with him
Protects the *Lillies* and their Diadem.
You then about whose Armies she doth watch,
Give her the honour due unto her Match:
And when in field your Standards you advance,
Cry loud, Saint *Denys* and Saint *Joan* for *France*.

Next these we have, 5. *Vaudemont*, which gave the Title of an Earl to a younger Branch of the House of *Ardenne*, succeeding at the last in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, in person of Duke *Rhene* 2. and since a Title of the younger Son of the Dukes hereof. 6. *Neuf-Château*, on the edge of the Country towards *Barrois*. 7. *Amance*, seven leagues on the South of *Metz*, sometimes the Chancery of *Lorraine*. 8. *Riche Court*, near the Lake called *Garec-Lake*, out of which floweth a River which runs into the *Mourte*. 9. *La Mothe*, seated on a River which falls presently into the *Moselle*. 10. *Charmes*, seated on the *Moselle*, the place of Treaty between the Duke of *Lorraine* and the Cardinal *Richelieu*; the result whereof was the surrender of the Town of *Nancie*, and by consequence of all the Dukedom, into the hands of the *French*, September 1633. 11. *Stenay*, in the extrem North of all this Country, a well fortified Town and of great consequence and importance to the Dukes hereof; but whether properly belonging to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, or wrested from the Sovereignty of *Sedan*, upon which it bordereth, (as *Jamais* near unto it was) I have no where found. It was taken by the *French* in 1654. Of less note there are, 1. *Saint Die*. 2. *Saint Hippolite*. 3. *Bouquenon*, and 4. *Saverden*; the first Towns of this Dukedom taken by the *Swedes*, Anno 1633, in the War against *Lorraine*. 5. *Saint Miel*, 6. *Oden Chateau*, 7. *Airecourt*; all taken the same year by the *French*, in the prosecution of that War, before the Treaty at *Charmes*. 8. *Romberville*, 9. *Espeul*, 10. *Gorbeuillier*, &c.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Mediomatrices* and the *Leuci* spoken of before, together with the *Viridunenses*; all of them conquered by the *Romans*, under whom this Country and the district of *Triers* made up the whole Province of *Belgica prima*. From them being taken by the *French*, with the rest of *Gaul*, it was made a Kingdom; the Provinces of *Germania prima* and *secunda* (containing all the parts of *Germany* before described, and so much of the *Netherlands* as lie on the West side of the *Rhene*) being added to it: called first, from the Eastern situation, by the name of *Osternreich*, or *Austrasia*; the portion of *Theoderick*, the fourth Son of *Clovis*, the first Christian King of the *French*, from the chief City of his Kingdom called the King of *Metz*, whose Successors follow in this order.

The Kings of AUSTRASIA, or METS.

- 514 1. *Theoderick*; the base Son of *Clovis* the Great, vanquished the *Thuringians*, and extended his Kingdom as far as *Hassia* and *Thuringia*, as we call them now.
- 537 2. *Theodebert*, the Son of *Theoderick*, repulsed the *Danes* infesting the Coasts of the Lower Ger-

- Germany, and added *Provence* (taken from the *Goths* of *Italy*) unto his Estates.
- 548 3. *Theobaldus*, the Son of *Theodebert*, subdued the *Almans*, and added much of their Country to his own Dominions.
- 555 4. *Clotaire*, King of *Soissons*, the youngest Son of *Clovis* the Great, succeeded *Theobald* in this Kingdom, as afterwards his Brother *Childebert* in the Realm of *France*, anno 560, uniting in his person the whole *French* Dominion.
- 565 5. *Sigebert*, the Son of *Clotaire*, vanquished the *Huns*, then falling into his Estates: killed in his Tent by the practices of *Fredegonde*, the Wife of *Chilperick* King of *France*.
- 577 6. *Childebert*, the Son of *Sigebert*, Successour to his Uncle *Guntram*, in the Realm of *Orleans*.
- 598 7. *Theodebert* the II. the Son of *Childebert*, vanquished and outed of his Kingdom by *Clotaire* the second of *France*, from whose eldest Son *Sigebert* descended the illustrious Family of the Earls of *Habsburg*.
- 617 8. *Clotaire* II. King of *France*, on the death of *Theodebert* King of *Austrasia*, and his Brother *Theodorick* King of *Orleans*, the sole King of the *French*.
9. *Dagobert*, in the life of his Father King of *Mets* or *Austrasia*, whom he succeeded at his death in the Realm of *France*.
- 645 10. *Sigebert* II. the eldest Son of *Dagobert*, made choice of this Kingdom for his part of the whole *French* Empire; therein preferring it to *West-France*, or *France* it self, which he left to *Clovis* the 2. his younger Brother. He brought the *Suevians* to obedience, and subdued the *Slaves*.
- 656 11. *Childebert* II. Son *Grimoaldus*, Maior of the Palace to *Sigebert*, was by the power of his Father made King of *Metz*, *Dagobert* the Son of *Sigebert* being shorn a Monk, and sent into *Scotland*.
12. *Clovis* the 2. King of the *French*, having vanquished and beheaded *Grimoald*, dispossessed *Childebert* of the Kingdom, which he took to himself.
- 662 13. *Childerick*, the 2. Son of *Clovis*, after the death of *Clotaire* his elder Brother, succeeding in the Kingdom of *France*, united all the *French* Dominions into one Estate. In which condition it remained (but with some enlargement of the Bounds) till the Partition made by and amongst the Children of *Lewis* the Godly; the name of *Austrasia*, or *East-France*, being extended by *Charles* the Great over all *Pannonia*, and so much of *Germany* as was under the command of the *French*. In which division, *Lewis* the second Son, surnamed the Ancient, being invested in the Kingdom of *Germany*, or so much of *East-France* or *Austrasia* as lay on the East-side of the *Rhene*; *Lotharius*, the eldest Son, had for his share the Title of Emperor, and therewith *Italy*, *Provence*, *Burgundy*, and so much of *Austrasia* or *East-France* as lay on the *French* side of the River. Afterwards being subdivided into three Estates, *Italy*, with the Title of *Roman* Emperor, was given to *Lewis* the eldest Son; to *Charles*, the youngest, *Provence*, with the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and to *Lothaire*, the 2d. Son, *Austrasia* on this side of the *Rhene*, from hence called *Lot-reich*, *Lot-reigne*, and *Lotharingia*, as before was said. But *Lothaire* dying without issue, the Kingdom of *Lorraine*, containing all the *Netherlands*, (except *Flanders* and *Artois*) and all the parts of *Germany* before described, became divided betwixt *Charles* the Bald Emperor and King of *France*, and *Lewis* surnamed the Ancient, King of *Germany*; the one calling himself King of *Lorraine* on that side, the other King of *Lorraine* on this side of the *Maes*; the River *Maes* or *Meuse* parting their Possessions. But this Partition held not long amongst their Successors: For *Lewis* and *Carloman* King of *France* (the Sons of *Ludovicus Bulbus*) resigning their part hereof to *Charles* the Gros, Emperor of the *Romans*, and King of *Germany*, the said *Charles*, *Arnulph*, *Lewis* and *Conrade*, successively Emperors of the *Romans* and Kings of *Germany*, (together with *Zwentobald* the Ballard-Son of *Arnulph* interloping in the very middle of them) enjoyed it wholly to themselves. And so did also *Charles* the Simple King of *France*, on the death of *Conrade*, till forced thereto by *Henry* the first, (who succeeded *Conrade* in the Empire and Kingdom of *Germany*) he gave way to the old Partition (spoken of before: the *Germans* after that encroaching more and more on that part hereof, which of right belonged unto the *French*, till in the end (after much vicissitude and interchangeableness of affairs) both Princes laid aside the Title of Kings of *Lorraine*, incorporating so much as they held thereof into the rest of their Estates; *Orto* the third of *Germany* and *Lewis* the fifth of *France* being the last that pleased themselves with that broken Title. In the mean time this Country of *Lorraine* it self, as it is now bounded, together with the Country of *Luyck-land*, a great part of *Brabant*, some parts of the Land of *Triers*, *Colen*, and as some say, the Country of *Gulick* also, (but in this of *Gulick* I demur) as before was said, being taken out of it, were by *Orto* the Second made a Dukedom, anno 981, and by him given with the Title of Duke of *Lorraine* to *Charles* of *France*, Son of *Gerberge*, his Aunt by *Lewis* the 4. of *France* surnamed *Transmarinc*, Son of *Charles* the Simple. *Charles* thus advanced by his Cousin, and forgetting that he had been made Duke of *Brabant* not long before by *Lothaire* the *French* King, his Brother, shewed himself so alienated from the *French*, and wedded to the *Germans*, that the *French*, after the death of his Nephew *Lewis* the fifth, (whose next Heir he was) rejected him, and accepted *Hugh Capet* for their King. *Orto*, the Son of this *Charles*, dying without issue, left his Estate to *Geofrey* Earl of *Ardenne*, *Bouillon*, and *Verdun*, his near Kinsman by the Mothers side; from whom the present Dukes of *Lorraine* do derive themselves. From *Hermingrade*, one of the Daughters of this *Charles*, married to *Albert* (some call him *Charles*, and others *Godfrey*) Earl of *Namur*, by *Alice* their Daughter, married *Baldwin* the 5. of *Hainault*, descended *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, the Father of the Lady *Isabel* of *Hainault*, Wife of *Philip* the 2. King of *France*, thereby uniting the Blood of *Pepin* and *Hugh Capet*, to the great content of *Lewis* the 9. her Nephew: of whom it is said, that being a man of a tender Conscience, he never joyed in the Crown of *France*, till it was proved, that he was lineally descended, by his Grandmother, from *Charles* of *Lorraine*, whom *Hugh Capet* had so unjustly dispossessed. But to return again to the Dukes of *Lorraine*, I find not any great improvement made of the Estate, by any of them, more than the accession of the remaining Patrimony of the Earls of *Ardenne* in the person of *Godfrey* or *Geofry* the 3d. Duke hereof, and the adding of the Duchy of *Bar* in *France* by *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*; but on the contrary; a great weakening and distraction of it by the Dukes hereof: *Luyck-land* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, being sold unto the Bishops of *Liege* by *Godfrey* surnamed of *Bouillon*, after King of *Hierusalem*; *Brabant* torn from it by *Geofry* Earl of *Lovain*, in the time of *Baldwin*, Brother of *Godfrey*; and *Gulick-land* by *Eustace* the Brother of *Baldwin*; the Bishops of *Triers* not being negligent, all this while of the opportunity. Besides which, somewhat had been done by the Emperor *Orto* the Third, to the diminution of this Estate, seeing that *Orto* the Second Duke, Son of *Charles* of *France*, had no Issue-Male, and thinking this Estate to be great enough without those Additions, and some other pieces on the *Rhene*, by him restored unto the Empire. The rest of this Estate was con-

ferr'd on *Godfrey of Ardenne*, and not without good reason neither: it being probable enough that as it was first given by *Otho II.* unto *Charles of France*, with reference to his Mother *Gerberge* that great Emperor's Aunt; to *Otho of Lorrain*, Son of *Charles*, might look on *Godfrey of Ardenne* as most capable of it, with reference to his Mother *Matilda*, the same Emperor's Daughter. And unto this he might be moved not only in a noble gratitude to the blood of *Otho*, from whom his Father had receiv'd so great a benefit, but on the solicitation of the Emperor *Henry II.* (a Prince of the same House of *Saxony*) to whom the Alienation of it from the Daughters of *Charles* is ascribed by some. Which said, we have no more to do, but to present the Reader with the Catalogue of

The Dukes of LORRAIN.

- A. C.
- 981 1. *Charles of France*, took Prisoner by *Hugh Capet*, in which state he died. He married *Bona*, Daughter of *Ricvine*, and Sister of *Godfrey the elder*, Earls of *Ardenne*.
- 1001 2. *Otho*, Son of *Charles* and *Bona*.
- 1004 3. *Godfrey*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Son of *Godfrey the elder*, and Cousin of *Otho* by his Mother, confirmed herein by the power of the Emperor *Henry II.*
- 1019 4. *Gozelo of Bouillon*, the Brother of *Godfrey*.
- 1044 5. *Godfrey II.* Son of *Gozelo*.
- 1070 6. *Godfrey III.*
- 1078 7. *Godfrey IV.* of *Bouillon*, Son of *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, and of *Ida* his Wife, the Daughter of *Godfrey II.* created King of *Hierusalem*, anno 1099.
- 1100 8. *Baldwin*, Brother of *Godfrey*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and King of *Hierusalem*.
- 1119 9. *Thierrie*, Son of *William* the Brother of *Baldwin*.
- 1128 10. *Simon*, Son of *Thierrie*.
- 1141 11. *Matthew*, Son of *Simon*.
- 1176 12. *Simon II.* Son of *Matthew*.
- 1207 13. *Frederick*, Brother of *Simon*.
- 1213 14. *Theobald*, Son of *Frederick*.
- 1219 15. *Matthew II.* Son of *Theobald*, no great Friend of the Pop'es.
- 1259 16. *Frederick II.* Son of *Matthew*.
- 1303 17. *Theobald II.* Son of *Frederick*.
- 1311 18. *Frederick III.* Son of *Theobald*.
- 1329 19. *Rodolph*, Son of *Frederick*.
- 1346 20. *John*, Son of *Rodolph*.
- 1382 21. *Charles*, Son of *John*.
- 1430 22. *Rene*, Duke of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*, &c. in right of *Isabel* his Wife, the Daughter of *Charles*.
- 1452 23. *John II.* Son of *Rene* and *Isabel*, succeeded on the death of his Mother.
- 1470 24. *Nicholas*, Son of *John*.
- 1473 25. *Rene II.* Son of *Frederick*, Earl of *Vaudemont*, and of *Violand* or *Yoland*, Daughter of *Isabel* and *Rene* the first; the Vanquisher of *Charles* of *Burgundy* at the Battel of *Nancy*.
- 1508 26. *Anthony*, Son of *Rene* the 2d. who in the year 1542 covenanted with *Ferdinand*, King of the *Romans*, that the Dukedom of *Lorrain* should for the future be Free.
- 1544 27. *Francis*, Son of *Anthony*.
- 1545 28. *Charles II.* Son of *Francis*.
- 1608 29. *Henry*, Son of *Charles*, married *Katharine*, Sister to *Henry* the 4th of *France*.
- 1624 30. *Francis*, Brother of *Henry*.
- 1630 31. *Charles*, Nephew to *Francis* by his Brother the Earl of *Vaudemont*, and Son-in-Law to him by the Marriage of *Nicholaa* his Daughter and Heir, succeeded by a mixt Title of Descent and Marriage. Being resolved to hold it in his own Right, he put away his Wife the Daughter of *Francis*, and took another

to his Bed, which he better faulced. Punished not long after by the loss of his whole Estate: For immediately he engaged himself in the Wars of *Germany*, in behalf of *Ferdinand II.* but being beaten by the *Suedes* at the Battel of *Pfaffenhofen* in the County of *Hannam*, he lost a great part of his Country to the Victors, who pursued him home. And on the other side, *Louis XIII.* of *France*, picking a quarrel with him for receiving the Monsieur his Brother, and the Marriage of his Monsieur with the Lady *Margaret* the Duke's Sister, deprived him of the Duchy of *Burgundy*, and falling into *Lorrain* with a puissant Army at such time as the *Suedes* were there, compelled him to put into his hands the City of *Nancy*, and by consequence all the rest of his Estates, September 1633. Since which time the Duke hath never been restored thereto, nor hath any thing left him in it, for ought I can hear, but the Town of *La Motte*, (if that) together with a good Cause, many Hearts, and an invincible Courage. *Nicholaa* the Daughter of *Francis*, and Wife of *Charles* the last mention'd Duke of *Lorrain*, dying in the year 1657 bequeathed all her Right to the present King of *France*, who by the *Pyranean* Treaty in 1659 restored him to the Possession of it on certain Conditions. In the Year 1662 he resigned, or as some say sold, this Dukedom to the King of *France* again, and had it regranted; he soon repented and was herein opposed too by *Charles* the Son of *Francis-Nicholas* his Brother, who thinks himself the right Heir. In the Year 1663 the *French* forced him to another surrender, and he ended his unhappy Life the 17th of December 1675, at *Burckenfeld* in the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*.

- 1675 32. *Charles-Leopold*, Son of *Francis*, Brother of *Charles* the last Duke, who formerly was a Cardinal, but renounced that Order and married *Claudia*, Sister of *Nicholaa*, by whom he had this *Charles*, born in the Year 1643; and being kept out of his Dukedom by the Forces of *Louis XIV.* in the year 1672 became General of the Imperial Forces against the *French*, and since against the *Turks*; and he has had such prodigious Success against the latter; that he has almost entirely recovered the Kingdom of *Hungary* out of their hands. This Prince married *Eleonora Maria*, Sister of *Leopold* the present Emperor of *Germany*, the 8th of Feb. 1678. She was the Relict of *Michael Wisnowitzky*, King of *Poland*. He died the 18th of April, 1690. of an Apoplexy at *Wells* in *Germany*, being extremely afflicted by almost all Christendom: He left three Sons, the eldest of which at his death was about ten years old.

- 1690 33. *Leopold-Joseph Charles*, Son of *Charles-Leopold*, born the 11th of Sept. 1679. is the present Duke of *Lorrain*. He has also four other Brothers besides himself, and all younger, so that this House is in no danger to be extinguish'd in this Generation.

The Revenues of this Prince are said to be 700000 Crowns; whereof 200000 arise from the Customs of the Salt made in his Country, and the other 500000 from his Coronet-lands. He is an absolute Prince, and giveth for his Device an armed Hand coming as it were from Heaven, and grasping a naked Sword; to shew that he holdeth his Estate by no other Tenure than God and his Sword; the only hope at this time, of the present Duke. For though he be accounted a Prince of the Empire, and his Dukedom reckoned for a part of the fifth Circle thereof,

thereof, which is called *the Circle of the Rhene*; yet he neither comes unto the Dyets, nor holdeth himself bound by any of the Orders or Decrees which are made therein, as do the rest of the great Princes of *Germany*; his neighbourhood to the *French* formerly securing his Estate against any Force which the Empire durst bring against him for those neglects.

The main Reason why *France* has with so much greediness seized this small Dukedom, and since *Alsatia*, and the *Franche Comte*, was a desire to gain the Protection of the *Rhene*, that it might be the Barrier between them and *Germany* as it was of old; and by the surprize of *Strasbourg* they have in a great measure gain'd that point, if they can keep what they have thus gotten.

The Arms of *Lorraine* are Or, a Bend Gules charged with 3 Larks Argent. But herein I find *Bara*, an old *French* Herald, to differ from *Paradine*, the most exact Genealogist of the *French* Nation. For *Bara* charg'd the Bend not with 3 *Alouettes*, Larks, as *Paradine* doth, but with 3 *Allerions*, which are in Blazon small Birds wanting Beaks, Feet and Legs. Of this last Opinion is the most worthy Antiquary *Carabden Clancieux*; who withal telleth us, that when *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was at the Siege of *Hierusalem*, shutting at *S. David's* Tower there, he broached three feeble Birds called *Allerions* upon his Arrow, and thereupon assumed this Arms.

6. SUEVIA, or SCHWABEN.

THE Dukedom of *SUEVIA*, or *SCHWABEN*, according to the ancient Limits and Extent thereof, was bounded on the North with *Frankenland* and the *Lower Palatinate*; on the South with *Switzerland* and the *Alps* of *Tyrol*; on the East with the River *Leck*, parting it from *Bavaria*; and on the West with the *Rhene*, dividing it from *Sungow*, and both *Alsatia's*. But now the Dukedom of *Wirtemberg*, the Marquisate of *Baden*, and other lesser Estates being taken out of it, it is contracted and restrained within narrower Bounds, having on the East *Bavaria*, on the West the Dukedom of *Wirtemberg*, and so much of the *Rhene* as serveth to divide it from *Sungow* and the *Upper Elsass*, on the North *Franconia* or *Frankenland*, and on the South a little of the *Rhene*, with some part of the *Switzers*.

The Country for the most part is Mountainous and Hilly, overspread with some Spurs of the *Alps*, and the Woods of *Nigra Sylva* or *Swartzenwald*, recompenced notwithstanding with great plenty of Springs and Rivers (and amongst them the *Necar*, and the Renowned *Danubius*) which do issue from them: which makes the Vales hereof to be very fruitful, sufficiently stored with all necessary Provisions. Nor are the Woods and Mountains so unprofitable, But that besides the great plenty of Fuel and the pleasures of Hunting, they do afford some Mines of Iron and other Metals.

The People in regard of their mountainous Situation are more fierce and warlike than the rest of the *Germans*, and so accounted of by *Plutarch* in former times; industrious in several Trades and Manufactures, especially in the weaving of Linnen-cloth, which is made here in great abundance: and by reason they have so much in them of the South, they are *supra modum in Vanerem prout*, as *Ambrosius* tells me, at least more given to *Venus* than the other of the *Germans* are; the Women also being said to be very forward in this kind, as tractable and easie as the Men could wish them.

The whole is generally divided into the *Hegow* lying next to the Lake of *Constance*; the *Algow* extending to *Bavaria*; *Brissgow*, upon the West of the River *Rhene*; and *North Schwaben*, on the Northern side of *Danubius*. Principal Cities in the *HEGOW* are, 1. *Lindau*, situate like an Island in the Lake of *Constance*, encompassed almost with the Waters thereof, but joined to it with a Causeway of 200 Paces long: one of the Free or Imperial Cities, made so for Money, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, who did not The natural strength of this

City helped to preserve it from Count *Wrangel*, who in the year 1647, besieged it for the *Swedes*. 2. *Buchorn*, and 3. *Überlingen*, on the same Lake; both Imperial also. 4. *Schauß-hausen*, seated on both sides of the *Rhene*, not far from the efflux thereof out of Lake *Cell*, (so called from a Town of that name belonging to the Arch-dukes of *Austria*, but anciently known by the name of *Lacus Venetus*) and near those dreadful Falls or Cataracts of that River no less than 50 Cubits downwards, with great Noise and Violence. For which cause all Vessels that go down the *Rhene* are fain to unlade themselves, and by Carts to carry their Goods to this Town, where they embark them again. Which as it yieldeth great benefit unto the Town by Tolls and Imports, so doth it always keep it stored with abundance of Barks and other Vessels: whence it hath the name of *Schauß-hausen*, that is to say, the house of Skiffs, or the Town of Skip-boats. The Town is conveniently seated amongst rich Pastures and sweet Groves on both sides of the River; not without some pleasant Hills, and those well planted with Vines, near adjoining to it: Imperial once, but now a Canton of the *Switzers*, as hath there been shewn. In 1529 this City imbraced the Reformation. 5. *Arbon*, upon the Lake it self, (the *Arbor Felix* of *Strabo*) belonging to the Bishop of *Constance*. 6. *Meßpurg*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Constance*, Lord of the most part of this Tract, on the same Lake also. 7. *Constance* it self, situate on both sides of the *Rhene*, where it issueth out of the Lake, called from hence the Lake of *Constance*, but by the *Dutch*, *Boden-see*, from the Castle of *Bodmen*; by *Italy* and other Antients *Lacus Aconicus*, and *Brigantium*; made by the Confluence of the *Rhene*, and some other Rivers falling out of *Switzerland*. The Town is Imperial, an Episcopal See, and a flourishing Empory: famous for the Council here holden, Anno 1414, of great Renown as well for the multitude and quality of the People which were there assembled, as for the importance of the matters which were therein handled. The People of most note there assembled were *Sigismund* the Emperor, 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, 10000 Secular Princes and Noblemen, 450 common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Minstrels and Jesters. The business there handled was, first the pacifying of a Schism in the Church, there being at that time three Popes (or rather Anti-Popes) viz. *Gregory* the 12. resident at *Rome*, *John* the 23. at *Bononia*, and *Bennet* the 13. in *Spain*; all three deposed by the Council, and *Alexis* the 5. made sole Pope by the unanimous content of the Council, declaring both by matter of Fact, and by a publick Constitution here made and ratified, that a Council is above the Pope. The other main business was the proceeding against *John Huss* and *Hierome* of *Trague*, (spoken of before) both which notwithstanding the Emperor's safe conduct, were here condemned of Heresie, degraded and burnt. Now the manner of degrading a Priest is this: (I hope to be excused for this Digression) The Party to be degraded is attired in his Priestly Veiements, holding in the one hand a Chalice full of Wine and Water, and in other a gilt Plate (or *Patten*, as they call it) with a Wafer. Then kneeling down, the Bishop's Deputy, 1. taking from him all those things, commands him to say no more Masses for the quick and dead. 2. Scraping his Fingers ends with a piece of Glais, he commanded him from that time forwards not to hallow any thing. And, 3. stripping him of his Priestly Habit, he is clothed in a Lay Attire, and so deliver'd over to the secular Magistrate. But to return again to the City of *Constance*: Being proscribed by *Charles* the 5th. for refusing the *Interim*, and not able to withstand such Forces as were raised against them, they put themselves under the protection of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans*, and Brother of *Charles*. But herein they fell out of the Prying-pan into the Fire, as the saying is: For *Ferdinand* being possessed of the Town, seized on the common Treasury, and upon all Records and

and Writings which belonged unto them; set out an Edict, that all the Ministers within eight days should depart the City; and that no Citizen from thenceforth should wear any Weapon. And so instead of a Protector he became their Master. The Swedes in 1634 attempted to Recover this City from the *Austrians*, but without any Success.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria* which is called the *ALGOW*, are, 1. *Buchau*, on the Lake called *Feder-see*, a Town Imperial. 2. *Ravensburg*, a Free City, seated amongst Mountains, whereof one hangeth over it, the River *Ach* running by it in a bed so narrow that not able to receive the Waters which fall down from the Hills, it much endamageth all the Country by frequent Land-floods. 3. *Wangen* (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) Imperial also. 4. *Kempten*, the *Campodunum* of *Strabo*, and 5. *Memmingen*, the *Drusomagus* of *Ptolomy*, both Imperial Cities; the last about three miles in circuit, populous, rich, and very well Traded. 6. *Pfullendorf*. 7. *Zeukirk*. 8. *Bibrach*; all three Imperial; the last supposed to be the *Bragodurum* of the Ancients. 9. *Augsburg*, on the River *Lech*, looking into *Bavaria*, first made a Roman Colony by *Augustus Caesar*, *A. V. C.* 739. and by him call'd *Augusta Vindelicorum*, the principal City in those times of the *Vindelici*, a potent People of this Tract. A City of great Wealth and State, containing about nine Miles in circuit, and very strongly Fortified; by Nature on the East and North, where the ground lies low and under Water, and on the West and South by Art. The Buildings for three parts of it are of Clay and Timber; but on the West part, seated on an Hill, built of Free-stone, six or seven Stories high; in which are many fair Houses of the principal Citizens, and many stately Palaces, which belong to the *Fuggers*, a Family of very great (almost Princely) Revenues, possessed of many goodly Dwellings both in the City and the Suburbs, and adjoining Territories; who though they have of late obtained the Honour of Barons, in regard of their Wealth, still keep themselves (contrary to the custom of *Germany*, where Traffick is counted a disgrace to a Noble-man) to the Trade of Merchandise. The publick Edifices of it are very decent, especially the Cathedral Church, a majestick Building; the other Churches, being ten in number, and the Religious Houses, correspondent to it. Of old time *Ceres* was here worshipped, from whence (or from the fruitfulness of the Soil) the City gives a Sheaf of Corn for the Arms thereof. Since their Conversion unto Christianity it was made a Bishops See. Destroyed by *Attila* and his *Huns*; it was after built more beautifully than it had been formerly; at last made Imperial (by *Frederick I.* in the Year 1162.) and the Mistress of as large a Territory as most Cities of *Germany*. Famous for the Confession of Faith exhibited in this place to *Charles the Fifth*, by the Protestant Princes, hence called *Confessio Augustana*, Anno 1530. 2. For the *Interim*, or mixt Form of Doctrine, containing some Points of Protestantism, but most of Popery, here tendred to both Parties by the said Emperor (but received by neither) to be subscribed to and observed till the Differences could be settled by a General Council. And 3. for the publick allowance here given by a Decree of all the States of the Empire to the Protestant Party, to profess openly their Religion without any Impeachment, Anno 1555. a Limitation only laid on the Ecclesiasticks, that if they changed their Religion, they should lose their Preferments; which were to be bestowed on others more addicted to the See of *Rome*. This City embraced the Reformation 1533, the Exercise of which was continued, tho' the City was in the hands of the *Austrians* till the Year 1629; which by the Treaty of *Munster*, in 1649, was again restored.

In the third part hereof, called *BRISGOW*, lying on the East of the River *Rhene*, and the West of *Wirttemberg*, and on the South closed in with the Canton of *Basil*. Places of most importance are, 1. *Friburg*, upon the *Triesse* and other Streams descending from the

Mountains of *Swartzen-wald*, under which it lieth: Founded by *Berchthold* the third, Earl or Duke of *Zerlingen*, (the Castle of *Zerlingen*, Founded by *Berthold* the first, Son of *Gebizo*, the youngest Son of *Guntram* the second Earl of *Habsburg*, once the chief Seat of those Princes, being then near adjoining to it) in the Reign of *Henry* the fifth Emperor, Anno 1112. or thereabouts. Famous in those Days for Silver Mines, now for an University here established, Anno 1459, and being in present estimation the chief of the Country, of which more anon. 2. *Offenbach*. 3. *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Kinrich*, and both Towns Imperial: the first so named from *Offa*, an *English Saxon*, the Apostle of these Parts of *Germany*. 4. *Hochberg*, which gives the Title of a Marquis to the Marquises of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5. *Zell*, once Imperial, but of late times belonging, as doth also, 6. *Badenweiler*, to the Marquis of *Baden*; this last accruing to them by the Marriage of *Rodolphus* the sixth of that name, Marquis of *Hochberg*, with a Sister of *John* Earl of *Friburg*, the then Lord thereof. 7. *Waldshut*, upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold and mountainous Country, but well stor'd with Woods. 8. *Brisac*, by *Antonine* called *Mons Brisacius*, a Garrison in his time against the encroaching *Almans*, and situate at that time on the French side of the *Rhene*, the course of the River being since turned on the other side, where now it runneth. It is built Castle-wise on the top of a round Hill, in which there is also a strong Tower or Fortrets, raised by *Berchthold* the third, for defence of the place; otherwise strong enough by its own natural situation, and might be made impregnable, but for want of Water, which is all drawn from one deep Well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene*, which runs underneath it. The Town is fair, populous, and well built, once of most note in all the Country, from hence called *Brisac-gow*, or *Brise-gow*; but after the Building of *Friburg* by *Berchthold* the Fourth, it grew by little and little to be less frequented, the other being seated more conveniently for Trade and Business: Here also, not far off from the Castle of *Zerlingen*, stood that of *Kiburg*, somewhat the ancients of the two; of such Authority and Repute in those elder Times, that the Emperors do still retain the Title of Earls of *Kiburg* in the Style Imperial: descended on the House of *Habsburg* by the Marriage of *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *Hartman* the last Earl hereof, to *Eberhard* of *Habsburg*, Cousin-german to the Emperor *Rodolph*; on the expiring of which Line, Anno 1356, it fell, together with many fair Estates among the *Switzers*, to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, surnamed the Short. In the Year 1638, this City was taken by the *French*, and is still in their hands.

Finally, in the fourth and last part hereof, called *NORTH-SCHWABEN*, because on the North-side of the *Danow*: the places most observable are, 1. *Gemund*, on the *Rheims*. 2. *Dinckel-Spyel*, on the *Warmitz*, two Imperial Towns; which with *Uberlingen* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in Building, Territory, or estimation, spoken of before) are the only three Imperial Cities in all *Germany* which totally adhere unto the Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*. 3. *Bopfingen*, on the *Egra*, an Imperial City. 4. *Norlingen*, on the same River, but in a low and moorish Ground, yet of great resort, populous and well traded; most memorable for the Defeat here given the Swedes by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperor, at his first entrance on the Government; in which *Bannier*, one of the principal Commanders of that Nation, was slain on the place, *Gustavus Horn*, another of as great Eminence, taken Prisoner, their whole Forces routed; and thereupon so strange an Alteration of the Affairs of *Germany*, which they had almost wholly conquer'd, (though not for themselves;) that the *Palatinate*, not long before restored to its proper Owner, was again possessed by the *Spaniards*, *Frankendale* by the Imperialists, and the remainder of the Swedes forced to withdraw into their Holds on the *Baltick* Seas,

Anno

Anno 1637. 5. *Entweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, an Imperial City, and a Confederate of the *Switzers*. 6. *Donauert*, seated on the Confluence of the *Donau* and the *Werd*, whence it had the Name, most commonly called only *Werd*; an Imperial Town, the Habitation of *John de Werd*, once a Brewer herein, but afterwards a chief Commander of the Forces of the Duke of *Bavaria*, in the late *German Wars*. 7. *Villingen*, on the *Bregenz*, a small River falling into the *Danub*; a Town belonging to the Princes of the House of *Austria*. Not far from which stands, 8. *Furstenburg*, an ancient Castle. The Earls hereof are Princes of the Empire, and Lords of a great part of the Country, descended lineally from *Eginon*, or *Eggow*, the youngest Son of the Lady *Judith*, Sister and Heir of *Berthold* the Fifth, the last Duke of *Zerigen*, and consequently a Branch of the illustrious House of *Habsburg*; exceedingly increased both in Power and Patrimony, by the Marriage of *Frederick* Earl hereof (in the time of *Charles* the fifth, under whom he served in his Wars against the Protestants) with *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of *Christopher* the last Earl of *Werdeberg*, possessed of many fair Estates amongst the *Switzers* and the adjoining parts of *Schwaben*. In a Village of this Earl, call'd *Den Eschingen*, is the head of *Danubius*. A Cardinal of this Family is now Bishop of *Strasbourg*, a great Favourite of *Lewis* the 14th of *France*, who in the Year 1687 procured him to be chosen Coadjutor to the Elector of *Cologne*; and in the Year 1688 opposed him to Prince *Clement* of *Bavaria* upon the Death of that Elector. 9. *Ulm*, an Imperial City, situate on the meeting of the *Blave*, the *Iler*, and the *Danub*, the principal City of *North-Schwaben*; about six Miles in compass, rich, populous, well fortified, and stored with an Armory for Ordnance and all manner of Ammunition, not inferior to any in *Germany*. The Town is but new, taking its first rise from a Monastery, here Founded by *Charles* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulm* from the Elms about it. At first it belonged unto the Monks; of whom having bought their Freedom in the time of *Frederick* the Third, it became Imperial. The *Danub* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having so violent a Stream, that the Boats, which go down the Water use to be sold at the place where they land, it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence, on the Banks of the *Danub*, lie the *Suevian Alps*, and amongst them the old Castle of *Hohenberg*; the Lord whereof, on the Ruin of the House of *Schwaben*, became possessed of a great Estate here and in Upper *Italy*, sold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, the Founder of the now *Austrian* Family. This City embraced the Reformation in the Year 1529, and still persisted in it.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Brixentes*, *Simetes*, *Ingufci*, and *Calcones*, who, together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other Tribes of the *Rhena*, (of whom somewhat hath been said before in the *Alpine* Provinces) possessed themselves of that Country, which lieth betwixt the River *Im* and the head of the *Rhene*, East and West, *Danubius* and the *Alps* of *Italy*, North and South. Within which compass are the greatest part of the *Grisons*, the Dukedoms of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria* on this side the *Danub*, and part of the County of *Tyrol*, and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius Nero*, Sons-in-Law of *Augustus*, they were made a Province of the *Romans*; divided into *Rhetia prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck*, or *Lycus*; and *Rhetia secunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck*, and the River *Im*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which account all *Schwaben* on the South side of the *Danub* was part of the Province of *Rhetia prima*, continuing so till vanquished and subdued by the *Almans* in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperor of the Western parts. As for the *Almans* who succeeded in possession hereof, they were originally some Tribes and Families of the

Saxa, the most warlike Nation of the *Germani*, inhabiting upon the Banks of the River *Albi*; who jealous of *Charl's* great Successes, brought against him 40,000 fighting Men, of which 8000 were slain, and many drowned. They used to stay at home and go to the War by turns: they which staid at home tilling the Land, to whom the rest returning brought the Spoil of the Enemies. But after this blow we hear little of them till the time of *Caracalla* the Son of *Severus*; during whose Reign, descending towards the Banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danub*, and mingling with other Nations as they passed along, they assumed first the name of *Almans*; either from that promiscuous mixture of all sorts of Men, or (as I rather think) from *Almanus* the Son of *Frifia*, one of the great and national Gods of the *Germani*. And though they were well beaten by him at their first coming down, near the River *Albia*, and afterwards more broken by *Dioclesius*, who slew at least 6000 of them at one time in *Gaul*; yet never left they to infect the Provinces of the Empire which lay nearest to them, till in the end following the tract of the *Marci*, who had gone before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garrisons which were in their way, they made themselves Masters of *Rhetia prima*, *Germania prima*, and part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing, besides the Countries spoken of before, *Alsacia*, and so much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lies on the *French* side of the *Rhene*. But quarrelling with the *French*, their next Neighbours, (of whose growth and greatness they began to be very sensible) they were first vanquished by *Chlovis*, the first Christian King of the *French*, in that great and memorable Fight at *Zulph* near *Colen*, and afterwards made wholly subject to the Conqueror, who oppressed them with an heavy and lasting Servitude. About this time they returned again to their old Name of *Suevians*, their Estate being erected into a Dukedom, called many times the Dukedom of *Almain*; and when so called, divided into the *Upper Almain*, comprehending the Country of the *Grisons*, with some parts of *Switzerland* and *Tyrol*, and the *Lower* or the proper *Almain*, which contained the rest of the Estates of the ancient *Almans*, called for the most part by the name of the Dukedom of *Saxia* or *Schwaben*, and finally transmitting that name to this Province only, the best part thereof. These Dukes were at first officary only, removeable at the will of the Emperor, and accountable to him; not seldom many at one time, especially whilst under the command of the *French*, some of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the Lower *Almain*. So that there is no great certainty of their Succession: nor much care to be taken in searching after it; though otherwise Men of great Authority and command in their several Times. The most remarkable amongst them was *Rodolph*, Earl of *Reinfelden* and Duke of *Schwaben*, (descended from the Earls of *Habsburg*) in the Reign of *Henry* the 4th, against whom he was chosen Emperor by the practice and procurement of Pope *Hildebrand*, but overcome and wounded at the Battel of *Hysser*, he died not long after of his Wounds, with great repentance for rebelling against his Sovereign. After his death, some Provinces being dismembred from it, and other lesser Estates first erected out of it, it was made hereditary in the person of *Frederick* Baron of *Hohenstauffen*, surnamed the Ancient, by the Munificence and Bounty of the said *Henry* the Fourth, whose Daughter *Agnes* he had married. His Successors follow in this order.

The Dukes of SCHWABEN.

1. *Frederick* the Ancient, the first hereditary Duke of *Schwaben*.
2. *Frederick* with one eye, Son of *Frederick* the Ancient.
3. *Frederick* III. surnamed *Barbarossa*, Son of *Frederick* with one eye, Duke of *Schwaben*, and Emperor: he succeeded the Emperor *Henry*

- Henry the fifth in the Dukedom of Franconia, and left the same unto his Successors.
1190. 4. Frederick IV, second Son of Barbarossa; his elder Brother Henry succeeding in the Empire by the name of Henry the sixth.
5. Conrad, Brother of Frederick the fourth.
6. Philip, Brother of Conrad, after the death of Henry the 6. elected Emperor.
- 1207 7. Frederick V. Son of Henry the sixth, elected Emperor by the name of Frederick the second, King of Naples and Sicily also in the right of his Mother.
- 1250 8. Conrad II. Son of Frederick the fifth, King of both Sicilies, and Emperor of Germany after the death of his Father; poisoned, as was supposed, by his base Brother Manfred, who succeeded in his Kingdom of Sicily.
- 1254 9. Conradine, the Son of Conrad, pursuing his Right unto the Kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, was overcome and taken prisoner by Charles of Anjou, Successor unto Manfred in those Estates, and by his command beheaded at Naples, anno 1268. After whose death (being the last of that powerful and Imperial Family) this vast Estate was brought unto a second dismembring, and divided amongst the Bishops, Princes and Free Cities hereof: of which last there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedom than in all Germany besides. So that beholding it in the first and second Dilapidation, we find many goodly Patrimonies and fair Estates (besides what belongeth to the Cities and Episcopal Sees) to have been raised out of the Ruins of this great Dukedom: that is to say, the Dukedoms of Zeringen and Wirtemberg, with the Marquisate of Baden, dismembred from it when conferred on Frederick of Hohenstauffen; the Earldoms of Pfirt, Hohenberg and Friburg, (besides a great improvement of the Earldom of Habsburg) advanced out of the second Ruine. How Pfirt and Hohenberg were united to the House of Austria hath been shewn already; and what becomes of Wirtemberg and Baden shall be shewn hereafter. Here it is only to be noted, that the Family of Zeringen, possessed of almost all Brisgow and a great part of Switzerland, owe their Original to Berthold, the Son of Gebizo, a younger Son of Guntram the 2. Earl of Habsburg. Which being extinguished after a Succession of seven Princes only in the person of Berthold the fifth, (who died the same day in which the Emperor Rodolph of Habsburg was born) anno 1218, the Rights hereof descended on the Earls of Friburg, the principal City of that Country: Cuno, the first that bare the Title of Earl of Friburg, being the eldest Son of Judith, Sister and Heir of Berthold the last Duke of Zeringen. Eggon, the last Earl of which House, being overlaid by his undutiful and rebellious Subjects, sold his Estate therein for 12000 Ducats to Albert and Leopold Dukes of Austria, Sons of Albert the Short, whose Successors enjoy all Brisgow to this very day.

The Arms of Schwaben were Argent, 3. Leopards Sable, as is said by Bara: But Paradine will have them to be three Leopards Sable, crowned Gules, in a Field Or.

7. B A V A R I A.

BAVARIA is bounded on the East with Austria, and the Bishoprick of Salzburg, on the West with the River Leck or Lycus, which parts it from Schwaben, on the North with Northgoia, or the upper Palatinate, and Bohemia, and on the South with the Earldom of Tyrol and Carinthia. It containeth the whole Province of Rhetia secunda, and so much of Noricum Mediterraneum as now maketh up the Bishoprick of Salzburg, and by a distinct name was called Vindelicia, as being the ancient habitation of the Vindelici; so named from the two Rivers of Vindis and Lycus, (now the Werd and the Leck) upon which they lived. According whereunto it is thus versified by a German Poet.

*Respicit & late fluvios Vindium que Licum que
Miscentes Undas, & nomina Littoris, unde
Antiquam Gentem, populunque, Urbemque vocarunt
Vindelicam.*

In English thus,
Vindis and Lycus, Floods of noted Fame,
He next beholds, mingling their Streams and Name;
To which the old Vindelici do own
The name of both their Nation and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, *Augusta Vindelicorum*, their Metropolis or Capital City. But after such time as the Boii or Boiurians had driven out the Romans, and got possession of this Country, the name of Vindelicia and Rhetia secunda grew into disuse, that of Boiaria succeeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into Bavaria, the present name of the Country amongst the Latines; but by the Dutch called *Bayeren*, by the French *Bavier*. By the Treaty of Munster, all the upper Palatinate of the Rhene, was taken from that Family, and given to the Duke of Bavaria.

The whole is divided into three parts: the Higher, lying towards the Alps of Tyrol, the Lower, extending all along the banks of the Danow; and the District of Salzburg, situate betwixt the Inn and the Dukedom of Austria: all three much over-spread with Woods and Forests, remainders of the Hercynian Forest described before. But more particularly the Higher, lying towards the Alps, is cold and barren, affording no Wines, and but little Corn: the Lower being more fruitful, and better planted, for some parts (especially about *Regensperg* and *Landshut*) inferiour unto none in Germany for Richness and pleasantness of the situation. Of the District of Salzburg we shall speak by it self, because by some not reckoned as a part hereof. In all there is great quantity of Fuel for the fire, and of Timber for Building; no lets of Swine fattened in the Woods, and sent away by numerous Herds into other Countries.

The Christian Faith was first preached here amongst the Boiurians by Rupertus Bishop of Wormes, driven from his See by Childebert King of the French, anno 540, or thereabouts, and here made the first Bishop of Salzburg: corrupted at this time with the Leven of the Church of Rome, to which this Country (setting aside the Imperial Cities) is more entirely devoted than any other in all Germany.

Principal Cities in the HIGHER are 1. *Munchen*, (in Latine *Monachium*) the Duke's Seat, seated on the *Isar*, or *Isara*, in a very sweet and delightful Soil, among Ponds and Groves, daintily interlaced with pretty Riverets, and enriched with many excellent Gardens; that of the Duke being hardly to be paralleld in all this Continent: first founded by Henry Duke hereof in the time of Otto the first, anno 972, now grown a large and populous City; the publick Buildings, as Churches, Turrets, Libraries, the Senate-House, or Guild-hall, and common Market-place, of such excellent Structure, that they serve not only for Use and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongst them none is more eminent than the Library in the Ducal Palace, wherein are conceived to be 11000 Volumes, the most part of them Manuscripts. A Town made choice of by Maximilian, the now Duke of Bavaria, to be the receptacle of the Spoils got by him in the Wars of Germany: here being found (at such time as the Town was taken by the King of Sweden) 140 Brass pieces (besides other great Guns) hidden under the ground, one of the which was charged, instead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2. *Landspurg*, upon the Leck or Lycus, near the Alps of Tyrol: once of great strength, because a Frontier towards Schwaben; but proving a dangerous neighbour to the Swedish Garrisons planted in these parts, during that War against the Duke of Bavaria, was by them taken and dismantled, and is now an open Village only. 3. *Martenwald*, now a place of no note or beauty, heretofore the

the *Inutrium* of *Ptolomy*, seated near the *Alps*. 4. *Fridberg*, well fortified by Duke *Ludowick* or *Lewis* the second, for a Bulwark against those of *Augsberg*. 5. Here stood also the old Castle of *Schyre*, built by *Arnulph* 2 Son of *Arnulph* the first, Duke of *Bavaria*, the Seat and Honorary Title of his Posterity, (*Dynastia Schyrensis* in the *Latine*) till *Orho* of *Wittlesback*, by the favour of *Frederick Barbaroff*, and his own good fortune did attain that Dukedom.

In the *LOWER Bavaria* there first offers it self to consideration the Town of *Rain*, seated on the *Leck*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Danow*; memorable for the Skirmish near to it betwixt the *Swedes* and *Bavarians* at the first passing of the *Swedish* Forces over that River, in which *John* Earl of *Tilly*, so famous for his long and fortunate Conduct of the Imperial Armies, received his death's wound, of which he died at *Ingolstadt* within few weeks after. 2. *Newburg*, upon the *Danow*, not far from *Rain*; the first Town of *Bavaria* taken in by the *Swedes* after the said defeat of *Tilly*. 3. *Ingolstadt*, said to be built by a Tribe or Nation of the *Sueves* called *Angeli*, and thence called *Angeloſtadium* or *Angleſtade*; first made a City by *Ludowick* of *Bavaria* Duke and Emperor, and in the year 1410 made a University, much privileged by Duke *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, and Pope *Pius* the second. A Town is strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it seems impregnable, and indeed proved so to *Gustavus* the late King of *Sweden*, in the year 1632, who here found the first check to his prosperous Fortunes, being forced to raise his Siege without endangering it, and find work elsewhere. 4. *Regenspurg*, (in *Latine*, *Ratisbona*) on the *Danow* also, where it receives the River *Regen*, whence it hath its name: built in the place of *Tiberina*, or *Augusta Tiberii*, so called of a Colony brought hither by *Tiberius Caesar* about the time of our Saviours Passion, afterwards called *Rhatopolis*, or the City of the *Rhatians*, the chief of *Rhetia secunda*. At this time it is a fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houses: anciently an Episcopal See, and of late made the ordinary place for the general Diets of the Empire. In former times it was the Seat of the Kings and first Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made Imperial, and now mixt, or both: for being still Imperial, at the least in name, it was seized on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*, when the *Swedes* first got footing within his Dominions, held by him with a very strong Garrison, after the loss of *Munchen* his chief place of Residence, till at last won from him by the *Swedes*, anno 1633. 5. *Passam*, by the modern *Latinists* *Patavia*; but by some thought to be the *Boiodurum* of *Ptolomy*, then a *Roman* Garrison: seated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Inn* and the *Ilz*; by which it is divided into three Towns, *Passam*, *Inſtadt*, and *Iſtadt*, the whole *Compositum* being a rich, fair, and well traded City: a See Episcopal, and subject immediately to the Bishop as chief Lord hereof, who hath his dwelling in the Castle of *Oberhausen*, adjoining to that part hereof which is called *Iſtadt*. A place remarkable for many Meetings and Consultations of the *German* Princes, especially for that of the year 1552, in which, all former Quarrels being laid aside, the Protestants were first permitted the free Exercise of their Religion, by the consent and Edict of *Charles* the fifth, who had most laboured to suppress it. More in the land is 6. *Friſing*, on the swelling of a fine round Hill near the River *Ambra*, which runs beneath it, called anciently *Fraximum*, conceived to be built by some of the Presidents or Lieutenants for the *Roman* Emperors honoured with an Episcopal See about the year 710. One of the Bishops whereof, commonly called *Orho Friſingensis*, was the best Historian of his time. 7. *Landshut*, upon the River of *Iſer*, in the richest and most pleasant Country of all *Bavaria*; a beautiful and well built City, the work of *Lewis* Duke hereof, in the year 1208, adorned with a Church of most curious building for the service of God, and a magnificent Palace for the use of the

Duke. 8. *Erciſtat*, the only Imperial Town (except *Regenspurg*) in all this Dukedom. The whole number of Cities and great Townes in both *Bavaria's* is supposed to be 80: that is to say, 34 Cities, and 46 great Towns, of which these are the principal.

Lewis the II. the Elector *Palatine*, was the Founder of the line of *Newburg*, which at this time enjoys that Electorate, he succeeded his Father in the Dukedom of *Bipont*, and the Earldom of *Weldenz* and *Sponheim*, and having Eradicated Popery, settled the *Augustine* Confession in these Countries.

1532 2. *Wolfgang* his Son Succeeded him, who was born in the year 1526, *Orho Henry* Elector *Palatine* gave this Prince *Newburg*, upon the *Danube* and *Saltzbach*, and by his Will he declared him the Heir of the *Palatinate*, if his own Male Line failed.

1569 3. *Philip Lewis* born in the year 1547, 1. *Oſto*. A good manager of his Estates, and a Zealous Protestant, he married *Ann* the Daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleves*.

1614 4. *Wolfgang William*, born the 28th of *October*, 1587. This Prince returned to the *Roman Catholick* Religion, in the year 1614, and was much disliked on that account by his Mother and Brothers, and Son after was involved in a War on the Account of the Dukedom of *Juliers*.

1653 5. *Philip William*, born the 24th of *November* 1615, he continued the War his Father had began, till the year 1666, when that Controversie was ended, and in the year 1685, *Charles* Elector *Palatine* Dying without lawful Issue, he succeeded by the Fifth Article of the Treaty of *Osnabruck* in that Electorate, out of which he was driven by *Lewis* the 14th. in the year 1688, but the next year Recovered the most of it, This Prince was very happy in the Marriage of his Daughters, *Maria Sophia* in 1687, Married *Peter* King of *Portugal*, *Maria Anna* in 1689, Married *Charles* the II. King of *Spain*, *Eleonora Magdalena* the Eldest, in 1676 Married *Leopold* Emperor of *Germany*.

Of *John William Joseph* his Eldest, born the 19th of *April* 1658. I shall speak in the Catalogues of the Elector *Palatine*.

The Bishoprick or District of *SALTZBURG*, being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria*, (according to our former division of it) extendeth from the *Inn* or *Oenus* towards the Confines of *Austria*. The Soil hereof is rocky, dry, and barren, excepting some few Vallies only, as seated in the midst of the *Julian Alps*, the habitation heretofore of the *Norici mediterranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principal Town hereof is *Saltzburg*, seated upon the River *Saltzach*, whence it had the name; raised out of the Ruins of *Juvavia*, placed herabouts by *Antoninus*, the Station of a Cohort of *Roman* Souldiers belonging to the first Legion. An *Alpine* City, strongly situate among the Mountains; but no less beautiful than many of the lower grounds. The Royal Seat of some of the *Bavarian* Kings, after of the Archbishops hereof, the most powerful Prelates for Revenue or Jurisdiction of any in *Germany*. The See was first fixed here by *Rupertus* or *Ruberius*, the first Apostle of these parts, spoken of before; whose Image or Impress is stamped to this day on the Coins of this Bishoprick. At the time when *Luther* first endeavoured a Reformation. Cardinal *Matthaus Langius* was Bishop here, who did ingeniously confess, that the Mals did not want its faults; that the Court of *Rome* was much corrupted, and the lives of Priests and Friars fit to be reformed: *sed quod miscellus Monachus omnia reformet, id non esse tolerabile*; but that such a sorry fellow as *Luther* should attempt the work, was by no means to be endured. 2. *Newkirch*, on the same River, near the head thereof. 3. *Rottenburg*,

on the East-side of the *Inn*, bordering on *Bavaria*. 4. *Traunheim*, upon the *Traun*, rising out of the Lakes. 5. *Wildeshut*, one of the farthest Northwards, and 6. *Bishops-stoffe*, one of the most Southern in all this Tract. In the year 1685, the Inhabitants of a Valley of *Tyrol*, subject for the Main of it to the Archbishop of *Saltzburg*, were forced to leave their dwelling by that Archbishop. They seemed to be some Remains of the old *Waldenses*, because they Worshipped neither Saints nor Images, and believed the Sacrament to be only a Commemoration of the Death of Christ, and in many other points they differed from the Church of *Rome*, but then they knew nothing of the *Lutherans* or *Calvinists*, and were not known to the *Grifons* their next Neighbours; and they had Mass said amongst them. Some few years before this, some of them Travelling into the *Palatinate*, were better instructed in matters of Religion, and brought back with them some Books, which prevailed so far upon the rest, that they gave over going to Mass, some of their Priests concurring with them in the change, the rest complain'd to the Archbishop, who commanded them to return to the Mass upon severe Threats, whereupon all the Inhabitants of this Valley, old and young, to the number of 2000 Persons, divided themselves into several parties, some of them went into *Brandenburg*, others into the *Palatinate*, and about 500 of them dispersed themselves amongst the *Switzers* and *Grifons*.

The first Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the District of *Saltzburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforesaid: a people so resolutely bent to maintain their Freedom against the incroachment of the *Romans*, that when *Drujuss*, the Son in Law of *Augustus*, and Father of *Germanicus Caesar*, made War upon them, the very Women thereof took the Alarm; & *deficientibus telis, Infantibus in ora militum adversa miserunt*, and when their Darts were spent, threw the young Infants (saith the Historian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After them, in the declining of the Empire, succeeded the *Boiarians*, some of the many Tribes of the *Boii*, the most diffused and multitudinous Nation of *Gaul* and *Germany*. Originally they were of *Gaul*, inhabiting the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, from whence some of them passed with the *Senones* and other of the *Gauls* to the farther side of the *Alps* (in respect of them) where they took up the Country between the *Apennine* and the *Po*. Wearied with many Bickerings, at last with sharp and bitter Wars against the *Romans*, and by them deprived of half their Country, some of them passed into *Germany*, and mingled themselves with the *Taurisci*, then dwelling in those parts which we now call *Stiermark*: others advancing further, thrust themselves into the *Norici* (of whom more anon) and some retired themselves into the shelters and fast places of the *Hercynian Forest*. Driven from this last by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the Countries of the *Hermundur* and *Norici*, (now the Upper *Palatinate*) who, mingled into one Nation with them, took the name of *Boiarians*, and were by that name first known in the time of *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*; by whose perswasion, in the 17th year of *Anastasius* Emperour of the East, they passed over the *Danow*, and possessed themselves of *Vindelicia*, or the second *Rhatia*, with some part of the *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Boiaria*, as before was signified. They were governed first by Kings, (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Aldigerius*, (and he the last of that Race) slain fighting on the side of the *Almans* against the *French*, at the great Battle of *Zulph* near *Colen*. After which they were made subject to the Conquerors, as their Neighbours and Confederates the *Almans* were, but suffered to live under the command and Government of their own Princes, by the name of Dukes. Of these, from *Theodo* the Son of *Aldigerius* to *Tassilo* the last Duke, outed of his Estate and Honours by *Charles* the Great, for conspiring with the *Lombards* against him, are reckoned 15. Dukes in all; whose names (for there

remaineth little of them but the empty names) we shall subjoyn in the ensuing Catalogue of the

Dukes of the *BOIARIANS*.

- | | |
|-----|---|
| 493 | 1. <i>Theodo</i> , Son of <i>Aldigerius</i> the last King; from whose younger Brother <i>Utilo</i> descended <i>Pepin</i> the Father of <i>Charles</i> the Great. |
| 511 | 2. <i>Theodo</i> II. surnamed the Great. |
| 537 | 3. <i>Theodebert</i> . |
| | 4. <i>Theodo</i> III. the first Christian Prince of the <i>Boiarians</i> . |
| 565 | 5. <i>Tassilo</i> , Son of <i>Theodebert</i> . |
| 598 | 6. <i>Garibaldus</i> . |
| 612 | 7. <i>Theodo</i> IV. |
| 630 | 8. <i>Tassilo</i> II. |
| 650 | 9. <i>Theodo</i> V. |
| | 10. <i>Theodebert</i> II. |
| | 11. <i>Theodo</i> VI. Son of <i>Grimoldus</i> , the Brother of <i>Theodebert</i> the second. |
| 708 | 12. <i>Grimold</i> . |
| | 13. <i>Hugobert</i> , Brother of <i>Grimold</i> . |
| 735 | 14. <i>Utilo</i> . |
| 765 | 15. <i>Tassilo</i> III. the last Duke of the <i>Boiarians</i> , of whom more anon. |

Amongst these, few were of any note but 1. *Theodo* the first, Son of *Aldigerius*, who abandoning the name of King, because less pleasing to the *French*, who had newly conquered them, assumed that of Duke, and passing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhatia* *secunda*, with part of *Noricum* from the *Romans*, anno 508, or thereabouts. 2. *Theodo* the second, named the great, for his great and many Victories against the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum* and *Vindelicia*, and whatsoever they held on the Dutch side of the *Alps*. 3. *Theodo* the third of that name, and the fourth in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Christian Faith by the Preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, anno 580. 4. *Tassilo* the third of that name, and the last of their Dukes of the Race of *Aldigerius*, or of the old *Boiarian* blood; who being deposed by *Charles* the Great, the whole Country became immediately subject to the *French*, governed at first by their Lieutenants. Disinherited from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the Godly, it was made a Kingdom, (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom it was conferred on *Lotharius* his eldest Son, who was afterwards Emperor of the *Romans*: after his death possessed by the Kings of *Germany*, but as a distinct Kingdom both in name and Title, till the decease of *Lewis* the Son of *Arnulph*, the last of the direct Line of *Charles* the Great. He being dead, and the *Bavarians* loth to be made a Subject Province to the Kingdom of *Germany*, one *Arnulph* of the Issue of the said *Charles*, with the general liking of the *Boiarians*, took upon himself the Title of King; but being opposed therein by *Conrade* the Brother of *Lewis*, Emperor and King of *Germany*, and also by *Henry* the first who succeeded, he changed the Title of King into that of Duke; the Founder of the present House of

The Dukes of *BAVARIA*.

- | | |
|-----|--|
| | 1. <i>Arnulph</i> , of the House of <i>Charles</i> the Great, first Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> . |
| 938 | 2. <i>Eberhard</i> , Son of <i>Arnulph</i> , deposed by <i>Otho</i> the first. |
| | 3. <i>Berchthold</i> , the Brother of <i>Arnulph</i> , confirmed in the Estate by the said Emperor <i>Otho</i> . After whose death it was conferred on <i>Henry</i> the Brother of <i>Otho</i> the 1st. who had married <i>Judith</i> , Daughter of <i>Arnulph</i> the first Duke, and Sister to <i>Eberhard</i> . |
| 947 | 4. <i>Henry</i> , Brother of <i>Otho</i> the first, surnamed <i>Rixofus</i> , or the Quarrellom. |

5. *Henry*

5. *Henry II.* Son of the former *Henry*, surnamed *Hezzelo*.
6. *Henry III.* surnamed the Saint Son of *Henry* the 2d. the first Emperor who came in by Election, according to the Order made by *Pope Gregory* the 5. After whose coming to the Empire this Dukedom was transferred for 14 Successions from one great Family to another, according to the power and pleasure of the present Emperour, in manner following.
7. *Henry IV.* surnamed *Hezzel*, Brother to *Cunegund*, the renowned Wife of *Henry* the Saint; by whom he was preferred to this Dukedom, and by him deposed.
8. *Henry Guelph*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorff* in *Schwaben*, (of the strange Original of which Family we shall speak in *Brunswick*) made Duke by the Emperor *Conrade* the 2.
9. *Guelpho*, Son of *Henry Guelph*, or *Henry* the 5.
10. *Ernest*, created Duke hereof by the same *Conrade* the 3. and by him deposed again for conspiring against him.
11. *Henry VI.* the Black.
12. *Cuno*, accused of Conspiracy, and displaced by *Henry* the 3. to make room for
13. *Henry VII.* Son of the said Emperor *Henry* the 3. whom he succeeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4.
14. *Agnes*, the Mother of the said *Henry* the 4. by the gift of her Son.
15. *Otho*, by the gift of the Empress *Agnes*, deposed not long after by *Henry* the 4.
- 1071 16. *Welfo III.* Son of *Coniza*, the Daughter of *Guelph* the 2. by *Azon* an *Italian* Marquis made Duke hereof by the said Emperor *Henry* the 4.
17. *Welfo IV.* Son to *Welfo* the 3. he dyed in 1119.
- 1119 18. *Henry VIII.* surnamed the Proud, by others called *Henry* the black, Brother of *Guelpho* the 4. by the Marriage of *Gertrude* Daughter of *Lotharius* the second, Duke of *Saxony* also. In the year 1137. Deprived of both by the Emperor *Conrade* the 3. He dyed in 1139.
- 1138 19. *Leopold*, Son to *Leopold* the 4. Marquis of *Austria*, made Duke by the said *Conrade* the Third.
20. *Henry IX.* Brother of *Leopold*, after Marquis, at last Duke of *Austria*.
- 1154 21. *Henry X.* surnamed the Lion, Son of *Henry* the Proud, restored by the Arbitrement of *Frederick Barbarossa*, (the Duke of *Austria* being otherwise satisfied) by whom he was not long after prescribed, and deprived of both his Dukedoms. After which this Estate became fixed and settled in the person and posterity of *Henry* the Xth. died in the year 1195.
- 1180 22. *Otho* of *Wittlesback*, so called from the place of his birth or dwelling, descended lineally from *Arnulph* the Lord of *Schyre* in the Upper of *Bavaria*, and 2. Son of *Arnulph* the first Duke hereof; advanced unto his honour by *Frederick Barbarossa*, sensible of the too great power of the former Dukes: the whole extent of this Estate being reduced by this time to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate of *Northgoia*.
- 1183 23. *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* Son of *Otho*.
- 1231 24. *Otho II.* Son of *Lewis*, who, by marrying *Gertrude*, the sole Daughter of *Henry* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, brought the Electoral Dignity into the House of *Bavaria*.
- 1290 25. *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, the Son of *Otho* 2.
- 1294 26. *Ludowick* or *Lewis II.* Brother of *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*.
- 1312 27. *Ludowick* or *Lewis* the III. second Son of *Lewis* the 2. succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*, *Rodolph*, the eldest Son, succeeding in both *Palatinates* and the Electoral Dignity. He was afterwards elected and crowned Emperor, known commonly by the name of *Ludovicus Bavaricus*. This Prince was born in the year 1287, Chosen Emperor in 1314 upon the Death of *Waldemar*, Marquis of *Brandenburg*, he gave that Electorate to *Lewis* his Son, in the year 1323: *Frederick Titcher* of the House of *Austria*, and in the year 1347, was slain by a fall from his Horse.
- 1347 28. *Stephen*, the eldest Son of *Ludowick* the Emperor; *William* and *Albert*, his two Brethren, successively enjoying the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their Mother. He succeeded in *Bavaria*, and was a Prince of Great Piety and Vertue.
- 1375 29. *Stephen II.* Son of *Stephen* the first; his Brothers, *Frederick* and *John*, sharing with him parts of the Estate.
- 1413 30. *Ludowick II.* surnamed *Barbatus*, deposed and imprisoned by his own Son *Ludowick*, who yet died before him without Issue. The deposed Prince, was a Turbulent and Unjust Prince, and would have disinherited *Lewis* his Son, to set up a Bastard in his stead. He dyed in Prison in the year 1447, his Son dying in 1445.
- 1447 31. *Henry* the II. Son of *Frederick*, the second Brother of *Stephen* the 2. succeeded on the death of *Ludovicus Barbatus*.
- 1450 32. *Ludowick V.* surnamed the Rich, the Son of *Henry* the 2. banished the *Jews* out of his Estates and seized their goods in 1450.
- 1479 33. *George*, surnamed the Rich also, the Founder of the University of *Ingolstadt*; whose sole Daughter and Heir was married to *Rupertus* Prince Elector *Palatine*, with the Dukedom of *Bavaria* for her Dower. But *Maximilian* the Emperor, not liking so much greatness in the *German* Princes, confirmed the same on,
- 1503 34. *Albert III.* Son of a former *Albert*, Nephew of *John Munchen* by his Son *Ernestus*: which *John* was youngest Brother to *Stephen* the 2. who by the power and favour of *Maximilian* the Emperor succeeded unto *George* the Rich: the cause of a long and unhappy War betwixt the Electors of the *Rhene* and Dukes of *Bavaria*; the worst whereof, besides the loss of this Estate, fell upon the *Palatines*, proscribed and outed of their Country upon this quarrel: but, upon their Submission restored again.
- 1508 35. *William*, the Son of *Albert* the 3d, *William* the Son of *Albert*, was born in the year 1493.
- 1577 36. *Albert IV.* a great Champion of the Doctrines and Traditions of the Church of *Rome*; and so extremely affected unto the *Jesuites*, that he built Colledges for them at *Landsburg*, *Ingolstadt* and *Munchen*, his three principal Towns, he was born in 1526.
- 1579 37. *William II.* Son of *Albert* the 4. as zealous as his Father in the cause of the Church of *Rome*: therein exceeded very much by *Maximilian* his eldest Son, to whom this Prince resigned his Government in the year 1597, and retired into a Monastery, he Dyed the 27th of February 1626, being then in the 78th year of his Age. Born in 1548.

- 1597 38. *Maximilian*, eldest Son of *William* the 2. born the 17th of *April* 1573, who chiefly out of the same zeal sided with *Ferdinand* the 2. in the Wars of *Germany*, anno 1620. and took upon him the conduct of the Armies of the said Emperor against *Frederick* Count and Elector *Palatine*, chosen King of *Bohemia*: in which having done great service to the Imperial and *Romish* Interest, he was by the said *Ferdinand* invested in the Upper *Palatinate*, called anciently (but not more properly than now) the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, together with the *Electoral Dignity*. This last was conferred at first upon him but for term of life in the Dyet at *Regensburg*, 1623. the Electors of *Mentz*, *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* then protesting against it; but afterwards, in the Dyet at *Prague*, anno 1628. conferred upon him and his Heirs for ever, to the great prejudice of the Princes of the *Palatine* Family, who by reason of their simultaneous Investiture with the first of their House, are not to be deprived of their Estates and Dignities for the offence of their Fathers; the punishment not being to extend beyond the person of the Offender. But notwithstanding their Pretensions and Allegations, the Duke is still possessed of the Title and Dignity, and confirmed therein by the Conclusions of the Treaty of *Munster*, and a new Electorate being to be erected for the *Palatine* Princes.
- 1651 39. *Ferdinandus Maria*, Son of *Maximilian*, born in the year 1636, the 21st. of *October*, he succeeded his Father in the year 1651, and dyed suddenly in 1679, the 26th of *May*.
- 1677 40. *Maximilian Maria Emanuel*, the present Duke and Elector of *Bavaria*, was born the 11th of *July* 1662. He having signalized his Valour in the present War against the *Turks*, especially in the Sieges of *Buda* in 1684, and in 1686 was preferred before all others in the Marriage of *Maria Antonia*, &c. Eldest Daughter of *Leopold* the present Emperor of *Germany*, and *Maria Anna* the Eldest Daughter of *Philip* the IV. King of *Spain*, so that if the present King of *Spain*, should happen to die without Issue (as he has none yet) this Prince will succeed him in the Kingdom of *Spain*, His younger Brother is *Joseph Clemens*, &c. born the 5th of *December* 1671, Elected Archbishop of *Cologne*, the 14th of *July* 1688.

The growth of this Family of *Bavaria*, is thus represented by a late *German* Author. 'After *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, was proscribed by *Frederick Barbarossa* the Emperor, and deprived of all his Territories. The same Emperor about the year 1180, gave into the Possession of *Otho* I. both the Upper and Lower *Bavaria*, to which at that time belonged the Earldoms of *Scherdingen* and *Newburg*, and the Territory of *Burchhausen*; this *Otho* purchased also the Earldoms of *Dachovien* and *Rittenburg*, and the Territories of *Rotenburg*, *Rheningen*. *Otho* II. Grandchild of the former, in the year 1227, in the Right of *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Henry*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, his Wife became Elector *Palatine*; and in the year 1256, he purchased the Castle of *Lindensels* and the City of *Nusloch* in *Cregow*, and he obtained of *Henry* of *Waldorf* the Emperor, the City of *Wieselach*. In the year 1281, *Rodolph* the Emperor gave to *Lewis* Count *Palatine*, the Earldom of *Mosburg*, and he obtained by Inheritance *Werden*, *Landberg*, *Vilsbiburg*, *Chagen*, *Landau*, *Mumuro*, *Elbrecht*, *Kirchen*, and *Libenau*, &c. And afterwards, upon the beheading of *Conradin* Duke of *Swabia*, he acquired *Lavingen*, *Hochstadt*, *Schongau*, *Swabeck*, *Fussen*, *Moringen*, *Mewmarck*,

Amberg, &c, and he purchased *Schrisheim*, and the Castle of *Strahlenberg*, and the City of *Bretten* in *Cregow*. In the 1392, *Rupert* and his Lady had given them half the Earldom of *Sponheim*, and the other half, and the City of *Pfirtzheim* came into their hands in the time of *Frederick* the I. Elector *Palatine*. About the same time, the Earldom of *Sinieren* was Mortgaged to *Rupert* by the Emperor, and afterwards it was fully settled in this Family; the same *Rupert* for 25000 *Florens*, bought the Earldom of *Deuxpont*. In the year 1443, the Marquits of *Baden* sold *Fppingen* in *Cregow* to *Lewis* the Elector; and about the same time came the Earldom of *Kirchbergen*. In the year 1410, *Stephen* II. in the Right of his Wife, obtained the Earldom of *Veldenz*. In the year 1441, *Frederick* obtained the Earldom of *Lomstein*, and in 1452 that of *Sutzelstein*, and he had in Mortgage from the Bishop of *Mentz*, *Bergstrasse*. In the year 1607, *Maximilian* I. got into his hands the Free City of *Donowerd*, or *Donawert*. In the year 1618, he purchased the Earldom of *Mindelheim* in *Swabia*, and in 1646, he had by the League of mutual Succession, the Landgraviate of *Zenchtzenberg*. In the year 1655, *Charles Crustanns* Duke of *Deuxpont* of this Family, obtained the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and his Brother *Adolph John*, had great Possessions given him in *Sweden*. In the year 1666, there was given to *Maximilian*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the 8th. Electorate. In the year 1666, *Philip William* Duke of *Newburg*, one of the Branches of this House, by a Treaty obtained of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Dukedoms of *Juliers* and *Monts*, and the Earldom of *Ravenstein*.

The greatest Losses this Family has receiv'd, have happened in this Age. *Maximilian* Duke of *Bavaria* by the Treaty of *Osnabruck* in 1648, being forced to part with the Upper *Austria* to the Emperor, and the *Bergstrasse* to the Archbishop of *Mentz*, both Mortgaged to this House. In the War with *France* in 1673, the French King seized the Dukedom of *Deuxpont*, and the Earldom of *Veluentz*, and many other Towns as dependancies of the Landgraviate of *Alsatia*. In 1689, he seized the Earldoms of *Sponheim*, *Sinieren* and *Lauteren*, and took and Burnt the greatest part of the Towns and Cities in the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, on the West of that River.

The Arms of this Duke are *Lozenges* of 21 pieces in Bend, *Argent* and *Azure*.

8. The Archdukedom of AUSTRIA.

THE Archdukedom of *AUSTRIA*, reckoning in the incorporate Provinces and the Members of it, is bounded on the East with *Hungary*, and part of *Sclavonia*; on the West with *Bavaria*, and some parts of the *Switzers* and the *Grisons*; on the North with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; and on the South with *Istria* and some part of *Friuli* in *Italy*. Within which circuit are contained the several Provinces of *Austria* properly so called, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tyrol*. The quality of the whole will be best discerned by the Survey of particulars.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole were the *Norici* of the *Romans*, parted into the lesser Tribes of the *Sevaces*, *Alauni*, *Ambisontii*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambidrauni*; subdued by *Drusus*, Son-in-law to *Augustus Caesar*, and made a Province of the Empire. After by *Constantine* the Great divided into *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and some parts of *Tyrol*, with the Bishoprick or District of *Salzburg*; of which *Solva* was the Metropolis or Capital City: and *Noricum Ripense*, containing only *Austria*, and those parts of *Bavaria* which lie Eastward of the River *Imn*, extended all along on the Banks of the *Danow*. It was known by no other names while possessed by the *Romans*; from whom being conquered by the *Avars* and other Nations, it gained those several names and appellations specified before.

1. AUSTRIA

1. *AUSTRIA* properly so called hath on the East the Kingdom of *Hungary*, on the West *Bavaria*, on the North the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the West, and on the other side the *Teyc*, which separates it from *Moravia*, on the South *Stiria*, or *Stiermark*. It is called by the *Dutch* *Osternreich*, and contractedly *Ostreich*, that is to say, the *Eastern Kingdom*, (a part assuming to it self the name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of *East-France*, or the Eastern Kingdom of the *French*, in the barbarous *Latin* of those times called by the name of *Austrasia*, whence the modern *Austria*.

The Air is generally very healthy, and the Earth as fruitful, yielding a plentiful increase without help of Compost or other Soiling, and of so easie a Tillage to the Husbandman, that on the North side of the *Danow* it is Ploughed and managed by one Horse only. Exceeding plentiful it is of Grain, and abundant in Wine, with which last it supplieth the Defects of *Bavaria*; it hath great store of Saffron, some provision of Salt; and at the foot of the Mountains, not far from *Haimburg*, some Gager also. Nor wants it Mines of Silver in a large proportion. It is divided by the River *Danow* into the *Lower*, and the *Higher*: that lying on the North side of the River, towards *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; this on the South side towards *Stiermark*.

Places of most importance in the *HIGHER AUSTRIA*, are, 1. *Gmund*, seated on a Lake call'd *Gmunder-See*, bordering on *Bavaria*, at the efflux of the River *Draun*, which ariseth out of it. 2. *Lintz*, seated on the Confluence of the said *Draun* with the famous *Danw*; the *Arcade* of *Ptolomy*: a Town before the late Wars almost wholly Protestant; but then being put into the hands of the Duke of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the other side. 3. *Walkenstein*, on the *Ens* or *Anisus*, near the borders of *Stiermark*. 4. *Ens*, on the Fall of that River into the *Danow*, raised out of the Ruines of *Laurexum*, sometimes the Metropolis of *Noricum Ripense*, the Station at that time of the 2d Legion: afterwards an Archbishop's See, made such in the first planting of Christianity amongst this People by *S. Severine*, anno 464. On the Reviver whereof (suppressed by the *Huns*, *Boiarians*, and others of the barbarous Nations) by the diligence and preaching of *S. Rupertus*, the Metropolitan Dignity was fixt at *Saltzburg*. 5. *Weidhoven*, near the head of the River *Ips*. 6. *Ips*, seated at the Influx of that River, and from hence denominated; the *Gesodunum* of *Ptolomy* and other Ancients. 7. *Newside*, on a great Lake so named. 8. *Wels*, on the main Stream of the *Danubius*. 9. *Haimburg*, on the Confluence thereof, and the River *Markh*. Near to which, at the foot of the Mountains now call'd *Haimburgerberg* (from the Town adjoining) but antiently named *Mons Cagnamus*, is some store of Ginger: a wonderful great rarity for these colder Countries. 10. *Newsta*, first called so from the newness of it, being built of hre. 11. *Vienna*, by the *Dutch*, *Wein*, the principal of all these Parts, by *Ptolomy* call'd *Juliobona*; *Vindebona*, by *Antonine*; the Station in their times of the tenth Roman Legion; of whose being settled here there are many Monuments both within the City and without. Seated it is on the Banks of *Danubius*, well built, both in regard of private and publick Edifices; each private House having such store of Cellarage for all occasions, that as much of the City seems to be under the ground as is above it. The Streets for the most part are spacious, and all paved with Stone, which makes them very clean and sweet in the midst of Winter. It is fenced with a mighty Wall, deep and precipitious Ditches on all parts of it, and many Bulwarks, Towers and Ramparts in all needful places. The Walls hereof were first raised with some part of the Money paid unto *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, for the Ransom of *K. Richard* the First of *England*, taken Prisoner by him as he passed homewards through this Country from the *Holy Land*: Esteemed to this day the strongest hold of Christendom against the *Turks*; and proved experimentally so to be in that most notable and famous Repulse here given them,

Anno 1529. at what time 200000 of them, under the conduct of *Solyman* the Magnificent, besieged this City; but by the valour of *Frederick* the second, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and other *German* Princes, were gallantly resisted and compelled to retire, with the loss of 80000 Soldiers. It was again besieged in the year 1532. And in our Days, in the year 1683, *Mahomet* the Fourth sent an Army of 100000 Men, which from the 14th of July to the 12th of September lay before this City, employing all the modern Arts of War and Battery, by which they had reduced it to the utmost Extremity, and in a few days more had in all probability carried it, but it was then relieved by *John Sobiesky*, the late King of *Poland*, and *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain*: The Princes of the Empire appearing in Person, or sending in their Forces in great numbers. The *Turks* maintained the Siege with that obstinacy, that being forced to fly at last they lost all their Tents, Cannon, Ammunition and Carriages, and saved nothing but their Lives, and what they carried about them; and, which was worst of all, they lost all their Valour, Reputation and Union, and are in five Years time reduced to the brink of Ruine. May this Empire rise no more! Nor doth the strength hereof so diminish the Beauties of it, but that it is one of the goodliest Towns in all the Empire; the Residence for these last Ages of the Emperors: made an University by the Emperor *Frederick* the second; reviv'd and much advanc'd by *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, anno 1356. adorn'd with an Episcopal See, many magnificent Temples and stately Monasteries: but above all, with a most sumptuous and Princely Palace, wherein the Archdukes and Emperors use to keep their Courts; built by *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia*, during the little time he was Duke of *Austria*. In the middle Ages, as appears by *Otho Frisingensis*, it was called *Fabiana*: but being ruined by the *Huns*, and again re-edified, was first called *Biana*, (the first Syllable omitted by mistake or negligence) from whence the *Dutch* *Wein*, and the *Latin* *Vienna*.

We should now take a view of the Towns and Cities in the *LOWER AUSTRIA*, if there were any in it which were worth the looking after. The Country having never been in the hands of the *Romans*, hath no Town of any great Antiquity; nor many new ones built or beautified by the *Austrian* Princes, since it came into their possession: the only one of note being *Cremis*, or *Cremia*, on the left-hand shore of *Danubius*, going down the Waters. 2. *Recz*, on the River *Teyc*, bordering on *Moravia*; and 3. *Frieftat*, at the Foot of the Mountains on the skirts of *Bohemia*.

2. *STIRIA*, or *STIERMARK*, is bounded on the North with *Austria*, on the South with *Carniola*, on the East with *Hungary*, and on the West with *Carinthia*; extendeth in length 110 Miles, but in breadth not above 60, or thereabout. For the most part mountainous and barren, as being overspread with the Spurs and Branches of the *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

Towns of most consequence are, 1. *Gratz*, seated upon the River *Mur*, and the chief of the Province, from which the third Branch of the House of *Austria* (since the time of *Ferdinand* the first) was called *de Gratz*, and had the Government of the Country for their part of that Patrimony. A Town once full of Protestants, and those so strong, that they could neither be forced out, nor hindered from the free Exercise of their Religion, till the Year 1598, in which *Margarer* the late Queen of *Spain*, Sister to the Archduke *Ferdinand de Gratz*, was by the Citizens solemnly entertained; with whom entered so many Soldiers, that the City was taken, and Fourteen Ministers of the Reformed Religion presently banished. 2. *Rackelsburg*, and 3. *Pruck*, both situate also on the *Mur*. 4. *Steckhaw*, an Episcopal See, seated on the *Dra* or *Dravus*, a well known River, not far from the fall of the *Mur* into it. 5. *Petam*, the *Patavia* of *Antoninus*, seated somewhat higher upon the *Dravus*. 6. *Lambach*, the *Ovilabis* of *Antoninus*, on the *Dravus* also. 7. *Voirsparg*,

Sparg, upon the River *Kainach*. 8. *Celey*, the *Celeia* of *Pliny*, of great Antiquity, as appeareth by many *Roman* Inscriptions and other evident signs of Age which are upon it; for this cause thought by some to be that *Celia*, or built at least out of the Ruines of it, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Tract. It is situate on the River *Savus*, and hath a large Jurisdiction over the adjoining Countries. 9. *Canisia*, seated in a Marsh on the edge of this Country: a place of great strength both by Art and Nature; once one of the strongest Bulwarks against the *Turks* in all these parts, and a great eye-sore to them for many years; but taken by them at last, *Anno* 1600, and never regained by the Princes of the House of *Austria*, though many times in vain attempted; till the 13th of *April*, 1690. it was delivered up into the hands of the *Germans*, when it had suffered a Blockade of three years continuance, and the Count *de Budiani*. The *Turk* that delivered up the Keys said, *I herewith consign into your hands the strongest Fortrefs in the Ottoman Empire*. This was the last place the *Turks* had in all the *Lower Hungary*, of which it was esteemed a part as long as it was in their hands. There marched out of it 3000 *Turks*, 600 of which were Soldiers. The *Germans* found in it 80 Pieces of Cannon, and great stores of small Arms and Ammunition. Before they could enter the Town they passed a Bridge of 320 Foot, and another 220, which are great signs of the strength of its Situation.

The whole Country being mountainous and hilly, generally over-spread with the spurs and branches of the neighbouring *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals, as before was said, was anciently the Inhabitation of the *Taurisci*, (part of the *Norici*) from whom it took the name of *Stiermark*, the *Germans* calling that a *Stier* which the *Latins* call *Tauriscus*, or a little Bullock. By which account *Stiermark* is nothing but the Borders or Marches of the *Taurisci*, the utmost Bounds of their Possessions; as indeed it was. Laid to *Iannonia* in the distribution of the *Roman* Provinces, it was called *Valeria*, in honour of *Valeria*, the Daughter of *Dioclesian*. But once dismembered from the Empire, it fell unto the name of *Stiermark*, with reference to the *Taurisci* spoken of before. First made an Earldom in the person of one *Ottacarus*, advanced unto that Honour by the Emperor *Conrade* the 2d: *Leopold* the 4th, from this *Ottacarus* (two other *Ottacars* intervening) was made Marquis of *Steirmark*; and his Son, *Ottacar* the 4th, was made Duke hereof by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*. But being without hope of Issue, and infected with the incurable Disease of the Leprosie, he sold his Country to *Leopold* the fifth of *Austria*; who bought it with some part of that vast Sum of Money which he extorted for the Ransom of King *Richard* the First. It hath continued ever since in the possession of this potent Family, but so, that it hath many times been assigned over for the Portion of the younger Brethren: as, namely, to *Leopold* the ninth of that name, one of the younger Sons of *Albert* the Short; *Ernest* the youngest Son of that *Leopold*: and lastly, to *Charles* the youngest Son of *Ferdinand* the First, called *Charles* of *Graz*, Father of *Ferdinand* the Second, Successor to *Matthias* in *Austria* it self, and all the rest of the Estates incorporate with it: not like hereafter to be so impolitically dismembered from the chief of the House, as in former times.

3. *CARINTHIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Karnten*, is bounded on the East with *Stiermark* and the River *Lavand*, on the West with the District of *Salzburg* and the River *Salzach*, on the North with *Austria* it self, and on the South with *Carniola*, and the River *Dravus*, which having its Original in the Skirts hereof, passeth through these *Austrian* Provinces into *Hungary*, and falls at last into the *Danow*. The Country, being situate in the worst part of the *Alps*, is generally poor and barren, except only in Minerals; extending all along the *Dravus* for the length of 100 *English* Miles, and 47 in breadth, betwixt that River and the *Mur*, by the which it is bounded.

Places of principal note in it are, 1. *S. Veit*, or *Sancti Viti*, the chief Town of the Country, situate at the meeting of the *Glan* and the *Wunies*, two small Rivers adorn'd with a spacious Market-place and a beautiful Conduit. 2. *Villach*, seated on the *Dravus*, in a pleasant Valley encompassed about with Rocks, the Houses thereof adorned on the out-side with painted Stories, very delightful to behold. 3. *Gurck*, a small Town, but an Episcopal See. 4. *Clagenfurt*, on the Lake call'd *Wera-See*, a well-fenced place, called anciently by the name of *Claudia*. 5. *Wolfsperg*, upon the *Lavand*, so near to *Stiermark*, that it is by some reckon'd for a Town thereof. 6. *Lavamundt*, on the same Border, an Episcopal See, situate at the Influx of that River into the *Dravus*. 7. *Friesach*, a Town of much Antiquity, seated on the *Oleza*. 8. *Spital*, &c. The Story and Succession of the Dukes hereof, before the uniting of it to the House of *Austria* (this Province and *Carniola* making but one Estate between them) we shall see anon.

4. *CARNIO LA*, by the *Dutch* called *Krain*, is environed with *Sclavonia* East, *Friuli* West, *Carinhia* and part of *Stiermark* North, and *Istria* South. It is in length from East to West, (extended along the River *Savus*) 120 *Italian* miles, and about 76 in breadth. The *Alps* here being lower and less cold and rocky than more towards the West, maketh it to be the more rich both in Corn and Wine, and other the productions of Nature, than it would be otherwise.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Newmarkt*, 2. *Efling*, 3. *Marspurg*, 4. *Pogonock*, and 5. *Saxenselt*, all upon the *Savus*, which, arising in this Country, runneth through the very middle of it, and after falleth into the *Danow*. 6. *Laibach*, seated on a small River of the same name; by *Ptolomy* called *Pamportus*, but by *Pliny*, *Vauprtus*, famous in old Mythology for the transport of the Ship called *Argo*, wherein *Jason* and his Comrades brought the Golden Fleece: who coming out of *Portus*, or the *Euxine* Sea, took their course up the *Danow*, so into the *Savus*, then into this Town; hence carried their Ship over land into the *Adriatick*, and from thence sailed into *Greece*, where they first began the undertaking. 7. *Goritz*, call'd anciently *Noreia*, or seated in the place where *Noreia* stood, is situate on the River *Lipnzo*, an *Italian* Water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A Town of so much note, that anciently it was an Earldom and in the division of the Estate of *Majnard* Earl of *Tyrol*, (to whom it formerly belong'd) was given to *Albert* his second Son, with the Stile and Title of Earl of *Goritz*; continuing in his House till the Year 1500, when on the death of *Leonard* the last Earl hereof, it descended upon *Maximilian* the first, as next Heir unto it; whose Successors, not only in the Estates of *Austria*, but the Empire also, do still retain the Title of Earls of *Goritz* in their usual Stile.

The first Inhabitants of both these Provinces of *Krain* and *Karnten*, were the *Carni* of *Pliny* and other Ancients, who made them part of *Vmetia*, the Tenth Region of *Italy*; but afterwards, in the distribution of the *Roman* Provinces, they were cast into *Noricum*, and made a Member of the Diocesis of the Western *Illyricum*, but subject, or subordinate rather, to the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*. From them not only the *Alps* adjoining had the name of *Carnica*, but these two Countries had the names by which now they go. They were united a long time in the Persons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the first mentioned upon good Record was *Henry*, Son to *Berchthold*, a Nobleman of *Bavaria*, in the time of the Emperor *Otho* the Third, by him advanced unto this Honour and Estate; disposed of in succeeding times at the Will of the Emperors, and given from one Family unto another, as their Fancies served them; not fixed in any House till it came to *Henry* the Son of *Engelbert*, President or *Præfect* of *Istria*: in which Family it continued under this *Henry*, and his Brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the first, *Henry* the second, *Herman*, and *Ulric* the second, the last Prince hereof, who by his Marriage with

with *Agnes*, Sister and Heir of *Otho* the second, Duke of *Meran*, added that Estate to his former Patrimony. But being old, and without Children, he sold his whole Estate to *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Austria*; by whom these Countries were surrendred unto *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, on the conclusion of the Peace which was made between them. And although *Rodolphus* gave *Carinthia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol*, (in right of whole Daughter *Elizabeth*, *Albert* the Son of *Rodolph* was possessed of *Austria*;) yet on the death of *Henry* the Son of *Mainard* without Issue-male, it fell (according to the Contract) unto *Albert* the Short; younger Son of *Albert*, and Grandchild of *Rodolphus*; continuing ever since in that Family, tho' not always in the chief House of the Dukes of *Austria*.

The strange and observable Ceremonies with which the Archdukes of *Austria* are acknowledged Dukes of *Carinthia* take here out of *Munster*. In the Meadows adjoining to the Town of *S. Veit* a certain Country-man, to whom that Office by inheritance belongeth, sitteth on a Marble-stone there being, holding in his right hand a Cow with a black Calf, and in his left hand a Mare as lean as a Rake. Then cometh the new Duke attired in a plain rustick Habit, his Courtiers attending him in their richest Apparel: at whose approach the Country-man above mentioned demandeth, *What is he that so majestically cometh hitherward?* And the People answer, that it is the future Duke. He again asketh, *Whether he be a just Judge, and one that will maintain the Liberty of the Country, and Sincerity of the Religion?* The People answer, *He will*. Then he asketh, *By what right he will displace him of his Marble-Seat?* To whom the Steward of the new Duke's House replieth, *He shall give thee 60 Pence in Silver, the Cattle now standing by thee, the Clothes which he hath at this time on, and thy House shall ever be free from Tax and Tribute*. The Fellow upon this taking the Duke by the hand, and bidding him to be a good Prince, giveth him a gentle cuff on the Ear, setteth him on the Marble-stone, and taking away the Cattle departeth. This done the new Duke goeth to *S. Veit's* Church, and having done his Devotions, putteth off his rustick Weeds, and dresseth himself in Cloths befitting a Prince: for such after their Ceremonies he is acknowledged.

The Arms of these Dukes were *Argent*; three Lions Leopards *Sable*.

4. *TYROL* is bounded on the East with *Friuli* and *Marca Trivigiana*, by the interposing of which or some parts thereof, disjoin'd from *Carniola*; on the West with the *Grisons*, and some part of *Switzerland*; and on the North with *Bavaria*; and on the South with *Lombardy*. It is extended over the greatest parts of the *Alps Rhetica*, and some part of the *Julia*; yet intermixt with many rich and fruitful Vallies, those especially which lie on the Banks of the *Inn* and the River of *Adise*. Nor are the Hills so void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good store of Metals digged out of them, especially of *Bras* and *Silver*; which last have yielded to the Archduke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of most note are, 1. *Oenipons*, or *Inspruck*, so called from a Bridge on the *Inn* or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the second Branch of *Austria*, descended from *Ferdinand*, the second Son of the Emperor *Ferdinand*; the House of *Graitz* issuing from *Charles* the third, Son of that Emperor. Most memorable for the hasty Flight of *Charles V.* in the Year 1552. upon the News that Duke *Maurice*, whom he had lately made Elector of *Saxony*, was coming against him with his Forces, which so terrified him, that he fled away by Torch-light with some of his Followers; the residue of his Court, (most of which were persons of great Eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the black Guard and the Scullery. The Town hath been many times the Residence of the Dukes of *Austria*; who have here a very Royal and Magnificent Palace. And to say truth, the Town deserveth to be so honoured; being sweetly seated amongst pleasant Meadows, spacious Corn-fields, and

shady Mountains, the Houses fairly built of Stone, enriched by the Courts of Judicature here settled for all the Country, and provided of a gallant Armory. 2. *Trent*, (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latin*) situate in the Confines of *Germany* and *Italy*; for which cause the Inhabitants speak both Languages: built on the Banks of the River *Athesis* or *Adise*; honoured with an Episcopal See; but made more famous by the Council which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the Third, Anno 1546. against the *Lutherans*: It was for 22 Years together before their meeting dashed by one Pope, and animated by another; advanced by *Charles* the 5th. upon worldly Policies, and for as worldly Policies retarded by the Court of *Rome*: for 18 years after this first Convention of it, at sundry times assembled, suspended, and dissolved: and finally, when fixed here seriously by Pope *Pius* the Fourth, Anno 1562. managed with so much art and cunning by the Papal Party, that nothing was determin'd among the Prelates but what had been formerly resolved on in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by especial Posts; occasioning that most bitter Jest of one of the *Hungarian* Bishops who was present at it, That the *Holy Ghost* was sent unto them in a Clock Bag from *Rome*. The effects of which Council, so artfully carried on by the strength of Wit, I cannot better describe than in the words of the History of it, which are as followeth. 'This Council, desired and procured by godly Men, to reunite the Church which began to be divided, hath so established the Schism and made the Parties so obstinate, that the Discords are irreconcilable; and being managed by Princes for Reformation of Ecclesiastical Discipline, hath caused the greatest deformation that ever was since Christianity did begin; and hoped for by the Bishops themselves to regain the Episcopal Authority, for the most part usurped by the Pope, hath made them lose it altogether, bringing them into greater servitude: on the contrary, feared and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as a potent means to moderate the exorbitant Power thereof, mounted from small beginnings, by divers degrees, to an unlimited excess; it hath so established and confirmed the same over that part which remained subject unto it, that it was never so great nor soundly rooted. So far the words of the History. The next of note is, 3. *Falkenstein*, remarkable for Mines of *Bras*; as, 4. *Hall*, upon the *Inn*, for Salt Wiches; and, 5. *Schwas*, for the richer Mines of *Silver*. 6. *Mallk*, near the head of the River *Athesis*. 7. *Pollen*, upon the Borders of *Italy*, by the People thereof called *Bolgiano*, and *Bolsano*. 8. *Tyrol*, an ancient Castle, the first Seat of the Earls or Governors hereof, and giving name for that reason to the Country adjoining. 9. *Meran*, neighbouring the old Castle of *Tyrol*, which gave the Title of Dukes to a branch of the *Caroline* Race, descended from *Rathboldus*, a base Son of the Emperor *Arnulph*, possessed of many large Estates in these *Alpine* Counties, now appertaining to the Princes of the House of *Austria*. From one of the which Dukes called *Otho* of *Meran*, married to *Beatrix*, Heir of the County of *Burgundy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* (since that time) do derive themselves.

The Earls hereof were at the first no other than Provincial Officers: when made Proprietaries, I am yet to seek. The first of whom we have any certainty was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tyrol* and *Goritz*, who died in the year 1258. leaving his Earldoms to that *Mainard* who by *Rodolphus Habsburgensis* was infeoffed with the Dukedom of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the Second, Son of this last *Mainard* dying without Issue-male, his Daughter *Margaret* by the consent of all her People, settled her Estate therein on the Sons of *Albert* called the Short; which continues ever since in the House of *Austria*, though sometimes made the Portion and Inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the first it was given in Appennage to his second Son *Ferdinand*, surnamed of *Inspruck* for that reason, who by marrying with *Philippina*, a Bürger's Daughter of *Augsburg*, so displeased his Brethren,

Brethren, that, to buy his Peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her, it was finally agreed upon amongst them all, that *Tyrol* should not descend upon his Children of that *Venter*. In pursuance whereof, after his decease, *Tyrol* fell to the House of *Gratz*; his eldest Son *Charles* being made Marquis of *Burgh*, and *Andrew* his youngest Cardinal of *Brixia*. Who were the old Inhabitants of the *Roman Austria* we have seen already. The old Inhabitants of the other part are supposed to be the *Quadi*, in that part which lieth next to *Bohemia*; the *Marcomanni*, in those parts which are next *Moravia*: who intermingled with the *Boii*, and united with them into the name of *Boiarians*, won from the *Romans* the whole Province of the second *Rhatia*, and so much of *Noricum* as lieth betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*, leaving the rest to the *Avares*, who possessed that and the two *Pannonia's*, extorted also from the *Romans* in the fall of that great and mighty Empire, as we shall shew more fully when we come to our description of *Hungary*.

But these *Boiarians* being conquered by *Clovis* the Great, and the *Avares* driven out of *Pannonia* by *Charlemagne*, both Provinces became Members of the *French Empire*, till the subduing of *Pannonia* by the *Hungarians*, to oppose whom, and keep in peace and safety these remoter parts, some Guardians, or Lords-Marchers, were appointed by the Kings and Emperors of *Germany*, with the Title of *Marquesses of Ostricch*; at first officary only, but at last hereditary; made so by the Emperor *Henry* the first, who gave this Province to one *Leopold*, surnam'd the Illustrious, the Son of *Henry* Earl of *Bamberg*, of the House of *Schwaben*, and therewithal the Title of Marquis, *Anno* 980. This Marquissate was by *Frederick Barbarossa* raised to a Dukedom 1158; *Henry* being the first Duke, whose Nephew *Leopold* took *Richard* the first of *England* Prisoner, in his return from *Palestine*; for whose Ransom he had so much Money, that with it he bought *Stiermark*, together with the Counties of *Neoburg* and *Lintz*, and walled *Vienna*. His Son *Fredericus*, surnamed the Warlike, was made King of *Austria* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second, *Anno* 1225. Eleven Years he continu'd in his Dignity; at the end of which he was spoiled of his Royal Ornaments by the same hand, for denying his appearance at the Emperor's Summons; unto whom for some Outrages he had been complained of. Finally, he died in the year 1246, discomfited and slain in Battel by the King of *Hungary*. Leaving no Issue of his Body, this Estate of right should have descended on *Frederick*, Son of *Hermannus*, Marquis of *Baden*, and of *Gertrude* his Wife, the Niece of this *Frederick* the Warlike by his Brother *Henry*, who was afterwards beheaded at *Naples* by *Charles* of *Valois*, *Anno* 1268. But *Ottacar*, Son of *Primislans* King of *Bohemia*, pretending to it in the right of *Margaret* his Wife, one of the Sisters of the said *Frederick* the Warlike, by a strong hand possessed himself of the Dukedom of *Austria*, which he increased by the addition of *Carinthia* and *Trevigiana*; all which he held, together with the Kingdom of *Bohemia* till the year 1278, in which he was vanquish'd and slain by *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, not long before advanced to the *German Empire*. *Rodolphus* thus possessed of these great Estates, conferred them on *Albertus* his eldest Son, who had then married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol*, by *Elizabeth* (or *Agnes*) his Wife, the Daughter of *Gertrude*, and Sister and sole Heir at last of *Frederick*, so cruelly murdered at *Naples*, as before was said; By means of which Marriage and Investiture *Albert* was quickly possessed of the Dukedoms of *Austria*, *Stiermark*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, together with *Marca Trevigiana*; to which the Earldom of *Tyrol*, and many other fair Estates in *Schwaben* and *Alsatia* were after added. By whom it was first raised to the Title of Archduke is not yet agreed. Some attribute it to *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, at the Investiture of his Son *Albert* into these Estates, *Anno* 1298. Others to *Charles* the fourth, advancing to that Honour *Rodolph* the Ingenuous, *Anno* 1360. Some make it to be first given to *Albert*, Duke

hereof, in the Year 1430: and others post it lower to the Marriage of *Philip*, Son of *Maximilian* of *Austria* and of the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*, with *Joan* Princess of *Spain*. But by whomsoever given at first, it is now the constant and hereditary Title of all this Family: the successive Princes whereof from the first Investiture follow in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Marquisses, Dukes, Kings, and Arch-dukes
of AUSTRIA.

- | | |
|------|--|
| 926 | 1. <i>Leopold</i> of <i>Bamberg</i> , the first Marquis. |
| 988 | 2. <i>Henry</i> , Son of <i>Leopold</i> . |
| 1014 | 3. <i>Albert</i> , Son of <i>Henry</i> , surnamed the Victorious. |
| 1056 | 4. <i>Ernestus</i> , Son of <i>Albert</i> . |
| 1075 | 5. <i>Leopold</i> II. Son of <i>Ernest</i> , a Companion of <i>Godfrey</i> of <i>Bouillon</i> . |
| 1066 | 6. <i>Leopold</i> III. Son of the second, Founder of the Abbey of <i>Neuburg</i> . |
| 1116 | 7. <i>Leopold</i> IV. Son of the third, by his half-Brother <i>Conrade</i> the third, then Emperor of the <i>Germans</i> , made Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> . |
| 1141 | 8. <i>Henry</i> II. Brother of <i>Leopold</i> , Marquis of <i>Austria</i> and Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> , made the first Duke of <i>Austria</i> by <i>Frederick Barbarossa</i> , <i>Anno</i> 1158. the whole Country betwixt the <i>Inn</i> and the <i>Ens</i> being added by the said Emperor unto his Estate, on his relinquishing of <i>Bavaria</i> to the Duke of <i>Saxony</i> . |
| 1177 | 9. <i>Ludowick</i> , Son of <i>Henry</i> , built <i>Ens</i> and <i>Nemstar</i> ; of great Note in the Wars of the <i>Holy-Land</i> . |
| 1193 | 10. <i>Leopold</i> V. Son of <i>Ludowick</i> , the irreconcilable Enemy of our <i>Richard</i> the First, taken Prisoner by him in his passage homewards, and put unto a grievous ransom, the Dukedom of <i>Stiermark</i> being purchased with a part thereof. |
| 1230 | 11. <i>Frederick</i> the Warlike, Son of <i>Leopold</i> the 5th, made King of <i>Austria</i> by the Emperor <i>Frederick</i> the second; the last of the Male-issue of the House of <i>Bamberg</i> . |
| 1246 | 12. <i>Ottacar</i> , Son of <i>Wenceslaus</i> , King of <i>Bohemia</i> , pretending the right of <i>Margaret</i> his Wife, Sister of <i>Frederick</i> , possessed himself of this Estate, adding thereto the Countries of <i>Carinthia</i> and <i>Carniola</i> , which he bought of <i>Ulrick</i> the last Prince thereof; but was dispossessed of all by <i>Rodolph</i> of <i>Habsburg</i> in 1278. |
| 1283 | 13. <i>Albert</i> II. Son of <i>Rodolph</i> of <i>Habsburg</i> , by his Father made Duke of <i>Austria</i> ; married <i>Elizabeth</i> , the lineal and direct Heir of <i>Gertrude</i> , one of the Nieces, and (on the death of that <i>Frederick</i> who was slain at <i>Naples</i>) the next Heir of <i>Frederick</i> , King and Duke of <i>Austria</i> ; after his Father's death chosen Emperor also. |
| 1308 | 14. <i>Rodolph</i> the Ingenuous, his other Brother sharing with him in the Estate. |
| 1315 | 15. <i>Albert</i> , surnam'd the Short, the youngest and surviving Brother of <i>Rodolph</i> , succeeded in the whole Estate; a great advancer of this House. |
| 1358 | 16. <i>Albert</i> IV. Son of <i>Albert</i> the Short. |
| 1365 | 17. <i>Albert</i> V. Son of <i>Albert</i> the fourth. |
| 1404 | 18. <i>Albert</i> VI. Son of <i>Albert</i> the fifth, King of <i>Hungary</i> and <i>Bohemia</i> , in right of <i>Elizabeth</i> his Wife, Daughter and Heir of <i>Sigismund</i> the King thereof. |
| 1439 | 19. <i>Ladislaws</i> , Son of <i>Albert</i> and <i>Elizabeth</i> , King of <i>Hungaria</i> and <i>Bohemia</i> , and Duke of <i>Austria</i> . |
| 1457 | 20. <i>Frederick</i> II. on the death of <i>Ladislaws</i> without Issue, succeeded into the Dukedom of <i>Austria</i> , as the direct Heir of <i>Leopold</i> the 6. |

- one of the younger Sons of *Albert the Short*; chosen also Emperor.
- 1493 21. *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick*, enriched his House with the Marriage of the Heir of *Burgundy*.
- 1519 22. *Ferdinand*, Granchild to *Maximilian* by his Son *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Austria*, succeeded his Grandfather in this Dukedom, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Emperor of *Germany*.
- 1565 23. *Maximilian II.* Son of *Ferdinand*.
- 1577 24. *Rodolphus III.* Son of *Maximilian* the 2.
- 1612 25. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*.
- 1619 26. *Ferdinand II.* surnamed of *Gratz*, Son of *Charles* Duke of *Austria*, of the House of *Gratz*, the youngest Son of *Ferdinand* the 1. (the numerous Off-spring of *Maximilian* the second being all dead without Issue) succeeded in the Estates of *Austria*, chosen Emperor also, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, &c.
- 1637 27. *Ferdinand III.* Son of *Ferdinand* the second, now living Anno 1648, Archduke of *Austria*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Emperor of the *Germans*.
- 1657 28. *Leopold*, second Son of *Ferdinand III.* his Elder Brother dying in the year 1653.

The Arms of these Earls when distinct from the House of *Austria* were *Argent*, an Eagle *Sable* membered *Or*.

Thus have we seen by what means and under what Princes all these Provinces, belonging unto several Lords became united and incorporated into one Estate. Besides which, there was added to it by *Rodolph* of *Habsburg* all the upper *Elfas*, the Castle and Territory of *Habsburg* it self, with many fair Estates amongst the *Switzers*; by *Albert* the short, the Country of *Singom*; and by his sons, the Advocateship of *Friburg*, or the County of *Brifgom*. So that these Princes are undoubtedly the greatest for Power and Patrimony of any in *Germany*, and would be of a great Revenue, if the ill neighbourhood of the *Turks* did not put them to continual Charges, and make the borders of the Country to be thinly planted, and not very thoroughly manured. However it is thought that they may yield yearly two millions of Crowns and upwards to the Arch-Duke's Coffers.

The Arms of these Princes are *Gules*, a Fels *Argent*: assumed by Marquis *Leopold* at the Siege of *Acon* or *Prodomais* in the *Holy Land*, because his whole Armour being covered with blood, his belt only remained white. The Arms thereof in former times having been six Larks *Or*, in a Field *Azure*; supposed to have been taken by the first Marquisses, because they possessed thole six Provinces, for defence of which the Tenth Legion, called *Alauda*, had been fixed at *Vionna*.

And now we are to take our leave of the *Roman* Empire, which we shall meet withal no more till we come to *Hungary*; the Countries on the north-side of *Danubius* and the East-side of the *Rhene* being almost as soon abandoned as conquered by them. So that in our survey of these Northern Countries we are not like to find such matter of Antiquity as we have before: but must content our selves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a lesser continuance. In which we shall begin with those Countries which lie on the other side of the *Rhene* bordering on the Estates of *Cleveland* and the Bishops-Electors; and so proceed on Eastward till we come to the farthest parts of *Germany*, and the Confines of *Hungary*; afterwards turning to the North, till we meet with *Denmark*; which is next of all to be considered.

East with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Hassia* and *Westphalen*, and on the South with the lower *Salatin*. It containeth a Combination of many small Estates, which being joined in a common League for defence of each other in the preservation of their Laws, Liberties and Religion; are called the *Confederation of the Veterans*. The principal of the States which are thus confederated are the Earls of 1. *Nassau*, 2. *Hanau*, and 3. *Solms*, 4. the Lord of *Lichteberg*, and the Imperial Cities of 5. *Friburg*, and 6. *Wetzelaer*.

The County of *NASSAU* (for fruitfulness of Soil and delightfulness of situation not inferiour to most parts of *France*) lieth at the foot of the Mountains which divide *Hassia* from *Engern* and *Westphalen*, anciently called *Melibocus*; a branch of the long ridge of Mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Nassau*, situate on the South side of the River *Lon*, not far from the fall of it into the *Rhene*; the first Seat and honorary Title of this famous Family, and still in the possession of the Princes of *Orange*, the first branch hereof. 2. *Dillenburg*, the usual Seat of the Earls of *Nassau* before their settling in the *Low Countries*; whence they are named the Earls of *Nassau* of the House of *Dillenburg*, to difference them from others of the same Family. 2. *Catzenelbogen*, ditto *Catenfis*, which gives the Title of an Earl to the owners of it, in *Latine* *Catti Meliboti*, which shews the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, anciently possessed of these parts of *Germany*, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The possession of this Town is much controverted between the Earls of *Nassau* and the Lantgraves of *Hassia*. Concerning which we are to know, that *Henry* the second son of *Lewis* Lantgrave of *Hassia* surnamed the mild, married with *Anne*, Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the last Lord hereof, and by her had a Son called *William*, who died without Issue, and a Daughter named *Elizabeth*, married to *John* the third of *Nassau*, to whom she brought *Henry* and *William* Earls of *Nassau*. *Elizabeth* on the death of her Brother *William* laid claim to the Estate, as the next Heir to him; followed in the pursuit thereof by *William* Count of *Nassau* her surviving Son. Against which *William* the 2. of *Hassia* did alledg a grant or donation of it from his Cousin *William*, the Brother of *Elizabeth*, as before is said, and having Possession of the Town, and the members of it, was made thereby the better able to defend his Title. But at the last it was surrendered by Count *William* of *Nassau* (Father of *William* Prince of *Orange*) unto *Philip* the Lantgrave, in the time of *Charles* the fifth, for the sum of 600000 Crowns: the House of *Nassau* notwithstanding retaining it amongst their Titles. 3. *Herborn*, a small University, or *Schola illustris*, founded of late by the Earls of *Nassau*; in which *Piscator* was Divinity-Reader, and *Alstedius* (both famous in their times) Professor for the Arts and Sciences. 4. *Idstein*, lying South to *Catzenelbogen*; and 5. *Wisdad*, directly South of *Idstein*, betwixt that and the *Maine*: these being the Title and possession of the second branch of this Family. 6. *Weilburg*, on the *Lon*, not far from *Wetzelaer*; which gives Title to the Third branch of this House, called the Earls of *Nassau* in *Sarbruck* and *Weilbrung*.

As for the Princes of the House of *Nassau*, they are very ancient; *Orho* of *Nassau* being made Earl of *Gielderland* in the year 1079. Another *Orho* of this House, but proceeding from a different Branch of it, died An. 1190. the Founder of the present Family of the Princes of *Orange*, and of the House *Wisdad* and *Idstein*; out of which descended *Adolphus* Earl of *Nassau*, chosen Emperor in the year 1292. by the Marriage of *Engelbert*, the seventh Earl of this House of *Dillenburg*, with *Mary* Daughter of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, they came first to be possessed of Estates in the *Netherlands*: and by the Marriage of *Henry* great Grand-child of this *Engelbert*, with *Claude* of *Chalons*, they got the Principality of *Orange* in *France*. A Family as much honoured for the personal Merits of the Princes of it as any other

VETERANA APOSTOLICA, is bounded on the West with the Bishoprick of *Colon*, on the

in *Europe*, of some of which although we have already given a Catalogue, (in the description and story of *Providence*) as Princes of *Orange*, yet take here the whole Succession of them as

The Counts of *NASSAU*.

1. *Otho*, the Son of *Henry*, and Nephew of *Waleran*, the first Earl of *Nassau* of this Line.
- 1190 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Otho*, who added *Dillenburg*, *Wisbad*, and *Idstein*, unto his Estate; Grandfather, by *Waldradus* his second Son, to *Adolphus* the Emperor.
3. *Otho* II. Son of *Henry*.
4. *Henry* II. Son of *Otho* the second.
5. *Otho* III. Son of *Henry* the second.
6. *John*, Son of *Otho* the third.
- 1362 7. *Engelbert*, the Son of *John* by *Mary* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, added that Town, with many other fair Estates in the *Netherlands*, to his former Patrimony.
8. *John* II. Son of *Engelbert*, Earl of *Nassau*, and Lord of *Breda*, &c.
- 1475 9. *John* III. Son of *John* the second.
- 1516 10. *Henry* III. Son of *John* the third, Knight of the Golden Fleece, married *Claude* of *Chalons*, Sister of *Philibert* Prince of *Orange*.
- 1536 11. *Rene*, Son of *Henry* the third, and of *Claude* of *Chalons*, Successor to his Uncle *Philibert* in the Principality of *Orange*, anno 1530. and to his Father in the Earldom of *Nassau*, anno 1536.
- 1544 12. *William*, the Son of *John* the third, by *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter of *Henry* Lantgrave of *Hassia*, and of *Anne* Daughter and Heir of *Philip* Earl of *Catzenelbogen*, reform'd the Religion in this Country according to the *Lutheran* Doctrines.
- 1559 13. *William* II. Son of *William* the first, succeeded Prince of *Orange* by the Will of *Rene* his Cousin-german, anno 1544 and Earl of *Nassau* by the death of his Father, anno 1559. What else concerns this Prince we have had before. I only add, that *William* the first, besides this *William*, had three other Sons: that is to say, Count *John*, the Father of *William* of *Nassau*, Governor of *West-Friesland*; Count *Ludowick*, of great Renown in the first Wars of the *Netherlands*, in the course whereof he lost his Life, anno 1574; and Count *Adolphus*, slain in the same Wars also, anno 1568.
- 1584 14. *Philip*, eldest Son of *William* the second, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Buren*, succeeded Earl of *Buren* on the death of his Mother, anno 1551. Prince of *Orange* and Count of *Nassau* by the death of his Father.
- 1618 15. *Maurice*, Son of *William* the second, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Maurice* Duke Elector of *Saxony*, Prince of *Orange* and Count of *Nassau*: at the age of Ten Years made General of all the Forces of the United *Netherlands*, which place he managed for the space of 37 years both with great Courage and Success.
- 1625 16. *Henry* IV. Brother of *Maurice* (but by another *Venter*, the Daughter of *Gasper* Coligny, Admiral of *France*) Count of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and General of the Forces of the *States* United.
- 1648 17. *William* III. Son of *Henry* the 4th. Successor to his Father in all his Honours and Commands. A Prince of great hopes and expectations. He died November 6. 1650.

1650 18. *William-Henry*, Son of *William* the third and *Mary* Daughter of *Charles* the first, King of *Great Britain*, born the 14th day of *November*, 1650. nine days after the Death of his Father. In his Infancy by a Decree of the *States* of *Holland*, he was deprived of all those Honours and Privileges which belonged to his Family, which yet were restored to him in the Year 1672: And in the Year 1677, the 14th of *November*, he married *Mary* the eldest Daughter of *James* the 2d, King of *Great Britain*, by whom he has had no Children. The 12th of *February*, 1689, he with the Lady *Mary* his Consort, was recognized King and Queen of *England*, &c. by the three Estates assembled in a Convention, *James* the 2d, late King of *England*, having deserted the Throne and Nation the 11th of *December* before, and withdrawn himself into *France*.

The Arms of the Earls of *Nassau* are quarterly, 1. *Azure*, a Lion Or, Armed *Gules*; 2. Or, a Lion-Leopard *Gules*, Armed and Crowned *Azure*; 3. *Gules*, a Fess *Argent*; and 4. *Gules* two Leopards Or, Armed and Membred of the first.

Besides this *Dutch* Branch of the Family of *Nassau*, distinguish'd from the rest by the Title of *Orange*, there be several other Branches of great Honour and Estate. *William* the first, in the former Catalogue, had a Son called *John*, to whom was assigned the Castle of *Dillingberg*, and he became the Father of 25 Children; four of which Founded distinct Families.

SIEGEN NASSAU.

1. *John*, surnamed *Midius*, Son of the aforesaid *John*, and Founder of the Line of *Siegen*, had 23 Children.
2. By his first Wife he had two Sons, *John* and *William*; this latter died in the Year 1642 without any Issue, *John* the elder turned Roman Catholick, and died in 1638.
3. *John Francis Desideratus* succeeded his Father, and served the King of *Spain*, who in the Year 1680 made him Governor of *Gelderland*, but he has no Children but Daughters.
4. *John* the first of this House, had by his second Wife *John Mauritius*, who died without Issue in the year 1679. 2. *George Frederick*, Captain of the Guards to the Prince of *Orange*, who also died Childless in 1674. 3. *Henry*, Governor of *Huast* in *Flanders*, his surviving Son is *William Maurice*, a Colonel in the *Holland* Army: and he has one Son whose name was not known to my Author *Shovarnik*.

The Line of *NASSAU Dillenburg*.

1. *George*, one of the Sons of the aforesaid *John*, was also the Founder of this House. By his first Wife he had *Lewis Henry*.
2. *Lewis Henry* was the Father of
3. *George Lewis*, and *Adolph*: the former of these had
4. *Henry*, born in 1641; *George Lewis*, born in 1667; *Albert*, born in 1668; *William*, in 1670; *Adolph*, in 1673.
5. *Adolph*, the Brother of *George*, lives at *Schaumberg*, and has only three Daughters.

The Line of *Dixze NASSAU*.

1. The Founder of this Line was *Ernest Cassimir*, one of the Sons of the said *John*, who succeeded his Brother *William Lewis* in the Government of *Friesland* and *Groenland*: He was slain at *Roermond* the 5th of *June*, 1632.
2. *Henry Cassimir*, his eldest Son, was Governor or Stateholder of *Friesland* and *Groenland*, and died at Fort *Nassau* in *Flanders* in 1640 without Issue.
3. *William Frederick*, his Brother, succeeded him, and died the 13th of *October*, 1664.

4. *Henry*

4. *Henry Cassimir*, Son of the last mentioned *William*, born in the year 1657, succeeded his Father in his Dignities, and Married in the year 1684, *Herica Amalia* Daughter to *John George II.* Prince of *Anhalt*.

The Line of *Hudmar Nassau*.

1. *John Lewis*, a Son of the same Father with the rest, was the Founder of this Line, he turned *Roman Catholick*, and was in great Esteem with *Ferdinand* the II. and III. Emperors of *Germany*, and he died the 6th of *March*, 1653.
2. *Maurice Henry*, his Son, born in 1626, continued the Line, and Died the 24th of *January*, 1679.
3. *Francis Alexander*, his Son, born the 27th of *January*, 1679, succeeds him.

Bordered on *Franconia* or *Frankenland* lieth the County of *HANAW*, so called from the chief Town of it: in which the places of most note are, 1. *Hanaw* it self, in *Latine* called *Hanovia*, honoured with a *Schola illustris* also, and much enriched by the Trade of Printing, with which they use to furnish annually the Marts of *Francford*, distant from hence about ten *Dutch* miles. 2. *Phaffenhofen*, of no note formerly but like to be remembered in the stories of succeeding times for the great Defeat there given to the Duke of *Lorrain*, *July* 31. 1633, who lost his whole Forces, all his Ordnance, Ammunition and Baggage, and, which was worst of all, his Country; taken in part from by him by the conquering *Swedes*, who followed him close unto his home; but wholly by the *French* King upon that advantage. 3. *Lichteberg*, which gives Title to a second Branch of the House of *Hanaw*, called the Lord of *Lichteberg*. A Family of good esteem, since the time that *Otho* of *Hanaw* was ennobled with the Title of Earl thereof which was about the year 1392. Before that, Princes of the Empire; and after that advanced unto great Fortunes, by the addition of the Barony of *Mintzeberg* in the person of *Philip* the first Earl; of the County of *Rhoenick*, in the person of another *Philip*, the third of that name, great Grandchild of the former *Philip*; and finally, of the Lordships and Estates of *Lichteberg*, accruing to this House by the Marriage of a third *Philip*, the youngest Son of *Reinard* the third Earl hereof, with *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of *Ludovick* Lord of *Lichteberg*; the Title and possession of the second Branch of the House of *Hanaw*, called Lords of *Lichteberg* and *Hofchenstein*, and Earls of *Bischof*: this last being an Estate in *Lorrain* accruing to them by the Marriage of a fourth *Philip*, (the fifth in name and order of the House of *Lichteberg*) with *Margaret* the sole Daughter and Heir of *Ludovick* the last Earl thereof.

Betwixt the Counties of *Nassau* and *Hanaw* on both sides of the River *Lon*, lies the Earldom of *SOLMS*; the first Earl whereof (of whom there is any good Constancy) was *Henry* honoured with this Title, anno 1220. But being I find them in the Catalogue of the Counts Imperial made before that time, I must conclude them to be ancients than the date aforesaid; though that be sufficient to ennoble a far greater Family. By the Marriage of *Conrade* the 9th from *Henry* first, with *Elizabeth*, one of the Daughters of *William* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and after with the Widow of the Earl of *Egmond*, they came to be of such authority amongst the *Netherlands*, as to be privileged with a place and Suffrage in the Council of the States General: there settled at the present in their greatest honour, especially since the Marriage of *Henry* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, with a Daughter of Earl *Conrade* by his second Wife, the Mother of *William* the III. of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and Husband to the Princess *Mary*, the eldest Daughter of Great Britain. But besides their Estate there, they are possessed in this Tract of 1. *Braunsfels*, which gives Title to the first Branch of the House of *Solms*; 2. *Cro-*

neberg, the possession of the second Branch of this Family; and 3. *Solms* on the North-side of the *Lon*, the Root of both.

Of the Imperial Cities in this Confederation, the first is *Friburg* called for distinction sake *Friburg in Heteran*, to difference it from another Town of that name in *Belgior*; situate in the middle of delicious and most fruitful fields, and memorable for the stout resistance which it made to *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, at that time Emperor; who, when he could not get it by Force or Famine, obtained it by Fraud, and put to death no less than 40 of the chief Nobility, whom he found in the Castle. So hated he was for that bloody fact, that he was shortly after deprived of the Empire, and slain in fight by *Albert* of *Austria* his Competitor. The second of the two is *Wetzelaer*, seated on the *Lon*, where it meets with the *Dille*, which rising near *Dillenberg*, a Town of the Earl of *Nassau*'s doth here lose its name into the greater. A Town Imperial, confederate with *Friburg* and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common Liberties, and the Religion publicly professed amongst them, being that of the Reformed Churches of *Calvin's* Platform.

10. FR A N C O N I A.

FR A N C O N I A, or *FRANKENLAND*, is bounded on the East with the Upper *Palatinate*, and part of *Voitland*, on the West with the Confederates of *Weteran* and part of the *Rhene*, on the North side with *Hassia* and *Thuringia*, on the South with the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene* and some part of *Schwaben*: So called from the *French*, *Franci*, or *Francones*, in whose possession it was when they were first known unto the *Romans*; the Residence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province appropriating the name unto it. Called also *Franconia Orientalis*, to difference it from the Realm of *France* which lay more towards the West. At that time of a larger extent than it is at the present, comprehending so much of the Lower *Palatinate* as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*; since subdued from it and made a Province of it self in these latter Ages.

The Country, on the out-parts overgrown wholly in a manner with Woods and Forests, and environed almost with Mountains; parts of the old *Hercynian* Woods, is within pleasant, plain and fruitful, sufficiently plentiful both of Corn and Wines, but abundantly well stored with Rape and Licoras, and yielding good pasture for Cattle. So that we compare it to a fine piece of Cloth, wrought about with a coarse Lint; or an excellent fine piece of Lawn, with a Canvas Selvage.

Chief Rivers of it are, 1. The *Main* or *Alanus*, which running through the midst of it, is received into the *Rhene* below *Francfort*. 2. The *Sala*, whence the adjoining *French* had the name of *Salii*, and *Conrade*, Emperor of the *Germans*, the surname of *Salicus*. 3. *Raddientia*. 4. *Sinna*. 5. *Tubero*. 6. *Ellus*, &c.

The people of it are ingenious, patient of labour, strong of body, and very industrious, not suffering any to be idle that can earn his living, of what sort soever. The offspring of the ancient *French*, who, having overmastered *Gaul* and the parts adjoining, left here the seminary of their strength, and a stock of their ancient Princes; *Marcomir*, Brother of *Pharamond* the first King of the *French*, governing in these parts as Duke, and leaving the Estate and Title unto his Posterity. The Catalogue of which Princes take in order thus.

The Princes of the *FRANKS*, and Dukes of *FRANCONIA*, of the old *French* Race.

A. Ch.

326

1. *Genebalinus*; the Son of *Dagobert*, descended from the old Regal stock of the *Sicambri*, united with other *Dutch* Nations about 60 or 70 years before, in the name of *Franks*, having subdued those parts which lay towards the

River *Mœnus*, became the first Prince of the Eastern Franks, or Lord of *Francia Orientalis*.

- 356 2. *Dagobert*, the Son of *Genebaldus*, who added the District of *Triers* unto his Estates.
- 377 3. *Glodovæus*, or *Ludovicus*, the Son of *Dagobert*.
- 398 4. *Marcomir*, the Son of *Glodovæus*, who extended his Dominion Eastwards towards *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*.
- 402 5. *Pharamond*, or *Weramond*, the Son of *Marcomir*, the first of this Line which took upon himself the Title of King of the French: on the assuming whereof (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Franconia*, or *East-France*, with the Title of Duke, to his Brother *Marcomir*.
- 419 6. *Marcomir* the Brother of *Pharamond*.
- 423 7. *Prunmesser*, by some called *Priamus* the Son of *Marcomir*.
- 435 8. *Genebaldus* II. the Son of *Prunmesser*.
- 455 9. *Sunno*, the Son of *Genebald* the second.
- 478 10. *Clodomirus*, or *Luitemarus*, the Son of *Sunno*.
- 515 11. *Hygobaldus*, the Son of *Clodomir*, who became a Christian and added *Wormes* and *Mentz* unto his Estates.
- 541 12. *Helenus*, by some called *Hermericus* a Christian also, who passing over the *Rhene*, subdued that Tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorraine*, which the Dutch called *West-reich*.
- 571 13. *Gotofridus*, the Son of *Helenus*, a Christian also, but not able to persuade his people to the same belief.
- 595 14. *Genebaldus* III. the Son of *Gotofride*.
- 615 15. *Clodomir* II. the Son of *Genebald* the third.
- 638 16. *Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodomir* the second.
- 668 17. *Clodovæus*, or *Clovis* II. the Cousin-german of *Heribert*.
- 680 18. *Gosbertus* the Son of *Clovis* the second.
- 706 19. *Gosbertus* II. Son of *Gosbert* the first.
- 720 20. *Hetavus*, the Son of *Gosbert* the second, the last Duke of *Franconia* of this Line. He dying without Issue-male, Anno 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of *France*, Father of *Charles* the Great according to a former Contract made between those Princes. And *Charles* no sooner had it in his possession, but he bestowed the greatest part of it on *Burchard*, the first Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, Anno 752. made Bishop of that City by *Boniface*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, (the first Apostle of this People) but a year before. The Bishops of *Wurtzburg* by this Grant were possessed hereof as long as any of the House of *Charles* the Great did possess the Empire. But his posterity failing in the person of *Conrade*, Anno 910. *Orto* the first (who next but one succeeded *Conrade*) invested *Conrade*, Husband to *Luitgardis* his daughter, with this Country, giving him withal the Title of Duke of *Franconia*. Four Princes of this House possessed it; that is to say, this *Conrade*, surnamed *Salicus*; and after him three *Henries*, Father, Son, and Nephew, successively enjoying the Imperial dignity, by the names of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fifth. This *Henry*, the last Prince of the male Line of *Conrade*, dying without Issue, *Franconia* fell to *Frederick Barbarossa*, Duke of *Schwaben*, as next Heir to *Henry* by the Lady *Agnes* his Sister, married to *Frederick* the Antient, Duke of *Schwaben*, the Grand-father of *Barbarossa*. But that House being also extinct in the person of *Conradine*, Anno 1268. and no one Heir pretending to the Rights thereof, the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former Grant; content to let some great ones have a part of the spoil, that he and his Successors might enjoy the rest. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the

Bishops of *Wurtsburg*, *Bamberg*, *Mentz*, the Elector Palatine of the *Rhene*, (for antiently so much of the Palatinate and the Bishoprick of *Mentz* as lay on the Dutch side of the *Rhene* were but parts of *Frankenland*) the Marquits of *Onaldsbach*, the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, *Henneburg*, and *Hohenloe*, and as many of the Free or Imperial Cities as are seated in it. Thus every one did gather sticks when the great Oak fell: the Title of the Duke of *Franconia* remaining notwithstanding to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*.

1. *WURTZBURG*, the Metropolis of *Franconia*, the Seat and Residence of the Bishop, who is Titular Duke hereof, is situate on the *Maine* or *Mannus*, in a pleasant Plain environed with Meadows, Gardens, and fruitful Mountains; and very well fenced with Walls, Trenches, Bulwarks, and other Arts of modern Fortification; well peopled, and for the most part handsomely and nearly built. Passing over the Bridge built of Freestone on many large and spacious Arches, you come unto a fair and pompous (though ancient) Castle, the ordinary dwelling of the Bishop; and yet so strong, that the many vain attempts of the Boors and Citizens, apt to pick quarrels with their Prince, made it thought impregnable, to which the situation of it on the top of an Hill added some advantage: but it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of Sweden, Anno 1631. who after a short, but stout resistance took it by assault. Other Towns of most note which belong to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg* are, 2. *Forcheim*, where it is said that *Pontus Pilate* was born. 3. *Gemund*, at the meeting of the *Maine* and the *Saltza*, or *Sala*. 4. *Bretta* upon the *Saltza* or *Sala*; not far from *Gemund*; remarkable enough, if for nothing else, for being the Birth-place of *Melancthon* that renowned Scholar, the Phoenix of Germany, as some call him, and that not unfitly. 5. *Chronach*. 6. *Staffelstein*. 7. *Hockstadt*; of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Bishop or chief Lord of all. He is called in the refined Latine of these times *Herbipolitanus*; but commonly *Wurtzburgensis*; differing in sound, but not in sense: for *Wurtzburg* is no other than a Town of *Wortz*, situate among plants and Gardens, as before is said; and *Herbipolis*, made up out of several languages, doth signifie no more than a City of Herbs. By whom the Episcopal See was here first erected, and how the Bishops hereof came to be entituled unto their Estates hath been shewn already. The manner how the new Bishop is admitted, and the old interred, may be worth our knowledge. On the decease of the former Bishop, the Lord Elect, attended with a great train of horse, is to make his entrance. As soon as he comes within the Gates, he alights off his horse, and putteth off his Robes, and being attired in a poor and despicable Habit, begirt about with a Rope, bare-headed also and bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Castel Werthaim*, and *Rheineck*, to *S. Saviour's* Church, being his Cathedral. The Dean and Canons there meeting him, ask him what he would have: to which he modestly replied, that, though unworthily, he is come to discharge the Office unto which he is called. Then the Dean thus, *I admit thee in the name of this Chapter, committing to thy care this Church of S. Saviour's, and the Dukedom thereunto belonging, in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost*. Which done he putteth on his Episcopal Habit, sayeth Mass, and from thence passeth to the Castle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The living Bishop thus invested, proceed we next to the Burial of the dead: whose Body imbowelled, is kept in the Chappel of his Castle, his Heart preserved in a vessel of Glass. The next day he is carried to the Monastery of *Saint James*, holding a Crosier-staff in his right hand, and a Sword in his left; buried with them the next day after in the Church of *S. Saviour*. As for the Revenue of the Bishop, they must needs be great; the Bishop hereof in the time of *Charles* the fifth, compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marquits

Marquils of *Brandenburg*, at the price of 220000 Crowns in ready Money, and entering into a Bond to pay all his Debts, which amounted to 350000 Crowns more. By which we may partly guess at the richness of his Exchequer, and partly at the greatness of his *Intredo*.

2. The second great Lord of *Franconia* is the Bishop of *Bamberg*, a City seated on the *Maine*, not far from *Wurtzburg*, the little River *Rednitz* falling there into it: supposed by *Mercator* to be the *Brannanrium* of *Ptolomy*, and to have took this new name from the Hill *Baba* (so called from *Baba* Daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, and Wife of *Albert* once Earl hereof (upon which it is situate, the right name being *Rabenberg*) remember that *Berg* in *Dutch* signifieth a Hill) and contractedly *Bamberg*. A City delectably seated amongst Mountains and pleasant Gardens, and in a Soil exceeding fruitful of all necessaries, and yielding Lycoras in great plenty: the Birth-place of *Joachimus Camerarius*, one of the great Lights of *Germany*; and a See Episcopal, the Bishop of which is exempt from the power of the Metropolitan, subject immediately to the Pope, and Lord of many fair Towns and Territories in this Country: But much diminished since the time of *Charles* the fifth: the Bishoprick thereof then being given to Marquils *Albert*, above mentioned, for a Cessation from Arms, *an.* 1530. no less than 60 of his Lordships, (most of which fall unto the share of the Marquils of *Onaldsbach*) besides the Tutelage or Guardianship of his Wards and Clients. Of those which are remaining in the hands of the Bishops the principal are, 1. *Bravingliac*, 2. *Schleislat*.

3. The third great Lord to be considered is the Marquils of *ONALDSBACH*, or *Onsbach*, who is Master of no small part of this Country; but his Estate (as those of the other *German* Princes) confused and intermixed with his Neighbours, His chief Towns, 1. *Onaldsbach*, or *Onsbach*; the usual Residence of these Marquisses, and the Birth-place of most of their Children. *Hailbrun*, on the edge of *Wirttemberg*, walled in about the year 1085. and honoured with some publick Schools there founded by Marquils *George-Frederick*, *Anno* 1482. 3. *Pleinsct*, not far from *Nurenberg*. Such places as they held in *Voirlant*, we shall meet with there.

These Marquisses are of the puissant Family of *Brandenburg*, by whom this fair Estate was wrestled from the female Heirs of *Wolframin*, the last Lord hereof. The first who did enjoy this Estate and Title was Marquils *George-Frederick*, the Son of *Albert* Marquils and Elector of *Brandenburg*, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, the Father of *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, and of *George* the first Marquils of *Jagerndorff*, and the Grandfather of that Marquils *Albert* who in the days of *Charles* the fifth so harrassed this Country. But his Male-Issue by *Casimir* his eldest Son failing in that *Albert* *anno* 1557, it returned to the Electoral House; and by *Sigismund*, a late Elector was given to *Joachim Ernestus*, one of his younger Brethren, who by the Princes of the Union for defence of the *Palatine* was made chief Commander of their Forces, *anno* 1620. A charge in which it was supposed that he carried himself neither so faithfully nor so valiantly as he should have done, being much condemned for suffering *Spinola* with his Army to pass by unsought with, when he had all advantages that could be wished for to impede his march: the greatest part of the *Palatinate* being lost immediately upon that Neglect, and by degrees the rest of the united Princes either taken off from their engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a constancy. To him succeeded his Son *Christian*, now possessed hereof.

As for the other secular Princes which have any considerable Estates in this Country, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenloe*, *Rheineck*, *Castel*, *Werthaim*, *Horpach*, and *Swartzenburg*, together with the Lords of *Limburg* and *Rheichisberg*; all of them named so from the chief Town of their Estates, and all those Towns enriched with some suitable Territory. Of these the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, *Castel*, and *Werthaim*, are Ho-

magers to the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to do him service at his Inthronization, the Earldom of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Ilunam*, as was shewn before, and that of *Henneberg* most famous, in that one of the Earls hereof was Father of that incredible increase of Children (as many as there be days in the year) produced at one birth by the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, Sister of *William* Earl of *Holland*, and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as most in *Germany*, fetching their Pedigree as high as to *Charles* the Great, without help of the Heralds. But they of greatest power and Parentage amongst them are the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, deriving themselves from one *Wittikindus* of the House of *Saxony*; who fighting for his Country against the *French*, *an.* 779, was taken prisoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized, at the persuasion of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. *Wittikindus*, his Son and Successor, being baptized at the same time also by the name of *Charles*, was the first Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Castle of his own Building on the edge of *Thuringia*, *anno* 796; whose posterity do still hold the same, but much improved in their Estates by Marriages and other accruments. A Race of Princes which have yielded many of great influence in the affairs of *Germany*; amongst them *Gunther* Earl of *Swartzenburg*, elected Emperor of the *Romans* against *Charles* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludovick* Marquils of *Brandenburg*, and *Henry* Archbishop of *Mentz*. By which last he was solemnly inaugurated at *Aken* (or *Aquilgrane*) *anno* 1394. But being unworthily poisoned by his Competitor, though he died not of it, yet he was made so weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to surrender his pretensions to his mortal enemy; receiving in compensation for his charges 22000 marks in Silver, and some Towns in *Thuringia*.

Of the Imperial Cities, which share amongst them the remainders of *Frankenland*, the principal are, 1. *Francford* on the *Maine*, so called from its situation on the River *Maine*, to difference it from *Francford* in the Country of *Brandenburg*. It is divided by the River into two parts, joined together by a Bridge of Stone: the lesser part, situate on the right-hand shore of the River, being called *Saxen-hausen*; the greater part, properly called *Francford*, seated on the other. Both are under one Magistrate, and both together make up a fair, rich, populous, and well traded Town; both of great riches and repute by reason of the famous *Marts* here held in the midst of *Lent* and *September* yearly, and the Election of the Emperor or King of the *Romans*, as occasion is. The City is of a round form, compassed with a double Wall, beautified with some Walls without the Town on the banks of the River, amongst Vineyards, Meadows and sweet Groves: called thus as some say, from *Francus* the Son of *Marcomir*, supposed to be the Founder of it; or a *Francorum vado*, as the Foord of the *Franks*, before the building of the Bridge. The greatest part of the Inhabitants are *Lutherans*, but both the *Roman Catholics* and *Calvinists* are tolerated in it. 2. *Schweinsfurt*, on the *Maine* also, in a fruitful Soil. 3. *Rottenburg*, on the River *Tauber*. 4. *Wunsheim*. Here is also the Town of 5. *Coburg*, which belongeth to the House of *Saxony*, and gives Title to some of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes of *Saxon Coburg*. And hereto may be added 6. the fair City of *Nurenberg*, conceived by most to be within the Upper *Palatinate*; but by the Emperor *Maximilian* made a member of the Circle of *Franconia*, in regard most of the Estates and Possessions of it lie within this Country. Of which indeed they have so plentiful a share, that when *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* and his Confederates had driven *Charles* the fifth out of *Germany*, Marquils *Albert*, before mentioned, (whose Sword was his best Revenue) picking a quarrel with this City, burnt no less than an hundred Villages belonging to it, seventy Mannors and Farm-houses appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3000 Acres of their Wood; and after all this havock made of their Estate,

Estate, compelled them to compound with him for 200000 Crowns in Money, and six pieces of Ordnance. But being the City it self seems rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, we shall there meet with it.

Amongst these Prelates, Princes, and Imperial Cities is the great Dukedom of *Franconia* at this time divided; that Title still remaining in the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and some part of the Country: but both the Country and the Title of Duke of *Franconia* not long since otherwise disposed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg* anno 1631, as before is said, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them, conferred them upon *Bernard* Duke of *Saxon Weymer*, with the style and Title of Duke of *Franconia*. He was inaugurated therein in the Cathedral Church of *Wurtzburg*. July 19, 1633. the Nobility and Gentry of the Country doing Homage to him, and all the Magistrates and Officers of the several Cities taking the Oaths of Allegiance; the new Duke also making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their Rights and Privileges. In the solemnities of which day, the first great Gun discharged in the way of Triumph broke in the going off, without any hurt done, but the wounding of one Soldier only. An Omen that all this Solemn Act would prove but a Pageant, and break in pieces at the first giving fire unto it. And so accordingly it did: the Victory at *Norlingen*, which followed not long after this, putting the Bishops once more into their possessions, and leaving nothing to the new Duke but an hungry Title. And therefore leaving both the old and new titular Dukes, we will here add the Catalogue of those who were Dukes indeed, and had; together with the Title, the full possession of the Country.

Dukes of *FRANCONIA*, of the
Dutch or German Race.

- 974 1. *Conradus*, surnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otho* the first, whose Daughter *Luitgardis* he had married: after the death of *Henry* the second elected Emperor, by the name of *Conrade* the second, anno 1025.
- 1040 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Conrade*, Duke of *Franconia* and Emperor, by the name of *Henry* the third.
- 1056 3. *Henry* II. of *Franconia* and IV. of the Empire.
- 1106 4. *Henry* III. of *Franconia*. and V. of the Empire.
- 1125 5. *Frederick* II. (surnamed *Barbarossa*) Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the Ancient, Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Agnes* his Wife, the Sister and next Heir of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire, after the death of *Conrade* the 3. his Uncle, anno 1153.
- 1190 6. *Frederick* the II. the second Son of *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.
7. *Conrade* II. Brother of *Frederick* the second succeeded in both Estates.
8. *Philip*, the younger Brother of *Conrade*, succeeded in both Dukedoms after his decease; and on the death of *Henry* the sixth, his eldest Brother was Elected Emperor anno 1198.
- 1207 9. *Frederick* III. of *Franconia*, and the 5th. of *Suevia*, Son of the Emperor *Henry* the sixth, whom he succeeded in the Kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicily*, anno 1202. and on the death of *Otho* the fourth, anno 1212, was elected Emperor, of that name the second.
- 1250 10. *Conrade* III. of *Franconia*, the II. of *Schwaben*, and the IV. of the Empire, the Son of *Frederick* the third, whom he succeeded in all his Titles and Estates.
- 1254 11. *Conradine*, Son of *Conrade* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*, dispossessed of

his Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* by *Manfred* the base Brother of his Father, and finally beheaded by *Charles* of *Anjou*, who succeeded *Manfred* in those Kingdoms, anno 1268. After whose death this Royal House being quite extinguished, the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* did again resume the Title of Duke of *Franconia*; content to let some of the greater Lords and Prelates, which lived near unto him, to share in the possession of it, as before was noted.

The Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, before they were incorporated with the House of *Schwaben*, were Azure, a Lion Barry of eight pieces Argent and Gules, crowned Or: which, why it is now born by the Landgraves of *Hessia*, we shall tell you there.

11. *WIRTFNBURG*; and 12. *BADEN*.

These I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because both of them were taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, erected both about one time, and lie very close, in a round together: bounded upon the East and South with *Schwaben* properly so called, on the North with the *Lower Palatinate*, on the West with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schwaben* which is called *Brisingom*, parted asunder by the mountainous ridge of Hills called *Swartzenwald*; *Wirttemberg* lying on the East-side thereof, and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*, to the West.

And first for *WIRTENBERG*. The Air thereof is very healthy, neither too hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the Soil near *Swartzenwald* lying on the West, and the *Alps* of *Suevia* on the South, of it self barren and unprofitable; but in some places, by the industry of the Plough-man, made to yield good Corn. But in the middle parts thereof, which lie towards the *Neccar*, little inferiour for fruitfulness both of Corn and Wine unto any in *Germany*; besides some Silver-mines near *Wiltberg*, and about *Puellach*, a small Town, such abundance of Brals, that the Foundations of the Houses seem to be laid upon it.

It took this name from the Castle of *Wirttemberg*, the first Seat of the Princes of it; as that did from the *Inturgi*, inhabiting the Dutch side of the *Rhene*; or from the *Virthingi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh, mentioned by *Trebellius Gallio* in the life of *Aurelianus*; to which the word *Berg*, being added for a termination, made it first *Tuerginberg*, or *Virthinberg*, and after *Wirttemberg*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Stutgard*, the Duke's Seat, a fair, rich and populous Town, and the chief of the Dukedom; seated in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, not far from the *Neccar*, yielding a quantity of Wine almost incredible. 2. *Tubingen*, on both sides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair Stone-bridge. A Town well built, situate in a very rich Soil. and finally adorned with an University here founded by *Eberhard* the first Duke of *Wirttemberg*, anno 1477, in which *Leonardus Fuchsius* that great Herbalist and Restaurator of Physick, was once a Professor of that Faculty, 3. *Canstatt*, upon the *Neccar* also, not far from which, on the Top of an Hill, stands the old Castle of *Wirttemberg* before mentioned. 4. *Wiltberg*, of great esteem for its Mines of Silver. 5. *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by Jews. 6. *Schorndorf*, upon the *Reems*, much resorted to by reason of the hot Baths there; as is also 7. *Nemburg*, on the *Entz*. 8. *Haidenheim*, 9. *Greiningen*, 10. *Marbach*; of which little memorable. There are also within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns Imperial. As 1. *Vimpfen*, and 2. *Hailbrun*, on the *Neccar*. 3. *Gepping*, upon the River *Vils*. 4. *Veil*. 5. *Reuling*, on the *Neccar* also, made Imperial, by *Frederick* the 2. anno 1240, otherwise of no great note but for the Paper-mills, 6. *Efsling*.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Charini* of *Protony*, and part of the *Inturgi* spoken of before. It was made

made subject with the rest of these parts to the *Almans*, after to the *French*, and finally a Member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which dismembred in the time of *Henry IV.* after a dangerous War raised against him by Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practice of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne Imperial, it came to have Princes of its own: the first Earl being *Conrade*, in the year 1100, by the Grace and Favour of the said Emperor *Henry*. Increased by the addition of the Earldom of *Montbelgard* and many other Arguments, it was made a Dukedom in the person of *Eberhard* the sixth, by *Maximilian* the first, anno 1495. The Earls and Dukes follow thus in order.

The Earls and Dukes of WIRTEMBERG.

- 1100 1. *Conrade*, the first Earl.
2. *Ulrick*, Son of *Conrade*.
3. *John*, Son of *Ulrick*.
4. *Lewis*, Son of *John*.
5. *Henry*, Son of *Lewis*.
6. *Eberhard*, Son of *Henry*.
- 1253 7. *Ulrick II.* Son of *Eberhard*.
8. *Eberhard II.* Son of *Ulrick*.
- 1325 9. *Ulrick III.* Son of *Eberhard*.
- 1344 10. *Eberhard III.* Son of *Ulrick*.
- 1394 11. *Ulrick IV.* Son of *Eberhard*.
12. *Eberhard IV.* Son of *Ulrick*.
- 1417 13. *Eberhard V.* Son of *Eberhard* the 4th, by his Marriage with *Henrica*, or *Henrietta*, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Montbelgard*, added that Earldom to his House.
- 1419 14. *Lewis* or *Lodovick II.* Son of *Eberhard* the 5th.
- 1456 15. *Eberhard VI.* Son of *Lewis*, Founder of the University of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the First, the first Duke of *Wirtemberg*, anno 1495. He deceased without Issue, anno 1496.
- 1496 16. *Eberhard VII.* Son of *Ulrick* the younger Brother of *Lewis* the 2d, succeeded on the death of *Eberhard* his Cousin-german.
- 1504 17. *Henry II.* the Brother of *Eberhard* the 7th.
- 1519 18. *Ulrick V.* Son of *Henry II.* expelled out of his Dukedom by *Charles* the 5th. for the sack of *Reutling*, an Imperial City, and his Estate conferred on *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, the Brother of *Charles*, in 1520: but after 15 years Exile restored to his Dukedom by *Philip* Landgrave of *Hassia*, in 1534. He Reformed Religion, and liberally endowed the University of *Tubingen*. In the Year 1547, he was again expelled by the Emperor upon the *Smalcaldick* War.
- 1550 19. *Christopher*, the Son of *Ulrick* the 5th, a follower of his Father's steps in Reformation of the Church, and advancement of Learning.
- 1568 20. *Lodovick* or *Lewis III.* Son of *Christopher*. This Prince having no Children to succeed him, Founded in the 1589 an illustrious College at *Tubingen* to preserve his Memory.
- 1593 21. *Frederick*, Son of *George* Earl of *Montbelgard*, the Brother of *Ulrick* the 5th. In the year 1599, the 24th of January, he obtained from *Rodolphus* the Emperor a new Investiture of both his Dukedoms, according to the first and immediate Form, for which he paid a considerable Sum of Money, and by it he cut off the Pretences of the House of *Austria*. Made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth*, anno 1597.
- 1608 22. *John-Frederick*, Son of *Frederick* the first.
- 1628 23. *John-Eberhard*, eldest Son of the former Duke.
- 1674 24. *William-Lewis*.
- 1677 25. *Eberhard Lewis*, Son of the former, born in the year 1676, who is still living.

The Revenues of this Duke are supposed to be equal unto those of the Electors *Palatine*, spoken of before; and were it not for the Silver-mines in *Saxony*, little inferior to those of that Duke. But for Provisions of War, (excepting Powder only) he is meanly furnished. A main defect, considering the ill terms he stands in with the Imperial Cities, betwixt whom and the House of *Wirtemberg* there have been always open Wars; or secret Jealousies.

His Arms are Or, three Attiers of a Stag born Paliebarrie, Sable.

The Family of *Wirtemberg*, in the year 1072. under *Conrade*, obtained the Earldom of *Butelsbach*. In the year 1214, *John II.* Earl by Marriage, had *Stutgard*, which before belonged to the Marquissate of *Baden*. In 1240 the Earldom of *Aurach* was bought: In 1336 the Earldom of *Gruningen*: In 1346, *Calbe*: In 1397 *Eberhard* the 5th, by Marriage, had the Earldom of *Montbelgard*: In 1439 the Dukedom of *Teccen* came by Marriage: In 1495 *Eberhard VI.* raised the Title of his Family from an Earldom to a Dukedom: In 1620 *Ulricus* bought *Hohentweil*: In 1646 *Silvius Nimbrod* obtained the Investiture of *Olentz* in *Silesia*, and in *Moravia* he had *Sternberg* and *Metzibor*; but the *French* in the Year 1684 deprived this Family of *Montbelgard*.

As for the Marquissate of *BADEN BADA*, lying on the West side of *Schwartzenwald*, betwixt it and the *Rhene*, it is for the most part, except towards those Wolds, a very pleasant and fruitful Country, and much of the same nature with the rest of *Wirtemberg*; so called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marquis keeps his Seat in Winter; and that so named from the hot Baths there, as is also *Baden* (called for distinction sake, the *Upper Baden*) amongst the *Switzers*; in which respect the City of *Bath* in *Somersetshire* had anciently the name of *Caer-Baden* also. Of these Baths it is supposed that there are in this City at least 300, profitable for many Diseases and exulcerate Sores, drawing a great resort of People from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquissate, from whence the Princes have the Title of Marquesses of *Baden*. The next to this is, 2. *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives Title to a second Branch of this House; call'd also sometimes Marquesses of *Durlach* only, but commonly the Marquesses of *Baden Durlach*. 3. *Liebenzel*, amongst the Hills of *Schwartzenwald*, famous for hot medicinal Springs. 4. *Liechtenaw*, remarkable for a Monastery, the burial-place of the first Marquesses. 5. *Gerspach*, in the very heart of that mountainous Tract. 6. *Pfortzheim*, adjoining to the Wood *Hagenscheis*, a branch of *Schwartzenwald*. 7. *Rotelen*. 8. *Badenwile*. And 9. *Susenburg*, all seated in the *Upper Baden*, being that part hereof which lies next to *Brissgow*. 10. *Milberg*, beautified with a fair Castle, the usual retiring-place of these Princes in the heats of Summer.

This Marquissate, being also taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, was Founded in the Person of *Herman* of *Verona* in *Italy*, who deserving well of the Emperor *Henry V.* was by him settled in some Lands about these parts, anno 1120. and after marrying with the Daughter of an Earl of *Baden*, was by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* created the first Marquis of *Baden*, anno 1155. The Estate was after much encreased by the addition of the Earldom of *Hochberg* and the Appendixes thereof in *Schwaben*; into which *Christopher* the 13th Marquis hereof, succeeded on the death of his Cousin *Philip*, the last Earl of *Hochberg*; both Princes descending originally from two Brothers; of which the eldest, in right of the Lady *Judith* his Wife, was Earl of *Hochberg*; the second by the Favour of the said *Frederick Barbarossa*, was made Marquis of *Baden*. They were Masters also of many fair Estates in the Lower *Palatinate*; which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there said) are since possessed of. Other particulars shall be shown (if occasion be) in the ensuing Catalogue.

Histories seem to put it beyond a dispute that the Family of *Baden* is a branch of that which produced the House of *Austria*. From the Ancient Princes of *Alsatia* spring the Family of the Dukes of *Zeeringen*, who had large Territories in *Brisgow*. *Hermannus* of this House obtained the Earldom of *Hochberg*, and died in the year 1074: His Son *Herman* married *Judith* the Heiress of *Baden*. This Family stands at this day divided into two Branches, viz. *Baden Baden*, and *Baden Durlach*.

The Marquesses of *B A D E N*.

- 1074 1. *Herman*, the first Marquis.
- 1130 2. *Herman* II.
- 1160 3. *Herman* III. made by *Frederick Barbarossa* a Lord of *Verona* in *Italy*, for his Service against the *Milanese*.
- 4. *Herman* IV.
- 5. *Herman* V.
- 1281 6. *Rodolph*, Son of *Herman* the 4th, died in 1288.
- 1295 7. *Herman* VI. Son of *Rodolph*.
- 1333 8. *Rodolph* II. Son of *Herman* the 5th.
- 1356 9. *Frederick*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2d.
- 10. *Rodolph* III. Son of *Frederick*.
- 1372 11. *Bernard*, Son of *Rodolph* the 3d.
- 1431 12. *James*, Son of *Bernard*.
- 1453 13. *Charles*, Son of *James*, the first of these Marquesses which was possessed of the County of *Spanheim* in the Lower *Palatinate*, descending on this House by *Matild* Wife of *Rodolph* the second.
- 1475 14. *Christopher*, Son of *Charles*, who after the death of *Philip*, the last Marquis of *Hochberg*, succeeded also in that Estate.
- 1527 15. *Bernard*, Son of *Christopher*, his Brother *Ernest* succeeding in that of *Hochberg*.
- 1535 16. *Christopher* II. Son of *Bernard*, his elder Brother *Philibert*, and *Philip* Son of *Philibert*, dying in the Life of *Bernard*.
- 1537 17. *Philip*, Son of *Christopher*, who being left very young by his Father, fell under the Tutelage of the Duke of *Bavaria*, and was brought up a Roman Catholick. He died in the year 1588, unmarried.
- 1588 18. *Edward*, Son of *Christopher*, intending the Sale of his Estate to pay his Debts, was forcibly deprived of all. He broke his Neck in 1600 at *Brussels*.
- 1594 19. *Ernest*, Marquis of *Hochberg*, Nephew of *Ernest* above mentioned; who by that means not only preserved the Marquisate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it, and removed his ordinary seat to *Durlach*.
- 1604 20. *George*, Brother of *Ernest*, Marquis of *Baden* and *Hochberg*, who in the year 1622 resigned his Dominions to his Son, who the same year was deprived of it by the Decree of the Chamber of *Spire*, but recover'd it by the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648.
- 1622 21. *Frederick*, the Son of *George*, born in the year 1594, succeeded his Father in both Estates; and (if living) hath a Son called also *Frederick*, to enjoy them after his decease.
- 1659 22. *Frederick*, who was General for the Emperor against the *French* from whom he took *Philipsburg* in the year 1676.
- 1677 23. *Frederick* the Great, Son of the former, succeeded his Father, he was born in the Year 1647, the 24th of *September*: He has a Son call'd *Frederick* to succeed him, who was born in the year 1672.

The Reader may be pleased to know that besides this Line here set down there is another derived from *Edward*, who was dispossessed by *Ernest* in the Year 1594. He left three Sons, *William*, *Albert* and *Herman*, the Marquisate was adjudged to *William* in 1622 by the

Chamber of *Spire*, but that Sentence was repealed by the Treaty of *Munster*; in 1640 he was made President of the Chamber of *Spire*, and died the 22th of *May*, 1677, leaving several Sons behind him; so that this Branch is still extant, and being Roman Catholicks and Military Men, are particularly favoured by the Emperor, and have been advanced to great Employments by him. The *Notitia Imperii Germanici* gives a very different Account of this Family and its Rise from this set down by *Heylin*, but it is scarce possible to make his understood without a Genealogy: And they both agree in the Succession from *Ernest*, who dispossessed *Edward* the Apostate (as they call him.) Of this Line are Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, often mentioned in the Wars of *Hungary*, and *Herman* of *Baden*, The Emperor's Commissioner in the Dyet at this time.

There is great Differences as to the latter part of this Catalogue, which *Showartus* thus sets down.

B A D E N B A D E N.

- 1527 1. *Bernard*, Son of *Christopher* the 4th of that name, was the Founder of the Line of *Baden Baden*. He embraced the Reformation, and settled it in his Estate, and then died in 1566.
- 1566 2. *Philip* II. Son of *Bernard*, succeeded, but he died without Issue.
- 1588 3. *Edward* the Fortunate, Son of *Christopher* the third, Son of *Bernard*, succeeded his Uncle *Philip*. He returned to the Popish Religion, and falling into Debts would have sold his Estate to pay them, but was driven out of all, and forced to turn Soldier in *Flanders*, where he was slain the 18th of *June*, 1600.
- 1594 4. *Ernest-Frederick*, of the House of *Durlach*, assumed the Government, and kept it many Years.
- 1622 5. *William* the Eldest, Son of *Edward* the Fortunate, or Unfortunate rather: In 1640 he was the Emperor's Commissioner in the Dyet of *Ratisbonne*, and after President of the Chamber of *Spire*; and he died the 22th of *May*, 1677. *Etat*. 84.
- 1677 6. *Lewis-William*, born in 1655, the Son of *Ferdinand Maximilian*, the Son of *William*, succeeded his Grandfather, but being spoiled of his Dominions by the *French*, he went to the Emperor and served against the *Turks*, and is now Marshal de Camp to that Prince. And in the year 1680 he Married a Daughter of the late Duke of *Saxe-Lawemburg*, by whom he had a fair Estate in *Bohemia*. There is another Son of *William*, called *Herman*, who was born in 1628, and is now the Emperor's Commissioner at the Dyet at *Ratisbonne*.

B A D E N D U R L A C H.

- 1527 1. *Ernest*, Son of *Christopher*, and Brother of *Bernard*, by the Appointment of his Father became Marquis of *Baden Durlach* and *Rotelen*. He was a zealous Protestant, and died the 6th of *February*, 1553.
- 1553 2. *Charles* II. Son of *Ernest*.
- 1577 3. *Ernest-Frederick*, Son of *Charles*, succeeded his Father in 1577, and had various Contests with *William* of the House of *Baden Baden*.
- 1604 4. *George-Frederick*, Brother of *Ernest*, (who died without Issue) was born the 10th of *January*, 1573. He was a sure Friend to the *Electors*, *Palatines*, who was then King of *Bohemia*, upon this account the Emperor favoured *William* of *Baden Baden* against him, and put him in possession of that Marquisate in 1622, and drove *George* out of all his Lands, so that he died at *Geneva*.

- 1638 5. *Frederick*, Son of *George*, born in 1594: by the Treaty of *Osnabruck* he recover'd his Territories in the Year 1648.
- 1659 6. *Frederick II.* Son of the former *Frederick*, was born in 1617, and was a Prince of great Merit both as to Peace and War. He took *Philipsburg* from the *French*, in 1676; and died the next Year.
- 1677 7. *Frederick III.* now Marquis of *Baden Durlach*, was born the 27th of September, 1647. In 1670 he married *Maria Augusta*, Daughter of *Frederick*, Duke of *Sleswick*, by whom he has *Charles-William*, born the 17th of January, 1679, and *Christopher*, born the 28th of September, 1684.

The Family of *Baden* has made Additions to their Fortunes in several Ages. *Herman* the Fourth had with his Wife, who was the Daughter of *Henry*, *Palatine*, *Guelf*, *Durlach*, *Heidelberg* and *Etlingen*. In the Year 1246, *Herman* the 5th gained by a Marriage the Right of the Duchy of *Austria* and *Stiria*. In 1415, the Earldom of *Hochberg* was added. In 1437, great part of that of *Sponheim* was gained, together with *Muhlberg* and *Lohra*, in *Ortenow*. In 1444, *Christopher* added *Baden*, *Weiler*, and *Welschenberg*, and afterwards *Rodemachren*, *Herspringen*, and *Vjeldigen*. In 1503, upon the death of *Philip*, came in *Landgram*, *Sausenberg*, and *Rotelen*. And after this the Earls of *Erberstein* being extinct, the greatest part of that Earldom was added to this Family.

On the other hand it has suffer'd many Losses. In the middle of the 13th Century *Ottocar*, King of *Bohemia*, took from *Frederick* the right Heir *Austria* and *Stiria*. And in the two last *French* Wars both the Lines have been driven out of their Countries by the prevailing Power of *France*, and great part of their Towns burnt and ruined. They have also a pretence upon the Dominion of *Geroltzack*.

13. NORTHGOIA, or the UPPER PALATINATE.

THE County of *NORTHGOIA*, so called from the Northern situation of it in regard of *Bavaria*, is sometimes also called the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, because anciently belonging to that Estate; but generally *Ober Pfaltz* or the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Lower*. It is bounded on the East with *Bohemia*, on the West with *Franconia* and part of *Schwaben*, on the North with *Voitland*, and on the South with *Bavaria*. The Country is for the most part somewhat rough and mountainous, rich principally in Mines of Iron, which it yieldeth in most places, and some of Silver about *Amberg*; extended from *Haimburg* to the edge of *Bohemia*, 80 miles; and from the Hill *Fichtelberg* in the edge of *Voitland*, to *Weissenburg* near the Banks of the *Danow*, 68 miles.

Observable things touching this Province are chiefly two. First, that out of the Mountain *Fichtelberg*, before mentioned arise 4 Rivers running to the four Quarters of the World; that is to say, the *Egra* towards the East, the *Maine* or *Mannus* towards the West, the *Sala* or *Saliza* to the North, and the *Nabor* *Nabus* to the South; so that it may be probably thought to be the highest Hill in all *Germany*. 2. That in the South-west corner of it are two little Rivers; the one called *Altmul*, which falleth into the *Danow*, and the other *Rednitz*, which runs into the *Maine*, and finally into the *Rhene*; between the Heads whereof, being not much distant, *Charles* the Great once began to dig a Channel, for making a passage out of the *Rhene* into the *Danow*. In which work he employed many thousand Men. But partly by excess of Rain, and partly by some strange Affrightments, (all which they did in the day being undone in the night) he was fain to desist. Some parts of the intended Water-course are to be seen near *Weissenburg*, spoken of be-

fore, which standeth in the middle-way betwixt both Rivers.

Chief Places of this Country which belong to the Electoral Family are, 1. *Amberg*, on the River *Vils*, enriched chiefly by the commodity of Iron, digged out of the neighbouring Hills, here fashioned into all sorts of Utensils, and hence conveyed in great abundance to the parts adjoining: but prouder of its Mines of Silver than those veins of Iron, affording to the Prince's Coffers 60000 Crowns yearly. 2. *Namheim*, in the midst of a fruitful Valley, near a Wood of Juniper. 3. *Newburgh*, upon the River *Smartzach*, which gives Title to the second Branch of the *Palatine* House, call'd the Counts *Palatines* of *Newburgh*, Competitors with the Marquis of *Brandenburg* for the whole Dukedom of *Cleveland*, and finally possessed of *Grlick* and the Members of it. 4. *Kelheim*, at the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Altmul*. 5. *Cham*, on the edge of *Bohemia*, near the River *Regen*; which passing thence falleth into the *Danow* near the City of *Regensburg*. 6. *Castel*, where the Electors for the most part hold their Residence, when they are in this Country. 7. *Amerbach*, 8. *Saltzbach*, 9. *Weiden*, 10. *Newmarckt*.

There are in this Country some Towns belonging to the Lantgraves of *Luchtenberg*, one of the four old Lantgraves of the Empire; the other three being *Duringen*, *Huffia* and *Alsatia*: so called from *Luchtenberg*, an old Castle, situate on a lofty Hill not far from *Pfreimt*, the chief Town and ordinary Seat of these Lantgraves, seated on the River *Nab*, 2. *Gransfelden*, 3. *Schönhoffen*, an ordinary pass and baiting-place in the way from *Prague* to *Nuremberg*.

But the chief City of this Country, and perhaps of *Germany*, is *Nuremberg* it self, *Norimberga* in the modern, but *Norica* in the ancient *Latin*. So called from an ancient Castle called *Castrum Noricum*, the Ruins of which are still remaining, encompassed with a deep, but dry Ditch, now of no use nor ornament to the City at all, but revered for its antiquity as the Mother of *Nuremberg*. The Castle is said by some to be built in the time of *Claudius Cesar*. More probably by some of the *Norici*, who terrified with the Invasion of *Attila*, in the Decline and Wane of the *Roman* Empire, relinquished *Bavaria*; where before they dwelt and passed over the *Danow*, there to provide themselves of a safer dwelling. Conquered by the *Bavarians*, it became, together with their Conquerors, subject to the *French*. In the time of *Lewis* the Third, it became Imperial, and was Walled and Fortified during the Reign of *Charles* the 4th. From that time it increased so fast both in Wealth and Beauty, that it is counted the greatest and wealthiest City in all this Continent, there being reckoned in it 11 Stone-Bridges for passage over the *Leugnitz*, which runneth through it, 12 Conduits of fresh Water, 13 common Baths, 116 publick Wells, and 128 Streets. Of figure it is square, environed with a tripple Wall of 8 miles in circuit, and plentifully stored with all sorts of Ammunition. The Marquesses of *Brandenburg* in former times were the Burgraves of it; an Office of great Power and Jurisdiction, but sold for a good sum of Money by *Frederick III.* Anno 1414. *Albert* his Son, attempting to recover the old Office again, besieged the Town, having no less than 17 Princes on his side, and yet could not force it: that for an Argument of its strength. A proof and evidence of the Wealth of it we have seen before, in that great havock made of their Towns and Villages, and the great Ransom they were put to by another *Albert* spoken of in *Franconia*, in the year 1552, which is excellently described by *John Sleiden* in 24 Lib. of his History. And it adds much unto the commendation of the People that this great Wealth is gotten by their indefatigable Industry; the Town being situate on a barren and sandy Soil, and destitute of those Helps which commonly navigable Rivers brings unto a City; those great Possessions which belongs unto the State hereof being gotten out of the Fire, as the saying is, by their continual working of

Iron and other Manufactures, occasioning a resort hither of Merchants from all parts of *Germany*. In the year 1649, here was a general Peace Concluded between the Princes of *Germany*, pursuant to that of *Munster* made the year before.

There is a Branch of the Family of *Brandenburg*, which is called the *Franconian Branch*, which lays claim to the Burgrate of *Norimberg*.

1. *Frederick*, Son of *Albert I. Achilles*, Duke of *Brandenburg*, and Elector, born the 2. of May 1460, and by his Father made Burgrave of *Norimberg*.
- 1536 2. *Casimir*, Son of *Frederick*, born the 27th of September 1481, succeeded 4. April 1536, and died the 21th of September 1637.
- 1537 3. *Albert III. the Alcibiades* of *Germany*, born 28th of March 1522, a Prince of great Worth, but lived and dyed a single man.
- 1557 4. *George*, Brother of *Casimir*, born the 4th of March 1484.
- 1577 5. *George Frederick*, born the 5th of April 1539, made Governour of *Prussia*, in 1582, he Founded the University of *Heilbrun*, he died the 25th of April 1603, without any Male Issue. In him the Line ended.
- 1603 6. *Christian I.* Son of *John George*, Elector of *Brandenburg*, born the 30th of June 1581, Founder of the Line of *Culembach*.
- 1645 7. *Erdman Augustus*, born the 29th of October 1615.
- 1651 8. *Christian Ernest*, born the 27th of July 1644, assumed the Government in 1661, and is still living, his Sons are *George William*, born the 16th of November 1678, *Charles Lewis*, born the 11th of November 1679.

A U S B A C H.

- 1603 1. *Joachim Ernest*, born in 1583.
- 1625 2. *Frederick* his Son, born the 20th of April 1616.
- 1634 3. *Albert*, Brother of *Frederick*, born in 1620.
- 1667 4. *John Frederick* Son of *Albert*, born the 28th of October 1654.

He is now living and has three Sons, *Christian Albert*, born the 8th of September 1675, and *George Frederick*, born the 25th of April 1678, *William Frederick* born the 29th of September 1685.

Other Towns of chief note within this *Palatinate* are,
 1. *Altorff*, where the *Nurenbergers* founded an University for the study of all Arts and Sciences, anno 1575.
 2. *Herspruck*, a great Town and well seated, belonging to the State of *Nurenburg* also. 3. *Eystet*, (*Aichstaidium* in the *Latine*) an Episcopal See, situate on the River *Altmul*. 4. *Weissenburg*, an Imperial City on the Borders of *Schwaben*. Here was also in this Province (if not still remaining) the Town *Winsberg*, memorable for the Piety and gallantry of the Women of it. For the Town being besieged and distressed by the Emperor *Conrade* the 3. for siding against him with the *Guelps* then Dukes of *Bavaria*, no other conditions could be gotten at the surrendry of it, but that the Women might have leave to depart in safety, and carry all their Jewels with them. Which being obtained, they took their Husbands on their backs and so left the Town: and by that noble act so moved the affections and compassions of the angry Prince, that he spared the Town, and gave them all a general Pardon. It is said by some, that the odious names of *Guelps* and *Gibelines* (with which the peace of Christendom was so long distracted) took their beginning at this Siege, the first so called from *Guelpho* Brother of *Henry* the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, in whose cause they fought; the other from *Veibling* (the French and *Italians* speak it *Gueibling*) a Town of *Frankenland*, in which that Emperor was born. Another original hereof we had in our description of the State of *Florence*:

but I take this to be the more probable of the two; tho' neither certain.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Nurici* of *Tacitus*. Afterwards some of the *Nurici* fearful or grown impatient of the *Roman* Yoak, came over the *Danubius*, to them, and built that famous Castle called *Castrum Noricum*, where now stands *Nurenberg*. Overpowered by the *Boii*, and uniting with them in the name of *Boiarians*, they followed the fortunes of *Bavaria*, till the year 1339, when *Ludovick* the Emperor and Duke of *Bavaria*, on the partition of the Estate betwixt him and *Rodolphus* his elder Brother relinquished it for ever to the House of the *Palatines*. Returned for the present to the Dukes of *Bavaria*, on whom it was conferred, together with the Electoral dignity, by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2. in recompence of the great service done him by *Maximilian* the now Duke thereof in the War of *Bohemia*, and the great charge he had been at in the reduction of that Kingdom to the House of *Austria*. How long it will continue thus is known only to God, the disposer of all things. Yet neither the *Bavarians* formerly, nor the *Palatines* since, have been so fully Masters of it, but that the Lantgrave of *Luchtenberg* and the City of *Nurenberg* have put in for a share.

The Arms of which great and puissant City are Azure, an Harpye displayed, crowned, crined and armed, Or.

14. The Kingdom of B O H E M I A.

THE Kingdom of *BOHEMIA*, containing *Bohemia* it self with the incorporate Provinces, is bounded on the East with *Poland* and *Hungary*, on the West with the *Upper Palatinate*, *Voitland* and *Misnia*, on the North with the Marquisate of *Brandenburg* and some part of *Misnia*, and on the South with *Austria* and *Bavaria*. It comprehends in it, besides *Bohemia* it self, the Marquisate of *Moravia*, with the Dukedoms of *Silesia* and *Lusatia*.

1. *BOHEMIA*, encompassed about with woody Mountains, part of the *Hercynian*, is bounded on the East with *Moravia*, on the West with the *Upper Palatinate* and *Voitland*, the North with *Misnia*, *Lusatia* and some part of *Silesia*, on the South with parts of *Bavaria* and *Austria*.

It took this name from the *Bemi*, or *Boiemi*, the old Inhabitants hereof; by *Pomponius Mela* called *Bemi*, with the addition of *Gens magna*, by *Tacitus*, *Boiemi*, who make them the descendants of the *Boii*, a *Gallick* Nation, who to avoid the Servitude which they feared from *Rome*, put themselves into these *Hercynian* desarts, which from them was named *Boiohemum*, by which name it occurreth in *Velleius Paterculus*. And though the *Marcomanni* first, and the *Slaves* and *Croatians* afterwards, became Masters of it, these last continuing their possession to this very day: yet it retaineth still the name of *Bohemia* amongst the *Latines*, as that *Behemerland* amongst the *Dutch*.

It contains in compass about 550 *English* miles. The Soil is indifferently fruitful, and enriched with Mines of all sorts, except of Gold. Tin they have here in good plenty, the Mines whereof were first found out by a *Cornish* man, banished out of *England*, anno 1240. which discovery of Tin in these parts was, as saith my Author, in magnam jacluram Richardi Comitiss Cornubiæ, (he meaneth that *Richard* which was afterwards King of the *Romans*;) and no marvel, for in those times there was no Tin in all *Europe* but in *England*. Wood they have here good store; and in some of their Forests a Beast called *Lomie*, which hath hanging under its neck a Bladder full of scalding water, with which, when she is hunted, she so tortureth the Dogs, that she easily escapeth them. Of Corn they have sufficient for their own use, and sometimes also an increase above their spending, wherewith they do supply their neighbours of the *Upper Palatinate*: but they want Wine, the Air being too

too sharp and piercing to produce a good Vintage. And it yields also store of Saffron, no where to be bettered; with plenty of medicinal Drugs.

The principal Rivers hereof are, 1. the *Elbe*, or *Albis*, having here its spring, of whose course we have spoken elsewhere. 2. *Egra*, 3. the *Muldam* or *Multavins*, and 4. the *Wartz*, all three exonerating themselves into the *Elbe*, which runneth through the midst of the Country.

The Kingdom is not (as others) divided into Counties and Provinces, but into the Territories and possessions of several Lords, who have great authority and command over their Vassals. The figure of the whole is in a manner Circular, the Diameter whereof reacheth every way some 200 miles, containing in that compass 700 Cities, walled Towns and Castles, and (as some say) 30000 Villages. It is inhabited by a people given to Drink and Gluttony, and yet valiant and with sense of Honour: this last belonging to the Nobility and Gentry, the former to the common people; but more moderately than most others of the *German* Nations. All of them Princes or Plebeians, rich, poor, noble and base, use the *Sclavonian* Language, as their Mother-tongue.

The chief *Bohemian* Captain that ever I read of was *Zisca*, who, in eleven Battles fought in the defence of the *Hussites*, against the Pope and his Confederates, prevailed and went away victorious, insomuch that at his death he willed the *Bohemians* to flee him, and make a Drum of his skin; perswading himself, if they so did, they could never be overcome. A fancy like to that of *Scipio African*, and *Vortimer K.* of *Britain* spoken of before. Scholars of most note, *John Hus* and *Hierom of Prague*, two eminent Divines, of whom more anon.

The *Christian Faith* was first here preached by *S. Methodius* the first Bishop and Apostle of the *Moravians*; an. 900 or thereabouts. *Borziwois*, (whom some call *Borsinows*) the 8. Duke from *Crocon*, being the first Christian Prince, and next to him *Wenceslaus* the 2. This last was most cruelly murdered by *Boleslaus* his Brother at the instigation of *Drabomira*, an obstinate Heathen, Mother to them both: who having caused the Ministers of the Lord to be butchered, and their bodies to lie unburied for two years together, was swallowed up Coach and all, in that very place where their bodies lay. Confirmed by this Prodigy, they continued constant in the Faith to this very day; though not without the intermixture of some notable Vanity. For one *Picardus*, coming out of the *Low-countries*, drew a great sort of men and women unto him, pretending to bring them to the same state of Perfection that *Adam* was in before the Fall; from whence they were called *Picards* and *Adamites*. They had no respect unto Marriage; yet could they not accompany any Woman, until the Man coming to *Adam*, said unto him, *Ether Adam, I am inflamed towards this Woman*, and *Adam* made answer, *Increase and Multiply*. They lived in an Island which they called *Paradise*, and went stark naked: but they continued not long; for *Zisca* hearing of them, entred their Fools *Paradise*, and put them all to the sword, Anno 1416. But to make amends for this Folly, they were exceedingly zealous of the Reformation. For much about the same time the Works of *Wickliff* were brought into *Bohemia* by a certain Scholar who had been Student in the University of *Oxford*, which hapning into the hands of *John Huss* and *Hierome of Prague*, (two men whereof this Country doth much boast) wrought in their hearts a desire to reform the Church. A business which they prosecuted so earnestly, that being summoned to the Council of *Constance*, they were there condemned for Hereticks and burnt, Anno 1414; yet had their Doctrine such deeproot in the hearts of the people, that it could never be destroyed by the Tyrannies of War or Persecution (though both were used) to this

very day; multitudes of the Professors of it living in this Kingdom under the names of *Califf* and *Sabbatargae*, (as before is said) but much both strengthened and increased by the Writings of *Luther*, *Melancthon*, *Calvin*, and such other of the Protestant Doctors as travelled in the Work of Reformation. But this increase of strength and number proved their greatest weakening. For growing insolent upon the fence of their strength and power, they formed themselves into a party, got many of the *Romish* Catholics to adhere unto them, under colour of asserting their Civil Rights, and, in the heat of some disputes, caused certain of the Emperor's Council to be thrown out of the Windows of the Council-chamber; and finally about the latter end of the Reign and Empire of *Matthias*, they broke out in open Arms. In the course whereof the *Calvinians* being of most power, and having got a King of their own Opinions, so disobliged the *Lutherans* and more moderate Papists, who had concurred with them at the first, that being invaded on the one side with a *Lutheran* Army, under the command of the Duke of *Saxony*, and a *Papish* Army on the other by the Duke of *Bavaria*, they were in fine utterly suppressed and made inconsiderable: the conquering and successful Emperor (*Ferdinand* the 2.) taking this occasion to extirpate this Protestant Religion out of his Dominions.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Budweis*, (conceived to be the *Marobudum* of *Ptolomy*) a Town towards *Austria*. 2. *Aust*, near the head of the *Eld*. 3. *Tabor*, a strong Town built by *Zisca*, to be a Retreat for the *Hussites*. 4. *Jaromir*, and 5. *Melnick*, both upon the *Elb*. 6. *Littomissel*, an Episcopal See, bordering on *Moravia*. 7. *Pilsen*, the last Town of this Kingdom which yielded to the prevailing Imperialists in the late long War about that Crown: and then also was it betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a sum of money, by some of the Soldiers of Count *Mansfield*, who was then absent, and had so long defended it against the Enemy. 8. *Elnbogen*, much esteemed for the hot medicinal Baths; situate on the River *Egra*. 9. *Egra*, so called of the same River, on which (near to the borders of the Upper *Palatinate*) it is strongly situate: a large, fair City, containing three miles in compass. Imperial once, but sold by the Emperor *Ludovicus Bavarus* to John King of *Bohemia*, for 400000 marks of Silver: in compass less; for Sweetness of the place, Elegancy of the building, Pleasantness of site, and Richness of Soil, superiour far to *Prague* it self. This City was made an Imperial City in the year 1179, and sold in the year 1315. In the *Swedish* War it was often taken, and retaken, and in its Castle Count *Wallstein*, Duke of *Fridland* was Assassinated. 10. *Prague*; the Metropolis of the Kingdom, situate in the midst thereof, on the River *Muldam*; consisting of four several Towns, each of which hath its several Customs, Laws, and Magistrates. The principal is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly Buildings, a spacious Market-place, and a stately Council-house. The second, called the *New-Town*, is separated from the Old by a Ditch of great depth and wideness. The third, called the *Little-Town*, is divided from the Old by the River *Muldam*, joyned to it by a beautiful Bridge, consisting of 24 Arches. And in this part thereof is the Hill *Rachine*, on the sides of which are many fair and stately Houses belonging to the Nobility, overlooked by the strong Castle of *Wenceslaus*, (situate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the *Bohemian* Kings and the later Emperors have kept their Residence. The 4th. Town is that of the *Jews*, who have here five Synagogues, and live according to their own Law. The whole City is rather large than fair, the Streets being in Winter very dirty, of ill smell in the Summer; the Buildings for the most part of Clay and Timber clapt up together without Art, and of little beauty. And though encompassed with Walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open Town, (to

poor and weak are the Defenses ; infomuch that whofoever is master of the Field, will be master of the City also. And yet besides the honour of being the Royal Seat, it hath also of long time been an Archbishop's See, and was by *Charles* the fourth, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, made an University. Near unto this Town was fought that memorable Battel between the Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Bucquoy*, Lieutenant for the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second, with 50000 men, on the one side ; and *Frederick*, newly elected King of *Bohemia*, with the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Count of *Thurn*, and 30000 men on the other side. It was fought on the eight of *November stylo novo*, 1620, wherein (such was the unsearchable Will of God) the Victory fell unto the Imperialists : the young Prince of *Anhalt*, *Thurn*, and *Sax-Weimer*, with divers others, being taken Prisoners ; the *Bohemian* Ordnance all surpris'd, *Prague* forced to yield unto the Victor, and King *Frederick* with the Queen compelled to fly unto *Silesia*. A most lamentable and unfortunate Loss, not to this people only, but to the whole cause of the reformed Religion. Yet it is not unworthy of our observation, that this great Battle was fought upon a Sunday, the 8. of *November*, about the time of Morning-prayer ; in the Gospel appointed for which day (being then the 23. after *Trinity-Sunday*) is that famous passage, *Reddite CÆSARI, quæ sunt CÆSARIS*, i. e. Render unto *Cæsar* the things which are *Cæsars* ; which seemed to Judge the Quarrel on the Emperor's side. Dr. *Brown*, in his *Travels*, has given a large Account of this City. The *Swedes* soon after revenged the Quarrel of the Protestants upon the Imperialists, and during that War, took and retook this City several times. In the year 1689, a great part of this City, was burnt by *French* Treachery, as is vehemently suspected.

But whether of the two Pretendents had the juster Cause, may best be seen by canvassing the Records of that State and Nation, (for the success of War is no standing Rule for measuring the Equity and Justness of the Causes of it : by which it will be clearly seen, that since the erecting of that Kingdom by the *Slaves* or *Croats*, it hath been evermore disposed at the Will of the Emperor, or by Election of the States and People. But I intend not at present to dispute that Point, but only lay down the Story of the Kings and People, as in other places, since the first coming of the *Slavi*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Justinian*, at what time they inhabited on the banks of the *Ister*, but on the farther side thereof, opposite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, Imperial Provinces. Grown famous by their good Successes against that Empire, their name was taken up by the rest of the *Sarmatians* of *Europe* ; who either wanting room, or not liking their colder Countries, passed on more Westward, and by degrees possessed themselves of those parts of *Germany* which formerly had been inhabited by the *Almans*, *Burgundians* and *Boiarians* ; but were then either quite forsaken, or but ill inhabited, by the drawing down of those people to the *Roman* Provinces, which they better liked. They were divided at, or after their coming thus far West, into four main Bodies : that is to say, the *Winithi*, possessed of the (now) Marquisates of *Brandenburg*, *Misnia*, and *Lusatia*, as also of the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania* ; the *Moravians*, inhabiting in *Moravia*, the Lower *Austria*, and the Upper *Hungary* ; the *Poles* possessed of *Poland*, and the Dukedom of *Silesia* : and finally the *Bohemian Slaves* confined within the limits of that Kingdom only. Under what form of Government they lived at their first coming hither, is not certainly known. But being settled in these Countries of *Poland* and *Bohemia*, it was not long before they were erected into several Kingdoms ; occasioned by the coming of a new body of *Slaves*, *Croats*, and others of those scattered Nations, under the conduct of *Zechius*, a great Prince amongst them, who about the year 640, together with his Brother *Leches* was banished *Croatia*

for a Murther. He being very acceptable to the *Slaves* of *Bohemia*, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own original Extraction, one of the same Language, Laws or Customs that themselves were of, they admitted him to be their Chief or supreme Governour, by whatsoever name he was called at first : in honour and memory of whom, the *Bohemians* in their own Language do call themselves *Zechians*. After his death, the State relapsed again into a confused Anarchy, till the year 670 ; at what time, not respecting the Progeny of *Zechus*, the Founder of their Commonwealth and first Estate, they fastned upon *Crocus*, a man of good esteem amongst them, and elected him to be their Duke. *Crocus vir justus, & magna apud Bohemos opinionis, Princeps electus est*, as *Bertholdus* telleth us. *Crocus* being dead, the *Bohemians* elected *Libussa*, his youngest Daughter ; and of her Government soon wearied, they made choice of *Primislaus* for their Prince, and made him Husband to *Libussa*. A man taken from the Plough (as the Stories tells us) to espouse the Princess : it being ordered and agreed on by her many Suitors, that he (whosoever he was) before whom an Horse, purposely let loose, did first make a stand, should be the Husband of the Lady, and have the Government of the State. The Horse first makes a stand before *Primislaus*, being then at Plough (having perhaps some Mare in his Team ;) and he accordingly is received and admitted their Prince. These, with the other Dukes from the time of *Crocus*, the first Legislator of the *Bohemians*, take in order thus,

The Dukes of *BOHEMIA*.

- 640 1. *Zechius* or *Zeches*.
2. *Crocus*, the Law-giver, or *Lycurgus* of *Bohemia*.
3. *Libussa*, youngest Daughter to *Crocus*, with *Primislaus* her Husband, (a second *Quinctius*) Founder of *Prague*.
4. *Nerimislaus*, Son of *Primislaus* and *Libussa*.
5. *Mnatha*, one of the Sons of *Nerimislaus*, contemporary with *Charles* the Great.
6. *Voricus*, Son of *Mnatha*.
7. *Wenceslaus*.
8. *Bela*.
9. *Nastricus*, Son of *Bela*.
- 900 10. *Borzivoius*, The first Christian Prince of the *Bohemians*, co-temporary with the Emperor *Arnulph*.
11. *Sbitigneus*, Son to *Borzivoius*.
12. *Vladislaus*, Brother to *Sbitigneus*.
13. *Wenceslaus* II. surnamed the Saint, slain by his Brother *Boleslaus*.
14. *Boleslaus*, a wicked and ungodly Prince.
15. *Boleslaus* II. Son of the former, a great advancer of Christianity amongst his people.
16. *Boleslaus* III. one of the Sons of *Boleslaus* the second.
17. *Jaromir*, Son to *Boleslaus* the third.
18. *Udalricus*, Brother of *Boleslaus* the third, and Uncle of *Jaromir*.
19. *Predislaus*, Son to *Udalricus*.
20. *Sbitigneus* II. Son to *Predislaus*.
1061. 21. *Vratislav*, Brother of *Sbitigneus*, whom, for his manifold deserts, the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, created the first King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1086. Whose Successors take thus out of *Bertholdus* and *Dubravins*.

The Kings and Dukes of *BOHEMIA*.

- A. C. 1086 1. *Vratislav*, the Brother of *Sbitigneus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, was by *Henry* the 4th at *Alentz* created King.
2. *Conrade*,

2. *Conrade*, Brother to *Vratislav*, notwithstanding that his Brother had three Sons, was elected Duke of *Bohemia*.
3. *Brecislav*, Son to *Vratislav*, the two Sons of *Conrade* being rejected, is by the *Bohemians* chosen Duke.
- 1100 4. *Borivorus*, the 4th Son of *Brecislav*, is chosen by the *Bohemians*, his eldest Brothers then all living.
- 1109 5. *Sutopulcus*, Cousin-german to *Borivorus*, by the consent and favour of the People, depos'd *Borivorus*, and caused himself to be elected in his place.
6. *Vladislav* II. Brother to *Borivorus*, preferred by the People to the Throne before *Otho* the Brother, and *Henry* the Son of *Sutopulcus*, the last Prince.
- 1159 7. *Sobeslav*, Brother to *Vladislav*, promoted to the State before the Son of *Vladislav*.
8. *Vladislav* III. Son to *Vladislav* the 2d. (the four Sons of *Sobeslav* omitted) is chosen and crowned the second King of *Bohemia* by *Frederick* the Emperor; but deposed by the States, because he was not by them formerly elected, according to their Privileges and Customs.
9. *Uldericus*, the third Son of *Sobeslav*, his elder Brethren yet living, was by the People elected in the room of *Vladislav* and his Son *Frederick*, whom the Emperor *Frederick* had by force established in the Throne.
10. *Sobeslav* II. second Son of *Sobeslav*, was by *Frederick* above-named expelled; and he also by the *Bohemians*.
11. *Conrade*, Grandchild to *Otho*, the Brother of *Sutopulcus*, elected by the *Bohemians* in place of *Frederick*; between which two Princes there was continual War.
12. *Wenceslav*, Uncle unto *Conrade*, and Son of *Otho* afore said, was preferred before many nearer the Succession. Him *Primislav* expelled, but fearing his return, quitted *Prague*.
13. *Henry*, Bishop of *Prague*, a stranger to the Blood, was by a general consent elected Duke.
14. *Vladislav* IV. Brother to *Primislav*, the Son of *Wenceslav* being put by, succeeded *Henry*, and soon after resigned.
- 1199 15. *Primislav*, elected by the *Bohemians*, and by the Emperor *Philip* crowned the third King of *Bohemia* at *Asentz*, was Brother to *Vladislav* the 4th.
- 1248 16. *Ottacarus*, notwithstanding that *Wenceslav* his elder Brother had been crowned in his Father's life-time, was acknowledged King. He was slain in Battel by *Rodolphus* the Emperor near the *Marb*, a River of *Moravia*.
- 1278 17. *Wenceslav* II. Son of *Ottacarus*.
- 1284 18. *Wenceslav* III. Son to *Wenceslav* the second, the last of the *Bohemian* Princes of the masculine Race.
- 1304 19. *Rodolphus*, Son to the Emperor *Albertus*, is by the Potency of his Father, and the election of the States, seated on the Throne, being otherwise a stranger to the Blood-royal of *Bohemia*.
- 1305 20. *Henry*, Duke of *Carinthia*, the Son of *Meinard*, Earl of *Tyrol*, and Husband to *Anne*, the second Daughter of *Wenceslav* the 2d. is chosen by the *Bohemians*: but being weary of his Government, they elect *John* Earl of *Luxemburg*. Finally, *Henry* was murdered by one of his Nephews.
- 1311 21. *John*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, Son to *Henry* the seventh Emperor, and Husband to *Elizabeth*, youngest Daughter to *Wenceslav* the second, is elected, the Lady *Anne* yet living.
- 1346 22. *Charles*, Son to *John*, and Emperor, of that name the fourth, the Author of the Golden Bull.
- 1362 23. *Wenceslav* IV. Emperor also, in whose time the Troubles of the *Hussites* and the Valour of *Zisca* was famous.
- 1418 24. *Sigismund*, Brother to *Wenceslav*, maketh himself King by force; and at his death commendeth *Albertus*, Duke of *Austria*, the Husband of his Daughter *Elizabeth*, unto the States of the Kingdom.
- 1437 25. *Albertus*, Duke of *Austria*, elected upon the commendation of *Sigismund* by the *Bohemian* Lords.
- 1440 26. *Ladislav*, Son to *Albert*, who being the Brother of two Sisters, commended yet one *George Pogibrachius* unto the States, as fittest to succeed him.
- 1458 27. *George Pogibrachius*, neither by Affinity or Consanguinity of the Blood, succeeded. And he, though he had three Sons, yet, for the benefit of his Country, advised the Nobles, after his Death to elect their King from *Poland*.
- 1471 28. *Ladislav* II. Son to *Casimir* King of *Poland*, and to *Elizabeth* the younger Daughter of *Albertus* Duke of *Austria*, the Issue of *Anne* the eldest Sister still living, elected King of *Bohemia*.
- 1516 29. *Ludovicus*, Son to *Ladislav*, Elected and Crowned by the means of his Father, then living, King of *Hungary* also.
- 1526 30. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, Brother to *Charles* the 5th, and Husband to *Anne*, Sister to *Ludovicus*, by his Letters reverſal acknowledged that he was chosen King of *Bohemia* not of any Right, but of meer free Will according to the Liberties of that Kingdom.
- 1565 31. *Maximilian*, eldest Son of *Ferdinand*, was in his Father's life-time, and at his suit, Elected King, anno 1540. into which he actually succeeded on his Father's death.
- 1575 32. *Rodolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*, and the eldest Son to *Maximilian*, elected King.
- 1610 33. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, was at the joint suit of them both nominated and appointed King of *Bohemia*, by the general consent of the States, during his Brother's life-time, viz. anno 1610. which nomination they both protest in their Letters reverſal should not be to the prejudice of the Liberties and ancient Customs of that Kingdom.
- 1618 34. *Ferdinand* II. Archduke of *Austria* and of the House of *Gretz*, was by *Matthias* adopted for his Son, and declared Successor to the Crown of *Bohemia*, but never formally and legally elected: for which cause, amongst others, he was by the States rejected, in like case as *Vladislav* the Third had formerly been.
- 1619 35. *Frederick*, Elector *Palatine*, the strongest German Prince of the *Calvinists*, and most potent by his great Alliances, was elected King of *Bohemia*, and Crowned at *Prague*, together with his Wife, on the fifth day of *November*. This Prince derived his descent from the Lady *Sophia*, Sister to *Ladislav* the second, King of *Poland* and *Bohemia*; and married *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *James* King of Great Britain and *Anne* of Denmark, which *Anne* descended from the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albertus* of *Austria*, and elder Sister to *Elizabeth*, Mother to *Ladislav* the 2d. above-named, from whom the Claim of *Austria* is derived.

1621 36. *Ferdinand III.* Son of *Ferdinand* the second, elected King of *Bohemia* during the Life both of his Father and of *Frederick* the Prince Elector also; after whose death he succeeded in this Kingdom both in Right and Fact; King of *Hungary*, also Archduke of *Austria*, and Emperor of *Germany*, now living, anno 1648. more moderate in his Counsels than his Father *Ferdinand*, and more inclinable to Peace, (though honoured with a more signal Victory against the *Sweeds* in the Battel of *Norlingen*, than his Father was in all his Life) which the Conclusions made at *Munster* are sufficient proof of.

1658 37. *Leopold*, elected King of *Bohemia* after the Death of *Ferdinand* the third his Father, and at this day living, and the Victorious Emperor of *Germany*.

Of the Revenues, Arms, and other things which concern this Kingdom, we shall speak hereafter, when we have took a view of the rest of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2. *MORAVIA* is bounded on the East with *Hungary*, on the West with *Bohemia*, on the North with *Silesia*, and on the South with the Lower *Austria* and the River *Teya*: fenced on the West with the Woods and Mountains of *Bohemia*; part of the *Hercynian* Forest; on the North by some Spurs or Branches of it, called *Arciburgius* by *Ptolomy*; on the two other sides open like an Half-Moon or Semicircle. It is the most fruitful place of Corn in all *Germany*, and hath no small store of Frankincense; which contrary to the nature of it, groweth not on a Tree, but out of the Earth; and that too (which adds much to the Miracle, if *Dubravius* do report it rightly) in the shape and figure of those Parts which Men and Women do most endeavour to conceal.

The former Inhabitants of the Province were the *Marcomanni* and part of the *Quadi*, against whom when *M. Antoninus* the Emperor made War, he had unawares run himself into such a Streight, that his Army was environed with Mountains one way, and Enemies the other. To this (as Calamities seldom go alone) was added the extraordinary Heat and Drought then being. The Emperor thus put to his plunges, came the Captain of his Guard, telling him, that he had in his Army a Legion of *Christians* (*Melicens* he calleth them) which by Prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperor sendeth for them, desiring them to make Supplication for the Army: which they did, and God Almighty that never turneth a deaf Ear to the Prayer of his Servants, when they are either for his Glory, the Churches or their own good, scattered and vanquish'd the *Quadi* with Thunder-shot and Artillery from Heaven, and refresh'd the faint and dying *Romans* with many a gentle and pleasant Shower. This Miracle purchased to that Legion the surname of *καταβολαί*, i. e. the Thunderer, and induced the Emperor to honour Men of that holy Profession, and to make an end of the fourth Persecution, Anno Ch. 174. Thus *Xiphilinus* hath it in his *Dion*: which coming from the Pen of an Heathen, as this Author was, is of more credit in a matter of such concernment unto Christianity, than if it had proceeded from *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other Ecclesiastical Writer.

Places of most note herein are, 1. *Olmuntz*, on the River *Marb* (or *Morava*) the chief Town of the Country, and a small University; near which, out of the Hill *Odenburg* bordering on *Silesia*, springeth the great River of *Odera*, whose course we have before described. This City was taken by the *Sweeds* in 1642, and kept by them till the Peace of *Munster* in 1648. 2. *Brin*, on the River *Swarta*, the Seat of the ancient Marquesses. 3. *Hardisch*, and 4. *Cremser*, both upon the *Marb* or *Morava*. 5. *Znaim*, on the *Teya*. 6. *Niclasberg*, (*Mons Nicolai* in the *Latine*) bordering on the Lower *Austria*. In this

City, this very Year 1688, 250000 Crowns was stop'd by the Emperor, which at length was own'd to be a present from the King of *France*, to the King and Queen of *Poland*, and the Count *de Bethune* his Envoy there. 7. *Iglaw*. 8. *Newburg*. 9. *Weiskirchen*. 10. *Boswilcz*, of which little memorable. 11. *Cradisco*, near to which (and in this place only) the Frankincense is found to grow in the shape and form before mentioned.

The old Inhabitants hereof (as before is said) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*: after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Slaves*, who, from their habitation on the River *Morava*, called themselves *Moravians*, and the Country which they dwelt in by the name of *Moravia*, (the *Dutch* call it *Merherer*) They were extended at that time over all the Lower *Austria*, to the banks of the *Danow* on the South, and as far as to the River *Tibiscus* (overspreading a great part of the Upper *Hungary*) towards the East. Governed at the first by their own Kings, the first whose name occurs being *Rastai*, in the time of the Emperor *Lewis* the Godly; by him taken Prisoner, and his Realm made tributary to the Empire. After him succeeded *Harmodurus*, and then *Suentopulcus*; in whose time the *Moravians* and other Nation of the *Slaves* received the Gospel by the preaching of *Cybil* and *Methodius*, two *Gracian* Doctors; officiating all Divine Services in the *Slavonian* or vulgar Language. For which when they made suit to the Pope then being, to whose Authority (as Patriarch of the Western Empire) they were made obnoxious, and that the Pope and Cardinals delay'd the business; a voice was heard, as if it had come from Heaven, saying these words, *Omnis Spiritus laudet Dominum, & omnis Lingua confiteatur ei*. Upon which Miracle their Suit was granted at the last, and a Letter Decretal sent unto that effect from Pope *John* the 8th, to *Suentopulcus* (or *Sfentopulcher*, as some call him) above mentioned. A Privilege by them enjoyed full 200 Years, and then reversed by *Gregory VII.* commonly called Pope *Hildebrand*, in his Letters to *Vratislav* the first King of *Bohemia*, anno 1086.

But to return unto the Story, *Suantobegius*, Son to *Suentopulchus*, succeeded next, deposed, or rather beaten out of his Country, by the Emperor *Arnulph*, for denying the accustomed Tribute. A Prince of great Spirit, and of as great Command; having at one time under him not *Moravia* only, according to the largest Limits, but *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* also. *Arnulph* not able otherwise to effect his purpose, called in the *Hungarians* about the year 892, (though at that time Pagans) by whose help the *Moravian* was subdued, and his Kingdom shattered into pieces; seized on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations, and finally reduced to the present Limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquissate, (but by whom we find not;) one of the Marquesses hereof being *Jodocus Barbatius*, elected Emperor Anno 1410. After whose death, *Sigismund*, his next Heir, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, gave it to his Son-in-law *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, anno 1417, who in the end succeeded him in all his Estates; since which time it hath always gone along with the Crown of *Bohemia*.

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it were *Azure*, an Eagle chequer'd *Or* and *Gules*, membered and langued of the same.

3. *SILESIA*, (or *SCHLESIE*, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the East with *Poland*, on the West with *Lusatia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Moravia*. Wholly encompassed with Mountains, except towards the North, which lets in a sharp Air upon them: the mid-land part being full of Woods, but withal of Minerals.

Chief Cities are, 1. *Jagendorff*, or *Jagerndoff*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius*, of the Family of *Brandenburg*, commonly called the Marquis of *Jagendorff*. The Lands and Estates in his possession were first given by *Ladislav*, King of *Bohemia*, to *George* surnamed *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Frederick* of *Brandenburg*, the first Marquis

Marquis of *Onspach* of this House, for the many good services he had done him. But his Posterity being extinct, they fell to the said *John Georgius*, Brother to *Sigismund* the Elector; proscribed by *Ferdinand* the 2d, for adhering to the party of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine: A Prince of great note and activeness in the beginning of the late German and Bohemian Wars. He died in the year 1624, and was succeeded by *Ernest* his Son, who died in the year 1642 unmarried; so that this Marquisate ought to have returned to the Electoral Family again, but *Ferdinand* II. granted it (as Forfeit) to the Prince of *Lichtenstein*, who still enjoys it, notwithstanding the Pretences of the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

2. *Munsterberg*, which gives the Title of Duke to the Posterity of *George Pogbrachius*, once King of *Bohemia*, advanced by him unto this Honour and a fair Estate, but now extinct. 3. *Glatz*, or *Gletz*, the last Town of *Bohemia* which held out for *Frederick* the Elector against that Emperor. 4. *Glogau*, a strong Town on the River *Oder*. 5. *Neisse*, on a River so named, an Episcopal See. 6. *Breslaw*, in Latin, *Cracovia*, so called from *Cracivus* the Founder of it, once one of the Dukes of this Province, by whose procurement it was made an Episcopal See, Anno 970, or thereabouts. It is situate on the River *Oder*, all the Water wherein could not save it from being burnt down to the Ground, Anno 1341, but it was presently re-edified with a fair Free-stone, and is now one of the prettiest Cities (for the bigness of it) in all *Germany*; fair, populous, and well contrived with open and even Streets, the chief of the Country. 7. *Oppelen*, on the *Oder* also, well Fortified both by Art and Nature, barricadoed by the River on the West, and on the East with good Out-works, strong Walls, and a fair Castle. *Bethleem Gabor*, Vaivod of *Transylvania*, had this City and *Ratibor*, with the Title of a Dukedom and Prince of the Empire, given him by *Ferdinand* the second, in the Year 1623, in exchange for his Title to the Kingdom of *Hungary*, to which he was chosen and Crown'd, in the Year 1619, in opposition to the said *Ferdinand*; which *Bethleem Gabor* died in the year 1629, or as others say 1628, without Children. 8. *Straten*, 9. *Reichenbach*, both made Towns of War since the beginning of the *Bohemian* Troubles.

There are also within this Province the two Seignories of *Prignitz* and *Crossen*, so called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; the two Dukedoms of *Oswitz* and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of *Poland*; as also the Dukedoms of *Lignitz* and *Sweinitz*, all of them bearing the names of their principal Towns: of which two last, *Sweinitz* is in the immediate possession of the Kings of *Bohemia*; and *Lignitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an Homager and Tributary of that King.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Marsigni*, *Burii*, *Gothini*, and some part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eastern parts of *Germany* amongst the *Slaves*, it was laid unto the Dukedom or Kingdom of *Poland*, continuing a part thereof till the time of *Vladislaus* the 2d, who, being driven out of his Kingdom by his Brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbarossa* estated in this Country, to be held under the Sovereignty of the King of *Poland*. Divided betwixt his 3 Sons, and afterwards subdivided amongst their Posterities, according to the ill Custom of *Germany*, it became broke at last into 14 Dukedoms, of 1. *Breslaw*, 2. *Oppelen*, 3. *Ratibor*, 4. *Cessin*, 5. *Bethom*, 6. *Glogau*, 7. *Sagan*, 8. *Olentz*, 9. *Steinaw*, 10. *Falkenburg*, 11. *Sweinitz*, 12. *Lignitz*, 13. *Oswitz*, and 14. *Zator*. Of all which, only the two last do remain to *Poland*; the five first being made subject to the Kings of *Bohemia* by *Wenceslaus* the second, the five next by King *John* of *Luxemburg*; *Lignitz* remaining in the possession of a Proprietary Duke: (as before was said) and *Sweinitz* given to *Charles* the fourth, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, by the Will and Testament of *Boleslaus* the last Duke: all *Silesia* by this means (except the Dukedoms of *Oswitz*, and *Zator*) being added to the Crown

of *Bohemia*, of which it is rather an incorporate than subject Province.

Olentz, mentioned in the eighth place above, was by the Marriage of *Silvius Nimrod*, Son of *Julius Frederick*, Duke of *Wirtemberg*, with *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Charles Frederick* the last Duke of *Olentz* and *Munsterberg*, was conveyed to this Family in 1646.

1664 2. *Christian Ulrick* his Son, born in 1652, the 9th of April, succeeded his Father *Christian Ulrick*; his eldest Son was born the 11th of February, 1674. and *Leopold Victor*, the second Son, May the 12th, 1675.

4. *LOUSATIA*, by the Dutch called *Lausnitz*, is bounded on the East with *Silesia*, on the West with *Misnia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Bohemia*. The Country is rough and full of Woods, yet plentiful enough of Corn, and of such Fruits as naturally arise out of the Earth: so populous and thick set with People, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arm 20000 Foot as good as any in *Germany*. Most commonly it is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*; the first confining on *Bohemia*, the last on *Brandenburg*.

Places of most note in the *Higher Lausnitz* are, 1. *Bautzen*, (*Badissinum* the Latins call it) the first Town attempted and taken in by the Duke of *Saxony*; when he took upon him the Execution of the Emperor's Bann against *Frederick* Elector Palatine, then newly chosen King of *Bohemia*. The poor Prince in the mean time was in an ill condition, the *Saxon* being the head of the *Lutheran*, and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Popish* Party, arming both against him. So jealous are both sides of the active and restless *Calvinian* Spirit, as to leave no means unassayed for the suppressing of it. Seated it is upon the Spire, and for the most part is the Seat of the Governor for the King of *Bohemia*. 2. *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Neisse*, which gave the Title of Duke to *John*, Brother of *Sigismund*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and Father of *Elizabeth*, the last Dutchess of *Luxemburg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundy*. A fine neat Town, well frequented, and strongly Fortified; Founded about the year 1231, and not long after so consumed by a merciless Fire, Anno 1301. *ut ne unica domus remanserit*, as my Author hath it, that there was not one House left of the old Foundation. But it was presently re-built in a more beautiful form, and of more strong materials, than before it was, both publick and private Buildings very neat and elegant. 3. *Zittau*, on the same River, bordering on *Bohemia*. 4. *Lawben*, 5. *Lubben*, 6. *Canitz*, of which little memorable, but that together with the former they may make up those six Towns which are confederate together in a stricter League for the mutual Defence and Preservation, but under the Protection, and with the Approbation, of the Kings of *Bohemia*. Then in the *Lower Lausatia* there is, 7. *Spremburg*, so named from its situation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Country, and in ancient times was called *Suevus*; supposed by some (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from them; that potent Nation inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elbe*. 8. *Tribel*, upon the *Neisse*. 9. *Cottbuse*, upon the *Spre*, or *Suevus*, which, together with some parts of the *Lower Lausatia*, belongs unto the Marqueses of *Brandenburg*.

The first Inhabitants hereof are by some supposed (and but supposed) to be the *Benones* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of these Parts of *Germany* amongst the *Slaves*, made subject to the *Winithi*, or *Venedi*, the greatest and most spreading Nation of all these People. When and by whom first made a Marquisate, I am not able to say for certain; but sure I am, it hath been very much given to the change of Masters. It had first a Marquis of its own; *Conrad* the Marquis hereof, who died in the year 1156, being by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth made Marquis of *Misnia*, added it unto that Estate: and it remain'd for

or some time united to it. After, being seized on by the *Poles*, it was sold to *Frederick* the 2. Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburg*; who, keeping *Cottbus* and some other Towns bordering next upon him in his own possession, surrendered the rest on Composition to *George* King of *Bohemia*, claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the 4. to *Vratislav* the first *Bohemian* King, *An.* 1087. A Grant on which no Possession followed, unless it were the Homage and acknowledgment of the Princes of it, holding it afterwards of that Crown as the Lord in chief.

Thus have we brought these four Provinces into the power and possession of the Kings of *Bohemia*, remaining still distinct in their Laws and Governments, (as several limbs of the great Body of the *Slaves* made up into one Estate) though joyned together in the person of one supreme Governour, who is severally admitted and acknowledged by each Province distinctly for it self, and not by any one of them in the name of the rest. Out of all which so laid together there may be raised the sum of three millions of Crowns yearly for the Kings Revenues, towards the defrayment of all Charges.

In the year 1623, *Ferdinand* the second, Granted this Marquisate to *John George* 1. Duke of *Saxony*, for his Service performed against the Elector *Palatine*. And this Grant being confirmed by the Peace of *Munster*, in the year 1652, the Duke of *Saxony* Granted the Lower *Lusatia*, to *Christian* his Son, Administrator of *Merseburg* in *Misnia*, who has several Sons to succeed him, he was living in the year 1684, and his eldest Son was of his own name, and born in the year 1653.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Mars*, a Lion with a forked Tail *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which Arms was first given by *Frederick Barbarossa* to *Vladislav* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*, in regard of the good Service he had done him at the Siege of *Millain*. And though *Vladislav* was deposed by the States of that Kingdom; because never formally and legally elected by them; yet his Successors keep those Arms to this very day.

15. BRANDENBURG.

THE Marquisate of *BRANDENBURG* is bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Poland*, on the West with the Dukedom of *Saxony*, on the North with *Pomerania* and part of *Mecklenburg*, and on the South with *Misnia*, *Lusatia* and *Silesia*. So called from *Brandenburg*, the chief Town of it, and because once the *Marches* of the Empire against the *Slaves*: divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *Middle Marches*, according as they were extended farther towards *Poland* by little and little, as the Emperors were able to get ground of those potent people.

The Country containeth in length from East to West 60 *Dutch* or 240 *Italian* miles, and is of correspondent breadth; the whole compass making up 540 miles of the last account. Within which Tract are comprehended 55 Cities and walled Towns, 80 Towns of Trade, (*Mark-Streten*, or Market-Towns, as they commonly call them) 38 Castles or Mansion-houses of Noblemen, 17 Monasteries, and 10 Parks well stored with Beasts of game; the Country otherwise (considering the extent thereof) being but thinly inhabited, nor well provided of necessaries, excepting Corn, of which these North-East Countries afford very great plenty.

The Religion of this Country is for the most part according to the form and Doctrine of *Luther*; first introduced and authorized by Marquis *Joachim* the first. In which Estate it continued till the Breach betwixt *George-William*, the Father of the present Elector, and the *Palatine* of *Nemburg*. At which time the *Palatine*, having married a Daughter of *Bavaria*, the most potent Prince of the Popish Party, reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*, the better to assure himself to the Aid of *Spain*: and this Elector, having married a Sister

of *Frederick* the fifth, Prince Elector *Palatine*, the most Potent Prince of the *Calvinians*, declared himself to be of that party and Opinion, the better to assure himself to the Aid of *Holland*, *Anno* 1614. But when on the persuasion of his Wife he set out an Edict for suppressing the *Lutheran* Forms, and authorising the *Calvinian* only throughout his Dominions, (which was in the year 1615.) the people of this Marquisate rose in Arms against him: the difference being thus composed, that the *Lutheran* Forms only should be used in all the Churches of the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, for the contentation of the people; and that the Marquis should have the exercise of his new Religion for himself, his Lady, and those of their opinion, in his private Chappels.

1. *ALTE-MARK*, or the *OLD-MARK*, so called because the ancient *Marches* of the Empire against the *Slaves*, lieth betwixt *Lunenbergh* and the *Elb*, with which it is bounded on the East. The chief Towns thereof are, 1. *Tangermund*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tanagra* or *Angra*; honoured sometimes with the Residence of *Charles* the fourth. 2. *Steindall*, the chief of these Old *Marches*. 3. *Soltwedel* divided into the Towns, the old and the new. 4. *Gardeleben*, fortified with the strong Castle of *Eishimp*. 5. *Osterburg*, 6. *Senhusen*, said by some, but falsely, to be called from the *Senones*, whom they would make the old inhabitants of this Country, (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation) 7. *Werb*, of which little memorable.

In the *MIDDLE MARCHES* or *UPPER-MARK*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Oder*, the Towns of most note are, 1. *Butzam*, a Commendatory of the Temples in former times. 2. *Spandam* upon the *Spre*, a well-fortified piece. 3. *Oderburg*, called so from that River, on which it is situate; remarkable for a strong Castle built by Marquis *Albert* the second, at which all Passengers by Water are to pay their Toll. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Bishop's See, the Seat of the Lords Marchers in former times, taking name from hence: by some said to be built by *Bremus*, Captain of the *Gauls*; more truly by one *Brando*, a Prince of the *Franconians*, *Anno* Ch. 140. 5. *Francford* (for distinction sake) named *ad Oderam*, on which River it is situate; the Soil about it being so plentifully stored with Corn and Wines, that it is not easie to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* be most enamoured of it. It was made an University by Marquis *Joachim*, *Anno* 1506, and it is also a flourishing and famous Empory, though not comparable to that of the other *Francford* seated on the *Maine*. 6. *Berlin* the ordinary Residence, of the Marquis, situate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suevus*) which rising in *Lusatia*, falleth into the *Albis*. This City was built by *Albertus Prusus*, Prince of *Anhalt*, and first Hereditary Marquis of *Brandenburg*, in the year 1142. 7. *Havelburg*, on the River *Havil*, a Bishop's See, who acknowledgeth the Arch-Bishop of *Magdeburg* for his Metropolitan.

3. In the *NEW-MARK*, extended from the *Oder* to the Borders of *Poland*, and called so because last conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire. There is *Custrin*, a very strong and defensible Town, seated on the two Rivers *Warta* and *Odera*, fortified with great charge by *John*, Son of Marquis *Joachim*, and by him intended for his Seat. 2. *Sonneberg*, and 3. *Landsparg*, both upon the *Warta*. 4. *Soldin* in former times the chief of this *Mark*. 5. *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6. *Falkenburg*, a strong Town, and fortified with as strong a Castle, towards *Pomerania*.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were the *Varini* and *Naithones*, part of the great Nations of the *Suevi*; and after them the *Helvoldi*, *Wilini*, *Berani*, and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, the greatest Nation of the *Slaves*, who possessed themselves of it. But *Brandenburg* being won from them by the Emperor *Henry* the first, *An.* 620. (at what time the Gospel was first preached amongst

amongst them) the Country hereabouts was given by him to *Sigefride* Earl of *Rengelheim*, (eldest Son of *Theodorick*, the second Earl of *Oldenburg*) a valiant Gentleman with the Title of *Marquiss* or Lord *Marcher*, Anno 927, upon condition that he should defend those Marches (the *Old Mark*, as they now call it) against the *Slaves*. These *Marquisses* were at the first Officiary, at the appointment of the Emperor, and to him accountable. *Sigard*, the fourth from *Sigefride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the first Elector of these *Marquisses*, and *Udo* the second of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the last that held this Honour at the Emperor's pleasure; that Dignity after his decease being made hereditary in the person of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, surnamed *Ursus*, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*. Which *Albert* having very much enlarged his Border by the Conquest and extermination of the *Slaves*, caused the unpeopled Country to be planted with the new *Dutch* Colonies out of *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, and those parts of the *Netherlands*. The House of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the fourth, in was given by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to *Lewis* his Son; by *Otho* the Brother of that *Lewis*, sold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charles* the fourth; by *Sigismund*, the Son of *Charles*, to *Jodocus* *Marquiss* of *Moravia*: but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the said *Sigismund* conferred on *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, in recompence of his faithful service in the Wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In his posterity it remaineth, but much increased in Power and Patrimony by the additions of the Dukedoms of *Prussia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the *Marquissates* of *Onspach* and *Jagerndorff*, the Earldom of *Marck* in *Westphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*, the Lordships of *Prignitz* and *Crossen* in *Silesia*, the Towns of *Hoff* and *Culmbach* in *Voitland*, with the County of *Raphin*, and the Town and Territory of *Cotthuse* in the *Lower Lusatia*, inso-much that this is now the most powerful Family in all *Germany*. The *Marquisses* hereof from *Sigefride* to *Albert*, the Son of *Urse*, &c. follow in this order.

The *Marquisses* of *BRANDENBURG*.

A. C.

- 627 1. *Sigefride*, Earl of *Rengelheim*, made the first *Marquiss* of this Border by the Emperour *Henry* the first.
2. *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the first.
3. *Bruno*, Earl of *Within*, created *Marquiss* hereof by the same Emperor.
4. *Hugh* the Son of *Bruno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.
5. *Sigard*, the Brother of *Hugh*, made by the the same Emperor the first *Marquiss-Elector*.
6. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Sigard*, outed of his Command by *Mistivoin* one of the Princes of the *Slaves*, named *Obotriti*.
7. *Udo*, Earl of *Soltwedel*, (the *Slaves* being beaten and expelled) created *Marquiss* and *Elector* by *Conrade* the 2.
8. *Udo* II. Son of *Udo* the first, proscribed by *Henry* the 4. for joynng with *Rodolph* Duke of *Schwaben* in the War against him.
9. *Primislaus*, King of the *Obotriti*, (the Ancestor of the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*) was advanced unto these Honours by the said *Henry* the 4. and held them unto his death. After which it was made hereditary by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, in the Person of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the Son of *Ursus*.
- 1152 10. *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the first hereditary *Marquiss*, Father of *Bernard*, who was created *Elector* and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*.
11. *Otho* Son of *Albert*.
12. *Otho* II. Son of *Otho* the 1.

13. *Albert* II. Brother of *Otho* 2.
14. *John*, Son of *Albert* the 2.
15. *John* II. Son of *John* the 1.
16. *Conrade*, Brother of *John* the 2.
17. *John* III. Son of *Conrade*.
18. *Waldemar*, Brother of *John* the 3.
19. *Waldemar* II. Nephew of *Waldemar* the 1. by his Brother *Henry*.
20. *John* IV. Brother of *Waldemar* the second, the last *Marquiss* of the House of *Anhalt*; the *Marquissate* escheating to the Empire for want of Heirs.
21. *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, created *Marquiss* and *Elector* of *Brandenburg* by his Father, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the said escheat.
22. *Lewis* II. surnamed the *Roman*, on the Resignation of his Brother, succeeded in the *Marquissate* and *Electoral* Dignity.
23. *Otho*, Brother to *Lewis* the first and second, who sold the *Marquissate* and *Electoral* Dignity to *Charles* the fourth.
24. *Wenceslaus*, Son of *Charles* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia*, and Emperor of the *Romans*.
25. *Sigismund*, Brother of *Wenceslaus*, Emperor of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxenburg*; who sold this *Marquissate* to *Jodocus* *Marquiss* of *Moravia*, and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the same on.
- 1417 26. *Frederick*, Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, solemnly invested herein at the Council of *Constance* Anno 1417, for which Investiture he paid unto the Emperor the sum of 400000 Crowns. This Prince was born in the year 1372, he was of a martial disposition, and served the Emperor in his Wars, and after this he made Wars with the Earls of *Pomerania*, and the *Hussites*.
- 1415 } 27. *Frederick* II. Son of *Frederick* the first, to whom the Emperor *Frederick* the 3. gave the Dukedom of *Pomeran*. He was born in 1413, and was the second Son, *John* his Elder Brother, chosing a private Life before the Cares of Government. In 1446, he refused the Kingdom of *Poland*, when it was offered to him, and in 1468 that of *Bohemia*. In 1461, he made War with the *Hussites* for *Lusatia*. In 1470, he went into *Palestine* and died there the next year.
- 1470 28. *Albert*, Brother of *Frederick* the 2. called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, born in the year 1455, the 2d. of *August*, surnamed *Cicero*, relinquished to *Rugenslaus* the 10. the possession of *Pomeran*; but his Successors ever since have retained the Title and kept on foot their Pretensions to it. From *Frederick* his second Son descended *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, *Frederick* the first *Marquiss* of *Onspach*, *George* the first *Marquiss* *Jagerndorff*, and *Albert* called the *Alcibiades* of *Germany*, who so harassed *Franconia* in the days of *Charles* the fifth. He was born the 24th of *November* 1414, and was of great Authority, that the Emperor would do nothing without his advice. He confirmed the League of Succession between *Hess* and *Saxony*: He died in the year 1486, leaving *John* his Son, his Successor, who had now already Administred the *Electorate* by his appointment Ten Years, whilst he lived privately in *Franconia*, and considered the actions of his former Life. *Frederick*, another of his Sons, Founded the Family of *Franconia*.
- 1476 29. *John*, Son of *Albert*.

* E c c

- 1499 30. *Joachim*, Son of *John*, who founded the University of *Francford*, Anno 1506, and authorized the Reformation of Religion in his time begun. Born the 21th of *February* 1484, a Learned Prince. In the year 1509, the *Hamburgers* begged his Protection.
- 1535 31. *Joachim II.* Son of *Joachim* the first, was born the 9th. of *January* 1505. In 1539, he embraced the Reformation, which he Regulated by a Decree in the year 1545. In 1542, he was the Emperors General against the *Turks*, a Nation which he hated.
- 1571 32. *John George*, Son of *Joachim* the second, born the 11th of *September* 1525, he was a Peaceable Prince, and so afforded nothing of any great remark.
- 1598 33. *Joachim Frederick*, Son of *John George*, born the 27th of *January* 1546, he succeeded his Father in the Electorate in the year 1606, as *Shewartus* faith.
- 1608 34. *John Sigismund*, Son of *Joachim Frederick*, who had to Wife the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albert Frederick* the second Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Mary Eleanor* his Wife, eldest Daughter of *William* the first, Duke of *Cleve*. He was born the 8th of *November*, 1552. In his time the Dukedoms of *Juliers*, *Cleve* and *Monts* fell vacant, for which he had various Wars. In 1614, he obtained part of *Prussia* from the *Poles*, but upon hard Terms. He died the 13th of *December* 1619.
- 1620 35. *George-William*, Son of *John Sigismund* and the Lady *Anne*, claiming in her right the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the Earldoms of *Mark* and *Ravensburg*, and the Seignior of *Ravensstein*; which he possessed a while, divided with his Cousin *Wolfgangus* Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Magdalen* the younger Sister of *Mary-Eleanor*. But falling out about their Partage, the Palatine of *Newburg* called in the *Spaniard*, and the Father of this Marquis, in behalf of his Son, called in the Confederate States of the *Netherlands*, to assert their Titles. After the death of *Bugslaus* the last Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have succeeded also in that Estate, then possessed by the *Swede*. Of the Agreement made between them, and the great Accrument thereby following to the House of *Brandenburg*, we shall speak more there. This Prince was born the 3d. of *November* 1595, he at the first joyned with *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden* against the Emperor, but in 1639, he broke with the *Swedes* on the account of *Pomerania*. He died in *Prussia* in the year 1640.
- 1640 36. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William*, Elector of *Brandenburg*. Born the 6th of *February* 1620, was a Prince of great Prudence, Piety and Courage, and had a great share in the affairs of *Germany*; he succeeded his Father the 21th of *November* 1640, and Died the 9th of *May* 1688, in the 68th year of his Age, and the 49th of his Government being succeeded by
- 1688 37. *Frederick William II.* his eldest Son then living, who was born the 1st. of *July* 1657, succeeded his Father the 29th of *April*, 1688. His eldest Son now living, is *Frederick William*, who was born the 4th of *August* 1688.

The Territories of this Family are the greatest, as before is said, of any in *Germany*, but a great part thereof is very barren, and his Subjects in those parts as poor as the Country; much of his new accessions yielding little but the Titles only. So that neither in Revenue or Power he is able to keep rank with the Duke of

Saxony: his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmost to 200000*l.* per annum, which is but half of the Receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*.

The Growth of the Family of *BRANDENBURG*.

Conrade Earl of *Zollern*, in the middle of the 12th Century, Married *Anne Vohburg* Heiress of the *Burgund* of *Norimberg*, and obtained the Investiture of that Honour from *Frederick Barbarossa* Emperor of *Germany*. To him succeeded *Frederick I.* his Son who died in 1218. *Conrad 2.* *Frederick 2.* Brother of *Conrad 2.* *Conrad 3.* *Frederick 3.* his Brother, *John*, *Frederick 4.* Brother of *John*. *John 2.* *Frederick 5.* which last was the Father of *Frederick* the 6th, who in the year 1415, or 1417, was made the first Elector of *Brandenburg*. Of these Princes *Frederick* the 3d. added to his Inheritance *Baruth*, and the Castle of *Cadolzburg* in the Dukedom of *Meran*. In 1251, he obtained of *Conrad* the 4th Emperor, the City of *Cressen*. In 1258, he purchased *Uffenheim*, *Birnsberg*, and *Etinghausen*. In 1261, he obtained the Prefecture of *Aurach*, in 1265 *Munch Steinach*, in 1273, *Eckelsdorf*, *Wendelstem*, *Schnepfenreuth*, *Schniklingen*. In 1280, he gained into his hands, the Prefecture of *Burkburnheim* and *Dachsbach*. 1282, *Neustad am Rauhen Culm*, *Zenckerheim*, *Eilbach* and *Bruck*. In 1285, *Neustad an der Aisch*. In 1290, *Swernitz* was bought, which belonged to the Earls of *Orlamund*, and about the same time this Family became Advocates of the Monastery of *Heilbrun*. In 1292, *Conrade* and *Frederick Burgraves*, bought *Roth*, *Rothstall* and *Winsbach*. About the year 1317, *John Burgrave* bought *Pegnitz*, &c. which belonged before to the King of *Bohemia*, and he obtained of the Marquis of *Misnia*, *Thirsheim*, and six other Mannors. In 1321, *Frederick 4th.* added *Wohn Siedel*, and in 1326, he bought *Grunlach*, *Bruck*, *Hochstedt*, In 1328, *Stauf* and *Ensfeld*, in 1331 *Ansbach*. This Prince standing by *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, against *Frederick* the 3d, and he took many of the Nobility of *Austria* Prisoners. And he dismiss'd them without Ransom, upon Condition they should hold their Estates of him and his Heirs as Fees which is still observed. In 1336, *John 1.* added *Culembach*, *Plasenburg*, and *Himmelsron*, in 1347 *Weissenstadt*, and the City of *Craillsheim*. In 1364, *Frederick* the 5th, added *Swabach* and five other places. In 1417, The Electorate of *Brandenburg*, which then contained the *Old March*, *High*, *Middle March*, and *Prignitz*, and by a War with *Pomerania* he got *Uckermarch*. In 1455, *Frederick 2.* Elector, won from *George* King of *Bohemia*, in a War, *Corbus*, and some other places in *Lusatia*. In 1472, the Dukedom of *Crosnen* was Mortgaged, and after sold to this Family. In 1525, *Albert* Master of the Teutonic Order in *Prussia*, had it turned into a Dukedom, dependant on the Crown of *Poland*, and was made the first Duke of *Prussia*, and the same year *Zadislans* King of *Bohemia*, gave *George Gagerndorff* or *Karnow*, a Territory in *Silesia*. And in 1532, he gained the Fraternal League of the Dukedoms of *Opplen* and *Ratibor* in *Silesia*. In 1524 *Joachim 1.* got into his hands the *New March*, which the *Teutonic* Knights had enjoyed many years as a Mortgage, and he annexed *Rupin* an Earldom to the Electorate, upon the Death of *Wibman* the last Earl. In 1609, *John Sigismund*, Elector by Marriage, got the Right of the Dukedoms of *Cleves*, *Juliers*, and *Monts*, and the Earldoms of *Mark*, and *Ravensburg*, which in 1666, were yielded to the Duke of *Newburg*, except *Cleves* and *Mark*. In 1637, *Pomerania* fell to this House by the Death of *Bogilans*, but the *Swedes* deprived him of a great part of it; in lieu of which, in 1648, were given to *Frederick William* Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Dukedoms of *Magdeburg*, the principality of *Halberstad*, *Minden* and *Camin*. In 1657, he obtained the full Right of *Prussia* from the *Poles*. In 1679, by the Treaty of *Nimmegen*, he gained from the *Swedes* that part of *Pomerania*, which lieth beyond the *Oder*, 1672 the Earldom *Regenstein*, *Camin*, 1684, *Ernest Bogislans*, Prince of *Crojen* Dying, all his Estates were added to the Electorate, and in 1686, *Snibulj* was added by a Treaty with the Emperor. This

This Family on the other hand, has suffered these diminutions. In 1427. *Frederick* the 6th sold the City of *Norimberg*. In 1535, *George* delivered up to *Ferdinand* the 1st. the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor*, for 13000 *Hungarian Ducats*, and in 1625, *John George* being proscribed, lost *Jagerndorff*.

The Pretences of this Family to *Juliers* and *Monts*, were extinguished by a Treaty in 1666, as also that of *Jagerndorf*, in lieu of which they had *Suibusy*. There is a League of mutual Succession between this Family, and the Elector of *Saxony*, and the Landgrave of *Hess*, and *Frederick* the 3d. has granted to it the expectation of the Succession of the Dukedoms of *Holstein*, *Meckeburg* and the principality of *Anhalt*, when ever they become vacant.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membered and beaked *Or*.

16. P O M E R A N I A.

PO M E R A N I A is bounded on the East with *Prussia*, from which it is parted by the River *Weyssel*, or *Vistula*; on the West with *Mecklenburg*, divided from it by the River *Bartze*; on the North with the *Baltick Sea*, extended on the Coast hereof for the space of 200 *English miles*; and on the South with the Marquisate of *Brandenburgh*. So named from the *Pomortzi*, or *Pomerania*, a Nation of the *Slaves*, to whose share it fell; or from the situation of it on the Sea-shore, as the word in the *Slavonian* doth seem to import.

The Country is for the most part plain, abundantly fruitful in Corn, carried hence to *Dantzick*, and transported thence to all parts of Christendom in their times of Scarcity: yielding also good store of Pasturage, and great Herds of Cattle; with plenty of Butter, Cheese, Honey, and some reasonable quantities of Flax. Populous it is, and those people of a strong Constitution, as living under a sharp and piercing Air. The whole is divided into the Continent, and the Islands: the Continent into 1. the *Upper Pomeran*, bordering upon *Mecklenburg*, extended from the *Bartze* to the River *Oder*; 2. the *Lomer*, reaching from the *Oder* to that part hereof which is now called 3. *Pomerellia*, betwixt it and *Prussia*, subject of long time to the Crown of *Poland*, and there we shall hear farther of it.

Chief places in the *U P P E R* are, 1. *Bardt*, at the mouth of the River *Bartze*, taking name from thence; a well-traded Town, and many times the Seat of the Dukes of this hithermost *Pomeran*. 2. *Wolgast*, upon the *Baltick Sea*, over against the Isle of *Usedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomeran*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomeran Wolgast*; the first Town taken in by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his famous War for relief of *Germany*, Anno 1630. 3. *Stralsund*, a Town of great Trading and much resort, seated upon the same Sea also, opposite to the Isle of *Rugen*; a Town of great name in the course of the *German Wars*. The Emperor besieging this Town in the year 1629, *Gustavus Adolphus* was called in, who preserved it from the Emperor, but became Master of it himself, and by the Treaty of *Munster*, it was assigned to the *Swedes*, but in the year 1678, the Duke of *Brandenburgh* took and burnt it; and in 1679, it was restored by Treaty to the *Swedes*. 4. *Gripswald*, on the same Sea, betwixt *Wolgast* and *Stralsund*, made an University, anno 1456. 5. *Anclam*, upon the River *Pone*. 6. *Tribbessee*, situate on a Lake out of which the said River hath its course.

Then in the *LOWER Pomeran* there is 7. *Camin*, an Episcopal See, situate on the *Baltick* shore, over against the Isle of *Wollin*. 8. *Colberg*, a strong Town on the same shore also, at the fall of the *Perfant* into the Sea. 9. *Coslin*, the last Sea-Town of this Tract lying towards *Prussia*. 10. *Stargard*, on the *Ina*, more within the Land; as is also 11. *Griffenberg* upon the *Kega*, and 12. *Stetin* on the *Oder*, once a poor fisher-Town, now the Metropolis of this part of the Country; rising to this greatness (after the embracing of Christianity) by the fall of *Vineta*, formerly the chief Mart-Town of all these parts; the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of the Lower *Po-*

merania, the Dukes of *Pomeran-Stetin*, as for distinction sake they are used to call them. *Gustavus Adolphus*, in the year 1630, was put in possession of this Town, by the last Duke of *Pomerania*, *Bogislaus* who dying soon after, the *Swedes* kept it till the year 1677, when after a sharp Siege, it was taken by the Duke of *Brandenburgh*, and restored by the Treaty of *St. Germaine*, in the year 1679 to the *Swedes*. The *Brandenburger* had before in the year 1659, attempted the recovery of this important City in Conjunction with the Imperialists, but without any success. And he got nothing now by taking it, but the Glory of the Victory, the *French* taking care that no body shall be the better for a War (tho' their Allies) but themselves.

The Islands hereunto pertaining are those of *Rugen*, *Wollin*, *Usedom*, touched upon before, but now more punctually to be handled. That of most note is *Rugen*, over-against *Stralsund*, from which it is divided only by a narrow Streight, in length seven *Dutch miles*, and as much in breadth; so that the Compass of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 *German*, or 100 *Italian miles*; and yet it was once bigger than it is. But in the year 1309, by the force of an outrageous Tempest, a great part of it lying towards the South-east, as far as to the Isle of *Ruden*, (then conjunct hereto) was torn away, and sunk so deep into the bottom of the Sea, that now the greatest Ships that be sail over it. The Island is plentiful of Corn, the Granary of *Stralsund*, as they call it commonly; and reasonably well stored with Cattle; full of Bays, Creeks, and winding Shores, with many and vast Promontories thrusting into the Sea, which gives them great increase of Fishing. Anciently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third to *Bogislaus* and *Barnimus* Dukes of *Pomeran*: continuing ever since part of that Estate. The chief Town of it is called *Bergen*, situate in the midst of the Island, but not containing above 400 Families. Others of less note and estimation being, 2. *Sogart*, 3. *Wick*, 4. *Bingst*, &c. small Towns compared with Villages upon the Continent, but the best they have. And yet so populous is the Island, that they are able to arm 7000 good fighting men if there be occasion. This Island was seized by *Gustavus Adolphus* in the year 1630, together with *Stralsund*, in 1678, it was conquered by the *Danes*, but in 1679, restored to the *Swedes*, tho' the *Danes* pretend a very ancient Right to it, it having been conquered by *Christopher II.* King of *Denmark*, in the year 1322, and after that in 1438.

The second of the three, in repute and bigness, is that of *WOLLIN* or *VOLLINUM*, situate over against *Camin*: so called from *Wollin* the chief Town, (*Julicum* it is called in *Latine*) made an Episcopal See by *Wartislaus*, the first Christian Prince of this Nation, which on the Sackage of this City was removed to *Camin*. A Town which once so flourished in Traffick, that it gave place to none but *Constantinople*: the *Russians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandals*, &c. having here their particular Streets. But being miserably sacked by *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, anno 1170. most of the Trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, since which time it never could come near its former glories.

The last in reputation is that of *USEDOM*, seated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgast*; so called from *Usedom* the chief Town in it, of which little observable. All three were the Habitation of the ancient *Rugii*, who under *Odacer* King of the *Heruli* subverted the Western Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themselves Masters of it, till subdued by the *Goths*. Those which remained in these Islands became after subject to the *Slaves*, and had once Kings of their own: the first whose name occurs in Story being *Criso*, the Son of *Ratze*, a puissant Prince, extending his Dominion into *Holstein*, *Ditmarsh*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built about the year 1100, afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Adolph* the 2. Earl of *Holstein*, by some esteemed the Founder of it. But his Issue-male failing in the year 1326, it fell

by Compact made between them to the Dukes of *Pomeran*, to whom these Islands ever since have continued subject. The two Islands of *Wollin* and *Usedom*, were subjected at the same time with *Rugen* to the Crown of *Sweden*, and are still under it, tho' *Usedom* was taken in the year 1676, by the Duke of *Brandenburg*, but it was restored by the Treaty of *St. Germaine*.

And as for *Pomeren* it self, the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the *Rugii* before mentioned, the *Reudigni*, *Longi-Nani*, and *Longi-Diduni*, with part of the *Peruli* and *Burgundians*; into whose void rooms the *Pomortzi* and other Tribes of the *Winithi* (the most potent Nation of the *Slaves*) did in fine succeed, extending their Dominions to the Banks of the *Vistula*, the parts adjoining unto which, to difference them from *Pomeran*, were called *Pomerellia*. But that part of it being given by *Mestovinus*, the last Prince thereof, dying without Issue, anno 1295, to *Primislaus* Duke of *Poland*; the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of *Pomerania* became confined within narrower Bounds than at first they had. The first Prince of it whom we meet with on good record was one *Barnimus*, of the noble *Gryphonian* Family, anno 933, whose Grandson *Suantiborus* commanded over all this Tract. But his Dominions being parted betwixt his Sons, *Bugislaus*, who had *Pomerellia*, retained the Language and old Customs of the *Slavonians*; *Wartislaus*, who possessed the Residue, conformed himself to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*: the Country being by that means accounted for a part of *Germany*, and added unto the Empire an account thereof in the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, by whom *Bugislaus* and *Casimir*, Sons of *Wartislaus* were made Princes of the Empire and Dukes of *Pomeren*. The Estate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugislaus* and *Otho*, Sons of *Barnimus* the first, and the House of *Otho* failing in the person of *Otho* the third, that part hereof was given by the Emperor *Frederick* the third to *Frederick* the 2. Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburg*, the cause of much Contention amongst these Marquisses and the other House of the Dukes of *Pomeren*, which was thus agreed at last, That both Princes should continue the Arms and Title, the Possession of it to be yielded to the Duke of *Pomeren*, on the failing of whose Issue-male it should descend upon the Heirs of the House of *Brandenburg*. The Succession of these Princes follow in this order.

The Dukes of P O M E R A N I A.

1. *Wartislaus*, the first Christian Prince of the *Pomeranians*, baptiz'd by *Otho* Bishop of *Ramberg*, Anno 1124.
- 1128 2. *Bugislaus*, Son of *Wartislaus*, created by *Frederick Barbarossa* the first Duke of *Pomeren*.
- 1188 3. *Bugislaus* II. Son of *Bugislaus*, planted the void parts of *Pomeren* with *Saxon* Colonies.
- 1222 4. *Barnimus*, Son of *Bugislaus* the second: after whose death *Pomeren* was divided into two Principalities.

Dukes of W O L G A S T.

- 1277 5. *Bugislaus* III. Son of *Barnimus*
- 1319 6. *Wartislaus*, Son to *Bugislaus*.
- 1326 7. *Barnimus* II.
- 1365 8. *Wartislaus* II.
- 1394 9. *Barnimus* III.
- 1405 10. *Wartislaus* III.
- 1456 11. *Ericus*, Son of *Wartislaus*.
- 1459 12. *Bugislaus* III. commonly call'd the Tenth, the younger Princes of both Houses

Dukes of S T E T I N.

- 1277 1. *Otho*, Duke of *Pomeren* *Stetin*.
- 1345 2. *Casimir*, Son of *Otho*.
- 1368 3. *Casimir* II. Son of *Casimir*.
- 1374 4. *Suantiborus*, Brother of *Casimir* the 2d.
- 1413 5. *Casimir* III. Son of *Suantiborus*.
- 1433 6. *Joachim*, Son of *Casimir* the 3d.
- 1451 7. *Otho* III. Son of *Joachim*, died

making up the tale: He succeeded *Otho* the third in that part of *Pomeren*, uniting so the whole into one Estate.

without Issue,
Anno 1464.

- 1523 13. *George*, Son of *Bugislaus* the tenth.
- 1531 14. *Philip*, Son of *George*, in whose time the Reformation made by *Luther* was admitted into *Pomerania*.
- 1583 15. *Bugislaus* IV. but the 13th in the *Dutch* account, Son of *Philip*; his younger Brother *Ernestus-Ludovicus*, having that of *Stetin* for his share.
- 1606 16. *Bugislaus* V. and 14. Son of *Bugislaus* the 4th. born in the year 1580, succeeded in *Pomeren* of *Wolgast*; as *Philip-Julius*, Son of *Ernestus-Ludovicus*, did in that of *Stetin*. After whose Death *Bugislaus* became Lord of all *Pomerania*; in a fair way to have lost all to the prevailing Imperialists; had not the timely coming in of the King of *Sweden* stopped their violent Progress. But *Bugislaus* dying without Issue in the time of the War (in 1637) and in him the Male-issue of the House of *Bugislaus* the tenth being quite extinguished, *George-William*, Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburg*, put in his Claim for the Estate, according to the Compact and Agreement spoken of before. Betwixt whom and the *Swedes* (who under colour of aiding the last Duke, had possessed themselves of all the strongest places in the Country) it was accorded and concluded at the Treaty of *Munster*, that all the Higher *Pomerania*, with the Isles of *Rugin* and *Wollin*, and the Town of *Stetin*, should from thenceforth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*: Lower *Pomeren* to be enjoyed by the House of *Brandenburg*, so long as the Male-issue lasteth; on default whereof, that also to be added unto that Crown: the Arms and Titles to be used by both promiscuously. And in regard the Marquis of *Brandenburg* was to part with the Upper *Pomeren* for the Contentation of the *Swedes*, (without which no firm Peace could be made in *Germany*;) it was also there agreed upon, that the Temporal Estates of the Bishoprick of *Halberstad*, *Minden*, and *Camin*, together with that of *Magdeberg*, (after the decease of the present Bishop) should be forever added to the Possessions of that House; the Marquesses and Electors of it to be thenceforth intituled Dukes of *Magdeberg*, Princes of *Halberstad* and *Minden*. But what will be the issue of these Conclusions future Times must shew.

The Arms of *Pomeren* are a *Gryphon*.

17. M E C K L E N B U R G.

THE Dukedom of *MECKLENBURG* is bounded on the East with *Pomerania*, on the West with *Holstein*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Denmark*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea; and on the South with *Brandenburg* and *Saxon* *Lauenburg*. So called from *Mecklenburg*, or *Megalopolis*; (both names in the several Languages of the *Dutch* and *Greeks*, signifying a great City, a great Town of that name here being in the time of the *Heruli* and the *Vandals*, the old Inhabitants of these Parts) whose chief City it was; but on their leaving of this Country decayed to nothing. The Country is of the same nature as *Pomerania*, and as rich in Corn.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Wismar*, a noted Port, on a Creek or Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, raised out of the Ruines of old *Mecklenburg* before-mentioned, about the year 1240. The Haven hereof is capable of the greatest Vessels, to which it gives a safe and assured Station, whence the name of *Wismar*; the word signifying, in the *Slavonian* Language, *idem ac certum mare*, (as my Author hath it) as much as a quiet or safe Sea. Now one of the *Hanse*-Towns, and being it lies conveniently for the use of the *Swedes*, allotted to that Crown by the Treaty of *Munster*; the Duke of *Mecklenburg* being in recompence thereof to have the Temporalities of the

the Bishopricks of *Swerin* and *Ratzenburg*. This City in the year 1675 was taken by the *Danes*, and though by the Treaty in 1679 it was to have been restored to the *Swedes*, yet the Crown of *Denmark* still keeps it, as *Bau-Brand* faith. It became endued with the Privileges of a City in the year 1266 by *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, (it having been four Years before burnt down) to encourage the rebuilding of it. The *English* Fugitives under the Reign of *Queen Mary* were ill used here in 1554, faith *Hofman*. 2. *Swerin*, seated upon the South side of the Lake so named; an Episcopal See, and honoured with giving the Title of a Barony to the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1630, and restored to the Duke of *Mecklenburg* by the Treaty of *Munster*, in 1648. 3. *Malchow*, first walled by *Niclot* Prince of the *Vandals*, Anno 1270. 4. *Ratzenburg*, an Episcopal See, spoken of before. 5. *Rostock*, the next in reputation of all the *Hanse-Towns* to *Lubeck* and *Danzick*; large, rich, and much frequented by all sorts of Merchants; in compass almost six *English* Miles, situate on the River *Warn*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*; honour'd with a University, here Founded by *John* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Anno 1419, the first Professors in it being brought from *Exfort* in *Saxony*. *Rostock* was built by one of the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*, in the year of Christ 329, and walled by *Primislaus* another of them in 1160. It was taken by *Erick IV.* King of *Denmark*, in 1286, and restored by *Christopher III.* in 1322, and confirm'd to *Albert* in 1360, by *Waldemar IV.* In 1573, a Sedition brought this City into the hands of its Duke, who, to keep it in order, built a Cittadel in it. In the year 1629, the *Imperialists* took it, and in 1631 the *Swedes* recovered it out of their hands; and by the Treaty of *Munster* it was put into its ancient State. 6. *Stargard*, which once gave the Title of Duke to the younger Princes of this House. 7. *Sarantine*, memorable for a Nunnery there Founded by Duke *Magnus II.* 8. *Lau*, built and fortified by Duke *Henry II.* as an Outwork to *Rostock*, which he had lately bought of *Christopher* then King of *Denmark*. 9. *Sternberg*, of which little memorable. 10. *Fridland*, on the edge of *Pomeran*, not far from *Stargard*, which gave the Title of Duke to *Albert* of *Wallenstein*, after that called Duke of *Fridland*, that eminent and prosperous Commander of the Imperial Forces in the late Wars of *Germany*, who was miserably murdered after all his Services by command of the Emperor. 11. *Fichtel*, both pleasantly and strongly seated on the edge of a Lake. 12. *Damm*, a strong Town on the Marches of *Brandenburg*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Vandals*, with the rest of the *Heruli* and *Burgundians*. But the *Burgundians* being reckon'd as a part of the *Vandals*, were not much took notice of, till their Irruptions on the Borders of the *Roman* Empire made them more considerable: the Princes of these Nations using no other Title than Kings of the *Heruli* and *Vandals*. Of these the first is said to be one *Anthyrus*, Son of an *Amazonian* Lady, who learn'd his first Rudiment of Warfare under *Alexander* the Great. Out of his Loins descended a long Race of Kings, amongst whom *Rhadagnise*, who together with *Alarick* the *Goth* invaded *Italy*, (I know not by what warrant) is accounted one. *Gunderick*, the 17th of these Kings, weary of so cold a Dwelling, passed towards the South; and, having harassed *Gaul* and *Spain*, shipped himself over the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and erected the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*; whose Successors we shall meet with there. By *Vitalaus*, the youngest Son of *Genfericus*, the Son of *Gunderick*, the Line of these Princes is continued; who after mingling with the *Obotriti* and other of the *Slaves*, succeeded into the void places of the *Vandals*, left off the Title of Kings of the *Vandals*, and called themselves Kings of the *Heruli* and *Obotriti*, continuing it to *Pribislaus* or *Primislaus* the second, who wrote himself, *Pribislaus, Dei gratia, Herulorum, Wagriorum, Circipianorum, Palumborum, Obotritorum, Kissinorum, Vandalarumque Rex*, making herein a

general Muster of those Tribes of the *Slaves* and *Heruli* which remained under his command. But he being vanquish'd by *Henry* surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, the Title of King was laid aside; his Successors contenting themselves with that of *Princes*. The Estate was divided betwixt *Henry* and *Niclot*, the Nephews of *Pribislaus* by his Son *Henry*, into two Estates, *Henry* assuming to himself the Title of Prince of the *Obotriti*, and *Niclot* that of Prince of the *Vandals*. But the Posterity of *Niclot* failing in *William* the last of that Line, Anno 1430, his Title with the Lands thereunto belonging fell to *Henry* the Fat, the fourth Duke of *Mecklenburg*, to which Honour *Albert* and *John*, the Sons of *Henry* the fourth, descended from the elder House, had been advanced by the Emperor *Charles* the Fourth at *Prague*, anno 1348. The Succession of which Family from *Pribislaus* take in order thus:

The Princes of the *HERULI*, and Dukes of *MECKLENBURG*.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1158 | 1. <i>Pribislaus</i> , the last King and first Prince of the <i>Heruli</i> , after their Subjection to the <i>Saxons</i> , restored to this Title and his former Estate by the bountiful Conquerors, to be held under the Right and Homage of the House of <i>Saxony</i> . |
| 1179 | 2. <i>Henry</i> , Son of <i>Pribislaus</i> , baptised with all his People in his Father's life-time, by the persuasion of <i>Henry</i> Duke of <i>Saxony</i> and <i>Bavaria</i> , by whom they were restored to their Estates. |
| 1215 | 3. <i>Henry II.</i> Son of the former <i>Henry</i> , dividing the Estate with his Brother <i>Niclot</i> . |
| 1228 | 4. <i>John</i> , surnamed the Divine, so called because created Doctor of Divinity in the University of <i>Paris</i> , whither he was sent by his Father to learn good Arts. |
| 1260 | 5. <i>Henry III.</i> surnamed of <i>Hierusalem</i> , because of his Expedition thither against the <i>Saracens</i> . |
| 1302 | 6. <i>Henry IV.</i> surnamed the Lion, for his Valour and undaunted Constancy. |
| 1319
1329 | 7. <i>Albert</i> and <i>John</i> , the Sons of <i>Henry</i> , going to <i>Prague</i> with a Princely Train to attend on the Emperor <i>Charles</i> the Fourth, were by him created Princes of the Empire, and Dukes of <i>Mecklenburg</i> , Anno 1348. This Prince had a Son called <i>Albert</i> , who was chosen King of <i>Sweden</i> , in opposition to <i>Margaret</i> Queen of <i>Denmark</i> , by whom he was taken Prisoner in the year 1388, and kept Prisoner 7 years; he died in the year 1396. So his younger Son <i>Magnus</i> succeeded his Father in the Duchy. |
| 1380 | 8. <i>Magnus</i> , Son of <i>Albert</i> . |
| 1384 | 9. <i>John</i> , Son of <i>Magnus</i> , the Founder of the University of <i>Rostock</i> , Anno 1419. |
| 1423 | 10. <i>Henry V.</i> surnamed the Fat, who, on the death of <i>William</i> the last Prince of the <i>Vandals</i> , succeeded into his Estate. |
| 1477
1447 | 11. <i>Magnus II.</i> Son of <i>Henry</i> , Founder of the Cathedral Church of <i>Rostock</i> . |
| 1491 | 12. <i>Albert II.</i> Son of <i>Magnus</i> the second. |
| 1503 | 13. <i>Henry</i> the Pacifick, Son of <i>Albert</i> the second, succeeded his Father, and settled the Reformation in this Dukedom: He had two Sons, <i>Magnus</i> and <i>Philip</i> , but they died before him. So the Estate fell to his Brother's Son. |
| 1547 | 14. <i>John Albert</i> , Son of <i>Albert</i> the second, endowed the University of <i>Rostock</i> with the Lands of some dissolved Monasteries, and authorized in his Estates the Reformation of Religion begun by <i>Luther</i> . He died in 1576. |
| 1576 | 15. <i>John III.</i> Son of <i>John Albert</i> . |
| 1592 | 16. <i>Adolph Frederick</i> and <i>John Albert</i> , Sons of <i>John</i> the third, dispossessed hereof by the Emperor |

peror *Ferdinand* the second, anno 1628. their Estates, with the Title of Duke of *Mecklenburg*, being conferred on *Albert of Wallenstein*, Duke of *Fridland*, who had not long enjoyed the Title, when *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, the Assertor of the Liberties of *Germany*, restored it to the proper Owners, in 1631. The Heir to whose Estates is *Gustavus Adolphus*, the only Son and Heir of *John Albert*. *Adolph Frederick* was the Founder of the Line of *Swerin*, (the Family being divided into two Houses) he died in the year 1658, leaving

S W E R I N.

G U S T R O W.

1658 17. *Christian-Lewis*, born in the year 1623, who turn-Roman Catholic in 1663, to qualifie himself for *Isabel Montmorency*, a French Lady of that Religion, though he had a Wife then living; but he has had no Child by either of them.

Frederick, the 10th Son of *Adolph-Frederick*, who was born in the year 1638, and died in the year 1688, has two Sons, *Frederick-William*, born March 13th, 1675. and *Charles*, born in 1679. *Adolph-Augustus*, the youngest Son of *Adolph-Frederick*, has also one Son called *Gustavus Adolphus*.

November the 8th, 1695. the Duke of *Mecklenburg Gustraw* died without Issue-male; thereupon the Duke of *Swerin* endeavoured to get the possession of this Country, but was opposed by the Duke of *Strelitz*, who Married the last Duke's eldest Daughter, and the Dukedom is now in the Emperor's Hands till this Controversie be determined.

As to the increase or decreasing of the Estate of the Family of *Mecklingberg*; In the year 1290 they possessed the Dominion of *Stargard*, and in 1301 the same Duke *Henry* the third by force of Arms subdued the City of *Wismar*. In 1317 they obtained of the King of *Denmark* the Province of *Roslock*. In 1355, *Albert*, by Marriage, gained the Dukedom of *Swerin*, with the City of *Dornitz*. In 1431, by the Failure of a Family, they had the Possession of the Principality of the *Vandals* of *Winchlandt*. In the Year 1648, in recompence of the loss of *Wismar*, yielded to the *Swedes*, they had the Bishopricks of *Swerin* and *Ratzburg*, and a Cannons place in *Magdeburg* and *Halberstad*, and two Commendatories in the Order of the Knights of *St. John* at *Miran* and *Nimeran*. *Antonius Whielmus Schowartus Observationes Historico, Gendo Logica*, pag. 325.

18. The Dukedom and Estates of S A X O N Y.

THE Dukedom and Estates of *SAXONY* (not reckoning those which now pass under other Names, and shall hereafter be described in their several places) are bounded on the East with *Bohemia*, *Lusatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*, on the West with *Hassia*, *Brunswick*, and parts of *Lunenbourg* and *Holstein*; on the North with other parts of *Brandenburg*, and part of *Mecklenburg*; and on the South with *Franconia*, and some parts of the *Upper Palatinate*.

It is (we see) an aggregate Body, consisting of two

general Limbs; 1. the Dukedom of *Saxony*, 2. the Estates of *Saxony*, or *Saxony* properly so called: the first containing the whole Provinces of, 1. *Ober-Sax*, or the *Upper Saxony*, the proper Seat of the Duke Elector. 2. *Misnia*, 3. *Voitland*, and 4. *Thuringia*; the other those of, 1. *Anhalt*, 2. *Mansfield*, 3. *Meydeburg*, and 4. *Lawenburg*. And as it is an aggregate Body, so it is comprehensive of all those honorary Titles by which the Princes of *Germany* are distinguished from one another; that is to say, the Electorship of *Saxony*, the Dukedom of *Lawenburg*, the Bishoprick of *Meydeburg*, the Principality of *Anhalt*, the Marquisate of *Misnia*, the Landgravedom of *Thuringia*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, and the Seignioury or Lordship of *Voitland*. Of these eight Provinces, the four first mentioned are wholly situate without the Limits and Precincts of the ancient *Saxony*; and yet now are, and have been called long before, the Dukedom of *Saxony*, because they make up the whole Patrimony and Estate of the Dukes Electors, who since the Proscription and Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, surnamed the Lion, Anno 1180, in some or other of these Countries have had their fixed Seat and Habitation. The four last, being parts of the ancient *Saxony*, and heretofore in the possession of the Dukes hereof, do still pass under the account and name of *Saxony*, though in the hands of several Owners; all which do acknowledge a Superiority in the Duke Elector, if not some great Relation to him and Dependance on him: so that we have an heterogeneous Body to discourse upon, and therefore must consider severally of the parts thereof, but so, that either first or last we shall find them all in the Succession and Affairs of the Dukes of *Saxony*. 1. then,

The Dukedom of *Saxony* is bounded on the East with *Bohemia*, *Lusatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*, on the West with *Hassia*, and part of the proper *Saxony*; on the North with the proper *Saxony* only; and on the South with *Franconia*, and the *Upper Palatinate*. So called, because the proper Seat and Patrimony of the Duke Elector: of very different nature both for Air and Soil, but the last especially; as we shall see by looking over the particular Provinces of, 1. *Ober-Sax*, 2. *Misnia*, or *Meissen*, 3. *Voitland*, 4. *Thuringia*, by the Dutch called *Duringen*.

1. *OBER-SAX*, or the *Upper Saxony*, is bounded on the East with the Marches of *Brandenburg*, on the West with *Mansfield*, from which it is parted by the River *Sala*, on the North with *Meydeburg*, on the South with *Misnia*. The reason of the name we shall see anon. The Air hereof is somewhat sharp, and piercing, the Soil sufficiently fruitful, but therein not to be compar'd with *Misnia*, and much less with *Duringen*, being both of them of a richer and more liberal nature.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Torgaw*, by some placed in *Misnia*, but by *Mercator* in this Province; built on the West side of the *Elve*, in form orbicular, and falling every way from the sides of a Mountain; beautified with a stately and pleasant Castle belonging to the Elector of *Saxony*, who is Lord hereof, built by *John Frederick* the Elector, Anno 1535. Near to the City is a Lake of a mile in compass, for which the Citizens pay yearly to the Duke 500 Guldens. 2. *Worlitz*; upon the *Elve*, once a Commandery of the Templars. 3. *Weissenburg*, lying towards *Brunswick*. 4. *Kemburg*, on the *Elve*. 5. *Bitterfeldt*, betwixt the *Elve* and the *Mulda*. And, 6. *Wittenberg*, on the *Elve*, in an open Plain, but strongly fenced with Walls, Ramparts, and deep Ditches. The chief beauty of it lieth in one fair Street, extending the whole length of the City: in the midst thereof is the Cathedral Church, a large Market-place, and the Common-Council-House. In former times it was the Seat of the Dukes Electors, till the Electoral Dignity was conferred on the House of *Meissen*, who, liking better their own Country, kept their Courts at *Dresden*, but so, that *Wittenberg* is still acknowledged for the head City of the Electorate; and was made an University for Divines by Duke *Frederick*, Anno 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as

as some conjecture, from *Wittikindus*, once Lord of *Saxony*, when the extent thereof was greatest: famous for the Sepulchres of *Luther* and *Melancthon*, but chiefly for that here were the Walls of Popery first broken down, and the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*, of the wonderful Success whereof we have spoke already.

Of the Affairs of this little Country we can say but little, more than the means by which it came into the hands of the Dukes of *Saxony*, and consequently to the name which it still retains. Concerning which we are to know, that on the Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, surnam'd the Lion, whose Greatness was grown formidable even to the Emperors themselves, the Dukedom of *Saxony* was dismembred into many parcels; *Brunswick* and *Lunen-burg* being given unto the Children of the Duke depriv'd, the lower parts of *Westphalen* seized on by *Philip* Archbishop of *Colen*, the parts thereof about the *Weser* by the Bishop of *Paderborn*, *Herman* the Lantgrave of *Thuringia* laying hold of that part of this Estate which was nearest to him, *Lubeck* and many other of the principal Cities made Imperial, or governing themselves as Free Estates, and the Ancestors of the Princes of *Anhalt* and the Earls of *Munsfield* endowed with large Possessions also out of this great Patrimony; the Emperor not only conniving at it, but willingly consenting to that Dissipation, the better to reward and content those Princes who had assisted him in his Wars against the Duke. By which means there was nothing left of the ancient *Saxony* to be estated upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, whom *Frederick Barbarossa* had created Duke Elector in the room of *Henry* so deprived. And though Duke *Bernard* for his many good Services to the Empire had been before gratified with the City of *Wittenberg* by *Conrade* the third, and had conquered from Duke *Henry* the whole Country of *Lauenburg*; yet all being found too little to maintain the Port of a Duke Elector, it pleased the Emperor *Frederick* to bestow upon him all those Lands and Territories which lay between the *Sala* and the *Elve*, on the North of *Misnia*, to make *Wittenberg* the Electoral City, and give unto the Country thus united to it the name of *Ober-Sax* or *Upper-Saxony*, which it continueth to this day.

2. *MISNIA*, or *Meissen*, is bounded on the East with *Insatun*, on the West with *Duringen*, on the North with *Saxony* specially so called, and some part of *Brandenburg*, on the South with *Voitland* and some part of *Bohemia*. The Country was once overspread with Woods, and full of Bogs, rendring the Air unwholesom, and the Soil unprofitable; both rectified by the care and industry of the People; now yielding some Mines of Silver, and great plenty both of Corn and Pasturage; well watered with the Rivers *Sala*, *Plesse*, *Elster*, and *Mulda*.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Dresden*, seated on the *Albis*, having continually on her Walls and Bulwarks 150 Pieces of Ordnance; in it a Stable of the Duke's, in which are 128 Horses of service, and a Magazine, out of which 30000 Horse and Foot may be armed at a day's warning. The Town it self is situate on both sides of the River, by which it is divided into the Old Town and the New, joined into one by a Bridge of 800 paces in length. The Country round about it is very rich and pleasant, able to sustain great multitudes. For that cause it was made the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of *Saxony*, who have here a strong and stately Castle. 2. *Naumburg*, 3. *Mersburg*, both seated on the River *Sala*, two Episcopal Sees. 4. *Leipzig*, as famous an University for Philosophers as *Jene* in *Lorraine* is for Physicians. It was Founded by *Frederick* the first before he was Duke of *Saxony* or Elector, in the year 1409. It seemeth the Scholars and Citizens will not suffer their Beer to Perish, of which here is so much drunk and exported, that the very Custom of it due unto the Duke amounteth to 20000 pounds yearly; yet is this Town of no more than two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the most part of fair Free-stone, and ho-

noured with the Courts of Justice for all the Country. Though seated on the meeting of *Fleffe*, *Purde*, and *Elster*, three Rivers which lie almost on all sides of it; yet it is not strong, having been thrice taken by the Imperialists in less than two years during the late *German* Wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing else) for the great Battel fought near it between the late K. of *Sweden* and the Count of *Tilly*: the Honour whereof falling to the *Swedes* and *Saxons* (with the death of 15000 on both sides, and the loss of all the Baggage, Arms and Ammunition of the Imperialists) freed all these parts of *Germany* from that civil and spiritual Bondage which was intended by the Emperor to be put upon them. In the year 1642, this City was taken by the *Swedes*, after a second Victory gain'd over the Imperialists under its Walls. 5. *Mulberg*, on the *Elve*, where *John-Frederick* the Elector was discomfited and taken Prisoner by *Charles* the fifth, and by him deprived not long after of his Estate and Dignity. 6. *Meissen*, on the West side of the same River, in a hilly and uneven Ground, built by the Emperor *Henry* the first, for defence of the Empire against the *Slaves*: a Bishop's See, and the first Seat of the Marquesses of this Country, both which, together with the Burgrave of the Town, had their Palaces or Mansion-Houses standing close together on the top of a Hill overlooking both the Town and Country. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meissen*. 7. *Friberg*, near the Mountains of *Bohemia*, rich in Mines of Silver. 8. *Roslitz*, not far from which are rich Mines of Tin, discovered first in these parts by a *Cornish*-Man spoken of before.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Hermundur* and *Suardones*, subdued or outed by the *Sorabi*, a great Tribe of the *Slaves* surnamed *Winithi*: first conquered by the Emperor *Henry* the first, who built the strong Town of *Meissen* to keep them under, and to impede the neighbouring *Slaves* from any Incroachments on the Empire. Being thus added to the Empire and account of *Germany*, it was a while governed by such Officers as by the Emperors were appointed to guard these Marches: the first proprietary Marquis being one *Echard*, Son of the Earl of *Oostland* (descended from a younger Son of *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*) by the munificence of *Otho* the third: not made Hereditary till the time of *Henry* the 5th, who gave it in Fee to *Conrade*, Marquis of *Landsperg* and *Insatia*, whose Nephew *Theodorick* by his Son *Otho*, surnamed the Rich, married *Judith*, Daughter of *Herman* Lantgrave of *Duringen*; by which match *Duringen* accrued to the House of *Meissen*, *Henry* their Son succeeding in both Estates. To this *Henry* succeeded *Albert* his Son, and after him successively four *Fredericks*; the last whereof, on the failure of the House of *Anhalt*, was by the Emperor *Sigismund* created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, either because descended from the House of *Wittikindus*, or, as most able to pay for the Investiture, or else best able to sustain the Estate and Dignity of a Duke Elector, which had but weakly been supported by the former Family. In his Posterity these Honours and Estates do as yet continue; but neither all nor always in the possession of the Dukes Electors. For in the Partage made between *Ernestus* and *Albert*, the Sons of *Frederick*, (according to the ill Custom of *Germany*) this Country, or the greatest part of it, was assigned to *Albert*, succeeded in the same by *George* and *Henry* his two Sons: which *Henry* was Father of that *Maurice*, who, being settled and confirmed herein by the Duke *John-Frederick*, did after most unworthily take up Arms against him, supplanted him, and finally possessed himself of this whole Electorate; of which more anon.

3. *VOITLAND* is bound on the East with *Bohemia*, on the West with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Misnia* or *Meissen*, on the South with the *Upper-Palatinate*. So called, as some say, from the *Wites* or *Vites* (some of that People, who, together with the *Saxons* and *Angles*, conquer'd *Britain*) of whom it had the nam-

of *Viteland*, that is to say, the Land or Country of the *Vites*. But being I find not that the *Saxons* did spread so far Eastward, I rather think that this name was given it by the *Slaves*, who finding it deserted, or but thinly peopled, at their coming thither, might call it by the name of *Voidland*; from which the alteration unto *Voitland* is both plain and obvious. It is the smallest Province of all *Germany*, and never of such repute as to have any particular Prince, as most others had; but always reckoned as an accessory to some greater Estate. Nor hath it any Town or Cities of great estimation: the chief of those which are, being 1. *Olsnitz*, 2. *Worda*, 3. *Cornah*, 4. *Schneberg*, near the Mountains called *Sudeti* by *Ptolomy*, famous for Silver-Mines. 5. *Gotzberg*, 6. *Culmbach*, and 7. *Hoffe*, not much remarkable, but only for the Princes of it of the House of *Brandenburg*, called formerly *Curia Pegniama*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were parts of the *Neriterates* and *Danduti*, succeeded to by the *French* and *Slaves*, as they severally descended Southwards into warmer Countries. Possessed and planted by the *Slaves* it obtained this name. But being a small Nation and a small Estate, it never had the honour of a particular Prince; but did most probably belong to the Lords of *Meissen*, upon which it bordereth, and now, in their right, to the Duke of *Saxony*. But so that the Duke of *Saxony* is not the sole Lord hereof: the Marquisses of *Onspach* of the House of *Brandenburg* possessing the Towns of *Hoffe* and *Culmbach*, and some other parts of it; the Patrimony of *Joachim Ernest* the late Marquiss of *Onspach* and *Culmbach*, (who died in 1625, having been made General of the Protestant League in 1610, but failing in 1620, in that affair he was suspected of a Correspondence under-hand with the Imperialists against his own party. He was succeeded by *Albert* his Son, who prudently managed his affairs till his Death, which happened the 22th of *October* 1665, *John Frederick* his Eldest Son succeeded him in his Honours, whose eldest Son was born the 8th of *September* 1675, and bears the Name of *Christian Albert*.

4. *THURINGIA* is bounded on the East with *Misnia* and the River *Sala*, on the West with *Hassia*, on the North with the Wood *Hartz* and the proper *Saxony*, on the South with the Mountainous Forest of *Duringerwald*, by it parted from *Frankenland*: the Forest and the Country both so called from the *Thuringians*, the ancient Inhabitants hereof, communicating their name to the place they dwelt in.

The Country is environed round about with woody Mountains, but within those Mountains plain and pleasant, fruitful in Corn, and very plentiful of Woods, which yield great profit to the people; not without some Mines of Gold and Silver, and rich pits of Salt; able to furnish out a Feast, but for wine only, which is the greatest want hereof. The whole length of it is not above 120 miles, and the breadth no more, yet is it so populous and well planted, that there are said to be in it 12 Earldoms, and as many Abbies, 144 Cities, and as many Market-Towns, 150 Castles, and 2000 Villages.

The principal of these are 1. *Jene*, on the River *Sala*, bordering upon *Misnia*, an University chiefly of Physicians, founded in the year 1555, by the Sons of *John-Frederick* the Elector, taken Prisoner and deprived by *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Erfurt*, on the River *Gera*, out of which are cut so many Channels, that every street almost hath the benefit of it. A rich populous and well-built City, accounted amongst the best of *Germany*, and made an University in the time of the Emperor *Wenceslaus*, Anno 1382. Many times burnt; but still reviving, as the Phoenix out of the Ashes, into greater glory. It was at first immediately subject to the Archbishops and Electors of *Mentz*, the first Founders of it, as being built by *William*, Son of the Emperor *Orto* the first, and then Archbishop of that City, of whom more anon; but having freed themselves from him, they have since governed themselves as a Free Estate, and are one of the

Hanse-Towns, not subject to the Duke of *Saxony* as their Lord, but their Patron and good Neighbour only. In the year 1664, the *French* put this place into the hands of the Elector of *Mentz*: The Elector of *Saxony* having 17 of the 90 Villages. Assigned him by the Treaty of *Leipsick*, in 1665, to procure his consent, to this subjection of the City to that Prince. 3. *Mulhusen*, and 4. *Northusen*, two Imperial Cities, but else not observable. 5. *Smalcald*, famous for the League here made Anno 1530. between all the Princes and Cities which maintained the Doctrine of *Luther*, for defence thereof, and of one another in the pursuance of that work: by which famous Confederacy *Luther* not only kept his head on his shoulders, but the Religion by him reformed grew to that strength, that no force of policy could ever root it up. 6. *Kula*, or *Hale*, on the River *Falza*; of great resort for the exceeding quantity of Salt there made, and vended into other places, at which Town *Philip*, the Landgrave was treacherously taken Prisoner, as you shall hear anon. 7. *Weymar*, a Town which, together with the Castle of *Gotha*, were assigned for the Estate and maintenance of that Religious, though unfortunate Prince, *John Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, after his Discomfiture and Imprisonment by *Charles* the 5. the ordinary seat of the Dukes of *Saxon-Weymer*, who live here in a stately and magnificent Castle made of polished stone, most artificially contrived; and beautified with Orchards, Gardens, and other pleasures, but made more pleasant by the watering of the River *Ilma*, upon which it standeth. 8. *Gotha*, upon the River *Lon*, said by *Rathaimerus* to be built by the *Goths*, and by them thus named. A place not long since of great importance, and fortified with a very strong Castle, called *Grummernstein*, that being made the Retiring-place of one *Grumbachius* and other seditious persons under the Protection of *John Frederick*, one of the Sons of the deprived Elector. It was taken after a long Siege by *Augustus* the Elector of *Saxony*, (to whom the strength of this piece being in the hands of the injured Family was a great Eye-sore) and by the command of the Estates of the Empire at the Diet at *Regensburg*, Anno 1567, demolished, and levelled with the ground, but is since rebuilt and call'd *Freidestein*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chasuarii* of *Tacitus*, and after them the *Thuringi*, who, with the *Heruli*, under the Conduct of *Odoacer*, conquered *Italy*; called by some *Turcilingi*, by others supposed to be the *Tirangeta* of *Ptolomy*. Not heard of in this Country till the Reign of *Childerick* the fourth King of the *French*; then taking up the whole Provinces of *Hassia* and *Thuringia*, under one *Bissinius* their King. Their Arms were at that time, and long after, *Azure*, a Lion Barrie *Argent* and *Gules*, armed and crowned *Or*. Being overcome at the great Battle of *Zulph* near *Colen*, where they joyned with the *Almans*, they were afterwards totally subdued by *Theodorick* the French King of *Metz*, their King *Hermanfridus* taken, and most perfidiously slain; part of their Country taken from them, and given to the *Saxons* (who assisted in that War against them) becoming subject for the rest to the Kings of *France*; but so, that for some time after they had Kings of their own, *Baderick* and *Hermanfroy*, two brothers, Kings hereof successively, being Uncles to *Radegond*, a Princess of great Piety, the Wife of *Clotaire* King of *France*, Anno 559. In following times it was united to the Empire by *Henry* the first; conferred not long after by *Orto* the first (the Son of *Henry*) on *William*, one of his younger Sons, then Archbishop of *Mentz*, which he left to his Successors in that See; governed by their *Vidames* and Provincial Officers, till the time of *Conradus Salicus*, when *Ludovicus Barbatius*, one of these *Vidames* (or *Vicedomini*) made himself the Proprietary of it, and left the same unto his Children after his decease. But in the time of *Conrade* the 2. the issue of this *Ludovicus* either failing or dispossessed, it was by the Emperor conferred on *Lewis* of *Orleans*, Son to a Sister of his Empress, the Title of

Lant-

Lantgrave being given to them of this Family for their greater Honour. Under eight Princes of this Line, whereof five successively had the name of *Lewis*, this Estate continued: next falling to *Herman*, a brother of the fifth *Lewis*, who by contributing to the Ruine of *Henry Duke of Saxony*, surnamed the Lion, in favour of *Frederick Barbarossa*, had for his share (in the dividing of the Spoil) those parts of his Estates which lay nearest to him, called then the *Palatinate of Saxony*; recovered for the most part afterward by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*. He being dead, this Country fell to a sixth *Lewis*, and last of all to *Henry* the brother of that *Lewis*, in whom the Male-issue failed, having continued for the space of 252 years. To please all parties interested in the Succession, the Estate, before entire, was divided into two Parts or Provinces: of which this now called *Duringen*, or *Thuringia*, was allotted to *Henry Marquis of Misnia*, Son of *Judith*, the Daughter of *Herman*: the Western part thereof, with the Title of the Lantgravedom of *Hessen*, adjudged to *Henry Duke of Brabant*, in right of *Sophia* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the 6th: in the description of which Countries we shall hear more of them. United thus to the House of *Meissen* in the person of *Henry* the then Marquis, Anno 1263, it flourished in long Peace and Happiness under the Princes of that House. Finally, it much increased both in Power and Dignity by the addition of *Ober-Sax* and the Electorship of *Saxony*, conferred on *Frederick* the Fourth, Marquis and Lantgrave of these Countries, anno 1423; in which Estate it still continueth, the fourth and fairest of all these Provinces which now make up the Dukedom of *Saxony*, (as for the reasons above mentioned it hath long been called) though none of them, nor any part or parcel of them, within the Bounds and Limits of the ancient *Saxony*, as before was said.

2. *SAXONY* properly so called, or the proper *SAXONY*, is bounded on the South with *Duringen* and the great Wood *Hartz*, part of the old *Hercynian* Forest, and from thence so named; on the East with part of *Misnia*, *Ober-Sax*, and the Marches of *Brandenburg*; upon the North with the Dukedom of *Mecklenberg*; and on the West with those of *Brunswick*, *Lunenburg*, and part of *Holstein*. So called from the *Saxons*, once the Lords hereof, (of whom more anon) and the sole part of all their great and many Conquests which retains their name.

The Air hereof is somewhat sharp, but healthy; the Soil in the South-west parts hilly and uneven, chiefly rich in Minerals, elsewhere sufficiently fruitful. It is divided into Four Estates; that is to say, 1. the Principality of *Anhalt*, 2. the Earldom of *Mansfield*, 3. the Bishoprick of *Meydeburg*, 4. the Dukedom of *Lauenberg*.

1. The Principate of *ANHALT* is bounded on the South with *Duringen* and the Wood called *Hartz*, on the West and North with the County of *Mansfield*, on the East with *Misnia*; much shaded, if not too much overgrown with Woods, part of the *Hartz*, or old *Hercynian* Forest, whence it had the name; *Holt* in the *Dutch* signifying a Wood or Forest; and the Princes of this House being created to this Dignity by the Style of *Principes Hercynie* in *Anhalt*. Chief Towns of it are, 1. *Bernburg*, the Dynastie and usual Title of this house before they were created Princes of *Anhalt*. 2. *Ballenstedt*, part of the ancient Patrimony of the first Princes hereof. 3. *Deßau*, the birth-place of some, and the burial-place of others, of this Family; beautified with a strong Castle, built by Prince *Albert* the 2. Anno 1341. 4. *Storvest*, the usual place of the Prince's Residence. 5. *Coeten*, a well fortified place, in vain besieged by the joint-Forces of the Archbishop of *Meydeburg*, and the Earl of *Swartzenland*. 6. *Candt*. Here sometimes also stood the old Castle of *Ascant*, the first seat of these Princes, but long since destroyed, now only to be visited in Records and Histories.

We shall be sent no higher than the first besieging of the *Roman* Capitol by the ancient *Gauls*, to find out the Pedigree and Descent of the Earls of *Lippe*; but we must go as high as the Ark for the Princes of *Anhalt*; some fetching them from *Azkenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, from whom, and no other, this *Ascanian* Family (for by that name it is called) are to fetch their Pedigree. But to content our selves with more sober thoughts, we are to know, that when *Theodorick* King of *Metz* undertook the Conquest of the *Thuringians*, he was therein aided by the *Saxons* with 9000 men; under the conduct of one *Bernwald*, or *Bernthobald*, a man of great power and rank amongst them. The *Saxons* were recompenced for that service with such parts of the conquered Country as lay nearest to them, and *Bernthobald* himself rewarded with the Towns of *Ascant*, *Ballenstedt*, and the Lands adjoining, Anno 524, to be holden by them under the Sovereignty of the *French*. From which Town and the Castle of *Ascant*, afterwards razed to the ground by *Peppin* King of the *French*, (for denying the accustomed Tributes) Anno 747, most probable it is that the name of the *Ascanian* Family was assumed by them. So that we may behold it as a Family of as great antiquity as the most in *Europe*, little inferior to any of the greatest Monarchs. His Successors were for the most part busied in Wars against their neighbours of *Misnia*; but rather upon hope of Spoil and plunder, than in way of Conquest; their Power and Patrimony being very little improved till the time of *Albert* surnamed *Ortus*, descended by a long succession of Princes from *Bernwald* or *Bernthobald*, before remembred. This *Albert* having done many signal services unto *Conrade* the 3. and his Son *Frederick Barbarossa*, (especially in taking the Cities of *Breme* and *Lunenburg*) was by the last created Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburg*, Anno 1153, the Father of that *Bernard* who by the munificence and bounty of the same Emperor, was created Duke-Elector of *Saxony* in the room of Duke *Henry* surnamed the Lion, Anno 1180, becoming so the Stem of the two greatest Princes of all the Empire. *Henry* the 2. Son of this *Bernard*, was by the same Emperor not long after enriched with much of the Lands and Territories lying nearest to him, which had before belonged to Duke *Henry* the Lion, and created the first Prince of *Anhalt*, the first of all this ancient and illustrious Family which had been honoured with that Title, both Lands and Title continuing in his Race to this very day; the two Electorates of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* being in the mean while translated unto other Families. The most considerable of which Princes, tho' all men of Eminence, were 1. *Rodolph*, General of the Forces of the Emperor *Maximilian* the first against the *Venetians*, whom he twice overcame in Battle. 2. *George* the Divine, a great Reformer of the Church by his diligent Preaching; whose Sermons and other Tractates (learned for the times he lived in) are still extant. 3. *Christian*, born in the year 1568, Commander of the Forces of *Frederick*, Prince Elector *Palatine*, in the Wars of *Bohemia*. This Family is still extant, but divided into very many branches.

The History of the Family of *Anhalt*, is thus set down by *Showartus*.

Though the Family of *Anhalt*, is of so great antiquity, that no Records will reach its Origen, yet was it known by the Title of the Counts of *Ascania* and *Ballenstedt* about the year of Christ 524. After which time, *Albert* the 6th. was made Marquis of *Soltmell*, by *Henry* the 2d, and died in the year 1005, and after this, upon the failure of the Marquisses of *Brandenburg* of the Family of the Earls of *Staden* and *Ringelsheim*: *Albertus Ursus* Marquis of *Soltmell*, Count of *Ascania*, *Ballenstedt* and *Wolpe* in the year 1142, was made Marquis of *Brandenburg*, who died in the year 1169, the 18th of November. By his first Wife *Sophia*, Daughter of the Count of *Renech*, he had

1. *Otto*, Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburg*, who died in the year 1198, and his Posterity failed in *Waldemar II.* in the year 1327.
2. *Albert II.* Duke and Elector of *Saxony*, whose Posterity was extinguished in *Albert* the 6th, in 1422.
3. *John I.* the Author of the Line of *Sax-Lawemburg*, whose descendent *Julius Franciscus*, died in the year 1688, leaving only two Daughters.
- 1189 4. *Henry II.* the second Son of *Albertus Vrsus*, was by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, made Prince of *Anhalt*, in the year 1189.
- 1257 5. *Sigefred*, and *Bernard* Sons of *Henry*, divided his Estates amongst themselves in the year 1288.
- 1315 6. *Bernard II.* Son of *Bernard I.*
- 1318 7. *Bernard III.* who in the year 1323, was invested in the Earldom of *Ascania*, and gained thereby the full Possession of the Principality of *Anhalt*, but in the year 1326, he was again deprived of this Earldom by the Bishop of *Halberstad* by Force. This Line failed in the year 1468, in *Bernard* the 6th, but there was another derived from *Sigefred* the Elder Brother, that has continued to our time.
- 1 1. *Joachim Ernest*, Son of *John* the 4th, was born in the year 1536, he died the 6th of December 1586.
- 1568 2. *John George Dessau*, born the 9th of March 1567, he embraced the Reformation.
- 1618 3. *John Cassimir*, born the 7th of December 1596.
- 1660 4. *John George II.* born in 1627, the 7th of November, he Married *Henrica Catherina*, and has one Son called *Leopald*, born the 3d. of July 1676.

The Line of *Bernburg*.

- 1568 1. *Christian*, 2d. Son of *Joachim Ernest*, was the Founder of this Line, he had for his share *Benberg*, *Ballensted*, *Hatzgerodan* and the Monastery *Gernrodan*, he died the 20th of April 1630.
- 1630 2. *Christian II.* succeeded his Father in *Bernburg*.
- 1656 3. *Viktor Amideus*, born the 6th of October, 1634, he has two Sons, *Charles Frederick*, born the 13th of July 1668. *John George*, the 14th of February 1674, and *Frederick* the younger Son of *Christian II.* had *Hatzgerodan* assigned him, *William* his Son succeeded him, but has yet no Children.

The Line of *Platzrow*.

- 1568 1. *Augustus* the 3d. Son of *Joachim Ernest*, had his Seat at *Platzkom*, and was a Prince of great worth and virtue, he died the 22th of August 1653, at the Age of 78 years.
- 1653 2. *Lebrecht*, born the 5th of April 1622, he died the 7th of September 1669, without any Issue.
- 1669 3. *Immanuel* Brother of *Lebrecht*, born in 1631, the 26th of October. He was a Soldier in the Isle of *Candy*, and returning home succeeded his Brother, and Married *Ann Eleonora* Countess of *Stolberg*, the 23d. of March 1670, and dying the same year, left her with Child.
- 1671 4. *Immanuel Lebrecht* born the 20th of May, after the Death of his Father, and is now the only off-spring of this House.

The Line of *Servestan*.

- 1568 1. *Rodolph*, the 5th Son of *Joachim Ernest*, had *Servestan*, *Lindaw*, *Coswial*, and *Roslan*.
- 1622 2. *John*, the Son of *Rodolph*.
- 1667 3. *Charles William*, born the 26th of October 1653, he is now living, and has these Sons, 1. *John August*, born the 20th of July 1677. *Charles Frederick*, born the 8th of July, 1678.

Albert the first of this House, was made Marquis of *Brandenburg* in the year 1152. In 1180, *Bernard* added to it the Dukedom of *Saxony*, and the Electorate, in 1630, *Julius Henry*, had by Marriage the Principality of *Slackewerde* in *Bohemia*, which by him was added to *Sax-Lawemburg*. In 1650, *John 2d.* of the Line of *Servestan*, had given him by the Testament of *Anthony Gunther* Earl of *Oldenburg* the Territory of *Jevern*.

In the year 1315, they lost the Earldom of *Ascania*, and the City of *Ascherlaben*, to the Bishop of *Halberstad* which in 1648, was with that Bishoprick given to the Elector of *Brandenburg*. In 1322, This House lost the Electorate of *Brandenburg*. In 1418, it lost the Upper-*Saxony* and that Electorate. In 1640, *William* Duke of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbug*, took from them the Earldom of *Wolpe*, they assigned *Jevern* to the King of *Denmark*, but in 1689, it was again restored to them. They have a strong pretence to the Succession of *Sax-Lawemburg*, upon the Death of *Julius Franciscus*, in the year 1689, without any Male-Issue.

2. The Earldom of *MANSFELD* is bounded on the East with the River *Sala*, parting it from *Ober-Sax*; on the West with the River *Wieper*, which divides it from *Brunswick*: on the North with the Bishoprick of *Meydeburg*, and on the South with *Anhalt* and part of *Duringen*. So called from *Mansfield*, once the chief Town of it, situate on the River *Wieper*, but now much decayed: the other Towns of note herein being 2. *Isleben*, more in the middle of the Country; for that cause more convenient for the seats of Justice, first settled here by Earl *Voldradus*, anno 1448, and by that means made the Metropolis of this Earldom: By some affirmed to have took this name from the Goddess *Isis*, who, after the death of her Husband, (as is said by *Tacitus*) visited these parts. Famous more certainly for the Birth of *Luther*, transplanted hence for the study of good Arts to *Meydeburg*, and chosen thence to be Divinity-Reader in *Wirttemberg*, where he hammered out that great Work of the Reformation, as before was said; born here in the year 1483, and here deceasing in the house of the Earl of *Mansfield*, anno 1546. 3. *Wieper*, (or *Wipra*) so called of the River on which it standeth. 4. *Quernfort*, the honorary Title of the Ancestors of the Earls of *Mansfield*. 5. *Rottenberg*, 6. *Absted*, 7. *Heldernung*, bought of the Earls of *Holstein*.

Some, who delineate the Pedigree of these Earls of *Mansfield*, fetching it out as high as from one *Heger*, one of King *Arthur's* Knights of the *Round-Table*, born at *Mansfield* in *Nottinghamshire*, who, settling himself in *Germany*, gave that name to his House; a military original, and very suitable to such an active and warlike Family. But those that do not soar so high, derive them from the Earls of *Quernfort*, men of authority in these parts; made more considerable by *Lotharius* Emperor and Duke of *Saxony*; but most of all by *Frederick Barbarossa*, who conferred many goodly Lordships lying hereabout (once part of the Estate of Duke *Henry* the Lion) on *Burchard* the fifth Earl thereof, a constant Follower of his, not only in his Wars against Duke *Henry* before named, but in those also which he managed in the *Holy-Land*, in the course whereof he died at *Anrioch*, anno 1189. His Nephew *Burchard*, by a Son of the same name, was the first of this Family that had the Title of Earl of *Mansfield*, about the year 1250; continued ever since

since unto his posterity, (but under some Acknowledgment to the Electors of Saxony.) Of these the most eminent were 1. *Waleradus*, one of the Council of Estate to the Emperor *Sigismund*, Anno 1411, a great improver of the Patrimony of the Earls hereof. 2. *John George*, Lord Deputy or Lieutenant of Saxony under Duke *Augustus*. 3. *Peter-Ernest*, Governour of *Luxemburg* under *Charles* the 5th. and *Philip* the 2. by them much exercised and employed in their Wars with France and their *Belgick* Rebels. 4. *Albert*, a constant Friend of *Luther*, and a faithful Follower of *John Frederick*, the deprived Elector; in whose Quarrel being outed of his Estate, he retired to *Meydeburg*, which he most gallantly defended against the Emperor. And 5. *Ernestus*, Nephew of that *Albert* by his Son *John*, so famous for the War which he maintained in most parts of Germany against *Ferdinand* the 2. in behalf of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine and the States of *Bohemia*, with so great constancy and courage.

3. On the North of *Mansfield* and *Ober-Sax* lieth the Bishoprick of *M E Y D E B U R G*, having on the West parts *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, and on the North and the East, the Marches of *Brandenburg*: so called from the Episcopal See founded in *Magdeburg* the Chief City, by some called *Meydeburg* and *Meydenburg*, whence by a Greek name *Parthenopolis*, and *Virginopolis* by a mungrel word made of Greek and Latine. A City seated on the *Elve*, divided into three parts, but all strongly fortified, begirt with high Walls, deep Ditches, and almost unconquerable Bulwarks; yet very beautiful withal, (before the last Desolation of it in 1631,) of elegant Buildings, fair Streets, and magnificent Temples. It was built in the form of a Crescent by the Emperor *Otho* the first, the Founder of it, who having translated hither the Archiepiscopal See, for the greater honour of the place built the Cathedral of *St. Maurice*, where his Wife lies buried, anno 948, testified by the Inscription to be the Daughter of *Edmund* King of England; a Town which hath long flourished in a great deal of Glory, and tasted of as much Affliction as any other in Germany. For refusing to receive the *Interim*, it was out-lawed by the Emperor *Charles* the fifth, and given to him that could first take it. It was first hereupon attempted by the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, but he was in a Camisado taken Prisoner, his Army routed, his Nobles made Captives, and 260 Horse brought into the City. Next, it was besieged by Duke *Maurice* of Saxony, who on honourable Terms was after a long Siege received into it, Anno 1550, when it had stood on its own Guard the space of three years. Which long Opposition of one Town taught the German Princes what Constancy could do; it held up the Coals of Rebellion in Germany; and indeed proved to be the Fire which burned the Emperor's Trophies. For here Duke *Maurice* coming acquainted with Baron *Hedeck*, hatched that Confederacy, by which not long after, this great Emperor was driven out of Germany. At last it yielded to Duke *Maurice*, under the protection of whose Successors it hath since enjoyed a long course of Felicity, till the year 1631, in which it was most miserably burnt and sacked by the Earl of *Tilly*; of whom it is observed, that after that Fact he never prospered, being shortly after totally routed at the Battle of *Leipzig*, and wounded to the death not long after that near the River *Leck*. In the year 1666, it was again forced by the Arms of the Duke of *Brandenburg*, to accept *Augustus* Dukes of Saxony for its Admission. Other places of note in this Bishoprick are, 2. *Wormsted*, beautified with a fair Castle, not far from *Magdeburg*, the ordinary Seat or Retiring-place of the Bishop. 3. *Grabaw*, upon the River *Struma*. 4. *Mockren* on the same River. 5. *Barleben*, beneath *Meydeburg*, on the *Elve*. 6. *Louburg*, betwixt the *Elve* and the *Struma*, not much observable.

The Archiepiscopal See being translated hither from *Oalerstovo* and *Vrese* (places too obscure for so great a dignity) by *Otho* the first, and by him endowed with great Revenues and a goodly Territory round about it, the

Archbishop hereof was also by his procurement made the Primate of Germany, acknowledged so by all but the Bishop of *Salzburg* and the three spiritual Electors. For the Administration of Justice in matters Criminal and Civil, the said *Otho* did ordain an Officer, whom they called the *Burgrave*, conferring that Office first on *Gero* Marquis of *Lusatia*. Through many hands it came at last to *Burchard* Lord of *Quernfort*, and the Earls of *Mansfield*, many of which enjoyed this Honour, settled at last by the Emperor *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg* on the Dukes of Saxony, who by this means came to have great command and influence on the whole Estate. The Archbishops notwithstanding continued Lords of it, and the whole Territory or District adjoining to it, till the Reformation of Religion; when the Revenues, separated from the Jurisdiction, were given to Lay-Princes, (for the most part of the House of *Brandenburg*) with the Title of Administrator. Finally, by the Pacification made at *Munster*, this fair Estate is to be settled forever on the Electors of that House, to be possessed by them, and their Heirs and Successors by the Title of the Dukes of *Magdeburg*, the better to content them for the Concession which they made to the Crown of *Sweden* of a great part of their Right and Title to the Dukedom of *Pomeran*. This may be supposed to have occasion'd the War in 1666, mentioned above.

4. On the North-west of *Magdeburg*, and on both sides also of the *Elve*, lieth the Dukedom of *LAWENBURG*, bounded on the North with *Mecklenburg*, on the West with part of *Holstein*, and on the South with the River *Elve* and part of *Lunenbourg*; so called of *Lawenburg* the chief Town thereof, and the seat of the Dukes. The Town was first built, as some conceive, by *Henry* Duke of Saxony, surnamed the Lion, the better to assure his Conquests on that side of the River, by whom it was called *Leopolis* or *Leoburgum*, and *Lawenburg* for the same reasons by the Dutch or Germans: on the Proscription of which Prince, the Country being wasted and the Towns destroyed, *Bernhard* of *Anhalt*, designed his Successor in the Dukedom of Saxony, liking the situation of it, caused it to be re-edified in stronger manner than before, a great part of the Materials of the Town of *Erdenburg*, being carried cross the water to enlarge this place. Afterwards being razed by the said Duke *Henry* in the course of that War it was re-built again by *D. Bernard*, the new Elector, who is therefore by some Writers made the Founder of it. Other places of note herein are, 2. *Erdenburg*, a well fortified piece, opposite to *Lawenburg*, on the hither-side of the *Elve*; not so large now as heretofore, the Town of *Lawenburg* being made greater by the lessening of this. 3. *Raceburg*, an Episcopal See, founded here by Duke *Henry* surnamed the Lion, upon his gaining of the *Slaves* to the Christian Faith, and of late times the Sepulture of this Ducal Family. 4. *Molne*, on the farther side of the *Elb*, not far from *Lawenburg*, the cause of much Contention betwixt the Dukes hereof, and the Town of *Hamburg*, who pretend a Title thereunto.

The Dukedom of *LAWENBURG*, gave Title to a Noble Branch of the House of Saxony, derived from *Albert I.* the 18th Duke of Saxony, of the House of *Anhalt*, the first of which Family was

1. *John* second Son of *Albert* the first.
2. *Ericus V.* who died in the year 1435, without any Issue.
- 1435 3. *Bernhard*, Brother of the said *Eric*.
4. *John* Son of *Bernhard*.
5. *Magnus*, Son of *John*, disinherited.
- 1574 6. *Francis I.* a younger Son of *John*, against whom *Magnus* made War in 1574, but being deserted by his Soldiers, was forced to end it dishonorably. And being taken Prisoner by his Brother *Francis*, he died in Restraint in the year 1603.
7. *Francis II.* entered upon the Government in the Life of his Father, as his Father had in the Life of his Grandfather.

- 1619 8. *Augustus*, succeeded *Francis* the second, his Father, and died in the year 1656, without any surviving Issue.
- 1656 9. *Julius Henricus*, one of the Sons of *Francis* the 2d, and Brother of *Augustus* succeeded him; but he forsook the Protestant Religion, and turned *Roman Catholick*.
11. *Francis Erdman*, Son of *Julius*, was Educated in the Protestant Religion, and survived his Father, but not long.
- 1666 12. *Julius Francis*, Son of *Julius Henricus*, succeeded his Brother *Francis*. He died in the year 1689, without any Male-Issue, having in the year 1681, consented that the Elector of *Saxony* should succeed him, if he had no Sons of his own: And accordingly that Prince has entered upon his Territories, but it is said is opposed by the Dukes of *Brandenburg*, *Anhalt* and *Lunenbourg*, which may have an ill effect, considering the present War. However here is the end of this branch of this Noble Family.

This Country, being for the most part under the Command of the *Slaves*, was from them conquered (together with the whole Country of *Mecklenburg*) by Duke *Henry* the Lion, and by his care converted to the Christian Faith: but he being proscribed, and this Seignoury extorted from him by Duke *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, his Successor in the Electoral Dignity, it was by *Albert*, Son of this *Bernard*, conferred on *John* his second Son, from whom the Dukes of *Saxony*, commonly called Dukes of *Saxon-Lawenburg*, do derive themselves; who being pretermitted by the Emperor *Sigismund* at the death of *Albert* the 3. the last of the direct Line of *Bernard*, or else not caring for a Title which carried with it too great a Sail for so small a Vessel as the Estate of the Elector at the present was, have since contented themselves with their ancient Patrimony.

It is now time we should proceed to the Story of *Saxony*, the ancient Inhabitants of which Tract were the *Longobardi* or *Lombards* of *Magdeburg*, and part of the *Cherusci* about *Mansfield* and *Wittenburg*. Overcome by the prevailing *Saxons*, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater than now it is, containing all the Countries betwixt the *Rhene* and the River *Eyder* in the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, and from the River *Sala*, to the *German* and *Baltick* Oceans. These are said by some to be a People of *Asia*, and there called the *Saca*, who finding that small Territory (now a part of *Tartaria*) too narrow for them, forsook their Country, and at last fixed themselves in the *Cimbrick Chersonese*; where they first took the names of *Sacsons* (or *Sac-sons*) that is to say, the Sons of the *Saca*. The improbability of this we have there disputed. Omitting therefore that and the like Originations of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be natural *Germans*, some Tribe of that most populous and potent People of the *Suevi*: but for the reason of the name, let every man enjoy the pleasure of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Ptolomy's* time they were possessed of those parts beyond the *Elb*, and thence extended to the *Eyder*, part of which Tract is now known by the name of *Holstein*: and were accounted in that time to be no New-comers. Afterwards, as they grew in number, they enlarged their quarters, and passing over the *Elb*, in the time of the later *Roman* Emperors, possessed themselves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then busied in the Conquest of more fruitful Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in fine they stretch themselves from the River *Sala* on the East, to the *German* Ocean on the West, and took up the now Dukedoms of *Holstein*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Brunswick*, the Bishopricks of *Bremen*, *Vorden*, *Hildesheim*, *Halberstadt*,

and *Magdeburg*, the *Marches* of *Brandenburg*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, *Westphalen*, both *Friebrands*, *Over-Yffel*, with as much of *Gelderland* and *Holland* as lay on that side of the *Rhene*. By which account the present Electoral Family hath not one foot of the old *Saxony* in their possession; the Seat and Patrimony of the Electors being removed into other Countries, upon the Alterations and Changes which have happened in that Estate; the name and Title of *Saxony* being given to the Country about *Wittenburg*, for no other reason but because it was the chief Seat of the Duke-Electors. But to proceed, a stout and valiant Nation questionless they were, the Conquerors of the Isle of *Britain*; and the last People of the *Germans* which yielded up their Country unto *Charles* the Great, by his means gained unto the Gospel, anno 785. Their last King was called *Wittikindus*, from whom descend the Kings of *France*, since the time of *Hugh Capet*, the present Kings of *Denmark*, of the house of *Oldenburg*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Savoy*, the Marquisses of *Montferrat*, besides many other noble and illustrious Families though of lesser note. The right or direct Line of the Male-issue of *Wittikind* (whom *Charles* the Great created, of a King, the first Duke of *Saxony*) determining the person of *Otho* the third, Emperor of the *Germans*, it was by him conferred on *Bernard* Lord of *Lunenbourg*, (but the precise time I find not:) *Henry* first named the Saint, who succeeded this *Otho* in the Empire, the next in the collateral Line, being pretermitted, either because at that time settled in the great Dukedom of *Bavaria*, or because there was no hope of Posterity by him, or for some other private grudge, which I read not of. And it continued in this Line till, on the Forfeiture incurred by his posterity, in the person of Duke *Henry* the Lion, it was bestowed by *Frederick Barbarossa* upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, Anno 1180; whose Issue in the right Line failing, it was finally estated by the Emperor *Sigismund* on *Frederick* Lantgrave of *Thuringia* and Marquis of *Misnia*, Anno 1423. In his Family it hath since continued, but not without a manifest breach in the course of his Succession: which happened when *John-Frederick* being deprived of the Electoral Dignity and Estate, his Cousin Duke *Maurice* was invested in them by *Charles* the fifth. For that religious, but unfortunate, Prince (if he may justly have the Title of *unfortunate*, who suffered in so good a cause, for so good a Conscience) being discomfited and taken Prisoner at the Battle of *Mulberg* before mentioned, was the next day condemned to die, but pardoned at the last, upon the intercession of some powerful Friends, upon condition that he should resign the Electoral Dignity, and all the rest of his Estates, into the power of the Emperor: Which done, the Emperor gave him back again of his own accord the Castle of *Gotha* and the Town of *Weymar*, with all the Lands and Territories thereunto adjoining; from which last place his Posterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*. It was also much insisted on, that he should relinquish his Religion, and reconcile himself to the Church of *Rome*; but thereto he opposed with such Christian stoutness, that in the end it was omitted. These matters being thus transacted, the Emperor (with the general consent of the Electors) invested *Maurice* Cousin-german to the Duke deprived, in the Electoral dignity, and all the Lands, Honours and Estates (the Seignouries of *Gotha* and *Weymar* excepted only) which formerly had belong'd to him: which though it were a great wrong both to the Person and Posterity of the Duke *John-Frederick*, yet it is observed by some grave Writers to have fallen out not unhappily for the advancement of the Reformation then contended for. 1. In regard of *John-Frederick*, whose Christian Patience and Magnanimity during the whole time of his Imprisonment added great reputation to the Cause for which he suffered. 2. In respect of Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work, and every way as zealous in pursuing of it as the other was. And 3. in relation to the Children of the deprived Duke, men not

to be relied on in a matter of such weight and moment ; infomuch as it was said of him after his decease, *Quod Filios reliquerit sui diffimillimos*. It is now time we should proceed to the Investiture of the new Elector. And, because these Transactions of State be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the Ceremonies thereat used as I have collected them out of *Sleidan*. There were at *Wittenberg* Scaffolds erected, on which sat the Emperor and the Princes Electors in their Robes. On the back-side of the State were placed the Trumpeters ; right against it standeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of Horsemen : The first in a full Career run their Horses up to the Pavillion : out of the second issued *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick*, *Volfange* Prince of *Bipont*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavier*. These when they had in like manner coursed their Horses about, alighted, ascended to the Throne, and humbly requested the Emperor, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice* to the Electorship. He consulted with the Electors, made answer by the Bishop of *Mentz*, that he was content, so Duke *Maurice* would in person come and desire it. Then came forth Duke *Maurice* with the whole Troop : before him were born ten Ensigns bearing the Arms of as many Regions wherein he desired to be Invested. When he came before the Throne, he kneeled down on his Knees, and humbly desired the Emperor to bestow on him the Electorship of *Saxony*, and all the Lands of *John-Frederick*, late Elector. His Petition was granted. Then the Bishop of *Mentz* read unto him the Oath by which the Electors are bound unto the Empire : which Oath when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperor delivered unto him a Sword, which was a sign of his perfect Investiture. Duke *Maurice*, now the Elector of *Saxony*, arose, gave the Emperor thanks, promised his Fidelity, made Obedience, and took his place amongst the Electors. This Solemnity was on the 24th day of *February*, Anno 1548. Which said, we now proceed unto the Catalogue of

The Dukes of *SAXONY*.

- 785 1. *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*, vanquish'd, and created the first Duke by *Charles* the Great.
- 825 2. *Bruno*, the Brother of *Wittikind*.
- 843 3. *Luitulphus*, Son of *Bruno*.
- 855 4. *Bruno* II. Son of *Luitulphus*.
- 876 5. *Otho*, Brother of *Bruno* the 2d.
- 916 6. *Henry*, surnamed the Fowler, Son of *Otho*, Emperor of the *Romans*, and King of *Germany*.
- 938 7. *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperor, called *Otho* I.
- 974 8. *Otho* III. Duke of *Saxony* and Emperor, called *Otho* II.
- 984 9. *Otho* IV. Duke of *Saxony* and Emperor, called *Otho* III.
- 998 10. *Bernard*, Lord of *Lunenbourg*, created Duke of *Saxony*, and the first Elector, by *Otho* the third, who was the last Duke of the Race of *Wittikind*.
- 1021 11. *Bernard* II. Son of *Bernard* the first.
- 1063 12. *Ordulphus*, Son of *Bernard* the 2d.
- 1073 13. *Magnus*, Son of *Ordulphus*, who taking part with *Rodolphus* of *Schwaben* against *Henry* the Fourth, was taken Prisoner, and deprived.
- 1123 14. *Lotharius*, Earl of *Quernfort*, created Duke of *Saxony* by *Henry* the Fourth, he was also Emperor of the *Romans*.
- 1139 15. *Henry* *Guelph*, surnamed the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, the Husband of *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Lotharius*, by whom he was created Duke-Elector.
- 1142 16. *Henry* II. surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, Son of *Henry* the Proud by his first Wife *Walsfeldis*, the Daughter of *Magnus*,

added to this Estate the Countries of *Mecklenburg* and *Lauenburg*, which he had conquered from the *Slaves*, becoming by that means so great, that neglecting his Duty to the Emperor *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, and siding with the Pope against him, he was by him publicly Proscribed, his neighbour Princes arm'd against him, and by their joint Forces outed of all his Estates, every one laying hold on that which lay nearest to him, by means whereof this great Estate being parcelled and divided into many parts, the Title of the Duke Elector of *Saxony* was given by the said Emperor to

- 1180 17. *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, Son of *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, and Grand-child of *Eliza*, another Daughter of Duke *Magnus* : to whom for his Seat and Habitation, the Emperor gave the City of *Wittenberg*, the Head since that time of this Electorate.
- 1212 18. *Albert*, Son of *Bernard*, from whom the Dukes of *Lauenburg* do derive their Pedigree.
- 1273 19. *Albert* II. Son of *Albert* the first.
- 1337 20. *Rodolph*, Son of *Albert* the 2d.
- 1356 21. *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph* the first.
- 1373 22. *Wenceslaus*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2d.
- 1389 23. *Rodolph* III. Son of *Wenceslaus*.
- 1419 24. *Albert* III. Son of *Rodolph* the third, the last Elector of *Saxony* of the House of *Anhalt*.
- 1423 25. *Frederick*, Lantgrave of *Duringen*, and Marquis of *Misnia*, (on the failing of the House of *Anhalt*, Anno 1422.) created Duke of *Saxony* by the Emperor *Sigismund*, the House of *Lauenburg* pretermitted for want of putting in their Claim : by the advancement of which Prince, the Title of the Duke of *Saxony* returned again to the House of *Wittikind*, (the first King and last Duke hereof) after it had been alienated into other Families for the space of 200 years.
- 1428 26. *Frederick* II. Son of *Frederick* the first ; born in 1412, Aug. 24. and surnamed the *Flacid* : He died the 7th of *September*, 1464, leaving two Sons, *Ernest* and *Albert*, the Founders of two potent Families in this House.
- 1464 27. *Ernest*, Son of *Frederick* the second, born the 25th of *March*, 1641. A prudent Prince.
- 1486 28. *Frederick* III. Son of *Ernest*, born in 1463, and surnamed the *Wise*, the Founder of the University of *Wirtemberg* in 1501, the Preserver of *Luther*, and thereby the promoter of the Reformation. He died the 5th of *May*, 1525, after he had the honour to refuse the Empire. This Prince was never Married.
- 1525 29. *John*, Brother to *Frederick* the third, born the 29th of *June*, 1464. He was a great promoter of the Reformation, and joined in the Protestation against Popery in the year 1630, and procured the *Smalcaldick* League to defend it. He died the 13th of *August*, 1532.
- 1532 30. *John Frederick*, Son of *John* the first ; a great advancer of the Reformation of Religion, imprison'd and depriv'd of his Electorship by *Charles* the 5th. He was born the 30th of *June*, 1503. He vanquished *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick* in 1545, but was taken Prisoner by *Charles* the 5th at *Mulberg* the 24th of *April*, 1546, in 1552 he was set at liberty, and died in 1554.
- 1547 31. *Maurice*, Cousin-german to the Duke *John-Frederick* (as being the Grandson or Nephew of *Albert*, the younger Brother of *Ernestus* the Duke Elector) created Duke Elector by *Charles* the 5th, whom afterwards he drove out of *Germany* ; and was slain in the Battel

of *Siffridhuse*, against Marquis *Albert* of *Brandenburg*. *Albert*, the Founder of this Line, was born the 17th of *July*, 1443, and died in the Year 1500. *George Barbatus* his Son and Successor was born the 27th of *August*, 1471, and died the 17th of *April*, 1535. *Henry* the Pious, Brother of *George*, was born the 25th of *October*, 1474, and died the 20th of *December*, 1510. He was the Father of *Maurice*, who was born the 11th of *May*, 1521, and he obtained the Electorate in 1548 in prejudice of *John Frederick* and his Children. In 1551 he drove *Charles* the 5th out of *Germany* by Torch-light: The next year he procur'd the Peace of *Passaw*. In 1553 he was slain in *Battel*, having no Male Issue.

- 1553 32. *Augustus*, Brother of *Maurice*, born the 31th of *July*, 1526. He was a Prince of the greatest Authority of any in his time, and thought very Rich. He died the 11th of *February*, 1586.
- 1586 33. *Christian*, Son of *Augustus*, born the 3d of *November*, 1560; he died in 1591.
- 1591 34. *Christian II.* Son of *Christian* the first; born the 23th of *September*, 1583. In the year 1610 he obtained the Investiture of the Dukedoms of *Juliers*, *Cleves* and *Mentz*; and died the next year after without any Issue.
- 1611 35. *John George*, Brother of *Christian* the second, who first sided with the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second against the Elector *Palatine*, and after with the King of *Sweden* against the Emperor: Born the 5th of *March*, 1585. This Prince by his Zeal for the Reformation preserved it from Ruin.
- 1656 36. *John George II.* eldest son of the last Elector; born the 31th of *May*, 1613; succeeded his Father: He was a very Just Prince, and died the 22th of *August*, 1680.
- 1680 37. *John-George III.* succeeded his Father the 22d of *August*; he was born the 20th of *June*, 1647. This Prince has several Children: 1. *John-George*, born the 17th of *October*, 1688. 2. *Frederick-Augustus*, born the 12th of *May*, 1670.

The Revenues of this Duke are thought to be the greatest of any one Prince of *Germany* (the Imperial Family excepted) amounting in the least to 400000*l.* per Annum; though in multitude of Vassals and greatness of Territory he come short of some them. And to make up this (some or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that the profit which ariseth to him out of Silver Mines is no less than 130000*l.* yearly; the Impost laid on Beer in *Leipsick* only, a City but of two Parish-Churches, (by which conjecture at the rest) being Farmed at 20000*l.* per Annum. Then hath he the Tenth of all sort of Increase, as of Corn, Wine, &c. The Salt-houses at *Hall* and some other places, very fair Lands belonging unto his Domain; and besides this, a standing and perpetual Tax laid upon the Subject towards the maintenance of the War against the *Turks*; granted at first in times of Danger and Hostility, but gathered ever since in the times of Peace (as to that Enemy) under colour of being ready and prepared against him. According to the quantity of his *Intrado* so he keeps his State, well serv'd, and better attended than any other of the Electors; there being at one time in the Court of *Christian*, the Father of the present Duke, three Dukes, three Earls, and five Barons of other Nations (besides the Nobility of his own) all Pensioners and Servants to him; one of the Princes of *Anhalt* and one of the Earls of *Mansfield*, both Homagers unto the Saxons, being two of the number.

The Continuance of the *Ernest* Line stands thus, and is called *Saxony Wimar*.

1. *John-Frederick*, who was so unjustly dispossessed, had
2. *John-William*, born in 1530; he died in 1573.
- 1573 3. *Frederick-William*, born *April* 25. 1562.
- 1602 4. *John-Philip*, born in 1597.
- 1636 5. *Frederick-William*, born in 1603, *Febr.* 12.
- 1669 6. *William III.* born in 1657.
- 1673 7. *John II.* Uncle of *William* the second, Son of *John-William*; was born in 1570, Founded the Line of *Wimar*, he died in 1605. *John-Ernest* his Son, born the 21th of *February*, 1594, died in 1526 without Issue: The Line was continued by *William* his 5th Son, born in 1598, whose Son *John-Ernest* was born in 1627. He succeeded *William III.* and continued the Line of *Ernest*.
- 1683 8. *William-Ernest*, Son of *John-Ernest* the present Duke of *Saxony Wimar*, was born the 19th of *October*, 1661; his Brother, *John-Ernest*.

The Dukes of *SAXONY GOTHAM*.

- 1660 1. This Family was Founded by *Ernest III.* born in 1601. The Principality of *Gotham* was given him in 1660; in 1672 he got the greatest part of the Earldom of *Henneberg*, and by his Mother he had *Altenburg* and *Coburg*. He was the 9th Son of *John II.* Duke of *Wimar*, and Brother of *William II.* continuer of the *Wimar* Line. This Prince died the 26th of *March*, 1675.
- 1675 2. Leaving *Frederick*, now Duke of *Sax-Gotham*, born the 15th of *July*, 1656; whose eldest Son *Frederick* was born the 28 of *July*, 1676. His 2d Son *John-William* the 4th of *October*, 1677. He died in 1690, his Children young.

The Fortune of this Family is thus represented. *Frederick* the Warlike, Marquis of *Misnia* and Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, obtained of the Emperor *Sigismund* the Electoral Dignity with the Palatinate of *Saxony*, and the Burgravate of *Magdeburg* in 1425, and some think he purchased the Burgravate of *Misnia* too in 1440. *William*, Brother of *Frederick II.* and Son of *Frederick I.* became Lantgrave of *Thuringe*, and he had the Dukedom of *Luxenburg* with his Wife; which in the year 1462, he having no Issue, he sold to *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*. *Ernest I.* added to this Dukedom *Paven*, *Voigtsberg*, *Olsnitz* and *Adorf*, and he purchased *Sagan* in *Silesia*. *Albert* the Magnanimous of this House obtained *Westfrisia* of the House of *Austria*. *Augustus* the Elector added to his Family *Naumburg* and *Mersburg*. In the year 1583 this House got the Earldom of *Henneberg*, they had before *Coburg*, a part of it by Marriage. In the year 1635 *John-George* obtained the Upper and Lower *Lusatia*, which before belonged to the Marquesses of *Misnia*. In 1648, *Augustus* gained the Administration of the Archbishoprick of *Magdeburg*. In 1659, *John-George I.* obtained the Earldom of *Barby* upon the *Elbe*, the Earls that possessed it being extinct; it lies between *Anhalt* to the South, and *Magdeburg* to the North. In the time of the Seventy second *German War*, they gained the Earldom of *Mansfield* by right of Sequestration.

On the other side, in the year 1549, *Mauritius* the Elector parted with the Principality of *Sagan* to *Ferdinand* the First. In 1680, the Bishoprick of *Magdeburg* was made a Dukedom, and assigned for ever to the Duke of *Brandenburg*. This Family has also Pretences upon the Dukedoms of *Juliers*, *Cleves*, *Monts*, and *Sax-Lawenburg*: The Possession of the latter they seized in the

the Year 1689, upon the Death of the Duke without Issue-Male.

The Arms of *Saxony* are Bar-wife of six pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flower'd *Vert*. Which Bend was added to the Coat by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, when he confirmed *Bernard of Anhalt* in this Dukedom. For *Bernard* desiring of the Emperor to have some difference added to the Ducal Coat, (being before only *Barry, Sable and Or*) to distinguish him and his Successors from thole of the former House; the Emperor took a Chaplet of *Rue*, which he had then upon his Head, and threw it cross his Buckler or Escutcheon of Arms, which was presently painted on the same.

19. *BRUNSWICK*, and 20. *LUNENBURG*.

THE Dukedoms of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBURG*, being both originally taken out of this great Dukedom of *Saxony*, extracted both from the same Root, and many times united in the Person of the same one Prince, shall be join'd together in the Story, though severed in the Chorography or Description of them; bounded on the East with *Magdeburg* and *Mansfeld* in the Upper *Saxony*, on the West with *Westphalia*, on the North with *Denmark*, on the South with *Hassia*. The Air in all parts hereof is very cold and comfortless but sound and healthful: the Soil towards the old Marches of *Brandenburg* but meanly fertile, towards *Duringen* and *Hassia* Mountainous and Woody, in other parts very plentiful of Corn, and well provided also of such other Commodities as usually do grow in thole colder Climates.

But to take the Chorography of them severally, *BRUNSWICK* is bounded on the East with the Earldom of *Mansfeld*, on the West with *Westphalen*, on the North with *Lunenbourg*, on the South with *Hassia*. So called from *Brunswick*, the chief City and the Head of this Dukedom.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Goslar*, upon the River *Gose*, whence it had the name; of a poor Village made a City by *Henry* the first, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who found here two Churches and a stately Palace; now one of the Imperial Cities. 2. *Helmstat*, in the middle way between *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg*; first fortified by *Charles* Son of *Charles* the Great, for a Bridle to the neighbouring *Slaves*; and being after given to the Abbots of *Werden*, was by them sold to *William* the Duke of *Brunswick*. 3. *Quedlenburg*, built also by *Henry* the first, much increased since by the Neighbourhood of a very rich Nunnery, the Abbess whereof had formerly the Privileges of a Prince of the Empire. 4. *Hildesheim*, an ancient City, honoured with an Episcopal See by *Charles* the Great at the first Conversion of the *Saxons*. The Bishop of this City is the only Roman Catholick Bishop in all *Saxony*. 5. *Grubenhagen*, which gave Title to a younger branch of the House of *Brunswick*; a Principality, and a Member of the Empire. 6. *Hannover*, on the River *Lein*, well built, very strongly Fortified, and not meanly traded. 7. *Brunswick*, upon the River *Onagra*, which passeth through it, passed over by many handsom Bridges; the Metropolis of the ancient *Saxony*, and at this time the chief of this Dukedom, though of it self Imperial, and one of the *Hanse*. The City is of a quadrangular Form, seated in the midst of a Plain, very fruitful of Corn, in compass about two Dutch, or eight English Miles, somewhat larger than *Nuremberg*, and less than *Erfort*; containing in that compass not above twelve Churches, whereof two have Steeples cover'd with Lead, a third with Brass, all the rest with Tile. It is rich, populous and strongly Fortified on some sides with a double, on others with a treble Wall; within which Walls are five Cities, distinguish'd by Privileges, but united by Laws. The whole first built by *Bruno*, Son to *Indolphus* Duke of *Saxony*, and Uncle to the Emperor *Henry* the first, about the year 861; from whence it had

the name of *Brunswick*, or *Brunonis Flacus*; by the more elegant *Latinists*, *Brunopolis*. This City in the year 1671 was surprized by the Duke of *Transylvania*, who built a stately and a strong Citadel to assure his Possession, but the City is observed since that time to wait and decay. *S. Hamelen*, on the East side of the *Weser* or *Vesungis*, encompassed with a deep Moat, (occasioned by a stream cut out of the River) round about which are divers Fortifications, and planted with Ordnance. Nigh unto this Town is the Mountain called also *Hamelen*, unto which the Py'd Piper (as they call him) led the Children of *Hulberstadt*, where they all sunk, and were never more seen. But of this Story more hereafter, when we come to *Transylvania*. 9. *Wolfshaiten*, or *Wolfsbuttel*, where the Duke doth keep his Court. For tho' *Brunswick* giveth him his Title, yet will it not yield him any Obedience, but reputeth it self amongst the *Hanse*-Towns; for which cause there have been great Wars between the Dukes and the Citizens. 10. *Hulberstadt*, a Bishop's See, the late Bishop (or Administrator of the Bishoprick) being *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick*, that noble young Soldier, who had vowed his Life and Fortune to the Service of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*, his Cousin-german; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the Garter. A Bishoprick of great Revenue, and a very large Territory; since the alteration of Religion, given with the Title of Administrator to the Sons of *Brunswick*; but now, by the Conclusions at *Amster*, assigned over to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of Prince of *Hulberstadt*, the Family of *Brunswick* being to be recompensed with an alternate Succession in the Bishoprick of *Osnabrug*, and some other additional. 11. *Harfeld*, the Seat sometimes of the old *Palatines* of *Saxony*, but not else observable. 12. *Amelungsbome*, another Town of the said *Palatines*, by one of which, called *Sigefridus*, it was beautified with a very fair Abbey: the principal Towns (in thole days) of this *Palatinate*, which, bordering on that part of the *Thuringians* which is now call'd *Hassia*, was taken in by *Herman*, one of the *Lautgraves* of that Country, on the Proscription of Duke *Henry*, surnamed the Lion; but on the failure of his Line, recovered for the most part by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*.

The Dukedom of *LUNENBURG* hath on the East the Diocess of *Magdeburg*, on the West the Diocess of *Bremen*, and part of *Westphalia*, on the North the *Elbe*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Brunswick*. So called from *Lunenbourg* the chief City, once the Seat of the Dukes.

Places of most Observation in it are, 1. *Lunenbourg* it self, situate on the River *Elmenaw*, an Imperial City, and one of the principal of the *Hanse*; so called from the Moon here worshipped in the times of Idolatry. Of a round form it is, and seated in a pleasant Valley, but with Mountains near it: on one of which, called *Calberg*, is a very strong Castle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens, who without this Fort could not be masters of their Liberties. The Walls about it are of Earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep: the Buildings generally fair (for the most part of Brick) the chief whereof is the Common-Council-House; the Streets broad and long, with two spacious Market-places, but of no very pleasing smell: the whole about a mile and an half in length, and half a mile breadth, containing six Parish-Churches. But the thing most considerable in it is the Fountain of Salt (the greatest Riches of this City) and the House in which the Salt is boiled, containing 52 Rooms, and in each Room 8 Leaden Pans, in which are boiled daily 8 Tuns of Salt, every Tun being sold for 8 *Flemish* Shillings, bought by the *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants; some part of the Profits of it belonging to the Duke, some to the City, the rest to the Adventurers who employ their Stocks on it. 2. *Cell*, the Seat of the Duke of *Lunenbourg*. 3. *Geiborn*, of no great bigness or estimation, but for a strong Castle of the Dukes. 4. *Oldendorp*, situate betwixt the *Vena* and

and the River *Iffsa*, memorable for the great Battle fought near unto it, *Anno* 1633, betwixt the Imperialists and the *Swedes*, the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemy, besides such as were found dead in the Fields and High-ways, all covered over with dead Bodies, took 1500 of them Prisoners, and got into their hands 13 pieces of Ordnance, good store of Ammunition, and three Mules laden with Silver for the pay of the Army: the reputation of this Victory drawing in *Hamelen* and other places of importance which stood out before. 5. *Verden*, an Episcopal See, but made a Lay-see, as most other Bishopricks amongst the *Lutherans*; the Profits thereof being received commonly by a Son of *Denmark* with the Title of *Administrator*, and lastly, by the Treaty of *Munster* appropriated for ever to the Crown of *Sweden*, the King's whereof to be entituled Dukes of *Verden*. 6. *Rodenburg*, the chief Seat of the Bishops of *Verden*.

The ancient Inhabitants of these Dukedoms were the *Dugublini* of *Tacitus*, with some parts of the *Chauci* and *Cherusci*: these last of most fame for the Blow they gave to *Quintilius Varus*, Lieutenant in *Germany* after *Drusus* for *Augustus Caesar*, who, behaving himself with great Insolency towards the Natives, was set upon by these *Cherusci* and their Confederates, under the Conduct of *Arminius*, a great Prince amongst them, himself slain, and his whole Army, consisting of three Legions, miserably cut off and despoightfully used: which loss, and the shame thereof, so distracted the Emperor, (not formerly accustomed to the like Misfortunes) that he was many times observ'd to tear his Beard, knock his Head against the Posts and cry out in the bitterness of his Passion, *Redde mihi Legiones, Quintili Vare*. Having long time after this maintained their Liberty (for the *Romans* kept themselves from that time forwards on the *French* side of the *Rhene*) they were at last subdued by the *Saxons*; continuing part of that great Dukedom till the time of the three *Otho's*, Emperors of the *Romans* and Dukes of *Saxony*; who, looking on the Empire as a state of Inheritance, diminished both the Grandure and Revenue of the ancient Patrimony, partly by the Donation or Endowment of many Bishopricks, and partly by the erection of many petty Seigniories to be holden under them as chief Lords of all. Amongst which, that of *Lunenburg* was none of the least, continuing as a State distinct, till such time as *Bernard*, Lord of *Lunenburg*, was by the Emperor *Otho* the third made Duke of *Saxony*, and created the first Duke-Elector, whereby again it was united to the rest of that Dukedom, the greatest part whereof he held in his actual Possession, together with a Superiority or Jurisdiction over all the residue, (the great Bishopricks excepted only) which had been parcelled out, as before is said: and it continued thus united till the Proscription of *Henry*, surnamed the Lion, spoken of before; whose Reconciliation being made by means of *Henry* the second of *England*, whose Daughter *Maud* he had formerly Married, the Emperor *Barbarossa* restored to him again the Cities of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, with their several Territories, of which his two Sons, *Henry* and *William*, were first created Earls, then Dukes, the one of *Brunswick*, and the other of *Lunenburg*, by the Emperor *Frederick* the second. Which Honours and Estates do still remain unto their Posterities. Before I come to the Successions of these Princes, I shall crave leave to speak of the Original of the *Guelphian* Family, Dukes at the same time of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, of which they are at this time the sole remainder. A Family derived from one *Guelphus*, (whence it had the name) the Son of *Ifenberdus*, Earl of *Altorf* in *Schwaben*; whose Wife, called *Fermintrudis*, having accused a poor Woman of Adultery, and caused her to be grievously punished for having 12 Children at a Birth, was afterwards delivered of the like number, and all of them Sons. Her Husband being absent at the time of her Delivery, she commanded the Nurse to kill 11 of them; fearing, it

seems, the like shame and punishment as by her instigation was inflicted on the other Woman. The Nurse going to perform this ungodly command was met by the old Earl then returning homewards; who ask'd her what she had in her Apron. She made answer, Whelps. He desired to see them: she denied him. Angry at this refusal, he opened her Apron, and there found eleven of his own Sons, pretty sweet Babes, and of most promising Countenances. Examining the matter, he found out the truth, and enjoining the old Trot to be secret in it, he put the Children out to Nurse. Six years expired, the Earl invited to a Feast most of his own and his Ladies Kindred, and attiring the young Boys all alike, presented them unto their Mother; who suspecting, by the number of them, what the matter was, confessed her Offence, is pardoned by the good old Earl, and carefully educates her Children: whom the Father commanded to be called by the name of *Guelphs*, alluding to the Whelps or Puppies which the Nurse told him she had in her Apron. From the eldest of these *Guelphs* or *Guelps* succeeded that *Henry-Guelph*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorf*, whom *Conrade* the second made Duke of *Bavaria*; many of whose Posterity enjoy'd that Dukedom: encreased at last by the addition of the Dukedom of *Saxony*, in the Person of Duke *Henry* surnamed the Proud, Father of *Henry* called the Lion, the Grandfather of *Henry* and *William* the first Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, whose Succession followeth in this Order.

The Dukes of *BRUNSWICK* and
LUNENBURG.

- | | | |
|------------------|--|--|
| 1137 }
1179 } | 1. <i>Henry</i> , surnamed the Lion, the last Duke of <i>Saxony</i> , and the first of this Title; who died in the year 1195. | |
| | <i>Brunswick.</i> | <i>Lunenburg, or Zell.</i> |
| 1195 | 2. <i>Henry</i> first Earl, after Duke of <i>Brunswick</i> . | 1195 2. <i>William</i> , first Earl after Duke of <i>Lunenburg</i> , in 1235. |
| 1213 | 3. <i>Otho</i> , Son of <i>William</i> , Duke of <i>Lunenburg</i> ; after the Death of <i>Henry</i> , Duke of <i>Brunswick</i> also, who in the Year 1227 recovered the City of <i>Brunswick</i> out of the hands of <i>Frederick</i> second, Emperor, by force of Arms; yet in the year 1239 he obtained <i>Frederick's</i> Favour, and the regranting his Lands with the Title of a Dukedom, by which Grant this Dukedom was made subject to the Empire. He married <i>Agnes</i> , Daughter of <i>Henry</i> his Predecessor. | |
| 1254 | 4. <i>Albert</i> , Son of <i>Otho</i> . | 1252 4. <i>John</i> , Son of <i>Otho</i> . He was the first Duke of <i>Lunenburg</i> separately; he died in the year 1276 or 77. |
| 1279 | 5. <i>Albert</i> II. Son of <i>Albert</i> . | 1261 5. <i>Otho</i> II. Son of <i>John</i> . |
| 1318 | 6. <i>Otho</i> II. Son of <i>Albert</i> the second. | 1330 6. <i>Otho</i> III. Son of <i>Otho</i> the 2d.
7. <i>William</i> III. died 1368. |
| 1334 | 7. <i>Magnus</i> , Son of <i>Albert</i> II. on the failing of the other House, enjoyed both Estates. | |
| 1368 | 8. <i>Magnus</i> II. Son of <i>Magnus</i> the first. | |
| 1373 | 9. <i>Henry</i> , Son of <i>Magnus</i> the second. This Prince in the year 1395 subdued the <i>Lunenburgers</i> ; in 1404 he made an Expedition against <i>Otho</i> of <i>Schaumburg</i> , and he died in the Year 1416: his Estate was divided amongst his Children. <i>William</i> his eldest Son was Duke of <i>Brunswick-Wolfembuttel</i> , and was succeeded by <i>William</i> his eldest Son in that Honour. | |

Wolfembuttel.

- Wolfembüttel.*
 1416 11. *William* Son of *Henry*. This *William* was called the victorious upon the account of 7 victories he obtained, *William* his eldest Son succeeded him in *Wolfembüttel*. *Frederick* the 2d. Son, had *Callenburg* for his share, he died in the year 1499, in Custody.
- 1482 12. *William* II. Son of *William*. *William* the 2d. was a peaceable Prince, and in the year 1503, he divided his Estate amongst his Children, and died. *Henry* succeeded in *Wolfembüttel*, and *Ernst* his 2. Son in *Callenburg*, but he died without Issue in 1584.
- 1503 13. *Henry* the 2. Son of *William* the 2. He was an unquiet Prince, and very vexatious to his Subjects, and was at last slain in *East-Friesland* in the year 1514.
- 1514 14. *Henry* 3. Son of *Henry* the 2. He was a great Enemy to the Reformation, in the year 1543, was by the Leaguers of *Smalcald*, deprived of all his Estates, and taken Prisoner by the Elector of *Saxony*, and kept Prisoner till 1547.
- 1568 15. *Julius*, Son of *Henry* the 3. who reformed the Religion: he was born in 1528. He founded the University of *Helmstadt* in 1576.
- 1589 16. *Henry* 4. Son of *Julius*, who married the Lady *Elizabeth*, Sister to *Anne* Queen of *England*. He was born the 15th of *October*, 1564.
- 1613 17. *Frederick-Ulrick*, Son of *Elizabeth* of *Denmark* and of *Henry-Julius*, born the 5th of *April*, 1591. In 1616, he Forced
- Lunenburg.*
 1416 11. *Bernard*, Brother of *Magnus* the second.
- 1434 12. *Otho*, the Son of *Bernard*.
- 1445 13. *Frederick*, brother of *Otho*.
- 1478 14. *Otho*, Grandson of *Frederick*, by *Otho* his second Son.
- 1514 15. *Henry* 3. Son of *Otho* the 3. This Prince succeeded in the Life of his Father, and was under the Tutelage of his Grandfather and Mother after many Wars, he died at *Paris* in the year 1532. He had a Son, whose name was *Otho*, who succeeded him.
- 1532 16. *Otho* 4th Son of *Henry* the 3.
17. *Ernest*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's Lifetime, surrendering his Estate for an Annual Pension.
18. *Ernest* Son of *Henry*, was the 1st that admitted the Reformation in this Family.
- 1546 19. *Henry* 4. Son of *Ernest*, Resigned *Lunenburg* to *William* his younger Brother, who died in the year 1592.
- 1592 20. *Ernest* 2. Son of *Henry* the 4. He lived single, and died in the year 1611.
- 1611 21. *Augustus*, brother of *Ernest*, born the 19th of *November* 1568, succeeded him because he had no Inheritable Issue.
- 1636 22. *George* Son of *William*, born in 1582. He got the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim* in 1633.
- 1641 23. *Christian* Lewis, Son of *George*, born 1622, the 25th of *February*.
- 1665 24. *George* *William*, brother of *Christian*, born in 1624, the 16th of *February*, he has Married *Sophia* *Dorothea* his only Daughter in 1682
- the City of *Brunswick*, to do him Homage, he died without any Issue.
- 1636 } 18. *Augustus*, Son of
 1634 } *Henry* Duke of *Lunenburg*, succeeded, on the death of *Frederick* *Ulrick*, and the failure of the House of *Brunswick* in him, in this Dukedom. He was born in the year 1579.
- 1666 19. *Rodolphus* *Augustus*, born the 16th of *May*, 1627, in the year 1671, he subdued the Inhabitants of *Brunswick*. He has only 3 Daughters, to *Antho* *Ulrick*, his brother, is to succeed, whose Son is *Augustus* *William*, born the 8th of *March*, 1662.
- The Arms of these Dukedoms were first the same, that is to say, *Gules*, two Lions *Or*, armed *Azure*; which Arms they took by reason of their extraction from the Kings of *England*, then Dukes of *Normandy*; retained to this day by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, without any addition. But those of *Lunenburg* have added three Coats more to it: the whole bearing being quarterly, 1. *Gules*, two Lions *Or*, Armed *Azure*; 2. *Azure*, Seme of Hearts *Gules*, a Lion of the first, Armed and Crowned *Or*; 3. *Azure*, a Lion *Argent*, Crowned *Gules*; and 4. *Gules*, within a Border *Componie Or* and *Azure*, a Lion of the second, Armed of the third.
- In the year 1235, when *Otho* the Grandson of *Henry* the Lion, after the Death of his Ancestors, obtained these Dukedoms of *Frederick* the Emperor, this Family had then besides the said Dukedoms, the Earldoms of *Nordheim*, *Lawenrod*, and *Lutterberg* almost all *Hercinia* or the *Harz*, and *Göttingen*. In 1246, they got the City of *Münden*. In 1255, *Albert* M. obtained *Assenburg* and *Wolfembüttel*. In 1259, the City of *Hamell*, which before belonged to the Abby of *Fuld*, gave up itself to him. In 1305 *Gravenhage*, in 1311 *Gittel* were added. In 1376, *Danneberg* was Conquered. In 1320, the Earldom of *Luchou*, in 1337 the Town of *Vallerleben*, in 1347 the Bailiwick of *Bodenteich*, in 1350 the Town of *Wittingen* were purchased. In 1380 *Hardysen*, in 1388 *Klotze* and *Snackenburg* on the *Elbe*, in 1433 the Bishop of *Hildesheim* yielded them *Burgdorf*. In 1435 *William* the Elder, united to his Estate the Earldom of *Hallermond*. In 1445, *Otho* by Marriage, had the Earldom of *Eberstein*, and the Territory of *Hamburg*. In 1446, *William* the Victorious, purchased *Wunstorp*, in 1468, *Otho* obtained *Hitzgar*, and *Hitzacker*, in 1490 *William* bought *Helmstadt*, in 1519 they conquered *Dassel*, in 1571 they had by a vacancy *Radolfschausen*, and in 1582 the Earldom *Hoyen*, and in 1585 that of *Diepholt*, in 1592 *Gumbse*, in 1593 *Hoenstein*, an Earldom. In 1599 the Earldom of *Blankenburg*, in 1636, *George* took possession of the Bishoprick and City of *Hildesheim*, in 1648, they got the Monastery of *Walkenreid*, and an Alternate Succession in the Bishoprick of *Osnabrugg*. And in 1671, they regained the Dominion of the City of *Brunswick*. In 1678, by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*, they obtained from the Swedes, *Tedinghausen* and *Doveren*, 2. *Bailiwicks*.
- The Losses of this House are these. In 1331, *Otho* the 7th Mortgaged to *Adolph* Bishop of *Mentz*, *Eisfeld* and *Duderstadt*, in 1648, they were forced to part with the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim* and the Territories of *Clettenberg* and *Lohr*, which belonged to *Hohnstein*, were yielded to the House of *Brandenburg*. And in the year 1689, upon the Death of the former Duke, they seized upon the Duchy of *Sax-Lawenburg*, under the pretence of a

most just pretention, but this is all claimed by the Duke of Saxony, and the determining of the Right is respited to the end of the present War.

20. HASSIA.

HASSIA is bounded on the North with *Brunswick*, on the South with *Vetavia* or the state of *Weteram*, on the East with *Thuringia*, and on the West with *Westphalia*. *Baudrand* bounds it on the North with *Westphalia*, on the West with *Westermaldi* and *Weteram*, on the South with *Franconia*, and on the East with *Thuringe* and *Brunswick*. So called from the *Hessi*, who, having vanquished the *Chatti*, the old Inhabitants of this Country, possessed themselves of it.

The Christian Faith was first preached here by *Boniface*, or *Winefride*, an *English-Saxon*, (afterwards Archbishop of *Mentz*) Anno 730, or thereabouts. Of whom I find this memorable Apophthegm, *That in old times there were golden Prelates and wooden Chalicees, but in his time wooden Prelates and golden Chalicees*. Not much unlike to which I have read another, but of later date, viz. *That once the Christians had blind Churches, and lightsome hearts; but now they have lightsome Churches, and blind hearts*.

The Country is very fruitful of Corn, and affordeth good Pasturage for the feeding of Cattel, of which they have great Drovers and Herds in many places; with great abundance of Stags and other Deer for the pleasures of Hunting, harboured in the Woods hereof, with which, in many parts of it, it is very much shaded. It breedeth also on the Downs good store of sheep, enriched with the finest Fleece of any in *Germany*; the Staple-Commodity of this Country: and in the mountainous parts hereof there want not rich Mines of Brass, Lead, and other Metals, which yield great profit to the people.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Alend-riff*, on the *Wefer* (or *Visurgis*) of much esteem for the Springs or Fountains of Salt, which are thereabouts. 2. *Fritzlar*, upon the *Eder*, well walled, and situate in a fruitful and pleasant Soil, belonging to the Archbishop and Elector of *Mentz*, but, in regard of the convenient situation of it, much aimed at, many times attempted, and sometimes forcibly possessed, both by the Lantgraves of *Hassia* and Dukes of *Saxony*. 3. *Fulda*, on a River of that name, remarkable for the Monastery there founded by *Boniface*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, by the name of *Saint Savours*, the Abbot of which is a Prince of the Empire, Chancellor of the Emperors, and Lord of a goodly Territory in this Country, called from hence *Stift Fuld*. 4. *Frankenberg*, on the *Eder* also, so called from the *French*, who encamped there in their Wars against the *Saxons*; first founded by *Theodorick* the *French* King, Anno 520, but much enlarged by *Charles* the Great about the year 804. 5. *Eschwege*, on the brow of an Hill, near the River *Wert*; of great trading for Wood, of which the Fields adjoining yield a rich increase. Being destroyed by the *Hungarians*, it was re-edified and enlarged by the Emperor *Henry* the 2. and having suffered much misery in the long War between *Adolph* Archbishop of *Mentz* and the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, it fell at last into the possession of the Lantgrave, Anno 1387. 6. *Melsingen*, on the River *Fuld*. 7. *Darmstadt*, lately, if not at the present, the Seat and inheritance of Count *Ludowick*, of the younger House of the Lantgraves, taken prisoner by Count *Mansfield*, Anno 1622, and his whole Country exposed unto spoil and rapine, because (besides many other ill offices) he was the chief perswader of the Princes of the *Union* to disband their Forces, provided for defence of themselves and the *Palatinate*, and to reconcile themselves to the Emperor. By the Treaty of *Munster*, they were freed from all subjection of the Lantgrave, and declared independent Lords by a subsequent Agreement made in the year 1668, the Bishop of *Paderborne*, upon the failure of the Male Line of

Waldeck, is to succeed in the County and Castle of *Pymont*, paying 20000 Imperials to the Daughters of the last possessed Prince, who are to enjoy it till this Money is pay'd. 8. *Narpurg*; the seat of the second House of the Lantgraves, descending from that *Philip* who was Lantgrave in the time of *Charles* the Fifth, whom he so valiantly withstood; pleasantly seated on the *Lon*, amongst Viny Downs and shady Mountains; honoured with an University founded here by *Lewis* Bishop of *Munster*, Anno 1426, and beautified with a magnificent Castle (the ordinary dwelling of those Princes) situate on an high Hill somewhat out of the Town, which gives it a very gallant Prospect over the Town and Country. The present Count of *Waldeck* and *Pymont*, is *Christian Lewis*, born in the year 1635, and his eldest Son *Frederrick*, born in 1653, he had a second Son call'd *Fredrick Lewis*, born in 1672. 9. *Geisen*, a Town belonging to the Lantgraves of *Cassels*, and a small University also. 10. *Dietz*, upon the River *Lon*, belonging also to the House of *Cassels*. 11. *Cassels*, the chief Town and ordinary Residence of the Lantgraves of the elder House, who are hence sometimes called the Lantgraves of *Cassels*: commodiously seated in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, and well fortified with strong earthen Walls and deep Ditches; but the houses in it of no great beauty, being composed for the most part of Wood, Thatch and Clay. 12. *Weslax* or *Wetzlar*, an Imperial and Free City, upon the *Lohne* also, 7 miles from *Francfort* to the North, to this City the Imperial Chamber was removed from *Spire*, in the year 1689, by the Diet of *Germany*, the *French* having demolished and destroyed all the building in *Spire* before this Decree passed.

Within the Limits of this Province is the County of *WALDECK*, not subject to the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, though included within the Bounds of it before laid down, taking up the Western parts thereof, where it meets with *Westphalia*: in figure very near a square, each side of which is of the length of six ordinary *Dutch*, or twenty four *English* miles. The Soil is much of the same nature with the rest of *Hassia*, save that it hath some veins of Quick-silver and inexhaustible Mines of Coal, which the other wanteth; these last in great plenty about *Wildung*, and the strong Castle of *Eisenberg*, two of the best Towns and places of it. Others of chief note are, 3. *Waldeck* it self, on the River *Eder*, the first Seat of the Earls hereof, who have here an ancient Castle, from whence the whole Country takes its name. 4. *Mungerickbuse*, in a fair Castle whereof live the present Earls. 5. *Witterberg*, in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, betwixt the Rivers *Twische* and *Abra*. 6. *Corbach*, famous in the times of *Albertus Magnus* for its Golden Mines, yielding great profit to these Earls. The Pedigree of which Earls is fetched from one *Wittikind* Earl of *Snalenberg*, whom *Charles* the Great made advocate or Patron of the Church of *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*, being an Office in those times of great Jurisdiction. By *Wittikind* the second, one of his Successors: this Office was surrendered into the Hands of the Chapter, for the sum of 300 marks in Silver; and to cut off all farther Claims, *Henry*, the Nephew of this *Wittikind* by his Son *Otho*, was by the Chapter gratified with the Town of *Waldeck*, of which he was the first Earl, whose Nephew *Henry*, surnamed *Ferreus*, subdued *Corbach*, Anno 1366, and added it to his Estate. By a third *Henry* Grandchild of this *Ferreus*, or Man of Iron; this Earldom, formerly held in Fee of the Church of *Paderborn*, was first under the Patronage and Protection of the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, Anno 1428, as it continueth to this day. Since restored, the Earls hereof content with their own Estates, and more addicted to the Book than unto the Sword, have acted little in the Wars to improve their Fortunes. This City was taken by the Imperialists, in the year 1647, but the Castle holding out, it was Plundered and deserted again.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole, both *Waldeck* and the rest of *Hassia*, and also of the Country of *Nassau* in

in *Veteravia* near adjoining, were the *Catti* or *Chatti*, mentioned by the Ancients. It was first conquered (after the withdrawing of the *Roman* Forces) by the *Hessi*, and both subdued not long after by the *Thuringians*: subject unto the Lantgraves of *Duringen*, till the death of *Henry* the last of the Male-issue of *Lewis* of *Orleans*. In the division of whose Estate, the Western moiety of *Duringen* fell to the share of *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, one of the Competitors who leaving the Title of Lantgrave of *Duringen* to the Marquiss of *Misnia*, took to himself the Title of the Lantgrave of *Hessen*, in memory of the *Hessi* spoken of before. Of his Successors the most puissant was that *Philip* who in the time of *Charles* the fifth much swayed the Affairs of *Germany*, Anno 1520. he discomfited King *Ferdinand*, and restored *Ulric* to the Dukedom of *Wittenberg*, Anno 1530, he united all the Protestant Princes and Cities of *Germany* in common League at *Smalcald*, for the defence of the Protestant Religion, Anno 1545, he undertook the Cause of *Goslaria* against the Duke of *Brunswick*, whom in a set Battle he took prisoner, together with his Son, and possessed his Country. Anno 1548, he united all the Princes and Cities of *Germany* in an offensive and defensive League against *Charles* the fifth. But that War succeeded not prosperously; for the Duke of *Saxony*, his perpetual Confederate, being taken prisoner, he submitted himself to the Emperor at *Kala*, or *Hale* in *Duringen*; his Sons-in-law, Duke *Maurice*, the Marquiss of *Brandenburg*, and *Wolfgang* Prince of *Deuxponts*, having given their Bonds for his return. The Condition of his Pardon were first, that he should dismantle all his Towns, except *Cassels*. 2. That he should yield up unto the Emperor all his Munition. 3. That he should pay unto the Emperor 150000 Crowns the same night he was by the Duke of *Alva* invited to Supper, his Sons-in-law of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* accompanying him. After Supper he was contrary to the Laws of Hospitality and the Emperors exact Promise, detained Prisoner. The fallacy stood thus: In the Emperors Compact with the three Princes the words were, that the Lantgrave should be kept, *Nicht in einig gefengknes*, that is, *not in any Prison*; which the Emperors Secretary, by a small dash of his Pen, turned into *Nicht in ewig gefengknes*, that is, *not in everlasting prison*. Well in prison he staid five years, which being expired, he was again set at large by Duke *Maurice* the overthrower and restorer of the *German* Liberty. The Residue of these Lantgraves in their several times occur in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Lantgraves of *HASSIA*.

- 1263 1. *Henry* of *Brabant*, Son of *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, and of *Sophia* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, after a nine years War betwixt him and the Marquiss of *Misnia*, divided the Estate, and took unto himself the Title of Lantgrave of *Hessen*.
- 1308 2. *Otho* and *John*, Sons of *Henry*.
- 1323 3. *Henry* II. and *Lewis*, Sons of *Otho*.
- 1376 4. *Herman*, the Son of *Lewis*.
- 1414 5. *Lewis* II. Son of *Herman*, surnamed the Mild.
- 1458 6. *Lewis* III. Son of *Lewis* the Mild.
- 1471 7. *William*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* the third, dispossessed of his Estate by
- 1509 8. *William* the II. his youngest Brother.
9. *Philip*, the famous Lantgrave spoken of before Son of *William* the second, was born in the year 1504, at five years of Age, he became Lantgrave, in 1518 he was declared of full Age, in 1527 he embraced the Reformation, in 1531 he founded the University of *Marpurg*, in 1547 he was taken Prisoner by *Charles* the 5th.

Hesse Cassel.

- 1657 10. *William* III. eldest Son of *Philip*, born the 24th of *June* 1533, succeeded in one moiety of the Estate, and resided at *Cassels*, the other moiety being divided betwixt his Brethren, *Ludowick* of *Marpurg*, and *George* of *Darmstadt*, Father of *Ludowick* of *Darmstadt* before mentioned. *William* III. was a Learned Prince, and a great lover of Astronomy, he sought all the ways that were possible to gain his Fathers Liberty, and died the 25th of *August* 1592.
- 1590 11. *Maurice*, eldest Son of *William* the third, born the 25th of *May* 1572. A Learned and a Zealous Prince for the Protestant Religion, for the Preservation of which he began a League in 1603, which after grew up into an Union; but being overpowered by Count *Tilly* in the year 1626, he was forced to surrender his Estates to his Son *William*, after which he lived privately till the year 1632.
- 1626 12. *William* IV. Son of *Maurice*, born the 14th of *February* 1602, surnamed the Constant, pursued his Fathers Methods, and was as Zealous a defender of the Reformation, to which purpose he Leagued with *Gustavus Adolphus*, and fought under his Banners in the Battle of *Leypsic*. He died in *Friesland* in the year 1637, the 21th of *September*.
- 1637 13. *William* V. born the 29th of *May* 1629, a Child when his Father died; lived under the Tutelage of *Elizabeth* his Mother (a brave and Magnanimous Lady) till the year 1650, in the year 1649, he Married *Sophia* the daughter of *George William*, Elector of *Brandenburg*, and died of an Apoplexy *July* the 16th 1663.
- 1663 14. *William* VI. Son of the former, born the 21th of *June* 1651, died of the Small-pox the 21th of *November* 1670.
- 1670 15. *Charles*, Brother of *William* VI. and Son of *William* the 5th, was born the 3d of *August* 1654, he is now living and has several Sons viz, *Frederick*, Born the 28th of *April* 1676. *Charles*, born the 12th of *June* 1680. *Leopold*, born the 30th of *December* 1684.

The Arms of these Lantgraves are *Azure*, a Lion Barry of Eight pieces, *Argent* and *Gules* crowned *Or*, Which being properly and originally the Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, were given by *Conradus Salicus*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperor, to *Lewis* of *Orleans*, at such times as he invested him in the Lantgravedom of *Thuringia*: on the expiration of whose Line they were challenged and born by the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, as the direct Heirs of *Lewis* the 6th, and his Brother *Henry*, the last male Princes of that House.

Hesse Darmstadt.

- 1567 1. *George* the youngest Son of *Philip* the Magnanimous, was the Author of this Line. He was born the 10th of *September* 1547.
- 1596 2. *Lewis* Son of *George*, born the 24th of *September* 1577.
- 1626 3. *George* II, born the 17th of *March* 1605.
- 1671 4. *Lewis* II. born the 25th of *January* 1678.
- 1678 5. *Ernest Lewis*, born the 15th of *December* 1667, is now living. His Sons are *George*, born the 25th of *April* 1669. *Philip* the 21th of *July* 1671, &c.

The Line of *Hesse Homburg*.

- 1596 1. *Frederick* Son of *George*, the Founder of the Line of *Hesse Darmstadt*. He was born the Fifth of *May* 1585, and died the 9th of *May* 1638.

- 1638 2. *William Christopher*, born the 13th of November 1625, he died in the year 1665.
 1665 3. *George Christian*, born the 10th of December 1626, he turned *Roman Catholick*, and died without any Issue in the year 1677.
 1677 4. *Frederick*, Brother of *George*, born the 30th of May 1630. He has three Sons, *Frederick* born 1673, *Charles Christian* in 1674, and *Philip* born in 1676.

Of the Increase, and Decrease of this Family.

Henry of Brabant the first of this House, in the year 1280 got into his hands the City of *Immenhausen*, and in 1281. In 1290 *Eschwegen*, in 1293 *Stauffenberg*. In 1329 *Treffurt* upon the *Werr*, in 1350 *Henry* purchased the Castle of *Kenigsberg*, in 1353 the Bailywick of *Ibern*, and in 1360, he bought the City of *Smalcald*. In 1386 the Count of *Dietz* dying without Issue, the greatest part of that Earldom was annexed to this Family. In 1453 upon the like Death of the Count of *Zeighenheim*, that Earldom and *Nidda* was also united to this Family. In 1464, *Henry* obtained from the Arch-bishop of *Mentz*, the Earldom of *Battenberg*. In 1478, by a Marriage it gained *Butzbach*. In 1480 *Henry* bought *Fridenwald*. In 1492 *William* added *Epstein*. In 1557, after a long contest this Family gained from that of *Nassau*, *Catzen-Ellenbogen*. In 1504 *Bickenbach*. In 1571 *Plesse*, and part of *Hoyen*, In 1583 *Frankenstein*. In 1600, *Lewis* of *Darmstadt*, purchased *Kelsterbach* upon the *Maine*. In 1648, the Abby of *Hirschfeld* under the Title of a Principality, and a great part of the Earldom of *Schaunberg*, was gained.

This Family has not wasted any part of its Patrimony, nor has it any pretences, but to that of a Mutual League of Succession, with the Families of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*.

21. WESTPHALIA.

WESTPHALIA is bounded on the East with *Hassia*, *Brunswick*, and part of *Lunenbourg*; on the West with the Bishoprick of *Colen*, *Cleve*, *Over-Yffel*, *West* and *East-Friesland*, and the *German Ocean*; on the North with the *Elb*, and the Dukedom of *Holstein*; and on the South with *Weteravia*, and some part of *Hassia*.

It was thus called of the *Westphalia*, a Tribe or Division of the *Saxons*, distinguished heretofore into the *Transalbinos*, inhabiting beyond the *Elb* or *Albis*, in the County of *Holstein*, now a part of *Denmark*, the *Oostphali*, betwixt the *Elb*, the *Ocean*, with the River of *Sala* and the *Weser*, taking up the Bishopricks of *Breme*, *Virden*, *Hildesheim*, *Halberstadt* and *Meydeburg*, with the Dukedom of *Lunenbourg* and *Brunswick*; the *Angrivarians*, taking up the North-West part of the modern *Westphalen*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Breme* and the Earldom of *Oldenburg*; and finally, the *Westphali* or *Western Saxons*, inhabiting the rest of the modern *Westphalen* with the Earldoms of *Marck*, *Berg*, *Zutphen*, the Seignoury of *Over-Yffel*, and some parts of *Gelderland* and *Holland*. But the *Saxons* being subjugated by the power of the *French*, and several new Estates erected out of that old Stock; the remnant of the *Westphali* and *Angrivarians* (the Bishoprick of *Breme* being added unto the account) were comprehended and united in the name of *Westphalen*.

The Soil according to the several parts of it, is of different natures: the parts adjoining to the *Weser* being desert and barren; those toward the Earldoms of *Marck* and *Bergen* mountainous and full of Woods; the Bishoprick of *Bremen*, except towards the *Elb*, full of dry Sands, Heaths and unfruitful Thickets, like the wilde parts of *Windsor Forest* betwixt *Stanes* and *Fernham*. In other parts it is exceeding plentiful of Corn, and of excellent Pasturage; stored with great plenty of wilde Fruits, and (by reason of the many Woods) abundance

of Acorns; with infinite Herds of Swine (which they breed up with those natural helps) of so good a relish, that a Gamon of *Westphalie Bacon* is reckoned for a principal Dish at a great man's Table.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chanci majores* about *Bremen*; the *Chamavi*, *Angrivarii* and *Brucleri*, inhabiting about *Munster*, *Osnabruck*, and so towards the Land of *Colen*; and part of the *Cherusci* (before spoken of) taking up those parts which lie nearest unto *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*. All of them were vanquished by *Drusus* the Son-in-Law of *Augustus*, but soon restored to their former liberty by the great overthrow given by the *Cherusci* and their Associates to *Quintilius Varus*. Afterwards uniting into one name with the *French*, they expelled the *Romans* out of *Gaul*, leaving their forsaken and ill inhabited Seats to be taken by the *Saxons*, with whom the remainders of them did incorporate themselves both in Name and Nation. Of that great Body it continued a considerable Member, (both when a Kingdom and a Dukedom) till the Proscription and Deprivation of Duke *Henry the Lion*: at what time the parts beyond the *Weser* were usurped by *Bernard* Bishop of *Paderborn*; those betwixt the *Weser* and the *Rhene*, by *Philip* Archbishop of *Colen*, whose Successors still hold the Title of Dukes of *Westphalen*: the Bishopricks of *Breme*, *Munster*, *Paderborn* and *Minden*, having been formerly endowed with goodly Territories, had some accruments also out of this Estate, every one catching hold of that which lay nearest to him. But not to make too many Subdivisions of it, we will divide it only into these two parts, viz. 1. *Westphalen* specially so called, and 2. the Bishoprick of *Bremen*.

1. In *WESTPHALIEN* specially so called, which is that part hereof which lieth next to *Cleve*, the places of most observation are, 1. *Geseke* a Town of good repute; 2. *Brala* a Village of great beauty; 3. *Arnsberg* and 4. *Fredeborch*, honoured with the Title of Prefectures. 5. *Wadenborch*: 6. *Homburg*, Lording it over fair and spacious Territories. All which with two Lordships and eight Prefectures, more dispersed in the Dukedom of *Engern* and County of *Surland*, belonging unto the Bishop of *Colen*, the titular Duke of *Westphalen*, and really of *Angrivaria*, (*Engern*) as he styles himself: the Title and Possession of *Henry* Duke of *Engern* being acquired unto this See by *Bruno* Archbishop hereof, Son of *Henry* the first, Emperor and King of *Germany*, surnamed the Fowler, with the consent of *Otho* the first, his elder Brother. 7. *Mountabour*, (perhaps *Mont-Tabor*) seated in that part hereof which is called *Westerwald*; a Town of consequence, belonging to the Elector of *Triers*. 8. *Rhenen*, 9. *Schamlut*, and 10. *Beckem*; reasonable good Towns; all of the Bishoprick of *Munster*. 11. *Munster* it self famous for the Treaty, and Conclusions made upon that Treaty for the Peace of *Germany* in 1648, seated upon the River *Ems*, and so called from a Monastery here founded by *Charles* the great which gave beginning to the Town; supposed to be that *Mediolanum* which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Tract. A beautiful and well fortified City, and the See of a Bishop, who is also the Temporal Lord of it, famous for the woful Tragedies here acted by a lawless crue of Anabaptists in 1583, who chose themselves a King (that famous Tailor *John* of *Leyden*) whom they called King of *Sion*, as they named the City *New Jerusalem*, proclaimed a Community both of Goods and Women, cut off the heads of all that opposed their doings; and, after many fanatick and desperate Actions, were by the care and industry of the Bishop and his Confederates brought to condign punishment. The Story is to be seen at large in *Sleiden*, Mr. *Hooker's* Preface, and some modern Pamphlets, wherein, as in a Mirrour, we may plainly see the face of the present Times. This City suffered very much in the year 1661, being then taken by *Bernard* its Bishop, a Warlike and restless Prelate. 12. *Osnabruck*, first built as, some say, by *Julius Caesar*, as others, by the Earls of *Engern*; but neither so ancient as the one, nor

nor of so late a standing as the others make it. Here is an Episcopal See founded by *Charles* the Great, who gave it all the Privileges of an University; liberally endowed at the first erection of the same, and since so well improved both in Power and Patrimony, that an alternate Succession in it by the Dukes of *Brunswick* hath been concluded on in the Treaty of *Munster*, as a fit Compensation for the Bishoprick of *Halberstadt*, (otherwise disposed of by that Treaty) of late enjoy'd wholly by that Family. This City is famous for a Peace here concluded between the Emperor and the Crown of *Sweden*, in the year 1648. 13. *Quakenburg*, on the River *Hase*. 14. *Warndorp*, and 15. *Wildshusen*; Towns of that Bishoprick. 16. *Paderborn*, an Episcopal See also, Founded by *Charles* the Great at the first Conversion of the *Saxons*; more ancient than strong, and yet more strong than beautiful. 17. *Ringelstein*, and 18. *Offendorf*; belonging to the Bishop of *Paderborn*. 19. *Minden*, upon the *Wefer*, another of the Episcopal Sees Founded by *Charles* the Great, and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony; converted to Lay-uses since the Reformation, under colour of Administration of the Goods of the Bishoprick, and now, by the Conclusions at *Munster*, settled for ever on the Electors of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of *Prince of Minden*. 20. *Rintelen*, a strong Town, conveniently seated on the *Wefer*, not far from *Minden*, to the Bishop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that *Westphalen* had formerly been a part of *S. Peter's Patrimony*, belonging wholly to the Clergy: But there are some Free Cities and Secular Princes which have shares therein. As, 1. *Warburg*, a neat Town, but seated on an uneven piece of Ground near the River *Dimula*: a Town which tradeth much in good Ale, brewed here, and sold in all parts of the Country: heretofore a County of it self under the Earls hereof, now govern'd in the nature of a Free Estate, and reckoned an Imperial City. 2. *Brakel*, accounted of as Imperial also. 3. *Hervorden*, a Town of good strength and note, govern'd by its own Laws and Magistrates, under the Protection of *Colen*. 4. *Lemgow*, belonging heretofore to the Earls of *Lippe*; but by them so well Privileged and Enfranchised, that now it governeth it self as a free Estate. Here is also, 5. the Town and County of *Ravensperg*, belonging anciently to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and now in the Right of that House to the Elector of *Brandenburg*: as also, 6. the Town and County of *Lippe*, lying on the West side of the *Wefer*; the Pedigree of the Earls whereof some fetch from that *Sp. Manlius* who defended the *Roman Capitol* against the *Gauls* (they might as well derive it from the Geese which preserved that Capitol;) others with greater Modesty look no higher for it than to the time of *Charles* the Great; one of the Noble Families of the ancient *Saxons*. 7. Here also stands the Town and Castle of *Aremberg*, commanding over a large and goodly Patrimony thereunto adjoining; which being much encreased by the accession of *Sedan* in the neighbouring *Belgium*, was by the Heir-general of this House conveyed in Marriage to *Engelbert*, the ninth Earl of *Marck*, whose second Son, called *Eberhard* (but the only one he had by this *Venter*) succeeded in his Mother's Estates and Honours; which were kept undivided, till *Eberhard* the 6th, Lord thereof, of the House of *Marck*, contenting himself with the Titles and Estates of *Aremberg*, left *Sedan* and the pieces which belonged unto it to his younger Brother *Robert*. The great Grandchild of this *Eberhard*, called also *Robert*, created the first Earl of *Aremberg*, left his Estates and Titles to his Sister *Margaret*, married to *John* Lord of *Brabant*, a person of great Note and Power in the *Belgick* Provinces, and faithful to the last in the Cause and Quarrel of King *Philip II.* in which finally he lost his life, *Anno* 1568, leaving both his Estates and Title unto *Charles* his Son, frequently mentioned by the name of *Charles* Earl of *Aremberg* in the Stories of the *Belgick* Wars, in which he was no less considerable for his eminent Valour, than his singular Fidelity to his Lord and

Master. Some other Lords and Earls here are, but these most considerable: all of them Homagers of the Empire, but their Acknowledgments hereof little more than titular; though since in danger of performing more real Services; the Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2d, after the Surprize of *Holstein* and some part of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1626, gaining so far upon this Country, that had not the King of *Sweden* come in so seasonably, he had made himself absolute Master of it, and, by the opportunity of the situation of it on the back of the *Netherlands*, forced the United States to some great Extremities. As for the Title of Duke of *Westphalen* and *Engen*, it hath been long used (as before was said) by the Bishops of *Colen*; as also (but with better Right as to that of *Westphalen*) by the House of *Lauenburg*, descended from the ancient Electoral Family, writing themselves in that regard Dukes of *Saxony*, *Westphalen*, and *Angriaria* or *Engern*.

2. The Bishoprick of *BREME* lieth on the other side of the *Wefer*, extending as far as to the *Elb* and the *German Ocean*. So called of, 1. *Breme*, the principal City, seated on the *Wefer*, there broad and navigable; the City by that means well traded, populous and rich, beautified with fair and even Streets, and very strongly Fortified against all Invasions both by Art and Nature, the Town being so seated amongst Fens, occasioned by the Overflowings of the River, that it may be easily drowned on all sides, to keep off an Enemy; adorned also with a spacious Market-place, a fair Council-house, and a large Cathedral, the See of the Archbishop, who is the Temporal Lord of the Town and Territory. Other Towns of special note are, 2. *Oferbridge*, not far from *Breme*, from whence great quantity of Linnen is brought yearly to *England* and other places. 3. *Wruften*, on the *Wefer* also. 4. *Otterendorp*, on the River *Bolla*, not far from the fall thereof into the Ocean. 5. *Boxtehude*, on the *Elbe*, not far from *Hamburg*, but on the either side of the Water. 6. *Stode*, *Stade*, or *Stadium*, seated on the River *Zwinghe*, near the fall thereof into the *Elb*; accounted the ancientest Town of all *Saxony*, and one of the first which was enrolled amongst the *Hanse*, and by special Privilege had the pre-emption of all the *Rhenish* Wine that passed by them, and the Right also of Coining Money. But being over-topped by the Power and Trade of *Hamburg*, (5 Dutch Miles from it) it grew at length so poor, and in such decay, that their yearly Revenues came but to 90 *l. per Annum*, so that they were fain to sell their Privileges to the Town of *Hamburg*, and put themselves under the Protection of the Bishop of *Breme*. It revived again upon the coming thither of the *English* Merchants, who, finding some hard measure from the *Hamburgers*, fixed their Staple here: by means whereof the Citizens in short time grew exceeding Wealthy, the Buildings fair and beautiful, the Town strongly fortified. It is situate in a place so easily overwhelmed with Water, that the People; in ostentation of their strength and security, used to have Ordnance of Stone planted over their Gates. But the late *German* Wars have made them sensible of their Folly; when, notwithstanding their new Works, and an *English* Garrison under Sir *Charles Morgan*, they were compelled to submit themselves to the Earl of *Tilly*, *Anno* 1627, recovered after by the *Svedes*, in the course of their Victories; to whom it was afterwards granted by the Treaty of *Munster*: in the year 1676, it was taken by the Duke of *Brunswick*, but in 1680 it was again restored to the *Svedes*.

As for the Bishoprick of *Bremen*, it was first Founded by *Charles* the Great, in the Person of *V. Willibred* an *English* Saxon, one of the first Preachers of the Gospel in these parts of this Country. The Town, before that time a poor Village only, being made an Archiepiscopal See, and the Metropolitan of all the Churches of the North, quickly grew up into esteem, as the Bishop did in Power and Patrimony, till they became Lords of this Tract. It was governed since the Reformation of Religion

gion by Lay-Bishops or Administrators of the Rents of the Bishoprick, which under that Title they inverted to their proper use. And now of late, by the Conclusions made at *Munster*, is settled as an Inheritance on the Crown of *Sweden*, to be enjoy'd, together with the Bishoprick of *Verden*, by the Kings thereof, with the Title of Dukes of *Bremen* and *Verden*: the ancient Liberties of those Cities, formerly granted by their Bishops, being still preserved.

22. EAST-FRIESLAND.

EAST-FRIESLAND is bounded on the East with the River *Wefer*, by it parted from *Westphalia*; on the West with the River *Ems*, which parteth it from *Groeningen* and the rest of *West-Friesland*; on the North with the *German* Ocean; and on the South with the Earldom of *Marck*, and part of *Cleveland*. So called from the *Frisii*, who, casting out the old Inhabitants, possessed themselves of it, and called it by their own name, *Friesland*: divided by the *Ems* or *Amisus*, into the Western, spoken of amongst the Netherlands, and the Eastern or *East-Friesland*, in which now we are.

The nature of the Soil we shall see anon, when we come to the Subdivisions of it. The chief Rivers (besides those of, 1. *Ems*, and 2. *Wefer*, spoken of elsewhere) are, 3. *Jada*, which falleth into a great Bay or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence *De Jade*. 4. *Dollaert*, on which standeth the City of *Emden*. 5. *Delm*, and 6. *Horn*, neighboured by *Delmenhorst* and *Oldenburg*, Towns of this Country. The whole is divided into, 1. The County of *Emden*, or *East-Friesland*, properly so called; and, 2. The Earldom of *Oldenburg*.

1. **EAST-FRIESLAND** specially so called hath on the West the River *Ems*, on the North the Ocean, on the East and South the Earldom of *Oldenburg*: called also the County of *EMBDEN*, from the fair Town of *Emden*, the chief City of it. The Soil hereof is very fruitful both in Corn and Pasturage, sending great store of Oxen, Horses, Wooll, Swine, Butter, Cheese, and all sorts of Grain, into other Countries; all of them excellent in their kind, not easily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatsoever. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Emden*, so called from the *Ems*, on which it is situate; *Dollaert*, a small River falling here into it, a noted and well-traded Town, beautified with a Haven so deep and large, that the greatest Ships which sail are admitted into it. The People are rich, affirm'd to have 60 Ships of 100 Tons apiece, and 600 lesser Barks, of their own; besides 700 Busses and Fisher-boats, maintained for the most part by their Herring-fishing on the Coasts of *England*. The Buildings are generally fair, both private and publick, especially the Church, the Town-Hall, and Earl's Palace. This last is a strong and stately Castle, situate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all sides encompassed by the Sea, and yet not strong enough to preserve the Townsmen in their due Obedience: who in the year 1595, taking advantage of the Absence of the Earl, kept him out of their Town, because he seemed not to prove of the *Calvinian* Humour; and have since govern'd in the nature of a Commonwealth, confederate with the *States* of the United Provinces, for their better Establishment and Support. So easily is Religion made a Mask to disguise Rebellion. This City fell first into the hands of the Earls of *Emden* about the Year 1454, it was small and not much frequented at the time of the Reformation, but *Ann* of *Oldenburg*, the Mother and Guardian of *Ezard* the first, her Son treating all that fled thither with great kindness, it grew to an excessive Wealth and Greatness: But *Ezard* the second, Son of the former, being a *Lutheran*, began to curb and suspect the *Calvinists*, who to protect them called in the *Hollanders* in the year 1595, who took possession of it with 1000 Men, as Mediators between the City and the Earl, in pretence, but in reality as Masters; since which time their Trade and Wealth are wasted to nothing.

2. *Aurick*, by some called *Anseling*, seated in the Inlands, rich and well walled, of great resort by reason of the Pleasure of Hunting, afforded very liberally in the Forests and Woods adjoining, drawing hither the Nobility and Gentry in great abundance. 3. *Esen*, on the Sea-shore, which gives the Title of an Earl to the Lord thereof; as doth also, 4. *Fever*, situate on the West of the River *Jada*; but both Earls subject to the Earl of *East-Friesland*. 5. *Vredburg*, (that is to say, the *Free Village*) so called from some Immunities granted by the Earls; possessed a while by those of *Brunswick*, who fenced and garrisoned it for themselves, but in the end recovered by *Ezard* the second Earl. 6. *Broeck*, the Seat and proper Government of the Ancestors of these Earls; from whence the parts adjoining are called *Broeckmerland*. 7. *Norden*, another Prefecture or Captainship of the said Ancestors. 8. *Dunort*, a strong Castle and Retiring-place of the Earls. 9. *Lingen*, upon the *Ems*, a strong Town well Fortified, and as well Garrison'd; belonging to the King of *Spain*, as Vicar to the Empire over all *Friesland*, even to *Ditmarsh* and the Confines of *Denmark*. A Dignity procur'd by *Maximilian*, Grandfather to *Charles* the 5th of the Emperor *Frederick* the 3d in right whereof the King of *Spain*, as Heir of the House of *Burgundy*, hath some pre-eminence over *Emden*, of little use to him since the falling off of the *Belgick* Provinces. This Town and County belonged to the Counts of *Tecklenburg* till the year 1546, when *Charles* the 5th seized it as forfeited by the Earls Rebellion against him. In the year 1597 the *Hollanders* by force of Arms extorted it from *Philip* II. his Son, and gave it to *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, to Recompence his Losses in their Service. In the *Spanish* Treaty with the States in 1648, the *Spaniards* renounced their Right to the Prince in as ample manner as it was granted to them by *Charles* the 5th in 1546, this Renuntiation was renewed and confirm'd in 1678, and continues still under that Prince. More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Castles, stately dwelling Houses, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; standing so thick, that in many places they join together: some of them being withal so large, so well peopled, and of Streets so spacious, that they may compare with many Cities in *Germany*. Of all which the most City-like is named *Leere*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci minores*, described by *Pliny*, to be so barbarous a People, and so destitute of all necessary Provision for the Life of Man, that they had no drink but Rain-water, preserved in great Troughs before the Doors of their Cottages. These were outed or subdued by the *Frisons*, a neighbouring People possessing *North-Holland* the District of *Utretch*, with the Countries of *Groening* and *West-Friesland*, who having once passed over the *Ems*, extending their Dominions as far as *Denmark*; governed by Kings, but intermingled with and overpowered by the *Saxons*, till the time of *Charles* the Great, by whom the last King *Roboald* overcome in fight was perswaded to receive the Sacrament of Holy Baptism: but being told that his Friends and Kinsfolks were in Hell, because no Christians, *Neither will I (saith he) be of that Profession, for I love to be amongst my Kindred*. After this, *Friesland* was a Member of the *French* Kingdom, till the erecting of the Earldom of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald, *An*. 893. at which time all *Friesland* on the West side of the *Ems* was conferred upon him; possessed, but not without much War and Bloodshed by his Successors; the *Frisons* ever and anon rebelling against them, and killing divers of them in the open Field. Those parts of it on the other side of the *Ems* remained unto the *German* Empire: governed by Deputies, Lieutenants, and Provincial Earls, accountable to the Emperors for the Administration till the year 1453, in which *Ulrich*, Governor hereof for the Emperor *Frederick*, having got the Town of *Emden* out of the hands of the *Hamburgers*, was made Earl of *East-Friesland*, transmitting the Estate and Title unto his Posterity.

Earls

Earls of *EAST-FRIESLAND*.

- 1453 1. *Ulricus*, Son of *Enno*, the Son of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governours for the Empire in *Broeck* and *Norden*, made the first Earl of *East-Friesland* by the Emperor *Frederick*.
- 1466 2. *Enno*, Eldest Son of *Ulrick*, succeed and was drown'd in passing over the *Ire* after one *Engelman*, Governour of *Freburg*, who had Rebelled against him, he being unmarried was succeed by his Brother.
- 1491 3. *Ezard* the Son of *Ulrick*, who got *Vredenburg*, from the Citizens of *Brunswick*.
- 1528 4. *Enno* the Son of *Ezard*, who regained *Greetzyl*, formerly usurped by the Dukes of *Geldres*.
- 1540 5. *Ezard* II. Son of *Enno* who married *Katharine*, Daughter to *Gustavus* the first of *Sweden*.
- 1586 6. *Enno* II. Son of *Ezard* the 2. and the Lady *Katharine*.
- 1625 7. *Rodolphus Christianus*, Son of *Enno* the 2. who was a Prince of great hope, but was unfortunately slain in a Tumult, and succeeded by
- 1628 8. *Ulrick* his brother, an excellent Prince, and fit for the times of Trouble, in which he lived.
- 1648 9. *Enno Lewis* his Son, was in the year 1654, made a Prince by *Ferdinand* 3. he died without any Male-Issue, the 4th of *April*, 1660.
- 1660 10. *George Christian*, brother of the former, to whom the present Emperor in 1662, confirmed the honour granted to this Family by his Father, he died the 10th of *June* 1665, leaving his Wife big with Child, who the 11th of *October*, that year, brought fourth
- 1665 11. *Christian Eberard*, the present Prince of *East-Friesland*, of whom I can give no further account.

The Arms of the Earls of *East-Friesland* are *Argent*, four *Bendlets Azure*, charged with ten Hearts *Or*, 4, 3, 2, 1.

2. The Earldom of *OLDENBURG* containeth that part of this Country which lieth on the West-side of the *Weser*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Munster* and *East-Friesland* specially so called, and so extending Northwards to the *German* Ocean. So called from *Oldenburg*, the chief City of it, and the head of this Earldom.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, but in Pastures specially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattle, and furnish not this Country only, but some of their *German* Neighbours, and many of the more Northern Nations, with Horses, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheese. Here is also good store of Pulse, Barley and Oats; plenty of Fruits and Trees of all sorts. Large Woods, and those well stored with Venison, which yield unto the Gentry the delights of Hunting. But the Air is cold and foggy in some extremity; especially in Winter, and nigh the Sea.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Oldenburg*, on the River *Honta*, repaired, if not built, by *Orho* the Great, who founded the Church of *S. John-Baptist*. A Town of no great state or beauty; the Houses being generally of Clay, but the Cattle (the Dwelling-place of the Earls) of well hewn stones; of an orbicular form, with deep Ditches of Water, the Town and Cattle both being strongly fortified. This City was totally burnt down in the year 1676, that very day the Citizens were to have taken the Oath of Allegiance to the King of *Denmark*. In the year 1688, the King of *Denmark* offer'd this Town and Country in Exchange for *Sleswick*, to the Duke of *Holstein*, but it was refused. 2. *Delmenhorst*,

on the River *Delm*, a strong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247 by *Orho*, Brother of Earl *Christian* the 2. and having been 65 years in possession of the Bishops of *Munster*, was suddenly surprized on *Palm-Sunday* morning by *Anthony* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1547, continuing ever since part of this Estate. 3. *Beckhusen*, on a River which falleth not far off into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea which is called *De Jade*. 4. *Eggenorden*. 5. *Ovelgord*; both seated on a long Languet or Demy-Iland betwixt the said *De Jade* and the River *Weser*, called *Butiada*: both taken and the last well fortified by *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1520, belonging formerly to the Prefecture of *East-Friesland*, but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6. *Wijsterberg*, the chief Town, of a spacious Territory. 7. *Vriejade*, a strong piece on the River *Jade*, built by Earl *Christiern*, one of the younger branches of the House of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8. *Mellum*, 9. *Jadelle*, places of principal importance; the one on the River *Jade*, the other near the Ocean. Here is also within this Earldom the province of *Amerlander*, supposed by some to have been the Seat of the *Ambrones*, who accompanied the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* in their Expedition towards the *Roman* Provinces, and were slain by *Marinus*.

As for the Earls of *Oldenburg*, they derive themselves from *Walpert*, one of the Nephews of *Wittikindus*, the last King and first Duke of the *Saxons*; who having about the year 850, built a strong Castle on the borders of *Bremen*, in the honour of his Wife *Alteberg*, (whom he dearly loved) called it *Alteburgum*, so called by the *Teutons* to this day, by the *Germans* *Oldenborch*. But his Male-issue failing in *Frederick* the 7. Earl, it came to one *Elimar*, the Son of *Haio*, a Nobleman of the *Frisian* blood, who had married *Richsa*, the Daughter of *John*, the 5th Earl of this Family. From him in a direct Line descended *Christian* or *Christiern*, eldest Son of *Theodorick*; who being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Denmark*, An. 1448, left his Estate in this Earldom (but reserving the Title, according to the fashion of *Germany*) to his Brother *Gerrard*, the better to take him off from his pretensions to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, and the Earldom of *Holstein*, in which he did pretend a share. The Patrimony of it was much improved by the additions of the Countries of *Rustringen*, *Ostringen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the *German* Sea, bequeathed by the last Will and Testament of the Lady *Mary*, Countess of *Jever* in *East-Friesland*, to *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The Succession of these Earls, in regard the Royal Line of *Denmark*, and by consequence of Great *Britain*, is descended from them, I have here subjoined in this ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *OLDENBURG*.

- 850 1. *Walpert*, of the Race of *Wittikind*, the first Earl of *Oldenburg*.
- 856 2. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Walpert*.
3. *Theodorick* II. the Son of *Theodorick* the 1.
4. *Orho*, Son of *Theodorick* the 2.
5. *John*, the Son of *Orho*, accompanied the Emperor *Henry* the 2. in his Wars against the *Greeks* and *Saracens*, Anno 1007.
6. *Huno*, surnamed the Glorious, Son of *John*.
7. *Frederick*, Son of *Huno*, fortunate in his Wars against the *Frisians*; the last of the Male-line of this House.
8. *Elimarus*, the Son of *Haio*, a Nobleman of the *Frisian* blood and of *Richsa* his Wife, the Daughter of *John* the fifth Earl.
- 1120 9. *Elimarus* II. Son to *Elimar* the first.
10. *Christianus*, Son of *Elimar* the 2. surnamed the Courageous, or the Warlike; a professed Enemy of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, from whom he took the City of *Breme*.

11. *Maurice*, the Son of *Christian*, an Associate of *Arnulph* Earl of *Holstein* in his Wars with *Denmark*.
12. *Christian* II. Son of *Maurice*.
13. *John* II. Son of *Christian* the 2.
14. *John* III. Son of *John* the 2.
15. *Conrade*, the Son of *John* the third.
16. *Christian* III. Son of *Conrade*, a Student in *Co-len*, where he was initiated into holy Orders, which he relinquished, much against the will of his brother *Maurice* on the death of his Father.
- 1435 17. *Theodorick*, Son of *Christian* the 3d. the first Earl of *Delmenhorst* of this Line; which fell to him at the death of *Nicolas* Archbishop of *Breme*, descended from a younger Son of *John* the second.
- 1440 18. *Christian* IV. Son of *Theodorick* and *Hedwigis*, Sister and Heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus*, Dukes of *Sleswick*, and Earls of *Holstein*, elected on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus* to the Crown of *Denmark*, Anno 1448.
- 1448 19. *Gerrard*, the Brother of *Christian* the 4th. a Prince of an unquiet spirit, always in Wars, and always worsted. He lost the Town of *Delmenhorst* to the Bishop of *Munster*.
- 1500 20. *John* IV. Son of *Gerrard*, repaired the Ruines of his Estate, and settled the Distractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in Exile; and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of *Frisland*.
- 1526 21. *Anthony*, the Son of *John* the 4. by a sudden surprise recovered *Delmenhorst* from the Bishop of *Munster*, Anno 1547, which he strongly fortified. The Suit for this place was continued between the Earls of *Oldenburg*, and the Bishops of *Munster*, till the year 1670, and then was determin'd in favour of the Earls descendents.
- 1573 22. *John* V. Son of *Anthony*, enlarged this Earldom with the Provinces of *Rustringen*, *Ostringen*, and *Wangerland*, bequeathed to him by the last Will of the Countess of *Jever*, in *East-Friesland*.
- 1647 23. *Anthony* II. Brother of *John* the 5. in whose life time he was Earl of *Delmenhorst*, and after his death of *Oldenburg* also: still living, Anno 1648, for ought I can learn unto the contrary. This Prince died without any lawful Issue the 19th of *June* 1667, whereupon arose a Controversie, between *Fredrick* 3. King of *Denmark*, and the Dukes of *Holstein-Gothorp* and *Holstein-Ploen* for this Earldom, the King of *Denmark*, and the Duke of *Holstein-Gothorp*, seized and divided the Earldom between them, but a suit being commenced for it in the Chamber of *Spire* against them by the Duke of *Holstein-Ploen*, the King of *Denmark* in the year 1671, resigned one half of his share to the Duke of *Holstein-Ploen*, and in 1676, he recovered the other Moiety from the Duke of *Holstein-Gothorp*, by the sentence of the Chamber of *Spire*. And afterwards resigned the whole to *Christian* 5. King of *Denmark*, in Exchange for some other Lands in *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, by which the Earldom of *Oldenburg* became (in the year 1676) intirely united to the Crown of *Denmark*.

And thus we see the present Estate of *Germany*, distracted and divided amongst many Princes, Prelates, and Incorporate Towns, the chief of which are herein mentioned and described. But besides these there are many others of less note and smaller Territories, which yet are absolute and free: insomuch that in one days riding a Traveller may twice or thrice meet with divers Laws and divers Coins; every Free Prince and Free City (whole Laws the Emperors are sworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what Laws and coin what Money

they will. And hence, in the Censure of Kingdoms, the King of *Spain* is said to be *Rex hominum*; because of his Subjects reasonable Obedience; the King of *France*, *Rex Asinorum*, because of their infinite Taxes and Impositions; the King of *England*, *Rex Diabolorum*, because of his Subjects often Insurrection against and Deposition of their Princes: but the Emperor of *Germany* is called *Rex Regum*, because there is such a number of *Reguli* or free Princes which live under his Command; or rather at their own Command, (for they do even what they list) as the Emperor *Maximilian* the first well noted.

And to say truth, the publick Government thereof is nothing less than Monarchical; the Emperor being accounted amongst the Princes but as the Chief Officer of the Empire; not reckoned of, by *Bodin*, and others of our great Statists and Civilians, as an absolute Monarch, such as the Kings of *England*, *France* and *Spain*, are confessed to be. For the Priviledges of the Free Cities being made perpetual, the great Estates Hereditary, and the Empire Eligible; the Emperors were brought at last to such low Condition, as to be made accountable to the States of the Empire; who if they be perswaded in their Consciences, or but think they be so, that he is likely by his Male-administration to destroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good advice, *ab Electorum Collegio Casarea majestate privare potest*, (as my Author hath it) he may be deprived by the Electors, and a more fit and able man chosen into the place, and that too, as the Emperor *Jodocus Barbatus* hath declared in one of his Constitutions, *An. 1410, sine Infidelitatis vel Rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of Treason or Disloyalty. So that the supreme Power and Majesty of the Empire seems to reside especially and contractedly in the Electoral Colledge; diffusedly, in the Imperial Diet; by way of Execution, in the Chamber of *Spire*, and other the supreme Courts of the several Circles. But that which makes that Body which they call the Empire, is the Assembly of the Prelates, Princes and Commissioners of the Free Cities in their Diets or Parliaments, the Emperor presiding in them: whom he that saw adorned in his Royal Robes, with the Imperial Crown and Scepter, with the Titles of *Cesar* and *Augustus* given at every word, would think that the whole Action did take life from him; whereas, indeed, he hath not so much Priviledge as a Negative voice, but is to put in execution such Decrees and Sanctions as these Estates assembled have thought fit to make; not able to do any act by his own Authority, which may speak him Emperor. But, on the other side, the Princes take power unto themselves of making Laws for, and imposing Taxes on, their Subjects; of raising War upon one another, or against a third; and doing many other acts of supreme Authority, which in the Emperor would be counted matter of Male-administration. Such Points as these, together with the appointing of Judges and the like chief Magistrates, (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded of but in general Diets; which may be summoned by or without the Emperor, as occasion serveth. And to this weakening of the Majesty and Power Imperial, the neighbouring princes have afforded their best assistance; jealous of their own Interests and decrease of Power, if that vast Body so well limbed should be strongly joyned, and all the several Members of it united under the command of one supreme Head. Clear proof whereof we have in those solemn Leagues and Confederations made in their several times against *Charles* the fifth, and the late Emperor *Ferdinand* the second, as soon as they began to be in some possibility of settling the Imperial Majesty in its proper splendour, and bringing down the Princes of it to a lower pitch.

As for the means by which the Empire is attained, it is, and hath of long time been, by the way of Election, as before was noted. The business was first projected in the Court of *Rome* by *Gregory* the first, then Pope, who being a Native of this Country, thought it the most expe-

expedient course to continue the Imperial Title among those of his Nation. But whatsoever was pretended, the Design of it chiefly was to make the Emperors less powerful and distract the *Germans* (whom they feared) into Parts and Factions, that so the Popes might have the better opportunity to grow great in *Italy*. And that the Emperor might be such as the Pope should like of, the matter was so ordered, that the one half of the Electors should be always of the Ecclesiasticks, who being obnoxious to the Popes, and for the most part driving on their Interest, were very like to serve him on all occasions. The Electors only six in number: that is to say, 1. The Archbishop of *Mentz*, Chancellor of the Empire, 2. The Archbishop of *Colen*, Chancellor of *Italy*. 3. The Archbishop of *Triers*, Chancellor of *France*. 4. The Count-Palatine of the *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer. 5. The Duke of *Saxony*, Lord Marshal, and 6. the Marquis of *Brandenburg*, Lord Chamberlain. By the Treaty of *Munster*, in the year 1648, the Palatine of the *Rhene*, and the Duke of *Bavaria*, were both declared Electors, so that the Voices were made even again, and to prevent the mischief this might cause, in *December* 1692, the present Duke of *Hannover*, was by the consent of the Diet, declared the 9th Elector by the Emperor. Upon equality of Voices the Duke of *Bohemia* (now King) was to come in for a seventh; who by Office is to be chief Cup-bearer in all great Solemnities. For upon days of great Solemnities, as Elections, Inaugurations, the first days of the Imperial Diets, and the like to these, these Offices are performed only; and then performed in this manner following, either in Person or by Proxy. Before the Palace-Gate stands an heap of Oats, so high that it reacheth to the breast of the Horse on which the Duke of *Saxony* rideth, having in his hand a silver Wand and a silver Measure, both which together are to weigh 200 Marks. The Duke, still sitting on his Horse, filleth up the Measure with Oats, then sticks his Wand in the remainder of the heap, delivereth the measure of Oats unto some of his Servants who stand nearest unto him, and so attends the Emperor into the Court. The Emperor being entred and late down at the Table, the three Spiritual Electors, standing orderly together, say the Grace before him. Then cometh the Marquis of *Brandenburg* on Horse-back also, with a Basin of Water in his hand, (the Basin being of the weight of 12 Marks of Silver) and a fine clean Towel on his Arm; which, alighting from his Horse, he holds to the Emperor till he wash. Next comes the Palatine of the *Rhene* mounted on his Horse, with four Silver Platters full of Meat, every one of the weight of three Marks of Silver; which, descending from his Horse, after due reverence made, he carrieth and placeth on the Table. And finally the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, entring the great Hall on Horse-back as the others did, with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered Cup in his Hand of the weight of 12 Marks in Silver, alighteth from his Horse, and presenteth the Cup unto the Emperor. But we must know, that of late times these Offices are seldom or never performed by the Electors in their own Persons. It is enough if they send their Ambassadors, or substitute some one or other of the Emperors Court to do it for them.

The Election is usually celebrated at *Francford* on the *Maine*, to which place the Electors or their Deputies are to make repair on the day appointed by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, whose Office it is (as being Chancellor of the Empire) to issue out the Summons for this Assembly. In their passage unto *Francford* they are to be sufficiently guarded by every Prince through whose Territories or Dominions they are to travel; their Attendants not to exceed the number of 200 Horse, of which 50 only to be armed. When they are met, they go into *S. Bartholomew's Church*, (the most Capacious of that City) where, after the High-Mass is said, the three Spiritual Electors laying their hands upon their Breasts, and the Temporal Princes on the Book, make Oath to chuse a fit Temporal Head for the People of Christendom. Upon equal-

ity of Voices, as it sometimes happeneth, the *Bohemian* hath the casting Voice, and concludes the business. If in the space of 30 days they have not agreed upon a man, then must they have no other allowance but of Bread and Water, nor be suffered to go out of the City, till that necessity compelleth them unto some Agreement. Which being at the last resolved on, and declared accordingly, the Prince so elected is presently saluted by the Title of *King of the Romans*; the Title of Emperor being not properly to be given unto him, until he have received the Imperial Crown at the hands of the Pope: though since the time of *Charles* the fifth, without any such trouble to themselves or the Popes of *Rome*, the Title of both Emperor and Imperial Majesty is usually conferred upon them from their first Election. The Election being finished, and signified to the party chosen, the Inauguration was held anciently at three several places: viz. 1. at *Aquisgrane*, or *Aken*, in the Land of *Gulick*, where he received the Silver Crown, for the Kingdom of *Germany*; 2. at *Millain*, by the Archbishop whereof he was crowned with the Iron Crown, for *Lombardy*, or the Realm of *Italy*; 3. at *Rome*, where at the hands of the Pope himself, he was crowned with a Golden Crown, for the *Roman Empire*. But since those Journeys unto *Rome* and *Millain* have been long laid by; the Emperors holding their Elections to be strong enough to make good their Title to that Dignity, being merely titular, and their Inauguration at *Aken* to be as effectual as if they had also visited the two other Cities. The form of which Elections, the Privileges of the Electors, and other fundamental Constitutions of the *German Empire*, we find summed up together in the Golden Bull of *Charles* the Fourth, by him promulgated, *Anno*. 1359. But we must know, that since the publishing of that Bull, the business of Election hath received some change as to the number and the persons of the parties interested. For, it pleased the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. on the Proscription of *Frederick* the first Elector Palatine, to transfer the Electoral Dignity, with the Office of *Archidapifer*, or Arch-Sewer, from that House to the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Title of Elector of *Bavaria*, with all the Powers and Privileges which belonged unto it, to be infeoffed upon him and his Heirs for ever. Which action of the Emperor being protested against by some of the Electors, in favour of the *Palatine Family*, and in due care unto themselves, in not admitting such a dangerous precedent for the time to come, it was at last concluded and agreed on by the Pacification made at *Munster*, *Anno* 1648. That the Duke of *Bavaria* and his Heir enjoying the said Electoral Dignity, with the *Upper Palatinate*, according to the Translation of it from the *Palatine Family* spoken of before; an eighth Electorate should be added to the former number, to be enjoyed together with the *Lower Palatinate* by *Charles Ludowick*, the now Prince Elector *Palatine*, and his Heirs, who also, on the failure of the Line of *Bavaria* are to be repossessed of their ancient Rights, the Title of *Arch-Treasurer* being given unto them at the present instead of that of *Archidapifer*, or Arch-Sewer, which they had before.

Now as a step unto the Empire, and for the better assurance of the Imperial Dignity to the *Austrian Family*, it was cunningly projected by *Charles* the fifth, (having received the Imperial Crown from Pope *Clement* the 7.) that his Brother *Ferdinand* should be chosen *King of the Romans* whilst himself was living, and by that means be the more certain of the Empire after his decease. Which Policy being followed by all his Successors, the Title of *Rex Romanorum*, or *King of the Romans*, is grown to be the Title of the Heir apparent, or designed Successor, in the present Empire of the *Germans*; as that of *Cæsar* was from the time of *Adrian*, in the Empire of the ancient *Romans*. Inasmuch that *Rex Romanorum* is now defined to be one who is already so far estated in the Empire, that on the Death, Deprivation, or Resignation of the present Emperor, he is immediately to succeed. And so according-

H h h

dingly

dingly it hath happened since this Act of *Charles*; who though he laboured under-hand to leave the Empire unto *Philip* his Son and Heir, whom he found capable enough of so high an Honour; yet he could not do it: it being thought by many understanding men, that on notice of this under-hand practice, his Brother *Ferdinand*, who had the like mind to transmit the Empire to his own Posterity, did secretly lend Duke *Maurice* his helping hand to drive him out of *Germany*, as in brief he did. As for the reasons, or, to say better, the pretences, upon which *Charles* did institute this *Rex Romanorum*, (for questionless the true reason of it was to perpetuate the Empire in the *Austrian* Family) they were these that follow. 1. Because that, having the command of many Nations, he could not always personally attend the affairs of *Germany*. 2. The troubled Estate of Christendom, of the Empire especially, occasioned by the Preachings and Works of *Luther*. 3. The late rural War raised by the Boors of that Country, on the coming out of these new Doctrines, and not yet thoroughly extinct. 4. The violent power of the *Turk*, who by his Conquest of a great part of *Hungary*, was grown too near a neighbour to them. And 5. the imminent Disobedience in all parts of the Empire. All which conjunctly seemed to require some Prince both of Power and Title to assist him in the bearing of so great a Burthen. And by these and the like suggestions he effected his design herein, though thereby he changed in a manner the Imperial Style. For whereas the first Emperors of the House of *Charles* the Great were Emperors of the *Romans*, and Kings of *Germany*; the latter Emperors of the House of *Charles* the fifth, may not improperly be called Emperors of *Germany*, and Kings of the *Romans*. It is true indeed, that the wise and understanding Duke of *Saxony* saw farther through these Pretences than the rest of the Electors either did or would, and that the main Plot was no other, than to make *Germany* (as *Galba* said, in his Oration unto *Piso*, of the Empire of *Rome*) *unus quasi Familia Hereditatem*, hereditary in times following to the House of *Austria*; and thereupon did openly deny his suffrage to the said Election. But finding that the major part of the Electors were resolved upon it, he moved for an Act to pass, prohibiting the continuance of the Imperial Title in any one Family more than three Successions. In which not able to prevail, (as the Game was plaid) he left the Electors to themselves, by whom *Ferdinand* was chosen King of the *Romans*, and not long after crowned at *Aken* with the usual Rites, Jan. 16. An. 1531. The same course was followed by this *Ferdinand*, when possessed of the Empire, in causing his Son *Maximilian* to be elected *Rex Romanorum*, whilst himself was living; and so by all the rest since then, as before is said.

As for the Forces of the Empire, for by that name we are to measure the Abilities and Power of *Germany*; we may discern them by those Levies which have been raised upon particular occasions, or by the joint consent of the Free Estates assembled in the Imperial Diets. First, for particular Levies made by private persons, we find 12000 Foot and 8000 Horse raised by the Prince *Palatine* of *Zweibruck*; for Aid of the *French Hugonots* against their King; and on the other side, no fewer than 7000 Horse, under the Conduct of the Duke of *Aumal* and the Earl of *Mansfield*, for the service of that King against the *Hugonots*. And as for Levies made by consent of the States, we find that *Charles* the fifth, had under his Ensigns at *Vienna*, 90000 Foot, and 35000 Horse; *Maximilian* 2. at *Javarin* in *Hungary*, 34000 Horse, and full 100000 Foot; and finally, that in the War betwixt *Charles* the 5. and the Protestant Princes, there were no less than 150000 men on both sides: which numbers no one Country in *Europe* is able to equal. In a word, it is generally conceived that the Empire is able to raise 200000

Horse and Foot, with Arms, Canon, and Ammunition of all sorts proportionable; which the instance before brought do most plainly evidence.

Touching the Revenues of the Empire, I find them estimated by *Boterus*, and some others since, at seven millions of Crowns yearly. Which may be true enough, taking the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* with the hereditary Estates of *Austria* into the Account. But since they are not so united unto the Empire but they may at some time or other be disjoyned again, no reason they should come into the reckoning, unless it be as the Revenue of the Emperour, though not of the Empire. But as for the Revenue of the Empire it self, taken abstractedly from the Personal and Patrimonial Estate of the Emperour, whosoever he be, it can amount to no such sum: the Tribute paid by the Free or Imperial Cities (at least 60 in number) amounting to no more *per ann.* than 15000 Florens, or 1500 l. *English*: and what is that, but like a Pepper-corn for a Quarter, in that mighty Continent? By this we may conjecture what the rest may come to. And though, in the way of saving Charges, (which may be reckoned as a part of his Income also) the Princes and Free Cities be bound to aid him in the time of War against the *Turk* with 3842 Horse, and 16200 Foot, which he may challenge without troubling the Diets for it: yet War is such a great devourer, that if the Diets do not grant him greater helps, he is like to be but a sorry Gainer by the undertaking; besides the smallness of those Forces considered with the numbers they are able to raise, and the puissance of the enemy whom they are to encounter.

Finally, for the Arms of the Empire, they are *Sol*, an Eagle displayed with two Heads *Saturn*, armed and crowned *Mars*: the two Heads signifying (as some think) the Eastern and the Western Empires. *Cuspinian*, a learned *German*, conceives rather that these Arms are two Eagles conjoyned, and not one Eagle with two Heads: and that they were taken up by the *German* Nation, in memory of the three Legions of *Quintilius Varus* discomfited by them; at what time they seized on two of the *Roman* Eagles (the Military Ensign of that People) the third being cast into the Fens by the Standard-bearer. But whether it be one or two, certain it is that the one Head is quite pulled off, and the whole Body quite stripped of all its Feathers; the Imperial Dignity being little more than titular, despoiled and stript of all authority appertaining to it.

There are in *Germany*.

Archbishops 6.

Bishops 34.

Universities 21. viz.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Colen.</i> | 8. <i>Herbon,</i> | 15. <i>Francford.</i> |
| 2. <i>Triers</i> | 9. <i>Hanaw.</i> | 16. <i>Rostock.</i> |
| 3. <i>Mentz.</i> | 10. <i>Wirttemberg.</i> | 17. <i>Gripswald,</i> |
| 4. <i>Heidelberg.</i> | 11. <i>Friburg.</i> | 18. <i>Jene.</i> |
| 5. <i>Tubingen.</i> | 12. <i>Altorff.</i> | 19. <i>Leipzig.</i> |
| 6. <i>Ingolstadt.</i> | 13. <i>Prague.</i> | 20. <i>Wittenberg.</i> |
| 7. <i>Vienna.</i> | 14. <i>Olmutz.</i> | 21. <i>Marpurg.</i> |

It is impossible for me to make a more needful or a more useful Addition to *Germany*, than an exact Representation of the forms of their Diets, as they now stand, since the Treaty of *Munster*, which I have therefore carefully transcribed from the *Sieur Heiss*, his *Present State of the Empire of Germany*. Printed at the *Hague* in 1685.

And so much for *Germany*.

O F D E N M A R K.

THE Kingdom of *DENMARK*, or *DANEMARK*, reckoning in the Additions of the Dukedom of *Holstein*, and the great Continent of *Norway*, with the Isles thereof, now all united and incorporated into one Estate, is bounded on the East with the *Baltick* Sea, and some part of *Sweden*, on the West with the main Western Ocean, on the North-East with a part of *Sweden*, full North with the main Frozen Seas, and on the South with *Germany*, from which it is divided on the South-West by the River *Albis*, and on the South-East by the *Trave*; a little *Isthmus* or Neck of Land uniting it to that Continent.

It took this name from the *Danes*, of long time the Inhabitants and Possessors of it; so called *quasi Danorum Tractus*, *sive Regio* (as *Mercator* hath it) because the Country of that People: but rather *quasi Danorum limes*, the Bounds or Marches of the *Danes*, bordering close upon the *Dutch*, from whom it hath the name of *Danemarch*.

As for the Situation of it in regard of the Heavens, it lieth partly in the Northern temperate Zone, and partly within the *Artick* Circle; extending from the middle Parallel of the tenth Clime, or 55 Degree of Latitude, where it joineth with *Germany*; as far as the 71 Degree, where it hath no other bound but the Frozen Ocean. By which accompt, the longest Day in the most Southern parts hereof is 17 hours and a quarter: but in the parts extremely North, they have no Night for two whole Months, three Weeks, one Day, and some seven Hours over; as on the other side, no Day for the like quantity of time, when the Sun is most remote from them, in the other Tropick. The Air hereof by consequence must be sharp and bitter, even in the very warmest places. Of which, and of the nature of the Soil, we shall speak more punctually in the Description and Survey of the several Parts.

The Inhabitants generally are of good Stature, clear of Complexion, well colour'd, for the most part healthful and long-lived; for though they eat and drink beyond measure, they have good Digestions. In Manners they are very severe, crafty and provident in the managing of their Affairs, but proud withal, and (as the Historian said of another Person) *Omnium quæ dixerant fecerant ut ostentatores*, great Vaunters of whatsoever they do or say, highly opinionated of their own Actions, and peremptory in maintaining their own Opinions: religious observers of their Words and Contracts, and strict in executing Justice; especially in punishing of Thieves and Pirates. Such of them as do follow the Wars prove reasonable good Soldiers, both by Sea and Land; but fitter for the Sea, than Field-service. The Magistrate is wise rather by Experience than Study, tho' they love Learning, and easily attain all Languages which they give their minds to. The old Men are covetous, the young Men thrifty, and the Merchant ambitious. The Nobility and Gentry are generally of as ancient Families as most in Christendom; here being some of those Houses still remaining which were present at the Pacification made betwixt *Charles* the Great and *Hemmingus* King of the *Danes*: and, which adds much unto their Honour, they keep their Blood unmixed from Marriages with the Vulgar sort; and reckon it for an high disgrace to change their Arms, or make any addition thereunto. The Women are fair, discreet and courteous, and know well how to govern their Households; exceeding fruitful in bearing of Children, but delivered

of them with great difficulty. Both Sexes speak the *Dutch*, or *German*, common (but with some difference in the pronounciation) to all the Northern Nations in *Norway* and *Swethland*.

Of no great Note for Men of Learning in the former time; it hath been fortunate in these last for, 1. *Tycho Brahe*, that renowned Astronomer; 2. *Hemmingus*, a well-known Divine; 3. *Bartholinus*, a Physician and Philosopher of good esteem; 4. *John Cluverius*, the Historian; and of late *Pufendorf*, &c. More famous for great Captains and Men of War; especially for 1. *Godfrey*, or *Gotricus*, who settled the Government of this Kingdom, and endanger'd the great Realm of *France*. 2. *Sueno*, and 3. *Canutus*, the fortunate Conquerors of *England*. 4. *Waldemar* the third, a right-valiant Prince; but not successful in his Wars against the *Hanse-Towns*, then newly entred into League. 5. *Christiern* the 2d. a great Commander in the Wars, but of greater Cruelty. 6. *Christiern* the IV. little inferiour unto many of his Predecessors. To whom we may subjoyn (though of different Sex) Queen *Margaret*, the *Semiramis* of these Northern Countries; a Lady of a masculine Spirit, and not more fortunate than daring in all Enterprises, as she declared in the Conquest of *Swethland*, and Subjection of *Norway*, by her united to this Crown.

The Christian Faith was first preached to those of *Holstein*, (the next-neighbouring Country unto *Germany*) by *S. Angarius*, Bishop of *Bremen*, the general Apostle of those Northern parts, in the year 826, *Lewis* the Pious then being Emperor of the West. In whose time *Harald*, King of *Denmark*, being expelled his Kingdoms by the Sons of *Godfrey*, or *Getricus*, was baptised at *Mentz*, with a great number of that People which attended on him, by the hands of *Ebbo* Archbishop of *Rhemes*, employ'd by the Emperor in that service; the Conversion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperor *Otho* the first, assigned by the Ministry of one *Poppo* the first Bishop of *Arhusen*; *Sueno*, or *Swain*, then reigning amongst the *Danes*. The *Norwegians* came not in till after, converted in the Reign of *Olaus* the third, Anno 1055, or thereabout: the *English* assisting in the work, and the good King so zealous in it, that he was canonized a Saint after his decease. Relapsing for the most part to their ancient Gentilism, they were finally regained unto Christianity by the means of Pope *Adrian* the 4th, an *English-man*, about the year 1156, before his assuming of the Popedom called *Nicolaus Breakpear*. But by whomsoever first converted, the Popes of *Rome* would needs pretend some Power and Jurisdiction over them. Which when they began to exercise with too much Authority, *Waldemar* the third is said to have returned this Answer, *Naturam habemus a Deo, Regnum a Subditis, Divitias a Parentibus, Religionem a Romana Ecclesia; quam, si nobis invides, renunciamus per presentes*, that is to say, We hold our Life from God, our Crown from our Subjects, our Riches from our Ancestors, our Religion from the Church of *Rome*; which if you envy us, we do here remit it by these Presents. But this Renunciation, though then threatned, was not made till afterwards; when the whole malis of Popery was abolish'd by King *Frederick* the first, using therein the Ministry of *Bugenhage*, a Divine of *Pomeran*, by whom they were reform'd according to the Doctrine of the *Lutheran* Churches, between 1537 and 1545.

As for the Government of the Church since that Reformation, it continueth as before it was, by Archbishops

H h h

and

and Bishops in number as before ; but much abridged of their Revenues, and a great part of their Power. For *Frederick*, though he found it necessary to remove the old Bishops, (not one of which would be persuaded to the change of Religion) yet he substituted others in their places, allowing them a convenient Maintenance, with a power of Presidence in all Church-Assemblies, where they are to take the Advice of other Presbyters along with them ; and out of such Assemblies to receive Complaints, to provide remedy against Scandals, and to order all matters, as peculiar Inspectors, which concern the Church. So that in all the Kings Dominions there are two Archbishops and thirteen Bishops ; that is to say, the Archbishop of *Lunden*, the Bishops of *Roschilt*, *Odenfee*, *Ripen*, *Wiborch*, *Arthusen*, *Sleswick*, and *Hadersleve*, for the Kingdom of *Denmark* ; the Archbishop of *Nidrosia*, the Bishops of *Bergen*, *Anslo*, *Staffauger*, and *Hammar*, for the Realm of *Norway* ; and the Bishops of *Halar* and *Schalholt*, for the Isle of *Iseland* : the Churches of *Holstein* (formerly under the Bishops of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*) being governed by Superintendents, as the rest of the *Lutherans*,

The whole Body of the Estate, (as appears by this) consisteth chiefly of three Members: viz. 1. the Dukedom of *Holstein* ; containing *Wagerland*, *Ditmarsh*, *Stormaria*, and *Holstein*, specially so called. 2. The Kingdom of *Denmark* ; comprehending both *Jutlands*, part of *Scandia* ; and the *Hemodes*, or *Baltick* Islands : And, 3. the Kingdom of *Norway* ; consisting of *Norway* it self, and the Islands of the Northern Ocean. Which parts we shall survey in order, as before laid down ; premising first a word or two of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, in which the Dukedom of *Holstein* and the two *Jutlands* are contained.

The CIMBRICK CHERSONESE.

THE CIMBRICK CHERSONESE hath on the East the *Baltick* Sea, on the West the main *German* Ocean, on the North a part of the Ocean bending into the narrow Streight or *Frctum* which they call the *Sundr*, on the South-west the great River of *Albis*, the *Elbe* on the South-East the small River of *Trave* ; betwixt which is the Neck or *Isthmus* which unites it to *Germany*. I know that some contract it into narrower bounds, and limit it upon the South with the River *Eyder* : but I have drawn it down to the *Elve* and the *Trave*, which give it more resemblance to a Chersonese or Demy-Island than the other doth, dissenting in this point from the common Opinion. It had the name of *Chersonesus*, *ἡ δὲ γὰρ ὁρὰ ἡ νῆσος* a *Terra & Insula*, it being the same with a *Peninsula* in the *Latin*. Of which name there are five most famous : that is to say, 1. *Peloponnesus* in *Greece* ; which is now called *Morea* ; 2. *Thracica Chersonesus*, in *Thracia*, near the *Sea Propontis* ; 3. *Taurica Chersonesus*, in the *Euxine* Sea, now a part of *Tartary* ; 4. *Aurea Chersonesus*, in *India*, which we now call *Maluca*, (of all which we shall speak in their proper places) and 5. *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, where now we are. This last was so called from the *Cimbri*, the first Inhabitants hereof, originally descended from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet* ; thence called *Gomerii* and *Cimmerii*, by contraction *Cimbri*. Leaving the Plains of *Phrygia* as too narrow for them, they sought out new Dwellings, and are said to have first dwelt on the Banks of *Paulus Maoris* ; where they gave name to the *Bosphorus Cimmerius* there being. Being overcome by the *Schythians*, they removed their Seats more Northward, into a Country bounded, according to *Plutarch*, by the great Ocean on the one side, and the Forest of *Hircynia* on the other : within which Bounds is the *Peninsula* or Country where we now are. They were a People of extraordinary big Stature, having blew and red Eyes, and lived most upon Theft : so that for their sakes, *Κίμβροι ἐπιδουλοῦσι τῷ ἑρμῆτι τὴν λῆσιν*, the *Germans* called all Thieves *Cimbers*. It happened that the Ocean overflowing a great part of their Country,

compelled them to seek new Seats : whereupon in great multitudes abandoning their Dwellings, they petitioned the *Romans*, then lording over a great part of the World, for some place to settle in. This Request being denied, they proceeded in another manner, winning with their Swords what their Petitions could not obtain. *Manlius*, *Sillanus*, and *Cepio*, all *Roman* Consuls, perished by them, so that now (saith *Florus*) *actum esset de Imperio Romano, nisi illi seculo Marius contigisset* ; there had been an end of the *Roman* Empire, if *Marius* had not fallen into those Times ; for he, as we have elsewhere told you, utterly overthrew them. The next Inhabitants hereof were the *Saxons*, *Jutes*, and *Angles*, upon whose Removal into *Britain*, the greatest part of it was peopled by the *Danes*, who still possess it.

It containeth in length about 100 *Italian* Miles, and 80 of the same Miles in breadth ; and comprehendeth in that tract or extent of Ground 30 walled Towns, six Episcopal Sees (besides those of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*, which are under the Archbishop of *Bremen*) and twenty Royal Castles and Palaces, as well for the reception of the Nobles and great Men of the Country, as the private Retirements of the King. The Soil is naturally more fit for Pasturage than Tillage, feeding such multitudes of Oxen, that from hence no fewer than 50000 are sent yearly to *Germany*. Divided at present into the Dukedom of *Holstein*, and the Province of *Jutland*.

1. The Dukedom of HOLSTEIN.

THE Dukedom of *HOLSTEIN* taketh up the Southern part of the *Cimbrick Chersonese* where it joins to *Germany*, extending as far North as the River *Eyder*, which divides it from *Jutland*. So called from the *Dutch* word *Holt*, which signifies a Wood or Forest, according to the nature of it ; the Country being low, marshy, and full of Woods, as it continueth to this day. It contains in it these four Province ; 1. *Wagerland*, 2. *Stormaria*, 3. *Ditmarsh*, and 4. *Holst* or *Holstein* specially so called.

1. *WAGERLAND* is that part of *Holstein* which lies on the South-east of this *Chersonese*, bounded on the East with *Mecklenburg* and the *Baltick* Sea, on the West with *Holstein* specially so called, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea also, on the South with some part of *Mecklenburg*. So called from the *Wagrii*, a Tribe or Nation of the *Slaves*, who possessed this Tract ; from whence the name of *Wagria* in our *Latin* Writers.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Lubeck*, pleasantly seated on the Confluence of the *Trave* and the *Billow*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*, from which it is distant 5 *Italian* Miles. The River is capable of Ships of a 1000 Ton which commonly they unlade at *Travemund*, the Port-Town to the City, seated upon the very brink of the Sea, where the united Rivers have their fall into it. It was first built by *Adolph II.* Earl of *Holstein*, Anno 1143, as others say, with more probability, in 970 ; but so well privileged by him and his next Successors, that in short time it bid defiance to its Founders, (the cause of many Differences betwixt it and those Princes) and was made a Dukedom of it self. By *Frederick* the first it was united to the Empire, in 1209 ; after whose death they chose themselves another Duke ; who, having governed them 5 years, was subdued by the *Danes*, and the City made subject to that Kingdom, remaining so till delivered by the Emperor *Frederick* the second ; by whom again once enfranchised, in 1270, it became Imperial ; afterwards listed amongst the *Hanse-Towns*, and the first in estimation of all the Company, having about 600 Ships of all sorts (some of a thousand Ton and upwards) which belong unto it. But being their Trade is for the most part on the *Baltick* Seas, which are generally free from Pirates, they are most of them built for burthen, and are slow of sail, and little serviceable, if at all, for a fight at Sea. But to return unto the City : It is built upon all the sides of a rising Hill, on the top whereof standeth

standeth the Church of *Saint Mary*, (once the Cathedral of the City, for it was Episcopal) whence is a Descent to all the Gates of the City, affording to the Eye a most pleasing Prospect. The Buildings are very beautiful, and all of Brick; the Streets straight and even; the Churches (ten in number) in good repair, adorn'd with excellent Imagery, and much admired even by skilful Workmen: and unto every private House a Pipe of Water is conveyed from the publick Conduit; according to the Pattern whereof, it hath been observed that the Conduits were first made in *London* and other places. In a word, there is not any City of *Germany* or the more Northern Countries which can equalize it, either for the Beauty and Uniformity of the Houses, the pleasant Gardens, fair Streets, delightful Walks without the Walls; or for the Citizens themselves, who are much commended for their Civility to Strangers, and strict execution of Justice without partiality. The whole in compass is about six Miles, fortified with a double Wall, deep Ditches, and an unfordable River. 2. *Segeberg*, on the River *Trave*, 4 Dutch Miles from *Lubeck*, and near the Head of that River. 3. *Oldesto*, on the same River, in the midst betwixt both. In the year 1688 ordered by the King of *Denmark* to be Fortified. 4. *Gronneberg*, and 5. *Newkirk*, on the *Baltick* Shore: and 6. *Sterndorp*, more within the Land, near the edge of a Lake, out of which runs the River *Suentin*.

2. South-west of *Wagerland* lieth *STORMARIA*, betwixt the *Elbe* and two less Rivers called the *Bille* and the *Stoer*: from which last, and the Marishness of the situation, or from that River and the *Marf*, once the Inhabitants hereof, comes the name of *Stormarsh*. Places of most importance are, 1. *Crempe*, on a little River so named, which falls not far off into the *Stoer*, and both together not much farther into the *Elb*. A Town well fortified by *Christiern* the fourth, and reckoned one of the Keys of the Kingdom; as well appears by the Resistance which it made to the Duke of *Fridland*, against whom it held out 13 months, and yielded at the last upon good Conditions, Anno 1628. 2. *Tychenberg*, (*Tychapolis* my Author calls) a Dutch mile from *Crempe*, but on the very Bank of the River *Elb*, where it receives the *Rhine*, a small River upon which it is seated: first built and afterwards well fortified by *Christiern* the fourth, of purpose to command the *Elb*, and put a stronger Bridle in the Mouths of the *Hamburgers*, Anno 1603, now held to be the strongest piece of all his Dominions: the only Town of all this Dukedom which yielded not to the prevailing Imperialists in their late Wars against the *Danes*, Anno 1628. 3. *Bredeberch*, a strong Town belonging to the *Rantzows*, one of the best pieces of the Kingdom; remarkable for the stout resistance which it made to *Wallestein* (Duke of *Fridland*) in the War aforesaid: who at last taking it by Assault, put all the Soldiers to the Sword. 4. *Pinnenberg*, another strong place, and of very great consequence. 5. *Jetzebo*, or *Itzebo*, on the River *Stoer*. 6. *Gluckstadt*, upon a Creek or Bay of the *German* Ocean, repaired and fortified by the said *Christiern* the fourth in 1620, who much delighted in the place, to command the passage up the *Elb*. 7. *Stoer*. 8. *Hamburg*, upon the *Bille*, where it falls into the *Elb*, an ancient City, built in the time of the *Saxons*, repaired by *Charles* the Great, and walled by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth. Accounted since that time an Imperial City, and made one of the *Hanse*, upon the first incorporating of those Towns. Which notwithstanding, on a Controversie arising about that time betwixt the Earl of *Holstein* and the People hereof, it was adjudged to belong to be Earls of *Holstein*; and that determination ratified by *Charles* the Fourth, Anno 1374. In pursuance whereof the *Hamburgers* took the Oath of Allegiance to *Christiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the first King of *Denmark* of that House, as Earl of *Holstein*, acknowledging him and his Successors for the Lawful Lords; though since they have endeavour'd to shake off that Yoke, presuming very much on their Power at Sea, and the assistance

which they are assured of upon all occasions from the rest of the *Hanse-Towns*. As for the Town itself, it is seated in a large Plain, with fat and rich Pastures round about it, well fortified by Art and Nature, the Haven being shut up with a strong Iron Chain. The Buildings for the most part are of Brick, but more beautiful than well contrived; and the Streets somewhat of the narrowest. The publick Structures are very fair; especially the Council-house, adorn'd with the Statues of the Nine Worthies, carved with very great Art, the Exchange, or Meeting-place for Merchants, and nine large Churches. The Citizens are generally rich, Masters of many as great Ships as sail on the Ocean, some of them 1200 Ton in Burthen, which bring in great profit, besides the great resort of Merchants and their Factors from most places else: sometimes the Staple Town for the Cloth of *England*, removed on some Discontents to *Stadt*, and from thence to *Holland*. It is observed, that there were in this Town at one time 177 Brewers, and but 40 Bakers, nor more than one Lawyer and one Physician. The reason of which disproportion was, that a Cup of *Nimis* was their only Physick; their Difference sooner ended over a Can than by order of Law; Bread being counted but a binder, and so not to be used, but in case of necessity. This City imbrac'd the Confession of *Ausburg* at the first publication of it, yet Tolerates the *Calvinists* too, and was kind to the *English* in 1554. In the year 1686 the King of *Denmark* suddenly sat down before this City with an Army of 30000 Men, but Winter coming on, and the neighbouring Princes sending Forces into it against him, he was forced to rise without having done any thing that was considerable.

3. Betwixt the River *Stoer* and *Eyder*, coasting along the *German* Ocean, lies the Province of *DITMARSCH*, most properly called *Twitchmarsh*, from the Marishness of the Ground and the Dutch Inhabitants, or from a mixture of those People with the *Marf*, spoken of before. The People being naturally of the *Saxon* Race, retain much of the Stomach and Animosity of the ancient *Saxons* never brought under the command of the Earls of *Holstein* (as *Wagerland* and *Stormaria* were) till *Holstein* itself was joined to the Crown of *Denmark*. And though it was aliened from the Empire by *Frederick* the third, and given in Fee to *Christiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the first King of that House, Anno 1474; yet would they not submit unto his Authority, but held it out against him and some of his Successors, whom in the year 1500 they vanquished in the open Field; till they were broken and made subject by the Valour and good Fortune of King *Frederick* the second, Anno 1550. Chief places in it are, 1. *Meldorp*, upon the Ocean, the chief Town of the Province; the Inhabitants of which are so wealthy, that many of them cover their Houses with Copper. 2. *Lunden*, opposite to a Peninsula or Demi-Island called *Eyderstede*, on the West side whereof it standeth. 3. *Heinikstede*, and 4. *Telinkstede*; of which nothing memorable.

4. And as for *HOLSTEIN* itself, the fourth and last Member of this Estate, though the first in Power and Reputation, it taketh up the Inland parts, betwixt *Stormaria* and *Jutland*, save that it hath an Outlet into the *Baltick* on the North-West of *Wagerland*. Chief Places in it are, 1. *Kiel* (*Chilonium* in Latin) seated upon a Navigable Arm of the *Baltick* Sea, parting *Wagerland* from the Dukedom of *Sleswick*: a Town well Traded, and having a capacious Haven, seldom without good store of Shipping from *Germany*, *Liesland*, *Sweden*, and the rest of *Denmark*. In the year 1665 there was also an University opened here. 2. *Rensborg*, the best Fortified Piece in all this Province. 3. *Nienmünster*, on the North West of the *Stoer*, not far from the Head of it. 4. *Wilster*, on a small River so called. 5. *Bramestede*, 6. *Bonsholm*, not much observable, but for a Monastery in which *Henry*, one of the Earls hereof (of a younger House) turned Monk and died, Anno 1241.

The

The ancient Inhabitants of this and the other three were the *Saxons*, *Sigalons*, and *Subalingii*, placed here by *Protony*, whom I conceive to be no other than some Tribes of the *Cimbri* of whom this *Chersoneuse* took name: the two last of which passing into the name of the first, and in the Declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and spreading all along the Coasts of the *German* Ocean, molested with their Piracies and Depredations the Shores of *Britain*, known by that means unto the *Britains*, they were invited to assist them against the *Scots* and *Picts*. Which Action, with the aid of the *Jutes* and *Angli* (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbrick Chersoneuse*) they perform'd so honestly as to make themselves Masters of the best part of the Island. Such as remained behind, not being able to defend their own against the *Slaves*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Mecklenburg*; which, being peopled by the *Vagrii*, took the name of *Wagerland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquish'd by *Charles* the Great, these on the North-side of the *Elb* became a part of the great Dukedom of *Saxony*; and so continued till dismembred by *Lotharius*, both Duke and Emperor, who gave the proper *Holst* (or *Holstein* specially so called) with the Province of *Stor-maria* to *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg*, who had deserved well of him in his Wars, with the Title of Earl of *Holstein*, Anno 1114. By *Adolph* the second, his Successor, it was settled in this House; who having made a full Conquest of it, caused it to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *Germans* from *Holland*, *Westphalen*, and *Friesland*; by which means the name of *Slaves* was at last worn out. By *Gerrard* the fifth the Dukedom of *Sleswick* was also added; conferred upon him by the bounty of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, in whose Wars he serv'd. *Adolph* the last Earl of this House dying without Issue, the whole Estate fell on *Christiern*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of *Hednigis* his Wife, Sister and Heir to *Adolph* before mentioned; who, being called to the Crown of *Denmark*, compounded with his Brother *Gerrard* for the sum of 50000 Marks; and having gotten *Ditmarsh* also of the Emperor *Frederick* the third, prevailed so far as to have the whole Estate erected into a Dukedom, Anno 1414, to be held by him and his Successors of the Sacred Empire. Which said, we will next add the Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of *HOLSTEIN*.

- 1114 1. *Adolph* of *Schaumburg*, by *Lotharius*, Emperor and Duke of *Saxony*, made the first Earl of *Holstein*.
- 1137 2. *Adolph* II. Son of *Adolph* the first.
- 1164 3. *Adolph* III. Son of *Adolph* the 2d, vanquish'd by *Canutus* King of the *Danes*, lost himself and his Country.
- 1232 4. *Adolphus* IV. in his Father's life-time recovered his Estate from *Waldemar* the Successor of *Canutus*, overcome by him in a well fought Battel, Anno 1226, his Father then Prisoner to the *Danes*.
- 1261 5. *Gerrard*, the second Son of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder Brother *John* making choice of *Wagerland*, succeeded in *Holstein*.
- 1281 6. *Henry*, the Son of *Gerrard*, the first that set up a Custom-house at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his Tolls and Taxes.
- 1310 7. *Gerrard* II. Son of *Henry*, slain treacherously by the *Danes*.
- 1339 8. *Henry* II. Son of *Gerrard* the second.
- 1381 9. *Gerrard* III. Son of *Henry* the second, created the first Duke of *Sleswick* by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*.
- 1404 10. *Henry* III. Son of *Gerrard* the third.
- 1427 11. *Adolphus* V. commonly called the XII. (those of the younger Houses being reckoned in) the last Earl of this House.

1459 12. *Christiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Normay*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of his Wife *Hednigis*, Sister of *Henry* and *Adolphus* the two last Earls succeeded in the Earldom of *Holstein*, enlarged with the addition of *Ditmarsh*, and erected into a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick* the third, Anno 1474. But seeing that *Otho* Earl of *Schaumburg* pretended a Right unto the whole, as the next Heir-male, according to the Constitutions of the Empire, of which it was holden; and *Gerrard* the Brother of *Christiern* put in for his share, according to the ill Custom of *Germany*, of which it was then counted part: he was fain to buy his peace of both, giving to *Otho* 43000 Florens in ready money, with the Towns of *Pienenburg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Bramstede*, the ancient possessions of the Earls of *Schaumburg* and 50000 Marks to his Brother *Gerrard*, besides his whole Interest in the Earldom of *Oldenburg*, as before was said. By this means *Holstein*, was united to the Crown of *Denmark*, the Kings thereof, as Dukes of *Holstein*, being counted Princes of the Empire; but neither send unto the Diets, nor contribute any thing at all to the publick Taxes, nor acknowledge any kind of subjection to it more than merely titular. Only it was ordained at the request of the Subjects when first they were incorporated into that Kingdom, that in case of any grievance or unjust sentence in the ordinary Courts of Justice, wherein they found no remedy in the supreme Council of the Province, it might be lawful for them to appeal to the Imperial Chamber, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the present time, on sufficient Caution; so hath it seldom or never been put in practice; the very Grant or Privilege (if such it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But since this uniting of these two Estates, the Title of Duke of *Holstein* and a good part of the Country was given unto *Adolphus* Brother of *Christiern* the 3d. (created by Queen *Elizabeth* one of the Knights of the Garter, Anno 1560) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their several turns, after whose death, and the death of all his Children dying without Issue-male, the Title of it was conferred on *Ulrick*, Son of *Frederick* the second, and Brother of *Christiern* the fourth, created Knight of the Garter by King *James*, Anno 1605, in whole Posterity it remains till this present time.

The Dukes of *HOLSTEIN-SLESWICK*, of the Line of *Denmark*.

- 1481 13. *Frederick*, second Son of *Christiern* King of *Denmark*, was by his Father assigned his Successor in the Dukedoms of *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, but was put by by his elder Brother *Christiern* II. King of *Denmark*, but he succeeded his Brother in the year 1523, both in the Dukedoms and Kingdom.
- 1533 14. *Christiern* III. Son of *Frederick*.
- 1559 15. *Adolph*, Brother of *Christiern* III. had the Title of Duke of *Holstein*, he was by Queen *Elizabeth* made Knight of the Garter in 1560. This Prince Conquer'd the Inhabitants of *Ditmarsh*, and was a Person of great Valour and Worth: So that the *Hamburgers* did him Homage in 1603.
- 1586 16. *Adolph*, Son of the former, was slain the Battel of *Leipsick* in 1631.
- 1631 17. *Frederick*, who was born in 1597; and is famous for his Ambassy to the King of *Persia*, sent through *Moscovy* in the year 1633. He having no Male-issue was succeeded by
- 1659 18. *Christian Albert*, his Son born in 1641, but at this time Duke of *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, who was forced by the King of *Denmark* in 1675, to resign his Dukedoms of *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, who thereupon took and dismantled

tell'd the strong Towns of *Tønningen* and *Wismar*, which is now under debate, the Neighbouring Princes having espoused the Interests and cause of the Duke of *Holstein*, he has a Son named *Frederick*, born in the year 1671, who is his Heir.

These latter Dukes from *Adolph*, Brother of *Christiern* the third, to *Christian-Albert*, were Homagers to the Crown of *Denmark*, and their Dominions much less than that of the former Dukes. *Frederick*, Father of the present Duke of *Holstein*, joining with the *Swedes* against the *Danes*, forced *Frederick III.* by the Treaty of *Roschild* in 1658 to declare him an Independent Prince; but *Christian* the 5th, the present King of *Denmark*, by the Treaty of *Reisburg*, forced the present Duke to submit to him in 1675. The neighbour Princes in the Year 1687 and 1688 endeavoured an Accommodation of this Difference, which the 30th of June 1689, was obtained upon these following Articles.

The Treaty of Accommodation between Denmark and Holstein, Concluded and Signed on the 30th of June, 1689.

Be it known unto all, That the great Differences that have for a long time continued between the King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, &c. and the Duke of *Holstein Sleswick*, have, by the zealous Mediation of his Imperial Majesty, and the Electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh*, been finally adjusted in the following manner.

I. That there be a General Amnesty, and perpetual Oblivion, of whatever has been transacted or done by the Ministers and Subjects on either side; none of which shall be hereafter questioned or called to Account for the same: Nor shall any of the Duke of *Holstein's* Subjects, who may have submitted themselves to the King of *Denmark*, be, on that account, ill look'd upon; But, on the contrary, an unalterable Friendship and Union is hereby renewed and established between the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holstein*, and their Heirs and Successors.

II. That the King of *Denmark* shall restore to the Duke all his Lands and Goods, with the Sovereignty, Regalities, Right of raising Monies, making Alliances, building Fortifications, and Garrisoning the same; And all other his Rights, Pre-eminences, and Privileges, as he enjoyed the same, according to the *Westphalian* and *Northern* Treaties, till the year 1675; together with what appertains to him by Virtue of the Treaty concluded at *Fountainbleau*, which is hereby again confirmed; And shall likewise restore to all his Servants and Subjects their Goods and Principal Monies.

III. Whereas the Duke, among his other Demands, desires that the King will free the Island *Femeren*, and the Bayliwicks of *Stoinhorst*, *Tremsbüttel*, and *Trittau*, from the Engagements they are now under, and restore the same without any Incumbrance to his Highness: His Majesty, farther to shew his sincere Friendship and Brotherly Inclination, will discharge the Bayliwick of *Trittau*, from what it stands engaged to him for, altho' a considerable Sum is still due to him on that account, and will restore the same with the other Lands. But for what concerns the said Island and Bayliwicks of *Femeren*, *Stoinhorst*, and *Tremsbüttel*, seeing the same are not in the hands of his Majesty, but of his Brother his Royal Highness Prince *George* of *Denmark*; The Mediators, for the greater strengthening and maintaining the so necessary Peace of the North and the Lower *Saxon* Circle, in which the common Good is so highly concerned, have undertaken to find out a way, without any Charge or Prejudice to his Majesty, whereby his Royal Highness shall be satisfied for his Pretensions upon the said Island and Bayliwicks; so that the same may, without any incumbrance, be restored to the Duke of *Holstein*.

IV. On the other side, the Duke not only renounces all Pretensions he may have upon the King on account of his having seized, and for a time possessed, his Lands;

But will likewise quit the Process he has begun before the Imperial Court against the Duke of *Ploen*.

V. For what concerns the Union and Agreements between the Two Families: and the Treaties made till the year 1675, the same shall continue in their former Force; together with the *Westphalian*, *Northern*, and *Fountainbleau* Treaties. And the King shall on his side quit all Arrears and Contributions that remain uncollected.

VI. The Matters that remain undetermined, shall be amicably composed, or referred to the Law; but neither side shall attempt anything by way of Force.

VII. The Ratifications of this Agreement shall, within 14 days from the Date hereof, be exchanged at *Altena*; And the Contents hereof put in full Execution within eight days after. *In Witness, &c.*

2. The Kingdom of DENMARK.

IN which 1. *JUTLAND* containeth all the rest of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holstein* by the River *Eyder*, the ancient Boundary betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*; but principally by a long Trench and Wall from one Sea to the other, of such breadth, that a Chariot or two Horse-men a-breast might ride upon it. First built in imitation of the *Picts* Wall in *England*, by *Godfrey* King of *Denmark*, in the time of *Charles* the Great; either to hinder the daily Incursions of the *Saxons*, as some, or to stop the current of the Victories of the said *Charles*, as others think. The Tract thereof, still very easie to be seen, is called *Dennewerk* (or the *Danes Work*) to this very day.

It was so called from the *Jutes*, who, together with the *Angli* and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a Conquest of the best part of *Britain*. The Country so aboundeth in Cattel, that it sendeth yearly into *Germany* 50000 Oxen, besides great store of Butter, Cheese, Tallow, Hides, and Horses, divided commonly into *North Jutland*, and *South Jutland*, or *Jutland* specially so called, and the Dukedom of *Sleswick*.

SOUTH-JUTLAND, or the Dukedom of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese*, which lies next to *Holstein*; called *South-Jutland*, from the Southern situation of it; and *Sleswick*, from the chief Towns of it, and the head of this Dukedom. The Country, for the most part, is plain, little swelled with Mountains; the Fields whereof do interchangeably yield both Fish and Corn. For during one three years they sow it constantly, and reap the Fruits of it, and for the next three, let the Pools overflow the Land, to the end the Fish may eat up the Grais, (whom they catch as often as they please) and the Mud which is left behind enrich the Soil. But besides their Pools, they have also on the *Baltick* shores many goodly Bays; not only commodious for Merchants, but well stored with Fish, and with Salmon especially.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Flensborch*, seated among very high Mountains on the Shore of the *Baltick* Sea, where there is a Port so deep, so safe, and so commodious, that all the Inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their Ships close to their houses. *Christian* the 5th, the present King of *Denmark*, was born in this Town the 18th of April, 1646. 2. *Husum*, or *Hussum*, upon the *German Ocean*, not far from the Mouth of the River *Eyder*. 3. *Hadersleve*, a Bishop's See, if not rather some Town or Mannor of the Bishop's of *Sleswick*, situate on a Navigable In-let of the *Baltick* Sea, wherewith it is almost encompassed: beautified with the fair Castle of *Hansburg*, begun by *John* the eldest Son of King *Christiern* the first, then Duke of *Holstein*, but finished by *Frederick* the second, King of *Denmark*. 4. *Londenburg*, in the Peninsula called *Eyderstede*, over against *De Strandt*, an Island of the *German Ocean*. 5. *Sternberg*, the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*. 6. *Gottorp*, a strong Fort or Castle

Castle of the Duke of *Sleswick's*, at the end of a large Bay or In-let of the *Baltick* also: remarkable for the Toll-booth or Custom-house there erected, at which there is Toll paid one year with another for 5000 Oxen sent out of the *North-Jutland* into *Germany*. 7. *Sleswick*, originally by the *Danes* called *Hydebui*, built, as they say, by *Hethe* a Queen of the Nation; but by the *Saxons* called *Sleswick*, as the Town upon the River *Sley*, there running into the *Baltick*, and giving to the Town a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of this Province, honoured with an Episcopal See, and made the Head of the Dukedom, so giving name unto the whole. A Dukedom first erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar*, great Grandchild of *Abel*, a former King, Anno 1280, to be held by him under the Right and Sovereignty of the Kings thereof. But the Male issue failing, it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* conferred on *Gerrard* Earl of *Holstein*, as before was said, Anno 1386. Repenting afterwards of that Act, she extorted it out of the hands of the Widow of *Gerrard*; but it was again recovered by the valour and good fortune of his Son *Adolphus*. After whose death it fell together with *Holstein*, upon *Christiern* of *Oldenburg* King of *Denmark*, as before related, by whom it was incorporated with that Crown, never since aliened, but assigned sometimes in Portion for the younger Princes; the Patrimony at this time of the Sons of *Alexander*, surnamed of *Sunderborg*, (the place of his Nativity) Son of *John*, one of the younger Sons of King *Christiern* the third, who was succeeded by

1. *Alexander*, born in 1573, he died in 1627.
- 1627 2. *John Christiern*, born in 1607.
- 1653 3. *Christiern Adolph*, born in 1641.

NORTH-JUTLAND, the most Northern part of all the *Chersonese*, hath on the South the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, but on all other parts of the Sea. Divided commonly, according to the number of the Bishopricks, into four Dioceses or Districts; that is to say.

1. The Diocesis of *RIP* or *RIPEN*, bordering next to *Sleswick*, containing 30 Prefectures or Herets, (as they use to call them) seven Cities or walled Towns, and ten Castles. The chief of which are, 1. *Ripen*, the Episcopal See, situate near the *German* Ocean. 2. *Kolding*, on a Creek of the *Baltick* Sea; where *Dorothy* the Dowager of *Christiern* the third built a publick School, one of my Authors calls it an University.

2. The Diocesis of *ARTHUSEN*, lying on the North of *Ripen*, but more towards the *Baltick*, containeth 31 Herets or Prefectures, seven Cities or walled Towns, and five Castles. The Chief whereof are, 1. *Arhusen*, the Episcopal See, seated on the *Baltick*, enjoying a commodious Port and well frequented; the first Bishop hereof being that *Poppo* who converted this Nation; Christianity and Episcopacy going for the most part hand in hand together. 2. *Schanderborg*, on the South of *Arhusen*, 3. *Kallo*, a strong Castle of the Kings, seated in the inmost part of a large Bay, occasioned by the Promontory or Cape of *Hillen*, extending hence two Dutch miles to the high Hill of *Ellemanberg*. Opposite whereunto, and pertaining to this Jurisdiction, lie the Islands of 1. *Sumsoe*, 2. *Hiolm*, 3. *Tuen*, 4. *Hiarnce*, (perhaps *Gerno*) 5. *Hilgenes*, and others.

3. The Diocesis of *WIBORCH*, on the North of *Arhusen*, containeth sixteen Herets, the Islands of 1. *Jegen*, 2. *Hansholm*, 3. *Ostholm*, 4. *Cisland*, 5. *Egholm*, and 6. *Bodum*: three Cities or walled Towns, and as many Castles. The Principal of which is *Wiborch*, the Episcopal See, an Inland City, but situate on a water which runneth into the Bay of *Limfort*. The ordinary Seat of Judicature for both the *Jutlands*, for all Causes, as well Criminal as Civil: the Court continually sitting from one day to another, unless perhaps the Judges do sometimes adjourn it for their own refreshments.

4. The Diocesis of *BURGLAVE*, or *Vandalia*, lying farther North, is commonly subdivided into four parts or Members: that is to say, 1. *Thyland*, lying South of the Bay of *Limfors*, on the *Baltick* side, whose chief Town is *Alborch*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Vandalia*, from hence many times stiled *Alburgenfis*, situate on the Bay aforesaid, which, opening into the *Baltick* Sea, extendeth through the main Land Westward almost as far as the *German* Ocean. 2. *Morssec*, lying on the Ocean, and containing three Prefectures or Herets, the Town of *Nicoping*, the Castle of *Lunsted*, and the Isle of *Ageroe*. 3. *Hanheret*, on the North-West of the Bay of *Limfort*, containing 4 Herets, the Town of *Thystad*, where *Christiern* the third, founded a publick School, or such another University as that of *Kolding*, the Castle of *Orum*, and the Islands of *Oland* and *Oxholm*. There is in this part also, the high Rock called *Skaringelint*, a noted Sea-mark, fitly serving to give notice to the Sailour of the Quick sands which lye underneath it and about this Coast. 4. *Wensyssel*, *Vensilia*, or *Wenslie*, that is (as *Mercator* doth expound it) *Vadalarum sedes*, the Seat of the *Vandals*, taketh up all the rest of the North of *Jutland*, containing six Prefectures, the Islands of 1. *Groysholm*, 2. *Hertzholm*, and 3. *Tidsholm*; three Towns, and one Castle: the most remarkable of which is *Schagen*, within the most Northernly point of all this *Chersonese*. In this part is a very high Mountain called *Mount Alberg*, in which are found some marks and remainders of the ancient Giants, as the Inhabitants believe, and report accordingly.

The Inhabitants of both *Jutlands* in the time of *Ptolomy* and before, were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phundusi*, *Charudes*, and in the most Northern Tracts the *Cimbri*, of whom the four first were but Tribes or Nations. These moving toward the South in that great Expedition against *Spain*, made by the neighbouring *Vandals* on the *Roman* Empire, occasioned the *Juits*, and *Angli* to inlarge or shift their Dwellings, each taking up the parts which lay nearest to them. The *Juits*, or *Gute*, being a people of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Ptolomy*, took up the Northern parts thereof, from them named *Jutland*: the other being a people of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the South of the *Elb*. possessed themselves of those parts which lay next the *Saxons*, their old Friends and Confederates, (their chief Town being *Sleswick*) where *Angelen*, now an obscure Village, once of greater note, doth preserve their memory. But these uniting with the *Saxons* in the Conquest of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep possession of the Country against the new Invaders, gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them; by whom the Country being conquered as far as to the River *Eyder*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdom: of whom we shall say more in the close of all, first taking a survey of the *Baltick* Islands, and such Provinces on the main Land of *Scandia* as properly make up the Kingdom of *Denmark*.

John, Brother of *Frederick* 2. King of *Denmark*, was the Founder of the several Branches of the Dukedoms of *Holstein*, which are these following.

1. S U N D E R B U R G.

1. *Alexander*, born in the year 1573, and in the Division with his Brothers, possessed of *Sunderburg*, part of the Island of *Alsens*, and part of *Sunderwick*, he had ten Sons, and died in the year 1627.
- 1627 2. *John Christian*, eldest Son of *Alexander*, born in the year 1607, he Married *Ann* of *Oldenburg*, by whom in the year 1641, he had *Christian Adolph*, and died in the year 1653.
- 1653 3. *Christian Adolph*, Son of *John*, now living, he has a Son named *Leopald Christian*, born in

in the year 1678, who is now living with his Father at *Franzhague*, in the Dukedom of *Sax-Lawenburg*.

2. N O R D B U R G.

1. *Frederick* the 2d. Son of *John Duke of Holstein*, was the Founder of this Line, he died in the year 1658.
- 1658 2. *John Bogislaus*, the eldest Son of *Frederick*, was born in the year 1629, and died in the year 1680, having never been Married.
- 1680 2. *Rodolphus Frederick*, the Brother of *John Bogislaus*, and 3d Son of *Frederick*, succeeded his Brother, and left behind him one Son.
- 1688 3. *Ernest Leopald*, born in the year 1684, and succeeded his Father at the Age of 4 years, and is now Educated in the Court of *Wolfenbuttel*.

3. G L U C K S B U R G.

1. *Philip*, the 3d. Son of *John*, was the Founder of this third branch, he married *Sophia Hedwige*, of the House of *Sax-Lawenburg*, by whom he had eleven Children.
2. *Christian*, his eldest Son, was born in 1627, and is still living in the Castle of *Glucksburg*: *Philip Ernest*, his eldest Son, was born in 1673, 2. *Joachim Adolph* in 1679, and *Christian August* in 1681.

4. P L O E N.

There remains the branch of *Ploen*, the Founder of which was *Joachim Ernest*, the fourth Son of *John*, who died in the year 1671, 80 years of Age.

- 1671 2. *John Adolph*, Son of *Joachim* born in 1634, who is now living, he has three Sons, *Adolph Augustus*, born in 1680. 2. *Joachim Ernest* in 1681. 3. *John Ulrick* in 1684.

2. **T**HE *BALTICK ISLANDS* are in number 35, and are so called, because they lie dispersed in the *Baltick Ocean*. At this day it is called by the *Germans*, *de Oost Zee*, anciently by some *Mare Suevicum*, by *Pomponius*, *Mela* *Sinus Cædanius*, by *Strabo*, *Sinus Venedicus*; but generally *Mare Balticum*, because the great *Peninsula* of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by some Writers of the middle and darker time called *Balthia*. It beginneth at the narrow passage called the *Sound*; and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia* and *Lithuania*. The reasons why this Sea, being so large, doth not ebb and flow, are, 1. The Narrowness of the Streight by which the Ocean is let into it; and 2. the Northern situation of it, whereby the Celestial Influences have lesser power upon it. The principal of this great shole of Islands are, 1. *Seland*, 2. *Funen*, or *Fionia*, 3. *Langland*, 4. *Lawland*, 5. *Falstre*, 6. *Aria*, 7. *Alsen*, 8. *Tusung*, 9. *Ween*, 10. *Femera*, and 11. *Bornholm*. Some others of less note we shall only name, and so pass them over.

1. *SELAND*, the greatest Island of the *Baltick Seas*, is situate near the main Land of *Scandia*, parted from it by a narrow Streight or *Fretum*, not above a Dutch mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sundt* or *Sound*. A Streight through which all Ships which have any trading to or from the *Baltick*, must of necessity take their course; all other Passages being barred up with impassible Rocks, or otherwise prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon forfeiture of all their Goods. So that being the only safe Passage which these Seas afford, one may sometimes see two or three hundred Ships in a day pass through it: all which pay a Toll or Imposition to the King, according to their Bills of lading. And to secure this Passage, and command all

Passengers, there are two strong Castles, the one in *Scandia*, called *Helsingburg*, whereof more anon; the other in this Island which is called *Cronenburg*.

But before we come to this Castle, we must view the other parts of the Island, being in length two days journey, and almost as much in breadth: the Soil so fertile, that, without any manuring or charge at all, it yieldeth plenty of all Necessaries for the life of man. It was anciently called *Codanonia*, and containeth in it fifteen Cities or walled Towns, and twelve Royal Castles. The principal whereof are, 1. *Haffen*, or *Hafnia*, the Metropolis of the Islands, by the *Dutch* called *Copenhagen*, or the *Haven of Merchants*; situate near the Sea, with an handson Port; the Isle of *Amager*, which lieth on the East-side of the Town, making a very safe Road for all kinds of Shipping. The Town is of an orbicular form, and reasonably well fortified; but the buildings mean, for the most part of Clay and Timber, only to be commended for a spacious Market-place: Yet herein, as the chief Town of all the Kingdom, and Situate in the heart of those Dominions, is the Palace-Royal, built of Free-stone in form of a Quadrangle, but of no great Beauty or Magnificence. Most memorable for the University here founded by *Henry*, or *Erich* the ninth; but perfected by King *Christiern* the first, by him and the succeeding Princes liberally endowed. In the year 1659, the *Suedes* with a potent Army, besieged this City, but were beaten off with great Loss, and the year following, the City was honour'd with the Title of an Archbishop's See. 2. *Fredericksburg*, amongst Woods of Beech, built for a place of Pleasure by *Frederick* the second, where the King hath a fine House, and a little Park, in which (amongst other foreign Beasts) are some Fallow Deer transported hither out of *England* in the 24th year of Queen *Elizabeth*. 3. *Rosbilt*, not walled but counted for a City, as a See Episcopal; the Bishops whereof have anciently had the honour of Crowning and Inaugurating the Kings of *Denmark*. In the Cathedral Church hereof are to be seen the Tombs of many of the *Danish* Kings; some of them very fair and sumptuous, the most mean and ordinary. It is famous for a Treaty of Peace, here made between the Kings of *Denmark* and *Sweden* in the year 1658. The Bishoprick was erected here in the year 1012, by *Sveno* King of *Denmark*. 4. *Sora*, of old times beautified with a goodly Monastery, the Revenues whereof, at the alteration of Religion, were converted to the maintenance of a Free-School built here by *Frederick* the first. But in the year 1623, *Christiern* the fourth, adding hereunto the Revenues of two other dissolved Monasteries, the one in the Isle of *Lawland*, and the other in *Jutland*, founded here a new University, for the better supply of learned Ministers for the Churches of *Denmark* and *Norway*, (which before could not be provided for out of *Copenhagen*) and furnished it with men of eminence in all Arts and Sciences for its first Professors. 5. *Elfenore*, or *Helsingore*, a Village only, but much frequented by Sea-faring men as their Ships pass by the sound, upon which it is. Near unto which is 6. the strong and magnificent Castle of *Cronenburg*, built with incredible charge and pains by King *Frederick* the second; the foundation of it being laid on huge Stones sunk into the Sea, and so fastned together, that no storm or Tempest, how violent soever, is able to shake it; well fortified as well as founded, and mixt of a Palace and a Fort, being since the first building of it the most constant Residence of the Kings of *Denmark*, who from hence may easily discern each Ship which sails through the *Sundt*, each of which addeth more or less unto his Revenues. A profitable and pleasing prospect. By the Commodity of this and the opposite Castle, the King doth not only secure his Customs, but very much strengthen his Estate: the Castles being so near, and the Streights so narrow, that, by the addition of some few Ships, he may keep the greatest Navy that is from passing by him.

Unto the Government and Jurisdiction of this Island belong many others; the principal whereof are, 1. *A-*

magria, Amager, or Amach, which helps to make up the Port or Road of *Copenhagen*, spoken of before; planted with *Hollanders* brought hither by the procurement of *Christiern* the second. 2. *Mund*, or *Moen-land*, the chief Town whereof is called *Stekoe*. 3. (2) *HUENE*, or *WEEN*, a little South of *Cronenburg* Castle; a Dutch mile in length, but not quite so broad; remarkable only for the Studies of that famous Astronomer *Tycho Brayhe*, to whom *Frederick* the second gave this Island, that living in a private and solitary place, removed from all company but his own Family only, he might with more convenience attend his Books. At this day most observable for the Castle of *Uranopolis*, or *Urenborg*, where the greatest part of his Mathematical Instruments are preserved in safety.

3. *FIONIA*, or *FUNEN*, the second Island of account in all the *Baltick*, is situate betwixt *Seland* and *Futland*, from which last it is parted by a Streight called *Middlefar Sundt*, so narrow, and of so small a Sea, that the Island and the *Chersonese* seem joyned together. A Country of a pleasant and delightful Situation, and as fruitful withal; containing 12 Dutch miles in length, and four in breadth; and therein 24 Herets or Prefectures, 16 Towns, and 6 Royal Castles, besides many goodly Villages, and Gentlemens Houses. The chief whereof are, 1. *Odenssee*, or *Othensche* (called in Latin, *Orthonia*) an Episcopal See, founded here, at the first conversion of this People, by *Orho* the Great, whence it had the name. The Town is not large, but beautified with two fair Churches, the one dedicated to Saint *Canute*, the other to Saint *Francis*: (in which *Christian* the 2. King of *Denmark*, and *John* his Father, were both buried,) situate in the midst of the Island, from which the residue of the Towns are almost equally distant; and so commodiously seated for Trade and Merchandise, as they do not only traffick in the *Baltick* Sea, but in *Sweden*, *Normay*, *Russia*, *Flaniders* and *Germany*, 2. *Nyborch*, 3. *Foborch*, 4. *Swynborch*, 5. *Middlefar*, whence the Streight is so named. 6. *Bowens*, and 7. *Kartemunde*; all seated on some Haven, or convenient Creek. The principal of the Castles are, 1. *Newborg*, 2. *Hagenschow*, 3. *Escheborg*, 4. *Hinsgagel*, 5. the Court of *Rogard*. In this Island, not far from the Castle of *Hagenschow*, is the Mountain of *Offenburg*, where *John Ranzovius*, Anno 1430. discomfited the great Army of *Christopher*, the Brother of *Anthony*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, coming in those unsettled times to invade the Kingdom, under colour of restoring *Christiern* the second formerly deposed; in which Fight the Earl of *Hoye* and *Teckleborg* were both slain in the place, and the Kingdom after that in quiet from the like Pretenders. The *Swedes* harraisd this Island very much in the year 1659, but were at last beaten out with great loss in a Battle fought near *Nyborg*.

South of *Fionia*, and under the Government hereof, are about 90 lesser Islands, most of them inhabited: the chief of which are:

4. *LANGELAND*, seven Dutch miles in length, and five broad, in which besides many Villages and Gentlemens Houses, we have the Town of *Rudkoping*, and the Castle of *Fraenkar*. This and *Lamland* are by *John Bunion* taken for one Island, as in truth they are.

5. *LAWLAND*, disjoyned from *Seland* by a little narrow Streight called *Crone-sundt*; so plentiful of Corn and Chestnuts, that Ships full freighted with them are sent yearly hence. An Island which, besides many Castles, Villages and Mansion-houses of the Gentry, hath five good Towns, viz: 1. *Nyfladt*, 2. *Nasco*, 3. *Togrop*, 4. *Richus*, and 5. *Mariboane*; in which last anciently was a very rich Monastery, the Revenues whereof are now employed for the endowment of the new University of *Sora*, founded by *Christiern* the fourth, as before was noted. This Island is so called *quasi Langeland*, from its low situation, on the West-side, it has a strong Castle called *Nascoa*, which in the year 1659, stood a long Siege against the Victorious *Swede*.

6. *FALSTRE*, four German miles in length, and two

broad, affording plenty of Corn yearly to some neighbouring Islands. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Nicopie*, which for the Elegancy of the place and Pleasantness of the Situation is called the *Naples of Denmark*. *Christopher* King of *Denmark*, died here in the year 1333. *Stubeopen*, from whence there is the ordinary passage into *Germany*, seven Dutch miles hence.

7. *TUSING*, not far from *Swynborch*, or *Swineby*, a Town of *Fionia*; a Dutch mile in length situate in a dangerous and troublesome Sea, from whence is no safe passage either to *Seland*, *Funen*, or *Futland*, tho' much distant from neither. Chief places in it are, 1. *Afloss*, towards *Futland*; 2. *Niburg*, towards *Seland*, and 3. the Court of *Keltorp*, belonging to the noble Family of *Rosencrantz*.

8. *FEMERA*, or *FEMEREN*, a fruitful and well-peopled Island, having in it the Towns of 1. *Derborch*, 2. *Stabul*, and 3. *Pittersdorp*. A place of great importance to the Crown of *Denmark*, not so much in danger of being made subject to the Imperialists by the taking of *Holstein* and both *Futlands*, as by planting too strong a Garrison in this small Island: and therefore with all diligence recovered by the King again, and better fortified than before, against all Invasions, Anno 1628. Of the remaining Islands which pertain unto *Fionia*, we find the names of 1. *Aroe*, 2. *Romso*, 3. *Endelo*, 4. *Ebelo*, 5. *Boko*, 6. *Brindo*, 7. *Zoroe*, 8. *Agernis*, 9. *Hellenis*, 10. *Jerdo*, 11. *Birkholm*, of which nothing memorable. This Island was made more famous by a Sea fight between the *Danes* and the *Swedes* and *Hollanders*, in the year 1645.

Amongst these Islands, but not subordinate to *Fionia*, are,

9. *ARIA*, belonging to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, consisting of 3 Parishes, some Gentlemens Houses, and the Town and Castle of *Koping*: supposed to be the habitation of the *Arri*, spoken of by *Tacitus*; but a Colony rather of them, as I suppose. And not far off,

10. *AISEN*, another little Island, but of more repute called in Latin, *Elyfia*, opposite to the Gulf or Bay of *Flensborg* in the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, to which it also appertaineth. Well stored it is with Beasts for profit, and Game for pleasure; so populous, that some thousands of men may be easily and suddenly raised in it; consisting of 13 Parishes and 4 Towns: that is to say, 1. *Gammelgard*, 2. *Osterholm*, 3. *Norderborg*, and 4. the good Town and Castle of *Sunderborg*, one of the ordinary Residences of the Dukes of *Sleswick*, and honoured with the Birth of many of their Princes of the Royal Family. Some think it was the Habitation anciently of the *Elyfi*, spoken of by *Tacitus*, and by him placed next unto the *Angli*: But being the *Angli* in those times dwelt about the *Elb*, I rather think, that when some Colonies of the *Angli* seated themselves in the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, as before was said, some of the *Arri* and *Elyfi* might go along for company, and plant themselves near them and these Islands.

11. *BORNHOLM*, the last of all the *Baltick* which belong to *Denmark*, is situate more Eastward, opposite to that part of *Scandia* which is called *Bleking*, betwixt it and *Pomeran*. And is 4 German miles long and 2 broad. An Isle of excellent Pasturage, breeding plenty of Cattle, wherewith, as also with Butter, Cheese, Wooll, Hides, and some store of Fruits, they supply the wants of some of their neighbours; besides good quantities of Powdered Beef and Mutton, which they barrel up and sell to Marriners. It containeth many good Towns and wealthy Villages; the chief whereof is *Bornholm*, which gives name to the Island. Both Town and Island were pawned by some former Kings unto those of *Lubeck*; from them redeemed by King *Frederick* the second for a great sum of money, after it had been in their possession about 50 years. This Island in the year 1658, was yielded to the *Swedes*, but the Inhabitants destroyed their Garrison, and return'd under the Crown of *Denmark*.

Gotland, an Island near the Coast of *Sweden*, 18 miles long,

long, and 5 broad, in which is the Town of *Wisbay*, formerly of great Trade, but now ruin'd. This Island was taken by the *Swedes* in 1645, but recovered by the *Dane* in 1677.

These Islands in the time of *Pomponius Mela* were by one general name called the *Hemodes*, in number reckoned to be seven; the residue either not inhabited, or not taken notice of, are no where mentioned in the Ancients. Of these seven; the greatest and best peopled was called *Codanonia*, (supposed to be *Seland*;) in which the said Author placeth the *Teutoni*. By *Ptolomy* it is called *Scandia Minor*, with reference to the great *Peninsula* of *Scandia* supposed by him to be an Island. From this, or from the Sea adjoining, called *Sinus Codanus*, the people of these Islands and the next Eastern Continent took the name of *Danes*; spreading the name afterwards, as they did their Conquests: of which more anon. In the mean time we must cross over the *Sound*, and take notice of such other parts of this Kingdom as lie on the other side thereof, in the vast Continent or Demy-Island (which you will) of *Scandia*: of which somewhat must be first premised, in regard that not only some parts of *Denmark*, but the whole Country of *Norway* (the Northern Islands excepted) are contained in it,

3. **SCANDIA**, by *Pliny* and *Solinus* called *Scandinavia*, by *Jornandes* *Scanzia*, hath on the East that Bay or Branch of the *Baltick* which is called the *Finnish* and *Bodner* Seas, on the North and West the main Ocean, on the South, where it points towards *Germany*, the *Baltick* or *Oost Zee*, as the *Dutch* call it, joined to the main Continent of *Sarmatia* by an *Isthmus*, or Neck of Land, at the bottom of the *Bodner Zee*, not far from *Wardhuys*. In regard of so great Season all parts thereof, it was generally by the Ancients thought to be an Island, but *incomperta magnitudinis*, of an unknown greatness, as both *Pytheas* and *Xenophon Lamplicenus* do affirm in *Pliny*: by one of which it is called *Basilis*, by the other *Baltia*; from whence the name of *Baltick* to the Sea adjoining. But later Navigations and Experience have confuted that opinion, by which it is found to be no Island, but a part of the Continent and a great one too; containing the whole Kingdom of *Norway*, the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and some part of *Denmark*. That part hereof which belongs to *Denmark* is situate on the South of this great *Peninsula*, and divided into the three Provinces of *Hallandia*, *Scania*, and *Bleking*: and in them are 23 Herets or Prefectures, and 15 Cities.

1. **HALLANDIA**, or **HALLAND**, hath on the East the wild Woods which part it from *Gothland*, on the West the intervening Sea betwixt it and *Jutland*, on the North *Sweden* properly and specially so called, on the South *Scandia* or *Schonen*. A Country which for the healthfulness of the Air, plainness of the Soil, commodiousness of Havens, plenty of Fish, pleasure of Hunting, for inexhaustible Mines of Brass and Lead, (with some veins of Silver) frequency of well-peopled Towns and Villages, and Civility of the Inhabitants, is not inferior to any. Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Labolm*, 2. *Halmstad*, Fortified by *Christiern* the 4th King of *Denmark* against the *Swedes*, then possess'd of *Warberg*, 3. *Falkenborch*: all of them on the Sea, at the mouth of navigable Streams, whose names I find not. 4. *Warsberg*, upon the Sea-side also, but fortified with a very strong Castle on the top of an Hill; taken and garrisoned by the *Swedes*, Anno 1569, and not without great difficulty recovered by the *Danes* again, Anno 1569. This Province in the year 1645, with all its Apendages, was resigned up to the *Swedes*, and is still possessed by them; it is 16 German miles long, from *Kol* to *Elseborg*.

2. **SCANIA**, or **SCHONIN**, hath on the East *Blesida* or *Bleking*, on the West the *Sound*, running along the shore hereof for the space of twenty German miles, on the North *Halland*, on the South the *Baltick* or *Oost Zee*.

The Country is of the same nature with *Halland*, as before described, the Character of that pertaining to all the three; this having over and above as peculiar to it, that the Sea-shores are flored with such Sholes of Herrings, that sometimes Ships are scarce able with wind and oar to break through them, and row off the Harbour, it is in length 72 miles, 48 in breadth. Chief Towns in which are, 1. *Lunden*, an Archbishop's See, the Metropolitan of *Denmark* and *Norway*; advanced unto that honour by the means and Mediation of *Erasmus* the first, who purposely made a journey to *Rome* to effect that business; the Church of *Denmark* being before that time subject to the Archbishops of *Brace*. This was about the year 1100. It is situate somewhat within the Land, but the Cathedral easily discernable by Mariners as they sail along. The City is but mean, and were it not for the Cathedral, of no beauty at all. But that indeed is affirmed to be a work of much Magnificence and Art; especially for the Clock, the Dial, and some outward adjuncts. For in the Dial curiously set out with divers Colours are to be seen distinctly the Year, Month, Week, Day, and Hour of every day throughout the year; with the Feasts, both movable and fixed; together with the Motion of the Sun and Moon; and their passage through each Degree of the Zodiack. Then for the Clock, it is so framed by artificial Engines, that whensoever it is to strike, two horse-men encounter one another, giving as many blows a-piece as the Bell sounds hours: and on the opening of a door there appears a Theatre, the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne with *Christ* in her Arms, and the three Kings or *Magi* (with their several Trains) marching in order, doing humble reverence, and presenting severally their Gifts; two Trumpeters sounding all the while, to adorn the Pomp of that Procession. 2. *Malmøge*, or *Elbogen*, called by both names) at the very Southern point hereof, just opposite to *Copenhagen* in *Seland*, a well traded Port; the Birth-place of *Gasper Bartholinus*, otherwise called *Malmøge Danus*, that great Mathematician, supposed to be the Author of the Clock and Dial before described. 3. *Tielberg*, on the North of *Elbogen*, 4. *Lund*, on the Sea-side, of great strength and consequence. 5. *Helsingborg*, a mean Town, but fortified with an impregnable Castle, just opposite to *Helsingore* and *Cronenburg* in *Seland*; the other of the two Keys which openeth into the *Sound*. 6. *Rottenby*, a Frontier Town bordering on *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*. 7. *Christiana*, or *Christiendorp*, a strong piece built by *Christiern* the 4th, Anno 1604, compassed by the Sea, and fortified by Fens and Marthes, thought to be impregnable. This whole province in the year 1658, was resigned to the King of *Sweden*, who has opened an University at *Lunden* in 1668. And the *Danes* in 1676, attempting the recovery of it the Fourteenth of *December*, received a great defeat.

3. **BLESCIDA**, or **BLEKING**, is bounded on the East and South with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*, on the West with *Schania* or *Schonen*; more Mountainous and barren than either, but yet partaking somewhat of the former Character which he had of *Halland*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Usted*, on the Mouth of a River falling into the *Baltick*. 2. *Christiernsburg*, in Latin *Christianopolis*, called by the *Danes* *Christiansstad*, on the borders of *Swethland*; raised out of the Ground by *Christiern* the fourth, to defend his Kingdom on that side, Anno 1604, but not long after by a warlike stratagem, surprised by the *Swedes*, in the late War betwixt those Kingdoms in the year 1611; destroyed and dispeopled by that Nation, who looked upon it as a dangerous and unpleasant Object, but since repaired and replenished. 3. *Alnaby*, upon the River which divides the Kingdom not far from *Christiernsburg*. This Province was also yielded to the *Swedes* in 1658, but *Christian* the Fifth King of *Denmark*, opened a way to the regaining of it by taking *Cronstad* and *Christiansstad*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Guta* and *Dauciones*, taking up the South parts of this great *Peninsula*. *Meridionalia tenent Guta & Dauciones*, as we find in *Ptolomy*, *Geogr. l. 2. c. 11.* which in all probability must be meant of these Provinces. Of these the *Gutes*, passing over into the *Cimbrick Chersoneuse*, possessed themselves of the North parts of it, since from them called *Jutland*. The rest, uniting with the People of those many Islands which lie together in the Bay or Gulf call'd *Sinus Codanus* (now the *Baltick Sea*) took the name of *Danes*; and not from *Dan*, I know not what King there-of above 1000 years before the Birth of our Saviour. First taken notice of by that name in *Jornandes de rebus Geticis*, who lived about the time of *Justinian* the first; about which time, or not long after, it is conceived that they made themselves Masters of so much of the *Cimbrick Chersoneuse*, as had been formerly possessed by the *Jutes* and *Angli*, whose forsaken or ill-peopled Seats they possessed themselves of. After this we hear little of them till the time of *Charles* the Great, living in a confused Estate, sometimes made subject to the *Norwegians*, sometimes to the *Swedes*, but always without Law and Order; till by the King *Godfrey* or *Gotricus* they were regulated by Laws, and reduced to an orderly kind of Life, *Anno* 797. About this time they first began to infest the Coasts of *England*, invaded *Friesland* with a Fleet of 200 Sail; and had much weakned and endangered the great Empire of *France*, if the unseasonable death of *Godfrey*, and the Quarrels which arose about the Succession after his decease, had not kept them off. Their Affairs at home being again well settled, they applied their whole Forces against *England*, as the weaker Enemy: over which they tyrannized 250 Years, and reigned 26, under three Kings of that Nation. Outed of that, and the terrour of their name being over, they have been most busied with their Neighbours of *Sweden* and *Germany*; improving their Estate, but rather by Marriages and civil Contracts, than by force of Arms, with the addition of the Kingdom of *Norway* and the Dukedom of *Holstein*: their pretensions to, and for a time the possession of the Crown of *Sweden* getting them nothing in conclusion but Blows and Losses. So that we have no more to do than to sum up a Catalogue of the Kings hereof, till the uniting of the two Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*, leaving the rest that follow to another place.

The Catalogue of these Ancient Kings of *Denmark* are extremely confused. That given by *Bussieres* being very different from this here, and not possible to be reconciled with it, or with it self, so that I have left *Heylin's* as I found it, only adding from the other the Years of *Olaus* the first, and *Heningus*, *Magnus* and *S. Canutus*.

The Kings of D E N M A R K.

A. Ch.

- 797 1. *Gotricus*, the first Legislator of the *Danes*, and the Establiher of their Kingdom; a prudent and valiant Prince.
- 811 2. *Olaus*, Son of *Gotricus*, or *Godfrey*.
- 815 3. *Heningus*, Son of *Olaus*.
- 873 4. *Siward*, Son to a Daughter of *Godfrey*, by the King of *Norway*.
5. *Regnier*, Son of *Siward*.
6. *Siward* II.
7. *Ericus*, or *Henricus*, baptized at *Mentz* at the same time with his Brother *Harald*, recovered the Kingdom to his House (of which they had been outed by the Race of *Godfrey*.)
8. *Canutus*, the Son of *Ericus*, the Heathenish Son of a Christian and pious Father.
- 880 9. *Froto*, the Son of *Canutus*, a professed Christian.
- 886 10. *Gormo*, (our English Writers call him *Gormund*) Son of *Froto*.
- 889 11. *Harald*, the Son of *Gormo*, or *Gormund*.
- 900 12. *Gormo* II. Son of *Harald*, an enemy of the Christian Faith.

- 927 13. *Harald* II. Son of *Gormo* the second, a good Christian.
- 975 14. *Sueno*, or *Swain*, Son of *Harald*, at first a great Enemy of the Gospel, an Usurper of the Throne in his Father's life-time, and a great Scourge unto the *English*. Outed of his Estate by *Ericus* of *Swethland*, he received the Gospel, regained his Kingdom, and establish'd Christianity in this Country; his War on *England* still continuing.
- 1010 15. *Olaus*, the eldest Son of *Swain*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*.
- 1020 16. *Canutus* II. Brother of *Olaus*, the first King of *England* of the *Danes*, succeeded his Brother in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*; to which he added also the Crown of *Sweden*.
- 1037 17. *Canutus* III. Son of *Canutus* the second, the last King of *England* of the Race of the *Danes*.
- 1046 18. *Magnus*, Son of *Olaus*, King of *Norway*.
- 1051 19. *Sueno* II. Sister's Son of *Canutus* the second, by *Olfo* an *English* Duke.
- 1074 20. *Harald* III. base Son of *Sueno* the second.
- 1088 21. *Canutus* IV. another of the base Sons of *Sueno*, murdered at the Altar in the Church of *Odensee* in the Isle of *Fionia*; afterwards canonized a Saint.
- 1088 22. *Olaus* II. another of the base Sons of *Swain*.
- 1099 23. *Ericus* II. another of the base Sons of *Swain*, the Founder of the Archiepiscopal See of *Lunden*.
- 1102 24. *Harald* IV. base Son of *Henry* or *Ericus* the second.
- 1133 25. *Nicolas*, another of the base Sons of *Swain*.
- 1135 26. *Ericus* III. another of the base Sons of *Ericus* the second.
- 1140 27. *Ericus* IV. commonly called the fifth (some one of the younger House being reckoned in) Nephew of *Ericus* the second.
- 1150 28. *Sueno* III. Son of *Ericus* the third, and *Canutus* the fifth, Grandchild of *Nicolas*, both Kings; the first reigning in *Scuadia*, the other in *Jutland*: both died without Issue; *Canutus* being slain by *Sueno*, and he by *Waldemar*.
- 1157 29. *Waldemar*, Son of *Canutus*, the lawful Son of *Ericus* the second, after the interposition of so many Bastards, succeeded at the last in the Throne of his Fathers. By this means the *Rugians* and *Vandals* imbraced the Gospel.
- 1185 30. *Canutus* V. Son of *Waldemar*.
- 1203 31. *Waldemar* II. Brother of *Canutus*, and Duke of *Sleswick* before his coming to the Crown.
- 1243 32. *Ericus* V. called the VII. Son of *Waldemar*, the second, slain by the Practices and Treason of his Brother *Abel*.
- 1251 33. *Abel*, Brother of *Ericus*, slain by the Peasants of *Friesland*.
- 1252 34. *Christopher*, Brother of *Abel* and *Ericus*.
- 1260 35. *Ericus* VI (VIII.) Son of *Christopher*.
- 1287 36. *Ericus* VII. (IX.) younger Son of *Ericus*, supplanted his eldest Brother *Christopher*.
- 1327 37. *Christopher* II. eldest Son of *Ericus*, at first dispossessed of his Birth-right by his Brother *Ericus*; after whose death he succeeded in the Crown, by the help of his Half-Brother the Earl of *Holstein*.
- 1334 38. *Waldemar* III. Son of *Christopher* the second, against whom and his Encroachments the Sea Towns, commonly called the *Hanse*, did first confederate, and vanquished him in many Battels. This Prince (saith the other Histories of *Denmark*) succeeded in the year 1346, and conquer'd the great *Schoneck*, King of *Sweden*, and so became the sole King of *Scandinavia*.

dinavia in the year 1360. He obtain'd *Gothland* by a Treaty with King *Albert*. In 1366 he managed a War against the *Hanse-Towns* of *Germany*, and died in the year 1375, leaving *Margaret* his Sole Daughter of all his vast Dominions. The Reason of this difference is, that there was two *Waldemars*, the first was Duke of *Sleswick*, and was chosen King of *Denmark* about 1326; the second *Waldemar* was chosen King about 1340, and married the Daughter of the first *Waldemar*, who was the Father of *Margaret*, Queen of *Norway*, *Denmark* and *Sweden*.

1376 39. *Margaret*, Daughter and Heir of *Waldemar* the third, married with *Aquin* King of *Norway*, so uniting the Kingdoms: of whom and their Successors we shall speak hereafter, when we have took a view also of the Kingdom of *Norway*, and the Appendixes thereof.

The following Kings of *Denmark* are subjoined to these of *Norway*.

3. NORWAY.

NORWAY is bounded on the East with *Swethland*, from which is parted by a perpetual Ridge of rough and wild Mountains, called the *Dofrine Hills*; on all other parts by the Sea: that is to say, by the Frozen Sea upon the North; the *German* or *Norwegian* Ocean upon the West; and on the South with the *Danish* Sea, interposing betwixt it and the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, being in breadth from *Schagen*, the most Northern point of *Fuitland*, to *Congel*, the most Southerly Town of *Norway*, no less than 250 Miles.

It is called *Norway quasi Tractus seu Via Septentrionalis*, from the Northern situation of it; containing in length 1300 Miles, in breadth not above half so much, inhabited by a People given to Hospitality, Plain-dealing, and abhorring Theft. Anciently they were great Warriors, and became terrible to all the more Southern Nations; by whom they were called *Normans* (that is to say, *Hominibus Borcales*, or *North-men*, as *Williclmus Gemiticensis* rightly hath it) being at that time a Mixture of all the Northern Nations together, or of the *Norwegians* and *Swethlanders*, apart from the *Danes*, whose steps they followed in their frequent, or rather continual, Piracies on the Coasts of *England*, *France* and *Ireland*. By *Helmoldus* in the same sense they are called *Nordluidi*, a name made into *Latin* out of the *Dutch* word *Nord*, and the *French* word *Lieu*, signifying Men a Northern Place or Nation.

Of the Position of it in regard of the Heavens we have spoke already; but more particularly it reacheth from the first Parallel of the twelfth Clime, where the Pole is elevated 58 Degrees, 26 Minutes, as far to the 71 Degree of Latitude. By which account the longest Day in the Southern point is but 18 hours; whereas at *Wardhuys*, being situate farthest North of all this Country, they have no Night for almost three whole Months together.

The Country is for the most part rocky, mountainous and barren, full of vast Woods, extream cold, and but ill inhabited. In the best parts thereof it affords little Corn, and in the most Northern none at all: insomuch that the common sort of People are fain to use dried Fish (that which we commonly call *Stock-Fish*) in stead of Bread; but the better (that is, the richer) sort buy Corn of such Merchants as come to Traffick with them. Their chief Commodities are *Stock-fish*, rich Furs, *Train-oil*, *Pitch*, and Tackling for Ships, as *Masts*, *Cables*, *Deal-boards*, and the like, which the Inhabitants exchange for Corn, Wine, Fruits, Beer, and other necessities for Mans life. The Country is exceedingly troubled with certain little Beasts which they call *Lemmers*. They are about the bigness of a Field-Mouse, and are by the Inhabitants said to drop out of the Clouds in tempestuous Weather.

They devour, like the Locusts, every green thing on the earth; and at a certain time die all in heaps (as it were) together, and with their stench so poison the Air, that the poor People are long after troubled with the Jaundies and with a Giddiness in the Head. But these Beasts come not so often to infect the Land, as the Whales do to terrifie and molest the shores; the Western Seas being very deep, and therefore a fit habitation for those great *Leviathans*: against whose Violence and Fury the Mariners and people of the Sea-coast have found a Remedy, which is by casting out some Water intermixed with the Oil of Castor; the smell whereof doth force them to retire immediately. Without this help there were no Fishing on these Coasts, which is the greatest Staple-commodity (besides materials for Shipping) which the Country yieldeth.

The Towns here are exceeding thin, and in them the Houses for the most part very poor and miserable; commonly patch'd up of Dirt and Hurdles, not much unlike our ordinary Cottage Houses in the Fen-Countries. It is distributed into five Prefectures or Governments, according to the number of the Castles which command the same.

1. The first most towards the South is the Castle of *BAHUTS*: to which are subject the Towns of, 1. *Marstrand*, seated in a Demi-Island begirt with Rocks; of most note for the infinite quantity of Herrings caught hereabout. 2. *Congel*, upon the Sea, a Town of Merchandise, opposite to *Schagen* in *Denmark*. 3. *Oddewald*. The Castle of *Bahuts* was resigned to the *Swedes* in 1660, who were before possessed of it: the *Danes* in 1678 attempted the Recovery of it, but without any success: The rest of the Province was yielded to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Roschild* in 1658.

2. *AGGERHUTS*, the second of the five Royal Castles, hath under its command the Towns of, 1. *Anslo*, or *Asloia*, on a Bay or Gullet opposite to *Fuitland*, an Episcopal See, and of most Esteem of all the Country, by reason of the Courts of Judicature which are therein held. 2. *Tonsberg*, or *Koningsberg*, that is to say, the King's or the Kingly Mountain, formerly a retiring-place of the Kings of *Norway*. 3. *Frederickstadt*, built by one of the *Fredericks*, Kings of *Denmark*. 4. *Schin*, or *Schon*, remarkable for its Mines of Iron and Copper. 5. *Saltsburg*; 6. *Hammar* the greater, and 7. *Hammar* the less, divided by the interposing of the Bay called *Sinus Mæstianus*, in former times the See of a Bishop, since removed to *Asloia*, or rather thereunto united in these latter Times, as many poor Bishopricks be in *Ireland*.

3. *BERGERHUTS*, is the third Castle of Command herein. Subordinate whereunto are, 1. *Bergen*, the principal Town of the Country, an Episcopal See, and the ordinary Residence of the Governor for the Kings of *Denmark*, situate amongst high Mountains, at the bottom of a deep Creek or Arm of the Ocean called *Carmesunt*. A noted Port, and much resorted to by Merchants of most foreign Nations, bringing in Corn, Meal, Bread, Beer, Wine, and *Aqua Vitæ*, to supply the natural wants and defects hereof; and in exchange transporting hence Fish, Furs, Cordage, and other materials for Shipping. In which regard it was accounted formerly one of the four chief Staple-Towns of the *Dutch* Merchants of the *Hanse*: the other three being *London* in *England*, *Novogrod* in *Muscovy*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. But of late time this *Bergen* hath lost most of its Trade, removed hence to *Wardhuys*, nearer unto *Muscovy*: as the great Town of *Novogrod*, by reason of the change of Navigation from the *Baltick* into that of the Northern passage, hath given way to *S. Nicholas*; and *Bruges* was deprived of her Traffick by *Antwerp*, from whence it is removed to *Amsterdam*. For the *Hollanders*, by blocking up the Haven, but especially by keeping *Bergen op Zoon*, have such a command over the River, that no Vessel can pass or repass without their Licence. This Town and Harbour of *Bergen* will ever be remembered by

by all *English Men*, on the account of a desperate Attempt made by five *English Men* of War upon a vast *East-India Fleet* of the *Hollanders*, which had here sheltered themselves in the Year 1665, the 16th of *August*, many of which Ships were destroy'd, and they had all Perished if contrary Winds had not forced the *English* to retire. 2. *Staffenger*, an Episcopal See also, but not else observable.

4. The Castle of *TRONDHEIM* is the fourth, situate in the Town of *Trondheim*, or *Drontheim*, formerly called *Tronden*, and in *Latin*, *Nidrosia*; the See of an Archbishop, who is the Metropolitan of *Norway*. A beautiful City heretofore, but since the Subjection of this Country unto the *Danes* reduced to a Burrough. So called of the River *Nider*, upon which it is seated, and *Rosa*, the name then of the principal Church; which in time gave place to the Cathedral for greatness and neatness of the Fabrick, all of polish'd Stone, not giving place to any in *Europe*; about the year 1530 much defaced with Fire, which began at the Altar, the damage done by it being estimated at 7000 Crowns; a great sum of Money in those times, and so poor a Country. So that, by casting up our reckoning, we find in *Norway* one Archbishop and four Bishops; that is to say, the Archbishop of *Trondheim* or *Nidrosia*, the Bishops of *Bergen*, *Auslo*, *Staffangor*, and *Hammar*: of the same Power, Jurisdiction and Revenue, since the Reformation, as those of *Denmark*; whereof, and of the first Conversion of this People to the Christian Faith, we have spoke already.

5. The fifth and last Castle which commands this Country is that of *WARDHUY*, so called of the Town of *Wardhuys*, as that is from the Isle *Ward*, in which it is seated. A small Castle, and the Town in former times but mean and poor, situate in the extreme North-point of all this Kingdom; but in those times accounted (as easily it might) for the chief of this Prefecture, and honoured in the Summer time with the Seat and Residence of the Governor, retiring more Southwards in the Winter, at what time, by reason of the extremity of the Cold, and long absence of the Sun for some Months together (the Town lying within the *Arctic* Circle) it is hardly habitable. But of late time it is much improv'd both in Wealth and Building, by reason of the removal of the *English* Trading from *Novograd*, near the *Baltick* Sea, to the Town of *S. Nicholas*, not far from hence; drawing by that means the Trade of *Muscovy* and *Norway* more near together. So that now it is not only useful unto the *Danes*, in regard that it somewhat aweth the neighbouring *Lappians*, and commandeth the Natives, for that cause fortified very strongly by King *Frederick* the second; but made very profitable to him also, by the resort of *Dutch* and *English*, who must of necessity touch at it (if they make no stay there) in their way to *Muscovy*. Other Towns in these two last Prefectures are not worth looking after.

And so much for the Continent or Main-land of *Norway*: let us next look upon the *Islands* in the Northern Ocean which belong unto it.

The ISLANDS in the Northern Ocean.

THE Northern Sea, so named from its Northern Situation, is by some called *Mare Scythicum*, because it coasted along the Shores of *Scythia*; by *Juvenal* *Oceanus Glacialis*, because often frozen; by *Pliny* in the same sense, *Mare Amalbinum*, the Word in the *Scythick* Language signifying frozen, or congealed; by the *Russes* or *Muscovites*, *Myrmanskoy More*; by the *Cimbrians*, in their Tongue, *Marimorusa*, that is to say, the Dead Sea, because of the slowness of its motion, often clogged with Ice; and, in the same sense, *Mare pigrum*, by *Tacitus*. This *Tacitus* doth best describe, from whom take it thus. "*Trans Sueones Mare aliud pigrum & prope immotum*, &c. Beyond the *Smedes* there is another Sea, so slow and almost immovable, that many think it to be the Bounds which compals the whole World.

"Some are persuaded that the sound of the Sun is heard as he ariseth out of this Sea; and that many shapes of Gods are seen, and the Beams of his Head. *Illuc usque* (*& fama vera*) *tantum Natura*; At this Sea (the Report is credible) is the end of Nature and the World. The *English* were the first of all civil People who adventured to open and discover the Passages of it, under the conduct of *Richard Chancellour*, arriving by this way in *Russia*, Anno 1553, and tracing out the way; which others of that Nation, together with the *Flemmings*, *Hollanders*, and some Towns of the *Hanse*, have since followed. Of which more in *Muscovy*. The principal Islands dispersed in it are, 1. *Greenland*. 2. *Iceland*. 3. *Freezland*, belonging to the Crown of *Norway*, to be surveyed at the present: *Nova Zemla* and *Sir Hugh Willoughbie's* Island, appertaining (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muscovy*, of which more hereafter.

1. *ISELAND*, is situate under the *Arctic* Circle; in length 144 *German* Miles, 65 in breadth. So called from the abundance of Ice in it and about it; frozen continually for the space of 8 Months, and so vehemently chilled with the Northern Winds, that it yieldeth neither Corn nor Trees, except Juniper only: yet there is Grass in such abundance that the People are of opinion, that if they do not sometimes keep their Cattel from feeding, they are in danger to surfeit and die with fulness. Beasts for Labour here are both Horses and Oxen; the Oxen and Kine without Horns, but the Sheep not so: and they have also here a fine breed of little Dogs, known amongst us by the name of *Island Dogs*, the delight of Ladies; as also white Falcons and white Ravens, Eagles with white Tails, and Hares with Bears of the same colour. By reason of their want of Corn, the People eat Stock-fish (as in *Norway*) in stead of Bread: yet notwithstanding, by reason of the benefit of the Sea and access of Strangers, they have all things necessary brought unto them (even to Wood and Timber) of which the richer sort make use, giving the Merchant in return sometimes the Flesh of Beeves and Mutton, but ordinarily Butter. Skins, Horses, Hawks, Brimstone, and Fish especially, the Staple Commodity of the Country; of which they have such plenty, and of so good Condition that a piece of *Island* Ling is counted with us as a fit Dish for a Nobleman's Table.

The People for the most part are of a plain and simple nature, living (as in the Golden Age) on that which Nature gives them, which help of Art, more than that of making Cheese and Butter (which is very ordinary too:) the Mountains serving them for Towns, and the Rivers for Drink, and their Lodging is all under one roof with their Horses and Oxen. They use neither Physick nor Physicians, yet live so long (and probably the longer for it) that many of them attain to the Age of 150 years and more. The Women are exceeding fair, but they know not how to attire themselves; nor is there any difference in Apparel betwixt the Sexes, so that it is not easie to know one from another. Few of them but have some familiar Spirit to do them service: and notwithstanding the endeavour of the Ministers to purge them from this Impiety, yet it is so grafted in them that they cannot leave it.

It is observable, that notwithstanding the cold condition of this Island, yet in many places it is full of Heats and Fire under the ground: which, by the *Antiperistasis* of the cold Air stopping the Pores of the Earth, and taking from it the liberty of Evaporation, doth burn more vehemently: insomuch that there are three high Mountains whole tops are always covered with Snow, and yet continually burning. The names of them are *Hecla*, *Helga*, and *La-Croix*, but the first the principal, by some called *Heclafort*; which sometimes casts out Fire, sometimes flaming Water, then black Ashes and Pumice-stones, in so great abundance that it darkneth the Sun, and makes the Country for six Miles round about it to be uninhabited. Stranger things are not spoken of

Atina

Aetna than of these three Mountains: and here the Superstitious People have the same opinion which they have in *Sicily*, viz. That underneath must needs be Hell, and the Habitations of the Damned. But to judicious Men the natural Reason of these Flames is plain and obvious; occasion'd by those veins of Brimstone (great quantity whereof they send into Foreign Parts) on which the Foundation of the Hills is laid: here being many Baths and Fountains of hot Water, which have Sulphur swimming at the top.

At the first planting of this Island, about the year 860 or 874, the People did not trouble themselves with building of Towns, but every one feated himself where he thought convenient, dwelling in Cells and Caverns digged in the bottom of the Rock. By means whereof the Inland parts have not many Houses: but the Sea-coasts, since the coming of so many Strangers to them, begin to be built in many places, the Buildings for the most part being of Timber, roofed with Flags with an Hole on the sides of the Roof to let in their Light. So that we are not to expect many fine Towns or Cities: the principal of them which are, being, 1. *Halar*, in the North, and 2. *Schalholt*, in the Southern part; both Bishops Sees, having petty Schools, consisting of 24 Scholars apiece, to whom the *Latin* Tongue is taught at the charge of the Bishops. 3. *Fæffenfordt*, an Haven Town, where under Tents the *Dutch* Merchants barter their Commodities. And 4. *Besfede*, a Castle, the ordinary Residence of the Governor for the Kings of *Denmark*.

It hath been generally conceived that this Island is that *Thule* which the Poets so often speak of: as *Tibi serviat ultima Thule*, in *Virgil*; *Nec sit terris ultima Thule*, in *Seneca* the Tragedian. Nor did there want some reason to perswade them to this opinion; this being indeed the farthest part of the old known World. But greater reasons are against it. For when *Solinus* saith *Multa sunt circa Britanniam Insulae, e quibus Thule ultima*; I hope *Thule* must be one of the *British* Isles. And when *Tacitus* saith of *Agricola*, *Insulas quas Orcadas vocant dominit, despecta est & Thule*; I am sure that *Island* is so far from being kenned by any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at least eight Degrees distant. So that *Thule* must be sought for in another place, and where that is, hath been shew'd already. As for *Island*, it was so far from being known unto the Ancients, that it was hardly known unto those of *Norway* till the year 874, when some of the *Norwegians* were driven out of their Country by *Harald* the first, who first suppressed the many Petty Kings of the *Norwegians*, made many of them seek new Dwellings; of which some few arrived here; where finding room enough to plant in, and no great loss (if any) by change of their Dwelling, they invited many of their Friends and Country-men to come unto them, Anno 1070, they were converted to the Gospel by some Preachers sent hither from *Adelbert* the Archbishop of *Breme*. By whole perswasion and procurement they founded two Episcopal Sees; adding thereto in tract of time eight Religious Houses: that is to say, the Monasteries of *Pingore*, *Remessede*, *Atodur*, and *Monkeniere*, under the Government and Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Halar*; and those of *Videy*, *Pernebar*, *Kirkebar*, and *Skiade*, under the Bishop of *Schalholt*. In the year 1260, it was first brought under the Crown of *Norway*, following since the Fortunes of it in all Changes both of Church and State; made subject with it to the Kings of *Denmark*, together with it reformed in matters of Religion according to the Confession at *Augsburg*, retaining still their Bishops, with a limited power, and turning the Revenues of their Monasteries unto other uses, as there they did, according to the will and pleasure of their Lords of *Denmark*.

2. South-west of *Island* lies another, and as cold an Isle, commonly called by the name of *FREESLAND*, from the continual Frosts unto which it is subject. By the *Latins* it is called *Frizlandia*, to distinguish it from *Frissa*, or *Friesland* in *Germany*. It is situate under the

North Frigid Zone; but not so much within the *Arctic* as *Island* is; the longest day here in the height of Summer not exceeding 20 hours: and yet the Soil is so cold and barren, that it beareth neither Corn nor Fruit, the Inhabitants living most on Fish; which is their only Food, so is it also their chief Commodity, wherewith to entertain or move the Merchant. And heretofore there is such abundance caught upon their Coasts, that they are never without the Company of *Hollanders*, *Danes* and *English*; by which last it hath been so frequented in these later times, that it hath been called by some the *Western England*. For quantity it is somewhat bigger than *Island*; but by reason of the bitter Air, and the Defects above-mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Freestad*, by the name of the Island; situate on the Eastern Shore of it. Besides which, there are some others set down in the Maps; as, 2. *Sanctor*, 3. *Adfort*, 4. *Serud*; but not much observable. Westward whereof, as *Zeyglorn* (and out of him *Magnus*) telleth us, is a little Island called *Idria*, giving the name of *Mare Idrium* to the Sea adjoining: so called (by his mistake or translation of the Fable) from *Idria* the Son of *Dadalus*, a King of *Scotland*, who did once (but no body knows when) Lord it over these Islands. It is much disputed of late whether there be any such Island in the World, and by some positively denied.

III. *GROENLAND*, so called, as some say, from the Greenness of it in the Summer; as others say, by *Antiphrasis*, because never green, by reason of the sharpness of Winter. But the former Etymology is more agreeable to the state of the Country. For though it be continually cover'd with Snow, except in *June*, *July*, and *August* (inasmuch that though the People be always clad with Furs and Skins, yet they feel no heat) yet in those Months it is exceeding fresh and green, and affords good Pasturage. It is situate for the greatest part within the *Arctic*, between the 65 and 77 Degrees of Northern Latitude: so that the longest day in the Southern Part is 21 hours and a half; and in the most Northern they have no night for three months and two weeks. The known length of it is affirm'd to be 600 miles, and may be much longer than so for ought that any body knows: there being no perfect discovery made of it hitherto, tho' much frequented by the *English* and *Hollanders* (two great Seafaring Nations) for the benefit of the Whale-fishing, much there in use. Their chief Commodities are Fish, white Bears, wild Deer, and some store of Cattel there bred upon their Pastures, but housed for the most part all the Winter. The greatest part of the People dwell in the Caves, and delight in Necromancy, to which they are more wilfully addicted than those in *Island*, because less acquainted with the Gospel.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Saint Thomas*, (in which there is a Monastery of *Dominican* Friars) seated in the North-East part of the Island; concerning which *Mercator* speaks of one thing which is very observable, relating, that it is not far from a flaming or burning Mountain, seated upon hot scalding Springs, conveyed by Pipes of stone into the Monastery, and serving both as a Stove to warm them, and for a Fire to boil their Victuals. The Walls of the Monastery are built of Pumice-stones cast out of that Mountain; which, being temper'd with the Water of those burning Springs, doth make a glutinous substance, serving instead of Lime, and as long durable. The Gardens of the Convent, in regard of this heat, flourish all the year with Herbs and sweet smelling Flowers; and the adjoining Sea, for the same reason being never frozen, affords good plenty of Fish and Fowl the whole year about, not only for the Monks, but the neighbouring Islanders. So far and to this purpose he. The second Town of note is *Iiva*, not far from this Monastery: and 3. *Atundorpe*, on the South-East-point. Others, as in a Country not well discovered, we have little notice of: though it be near 300 years since *Nicolas Zeni*, a *Venetian*, call by Tempest on the Coast of *Freeland*,

land, and by the King thereof imploy'd upon new Discoveries, Anno 1380, first made it known to us of Europe; it being immediately on that discovery possessed by the Norwegians, and made a Member and Portion of that Crown.

As for the Norwegians themselves, now their Fellow-subjects, they were first known in the time of Ptolomy by the name *Chedini*, possessing then the Western parts of *Scandia*. Uniting with their Neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swithlanders*, they became better known in the flourishing Times of the French Empire by the name of *Normans*; first called so by *Eginhartus* in his History of the Life of *Charles* the Great, infesting then the Sea-coasts of *France* and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell so heavily on the *French*, especially in the times of *Charles* the Simple, that they extorted from him that goodly Country, since of them called *Normandy*, conferred on *Rollo*, first Duke thereof, Anno 912, whose Successors much encreased their glory by the Conquest of *England*, as some private Adventurers of them did by the Conquest of the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards settling on their own bottom, every one of these Northern Nations acting by it self, they were called *Norwegians*, sometimes, as formerly, commanding over all three Kingdoms, subjects successively to each; but most an end governed by their own Kings, till their final Subjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting solely and by it self, they subdued *Ireland* under the conduct of *Tingefius*, who tyrannized there for a time; as also all the *Orcades* and the Isle of *Man*, sold or surrendered by them upon good conditions to the *English* and *Scots*, who by those Titles still possess them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all those of the darker times (parallel to our *Brute* and the first *Scottish Fergus*) as meerly fabulous, we will begin with King *Subidagerus*, who was King of all the three Kingdoms, and at his death divided them again amongst his three Sons; whose Successors *Munster* thus reckoneth.

The Kings of NORWAY.

1. *Subidagerus*.
2. *Haddingus*.
3. *Hetharius*.
4. *Collerus*.
5. *Frogerus*.
6. *Gotarus*.
7. *Rotherus*.
8. *Helga*.
9. *Hajmum*.
10. *Reginaldus*.
11. *Gummarus*.
12. *Osmundus*.
13. *Olaus*.
14. *Osmundus* II. not long after whose time, Anno scil. 800, the *Normans* began their Irruptions.
15. *Aquinus*.
16. *Heraldus*.
17. *Olaus* II.
18. *Sueno*, King of *Denmark* by Birth, and of *Norway* by Conquest.
19. *Olaus* III. Son of *Swain* or *Sueno*, succeeded in the Realms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, *Canutus* his younger Brother being King of *England*. In this King's time the *Norwegians* first received the Gospel.
20. *Canutus*, King of *England*, succeeded his Brother *Olaus* in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, to which he also added the Crown of *Sweden*.
21. *Sueno* II. by whom the Kingdom was restor'd to the *Norwegians*.
22. *Canutus* II.
23. *Magnus*.
24. *Harald* II.

25. *Magnus* II. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*.
1326. 26. *Magnus* III. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, intending the Crown of *Sweden* for *Ericus* his eldest Son, conferred that of *Norway* on *Hagquin*, or *Aquinus*, his second Son.
- 1359 27. *Aquinus*, King of *Norway*, younger Son of *Magnus* the third, married with *Margaret*, eldest Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, King of *Denmark*; so uniting the Kingdom. And though *Olaus*, the only Son of his Bed, died young without any Issue; yet the *Danes*, having once got footing in *Norway*, so assured themselves of it, that they have ever since possessed it as a subject Kingdom, keeping the Natives so poor and low, that they are not able to assert their former Liberties, and not permitting them to use any Shipping; so much as for transporting their own Commodities, for fear they should grow wealthy and strong at Sea. Besides the strong Garrisons maintained in most parts of the Country, kept it in such an absolute Awe, that they dare not stir against the *Danes* if their stomachs served them. So that now *Norway* being made subject to the Crown of *Denmark*, or both made Fellow-subjects to the same King, we must next look upon these Kings as Kings of each distinct and separate from the other, but as they are in Fact and Title

The Kings of DENMARK and NORWAY.

- 1376 1. *Hagrin*, or *Aquinus*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*: of this last by Descent, of the other by Marriage.
- 1380 2. *Olaus*, Son of *Aquinus* and *Margaret*, King of *Norway*, *Denmark*, and *Sweden*, died in the year 1387.
- 1383 3. *Margaret*, Wife of *Aquinus*, Mother of *Olaus*, and Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her Son (in whose time she governed as his Guardian) took upon her the Kingdom in her own Right; not only keeping *Norway* in the State she found it, but adding unto *Denmark* the Crown of *Sweden*, won by the Vanquishment of *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. (In the year 1396 she was elected Queen of *Sweden*.) A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*.
- 1411 4. *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomeran*, and Knight of the Garter, Son of the Lady *Mary*, Dutcheis of *Pomeran*, Daughter of *Ingelburgis*, the Sister of *Margaret*, by whom he was adopted for her Heir, in a Dyet held at *Calmar* in the year 1397, he succeeded after her decease in all the three Kingdoms: outed of all before his death by a strong Faction made against him, and his Estates conferred on
- 1439 5. *Christopher*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, (but in Title only) the Son of *Margaret*, Sister of *Ericus*; chosen by the joint consent of all the States of these Kingdoms. After whose death (without Issue) the *Danes* considering the great Advantage they had gotten by the addition of *Norway*, pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleswick* and Earl of *Holstein*, for the next Successor, that they might get in those Estates to the Kingdom also. Who, excusing himself by reason of his Age and want of Children, commended to them *Christiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, his Kinsman and next Heir, who was chosen accordingly.

- 1448 6. *Christiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, chosen King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, succeeded his said Uncle in the Estates of *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, continuing since united unto that Crown, and added also therunto by Conquest the Kingdom of *Sweden* in the year 1458.
- 1482 7. *John*, Son of *Christiern*, succeeded in all these Kingdoms; Knight of the Order of the Garter.
- 1514 8. *Christiern II.* Son of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, which last he held under with great cruelty; hated, by reason of his Tyranny toward all sorts of People, and outed of his Kingdoms by his Uncle *Frederick*, Anno 1522, by whom at last he was taken and kept in Prison till he died, Anno 1559. He was born in the year 1481. He was Disobedient to his Parents, so that he drew upon himself his Father's Curse. In the year 1519 he refused a Reconciliation with *Frederick* his Cousin, and entered upon the Conquest of *Sweden*, the next year he made the horrible Massacre of *Stockholm*.
- 1523 9. *Frederick*, Brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Christiern* the second, chosen King of *Denmark* and *Norway* on the Abdication of his Nephew, in the Dyet of *Malmöen* in the year 1527. He Reformed Religion in both Kingdoms, according to the Confession of *Augsburg*.
- 1535 10. *Christiern III.* born in the year 1503, suppressed with great trouble the Party formed against him in behalf of *Christiern* the second, perfected the Reformation begun in the time of his Father, and was a great Benefactor to the University of *Copenhagen*.
- 1559 11. *Frederick II.* Son of *Christiern* the third, subdued *Dithmarsch*, before unconquer'd by the *Danes* or Earls of *Holstein*, and added it unto that Dukedom, (both being united to that Crown though held of the Empire) Knight of the Garter.
- 1588 12. *Christiern IV.* Son of *Frederick* the second, Brother of *Anne* Queen of *Great Britain*, and Knight of the Garter; who engaging in a War against the Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2d, for the Liberty of *Germany*, was suddenly beat out of all the *Cimbrick* *Cherfonese* by the prevailing Imperialists, but compounded the Business upon very good Terms, and was restored to all his own.
- 1648 13. *Frederick III.* the youngest Son of *Christiern* the fourth, his eldest Brethren being all dead without Issue, succeeded in the Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*. This Prince in the beginning of his Reign was much endanger'd by one *Plesfeld*, a great, rich, powerful Noble Man, but more after this by a War he began upon *Sweden* (then engaged with *Poland*) by the procurement of the *Dutch*, in the Year 1657; but in the Year 1658, he was forced to purchase his Peace in the Treaty of *Roschild*, sign'd February 26. with the Resignation of *Huland*, *Scania*, *Bleckling*, *Bornholm*, *Rahuis*, and *Drontheim*: yet the next year the War broke out again, and the *Swedes* took *Landskroon*, and in 1659 besieged *Copenhagen*, which yet escaped them: So that in 1660 *Charles Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, dying, a second Peace was concluded; by which he recovered *Drontheim* and *Bornholm*. After which he procured the making this Kingdom Hereditary, which before was Elective.
- 1670 14. *Christiern V.* his Son, born in the year 1645, succeeded him. This Prince, in the year

1675, seiz'd the Duke of *Holstein*, and forc'd him to resign his Dukedom. The next year he invaded *Schleswig*, and took *Hildesburg*, *Landskroon*, *Christiansbad*, and *Glabbe* only with great ease, but fail'd in his Design upon *Haldesburg*, was beaten first at *Landskroon*, and then at the Siege of *Malmogoe* and *Falckenberg*. And at last by the Treaty of *St. Germain* was forced to restore back to the *Swedes*, in 1678, all that he had retaken. And his Attempt upon *Hamburg*, in 1686, had no effect. His eldest Son is *Frederick*, who was born the 11th of October 1671. And his only Brother is *George*, who was born the 21th of April, 1653, and married *Anne*, the second Daughter of *James* the second, King of *Great Britain*, the 7th of August, 1683.

Having thus mustered up the Kings of these several Kingdoms, taken distinctly and conjunct; we must next look upon the way of their coming to the Regal Throne, their Form of Government, together with their Power and Revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their coming to the Regal Throne, the *Danes* pretend their Kingdom to be Elective, and not Hereditary; yet so as they have always set the eldest Son on the Throne of his Father, unless some extraordinary occasion have disposed it otherwise. But they that look upon their Stories in the former times can see no such matter, the Kingdom going generally in the way of Succession, unless by Faction or Usurpation some popular and powerful Pretender hath interloped; as oftentimes hath happen'd in such other Estates as are Hereditary merely, without claim or colour of Election. 'Tis true, that the Male-issue failing in *Olavus* the Son of *Margaret*, and the Princess which pretended by the Females after her decease not being of sufficient power to assert their Titles, the Kingdom was transferred to the House of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground than by that of Election. Which, being an extraordinary case, is to make no Precedent, though seconded by the ousting of King *Christiern* the second, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Estate; these being acts of Violence and Force, and justified only by the false Topick of Success. But who-soever lost by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it; King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon such Conditions as have made him and his Successors little more than a Tyranny. For he was sam to swear at his Coronation, that he would put none of the Nobility to Death or Banishment but by the Judgment of the Senate, that the Great Men should have power of Life and Death over their Tenants or Vassals; that no Appeal should lie from them to the King's Tribunal; nor the King be partaker of the Confiscations, nor, finally, advance any to Commands and Honours but by consent of his great Council. Which Oath being also taken by his Successors, made *Bedinnus* say, *Non tam re ipsa quam appellatione Reges esse*; that they were only Kings in Title, but not Kings indeed. Yet in regard that the Nobility (so they call their Gentry) have but small Estates, none of them above the degree of Knights (except only the Princes of the Blood) and that Decree conferred by the King alone; it is not often found that they have dared to cross or oppose their King, but when some of the Royal Family (out of private ends) have concurred with them in it: as in the case of *Christiern* the 2d, deposed by the People, but those People headed and set on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an Eye upon the Crown. This was altered by *Frederick* the third in the year 1660, when the Crown was again in a Dyet made Hereditary, and these vast Privileges of the Nobility retrench'd. *Ut ab omni Nunc & Arbitrio omnia Penderent*, as *Pufendorf* has it; so that it seems now to be an Absolute Monarchy.

As for the Senate or great Council, spoken of before, it consists wholly of Men chosen out of the Nobility (who are to prove their Gentry by a long Descent) seldom exceeding the number of 28, to each of which there is

allowed a convenient Salary, with some fair Casle in the Country for his Retirements, during his being of that Body: his whole Estate being freed also for that time from all publick Payments. Without their Counsel and Advice the King is neither to determine of Peace or War, or to enter into any new League or Confederacies, nor impose any Tax upon the Subject; and unto them and the King jointly is the last Appeal: such being the Constitution of this Estate, that all Causes and Controversies are first decided in the Prefecture or Heret (184 in number) where they first arise; from whence it is lawful to appeal to the Judge of the Province, from him to the Chancellor of the Kingdom, and finally to the King and Council. By the Laws of *Waldemar* the first, who first reduced the Laws into set form and writing, the Bishops were to sit with his Council in all Causes of moment: but were discharged from that Employment by King *Christiern* the third, by whom it was also ordained, that the Clergy should not sell any of the Church-lands without leave of the King.

The Forces which this King or Kingdom are able to raise may best be seen by some of their particular Undertakings, those specially of *Christiern* the second, who, at the request of *Henry* the second of *France*, sent a Navy of an hundred Sail into *Scotland* against the *English*, and therein no fewer than 10000 Soldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holstein*, who in his War against this *Christiern* (whose removal from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 Men into the Field to make good his Quarrel. And questionless considering the many Ports and Islands that this Crown is Master of, both within the *Baltick* and without, it cannot be but he may suddenly raise a strong power at Sea. And then considering that each of the Nobility, which are here numerous enough, is bound to find a certain number of Horse upon all occasions; as are those also who hold Lands of the King, which the *Danes* call *Verlihnunge*: it will accordingly be concluded, that they are able to make good Levies for a suddain Service, especially in defence of their own Dominions.

The Revenue of this King consisteth principally in the great Impost laid upon all Ships which pass through the *Sound*: the greatness whereof may easily be conjectured at by the multitude of Ships which of necessity must pass by it in the Trade of the *Baltick*; though of late somewhat lessened of what it was, since the *English* found out and frequented the Northern passage into *Muscovia*. There are also some Crown-lands and a great yearly Toll made of the Cattel which pass into *Germany*; as also of the Fish transported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived that the Treasures of this King are not very great: partly because there is no other important Commodity but Fish to draw Merchants thither; and partly, that there is not any one Town of any great Traffick in all his Realms for the entertaining of Commerce.

Since our Author wrote, the Trade of Deal, Timber and Masts is become equal, perhaps greater, than that of the Fish, especially since the Fire of *London* in 1666; the greatest part of that vast City having been built with Timber brought from *Norway* and *Denmark*: besides which, the *Danes* have begun to open a Trade with the *East-Indies*, which will much enrich them in time, if the *Hollanders* do not interrupt it.

The Present State of the Kingdom of Denmark.

THE Account our Learned Author has given of the Kingdom of *Denmark* respects the State it was in when he concluded this Work about the year 1648, since which time it has received so great a Change in all things, as I have above hinted from the Learned *Samuel Puffendorf*; that what he has said will no way comport with it. I shall therefore from a late Book stiled, *An Account of Denmark as it was in 1692*. represent as briefly as I can the Present State of the Government, and by what means it came to be so altered.

There were in all the Ancient times frequent Assemblies of the *Three Estates*, in which all matters relating to good Government were transacted, Laws consider'd, Peace and War, Alliances, disposal of the great Offices, Contracts of Marriages for the Royal Family, &c. were debated. Nay, their Kings (as my Author saith) were formally made to answer before the Representatives of the People for their Miscarriages. But if that could not be done, but he that Reigned seemed too powerful to be legally contended with, then they dispatched him without any more Ceremony the best way they could, and elected presently a better Man in his Room: sometimes the next of Kin to him; sometimes the Valiant Man that had exposed himself so far as to undertake the Expulsion or the Killing of the Tyrant; at other times a private Person of good Reputation who possibly least dreamt of such an Advancement. Thus far my Author, who seems no Enemy to the *King Killing Doctrine*, tho' he has (not without good cause) a great Aversion for that of *Nonresistance*. In these Assemblies the Imposing Taxes according to the Exigencies of Affairs was considered; because there was no standing Crown-Revenue paid by the People; the Rents of certain Lands annexed to the Crown; his Herds of Cattle, Forrests, Services of Tenants, &c. was his Income, so that he lived like one of our Noblemen of his own Estate: And it was his Interest as well as Duty to keep fair with the Nobility and Gentry, and to be careful of the Prosperity of the Commons, who were indeed his Masters, and not his Subjects. Thus things went on till the year 1660, when of a suddain all this goodly Fabrick was pulled down, and the People brought as much under the King, as he and his Ancestors had before been under them. And I think no Man can justly wonder that a Crown thus born down should endeavour a return to its more natural position.

To go on with my Author, after the Conclusion of the Peace between the two Northern Crowns, some considerable care and time was necessary to redress the Disorders occasioned by so terrible a War. The Army was not yet disbanded, nor could for want of Money to discharge its Arrears; and the Burghers and Country People were in a manner ruined by the Miseries attending the War: the Nobility and Gentry, though Masters of the rest, were full of Discontents; and the Clergy not in the Condition they wish'd to be in.

To redress all which, the King called a Meeting of the *Three Estates*, viz. the Nobility, Commonalty and Clergy about the beginning of *October* 1660. After several Days spent in debating the methods of raising the Money that was needful, the Nobility insisting upon a pretended Privilege not to pay any part of it, though the greatest part of what was left remained in their hands, but rather seeking to widen their Advantages over the other two Estates, there follow'd sharp and hot Contests between them. At length one *Otto Craeg*, a principal Senator, told the President of the City, That the other two Estates were no other than Slaves, so their best way was to keep within their bounds, and acquiesce in such measures as ancient Practice had warranted, and which they (the Nobility) were resolved to maintain. This word *Slave* put all the *Burghers* and Clergy in disorder, and *Nanfon* the President of the City and Speaker of the Commons, in great anger rose out of his Seat and swore, That the Commons were no Slaves, nor would they from thenceforth be called so by the Nobility, which they should soon find to their Costs. And rising in disorder they left the Hall, and adjourned to *Brewers-Hall* in the City, the Clergy joining with the Commons: After some time there they agreed to wait upon the King, and to offer him their Votes and Assistance to make him Absolute Monarch of the Realm, and also the Crown should for the future descend by Inheritance to his Family, which hitherto had gone by Election. They knew the King, and had seen him bear with admirable Patience all his Calamities, and valiantly expose his Person for the sake of

of the Publick, and therefore they thought they could never do enough to shew their Gratitude. It was then too late to do this that Night, but all the necessary measures were then taken for the doing it next Morning. The Clergy expected to benefit themselves by this Oblation above the other, and the Event answered their expectation. One *Hanibal Seestede* the Prime Minister of State, *Swaz* the Bishop, *Nanfon* the President of the City of *Copenhagen*, and the Queen, were the principal Managers of this Affair: The King on the contrary either was or seemed to be less engaged in it. The Nobility had very little knowledge in the mean time of the Intentions of the Commons, and having been long used to slight and tyrannize over them, feared no hurt from thence, contemning their Threats as well as their Persons.

By the next morning the Nobility had some general intimations of the Intentions of the Commons and Clergy; but before they could resolve what to do, they understood the Commons were coming towards them, being huzza'd through the Streets by the Mob. The Nobility were perfectly confounded by this brisk attack of the Commons, who told them roundly, If they, the Nobility, would not join with the Commons, they would do it without them. The Nobility now crest fallen, pretended they liked the thing, but not the manner of doing it, and therefore only desired to gain time to avoid this first shock, but to no purpose. The Commons and Clergy thereupon went to the King without the Nobility, and there they tendred to the King what had before been agreed, assuring him their Swords and Purles should make good their Gift against whosoever should oppose it.

The Nobility were in great Distraction, their former Insolencies was now sunk into a base dispirited meanness, and they broke up without coming to any Resolution.

That Afternoon the King ordered the City Gates to be lock'd up, and no Body to be suffered to come in or go out but by his leave; the Nobility took this for a design to Murder them, and in that fear they submitted to all that had been done by the Clergy and Commons. Three days after Scaffolds were erected before the Castle, the Soldiery and Burghers ordered to be in Arms, and on the 27th of *October* in the morning the King, Queen, and Royal Family mounted the same, and the Nobility, Clergy and Commons came before them, and on their Knees swore.

That to the best of their Power they would defend him from all Danger and Harm, and that they would faithfully serve his Majesty, as Men of Honour and Hereditary Subjects ought to do, &c.

This Oath they were forced to pronounce aloud, and no Man sick or well was exempted from it, and yet not one Man durst oppose it. Thus in four days time this Kingdom became Absolute and Hereditary.

The Clergy, saith my Author, always make sure Bargains, and were the only gainers by this Change; and are still much encouraged by the Court, as the Instruments that first promoted, and now keep the People in a due temper of Slavery, the *Passive Obedience Principle* riding triumphant in this unhappy Kingdom.

Now doubtless this wise Court has not either so little sense as to allow such Men as my Author to inspire the People with a conceit that it is both their Interest and Duty to rise in Arms against their Prince, and to make him away as well as they can; nor is any *Brutus Junior* to be openly wheedled into a conceit, that no Glory is equal to that of murdering a Prince that takes a little too much upon him. But then, after all, 'tis not upon this *Passive Obedience Principle* that the King relies for his safety; for he very well knew that one *Raviliack*, that is not of this Opinion, may murder a Prince as well and much sooner than a Thousand. He very well saw the Reluctance of the Nobility, and knew the Incon-

stancy of the Commons, and to prevent all Dangers from either, has ever since kept his Army on Foot to the number of 32000 Men Horse and Foot; by these he assures his Royal Power, forceth his Subjects to pay what Taxes he thinks fit, and to submit to his Orders as well as if they had the consent of the Three Estates. To this, and not to any Principle whatsoever; doth that Prince own his Security.

But there is a Generation of Men who think nothing makes them look so great as a Declamation against that ancient piece of Christianity, which teacheth Subjects not to rebel against their Princes, but this is only for the sake of the hatred they bear to all Monarchies: For it is to be noted, all the Cry is, it is lawful and needful to resist the King. This is the Peoples last resort against Tyrants and ill Princes, but still against Kings, against Princes, Monarchs, Tyrants, all single Governments. But if it be so, then sure it is as lawful for the People of *Venice*, *Holland*, *Switzerland*, to resist and depose their Masters, as it is for the Subjects of any Prince to do it by their Master, yet I fear it is not so safe to Preach and Print this Doctrine there as it is here in *England*.

If Princes are content to be made low and mean in the Eyes of their Subjects, to be exposed to the Contempt of every Pamphleteer, and to have their Subjects every day told how much it is their Duty to cut off Tyrants and Arbitrary Princes, let no Man be concerned for them; but even leave them to the Destiny they either seem to court or despise. But when all is done, the Saviour of the World in due time will convince these Scribes that his Doctrines are not to be fooled with, though Princes may; and he is well able to assert his own Ordinance when he thinks fit, if they are not.

This Mutation changed the whole face of the Government in *Denmark*, the King levying Taxes, making and repealing Laws at his own Will and Pleasure: And these Nobles and Gentry, who lost the Liberty of their Country, by not complying with their Clergy and Commons in the most reasonable thing that ever was asked, to preserve to themselves an unreasonable exemption from the publick Burthens of the State, at a time when the other two Estates were not able to bear the Burthen without them, have since been tax'd to that height, that they have courted the King to take great part of their Estates into his own Hands, and begged to be freed from the Tax by the loss of the whole; and sometimes have not been able to obtain the favour of such a Discharge. So dangerous it is for any of the States of any Country, to endeavour to Oppress their Fellow-Subjects, to which, and not to the *Doctrine of Nonresistance* or *Passive Obedience*, was owing the loss of the Liberty of *Denmark*.

The chief Order of Knighthood in it is that of the *Elephant*; Instituted by *Frederick* the second. Their Badge, a Collar powdered with Elephants troyed, supporting the King's Arms, and having at the end the Picture of the Virgin *Mary*.

The Arms hereof are Quarterly, 1. Or, three Lions passant Vert, crowned of the first, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; and secondly, Gules, a Lion Rampant Or, crowned and armed of the first, in his Paws a Dansk Hatchet Argent, for the Kingdom of *Norway*. What Arms belong to him as Duke of *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, I am yet to seek.

There are in *Denmark*
Archbishops 2. Bishops 13.

Universities 2. Viz.
Copenhagen. *Sora.*

And so much for the Kingdom of *DENMARK*.

O F SWETHLAND.

SWETHLAND is bounded on the East with *Muscovie*, on the West with the *Dofrine* Hills, which divide it from *Normay*; on the North with the great Frozen Ocean, spoken of before; on the South with *Denmark*, *Liefland*, and the *Baltick* Sea, (the late Conquests made on the Continent, have taken in all the Provinces formerly belonging to *Denmark*, so that *Sweden* is now wholly bounded to the South by the *Baltick* Sea) So called from the *Sueci*, *Sue-thans*, or *Suethidi*, and the word *Land*, added for a termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length, from *Stockholm* unto the borders of *Lapland*, above 1000 *Italian* miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Bodner* Sea, to the Borders of *Denmark*, about 20 good days journey on horseback: infomuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it, on this side of *Lapland* and the Gulf or Bay of *Bodner*, account it little less than all *Italy* and *France* together; but taking in *Lapland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the Gulf, bigger than both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The situation of it in regard of the Heavenly bodies is the same with *Normay*, under the same Parallels and Degrees; but of so different a temper, both for Soil and Air, as if disposed of under several and long distant Climes. For the Air here is very pure, but not so sharp and insupportable as it is in *Normay*: though in some places, where the Moors and Waters settle, for want of care to open and cleanse the Water courses, they have great Fogs and Mists, which do somewhat putrifie it. And for the Soil, it is more fertile than any of the other Northern Provinces: so that besides those Necessaries which they keep for themselves, they usually transport into other Countries store of Malt and Barley; together with great quantities of Brass, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the Hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and costly Furs. They have also some Mines of Silver, not mixt with any other Metal; plenty of Fish in their Lakes and Rivers; abundance of Pine-trees, Furr, Oaks, both for Ships and Houses; yielding besides, among the Woods, good store of Tar and Honey, and some other Necessaries. But hereof we shall speak more punctually in the several Provinces.

The principal Mountains of this Country are the *Dofrine* Hills, a vast and continual Ridge of Mountains which divide it from *Normay*. And though they want not Rivers fit for common uses, yet partly by reason of their great Frosts and flakes of Ice, partly by reason of the falling of Trees which lye cros their Channels, they have not many navigable, or any of great fame. The principal of such as be, are 1. *Meler*, at the mouth whereof stands the City of *Stockholm*, 2. *Lusen*, 3. *Dalacarlle*, giving name to the Province so called, or denominated from it. And of the Lakes, whereof here are exceeding many, that of most note is the Lake of *Weret*, which, receiving into it 24 Rivers, disburtheneth it self at one mouth into the *Baltick*, with such noise and fury, that they call it commonly the *Devil's head*.

The people are naturally strong and active, provident, patient and industrious; hospitable towards Strangers, whom they entertain with great Humanity; so healthy, that, if they do not shorten their days by Excess and Riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age, and so laborious, that a Beggar is not seen amongst them. Of no great note for Arts or Arms in the times foregoing: not much addicted to the one; and so kept under by the

Danes, that they could not grow eminent in the other: but much improved in both respects in these latter days: *Ericus*, the first King of the present Race, who cleared his Country of the *Danes*, and *Gustavus Adolphus*, the last King, who freed the *Germans* from the Yoke of the House of *Austria*, not being easily to be matched in the Arts of War. And since they began to give themselves to the sweets of Learning, this Country hath produced (amongst some other Learned Men) *Olaus Magnus*, Archbishop of *Upsal*, of great note for his History of the *Goths* and *Vandals*, the First-fruits of this Nation in the liberal Sciences. And it is probable by reason of their late Commerce with the *German* Nations, they will give better testimony to the World hereafter of their proficiency in this kind, as being generally exceeding apt to learn the Art Mechanical, every man in a manner being his own Artificer, without employing Smith, Mason, Carpenter, or any other manual Trades. Very Valiant they are both on foot and horseback, which their long Wars against the *Danes*, and their late Wars in *Germany*, have given good proof of. Their Women are discreet and modest, free from that intemperance which these Northern parts are subject to. Both Sexes use a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northern Kingdoms; except in *Finland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the *Bodner* Sea, where they partake somewhat of the *Muscovite* or *Russian* Language.

The Christian Religion was first planted amongst them by the care and diligence of *Ansgarius* Archbishop of *Breme*, the Apostle-general of the North. Corrupt with Popish Superstitions, it was reformed, according to the *Augustine* Confession, in the time of *Gustavus Ericus*, the first of that present Royal Family, solicited thereunto by one *Peter Nevicin* a *Lutheran* Divine, and *Laurence*, the Archdeacon of *Strengnes*; but chiefly moved (as others say) by a desire to appropriate to himself the Goods of the Church. And this appears to have had some strong influence upon him in it, in that he presently seized upon what he pleased; and made a Law that Bishops should enjoy no more than the King thought fit: yet having pretty well lessened their Revenues, he was content they should remain as formerly both in power and number; reserving to himself and his Successors the Nomination of the persons; but so as the Approbation of the Clergy (in a kind of Election) doth usually go along with the King's appointment.

Christianity was not received in *Sweden* till about the beginning of the 9th Century, and not in *Finland* till 300 years after. It was first established by one *Sigfrid* an *English* man, who is said to have been Archbishop of *York*, and was Martyred by the *Pagan Goths*. The Reformation was established here upon *Luther's* Moddle, and never but once disturbed from abroad, and since that never distracted at home with any Nonconformity, all orders of men agreeing in a constant attendance on Divine Service, and a Zeal for their own way, without any nice enquiries into disputable points. The Clergy rather employing their pains, to perswade men to Piety, than to oppose the Doctrine of others, or defend their own. The Revenues of the Archbishop of *Upsal*, exceed not 400 *l.* the year, and the rest of the Bishopricks are proportionable, which ariseth from their *Glebes*, and one third of Tythes, the other 2 parts being annexed to the Crown for Pious uses. Their Clergy are generally the Sons of Peasants, and not of the Nobility or Gentry, which enables them the better to subsist on their

their small Revenues, and maintain good Hospitality besides, for which they are much Reverenced by the common people.

The Bishops are in number seven: that is to say, 1. Of *Lincopen*, containing in his Diocels 226 Parishes. 2. Of *Nexime*, under whom are 210. 3. Of *Scara*, ruling over the same number of Churches. 4. Of *Strengnes*, under whom are a hundred only. 5. Of *Abo*, the greatest for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 Parishes. 6. Of *Wyborg*, and 7. of *Habsay*; whose Dioceses for the most part lie out of the bounds of *Smeden*, in *Muscovic*, *Livonia*, and some other of the out-parts of the Realm of *Poland*: All of them are under the Archbishop of *Upsal*, as their Metropolitan, whose Diocels, extending into *Lapland* and *Finmark*, containeth 171 Parish-Churches. By which account there are in all the Kingdom of *Smedhland* but 1417 Parishes; but many of them a thousand or eight hundred Families: the people being dispersed in Forests and other places, where they have store of Timber to build them Houses, and store of Pasturage for their Cattle; which is the reason why they have not so many great Towns, not so well inhabited, as is usual in far lesser Countries. As for the Authority of these Bishops, they still retain their Voice in Parliament, and with them so many of the inferior Clergy as are from every *Socken* (a certain number of Parishes, like our *Rural Deanries*) deputed to appear there in the name of the Church: the Affairs whereof the Bishops do direct and order, as well in as out of publick Meetings, according to the Ecclesiastical Constitutions formerly established; and if any great occasion be, they may either advise with their Consistorials, or call a Diocesan Synod, (as they think most fit) and therein make such Laws and Canons as they conceive to be most proper for their own Edification.

The whole Kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the East, the other on the West-side of the Bay or Gulf of *Bodner*, called *Sinus Bodicus* in *Latine*, being a large and spacious Branch of the *Baltick* Sea, extending from the most Southernly Point of *Gothland*, as far as to *Lapland* on the North. According to which division, we have the Provinces of 1. *Gothland*, and 2. *Smeden*, lying on the West-side of the Gulf; 3. *Lapland*, shutting it upon the North; 4. *Bodia* or *Bodden*, and 5. *Finland* on the East-side thereof; and 6. the *Swedish* Islands, where it mingleth with the rest of the *Baltick*.

The Dominions of this Crown extend from 56 to 69 degrees of Latitude, and from 32 to 55 in Longitude and consequently are twice greater than the Kingdom of *France*, but the abatements that must be made for several Seas, great Lakes, Rocks, Woods, Heaths and Morasses that cover very much of this Country, will reduce the habitable parts to a very small portion, comparatively to the extent of the whole. The Soil is in some places tolerably fruitful, though seldom above half a Foot deep, and therefore often plowed by a Maid with one Ox, the barren Lands are enriched with the Ashes of the Trees, growing on the places that are burnt, and the Seed being raked among the Ashes, produceth a plentiful Crop without any further Labour. If the inhabitants were industrious, they could not want Corn for their own use, which now is imported from abroad, and is wanted in the poorer Countries. The Cattle are of a very small size, and cannot be mended for want of good Fodder in Winter, and Nourishing Grass in Summer. It hath plenty of wild Beasts, such as Bears, Elkes, Deer, Hares, Wolves, Foxes, Wild-Cats, wild and tame Fowles especially Hawkes. Their Woods and vast Forests over-spreading much of the Country afford a plentiful and cheap Fireing. They consist of Fir, Beech, Birch, Elder and Juniper, and some Oak, and grow so thick, that the Woods are scarce passable. In Summer the fields are clothed with variety of Flowers; *Strawberries*, *Rashberries*, *Currants*, which grow upon every Rock, the heat of the Sun is so great, that it often sets

the Woods on Fire, which sometimes spreads many Leagues and is not stopped, but by great Lakes or Plains, which yet never happeneth in the hottest parts of the Earth. In their Gardens *Apples* are brought to good Perfection in dry years, but *Apricocks*, *Peaches*, and other Wall fruits are almost as rare as *Oranges*, they have *Cherries* of many sorts, some tolerable good; which cannot be said of their *Apples*, *Pears*, and *Plumbs*, which are scarce and not good, all kinds of *Roots* are plentiful, and contribute much to the Nourishment of the people. The people are well provided of good and warm Cloathing, befitting their condition, and the Climate they live in, because if any neglect or failure happen, it usually proves fatal and occasioneth the loss of some of their Members, and sometimes of their Lives. The Air is healthful, dry and sharp, and disposeth the Natives to a vigorous Constitution; and that again confirmed by an hardy Education, coarse Fare, hard Lodging, &c. qualifies them to endure any uneasy circumstances that befall them, better than those that are born in a more moderate Air, and more indulgently bred up. As to their minds they are seldom endued with any eminent share of Veracity or Pregnancy of Wit; yet by industry, experience and Travel, some of them arrive to a Mature and solid Judgment, being by their Genius led to serious things, in which they become excellent, and merit the Title of Great and Able Men, but this is applicable to but a few, because it requires much patience, Study and Industry to attain it. The dispositions aforesaid, generally qualifies them more for a Life of Labour, than of Art and Curiosity, hence the most of the Nobility apply themselves to a Military Life, in which they are more famed for courage and enduring hardship, than for Stratagems and Intrigues, and those employed in the Administration of Civil affairs, though very laborious in their business, do not often rise to any great perfection. In point of Learning they are rather Transcribers than Authors. As to Trade, they more easily do the Drudgery of it, than dive into the Mystery either of Commerce or Manufactures. The common Soldiers endure Cold, Hunger, long Marches and hard Labour to admiration; but they learn their Duty slowly, and are better at standing their ground, and obeying their orders, than attacking an Enemy. The Peasants are laborious as far as need compels them, but are not neat in their Works, and very hard to learn new ways that are better and quicker than their old ones. The Clergy are but moderately learned, they affect gravity and long Beards; and are much esteemed for their Hospitality, which together begets a great Authority among the common people, whose heads are not troubled with disputes in Religion, for here and in *Denmark*, there are no Factions in Religion, the common banes of the more Southern Countries. The whole Nation are very Religious in their way, and constant frequenters of the Church, eminently Loyal and well affected to Monarchy, grave even to Formality, Sober, suspicious, apt to Envy each other, as well as Strangers, more inclined to pilfing and frauds than to open Violences, such as breaking into Houses, and Robbing on the High-way, Crimes as rarely committed in this, as in any Country whatsoever.

1. G O T H L A N D.

G O T H L A N D is bounded on the East with the *Bodner* Sea, on the West with the Mountains which divide it from *Norway*, and so much of *Denmark* as lies in the same Continent with it, on the North with *Sweden*, on the South with the Sea *Baltick*. So called either from the *Goths*, whose original Country it is commonly affirmed to be; or *quasi good Land*, from the goodness and fertility of the Soil, (*Gootlandia*, *que Germanice* Terra bona sonat, as *Ataginus* out of *Atunster* hath it) the Soil being very fruitful of Corn and Cattle, affording plenty of mines, with great store of Fish, and generally a better condi-

conditioned Country than any of the rest of these Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Ostro-goth*, or *East-gothland*; *Wester-Goth* divided from the former by the great Lake of *Werret*, spoken of before; and *South-Gothland*, subdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuisia*, and *Verendia*. Chief Towns in *Ostro-goth* are, 1. *Lincopen*, a Bishops See. 2. *Loduse*, adorned with a very fair Haven. In *Wester-goth*, 3. *Scara*, on the Lake *Werret*, a Bishop's See also. *Elseborg*, on the Western Sea, betwixt *Denmark* and *Norway*; a place of consequence, and flanked with two very strong Castles in the parts adjoining, the one called *Croneberg*, and the other *Goldberg*. 5. *Tragualle*, remarkable for Iron works, occasioned by the Mines adjoining. And finally; in *South-Gothland* there is 6. *Vixime* or *Vexio* another of the Episcopal Sees. 7. *Walburg*, a reasonable fair Town, with a strong Castle. 8. *Elholm*, in that part hereof which is called *Verendia*, near the Confines of *Denmark*, 9. *Calmar*, a noted and well traded port on the *Baltick* Sea, beautified with a Castle not inferior to that of *Millain*, and so well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Christiern* the fourth of *Denmark*, An. 1611, there were found mounted on the works 108 brass pieces of Ordnance, six men of War to guard the Haven, with all manner of Ammunition in proportion to them. It was restored to the *Swedes* in 1613, by Treaty. 10. *Gottenburg*, (or *Gothorum Burgus*) the chief Town of the *Goths* or *Gothland*, as the name importeth; enjoying a commodious Haven, on the *Baltick* also, and very much frequented for the Trade of *Germany*, to which it serves exceeding fitly; the principal Town of all this Province, and for that cause the ordinary Seat or Residence of the Governour for the King of *Sweden*.

The first Inhabitants of the South parts of *Scandia* are commonly affirmed to have been the *GOTHS*: whom *Jornandes* in his Book *de Rebu Geticis* makes to have issued out of this Country, and to plant themselves on the North Banks of the *Isther* near the *Euxine* Sea, sometime before the *Trojan* War, ascribing to them whatsoever is reported in old Writers of the ancient *Scythians*, as their Encounter with *Vexoris* or *Sesostris* the King of *Egypt*, the Acts and Achievements of the *Amazons*, their Congress with *Alexander* the Great in his *Persian* War, and the like to these. In which *Jornandes*, being himself a *Goth* is no more to be credited than *Geofrey* of *Monmouth* a *Welsh*-man, in the Story of *Brute* and his Successors, to whom he doth ascribe the taking and sacking of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to be the Brother of *Belinus* a King of *Britain*. Most probable it is, that they were originally a *Dutch* or *German* people part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothones*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the Land of *Prussia*; who finding their own Country too narrow for them, might pass over the *Baltick* into the next adjoining Regions; and not well liking that cold Climate, might afterwards in some good numbers go to seek new Dwellings, and at last seat themselves on the Banks of the *Isther*, where *Jornandes* found them. That they were *Dutch* originally, besides the general name of the *Gothones* or *Goths*, and those of *Ostro-goths* and *Wisi-goths*, into which they were afterwards divided; the particular names of *Alarick*, *Theodorick*, *Riccard*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) seem to me to evidence. That they were once seated in this Country doth appear as plainly, 1. by the name of *Gothland* here still remaining; 2. by the Title of *Rex Gothorum*, which the Kings of *Swethland* keep in the Royal Style; 3. by some Inscriptions in ancient unknown Characters engraven on the Rocks near *Scara* in the Continent, and in *Wisby* in the Isle of *Gothland*, supposed by learned men to be some monument of that People. And finally, that their first Dwelling, when first known by this name amongst the *Romans*, was on the North-side of the *Isther*, is evident by the testimony of all ancient Writers, from the time of *Antonius Caracalla*, with whom they had some tumultu-

ary Skirmishes in his way towards *Persia*, till their violent Irruption into *Italy* and the Western Provinces: most famous in this Interval for a great Fight with *Decius* the *Roman* Emperor, whom they overcame and slew in a Battle, Anno 253. In the time of *Valens* and *Valentinian*, the *Roman* Emperors, a Quarrel being grown amongst them, managed by *Phritigernes* and *Athanaricus*, the Leaders of the opposite Factions; *Phritigernes*, overthrown in fight, had recourse to *Valens*, from whom he received such Succours, that giving his Adversary another day for it, he obtained the Victory. Whereupon *Phritigernes* and his party received the Gospel, but intermixt and corrupt with the Leven of *Arianism*, by the practice of *Valens*, who sent them none but *Arian* Teachers, to whom and their Factions in the Church he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Ister* by the barbarous *Huns*, they obtained of *Valens* the out parts of *Thrace* for an Habitation, on condition they should serve under the pay of the Emperor, and become Christians: the cause that *Arianism* over-spread the whole Nation generally, which had before infected but one part only. *Ulphilas*, a devout and learned man, was their first Bishop; who, for their better Edification in the way of Godliness, invented a new *Gothick* Character, and translated the Scriptures into that Language: in the study whereof they so well profited, that many of them in the time of their first Conversion suffered death for it at the hands of *Athanaricus*, and were counted Martyrs. Burthened by *Valens*, and denied their accustomed Pay, they harass and depopulate the rest of *Thrace*, marching towards *Constantinople*; encountred in the way by *Valens*, whom they overcame and killed, after all his Favours. Vanquished by *Theodosius* the succeeding Emperor in many Battles, they became good neighbours, enlarging their Bounds with his leave and licence as far as *Pannonia*, and grown into such estimation with him, that *Ricimer* and *Franita*, two of that Nation, did obtain the Consulship: not to say any thing of that exorbitant power and favour which *Gainas* had attained unto in the Court itself. Made insolent by so great Honours, and apt to pick Quarrels with their Patrons, they invaded *Italy* in two great Bodies, consisting of no fewer than 200000 fighting men. The first whereof, under the Conduct of *Rhadagisus*, was discomfited and cut in pieces by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Western Emperor, at *Fesula* in the Streights of the *Appennine*. The other, by his Treachery permitted to pass, sacked *Rome*, and subdued the most part of *Italy*, under the leading of *Alaricus*. He dying immediately after this great Victory, let the fruits of it to his Son *Athaulfus*; who marrying with *Galla Placidia* the Emperors Sister, relinquished *Italy*, and had all *Gallia Narbonensis*, and a great part of *Hispania Tarraconensis*, assigned unto him, where he erected the Kingdom of the *Wisi-Goths* or *Western-Goths*, possessed of *Spain* and *Tingitana* for the space of 300 years and upward, when they lost that Kingdom to the *Moor*s, as hath there been said. In the mean time the *Goths* which were left in their own Countries, distinguished from these by the name of *Ooster-Goths*, by reason of their more Eastern situation, kept themselves in quiet: being first subdued by the *Huns*, and when by *Wilamir* freed from that subjection, not intermeddling or attempting any thing against the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperor of *Constantinople* into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, who had then subdued it. Which action they managed with so much prudence and good fortune by their King *Theodorick*, that they vanquished *Odoacer*, possessed *Italy*, and held it above Sixty years; when, broken in many set Battles by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, Lieutenants for the Emperor *Justinian*, their Kingdom and Name there came unto an end.

As for the Kings of the *Goths*, we have a succession of them in *Jornandes* from *Berig*, who first conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the East, till the going of *Theodorick* into *Italy*; but made up with so little probability, that

that I dare give no more credit to it than the Stories of *Brute, Dan, Fergus*, or the Lady *Scota*, *Pharaoh's* daughter. Such of whom there is any certain knowledge and succession are these few that follow.

The Kings of the GOTHs.

- 344 1. *Athalaricus*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Constantius* and *Constans*, the Sons of *Constantine* the Great.
- 357 2. *Alaricus*, the first of that name, in the time of *Constantius*.
3. *Phritigernes*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Valens*, the first Christian Prince among that People.
- 370 4. *Athalaricus* II. in the time of the Emperors *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian* the second; under whom the *Goths* were first settled on this side of the *Ister*.
- 379 5. *Rhadaguisus*, who in the time of *Honorius* first led the *Goths* into *Italy*; slain at the Battle of *Fesula*.
- 410 6. *Alaricus* II. who, pursuing the War of *Italy*, sacked *Rome*, subdued *Naples*, and the most of *Italy*.
- 412 7. *Athaulfus*, the Son of *Alarick* the second, who first erected the Kingdom of the *Wist-goths* in *Gaul* and *Spain*, continuing there for the space of 300 years and upwards; the present Kings of *Spain* coming from this Stock.
- 417 8. *Athalaricus*, King of the *Goths* remaining in the East at the departure of *Rhadaguisus* and *Alaricus*, distinguished from their Plantations by the name of *Ostro-goths*: vanquished by *Attila*, they became Subjects to the *Huns* in the time of *Theodosius* the second and *Valentinian* the third, Emperors of the East and West.
9. *Wilamir*, one of the Blood-Royal of the *Goths*, Vassal to *Attila*, at the first, whom he assisted, or served rather, in the great Battle near *Tholouse* against the *Romans*: but taking advantage of some Quarrels amongst the Sons of *Attila*, shook off that Yoke, and recovered the Kingdom of the *Goths*, in the time of the Emperor *Marcianus*.
10. *Theodimir*, Son of *Winithar*, and Brother of *Wilamir*, in the time of *Leo* Emperor of *Constantinople*.
11. *Theodorick*, Son of *Theodimir*, kept at *Constantinople* in his youth as a Pledge or Hostage for his Father, where he was instructed in all the *Greek* and *Roman* Learning, and made the adopted Son (as is said by *Scaliger*) of the Emperor *Zeno*, by whom he was sent into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, and erected there the Kingdom of the *Ostro-goths*: which continued till the Reign of *Justinian*, when it was destroyed by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, as before is said: the name of *Goths* in *Italy* being thus extinct, but their Blood intermixt with the best *Italian*. The sum of their whole Story, for varieties sake, take thus out of *Du Bartas*.

The warlike *Goth*, which whilom issued forth
From the cold frozen Islands of the North,
Incamp'd by *Vistula*: but the Air almost
Being there as cold as in the *Baltick* Coast,
He with victorious Arms *Scalonia* gains,
The *Transylvanian* and *Polonian* Plains;
Then flies to *Thracia*, and then leaving *Greeks*,
Greedy of Spoil, four times he bravely seeks
To pluck from *Rome* (then *Marcus* his Minion)
The Plumes, which she from all the World hath won,
Guided by *Rhadaguisus* and *Alarick*,
Bold *Vindimarus* and *Theodorick*,

Thence flies to *France*; from whence expulst, his
Rest ever since upon the *Spanish* Regions. (Legions)

The Arms of these Kings are said to have been *Or*, three Ravens with displayed wings *Purple*, membred *Gules*. And let this suffice for the Original, Successes, and final Period of the *Goths*; reserved by me unto this place, because most commonly conceived to be their original Country, at least the place out of which they issued, when they first moved towards the East to seek new Dwellings.

2. S W E D E N.

SWEDEN is bounded on the East with the *Bodner* Sea, on the West with the *Dofrine* Hills, which part it from *Normay* on the North with *Lapland*, on the South with *Gothland*. So called from the *Suethans*, or *Suethidi*, the old Inhabitants hereof; of whom more anon. A Country sufficiently fruitful, but for the goodness of the Soil inferior to *Gothland*; and not so well planted or inhabited as that is, by reason of the vast Woods which they will not suffer to be destroyed, and the greatness of some Marshes hitherto undrained: But might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would; as appeareth by that plenty of Corn growing amongst the Woods, though much hindered by their shade and thickness both from Sun and Rain. But for the Character of this Country, we had it formerly, when we spake of *Swethland*, in the general; relating specially to this as the principal part.

And, as the largest and principal part of this great Body, it contains in it many Provinces and Subdivisions: as namely, 1. *Upland*, 2. *Sudermannia*, 3. *Nericia*, 4. *Westmannia*, 5. *Deccarlie*, 6. *Vermiand*, 7. *Coperdale*, 8. *Gestrícia*, 9. *Helsingia*, 10. *Middelfar*, 11. *Angermanna*, bordering on *Lapland*, the farthest of these Provinces towards the North. Many of these have no Towns or Cities of any greatness or beauty, the people living thin and scattered, where they have Wood for Building, Pasturage for their Beasts, and elbow-room enough for themselves and their Cattle. Of these the principal are, 1. *Upsal*, an Archbishops See, and an University, situate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*, beautified with a large Cathedral, wherein many of the ancient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City the Country hereabouts is stiled *Archiepiscopus Upsalensis*. 2. *Holm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Russians* *Stecolne*; the Royal Seat of the Kings, a noted and well traded Port, and the chief of the Kingdom; exceeding strong both by Art and Nature, as being situate in the Marshes, like *Venice*, at the mouth of the Lake or River of *Meler*, the passage to it out of the Bay being very narrow, and by consequence easily defended, and yet so deep withal, that the greatest Ships of Burthen may sail up to the City: the Port within the Streight being so safe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 Sail, which usually ride there without any Anchor. The Castle of this City is conceived to be one of the strongest holds in the world; fortified for the more assurance of it with 400 brass pieces, many of which are double Canon. A Person of Quality, who saw this place in the year 1664, saith it is not so big as *Roan* in *France*, the buildings are most of Stone, and the rest of Wood, the former are many of them very magnificent, some part of the Town only is built on Piles, the rest upon an Island, the Kings Palace has nothing very remarkable, but the Civility of the Inhabitants, and the wonder of finding such a Court and City environ'd with Rocks, and uninhabited Island, which yet serve instead of so many Natural Forts to the Town, thus far he. In the year 1518, it was besieged by *Christiern* 2. King of *Denmark*, and taken, but using the Inhabitants Cruelly, he was expell'd in the year 1520, by *Gustavus* the Son

Son of *Errick*, the first of this Race of Kings now Reigning. This City lies in 59 D. 20 M. North Latitude. About three hundred years ago, it was only a bare Island, with 2 or 3 Cottages for Fishers, but upon the building of a Castle there to stop the inroads of the *Ruffs*, and the Translation of the Court thither, it grew by degrees to surpass the other ancient Cities, and it is at present the Metropolis of this Kingdom, and supposed to be as populous as *Bristol*. The Castle here which is covered with Copper, is a place of no strength or beauty, but of great use, being a spacious building, that besides entertaining the Court, furnishes room for most of the great offices, the National Court of Justice, Colleges of War, Chancery, Treasury, Reduction, Liquidation, Commerce and Execution, as also an Armory, Chappel, Library and Archives. Yet it Lodgeth very few of the inferior Officers and Servants of the Court, they together with the Foot Guards being Quartered upon the *Burghers*, and at their charge for Lodging, Fire, and Candle. In this City are 7 large Churches built of Brick, and covered with Copper, besides two more now (in 1692) building, and three or four Wooden Chapels. The Palace of the Nobility, in which is holden the assembly of the States, The Bank and several Magnificent Houses of the Nobles, and the most of the *Burghers* Houses being built with Brick, do altogether make an handsome prospect. An account of *Sweden* written in 1692. This City is in a manner the Staple of all *Sweden* for Iron, Copper, Wire, Pitch, Tar, Masts, and Deales are brought to be exported, as also the greatest part of what comes from abroad is Landed here; the Haven being large enough for a Thousand Sail of Ships, and the Key an English Mile long, to which the greatest Vessel may lay her broad-side to Load or Unload, the Sun at the highest, is above the Horizon of this City, 18 hours and a half, and for some Weeks makes a continual Day. In Winter the days are in the same proportion shorter being but five Hours one half long, which defect is so well supplied by Moon Light, the whiteness of the Snow, and the clearness of the sky, that Travelling is as usual in the Night as in the Day, and the want of the Sun is made good by stoves within Doors, and by warm furs abroad. 3. *Nicopen*, a Sea Town on the same Bay also. These three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. Then there is 4. *Strengnes*, an Episcopal See, and 5. *Telga*, on the Lake of *Meler*, in the Province of *Sudermannia*; the Title and Estate of *Charles*, Father of *Gustaphus Adolphus* late King of *Sweden*, before his getting of the Crown called Duke of *Suderman*. Next, in the Province of *Westmannia*, there are 6. *Arboga*, on the West-side of the said Lake of *Meler*, and 7. *Arrosta*, rich in Silver-mines, out of which are made the best Dollars of *Sweden*; the Mines here being so rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of Silver, the workmen draw a pound weight of Gold. 8. *Helsing*, upon the Bay of *Bodner*, in the Province of *Helsingia*, taking name from hence. 9. *Orebo* or *Ourbo*, a strong piece in *Nericia*: and 10. *Lefinger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the farthest North of *Sweden* distinctly and specially so called.

3. L A P L A N D.

LAPLAND, the most Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the East *Russia*, on the West the Province or Prefecture of *Wardhuys* in the Kingdom of *Normay*, on the North the main Frozen Ocean, and on the South *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, on both sides of the Bay so called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi* or *Lappones*, the Inhabitants of it, as they are from their blockish behaviour; the word *Lappon* signifying the same with *ineptus* or *insulsus* in *Latin*; for such they are, rude, barbarous, and without the knowledge of Arts or Letters, as also without Corn and Houses, or any certain Habitations, (except only in *Finmark*;) feeding for the

most part on Fish and the flesh of wild Beasts, with the Skins whereof they hide their nakedness. Generally they are meer Idolaters, giving Divine honour all the day following to that living Creature, whatsoever it be, which they see at the first setting out in the morning; great Sorcerers, and abhorring the sight of Strangers, whom till of late they used to flee from at their first approach, but within few years past beginning to be more sociable and familiar. In a word, they are the true descendents of the ancient *Finni*; possessed in old times of all that Tract which lieth between the Bay of *Finland* and the Frozen Ocean, whose natural rudeness and barbarity, unmixt with the conditions of more civil people; they do still retain.

It is divided into the Eastern and Western *Lapland*. The former appertaining to the *Knez* or great Duke of *Muscovy*, by which people the Inhabitants are called *Dikiloppi*, or the wild *Lappians*, is subdivided into *Burmia* and *Corelia*; of which, if there be any thing in them worth taking notice of, we shall there speak more. The latter doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, subdivided into two parts also that is to say, 1. *Finmark*, and 2. *Scricfinnia*.

1. *FINMARK*, being that part hereof which lieth next unto *Norway*, is the more populous of the two. The people are for the most part Idolatrous, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and resort of Strangers unto *Wardhuys* and the parts adjoining, somewhat civilized, and in the Borders of both Kingdoms favouring of Religion, possessed of Sheds or sorry Houses, and those Houses reduced to Parishes under the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Upsal*; the chief of which (if there be any chief amongst them) are named, 1. *Sammun*, and 2. *Hiclsö*. Called *Finmark*; as the ancient Bounds and Marches of the *Finni* (of whom more anon) and therefore erroneously by *Maginus* made a part of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

2. *SCRICFINNIA* lieth between *Finmark* and *Russia*. The name is derived from the *Finni*, a great People of *Scandia*, and *Schirken*, a *Dutch* word signifying *leaping*, *sliding*, or *bounding*, for such is their gate. An Etymologie not much improbable, in that the Wooden soled-shoes with sharp bottoms, which they used for their more speedy sliding over the Ice, of which this Country is full, are by the *Germans* (who also use them) called *Scrickshoenen*, or sliding-shoes. The ancient Writers call this people *Scricfinni*.

These are indeed the natural and proper *Laplanders*, and unto these the former Character doth of right belong. Of stature very low, little more than *Pygmies*, but strong and active; well skill'd in Archery, and patient of cold and Labour; much given to hunting of wild Beasts whom they kill with their Bowes, devour the flesh, and cloath themselves with their Skins, which they tye at the top of their Heads, and leave no place open but for the sight; giving thereby occasion unto some to write that they are hairy all over, like Kine or Horses. Such Deer (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkill'd, they make to draw in little Carts, as they shift their Quarters. But having served them for a while, they are killed at last, though perhaps for nothing but their Skins: a certain number of which they pay yearly to the King of *Sweden* in the way of Tribute. Three Companies of these *Laplanders*, so clad and Armed, as aforesaid, came into *Germany* in the year 1630, to serve *Gustavus Adolphus* in those Wars: looked on with admiration by all Spectators.

Towns we must look for none here, where no Houses be: and yet there are some Sheds and Cabbins on the Sea shore, which Mariners having made for their refreshment when they came on Land, have bellowed some names on, and possibly in time may become good Towns, now not worth the naming.

4. BO-

4. BODIA.

BODIA, **BODDEN**, or **BODNER**, is situate on the South of *Sericfinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or Gulf hence named; extending Southwards on the West side of it, till it joins to *Sweden*, and on the East-side, till it meets with the Province of *Finland*. Hence is the division of this country into the *Eastern*, *Northern* and *Western Bodden*, with reference to the Situation of it on the Bay aforesaid. The Country is not very plentiful of Grain or Fruits, but full of great variety of wild Beasts, whose rich Skins yield great profit unto the Inhabitants, and by reason of the commodious situation on all sides of the Bay, is well stored with Fish. Anciently it was part of the possessions of the *Finni*, but how or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, *Bodden* or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whence soever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the Gulf adjoining is called *Sinus Bodicus*, the *Bodner Zee* by the *Dutch* or *Germans*.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Birkara*, in *West-Bodden*, betwixt the Bay and a great navigable Lake. 2. *Toronia*, a well-traded Empory at the very bottom of the Bay, in *North-bodden*. 3. *Helsingelac*, more North than that, towards the Borders of *Lapland*. And 4. *Kerlabi* in *East-Bodden*, on the Bank of the Gulf, conveniently seated for a Town of Trade.

5. FINLAND.

FINLAND hath on the North *Bodia*, on the South the *Baltick Sea* or *Mare Suevicum*, on the East *Sinus Finnicus*, on the West *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Munster* thought to be called *Finland*, *quasi fine land*; *quod pulchrior & amœnior sit Suecia*, because it is more fine and pleasing Country than *Sweden* itself. But indeed it is so called from the *Finni* or *Fenni*, a potent Nation who have here dwelt, whose Character is thus framed by *Tacitus*, *Finnis mira Feritas, fada paupertas, non Arma, non Equi, non Penates, Victui Herbe, Vistini Pelles, Cubili Humus, sola in Sagittis spes*. The *Finni*, saith he, are wonderfully barbarous, miserably poor, without Arms, Horse or Household-goods; Heibts their Food, the ground their Bed, and the Skins of Beasts their best Apparel, armed only with their Arrows, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our present *Finlanders*, especially those of *Sericfinnia* and some parts of *Finnarchia*; who are not so well reclaimed to Civility as the others are: but very different from that which *Jornandes* gives them, who, living within 400 years after *Tacitus*, before they had much (if any) intercourse with foreign Nations, telleth us of them, that they were *Scanzia Cultoribus omnibus mitiores*, more tractable and civil than any of the Inhabitants of *Scandia*, not excepting the *Suehidi* themselves. If so, they did deserve to live in so good a Country, more plentiful and plain than *Sweden*, and neither so Hilly, nor so Moorish.

The principal places in it are, 1. *Abo*, an Archbishops See; situate on the most Southern point of it, shooting into the *Baltick*. 2. *Wyborg*, a Bishop's See also, whose Jurisdiction for the most part is without this Province, on some part of *Russia*, all *Finland* being in the Diocels of the Bishop of *Abo*. A Town conveniently seated at the bottom of the Bay or Gulf of *Finland*, (called *Sinus Finnicus* in *Latin*) which divides this Country from *Livonia*, well fortified as the chief Bulwark of this Kingdom against the *Muscovite*; and so well garrisoned withal, that the keeping of this Town, and *Rivallia* or *Revel* in the Borders of *Liefland*, do cost the King of *Sweden* 100000 Dollars yearly. 3. *Udden*, on a Point or Promontory of the same Gulf, opposite to *Narva*, another Garrison of this King in *Liefland*. 4. *Verma*, upon the *Bodner Zee*. 5. *Cronaburg*, more within the Land, at the efflux of a River out of the Lake called *Piente*. 6. *Dec-*

kala, on the Banks of the great Lake called *Holida*. 7. *Karta*, more Northwards towards *Lapland*. Of which last four I find not any thing observable in the way of Story.

6. The SWEDISH Islands.

AND now at last I come to the *Swedish Islands*, here and there intersperst in the *Baltick Seas*, betwixt the Isle of *Pornholm*, which belongs to *Denmark*, and *Liefland* or *Livonia*, appertaining to the King of *Poland*. The Principal of which are, 1. *Gothia*, or the Isle of *Gothland*; and 2. *Isule Olande*, or the Isles of *Oeland*.

1. **GOTHIA**, or the Isle of **GOTHLAND**, is situate over against *Calmar*, a strong Town in the Continent of *Gothland*; in length 18 *Dutch miles*, and five in breadth, of a rich Soil, but more fit for Pasturage than Tillage, yielding great Herds of Cattle, more of Game for Hunting, plenty of Fish, excellent Marble, and abundance of Pitch, which it sends forth to other Countries. There are in it 18 large and wealthy Villages, besides the Haven Town of *Wibsy*, heretofore rich and of very great Trading, as much frequented by the Merchant as most in *Europe*; but now much decayed and neither so well peopled nor so rich as formerly. The Trade removed hither from *Wollin* in *Lomerania* (destroyed by *Waldemar* the first of *Denmark*, Anno 1170) made it flourish mightily; the greatest Traffick of the *Baltick* being managed here: but after that by reason of the long and continual Wars betwixt *Denmark* and *Swethland* for the possession of this Isle it became unsafe, the factory was transferred unto other places. For being conveniently seated to annoy the *Suedes*, the *Danes* have much contended for it, and sometimes possessed it; but at the present it is in the hand of the *Swethlander*. By some conceived to be the *Enngia* spoken of by *Pliny*.

2. **OELAND**, or the Isles of *Olandt*, so called in the plural Number, because there are many of them, of which this the principal is situate over against *Abo*, the chief City of *Finland*. Of no great note, but that it is commodiously seated to invade or annoy this Kingdom; and therefore very well fortified and as strongly garrisoned: here being the good Towns of 1. *Viborg*, 2. *Vames*, and 3. the strong Castle of *Castrolm*.

Besides which Countries here described, the King of *Sweden* is possessed of the strong Towns of *Narva*, and *Rivallia* or *Reuel*, and *Pernaw* in *Liefland* of *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm* in *Corelia*, a Province of *Russia*; with very fair and ample Territories appertaining to them: subdued and added to this Crown by *John* the second, An. 1581, except *Rivallia* which voluntarily submitted to *Lithuania* the 2. King of this present Race, An. 1561. But being these Towns and Territories are not within the Bounds of *Swethland*, we shall defer all farther discourse thereof to a place more proper.

The first Inhabitants of this Kingdom, besides the *Goths* and *Finni* spoken of already, were the *Siones* and *Suiones*, mentioned in *Tacitus*; together with the *Phavoniae*, the *Phirasi*, and the *Levoni*, whom we find in *Prologomy*, placed by him in the East and middle of this great Peninsula. Which, being the general names of some mighty Nations are by *Jornandes* branched into lesser Tribes of the *Suehans*, *Theustad*, *Vagoth*, *Bergi*, *Hallin*, *Liothida*, *Atbelnil*, *Gaurigoth*, *Kaumarica*, *Rauracenicii*, *Grannii*, *Aganzia*, *Unixia*, *Arochitami*, *Enagera*, *Othingi*, and divers others by them named, but from what root the name of *Sweden*, *Suedes* or *Swethland*, by which the chief Province of it, the people generally and the whole Kingdom is now called, is not yet agreed on; nor spoken of at all by *Munster* or *Cranzius*, which two (but specially the last) have written purposely of this people. *Gasper Peuterus* deriveth them from the *Suevi*, who anciently inhabited in the North parts of *Germany*, beyond the *Albis*; from whom the *Baltick Sea*, was called *Mare Suevicum*: which people he conceiveth to have been driven by the

Goths and *Daci* into this Country, and by the change of one letter only to be called *Sueci*. But this hath no good ground to stand on, though I meet with many others which are more improbable. For when they left those colder Countries they fell into these parts which are still called *Suevia*, (the *Schwaben* of the modern *Dutch*) where we find them in the time of *Cæsar*. And after, in *fatali illa Gentium commigratione*, when almost all the Northern Nations did shift their Seats, we find such of them as had staid behind to have accompanied the *Vandals* in their Invasions into *Gaul* and *Spain*, of any expedition of theirs cross the *Baltick* Seas, *ne gry quidem*, nothing to be found in more ancient Authors. We must therefore refer the original of this people either to the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*, or perhaps to both; both being anciently settled in these Northern Regions. Of the *Suiones* we read in the Book of *Tacitus* inscribed, *De moribus Germanorum*; by whom they are reported to be strong in Men, Armour and Shipping. And that they were Inhabitants of *Scandia*, appears by two Circumstances in that Author, 1. That the people were not permitted to wear weapons, *quia Subitos Hostium Incursum prohibet Oceanus*, because the Ocean was to them a sufficient Rampart; which could not be affirmed of the ancient *Suevians*, but agreeth very well with the situation of this present Country, defended by the *Baltick* and vast Northern Ocean from the sudden Assaults of any enemy. 2. Because the Sea which hemmed in that people was conceived to be the utmost bounds of the World; *Trans Suiones Mare aliud, quo cingi claudique Terrarum orbis fines*, as his words there are: which we know to hold good of this Country. 3. Add unto these this passage of the old *Annals* of the Emperor *Lewis* the second; where it is told us of the *Danes*, *relicta patria apud Suiones exsulabant*, that they were banished into the Country of the *Suiones*, which cannot so well be understood of any place as of this *Sweden*, being next neighbour unto *Denmark*. And 4. that this people both by *Munster* and *Cranzius*, are as well called *Suiones*, as *Sueci*, or *Suedi*; which sheweth what they conceived of their true Original. Then for the *Suethans* or the *Suethidi*, whom *Jornandes* speaks of in his Book *De rebus Geticis*, they are by him placed in the Isle of *Scandia*, (for such this great *Peninsula* was esteemed to be by most ancient Writers.) Now that these *Suethidi* are no other than the present *Swethlanders* appeareth 1. by the propinquity of the Names. 2. In that he maketh the *Finni* and *Finniathæ* the next neighbours to them. And 3. in that they are affirmed by the same Author to have furnished the *Romans* with rich Furs, and the Skins of wild Beasts with which Commodities this Country is abundantly well stored. Now to which of these two Nations, either the *Suiones* or the *Suethidi* those of *Sweden* are most indebted for their Original, will (I conceive) be no great controversie: the *Suethans* and *Suethidi* of *Jornandes* being no other than a Tribe of the *Suiones*, though the greatest and most powerful of all those Tribes; placed therefore in the Front to command the rest, and so most like to give the name unto the whole,

Their Government was anciently under Kings, affirmed so to be by *Tacitus*, who telleth us also that they were absolute and free, *nullis exceptionibus, non precario jure regnandi*; not bound in Covenant with their people, nor holding their Estates at the will of the Subject. But their Historians have gone for Antiquity hereof beyond the story of *Brute* or the *Trojan* War, (beyond which very few of that strain have dared to pretend) as high as unto *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, reigning here within 90 years after the Flood. But letting pass these Dreams and Dotages of the Monkish times, certain it is that sometimes they were under the *Danes*, sometimes under the *Normegians*, sometimes had distinct Kings of their own; and finally sometimes were comprehended with the *Danes* and *Normegians* under the general name of *Normans*, conducted by one King or Captain upon Foreign Actions. Omitting therefore the Succession of their

former Kings, of whose very being there is cause to make great question; we will begin our Catalogue of them with *Fermanicus*, who entertained *Herald* King of *Denmark* and his Brother *Regensfride*, driven out of that Kingdom of *Gotricus* or *Godfrey*, the Contemporary of *Charlemaign*; of whose Successors *Munster* giveth us more certainty.

The Kings of S W E D E N.

1. *Fermanicus*.
2. *Frotho*.
3. *Herotus*.
4. *Sorlus*.
5. *Biornus*.
6. *Wichfertus*.
7. *Ericus*.
8. *Oftenus*.
9. *Sturbiornus*.
10. *Ericus* 2.
11. *Olaus*.
12. *Edmundus*.
13. *Stinkalis*.
14. *Halstenus*.
15. *Animander*.
16. *Aquinus*.
17. *Magnus*.
- 1150 18. *Sherco*. 10.
- 1160 19. *Carolus*. 8.
- 1168 20. *Canutus*. 54.
- 1222 21. *Ericus* 3. 27.
- 1249 22. *Byrgerius*. 2.
- 1251 23. *Waldemarus*. 26.
- 1277 24. *Magnus* 2. 13.
- 1290 25. *Byrgerius* 2. 23.
- 1313 26. *Magnus* 3. Son to *Ericus* the Brother of *Byrgerius*, was also chosen King of *Norway*.
- 1326 27. *Magnus* 4. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, which last he gave in his life time to *Haquin* or *Aquinus*, his second Son; and after the death of *Ericus* his eldest Son (his designed Successors in this Crown) was outed of this Kingdom by the practice of
- 1363 28. *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Son of *Euphemia*, the Sister of *Magnus* the fourth; to the prejudice of *Aquinus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, made King of *Sweden*, on that Quarrel Vanquished by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norway* Widow of *Aquinus*, Anno 1387, to whom, desirous of liberty, he resigned his Kingdom, and died in his own Country Anno 1407.
- 1387 29. *Margaret*, Queen of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*, having united the three Kingdoms under her Command, caused an Act of State to be passed in *Calmar*, a chief Town in *Swethland*, for the perpetuation of this Union unto her Successors; the Law and Priviledges of each Kingdom continuing as before they were.
- 1411 30. *Ericus* 4. Duke of *Pomeran*, adopted by *Margaret*, of whose Sister *Ingelburgis* he was descended, was in her life time chosen King of the three Kingdoms, into which he succeeded actually after her decease; but outed of them all by a strong Faction raised against him, Anno 1439, he died in a private Estate in *Pomeran*, Anno 1459.
- 1439 31. *Christopher*, Count *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavier*, (in Title only) Son of the Lady *Margaret*, Sister of *Ericus*, succeeded in all three Kingdoms. After whose death the *Swethlanders*, being weary of the *Danish* Government, broke the Agreement made at *Calmar*, for the uniting of the 3 Kingdoms under one Prince, and chose one *Carolus Canutus* to be their King, Anno 1448,

- 1448 32. *Carolus Canutus*, one of the meanest of the Nobility, and not long pleasing to the great ones: whose displeasure when he had incurred, and feared the consequents thereof, he gathered together all the Treasure he could, fled unto *Dantzick*, and there ended his days.
- 1455 33. *Christiern*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, called in by a party of the *Swedes*, and crowned King of *Swethland*; but out again under colour that he had not kept Conditions with them: the Kingdom being governed after that for a time by Marshals.
- 1458 34. *John*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, the Son of *Christiern*, received King by the *Swedes*, then over-powered by the *Muscovite*: but their turn being served, they expelled him, again, returning to their former Government under Marshals. Of which Marshals (descended from *Steno Stur*, the Uncle of *Carolus Canutus* by his Mothers side) there were three in number; viz. 1. *Steno*. 2. *Suanto*, and 3. *Steno Stur* the second: of which the two first died natural deaths, and the last being by *Christiern* the second slain in Battel, this Kingdom was again possessed by the *Danes*.
- 1519 35. *Christiern II.* King of all three Kingdoms, used his Victory so cruelly here, and his Subjects so insolently at home, that here he was outed by *Gustavus Ericus* and driven out of *Denmark* by his Uncle *Fredrick*.
- 1523 36. *Gustavus Ericus*, descended from the ancient Race of the Kings of *Sweden*, having vanquished and expelled the *Danes*, was on the merit of that action chosen King of *Swethland*, which still continueth in his House. He is stiled by *Antonius William Schowartus Erick de Wasa a Grypsholm*, he managed many and dreadful Wars with the *Danes* and *Russ*, and the City of *Lubeck*, and died in the year 1560.
- 1561 37. *Ericus V.* Son to *Gustavus S.* Was Crowned King of *Sweden*, and managed Wars against the *Danes* and *Poles*, he Courted *Elizabeth* Queen of *England*, and being rejected by her he Married a mean Concubine, whom he Crowned at *Stockholm*, in 1568, by which Act he lost the Hearts of his Subjects, and was deposed the next year.
- 1569 38. *John II.* Brother of *Ericus*, married *Catharine* the Siller of *Sigismund* the second, King of *Poland*. He made a Peace with the *Danes* in 1570, but continued the War with *Lubeck*, and the *Russ* and died in 1592.
- 1593 39. *Sigismund*, the Son of *John* the second, in the life-time of his Father chosen King of *Poland*, Anno 1586, but was dispossessed of the Crown of *Sweden* (after a long War) by his Uncle *Charles*. Which War was begun in the year 1595, when *Charles* assum'd the Title of Governor of *Sweden*, and was not ended till the year 1607, the year after *Sigismund* was Crowned, and in the year 1599, the Nobility of *Sweden* deposed *Sigismund* and elected *Charles* his Uncle, who was the Third Son of *Gustavus Ericus*.
- 1607 40. *Charles II.* Duke of *Suderman*, the youngest Son of *Gustavus Ericus*, and Brother of *John* and *Erick* the two former Kings, first governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigismund*. But having an aim upon the Crown, (to which he found the *Lutherans* not very favourable) he raised up a *Calvinian* party within that Realm; according to whose Principles he began first to withdraw his obedience from his natural Prince, and afterwards to assume the Government to himself: speeding so well in his Design; that after a long War he forced his Nephew to desert from all farther Enterprises, and made himself King, Anno 1607.
- 1611 41. *Gustavus Adolphus*, Son of *Charles*, was born in the year 1594, crowned King of *Sweden*, in 1617, having settled his affairs in *Sweden*, and made Peace with the King of *Denmark*, in 1613, with the *Russ* in 1617, with whom his Father was in War at the time of his death, fell first on his Cousin *Sigismund*, the King of *Poland*, from whom he took many places of importance in *Prussia* and *Livonia*; and in pursuance of that War was made Knight of the Garter. Afterwards, having settled a Truce with him, he passed into *Germany* in 1630, then in great danger of being absolutely intralled to the House of *Austria*. In which he prospered so beyond all expectation, that in one year he passed over the *Elb*, the *Rhene*, and the *Danow*, (which no Conqueror ever did before:) and having twice vanquished the Imperialists led by *Tilly*, and restored many of the *German* Princes unto their Estates, was in the current of his Victories slain in the Battel of *Lutzen*, Novemb. 1632; his body royally conveyed to *Swethland*, and there interred.
- 1632 42. *Christina*, sole Daughter of *Gustavus*, of the age of seven years, acknowledged Queen of *Sweden*; the Estate being governed by the Counsels of the Nobility. After a long War, with variable success in *Germany*, they came at last to this accord in the Treaty of *Munster*, that she and her Successors, Kings and Queens of *Swethland*, should peaceably enjoy all the higher *Pomeran*, with the Isles of *Rugia*, *Wollen*, and the Town of *Stetin*, in Lower *Pomerland*, the Town and Port of *Wisnar* in the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*; and the whole Bishopricks of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and the Prefecture of the Town of *Wilchusen*; with the Title of Dukes of *Bremen*, *Pomeran*, and *Verden*, Princes of *Rugia*, and Lords of *Wisnar*, and by those Titles to have place, as princes of the Empire, in all Diets and Assemblies which concern the Publick. By which agreement (if it hold) the *Swedes* have not only got a good footing in *Germany*, a strong influence upon all the Councils of the Empire, a Door open for more Forces, (if occasion be) and a free passage into the Western Ocean, which before they wanted; but may in time prove absolute Masters of the *Baltick* Sea, and make the *Hamburgers*, those of *Lubeck*, and possibly the Kings of *Denmark* and the Empire it self, be at their Devotion.
- 1654 43. *Charles Gustavus* the 4. Son of *Cassimir* Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, and *Bipont*, and of *Catherine* the Sister of the Great *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, upon the Resignation of *Christina* (who forsook her Religion and her Kingdom together) became King of *Sweden*, which he managed with great Prudence Conduct and Valour, he reduced *Frederick* the 3. King of *Denmark* to that distress, that his whole Kingdom was in a manner confined within the Walls of *Copenhagen*: And in all probability he had intirely Reduc'd it. If that Courageous but Unfortunate Prince, had not resolved to live and die in his Nest, and not Survive the Fate and Glory of his Country, as he said. This Victorious King of *Sweden*, died of a Malignant Feaver the 13th of February 1660, and was succeeded by his only Son.

1660 44. *Charles* the V. born the 25th of November 1655, was then an Infant, and was afterwards Crowned at *Upsal* the 28th of September 1675, though he has not been equally glorious with his Ancestors, yet he has kept or recovered all that was left him. His eldest Son is Prince *Charles*, born the 22th of June 1682, and his 2. Son *Gustavus*, born the 4th of June 1683.

1697 45. *Charles* the VIth, succeeded his Father, a Prince of great expectation, and now reigns under the Tutelage of his Guardians.

Of the Increase of the Crown of S W E D E N.

Gustavus de Wasa, was the Founder of the present Royal Line of Sweden; he was Crowned in the year 1522, and acknowledged King of Sweden properly so called, 2. *Gothland*, 3. *Northland*, and 4. *Finland*, and whatever else belonged then to this Crown. In the year 1578, the Knights of *Livonia* delivered up themselves, and all they possessed in *Livonia* to *Erick* King of Sweden, which was afterwards confirmed by the Treaty of *Olivo Kloster* (a Monastery one mile from *Dantzick*) in the year 1660, between the Emperor and the Kings of Sweden and Poland, by which all that part of *Livonia*, which lieth beyond the *Dwina*, was by the 4th Article for ever yielded to the Crown of Sweden. In the year 1618, there was a Peace made between the *Russ* and the *Swedes*, at which time all the Provinces of *Carelia* and *Ingria*, were yielded by the *Russ* to *Gustavus Adolphus*. In the year 1648, the *Swedes* gained by the Treaty of *Osnabruck*, the Possession of the hither *Pomerania*, the Island of *Rugen*, the City of *Wismar*, the Dukedom of *Bremen*, and the Principality of *Ferden* in the Lower *Saxony*. In the year 1658, by the Treaty of *Roschild*, this Crown gained from the *Danes*, *Halland*, *Scania*, *Bleckling* and *Bahuis*, three Provinces of great extent in *Norway*, all which were confirmed by the Treaty of *Nimmeghen* in the year 1678, So that this Crown is one of the most Fortunate in Europe. *Antonius Gul: Schowartus observationes Historica Genealogica*, page 120.

I have in the Additions to *Denmark* shewn, that one of the most dreadful Consequences of the War between that Crown and Sweden, was the intire loss of the liberties of *Denmark*; the three Estates being divested of all the Authority they heretofore had in the publick affairs of that Kingdom, which a late Author ascribes wholly to the slavish Doctrine of Non-resistance, though by his own relation of it, any man may see it was owing to the Insolence of the Nobility, and the Resentment of the Clergy and Commons made desperate by the poverty an improsperous War had brought upon them, and wanting Money to pay off an Army, which they then thought they were as little able to maintain as they knew how to get rid of it, but have ever since been forced to maintain to their great impoverishment, for the assuring that over-great Subjection they then brought upon themselves. The same Fate hung over the Kingdom of Sweden, though it fell a little later, because the King then reigning was an Infant, and so not capable of seeking or accepting such a power over his own people, as the King of *Denmark* had gained over his.

Who ever remarks the Steps and Gradations, by which *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Denmark* and *Sweden* lost their Liberty, will find it was the consequence of improsperous Wars, by which the body of these States, in several ages and at different times were brought so low, that they were not able to assert their own Rights; which cunning active and ambitious Princes observing, took the advantage the times afforded them, to raise their Authority higher than that which had been enjoyed by their Ancestors. In which, however they met with great troubles, and if their Crowns shone brighter, yet those of their Ancestors sat more easie, and had less of Envy and

Danger in them. But such is the nature of Mankind, that neither Governours nor Governed can always be kept in the same state, but each aspiring to be higher, the Ballance is broken, and the advantage for the most part falls on the side of the Prince, it being much more easy and natural to erect and preserve an absolute Monarchy than a common wealth.

The *Swiss* and *Hollanders* are the only people that have raised their liberties by Wars and cast off the Yoke which is owing to the nature of their Countries, both difficult of access, and the latter had also the assistance of most of its neighbours, more out of fear and hatred, which they bore to the Grandure of *Spain* than Love to the *Dutch*: And that which then gave birth to these States, has ever since preserved them, and will do so till a Prince arise that is great enough to oppress them and their Allies, and then there will be the end of their Liberty. And in the mean time, *England* of all Countries, has no reason to envy, and much less to imitate the states of *Holland*, or any of the other commonwealths, being much more happy and free under her Regular Monarchy, than they, or any other commonwealth that ever was since the Creation of the World.

Charles the present King of Sweden, was but 5 years of age, when his Father died in 1660, so his Mother *Hedwig Eleonora* of the House of *Holstein* and Sister to the present Duke, was made Regent of that Kingdom, together with the 5 great offices of the Crown which she held till the year 1672. The King was bred mostly to Military exercises by the contrivance of the Principal Ministers, who found it most for their Interest not to acquaint him too much with books, that they might the better govern him. He was no sooner Crown'd than he was engaged in a difficult War that gained him much experience and honour, having never lost one Battle in which he was present. The *French* engaged him in this War by the Temptation of 200000 *l.* the year subsidy, for which he lost his Army in *Germany*, and four of the six fortified Towns he held in *Schonen*, *Wismar*, so that when he took the field against the *Danes*, he found the effects of his Ministers neglects, yet with a small Army he gained 3 Battles in one year, and so re-established his declining Fortunes. This gave him an ill opinion of the Senate, and discovered to him the ill designs of his Ministers in his Minority, so that during the War he slighted all these Lords, neither communicating his Counsels, nor acquainting them with the Success of his Actions, till in 1680, returning to *Stockholm* in an Assembly of the States, he gave an account of the State of affairs during the War. The Odium of all the Misfortunes of War fell upon the Ministers that had managed the affairs in his Minority, and a Committee was there chosen out of the several bodies of the Estates, to enquire into the Misconducts and evil Counsels of those Ministers, and to pass sentence on the Delinquents.

Hereupon they were fined to ruine and all their Authority abrogated, the King was declared to have received his Crown from God, and to be only accountable to God for his Actions, and tied by no other engagement but his Coronation Oath, viz, to Rule the Kingdom according to Law. Then they gave him large Taxes, and a power to assume all the Crown Lands that had been gained from him or his Ancestors, to settle such a Militia, Fleet, and such Fortresses as should to him appear needful for the future security of the Kingdom: so favourable was this Conjunction for the advancement of the Royal Authority, that he scarce needed to ask any thing, each body of the States striving which should out bid the other in their Concessions. The Nobility and Gentry being poor, were under a necessity to comply with every thing to keep their present Employments or secure their future hopes of Advancement, and the Officers of the Army, who sat in their House, vigorously promoted the Kings affairs, the Clergy, Burghers, and peasants were easily perswaded that the Miseries they had

had suffered, proceeded from the too great power of the Nobility; that the King could never be too much trusted, and they were glad of the opportunity to humble the Nobility, who in their prosperity had been too imperious; and concluded that the burthen that fell upon them, would redound to their own ease.

These Dispositions of the people, added to the excessive affection they had for the Kings person, the opinion of his Piety, admiration of his Courage, and knowledge of his Frugality, Chastity and Industry, gave him an opportunity to lay the foundations of as absolute a Sovereignty as any Prince in *Europe* possesses.

The next assembly of the States was in the year 1683, in which, besides large supplies, he obtained the explaining the Article of *Ruling the Kingdom according to Law*, viz, that he might alter the Laws, and add such Constitutions as he thought most useful for the present state of the Kingdom, and that all his instructions to any Colledge or Officer, were Laws to them and all others that they concern'd, only they hoped he would communicate to the States such Laws, as intended to bind the whole Kingdom.

All this was again confirmed in a third assembly of the States held in 1686, which has so riveted his power in this Loyal Kingdom, that had not the necessity of his affairs forced him to raise excessive Taxes, and Ruine many of the most Loyal and well deserving Families, by his assuming those Crown Lands, that had been given upon valuable consideration; there had been no discontentment in his Kingdom.

It is worthy of a remark, that the same things that occasion'd the loss of the *Danish* Liberty, had the same effect in *Sweden*, viz, an Odium of the Pride of the Nobility; an over great opinion of the persons of the Kings; and a great Sense of the obligation they had to them for having delivered their several Nations from two very dangerous and destructive Wars. The poverty that followed those Wars, made all men in both the Kingdoms shift off the burthen, till like *Efa* they sold their birth-right very cheap, forgetting in the mean time, these now good Kings shall not live for ever.

But leaving these things to the doubtful issue of Contingency, let us next look upon the Forces and Revenues of the Crown of *Sweden* before the time of *Gustavus Adolphus*, or as he found them at his Succession to that Crown. For though the *Swedes* pretend their Kingdom to be Elective, especially since the failing of the Royal Line in *Magnus* the fourth, and *Albert of Mecklenburgh*: yet still the eldest Son or next Heir succeedeth; unless put by by Faction and strong hand, as in case of *Sigismund* and his Uncle *Charles*. Which *Charles* so ordered his affairs, that having engaged the Kingdom in a War against his Nephew, he was solicited at the last to accept of the Crown: to which he would by no means yield, till a law was made for the entailing the same for ever unto his Posterity, whether male or female, as an Hereditary Crown. But whether Hereditary or Elective, the King once settled in the Throne is an absolute Monarch; having not only a power to levy Taxes on his Subjects, as he seeth occasion, as five, six, seven, eight Dollars, or more yearly upon every Householder, according to the proportion of his Estate, but also to grant a certain number of Peasants unto such as he means to favour, to be as Subjects and Vassals to him, according to his well-deserving. And whereas in the Constitution of this Government every Parish hath a Landman or Consul to decide the Controversies of the same, as every Territory hath its Vicount, and each Province its Lamen; there lieth an Appeal from the Landman unto the Vicount, and from the Vicount to the Lamen; who, if they be supposed not to judge uprightly, then the Appeal lies unto the Council, and from the Council of Estate to the King himself, (in whom is fixed the Sovereignty and *Demerit* Resort) and not unto the King and Council, as before in *Denmark*.

The Forces of this King are either by Sea or Land. By Sea he is Commander wholly of the Bay of *Bodner*, and hath a great Power in all the rest of the *Baltick*; being able to set out 70 good men of War, as *John* the 2. did in the year 1578; seven of which were good Gallions, and all the rest did carry above 50 cast Pieces of all sorts, besides many other good Vessels fit for service. And if a Navy of this size will not serve the turn, he is not only furnished with Timber, Cordage, and all other necessaries for the building of Ships, and with good store of Ordnance and Ammunition for present use, but is able to raise upon a sudden 6000 Mariners, and upon little warning as many more; all which entertaineth at no other charges in a manner than to find Victuals: insomuch as *John* the second, before mentioned, did use to say, that *that which cost the King of Spain a Million of Crowns, cost not him 100000 Dollars*.

For his Land-Forces they may best be estimated by the Trained Bands (as we call them) in every Province; there being in all 32 *Vexilles* (or Ensigns) of Foot constantly trained and mustered in the several Provinces: each *Vexille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting in the Total to 20000 Foot; all in a manner Musketeers, ready to march whensoever the Kings occasion shall so require. And then for Horse, there are eleven Cornets in continual readiness for *Sweden* and *Gottland*, and two for *Finland*, maintained at the Charges of those Countries: to which the King may add at his own charges as many more as he pleaseth. And for an instance of what this King is able to do, without putting his Estates in hazard by draining them too dry of men to make good his Kingdom, we find that *John* the second, in his Navy of 70 Ships spoken of before, had above 18000 Land-Souldiers, besides Mariners. And in the Army which *Gustavus Adolphus*, the late King, brought into *Germany*, there were mustered no fewer at one time than 12000 Horse, and 34000 Foot, all *Finn*s and *Swethlanders*. For the accommodating of which Armies with Artillery and the like Engines of War, it is thought that the Kings hereof are Masters of 8000 great Pieces, for the most part Brass, with Mortar-pieces and Granado's in proportion to them.

But that which makes his Land Forces most considerable is their Hardiness in enduring the extremities of Wind and Weather (insomuch that it is usual with them to stand Centinel a whole Winters night of 18 hours long without being relieved) their exact Discipline, and Obedience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatigable Industry in making their own Shooes, Apparel, Stocks for Muskets, and all other necessaries. Which doth not only make them fit to endure any labour which is put upon them in the wars, but keeps them from Idleness and the pride of Mutinies; the ordinary effect, in great Armies of Sloth and ease. Nor do they want encouragement on the Kings part neither; who, 1. gives to every Souldier Victuals, which he accompts not in their pay, and that according to his Obedience and desert. 2. If a Souldier be taken Prisoner, him the King doth usually redeem at his own charges. And 3. If a Soldier's Horse be slain under him, the King supplieth him with another. Which makes the Souldiers (very sensible of such Obligations) exceedingly conformable unto his Commands, how dangerous soever they seem to be.

Finally, as for his Revenues, they must needs be great, there being four ways allowed him to amass his Treasures. First the Revenues of the Church, consising before the Reformation of seven Bishopricks and sixty Monasteries, which enjoyed very great possessions; all seized on by *Gustavus Ericus*, and by him incorporate to the Crown excepting only what is given back to maintain the Bishops. Secondly, Mines, which are here of all Metals in very great plenty, except of Gold and Silver, which they have more sparingly; the Tenth whereof in all places belongs to the King, and yields him such a

fair

fair *Intrado*, that in the year 1578, the King's part out of two or three Mines of Copper only amounted to 30000 Dollars. Thirdly, Tenths out of all Increase, as Rye, Wheat, Barley, Fish, Oxen, Skins, and the like Commodities; the sum whereof though not certainly known, (because the increase is so uncertain) yet it was once computed, that the Tenth of the Oxen only came in one year to 18000 Dollars, besides Provision for his Household. Fourthly and lastly, Customs imposed on Merchandise, and paid in all his Haven-Towns for all Commodities imported or exported, of what sort soever. Besides all which, he hath his Contributions in all times of War, power of imposing Taxes, (though moderately used) as his Necessities require; and on the Marriage of a Daughter, the Kingdom is to provide her Portion, which of late times hath been fixed at the certain sum of 100000 Dollars, besides Plate and Moveables. Out of which several *Items* to sum up the Total: It was observed, that in the year 1578 King *John* the second (all Charges, ordinary and extraordinary, being first deducted) did lay up into his Treasury no less than 700000 Dollars; which was a vast sum for those times, considering especially the great Charge which the King had been at that year, in furnishing a Navy of 70

Sail, and raising 18000 Land-Soldiers, (besides Horse) for defence of his Realm against the *Danes*. And yet it is conceived by some knowing men, that his Revenues would be much greater than they are, if he did employ Strangers to work the Mines, which the Native do not husband to the best advantage; and yet are fearful to discover them to other Nations upon some Jealousies, which they are naturally addicted to: or if he would turn Merchant, and in his own Ships send out Corn and Cordage, with Masts and Timber fit for building, and in them bring back Salt and other Necessaries which his Kingdom wants, setting them at a far less price than now they go at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, three Crowns *Or*.

There are in *Swethland*.

Archbishops 2. Bishops 8.

Universities but one, *viz. Upsal*.

And thus much for *SWETHLAND*.

O F

R U S S I A.

RUSSIA is bounded on the East by *Tartary*, on the West with *Livonia* and *Finland*, from which it is divided by great Mountains and the River *Poln*; on the North by the Frozen Ocean, and some part of *Lapland*; and on the South by *Lithuania*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the *Crim-Tartars*, inhabiting on the Banks of *Palus Meotis* and the *Euxine* Sea, and by *Georgia*. It standeth partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Asia*, the River *Tanaïs* or *Don*, running through it, the common Boundary of those great and noted parts of the World.

It was thus called from the *Rossi* or *Russi*, a people of Mount *Taurus*, or *Taurica Chersonesus*, (if not both) who in the declining times of the *Greek* Empire possessed themselves of some parts of it, and, being the prevailing People, imposed their Name on all the rest. Called also *Russia Alba*, to distinguish it from *Russia Nigra*, a Province of *Poland*; *quod Incole omnium Gentium ipsius imperio subiectarum* (as one observes, discoursing of the Affairs hereof) *Vestibus Albis & Pileis plerunque utantur*, because the Inhabitants use to wear white Caps and Vestments. And why not thus? thence the People of *Margiana* and *Sogdiana* in *Asia* have the name of *Jesels* only because they wear green Turbants, as the word importeth. Finally, it is called *Moscovite*, from *Moscovia* the chief Province of it; as that is denominatèd from the *Moschi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the Heavenly bodies, it is said by some to be situate betwixt the 8. and 20. Climates; the longest Day in the Southern parts being but 16 hours and an half, and almost 22 hours and a half in the Northern part. But this is to be understood only of the Province of *Moscovy* properly and specially so called, and not of the whole Empire of the *Moscovite* according to the Bounds before laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belonging to it, as *East-Lapland*, *Condora* & *Petzora*, lying within the *Arctic* Circle, the longest Day in Summer

will be full 6 months, (for so long do those Countries see no Night at all;) which is a mighty disproportion from the length of the longest Day in the most Southern parts, being but 16 hours and a half, as before is said. And by this Rule we are to take the Dimensions also. For tho' some make the length hereof from North to South, that is to say, from *Calain* in the North to *Astracan* near the *Caspian* Sea, to be no more than 2260 Versts, or 3690 *Italian* miles; yet they confess that, reckoning forwards from *Tromschua*, the farthest point of *Petzora*, the full length thereof will be nigh so much more. And for the breadth reckoning from *Narva* on the Bay of *Finland*, (now in possession of the *Swedes*) to the Province of *Sueveria* in the East, it amounteth to 4400 Versts, or 6300 *Italian* miles; each Vest being estimated at three quarters of an *English* mile. Which mighty Territory, if it were peopled answerable to some other parts of the World, would either make it too great for one Prince to hold, or make that Prince too great and puissant for all his neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty and deceitful in all their Bargains, False-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their Promises, and study nothing more than ways to evade their Contracts. Vices so generally known and noted in them, that when they are to deal with Strangers, they dissemble their Countrey, and pretend to be of other Nations, for fear lest no body should trust them. Destitute they are of humane Affections, and so unnatural, that the Father insults on his Son, and he again over his Father and Mother. So malicious one towards another, that you shall have a man hide some of his own Goods in the House of some man whom he hateth and then accuse him for the stealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, insomuch that all heady and intoxicating Drinks are by Law prohibited, and two or three days only in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the most part they are strong of Body, swift of Foot,

of square Proportion, broad, short and thick: grey-eyed, broad-bearded, and generally furnished with prominent Paunches. The commons live in miserable subjection to the Nobles, and they again in as great Slavery to the Duke or Emperor; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediately exhibit a Petition, or make known his Grievances, nay, the mean Lords and officers are squeamish in this kind, and, but on great submission, will not commend unto the Duke a poor man's Cause. They are altogether unlearned, even the Priests meanly indoctrinated; it being cautioned by the great Duke, that there be no Schools, lest there should be any Scholars but himself; so that the people use to work commonly on the Lord's day, holding it fit to be kept by none but Gentlemen; and to say in a difficult question, *God and our Great Duke know all this*; and in other talk, *All we enjoy, Health and Life, is all from our Great Duke*; according to whose pleasure every man is prescribed what Habit he shall wear, both for matter and fashion, suitable unto their Condition. In the time of my Author their Habit was a long Garment without Plaits, which hung down to their heels, commonly of white or blew, with very straight Sleeves; on their Legs wearing Buskins up as high as the calf, for the most part red, high at the heels, and beset with nails of Iron. The stuff and trimming of the Dress is the only difference betwixt the Noble and the Peasant.

The Women are attired also much after this manner; but if great and noble, suffered to set forth themselves with store of Pearls and Precious Stones which hang so thick about their ears, that they do almost pull their ears from their heads. A second Marriage is conceived no blemish in point of Chastity, but the third condemns them of Incontinence. They are naturally subject enough to the Lusts of the flesh, but private, and fearful to offend; if once lascivious, then most intolerably wanton. It is the fashion of these Women to love that Husband best which beareth them most; and to think themselves neither loved nor regarded, unless they be two or three times a day well favouredly swaddled. The Author of the *Treasury of times* telleth a Story of a German Shoemaker, who travelling into this Country, and here marrying a Widow, used her with all the kindness that a woman could (as he thought) desire; yet did not she seem contented. At last learning where the fault was, and that his not beating her was the cause of her Pensiveness, he took such a vein in cudgelling her sides, that in the end the Hangman was fain to break his Neck for his labour.

They use the *Slavonian* Languages, but so corrupt and mixt with other Languages, that they and the *Slavonians* understand not one another's meaning but by circumstance only: yet in *Ingria* (out of which the *Hungarians* are thought to have issued) they speak a corrupt *Hungarian*; and in *Peterson* and the Country of the *Czeremissians* they have a Language to themselves, distinct from others.

They first received the Christian faith in the year 987, or, as some say, Anno 942, by the preaching and ministry of the *Greeks* sent hither by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; of which Church they are constant followers, both for Rites and Doctrine: but not without some Superstitions of their own superadded to them; viz, not coming near a Cross, Church or Monastery, but they kneel down, and make the sign of the Cross, saying *Miloy Hissodi*, i. e. *Lord have mercy upon us*; nor entering into any Church until washed and bathed. They bear a deadly hatred to the *Jews*, whom they suffer not to live amongst them; and so great friendship unto a Calf, that they hold it a great offence to kill one, or to eat his flesh. Their Church is governed by 18 Bishops, and 2 Metropolitans, all of them subordinate to their Archbishop or Patriarch; as he in former times to the *Constantinopolitan*, by whom he used to be confirmed. But about an hundred years ago they withdrew themselves from that subjection; the Patriarch being nominated by the Great Duke, and con-

secrated by two or three of his own Suffragans. Without the counsel and advice of this Patriarch, the Emperor or Great Duke doth nothing of any moment. The Bishops are all chosen out of the Monastick or Regular Clergy; which makes the Monks (being all of the order of *S. Basil*) to live very religiously, in hope to be advanced to the Episcopal Dignity. And for the Secular Clergy, or Parochial Priests, there is not much required of them, but to say their Masses, (which being in their own Language they may easily do) and to read now and then one of *St. Chrysostom's* Homilies, translated heretofore for the use of those Churches. After the death of their first Wives they are not permitted to marry; in other things little differing from the rest of the people. Once in the year it is lawful and usual with them to hold a Synod, at which the Patriarch hath his Crozier or Pastoral-staff carried before him, as the Pope's Legate hath the Cross; where they make Constitutions for the publick Government, and the regulating of Divine matters; which are punctually and carefully observed by the Prince himself.

As followers of the *Greek* Church, (but so as to be counted a Church distinct) they differ much both from the *Romish* and Reformed. 1. Denying the Holy Ghost to proceed from the Father and the Son. 2. Denying Purgatory, but praying for the Dead. 3. Believing that holy men enjoy not the presence of God before the Resurrection. 4. Communicating in both kinds but using Leavened bread, and mingling warm Water with the Wine which both together they distribute with a Spoon. 5. Receiving Children of 7 years old to the Sacrament of the Eucharist, because then they begin to sin. 6. Forbidding extreme Unction, Confirmation, and fourth Marriages. 7. Admitting none to Orders but such as are married, and yet prohibiting Marriage to them that are actually in Orders. 8. Rejecting Carved Images, but admitting the Painted. 9. Observing 4 *Lents* in the year. 10. Reputing it unlawful to fast on Saturday; or to eat Blood, or any thing that hath been strangled, according to the first Council holden at *Hierusalem*. 11. And finally, dissolving Marriage by Divorcement upon every slight occasion, or conceived displeasure. Which diversity betwixt the *Romish* and this people in point of Religion hath bred such a difference betwixt them in point of affection, and made them so ill-conceited of one another, that if a *Muscovite* be known, or but suspected to have conversed with any of the Church of *Rome*, he is accounted to be a polluted person, and must be solemnly purged and purified, before he be admitted to partake of the *Blessed Sacrament*.

In matters of War the people are indifferently able, as being almost in continual Broils with their Neighbours; and have a Custom, that when they go to the Wars, every Soldier giveth to the Emperor or great Duke a piece of money, which at the end of the War he receiveth again: and by that means the number of the slain is exactly known. At their Funerals they use to put a Penny into the Mouth of the party deceased, a pair of Shoes on his Feet and a Letter in his Hand, directed (such is their Superstition) to *S. Nicola*, whom they deem to be the Porter of Heaven: an opinion doubtless very prejudicial to the Pope's and *S. Peter's* Privileges.

This Country is not so populous as spacious. The Eastern parts are vexed with the *Tartars*, who, like *Aiup's* Dog, will neither dwell there themselves, nor suffer the *Muscovites* to plant Colonies in them: the Western parts almost as much molested by the *Swedish* and *Polonian* Kings; the Southern by the *Turks* and *Pre-copenes*; and the Northern by the coldness of the Air, which is of such vehemency, that Water thrown up into the Air, will turn to Ice before it fall to the ground. The better to resist the extremity of this Cold, not only the Cloaths of this people, but their very Houses, are lined with thick Furs. Every Gentleman or man of note hath in his dwelling-House, a Stove or Hot-house in which they

they keep as it were to thaw themselves. Such as travel on the way use often to rub their Nose or Ears with Snow or Ice, to rattle and recal their motive Spirits into those parts which otherwise they would be in danger to lose; the ignorance of which preventing Chirurgery was not the least cause that, in the year 1598 of 70000 *Turks* which made an Inroad into *Muscovy*, 40000 were frozen to death. By reason of these extremities of Frosts and Cold, it is the Custom of this people to lay the Bodies of their Dead all the Winter long on heaps in the Belfreys of their Churches, where they lie without putrifying or any ill favour to the end of *March*; at what time the Air beginning to wax warm, and the earth to be fit for digging each Family looks out their dead Bodies, and takes care to bury them. This excess of Cold in the Air gave occasion to *Castalian* in his *Aulicus* wittily, and not incongruously, to feign that if two Men being somewhat diliant talk together in the Winter, their words will be so frozen that they cannot be heard; but if the Parties in the Spring return to the same place, their words will melt into the same order as they were frozen and spoken, and be plainly understood. Such is their Winter: neither is their Summer less miraculous. For the huge Seas of Ice, which in a manner covered the whole surface of the Country, are at the first approach of the Sun suddenly dissolved, the Water quickly dried up, and the Earth dressed in her holy-day Apparel: such a mature growth of Fruits, such flourishing of Herbs, such chirping of Birds as if here were a perpetual Spring. The reason of which strange and sudden alteration is conceived to be the long lying of the Snow on the Face of the Earth, keeping it from the rigour of the Winter Frosts; which being dissolved by the Sun in the beginning of the Spring, doth so thoroughly drench and soke the Ground, (being of a light and Sandy mold) and consequently make it the more penetrable by the beams of the Sun shining hotly on it, that it forceth in a manner the Herbs and Plants to shoot forth in great plenty, and that too in a shorter time than can be imagined.

The whole Country generally is very much overspread with Woods, parts of the great *Hercynian* Forest, heretofore over-running all the North, and still more visible here than in other places; either by reason of the Idleness of the People, naturally given to Sloth and Ease; or for that the Country is not populous enough to overcome them: or that there is already Ground enough for Tillage to supply their necessary uses. For here do grow the goodliest and tallest Trees of the World, through which, by reason of their thicknets, the brightness of the Sun-beams can hardly pierce; affording shelter to great multitudes of Cattel, but of wild Beasts especially, whose Skins are better than their Bodies, as Bears, Martens, Zibellines, Wolves, black Foxes, whose Skins are of very great estimation. Of the Timber of these Trees are squared all necessities both for Forts and Houses: the Fortifications in this Country being made of huge Beams fastned together (the chinks filled with Earth) not easily shaken by Battery, though much subject to Fire. And out of them issueth an unspeakable quantity of Pitch and Rosin, which are hence distilled: besides an everlasting Fountain of Wax and Honey; the Bees, without the Midwifery of the Art of Men, building their Hives or Houses in the hollow Trees. Concerning this there goeth a Story (reported and believed for a certain truth) of a Country-man who accidentally had slipped down into a great hollow Tree, where he stood up to the breast in Honey, continuing there two days without other Sustainance: at the end whereof a Bear coming to partake of the Booty, he laid hold of his Legs, and so terrified him with his Cries, that he made him leap out with the Man at his Heels. The Country yieldeth also great store of Flax and Hemp, which is transported yearly into other Countries (and would make them very excellent Cordage, if the People had any skill in Manufactures or Mechanical Arts) and in some places rich Pastures, and such store of Corn, that therewith they

do furnish *Lapland* and the North part of *Sweden*. Fish they have also in good plenty, which they salt and dry, and either vent it to the Merchant, or lay it up in store for their Forts and Families. By which account it will appear that the principal Commodities which they send abroad are rich Furs, Flax, Hemp, Whales-grease, Honey, Wax, Pitch, Rosin, Nuts, Filberds and the like: which either the *Dutch* and *English* buy of them at the Fort of *S. Nicholas*, or the *Armenians* at *Astracan* near the *Caspian* Sea; giving them in return Cloth, Silks, Tapestry, and some other Merchandise, transported to the value of 500000 Rubbles yearly. Particularly of Wax 50000 Pood, (every Pood containing 40 *English* Pounds;) of Tallow 100000 Pood, 100000 Hides, 100 Ships laden with Flax and Hemp, the rest of their Commodities proportionably in the time of my Author; since whose time the Trade hereof hath been much increased.

This Country not improperly may be called (as by some it is) the Mother of Rivers. The chief of which are, 1. The *Don*, called *Tanaïs* by the old Geographers, and by them thought to be the only Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*; the Northern parts of this Country being then unknown. It disburdeneth it self into *Palus Maotis*; and hath its Fountain not out of the *Riphean* Mountains, as was thought of old, but out of a great Lake called *Iwanowesero*, in the Forest of *Okonieskilies* or *Tephapinolies*, some 20 *English* Miles from the City of *Tulla*; and having run a great way Eastward; turneth back again and then proceedeth Southwards towards the *Maotis*, as was said before. 2. *Borysthenes*, now called *Neiper*, whose Spring was unknown unto *Herodotus*, but now discovered to be near *Duiperck*, a Village of *Muscovy* (specially so called, in the Forest of *Wolkonskie*. Whence passing South, and running by the Town of *Smolensko*, it receiveth many other Rivers, and amongst them that of *Desna* (by the ancient Writers called *Hypanis*) notwithstanding whose muddy Waters it still retains its natural Clearness, and so falls into the *Euxine* Sea. 3. *Turanus*, (so called by *Ptolomy*) or *Duina* the less (to difference it from *Duina* the greater) which rising not far from the Head of *Borysthenes*, out of the Lake of *Duina*, and washing the Walls of *Riga*, the chief Town of *Livonia*, loseth it self in the *Baltick* Sea. 4. *Duina*, or *Dwine* (commonly called *Duina* the greater) so call'd from the meeting of two Rivers, the *Juga* and the *Sachan* (whereof more hereafter) of which that of the longest course, not known unto the Ancients, hath its Head in the Province of *Permia*, and it falls into the Frozen or Northern Ocean at the Port of *S. Nicolas*. 5. *Occa*, or *Ocyne*; rising in the Territory of *Misceneck*, and making all the Country fruitful through which it passeth, emptieth it self into the *Volga*. 6. *Volga*, by *Ptolomy* called *Rha*, by the *Tartars* *Edill*; which riseth 25 *Dutch* Miles from *Mosco*, towards *Lithuania*, and fetching a great compass in and out, after it hath swallowed up many lesser Rivers, dischargeth it self with 70 Mouths into the *Caspian* Sea, now called *Mardi Buchu*. [This is a great mistake, there being not above five Mouths] Here are besides these Rivers many notable Lakes, as those of *Duina* and *Volga*, out of which the said two Rivers issue; that called *Ilmen*, not far from *Novogrod* the great, 80 *Italian* miles in compass; that of *Ladoga*, 100 *Dutch* miles in length and 60 in breadth, in which are many pleasant Islands; and that called *Bicloyesero* (*Lacus Albus* in *Latin*) about 12 *German* miles long and as many broad, into which 360 Rivers are said to discharge their Streams; in the midst whereof is a strong Castle, said to be impregnable, in which the Great Duke keeps the most part of his Treasure, and into which he doth withdraw in the times of Danger and Sedition.

As for the Mountains of this Country, here are the *Montes Amadoci*, *Riphei*, and *Hyperborei*, so much talk'd of and so little known amongst the Ancients: a continual and craggy Chain of Hills running cross *Sarmatia Europea*, South and North, and thence Eastwards into *Asiatica*. Beginning not far from the fall of *Borysthenes* into

into the *Euxine*, they extend directly towards the North, and are there called *Montes Amadoci*; afterwards bending for a long space towards the North-East, they are called *Riphei*; and then passing on directly East, by reason of their Northernly situation, called *Hyperborci*. And though Sir *Walter Ramleigh* says, I know not on what authority, that there are no *Riphaean Mountains* in *rerum natura*: yet *Mercator* placeth them in this Tract, and telleth us, that in regard of their being always covered with Ice and Snow they are hardly passable: calling these and the said *Hyperborci* (in his *Europa*) by the name of *Cingulum terra*, or the *Girdle of the Earth*, a great part whereof (though known in divers places by different names) they do seem to compass.

It is divided, for the better Government hereof, into four parts (by them termed *Chetfords*) and those governed by four Lieutenants, not resident upon their Charges, but attending on the Emperor's Person wherefoever he goeth, and there holding their Courts, but especially at *Mosco*, the prime Seat of the Empire, where from their Under-Deputies they receive the Complaints of their Provinces, and inform the Emperor's Council of the business, and from them again receive Instruction for Reformation. But as to the Chorography of it, it is divided into the Provinces of, 1. *Muscovy*, especially so called. 2. *Smolensko*. 3. *Mosaiski*. 4. *Plescow*. 5. *Novogrod* the great. 6. *Corelia*. 7. *Biarmia*. 8. *Petzora*. 9. *Condora*. 10. *Obdora*. 11. *Jugria*. 12. *Severia*. 13. *Parmia*. 14. *Rezan*. 15. *Wiatbka*. 16. *Casan*. 17. *Astracan*. 18. *Novogordia inferior*. 19. The *Morduits*, or *Mordua*. 20. *Worotine*. 21. *Tuver*. 22. *Wolodomir*. 23. *Dwina*. And, 24. the *Russian Islands*. Others of less note (of which there is no want) are reduced to these. In my Description whereof I shall not be so exact and punctual as I have been hitherto; the Country not being much travelled by Strangers, nor any of the Natives suffered to go into Foreign Nations, or permitted (out of Jealousies of State) to hold discourse with the Embassadors of Neighbouring Princes, but only in the Emperor's hearing. By means whereof the Chorography of this vast Empire is come but lamely to our hands, tho' the Power, Policy and Revenues of it, being Points discernible by the Ministers of other Princes, and by the course and conduct of their Affairs, are as well known as those of less distance. Which said, we will first begin with *Moscovy*, the prevailing Province, that which gives name to this whole Empire; with reference to which the Situation and Position of the rest of the Provinces is set forth unto us in our Authors.

1. MOSCOVY.

MOSCOVY specially so called, is seated in the very Center of this Estate, and so more fit to order the Affairs thereof. It is the largest Province of the whole, extending from East to West 600 Dutch, or 2400 English miles: so populous withal, that besides 30000 *Boiars* or Gentlemen, bound to serve on Horseback at their own charges, (like the *Turks Timariots*) the Great Duke is able to raise 70000 Foot, (which is a great matter for a Country so little cultivated. It is bounded on the North by *Rostow* and *Susdale*, on the East by *Rhozan*, on the South by *Worotine*, and on the West by *Bielkia*.

The Soil hereof is stiff and clammy, but might be made more profitable than it is, were it well manured, or ploughed and ordered, as it is in all other Countries. For here, and in most parts else of this large Dominion, the People are accustomed to Sow no more of their Land than what they dig with the Spade, or can break up with a Stick very sharply pointed; whereof they carry great numbers into the Field, that when one breaks they may use another.

Chief places in this Province are, 1. *Mosco*, the Imperial Seat, and the See of the Patriarch, so called of the River *Mosco* upon which it is situate. Exceedingly improv'd both in state and beauty since the time that *Daniel*

the fourth Lord of *Moscovy*, removed the Seat-Royal hither from *Wolodomir*, where before it was; insomuch that it was once grown to nine miles in compass, containing then 41500 Families: but being fired by the *Tartar*, Anno 1571, (at what time there were burnt 80000 Persons) it is reduced to five miles only. The Houses for the most part are of Wood and Dirt, the Streets very miry, without either Ditch, Wall, or Rampart to defend it against an Enemy. Instead whereof there are two Castles in the outward parts of it, the one called *Kiragorod*, the other *Balsgorod*. It is environed with the River *Mosco*, and another Water called *Neglinna*, which here falls into it. It contains 16 Churches, most of them of the same materials as the Houses are; and the Palace of the Great Duke, situate in the midst hereof, (which for the greatness of it may be thought a little City:) fortified with 17 Towers, 3 Bulwarks, and a continual Garrison (if the Great Duke be there) of 25000 Men for the Guard of his Person. This City was burnt by the *Poles* in 1611; in 1636 a great part was burnt; and in 1668 almost the whole City by Accident. 2. *Sloboda*, a Bishop's See, North-east to *Mosco*, on the Banks of one of the greatest Rivers which fall into the *Volga*. 3. *Ruschow*, the Title of a Dukedom, fortified with a Castle of Wood, (of which stuff most of the Fortresses of this Country are made) situate 23 leagues from *Mosco* towards the West, on the Banks of the *Volga*, which hath its Fountain in the Territory and Precincts hereof. 4. *Jaroslav*, on the *Volga* also, a Town and Castle distant about 46 Dutch miles from *Mosco*; formerly the Estate and Patrimony of the second Sons of the Great Duke, but united to the Royal Domain by *John Vasilivich*, and by him added also to the Style Imperial. It is also one of the Sees Episcopal. 5. *Rustow*, the See of one of the two Metropolitans, situate in a fruitful Soil, well stored with Fish, and yielding good plenty of Salt. One of the ancientest Principalities of all this Empire, and held accustomably by the second Son of the Great Duke as a State distinct; but conquered by *John Vasilivich*, Anno 1565, and added to the Style and Patrimony of the Great Duke himself, the younger Sons being from thenceforth put off with Pensions. 6. *Vologda*, a Bishop's See, situate in a fenny and woody Country; very strong by nature, and beautified with one of the strongest Castles of all this Estate, where the Great Duke doth sometime lay a part of his Treasure, that part especially which is raised of the English and Dutch Merchandise, which, being landed at the Port of *S. Nicholas*, is first brought hither, where having paid a new Toll or Custom, it goeth on to *Mosco*. Betwixt this City and that of *Jaroslav* before mentioned, for the space of an Hundred English miles, where stood in former times 50 goodly Villages (some of them of a mile in length) the Country in a manner is left wholly desolate and without Inhabitant; abandon'd by the People by reason of the insupportable Pressures which were laid upon them.

2. SMOLENSKO. 3. MOSAISKI. 4. PLESKOW.

THE Dukedom of *SMOLENSKO* is situate on the course of the River *Neiper* or *Boryssbenes*, full of many thick Forests, from whence they carry a great number of rich Skins yearly. Places of most observations in it are, 1. *Smolensko*, situate on the *Neiper*, a Bishop's See, about 80 *Polonian* miles from *Mosco*, begirt on every side with Mountains and spacious Woods. A large Town, and of great esteem in these parts of the Empire, and giving name unto this Province; which heretofore was governed in a free Condition under the Patronage and Protection of the King of *Poland*, in the time of *Alexander* a late King thereof; but by *Basilins* the Great Duke conquered and added unto this Estate: taken by the *Polanders* in the year 1610, after a long siege of two years, with the slaughter of 200000 *Muscovites*,
M m m

covites, and the loss of many of the Besiegers. It was besieged by the *Russ* to their great Loss and Ruine in 1616 and 1633; but taken at last in 1654 the 13th of *October*, and yielded to them in 1656 by the *Poles* upon the Treaty of Peace. 2. *Biela*, a Principality of it self, having the honour of a Castle, and reckoned in the usual Style of the *Knez* or Emperor.

MOSAIISKI hath in length 350 *Italian* miles, and as much in breadth; so called from *Mosaiski*, the chief Town hereof, and a Bishop's See; taken, together with the Territory or Province appertaining to it, from *Alexander* King of *Poland*, by *John* the Great Duke, Father of *Basilus* before mentioned.

P L E S C O W, or *P S K O W*, contains in length 350 *Italian* miles, in breadth 230 or thereabouts, so called from *Plescow*, or *Pskow*, the chief City in it, and a Bishop's See, great, powerful, and well wall'd about, the only walled City of all this Empire: so large within the Walls, that when it was besieged and taken in the year 1581 by *Stephen* King of *Poland*, there were in it for defence thereof 70000 Foot and 7000 Horse, besides the natural Inhabitants of it, which in all ordinary computation must be many more. In the year 1615, it was again taken by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and the *Russ* were forced to redeem it by the payment of a vast Sum of Money. It belonged formerly to the *Poles*, in the Right of the Dukedom of *Lituania*; taken from them by *Basilus* the Great Duke of *Muscovy*, Anno 1509, by whom and his Successors it is used in the Royal Style.

5. NOVOGORD.

NOVOGORD, or NOVOGROD, is one of the largest Provinces or Dukedoms in all *Russia*, bordering on *Livonia*, towards *Sinus Finnicus* or the Gulf of *Finland*. A colder Country and less fruitful than that of *Muscovy*, because situate somewhat farther North: the longest Summer day in *Mosco* not being above 18 hours; whereas in *Novogrod*, the chief City hereof, it is very near 20. By consequence, the Winter-nights being of that length must make the Air exceeding cold, and the Soil as comfortless. Here is in this Province the great Lake *Elmen*, spoken of before, 80 *Italian* miles in compass; as also that called *Ladoga*, before also mentioned.

Towns of most estimation in it are, 1. *Novogrod* it self, the wealthiest and goodliest City of all the North, affirmed to be in greatness not inferior to *Rome*; call'd therefore *Novogrod the Great* (to difference it from another of the same name near unto *Wolodomir*;) an Archbishop's See, and one of the four Mart Towns of the *Hanse*-Merchants, resorted to from all parts for the Trade of *Muscovy*, brought thither by Land, and thence transported through the *Baltick* to most parts of *Christendom*. So confident were they in those times of their power and strength, that they used to say, that *Men* could do nothing against God and them: but they found the contrary, when taken from the Crown of *Poland* by the Great Duke of *Muscovy* in 1477. In the year 1569, *John Basilowitz*, Duke of *Muscovy*, slew a vast number of its Inhabitants without cause, on a bare groundless Suspicion: and in 1611 it was also taken by the *Svedes*, who kept it till 1634; and then restored it to the *Russ*. The Trade hereof is since much decayed, by the finding out of the North-East passage to the Port of *St. Nicholas*, where the *English* and *Dutch* Merchants barter with the *Muscovite*. Yet still it keeps the reputation of the principal City; situate on the River *Naf*, which the *Dutch* call *Ny*. The Buildings are for the most part of Wood and Clay. It is distant from *Mosco* 120 *Dutch* Miles, and about 200 from the main body of the *Baltick*, between which and this City lieth the whole Bay of *Finland*, the Entrances whereof upon the *Duina* which leads towards *Novogrod*) are fortified with the strong Towns and Garrisons of *Narva* and *Revel*, both in the hands

of the King of *Sweden*; which is another great hindrance to the Trade of this Town. 2. *Narva*, on the North-Bank of *Duina*, where it falls into the Bay of *Finland*, or *Sinus Finnicus*, in the Province or Territory of *Wichidaw*: heretofore reckoned of as a part of *Livonia*; but being taken by *Basilus* the Great Duke, with the rest of this Country, and the Town of *Novogrod* it self, Anno 1477, it was impreguably Fortified by the care of his Son *Wasiliwich*, who for a reward unto the Architect, being a *Polonian*, put out both his Eyes, to disable him from building the like again. But having left all the Natives in their own Habitations, without abating either their strength or number, the Town and Castle not long after was betray'd to the King of *Sweden*, who still holds it. It was taken by the *Muscovites* in 1558, by the *Svedes* in 1581, and by the *Svedes* again in 1617. In the Year 1654, there being a War between the *Dutch* and *English*, the whole Trade of *Muscovy* was again driven this way. 3. *Pozow*, or *Pozovia*, and 4. *Volocoluc*; two strong Pieces, situate in the Borders against the *Poland*ers. 5. *Vobsko*, besieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland* with an Army of 100000 Men; who was forced to retire without taking it, with the loss of many of his best Captains and common Soldiers. It is distant from *Novogrod* 28 *Dutch* miles: the Country about it is called *Volsk*; where they say for certain, that all Cattel which are brought thither, of what hair or colour soever they be, upon a little stay they become all white. The People of this Tract have a Language (or some Dialect rather) peculiar only to themselves. 6. *Juanagorod*, a strong Castle not far from *Vobsko*, 40 miles from *Novogrod*, a Frontier Castle against the *Svedes* garrisoned in *Narva*, to repulse whose Inroads it was built.

In this Country, and not far from the Town of *Novogrod*, was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the *Sarmatians* and their Slaves. For when the *Asiatick Scythians* went to plant themselves in *Media*, and the parts adjoining, some of the *Sarmatians*, then Inhabitants of this Tract, went along for Company. Their long stay caused their Wives, despairing of their return, to comfort themselves with their Slaves both at bed and board; to whom they brought a lusty encrease of Youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joined together against them: the Slaves to retain their Wealth and Freedom which they were possessed of, the Women, for fear of the displeasure of their Husbands, and the Young men for defence of their Fathers and Mothers; with joint Forces they go out to meet them before their entry into the Country; neither are the Masters slow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the first sight of each other. The Masters, scorning to defile their Swords on so ignoble an Enemy, assault them with Whips, and by the terrour thereof got a signal Victory. In memory of which Battel, the People of that City have ever since stamped their Money with the figure of an Horseman shaking a Whip in his hands: And it is the Custom of all *Muscovy*, that the Maids in the time of wooing send such a Whip, curiously wrought by her own hands, to that Suitor whom she resolves on for her Husband, in token of her future Subjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

6. CORELIA. 7. BIARMA.

Sixty *Dutch* miles from *Novogrod* lieth the Province called *CORELIA*, extending Northwards as far as to a Branch of the Frozen Sea where the longest Day is 20 hours and a half; the Nights proportionable in the Winter make it cold and barren. It bordereth on the East of *Finland*, from which it is parted by a long and rough ridge of Mountains. By reason of which Situation, betwixt two great Princes, the People are enforced to pay Tribute to both, though properly the Subjects of the Great Duke of *Muscovy*. Chief Towns hereof are,

are, 1. *Kexholm* or *Hexholm*, in the hands of the *Swedes* ever since the year 1617. They took it once before in the year 1580; but then the *Russ* recovered it again, it stands upon the River *Voxin* near to the Western Shore of the Lake *Ladoga*, towards the South-Eastern bounds of *Finland*, 40 German miles from *Narva* to the North. And, 2. *Corelnburg*, the chief Towns of the Province, belonging with the rest of the Country unto the *Muscovite*. By some this Province is made a part of the Eastern *Lapland*; but, I think, erroneously: the People having some good Towns, and favouring of some Humanity, neither of which are known or heard of amongst the *Laplanders*. 3. *Nodenburg*, on the mouth of a Lake, which by the River called *Warfuga*, emptieth it self into the Bay of *S. Nicholas*.

On the North-side of that Branch or Arm of the Frozen Ocean which bounds *Corelia*, lieth the Western part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BIARMA*: the Country of the *Dikiloppi*, or wild *Lappians*, as the *Muscovites* call them, to whose Duke or Emperor they are subject. We had their Character before when we were in *Swethland*, nor shall we need to repeat it here: as barbarous and as rude as the worst sort of those mentioned in *Sericfunia*, and as Idolatrous as they; but more (if more may be) inclined to Lustfulness than the others. In the Winter Solstice, when the Sun entrencheth into *Capricorn*, they have Night for three whole months together: during which time, lurking in their Caves, they have leisure to consult with the Prince of Darkness: being very great Sorcerers, able (as some affirm) to raise Winds, Clouds, Tempests, and do many strange things. Towns here are none. Some Sheds and Cabins on the Sea-coasts, patched up by the Sailors for their reception and refreshment as they came on Land, and named according to their Fancies, but not here considerable.

8. *PETZORA*. 9. *CONDORA*. 10. *OB-DORA*. 11. *JUGRIA*.

Opposite to *Biarmia*, or *West-Lapland*, on the other side of the Bay, leading towards the Port of *St. Nicholas*, lieth a large Promontory or Head-land, stretching out far into the North, beyond the *Arctick* comprehending in it 4 Provinces of the *Russian Empire*; that is to say *Petzora*, *Condora*, *Obdora*, and *Jugria*: belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but won from them of late years by the *Russian Emperors*; extending by that means their Territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in Power or Patrimony. Howsoever somewhat must be said of them, because parts of this great Body which we are to dissect.

PETZORA, so called from a River of that name, is fenced on every side by Mountains and unpassable Rocks, extending Northwards to the Sea, and crossed with a vast Chain of Hills, part of the *Hyperborei*, spoken of before; so high, that a certain Man, having travelled in the ascent of them 17 days together, is said to have returned back again, despairing to attain the top of them: cover'd in the Winter-time with perpetual Snows, in the Summer with as scorching Heats, by the continual lying of the Sun in all parts thereof. The People are of a plain and simple Nature, and received the *Russian Faith* and Empire at one time together, *Anno* 1518. The chief Town of it is *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea, a small Town, but having three Churches in it: the People whereof, though otherwise sufficiently simple, as before is said, do in the Summer-time catch *Partridge*, *Ducks*, *Swans*, *Geese*, and other Fowl, which they salt and lay by till the Winter, and then live upon them. So good a Tutor is the Belly, that the Poet did not unfitly give it the Titles of *Artis Magister*, and *Ingenii largitor Venter*: whereof this may serve for one Example.

CONDORA lieth on the North of *Petzora*, more near the Pole; by consequence is a colder Country, and

of worse condition; one half of the Year being continual Day, and the other half as a long Night. The People are universally Idolaters, worshipping some Images (or Idols) in the shape of a Man, others in that of Bears, Wolves, &c. which they adorn with the richest Furs they can get, and hide them in their Caves for fear of the *Russes*; who if they chance to light upon them, as they hunt those parts for Sables; Foxes and Bevers, take away their Furs, and bestow a greater heat upon them in Fires. The chief Town hereof is *Pustozera*, over against *Nova Zemla*, on or near the great Lake called *Ozera*, whence it hath the name; situate in the 68 Degree of Northern Latitude, 50 minutes over. This Country lies to the South of *Petzora*, between it and *Düina* and the Frozen Ocean.

OB DORA, so called from the River *Ob*, on both sides of whose Banks it lieth, is the most North-Eastern Province of all those Dominions; won to the Obedience of the *Russes* in the Reign of *Theodore* the Son of *John*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*. At what time the People had no Cities, lived in Hoords or Companies; ate the Beast they took, knew no Corn nor Bread. They were then very good Archers, sharpening their Arrows with Fish-bones; with which Bones and the Sinews of the Beasts they sowed Furs together for their Clothing; which they wear inward in the Winter, outward in the Summer, covering their Houses with Elk-skins. By this *Theodore* were some Castles built on the River-side, to which he sent condemned Persons, and brought it into the form of a petit Kingdom. But his Successor *Boris* built *Tooma*, the chief Town hereof, with divers other Towns on both sides of the Water, not worth naming here. But notwithstanding this Subjection to the *Muscovite*, they continue still in their old Idolatry, worshipping an ancient Idol in form of an old Woman, holding in each Arm a Child, and a third at her Feet, called by them *Zlatu Bahu*, or the *Golden old Wife*; to which they offer precious Furs, sacrifice Harts, and therewith do consult touching things to come. But some account this for a Fable or a meer Mistake.

JUGRIA, or *JUHAR*, lieth also on the Northern Seas, but more South than either of the other, betwixt *Petzora* or *Pechora*, and the Province of *Düina*: the longest Day in Summer being not above 21 hours, or not fully that. The People are for the most part Idolaters, and worship the same Images as do those of *Obdora*: affirmed by some to be the Progenitors of the present *Hungarians*, who, coming out of this Country, over-ran all *Pannonia*, and there fixed their Dwellings. For proof of which it is affirmed that they spake the old *Hungarian Language*, not used but in this Country and the North parts of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*, which more learned Men affirm to be the *Jazygian*, the Language of the *Jazyges*, who anciently possessed that Country in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this dispute to another place, certain it is they are subject to the *Muscovite*, but so poor and miserable a People, that they have few Towns, and not many Houses; and so bare of Money, that instead thereof they pay Furs for Tribute to their Emperor.

12. *SEVERIA*. 13. *PERMIA*.
14. *REZAN*.

SEVERIA, or *SIBIOR*, as the *Muscovites* call it, lieth in a long Tract on the Banks of the River *Ob*, or *Oby*, South-East of *Obdora* and the rest of the four last Provinces. The Country is very fruitful, and abounding with all things necessary, notwithstanding that there be great Deserts, and some Forests also; but those Forests well stored with black Foxes, Ermines, Sables, and the like wild Beasts, which yield more profit by their rich Furs, than any more fertile Country doth by its Corn and Fruits. Inasmuch that in the year 1589 there were collected out of this Province only in the way of Tribute for the Emperor, 466 Timber of

Sables, (every Timber containing 40 Skins) five Timber of Martens, 180 Cases of black Foxes, (every Case containing 40 Skins) besides other Commodities. The Woods also do offer good plenty of Honey, and the Plains of Herbage, well watered with the River *Sem*, which falleth into the *Desna*, and both together into that of the *Nieper*, or *Borysthenes*. There are in it many Towns and Castles, the principal whereof are, 1. *Sibir*, on the West side of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province. 2. *Branki*, not far from the great Forest from hence named. 3. *Starodus*, 4. *Potuvolo*, and 5. *Czernigo*. [Here by mistake the two Provinces of Siberia and Severia (which differ as the farthest North-East and South-West points of Muscovia, betwixt which there is a vast Tract of ground) are confounded, part of the Towns belonging to one, part to the other, as do the two Rivers, the *Ob*, and the *Nieper*.]

The people hereof, by reason of their continual Skirmishes with the neighbouring *Tartars*, are the most Warlike Nations of all the *Russes*: heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their own, who at the first acknowledged no Superior, but afterwards was severally and successively tributary, to the *Lithuanians*, the *Polanders*, and the *Muscovite*; and finally, the last Duke, being falsely accused of Treason, was outed of his Estate by *Basilius* the Great Duke, who added it to the rest of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever since.

PERMIA is situate on the South-West of *Sibir*, or *Severia*, a large Province, distant 250 Dutch miles from *Mosco* to the North East; so called from *Perm*, or *Permia*, the chief Town hereof, situate on the River *Vischore*, or *Vistorna*. The second Town of note is called *Sicmiarskey*. The people (as also those of *Sibir*) are of the *Moscovite* Religion, and live most by hunting wild Beasts, whose Flesh they eat, and make good Merchandise of their Skins, many of which they pay yearly to the Great Duke in way of Tribute, who makes a good Commodity of them, selling them to the Merchant at excessive rates. They have no Corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elsewhere; but, instead of Bread, eat the flesh of Stags dried and prepared in the Sun; speaking a Language of their own, differing from the rest of the *Russes*; and instead of Horses and Oxen, make use of great Dogs and Stags, whom they train up to draw their Sleds from one place to another. There is good store of Woods amongst them; but they want Cedars, and they have paid dearly for that want. For *John Vasilivich*, meaning to pick a Quarrel with them, sent to them for certain loads of Cedar-wood whereof he knew their grew none in their Country; and upon word returned that they had no such Wood, he fined them at 12060 Rubbles.

REZAN, a great and goodly Province, is situate betwixt the River *Tanais* and that of *Occa*, the most fruitful Country of all *Russia*, and (if report be true) of the World also: it being credibly affirmed that one grain of Corn doth bring forth six Ears; the Stalks hereof growing so thick, that an Horse can hardly pass through them, or a Quail fly out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is also great plenty of Fruits, better than are to be found elsewhere in *Russia*; together with good store of Honey, Fish, Fowl, and other Commodities; besides Ermins, Bevers, and the like, common in these Countries. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Tulla*, famous for the Fountain or Spring head of the River *Tanais*, which riseth near it. 2. *Colluga*, well garrisoned for fear of the *Crim-Tartar*. 3. *Cossira*, a Bishop's See, as is also 4. *Rezan*, the principal of the Province, which it giveth name to, seated upon the Banks of the River *Occa*. Thirty six German miles from *Mosco*, to the South East, and 12 from the Fountains of *Tanais*. This Province lies between the *Don* and *Occa*, having *Maseoy* on the West, divided from it by the River *Aka*. A Country populous and well planted, affording to the Great Duke 15000 *Boiares*, or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back, and betwixt 30 and 40000 Foot.

15. *WIATHKA*. 16. *CASAN*.
17. *ASTRACAN*.

South-east of *Rezen*, beyond the banks of the River *Kamme*, and about 150 Dutch miles from *Mosco*, lieth the Province called *WIATHKA*, feyny and barren, but well stored with Fish and Honey, and wild Beasts good plenty. Heretofore subject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat of all fugitive Servants, here very gladly entertained: but the *Tartarians* being expelled, it was made Subject by *Basilius* to the Dukes of *Moscovie*. I do not read of any Towns which should be here, which makes me think that they do still retain so much of the *Tartar* with them as to live in Hoords and Companies, without any fixt Dwellings, or at the best in scattered houses, nor hitherto united into Towns and Villages; except it be the Town of *Wiathka* it self, built since the subjection of it to the *Muscovite*, and make a Garrison to defend these out parts of this Empire against the Incurfions of the *Tartars*.

CASAN, a Kingdom formerly of *Tartaria deserta*, lieth on the South-east of *Wiathka*, the most civil people of the *Tartars*, but owing much of that Civility to their conversation with the *Muscovites*, (though none of the civillest themselves) tilling their Lands and building Houses where they may with safety. For although the Soil hereof be tolerably fruitful and fit for Habitation, yet the Country for the most part is desolate and ill inhabited; partly by reason of some vast Desarts, lying betwixt the Cities of *Casan* and *Astracan*; but principally in regard of the *Crim-Tartar*, who will not suffer the *Moscovite* to plant it with Colonies of his own people, nor the Natives to live there in quiet, except only in the Western parts, where they are protected by Garrisons. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Cusan*, upon the River *Volga*, which gives name to the Kingdom; since the Subjection of this People to the great Duke, and since their Conversion to the Faith, made a Bishop's See. 2. *Surick*, upon the River *Sure*, in the middle of the vast Desarts between *Casan* and *Astracan*; built by *Basilius* the great Duke for a Stage or resting-place for Merchants and Travelers, that there they might repose themselves without fear of the *Tartars*. The people hereof had once a King of their own, as before was said; the last of which named *Chelcalcesk*, submitted himself unto *Basilius* the great Duke, and became tributary; but afterwards revolting, he was vanquished by *John Vasilivich*, Anno 1553, and his Kingdom thereupon united to the Empire of *Russia*: the Emperors since that time writing themselves *Czar Casanski*, or King of *Casan*. And possibly enough it is that *Basilius*, who first made it tributary, might from hence take the name of *Basilius Casan*, according to the custom of the ancient Romans.

Under the Government hereof are the *Czeremessi*, a People that live in great Forests without any Houses, living for the most part of Honey and the flesh of wild Beasts, with the Skins of which they are apparelled. Their Language is different from the rest. They are swift of foot, and very good Archers, carrying their Bows in their hands continually, and practising their Children so timely in it, that they give them nothing to eat (after such an Age) until they can hit a White which is set before them.

ASTRACAN lieth also South East of *Casan*, more near unto the *Caspian* Sea; parted from *Casan* by those Deserts spoken of before, but situate on the same branch of the River *Volga*; which, having run a course of 2000 Italian Miles, dischargeth it self into this Sea with no less than 70 Mouths or Channels. This is a great mistake, there being in reality but 4, or at most 5 Mouths. It took this name from *Astracan* the chief Town hereof, situate about 20 Italian miles from the fall of one of those 70 Mouths or Channels into the *Caspian*; by the commodiousness whereof it is one of the best Towns of Trade in all these Dominions, the *Armenian* Merchants coming

coming hither, and bartering their Silks and Manufactures for the Furs and other natural Commodities of the *Russes* or *Moscovites*. A Kingdom formerly, but a Kingdom of less esteem than that of *Casan*, conquered (together with it) by *Basilus* the Great Duke, *Anno* 1494, and by him made a Christian. But afterwards revolting, they were more absolutely subdued by *John Vasilovich*, who brought into the field against them no fewer than 120000 Horse and 200000 Foot, (enough to over-run a far greater Country) and yet had hardly got the better, but for the terror of his great Ordnance, which the others wanted. Upon that Victory it was made a Member of the Empire of *Russia*, the Emperor whereof hath since styled himself the King of *Astracan*.

18. *NOVOGORDIA Inferior*.19. The *MORDWITS*.

BUT it is now time we return towards *Europe*, out of which we have wandred up and down in the skirts of *Asia*, in tracing out the several Provinces of this Empire, since our first crossing over the Bay of *Grandvic*, or *Saint Nicolas*, into the Country of *Petzora*. But in our way we must first take a view of the Dukedom of *Novogrod* the *Lower*, so called to difference it from *Novogrod* (surnamed the *Great*) spoken of before, situate almost in the midst betwixt *Casan* and *Mosco*, distant from the last 100 *Polonian* miles, and 60 miles from the Borders of the other; every *Polonian* mile being reckoned at four *Italian*. The Country is generally very rich both for Tillage and Pasturage, inferior unto none in all this Estate but *Resan* and *Wolodomir* only. So called from *Novogrod*, the chief Town situate at the Confluence of the *Occa* and *Volga*; besides which it hath the neighbourhood of a very great Lake, which storeth it plentifully with Fish. A City of great esteem in all this Empire, partly for the great number of Houses, in that not easily equalled by any other; partly for an impregnable Castle cut out of the main Rock with incredible charges in the time of *Basilus* the Great Duke; but principally for a stately and magnificent Temple, built above 600 years ago, in imitation (or emulation, as some say) of the famous Church of *S. Sophia* in *Constantinople*. To this Town the Story of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* Slaves ought, in my mind, to be ascribed; though commonly reported of the other *Novogrod*, in the West parts of this Empire. My reason is, because it is not likely that the *Sarmatians* dwelling on the Borders of the *Baltick* Sea should cross all this Country, to join with the *Asiatick* *Scythians*, so remote from them in a needless War, which those of this Tract might well do, as near Neighbours to them, if not of the same Nation or Extraction with them: nor is it probable that the Slaves would suffer their Masters to waste all the Country as far as the *Baltick* Sea, and to increase their strength by the Spoil thereof, before they met them in the Field to give them Battle.

Subject to the Estate hereof are the *MORDWIT Tartars*, lying on the South, betwixt the *Volga* and the *Don* or *Tanaïs*, where it beginneth to return Westwards towards the *Euxine*. A people much of the same nature with the *Czeremissais*, but that they have some Villages and scattered Houses, which the other either want or else care not for. They are Idolaters for the most part (and the rest *Mahometans*) carrying their Idols in their Carts wheresoever they go; worshipping that Beast all day which they first see in the morning, and swearing by it for that day, as their chiefest Deity.

20. *WOROTINE*. 21. *TUVER*.22. *WOLODOMIR*.

AND now again we are in *Europe*, where the Great Duke hath almost as many Titles as Towns with Territories. Four of them (besides those before) are either situate in the Province of *Moscovy*, or else so in-

termingled with the Towns thereof, that they may easily be taken (or mistaken) for Members of it. The principal are,

WOROTINE, seated on the West side of the River *Occa*, a distinct Dukedom of it self; so called from *Worotin* the chief City of it, built upon that River, about 3 *Dutch* miles from *Colluga* in the Province of *Rezen* lying on the farther Bank thereof, beautified with a strong Castle, and a pleasant Soil. The 2. *Miscneck*, the next Town of note, remarkable for the Head of the River *Occa*, which ariseth in the fields adjoining.

TUVER, or *OTUVER*, as some call it, is a large and goodly Country lying along the Banks of the River *Volga*; so populous, that it is said to contain 40000 *Boiars* or Gentlemen fit to serve on horseback, and double that number of the common or inferior sort. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperor, and is so called from *Tuver* the chief Town thereof, and a Bishop's See; affirmed to be a fairer and more stately City than *Mosco* it self, from which it is distant 36 *Dutch* miles.

WOLODOMIR is one the most fruitful Countries in all *Russia*, not parallel'd by many Countries in the World; the Soil here (if all be true which is said of it) yielding such an Increase, that many times the Husbandman hath twenty, and sometimes twenty five, for one. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperor and hath precedency before *Moscovy* in the Style Imperial. So called from *Wolodomir*, the chief City of it, and a Bishop's See, and that so named from the Founder, who probably was the same *Valadomir* (one of the first Kings of the *Russes*) who married *Helena* the Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Constantinople*. The City is situate 36 *Polonian* miles on the East of *Mosco*, anciently the chief Seat and Residence of the Great Duke, and so continued till the time of *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, who first translated it to *Mosco*, that from thence he might more easily confront and oppose the *Tartars*, with whose Irruptions and Invasions both he and his Predecessors had long been troubled. Under the Government hereof is the City of *Susdali*, of great esteem, and very well peopled as long as the Royal Seat remained at *Wolodomir*, betwixt which and *Mosco* it is seated. After it fell into decay, and being once destroyed by the *Tartars*, could never since recover its ancient Lustre; having now little to uphold its reputation but a Bishop's See.

23. *DWINA*.

D*WINA*, so called from the chief Town, is situate on the Confluence of two Rivers, *Juch* and *Sachona*, whence it hath the name; *Dwine* in the Language of that Country signifying *two*, as *twain* doth with us amongst Country-people. A Country of great extent, but exceeding barren; which makes the Villages hereof to stand very thin, the Towns (considering the great compass of it) to be very few, and the Inhabitants for the most part to live upon dried Fish and the Flesh of wild Beasts, which they have no want of. The chief Commodity is Salt, with which they use to furnish the neighbouring Provinces, and provide such Necessaries for themselves as they stand in need of. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Dwine*, spoken of before, situate in the midst of the Province on the meeting of the said two Rivers, which here united into one Stream take the name of *Dwine*, or *Dwina*, the greater; known by that name until its fall into the Northern Ocean in the Bay of *Grandvic*. 2. *Sagan*, so called of the River (one of the two which makes the *Dwine*) upon which it is seated. 3. *Colmagro*. 4. *Pinneguc*, two strong Castles.

Unto this Province (because I know not else how to dispose of them) I must reduce these four Towns following; that is to say, 1. *Usting*, a Bishop's See, situate on the Western side of the River, over against the Town of *Dwine*, and in a Country so ill furnished with Necessaries, that the people eat dried Fish instead of Bread, but have Salt enough to season it from those of *Dwine*.

2. *Cargapol*, a Bishop's See also, on the same side of the River that *Dwina* is of. 3. *S. Nicolas*, a well known Port, and a Bishop's See; situate at the influx of *Dwina* into the Gulf of *Granvicius*, or the Bay of *S. Nicolas*, from hence denominated. A Town much Traded since the discovery of the North-east passage by the *English*, and the removal of theirs and the *Dutch* Traffick from *Novogrod* hither; from hence dispersed with more ease and speed into all the parts of this vast Empire. 4. *S. Michael*, on the Sea-side, commonly called *Archangel*, a Town of great Trade, by the *English* especially, who have of late here fixed their Staple, to the great enriching of the place; by reason whereof the *English* Merchants have not only great Priviledges and Immunities (as the Authors of so great a benefit unto this Estate) not granted to others, but the whole Nation have found better and more noble entertainment from them than any others have received. The cause of which was primarily the great opinion which their Emperors had of *Q. Elizabeth*, who held very good correspondence with them, continued ever since by mutual Embassies on both sides; and secondly, the conformable Behaviour of the *English* themselves, so acceptable to those Barbarians (both Prince and People) that when *John Vasilivich* nailed the Hat of another foreign Ambassador to his Head, for his too much perverseness, he used our *Sir Thomas Smith* with all kindness imaginable. Another time, when the Jesuite *Possevine* began to perswade with him to approve of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; upon the information of the *English* Ambassador, that the Pope was a proud Prelate, and would make Princes kiss his feet, he grew into such a rage, that the Jesuite was afraid he would have beat out his Brains. But to return again to the Port of *St. Nicolas*; it is so called from an Abbey there built unto that Saint, the Tutelary Saint and local Patron of the Nation. Which said, I will set sail from this Port to the *Russian* Islands, and see what may be said of them to our present purpose.

24. The *R U S S I A N* Islands.

THE *R U S S I A N* Islands are but two, both of them in the Northern or Frozen Ocean, on the Coasts of this Country; that is to say, 1. *Sir Hugh Willoughby's* Island, and 2. *Nova Zemla*; both subject (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Moscovie*.

1. *WILLOUGHBIES* Island was so called from *Sir Hugh Willoughby*, because he first discovered it, *Anno* 1553, and was hereabouts found frozen to death the next year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward* the sixth, to find out a new way to *Muscovy*, *Cathai* and *China*; he proceeded so far as to this Island; (situate almost opposite to the Bay of *S. Nicolas*) where the Weather proved so extreme, and the Frosts so vehement, that his Ship was set fast in the Ice, and all his people with himself frozen to death, in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact description of their Voyage and Fortunes. Notwithstanding which disastrous beginning, the Enterprize was pursued by some noble Adventurers, as *Jenkinson*, *Burroughs*, *Pet. Jackman*, and others of the *English* Nation, who opened the way as far as to the River *Ob*, (the East Bounder of *Russia*) but by reason of the length of the way, the vast floating Islands of Ice, and perpetual Night for many Months together in Winter, could advance no farther.

2. *NOVA ZEMLA*, situate on the East of *Willoughby's* Island, opposite to *Pustozera* in *Condora* before mentioned, was first discovered by such Adventurers as followed *Willoughby's* Design. Famous for nothing but a race of short-statured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of *Pigmies*: not yet so far discovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Russes*, who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither Religion, nor Civility, nor the Prescripts of any

Law; but that they worshipped the Sun, Moon, and Northern Star, to which they offer an yearly Sacrifice of their Deer; that the Island is woody, desert, and not easie for Travel, having in it neither green Bough nor Grass, yet harbouring great store of Bears, and such ravenous and dangerous Beasts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrentson* and his Associates, employed by the *Hollanders* for this Discovery, *Anno* 1594, and 1596, in which last year, after many dreadful Combats with huge flakes of Ice, they were forced to winter in this Island, where they built an House, as well to preserve themselves from being buried in Snow, as from being devoured by the Bears, (some of them 13 foot in length) which, with the loss of two of their company devoured by those savage creatures, they at last effected; some of them coming home in safety the *October* following. And though they seemed to give some hope that a way might be found unto *Cathai* on the North of this Island (themselves having gone as far North as the 81. Degree of Latitude, within 9 of the Pole) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the success impossible.

And so I leave it, to return to the Story of *Russia*, called anciently by the name of *Sarmatia Europea*, but known no farther Northwards than the Head of *Tanais*. And for *Sarmatia Europea*, it was bounded in the time of *Ptolomy* by the *Baltick* Sea and some *Terra Incognita* on the North, the *Jazyges Metanasta* (now *Transylvania* and the *Upper Hungary*) upon the South, the River *Vistula*, or *Wessel*, which divided it from *Germany*, upon the West, and the *Tanais* upon the East, beyond that, all along the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mare Caspium*, and as far North as any Conqueror had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Asiatica*: the Countries farther Eastward being then called *Scythia*. By which accompt, as *Russia*, containeth not all *Sarmatia Europea*, of which *Prussia* and the rest of the incorporate Provinces of *Poland* pass for a part; so neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanais* into *Asiatica*. The ancient Inhabitants, called by a general name *Sarmata*, by the *Greeks Sauromata*, were subdivided, for so much of this part of it was then made known, into the *Agathyrsi*, *Rutheni*, *Pagiritæ*, dwelling in the North; the *Osyli*, *Alauni*, *Roxolani*, &c. dwelling in the South. Amongst many other barbarious Nations, these were some of the principal. And from these *Roxolani*, as the principal of all the rest, *Matthias a Michou*, a learned *Polander*, doth derive the Original of the *Rosses*, (which we now call the *Russians*;) seconded herein by the more learned *Bochartus*, who proveth out of ancient Authors, that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Chersonesus* (from which the passage into this Country is both short and easie) have been formerly called *Rhos*. Ταυρος τὸς Ῥῶς καλεῖσθαι, *Tauros vocari gentes Rhos*, as he saith from *Tzetzes*. Which *Ros*, or *Rhofes*, first mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmatian* People, might get the name of *Roxolani*; and afterwards possessing the more Northern Countries, or mingling with the *Rossi*, of Mount *Taurus* (from whom those of *Taurica* descended) in their enterprizes on *Constantinople* and the parts adjoining, return to their old name of *Rossi*. The *Rossi*, or *Russians*, were then the first Lords of this Country generally, the *Moscovites* possessors of a Province only; so called from the *Moschi*, spoken of by *Lucan* in his *Pharsalia*, and placed by *Pliny* near the head of the River *Phasis*, which rising from the *Armenian* Mountains, falls into the *Euxine*. Derived no doubt from *Mesech*, (or *Mosoch*, as the Ancients called him) the Son of *Japhet*, placed originally in the North and North-east of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*; where *Pliny*, as before it said, hath fixed the *Moschi*, and where there is a long Chain of Hills, which most of the old Writers call *Montes Moscici*. But to return unto the *Rossi*, we hear not of them by this name till the time of *Michael* the third, Emperor of *Constantinople*; in whose Reign they infested the *Euxine* Sea, and had the boldness to attempt the Imperial City, *Anno* 864; said by

by *Cedrenus* and some other of the Eastern Writers to be a People of Mount *Taurus*, (next neighbours to *Mesech* or the *Moschi*) Failing in their attempt upon *Constantinople*, and not willing to go home again, they spread themselves, with their Confederates and Associates in this expedition, upon the North-west Banks of the *Euxine* Sea; enlarging their bounds Northwards with less opposition than they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Constantinople* being once again in vain attempted in the Reigns of *Constantine* the 7. and *Henricus Auiceps*. Converted to the Christian Faith, or growing into better terms with the Eastern Emperors, *Helena*, Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is married to *Valodimir* one of their Kings. From that time forwards they turned their Forces on the *Polanders* and their weaker neighbours; save that, provoked by the death of one of their Country, slain accidentally at *Constantinople* in a private Quarrel, they made another fruitless Journey against that City, in the time of *Michael Calaphates*. Enlarging their Estate to the West and South, they became Masters of a great part of *Sarmatia Europea*, *Lituania*, *Podolia*, *Russia*, *Nigra*, and other Provinces, now subject to the Crown of *Poland*, being then parts of their Estate. Anno 1240, the *Tartars* under the Conduct of *Bathu*, or *Baydo*, the Son of *Occatan Chan*, broke in upon them and subdued them: the Country before this entire, under one sole King, being broken afterwards into divers petit and inferior Governments, according to the will and pleasure of the insolent Victors. The principal of these (descended from the former Kings) were Lords of *Volodimir*, *Mosco*, and some other Cities; held by them with no other Title than that of Lords of *Moscovy*, and for that Tributary to the *Tartars*, as were all the rest. Their Seat was originally at *Volodimir*, till the time of *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, the fifth Lord of the *Russes*, descended of the old Regal Line, taking a good liking of the River and Town of *Mosco*, repaired the Town, being before but mean and ordinary, and made it the chief Seat of his Principality. From whence the residue of the *Russes*, united in succeeding times unto this Estate by Marriages, Fraud and Conquest, had the name of *Moscovites*. But notwithstanding this increase of their power and Empire, the *Tartars* held them for their Vassals, and tyrannized upon the Country with a barbarous Insolency. Under which Thralldom they long groaned, till the *Tartarians*, being divided amongst themselves, and grown less terrible to their neighbours, were outed of their Power and Command here by the valour of *John*, Son of *Basilus* the second, who thereupon changed the Title of Lord into that of Duke, and after into that of Great Duke, as his Fortune thrived. Yet not so great, but that he was contented to be an Homager of the *Tartars*: it being finally agreed on at the end of their Wars, that the *Tartars* should relinquish all their Holds in the Country; and on the other side, that once every year, within the Castle of *Mosco*, the Great Duke, standing on foot, should feed the Horse of the *Crim-Tartar* with Oats out of his own Cap. This Homage was by *Basilus* changed into a Tribute of Furs; which being also denied by his Successors, (as they grew in power) occasioned the long Wars betwixt the Nations; the *Tartars* always pressing on them by sudden Inroads, sometimes by Armies of no less than 200000 fighting men. But notwithstanding all their Power, and the Friendship of the *Turk* to boot, the *Moscovite* is not only able to assert his Sovereignty, but hath also wrested from them many goodly Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Country, I shall not trouble my self (as I see some do) in tracing a Succession of them as far as from the times of *Augustus Caesar*; when neither the *Rossi* nor the *Moschi* had here any footing. We will therefore go no higher than the time of *George*, whose Daughter *Anne* I find to have been married to *Henry* the first of *France*. From whom in a direct Line descended another *George*, with whom we do intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the last King of

the *Russes* before the coming of the *Tartars*. He, wisely yielding to the Storm, waved the Title of King, contented only with the Title of Lord, as more safe for him, and less invidious to the *Tartars*. The fifth from whom, called *John*, (as before is said) having removed his Seat to *Mosco*, took to himself the Title of Lord of *Mosco*, the chief Seat of that Power and Sovereignty, which he transmitted afterwards to his Posterity; affecting for that cause the Title of Duke of *Moscovie* (though all the conquered Towns and Territories have their place also in his Style) as much as that of Emperor of *Russia*; which some of them have assumed also since the time of *Basilus*, who stiled himself *Basilus*, by the Grace of God, Emperor and Lord of *Russia*, Great Duke of *Volodimir*, *Moscovie*, *Novogrod the Great*, *Plescom*, *Smolensko*, *Tuver*, *Jugar*, *Wiathka*, *Bulgar*, &c. Lord and Great Prince of the *Lower Novogrod*, *Czernigow*, *Rezan*, *Wologda*, *Psom*, *Biele*, *Rostow*, *Jarossine*, *Poloskie*, *Bielloziere*, *Odore*, *Obdora*, *Condora*, &c. King of *Casan* and *Astracan*. But leaving them to their swelling and voluminous Title, (little inferior unto that of the Kings of *Spain*) let us next look on the Succession from the time aforesaid of

The Lords of MOSCOVIE of the old Royal RUSSIAN Line.

A. Ch.

- 1237 1. *George*, the last King of the *Russes*, and first Lord of the *Russes* of the Royal Line.
2. *Jaceflaus*.
3. *Alexander*.
4. *Daniel*.
5. *John*, who transferred the Seat to *Mosco*.
6. *John* II.
7. *Basilus*.
8. *Demetrius*.
9. *Georgius* II.
10. *Basilus* II.

The Great Dukes of MOSCOVIE.

- 1450 1. *John*, the first Great Duke, who shook off the *Tartarian* Bondage.
2. *Basilus Casan*, won the Provinces of *Severia*, *Roscovia*, and *Smolensko*, with the Realms of *Astracan* and *Casan*.
- 1533 3. *John Basilus*, conquered *Livonia* and *Lituania*. Both which his Successor,
- 1548 4. *John Basilides*, or *Wasilwisch*, lost in his age; though in his youth he had subdued the *Noyhacensian Tartars* to his Empire, and vanquished *Selim* Emperor of the *Turks*, Anno 1569. With this King the *English* first began to confederate. He died the 18th of April 1584.
- 1584 5. *Theodorus Johannides*, the last of the old Royal Line of *Moscovie*, called *Phedor* in *Russ*.
- 1591 6. *Boris Theodorus*, Brother to the Wife of the last Great Duke, partly by the last Will of his Predecessor, partly by practising with the people, obtained the Empire, but being an unmerciful Tyrant, was dispossessed by the *Polanders*, coming in favour of one
- 1605 7. *Demetrius*, pretending himself to be the Son of *John Wasilwisch* (and generally believed to be so) preserved in a Monastery from the Tyranny of *Boris*, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the *Polander*; by whose aid he overcame the Tyrant, and rooted out his Family, and was with great joy crowned Emperor in the City of *Mosco*. But the *Russian* Lords disdaining to have a Prince imposed on them from *Poland*, rose in Arms against him, and

and at last vanquished and slew him in open Field: his Wife, a noble *Polonian* Lady, being sent poorly home, and the *Polanders* beaten out of the Country.

- 1606 8. *Basil Juanniwich*, surnamed *Sniskius*, the chief of the Conspirators, was by the rest of his Faction chosen *Knez* or Emperor, and held the State with great Trouble till the year 1610, when
- 1610 9. *Demetrius II.* another pretender to the State as the Son of *John Basiliwich* also, in opposition unto *Sniskius*, set up by a stronger Faction, gave occasion to the *Polander* to work upon this Distemper, by whom *Sniskius* was taken Prisoner, *Demetrius* slain, *Smolensko* and other great Towns subdued, and *Vladislaus*, Prince of *Poland*, recommended to the *Russians* to be chosen Emperor. But the *Russes*, loth to fall under the Power of the *Polander*; and weary of their own Confusions, made choice at last of
- 1615 10. *Michael Fedrovitz*, Son of *Theodore* the Patriarch of *Mosco*, who at last settled this vast Empire, and managed it in a more constant way of Peace with the *Turk*, *Tartar*, *Polonian*, and *Swetherland*, than any of his Predecessors had done before him.
- 1646 11. *Alexius Michaelwitz* (or the Son of *Michael*) succeeded his Father in the Empire; troubled at first with some Distempers in the State (as in all other Countries about that time) but now quietly settled, Anno 1648.
- This Prince died in 1675: in the year 1664 he was 34 years old, being born the 17th of March, 1630.
- 1675 12. *Fædor Alexovitz*, Son of *Alexius*, succeeded his Father. This Prince died in May in the year 1682, without Issue, though twice Married.
- 1682 13. *Alexovitz* and *Peter*, both Brothers of *Fædor*, were set up and now Reign together; the Eldest of these was but 10 years old, and half blind, and altogether unfit for Government, and therefore the *Boiars* passed him by and set up his younger Brother; upon which the 15th, 16th, and 17th of June a Tumult was made by the Army in *Mosco*, and many of the great Men being Assassinated, they set up the Elder Brother with the Younger, and they have hitherto made a shift to Reign together about 5 years. In the year 1689 a Conspiracy being discovered to Murder the younger Brother (or at least pretended) he sent the Elder into a Monastery, and began to govern alone.

The Formalities with which these great Emperors are invested or settled in the Throne are not many nor state-ly; such as they be, I here afford you out of the History of the Life of *Johannes Basilides*, written in *Latin* by *Paulus Oderbornius*. On the 2d of June, Anno 1583, *Theodorus Johannides* went towards the Temple of *S. Michael*, being the principal Church in all *Mosco*; the Streets all cover'd with Flowers, the Doors of the Citizens crowned with Garlands, the Air echoing with the noise of Flutes and Trumpets, and the People so crowding to behold their Prince, that had not the Guard with naked Swords forc'd a passage through them, it had been impossible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church door, the Lords of the Country (*Knezes* as we call them) went out to meet him; and the Archbishop of *Mosco*, clad in his *Pontificalibus*, when he was come into the Church, imbraced him. The Pavement of the Church was hidden with Tapestry, and the Stalls adorned with costly Hangings. The Great Duke late

down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of Silk, buttoned down with golden Buttons: on his Head he wore a Purple Cap spangled with rich Jewels, and on his Fingers abundance of Rings. Being thus seated, the Patriarch made a Prayer to God to bless him, his People, and his Government: which was seconded by the joyful Shouts and Acclamations of his Subjects; amongst whom no small store of Silver-money was flung by the Treasurer, and so they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Country is meerly Tyrannical, the Emperor being absolute Lord of the Lives, Lands and Goods of all his Subjects: all of them, the Noble as well as the base, subscribing themselves in their Petitions to him by the name of *Keloptery*, that is, Slaves. Whereupon *Mahomet*, a *Turkish Bashaw*, was used to say, that his Master and the *Muscovite* were the two most absolute Princes in all the World. First for their Goods; when any Ambassador returns home, the Great Duke takes from him all the Presents which he hath received, giving him perhaps some small Reward, perhaps none at all: and as for Lands, they pass not from Father to Son, but as he confirms it. But more particularly (besides the case of *Permia* spoken of before) *John Vasilivich* sent a Command to *Mosco*, to provide a Coal-pack of live Fleas for a Medicine: and when the Citizens returned answer that it was impossible, he fined them at 700 Rubbles for their Disobedience. Another time he laid a Mulct of 300000 Rubbles upon his Nobility, because he had no good Sport in his Hunting: which they again extorted from the common people; and under colour of want, commanded from some Bishops and Monasteries the sum of 100000 Rubbles, from some 50000, more or less from others, according unto their Revenues. And it is usual with the best of them to cause the *Boiars* (or Gentlemen which serve on Horseback) to pretend themselves robbed, that he may send unto the City to find out the Felon, and, on a *Non est inventus*, Fine them at discretion, sometimes 8000, sometimes 10000, and sometimes 20000 Rubbles. Then for their Lives, there is a Story, that *Vasilivich* having found that one of his Secretaries had received a Goose stuffed full of Silver for a Bribe, caused him to be brought into the Market-place of *Mosco*; where without any legal Tryal, he commanded the Executioner first to cut off his Legs about the Shins, and then his Arms about the Elbows, (still asking the miserable Man how he liked Goose-flesh) and in the end to cut off his Head, in similitude of a Goose ready for the Spit. And that they may the better preserve this Power, the Great Dukes seldom shew themselves unto the People but in Apparel of inestimable value, joining the Ornaments of a Bishop unto the Majesty of a King, by wearing a Mitre on their Heads shining with Diamonds and rich Stones: and when they wear it not on their Heads, they place it before the Chair of State (over which are the Images of *Christ* and the Blessed Virgin) holding in their hands a most Rich Crozier-Staff, and all their Fingers full of Rings. And upon solemn Festivals and Entertainments the great Chamber is beset with Cupboards of Plate of infinite value, and filled with Men clothed with Cloth of Gold to the very foot; all of them seeming to be Men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other than the gravest and portliest Citizens of *Mosco*, richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperor's Wardrobe; which to such as do not understand the Fraud, look like so many Princes, and cause no small wonder at his Magnificence. So that the People seeing him in such Royal State, and knowing no more than what they are taught at home, reverence him as Slaves, not Subjects, and look upon him rather as a God than a King.

Having so absolute a Command on their Lives and Goods, it will be easily supposed that he may raise what Forces and amass what Treasures he hath a mind to. First, for his Forces, it is said that he is able to raise

raise 300000 Horse, if occasion be: and that he may come near that number it is more than probable, in that *John Vasilivich*, in his War against those of *Astracan*, had actually 120000 Horse; and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the *Boiars*, bound by their Tenure to serve with Horse whenever he pleaseth; and that there are 110 Men chosen by the Emperor, and by him enfeoffed with Lands, (during pleasure only) who for these Lands are to find 65000 Horse with all things necessary for the Wars, and those in a continual readiness fit for present Action. Then for such Horse as he himself doth keep in continual pay, there are no fewer than 25000 which attend him as a Guard to his Person, all of them well-experienced Men and fit for Service: which added to the 65000 spoken of before, make up a standing Body of 90000. Had he Foot answerable unto this proportion of Horse, there were no dealing with him; but therein his *Militia* is defective: *Vasilivich* to his great Army of 120000 Horse having but 20000 Foot; the Foot-men which he hath in continual Pay amounting to 12000 only, far short of such a standing Body of Horse as before we spake of. And this defect hath been the reason why the *Polanders* with far less Armies have prevailed against them: the Great Duke not being able with all his power to hinder King *Stephen* of *Poland* from taking *Villocolne*, or besieging *Plescom* (though his Army was not above 60000 in both Horse and Foot) for want of standing Bands of Foot to make good his ground. Generally both Horse and Foot are very obedient to their Captains and Superiour Officers: patiently enduring all Discommodities of Cold, Rain, and Hunger; (in that regard fitter to keep a Fortress than serve in Field) and so regardless of their Lives in the day of Battel, that they will rather loose them than either yield themselves Prisoners or demand Quarters.

Of late years they have taken into pay many *Scotch* and *Polish* Gentlemen, who have endeavoured to teach their Soldiers the modern way of Exercise used by other Countries, and to improve their Foot; which may in time make them an overmatch for all their Neighbours; but we see however no great effect of this in their War began at the Solicitation of the *Poles* against the *Crim Tartars* in the year 1686, entered upon in 1687, without any Success; and now carried on, but with what Effect is not yet known.

This Prince has extended his Dominions since our Author wrote, to the South as far as *Persia*, the *Caspian* Sea, and the City of *Tarky*, in 41 Degrees of Latitude, by which he is become Neighbour to the *Georgians* and *Persians*, who can yet do him no damage: to the North-

East upon the Frozen Sea he has taken in the *Samoeds*, and enlarged his Borders beyond the River *Obb*: to the South-West he has the Province of *Severa* extending as far as the *Boristhenes*, whose Inhabitants are called the *Russ-Cossacks*, and are very warlike, strong and numerous; so that he has only three Enemies to fear, the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Pole*, and the *Swede*. And as for the last, he is not much in pain; he is now conjoined with the *Poles* to conquer the *Crim-Tartar* and the *Turks* being low, he might have succeeded in it, if his own *Cossacks* had not proved Treacherous and Disobedient.

The Revenues of this Country have been infinitely improved, not only by the Silver, Gold, and other Merchandize Imported by the *Dutch* and *English*, but by the vast Numbers of *Scotch*, *English*, *Hollanders*, *Poles*, *Germans*, and *Swedes*, which have gone thither and taught those People Husbandry, Mechanick Arts, Manufactures and Civility, by which they are very much improved and enriched, and their Traffick is enlarged beyond belief, and consequently the Power and Revenues of this Prince (who is called the *Czar* in imitation of the word *Caesar*, which they cannot pronounce) are thereby much advanced, and grow every Year greater and greater, especially since the *Hollanders* have taken large quantities of Corn yearly off his hands.

For his Revenues, they may be what he will himself, considering (besides his extraordinary power of oppressing his Subjects before-mentioned) the many ordinary ways he hath of amassing Treasure: viz. the Forestalling of home-bred Commodities, and ingrossing the foreign; selling them at what price he list, and hindring all Men else from Trade till his own be sold; Provision of Rent-corn and Victual, raised in some years to 200000 Rubbles; Rent-wood and Hay to 30000, Poll-Money to 400000, Customs on Merchandise to 800000. By which and other means of collecting Monies, and the Domain of his Crown, though he raise vast Sums: yet it is thought that, his Household-charges being deducted, there remain not towards all other Expences three millions of Rubbles; every Rubble being as much as an *English* Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portal open of two Leaves and as many Degrees Or.

There are in *RUSSIA*

Patriarch 1.

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 18.

And so much for *RUSSIA*.

O F P O L A N D.

POLAND is bounded on the East with *Russia* and the *Crim-Tartar*, from whom it is parted by the River *Borysthenes*; on the West with *Germany*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea and some part of *Russia*, on the South with the *Carpathian* Mountains, and the *Niester*, which divide it from *Hungary*, *Transylvania* and *Moldavia*.

It is an aggregate Body, consisting of many distinct Provinces united into one Estate, of which *Poland*, being the predominant, hath given name to the rest, called altogether the Realm of *Poland*: and that so named from *Pole*, which in the *Sclavonian* Language (the common Language of the Country) signifieth *plain*; because it is but little swelled with Hills. It is of Figure round, in compass 2600 miles, situate under the eighth and twelfth Climates; so that the longest Day in the Southern part is but 16 hours, and about 18 hours in the parts most North.

This Country is plain, but full of Woods, which serve to rectifie the Air, being naturally so cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes; instead whereof they use that kind of Drink called Ale, in former times the usual Beverage of *England* and this Country only. Barley they have, and Pulse in such abundant measure, that no small quantities of each are transported yearly: nor yield they any thing at all to *Denmark* or *Hungary* for their plenty of Cattle. But of this more in our description of the several Provinces.

The People are very industrious, and studious of all Languages, especially of the *Latine*; to which they are so devoted, that there is scarce a mean man who is not able in some measure to express himself in it. According to their abilities they are rather prodigal than truly liberal; and good Soldiers generally. The Peasants live in miserable Servitude unto their Lords; the Lords in such Equality of Estate amongst themselves, that none of them (excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Proud in their Garb, costly in their Apparel, impatient in their Humours, and delicate in Diet. These last Conditions are common to the Women also, who are for the most part indifferently fair, and rather witty than well spoken. But this, being the peculiar Character of the *Polander* properly so called, is not perhaps communicable to the People of the rest of the Provinces, whom we shall speak of severally in their proper places.

The Christian Faith was first planted in this Kingdom at several times and by several persons, according to the different parts of which it consisteth: in *Poland* specially so called in the time of their Prince *Meicislaus*, Son of *Nemomysslaus* Anno 963; in *Livonia*, by the preaching of one *Meinardus*, Anno 1200, or thereabouts in *Lithuania*, not until the year 1386, at the admission of *Jagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as some say) by *Thomas* of *Walden* (or *Waldensis*) an *English* Frier; in *Samogitia* and *Volhinia*, at the same time with *Lithuania*; in the rest at other times and on other occasions, yet so that in many places of it Idolatry was never totally rooted out, the seeds and practice whereof in many Points still remain amongst them. Corrupted by the Superstitions of the Church of *Rome*, a Reformation was endeavoured at such a time as *John Hus* flourished in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring Kingdom: but by the rigour of *Vladislaus* the sixth, then King thereof, assisted by his Bishops and Noblemen, it was at that time hindered. Afterwards in the time of *Luther*, some who

had studied at *Leipsick*, and *Wittenberg* (Universities of *Saxony*) brought his Opinions home with them into the Province of *Poland*; as some *Dutch* Merchants (with the rest of their Commodities) did into *Dantzick*, the chief Town of *Pomerellia*, Anno 1525: from whence it spread it self over most part of that Country. According as it was favoured or disliked by the *Palatines*, *Chastellans* and other great men of the Realm, so was its entertainment either good or bad: the *Gracians* in the mean time taking opportunity to win some parts of it to their side, and confirm others in it, who being originally Members of the Church of *Greece*, because originally converted by the Bishops thereof, did still continue in Conformity and Obedience to it. In the end, by reason of the over-great Liberty of the Nobility and People, and want of Power in the King to controule their doings, every man took up what Religion he best liked; some following the *Augustine* Confession, others the *Helvetian*, others adhering as tenaciously to the Church of *Rome*; and some inclining to new Sects, or rather to old Heresies under new Disguises, have brought in such a Miscellanie or Babel of Religions into this Estate, (*Jesuites*, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Socinians*, *Arians*, *Anabaptists*, and indeed what not? being here all tolerated) that at last it grew into a by-word, that *If any man had lost his Religion, he might find it in Poland, or else believe it to be vanished*. A by-word afterwards applied unto *Amsterdam*, communicable since unto other places, *Libertas Prophetandi*, or the Liberty of Prophesying, being now as much allowed of in some parts of Christendom, as *Libertas opinandi* was in *Rome* under *Nerva's* Government, *ubi & sentire quæ velis, & quæ sententias loqui liceat*, when as a man might think as he listed of the publick, and speak what he thought. But whether this be such a *rara temporum Felicitas*, such a Felicity of these our times, as *Tacitus* conceived the other to be of those, future times will shew.

But to return again to *Poland*: notwithstanding this mixture of Religions, yet that most publicly allowed and countenanced is the Religion authorized by the Church of *Rome*, asserted here by the Zeal of the Kings unto that Cause, and the great Power of the Bishops, who seeing how those of their Order have siped in *Germany* and other places, under colour of Reformation of some things amiss, have hitherto upheld the Ecclesiastical Estate in the same form they found it. The Government of the Church is as formerly by 3 Archbishops and 19 Bishops, who challenge a Jurisdiction over all the Kingdom, but exercise it upon those only who submit unto them: those who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther* or *Calvin* following the Forms of Government by them established; as others do some new ones of their own devising. And for those Provinces and people which lie towards *Greece*, or were parts heretofore of the *Russian* Empire, and still hold a Communion with those Churches, they have Archbishops and Bishops of their own Religion; that is to say, the Archbishops of *Vilne* and *Lemberg*, the Bishops of *Poloczko*, *Lusko*, *Pinzko*, *Volodomir*, *Presmil*, and *Kiovia*. Yet amongst all these different Churches and forms of Government there is this Conformity, that whensoever the Gospel is read openly in the Congregation, the Nobility and Gentry use to draw their Swords. (according to an ancient Custom which they had amongst them) signifying their readiness to defend it against all Opposers. Which reason doubtless gave beginning to the standing up at the

the Creed and Gospel in the Primitive times, retained still in the *Church of England*, whereby we do declare how prepared and resolute we are to defend the same: though some of late, holding it for a Relique of Popery, with greater nicety than wisdom, have refused to do it.

Principal Commanders of this Countrey in the Art of War were, 1. *Casimir* the third, the great Establisher of this Kingdom after long Dissensions. 2. *Jagello*, or *Wladislaus* the first, who first brought down the Pride of the *Dutch* Knights in a famous Victory. 3. *Casimir* the IV. the fortunate Conqueror of the *Knights of Prussia*, brought by him under the Command of the Kings of *Poland*. 4. *Sigismund* the first, by whose Valour and good fortune the *Dutch* Knights were totally suppressed, and the greatest part of *Prussia* for ever added to that Crown. 5. *Sigismund* the second, surnamed *Augustus*, fortunate in his Wars against most of them of *Livonia*, by him united to this Kingdom. Of most special note for learning, *Hofius* a Divine of the Papal Party, whose great Abilities advanced him to the state of a Cardinal. 2. *Crellius*, and 3. *Volckelius*, of the contrary Party in Religion, men of great parts, but Heterodox and unsound Opinions. 4. *Cromerus*, the Historian. 5. *Keckerman*, the Professor at *Dansk* or *Dantzick*; a man of universal Studies, but of greater industry than exactness.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. *Vistula* or the *Weyssel*, the ancient Boundary betwixt *Germany* and *Sarmatia Europea*; which rising in the *Carpathian* Mountains passeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and, dividing *Prussia* from *Pomerellia*, falleth into the *Baltick* Sea, not far from *Dantzick* and is navigable for the space of 400 miles, of old called *Vandalis*. 2. *Warta*, which runneth through the lesser *Poland*. 3. *Diuna* the less, watering *Livonia*; and 4. *Borysthenes*, or the *Nieper*, passing through *Podolia*: both spoken of before, when we were in *Russia*. 5. *Niester*, by *Ptolomy* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, having first parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia*. 6. *Jugra*, by some called the lesser *Tanais*, arising in *Lithuania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais* which is now called *Don*. Of less note there are, 1. *Reuben*, or *Reuhon*. 2. *Chronus*, now called *Pregel*. 3. *Bog*, said by some to be the *Hypanis* of the Ancients. 4. *Memel*. 5. *Niemen*, the *Meander* of these Northern parts. 6. *Windaw*, a *Livonian* River falling into the *Baltick*. Mountains of note here are not many, the Countries for the most part being plain and champain, and those which be are rather Boundaries betwixt this and some other Kingdom, than proper unto this alone. The chief of which are those called *Sarmatici* dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europea*, by *Solinus* named *Sevo*, by *Ptolomy* the *Carpathian* Mountains; the Boundary at this time betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, of which more anon.

The common Meets and Landmarks being thus laid down, we will next take a view of those several Provinces, of which this Kingdom doth consist, being eleven in number; that is to say, 1. *Livonia*, 2. *Samogitia*, 3. *Lithuania*, 4. *Volhinia*, 5. *Podolia*, 6. *Russian nigra*, 7. *Masovia*, 8. *Podlaffia*, 9. *Prussia*, 10. *Pomerellia* and 11. *Poland*, specially so called: all of them (except the proper *Poland*) within *Sarmatia Europea*.

1. L I V O N I A.

LIVONIA, or *LIEFLAND*, is bounded on the East with *Ingeria* and *Pleskow*, two Provinces of the Empire of *Russia*, on the West with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with the Gulf or Bay of *Finland*, on the South with *Samogitia* and *Lithuania*, cut off from it by the River *Dvina*; extended in length along the Shore of the *Baltick* for the space of 125 *Dutch*, or 500 *Italian* miles, and 40 *Dutch*, or 160 *Italian* miles in breadth; and called thus perhaps from the *Levoni*, a people of *Germany*, inhabiting not far from the River *Vistula*.

The Country is for the most part plain, without any Mountains; furnished with Corn and Fruits in so great abundance, that they send part thereof into other Countries: and yet there is much Ground untilld in it, by reason of the Bogs and Marshes, which are very frequent. Here is also store of Wax, Honey and Pitch, but they have neither Oyl nor Wine: the want of which last is supplied by Meeth. Of tame Beasts fit for man's service they are well provided; as also such whose Skins are of more value with the Merchants than their Flesh at the Market; as Ermins, Sables, Castors, and others of that kind, besides good store of Game for Hunting, the Country having in it many large Woods, parts of the *Hercynian*. And as for the Rivers, there are few Countreys which have more; it being watered by the *Windaw*, the *Beck*, the *Dvina*, the *Reuhon*, all of them falling into the *Baltick*; many great Lakes, whereof the chief is that of *Baybas*, Forty Five miles long, and full of Fish.

The people are much given to gluttony and drunkenness, especially in rich mens houses, where it is to be had: for the Peasants live in want enough, meer Slaves to their Tyrannical Landlords, who spend in Riot and excess what these get by Drudgery: and when at any time the poor Wretch leaves his Landlord to mend his condition with some other, the Lord if he can overtake him, will cut off his Foot, to make him sure for the future. They are mixture of many Nations: as the *Esthones*, which are the natural Inhabitants, (derived from the *Estii*, a *Dutch* people, spoken of by *Ptolomy*) of which Nation are almost all the Peasants; the *Moscovites*, *Suedes*, *Danes*, *Dutch* and *Polanders*, intermingled with them, coming in upon several Conquests, and planting themselves in the best parts of it, in which they still Lord it over the Native, but the *Dutch* especially, for long time Masters of the whole.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by *Nicander* of *Lubeck*, (imployed herein) in the time of *Frederick* the first) at the perswasion of some *Dutch* Merchants who traded hither, by the Archbishop of *Breme*, by whom he was made the first Bishop of the *Livonians* in 1190. The Church hereof at this time is governed by the Archbishop of *Riga*, the Bishops of *Lup*, *Asilia*, *Ofel*, *Carland*, and *Rivallia*. In those parts which remain subject to the *Polander*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome* is only countenanced. Such part of it as are under the *Suedes* or *Danes* are for the most part of the *Lutheran* Profession, planted with Colonies of that People, but the *Esthones*, or original Inhabitants, as they have a Language, so they have a Religion by themselves also, mixt of the Christian and the Pagan. Extremely well affected unto their Priests, to whom they present Salt, Candles and Fruits, when they come to them for their Blessings; great lovers of Confession, esteemers of Holy Water, and diligent frequenters of their Churches; but so extremely ignorant in all Points of Religion, that there is hardly one in a Village that can say his *Pater Noster*. When they bury any of their dead every one drinketh an Health to him, and powreth his part upon him, when his turn comes to drink; putting into the Grave with him an Hatchet, Wine, Meat, and a little Mony for his Voyage. And in some places they are wholly Idolatrous (if not converted very lately by the care of the *Jesuites*) some of them worshipping the Sun, others Stocks and Stones, and some Serpents also. The Language of the Country is for the most part the High *Dutch*, being the Language of those Nations who first Lorded over them; the *Esthones* having generally a peculiar Language, which none of the others understand.

It was divided formerly into the Provinces of *Curland*, *Estland*, *Semigal*, *Virland*, *Harland*, and *Lettenland*; but these six, since the Conquest of it by the *Polanders*, are reduced to three, *Harland* and *Virland* being united unto *Estland*, and *Semigallia* unto *Curland*.

Chief places in *Eftland* are, 1. *Rivallia*, or *Revel*, a Bishops See, and a well traded Port, situate on the Gulf of *Finland*; a Town belonging to the *Swede*, the keeping whereof, and of *Wiborg* on the Borders of *Moscovy*, stand him yearly in 100000 Dollars. This City was built by *Waldemaring* of *Denmark* in the year 1223, and being frightened by the Threats the *Russ*, in 1558, they had recourse to this King for Protection, missing it there, they applied themselves to *Erick* King of *Sweden* who accepted them. In 1570, *Magnus* Duke of *Holstein* besieged it for the *Russ* without Success, in 1577 the *Russ* besieged it themselves but with the same effect, and since then it has Peaceably been enjoyed by the *Swede*. 2. *Habsay*, or *Habsel*, (*Asilia* in Latin) a Bishops See; and 3. *Pernaw*, a well-fortified place, belonging to the *Swetblander* also, ever since the Conquest of these parts of the Country by *John* the second. Places of great importance to the Crown of *Sweden*, as also other pieces of this nature are, which, standing in an Enemies Country, not only do defend our own, but offend our Adversaries. For they are not only Doors, to open a farther passage into their Territories, whensoever we shall see occasion; but whilst the Enemy is besieging thereof, or otherwise busied in recovering them into his power, our own State is preserved in quiet, and time may yield fit opportunity to relieve them if they be distressed, without wasting of any part of our proper Countries. Of which nature was *Calais* when it was in the hands of the *English*; the Garrisons which the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese* have in *Africk* and *India*: the Charge of keeping them being sufficiently defrayed (if the charge prove greater than the Income, as sometimes it doth) by the advantages they give unto him which hath them. 4. *Velin*, a strong Town, fortified with an impregnable Castle, betrayed by the *Dutch* Garrison at that time in it, together with *William* of *Furstenburg*, the Great Master, into the hands of *John Basilus* the Great Duke of *Moscovy*, who still holds it. 5. *Derpt*, or *Derbern*, (in Latin *Turpatum*) a Bishop's See, situate on the *Beck*, or *Embeck*, betwixt two Lakes, in the midst of the Province, and taken at the same time by the *Moscovite*, who, transporting the *Livonians* into other places, planted these parts with Colonies of his own people. 6. *Terveft*, a Castle of great strength, taken then also by the *Russes*; but being recovered by the *Polander*, was blown up with Gunpowder, that it might no more come into the hand of the Enemy. Hitherto nothing of this Country which belongs to the *Polanders*; these that follow do; that is to say, 7. *Borcholm*, the Seat and residence of the Bishop of *Rivallia*, since the taking of that Town by the *Swedes*. 8. *Wesenburg*, incommodiously seated betwixt two ill neighbours, *Narva* and *Rivallia*; but serving very well to prohibit the Incursions of those Garrisons farther into the Country. 9. *Wernebeck*, in that part of *Eftland*, which is called *Odinpo*; and 10. *Weissenstein*; in that part thereof which is named *Fervia*.

In *LETTENLAND*, lying in the midst betwixt *Eftland*, and *Curland*, the places of most note are, 1. *Riga*, (the people call it *Rig*) seated on the Mouth of the River *Dvina*, falling there into the *Baltick* first built and planted at the charges of the Merchants of *Breme*; after that the Archbishop's See, the ordinary Residence of the Great Master, and the chief City of the whole Province of *Livonia*. A Town well fortified, according to the modern Rules of fortification, with a strong Wall, large Bulwarks, double Ditches, Palisadoes, and well provided of all manner of Ammunition: a famous Empery, of great resort for foreign Merchants, who carry hence Pitch, Wax, Hemp, Flax, and such other Commodities. They are governed (notwithstanding their Subjection to the King of *Poland*) by their own Laws; and such stout defenders of their Liberties, that they will by no means admit of any Forreigner to have Command of the City, obedient in all other things to the will of that King. This City was built about the year 1196, in 1215

it became a Bishop's See, in 1561 it willingly submitted upon good Terms to the Crown of *Poland*, in 1605, it was in vain besieged by the King of *Sweden*, but in 1621 *Gustavus Adolphus* took it, in 1656 it was besieged in vain by the *Russ*, in 1677, it suffered much by Fire, and it is still under the *Swedes*, saith *John Bunon*. Mr. *Mercil*, who saw it in the year 1664, saith it is a Town of no great extent, but compact and very well peopled. Its Buildings are all of Brick and Stone, and it is fortified with a good Wall, and good Ditches and Ramparts, on that side towards *Muscovie*, and towards the River it has a strong and well fortified Castle, in which the *Swedish* Governour of *Livonia* Resides; the Town is principally considerable for the Commerce it draws from all parts, the Ships coming up to the Walls of the Town, and in Winter the Merchants pass in their Sledges to *Plesco*, *Novogrod* and *Mosco*. 2. *Dunamund*, an impregnable Fortrefs, two *Dutch* miles from *Riga*, well garrisoned by the *Polanders*, who here take Toll of all Foreign Merchants. 3. *Blokaws*, a Garrison of the King's betwixt *Riga* and *Dunamund*, where the Merchants are tolled over again. 4. *Wenden*, more within the Land, on the River *Treider*. 5. *Wolmar*, upon the same River. 6. *Kakenhaufe*, a strong Town on the Banks of the *Dvina*. This Country belongs wholly to the King of *Poland*, and stood firm for him in the War made by *Charles* Duke of *Suderman* against his Nephew *Sigismund* King of *Poland* and *Sweden*, when almost all *Eftland* had submitted to him. The Eastern part of this Province is under the *Russ*, and the Western, which is much the greater part is under the *Swede*.

CURLAND, the third and last member of this Division, containing *Semigallia* also, lieth South of *Lettenland*, and North of *Samogitia* and *Lithuania*: an entire Dukedom of it self, but holden under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Kings of *Poland*. Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Candaw*, 2. *Goldingen*, 3. *Kies*, (the *Dutch* call it *Windaw*) the Seat of the Great Master of the *Teutonick* Order in time past; now most frequented as the place of Parliament or general Assembly for Affairs which concern the publick. 4. *Dubin*, 5. *Grubin*, on the Sea-side but of no Trade at all. 6. *Hasenpot*. And then in *Semigal*, 7. *Mittaw*, the Court and Residence of the Dukes of *Curland*. 8. *Selborg*, 9. *Bessinborg*. 10. *Dobelin*. There is no Town in all this Dukedom of any Trading, though lying for a great space all along the *Baltick*; because none of them are furnished with commodious Havens. A Dukedom first begun in the person of *Gothardus Ketter*, (of one of the noble Families of *Denmark*) the last Great Master of the *Dutch* Knights in this Country, who in the year 1562 surrendering his Order, and the whole possession of *Livonia*, to *Sigismund Augustus* K. of *Poland*, received back again for him, and his Heirs for ever the Dukedom of *Curland* and *Semigal*, to be held by them of that Crown; the Nobility of these Countries doing then presently their Homage and Allegiance to him as their Hereditary Prince. Since which time the Princes of this House have continued Feudataries unto *Poland*, but not reckoned as parts or members of the Body thereof; not coming to the Diets, not liable to the publick Charges, nor having any thing to do in the Kings Election; in a word, rather honourable Neighbours of the King's of *Poland*, than Subjects to them. The present Duke is like to be much increased in Estate and Power, if the now Marquis of *Brandenburg* (whose Sister is his Mother) should depart without Issue. For by that means there will be added to this House the great Dukedom of *Prussia*, those of *Cleve* and *Gulick*, together with such other Countries possessed now by that Marquis as he holds by descent from the Heirs-general of those Dukedoms: which makes him cast an eye already upon those Estates.

The Dukes of *Curland*, are Originally of *Westphalia* in *Germany*.

- 1562 1. *Gothard Kedler*, being the Son of *Gothard Kedler*, a Knight of *Westphalia*, and being Master of the Knights of *Livonia*, he was by *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, made Duke of *Curland*.
2. *James* Duke of *Curland*, Son of *Gothard*, Married in the year 1645, *Charlotte* Daughter of *George William* Elector and Duke of *Brandenburgh*, by whom he had
3. *Frederick Cassimir*, now Duke of *Curland*, 2. *Ferdinand* a great Commander in the Wars. 3. *Alexander*, who was wounded at the Siege of *Buda*, and is since Dead. *Frederick Cassimir*, the present Duke of *Curland*, in the year 1688, 25th of *December*, Married *Sophia Amalia Nissun*, of the Line of *Sigen Showartus*.

There belong also to *Livonia* some few Islands situate in the *Baltick* See, that is to say, 1. *Osilia*, 2. *Dachden*, 3. *Mona*, 4. *Wormse*, 5. *Wrangen*, and 6. *Keyn*. Of which the four last do belong to the King of *Poland*, *Dachden* to the King of *Swethland*, and *Osilia*, or *Ofel*, to the *Danes*. This last is the chief of all the six, distant from the main Land of *Livonia* 12 Dutch miles; 14 of the same miles in length, half as much in breadth: the chief Towns hereof being 1. *Ofel*, a Bishop's See, which gives name to the Island. 2. *Sunneburg*. The Island was made subject to the *Danes* by *Magnus*, Brother of *Frederick* the second, King of *Denmark*; who, being chosen Administrator of the Bishoprick of *Decript* in *Estland*, made himself Master of this Island and some other pieces, which, dying without Issue, he bequeathed to the King his Brother, Anno 1580.

As for *Livonia* it self, it was first under the *Levoni* and *Estii*, two German Nations, from whom the Country had the name of *Livonia*, the People of *Estlanders* or *Estones*. Distracted into many petit Principalities, it was made acquainted with the Christian Faith by the care of the Merchants of *Bremen*, as before was said. *Meinard* their first Bishop being dead, and *Berthold* his Successors slain by such of the people as had not yet received the Gospel; the Knights of the Port-glaive, or the Short-Sword, were sent hither to defend the Preachers and the Doctrine by the force of Arms. Finding themselves too weak to effect the business, they united with the Order of Dutch Knights in *Prussia*, to whom from that time forwards they became subordinate; the great Master of *Livonia* acknowledging him of *Prussia* for his Superior. These Knights continued Masters of it without contradiction till the year 1557, (embracing in the mean time the Opinions of *Luther*, Anno 1528) then quarrelling with the Archbishop of *Riga*, of the House of *Brandenburg*, because he would not adhere unto their Opinions; who, to secure his own Estate, was forced to put *Riga* into the hands of the *Polanders*. Afterward being overlaid by the *Muscovite*, who had taken from them almost all their Country, they were fain to put themselves under the Protection of *Sigismund-Augustus* King of *Poland*, Anno 1559. But *William* of *Furstenburg*, the Great Master being betrayed by his own Mercenaries into the hands of the *Muscovite*, *Gothardus* his Successor (following the example of *Albert* the Great Master of *Prussia*) transacted with the said *Sigismund* for the whole Estate, which he surrendered to his use in the Castle of *Riga*, March 5. 1562, together with his Cross, the Seal of the Order, the Charters and Grants of many of the Popes and Emperors which concerned the same, as also the Keys of the City and Castle of *Riga*, the Office of Great Master, the Rights of Cohage, and all the Powers and Priviledges appertaining to it: receiving back again from *Ratzevil*, the King's Commissioner, the Dukedom of *Curland* to him and his Heirs for ever; as

before is said. By this Transaction the Kings of *Pole* became Masters of *Livonia*, and were more absolutely settled in it after a long War betwixt *Stephen* King of *Poland* and *John Basilovich* the Great Duke of *Moscovie*, who in the end surrendered all his Claim therein to the said *Stephen* and his Successors, Anno 1582, reserving only some few Towns on the Eastern Borders: the *Danes* and *Swethlanders* taking occasion by their Troubles to impatronize themselves of *Narva*, *Kokena*, *Ofel*, and some other pieces.

Mr. *Ateril*, Secretary to the Earl of *Carlisle*, in his Embassie into *Moscovy* in the year 1663, hath p. 337, That *Livonia* is so desolate, that in 60 Leagues that they pass'd from *Nibuisen* to *Riga*, they found only two or three Towns, and they remarkable for nothing but their Antiquity. Though it is sufficiently fertile in Grats and Corn, and full of Forests and Lakes. The Inhabitants are more Blockish and Barbarous than the *Muscovites*, but in their Habits and Caps like them, their Language is as unpleasant as their Behaviour and manner of Converse, and they carry upon their Foreheads all the Tokens of a Savage and Unciviliz'd Nature, and are perfectly Slaves to the *Sredes*, they profess the *Lutheran* Religion, but are so well pleased with the Pagan Superstition, that it is thought they are only outside Christians. *Olearius* tells us, that as they were converted more by force than Arguments, they look upon the *Germans* as injurious intruders, who have wrongfully dispossessed them of their Country, and hate them and the Christian Religion for their sake, as far as they durst shew it.

2. S A M O G I T I A.

SAMOGITIA is a small Province wedged in betwixt *Livonia* and *Lithuania*, having *Livonia* on the North, *Lithuania* on the East and South, and the *Baltick* Sea upon the West: in length extending 50 miles from East to West, but not of an answerable breadth. It is so called from the lowliness of the situation, (the word *Samogits* in the Language of the Inhabitants signifying *terram inferiorem*, or the Low-lands) by the *Moscovite* in the same sense called *Samotkazelma*. This lowliness of situation makes it very watery, and almost continually frozen: but withal it hath many Forests, which yield unto the people abundance of Honey, better, more pleasing to the taste, and less mixt with Wax, than in other places.

The people are supposed to be of the *Saxon* Race, of a good Sature, well set, bold, and apt for War; but withal boisterous, rude and barbarous: Christians in general, but many of them do still retain their old Idotries; nourishing amongst them a kind of four-footed Serpents, about three handfuls in length, which they worship as their Household-gods, attending them with fear and reverence when they call them out to their request: and if any Mischance do happen to any of the Family, it is imputed presently to some want of due observance of these ugly Creatures. They are naturally inclined to Divinations, Charms and Sorceries, and frequently abused (as for the most part such people are) by Diabolical Illusions. Nay, they which profess the name of *Christ* are so ill instructed, that they use to marry many Wives, without consideration of Blood or Parentage: it being ordinary for a man to marry with his Brothers Widow, and not unusual to marry the Relict of their Fathers, (a Fornication not so much as heard of in *S. Paul's* time among the Gentiles.) They have some Customs also as unprofitable as these are heathenish, breaking up their Land, as they do in *Muscovie*, with Spades or Stricks. And when one of their Governors, observing the Husbandry of other Nations, had brought them the use of the Plough; it fortune'd that for two or three years, either by the indisposition of the Weather, or some other Accident, they had not to much Corn as they

they used to have. Which want the people attributing to the use of the Plough, *Nec quicquam aliud in causa esse putantes*, and not believing that there was any other cause of it, grew so much incensed, that the Governor fearing some Sedition like to follow on it, was forced to leave them to the old way which before they went. An humour like to that of the present *Irish*, in ploughing with their Horses tails, spoken of before. So pertinacious for the most part are ignorant and superstitious people, in standing to their ancient Customs, tho' absurd and hurtful.

Towns they have few, their Houses for the generality being poor and low, covered with Straw or Dirt, with an Hole open in the Roof to let in the light. The principal of those they have (but rather Villages than Towns) are, 1. *Bigla*, near the head of the River *Sriote*; 2. *Linkaw*, of which nothing memorable.

This Province hath always followed the fortunes of *Litvania*: Subject, when that was so, to the Kings of *Russia*, Converted when that was to the Christian Faith, and finally united with it to the Crown of *Poland*.

3. LITUVANIA.

LITUVANIA hath on the East the Empire of *Russia*, on the West *Prussia*, *Maffovia* and *Poland*, on the North *Livonia* and *Samogitia*, and on the South *Volhinia* and *Podolia*. So called from *Lituus* the Ceremonial staff, used anciently by the Augurs in their Divinations; to which the Inhabitants hereof being very much addicted before their receiving of the Gospel, were called *Lituvani*; but this is but conjectural only. Yet rather thus, than that it should be peopled by some banished *Italians*, first named *Italia*, then *Litalia*, and after, by a most unlikely Corruption; come to *Lithania*, as *Matthias a Michou* would fain have.

The Country for the most part is full of Moors, Forests, some great Lakes like a Sea for bigness, and many navigable Rivers; which frozen over in the Winter make the ways more travellable at that time of the year than they are in Summer. The Air in most places is exceeding cold, which makes their Wheat (whereof they have some abundance) to be seldom ripe, and other Fruits of the Earth to come slowly forward. Their Forests yield them Bugles, Ermines, Sables, Deer, wild Horses, plenty of Honey, Wax, and Pitch; but their breed of Cattle is less here, and of smaller stature, then it is in *Germany*. These Forests also are the Store-house out of which the *English* and *Hollanders* furnish themselves with Timber, both for Ships and Building, returning to them in exchange Salt, Wine, and other Necessaries which are wanting here.

The People anciently had Fire and Serpents for their Gods; nourishing the last in their houses, and keeping the other continually burning; the Priests and Ministers of the Temple always adding Fewel, that it might not fail. The Vestal Fire was not kept more carefully at *Rome*, nor with greater Ceremony. To this God, whom they called *Dishpan*, or the Lord of the Smoak, they used to sacrifice young Pullers, to the other, their Cocks. The seed of this Idolatry is so implanted in them, that it is said, that in a Village of the King's called *Lovaniski*, not four miles from *Vilna*, their chief City, they do to this day worship Serpents. Converted with their Prince *Jagello* to the Christian Faith Anno 1386, they yet retained such Customs as are inconsistent with Christianity; marrying, unmarried, when, and as often as they please; no Bond being so soon cancell'd as that of Matrimony. For a married man to use the Body of an Harlot is accounted (as indeed it is) an opprobrious Crime: but for the Wife to have her Stallions and Adulterers is a thing so ordinary and unblamable, that their Husbands call them their Coadjutors, and prize them far above the rest of their Acquaintance. The common people are in a miserable Servitude unto their

Lords, pillaged and beaten by them upon any occasion; yet must not come before them with an empty hand. And if any of them have committed a Crime deserving death, he must hang himself as soon as the Sentence is signified to him; or else is beaten and tormented in so cruel a manner, that Death at last is looked on as a better Life.

The Country is divided into ten parts or Provinces, subject unto the Jurisdiction of so many *Palatines*; that is to say, the *Palatine* of 1. *Vilna*, 2. *Trock*, 3. *Minsko*, 4. *Novogrod*, 5. *Brestia*, 6. *Volhinia*, 7. *Kiowia*, 8. *Micflaw*, 9. *Vitebsco*, 10. *Polotzkic*. But *Novogrod* and *Polotzkic* being conquered by the Great Duke of *Moscovie*, and added unto that Estate, and *Volhinia* reckoned (of late times) for a distinct Province of it self, not depending of it; the remaining number is but seven, most of them taking names from their Principal Towns. The chief of those, and others which deserve place here are, 1. *Vilna*, a Bishops See, equal in bigness to *Cracow*, the chief City of *Poland*; so called of the River *Vil*, or *Viln*, upon which it is seated; built there in the year 1305 by one *Godemin*, a great Prince of these parts; well walled but the Gates thereof open night and day; large, rich, and well frequented by Foreign Merchants, especially by those that drive the Trade of *Moscovie*, who have here their Hall, one of the chief Ornaments of the City. They have in it also some Churches built of Stone, (but the most of Wood) the Principal whereof is the Monastery of *S. Bernard*, which is a very comely Structure. The Natives call this Town *Vilenski*, the Dutch *Die Wilde*. It is situate in the very heart of the Country, the longest Day in Summer being here 16 hours and half a quarter; whereas in the most Southern parts of the Country it is but 16, and in the most Northern not fully 18. This place was made an University in the year 1579. It was burnt in 1610, but built after this more Nobly than before, in 1655. it was taken by the *Russ* and miserably sack'd; but in the year 1660, it was recovered out of their hands by the *Poles*. 2. *Kiowia*, or *Kiof*, situate on the *Nieper* or *Borysthenes*, where the River *Desna* falls into it: heretofore a beautiful and most stately City, having in it above 300 fair Churches, of which some remain unto this day; the Ruines of the rest to be traced out amongst Shrubs and Bushes, the receptacles of wild Beasts. The Seat at that time of the Metropolitan of the *Russian* Empire, containing also under his Jurisdiction the Countries of *Walachia* in *Dacia*, and *Nigra Russia* in *Poland*. But being destroyed by *Bathu* or *Boydo* the *Tartarian*, in the Conquest of these parts by that People, it never could come near its former Lustre: yet still it holds the reputation of a Bishops See, acknowledging the Patriarch of *Mosco* for his Metropolitan, and consequently is of the Communion of the *Greek* Churches, not of that of *Rome*. This City was built by *Kio*, a *Russ*, about the year of Christ 861, and became the Capital of *Russia*, in 1615 it was taken and burnt by the *Tartars*; in 1651 the *Poles* took it, but the *Cossacks* Mortgaged it to the *Russ*, who are in that Right at this day possels'd of it, which Right was confirm'd by the Treaty in 1686. 3. *Grodno*, on the River *Chronus*, the chief Town of the Palatinate of *Trock*, memorable for the death of *Stephen* King of *Poland*. This City was built in 1585, by that Prince who died in it soon after. The *Russ* took it in 1655, but it is since return'd under the *Poles* and is frequently honoured with the Diets of that Kingdom. 4. *Grimwald*, more memorable for the Great Defeat given near it, by *Jagello* Duke of *Litvania* and King of *Poland*, to the numerous Army of the Dutch Knights invading this Province; so confident of their Success in the underraking, that they brought with them abundance of Chains and Torches; with the one to lead captive the Nobles of *Poland*, and with the other to fire their Cities. But *Jagello*, then newly made a Christian, putting his confidence in God, with an Army of untrained Soldiers so tamed their Pride, that he slew 40000 of them; so that they never

recovered of that Blow whilst their Order stood. 5. *Pinsko*, in the Palatinate of *Brzest*. 6. *Klow*, reckoned a Country of it self. And, 7. *Strifla*, Fortified with a Castle; both under the Palatine of *Mieslaw*. The rest of the chief Towns may be known by the Palatinates which they give their Names to, but not else observable.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aorsi*, *Paqarini*, *Savari*, Tribes of the *Sarmata Europaei*. United into this name of *Lituanians*, they became subject to the Kings of *Russia*, till the breaking of that Kingdom by the *Tartars*. At what time *Erdizvill*, then their Prince, (but an Homager and Tributary to the *Russians*) withdrew himself from their Command; as did also many other of the Conquered Provinces. Afterwards *Mindoch*, one of the Dukes or Princes of it, being made a Christian, was by Pope *Innocent* the Third honoured with the Title of a King; but returning again unto his Vomit, he lost that Title. In the end, Anno 1386, *Jagello*, Duke of *Lituania*, marrying with *Heguidis*, Queen of *Poland*, was upon three Conditions chosen King of that Realm. 1. That he should immediately receive the Christian Faith. 2. That he should draw all his Subjects to the same Belief. And 3. That he should unite this Dukedom to the Crown of *Poland*. Of the two these first were performed without any delay, though the second not without some difficulty, the People being obstinate in their old Idolatry, especially in the Religious conceit they had of high Trees, which to cut down was held both unsafe and impious. They could not be weaned from this conceit, till by the Authority of the King their loftiest Trees were felled, and their Woods grubbed up: which when they saw done without any danger to the Prince, or any of those whom he employed in that service, *Regis mandato & auctoritate cedere coeperunt*, they then began to hearken unto his Commands, and generally received the Gospel, and were baptized. In the last point there was a longer time of deliberation: For the Princes of the House of *Jagello*, loth to deprive themselves of their Patrimonial Estate, which was Hereditary unto their Posterity, and to subject it to the Election of the *Polanders*, in which it was possible the Princes of their Family might be pre-empted, deferred the accomplishment hereof from one day to another, under colour that the *Lituanians* would revolt if they went about it. But *Sigismund-Augustus*, in whose Person the Male-issue of *Jagello* failed, foreseeing what Divisions might ensue after his decease, and fearing that the *Muscovites* would renew their old Pretensions, united it unto the Crown: ordaining that the Bishops, *Palatines*, and a certain number of the *Chastellans* by him established, should have their Place and Suffrage in the great Council of *Poland*, power in the chusing of the King, and all other Privileges which the natural *Polonians* have. Since that it is accounted a chief Member of that Body politic; subject to those Corruptions, Changes and Innovations in matters of Religion, which have been predominant in the other; excepting those parts only which relate to the Church of *Greece*, or *Mosco*, adhering pertinaciously to the Rites thereof.

4. VOLHINIA.

VOLHINIA, by some accounted one of the *Palatinates* of *Lituania* (as once it was) but by others a distinct Province of it self, is bounded on the North and East with *Lituania*, on the South with *Podolia*, and on the West with *Russia Nigra* and *Podlaffia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Volgari*, who, dwelling on the Banks of the River *Volga*, came afterwards into this Country, calling it *Volgaria*, whence by degrees it came unto *Volhonia*, and at last unto *Volhinia*. But this conjecture is improbable, and of no good grounds. This Country extends from East

to West 450 *German Miles*, and in breadth 100. It has been miserably haras'd of late years by the *Rebellious Cossacks* and the *Russ*. *Holman*.

The Country yields good plenty both of Grain and Fruits, Pools which abound with very good fish, Forests which do afford them store of Game and Honey, and much good Pasturage for their Cattel. The People are of the same Nature with the *Lituanians*, but more strong and warlike, and better weaned from their old Superstitions and heathenish Customs than the others are. They are of the same Language and Religion with those of *Russia*, to which, together with the rest of *Lituania*, it did once belong. It is divided commonly into three Parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principal Cities of it: that is to say. 1. *Luske*, in *Latin* called *Luceoria*, a Town of above 1000 Families, where 127 only (in the time of my Author) were of the *Romish* Religion, the residue being *Russians*, *Gracians*, and some *Arminians*. The Seat and Residence of two Bishops, of which one, being of the Communion of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbishop of *Lemburg* in *Russia Nigra*; but they which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece* have also a Bishop of their own, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Mosco* for his Metropolitan. 2. *Volodomir*, a Bishop's See also, of the same condition. 3. *Keromence*, which (as the rest) hath under it many fair Towns and Castles, besides large Villages. The whole was once part of *Lituania*, as before was said; but of late dismembred from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as a State distinct: but so, that the greatest part of it is immediately subject to the Duke of *Ostrogoye* who is said to have 4000 Feudataries in his Country; the greatest Prince of those who hold Communion with the Church of *Greece* in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

5. P O D O L I A.

PO D O L I A hath on the North *Volhinia*, part of *Lituania*, and the great Empire of *Russia*; on the South *Moldavia*, from which it is parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Neister*; on the West *Russia Nigra*; extending Eastward through vast uninhabited Countries as far as to the *Luxine* Sea. The reason of the name I find no where guessed at. The People are for the most part of the same Nature and Original with the *Russians*, to whose Empire it formerly belonged also, till gained (if such a Subjection as they give the King may be called a gaining) to the Crown of *Poland*, at such time as the *Russes* were enthralled to the power of the *Tartars*.

The Country is generally so Fertile, that the Husbandman is accustomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one Ploughing for three years together; the Country-man being put to no farther trouble, than at the end of the first and second years to shake the Corn a little, as he reaps or loads it; that which so falls serving as Seed for the next year following. The Meadow-ground is so strangely rich and luxuriant, and the Grass so high, that a Man can hardly see the Heads or Horns of his Cattel; of so swift a growth, that in three days it will cover a Rod which is thrown into it, and in few more to hide a Plough, that it is not an easie work to find it. If these things seem beyond belief, let *Maginus*, who reporteth them, bear the blame thereof; though better take it on his word, than go so far to disprove him. And yet, which adds much unto the Miracle, the Ground is in most places so hard and stony, that there needs six yoke of Oxen to break it up; to the great toil both of the Cattel and the Men. It is also said that in this Country there are great flocks of Sheep, many Herds of Oxen, abundance of wild Beasts, and great store of Honey. And yet for all this plenty and abundance of all things necessary, the Country for the most part, especially towards the East, is

but

but meanly inhabited, by reason of the frequent Incurſions of the *Tartars*, bordering next unto it, who have ſo waited it in times paſt, and thereby ſo diſcouraged the People from Building, Planting, and all other works of Peace and Huſbandry, that in ſo large and rich a Country there is nothing to be ſeen but ſome ſcattered Houſes, few Villages, and not above five Towns of Note, viz. 1. *Orzabow*, at the Influx of the *Boryſthenes* or *Nieper* into the *Euxine* Sea. 2. *Vaſzow*, at the fall of the River *Bog* into that of *Nieper*. 3. *Braclaw*, more high upon the *Bog*. 4. *Camieneciez*, on the Borders of *Ruſſia Nigra*, built by ſome divine Hand, as it were, amongſt the Precipices of high and inacceſſible Rocks, and ſo well fortified withal, that it is impregnable; as is apparent by the many and great Repulſes which the *Turks*, *Tartarians*, and *Valachians* have received before it, with much ſhame and loſs. This City is a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Lemburg*, and ſtands upon the River *Smotrezyc*, which a little lower falls into the *Nieſter*, 15 *Polish* Miles from *Bar* to the Weſt, and 70 from *Kiowia*, and 30 from *Lemburg* to the South-Eaſt, and 80 from *Warſhaw*, and 170 from *Conſtantinople*. In the year 1669 it ſuffered very much by Fire, and in the year 1672 was beſieged and taken by the *Turks*, the *Poles* being then engaged in a Civil War, and the Town not in a condition to defend it ſelf. It has been Blockaded three years by the *Poles*, but the *Turks* have frequently relieved it, and ſeem to take more care of it than of any of their Frontier Places. In the year 1687 it was Bombed by Prince *James*, eldeſt Son to the Late King of *Poland*, and might be reduced if the *Poles* were not very much divided and very careleſs. 5. *Lemburg*, remarkable for the Sawces or Salt-meats which they ſend thence into other Countries. It is a great and populous City, and was made an Archbiſhop's See inſtead of *Halitz*, in the year 1361. It is alſo ſtrongly Walled, and has two Caſtles, one within the Town, and the other without: It was built by *Leo* Duke of *Ruſſia* about the year 1280. In 1648 it was beſieged in vain by the *Coffacks*: In 1672 it was taken by the *Turks*, and recovered the next year by the *Poles*. The former Fortunes of this Province, and how it was brought under the Crown of *Poland* (with which it was incorporated long ſince) we ſhall ſee anon.

6. RUSSIA NIGRA.

RUSSIA NIGRA hath on the Eaſt *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and *Moldavia*; on the Weſt *Maſſovia*; and *Poland* ſpecially ſo called; on the North *Lithuania* and *Podlaſſia*; and on the South the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains. It is called alſo *Roxolania*, from the *Roxolani*, a chief People of *Sarmatia Europea*, and by ſome *Ruthenia*: but generally *Ruſſia*, from the *Roffi* ſpoken of before in the Empire of *Ruſſia*, who ſpread themſelves over all theſe parts. Some hold that it was firſt called *Roffeia*, which ſignifieth in the *Slavonian* Language a ſcattered Nation, or a Nation diſſeminated and diſperſed into many parts; and that this was the name generally of all that ſpeak the *Slavonian* Tongue, and followed the Religion and the Rites of the Church of *Greece*, extended from the Frozen Sea to the *Adriatick*, and from the *Euxine* to the *Baltick*. This and a greater Tract of Ground I grant to have been heretofore poſſeſſed by divers Nations under the name of *Slavonians*; a very conſiderable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Ruſſia*, given at firſt to all the *Ruſſian* Empire, diſtinguiſhed now into *Ruſſia Alba* and *Ruſſia Nigra*, I adhere unto my former Vote, conceiving that it came from the *Roffi*, an *Armenian* People, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864, or thereabouts, attempting the taking of *Conſtantinople*, and after placed themſelves on the Northern Banks of the *Euxine*, getting ground of the *Slavonians* to the North and Eaſt,

till they had made themſelves Maſters of all *Ruſſia Alba*, *Lithuania*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and this *Ruſſia Nigra*. Diſtinguiſhed from the former by the adjunct of *Nigra*, after the deſtruction of that great Empire by the coming in of the *Tartars*, either from the colour of their Garments, or their black and more Southerly Complexion. In which regard it is called alſo *Ruſſia Meredionalis*, or the Southern *Ruſſia*.

The Country is generally Fruitful, abounding in Horſes, Oxen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes: ſuch ſtore of Bees, that they breed not only in Hives and hollow Trees, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watered both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of Fiſh, more naturally ſpawning here than in other places, inſomuch that if a Pond be digged, and ſpring accordingly, the Fiſh will breed therein of their own accord, without being brought from other Waters. The greateſt want hereof is Wine, either ſupplied with Mede, or from other places. And it is ſaid that in the Territory of *Chelm* the Branches of the Pine-Trees, left upon the Ground for three years together, will be converted into Stone.

The People are generally valiant, and ſo ſtrong of Body that they uſe Bows of twelve Foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they do but ill brook the name of King; which much induced the King of *Poland* to ſend Colonies of natural *Polonians* into moſt parts of the Country, inſomuch as moſt of the Knights and Gentry of it are of that Extraction, and follow the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; the Peaſants and the Original Inhabitants of it being more generally affected to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Chelm*, in the Territory whereof it is affirmed that the Branches of Pine-Trees, left upon the Ground for three years together, are converted to Stone. 2. *Premiſlen*. 3. *Halitz*. 4. *Belzo*. 5. *Grodeck*. And 6. *Leopolis*, by the Natives called *Lemburg*, built by one *Leo* a *Muſcovite*; a Town of great Traffick, and an Archbiſhop's See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the Patriarch of *Moſco* hath here alſo an Archbiſhop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the City it ſelf, and all *Ruſſia* generally, (as before was ſaid) which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. There are alſo in this City ſome *Armenian* Merchants, who have a Church, a Biſhop, and ſome Priests of their own Religion. The Account I have given of *Lemburg* in *Podolia* belong to this place, our Author having twice mentioned the ſame place.

Of the Affairs of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Ruſſian* Empire, hath been ſaid already. Diſmembred from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or Provincial Governors, ſubject and tributary unto thoſe *Barbarians*: as had alſo *Podolia*, its next Neighbour. Both conquered by the *Polander*, were for a time kept under by ſtrong hand and the power of Garriſons. But being upon all occaſions apt to revolt, by reaſon of the hard hand which the Kings held over them, (by whom they were treated rather like Slaves than Subjects) they were aſſured unto the State, by giving the ſame Liberties and Immunities, both for the Nobility and the Commons which the natural *Polonians* had; and by that means made Fellow-Members of that Commonwealth. The Act of *Ladiſlaw* the ſixth, the Son of *Jagello*, imitating therein the ancient *Romans*, who much augmented their Forces, and aſſured their Eſtates, by communicating the Freedom of *Rome* and the Privileges of *Latium* to many of the conquered Provinces: and was imitated by *Sigismund* the firſt, *Sigismund-Auguſtus* and *Stephen*, his Succeſſors in their incorporating of *Pruſſia*, *Lithuania*, and *Livonia*, to the Crown of *Poland*.

7. MASSOVIA.

7. MASSOVIA.

MASSOVIA is bounded on the East with *Lithuania*, on the West with *Poland* specially so called, on the North with *Prussia* and *Podlussia*, on the South with *Russia Nigra* or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Masse*, one of the Dukes hereof, who in the year 1045, being vanquished by *Casimir* Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Prussia* and there unfortunately died. This Province was effectually united to *Poland*, under *Sigismund* the first, in the year 1526.

The Country is large, and for the most part full of Woods, where they find store of Bugles and wild Bulls. The people are strong, valiant and courageous in War; differing little from the *Polonians* in Speech, Manners, or Apparel, save that they use a kind of Whistling, which the others do not. The principal Towns of it are, 1. *Warsaw*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the Residence of the Duke or Prince; remarkable for the best Mede or Metheglin. This City has been esteemed the Capital of *Poland*, ever since *Sigismund* 3. built in it a place for his Successors, by which means it is become one of the most Populous, Rich, and Potent Cities of that Kingdom. Yet in the year 1655, it was taken by the *Svedes*, but the next year it was recovered by the *Poles*, and the *Swedish* Garrison driven out. *John Demetrius Suiscius* Great Duke of *Russia*, who was taken Prisoner by the *Poles*, and died in Captivity, lies Buried in a small Chappel here. See below in *Poland*, properly so call'd. 2. *Czirska*, 3. *Poltomskie*. 4. *Gadzick*, 5. *Lozara*, 6. *Droic* the Seat of a Palatine, but not else observable.

This Province was once subject to Princes of its own, not subject or subordinate unto any Superior. Of which number that *Masse* was one, from whom it was named *Massovia*. In the year 1246 and 1260, being strangely wasted and distressed by *Mindoy* Duke of *Lithuania*, they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Polanders*; by whom they were made the Portion of the second Son of that Kingdom. But *John* and *Stanislaus*, the two last Dukes hereof, dying without Issue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*, and became incorporate to that Crown, and privileged in the Election of the King, and all matters which concern the publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, Anno 1526. as is above observed.

8. PODLASSIA.

PODLASSIA is bounded on the East with *Volhynia*, on the West with *Russia*, on the North with *Lithuania*, and on the South with *Massovia* and *Russia Nigra*. The reason of the name I know not. The Country differs not much from those before: the people being a mixt generation of *Russes*, *Muscovites* and *Polonians*, partake a little of the Manners and Garb of those several Nations from which they lineally are descended.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Bielsko*, 2. *Bramsko*, 3. *Suras*, all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4. *Tycockzyn*, strongly fortified, and well garrisoned, as being the place where the King's Treasures are kept. 5. *Knyssin*, beautified with a Royal Palace, and a pleasant Park, wherein are store of wild Beasts for Hunting, and Fish-ponds very well replenished. 6. *Narew*, 7. *Vasilkom*, and 8. *Augustow*, a very strong Town, built and well fortified by *Sigismund-Augustus*, and by him thus named, Anno 1569, at what time he dismembred this Province from *Lithuania*, to which before it appertained, uniting it for ever to the Crown of *Poland*.

9. PRUSSIA.

PRUSSIA is bounded on the East with *Lithuania* and *Teutonia*, on the West with *Poland* cut off from it by the *Vistula*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the South with *Poland* and *Massovia*. Called first *Borussia*, from the *Boriss*, who subdued it, (of whom more anon) which by an easie alteration was changed into *Prussia*, by which name it is still called.

The Country is extended all along the *Baltick* Sea, from the City of *Dantzick* in the West, to *Labiau* on the Mouth of the *Maillank*, East, for the space of 50 *Polish* miles; and from *Torne*, bordering on *Massovia*, to *Memel* in the Confines of *Lithuania*, 58 miles of the same measure. The Air thereof is very mild and temperate, the Soil both profitable and pleasant; full of *Lakes* and *Rivers* stored with Fish, plentiful of Corn and other Necessaries, and well clad with Forests, which yield them Game for Hunting, rich Skins for profit, and abundance of Honey; of which last they make Mede for their own use, (their ordinary Drink where there is no Wine) and sell the rest unto the Merchant. But the Commodity wherein they do excel their neighbours is their plenty of Amber, which is the juice of a Stone which groweth like a Coral in a Mountain of these *Baltick* Seas, covered quite with water, and shunned by Marriners three Leagues off, for fear of Shipwreck; the Mountain is reasonable large, about 50 yards high of *English* measure. And when any Tempest mreeh in these Northern Seas, especially in *September* and *December*, the Liquor by violence thereof is rent from the Rock, and cast into divers Havens, and on divers Coasts of this Country, and sometimes upon those of *Sweden* and *Pomerania*: the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth most, whence they take up first some store of Weeds, after that this Liquor, which being taken out of the water hardeneth like to Coral. Besides the beauty hereof, and the quality it hath of attracting Straws and Iron, as the Adamant doth, burning like Pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for stopping Bloud, all kind of Agues, Falling-sicknels; Drop-sies, Stone, Cholick, weaknels of Stomack, Head-ach, and the Yellow-jaundies.

The people, especially the Gentry, descend from the *Germans*, and retain much of their nature; having more Art and Industry then the other *Polonians*, and being more tenacious of their ancient Customs. They were Idolaters for long time together, converted first unto the Faith in the time of the Emperor *Frederick* the second, by whose setting on they were subdued by the Order of the *Dutch* Knights, Anno 1215, and either won or forced to the Christian Faith. As Christians, governed since the Plantation of the Gospel by the Bishops of *Culm*, *Warmia*, *Sambia*, and *Pomesan*, Sussagans to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*; under whom those parts do still continue which have not yet forsaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other separate Congregations distinct from them, having their own Forms both of Doctrine and Discipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered than this is, both for *Lakes* and *Rivers*: some of the *Lakes* being seven *Dutch* miles in compass, and well stored with Fish. The *Rivers* are 12 in number; that is to say, 1. the *Vistula*. 2. *Chonous*. 3. *Nogat*. 4. *Elbing*. 5. *Vasora*. 6. *Passaria*. 7. *Alla*. 8. *Tregel*. 9. *Offa*. 10. *Drebnicz*. 11. *Lica*, and 12. *Lavia*, all plentifully stored with Fish; besides a large Sea-Coast both for Trade and Fishing no small Commodity to the Natives.

The Country formerly divided into twelve Dukedoms, (so they called the parts and fractions of it) was by the industry of the *Dutch* Knights so adorned and beautified, (after they had once brought it under their Obedience) that there were no fewer than 72 Cattles

and 62 good Towns of their foundation. Which number being much increased in these later times, hath made it the most flourishing part of the whole Kingdom of *Poland*. But the Order of these Knights being suppressed in this Country by an Agreement betwixt *Sigismund* the first, King of *Poland*, and *Albert* of *Brandenburgh*, the last great Master of the Order; both Town and Country are divided between the Successors of the said *Albert*, as Dukes of *Prussia*, and of the said *Sigismund*, as Kings of *Pole*: the Dukedoms or Divisions of *Hogeland*, *Warmia*, *Galindia*, *Michelow*, *Culmigeria*, with the City of *Marienburgh*, the Sovereignty of *Dantzick* and *Melving*, with the whole Country of *Pomerellia*, lying on the West side of the *Vistula*, being allotted to the King; the residue, containing the Divisions of *Schallavenia*, *Sambia*, *Natangia*, *Nadravia*, *Bartonia*, *Sudavia*, and *Pomelania*, (except the City and Territory of *Marienburgh*) to the Dukes of *Prussia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke are, 1. *Memel*, a well-frequented Port, the Mart-Town for the Commodities of *Lituania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the foreign Merchant: part of this Province interposing betwixt *Lituania* and the *Baltick*. 2. *Koningsberg*, as the *Dutch*, *Regimont* as the *French*, and *Mons Regius*, as the *Latines* call it; situate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottom of a Gulf or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick* Sea: built by the *Dutch* Knights in the year 1260, and made an University by *Albert* the first Duke hereof 1225, the Seat and principal Residence of his Successors; as also of the Bishop of *Sambia*; in *Latine* called *Sambiensis*, by the name of the Province. 3. *Mulmeburg*, founded by the *Dutch* Knights, Anno 1279. 4. *Branderburg*, on the South-side of that Bay, but more near the Sea; built, as I guess, by some of the Great Masters of that Family. 5. *Ragnitz*, the farthest Town of note towards *Lituania*. 6. *Angersburg*, in *Schallavenia*; as was also *Ragnitz*. 7. *Nordenburg*, in *Bartonia*. 8. *Ortelsburg*, in *Galindia*: of which little memorable. 9. *Marienwerder*, the farthest of the Duke's Estate towards the *Vistula*, and the ordinary Residence of the Bishop of *Pomesan*. Besides which there are reckoned in this Division 80 good Towns more, and about 54 Castles, though not of much observation in the course of Story.

Chief Towns pertaining to the King are, 1. *Braunshero*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea which they call *Frijel-Hasse*; a Town of good Trade by reason of the commodious Haven, and the ordinary Residence of the Bishop of *Warmia*. 2. *Frauenberg*, on the same Bay, not far from *Braunshero*. 3. *Kesel*, the chief Town of the Diocess and Dukedom of *Warmia*. 4. *Strasburg*, in *Michelow*, confining on *Poland*, specially so called, at the Siege whereof by *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, Anno 1628, *Elias Trype*, one of the Engineers of that King, found out the use of Leathern Ordnance, which afterwards did that King great service in the Wars of *Germany*. 5. *Culm*, on the River *Vistula*, a Bishop's See. 6. *Marienburgh*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch* Knights, Anno 1302, and made the Seat of the great Masters of their order, translated first from *Prolemais* or *Acon* in *Syria* to the City of *Venice*, from thence to *Marpurg*, and at last to this place by *Sifride* the twelfth Great Master of it, whose constant Residence in this Town occasioned the Bishop of *Culm* to remove thither also. A very fair and well-built City, the chief of those which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by him so well garrisoned, and furnished with such store of Victuals, Ammunition and other Necessaries, that it was thought able to hold out for a Six years Siege. But it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of *Sweden*, who took it in less space then so many months in 1625; being on the settling of a Peace betwixt the Crowns rendered again unto the King of *Poland* in 1655. Beneath this Town, down towards the *Baltick*, is a pleasant Island made by the *Nogat* and the *Weyffel*, for the fertility of the Soil, and the great number of Houses, Villages, and

People not equalled (for the quantity of it) in all this Country.

To this part also belongeth the fair port of *Elbing*, (or *Melving*, as *Maginus* calls it) situate on the Bay of the *Baltick* called *Frijel-Hasse*; spoken of before, not far from a Fishful Lake; well traded, rich, and full of very wealthy Merchants; of great resort from other Nations, and much frequented by the *English* Merchants who have here their Staple for the *Baltick*: a small, but neat and well-built City, and fortified with a very good Wall, governed after the manner of a free Estate or Commonwealth, under the Patronage and Protection of the Kings of *Poland*, in like sort as *Dantzick* also is, of which more anon. The Town of *Elbing* was built in the year 1239, by the Order, in 1454 it withdrew from them, and put it self under the Protection of the King of *Poland*, in 1492 an University was opened here, in 1629 it was taken by the *Swedes*, in 1655 it was restored to the *Poles* by Treaty, the greatest part of its Wealth was occasioned by the Siege of *Dantzick*, about the year 1626, when the *English* removed the Staple hither from *Dantzick*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*, the most potent Nation of this Tract, extended all along the Coasts of the *Baltick* from them by *Protony* called *Sinus Venedicus*: containing under them the *Githones*, *Phini*, *Sulanes*, *Phrungudiones*, *Avarini*; and more within the Land the *Sodini* and *Galinde*, whose name the Dukedom or Province of *Galindia* doth still retain. But great and potent though they were, they were subdued by the *Borussi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphean* Mountains, who, weary of their own cold and barren Dwellings, removed into the Western parts, and vanquished the *Venedi*, and those other Nations, possessed themselves of this Country, which they called *Borussia*, now by us named *Prussia*. By *Venedus*, one of their Princes, having twelve Sons in all, it was divided into twelve Provinces or Dukedoms, one for every Son; continuing by that means distracted into divers petty Principalities, till the coming of the *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, sent hither by *Frederick* the second, Anno 1215, by whom the Provinces or Dukedoms of *Sudavia*, *Michelow*, and the greatest part of *Nadravia*, were laid waste and desolate: the rest submitted to their power, and received the Gospel. After this it continued subject to this Order of Knights till the year 1419, when, weary of their Extortion and the continual change of Masters, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their Obedience: seconded by the yielding up of *Marienburgh*, with many other Towns and Castles, sold to King *Casimir* by the Garrison-Soldiers, Anno 1457, for 476000 Florens. But the Knights disdain to be so dealt withal, and refusing to swear Allegiance to the Kings of *Poland*, they brake out into open War, which was managed with variable Success on both sides; *Ludovicus*, the then Great Master, being so successful at the first, that he once Beat the King out of the Field, routed his whole Army, slew 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobility: nor was he vanquished at last, but by the Treachery and Rebellion of his own people. In the end, wearied and worn out on both sides by continual Wars, *Albert* of *Brandenburgh*, then Great Master, having for 14 years together courageously maintained the Honour of his Order, and for the four last years importuned in vain the Assistance of the Emperor and Princes of *Germany*, began to think of some Expedient to compound the business. Being inclined to *Luther's* Doctrines, and willing to advance himself unto this Estate, he secretly practised with *Sigismund* the first of *Poland* to end the War to the advantage of both parties. By whom at last it was agreed, That *Albert* should relinquish his Order, and surrender all *Prussia* into the hands of the King: That the King, possessing the Western parts, with the Town of *Marienburgh*, and the Sovereignty of *Dansk* and *Melving*, should invest *Albert* with the Title

Title of Duke of *Prussia*, estating on him and the Heirs of his body the whole Eastern Moiety, containing the Provinces or Dukedoms before specified: and finally, that *Albert* and his Heirs should hold the said Estate, as Homagers to the Crown of *Poland*, taking place in all Assemblies at the King's right hand. According to this Agreement, *Anno 1525*, *Albert*, attired in the compleat habit of Master of the *Dutch Order*, presents himself humbly on his knees before *Sigismund* at *Cracow*, the King then sitting on his Throne. The King, raising him from the ground, caused him to put off those Robes and attire himself in a Ducal Habit: which done, an instrument was read and published, whereby the King conferred upon him and the Heirs of his Body the Dukedom of *Prussia*, to be held of him and his Successors Kings of *Poland*. An act at which the whole Order were extremely incensed; but they could not help it, and thereupon retired into *Germany*, where there were some good Lands left, to maintain such of them as had no mind to quit that Military honour; leaving their old Estates in *Prussia* to the King and the Duke, whose Successors have hitherto enjoyed their part of it, with the Title of

Dukes of P R U S S I A.

- 1525 1. *Albert of Brandenburg*, Son of *Frederick* Marquis of *Onoldsbech*, or *Onsbach*, created Master of the Order by the Emperor *Maximilian*, *Anno 1511*, and the first Duke of *Prussia* by *Sigismund*, the first of *Poland*, *Anno 1525*, founded the University of *Koningsburg*, *Anno 1544*.
- 1568 2. *Albert-Frederick* Son of *Albert* the first Duke, married *Mary Elianor*, Daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c.
3. *Anne*, Eldest Daughter of Duke *Albert-Frederick*, Dutchess of *Prussia*, brought the Estate in Marriage to
4. *John-Sigismund*, Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, who was confirmed therein by *Sigismund* the 3. of *Poland*, pretending an Elcheat thereof for want of Heirs-males of the body of *Albert* the first Duke.
5. *George-William*, Marquis and Elector of *Brandenburg*, in right of his Father, Duke of *Prussia* in right of the Lady *Anne* his Mother, and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by Descent from *Mary Eleanor* his Grandmother.
- 1639 6. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William* Marquiss and Elector of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*; of whose Investure in the Dukedom of *Pomeran* and other large and goodly Seigniouries we have spoken elsewhere.
- 1688 7. *Frederick-William*, the second Son of the former.

As for the Government of this Province standing thus divided, that of the Duke is more Monarchical than that of the King; the one being absolute and uncontrollable in his Estates, the other subject to the great Council of *Poland*. If any difference grow between them, Delegates appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to do equal Justice either at *Atarienburg* or *Elbing*, do compound the business: who, together with some other of the Dukes nomination, receive all Appeals in which the Duke is interessed as one of the parties.

The Revenues of this Dukedom are thought to be 120000 Ducats yearly.

The Armes thereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Vert*, membered and crowned *Or*, langued *Gules*.

10. P O M E R E L L I A.

POMERELLIA is bounded on the East with the River *Vistula*, by it parted from *Lespo*; on the South with *Poland* specially so called, on the North with the *Baltick Sea*, and on the West with the Dukedom of *Pomerania*, of which it was anciently a part, till separated from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland* under this new name. By the Poles called *Klein Pomeran*.

The Territory is small, and consequently not capable of many Towns and Cities of consideration. Those of most note are, 1. *Neuenburg*, on the Banks of the *Vistula*, or *Wesfel*, 2. *Dirschaw*, or *Darjow*, (in *Latine Darsovia*) a well fortified Town and of great importance, at the Siege whereof, *Anno 1627*, *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, received the Order of the Garter. 3. *Dantzick* in *Latine* called *Dantiscum*, and sometimes *Gedanum*, situate at the mouth of the same River also, a fair and well-built City, the Houses for the most part of Brick, and the rest of Stone, raised with great beauty and magnificence six or seven floors high; beautified with a fair Council-house for affairs of State, and many publick Gardens for disport and exercise. It consisteth of three Cities, governed by as many Senates; the one called *Voorstat*, or the fore City; the second *Altstat*, or the old City, and the third *Neuchstat*, or the Emperors City: but all encompassed with one Wall, and governed by one chief Senate or Common-Council chosen out of all three. A Bishop's See, and the second in esteem and rank of all the *Hanse-Towns*; of so great Trade, such a noted Granary of all sorts of Corn, issued from hence to supply the wants of other Countries, that 1000 Measures of Wheat (besides other commodities in proportion) are here daily sold. Heretofore it was reckoned as Imperial, but now as a Free-State, acknowledging the King of *Poland* for their Protectors, to whom they allow many Customs upon their Merchandize, and permit their Officers to remain there for receiving them. The first Town in the Kingdom of *Poland* which gave entrance to the Doctrines of *Luther*, *Anno 1525*, but in so tumultuous a manner, that they that favoured his Opinions deposed the old Common-Council-men, and created new ones of their own; they profaned the Churches, robbed them of their Ornaments, and shamefully abused the Priests and Religious persons, abolished the Mass, and altered all things at their pleasure. But by the coming of the King they grew somewhat quieter, leaving one Convent of Black Friars and two of Nuns, who still enjoy the exercise of their Religion. In the year 1454, it first submitted to the King of *Poland*, with whom it has had several Contests, particularly in the years 1569, and 1577, 1597. In 1657, it was forced to burn its own Suburbs to prevent their being taken by the *Swedes*, *Olearius* observes that the River is so shallow below this City, that great Ships cannot come up to it; when *Casimir* King of *Poland* was deserted by all the World, this City stood by him, and was Loyal to him beyond all expectation, as *Bunon* observes, who also saith, *Cluverius* the Great Geographer, was a Native of this place.

This Country once a part of the Dukedom of *Pomeran*, was given by *Suantibore*, once Duke thereof, *Anno 1107*, to *Bugislaus* his second Son; whose Posterity enjoyed it till the year 1295, when *Aleslevin* 2. dying without Issue-male, gave it to *Primislaus* Duke of the *Polonians*, whose Successors have ever since enjoyed it by that Donation. It is called *Pomerellia*, for distinction sake, from the first separating of it from the Dukedom of *Pomeran*.

II. P O L A N D.

PO L A N D, properly and specially so called, is bounded on the East with *Maffovia* and *Podlaffia*, on the West with *Silefia* and the Marquifate of *Brandenburg*, on the North with *Pruffia* and *Pomerellia*, and on the South with the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*. It is in length 480 *Italian* Miles, 300 of the fame Miles in breadth; and took this name (as afore is faid) from the word *Pole*, fignifying as much as plain, the Country being plain and level, little fwelled with Hills.

The Air hereof is pure and healthy, but fharp and cold; the Country plain, fhaded with thick dark Woods, parts of the *Hercynian*, full of wild Beasts for Hunting, and of Bees for Honey, which they have here in great abundance, together with fuch plenty of Grain, but of Rye efpecially, by reason of the continual breaking up of new Grounds gained out of the Forests, that it may be called the Granary or Store-house of the Western parts of *Europe*: the Grain is fent down the *Weyffel* unto *Dantzick*, and thence transported by the Merchant into other Countries, according to their feveral wants.

The Character of the People we have had before; adding now only, that in matters of War they are ftout and refolute; fo forward in giving the Charge and Purfuit of the Enemy, that *John Vafilivick*, the Great Duke of *Mufcovy*, comparing them with the Soldiers of his own Dominions, was wont to fay, that the *Mufcovites* wanted a Spur to drive them forwards, and the *Polander* had need of a Bridle to hold them back. Their Language is the *Slavonian* Tongue; moft generally fpoken alfo in the reft of the Provinces, but with fome difference in the Dialect or Pronunciation.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Greater and the Lesser *Poland*. The *GREATER*, lying wholly on the Wellern fide of the *Weyffel*, and fo accounted anciently as a part of *Germany*, contains nine Divifions, under the Jurifdiction of nine Palatines of, 1. *Pofna*, 2. *Kalifch*, 3. *Siradia*, 4. *Lancicia*, 5. *Vladiflaw*, 6. *Brzefty*, 7. *Rava*, 8. *Ploczko*, and, 9. *Dobrzin*; each of them fo called from fome Town of note. The chief whereof, and of the reft contained in them, are, 1. *Pofna*, a Bifhop's See, and the principal of the Greater *Poland*, feated among the Hills on the River *Warta*; built of Free-Stone, with very large Suburbs beyond the River, but much fubjeft unto Inundations, which add much ftrengh unto the place; of great refort by reason of the Marts or Fairs holden twice a year. 2. *Kofcienc*, fuate amongft Marfhes, and fortified with a double Wall. 3. *Ofticzom*, bordering on *Silefia*, begirt with Woods. 4. *Gnefna*, the ancienteft Town of *Poland*, Founded by *Lechus* their firft Prince, the Seat of him and his Succelfors, till removed to *Cracow*; fuate in *Kalifch*, and by old prefcription the firft place for Inauguration of the Kings of *Pole*, in regard that here Prince *Boleflaus*, the firft King of this Country, received the Regal Diadem at the hands of *Orho* the third. The Town is well walled, and the fee of an Archbishop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, by ancient Privilege the Pope's Legate for all *Sarmatia Europea*, and in the abfence of the King or *Interregnum* the Vicar-general of the Kingdom, having power to Summon the Dyets, to conclude and publifh their Deerees. 5. *Pietrakow*, a walled Town in the Palatinate or Divifion of *Siradia*, fuate on a moorifh Soil; the place in former times of the General Dyets, fince removed to *Warfaw*. 6. *Vladiflaw*, on the *Weyffel* or *Viftula*, a Bifhop's See. 7. *Bedgoff*, a walled a Town on the *Bard*, a Navigable River, conveying the Merchandife of thefe parts into the *Viftula*. 8. *Krufwick*, in *Brzefty*, built of Wood, ftanding on a great Lake named *Gopia*, in the Caftle whereof *Papielus* the fecond, Duke of *Poland*, was after a ftrange manner devoured with Rats fwarming out of the Lake.

9. *Ploczko*, upon the *Viftula*, a walled Town, and a Bifhop's See, with a Caftle to it. 10. *Warfaw*, upon the Banks of the fame River; of no great note in former times, but of late grown the beft frequented and moft traded Town in all the Province: honoured for the moft part with the Court of the King, the holding of all publick Dyets (removed from *Pietrakow* to the place) and the Tranfaftion of all bufinelfes both of Peace and War, which muft needs draw to it great refort of all forts of People; the fruitfulness of the Soil and commodiousnefs of the Situation rendring it very capable of thofe publick Meetings. This City is placed above in *Maffovia*, to which it belongs properly. 11. *Mlawia*, bordering on the Dukedom of *Pruffia*.

The *LESSE R* *Poland*, lying on the South of the Greater; and divided by the River *Weyffel*, comprehendeth only three Divifions, under the Government of the Palatines of 1. *Cracow*, 2. *Sandomir*, and 3. *Lublin*. Principal Cities of the which are, 1. *Cracow*, upon the *Weyffel*, (called in *Latin* *Cracovia*) a Bifhop's See, the chief of all the Kingdom, the Seat of the Prince, and the Sepulchre of the former Kings; by *Protony* called *Carodunum*; fortified with a double Wall (of the old Faftion) a deep Ditch, the Caftle of *Vanel*, fuate on the top of an high Rock, and beautified with an Univerfity, or general Study of good Arts and Sciences, opened here in 1364. The Buildings are more fair than elfewhere in *Poland*, of Free-ftone, and four Stories high; but for the moft part covered with Shingles, or Tiles of Wood: in the midft is a large Market-place, in form Quadrangular; and in the middle of that the Common-Council-houfe, about which are many Shops of Merchants. On one fide of it ftandeth the Cathedral Church: and on the Eaft-fide of the City the Palace Royal, high feated on an Hill over-looking both the Town and Country, fair and well built, of Form fomewhat near a Quadrangle, but lying open to the South without any Buildings above the Wall, affording thereby to the Gallery, being on the North-fide of the Caftle, the more excellent Proftect. The Jefuits in 1635 procured the Proteftant Church here to be burnt down, for which the next year after they were banifhed in the year 1655. This City was taken by the *Svedes*, and recovered by the *Poles* in 1657. This Univerfity is infamoufly Famous for the great number of *Socinians* it has produced. 2. *Lelom*, a walled Town with a Caftle on the River *Biale*. 3. *Sandomir*, a walled Town with a Caftle alfo, feated on a Hill under which runs the *Viftula* or *Weyffel*. 4. *Wiflicza*, a walled Town amongft Marfhes, encompassed with the River *Nid*. 5. *Lublin*, a walled Town, but more ftongly Fortified by the Marfhes and Water with which it is environed; remarkable for three yearly Marts, drawing hither Merchants from moft parts adjoining, as alfo *Mofcovites*, *Armenians*, *Turks*, and *Grecians*. The *Jews* inhabiting the greateft part of the Suburbs, have here their Synagogue; making the Town, efpecially at the time of thofe Marts, a medly of all Nations and Religions. This City is not great, but very fpruce and well built, and is not only the Capital of a Palatinate, but alfo a Bifhop's See. A Synod being held here in the year 1612, the *Socinians* defired to be admitted to the Communion of the *Calvinifts*, and were rejected, the Jefuits in the year 1630 burnt their Church which they had in this Town. 6. *Cufimiria*, on the *Weyffel*, fo named from the Founder of it, a King of *Poland*.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Arii*, *Helverona*, *Elyfii*, and the *Naharvali*, parts of the *Suevi* *Lygii* fpoken of by *Tacitus*, all of them lying on the Dutch fide of the *Weyffel*, by conftquence within the Bounds of the ancient *Germany*: the People of all the reft of the Provinces before defcribed being of the *Sarmatian* Race, next Neighbours to the *Germans*, and not much unlike them in Perfons, Cuftoms, or Conditions. But thefe difperfed and fcattered Nations of *Sarmatia Europea*, being united in the common Name of *Slaves*,

part of them settled in that part which we now call *Poland*, at that time reckoned and accounted of as a part of *Germany*. The time of their first coming hither, and the manner of their Government when first settled here, is not very well known. But for the first it is most certain, that it was sometime, and that not long, after the Death of *Mauritius* the Eastern Emperor; and for the next it is as certain, that on the coming of *Lechus*, a *Croatian*, who fled his Country for a Murder, with his Brother *Zechius*, they settled into a more constant Form of Government than before they did. For *Lechus*, seeing his Brother's good success in *Bohemia*, where the *Slaves* received him for their Prince; passed into *Poland*, the next Province, and was as cheerfully received by the *Slaves* thereof, who look'd upon him as a Prince of their own Extraction, and without quarrel or competition submitted themselves to his Commands, Anno 650, or thereabouts. Of this there is good *constat* amongst our Authors. But neither the names or number of his Successors do occur in Story till the time of *Crocus*, the Founder of *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and the Legislator of this People. After this, the Succession of their Princes and the Success of their Affairs becomes more certain: the Estate hereof being much improved by the conquest of many *Sarmatian* Countries, all which together constitute and make up the Kingdom of *Poland*, so called from this predominating and prevailing Province. The sum of their Affairs is this. The Posterity of *Crocus* failing in *Popielus* the Second, *Piaſtus* is elected Duke; the Princes from that time forwards becoming Elective, but always with respect to the next of Blood. In the time of *Mieciſlaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus*, they received the Gospel, Anno 963. *Boleslaus*, the Son of *Mieciſlaus*, was the first who had the Title of a King, conferred upon him by the Emperor *Otho* the third, about the year 1001, relinquished by *Vladislaus* the first, and not resumed again till the time of *Primiſlaus* Duke of *Posna*, Anno 1300, after which it became perpetual. In the Person of this *Primiſlaus* *Pomerellia* is united to the State of *Poland*, Anno 1295; in that of *Jagello*, or *Vladislaus* the fifth, the great Dukedom of *Lithuania*, incorporated into this Body as a Member of it in the time of *Sigismund Augustus*. By *Vladislaus* the sixth, Son of *Jagello*, *Podolia*, *Russia Nigra* were also added by *Sigismund* the first, *Prussia* and *Masſovia*; *Podlaffia* by *Sigismund Augustus*, who also took *Volhinia* out of *Lithuania*; by *Stephen*, the actual possession of the greatest part of *Livonia*; by *Sigismund* the third, a Title to the Crown of *Sweden*. The Princes follow in this order.

Dukes and Kings of P O L A N D.

A. Ch.

- 694 1. *Lechus* of *Croatia*, the first Duke; whose Posterity failing, twelve Palatines were chosen to direct Affairs, and the State became Aristocratical.
 2. *Crocus*, the Legislator of *Poland*.
 3. *Lechus* II. Son of *Crocus*.
 4. *Venda*, the Daughter of *Crocus*, and Sister of *Lechus* the second.
 5. *Lescus* I.
 6. *Lescus* II.
 7. *Lescus* III. Contemporary with *Charles* the Great.
 8. *Popielus*, Son of *Lescus* the third.
 9. *Popielus* II. devoured in most horrid manner by Rats and Mice, together with his Wife and Children, the last of the Posterity or House of *Crocus*.
 800 10. *Piaſtus*, the first Duke elected.
 11. *Zemovitus*, Son of *Piaſtus*.
 12. *Lescus* IV. Son of *Zemovitus*.
 13. *Nemomyſlaus*, Son of *Lescus* the 4th.

14. *Mieciſlaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus*, the first Christian Prince of the *Polonians*, Founded the Bishopricks of *Cracow* and *Gnesna*.
 1000 15. *Boleslaus*, Son of *Mieciſlaus*, the first who had the Title of King conferred on him by *Otho* the third.
 1025 16. *Mieciſlaus* II. Son of *Boleslaus*.
 1041 17. *Casimir*, Son of *Mieciſlaus*.
 1059 18. *Boleslaus* II. Son of *Casimir*, deposed and died an Exile in *Hungary*.
 1082 19. *Vladislaus*, Brother of *Boleslaus* the second, abandoned the Title of King, and only used that of Prince or Duke.
 1203 20. *Boleslaus* III. Son of *Vladislaus*, Duke of *Poland*.
 1140 21. *Vladislaus* II. Son of *Boleslaus* the 3d, outed by his Brethren, and at last eſtated in *Sileſia*, united formerly to *Poland* from the time of *Lechus*.
 1146 22. *Boleslaus* IV. Brother of *Vladislaus* the second.
 1174 23. *Mieciſlaus* III. Brother of *Boleslaus* and *Vladislaus*, deposed by his Brother *Casimir*.
 1178 24. *Casimir* II. Brother of the three last Princes.
 1195 25. *Lescus* V. Son of *Casimir* the second, deposed by *Mieciſlaus* the third.
 1203 26. *Vladislaus* III. Son of *Mieciſlaus* the third, deposed by *Lescus* the 5th, who again ſeiz'd on the Estate.
 1243 27. *Boleslaus* V. surnamed *Pudicins*.
 1280 28. *Lescus* VI. surnamed *Niger*, the adopted Son of *Boleslaus*, and his Cousin-german once removed; after whose death, Anno 1289, the Estate, being distracted into many Factions, was for some time without a Prince, settled at last on
 1295 29. *Primiſlaus*, surnamed *Posthumus*, Duke of *Posna*, who again assumed the name of King, continued ever since by his Successors.
 1296 30. *Vladislaus* IV. surnamed *Lothicus*, Brother of *Lescus Niger*, outed by *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1300; after whose Death, Anno 1306, he resumed the Estate.
 1333 31. *Casimir* III. surnamed the Great, Son of *Vladislaus* the 4th, the first Establisher of the Kingdom after all those Troubles, died without Issue.
 1371 32. *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, Nephew or Grandson to *Charles* King of *Hungary*, by *Elizabeth* the Sister of *Casimir*.
 1383 33. *Hedwiga*, the youngest Daughter of *Lewis*, her eldest Sister *Mary* succeeding in the Realm of *Hungary*, chosen Queen of *Poland*; married to *Jagello*, Duke of *Lithuania*, Christianized, and called *Vladislaus* the 5th.
 1386 34. *Vladislaus* V. Duke of *Lithuania*, elected King upon his Marriage with Queen *Hedwiga*.
 1435 35. *Vladislaus* VI. Son of *Jagello*, or *Vladislaus* the fifth, by *Sophia*, Daughter of the Duke of *Kiovia*, King of *Hungary* also; slain at the Battel of *Varna* by *Amirath* the second, King of the *Turks*, and without Issue.
 1447 36. *Casimir* IV. Brother of *Vladislaus*, first brought the Knights of *Prussia* under his Command; Knight of the Order of the Garter.
 1493 37. *John-Albert*, the second Son of *Casimir*; his elder Brother *Vladislaus* being pretermitted, on his accepting of the Crowns of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*.
 1502 38. *Alexander*, the third Son of *Casimir*.
 1507 39. *Sigismund*, the fourth Son of *Casimir*, his elder Brethren dying without Issue: he suppressed the Order of the *Dutch* Knights in *Prussia*, and added part thereof unto his Estate.

- 1548 40. *Sigismund II.* surnamed *Augustus*, the last of the Male-Issue of *Jagello*.
- 1574 41. *Henry*, Duke of *Anjou*, Son of *Henry* the second, the *French King*; chosen on the death of *Sigismund-Augustus*, the only Stranger to the Blood in all this Catalogue. On the death of his Brother *Charles* the 9th, he departed secretly into *France*, where he succeeded by the name of *Henry* the third.
- 1579 42. *Stephen Bathor*, Vaivod of *Transylvania*, by the recommendation of *Amurath* the third, Emperor of the *Turks*, having first married *Anne*, Sister of *Sigismund* the second, is Elected King. He united *Livonia* to the Crown, and had a great hand upon the *Muscovite*.
- 1587 43. *Sigismund III.* Son of *John King* of *Swethland*, and of *Katharine* his Wife, another of the Sisters of *Sigismund* the second, King of *Poland* and *Sweden*. He valiantly opposed *Osman* the Great *Turk*, invading his Dominions with an Army of 300000 fighting Men.
- 1633 44. *Vladislaus VII.* eldest Son of *Sigismund* the third. After whose death the Kingdom was extremely embroil'd by Factions, especially by the mutinous and seditious *Cossacks*, not fully settled by the Election of
- 1648 45. *Casimir V.* Brother of *Vladislaus* the seventh: Who being embroiled with the *Cossacks*, was Overthrown by them, though he had 50000 Men in his Army, 10000 of which perished. The next year he lost a greater Army. In the third Battel he prevailed against them. In 1653 the *Russ*, taking the Advantage of these Broils, took *Smolensko* and *Vilna*. In 1655 the *Swedes* fell upon him, and took from him *Poland* properly so called, *Masovia*, all *Prussia*, except *Dantzick*, which City saved the Kingdom; and in 1660 the War was honourably ended. This Prince voluntarily Resigned the Kingdom in the year 1668, when he had Reigned Thirty-one years, and died in 1672 at *Nevers* in *France*, in a Monastery. With him ended the *Swedish Line* in *Poland*.
- 1669 46. *Michael Wiesznowizky* succeeded him, and his Reign was not only short but unfortunate; for in the year 1672 he lost to the *Turks* the strong Town of *Caminieck*; and in 1673 he died, the 31th of *October*.
- 1674 47. *John Sobiesky*, was Elected after him, being then Crown-General, and in the Field: His greatest Acts are the Defeating of the *Turks* at *Cortzheim* in 1673; and the Relief of *Vienna* in 1683. He died in 1696, and left the Crown to the Contentions of a divided Nobility.
- 1697 48. *John-George*, Elector of *Saxony*, was Chosen King of *Poland*, having first renounced and abjured the Religion of his Ancestors, for which he had expressed great Zeal in his younger years. His Succession was however strongly opposed by the King of *France*, but being supported by all his neighbouring Princes, he is now in the peaceable possession of it, and endeavouring to drive the *Turks* out of *Ukraine*.

The Government of this Kingdom is nothing less than Monarchical. For though the first Dukes hereof were absolute Princes, and ruled after a Dispotical manner, having power not only of the Estates of their Subjects, but of Life and Death, without Formalities of Law; yet when they once became Elective, they lost much of that power: which decayed so by little and little, that at the last the King is counted little better

than a Royal Shadow; *Stat magni nominis umbra*, in the Poet's Language. A Diminution which began first in the times of *Lewis* of *Hungary* and *Jagello* of *Lithuania*; who, to gain the Succession to the Kingdom, contrary to Law, the one for his Daughter, the other for his Son, departed with many of their Royalties and Prerogatives, to buy the Voices of the Nobility. Since which time, the Nobility in all their Elections have so limited and restrained the King's Authority, and enlarged their own, that without their consent in Council he may neither make a War, nor treat of Peace, nor impose Taxes, nor alienate any of his Demeans, nor do any thing of importance which concerns the Publick: Inasmuch, as *Boterus*, a great Statesman, doth expressly say, That the Government of *Poland* doth rather seem an Aristocracy than a Monarchy, a Commonwealth rather than a Kingdom. Besides, the King not only takes a solemn Oath at his Coronation to confirm all the Rights and Privileges which have been granted to the Subject by his Predecessors, but adds this Clause, *Quod si Sacramentum meum violavero, incolæ Regni nullam nobis obedientiam prestare tenebuntur*, that if he violate this Oath, his Subjects shall not be obliged to yield him any Obedience. Which, as *Bodin* well observeth, doth rather favour of the Condition of a Prince of the Senate, than of the Majesty of a King. He is respected accordingly by the Great ones, who look not on him as their King but their elder Brother, (and perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three days lasting. Which notwithstanding, the King, once chosen and enthroned, hath sole power in many things without consulting with the Senate; as, *viz.* in assembling Dyets, choosing the secular Counsellors, disposing absolutely also of his Vassals and the Revenues of the Crown to what use he pleaseth; being sole Judge of the Nobility in Criminal Causes, which is a strong point to rein them in with. By which, and either uniting himself unto the Clergy, or the well forming a party amongst the Nobility, he may do many things not allowable in strictness of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government being proportionable to the strength of his Wit and Brain.

And here it is to be observed, that none but the Clergy and Nobility have any Suffrage in the Election of the King: that is to say, the Twenty-six *Palatines*, and Sixty *Chastellans*, with the four *Marshals*, and some others of the principal Officers of State, in behalf of the Nobility; and the Archbishops and Bishops in the name of the Clergy; but of the Commons none at all. Which is the reason why there is so much care taken to preserve the Privileges of the two first Orders, without obtaining any Immunities for relief of the third; who are most miserably oppressed on all sides, rather as Bondmen than Tenants in respect of their Lords, and not so much Subjects as plain Slaves in regard of the King; whereof somewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the Commons excluded only out of these Elections, but have no place nor Vote in the Council of State, or in any of the general Dyets: the first consisting only of the Prelates, *Palatines*, *Chastellans*, and principal Officers spoken of before; the nominating of which pertaineth to the King alone; the other aggregated of all persons of those several Orders, and the Delegates of each Province and principal City, sent thither for the rest of the Nobility, whom they represent. Yet notwithstanding this exclusion of the Commons from this Commonwealth Council, they there conclude of all matters of publick Interest not properly determinable by the great Council or Council of State: in which perhaps (especially in the case of Taxes) the Commons may be more concerned than any other.

The Forces of this Kingdom or Commonwealth relate unto Land-Service only. For though they have a large Sea-coast upon the *Baltick*, yet the *Danes*, *Swedes* and *Hanse-Towns*, having got the start of them, keep them from doing much at Sea. And for Land-Forces, they consist

consist of Horse especially, whereof they are able to raise 80000, (that is to say, 10000 out of *Poland*, and 60 or 70000 out of *Lithuania* and the Eastern Provinces) of which one half at least are thought to be for Action. And this seems probable enough, in regard of those great Bodies of Horse which *Stephen* and *Sigismund* the third had against the *Moscovite*, whereof the one had 40000, and the other 30000, (besides Draught-Horses) very well appointed. But for their Foot, they are not at so good a pass; their Infantry being for the most part *Germans* or *Hungarians*, whom they hire for Money; of which two Nations King *Stephen*, in his Enterprize upon *Livonia*, had no less than 16000 to convey his Ordinance. Upon confidence of this great number of Horse, and their readiness to serve upon all occasions, the *Polanders* bear themselves so high, that they neither fear the power of a Foreign Enemy, nor regard the Fortifying of their Towns, or the building of Fortresses on their Frontiers; boasting that they are able to defend their Country without such Helps against any Nation whatsoever, and trusting more to a Castle of Bones (as was courageously said by *Savage* an English Gentleman) than to a Castle of Stones. And for the raising of these Horse, the Gentlemen of the Country are bound by their Tenure (like the *Turks Timariots*) not only to serve in Person for defence of the Realm, but to maintain a certain number of Horse in continual readiness; especially in those parts which lie next the *Tartar*, where their numbers are exceeding great, and with whom many times they join to afflict and harass their own Country, though in pay against them. Of these some serve in the manner of our Men at Arms, some like unto our Light-horse, others like the *Tartars*. And these they call commonly by the name of *Cossacks* (or Adventurers:) a race of Men trained up to steal, waste, and depopulate, wheresoever they come, having little but their Swords to live by; a murderous and wicked people, chiefly in their Drunkenness, and that not only towards Strangers, but their natural Country-men. The cause of that Sedition which, for some years past, hath more depopulated and distracted that flourishing Kingdom than all the Armies of the *Turks*.

Pfendorf observes, that there is no Nation in Europe which has so great a number of Nobles as *Poland*, and saith they can pay large Contributions, whereby a good Foot Army of *Cossacks* or others might be maintained; but then they are quickly weary of any publick Charge, and therefore cannot maintain along and tedious War. And when the Nobility are called into the Field they come out late, and are not easily kept in good Order, and have too great a number of Servants and Attendants which devour the Country, and make Provisions scarce. They are also too hot in the first Onsets, but quickly grow weary and impatient of Hardships: And Foot they have none besides their *Cossacks*, and what they hire of the *Germans* or *Hungarians*. They are extremely Jealous of their Kings, and in perpetual Intrigues to prevent their invading their Privileges, and this renders them unquiet, suspicious, and seditious, uneasy to govern, and hard to please. Thus far that great Man. And all this considered, it will appear the less a wonder to us, that they have not been able to recover *Caminiack*, though it has been three years blockaded, or to make any Progress in *Wallachia* or *Moldavia*, notwithstanding the low Condition the *Turkish* Affairs have been in these three Years, and the potent Diversion the *Russ* have given to the *Crim-Tartars* in 1687 and 1688.

As for the Revenues of this King, they are computed at 600000 Crowns *per Annum*, drawn chiefly out of Salt and some Mines of Silver: the Profits arising from the Demesns of the Crown being for the most part given away in Pensions and Gratuities to the *Palatines*, *Chastellains*, and other great Men of the Realm, to make them the more pliant to his desires. Most of which Sum is put

up yearly in his Coffers, or expended in the purchase of Estates for his younger Sons: his Daughters being married at the publick Charge, and the expence of his Household defrayed by the *Parliament* and most part of *Poland*, for the time that he remains amongst them. Nor to the Wars at any time exhaust his Treasure, in which case, by Decree of the Dyets, he is intitled to lay impositions and Taxes upon the people, levied in the way of tribute, or upon their Lands: which do amount to such a Sum that by means hereof King *Stephen* maintained War three years against the *Moscovite*, without expending any thing of his own Revenue.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom are,

1. The *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, instituted under the Walls of *Acon* or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy-Land*, in a Church whereof, dedicated to the Blessed Virgin, their Order was first allow'd, from whence they are called *Eques Mariani*. The Institution was in the year 1190. The first Great Master was *Henry Walsby*. The Christians being beaten out of *Syria*, they first removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Munich* in *Hungary*; where, and in some other parts of *Germany*, they were endow'd with fair Revenues: hence they were nam'd *Eques Teutonici*, or the *Dutch* Knights. Sent into *Prussia* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second, *Anno* 1239, or called in, as some say, by the *Moscovite* against the *Prussians*, they fixed their Seat at *Marienburgh*, under *Sigysride* the second Great Master, *Anno* 1340, or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovicus*, the 18th Great Master, they were forced to submit to *Casimir* the 4th of *Poland*, *Anno* 1450; which was the occasion of the long War betwixt them and the *Polanders*, continuing till the time of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the 24th and last Great Master in this Country; who surrendred his Order (as before is said) to *Sigismund* the first, by whom he was created the first Duke of *Prussia*. Such of the Knights as disrelished this Action retired into *Germany*, where they chose one *Walter Cronenberg* Master of the Order: the Title being afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian*, one of the younger Sons of *Maximilian* the second, but the Order sensibly decaying, is at this time of little estimation in the World.

2. Of the *Port glaive*, or *Sword-bearers*, (*Ensigni* in *Latin*) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third, by whom they were sent into *Livonia*, to defend the Preachers of the Gospel against the Infidels, at the first Conversion of that Country. Being too weak to effect that business, they united themselves with the *Dutch* Knights by the Pope's Authority, and, instead of *Knights of the Sword*, were called *Knights of the Cross*. Separated therefrom in the time of *Univus* their Great Master, *Anno* 1541, the *Dutch* Knights being then dispossessed of *Prussia*, and these inclining wholly to the Opinions of *Luther*, they a while subsisted of themselves. What became of them afterwards, and how the Order was extinguished, hath been shewed already in *Livonia*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are quarterly; 1. *Gules*, an Eagle *Argent*, crowned and armed *Or*, for the Realm of *Poland*; and 2. *Gules*, a Chevalier armed *Cap-a-pce*, advancing his Sword, *Argent*, mounted on a barbed Courlier of the *second*, for the Dukedom of *Lithuania*.

There are in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

Of the *Romish* Church, Archbishops 3. Bishops 19.
Of the *Greek* Church, Archbishops 2. Bishops 6.

Universities 4. *Viz.*

Cracow
Vilna

Dantzick.
Konigsberg.

And so much for *P O L A N D*.

T H E Carpathian Mountains.

IN our way from *Poland* unto *Hungary* (whither now we go) we must of necessity pass over the *CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS*, the ancient Boundary of *Sarmatia Europea* from the rest of *Europe*. A long and craggy Ledge of Hills, which beginning near the City of *Presburg*, and the Borders of *Austria*, pass on in a continual course till they come to the very *Euxine Sea*; and by that means not only divide *Hungary* from *Poland* specially so called, but part *Transylvania* and *Moldavia*, two *Dacian* Regions, from *Russia Nigra* and *Podolia*, Provinces of the *Polonian* Kingdom. By *Ptolomy*, in his second Book, they are called *Montes Sarmatici*. (*Sarmaticæ Rupes* by *Solinus*) because determining the *Sarmatian* Nation (who possessed the most part of it) from *Germany* and the more Southern parts of *Europe*: and in his third Book by one name *Carpates*, or *Mons Carpatus*, so called (as some think) from the *Greek* word *Καρπός*, signifying *Fruit*, from the Fruitfulness of it, compared with the other Mountains in those Northern Countries. At the present it is known by divers names, according to the Provinces and People which it passeth by. By the *Dutch* generally called *Wurtzgarten* (or a Garden of Herbs) which alludeth to the name of *Carpatus*, by the *Hungars*, *Tarchzal*. Betwixt *Moravia* and *Hungaria*, where it is at the highest, it is called in the *Slavonian* Tongue by the name of *Tatri*, in the *German* *Schneberg*: where it parteth *Transylvania* from *Russia Nigra*, the *Russes* call it *Biescid*, and the *Dutch-men* *Crapack*. A Chain of Hills of more length than Fame, not much observable in Story, but for the shutting up the *Hungary Slaves*, and others of those Northern Nations which afterwards invaded the *Roman* Provinces: nor of much notice at the present, but for giving an Original to many of the principal Rivers which water the Countries lying on both sides of it. And therefore having nothing more to detain us here, we will pass them over, and descend into the Plains of *Hungary* where we shall meet again with the *Roman* Empire, the Territories and Affairs whereof we shall take along without interruption until we come unto the Banks of the great River *Tigris* and the *Caspian* Sea. And so far also from this place we shall survey the Fortunes and Estates of the *Turkish* Empire, of which the Realm of *Hungary* is the most Western part or Province; not meeting either of them again till we come to *Ægypt*.

O F H U N G A R Y.

HUNGARY is bounded on the East with *Transylvania* and *Walachia*, on the West with *Stiria*, *Austria*, and *Moravia*; on the North with the *Carpathian Mountains*, which divide it from *Poland*, and on the South with *Slavonia*, and some part of *Dacia*. It extendeth in length, from *Fresburg*, along the *Danow*, to the Borders of *Transylvania*, for the space of 300 *English* Miles; and 190 of the same miles in breadth. The reason of the name we shall have anon. *Transylvania* and *Slavonia* are now both taken for Parts, Provinces, or Dependencies of *Hungary*; and the latter is taken into *Hungary* in his Description of Places by this Author, though he has excluded it here.

It lieth in the Northern Temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the 7th and 9th Climates, so that the longest Summers Day in the Southern parts is but 15 hours and a half, and not above 16 hours in the parts most North: taking up all that Tract of ground on the North-side of *Danubius* possessed by the *Jazyges Metanestæ*, a *Sarmatian* People, and part also of *Pannonia Superior* and *Pannonia Inferior*, both on the South of that River.

But being it passeth generally under the name of *Pannonia*, we are to know that the *Romans* having made themselves Masters of all *Pannonia*, divided it into four Provinces, part of the *Diocels* of *Illyricum Occidentale*, that is to say, 1. *Pannonia Superior*, bordering on *Æthiopia*, and containing part of the Higher *Austria*,

and the most Western parts of the present *Hungary*; on the South-side of the *Danow*. 2. *Pannonia Inferior*, containing the Eastern parts of *Hungary*, on the same side of the River. 3. *Valeria*, anciently part of *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending *Stiria* or *Stiermark*, in the Archdukedom of *Austria*. And, 4. *Savia*, so called of the River *Savius*, anciently part of *Pannonia Inferior*; now called *Windischland*, one of the Provinces or Subdivisions of *Slavonia*. But the name of *Pannonia* falling with the *Roman* Empire, and this Country being fallen into the hands of other Masters, it took a new name from the Nations who possessed themselves of it, and was called *Hungaria*, quasi *Hunn Avaria*, by a mixt name made of the *Hunni* and *Avares*, two *Scythian* Nations, who either successively or conjunctly were possessed thereof; or from the *Hungari*, another race of *Scythians*, mentioned by *Jornandes* in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, drawn into this Country by the Emperor *Arnulph*, to aid him in his War against *Suantihogius*, King of the *Moravians*. This last I look on as most probable: the first as more probable than that of *Avantine*, and others of our later Writers, who finding a poor Province in the most North-East point of the *Russian* Empire called *Jugria* (and by them *Jugaria*) would have the name of *Hungary* to be thence derived.

The People are strong of Body, and rude of Behaviour, respecting neither the liberal Arts nor Mechanick Trades. The greatest Aspersions is the name of a Coward, which cannot be wiped off without the killing of

of a *Turk*: after which they are privileged to wear a Feather, and by the number of their Feathers to shew how many *Turks* they have slain in Battle. They desire Wars, and like no Trade better, being naturally slothful, (like the *Irish*) and therefore best approve of that course of Life, whereby they may rather live upon other mens Labour than take pains for their living. Extremely covetous they are, yet having rather desire than art to enrich themselves, permitting the *Dutch* to ingross all their Trading, and manage such Commodities as the Country yieldeth: which is the cause (seconded by the Oppressions of the *Turk* and the *Austrian* Princes, under whom they are) that none of them rise to any considerable Wealth. And for such as have Estates in Land, they grow every day more poor than other. For though the Females be excluded from inheriting their Father's Possessions, (to whom they give no Portion, but new Cloaths on the Wedding-day:) Yet being the Sons do equally inherit the Estate, (as such who hold in *Gavelkind* do here in *England*) it must needs be that by so many Divisions and Subdivisions the greatest Patrimony that is will be brought to nothing. Both sexes in the way of their Education are inured to Hardness, not suffered to lie in Beds till the Night of their Marriage.

The Christian Faith was first planted here in the time of *Stephen*, surnamed the Saint, the first King of this Country; who was invited thereunto by the special means and procurement of the Emperor *Henry* the second, giving him upon that Condition his Sister *Gisela* in Marriage; and through the preaching and industry of *Albert* Archbishop of *Prague*, Anno 1016, or thereabouts. Since which time Christianity hath continued here without interruption, (defended gallantly and courageously against the *Turks*) but broken into Fractious and Subdivisions among themselves: Some pertinaciously adhering to the Church of *Rome*, some following the Doctrine of *Luther*, others that of *Calvin* and some new Fancies and Opinions disavowed by all the rest. Free exercise of Religion was first granted by *Maximilian* the second, and re-obtained in the time of *Rodolphus*, his Son and Successor, by the Pacification at *Vienna*, procured by the power of *Bolsai* Prince of *Transylvania*, Anno 1606. The violating of which Pacification by *Ferdinand* the second, in the beginning of his Reign occasioned great Wars and Troubles betwixt him and this People, not quieted in a long time after. Yet all these different Parties do agree in this, to punish Adultery and Fornication with no less a punishment than Death; the Father forcing his Daughter, the Husband his Wife, and the Brother his Sisters, to the place of their Execution.

The Language generally here spoken is a kind of *Slavonian*, differing in Dialect from the *Poles*: but in the parts adjoining to *Germany* the *Dutch* is spoken; as the old *Jazygian* is betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*, the ancient Seat of the *Jazyges Metenaste*.

The Soil is wonderful fruitful, yielding Corn and Fruits in great abundance; the Grass in some places, (as in the Isle of *Komara*) if it be suffered to grow to its full length before the cutting of it down, being said to exceed the height of a Man: which doth breed such a number of Cattel, that this Country alone is thought to be able to feed all *Europe* with Flesh. They yearly send into *Germany* and *Slavonia* 80000 Oxen: they have Deer, Partridge, Pheasants, in such superfluity, that any man that will may kill them, which in other places is utterly prohibited, these Creatures being preserved as Game for Gentlemen. For at that great Insurrection of the Boors in *Germany*, (before the end of which 50000 of them were slain in fight) their chief Demands were, 1. That they might chuse their own Ministers. 2. That they might pay no Tithes but of Corn. 3. That they might be free from the power of Magistrates. 4. That Wood, Timber and Fewel might be common. 5. And especially, that they might hunt

and hawk in all times and places. The other Commodities of the Country are Gold and Silver, whereof they have some very rich Veins; as also of Tin, Lead, Iron; good store of Fish, Copper, Wine: this last as good as that of *Candia*.

The worthiest Scholar that ever this Kingdom produced was *St. Hierom*, a worthy Father of the *Latine* Church born in *Stridon*. The most worthy of all their Soldiers were 1. *Johannes Huniades*, who so valiently resisted the Incursions of the *Turks*, and slew of them 50000 at the Battle of *Asaron*. And 2. *Matthias Corvinus*, his Son, afterward King of *Hungary*; of whom thus *Adrian* out of a Poet,

——— *Patria decus, unica Stirpis*
Gloria, Pannonicæ Cædis fortissimus ultor.
His Countries Pride, the Glory of his Race,
Revenger of th' *Hungarians* late Disgrace.

The principal Rivers are, 1. *Danubius*, spoken of before, when we were in *Germany*. 2. *Savus*, which rising in *Carniola*, 3. *Dravus* which rising in *Carinthia*, and 4. *Tibiscus*, which rising in the *Carpathian* Mountains, pay their Tribute to *Danubius*: of which *Tibiscus* the *Hungarians* use to say, that two parts are Water, and the third Fish. Besides which, and some others of inferior note, there is the famous Lake called *Balaton*, (by the *Dutch* *Platsee*) forty *Italian* miles in length, but of breadth unequal, in some places being ten miles broad, and in some but three. There be also many Medicinal waters, and more hot Baths than any one Country hath in *Europe*: some Waters also of a strange nature, whereof some falling on the ground is turned to Stone; others (about the Town of *Smalnice*) which falling into Ditches made a kind of Mud, out of which tried and melted they make very good Copper; and some again which flow in Winter, and freeze in Summer; and near unto *Bistrice*, or *Mensol*, a Spring or Fountain, out of which commeth a green Water whereof they make Solder for their Gold.

Principal Mountains of this Country are, 1. *Carpatus*, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, spoken of before. 2. *Matzan*, near the City of *Agria*, covered with rich Vines. 4. *Erdol*, *omnium amplissimus*, the largest of the three, saith the *Atlas minor*. Which words, if true, must needs be understood of the height of this Mountain, but neither of the length or breadth; in both which without question it comes short of *Carpatus*.

The Country is commonly divided into the Upper *Hungary*, and the Lower: the Upper lying on the North of the River *Danow*, out of the Bounds and Territories of the *Roman* Empire; the Lower lying on the South of that River, and comprehending all *Pannonia* Inferior, and part of Superior, two *Roman* Provinces. The Upper again was subdivided (before the coming in of the *Turks*) into 32 Counties or Juridical Resorts; that is to say, 24 on the West-side of *Tibiscus* (or the *Tieff*) and 8 on the East-side of it: The Lower (at the same time) into 16 only; of which ten were betwixt the *Danow* and the River *Dravus*, and the other six betwixt the *Dravus* and the *Savus*: But this Division and the Subdivisions depending on it being since the coming in of the *Turks* almost out of use, we will now look upon it as it stands divided at the present, betwixt the Emperor as King of *Hungary*, by a mixt Title of Descent and Election; and the great *Turk*, as Lord of the most part of it by Arms and Conquest, two parts of three at least being forced into his possession. But here we are to understand, that by reason of the great Jealousies and Distrusts betwixt these great Princes, every ordinary Town is fortified and garrisoned like a Town of War, and so are almost all the Houses of the Nobility and Gentry throughout this Country: so that it were an infinite labour to specify in this place all those Towns and Fortresses which do occur in reading the *Hungarian* Histories,

Histories of these later times. Some of the principal for Strength, Antiquity, or other mark of Estimation which is set upon them, we shall here subjoin. This was the true state of *Hungary*, when our Author Wrote, and continued so, till in the year 1683, *Mahomet 4.* Emperor of the *Turks*, espousing the Quarrel of Count *Tekely* an *Hungarian* Noble-man, by him made King of *Hungary*: and demanding the Island of *Schut*, which the Emperor could not part with, he unjustly began a War upon the Emperor, and sent an Army of 100000 Men to besiege *Vienna*, which being driven from that Siege by *John Sobieski* King of *Poland*, and *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain*, they followed their blow, and the same year took *Gran*, and have ever since had such a Torrent of Victories, as have almost totally extirpated the *Turks* out of *Hungary* and *Sclavonia*. So that I shall only make it my business to shew when the several strong places were retaken by the *Germans*; adding my Prayers, that God would still prosper the Arms of the Christian Princes against that bitter and implacable Enemy of Christianity or indeed Mankind in General.

And first in the Emperors part of the Lower *Hungary*, we have; 1. *Rab*, on the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Rab*, coming out of the Lower *Hungary*, whence the modern *Dutch* name; by *Antonine* called *Arabo*, by the *French* *Javarine*, by our present *Latinists* *Javarinum*. Memorable heretofore for being the Boundary of the two *Pannonias*, Inferior and Superior; hereabouts divided: of late most principally for a strong Fortress against the *Turks*, by whom it was once taken, *An.* 1594, but within four years after again recovered by the Industry of *Monfieur de Vandrecourt*, a *French* Gentleman, as the *French*-men say; but as the *Germans* write, of the Earl of *Swartzenburg*, at that time Governour of *Komara*. This River ariseth in the Lower *Stiria* near *Gratz*, and below this City falls into the *Danube*, upon the banks of it near *St. Gothard*, the *Germans* in the year 1664, defeated a Potent Army of the *Turks*, which had passed it in order to besiege *Vienna*, which Victory produced a Peace for 20 years, though broken to the cost of the *Turks* within the time. 2. *Altensburg*, in the Road leading towards *Assiria*; a strong Town, and the best out-work of *Vienna*, for which cause much aimed at by the *Turks*, but without success. It stands 3 *Hungarian* miles from *Presburg* to the South, and 6 from *Rab*. 3. *Castre-Novo*, a new-erected Fortress, as the name importeth, but of special strength, erected purposely in the time of the Emperor *Rodolph*, to confront the *Turks*. 4. *Sabaria*, anciently the Metropolis of *Pannonia* Superior; the Birth-place of *S. Martin* Bishop of *Tours*; now of less account; by the *Hungarians* called *Kimaronuspath*. Others conceive it to be that which the *Dutch* call *Leibnitz*. 5. *Stridon*, now *Sdrin*, the *Sidrona* of *Ptolomy* in the Confines of *Hungaria* and *Dalmatia*, by the common people called *Strigman*. A Town of good repute, till destroyed by the *Goths*; but after made of more esteem by the Birth of *St. Hierom*, one of the four chief Fathers of the *Latine* Church, and for all parts of Humane Learning nothing inferior to the best of the *Grecian* Sages. 6. *Sopron*, (*Soprinium* in *Latine*) on the Borders of *Austria*. 7. *Komara* a strong piece, in an Island of the same name made by the Circling of the *Danow*; but commonly called *Schut* by the *Germans*, oft-times attempted by the *Turk*, but in vain at all times. Then in the Upper *Hungary* we have 8. *Presburg*, on the edge of *Austria* also, but on the North-side of the River, the *Carnutum* of *Antoninus*, but by the modern *Latines* called *Posonium*; seated in a pleasant healthful Country, on the River *Lycet*, whose waters the *Danow* there receiveth: in the Suburbs whereof, on the top of an high Mountain, standeth a goodly Castle, the ordinary Residence of the Emperors, as Kings of *Hungary*. For though it be a little City and not very beautiful; yet being safe by the Neighbourhood of *Austria*, it hath been made the Metropolis of this Kingdom since the loss of *Buda*. Before the Walls hereof died Count

Dampierre, one of the chief Commanders of *Ferdinand* the second, in the Wars of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*. 9. *Fillek*, a place of great Strength and Consequence taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in his first attempts upon this Kingdom: and lost by *Amurath* the third, the *Turks* in vain attempting the recovery of it. 10. *Niriat*, a Bishop's See on the River *Boch*. 11. *Vacia*, a Bishop's See also, on the River *Danubius*; once in possession of the *Turks*, but restored again unto the Christians at the making of the Peace between the Emperor *Rodolphus* and Sultan *Achmet*. 12. *Cissovica*, a strong piece towards *Transylvania*. This City was in a manner free till setting up Count *Tekely* in the year 1682, it was taken by the Imperial Forces in 1685, and has been since curb'd by a strong Garrison. 13. *Lippe*, in the Borders of that Country also, commanding the Entrances thereof and therefore much affected by the Princes or Vainvods of that Province; possessed by whom in the latter times of the Emperor *Rodolph*, it was by them incorporated into *Transylvania*; but how long it continued so I am not able to say. This Town was taken by the *Turks* in the year 1595, and was retaken by the *Germans* the 19th of June 1688, after a short defence 2000 *Turks* that were in Garrison here being made Prisoners of War. 4. *Tokay*, a place of great strength, and as great Fidelity, the people and Garrison hereof holding out for the Emperor *Rodolphus*, *Anno* 1605, against some of his Rebellious Subjects, in the time of so extream a Famine, that the Soldiers did not only eat two Boys, but many times cast lots who should eat one another. It submitted to Count *Tekely* in 1682, and was taken by the Imperialists in 1685. It is seated in an Island made by the River *Bodroch*, which passing by *Espieres* falls into the *Tibiscus*, and is very subject to inundations, yet the Soil is thereby made fruitful, which produceth excellent Wines. 15. *Eperies*, a place of no less consequence, and exemplary Loyalty. Taken by Count *Tekely* in 1678, and retaken by the Imperialists in 1685. 16. *Nemsol*, or *Newbemsel*, a strong Town, and as strongly fortified, not far from the Spring-head of the River *Gran*, which in the year 1621 proved fatal to that great Commander the Count of *Bucquoy*, who at the Siege hereof (the Town being then in Rebellion against *Ferdinand* the second, Emperor and King of *Hungary*) lost his life. For going privately, to view some places of advantage for a general Assault, he fell into an Ambush of *Hungarians*, who suddenly set upon him, discomfited his small Party, killed first his Horse under him, and at last himself, having in that Skirmish received 16 wounds. There were slain with him at the same time also *Torquato*, an *Italian* Prince, Count *Vardugo*, a *Spanish* Earl, and one of the *Gonzagues* of the House of *Mantua*. The Grand-Vizier sat down before this Town the 14th of August 1663, and took it the 27th with the loss of 15000 Men, the Duke of *Lorrain* sat down before it the 7th of July 1685, and took it by Storm the 19th of August following, putting all the Garrison to the Sword.

Places of most importance in the *Turks* possession are, 1. *Buda*, by the *Dutch* called *Offen*, supposed by some to be the *Curia* of *Ptolomy*, by others the *Abrincum* of *Antoninus*; and to have took the name of *Buda*, either from *Buda* the Brother of *Atrila*, said to be the Re-founder of it, or from the *Budini*, a *Saythian* People, mentioned in *Herodotus*. It is unevenly seated amongst Hills on the Southern shore of the *Danow*, but in the most fruitful part of all the Country, exceedingly well fortified, especially by a strong Castle, thought to be impregnable, and therefore very carefully guarded by the jealous *Turks*, adorned with many Buildings, both private and publick and furnished with some Medicinal Baths, which owe much of their Pomp and Sumptuousness to their new Masters the *Turks*, who took it from the Christians August 20. 1591, *Solyman* the Magnificent then being present at the taking of it. Before that time the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the chief City

City of the Kingdom; as now the Seat of the chief *Bassa*, or Lord-Lieutenant for the Grand Seignor. This City is divided into two parts, separated from each other the distance of a mile, and called the higher and the lower *Buda*: the higher stands towards the North, and is by Nature one of the strongest Forts in the World, being built on a steep-hard-Rock, and having a very strong Castle and good works, and was the Royal Palace and the Seat of the *Turkish Visier* or *Bassa*. It was besieged by the Duke of *Lorraine*, from the 14th of July to the 1st. of November 1684, and yet could not be taken, but the 15th of July 1686, it was reinvested by that Prince, and taken the 2d. of September following by Assault. An Army of 50000 *Turks* coming on and not being able to relieve it: the Baths are in the Lower-Town, which was taken in both the last Sieges very easily by the *Germans*, the difficulty being in the gaining the Upper-Town. 2. *Alba Regalis*, by the *Dutch* called *Stul-Weissenburg*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Dravus*; strongly, but unwholly feared, in the midst of an inaccessible Marsh, joined to the firm land by three broad Causeys, blockt up at the ends with three great Bulwarks, but for all the Situation of it, taken by the *Turks* Anno 1543; before that time the usual place both for the Coronation and Interrment of the Kings of *Hungary*; recovered from the *Turks* Anno 1601, and lost again unto them in the next year after. After *Buda* was taken, the Prime-Visier of the *Turks*, retired to *Albaregalis*, and man'd and victual'd it for a long Siege, making it the Capital of *Hungary*. The *Germans* being not willing to Ruin either the Place or their Men by a Siege of this strong place, Blockaded it: and the 18th of May 1688, it was surrendered to them; the Garrison having in the mean time endured by Hunger, Cold and Nakedness, all the Misery that can be imagined. 3. *Walpo*, or *Valpo*, on the River *Dravus*, taken by *Solyman* marching towards *Alba Regalis*, to leave no enemies behind him at the Siege of that City in 1594, now in the hands of the Emperor since the taking of *Esseck* in the year 1687. 4. *Gran*, in Latin called *Strigonium*, seated upon the *Danow*, but opposite to the Mouth of *Gran*, which arising in the Upper *Hungary* doth there end its course, whence this Town had the name of *Gran*, honoured of a long time with the See of an Arch-bishop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, and of great power in all business which concern the State; taken by the *Turks* Anno 1534, *Solyman* the magnificent being in person at the Siege, and lost again, Anno 1595, at what time Sir *Thomas Arundel* of *Wardor* Castle in *Wiltshire* carried himself so gallantly, that forcing the Water-Tower, and taking thence with his own hands the *Turkish* Banner, the Emperor *Rodolphus* created him a Count of the Empire, and King *James* afterwards made him Lord *Arundel* of *Wardor*: but the Christians were not suffered to keep it long; for being many times after besieged by the *Turks*, who were resolved not to end the War without it, it was finally recovered by them, Anno 1605. In the year 1683, there was under the Walls of this City a sharp Fight between the *Turks* and *Germans*; in which the latter prevailed and took the City the 23th of October. July the 30th 1685, the *Turks* besieged it again, whilst the *Germans* besieged *Newbenschel*, but being forced to draw off August the 16th, the City has continued ever since in the Hands of the Emperor without disturbance. 5. *Funkirchen*, in Latin called *Quinque Ecclesie*, from five Churches in it, a Bishop's See, conceived to be the *Tentoburgium* of *Antoninus*; taken by the *Turks* Anno 1566, and giving them a great Command on the River *Dravus*, upon which it is seated. It was retaken by the Imperialists in the year 1686, after *Buda* was surrendered without any Resistance; the *Turkish* *Bassa* saying, *Now the Old Hen (Buda) is escaped, the Chickens will follow her*. The truth is, though it was a strong and populous City when the *Turks* took it, they had so neglected and dispeopled it, that a small party of *Croats* surprized and plundered it in 1685. 6. *Sirmish*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Sav*, or *Sava*, now noted for a Vein of the best Wines, but otherwise of no estimation at the present, though heretofore of most account in all this Province; the Metropolis (as I conceive) of *Pannonia Inferior*, the Seat of the *Prætorio Illirici* before the Division of the Empire, honoured with the personal Residence of many of the Emperors, and made in those respects the Stage of many great and memorable Actions. For here *Vetranus* or *Bretanio*, as other call him, took on himself the Purple Robe, and was declared Emperor by the *Illyrian* Soldiers lying here in Garrison: here, being deserted by his own Souldiers, he submitted himself unto *Constantinus*, the Son of *Constantine* the Great: here *Constantine* the Emperor, son of *Valentinian* the first was born, and finally here was held a Council against *Macarius*, Bishop of this City, who held that *Christ* had no existence of God the Father till he was conceived and born of the Virgin; which Tenet, being contrary as well to that of the *Arian* as the Orthodox Prelates, was here condemned by both parties in the time of the said *Constantinus*, (who was there in person) An. 356. 7. *Zigeth*, a strong Town, situate in a Marsh-ground on the North-side of the *Dra*, taken by *Solyman* the magnificent, Anno 1566, who there ended his Days. This City after a Blockade of 18 months, was surrendered to the Imperialists the 12th of February 1688, there was then in it 600 *Turkish* Soldiers, and about 1000 other Persons. The *Bastions* of it were well faced with Masons work, but the *Courtins* are only supported by three Rows of Trees, driven into the Earth very to near each other and the space between the first and second Row served instead of a *Parapet*. The Earth between them being so hardened and strengthened by the Trees, that it seems to be of no less force than the Walls of the *Bastions*. The Castle was also of great strength, being seated in a Marsh surrounded with four Walls, &c. Strengthened with Bull-Warks; There was then standing in this place 400 Houses, 3 small and one great Mosque, and they found in it 45 pieces of Canon, and a vast quantity of Ammunition, but almost no Victual; Thus fell that noble Fortress, which in the year 1536 baff'd a Royal *Turkish* Army, though it was twice besieged in one Summer, and ten years after had the Consolation to see *Solyman* the great Dye before it, before it fell into the hands of the *Turks*. 8. *Murfa*, now *Esseck*, upon the confluence of the *Dra* and the *Danow*, once a Roman Colony, and as remarkable in the Stories of elder times. *Esseck* is supposed by many to be the *Marsa* of the Ancients, seated on the South side of the *Sava*, in a low Ground, a Great Populous and Strong Town, and the usual pass of the *Turks* into *Hungary*, who had here for that purpose a Bridge 5 miles long, built by *Solyman* the magnificent in the year 1521, destroyed by Count *Sereni* in 1664, by Count *Lassy* in 1685, by the Duke of *Lorraine* in 1687. The Town preserved it self from the *Germans* in 1637, and being attempted by the Duke of *Lorraine* in 1687, he was forced to retire, the Prince Visier covering it with 80000 Men, but that Army being routed at the Battle of *Mohatz* the 12th of August, the 30th of September the Imperialists found the Town of *Esseck* deserted by the *Turks*, and had nothing to do but to take possession of it, since which time no cost has been spared in Fortifying and Strengthening it. 9. *Belgrade*, on the confluence of the *Sav* and the *Danow*, hath been in the later. This last being a Town of divers names; first called *Taurinum* or *Taurunum*; after *Alba Graca*, by the *Dutch*, accordingly *Griechs Weissenburg*, by the *French* and modern Latins *Belgrade* and *Belgradium*, from a beautiful situation of it, hemmed in upon the North with the *Danow*, on the East with the *Sav*, on the other sides defended with strong Walls, deep Ditches, and impregnable Rampiers. It belonged anciently to the despots of *Servia*, by whom it was consigned over to *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, as best able to keep it, the despots being satisfied with

lands and Territories of a better value. It was the bulwark heretofore of Christendom against the *Turks*, who, received before it many great and notable Repulses, (of which the most memorable were those of *Amurath* the second, and *Mahomet* surnamed the Great :) but taken at last to the great loss and shame of the Christian World, not succouring the Defendants in convenient time, by *Solyman* the magnificent, Anno 1520. This City continued in the hands of the *Turks*, without any care bestowed upon its Fortifications till the year 1686 and 1687, when they began after the loss of *Buda* and *Esseck*, to re-fortify and strengthen it what they were able; but in the year 1688, the Emperor sent the Duke of *Bavaria* with a potent Army to reduce it, who forced his way over the *Save* the 8th of August, N. S. and the 10th marched towards *Belgrade*: The *Turks* firing the Lower Town, abandon'd it. The 12th the *Germans* began their Attack against the Upper Town and Castle, which was defended till the 6th of September, when it was taken by Storm at the third assault, and about 7000 of the defendants put to the Sword, and about 3000 had quarter given them. The *Germans* took in this place 70 Canon great and small: it is seated upon an Hill, and is now re-fortifying with great expence and care. Then on the North side of the River, in the Upper *Hungary*, there is 10. *Pesth*, over against *Buda*, on the River *Danow*. 11. *Colocza*, an Archbishop's See, on the same River also. 12. *Zegedin*, or *Segedin*, on the West-side of the River *Tibiscus*, which was taken by the *Turks* in the year 1552, and retaken by the Christians in the year 1686. 13. *Agria*, an old Bishops See; and strongly fortified, having a great Command over all those parts of the Country; in vain besieged by *Haly* the *Bassa* of *Buda* with an Army of 36000 *Turks*, in the time of *Solyman* the Magnificent, Anno 1552, but taken by *Mahomet* the third, himself lying at the Siege in person, Anno 1578; not far from which, immediately after the taking of *Agria*, *Mahomet* gave the Christians so great an overthrow, that, if he had pursued his Victory, it is thought that he had finished the Conquest of *Hungary*, as on the other side, the *Turks* were so worsted and disordered at first, (*Mahomet* himself and most of his Commanders flying out of the field) that, had the Christians followed the chase, and not betook themselves to the Spoil of the Camp, they had in probability for ever freed that Kingdom from the *Turkish* Tyranny. This Battle, from a Village near unto which it was fought, was called the Battle of *Kerefture*; a Battle of so strange a Fortune, that the Conquerors were driven out of the Field, and the vanquished Army ran away with the Victory. It continued in the hands of the *Turks* till the 17th of December 1687, and then was surrendered into the Hands of the Imperialists, having besides *Bombing* and other Calamities of War, suffered a Blockade of two years continuance without the least relief. The *Germans* have since taken good care to keep it from falling back into the hands of Infidels. 14. *Hatroan*, now called *Hatman*, a very strong Town, and as strongly garrisoned, recovered by the Christians after two long Sieges, and many sharp Assaults, Anno 1558, and presently again abandoned, upon the noise of *Mahomet*'s coming into *Hungary*, with a dreadful Army. 15. *Temeswar*, on the East of that River towards *Transylvania*, the ordinary residence of a *Turkish* *Bassa*. 16. *Gyula*, a strong Town on the Borders of *Transylvania*, betrayed by *Nicholas Keresken*, Governor hereof, in the last year of *Solyman*: on a promise of some great reward; but *Selimus* the Son of *Solyman* caused him to be put into a Barrel stuck full of Nails, with the points turned inwards, and so to be tumbled up and down till he (most miserably) died; there being on the Barrel this inscription written, viz. *Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and Treason; Gyula thou soldest for Gold: if thou be not faithful to Maximilian thy natural Lord, neither wilt thou be true to me.* 17. *Singidum* on the South

of *Gyula*, betwixt which and *Belgrade* are the Fields of *Maron*, memorable for the slaughter of 50000 *Turks*, slain here in Battle under the fortunate Conduct of *John Huniades*. 18. *Poffega*, the Capitol of *Slavonia* properly so called, seated upon the River *Oriana*, 8 miles from the *Save* to the North, and 30 from *Gradisca* to the East, containing about 10000 Houses but mean and small. It is seated in a fruitful Country, and was taken by *Solyman* the magnificent in the year 1544, and retaken by the Christians in 1687, after the Battle of *Mohatz*, the *Turks* deserting it, and either slaying or carrying away the Inhabitants, whereupon the *Germans* took care to re-fortify it. 19. *Petrowaradin*, a Town upon the *Danube*, 6 *Hungarian* miles from *Belgrade* to the North, much celebrated in the present War, and often taken and retaken, but now in the hands of the *Germans*, and ordered to be Fortified. 20. *Illock*, a Town upon the *Danube*, of great strength between *Walcowar* and *Petrowaradin*, which was the last Town the *Turks* held in *Slavonia*, but was deserted and burnt by the *Turks* in 1688, upon the march of the Imperial Army to besiege it.

The first Inhabitants of this Country on the North-side of the *Danow*, and the West of the *Tieffs* or *Tibiscus*, were the *Fazyges Motanastæ*, and on the East-side of the *Tieffs* the *Daci*, known, but not conquered, by the *Romans*; on the South of the *Danow* the *Pannonæ*, (by some called the *Peonæ*) subdivided into the *Azuli Lato-vici*, *Wercianni*, *Jassii*, *Oseriates*, and some others inhabiting the West parts thereof, or *Pannonia Superior*, and the *Ercuneales*, *Brouci*, *Arivisci*, and *Scordisci*, dwelling in the Eastern parts, or *Pannonia Inferior*. First conquered by the *Romans*, Anno U, C, 719, *L. Cornificius* and *Sextus Pompeius* being Consuls; but many times rebelling, and not fully subdued till forty years after the Insurrection of *Bato*, being then crushed by *Augustus Caesar*, and thereby the whole Province settled in Obedience. Divided first into two parts or Provinces, *Superior* and *Inferior*; out of which *Savia*, and *Valeria* were after taken, as before is noted. Under the *Romans* it continued, till subdued by the *Hunns*, a People not heard of in the time of the *Roman* Greatness, unless we take them, as some do, for the *Chuni* of *Ptolomy*. But being those *Chuni* are placed by him betwixt the *Bastarne* and the *Roxolani*, on the South-West of *Barysthenes*, I see not how to fit that dwelling unto the *Hunns*, who were shut up within Fens of *Palus Mæotis*, and by all the Writers of those times accounted a Nation not so much as heard of when they first set footing in *Europe*. Letting that therefore pass as an improbable and ill-grounded Conjecture, certain it is that from the Fen-Countries of *Asia*, on the other side of the *Tenais*, they came first into *Europe*, living in their own Country a poor and miserable life, till God thought fit to make use of them as a Scourge to chastise the Christians of the West, then grown luxurious, and almost incorrigible, by too much Felicity; and to that end miraculously opened them a Passage never found before. For having neither mind nor meaning to invade the *Roman* Empire, which possibly they had not heard of, nor knowing how to clear themselves of that uncomfortable Country in which they dwelt; it pleased the great disposer of all things, by following an Hart or Stag which they had in chase, to shew them a safe passage into *Europe* through the Fens of *Mæotis*, which before they thought to be unpassable. The report made by those Hunters at their coming back, of the rich and pleasant Land which they had so fortunately discovered, invited the chief Heads of their Clans, with all the several Rascalities depending on them, to flock into *Europe*: into which they fell so suddenly and unexpectedly; that they forced the *Goths*, then dwelling on the North-side of the *Ister*, to fly over that River, and supplicate to the Emperor *Valens* for new Habitations. This happened in the year 373, *Athaniricus* the second, or *Ermanaricus*, (as *Jornandes* calls him) being then King of the *Goths*, and

and *Balamir*, Captain of the *Hunns*. Fleshed with this Victory, *Balamir*, or *Balbember*, (as *Sigebert* calls him) takes the name of King, Anno 386, or thereabout; and following the course of the *Ister* towards this *Pannonia*, which he had an aim at, found a great Army raised on the other side of the River, of purpose to encounter with him, commanded by *Detricus* General for the Roman Army, and *Macrinus* (or *Matrinus*) Commander in chief of the *Pannonians*. Both Generals presuming too much on the depth and wideness of the River, and knowing well that the *Hunns* had neither Boat nor Ship to pass them over, betook themselves unto their Rest with too much security. But the *Hunns*, to the number of 100000, having crossed the River upon Bladders, fell on the Quarters of the *Romans*, whom they slew like Sheep, *Macrinus* after this fought two Battels with them, in the first whereof he was victorious, there being lost on both sides about Thirty Thousand Men: but in the second being slain, and his Army routed, the *Huns* possessed themselves of both *Pannonia's*, buying this Victory with the loss of 40000 Men, in the year 401. *Balamir* being dead, *Bleda* and *Attila* his Sons succeeded, Anno 436; and *Oleda*, dying also in the year 450, left *Attila* sole King of the *Huns*, that great Scourge of the Christian World; who having first wasted *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, compelled the Emperor *Theodosius* the second to buy his Peace of him at the price of 6000 pound weight of Gold, and an yearly Tribute. Invited afterwards by *Gensericus* King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, to War upon the *Goths* of *Spain*, (out of which Country they had driven him) he forced his way through all the Nations betwixt him and *Gaul*, and beating down all the Towns and Fortresses on the River *Rhene*, on that side of the Roman Empire, entred that Province in the Reign of the third *Valentinian*, divided at that time betwixt the *Romans*, *French*, *Burgundians*, and the *Goths* of *Spain*. Discomfited by *Aetius* and the Kings of those Nations then in League against him, in that famous Battel near *Tholouse*, spoken of before, (with the loss of 180000 of his Men) he went back by the way of *Italy*, where he sacked *Aquileia*, *Millain*, *Vincentia*, *Pavia*; and not without much difficulty was diverted from the Spoil of *Rome*, by the intercession of Pope *Leo*: committing in all places such unspeakable Cruelties, that he was always after called (as he styled himself) *Mallens orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*. Returning home he picked a Quarrel with *Martianus* the Eastern Emperor, as if the Tribute promised him by *Theodosius* had not been well paid. But being pacified for the present, and mindful of his former Project upon the *Goths*, he resolved once again to try his Fortune with that People; and was again defeated by them under the Conduct of *Thorismund*, the third King of the *Visigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and so returned ingloriously to his Country. Choaked after with his own Blood, violently breaking out at his Nostrils on his Wedding-night; he left *Pannonia* to his Sons, named *Hernac*, *Aladarius*, and *Chaba*; who, disagreeing amongst themselves about the Kingdom, gave an advantage to the *Goths*, then possessed of *Dacia*, to make themselves Masters of this also; who were scarce through-warm in their new Estates, when sent by *Zeno* the Emperor into *Italy* against *Odoacer*, where they finally settled. After this time we hear no more of the *Goths* in *Pannonia*, or any-where of the *Hunns*, at all, unless acting under the *Auaries*, or joining with them in the name of *Hun-Auari*, as some think they did.

The Country, being thus left to the next Invader, was presently possessed by the *Longobards*, said to be originally of *Scandia*; and there called *Winnili*, (and of the *Winniloib* in *Scandia Jornandes* speaketh, afterwards *ob longas barbas*, *Longobardi*. But concerning this last name, take along with you this old Wives Tale, recited, but not approved of, by *Paulus Diaconus*. The *Vandals* warring upon the *Winnili* went unto *Goddan*, (he should rather have said *Wodin*) to sue for the Vi-

story: which the *Winnili* hearing, wrought by counter-mine, and sent *Gambata*, the Mother of their King *Anjou*, on the like business to *Freia*, *Goddan's* Wife. So it was that *Goddan* had promised the *Vandals*, that they should be victorious whom he saw first in the Morning: Whereupon *Freia*, willing to please *Gambata*, and not loving, as it seemeth, the sight of Men, gave order that all the Women of the *Winnili*, parting their Hair, bringing one half over one Cheek, the other over the other, and tying both under their Chin, should appear betimes before the Window the next Morning. This they did, and she shewing them to her Husband, he demanded of her, *Qui sunt isti Longobardi?* Hence the occasion of the name. And like enough they might be called so from the length of their Beards, though otherwise the whole Tale be vain and foolish. Compelled by scarcity of Victuals to seek new Habitations, they settled first on the Island *Rugia* and the adjacent Countries; and settled about the time of *Cornelius Tacitus* in those parts of *Germany*, which now make up the Bishopricks of *Meyzburg* and *Halberstadt*. Afterwards, finding that Country too narrow for them, they left their Dwellings there, and fell next upon some parts of *Poland*; next on this *Pannonia*: and at last, having tarried in *Pannonia* Forty-two years, or thereabouts, at the solicitation of *Narfes* (provoked by many Indignities from the Empress *Sophia*, the Wife of *Justinus* the second) Anno 568, under the leading of their King *Alboinus*, they went into *Italy*; and there fixt their Kingdom; being at the end of 206 Years overthrown by the power of *Charles* the Great, the most mighty Monarch of the West. Of their Kings, before their coming into this Country, I shall only make mention of *Lamissus* their third King, and of him this Story. *Agilmond*, the second King of the *Lombards*, one morning went a Hunting: as he was riding by a Fish-pond, he espied seven Children sprawling for Life, which one, as saith *Paulus Diaconus*, (it may be many Harlots) had been delivered of, and most barbarously thrown into the Water. The King amazed at this Spectacle, put his Boar-spear or Hunting-pole among them. One of the Children handfasted the Spear, and the King, softly drawing back his hand, wadded the Child to the Shore. This Boy he named *Lamissus*, from *Lama*, which in their Language signifieth a Fish-pond. He was in the King's Court carefully brought up; where there appeared in him such tokens of Vertue and Courage, that after the death of *Agilmond*, he was by the *Lombards* chosen to succeed him. This *Lamissus*, together with his Predecessors and Successors, we find thus Recorded.

The LONGOBARDIAN Kings.

A. Ch.

- | | |
|-----|---|
| 383 | 1. <i>Anjou</i> . 10. |
| 393 | 2. <i>Agilmond</i> . 33. |
| 426 | 3. <i>Lamissus</i> . 3. |
| 429 | 4. <i>Labe</i> , or <i>Lethe</i> . 40. |
| 469 | 5. <i>Hildoboc</i> . 4. |
| 473 | 6. <i>Godoboc</i> . 12. |
| 485 | 7. <i>Dophon</i> , or <i>Classo</i> . 5. |
| 490 | 8. <i>Thamus</i> . 10. |
| 500 | 9. <i>Vacon</i> . 18. |
| 518 | 10. <i>Valcarius</i> . 7. |
| 525 | 11. <i>Adoinus</i> , who first brought the <i>Longobards</i> into <i>Hungary</i> , Anno 1526. |
| 543 | 12. <i>Alboinus</i> , who in the year 583, by the solicitation of <i>Narfes</i> went into <i>Italy</i> , and erected there the <i>Longobardian</i> Kingdom; which 206 years after was destroyed by the Puissance of <i>Charles</i> the Great. |

The History of this People epitomized by *Du Bartas* (but with far more of the Poet than the true Historian) is summed up thus.

The

The Lombard Frong, who was in Scotland nurst,
 Of England and Livonia testid first.

Then having well reveng'd on the Bulgarian
 The death of Agilmond, the bold Barbarian,
 Surprized Poland: thence anon he presses
 In Danow's Streams to rinse his Amber Tresses.
 When he freight after had surrendred
 The double-named Ister's flowry bed
 To scar-fac'd Huns; he hunteth furiously
 The rest of Gauls from wealthy Insubrie.
 There reigns 200 years, triumphing so,
 That Royal Tefin might compare with Po.
 Which after fell in French Mens hand again,
 Won by the Sword of worthy Charlemaign.

The Longobards having thus left the Stage, the Avars entred. Some say they were the Avarini of Ptolemy, a Sarmatian People; but most probably (as Nicetius) a People of Scythia, inhabiting about Palus Maotis. They first began to stir in the Reign of Tiberius the second, (forced by the Turks, their next Neighbours, to pass farthest Westward) and gave that Emperor's Forces a great Overthrow at the Mouth of Danubius. Tiberius notwithstanding did somewhat quiet them; but he being dead, they took heart again, and with great Courage warred upon Mauritius, his next Successor. Their King at that time was called Caganus, we may English it Cham, as not being the proper name of any one; but the common Attribute of all their Chiefs. This Caganus made his first Wars upon the Turks, which People were about that time first made known to the Inhabitants of Europe; and with the help of the remainder of the Huns, invaded and possessed Pannonia, vanquishing both the Emperor's Forces, and the Goths and Gepida, who had still kept some footing in it, and on the departure of the Lombards were of no small power, the name of Goths being swallowed up in that of the Gepida, though not quite extinct. After this Blow Mauritius raised a second War, but more with an intent to revenge himself on his own Soldiers, which had formerly offended him, than with hope of prevailing against the Enemy. Comentiolus, according to the Emperor's Directions, betrayeth his Army; 12000 of them were slain, and the rest taken. Caganus, an heroick and merciful Conqueror, offers to ransom them for 8s. 6d. a piece (for so much was that Nummus or Νόμισμα which he demanded for them.) When the Emperor, as much loving his Gold as hating his Soldiers; had denied that Condition; he offered them all for one Nummus, and after for half a one: but being also here unsatisfied, he put them all to the Sword. For this cause the rest of the Soldiers not long after made Phocas, one of the Centurions, Emperor; and he most barbarously slewed the Emperor in his own Broth, putting him, his Wife, Friends, and Children to the Sword. After this we find mention of them in the time of Phocas and Heraclius, foraging Thrace to the very Walls of Constantinople, afterwards settled in Pannonia and part of Noricum, containing now the Upper Hungary and some part of Austria, divided from the Boiarians by the River Ems. They continued possessed hereof till the time of Charles the Great, by whom after a War of eight Years, they were utterly subdued, and driven out of these parts, their Country being peopled with new Dutch Colonies: the remainders of them were forced to betake themselves into Transylvania, or that part of Hungaria which lieth beyond the River Tibiscus, there subject for a time to Suantibogius, King of the Moravians; in whose Overthrow by the Hungarians they were so broken, that their Name was never heard of.

And so we come to the Hungarians, the last and principal Actors on the Stage of this Kingdom, the givers of the present Name: before whose coming into this Country it had no other name than that of Pannonia, for ought I can find, in any Authors for those Times. A Scythian People, as the Huns and Avars were, by

Jornandes called then Hungary; first known in Europe by their Acts in the time of the Emperor Arnulphus, when wandering in Sarmatia Europea without any certain Abode, they were by him called into this Country against Suantibogius, King of the Moravians, before-mentioned; from whom they took Transylvania, and so much of the modern Hungary as lieth on both sides of Tibiscus, inhabited at that time by the Slaves and some scattered Remnants of the Avars, whom they killed up, or forced to seek new Habitations, planting themselves in those places which they took from them, now called the Upper Hungary. In the times of Lewis the fourth, Successor to Arnulphus, they passed over the Danow, and subdued Pannonia, dismembring it from Empire and name of Germany: after that they ranged with unmerciful Cruelty over all Germany, Italy, Greece, Sclavonia, Dacia, till, broken by the Forces of the Dutch Emperors, and mollified by the softness of the Christian Religion, they became more quiet. Their Government at the first was under Dukes: Stephen the fourth Duke, on his receiving of the Gospel, being honoured with the Title of King; enjoyed by his Successors to this very day. In the time of Ladislaus, surnamed the Saint, Dalmatia and Croatia were added to the Crown of Hungary, bequeathed to him by his Sister Zelomira, the Widow to the last King. In that of Bela the Fourth, the Tartarians, to the number of 500000 fighting Men, brake into this Country, and like a violent Whirlwind carried all before them, Anno 1248, tyrannizing here for three years space, committing merciless Massacres, and making horrible Spoils where-so-ever they came. In that of Stephen the Fourth, Austria and Bulgaria were made tributary. By the Daughters of Bela and Stephen, both the Fourth of those Names, the Houses of Naples and Bohemia came to join the Kingdom of Hungary; as Lewis the first, by Elizabeth his Mother, Sister of Casimi the second, did the Kingdom of Poland. The rest of their Affairs shall be briefly touched at in the following Catalogue of

The Dukes and Kings of HUNGARY.

A. Ch.

1. Cusala, the first Duke (or Captain) of the Hungars, subdued Transylvania and the Upper Hungary, and passed over the Danow; slain in his Wars against the Dutch then possessed of Pannonia.
2. Toxus, subdued Pannonia or the Lower Hungary.
3. Geisa, Son of Toxus.
- 1000 4. Stephen, the fourth Duke, and first King of Hungary.
- 1039 5. Peter, surnamed the Alman, Nephew of Stephen; deposed by Andrew and Bela, Sons of Ladislaus, Son of Geisa the first, and Brother of Stephen the first King.
- 1047 6. Andrew, eldest Son of that Ladislaus.
- 1059 7. Bela, the Brother of Andrew.
- 1062 8. Solomon, the Son of Andrew, expelled his Kingdom by
- 1075 9. Geisa II. Son of Bela.
- 1078 10. Ladislaus, surnamed the Saint, Brother of Geisa the second.
- 1096 11. Coloman, Son of Geisa the 2d.
- 1114 12. Stephen II. Son of Coloman.
- 1132 13. Bela II. Nephew of Geisa the 2d. by his Son Almus.
- 1142 14. Geisa III. Son of Bela the 2d.
- 1162 15. Stephen III. Son of Geisa the 3d.
- 1172 16. Bela III. Brother of Stephen the 3d.
- 1191 17. Emaricus, Son of Bela the 3d.
- 1201 18. Ladislaus II. Son of Emaricus, reigned but six Months, being slain by Treason very young, and without Issue.

- 1201 19. *Andrew II.* Son of *Bela* the 3d. and Brother of *Emericus*.
- 1236 20. *Bela IV.* Son of *Andrew* the 2d.
- 1271 21. *Stephen IV.* Son of *Bela* the 4th.
- 1273 22. *Ladislaus III.* Son of *Stephen* the 4th.
- 1290 23. *Andrew III.* Nephew to *Bela* the 4th by his Brother *Stephen*.
- 1302 24. *Charles*, surnamed *Martel*, Son of *Charles*, King of *Naples*, by *Mary*, Daughter to *Stephen* the 4th. Against whom was Chosen *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, Son of *Wenceslaus* the second, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Bela* the fourth; and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, descended from *Elizabeth*, another of the Daughters of *Bela* the fourth, was chosen also by a Faction against *Wenceslaus*. But *Wenceslaus* surrendering his Claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after being forced to renounce his Title, *Charles Martel* remained King of the whole.
- 1343 25. *Ludovicus*, Nephew to *Charles Martel* by his Son *Carlbert*, succeeded King of *Poland* also, in right of *Elizabeth* his Mother, Sister of *Casimir* the 2d.
- 1383 26. *Charles II.* King of *Naples*, descended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Mary*, Daughter of *Stephen* the 4th, before-mentioned, by their Son *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger Brothers of *Charles Martel*; poisoned after a short Reign by the Widow of the former King, to make a way for her Daughter to the Crown.
- 1387 27. *Sigismund*, Emperor, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Luxemburg*, succeeded in right of *Mary* his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, her younger Sister *Eduigis* being Queen of *Poland*.
- 1438 28. *Albert* of *Austria*, Emperor, and King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his Wife, the Daughter of *Sigismund*.
- 1440 29. *Ladislaus* or *Vladislaus*, Son of *Jagello* King of *Poland*, in the minority of *Ladislaus* the Son of *Albert*, chosen King of *Hungary*; unfortunately slain at the Battel of *Varna*, with 30000 of his People; and perhaps his Perjury might deserve it. For having made and sworn a Truce with the *Turk*, the Pope's Legate, upon a seeming advantage, absolved him of his Oath, and drew him into the Field. At the beginning the Christians had the better: but at the last, *Amurath* the second, against whom they fought, lifting up his Eyes to Heaven, and desiring *Christ* to look upon the perfidious Dealing wherewith his Followers had dishonoured him, re-encouraged his Men, and so got the Victory.
- 1444 30. *Ladislaus V.* King of *Bohemia*, the Son of *Albert* by *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Sigismund* and *Mary*.
- 1458 31. *Matthias Corvinus*, Son of the Famous *Hunniades*, after the death of *Ladislaus* the 5th chosen King of *Hungary*.
- 1491 32. *Vladislaus II.* or *Ladislaus VI.* Son of *Casimir* the 4th of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Albert*, succeeding in the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; his three younger Brothers successively in that of *Poland*.
- 1517 33. *Ludovicus II.* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* both, born dead before the ordinary course of Nature; being in the 21th year of his Age, and in the 10th of his Reign, unfortunately drawn into the Field, to encounter *Solyman* the Magnificent, one of the hardiest Captains in his time. The Battel was fought at a Village called *Mogachz* or *Mugace*, just betwixt *Belgrade* and *Buda*; in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were slain, and the young King drowned in the flight. A most lamentable discomfiture. *Lewis* thus dead, *John Sepusio*, Vaivod or Governor of *Transylvania*, was by the States chosen King of *Hungary*. But *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, and Brother unto *Charles* the Fifth, challenged the Kingdom in Right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter to *Vladislaus*, and Sister to *Lewis*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. On this Pretence he invaded the Kingdom, and drove out *John* his Competitor; who, to recover his Right, called *Solyman* the Magnificent into the Country, who took so fast footing in it, that his Successors could never since be removed.
- 1527 34. *John Sepusio*, Vaivod of *Transylvania*, chosen King upon the Death of *Ludovicus* the second, outed by *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, restored by *Solyman* the Great *Turk*, died Anno 1540: after whose Death the *Hungarians* caused his Son *Stephen*, an Infant, to be crowned King in his Cradle, of which he was immediately deprived by *Solyman* his pretended Patron, who, under colour of preserving that Kingdom for him, seized *Buda*, and other the chief Towns thereof, which he after kept unto himself.
- 1540 35. *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, elected King of *Bohemia*, in respect to the Lady *Anne*, his Wife, Sister of *Ludovicus* the second, Anno 1527, did in the same Right lay Claim to the Crown of *Hungary*; chosen to which by a party prepared for him, he was always in contention with *John de Sepusio*; each of them acknowledged King by their several Factions: but he was by both sides received on the death of *John*.
- 1562 36. *Maximilian*, Emperor, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Ferdinand*.
- 1572 37. *Rodolphus*, Emperor, &c. Son of *Maximilian*.
- 1608 38. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperor.
- 1618 39. *Ferdinand II.* of *Gratz*, next Heir unto *Matthias*, of the House of *Austria*, afterwards Emperor, &c. against whom a Party of *Hungarians* called in *Bethlen Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, whom they elected for their King intending (as they said) to crown him also. But the Affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperor's side, *Gabor* relinquished his Pretensions, and hearkened to a Peace betwixt them.
- 1625 40. *Ferdinand III.* Son of *Ferdinand* the second, chosen and crowned King in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627 King of *Bohemia* also, succeeding after him in the Empire.
- 1647 41. *Ferdinand IV.* Elected in the Life of *Ferdinand* the third, his Father, King of *Hungary*, before whom also he died of the Small Pox, in the year 1653.
- 1658 42. *Leopold*, Elected after the Death of *Ferdinand* the third, his Father, a Prince born to Revenge the Injuries of his Ancestors, beating the *Turks* in 1683 from the Walls of *Vienna*, and winning *Gren*, in 1684 besieging *Buda*; in

in 1685 he took *Newbanfal*; in 1686 he took *Buda*; in 1687 he defeated a vast Body of *Turks* in the Plains of *Mohatz*, the 2d of *August*: After which followed the Surrender of *Esseck*, *Agria*, and *Alba Regalis*. And in the Winter he assembled the States of *Hungary* at *Presburg*, wherein

- 1687 43. *Joseph*, his eldest Son, was choien the first Hereditary King of *Hungary*, the Crown being entailed upon the Heirs of his Body, and for want of such Issue upon the King of *Spain* and his Issue, the *Hungarians* swearing an Absolute Allegiance instead of the Conditional they had promised to his Ancestors; and accordingly he was crowned King of *Hungary* the 9th Day of *December*. He was born the 26th Day of *July*, 1678, and is a Prince of great Expectation.

This Kingdom doth pretend it self to be Elective, and to have special Privileges induiged them by their former Princes; and anciently indeed it was so in both respects, the last especially; King *Andrew* giving Authority to his Prelates, Peers, and other People, *Ut sine nota alicujus Infidelitatis, &c.* that without any imputation of Disloyalty they might contravert, oppose, and resist their King, if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and Sanctions. But both their Liberty of Elections and pretence of Privileges have been so shaken and restrained by their Kings of the House of *Austria*, that the Elections are become a matter of Formality only, and their Privileges depending wholly on their Prince's pleasure, now grown too potent for them to contend withal, unless they should betray their Country into the hands of the *Turks*. To which some of them have expressed some strong Inclinations, the Oppressions laid upon them by the *Austrian* Family being deemed unsufferable.

The Forces of this Kingdom, when it was entire, may best be seen by those great Armies which they have brought into the Field against the *Turk*. By whom two parts of three being since subdued, that which remains must not be thought able to answer the proportion of former times; though they have done more than could be reasonably expected from it. For at the Battel of *Kereslure*, *Anno* 1596, there were 6000 *Hungarian* Horse, and 10000 Foot of this Nation only; besides those of *Germany* and *Transylvania*: and the next year, notwithstanding the Dilcomfiture of that Army, they raised no less than 20000 Horse and Foot, on the noise of some Preparations among the *Turks*.

'Tis true, their Foot are commonly but meanly armed; the defect wherein is rather to be imputed to the Prince, than unto the People, who can but bring their Bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Country. And for their Horse (whom they call *Hoyducks*) maintained in continual readines at the charge of the Nobility and principal Gentry, they are next Cousins to the *Cossacks*, almost as mischievous as they, and hold as strict Intelligence with the *Turks* as those do with the *Tartars*.

The chief Revenues of this Kingdom come from the Silver-Mines, out of which is yearly raised about a Million and a half of *Guldens*. *Maximilian* the second made it up Two Millions, by seizing on the Lands of Cathedral and Collegiate Churches, and alliging Annual Pensions to the Bishops, Cannons, and other Religious Persons. Most of which Sum comes clearly to the Emperor's Coffers, the Presidiary Soldiers being paid with Contribution-Money raised upon the Country; and the Lieutenant General, whose Entertainment comes to 30000 *Dollars* yearly, defrayed upon their Purfes also.

The chief Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of the *Dragon*, instituted by *Sigismund*, Emperor and King hereof, at such time as by the Council of *Constance* against *John Hus* and *Hieron* of *Prague*, and by the sharpness of his Sword proved upon their Followers, he had cast down (as he conceived) the Dragon of Heresie and Schism. But the Device proved of no long continuance, expiring almost with the Author.

The Arms of *Attila* the *Hunn*, once the King of this Country by the name of *Pannonia*, are said to have been *Guels*, a Falcon displayed *Or*, membred and crowned *Argent*. But the Arms of the Kingdom at this time are Barrewise of eight pieces, *Guels* and *Argent*.

The 13th of *April*, 1690, the strong Fort of *Canisa* was surrendered to the *Germans*, which was all the Places the *Turks* then had in the Lower *Hungary*. So that the Emperor was then possessed of all the Places as far as *Nissa*, on the Western side of the *Danube*; but on the Eastern the *Turks* had *Grand-Waradin*, *Giula*, *Lippa* and *Temesware*; but the first was much streightned by a Blockade.

There are in *HUNGARY*.

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 13.

And so much for *HUNGARY*.

O F SCLAVONIA.

SCLAVONIA is bounded on the East with *Servia*, *Macedonia*, and *Epirus*, from which it is parted by the River *Drinus*, and a Line drawn from thence unto the *Adriatick*; on the West with *Carniola* in *Germany*, and *Istria* in the Seignioury of *Venice*, from which last it is divided by the River *Arfia*; on the North with *Hungary*, on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. So called from the *Slaves*, or *Slavi*, a *Sarmatian* People; of whom more anon.

The present *Sclavonia* is but a small (if any) part of that here described by *Heylin*, and is bounded on the North by the *Drave*, which parts it from the Lower *Hungary* on the East by the *Danube*, dividing it from the Upper *Hungary*; on the South by the *Save*, which separates it from *Croatia*, *Bosnia*, and *Servia*; and on the West it has *Carniola* and *Stiria*, and it is in length from West to East 50 *German* Miles, in breadth 12; which is but a small part of our Author's *Sclavonia*.

It contains in length from *Asra* to the River *Drinus*, according to *Pliny's* Computation, 800 *Italian* Miles, the greatest breadth being 325 of the same Miles. But others reckon the length of it at no more than 480 Miles: who may be reconciled with *Pliny* by supposing this, that these last measure in a straight and direct Line from River to River; and that *Pliny* coasted by the Creeks and Reaches of the *Adriatick*. It is situate in the Northern Temperate Zone; betwixt the middle Parallels of the sixth and seventh Climates; so that the longest Day in Summer is about fifteen Hours and an half.

The Country is generally fruitful of all those Commodities which are found in *Italy*, to which it is little inferiour; yielding not only Wine and Oil in very good plenty, but good store of Cattel; and of wild Beasts of pleasure is no want at all; some rich Veins also of Gold and Silver. The Northern parts are mountainous, cold for the most part, lying under Snows, not capable of Wine, or any the like Productions which require much Heat. But even these mountainous parts afford very good Pasturage, and breed a wealthy race of Sheep, which bring forth young twice a year, and are shorn four times. Nor do the Sea-coasts come behind in advancing the Profit of the People, not only yielding store of Fish, but the benefit of many excellent and convenient Havens.

The People are courageous, proud, stubborn, and untractable, of strong Bodies and able Constitutions, fit for works of Drudgery; and so employed by the *Venetians*, when first brought under their Command: who, using them in all servile Offices both at home and abroad, occasioned the neighbouring Nations to call their Villains or Bond-servants; as they of *Venice* did by the name of *Slaves*; that being originally as to this People the name, not of their Condition, but of their Ancestors and Country.

The Christian Faith was here planted, I mean in reference to this People who do now inhabit it, about the time of *Charles* the Bald, Emperor of the West, Anno 877, *Sueropilus* being the first of their Kings who embraced the Gospel. But lying in the mid-way of *Greece* and *Italy*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and that of the *Greek* Church are both allowed of; that of the *Greeks* being as prevalent in the East parts hereof, as that of *Rome* is in the Western. But here it is to be

observed, that though this People, according to their Division into East and West; follow the Rights and Ceremonies of those several Churches; yet on both sides it is indulged them to celebrate Divine Offices in their natural Language, contrary to the usage of the Church of *Rome* in all places else. And yet the People are not all of the Christian Faith, the *Turkish* and *Mahometan* prevailing in those Towns and Territories under their Obedience.

But though they be not of one Religion, they are all of one Language, which is the old *Sarmatian* (or, *Sclavonian*) Tongue, generally spoken in the Empire of *Russia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, some part of *Hungary*, *Istria*, *Sclavonia*, where we now are, *Dacia*, *Epirus*, *Georgia*, *Mengrelia*, (both in *Asia*) and by all the Captains, Officers, and other Soldiers of the *Turkish* Empire: the Language generally spreading over all those Countries which either were *Sarmatian* in their first Original, or made theirs by Conquest under the united name of *Slaves*, or otherwise intermixed with them by the necessity of Commerce and Trade, or dispatch of their common Businesses. Inasmuch as, taking in the Subdivisions of the Provinces and Countries before specified, it is affirmed by *Gesner*, a right learned Man, that there are no fewer than three-score Nations which have the *Sclavonian* Tongue for their vulgar Language.

Chief Mountains in this Country are those called *Scardonici*, (from *Scardona*, one of the best Towns of *Illyris*) dividing *Dalmatia* in the midst, and extending along the Coasts thereof; by *Ptolomy* called *Arduum*. Of Rivers those of special note amongst the Ancients were, 1. *Titius*, now *Varietcha*; separating *Illyris* from *Dalmatia*. 2. *Arfia*, now *Asfa*, the utmost bound upon the West; as, 3. *Drinus* is upon the East: of which the first falleth into the Bay of the *Adriatick*, which is called *Golfo di Quernero* (*Sinus Flanaticus* by the Ancients;) the other into the *Sav* or *savus*, somewhat West of *Belgrade*. 4. *Narvon*, now *Narento*, running not far from *Epidaurus*.

The Boundaries and Land-Marks being thus set out, I should proceed to the Division of the Country as now it standeth. But I must first look on it as it stood in the time of the *Romans*: in whose time that part of the whole Province which lay from the River *Arfia* to the *Titius* was named *Liburnia* and *Illyris*; that from the *Titius* to the *Drinus* was called *Dalmatia*. But the *Illyrians* being the stouter and more warlike People, and such as created greatest Troubles to the *Romans*, it pleased the Conquerors, when they had fully subdued both Nations, to call the whole Country by the name of *Illycum*; and not so only, but to extend this name over all their Provinces (the Diocese of *Thrace* excepted) which lay between the *Alps* and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Danow*; for so far the Jurisdiction of the *Praefectus Praetorio* of *Illyricum* did at first extend. *Italic* *Praefecto* (saith *Zosimus*) *Constantinus, ejus Institutor, Macedones attribuit, Thessalos, Cretenses, Graciam, & circumjacentes Insulas, Epirum utrumque, Illyricos, Dracos, Triballos, & Pannonias, Valeriam usque & Mysiam superiorem*. And that all these did then pass by the name of *Illyricum* appeareth as well by that of *Pollio* in the Life of *Claudius* the second, expressly saying, *Illyricum, Thracas, Mysos, Dacos, Dalmatia, & Pannonias continebat*; as by that of *Socrates* the Historian,

Q q q

who,

who, *lib. 32. cap. 10.* calleth *Sirmium* the chief Town of *Pannonia Inferior*, and *lib. 5. cap. 6.* *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of *Macedon*, *Urbes Illyricas* or *Illyrian Cities*. By which account *Illyricum*, in the largeſt extent of that name, contained no leſs than 18 Provinces of the Roman Empire; that is to ſay, 1. *Noricum Mediterraneum*, 2. *Noricum Ripenſe*, 3. *Pannonia Superior*, 4. *Pannonia Inferior*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Savia*, 7. *Dalmatia*, 8. *Mœſia Superior*, 9. *Dardania*, 10. *Dacia Mediterranea*, 11. *Dacia Ripenſis*, 12. *Macedonia*, 13. *Theſſaly*, 14. *Achaia*, 15. *Crete*, 16. *Epirus Vetus*, 17. *Epirus Nova*, and 18. *Prævalitana*. Theſe 18 Provinces being caſt or made up into three Dioceſes, viz. the Dioceſs of *Illyricum* ſpecially ſo called, containing the ſeven firſt, 2. the Dioceſs of *Macedon*, containing the ſeven laſt, and 3. the Dioceſs of *Dacia*, comprehending the other four, were governed by the *Præfeſtus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, who had firſt his chief Seat and Reſidence at *Sirmium* before mentioned. But in the Diviſion of the Empire betwixt the Sons of *Theodoſius* the Great into the Eaſtern and Weſtern, the Dioceſs of *Illyricum* ſpecially ſo called (after that named *Illyricum Occidentale*) was laid unto the Weſtern Empire, under the Governance of the *Præfeſtus Prætorio* of *Italy*; and thereupon the Seat of Reſidence of the *Præfeſtus Prætorio* for *Illyricum* removed from *Sirmium* unto *Theſſalonica*. So that we are now to look upon *Illyricum* in a ſtricter Notion, as a Dioceſs of the Weſtern Empire, containing the ſeven Provinces before ſpecified, whereof both *Noricums*, both *Pannonia's*, and *Valeria*, (if at leaſt *Stiermark* be that *Valeria*, as ſome ſay it is) have been deſcribed already in their proper places. There now remains only *Savia* and *Dalmatia* to be ſpoken of: the firſt containing all thoſe parts of this Country lying on both ſides of the *Savus*, (whence it had the name;) the laſt, thoſe parts hereof which lie towards the Sea, known by the ancient name of *Dalmatia*, the Region of *Illyris* properly ſo called being added to it. But as new Lords give new Laws, ſo they give new Names: the Country being divided by the *Sclavi* into two Kingdoms, viz. of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*; of which the firſt contained the Province of *Savia*, the laſt took up the whole Province of *Dalmatia*, bounded as before, but keeping the name of *Sclavonia* to it ſelf alone, being the only Province in which the name and memory of the *Sclavi* is retained amongſt us. Afterwards as it came to be divided (as at laſt it was) betwixt the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice*, we find it ſubdivided into theſe 6 parts; that is to ſay, 1. *Windiſchland*, 2. *Croatia*, 3. *Bosnia*, 4. *Dalmatia*, 5. *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, and 6. the *Sclavonian* Iſland.

1. WINDISCHLAND.

WINDISCHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with part of the Lower *Hungary*, from which it is ſeparated by a Line drawn from *St. Nicollus* near the River *Dravus*, to the Town of *Polega*, ſtanding on a little River which falls into the *Savus*; on the Weſt with *Carniola*, or *Krain*, a Province of the Archdukedom of *Auſtria*, on the North with the River *Dravus*, on the South with *Croatia*. It is thus called by the *Dutch*, as the Land or Country of the *Winnithi*, or *Venedi*, the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, whom generally they call by the name of *Windiſch*; and anciently, for ſo much of it as lieth on the North of the *Savus*, accounted part of *Pannonia Inferior*, as afterwards of the Province of *Savia*, till conquered by the *Sclaves*, and laid unto their Poſſeſſions, from them named *Wendiſchland*, as before.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Windiſch-gratz*, ſeated on the *Dravus*, the *Venundria* and *Vindomana* of the Ancients. 3. *Sagona*, near unto the *Savus*. 3. *Gradiſkia*, on the South, and 4. *Zagabria*, on the North of the ſame River: from which laſt a great part of this

Country is called *Comitatus Zagabrienſis*. 5. *Novigrad*, on the *Savus* alſo, but more near to *Germany*. 6. *Petromyna*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains which are between the *Savus* and the *Dravus*; and divided *Hungary* from *Sclavonia*. 7. *Siffeg*, or *Siffaken*, (the *Siffia* of *Pliny* and *Antoninus*) ſituate on the *Sam*, over againſt *Zagabria*, where it receiveth the River *Kulp*; famous for the notable Reſiſtance which the *Turks* there found, Anno 1593, who, hoping by the Conqueſt of this Province to open a free paſſage into *Germany*, entered it with a puſſant Army, (having in their way taken the Caſtle of *Oſtrowitz*, and the ſtrong Town of *Wibits* in *Croatia*) and ſate down very ſtrongly intrenched before this Town. But the Town held it out moſt gallantly againſt all their Batteries and Aſſaults, till relieved by a power of *Germans* who came to ſuccor them: by which 8000 of the *Turks* were ſlain in the place, and moſt of the reſt drowned in the River *Savus* as they fled haſtily and (through that great haſte) blindly from the Sword of the Conqueror.

This Province, for the moſt part, is under the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, to which Crown it formerly belonged: thoſe parts of it which lie next to *Hungary*, on the North and Eaſt, groaning under the Tyranny and Bondage of the *Turkiſh* Garrifons.

2. CROATIA.

CROATIA is bounded on the North with *Windiſchland*, from which it is parted by the River *Una* or *Wana*, on the Eaſt with *Bosnia*, on the South with *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*; on the Weſt with *Carniola*. The reaſon of the name I find not among my Authors, but only impoſed by the *Sclaves* at the firſt coming hither; who comprehended under this name all the Inland parts of *Sclavonia*, from the Mountain *Ardium* to *Pannonia*, including *Bosnia* and *Windiſchland*, though diſtinguiſhed afterwards.

The Country is for the moſt part cold, mountainous and hilly, overſpread by the Branches of the Mountains *Babii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, yet reaſonably fruitful, ſtored with all neceſſary Proviſions for the life of man, and would yield more increaſe and profit both to Lord and Tenant, were it not for the ill neighbourhood of the *Turk*, to whoſe Tyranny and Oppreſſions it hath been and is ſtill expoſed. The People for the general are held to be good Soldiers, mentioned in our modern Stories by the name of *Crabats*, or *Croats*.

Chief Towns in it are, 1. *Mafch*, or *Moſth*, bordering upon *Germany*, the *Aleta* of the Ancients. 2. *Oſtrowitz*, a ſtrong Fort on the ſame Frontier. 3. *Wibits*, or *Vibitz*, by the *Dutch* called *Bibighn*, by the Ancients *Funium*, the Metropolis or chief place of the Country, encompassed like an Iſland by the River *Una*, and fortified with ſtrong Works by the help of Art; but taken by the *Turk*, Anno 1592, and all the Soldiers in it cruelly murdered, contrary to the Articles agreed on at the Surrendry. 4. *Zeng*, 5. *Wackat*, 6. *Tarnaw*, 7. *Modriſch*, of which little memorable.

This Country, with the reſt included anciently under this name, was one of the two Kingdoms of *Sclavonia*; the Princes whereof were uſually entituled Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*. In the year 1007 the *Venetians* having before poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Towns on the Sea-ſide, firſt ſet footing there: How the whole Country of *Sclavonia* came to the Crown of *Hungary* ſhall be ſhewn anon. It is held a part of it, in the right thereof, by the Houſe of *Auſtria*; part of it by the *Turks*, in the way of Conqueſt: the *Venetians* having now no ſhare in it, for ought I can find.

3. BOS-

3. BOSNIA.

BOSNIA is bounded on the East with *Servia*, a Province of *Dacia*; on the West with *Croatia*, on the North with the River *Savus*, parting it from *Sclavonia* properly so call'd, and the East parts of the Lower *Hungary*, on the South with *Dalmatia*. So call'd, as some think, from the River *Bosna*, which runneth through it; as others, from the *Bessi*, a People of *Dacia*, driven out of their Country by the *Bulgari*, and removing hither, by the Change of a Vowel call'd *Bossi*, whence the Country *Bosnia*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Jaicza*, by the *Latines* call'd *Jazyga*, situate on the top of an high Hill, at the bottom whereof it is almost encompass'd with two Rivers, which there uniting pass from thence unto the *Savus*. The Town, by reason of the rocky Precipices of the Hill, the Unfordableness of the River, and an inaccessible Castle, is held to be impregnable: the Metropolis in former times of this petit Kingdom, and the ordinary Sepulchre for the Kings thereof. It was taken by the *Turks* in the year 1530, or thereabouts. 2. *Warbojoni*, at this time the chief Town of the Country, but not walled about. 3. *Cazach*, the usual Residence or Retiring-place of the *Bosnian* Kings. 4. *Schwannica*, not much observable. 5. *Dorobas*, the first Town taken by *Mahomet* the Great in his Conquest of this Kingdom; as 6. *Cliffa* was the last, the unfortunate King *Stephen* being taken in it. This Town in the year 1648, was taken from the *Turks* by the *Venetians*.

This Country anciently accounted of as a part of *Croatia*, together with it was united to the Crown of *Hungary*, under the Patronage and Homage whereof it was erected into a Kingdom; but the precise time when, I find not. Some say about the year 1420, If so, a Kingdom of late date, and short continuance. For in the year 1464 *Mahomet* the Great, first Emperor of the *Turks*, having taken *Constantinople*, and almost all the rest of *Greece*, cast his eye upon it, suddenly surprized it, and having taken *Stephen* the last King hereof, most barbarously commanded him to be slay'd alive. After whose death this Kingdom was converted to a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, and governed by one of the *Bassas* of it, as it still continueth.

The BANS and Kings of BOSNIA.

1. *Budimirus*, who was also call'd *Smetoplekus*, the first Christian King of *Dalmatia* and *Servia*, in the division of his Province parted *Surbia*, his Northern Province into two Regions, which he call'd *Bosnia* and *Ruscia*, whereof the first lies between the River *Drin* to the East, and Mount *Pinus* to the West. In these Provinces he Instituted *Bans* which were Governours, and *Gupans* or *Zupans* which were Sheriffs: whereupon the *Bans* in times following were call'd *Megajupani*, or *Magni-supani*, by the Greek and Latin Writers respectively. These Governours in time shook off the Yoke, and became Sovereign Princes in *Bosnia*.
2. *Crescimirus*, Brother of *Predimirus*, and Son of *Tiescimirus*, driving the *Ban* of *Bosnia* by force of Arms into *Hungary*, and joyned *Croatia* to it, which he had before as Successor to *Cidomirus* his Uncle.
3. *Stephen* the Son of *Crescimirus*, succeeded his Father, and maintained a good correspondence with the *Ragufians*.
4. *Legetus* a Bastard Son of *Stephen*, he rebelled against the lawful off-spring of his Father after his death.

994

5. *Wimirus* a Son of *Stephen*, recovered *Bosnia* out of the hands of *Legetus*.
6. *Crescimirus* second, Brother to *Wimirus*, who is call'd by the *Venetian* Writers *Aurimirus*, and was King of *Croatia*, and *Bosnia*, 994, and 1015. This Prince had only one Daughter, who was married to a King of *Hungary*.
7. *Stephen* the 2. who reigned about the year 1080.
8. *Thwartkus Ban* of *Bosnia*.
9. *Borichius*, or *Boritzius*, or *Boritus*, who was beaten by the Inhabitants of *Ragusa*, about the year 1154. These last were subject to *Servia*.
10. *Culinus*, or *Culienus*, succeeded *Borichius*, and in some Letters of Pope Innocent the third, is call'd *Bacilinus*, but in others more truly *Ban Culinus*. He lived about the year 1171, at first he imbraced the *Roman* Rites, but became latter-wards a *Patran*, or *Waldensian*. The Pope hereupon in the year 1200, wrote to the King of *Hungary*, to force this *Ban* to purge his Country of *Heresie*, on pain of being deposed. Which *Emericus*, then King of *Hungary*, accordingly endeavoured. He reigned above 36 years.
11. *Zibisclaus*, to whom Pope Gregory the 9th wrote about the year 1236, who was a zealous *Roman Catholic*, but being not able to extirpate the *Heresie* of his Country, the Pope imployed *Calomay* Duke of *Sclavonia*, Brother of *Bela* 3d. King of *Hungary*, with an Army in this Pious Work, who yet could not totally effect it, though he entered *Bosnia* with a powerful Army.
12. *Ninostlaus*, was *Ban* of *Bosnia* about the year 1244, and joined with the Inhabitants of *Splatro*, against them of *Traguria*, by which he brought upon himself an *Hungarian* War.
13. *Paulus*, Son of *Stephen*, *Ban* of *Dalmatia* and *Croatia*; he was also *Ban* of *Servia* under *Vladislans* King of *Hungary*. He reigned in the years 1284 and 1307.
14. *Mladinus*, was call'd Prince of *Croatia* and *Bosnia*, in the Life of *Paul* his Father in the year 1302, and was taken by *Charles* King of *Hungary* in the year 1322.
- 1302 15. *Stephen* 3. succeeded *Mladinus*, though he was not of his Family. *Stephen* the third Son of the former *Stephen*, a Prudent and a moderate Prince. He lived in the years 1326 and 1345, and died in 1357.
- 1357 16. *Thwartkus*, the Son of *Vladislans*, succeeded his Uncle *Stephen* when he was 22 years of Age, and governed his people with great Prudence and Moderation. Yet one *Paul Culizichius* or *Clusichius*, made a defection from him, who was taken by this young Prince. Hereupon *Lewis* King of *Hungary* invited him to his Court, as Congratulating his good Fortune, but detained him till he parted with some of his Country for his Liberty. During this his stay in *Hungary*, they set up *Wchius* his Brother, whom at his return he drove out of *Bosnia*, he fled into *Hungary*, and *Lewis* espoused his Quarrel. This War ended in the year 1366, when he assumed the Title of King of *Bosnia*, and was Crowned by the Abbot of *Milescen*, by the name of *Stephen Myrces*, with this Prince, *Gregory* the 2. and *Urban* the 5th, had many transactions, as also with *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, for the extirpating the *Waldensians* out of *Bosnia*. He prevailed in his Old Age against

the *Turks* also, who then first invaded *Bosnia*, and after a peaceable Reign died in the year 1591, without lawful Issue.

- 1391 18. *Stephen* the Fifth, called *Daviscia*, the Bastard of *Stephen*, his Brother succeeded him in all his Dominions. He died Childless in the year 1396.
- 1396 19. *Thwartkus* II. *Scurus* Bastard Son of *Thwartkus* I. was crowned King of *Bosnia* after *Stephen* the 5th, but reigned but a short time.
20. *Ostvia* *Christichius*, the Son of *Paul*, of the Family of *Sablanowich*, usurped upon *Thwartkus* the second, pretending he was not of the the Royal Family; which caused a Civil War in which the *Turks* took part with *Thwartkus*. *Ostvia* in the year 1403 invaded the *Ragusians*.
- 1415 21. *Stephen* 6. called *Ostoichus*, or *Ostoia*, was Elected King of *Bosnia*, with him *Thwartkus* the second joyned against *Ostoia* in the year 1422. This War was ended by the Nobility of *Bosnia*, upon Condition these three should all be stiled Kings of *Bosnia*. *Stephen* died unmarried soon after, *Ostoia* in 1435, and *Thwartkus* having survived his Rivals, died sole King of *Bosnia*, in the year 1443.
22. *Stephen* 7. *Thomasus* Son of *Paul* *Jabelo* which upon the Death of *Thwartkus*, was presently proclaimed King of *Bosnia*, by the Nobility of that Kingdom, who being a *Manichean*, presently abjured that opinion, received Baptism from a *Roman* Cardinal, and in 1449 banished out of his Kingdom all those of that Sect who would not Conform. *Eugenius*, the then Pope, sent him a Crown, and would have persuaded him to set up the Latin Rites in *Bosnia*, but he fearing the *Turks* his too near Neighbours, refused the Overture. Refusing after this to joyn with the Christians against the *Turks*, *Matthias* King of *Hungary* surrender'd up against him *Stephen* his Son, and *Radiovius* his brother, by whom he was strangled in his Bed, and a Rumour spread abroad, that he died of an Old Distemper. *Catherine* his Queen call'd in *Mahomet* 2. to punish these Paracides, who glad of the opportunity came with great Forces. The Queen thereupon went to *Rome*, where she died in the year 1458.
- 1456 23. *Stephen* 8. the base Son of the former *Stephen*, succeeded in his Fathers Kingdom, sorely laid at by the *Turks*, and pursued by the Divine Vengeance for the Murder of his innocent Father. The *Sultan* in 1457, only rifled his Kingdom, but in 1458 finding him averse to Peace, and enraged with his ill usage of his Ambassadors; *Mahomet* entered *Bosnia* with a powerful Army, and took the wretched Prince Prisoner, and cut off his head, contrary to his promise given him. *Radiovius*, underwent the same punishment, at the same time also. Pope *Paul* the second, saith *Mahomet*, slew *Stephen* with his own hands in a Bull dated in the year 1464. The same thing is mentioned by *Pius* the 2. in the year 1463.
- 1467 24. In the year 1467, the *Bosnians* by the Procurement of *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, endeavoured to regain their Liberty, and expel the *Turks* by calling in the *Hungarians*, others say one *Nichanus*, was made King of *Bosnia* by his means. He held out till the year 1473. In 1482, the Christians recovered it again, how long they then kept it, I find not.

4. D A L M A T I A.

DALMATIA is bounded on the East with *Albania*, from which it is parted by the River *Drino*; on the West with the *Titius*, (now *Varietca*) which divides it from *Liburnia*; on the North with *Bosnia*, on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. This only of all the Provinces of *Slavonia* retaineth its ancient Name and Bounds. So called from *Dalminium*, the chief Town hereof in the time of the *Romans*, from which the People were called *Dalmatae*, and the Country *Dalmatia*.

Dalmatia, in the flourishing times of the Greek Empire, contained all that Coast or Country which lieth between *Diwazzo*, (*Dyrrachium*) to the South, the Mountains of *Istria* to the North, and extended from the *Adriatick* Sea on the West, to the *Danube* on the East, which was then inhabited by various People, and contained then in it the Provinces of *Morlachia*, *Croatia*, *Bosnia*, *Dalmatia* and *Servia*, but it stood then divided into the Provinces of *Dioclea*, in which was *Dyrrachium*, *Terbunia*, *Zachlunia*, *Pagania*, *Croatia* and *Servia*, and that part which has now Appropriated to it self the name of the whole, was then call'd *Croatia Baptizata* by the Greeks. This vast Country was then possessed by the *Slaves*, who had erected in it divers Kingdoms, which they defended with great Courage against the Greeks, and the Barbarous Nations which afterwards invaded them. *Du Fresne*, *De Familis Bizantinis*. p. 295.

The Country in the time of the *Romans* was full of Woods, and those Woods of Robbers, who from thence issued out to make Spoil and Booty. *Dalmatae sub Sylvis agunt, inde ad Latrocinia promptissimi*, saith the Historian. And by the advantage of these Woods they intercepted and discomfited *Gabinus*, one of *Cæsars* Captains, marching through their Country with 1000 Horse and 15 Companies of Foot towards *Alacedonia*, to the Aid of his General against *Pompey*. But their Woods being destroyed, they became more peaceable, and, instead of Robberies by Land, began to exercise themselves at Sea in the way of Merchandizing, to which their large Sea-coast and commodious Havens served exceeding fitly.

Places of molt consideration in it are, 1. *Sebenico*, on the Sea-side, not far from the Influx of *Titius* or *Varietca*; by *Ptolomy* called *Sicum*, in whose time a Colony of *Roman* Soldiers was sent hither by the Emperor *Claudius*. This place has 4 times humbled the Pride and Fury of the *Ottoman* Forces, and is still under the *Venetians*. 2. *Salona*, a *Roman* Colony also, one of the Juridicial Resorts for these parts of the Province, and the ordinary Arsenal for their Natives. Renowed in ancient Stories for the Retreat of *Dioclesian*, a native of this Country, who, having governed the *Roman* Empire 20 years with much Felicity, but a great deal of Cruelty, deposed himself, and retired to this City, where he followed the Trade of a Gardner, working with his own hands, and observing with great content the productions of Nature. Inasmuch that when *Maximianus Herculens*, his Associate (who at his persuasion had done the like) invited him to resume the Empire, he returned this answer. *Utinam possitis visere Olera nostris manibus plantata*, &c. That if he would come unto *Salona*, and see how well the Worts which he had planted with his own hands did thrive and prosper, he would never trouble his head with Crowns, nor his hands with Scepters: a rare expression of a settled and contented mind. The name and some of the Ruins do still remain, to preserve the memory of so remarkable a place. This City was once 7 or 8 miles in compass, but is now only Ruines and Fields of Corn. It lies 4 miles from *Cliffa*. 3. *Spalato*, East of *Sebenico*; a Sea Town, and an Archbishop's See, who writes himself Primate of *Dalmatia*; as anciently and of right he was, till

till the Bishop of *Venice*, being made a Patriarch by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, *Anno* 1450, assumed that Title to himself, together with a Superintendency over all the Churches of this Country, as subordinate to him. Of note for many learned Prelates, but for none more than for *Marcus Antoninus de Dominis*, who, seeming to loath the *Romish* Superstition, came for Refuge into *England* *Anno* 1616, and having here both by Preaching and Writing laboured to overthrow the Church of *Rome*, upon I know not what Projects he declared himself to be of another mind, *Anno* 1622, and returned again to *Rome*, where he writ as reproachfully of the Church of *England*. So that we may say of him, as *Socrates* in his Ecclesiastical History saith of *Ecebolius*, who under *Constantinus* was a Christian, under *Julian* a Pagan, and a Christian again under *Jovenian*, *Τοῦτο μὲν ὡς κῆρ' οὐκ ἐνυχαῖντος Ἐκεβόλιου περὶ τῶν τε καὶ ὅσων. So wavering and unconstant a Turn-Coat was Ecebolius from his beginning to his end.* But *Ecebolius* spied better than *Antonius* did, he being received into the Church upon his Repentance: but this infatuated man was imprisoned in the Castle of *St. Angelo*, and his dead Body burnt to ashes. A just reward for so great Levity and so gross Apostasy as he shewed unto the World in his going hence. This City in the year 1420, destroyed an Army of *Turks* which came against it. Mr. *Wheler*, p. 15. has given us an exact plat of this place, which is about 400 miles from *Venice*. 4. *Almissa*, the *Piguntium* of *Strabon*, mounted on a high Rock, and defended with an impregnable Castle. 5. *Stagno*, upon the point of a long and spacious *Chersonese*, not far from which the River *Naron* (or *Narento*) falls into the *Adriatick*. 6. *Cassiel Novo*, a strong Fortress within the Gulf of *Cattaro*, now in possession of the *Turks*, but taken in the year 1687 by the *Venetians*, after a sharp defence made by the *Turks*. Mr. *Wheler* represents the figure of this place, page 28. 7. *Antivari*, on the farther or Eastern side of the Bay, an Archbishops See; but that and the Sees of his Suffragan Bishops being seven in number, are now in the possession of the *Turks*. 8. *Cattaro*, on the same side of the Bay; by *Ptolomy* called *Afcrivium*, inhabited in his time by *Roman* Citizens; now a strong hold for the *Venetians* against the *Turks*, and giving name unto the Gulf, which formerly called *Sinus Rhizonicus*, from *Rhizana*, (now *Risne*) situate at the bottom of it, is at this time called from this Town *Golfo de Cattaro*. 9. *Dulcigno*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ulcinium*, originally founded by the *Colchians* and therefore called *Colchinium* by some ancient Writers. It may contain at this day 7 or 8000 Souls. 10. *Scutari*, more within the Land, (the *Scodra* of *Ptolomy* and *Antonius*) strongly seated on a steep Rock, memorable for the stout Resistance which it made for a whole year against the whole Puissance of *Mahomet* the 2. battered for the most part of that time with 70 pieces of Ordnance of wondrous bigness, especially that called the *Princes piece*, which carried a Stone or Bullet of 1200 *l.* weight; but taken at the last, *Anno* 1578. Not far from this Town is the great Lake called by *Strabo* *Labeatis*, now the Lake of *Scutari*, 130 miles in compass, and environed on all sides with Mountains, except towards the North: out of which issueth the *Drinus*, now called *Drino*, or *Drina*, which parting *Sclavonia* from *Macedon* and *Servia*, passeth into the *Savus*. 11. *Alesio*, the *Lissus* of *Ptolomy*, the farthest Town of all *Dalmatia* towards *Greece*; memorable for the Grave of *Scanderbeg*, who was buried here, whereof more hereafter. 12. *Medon*, raised out of the Ruines of *Dioclea*, an ancient and famous City, the Birth-place of the Great Emperor *Dioclesian*, spoken of before. 13. *Dalminium*, once the Metropolis of this Province, situate on the River *Drinus*; first sacked by *Marcus Figulus*, a *Roman* Consul, *Anno* V. C. 689, and after, on a new Revolt, by one *Nasica*, spoken of by *Strabo*: not able after two such Ruins to revive again; nothing being now left of it but the name and memory.

Betwixt the *Chersonese* of *Stagno* and the Gulf of *Cattaro* lies the Town and Territory of *RAGUSI*; not subject, as all the rest are, either to the *Turk* or to the *Venetians*, but governing themselves by their own Laws and Magistrates, as a free Commonwealth: paying only to the *Turk* 14000 *Zecchins* yearly in a way of Tribute, and as much in Presents; discharged in that regard of Customs and Impositions in all his Dominions. It was anciently called *Epidaurus*, (of which name there were two other Cities in *Peloponnesus*). But that Town being raised by the *Goths*, the Inhabitants, (after their departure) not knowing where to retire themselves, built this in the place of it, at the Foot of a steep Mountain; enjoying a pleasant situation near the Sea, with a little, but commodious Port, forced out of the water by the art and industry of workmen. The Town is well built, fortified with Walls and a well-furnished Castle; now an Archbishops See, and a noted Empory; rich and strong in Shipping, commanding over a small and barren Territory within the Land, and some pleasant Islands in the Sea. So that the Riches of it proceed not from their Rents and Revenues rising out of the Earth, but by the benefit of their Traffick upon the Waters: in which they are secured by the Protection of the *Turk*, without which they had fallen before this time into the hands of the *Venetians*; as on the other side preserved by the State of *Venice* from being a Prey to their Protectors. They were of more Wealth heretofore than they are at present, at what time they traded to most parts of this Western world in those great Vessels which from hence were called *Raguses*, but corruptly *Argosies*; the last of which (their number lessening with their Trade) they lent unto the King of *Spain* for the War of *England*, *Anno* 1588, in which Action it was lost and wrecked on the Coast of *Ireland*. This City in the year 1686, desired the Protection of the Emperor.

The Catalogue of the Kings of *Dalmatia*, or *Croatia* Baptizata, from *du Fresne*.

1. The *Avars* and *Huns* passing the *Danube* in the Reign of *Heraclius*, and invading these Provinces, that Prince (who was much weakened by *Cosroes* King of *Persia*, and the *Sarazens*) called in the *Croats*, who were then his Allies and Friends, and lived under the Command of one *Porga*; and gave them the Province, on Condition they should drive out the *Avars*, who had began to settle in it. They accordingly entered it, and in a Battle defeated the *Avars*, and forcing them to return home, made themselves Masters of the Country, and embraced the Christian Faith; after which they lived under Elective Princes, which were confirmed by the Emperors of *Constantinople*, as an acknowledgment of their dependance on that Empire. *Heraclius* ended his Reign in the year of *Christ* 640. So that before that time, this Kingdom was erected, but the precise time is not known to me.
817. 2. *Borna*, who submitted to *Charles* the Great.
- 821 3. *Ladislavus*, or *Ladusclavus*, Nephew of *Borna*, was elected Duke of *Dalmatia*, with the consent of the Emperor *Lewis*, the Gentle. *Porinus* named by *Porphyrogenetus*, but without the times in which he lived.
5. *Mislavus*, *Myslavus*, or *Mevius*, about the years 836, and 839.
6. *Tirpimirus* Duke of *Dalmatia*, mentioned about the year 837, in a Charter of the Foundation of a Monastery.
7. To him succeeded *Cresimirus* his Son.
8. *Dirci-*

8. *Dirciflausus* Son of *Cresmirus*, both mentioned by *Porphyrogenitus*. He reigned about the year 1000, and was the first that assumed the Stile of King of *Dalmatia*.
9. *Mircimirus* and *Surgina* his Sons, contended for the Kingdom, the eldest prevailing.
10. *Pribinna*, or *Pribunius* slew *Mircimirus*, and reigned under the Title of *Ban*.
11. *Godemirus*, *Ban* of *Dalmatia*, laid at by the Grand-children of *Mircimirus*, who fought to recover the Kingdom. Their Names were *Swetflausus*, *Cresmirus*, and *Gosflaus*.
12. *Cresmirus* prevailed, and was owned King in the year 1019, and 22, or rather in 1017.
13. *Stephen* Son of *Cresmirus*.
14. *Cresmirus* 3. called *Peter*, Son of *Stephen*, was King of *Dalmatia* in the year 1059.
15. *Slaviso*, probably about the year 1075.
- 1076 16. *Demetrius Suinimirus*, of another Line, was King in the year 1078. He shook off the Yoke of the Greek Emperors in the times of *Michael Drvas*, under which till then his Predecessors had lived and took the Stile from Pope Gregory the seventh, he was living in 1087.
17. *Stephen* Son of *Cresmirus* 3. succeeded *Demetrius*, he dying without any Issue.
- 1091 18. *Almus*, made King by *Ladislaus* King of *Hungary*, in opposition to *Stephen*, the Kingdom being at the same time invaded, and as to the Sea Towns in part possessed by the *Venetians*, by the grant of *Alexius* Emperor of *Greece*.
- 1102 19. *Calomannus* King of *Dalmatia*, by the consent of *Almus* his brother, who had then obtained the Kingdom of *Hungary*, upon the Death of *Ladislaus* his Uncle. He expelled the *Venetians* out of *Dalmatia* about the year 1111. And died in 1114.
- 1117 20. *Palcerus* an *Hungarian*, re-expelled the *Venetians*, who returned after the Death of *Coloman Neeman*, King of *Servia*, taking the opportunity of these Broils, endeavoured to Conquer this Kingdom, but *Emmanuel* then Emperor of *Constantinople*, sending great Forces to support the *Dalmatian*, he return'd without doing any thing considerable, this expedition was in the year 1119. Thus the Emperor, the *Hungarians*, and the *Venetians* contended which should be the Masters of *Dalmatia*.
21. *Almerius* Son of *Bela*, the brother of *Stephen* 3. King of *Hungary*, became King of *Dalmatia*, and wore that Title in the year 1194, succeeding in it after his Father, for whose sake *Emmanuel* Emperor of *Greece*, made the expedition last mentioned. In 1203, the *Venetians* by the help of the *Franks* took *Zara*.
22. *Almericus*, after the Death of his Father, became King of *Hungary*, and resigned *Dalmatia* to his brother *Andrew*, under the Title of Duke of *Sclavonia*, in the year 1198.
23. *Calomannus* his Son succeeded him, who was slain by the *Tartars*, who had then invaded *Hungary*.
24. *Bela* 4. King of *Hungary*, after this time sent Viceroy's, who stiled themselves *Bans* of *Dalmatia*, of which *Ladislaus* is mentioned in 1245. *Stephen* in 1251. The *Croats* set up also *Radicus* or *Stepcon*, and *Paulus* his Son after him, who under the Title of *Ban* reigned in 1311. To him succeeded *Maldinus* his Son, who defended *Zara* against the *Veneti-*

ans in 1313. About the same time Gregory the Brother of *Paul* was *Ban* of the *Maritim* parts, whose Son of the same name followed him. *Mladinus* in the interim growing great, became so insolent, that his Subjects forced him to flee into *Hungary*, by which means the *Venetians* became much greater than before.

Charles King of *Hungary*, thereupon sent *Banovichius*, *Nicholaus* and *Mihacus* his *Bans* into *Dalmatia*; and *Lewis* the Successor of *Charles*, in the year 1344, sent an Army against this Country, which subdued the Inhabitants, and drove out the *Venetians* in the year 1381. After this *Emericus Rubelus* in 1382, *Stephanus*, *Laschovichius* and *Thomas*, were successively *Bans* under *Lewis*. And *Mary* under *Sigismund*. *Joannes Chus*, and *Joannes Horwathus*: *Sigismund* recovered *Dalmatia*, and in the year 1409, sold *Zara* to the *Venetians*, who in 1420 by a Fleet reduced all the Sea Coast under them, which 3 years after were resigned by *Sigismund* by Treaty, and from thence forward they kept it, the Kings of *Hungary* long after possessing the Title.

5. CONTADO DI ZARA.

CONTADO DI ZARA, or the Country of *Zara*, called anciently *Liburnia*, and *Illyris* specially so named, is bounded on the East with *Dalmatia*, on the West with *Istria*, on the North with *Croatia*, and on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It took this latter name (the former being long discontinued) from *Zara* the chief Town thereof, the *Jadera* of *Ptolomy* and the Ancients; a *Roman* Colony at that time, now an Archbishops See, enjoying a safe and large Port, and situate on a low Chertoneſe thrusting out like a Promontory into the *Adriatick*, belonging to the State of *Venice*, by whom it is well fenced and fortified against foreign Invasions. For the possession and command of this Town there have been great Wars betwixt the *Hungarians* and the *Venetians*, to whom it seemeth to be of such importance, that being once taken by the *Hungarians*, it was redeemed for 100000 Crowns of *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*, pretending against *Sigismund* of *Luxemburg* to the Crown of *Hungary*. In this Town is the Church of *S. John de Malvasia*, which was built by a company of Sailers, who, being in a tempest, made a Vow, that, if they escaped, they would consecrate a Temple to *S. John de Malvasia*, whose Morter should be tempered with Malinſey: and accordingly they paid their Vows. Far less did another Master of a Ship intend to perform his Promise, though he spoke bigger, who, in a like extremity of Danger, promised our Lady to offer at her Altar a Candle as great as the main Mast of his Ship: For when one of his Mates jogging him, told him he had promised an impossibility: Tush, Fool, (replied the Master) we must speak her fair in time of need; but if ever I come ashore, I will make her be content with a Candle of Eight to the pound. And in a like fit of Devotion was he who on the same occasion plainly told God, that he was no common Beggar, he never troubled him with Prayers before; and if he would hear him at that time, he would never trouble him again. The Learned Mr. *Wheler*, has given us the Plat of this Town, in his Journey into *Greece*, p. 8.

Other Towns herein considerable are, 1. *Albona*, retaining still the old name, (the *Alvona* of *Ptolomy*) situate near the River *Arſia*, the Divider of this Province from *Istria*. 2. *Flavona* or *Flanona*, situate against the Gulf of *Quernero*, of old called *Sinus Flanaticus*, as before was noted: of ill report amongst Sailers, for frequent Tempests raised on every Wind. 3. *Zegna*, by *Ptolomy* and *Pliny* called *Senia*, situate on a Flat or Level. 4. *Nona*, of old called *Enona*, compassed with the

the Sea. 5. *Scriffia*, now a poor Village, in the place where stood the *Argyrum* of *Pliny*. 6. *Scardona*, now a mean Village also, heretofore of great note, and the Juridical Resort for the whole Province; from whence the neighbouring Mountains had the name of *Scardonici*, the Bounds of this Country and *Croatia*.

The ancient name of this Country was *Liburnia*, as before is said, but extending more Northwards beyond the Mountains of *Ardium* or *Scardonici*; this and *Dalmatia* being then the *Membra dividenda* of the whole *Illyricum*. The People hereof, called by one general name *Liburni*, were much given to Piracies; and for the better speed therein, the Authors and Inventors of those swift Vessels which were called *Liburnice* and *Liburnæ*. Of which thus *Horace*.

*Ibis Liburnis inter alta navium,
Amice, propugnacula.
That is to say,
In Liburnian shalt thou be
Amongst the stoutest Ships at Sea.*

In imitation of which Vessels, being swift and light, the *Romans* in the time of their Wealth and Pride, invented a kind of Chair or Litter (such as those we call Sedans) wherein they were carried on Mens Shoulders with such ease and pleasure, that they could not only sleep or read, but write in them also. The Porters or Bearers of them were of this Nation commonly; from whence, or from the Fashion of the Vessel which they did resemble, they were called *Liburni*. Of these thus *Juvenal* in his third Satyr,

*Si vocat officium, turba cedente vehetur
Dives, & ingenti curret super ora Liburno,
Atque obiter leget, aut scribet, vel dormiet intus.
Namque facit Somnum clausa Lætica fenestra.*

Thus *Englished* by my honoured Friend Sir Robert Stapleton, in his excellent Translation of that harsh Satyr:

When business calls, a Crowd the rich Man shuns,
And o'er Mens Heads in's huge Sedan he runs,
Reads, writes, and sleeps within it, as he goes:
For Sleep will come if he the Curtains close.

Besides which Office of Chair-carriers, or Sedan-men, as we call them now, this People being, when once conquered, a servile Nation, furnished the *Romans* with those Beadles whom they employed in calling the Citizens from the Fields to their publick Business: to whom the same Poet alludeth in the next Satyr, saying, *Clamante Liburno, Currite jam sedet*, &c. But to proceed. The nearness of this Country to the *Adriatick* occasioned the Bay of *Quernero*, or *Cornaro*, as some call it, commonly called *Sinus Flanaticus*, to be sometimes named *Sinus Liburnicus*; the parts of *Italy* on the other side of it to be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*; and gave the name of *Liburnades* to a Shole of Islands lying on the Coast hereof, 60 at least in number, as is said by *Strabo*. To which and other Islands of the *Adriatick* we are now to hasten, leaving the Stories of *Illyricum* to the close of all.

6. The SCLAVONIAN Islands.

Along the Coasts of *Slavonia* lie a cluster of Islands, to the number of a thousand, as is said by *Pliny*, most of which (if indeed so many) are but Rocks, not Islands, or not inhabited at all, nor of any note. The Principal whereof, and such as deserve place here, are, 1. the *Liburnades* before mentioned. 2. The *Abysrtides*. 3. The Isles of *Ragusia*. 4. *Arbe*. 5. *Curzola*. 6. *Zara*. 7. *Lissa* and *Brazilia*; the rest not being worth the looking after as to our Design. The whole number of the Inhabitants is reckoned in the total to no more than 40000 Persons.

1. The *LIBURNADES*, said by *Strabo* to be sixty in number, lie all along the Coasts of *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*. The chief whereof are, 1. *Iffa*, now called *Pago*, containing 100 Miles in compass, having a Town of the same name; but in all that Tract of ground not above 1500 Inhabitants, in the time of my Author, by reason of the sharp Air, and great want of Fuel. The Salt-pits here yield great Commodity not only to the People themselves, but also to the State of *Venice*, Supreme Lords hereof. 2. *Tragurium*, now *Traù* and *Trabu*, so called from the chief Town hereof, built by those of *Iffa*: so near the Continent, that it seems to be a part thereof. By *Mela* it is named *Tigerium*, with some little difference. 3. *Pharus*, so called from the *Pharii*, or *Parii*, of whom it was once a Colony; long since come to Ruine. It is now called *Lefina*, the greatest of all the *Adriatick*, as being 150 Miles in compass, and very Fruitful for the bigness. It hath a Town of the same name, which enjoys a safe and spacious Harbour; unwall'd and of no great beauty, but Fortified with a strong Castle, which commandeth both the Harbour and the Shipping in it. The Birth-place of *Demetrius Pharius*, so often mentioned in the Stories of *Greece* and *Rome*.

2. The *ABSYRTIDES* are in number many, so called from the River *Abysrtus*, which thereabouts falls into the *Adriatick*; according unto that of *Lucan*;
*Et cadit Adriaces spumans Abysrtus in undas,
Abysrtus foaming with his haste,
Into the Adria falls at last.*

But whether that River were so called by the *Colchians* at their landing there, in memory of *Abysrtus* the Son of *Æctus*, King of *Colchis*, whom they went to seek, or for some other reason, I determine not. Certain I am, it could not be so named from the scattering of his Limbs hereabouts by *Medea*, his unnatural Sister, as is said by *Pliny*; that cruel Fact being done on the Shores of the *Euxine*, the place being called *Tomos* afterwards upon that occasion. But of those Islands, being in number many, as before was said, two only are of special Note; that is to say, 1. *Vegia*, or *Vigio*, not far from *Segna* on the firm Land, containing in compass betwixt 80 and 100 Miles, and about 10000 Inhabitants: the most populous of all these Seas. It hath a Town of the same name, with a very fair Harbour: the Island by *Pliny* called *Curilla*, the chief Towns of it in his time being, *Fulsinium* and *Curicum*. 2. *Abisrtus*, as *Ptolomy*, *Abysrtum*, as *Pliny* calls it, in whose time it was one Island only, but now divided into two by the *Venetians*, letting in the Sea betwixt them: the one of them is called *Cherso* the other *Osero*; both joined together by a Bridge made by the *Venetians*, and both together, making up 140 Miles in compass; each of them having one Town only, and that of the same name with the Island; the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 50000 Persons. Stored with sufficiency of Corn, plenty of Wine, and abundance of Wood, great quantities whereof are sent yearly to *Venice*. They have also goodly Herds of Cattel, and great Flocks of Sheep; affording by their Flesh, Wooll, Cheese and Butter, a good increase of profit to the Owners of them.

3. The Islands of *RAGUSI*, (for so I call them which belong to the Commonwealth) are but three in number. 1. *Gravosa*, a very pleasant place, full of Gardens of Oranges, Limons, and Pomegranates. 2. *Langustra*, environed about with very high Mountains, in which are the *Ragusian* Farms, made rich by great Charge and Industry of the several Occupants, so as to yield them Wine, Oil, and most excellent Fruits; which they receive more plentifully from a goodly Plain situate in the midst hereof, and naturally more fruitful than the other parts. Near to this last Island is good fishing for Sprats: and in both an Art of making their Trees to bring forth Oysters, by bending down their Boughs, and staying them under the Water with Stones; so as in two years there are so many Oysters fastned to them as

good Meat. *Melyda*, lying betwixt *Ragusia* and the Isle of *Curzola*, by *Pliny* called *Melita*, and on that ground supposed by some to be that Island on which *St. Paul* did suffer Shipwreck, *Acts* 26. But the name of *Barbarus* which the Text joins to the Inhabitants of it, not proper to an Island betwixt *Greece* and *Italy* in the times of *St. Paul*, and his Landing, when he parted thence, at *Syracuse*, an Haven of *Sicily* so far from this, so near unto the other *Melita*, which is now called *Malta*, sufficiently refel this Fancy, though otherwise not improbably grounded.

4. Of those which are known only by one single name the chief are, *ARBE*, so called in the time of *Pliny*, from the best Town of it, but by *Ptolomy* it is named *Seardona*. A pleasant Island, in compass about Thirty Miles, and containing some 3000 Inhabitants; the only Havenless Isle of all the *Adriatick*: but that defect is abundantly recompensed by the natural Sweetness of the place, which so enticed certain disolute Rovers of *Austria*, that they seized upon it *Anno* 1618, and had like to have occasioned an heavy War betwixt *Ferdinand*, Arch-Duke of the House of *Gratz*, (not long after chosen King of the *Romans*) and the State of *Venice*, if *Philip* the third of *Spain* had not made up the Breach.

5. *CURSOLA*, by *Ptolomy* and *Strabo* called *Corcyra*, or *Melena*, more rightly *Corcyra Melena*, or *Corcyra Nigra*, to difference it from *Corcyra*, now *Corfu*, in the *Ionian* Sea. The chief Town of it, being of the same name with the Island, was Founded by the *Gnidians* of the Isle of *Crete*. It is sufficiently Fruitful, but of Wine especially; Forty Miles long, in compass Ninety, and very populous for the bigness; notwithstanding that the People, being Sea-faring Men, do much use the Seas, and build many Ships. In the year 1571, a little after the taking of *Cyprus*, and before the Battel of *Lepanto*, it was invaded by *Uluç Aly*, General of the *Turkish* Fleet, with a Navy of Sixty Gallies: for fear of whom *Contareno*, the *Venetian* Governor, together with the Townsmen and Garrison Soldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief Town hereof. The silly Women thus forsaken, and preferring Death before Dishonour, defended the Walls, and with Fire, Stones, and such other Weapons as they had, they beat off the Enemy; till at the last a violent Tempest forced the *Turkish* General to remove his Gallies farther off, to a place of safety. The chief City of this Island was about 100 years since nothing but an old Castle, but now it is a good large City, and well Fortified with Walls on the South, and two Castles at the East and West ends; but there is a Rock towards the West which commands the Town and one of the Castles. The Soil of *Corfu* is not so Fruitful as to supply the Inhabitants with Corn, but it produceth Wine, Oil, and all sorts of good Fruit in abundance. *Wueller*.

6. *ZARA*, *LISSA*, *BRAZZIA*, three small Isles, not otherwise memorable but for their Misfortunes, spoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from *Curzola*, who carried thence 1600 Christians into cruel Bondage. The rest I purposely omit, being rather Rocks than Islands, barren and stony for the most part, and not much inhabited.

The ancient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent of it, comprehending *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*, were the *Iapodes*, bordering on *Italy*; the *Scirtones*, or *Scirtarii*, confining upon *Macedon*, the *Mazei*, in the midst about *Salona*; the *Perustæ*, lying towards *Pannonia*; the *Derii*, *Ceraunii*, *Daurii*, *Parde*, *Siculota*, *Sardiotæ*, and others of inferior note: all making up the great and potent Nations of the *Liburni* and the *Dalmatæ*, and comprehended generally in the name of *Illyrians*. Of these the *Liburnian* *Illyrians* (*Illyrici*, seu *Liburni*, as they are indifferently called by *Florus*) were the first who felt the Forces of *Rome*: which growing State they had provoked by their frequent Piracies, but more by murdering the Embassadors which were sent unto them to

require Satisfaction; *Tenta* their Queen, a proud and imperious Dame, commanding Execution to be done upon them. Warred upon by the *Romans* for so many Injuries under the Conduct of *Centimulus*, one of their Consuls, they were overthrown, (as having more of the Pirate than the Soldier in them) some of their chief Nobility executed, in revenge of the Wrong done to the Embassadors, a yearly Tribute imposed on them, and the Queen deprived of the greatest part of her Kingdom, conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Pharius*, one of their Confederates. But he proving unfaithful to them in their War with *Hannibal*, and *Gentius*, their last King, who commanded over *Illyricum*, siding against them with *Perseus* King of *Macedonia*, *Anitius* the Prætor is sent with a sufficient Army to make an end of that work; who used such diligence therein, that *Scodra*, the chief Town of the Kingdom was taken, and the King himself, together with his Wife and Children, made Prisoners; by consequence the whole War ended *antequam geri Romæ nuntiaretur*, before they knew at *Rome* that it was begun. The *Liburnians* after that became quiet Subjects, the whole Country on the taking of *Gentius* being made a Province of the *Romans*, *Anno* U. C. 586, and they employed at *Rome* in many servile Offices, as before was said: and then the *Dalmatians* began to cast off the Yoke. But *Dalminium*, now *Damnio*, an Inland Town of small regard, their chief City, being first sacked by *Marcus Figulus*, and after by *Nasica*, before mentioned, they continued quiet and obedient till the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, when they again rebelled at the instigation of one *Batto*, a Man very potent with the People, who, having ten years together maintained the Liberty of his Country, at last, broken and wearied by the Forces of *Germanicus* and *Tiberius*, submitted himself unto the two Generals; who, asking the reason of his Revolt, were answered, because the *Romans* sent not Shepherds to keep, but Wolves to devour, their Flocks. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman* Province till the coming of *Odoacer* into *Italy*, who brought it under his Command; as the *Goths* also did, having vanquished him, and thereby made themselves Masters of *Italy* and the rest of his Purchases. But the Kingdom of the *Goths* being brought to an end by the good Fortune of *Justinian*, and the Valour of *Belisarius* and *Narses*, two of his Commanders (but very ill requited by him) *Illyricum* became a part of the Eastern Empire; continuing under the power of the *Grecian* Emperors till the time of *Phocas*, that bloody Tyrant; when it was made a Prey to the *Slaves*.

Of these, tho' we have spoken before in several places, as their Fortunes and Affairs have led us; yet being this is the only Country which preserves their name, we will here speak more exactly of them than we have done hitherto; especially as to their Manners, Name, and first Original, and finally of their Successes in this Country. And first for their Original, I take it for a thing past question that they were no other than natural *Sarmatians*, inhabiting on the North of the River *Ister*; uniting themselves under this Name in their Undertakings and Attempts on the Eastern Empire: as the many Nations of *Germany* took the name of *Franks* and *Almans* in their Actions and Achievements against the Western. But why they took this Name rather than another, is not yet agreed on. Some fetch the Original of it from *Slomo*, which in the *Slavonian* Tongue signifieth a Speech or Word, because they were all of one common Language: others from *Slava*, signifying in that Language Fame or Glory, in regard of that great Fame and Honour which they had achieved by their Successors on the Empire. But when I find a potent Nation of the *Winnithi*, *Winnuli* or *Venedi*, a *Sarmatian* People, called *Slavini* by *Jornandes*, possessed in his time of the farther Shores of the River *Ister*, opposite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, and by that name wasting and foraging these Provinces and other parts of that Empire

Empire in the time of *Justinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they did; I see no reason why we should look farther for the name of *Slaves* than from these *Sclavini*. For having in the time of *Phocas* subdued this Country, and called it *Sclavinia* or *Slavonia*, after their own Name; by that and other fortunate Successes on the Eastern Empire, and the Honour they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce the rest of the scattered Tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite together with them both in Name and Action, and try their Fortunes in the Conquest of the West of *Europe*, as these had done already on the East parts of it. In which Design they sped so well, that they became Masters of almost all those Countries which lie betwixt the River *Vistula* and *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Baltick*; communicating their Language unto all the Provinces and Nations conquered by them; and to most their Manners, Rites and Customs. Their Government was at first by Kings, but so that the Succession seldom held in a Race or Family, and those that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For having a Law amongst themselves, that he who killed a Tyrant should succeed in his place; they had few Kings whom some or other would not vote to be a Tyrant, and then dispatch him out of the way, that a greater Tyrant than himself (as it commonly happeneth in such cases) might possess the Power. Inasmuch that they had a new King almost every year, none of them for the space of an Hundred years dying natural Deaths; and all that while the People (as it must be) were most miserably torn in pieces by intestine Wars. They were not cured of this Distemper, till the several Tribes and Nations of them (as *Poles*, *Moravians*, *Bohemians* these here, and those of other Countries) had their several Princes succeeding one another in a regular way. Their Religion was Gentilism at the first. For being originally Heathens, they worshipped such Gods as other of the Gentiles did; *Jessan* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Marzim* for *Mars*, *Zievane* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had also a Goddess called *Eugode*, to whom they prayed for fair Weather and a temperate Air. To their Children they used to give no name till they began to grow great, and then they conducted them to the Temple of their Gods; where they cut off their first Hair, and offered it as a Pledge of their future Service: at which Solemnity they called together their Friends and Kinsfolks to make merry, with Banquets, Dancing, Singing, and all kind of Sports; offering in Sacrifice an Hog, and Wine mixed with Honey, somewhat like *Metheglin*.

The Gospel was first generally received amongst them by the Preaching of *Cyrill* and *Methodius*, two right godly Men, who had before converted the *Georgians* and *Circassians*, two great *Asian* Nations, employed therein by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, with good Success as to the Work, and with no small Honour and Advantage to those Patriarchs also. The Eastern *Slaves* inhabiting

those parts of this Country, which lie betwixt *Ossetia*, and all the *Polish* Provinces, except *Polandia*, being of the Communion of the Church of *Rome*; but privileged to officiate all Divine Services in the *Slavonian* Language. The rest, as more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Hungary* and the *German* Emperors, have by degrees to the Popes of *Rome*, who by this means had reap where they never sowed.

But to return unto the Story. The *Slaves*, thus settled in this Country (since called *Slavonia*) continued absolute Masters of it, under the Title of *Kings of Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, till the year 972; when growing intolerable by their frequent Piracies, and having ravished or surprized a company of *Venetian* Ladies, they forced that State (as the *Libernians* did the *Romans*) to make War upon them: which ended in the Loss of *Zestum* and *Curzola*, two of their best Islands, and almost all the Sea Towns on the Coast of the *Adriatick*, possessed for the most part since that time by the State of *Venice*: a Tribute also of a hundred Barrels of Wine, and a Present to the Duke of 3000 Coney-Skins being laid upon them; *Pietro Viscolo*, being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcomir* King of the *Sclavonians*. Afterwards *Zelamirus*, the last King, dying without Issue, bequeath'd the Kingdom to his Wife, and she as freely to her Brother *Vladislavus*, King of *Hungary*, surnamed the Saint; the right hereof accruing by this means to the Kings of *Hungary*, but the Possession of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*: the cause of much War and Bloodshed betwixt those Princes, till the *Turks* came to part the Fray, and got the greatest part for himself by their Disagreements. Betwixt these three *Sclavonia* at this time doth stand thus divided: the *Venetians* possess the greatest part of the Islands, and all the Sea-coasts from the River *Asiz* to the Bay of *Cattaro*, (the City and Commonwealth of *Ragusa* excepted only) the House of *Asiz*, in Right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windischland* and *Croatia*; and the *Turks* (who first set footing here in the Reign of *Mahomet* the second) the whole Kingdom of *Bosnia*, the Patronage of *Ragusa*, some Towns in *Windischland* and *Croatia*, and all the Residue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Cattaro* to *Albania*. In this present War, began in the year 1683, the *Turks* have lost great part of this Country to the *Venetians*, and are now in great danger of losing all the rest to the Emperor; *Gradisca*, the strongest place they have, being now besieged by the Imperial Forces.

The Arms of *Slavonia* were *Argent*, a Cardinal's Hat, the Strings pendant, and platted in a True-love Knot, meeting in the Base, *Gules*.

There are in *SCLAVONIA*.

Archbishops 4.

Bishops 26.

And so much for *SCLAVONIA*.

O F D A C I A.

DACIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine* Sea and some part of *Thrace*, on the West with *Hungary* and *Sclavonia*, on the North with *Podolia* and some other Members of the Realm of *Poland*, on the South with the rest of *Thrace* and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here first inhabited; in *Strabo* better known by the name of *Davi*: who proving, when first known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themselves to Service in hope of Gain, occasioned the *Romans* in their Comedies and common Speech to call a Sycophant or Servant by the name of *Davus*.

It lieth on both sides of the *Danow*, fronting all along the Upper and the Lower *Hungary*, and some part of *Sclavonia*: extended from the 7. Climate to the 10. so that the longest Summers Day in the most Northern parts thereof is near 17 hours, and in the most Southern 15 hours, 3 quarters.

By this account, with reference to the other Limits before laid down, it differeth much in Situation and Dimensions from the ancient *Dacia* described by *Ptolomy*: that lying wholly on the North-side of the *Danow*, but taking in so much of the Upper *Hungary* as lieth on the East-side of *Tibiscus*, this comprehending all the rest of the ancient *Dacia*, with both the *Mysia's* and *Dardania*, and, in a word, the whole *Dacian* Diocesis in the largest extent thereof, the Province of *Prevalatana* excepted only; which, though a Member of this Diocesis, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer understanding whereof we may please to know, that *Dacia* properly so called was situate on the Northside of the *Danubius*, as before was said, extending as far Westward as the River *Tibiscus*, were it frontiered on the *Fazyges Metanastæ*; inhabited by a military and valiant People, who many times, especially when the Frost did favour them, passed over the River, and infested the *Roman* Provinces. And though repressed and made tributary by *Julius Cesar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Augustus*; who sending *Lentulus* against them with a puissant Army, compelled them to retire on the other side of the River, planting the Southern Banks thereof with strong Towns and Garrisons, to restrain them from the like incursions for the time to come. By means whereof, *Si Dacia tunc cuncta summa atque dilata est*, saith the Historian, though *Dacia*, was not overcome, yet it was removed somewhat farther off, and the Provinces thereby secured from the attempts of that People. After this, from the time of *Cotiso*, with whom *Augustus* had to deal, we find little of them till the Reign of *Decebalus* their last King, a man both ready in Advice and quick in Execution, against him *Domitian* made War by *Julianus* his Lieutenant, who gave *Decebalus* a great overthrow, and had then utterly vanquished him, if his Wit had not better befriended him than his Sword. For fearing that the *Romans* making use of their Victory, would enter and take possession of his Country, he pitched in the way a great number of Stakes in Battle-array, putting on them the old Corslets of his Soldiers; which looking like to many men at Arms, frightened the Enemy from approaching the Country. *Trajan* was the next that

made War against him and brought him to that Exigent that having with much loss indured some few Skirmishes, he yielded himself, and is acknowledged a Friend to the Senate, and People of *Rome*. But being one of an high spirit, and born in a free Air, he once again fell off from the *Romans*; but to his own destruction: for seeing by the Valour of *Trajan* his Kingdom conquered, and his Palace taken and destroyed, he fell upon his own Sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Lost in the time of *Gallienus*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*; who finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, transplanted the *Roman* Colonies, and the more civil sort of the Natives, to the other side of the River, placing them betwixt the two *Mysia's*, (in some part of each) and calling the Country given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia*, leaving the *Old* unto the *Goths*, and others of the barbarous Nations, whose Thorough-fare it was in all their Enterprises and Designs upon the *Roman* Empire. It was divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Ripensis*; this lying on the Banks of the *Danow*, the other more within the Land: which, with the Provinces of *Mesia superior*, *Dardania*, *Prevalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Diocesis of *Dacia* in the times succeeding. It was subject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, for *Illyricum*, and consequently appertaining (after the Division) to the Eastern Empire. And it continued in this State till the time of *Justinian*, who being a Native of this Country, subducted it from the Command of that *Præfect*, and instituted both a *Præfectus Prætorio* for this Diocesis only in Civil matters, and a Primate for the affairs of the Church; both settled in the City of *Justinian*, of his own Foundation; enlarging the Jurisdiction of the first by the addition of some part of *Macedonia Secunda*, and *Pannonia Secunda*, and giving to the other all those Preheminencies which had been anciently enjoyed by the greater Patriarchs. But this new Institution was of no continuance. For first the *Slaves*, and afterwards the *Russians*, *Hungars* and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danow*, dismembred it piece-meal from the Empire, and divided it under new names amongst themselves. Of which, together with the nature of the Soil and people, I shall speak anon, having first took a view of the Rivers, Hills and other Land-marks, which are to be my chief Guides in the Chorography or Description of them.

The Rivers then of most note are, 1. the *Danow*, which here at *Axiu*, or *Axiopolis*, a Town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *Ister*, continuing it from thence to its *Astuarium*; where it falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, with seven Mouths or Channels; that is to say, 1. *Pence*, 2. *Naracustoma*. 3. *Calistoma*, 4. *Plendostoma*, 5. *Spireostoma*, 6. *Borcostoma*, the name of the last I find not amongst my Authors, *quia languidissimum nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolomy*. 2. *Marulius*, now called *Marisch*. 3. *Termes*. 4. *Aluta*, keeping its old name. 5. *Hierasus*. All of *Old Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danow* or *Ister*, as do also *Ciabus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Cervia*. And 6. *Succonia* of *Bulgaria*, or the *Lower Mysia*. Chief Mountains of it are, 1. the *Carpathian*. 2. *Scardus*. 3. *Ozbelus*, whereof the first parteth it from *Sarmatia Europea*, the

the second from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This said, we will proceed to the description of the several Provinces which we have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*; that is to say, 1. *Transylvania*. 2. *Moldavia*. 3. *Walachia*. 4. *Russia*. 5. *Servia*. 6. *Bulgaria*. The first four in *Old Dacia*, on the North side of the *Danow*, the two last in *New Dacia*, on the South thereof.

1. TRANSYLVANIA.

TRANSYLVANIA is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, on the West with the Upper *Hungary*, on the North with *Russia Nigra*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*, from which it is parted by the *Carpathian Mountains*; on the South with *Rascia* (or rather *Hungary*) and *Walachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwixt it and *Hungary*; the name in *Latin* signifying the Country beyond the Woods. By the *Dutch* it is called *Niebenbergen*, from seven Castles or strong Holds anciently built in it to defend the Frontiers; *Septemcastris* in some *Latin* Authors upon that occasion. But by the more elegant *Latinists* it hath been named *Pannodacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*; or made subject to them.

The Soil doth naturally abound with Wine, Corn, and Fruit; of which it was so plentiful in the time of the *Romans*, that the Emperor *Trajan* caused a piece of Money to be coined, having the figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornu-Copia*, and in the other a plain Tablet with this Inscription. *Abundantia Dacia*. Particularly, besides great plenty of Wheat and most excellent Wines, it yieldeth great store of Cherries, Damascens, Malacatoons, Musk-melons, not inferior to those of *Italy*, and also Centaury good store, and many other Medicinal plants; some Mines of Gold and Silver: many of Iron, Brass, Copper, and not a few Veins of Salt and Sulphur. Of Cattle such abundance, that many times large Oxen are sold for a Floren, or half a Crown piece; and a most notable breed of Horses; not to say any thing of that variety of Wild Beasts which they have in their Woods and Forests, and of all sorts of Fowl both for Food and pleasure. So populous withal, (for the most fruitful Countries are commonly populous also) that *Castaldo*, Governor hereof in the Minority of *Stephen* the fourth Son of *John de Sepusio*, Anno 1551, advanced an Army of 70000 able men, consisting of the Natives of this Country only, for the Siege of *Lippe*, a strong Town of *Hungary*, but on the Borders of this Country. This Province is surrounded on all sides with the *Carpathian Hills*, and has the Form of a Rhombus, being 68 French Leagues from East to West, and 62 from North to South, that is about 200 English miles. And so extremely fruitful, that when the Imperial Army in the beginning of October 1687, fell into it suddenly, and the Inhabitants fled into the Woods and Mountains, and carried with them their Stores, Corn, Cattle and Provisions, yet the Army wanted for nothing, being richly supplied by the Fruits they then found upon the Ground. And by the agreement made with them, they were to furnish to the Imperial Troops 66000 measures of Wheat, 1980 Tun of Flesh, 7000 Pieces of Wine, 120000 measures of Oats, 9180 Tun of Hay, 480000 Trusses of Straw, and Wood, Salt and Candle to be supplied by the respective Landlords to the Army. And over and besides they were to pay in Money, 700000 *German Florins*, at 6 payments, the last of which, was to be paid the last day of June, the Revenue of Prince *Abasi* to be no way thereby abated. All which was punctually perform'd, and is a standing Testimony of the Riches and Fertility of this Province.

The people are much of the same nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been a long time sub-

ject, but somewhat more stubborn and untractable: speak the same Language as they do, with some difference in the Dialect only; converted at the same time to the Christian Faith, and under the same form of Ecclesiastical Government. In former times they used to read, as the *Jews* do, from the right hand to the left; but of late here they conform to the Western Nations, from whom they are generally descended.

For that the people of this Country are the Progeny of the *Saxons*, is evident 1. by the *Saxon* Language yet in part retained. 2. We find that *Charles* the Great, like a politic Conqueror, placed many of that Nation here, weakning so their strength at home, and fortifying the Bounds of his Empire. And 3. by a Story recited by *Verslegan*, which we touched in our Description of *Brunswick*; the whole Narration is this, *Halberstadt* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a Musician, whom they called the *Py'd Pyper*, undertaking for a great mass of money to destroy, they agree: hereupon he turned his Pipes, and all the Rats in the Town dancing after him are drowned in the next River. This done he asketh his pay, but is denied: whereupon he striketh up a new air of Mirth, all the Children, male and female, of the Town, follow him into the Hill *Hamelen*, which presently closed again. The Parents miss their Children, and could never hear news of them. Now of late some have found them in this Country, where I also leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is said to happen the 22th of July 1376. Since which time it is said that the people of *Halberstadt* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other Instrument to be sounded in that Street: and established a Decree, that in all Writings of Contract, or Bargain, after the Date of our Saviours Nativity, the Date also of this their Childrens Transmigration should be added *in rei memoriam*. Although the *Dutch* or *Saxons* make up the main body of the Nation, yet being conquered by the *Hungars*, they received many of their Colonies: and in the Northern parts there remain still some of the old *Scythians* planted there by *Attila*. Out of those Members is the Body of this State composed: so strong and populous, that it is conceived to be able to raise an Army of 90000 men; and actually did arm 6000 Horse and 12000 Foot for the Battle of *Keresztur*, Anno 1566, being more by 2000 than the whole Realm of *Hungary* sent unto that Service.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the *Dutch* or *Saxons*, are 1. *Hermenstat*, in the *Latin* *Hermanopolis*, (of old called *Cibinium*, from the River *Cibin*, on which it was situate) so named of one *Herman* the Founder of it, little inferior to *Vienna* for strength or greatness, well fortified both by Art and Nature. This City is a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Colza*. It has good Walls, flank'd with strong Bastions, and a deep Dike full of Fish, the Inhabitants are Civil, and the Buildings large and magnificent, those of the meanest Artificers being of Stone. It has good Magazines, always well stored and kept under Ground for times of need. The Country about it is fruitful. 2. *Cronstad*, in *Latin* called *Corona*, by some *Brassovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*; this last name given it by *Stephen* King of *Hungary*, who repaired and beautified it; situate on the Borders of *Walachia*, amongst fruitful Mountains; remarkable for a fair Library and a kind of Academy; and the most noted Empory or Mart-Town of all this Country; of great Resort especially in the time of their publick Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Polanders*, *Walachians*, and other Nations. This City is called by the *Greeks* *Hevapoli*, and of old it was called *Ulpia Trajana*. It has ancient Walls and Towers, instead of Bastions, but convenient for the lodging the Garrison Soldiers: each Citizen has his Garden. 3. *Bistricia*, (by the *Dutch* called *Noren*) so called from the River *Bistric*, which runneth through it: so pleasant and so sweet a Town, that there is no dirt or mire to be seen at any time; or if there be, the people presently

well up the River, and so cleanse the Streets. It is yet most commended and valued for its Gold Mines. 4. *Mediesus* (by the Dutch *Medwisch*) so called *quasi medius confessus*, because situate in the midst of the Country; a Town almost as neat as *Bistrice*. 5. *Segosvaria* or *Schefburg*, on the declivity of an Hill. 6. *Zabesius*, or *Laiz*, once the chief Town of the Saxons, but now much decayed; situate in a very deep Valley, well fenced with Waters, and those Waters well stored with Fish. 7. *Clausenburg*, or *Coloswar*, the *Zeugma* of *Ptolomy*, in Latin called *Claudiopolis*, from *Claudius* the II. Emperor, by whom re-edified: at first a Colony of the Saxons or Dutch only, but of late times the Hungarians, coming in as strangers were privileged as Citizens and inhabited it together with them. The Town is well seated in the middle of a pleasant Plain, encompassed with an handsome Wall, and beautified with elegant Buildings. But then it has no Dike, and the Walls are not good neither, their Fortifications are only round Towers, after the old Mode, and there are several Hills near it which command the Town, so that it is neither by Art nor Nature strong, but it is very populous and rich, so that in the year 1687, it was easily forced by the Duke of *Lorrain*, to receive an Imperial Garrison. 8. *Alba Julia*, now *Weissenburg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolomy*, situate on a small Brook then called *Apulus*, (but now *Oratus*) whence it had the name. Built on the side of an Hill near the River *Marisch*, or *Marisus* over-looking a large and fruitful Plain: heretofore a Bishop's See, and the ordinary Residence of the Prince or Vaivod of *Transylvania*; but now a Garrison of Hungarian Soldiers, holding it for the Emperor, as King of Hungary. It has the name of *Alba Julia* from the Mother of *Antoninus*, the Great and Learned Roman Emperor. And at this day Roman Quoins are frequently found in it.

Chief Towns belonging to the Hungarians, and by them inhabited, are 1. *Waradin*, much mentioned in the Stories of the latter times, since these invasions of the *Turks*; situate on the Borders of Hungary. This is a very strong Town, situate in the Country of *Zathmar*, on the Banks of the River *Crise*, towards the East fortified in such manner, that it seems impregnable: on the South it has great Suburbs, and the River closeth it on the North, on which side it has some high grounds which command it, but not near it. It has a Wall and Ramparts of the modern figure, and is flank'd with five Royal Bastions, very regular, and fronted by a good Dike, which may be filled with River Water; within it has five other Bastions, and a Wall raised about the out Wall. In the year 1242, the *Crim-Tartars* took this City, and slew most of the Inhabitants. The *Turks* besieged it in 1598, with a puissant Army, but without success. But in the year 1660, they took it by surprise in a time of Peace. In the beginning of this year 1688, the Imperialists having taken *Lippa*, plundered the Fields belonging to it, and are not likely long to possess it, they being in no condition to relieve it. 2. *Thordis*, built in or near the place where stood the *Salina* of *Ptolomy*, so called from the abundance of Saltpitrs which were then about it. 3. *Euguedine*, by the Romans called *Amium*, from a Cauley leading to it, raised by one *Amius*, and from him so named; some Fragments whereof are still remaining. 4. *Deva*, remarkable for a Vein of the best Wines also, not inferior to those of *Venusium* in Italy. 6. *Zilachi*, 7. *Gela*, of which little memorable. 8. *Millenback*, not far from which, betwixt which and the Town of *Brofs*, is a very strong Fortrefs, commanding a streight and narrow passage leading into this Country out of Hungary.

In the North part hereof lieth the Province called *Z E C K L A R*, inhabited by the *Siculi*, an old brood of *Scythians*, brought hither by *Attila* on his first Conquest of this Country, and here still continuing. A people which have much in them of the ancient *Huns*, and had heretofore a particular Language to themselves, but

now they speak the Hungarian generally, differing in the Dialect only. But though by the necessity of Commerce and Cohabitation, they are brought into the same Language; they still retain their ancient Customs, governed by their old Laws, and living after the same manner as the *Switzers* do; each of their Cantons (seven in number) being absolute in and of itself, but all united with the *Transylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Country against the several Pretensions of the German and *Turkish* Emperors. And though they do acknowledge some Subjection to the Emperor as King of Hungary, yet it is but what they list themselves: being anciently privileged from all Taxes, more than the paying of a Bull for every Household, in the way of an offering, at the Coronation of the new King, when and how oft so ever it may chance to happen. Their Cantons (such they call them) are, 1. *Sepsi*, 2. *Orava*, 3. *Kysli*, 4. *Czyk*, 5. *Gyula* or *Uovarheli*, 6. *Moros-Zeck*. And 7. *Arad-Zeck*, so called from the chief Town in each District. In former times no Nobleman, nor any one of great means and greater Eminence than other, was amongst them: but now of late that Parity (or Confusion rather) is grown out of Credit, and some begin to over-top the rest both in power and Title as in other places.

The first Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, were the *Anarti*, *Taurisci*, *Rhaetici*, *Canconsi*, the *Buridensi*, and *Biephi*, &c. First conquered they were by *Lyfimachus*, the great and mighty King of *Thrace*, one of the Renowned Captains of *Alexander* the Great; in token whereof, innumerable Medals in the age of our Grandfathers were found in this Country, having his Image on the one side, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards subdued by the Emperor *Trajan*, and quitted by *Aurelianus*, hath been shew already. Being forsaken by the Romans, it was won by the *Goths*; their constant Dwelling, till forced over the *Danow* by the *Huns*, the next Possessors of this Country; the Road or thorough-fare from that time of those barbarous Nations which out of Asia made there Inroads on the Europeans. Having been successively subdued by the *Slaves* and *Rosses*, this part hereof was conquered by *Stephen*, the first King of Hungary, surnamed the Saint, by whose perswasion and inducements they received the Gospel. They were governed after this time, as a Member of that Kingdom, by a Deputy, whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* signifying as much as *Præfectus* *Militia*, or a Lord-Lieutenant) a man, by reason of the greatness of his place and power of most Authority in that Kingdom. The names and Succession of these *Vaivods* till the time of *John Huniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that, more clear and constant in this order following.

The VAIVODS and PRINCES of TRANSYLVANIA.

1. *John*, surnamed *Huniades*, made *Vaivod* hereof by *Vladislaus* the IV. A man of great Valour and Renown, the great defender of his Country against the *Turks*, whom he overthrew in many Battles, especially in that of *Maron*, where he slew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.
2. *Stephen*, of the noble Family of *Cattory*, *Vaivod* in the time of *Matthias* King of Hungary, the Son of *Huniades*.
3. *Stephen* II. surnamed *de Sepusio*, from the place of his Honour and Estate; not so much memorable for any thing as for being Father of *Barbara*, the Wife of *Sigismund* King of Poland and of

4. *John*,

4. *John II.* called also *de Sepusio*, after the death of *Lewis* the second chosen King of *Hungary*, of whom before amongst the Kings of that Realm.
- 1526 5. *Americus*, Bishop of *Veradium*, made Vaivod by *John de Sepusio*, on his taking of the Crown of *Hungary*; treacherously Murthered, for not complying with the *Turk*, Anno 1534.
- 1540 6. *Stephen III.* surnamed *Maylat*, a noble *Hungarian*, but extremely ambitious, having not long after the death of *Americus* usurp'd the Vaivodship, was in the year 1540 confirmed in that Dignity. In this Prince's time *Transylvania* was separated from *Hungary*.
- 1541 7. *Stephen IV.* Son of *John de Sepusio* the late King of *Hungary*, by *Solyman* the Magnificent made Vaivod of *Transylvania*, being then an Infant (by whom he had been deprived of his Kingdom of *Hungary*, not long before) being incroached upon not long after by the said *Solyman*, this Country was put into the hands of *Ferdinand* King of *Hungary*, other Lands being given to the young Prince in exchange hereof.
- 1551 8. *Stephen V.* surnamed *Dobus*, for his Valour shewed against the *Turks* in defending *Agria*, made Vaivod of this Country by the said King *Ferdinand*. But *Solyman* not liking that this Country should be at the Devotion of the Kings of *Hungary*, conferred the same (under the Vassalage of his Empire) upon one
9. *John III.* whose Family and surname I have no where found; a professed Champion of the *Turks*, and as professed an Enemy to *Ferdinand* and his Successors in the Kingdom of *Hungary*.
10. *Stephen VI.* surnamed *Battery* (of which House he was) made Voivod by the *Turk*; and afterwards, on the Commendation of *Amurath* the third, chosen King of *Poland*.
- 1575 11. *Christopher Battery*, Brother of *Stephen*, on whose Election unto *Poland*, he succeeded here, and was the first who leaving the Title of Vaivod, took that of Prince of *Transylvania*.
- 1583 12. *Sigismund*, Son of *Christopher*, shook off the *Turkish* Bondage, defeated many of their Armies, and slew some of their *Bassas*, (the *Scanderbeg* of the Times he lived in.) But not being able to hold out against so Potent an Adversary, he resigned his Estate to *Rodolphus* the Emperor, having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor* in *Silesia*, and an Annual Pension of 50000 *Touchims*; but finding his Pension ill paid, he made a new Resignation of it to
- 1599 13. *Andrew Battery*, Cousin of *Sigismund*, slain within the year by the Vaivod of *Valachia*. After whole death
- 1601 14. *Rodolphus*, Emperor and King of *Hungary*, is admitted Prince of *Transylvania*, on the second Resignation of *Sigismund*. But his Soldiers behaving themselves with too great Insolence, *Sigismund* was called back again, but never well ferled: so that at last he was fain to leave the Country in the power of the Emperor and retire to *Prague*, where in the year 1613 he died unlamented. In the mean time
- 1604 15. *Justine* or *Istivan*, surnamed *Botscay*, a Nobleman of this Country, made Prince hereof by the Great *Turk*, and supported by him, cleared the Province of the *Germans*, and being followed by great Companies of those of the Reformed Religion, he not only obtained of the Emperor *Rudolphus* a Confirmation of this Estate unto himself, but Liberty of Conscience, and the free Exercise of Religion for both the Nations, presently after which he died, Decemb. 30. 1616.
- 1607 16. *Sigismund II.* of the Noble Family of *Ragotzy*, elected in the February following by the *Transylvanians*; but finding himself not able to make his Election good against the Emperor, and being unwilling to subject himself unto the *Turks*, and after the end of one year he relinquished the Government, and betook himself again to a private Life.
- 1608 17. *Gabriel Battery*, of the Family of the former Princes, succeeded by the Favour of *Achmet* the Great *Turk*, after whose Death, so welcom unto his Neighbours and Subjects,
- 1613 18. *Barthlem Gabor*, by the same *Achmet*, was made Prince of *Transylvania*; a professed Enemy of the House of *Austria*, but one that with a great deal of noise did them little hurt.
- 1630 19. *Stephen VII.* surnamed *Ragotzy*, on the Death of *Barthlem Gabor*, succeeded Prince, by the Power and Favour of the *Turks*, under whose Clientele and Protection he doth still enjoy it, (as his Predecessors did before him) against all Pretensions of the Empire and Realm of *Hungary*: as on the other side he is defended by the Emperor and Crown of *Poland* from being made Subject unto the *Turks*.
- 1645 20. *George Ragotzy*, Son of the former, succeeded his Father, he died of some Wounds he had received in the Defence of *Grand-Waradin*, in the year 1660 in June.
- 1660 21. *Achatius Barchay*, was intruded in his place by the *Turks*, and beheaded by them the same year.
- 1661 22. *John Kemeny*, Elected and slain the same year.
- 1661 23. *Michael Abassi*, Count of *Sicule*, succeeded by the Favour of the *Turks*, and is still living.

To continue here the History of this Country. In the beginning of this present War *Michael Abassi*, tho' often Summon'd to the Port, excused himself on several Pretences; and being invited by the *Visser* as he passed by to the Siege of *Vienna* in the year 1683, he came afterwards to their Camp there, with a small Retinue, and yet was kindly received by the *Visser* and had leave to return, being ordered to take care of the Bridges between the *Raab* and *Rabnitz*, which the *Turks* had lately built to secure their Retreat. In the year 1686, when the Emperor had taken *Buda* and *Segedin*, and advanced his Forces almost to the Borders of *Transylvania*. This Prince consented to contribute to the Winter Quarters of the *German* Army, it being not safe for him to refuse it; but he would receive no Garrison from the Emperor, and executed his Compliance at the Port by the Terror of the Imperial Arms. But in the year 1687, after the Battel of *Mohacz*, the Duke of *Lorraine* marched with the main Body of the Imperial Army towards *Segedin*, and pretending to besiege *Grand-Waradin* marched that way, but turned suddenly and fell into *Transylvania*, and the 11th of October surprized *Habalone*, the first Town of that Principality: After which *Clausenburg* was also forced to submit, and after it *Hermanstadt*, *Weissenburg*, or *Alba Julia*, *Bistritz*, and six other Places were assigned to the *Germans* for Winter

Winter Quarters, with vast allowances of Provisions; but then the Imperial Army was to march out in the Spring, unless the Necessity of the War required otherwise, or that some other Treaty were concluded on in the Winter. The Germans being thus in Possession of this fruitful Province without blows, did not so content themselves with the Allowance made them, but that there arose great Complaints against them, which being composed too to the Advantage of the Imperialists, who were Masters of all the strong Towns. And the 9th of May, 1688, they brought the Prince and States of Transylvania to make an absolute Submission to the Emperor and his Son Joseph, then Crowned King of Hungary, the Form of which is as followeth.

The Act of Submission of the Prince and States of Transylvania.

WE Michael Telcky de Szek, Great Marechal, George and Alexis Bethlem, Ladislaus Szekel de Boroszeno, Valentine Frank, Chief Justice, and Christian Szabo, Burgher-Master of Hermanstad, Ministers and Counsellors of the Illustrious Prince Michael Abasti of Transylvania, Nicholas de Bethlem and Stephen Appor de Also Thoyne, Peter Alvinzy and John Starosy, Protonotaries, and Michael Filstrick Justice of Cronstadt, deputed Plenipotentiaries of the said Prince and States of the Kingdom of Transylvania, do for perpetual Memory declare and make known, The whole World is struck with just Amazement, and the Envious Pine, at the extraordinary Goodness of God, who after the effusion of so much innocent Blood, hath at last pitied Christianity, and freed so many Provinces and Kingdoms from Barbarous and intollerable Servitude; a Mercy worthy to be had in everlasting Remembrance, and to be congratulated by all good Men.

The just God of Heaven could no longer endure the Rage and disdainful Pride of that cruel and sworn Enemy of the Christian Name, who was arrived to such an height of Power, as to be formidable to the whole World, destructive to his Neighbours, and a Contemner of all Men. But at length the Lord of Hosts with the Power of his Right Hand, hath brandished his Sword, and Crowned the Arms and just Cause of the most August Emperor of the Romans, our most Gracious Lord, with such happy and glorious Success; that the Turk himself owns and acknowledges, that his Power is much shattered and broken, and himself brought into a very low Condition. So admirable and stupendous are the Works of God's providence, that vengeance treads on the Heels of the Infidels whose former Successes made them secure; so that for the future none need fear that they should ever lift up their Heads again to ruine Christianity, nor the Afflicted need despond in the depth of their Misery.

Unhappy Transylvania hath groaned time out of mind under Oppression, and what is the top of its Misery, under that of the Turks; and, being deprived of its Lawful Kings and Governors by so many Wars, Ruins, Devallations, and Intelline Discords within its own Bowels, was brought almost to the brink of Destruction. That fatal Tragedy which this Kingdom hath undergone, partly under the Turks Protection, and partly by the Discords of its own Princes, will stand upon Record in History, as a Monument to all succeeding Ages.

But at last she returns to the King of Hungary; from whom, by the envy of the Fates, and the ambitious Designs of some Men, she had been severed; she embraces the Paternal and Powerful Patronage of the August Leopold I. Emperor of the Romans, the Great, Happy, Just and Invincible Hereditary King of Hungary, and of his present Successor, the most Serene King Joseph (whose Life and Reign God prosper and preserve) and of the future Hereditary Kings of Hungary (as in the late Dyet at Presburgh was declared) with the universal

Consent of the States thereof, and according to the fervent Prayers, which have for a long time unanimously been made to Almighty God, for the obtaining so great a Blessing. That what therefore was heretofore desired by all, for the Glory of God, may from this present time be happy and prosperous to all succeeding Ages; Be it known to all Men, that are now alive, or that hereafter shall be born, That We (by virtue of our full Power, and, for greater Security, in the strength of the confirmatory Acts and Conclusions of the Prince and the States of this Realm, by the common Consent of our own mere Motion, and out of Christian Zeal) do renounce, for the future, all Subjection to the Ottoman Port, and all Correspondencies, with all Gifts and Payments of Tributes, or whatever else may carry any shew of Compliance therewith, or with its Subjects, Vassals, Infidels, or other Enemies whatever, of our most August Lord, his Imperial Majesty, and of his lawful Successors, the Hereditary Kings of Hungary, under the guilt of High Treason if it be proved against any one, the Punishment thereof to be inflicted according to the Laws of Transylvania. On the contrary we do sincerely and heartily accept, for our selves and for all the Posterity of the famous Kingdom of Transylvania, the Paternal Protection of his foresaid Imperial Majesty (as hath been already declared:) And that we may give some actual Testimony of our Submission and Obedience, (by virtue of the foresaid full Power and Confirmatory Acts and Conclusions of the Prince and States) we are contented to receive the Imperial Garisons into the Fortresses of Kovar, Hufs, Georgin, and Hermanstadt, (besides those other places already Garisoned by his Imperial Majesty, our most Gracious Lord.) And moreover, when his Imperial Majesty shall command, we are ready to take up Arms either against the common Enemy of Christians, the Turk, or any other Enemy whatsoever; humbly supplicating his Invincible Imperial Majesty, our most Gracious Lord, out of his innate Clemency, to confirm to us and our Posterity all our Liberties and Privileges, and in particular to protect us in the free Exercise of the Religions hitherto profess'd amongst us. And we no ways doubt, but his Excellency Count Caraffa will effectually promote and further the Humble Addresses of the foresaid Prince and of his whole Kingdom, with his Imperial Majesty, our most Gracious Lord; Which Favour as we confidently promise our selves from his Excellencies Kindness, and try'd Affection to us, so we desire and hope, that his Excellency, the foresaid General, will no way disturb us in our Liberties and Privileges. Provided nevertheless that our Treaty made with the most Serene Duke of Lorrain, do remain in full force. In Witness whereof, and that the Knowledge of this our Declaration and Renunciation of the Protection of the Turks may descend to Posterity, we have set the usual Seals of the Three Nations of the Kingdom of Transylvania to these Presents. Given at Hermanstad the 9th Day of May, 1688.

This Prince died in the year 1690, leaving behind him a Son of Thirteen Years of Age.

2. MOLDAVIA.

MOLDAVIA is bounded on the East with the Euxine Sea, on the West with Transylvania, on the North with the River Niester, the Tyras of Ptolomy and the Ancients, by which it is parted from Podolia, a Province of Poland, and on the South with Valachia. This Country, by a mistake common to all the Maps, is misplaced, and set where Valachia should stand: Its true bounds are to the East, Valachia, to the North Transylvania, to the West the Upper Hungary, and to the South the Ister or Danube, parting it from Servia. Baudrand who quotes one John Lucius, Count de Morstein,

stein, Great Treasurer of *Poland*, and a Person of great Learning.

It is so called, as some say, *quasi Moavia*, from its nearness to the Fens of *Moavia*; or rather from the *Huns* and other People of those Fens who possessed the same. Others conceive that it was first called *Maur-davia*, i. e. *Nigrorum Davorum Regio*, the Country of the Black *Davia* (for by the name of *Davi* were the *Dacians* called, as we find in *Strabo* and some others) so named from their Complexion, or the colour of their Caps and other Garments; as *Nigra Russia*, a near neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occasion. But the more probable Opinion (as I take it) is, that it took this name from the River *Moldavia*, which runneth through it; as the *Moldavians* had the name from the River *Morava*. The Nature and Religion of the People we shall find in *Wallachia*, whereof anciently it was reckoned for a part.

The Country is very fruitful in Corn, Wine, Grass, and Wood; but more used for Pasturage than Tillage, by reason of the great want of People to manure the Land: By means whereof it affordeth great plenty of Beef and Mutton, whereby they supply some parts of *Poland*, and the populous City of *Constantinople*. And these they issue out in so great a Number, that the tenth Penny, exacted by the Prince or Vaivod in the way of Custom amounteth to 150000 Crowns *per Annum*: and yet the Clergy and the Gentry are discharged of this Impost. But the main Trade of this Country is not driven by the Natives; the Port Towns being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Ragusan* Merchants who forestal the Markets, and barter all their Corn and Wine into *Russia* and *Poland*; their Skins, Wax, Honey, powdered Beef, Pulse and Butter into *Constantinople*: It being credibly reported, that from the Ports of this Country no fewer than 500 Ships laden with Corn, Victuals, and other Provisions necessary to the Life of Man, are yearly sent unto that City.

The Country is in a manner round, the Diameter each way being near upon 300 *English* Miles; but so ill inhabited, by reason of the neighbourhood of the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Polonian Cossacks*, that certain *English* Gentlemen having in the year 1609 travelled at least 240 miles in the Country, could meet with in all the way but nine Towns and Villages; and for an hundred miles together the Grass so high, that it rotted on the ground for want of Cattle to eat it, and of Men to order it. So that we are not to expect in it many eminent Cities or Towns of note; though it afford two Archbishops, and two Bishops Sees, Followers (as all the rest of the People are) of the Traditions and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

The principal of those which be, are, 1. *Occazoma*, *Zucconia*, or *Socavia*, the Vaivod's Seat. 2. *Fuociania*. 3. *Fazeling*, of which little memorable. 4. *Kotlin*, a place of great strength, on the Borders of *Poland*; by some called *Cochina*; the ordinary Magazine of the Country. Famous for a great defeat of the *Turks* by the *Poles* in the year 1621: And since for a more auspicious Victory obtain'd in the same place by *John Sobiesky*, the late King of *Poland*, in the year 1673, against the *Turks*, who lay strongly Encamped here with an Army of 50000 Men, but was beaten, and their Camp stormed and taken the 9th of *October*, with the slaughter and taking of 31500 of them. 5. *Tassy*, commonly called *Tas*, the chief Town for Wealth and Trade in all this Province. This Town was taken by the late King of *Poland* in the year 1686, but being burnt soon after in his absence, he was forced upon his Return to withdraw his Forces, and leave it to the Natives to repair it if they thought fit. 6. *Bender*, a strong Town on the *Euxine* Sea. 7. *Polada*, near the *Danow*. 8. *Bialigrod*, situate on or near the River *Tyras*, now called *Neister*; a strong Town against the *Tartars* and *Polonians*. 9. *Kilia*, anciently called *Achilleia*, situate on the Shore of the *Euxine* Sea, for the most part compassed round

with the Waters of it, and therefore said by *Ptolemy* to be an Island. 10. *Ac-German*, of old called *Alprocastron*, and *Moncastrum*, a very strong Town on the same Coast also. Both taken by *Bajazet*, the second Emperor of the *Turks*, Anno 1485. But these three Towns are not so properly in *Moldavia*, at least not in *Moldavia* properly so called, as in a little Province called *Bessarabia*, lying on the *Euxine*, formerly counted part thereof, till conquer'd by the *Turks*, in the year aforesaid, it became a Member of that Empire. A Tract inhabited by the *Bessi* in the times of *Ptolemy*, who being driven out of their Country by the *Bulgarians*, settled themselves (as some say) in that part of *Sclavonia*, which is now called *Bosnia*.

The whole Country, following the Fortune of *Transylvania* and the rest of *Dacia*, till the coming of the *Slaves* and *Rosses*, was for a while accounted part of the *Russian* Empire, till the dismembring of that Empire by the *Tartars*; after which it was sometime Homager to the *Polanders*, sometime to the *Hungarians*, according as the Vaivods or Princes of it could find best Conditions. By *Homage* the Great it was made Tributary to the *Turks*; but the Tribute at the first was very light and easie, not above 2000 Crowns *per Annum*: that mighty Emperor, who aimed at more profitable Conquests, being loth to spend his Forces on so poor a Purchase as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Bajazet* his Son finding how fit it lay for the more absolute Command of the *Euxine* Sea, took in that part hereof which is called *Bessarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkish* Province, Anno 1485: as before was said; imposing on the rest an increase of the former Tribute; and so left it unto the disposal of its natural Princes. After which time the Vaivods fearing to be made Vassals to the *Turks*, did many times rise in Arms against them, aided therein sometimes by the *Hungarians*, and sometimes by the *Polander*; which last pretended to the Sovereignty and Chiefage of it. *Bogdanus*, Vaivod hereof in the time of *Selimus* the second, uniting himself more closely to the *Polonians*, became thereby suspected by the *Turkish* Tyrant; who with a great power chased him out of his Country, and gave the same unto one *John*, a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the most part in the *Turkish* Court (where he renounced his Faith, and was Circumcised) under the yearly Tribute of 60000 Crowns. But *John* the new-made Vaivod was no sooner settled, but he returned again to his first Religion, and for that cause grew less affected by the *Turks*. Which being observed by the then Vaivod of *Wallachia*, he practised to obtain that Dignity for his Brother *Peter*; offering to double the said Tribute, and to assist in Subjugation of the Country. The *Turk*, accepting of these Offers, compounds an Army of 70000 *Wallachians*, 30000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fell into *Moldavia*; and were so gallantly received by the noble Vaivod, that few of them escaped the Slaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old Friend *Czarnievice*, and, against Faith given, barbarously Murthered by the *Turkish* *Bassa*; *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, and was united to that Empire, Anno 1574: the Vaivods from that time forwards being nominated by the *Turkish* Emperors, and governing as Substitutes and Lieutenants for and under them. And though *Auron*, one of the succeeding Vaivods, did shake off his Yoke, and confederated himself with *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania*, and *Michael* Vaivod of *Wallachia*, for Defence of themselves and their Estates against that Enemy: yet being afterwards supplanted by *Rafwan*, one of his own ambitious Subjects, and that confederacy disjointed, it became subject first unto the *Polonians*, by the power and practice of *Zomoisky*, Chancellor of *Poland*; and then unto *Rodolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*; and finally unto the *Turk*, as before it was in the Year 1620. And though the *Polanders* have since made use of some Opportunities in imposing Vaivods on this Country, in

delpito

despite of the Turks: yet was it commonly to their own Loss, little or no Benefit to the *Moldavians*, and in the end drew the whole Power of the Turks upon themselves in the Reign of *Osman*; they never since intermeddling in the Affairs of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the Turks disposing; who receive hence some yearly Tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire Possession of it, so long since aimed at by those Tyrants.

3. VALACHIA.

VALACHIA is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, and a branch of the *Ister*, or *Danubius*, bending towards the North; on the West with *Rascia*, on the North with *Transylvania* and some part of *Moldavia*, and on the South with the *Danubius* wholly, by which it is parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. First call'd *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus* a noble *Roman*, who, on the Conquest hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought hither an *Italian* Colony; afterwards by corruption *Vlachia*, and at last *Valachia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Vlachia* was first of more large extent than it is at present, comprehending all *Moldavia* also: divided in those times by a Ridge of Mountains into *Cisalpina*, and *Transalpina*; the name of *Moldavia* being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and specially so called) unto the other. The People of both, in token of their first Extraction, speak a corrupt *Latin* or *Italian* Language; but in Matters of Religion follow the Dictates of the *Greek* Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, under whom all Ecclesiastical Affairs are governed by one Archbishop, and two Bishops. In other things they partake generally of the *Judenels* and Barbarity of those Nations, which have since subdued them; being a rough-hewn People, hardly civilized, ignorant for the most part of Letters and all Liberal Sciences, not weaned perfectly (in so long time of their profession of Christianity) from the Superstitions of the Gentiles, swearing by *Jupiter* and *Venus*, marrying and unmarried at their pleasures, much given to Magical Charms and Incantations, and burying with their Dead both Cloths and Victuals, for their Relief in that long Journey to the other World.

It is in length 500, in breadth 120 Miles. The Country is for the most part plain and very fertile, affording store of Cattel, a breed of excellent Horses, Iron-Mines, Salt-Pits, and all Provisions necessary to the Life of Man. Some Vines they also have, and not few Mines of Gold and Silver, more than for fear of the Turks, and other ill Neighbours they dare discover. They are begirt about with woody Mountains, which afford them Fewel; and very well watered with the Rivers of, 1. *Pruth*, called anciently *Hierasius*. 2. *Sterius*. 3. *Fulmin*. 4. *Teltz*. 5. *Aluta*, all of them falling into, 6. the *Danow*, which in this Province, at the Influx of *Fulmina*, takes the name of *Ister*. Yet it is not (at the present) very populous, the Spaciousness and Fertility hereof considered, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Polonian Cossacks*: their late long Wars against those Nations, and the *Dutch* having much decreased their former numbers, with which they so abounded in the times foregoing, that the Vaivod of this Country, in the year 1473, was able upon little warning to bring 70000 Men into the Field for present Service.

Places of most note herein are, 1. *Galacz*, on the Influx of the River *Pruth*, or *Hierasius*, into the *Danubius*; the Water of which River is so unwholsom, that it causeth the Body to swell. 2. *Trescortum*, nor far from which they dig a Bituminous Earth, so refined and pure, that usually they make Candles of it instead of Wax. 3. *Prailaba*, by some called *Brailovia*, the Town of most Trade in all this Country, situate on the *Danow*, and defended with a very strong Castle, fortified by Art and

Nature, and furnished with a strong Garrison of Turks, as the Key of this Province, opening the Door unto the rest. The Town was most cruelly destroyed and razed to the Ground, with an incredible slaughter of the Inhabitants of all Sexes and Ages, for the space of four days together, by *John* the Vaivod of *Moldavia*, spoken of before, at his first revolting from the Turks: but the Castle, in regard of the great strength of it, was scarce attempted by him. 4. *Tina*, a Fortrels of great strength, but in the hands of the Turks also. 5. *Zorzi*, corruptly for *San-Georgio*, seated on the *Danow*, with an Arm whereof the Castle of it is encompassed, garrisoned by the Turks, and by them held to be so strong and so safe a place, that at the taking of it by *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, Anno 1596, there were found in it Thirty-nine great Pieces of Ordnance, with such store of Arms and Ammunition as might well have served for a whole Kingdom. 6. *Tergovista*, or *Tercu*, sometimes the chief City of the Province, and the ordinary Residence of the Vaivod, till the taking of it by the Turks: once beautified with a fair and famous Monastery, by the Turks converted into a Fortrels; environed with deep Trenches, strong Bulwarks upon every quarter, and great store of Ordnance; but many times lost and got again, according to the changes and chance of War. 7. *Bucarest*, about a days Journey from *Tergovista*, seated on the *Danow*, remarkable for two Bridges built near unto it. The one was of Boats, (the laying whereof took up no less then a whole months time) for the transporting of the Army of *Sultan Bissa* against *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* before mentioned, and broken down by the said *Bissa* in his flight, having been worsted in all places by the *Transylvanians*. The other was the work of the Emperor *Trajan*, in his War against *Decabalus* King of *Dacia*, built all of Stone, and laid on Piles and Arches of a wonderful greatness; 24 Piles or Pillars whereof are yet remaining, to the great admiration of all beholders. 8. *Cebium*, of old called *Lycostomos*, in vain besieged by the Forces of *Mahomet* the Great, coming in person to subdue this petty Province. 9. *Zarnizegibusta*, the Seat Royal of *Decabalus* King of *Dacia*, taken and destroyed by *Trajan* in his War against him; who, causing it to be repaired and more beautified than formerly, gave it the Privileges of *Rome*, and the name of *Ulpia Trajana*, which it retained as long as *Dacia* was a Province of the *Roman* Empire; now a small Village called *Verzet*. Some stones have been digged up thereabouts with this Inscription, COLONIA. ULP. TRAJANA. AUG. DACIÆ. ZARMIS. which clearly shew as well the Dignity and esteem as the Antiquity of the place, before *Trajan's* times.

This Province, as the rest of *Dacia* on that side of the *Danow*, after the coming in of the *Slaves* and *Rosses* was under Princes of their own, whom they called (as those of *Transylvania* and *Moldavia* did) by the name of *Vaivods*. Protected by the *Hungarian* Kings, they lived long in Peace; till, sensible of the approaching Danger which the Conquest of most part of *Servia* and *Bulgaria* by the *Turks* was like to bring them, the Vaivod of it in the time of *Bajazet* the first, passed over the *Danow* with his Forces, and having done great Spoil to the *Turkish* Territories, returned again unto his Country. Rather provoked than weakened, with which Invasion, *Bajazet* comes into *Valachia*, overcomes the Vaivod in a pitched Field, compelling him to sue for Peace, and to pay him Tribute. But *Bajazet* being not long after taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and the Succession controverted amongst his Sons, the imposed Tribute was withheld, till *Mahamet*, the fifth King of the *Turks*, having settled the Affairs of that rotering State, Anno 1417, enforced them to a new Composition, and the payment of their former Reckonings. The fortunate Successes of *Huniades* in several Battles, induced them once more to change their Masters, and to put themselves under the Protection of the *Hungarians*, as they

they had done formerly : but they paid dear for it, their Country being made the Thorough-fare of the *Turkish* Forces in their Attempts upon that Kingdom. But the *Hungarians* being vanquished at the Battle of *Cassova* by *Amurath* the second, the accustomed Tribute was brought in, and the *Turks* satisfied for the present, being then hardly put to it by the famous *Scanderbeg*. Not long after, in the year 1462. *Mahomet*, the Great, undertook the Conquest of this Country, upon advertisement that *Wladus* the then Vaivod of it, intended to join with the *Hungarians* in some War against him : and finding how unprofitable he had spent his Forces in fighting against Woods, Mountains, and a wasted Country, he set up *Dracula*, the younger Brother of *Wladus*, to claim the Government ; who making a party amongst the people, and having the *Turk* for his assistance and support, possessed himself of the Estate, to be holden of him as a Vassal to the *Turkish* Empire. And it continued in this state, the Vaivods being after this at the *Turks* appointment and paying all Exactions imposed upon them, till the Revolt of *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, Anno 1595, at what time *Michael*, the then Vaivod hereof, taking that opportunity to shake off this Yoke, confederated with him, and the *Moldavian* for their common Safety. And though he held out longer against *Turk* and *German* than either of the other did, discomfited the *Turks* by his own proper Forces at the Battle of *Nicopolis*, vanquished the *Transylvanians*, and added that Province for a while unto the Estate : yet, being at last outed of his Country by the *Polanders*, and another put into his place, he was shamefully slain in his own Tent, by the privity and consent of *Basta*, Lieutenant of *Rodolphus*, Emperor and King of *Hungary*. After whose death the Country, miserably distracted betwixt two Vaivods, the one placed by the Emperor *Rodolph*, and the other by *Mahomet* the Grand Seignior, endured all the Spoil and Wreck which so calamitous a Competition could bring upon it : till in the end, the fortune of the *Turks* prevailing, the *Valachians* were constrained to submit unto their disposal, and receive their Vaivods from that Court, as they had done formerly ; performing their accustomed Duties, and paying such yearly Tribute as is laid upon them, which notwithstanding, partly by their own natural Unquietness, and partly by the ambition of such persons as contend for that Dignity, they have since been many times embroiled in Wars ; never so quietly composed, but that a new Hope, or the Artifices of the *Turkish* Ministers, starts them into Action. By means whereof, when they have tired and spent themselves in their own Combustions, they may in time be fully conquered, and made the next addition to the *Turkish* Monarchy.

Of what Revenue these Provinces severally were to their natural Lords, and of what severally to the *Turk*, I am not able to determine. But look upon them as conjunct, and as they stood at the time of the Revolt so often mentioned, and they yielded one way with another into the Treasury of the Grand Seignior no less than a million of Ducats yearly. *Knolles* in his *Turkish* History doth report it so. And his Continuator doth affirm that *Moldavia* only, before the said Revolt, did yearly yield unto the *Turk* a whole Tun of Gold, 2000 Horses for service, 10000 great Measures of Wheat, with as much Barley, and a wonderful proportion of Butter, Honey and other Victuals ; adding withal, that the other two Provinces paid as much, or more, for their yearly Tribute. After which rate, the Estimate made by *Knolles* may hold very good. But since the Reduction of these Countries to their former Obedience, the *Turks* having been more moderate in their Exactions than they were before ; for fear of startling them to some new Engagement, whom they have brought to this Obedience and Conformity with such a vast expence both of Blood and Treasure as would have

purchased the best Kingdom of Christendom in the open Market. Inasmuch that the ordinary Tribute of *Moldavia* is now but 40000 Chequins, that of *Valachia* but 24000 of the same Coin ; besides 1000 Horses yearly sent from both. Such Bribes and Presents as are given by the Vaivods hereof, either to get or hold their places, being Merchantable Ware, and wholly at the *Turks* disposing, not being part of this Accompt. *Mahomet* 4. the last Emperor of the *Turks*, in the year 1658, made *George Gisca* Vaivod of *Moldavia* and *Wallachia*, whose Predecessor was one *Matthias*. Of late times the *Turks* have every year increased the Tribute of these Provinces, making it their business to impoverish this People as much as it is possible, that they may keep them low and poor, and so prevent any thoughts of throwing off their yoke. The *Valachians* submitted to the *Turks* in 1612.

4. R A S C I A.

R A S C I A is bounded on the East with *Valachia*, on the West with *Hungary*, on the North with *Transylvania*, and on the South with the River *Danow* ; encompassed on three sides with that River, and another now called *Temes*, by the *Latines* *Samus* ; and on the East divided from *Valachia* by the River *Aluta*. Called *Rascia* from the *Rascians*, a *Sclavonian* People, whom *Ortelius* placeth in this Tract, and from him *Maginus*. But here it is to be observed, that besides this Country, the *Rascians* held some Towns and Territories on the other side of the *Danow*, and amongst other the strong Town of *Chrysonicum*, whereof more anon. This small Province is now confounded with *Moldavia*, and has no Name in our last and best Maps of this Country. The Name is by *Baudrand*, applied to the most Southern Part of *Servia*.

The Country is poor enough, but the people poorer, oppressed in former times by the *Servians*, and of late by the *Turks* ; which makes them valiant and adventurous upon all occasions, as commonly those people are who give themselves the hope of bettering those Fortunes which they cannot make worse. Places of most note here are, 1. *Bodon*, a Town of Trade on the *Danow*, memorable for the Marts or Fairs which are here held annually. 2. *Zarnovia*. 3. *Covin*. 4. *Novebarde*. 5. *Severin*. not far from which, betwixt it and *Bucaresta*, a Town of *Valachia*, are the remainders of *Trajan's* Bridge before mentioned. 6. *Colambes*, and 7. *Columbella* ; of which little memorable.

These *Rascians*, as before is said, were a Tribe of *Slaves*, settled in this Country, at the time of their first spreading in the East, and here continuing ever since in possession of it. Governed at first by their own Princes, whom, by a name borrowed from the *Grecians*, they called their *Despots* ; that being once the Title of the Heir apparent or designed Successor of the Eastern Empire as *Cesar* had been formerly in the Empire of *Rome*, and *Monfieur* in the same sense in the Realm of *France*, to signify the eldest Brother (if Heir apparent to the Crown) of the King in being. But as the following Emperors did affect new Titles, so that of *Despot* fell from one step to another, till given at last unto the Governours of Provinces ; as the *Despot* of *Epirus*, *Peloponnesus*, &c. and in the end was assumed by the several Princes of *Rascia*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*. How this Estate became united unto *Servia*, I am yet to seek : but sure I am, it was united in the person of *George*, *Despot* of *Servia*, and as a part of his Estate surprized by *Amurath* the second, who boasted his Success therein, (in a Speech made unto his Soldiers at the Siege of *Belgrade*) notwithstanding that he had to strive with Hunger, Thirst, Labour, and Desperation. Nor have I found at what time or under whose Conduct they passed over *Danubius*, and there possessed themselves of *Chrysonicum*, and some other Towns and Territories on

that side of the River, which they still retain, either surrounded by the *Servians*, or at least intermingled with them; which make some Writers of opinion that the *Rascians* and the *Servians* are but one and the same People under divers names: to which conjecture their being subject to the same Prince gave some farther ground. But whensoever they passed over, most probable it is, that, proving either troublesome Neighbours, or unwelcome Guests, they gave occasion to the *Despots* of *Servia* to make War upon them, and having vanquished them on that side of the River, to carry the War over unto this; till in the end the whole Country was made subject to them. Added to *Servia*, they fell together with it into the power of the *Turks*, as was laid before. But being more impatient of the Yoke than the *Servians* were, they did the *Turks* much mischief many times, as they came in their way: never so much nor so effectually, as when *Mahomet* the 3. warred against the *Hungarians*; at what time they frequently distressed his Armies, by cutting off his men, and intercepting the provisions of Arms and Victuals intended for the great Army of *Sinan Bassa*. After which at the time when *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* had won so many noble Victories against the *Turks*, 10000 of these *Rascians*, casting off that Yoke, offered themselves unto his service. These are the only memorable Actions which are told us of them; though this last was only the attempt of some private Adventures, the whole Nation still continuing in Obedience, as before they did. But following (as they did) the Fortunes of *Servia*, and having a concernment on that side of the Water, we shall there say something farther of them.

Thus have we seen when and by what means the whole Province of *Old Dacia* became in part subject, and in part tributary to the *Turks*. It is now time to pass over the *Danow*, and look upon the other part of this Province, called *Dacia Nova*, or *New Dacia*; containing after our account four Provinces of the *Roman Empire*, that is to say, both *Mysia's Scythia*, and *Dardania*, besides the two *Dacia's*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripensis*, interjected betwixt the two *Mysia's*, as before is said: all now reduced only unto two of the *Turkish* Provinces, namely the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*.

5. SERVIA.

S*ERVIA* is bounded on the East with *Bulgaria*, on the West with *Bosnia*, and some part of the Lower *Hungary*, on the North with the *Danubius*, by which it is parted from *Rascia* and some part of *Valachia*, on the South with *Albania* and part of *Macedon*. It containeth all *Mysia Superior*, and a great part of *Dardania*; and took this new name from the *Serbi*, or *Sorabi*, a *Slavonian* People, of whom more hereafter.

This Country, with the neighbouring *Rascia*, and the modern *Slavonia*, was first converted to the Faith by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, formerly remembered, between the years 860 and 890. of both which there is reserved some special Monuments. For *Methodius* having obtained both of the Patriarch of *Constantinople* and the Pope of *Rome*, that the Nations by them converted might celebrate all Divine Offices in their natural Language, translated the whole Bible into the *Slavonian* Tongue, which still they have among them in high esteem. And *Cyril* is said to have devised the *Servian* Character, not used in this Country only, (though here originally) but also in *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, *Bosnia*, *Moldavia*, and most parts of *Russia*; which Character, from this *Cyril*, (or *Chiruil*, as they pronounce it) is still called *Chirilize*.

The Country was very rich and fruitful before the Conquest of it by the *Turks*, well stored with Mines of Gold and Silver, especially about *Zerbenick*, a strong

Town hereof. The People are rude and gross, and much given to Wine; false of their Promises, and that upon slight occasions, so that there is but little trust to be laid upon them.

Chief Rivers of this Country, are, 1. *Colubra*, and 2. *Lim*, falling into the *Savus*, 3. *Ibar*, falling into the 4. *Morava*: as that into the *Danow* at *Chrysonicum*, or *Chrysoveetia*, a strong Town of the *Rascians*. Principal Towns hereof, 1. *Nissa*, the *Nessum*, as I take it of *Ptolomy*, by whom it is said to be a City of the *Dardanians*; now the Metropolis of this Country, and the Key thereof: besieged and taken by *Amurath*, the first King of the *Turks*, Anno 1367. The City of *Nissa*, has been heretofore an important Fortrefs, but the *Turks* after they were possessed of *Belgrade* slighted it, but after *Belgrade* was retaken by the Christians in the year 1688. They repaired it and secured it with a great Dike and Palisadoes, making it their Frontier and Magazine against the *Germans*; Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* in the year 1689, being sent against them by the Emperor, defeated their Forces upon the *Morava* the 29th of *August*, when he slew 20000 *Turks*, and took all their Canon and Baggage. And pursuing his blow marched to *Nissa*, near which he found the *Turks* reinforced and strongly intrenched on an Advantageous ground; whereupon he attack'd them the second time in their Camp, the 24th of *September*, and forcing his way slew 10000 of them, and had slain many more, if the Night had not favoured them in their Flight. After this second Victory, he entered *Nissa* without any opposition, which the *Germans* found to be a very considerable Town for the number of its Inhabitants, the strength of its situation, the Fertility of the neighbouring Country, and the Security it may give to their former Conquests, and thereupon the General forthwith ordered it to be Fortified. They found in this City 5 Mosques, and a great number of private Houses. 2. *Vidina* by the *Turks* called *Kiratow*, taken by *Ferisbeg*, in the beginning of *Bajazet* the first, and ever since the Seat of a *Turkish Sanzack* under the *Beglerbeg* or *Bassa* of *Temeswar*. 3. *Cratova*, and 4. *Zerbenic*, rich in Silver Mines; a great temptation to the *Turks* to invade this Country. 5. *Simandria*, or *Senderovia*, by some called *Spenderobe*, by the *Hungarian* *Zenderin*, by the *Turks* *Semender*; situate on the *Danow* not far from *Belgrade*, and taken by *Amurath* the II. Anno 1438. since governed by a *Turkish Sanzack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. 6. *Novograd*, in the Borders hereof, fortified with an impregnable Castle. 7. *Stoniburg*, (in *Latine Stonibrigadum*) the ordinary Seat of the *Despots*. 8. *Prisden*, said by *Mercator* to be the Birth-place of the Emperor *Justinian*; most like to be *Taurisum*, a City of the *Dardanians*, mentioned by *Procopius*, who maketh it the Birth-place of that Emperor, by whom it was repaired and fortified with four great Turrets, thence called *Tetrapyrgon*. But others (more probably) make him to be born at *Lochrido*, a Town of *Bulgaria*; of which more hereafter. 9. *Scopi*, by *Ptolomy* called *Scupi*. And 10. *Ulpianum*, first built by *Trajan*, whose forename was *Ulpus*; afterwards re-edified by the said *Justinian*, and called *Secunda Justiniana*, (*Justiniana Prima*, being in *Bulgaria*;) now a poor Village called *Fyretia*, as *Lazius*, or *Czanadre*, as *Marius Niger* is of opinion. 11. *Rhatiara Mysorum*, then the chief City of the *Mæsians*, of which now no Ruines are remaining. 12. *Raveniczen*, the *Vendenis* of *Ptolomy*, but not else observable.

Besides these Towns and many other of less note which properly belong to this Province of *Servia*, the *Rascians* also hold some Towns on this side of *Danubius*, the chief whereof is *Chrysonicum*, or *Chrysoveetia*, an old Town, almost wholly ruined, till repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, Anno 1449. who marking the convenient situation of it on the Banks of *Danubius*, near to the Fall or influx of the River *Morava*, and how commodiously it stood both to command and to annoy the rest

rest of this Country, and for transporting of their Forces to the other side of that great River, made it their first work to possess themselves of it, and have held it ever since with a very strong Garrison. Such other Towns as the *Rascians* have on this side of the River, or of lesser note, are looked on by our Author, but as Towns of *Servia*, (by the Despots whereof they were long since conquered) where before we had them.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, such as are most considerable in the story of it, were the *Bastarnæ*, the *Dardani*, and the *Mæsi*: the *Tricornesii* and *Picenses*, spoken of by *Protony*, being either Branches of the *Mæsi*, or else an obscure People not worth the looking after. Of these the *Dardanians* were most ancient inhabiting near Mount *Hæmus*, on the Borders of *Macedon*, a barbarous People, and perpetual Enemies of that Crown, most mischievous in their Attempts and Designs against it in the declining state thereof, making great and frequent inroads into that wealthy Country, with the spoils whereof they enriched themselves. Inasmuch that *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, finding no other likely means to be rid of that Trouble, negotiated with the *Bastarnæ*, a strong and hardy Nation that dwelt beyond the *Danubius*, to abandon their own dwellings, and come to him with their Wives and Children; promising to assist them in rooting out the *Dardanians*, and give them possession of their Country. But *Philip* dying as the *Bastarnæ* were in their March through *Thrace*, and no care taken by his Son to pursue the Business, they returned all home again, except 30000, which pierced into *Dardania*, and made their own Fortunes as they could. This practice, as it gave matter of Quarrel to the *Romans* against the *Macedonian*; so it occasioned *Perseus*, the Son of *Philip*, to make use of these *Bastarnæ* against the *Romans*, at whose request 10000 Horse and as many foot passed over the *Danow*, under the Conduct of *Claudius*, a King amongst them. But finding that *Perseus* was too strait-lac'd to part with Money for their pay, they returned again, foraging the Country as they passed. But whether they passed over that River, or mingled themselves with the rest of their Nation, who upon *Philip's* invitation had before come over, that I do not find. Howsoever, coming by this means acquainted with the sweets of this Country, divers of them came over hither in the following times, incorporating with the *Dardanians*, or bordering near them; inasmuch as *Tacitus* for the most part joins them both together, either as the same, or neighbouring Nations, first vanquished and added to the *Roman Empire* by *C. Curio Scribonius*, immediately upon the end of the Civil Wars raised by *Spartacus* and the Fencers, or *Gladiatores*; the *Myrians*, or the *Mæsi*, being broken at the same time also, Anno U. C. 681. As for the *Mæsi*, being the last and greatest of these Nations, they were most probably a Colony of the *Myrians* of the lesser *Asia*, anciently called *Myri*, and the Country *Myria*, as those *Asians* were, and as those *Europeans* are by the *Greek Writers* generally, and by *Florus* and some others amongst the *Latines*; though after, for distinction sake, *Tacitus*, *Pliny*, *Virgil*, and generally most Latin Authors, give them the name of *Mæsi*. A fierce and savage People they were held to be, *Barbari Barbarorum*, as my Author calleth them, more barbarous than commonly the *Barbarians* were: but for all that, subdued by *M. Licinius Crassus* in the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who overcame them in two Battles, and after vanquished the *Bastarnæ*, and their King *Deldo*, whom he killed in fight; the Country being reckoned after that as a *Roman Province*. It continued in this Estate till the Fall of the Eastern Empire, when it was subjected by the *Sclavi* or *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; and in the division of the Spoil fell unto the *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* People, contractedly called *Sorbi*; and at last *Serbi*, *Servii*, and the Country *Servia*. It was reduced again to the Obedience of the Eastern Emperors by *Basilus Porphyrogenitus*, Anno Ch. 1000. or thereabouts; but

more absolutely conquered by *John* and *Manuel Comnenus*, two of his Successors; but so as they were suffered to live under their own Princes, whom they called *Despots*, Homagers to the Empire, and depending on it. Enriched with the Conquest and addition of *Rascia*, (the certain time whereof I have no where found) they were first set on by the *Turks* in the time of *Lazarus* the *Despot*, from whom *Amurath* the first took the Town of *Nissa*, being the chief of all this Country; provoked thereto by the great Forces which the *Servian* and *Bulgarian* Despots had raised against him for the Siege of *Adrianople*. And though *Lazarus*, terrified with this Loss, made his Peace with *Amurath*: yet after he brake out again into open War, in which he was overcome and slain in the Plains of *Cassova*, whereof more anon. To *Lazarus* succeeded *Stephen*, who quietly enjoyed his Dominions here; the *Turks* being in the mean time embroiled in War amongst themselves by the Sons of *Bajazet*. But that difference being once composed, and *Mahomet* absolutely settled on his Father's Throne; the *Turks* began again to pursue this Quarrel, which *George* the Son of *Stephen* compounded with *Amurath* the 2d. Son of *Mahomet*, paying the *Turk* a yearly Tribute, and giving him his Daughter *Mary* for a Wife or Concubine. But this Alliance did not so well unite their affections, (though *George* did many ill Offices in regard thereof to his Christian Neighbours) nor so well settled his Estate, but that *Amurath* in fine dispossessed him first of *Rascia*, and afterwards of *Servia* also, for letting *Hunades* escape, whom he had in his power. And though *Amurath* was necessitated to restore *Servia* again, upon the Peace made with *Vladislaus* the King of *Hungary*; yet *Mahomet* the Great, on the death of *George* soon possessed himself of it. For *Lazarus*, the youngest of *George's* Sons, having deprived *Stephen* and *George* his elder Brethren (whose eyes *Amurath* had before put out, to make them incapable of the Government) of the Principality, compelled them to seek to *Mahomet* for Aid. But dying whilst these matters were in agitation, his Widow put her self and her three Sons, *Peter*, *John* and *Martin*, under the protection of the *Hungarians*; and by that means, but with much trouble and many difficulties (the blind Brethren still soliciting the *Turks* against her) held the State a while, till the people, finding no assurance in that kind of Government, and weary of the daily Harms they received from the *Turks*, yielded themselves absolutely to the power of *Mahomet*, about the year 1460, continuing ever since a Province of the *Turkish Empire*.

The Kings and Despots of *SERVIA*, being not mentioned by our Author, I have taken care to supply that defect out of *Du Fresne* his *Historia Bizantina*.

- 599
1. The first Prince of this Nation on this side the *Danube*, obtained this Province about the 18th year of the Reign of *Mauritius*, Anno Christi, 599. His name is not mentioned by my Author, but it seems to have been *Chaganus*.
 2. *Boisethlauns*, or *Boleslans*.
 3. *Rodoslavus*.
 4. *Profogoes*.
 5. *Blasphemirus*. Till this Prince's time there was a firm Peace between the *Bulgarians* and the *Servians*; but in his Reign *Preslamus* King of *Bulgaria*, attempted to conquer *Servia*; but miscarried and lost his Army. *Preslamus* lived in the time of *Basilus Macedo*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, about the year of Christ, 870.
 6. *Munimirus*, *Siroimirus* and *Goinicus*, three Sons of *Blasphemirus*, divided *Servia* between them; they were successful whilst they joyned their Arms against the *Bulgarians*; but entering

tering into a Civil War at home, the eldest expelled the 2 younger Brothers.

7. *Priestlaus*, the eldest Son of *Muntimirus*.
8. *Petrus* or *Petriflaus*, Son of *Goinicus* invading *Priestlaus*, with the assistance of the *Croatians*, obtained the Principality of *Servia*, and reigned 20 years in the times of *Leo Philosophus*, and then was taken Prisoner by Treachery, by *Paulus* 2. Son of *Branus*, 2. Son of *Muntimirus*, and Brother of *Priestlaus*.
9. *Paulus* reigned 3 years.
10. *Zachari* 3. Son of *Priestlaus*, by the assistance of the *Greeks* and *Bulgarians*, recovered his Fathers Kingdom.
11. *Tzeesth Lavus*, the Son of *Clonimirus*, of the Royal Family, set up by the *Bulgarians* for a small time, and then carried away Captive into *Bulgaria*. But afterwards he escaped, and recovered his Country under the Protection, and by the *Greeks*, about the year of Christ 950. This is thus recorded by *Constantinus Porphyrogenitus*, who lived in the same times with this last Prince.

There is another very ancient Catalogue, which agrees not with this, either as to Names or Actions, out of which the following Princes are Collected.

1. *Vladimirus* Son of *Petriflaus*, Son of *Hvalimirus*, who succeeded his Father, and was perfidiously slain by the *Bulgarians*, the 22th of May 1015.
- 1015 2. *Draghimirus*, Uncle of *Vladimirus*, attempted to recover his Right from the *Bulgarians*, but miscarried, and was slain.
- 1036 3. *Dobroslaus*, born after his Fathers Death, recovered the Kingdom from the *Bulgarians*. In his time about the year 1036, *Michael Paphlago* Emperor of *Constantinople*, brought *Servia* again under that Empire, the Kingdom being much weakened by the *Bulgarian* Wars. He escaped, and regained his Country, and defeated the *Greeks*, when ever they invaded it.
- 1050 4. *Michael* 3. Son of *Dobroslaus*, possessed intirely all his Fathers Kingdom, and in the year 1050, entered into a League with *Michael Monapachius* Emperor of *Constantinople*. He reigned 30 years.
- 1073 5. *Rodostaus* brother of *Michael*, succeeded him, though he had a numerous Posterity of his own. *Codinus*, Son of *Michael*, and called *Constantinus*, being elected King of *Bulgaria*, in the life of his Father, succeeded also his Uncle in the Kingdom of *Servia*, or rather his Father, and was living in the year 1100. *Michael* his Son succeeded him, but was soon deposed, and
6. *Dobroslaus* 2. Son of *Rodostaus*, was elected King by the People. *Vladimirus* 2. Son of *Vladimirus* 1. and Grand-child of *Michael*.
- 1115 7. *Georgius*, Son of *Bodinus*, he was driven into exile 7 years, and *Gubressa* reigned in his stead, but he recovered the Kingdom, but was at last taken Prisoner by *Alexius* Emperor of *Constantinople*.
8. *Draghina*, a Prince of great vertue and goodness, elected King, and reigned eleven years.
9. *Rodostaus* his Son succeeded him, but with the Title only of Count of *Servia*, and not King.
10. *Primislaus*, 11. *Beluses*, 12. *Dessa*, three brothers, the last made King by *Emanuel* Emperor of *Constantinople*. In the year 1173, he was by the Emperors sent Prisoner to *Constantinople*, where he died.

- 1173 13. *Neeman*, or *Nemagnam*, recovered *Servia*, with the assistance of the *Croats*. (He is called *Stephen Necman*) and defended himself very successfully against *Rodostaus*, who was set up by the *Greeks* against *Dessa*, till *Emanuel* Emperor of *Greece*, assisted his Rival, but then being forced to submit, he came into the Emperors Camp as a supplicant, and promised Allegiance for the future, but failed in the performance, upon the recess of the *Greek* Forces. This expedition was in the year 1177. After this he reigned without any great misfortune.
14. *Thimoilus*, Son of *Necman*, one year. *Simcon*, Brother of *Thimoilus*, called *Stephen* by the *Greek* Writers, who first called himself King of *Rascia*, Governed *Servia*, *Dalmatia*, *Dio-clia*, *Trebina* and *Zachlunia*; he Married *Eudocia*, Neice of *Isaac Angelo* Emperor of *Greece*; who was given him by *Isaac*, whilest he was Emperor, and delivering up his Throne to his Son, after a short Reign, he retired into a Monastery.
15. *Stephen* Son of *Simcon*, a Wise Prince, he made Peace with the *Greeks* and *Bulgarians*, and reigned 28 years.
- 1201 16. *Vulcus*, *Vulcanus* brother of *Stephen*, usurped upon him, and drove him out by the assistance of the *Hungarians*, by the Procurement of Pope Innocent the 3. It is probable, *Stephen* however recovered the Kingdom, and reigned till the year 1220.
17. *Neeman* 2. Son of *Stephen*, succeeded his Father, or Uncle, he was a Religious, Wise and Valiant Prince, Conquered part of *Bulgaria*, and reigned 22 years, he is called *Stephen* also.
18. *Stephen*, Son of *Neeman* 2. called also *Vresis*, *Vrosus*, or *Vrosius*.
19. *Stephen* 2. called *Dragutinus*, slew his Father and reigned in his stead, but repenting of it, he resigned the Kingdom to his Brother.
- 1286 20. *Vrosius Sanctus* brother of *Stephen*, called by the *Sclavonians*, *Asilutinus*, i. e. the Meek, succeeded him; being the elder brother. He was in the Throne about the year 1308, besieged *Ragusa* in 1318, in 1320 he was beaten by the *Hungarians*, and forced to become an Homager of that Crown.
- 1321 21. *Vladislaus*, Son of *Stephen*, and Nephew of *Vrosius*, was made King of *Servia* in 1321, or, as others in 1323, he neither reigned long, nor quietly.
- 1322 22. *Stephen* 3. Bastard Son of *Vrosius*, recovered *Servia*, and took *Vladislaus*, and kept him in Prison till he died.
- 1333 23. *Stephen* 4. *Duscianus* Son of the former, a Magnificent and Valiant Prince, who defended his Country against the *Greeks*, *Hungarians* and *Turks*, which last began first in his Reign to invade *Servia*; and were beaten by him.
- 1356 24. *Vrosius* 2. Son of *Stephen Duscianus* and of *Helen* Daughter of the King of *Bulgaria*. This was the last of the Kings of *Servia*, and was slain in the year 1368. after he had been taken Prisoner, and deposed.
- 1368 25. *Vcascius Ceonichius*, an Usurper upon *Vrosius*, his Master, but a Person of great Valour and Worth, he beat *Solyman* the first, and slew 30 Thousand of his Men, but in his return was overthrown and slain by one of his own Servants, in the year 1371.

Thus ended the ancient Kingdom of *Servia*, when it had continued 772 years, and possibly much longer; for
Dioleatas

Diocletes makes *Sueladus*, Father of *Ostroilus*, the first King of *Servia* contemporary with *Anastafius*, Emperor of *Greece*, who ended his Reign in the year 517; and Brother of *Totilas*, who in the year 541 joined with *Ostroilus* in invading the *Roman Empire*. And when *Totilas* went on for *Italy*, his Brother settled in *Servia*, and became the first King of it. But this doth not seem so well Founded, and therefore omitting all the first Kings, I have begun with *Fladimirus*, which is the first of them that I find named by any *Greek Historian*. After these Kings *Servia* was about 100 years Governed by *Despotes*.

The Despotes of S E R V I A.

1. *Pribafius Chrebelanouchius*, a Nobleman, and Baron of *Rascia*, the Father of *Lazarus* the first *Despote* of *Servia*, lived in the times of *Stephen* King of *Servia*.
2. *Lazarus*, or *Eleazarus Bulcovitzius*, under *Vrosius* the last King; he seized on *Simendria*, and kept it with the Title of *Crates* or *Despote*, which Title was in probability given him by *Vrosius* or the Emperor. He lived in great Friendship with *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, but under King *Stephen* he took and burnt *Belgrade*. Being invaded by *Amurath*, Sultan of the Turks, and not able to resist his numerous Forces, he caused him to be slain in his Tent by Treachery; others say he was overthrown by the Sultan the 15th of June, 1389, and slain in Battel.
- 1389 3. *Stephen Bulcovitzius*, Son of *Lazarus*, succeeded his Father, made peace with *Bajazet* the Son of *Amurath*, and paid him Tribute; and fought under his Banners against *Tamurlane* when he was taken Prisoner. He died of the Gout in the year 1421.
- 1421 4. *Mara*, *Maria*, or *Maro*, usurped under *Stephen*, for some time, the Title of *Despote* of *Servia*, but was at last slain or conquer'd.
5. *George Brankovitzius*, was the Son of *George* the Son of *W'kus*, second Son of *Lazarus*, *Despote* of *Servia*; and after the Death of *Stephen* without Issue, became the 4th or 5th *Despote* of *Servia*: *Amurath* pretending a Right against him, because *Stephen* had no Children; he ended this Quarrel, by giving *Amurath* a part of his Country, and his Sister in Marriage in the year 1435. About the year 1438 *Amurath* however invaded *Servia*, and took *Sendrew*, the Capital City of it, and many of the chiefest Towns of *Servia*, which forced *George* to flee for succour into *Hungary* with *Lazarus* his youngest Son, *George* and *Stephen*, the two eldest, being both in the hands of *Amurath*, who put out their Eyes. He had before given *Belgrade* to the King of *Hungary* for Lands in that Kingdom, which now supported him. *Amurath* proceeds, and in the year 1439 besieged *Belgrade*, where he lost his Army. In 1440 the *Hungarians* under *John Huniades* entered *Servia*, and restored *George*, *Despote*, to his Country. In the year 1444 the War was begun again by the Christians, whence followed the Defeat of *Verna*, the 10th of December, in which *Vaislaus* King of *Hungary* perished, and *Huniades* escaping into *Servia* was detained by *George* till he had restored to him the Towns he had resigned for his former Assistance. The *Despote* had no hand in this War, which drew upon him an *Hungarian* War, in which he was worsted by *Huniades*. The Turks after this, in the year 1449, invaded him again, and *Huniades* joined with

him, and expelled the Turks out of *Servia*. In the year 1456 *Mahomet*, the Successor of *Amurath*, invaded *Servia* again, and laid Siege to *Belgrade*, where he was defeated by *Huniades*. *George* died in the year 1457.

- 1457 6. *George*, the eldest Son, succeeded his Father under the Guardianship of his Mother, he being blind, but he was soon after dispossessed by
- 1458 7. *Lazarus* his Brother, who poisoned his Mother, and by the Assistance of *Sultan Mahomet* usurped his Brother's Throne. This drew upon him a War from *Mahomet*, the terror of which put an end to his Life in the year 1458.
- 1458 8. *John*, Son of *Stephen*, second Son of *George*, succeeded under the Government of his Mother; *John* the Son of *Lazarus* fleeing to the *Hungarians*, and claiming *Servia* also, which became Imbroiled to that height, that in the year 1460 the Inhabitants of *Servia* submitted to *Mahomet* the Great, to preserve themselves from utter Ruin. Under which Empire they lived till the year 1689; in which, by two great Victories obtained by the present Emperor, they seem to be retrived out of that Slavery, which has lain heavy upon them 229 Years.

6. B U L G A R I A.

B U L G A R I A is bounded on the East with the *Euxine Sea*, on the West with *Servia*, on the North with the River *Danow*, which is here in the East part called *Ister*, on the South with *Thrace*, called formerly by the name of *Mysia Inferior*, as lying lower than the other on the course of that River; as *Servia*, lying up the Water, was called *Mysia Superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned of as a part of *Dacia*, and in that notion was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Cesars* in the Empire of *Dioclesian*, born in this Country near the Borders of *Thrace*, not far from the City *Sardica*; who therefore, in the Martyrologies of the middle Times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finally, it took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* People, who in the year 566 possessed themselves of it.

The Country for the most part is full of sharp and rugged Hills, branches of the great Mountain *Hemus*, which divide it from *Thrace*, and spread themselves over all this Province, insomuch that even the Mid-lands of it are rough and stony: and though the lower parts have some Plains and Valleys, yet are they generally full of Woods and Defarts; the most unpleasant and least peopled part of both the *Dacia's*. The Inhabitants hereof, in some conformity to the Country, are patient of all Toil and Labour, and not easily tired; but nothing is more troublesome than their Conversation: more full of Courage than of Valour; their Courage not proceeding by the Rules of Reason, but issuing only out of Brutishness, or a natural Fierceness.

They first received the Christian Faith towards the latter end of *Justinian* the second, who died in the year 713, *Trebellius* being then their Prince; and afterwards by the persuasion of *Leo* the fourth, surnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, about the year 789. But those Conversions being but partial and for private ends, they relapsed shortly after to their former Gentilism; not totally gained unto the Gospel till the Empire of *Michael* and *Theodora*, in the year of Grace 800. Subject since that unto the Jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; but not without great opposition of the Popes of *Rome*, who laid a Claim unto them.

Places of most note in it are, 1. *Axium*, or *Axiopolis*, on the Banks of *Danubius*, which from this Town begins to take the name of *Ister*. It is now called *Colonamich*, of no great fame otherwise, 2. *Dinagaria*, by *Antonine* called

called *Dinigutia*, now *Drimago*, situate also on the *Ister*, opposite to the Influx of *Hierafus*, and the Town of *Gelacz*. 3. *Mesembria*, situate on the *Euxine*, and still retaining the old name; in *Strabo*, by some error of the Transcribers, called *Menebria*. 4. *Marcianopolis*, on the *Ister* or *Danubius* also, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his Sister, whence it had the name: in vain besieged by the *Goths* at their first Irruptions on this Country; and afterwards much mentioned in the Stories of that warlike People, for many Bickerings and some great Battels they had near it with the Emperor *Claudius*, in one of which they were overthrown by him with a mighty Slaughter. 5. *Nicopolis* (by the Turks called *Nigebol*) built by the same *Trajan* on the *Danow*, at the Fall of the River *Jatre*, at his return from the Conquest of *Dacia*, whence was the occasion of the Name; the word *Nicopolis* signifying the City of Victory; sufficiently memorable for the Founder of it, more for the many great Battels fought near unto it; whereof two were principal. The first, that of *Sigismund* the Emperor and King of *Hungary*; besieging it with an Army of 130000 Christians in the time of *Bajazet* the first (whose Father *Amurath* had taken it from the King of *Bulgaria*;) the issue of which Siege was this, that *Bajazet* coming to raise the Siege obtained the Victory, with the loss of 60000 Turks; the Army of the Christians being wholly routed, 20000 slain, all the rest almost taken Prisoners, and the young Emperor forced to fly by Sea to *Thrace*, thence unto *Constantinople*, afterwards to *Rhodes*, and at last, after Eighteen Months absence, to his Realm of *Hungary*. This fatal Victory was obtained in the year 1393. The other (as it were in Revenge of this) was fought betwixt *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, and the Forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the Vaivod got a remarkable Victory, and, as the Fruits thereof, sacked the City it self, carrying thence great Spoil and Booty, and infinite multitudes of People; with some whereof he made up his Army, sending the rest to inhabit and manure the void and desert places of his own Dominions. 6. *Sophia*, called *Tibiscum* in the time of *Ptolomy*, repaired by the Emperor *Justinian*, who gave it this name, from a famous and magnificent Temple founded and dedicated by him unto *S. Sophia*. The ordinary Residence in these late times of a Turkish *Beglerbeg*, who hath the chief Command of *Europe* under the Grand Seignior. Once taken by *Huniades*, and by him, at the command of *Vlad slaus* King of *Hungary*, burnt to the ground; but afterwards repaired, and more strongly Fortified than it had been formerly. *Sophia* is seated in a pleasant Plain or broad Valley between two high Mountains; one of which being always covered with Snow, renders the Air here cool and subtle. It has great plenty of excellent Waters and some hot Baths: This is nine days Journey from *Belgrade*. Sir *Paul Ricaut*. 7. *Varna*, anciently called *Dionysopolis*, situate on the *Euxine* Sea, near the Borders of *Thrace*: remarkable for the great Defeat there given the Christians, the first Flight of *Huniades* from the Face of the Turks, and the Death of *Vladislans* King of *Hungary*, spoken of before, in the year 1444. 8. *Sumium*. 9. *Pezechium*. 10. *Galacrium*. 11. *Galatea*. And, 12. *Macropolis*; all taken by the *Hungarians* in their way to *Varna*, and lost again upon the issue of that Battel. 13. *Silistria*, at this time the chief City hereof, and the ordinary Abode of a Turkish *Bassa*: delivered to *Amurath* the First by *Sasmenos*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vain hope to save thereby the rest of his Country. 14. *Parastlaba*, or *Perstlana*, the ancient Seat of the Kings of *Bulgaria*, till the taking of it by *John Zimisces* Emperor of *Constantinople*, who caused it to be called *Johannopolis*: but it soon lost that new name, and is now an ordinary Village called *Peretalam*. 15. *Ternova*, the usual Seat or Residence of the later Princes of this Country at the Conquest of it by the Turks. 16. *Budina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this Country; but being

taken by *Huniades* in the course of his Victories, it was by him burnt down to the ground, as having been the cause of much War to the Christians there: supposed to be built in or near the place where once stood the old City of *Oescus*, the principal Town of the *Triballi*, call'd therefore *Oescus Triballorum*; though some will have that City to be now called *Elida*. 17. *Vcnuzina*, a Town of great strength, and one of the first pieces taken by the Turks. 18. *Cassova*, fatal to the Christians, who in the Plains hereof had two main Defeats. The first by *Amurath* the first, who here discomfited *Lazarus* the Despot of *Servia*, and the greatest Army that the Christians ever raised against the Turks: *Lazarus* himself being slain in the Fight, and *Amurath* himself shortly after the Battel stabbed in the Belly by one *Miles Cobeletz*, a wounded and half-dead Soldier, as he was taking a view of the dead Bodies which lay there in heaps. The last by *Amurath* the second to the famous *Huniades*, whom he here discomfited after a cruel Fight continuing three days together; in which were slain 17000 Christians, and amongst them the greatest part of the *Hungarian* Nobility; *Huniades* put again to flight, and forced to some Extremities to preserve his Life: the Turks buying this great Victory with the loss of 40000 Men, as themselves confessed. The place in which these Fights were fought, called the *Plains of Cassova*, extendeth Twenty Miles in length, and Five Miles in breadth, incompassed round with pleasant Mountains, in the form of an Amphitheatre; as if it were designed by Nature for a Stage of Action. 19. *Dorostorum*, by some of the Ancients called *Rhodostolon*, the Seat in *Ptolomy's* time of the first Legion called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief Towns which the *Rosses* or *Russians* had in this Country: from whom it was taken by *John Zimisces* the Eastern Emperor, decaying after that time by little and little, and now wholly ruinat. 20. *Achridus*, the Birth-place of *Justinian*; by whom it was beautified and enlarged, and called *Justiniana Prima*: who, raising the Diocese of *Dacia* into a Prefecture, placed here a Primate for the Affairs of the Church, which honour it doth still retain, the Bishop hereof being the Primate of all *Dacia*, and a *Praefectus Pratorio* for Affairs of State. But he being dead, the Town returned to its old name, now called *Ochrida*, contracted by *William* of *Tyre* to *Acre*, by the Turks called *Giustandil*: a distinct Principate of it self in the time of *Amurath* the first, and by him made Tributary at his first War with this Country.

And here it is to be observed, that those parts of this Country which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea had anciently the Name of *Pontus*, as had also some parts of *Asia minor* which bordered on the same Sea also; and that the City of *Tomi*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Tomos*, as *Pliny* calleth it, to which *Ovid* was banished by *Augustus Caesar*, was a City of this *European Pontus*, and not of the *Asian*, as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomi* is by *Ptolomy* placed amongst the Cities of *Moesia Inferior*, and by *Ovid* on the West or left side of the *Euxine*, and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth by these Lines of his.

*Cum Maris Euxini positos ad leva Tomitas
Querere me lesi Principis ira juber.*

This is to say;

*My wronged Prince's Wrath commands me 'bide
At Tomos, on the Euxine's Western side.*

The place is at this day called *Tomiswar*, according to *Caelius Calpagninus*; but others would have it to be the same which is now named *Kiovia*, in the same Tract also; not far from which is said to be a Lake called to this day *Ovidow Jezecoor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cause he was hither banish'd is not yet agreed on. Some say it was for the unlawful Pleasures which he enjoyed with *Julia* the Emperor's Daughter, whom he celebrates in

in his *Amorum*, under the borrowed Name of *Corinna*. Others imagine that he had seen *Augustus* himself unnaturally using the Company of the same *Julia*, his Daughter; for which the offended Prince exiled him: and that he alludeth hereunto in his Book *de Tristibus*, saying, *Cur aliquid vidi? Cur noxia lumina feci?* &c. A Crime of which I dare not think that noble Emperor to be any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatsoever was the true reason of it, that which was openly pretended was the Writing of those lascivious and inflammatory Books *de Arte Amandi*, tending to the Debauchment of Youth and Corruption of Manners, which he in divers places of his Works acknowledgeth for the cause thereof.

But to return unto the business of this Country. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were, towards the East, the *Troglodytae*, dwelling near the Mouth or Fall of the River *Peuce* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the *Peucini* inhabiting on the very Mouth of it; and in a little Island opposite thereunto, called also *Peuce*, now *Pizina*, the *Cribizi*, *Piarenfii* and *Dimensii*, the Western parts being wholly taken up by the *Triballi*, the most potent Nation of them all, who alone had the happiness to vanquish *Phillip* King of the *Macedonians*. For *Phillip* having, or pretending, a Quarrel against *Mateas*, a King of the *Sarmatians*, entred his Country, overthrew him in a set Fight; carried with him great Booties, and among other things 20000 Mares for Breed, which he took in the Battel; it being the Custom of the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians* to use Mares only in their Wars, because their not stopping in the midst of a Race to piss could be no impediment to them in their Flight. In his return homeward these *Triballi* deny him passage through their Country, unless they might partake of the Spoils. This being denied, they fall from words to blows, and next to a pitched Field. In which Fight *Phillip* was wounded with an Arrow, which passing through his Thigh, nailed him to the Saddle; his Horse being galled with the Wound, falling down to the ground. Which the frightened *Macedonians* seeing, and supposing him dead, fled out of the Field, leaving all the Spoils to the *Triballi*, as if they had been sent out only to be their Receivers. So true an Observation is it, that the very *Life-blood of the Army runs chiefly in the Veins of the General* or Supreme Commander. Over-topped after this by the *Mæsi*, or mingled with them, they were first broken by the *Romans* under the Conduct of *C. Curio Scribonius*, spoken of before; the absolute Conquest of them and the rest of the *Mæsians* being reserved for the times of *Augustus Caesar*. By him, or his Successors, the whole Country of the *Mæsians* being cast into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Mæsia Inferior*, that, lying Westward up the Water, being called *Mæsia Superior*, for distinction sake. By the Emperor *Aurelianus*, the *Dacians* being forced from the other side of the *Danow* by the Barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their Fury, were planted here betwixt both the *Mysia's*, divided afterwards into two Provinces taken out of the other, *Mediterranea*, and *Ripensis*; which with the help of the higher *Mysia*, *Dardania*, *Prevalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia*, as before was said. The residue hereof, now passing under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces also; another Province being taken out of the East parts of the lower *Mæsia*, lying betwixt the River *Phanissus* and the most Northern Branch of the *Ister*, which they called *Scythia*, because the *Aroteres*, a *Scythian* People, did once possess it; the *Romans* ambitiously affecting to be thought the Conquerors of that unconquerable Nation. Successively by the *Goths* and *Huns* was this Country taken from the *Romans*; recovered again in or before the time of *Justinian*, who had here his Officers which were subordinate to the Vicar or Lieutenant of *Thrace*, to which Diocese they properly and of right belonged.

But long they held not in that State; the *Slavonians* first and after the *Bulgarians*, being Masters of them. Of the first of these enough hath been said elsewhere. These latter being a *Scythian* People, inhabiting on the Banks of the River *Volga*, were at first called *Volgari*, afterwards *Bulgari*: though some conceive they had the name of *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar*, the chief Town of their Nation: but both uncertain. In the time of the Emperor *Anastasius* they made their first Sally into the Provinces of the Empire, foraging *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, afterward, in the Reign of *Heraclius* they were hired by *Cosrothes* the *Persian* (with many other Barbarous Nations) to besiege *Constantinople*. In the Reign of *Constantine* surnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or casting out the *Slaves*, they planted themselves in these Countries, compelling the Emperor to compound with them for a sum of money, from making any farther Inroad into his Dominions. From this time forward we find their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians*: the first of which after their settling in these parts was *Trebellius*, or *Trebellis*, as some call him, the first Christian Prince of the *Bulgarians*, by whom *Justinian* the second was first restored unto the Empire, of which he had been outed by *Asimerus*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to fly unto *Constantinople*, on some Breach between them. Growing into good terms with the Eastern Emperors, they aided them against the *Saracens*, then besieging the Imperial City; of whom they slew 22000 as they were Foraging the Country: and in the time of *Leo* the Fourth, called *Porphyrogenetus*, they became Homagers to the Empire, by whose perswasion *Telericus*, King of the *Bulgarians*, received the Sacrament of Baptism; and thereupon was honoured by him with a Wife of the Imperial Family, and the honourable Title of a *Patrician*. After this time the Kings hereof had many Privileges indulged them by the *Constantinopolitans*, not usually communicated unto other Princes, viz. their Crown of Gold, their Tiar or Cap of Silk, and their red Shooes, for their Regal (which were also the Imperial) Ornaments. To these Kings also, and to these only, did the *Greek* Emperors allow the Title of *Βασιλεως*, as being merely Imperial. Other Kings they called *Ρέγας*, from the *Latin* word *Reges*. Inasmuch that when *Basilus Macedo* had received Letters from Pope *Adrian* the second, wherein *Lewis* the second, the Western Emperor, was called *Basileus*; he razed out that Imperial Attribute, and dispatch'd an Embassy to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it as his own peculiar Epithet. Some Quarrels after falling out, *Crunus* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicephorus*, Successor to the Empreiss *Irene*, invadeth *Thrace*, and, and taking the City of *Sardica*, killeth that Emperor in his Tent, and worsteth *Michael* (who succeeded) in the open Field; *Mesembria*, a principal City of this Country, being taken and ransacked by him. But *Bogor*, of another temper, not only did receive the Sacrament of Baptism, which many of his Predecessors had intermitted; but brought his Subjects (who rebelled on the Change of Religion, and thereupon were fought with and vanquished by him) to the same Faith also: gratified for that cause by *Theodora* the Empreiss with some large Accession unto his Estate. After long Wars betwixt the *Bulgarians* and the following Emperors, the Fortune of the *Constantinopolitan* did at last prevail: *Samuel* the King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 150000 of his Soldiers taken and deprived of sight, and the Country conquered by *Basilus* the second, surnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, Anno 1015, from that time Tributary to the Empire; to which they did good service in the time of *Constantinus Ducas*, using their help against the *Uzi*, a new swarm of *Scythians*, passing over the *Ister* with an Army of 60000 fighting Men, and wasting *Macedon* and *Greece*. The like did *John*, another of the Kings thereof, aiding the *Greeks* against the *Latines*, whom they overthrew with a great Slaughter, *Baldwin* the Emperor

of the *Latins* in *Constantinople* being taken Prisoner, sent in Bonds to *Ternova*, and there cruelly Murthered, Anno 1206. They were conquered also by *Charles* King of *Hungary* in the year 1310. Nor were they wanting to assist them against the *Turks*, when they grew dangerous to that Empire by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the Recovery whereof they raised a great and puissant Army, unfortunately discomfitted by the Forces of *Amurath* the first, Anno 1369. Provoked with which Invasion, *Amurath*, having settled his Affairs in *Asia*, with an Army of 30000 falleth into *Bulgaria*; takes divers Places of importance, and prevailed so far, that *Sasmenos* the last Prince hereof, wrapping his Winding-sheet about him, to shew that he had deserved Death, prostrates himself most abjectly at the Tyrant's Feet, offering to put *Silistria* (his strongest City) into his Possession. For not performance of which Offer, his Country is again invaded, and most part of it taken from him; he being permitted to enjoy the rest upon hard Conditions, as Vassal and Tributary to the Turk. But *Bajazet*, *Amurath's* Successor, not content herewith, picked a Quarrel with him, and made an absolute Conquest of *Bulgaria*, converting it into a Province of the Turkish Empire, Anno 1396. In which state it hath ever since continued, governed by three Turkish *Sanzacks* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*: the *Sanzacks* residing at *Nicopolis*, *Silistria*, and *Sophia*, in which last the *Beglerbeg* himself doth sometimes resides.

The Catalogue of the Kings of *BULGARIA*,
from *Du Fresne*.

The *Bulgarians* were originally an *Hord* or Family of the *Crim-Tartars*, who lived about the *Dneiper* or *Boristhenes*, and by degrees extending their Conquests to the West, were first heard of amongst the *Greeks* about the times of *Anastasius*, under whom they invaded *Thrace*; and in the years 499 and 502 defeated two Royal Armies that were sent against them, to restrain whose Incursions that Prince afterwards built a Wall from the Sea to *Sclymbria*, a City Forty-four Miles South of *Constantinople*, now call'd *Selombria*, *Selivrea* or *Selibria* being seated on the *Propontis*, so that the opposite Sea was the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*. In the year 504 they passed into *Illyricum*, and took and sack'd *Syrmiu*; which was soon after taken by *Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*, who defeated the *Bulgarians*: Their King then was,

502 1. *Libertes Buba*, the first victorious King.

538 2. *Wiger* and *Draccon*, two of their Leaders or Princes in the times of *Justinian*, about the years 538 and 541: Made two dreadful Irruptions into *Thrace*, and in the last of them came up to the Walls of *Constantinople*; and in the last took and sack'd *Galaru*, but were at last conquered and driven home by that victorious Prince, who employed against them *Belisarius*. After which they are never mentioned till the year 640, and then on the account of another great Misfortune, viz. that of a Civil War, they are said to be driven into *Pannonia*, in which they desired to have Lands assigned them for their Subsistence by *Dagobert* King of *France*.

3. *Chrovatus*, or *Comatus*, is said to be King of the *Bulgarians* under *Constantinus Pogonatus*.

679 4. *Bathius*, the eldest Son of *Chrovatus*, in whose time *Asparuch*, the youngest of the Brothers of this Prince, passed the *Danube* and settled in *Masua*; which from thence forward was from this Nation called *Bulgaria*. *Constantinus Pogonatus* in 679, and *Justinian* his Son in 687, attempted, without any success, to drive them out, but they defended the Country against both these Princes.

706 5. *Tirbelis*, or *Tyrbagli*, succeeded him, who in the year 706 assisted *Justinian* against one *Apfimar*, an Usurper; and helped him to take *Constantinople*, for which he was well rewarded by that Prince; yet after this he made a faithless and unfortunate War upon the *Bulgarian*, which lasted longer than his Reign.

727 6. *Cormes*, or *Crimus*, Son of *Tirbelis*, by *Theophanes* called *Comersius*, who maintained the War against the *Greeks*, which, as to the Event, is variously reported by the Historians.

763 7. *Telefis*, or *Tileutis*, of another Family, chosen by the People, who were no longer able (as they pretended) to bear the insolence of the Princes of the Royal Family. He began his Reign with an Invasion of *Greece*, which ended in his Ruin.

764 8. *Sabinus*, Son-in-Law to *Cormes*, who endeavouring to settle himself by a Peace with the *Greeks*, was Deposed too, and fled to *Constantinople*.

9. *Paganus* was set up after him, who by their consent put an end to the War with the *Greeks*. This Peace was broken by the *Greeks* in the year 765, with the great Loss of the Aggressors.

771 10. *Telericus*, *Tsericus*, succeeded *Paganus*. This Prince was at last also driven into Exile.

777 11. *Cardamus* was next Elected, against whom *Constantinus*, Son of *Irenes*, made War in 778, which lasted many years with various Events.

807 12. *Crumus*, or *Crumnus*, or *Crumas*, in the year 809 took *Sardica*, and defeated 6000 *Greeks* that opposed him. *Nicephorus*, to Revenge this Disgrace, in 811 entred *Bulgaria* with a formidable Army, which, together with the Emperor, perished in *Bulgaria*. In the year 812 he had also equal Success against *Michael* the Successor of *Nicephorus*; after which he besieged *Constantinople*, being enrag'd against the Emperor, for attempting to destroy him under the covert of Treaty; he failed in this, but he took *Adrianople*; and in the year following renewed the Siege of *Constantinople*, under the Walls of which he died in 815.

815 13. *Doucomus*.

14. *Ditzengus*, or *Tzocus*, a cruel bloody Prince, who became blind, and was deposed by his own Subjects, and Murthered.

15. *Mortagon*, or *Mutragon*, or *Omortag*, a bloody Persecuting Pagan Prince, who yet made a Peace for Thirty Years with *Leo* the *Armenian* Emperor of *Constantinople*. He fought and slew *Thomas* who had rebelled against *Michael Baltisus* in the year 821.

16. *Baldirius*, *Vladimir*, the Grandson of *Crumus*, succeeded *Mortagon* before the year 829; and is supposed to be that *Bulgarian* Prince that invaded *Friuli* in the year 828.

17. *Bogoris*, he being in danger to be invaded by *Michael* the Son of *Theophilus* in the time of a Famine in his Country, promised to imbrace the Christian Religion to avoid that Storm, and obtained a Peace on those terms, about the year 866; and he persisted zealously in this Faith to his Death, which happened in the year 896.

18. *Presianus*, mentioned as King of *Bulgaria*, on the occasion of a War with *Blasimir*, King of *Servia*.

19. *Michael Vorizos*, or *Burichius*, who to Revenge the Overthrow of his Father, invaded *Servia*, then divided between the Children of *Blasimir*,

Blustimirus, but was equally unfortunate with his Father; and forced to a Peace. These Princes lived in the Times of *Basilius Macedo*, and *Preslamus* seems to have been the Son of *Bogoris*.

20. *Symeon*, the Son of *Vladimirus*, the Sixteenth King of *Bulgaria*. He was Educated at *Constantinople* in *Greek* Learning in his Youth, and for some time lived in a Monastery, and in that Habit aspired to his Father's Throne, which having gained, he made Peace with *Servia* and *Greece*. In the year 888 he began a War with the latter, in which he prevailed at first, but the Emperor engaging the *Hungarians* and *Tartars* against him, he was defeated in three Battels, but carried the fourth. This War lasted to the year 895; after this he began a second War with *Leo* the Sixth, in which also he was Victorious, whereupon followed a Peace, and a new War upon the change of the Emperor; and *Symeon*, in the year 912, marched up to the Walls of *Constantinople*. In the year 914 he took *Adrianople* by Treachery. The Terrour of this Prince forced the Emperor to clap up a Peace with the *Saracens*: after which he beat the *Bulgarians*, in the year 917, but by the Treachery of one of the Emperor's Generals that Battel was lost also. In the year 928 he again besieged *Constantinople*, and invited *Fatlum* the Calyph of the *Saracens* of *Ægypt* to assist him with their Fleet. The 27th of May, 932, he ended his Life.
- 932 21. *Peter*, Son of *Symeon*, a Prince of great Valour and Conduct in the beginning of his Reign by his great Preparations struck a Terrour into the *Servians*, *Croatians*, and *Turks* of *Tartary*, but bent his Forces against his more powerful Enemies the *Greeks*, descending with a powerful Army into *Macedonia*; but hearing the Emperor was coming against him with considerable Forces, he consented to a Treaty of Peace, which he confirmed by a Marriage with *Mary* the Daughter of *Christopher*, Son of *Constantine Romanus*, then Emperor of *Greece*. This was celebrated at *Constantinople* the 8th of *October*, 932. After the Death of this Lady he renewed the Peace with *Nicephorus Phoca*, the Successor of *Constantine* in the year 943. But in the year 947, *Nicephorus* broke the Peace, and persuaded *Sphendoslavus*, Prince of *Russia*, to invade *Bulgaria*, which they accordingly did in *August* of this year, and in that Expedition took many of *Peter's* Towns, and *Borises* and *Romanus*, two of *Peter's* Sons. The *Russ* were hereupon so taken with the Pleasures of *Greece*, that they joined with *Peter* and invaded the Empire with an Army of Three hundred and eight thousand Man in the year 968 or 969, which yet were by the Arts of *Bardus*, the *Greek* General, strangely defeated with an Army of Twelve thousand *Greeks*.
- 971 22. *Borises*, or *Burichus*, the Son of *Peter*, about this time succeeded his Father in the Kingdom of *Bulgaria*, being delivered out of his Captivity by *Joannes Zimisces*, then Emperor of *Greece*, who was engaged in an Expedition against the *Russ*, whom he forced to beg leave to return into their own Country: After which he spoiled *Borises*, King of *Bulgaria*, of his Crown, which he hung up in the Church of *St. Sophia* at *Constantinople* in the year 972. The *Bulgarians* continued subject to the *Greeks* till the Death of *Ze-*

misces in the year 975. After which they recalled *Borises*, and *Romanus* his Brother, but *Borises* perished in his return, and *Romanus* the other Brother was forced to return back to *Constantinople*.

- 978 23. The *Bulgarians* thereupon set up *Samuel*, who was called *Mocrus*, of another Noble Family, that of *Symeon* being wholly extinct. He was a Valiant warlike Prince, and hated Peace above all things. He began his Reign with an Invasion upon *Greece*, wasting *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, *Thessalia*, and *Peloponnesus*, and took *Larissa* in the year 981; but in the year 995 he was Overthrown in *Peloponnesus* by the *Greeks*, and lost his whole Army. In the year 1000 the Emperor sent an Army against him, which prevailed; and 1002 another, which took his Capital Cities, and amongst them *Sophia*. After this the *Greeks* prevailed against him, and in 1014 took 15000 of his Subjects, upon which he died the 15th of *September* of Grief.
- 1014 24. *Gabriel*, *Radomirus*, or *Romanus*, Son of *Samuel*, King of *Bulgaria*, of equal Valour with his Father, but inferior in Prudence, succeeded him; he Reigned one Year, one Month, and nine Days.
- 1015 25. *John Vladislaus*, the Son of *Aaron*, the Brother of *Samuel*, Poison'd *Gabriel* and Reigned in his stead, submitting *Bulgaria* to the *Greek* Emperor, who confined him by a Golden Bull. After this he Allured *Vladimirus*, King of *Servia* and *Dalmatia*, his Son-in-Law, and Murthered him also, and then with an Army invaded his Kingdom, upon which *Basilius* the Emperor levied an Army against this Assassin. The War continued two Years; And in the Year 1017 *John* was slain under the Walls of *Durrazzo* (by him then besieged) when he had Reigned two Years five Months; whereupon the *Bulgarian* Nobility again submitted to the Emperor. The Emperor however spent two Years in reducing some that opposed this Submission, and in the Year 1019 was intirely Master of *Bulgaria*. After this it was Governed by Dukes sent by the Emperor.
26. *Petrus Deleanus*, a Servant, pretending to be a Bastard of the Royal Line, usurped the Crown, and beat the Emperor.
27. *Thiomirus*, or *Thæcomirus*, was by another Party set up against *Peter*, but was of no long continuance.
- 1040 28. *Alusinnus*, the second Son of *Aaron*, went over to *Peter*, by whom being sent to take *Thessalonica*, he was beaten; and being suspected by him as a Traytor, he took *Peter* and blinded him, and fled to the Emperor, whereupon *Bulgaria* again submitted to the Emperor, in the Year 1041.
29. *Constantinus Bodinus*, Son of *Michaelitz*, King of *Servia*, was after this chosen King of *Bulgaria*, but was taken Prisoner, and sent to *Constantinople*. After this *Bulgaria* continued united to the Empire of *Constantinople* till the Reign of *Isaac Angelo*, when it again made a Defection.

The Succession of the Kings of *BULGARIA* after this Defection.

- 1180 30. *Petrus* and *Asan*, two Princes of the Royal Family of *Bulgaria*, trusting in the narrow Passes and strong Castles of that Country, and

and despising the unwarlike Forces of the *Greeks*, made a Defection from that Crown in the Reign of *Isaac Angelo*. This Prince began his Reign in the year 1185, and ended it in 1194. But *Peter* was King of *Bulgaria* in 1189, when *Frederick* passed through *Bulgaria* to the *Holy Land*. *Asan* died in the year 1189, when he had Reigned nine years, as *Nicetas* saith, and *Peter* did not long survive him.

1190 31. *Joannes*, by some called *Calojoannes*, and *Joannitza*, and *Joannitus*; he was a long time an Hostage with the *Greeks*, and was the eldest Son of *Asan*. He took up the *Latin Customs* in 1197. He died in the year 1207.

1207 32. *Vorylas*, *Phorylas*, the Sister's Son of *John* after the Death of his Uncle invaded the Crown of *Bulgaria*, but was unfortunate in it, being beaten by the *Franks* in 1208.

33. *Joannes Asan*, the Son of *Asan*, fled into *Russia*, and gathering Forces invaded *Bulgaria*, and put an end to the Reign of *Vorylas*. He died in *June*, in the year 1241.

1241 34. *Calomanus*, *Calamanus*, a Child of Twelve Years, succeeded his Father, and was thought to be poisoned.

1245 35. *Michael*, a Son by a second Wife, he was slain by his Uncle *Caloman*.

1257 36. *Caloman II.* Son of *Alexander*, Nephew of *Asan* King of *Bulgaria*; who was not long after slain by the *Russ*.

37. *Mytzes*, married *Mary* the Sister of *Michael*, and was forthwith proclaimed King of *Bulgaria* after the Death of *Caloman*.

38. *Constantinus*, the Son of *Techus*, set up against *Michael* an unwarlike Prince, and on that account despised and deserted by the *Bulgarians*.

39. *Lachanas*, *Lahanas*, *Corducuva*, a Person of mean Extraction, but of great personal Valour, slew *Constantine*, and married *Mary*, *Contacufena* his Widow; but he Reigned no long time.

40. *Johannes Asan*, set up against *Lachanas* by *Michael Paleologus*, Emperor of *Constantinople*. He Reigned no long time, about the year 1270.

41. *Georgius Terter*, married the Sister of *John Asan*, and upon his deserting the Kingdom, took possession of it. Pope *Nicholas IV.* in the year 1280, solicited this Prince to embrace the *Latin Rites*.

42. *Smiltzes*, made King of *Bulgaria* by *Noga*, King of *Tartary*.

43. *Suvestislavus*, or *Sphendostilavus*, Son of *George Terter*, King of *Bulgaria*, succeeded *Smiltzes*, and Redeemed his Father who was then a Captive to *Andronicus* the Emperor, whom he did not restore to his Throne, but suffered him to live as a private Person to the time of his Death. In the year 1303 he entred a War against *Andronicus*.

1323 44. *George Terter II.* Son of *Suvestislavus*.

45. *Boesilavus*, the Uncle of *George*, hearing of the Death of his Nephew, took upon him the Government with the consent of the Emperor *Andronicus*, but under the Title of *Despote* of *Bulgaria*.

1324 46. *Michael Strascimirus*, Elected King of *Bulgaria* against *Boesilavus*.

47. *Alexander*, the Son of *Strascimirus*, the Son of *Michael* King of *Bulgaria*. This Prince died in the year 1350, or as others in 1353.

48. *Strascimirus*, Son of *Alexander*, seeing his Father married to a *Jewess*, who had poisoned *Michael* his elder Brother, and himself sent from the Court, he made a Defection from his Father, and took upon him the Title of King of *Bulgaria*. He was taken Prisoner afterwards by *Lewis* King of *Hungary* in the year 1366, or as others in 1369.

1353 49. *Sismanus* in the interim succeeded *Alexander* his Father in the Kingdom of *Bulgaria*. He was the Son of that *Jewess* mentioned above, and maintained a War after his Father's Death against *Strascimirus*. In his time *Sultan Amurath* the First invaded *Bulgaria* by *Schachia* his *Vizier*, and took the greatest part of the Kingdom from him in the year 1381. He patched up at last a Peace with *Amurath*, by marrying his Daughter to him. But *Bajazet* his Successor, in the year 1396, renewed the War, and conquered the rest of *Bulgaria*, after the unfortunate Battel of *Nicopolis*. Some others say *Bulgaria* was subdued in the year 1374, and that *Sismanus* was then slain.

There are in *D A C I A*.

Archbishops.

Bishops.

And so much for *D A C I A*.

Mount Hæmus.

BEfore we enter into *Greece*; we must cross *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a Ridge of Hills extending from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Adriatick*, and thereby separating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Sclavonia*. They are so high and Subject to the Weather, that *Stratonicus*, an old *Grecian*, did use to say, that *Eight Months of the Year* it was always cold, for the other four, *Winter*. It was affirmed by some of the ancient Writers, that from one of the highest Heads hereof as well the *Adriatick* as the *Euxine* might have been discerned: the truth of which Report, upon very good reason, hath been called in question. But out of doubt, from some one Top or Summit of it there is so full a Prospect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Perseus* taking a survey of the Site of these Countries, *positis per abrupta Castris*, &c. as the Story hath it, was able to make choice of the fittest places for Forts and Castles, whereby to lock up all the Passages against his Enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* it is so rough and craggy, that it is not to be passed but at two places only. Whereof one was made by the Emperor *Trajan*, where is yet to be seen a mighty strong Gate built of great square Stone, by which the Passage that way was either opened or shut at the pleasure of them who had the keeping of the same, with a small Force exceeding easily defended against puissant Armies. The other, being situate near a little River by the *Bulgarians* called *Sal-tiza*, not altogether so streight and narrow as the other, but rising high, and full of broken Rocks and dangerous Precipices, is alike impassable; defensible at ease, and without any great danger; as was experimentally found by the Famous *Huniades*, when he attempted (but in vain) to have led his Forces this way for the Siege of *Adrianople*. Those parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though somewhat opener, are not much easier of ascent; the Passages through the broken Rocks and Precipices being very difficult, and not easily mastered: insomuch that when *Perseus*, the last King of *Macedon*, had Fortified the Streights hereof against the *Romans*, *non reliquissè aditum nisi è Cælo venientibus videbatur*, it was conceived (saith *Florus*) that there was no Passage left for any Forces, unless they fell immediately from the Heavens themselves.

This great and rocky Chain of Hills, as they were vehemently exposed to Wind and Weather, so were they destitute of those Commodities which were either

comfortable, or indeed merely necessary to the Life of Man: which made the Passage over them in a manner impossible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of Cold and Hunger. Yet were they not left desolate and void of People, especially in these sides hereof which lay next to *Greece*; but most especially in those parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace*: where the Spurs and Branches of the Hills spreading far and wide and taking up a great part of the Country, occasioned the *Romans*, in the Division of the Diocese of *Thrace* into several Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Mæsia* by the name of *Hæmimontum*, or *Hæmimontana*. The principal Towns whereof were *Adrianople*, *Uscudama*, and *Anchialus*: the principal Governour thereof being a *Roman* President. Where, by the way, we may take notice of an Errour in the common Impressions of the Code, *Lib. VII. Tit. 62. Leg. 23.* where we find *Hæmi montem*, for *Hæmimontum*; the first being the name only of the Mountain, and the latter (which is there meant) of the *Roman* Province.

But to return unto the Mountain. There is another of this Name in *Theffaly*, mentioned (or mistook for this) by *Servius* in his Notes on the first Book of the *Georgicks*; on the Top whereof was said to be the Habitation of *Mars*, at the Bottom the most pleasant Valley of *Tempe*: So called from *Hæmus*, the Son of *Boreas* and *Orithya*, amongst the Poets. And possibly, to distinguish this from that of *Theffaly*, *Ptolomy* and others call it *Æmus*, without the Aspirate: though it may as well be that there are others of this name, as that this is called in divers places or in divers Authors by other names; one part hereof being called *Scombrus* by *Aristotle*, another *Scombrus* by *Thucydides*, and by *Laonicus* the whole called *Prasobus*. The like may be observed at the present also, *Piuetus* calling it by the name of *Catena Mundi*, a great part whereof it links together: *Cuspinianus Costegnazzo*, *Lazius Kriviczne*, the *Italians* *Mont Argentaro*, the *French* *Mont de Casteg-nao*, the *Sclavonians* *Cumoniza*, and the *Turks* *Balkan*. Which I have therefore here observed for the Reader's sake, that, meeting any of these names in the Stories either of the ancient or modern Times, he may know what Hills or Mountains are intended by them. Which said, I now pass on to *Greece*, the way being thus prepared and laid open to me.

O F GREECE

GREECE, in the present Latitude and extent thereof, is bounded on the East with the *Propontick*, *Hellepont*, and *Aegean Seas*; on the West with the *Adriatick*; on the North, with Mount *Hemus*, which parteth it from *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, and some part of *Illyricum*; and on the South with the Sea *Ionian*. So that it is in a manner a *Peninsula* or *Demi-Island*, environed on three sides by the Sea, on the fourth only united to the rest of *Europe*.

But this is only in relation to the present extent hereof, the name being anciently restrained within narrower Bounds. Confined at first to *Attica* and the parts adjoining; *ab Isthmi angustis Hellas incipit*, as it is in *Pliny*: and it took the name of *Hellas* from *Hellen*, the Son of *Deucalion*; as that of *Greece*, or *Gracia*, from *Gracus* the Son of *Cecrops*, the first King of *Athens*. Communicated afterwards to *Peloponnesus*, then to *Thessalie* also: and finally, when the *Macedonian* Empire had enlarged it self over the petit Commonwealths and Estates hereof, it came to be communicated to that Country also. The People for this cause are known by divers names, by some called *Achivi*, by others *Myrmidones*, sometimes *Pelasgi*, *Danai*, *Argivi*, &c. But the name whereby they are best known in Sacred Writers is that of *Ἕλληνες*, so called from *Hellas*, the more proper and genuine name of *Greece* in the strictest notion and acception. A name used frequently and familiarly in the Book of God, both absolutely, to denote this Nation, as where it is said *σοφίαν Ἑλλήνων ἑνῶσι*, that the *Greeks* seek wisdom, 1. Cor. 1. 22. and relatively, as in opposition to the *Jews*, the *Barbarians*, and *Hellenists* or *Gracizing Jews*. First with relation to the *Jews*, and then it signifieth the whole Body of the Gentiles generally, of which the *Gracians* were the most eminent and famous people as *Ἰουδαῖοι πρῶτον καὶ Ἕλληνι*, *to the Jew first, and also to the Gentiles*, Rom. 2. 9. 10. Give none offence, καὶ Ἰουδαίοις καὶ Ἕλλησι neither to the *Jews* nor to the *Gentiles*, 1. Cor. 10. 32. and elsewhere frequently. In which, and all other places of that kind, where the *Antithesis* lieth between the *Jews* and other Nations, we are to understand the *Gentiles*, the whole Body of them; tho' many times our Translators, I know not why, render it literally the *Greeks*; as Rom. 1. 16. and 10. 12. &c. Secondly, with reference to all other Nations not so well versed in the Learning and Civilities of that age as the *Gracians* were, whom by a common name of scorn they called *Barbarians*: according unto that of *Strabo*, *Barbaræ sunt omnes Nationes præter Græcos*; the *Romans* themselves, though then the great Lords of the World, being included in the reckoning. And so the word is taken, Rom. 1. 14. *I am a Debtor*, saith Saint Paul, ὁ Ἕλλησι καὶ Βαρβάροις both to the *Greeks* and *Barbarians*, to the *Wise* and *Unwise*; in which as well the *Romans*, as those of other Nations, have the name of *Barbarians*. Last of all for the *Gracizing Jews* whom the *Vulgar Latin* called *Græcos* and our *English* *Gracians*: they were such of the *Jews*, who living dispersed among the *Gentiles*, used the Translation of the *Septuagint*, making that the Canon both for *Life* and *Doctrine*. Which difference betwixt them and the *Jews* inhabiting in *Judea* who kept themselves unto the Scriptures in their Mothers-tongue, and used the *Hebrew* only in all Sacred Actions, occasioned many Jars amongst them, which

sometimes brake out into open Violence; insomuch as *R. Eliezer* brake into the Synagogue of the *Alexandrians* at *Hierusalem*, and therein committed many Outrages. Of this Unfriendliness between them mention is made *Act. 6. 1.* where it is said, that there arose a murmuring of the *Gracians* against the *Hebrews*, &c. In which place, though the *English* and *Vulgar Latine* use the name of *Gracians*, yet ought they more properly to be rendered *Hellenists*, or *Gracizing Jews*, as in all other places, viz. *Acts 9. 29.* and *11. 20.* &c. where they are called *Ἑλληνισταί*, and not *Ἕλληνες*, in the *Greek* Originals.

But to proceed to our Description of the Country: we find it situate in the Northern Temperate Zone, under the fifth and sixth Climates, the longest Day being 15 hours; inhabited by a People which were once brave men of War; stout Scholars, addicted to the love of Vertue and civil Behaviour; a Nation once so excellent, that their Precepts and Examples do still remain as approved Rules and Tutors, to instruct and direct the man that endeavoureth to be vertuous: famous for Government, affectors of Freedom, every way noble. For which Vertues in themselves, and want of them in others, all their Neighbours and remote Nations were by them scornfully called *Barbarians*: a name now most fit for the *Gracians* themselves, being an unconstant People, destitute of all Learning, and the means to obtain it: Universities uncivil, riotous, and so lazie, that for the most part they endeavour their profit no further than their Belly compels them; and so perfidious withal in all their Dealings, especially towards the Western Christians, that it is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Italians*, *Chi fida in Greco, sarà intrigo*, i. e. He that trusts to a *Greek* is sure to be couzened. When they meet at Feasts or Banquets, they drink small Draughts at the beginning; which by degrees they increase, till they come to the height of Intemperancy: at which point when they are arrived, they keep no Rule or Order; whereas before to drink out of one's turn was accounted a point of Incivility. Hence as I believe, sprung our By-word, *As merry as a Greek*, and the *Latine* word *Gracari*.

The Women for the most part are brown-complexioned, exceedingly well-favoured, and excessively amorous. Painting they use very much, to keep themselves in grace with their Husbands; for when they once grow wrinkled, they are put to all the Drudgeries of the House. Both Sexes generally in their Habit and outward Garb apply themselves to the State under which they live; such as are subject to the *Turk* conforming unto the Dress and Fashions of the *Turks*, as those who live under the *Venetians* do to that of *Venice*.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by St. Paul, invited by the Spirit to come over into *Macedonia*, *Acts 16. 9. 12.* passing from thence to *Thessalonica*, the chief City of *Mygdonia*, ch. 17. 1. from thence to *Athens* in *Achaia*, v. 15. 16. then unto *Corinth*, the Metropolis of *Peloponnesus*, ch. 18. 1. watering the greatest part of *Greece* with the dew of Heaven, and planting Bishops in most Churches where he preached the Gospel, as *Dionysius* (the *Arcopagite*) at *Athens*, *Aristarchus* at *Thessalonica*, *Epaphroditus* at *Phillippi*, *Silas* at *Corinth*, and *Titus* in the Isle of *Creta*. The like he did in many other Countries also accounted Members of the *Greek Church*, though

though not of *Greece*, the name of the *Greek Church* extending over all the Provinces of the Eastern Empire, governed by the 4. Patriarchs, 1. of *Alexandria*, who presided over *Egypt* and *Arabia*; 2. of *Hierusalem*, whose Patriarchate (erected only in regard of our Saviour's Passion in that City, and the great opinion which by that means accrued unto it) confined within the Bounds of *Palæstine*; 3. of *Antioch*, whose Jurisdiction contained all *Syria*, *Armenia*, *Cilicia*, and the Isle of *Cyprus*, and whatsoever else was within the Diocesis of the Orient; and 4. of *Constantinople*, to whose charge were committed all the other Provinces of the *Greek Church*, as *Greece*, *Russia*, *Dacia*, *Sclavonia*, part of *Poland*, and all the Islands in the *Adriatick*, *Ionian* and *Ægean Seas*, together with all *Asia minor*, and the Islands thereof, (except only the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Isauria*) and the Countries lying on both sides of *Pontus Euxinus* and *Palus Maotis*. The reasons of the large increase of whose Jurisdiction, confined at first within the Diocesis of *Thrace*, were, 1. the reputation of being Seated in the Imperial City, which drew after it (by a Decree of the Council of *Chalcedon*) all the Provinces of *Asia minor*, (*Cilicia* and *Isauria* excepted only); 2. the voluntary submission of the *Græcians* upon their Separation from the Church of *Rome*; by which all *Greece*, *Macedon*, *Epirus*, the Isle of *Crete*, and all the Islands in the *Ægean* and *Ionian Seas*, which formerly had no Superior but their own Primate, the Archbishop of *Thessalonica*, became subject unto them; 3. the diligence of the Patriarch hereof in converting by his Suffragan Bishops and other Ministers the *Russians*, *Bulgarians* and *Sclavonians*, to the Faith of *Christ*, which made those people to look upon *Constantinople* as their Mother-Church; and 4. the Piety and Care of the latter Patriarchs, in supplying with new Pastors and Ministers those parts and Provinces of the West, which, being conquered by the *Turk*, had been forsaken by their old Clergy, and left like Sheep without a Shepherd.

And yet this Church, though thus extended and enlarged in the outward Members, is very much streightened and impaired at home, the Country being thinly peopled, and many of those people trained up from their infancy in the *Mahometan Law*. So that it is a greater wonder that there should be any remainders of Christianity left amongst them, than that the open Professors of it should be so few; the Tyranny of the *Turks* on the one side, and the Temptations of Preferment upon the other, being rightly pondered. For who could look to find twenty Churches of Christians in *Constantinople* the Seat and ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Emperors*? or that in *Salonichi* or *Thessalonica*, there should be 30 Christian Churches, and but three *Turkish Mosquits*? that the Primate of this *Salonichi*, should have under him 10 Suffragan Bishops, whereof he of *Phillippi* hath no fewer than 150 Churches under his Jurisdiction? or, finally, that under the Metropolitans of *Athens* and *Corinth* there should be so many? So mercifully hath God dealt with his luxurious and perfidious People, as not to take away their Candlestick, though he hath darkened and obscured the Light thereof.

As for the Fathers of this Church, anciently and at this present held in most esteem, they were no other than such as had been Bishops of the greater Sees. That is to say, 1. *St. Chrysostome*, first a Reader of *Antioch*, afterwards Patriarch of *Constantinople*; 2. *Basil*, and the two *Gregories*; 3. *Nyssen*, and 4. *Nazianzen*; all in *Asia minor*; this last of *Constantinople* also; 5. 6. the two *Cyrills*; the one Patriarch of *Alexandria*, the other of *Hierusalem*; 7. *Epiphanius*, Bishop of *Salamis* in the Isle of *Cyprus*; 8. *Theodoret*, Bishop of *Cyprus*, &c. Men of Renown and Precious Memory amongst them to this very day. From whose Writings if they deviate in any material point of Doctrine, it is in that of the Procession of the Holy Ghost, which they grant to be *per Filium*, but not a *Filius*. And though *Glichovius*, *Lombard*, and

other moderate men of the Church of *Rome*, do grant the difference to be rather *in modo explicandi, quam in ipsa re*; and that the clause *a Filioque* was added by the *Romanists* to the ancient Creeds, the *Græcians* not being privy nor consenting to it: yet so uncharitable is that Church towards these poor men, languishing under Tyranny of *Turkish* Thralldom, as to persecute them with Reproach and Scorn, brand them for Schismatics and Apostates, and solemnly to anathematise them in *Bullæ Cannæ* every Maundy-Thursdæy. And it is a very hard measure to add, and anathematize too; as is right well observed by the late Lord Arch-bishop of *Canterbury*, in his notable Discourse against the *Jesuits*. Other particular Tenets in which the *Greek Church* differeth from the *Romish* and Reformed (as in some points it doth from both) have been already specified in our Description of *Russia*: the Churches of the *Greeks* and *Muscovites* differing in no material Points, but 1. the manner of distributing the Sacrament. 2. the exacting of Marriage by the *Muscovite* in the party admitted unto Orders; 3. the frequent admitting of Divorces upon light occasions; and 4. and finally, in being less strict in observing the Lent before *Easter* than in any of the other three. For whereas the *Græcians* account it a damnable sin to eat Flesh or Fish which hath blood in it, in any of their other Lents or times of Abstinence; (they have in both Churches four in all) in that before *Easter*, which of all reason ought to be kept most punctually, the Laity eat all sorts of Fish without any exception, the Blood of some of which, as the Cuttle by name, is held to be a delicate Food, and in great request.

The Language they spake was of their own, of which there were four Dialects, viz. 1. the *Attick*, 2. the *Dorick*, 3. the *Æolick*, 4. the *Ionick*; besides the common phrase of speech most in use among them. A Language of great fame for the Liberal Arts, but more for so great a part of the Holy Scripture first delivered in it, and for the lofty Sound, significant Expressions, genuine Suavity, and happy composition of words, so excelling all others, that even in the flourishing of the *Roman Empire* it so much overtopped the *Latin*, that the Histories of *Rome* it self (as by *Polybius*, *Appian*, *Dion* and *Cassius*) were written in it. It was once also the general Language of *Anatolia*, some parts of *Italy*, *Provence* in *France*, and almost all the Islands of the *Mediterranean*. But now, partly by the mutilation of some words and contraction of others, partly by confusion of the true sound of Vowels, Diphthongs and Consonants, and the translating of the Accents, and finally by the admixture of foreign Nations it is not only fallen from its natural Elegancy, but from its largeness of extent. For it is now shut up within the Limits of *Greece*, and the Sea-coast of the lesser *Asia* opposite unto it; and there not only much corrupted, but almost quite devoured by the *Turkish* and *Sclavonian Tongues*; but especially by that which they call *Franco*, a mungrel Language, composed of *Italian*, *French*, and some *Spanish* words, used as the ordinary Speech for Commerce and intercourse betwixt *Christians*, *Jews*, *Turks*, and the *Greeks* themselves, who do not understand, and much less speak, the true genuine *Greek*. So that although they still retain for ordinary days *St. Chrysostom's* Liturgie, and that of *St. Basil* for the Festivals: yet being both written in the ancient and learned *Greek*, they are no more understood by the *Vulgar Græcian*, then the *Latine Service* by the common and illiterate *Papist*.

The Soil questionless is very fruitful, and would yield great profit to the Husbandman, if they would take pains in the tilling: but they, knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all things subject to the Grand Seignior and his Soldiers, neglect the Tillage of their Lands, on the same grounds with those who said in the Poet's *Ecclogues*.

Inspiri

*Impius hac tam culta novalia Miles habebit ?
Barbarus has segetes ? En queis consecimus Arva !*

Shall misbelieving *Turks* these Acres spoil,
Which I manur'd with so much Cost and Toil ?
Shall they enjoy my care ? See, neighbours, see
For whom these goodly Corn-fields tilled be !

The more natural and certain Commodities which they transport into other parts are Wines, which, in memory of the Water which our Saviour turned into Wine, and on the sixth day of *January*, being that day whereon this Miracle was wrought, they use to baptize : for which cause the *Jews* will drink none of them. They send also into other parts of the World Oils, Copper, Vitriol, some Gold and Silver, Velvet, Damasks, Turkey-Grograms, &c.

This Country hath formerly been famous for the brave Commanders, *Miltiades*, *Aristides* and *Themistocles* of *Athens*, *Lisander* and *Agessilaus* of *Sparta*, *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas* of *Thebes*, *Aratus* and *Philopæmen* of *Achaia*, *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Subvertor of the *Græcian* Liberty, and *Alexander* his Son, (to omit infinite others) the Subvertor of the *Persian* Monarchy ; for the divine Philosophers, *Plato*, *Socrates*, *Aristotle* and *Theophrastus* ; for the most eminent Law-givers, *Solon* and *Lycurgus* ; for the most exquisite Poets, *Hesiodus*, *Homer*, *Sophocles* and *Aristophanes* for the famous Historiographers, *Xenophon* the Condisciple of *Plato*, *Thucydides*, *Plutarch* and *Herodotus* ; for the eloquent Orators, *Æschines*, *Demosthenes* and *Isæcrates* ; and, lastly, for the Authors and Establishers of all humane Learning whatsoever, only the Mathematicks excepted.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Cephissus*, which, arising in the Frontiers of *Epirus*, disburtheneth it self into the *Ægean* Sea. 2. *Erigon*, and 3. *Aliacmon* ; which beginning their course in the more Northern parts of *Macedon*, end it in *Thermaicus Sinus*. 4. *Strymon* in *Mygdonia*. 4. *Athyrras*, and 6. *Nessus*, in *Thrace*. 7. *Symphalus*, where *Hercules* killed the *Symphalian* Birds. 8. *Ladon*, in *Arcadia*. 9. *Inachus*, whose Daughter *Io*, turned into a Heifer, was worshipped by the *Ægyptians* under the name of *Isis*. 10. *Achelous*, in *Epirus*, much celebrated by the ancient Poets, especially by *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*. As is also 11. *Peneus*, the chief River of *Thessaly*, and their arising from Mount *Pindus*, and increased with the waters of many Rivers. *Daphne* the Nymph, whom *Apollo* is fabled to have loved, and turned into a Bay-tree, lived near or on the Banks of this River *Peneus*, and is therefore said to be his Daughter : as *Io* above mentioned was the Daughter of *Inachus*, Of less note,

Populifer 11, *Sperchius*, & *irrequietus* 12. *Enipeus*, 13. *Apidanusque senex*, *lenisque* 14. *Amphrysus*, & 15. *Æas*.

That is to say,

Cool *Sperchius*, *Enipeus* that troubled ran,
Smooth *Amphrysus*, *Æas*. and old *Apidan*.

The rest of less note, and the most eminent Mountains in each part hereof, shall be remembred in their places, as we see occasion.

Thus much of the whole Country in gross. And as for the Division of it with reference to the State of the *Roman* Empire, it contained in a manner two whole Dioceses, viz. *Thrace* and *Macedon* : the first under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, the latter (together with that of *Dacia*) under the *Præfectus Prætorio for Illyricum*. Of these the Diocese of *Macedon*, lying wholly within the Bounds of the modern *Greece* contained the Provinces of *Macedonia Prima*. 2. *Macedonia Secunda*, or Sa-

lutaris, (now, as in former times, called *Albania*) 3. *Epirus Nova*, taking up the Countries of *Phocis*, *Locris*, and so much of the *Old Epirus* as was on that side of the River *Achelous*, 4. *Old Epirus*, comprehending all the rest of that Country, 5. *Thessaly*, 6. *Achaia*, containing all *Achaia*, and *Peloponnesus*, the Countries of *Locris* and *Phocis* excepted only, and 7. *Crete* or *Candie*, with the Island adjoining. And for the Diocese of *Thrace*, it was divided into the Provinces of, 1. *Thrace* specially so called, 2. *Europe*, 3. *Rhodope*, 4. *Hæmimontum*, 5. *Mæsia Inferior*, and 6. *Scythia* : of which the four first make up the Body of *Thrace*, and shall there be spoken of ; the two last, being comprehended in the modern *Dacia*, have been described already in their proper places. But not to bind my self precisely unto this Division, (though I shall look on this as occasion serveth) I shall consider *Greece* in the several Provinces of, 1. *Peloponnesus*. 2. *Achaia*. 3. *Epirus*. 4. *Albania*. 5. *Macedon*. 6. *Thrace*. 7. The Islands of the *Propontick*. 8. *Ægean*, and 9. The *Ionian* Seas, and 10. finally the Isle of *Crete*.

1. P E L O P O N N E S U S.

PELOPONNESUS is bounded on the East with the *Cretan*, on the West with the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Seas, on the North-east with *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*, on the North-west with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now *Golfo di Patras* or *Lepanto*, and on the South with the *Mediterranean*. So that it is almost an Island, properly called a *Peninsula*, rounded with the Sea, except where it is tied to the main Land of *Greece*, by an *Isthmus* six miles in breadth, which the *Grecians* and *Venetians* fortified with a great Wall and five Castles. This Wall was called anciently *Hexamilium*, and was overthrown by *Amurath* the Second, who harraided and spoiled all the Country. This Wall was first built by *Manuel* Emperor of *Greece* in 1413, or as others in 1409, re-built or repaired by the *Venetians* in 1424, cast down it was by *Amurath* 1. in 1447, and by *Mahomet* his Son in 1458, having been built as our Author saith, in the year 1353, upon the rumour of a War by the *Venetians*, (who then had the greatest part of this Country) in 15 days ; there being for that time 30000 men employed in the work. This wall extended from one Sea unto the other : which had it been as gallantly guarded as it was hastily made up, or as it was well fortified had it been as well manned, might easily have resisted the *Turks*, until more means had been thought on to defend it. Not less observable, but more fruitless, was the design of some in the elder times, to cut through this *Isthmus*, and make a perfect Island of it. It was attempted by *Demetrius* King of *Macedon*, *Julius Caesar*, and *Caius Caligula* ; by none more eagerly pursued then by the Emperor *Nero*, who, to hearten his Soldiers, loth to attempt so fruitless an Enterprize, took a Spade in hand, and busily began the work. Yet at last the Soldiers, being frighted with the Blood which abundantly broke forth, with the Groans and Roarings which they continually heard, and with the Hobgoblins and Furies which were always in their sight, perswaded the Emperor, now half out of the humour, to leave this, and enjoyn them some more profitable Service. It was also given over by the former Princes on the like Discouragements. But of this *Isthmus* we shall add no more then these words of *Ovid*, and so pass forwards to the Description of the Country ; that is to say,

*Æquora bina suis oppugnant fluctibus Isthmon,
Et tenuis Tellus audeat utrumque Mare.*

Which may be thus Englished ;

Two Seas assault the *Isthmus* with their Waves,
And that thin Neck of Land both Seas out-braves.

As

As for this Country of *Peloponnesus*, it is in compass 600 miles, and was called at the first *Ægialia*, from *Ægialus* the first King of *Sicyon*; next *Apia*, from *Api* the fourth King; after that *Sycionia*, from *Sicyon* the 19th King thereof: and finally *Peloponnesus*, from *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, and Νῆος, *Insula*, the word signifying as much as the Isle of *Pelops*. But it is now of late called *Morea*; and that a *Maurorum Incursionibus*, from the Incursions of the *Moors* as *Mercator* thinketh; but by the *Moors* he means the *Saracens*, as some others also do.

It is conceived to be the most pleasant Country in all *Greece*, abounding in all things necessary for the Life of man; and in such also as do serve for Delicacy and Contentment only: adorned with many goodly Plains swelled with fruitful Hills, well stored with Ports and Havens on all sides thereof. And though no Country in the World, for the bigness of it, hath suffered in the Ruine of so many brave and stately Cities; yet is it still the most populous and best inhabited of all the Continent of *Greece*. Near the middle of it, in *Laconia*, is the Mount *Taygetus*, from the top whereof there was no City of note in all this *Peninsula* but might easily be seen. A most gallant Prospect. The whole was divided commonly into these seven Provinces; 1. *Achaia propria*. 2. *Elis*. 3. *Messene*. 4. *Argolis*. 5. *Corinthia*. 6. *Argolis*, and 7. *Corinthia*.

1. *ACHAIA propria*, is bounded on the East with *Argolis* and *Corinthia*, on the West with the *Ionian Sea*, on the North with *Sinus Corinthiacus* or the Gulf of *Lepanto*, on the South with *Elis*. So called from the *Achai*, the Inhabitants of it; the Adjunct *propria* being added to difference it from *Achaia* in the Continent or Mainland of *Greece*.

Places of most consideration in it are, 1. *Dyme*, situate in the most Western point of it, in or near the Promontory called *Araxus*. The Town is now called *Chiarenza*, and the Promontory *Cabo di Chiarenza*. Not far from which is another Promontory or Head-land, of old called *Rhium*, opposite to another in *Ætolia* that was called *Antirrhium*, divided by a very narrow Streight or *Fretum*, which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; fortified on each side with a Castle for defence thereof, commonly called *Castelli di Lepanto*: both built and fortified by *Bajazet* the second, when he had finished the Conquest of *Peloponnesus*, to secure the entrance of this Bay; both taken and demolished by *Andrew Doria*, Lord Admiral to *Charles* the V. to lay the Bay open to the Christians: and finally, both within few years recovered and repaired by *Solyman* the Magnificent, as they still continue. *Chiarenza* lies 50 *Italian* miles to the South of that Streight, and has no Relation to the Castles of *Lepanto*, however it is now in a mean desolate condition, and all together desolate. The Harbour it once had being now stop'd with Sand. *Coronelli*. 2. *Ægium*, where *Jupiter* is said to have been nursed by a Goat, whence it had the name; Αἴξ in *Greek* signifying a *Shee-Goat*: once a strong Town, now ruined and destroyed by the Turks, called at this day *Vossiza*, or *Bossizan*. 3. *Algira*, once the chief City of all this Tract, situate on a steep and inaccessible Hill; now a small Village, called *Xylocastro*. 4. *Olenus*, so named from *Olenus* the Son of *Jupiter* and *Anaxithea*, now called *Caminisa*. 5. *Patra Patras* situate at the very Mouth of the Gulf, opposite to *Lepanto*. First called *Aroe*, but being by one *Patrens* enlarged and walled, took the name of *Patrae*, which name it holdeth to this day, being still called *Patras*; the Town of most note on the Bay of *Corinth*, which is called from hence *Golfo di Patras*. A Town of good Trade, and much frequented not long since by the *English* Merchants, who had here their Consul, called the *Consul of Morea*: but formerly more memorable for the death of *S. Andrew* the Apostle, who here suffered Martyrdom. This place was chosen by *Augustus*, as a Station for his Navy, and the Inhabitants of it were accordingly much favoured and privileged by him. In the latter times of the *Greek*

Empire, it was a Dukedom, and resigned to the *Venetians* by the last Duke in 1408, when the Turks first took it I know not, but *Andrew Doria* made himself Master of it in 1533. On the Peace in 1539, it was restored to the Turks; and in the year 1687, was taken again by the *Venetians*, after the Battle of *Lepanto*, without any defence. Mr. *Wheler* p. 292, saith, it stands at the Foot of a Mountain, half a Mile from the Sea, and has a Castle in the highest point of the Hill. It is now an Archbishops See, but much decayed, yet he sets down its Antiquities, which are not fit to be transcribed here. 6. *Pellene*, distant from the Sea about 60 Furlongs: the people whereof being constant to their old Fashions of Apparel, occasioned the Proverb of *Pellenica vestis*, applied to old Cloaths out of Fashion. Here were once also the two Cities of 7. *Helice*, and 8. *Buris*, sunk by the violence of a Tempest into the bottom of the Sea, about the time of the Battle of *Leuctra*. Not to say any thing of 9. *Tritæa*, and 10. *Phœa*, two other Towns hereof, of note in former times; so little now remaining of them, as if they had been sunk at the same time also.

But the chief Town of all this Province (if not a Province of it self) is *Sicyon*, situate not far from the *Isthmus*, in the most Eastern parts hereof, and giving to the Territory or adjoining Country (as once unto the whole *Insula*) the name of *Sicyonia*. The Territory is rich, especially in Olives, and Works of Iron; the City the most ancient of all *Greece*, built within little time of the general Flood and Restauration of Mankind. First called *Ægialia*, after *Sicyonia*, by the name of the first and nineteenth King hereof; by whom, and their Successors it was much adorned and beautified with Temples, Altars, Statues and Images of their several Gods: the ancientest Kingdom in the World, the *Assyrian* and *Egyptian* excepted only, and perhaps not those. It took beginning in the person of *Ægialeus*, within 150 years after the Deluge, and 200 years before the death of *Noah*; continuing in a Race of Princes who twayed the Affairs of *Peloponnesus*, till overtopped by the growth and good fortune of the Kings of *Argos*. The names of whom, by reason of the undoubted Antiquity of this Kingdom, I shall here subjoyn in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Kings of SICYON.

A. M.

- | | |
|------|-------------------------|
| 1860 | 1. <i>Ægialeus</i> . |
| 1910 | 2. <i>Enrops</i> . |
| 1950 | 3. <i>Telchin</i> . |
| 1980 | 4. <i>Apis</i> . |
| 2004 | 5. <i>Telxion</i> . |
| 2055 | 6. <i>Ægrus</i> . |
| 2089 | 7. <i>Eurymachus</i> . |
| 2134 | 8. <i>Leucippus</i> . |
| 2187 | 9. <i>Messapus</i> . |
| 2234 | 10. <i>Peatus</i> . |
| 2280 | 11. <i>Plemnæus</i> . |
| 2328 | 12. <i>Orithoulis</i> . |
| 2391 | 13. <i>Marathon</i> . |
| 2421 | 14. <i>Marathus</i> . |
| 2441 | 15. <i>Echireus</i> . |
| 2496 | 16. <i>Corax</i> . |
| 2526 | 17. <i>Epopeus</i> . |
| 2561 | 18. <i>Laomedon</i> . |
| 2601 | 19. <i>Sicyon</i> . |
| 2646 | 20. <i>Polybus</i> . |
| 2686 | 21. <i>Janischus</i> . |
| 2728 | 22. <i>Phæstus</i> . |
| 2736 | 23. <i>Adrastus</i> . |
| 2740 | 24. <i>Polyphides</i> . |
| 2771 | 25. <i>Pelægus</i> . |

2791 26. *Zeuxippus*, the last King of *Sicyon*. After whose death A. M. 2812, the El are hereof was governed by the Priests of *Apollo*, seven of them successively

one after another : the first five, only years a-piece ; *Amphyktion*, who was the sixth, continuing 9 years in the Regency, and *Charidemus*, the last of them, ruling 18 years. After whose death or departure, I know not which, *A. M.* 2844, the *Heraclida*, who about that time returned into *Peloponnesus*, made themselves Masters of this Country ; there being no Kings of *Sicyon* from this time forwards.

Of these Kings the most memorable were *Aegialeus* and *Apis*, the first and fourth, from whom this *Peninsula* had the names of *Apia* and *Aegiala* ; *Aegirus*, the 6. giving name and being to the City *Aegira* spoken of before ; *Marathon*, the 13. of whom perhaps the famous Fields of *Marathon* (in the other *Achaia*) took denomination ; *Epopens*, the 17. who founded a Temple to *Minerva*, and therein placed his own Monument or Trophies *Sicyon* ; the 19. the Founder of the City *Sicyon*, or at least the Repairer and Enlarger of it ; *Pelafgus* the 25. from whom perhaps the *Gracians* might be called *Pelafgi*, if not known formerly by that name. After this time I find no man of note who bare sway in *Sicyon*, till the time of *Aratus*, the special Ornament of this Town, (of which a Native) and one of the principal Establishers of the *Achaean* Commonwealth against the *Spartans* and *Macedonians* ; of which more hereafter in the general History of *Peloponnesus*.

2. The Country of *ELIS* hath on the East *Arcadia*, on the West the *Ionian* Sea, on the North *Achaia propria*, on the South *Messenia*. The chief Cities are, 1. *Elis*, which gives name to the whole Province. So called from *Elisha* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who fixt himself in these parts of this Country, where he built this City, calling it by his own name, as his posterity in honour of him did the Isles adjoining, mentioned in the Prophet *Ezekiel* by the name of the Isles of *Elisha*, ch. 27. v. 7. Nigh to this City runneth the River *Alpheus*, of which we have spoken in *Sicilia* ; and in this City reigned the King *Auges*, the cleansing of whose Stables is accounted one of the Wonders or twelve Labours performed by *Hercules*. 2. *Olympia*, famous for the Statute of *Jupiter Olympius*, one of the seven Wonders, being in height 60 Cubits, composed by that excellent Workman *Phidias*, of Gold and Ivory. In honour of this *Jupiter* were the *Olympick* Games instituted by *Hercules*, and celebrated on the Plains of this City, *A. M.* 2757. The Exercises in them were for the most part bodily, as running in Chariots, Running on Foot, Wrestling, Fighting with the Whorlbats, and the like. But so that there repaired thither also Orators, Poets, and Musicians, and all that thought themselves excellent in any laudable quality, to make trial of their several Abilities : the very Criers, who proclaimed the Victories, contending which should cry loudest, and best play his part. The rewards given to the Victour were only Garlands of Palm, or such slight remembrances ; and yet the *Greeks* no less esteemed that small Sign of Conquest and Honour, then the *Romans* did their most magnificent Triumphs : those which were Conquerors herein being met by all the principal men in the City in or under which they lived, and a passage broken in the main Walls thereof for their reception ; as if the ordinary Gates were not capable of so high an Honour, or able to afford them entrance. Inasmuch that when *Diagoras* had seen his three Sons crowned for their several Victories, a Friend of his came to him with this Gratulation, *Adorere, Diagora, nunquam enim in Cælum ascensus es* ; that is to say, Die now, *Diagoras*, for thou shalt never go to Heaven : as if no greater Happiness could befall the man either in this life or that to come, than that which he enjoyed already. The Judges and Presidents of these Games were some of the Citizens of *Elis*, deputed to it ; highly commended for their Justice and Integrity in pronouncing who best deserved without Partiality. Of these thus *Homer* in his *Odes* :

*Sunt quos Curriculo pulverem Olympicum
Collegisse juvat ; Metaque fervidis
Evitata Rotis, Palmaque nobilis
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.*

*Quos Elæa domum reducit
Palma cælestes.*

That is to say,

Some in *Olympick* Dust take pride
Their Chariots and themselves to hide ;
Whom the shunn'd Mark, and Palm so priz'd,
Like to the Gods hath eterniz'd.

Who with clean Garlands come,
In Cæstrial Triumph home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules* these Games were discontinued for 430 years : at which time one *Iphitus*, warned so to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, renewed them, causing them to be solemnly exercised every fourth year : from which Custom *Olympius* is sometimes taken for the space of 4 years ; as *quinque annorum Olympiades* for 20 years. *Varro* reckoneth the times before the Flood to be obscure ; those before the *Olympiads*, and after the Flood to be Fabulous ; but those that followed these *Olympiads* to be Historical. These *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the Restauration of them by *Iphitus* until the Reign of the Emperor *Theodosius*, the *Gracian Epoche*, by which they reckoned their Account : the first of them being placed in the year of the World 3174, before the building of *Rome* 40 years ; the last in the 440 years after Christ's Nativity. According to which reckoning this Account continued for the space of 1214 years ; the memory of which remains, though the name of *Olympia* be not found in *Peloponnesus*, the Town at this day being called by the name of *Sconri*. 3. *Pisa*, whose people followed *Nestor* to the Wars of *Troy* ; and in their return were by Tempest driven to the Coasts of *Italy*, where they built the City *Piso* in *Tuscany*. 4. *Tornefe*, a new Town, or the new name of some ancient City ; from whence the adjoining Promontory, of old called *Chelonites*, is now called *Cabo di Tornefe*.

3. *MESSENIA* hath on the West *Arcadia*, on the North *Elis*, on the South the Sea, and on the East *Laconia*. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Messene*, situate on *Sinus Messeniacus*, now called *Golfo di Corone*. 2. *Pylus*, where *Nestor* was King, now called *Navarino*, a desolate and poor Village not worth the noting. Of which thus *Ovid* speaking in the name of *Penelope*.

*Nos Pylon, antiqui Neleia Nestoris arva,
Missimus ; incerta est reddita fama Pylo.*

To *Pylon*, aged *Nestor*'s Seat, we sent,
But could not hear from thence how matters went.

Near to it there is now an excellent Harbour, capable of 2000 Ships at once, and which is now thought the best Port in the *Moræa*. And a Town of good strength call'd *Navarino*, which has 2 strong Forts built by the *Venetians* for the Security of the Town and Harbour. In the year 1498, it sustained and over-came a sharp Siege from the *Turks* ; about 2 years after, it fell twice in a short time into the hands of the *Turks*, who were Masters of it till the year 1686, when the *Venetians* recovered it from the *Turks*, who call this place *Javarin*. The *Turks* took it in 1500.

3. *Methun*, or *Methona*, seated in the most Southern part of this *Peninsula*, from whence unto the *Isthmus* which joyneth it to the rest of *Greece* are reckoned 175 Italian miles. The Town is commodiously seated in a Demi-

Demi-Island, washed on the one side with the Sea, and so well fortified toward the Land, that in the opinion of most men it is thought impregnable; adorned on the South-side with a large and capacious Bay, about three miles wide, secure from all winds except the North, and shut up with a little Island called anciently *Oenusa*, but now *Sapienza*, which makes it one of the safest Harbours in all these Seas. There be 3 Islands, *Sapienza*, *Caprera*, and *Venetica*, lying in a straight Line from East to West, against the Bay of *Modon*. It was possessed once by the State of *Venice*, but conquered by the Turk, after many sharp and fierce Assaults, *An.* 1500, both *Pylus* (*Navarino*) and *Corone* yielding on the noise thereof. The best Retreat since that time of the *Turkish* Navies, and the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish* *Sanzack*, who hath the Government of this whole Province of *Morcia* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*. This place is strong by nature, and well fortified by Art. This City was Ravish'd from the *Greek* Empire in the year 1124, and being retaken the next year from them, they recovered it in 1204. *Bajazet* 2. besieged it with an Army of 150000 men in the year 1498, and after a stout resistance took it by the negligence of the defendants, who ran to entertain some Ships newly arrived, and left the Walls unguarded, which the Infidels observing, soon turn'd their Joy into Sorrow. In the year 1659, *Morofini* took it, and being restored to the *Turks* in the year 1686, it was again taken by the *Venetians*, and is now in their Hands. 4. *Corone*, or *Coron*, the chief Town on the Bay of *Messene*, called from hence *Golfo di Corone*, and the last which held out against the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, once Lords of all the Sea Coasts of *Peloponnesus*. *Coron* lies 10 miles East of *Modon*, upon a large Bay call'd by its own name. It is of a Triangular form, and has on the East Angle a strong Castle built by the *Venetians* in 1463 for a Magazine. It came first into their hands in 1204. It was taken from them by *Bajazet* in 1498, in the year 1533, it was taken by *Andrew Doria*, and Garrisoned with *Spaniards* who soon after deserted it. In the year 1685, the *Venetians* retook it, after a defence of 40 days, and found in it 120 pieces of Canon, 60 of which were Brass, with great quantities of Provisions and Ammunition. 5. *Cyparissi*, now called *Arcadia*, from when the Bay adjoining hath the name of *Golfo di Arcadia*. Here is also the Promontory called of old *Coryphasum*; now *Cabo Zunchi*.

The people of this small Province had once a great sway in the whole *Peninsula*. At first they were confederate with the *Spartans* in so strict a League, that they mutually sent young Virgins to one another for their publick Sacrifice: but afterwards Corrivals with them for the supreme power. The *Spartans*, at the last getting the upper hand of them, oppressed them with a miserable Servitude. The occasion this: In the confines of this Country stood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Messenians*, *Spartans*, and *Dores*. It happened that some *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Messenians* here ravished: which abuse the *Spartans* pretended to be the ground of their War; the true reason indeed being their Covetousness of the sole Empire. This War broke out three several times. The first continued twenty years; in which space the *Lacedemonians*, fearing their absence would hinder the supply of Children in the City, sent a company of their ablest young men home to accompany their Wives. Their Off-spring were called *Parthenii*, who coming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, sailed into *Italy*, and there built *Tarentum*. The second being of 23 years continuance, was raised and maintained by *Aristomenes*, one of the chief men of the *Messenians*; in which they prospered till *Aristocrates*, King of *Arcadia*, one of their Confederates, revolted to side with *Lacedemon*. Then began they to decline, and *Aristomenes* was thrice taken Prisoner, still miraculously escaping. His last Imprisonment was in a Dungeon, where by chance espying a

Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her Tail. The Fox running away, guided *Aristomenes* after; till the straightness of the Hole by which he went out made him leave his hold, and fall to scraping with his Nails, which exercise he never left till he had made the Hole passable, and so escaped; and having a while upheld his falling Country, died in *Rhodes*. The third War was like drops after a Tempest; in which the *Messenians* being finally subdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become Slaves unto the *Spartans*, who put them to all Drudgeries and servile Works; as they did the *Helots*, whom they counted as their Bondmen. And to this life some of them did apply themselves with so much Oblsequiousness, that at last it grew into a Proverb, *Messina servilior*, that such a one was more servile, or more slavishly used, than these poor *Messenians*. But the greatest part of them not brooking that heavy Yoke, passed into *Sicily*, and there built the City of *Messana*. Others were planted in *Naupactum*, by the State of *Athens*; the rest dispersed up and down in all parts of *Greece*: few of them left in their own Country, till *Epaminondas* having vanquished the *Lacedemonians* at the Battle of *Leuctra* restored them to their ancient Possessions.

4. *ARCADIA* hath on the East *Laconia*, on the West *Elis* and *Messene*, on the North *Achia propria*, and on the South the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arcas*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Calisto*; but was formerly called *Pelasgia*: the people whereof thought themselves more ancient than the Moon.

*Orta prius Luna, de se si creditur ipsi,
A magno, tellus Arcade nomen habet.*

The land which of great *Arcas* took its name
Was ere the Moon, if we will credit Fame.

The chief Cities are; 1. *Mantineia*, nigh unto which the *Theban* Army, consisting of 30000 Foot and 3000 Horse, routed the Army of the *Spartans* and *Athenians*, consisting of 25000 Foot and 2000 Horse. In this Battle *Epaminondas*, that famous Leader, received his death's wound, and not long after died. At his last Gaspe, one of his Friends bemoaning his untimely death, *Alas*, said he; *thou diest*, *Epaminondas*, *and leavest behind thee no Children*. Nay replied he, two Daughters will I leave behind me, the victory of *Leuctra*, and this other at *Mantineia*. It was afterward called *Antigonica*, in honour of *Antigonus*, Tutor or Protector of *Phillip* the Father of *Persius* King of *Macedon*; but by command of the Emperor *Adrian* restored to its old name again, and is now called *Mantegna*. *Mantineia* lies 25 miles North of *Megalopolis*. 2. *Megalopolis* the Birth-place of *Polybius*, that excellent Historian. The one half of it had sometimes the name of *Orestia*, from the lodging of *Orestes* in it: the whole is now called *Leontari*, on what cause I know not. 3. *Phialia*, towards the Sea. 4. *Psophis*, so called from *Psophis*, one of the Sons of *Lycan*, once King of this Country, slain by *Jupiter*. 5. *Stymphalus*, situate near a Lake and River of the same name, where *Hercules* slew the *Stymphalian* Birds; so great in number and in Body; that they darkened the Sun beams, and terribly infested this little Province, till driven thence by *Hercules*. Here was also in this Town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Stymphalida*. 6. *Tegæa*, famous for the Temple of *Pan*, here worshipped; and from hence called *Tegens*; more for the War made upon the *Tegætes*, or people hereof, by the *Lacedemonians*; who thinking themselves assured of Victory; brought with them store of Chains and Fetters wherewith to lead Captive their conquered Enemies; but being overcome in Battel, were themselves bound with them, and forced as Slaves to till the Grounds of these *Tegætes*. Here is also in this Country the famous River *Stryx*, whose water, for the poisonous taste, was called the water of Hell; by which,

U u u

Poets

Poets feign that the Gods use to swear, as may be every where observed; and that what God soever swore by *Stryx* falsely, he was banished from Heaven, and prohibited Nectar for 1000 years.

This Country, for the fitness of it for Pasturage and Grazing, hath made it the Subject of many worthy and witty discourses, especially that of Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom I cannot but make honourable mention: a Book which besides its excellent Language, rare Contrivances, and delectable Stories, hath in it all the Strains of Poësie, comprehendeth the universal Art of speaking, and to them which can discern and will observe, affordeth notable Rules for Demeanor, both private and publick. Which notable Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the *English Heliodore*, so the ingenious Author of the History of *Melinus* and *Ariana* may deservedly be called the *French Sidney*.

5. *LACONIA* is bounded on the West with *Arcadia*, on the East and South with the Sea, on the North with *Argolis*. Called first *Lelegia*, from the *Leleges*, by *Strabo* said to be the first Inhabitants of it; afterwards *Oebalia*, from *Oebalus* adding of *Lacedamon*; and finally *Laconia*, of the *Lacones* who succeeded the *Leleges* in the possession hereof, on their removal into the Islands of the lesser *Asia*. It is by some Writers also called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, and the Fields very spacious; yet for the most part not well tilled, in regard of the many Hills and Mountains which overthwart it. Well watered with the River *Eurotas*, and memorable for many fair Bays and Promontories: of which the principal are the Promontories of *Malea*, and *Tanaria*, now called *Cabo Malio* and *Cabo Matapan*; (the most Southern Cape in the *Morea*) and of the Bays, that called *Golfo di Colochina*, the *Sinus Laconicus* of the Ancients, into which the River *Eurotas* (now better known by the name of *Vasilipotamo*, or the *Kingly River*) pours his gentle Streams. The nature of the people we shall find in *Sparta*.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Leuctra*, situate on the Sea-side, near the Bay of *Messene*: of which name were two others in *Greece*, the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*; but this last most memorable. 2. *Amycla*, so called from *Amyclas*, the third King of *Sparta*, by whom it was first founded; renowned afterwards for the Birth of *Castor* and *Pollux*, the Sons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the Foundress of the City of *Amycla* in *Calabria Superior*, at first a Colony of this: distant from *Lacedamon* about 20 Furlongs. 3. *Thulana*, nigh to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* slew the Monster *Hydra*; and not far off Mount *Tanarus*, near the Promontory *Tanaria*, in which the Natives shew a Cave, (believed in former times to be a Descent into Hell) out of which the Poets feign that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4. *Salassia*, where *Antigonus* vanquished *Cleomenes*, the last King of *Sparta*. 5. *Epidaurus*, (seated on the Bay named *Golfo di Napoli*) now called *Malvasia*: a Town well built, and very well peopled; remarkable for the sweet Wines called *Malvesey* or *Malmsey*, sent from hence into all other parts in great abundance. An Archbishops See, seated on a Rock on the East shoar of the *Morea*, 60 Italian miles South East of *Napoli di Romania*, very strong by nature, it being encompassed with the Sea, and joyned to the Continent, only by a Timber-bridge to the West, to the North West it has a small quantity of Ground, but fenced from it by a Tripple-Wall, and a Castle seated on a Rock, being built to repel any Force. In the year 1204, this strong place was given in Fee to *William*, a French Count, by *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and then Emperor of *Constantinople*. This Count gave up his Right to the *Venetians*, who possess'd it till the year 1537, it was taken from them by the *Turks*. The *Venetians* retook and plundered it during the War of *Can-*

dina. At this time it is the only place the *Turks* have in the *Morea*, all the rest being recovered by the *Venetians* from them. 6. *Sparta*, so called from *Sparta*, the Son or Brother of *Phoroneus*, the second King of *Argos*. the Founder of it, but afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Lacedamon*, the second King of this Country, it took that name also; promiscuously known by both in the best Authors. One of the Eyes of *Greece*, and a famous Common-wealth; but at first governed by Kings as most of the *Greek* Cities in ancient times. *Tyndarus*, the Father of *Castor* and *Pollux*, was once King hereof. After whose death, and the death of the said famous Brethren, *Menelaus* was admitted King of *Sparta*, or *Lacedamon*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, their Sister. And though *Nicostratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by another *Venter*, succeeded after his decease; yet the *Spartans* soon rejected them, and received *Orestes* the Son of *Agamemnon* to be their King, marrying him to *Hermione*, the daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and consequently the Niece of *Tyndarus*. *Tysamenus*, the Son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, succeeded next; in whose time the *Heraclidae*, or posterity of *Hercules*, returned into *Greece*, under the conduct of *Temenus*, *Ctesiphon*, and *Aristodemus*, Sons of *Aristomachus*: whereof the first possessed himself by force of Arms of the City *Argos*, the second of *Messene*, and the third conquered the City and State of *Sparta*; which dying very shortly after, he left unto his two Sons *Euristhenes* and *Procles*, the Roots of the two Royal Families which jointly and in common governed the affairs of *Sparta*; first absolutely as Sovereign Princes, without any controul, afterwards at the direction of the Senate, and finally under the Command and Check of those popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But because these *Spartan* Kings in each several period were for the most part men of Action, and often mentioned in the Histories of the elder time; I will first make a Catalogue of them, and then subjoyn such Observations and Remembrances as I think most pertinent.

The Kings of *SPARTA* of the first Family.

A. M.

1. *Eurotas*, the first King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Eurotas*.
2. *Lacedamon*, Brother of *Eurotas*, from whom the City of *Sparta* was called *Lacedamon*.
3. *Amyclas*, Son of *Lacedamon*, the Founder of *Amycla* a *Laconian* City.
4. *Argalus* Son of *Amyclas*.
5. *Cynorta*, Son of *Argalus*.
6. *Oebalus* Son of *Cynorta*, from whom a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
7. *Hippocoon*, Son of *Oebalus*.
- 2700 8. *Tyndarus*, Brother of *Hippocoon*, in whose life he was King of *Oebalia* only.
9. *Castor* and *Pollux*, Sons of *Tyndarus*, famous amongst the *Argonauts*.
- 2740 10. *Menelaus*, Son of *Atræus*, and Brother of *Agamemnon*, Kings of *Mycena*, together with *Helena* his Wife, the Daughter of *Tyndarus*, whose Rape occasioned the Destruction of *Troy*.
- 2770 11. *Nicostratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by a former Wife.
12. *Orestes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, and *Hermione* his Wife, Daughter of *Helena* and *Menelaus*.
13. *Tysamenus*, Son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, who, being outed of *Sparta* by the *Heraclidae*, reigned in *Achaia*, and left his Kingdom there unto his Posterity.

The

The Kings of *SPARTA* of the Race
of the *HERACLIDÆ*.

1. *Aristodemus*, the first King of the Race of *Hercules*,
left the Kingdom jointly to his two Sons,

2848	1. <i>Euristhenes</i> .	2848	1. <i>Procles</i> .
2890	2. <i>Agis</i> , from whom this Line were called <i>A-</i> <i>gida</i> .		2. <i>Euripon</i> , from whom this Line were called <i>Eur-</i> <i>ipontide</i> .
2891	3. <i>Echestratus</i> .		3. <i>Prytanis</i> .
2926	4. <i>Labeias</i> .		4. <i>Eunomus</i> .
2963	5. <i>Dryffus</i> .		5. <i>Polydeites</i> .
2992	6. <i>Agessilaus</i> .	3076	6. <i>Charilaus</i> .
3046	7. <i>Archelaus</i> .	3140	7. <i>Nicandrus</i> .
3096	8. <i>Teleclus</i> .	3176	8. <i>Theopompus</i> .
3136	9. <i>Alcumenes</i> .		9. <i>Archidamus</i> .
3173	10. <i>Polydorus</i> .		10. <i>Zenxidamus</i> .
	11. <i>Eurycrates</i> .		11. <i>Anaxidamus</i> .
	12. <i>Anexandrus</i> .		12. <i>Archidamus II</i> .
	13. <i>Eurycrates II</i> .		13. <i>Agasides</i> .
	14. <i>Leonidas</i> .		14. <i>Ariston</i> .
	15. <i>Anaxandrides</i> .		15. <i>Demaratus</i> .
	16. <i>Cleomenes</i> .	3447	16. <i>Leontichides</i> .
	17. <i>Leonidas II</i> .	3478	17. <i>Archidamus III</i> .
3470	18. <i>Plitarchus</i> .	3520	18. <i>Agis</i> .
3471	19. <i>Plistonax</i> .	3547	19. <i>Agessilaus</i> .
3539	20. <i>Pausanias</i> .	3588	20. <i>Archidamus IV</i> .
3553	21. <i>Agessipolis</i> .	3611	21. <i>Agis II</i> .
3567	22. <i>Cleombrotus</i> .		22. <i>Endamidas</i> .
3576	23. <i>Agessipolis II</i> .		23. <i>Archidamus V</i> .
3577	24. <i>Cleomenes II</i> .		24. <i>Endamidas II</i> .
3611	25. <i>Arius</i> .	3700	25. <i>Agis III</i> .
3655	26. <i>Acrotatus</i> .		26. <i>Eurydamidas</i> , the last King of the Line of the <i>Euripontide</i> , slain by <i>Cleo-</i> <i>menes</i> , the last of the other line also.
	27. <i>Arius II</i> .		
	28. <i>Leonidas III</i> .		
	29. <i>Cleombrotus II</i> .		
3714	30. <i>Cleomenes</i> 3. the last of the Line of the <i>Agide</i> ; who, having slain <i>Eurydani-</i> <i>das</i> , the Son of <i>Agis</i> the third, substituted his Brother <i>Epi-</i> <i>clides</i> , in his place. But being himself short- ly after vanquished by <i>Antigonus</i> of <i>Macedo-</i> <i>nia</i> , and forced to fly his Country with his Wife and Children, the Government of the <i>Heracleide</i> ended, after it had continued here for the space of Nine Hundred Years, or thereabouts.		

Under these Kings the Government at first was *ἀγαν Μοναρχικόν* as *Plutarch* termeth it, sufficiently *Monarchical*, if it were not more. Under *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the second House, the people, finding the Reins of Government let loose, began to murmur and grow too head-strong. To bridle whom, and to restrain the Kings withal, (should they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus*, the Protector of *Charilaus*, the sixth King of that House, did ordain the Senate, committing to them the supreme Power in matters Civil, and leaving to the Kings the ordering all Military and Sacred business. To curb the Insolencies of this Senate, who quickly found their own strength, *Theopompus*, the eighth King of that House, with the consent of *Polydorus*, the tenth King of the other, instituted a new Magistracy chosen out of the Common People, whom they called the *Ephori*; which grew in time to such an height of Pride and Tyranny, as not only to control the Senators, but to censure, fine, imprison, depose, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the Spirit of Sedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedæmon* was at first a Monarchy under Kings, then

an Aristocracy under the command of the Senate, next a Democracy under the *Ephori*, and finally, by those popular Officers made so plain a Tyranny, that *Aristotle* and *Plato*, two great Common-wealths-men, who died before they had embroiled their hands in the blood of their Kings, call it in plain terms *τυραννικὴ ἢ τι τυραννικὴ* a most absolute Tyranny. What think you these Men would have called it, had they lived to see *Lacædas* the third deposed, and *Agis* the third of that name also most barbarously murdered by these popular Villains?

But being the Foundation of this Common-wealth was first laid, and the good Laws and Politick Constitutions by which it did so long subsist in great Power and Splendour established, by the Wit and Power of *Lycurgus*, as before we said; we are to know concerning him, that he was the Son of *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the second House, slain in a popular Tumult by the Common people. Who, finding by this Essay, that the people were become too head strong for the Kings to govern, unless reduced to extremum Bondage by their Kings, which he wished not neither, took the advantage of the Minority of *Charilaus* to new mould the Government; and what he could not do by fair means, to effect by Arms, forcing this *Charilaus*, though his Nephew, when he came to age, to flee for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleased, and settled such a Form of Government as himself well fancied, the better to decline the Envy of so great a Change, he got leave to Travel, binding the People by an Oath to observe all his Laws until his return; and, being gone, commanded at his death, that his Ashes should be cast into the Sea, least being carried back to *Sparta*, the people might conceive themselves released from their Oath. By means whereof his Laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Common-wealth did flourish in all prosperity. The particulars of which Institutions he that lists to see, may find them specified at large by *Plutarch* in the Life of *Lycurgus*. Suffice it that the Discipline was so sharp and strict, that many went into the Wars for no other reason than on a hope to rid themselves from so hard a Life; and that *Dionysius*, returning hence to the City of *Athens*, gave out that he returned from Men to Women, *ἐκ τῶν ἀνδρῶν εἰς τὰς γυναῖκες* and being asked in what part of *Greece* he had met with the complearest men, made answer that he could no-where meet with men, but that he had found some Boys amongst the *Spartans*. A Cynical and rugged Answer, but such as carried a great deal of Judgment in it; the *Spartans* being more stout and resolute in all their Actions, and less effeminate in their Lives, than the rest of the *Greeks*. But besides the strictness of the Discipline under which they lived, there was another thing which made them wish for Wars abroad; namely, the little or no power which either the Kings or People had in Civil matters, or Affairs of State, entirely left to the disposing of the Senate and Power of the *Ephori*. So that the Kings, having by the Laws the Command of their Armies, were willing to engage in War upon all occasions, and the Common people as desirous to attend them in such Employments as the Kings could wish. Upon these grounds War was made a Trade amongst them; beginning with the *Helots*, a neighbouring People, then with the rest of the *Lacedæmonians*, afterwards quarrelling with the *Messinians*, their old Confederates: all which they severally subdued, and made subject to them. In the War which *Xerxes* made against the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the first, of the elder House, went forth to aid them; slain at the Straights of *Thermopylae*, courageously fighting for the Liberty of *Greece*; and when it was thought fit to set upon the *Persian* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admiral did command in chief. In pursuit of this War against the *Persians*, *Pausanias* and *Agessilaus* were of most renown: the first in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*: the other in making War upon them in their own Dominions. Freed

from the *Persians*, they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they looked on as their Rivals in point of Sovereignty and Glory. Hence the long War betwixt these Cities, called *Bellum Peloponnesiacum*, managed for the most part in *Peloponnesus*, from thence transferred into *Sicily*, and at last ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an Aristocracy under thirty Magistrates of their own appointment, commonly called the *Thirty Tyrants*. Proud of this fortunate Success, their next Quarrel was with the *Bæotians*, the conquered *Athenians* covertly, and the *Persians* openly assisting the Enemy. Here their Prosperity began to leave them. For besides many small Defeats, *Epaminondas* the *Theban* so discomfited them at the Overthrows of *Leuctra* and *Mantineia*, that *Sparta* it self was in danger of utter Ruin. Not long after happened the *Holy War*, chiefly undertook against the *Phocians*, wherein also they made a Party: but this War being ended by King *Philip*, they scarce breathed more Freedom than he gave Air to. But when *Alexander's* Captains fought for the Empire of their Master, all these flourishing Republicks were either totally swallowed into, or much defaced by the Kingdom of *Macedon*. The *Lacedæmonians* held the chief strength of a Town to consist in the Valour of the People; and therefore would never suffer *Sparta* to be walled, till the times immediately following the Death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not those Fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Dofon*, King of *Macedon*, who, having vanquished *Cleomenes*, King of *Sparta*, entred the Town, and was the first Man that ever was received into it as Conqueror. So much different were the present *Spartans* from the Valour and Courage of their Ancestors. *Cleomenes* being forced to forsake his Country, and the Race of the *Heraclidæ* failing in him, they became a Prey to *Machanidus* and *Nabis*, two wicked Tyrants; from whom they were no sooner freed, but they were made subject (in a manner) to the Power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town was so weak and inconsiderable, that it was not able to resist the poorest Enemy; now a small Burrough called *Misithra*. And so I leave them to the thoughts of their former Glories; having now nothing else to boast of but the Fame and Memory of their Actions in former Times.

How great soever it was of old, saith the Noble *Coronelli*, it is now reduced to a very small Circuit, and a few Inhabitants, who are exposed to so great Heats by reason of Mount *Tagatus*, which lies very near it due North, and cuts off the cooling Brizes, and augments the heat of the Sun to that degree, that few years pass without a Plague. On the top of that Mountain stands a strong Citadel which was never taken by Force, built by the *Despotes* in the declining of the *Greek* Empire. *Mahomet* the second was the first of the *Ottoman* Princes who conquered this City about the year 1458. In the year 1473 it was taken by *Benedict Colleone*, a *Venetian* General. In the year 1687, they again recovered the intire possession of it, the *Bassa* of *Misithra* Articuling to march away with only what the Garrison could carry. Monsieur *Guilletiere*, a *French* Gentleman, found the height of the Pole here 35. 26. This City is still the See of an Archbishop, and that perhaps has contributed something to its preservation.

6. *ARGOLIS*, so called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South with *Laconia*, on the West with *Corinthia* and *Achaia propria*, on the East and North with the Sea. A Territory remarkable for a most excellent breed of Horses, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Argos*, founded by *Argos*, the fourth King of this Country; the chief of this Kingdom. Memorable as for other things, so, 1. for the Death of *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*; who, having forced his Entry into it, was here ignobly slain, after all his Victories, by the hands of an old Woman,

throwing a Tile at him from the top of an House: 2. for the long Race of Kings hereof, from *Inachus* the contemporary of our Father *Abraham*, Anno 2003, unto *Acrisius* their last King: whose Daughter *Danae*, being shut up in a Tower of Brass, was deflowered by *Jupiter*; to whom she bare the renowned *Perseus*, so memorized in ancient Poets. But *Perseus*, having by misfortune slain his Grandfather, the old King *Acrisius* quitted the City of *Argos* as unlucky to him, and transferred the Kingdom to *Mycenæ*, a City of his own Foundation, and so better fancied, which was by means hereof the second City of esteem in this little Province; growing in small time unto so great Riches, that it got the name of *dites Mycenæ*, as appeareth by *Horace*, in whom the Horses of *Argos* and the Wealth of *Mycenæ* are placed in one Verse together:

Aptum dicit equis Argos, ditesque Mycenæ.
For Horses *Argos* is of Fame,
For Wealth *Mycenæ* hath the Name.

3. *Træzen*, situate on the *Sinus Sironicus*, (now called *Golfo di Engia*) the Royal Seat of *Pittheus*, the Grandfather of *Theseus* by the Mother's side, who was born herein: from whence the Town in *Ovid* hath sometime the name of *Pittheia Træzen*, and *Theseus*, many times is called *Træzenius Heros*; as *Hercules* had the name of *Tyrinthius Heros*, from, 4. *Tyrinthia*, another City of this Province, in which he was nursed. 5. *Nemea*, where *Hercules* slew the dreadful Lion which annoyed this Country. In honour of which noble Act were instituted in time following the *Nemean* Games, which continued of great Fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exercises were, Running with swift Horses; Whorlbats, Running on Foot, Quoiting, Wrestling, Darting, Shooting. Some have referred the Original of these Games to one *Opheltes*, a *Lacedæmonian*, in whose Honour they conceive them instituted; and others fetch it higher, from the War of *Thebes*: But this I take to be the more allowable Opinion. 6. *Epidaurus*, on the Sea side, famous for the Temple of *Æsculapins*, and the Cure of all sorts of Diseases there; so called from *Epidaurus*, the Son of *Argus*, the Founder of it. Of the same name, but of a different situation from that before mentioned in *Laconia*; that being seated on the Bay called *Golfo di Napoli*, this on that of *Engia*. Once called *Melissa* and *Ampera*, at that time an Island, but by an Earthquake laid unto the Continent; now called *Pigiada*. 7. *Nauplia*, so called of *Nauplius*, King of *Eubœa*, and Father of *Palamedes*, to whom it anciently belonged. A Station then, as now, for Shipping; in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, or *Neapolis*; the richest and best traded in all this Tract, giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Napoli*, of old *Sinus Argolicus*, into which the famous River *Inachus*, having passed through the City of *Argos*, doth disgorge it self; so called from *Inachus* the Father of *Io*, and the Original and Progenitor of the Kings of *Argos* and *Mycenæ*.

Napoli di Romania is now the only Place of any strength or regard in all this Province. It is seated upon a Tongue of Land between two Bays, shut up by two small Islands, the Southern of which is its Port, secured by a Castle built on the Island, from which a Chain is drawn to shut up the Entrance. This City is washed on three sides, the North, East and South by the Billows of the Sea, built upon a high rocky Ground, and fenced with a strong Wall. The Castle in the Mouth of the South Bay is very strong too, and surrounded by the Waves of the Sea, so that Art and Nature have conspired to make it a secure and convenient Dwelling, only on the North a Hill, called *Palamide*, could command it. In the year 1205 this City was first taken by the *Venetians*, but then it was soon recovered by the *Greeks*. *Mary d'Erigane*, Relick of *Peter* Son of *Frederick Cornar*, being after this the Owner of it, and not able to defend

it against *Sultan Bajazet* resigned it to the *Venetians* in the year 1388, who defended it against *Mahomet* the second with good success about 1463 : Nor had *Solyman* the Magnificent any better success in the year 1537, in a Siege of it ; but it lying remote, and he attempting it the second time in 1539, though he could not then get it by force, yet he had it by a Treaty as the Price of a Peace. In the year 1686 the *Venetians* retook it by a Siege, to which the *Palamide* contributed very much, and they have accordingly since taken great care to secure it on that side, by taking that Hill within their Works, and building a good Fort upon it. This and *Moldavia* are the two best places on the Eastern Shore of the *Morcia*.

The Kings of *ARGOS* and *MYCENÆ*.

A.M.

- 2093 1. *Inachus*, the supposed Father of *Io*, from whom the *Gracians* are sometimes called by the name of *Inachii*.
- 2143 2. *Phoroneus*, the Son of *Inachus* and *Melissa*, from whom the said *Io* hath the name of *Phoronis* in the Poet.
- 2223 3. *Apis*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Niobe* the Daughter of *Phoroneus*, who, leaving *Greece*, went into *Aegypt*, where he taught the People Tillage, and was there worshipped afterwards in the form of an Ox.
- 2238 4. *Argus* the Son of *Apis*, and the Founder of *Argos*; in whose time Agriculture was taken up amongst the *Gracians*, from him called *Argivi*.
- 2308 5. *Crius*, by some *Picrasus*, the Son of *Argus*.
- 2363 6. *Phorbas*, the Son of *Crius*; in whose time *Atlas* and *Prometheus* are said to flourish.
- 2397 7. *Triopus*, the Son of *Phorbas*, and the Brother of another *Phorbas*, who planted himself in the Isle of *Rhodes*.
- 2442 8. *Crotopus*.
- 2464 9. *Sthenelus*, ousted of the Kingdom by
- 2475 10. *Danaus*, the Brother of *Aegyptus*; by whom being driven out of *Aegypt*, he was made King of *Argos* by consent of the People: the Father of those many Daughters got with Child by *Hercules*. From him the *Gracians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.
- 2525 11. *Lyncus*, Son of *Aegyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*.
- 2556 12. *Abas*, the Son of *Lyncus* and *Hypermetra*, the Daughter of *Danaus*.
- 2566 13. *Prætus*, the Son of *Abas*.
- 2606 14. *Acrisius*, the Brother of *Prætus*, and the Father of *Danae*; who being foretold by the Oracle that he should be slain by a Son of that Daughter, shut her up in a brazen Tower. But *Jupiter*, having corrupted the Guards with Gold, got the Lady's consent, by whom he had *Persus*, so renowned amongst the Poets and Historians of those elder times.
- 2637 15. *Persus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, exposed by his Grand-Father to the Seas, miraculously preserved, and grown into great Fame by his brave Exploits. He restored *Acrisius* to his Throne, from which he had been deposed by his Brother *Prætus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately slain the said *Acrisius*, he removed his Seat unto *Mycenæ*; where he reigned together with his Son *Sthenelus*.
- 2645 16. *Eurestheus*, the Son of *Sthenelus*, much spoken of for the difficult Tasks which, at the instigation of *Juno*, he imposed on *Hercules* his Foster-child, and the supposed Son of *Amphiryon* his Cousin-german.
- 2688 17. *Atræus* and *Thyestes*, Sons of *Pelops*, on the failing of the Line of *Persus*, succeeded in *Argos* and *Mycenæ*; infamous for their Murders and Adultery; *Thyestes* abusing the Bed of *Atræus*, and *Atræus* feasting him with the Body of his own Son, whence *Delia* *δελία* in the Proverb.
- 2753 18. *Agamemnon*, the Son of *Atræus*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the War of *Troy*, in which action there engaged Sixty-nine Kings of the *Gracians*, washed over with a Navy of 1224 Ships; killed at his coming home by *Aegisthus*, his Cousin-german.
- 2768 19. *Aegisthus*, the Son of *Thyestes*, having defiled *Clytemnestra*, the Wife of *Agamemnon*, in the time of his absence, by her procurement murdered him at his coming home, and usurped the Kingdom.
- 2775 20. *Orestes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, revenged his Father's Death on *Aegisthus* and *Clytemnestra*, his own Mother. After which falling mad, and restored again unto his Wits, he married *Hermione*, Daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the Kingdom of *Sparta* also.
- 2803 21. *Penthilus*, the Son of *Orestes*, and the last King of this Line, ousted of his Estate by the *Dores* and *Heracidae*, who made themselves Masters of all *Peloponnesus*, which they possessed until the Conquest of it by the *Macedonians*.

7. *CORINTHIA* is a little Region, lying towards the *Isthmus* or Neck of Land which joineth *Peloponnesus* to the rest of *Greece*, betwixt *Argolis* and *Achaia propria*. It containeth only the Territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitful of those Commodities which the rest of this *Peninsula* doth abound withal; as being mountainous and hilly, and, by reason of the nearness of the Sea, full of craggy Rocks. The chief, and indeed the only, Cities of note in it are, 1. *Cenchrea*, the Naval Road or Station of Ships for *Corinth*, mentioned *Acts* 18. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. in both Texts reckoned a distinct Town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was: situate on that Bay which openeth into the *Cretan* Sea, called anciently *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Gulphus di Engia*; and consequently opposite to, 2. *Lechæum*, the other Naval Road for *Corinth*, situate on the Western Bay, called of old *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now the Gulf of *Lepanto*. 3. *Corinth* it self, commodiously situate for the Command of all *Greece*, (had not not the Inhabitants been more given to Merchandize than unto the Wars) as being seated on the bottom of the Neck or *Isthmus*, the *Ionian* Sea upon the West, and the *Ægean* on the East, washing the Walls thereof, and giving it on each side a Capacious Haven; in which regard it is called by *Horace* *bimaris Corinthus*. It was in compass about eleven Miles, for Strength impregnable, for Command as powerful, Mastering both Seas on which it stood, and cutting off all passage from one half of *Greece* to the other: to which last end the Castle called *Acrocorinthus*, looking into both Seas, served exceeding fitly; and was therefore called one of the Fetters of *Greece*. The City was rich, very well Traded, and neatly built, most Houses beautified with handfom Pillars, from thence called *Corinthian*: more memorable for the Wealth of the People, and the conveniency of the Situation, than for any notable Exploits performed by them, or any great Influence which they had on the States of *Greece*. But in regard of the Wealth, Greatness, and Situation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire; *Carthago* and *Capua* being the other two. In this City lived the famous (or infamous) Whore *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachma's* for a single nights Lodging: which made *Demosthenes* cry out, *Non enim tanti pariter*, and occasioned the old By-word, *Non*

Non cuius homini contingit adire Corinthum.

'Tis not for every man's avail,
Unto *Corinth* for to fail.

Near hereunto stood the *Acrocorinthian* Mountains, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Castle called hence *Acrocorinthus*, were seated: out of which flowed the famous Fountain named *Pyrene*, of old consecrated to the Muses; by *Perseus* called *Fons Caballinus*, because feigned by the ancient Poets to have been made by the Horse *Pegasus* dashing his foot against the Rock. And on the other side hereof in the *Isthmus* were celebrated yearly the *Isthmian* Games; ordained by *Theseus* in honour of *Neptune*; in imitation of the *Olympick* devised by *Hercules* in honour of *Jupiter*. The Exercises were much the same, and the reward no other than a Garland of Oaken Boughs: yet they drew yearly a great resort of people to them; partly to exercise themselves and behold the Sports; and partly to sacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard-by a famous Temple.

As for the Fortunes of this City, it was at first called *Ephyre*, at that time a small and obscure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus*, the Son of *Pelops*, it took the name of *Corinth*; governed by him and his posterity, till the coming of the *Heraclidae* into *Peloponnesus*, at what time one *Aletes* of the Race of *Hercules* possessed himself hereof, with the name of King, *A. M.* 2849. Twelve Princes of his Line enjoyed it for the space of 220 years and upwards: when the House failing in the person of *Automanes*, they were governed by temporary Officers, like the *Archontes* of *Athens*. Continuing under this Government 124 years, the City was seized on by one *Cypselus*, *A. M.* 3294, who left it to his Son *Periander*, one of the seven wise men of *Greece*, counted a Tyrant in those times, for no other reason than that he had suppressed the Popular Government. After whose death, *Anno* 3364, the City did recover its former Liberty. In the Bussle betwixt *Athens* and *Lacedæmon*, and other the Estates of *Greece*, for the Superiority, it did little meddle; the aim of this people being Wealth, not Honour; not interested in any Action of renown in all those times, but in the sending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracusans* against the Tyrant *Dionisius*, who did Lord it over them. It was subdued, together with the rest, by the Kings of *Macedon*; and with the rest restored to Liberty by the Power of *Rome*: under whom growing still more rich, and withal more insolent, they abused certain *Roman* Embassadors. But *irasci populo Romano nemo sapienter potest*, as is said in *Livie*, which the *Corinthians* found too true; the City being besieged, sacked, and burnt unto the Ground by *Lucius Mummius*, a *Roman* Consul, *Anno* *V. C.* 607, *A. M.* 3804, 144 years before Christ, when it had stood 952 years, as *Veljeus Paterculus* observes, so that it was built *A. M.* 2852. In the burning whereof there were consumed so many goodly Statues of Gold, Silver, Brass, and other Metals, that being melted into a Lump, they made up by that fatal chance, that so much estimated Metal called *Æs Corinthium*, more highly prized in *Rome* than Gold or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great esteem in the time of the Emperors, converted by Saint *Paul* to the Christian Faith; and having flourished a long time in Pride and Pleasures, decayed by little and little, till it came to nothing, and is now a small Burrough called *Crato*. It is called at this day by the *Greeks* *Corinto*, and by the *Turks* *Gerame*; to continue down its story where our Learned Author leaves it, some attribute the rebuilding of it to *Julius Cæsar*, and others to *Augustus*. It was converted by St. *Paul* about the 12th year of the Reign of *Claudius*, *Anno Christi* 52, confirmed by *Clemens Romanus* about the year 97, after this it was seized by *Roger* King of *Naples* in the year 1148, but *Emanuel* then Emperor of the East, soon re-

cover'd it by the assistance of the *Venetians*, and in 1151, he was glad to sue to that Emperor for a Peace. After this it was put under Despots, by whom it was resigned to the *Venetians*, and from them it was Ravish'd by *Mahomet* II. Emperor of the *Turks* in the year of Christ 1458. The *Venetians* made several attempts to regain the possession of it to no good purpose; but time and the oppression of the *Turks*, has deprived them of the Honour of being Masters of this Noble and Ancient City, which in 200 years was by them brought to a poor Village of about 20 thatched Cottages, and these too which the Castle of *Corinth* in the year 1687, were wrested out of their hands by the Victorious Arms of that Common-wealth. Mr. *Wheeler* saith it is now called *Corintha*, and is situate on the Right hand of the *Isthmus*, on the *Peloponnesian* shoar, 2 miles from the *Corinthian* Bay, and 6 or 7 from the *Saronick*, having *Athens* East by South, *Parassus* North, it is not big enough to be called a City, but may pass for a considerable Country Town, the Town lies North West of the Castle towards *Lepanto*, upon the descent of an Hill, half a score Houses in a knot, and more Spruce than ordinary, it has two Mosques and one Church, at which the Archbishop Lives. Its Latitude is 38. 14. So far he, page 439.

Having thus spoken of the several Estates of *Peloponnesus*, it resteth that we speak somewhat of the Estates of the whole, varied according to the Fortunes of those particular, which had most Influence on the same. The Affairs hereof were a long time swayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, restrained afterwards to the Territories of that City only. But when the Kings of *Argos* came in place and power, it depended much upon their pleasures; from *Apis* the third King whereof, (if not rather from *Apis* the fourth King of *Sicyon*) in the opinion of some Writers, it was named *Apia*. But *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, coming into *Greece*, and marrying *Hippodamia*, Daughter of *Oenonius* King of *Elis*, became the most powerful Prince of all this Peninsula, taking from him the name of *Peloponnesus*. The Kingdom of *Mycenæ*, growing into power and Credit, had the next turn in swaying the affairs hereof for a certain season; as after that the *Dores* and *Heraclidae*, possessed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Messene*. The *Spartans*, getting the Preheminence over all the rest, were the next who governed the Affairs of it, and they held it long; having first conquered *Laconia*, and subverted the Estate of *Messene*, by means whereof, and by their fortunate Success against the *Persians*, they became almost absolute in their Commands, without any Competitor. But their Power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas* in the *Theban* War, the petit States hereof began to take heart again, and stand upon their own Legs; as they did a while, till the Kings of *Macedon*, succeeding *Alexander* the Great, brought them once more under, and made them Fellow-Servants with their *Spartan* Masters. In the Confusions which ensued in *Macedon* amongst the Competitors for that Kingdom, *Patras* and *Dyme*, two Cities of *Achaia propria*, first united them in a strong League of Amity, at such time as *Phyrrhus* first went into *Italy*: into which Confederacy the Cities of *Tritea* and *Pheræ* shortly after came; and not long after that of *Ægira*, and the rest of *Achaia propria*. Their Affairs were first governed by two Prætors with Advice of the Senate, as afterwards by one alone with the like Advice, of which *Marcus Carinensis* was the first, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the second. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this new Common-wealth increasing by the Vertue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Træzenians*, *Argives* and *Megarians* became Members of it, maintaining gallantly the Liberties of *Peloponnesus*, till finally mastered by the *Romans*. In the Division of whole Empire it fell, with all the rest of *Greece* to the *Constantinopolitans*; and in the declining of their Fortunes, when the *Latins* got possession of the Imperial

Imperial City, most of the Sea-Coasts of it were allotted to the State of *Venice*; the Inland parts formerly parcelled out amongst many Princes whom they called *Despots*, continuing as before they were. By *Izabel*, a Daughter of one of these *Despots*, (and as it seems the chief among them) married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *James* the first, and Father of *James* the second King of *Majorca*, the Title of Prince of *Majorca* came into that House; used by them and the rest of these Petit Princes, till all together were made a Prey to the *Turkish* Tyrants, *Mahomet* the Great, and *Bajazet* the second, by whom they were wholly conquered. For howsoever *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Brethren of that unfortunate Prince *Constantinus Palaeologus*, had fled hither at the taking of *Constantinople*, and were received and obeyed by those Petit Princes: yet being unable to hold out against the Conqueror, they became his Tributaries. But their falling out amongst themselves, and neglecting then to send in the Tribute agreed upon, gave *Mahomet* the Great occasion to invade the Country, and under colour of aiding one Brother against the other, to destroy them both, as he did accordingly: *Demetrius* being carried Prisoner to *Constantinople*, and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponnesus*, and fly to *Italy*, Anno 1457. Such Towns hereof as belonged to the State of *Venice* followed the same Fortune also in the time of *Bajazet*, by whom they were all taken at the last, and the whole Country brought under his obedience, Anno 1500, or thereabouts. Governed ever since that time by a *Turkish* Sanzack under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, who hath his Residence at *Modon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horse to secure the Country, and 700000 Aspers (that is to say, 14000 Crowns) a year for his Entertainment. The *Venicians* have within the space of three years last past, recovered the whole *Morea*, out of the hands of the *Turks*. An account of which I have given in the continuance of the History of the several Cities. *Monsieur Coronelli*, Geographer to this Republick, hereupon published a Geographical Description of the principal Cities in it, from which I have Transcribed many things.

2. ACHAEA.

ACHAEA is bounded on the East with the *Aegean* Sea, on the West with *Epirus*, on the North with *Thessaly*, on the South with *Peloponnesus* and the Seas thereof. Called anciently *Hellas* from *Helles* the Son of *Deucalion*; but whence it had the name of *Achaia*, is not yet agreed on: though sure I am that from hence the Inhabitants of it were called *Achivi*, (a name communicated afterwards to all the *Graecians*) to difference them from the *Achai* of *Achaia propria*.

The Country is famous in the Authors of the elder times, more for the Gallantry of the Men, than any great goodness of the Soil and place: yet that is sufficiently memorable for the Hill *Hymettus*, swarming with Bees, plentiful of the sweetest Honey, and rich in Mines of excellent Marble; as also for the River *Cephissus*, which runneth almost through the whole length hereof; divided into two main Streams, of which the one is called *Asopus*, the other retaineth its first name. Upon the Banks hereof stood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Deucalion* did repair to be directed in the Restauration of Mankind, as the Poets Fable.

It was divided anciently into these seven Parts; viz. 1. *Attica*, 2. *Megaris*, 3. *Boeotia*, 4. *Phocis*, 5. *Locris*, 6. *Doris*, and 7. *Aetolia*. A Division now as much divided as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Turks* into that of *Lakadina*, of which more anon.

1. *ATTICA* hath on the West *Megaris* and some part of *Boeotia*, on all other parts encompassed with the Sea: so called from *Athens*, the chief City. The Soil for the most part is very barren and craggy; yet by the Arms and Industry of the people made both rich and famous; insomuch as the yearly Revenues of the

State of *Athens* were 1200 Talents. The Money current in this Country was commonly stamped with an Ox, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applied to such Lawyers as were bribed to say nothing in their Clients Cause. Not much unlike to which was the proverb rising from the Coin of *Aegina* (an Isle adjoining) stamped with the figure of a Snail, viz. *Virtutem & Spem vincunt Testudines*.

Places of most observation in it were, 1. *Phyla*, a strong Fortress on the Borders of *Boeotia*, surprised by *Thrasibulus* and others of the banished *Athenians*, during the Government of the thirty Tyrants: the taking whereof was the first step towards their own and then Country's Liberty, which soon after followed. 2. *Eleusis* on the Borders of *Megaris*, almost impreguably fortified by the thirty Tyrants when they had the command of *Athens*, by whom it was designed for their Retreat in all times of danger. But having withdrawn hither on the taking of *Phyla* and *Piræus* by the *Thrasibulians*, they found strong Walls a weak defence for so much Wickedness; being trained out as to a Parley, and so deprived of the place and their power together. It was first built by one *Eleusius*, who entertained *Ceres* as she was in Quest of her Daughter *Proserpina*; who, to reward him, taught him the use of Agriculture; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Eleusina*, and her Sacrifices *Sacra Eleusinia*; and sometimes the City also *Cerealis Eleusis*, so called by *Ovid* in the seventh Book of his *Metamorphoses*. 3. *Rhamnus*, upon the River *Asopus*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiaraus*, and the Statue of the Goddess *Nemesis*, hence called *Rhamnusia*, being the Goddess of Indignation, punished those who made themselves unworthy of their present Fortunes. 4. *Trycorinum*, of more Antiquity than Fame. 5. *Marathon*, on the South-side of the River *Asopus*, opposite to *Rhamnus*, of great note for the Discomfiture given by *Miltiades* the *Athenian* to the numerous Army of *Darius*, consisting of 200000 Foot and 10000 Horse: the Emulation of which noble Victory started such brave Resolves in the breast of *Themistocles*. As memorable in the Poets of those elder times for the *Marathonian* Bull there slain by *Theseus*. This is now a pitiful Ruin'd Village saith Mr. *Wheler*, which we thought not worth lighting to see. p. 454. 6. *Mopsophia*, the ordinary dwelling-place of *Theseus*, before he fixed his Seat at *Athens*, it being at this Town that he restored *Helena* (whom he had before stolen from her own Country) to her two Brethren *Castor* and *Pollux*; of which both Rape and Restitution we find mention in *Ovid*, the one in the Epistle of *Oenone* to *Paris*, the other in that of *Hermione* to *Orestes*; in which last it is said expressly, *Reddita Mopsopia Tyndaris urbe Soror*, that is to say, that she was delivered to her two Brethren (who had taken much pains in seeking for her) in the Town of *Mopsophia*. 7. *Piræus*, the Port Town to *Athens*, and the ordinary Station for their Shipping, the Haven hereof being capable of 400 Sail; distant from the City about two miles, but joyned unto it by two long Walls reaching from the one side to the other, for securing the conveyance of their Merchandise to and from the Sea. The Port itself was impreguably fortified by the Advice of *Themistocles*: But as these long Walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them, so were the Fortifications of *Piræus* itself demolished by the command of *Sylla*, in his War against *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. This place is now called *Porto di Leone* by the *Italians*, from a huge Marble Statue of a *Lion*, of admirable Work, advanced at the bottom of the Bay, in a sitting posture, but erected on the two fore feet 10 Foot in height. The Harbour would not hold above 30 or 40 of our present Ships, as Mr. *Wheler* our Country-man observed who saw it, nor is there any one House or Habitation in this place, besides a Ware-house for the receiving of Goods. All the other places mentioned by *Herodotus*, are in the same State

state of Desolation, but *Athens*, of which I shall speak in its proper place. 8. *Panormus*, a Sea-Town also, and of very good Trade, but not of such importance as the other was. 9. *Athens*, one of the Eyes of *Greece*, and the chief of *Attica*, situate from the Sea two miles, as before was said; (the *Venetians* found it five *Italian* miles) the Haven of *Piræus* serving it with all Commodities which came from other parts by shipping. First built by *Cecrops* the first King of it, by whom it was called *Cecropia*, *A. M.* 2409; repaired afterwards by *Theseus*, and furnished with good Laws by *Solon*; and finally thus named from *Minerva*, (whom the *Greeks* called *Athene*) to whom they dedicated, and in whose Honour there were yearly kept some solemn Games, called *Panathenaia*. A City heretofore adorned with all those excellencies of Strength and Beauty which Art or Cost could add unto it. Renowned, as for many things, so for three especially: 1. For the inviolable Faith of the Citizens in all their Leagues, and most firm Affection to their Friends: so that *Fides Attica* grew in the end unto an Adage. 2. For the famous Scholars which here taught and flourished; this being so happy a Nursery of the choicest Wits, and so fitly seated for the Muses, that the very Natives, being in other Countries, could sensibly perceive some want of that natural Vigour which at home was resident in their spirits. *Ita ut corpora istius Gentis separata sint in alias Regiones, Ingenia vero solis Atheniensium muris clausa esse existimes*, as *Velleius* hath it. So that the Bodies of the Inhabitants might be carried into distant Regions, but the Ingenuity belonging to them was confined to the Walls of their City as one would think, as *Velleius* observes. Yea, and to say the truth, it was a most famous University, from whose great Cistern the Conduit-pipes of Learning were dispersed over all the World. Yet did not Learning so effeminate or soften the hearts of the People, but that 3. This one City yielded more famous Captains than any in the World besides, not excepting *Rome*; *Miltiades*, *Aristides*, *Themistocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, *Alcibiades*, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and enlarged this Common-wealth, yet were the people so ungrateful to them, or they so unfortunate in the end, that they either died abroad in Banishment, or by some violent death at home. *Themistocles*, the Champion of *Greece*, died an Exile in *Persia*, *Phocion* was slain by the people, *Demosthenes* made himself away by Poison, *Pericles* was many times endangered, *Theseus* their Founder first deposed, and then despitefully imprisoned, *Aristides*, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, &c. banished for ten years by the Ostracism; a form of Punishment, so called, because the name of the party banished was writ on an Oyster-shell; and only used towards such who either began to grow too popular, or potent among the men of service. Which Device, allowable in a Democracie, where the over-much power of one might hazard the Liberty of all, was exercised in spite oftner than for desert. A Country fellow meeting by chance with *Aristides*, desired him to write *Aristides* in his shell: and being asked whether the man whose Banishment he desired had ever wronged him? he replied, *No, he was only sorry to hear folk call him a good man*. We find the like unfortunate end to most of the *Romans* so redoubted in War. *Coriolanus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murdered, with divers others; only because their Virtue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was disgraced by *Antony*; *Agricola* poisoned, with the privacy of *Domitian*; *Corbulo* murdered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an Age wherein it was not lawful to be valiant. In latter times it so happened to *Gonsulvo* the great Captain, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Naples*, driven the *French* beyond the Mountains, and brought all the *Italian* Potentates to stand at the *Spaniards* devotion, was by his Master called home, where he lived obscurely, though

honoured after his decease with a solemn Funeral, worse fared the *Guises* and *Biron* in *France*; worse *Essex*, and *Dudley* of *Northumberland*, with us in *England*. Neither will I omit *William Duke of Suffolk*, who having served 34 years in our Wars with *France*, and for 17 years together never coming home, at his return was quarrelled, and basely murdered. It were almost impiety to be silent of *Joab*, the bravest Soldier and most fortunate Leader that ever fought the Lord's Battels, and yet was killed at the horns of the Altar. Whether it be that such men be born under an unhappy Planet; or that Courtiers, and such as have best opportunity to endear men of War unto their Sovereigns, know not the way of commending their great Deserts: or that Envy, the common Foe to Virtue, be an hinderance to it; I am not able to determine. And yet it may be that Princes naturally are distrustful of men of action, and are not willing to make them greater whose name is great enough already. And it may be the fault is in the Soldiers themselves, by an unreasonable over-valuing of their own Performances, as if the Prince or State were not able to reward or prize them: which was the cause of the death of *Silius* in the time of *Tiberius*. Concerning which *Tacitus* giveth us this good note, That over-merit in great Subjects is exceeding dangerous, and begets Hate instead of Favours. *Beneficia eo usque lata sunt, dum videntur exsolvi posse; ubi multum anteverterunt, pro gratia Odium redditur*, saith that Wise Historian.

But to look back again on *Athens*: it was first built by *Cecrops* the first King thereof; governed by him and his Posterity with no lower Title for 400 years, as is apparent by this following Catalogue of

The Kings of *ATHENS*.

A. M.

- | | |
|-------|--|
| 2394. | 1. <i>Cecrops</i> , who first made <i>Jupiter</i> a God, and ordained Sacrifices to be offered to him, as <i>Pausanias</i> writeth. |
| 2444 | 2. <i>Cranæus</i> , outed of his Kingdom by |
| 2453 | 3. <i>Amphictyon</i> , the Son of <i>Deucalion</i> and Uncle to that <i>Amphictyon</i> who first instituted the supreme Court of the <i>Amphictyones</i> , or Common-Council of all <i>Greece</i> . |
| 2463 | 4. <i>Erichthonius</i> , the Son of <i>Vulcan</i> . |
| 2513 | 5. <i>Pandion</i> , the Father of <i>Progne</i> and <i>Philomela</i> , so famous in the old Poets; of whom more hereafter. |
| 2553 | 6. <i>Erichtheus</i> , whose Daughter <i>Orinthia</i> was Ravished by <i>Boreas</i> King of <i>Thrace</i> . |
| 2603 | 7. <i>Cecrops</i> II. Brother of <i>Erichtheus</i> . |
| 2643 | 8. <i>Pandion</i> II. Son of <i>Erichtheus</i> . |
| 2668 | 9. <i>Ageus</i> , Son of <i>Pandion</i> the second, of whom the <i>Aegean</i> Sea took name. |
| 2706 | 10. <i>Theseus</i> , the Son of <i>Ageus</i> , and Companion of <i>Hercules</i> , vanquished the <i>Minotaur</i> in <i>Crete</i> , collected the People of <i>Attica</i> into a body, and incorporated them into the City of <i>Athens</i> , which he had beautified and enlarged. |
| 2746. | 11. <i>Mnesthus</i> , the Son of <i>Peteus</i> , Grand-child of <i>Erichtheus</i> , served with the other <i>Greek</i> Princes at the War of <i>Troy</i> . |
| 2769 | 12. <i>Demophoon</i> , the Son of <i>Theseus</i> , restored unto his Father's Throne on the death of <i>Mnesthus</i> . |
| 2802 | 13. <i>Oxyntes</i> , Son or Brother of <i>Demophoon</i> . |
| 2814 | 14. <i>Aphydas</i> Son of <i>Oxyntes</i> , slain by his Brother. |
| 2815 | 15. <i>Thymades</i> the last of the Line of <i>Erichtheus</i> . |
| 2823 | 16. <i>Melanthius</i> of <i>Messene</i> , driven out of his own Kingdom by the <i>Heraclidae</i> , obtained that of <i>Athens</i> . |

2860 17. *Codrus*, the Son of *Melonthius*, the last King of *Athens*, who in the Wars against the *Peloponnesians*, having Intelligence by an Oracle that his Enemies should have the Victory, if they did not kill the *Athenian* King, attired himself like a common Beggar, entred the *Peloponnesian* Camp, and there played such Pranks, that at the last they were fain to kill him. Which when the Enemy understood, they thought themselves by this means deprived of all hopes of Success, and so broke up their Army, and departed homewards. For this the People of *Athens*, did so honour his memory, that they thought no man worthy to succeed as King, and therefore committed the managing of the Estate to Governors for term of Life, whom they called *Archontes*: the first *Archon* being *Medon*, the Son of *Codrus*. They differed not from the former Kings in point of power, but only in manner of their Admission: the former Kings claiming the Government by Succession in right of Blood; and these *Archontes* holding by Election only; whose names here follow in this List of

The perpetual *Archontes* in the State of
A T H E N S.

A. M.

2882 1. *Medon*, the Son of *Codrus*.
2902 2. *Acastus*, the Son of *Medon*.
2938 3. *Archippus*, the Son of *Acastus*.
2957 4. *Thersippus*, the Son of *Archippus*.
2998 5. *Phorbas*, the Son of *Thersippus*.
3029 6. *Megacles*, the Son of *Phorbas*.
3059 7. *Diogenetus*, the Son of *Megacles*.
3087 8. *Phereclus*, the Son of *Diogenetus*.
3106 9. *Aritthon*, the Son of *Phereclus*.
3126 10. *Thespius*; in whose time began the Kingdom of *Macedon*.
3153 11. *Agamestor*.
3173 12. *Æschylus*, the Son of *Agamestor*. After whose death, *Anno Mundi* 3195, the *Athenians*, weary of these Governours for term of Life, as being less obnoxious to the Check and Censure of the People, chose themselves Officers or *Archontes* for ten years only: at the end of which time they were to yield up their places, and make room for others. But being a People greedy of Novelties and desirous of Change, they had only seven of those Decennial *Archontes*; their Officers from that time forwards being chosen annually: which Officers, being nine in number, we may call most properly the Provost, the chief Bishop, the Marshal, and the six chief Justices, all chosen out of the Nobility. And so it held for the space of 170 years, till the time of *Solon*; who was the first which put the Supreme Authority into the hands of the people; and gave the first hint unto that Democracy which afterwards prevailed in *Athens* by the help of *Pericles*, who being one of the great Council of the *Areopagites*, took from them a great part of their power in deciding Controversies and Suits in Law, putting them over to the Judgment of the Common people. A Government so dearly loved by the *Athenians*, that in all the Cities which they conquered, or restored to Liberty, or won to their party from the *Spartans*, they caused it to be admitted: as on the other side the *Spartans* introduced and confirmed an Aristocracy (their own beloved Government) in all the places where they prospered. As for the Court of the *Areopagites*, of much fame in *Athens*, it consisted from the first beginning in τῶν κατ' ἐνταυτὸν Ἀρχόντων, of such as had born some of the nine chief Offices; who being once admitted, held for term of Life. First instituted in the time of *Demophoon*, the Son of *Thesens*, and called by the name of *Areopagites*, either for that they held their Court in the Street of *Alars*, in Ἀπολ. πλάτ. mentioned *Acts* 17. 22. or

because *Alars*, being accused for a Murder, did first plead before them. A Court which held in estimation under all these Changes, and so continued till the time of the *Roman* Empire.

But to return again to the Story of *Athens*. In or about the latter end of the life of *Solon Pisistratus* altered the Free State, and made himself the absolute Master of the City: but he once dead, the People regained their Liberty, driving thence *Hippias* the Son of *Pisistratus*; who hereupon fled for Succour to *Darius* the *Persian* Monarch, occasioning by that means the first coming of the *Persians* into *Greece*. What success the *Persians* had in *Greece* the Histories of those Times abundantly inform us: *Darius* being vanquished by *Miltiades* at *Marathon*, and *Xerxes* by *Themistocles* at *Salamis*. Yet did not *Athens* scape so clear but that it was taken by *Xerxes*, though indeed first abandoned and voluntarily dismantled by the *Athenians*. When the *Persians* were retired homewards, the people of *Athens* re-edified their Town, and strongly fortified it with high and defensible Walls: which done, they put their Fleet to Sea, and spoiled the Coasts of *Persia* in all quarters, enriching their City with the Spoils, and enlarging their Power and Dominion by the addition of many Islands and Sea-Towns. Hereby they grew unto that Wealth and Potency, that they were suspected by their weaker Neighbours; and envied by their stronger, the *Lacedemonians* especially; who, fearing to lose their ancient Priority over *Greece*, but pretending the Surprisal of *Potidea*, a City of *Thrace*, from the *Corinthians*, and some hard measure by them shewed upon the *Megarenses*, made War upon them. In the beginning of this War the *Athenians* not only resisted the whole Power of all *Greece* confederate against them, but so exceedingly prospered, that the *Spartans* sued for Peace, and could not get it. But the Scales of Fortune turned. For after they had held out 28 years, they were compelled to pluck down the walls of their City, and submit themselves to the will and pleasure of the *Spartans*, now by the puissance and good fortune of *Lyfander* become their Masters: by whom the Government was changed, and an Aristocracie (or rather Oligarchie) established under 30 Magistrates known commonly by the name of the 30 Tyrants; expelled not long after by the Valour of *Thrasybulus* and his Associates, as hath been touched upon before. Not long after the end of this War, which the Historians call *Bellum Peloponnesiacum* the *Persians*, seeing how the *Spartans*, not having now the State of *Athens* to oppose them, began to work upon their Empire, furnished *Cimon*, a noble *Athenian* Gentleman, with a Navy so well provided, that he overcame the *Lacedemonians* in a Fight at Sea, and thereby put his Country-men into so good heart, that they made a party in the War called *Bellum Sacrum*; composed at the last by *Philip* of *Macedon*, who not only brought the *Thebans*, whom he came to aid, but the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, and the rest of the adverse party, under his Command. A Servitude from which they were never freed, till as well *Macedon* as the rest became Fellow-servants unto *Rome*. But though this brave City had then lost her power in point of Arms yet she still kept her credit as an University in point of Arts. *Origen*, *Chrysostom*, *Basil*, and *Gregory Nyssen*, men of Renown and Eminence in the Primitive Times, are said to have studied at *Athens*, the like is affirmed of *Pope Joan*, if the Tale be true, for the middle Ages. And so it held, as I conjecture, though not so eminently as before, till the year 1440, when taken by *Mahomet* the Great, who wondred much (as my Author telleth) at the extreme Beauty of the Castle, and the strength of the Walls, not having lost in so long time their former Excellencies. Since that it is sensibly decayed, and is now an ordinary Borough, (by the *Turks* called *Setines*) but still preserveth the Reputation of an Episcopal See, the Bishop of it holding up the Title of *Atheniensis*. To continue down the Story of this Ancient City to our own Times, *Alaricus* King of the *Goths* laid its

Honour and Buildings in the Dust under the Reign of *Islam*, about the year of Christ 378. It was after this Rebuilt, and about the year 1435 we find one *Anthonius Comnenus Anagolus*, Duke of *Athens*: About Twenty years after this, under *Muhamet II.* she fell the second time into the hands of the barbarous and consuming Turks, who have ruined all her Glory and extinguished her Learning; yet she has about 9000 Inhabitants, but very poor and ignorant; and some remainders of her ancient most noble Structures and Antiquities: The most eminent of which was the Temple of *Minerva*, since turned into a Turkish Mosque. In the year 1686 the *Venetians* having taking *Napoli di Romania*, the Inhabitants of *Athens* sent to them to procure their Protection, and consented on that score to a Contribution of 20000 Crowns (a great Tax for so poor a City) but the year following, the 21th of September, *Murad* coming to that Port landed his Army, and marched up to *Athens*, 3000 Turks pretending to defend the Castle at first, but a Granado falling upon one of their Magazines so astonished them, that after four or five days resistance they surrendered the Place and retreated. The *Venetians* in this short Siege found the Temple of *Minerva* ruined by a Bomb to their great Sorrow. The General ordered the City to be re-fortified, and Forts to be built to secure the Passage from the City to the Haven, but finding it five Miles distance and not possible to be secured without more Men than he could spare. In the beginning of the Campaign, in the year 1688 he removed the Goods and Inhabitants to *Napoli di Romania* with an intention to restore them if he took *Negropont* this Summer, and in the interim that ancient City is now desolate, and very uncertain it is whether ever it will be again inhabited. Our Learned Country-Man Mr. *Wheler* has taken great pains in describing the Antiquities of this Place as they stood just before this great Revolution, and to him I shall refer the curious Reader when I have told him that it is seated, according to that Author, in Long. 53. Lat. 38. 5. our Author gives an Account of the Dukes of *Athens* in the end of the Section concerning *Attolia* a little further.

2. *MEGARIS* is bounded on the East with *Attica*; on the West with the Bay of *Corinth*; on the North with *Boeotia*: and on the South with the *Isthmus* and the Gulf of *Argia*: So called from *Megara*, the chief City.

This is the least Province of all *Greece*, and not very fruitful (the Country for the most part being hard and rocky) not beautified with many Cities. The principal of those which were are, 1. *Pega*, or *Paga*, situate on the Bay of *Corinth*, and spoken of both by *Pliny* and *Ptolemy*; but not otherwise memorable. 2. *Megara*, (now *Alegra*) first built by *Megareus*, the Son of *Apollo*, and from him thus named. Remarkable in former times for a Sect of Philosophers, called from hence *Setta Megarica*, founded by one *Euclide*, a Disciple of *Socrates*; of whom see *Lactantius*. More memorable in the Poets for *Nisus*, once the King of this little Territory on whose Head there is said to have grown a purple Hair, on which the preservation of his Life and Kingdom did depend: Which Jewel his Daughter *Scylla* is said to have delivered unto King *Minos*, her Father's Enemy, of whom, then, besieging this City, upon the sight of him from an high Terret, she became enamoured; but he rejecting her and her Present both, after the taking of the City returned into *Crete*, which the unhappy Woman seeing, she threw her self after him into the Sea, and was turned into the Bird called *Ciris*. I leave the moralizing of the Fable unto the Mythologists: observing only by the way the antiquity of that politick practice, to love the Treason, and hate the Traitor. But the Glory of this City did not end with *Nisus*. For, shaking off the *Cretan* Yoke, it became *sui juris* once again: and being conveniently seated on the very *Isthmus*, amounted to that height of Prosperity, that

they contended with the *Athenians* for the Island of *Salamis*. And in this War they so crushed the Power and Spirit of *Athens* by one fatal Overthrow, that the *Athenians*, to prevent all the like Disasters, did ordain by Law, that whosoever mentioned the Recovery of *Salamis* was to lose his Life: so that *Solon* was compelled to feign himself Frantick, the better, to propound the Enterprize. In which although the State of *Athens* got the Isle of *Salamis*, yet did the *Megarenses* continue a Free People, till brought under (with the rest) by the *Macedonians*, and with them made subject unto *Rome*. Mr. *Wheler*, who saw this City, has given an exact Account of its Present State; he saith, It was anciently built upon two Rocks, one of which is now totally desolate, and the other has about two or three hundred pitiful Cottages built one Story high, and close together; the Walls of which are the Ruins of the former Houses, or a few Faggots covered with Clay, &c. there live no Turks there, and the Christians are in that perpetual fear of the Pyrats, that they flee upon the sight of a Boat, or the barking of their Dogs. Mr. *Wheler*, p. 431. Monsieur *Coronelli* has also given a very large Account of this small place much to the same purpose.

3. *BOEOTIA* is bounded on the South with *Megaris* and the Bay of *Corinth*, on the North with the River *Cephissus*, on the East with *Attica* and a Branch of the *Aegean* Sea, and on the West with *Phocis*. Thus named from *Bos*, which in *Greek* signifieth an Ox; because when *Cadmus*, weary of seeking his Sister *Europa*, (whom *Jupiter* had stolen out of *Phoenicia*) came to the Oracle of *Delphos*, he was commanded to follow the first Ox he saw, and where the Ox did rest it self there to build a City.

In the Country is nothing singular, but an ancient Custom of burning before the Door of an House in which a new-married Wife was designed to dwell, the Axle-tree of the Coach which brought her thither; giving her by that Ceremony to understand, (as *Plutarch* telleth us in his *Morals*) that she must frame her self to live and abide with him, without hope of departure. In this Country also are the Streights of the Mountain *Oeta*, from the Neighbouring Baths called *Thermopylae*, not above Twenty-five Foot in breadth; which in the War that *Xerxes* made against the *Greeks* were valiantly defended by *Leonidas*, King of *Sparta*, with no more than 300 of his Men, who, having valiantly resisted that Army which in his passage out of *Persia* had drank Rivers dry, and slain at least 30000 of them, died every Man upon the place. To hide the greatness of which loss, lest it should terrifie the rest of his Army which were coming on, *Xerxes* commanded all the slain Men to be buried in several Pits, except a Thousand; as if no more than they had been lost in that Passage.

Places of most Observation in it are, 1. *Thespia*, on a River of the same name, at the fall whereof into the Bay it is pleasantly seated, shadowed on the North with a Branch of the Mountain *Helicon*, and consecrated, as that was, unto the *Muses*, hence called *Tespiades* in the Poets. 2. *Platae*; nigh to which *Mardonius*, General to the *Persians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*, with the loss of *Mardonius* himself and 160000 Men on the *Persian* side; and on the other no more than 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Arcadians*, 52 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Megarenses*. In memory of which brave Exploit, and to preserve the Names and Honour of those Worthies who there laid down Lives for the Liberty of *Greece*, there was a Festival kept annually by the *Plataeans* in the month of September; with solemn Sacrifices, and a kind of divine Acknowledgment unto the Deceased; continued from the time of *Aristides* the *Athenian*, who first ordained them, to the days of *Plutarch*, who records it; but how long after I am not able to say. In this great Fight the Commander in chief was a Noble *Spartan*, called *Pausanias*, who, afterwards having a Design to make himself Sovereign of all *Greece*, and being

being discovered in the Practice, fled for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence because it was counted Sacrilege to constrain him by Violence, it was unanimously resolved to wall up the Entrances, his own Mother laying the first Stone. It is recorded that before the fighting of this Battel, the *Athenians* had been told by the Oracle that they should be Conquerors, if they fought upon their own ground: whereupon the *Placians*, within whose Territories the *Persians* had prepared to fight, bestowed that Field on the State of *Athens*. In requital of which noble Act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and enlarged their City, having been first burnt and sack'd by the *Persians*, and after levelled with the ground by the *Lacedemonians*, because confederate with *Athens* in the War against them. This Place is now totally desolate, and its Situation not certainly known. *Wheler*, p. 474. 3. *Leuctra*, remarkable for the great Overthrow which the *Thebans*, under the Conduct of *Epaminondas*, gave unto the *Spartans* and their King *Clombrotus*, who was there slain: by which Victory they did not only preserve their own Liberty, but brought their Enemies to that fall of Courage and Reputation, that they could never rise again: the Divine Vengeance overtaking them in that very place where some of their Nation had desloured the Daughters of *Scedafus*, who had given them courteous Entertainment. For which when no Reparation could be had from the State of *Sparta*, the unfortunate Damosels slew themselves, to avoid the Infamy of consenting to their own Dishonour, and were buried in those very Fields where this Battel was fought. 4. *Ascræa*, the Birth-place of *Hesiod*, a Man (according to *Paterculus*) *elegantis ingenii, & carminum dulcedine memorabilis*: though it hath pleased that proud Critick, *Julius Scaliger*, intending to deifie *Virgil*, to prefer the worst Verse in the *Georgicks* of the one before the whole Works of the other. 5. *Labada*, near the River *Cephissus*; the Inhabitants whereof were counted the most Superstitious of all the *Grecians*: memorable for the *Trophonius* Den or Cave, and the Oracle there given by *Jupiter*, hence called *Trophonius*: into which Cave none were admitted to enter and receive the Oracle, but after many Ointings, Washings, and the like Superstitious Preparations, too long and many to be specified in this place and time. A Town which still preserves so much of its ancient Estimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Country of *Achaia* hath the name of *Livadia*, by which the Turks call it at this present. It is situate about the Point of an Hill, on the top of which is an old Castle; it has five Mosques, and as many Churches; the Inhabitants a Gentile sort of Turks or Christians, and but few *Jews*. The Town is Rich and Populous, having a Manufacture of Woollen Stuffs. *Wheler*, p. 329. 6. *Charonia*, or *Cheronia*, the Birth-place of *Plutarch*; near unto which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt *L. Sylla* and the *Romans* against *Archelaus*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, leading an Army of 120000 Soldiers, of which 10000 only escaped with Life, the *Romans* losing but 14. 7. *Orchomenus*, no less memorable for another Victory, obtained by the same *L. Sylla* against *Dorilus*, another of that King's Commanders, having an Army of 80000 Men, of which 20000 lost their Lives that Day. After which Victories, when *Sylla* might easily have destroyed that King, he suddenly patched a Peace up with him, that he might hasten unto *Rome*, where *Marius* and *Cinna* had trodden his Faction under foot; preferring by that act the pursuit of his own private Quarrels before that of his Country, endangered more by *Mithridates* after his return, than it had been formerly. 8. *Aulis*, a Port-Town on the Shores of the *Aegean* Sea, where the *Grecians* took shipping when they went to the War of *Troy*; here making Oath never to give over the Enterprize until they had destroyed that City. Concerning which thus she in *Virgil*.

*Non ego cum Danais Trojanam caecidisse Gentem
Aulide juravi.*

That is to say,
I took no Oath at *Aulis*, to destroy,
As did the *Greeks* the Town and State of *Troy*.

But the chief of this Country, and such as had a special Influence over all the rest, was the City of *Thebes*, situate on the Banks of the River *Cephissus*, where it was built by *Cadmus* the *Pharician*, after all his wanderings. Famous in old times for the Wars between *Etioles* and *Polynices*, the Sons of the unfortunate Prince *Oedipus*, and of his Mother and Wife *Jocasta*. The History of which War is the most ancient piece of Story that we find of all *Greece*; the former Times and Writings containing nothing but Fables, little favouring of Humanity, and less of Truth; as of Men changed into Monsters, the Adulteries of the Gods, and the like. In this Town lived *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, who so crushed the *Lacedemonians* at the Battels of *Leuctra* and *Manitinea*, that they could never after re-obtain their former Puissance. This Commonwealth long flourished, and at last, being over-burthened in the *Phocian* War, was glad to submit it self to the Protection of the *Macedonians*, under the leading of King *Philip*; who by this means first got footing in *Greece*, into which afterwards he thrust his whole Body. Upon the Death of *Phillip*, *Thebes* revolted from the *Macedonians*, but *Alexander* his Successor quickly recovered it: and to dishearten the *Greeks* in the like Attempts, he razed the City, selling all the Inhabitants of Age and Strength; only *Pindarus*'s House he commanded to be left standing in honour of that learned Poet. At the Sack of this Town, one of the *Macedonian* Soldiers entred the House of a principal Woman, named *Timoclea*, ravished her, and rifled her Coffers, but still demanding more Treasure, she shewed him a deep Well, saying that there all her Money was hidden. The credulous Villain stooping down to behold his Prey, she tumbled him into the Well, and overwhelmed him with Stones. For which noble act, the generous Prince not only dismissed her unhurt, but most highly commended her. It was after re-edified by *Cassander*, and followed for the most part, as the rest of the *Boeotians* did, the Fortunes of *Macedon*. It is reduced at this time to the state of an ordinary Burrough, and called *Sibes* by the Turks.

4. *PHOCIS* is bounded on the East with *Boeotia*, on the West with *Doris* and *Locris*, on the North with the River *Cephissus*, and on the South with the Bay of *Corinth*. A Country somewhat twined with Mountains, but those of eminent note in the elder times. The chief whereof are, 1. *Helicon*, 2. *Cithæon*, both consecrated to the *Muses*, and both contending with *Parnassus* for height and bigness. 3. *Parnassus*, of so great an height, that in that great Deluge in which most of these Parts of *Greece* were over-whelmed with the Waters, *Dencalion* and *Pyrrha* saved themselves and many others on the Top hereof: for which, and for its two Summits reaching to the Clouds, it is of great Renown amongst the Poets; as in *Ovid*,

*Mons ibi verticibus petit arduus Astra duobus,
Nomine Parnassus; superatque cummine Nubes.
Parnassus there with his two Tops extends
To the toucht Stars, and all the Clouds transcends.*

Places of most Observation in it are, 1. *Anticyra*, situate near the Sea, and famous for the *Helleborum* there growing, a Herb very medicinal for the Phrensie; whence the Proverb, *Naviget Anticyram*, applied to mad-men. 2. *Pytho*, or *Pythia*, said to be seated not only in the middle of *Greece*, but of all the World: *Strabo* relating how *Jupiter*, desirous to know the exact middle of the Earth, let loose two Eagles, one

from the East, and the other from the West, which flying with an equal Wing (so we must conceive) and meeting at this very place, shewed it apparently to be the Navel of the World. By reason of which convenient situation in the Heart of Greece, it was made a Sessions-Town for all the *Grecians*, and honoured with the Court and General Assembly of the *Amphictyones*; Men chosen out of the prime Cities of Greece, who had power to decide all Controversies, and to make Laws for the common Good. A Court first instituted by *Acrisius*, as *Strabo* telleth us: or, as *Halicarnassensis* more probably, by *Amphictyon* the Son of *Helles*, from whom they seem to have their name. The Commissioners from the several Cities, with reference to the places for which they served, had the name of *Ithylagora*; when assembled, they were called the *Amphictiones*: their Meetings were at the beginning of the Spring and Autumn. Some Instances concerning their Authority will not be amiss. In the time of *Cimon*, the *Cirrheans*, having by Piracy wronged the *Thessulians*, were fined by this Council; and after that the *Lacedaemonians*, for surprising *Cnidrea*. And the *Phocians*, for Ploughing up the Land of *Cirrah*, which belonged to the Temple of *Delphos*, were by them amerced: And because they continued obstinate, and paid not their Amercements, their Dominions were adjudged to be confiscate unto that Temple. But they, disobeying this Decree also, spoiled the Temple it self: For which War being proclaimed against the by them rest of the *Grecians*, who by the Assistance of *Phillip* King of *Macedon* brought them to Obedience, the Council was again assembled; in which it was decreed that the *Phocians* should raze the Walls of their Cities, that they should pay the yearly Tribute of sixty Talents, that they should no more keep Horse and Arms, till they had satisfied the Treasury of the Temple, nor any longer have a Voice in those Conventions. It was also then enacted, that the lost Suffrages of the *Phocians* should be vested in King *Phillip* and his Successors, Kings of *Macedon*; on whom they also did confer the perpetual Presidentship, and made them Princes of that Senate. A Court to which the *Sanhedrin* of the Seventy Elders amongst the *Jews*, and, in our times, the Dyets of the Empire, and the Assemblies of the *Switzers*, carry most resemblance. The City of *Delphos* is now called *Castris*. The Temple of *Apollo* is not now to be found, but by conjecture. It consists of about Two hundred Houses, and those very ill built, twelve of which are inhabited by *Tiibes*, who have a Mosque: The *Greeks* have five or six Churches, and seem a good People, though miserably poor. Mr. *Wheler*, pag. 315. 3. *Cirra*, on the Sea-side, the Port-town to *Delphos*. 4. *Crissu*, so called from *Crissus* the Son of *Phocus*, and Grandchild of *Aeneas*, situate on the edge of the Bay of *Corinth*, called sometimes from hence *Crissus Sinus*. 5. *Scarphia*, memorable for the Defeat of *Critolaus*, Captain of the *Achean* Army, by *Metellus* one of the *Roman* Prætors: The loss of which Battel drew after it the Destruction of *Corinth*. It was observed in the success of this great Fight, that a Band of *Arcadians*, escaping out of the Battel, came unto, 6. *Elatea*, another City of this Province, and were there kindly entertained on memory of some former Alliances, till News came of the Overthrow of *Critolaus*; when they were ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquish the Town; (for Adversity seldom meeteth with returns of Friendship.) They were set upon and all slain by the *Romans* in the self-same place in which their Ancestors had unworthily forsaken the rest of the *Grecians* in their War against *Phillip* King of *Macedon*, for the publick Liberty. 7. *Daulis*, a City appertaining to *Tereus* King of *Thrace*, who, having married *Progne*, the Daughter of *Pandion* King of *Athens*, ravish'd her Sister *Philomela*, and cut out her Tongue, the better to keep his Villany undiscovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double Injury, first made him ignorantly eat his

own Son *Itys*, whom she had baked in a Pye; and after killed him with the help of her ravished Sister. 8. *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *Apollo*, in which, with that of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Marmarica*, (now reckoned as a part of *Egypt*) were the most famous Oracles of the ancient Gentiles; dark Riddles of the Devil, couched and contrived with so much Cunning, that the meaning of them was most hidden, when it was thought most easie to be discerned. An Instance of which is that given to *Cræsus*, in the War by him projected against the *Persians*, which was thus delivered.

Cræsus Haly penetrans magnam subvertet opum vim.

When *Cræsus* over *Halys* goes,

A mighty Nation he o'erthrows.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, crossed the River, was vanquished by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*, and his Kingdom conquered. The like we find of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who, before he made War against the *Romans*, consulted with the Oracle, and received this Answer;

Aio te, Atacida, Romanos vincere posse.

Which doubtful Prediction he thus construed, *Te posse vincere Romanos*, That he should overcome the *Romans*; but found it unto his cost that the meaning was, *Romanos posse vincere te*, That the *Romans* should overcome him: As indeed it happened. By another kind of the same Fallacy, which the Logicians call *Amphibolia*, did this great Enemy of Mankind overthrow another, who, demanding of the Oracle what Success he should have in an Expedition which he was in hand with, received his Answer in these words,

Ibis redibis nunquam per bella peribis.

Which he thus pointing, *Ibis*, redibis, nunquam per, &c. engaged himself in the War, and was therein slain. Whereupon his Followers, canvassing the Oracle, found the meaning of it to be this, *Ibis*, redibis nunquam per, &c. The like Juggling he also used in those supernatural Dreams which Philosophers call *δρυμνόμεψα*. For *Cæsar*, dreaming that he carnally knew his own Mother the night before he passed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common Mother of the *Romans*: And *Hippias*, the Son of *Pisistratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the same projects the same Dream, was killed and buried in the Bowels of his Mother the Earth. So that had *Cæsar* miscarried in his Action, and *Hippias* thrived; yet still had the Devil been reputed his Craftsman, and the Father of Truths. But as the Ecclesiastical History telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apostate*, consulting with the Devil, was told that he could receive no Answer; because that the Body of *Babylus* the Martyr was entombed nigh his Altar: So neither could the Devils deceive the World, as formerly they had done, after *Christ*, the Truth it self, was manifested in the Flesh, and tormented these unclean Spirits, though, as they alledged, before their time *Augustus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whose time our Saviour was born, consulting with the Oracle about his Successor, received this not satisfying Answer:

Παῖς

Ἐβραῖος κλέψαι με, θεοῖς μακάροισιν ἀνάσσειν,

Τόνδε δέ μιν περιπατῶν, καὶ αἶδον αὐτοῖς ἐκείνους.

Λοιπὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ στήθους ἐκ βομῶν ἡμετέρας.

An *Hebrew* Child, whom the blest Gods adore,
Hath bid me leave these Shrines, and pack to Hell;
So that of Oracles I can no more.
In silence leave our Altar and farewell,

Whereupon *Augustus*, coming home, in the Capitol erected an Altar, and thereupon in Capital Letters caused this Inscription to be engraven, HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI. Now as the Devils had by *Christ*'s Birth lost much of their wonted Virtue, so after

after his Passion they lost it almost together. Concerning which *Flutarch*, in a Tract of his Morals called, *Περὶ τῆς λαλοῦντων χρησμεύων*, *Why Oracles cease to give Answers*, telleth us a notable Story, which was this. Some Company, going out of *Greece* into *Italy*, were about the *Echinades* be-calmed; when on a sudden there was heard a Voice loudly calling on one *Thamus*, an *Egyptian* then in the Ship. At the two first calls he made no answer, but to the third he replied, saying, *Here I am*. And the Voice again spake unto him, bidding him, when he came to the *Palodes*, to make it known that the great God *Pan* was dead. When they came unto the *Palodes*, which are certain Shelves and Rocks in the *Ionian Sea*, *Thamus*, standing on the Poop of the Ship, did as the Voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty noise of many together, who all seem'd to groan and lament with terrible and hideous shriekings, News hereof coming to *Tiberius*, he caused the Learned Men in his Empire to enquire out of their Books who that *Pan* should be; by whom it was answered, that he was the Son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*, with Ignorance enough, and little satisfaction to the business propounded to them. Such therefore as more narrowly observed the Circumstances of this Accident found it to happen at the time when our Saviour suffered on the Crois; who was indeed the true God *Pan*, the chief *Shepherd* and *Bishop* of our Souls, as the Scripture calleth him: And that, upon this divulging of his Death and Passion, the Devils, who used to speak in Oracles, did with great Grief and Lamentation forsake that Office, which had been so gainful to them in seducing Mankind. That all Oracles at that instance ceased, I dare not say; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: It being said by *Juvenal*, who lived in the Reign of *Domitian*, *Delphis Oracula cessant*, that the Oracle of *Delphos* was then silent; the rest decaying sensibly in a short time after.

But to proceed. The Temple of *Apollo* being spoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, caused the War betwixt them and the *Thebans*, called the *Holy War*: In which the *Thebans*, being likely to have the worst, sent for *Philip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the Quarrel by subduing both. The Treasure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple was reckoned at Sixty Talents of Gold; but it proved *Aurum Tolosanum*, and brought a sudden Ruine on their State and Nation: Sacrilege being so unpardonable a Crime, even amongst the Heathen, that the fault of some few, countenanced by the rest of a People, hath brought Destruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill Fortune ransacked by *Brennus* and his *Gauls*, in the wain of the *Macedonian* Empire; all of them miserably perishing who had any hand in it. It is now a poor Village.

5. *I. O C R I S* is bounded on the East with *Phocis* and a Branch of the *Aegean Sea*, on the West with *Aetolia*, on the North with a long Ridge of Hills which part it from *Theffaly*, and on the South with parts of *Achaia*, *Boeotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Streights of *Antirrhium*, and a part of the *Ionian Sea*. So that for largeness of Extent, and the commodiousness of the Seas, it yieldeth to no Province in *Achaia*, though not so fruitful as some others. Divided into the three Nations, of the *Locri Ozole*, lying towards the South, on both sides of the Streights, so called from some ill Smells of the Country or People; 2. the *Epimenidii*, inhabiting the middle parts, so named from Mount *Cnemis*, not far from *Parnassus*: And, 3. the *Opuntii*, so called from *Opus* their chief City, lying on the North-side of the River *Cephisus*, on the Coasts of the *Aegean* or *Euboean* Seas.

Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Opus*, the Head City of the *Opuntians*, situate on the River *Asopus*, being one of the main Branches of *Cephisus*. This Place is now called *Thalanda*, and is a Town that may contain Five or Six thousand Souls, *Greeks*, *Jews* and *Turks*, and is a Bishop's See under the Archbishop of *Athens*. It stands

two Miles from the Sea over against a small Island called of old *Atlantis*, now nameless, as Mr. *Wheler* saith, pag. 494. 2. *Cyane*, the Port Town to *Opus*. 3. *Tarantium*, the prime Town of the *Epimenidii*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Livie*, *Ptolomy*. 4. *Cnemides*, at the foot of Mount *Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 5. *Amphissa*, the chief City of the *Ozole*, situate in the inland parts of it. The People whereof, refusing to yield to the Sentence of the *Amphictyons* against their Confederates the *Phocians*, were the cause that *Philip* of *Macedon* returned into *Greece*. Against whom, grievously infesting the *Boeotians*, and manifestly aspiring to the Command of *Greece*, the *Athenians* desperately opposed, not so much with possibility of prevailing, as being urged on by the sharp and biting Orations of *Demosthenes* made against his Proceedings: Which being by him called *Philippicks*, occasioned *Lully* to call his bitter Invectives against *M. Antonius* by the same name also. But the Success hereof was such as commonly attendeth a broken Fortune: The *Athenians* being vanquished at *Charonea*, and *Philip* declared Captain of *Greece* against the *Persians*, obtained under that Title the Command he sought. This Place is now call'd *Salona*, and is still a Bishop's See under the Archbishop of *Athens*, others suppose it to be *Lambino*. The *Turks* have 7 Mosques, but no *Jews* are suffered, and the *Christians* are equal to the *Turks* in number. 6. *Euantia*, as *Ptolomy*, *Ocanthia*, as *Pliny* and *Pausanias* call it; opposite to *Aegira* in *Achaia propria*. 7. *Molycria*, by *Ptolomy* placed here, and by others reckoned in *Aetolia*; not far from whence is the Promontory of *Antirrhium*, so called because just opposite to that of *Rhium* in *Achaia propria*, between which runneth a narrow Streight (not so wide as the *Hellespont*) which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*: each Promontory being for that cause Fortified by *Bajazer* the Second with a very strong Castle; that on this side being gallantly defended by the *Turks*, when besieged by *Doria*, Anno 1532; for being forced with great Slaughter into a strong Tower which commanded the Castle, they rather chose to blow it up, together with the Ammunition, Victuals, and themselves to boot, than that the Fort should come entire into the hands of the Enemy. Some place this Promontory in *Aetolia* also; but, following the Authority of *Ptolomy*, I have placed it here. The two opposite Ports are now called the *Dardanelles* of *Lepanto*, and were taken in the year 1687 by *Morosini*; that on the *Morea* side with some difficulty, the other without resistance. 8. *Nampactus*, so called from the building of Ships in re by the *Port Side*; situate on the *Corinthian Bay*, near the Mouth thereof. Given by the Citizens of *Athens* to the poor *Messinians*, when, after the end of the third War, the *Lacedemonians*, unwilling to have them troublesome Neighbours (and they seeming to be quiet Slaves) compelled them to seek new Habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the Gulf of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by that name subject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks*, Anno 1499. Of these *Locrians* those of *Italy* were a Branch or Colony, whose Law-giver was *Zuleucus*, spoken of elsewhere.

This Town (saith Mr. *Wheler*, p. 299.) is situate upon a very steep Hill, with a descent every way from the Top; but it is joined to a Mountain behind it by two other smaller Hills, which, ever since the invention of Gunpowder command it. In more ancient Times it gave great disquiet to the *Romans*, being then a Refuge to the rebellious *Aetolians*. It is built from the Sea shore up to the highest point of the Hill which is crowned with a Castle secured by four ranges of Walls one above another, which makes it at a distance resemble the Papal Crown. It has a small Oval Harbour too, which has two Towers on each side of the entrance for its defence, with some small Brats Guns, but the entrance is fleet and fit for nothing but Gallies; the Town is secured as well as the Harbour by a strong but ancient Wall.

The

The Inhabitants are mostly Turks and Jews, and very few Christians; In the year 1408, it was under the Greek Emperors, who consigned it to the Venetians who thus Fortified it, in the year 1475, it sustained a Siege of 4 Months, in which the Turks lost 30000 men to no purpose. In the year 1499, Bajazet the 2. durst not trust to an Army of 150000 Men to reduce it, but corrupted Hieronimo Trono the Venetian Government also. But in the year 1687, Morosini having beaten the Serasquier of the Morea, and taken the opposite Dardanel and Patras, and crossing over to Lepanto, he found the Turks emptying the Town for him, and took possession of it without one blow striking. This Town is called by the Greeks *Epaetos*, by the Turks *Eimbachtli*, and is the chief upon the Bay, and was formerly a Receptacle for Pirates, and of latter times a place of small Trade.

6. DORIS is bounded on the East with Phocis, on the West with Atolia, on the North with the Hill Oeta, and other Mountains which divide it from Thessaly, and on the South with Atolia and part of Locris. The Air hereof is very healthy, and the Soil sufficiently fruitful, if well manured: but now the greatest part lieth waste for want of Tillage. First peopled by the Doros or Dorienfes, descended from Dorus the Son of Helen, and Grandchild of Deucalion, by whom they were placed in Thessaly, afterwards spreading into this Country, which they left their name to, as their proper Dwelling: tho' many of them, following the Herulide into Peloponnesus possessed themselves of the greatest part of Laconia also; imprinting on the same their Dialect or form of Speech, from them called the Dorick.

Chief Cities hereof are, 1. Doris, so called in memory of Dorus, the first Progenitor of this People. 2. Erineus, seated at the Foot of Parnassus, mentioned by Thucydides, Strabo, Mela, Ptolemy, and the rest of the Ancients. 3. Bium, as Ptolemy; or Boion, as Strabo and Pliny call it. 4. Cytinum, near Parnassus also, in the common Impressions of Diodorus Siculus the Historian falsely called Cynthium. 5. Lila, situate not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River Cephissus; which, rising hereabouts, passeth through the whole length of Achaia, and falls into the Aegean or Euboean Sea.

7. ATOLIA hath on the East Locris, on the West Epirus, on the North Doris, on the South the Ionian Sea, said to be so called from Atolus, the Son of Mars, who, being by Salmonens call out of Elis, fixed himself in this Country.

Here is the Forest of Calydon, where Meleager and the Flower of the Greek Nobility slew the wild Boar. Here is the River Euenus, over which the Centaur Nessus having carried Dejanira, Wife of Hercules, and intending to have ravished her, was slain by an Arrow which Hercules on the other side of the River shot at him. Here also is the River of Achelous, of whom the Poets fable many things: as that being Rival with Hercules in the love of Dejanira, he encountred him in the shape of a Bull; and that when Hercules had pluck'd off one of his Horns, the Nymphs made of it their so much celebrated Cornucopia.

The people of this Country were the most turbulent and unruly people of all Greece, never at Peace with their neighbours, and seldom with themselves. The Macedonians could never tame them, by reason of the Cragginess of the Country: yet they brought them to such terms, that they were compelled to let the Romans into Greece, who quickly made an end of all.

Principal Towns hereof were, 1. Chalcis, situate near the Spring-head of Achelous before mentioned. 2. Arachthus, near the River so called; which, arising hereabouts, passeth into Epirus, and falleth into the Bay of Ambracia, not far from Nicopolis. 3. Olenus, not far from the Forest of Calydon. 4. Pleurone, giving name to the adjoining Country, called hence Pleuronia, the People whereof had the name of Curetes *ἑὸν τὴν κούρεα*, from their shaving, it being their custom to shave the

fore-parts of their Heads, and let the Hair grow on the hinder parts only, *ne Hostes eos caesarie apprehenderent*, because their Enemies should not lay hold on them by their Fore-tops, and so pull them down. 5. Thermus the Parliament City, or place of general Assembly, for all the States of Atolia: which Meeting was called Panetolium. It was chosen for those Meetings in regard of the situation and strength thereof; as being situate well-near in the midst of the Country, environed with rocky Mountains, of steep and difficult ascent. For that cause it was made also the receptacle of their wealth and Treasure in all times of danger: but taken at the last by Phillip of Macedon, with all the Spoil in it, in his War against them. 6. Calydon, near the Forest so called, giving name unto it: the Royal Seat of Oeneus, Father of Meleager; divided into two parts by the River Euenus, which runneth through it, according unto that of Ovid.

*Et Meleagræam maculatus sanguine Nessi
Euenus Calydonæ Secat.*

That is to say,

*Calydon, Miltager's Town, the Flood
Euen divides, defil'd with Nessus blood.*

Adjoining hereunto were the Athamans, whom Pliny makes a People of it, who gave name unto a little Province called Athamania; but such (as little as it was) as gave it the Title of a Kingdom to Antimander; a Prince whom the Atolians made special use of in their Wars against Philip King of Macedon, the Father of Persius, suggesting to him and his Children, that they were descended of the House of Alexander the Great, and so engaging them, in hope of that Kingdom, to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of most note are, 1. Diium, 2. Athaneum; both of them taken by Phillip in that War.

These, as they were the last Actors on the Stage of Achaia, so had they the most desperate part in all the Tragedy of that Country. The Affairs thereof, governed successively by that State which was most powerful, were for a long time managed by the Athenians; whose Councils and Conclusions went for Law amongst them. But that Estate being broken, it not supported by the Power of Sparta, the Thebans and Boeotians, who came next in play, had the chief Command; uniting almost all the rest in design with them against the Spartans, who now grew terrible to all. Becoming insolent by the course of two much Prosperity, and the many great Victories which they had against the Spartans, and thereupon quarrelling with the Phocians, they were the cause of Philip's coming into Greece; who, as he had learned amongst them the use of Arms, so made he use thereof at last, and of their Dissentions, to unite all the States of Greece under his Command; Thebes it self being taken and sacked by Alexander the Son of Philip, as before is said. The Macedonians thus prevailing, partly by Force, but especially by Art and Practice, there was no People in Achaia that durst oppose them; till these Atolians, a restless and impatient People, took the Cause in hand. Who thrived so well under Antigonus and Philip, two of the last Kings of Macedon, that they took from them many Towns, invaded Thessaly, attempted Macedon it self, and when they could not otherwise obtain their purpose in the Destruction of that Kingdom, opened a passage for the Romans to effect it for them. But finding no such favour at the Romans hands as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite Antiochus and the Greeks against them, drawing thereby those Forces against themselves which they had invited into Greece, and were the first People of all the Grecians that were conquered by them; though by the Mediation of the Rhodians and some other Friends, their Country was restored unto them, with the loss only of

of *Cephallenia*, *Zante*, and some other Islands; which the *Romans* were resolv'd to keep as the fruits of the War. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fabius Nudius* being then Consul, and chief Commander in this War. After which time the several Estates hereof enjoyed so much Liberty as the *Romans* their new Masters thought fit to give them: till they were finally made absolutely subject in the time of *Cepseus*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province, *Peloponnesus* being reckoned as a part thereof. In the Division of the Empire by *Constantine* the Great, the West parts hereof being divided from the rest were called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Provinces of the Diocesis of *Macedon*, under the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*; the principal Officer of this part being called the Proconsul of *Achaia*: continuing under him and his Successors, Emperors of *Constantinople*, till the Destruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*; but so that it remained not always under the Command of one sole Officer, the Policy of that State being altered, and this Country parcelled out into many Governments, especially after the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, or Western Christians. At that time *Theodorus Angelus*, a noble *Græcian*, and one of the then Imperial Family, seized on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*; part of which last, and all the first, he left to *Michael* his Son, who held them, tho with some dispute betwixt him and *Michael Palæologus*, the first Emperor of *Constantinople* after the Expulsion of the *Latines*. *Charles*, the last Prince of that Family dying without Issue about the year 1430, bequeathed *Ætolia* to another *Charles*, the Son of his Brother; and *Arctania* (being that part of *Epirus* which the Princes of *Ætolia* held) to his base Sons, *Atemon*, *Turnus*, and *Hercules*. But many Quarrels happening upon this Division, *Amurath* the second having then newly conquered *Thessalonica*, composed the Differences by taking all unto himself, Anno 1432. There were at that time other Princes of the like Authority, as of *Athens*, *Phocis*, and *Bæotia*; but the first the chiefest, as honoured not only with the Title of Dukes of *Athens*, but of Princes of *Achaia* also; such being the Fortune of that City, as to have the first and last great Sway in the affairs of *Achaia*. For at the Translation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Godfrey* of *Troyes*, a *French*-man, was made Duke of *Athens* and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Paulus Æmilius* speaketh, Anno 1220: which Honour afterwards was conferred on *Walter de Bren*, a Kinsman of *John de Bren*, the last King of *Jerusalem*, a Protector of *Baldwin* the second, the last Emperor of the *Latines*, mentioned by the said *Æmilius*, Anno 1288. And though on the Defeat and Death of this *Walter* by the *Catalanians*, then ransacking those parts of *Greece*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* was assumed by *Frederick-Alphonso*, the Son of *Frederick* King of *Sicily*, and by other Princes of that House: yet upon better ground, by the Heir general of this *Walter* it was conveyed in Marriage to *Isaulus di Acio*, a Nobleman of the Realm of *Naples*: whose Son *Walter* (commonly called the Duke of *Athens*) for a time obtained the Sovereignty of the State of *Florence*, Anno 1342. but lost it suddenly again by his too much Cruelty. *Francis de Acciavol*, the last Prince of this House, having been brought up in the Court of *Mahomet* the Great, as one of his Favorites, surrendered his Estate herein, at the perswasion of that Tyrant, in change for the Country of *Bæotia* and the Dukedom of *Thebes*: which he had sooner had received, but he was sent by *Mahomet* to *Zogannus* his Lieutenant in *Morea*, by whom at first he was courteously received, at last cruelly murdered. And so the whole Country of *Achaia* fell into the possession of the *Turks*, Anno 1454, or thereabouts.

EPIRUS.

EPIRUS is bounded on the East with *Ætolia*, on the West with the *Albanick*, on the North with *Thessaly*, *Macedon*, and some part of *Libania*; and on the South with the *Ionian* Seas. So called from the Solitary and Firmness of it, the word *Epeiros* in the *Greek* Tongue signifying as much as *Terre ferme*, on the firm land. But by the *Turks* at this day it is called *Albania*, when as they give to all the Land and Countries in its possession lying upon the *Albanick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Country was born *Olympias*, Mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrhus*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the first Foreigner who made trial (though to his own Loss) of the Power and Puissance of *Rome*; accounted by *Thucydides*, next to *Alexander*, the second great Soldier of the world. Here is also Mount *Pindus*, sacred to *Apollon* and the *Artes*, dividing this Country from *Thessaly*, and therefore common unto both: as also the *Acroceraunian* Hills, so called, because they are so much subject unto Thundering and Lightning, eminent for their height, and much feared by Mariners, who, when they see a little Cloud rising on the top hereof, are sure of a Tempest. Finally, here are the famous Rivers *Acheron* and *Cocytus*, which, for their black waters and unfavoury taste, are said to be the Rivers of Hell: from which last the Sacrifices and Solemnities made in honour of *Proserpine* whom *Pluto* ravished and brought hither, had the name of *Cocytia*. Whence, by a Metonymie, these Rivers are taken sometime for Hell it self; as in that of the Poet,

Flectere si nequeo Superos, Acheronta movebo.

Since those in Heaven I cannot move,
The Powers of Hell I mean to prove.

The Soil hereof is very barren, and in many places full of Forests and thin of people: but towards the Sea reasonably fruitful: plentiful of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep of more than ordinary bigness, and yielding the best breed of Horses. The people speak a distinct Language from the *Græcians*, though of the *Greek* Tongue not utterly ignorant: and by reason of the Barrenness of their own Country, become great Wanderers, especially in Summer-time, when they travel into *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Asia-Minor*, hiring themselves to work in Harvest under the *Turks*, as also to Thresh, Winnow, and make clean their Corn; and in the Winter-time return to their Wives and Children. They are able of body, swift of foot, apt to undergo any Toil and Labour; having withal good Courages and high Projections: which makes such of them as delight not in works of Drudgery to look for action in the Wars, and otherwise to rob and spoil the neighbouring Mountains of *Albania*. Till their Subjection to the *Turks*, they were much used both by the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice* in their several Wars, serving on Horse or Foot, as occasion was: as Mercenary as the *Switzers* in the Western parts, but not so faithful to the party entertaining them.

Anciently it was divided into *Chaonia*, (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the West, and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Ætolia*, from which it is parted by the River *Achelous*: the middle parts hereof being *Amphilochia*, *Thesprotia*, and *Almene*: all very populous in former times, and so continued till *Paulus Æmilius*, on the Conquest of *Macedon*, overthrew seventy of their Cities. Few of which being since re-edified, and the Country for a long time languishing under the *Turks*, here are not any very fair Towns or well-peopled Cities at the present to be spoken of; and therefore we must look on such as flourished in the times fore-going. The principal whereof were, 1. *Dodona*, one of the Cities of *Chaonia*,

Chaonia,

of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and Oracle of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodoneus*; situate in a fair Grove, the Trees whereof are said to be Vocal, and to give the Oracle: though others say, it was delivered first by a pair of Pigeons, whereof the one afterwards fled to *Delphos*, the other to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Aegypt*. It was the ancientest Oracle of all *Greece*, and so perhaps was the Town the ancientest Town also. Said to be first built by *Dodon*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Europa*: more probably so called from *Dodanim*, the Son of *Javan*, and Grand-child of *Japhet*, who first inhabited this Region; the whole Country (*Greece* I mean) being called *Javan* from the Father, (by which name commonly it occurreth in the *Hebrew* Text) this Town *Dodona* from the Son. 2. *Cassope*, a Port-Town, with a fair Promontory of the same name adjoining to it. 3. *Onchesimus*, by *Strabo* called *Onchimus*, and by *Pliny* *Echinus*, a Port-Town also, now called *Santi Quaranta*. 4. *Panormus*, on the Sea-side also, retaining still the old name, and but little else. 5. *Antigonis*, more within the Land, founded or repaired by *Antigonus*, a King of *Macedon*, now called *Argiro Castro*, as *Niger* thinketh. 6. *Phenice*, once the chief Town hereof; which being sacked by the *Illirians*, under *Tenta* their Queen, gave the *Romans* an occasion of Quarrel with them, upon Complaint made to them by the *Epirots*. 7. *Pelodes*, a Port-Town, the Principal in that part which was called *Thresprotia*; as 8. *Tarono*, on the River *Thyamis*. and 9. *Sybota*, an ancient Haven-Town, (now called *Syoita*) was in that part whereof which was called *Almene*. 10. *Argos*, the chief City of the *Amphilochians*. This part hereof was first named *Molossia*, from *Molossus* the Son of *Pyrrhus*, and *Andromache*, remarkable for the best breed of Matives, hence called *Molossi*; and afterwards *Chaolia*, by *Helenus* the Son of *Priamus*, whom *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles* settled in this Country: who having unfortunately slain his Brother *Chaon*, caused it in memory of him to be called *Chaonia*; *Chaoniam que omnem Trojana a Chaone dixit*, as it is in *Virgil*. Of these *Molossians*, *Pluto*, the third Son of *Saturn*, was sometimes King, called, from the flat and hollow situation of this Country, consisting much of deep Valleys, the King of Hell.

Towns of special note in *Acarmania* were, 1. *Anastorium*, on the Bay of *Ambracia*, now called *Vanizza*. 2. *Ambracia*, the Regal Seat or Court of *Pyrrhus*, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Larta*, from *Larta* an adjoining Town, situate in or near the place where *Ambracia* stood. Mr. *Wheeler* assures us, *Ambracia* is now called *Ambrakia*, and is a small Village, about a days Journey from *Larta*, at the bottom of that Bay from whence it stands 16 miles to the East. It was once subject unto *Periander*, King or Tyrant of *Corinth*, who being slain by a Woman named *Leonna*, whom he kept as his Concubine, occasioned the Inhabitants from that time forwards, in memory of their Deliverance, to worship a Lion. Afterwards being taken from the Children of *Pyrrhus* by the *Macedonians*, and from them won by the *Aetolians* in the time of their greatness, it was besieged by *Fulvius*, a *Roman* Consul spoken of before. Who seeing that he could not force it, was willing, at the Mediation of the *Athenians*, *Rhodiens*, and other Friends of both parties to conclude a Peace: but so that he despoiled this City at his going hence of much excellent Imagery, carrying away with him unto *Rome* the Pictures of the nine *Muses* most admirably well done by the hand of *Zeuxis*, the rarest Painter of his times. 3. *Buthrotum*, a *Roman* Colony, by *Pliny* called *Colonia* simply; now a small Village called *Butrinto*. 4. *Leucas*, situate on the point of a Promontory of the same name also, anciently memorable for the Temple of *Apollo*. But leaping into the Sea from the top of this Promontory, such as unfortunately loved were cured of that malady: the first trial of that kind being made by *Sappho* that famous Poetress. At

that time it was joined unto the Land; but since by the violence of the Sea or the hand of man, it is made into an Island; according unto that of *Ovid*,

*Leucada continnam veteres habuere Colini,
Nunc Freta circumcunt*

That is to say,
Leucas, in former times joyn'd to the Land,
Environ'd round with Waters now doth stand.

It was called *Leucas*, from the Whiteness of the Rock or Promontory, having before the Separation or disjunction of it been called *Nervos*; the chief Town of it varying with the name of the Isle and Promontory. Both Town and Island at this time is called *S. Mauro*, taken by *Bajazet* the II. from the State of *Venice*, and by him given unto the *Jews*, (who do still inhabit it) at their expulsion out of *Spain*. *Santo Mauro* stands three miles from *Leucadia*, as Mr. *Wheeler* acquaints us: It has a good Fortress situate on a low Ground, with some round Bastions. The Inhabitants of it are Pirates, and for that cause are hated both by the *Turks* and *Christians* the former burning their Ships to prevent their depredations. It hath about 5 or 6 Thousand Inhabitants. The *Venetian* Fleet Rendevouzed near this Island in the year 1687, when it went for the *Morea*. *Coronelli* having described the Situation of this Important Fort, saith, in the year 1479, it was taken by the *Turks* from some *Greeks*, who till then enjoyed it. In 1502, the *Venetians* took it from the *Turks*, but at the Peace restored it to *Sultan Bajazet*. But the 24th of July 1684, *Morosini* retook it, and they have since very much improved its Fortifications. 5. *Nicopolis*, a Colony of the *Romans*, of great Wealth and Beauty in the time of *St. Paul*, who from hence dated his Epistle to *Titus*: called in that Proscript *Nicopolis* of *Macedonia*, because *Epirus* at that time was part of the Province of *Macedon*, though afterwards a distinct Province of it self. It was first built by *Augustus Caesar* on a Promontory opposite unto *Actium*, on the other side of the Bay: that being the place where his Land Soldiers were incamped before the Naval Battle betwixt him and *Mark Anthony*, and was thus called either in memory of his Victory, or from a poor man and his Ass whom he met here the day before. For asking the man his name, he told him that his name was *Eutyches*, i. e. Fortunate, and that the name of his Ass was *Nicon*, i. e. Conqueror; which happy Omen made his Soldiers couragious and hopeful of Victory: and he in memory thereof erected here two brazen Images, the one of the Ass, the other of his Master. It is now a small Village called *Prevesa*. 6. *Actium*, on the Sea-shore, nigh unto which *Augustus* and *Anthony* fought for the Empire of the World. The Navy of the latter consisted of 500 Galleys; the former had 250 only, but those crowned with Victory; *Antonius* shamefully deserting his Soldiers to follow after *Cleopatra*, who on the very first Charge fled away for *Egypt*. The Town being now ruined, the Promontory upon which it stood is called *Caba di Figalo*. Mr. *Wheeler* gives us an account of these Towns about this Bay, *Anta* which has 6 or 7000 Inhabitants most *Greeks*, and is an Archbishop's See, which was removed hither from *Lepanto*, under him are 2. *Ragous*, a little Town 10 miles from *Prevenza*, 3. *Ventza*, a Town and Castle on the other side of the Bay, 4. *Astos*, an Island Town. 5. *Acheloon*. 6. *Javina*, a Town bigger then *Anta*, peopled by Rich *Greek* Merchants, and an Archbishops See too, under which are 7. *Argyro Castro*. 8. *Burrinto*, and 9. *Glykeon*. Thus far Mr. *Wheeler*, p. 38.

The Country was first peopled by *Dodanim* the Son of *Javin*, or at least by some of his Posterity coming hither from the Isle of *Rhodes*; whose Memory was preserved a long time in the Town of *Dodona*, by him, or from him, so denominated. Afterwards being parted into

into the same, and the Nations united in the common Interest, became a great and powerful Kingdom; given to a Race of Kings descending from *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles*, and continuing till the time of *Pyrrhus Ezechides*. A man of such Courage and Magnanimity, that he did not only recover his own Kingdom, of which *Cassander*, had deprived his Father, but got the Kingdom of *Macedon* from *Cassander's* Children; outed of which, he tried his Fortune with the *Romans*, Anno *Mundi* 3683, U. C. 471. After his death this Kingdom was shrewdly shaken by the *Macedonians*, and shortly after subdued by *Paulus Aemilius*, who, as we now said, destroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For desirous to satisfy his Soldiers after his Victory in *Macedon*, he sent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principal men of every City. These he commanded to deliver up all the Gold and Silver which they had, and to that end, as he gave out, he sent certain Companies of Soldiers along with them; unto whom he gave Secret Instructions, that on a day by him appointed they should fall to sack every one the Town whereunto they were sent. A barbarous and bloody Decree, 70 Cities confederate with the *Romans* ruined in one day, and no fewer than 150000 *Epirots* made and sold for Slaves. But the chief motive which induced him to so great a Cruelty was, by dispeopling this Country, lying with a long and fair Sea-coast over against *Italy*, to give the *Romans* opportunity to land their Armies without any Resistance for the farther Progress of their Forces into *Macedon*, *Thrace*, *Mesia*, or where else they pleased. Which ungodly Policy was afterwards imitated by *William* the Conqueror, who laid waste all that part of *Hampshire*, since called *New Forest*, and therein Thirty Six Parish Churches, that he might have a safe Landing-place for his *Norman* Forces, if the *English* should at any time endeavour to make head against him. Being made subject to the *Romans*, it was a while part of the Province of *Macedonia*; but afterwards, when *Macedonia* was made a Diocesis, it became a distinct Province of it self, called by the name of *Old Epirus*, to difference it from the Province of *New Epirus*, which lay Eastwards of it. At the Division of the Empire it belonged to the *Constantinopolitans*, and so continued till the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western Christians: at what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a Prince of the Imperial Family, seized on *Aetolia* and *Epirus*, as before was said, and sped so well in his Designs, that he took the strong City of *Durazzo* from the State of *Venice*, (to whom it fell in the division of that Spoil) and cunningly (if not Treacherously) intercepted *Peter* the third Emperor of the *Latins*, whom, as some say, he caused to be Murdered at a Banquet. After his death, his whole Estate being divided into two parts, *Aetolia* with that part hereof which is called *Chaonia*, continued in his House till the time of *Charles* Prince of *Aetolia* and *Epirus* spoken of before, after whose death it was subdued by *Amurath* the Second, as before was said. The residue hereof, together with that part of *Macedon* which is called *Albania*, fell to the Family of the *Castriots*: the last of which, named *John*, (the Father of *Scanderbeg*) seeing himself unable to resist that Tyrant, who had already swallowed up all his Neighbour-princes, submitted his Estate unto him, and gave unto him all his Sons for Hostages. No sooner was the old Prince dead, but *Amurath* seized on his Estate, murdered his three Eldest Sons, and caused *George*, the youngest to be train'd up in the Law of *Mahomet*: who afterwards, escaping out of his Power and recovering all his Fathers Countries, assumed also the Style or Title of Prince of *Epirus*. After whose death, his Children, not being able to make good their Game, lost it to *Mahomet* the Great; as shall be shewn more fully in the Story and Description of *Albania*, which is next to follow.

4. ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the East with *Macedonia*, on the West with the *Adriatick*, on the North with *Sclavonia*, on the South with *Epirus*. The Country is mountainous and barren; watered with few Rivers, and those of no great note amongst the Ancients; as 1. *Laus*, 2. *Aspis*, 2. *Panyasus*, 4. *Celydnus*: all of them falling into the *Adriatick*.

It took this name from the *Albani*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract, from whom the chief City hereof was called *Albanapolis*. Other Towns of most consideration are, 1. *Sfetigrade*, or *Vestigard*, (called by some the Holy City) situate in the Borders of *Epirus*, on the top of an Hill, where it is fenced about like an Eagle's Nest; one of the last Towns in all this Country which was taken by *Scanderbeg* at his recovery of his Birthright and Estate herein; but being once taken by him, held good courageously against the Turk, the Soldiers neither fainting in their Oppositions, nor corrupted by Money, till at the last subdued by a Superstition. There was in the Town one onely Well, into which a Treacherous Christian cast a dead Dog: at the sight of which being the next day drawn up, the Soldiers gave up the Town; being so unreasonably superstitious, that no perswasion, nor the example of the Captain or Burgo-Masters, could make them drink those (as they thought) defiled waters. 3. *Durazzo*, a Town of great strength, first called *Epidamnium*, and afterwards *Dyrrhacium*. Under the Walls of which Town was the first bickering between the Soldiers of *Cesar* and *Pompey*, not only to the present Loss, but also the utter Discomfiture of *Cesar*, as he himself confessed, if the Enemies Captain had known how to have overcome. I must not omit the Valour of *Scava* at this Siege, who alone so long resisted *Pompey's* Army, that he had 220 Darts sticking in his Shield, and lost one of his Eyes; and yet gave not over till *Cesar* came to his Rescue.

*Parque novum Fortuna videt concurrere, Bellum,
Atque Virum---donsamque ferens in Pectore Sylvam.*

Fortune beholds an unaccustom'd fight,
An Army and a man together fight,
Whose breast a Wood of Arrows covered quite.

In the Division of the Eastern Empire amongst the *Latines* it fell into the power of *Venice*; taken at last after a long and tedious Siege, by *Amurath* the second, Anno 1502. The *Venetians* took and burnt this City in the year 1654, but the Turks soon after recovered it. Mr. *Wheeler* saith, it is now nothing but a Ruin'd Village, with a neglected Fort. p. 28. 4. *Dibra*, in the Hill-Countries near *Epirus*; the first Town which submitted to the Valiant *Scanderbeg* at his revolting from the Turks; supposed to be the *Deborus* of *Ptolemy*. 5. *Croia*, conceived to be the *Epicaria* of *Ptolemy*, the chief Town of all this Country seated amongst inaccessible Mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by *Scanderbeg*, but by a Wife; who, having got into his power, the Secretary of the principal *Bassa*, forced him to write Letters in his Master's name unto the Governour hereof, to deliver it unto him; which was done accordingly in 1434. Afterwards it was in vain besieged by *Amurath* the second, who under the Walls hereof gave up his wretched Soul to the Devil in the year 1449; and thrice besieged by *Mahomet* his Son and Successor, before he could again possess it, but taken at the last after *Scanderbeg's* death, as if the *Gemius* or Tutelar Deity of the place had departed with him in the year 1468. 6. *Petrella*, a Town of great Strength, seated on the top of an Hill (as almost all the Towns of *Albania* are) about 25 miles from *Croia* delivered unto *Scanderbeg* at his first sitting down before it: as also was 7. *Petra Alba*, three miles from *Petrella*, near the Borders

ders of *Macedon*, and situate like the other on the top of a Mountain, the River *Emathus* running under the bottom of it. 8. *Stellusa*, fifty miles from *Croia*, built on the top of an high Hill in the middle of a pleasant and fruitful Valley, with great and spacious Plains about it. 9. *Dagna* or *Dayna*, a place of great importance in the Hill Country towards *Sclavonia*; for the possession whereof rose a War betwixt *Scanderbeg* and the State of *Venice*, but the *Venetians* being worsted at the Battle of *Drino*, relinquished their Pretensions to it. 10. *Aulon* a Port Town, now called *Valona*, situate over against *Hydruntum* or *Otranto* in *Italy*, distant from it about 60 miles. The Town is unwall'd but fortified with a very strong Castle; a Town unfortunately fit for the Invasion of *Italy*, and was accordingly made use of by *Achmetes* the chief *Bass* under *Mahomet* the Great; who from hence pass'd his Army over into *Apulia*, took the Town of *Otranto*, and had not the death of *Mahomet*, and the Combustions, thereon following amongst the Turks, altered the design, might have opened them a very fair way for the adding of *Rome* unto *Constantinople*. This Place was at first a Bishops See under the Archbishop of *Athens*, afterwards under *Durazzo*, and is now an Archbishop's See, and the Seat of the Turkish Governour. It is strong, and has a good Haven secured by two Castles, yet it could not secure the *Algerine* Pirates from the *Venetian* Fleet, who some few years since burnt them in this Port. 11. *Appollonia*, a Town of great Note in the time of the *Romans*; a Sea-Town, furnished with a commodious Haven, which they held as their Entrance into *Greece*; to that purpose serving them as commodiously as *Calais* did the *English* in their Wars with *France*. It is now called *Pollona* by the Turks, and reduced to a poor Village of a few Houses.

This Country anciently was a part of *Macedon*, inhabited by the *Talautii*, *Æstrai* and *Albania*, from which last (but not till these latter times) it had the name of *Albania*: but whether these *Albani* were a Colony of the *Albanians* of *Asia*, (though it be very probable) I determine not. When it was made a Province of the Empire it contained all *Prævalitana* and some part of *Macedonia Salutaris*; being under the Diocess of *Dacia* in the time of *Justinian*, but at first of *Macedon*. Dis-membred from the main Body of it when the *Latines* had subdued *Constantinople*, it fell unto the noble Family of the *Castriots*; who though they took unto themselves the Title of Kings or Princes of *Epirus*, (most of which they held) as the Country of more Note and Eminence, yet was *Albania* the greatest Strength, and *Croia* the chief City thereof, the Seat of their Residence; they being called in that respect by some Writers the Kings of *Albania*. *John Castriot*, the Father of *Scanderbeg*, seeing himself unable to resist the *Turks*, became their Homager, and delivered four Sons for Hostages; whom *Amurath* the second in their Father's lifetime caused to be circumcised, and turn *Mahometans*: and after his decease murdered the three eldest, and seized upon *Croia* the chief City with the rest of the Country. But *George* the youngest of those Sons, being reserved for better Fortunes, was carefully brought up by *Amurath*, who somewhat passionately affected him, in the Stratagems of War; though some of his Courtiers then told him that he nourished a Serpent in his Bosom, which would one day sting him. *Amurath*, to make Trial of his Disposition, offered him on a time the Crown of *Albania*: to which he prudently replied, that he preferred the honour of his Service before all the Kingdoms of the World; and that he held his hand fitter for a Sword, then his Head for a Crown. Satisfied with which answer the Tyrant preferred him to the place of a *Sanzack* or Provincial Governour, and gave him some Office of Command in all those Armies which he set out against the Christians. Escaping out of the Battle wherein *Caramen*, the great *Bass*, was overthrown and taken Prisoner by *Huniades*, he got the Town of *Croia* by a piece of wit, as before was said; and in a very short

time after made himself Master of *Petrella*, *Petra*, *Alba*, *Stellusa*, and all the rest of the Countrey, by the Reputation and Terror of his first Success. Having recovered his Inheritance out of the hands of the *Turks*, he reconciled himself to the Church of *Christ*, styling himself the *Soldier of Christ Jesus* from that time forwards. Invaded by a vast Army of *Turks*, he overcometh *Aly Bassa*, and kills 20000 of his men. With no more than 20 Horse and 50 Foot he assaulteth *Mustapha* in his Camp; in which 5000 *Turks* were slain, and 300 taken. With whom encountering not long after in the open Field, he slew 10000 of his men, took many Prisoners, and *Mustapha* himself amongst the rest, whom he ransomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the Host of *Amurath*, then besieging *Croia*, he killed *Feris Bassa* hand to hand in a single Combat: and in the time of *Mahomet*, who succeeded *Amurath*, vanquished *Isaac* the great *Bass*, routed his whole Army, had the Spoil of his Camp, took 20 of his fairest Ensigns, and slew 30000 of his Soldiers. Not to instance in the rest of his noble Actions, it is reported that in the course of his War against the *Turks*, he killed no fewer than 3000 of them with his own hands; using a Turkish Scimitar in all his Fights, of great weight and bigness. Which when *Mahomet* on a Peace between them had desired to see, and afterwards returning again with this Censure of it, that he saw nothing in it more than ordinary: the gallant Prince sent back this answer, that the Virtue of the Weapon depended on the Strength of his Arm, which he could not send him, for that he did reserve it for the death of his Enemies. Finally, having held his Cards against *Amurath* and *Mahomet*, two most fortunate Gamesters, for the space of 24 years, he set up his Rest at last a Winner; dying in peace at *Lissa*, then belonging to the State of *Venice*, Jan. 17. Anno 1466, and was there honourably interred. At the taking of which Town by the *Turks* about nine years after, his Body was digged up by them, not in spight, but honour; that man accounting himself happy who could get any of his Bones to preserve as a Relick, supposing that as long as he had it about him he should be invincible. But with him died the Liberty of his Country also, not long after subdued by the *Turks*, and made a Province of that Empire, as it still continueth: the name of *Albania* being by them extended over all *Epirus*, and so much of *Dalmatia* also as is under their power.

The Arms of this Kingdom (or rather of the Kings thereof were *Gules*, an Eagle *Sables*.)

The History of the Family of the *CASTRIOTS* from *Du Fresne*.

There is no Man, how moderately so ever acquainted with the Stories of the latter Ages, but knows the great Lustre given to the Family of the *Castriots* by that Great *Alexander* or *Scanderbeg*, who was scarce inferior in Military Glory and Conquests to the *Macedonian*. Those however, who have endeavoured to find out his Pedigree from its Original; though he is confess'd to have been Born of one of the most illustrious Houses of *Albania*, have yet not been able to deduce his Linage without a mixture of Fables, because they had no certain and undoubted Monuments of Antiquity to direct them in their Inquiry, they perishing either by the negligence of the *Albanians*, or the calamities of their Wars. However that nothing might be omitted in this obscure affair, I shall here give the World his Descent from such Authors as have undertaken to Deduce it, though it is not always founded on undoubted Authorities.

1. *Constantin Castriot*, surnamed *Meserech*, Prince or Lord of *Æmathia* and *Castriot* is mentioned by *Flavius Comnenus*, who saith he died in the year MCCCXC. He left

2. *George*

2. *George Castriot* his Son, mentioned also by *Flavius*, and styled Prince of *Amathia*, *Menestria* and *Castoria*.

3. *John Castriot* Son of *George*, and Lord of the same Towns, and of *Croia*, as *Peter Luccarius* saith, who adds, That the Family of the *Castriots*, had their name from a Town so called in the Territory of *Asen*, or upon the River *Drin*. This *John* is celebrated in the Historians of that Age for the greatness of his Mind and his Military Knowledge, which enabled him a long time to sustain the furious Attacks of *Sultan Amurath*, who, yet at last by his numbers overpowered him, and forced him to give his four Sons as Hostages. His Lady was *Voissava*, the Daughter of *Pologus*, a Lord of a Country so called in the Borders of *Macedonia* and *Bulgaria*. By her he had Nine Children, four Sons and five Daughters.

1. *Reposius*, called *Ameslan Beg*, imployed by *Amurath* against his Nephew *Scanderbeg*, on the score of his great skill in Military affairs. 2. *Stanisse*. 3. *Constantine*, and 4. *George*, called after *Scanderbeg*. His Daughters were *Falla* or *Angela*, the Mother of *Goicus* and *George Strefs*. 2. *Angelina*, married to *Vlademus Golam*, Brother of *Arian Comnenus*. 2. *Vlaika*, the Wife of *John Musak*. 3. *Mara* Married to *Stephen Cernovich*. 4. *Mamizora*, Married to *Musaco Topia*, by her Brother *Scanderbeg*, who was slain in a Battle against the Turks.

4. *George Castriot* or *Scanderbeg*, as he was called by *Sultan Amurath*, when he was Circumcised by his order. The greatness of this Princes mind, and the Military and his Civil Prudence, together with his other rare Virtues and endowments elevated him to the Dignity of a Throne, and he was always called King of *Albania* and *Epirus*. He not only defended his Kingdom against the Turks, but very often overthrew their numerous Armies. He died in the year 1463, or as *Barlet* saith, the 17th of *January* 1467, being then 63 years old. He Married *Donica* or *Andronia* the Daughter of *Arian Comnenus*, Lord of *Buarese* and *Terra-Nova* in *Albania*; and by her amongst other Children, he had *John Castriot*, Duke of *St. Peter's* in *Galatina*, and *Voissava*, Wife of *Stephen Naramont*, Duke of *Mons-Niger*.

5. *John Castriot* his Son, seeing *Albania* and *Epirus*, after his Fathers Death wholly Conquered by the Turks, went to *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*, and from him obtained the Dukedom of *St. Peters*. He Married *Ircnes* the Daughter of *Lazarus Brancovitz* Despot of *Servia*; by her he had *Ferdinand* Duke of *St. Peters*. 2. *George Castriot* surnamed *Scanderbeg*, who died in the year 1540. And was the Father of *Ferdinand Castriot*. 3. *Constantin Castriot* Bishop of *Essernia*. He had also a Daughter called *Mary*, who died in 1540.

6. *Ferdinand Castriot* Duke of *St. Peters*, Married a Daughter of *Boniface de Aqua Viva*, Duke of *Nardona*, and by her had *Achilles*, *Frederick Alphonsus*, *Paul*, *John* and *Ferdinand*, who all died without any Issue. He had also a Daughter named *Ircnes Castriot*, which carried the Dutchy of *St. Peters* into the Family of *St. Severina*, by Marrying *Petro Antonio*, Prince of *Bisigniano*, who had *Berardino* a Son dead without Issue, and *Victoria* a Daughter Married to *Ferdinando di Capua*, Duke of *Termini*.

From this Family are also derived the Dukes of *Ferrandina* in the Kingdom of *Naples*. Three of which are named in the Histories of that Kingdom, *John Castriot* Duke of *Fertrandino*, *Alphonso* Marquis of *Atripalda*, and *Ferdinando* Marquis of *St. Angelo*.

John Castriot the first Duke of *Ferrandina*, Married first *Joanna* the Daughter of *Honoratus Cajetan*, Duke of *Trajerio*, and Count of *Fondi*, by whom he had but *Mary* the Heiress of the Dutchy of *Ferrandina*, and of the Earldoms of *Galatolia*, *Veglia Covertina*, and *Leverani*.

Alphonso Marquis of *Atripalda*, Married *Camila di Cosaja*, and had by her *Anony* and *John*.

Ferdinando Castriot Marquis of *St. Angelo*, Married *Camila Capuana*. They had Issue, *Joanna* and *Hippolita*. *Joanna* Married.

Antonio Castriot, Duke of *Ferrandina*, he was slain in a Quarrel at *Venice*, and neither he nor his Lady had any Issue.

Hippolita Castriot, Wife of *Hector Montaquila*. *Joannella Castriot*, Wife of *Octavio Capaci*, a Neapolitan Noble-man.

Roetus Pirrus, mentions *Bernard Castriot*, Count of *Galatina* and *Capertina*, the Father of *John* Bishop of *Mazara* in *Sicily*, about the year 1485. There have been some of this Line also in the Nobility of *Venice*.

5. MACEDONIA.

MACEDONIA is bounded on the East with the *Aegean* Sea, on the West with *Albania*, on the North with *Mæsia Superior* and a part of *Thrace*, and on the South with *Epirus* and *Achaia*.

It was first called *Amonia*, from Mount *Hemus*, which shutteth up that side hereof which is towards *Mæsia*; after *Amathia*, or *Emathia*, from a King of it called *Amathus*; *Macedonia*, from *Macedo*, the Son of *Deucalion*, and the Father of *Caranus*, the first King of the Line of *Alexander*; and finally *Kittim*, or the Land of *Kethim*, whereof see 1. *Maccab.* 1. 1. and 8. 5. from *Kittim* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*; who was planted here. Anciently it was of more large extent than it is at the present, extending from the *Aegean* Sea unto the *Adriatick*, till the taking of *Albania* out of it, which hath streightned it upon that side, but the rest is as formerly.

The Country taking it together; is very fruitful and pleasant, tho' on the outward parts thereof begirt with rough Mountains and thick Forrests: in former times much celebrated for its Mines of Gold and Silver, which are long since exhausted. It contained formerly the Provinces of *Amathia*, *Pieria*, *Pelasgia*, *Istiaotis*, *Phthiotis*, *Thessaly*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphaxitis*, *Paraxia*, *Edonis*, and many others of less note, inhabited by 152 several Nations: now principally divided (besides *Albania*) into 1. *Thessaly*, 2. *Macedon* specially so called, and 3. *Mygdonia*, which the Turks called *Jamboli*.

1. *THESSALY* hath on the East the *Aegean* Sea, on the West *Albania*, on the North *Macedon* and *Mygdonia*, on the South *Achaia*. A sweet and delectable Country it is, the Pleasures and Delights whereof inclined the People to be very effeminate and dissolute in their course of Life, made them in love with Luxury and Ease, and much like the *Persians* in Behaviour, whose Entrance into *Greece* they did therefore favour. Yet notwithstanding this Debauchedness, they were esteemed the best Horsemen of all the *Grecians*; by their excellent managing of which creature, (as if they had been one piece with it, and either lent the Horse their Minds, or borrowed his Body) they gave occasion unto the Fiction of the *Centaur*s, half Men, half Beasts.

It is now called *Comenolitari*, and of old was very famous for many things, especially 1. for the Hill *Olympus* of so great height, that it seemeth to transcend the Clouds, and is therefore frequently by the Poets used for Heaven it self. 2. For the Hill *Othrys*, inhabited by the *Lapithe*, over whom *Pirithous* was King. 3. for the Mountains of *Pelion* and *Ossa*, the Dwelling-places of the *Centaur*s, who intending to ravish *Hippodamia*, the new Bride of *Pirithous*, on her Wedding-day, were slain by *Hercules* and the *Lapithe*. 4. For the delectable Valley of *Tempe*, situate betwixt *Ossa* and *Olympus*, extending in length six miles, and five in breadth; so beautified with Natures Gifts, that it was supposed to be the Garden of the *Muses*. 5. and lastly; For the *Dolopes* and *Myrmidones*, (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had Command at the Siege of *Troy*: these last, by rea-

son that they were a laborious and thrifty People, being fabled by the Poets to have first been Emmets, transformed into Men at the Prayer of *Æacus*, when he wanted Soldiers.

——— *Mores quos ante tenebant*
Nunc quoq; habent; parcum genus est, patiensq; laborum
Quæstique tenax, & quod quæsitæ reservet.

The custom they of Emmets still retain,
 A sparing Folk, and unto Labour set,
 Strangely addicted to all kind of Gain,
 And wary Keepers of what e'er they get.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Trica*, the Episcopal See of *Heliodorus*, the Author of that ingenious Piece called the *Æthiopick History*; which he so prized, that he chose rather to lose his Bishoprick than consent to the burning of his Book, which a Provincial Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A Piece indeed of rare Contexture and neat Contrivances, without any touch of loose or lascivious Language; honest and chaste Affection being the Subject of it, not such as old or modern Poets shew us in their Comedies or other Poems. For here we have no Incestuous mixture of Fathers and Daughters, no Pandarism of old Nurses, no unseemly Action specified where heat of Blood and Opportunity do meet; nor indeed any one passage unworthy of the chastest Ear. 2. *Lamia*, where the *Athenians*, after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their Freedoms, besieged *Antipater*: Which was the last honourable Enterprize undertaken by that great and renowned City, known in old Histories by the name of *Bellum Lamiacum*. 3. *Larissa*, situate on the South of *Demetrias*, but on the same Bay; memorable for the Birth of *Achilles*, from hence called frequently in the Poets *Larissæus Achilles*, which Birth of his is ascribed by others to the Town of *Phthia*, (from whence the Region called *Phthioris* takes the denomination) frequently mentioned in the Poets upon that account: And possibly, being neighbouring Cities, the one might be the place of his Birth, and the other of his Habitation. This City is seated upon the River *Peneo*, Twenty-five Miles from the Bay of *Thessalonica* to the West, and from *Pharsalus* to the South, and Two hundred from *Constantinople* to the South-West. It is now an Archbishop's See, and of late was one of the most flourishing Cities of Greece, *Mahomet* the Fourth keeping his Court there for almost Twenty years together, out of Aversion for *Constantinople*. The Learned Dr. *Edward Brown* who saw it saith, It is seated on a rising Ground, on the highest part of which stands the Palace, and on the North of it the famous Mountain of *Olympus*, and on the South lies a plain Country. It is inhabited by *Christians*, *Jews* and *Turks*. There is a handsom Stone-bridge over the River, consisting of nine Arches. The City at that time was very populous by reason the Sultan was there, yet kept in great quiet by the Officers who were appointed for that purpose. This Author saw it in the year 1669. 4. *Demetrias*, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelasgicus* (now *Golfo dell' Armiro*) of very great strength by Art and Nature. Which being held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcis* in the Isle of *Eubœa*, now *Negropont*, and the City of *Corinth*, kept all Greece in awe, and were therefore commonly called the *Fetters of Greece*; the *Græcians* never thinking themselves at liberty till those Towns were dismantled by the *Romans*. It stands upon the Bay of *Volo*, anciently called *Sinus Pelasgicus*, and is now called by some *Dimitriada*, by others *Dimitrado*, and is at this day a Bishop's See under the Archbishop of *Larissa*. Upon this Bay stands also the Town of *Volo*, which gives it its present name; in more ancient times it was called *Pagasa*, and is built after the Antique way with round Towers. The *Turks* in the year 1655 having made great Preparations here for the War of *Candia*, the *Venetians* attack'd and took

the place, and after they had carried away all that was worth the taking, they dismantell'd, burnt, and blew up all its Works, as much as in them lay, not leaving any thing standing to invite the *Turks* to repair it. See *Coronelli*. 5. *Pharsalus*, nigh to which was fought the great Battel betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey* for the Sovereignty of the Roman Empire. A Battel more famous than bloody, 6000 only of 300000 which were in the Field on both sides, being therein slain. A Battel before which the *Pompeians* were in such a miserable Security, that some of them contended for the chief Priesthood, which was *Cæsar's* Office: others disposed of the Consulship and Preferments in the City of *Rome*: *Pompey* himself being so wretchless, that he neither considered into what place it were best to fly if he lost the day, or by what means he might provide for his own Safety, and end the War; as if the War had been made against some ignoble Enemy, and not against that *Cæsar* who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, took Prisoners One million of Men, and slain as many. 6. *Philippi*, so named from *Philip* the *Macedonian*, the first Founder of it; situate in the farther part of the same Plains of *Pharsalia*, and famous for as memorable a Battel as that before, and of no less consequence: that namely betwixt *Augustus* and *M. Antonius* on the one side, against *Brutus* and *Cassius* on the other; these latter being rather overcome by Chance than Valour. For either of them (thinking the other vanquished) slew himself in the Field; being the two last that ever openly stood out for the common Liberty, and are therefore called by *Crematius Cordus*, *Ultimi Romanorum*, or the last of the true Roman Spirits. 7. *Gomphi*, a very ancient City bordering on *Epirus*. 8. *Phera*, in which City *Alexander* the Tyrant reigned, against whom that noble Captain *Pelopidas* the *Theban* fighting was slain in Battel: The Tyrant being not long after Murthered by his Wife's Brother, and by that means all *Thessaly* recovering Liberty. 9. *Pegasa*, or *Pagasa*, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelasgicus*, which from hence is sometimes named *Pegasus*; in which the Ship called *Argo* was said to be built, so famous for the renowned Voyage of the *Argonauts*. The Hill *Pelion* spoken of before is not far from hence. 10. *Pithyon*, or *Pitheum*, of great note (according to some) for the *Pythian* Games there celebrated in the honour of *Apollo*, who hereabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: The Conquerors in which Games were crowned at the first only with an Oaken Garland, but afterwards with one of Lawrel. Of which thus the Poet.

Neve operis famam posset obolere Vetustas,
Instituit sacros celebri certamine Ludos,
Pythia de domiti Serpentis nomine dictas, &c.

Thus made to speak *English* by G. Sandys;
 Then lest the well-deserved memory
 Of such an Act in future time should die,
 He instituted the so-famous Games
 Of free Contention, which he *Pythia* names,
 Who Ran, who Wrestled best, or rak'd the Ground
 With swiftest Wheels, the Oaken Garland crown'd.

These Games, together with the *Olympick*, *Isthmian* and *Nemean*, spoken of before, made the four annual Meetings amongst the *Græcians*, renowned for the universal Concourse of the noblest Spirits. 11. *Dolichæ*, which, together with *Iytheum*; and, 12. *Azorum*, another City of this Tract, standing near together, are called in *Livius* the Historian by the name of *Tripolis*. 13. *Hypata*, the Metropolis of *Thessaly*, so called by *Heliodorus* in his *Æthiopick History* before mentioned, who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Maliachus*, now *Golfo di Ziton* and not far from Mount *Oeta*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*: Upon which Mountain *Hercules*, being tortured with a poisoned Shirt sent by his innocent Wife *Dejanira*, is said to have buried himself; thence called

called *Hercules Cetaus*. Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Pasaga* and *Oemetrius*, are in the Region called *Phthiotis*; *Larissa*, *Dolyche*, *Pythium* and *Azorum*, in that called *Pelasgia*; *Gomphi* and *Tricca*, in *Istiotis*; the rest in *Thessalie* properly and specially so named.

This Country, at first called *Amonia*, afterwards *Pelasgia*, then *Pyrrhaea*, from *Pyrrha* the Wife of *Deucalion*, and finally *Thessalia*, from *Thessalus* one of the Companions of *Hercules*; by *Pliny* is called *Dryopis*, *Eftiotis* by *Strabo*, *Pelasgia* by *Diodorus*, and by *Homer* *Argos*; the name of some chief City or particular Province being figuratively used for the whole. It was divided commonly into four parts, 1. *Thessaliotis*, 2. *Istiotis*, 3. *Pelasgiotis*, and, 4. *Phthiotis*, the name of *Thessalie*, or *Thessaliotis* in the end prevailing; and accordingly distributed into several Governments, united finally in the person of *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, who partly by Force, but especially by Art and Practice, made himself Master of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt free and subject under the *Macedonian* Kings of the second Race, it became subject with that Kingdom to the State of *Rome*: First reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*; after a Province of it self, when *Macedon* was made a Diocese, part of which it was. But from a Province of that Diocese, and a Member of the Eastern Empire, it was made a Kingdom; given with that Title to *Boniface*, Marquis of *Montferrat*, in exchange for *Candia*, together with the City of *Thessalonica*, and some part of *Peloponnesus*, at the Division of that Empire amongst the *Latines*; which Title he affected, in regard that *Reiner*, the Brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been created Prince of *Thessalie* by the Emperor *Emanuel*, whose Daughter *Cyri-Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to Wife: In him as it began, so this Title ended; *Thessalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Thessaly* reverting to the Empire when the *Greeks* recovered it: from whom it was subdued, and added to the *Turkish* Empire, in the Reign of *Amurath* the Second, Anno 1432.

2. *M A C E D O N* specially so called is bounded on the East with *Migdonia*, on the West with *Albania*, on the North with Mount *Hemus*, on the South with *Thessalie*. The Country is for the most part fruitful as before was said, but not surfeiting with Delights as to make the People wanton or effeminate in their Course of Life; they being naturally good Soldiers, exact observers of Military Discipline, and inured to Hardness, which their many signal Victories do most clearly evidence both in *Greece* and *Asia*.

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own Wits reckoned them amongst the barbarous Nations; and yet, by a strange kind of contradiction ascribe unto their Country the Seats of the *Muses*. For in this Country was Mount *Pimpla*, with a Fountain of the same name at the Foot thereof, both consecrated to the *Muses*, from hence called *Pimplicides*. Here also was the Hill *Libethrus*, and the Province of *Pieria*; from whence the *Muses* had the names of *Libothrides* and *Prorides*; by this last called more frequently than by any other name whatever, especially by the *Greeks* themselves. But the Birth of *Aristotle* in this Country doth more convince the *Greeks* of this foolish Arrogance than all the *Muses* in the World. A Man so admirable in the general course of Learning, so universally comprehensive of all Arts and Sciences, that the best witted *Grecian* might have been his Scholar, and thought it a great Happiness, as King *Philip* did, that they had any Children to be tutored by him.

The principal Rivers hereof (besides *Erigon* and *Aliaemon* spoken of before) are, 1. *Axius*, at present called *Pardaris*, rising out of the Hill *Scardus*, a Branch of Mount *Hemus*, and passing through the whole extent of this Country into *Sinus Thermaicus*; or the Gulf of *Thessalonica* as it is now named: The sweetest River of these parts, and of sweetest Water; but such as maketh all

the Cattel black which drink of it. 2. *Chabrus*, 3. *Ecdorus*; both rising out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the same Bay also. Besides which there are other three fair and capacious Bays ascribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Migdonia*; that is to say, *Singiticus*, now *Golfo di monte santo*, and *Toronicus*, now the Gulf or Bay of *Amonia*, and the third common unto *Thrace* also, which is *Sinus Strymonicus*, now the Bay of *Comela*.

Towns of most observation in it, according to the several Regions and parts hereof, were for the *Almopi*, 1. *Horma*, called afterwards *Selenia*; 2. *Europus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*; 3. *Aphlus*, of *Sintica*; 4. *Tristolus*; 5. *Paracopolis*; 6. *Garsicus*; 7. *Heraclea*, for distinction called *Heraclea Sintica*; there being many others of that name in *Greece*. In *Edone*, bordering toward *Thrace*; 8. *Scotusa*; 9. *Berga*; 10. *Amphypolis*, on the River *Strymon*, with which it is encompassed, whence it had the name; seated so close on the edge of *Thrace*, that it is questionable to which of them it belongs of right; once garrisoned by the *Athenians*, and from them taken by *Philip* the *Macedonian* in the first rise of his Fortunes. 11. *Crenides*, bordering on *Thrace* also, and by some Writers laid unto it, but I think erroneously: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned; by whom it was called *Philippi*; and situate in a Country so rich in Mines of Gold, that the said *Philip* drew hence yearly 1000 Talents, which make 600000 French Crowns or 140000 l. of our *English* Money. Afterwards made a *Roman* Colony, and accounted the chief City of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Acts* 16. 12. to the People of which *S. Paul* writ one of his Epistles. Next in *Emethia* we have, 12. *Tyrissu* in the Mid-lands, bordering upon *Thessaly*, now called *Ceresi*. 13. *Ædessa*, called afterwards *Ægea*, and now *Vodena*; the first Town of all this Country taken by *Caranus*, the Founder of the first Race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14. *Beræa*, on *Sinus Thermaicus*, honoured with the Preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*; the Citizens whereof are by *S. Luke* commended for their readiness in receiving the Gospel. 15. *Pella*, on the same Bay also; the Birth-place of *Alexander* the Great, from hence called *Juvenis Pellens*. 16. *Pydna*, upon the same Bay, at the Influx of the River *Aliaemon*; in which *Cassander* besieged and took *Olympias* the Mother, *Roxane* the Wife, and *Alexander* the Heir apparent of *Alexander*, all whom he barbarously murdered. This Cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himself of *Alexander*, who had once knock'd his Head and the Wall together, and partly to cry quit with *Olympias*, who had before as cruelly Murdered *Aridaus* the base Son of *Philip* and *Eurydice* his Wife, with whom *Cassander* was supposed to be over-familiar. Memorable also is this Town for the great Battel fought near it betwixt *Perseus* the last King of *Macedon* and *P. Æmilius* the Consul, in which *Perseus* having shamefully deserted his Army, lost both the Battel and his Kingdom, with no less than 20000 of his Foot, which were therein slain; the *Romans* having to cheap a Victory, that it cost them not above an Hundred or Sixty Men. 17. *Dium*, not far from the Hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea, of which mile the River *Helicon*, becoming there a Lake, and called *Baphyrus*, taketh up one half. It is situate in the Borders towards *Thessaly*; the way unto it out of *Tempe* being streight and narrow, and almost impassable, by reason of the Spurs of the Mountains running overthwart it: which, had it been well defended by the *Macedonians*, would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted. But *Perseus* hearing that the Enemy had got into *Tempe*, only took care to get his Treasure out of *Dium*, and so abandoned both the Passage and the Town together. 18. *Phylace*, more within the Land; as is, 19. *Eribæa*. But these four last are in that part hereof which is called *Pieria*.

3. *MIGDONIA* hath on the East the *Ægean* Sea, on the West *Macedon* properly and especially so called,

on the North *Edonis* and *Sinus Strymonicus*, on the South *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the Gulf of *Thessalonica*; so that it is almost a *Peninsula*, environed on three sides with Water.

Here is in this Country the Hill *Athos*, standing in a *Peninsula*, (the *Isthmus* being once cut through by *Xerxes* but since closed again) said to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 days journey long, half a day's in breadth, resembling the shape of a Man lying with his Face upwards: the highest point whereof, covered perpetually with Snow, is said to cast a Shadow as far as *Lemnos*. It is exceeding fruitful both in Grass, Fruit, Oyl, and Wine, and wondrous plentiful in Hares, according to that of *Ovid*.

Quot Lepores Atho, quot Apes pascuntur in Hybla.

How many Hares on *Athos* feed,
What swarms of Bees on *Hybla* breed?

It is Inhabited only by *Greek Monks*, whom they call *Caloires*, of the order of *S. Basil*, to whom the Hill commonly called the *Holy Mountain*, hath been long since dedicated: the place being so privileged by the Grand-Seignieur, that neither *Turk* nor *Gracian* may inhabit in it, except such *Gracians* only as profess this life. Of these there are about 6000, dispersed in 42 Monasteries, built after a military manner, for fear of Thieves and Pirates; wherewith they were much infested in times past: frequented with great Concourſe of People coming thither to behold and adore some Reliques, (for which they are of much esteem) the free Oblations of those Pilgrims, and some Benevolence from the *Turks*, which do much respect them, being the chief means of their Subsistence. The manner of their life is like that of the ancient *Eremites*: poorly clad, their Shirts of Woollen, which they both spin and weave themselves; none of them idle at any time, doing still somewhat for their Livelihood, and the advancement of the House of which they are, as dressing Vines, felling Timber, yea and building Ships. Few of them give themselves to Study, and some of them are of so gross Ignorance, that they can neither Write nor Read. They are bound by their Order to lodge and entertain such Strangers as have occasion to pass that way, according to their Rank and Calling; and that of free Cost too, if it be desired.

Towns of most note, according to the several Regions and parts hereof, are, for *Mygdonia* specially and properly so called, 1. *Antigonis*, so called from *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, the first Founder of it. 2. *Xylopolis*. 3. *Terpillus*. 4. *Phisco*. 5. *Afforus*. All mentioned by *Ptolomy*, but not else observable. 6. *Apollonia*, for distinction sake called *Apollonia Mygdonia*, to difference it from *Apollonia* in *Albania*, then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the Studies of *Augustus Caesar*, who here learned the *Greek Tongue*. For *Amphaxitis*, there was 7. *Arethusa*; 8. *Stagira*, now called *Nicalidi*, renowned for the Birth of *Aristotle*, hence named *Stagirites*. 9. *Thessalonica*, situate on the bottom of *Sinus Thermaicus*, now called the Bay of *Salonichi*, by the name of the Town. Anciently the Metropolis or Head City of *Macedon*; the Seat of the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, after the removal thereof from *Sirmium*; as also of the Primate of the *Greek Church*, who resided here. To the people of this City did *St. Paul* write two of his Epistles. It continued in great power and credit till the Fall of the *Constantinopolitan Empire* into the hands of the *Latines*: at which time it was bestowed first on *Raniface Marquis of Montferrat*, the new King of *Thessaly*; after whose death it fell unto the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432, when it was forced by *Amurath* the second to become *Turkish*. Which notwithstanding, it still preserves the Reputation of a beautiful and wealthy City, inhabited by Rich Merchants, who drive here a great Trade, especially for the commodities of the *Indies*; for Beauty, Riches and Magni-

ficence, little inferiour unto *Naples*: and though the *Turks* and *Jews* make the greatest number of Inhabitants, yet here are reckoned 30 Churches for the use of Christians. As for the *Jews*, they swarm here in such great abundance, that in this City and that of *Constantinople* only there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and contemned by all sorts of People. In the year of Christ 390, The Inhabitants of this City having committed some Insolencies against *Theodosius* the Great, that Prince Ordered a Military revenge, in which there Perished 7000 of its People. In the year 895, it was taken and sack'd by the *Sarazens*. In the year 1423, it was sold to the *Venetians*, from whom it was Ravish'd soon after by *Amurath* the second, as our Author saith. In the year 1688, the *Venetian Fleet* began the Campaign with the Bombing this City, a considerable part of which was by that means burnt. *Coronelli* saith, the Walls of this City are flank'd with Towers, and are about 10 miles in compass, and it has besides three Forts. It has many Inhabitants, the most of which are *Jews*, yet it has 48 Mosques, 30 Christian Churches, and 36 great Synagogues, and many smaller. 10. *Siderocapſa*, of old called *Chrysites*, remarkable for its Mines of Gold and Silver; so beneficial to the *Turk*, that he received hence monthly 18000, and sometimes 30000 Crowns *de claro*. Next for *Chalcidice*, there was 11. *Panormus*, a Port-Town. 12. *Sstratonica*, in the *Peninsula* of Mount *Athos*. 13. *Atho* or *Athosa*, in the same *Peninsula*, with a Promontory of the same name, nigh which it stood. 14. *Acanthus*, now called *Eriffo*, on the Bay of the Holy Mountain. And finally in *Paraxia* we have 15. *Ampelus*. 16. *Torona*, giving name to the Bay adjoining, called anciently *Sinus Toronaicus*, now *Golfo di Aromania*. 17. *Cassandra*, on the Sea-side, so called from *Cassandra* King of *Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named *Potidea*. 18. *Derris*. 19. *Merillus*. 20. *Pallene*, situate in the *Chersonese* or *Demi-Island* called *Patalene*, and by some *Patalia*: formerly consecrated to the *Muses*, but before that infamous for the War which the Giants are fabled to have made here against the Gods; at what time it was called *Phlegra*, the Fields adjoining *Campi Phlegrai*, in which this great Battle is supposed to be fought. The occasion of the Fable was, (as both *Theagenes* and *Endoxus* do expound the same). That the Inhabitants hereof in those elder times, being men of a most impious and insolent Life, got the name of Giants; whom when *Hercules* endeavoured to subdue and reduce to Reason, it happened that there fell a great Tempest of Thunder and Lightning, by which they were constrained to fly and submit themselves. Hence the Report that those Giants made War against the Gods. Others have placed these *Phlegrean Fields* in *Thessaly*, and perhaps more probably. Certain I am, that some place nearer to the Hills of *Pelion*, *Ossa* and *Olympus*, doth agree best with it: if at least *Ovid* were not out in his Narration, who makes those Mountains to be heaped upon one another, for their better reaching to the Skies, and fighting upon even ground, as the saying is. For thus that Poet;

*Affectasse serunt regnum cæleste Gigantes,
Atque congestos struxisse ad Sidera Montes.
At pater omnipotens misso perfregit Olympum
Fulmine, & excussit subjectum Pelion Ossa.*

Which may be Englished in these words;

The Giants once the Throne of Heaven affected,
And Hills on Hills unto the Stars erected:
Till Jove with Thunder high Olympus brake,
And Pelion did from under Ossa take.

But from those Fables to proceed to more real Stories. This Country was first peopled by *Cittim*, the Son of *Javan*, passing over out of *Asia minor*; in memory whereof here was not only a Town called *Cittium*, spoken of

of by *Livie* l. 42. but the whole Land of *Macedon* is in the Book of *Maccabees* called the Land of *Chetium*, 1. *Maccab.* 1. 1. and the Inhabitants hereof called *Citins* in the 8. Chapter of the same Book, v. 5. Spreading in tract of time from one Sea to another, from the *Ægean* to the *Adriatick*, some Colonies of them passed from hence to *Italy*, and first inhabited that Country, as hath there been said. Such as continued in those parts, divided unto several Tribes, as in all parts else, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*. A People not much taken notice of in former times, living a poor and painful Life, Goatherds and Shepherds for the most part, scarce able to defend their own Mountains from the next Invader, much less to dream of Conquering either *Greece* or *Persia*: And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much unfitly, (though by him spoken in passion, and to their Disgrace) that *his Father Philip* had first made them *Gentlemen*. For *Philip* having learned the Rudiments of War under *Epaminondas*, (being then an Hostage with the *Thebans*) and by that means becoming acquainted with the Temper and State of *Greece*, not only freed his own Kingdom from the *Illyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations, who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the Factions raised amongst the *Gracians*, (which he knew how to feed and cherish for his own improvement) brought them at first wholly to rely upon him, and after to be subject to him. Insomuch that never any Monarchy had a swifter growth nor a more speedy Dissolution: there passing not full 40 years from the first of *Philip* to the last of *Alexander*, in which space it was both begun, perfected, and broken to pieces. For the Foundation being laid in Murther, Perjury, and Treason, as at first it was, was never likely to be blessed with a long Continuance.

The Kings of *M A C E D O N*.

A. M.

3155	1. <i>Caranus</i> 28.
3183	2. <i>Cænus</i> 12.
3195	3. <i>Tyrinus</i> 38.
3233	4. <i>Perdiccas</i> 51.
3284	5. <i>Argæus</i> 38.
3322	6. <i>Philippus</i> 38.
3360	7. <i>Europus</i> 26.
3386	8. <i>Alcetas</i> 29.
3415	9. <i>Amyntas</i> 50.
3465	10. <i>Alexander</i> 43.
3508	11. <i>Perdiccas</i> II. 28.
3536	12. <i>Archelaus</i> .
3560	13. <i>Orestes</i> 3.
3563	14. <i>Archelaus</i> II. 4.
3567	15. <i>Pausanias</i> 1.
3568	16. <i>Amyntas</i> II. 6.
3574	17. <i>Argæus</i> II. 1.
3575	18. <i>Amyntas</i> III. 19.
3594	19. <i>Alexander</i> II. 1.
3595	20. <i>Alorites</i> 4.
3599	21. <i>Perdiccas</i> III. 6.
3605	22. <i>Philip</i> II. 24.
3629	23. <i>Alexander</i> the Great.
	24. <i>Aridæus</i> . 6.

Of these 24 Kings only 6 are famous, viz. 1. *Carmanus*, the first King, originally of *Argos*, of the Race of *Hercules*, and by an Oracle commanded to lead a Colony into this Country, and to follow the first Flock of Cattle he saw before him. Being here arrived in a tempestuous stormy day, he espied a Herd of Goats flying the fury of the Weather: These Goats he followed unto *Ædessa*, into which by reason of the darkness of the Air, he entred undiscovered, won the Town, and in short space became Lord of all the Country. On which occasion as the Goat afterwards became the Arms and Ensign of the Kings of *Macedon*, so by that Beast those

Kings were figuratively designed in the Holy Scripture: of which see *Dan.* 8. 5. 21. 2. *Perdiccas*, the 4th King, who at *Ægæ* built a Burial-place for all his Successors, assuring his People, that as long as their Kings were there Buried, his Race should never fail: and so it happened. For the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the Great, who was buried at *Babylon*, was translated to the Sons of *Demetrius*. 3. *Europus*, who in his infancy was carried in a Cradle against the *Illyrians* his Enemies, and returned victorious: This the *Macedons* did, either because they thought they could not be beaten, their King being pretent; or persuading themselves that there was none so void of Honour and Compassion as to abandon an Infant, no way able to save himself from Destruction but by the Valour and Fidelity of his Servants. 4. *Alexander* the Son of *Amyntas*, famous for a notable Exploit on the *Persian* Embassadors; who being sent from *Megabyzus*, requested a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies. No sooner were they entred, but *petulantius eas Persis contrectantibus*, as *Justine* relateth the Story, they were called back by this *Alexander*, sending in their steads young Springals maidenly attired, who, upon the like Indignities offered, slew these effeminate *Asians*. After which he behaved himself so discreetly, that the *Persian* Monarch gave him all *Greece* between *Hæmus* and *Olympus*. 5. *Philip*, Father to *Alexander*, who governed first as a Guardian to *Amyntas*, the Son of *Perdiccas* his elder Brother; but afterwards took unto himself both the Kingdom and Title of King, which he continued in the Deposition of his Nephew and natural Sovereign, the Murther of the rest of his Brethren, and the Destruction of all such as opposed his practice. But, being otherwise a man of approved Abilities, he cleared his own Country of the *Illyrians*, subdued *Achaia*, *Thrace*, and a great part of *Peloponnesus*, and was chosen general of the *Greeks* against the *Persians*. But as soon as he had made all things ready for this expedition, he was slain by one *Pausanias*, a young Gentleman whom he had formerly abused in the heat of his unnatural Lust. 6. *Alexander*, the Son of *Philip*, who recovered such parts of *Greece* as on the death of his Father had befooled themselves with a hope of Liberty. He subdued *Darius* the great King of *Persia*, *Taxiles* and *Porus* Kings of *India*; founded the Monarchy of the *Gracians*; and in the height of his Successes was poisoned at *Babylon* (as it is conceived) by *Cassander*, one of his great Captains: his Revenue at the time of his death amounting to 300000 Talents yearly. After his death his new got Empire was much controverted in the point of Succession, he himself dying without lawful Issue, and having at his death bequeathed it to him who was thought most worthy by his Army: and his Soldiers, according to their several Affections and Relations, thought their own Leaders most deserving. At last the Title of King (and in effect nothing but the Title) was by consent of the Commanders cast on *Aridæus*, a Ballard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be Protector, (for *Aridæus* was a little crazed in his Brain) and to be General of the Army: by whose design he was also married to *Eurydice*, Daughter to *Amyntas*, whom *Philip* had before dispossessed of that Kingdom. As for the Provinces they were assigned unto the Government of the chief Commanders, viz. *Ægypt* to *Ptolemy*, *Syria* to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Philotas*, *Mediæ* to *Lytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Eumenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia* and *Phrygia* major to *Antigonus*, *Caria* to *Cassander*, *Lydia* to *Menander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia* minor to *Leonatus*, *Assyria* to *Selenus*, *Persis* to *Pentestes*, *Thrace* to *Lysimachus*, and *Macedon* it self unto *Antipater*: the other parts of the *Persian* Empire being left to them unto whose hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this Division held not long: for *Perdiccas* being once slain by *Ptolemy*, and *Eumenes* made away by *Antigonus*, these two became quickly too great for the rest; *Ptolemy* adding *Syria* and *Cyprus* to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, and *Antigonus* bringing under his Command not only all *Asia* minor, but *Assyria*, *Media*

Media and almost all the Eastern parts of the *Persian* Empire. *Antipater* in the mean time, succeeding in the Protectorship, banished *Olympias* the Mother of *Alexander* out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a Step-dames love unto *Arideus*. But he being dead she returned out of *Epirus*, (the place of her Banishment) into *Macedonia*, where raising a strong Party amongst the People, she put *Arideus* and his Wife *Euridice* to death, proclaiming *Alexander* the Son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*; both slain not long after by *Cassander* the Son of *Antipater*, who to make ture work, murdered also with the like Cruelty *Hercules*, the Son of *Alexander* by *Barsine*, (another *Persian* Lady, as *Roxane* was) the last Survivor of that House. And so the Royal Family being rooted out, *Antigonus* took unto himself the Title of King: as did *Seleucus*, who had now recovered all the *Persian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*. The like did *Ptolomy* in *Aegypt*; and *Cassander* in *Macedon*.

The second Race of the *M A C E D O N* Kings.

A. M.

- 3648 1. *Cassander*, Son of *Antipater*, supposed to have been the Poisoner of *Alexander*, rooted out the Blood-Royal of *Macedon*. His Reign was full of Troubles and Difficulties. 19.
- 3667 2. *Alexander* and *Antipater*, Sons to *Cassander*, but not well agreeing, called unto their Aid *Lysimachus* and *Demetrius*, by whom they were both in short time murdered. 4.
- 3671 3. *Demetrius*, Son to *Antigonus*, the powerful King of *Asia*, after he had in one Battle against *Seleucus* lost both his Father and all his *Asian* Dominions, settled himself in *Macedon*, but there being outed by *Pyrrhus*, he fled to *Seleucus*, and with him died. 6.
- 3677 4. *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, was by his Soldiers, voluntarily forsaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*: but after 7 months the Soldiers revolted to *Lysimachus*, as being a *Macedonian* born. 1.
- 3678 5. *Lysimachus* King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquish'd and slain by *Seleucus*, the last Survivor of *Alexander's* Captains. 7.
- 3685 6. *Ceraunus*, or *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, Son to *Ptolomy* of *Aegypt*, having traiterously slain his Friend and Patron *Seleucus*, seized on *Macedon*: but lost it, together with his Life, unto the *Gauls*, who then plagued these Countries. After whose Death this Kingdom, being distracted amongst many Competitors, settled at last upon
- 3687 7. *Antigonus Gonatus*, the Son of *Demetrius*, who for his Valour shewn in expulsi^{ng} the *Gauls*, was made King of *Macedon*. And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrhus*, then returning from *Italy*; yet after the Death of *Pyrrhus* he again recovered his Estate, but was outed once again by *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrhus*. 36.
- 3723 8. *Demetrius* II. Son of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrhus*. 10.
- 3733 9. *Antigonus* II. surnamed *Doson*, left by *Demetrius* as Protector to his young Son *Philip*, usurped the Kingdom. He divers times vanquished and crushed the *Grecians*, beginning then to cast off the Yolk of *Macedon*. 12.
- 3745 10. *Philip*, the Son of *Demetrius*. 42.
- 3787 11. *Perseus*, the Son of *Philip*, the last King of *Macedon*. The Subversion of which Estate was first begun in the time of his Father, who had not only warred upon the *Aetolians* and other of the *Greeks* whom the *Romans* had taken into their Protection, but sided with

Hannibal against them. Upon which grounds they sent first *Titus Qu. Flaminius*, one of their Consuls, by whom *Philip* was vanquish'd at the Battel of *Cunosccephalos*, and his Kingdom made Tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a Quarrel against *Perseus* also, managed with variable Success by *Licinius*, *Martius*, and others of their Commanders, they dispatched *Paulus Aemilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to absolute Subjection. Who sped so well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and *Perseus* led Captive unto *Rome*, Anno 3789. In which Triumph, besides the Pomp of leading a Captive King in Bonds, *Aemilius* caused the ready Money which he brought out of *Greece* to be carried in 750 Vessels, every Vessel containing three Talents; which made so infinite a Sum, that the *Roman* People were free for many Years after from all Taxes and Impositions. *A. M.* 3789.

Macedon, thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to say, *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda* or *Salutaris*, and *Prevalitana*, in the new Model of *Constantine* became a Diocese, the Diocesis hereof containing the Provinces of *Crete*, *Achaia*, *Old and New Epirus*, *Macedonia Prima*, and the greatest part of *Salutaris*; the residue of *Salutaris* and *Prevalitana* (which makes up the Country now called *Albania*) being laid to the Diocese of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eastern Empire till towards the last fatal Dissolution of it; though many times harassed and depopulated by the *Sclavonians*, *Bulgarians*, *Rasses*, and other of the barbarous People, at their several Invasions of it. Finally, it was conquered by the *Turks*, first, under the Conduct of *Bajazet*, their fourth King, taking *Nicopolis*, a Town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sinus Strimonicus* now the Bay of *Contesa*, in the year of *Christ* 1392. and after under *Amurath* the second, their sixth King, making themselves Masters of *Theffalonica*, the chief City of it, and therewith of all the Country, in the year 1429. By reason of which many Invasions and last Desolation by the *Turks*, there is scarce one of all those many Cities before mention'd now of any eminence, except *Theffalonica* only; the rest being miserably destroyed. And for the Country it self, it is governed by a *Turkish Sanzack*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*; his annual Revenue being but 8000 Crowns, nor any thing else required of him than to maintain an 100 Horse in ordinary pay for defence of his Province, and to find 400 Horse on extraordinary occasions, as the Grand Seignior shall command him.

6. *T H R A C E*.

T *H R A C E* hath on the East *Pontus Euxinus*, *Propontis*, and the *Hellespont*; on the West *Bulgaria* and *Macedon*; on the North the Hill *Hemus*, which parts it from *Bulgaria*; on the South the *Aegean* Sea and part of *Macedon*. It is a very large and goodly Province, extending 20 days Journey in length, and 7 days Journey in breadth; and, in relation to the Heavens, reaching unto the 44 Degree of the Northern Latitude; so that the longest Day in Summer is about 15 Hours three quarters.

By several Men, according to the times they lived in, it hath been called by divers names: by *Stephanus*, *Aria*; by *Suidas*, *Odrissa*; by *Lycophron*, *Crestonia*; by some Writers *Scythia*; by *Josephus* the Hebrew, *Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace*, or *Thracia*, and that, as some, from *Thrax* the Son of *Mars*, as others, from *Thracia*, an Inchantress: More probably from the Fertility and barbarous Condition of the first Inhabitants, the Name in the Original *Greek* bearing that construction:

tion: Most likely from *Thyrus*, the Son of *Japhet*, who first planted here, in memory of whom it did retain the name of *Thyrus* in the time of *Josephus*; besides many other Footsteps and Remembrances of him in the Names of many of their Towns, and some of their Princes; of which we have already spoken in our General Preface. Finally, by the Turks it is called *Romania*; either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here, or because *Constantinople*, the chief City of it, was anciently called *Nova Roma*; and by that name it is now called in most modern Writers.

The Country generally is neither of a rich Soil nor a pleasant Air: The Corn and other Fruits, by reason of the coldness of the Climate, leisurely ripening; the Vines yielding more Shade than Juice, and the Trees for the most part more Leaves than Fruit: Yet in some parts there be many large and goodly Plains, where they reap good store of Corn, but of Pulse especially; and towards the Sea-side they have plenty of Wine, which *Pliny* much commended both for strength and goodness.

The People anciently were very bold and valiant, and called by some *Αυτονομοι*, because every Man was a Law to himself. So that it was truly said by *Herodotus*, that if they had either been all of one Mind, or under one King, they had been invincible. Of Manners they were rude and savage, somewhat near to brutishness; buying their Wives, and selling both their Sons and Daughters, as in open Market: In that since imitated by the Turks, who possess their Country. The Men were more courageous than comely, wearing Clothes according to their Conditions, ragged and unseemly. The Married Women were in love to their Husbands so constant, that they willingly sacrificed themselves at their Funerals. The Virgins were bestowed not by their own Parents, but the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither Beauty nor Vertue for their Dowry, were put off according to their Money; most times sold as other Cattel in the Markets. In matters of Religion they worshipped *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Diana*, *Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: Swearing especially by the first, from whom they bragged themselves to have been descended. But their chief National Deity was one *Zamolxes*, sometimes a Native of this Country, who, having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, prescribed them good and wholesome Laws; assuring them, that, if they did observe the same, they should go unto a place when they left this World in which they should enjoy all manner of Pleasure and Contentment. By this means having gotten some Opinion of a Divinity amongst them, he absented himself; and after was worshipped as their God. Upon these Principles, when any one was born amongst them, his Parents and other Friends, sitting round about him, lamented bitterly his coming into the World, ripping up all the Miseries and Afflictions whereto he was to be exposed in this present Life, and so deplored his Condition as absolutely miserable and unhappy. But, on the contrary, when any one chanced to die, they buried him with all Joy and Alacrity; highly rejoicing that by this means he was freed from the Crosses and Disasters of this wretched World. Which is expressed thus briefly (after his wonted manner) by my Author, *Lugentur Puerperia; natiq̃ue desuntur; Funera contra Festa sunt, & velut Sacra cantu lusuq̃ue celebrantur*. A Piece of such sound and orthodox Divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in those times of Darknes; and favouring very much of the Primitive Piety, by which the Obits of the Saints were kept as Festivals, no notice being taken of the day of their Births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non Nativitatem sed Mortem Sanctorum Ecclesia pretiosam & festam judicat*.

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymnestor*, who villanously murdered *Polydorus*, a younger Son of *Priamus*; for

which Fact *Hecuba*, the young Prince's Mother, scratched him to Death. Here also lived the Tyrant *Tercus*, of whom before in *Phocis*: and *Diomedes*, who, using to feed his Horses with Man's Flesh, was slain by *Hercules*, and cast unto his Horses. And, finally, here reigned King *Cotys*, whom I mention not as a Tyrant, but propose as a pattern of rare Temper both in mellowing and preventing Passion. For when a Neighbour Prince had sent him a Present of Glasses of the purest Metal, and no less accurate in the Workmanship or Fashion of them, having dispatched the Messenger with all the due Complements of Majesty and Gratitude he broke them all to pieces; lest if by mishap any of his Servants should do the like, he might be stirred to an intemperate Choler.

Chief Mountains in this Country, besides *Hemus* spoken of already, are, 1. *Rhodope*, the highest next Mount *Hemus* in those parts of the World; craggy and rough, and the Top thereof continually white with Snow. Memorable for the Fate and Fable of *Orpheus*, who in a melancholick Humour (having lost his Wife) betook himself to these Mountains, where with his Musick he affected both Woods and Beasts, who are said to have danced unto his Musick: From this place of his Abode called *Rhodopeius*, from his Country *Thracius*, *Non me carminibus vincet nec Thracius Orpheus*, &c. as the Shepherd boasteth in the Poet. The truth is, that he was a Man of an heavenly Muse, and by his Dictates and good Counsel, laid down in Verse, first of all civilized this People, and weaned them by degrees from their Bestiality. Hence the occasion of the Fable. But for Mount *Rhodope* it self, it is in the midst of this Country, thwarting it from Mount *Hemus* towards the West; which, with the Spurs and Branches of it, and the Plains adjoining, lying betwixt the River *Nessus* on the West, and *Melus* or *Niger* on the East, made up that Province of the Empire called *Rhodope*, by the name of the Mountain. 2. *Pangæus*, rich in Mines of Silver. 3. *Melapus*, shooting towards the Sea, full of Rocks and Cliffs. And, 4. *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region, from hence called *Orbelia*.

Principal Rivers hereof, besides *Strymon*, spoken of before, the Boundary in some places betwixt this and *Macedon*, are, 1. *Nessus*, by the *Gracians* now called *Mestros*, by the *Turks* *Charason*, which rising out of Mount *Hemus*, falleth into the Sea near the Isle of *Thassius*. 2. *Athyra*, in which name the memory of *Thyrus* the Son of *Japhet* seems to be preserved; which, rising in Mount *Hemus* also, loseth it self in the *Propontick*; as doth, 3. *Bathynius*, another River rising from the same Mount *Hemus*. 4. *Hebrus*, now *Mariza*, the most noted River of all this Country, rising out of *Rhodope*, and falling into the *Ægean* near the Isle of *Samothrace*: a River of so slow a Course, that it is not easie to discern which way it goeth; but memorable in the Poets for the Fate of *Orpheus*, who, being torn in pieces by the *Thracian* Women, had his Limbs thrown into it by those Furies. 5. *Thearus*, good against the Scab both in Man and Beast, issuing out of Thirty Fountains, some hot, some cold; with the pleasantness of whose Waters *Darius* the King of *Persia* was so delighted, that he erected a Pillar in Honour of it.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Abdera*, now called *Prolystilo*, situate not far from the Fall of the River *Nessus* into the *Ægean*, the Birth-place of *Democritus*, who spent his whole Life in laughing at the Follies of others. 2. *Poridea*, of old a Colony of *Athens*, from whom it revolted, and submitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Athenians*, not enduring the Affront, beleagured it, and after two years Siege, and the expence of Two Thousand Talents, could not recover it again but on Composition. 3. *Anos*, on the *Ægean* Sea; a Town of great strength and safety, and therefore used by the

latter *Constantinopolitan* Emperors for the securing of great persons. For hither *Michael Paleologus* sent *Furthines*, the Turkish Sultan flying to him for Aid; and hither *Mahomet* the great sent *Demetrius*, Prince of *Pe-loponnesus*, when he yielded up his Country to him: both under colour of providing for their ease and safety; but in plain terms to keep them in honourable Prisons.

4. *Lyfsmachia*, on the Sea-shore; once of great importance, built by *Lyfsmachus*, who after *Alexander's* death laid hands on this Country: afterwards garrisoned by *Philip* the Father of *Perscus*; on the withdrawing of whose Forces, for some other Service it was taken and rased to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the People of it carried into Captivity; but by *Antiochus* the Great Re-edified and New-peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient situation and former glories of the place.

5. *Philippopolis*, so called from *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Alexander*, who Built and Fortified it as a Bridle to hold in the *Thracians*; called also *Trimontium*, from three Hills on which it was situate: beautified in the time of the *Romans*, with a goodly Amphitheatre, continuing entire and whole till these latter days, and might have lasted longer by many Ages did not the *Turks* daily take away the Stones thereof, which are all of Marble, to make Money of them. Here are also many other ancient Monuments, though the Town be much wasted and destroyed, the *Scythians* at one time killing in it above a Hundred Thousand persons: which notwithstanding it is populous and well frequented by reason of the convenient situation of it on the River *Hebrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. It is now an Arch-bishop's See. In the year 349, here was an *Arrian* Council held, and here *Julian* was, when he heard of the Death of his Uncle *Constantius* the Emperor, and thereupon discovered his before conceal'd Apostacy. *Frederick Barbarossa*, took this City and *Adrianople* from the *Turks* in the year 1189, in the year 1359, this City was retaken by the *Turks*, under *Amurath* the first, others say in 1362. It is now the Seat of a Turkish *Sangiat*, under the *Pacha* or Governour of *Romania*, *Hoffman*. It is seated in a large Plain. One part of this Town is built on a Hill, and the other two parts are near it, and appear like Bulwarks or Fortifications, the Walls of the City are very ancient. The Inhabitants retain a Tradition that *St. Paul* Preached in this City, in a certain place, where stands a Chappel of great Antiquity, to which they repair with great Devotion. *Sir P. Ricaut*.

6. *Trajanopolis*, so called from the Emperor *Trajan*, by whom it was either Founded or Repaired; indifferently well-peopled, and still preserving its Old name. Said by others to be very small, and ill Peopled, it stands beneath *Adrianople*, upon the *Mariza*.

7. *Selymbria*, on the Coast of the *Propontick* Sea: beautified with a commodious Port for Receipt of small Vessels and many Bays adjoining capable of greater: by *Ptolomy* called *Selybria*, and *Olybria* by *Suidas*.

8. *Apollonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus* or the *Black Sea*, now *Sissopolis*.

9. *Phinopolis*, on the same Sea also.

10. *Nicopolis* at the foot of the Mount *Hemus*, there being another of that name near the River *Nessus*.

11. *Perinthus*, on the *Propontick* Sea, near the Influx of the River *Arfiss*. A Town of great Note in the ancient Business of *Greece*, of great strength, and peopled formerly with men of such Resolutions, that they maintained their Liberty against *Philip* of *Macedon*, after almost all the rest of *Thrace* had submitted to him.

12. *Meratton*, at first a Colony of the *Thbans*, and afterwards of much request in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Palaces of *Vespasian*, *Domitrian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperors of *Rome*, as also with an Amphitheatre cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the World's seven Wonders; and finally, made the Metropolitan City of the Province of *Europe*, one of the Provinces of the Diocels of *Thrace*, whereof more anon. This

Town has now a good Harbour, five miles in Circumference, and it lies between the Sea and this Port, as *Mr. Wheeler* saith, who found here an Inscription in Honour of *Severus*, their great Benefactor, who subjected *Bizantium* to this City, but how ever it is now a poor place.

13. *Olynthus*, called by *Xenophon* the greatest City of *Thrace*; as possibly enough it was in Power and Riches, though not in greatness of Extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, Rich in Trade, and Mistress of a fair and goodly Territory adjoining to it: the People whereof had been malicious Enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally enduced *Philip* spoken of before, to set upon them. In which Attempt he sped so well, that what he could not get by Force he obtained by Money, bribing some of the principal Officers to betray it to him. For the recovery whereof *Demosthenes* oft moved the people of *Athens*, in those elaborate Orationes called the *Olynthiacks*.

14. *Sestos*, in the *Thracian* Chersonese, which, being a *Peninsula* abutting over against *Troas* on the *Asian* side, is now called *Saint George's Arm*. Opposite whereunto on the other side of the Water, is the Town of *Abydus*; remarkable for the Tragical Loves of *Hero* and *Leander*, celebrated by *Musæus*, an old *Greek* Poet.

16. *Callipolis*, or *Gallipoli*, on the Northern Promontory of this Chersonese, the first City of Note that ever the *Turks* possessed in *Europe*, taken by *Solyman*, the Son of *Orchanes* the second King of the *Ottoman* Race, Anno 1358; from whence they easily and in little time spread themselves all over the rest of *Thrace*; the ordinary passage of late times betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*, by reason of the convenient Harbour and safe Anchorage. It is a great, Populous, well Traded Place, having an Haven, Castle and a good Magazin, but it is neither Wall'd nor well Built, within the Houses being all of Earth and Timber, low built, and the Streets Narrow. It is said to be Six Miles in Compass, and has about Five Thousand Christian Inhabitants, but there is little to be seen of its ancient Splendor and Elegance. It stands a Hundred Miles South from *Constantinople*, as *Mr. Wheeler* saith. *Mr. Wheeler* who saw it in the year 1675, saith it was not populous, nor wall'd, though the Inhabitants are said to be Twenty Thousand in the compass of Six Miles, but the Plague was then there. p. 75.

16. *Cardia*, seated on the Western side of it, opposite to the Isle of *Lemnos*, the Birth place of *Eumenes*, who being a poor Carrier's Son, attained to such an ability in the Art of War, that after the death of *Alexander* the Great, under whom he served, he seized on the Provinces of *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, and siding (though a stranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias* and the Blood Royal against the *Greek* Caprains, vanquished and slew *Craerius*, and divers times drove *Antigonus* (afterwards Lord of *Asia*) out of the Field. But being by his own Soldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigonus*, and by him slain.

17. *Sardica*, situate towards Mount *Hemus*, memorable for the Council there held against the *Arians*, Anno 381.

18. *Adrianople*, seated near the midst of *Thrace*, called anciently *Uscudama*; but got this name from *Adrian* the Emperor, who repaired and beautified it; made subject to the *Turks* by *Bajazet*, Anno 1362: From the first taking of it made the Seat of the Turkish Kings, till the taking of *Constantinople* by *Mahomet* the Great; by whom it was removed unto that City. Near this City, *Constantine* the Great overthrew his Rival *Licinius* in the year 320, by which Victory he obtained the whole *Roman* Empire. *Solyman* the Great, took it from *Musa* his Brother in the year 1410. The late Grand Seigneur *Mahomet* the fourth, lived many years in this City, yet can I not find, that any of our later Travellers have given any account of it. *Barbequius* saith, the Walls of it are very ancient, and of no very great Circuit, but it has vast Suburbs built by the *Turks*.

19. *Pera*, opposite to *Constantinople*, on the farther side of the Water, (as the word doth signify

mile in the *Greeks*) by some called *Galata*; once peopled by a Colony of *Genoese*, as the Mart and Factory of that State; taken by *Mahomet* the Great, Anno 1453, but still replenished, for the most part, with Christian Merchants and Artificers. Mr. *Wheler* our Countryman, who saw this place faith, it is a good large City, and very populous, and yet the Circumference of the Wall takes up no great space of ground, but the Houses are thick, and the Streets narrow. It is most inhabited by Christians and Jews, and therefore the Ambassadors of the Christian Princes, who attend this Court, for the most part reside here too; and in this place is the Scale of the Merchants. It is separated from *Constantinople* by the Haven, which must be passed by Boats, and has had the good Fortune to suffer very little yet, in those Tumults which in the years 1687 and 1688, did very much hazard the Ruine of *Constantinople*.

But the chief glory of this Country, and of all the East, is the renowned City of 20. *Constantinople*, seated in so commodious a place for Empire, that it overlooks both *Europe* and *Asia*, and commands not only the *Propontis* and *Bosporus*, but the *Euxine* Sea. First founded by one *Byza*, and from him named *Byzantium*: but being taken by the *Persians*, and from them recovered by the *Spartans*, (unwilling that the *Persians* should grow strong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Pausanias*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the Birth of our Saviour. In vain it was besieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and of great strength in the Flourish of the *Roman* Empire. The Walls were of a just height, every Stone whereof was so joyned with Couplers of Brass, that the whole seemed but one entire Piece; adorned besides with Turrets, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger* in his War against *Severus* the Emperor, it endured a Siege of three years against all the Forces of the *Romans*: during which time the people were so distressed by Famine, that men meeting in the Streets would draw and fight, the Conqueror feeding on the Vanquished. For want of Artillery to discharge on the Assailants, they cast down upon them whole Statues made of Brass, and the like curious Imagery Houses they pulled down to get Timber for Shipping; the Women cutting off their Hair to inch out their Tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, it was lost all by one Tempest. Compelled to yield by this Misfortune, the principal of the Nobility were put to the Sword, the Wealth of the Inhabitants given for a Prey to the Soldiers, the Walls thereof dismantled, and the Town left in rubbish. Yet there appeared so much of Majesty and Beauty in the very Ruines, *Ut mireris utrum eorum qui primi extruxerunt, vel eorum qui deinceps sunt demoliti, vires sint potiores*, as *Herodian* hath it. One would admire whether the Forces of those who built, or those that Ruin'd it were greater. *Severus* gave the Lands and Territory of this City, and made the ground on which it stood Subject to *Heraclea* too, that it was not only Ruin'd but Enslaved. Re-edified afterwards by the Emperor *Constantine*, he honoured it with his own name, and made it the chief Seat of the *Roman* Empire. The City was finished May 11. Anno 331; and being so finished, was endowed with all the Priviledges of *Rome*; an equal number of Senators, one of the Annual Consuls, and all other Officers of State, chosen out of both; the Citizens of the one being free of the other, and capable of all places of most Trust and Power. For that cause it was called *Novaroma*, in some following times. This City he adorned also with magnificent Buildings, curious Statues, and such like Ornaments, transported hither from Old *Rome*: which City he spoiled of more costly Pieces than any twenty of his Predecessors had brought unto it. At this day the chief Buildings are the *Turks* *Seraglio* and the Temple of *Saint Sophia*; which as they differ not much in place and situation, so as little in Magnificence

and State. The Temple of *Saint Sophia* was, if not built, yet re-edified, by the Emperor *Justinian*. It is built of an Oval form, surrounded with Pillars of admirable workmanship, adorned with spacious and beautiful Galleries roofed all over with *Mosaic* work, and vaulted underneath; very strong for the Fabrick, and pleasing to the Eye. The Doors are very curiously wrought and plated; one of which by the Superstitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noah's Ark*. And yet this Temple is little more than the Chancel of the ancient Church, which contained in length 265 foot, and 180 in breadth; and yet to our *Saint Paul's* in *London* may seem for the bigness to have been but a Chappel of Ease. But what it wants in Greatness, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the Elegancy of the Building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the Fabricks in the whole World. The Sides and Floor are all flagged with excellent Marble; and before the Entrance is a goodly *Portico*, or Porch, in which as well the Christians, who visit it out of Curiosity, as the *Turks*, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their Shoes. By *Mahomet* the Great, after the taking of the City, it was converted to a Turkish Mosque, as it still continueth; frequented by the Grand Seignior almost every Friday which is the Sabbath of that People. Near hereunto standeth the Palace or *Seraglio* of the *Ottoman* Emperors, on the North-East Angle of the City, where formerly stood the ancient *Byzantium*; divided from the rest of the City by a Wall containing three miles in Circuit, and comprehending goodly Groves of Cypresses intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of Pleasures which Luxury can affect or treasure compass. The Palace it self enjoying a goodly prospect into the Sea, was first built by *Justinus* the Emperor, afterwards much enlarged by the *Ottoman* Race, containing three great Courts one within another: the Buildings yielding unto those of *France* and *Italy*, for the neat contrivances, but far surpassing them for Cost and Curiousness.

As for the City it self, it is said to be 18 miles in compass, and to contain Seven Hundred Thousand living Souls; yet would be more populous than it is, if the Plague, like a cruel Tertian Ague, did not every third year so rage amongst them. It is fortified towards the Land with three strong and high Walls, the one higher than the other, the outermost highest of them all: towards the Sea with one Wall only, built after the old Fashion with many Turrets, which very strongly flank and defend the same. But formerly both the Town and *Chersonese* in which it standeth were defended from the Incursions of the barbarous people by a strong Wall built on the very *Isthmus* of it, some ten miles from the City, reaching from one side to the other: the work of *Anastasius* who succeeded *Zeno*, Anno 494. A City which a far off gives to the Eye a most pleasing object: so intermixt with Gardens and beset with Trees, that it seems a City in a Wood; but being entred, it much deceiveth the expectation which it promised, the buildings of it being mean, if not contemptible. The Streets for the most part are exceeding narrow, but raised on each side for the greater Cleanliness: the Houses but of two Stories high, some of rough Stone, and some of Timber, without any outward Grace or exterior Garnishing; in many places nothing but low sheds or rows of Shops; and in some places long dead Walls belonging unto great Mens Houses. The principal Beauty of the whole, next to some Monuments of Antiquity, which are still preserved, and the Tombs or Sepulchres of some of the *Ottoman* Kings, which are very sumptuous, are the Mosques or Temples of the *Turks*, about Eight Thousand in Number; and the Port or Haven, so conveniently profound, that Ships of greatest Burthen may safely lay their Sides to the sides thereof, for the Receipt or Discharge of their Lading; and so commodiously seated on the *Tmaticus*

Rosperus, that there is no Wind, whatsoever it be, which brings not in some Shipping to it. But that which gives the greatest Pleasure to the sight from the Hills adjoining is the Situation of it on seven Mountains, most of them crowned with Magnificent Mosques, built all of white Marble, round in Form, and finished on the top with gilded Spires, reflecting the Sun-beams with a marvellous Splendour. On the first whereof standeth the Ruines of *Constantine's* Palace, exceeding stately to behold. On the second, a fair Turkish Mosque, built on the Palace, anciently belonging to the *Greek* Patriarch. On the third stands a stately Mosque, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the second: and a very large Hospital, for entertainment of Pilgrims and relief of the Poor: the Annual Rents whereof are valued at Two Hundred Thousand Chequines. On the fourth and fifth the Sepulchres of *Selimus* the first, and *Bajazet* the second. On the sixth the Mosque and Sepulchre of *Solyman* the Magnificent, numbered amongst the present wonders of the World. And on the seventh the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, and the Turks *Seraglio*, spoken of already. In which respect it is called Πόλις ἐπὶ ἑπτάκοις by *Nicetas*, *Urbs septicollis* by *Paulus Diaconus*; and so acknowledged to be by *Janus Doufa*, *Phineas Morison*, *G. Sandys*, and other of our modern Travellers, the Eye-witnesses of it. So that if there be any Mystery in the number of *Seven*, or that the sitting of the Great Whore on a seven headed Beast, be an assured direction to find out the Anti-christ; we may as well look for him in *Constantinople*, or *Nova Roma*, where the Great Turk, the professed Enemy of Christ and the Christian Faith, hath his Seat and Residence, as amongst the seven Hills of Old *Rome*, where the Pope Resideth. Or, if his sitting in the Temple of God shews us where to find him; we may as well look for him in the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, now a Turkish Mosque, as in *Saint Peter's* Church at *Rome*, till a Christian Temple.

But to return again unto *Constantinople*. As it was made by *Constantine* the Imperial City, and consequently the chief City of the East in all Civil matters, so it came in little time to have a great Sway also in Affairs of Religion. The Christian Faith is said to be first preached in *Byzantium* by *Saint Andrew* the Apostle, the first Bishop thereof. Afterwards spreading over *Thrace*, and the Churches thereof being Regulated by many Bishops, the chief Preheminence in matters which concerned those Churches was given unto the Bishops of *Heraclea*, *Heraclea* being at that time the Metropolis or principal City of the Province, by the appointment of *Severus*. But after that *Constantinople* was built by *Constantine*, and made the Imperial City, as before was said, it did not only over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it self the Metropolitan Dignity, but stood in Competition with the other Patriarchal Churches for the supreme Power: insomuch as at the second General Council holden in this City it was unanimously decreed, that the Patriarch hereof should in degree of Honour be next unto the Bishop of *Rome*, and above those of *Antioch* and *Alexandria*; the same Decree being confirmed in the Council of *Chalcedon* also. By which not only all the Churches in the Diocess of *Thrace*, but also of *Natolia*, or *Asiaminor*, (except *Cilicia* and *Isauria*, which remained to the Patriarch of *Antioch*) containing no less then Twenty eight of the *Roman* Provinces, were made subject to him. And though Pope *Leo* the first, pretending only the preservation of the Priviledges of those two great Churches, but indeed fearing lest *New Rome* might in the end get the Precedency of the Old, did oppose this Act, and some of his Successors persisted in the same Resistance: yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, especially after the Emperor *Justinian* had by his Imperial Edict confirmed the same; by whom it was specially ordained, *Senioris Romæ Papam primum esse omnium Sacerdotum, beatissimum autem*

Archiepiscopum Constantinopoleos, Novæ Romæ, secundum habere locum, that is to say, That the Pope of *Rome* should have the first place in all General Councils, and the Bishop of *Constantinople*, or *New Rome*, should have the second. Encouraged wherewith, and with the Countenance and Favour of the Emperor *Mauritius*, *John* Patriarch of *Constantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the Great, took to himself the Title of *Universal* or *Oecuminal Bishop*, the Pastor-General (as it were) of the Church of *Christ*. And though Pope *Boniface* by the Grant of that bloody Tyrant *Phocas*, got that Title from him; yet the Patriarchs of *Constantinople* made good their Ground, never submitting either themselves or their Churches to the Pope's Authority; being for that cause specially accounted by the Church of *Rome* for Schismatics, and accordingly reviled and persecuted with all kind of Indignities. How it succeeded with these Patriarchs in the times ensuing, and by what means their Jurisdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Muscovy*, part of *Poland*, and many other Churches in the North and East, hath been said already. Certain it is, the constant Residence of the Emperors from the time of *Constantine* gave great ground unto it; of whom I should here add the names, but that I must first sum up the affairs of *Thrace*, before the Building of this mighty and predominant City, and take a brief view of the rest of those Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Greece*. Our Learned Country-man Mr. *Wheler* has assured us the Latitude of this City is but 40, 56, though the Geographers have usually placed it in 43 Degrees of Latitude. It is distant one Mile from *Galata* to the South, and three from the shoars of *Asia* to the West, its form is Triangular, and the Wall next the Sea stands so near it, that there is no passing between its Square Towers and the Water. The whole Circumference of the Wall is Thirteen Miles, though usually said to be Fifteen. They are built of Rough Stone, here and there patch'd up with Brick, and very Ruinous, and in all likely-hood have been but little, if at all, repaired since the Time of the *Greek* Emperors. It has about Five and Twenty Gates, Seven towards the *Propontus*, Seven towards the Land, and Eleven towards the Haven. The Patriarch lives at *Ballata*, on the Western Corner of *Constantinople* in a poor Palace, no better than the worser sort of Parsonages, and his Church is a small obscure Edifice. May we see him restored to *Saint Sophia*! In the Year 1687, the greatest part of the Wealthy Inhabitants were plundered by the Soldiery, and a great part of the Town burnt in a Sedition between the Towns-men and the Army; and those that have any thing left, are said to be Removing their Persons and Effects, not only into *Asia*, but *Egypt*: and that not only for fear of the Christian Arms, but of a General Revolution at Home.

Concerning which we are to know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strymonii*, *Bardi*, *Dolonci*, *Sapai*, *Sai*, and some others, united by most Writers in the name of *Thracians*. They were governed at first by the Kings or Princes of their several Tribes, as most Nations else; distinguished from the common People, as in other Poms, so most especially by their Gods, which their Kings had to themselves a part, and were not to be worshipped by the best of their Subjects. These not agreeing well together for the common good, it gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greeks*, a good opportunity to invade their Country, to seize on the Sea-Towns thereof, and plant Colonies in them, the Country in those times being meanly peopled, and consequently giving that advantage unto the *Grecians*, as the *Indies* in these latter times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portuguezes*, *English*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon*, proving bad Neighbours thereunto upon all occasions, at last provoked

voked *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, to put in for a share; who, being chosen Arbitrator betwixt two Competitors for that Kingdom, (drawn at last into fewer hands) came not unto the Council with such poor Attendants as Justice and Piety, but with a great and puissant Army; wherewith having vanquished and slain the two Pretenders, he pronounced Sentence for himself, and made *Thrace* his own, compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their Revenue for his yearly Tribute. After the death of *Alexander* this Country was seized on by *Lyfimachus*, as his part of the Spoil who here built the City *Lyfimachia*; from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians*, now accustomed to a foreign Yoke, were either Subjects, or at least Tributaries, to the *Macedonians*. Aiding them in their Wars against the *Romans*, they incurred the displeasure of that People; who having settled their Affairs in other places and repulsed the *Cimbri*, thought it fit time to call the *Thracians* to account for their former Actions: but sped so ill in the Attempt, that *Porcius Cato* lost his whole Army in the On-set, cunningly intercepted in their Woods and Fastnesses. *Didius* the *Prætor*, coming in whilst the *Thracians* were busie in the Chase, gave them such a stop, that he deserved a Triumph for it, and made the Victory more easie to *Metellus*, who succeeded *Cato* in that Charge, and Triumphed also over them; as also did *Lucullus* on another Victory. A. U. C. 680. Broken with so many ill Successes, they were finally subdued by *Piso* in the time of *Augustus*; and became so obsequious to that fortunate Prince, that *Rhitemalces*, a great and puissant King hereof, aided him with a strength of Horse against the *Pannonians* and *Illyrians*, who had then rebelled. Afterwards being made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, in *Constantine's* new Model it became a Diocesis under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; *Thrace* it self being cast into four Provinces, that is to say, *Thrace* specially so called, *Hemimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia* and the Lower *Mæssa*, spoken of before, being added to it: of which the Presidents of *Rhodope* and *Hemimontum* were not to be appealed from to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, as the others were, but only to the *Præfect* of *Constantinople*, the Imperial City. But as *Alfonfus* King of *Castile*, fir-named the Wise, was once heard to say, (never the wiser for so saying) That had he stood at the elbow of Almighty God when he made the World, he would have shewed him how some things might have been better ordered: so give me leave to play the fool, and to say this here, that had I stood at *Constantine's* Elbow, I would have Counsell'd him to lay the Diocesis of *Thrace* to the *Præfect* of *Illyricum*, who had originally only the Diocesses of *Macedon* and *Illyrium* under his Command; and not have placed it under the *Præfect* of the East, who had both *Asia's* and all *Egypt* under his Authority. For being that there lay Appeals from the Vickers and Lieutenants of the several Diocesses to their respective *Præfects*, how great a trouble must it be to the Subjects of *Thrace* on every occasion of Appeal to post to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the *Præfect* of the Orient, when *Serminum* and *Theffalonica*, the ordinary Residences of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, were so hard at hand? But *Constantine* was an absolute Prince, and might do what he list'd. He had not else removed his Seat so far towards the East, and left the Western parts of the Empire open to the Barbarous people, out of a Fancy only to preserve the Eastern. For that it was a Fancy only the event did shew: the *Persians* for all this prevailing more than ever formerly; and *Thrace* it self, though honoured with the Imperial City, and planted with so many *Roman* Colonies, so ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay wast and desart many Ages after. Inasmuch as the *Goths*, being by the *Huns* driven over the *Danow*, were by the Emperor *Valens* planted in this Country, (the Emperor having a design to use them in his Wars;) were not contented with the Portion allotted to them, they bid fair for all, wasting the whole Pro-

vince, taking divers Towns, and endangering *Constantinople* it self, from whence they were not driven (*Valens* himself being killed in the War against them) but by the coming of some *Saracens* to the Aid of the Citizens. Nor could the Residence of the Emperors protect this Country, but that it was continually harrailed and depopulated by the *Saluts*, *Bulgars*, *Scythians*, *Saracens*, and other Barbarous people falling in upon it; nor hinder one *Bryonius*, in the time of *Marcus Aurelius* and *Nero*, from assuming to himself the Title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Race from getting ground every day on the lesser *Asia*, inroaching upon *Thrace* it self, and in the end obtaining the imperial City.

And here perhaps it is expected, considering the *Turks* are now possessed of *Thrace* and the rest of *Greece*, that we should make relation of the Nature of that People, their Customs, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But the discourse thereof we will defer till we come to *Turcomania*, a Province of *Asia* from whence they made their first Inundations, like to some unresistible Torrent, into *Persia*, and after into the other parts of the World now subject to them: And therefore letting that alone till another time, we will proceed to our Description of the rest of *Greece*, consisting of the Islands scattered in the *Pontick*, *Propontick*, *Aegean*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, leaving out such as properly belong to *Asia*, till our Description of that Country, though otherwise *Greek* Islands, and so accounted both for their Language and Original.

7. The Islands of the *Pontick* and *Propontick* Seas.

Before we come to the Descriptions of these Islands, we must first look upon the Seas in which they lie, beginning with the *Pontick* first, because the greatest, and that which doth communicate and convey its Waters unto all the rest. A Sea made up originally of the Confluence of those mighty Rivers (the greatest in those parts of the World) which do fall into it, that is to say, the *Danow*, *Boristhenes* and *Tanais*, falling out of *Europe*, besides many other fair and large Rivers, (though of lesser note) to the number of at least an hundred, which pay Tribute to it, the whole Compass of it being 2700 miles; in form by some resembled to a *Scythian* Bow when it is bended. A Sea not so salt as many others, and therefore much annoyed with Ice in Winter; seldom remitted in the Spring on the Northern Shore. The Trallick of it is wholly in a manner engrossed by the *Turk*, who is Master of all the Sea-coast of it, save what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crim Tartar*, at first it was called *Ægeus* from the Inhospitality of the neighbouring People, which being brought to some Conformity caused the Sea to be called *Ἰόνιον*. By *Horus* it is called *Maræ Sinistrum*, because in the way from *Rome* to *Asia minor* it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Maræ Maggiore*, for its greatness; and the *Black Sea*, because of the great Mills thence arising. Others not unprobably affirm that it is called the *Black Sea*, from the dangerous and black Shipwrecks here happening; for it is a very dangerous Shore, full of Rocks and Sands: and for this cause there is on the top of an high Tower a Lantern, in which there is a great Pan full of Pitch, Rosin, Tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the Shore. This Sea, being the biggest of all those parts, gave occasion to them which knew no bigger to call all Seas by the name of *Pontus*, as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant, decrant quoque littora ponto*; and in another place of the same Poet, ——— *nil nisi pontus & ær*: a better reason doubtless of the name, than that of the Etymologists, *Pontus, quia ponte caret*. Of this Sea the chief Isles are *Thynius*, and *Frisinius*, little famous.

From hence the Sea binding Southwards is brought into narrower bounds, not being fully a mile broad, and is called the *Thracian Bosphorus*; *Thracian*, for its sight nigh *Thrace*; and *Bosphorus*, for that Oxen have swam over it.

It hath no Island worth naming. It is fortified on each side with a very strong Castle. That on the *Asian* side, being the elder and the lesser, is by the *Greeks* called *Asiacastron*, by the *Turks* named *Accelbisur*; the other, just opposite to it, is by the *Turks* called *Genichisur*, by the *Greeks* named *Neocastrum*, or *New Castle*. This last was the work of *Mahomet* surnamed the Great, in the beginning of his Reign; in bignets not inferior to a little City, built by him in or near the place of the ancient *Danalis*, invironed with a Wall 22 foot broad, and containing 3 great Towers, their Wall exceeding 10 yards in thickness; exceedingly well stored with all sorts of Ordnance and Ammunition. By the *English* they are commonly called the *Black Towers*; partly because seated at the Entrance of the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and partly because they serve as a Prison for Malefactors of principal note, who seldom are discharged thence till released by death. Sir *John Chardin* a French Knight saith, this *Bosphorus* is one of the most Loveliest sights in the World, being about 15 miles long, and 2 broad. The Shoars consist of rising grounds, covered every where with Houses of Pleasure, Woods, Gardens, Parks, delightful prospects, and lovely Wildernesses, in which are Thousands of Springs and Fountains. The City of *Constantinople* and the vast variety of Ships passing or riding there are the accomplishment of its Charms and Beauty. It has 4 Forts to secure it, 2 stand 8 miles from the Mouth of the *Black Sea*, and the other 2 near the Mouth of that Channel, and were built about the year 1632, to prevent the *Cassocks*, *Poles* and *Ruffs* from Ravaging as before to the Walls of *Constantinople*.

This Streight, having continued 26 miles in length, openeth it self into the *Tropontis*, 300 miles in compass; confined with *Thrace* on the one side, and with *Bithynia* on the other; so as they which sail in the middle may decry the Land on all parts. Now called *Mar di Marmora*, from the Island *Marmora*, which, formerly called *Proconnesus*, hath for its abundance of Marble purchased this new name. The Soil is apt for Vines, and not destitute of Corn; yielding also good Pasturage for Goats, whereof here is plenty, with an incredible number of Partridges amongst the Rocks: the Country of *Aristeus*, a famous Poet, who flourished in the times of *Cræsus*. Anciently it had in it two Cities of the same name with the Island, called the *Old* and *New Proconnesus*: the former first built by the *Milesius*, an *Asian* People; the latter by the Natives of this Island. But both these being long since decayed, it hath now only a small Village towards the North with an Haven to it, inhabited by the *Greeks*, as is all the rest of the Island: Much Christian Slaves as are in great numbers employed here by the *Turks*, in digging Marble for their Mosques and other Buildings being only Sojourners, not House-keepers, and therefore not accounted amongst the Inhabitants. Here is also in this *Propontick* Sea the Isle of *Cyicus*: but being it is on *Asia* side, we shall there speak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a lesser Channel is called *Hellepont*, from *Helle*, Daughter of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*, who was here drowned. Over this famous Streight did *Xerxes* according to *Herodotus*, make a Bridge of Boats to pass into *Greece*: which when a sudden Tempest had shrewdly battered, he caused the Sea to be beaten with 300 Stripes, and cast a pair of Fetters into it, to make it know to whom it was subject. *Xerxes* in this Expedition wasted over an Army consisting of two Millions and 164710 fighting men, in no less then 2208 Bottoms of all sorts. When all the *Persians* soothed the King in the unconquerableness of his Forces, *Artabanus* told him that he feared no Enemies but the Sea and the Earth, the one yielding no safe Harbour for such a Navy, the other not yielding sufficient subsistence for so multitudinous an Army. But his return over this *Hellepont* was as dejected as his passage magnificent; his Fleet being so broken by the Valour of the *Greeks* and the fury of the Sea, that, for his more speedy Flight he was compelled to make use of a poor Fisher-boat. Neither yet was his passage

secure: for the Boat being overburthened, had sunk all, if the *Persians* by casting away themselves had not saved the Life of their King. The Loss of which noble spirits so vexed him, that having given the Steersman a golden Coronet for preserving his own Life, he commanded him to Execution as a Co-author of the death of his servants. It is now called the *Dardanelles*, the Castles, or the Sea of the two Castles; which 2 Castles stand one on *Europe*, the other on *Asia* side, in the Towns of *Scstos* and *Abydus*. These Castles, commonly by the *Turks* called *Dardanelii*, are exceedingly well built, and abundantly furnished with Munition. They search and examine all Ships that pass that way: they receive the Grand Seignours Customs, and are in effect the principal strength of *Constantinople*. At these Castles all Ships must stay three days, to the end that if any Slave be run away from his Master, or Thieves have stoln any thing, they may be in that place pursued and apprehended. So that these Castles are as it were the Out-works of *Constantinople*, to defend it from all Invasions, and from any Forces which may come unto it by Sea out of the *Mediterranean*; as for the Safety thereof from such as may find passage out of the *Euxine*, there are situate at the very entrance of the *Thracian Bosphorus* two strong Castles, the one above *Constantinople* on *Europe* side; the other on the *Asian* Shore, which before we spake of. No *European* Isle of note is in either of the Streights.

Since our Author wrote, there are two other Castles call'd the *New Dardanells*, which bear just upon the entrance of the *Hellepont*, about three miles more to the South than the *Old Dardanells*, as Mr. *Wheler* has observed, they seem to be both built since the year 1655. And in all probability, because the *Venerians* in the year 1655, 56, and 57, took these Castles, and stop'd all passage for the *Turks* that way, during the War in *Candia*.

8. The Islands of the *Æ G Æ A N* Sea.

Hellepont, after a forty miles course, expatiateth its waters in the *Ægean* Sea: so called either from *Ægeus*, the Father of *Theseus*, who misdoubting his Sons safe return from the *Minotaur* of *Crete*, here drowned himself: or, secondly, from *Æga*, once a principal City in the prime Island *Eubœa*; or, thirdly because that the Islands lie scattered up and down like the Leaps of a wanton Goat, from the *Greek* αἰγῶν.

The chief Islands of it are, 1. *Samothrace*, 2. *Thassus*, 3. *Imbrus*, 4. *Lemnos*, 5. *Eubœa*, 6. *Salamis*, 7. *Ægina*, 8. the *Cyclades*, 9. the *Sporades*, and 10. *Cythera*: all which especially from *Eubœa* Southwards, are called the *Islands of the Archæ*; the Sea being by the *Greeks* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatness compared unto the narrow Seas which lie above it.

1. *Samothrace* is a small Island opposite to the Coasts of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; so called quasi *Samos Thracia*, to difference it from the *Asian Samos*, bordering on *Ionia*. Formerly it was called *Dardania*, from *Dardanus* the Trojan, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Aristotle*, writing of the Commonweal of these *Samothracians*, telleth us that it was first called *Leucosia*, and afterwards *Samus*, from *Saus* the Son of *Mercury* and *Rhene*, the letter *M* being interposed. It is now called *Samandracchi*, and is plentiful in Honey and Wild Deer, and better stored with commodious Harbours then any other in these Seas. It hath a Town of the same name with the Island, situate on an high Hill on the North part hereof overlooking a capacious Haven; of late, by the Pirates frequent infesting of these Seas, wholly in a manner, desolate.

2. *Thassus*, another little Island on the same Coast, opposite to the Influx of the River *Nessus*, lying betwixt that and *Athos* in *Macedonia*, at the Mouth of the *Strymonian* Bay: by *Pliny* called *Æria* and *Æthria*, by *Ptolemy* *Thalassia*, at the present *Tasso*. It is in compass betwixt forty and fifty miles, sufficiently fruitful, well replenished with Woods, and yielding good store of the

bell

best Wines; mountainous in some places; but those Mountains fraught with Quarries of excellent Marble, which the *Romans* called *Thasian*, from the Island, and in the times of *Philip* and *Alexander* the Great so rich in Mines of useful Metals, that those Kings received yearly 80 Talents for their Customs of them. It hath one Town of the same name with the Island, situate on a large Plain in the North part of it, bordering on a goodly Bay, which serves for an Haven to the Town: and on the South parts where the Country is more mountainous and hilly, there are two Towns more, each of them situate on an hill, but the names thereof occur not amongst my Authors.

3. *Imbrus*, another small Island, now named *Lembro*, is situate betwixt *Samothrace* and the *Thracian* Chersonese, in compass about thirty miles, but more long then broad, stretching North and South, and distant from *Samothrace* about ten miles. The Island is mountainous for the most part, except towards the West; where it hath some pleasant and well-watered Plains: in it is a Town of the same name, situate at the foot of the Mountains once sacred unto *Mercury*, but not less observable. These 3 are very thinly inhabited by reason of the Pirates.

4. *Lemnos*, an Island of more note, lieth betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Imbrus*; memorable amongst the Poets for the fabulous Fall of *Vulcan*, who being but an homely Brat, hardly worth the owning, was by *Juno* in great Passion thrown out of Heaven, and falling on this Island, came to get his Halting. Howsoever, he was anciently worshipped by the People hereof, and from hence called *Lemnius*. It is in compass about an hundred miles, but more long then broad, extended from the East to the West; on every side well furnished with convenient Creeks and some pretty Havens, by which the want of Rivers is in some sort recompensed.

The Country is for the most part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Islands, but otherwise swelled with rising Mountains, the interposed Valleys being very fruitful of Wheat, Pulse, Wine, Flesh, Cheese, Wool, Flax, Linnen, and all other necessities; only Wood is wanting. And though here be no Rivers, as before was said, yet have they good Fishing on the Sea-coast for their use and sustenance; and in some parts hot Baths for Health and Medicines. But the chief Riches of this Island is in a mineral Earth here digged, of excellent virtue for curing of Wounds, stopping of Fluxes, expelling Poisons, a Preservative against Infections, and the like; called *Terra Lemnia* from the place, and *Terra Sigillaria*, from the Seal or Character imprinted on it. For being made up into small Pellets, and Sealed with the Turk's Character, or Signet, it is then (not before) sold unto the Merchants; by whom it is dispersed over most parts of the Christian World. Upon the sixth of *August* yearly they go to gather it; but not without much Ceremony: and many Religious Preparations, brought in by the *Venetians*, when they were Lords of this Island, and still continued by the *Greek* Monks or *Caloires*, who are the principal in the work. There is one Hill only where it groweth, the Top whereof being opened, they discover the Vein, resembling the casting up of Worms; and having gathered as much of it that day as the Priests think fit, it is closed again; certain Bags of it being sent to the Grand Seignior yearly, the residue sealed up, and sold to the Foreign Merchant.

But to return to the Topography of the place. The Eastern parts hereof are said to be fat and fruitful, the Western very dry and barren: in both containing 57 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and those three garrisoned by the *Turks*, who, being Lords of the whole Island, have new named it *Stratimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Dipolis*. Of which the first was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Island, as large and well-peopled now as ever formerly, but of no great estimation when it was at the best, seated upon an high Hill looking over the Sea, with a handsome Market-place, on which Mount *Albos* cast a shadow, though distant 87

miles from it. It was formerly by another name called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* still remaining. 2. The second of the two Cities was then called *Hephestia*, memorable for the Temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephestiades*; since desolate and destroyed, and a new Town built in the place of it, being called *Cochino*. This Town is not great, but of considerable strength, memorable for the stout Resistance which a notable *Virago*, named *Alcedia*, made against the *Turks* in the time of *Mahomet* the Great, the *Venetians* then being Lords of the Island. For suddenly landing, when they were not looked for, with a purpose to surprize this Town, they found more Resistance at the Gates than they did expect: none being more commended than this Maiden, who seeing her Father slain, took up such Weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, until the rest of the Citizens, awakened with the Alarm, came unto her Rescue, and forced the Enemy to retire. Near hereunto is the Hill on which *Vulcan* is fabled to have fell, more eminent for the Mineral earth here only gathered. And not far hence *Pliny* reports a Labyrinth to have stood in the days of old, little inferior unto those of *Crete* or *Egypt*; the Ruins of it being so decayed that *Bellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3. The third place of note is *Scira*, though an ordinary Village, yet memorable for the Chappel in which the *Greek Caloires* begin their Orisons on the sixth day of *August*, before their gathering of the Earth so often mentioned. In this Country anciently reigned *Thoas*, the Son of *Bacchus* and *Ariadne*, during whose time the Women of the Island upon some displeasure murdered all the men, the King only excepted, preserved by *Hypsipyle* his Daughter, whom they made their Queen, and by whom *Jason* with the *Argonauts* were so kindly entertained for two years together, that they had almost forgot their intended Expedition for the Golden Fleece; she her self being got with Child by *Jason* at his being there, the other Women probably following her Example. Following the Fortune of the other parts of *Greece*, it came at last under the power of the *Constantinopolitan* or Eastern Emperors. In the Subversion of that Empire by the *Latines* or Western Christians (of which more hereafter) it fell to the share of the *Venotians*, who held it till the year 1463, or thereabouts. The Principal Port in this Island is now called *Mudro*, which lies on the South East side, above which stands the City with an indifferent Castle Garrison'd by the *Turks*, before the War of *Candia*, there were fifty Towns and Villages, but there is now not above twenty, the *Venetians* taking the Island in 1662, ruin'd the strong places, and carried away the Garrison. *Randolph*.

Besides these on the Coast of *Thrace*, there are also some of less note on the Shores of *Macedon*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Teparthi*, as *Ptolomy*; *Iuonns*, as *Pliny* calls it, containing about 40 miles in compass, now called *Saragino*, as *Castaldus*, or *Lemene*, as *Niger* hath it; fortified on the Eastern part with a Castle built upon a Rock. Others of less note are, 2. *Seyathos*, now *Sciati*, 3. *Scopelos*, 4. *Halonesus*, 5. *Cicynethus*, now *Pontico*, and 6. *Dromus*: of which little memorable. All which, together with those formerly described on the Coast of *Thrace*, being but the Accessories of the several Continents upon which they border; followed the Fortune of the principal, and were conquered in them.

5. *Eubœa*, known to the Ancients by the names of *Macris* and *Abantis*, to the Moderns by that of *Negropont*, frontieeth all along the Coast of *Achaia*, parallel to which it is in Fertility; one part hereof being torn away from it by an Earthquake, and lying still so near unto it, that between the Island and the Continent is only a little *Euripus*, which ebberth and floweth seven times in one day. The reason of which when *Aristotle* could not find, it is said that he threw himself into the Sea, with these words, *Quia ego non capio te, tu capies me*. In this Island is the Promontory *Caphereus*, where *Nauplius*, the Father of *Palamedes*, placed his false Fires, to the Destruction of so many *Greeks*. For understanding how his son

Palamedes

Palamedes, whom he deemed to have been slain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherously circumvented by the Policy of *Ulysses* and *Diomedes*, he conceived such a displeasure against the whole Host of the *Greeks*, that he intended their general Destruction. To this end he caused Fires to be made on the tops of the most dangerous and unaccessible Rocks in this whole Island; which the *Greeks* taking (according to the Custom of the time) to have been the Marks of some safe Haven, made thitherward, and were there most miserably cast away; there perishing 200 Ships, and many thousand men. But when *Nauplius* understood how *Diomedes* and *Ulysses*, whose Ruine he principally intended, were escaped, he drowned himself for very Vexation in this very same place. *Palamedes*, this *Nauplius's* Son, is said to have invented four of the *Greek* Letters, viz. θ , χ , ξ , ϕ . to have first instituted Centinels in an Army, and to be the first Inventer of the Watch-word.

It is in length 150 miles, stretched out from the North-west to the South-east; in breadth not above twenty, where it is broadest; the whole compass 365 *Italian* miles. It is the Queen of the *Ægean* Sea, not only for Greatness, but for Fertility and Strength; plentiful in Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fruit and Wood fit for Shipping; enriched with many fair Harbours and capacious Bays, and those well fortified; watered also with the Rivers of *Circus* and *Melas*, two Rivers of so strange a nature, that if a Sheep drink of the former, his Wooll turneth white, but coal-black, if he drink the latter. For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Strabo*. Here is also said to be a Stone called *Amiantus*, which is drawn into thread like Hemp, and good Cloth made of it; which, when it is stained, in stead of being sent unto the Fullers, is thrown unto the Fire and so cleansed. But whether this be so or not, (for I put it only upon hearsay) certain it is, that it was once enriched with Mines both of Brass and Iron, though those now decayed; and likewise with Quarries of pure Marble, which continue still.

The Island before it was conquered by the Turks, was very populous, but the people most delighted to live in Villages; the Cities and walled Towns being only three. 1. *Carysto*, anciently *Carystus*, with little or no variation, but by *Pliny* called *Ægea* and *Chironia*, memorable for its marble Quarries, of which were made the Pillars called *Columnæ Carysticæ*. 2. *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the Turks named *Eribos*, seated on a Plain near the Water's side, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay called the Gulf of *Negropont*; a populous, strong and wealthy City, so fortified with Walls and Bulwarks, that in the judgment of most men it was held invincible when the Turks first lay down before it. Nor was it purchased by the Turk (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Constantinople*, undertook the business) at a lower price than the loss of forty thousand men, who were spent upon it; but taken at the last, and the people put unto the Sword, without consideration of Sex or Age. A Town in former times of so great Wealth and Power, that it sent Colonies abroad into *Macedonia*, (a principal Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidice*) as also into *Sicily* and some parts of *Italy*; and had a strong Influence on the Affairs of *Achaia* also, as being situate so near the Continent, that it was joyned to it by a Bridge. When it was in the hands of the Kings of *Macedon*, this Town, together with *Demetrius* in *Thessaly*, and the Castle of *Acrocorinth*, were called the *Fetters of Greece*: insomuch that when the *Roman* Senate commanded *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*, to set the *Greeks* at liberty; the *Greeks* made answer, that in vain was their Liberty restored them, unless these three Towns were first dismantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Laws, in memory of that Benefit they refused to declare against them in behalf of *Antiochus*, who thereupon made himself Master of the Town, and consequently of the Island. But forced to leave the place upon the loss of the Battel at *Ther-*

nopyla, it became free again; till finally made subject unto *Rome* with the rest of *Greece*, and with it made a part of the Eastern Empire. In the Division whereof amongst the *Latines* it fell to the share of the *Venetians*; who from hence used with their Gallies to infest the Shores of *Turkie*, and disturb their Trade. Provoked wherewith especially with their taking of *Ænus*, a City of *Thrace*, under the Conduct of *Nicolas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admiral, who in that Enterprize had taken 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into this Island, *Mahomet* the Great resolves upon the Conquest of it, and with a puissant Army sets before the Town. And though it cost him dear, yet at last he got it, and therewith all the Island also, which depended on the Fortunes of it, Anno 1471. This Island was Granted to the Common-wealth of *Venice*, in the times of *Pietro Zani*, for their good Services about the year 1204. The Fortifications of it were till of late, the same which the *Venetians* left, but within these 2 or 3 last years, the *Turks* having lost the *Morea*, have bestowed much cost on the Fortifications of it. The Inhabitants are supposed to make about 15000, the *Turks* and *Jews* living in the City, the *Greeks* in the Suburbs, which are separated from it by a large deep Dike. Since it came into the hands of the *Turks*, most of the *Greeks* have left the Island, so that it is but thinly peopled. It has a strong Castle, built in a small Island between the City and *Greece*, in the midst of the Bridge which unites the Island to the Continent. There is a place called the *New-Town*, which is very well built, with a large *Bazare*, or Market-place. In this the Christians are thrice the number of the *Turks* and *Jews*. The Harbour is very secure against all Winds, and extends two miles in length, and is secured from Enemies by the Castle, which has above 20 good Guns planted on this side. The Inhabitants of the whole Island are thought to be 60000 Souls, a tenth part of which are *Turks*, the rest are *Jews* and Christians. And it affords to the Grand Seignour 100000 Dollars Revenues, *Randolph*. This Place took the name of *Negropont* from the Black Bridge over the *Euripus*. The compass of the Walls are not above two miles, but the most of the Inhabitants live in the Suburbs. In this City the *Basha*, or General of the Turkish Fleet resides, who is Governour of the City and Island, who has a *Keiah* or Deputy under him, and in this place lies a Squadron of Gallies always ready for Service. Mr. *Wheler*. The *Turks* finding their Empire decline apace, by the loss of the *Moreas*, and *Hungary* and a great part of *Dalmatia*, bestowed great Charges on the Fortifications of *Negropont* in 1686 and 87; but yet the *Venetians* believing it absolutely necessary for the securing what they had recovered; in the year 1688 sent a powerful Fleet for the reducing of it, which the 13th of July Landed 24000 Men in the Island, the 22th, *Morosini* the General ordered the Trenches to be opened, the 20th of August he took all the Out-works by Storm, the 6th of October he Stormed the Town, and took the Breach, but was beaten off by the *Turks*. The 12th of the same, it was Stormed the second time, and that proving unsuccessful, he withdrew the Army which was much weakened; to prevent its intire Ruin; but yet it is said he intends to return in the Spring, and the *Turks* are now Fortifying it again to preserve it, and the *Venetian* Fleet Rides in the Gulph to hinder it as much as may be.

6. *SALAMIS*, is nigh unto *Megaris*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*; famous for the Overthrow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes* by the *Athenians* and their Confederates. What was the number of the Soldiers and Gallies of the *Persian* side hath been already declared. The whole *Grecian* Fleet consisted of no more than 270 Vessels, whereof 127 were rigged and set forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only, the rest by the Associates. Yet was the Admiralty committed to *Eurybiades* a *Lacedæmonian*; the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the common Safety before an unreasonable contention for Priority. The *Spartans*, seeing the inequality of Forces, intended

intended not to have hazarded the Battel, but with full sail to have retired to *Peloponnesus*, into which Country the *Perſians* had made Incuſſions; reſpecting more the Welfare of their own Country yet defenſible, than the deſperate eſtate of *Attica*. This Deſign was by *Themisto- cles* (as careful for the eſtate of *Athens* as they for *Sparta*) ſignified to *Xerxes*: who, getting between them and home, compelled them to a neceſſity of fighting, but to his own Ruine. For in the Conflict more than 200 of his Ships were ſunk, and moſt of the reſt taken; the Confederates having loſt of their Navy forty only. Between the *Athenians* and the *Megareſes* were many Contentions for this Iſland; the Fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in it a City of the ſame name, the Royal Seat of *Telamon*, the Father of *Ajax*, ſo famous in the War of *Troy*: More memorable for giving Birth to *Solon* the Legiſlator of *Athens*, one of the ſeven Wiſe Men of *Greece*. It was in after-times the See of a Biſhop, ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Athens*, the principal City lying on the South ſide of the Iſle, now called *Colouri*, as the Iſle is *Santa Brouſia*. The old City was on the North ſide, and is now ruined, being called *Ambelaki*. Mr. *Wheler* ſaith it is in compaſs about 50 miles. The principal Town *Colouri* conſiſts of about 150 poor Cottages and 400 Inhabitants. It has two other Villages *Metropolis*, the other is *Ambelaki*, which was the old *Salamina*, and by the Ruins may have been four miles in compaſs. It has one of the largeſt Havens in the World, and abounds with Corn, Pitch, Roſin, Coal, and Spunges.

7. *ÆGINA*, now called *Engia*, an Iſland ſituate over againſt *Sinus Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Ægean*, hence called *Golfo di Engia*; the Realm of *Æacus*, made for his Juſtice and Integrity one of the Three Judges of Hell: the other two being his Brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly been call'd *Oenone*, and *Oenope*; but took this name from *Ægina*, the Daughter of *Aſopus* a King of *Bootia*, on whom *Jupiter* is ſaid to have begot both *Æacus* and *Rhadamanthus*. The People hereof are properly called *Æginenſes* and *Æginetæ*, much ſpoken of in the Wars of *Athens*, from which they are diſtant about 12 miles. The ground hereof is very ſtony, but good for Barley, of which it is very plentiful: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving People, to whom they gave in thoſe days the name of *Myrmidons*, (the Iſland being alſo call'd *Myrmidonia*) quod Formicarum more Terram foderent, becauſe Emmet-like they digged up and under the Earth, to make it the more fit for Tillage; who dwelt at firſt in Caves without any Houſes. Hence the occaſion of the Fable of turning Emmets into Men at the Prayer of *Æacus*. Both Tale and People after (I know not how) were carried into *Theſſaly*, where before we found them. This Iſland gives name at preſent to the whole Bay of *Saron*. It is about 30 Miles in compaſs. It has but one Village called by its own name, which in 1654 was taken and ruined by the *Venetian* Fleet, which took 600 poor *Greek* Chriſtians for Rowers and Slaves away with it. It hath plenty of Corn, Cotton, Honey and Wax, Almond, Partridges; the laſt are ſo numerous, that if they did not yearly break their Eggs they would ſtarve the Inhabitants. This Iſland did of old belong to the *Venetians*. There is another Iſland now called *Porus*, of old *Calabrea*, 18 miles in compaſs. This Iſland was retaken by the *Venetians* in 1674.

8. The *CYCLADES*, ſo called becauſe they lie in a Circle round about *Delos*, are in number 53. They are alſo called the *Iſlands of the Arches*, becauſe they are in the Sea called *Archipelago*. They ſtand ſo cloſe together, that in a clear day a Man may ſee 20 of them at a time; for which cauſe it is with good reaſon accounted to be a dangerous place for Sailors in a Storm. The chief of theſe *Cyclades* are, 1. *DELOS*, quaſi *Δῖλος*, ſignifying apparent; becauſe when all the Earth had abjured the reſort of *Latona* at the requeſt of *Juno*, this Iſland, then

under Water, was by *Jupiter* created *Δῖλος*, and ſit to receive her; and in it was the deſtined reſort of *Apollo* and *Diana*: Of which thus *Ovid*;

Errantem accipit, tunc cum lævis Iliſſos
Illic in cunabulis ſub Palladis amore, Latona
Edidit in ſua genitrix Latona pericla
Untitled *Delos* floating on the Wave,
A little Iſland entertaining ge:
To wandering *Latona*, ſpight of *Juno's* Head,
Under *Minerva's* Palm-tree brought to Bed.

Notable alſo is this Iſland for the Temple of *Apollo*, and a Cuſtom, neither permitting Men to die, or Children to be born in it; but ſending ſick Men and grown belied Women to *Rhene*, a ſmall Iſland, and not much diſtant. By a more ancient name it is called *Oergia*; and by that name mentioned in any of the Poets, both *Greek* and *Latin*. The chief Town of it, called alſo *Delos*, is ſituate on a Plain environed with Rocks, near the Hill called *Cynthus*, whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthius*, and *Diana* of *Cynthia*; as of *Delius*, and *Delia*, from the Iſland. In this Town had *Apollo* both his Temple and Oracle, deliver'd here more plainly than in other places, whence, (as ſome ſay) it was called *Delos*; the word in *Greek* ſignifying *maniſeſt* or *apparent*: Made famous by the reſort of People from all places higher, eſpecially from the neighbouring Iſlands, who ſent yearly multitudes of Men and troupes of Virgins to celebrate his ſolemnities with Herds of Sacrifices. More weakly afterwards by removing of the Trade of *Carthage* thither; that Town being utterly deſtroyed by the *Romans*, and this made choice of by the Merchant; partly by reaſon of the Immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient ſituation betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*. It continued in great Wealth and Power till *Mithridates* laid it wait; and at laſt, on the ceasing of the Oracles, was utterly forſaken, both Town and Iſland are now called *Sdiles*. By which name alſo *Rhene*, an adjoining Iſland (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polyrates* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it, at the leaſt in name. This Iſland is but ſmall, not exceeding five or ſix miles in compaſs, but twice as long as broad; low, rocky and barren, now totally deſolate, and called *Zdeli*. The Learned *Wheler* has given a large Account of the Ruins of this Iſland, from Page 53 to 62. *Coronelli* ſaith, this Iſland having been taken from the *Venetians* by *Barberaſſe*, a *Venous* *Turkiſh* Admiral: In the laſt Century *Francis Alereſini* reduced it under the *Venetians* again the year 1674.

2. *TE N O S*, by *Ariſtotele* called *Hyleſia*, by ſome *Ophiola*, by the Moderns *Ten*. The chief Town of it is of the ſame name, ſo called from one *Ten* the Builder of it, and giving name to the Iſland: Memorable for a Fountain called *Daphnus*, of which *Ariſtotele* and *Plutarchus* doth both aſſure, that the Waters will not mix with Wine: the only Iſland of this Sea which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*, the reſt being ſubject to the *Turks*; deſerving therefore the firſt place in our Deſcription of thoſe Iſlands that incompaſs *Delos*, tho' anciently. This Iſland is about 70 miles in compaſs, and is the highſt Land in thoſe Seas: The *Turks* made ſeveral Attempts to reduce it in 1658. There is about 30 Villages, and 20000 Souls, moſt of them *Latinized* *Greeks*. *Randolph*. It is in effect a large heap of Marble Rocks, though in many places covered with a fruitful Soil. All the Villages can in time of neceſſity repair to the Caſtle which ſtands on the highſt Rock in the middle of the Iſle. The Inhabitants, which are many, work their own Silks, but they are no great Artills. *Wheler*, Page 51.

3. *ANDROS*, (*prima inter Cyclades*) was reckoned chief amongſt the *Cyclades*, or firſt at leaſt in order, becauſe next to *Delos*: originally called *Carnos*, afterwards *Antandros*, and at laſt *Andros*; from *Andros* the Son of *Eurymachus*, who founded the chief Town of it, of the ſame name alſo. Memorable for a pleasant Fountain

mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof on the Nones of *January* yearly had the taste of Wine. It still retains the name of *Andro*, or *Andri*. It has a good large Town to the North East, there are about 3000 Inhabitants in this Island, who are subject to the Turks, who pay a Tax of 10000 Dollars, they have Corn and Wine in abundance, but their best Commodity is their Silk. *Randolph*.

4. *NAXOS*, now *Nigsta*, one of the biggest of the Pack, as being about 80 Miles in compass. In ancient times it was called *Veneris Insula*, or the Island of *Venus*; afterwards *Dionysia*, by reason of its abundance of Wine, and the goodness of those Wines together, consecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Dionysius*. From its wonderful plenty of Wheat called by some *Sicilia minor*, or the *Lesser Sicily*; but at last *Naxos*, from one *Naxus*, who had the Conduct of a Colony of *Carians* hither. But notwithstanding this new name, *Bacchus* did still retain the honour to be worshipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marrying here *Ariadne* (as the Poets fable) whom *Theseus* had left upon the Rocks: whose Coronet or Chaplet, being by his means made one of the Heavenly Constellations, is by *Columella* called *Ardor Naxius*; by the name of the Island; though commonly by Astronomers *Corona Ariadnes*, from the name of the Lady. The Women of this Island are said by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eighth month, as *Bacchus* was born within that term. But it is most certainly famous in true Story for the Beauty and Fertility of it, and for a kind of excellent Marble called *Ophites* or *Serpentinus*; the ground whereof is green, diapered with blew or purple Spots, in much esteem amongst the *Romans*. When these Islands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on one *John Quirino*, a Patrician or Gentleman of that City (as they did divers of the rest on other undertakers) from whom it came to the Noble Family of the *Crispo's*, who held it till the year 1572, when *James* the last of that House lost it to *Selymus* the second. Most part of it is very high Land, yet it hath a great many pleasant and fruitful Valleys: the best Town is to the North West. It has an Archbishop who lives very well, and has his City and Country House. And the Inhabitants, which exceed not 5000, are very rich and happy, paying their Tribute at *Constantinople*; the Jesuits have great Revenues in the Isle, and some *Genoese* Gentlemen live there. *Randolph*.

5. *GYAROS*, a little Island, into which the *Romans* used to banish Delinquents. Hence that of *Juvenal*, cited by *G. Sandys*.

*Aude aliquid brevibus Gyaris vel carcere dignum,
Si vis esse aliquid: Probitas laudatur, & alget.*

If thou intend'st to thrive, do what deserves
Short Gyaros or Gyves: prais'd Virtue starves.

6. *PAROS*, now *Paro*, by some of the Ancients called *Parya*, by others *Minoa*; but it obtained this new name from *Parus*, a Son of *Jason*: Memorable for Quarries of the whitest Marble, of which commonly the Statues of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the *Latines*. It is in compass about 50 Miles, running in a long Plain from East to West, having once a Town of the same name seated in the North, once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants hereof were noted to be very careless of keeping their Promises, and Contracts: whence *ἀπαρσις* grew into a By-word; applied to those who made no reck'ning of their Promises. There is now a Town in it called *Cephala*, but it is of no great note; now called *Bazo* by the Turks, is 50 Miles in compass, miserably poor, but of the *Greek* Religion. *Randolph*.

7. *SCYROS*, opposite to *Magnesia* in *Asia minor*, famous for the Birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*, and that it was the Lurking-place of *Achilles*. For his Mother *Thetis*, being forewarned by an Oracle that he should be slain in the *Trojan* War, sent him to *Lycomedes* King of this Island, where he was brought up in Woman's Attire amongst the King's Daughters and deemed a Virgin;

till by getting *Pyrrhus* on *Deidamia* the King's Daughter it was proved to be otherwise. Others relate that *Ulysses* discovered him by a Wile, who, coming thither like a Pedler or Petti-merchant with Arms and other Ware, to avoid distrust, exposed his Merchandise to the view of the Damozels: When the other Ladies falling on the Tires and Laces, *Achilles* took into his hand the Spear and Shield. Which when *Ulysses* had observed, he made him leave that Company, and away for *Troy*. The hand-somness of the Fraud take from *Ovid*; thus:

*Conscia venturi Genitrix Nereia Fati
Diffimulat Cultu Natum; & decipiat omnes
(In quibus Ajacem) sumptu fallacia Vestis.
Arma ego foemineis animum motura virilem
Mercibus inferui, &c.*

Thus Englished by *G. Sandys* in his Translation of the *Metamorphoses*.

The whole Design in order to relate:

Thetis, foreknowing great *Achilles* Fate;
Disguis'd her Son, so like a Virgin drest,
That all mistook, and *Ajax* with the rest.
When Arms with Womens Trifles, which might blind
Suspect, I brought to tempt a manly Mind.
Yet was the *Hero* Virgin-like array'd;
Who taking up the Shield and Spear, I said,
O Goddess-born, for thee the Fate of *Troy*
Her Fall reserves: why doubtst thou to destroy
Great *Pergamus*? then made him d'off those Weeds.
And sent the Mighty unto mighty Deeds.

There is another of this name betwixt *Negropont* and *Lesbos*, which *Ortelius* conceives to be the Scene of this Action: but the general opinion is for this (though that be the greater Isle) to which the situation of it amongst the rest of those Islands where reigned so many of the *Greek* Kings interested in the War of *Troy* seems to give good countenance; the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in those days so much towards the North. It lies to the North of *Negropont*, is large, and has several very large Harbors, and one great and populous Town, with a small Castle to defend them from the troublesome Pyrates. *Randolph*.

8. *MELOS*, situate betwixt *Crete* and *Peloponnesus*, and equally distant from them both; the Promontories of *Scylla* in the one, and that of *Dittynna* in the other, shooting out against it. Inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phoenicians*, who coming out of *Byblus*, a Town of that Country, gave that name unto it: Being called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of Honey. The Birth-place of *Diagoras* the Philosopher, hence surnamed *Melinus*, but more properly *Asclepiades* or the *Atheist*, the first who in those dark times of Ignorance absolutely denied there was a God. *Protagoras* *Deos in dubium vocavit*, *Diagoras exclusit*, saith *Lactantius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 80 miles in compass. The Soil is sufficiently fruitful in Corn and Oil, but defective in Wine. Here is great plenty of Marble curiously bespotted, and no small store of Mill-stones; as also great quantities of Pitch and Brimstone, and some Sulphury or hot Springs good for many Diseases. The chief Town of it is called *Milo* also. The Turks call it *Digirmenlick*. It has but one Town which stands in a fine Plain; the Inhabitants are thought to be 5000. The Pyrats are a great plague to it, but the Turks come rarely there, their Tribute being paid by them at *Scio*.

9. *SERIPHUS*, Twenty miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the Education of *Perseus* the Son of *Danae*. It is reported of this Island, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but such as are brought from other places keep their natural tone: from whence, Proverbially, silent and sullen Persons were called *Rana Serphica*. It is now called *Saxfine* or *Serphone*, a stony and rocky Island, and hath a Town of the same name.

10. *CIA*, by some called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, opposite to the Promontory of *Achaia* called *Smium*, in compass about 50 miles; made towards the West, in fashion

of a Crescent or half Moon; mountainous and hilly, except towards the North; by *Pliny* said to have been torn from *Eubœa*, by a sudden violence of the Sea, many men perishing in the waters. Of old times it was beautified with three fair Towns; 1. *Fulis*, 2. *Carthea*, and 3. *Careffus*: of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whose names occur amongst the Ancients: as 11. *Miconus*, now called *Micole*; 12. *Cythus*, now *Cairo*; 13. *Siphnus*, now *Siphano*; 14. *Therapsia*, now *Santorini*; 15. *Cimolis*, called formerly *Echinusa*, but now *Polino*; 16. *Oliarus*, now *Quinimino*, 17. *Sicenus*, now *Sicino*; 18. *Pelyagos*, now *Falconara*; 19. *Amorgos*, now *Morgo*, one of the biggest of them all, but not else observable.

9. The *SPORADES* are so called from *σπάρω*, *spargo*, *eo quod in Mari sparsa sunt*, & *non in Circulum coactæ*, because they lie dispersed and scattered, not formed into a Circle, as the *Cyclades* are. They are in number twelve. *viz.* 1. *Anaphe*, so called by the *Argonauts*, *ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναφανείας Κροτομῶνις*, because the Moon did suddenly, and beyond her natural course, appear unto them, then grievously distressed by Tempest. *Apollo* worshipped here is hence called *Anapheus*. It is now usually called *Namfio*. 2. *Astypalea*, now *Stampalia*, in compass 88 miles, by some of the Ancients called *Theon Trapeza*, or the *Table of the Gods*. In *Astypale*, the chief Town of it, was *Apollo* worshipped, from hence sometimes called *Astypaleus*. 3. *Helene*, so called from that fair Greek Dame, whom *Paris* is here said to have first deflowered; now called *Macronisi*. 4. *Los*, fifteen miles from *Naxos*, where *Homer* is said to have been buried: But others find his Grave at *Naxos*, and some at *Chios*; the difference being almost as great about the place of his Burial as the place of his Birth. Then are 5. *Lagusa*, 6. *Phocusa*, 7. *Phacasia*, 8. *Philocandros*, 9. *Schinusa*, 10. *Strybia*, of little note either in Poetry or Story. And finally, 11. *Thera*, not far from *Ægina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Caliste*; but named thus by *Theras* a *Theban* Gentleman, the Son of *Antefion*, conducting hither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Mynians*, (these last of *Thessaly*) cast out of *Lemnos* by *Pelasgus*: in memory of whom, as the Founder of their Name and Nation, the Islanders used to celebrate an annual Feast. A Sedition after happening amongst this People, the weaker Party, under the Conduct of one *Battus*, admonished so to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, passed over into *Africk*, and there built *Cyrene*. The Birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who ascribes his Original to this Island, as himself thus witnesseth.

Καλλίμῳ προπάροιθε, τὸ δ' ὕστερον ἔνομα Θῆσιν
Μήτηρ δόπλε πατρίδ' ὅ-ημεῖσιν.

That is to say,

Caliste, which men *Thera* now do call,
Of my dear Country the Original.

10. *CYTHERA*, now called *Cerigo*, lieth in the bottom of the Sea, not above five miles distant from *Capo Malio* in *Peloponnesus*; formerly called *Porphyris*, from the abundance of Marble, whereof the Island yields good plenty. It is in compass about 60 miles, enriched with a delightful Soil, and having many Havens, but those small and unsafe, and very difficult of entrance. It is environed on all sides with Rocks, of themselves inaccessible, by which it is defended from the Turks, who hitherto have suffered the *Venetians* to enjoy it, to whom it fell in the division of the Spoil amongst the *Latines*, so often spoken of before. It had a Town of the same name: some two furlongs from the Haven stood the Temple of *Venus*, (the ancientest dedicated to that Goddess which the *Grecians* had) and therein her *Statua* in compleat Armour, like another *Pallas*. Out of this Temple (the Ruines whereof are still to be seen) was *Helen*, the Wife of *Menelaus*, willingly ravished by *Paris*, the Son of *Priam*, but not enjoyed by him, till he had brought her to a small Island of the *Sporades* by her name called *Helene*, as before is said. From the Devotions of this People paid so duely to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cytherea*, by which she is often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil*.

*Parce metu, Cytherea, magnæ mentis tuorum
Fata tibi*—

Drive Fear, fair *Cytherea*, from thy mind;

Thou thy Son's Fate immovable shalt find.

Mr. *Wheler* assures us this Island is Barren, Rocky, Mountainous, Ill-peopled, but it has Game and Fowl in plenty. The chief Town lies on the South side, and it is still under the *Venetians*. It has a River which in Summer time seems dry, but preserves it self 3 Foot under ground. page 47. *Coronelli*. In his History of the *Moræa*, saith it is seated in the Gulph of *Laconica* on the South of the *Moræa*, and that it has many Harbours upon its Shoars, one of which call'd the *Dragoniers*, on the East of the Island it has good Anchorage, and will secure a Numerous Fleet, it being by Nature so formed that it may be shut up with a Chain, and yet will hold 40 Gallies. *Selim* Emperor of the Turks attempted the Conquest of this Island by *Hali*, but found so stout a Resistance, that he gave over the Design. The *Lacedæmonians* of old, were no less Jealous of the Preservation of this Island, than the *Venetians* now are, because it was their Rampart, and secured the Trade of *Egypt*; and when the *Athenians* took it in the 8th year of the *Peloponnesian* War from them, they soon found the worth of it by the want, their Country from thence forward being exposed to the Inroads of their Enemies, if they had not forthwith Fortified and Garrisoned the opposite Shoars.

And so I pass from the *Ægean* to the *Cretan* Sea, observing this only by the way, that most of the 60 Kings which accompanied *Agamemnon* in the War of *Troy* were Kings only of these small Islands; or else of other places as inconsiderable for wealth and Potency: every small Town and Territory having in those early times amongst the *Grecians* (when Ambition had not taught the Great ones to devour the less) a peculiar King.

9. The Islands of the C R E T A N Sea.

THE *CRETAN* Sea is properly that part of the *Ægean* or *Ionian* Sea which lyeth about the Shores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the Command and power thereof: as in those times, the Sea about *Carpathus*, another Isle of the *Ægean* had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Icarian*; tho' situate in the *Ægean* also. The Isles hereof are, 1. *Crete*, 2. *Claude*, 3. *Dia*, and 4. *Licon*; for *Melos* and *Cimolis*, named by *Ptolomy* against the Islands which adjoin on *Crete*, having been already spoken of amongst the *Cyclades*, in the account whereof they pass by consent of Writers.

1. *CRETA*, now *Candia*, hath on the East the *Carpathian* Sea, on the West the *Ionian*, on the North the *Ægean*, on the South the *African* or *Lilyck*. In form it extendeth East and West with three Points or Promontories: whereof that towards the East, called anciently *Samonium*, is now called *Capo di Salmone*; that on the South-west, looking towards *Africk*, formerly named *Hermæa*, is now *Capo Giabrassè*; and finally, that on the North-west towards *Peloponnesus*, of old called *Camarus*, is now called *Capo Chessin*. This last is directly opposite to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Laconia*; the Sea betwixt them being so troublesome and tempestuous, especially on *Laconia* side, that at last it grew into an ordinary Caveat, *Maleam prætervectus obliuiscatur que sunt domi*, *viz.* that he which was to Sail by the point of *Malea*, should lay aside the care of all other matters, and attend his present Safety only.

It hath in several Ages and in several Authors obtained several names. By *Homer* and *Auslathius* it is called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an 100 Cities then contained in it: by *Pliny* and *Solinus*, *Macaros*, and *Macaronesos*, that is to say, the happy Island from the goodness of the Soil and Temper of the Air: by *Stephanus*, *Idea*, from *Ida* a famous Mountain of it: by *Gwaldus*, *Telebina*, from the *Telebini*, the Priests of *Cybele*, who was here had in great request. At the present it is called *Candia*, either

a *Candore*, from the whiteness of the Rocks wherewith it is environed; or from *Candia* the Metropolis or chief Town thereof. But the general name which hath prevailed most in all sorts of Writers is that of *Crete*, so called *quasi Creta*, by a Syncope or Abbreviation, from the *Curtes*, the first Inhabitants hereof; who together with the *Corybantes* and *Telchini*, were the Priests of *Cybele* the principal Goddess of this Island: and they so called *σὺ τῆς κεφαλῆς*, from their *Tonsure* or *Shaving* of the Head. A Custom much in use amongst the Priests of some of the Pagan Deities, and possibly enough from them transmitted to the Church of *Rome*. And to this Etymology I do rather incline, than either to derive the name from *Cretes*, the Son of *Jupiter* and the Nymph *Ida*, or from *Crete* the Daughter of *Hesperus*, though both these have their Authors also. Nor dare I to reject the Conceit of *Bochartus*, who fetching the Etymons of most people from the *Punick* Language or Original, will have the *Cretans* to be descended from the *Cerethites*, a Nation of the *Philistins*, well known in Scripture; the word *Cereth* being abbreviated into *Creth*, from which into *Crete* and *Cretans* is no difficult passage. But in my mind his Conjecture is better than his Proof. For though it may be granted without inconvenience that the chief Arms of the *Philistins* were their Bow and Arrows, as appears 1 *Sam.* 31. 3. and that the *Cretans* anciently were expert at those Weapons also: yet this concludes no more than the *Cretans* are of the Race of the *Philistins*, than that almost all Nations else had the same Original; the Bow and Arrows being the ordinary Weapons of most People formerly, till Custom and Experience trained them up to others of a later date; as he himself acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate Tractates.

In reference to the Heavenly Bodies it is situate under the beginning of the fourth Climate, so that the longest Day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a quarter, and in relation to the Earth, set in the middle of the Sea, at so even a distance from *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africk*, as if naturally designed to be what *Aristotle* hath pleased to call it, the *Lady* and *Mistress of the Sea*. For it is distant from *Peloponnesus* an hundred miles, as many from *Asia* the Less, and not above 150 from the Shores of *Africk*: so verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis magni medio jacet Insula Ponto.
Jove's Birth-place Crete, a fruitful Land,
In the middle of the Sea doth stand.

It is in length 270, in breadth 50 miles, in compass about 590. The Soil is very fruitful, especially of Wines which we call *Muscadells*, of which they transport yearly 12000 Butts, together with Sugar-Candy, Gums, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Oranges, Limons, Raisins, Melons, Citorns, Pomegranates. Yet, as other Countries of the like hot-nature, it is not a little deficient in Corn, the most or greatest part of which is yearly brought hither from *Peloponnesus*.

The Island is very populous, insomuch that it is thought that upon any sudden occasion the Seignioury of *Venice* can raise in it 60000 men able to bear Arms. The People have formerly been good Sea-faring men, a Vertue commaculated with many Vices, which they yet retain, as Envy, Malice, and Lying; to which last they are so infinitely addicted, that an horrible Lie was called proverbially *Cretense mendacium*. This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epimenides*, a Native of this Island, whose words are thus cited by *S. Paul* to *Titus*, Chap. 1. v. 12.

Κρήτες ἀὶὶ ψευδοί, καὶὶ θύβια, γὰρ γεγενησάμενοι.

The *Cretans* always Liers are,
Unruly Beasts of Labour spare.

To which this Proverb may be added, viz. *Τρία Κόρρα καὶὶ καὶὶ*, that is to say, There are three Nations whose names begin with the letter *K*, worse then any other, viz. *Κόρραδοι*, *Κρήτες*, *Κίλικες*, the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though some, I know, apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Corinth*, *Capua*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the same Letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day they are

sick of their old Diseases, as great Liars and as Idle as ever formerly; Covetous withal, and very subtle, impatient of Labour, and not caring to learn any Science perfectly: only well practised in Shooting, to which they are accustomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert than the Turks themselves.

The Language generally spoken is the *Greek* Tongue, though the Gentlemen and Merchant, by reason of their Dependance on the State of *Venice*, speak *Italian* also. Both Languages are used also in Divine Offices: the people being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latine* Service is used also in many places, since the Subjection of this Island to the *Venetians*. They were converted first unto the Faith by *S. Paul* the Apostle, who having planted the Gospel of Life amongst them, left the watering of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Bishop of this Isle; recommending unto him the Care of the Churches there: with power of Ordination and Ecclesiastical Censure: as appears clearly by the Text. Which power that it belonged to *Titus* as Bishop, and not as their Evangelist only, is affirmed expressly not only by the Subscription of the said Epistle, where he is plainly called *ἐκ κληρονομίας πατρὸς ἐπίσκοπος*, the first Bishop of the Church of the *Cretans*, but by the concurrent Testimonies of *Euseb. Eccl. Hist.* l. 3. c. 4. *S. Ambr. in Prefat. ad Tit.* *S. Hierom. in Tit.* c. 1. v. 5. and in his Tract *de Scripter. Ecclesiasticis*, *Theodoret*, cited by *Oecumen. in Prefat. ad Ep. Tit.* *Oecumenius* himself in *Tit.* 1. and finally by *Theophylact* in his Preface to the same Epistle. All which in plain terms call him *Bishop*, and the Bishop of *Crete*; according to that sense and meaning of the word *Episcopus*, as it was used in their times, distinct from *Presbyter*. The Church hereof, whilst wholly under the *Greek* Patriarchs, was governed by four Arch-bishops and 21 Bishops. But since the Subjection of this Island to the State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbishop, which is he of *Candia*, the chief City, and eight Bishops only; besides the Titular Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who hath there his Residence; some Prelate of the *Latin* Church having been always honoured with that empty Title ever since the Recovery of that City from the Western Christians.

Famous was this Island amongst the Ancients for many things memorized both by the Poets and old Historians. For here reigned *Saturn* in the first Ages of the World, Father of *Jupiter*, who was born here, and secretly nursed in the Hill called *Ida*. For seeing that, by the Compact betwixt *Saturn* and his Brother *Titan*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own Life only, but all his Male-children to be murdered as soon as born; *Jupiter*, by the care of his Mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and secretly nursed in Mount *Ida*, as before was said: the Crying of the Infant being drowned by the noise of loud-sounding Cymbals, purposely used by his Rockers to avoid Discovery. Whence afterwards the *Corybantes*, or Priests of *Cybele*, used in her Sacrifices the like musical Instruments, continually sounding, and withal shaking of their Heads, (like Fiddlers) in an antick and ridiculous manner. Alluding whereunto thus the Poet *Claudian*;

Non te progenitum Cybeleius *Arc camoro*
Lustravit Corybas.

That is to say,

No *Cybeleian* Corybas that day

That thou was born did on his Cymbal play.

Here also lived *Minos* and *Rhadamanthus*, whose Laws were imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*, and who, for their Equity on Earth, are feigned by the Poets to be (together with *Alcus*) the Judges in Hell. In this Island also lived the lewdly-lustful *Pasiphae*, Wife of *Minos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a Fable) to have doated on a white Bull, who, they say, begat on her the *Minotaur*. *Dadalus* having framed for her an artificial Cow, into which she conveyed her self, and by that means obtained her desire. The Fable is thus expounded, that *Pasiphae* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Minos's* Secretaries:

raries : whose company by the Pandarism of *Dædalus* she enjoying, was delivered of two Sons, one called *Minos*, the other *Taurus*. And whereas it is said that the *Minotaur* was slain by *Theseus*; like enough that the annual Tribute of 7 Children, which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid up in some Prison, *Minos* and *Taurus* being the Keepers or Gaolers. As for the action of *Pasiphaë*, I think it not altogether impossible to be true, considering how *Domitian*, to verifie the old relation, exhibited the like beastly Spectacle in his Amphitheatre at *Rome* : for thus saith *Martial*,

*Junctam Pasiphaen Dictæo, credite Tauro
Vidimus; accepit Fabula prisca fidem.
Nec se miratur (Cæsar) longæva Vetustas :
Quicquid Fama canit, donat Arena tibi.
The Fable's prov'd a truth, our eyes did see
The Cretan Bull sport with Pasiphaë.
What cause hath then Antiquity to glory?
We saw it done, she only heard the Story.*

Finally, here was the so-much-celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Dædalus* for the including and safe keeping of the *Minotaur*; so full of various Windings and Turnings, that when any one was got to the end thereof, it was impossible for him to come out but by the help of a Clew of thread. By this *Minotaur* (half a Man, half a Bull) the Children of the *Athenians*, paid yearly to *Minos* in way of Tribute, are said to be murdered, till he was killed by *Theseus*, Son of *Agæus* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the daughter of *Minos* falling in love, taught him a means to kill the Monster, and gave him the Clew of thread, before spoken of, to conduct him out again : the Moral or History whereof hath been shewn before. Nor must it be forgotten, that *Strabo* the Geographer, who flourished in the time of *Tiberius Cæsar*, was of *Cretan* Parents, (though born in the City of *Amasia* in the Realm of *Pontus*;) which adds unto this Island as much true Renown as any of the Fictions or Stories (be which they will) of former times.

Things most observable at the present are these that follow. 1. That it breeds no Serpents, no venomous Worm or ravenous or hurtful creature; so that their sheep graze very securely without any Shepherd. 2. If a Woman bite a Man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it: which if true, then the last part of the Privilege foregoing (of breeding no hurtful creature) must needs be false. 3. They have an Herb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth he shall feel no Hunger for that day, if *Quade* may be believed, who speaks it. 4. Here is (besides many other medicinal Herbs) that called *Dictamnus*, or *Dictamnus*, of special virtue against Poison, either by way of Prevention or present Cure, peculiar only to this Island : it affordeth great store of *Laudanum*, a Juice or Gum forced with incredible labour out of a certain Tree called *Cistus*, of which the Mountains yield abundance; good to cause Sleep, if moderately or carefully taken; but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation it brings the last Sleep upon a man, out of which he is not to be awakened till the Sound of the last Trumpet raise him.

Chief Mountains of it are, 1. *Ida*, now *Psfioriti*, situate in the midst of the Island, begirt about with many fair and pleasant Villages, sheltered by it from the violence of Wind and Sun; the Hill being so high, that from the Top hereof both sides of the Island may be easily seen. Here *Jupiter* is said to have been secretly nursed, from hence called *Idæus*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* use to shew some tracts of the ancient *Labyrinth*, being indeed no other then the Ruins of some larger Quarry : the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus* being so defaced in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to find any Ruins of it. 2. *Diste*, now called *Sethia*, in some places *Lasthi*, so high, that all the Winter long it is covered with Snow, yet all the sides thereof are garnished with Cypress-trees, a Mountain of such fame, that the whole Island sometimes had the name of *Dictæa*, the City *Dictynna*, the Promontory *Dictynneum*, and the Herb *Dictamnus*, all seeming to take name from hence. 3. *Louti*, a long

Chain of Hills, so named from the Whiteness of them; now called *di Medaria*, and by some *La Spahia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The principal of those that be, are, 1. *Alphion*, 2. *Sarfinus*, 3. *Epicidnus*, and, 4. *Dicæon*, towards the North. 5. *Populiar*, towards the East; and 6. *Idæon*, towards the West : none of them navigable, or capable of Ships of Burthen, scarce of little Barrels. But the coast is supplied by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many Creeks and Bays, some capacious Havens, and great store of Fish, among which a Kind of bearded Mullet, reckoned among the Delicacies of the ancient *Romans*. By the convenience of which Harbours, their Fish-trade, and the situation of it in the midst of the Sea, the people anciently were esteemed so good Sea-faring men, that when the people of those times did tax a man with any incredible report, they used to say, *Cretensis nescit Pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one of *Crete* to be no Sailor.

In former times there were reckoned in this Island an hundred Cities, whence it was called *Hecatompolis*; of which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Ptolomy*, for so many of their names he gives us. Those of most note were, 1. *Gnosus*, the Seat-Royal or Court of *Minos*, whence *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* had the name of *Gnosia*; in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River of that name running not far off. 2. *Cydon* or *Cydonia*, a midland City, (as the former) memorable for an excellent kind of Apples, which the *Latines* called *Poma Cydonia*, amongst them they were in great request, as they are at this day (though by the name of *Adam's Apples*) amongst the *Turks* : the most ancient of all the Cities of *Crete*, many of which were at first Colonies of this : for which reason it was called commonly *Mater urbium*. 3. *Eleuthera*, as *Ptolomy*; *Erythraea*, as the printed Copies of *Florus* corruptly call it; one of the first Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4. *Mileum*, mentioned by *Strabo*, though omitted by *Ptolomy*; the place in which *S. Paul* left *Trophimus* sick, as it is mentioned 2. *Tim.* 4. 20, which happened when the Apostle hovered over that Coast, as it is said *Acts* 27. 7, 8. &c. For that it could not be that *Mileum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Ephesus*, appeareth by his being at *Hierusalem*, *Acts* 21. 17. and other circumstances of the Story. 5. *Gortyna*, nigh to which stood the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus* : memorable also for a Reed, growing on the River *Lenus*, (near to which it stood) of which they made their strongest Arrows, by *Virgil's* *Æneid.* 11. called *Spicula Gortynia*; as for a light Garment much used by Hunters, which *Claudius* calls *Gortyniam vestem*, apparelling *Diana* the great Hunters with it. 6. *Dictamnus*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Dictynna*, as *Pliny* calls it, so named from the Hill *Dictæ*, near to which it is situate : one of the chief Cities of the North part of this Island; as 7. *Ampelus*, so named from its plenty of Vines, was upon the South. 8. *Minea*, a Port-town, (now *Altemara*) so named from *Minos*, in the East; and 9. *Coryem*, on a Promontory of the same name, in the West side of it.

But these, and almost all the rest spoken of by *Ptolomy*, being so destroyed by Time and Wars that the ruins of them are hardly visible, we must behold it in the present condition and estate thereof; divided into four parts or Provinces, according to the names and number of the four chief Cities; that is to say, 1. *Sittia*, 2. *Candia*, 3. *Retimo*, and 4. *Canca*.

The Reader will find the History of the Conquest of this Island, at the foot of the account given by *Heylin*, where I thought it was best to place it. The present State of the principal places I have intermixed, from one Mr. *Randolph*, who for some time lived in it about the year 1675, and saw all the great Cities.

In the first part, called *SITTIA*, living towards the East, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Parishes, of which six only are of the Church of *Rome*, the residue holding the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. The principal whereof

whereof are, 1. *Sittia*, or *Cytia*, conceived by some to be the *Cytaum* of *Ptolomy*; a small Town but populous, and very well fortified. The City of *Sittia*, stands at the North East part of the Island, on a Bay, the Castle stood on the North West of the Town, on a rising ground, and was built of a course Marble Stone. This Town and Castle was blown up and deserted by the *Venetians* upon the Landing of the Turks in 1645, after which they retired to *Candia*. 2. *Gierapetra*, betwixt *Sittia* and *Candia*, seated on the Sea-side, on a lofty Rock, at the bottom whereof is said to be a dangerous Whirl-pit, supposed to be the *Panormus* of *Ptolomy*. This Town lies on the South side of the Island, and has an un-secure Port. Though the Town is wall'd and has a small Castle and a Garrison of 200 Janisaries. The Houses are well built of good Stone, and the Rooms lofty though but two Stories high; besides the Garrison they can Arm 300 Turks, yet in the year 1675, a famous Privateer called *Crevellier* with 500 men surprized this Town, and carried 200 into Slavery, and got away safe when he had done. 3. *St. Macor*, the dwelling-place of one of the Bishops of the *Latines*.

2. The second part hereof, called the Territory of *Candia*, lying directly West of *Sittia*, are reckoned 465 Towns and Villages, making up amongst them 99 Parish-Churches; whereof 77 are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 only of the Church of *Rome*. Of these the principal are, 1. *Candia*, an Archbishop's See, the Metropolis or Head City of the Island, which takes name from hence. It is situate on the North coast hereof towards the *Aegean*, beautified with a safe and commodious Haven, and fortified so strongly, that it seems impregnable; affirmed by some to be the *Martium* of the Ancients; but I find no such place in *Ptolomy*, or in *Ortelius* his *Theſaurus*. The City is fair and large, built for the most part of Free-stone, with low Roofs, after the manner of *Italy*, the Streets broad and spacious, from whence a fair and pleasant plain leadeth to a place called the Cave of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. This City stands almost at an equal distance from *Canca* and *Sittia*, on a pleasant Bay, having also an artificial Haven secured from the North Wind by a *Mole* of 200 yards, with a large strong Castle at the head of it which has 20 Cannons. It is secured on the East, by a point of Land, the entrance of it not exceeding 30 yards; upon this point of Land, the Turks have built a covered way, with a very thick Wall which leads to a small Fort, with four great Guns, both strongly Arched to hinder the force of Bombes, and over against the Mouth of the Harbour, another Fort with four great Guns planted low, and eight smaller above them. The City is not repaired towards the Land, where the Walls were so shaken by the Siege, that the Turks will not be at the charge of repairing them. The Walls and out-works are 6 miles circumference. About an eighth part of the Houses are now inhabited, the rest are desolate. The number of the Inhabitants at present is thought to be 10000, and there is a Garrison of 2000 Janisaries always in it. *Randolph*. 2. *Malvisin*, 3. *Themene*, 4. *Castel Novo*, 5. *Bonifacio*, 6. *Belvedere*, 7. *Mirabello*; of which little memorable.

3. In the third part, being the Territory of *Retimo*, formerly *Rhithymna*, lying North-west of the Territory of *Candia*, are accounted 265 Towns and Villages, making up 44 Parishes, whereof 36 are *Gracians*, and but 8 of the *Latins*. The chief of which are, 1. *Retimo*, on the Shore of the Northern Sea, as *Candia* is, well fortified, and a Bishop's See; but not else observable. *Retimo* stands on a point of Land very pleasantly, having a port to the East, but almost choked up with sand, towards the Sea are no Walls. This was the first place the Turks took, saith my Author, putting all to the Sword they found in it. They have built three Forts towards the Sea, and a Wall with a dry Ditch to the Land-ward, and it is chiefly inhabited by Turks. 2. *Milopotamo*, an Episcopal See also, so called of the River

Milopotamus, on which it is seated, 3. *Agistiman*, 4. *Mandras*, 5. *Iappa*; hardly worth the naming.

4. In the fourth and last part hereof, being the Territory of *Canca*, taking up all the West of the Island, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, distributed into 47 Parishes; of which 33 are of the *Greek* Church and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Those of most note are 1. *Canca*, built by a Colony or Plantation of *Venetian* Gentlemen, on the North coast also, supposed to stand in the same place where once *Cydon* did; second to none but *Candia* for Wealth and Beauty, but far before it for the commodiousness of the Port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capable of more than a thousand good Gallies at a time; and therefore strongly fortified with two Cittadels or Castles, on each side of the Haven one, as the Door and Entrance of the Country. *Canca* is seated in a fine plain about 3 miles from the bottom of the Bay of *Suda*; having a very fair safe Harbour, which the Turks have much fortified. The Houses are well built, and not much Damnified by the War. And the Walls are in good repair, and have a dry Dike thirty yards broad, and six deep about them, and the Walls are about thirty foot high, and have the Earth on the inside 10 foot higher then they are. The City is about three miles in circumference, and much better inhabited than *Candia*, and better Traded. *Randolph*, who saw this Island and lived in it. 2. *Chisamo*, in Latin called *Cisamus*, old and decayed, the Walls thereof only holding good against the Ruines of time; situate in a low Moorish place towards the *Aegean*. 3. *Selino*, built upon a Hill on the Sea-side, opposite to *Chisamo*. 4. *Sfachia*, or *Spachia*, situate at the foot of the Mountains of old called *Leuci*, now *della Spachia*, from this Town: unwall'd, but fortified with a Castle; built for a place of Refuge against the Incursions of such Pirates as annoyed the Coasts, in which the Governour for this part hath his chief Abode. By which account it will appear that in the whole Island are no more than 1044 Towns and Villages, and 207 Parish-Churches; of which there be but 48 which are accounted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the Residue, 159 in number, retaining their Communion with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the Story of this Island, we can ascend as high as the times of *Saturn*, for his Antiquity affirmed to be the Son of *Uranus* and *Vesta*, or of Heaven and Earth; who bettered favoured by his Mother obtained the Kingdom of *Crete*, his elder Brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon Wars arising betwixt the Brethren, it was ordered thus, That *Saturn* for his own Life should enjoy the Kingdom, which after his decease should return to the *Titans*: and for the performance of this Contract, the Sons of *Saturn* were to be strangled as soon as born. But *Cybele* the Wife of *Saturn* unawares to her Husband, preserved first *Jupiter*, and after other of her Sons; which coming to the knowledge of *Titan* and his Sons, they made War against *Saturn*, but in conclusion were subdued by the Aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring against the Gods, *Saturn* and *Jupiter* his Son being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquished, a new War arose betwixt *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, occasioned only (as many unnatural Wars since these times have been) by Fears and Jealousies: which ending at the last in the Flight of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* became sole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death, and dying was interred at *Gnossus*, with this Inscription or Epitaph in old *Greek* Letters, ὁ Ζεὺς τοῦ Κρήνου, that is to say *Jupiter the Son of Saturn*. After his death he was worshipped by the blind Gentiles as the chief of their Gods, and honoured frequently with the Title of Πατὴρ ἀνθρώπων τε θεῶν τε the Father both of Gods and Men: though most incongruously and absurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thousands living in and before the times of *Saturn*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed; he being dead, *Minos*, begotten by him on *Europa*, succeeded here, who, wisely taking the advantage which the convenient

venient situation of the Island gave him, made himself Master of the Seas, and afterwards enlarged his Dominions by the Conquest of the *Megarenses* and *Athenians*, upon which last he imposed, amongst other hard Conditions, a Tribute of seven Male Children yearly to be kept as Hostages; which determined after three years by the Valour and good Fortune of *Theseus*. But *Minos* being slain in *Sicily*; and his Posterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer admit of Kings, but governed themselves after the manner of a Common-wealth or Free State: The Laws and Ordinances whereof, first devised by *Minos*, were of such esteem that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large described by *Aristotle* in the 2. Book of his *Politicks*, ch. 8. Under the Government it continued till the *Romans*, having taken in all the rest of *Greece*, picked a Quarrel with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Mithridates* in his War against them; yet *Florus* states the matter rightly, affirming that the War was undertaken on no other ground, but *sola nobilem Insulam vincendi cupiditate*, out of a covetous desire only of subduing such a wealthy Island. And to this War they went with so proud a Confidence, that *M. Anthony*, who commanded in it, carried more Chains with him to bring home his Prisoners than Arms to conquer them. An Insolence which he paid right dear for, his Navy being vanquished by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his slain Souldiers hanged upon the Masts, and himself perishing in the Action by a fit of Sickness. *Metellus*, who succeeded him in that charge, went on more successfully, first taking *Gnassus*, *Eleuthera*, or (*Erythraea*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydon*, their principal Cities, and not long after all the Island; using the vanquished Islanders with such Inhumanity, that most of them poisoned themselves to avoid his Cruelty: rewarded with no other Honour for so great a Victory, than that he got the fir-name of *Creticus*; his Triumph being denied by the Faction of *Pompey*, against whose will he had put himself upon that Service. This being added to the *Roman Empire*, it was after united unto *Cyrenaica* by *Augustus Caesar*, both making up one Province only, governed by a Proconsul till the death of *Nero*; afterwards separated from it, but the time I find not. During the Reign of *Constantine*, in 36 years together there fell no Rain, so that this Island was in a manner wholly desolated. But *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*, having obtained Rain for it by her prayers to God, it was again new peopled by several Colonies brought out of *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoining. By *Constantine* made a Province of the Diocesis of *Macedonia*, it continued a Member of the Eastern Empire till the time of *Michael Balbus*, when it was subdued by the *Sarazens* from them recovered by the more fortunate conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, who came unto the Empire, Anno 963. In the division of the Spoil amongst the *Latins*, it was first given to *Boniface* Marquis of *Montferrat*, by him surrendered willingly to the State of *Venice*, in 1194, or as others in 1294, who had a mind to be possessed of all the Islands of that Empire: he being recompenced with the Kingdom of *Thessaly*, the fair and wealthy City of *Thessalonica*, and many Towns and Territories in *Peloponnesus*. Under that State it still continueth, in vain attempted by *Selimus* the second in the year 1571, at what time he invaded and conquered *Cyprus*; and gallantly defended for this year last past against all the Forces of *Ibrahim* the late Grand Seignior. What the Success of this War will be, we shall see hereafter.

For the Defence hereof against the Insurrections of the Inhabitants, who did at first ill brook the *Venetian* Government, there are some standing Forces kept in constant pay; besides such as are maintain'd in several Garrisons, the City of *Canca* having in it no fewer than six Companies of Soldiers, *Candia* 2000 Soldiers, and the lesser Cities proportionably: over which there is set so strong a Guard, that a Natural *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the pre-

servation of their Interest in it from foreign Power, they have furnished the Island with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the Shores; and having exceedingly fortified the Haven of *Suda* with two strong Castles, this Haven being capable of more than 1000 Vessels, and therefore meritoriously reputed the Door and entry into the Country. It is reported that the King of *Spain*, *Philip* the second, did offer unto the *Venetians* for this Haven more than enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniards* seemed only to intend the Retreat and relief of his own Navy when he should undertake any Expedition against the Turk; yet the Wise *Venetians* saw, that by this Haven he might at all times awe, and when he listed surprize, the whole Country. The *Venetians* purchased this Island the 12th of *April* 1294, of *Boniface* of *Montferrat*, but the Inhabitants refusing this Sale, put the *Venetians* to the trouble of a Conquest; whereupon the Island was divided between the Noble *Venetians* or Chavalry, the Noble Cantors or Colony which were the *Venetian* Infantry, and the *Greeks* or Natives who did not Rebel, but took part with the *Venetians*. The first two are of the *Latin* Church and speak *Italian*, the third are of the *Greek* Language and Religion. In the year 1645, the Turks began a furious War upon this Island, for having only secured a *Mulatta*-Fleet, which had beaten and taken a Rich Eunuch, who was going to *Egypt* with his Wealth, the year before in *April*. This Turkish-Fleet which consisted of 81 Gallies, one Gallion, 12 Turkish and 10 English and Dutch Ships, and 300 Saiks, having on Board 7000 Janisaries, 14000 Spahees, 50000 Timariots, and 3000 Pioniers set Sail for *Candia*, and Landed the 23th of *June* at *Gogna* about 18 miles from *Canca*, and overthrew the few Christians that afterwards opposed them, the *Venetians* who expected no War, being in no capacity to oppose them: they took *Canca* the second City of the Island, with much slaughter of the Christians the first year. The year following they attack'd *Retimo*, the *Venetians* having no success at Sea in 1647. The Turkish Fleet Landed 40000 Fighting Men more, the *Venetian* Fleet looking on, tho' equal in number, and better appointed; and thereupon they began the Siege of *Candia*, the principal City, but were forced to rise with great loss. In 1650, they began another Siege, from hence forward the War was managed with great variety, the Turks being generally the loofers, though they could never be expell'd out of the Island, till at last in the year 1669, the 27th of *September* this City was surrendered into the hands of the the Prince Visier, when but five of the Inhabitants staid behind, and a few Decrepit Jews and Greeks to the number of 30: yet was the taking this City the best news *Mahomet* the 4th ever heard. These 30 Acres of Ground having cost him an inestimable expence of blood and Treasure. And in all appearance having laid the Foundation of the Ruin and utter Subversion of this Empire, which has never Thriven since this War. When the Turks entred this Island, there were above a Million of Souls in it, but they are now not thought to exceed 80000, of which not above 30000 are Turks. And all the Churches which belonged to the *Latins* are now wall'd up and no Christian Service allowed but the *Greek*. In the beginning of this year 1688, there was a strong report that the *Venetians* had recovered this Island, and that it was sold them by the Turkish Garrisons, which though contradicted for the present, yet it is certain the Turkish affairs are here in a very low condition, and they might easily be driven out, if the *Venetians* would turn their Arms against them, the Candiors being well disposed to shake off the Turkish Yoke, and joyn with their old Masters against the Turks, though they are better Treated than any other people who are subject to the Port.

II. The other Islands of this Sea, as of lesser note, will be pass'd over in few words. The first of which is called *Claude*, mentioned *Acts* 27. 16. situate on the South west of *Crete*, by *Mela* called *Caudon*; where *Seneca* Plays

time was a Town or City named *Gaudos*, now called *Goza*, with the Island. 2. *Lia*, now *Standia*, a very small Island, and of little note. 3. *Leton*, on the South-east of *Crete*, now called *Christina*. And 4. *Ægilia*, or *Ægiali*, by *Pliny* *Ægila*, more in the Sea towards *Peloponnesus*; now called *Ceccrigo* by *Sophianus*. Of which and others of less note (if less may be) there is no more to be said, but that they have always followed the Fortunes of *Crete*, on which they seem to have their principal Dependence.

10. The Islands of the *IONIAN* Sea.

THE *IONIAN* Sea is so called either from *Ionius*, the Son of *Dyrrhachius*, who *Hercules* having ignorantly killed threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it to preserve his memory, as *Dydymus* is of opinion, or from *Ionis* a Region in the Extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*; or from *Io*, the Daughter of *Inachus*, as *Lycophron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all that part of the *Mediterranean* which lyeth from the *Ægean* or *Cretan* Seas unto the *Adriatick* from which it is parted about *Epidamnus*, (otherwise called *Dyrrhachium*, now *Durazzo* as is said by *Ptolomy*; or rather at the shooting out of the *Acroceraunian* Hills, as is affirmed by *Pliny* and other Writers; and so along the shores of the two *Calabrias* to the Isle of *Sicily*. Chief Isles whereof which pass in the account of *Greece* (for of those lying on the Coast of *Italy* we have spoken elsewhere) are, 1. the *Strophades*, 2. *Zacynthus*, 3. the *Echinades*, 4. *Cephalania*, 5. *Corcyra*, and 6. *Ithaca*.

1. The *Strophades* are two small Islands, now called *Strivali*, lying against *Messene* in *Peloponnesus*; famous for nothing but the *Harpyes*, ravenous Birds, affirmed to have the faces of Women, but the Talons of Vultures, sent by the offended Gods (as the Fable goeth) for the punishment of *Phineas* King of *Arcadia*, who had put out the Eyes of his Sons by a former Wife at the instigation of their Stepdame: For which he was so plagued by these *Harpyes*, that he could set no Meat on his Table wheresoever he was, but these ravenous creatures first devoured it, and then bewrayed the Dishes in which it was. Much pitied by the *Argonauts*, whom he had courteously entertained, they sent *Zethes* and *Calais*, the winged Issue of *Boreas* and *Orithya*, who drave them thence, and having pursued them to those Islands, turned back again: whence the name of *Strophades*. Under which Fable was contained the sad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by Flatterers, Informers, and false Accusers, by whom their name and Government was made distastful; till by good Council they had purged their Courts of such ugly Monsters: concerning which *Alphonfus* King of *Naples* was used to say, that these *Harpyes* had left the *Strophades* and dwelt at *Rome*. They are inhabited only by some few *Greek* Friars: and in one of them there is a Spring of Fresh Water, which hath his Fountain in *Peloponnesus*, and passing under the Sea riseth here. The *Greek* Priests are called *Calories*, quasi *καλοὶ ἱερεῖς boni Sacerdotes*; about 30 in number. They wear long Hair, never eat Flesh, and but seldom Fish; feeding usually on Herbs, Olives, Oyl, and the like. They never go out of the Islands, neither do they on any occasion permit Women to come amongst them. They all labour for their Sustenance, some in Tillage, some in Vineyards, some in Fishing; so that among very many of them, three or four only can read. But of these somewhat hath been said elsewhere already.

2. *Zacynthus*, or *Zant*, is 60 miles in compass, and distant from *Peloponnesus* 20 miles; so called of *Zacynthus*, Son to *Dardanius*. The Country is wonderfully stored with Oyl, Wines and Currants: of which last they made yearly 150000 Zecchines for their own Coffers and 48000 Dollars which they pay for Custom to the Seignoury of *Venice*. They were a very poor people when the English used to Traffick there first; but now

they grow rich and proud. At our Merchants first frequenting the Country, they much marvelled to what end they bought so many Currants: and demanded whether they used to dye Cloaths or fat Hogs with them, for so they themselves did: but now they have learned a more profitable use of them. Here are also very good Salt-pits, Fresh-water plenty, but little or no Wood, and less Corn: their ground being Husbanded, as the case stands with them, to their better advantage; but so that many times they are ready to starve, if either the Wind or the Sea prove cross unto them, and hinder them from fetching their Provisions both of Flesh and Corn out of *Peloponnesus*, in which respect they are fain to hold fair Quarter with the Turks; considering how easie it is for him to distress them for want of Victual. The Island is much troubled with Earthquakes, commonly once a week; in regard whereof they build their Houses very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Priests are to ring the Bells, to stir the people to Prayers. They have a Custom here at Weddings to invite many young men, whom they call *Compeers*, of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring: which done, it is accounted as detestable a Sin as Incest for them to accompany her in any carnal kind: and therefore they chuse such to be their *Compeers* who have formerly been suspected of too much Familiarity with her.

The Island is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a spiteful and vindictive nature, not to be reconciled, if angred. It containeth in it 48 Towns and Villages, the chief whereof, which passeth by the name of a City, is called also *Zant*, stretched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a mountain, but in breadth not answerable; beautified with a fair and convenient Haven opening towards *Greece*, safe from the danger of Pirates, though not of Winds; capable of great fleets of shipping both for bulk and number, and so frequented from all parts, that he who hath a mind to go out of it need not stay for a passage. Yet, notwithstanding this great Concourse and resort of Strangers, the Town is rather rich than well-built or beautiful; the Streets hereof being uneven and rugged, and the Buildings by reason of the often Earthquakes, very low. On the East side of it, on a round steep Mountain, standeth a very strong Castle, a little City of it self, well garrisoned; impreguably fortified, and of a very difficult Entrance: which commandeth not the City and Harbour only, but a great part of the Sea adjoyning. Upon the Wall thereof continually stands a Watchman to descry what Shipping is at hand, and hangeth out as many Flags as he discovereth Vessels. And over the Door of the Town-Hall (the better to instruct the Magistrates in their publick Duty) it is said these Verses are inscribed:

Hic locus 1. odit, 2. amat, 3. punit, 4. conservat,
5. honorat,
1. Nequitiam, 2. Pacem, 3. Crimina, 4. Jura,
5. Probos.

Thus Englished by *George Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*,

This place doth 1. hate, 2. love, 3. punish, 4. keep,
5. requite,
1. Voluptuous Riot, 2. Peace, 3. Crimes, 4. Laws, 5. the Upright.

In matter of Religion, the people, being generally *Greeks* both in Birth and Language, are for the most part of that Church also; but some adhere unto the *Latine*, each party having their own Bishop: of which the *Greek* Bishop hath his Cathedral in the Church of Saint *Nicolas*, near unto the Haven which it giveth name to, and therein a Monallery of *Caloires*, or Monks of *Basil*; the *Latin* Bishop hath his Residence and Cathedral within the Castle, and therein a Convent of *Franciscans*. The Jews have in this Town their Synagogue also;

also: but there are not many of them, if not lately en-
created. In Civil matters they are subject to the State
of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whom they call the
Provedore) having his Residence in the Castle, assisted by
a Chancellour and two Counsellors, (all Gentlemen of
Venice) whom they change every third year. The For-
tunes of this Island in former times, and by what means
it fell to the *Venetians*, we shall shew anon. Mr. *Wheler*
tells us, this Island lies in 36. 30. Latitude, 30 miles from
the *Morcia* to the West, it is little but very fruitful and
pleasant. The Town and Island are very populous. The
People of this Isle are much Latinized in their Doctrine,
and yet hath the Church of *Rome* as much as ever. The
Currants of this Island grow not on Buttes as we sup-
pose, but on Vines, and are a small black Grape with
out Stones. They have this Name from *Corinth*, where
they first grew, though there are none now. They are
gathered in *August*, and spread thin on the Ground till
they are Dry. The rest of his Account, and his Map
of the Island, may be found page the 35th.

3. The *Echinades* are certain little Islands, or rather
great Rocks, now called *Curzolari*, famous for nothing
but the great Battle of *Lepanto*, fought nigh them betwixt
the *Venetians* and the *Turks*; the *Turks* having in their
Navy 207 sail of Ships, the *Venetians* and their Confede-
rates but 145 of all sorts. But it pleased God to give
the Victory to the weakest: the Issue of it being such, that
the *Turks* lost 29000 men who were killed in the Fight,
39000 more which were taken Prisoners 140 of their
Gallies, 400 pieces of Ordnance, and 200 Christian Cap-
tives which were then redeemed: the Christians buying
this great Victory with the death of 7656 men or there-
abouts; too great a price, could it have been purchased
with a less. A Victory obtained not far from the point
of *Aetium*, wherein *Augustus* overcame the Navy of
Marcus Antonius, and thereby got the Empire to himself
alone, of which before he was but Joint-tenant with his
Adversary. So that this place seems to be marked out
for a Stage of eminent Actions; and that this latter Na-
val fight was but the second part of the first.

But to return unto these Islands. They stand just a-
gainst the Mouth of the River *Achelous*; of which thus
the Poet,

Turbidas obsequi Achelous Echinadas exit.

Fierce *Achelous* with the Sea is mixt,
Where the *Echinades* (great Rocks) are fixt.

These Islands are in number five, feigned by the Poets
to be so many *Naiades* or Sea Nymphs, whom *Achelous*
the River-God upon some displeasure metamorphosed
into these Rocky Islands. But the truth is, that they
were caused by the Dirt and Mud which this River car-
ried with it into the Sea, where at last is settled to firm
Ground. Of which himself saith thus in *Ovid*,

Fluctus nostrique marisque
Continuum deducit humum, partemque revellit,
In totidem mediis quot cernis *Echinadas* undis.

The fury of the Sea-waves and mine own
Continual heaps of Mud and Earth drew down,
Which, parted by the inter-running Seas,
Made, as thou seest, these five *Echinades*.

5. *Cephalenia*, the most populous Island of this Sea,
is situate over against *Acarnania*, part of the Province
of *Epirus*; having on the South east *Zant*, on the North-
west *Corcyra* or *Corfu*; in length containing 80 miles, 40
in breadth, the whole compais being reckoned at 160.
Once called *Tetrapolis*, from the number of four Cities in
it; but three of them were decayed in the time of *Prolo-
my*, who takes notice of no more but one, and that of the
same name with the Island. It is woody and mountain-

ous in most places, but the *Macedonians* intermixt with
Valleys and the Woods with Campan - plentiful in
Wheat, Honey, Currants, Maron, Oyl incompu-
ble, though no long living, Murelets, as also in
Cheese, Wool, Turkeys, and Powder for the Dying of
Scarlets. So destitute of Water, as having no River,
and not many Fountains, that when their Corn would
drink, they gape both morning and evening, to receive
the Dew distilling intently from the Clouds.

The People are for the most part *Greeks*; some few
Italians, natives of the Seignoury of *Io*, being in-
termixt: the whole number of the Inhabitants computed
at 6000 Families, the number of the Towns and Villages
to 200 or thereabouts. The principal whereof are,
1. *Cephalenia*, now *Cetadonia*, fortified with good Walls
and a very strong Castle. 2. *L. A. A. A.*, a Haven-Town,
distant six miles from *Cephalonia*: the Port whereof is ca-
pable of a sufficient Navy. 3. *S. I.*, another Port-Town
also, lying towards the South. Mr. *Wheler* page 35, has
given a short account of this Island, *Cetadonia* saith it is
situate in 37. 38. Latitude, and 46. Longitude, and is
170 miles in Circuit; that it was sold by *Robert Prince*
of *Taranto* to the State of *Venice* in the year 1350, and
that it was sack'd by the *Turks* in the year 1571.

As for the Fortunes of this Island, it was first called
Mcclonia, after *Teleboe*: and being known by that name
was made subject to *Thebes*, by the Valour and good
Conduct of *Amphitryo*, the *Theban* General, by whom
Pericles, the King hereof was slain in Battle. During
which War, and the stay of *Amphitryo* in this Island, it
happened that *Cephalus*, a noble *Athenian*, having by
mis-adventure killed his Wife *Procris* with an Arrow
which he shot at a Deer, not daring to abide in his own
Country, fled unto *Amphitryo* his old Friend, then new-
ly victorious over the *Teleboians*; who pitying his case,
made him the Governour of this Island, since, from his
name, called *Cephalenia*. Having continued for some
time in the power of the *Thebans*, it passed, together
with *Zant* and some other Islands, into the hands of the
Macedonians; from whom, in the declining of their Af-
fairs, the *Acheans* got the Isle of *Zant*, and the *Aetolians*
Cephalenia. But long they had not held them when the
Romans began to look towards *Greece*, who under co-
lour of setting the Continent at liberty, made themselves
Masters of both the Islands, that so they might at leisure
possess the whole, as in fine they did. In the Division
of the Empire they fell, as parts of *Greece* to the *Constan-
tinopolitans*; and on the taking of that City by the western
Christians, they fell, with almost all the rest of the Islands,
to the State of *Venice*, the Governours whereof, retain-
ing *Corfu* and some other of the most importance in the
hands of the Seignior, permitted these (as many other
of less note) unto private Adventurers. At the con-
clusion of the Peace betwixt *Alphonse* the Great and the
State of *Venice*, these two, with *Neritos*, or *Leucas*,
(spoken of in *Epirus*) were seized on by that Tyrant in
despight of that Treaty or Conclusion, as belonging un-
to private persons, not to the Republick: but were re-
covered afterwards by the *Venetians* in the Reign of
Baptist the second, in the name of the State, and as
parts thereof are still governed and defended by them.
Coronelli acquaints us that in the year 1224, this Island
was out of Pure Generosity given to the State of *Venice*
by one *Gains* who was Lord of it. That in 1479, it was
Ravish'd from a Petty Prince who then had it by an
Ottoman Fleet. That in 1499, the Spanish and Venetian
Fleets joyned in the Conquest of it, and took the prin-
cipal Fort in it by *Escalado*, their Batteries making small
Impressions on its Walls. The principal Fortress now
in it is *Daffo*, built by the *Venetians* in the year 1595,
in a time of War, towards the South-West part of the
Island.

5. *Corcyra*, (now *Corfu*) more anciently was called
Phacaria; but took this latter name from a Nymph so
called, whom *Neptune* is reported to have here de-
flowered.

flowered. It is situate over against *Epirus*, from thence 12 miles distant, stretched out from East to West in the form of a Bow, the length thereof being 54 miles, 24 the breadth; and so it is the biggest of these Seas. Commodiously seated for the Trade and Estate of *Venice*, as the Centre of their Dominion and Command by Sea.

The Southern parts hereof are mountainous and defective in Water, much subject to be blasted with Southernly Winds; and therefore they sow little Corn, and plant less Fruits. The Northern parts are level and delightful, adorned with whole Groves of Limons, Oranges, Fig-trees, Olives, and Pomegranates; enriched with plenty of Grain, abundance of Wines, great store of Oyl and Olives, and most excellent Honey; blest with a very temperate and healthful Air, made odoriferous by most pleasant and sweet-smelling Fruits, which grow most plentifully in each part hereof. *Alcinous*, who so courteously entertained *Ulysses* after his Shipwreck, was once King of this Island; whose Gardens, answerable to the natural Delights and Sweetness of it, are so much celebrated by the Poets. One of which thus:

*Quid bisera Alcinoi referam Pomaria, vosque
Qui nunquam vacui prodistis in athera Rami?*

Which may be *Englisht* in these words.

Why should I name *Alcinous* fertile Ground,
And Trees which never without Fruit are found?

Towns of most note and strength herein are, 1. *Pagionoli*, 2. *Castello S. Angelo*, of good esteem in respect of many others, but far short of 3. *Corfu*, the chief and strongest of the Island, which the Turks have found by their frequent Repulses to be impregnable. For it is situate at the foot of a Mountain, on the top of which are built two inaccessible Fortresses, as being strongly fenced with a natural Rock; the one called *the old Fortress*, and the other *the New*: justly esteemed the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whose Trade and Power would soon decay should these Forts be lost. For which cause the two Governours (for each Fort hath one) are sworn before the State of *Venice*, never to hold Intelligence with one another by word or writing; lest by the Treachery of the one, the other might be wrought also from his Faith and Duty. Neither is their Command here for more than two years; their Commission then terminating, and new Successors being sent them. The Town is inhabited for the most part by *Grecians*, as is all the residue of the Island; beautified with one of the most commodious Havens in all the *Adriatick*, and the Residence of an Archbishop. A Town of such publick Concernment, in regard of the Strength and Situation, that it is accounted of as the Key of *Venice*, and one of the strongest Bulwarks of Christendom against the Encroachment of the Turks. The Story of it since dismembred from the Eastern Empire, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, we have had before. *Coronelli* affirms this Island to be 70 miles from East to West, and 20 broad, and in circuit 120. It lies from the Cape of *Otranto* 60 miles from *Venice*, 700 from *Epirus*; at one end 1 mile, at the other 20; Latitude 31.41. Longitude 44.45. Its Principal Town is seated on the side next *Epirus* in the middle of the Island. It was first subject to the Kings of *Naples*, from whom it was purchased by the *Venetians* in the year 1322, and entered upon the 9th of June 1327, others place it the 20th of May 1386. In the year 1401, they obtained a confirmation from *Ladislaus* King of *Naples* for a good Sum of Money. In the year 1537, *Barberousse* a Turk besieged the principal City with an Army of 25000 Turks, and 30 pieces of Canon, but he was repulsed with great loss and shame. Thus far he. Our Learned Country Man Mr. *Wheler* saith,

the Principal City about 100 years since, was nothing but an old Castle, but it is now a large City, and well fortified with Works on the South. It would be almost impregnable were it not for a Rock that stands to the West, and commands the next Fort, and great part of the Town. Mr. *Wheler* has given a very large account of this Island which begins page 29. I am forced to cite the page, because there is no Index to that excellent discourse which abates very much of its value and use.

6. *Ithaca*, now called *Val de Compare*, lieth on the North-east of *Cephalenia*, being in compass fifty miles: most famous for the Birth of *Ulysses*, the Son of *Laertes*, of which thus the Poet;

*Effugimus Scopulos Ithacæ Laertia Regna,
Et terram altricem savi exsecramur Ulyssis.*

From the *Ithacan* Rocks *Laertes* Realm we fled,
And curs'd the Land which dire *Ulysses* bred.

It was also called *Dulichium*, or else there was some other Island of that name, not far from *Ithaca* whereof *Ulysses* was also King, who is hence called *Dulichius Heros* among the Poets: and in this Taunt of *Ajax* to him, *Dulichius vertex* signifieth the Head of *Ulysses*.

*Sed neque Dulichius sub Achilles casside, Vertex
Pondera tanta jerat.*

Achilles Helm's too great a weight, I trow,
For weak *Ulysses* head to undergo.

But as weak a man as *Ajax* thought him, he was the Master-Wit of *Greece* for the times he lived in, and one that did as good Service in the War of *Troy* as the best Sword-man of them all. A War to which he went somewhat unwillingly, as fearing the sad Consequences and events thereof; insomuch that he feigned himself mad, ploughing the Shore, and sowing Salt instead of Corn. But *Palamedes*, to make trial whether this was real, or but counterfeit only, cast young *Telemachus*, the Son of *Ulysses*, before the Plough, which he observing, either drove the Plough besides him, or lifted it over him, Discovered by this means, and engaging with the rest in the *Trojan* War, he found out the Design of *Thetis*, and brought *Achilles* to it also: in the course whereof by his Wit and Courage, he did very good Service; associated with *Diomedes* in the action against *Rhesus* King of *Thrace*, and with *Palamedes* in foraging the Country for Provisions. By his Policy was the *Palladium* stoln out of *Troy*, and consequently the City taken and destroyed, whose Fate depended on the preservation of that fatal Relick. After the ending of the War, which held out ten years, he was withheld from *Ithaca* ten years longer by Winds and Tempests and the Displeasure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*: in which he saved himself from the Inchantments of the *Sirens*, the Allurements of *Circe*, the Cruelty of *Polyphemus*, and after many Dangers came home in safety. A man of so compleat a Vertue, that *Homer* maketh him the Pattern of a Temperate and Prudent man in the Books called *Odysses*, (by his name, as the *Greeks* pronounce it;) as he doth *Achilles*, in his *Iliads*, of a compleat and perfect Soldier.

The Country is generally very rocky and barren, exceeding plenty of Goats, but no Hares live in it; inhabited for the most part by Pirates and Exiles, men banished out of civil Society, and willingly acknowledging no Superior over them; but subject, if to any, to the State of *Venice*, which hitherto hath maintained these Islands against the Turks, though many times attempted by them in the most prosperous times of their Arms and Victories. For the *Venetians* being gratified at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, with almost

most all the Islands of the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, (as being a People strong in Shipping, and so most able to preserve the Possession of them) some of the greatest and most considerable, either for their Riches or Commodiousness of Situation, were furnished with convenient Garrisons in the name of the State. The rest they did bestow on the better sort of Citizens, to be defended and made good at their own Cost and Charges; who accordingly possessed themselves of one, two or more of them, as were of ability to set out their Gallies for the keeping of them; the Seignoury having nevertheless a Care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals; whereby they did not only preserve those Seas from the *Genova* Pirates, but for a long time defended all their Islands also, as well against the *Greeks* as the *Turkish* Emperors. But all the Isles of the *Ægean* being lost to the Turk, except *Cythera* and *Tenos* on the *European*, and *Carpathos* or *Scarpanto* on the *Asian* side; they have now only *Crete* with the Isles adjoining, and those of the *Ionian* Sea under their Command, and these (but specially the Isle *Crete*) endangered at the present by the *Turkish* Tyrant. And after taken from them in 1669. The Learned Dr. *Edward Brown*, having Travailed over a great part of *Greece*, makes this general remark upon it. *The Græcian Countries which I passed are extremely altered from that State whereof we read in Ancient History; as having suffered spoiling Incursions from many Nations, and a fatal Conquest by the Turks; who utterly destroyed many Towns and Famous places, and changed the Names of most, not leaving the old Appellations to the Rivers which most lastingly maintain their Ancient Names. I passed most of the Great Rivers of Macedonia, the Axios, Erigonus, and Aliarmon, which have Names of no affinity to them. The River Peneus, so famous in the Old Poets, hath lost its Name with Apidanus, Enipius, and others that run into it. The Turks call Larissa, Jeni-Sahar, and Thessaly Comenolitari.*

Thus having taken a view of the several Provinces and Isles which belong to *Greece*, according to the ancient and present state of each particular: let us next take a view of the *Græcian* Emperors, who have had here their principal Residence, and possessed the whole (though for a while their Empire was extended over all the East) as they here follow in this ensuing Catalogue of

The *CONSTANTINOPOLITAN*,
GRÆCIAN, or Eastern Emperors.

A. Ch.

- 331 1. *Constantine*, surnamed the Great, having reigned twelve years in *Rome*, translated his Imperial Seat to *Constantinople*, which himself had founded.
- 341 2. *Constantius*, the second Son of *Constantine*, in the Division of the Empire, had for his Partage *Thrace*, *Constantinople*, and all the Provinces of the East. After the Death of his two Brethren he remained sole Emperor, but resided for the most part in the East; a great Patron of the *Arians*, and as great a Persecutor of the Orthodox Christians.
- 366 3. *Julian*, surnamed the Apostate, Son of *Constantius*, the Brother of *Constantine* the Great, at first a Christian, afterwards a professed Enemy of the Gospel: fortunate in his Wars against the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Transalpine* Nations, whilst he was a Christian; prodigiously slain in the *Persian* War, when become a Persecutor.
- 368 4. *Jovian*, or *Jovinian*, chosen by the Army, a Religious Prince, made Peace with the *Persian*, and settled the Affairs of the Christian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, one

of mean birth, but great Abilitie in War was elected Emperor.

- 369 5. *Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made Partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Constantinople* and the East, *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome* and the Western parts. A great Patron of the *Arian* Faction, and the first who brought in the *Goths* on this side of the *Danubius*, whom he placed in the desert parts of *Thrace*, to the Destruction of the Empire, and himself to Boot.
- 382 6. *Gratian*, the eldest Son of *Valentinian*, succeeded his Father in the West, and his Uncle *Valens* in the East, after whose death he left *Italy* and the West to *Valentinian* his younger Brother. Distressed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodosius* Partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherously murdered by *Andragathius*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.
- 383 7. *Theodosius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the second, on the Traitor *Eugenius*. He vanquished the *Goths*, utterly suppressed the Pagan Superstitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* itself, and strengthened the Church of Christ with good Laws and Ordinances.
- 399 8. *Arcadius*, the eldest Son of *Theodosius*, succeeded his Father in the East, as his Brother *Honorius* did in the West: the *Roman* Empire after this last Division of it being so distracted and torn in pieces, that it was never since united.
- 412 9. *Theodosius II.* Son of *Arcadius*; made Peace with the *Goths*, whom he employed against the *Huns* and *Persians*; his more dangerous Enemies, and caused the *Ephefine* Council to be called against *Nestorius*.
- 454 10. *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodosius*, succeeded his Master, and Married with *Pulcheria* his Masters Sister. He called the Council of *Chalcedon* against *Dioscorus*.
- 461 11. *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joyned consent of the Senate and Soldiery, sitting in the Council of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.
- 478 12. *Zeno*, the Son-in-Law and Lieutenant of *Leo*, sent *Theodorick* and the *Goths* into *Italy* against *Odoacer*. A Tyrant and a great Drinker: in one of his Drunken Fits buried quick by his Empress. In his time *Constantinople* was almost wholly destroyed by Fire; in which perished, amongst other things, 120000 Volumes of good Manuscripts.
- 497 13. *Anastasius*, a mean Officer of the Court, by the power and favour of the Empress created Emperor; a great Patron of *Eunuchs*, yet fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Constantinople*, besieged by the *Scythians*, was likely to have fallen into great Distress, if *Proclus*, a famous Mathematician, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.
- 521 14. *Justin*, the Son of a *Thracian* Shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anastasius*; a Catholick Prince, and Patron of the Orthodox Clergy, whom he called from Banishment.
- 528 15. *Justinian*, the Siller's Son of *Justin*, with whom he was at first Consort in the Empire, recovered *Asiatick* from the *Vandals* by *Belisarius*, and *Italy* from the *Goths* by *Narses*: and finally reduced the Laws of *Rome* into form and method.

- 566 16. *Justin II.* Nephew of *Justinian*, instituted the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, and lost a great part of *Italy* to the *Lombards*. Unable of himself to oppose the *Persian*, he chose
- 577 17. *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders, to be Consort with him, who afterwards succeeded in the sole Command.
- 584 18. *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian* born, fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Mesopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*, by whom at his return he was married to *Constantina* his Daughter, and declared his Successor. Refusing to ransom some of his Soldiers, taken Prisoners by *Cajanus* King of the *Avars*, he lost the Affections of his Army.
- 604 19. *Phocas*, a common Soldier, in a military Tumult chosen Emperor, murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, with his Wife and Children, and made Pope *Boniface* Supreme Bishop or Head of the Church: slain in a popular Tumult by the Common people for his Lusts and Cruelties.
- 611 20. *Heraclius*, a Nobleman of *Constantinople*, chosen by the general consent, repaired the Ruines of the Empire, vanquished the *Persians*, recovered *Hierusalem* out of their hands, and brought home the Cross unto *Constantinople* in triumphant manner; whence the Feast called *Exaltatio Crucis*, September 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to disperse his Dotages.
- 641 21. *Constans*, or *Constantine II.* Son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places. Picking a Quarrel with the *Romans*, he defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choicest Ornaments which the *Goths* and other barbarous people had left; and ransacking the Isle of *Sicily*, was there slain by the Women.
- 670 22. *Constantinus III.* Son of the former *Constantine*, from his long or early Beard surnamed *Pogonatus*, repulsed the *Saracens* from *Constantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from passing over the *Danow*.
- 687 23. *Justinian II.* Son of *Constantine* the 3. subdued *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, and some part of *Persia*, forcing the *Saracens* to sue for Peace, and become his Tributaries. Against whom *Leontius* on the one side, and *Abdimarus*, on the other, severally taking Arms; were declared Emperors. *Justinian*, taken by *Leontius*, hath his Nose cut off, and his person committed to Custody: but making an Escape, by means of *Trebellein* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial Dignity; and being too violent in the pursuit of his Revenge, was finally murdered at the Altar by the command of
- 713 24. *Philippus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperor by the Soldiers, a great Enemy of Images, which he caused to be cast out of the Church, thereby incurring the displeasure of
- 715 25. *Anastasius II.* called also *Artemias*, his principal Secretary, who thrust himself into the Empire; forced to relinquish it by that Army which he had raised against the *Saracens*: in which Tumult the City of *Constantinople* was sacked and spoiled.
- 717 26. *Theodosius III.* made Emperor in this Tumult by the Soldiers, hearing of the approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eastern Armies, resigned the Empire and took Orders to preserve his Life.
- 718 27. *Leo Isaurus*, in whose time *Caliph Zuleiman* besieged *Constantinople* the space of three years, and when by Cold and Famine 300000 of the *Saracens* were destroyed, they desisted. At this Siege was that Fire invented which we, for the violence of it, call *Wild-Fire*; and the *Latines*, because the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græcus ignis*: by which the *Saracens* Ships were not a little molested. He was also a great Enemy to Images, and for this cause hated by the Pope and Clergy of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the Nick-name of *Iconomachus*.
- 741 28. *Constantinus IV.* Son of *Leo*, surnamed *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized he bewrayed the Font, followed his Father's Zeal in removing Images, which created him much Trouble, one *Artabardus* being chosen Emperor against him, but at last defeated:
- 777 29. *Leo III.* Son of *Constantine Copronymus*, honoured with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo* the 4. (*Leontius* the Usurper (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one;) an enemy to Images, and fortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*.
- 782 30. *Constantine V.* the Son of *Leo* and *Irene*, first governed the Empire with his Mother, by whom at last supplanted, and deprived of Sight, he died of Melancholy.
- 798 31. *Irene*, Wife of *Leo* the 3. first Consort with *Constantine* her Son, and afterwards sole Empress of *Constantinople*: for her better support in which Estate she sided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the second Council of *Nice* for defence of Images. In her time *Charles*, surnamed the great, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperor of the West, for the Popes knowing their own Greatness to grow out of the Ruines of the Temporal Power, committed the Empire of the West unto the *French* Princes: whereby the *Greek* Emperors became much weakened; and the *French*, being the Pope's Creatures, were in tract of time brought to their Devotion. In following times, when *Frederick*, *Barbarossa* was by Pope *Alexander* the 3. pronounced non-Emperor, *Emanuel* of *Constantinople* sued for a Re-union of the Empires: but the crafty Pope returned this Answer, *Non licere illi conjungere quæ majores ejus de industria disjunxerunt*: Let no man presume to joyn what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put asunder.
- 803 32. *Nicephorus* a Patrician, made Emperour by the Soldiers, perswaded that *Irene* had made choice of him to be her Successor: slain in a pitch Field against the *Bulgarians*.
- 812 33. *Michael*, surnamed *Curopolates*, from his Office, (the *Mayor of the Palace*, as it were) Husband to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, assumed the Empire, which, finding his own weakness, he did soon relinquish, and betook himself unto a Monastery.
- 814 34. *Leo V.* surnamed *Armenius*, from his Country, General of the Horse to *Michael*, demolished the Images which his Predecessors had set up. He was slain in the Church during the time of Divine Service.
- 821 35. *Michael II.* surnamed *Balbus*, having murdered *Leo*, assumed the Empire; unfortunate in his Government, and died of Madnels.
- 830 36. *Theophilus*, the Son of *Michael Balbus*, an Enemy of Images, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he; losing many Battels to the *Saracens*, at last he died of Melancholy.

- 842 37. *Michael* III. Son of *Theophilus*, first ruling with his Mother *Theodora*, who took unto herself the supreme Command; and after of himself sole Emperor, his Mother being made a Nun.
- 866 38. *Basilus*, surnamed *Macedo*, from the place of his Birth, made Confort in the Empire by *Michael* the Son of *Theophilus*, whom he basely and treacherously murdered; killed casually by a Stag.
- 886 39. *Leo* VI. for his Learning surnamed *Philosophus*, the Son of *Basilus*, a vigilant and provident Prince: most of his time, with variable Success, was spent against the *Bulgarians*.
- 912 40. *Constantine* VI. commonly called the VII. Son of *Leo Philosophus*, first under his Uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his Mother, and after under *Romanus Lacopenus*, governed the Empire; by which last he was so miserably depressed that he was fain to get his livelihood by Painting. But *Lacopenus* being deposed and turned into a Monastery by his own Sons, *Constantine* at last obtained his Rights, and restored Learning unto Greece.
- 961 41. *Romanus*, the Son of *Constantine*.
- 963 42. *Nicephorus*, surnamed *Phocas*, first Governour or Protector of the young Emperour *Romanus*; after whose death, created Emperor by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greatest part of *Asia minor* from the power of the *Saracens*: slain in the night by *John Zimisces*, his Wife *Theophania* being privy to it.
- 971 43. *John Zimisces*, Emperor in the place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better than he did obtain it, vanquishing the *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, and others of the barbarous Nations; and left it at his death to the Sons of *Romanus*.
- 977 44. *Basilus* II. surnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, as many of the Emperors had been before him, in regard that at their Births they were wrapped in Purple, (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyrie*) the Imperial Colour: he subdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.
- 1027 45. *Constantine* VII. or VIII. Brother of *Basilus*, and with him Partner in the Empire: after whose death he governed three years by himself, but did nothing memorable.
- 1030 46. *Romanus* II. for his Prodigality surnamed *Argyropolis*, Husband of *Zoe*, the Daughter of *Constantine* the 8th. drowned in a Bath by the Treason of his Wife and her Adulterer.
- 1035 47. *Michael* IV. surnamed *Paphlago*, from his Country, first the Adulterer and afterwards the Husband of *Zoe*; but died very penitent.
- 1042 48. *Michael* V. surnamed *Calaphates*, a man of obscure Birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he deposed from the Government, and turned into a Monastery. Out of which being again taken in a popular Tumult, she put out the Eyes of *Calaphates*, and being then 60 years of age, bestowed both the Empire and her self upon
- 1043 49. *Constantine* IX. surnamed *Nonomachus*, formerly the Husband to a Niece of *Romanus* the second.
- 1055 50. *Theodora*, Sister unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Constantine*, managed for two years the Affairs of the Empire with great Contentment of all people. But grown in age she surrendered it to
- 1057 51. *Michael* VI. surnamed *Stratioticus*, an old, but military man, deposed within three years by
- 1060 52. *Isaaci*, of the noble Family of the *Comneni*, valiant, of great Courage, and diligent in his Affairs: which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with consent of the Senate and people, to
- 1063 53. *Constantine* X. surnamed *Ducas*, a great Justiciar and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his Subjects and contemned by his Enemies.
- 1071 54. *Romanus* III. surnamed *Diogenes*, married *Eudoxia*, the Wife of *Constantinus Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Taken Prisoner by the Turks, and sent home again, he found a Faction made against him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himself at his return deposed, and so died in Exile.
- 1075 55. *Michael* VII. the Son of *Constantinus Ducas*, surnamed *Parapinatus*, by reason of the Famine which in his time happened, made Emperor in the aforesaid Tumult. But being found unable for so great an Honour, (the Turks prevailing in all places) he was deposed again, and put into a Monastery.
- 1081 56. *Nicephorus* II. surnamed *Betonites*, of the House of *Phocas*, succeeded in the place of *Parapinace*; deposed within three years by the *Comneni*.
- 1084 57. *Alexius Comnenus*, Son of the Emperor *Isaacius Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whose time the Western Christians with great Forces prepared for the Recovery of the *Holy-Land*; of whose purposes being very jealous he denied them passage through his Country; but was in the end forced to find them Victuals and other Necessaries.
- 1113 58. *Calo-Joannes*, the Son of *Alexius*, had a good hand against the Turks, from whom he took *Laodicea* and some other places of Importance. He also vanquished the *Scythians* or *Tartars* passing over the *Ister*, most of which he either slew in Battel, or sold as Captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this side that River. He also conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, transporting many of them into *Bithynia*.
- 1142 59. *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger Son of *Calo-Joannes*, an under-hand enemy to the Western Christians, and an open enemy to the Turks; by whom being intrapped in the dangerous Streights of *Cilicia*, and his Army miserably cut off, he was on honourable terms permitted to return again.
- 1180 60. *Alexius* II. Son of *Manuel*, deposed and barbarously murdered by *Andronicus*, the Cousin-german of his Father, with his Wife and Mother.
- 1183 61. *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Manuel* to *Oenon* in *Paphlagonia*, by reason of his dangerous and ambitious practices, after his death, pretending to reform the State, came unto *Constantinople*: first made Protector, afterwards Confort in the Empire with young *Alexius*: whom having barbarously slain and got the Empire to himself, he was not long after cruelly torn in pieces in a popular Tumult.
- 1185 62. *Isaaci* Angelus, a Nobleman of *Constantinople*, and of the same *Comnenian* Race, disigned to death by *Andronicus*, was in a popular Election proclaimed his Successor; deposed by *Alexius* his own Brother and his Eyes put out.

1195 63. *Alexius Angelus*, deprived his Brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire; but it held not long.

64. *Alexius Angelus* II. Son of *Isaac Angelus*, who being unjustly thrust out of his Empire by his Uncle *Alexius*, had recourse to *Philip* the Western Emperor, whose Daughter *Mary* he had married, who so prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3. (upon a promise for subjecting the Church of *Greece* to the See of *Rome* (that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land* was employed to restore him. On the approach whereof *Alexius* the Usurper fled; *Alexius* the young Emperor is seated in his Father's Throne, and not long after slain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* assault and win *Constantinople*, make themselves Masters of the Empire, and divided it amongst themselves: allotting to the *Venetians* *Candia*, many good Towns of *Peloponnesus*, and most of the Islands; to *Boniface* Marquis of *Montferrat* the Kingdom of *Thessaly*; to the others of the Adventurers other liberal Shares; and finally to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, the main Body of the Empire, with the Title of Emperor. The Seat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice*, a City of *Bythinia* in the lesser *Asia*, by *Theodorus Lascaris*, Son-in-Law to *Alexius*, the Usurper, continued there till the reigning of *Constantinople* by the *Greeks* again, after it had been 60 years possessed by the Western Christians.

Emperors of the *LATINES* in *CONSTANTINOPLE*.

1200 65. *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, first Emperor of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*, taken in fight by *John* King of *Bulgaria*, coming to aid the *Greeks*, and sent Prisoner to *Ternova*, where he was cruelly put to death.

1202 66. *Henry*, the Brother of *Baldwin*, repulsed the *Bulgarians* out of *Greece*, and died a Conqueror.

1215 67. *Peter*, Count of *Auxerre* in *France*, the Son of *Peter*, youngest Son to *Lewis* the Gros of *France*, and Husband of *Yoland* the Daughter of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire after his decease. He was cunningly entrapped by *Theodorus Angelus*, a great Prince in *Epirus*, whom he had besieged in *Dyrrhachium*: but of an Enemy being persuaded to become his Guest, was there murdered by him.

1220 68. *Robert*, the Son of *Peter*, having seen the miserable usage of his beautiful Empress, whom a young *Burgundian*, formerly contracted to her, had most despirefully mangled, cutting off both her Nose and Ears, died of Hearts grief as he was coming back from *Rome*, whether his Melancholly had carried him to consult the Pope in his Affairs.

1227 69. *Baldwin* II. Son of *Robert* by a former Wife, under the Protection of *John de Brenne*, the titular King of *Jerusalem*, succeeded in his Fathers Throne: which having held for the space of thirty three years, he was forced to leave the City of *Constantinople*, being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince compelled to sue in vain for succours to the *French*, *Venetians*, and other Princes of the West. And though both *Philip* the Son of this *Baldwin*, and *Charles* of *Valois*, Father of *Philip de Valois* the *French* King; in right of *Catherine* his Wife, Daughter of that

Philip, did sometimes please themselves with the Title of Emperors of *Constantinople*, yet neither of the two had ever any footing or possession there.

The Empire restored unto the *GREEKS*.

1260 70. *Michael* VIII. surnamed *Palaeologus*, extracted from the *Comnenian* Emperor, Emperor of the *Greeks* in the City of *Nice*, most fortunately recovered *Constantinople*; the Town being taken by a party of fifty men secretly put into it by some Country-Labourers under the Ruines of a Mine. Present in person at the Council of *Lions*, at the perswasion of the Pope he admitted the *Latine* Ceremonies into the Churches of *Greece*; for which he was greatly hated by his Subjects, and denied the honour of Christian Burial.

1283 71. *Andronicus* II. vexed with unnatural Wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled against him.

1328 72. *Andronicus* III. first Partner with his Grandfather, afterwards Sole Emperor.

1341 73. *John* *Palaeologus*, Son of *Andronicus* the 3. In whose Minority *Contacuzenus* his Protector usurped the Empire, and held it sometimes from him, and sometimes with him, till the year 1357, and then retired into a Monastery leaving the Empire unto *John*, during whose Reign the *Turks* first planted themselves in *Europe*.

1384 74. *Andronicus* IV. the Son of *Joannes* *Palaeologus*.

1387 75. *Emanuel* *Palaeologus*, the Son of the said *John*, and Brother of *Andronicus* the 4. In whose time *Bajazet* the sixth King of the *Turks* did besiege *Constantinople*; but found such notable Resistance, that he could not force it.

1417 76. *John* II. Son of *Andronicus* the 4.

1420 77. *John* III. Son of *Emanuel* *Palaeologus*, in person at the Council of *Florence* for reconciling of the Churches in hopes thereby to get some Aid from the Western Christians, but it would not be.

1444 78. *Constantinus* *Palaeologus*, the Brother of *John* the 3. In whose time the famous City of *Constantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great in 1452, the miserable Emperor, who had in vain gone from door to door to beg or borrow money to pay his Soldiers, (which the *Turks* found in great abundance when they took the City) being lamentably trod to death in the Throng. Now concerning this Empire of the *Greeks*, we may observe some fatal Contrarieties in one and the same name. As first, that *Philip* the Father of *Alexander* laid the first Foundation of the *Macedonian* Monarchy, and *Phillip* the Father of *Perseus* ruined it. Secondly, that *Baldwin* was the first, and *Baldwin* the last Emperor of the *Latines* in *Constantinople*. Thirdly, that this Town was built by a *Constantine*, the Son of *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch; and was

lost by a *Constantine*, the Son of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch also. And fourthly, the *Turks* have a Prophecy, that as it was won by a *Mahomet*, so shall it be lost by a *Mahomet*. So *Augustus* was the first established Emperour of *Rome*, and *Augustulus* the last, *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspes*, the Restorer; and *Darius* the Son of *Arfamis*, the Overthrower of the *Persian* Monarchy. A like note I shall hereafter tell you of *Jerusalem*. In the mean time I will present you with a fatal Observation of the letter *H*, as I find it thus verified in *Albion's* *England*.

Not

Not superstitiously I speak, but *H* this letter still
Hath been observed ominous to *England's* Good or Ill.
First *Hercules*, *Hesione* and *Helen* were the cause
Of War to *Troy*; *Aeneas* Seed becoming so Outlaws.
Humber the *Hun* with foreign Arms did first the *Brutes*
invade:

Helen to *Rome's* Imperial Throne the *British* Crown con-
vey'd.

Hengist and *Horfus* first did plant the *Saxons* in this Isle:
Hungar and *Hubba* first brought *Danes*, that sway'd here
long while.

At *Harold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Hardie-Cnute* the *Dane*,
Henries the first and second did restore the *English*
Reign.

Fourth *Henry* first for *Lancaster* did *England's* Crown
obtain.

Seventh *Henry* jarring, *Lancaster* and *York* unites in
Peace.

Henry the eighth did happily *Rome's* Irreligion cease.

A strange and ominous Letter, every Mutation in our
State being as it were usher'd by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire since the Di-
vision of it into the East and West, I could never yet
learn.

That they were exceeding great may appear by three
circumstances. 1. *Zonaras* reporteth that the Empero
Basilias had in his Treasury 200000 Talents of Gold,
besides infinite Heaps of Silver and other Moneys. 2.
Lipsius relateth, how *Benjamin* a Jew in his discourse of
Europe saith, that the Custom due to the Emperors out
of the Victuals and Merchandize sold at *Constantinople*
only did amount to 20000 Crowns daily. 3. We find

that at the Sack of *Constantinople* there was found an in-
valuable Mass of Gold, Silver, Plate, and Jewels, besides
that which was hid in the Earth. For so the covetous
Citizens chose rather to employ their Wealth, then af-
ford any part of it to the Emperor, who with Tears in
his Eyes went from door to door to beg and borrow
Money, wherewith he might wage more Soldiers for the
defence of the Town.

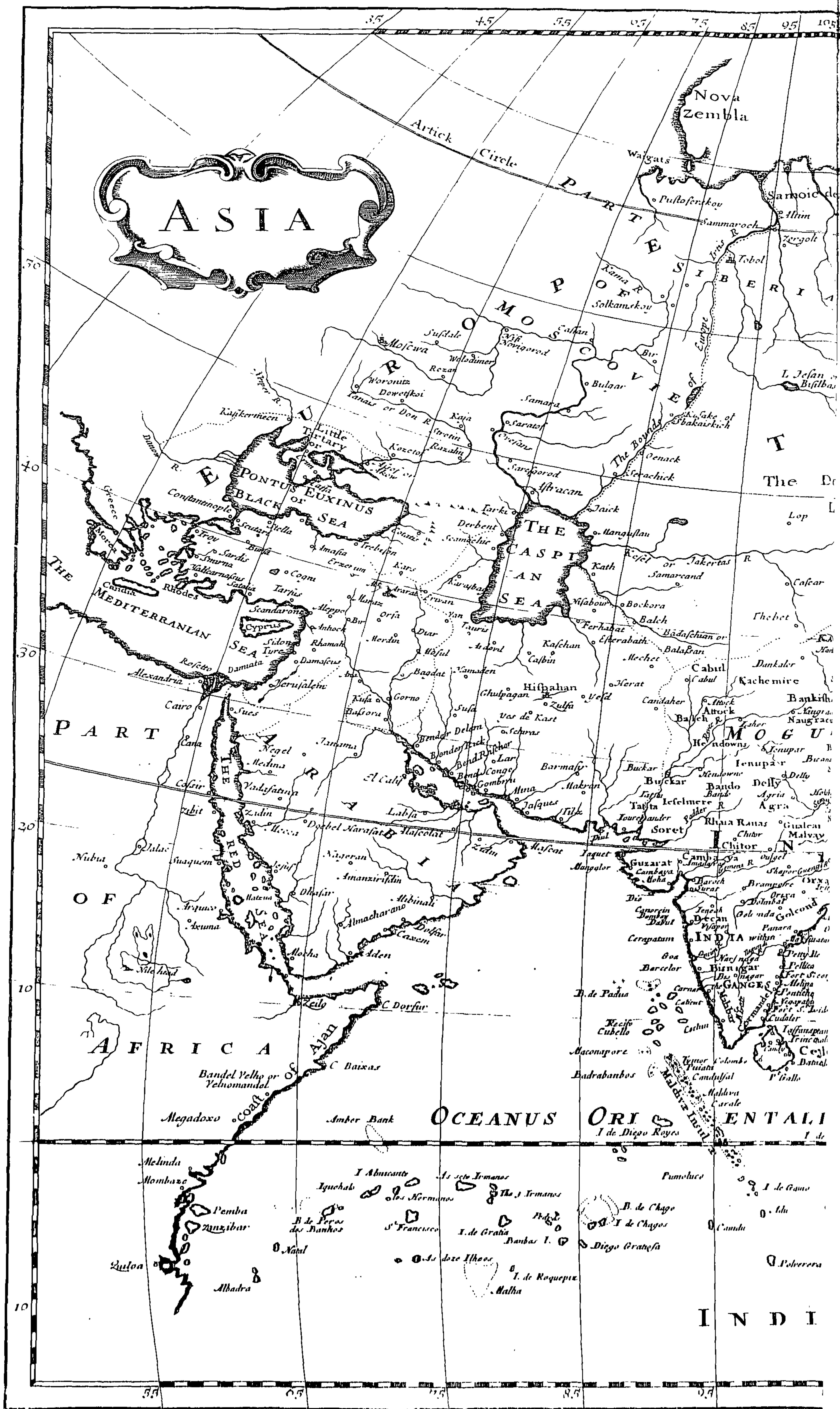
The Arms of the Empire were *Mars*, a Cross *Sol* be-
tween 4 *Greek Beta's* of the second; the 4 *Beta's* signify-
ing (as *Bedin* saith) βασιλεὺς, βασιλέων, βασιλῶν, βασιλευσι.

It may perchance be expected that we should here
make an additional Catalogue of those Turkish Empe-
rors who have reigned in *Constantinople* since the taking
of it; and being they are possessed of *Greece*, and do
now inhabit it, that we should here also speak of the
Turks themselves, their Customs, Forces, Policies,
Original, and Proceedings. But the discourse of those
things we intend to reserve for *Turcomania*, a Province
of *Asia*, from whence they made their first Inundation
into *Persia*, and afterwards into other parts of the
World now subject to them, the only Province which
retains any thing of their name. And though the Pe-
ninsula called anciently *Taurica Chersonesus* (now part of
Tartaria Precopensis) be within the Bounds of *Europe*
also; yet we will defer the description and story of it
till we come to the Affairs of the *Tartars*, and will
here conclude our Discourse of *Europe*, and prepare for
Asia.

And so much for *G R E E C E*, the last of the Pro-
vinces of *E U R O P E*.

A.			Long.			Lat.			Long.			Lat.		
A Amsterdam	Long.	Lat.	Grodesk	56.30	51.30	Passaw	42	53.48						
Antwerp	27.39	52.40	Gaunt	30.20	50.40	Presburg	40	48.26						
Athens	24.30	51.48	Gnesna	42	52.10	Plescow	59.10	59						
Augsburg	46.10	40	Groeningen	32.10	53	Pechora	66.50	67						
Aulona	32.30	48.20				Pernaw	53.30	58.40						
Arras	51.20	41.30	Hadër sleeve	35.5	60.53	Plozkom	57.30	57.40						
Anflo	24	51	Hallar	3	67.14				R.					
	36.30	59.20	Halberstadt	32.40	52.10	Rab	40.35	48.50						
			Heidelberg	28	49.35	Ragusi	44.40	42.30						
Bamberg	39.15	50.10	Hamburg	30	54.30	Regenspur	32.15	48.59						
Belgrade	45	47.40				Rostock	34.18	54.20						
Bergen	34.16	61.25	Jene	34	42	Rustow	72.50	57						
Bern	29.45	46.25	Ingolstadt	32.10	48.40	Rugen	40.20	55.10						
Brandenburgh	35.30	52.36	Inspruck	32.50	44.55	Riga	53.30	58						
Breme	30.20	53.23	Juliers	27.30	52	Regimont	49.10	55.30						
Bruges	24.36	51.30							S.					
Brunswick	32.40	52.30	Larissa	70	33	Saltzburg	35.40	47.40						
Bruxells	26.42	51.24	Leige	22	50.50	Schalholt	3.14	65.42						
Buda	42	47.20	Leopoles	52.50	49	Schlestadt	28.6	47.22						
Bodon	52.30	45.30	Leipzig	30.30	51.20	Sleswick	31.20	55.15						
Bornholm	40.50	55.30	Lubeck	31.20	54.48	Spires	27.40	49.20						
			Lucern	29.53	46.42	Stetin	37.40	54						
Cleve	29.35	41.58	Lunenburg	32.18	53.27	Stockholm	42	60.15						
Constantinople	56	41.56	Lunden	26	53	Sibior	69.20	59.30						
Confluentz or Coblentz	27.30	50.30	Luxemburg	28	50	Slowada	86.30	58.50						
Constance	28.30	47.30				Straesburg	27.50	48.44						
Copenhagen	34.50	56	Magdeburg	37.50	52.18	Stagira	55.30	43.30						
Corinth	54.20	39	Marpurg	30.10	51				T.					
Colen	27.40	51	Mentz	27.30	50.30	Theffalonica	53.40	44.20						
Cracow	42.40	50.12	Metz	27.40	49.9	Triers	26	49.30						
Cefalona	52	38.30	Middleburg	25	52	Trent	33.40	45.20						
Casfan	96.10	35.10	Minden	31.30	52.58	Tubing	30.30	48.40						
Corfu	42	39.30	Munche	32.50	48	Tuver	68.10	57.10						
			Munster	29.10	52				W.					
Dantzick	45	54.50	Monts	26	51	Valenciennes	26.29	50.10						
Deventer	33.25	51.50	Mosco	70.30										

COSMO:





COSMOGRAPHY,

The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY

OF THE
LESSE R and GREATER

A S I A,

AND ALL

The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN*.

Corrected, Continued, and Enlarged, By *Edmund Bobun, Esq;*

JUSTIN. HIST. I. I.

*Imperium Assyrii qui postea Syri dicti sunt, annos MCCC tenuerunt.
Imperium ab Assyriis ad Medos Arbaces transfert.*

SENECA EPIST. 17.

*Omnes quæ usquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando queretur ;
& vario exitii genere tollentur.*

L O N D O N,

Printed in the Year MDCCCL.

COSMOGRAPHY.

The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF THE
LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL

The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

Of *ASIA*.



ASIA is bounded on the West with the *Mediterranean*, and *Ægean* Seas, the *Hellespont*, *Propontis*, *Thracian Bosphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Palus Macotis*, the Rivers *Tanais* and *Duina*, a Line being drawn from the first of the two said Rivers unto the other, by all which parted from *Europe*; on the North, it hath the main *Seytbick* Ocean; on the East, the Straits of *Anian* (if such there be;) the *Indian* Ocean, and *Mare del Zur*, by which separated from *America*; on the South, the *Mediterranean*, or that part of it which is called the *Carpathian* Sea, washing the Shores of *Anatolia*, and the main Southern Ocean, passing along the *Indian*, *Persian*, and *Arabian* Coasts: and finally, on the South-West, the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Africk*. Environed on all sides with the Sea, or some Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow *Isthmus* in the South-West, which joyns it to *Africk*, and the space of Ground (whatsoever it be) betwixt *Duina* and *Tanais*, on the North-West, which unites it to *Europe*. The best of our latter Accounts stretch it from 55 degrees of Longitude, to 200, and from 71 to the Line, (*Nova Zembla* lying more to the North) and some Islands also beyond the *Equator*: So then its Length is 10450 Miles, and its Breadth 3960 Miles. *Cluverius* saith it is in Length from the *Hellespont*, to the Cape of *Malacca*, 1300 German Miles; and in Breadth from the Cape of *Tabin* in *Arabia*, to the Streights of *Anian* 1220 of the same.

It took this Name, as some will have it, from *Asia*, the Daughter of *Oceanus* and *Thetis*, the Wife of *Japetus*, and (by him) Mother to *Prometheus*: As others say, from *Asius* the Son of *Atis*, a King of *Lydia*, from whence that Country first, afterwards all *Anatolia*, or *Asia minor*, and finally, the whole Continent had the name of *Asia*. Others, again, (but more improbably) derive the Name from *Asius* the Philosopher, who gave the *Paladium* unto the *Trojans*; in Memory whereof that Country first, and after the whole Continent did receive this

Name: But these *Originations* being very uncertain, *Bochartus* (out of his great Affection to the *Punick*, or *Phœnician* Language) will have it called so from *Asia*, a *Phœnician* Word, signifying *Medium*, or the middle; because *Anatolia*, or the lesser *Asia*, which gives Name (as he conceiveth) to the *Greater* also, lieth in the middle, as it were, betwixt some parts of *Europe* and *Africa*. And so far the Conjecture doth find Countenance from some ancient Writers, that *Asia* is said by *Pliny* to be inter *Africam* & *Europam*, to be betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*; by *Mela*, *medium nostris æquoribus excipit*, to be embraced in the middle of the two Seas (he meaneth *Pontus Euxinus*, and the *Mediterranean*); and finally, by *Eustathius*, (conceive them all of *Anatolia*, or the Lesser *Asia*) *μέστω ἀμφοῖν ἔχειν διάθεσιν*, to have a middle Situation betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*. But by what Name, and on what Grounds soever it be called by the *Greeks* and *Latins*, it is otherwise, and with better Reason called in Holy Scriptures by the name of *Semia*; as being that Portion of the World, wherein the whole Posterity of *Sem* had their Seats and Dwellings, if the observation of *Maginus* be of any weight.

It is Situate East and West, from the 52 to the 169 degree of Longitude, and North and South, from the 82 degree of Latitude, to the very *Equator*; some only of the Islands lying on the South of that Circle: So that the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, is but twelve Hours only; but in the most Northern parts hereof, for almost four whole Months together no Night at all. And for a measurement by Miles, it stretches in Length 5200, and in Breadth 4560 Miles. *Cluverius* in his Geography bounds *Asia* to the West, with the River *Ob* instead of the *Duina*, neither of which Rivers were known to the ancient Geographers; nor, indeed, the Bounds of *Asia* to the North West, the Countries being then inhabited by barbarous Nations, and unpassable; but by the Travellers and Trade driven in *Muscovy*, now much better known than formerly.

As to the Streights of *Anian*, mention'd above, they could never yet be found out, though many have attempted

tempted to find them by the North-East; but yet it is probable there is such a Passage, because it is constantly averr'd, that Whales wounded on the Coast of *Greenland*, have been found dead with the harping Irons in them, on the Coasts of *China* and *Japan*, by our and the Dutch *East-India* Merchant Ships.

This Country hath heretofore been had in especial Honour. 1. For the Creation of Man, who had his first making in this part of the World. 2dly, Because in this part of it stood the Garden of *Eden*, which he had for the first place of his Habitation. 3dly, Because here flourished the four first great Monarchies of the *Affyrans*, *Babylonians*, *Medes*, and *Persians*. 4thly, Because it was the Scene of almost all the memorable Actions, which are recorded by the Pen-men of the Scriptures. 5thly, Because that here our Saviour *CHRIST* was Born, he wrought the most divine Miracles, and here accomplished the great Work of our Redemption. 6thly, and finally, Because from hence all Nations of the World had their first beginning on the Dispersion which was made by the Sons of *Noah*, after their vain attempt of *Babel*.

The chief Mountains of this great Continent, not limited within the Bounds of any one Province, (for of those we are to speak in their several places) are, 1. Mount *Taurus*, which having its beginning in *Lybia*, a Province of *Anatolia*, passeth directly Eastward to the *Indian Ocean*, and reckoning in its several windings and turnings, with its Spurs and Branches every way, is said to be 625 Miles long, and 357 Miles broad. This Mountain, or rather Ridge of Hills, divideth the *Greater Asia*, as the *Aequator* doth the World, into North and South: memorable for three difficult Passages from the one to the other. The first out of the rest of *Anatolia* into *Cilicia*, called *Pylæ Ciliciæ*; the second out of *Scythia*, or *Tartary*, into *Turcomania*, called *Caucasic Portæ*; and the third out of *Scythia* into *Persia*, called *Portæ Caspiæ*. Of which, and of the whole Course of this Mountain, more at large hereafter. 2. *Imaus*, which beginning near the Shores of the Northern Ocean, runneth directly towards the South, dividing the *Greater Asia* (as the *Meridian* doth the World) into East and West, and crossing Mount *Taurus* in right Angles, in or about the Longitude of 140. This on the North of *Taurus* had no other Name among the *Latines*, than *Imaus* only; and by that Name divideth *Scythia*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*: But by the *Tartars* is called *Alay*, by some Writers *Belgian*. And on the Southside of that Mountain is known in *Ptolemy* by the name of *Euge*, extending from Mount *Caucasus*, or some other Branch of the *Taurus*, to the Cape of *Comari*, in the Southern Ocean; supposed by some to be Mount *Sephar*, mentioned, *Gen. 10. 30.* of which we shall say more also when we come into *India*.

The Estate of *Christianity* in this vast Continent is in ill Condition, discountenanced and oppressed, though not quite extinguished. For all the great Princes and Commanders of it being either *Alchometans* or *Pagans*, the most that can be hoped for of the *Christian Faith*, is a toleratio or connivance, and that not found but with an intermixture of such Afflictions, as commonly attend discountenanced and disgraced Religion. Yet is not *Christianity* so over-powered either by *Mahometism*, or *Paganism*, but that in *Asia* the *Leffer*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and *Chimæna*, a great part of the Inhabitants do retain the *Gospel*, under their several Patriarchs and *Metropolitans*, differing in some few Points from one another; but in many from the Church of *Rome*, with which they hold neither Correspondency nor Communion. Nor want there many *Christian Churches* in the Empire of *Persia*, nor in those of *Tartary*, *China*, and the *Indis*, anciently planted in those Countries; besides the late increase thereof in the *Eastern Islands* by the diligent preaching of the *Jesuits*, and some late *Pastories* there settled by

the *English* and *Hollanders*: Of all which I shall write in place convenient.

In reference to the *Roman Empire*, whose Dominion did not often extend beyond the River *Danubius*, this Continent contained only three *Dioceses*, or *Imperial Circuits*; that is to say, the *Diocese of Pontus*, *Asia* properly so called, and the *Oriental*; which with the *Dioceses of Thrace* and *Egypt*, were under the Command of the *Præfæctus Prætorii Orientis*, the greatest Officer of Power and Jurisdiction, next to the Emperor himself, in the *Roman Monarchy*. And these three *Dioceses* contained in them to the number of 11; seven Provinces, viz. The Provinces of *Babynia*. 2. *Indicopontus*. 3. *Pontus Polemoniacus*. 4. *Galatia prima*. 5. *Galatia Salutaris*. 6. *Iconius*. 7. *Paphlagonia*. 8. *Cappadocia prima*. 9. *Cappadocia secunda*. 10. *Armenia prima*, and 11. *Armenia secunda*, contained in the *Diocese of Pontus*, and governed by the *Legatus*, or Lieutenant thereof. II. The Provinces of *ramphylia*. 2. *Lycia*. 3. *Caria*. 4. *Pyssidia*. 5. *Lycæna*. 6. *Lydia*. 7. *Phrygia Pacatiana*. 8. *Phrygia Salutaris*. 9. *Asia*, specially so called. 10. *Hellespont*, and 11. the *Isles of Anatolia*, making up the *Diocese of Asia*; whereof the three last were governed by a peculiar Officer, called the *Proconsul of Asia*; the others by the ordinary Lieutenant, or *Vicarius*. III. The Provinces of *Isauria*. 2. *Cilicia prima*. 3. *Cilicia secunda*. 4. *Cyprus*. 5. *Phœnices*. 6. *Phœnices Libani*. 7. *Syria*. 8. *Syria Salutaris*. 9. *Palestina prima*. 10. *Palestina secunda*. 11. *Palestina Salutaris*. 12. *Euphratenis*. 13. *Ojroune*. 14. *Mesopotamia*, and 15. *Arabia*, constituting the *Diocese of the Orient*, under the *Comes Orientis*. The rest of *Asia* subject unto the *Partium* or *Persian Kings*, besides those of *India*, (and of many Regions and Countries not then discovered) was never conquered by the *Romans*; and therefore not within the compass of this Distribution.

At this time *Asia* stands divided amongst six great Monarchies; that is to say, the *Turk*, commanding all those Parts and Provinces, which anciently belonged to the *Roman Empire*. 2dly, The *Persian*, ruling in all the Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, possessed by the *Persian Kings* in the time of *Alexander the Great*, or the *Asacids*, or *Partians* in the times of the *Romans*. 3dly, The *Great Khan* of *Tartary*, commanding over all the North parts of *Asia*, anciently known by the name of *Scythia*. 4thly, The King of *China*, governing in that large and populous Country. 5thly, The King of *Barnia*, whose Dominion comprehendeth all, or the greatest part of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*. And 6thly, The *Great Magor*, whose Empire is extended over all *India* on this side of that River. And some there be who in the Descriptions of this great Country, follow this Division. But for our parts, for the better understanding of the *Greek*, and the *Roman Stories*, and the Estate of the *Affyrans*, *Babylonians*, and *Persian Monarchies*, to which the holy Scriptures do so much relate; we shall consider it as divided into the Regions of, 1. *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*. 2. *Cyprus*. 3. *Syria*. 4. *Palestine*. 5. *Arabia*. 6. *Chaldea*. 7. *Affyria*. 8. *Mesopotamia*. 9. *Turcomania*. 10. *Media*. 11. *Persia*. 12. *Tartaria*. 13. *China*. 14. *India*; and 15. The *Oriental Islands*.

Monsieur *Tavernier*, a French Gentleman, who travell'd this part of the World six times in forty Years, informs us thus of the present State of it. A Man cannot travel in *Asia*, as they do in *Europe*; nor at the same Hours, nor with the same Ease. There are no Weekly Coaches, or Wagons, from Town to Town; and besides, the Soil of the Countries is of several Natures. In *Asia* you shall meet with several Regions untill'd, and un-peopled, either through the badness of the Climate or Soil, or the sloth of the Inhabitants, who rather chuse to live Miserably, than to Work. There are vast Deserts to cross, and very dangerous both for want of Water, and by reason of the Robberies that the *Arabs* daily commit in those places. There are no certain

certain Inns, or Inns, to entertain Travellers. The best Inns, especially in *Turkey*, are the Tents which you can find in the Country, and your Servants that attend you, and your Horses which you have bought in the Country, are more frequent in the Country, than in the City, in which the Persons that furnish you with Provisions for your Journey: But then *Turkey* wants not only this Convenience, but is also full of Thieves, who keep in Troops together, and Way-lay the Merchants upon the Roads; and if they be not very well Guarded, will certainly Rob them, nay, many times Murder them. A Mischief prevented in *Perfia*, by the well ordered Convenience which is provided for Travellers. To avoid these Inconveniences, you are obliged to pay for Caravans, that go for *Perfia*, or the *Indies*, which never set out but at certain times, and from certain places, *viz.* *Constantinople*, *Rusfa*, *Smyrna*, and *Alyssa*.

I have transcribed this long Passage, to shew my Reader, not only the present State of *Asia*, but also the very true Reason why the present State of the Inland Towns and Cities of *Asia* are so little known, and so seldom travel'd; for he that travels with a *Caravan*, has neither Time nor Means to observe a Country exactly, or to inform himself of those places which lie out of his Road. So that this is one of the principal Reasons why the Geography of *Asia* is so obscure and imperfect.

Monsieur *Tremble* saith, the Method the *Turks* use to secure their Roads from Robberies, is by paying certain Duties on the Road to the Governor, who is obliged to secure the Merchants, or to Indemnifie them for every Robbery committed, so that you need not keep with the *Caravan*, except you please, p. 18.

ANATOLIA, or ASIA MINOR.

Anatolia, or *Asia minor*, is bounded on the East with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from the greater *Asia*; on the West, with the *Thracian Bosphorus*, *Propontis*, *Hellepont*, and the *Aegean Sea*, by which parted from *Europe*; on the North, with *Pontus Euxinus*, called also the *Black Sea*, and *Mare Maggione*; and on the South, by the *Euboean*, *Lydian*, and *Pamphylian Seas*, several parts of the *Mediterranean*. So that it is a denuded Island, or *Peninsula*, environed on all sides with Waters, excepting a small *Isthmus*, or neck of Land extending from the head of *Euphrates* to the *Euxine Sea*, by which joyned to the rest of *Asia*.

It was anciently called *Asia minor*, to difference it from the residue of this great Continent; afterwards *Anatolia*, *Ἀνατολία*, from the more Eastward Situation of it, in respect of *Greece*; and now *Natolia* by the *Turks*, with little deviation from the former Name. But here is to be observed, that as this *Lesser Asia* was a part of the greater; and the *Diocese* of *Asia*, a part of *Asia* the *Lesser*; so was *Asia* properly and specially so called, but a part only of the *Asian Diocese*; the *Lydian Asia*, a part of *Asia* properly so called; and the *Proconsular Asia*, but a part of that. The limits of *Asia* the *Lesser*, and the several Provinces contained in the *Asian Diocese*, have been shewn already. And as for that part hereof which had the Name of *Asia* properly and specially so called, it containeth only the two *Phrygias*, both the *Myssias*, *Asolis*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*, and *Caria*, which falling unto the *Romans*, by the last Will and Testament of *Attalus*, the last King of *Perpamus*, were by them made into one Province, and called *Asia*, after the Name of the whole Continent, this being as it were the *Earnest Penny*, to make sure the rest. So witnesseth *Strabo*, where he saith, *Παρὰ τοῖς ἑσπερίαις ἀποδείξαι τὴν ἑσπερίαν Ἀσίαν περιουσίαν οὐρανίου, ὑμῶν μὲν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ*, Lib. 13. The *Romans* call'd the Province belonging to them, *Asia*, which was the Name of that Continent. And for the *Lydian Asia*, that contained only so much

of the *Roman*, or proper *Asia*, as anciently did belong to *Lydia*; that is to say, *Lydia* it self, together with *Asolis*, and *Ionia*, and some parts of the *Greater Asia* adjoining to it. *Vallis* a *Valley* originally the Name of *Asia*, from *Ἀσία* a *City* of *Lydia* near the foot of Mount *Taurus*, *viz.* *Asolis*, *Ionia*, and the *Proconsular Asia* have taken names of before that Name came to be communicated to the *Greater Asia*. So it remained that Name to it self, and not both from the *Greater*, and the *Proconsular Asia*; as also from the *Proconsular Asia*, and some of the ancient Writers. And of this *Asia* the *Scriptures* speak, both in the *Books of the Old Testament*, and the *Revelation*; the seven Churches mentioned in the *Revelation* being found in this *Lydian Asia*, and the passages in the *Old Testament* concerning *Asia*, not to be understood of any, but of this alone. For whereas it is said, *Gen. 10. 3.* That when they had gone throughout *Asia*, and the Region of *Chanaan*, and were forbidden of the *Hebrews*, to preach the Word in *Asia*; after they were come to *Chanaan*, they stayed to go into *Byblos*, and came down to *Tyre*. Most clear it is, that neither *Byblos*, nor *Tyre*, though Regions of the *Phoenicia*, nor *Chanaan*, or *Thias*, all Regions of the *Proconsular Asia*, were out of that *Asia* which the *Scripture* speaks of. So also where it is affirmed, that upon *St. Paul's* preaching and disputing for two Years in *Ephesus*, all they which dwell in *Asia*, heard the Word of the Lord, *Acts 19. 10.* It is not to be meant of any but the *Lydian Asia*, whereof *Ephesus* at that time was the principal City. So also *Acts 19. 22, 26, 31.* and *Chap. 20. 18.* Finally, for the *Proconsular Asia*, which together with *Ilelpon*, and the *Iles*, made up a Government apart, exempt from the Command of the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant of the *Asian Diocese*, it contained only *Asolis*, and *Ionia*, with the South part of *Lydia*, or the Counties lying about *Thybeus*. So witnesseth *St. Hieron* from the *Christian Writers*, where he affirms, That although all the whole *Peninsula* have the name of the *Lesser Asia*, *Specialiter ubi Ephesus Civitas est, Asia vocatur*; yet more particularly the parts adjoining unto *Ephesus* have the name of *Asia*. And this appeareth by the Distribution of the Provinces before laid down, where *Lydia* is reckoned for a Province of the *Asian Diocese*, distinct from the *Proconsular Asia*, which we now insist on.

So having cleared our way in regard of the Name, proceed we next unto the Region, or place thus named, according to the Notion in the largest Latitude, extending from the *Hellepont*, to the River *Euphrates*, and from the *Euxine Sea* to the *Mediterranean*. By which Account it reacheth from the 5, to the 72 degree of Longitude, and from the 36 to the 45 degree of Latitude: the length hereof from the *Hellepont*, to the River *Euphrates*, being estimated at 630 Miles; the breadth from *Sinus Issus* in *Cilicia*, to the City of *Thabecand*, 210. As for the Situation of it, in reference to the Heavenly Bodies, it lieth almost in the same Position with *Italy*, extending from the middle Parallel of the fourth Climate, to the middle Parallel of the sixth. So that the longest Summers-day in the Southern parts, is about fourteen Hours and a half, and one Hour longer in those parts which lie most towards the North.

The temperature of the Air is exceeding good, and the Soil generally exceeding fruitful, and the most excellent Pastures, which breed most excellent Horses, of very good service in the War, as well as with *Turkish* Riders; it being a by-word among the *Turks*, That the Horses of *Asia*, and the Horses of *Europe* are of greatest Action. It was indeed, very plentiful of all Fruits, both for Use and Pleasure, as still it would be, were it cultivated as in former times. Once very Populous, and replenished with goodly Cities, now in a manner waste, and desolate, lamenting the Destruction of 400 Towns; some of them destroyed by Earthquakes, (the Falling-tickness of most great Cities

in the East) but most by War, and have little now to boast of but the Commodiousness of the Havens, which are very many; though most of them but meanly Traded, as in a Country ill Manured, and of little Manufactures.

The People anciently, specially those of Greek Original, and the Nations bordering on the *Euxine*, were very Warlike and Industrious: The rest, specially the *Lydians*, and those of the greater *Phrygia*, as idle and effeminate, wholly addicted to their Pleasures. All of them at this time affected with the same Disease; insomuch, that the *Turks*, (unless compelled thereunto by extream Necessities) never enrol their Children in the number of *Fanizaries*. The greatest part of them generally profess the *Christian* Faith, but overpowered by *Mahometanism*, which is here most prevalent: All followers of the Church of Greece, and subject all (except those of *Iauria* and *Cilicia*) to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. And as they are of the Communion of that Church, so they retain the *Greek Liturgies* for Sacred Offices; not so well understood amongst them, as in former times, when it was more generally spoken there than it is at the present; now over-topped in most places by the *Turkish* and *Sclavonian* Tongues. And though in former times, by reason of the many Greek Colonies planted in this Country, the Conquest of it by *Alexander the Great*, and the subjection of it to the *Syrian* Kings of the *Macedon* Race, that Language became generally understood amongst them; insomuch, as three of the *Greek Dialects*, viz. The *Dorick*, the *Ionian*, and the *Aeolick*, were spoken here; yet did it never so prevail, as to become the Vulgar Language of the People, or to extinguish any of the Vulgar Tongues. For it is said of *Mitridates* King of *Pontus*, that he understood two and twenty Languages, without any Interpreter, which were no other than the Languages of so many Nations subject to himself, whose Dominion was contained for the most part within *Asia Minor*.

Principal Mountains of this Country, are *Hermione* in *Pontus*, *Argæus* in *Cappadocia*, *Ida*, in the Lesser *Phrygia*, *Olympus* in *Mysia*, *Imolus* in *Lydia*, *Amamus* in *Cilicia*, and finally, *Antetaurus* and *Scordiscus* in *Armenia Minor*: Out of which, for the most part, flow the chief Rivers hereof; that is to say, 1. *Iris*, (now *Casimach*.) 2. *Thermodon*. 3. *Hallis*, (now *Otteman-gruch*.) 4. *Parthenius* (now *Dilop*.) 5. *Sangarius*, (now *Sangry*.) All of them falling into the *Euxine* Sea. 6. *Ascanius*. 7. *Ryndacus*. 8. *Asapus*, and 9. *Granicus*, passing into the *Propontis*. 10. *Simocis*. 11. *Scamander*, called also *Xanthus*, ending their short course in the *Hellepont*. 12. *Caicus*. 13. *Hermus*. 14. *Caystrus*; and 15. *Meander*, losing themselves in the *Aegæan*. 16. *Calbis*. 17. *Xanthus*, called also *Lycus*. 18. *Limicus*. 19. *Cataractes*, dischannelling into the *Mediterranean*; and 20. *Melas*, adding to the Waters of the great River *Euphrates*. Of most which we shall speak more particularly in their several places.

In reference to the State of *Rome*, it contained the whole Diocese of *Pontus*, except *Armenia the Greater*, the *Asian* Diocese intirely, without any exception; and the peculiar Jurisdiction of the *Proconsul of Asia*, together with the Provinces of *Iauria*, and *Cilicia*, parts of the Diocese of the East. But because the Names of many of those Provinces were of new Invention, and some of them of as short continuance, we will consider it according as it stood divided anciently, and before the *Romans* had made any Conquests in it, into the Provinces of, 1. *Bythinia*. 2. *Pontus*. 3. *Paphlagonia*. 4. *Galatia*. 5. *Cappadocia*. 6. *Armenia Minor*; which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up, though in other Names, the *Pontick* Diocese. 7. *Phrygia Minor*. 8. *Phrygia Major*. 9. *Mysia*, the greater, and the lesser. 10. *Asia*, specially so called, comprehending *Aeolis* and *Ionis*. 11. *Lydia*. 12. *Caria*. 13. *Lycia*. 14. *Lycæonia*. 15. *Pisidia*. 16. *Pamphylia*. 17. The Province of the

Rhodes, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconsul of Asia*. 18. *Iauria*. 19. *Cilicia*, parts of the Diocese of the East, as before was said.

1. BYTHINIA.

Bythinia is bounded on the East with *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the West, with part of the *Euxine*, and *Thracian Bosphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*; on the North, wholly with the *Euxine*; and on the South with *Mysia*, and *Phrygia Minor*: Formerly called *Bebrycia*, afterwards *Mygdonia*, and at last *Bythinia*, and that as some say from *Bythinus*, once a King hereof, more probably from the *Thyni*, a People of *Thrace*, who passed over the *Bosphorus*, and subdued it, called therefore by some Writers, *Thracia Asiatica*. So witnesseth the Poet *Claudian*, saying:

Thyni Thraces erant, quæ nunc Bithynia fertur.

By *Justin* the Historian it is called by the Name of *Metapontus*, by reason of its neighbouring to the *Euxine*, and the *Pontick* Regions.

The Country naturally Rich, and in those parts hereof which lie next the *Bosphorus*, opposite to *Constantinople*, so plentifully enriched with fruitful Hills, and pleasant Orchards, when kept by the more curious *Christian*, that it was thought not to be inferiour to the so much celebrated *Tempe*: Now robbed of all those former Beauties, by the carelessness of the *Turks*, who affect neither Art, nor Sumptuousness, in their Retirements and Delights; but desire to seem poor.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1. *Phillis*. 2. *Sangarius*, now called *Sangri*, both falling into the *Euxine* Sea; this last arising from Mount *Dindymus*, in the furthest parts of *Phrygia Major*; and making two long reaches in his Journey hither. 3. *Ascanius*, which rising also in *Phrygia Major*, but more near the Borders of this Country, falleth into the *Propontis*, making the Bay, called *Sinus Ascanius*; which with a Lake in the same Country, called *Lacus Ascanius*, doth plainly manifest, that the *Bythinians* are derived from *Askenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and Grand-son of *Japhet*.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Scutari*, over-against the Haven of *Constantinople*, called anciently *Chrysopolis*, for that there the *Persians* received their Tribute from the other Cities of all these parts of *Asia Minor*. An ample Town, well Garrison'd within, and surrounded round about with most pleasant Orchards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royal *Seraglio*. Not far off is a Tower, called the *Maiden-Tower*, serving both for a Fort, and Watch-Tower; and being furnished for defence with 20 Pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Chalcedon*, on the same Shoar also, a Colony of the *Megarenses*, called *Blind* by the Oracle, for neglecting *Byzantium*, and chusing the less convenient place for their Habitation. And yet did *Constantine the Great* resolve upon the same place also for his *Regal City*; but changed his Resolutions on a kind of Miracle: It being observed, that when his Workmen began to draw the Platform, some *Eagles* conveyed away their Lines to the other side of the *Bosphorus*, and let them fall directly upon *Byzantium*. Memorable after that for the fourth *General Council* there assembled, by command of the Emperor *Martianus*, in the Year 451, for representing the Heresie of *Nestorius*; in which were 530 Bishops: Now so decayed, that it can only shew some few of the Ruins of it *Scutari* being risen on the fall thereof. It is now call'd by the *Turks*, *Cadiquei*, as Mr. *Wheler* assures us, p. 209. 3. *Nicomedia*, so called from *Nicomedes*, King of *Bythinia*, (the Son of *Zises*, and Grand-child to that *Bythinian* King, who so valiantly defended his own, and his Countries Liberty against *Calanus*, one of *Great Alexander's* Captains) by whom founded: Situate on the top of an Hill environed

environed with a pleasant and delightful Plain, honoured with the Seat and Residence of many of the *Roman* Emperors. when their Affairs called them into the East, before the building of *Constantinople*; on that occasion made the Throne on which many of God's Saints received the Crown of *Martyrdom*, especially in the Persecution under *Dioclesian*. In those times Wealthy, and of Fame now much decayed; but notwithstanding well inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, for the Commodiousness of the fresh Springs which are thereabouts. This City is now by the *Turks* call'd *Isnigimid*, and for shortness, *Isnia*. *Busbequius*, who saw this place, saith, there was nothing to be found in it worth the seeing, but Ruins and shattered Marbles, the Testimonies of its ancient Splendor and Glory; but the Castle which is built on an Hill, is yet more intire, and less injur'd. 4. *Libussa*, betwixt *Nicomedia*, and the River *Ascanius*, now call'd *Gebisa*, memorable for the Death and Sepulture of the famous *Annibal*, who to prevent his being made Prisoner to the *Romans*, when *Prusus* King of *Bythina* intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himself by Poyson. 5. *Prusa*, founded by another *Prusus*, whose Name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as most in *Asia*: Honoured for a long time with the Residence of the *Turkish* Kings, till the removal of their Seat to *Adrianople*, by *Mahomet* the First; and still ennobled with the Sepulture of the Princes of the *Ottoman* Race, except the Emperors themselves. By the *Turks* called *Bursa*. This City, saith *Mr. Wheeler*, who saw it, is seated on the Ascent of an Hill, with a pleasant fruitful Plain before it, and a Mountain behind it to the East, both covered with Trees, and is now fair, large, and populous in *Turks*, *Jews*, *Armenians*, and *Greeks*. It was taken by *Ottoman*, the Founder of the *Turkish* Empire, in the Year 1326, with the loss of 100000 of its Inhabitants, in the Siege, and vast Numbers more in the Sack. Its Walls were spared, but the Inhabitants pay a double *Caratach*, or Tribute to this Day, in revenge of the Resistance of their Ancestors; and the *Christians* are not suffer'd to live within the Walls. It is said to have 40000 *Turks*, 12000 *Jews*, and somewhat fewer *Christians*. But then *Philadar*, a large Town four Miles thence, has none but *Christians* in it. It has about 20 *Mosques*, and 2 *Seraglios*. It has no River, but great numbers of Springs from the Mountain behind it, and it has a reasonable good Trade; the *Caravans* from *Aleppo* and *Persia* passing this way to *Constantinople*, and *Smyrna*. The *Turks* live here in more Splendor than in other places, and have nobler Houses, and better Furnished. Our Author saith, *Orchanes* took it, which may be true, but it was in the Life of his Father, to whom *Orchanes* succeeded in the Year 1328. This City is within three days Journey of *Constantinople*, and sends every two Months a *Caravan* to *Persia*. *Tavernier*, p. 3. 6. *Nica*, or *Nicæa*, by the *Turks* called *Neichia*, but most commonly *Isnichs*, situate near the Fens of the River *Ascanius*, occasioned by the frequent overflowings of that River; by some affirmed to be the Metropolis of *Bythina*; but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claim that Honour. First, named *Antigonia*, from *Antigonus* the Founder of it; and afterwards *Nicaea*, by the name of *Nica*, Wife unto *Lysimachus*; both of them Captains of the Great *Alexander*, which last had the happiness to survive the overthrow of the former, and was the longest liver of those great Commanders. Sufficiently famous both in *Ecclesiastical* and *Civil* Story, for the first *General Council* there holden by the appointment of *Constantine* the Great, An. 325. for settling the Peace of the Church, then miserably distracted by the *Arian* Heresie. The number of Bishops there assembled, no more than 318. yet of such high esteem for Learning and Piety, that never Council hath been held in so great an Honour. Here was also held the Council by the Empress *Irene*, for establish-

ing the Veneration of Images; that passing by the name of the *Nicene Council*, the Acts thereof might be of greater Reputation amongst ignorant Men. In which it was decreed by such doubty Arguments, as *Let us make Man after our own Image*, once mainly insisted on by a *Legate* of the Eastern Churches, that they should be revered and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the blessed *Trinity* itself. In the Year 1098, this City was taken with a vast Expence of Blood and Treasure, from the *Saracens*, by *Franks* then going to the Holy War, and restored to *Alexius*, Emperor of the East, who in the Year 1105, restored it to them again. When the *Greeks* recover'd it, I cannot find. This City was also the Imperial City of the *Greek* Emperors, after the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, and there continued till the expulsion of the *Latins*, under these

Emperors of the GREEKS residing at NICE.

A. Ch.

1200. 1. *Theodorus Iascaris*, Son in-law to *Alexius Angelus* the Usurper, upon the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latins*, passed over into *Asia*, and fortifying the City of *Nice*, made it the head City of this Kingdom, containing *Bythina*, both the *Phrygias*, both the *Myssias*, *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and *Ionis*.
1223. 2. *John*, surnamed *Ducas*, the Husband of *Irene*, Daughter of *Theodore Iascaris*, succeeded his Father-in-law in the Empire; to which he added *Pontus*, most of the Isles of the *Ægean*, and not a few places of Importance in *Thrace* itself.
1256. 3. *Theodorus II.* the Son of *Ducas*.
1259. 4. *John II.* the Son of *Theodore* the Second, an Infant of about six Years old, supplanted first, and after cruelly deposed and deprived of sight.
1259. 5. *Michael Palæologus*, descended from the Imperial Family of the *Comneni*, first took upon him as Protector of the Infant Emperor, and afterwards as his Associate in the Empire; in which confirmed by many fortunate Successes, as well against the *Latins*, as some *Greek* Usurpers in *Thessaly* and *Peloponnesus*, especially the taking of *Constantinople*, he deprived the young Emperor of his Sight, made himself sole Emperor, and left it unto his Posterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continual Disquiets, till the Year 1452. when conquer'd by *Mahomet* the Great, as before was said. But this Recovery of *Constantinople* was the loss of *Nice*, taken not long after the removal of the Imperial Seat, by *Sultan Orchanes*, Anno 1330. who presently thereupon took on himself the Style of King, from which before he had abstain'd. *Busbequius*, who saw it, saith, it is seated on the Banks of the Lake *Ascanius*, and that its Gates and Walls are tolerably perfect; of the latter it hath only four, which may all be seen in the Center of the Market-place; they have all of them Latin Inscriptions, which mention *Antoninus* for their Founder. Whilst he was there, the *Turks* found a Statue in a Military Habit, which was almost perfect, but they fell presently to break it: *Busbequius* appearing concern'd so ancient and fine a Statue should be destroyed: the *Turk* asked him, if he would have had it preserv'd to worship it, as your manner is; which, considering the place where it happen'd is worth observing. Of the number of Inhabitants he saith nothing. One part of the City is built upon the Descent of a Hill, the other upon a Plain that reaches to the Sea, and forms the Gulf of *Isnich*, which has an Haven make by two Moles of Freestone. It has three *Arsenals* full of large Timber, for Gallies; and in the highest part of the Town *Amurath* built a *Seraglio*. The *Jews* inhabit the greatest part of the Town, and Trade mostly in Timber and Corn.

Corn. Taciturn. p. 3. 7. *Chakanagi*, a small Town built upon the side of a Lake, *Chaban Gigul*, which is ten Leagues in compass, and full of Fish. In this Town are two *Caravanferas*, or Inns, and a plenty of Fish.

As for the Fortunes of *Bythinia* it self, I look upon the *Bythinian* as a *Thracian* People, whom both *Strabo* and *Herodotus* speak of, as the Founders of the Name and Nation. Of such a King of theirs as *Bythinus*, I find some mention in my Authors; and possibly it may be he who had the leading of the *Töymt*, or *Bythin* in this Expedition, that being the Name rather of this Nation than his proper Family. But for the Line of Kings which held out till the flourishing of the *Roman* Greatness, they began to reign here some few Generations, before the time of *Philip*, and *Alexander*, the *Macedonians*: By which last, having other Employment, and lying out of the Road towards *Persia*, they were little troubled. *Calantus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, made an Expedition into their Country, and was vanquished by them; and afterwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, (one of *Alexander's* greatest Princes) who though he humbled them for the present, yet got he neither Title nor Possession by it. And thus they held it out till the time of *Perseus*, so shuffling with the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* Kings, that betwixt both they still preserved their own Estates. This *Perseus*, when the *Romans* became so considerable, as that no danger need be feared from *Greece*, or *Syria*, pieced himself with them; and having aided them in their Wars against *Philip* and *Antiochus* both, and most unworthily promised to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for Succour) unto their Ambassadors, made all sure to this Side. His Son, and Successor *Nicomedes*, being outed of his Kingdom by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and restored again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Feudatory*, as did *Nicomedes* his next Successor, surnamed *Philometor*: Who dying without Issue in the time of *Augustus*, gave his whole Kingdom to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bythinia*, continuing so till the division of that Empire into the Eastern and Western; when falling to the share of the *Constantinopolitans*, and with them to the Power of the *Turkish* Tyrants, in the Year 1630, who do still possess it.

2. PONTUS.

PONTUS is bounded on the East with *Colchis*, and *Armenia*; on the West with *Bythinia*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the North with the *Euxine* Sea; and on the South with *Phrygia Major*, *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*, from *Bythinia* to the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*, but not of answerable breadth; and gives Name to the Sea adjoining, à *Ponto regione illi adjacentē ita appellari*, as *Ortelius* hath it, called from hence *Pontus*, by the *Latins*; the adjunct of *Euxinus* coming on another occasion, which we have spoken of before. A Country of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Masters of it) into these four parts, viz. *Metapontus* or *Pontus*, specially so called. 2. *Pontus Galaticus*. 3. *Polemoniacus*; and 4. *Pontus Cappadocius*.

Pontus, especially so called, or *Metapontus*, bordering on *Bythinia*, and bounded on the East with the River *Parthumini*, which divided it from *Paphlagonia*, had for the chief Cities thereof, 1. *Clauropolis*, so called in Honour of *Claudius*, the *Roman* Emperor; as 2. *Flavio-polis*, in honour of *Flavius Vespasianus*; and 3. *Julio-polis*, in honour of the *Julian* Family; all midland Towns. 4. *Diospolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, so called from a Temple consecrated to *Jupiter*, of great resort. 5. *Heraclea*, a Colony of the *Phocians*, call'd for distinction

lake (there being many of that Name) *Heraclea Pontica*, memorable of late times for being the Seat and Residence of a branch of the Imperial Family of the *Comneni*; when at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western Christians, *David* and *Alexius Comneni* fled into these parts: The first fixing here his Royal Residence, commanded over this part of *Pontus*, and *Paphlagonia*; the other possessing himself of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trabezond* his Regal or Imperial City. But these two Empires, though of the same date, were of different Destinies; that of *Heraclea* and *Pontus*, being partly conquered by the *Greek* Emperors residing at *Nice*, and partly seized on by the *Turks* in the beginning and first Fortunes of the *Ottoman* Family; the other keeping up the Majesty and State of an Empire, till the Year 1461. when subdued by *Mahomet* the Great. (This City is now call'd *Penderachi* by the *Turks*, and stands 140 Miles from the *Bosphorus* to the East on the *Euxine* Sea.) 6. *Phylium*, at the Mouth, or Influx of the River *Phyllis*, upon which it is seated. 7. *Amastus*, the farthest Town of this part towards the East, on the Seaside also, once of great Strength; but taken by *Lucullus*, together with *Heraclea*, *Synope*, *Zmisus*, and other Towns, in the War against *Mithridates* the great King of *Pontus*.

2. Eastward of *Pontus*, specially so called, or *Metapontus*, as *Justin* the Historian calls it, lieth *Pontus Galaticus*, so named, because added to *Galatia* in the time of the *Romans*. The chief Cities whereof were, 1. *Synope*, pleasantly seated on a long Point, or Promontory, shooting into the Main, remarkable in ancient Story for the Birth and Sepulture of *Mithridates*, before mention'd; and in the latter times for being the chief Seat of the *Isfendiars*, a noble Family of the *Turks*, who had taken it with the rest of his Tract from the *Comneni*, and held it till the same Year in which the Empire of *Trabezond* was subdued by *Mahomet*. First built by the *Milesians*, and continuing in a free Estate, till taken by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*, and made the Metropolis of that Kingdom. This City is now call'd *Sinabe* by the *Turks*, as *Leunclavius* saith, and has had the good Fortune to preserve it self in a tolerable Estate under the depopulating *Turks*; but in the Year 1616, it fell into the Hands of the *Cossacks*, to its great Misery. This City, as *Sir Paul Ricaut* saith, is still a place of considerable Traffick, and made Rich by the Fishery; out of which, and the Customs the *Pascha* receives yearly, 734850 *Aspers*, and has 14 Castles under him, to secure his Government. *Turkish Max.* p. 25. 2. *Castamona*, the head City of the Principality of the *Isfendiars* before-mention'd; prefer'd by them for Strength and Conveniency of Situation before *Heraclea*, or *Synope*. It stands in the borders of *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, as *Cinnamus* saith, who mentions it, because taken by *John Comnenus*, Emperor of the East, from the *Persians*, and soon after re-taken by them again, though not without great Difficulty and Slaughter of the Inhabitants. This War was in or about the Years of *Christ* 1121, and 1122. And he calls the *Persian* Prince *Tanisman*, King of *Cappadocia*, who soon after died, and was succeeded by *Mahomet* his Son, from whom this Prince retook it, and maintain'd it, though often attempted by them. It fell finally into the Hands of *Mahomet* the Great, in the Year 1461, with *Trebisonde*. 3. *Themisocyra*, now call'd *Panagoria*, or *Lurio*, seated on a spacious Plain near unto the Sea, and anciently giving Name to the Province adjoining. 4. *Amasia*, the Birth-place of *Strabo* the Geographer, remarkable in the Ecclesiastical Histories for the Martyrdom of *St. Theodorus*, and of late times for being the Residence of the eldest Sons of the Grand Seignor, sent hither as soon as Circumcised, never returning back again till the Death of their Father. Accounted now amongst the Cities of *Cappadocia*, and the chief of that Province, a midland Town. *Amasia*, saith *Busbequius*, is almost the Principality of *Cappadocia*, and the Seat of a *Turks* Prefect, or Governor.

It stands on both sides of the River *Ius*, and is flanked on both sides again by Hills, on which it is so built, that it appeareth like a Theatre divided by a River; the Hill beyond it so enclosed it on all sides, that there is but one Passage to it passable for Carts or Wagons. It is seated upon the *Euxine* Sea, and has a Harbour, and a strong Castle; but the Streets, or Houses, had nothing worth the seeing, except some broken Fragments of Antiquities which yet shew this was the Seat of the Kings of *Cappadocia*; though now imploy'd in mean and nasty beggarly Cottages. The *Turks*, as he observeth, thought this City very unfortunate on the account of *Mustapha*, who was here put to Death by the order of his Father, in the Year 1553. He observeth also, that the Inhabitants were more inclin'd to the *Persians* than *Turks*, who sometimes made Inroads to this place. 5. *Cabira*, call'd afterward *Diospolis*, memorable for the great Defeat which *Lucullus* gave there unto *Mithridates*, more for the trick which *Mithridates* there put upon *Lucullus*. For being well acquainted with the covetousness of the *Romans*, he saw no better way to save himself and the rest of his Forces after the Defeat, than to scatter his Treasures in the way which he was to take; that by that means his Enemies might slacken the Pursuit, to collect the Spoils, and he preserve himself to another day; and so accordingly it proved. 6. *Comana*, toldifference it from another of that name, call'd *Comana Pontica*; to which other, being of *Cappadocia*, or *Armenia Minor*, *Mithridates* came in safety by the trick aforesaid, and thence escaped unto *Tigranes* the *Armenian* King, with 2000 Horse.

3. Eastward of *Pontus Galaticus* lies *Polemoniaca*, so call'd by the *Romans* either from *Polemonium*, a chief Town of this Tract, or from *Polemo*, the last King hereof, after whose Death this Kingdom came unto the *Romans*. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Polemonium* on the Seaside, spoken of before. 2. *Hermanassa*, a Sea-Town also. More in the Land. 3. *Neo-Cæsarea* (now *Nixaria*) the Metropolis of *Polemoniaca*, when made a Province of it self. This City is famous for two Synods here held, the first in the Year 261. under *Gregory* Bishop of this place; and the other in the Year 313. it is now in a tolerable good Estate, and is the usual Residence of a *Turkish* *Sangiac*. 4. *Zela*, enlarged by *Pompey*, and call'd *Megalopolis*; by *Constantine* laid unto the Province of *Helenopontus*. 5. *Sebastia*, so call'd in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* call'd *Sebastos*, a place of great Strength, and one of the first Towns in the *Lesser Asia*, which held out against *Tamerlane*; in revenge whereof, when he had took it, he caused 12000 Men, Women, and Children, to be most cruelly buried alive in some hollow Pits which he had digged for that purpose. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow; where also *Tamerlane* with an Army of 800000 of his *Tartars*, encountred with *Bajazet* the *Turk*, coming to the relief of *Sebastia*, with an Army of 500000 fighting Men. The issue of which fight was this, that *Bajazet* having lost 200000 of his Soldiers, was himself taken prisoner, and carried by the insolent Conqueror in an iron Cage, against the Bars whereof he beat out his Brains. Now the Seat of a *Beglierbeg* who has six *Sangiacs* under him, and is call'd by them *Savas*. 6. *Barbiniſſa*. 7. *Megalossus*. 8. *Gozalvia*, &c. not much observable in Story.

In this part of *Pontus* is the rise and fall of the River *Thermodon*, on the Banks whereof the *Amazons*, a sort of warlike Women are said to dwell; so called either *quasi ἀμαζας*, because they used to cut off their right Paps, that they might not be an Impediment to their Shooting; or from *α* and *μαζα*, *sine pane*, because they used not to eat Bread; or from *αμαζιν*, because they used to live together. They were originally of *Scythia*, and accompanied their Husbands to these parts, about the time of the *Scy-*

thians first irruptions into *Asia*, in the time of *Sesostris* King of *Aegypt*. The Leaders of this People into *Cappadocia* were *Plinus* and *Scolopitlus*, two young Men of a great House, whom a contrary Faction had banished. They held a great Hand over the *Tamircus*, who inhabited this Region, and the Nations round about them. At last they were by Treachery all murder'd: But their Wives now doubly vexed, both with Exile and Widowhood, and extremity of Grief and Fear producing its usual effect, Desperateness, they set upon the Conquerors under the conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marphesia*; and not only overthrew them, but also infinitely enlarged their Dominions, and for some time continued in great Reputation: The Names of whom, or of so many of them at least as occur in Story, we shall here subjoyn.

The Amazon Queens.

1. { *Lampedo*, } First Queens of the *Amazons* in these parts.
 { *Marphesia*, }
2. *Ortara*.
3. *Antiopa*, whose Sisters *Hippolite* and *Menalippe*, challenged *Hercules* and *Theseus* to single Combat, and were at last hardly vanquished, to their eternal Credits.
4. *Penthesilea*, who came with a Troop of brave *Virago's*, to the aid of *Priamus* King of *Troy*; she invented the Battle-Axe, and was at last slain by *Pyrhus*, Son to *Achilles*. Long after her Death reigned *Thalestris*, who came to *Alexander*, being in *Hyrcania*, and plainly told him, that she came to be his Bedfellow; which done, she returned; and at last by little and little this female Nation was extinct. They used in matters of Copulation to go to their neighbouring Men thrice in a Year; if they brought forth Males, they sent them to their Fathers; if Females, they kept them, and trained them up in all Discipline of War and Courage. Of these more elsewhere.

4 The most Eastern part of *Pontus*, call'd *Cappadocius*, for that it bordered on that Province, and for a time was added to it by the *Romans*; extended from *Polemoniaca* to *Colchis*, and the River *Euphrates*, the utmost boundaries of this Country. Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Pharnacia*, built by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*. 2. *Cerasus*, by *Constantine* laid unto the Province of *Polemoniaca*, from whence *Cheerins* were brought first to *Rome*, An. U. C. 680. call'd therefore *Cerasa* by the *Latins*; first brought into *Italy* by *Lucullus*, at the end of his War with *Mithridates*, no less deserving for that Service to be made a God (as wittily *Tertullian* scoffs it) than *Bacchus* was for his transplanting of the Vine from the Eastern Countries. 3. *Icopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, as the others are. And so is also 4. *Trapezus*, now *Trabzon*, the Imperial City of the *Comneni* here reigning over *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, and these parts of *Pontus*. An Empire founded first by *Alexius Comnenus*, (Nephew of the great Tyrant *Andronicus Comnenus* by his Son *Emanuel*) who at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, fled into these parts, which willingly submitted unto his command, An. 1200. Here his Posterity flourished in great prosperity, preserving the Majesty of the Empire in a better measure, than the *Constantinopolitans* themselves, till the time of *David* the last Emperor; in whose Reign the City of *Trabzon*, and therewith all the whole Dominion belonging to it, was taken by *Mahomet* the Great, in the Year 1461. the poor Emperor led prisoner unto *Greece*, and there cruelly murder'd. A famous Empory, and specially for the Trade of Fish, caught by the People on the shores of the *Euxine* Sea: here salted, and from hence transported in great quantities to *Constantinople*, *Cassa*, and other places. And for the better help herein, it is said that there is a Mountain not far from this City, affording a black Stone, which being beaten in a Mortar, serves instead of

Salt wherewith they season the Fish which they send abroad. A City honoured heretofore with the Residence of the Lord Deputies, or Lieutenants of the *Græcian* Emperor, for defence of the out-parts of the *Euxine* against the *Persians*; and now the Station of such Gallies as are maintain'd by the *Grand Seigneur*, to scour the Coasts of the *Black-Sea*, and secure their Trade. This City was taken and sack'd by the *Cossacks* in the Year 1616. It is still a place of considerable Trade, made rich by Fishing, and a sort of Linen-Crape here made; the *Pascha* hath 734850 *Aspers* of Revenue, with 14 Castles to defend the City. More in the Land stand, 5. *Zephiriæ*. 6. *Aza*. 7. *Cocalis*. 8. *Cordyle*; and many others named in *Ptolomy*, but not observable.

Emperors of *TRABEZOND*.

1204. 1. *Alexius Comnenus*, surnamed the Great, who being Governour of *Trabezond*, under the Emperor, when *Constantinople* was taken by the *Franks*, in the Year 1204. took upon him the Sovereignty of that City by the Title of Duke only, or Lord of *Trabezond*.
2. *N. Comnenus*, Duke and Prince of *Trabezond*, Son of *Alexius*.
3. *N. Comnenus*, whose Parents are not known, but he was certainly descended of *Alexius*.
1274. 4. *Joannes Comnenus*, who was the first of these Princes that assumed the Name of Emperor of *Trabezond*, in opposition to *Michael Paleologus*, who had imbraced the *Latin* Rites in the Council of *Lyons*; he Married *Eudocia*, Daughter of this *Michael*, in the Year 1276. and died *Anno* 1295.
1295. 5. *Alexius Comnenus* II. Emperor of this Family, Born in 1282. he beat the *Genouese* in the Year 1303.
1320. 6. *Basilus Comnenus*, Son of *Alexius*, Pope *John* 22. wrote to this Prince in the Year 1329.
7. *Basilus Comnenus* II. call'd by *Nicephorus*, *Gregora* the younger, who was murder'd by his Wife in 1339.
1339. 8. *N. Comnenus* III. Son of *Basilus* the II.
9. *Alexius Comnenus* III. when he began his Reign is not known, nor whether he were Son, or Brother of his Predecessor.
1449. 10. *Joannes Comnenus* II. call'd *Calojannes*, or the Beautiful; he slew his Father, to attain the Empire, which he defended with great difficulty against the *Turks*, and at last was forced to pay 3000 Crowns in Gold to *Amurath*, Son of *Mahomet* II.
11. *David Comnenus*, Brother of *John*, who was conquer'd by *Mahomet* the Great, in the Year 1461. when he had reigned but a short time. His 7 Sons were all slain by the Conqueror, because they would not renounce the *Christian* Religion, and turn *Mahometans*; so ended this Noble Family.

Transcrib'd from Du Fresne de familiis Bizantinis, cap. 29.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were call'd *Leucosyræ*, or *White Syrians*, govern'd by a race of Kings descended from the Royal House of *Archemenes* King of *Persia*. The first of them call'd *Mithridates*, one of the seven Competitors for the *Persian* Kingdom on the death of *Cambyses*. But that Honour falling on *Darius*, (of which more hereafter) he seated himself in these remote parts of *Asia Minor*; the Ancestor of many great and puissant Princes, but none more memorable than one of his own Name, *Regum Orientis post Alexandrum*, *Magnum Maximus*, the most potent King of all the East since the time of *Alexander* the Great, as my Au-

thor hath it. A Prince of great Abilities both in War and Counsel, and one who longer held it out against the *Romans*, than *Pyrrhus*, *Annibal*, and the great Kings of *Macedon* and *Syria* had done together. This was that famous *Mithridates*, who being once a friend and confederate of the *Romans*, took their part against *Antiochus*; who would not consent to the admission of the *Romans* unto *Pergamus*, according to the Will of *Attalus*. Afterwards conceiving an ambitious hope to obtain the Monarchy of *Asia*, in one night he plotted and effected the death of all the *Roman* Citizens dispersed in *Anatolia*, being in number 150000: In like manner, as in after times the *English*, taught perhaps by this Example, murder'd all the *Danes* then resident in *England*; and the *Sicilians* massacred all the *French* inhabiting *Sicily*, as we have formerly declar'd. He dispossessed *Nicomedes*, Son to *Prusias*, King of *Bythia*; *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, and *Philumenes* King of *Paphlagonia*, of their Estates; because they persisted faithful to his Enemies of *Rome*. He excited the *Grecians* to rebel, possess'd himself of *Athens*, and divers places of Importance in *Greece*, *Thrace*, and *Asia*, and allured all the Isles, except *Rhodes*, from their Obedience to the *Romans*. And finally, having disturbed their Victories, and much shaken their Estate, for the space of 40 Years, he was with much ado vanquished by the Valour and Felicity of *L. Sylla*, *Lucullus*, and *Pompey* the Great; three of the greatest Soldiers that ever the *Roman* Empire knew. Yet did not the *Roman* Puissance so much pluck down his proud Heart, as the Rebellion of his Son *Pharnaces* against him; which he no sooner heard, but he would have poyson'd himself; but having formerly so used his Body to a kind of poyson allayed, (which from his inventing of it, we now call *Mithridate*) that the *Venom* could not work upon him, he slew himself. He is said to have been an excellent Scholar, and to have spoken perfectly the Languages of 22 Nations; the Languages of so many Nations, which were subject to him. But neither his Learning nor his Courage could preserve him from those common Miseries which ordinarily attend a falling greatness. And so ended this long and tedious War, exceeding troublesome to the *Romans*, but withal very beneficial. For under colour of having given aid to *Mithridates*, they took in *Crete*, *Galatia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and both *Armenia's*: Insomuch, as it is said truly by *L. Flor.* *Totum penè Orientem & Septentrionem involvit*, that in his Ruins he involved both the East and North. But to proceed, after his Death the Kingdom continued unto his Posterity, but *Tributaries* to the *Romans*, till the time of *Nero*: When *Polemo* the last King hereof dying without Issue, it was cantoned and divided into many parts, and laid unto the Provinces of *Bythia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*; only that part of it which was call'd *Polemoniacus*, retaining the dignity of a Province, distinct and separate. And so it remained till the Reign of *Constantine the Great*, who changing the Names, lessening the Bounds, and increasing the number of the Provinces, left only the Province of *Pontus* and *Bythia* in the state he found it. And for the rest, he cast it into two new Provinces, that towards the East, retaining the Name, but not the Bounds of the old *Polemoniacus*, wherein were the Cities of *Trapezus*, *Neo-Cæsarea*, *Cerasus*, *Comana*, *Ponticu*, *Palemonium*, and *Petræorum Civitas*, call'd afterwards *Justiniana*, of which *Neo-Cæsarea* was the *Metropolis*. That towards the East, separated from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bythia*, by the River *Parthemius*, he caused to be call'd *Helienopontus*, by the name of *Helena* his Mother; and thereunto assign'd the Cities of *Amasia* the *Metropolis* of it, *Ibora*, *Euchaita*, *Zela*, *Andrapus*, *Algeum*, *Climacus*, *Synopo*, *Amisus*, and *Leontopolis*. But this Division held not long, both being united into one, and call'd *Helienopontus* by *Justinian*; continuing after that a Member of the *Roman* Empire, till the coming of *David* and *Alexius Comneni*, from *Constantinople*, in the Year 1200. whereof the one reigned in *Heraclea*, and the other in *Trabezond*, as before is said. But their Estates being overthrown,

thrown, it remains wholly to the *Turks*, who do now possess it, ever since the Year 1461.

The Arms of the Emperors of *Trabzon*, the greatest Princes of these parts, till the *Turks* subdued them, were *Or*, and Eagle volant *Gules*.

3. PAPHLAGONIA.

Paphlagonia is bounded on the East with the River *Halys*, by which parted from *Cappadocia*; on the West by the River *Parthemi*, which parteth it from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bythia*; on the North with that part of the Kingdom of *Pontus* which was named *Galaticus*; and on the South with *Phrygia Major* and *Galatia*. So called of *Paphlago* the Son of *Ibicus*, established in it by his Father, who had newly conquered it.

The Country was but small, and of little power, and consequently the Cities were not very many, and of no great note. The principal of such as were, were, 1. *Gangra*, observable for a Council holden there in the Primitive times, Anno 327. commonly call'd *Synodus Gangrensis*. 2. *Conica*, or *Contata*, of so convenient a Situation, that it was entrenched and fortified by *Mitridates*, when he was Master of this Country. To this place was *Discorus* the *Eutychian* banished by *Martian* the Emperor, in the Year 451. and *Timotheus Alurus*, a Monk of that Faction, by *Leo* his Successor in the Empire in the Year 457. It was then an Arch-Bishop See, and at this day is call'd *Cangria* by the *Greeks* and *Kienpara* by the *Turks*. 3. *Amisopolis*, raised out of the Foundation of some lesser Town by *Pompey* the Great and thence named. 4. *Germanopolis*. 5. *Amma*. 6. *Amudava*, called afterward *Nova Claudopolis*, to distinguish it from another City of that Name in *Pontus*.

This Province, though but small in Circuit, was heretofore the Seat of four different Nations, viz. 1. The *Tibareni*, of whom it is said that they never waged War on any Enemy, but they faithfully certified them before-hand of the time and place of their Fight. 2. The *Heptacometae*. 3. The *Moynæci*, both which were a People so beastly and shameless, that they used to perform the work of Generation in Publick; not knowing that *Multa sunt beneficia facta, quæ sunt turpia visa*. And 4. The *Heneti*, to whom the *Venetians*, as we have already said, do owe their first Original. The Kings which ruled in this Country, derived themselves from *Philomenes*, who assisted *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his defence against the *Greeks*: In memory of whom, this Region for a while was call'd *Philemema*. Applying themselves unto the Times, they were always favourable to the strongest, serving the *Persians*, and submitting to *Alexander* as he passed that way; and so maintained their Estate without much molestation, till the time of *Mitridates* King of *Pontus*; who finding them firm unto the *Romans*, then growing to great Power in the Lesser *Asia*, depriving *Philomenes*, then King hereof, and took the Kingdom to himself, fortifying the chief Towns and places of it. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the Power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his Death. But the Country being very much wasted, and most of the Cities of it destroyed, and desolate in the course of that War, it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid unto *Galatia*. Not reckoned a distinct Province in the time of *St. Peter*, who writing to the *Jews*, dispersed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Asia*, and *Bythia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*; nor was it otherwise esteemed than as a Member of *Galatia* in the time of *Ptolemy*. Afterwards it was joyned to *Pontus* by the Emperor *Constantine*; part of it after that, with some parts of *Pontus* and *Bythia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperor *Theodosius*, and call'd *Honorius*, in the honour of his Son *Honorius*, whereof *Claudiopolis*, a City of *Pontus* properly so call'd, was made the Metropolis. But by *Justinian*, the name of *Honorius* being abolished, and that of *Paphla-*

gonia revived again, the whole Country, as before limited, was govern'd by an Imperial Officer, whom he call'd *Prætor Justinianus*; continuing under the Command of the *Constantinopolitans*, till the taking of that City by the *Lans*. After which made a Member of the Empire of *Trabzon*, till the conquest of it by the *Turks* in 1461. by whom call'd *Rom*.

4. GALATIA.

Galatia is bounded on the East with *Cappadocia*; on the West with the River *Sangarius*, and some part of *Pontus* specially so call'd, or *Alatene*; on the North with *Paphlagonia*; on the South with *Lycia*. So called from the *Galli*, who having ranged over *Greece*, passed into *Asia*, and brought a great part of it under their Command: But being broken by *Antiochus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Asia* and the Lesser *Phrygia*, were at last confined to this Country. It was also call'd *Gallo Græcia*, from that mixture of *Galls* and *Greeks*, who uniting into one Body, when they came for *Asia*, were commonly call'd *Gallo Græci*. By *Suidas* *Græco Galli*, and the Country said to be *Græco Gallia*. Which mixture of *Græci* notwithstanding, the *Galls* (being both the greater and prevailing Party) not only preserved their own Language, but in short time made it the common Language of the whole Country, as it continued so till *St. Paul's* time, as he sheweth in the Preface to his Commentaries on *St. Paul's* Epistles to this People, that it was *Similima Troasempe*, as like to that of the *Troas*, or People of *Troas*, as *Troas* and certain Argument of their first Original.

The Country very plentiful of all manner of Food, even unto Voluptuousness; and providently provided of the Stone call'd the *Amulet*, which is said to preserve from Drunkenness the Man that weareth it. The Name doth signifie as much, derived from a *privium*, and *μέθυς*, *ebrius*, which cometh from *μέθυ*, signifying Wine.

The People had a custom in their publick Funerals, to cast Letters fairly written into that last and fatal Fire, wherein the dead Body was to be burned, supposing that their Friends should read them in the other World. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency whereof they excell'd all Nations; insomuch, that *Athanasius* telleth us of one *Artemus*, a rich *Galatian*, that he feasted the whole Nation for a Year together with the *Sacrifices* of Bulls, Sheep, Swine, and other Provisions, hoyle in great Chaldrons made for that purpose, and distributed amongst them in Tents and Booths erected for that Entertainment. A brave flash of vain-glorious Hospitality.

Rivers of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Halys*, *Sangarius*, and some others. The Towns of most consideration in it were, 1. *Amisopolis*, on the Banks of the River *Sangarius*, the chief City of the *Tectosages*, a *Gallick* Nation, and the Metropolis of the whole Country; memorable in Church Story for a *Synod* held here in the Primitive times, Anno 399. call'd *Synodus Zeyrana*; but of most note at the present for the making of *Chambers*: now call'd *Zingari*. *Sir Paul Ricaut* calls it *Zeyran*, and saith it is the Seat of a *Turkish Saracen*. 2. *Oluntis*. 3. *Agri-namas*, Cities of the same People also. 4. *Tarum*, or *Tanium*, (for I find both Names) the chief City of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmi*, where was a brazen Statue of *Jupiter*, whose Temple there was a privileged Sanctuary. 5. *Androsia*. 6. *Phabarena*, Cities of that Nation also. 7. *Thermae*, a *Roman* Colony, so called of the hot Baths there; the chief City of the *Tolistobogii*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Tolistobogi*, as *Strabo* nameth them. 8. *Talchibecora*, belonging also to that People.

Besides the Nations above nam'd, here dwelt also the *Byceni* and *Proclimmæ*, who had also their peculiar Cities, mention'd by Name in *Ptolemy*, but of little or no observation in the course of Story. Of all which

Nations, only the *Trojan* were of the *Gallick* Original; who with others of their Country-men, under the Conduct of *Belgus* and *Brennus*, having ransacked *Pannonia* and *Illyricum*, fell at last into *Macedon*, where having tyrannized a while, and laid waste the Country, they were at last vanquished and expelled by *Antigonus Gonatas*. After this overthrow, under the Conduct of *Lamproius*, and *Lutorius*, they ferried over the *Hellepont*, and subdued almost all *Asia Minor* on this side the *Taurus*, employed thereby those petty Kings and States against one another: Their Reputation grown so great, that no Prince thought himself secure without their Alliance, or able to make War without their Assistance. The very *Switzers* of that Age, as mercenary, but more faithful unto those that hired them. But being over-rigorous, in compelling their neighbouring Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too severe in the exacting of their *Tributes*, they enforced *Attalus*, King of *Pergamus*, by whose favour they had settled about the *Hellepont*, to become their Enemy. Vanquished by him, they were constrain'd to contain themselves within the bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was call'd *Gallatia*, and *Gallo-Græcia*. Here for a while they kept their ancient Courage and Estimation, molesting many times their Neighbours, and sometimes setting themselves to hire in the Wars of others; but in the end they lost both Courage and Esteem, and were *Gauls* only in Name, retaining little in them of their Ancestors Valour. For as most Plants and Trees lose much of their Virtue, being transplanted into another Soil; so these Men lost their native Courage, Strength, and Hardiness, being weakned by the *Asian* Pleasures and Delicates. And as *Tully* saith, for a Man to be good in other places, is no Mastery; but in *Asia* to lead a temperate Life, is indeed Praise-worthy: So might one have said to the *Gauls*, that to be courageous and patient of travel amongst the Mountains, was no whit to be admir'd, but to have continued so amidst the delights of *Asia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But these Men were so far from assailing the *Romans* in the *Capitol*, that they lost their own Country to *Manlius*, a *Roman* General. A War which *Manlius* undertook for no other Cause, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* against the *Romans*; nor was there any memorable Act performed herein; but that of *Chiomena* the King's Wife, who being ravished by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage whilst he busied himself in telling the Money agreed on for her Ransom, to cut off his Head, which she presented to her Husband. But *Manlius* got little Honour by his Success, not being welcomed with a *Triumph* at his coming Home, according to the *Roman* custom, because he undertook the War of his own accord, without Commission from the *Senate*. And yet the *Senate* was content to enjoy the Fruits of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their *Vassalories*. This happen'd *An. V. C. 564*. After which time I find *Deiotarus*, by consent of the *Romans*, to reign here as King; who siding with *Pompey* in his War against *Cæsar*, incur'd the anger of the Victor; and had died for it, had not *Tully* pleaded his Cause, and obtained his Pardon. But he being dead, his Country in the time of *Augustus* was made a Province of the Empire; *Lolius Paulinus* being the first President or Governor of it; enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and some part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galatienus*. Reduced to its first bounds by the Emperor *Constantine*, and divided into two Provinces by *Theodosius*, the one call'd *Galatia Prima*, the other *Salutaris* from its medicinal Waters. Of both which *Antiochia* remained the Metropolis. In the falling of the *Eastern* Empire, it was partly seized on by the *Turks*; not totally come into their Hands, till the subverting of the Empire of *Trabzon*, upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chiangar*; and is under the Government of a *Sanguak*, who is one of the 14 Deputies of the *Beglerbeg* of *Anatolia*.

5. CAPPADOCIA.

Cappadocia is bounded on the East with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Armenia Minor*; on the West with *Galatia*; on the North with *Pontus Euxinensis*, and *Cappadocius*; and on the South with *Lycaonia*, and the rest of *Armenia Minor*. So called of the River, as *Pliny* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it and *Galatia*.

The Country very plentiful of Wine, and most kind of Fruits, rich in Mines of Silver, Brass, Iron, and Allom; affording also besides a mean sort of *Alabastrer*, good store of *Crystal*, *Jasper*, and the *Onyx* stone: But the greatest Wealth hereof is their breed of Horses, infinite almost in numbers, and fit for any Service they can be put to. And this is universal in all parts of the Country, but not the other; there being some parts of it mountainous and very barren, especially about the Spurs and Branches of the *Antitaurus*, which is a chain of Hills, thrusting out of the *Taurus*, and bending themselves unto the North, upon the edges of this Country, and the two *Armenias*. Here is also in this Country the Mountain *Sargisus*, said to be of so great an height, that from one of the summits, or tops thereof, a Man of perspicuous Eyes may discern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The People of this Country in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, so vicious and lewd of Life, so monstrously addicted to all kind of Wickedness, that besides the share they had in the old *Greek* Proverb, of *Τεινιστὴν καὶ ῥάϊον*, they had some Proverbs to themselves, *Καππαδοκίαν* and *Καππαδοκίον τέρας*, that is to say, a *Man* of *Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian* Monster, being used proverbially, to signify a Man most extremely wicked. The words so used by *Gregory Nazianzen*, speaking of *Gregory*, or *George*, the *Arian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, if either *Suidas* or *Erasmus*, two right learned Critics, understand him rightly. And they made good the Proverb in the times of the Gospel. *Gregory* that bloody Butcher of *Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Asterius*, *Eustathius*, principal Patrons of the *Arians*, and that Arch Heretick *Euzoimus*, being all of this Country. Yet such is the influence of *Christianity*, where once entertain'd, that this lewd disposition of the *Cappadocians* was so corrected and restrained by it, that this Country afforded as many godly Prelates, and courageous Martyrs, as any other whatsoever. Highly commended for it by *Jerome*, before remembred, who with *Gregory Nyssen*, and *St. Basil*, all learned and religious Bishops, were all *Cappadocians*. And amongst many Martyrs of great Faith and Constancy, *St. George*, a noble *Cappadocian*, Colonel or Tribune of Soldiers under *Dioclesian*, more celebrated in the Churches both East and West, than any other Saint in the Calendar, the blessed Apostles and Evangelists excepted only, and for that reason made Patron of the Order of the Garter by *Edward the Third*. Finally, it is reported of these *Cappadocians*, that they were not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous also; insomuch, that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the Man's Blood was a poyson to the Snake, and killed him.

Principal Rivers of this Country, were, 1. *Halys*, spoken of before, which had here its Fountain and Original; the end of *Cæsar*'s Empire both in site and fate, the utmost bounds of his Dominions on that side; which purposing to pass over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountred with, and vanquished by *Cyrus* the great King of *Persia*. 2. *Issus*, which ariseth in this Country also, and passing through it, and a part of *Pontus*, dischannelleth it self, as the other doth, in the *Euxine* Sea.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Antiochia*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperor *Tiberius*, after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire; and in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, by him call'd *Caesarea*, the Metropolis

Metropolis of *Cappadocia*, and the Episcopal See of renowned *St. Basil*. Now call'd *Caesar* by the *Greeks*, and *Tocat* by the *Turks*. *Tavernier*, who saw it, saith it is at this day a good fair City, built round about a large Rock; on the top of which is a Castle well Garrison'd. It is also well inhabited by *Turks*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Jews*: The *Christians* have in it 12 Churches, and an Arch-Bishop; two Monasteries for Men, and two for Women. Very near it runs a fair River, over which there is a beautiful Stone-bridge. To the North of it lies a fruitful Plain full of Villages, which is two or three days Journey over it. Here all the *Caravans* from the East meet, and disperse themselves afterwards into their several Countries. From this place the whole Province of *Cappadocia* is now call'd *Tocat* by the *Turks*, and is under a *Sangiac* who is subje& to the *Biglerbeg* of *Caramania*. 2. *Nyssa*, the See of *Gregory*, surnamed *Nyssenus*, the Brother of *Basil*. 3. *Nazianzum*, the Episcopal See of another *Gregory*, surnamed *Nazianzenus*; three Men, which as for the Piety of their Conversation they were not equalled in those times; so for their admirable Abilities in all kind of Learning, nothing more interior to the most eminent of the ancient *Greeks*. 4. *Tyana* the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia secunda*, after the sub-division of it by the Emperor *Valens*. 5. *Archelais* in the *Præfecture* of *Isauria*, so called from *Archelaus* a *Cappadocian* King, the Founder or Repairer of it. 6. *Comana*, for distinctions sake call'd *Comana Cappadocia*, to difference it from another of that Name in *Pontus*, by *Ptolomy* placed. I know not why, in *Armenia Minor*, as is also *Nyssa* before-mention'd. Memorable in old times for a Temple consecrated to *Bellona*, whose Priests and other inferior Officers of both Sexes amounted in the time of *Strabo* to 6000 and upward; for maintenance of whom the Priests receiv'd the Revenue of the Region next adjoyning to it; in honour next unto the King, and commonly of the same kindred also. 7. *Dio-Cæsarea*, call'd formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Strabo*. 8. *Faustopolis*, so call'd in honour of *Faustina*, Wife of the Emperor *Antoninus*. 9. *Andraca*. 10. *Phura*. 11. *Salambria*. 12. *Campæ*, spoken of by *Ptolomy* with many others as obscure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the ancient Writers, is, 13. *Ereburum*, situate on the very confines of the *Greater Armenia*, for that cause made the Rendezvous or place of meeting for the *Turkish* Soldiers when there is any Expedition in hand against the *Persians*; at which place also after the ending of the War for the present Year, they are disbanded and sent home to their several Quarters. This is one of the Frontier Cities between the *Turks* and *Persians*, seated on the Banks of the *Euphrates*, (which is yet but small) on the Southside, ten German Miles from *Trebezond* to the S. E. upon the edge of a large Plain, environed with Mountains, and beautified with fair Villages. The Houses in it are all built with Timber; but then it has a large Castle built with Stone, in which a *Turkish* *Basha* resides. This City was once more beautiful than now it is. The Air is very cold about this place, and the Country produceth no Wine; but it being a place of great Thorowfare for the Eastern *Caravans*, and seated near *Trebezond*, the *Turks* have made it their Magazin for their *Persian* Wars. And 14. *Pterium*, not named in *Ptolomy*, but memorable for the great Battle fought in sight thereof, between *Craesus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Persia*; in which *Craesus* having lost the Field, and with it his Kingdom, found the Oracle true, (tho' not in the sense that he expected) that *Craesus* passing over the River *Halys*, should overthrow a great Estate, as indeed he did; but it was his own, and not the *Persians*.

That the *Cappadocians* are derived from *Togarma*, the Son of *Gomer*, hath been so fully proved already in our *General Preface*, that we shall not trouble our selves to repeat it here; nor shall we need to say more in confuting

of their Opinion, who would fetch *Cappadocia* out of *Egypt* from the rest of his Brethren, to plant him in this Country, than hath there been said. Their Fortunes in the former times I find little of; subjected by the *Persians*, with the rest of *Asia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Cyrus*, who before had given the Law unto it, as to the *Lygians*, *Parthians*, *Bythinians*, *Armenians*, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given, together with *Argis* his Sister, to *Pompeus* a Noble *Persian*, who had saved him from the fury of a ravenous *Lion* running upon him with fell Mouth, as he was Hunting. A noble Loyalty, and nobly royally rewarded. From him descended *Antiochus* King hereof in the time of *Alexander* the Great, continuing steadfast in his Duty to the Crown of *Persia*, when almost all the rest of the Kings of *Asia* yielded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call him to account in his march for *Persia*. But after his decease, *Pompeus* having the command of the Army, set upon him, vanquished him, and most cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kindred as could be found. One of his Sons, who fortunately had escaped this slaughter, spying his time when the *Macedonians* were at Wars amongst themselves recovered his Estate again, and passed it over to his Offspring: continuing in his Line, without any subjection, till the time of that *Antiochus*, who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his Dominion, as was told before. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he became their Homager, holding, as did his Successors, by their courtesy only: Continuing yet in state of Kings, till the Death of *Archelaus* the last King hereof; who having angered *Tiberius* for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the life-time of *Augustus*, as did others of the Tributary States and Princes, was by him then possessed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting somewhat against the State. Where the old Prince, even spent with Age, the Gout, and some other Diseases, had without question been condemned by the servile Senate, but that one of the Witnesses deposed, that he had said, That if ever he went back into *Cappadocia*, *Tiberius* should find, quales nervi sibi essent, what a man he was. Which moved such a laughter in the Senate, the old King being neither able to sit nor stand, that he was dismissed; *Tiberius* thinking that he could not punish him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour which the old King construed to the best, and in the way of gratitude bequeathed his Kingdom at his Death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was exceedingly enlarged by the addition of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*; and so it stood in the time of *Ptolomy*, who reckoneth *Pontus Galaticus*, *Cappadocius*, and *Polemoniæus*, as parts and Members of this Province. Divided besides those, into these eight *Præfectures*, that is to say, *Clavianensis*, *Sargaranensis*, *Gardicretæ*, *Cilicæ*, *Tyanidis*, *Lycæoniæ*, *Antiochiæ*, and *Cataonia*. But *Pontus*, *Lycæonia*, and *Antiochiæ* (he means *Pisidia*, as I take it) being made Provinces of themselves, by the Emperor *Constantine*, it returned unto its natural bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Cæsaria*, as is said before, was the *Metropolitan*; and so remained, till the Emperor *Valens*, a great Patron of the *Arian* Faction, of purpose to despight *St. Basil*, who opposed that Heresie, created another Province out of it, call'd *Cappadocia secunda*, whereof the *Metropolis* was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eastern Empire, till the erecting of the new Empire of *Trebezond*, together with which it fell unto the Hands of the *Turks*; by whom the whole Province, with the addition of *Pontus*, is now call'd *Amasia*, after the name of that City, which the *Beyleg* of *Anatolia* honoureth with his Residence, and is said to yield yearly to the *Grand Seigneur* 60000 Ducats. This Country is now call'd by the *Turks* *Tocat*.

ARMENIA MINOR.

Arménia Minor is bounded on the East with *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Arménia Major*; on the South with Mount *Taurus*, which separates it from *Cilicia*; on the West, and North, with a long chain of Hills, call'd *Mons Scordicus*, by some call'd *Mons Amanus*, by others, *Anti-Taurus*, according to the change of places; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reason of the name hereafter.

The Country of the same nature with *Cappadocia*, before described; in some parts overgrown with Mountains, by which, and by the River *Euphrates* so inclosed and fenced, that it is difficult of entrance; in others pleasant and delightful, well watered with sweet Streams, and some fair Rivers issuing out of the Mountains; the principal whereof is *Melinus*, so called from the blackness of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the *Romans* into these four Regions; that is to say, *Laviana*, *Arzania*, *Melitene*, lying on the *Euphrates*, *Atariana*; more within the Land towards *Cappadocia*, each of which had their several Cities, whose Names are to be found in *Strabo*. The principal, 1. *Melitene*, the chief City of the Region so call'd, and the Metropolis of the lesser *Arménia*, call'd afterwards *Ataxia*, and now *Sura*; the Territory thereof abounding in Oyl and Wine, not inferior to the best of *Greece*. The City said by *Onuphrius* to be a Colony of the *Romans*, much spoken of by *Lucianus*, and other Writers of *Ecclesiastical Story*, for the Piety of the *Christians* there inhabiting in the fiery times of *Persecution*. 2. *Nicopolis*, and 3. *Oromandus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his Victory there obtained against the Forces of *Tigranes*, King of *Syria*, and both *Arménia's*. 4. *Garnace*, a well fortified Town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth Book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gerneas*. 5. *Cuculum*, and 6. *Strabylus*, memorable for the Exile of *St. Chrysostom*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, confined unto these places by the power and malice of the Empress *Eudexia*, by whom hated for his *Orthodoxy* in points of Faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interr'd.

This Country was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians* by their Incursions and Colonies possess'd themselves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Arménia Minor*; continuing part of their Estate till the War of *Antiochus* against the *Romans*; who being discomfited by *Lucullus*, fled with two thousand Horse to the Court of *Tigranes* the *Armenian*, who had married his Daughter. By whom at first neglected, and not suffer'd to come into his Presence; but afterwards on the apprehension of the common danger, more esteemed and set by; insomuch that his royal Entertainment there, and the refusal of *Tigranes* to yield him up when required by the *Romans*, occasion'd *Lucullus* to bring his Forces into these parts, subduing all before him to the Banks of *Euphrates*. His Victories being seconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Augustus*, this Country was made a Province of the *Roman Empire*: the greater *Arménia* lying on the other side of that River, though conquered also in that War, not being taken into the account of the *Roman Provinces*, till the time of *Trajan Augustus*, thinking it an high point of Wisdom (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond those Banks. After this it continued *Roman*, till the declining times of the Eastern Empire; when wasted by the *Persians*, and subdued by the *Turks*; by whom call'd *Genech*, or as some say, *Pegia*.

And so much of the Provinces of the *Pontick Diocese*, lying within *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*; converted to the *Christian Faith* by the two great Apostles of the *Jews* and *Gentiles*, as appeareth by *St. Paul's Epistle* to the *Galatians*, and *St. Peter's* to the *Strangers* dispersed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Asia*, and *Bythmia*.

This Country, as *Tavernier* and *Mr. Chardin* assures us, is one of the most beautiful and rich Countries in the World, and is divided between the *Turks* and *Persians*, who have had dreadful Wars for it. It is divided at this day into the Lesser, and the Greater. The lesser *Arménia* is bounded by the greater to the East, *Syria* to the South, the *Black-Sea* to the West, and *Cappadocia* to the North.

The greater *Arménia* lies between *Mesopotamia* to the South; the lesser to the West; *Georgia* to the North, and *Media* to the East. This part is the more beautiful of the two, and is water'd by seven large Rivers. The principal Cities in this Country at this day are, 1. *Erivan*, or *Ivan*, under the *Persians*. 2. *Nekhsivan*. 3. *Zulpha*; and 4. *Van*, now under the *Turks*; of which four Cities large accounts are given by our later Travellers above named.

The *Armenians* have of late years by their Trade made themselves known over all parts of the World, and are worthily commended for their great constancy to the *Christian Religion*, their Gravity, Temperance, and Sobriety; which yet have made them very odious to their Neighbours the *Georgians*. *Tavernier* has given a very exact and large account of their Religion and Manners in his fourth Book, from the 9th to the 14th Chapters.

The lesser *Armenia*, and a great part of the greater, is now under the *Turks*; the rest is under the *Persians*, who preserve this Country with much Art and Expence; the Wars having depopulated much of it.

7. ASIA PROPRIA.

Come we now to the *Asian Diocese*, and first to that part thereof which *Ptolomy* and others (for the reasons spoken of before) call *Asia propria*. Anciently the most rich and flourishing part of all this *Peninsula*; and so affirmed to be by *Tully*, who telleth us, That the Tributes which the *Romans* had from other places, hardly sufficed to defray the publick Charges for defence thereof, *Asia vero tam opima est & fertilis, ut & ubertate agrorum, & varietate fructuum, & magnitudine pastionis, & multitudine eorum rerum quae exportantur, facile omnibus terris intecallat.* But as for *Asia*, (saith he) it is so fertile, and so rich, that for the fruitfulness of the Fields, variety of Fruits, largeness of Pasture-Grounds, and quantity of Commodities which were brought from thence, it very easily excelled all other Countries. The Fortunes of the several Provinces we shall see anon. Brought under the command of the *Persians*, they continued subject to that Crown for some Generations; but at last taken from them by the *Greeks*, under the prosperous Ensigns of victorious *Alexander*. After whose decease, the Empire being divided amongst his Captains, *Asia* fell to the share of *Antigonus*, whose Son *Demetrius* seiz'd on the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, and left *Asia* to *Selucus Nicator*, King of *Syria* and the East, being also one of *Alexander's* Heirs. The sixth from this *Selucus*, was *Antiochus*, call'd the Great, who waging War with young *Ptolomy Philopater*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his Father to the protection of the *Romans*, and otherwise practising against their Estate, provoked the Senate of *Rome* to send *Scipio* (Surnamed from his *Asian Victories*) *Asiaticus*, against him; who compell'd him to forsake *Asia*, which the *Romans* presently took into their Possession. But finding it agreeable to the present Estate of their Affairs (the Kingdom of *Macedonia* standing in their way) to make further use of *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former War, they gave unto *Eumenes*, the Provinces of *Lycania*, *Phrygia*, *Assia*, *Ionis*, *Lydia*; *Lycia* and *Caria*, to the *Rhodians*; knowing full well, that they could easily take them back again when they saw occasion. More hereof in the Story of the Kings of *Pergamus*, on the decease of *Attalus* the last King thereof; these Provinces returning fully to the power of the *Romans*. It

It contained only after the account of *Cicero*, the Provinces of *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Flaccus*: computing the two *Phrygiæ* for one Province only, and comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionis*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctual and particular proceeding in it, we will conſider it as divided into 1. *Phrygia Minor*. 2. *Phrygia Major*. 3. *Myſia*. 4. *Æolis* and *Ionis*, or *Aſia* more eſpecially ſo call'd. 5. *Lydia*; and 6. *Caria*.

1. PHRYGIA MINOR.

Phrygia Minor is bounded on the Eaſt with *Myſia*, interpoſing betwixt it and the Greater *Phrygia* on the Weſt, with the *Hellespont*; on the North with the *Propontis*; on the South with the *Ægean Sea*; call'd *Phrygia* from *Phryx*, a River in the Greater *Phrygia*; or as ſome ſay, from *Phryxus*, the Son of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*, who flying from the treacherous Snares of his Mother-in law, did here ſeat himſelf. *Minor* was added to it to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Major*. It was alſo call'd *Phrygia Hellespontica*, from its ſituation on that *Streight*; and *Troas*, from *Troas* the chief City of it, by which Name it occurreth in the Book of the *Acts*. It was call'd alſo *Epiſtetus*, but the reaſon of the Name I find not, except it came from the *Epiſteti*, a People dwelling on the Eaſt parts of *Bythunia*, and conſequently near this place. It is now call'd *Becſangil* by the *Turks*.

Chief Rivers of it *Scamander*, on whoſe Banks ſtood the renowned City of *Troy*, honoured by *Hæſiod* with the Title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of this Country a little before they were to be married, uſed to bathe themſelves, and to ſay theſe Words *Ἄδ'ε τλὼ μὲς Σκαμάνδρε παρδρίαν*, that is to ſay, *Take, O Scamander, my Virginity*. Which opportunity *Cimon* an *Athenian* taking, clapped a Coronet of Reeds upon his Head, like a River God, and ſo deſlowred *Callirrhoe* a noble Virgin, then betrothed to another, occaſioning thereby the leaving off of this fooliſh Cuſtom. It was alſo call'd *Xanthus* by the Poets, *Xanthumque bibiſſent*, as in *Virgil*, and watered a little Region call'd *Lycia*, whence *Ovid* in his firſt *Epistle* uſeth *Lyciam baſtant*, (*Sanguine Tlepolemus Lyciam tepeſecrat baſtam*) to ſignifie a *Trojan* Spear. But of this more anon in the greater *Lycia*. 2. *Æſopus*, parting this little Region from the Leſſer *Myſia*, the boundary of it on the North, as the Promontory call'd *Leſtium*, is the furtheſt point of it towards the South. 3. *Simoeis*, now call'd *Simores*, falling into the *Hellespont*, not far from the Promontory call'd *Rhæteum*, (memorable for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ajax*) but riſing out of Mount *Ida*, an Hill of this Region, on which *Paris* (being by his Father expoſed to the fury of wild Beaſts) judged the controverſie of the golden Ball in favour of *Venus*; reſpecting neither the great Riches of *Juno*, nor the divine Wiſdom of *Pallas*, but tranſported with a ſenſual Delight, fatal in the end to the whole Country.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Dardanium*, or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Æneas*. 2. *Aſſos*, mention'd, *Acts* 20. 13. by *Pliny* call'd *Apollonia*; who telleth us, that the Earth about it is of ſuch a nature, that it will conſume a dead body in forty days. 3. *Trajanopolis*, whoſe name declareth its Founder. 4. *Lyrneſſus*, on the Seaside, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Lesbos*, deſtroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the firſt beginnings of the *Trojan* War, who brought thence amongſt other Captives the Lady *Briſeis*, reſerved by *Achilles* to himſelf for his part of the Booty, and after taken from him by *Agamemnon*, which cauſed ſuch a deep diſpleaſure in him, that he would not go into the Field till ſhe was reſtored. 5. *Sigæum*, the Port-Town to *Troy*, near a noted Promontory of the ſame Name. 6. *Troy*, ſituate on the River *Scamander*, the Beauty and Glory of the Eaſt, call'd *Ilium*,

and *Pergamus*, for the reaſon to be ſhewn anon. A famous Town, from the People whereof, all Nations deſire to fetch their Original. The beauty of it may be (as ſome write) yet ſeen in the Ruins, which with a kind of Maſteſty entertain the beholder; the Walls of large Circuit, conſiſting of a black hard Stone cut four-square; ſome remnants of the Turrets which ſtood on the Walls, and the Fragments of great Marble Tombs, and Monuments of curious Workmanſhip. But certainly theſe are not the Ruins of that *Ilium* which was deſtroy'd by the *Græcians*; but 7. *Troas*, or *New Troy*, built ſome four Miles from the ſituation of the old by *Lyſimachus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and call'd it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandri*, in honour of *Alexander the Great*, who begun the Work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times call'd *Troas* only, and by that name mention'd, *Acts* 20. 6. then the *Metropolis* of this Province, now a ruin only; but every day more ruinous than other by the *Turks*, who carry daily the Stones and Pillars of it to *Conſtantinople*, to adorn the Houſes of the *Baſſa's*. 7. *Scamandria*, a ſtrong place, but of later Foundation, cunningly ſurpriſed by *Ottoman* the firſt King of the *Turks*, in the time of a Funeral. Now concerning old *Ilium*, the Buildings, Glories, and fall of it, take this Story with you.

The Kings of TROY.

A. M.

2487. 1. *Dardanus*, Son to *Corinthus* King of *Corinth*, having killed his Brother *Jafus*, fled into this Country, where he built this City, calling it *Dardania*; according to that Verſe of *Virgil*, *Dardanus Iliacæ primus pater urbis, & autor*. Both of *Troy* Town. and *Trojan* Race, *Dardanus* the firſt Founder was.
2518. 2. *Erichthonius*, of whom little memorable. 75.
2593. 3. *Tros*, the Son of *Erichthonius*, who ſo much beautified and enlarged the City of *Dardania*, that from thenceforth it was called *Troja*, and the People *Troes*. By ſupporting the unnatural malice of *Saturn* againſt his Son *Jupiter*, he loſt his own Son *Ganymedes*; who being taken priſoner by *Jupiter*, who carried the *Eagle* for his Enſign, is by the Poets ſaid to have been ſnatched up to Heaven by an *Eagle*. 60.
2653. 4. *Ilus*, the Son of *Tros*, who built the Regal Palace, call'd *Ilium*; and did withal ſo enlarge the City, and added ſo much Ornament and Beauty to it, that it is frequently call'd *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*. The many Towers and Turrets of it, were of his Erection, which being by the *Greeks* call'd *Πύργοι* and ſometimes *Πύργαμα* occaſion'd the whole City to be call'd *Pergamus*. 54.
2707. 5. *Laomedon*, who new built *Troy*, which afterwards *Hercules* and the *Græcians* (juſtly conceiving diſpleaſure againſt the treacherous King) twice took and defaced; *Laomedon* himſelf being ſlain the latter time. 36.
2743. 6. *Priamus* who re-edified *Troy*; but giving leave to his Son *Paris* to raviſh *Helena* Wife to *Meneleus* King of *Sparta*, forced the *Greeks* to renew their ancient Quarrel: who, after a ten Years Siege, forced the Town, having loſt of their own Men 860000. and killed 666000. of the *Trojans*, and their Associates, A. M. 2783. ſo as that of *Ovid* was moſt true.

*Fam ſeges eſt ubi Troja fuit reſecandaque falce,
Luxuriat Phrygio ſanguine pinguis humus.*

Corn

Corn fit for Scythes now grows where *Troy* once stood,
And the Soil's fatt'd with the *Phrygian* Blood.

Concerning the taking of this Town, two things are to be consider'd. First, whether the *Grecians* in these ten Years lay continually before it; and it seems they did not; but rather that they did beat up and down, wasting the Country, and robbing the Seas for the first nine Years; and in the tenth only laid a formal Siege. This is the more probable, because that in the tenth Year of the War, *Priam* is recorded by *Homer* in the third of his *Iliads*, to have sat on a high Tower, and to have learned of *Helen* the Names and Qualities of the *Greek* Commanders; which he could not be thought ignorant of, if they had so long together lain in Eye-reach. Secondly, by what means the Town was taken; and here we find a difference. For some Historians tell us, that *Aeneas* and *Antenor*, being either weary of the War, or discontented that it was not managed by their sole Advice, or otherwise corrupted by the *Grecians*, betray'd it to the Enemy: but this *Virgil* could not brook, as prejudicial to his *Aeneas*, whom he intended to make the Pattern of a compleat Prince. He therefore telleth of a *Wooden-Horse*, wherein divers of the *Greek* Princes lay hidden, which by *Sidon*, one of the *Grecians*, was brought to *Troy* Gates; and that the People desirous of that Monument of the Enemies flight, made a breach in their Walls, the Gate not being high enough to receive it. And that this fiction of *Virgil* might be grounded on History, it is thought by some, that over the *Scaean* Gate where the *Greeks* enter'd, was the Portraiture of a large and stately Horse; and by others, that the Walls were batter'd by a wooden Engine, call'd an *Horse*, as the *Romans* in after Ages used a like Engine call'd a *Ram*. Neither of which is much improbable; but with me perswade not the integrity of *Antenor*, or *Aeneas*, for whose sake the Fable of the *Wooden-Horse* was first invented.

The City being thus destroy'd, the *Trojans* who remained in the Country, when *Aeneas* and *Antenor* had forsaken it, began to think of some other place for their Habitation, which having often shifted, they fixed at last by advice of an Oracle, some four Miles from the former, giving it the name of *Ilium*. A poor and sorry Village when *Alexander* came thither, who in the Temple of *Minerva*, (the only one they had, and a mean one too) offer'd up his own Shield, and took down another, which he used after in his Fights against the *Persians*, honouring it with Gifts, and promising the People to rebuild and enlarge their City. But what he lived not to make good, was perform'd by *Lysimachus*, who gave it the name of *Alexandria*, next call'd the *Alexandrian Troas*, at last *Troas* simply. A free City it continued till the War of *Mithridates* against the *Romans*; and in the course whereof *Fimbria*, a *Roman* *Quæstor*, having seditionously slain the Consul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bythinia*, and made himself Master of the Army, being refused entrance here, as a Thief and a Rebel, besieged the City, and in the space of eleven days took it. And when he boasted that he had done as much in eleven days as *Agamemnon* and the *Greeks* could do in as many years, one of the *Ilians* tartly answer'd, *That they wanted an Hector to defend them*. Afterwards *Julius Cæsar*, emulous of *Alexander's* attempts, and descended from *Julius* of *Trojan* race, restored them to their Liberty, and enlarged their Territories: A Colony, and an University of the *Romans* of no mean esteem. But Time and War, and the barbarity of the *Turks*, have brought it unto Rubbish, as before was said.

In the distributing of the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, this little Region, with that of *Mysia*, *Hellepontica* adjoining to it, made up the Province call'd by the name of *Hellepontus*, subject with *Æolis*, *Ionis*, and the *Asian* Isles, to the exempt Jurisdiction of the *Proconsul* of *Asia*. Following the Fortunes of *Constantinople*,

till the taking of that City by the *Latins*, it became then subject to the *Greek* Emperors residing at *Nice*; conquer'd not long after by the *Turks* of the *Selzussian* Family. In the division of whose Empire on the death of the second *Aladine*, the whole Province of *Hellepont*, with part of the greater *Mysia* and *Æolis* adjoining to them, and some part of *Lydia*, were seized upon by *Carafus*, a Man of great power amongst the *Turks*, who here erected a small Kingdom, call'd from him *Carassia*, or *Carasi-illi*; long since swallowed up by the *Ottoman* Race, in the time of *Orchanes*, Son of *Ottoman*, and the second King of that House.

8. P H R Y G I A M A J O R.

Phrygia Major is bounded on the East with *Galatia*; on the West with *Mysia*, interposed betwixt it and the *Lesser Phrygia*; on the North with *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* specially so call'd; on the South with *Lydia*, call'd *Phrygia* for the Reasons before laid down; the word *Major* being added for Distinctions sake, because the greater of the two.

The People of this Country were anciently more superstitious than the other *Asians*, as appeareth by the Rites used in the Sacrifices of *Cybele*, and some other Goddesses; said to be also the Inventors of *Augury*, and other kinds of *Divination*. And yet for the most part Men of after-wits, and all for *bad-I-wist*; whence the Proverb, *Serò sapiunt Phryges*, apply'd to those who wanted forecast, and knew better to lament Misfortunes, than to keep them off; and used not to bethink themselves of what would follow, till it was too late. A People noted for Effeminacy, and lightness of Conversation; and for fear they should not of themselves be wanton enough, their very Musick was so fitted as to dispose them to *Lasciviousness*. Where, by the way, I find three sorts of Musick spoken of amongst the Ancients: The first, that which *Aristotle* calleth *ἡδονικὴ*, because it settled and composed the Affections; and *Boetius*, the *Lydian Musick*, because much used by that People, before corrupted by long Ease, and ill Example. It consisted principally of long Notes, or *Spondees*, such as is that supposed to be which *Elisha* call'd for, 1 Kings 3. 15. to invite the Spirit of Prophecie to him; and was play'd by *David* before *Saul*, to drive away the ill Spirit from him. And of this sort was the Church-Musick of the Primitive times, fitted to calm Mens Passions, and raise their Devotions, *Ut per oblectamenta aurium* (as *St. Augustin* hath it) *assurgat animus ad pietatis affectum*, that by the pleasure of the Ears the Passions might be calm'd, and the Soul inflam'd with pious and devout Affections. The second sort is that which *Aristotle* calleth *δαρμονικὴ*, or *αἰσθητική*, (as the other *ἡδονικὴ*, or *moral*) commending it before the other in the Education of Youth, because more stirring them to Action; consisting of *Dactyles*, or one long Note, and two short ones, by him and *Boetius* both call'd *Dorian*, as most peculiar to that People: The third and last by the Philosopher call'd *ἐκδυομαστικὴ*, or *ravishing*, because it unhingereth the Affections, and stirreth Men to lascivious Gestures, and wanton Thoughts; consisting of short Notes, or *Tribrachies*. *Boetius* terms it *Phrygian*, as most in use amongst this loose and ungovern'd Nation; such as the *French-Musick* in our Age. A sort of Musick forbidden to be used by *Aristotle*, but upon the Theatre, for contentation of the rude and unpollish'd People, by reason of that influence which it had upon mens Behaviours. *Mutatâ Musicâ* (saith the *Orator*) *mutantur & mores*; *Curandum itaque ut Musica quàm gravissima & sedatissima retineatur*; that is to say, the change of Musick maketh an alteration of Manners; Care therefore is to be taken in the Commonwealth, that the Musick be composed and grave; and such only used. But see how this sidling Humour hath led me out of the way. I return again.

The

The Country very rich and pleasant, well watered with the Rivers *Sangarius* and *Marſyas*. Of which the former hath its Spring or Fountain in this Country, but his fall in the *Euxine*; on the Banks whereof standeth the City *Gordium*, and many others of good note. The latter was so call'd from one *Marſyas*, who striving with *Apollo* for Preheminence in *Musick*, was by him head, which Fact (say the Poets) was so lamented, that from the Tears of the Mourners grew this River. The chief Towns, 1. *Gordion*, the Seat of *Gordius*, who from a Plowman being raised and chosen King of this Kingdom, placed the furniture of his Wain and Oxen in the Temple of *Apollo*, tied in such a Knot, that the Monarchy of the World was promised to him that could untie it; which when *Alexander* had tried, and could not undo it, he cut it with his Sword. 2. *Midaum*, the Seat of *Midas*, Son to this *Gordius*, who being not a little covetous, intreated of *Bacchus*, that whatever he touched should be turned into Gold; which Petition granted, he was almost starved, his very Victuals turned into Gold, till he had repealed his Wish; and afterward for preferring *Pan's* Pipe before *Apollo's* Harp, his Head was adorn'd with a comely pair of Asses Ears. 3. *Colosse*, where dwelt the *Colossians*, to whom *St. Paul* writ one of his Epistles. 4. *Pefinus*, where the Goddess *Cybele* being worshipped, was call'd *Dea Pefinnica*. The *Romans* were once told by an Oracle, that they should be Lords of the World, if they could get this Goddess into their Possession. Hereupon they send to the *Phrygians* to demand it. The *Phrygians* willing to please a potent Neighbour, especially the *Romans*, being their Country-men, as descended from *Æneas* and his *Trojans*, granted their Requests, and the Goddess is ship'd away for *Rome*. But behold the unluckiness of Fortune: The Ship, Goddess, and all, made a stand in *Tiber*; neither could it be advanced forwards by Force or Art. It hapen'd that one of the Vestal Virgins, nam'd *Claudia*, being suspected of unchastity, resolv'd to put her self upon this Experiment; and fastening her Girdle to the Ship, prayed to the Goddess, that if she were causelessly suspected, the Ship might be suffer'd to go forward, which was no sooner heard than granted, *Claudia* drawing the Ship up the Water to *Rome*; where I leave the People wondring at the Miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it stands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by some made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian* Knot placed in it also; but neither rightly. Not far off stood the Mountain *Dindyme*, overlooking the City, in which the Priests of *Cybele* had their usual Residence, thence call'd *Dindymene*. 5. *Apamea*, situate not far from the Banks of *Meander*, anciently a most flourishing Empory, and the Metropolis of the whole Country, till *Constantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutaris*, and *Pacatiana*; making, 6. *Symada* the Metropolis of the first. 7. *Hierapolis*; and 8. *Laodicea*, two noted Cities in those times, the principal of the other Province. 9. *Jalsopolis*, and 10. *Tiberiopolis*, so call'd from the Emperor to whose Honour dedicated. 11. *Doryleum*, &c. Not known unto the ancient Writers, but of more note in modern Stories; are 1. *Sagua*, the Habitation of *Etrogul*, Father of *Ottoman* the first King of the *Turks*. 2. *Chara-chisar*, by the *Grecians* call'd *Mcampyrus*, or the Black Tower. 3. *Cilleuxga*. 4. *Einegiol*, places of Consequence and Importance, taken by the said *Ottoman* from the *Christians* in the first rise of his Fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they descended (as was shewn before) from *Gomer*, the eldest Son of *Japhet*, and *Askenaz*, the eldest Son of *Gomer*; of which *Gomer* first placed himself in the mountainous Countries of *Albania*, and afterwards in the more pleasant Plains of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmeris* (the Posterity of *Gomer* being generally call'd *Cimmerians*) did preserve his Memory. And as for *Askenaz*, he first took up his Dwelling in the *Lesser Phrygia*, and the Banks of the

Hellespont; where was anciently a City and Territory call'd *Ascania*, some Isles adjoyning call'd *Isule Ascanæ*, the name of *Ascanus* also very frequent in *Troy* itself. An ancient People they were doubtless, esteem'd the ancientest of the World by *Psammiticus* King of *Egypt*, upon this Experiment. Desirous to inform himself to what Nation the privilege of greatest Antiquity did of right belong, he caused two Children to be kept in a Fold, where they were suckled by Goats: All mankind being prohibited, upon very great Penalties, to have recourse to them. All the Language which the Children learned from their speechless Nurses, was no more than *Bec*, which in the *Libertine* Language, significth Bread; and being of no signification at all in any other which was then known to the *Phrygians*, gave up the Verdict on their side: But other Nations of the World not yielding to this Sentence, by a *Word of Error*, or an *Ad melius inquirendum*, impenn'd a new *Jury*; wherein it was pronounced on the *Seythians* side, *Seythiæ gens semper antiquissima*. Where, by the way, *Strabo* *Becanus* makes the like use of this Experiment to prove the *High Dutch* to be the Original, or Mother-tongue of the World; because *Becker* in that Language significth, as with us, a *Baker*, or a maker of *Bread*. In this Country reigned *Nube*, who preferring her self before *Latona*, the Mother of *Phœbus* and *Diana*, had her Children slain before her Face by an unseen Means, and was her self turned into a Stone, as the Poet's Fable. Here also reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting Wisdom to make use of it, is feigned to stand in Hell up to the Chin in Water; and that too under a Tree, whose Fruit toucheth his Lips: yet both the one and the other fly from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*:

— Tibi Tantalæ nullæ

Deprenduntur aquæ; quæque imminct, effugi

In *English* thus:

Thou canst not, *Tantalus*, those Waters taste;
The Tree just at thy Lips, flies off as fast.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the Tyranny of time, or War, the *Phrygians* were made subject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their Command till the Conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*, with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the stronger by the accession of effeminate Subjects. Gained from them by the Sword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Antigonus*, one of his great Captains, and on his overthrow at the Battle of *Issus*, to *Selucus* the Conqueror, the first King of that Race; following the same fortune after that with the rest of *Asia*, till they came to be possessed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Constantine* laying to it the *Greater Mysia*, made two Provinces of it; the one call'd *Salutaris*, from some miraculous Cures there wrought by the Arch-Angel *Michael*, as was then generally believed; the other call'd *Pacatiana*, from *Pacatianus*, who in the time of the said *Constantine* was *Præfict* for the *Prætorium* of the East, and divers years before had begun his honours with the *Lieutenants*hip of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Constantinopolitans*, it became a Prey unto the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; possessed by them till the death of *Aladine*, the last King of that Race: When seized upon, together with the *Greater Mysia*, and those parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Aidm*, a great *Turkish* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdom, call'd by his Name *Aidinia*, or *Aidinilli*; extorted shortly from his Heirs by the House of *Ottoman*.

9. *MY S I A.*

Interposed betwixt the two *Phrygias* lieth the Country of *Mysia*, bounded on the East with *Phrygia Major*; on the West with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Aegean Sea*; on the North with parts of *Bythia*, *Propontis*, and the *Hellepont*; and on the South, with part of *Lydia*, *Aolis*, and the *Aegean*. So call'd from the *Mysians*, the Inhabitants of it.

Whether these *Mysians* were originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or some interlopers which thrust in afterwards amongst them, I find not determin'd. Most probable it is, they were natural *Phrygians*, being as superstitious in the worship of their several *Deities*, as any *Phrygian* of them all; and that they had this Name given them by the *Lydians* from the abundance of *Beech-Trees* which grow amongst them, by them call'd *Mysia*. A people of so bale and contemptible Quality, that it grew into a common Proverb to call a fellow of no worth, *Mysurum postremum*.

The principal Mountain of this Country is that call'd *Olympus*, situate in the North parts hereof bordering towards *Bythia*; which as it is call'd *Olympus Mysius*, to difference it from *Olympus* in *Greece*; so the people of the *Greater Mysia*, where this Mountain is, are call'd *Olympen*, to difference them from the *Mysia* or *Mæsi* of *Europe*. And as for Rivers, those of most note besides *Esopus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, are, 1. *Caeus*, on whose Banks stands the City of *Pergamus*, and from thence passeth into the *Aegean Sea*, at the Bay of *Elae*; and 2. the famous River of *Granicus*, which hath his Fountain in *Mysia Major*, and passing through *Mysia Minor*, falleth into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the Banks hereof in his first essay against the *Persians*. By whom, upon the first noise of his Preparations he was so slighted, that *Darius* King of *Persia* gave command to his Lieutenants residing in *Asia Minor*, that they should take him alive, whip him with Rods, and so convey him to his presence. A notable example of the pride and folly of the *Persians*. But *Alexander* soon taught them another Lesson. For though the *Persians* were possessed of the higher Banks of the River, with an intent to stop his passage; yet he resolved to charge them in the face of their strength; knowing full well, that if he could beat them on a place of so great advantage, he should not only lessen them in point of Reputation, but beget an opinion of himself, that he was invincible. And so accordingly it proved, the *Persians* being vanquished by him and all the Kingdoms and Provinces of this *Asia* submitting to him on the noise of the Victory (as an enemy not to be resisted upon equal terms) some few Towns excepted. And therefore it was wisely advised by *Machiavel*, that he who takes upon him to defend a passage, should with his ablest Forces oppose the *Assailant*, because in all Invasions where the Nations invaded have been beaten upon a great advantage of place, as defence of Rivers, Streights, and Mountains, they do not only dishearten their Soldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that Enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellows and partakers of being succoured and defended by such weak Protectors. Which caution, if the *Persian* Commanders had observed either here, or at *Pylæ Cilicia*, spoken of hereafter, *Alexander* had not so easily subverted the *Persian* Monarchy. But the fatal period of it was now drawing on, and the Men either naturally Cowards, or else prodigiously besotted.

It is divided commonly into *Mysia Minor*, or the *Lesser Mysia*, which lying on the West towards *Troas*, and the *Hellepont*, is call'd sometimes *Mysia Hellepontica*; and joyned unto *Troas* by the Emperor *Constantine*, made up that Province which he call'd the *Consular Hellepont*; and *Mysia Major*, call'd from *Olympus* which was in it, *Mysia Olympina*, and the Inhabitants *Olympen*; which joyned by that Emperor to the Western parts

of *Phrygia Major*, made up that Province which he caused to be call'd *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reason formerly delivered.

Places of most observation in the *Lesser Mysia*, were, 1. *Abydus*, standing on the narrowest of the *Hellepont*, opposite unto *Sestos* in *Thrace*; first built by the *Milissians* with the consent of *Gyges* King in *Lydia*, to whom the Country then belonged; memorable both in the ancient and modern Stories. In ancient Story for the famous resolution of the Inhabitants, when besieged by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into some Distress, and hopeless of good Conditions from him, the young Men of the Town who had bound themselves by Oath to die, rather than fall into his Hands, set fire thereon, and barbarously slew themselves, with as many of the Women and Children as could be met with. Which News being brought to *Philip*, moved so little compassion, that he said he would give the *Abydeni* three days leisure to die; and therefore would not suffer any of his Soldiers to enter the Town, then set open to him, either to take the Spoil thereof, or hinder this bloody Execution, till the three days end. In modern Story no less memorable for the taking of it by the *Turks*, in the Reign of *Orchanes* the Son of *Ottoman*, through the Treason of the Governor's Daughter: who bewitched with the person and valour of *Abderachmen*, a young *Turkish* Gallant, whom she had beheld from the Towers of the Castle, threw a Letter to him as he drew near the Wall, wherein she manifested her Affection, and promised to make him Master of that Fortrefs, if he would perswade his General to raise the Siege, and come with a strong Party in the dead time of the night to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The Town continuing ever since in the power of the *Turks*, well fortified, and one of the two Castles, call'd the old *Dardanel*, spoken of before, which defend *Constantinople* on that side from all force by Sea. 2. *Cyzicus*, seated in the *Propontis*, in an Island of the same name also, but so near the Continent, that it joyned to it by two Bridges. The *Metropolis* of the *Consular Hellepont*, by consequence an Archbishop's See in the prosperous times of Christianity; as were all other Cities in the *Roman* Empire, which were the Mother Cities, or *Metropoles* of their several Provinces. A Town of wonderful Strength and Beauty, when first known to the *Romans*, call'd therefore by *L. Florus*, the *Rome of Asia*, who gives this Character also of it, *Cyzicum nobilis civitas, arce, mœnibus, portu, turribusque marmoreis Asiaticæ plagæ littora illustrat*, that is to say, that the noble City of *Cyzicum*, by the excellency of the Walls, Bulwarks, Haven, and Towers of Marble, doth beautifie and illustrate the Shores of *Asia*. Honoured amongst many other goodly and magnificent Buildings, with a glorious Temple, the Pillars whereof being four Cubits thick, and fifty Cubits high, were each of one entire Stone only; the whole Fabrick all of polished Marble, every Stone joyned unto the other with a line of Gold. In vain besieged by *Mitridates* in the time of his War, who lost before it by the Sword, Pestilence, and Famine, no fewer than 300000 Men, and yet could not force it. Afterwards ruined by an *Earthquake*, the *Falling-sickness* of the East, as before is said, it could never be restored to its former lustre; the very ruins of it daily made more ruinous, by transporting the Stones and Marbles to *Constantinople*, for the embellishing of that City. 3. *Lampsacus* on the same *Propontis*, in which the beastly God *Priapus* was worshipped, in as beastly a figure: *Quem non denudo* (as wittily *Lactantius* scoffeth it) *ne quid appareat risu dignum*, supposed to be the same with the *Syrian*, or *Phœnician* *Baal*, so often mention'd in the Scriptures. For this, and on some other reasons, *Alexander* had conceived against it such an high displeasure when he was in *Asia*, that he resolved to raze it to the very ground. And seeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Ambassador from the Town, to obtain his Favour, commanding him to hold his peace;

peace; and sware, as by way of prevention, that he would deny whatsoever he requested of him: whereupon *Anaximene* entreated him to destroy the City, which now for his Oath's sake he could not do; and so this wicked City at that time escaped. 4. *Parium*, so call'd, as some say, from *Parus* the Son of *Jafon*, a Colony at first of the *Mylefians*, of the *Romans* afterwards: *Troas* and this, the only two *Roman* Colonies in all the Province. By *Homer* call'd *Adraftia*; as *Lampiscus* in the same Author, is call'd *Pnyssa*. More in the Land, are 5. *Scepsis*. 6. *Hiragerme*, both mention'd by *Ptolomy*, but of more Antiquity than Fame.

Chief Cities in *Mysia Major*, or *Olympica*, are 1. *Dainia*, in the North parts, not far from *Olympus*. 2. *Apollonia*, near a large Lake sacred to *Apollo*, in the same parts also: 3. *Pala Scepsis*, or *Scepsis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Aegean* Sea, joyning upon *Troas*, or the Lesser *Phrygia*. 4. *Adramyttium*, mention'd *Acts* 27. where *St. Paul* took Ship to go to *Rome*. 5. *Antandarus*, on the same Sea also, now call'd *St. Dimitri*; named at first *Cimmeris* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmerians* here inhabiting (which sheweth that *Mysia* anciently was a part of *Phrygia*) afterward *Edonis*, and at last *Antandrus*, and that either because built, or repaired rather by the Men of *Andros*, an Island of the *Aegean*, spoken of before, amongst the *Cyclades*; or because the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the Son of *Priam*, from the King of *Thrace*, received this City for his Ransom, or rather in exchange for him, as the word doth intimate. 6. *Proteselene*, on the same Coast also. More in the Land. 7. *Præpemiſſus*. 8. *Præjanopolis*. 9. *Alydda*, of which little memorable. 10. *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this Tract, situate in a goodly Plain, on the Banks of the River *Caycus*; of a small Town or Fortrefs, made a stately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent Library containing 200000 Volumes; for the writing, or transcribing whereof, *Parchment* was here first invented, which from hence to this day is call'd *Pergamenum*. Here also were those costly Hangings first invented, which we now call *Tapestry*; by the *Romans* call'd first *Aulea*, from *Aula*, signifying a Hall; the Hall of *Attalus* King hereof, (by whom invented) being the first Room furnished and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous Physician living very healthfully to the Age of 140. Years: His Health preserved to so great Age, by these means especially. 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. 2dly, Never eating any thing that was raw. 3dly, Always carrying about him some sweet Perfumes. Finally, this was one of the seven Churches to which *St. John* writ his *Revelation*. For though it were Originally a City of *Mysia*, yet being near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of *Lydian Asia*; within the limits whereof those seven Churches were all comprehended.

As for the Kings hereof, which flourished here for some Ages in such Wealth and Splendor, they came but from a poor and obscure Original. The first of them one *Philetærus*, an Eunuch, belonging to *Antigonus*, one of the Great *Alexander's* greatest Captains; and after his Death, to *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*, by whom trusted with his Money and Accompts. Fearing the fury of his Master, then grown old and tyrannous, he seized on the Castle of *Pergamus*, and therein on 90000 Talents, which he offered with his Service unto *Seleucus*, the first King of *Syria*. But both *Lyſimachus* and *Seleucus* dying shortly after, he kept the Money to himself, and reigned in this City as an absolute King; leaving the Kingdom at his Death to his Brother *Eumenes*, no better Man than a poor Carter, till raised by the Fortunes of this Eunuch. *Eumenes* furnished with Money, though of no great Terri-
 ority, was able by the Gauls and other Mercenaries, not only to preserve himself against the Syrian Kings, who laid claim to his City, but also to enlarge his Bounds as he saw occasion. But the main improvement of this Kingdom hapned in the days of *Eumenes* the Second, the Son of *Attalus*, the Brother and Succellor of this *Eumenes*:

who being useful to the *Romans* in their Wars against *Philip* of *Macædon*, and *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, was liberally rewarded by them with the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Caria*, *Ionia*, *Troas*, and both the *Mysias*, which they had taken from *Antiochus* in the end of that War. The rest of the Affairs hereof, till it fell in fine unto the *Romans*, take here in this short Catalogue of

The Kings of P E R G A M U S.

- A. M.
3668. 1. *Philetærus*, the first King of *Pergamus*, of whom before, 2.
3688. 2. *Eumenes*, Brother, or as some say, the Brother's Son of *Philetærus*, vanquished *Antiochus*, surnamed *Herax*, in a fight near *Sardis*, and awed *Seleucus Calinicus*, both Kings of *Syria*, 22.
3710. 3. *Attalus*, Brother of *Eumenes*; restored *Archæus* the *Cappadocian* to his Kingdom, and discomfited the Gauls, compelling them to keep themselves within the Country since named *Galatia*. A Confederate of the *Romans*, and by them much courted.
3754. 4. *Eumenes II.* Son of *Attalus*, gratified by the *Romans* with the Spoils of *Antiochus*. He was an hereditary Enemy to the Kingdom of *Macædon*, which he laboured with the *Romans* to destroy, as in fine they did; and thereby finding no more use of these *Pergamon* Kings, began to grow to less liking with them.
3782. 5. *Attalus II.* Brother of *Eumenes*, to whom the Kingdom was offered by the *Romans* in the Life of his Brother, then less gracious with them; but he most gallantly refused it, to the great indignation of the *Roman* Senate.
3792. 6. *Eumenes III.* Brother of *Attalus* the Second, and Tutor, or Protector to his Nephew *Attalus*, in whose minority he govern'd the Estate as King.
3813. 7. *Attalus III.* Son of *Attalus* the Second, succeeded on the Death of his Uncle *Eumenes*, and having held the Kingdom but five years only, deceased without Issue, and bequeath'd it by his last Will unto the *Romans*. But before the *Romans* had possession of so great a Legacy, *Antiochus*, the base Son of *Eumenes*, made himself Master of *Atindus*, *Colophon*, *Samos*, and many other Towns and Estates hereof. Against whom the *Romans* making War, were aided by the greatest part of the *Asian* Kings; not seeing their own danger and destruction to draw near unto them, by letting such a potent Neighbour come amongst them to undo them all. But the *Romans* got little by this War, though they had the better of it. For being now made Masters of the Riches and Sweets of *Asia*, they took with them their Vices also; growing thereby to great Riot, and unparalleled Luxury; which overcame the rigour and severity of their former Discipline, and made them apt for Faction, and those bloody Quarrels, which proved the ruin of their State. So truly was it said by *Justin*, *See Asia facta Romanorum, cum opibus suis vitia quoque sua Romanam transmissit*. This Kingdom, taking it in the largest extent thereof, being thus subdued and settled as a *Roman* Province, had the name of *Asia*, according to the name of the Greater Continent; by *Ptolomy*, and others, call'd *Asia Propria*; continuing under the subjection of the *Roman* Emperors, till the translating of the Imperial Seat unto *Constantinople*; as after that unto the Emperors of the East, till conquered piece-meal by the *Turks* of the *Seluccian* Family. Which being ended in the person of *Mahomet* the Second, those parts hereof which lay next *Troas*, made up the Kingdom of *Carajon*, or *Carajonia*; as those which had been laid to the Greater *Lydia*, made up the *Lydian*; both of them swallowed up long since
- II h h h 2 by

by the *Ottoman* Kings, the *Accessaries* running the same Fortune as the *Principals* did.

10. *ASIA SPECIALIUS DICTA.*

BESIDES the *Propria Asia* spoken of before, containing all the Provinces of the *Pergamon* Kingdom, there was one part hereof which anciently had the name of *Asia*, before it was communicated to the greater Continent, or this whole *Peninsula*. This for Distinctions sake the *Romans* call'd the *Proconsular Asia*; because committed to the government of one of their *Pro-consuls*, (who had his Residence in *Ephesus*, the principal City of this Province) together with the *Consular Hellespont*, and the Province of the *Isles of Asia*. This we have spoken of before, as also how the Country lying about *Ephesus*, had more specially the name of *Asia*, than any other: so specially, that *Erasmus* thereupon inferreth, that by *Asia* in the *New Testament*, (but more particularly in the *Acts*) is meant that part of *Asia* only in which *Ephesus* standeth.

This being agreed on for the Name, we shall bound it on the East with *Lydia*, whereof it was anciently a part; on the West with the *Ægean* Sea; on the North with *Myfia*; and on the South with *Caria*. And having so bounded it, we shall divide it into the two Regions of *Æolis* and *Ionia*; that of *Æolis* lying on the North toward *Myfia*, as *Ionia* doth upon the South towards *Caria*; possessed both of them by *Greek* Nations, and of them so named.

Principal Towns in *Æolis* are 1. *Acarnea*, over-against the Ill. of *Lesbos*, the Royal Seat sometimes of the Tyrant *Hermias*; who being once a Scholar of *Aristotle's*, but unworthy of so good a Master, seized on this City, and here committed so great Cruelties, that at last he was taken by the People, sewed in an Ox's Hide, and so baited to death. 2. *Pitane*, on a little River so named, falling into *Caicus*, not far from the influx or fall thereof into the *Ægean*; in which Town they had an Art of making Bricks which would swim on the Water. 3. *Elæa* on the Mouth of *Caicus*, the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 4. *Myrina*, afterwards in honour of *Augustus*, call'd *Sebastopolis*. 5. *Cene*, by *Strabo* call'd *Cane*, by *Mela*, *Cannæ*, not far from a Promontory of the same Name. 6. *Cuma*, the principal and greatest all *Æolis*, the Birth-place of *Ephorus*, a learned Man of elder times; and the Habitation of *Sibylla*, surnamed *Cumana*, to difference her from *Sibylla Cumæa*, so named from *Cumæ*, a City of the Realm of *Naples*. 7. *Phocæa*, a Colony of the *Athenians*, so named from the multitudes of Sea-Calves (the *Greeks* call them *Phocæ*) which thrust themselves ashore at the building of it. The People hereof overburthened by the *Persians*, and impatient of so great servitude as was laid upon them, forsook their Country, binding themselves by a fearful Oath, never more to return unto it; and after many and long Wandrings, came at last into *Gaul*, where they founded the famous City of *Marseilles*.

The Inhabitants of this little Region are by *Josephus* said to be descended of *Elisha*, the Son of *Javan*, who therefore call'd them by the name of *Elisæi*. And it is possible enough that so it was, *Elisha* being planted in *Greece*, where he gave name to *Elis*, one of the Provinces of *Peloponnesus*; from whence some of his Race in succeeding times might pass over into *Asia*, and possess those Coasts. For that they were a *Greek* people, is confessed by all; the *Æolick Dialect*, or Phrase of Speech, taking name from hence. Not otherwise much mention'd in the course of Story, than as partakers of the same Fortunes with the rest of their *Asian* Neighbours before related, and so not necessary to be now repeated.

Ionia, as a larger Tract, requires a more particular and punctual Description. For here the River *Iyenus* falleth into the *Meander*, and here *Meander* and *Caystrus*, two of the most famous Rivers of *Asia Minor* (of which

more hereafter) fall into the *Ægean*. Here is the renowned City of *Ephesus*, honoured with one of the Worlds seven Wonders, the long abode of *St. Paul*, and the Death and Sepulture of *St. John*; the Promontory *Trogylum*, with a little Isle adjoyning of the same name, mention'd *Acts* 20. 15.

Principal Cities of this Tract, are 1. *Myas*, on an Arm of the Sea, assigned by *Artaxerxes*, together with *Lampsacus*, and *Magnesia*, to *Themistocles*; when being banished his own Country, he fled to his greatest Enemy for Entertainment; and there met with more safety than *Athens* would, and more Honour than it could afford him; so that he might well say (as he often did) *Periissem nisi periissem*. And on the other side, the King was so overjoy'd at his coming to him, (as having now on his side the Man who had most hindred him in the Conquest of *Greece*) that many times in his sleep he was heard to clap his Hands, and say, *Habeo Themistoclem Atheniensem*. In after-times, the Water drawing further off, the Soil brought forth such an innumerable number of Fleas, that the Inhabitants were fain to forsake the City, and with their Bag and Baggage to retire to *Miletus*: Nothing hereof being left, but the Name and Memory in the time of *Pausanias*. 2. *Erythra*, memorable for the Habitation of one of the *Sibyls*, from hence call'd *Sibylla Erythraea*; of which Prophetesses we shall speak more when we come to *Africk*. 3. *Lebedus*, of most note in the elder times, for those publick Plays which were here annually held in the honour of *Bacchus*. 4. *Clazomene*, situate on a small Ilet, near unto the Shore, of much esteem amongst the *Romans* for the Wines there growing; and no less honoured by the *Asians* for a beautiful Temple of *Apollo* seated near unto it. 5. *Priene*, the Birth-place of *Bias*, one of the seven Wise-men of *Greece*. 6. *Ipsus*, renowned for the great Battle betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexander's* chief Commanders; the Victory wherein falling to *Seleucus*, with the death of his Adversary, established him in all the Conquests of his Master, except *Ægypt*, only. 7. *Teos*, the Birth-place of *Anacreon*, that lascivious and drunken Poet, hence surnamed *Tenus*; the *Ovid* of the *Grecians*, both for Wit and Wantonness; of both which it may well be doubted, whether the smoothness of the Verse, or the wantonness of their Expressions, be the more predominant. 8. *Smyrna*, a fair and ancient City, on a Bay, thence named the Bay of *Smyrna*; the greatest part whereof lay towards the Sea, but the fairest on the side of an Hill overlooking the Waters. Destroyed by the *Lydians*, it was re-edified by *Antiochus* and *Lyfimachus*, two of *Alexander's* great Commanders; of good account in the time of the *Romans*, and one of the seven *Asian Churches*, to which *St. John* inscribed his *Revelation*. Much traded and frequented to this very day, especially for Camlets, Grograins, and such Stuffs; made for the most part at *Ancyra*, the chief Town of *Galatia*, and here vended to the foreign Merchant. For government of the Trade whereof, and of other Commodities of these parts, the *English* Merchants have an Officer, call'd the Consul of *Smyrna*. In old time there was in it, amongst us, a goodly Temple dedicated unto *Homer*, said to be born in this City, and to have writ his Poems in a Cave hard by. This City is of that Antiquity, that it is one of the Seven which lays claim to the Birth of *Homer*. In the Year 1344. it was taken from the *Turks* by the *Venetians*, and continued in their Hands till 1428. Mr. *Wheeler*, our Country-man, who saw it, p. 240. gives us a representation of the Haven and City, and saith, it has been six times ruin'd by Earthquakes; and that the Inhabitants expect a 7th. that shall be its utter ruin, never to be repaired. *Tavernier* saith it was one of the most celebrated Cities of the *Levant*, wonderfully traded to, and very rich, and built like an Amphitheatre upon the descent of an Hill, which opens to the S. W. and having a Castle which commands the Gulf two Leagues

Leagues from the City to the N. W. and that it contain'd then about 90000 Souls; but on the 30th of June, 1688. between 11 and 12 at Noon, the long-expected 7th. dreadful Earthquake happen'd; which in a minute threw down the most part of the Houses, and shattered all the rest. About 4 hours after a Fire broke out of the Ruins, which consumed all that was left standing but a few scattered Houses; about 5000 Persons perishing in the Calamity, and the Castle being swallowed by a *Chafin* that opened under it. Since that, the foreign Nations have left it, and are retired to *Sio* an Island: And whether the latter part of the Prediction will not be verified, time must shew. 9. *Colophon*, most memorable for the Inhabitants of it, so skilled in Horsemanship, that the side on which they served in War was sure of Victory; whereupon *Colophonem addere*, to put a good end to any business, grew into a Proverb. It was also another of those Cities, which so ambitiously contended for the Birth of *Homer*; of which there were seven in all, as the old Verses tell us, saying,

*Septem urbes certant de stirpe insignis Homere,
Smyrna, Rhodis, Colophon, Salamis, Chios, Argos, Athenæ.*

Whether *Homer* purposely concealed his Country, that all places might challenge him for theirs, I am not able to say; but sure I am, that *Paterculus* speaketh it in the commendation of *Hesiodus*, (the next Greek Poet after him in course of time) that he had specified his Birth place: *Qui ut id vitaret in quod Homerus incidit, patriam & parentes testatus est.* 10. *Ephesus*, the Metropolis of the Roman *Asia*, and the Seat of the Primate of the *Asian* Diocese; memorable in the purest times of Christianity, for being the Episcopal See of *Timothy* the Evangelist, the first Bishop thereof. 2dly. In that *St. Paul* directed to the people of it one of his Epistles; and 3dly, for the burial of *St. John* the Apostle, who by some learned Men of the elder times, is said to have gone alive into his Grave, and that he is not dead, but sleeping; building that thought upon that saying which went abroad among the Brethren, *That that disciple should not die*, Joh. 21. 23. And no less memorable amongst the Gentiles for that sumptuous and magnificent Temple here consecrated to *Diana*; which for the largeness, furniture, and workmanship of it, was accounted one of the Wonders of the World. The length thereof said to be 425 Foot, 220 Foot in breadth; supported with 127 Pillars of Marble, seventy Foot in height; of which twenty seven were most curiously engraven, and all the rest of Marble polished. The Model of it contrived by one *Ctesiphon*, and that with so much Art and curiosity of Architecture, that it took up two hundred years before it was finished. When finished, it was fired seven times, the last time by *Erostratus*, only to get himself a Name, which happening on the same night in which *Alexander* the Great was born, gave occasion to that weighty but witty Scoff, that *Diana* (she was counted one of the Goddesses of *Midwifery*) could not attend the preservation of her Temple, being then busied at the Birth of so great a Prince. The situation of this City is very like that of *Smyrna*, it having a fine Haven and a Rivolet before it, and seems by the Gates, Walls, and Towers, to have been very large, but then there is now not one House standing in the Ara of the old City, and never a Christian Inhabitant that belongs to it; nor any other than about 40 or 50 Families of *Turks* living in a knot on the Southside of the Castle. The Temple of *Diana* stood at the bottom of the Hill near one of the Gates, and the great Portal, and the Vaults under the Arches are still intire. It has one Mosque built at first for a Christian Church, out of the Ruins of this Temple, by the Christians, and since converted to this impious use of the *Turks*. The *Turks* call this City *Ajasalouc*, and *Sabuck*.

As for those *Iones*, or *Ionians*, they were, no doubt, the

descendants of *Javan*, the fourth Son of *Japhet*, as hath been shewn before in our general Preface; but whether they came higher out of *Græcia*, or passed from hence into that Country, hath been made a Question. The *Athenians* boasting of themselves to be *Aborigenes*, Men growing as it were out of the Soil it self, without any Ancestors, report that those *Ionians* were a Colony of their Plantation. But *Hecataeus* in *Strabo* doth affirm the contrary, saying, That the *Athenians* or *Iones* of *Greece*, came from those of *Asia*; for that *Attica* was anciently call'd *Ionis*; *Plutarch* in the Life of *Themistocles* doth declare expressly. Most probable it is, that *Hecataeus* was in the right; these parts of *Asia* lying so directly in the way from the Valley of *Eden* into *Greece*, that *Javan* may very well be thought to leave some of his company here, when he ferried the rest over to the opposite Continent. I know *Pausanias*, ignorant of their true Antiquity, deriveth them from *Ion*, the Son of *Xuthus*, and Grandchild of *Deucalion*: wherein he came so near the Truth, tho' he missed the Men, that it was the Grandson of that Man who escaped the Flood, from whom both the *Athenians* and those *Iones* had their true Original. In regard of which relations betwixt the Nations, the *Athenians* gave aid to those *Ionians* against the *Persians*; who on the overthrow given to *Cæsus*, pretended to the Lordship, or Dominion of *Asia*, and conquered them in the time of *Cyrus*, the first *Persian* Monarch. Upon which ground, and the sending of fresh aid to them upon their revolt in the time of *Darius*, that King first undertook the invasion of *Greece*: *Xerxes* and the succeeding Kings pursuing that first quarrel with great Animosities. After this, yielding to the times, they followed the fortune of the strongest, subject successively to the *Persians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Constantinopolitans*, and *Turks*, till the death of *Aladine*, before-mention'd; when both *Æolis* and *Ionis* got a new Name, and are now call'd *Saracens*, from *Saracens* a Turkish Captain, who on the death of that *Aladine*, seized upon this Country, and erected here a petit Kingdom long since subdued by those of the Race of *Ottoman*.

II. LYDIA.

LYDIA is bounded on the East with *Thyrgia Major*, and some part of *Pisidia*, from which separated by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West with *Æolis* and *Ionis*, or *Asia* specially so call'd; on the North with the *Greater Mysia*; on the South with *Caria*. So call'd from *Lud*, the Son of *Sem*, by some of whose Posterity it was first inhabited. In the full Latitude and extent thereof, as anciently, comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionis*, the adjoining Provinces, it made the *Lydian Asia*, spoken of before, within the verge whereof all the seven Churches were contained, mention'd by *St. John* in the *Revelation*.

The People of this Country are said to have been the first Coyners of Money; the first Hucksters and Pedlers, and the first inventors of Dice, Ball, Chess, and the like Games: Necessity and Hunger thereunto enforcing them, according to that of *Persius*, *Artis Magister, ingenique largitor venter*. For being sorely vext with Famine, in the time of *Atis*, one of the Progenitors of *Omphale*, they devised these Games; and every second day playing at them, beguiled their hungry Bellies. Thus for 22 years they continued playing and eating by turns; but then seeing that themselves were more fruitful in getting and bearing Children, than the Soil at that time in bringing forth Sustenance to maintain them, they sent a Colony into *Italy*, under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, the Son of *Atis*, who planted in that Country, call'd at first *Tyrrhenia*, and afterward *Tuscany*.

This Country was also call'd *Mæonia*, and was thought to have been the native Soil of *Homer*, in regard that *Colophon* and *Smyrna*, two of the seven contending Cities, and those which seem to have most colour for their

their Claim, were anciently accounted as parts of *Lydia*, as was said before. Hence *Homer* hath the name of *Mæonides* and *Mæonius Vates*; And in some Authors *Carmen Mæonium* is used for *Homer's* Poetical Abilities, as *Carmine Mæonio confurgere*, in *Ovid*. *Bacchus* is also call'd sometimes by the name of *Mæonius*; but for a very different reason, viz. because anciently there were no Trees in all this Country, but the Vine only.

Principal Mountains of this Country are 1. *Sipylus*, and 2. *Imolus*, this last of most account in regard of the great fruitfulness of it, covered over with Vines, and yielding abundance of the best *Saffron*. Chief Rivers of it are 1. *Hermus*, which rising out of *Phrygia Major*, passeth only by the skirts hereof, and so falleth into a fair Bay of the *Ægean*, opening towards the Isle of *Clazomene*. 2. *Pactolus*, which rising at the foot of Mount *Imolus*, falleth not long after into *Hermus*; famous amongst the Poets for its golden Sands. 3. *Caystrus*, no less notable for the abundance of Swans which swim thereon, whose Fountain is in *Phrygia Major* also, near the borders hereof; and his fall into the *Ægean* also overagainst the Isle of *Samos*. 4. *Mæander*, which rising out of a branch of the *Taurus*, in the furthest parts of the said *Phrygia*, towards *Lycaonia*, passeth by *Magnesia*, and endeth his course in the same Sea, near the City of *Ephesus*. A River famous for its many turnings in and out, 600 at the least, as *Priscus* counted them. Of which in general thus the Poet:

*Mæander toties qui terris errat in iisdem,
Et lapsas in se, sæpe retorquet æquas.*

That is to say:

Mæander wandring in the self-same Soil,
Whose waters meeting do as oft recoil.

And in another Passage, thus:

Quique recurvatis ludit Mæander in undis.

Mæander plays his watry Pranks,
In his so many winding Banks.

The Country by reason of these Rivers was exceeding fruitful, abounding in all sorts both of Wealth and Pleasures, well cultivated and manured above Ground, and underneath enriched with prodigal Veins of Gold and Silver, and some precious Gems. Which made the People, after their overthrow by *Cyrus*, to become more sensual and voluptuous, and less fit for Action, than any Plot of their new Masters could have brought them to, had not the natural delicacies of the Soil it self contributed to the advancement of their Design. And yet before, they were sufficiently infamous for their Luxury, and excess of Riot, when best seen in Wars; so that it is a marvel they were able to prevail on the neighbour Nations, and bring them under their Command; as in the times of some of *Cræsus's* Predecessors it is said they did. Unless perhaps they did participate of the temper of *Mæcenæ*, the great Favourite of *Augustus Cæsar*, of whom *Paterculus* hath left this Character: *Ubi res vigiliam exigeret, erat sanè insonnis, providens, & agendi scens; simulac aliquid ex negotio remitti possit, otio ac molitie penè ultra sæminam fluens*: No man more vigilant than he in times of business; nor Woman more effeminate in his times of leisure.

Principal Cities of this Country were, 1. *Sardis*, on both sides of *Pactolus*, the Seat-Royal of *Cræsus*, and the Kings of *Lydia*, till the conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*. After which time, being taken by the *Grecians*, it so startled *Xerxes*, that he commanded one of his attendants to say aloud every day whilst he was at Dinner, That the *Grecians* had taken *Sardis*, continuing that Memento till it was recovered. Which course (I note

this only by the way) was commonly observed in the Parliaments of *France*, as long as *Calice* did remain in the hands of the *English*; and might be profitably revived, till again recover'd from the *French*. Overthrown by a most terrible *Earthquake*, to which Disease most of the *Asian* Cities had been very much subject) it was re-edified again at the cost of *Tiberius*; continuing long after the *Metropolis* of this Province, and one of the seven Churches of the *Lydian Asia*, of which the Holy Spirit took such special Notice. The others (besides *Pergamus* already mention'd in the *Greater Mysia*; and *Ephesus*, and *Smyrna* in the *Proper Asia*) were 2. *Philadelphia*, near, or on the Banks of the River *Caystrus*, the second City in account next to *Sardis* it self and honoured with the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, as appeareth by the Acts of the *Constantinopolitan Council*, where *Eustatius*, Bishop hereof doth subscribe himself, Ἐπίσκοπος τῆς Φιλαδελφίας Μελεπιάδης, Bishop of the *Metropolis* of *Philadelphia*, in the Province of *Lydia*. The *Turks* have a Tradition, that *Tamerlane* took and ruin'd this City after a Siege of six years; but whatever the truth of this Story is, Mr. *Wheeler* assureth us, the Inhabitants are reduced to a very small number, and live by their Labour; the *Turks*, who are their Masters, being worse than Beggars, and having neither *Mosque* nor *Priest*. The old City stood on the Northside of the *Imolus*, on the edge of a spacious fruitful Plain, and shews yet many Marks of its Antiquity and Magnificence, *Wheeler*, p. 263. *Tavernier*, p. 37. 3. *Thyatira*, honoured with the same privilege also, as appears by the constant Order, observed as well in the Civil as Ecclesiastical Catalogues of the Cities belonging to this Province. The reason whereof (for otherwise it was contrary to the practice both of Church and State, to have in one Province more than one *Metropolis*) was the respect had to those several Churches in regard of their Primitive Antiquity, and the Foundation of them by *St. John the Apostle*, as it was generally believed. It is seated in the Confines of *Mysia*, and was a Colony of the *Macedonians*, built in a delightful Plain. Christianity is almost wholly extinguished now in it, there being not above ten *Christians* in it, and those destitute both of Church and Priest, but then it has about 5000 *Turkish* Inhabitants. All its ancient Marble Structures are now buried in their own Ruins, the present Houses being built of Earth dried in the Sun; but then it has some Inscriptions which have revived the memory of it, which the *Greek* had wholly lost, till the *European* Merchants sought it out, and found it by those Reminders, *Wheeler*, p. 229. 4. *Laodicea*, by *Ptolomy* placed amongst the Cities of this Province, as it stood in his time, and before; but afterwards laid by *Constantine* to the *Greater Phrygia*, and made the *Metropolis* thereof (which Honour *Hierapolis* had before enjoyed) it being well observ'd by *Strabo*, that the *Romans* did not dispose of their Provinces according to Nations, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἕτερον τρόπον διατάξαι τὰς διοικήσεις, ἐν αἷς τὰς ποικίλας διαμενομένας, but according to those *Districts*, or Circuits, in which they kept their Courts of Justice. This ancient City is now utterly destroyed and desolate, being an Habitation for Wolves, Foxes, and Chacats, a Den of Dragons, Snakes, and Vipers; yet the Ruins shew it to have been a very great City, situate upon six or seven Hills, encompassing a large space of Ground in a Plain, watered by the River *Lycus*. It has yet three Theatres of white Marble, as beautiful and intire, as if they were but lately built, and a stately *Circus*. Next unto these, there were of especial consideration. 5. *Magnesia ad Maandrum*, so call'd, because situate on that River, to difference it from 6. *Magnesia penes Sipylum montem*, another of the same name near the Hill *Sipylus*. The first assigned over to *Thermistocles*, together with *Mysus* and *Lamiscus*, as was said before. The other memorable for the great Battle fought near unto it betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*; the loss whereof falling unto *Antiochus*, occasioned the loss of all his *Asian* Province

Provinces on this side of *Taurus*, and the payment of 150000 Talents for the charge of the War, besides some other hard Conditions then imposed upon him. This is now a large wall'd Town, with handsome Gates, well built within, and adorned with several *Mosques*; it being maintain'd by the Trade of Cotton-Yarn, sent hence to *Smyrna*, and is call'd by the *Turks* *Guzel-Hiffer*, and lies about twelve Miles from *Ephesus* to the S. E. upon the *Meander*; there yet remains in it several Pillars and Monuments of its Antiquity, *Wheeler*, p. 279.

7. *Alabanda*, opposite to *Magnesia*, on the other side of *Meander*, the People whereof, immediately on the overthrow of *Antiochus*, not only sent Ambassadors to *Rome* to congratulate with them, as many other Nations did, but built a Temple to it, and appointed *Anniversary* Games to be celebrated in the honour of that new-made Goddess. A thing more to be wondred at in the *Roman* Senate for receiving, than in this poor people for bestowing on their City so divine an honour.

8. *Trallis*, on the banks of *Caystrus*, to the Inhabitants whereof, *Ignatius* that Reverend Bishop, and Godly Martyr, writ the Epistle *ad Trallenses*.

That the *Lydians* were derived from *Lud* the Son of *Sem*, is testified by the general consent of such ancient Writers, as treat of the dispersions of the Sons of *Noah*, to which Opinions the nearness of the Names of *Lud*, *Ludin*, and *Lydi* (or *Λυδοι*, as the *Grecians* call them) seems to give good Countenance. Nor shall I here dispute it further, as a point unquestion'd: The Tale of *Lydius*, I know not what Nobleman that should name this Country, being taken up amongst the *Greeks* for want of more certain Truths. Once settled here, they grew up suddenly to a Kingdom, amongst the ancient Kings whereof are numbred *Manes* as the first, *Cotus* and *Atis*, and then *Asias*, (from whom *Lydia* first, and after, all the Continent, had the name of *Asia*) as his immediate Successors. After them I find mention of one *Cambletes*, said by *Athenæus* to be so great a Gormondizer, that in his sleep he eat his Wife, and finding her Hand in his Mouth next Morning, slew himself for shame; and of another named *Andramytes*, as infamous for his filthy Lusts, as *Cambletes* for his Gluttony. But the Race of these Kings ending in *Omphale*, the Mistress of *Hercules*, who made that valiant Champion spin amongst her Damsels, the *Heracidae*, or Posterity of *Hercules* succeeded next; of whom there is no constant and continued Succession till the time of *Ardissus*, the nineteenth in order of that Line, who began his Reign not long before the building of the City of *Rome*. Under his Successors the Affairs hereof so exceedingly prospered, especially under *Halyates*, the Father of *Cræsus*, that *Phrygia*, *Bythmia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Mysia*, *Caria*, *Æolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, acknowledged themselves Vassals to this Crown: Conceived both in Wealth and Power to be equal to the *Egyptian*, *Babylonian*, or *Median* Kingdoms, till the Conquest of *Syria* and *Egypt* by *Nebuchadnezzar* gave him the preheminance. But being come unto the height, it received a fall in the Person of *Cræsus*, the Successor of him who so much advanced it. The Kings hereof, from the time of the said *Ardissus*, take in order following.

The Kings of *LYDIA*.

A. M.

3190. 1. *Ardissus*. 36.
3226. 2. *Halyates*. 14.
3240. 3. *Melo*, who overcame the people of *Sardis*. 12.
3252. 4. *Candaules*, who shewing his Wife naked to *Gyges*, was by him slain; who marrying his Wife succeeded him in his Kingdom. The whole Story is this: *Candaules* had to Wife, a Woman of unparallel'd Beauty, and supposing the greatness of his Happiness not to consist so much in his own Fruition, as the notice which others might take of it, in-

tended to shew her in Nature's bravery to *Gyges* the Master of his Herds. *Gyges* at first dissuaded him from an attempt so foolish; but seeing no persuasion could prevail, he condescended. When he had seen the naked Queen, and was ready to depart, *Candaules* cried to him, *Esto fidelis Gyges*: Which words the Queen marking, and seeing the back of *Gyges* as he left the Chamber, the next Morning sent for him: When holding a Ponyard in her Hand, she gave him his choice either presently to be slain, or else to kill the King, and take her to Wife, with the Kingdom of *Lydia* for her Dower. Of which two Evils he made choice of that which he thought the least, and so kill'd *Candaules*.

5. *Gyges*, the first of this new Line, added *Ionia* to his other Dominions. A Prince of so great Wisdom, for the time he lived in, that all other Kings, his Neighbours, fate (as it were) in the light to him; and he as in the dark to them; occasioning thereby the fiction of a Ring he had, by which made invisible, when, and as often as he pleased.

3305. 6. *Ardus* II. the Son of *Gyges*. 37.

3342. 7. *Sardiattes*. 15.

3357. 8. *Halyattes* II. of whom before.

3406. 9. *Cræsus*, the last King of *Lydia*, subdued *Doris* and *Æolis*; after which Victories he was overcome by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*; in which Battle, a Son of *Cræsus* who had been dumb from his Cradle, seeing a Soldier ready to kill his Father, suddenly broke out into these words, *Rex est, cave ne occidas*. After his overthrow, and the Captivity of *Cræsus*, (one of the richest Kings that ever was of old) *Lydia* was made a *Persian* Province, A. M. 3420.

The *Lydians* after this rebelled, but being again subdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their Horses of Service, dispoiled them of all their Armour, and trained them up in all manner of loose and effeminate living; weakening by this means a powerful Nation, which before that time had not only maintained its own liberty, but awed all the Provinces adjoining. After this they continued *Persian* till the Conquest of *Asia* by the *Macedonians*, in the division of whose Spoils they fell to the Portion of *Seleucus*, and the Kings of *Syria*; following the common fortune of the rest of this *Asia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire, it had the *Lower Mysia*, or *Mysia Olympena* annexed unto it; by means whereof the limits of each became so confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one are many times ascribed to the other. In the falling of the Eastern Empire it was made (as all the rest of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that part of it which lieth next to *Æolis*, subject to the *Carausian* Family; as the other parts towards *Phrygia* Major were to the *Aidinian*.

12. *CARIA*.

C*aria* is bounded on the East with *Lycia*; on the North with *Lydia* and *Ionia*; on the West with the *Icarian*, or *Ægean* Sea; and on the South with the *Carpathian*. So call'd from *Cares*, the Son of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, once the Lord hereof, who is said to have invented the Science of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, call'd *Augury*; Though others ascribe it to the *Phrygians*, and others unto other Nations, all alike uncertain.

In this Country is the Hill call'd *Latmus*, the dwelling, or rather retiring-place of *Endymion*, who being much addicted to the study of *Astronomy*, found out the changes and courses of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets feigned to have been her Paramour. Others add,

add, that *Jupiter* hid him in a Cave under this Hill, and cast him into a deep sleep; (which, notwithstanding she descended sometimes to kiss him) whence came the old By-word, of *Endymionis somnum dormit*. Here is also in this Country the River *Salmacis*, said to infeeble all such as either drink of it, or bathe in it; from whence the Poets raise the fiction of *Salmacis*, and *Hermaphroditus*; described by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacida spolia sine sanguine & sudore*, mention'd by *Tully* in his Book of Offices, and there used for effeminate and wanton Exercises.

Places of most note in it, 1. *Miletus*, not far from the Hill *Latmus*, the Birth-place of *Thales*, one of the seven Wise-men of *Greece*, from hence call'd *Milesius*; and the Mother of no fewer than 75 (or as *Pliny* saith) of 80 Colonies, dispersed in several places of *Greece* and *Asia*; anciently honoured with the Oracle of *Apollo*, Sirnamed *Didymæus*, whose Temple being burnt by *Xerxes*, was again rebuilt by the *Mylefians*, to so vast a greatness, that it remained without Roof; compassed about with a Grove, and dwelling Houses, and sumptuously set out with costly Workmanship. This is that *Miletus* mention'd, *Acts* 20. to which *St. Paul* call'd together the Bishops of *Ephesus*, and of other the adjoining Cities, *Ab Epheso & reliquis proximis Civitatibus*, saith *St. Irenæus*, the renowned Bishop of *Lions*, lib. 3. cap. 14. Anciently it was call'd *Legis* and *Anactoria*. There is at this day vast Ruins of this City to be seen, which are call'd by the *Turks* *Palatjha*, but it has only a few Cottages inhabited by the Shepherds, who understand none of its ancient Inscriptions, *Wheeler*, 269. 2. *Mindus*, which being but a small Town, had so great Gates, that *Dio-genes* the *Cynick* cried out, and said, *Ye Men of Mindus, take heed that your City run not out at your Gates*. 3. *Hera-clea ad Latmum*, so call'd because situate at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from many others of that Name. 4. *Borgylia*, or *Borgylus*, as *Pliny* calleth it, where anciently *Diana* had another Temple, though not to be compared with that of *Ephesus*. 5. *Milasa*, in old times famous for two Temples sacred unto *Jupiter*; the way to which for 60 Furlongs was paved with Stone for the easier travelling of *Pilgrims*, and the better ordering of Processions; the principal of the Citizens serving there as *Priests*, which Office they held unto their Death. 7. *Primassus*, memorable for the Stratagem by which it was taken by *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perseus*; who meaning to force it by Mines, and finding the Earth so stony, that it would not work, commanded the *Pioneers* notwithstanding to make a noise under the Ground, and caused great Mounts of Rubbish to be raised secretly in the night, at the mouth of the Mine, as if the Work went very well forwards; at last he sent word unto the Townsmen, that two parts of the Wall stood only upon wooden Props, to which if he gave Fire, they should find no Mercy; which heard, the Citizens yielded up the Town unto him. So useful in the Art of War, is a piece of Wit, that it prevails sometimes more than Mines or Batteries.

In the South West of the Province, thrusting it self into the Sea like a spacious Promontory, stands the Country of *Doris*, so call'd of the *Dores*, a *Greek* people, who there inhabited. The principal Cities whereof were 1. *Cnidus*, not far from a Foreland or Promontory of the same Name, famous of old times for the Marble Image of *Venus*, call'd hence *Dea Cnidia*. 2. *Cressa*, a noted Haven Town in the time of *Ptolomy*. 3. *Halicarnassus*, (now call'd *Nest*) the Birth-place of *Hierodotus* and *Dionysius*, named hence *Halicarnassæus*, two famous Historians, and the Seat-Royal of *Artemesia* Queen of the *Carians*, (call'd from hence sometimes the Queen of *Halicarnassus*) who in the Honour of her Husband *Mausolus*, built a stately Monument, accounted one of the World's seven Wonders; of which thus *Martial*, speaking of the *Roman Amphitheatre* erected by *Domitian*:

*Acre nec vacuo pendentia Mausolæa
Laudibus immodicis Cares ad astra ferant.*

That is to say,

*Mausolus's Tomb filling the empty Air,
Let not the Carians praise beyond compare.*

But whatever it was in ancient time, it is now an uninhabited heap of Ruins, in which that once stately *Mausolus* is buried. *Wheeler*, p. 275.

That the *Carians* were so call'd from *Cares*, the Son of *Phoroneus*, King of *Argos*, hath been said before. But *Bochartus* will rather have them so call'd from *Car*, which in the *Phœnician* Language signifieth a Sheep, or a Ram; with numerous Flocks whereof they did once abound. And this may seem more probable, in regard that the *Ionians*, next Neighbours to *Caria*, borrowing this word from the *Phœnicians*, call'd Sheep by the name of *Cara*, *Καρεύειν τὸ ἀεικέτα*, saith *Hesychius*, the old Grammarian. From whomsoever they had their Name, certain it is, they were a very warlike people. *Eo armorum pugnaque amantes*, (saith *Pomponius Mela*) *ut aliena etiam bella appetere*, who when they had no Wars at Home, would seek out for Action. A little before the time of *Xerxes*, *Mausolus* reigned here, whose Wife *Artemesia* (lately mention'd) aided that King in his Undertakings against *Greece*. Afterwards, in the time of *Alexander* the Great, we met with *Ada*, Queen hereof, who aided him against the *Persians*; adopting him for her Son and Successor; Subject after her decease to the *Macedonians*, it followed the same Fortune with the rest of these Provinces, till the defeat of *Antiochus* near *Magnesia*: In the division of whose Spoils it was given to the *Rhodians*, incorporated not long after to the State of *Rome*, and made a Province of the Empire. Wrested from the Eastern Emperors by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; the greatest part hereof, on the death of *Aladine II.* was raised unto a petit Kingdom by the name of *Mentesia*, so call'd from *Mendos*, (or *Mindus*) the chief City of it; the residue being laid to the *Caraman* Kingdom, both long ago subdued by the *Ottoman* Family: That of *Mentesia*, by *Mahomet*, Sirnamed the Great, who dispossessed *Elias* the last Prince thereof, *An.* 1451.

13. LYCIA.

Lycia is bounded on the East with *Pamphylia*; on the West with *Caria*; on the North with parts of *Lydia*, and *Phrygia Major*; on the South with the *Mediterranean* Sea. Environed on three sides with the Mountain *Taurus*, which part it from the Countries above-mention'd; by consequence naturally strong, and not very accessible: The Sea for the space of twenty Miles shutting up the fourth. And here is to be observ'd, that besides this, there was a little Region of the same name not far from *Troy*, not much observ'd by our Geographers, either old or new, but mention'd sometimes by the Poets; as in *Virgil*, *Aeneid.* 4. *Qualis ubi hyberniam Lyciam Xanthique fluentis Describit*, &c. which is meant plainly of the *Phrygian*, or *Trojan Lycia*; the word *Hyberna* being added, because of its Northern situation in respect of this. Of this somewhat hath been said before in *Phrygia Minor*. In which also that there was a River call'd *Xanthus*, appears not only by those words of *Virgil* which are cited there, but by two passages in *Oenones's* Epistles unto *Paris* no less evident.

The people hereof were sometimes call'd *Xanthi* from *Xanthus* the chief River hereof, which rising in two Springs from the root of Mount *Cadmus*, passeth by a Town call'd *Xanthus* also, and falleth into the Sea. But generally they were call'd *Lycii*, and the Country *Lycia*, from *Lycus* the Son of *Pandion* King of *Athens*; who either

ther conquered them, or did some memorable Act amongst them, which deserved that honour.

The principal Mountain of this Country, and indeed of *Asia*, is the Mountain *Taurus*, which hath its beginning in this Province, extending Eastward to the great *Oriental Ocean*; of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said hereafter, when these Hills are grown unto the greatest.

One of the Branches of it, and the most notable in this Country, is that call'd *Chimera*, vomiting flames of Fire like *Stieilian Etna*; the bottom whereof was infested with *Serpents*, the middle parts grazed upon by *Goats*, and the higher parts made dangerous by the Dens of *Lions*. Hence by the Poets made a Monster, having the Head of a *Lion*, the Body of a *Goat*, and the Tail of a *Serpent*; according unto that of *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*:

*Quoque Chimæra jago molis in partibus Hercum,
Pectus & ora Leo, caudam Serpentis habebat.*

In English thus:

Chimera from a *Goat* her mid-part takes,
From *Lions* Head and Breast, her Tail from Snakes.

This dangerous Mountain was first planted and made habitable by the care of *Bellerophon*, a noble *Grecian*, who is therefore fabled by the Poets to have killed this Monster; employed upon this business by *Tetares*, the King of *Lycia*, to whom he had been sent by *Proetus*, King of *Argos*, who was jealous of him, and sent his Letters to require that King to kill him. Whence came the saying, *Bellerophonis literas portare*; applied to those, who were unawares employed to carry Letters tending to their own destruction; such as those carried by *Uriah* to *Joab* the General, by command of *David*.

This Country was so populous, that anciently there was reckoned three score Cities in it, of which six and thirty remained in the time of *St. Paul*, now nothing left of them but the Names and Ruins. Those of chief note were, 1. *Myra*, the Metropolis of *Lycia*, when a Roman Province; by consequence an Archbishops See, when Christian. *St. Nicolas*, one of the Bishops hereof, in the Primitive times, is said to have been a great Patron of Scholars: His Festival annually holden on the sixth of *December*, is celebrated in the Church of *Rome* with several Pastimes; and still in some Schools here in *England*, (as in that of *Burford* in the County of *Oxon*, where I had my Breeding, and my Birth) for a Feast, and a Play-day. Of this City there is mention, *Acts* 27. 5. 2. *Telmessus*, the Inhabitants whereof are famous for *South-saying*, and accounted the first Interpreters of Dreams. 3. *Patara*, or *Patras*, (formerly call'd *Sataros*) beautified with a fair Haven, and many Temples; one of them dedicated to *Apollo*, with an Oracle in it, for Wealth and Credit equal unto that of *Delphos*. 4. *Phaselis* on the Seaside also, a Nest of Pirates in the times of the *Roman* greatness, by whom then haunted and enriched, as *Algir* is now; but taken by *Servilius*, a Roman Captain, at such time as *Pompey* scoured the Seas. And unto the Pirates of this Town the former Ages were indebted for the first invention of those swift Vessels, which the *Romans* call'd a *Phaselus*, by the name of the Town; we may render it a *Brigantine*. 5. *Cognus*, with the Mountain of the same name, thrusting out eight Points, or Promontories near to the *Chimæra*. 6. *Rhodia*, or *Rhodiopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth it, most probably of the Foundation of the neighbouring *Rhodians*. 7. *Solyria*, on the borders hereof towards *Pisidia*, the people of which were conquer'd and added unto *Lycia* by the Sword of *Bellerophon* whom *Jobanus* with a mind to kill him, according to the request of *Proetus*, employed in that Service. 8. *Corydalla*, near the Mountain call'd *Maffigrum*, the *Maffijetes* of *Pliny*. 9. *Podalen*, the

chief Town of *Myra*; as *Podalunda* is of *Orbitania*, two little Regions in this Country.

The *Lycians* were in former times a puissant People, extending their Power upon the Seas, as far as *Italy*. Subjected to the *Persians* not without great difficulty; the People with such obstinacy defending their Liberty, that some of them being brought by *Hugon*, Lieutenant unto *Cyrus*, the first Persian Monarch, they first burnt their Wives, Children, Servants, and Rides, in a common fire; and then made a furious fall upon the Enemy, by whom put all unto the Sword. To *Alexander* in his march this way towards *Persia*, they submitted without any resistance. After whose death they fell with the rest of these parts into the hand of *Seleucus*. On the defeat of *Antiochus* at the Battle of *Magnesia*, it was given to the *Rhodians* for their assistance of that War; but govern'd as a free Estate by a Common-Council of 14 Senators, elected out in their principal Cities: Over whom was one chief President, or Prince of the Senate, whom they call'd by the name of *Lyciarchus*. In these remained the sole power of imposing Taxes, making War and Peace, appointing *Justitaries* and inferior Magistrates, and all things appertaining to the publick Government. A shadow of which power they retained when brought under the *Romans*, and a shadow only; the Supreme power being no longer in the Senate of *Lycia*, but in that of *Rome*. Nor had their *Lyciarchus* any thing but an empty Name, and the vain privilege of ordering and disposing the publick Games, wherein by his Office he presided. When made a Province of the Empire, it had the same fortune as the others had, till it fell into the power of the *Turks*. After the death of the second *Seleucus* made a part of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; of which more anon.

14. LYCAONIA.

Lycæonia is bounded on the East with *Armenia Minor*, from which parted by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West with the *Greater Phrygia*; on the North with *Cappadocia*; and on the South with *Pisidia*. So call'd from the *Lycæones*, a People of *Lycia*, or from the *Lycæonians*, Inhabitants of *Lycæonia*, a Town of *Phrygia Major*; who enlarging themselves into these parts, gave this Name unto it. Either of which I should prefer before their Conceit, who derive it from *Lycæon*, King of *Arcadia*, dispossessed by *Jupiter* of that Kingdom; or think that *Lycæon* was a King of this Country, and not of that.

Places of note herein, 1. *Iconium* (now *Cogni*) the Metropolis hereof when a Roman Province; a place of great Strength and Consequence, situated advantageously in the Mountains, for Defence and Safety, and therefore chosen for the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings in *Lesser Asia*, at such time as they were most distressed by the *Western Christians*; who under the command and presence of the Emperar *Conrade*, did in vain besiege it, forced to depart thence with great loss both of Men and Honour. Afterwards made the Seat Royal of the *Aladin* Kings, the former Race being extinguished by the *Tartars*; and finally, of the Kings of the House of *Caraman*, whose Kingdom, call'd the Kingdom of *Caramania*, contained all the South part of the *Lesser Asia*; that is to say, part of the Province of *Caria*, all *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Lamia*, *Calicia*, *Pisidia*, and this *Lycæonia*. It is still the Seat of a *Turkish* *Basha*, and of a Christian Arch-Bishop, great, and well peopl'd, and the capital City of *Caramania*. In the Year 1658. a *Turkish* *Basha* who was in Rebellion against the Port, was defeated near this place, which lies overagainst the Western Point of *Cyprus*, and is now call'd *Cogni* by the *Turks*. 2. *Iyllra*, the Birth-place of *Timothe* the Evangelist; where *Paul* and *Barnabas*, having miraculously healed a Cripple, were adored as Gods; and not long after, on the instigation of some *Jews* which came down from *Antioch*

and *Paul*, most despitely treated; *Paul* being stoned into the bargain, though it pleased God to raise him to life again. *Act. 14. verse 19. 2.* Such was the Divine pleasure of Almighty God, that he that did consent to the stoning of *St. Stephen* the *Protomartyr*, and took charge of the Cloaths of his Executioners, should suffer in the same kind wise as he had trespass'd, and feel some smart remembrance of his former Actions. 3. *Dobe*, honoured by the preaching of the said Apostle. 4. *Laranda*, so call'd by *Procomy*, and still preserving its old Name, the second place for Reputation next unto *Iconium*. 5. *Adossus*. 6. *Paralus*. 7. *Cannus*. 8. *Caratha*, with others named by *Procomy*; but not else observable.

Nor indeed were the *Lycornians* themselves, from whomsoever they descended, of any great note or observation in the former times; subject to *Cappadocia* when it was a Kingdom, and reckoned as part of it in the time of *Procomy*, when made a Province of the Empire. Dismembred from it by some of the following Emperors, either to create new Offices and Preferments for some Court-Favourite, or to satisfy the Ambition of some Prelates, aspiring to the dignity of a Metropolitan, it was made a Province of its self. Torn from the Empire by the *Turks*, it was at first a member of the *Selzuccian* Kingdom, as afterwards of the *Caramanian*. Which last founded by *Caraman*, a great Prince of the *Turks*, on the death of *Aladine* the Second, the last King of the *Selzuccian* Family, was a great Eye-sore unto those of the House of *Ottoman*, from the time of *Amurath* the First, who first warred upon it, to the Reign of *Bajazet* the Second, who in fine subverted it, *An. 1486.* as shall be shewn hereafter, when we come to *Cilicia*, the last of the Provinces of that Kingdom, in the course of this Work.

The Sultans of *Iconium* from *Du Fresne* his *Historia Bizantina*.

The *Turks* began their Incursions into that part of *Asia* which bordereth on *Cappadocia*, and *Lycania*, under the Reign of *Romanus Diogenes*, Emperor of *C. P.* about the Year 1072. when that Empire was involved in destructive Civil Wars. *Diogenes*, the Emperor, attempting to put a stop to this furious Torrent, being this Year overcome in Battle, and taken Prisoner, which Victory gave a beginning to this Kingdom.

A. C.

1072. 1. *Cutlumefes* the first Sultan, Uncle by the Father's side to *Tangrolipix*, first Sultan-General to the *Turks*, and the Conqueror of the greater part of the *Grecian* Asiatick Provinces. This Prince had before this time possess'd himself of *Iconium*, and upon this Victory he endeavour'd to get into his Power all the Countries which his Nephew had conquer'd; but the *Caliph* interposing *Axan*, retained the upper Provinces, and *Cutlumefes* was to enjoy what he could conquer in the *Lesser Asia*. He left behind him two Sons, *Solyman*, and *Mazkurius*.

2. *Solyman* the Elder succeeded him, and pushed on his Father's Conquests; he took in the greatest part of *Bythmia*, and the City of *Nice*, which he made ever after the Seat of his Kingdom, and after it *Antioch*; and in the Year 1084. he overthrew *Serfold*, Sultan of *Aleppo*, but the Year after was overthrown and slain by his Successor.

1085. 3. *Apelchafem*, *Solyman*'s Governor, or General, upon the Death of his Master, usurped all his Dominions, but was soon after taken and slain.

4. *Chitziasthan*, or *Chitziesthan*, or *Ker-Astan*, the eldest Son of *Solyman*, next succeeded, and

inherited the War with the *Greeks*, which he compos'd, and fell upon *Tzicba* another *Turk*, who had taken *Smyrna*, *Ibessa*, under the Reign of *Alexius Comnenus*, whom he treacherously slew. *Alexius* hereupon restor'd *Nice* to the *Sultan* in the Year 1115. which had been taken by the *Christians* in their passage to the Holy Land with much difficulty, in the Year 1107. *Chitziasthan* resigned this City to his Brother, with *Lycania*, and settled at *Iconium*.

5. *Chitziasthan* II. Son of the former, succeeded his Father, and settled also at *Iconium*. He was slain by *Almut* his Ballard-Brother.

1116. 6. *Almut*, a Ballard of *Chitziasthan* the First, by the Forces of *Grass*, Prince of *Turcomania*, obtain'd the *Sultan* of *Iconium*. He fought *Tartiman*, Sultan of *Cappadocia*, and *Nouman* of *Syria*, and *John* and *Emmanuel Comneni*; from all which was he come off a gainer.

7. *Chitziasthan* III. Son of *Almut*, and Sultan of *Iconium*. In the Year 1176. he gave *Emmanuel Comnenus* so great an overthrow, that he never joyed after it. Towards his latter End he became a Christian, as *Abul-Fazl*, and other Writers say.

1182. 8. *Chitziasthan* the eldest Son of the former, succeeded; his Mother was a Christian, and the Daughter of the Count of *Tolice*; he fought *Frederick I.* in his passage to the Holy Land, and was beaten out of his Country by that Prince, 1188. and 1189. who obtained three Victories in that Passage; after this he had with *Alexius Angelus*, Emperor of *C. P.* whom he afterwards visited at *C. P.* He had a Son call'd *Kutepes*, or *Melec*, but was succeeded by

1200. 9. *Rucratin*, or *Rucnodin*, his Brother, who in Conjunction with *Alexius*, invaded his Territories. He did not long continue in his Friendship to the *Greeks*, pretending they had suborn'd Assassins to murder him; however, his Reign was not long, for he died in the Year 1204.

1204. 10. *Chitziasthan* hereupon returned, and regain'd his lost Kingdom. After this he retok *Nice*, and took *Attalia* from *Theodorus*, *Luscaris*, *Constantinople*, being then in the Hands of the *Franks*, or *Latins*; and the Eastern Emperors not able to defend themselves against the *Turks*, and *Pilgrims*, and yet at last *Theodorus* the Emperor slew this Sultan in Battle with his own Hands.

1207. 11. *Kutepes*, or *Melec*, succeeded, and is call'd also *Ezzadinus Caccam*. He died during the Siege of *Damata*, in 1219. and is reported to have been a Well wisher to the *Christians*, but warr'd against them by the Procurement of *Saladin*, his Father-in-law.

1219. 12. *Azatimus*, or *Alatimus*, or *Aladin Caccabidus*, Brother of *Melec*, succeeded him, his Children being all too young to be trust'd in such a beset Kingdom. He was a Prince of great Prudence and Valour, and restor'd the State of the *Turks* which was then very low. In the Year 1235. he by a Letter sent to Pope *Gregory IX.* shew'd a great inclination to embrace the Christian Religion. The next year after he died before *Satalia*, a Town of *Armenia*; others say in 1238.

1235. 13. *Gatafadinus*, *Japhatius*, *Jathatinus*, *Azatimus*, or *Gathodin*, *Caccabidus*, according to the various ways of Writing, was the only Son, and Successor of *Azatim*, by the help of *Franks*, who served him and his Father as Mercenaries;

Mercenaries; who persuaded him to put his Father's Widow and his two Brothers to Death, that he might establish himself. He that gave this Counsel, design'd afterwards to murder *Gaiasadin* himself too; but in this he was prevented, and perished with the rest. During the Reign of this Prince, in the Years 1292. and 1293. the *Tartars* invaded his Country, took his Cities, and rifled his Provinces. Upon their going off, one *Coterin*, a *Turk*, endeavoured to usurp his Kingdom, but was slain by the Lord of *Lambron*. *Gaiasadin* died at *Attalia*, or *Sattalia*, in *Octob.* 1245. He had three Sons, *Azadin*, *Raconad*, and *Altadin*.

1245. 14. *Raconad*, or *Rasnaddin*, succeeded him in the Sultany of *Iconium*; being set up by *Selasadin*, a person of great Power and Interest; he was then about eleven years of Age, and was born of a *Greek* Mother, who was then living. *Lofyn*, the General of the *Turkish* Forces under his Father, opposed him, and slew *Selasadin* in his Quarrel, but he maintained his Post, and made a Peace with the *Tartars*; In the Year 1254. the *Tartars* again renewed the War against him; and the next year took him Prisoner.

1255. 15. *Azadin*, the eldest Son of *Gaiasadin*, ascended his Father's Throne, *Raconad* being carried into Captivity by the *Tartars*. This Prince is call'd in the *Turkish* Annals *Aladin*. In the Year 1260. upon an Invasion of the *Tartars*, he was forced with his Wife and Children to fly to the Emperor *Michael Palaeologus* to *C. P.* he endeavoured after this to have recovered his Government, but died in the Attempt, leaving his Wife and Children in the Hands of the Emperor, who kept them Prisoners.

1261. 16. *Melec*, the eldest Son of *Azadin*, was rather the Heir of his Father's Calamity than Kingdom, which he endeavoured to regain, but was opposed by *Amur*, the principal of the Nobility, who getting together a great Army, drove *Melec* into Exile. And hereupon the *Turkish* Affairs fell into an Anarchy, and that gave occasion to the Rise of the *Ottoman* Family. The time of this Prince's Death is not expressed by my Author, he saith he was proclaim'd *Sultan*, but did never quietly enjoy it, being soon after overthrown by *Haly*, the Son of *Amur*.

15. PISIDIA.

Pisidia hath on the East *Armenia Minor*; on the West some part of *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the North *Lycania*; on the South *Pamphylia*, and some part of *Cilicia*; from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*. So call'd from the *Pisidæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their Name I find not amongst my Authors.

The Country small, but furnished with great plenty of all Provisions, as appeareth by that passage of *Livy*, where speaking of the Expedition of *Manlius* into these parts, he telleth us that he came into the Fields of *Sagalassa*, (one of the Cities hereof) being of a rich Soil, and plentiful of all manner of Fruit, *Inde ventum est* (saith he) *in agrum Sagalassarum, uberem fertilisque omni genere frugum*: But this is to be understood only of the Plains and Champian, the Mountainous parts hereof being (like others of that nature) poor and barren.

Towns of most observation in it. 1. *Antioch*, the Metropolis hereof, when a Province of the Roman Empire, call'd for distinction sake *Antiochia Pisidiæ*; mention of which is made *Acts* 4. and of the Jews Syna-

gogue therein, honoured by *St. Paul's* preaching, the sum of whose divine Sermon is there repeated. Built by *Seleucus*, the first King of *Syria* of the *Macedon* Race, and by him so call'd in honour of his Father *Antiochus*. 2. *Seleucia*, the foundation of the same *Seleucus*, call'd also, to distinguish it from others of that Name, *Seleucia Pisidiæ*. 3. *Lysimachus*, on the borders hereof towards *Phrygia*. 4. *Silge*, a Colony of the *Lacedæmonians*. 5. *Sagalassa*, situate in the most fruitful part of all this Country, as appears by that of *Livy* before mention'd. 6. *Cremna*, which only had the honour of a Roman Colony. 7. *Termessus*, strongly situate in the Strights of the Mounts, the hilly Country about which hath the name of *Alieus*. 8. *Olaia*. 9. *Phanassa*, of which little memorable.

As for these *Pisidæ*, they were originally descended of the *Solyms*, Inhabitants of the Borders of *Lyca*. A valiant People, and so affirmed to be by *Livy*, who calleth them *longè multimos bello*. Nor did he speak it without cause, this small Nation holding out against the *Persians*, and not conquered by them, when their great Neighbours were subdued. Against these, *Cyrus*, the Brother of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, King of *Persia*, did pretend a Quarrel, as if they had trespassed on the borders of his Province. Which though perhaps they had not done, yet this gave him good occasion to levy an Army, pretending revenge on them, but intending to dispossess his Brother of the *Persian* Monarchy: But *Tisaphernes* Lieutenant to the King in *Asia*, seeing greater Preparations than were sufficient to oppose the weak *Pisidians*, made the King acquainted with his Suspicions, who accordingly provided for Resistance. The Army of *Cyrus* consisting of 12000 *Grecians*, and 100000 *Persians*. The Kings Forces were no fewer than 90000 fighting Men. They met at *Cunaxa*, not far from *Babylon*, where *Cyrus* lost both the Victory and his Life. The *Grecians* who had made their side good, and stood in honourable terms of Composition, being by *Tisaphernes* betrayed, lost the best of their Company. The rest under the conduct of *Xenophon*, made safe retreat home in despite of 200000 Men which followed at their Heels. This *Xenophon* was an Agent in, and the Hellenian of this Expedition; by whose Example the *Spartans* first, and after them the *Macedonians* were encouraged to attempt the Conquest of *Persia*. But to return to these *Pisidians*, they fell, with others of their Neighbours, under the power of the *Macedonians*, and were made part of the Dominion of *Seleucus*. Abandoned by *Antiochus* to the will of the *Romans*, and settled in Obedience by the Military progress of *Manlius*, spoken of before; they were in *Ptolemy's* time annexed to *Pamphylia*, as a part thereof. Afterwards made a distinct Province of it self, and so continued till those parts of the *Eastern* Empire were subdued by the *Turks*: First part of the *Selucian* and *Aladinian* Kingdoms, after of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; whereof more anon.

16. PAMPHTLIA.

Pamphylia is bounded on the East with *Isauria* and *Cilicia*; on the West with *Lycia*, from which parted by a branch of the *Taurus*; on the North with *Pisidia*, separated from it by the main Body of that Mountain; and on the South with the *Mediterranean* Sea, which in those parts which lie next to it, is call'd *Mare Pamphylum*. The reason of the Name I find not, unless we think with *Metaphrastes*, that it was so named, *quod ex omnibus gentibus constata esset*, because inhabited by a mixture of many Nations; for so *Pamphylia* in the *Greek* Tongue doth expressly signifie. And probable enough it is, that lying near unto the Sea, with an open Shore, opposite to *Asiatick*, near *Syria*, and not far from *Greece*, several Nations from those parts might repair unto it; and from thence the Name.

The Country for the most part is very Mountainous, over-run with the Branches of Mount *Taurus*; but these Branches feed great store of Goats, of whose Hair are made abundance of *Chamlets* and *Grograins*, not inferior unto Silks for fineness. Towards the Sea, which for the space of an hundred and fifty Miles Coasts along this Shore, more pleasant, populous, and fruitful; well watered, and as well planted. The principal Rivers hereof, being 1. *Cataractus*. 2. *Cestrus*; and 3. *Eurimedon*; nigh to which last, *Simon* the Son of *Miltiades*, Captain-General of the *Athenian* Army, overthrew in one day both the Sea and Land Forces of the *Persians*. The manner thus: Having by plain force broke their Navy, of which he took and sunk no fewer than forty Ships, and three thousand Gallies, he stowed the *Persian* Vessels with his best Men, attired in the Habit, and wearing the Colours of the *Persians* in the tops of their Ships. In their approach the Camp was opened, and all prepared to entertain their victorious Countrymen, but the *Greeks* once in, suddenly put them to the Sword, and took twenty thousand of them Prisoners.

Principal Cities of it, 1. *Attalia*, founded by *Ptolomy Philadelphus* King of *Egypt*, and for long time the greatest and most flourishing City of all this Province; well fenced, and seated very commodiously for Trade, on a very fair Bay, now call'd *Golfo di Sattalia*, by the name of the Town, but little altered. And though the *Romans* did confer the Honour of the *Metropolitan* City upon *Aspendus*, yet still *Attalia* had the start in point of Riches, and is to this day a wealthy and well-traded *Empory*, the wealthier for the fair Tapestries which are herein made. Of this Town there is mention, *Acts* 14. ver. 25. 2. *Perga*, famous in old times for a Temple of *Diana*, and the yearly Festivals there held in honour of her, from whence call'd *Diana Pergæa*; more famous in the fulness of time, for *St. Paul's* Preaching in it, mention'd *Acts* 14. ver. 25. 3. *Syde*, renowned in times of *Gentilism*, for a Temple of *Pallas*. 4. *Magydus*, on the Seaside, not far from *Syde*. 5. *Aspendus*, an in-land Town, but strongly situate; made the *Metropolis* of the Province in the time of the *Romans*; remarkable for the Fiddlers, or Musicians of it, who with one Hand both held their Harp, and plaid upon them, keeping the other free for more gainful uses; whence the Proverb of *Aspendus*, *Citharista*, an *Aspendian* Harper, by which they signified a Thief. The Town first founded by the *Argives*, the Colony sent thither being led by *Mopsus*, from whom the Country hereabouts had the name of *Mopsia*. 6. *Olbia*, not far from *Attalia*. 7. *Caracensium*; and 8. *Colobrassus*, two of the Towns of that part hereof which had the name of *Cilicia Aspera*; as 9. *Cretopolis*, and 10. *Menedemium*, of that part which was call'd *Carbalia*.

Of these *Pamphylians* there is little to be said in point of Story, but that they were for the most part on the suffering hand; subject from time to time to those mightier Princes, who would not let their Neighbours rest in quiet by them. Being on the same side of *Taurus*, and of easie Access, they became first Vassals to the *Syrian*, and after to the *Persian* Kings. When *Alexander* passed that way, in his March towards *Persia*, he took all the Sea-Towns of it: The whole brought under with the rest of the *Asian* Provinces, by *Antigonus* first, after by *Seleucus* the great King of *Syria*. In the expiration of whose Line, this People and their Neighbours of *Cilicia*, being left to themselves, and tempted by *Mithridates* to his Faction, began to be troublesome on the Seas, and proved notable *Pirates*, and were the first Authors or Inventors of those Gallies of an hundred and forty, or an hundred and sixty Oars apiece; which the *Italians* call from hence by the name of *Pamphyli*. But forced to leave this Trade at last, being Warred upon by the *Romans* with great Forces both by Sea and Land (a fuller Narrative whereof we shall have in *Cilicia*) in the conclusion of that War, they lost that liberty which so

small a time they had enjoyed, and were made Vassals unto *Rome*. Afterwards made a Province of the *Asian* *Diocese*, they ran the same Fortune with the rest, till subdued by the *Turks*; and at the death of *Aladine*, were seized on by *Caraman*, and so became a part of his Kingdom; of which we shall hear more when we come to *Cilicia*. And so much for the Provinces of the *Asian* *Diocese* (the Provinces of the Isles excepted, whereof more anon) converted to the *Christian* Faith by three great Apostles; but most especially by *St. Paul*, of whose Travels through most Cities and Regions of it, there is such pregnant Evidence in the Book of *Acts*. And that *St. Peter* and *St. John* had also their parts herein, appears by the *Revelation* of the one, and the first Epistle of the other: *Paul* planting, *John* and *Peter* watering, but *God himself* giving the Increase. Pass we on next unto *Isauria* and *Cilicia*, which though Provinces of the *Diocese* of the *Orient*, were parts of the *Caramanian* Kingdom; of which having taken a Survey, and so cleared our selves of this *Peninsula*, we will then sail about such Islands as make up the remainder of the *Asian* *Diocese*.

17. IS A U R I A. 18. C I L I C I A.

These two, though distinct Provinces, I have joyned together, because the first was only a part of the last; *Cilicia* anciently comprehending both: The Fortunes of both being the same also in point of Story, which makes the Conjunction the more natural.

Isauria, a mountainous and hilly Province, seated on both sides of *Taurus*, hath on the East and South the rest of *Cilicia*, whereof anciently it was a part; on the North *Pisidia*; on the West *Pamphylia*. So call'd from *Isaurus*, the chief City of it, when first made known unto the *Romans*; which being taken by *Servilius* the *Proconsul*, impoyed by *Pompey* in that Service, reduced the conquered Country under the Command of *Rome*, and gave unto the Conqueror the Surname of *Isauricus*.

The quality of the Soil, and whole Estate of this small Province, take thus from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who had seen these Countries. *Ciliciæ lateri dextro annexa Isauria, uberi palmite viret, & frugibus multis; quam mediam, flumen navigabile Calicadnus intersecundit, &c.* i. e. "On the right Hand of *Cilicia* lieth *Isauria*, a Province of a wealthy Soil, plentiful of Vines, and much other Fruits, which the River *Calicadnus* parteth in the very midst. Beautified, besides many Towns, with two principal Cities. 1. *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*; and 2. *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the Emperor brought a *Roman* Colony. For as touching 3. *Isaurus*, heretofore a walled City, and of most esteem, it hath been long ago destroyed, as yielding too secure a Refuge to the neighbouring Rebels; inso-much, that now there are scarce any visible Tracts of its former greatness. And not much after, *hæ duæ Provincie bello quendam Piratico catarvis mixtæ Prædonum, à Servilio Proconsule missæ sub jugum, factæ sunt veltigales.* i. e. "These Provinces (*Cilicia* and this) heretofore in the *Piratical* War joyning with those Robbers, were brought under by *Servilius* the *Proconsul*, and made subject to the State of *Rome*. And here we have in brief the nature of the Country, the names of the chief Rivers, and the principal Cities, with so much of the Story as relates to the first subjugation of it. What further doth concern it we shall hear in *Cilicia*, upon the which it did depend.

2. *Cilicia* is bounded on the East with *Syria*, or rather that part thereof which is call'd *Comagena*, separated from which part by a Branch of the Mountain *Taurus*, call'd *Amanus*; on the West with *Pamphylia*; on the North with *Isauria*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the South with the *Mediterranean*, and *Syria*, specially so call'd. It was thus named, as the old Tradition was, from *Cilix*, the Brother of *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, a near

near Neighbour to it: But as *Bochartus* (of whose Humour I have told you often) from *Calistikm*, a *Phœnician* word, signifying Stones, *quia lapidea est Regio*, because in some parts, especially in that which is call'd *Cilicia Thracæa*, or *Cilicia Aspera*, it was very stony. It is now call'd *Caramania*, as the last Province of the *Caramanian* Kingdom, which held out for those falling Princes, when the rest was conquer'd by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Race.

The Country said by *Marcellinus* to be *Terra dives omnibus bonis*, wealthy and fruitful of all Necessaries. Which Character holdeth good, chiefly in the Eastern parts, which heretofore had the name of *Cilicia Campestris*; the Western parts lying towards *Pamphylia*, formerly call'd *Cilicia Aspera*, being rough and stony. But generally where the Lands lie in several, and are duly cultivated, it answereth to the former Character; being also very well water'd, and having a fair and large Sea-coast for the space of three hundred Miles and upwards. Which notwithstanding it is not much traded, and but meanly inhabited; a great part of the Country lying in large and common Fields, to which none can lay any proper Claim, and therefore planted only with Goats and Sheep: Out of which the Commoners on all sides raise good profit by Cheese and Butter, by their Fleeces chiefly. Here is also a good breed of Horses, of which six hundred yearly are culled out for the special Service of the *Grand Seigneur*. But as they have some profitable and useful Creatures, so they have others as dangerous and hurtful to them; especially those which the vulgar *Grecians* call the *Squilachi*, of a mixt making betwixt a Dog and a Wolf; which go in Troops, and are so bold, and thievish withal, as they use to set upon a Man as he is asleep, and leave him neither Hat, Cloak, nor Fardel, nor any thing they can conveniently get from him.

Chief Rivers hercof are, 1. *Pyramus*, now call'd *Malmistra*, which rising on the Northside of the *Taurus*, and forcing his Passage through that Mountain, makes such a noise in falling down the Precipices and Rocks thereof, as resemblanceth at a great distance a Clap of Thunder. 2. *Orymagdus*. 3. *Calicadnus*, spoken of before. 4. *Cidnus*, which riseth in the *Anti-Taurus*; a River of a violent Course, and so cold a Water, that as *Pliny* writes, it cureth the Gout: The Waters of which proved very dangerous to *Alexander the Great*, the coldness of them striking violently into his Stomach; and deadly to *Frederick* the first Emperor of the *Germans*, as he here bathed himself, the violence of the Stream tripping up his Heels, and he not able to recover, was presently drowned.

Of their chief Hills I need add nothing, having already said that the Country is parted by *Amanus* from *Syria*, and by *Taurus* it self from *Pisidia* and *Armenia Minor*; not easie of entrance by the first, but very difficult by the last: The Streights thereof call'd *Pilæ Ciliciæ*, or the Ports of *Cilicia*, being indeed so streight, and almost impassable, that had they been guarded, or regarded by the *Persians*, as they should have been, the Progress of *Alexander's* Victories might have ended there. But *Arsenes*, who had the charge of them, durst not stand his ground, and so left them open to the Enemy, whom by those Ports he put into the possession of the Kingdom of *Persia*. With better Faith, though no better Fortune, did the Soldiers of *Pescennius niger* make good these Streights against the Emperor *Severus*; the Monarchy of the World lying the second time at the Stake, and to be tried for in this Cock-pit. For the *Nigrians* possessed of these Streights and Entrances, courageously withstood the *Severian* Party; till at last a sudden Tempest of Rain and Thunder continually darning in their Faces, (as if the very Heavens had been armed against them) they were fain to leave the Passage, and therewith the Victory to the adverse Faction, having sold that at the loss of 20000 of their own Lives,

which *Alexander* had the happiness, or the hap, to buy for nothing.

In the borders of this Country, towards *Pamphylia*, lived a Tribe, or Nation call'd the *Soli*, originally of *Attica*: But in long tract of time disused from converse and communication with their Countrymen, they speak that Language so corruptly, that from their barbarous manner of Pronunciation, and as rude Expression, came the word *Solecismus*. Yet amongst these were born three Men of eminent Note; that is to say, *Chrysippus* the Philosopher, *Philemon* and *Aratus* the Poets; out of the Writings of which last, *St. Paul* vouchsafed to use this Passage, *ὡς ὁ θεὸς ἐξουὶαν ἰ. ε. For we are all of his Offspring*, *Acts* 17. ver. 28. That blessed Apostle thought himself never the worse Preacher, for being brought up in humane Learning, at the Feet of *Gamaliel*, nor held it any disparagement to the influences of the Holy Ghost, to make use of it in his Sermons and divine Discourses; and therefore to prevent those Cavils which Ignorance, or Misprision might chance to make in times succeeding, hath thrice vouchsafed the Words and Testimony of Heathen Writers, viz. of *Epimenides*, *Tit.* 1. ver. 12. of *Menander*, *1 Cor.* 15. ver. 33. and that of *Aratus* before-mention'd. So lawful is it in this kind, for those of the *Spiritual Israel*, to rob the *Egyptians*; and to make this *Hagar* serviceable to her Mistress *Sarah*.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Solz*, the Habitation of the *Soli*, before remembred; by some said to be built by *Solon* the *Athenian*; but generally affirmed to have been planted by those of *Rhodes* and *Attica*; mistakingly call'd *Heliopolis*, by *Qu. Curtius*, which is as much in *Latine* as *Solis Civitas*, or the City of the Sun. On the site hereof then decayed and ruinous, (the Town having been destroyed by *Tigranes* the *Armenian* King, in his late Wars against the *Romans*) did *Pompey* build his City of *Pompeiopolis* after his Victory over the Pirates; who not only Lorded it over the Seas, and consequently obstructed Trade and Merchandize, but wasted and spoiled the Villages of *Italy* it self. *Pompey* being Victor, and having inflicted exemplary Punishment on the Ring-leaders, with the rest, peopled this new Town, and the Country adjoyning, allowing them competent possessions, lest Want and Necessity should again enforce them to the like courses. An action truly commendable, and worthy so great a Captain, rather to take an occasion of offending from the People, than after Offence done, to punish them. *Hythlodæus* in the *Utopia*, somewhat bitterly though perhaps not unjustly, inveigheth against the Laws of *England*, for ordaining Death to be the Punishment of Theft. *Cum multo potius providendum fuerit, uti aliquis esset proventus vitæ; ne cuiquam sit tam dira furandi primum deinde pereundi necessitas.* Whereas (saith he) the Laws ought to make provision for putting Men into some orderly course of Life, and not let them run upon the necessity of Stealing first, and then being hanged for it. 2. *Tarsus*, the Birth-place of *St. Paul* the Apostle; for that sufficiently famous, were there nothing else to commend it to consideration: But it was a Town withal of great Note and Consequence, the Metropolis first of all *Cilicia*, and after the division of *Cilicia Prima*. The Inhabitants whereof had the privilege of *Roman* Citizens. Situate in a goodly Plain on the Banks of the *Cydus*, and by some said to be the work of *Sardanapalus* the last King of *Assyria*, it being engraven on a Monument erected to him, that in one day he had built this *Tarsus*. And 3. *Anchiala*, another City of this Country, near the Seaside, and not far from the Promontory *Zephyrium*. Of the same date, (if the said Monument speak truth) but neither of the same Fortune nor Countenance, that being utterly decayed, but *Tarsus* still remaining of great Wealth and Strength. Much spoken of in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and in the Stories of the *Caramanian* and *Ottoman* Kings. And though the *Tarsians* to ingratiate themselves with *Julius Cæsar*, would needs have their Country call'd *Julopolis*, yet the old Name survived the new,

new, and it is to this day call'd *Tersia*, or *Teraſſa* by the vulgar *Grecians*; but *Hamſia* by the *Turks*; as *Bellonius* telleth us. 4. *Adena*, the *Adana* of *Ptolomy*, a large Town, but unwall'd, instead whereof defended by a very strong Castle. Situate in a fruitful Soil, both for Wine and Corn, wherewith the Town is always furnished for the use of those that are to travel over the *Taurus*, who commonly take in here three days Provision. 5. *Epiphania*, the Birth-place of *George* the *Arian*, Bishop of *Alexandria*; thrust on the World of late by some learned Men, (but of more Industry than Judgment) for *George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr. 6. *Mopſueſtia*, as famous, or infamous rather, for giving Title to *Theodorus Mopſueſtenus*, Bishop hereof, and a great Patron of the *Nestorian* Heresies, in the time of *St. Chryſoſtom*. The City otherwise of good Note, and of great Consequence, in the course of the *Roman* Wars, described at large by *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Iſſus*, upon a spacious Bay, call'd hence *Sinus Iſſicus*, near the borders of *Syria*; memorable for the great Battle here fought betwixt *Alexander* and an handful (in comparison) of his *Macedonians*, and that vast Army of *Darius*, (himself there in person) consisting of 600000 undisciplin'd *Asians*; whereof so many lost their Lives, that the dead Bodies seemed to have buried the Ground; for, partly by the unskilfulness of the Commanders, who chose so ill a place to fight in, that they could make no use of their mighty Numbers; and partly by the effeminateness of the *Asian* Soldiers, unable to endure the Charge, there fell that day no fewer than 200000 of the *Persians*, 40000 of them being taken Prisoners, amongst them the Wives and Daughters of *Darius*, and not above 100 of the *Alexandrians*, if *Qu. Curtius* be not partial in relating the Story. A Victory which assured *Alexander* of his former Purchases, and opened a way unto the rest: The *Persians* not being able to make head again, till he had pierced into the Bowels of their Empire, and added *Syria*, and *Egypt* to his former Conquests. Of so great Consequence is one full Victory to the losing and getting of a Kingdom. This Town it self now call'd *Aiazzo*, and the great Bay on which it standeth, *Golfo di Aiazzo*. 8. *Alexandria*, built by Command of the Conqueror near the place of Battle, commodiously for Trade, as upon the Sea, but otherwise in a Fenny and Boggy Soil, which makes the Air thereto be very unwholsom to Men not used to it: little now remaining, but a few Houses on the Sea-shore built of Straw and Mud, hardly affording it the Reputation of a sorry Village, and would not long continue such, but that it is the nearest Haven to the Town of *Alippo*, (whereof more in *Syria*) which draweth unto it the resort of some *Christian* Factors, whose Houses are of Clay and Timber; but of them not many. The Town at first call'd *Alexandria*, as before was said, diminished first to *Alexandretta*, now call'd *Scanderone*. 9. *Neapolis*, another of *Alexander's* Foundations, so named in memory of his great Victory before mention'd. 10. *Amavetia*, a City of great Antiquity in the time of *Strabo*, and the Metropolis of the Province of *Cilicia Secunda*. 11. *Heraclea*, mention'd by *Bellonius*, and by him placed in a fruitful and well-cultivated Plain, at the Foot of Mount *Taurus*; a fair and large Town, as he reporteth it, and distant from *Adana* towards the Northwest about three days Journey. But I find no such Town in *Strabo*, or *Ptolomy*, or any other of the Ancients. 12. *Scandoloro*, a City of *Cilicia Aspera*, or that part of *Cilicia* which lyeth towards *Pamphylia*, heretofore with the adjoining Territory govern'd as a State distinct, when all the rest of this Country was under the Kings of *Caramania*; against whom the Prince hereof, being a *Mabometan*, had preserved his Liberties, by the assistance of the Knights of *Rhodes*, and the Kings of *Cyprus*. And when the *Caramanian* Kingdom was subdued by *Bajazet*, he made so good Conditions for himself, that he had other Lands and Estates in the *Lesser Asia* assigned to him in exchange for this; and so surrender'd this to the Will of the Conqueror.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were of the Progeny of *Tarshish*, the Son of *Javan*, by whom, or some of his Posterity, to preserve his Memory, the City of *Tarsus* was first built. Increased in tract of time by some new Colonies out of the neighbouring parts of *Syria*, it followed for the most part the Fortunes of it; successively together subject to the *Assyrians*, *Persians*, and *Macedonians*. In the declining Fortunes of the House of *Seleucus* they began to stand upon their own Legs; and might have continued longer in so good a posture, had they not hearkened to ill Councils. Tempted by *Mitridates* to joyn with him against the *Romans*, of whose Greatness all the Eastern States were grown very jealous; and being naturally good Sea-faring Men, they began, together with the *Pamphylians*, to infest the Seas. At first they ventured no further than the Shores adjoining. But after emboldned with Success, and finding that the *Romans* were sufficiently embroiled in *Domestick* troubles, and a sharp War with *Mitridates*, fell upon the Coasts of *Greece*, and in fine, of *Italy* it self; *Publius Servilius*, the *Proconsul*, first employed against them, gave them an overthrow at Sea; and following his good Fortune, set upon them in their Harbours and retiring-places. In which pursuit he not only took from them *Phaselis*, a strong Town in *Lycia*, one of their *Retreats*, and others of their best and strongest *Receptacles*; but wasting the whole Country of *Cilicia*, fell upon *Isaurus*, the most defensible Town thereof, which he took and ransacked. No sooner was *Servilius* departed home, but they broke out more violently than before; filling all the Creeks and Ports of the Eastern Seas with their Frigots, *Brigantines*, and other light *Navatical* Vessels, insomuch that *Pompey* himself thought it to be an Action not unbecoming his Greatness to undertake the War against them. And he pursued it to such purpose, that having Armed 500 Sail of all sorts, and stored his Ships with 130000 Men, he set upon them all at once; and in the space of one sole Month made an end of the War. An Action not sufficiently to be wondred at, if we consider either the speediness of it, done in so little time as a Month; or the cheapness of the Victory, purchased without the loss of one *Roman* Vessel; or finally, the importance and consequence of it, the Pirates from that time not daring to infest the Seas; and all *Cilicia* subjected to the State of *Rome*. How they were afterwards disposed of, hath been shewn already. After this they did very good Service unto *Pompey* in his War against *Cæsar*; of whom thus *Lucan*, reckoning up his Allies and Aid.

Atque Cilix justa, nunc non Pirata, carinâ

And the reformed Cilician now
No Pirate, in his Fleet did row.

Nor were they pliant unto him only, as unto their Conqueror; but generally so tame and tractable in the time of *Cicero*, one of the first *Proconsuls*, or Lord Deputies which were sent to govern them; that he writ merrily to *Rome*, that he found all quiet in his Province; save that the *Pantbers* (some of which, one of his Friends had prayed him to send to *Rome*, for the adorning of his Triumph) were for fear of him fled into *Pamphylia*. At the first Conquest by the *Romans*, it was divided only into *Campeſtrem* and *Trachæam*, as was said before; of which *Campeſtris* was reduced immediately to the form of a Province. *Aspera*, or *Trachæa* was a while continued under the Government of Kings, till the time of *Vespasian*, and then made a Province as the other. By the succeeding Emperors, on some reasons of State (if not those intimated in *Lycania*) the number of Provinces being encreased, (though the Bounds of the Empire were no larger than they had been formerly) the whole had been divided into three; that is to say, *Cilicia prima*, taking up all *Campeſtris* wholly; *Cilicia secunda*,

cunda, containing the *Maritime* parts of *Cilicia Aspera*; and *Isauria* taking up the *Mountainous* part of this last Division. Laid by the Emperor *Constantine* to the *Dioecese* of the *Orient*; and consequently subject in spiritual matters to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, where the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis* had his usual Residence. In the falling of the Eastern Empire, it was conquer'd by the *Saracens* in the time of *Mahomet*, or *Muavi* the sixth *Caliph*. Continuing under their Command till their Declination, it was recover'd by the *Greek*, or *Eastern* Emperors, and from them conquer'd by the *Turks* in the course of their Victories. But the first race of *Turkish* Kings being worn out by the *Tartars*, and the *Aladinian* Kings ending in *Aladine* the Second, it was part of the new Kingdom of the *Caramanians*, continuing therein till the destruction of that Line by *Bajazet* the Second Anno 1486, by whom incorporated with the rest of the *Ottoman* Empire.

Thus having made our Progress over all the *Provinces* of the *Lesser Asia*, and shewn how every one of them was made subject to the *Turkish* Tyranny: We must next draw down the Succession of such *Turkish* Kings as have reigned herein, till it was wholly conquer'd by the Princes of the House of *Ottoman*. Concerning which we are to know in the way of Preamble, that the *Turks* having made themselves Masters of the Kingdom of *Persia*, and following their Successes into *Syria* also, fell to a breach amongst themselves. For making up whereof it was condescended unto by *Axan*, the then *Persian* Sultan, that *Meloch* and *Ducat*, two of his discontented Kinsmen, should be infeoffed in the Cities of *Alippo* and *Damascus*, and their several Territories, with whatsoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Egypt*, possessed at that time of most part of *Syria*, *Cilicia*, and some of the adjoining Provinces. It was also then agreed upon, that a third, but nearer Kinsman, call'd *Cultu Moses*, another of the Leaders of the opposite Faction, should have leave to conquer for himself, whatsoever he could win from the *Christian* Princes: And he accordingly being furnished with a competent Army, subdued the Provinces of *Media* and *Armenia* in the *Greater Asia*, with *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bythynia* in *Asia Minor*. Which, and the rest of their Affairs, take here in the ensuing Catalogue of

The *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor* of the *Selzuccian* Family.

1075. 1. *Cultu Moses*, Nephew to *Tangrolisix*, the first *Persian* Sultan of the *Turks*, won *Media*, part of *Armenia Major*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bythynia*.
2. *Solyman*, Son of *Cultu Moses*, for a while dispossessed of most of his Estates by the *Western Christians*, in their first passage towards the *Holy Land*, An. 1097; the *Northern* parts of which by those *Christians* were restored to the *Grecian* Empire, never recovered afterwards by the Kings of this House.
3. *Mahomet*, the Son of *Solyman*, recover'd some part of his Estates in the *Lesser Asia*; but outed of them, and subdued by
4. *Musat*, Sultan, or Lord Deputy of *Iconium*, for the Kings of *Damascus*; but of the same *Selzuccian* Family, who was thereby possessed of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*.
5. *Calisastlan*, the Son of *Musat*, (to whom his Father left *Iconium*, with the adjacent Provinces) wrested *Amasia*, and *Ancyra*, from his Brother *Jagupasan*; *Sebastia*, and *Cæsaria*, from his Brother *Dodune*; which with their several Territories were bequeathed unto them by the Will of their Father. He overthrew the Emperor *Emanuel Comnenus*, and united *Phrygia* to his Kingdom.
6. *Reucratime*, the third Son of *Calisastlan*,

having dispossessed his three Brothers, *Muavi*, *Caicozobac*, of the *Phates* left them by her Father, became sole Monarch of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*. In the latter end of whose Reign, the *Tartarian Cham*, having driven the *Turks* out of *Asia*, many of them under the conduct of *Aladin*, a Prince of the same *Selzuccian* Family, joined themselves to their Country men here, with whose assistance *Aladin* from the *Grecian* Emperors, who in the Reign of *Calo Johannes*, (the *Turk* being then embroiled with the *Western Christians*) had not long before regaled him; and after the decease of *Reucratime*, advanced him to the whole Estate.

The *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor*, of the Race of *Aladine*.

7. *Aladine*, descended in a direct Line from *Cullares*, the last of *Turkish* Sultan in *Asia*, having with many of his Nation feared himself in *Cilicia*, first made *Iconium*, one of the Cities thereof, his chief Seat or Residence; which, after the Death of *Reucratime*, he removed to *Iconium*, as the ancient Royal City of the former Kings.
8. *Aladin*, by some call'd *Aladin*, eldest Son of *Aladine*, waited the most part of his Reign in Wars with his Brother *Jatharine*, whom at last he forced into Exile.
9. *Jatharine*, on the Death of his Brother, possessed the Kingdom, slain afterwards in single Combat by *Theodore Lascaris*, Emperor of the *Greeks* at *Nice*.
10. *Jatharine* II. Son of the former, driven out of his Kingdom by the *Tartars*, and died in Exile; the *Turks* becoming Tributaries and Vassals unto the *Tartars*.
11. *Majur*, and *Cer-cubades*, of the same *Selzuccian* Family (but whether the Sons of the second *Jatharine*, I am not able to say) substituted in his place, as Tributaries to the conquering *Tartars*.
12. *Aladine* II. Son of *Cer-cubades*, succeeded his Father in the Kingdom, but as Vassal and Leigeman to the *Tartars*. After whose Death, leaving no Issue of his Body, the great Princes of his Family, divided amongst them his Dominions. To *Sarachan* fell *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and part of *Lydia*, from him named *Sarachan*, *Sarachan*, or *Saracha-Illi*; to *Aidin* the rest of *Lydia*, *Phrygia Major*, and the greatest part of the *Greater Mysia*, from him call'd *Aidin*, or *Aidin-Illi*; to *Caratius*, the *Lesser Phrygia*, with the rest of *Mysia*, from him denominated *Caratius*, or *Carat-Ili*; to the Family of the *Isendians*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that part of *Pontus* which lieth next to *Bythynia*. There were also lesser *Toparchies*, or Subdivisions, from whence we find a Prince of *Smyrna*, a second of *Amasia*, a third of *Amisus*, a fourth of *Scanderoon*, besides many others. But the main Body of the Estate was seized by *Caratius*, who for his share had the whole Provinces of *Lycaonia*, *Pisidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Isauria*, *Cilicia*, with the Royal City of *Iconium*, the greatest part of *Caria*, (the rest of it appertaining to the Prince of *Alentia*) with part of *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, and some Towns in *Phrygia*, continuing in his Family for as many Descents (as either of the former had held before) in great Power and Lustre, under

The *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor*, of the House of *Caraman*.

13. *Caraman*, the first raiser of this Family, Contemporary with *Ottoman* the first King of that Race.
14. *Aladine* Son of *Caraman*, and Son-in law of *Amurat*, the first of the House of *Ottoman*, by whom subdued, but pardoned, and restored

red unto his Estate, on the humble intreaties of his Wife.

15. *Aladine II.* Son of the former, subdued by *Bajazet* the First, and hanged by *Tertumases*, one of *Bajazet's* great Commanders.

16. *Mahomet*, Son of *Aladine* the Second, recovered his Kingdom on the Death of *Bajazet*, vanquished and led Captive by the mighty *Tamerlane*. Afterwards warred upon, and vanquished by *Mahomet* the Son of *Bajazet*, redeemed his Peace, by yielding up unto him many of his principal Towns; and was finally slain at the Siege of *Attalia*.

17. *Ibrahim*, the Son of *Mahomet*, and Son-in-law of *Amurath* the Second, against whom unadvisedly raising War, he was forced to submit, and become his *Tributary*: After whose Death, rebelling against *Mahomet* the Great, he was then also vanquished, and a Reconciliation made betwixt them.

18. *Ibrahim II.* by some call'd *Pyramus*, the Son of *Ibrahim* the First, supported *Zemes*, Brother of *Bajazet* the Second in his War against him; for which *Bajazet* having settled his Affairs, invaded and subdued the Kingdom of *Caramania*, killed the unfortunate King in Battle, and so united that State unto the rest of the Dominions of the House of *Ottoman* in 1396. The strange Successes of which House, from the first rising of it to these present times, shall be deferred till we come unto *Turcomania*; from whence this Nation first attempted and achieved the Conquest of *Persia*, and which only of all their large Possessions doth retain any thing of their Name. In the mean time we will survey the Islands of this *Lesser Asia*, and so proceed to their Possessions in the *Greater*, as they lie before us.

See the Catalogue of the *Sultans* of *Lycania* above.

19. The Province of the *ASIAN ISLES*.

The Province of the *Asian Isles* comprehendeth all the Islands in *Asia Minor*, from the Mouth of the *Hellepont* to the *Rhodes*, reckoning that for one; united first into a Province by the Emperor *Vespasian*, next reckoned as a part of the *Asian Diocese*; and afterwards together with the Province of the *Hellepont*, and that of *Asia* properly and specially so call'd, making up the peculiar or exempt Jurisdiction of the *Proconsul* of *Asia*. Those of most consideration are, 1. *Tenedos*. 2. *Lesbos*. 3. *Chios*. 4. *Samos*. 5. *Coos*. 6. *Icaria*. 7. *Patmos*. 8. *Claros*. 9. *Carpalhos*. 10. *Rhodes*. Others of less Note having nothing memorable but their Names, are scarce worth the naming.

1. *Tenedos*, is situate at the Mouth of the *Hellepont*, over-against the noted Promontory call'd of old *Sigeum*, (but now *Cape Janizarie*) a Promontory of *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, from which distant not above five Miles, the Isle it self in Circuit no more than Ten, swelling with a round Mountain towards the North, in other parts level; in both producing as good Wines as the best of *Greece*. It took name, as the general Tradition was, from *Tenes* the Son of *Cycnus*, King of a little City in the *Lesser Phrygia*, who being falsely accused by his Stepdame, for soliciting her to that incestuous mixture which she had violently importuned, and he as piously refused, was by the Command of his Father put into a Chest, exposed to the mercy of the Sea, and here miraculously preserved. Here for a time he is said to Reign, with great Commendation for his Justice; and afterwards going to the aid of the *Trojans*, to have been slain by the Hand of *Achilles*; of whom therefore it was not lawful to make mention in any of the Sacrifices offered in the Temples thereof. But *Bochartus* casting off all this as an old Wives Fable, will have it so call'd from *Tim-edum* a *Phœnician* word, signifying *Red-clay*, which

the Porters made use of in their Earthen Vessels. A Town it had of the same name with the Island, in which a Temple sacred to *Apollo Smintheus*; and another call'd *Asterion*, situate near a little River well stored with *Crab-Fish*, whose Shells were made in the form of an Axe, or Hatchet. From which Town, as the Islanders have in some Authors the name of *Astern*; so from the other Circumstance, they are said to have the stamp of an Hatchet on their Coin, or Money. Memorable for an old Custom observed amongst them, which was, That at the back of the Judge there always stood a Man with an Axe advanced, as well to terrifie the Witnesses from giving false Evidence to the Judge, as the Judge from pronouncing a false Sentence upon the Evidence: Whence the Proverb, *Tenedia securis*. More memorable for the final destruction of *Troy* which was plotted here; the *Grecians* withdrawing their Forces hither as if gone in earnest; but from hence setting Sail again to surprize the Town, when they saw their Plot had took effect. And so I leave it with that Character which the Poet gives it:

*Est in conspectu Tenedos, notissima famâ
Insula, dives opum Priami dum Regna manebant:
Nunc tantum sinus, & statio male-fida carinis.*

In English thus:

In sight of *Troy* an Island stands, well known,
Call'd *Tenedos*; Rich, and of great Renown,
Whilst *Priam's* Kingdom flourish'd; now (they say)
Grown a poor Road, for Ships an unsafe Bay.

This Island being taken by the *Venetians* in the War of *Candy*, and fortify'd, very much incommoded the Trade of *Constantinople* for some years; but in the Year 1657, the *Turks* recover'd it again.

2. *Lesbos*, the largest of the *Asian Isles*, is distant from the main Land of *Troas* about seven Miles, 168 in compass; reckon'd the Seventh in bigness of the *Mediterranean*, which *Aristotle* in his Book *de Mundo*, ranketh in this order following, Τὴν ἦν αἱ καὶ ἀξιόλογοι, Σικελία, καὶ Σαρδοί, καὶ Κύπρος, καὶ Κρήνη, καὶ Ἐμβόρια, καὶ Κύπρος, καὶ Λέσβος. That is to say, The most considerable of these, are *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, *Crete*, *Eubœa*, *Cyprus*, and *Lesbos*. And though both *Scylax* in his *Periplus*, a nameless Poet in *Eustathius*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and others of the Ancients, vary in ordering of the rest, according as their Information, or Phancies let them; yet *Lesbos* comes in the seventh place constantly, without change at all. Upon which ground *Bochartus* will have it call'd *Lesbos*, from *Esbus*, a *Phœnician* word, signifying Seven; contracted first to *Esbu*, by leaving out the last Syllable of it; and then by changing *bu* to *bos*, and prefixing *L* to the beginning. Far enough fetch'd, and were it but as dearly bought, would be good for Ladies; this Island being reckoned in the seventh place for no other reason, but because it lay further off, and most North from *Sicilie*, from whence they ordered their Account, and not any Mystery in the name thereof.

It had then the name from *Lesbos* the chief City of it, as that from *Lesbus* the Son of *Lapythus*, who married *Met hymna*, the Daughter of *Macarius*, Prince hereof; from which *Macarius*, it had sometimes the name of *Macaria*; as that of *Mitylene*, by which it is now commonly call'd from *Mitylene*, another of the Daughters of the said *Macarius*. And that the memory of the whole Family might be preserved in this Island, *Met hymna* also had a City call'd by her name, one of the principal of the Country.

The Country towards the West and South, reported to be mountainous and somewhat barren; the rest level and fruitful. Plentiful of excellent Corn, and abounding

ing in delicious Wines, compared by *Athenæus* to *Ambrosia*, the Liquor of the gods, as the Poets Fable; affording also plenty of Sheep, and store of Horses, these last courageous and strong, though but low of Stature. More memorable for the eminent Persons which it hath produced, as 1. *Sappho*, an *Heroick* Woman, whose Invention was the *Sapphick* Verse; and therefore call'd the *Tenth Muse*. 2. *Pittacus*, one of the *seven Wisemen* of *Greece*. 3. *Theophrastus*, that notable Physician and Philosopher. 4. *Alcaeus*, the successor of *Orpheus* in the excellency of *Lyrical* Poësie; and 5. *Arion*, the Musician, who was so perfect on his *Harp*, that being cast into the Sea playing on that Instrument, a *Dolphin* took him on his Back, and wafted him safe as far as *Corinth*, where he related the whole Story unto *Periander*, attested by the Mariners who had thrown him overboard. And though this be by some rejected as a Poetical Fiction; yet past all doubt, the Man was not only an excellent *Musician*, but an eminent *Poet*, the first inventor of *Tragedies*, a chief *Lyrick*, and the Author of the Verse call'd *Dithyrambick*.

Principal Towns herein, 1. *Lesbos*, ἀφ' ἧς ὄλεν. νῆσος Ἀἰσβῶ ἐλέγετο, from whom (saith *Stephanus*) the whole Island had the name of *Lesbos*. 2. *Metbymna*, so named from *Mithymna*, one of the Daughters of *Macarius*, spoken of before. 3. *Mitylene*, so nam'd from the other Daughter, and Wife of *Lesbus*, now the chief City of the Island; seated on a *Peninsula*, looking towards the main Land, strong by Nature, and fortified by Art; enjoying on either side a commodious Haven, that on the South most fit for Gallies, the other capable of Ships of burden. Beautified heretofore with magnificent Buildings, and sweetned with variety of Delights and Pleasures. Little now left of it since subdued by the *Turks*, but a strong Castle manned with an able Garrison, and a well-stored *Arsenal* for Gallies, kept here in readiness to preserve those Seas from *Pirates*, with which much infested. (From this Town the Island is now call'd *Metellina*.) But the two first long since decayed, and grown out of knowledge; those of most note next *Mitylene* are, 4. *Vesilica*. 5. *Theodori*. 6. *Castel-Gera*; all of late days, and therefore of no observation in point of Story. This Island payeth 18000 Pieces of Eight yearly to the Port for its *Carraeth*, or Tribute.

The Island was first inhabited by the *Pelasgians*, conducted hither by *Zantus*, the Son of *Triopus*, whence nam'd *Pelasgia*: Afterwards by some *Ionians*, and People of sundry Nations, planted here by *Macarius*, (the Father of *Mitylene* and *Metbymna*) who by his Prudence, and the Reputation of his Justice, obtained a kind of Sovereignty over the neighbouring Islands. *Lesbus*, the Son of *Lapythus*, arriving here with his Family, married *Metbymna*, and had the Island for her Dower; though *Mitylene* had the hap to have the predominant City, and the Island consequently call'd by her name. Made subject to the State of *Athens*, in the time of the *Peloponnesian* War (when almost all *Greece* banded against that City) they revolted from it, and were so straightly besieged by *Paches*, an *Athenian* Captain, that they submitted unto Mercy. The General sends to *Athens* to know what should be done with the *Mitylenians*: Answer was sent, That he should put them to the Sword. But the *Senate* on the morrow after, repenting of that cruel Decree, sent a Countermand. These latter Messengers made no stay; but eating with one Hand, and rowing with the other, came to *Mitylene* just as *Paches* was reading the former Order, by this speed prevented. So near were these miserable People to a fatal destruction. Subdued by the *Romans* with the rest of *Greece*, they fell together with it to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors; from whom taken, with *Chios*, *Samos*, *Andros*, and some other of these Isles, Anno 1124, by the State of *Venice*, upon a Quarrel betwixt them and the *Grecian* Emperor. Confirmed unto that Signeury by the Emperor *Baldwin*, and all the rest of the *Egean*

added to their Portion; those above-nam'd were again recover'd by the valour and good fortune of *John Ducas*, the *Greek* Emperor then residing at *Nice*. Afterwards in the year 1235, the Emperor *Calo Johannes* gave it to *Franciscus Catalusius*, a noble Gentleman of *Genoa*, with one of his Sisters, for her Dower. By whose Posterity enjoyed, till the year 1462, when *Mahomet* the Great incensed against *Dominicus Catalusius* the then Lord hereof, for the murder of his elder Brother, a Vassal and Tributary of his Empire, (those Princes paying to the *Turk* an Annual Tribute of 4000 *Ducats*) but more for harbouring the *Pirates* of *Spain* and *Italy*, besieges him in *Mitylene* his principal City, which in 27 days (for so long it held) he constrained to submit unto him, and therewith all the Island also. Some of the chief Families being removed unto *Constantinople*, upon some reasons of State, the main Body of the People were permitted to remain here to Till the Land, and so continue to this day, with some few *Turks*, inconsiderable for their Strength or Numbers, intermixed among them.

3. *Chios*, the next to *Lesbos*, both in site and bigness, lieth opposite to the Shore of *Ionia*, from which distant not above four Leagues, is in compass about 126 Miles. So call'd, as some say, from *Chione*, a fair Nymph hereof, much sought after by many Suters; as others say, from χιων a *Greek* word signifying *Snow*, wherewith the Mountains of it are sometimes cover'd. And some again will have it take name from *Chios* the chief City of it, which being built in the form of the *Greek* Letter χ first got that name unto it self, and afterwards did communicate it to the whole Island. *Isidore* in his *Origines* gives another reason, and will have it call'd so from a *Syrack* word signifying *Mastick*, whereof there is plenty in this Isle. *Chios Insula* (saith he) *Syrâ linguâ appellatur, eo quod ibi Mastyx gignitur; Syri enim Mastichen Chion vocant*. And were it so, that *Chios* in the *Syrack* did signifie *Mastick*, there could no better reason be assigned for the Name; this Island being more furnished with that Commodity, than any place in the World besides. A Gum it is, growing out of the *Lentusk* Tree, which in the Months of *July* and *August* the Inhabitants force out of those Trees, by making with sharp Instruments a deep incision into the Bark of them; out of which the Juice dropping, is afterwards hardned like a Gum, and in the *September* following gathered. A Commodity which yieldeth yearly to the Inhabitants 18000 *Sultanies*, every *Sultan* being valued at the rate of a *Zechine* of *Venice*: and therefore the felling of the *Lentusk*-Tree, at the time of the distilling of this precious Juice, interdicted, on the Penalty of losing the right Hand of him that doth it.

Other Commodities of this Island are Corn and Oil in indifferent plenty, some *Quarries* of most excellent *Marble*, a certain green Earth like the rust of *Brass*; some Silks and Cotton-wool, but short in worth to those of *Smyrna*, and other places; Honey as good as any the World affordeth, and a vein of most delicious Vines, those specially which grow on the Mountain *Arvus*, now call'd *Amista*. Of which *Pliny* gives this Commendation, *In summa gloria fuerit Thasium, Chiumque, ex Chio, quod Arvium vocant*. Of all Wines (saith he) those of *Thassus*, and *Chios*, are of best esteem; and of those of *Chios*, the *Arvian*. *Strabo* extolleth them in the superlative Degree, and calleth the Wine hereof, οἶνον αἰσθητὸν ὅσῃ ἔλλωμιον, incomparably the best of *Greece*. And *Plutarch*, speaking of an *Epicurean* or voluptuous Liver, affirms, That he conceiv'd it the supreme Felicity, ναὶ ὅς οὐ γὰρ οὐδὲν, ὡς μὲν ἔστιν ἀνάγκη, τοῖς οὖν τοῖς Λαῖς, and drink these *Arvian* Wines. Here are also infinite store of Partridges, of a red colour, kept tame, and fed in Flocks like Geese, in the Streets and *Greenwards* of their Villages; some little Boys or Girl driving them to Field, and calling them home again with a *Whistle*, when the Night comes on.

The Island divided commonly into two parts, the *Higher*, call'd *Apanomera*, lying towards the North and West, hilly and rough, but intermixt with fruitful Vales and pleasant Rivers: The *Lower*, opposite unto it, call'd *Catamorea*, swelled here and there with gentle Hills, on which groweth the *Lentisk*. The whole inhabited by *Greeks* intermixt with *Genoese*, and (since their Conquest by that People) some few *Turks* amongst them. Which mixture with the *Genoese*, tempereth the levity of the *Greeks* with *Italian* gravity; the better sort of People both in Apparel and Manners coming near the *Genoese*, once the Lords of this Island; the common sort continuing their old *Greek* humour of Mirth and Jollity (not sensible of the *Turkish* Thralldom under which they suffer) with as much licentiousness as ever. And though this intermixture hath so corrupted their Language, that neither the *Greek* nor the *Italian* be here rightly spoken, but a compound Tongue made up of both; yet keep they their Religions still distinct and separate, as if they had never known another.

Here are reckoned in it six and thirty Towns and Villages; the principal whereof are, 1. *St. Elier*, in the North. 2. *Pigrine*, in the midst hereof; and 3. *Chios* it self, now call'd *Sio* (as is all the Island) one of the seven Cities contending for the Birth of *Homer*, whose Sepulchre they pretend to shew in an old Castle near the Mount and Town of *St. Elier*, (which, were it his, would be a better Argument for his Burial here, than it is for his Birth.) The Town situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of the Country, to which both Industry and Art have given great Advantage; there being few Houses without Orchards of excellent Fruits, as Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranats, Citrons, and a kind of Fig, much praised for their quickness of taste, by the ancient *Romans*. It standeth on the Eastside, opposite to the Shores of *Asia*; stretched along the bottom of the Haven, and on the Westside backed with a rocky Mountain, upon which it formerly did stand. The Buildings ordinary, the Streets narrow, and the Haven every day decaying; though otherwise secure, once entered; and for directing of the entrance, a Lanthorn advanced by the *Genoese*, (when Lords hereof) to give Light by Night, and serve for a Land-Mark in the Day. Fortified on the Northside by a large and strong Castle, environed with deep Ditches, well furnished with Munition, and a *Turkish* Garison. And because the Island is on all parts accessible, not naturally fortified with Rocks and dangerous Precipices as many others, besides this Castle, they have all along the Coast small Watch-Towers, which with Smoak by day, and Fire by Night give notice unto one another of such Vessels as they see approaching: The Guards about the Castle being so intent also about their Charge, that every minute of the Night there goeth a word about the Walls, to declare their vigilancy.

The *Chians* were at first a Free People, governing themselves as a Commonwealth; and by reason of their many Harbours, able to furnish out a Navy of 80 Sail which gave them the Lordship of those Seas, till eclipsed by the *Rhodians*. Belieged by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, with his utmost Power; who when he could not get it by force, proclaimed freedom to the Slaves (of which here were many) and liberty to marry with their Masters Wives, if they would rebel against their Masters. And when this Policy would not do it, the Town being held out with greater heat of Indignation, he gave over the Siege. At last they became subject to the *Romans* with the rest of *Greece*, and followed punctually the same change of Fortunes, as did those of *Lesbos*, which we have spoken of before; till given by *Andronicus Palaeologus*, one of the last *Greek* Emperors, to the *Justinian*, a noble *Genoese* Family, assistant to him in his Wars. Under them it continued as Tributary to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*) to whom they annually paid Eighteen

thousand *Ducats*, till the Year 1566. When *Soliman* the Magnificent, picking a Quarrel with them for some suspected Correspondency with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greatest *Bassa's*, to seize the Island. And he accordingly presenting himself before the City with a strong Fleet of eighty Gallies, did so astonish and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other summons than the sight of the Navy, they surrendered themselves unto his disposing, upon *Easter-Day*, being the same day he came before it. Since that time it hath continued *Turkish*, all save their Religion, enjoyed by them with like liberty, as in former times. This Island pays 18000 Pieces of Eight to the *Grand Signior* yearly for its Tribute. In the Year 1688, after *Smyrna* was ruin'd by an Earthquake, the *English* Factory removed to *Sio*. The Inhabitants of this Island enjoy greater Privileges than any *Greeks* in the *Grand Signior's* Dominions, both as to their Religion and Civil Liberties. The chief City is well built after the *Genoese* manner, and is above two Miles in Circumference, and to the North stands a very strong Castle. On each side of the City are many pleasant Gardens, abounding with all sorts of Fruit. The Houses also are well built, and the Inhabitants mostly *Greeks*, (but of the *Roman* Communion) who have several good Churches belonging to the *Jesuits*, *Dominicans*, and *Capuchins*. All the *Mastick* is now taken up for the *Grand Signior*; and what is not used by the Court, is sold by his Officers to Merchants. *Ber. Randolph* in the present State of the Islands of the *Archipelago*.

4. *Samos* is on the South-East of *Chios*, distant above five Miles from the Shores of *Ionis*, about eighty, or eighty-seven in compass; environed for the most part, especially in the North-West, with inaccessible Rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven; of little use by reason of *Pirates* which infested those Seas. The Soil sufficiently enriched with most kinds of Fruits, abundantly plentiful of Oyl and Olives, but of Vines altogether unfurnished; which is the more to be admir'd, in regard all the Islands and Shores about it, produce them in so great a plenty. It stretcheth from the East to the West; and on the South part of it stood the City of *Samia*, near unto the Haven before spoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited, as was the rest of the Island, now wholly desolate in a manner, because of the *Pirates*, and in most places very much overgrown with Woods; becoming thereby very useful to those publick Enemies, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can upon the sudden put a Ship to Sea, for pursuit of their Robberies. The chief Commodity it affordeth besides those above, is a Medicinal Earth, useful for Chirurgery and Physick; of which in former times were those Vessels made, call'd *Vasa Samia*, in great request amongst the *Romans*.

Anciently it had the names of *Dryusa*, *Anathemusa*, *Melamphylas*, and *Cyparissa*; out-worn by that of *Samos*, which it still retaineth. Memorable in old times for the Birth of *Juno*, of one of the *Sybil's*, hence call'd *Samia*; and finally, of the wise Man *Pythagoras* (a wiser than any of the seven wise Masters so renown'd amongst them) who first brought Philosophy into *Greece*, and from thence into *Italy*. Once a free Commonwealth of no small esteem, the Institutes whereof are mention'd by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the several Commonwealths then being; afterwards made subject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a Man so fortunate, that for a long time he never fell into any mischance. Fearing lest such a long calm would bring on a tempest, he let fall into the Sea a most precious Ring, by him deservedly esteemed, that so it might be said he had some Misfortunes. Which after he had found again in the belly of a Fish, brought accidentally to his Table, he was overcome by *Orontes* a *Persian*, and brought to a miserable Death. Leaving a notable Example, that Fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a sharp Sting, hath always some misery

misery following in the train of a long concatenation of Felicity. From this time forwards it ran the same Fortune with the rest of these Islands; subject successively to the great *Monarchies* in former times, as of late times to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks*, who do now enjoy it.

5. *Icarus* (now call'd *Nicea*, *Nicaria*) lyeth not far from *Samos*, to the Westward of it, narrow, but extended out in length from East to West; the whole compass seven and thirty Miles; Neighbour'd by two great Rocks, or little Islands, of old call'd *Atelantkii*, now the *Hernaces*; formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night especially. Meanly inhabited at the present, tho' abounding in Pasturage, and yielding sufficiency of Corn; Havenless, and therefore the less frequented, yet that defect supply'd by commodious Roads. In former times call'd *D.liche*, then *Maeris*, after *Ischiasia*; which Name it held till the flight of *Dædalus* out of *Crete*, who justly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being *Pandar* to his Wife in her loves with *Taurus*, secretly with *Icarus* his Son, fled out of that Island. And because he would be sure to outstrip the *Rowers* who pursued him, he added Sails unto his Boat, which it is said he first invented. But *Icarus* coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new Device, clapped on too much Canvass, and bearing too great a Sail, was here cast away. Hence the new Name both to this Island, and the Seas adjoyning to it, and the occasion of the Fable of *Dædalus* putting Wings upon his shoulders when he fled from *Crete*; and of his flying too high, whereby the Wax melted which his Wings were fastned with, and so he perished in the Water. Of which thus *Ovid*:

*Dum petit infemum narium sublimis pennis
Icarus, Icaris nomina fecit aquis.*

In English thus:

Whilst *Icarus* weak Wings too high did soar,
He fell, and gave Name to th' *Icarian* Shore.

Nicaria lies 25 Miles South of *Sio*, and is in compass 70 Miles; it is Barren, Mountainous, and Rocky, and has not one Harbour for Ships, and so not capable of any Trade; the Inhabitants are so poor, that neither the *Turks* nor *Pirates* can get any thing that is considerable from them; yet they have excellent Winter Grapes, some Wine, but not good, and plenty of Goats, which is their chief Food. *Randolph*.

6. *Patmos*, now call'd *Palmosa*, is situate on the South of the other two; a little Island not above 30 Miles in compass. Mountainous, but indifferently fruitful, especially of Wheat and Pulse; of other Commodities, and Fruits not so well provided. On one of these Mountains stands a Town of the same name with the Island; having on the top thereof a Monastery of *Greek Calloires*; and on the bottom a fair Haven, (I mean in reference to the Island). Forty sail of Ships are said to belong unto it; by the trading whereof they bring in those provisions which the Soil afforderh not: The Soil about the Town being so incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on, or near it, but on such Earth as is brought thither from other places. Unto this Island (as to others in other parts of the World) did the *Roman Emperors* use to confine Offenders. A Punishment laid by *Domitian*, on *St. John the Divine*, who in this place writ his *Revelation* to the Churches of *Asia*. So much the Text affirms for certain, as to the writing of it in this Island. And the Inhabitants by Tradition point unto an House on the Northside of the Town, in which it was written, and not far off the Cave where it was revealed. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks* and *Latins*. They also shew a dead Man's Hand, which they affirm to be his, the Nails whereof grow again as oft as cut. But the *Turks* (saith *Maginus*) claim it for the Hand of one

of their *Prophets*. In the War of *Constantine* the whole *Constantian* Fleet did usually Winter in this Island, it having many and good Ports, by which means the Inhabitants grew Rich; but since the *Turks* and *Pirates* have reduced them to the same state of Poverty with their Neighbours. *Randolph*.

7. *Claros*, another Island not far off, containing about 40 Miles in compass, well stored with commodious Harbours, but very Mountainous; some of those Hills of such an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Ephesus* in *Ionia*, (though distant at least eighty Miles) may be easily seen. It is now call'd *Calamo*. Neighbour'd by *Lero*, (of old call'd *Liron*) a little Island not above eighteen Miles in Circuit, but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furnishing the neighbouring Countries with some store of *Wines*. Sacred in former times was *Claros* to *Apollo*; reckon'd by him amongst his Honours, in his brags to *Daphne*; where he declares,

— — — *Mibi Delphica tellus
Et Claros, & Tenedos, Pataraeque Regia feruit.*

That is to say,

The Folk of *Delphes*, *Tenedos*, and *Clare*,
And Royal *Patara*, my Vassals are.

8. *Coos*, *Cos*, or *Cous*, for by all these Names it was call'd of old, is situate over-against *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Aegæon*; that is to say, in that part thereof which is call'd *Mare Myrteum*, the *Myrtum* Sea. A Sea so call'd, as some say, from one *Myrtus*, Coachman, or Charioter of *OEnomaus*, who having betrayed his Race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his Reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Pliny* lets probably conceived that it took name from *Myrtos*, a little Island not far from *Eubæa*, a little too far off to extend its Name to the Shores of *Caria*. And therefore considering that *Lydia* anciently was call'd *Myrtus*, and that in those times *Aeolis* and *Ionia*, lying on this Sea, were accounted but as parts thereof, I think we may resolve with more probability, that it derived this Name from that *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea stands the Isle of *Coos*, now call'd *Lange*, affording Sailers as they pass by a most beautiful Prospect, lying for the most part flat and level, but swelling towards the East with some graceful Mountains, out of which issue many sweet and pleasant Springs to refresh the Island which maketh it more than ordinary fruitful. Productive of *Cypress-Trees*, *Turpentine*, and sundry other, both delightful and Medicinal; but most especially celebrated for those rich Wines, which the good Fellows of *Rome* so much loved to quaff, call'd *Vinum Cos*. It is in compass 70 Miles, having a Town of the same Name, in the Suburbs whereof stood anciently the Temple of *Æsculapius*, famous and rich with the offering of those, who having by his Assistance (as they supposed) recovered Health, came hither to make payment of their Vows, and express their Gratitude. It is now fortified with a strong Castle, held by a Garrison of *Turks*; and besides this, two Villages only in the Island, and both inhabited by *Greeks*. This Island exceeds *Rhodes* as much in Beauty, as it is in Quantity inferior to it; there are in it Woods of *Cyprian-Trees*, which the *Turks* will not suffer to be cut down. It has one large Town with a Castle near the Haven, which is secured with a good Mole kept well in Repair by the *Turks*, it being the place where all Ships passing between *Constantinople* and *Egypt* usually touch, and so carefully guarded by Gallies, that no *Pirate* dares come near it. The *Turks* call this Island and Town *Stancoi*; the *Greeks* *Stincos*. *Randolph*.

In elder times it had the name of *Merope*, *Caria*, and *Nymphæa*, and at last *Coos*. Memorable in being the Country of many famous Men who were here born, viz. of *Hippocrates*, the Reviver of *Physick*, then almost decayed, who is hence call'd *Hippocrates Coos*. 2. *Sinius*, a Physician also. 3. *Ariston*, a *Peripatetick* Philosopher. 4. *Philetas*, as good an Orator as a Poet. 5. *Nicias*, who for a time oppress'd the liberty of this People; and 6. of *Apelles* the famous Painter; who to express his Art in the Picture of *Venus*, (rising naked out of the Sea) assembled together all the most beautiful Women of this Island, uniting in that piece their divided Perfections. Which famous piece being afterwards hang'd up in the Temple of *Stomalimne*, one of the principal of this Island, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Augustus*, and there dedicated to *Cæsar*, as the Mother of the *Julian* Family: The *Coans* in regard hereof, being eas'd of a great part of their annual Tributes. Not much less memorable for that fine thin Stuff (such as now call'd *Tiffanies*) so much in use amongst the chief Ladies of *Rome*; which at once shew'd them cloathed and naked. *Perlucidâ utuntur veste, ita, ut nude conspici possint*, as my Author hath it. These they call'd *Vestimenta Coa*, and *Vestes Coas*, so often mention'd by the Poets, especially in their *Amatoria*; as *Coa puellis vestis*, in *Tibullus*; *Indue me Cois*, in *Propertius*; *Sive erit in Cois*, saith the Poet *Ovid*. So in others also, too many, and too long to be added here. I pass to

9. *Carpathos*, situate on the South of *Caria*, in the *Mediterranean*, from this Island, call'd hereabouts the *Carpathian* Sea. A rugged and unpleasing Soil, full of difficult Mountains, but those Mountains stored with Quarries of most excellent Marble. In Circuit about 60 Miles, extending more in length than breadth. Heretofore beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Tetrapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long since perished, that of *Carpathos* being still remaining, and still the principal of the Island; but now call'd *Scarpanto*. Some other Towns it hath all along the Shore, and every one of them furnished with some Port or Haven; but small, and for the most part very unsafe. Situate in the middle as it were betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*. It hath continued hitherto in the possession of the State of *Venice*, (if not taken from them very lately) to whom being given with other of the Islands of these *Grecian* Seas, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western Forces, it had the fortune or felicity to continue theirs, when almost all the residue were subdued by the *Turks*. The People *Greek*, of the Communion of that Church, notwithstanding their subjection to a state of *Italy*. *Randolph* saith it is 80 Miles in compass, and has no secure Harbour except to the East, where the Town stands; the Island is not above a fourth part of it inhabited, and the People of it very poor, being much expos'd to the Insults of the *Pirates*, which is a great sign it is now under the *Turks*, as *Brandrand* saith, though I cannot find when it was reduced.

10. *Rhodes*, situate in the *Rhodian*, or *Carpathian* Sea, lieth over-against the Coast of *Lycia* in *Asia Minor*, from which distant 20 Miles. Formerly call'd *Ophiussa*, *Asteria*, *Ethraea*, *Trinachia*, *Pæssa*, *Corymbia*, *Atabyria*, and at last *Macaria*; it settled finally, and fortunately, in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Grecians* from the abundance of *Roses*, which the Soil produceth, *Rhodes* in that Language signifying a *Rose*, the Isle of *Roses*, as it were; but, as the Poets say, of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of these Seas, here desloured by *Apollo*; or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the Daughters of *Apollo* begot on *Venus*; for so one them thus declareth:

Insula Dicta Rhodos, de Sole & Cypride nata est.

Rhoda, from whom this Isle took name,
Of *Venus* and *Apollo* came.

The Island 140 Miles in compass, enriched with a most temperate Air, and fertile Soil, producing Fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent Pastures, adorned with Trees which always do continue green: And in a word, so blest with the gifts of Nature, that it gave occasion to the Fable of those *Golden Showers*, which were once said to have fallen upon it. The Wines hereof so excellent, and so rich of Taste, that by the *Romans* they were used in their second Courses, or reserved for the Sacrifices of the Gods, as too good for Mortals, as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cause of which perpetual flourishing, and continual spring, is to be ascribed to the powerful influences of the Sun, so dearly cherishing this Island, or so much in love with it, that it is constantly affirmed, that no day passeth wherein he shineth not clearly on it, be the Air in all other places never so much overcast with Clouds, or obscured by Mists. Feigned for that cause to have been naturally a meer Marsh, altogether uninhabitable, if not covered with Waters; till loved by *Phæbus*, and erected above the Waves by his vigorous influences.

Of the People we shall speak anon; look we in the mean time on the places of most observation. 1. *Lindun*, (now *Linde*, a petty Town, but formerly of more esteem) of note in those times for the Temple consecrated to *Minerva*, by *Danaus* King of *Egypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdom. As also for the Birth of *Chares*, the *Architect* of the huge *Colossus*, whereof more presently; but specially for the Nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the seven *Wise-men* of *Greece*; the other six being *Solon* of *Athens*, *Periander* of *Corinth*, *Chilon* of *Sparta*, *Bias* of *Priene*, *Thales* of *Melitum*, and *Pythagoras* of *Mitylene*, seven Men of whom the *Grecians* most immensely bragged, as if the World could neither afford them equals, or an equal number; for which derided handsomly by *Lactantius*, an old *Christian* Writer, who scoffs their Paucity, and calleth it a miserable and calamitous Age, *In quo septem soli fuerunt qui hominum vocabula mererentur*; in which there were no more than seven who deserved to be accounted Men. 2. *Rhodes*, anciently, as now the chief City of it, the Island from hence taking name, and formerly, as well as in latter times, depending on the Fortunes and Strength hereof. No place in elder times held superior to it, for the conveniency of the Haven, magnificent Buildings, delightful Orchards, and other Excellencies. Situate on the East part of the Isle, on the declining of an Hill, and near the Sea, where it enjoyeth a safe and common Haven; treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five strong Bulwarks, besides divers Sconces, and other Out-works; this Town, and *Famagusta* in the Isle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two strongest Holds in the *Turkish* Empire. In former times, one of the principal Universities of the *Roman* Empire; this *Rhodes*, *Marseilles*, *Tarsus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckon'd the old Academies of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a most noted place of Study, *Tiberius* (afterwards Emperor) did withdraw himself, when *Augustus* had declared his two Nephews *Lucius* and *Caius*, for his Heirs; pretending only a desire to improve himself in the ways of *Literature*; whereas the true cause was his Envy at their Preferment. Honoured in those times with that huge *Colossus*, one of the seven Wonders of the World, made by *Chares* of *Lindum* before-mention'd. Composed of Brass, in height seventy Cubits, every Finger of it being as great as an ordinary Man; and consecrated to the Sun, as the proper Deity of the Island. Twelve years in making, and having stood but 66 years, was pull'd down in an instant by an *Earthquake*, which terribly shook the whole Island. The *Rhodians* being forbid by an Oracle, to erect it again, (or possibly pretending such an Oracle to save that charge) yet held the Brass and other Materials of it (in a manner) sacred. Not medled with, nor sacrilegiously purloined till *Manias*, the General of *Osman*, the *Mahometan* Caliph, finding

in himself no such scruple of Conscience, (after he had subdued this Island) made a Prey hereof, loading nine hundred Camels with the very Brass of it. From this *Colossus* was the Island sometimes call'd *Colossa*, and the people *Colossians*; not those *Colossians* (as some have very vainly thought) to whom St. Paul writ his Epistle, those being of *Colosse*, a Town of the Greater *Phrygia*, as hath there been noted. Here was also in this City anciently a Temple of *Bacchus*, enriched with many presents both of *Greeks* and *Romans*, of both which People the *Rhodians* were then held in a fair esteem; but the God, and the good Wines in greater. Towns of less note, are 3. *Villanovia*. 4. *Russicare*, and sometimes others, but as little memorable.

This Island was first peopled by *Dodanim*, the Son of *Javan*, and the Grand-child of *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call commonly, but corruptly, *Rhodanim*; mistaking the Hebrew Letter *Dalet* for that of *Resh*, Letters so like as easily it might draw them to that mistake. Finding this Island too narrow for him, he left here a Colony, and with the main of his People, passed into *Greece*; where he planted the Country of *Epirus*, as hath there been said. Those which staid here being mistakingly call'd *Rhodians*, (or call'd so by the *Grecians*, not looking with too curious Eyes into their Antiquities, from the abundance of *Roses* here growing) making the best use of their Haven, and other the advantages of their situation, became so expert in maritime Affairs, that by *Florus* they are styled *Populus nauticus*, and that not only in the way of Trade and Merchandize, but of Power and Government; holding for many years the Command of these Seas, and prescribing Laws for the Reiglement of Navigation. Which being call'd the *Rhodian Laws*, became the general Rule for deciding *Marine Causes*, and ordering the Affairs of Sea, in all the Parts and Provinces of the *Roman Empire*: And so continued till supplanted in these Western parts by the Laws of *Oleron*. Fearful of falling under the *Macedonians*, they applied themselves unto the *Romans*, whom first they aided in their Wars against *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*; and afterwards in that also against *Antiochus*. Rewarded for this last Service with *Lycia* and *Caria*, two of the *Asian Provinces*, which *Antiochus* was to leave on his Composition; they became so faithfully affected to the State of *Rome*, that when all the other Islands of the *Mediterranean* and *Aegean Seas* revolted to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, this only adhered unto the *Romans*. Proud either of their Strength at Sea, or of those good Offices, they began to take upon them as *Mediators*, and thought themselves fit Men to advise their *Masters*. Grown troublesome by their frequent Interpositions, and losing much of their Esteem by such *Impertinences*, they began to grow jealous of the *Romans*, and incline to *Perseus* King of *Macedon*; whose Father they before opposed with their utmost Power. A change which *Paterculus* expressed with some Admiration. *Rhodii ipsi fidelissimi antea Romanis, dubia jam fide proni-*

ores in Regis partes visi sunt; as his Words there are But yet they held for them against *Mithridates*, as before was said, and served their turn on all Occasions, until insensibly they betrayed their Liberty to the Power of their Friends, and of *Confederates* and *Allies*, became their *Vassals*. Made by *Vespasian* into a Province with the rest of the Isles; the Governor, or President of those Islands; which gave the Title of *Metropolitan* to the Bishop of *Rhodes*. Under that Empire it continued (or under that of *Constantinople* after the Division) till the Year 1124, when taken from the *Grecians* by the State of *Venice*; again recovered by the *Greeks*, in the time of their Emperor, *John Ducas*, then residing at *Nice*, in 1227. Won from the *Grecians* by the *Turks*, in 1283. The Knights of St. *John of Hierusalem* being utterly driven out of *Asia*, possessed themselves of it, by the favour of *Emanuel*, the then Emperor, who aided them in the Conquest, Anno 1308. Afterwards proving bad Neighbours to the *Turkish* Tyrants, whom they ceased not to infest upon all occasions, they were many times in vain invaded; *Mahomet* the Great, famous for taking *Constantinople*, and the Empire of *Trabezond*, spending some time before their City, with both loss and shame in 1480. At the last, Anno 1522, it was again besieged by *Solyman* the Magnificent, *Lilla-damus Villerius* being then great Master, who did as much in defence hereof, as Policy and Puissance could extend unto. But Multitude in the end prevailed, and upon Christmas-day, the *Turk* entred *Rhodes* as Conqueror; though possibly he might have said, (as *Pyrrhus* once said of a like Victory against the *Romans*) that such another Victory would quite have undone him. Since that a Province of the *Turks*, by whom, and by some *Jews* banish'd out of *Spain*, the City of *Rhodes* is wholly inhabited: The *Christians* which are licenced to dwell in the Country, and have leave to trade there in the day time, not suffered upon pain of Death, to stay there all Night. And so we pass from the Islands of the *Asian Diocese*, to the Isle of *Cyprus*, a near Neighbour unto *Anatolia*; but no Member it: The rest of that *Diocese*, and those Seas, as 11. *Possidium*. 12. *Arcefine*. 13. *Bugiales*. 14. *Minyas*. 15. *Sirne*. 16. *Cesi*, and the rest, yielding but little matter of Observation besides their Names. The *Turks* have to this day so great a veneration for the Valour of the Knights of *Rhodes*, that they preserve their Houses as they left them, with all the Arms, Statues, Paintings, and Inscriptions; and the Walls of the City are put, and maintain'd in the same State they were before the Siege. The Knights in the Year 1530, pass'd to *Malta*, where they still reside. Most of the Inhabitants transporting themselves to *Italy*, *Candy*, and other places, whereupon the *Turks* were forced to grant great Privileges to those who would settle here, which in a short time made it very Populous. The Walls of the City (saith *Randolph*) are now in very bad Repair.

O F

CYPRUS.

Cyperus is situate in the Syrian and Cilician Seas, extended in length from East to West two hundred Miles, in breadth sixty; the whole compass reckoned five hundred and fifty. Distant about sixty Miles from the rocky Shores of Cilicia in Asia Minor, and about an hundred from the main Land of Syria; towards which it shooteth it self out with a long sharp Promontory, extending heretofore to the main Land, from which rent in former time by a violent Earthquake, as is said by Pliny, and worn unto this narrowness by the continual working of the Sea upon it.

No place hath ofner changed his Name, or at least had more Names on the By than this. Call'd at first *Cethin*, or *Cethina*, from *Ketim* the Son of *Javan*, who first planted it. *Cerastus*, from the abundance of Promontories, thrusting like *Horns* into the Sea, (as the word intimates in the Greek.) 3. *Amuthusia*. 4. *Paphia*. 5. *Salamina*: These three last from the principal Towns in those parts hereof. 6. *Macaria* from the fruitfulness and felicities of it. Besides these, it hath in some times had these By-names also; as 7. *Asperia*, from the roughness of the Soil. 8. *Collinia*, from the frequency of Hills and Mountains. 9. *Arosa*, from the Mines of Brasses which abound therein. 10. And finally, all those forgotten and laid by, it settled at last in the name of *Cyprus*. So call'd, say some, from the abundance of *Cypress*-Trees, with which most plentifully provided; as others, from *Cryptos*, a Greek word, signifying *Concealed*, or hidden, because sometimes concealed by the Surges from the Eye of Sailers; but most improbably said by others to take Name from *Cyrus*, who founded here the City of *Aphrodisia*; whereas indeed six hundred years before *Cyrus* his Birth, we find it by this name in *Homer*. More rightly *Stephanus*, who deriveth it, *Σὺν Κυπρῷ ἡ θυγάτηρ Κίπρου*, from *Cyrus*, Daughter of *Cinyras*, one of the Kings hereof, living before the Trojan Wars; though in my mind the first comes nearest to the truth, the *Cypress*-Tree not only growing here in so great abundance, but being anciently peculiar in a manner to this Island only.

But on what ground soever it was call'd *Cyrus*, certain I am, it had the name of *Cerastis* upon very good reason; no Island or Region that I know of, (for the bigness of it) thrusting out so many sharp Promontories. For on the West there is, 1. The Promontory call'd *Acamas*, now *Capo St. Pilano*. 2. *Depranum*, now *Trepiano* and *Melechis*. 3. *Zaphyrum*, or *Caput Calidoni*, now *Punta Malota*. On the South. 4. *Pbrurium*, now *Capo Bianco*. 5. *Curtus*, or *Cape della Catte*. 6. *Gades*, or *Capo Chitt*. 7. *Throni*, or *Capo Pilæ*. On the East, 8. *Pendulum*, now *Capo di Griego*. 9. *Clides*, now *Capo S. Andrae*. And on the North, 10. *Coronyon*, now *Capo Cornobutte*, besides some others of less note. Some of the Poets give another reason of this Name, as that *Venus* offended with the People of *Amathus*, for sacrificing their Guests, should turn them into *horned Cattel*, *Unde etiam nomen traxere Cerastæ*, as it is in *Ovid*, but that merely fabulous; somewhat of kin unto the Legend of *Thomas Becket*; and the *Kentish Long tails*. Yet so far we may joyn with *Ovid*, that the Island was not only call'd *Cerastis*, but that the People were also call'd *Cerastæ*, of which there wants not proof from some other

Authors; with which we need not trouble our selves, that name being altogether worn out of use, and no other but that of *Cyprus* given it in common Speech. Nor is it a matter of more strangeness, that *Cyprus* should be call'd so by the *Grecians* from its abundance of *Cypress*-Trees, anciently and originally peculiar to this Island, as before was noted; than that the same *Grecians* should give unto the neighbouring Island the name of *Rhodes*, from its great plenty of *Roses*; or to the neighbouring Island the name of *Phœnicia*, from its great plenty of *Palm*-Trees; the word so signifying in that Language.

It is situate under the fourth Climate, so that the longest day in Summer is no more than fourteen Hours and a half; and for that cause the Air in Summer-time exceeding hot and foultry: The Soil moistned with some few Brooks, meriting rather the name of Torrents than Rivers, which being generated for the most part by Rain-water, are not seldom dried up by the heat of the Sun; insomuch, that in the Reign of *Constantine* the Great, this Island was for 36 years together almost utterly forsaken, no Rain falling all that time. These inconveniencies notwithstanding, it is stored with such plenty of all things, that without the help of any Foreign Nation, it is of it self able to build and rig a tall Ship from the Keel to the Top-sail, and so put it to Sea furnished with all things needful for a Voyage, or a Sea-Fight. It also aboundeth in Wine, Oyl, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wool, Turpentine, and Allom, Verdgreece, all sorts of Metals, store of Salt, Grograins, and other Commodities, whereupon this Island was once call'd *Macaria* (i. e. *Happy*.) By reason of which wonderful affluence of all Necessaries, and that variety of Pleasures (even to Sensuality) which the place afforded, it was anciently consecrated unto *Venus*, who is hence call'd *Venus Cypria*, and *Dea Cyprî*: *Sic te diva potens Cyprî*, in *Horace*; and in *Ovid*,

*Festa dies Veneris, totâ celeberrima Cypro,
Venerat; ipsa suis aderat Venus aurea festis.*

Venus Feasts hallowed through all *Cyprus* came,
And *Venus* with her Presence grac'd the same.

The People hereof are Warlike, strong and nimble, of great civility and hospitality to their Neighbours, and love to Strangers of all Nations, *Jews* only excepted. For in the Empire of *Trajan*, the *Jews* inhabiting *Aegypt* and the adjoining Countries, drew themselves together, and chose one *Alexander* for their Captain, under whose Conduct they entred into this Island, and laid it desolate, killing in it 240000 Persons of all Sexes and Ages; not without much Bloodshed vanquished and slain by *Lucius* the Emperor's Lieutenant. Since which time the *Cypriots* permit no *Jew* to enter into the Island; but come he hither voluntarily, or by force of Tempest, they lay hands on him, and lead him presently to Execution. A hated Nation, that neither Innocence can protect, or Equity reprieve from that cruel custom.

The Women in former times much noted for their Unchastity, to which their worshipping of *Venus* was no small incentive; it being the custom of these Women to prostitute themselves on the Shores, to the Passers-by: Their very *Virgins* not refusing to be handled there, before

fore their Marriage; either to raise their Portions by the sale of their Bodies, or else to please their Goddess with such beastly Sacrifices. And if *Volaterranus* may be credited, (as I think he may) the Ladies which attended on Queen *Carlotta*, when she came to *Rome*, to seek for aid against *James* the Bastard, who had dispossessed her of this Kingdom, shewed themselves little chaster than those ancient *Cypriots*. Somewhat more fortunate in the Men, 1. *Æsclepiades*, the Author of the Verse so named. 2. *Xenophon*, an old Poet. 3. *Zeno*; and 4. *Apollonius*, the Philosophers. 5. *Epiphanius*, the learned Bishop of *Salames*; and 6. Above all, *St. Barnabas*, the dear Associate of *St. Paul*; being all Natives of this Country.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by *St. Paul*, and *Barnabas*, as the very first fruits of their Apostleship, after they had been separated to the Work of the Ministry by the imposition of Hands, as appeareth, *Acts* 13. ver. 4. &c. The Church hereof, by reason of the Antiquity of it, and the Honour of this joint Foundation, so privileged in the best Ages of Christianity, that the Archbishop of this Island had all Prerogatives of a *Primate*; consecrated by his own Suffragan Bishops, and acting in all Sacred and Ecclesiastical Affairs, without dependance on, or relation to the See of *Antioch*, whereunto all other Bishops in the Eastern *Dioecese* were either subordinate or subject. Which Privilege being questioned in the Council of *Ephesus*, was by the Fathers there assembled, on a full hearing of the Cause, approved and ratified; confirmed by the Civil Sanction of the Emperor *Justinian*, whose Wife was a Native of this Island; and by the name of *Jus Ciprium*, the Privilege or Exemption of the *Cyprian* Church, transmitted to the Prelates of succeeding times. Which notwithstanding, they continued in good Correspondence with the Eastern Churches of the *Greek Communion*, and officiated all Divine Acts after the Rites and Forms thereof, till the *Venetians* became Lords of it, who brought in the *Latin* Service into some of their Churches, and appointed Bishops and other Ministers of the *Papal* party, for execution of the same. And for the Government of these Churches, they had at first fourteen Bishops, and Archbishops, to gratifie Queen *Alice*, (who had a mind to enrich her Friends with some of the Spoils of them); reduced by *Innocent* the Third to four only; that is to say, the Archbishop of *Nicosia*, the Bishopsricks of *Famagusta*, *Paphos*, and *Amathus*; but each See furnished with two Prelates, the one for the *Greeks*, the other for the *Latins*; of which the Bishops for the *Latins* have all the Lands, and Annual Revenue, which of right belong to those Cathedrals; the *Greek* Bishops living upon Stipends levied on the Priests and Deacons of their Jurisdiction.

Rivers, as formerly was said, here are very few, and of those few, the principal are call'd *Lycus* and *Lapithus*; the first running towards the South, the last towards the North; both not seldom so dried up, that they leave their empty Channels without any Water. Both also have their Source from the Hill *Olympus*, (the highest Mountain of the Island) garnished with Trees and Fruits of all sorts; in compass about eighteen Leagues, (which make four and fifty *Italian* Miles) and at the end of every League a Monastery of *Greek Monks*, or *Calores*, and a Fountain of fresh water for the use of the House. Here are also two other little Rivers, the one call'd 3. *Bodens*, the other 4. *Tolius*; but of the same nature as the former.

By *Ptolomy*, or in his time, divided into four parts, or Provinces; but since it fell into the hands of the *Lusignian* Family, distributed into twelve Counties, or *Centredes*; most of them call'd by the name of their principal Towns, viz, 1. *Nicosia*. 2. *Famagusta*. 3. *Paphia*. 4. *Audima*. 5. *Lamissa*. 6. *Masorum*. 7. *Salines*. 8. *Messoria*. 9. *Crisofocus*. 10. *Pentalia*. 11. *Carpassus*. 12. *Cermes*. The whole containing, besides the Cities

and great Towns, 805 Villages, or thereabouts, which they call'd *Casals*, whereof the one half anciently belong'd unto the *Crown*, the other half divided betwixt the *Lay-Nobility* and the *Ecclesiasticks*; the Patrimony of these last being computed at 80000 Crowns of Annual Rents, besides Casualties, and the Vails of the Altar. But because the tracing out of these *Centredes* will be very difficult, (as a way which none have gone before me) I will adhere to the division made hereof in the time of *Ptolomy*, into the Provinces of 1. *Paphia*. 2. *Amathysia*. 3. *Lapethia*; and 4. *Salaminie*.

1. *Paphia*, so call'd of *Paphos*, the chief Town thereof, taketh up the West part of the Island; in which the Towns of most Importance and Observation are, 1. *Paphos*, on the Seaside, by *Play* call'd *Palaeporos*, or old *Paphos*, built, as some say, by *Cyprus*, the Father of *Myrrha*, and so named in memory of *Paphos* his Father; but, as others say, by *Paphos*, the Son of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phenicia* and *Cyprus*: To which last *Ovid* doth agree, who speaking of *Pygmalion's* Statue, turn'd into a Woman by the power of *Venus*, (or rather of his beautiful Wife, fabled, for the surpassing whiteness of her Skin, to be made of *Ivory*) he adds this of her:

Illa Paphium genuit de quo tenet insula nomen.

She *Paphos* bare, whom from the name
Of *Paphia* to the Island came.

Here *Venus* had her so much celebrated Temple, hence the name of *Paphia*; and here her *Votaries* of both Sexes in their natural nakedness, did perform her Sacrifices. Both Town and Temple ruined by a fearful *Earthquake*; or as the *Legends* have it, by the Prayers of *St. Barnabas*; the Ruins of it still remaining. 2. *Paphos Nova*, or *New Paphos*, now call'd *Baffo*, five Miles from the old, built by *Agapenor*, one of the Nephews of *Lycurgus* the *Spartan* Lawgiver, after the Sack of *Troy* forced hither by a violent Tempest; consecrate to the same impure Goddess, and much frequented, but without injury to the other; those which here offered not thinking they had done her sufficient Service, unless they went in a solemn manner of Procession, and paid their Vows also at the other. 3. *Arfinoe*, situate betwixt both; built by, or call'd so in honour of *Arfinoe*, Daughter of *Ptolomy* the first King of *Egypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*, of that House. 4. *Drepanum*, now call'd *Trepano*, under the Promontory so named, a well-traded Port, but miserably defaced by the *Turks*, when they took this Island. 5. *Connelia*, one of the richest of the Island, by reason of the plenty of Sugar and Cotton-wool growing thereabout. Built in the place of 6. *Cithera*, dedicated to *Venus* also, but differing from the Island of that Name in the *Ægean* Sea, rather in pronunciation than the purity of her Oblations; the last Syllable save one, in the name of that Island, being short in Verse, but this of *Cyprus* sounding long, as in this of *Virgil*:

Est Amathus, est celsa mihi Paphos, atque Cithera.

Cithera and *Amathus* Divine,
And lofty *Paphos* are all mine.

2. On the South-East of *Paphia* lieth the Province, or District of *Amathysia*, taking up the South-parts of the Island which look towards *Egypt*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Amathus*, giving Name unto this Division, then of most note, and much frequented for the Annual Sacrifices made unto *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, who had here another of her Temples: The Ruins of both hardly now discerned. Built, as some say, by *Amasis*, King of *Egypt*, when he conquered this Island; but as others say by some of the *Amashites*, descended from *Amath*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*. 2. *Cetium*, or *Citium*, (for

(for I find it call'd by both names) the Birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, hence call'd *Kimdis*, or *Cittensis*; and memorable for the death of *Simon* the *Athenian* General. A Town wherein the Memory of *Cittim*, the Son of *Javan*, is most anciently preserved. 3. *Episcopio*, one of the chief of all the Island, built on the place, or out of the decay of 4. *Curias*, not far from the Promontory of the same name, founded by the *Argives*, where *Apollo* had both a Grove and a Temple, by the name of *Apollo Hylates*: His Altars in those times held so sacred, that whosoever presumed to touch them, was thrown into the Sea, from the Promontory, or Rocks adjoining. 5. *Salines*, or *Salinae*, so call'd from the rich Salt-pits; one of the chief Towns of this part, and giving name to one of those twelve *Cantredes*, into which the whole is now divided.

3. *Lapethia*, the third part of the Island, lieth on the North thereof, opposite to *Cilicia* in *Asia Minor*. Places of most Importance in it, 1. *Nicosia*, the Regal City of the Kings, the See of the Archbishop, and the chief of the Island; anciently call'd *Ledromsis*, and *Lentainis*; but those Names long ago laid by. Situate in the midst of the Isle, and in a plain and champaign Country, abundantly fertile and delightful. Environed with a fair Wall, so exactly round, as if it had been drawn with a pair of Compasses; in Circuit about five Miles, and both for Situation, number of People, and magnificent Buildings of all sorts both publick and private, compared by some to the most beautiful City of *Florence*. Fortified by the *Venetians*, when in their Possession, with new Walls, deep Ditches, and eleven strong Bulwarks, with three great Out-works, all of them built according to the Art of modern Fortification. But notwithstanding all these Works, and the help of 250 pieces of Cannon planted on the Walls, and about the City, it was by the *Turks* taken at the second or third Assault, *Septemb. 9. Anno 1570*. So evident a Truth it is, that Fortifications are more strengthned by the gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2. *Cerines*, situate near the Sea, strong by Art and Nature, and furnished with all things necessary to endure a Siege; but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alphonfus Palacius*, the unwarlike Governour, terrified with the great slaughter made at the Sack of *Nicosia*, before the Enemy came near it. At first call'd *Ceurania*, and said to have been built by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* King, when he first subdued the nine Kings hereof, and united the Island to that Crown; blest with a more temperate and wholesome Air, than any other in the Country. 3. *Tremitus*, the Birth-place of *Spiridion*, a Bishop of the *Primitive* times, renown'd for Miracles; many of which reported by *Sozomen*, lib. 1. chap. 10. and other *Ecclesiastical* Writers. Wholly decay'd, the Ruin of it much contributing to the rise of *Nicosia*. 4. *Lapubus*, (by *Ulysses* call'd *Lapeto*) on the Banks of a small Riveret of that name, of so great note in former times, that it gave to this Division the name of *Lapethia*; in that part standeth the Hill *Olympus*, (now the Mountain of the *Holy Cross*) described before.

4. *Salamme*, the fourth and last Province of this Island, taketh up the whole East-parts hereof. So named from, 1. *Salamus*, once the chief City of the Isle, and the See of the *Primate*, or *Metropolitan* hereof in the *Primitive* times. Destroyed by the *Jews* in the Reign of *Trajan*, and re-built again; but being after that taken, sacked, and razed unto the Ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heraclius*, in 656, it never could again recover the *Metropolitan* See after that Subversion, being removed to *Nicosia*. It was sometimes, and by some Writers, call'd *Constantia* also; but that name could give it no more Perpetuity than the other of *Salamus*. Memorable whilst it stood for the Founder of it, being *Tenaxer* the Son of *Tellamon*, King of *Salamus*, an Isle of the *Aegean* Sea; banished his Country by his Father, and settled in this Island by the power of *Belus*, King of *Phanicia*: As

also for a famous Temple sacred unto *Jupiter*, hence call'd *Salaminius*. Out of the Ruins hereof arose 2. *Famagusta*, now the prime City of these parts, built, as is said, by *Costa* the Father of *St. Catharine*; but that uncertain. Situate at the East end of the Island in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one call'd the Cape of *St. Andrew*, and the other *Capo di Griego*, or the Head of *Græcia*. In compass not above two Miles, in form Four-square, but that the side towards the East stretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen Foot in breadth, an old stone Wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (opposite to *Tripolis*, a Town of *Syria*) openeth towards the South-East, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea cometh in at a narrow passage not above forty Paces broad, but after opening wider and wider, maketh a convenient Harbour, rather safe than large, assured both by the difficult entrance, and a Chain crossed over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortified; the Works of it of the old fashion, generally decayed, except one Bulwark, which was built according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Palisadoes*, Curtains, Casemates, and all other Additaments: Most gallantly defended by *Bragadine* the noble General, to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who spent no less than 118000 great Shot upon it; and at last yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 3. *Aphrodisium*, so nam'd of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* call'd *Aphrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4. *Arsione*, built also by one of the *Arsiones* Queens of *Egypt*, there being two others of this name, and the same Foundation, now call'd *Leicare*, and anciently renowned for the Groves of *Jupiter*. 5. *Tamassus*, of good note in the time of *Strabo* for Rich Mines of Brass, as afterwards for an abundance of *Vergreece* and *Vitriol* found plentifully in the Fields adjoining. 6. *Idalium*, near a Mount of the same name, so call'd by accident. For *Chalcenor*, the Founder of it, being told by the Oracle, that he should seat himself, and build a City, where he first saw the rising Sun: One of his Followers, seeing the Sun begin to rise, cried out, *ἰδὲ ἥλιον*, that is to say, *Behold the Sun*. Which Omen taken by *Chalcenor*, he here built this City. But whether this were so or not, (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple neighbouring by the *Idalian Groves* so memorized and chanted by the ancient Poets. So strong an Influence had Lust and Sensuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Island was defiled with those brutish Sacrifices, which day by day were offered to that impure Deity; though to say truth, it was no marvel if having made their *Belly their God*, they made in the next place their *Glory their shame*.

The first Inhabitants of this Island were the Posterity of *Cittim* the Son of *Javan*, and Grand-son of *Japhet*: who having seen his Brother *Tarshish* settled in *Cilicia*, (where his Memory is still preserved in the City of *Tarshus*) planted himself and his Retinue in this opposite Island. The City of *Cettum*, as *Protony*, or *Cittum*, as *Pliny* calleth it, one of the ancientest of the Island, taking name from him; which with the Authority of *Josephus*, and others of the ancient Writers, put it out of question. But being this Island was too narrow to contain his Numbers, and willing to seek further off for a larger Dwelling, he left here so many of his Followers as might serve in time to plant the Country; and with the rest passed into *Macedon*, where we have already spoken of him. Made tributary first to *Amasis* King of *Egypt*, from which distant about three or four days Sailing. Subjected afterwards to the *Phœnicians*, a near Neighbour to them, who being a Sea-faring People, made themselves Masters of the Sea-Coasts, and

and maritime places. *Cinyras* the Father of *Almiba*, (by whom both Father and Grandfather to *Almiba*) is said to have been King of both. The like affirmed of *Belus*, one of his Successors, who is said to have been the founder of the City of *Citium*, named so (if not rather repaired than new built by him) with reference no doubt to *Citium*, the first Progenitor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Tucer*, the Son of *Tilimon*, banished his Country, accompanied with many Followers from *Salamus*, *Athens*, and *Arcadia*, was settled in the East parts hereof; where the City of *Salamus*, by him built, was his first Plantation. Yet so that the *Phenicians* kept their former hold; it being evident in Story that *Elulæus* one of the Successors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*) and a Contemporary with *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria*, passed over into *Cyprus* with a puissant Navy, to reduce the *Citians* to Obedience, who had then rebelled. The Island, at first coming of *Tucer* hither, so infinitely overgrown with Woods, that the People were not able to Till the Island. Infomuch, that notwithstanding the great waste made of them, both in building Ships, and casting Metals, a Law was made, that every one which would should fell them, and take as much ground in severalty for his own Inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for Tillage. Encouraged herewith, the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Greeks*, *Phenicians*, *Egyptians*, so bestirred themselves, that at last they brought it unto *Champagn*; parcelled out in succeeding times amongst nine Kings, for so many *Cyrus*, the great *Persian* Monarch found at his coming hither. But *Cyrus*, though he did subdue all those petit Princes, yet he took not from them their Estates or Titles: contented with the conquest of it, and an annual Tribute. For after this, in the time of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, we find *Evagoras* and *Nicocles*, to whom *Isostrates* inscribed two of his O-rations, to be Kings hereof. And in the time of *Alexander the Great*, *Citium* it self (such was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not subject to any other. The King whereof to indear himself with the Conqueror, gave to him a Sword, *μαχαίρα δαυμαστίη* faith *Plutarch*, an admirable Sword, both for colour and lightness, which he after used in all his Fights. And after the death of *Alexander*, his great Commanders cantoning his Estates amongst them, the Princes and People of this Island were in great Distractions, not knowing to whom they might submit for their best advantage. But *Ptolomy*, who had seized on *Agypt* for his part of the Spoil, being strong in Shipping, settled them by a personal visit; and fortifying some of the best pieces in it, assured the Country to himself. To him and his Posterity it continued subject till the time of *Ptolomy Auletes*, the ninth King of this Line in our Account, who gave it for a Portion to one of his Brethren; in whose time, the *Romans*, without any colour, or pretence of Quarrel, but only to enrich themselves with the spoil of the Island, sent *Portius Cato* to subdue it. And he at first assayed to get it with the King's consent, offering him in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Priesthood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainful Office, and of high esteem among that People. But when *Ptolomy* for fear of worse mischief had made away himself by Poyson, *Cato* without more Ceremony takes possession of it. And because *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Historian, hath so significantly expressed this business, and withal described so punctually the Estate of this Island; we will add this discourse from him, though somewhat he repeated which was said before. *Cyprum insulam procul à Continente distantem, & portuosam, &c.* "The Isle of *Cyprus*, far distant from the Continent, "and well stored with *Herbages*, is famous, besides many *Municipal* Towns, for two principal Cities, that "is to say, *Salamus*, and *Paphos*; the one sacred to *Jupiter*, and the other to *Venus*. An Isle so admirably "fruitful, and with all things furnished, that without

"the help of any foreign Nation, it is able of it self to build and rig forth a ship, from the very Keel unto the Tossail, and trim it with all Tackle necessary for a present Voyage. Nor do I shame to say, that with greater Avarice than Justice, the *Romans* did invade this Island, King *Tolomy*, our old Confederate and Ally, being unworthily proscribed for no other reason, but that our Treasury was bare, our *Exchequer* empty. And he no sooner had prevented this dishonour by a quick and vehement Motion, making away himself by Poyson, but the Island was forthwith made tributary, and the Riches of it, *ut hostes extorere desuperant, &c.* *Quæ in urbe adductæ per Catonem*, as the spoils of a conquered Enemy, were brought on Shipboard and conveyed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far and to this purpose.

I know there is another cause alleged for the sending of *Cato* on this Errand, viz. that *Cato* who was then Tribune, and spied the *Roman* might have opportunity by his absence to revenge himself on *Cato*, and some others of the opposite Faction; but the main business was the Money, as before was said; the Prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thousand Crowns of Coin now current. Which Money and Moveables, amounting unto so vast a Sum, he fearing to lose by Sea, divided it into many small Portions, which he put into several Boxes, viz. in every Box two Talents, and fifty Dracme. At the end of every Box he fastned a long Rope with a piece of Cork, by which floating above the water, the Money, if by Shipwrack lost, might be espied again; which was not much unlike the *Buoys* which Mariners fasten by long Ropes to their Anchors, that they may be sooner found. We see by this, that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Country was very weak: *Avaritia magis quam Justitia fuit assensu*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* also. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the division of the Empire assign'd to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors, under whom it suffered, as all other parts of the Empire did by the violent invasion of the *Saracens*, who spoiled and ransacked it in the time of *Constance* the Second, destroying then the City of *Salamais*, or *Constantia*. But that tempest being overblown, they returned again unto that Empire, govern'd by a succession of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus* usurping the *Greek* Empire, compelled *Isaacus Comnenus*, one of the Blood-Royal, to shift for himself; who seizing on this Island, made himself King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191, when *Richard* the first of *England*, being denied the common courtesie of taking in fresh Water, and seeing his Soldiers abused by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King Prisoner, but subdued the whole Island. And as *Paterculus* telleth us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, *Catenis, sed ne quid honori decisset, aureis vincit*: So did our *Richard* keep a *Decorum* towards this Prisoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but Silver. King *Richard* having thus possessed himself of this Country, sold it for ready Money, (which for the managing of his intended Wars against the *Turks*, he most needed) unto the *Templers*; and taking it, upon I know not what discontent, again from them, he bestowed it on *Guy* of *Jusignan*, the titular and miserable King of *Jerusalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the Title of that lost and shipwreck'd Kingdom, with which Title he and some of his Successors for a time were honoured.

In the posterity of this *Guy*, this Island continued free and absolute, till the year one thousand four hundred twenty three; when *Alschella*, (or *Alschellalar*) Sultan of *Agypt*, invaded this Country, took *John* King hereof, Prisoner, ransomed him for 150000 *Sultanies*, restored him to his Kingdom, and imposed on him and his Successors the yearly Tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was Father to another *John*, whose two Children were *Charlotte* a legitimate Daughter, and *James* a Ballard Son. *James* after the death of his Father, dispossessed his Sister

Carlote of the Crown, by the consent and help of the *Sultan* of *Agypt*; and the better to strengthen himself against all opposition, he took to Wife *Caitharine Cornari*. Daughter by Adoption to the *Venetian Senate*; whom at his Death he made his Heir, if the Child she went withal (having then none by her) should die without Issue, as it did, not long after it was born; and she seeing the factious Nobility too headstrong to be bridled by a female Authority, like a good Child resigned her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian State*, An. 1473. These defended it against all Claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Agyptian*, and afterwards to the *Turkish Sultans*, the 40000 Crowns beforementioned) till the year 1570, when *Mustapha*, General of the *Turks*, wrested it from the *Venetians*, to the use of his Master *Selimus* the Second, who pretended Title to it as Lord of *Agypt*. The Governor of the *Venetian Forces* at the time of this unfortunate loss was *Signior Bragadino*, who as long as hope of Succours, means of Resistance, or possibility of prevailing continued, with incredible Valour made good the Town of *Famagusta*, in whose defence consisted the welfare of the whole Island. At last he yielded it on honourable Conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Mustapha* the *Turkish* General inviting to his Tent the principal Men of worth in the Town, caused them all to be murder'd: And as for *Bragadino* himself, he commanded his Ears to be cut off, his Body to be head alive, and his Skin stuffed with Straw, to be hanged at the main yard of his Gally. The chief of the Prisoners and Spoils were in two tall Ships, and one Gallion, sent unto *Selimus*; but he never saw them. For a noble *Cyprian* Lady, destinated to the Lust of the *Grand Signior*, fired certain barrels of Powder; by the violence whereof both the Vessels and the Booty in them were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heroick Act, inferior unto none of the *Roman Dames*, so much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman* than a *Christian* Lady.

Thus having summed up the Affairs of this Island from the first plantation of it, till this last said Conquest, I will lay down the succession of the *Cyprian* Kings of the noble *Lusignan* Family, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The Kings of CYP R U S.

1191. 1. *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, estated in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, by *Richard* the First of *England*.
2. *Almericus*, the Brother of *Guy*.
3. *Hugh*, the Son of *Almericus*.
4. *Henry*, the Son of *Hugh*.
5. *Hugh* II. Son of *Henry*.
6. *Hugh* III. Son of *Hugh* the Second.
7. *John*, Son of *Hugh* the Third.
8. *Henry* II. the Brother of *John*.
9. *Hugh* IV. Son of *Guido*, the younger Brother of *John*, and *Henry* the Second.
10. *Peter*, the Son of *Hugh* the Fourth.
11. *Petrinus*, the Son of *Peter*.
12. *James*, younger Brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
13. *Janus*, the Son of *James*, made Tributary by *Melechmafer*, to the Kingdom of *Agypt*.
14. *John* II. the Son of *Janus*.
15. *Carlote*, sole Daughter and Heir of *John* the Second, first married to *John* the Prince of *Portugal*, and after to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*; outed of her Estate and Kingdom, by
16. *James* II. the Ballard Son of *John* the Second, who by a strong hand seized upon it, and by help of the *Venetians*, kept it during life.
17. *James* III. Born after the decease of his Father, whom he survived not very long. After whose Death, being the last of this

Family, the *Venetians* possessed themselves of *Cyprus*; which they invaded with no better Title, than the *Romans* had done in former times in 1473, not likely to be blest with a long Fruition of that which they had so unjustly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here is to be observed, that these *Cyprian* Kings retaining the Title of *Hierusalem*, (towards which they sometimes cast an Eye) bestowed upon their greatest Subjects, and deserving Servitors, both Titles of Honour, and Offices of State, belonging anciently to that Kingdom. So that we find amongst them a Prince of *Antioch*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Cæsarea*, and a Lord of Mount *Tabor*; a Seneschal of *Hierusalem*, a Constable, Marshal, and high Chamberlain of that Kingdom also. With better reason, tho' no doubt, with as little profit, as the Pope gives Bishopricks, and Archbishopricks in *Greece*, or *Agypt*. But those titular Offices are now quite extinct, though possibly some of the Titles of Honour which were took from thence, may be still remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*, having thus taken *Famagusta* and *Nicosia*, on which the whole Island did depend; all other Cities of it, and the whole by consequence, were forced to submit to the *Turkish* Tyranny.

The Noblemen, and Citizens of principal Quality, either most cruelly massacred in the Sack of those Towns, or banished for ever their native Country, as Men whose living there might possibly endanger their new Conquest. But the Country people, Artificers, and persons of inferior Rank, permitted to enjoy both their Lives, and Livelihoods, together with their several and respective Religions, in the same manner as before; paying such ordinary Taxes as were laid upon them. And so this goodly Island came into the hands of the *Turks*, who have hitherto enjoyed the possession of it: For notwithstanding that the *Venetians* in the year next following, with the help of the Pope, and King of *Spain*, gave the *Turks* that great and memorable Overthrow, at the famous Battle of *Lepanto*; yet did they nothing, in pursuit of so great a Victory, for the recovery of this Island; and indeed they could not, the Confederates returning home, and dissolving their Fleet, as soon as they had secured their own Estates by the overthrow of the *Turkish* Navy. And though the *Venetians*, to put the best Face they could on so great a loss, so highly pleased themselves with the following Victory, that they put the same in balance with the loss of *Cyprus*; yet an ingenious *Turk*, to let them see the folly of so vain a boasting, compared the losing of *Cyprus* to the loss of an Arm, which could not without a Miracle be recovered; and the loss at *Lepanto*, to the shaving off of ones Beard, which grows the thicker for the cutting; as indeed it proved, for the next year the *Turks* armed out another Navy, no less formidable than the other had been before, braving therewith the whole Christian Forces, either not then disbanded, or reassembled. But however the *Turks* have since been in a declining state as to their Maritime, or Naval Forces, and were never able to recover the loss at *Lepanto*: And the War of *Candy* has since reduced their Land Forces to the same ebb; so that in all appearance that Empire is apace sinking into the Gulph of Ruin.

What the Revenues of it were to the Kings hereof, I cannot certainly determine. The profits of Salt only, and that of the Custom-house, yielded yearly to the *Seignery* of *Venice*, when it was in their hands, a Million of Crowns. For the Customs and Profits of the Salt were farmed for 500000 Crowns per Annum, which being turned into the chief *Syrian* Commodities, were counted double worth that Money, when unladed at *Venice*. To which, if we should add the Lands of the former Kings, and other ways of raising Money on the Subject, I cannot see, but the *Inredo* of the Crown must

must needs amount constantly to a Million and a half yearly, if it were not more.

The Arms hereof were quarterly; First, *Argent*, a Cross *Potent* between four Crosses, *Or*: secondly, Barwise of eight Pieces, *Arg.* and *Azure*, supporting a Lyon *Passant Azure*, Crowned, *Or*: thirdly, a Lyon *Gules*; and fourthly, *Argent*, a Lyon *Gules*; as *Bara*, a French Herald hath given the Blazon.

On the East of *Cyprus* towards *Syria*, lie four or five Islands, which *Plinius* calleth by the name of *Chalce*, not far from the Promontory of that Name; both Promontory and Island, now call'd *St. Zambor*; and towards the West another little knot of Illets, which he calls *Carpasie*; but nothing memorable in either. So I pass them over.

There are in *Cyprus*, Archbishops 2. Bishops 6.

And so much for C Y P R U S.

O F

SYRIA.

SYRIA is bounded on the East with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Mesopotamia*; on the West with the *Mediterranean Sea*; on the North with *Cilicia*, and *Armenia Minor*, from the last parted by Mount *Taurus*; and on the South, with *Palestine*, and some parts of *Arabia*. The length hereof, from Mount *Taurus* to the edge of *Arabia*, is said to be five hundred twenty and five Miles; the breadth, from the *Mediterranean* to the River *Euphrates*, computed at four hundred and seventy, drawing somewhat near unto a Square.

In the Scripture it is call'd *Aram*, and the People *Aramites*, because first peopled and possessed by *Aram* the Son of *Sem*; though *Hamath*, *Arphad*, and *Sidon*, the Sons of *Canaan*, did also put in for a share; and yet not call'd thus by the Scriptures only, but by some of the Heathen Writers also: For *Strabo* doth not only acknowledge that the *Syrians* in his time were call'd *Aequoi*, but citeth *Possidonius*, a more ancient Writer, for proof that the *Aequoi*, which *Homer* speaketh of, must be those *Syrians*: Further averring, that the *Syrians* call'd themselves by the name of *Aremæi*; or plainly, *Aramites*. But by the *Greeks* they are call'd *Syrians*, *Surians*, from the City *Tyre*, call'd anciently by the name of *Sur*, or *Tsur*, (of which more hereafter) either because the *Tyrians*, or *Tsurians* had in those times the command of the Sea-Coasts of this Country; or else that *Tyre*, or *Tser* being the chief Mart-Town of all those parts, was the place where they traded with those *Aramites*. Conforming to which ancient Appellations the City of *Tyre* is again call'd *Sur*, and this Country *Soria*. Others conceive, that being when the *Greeks* first knew it, a part of the *Affyrian Empire*, the Seat of which was then at *Ninve*, it was call'd *Syria* for *Affyria*; as afterwards *Affyria* had the name of *Syria*, (of which more anon) when the Seat of that great Empire was removed to *Antioch*. And this may very well be so, considering that by the like decurtation we have turned *Hispania* unto *Spain*, as the *Greeks* before us did into *Spania*, by which name it occurs, *Rom.* 15. 28.

But here we are to understand, that though the *Syria* of the *Romans*, as it was a Member of that Empire, was limited within the bounds before laid down, yet anciently as well the *Aram* of the *Hebrews*, as the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, was of greater Latitude; of which, because it may be useful to the understanding of *holy Scriptures*, and of some *Classick Authors* also, I shall enlarge a little further. For *Aram*, taken in the largest acceptation of it, extendeth from the Coast of *Cilicia*,

North, to *Idumæa* towards the South; from the River *Tygris* in the East, to the *Mediterranean Sea* upon the West; containing besides the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, (in which *Palestine* was also included) *Arabia* the *Desart*, and *Petræa*, *Chaldæa*, *Babylonia*, and all those Provinces to which the name *Aram* is either prefixed, or subjoyned in the Book of God, as *Aram-Nabaraïm*, *Aram-Sobab*, *Padan-Aram*, *Aram-Maachab*, *Sede-Aram*, *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, all mention'd in the *Holy Scriptures*. Some do extend it further yet, and do not only bring *Armenia* within the Latitude of this Name, which they derive from *Aram-minni*, whose Neighbourhood to *Syria* may give some colour to the Error; but even those People of *Cappadecia* bordering on the *Euxine Sea*, the Inhabitants of which were anciently call'd *Leuco-Syri*, or *White Syrians*. But this not having any good Warrant, or Authority wherewithal to back it, shall not come under the compass of this Consideration. But for the rest, I find it generally agreed upon amongst the Learned, that *Aram-Nabaraïm* is the same with the whole Country of *Mesopotamia*, so named both by the *Jews* and *Greeks*, because it is environed with the two famous Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, which *Priscian* by a meer *Latin* name, would have to be call'd *Medam-na*, but *Inter Amna*, by his leave, would express it better. And as for *Padan-Aram* wherein *Laban* dwelt, which is call'd *Sede-Aram* by the Prophet *H-Jea*, Ch. 12. ver. 13. that is a part only of the other; the whole Country of *Aram-Nabaraïm*, or *Mesopotamia*, being divided into two parts, whereof the more fruitful lying Northward, is call'd *Padan-Aram*, or *Sede-Aram*, to whose Inhabitants *Xenophon* gives the name of *Syriani*; the barren and most desert lying towards the South, which by the same Author is call'd *Arabia*. For *Aram-Maachab* mention'd 1 *Chron.* 19. 6. it is conceived to be that part of *Syria* which was after nam'd *Comagena*, whereof *Samosata* was the *Metropolis*, or Mother-City. And as for *Aram-Sobab*, of which, and of *Adadzar* the King thereof, there is so frequent mention in the Books of the *Kings* and *Chronicles*, it was the Province lying on the North East of *Damascus*, and so extending to the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, and is the same with that which afterwards was call'd *Palmyra*, from the City of *Palmyra*, South-West of which, amongst the petty Kingdoms on the North of *Gislar*, in the Land of *Palestine*, lay the Kingdom of *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, confederate with *Ammon* in the War which they had with *David*, 2 *Sam.* 10. 6. Nor did the *Greeks* less extend the name of *Syria*, than the *Hebrews* did

did the name of *Aram*, if they stretched it not further. Certain I am, that *Strabo* comprehendeth the *Assyrians*, in the name of *Syria*, where he affirmeth, that the *Medes* over rul'd all *Asia*, καταλύσαντα πῶς ἦν Σύρον ἀσκήν, the Empire of the *Syrians* (he meaneth the *Assyrians*) being overthrown. And in *Herodotus* it is said, that those whom the *Barbarians* call *Assyrians*, ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἐκαλέοντο Σύριοι, were call'd *Syrians* by the *Greeks*. And to that purpose *Justin* also, *Imperium Assyrii, qui postea Syri dicti sunt, annos 1300 tenuere*. But these all write after the time that *Selucus* and his Race had the possession of the Eastern Empire; who living for the most part in *Syria*, from whence they might more easily furnish themselves with Soldiers out of *Greece*, (as they did most commonly for all their Military Expeditions) caused all the other parts of their large Dominions to be call'd, in tract of time, by the name of *Syria*. But on the other side, as the *Syria* of the *Romans* extended not so far to the East and South, as the *Aram* of the *Hebrews* did; so it contained some other Regions; that is to say, those of *Phœnicia* and *Palestine*, which were not comprehended in the name of *Aram*, as being planted by a People of another Race, and of different Fortunes, till brought together under the command of the *Babylonians*. In which regard we will treat severally of the natures of the Soil and People, their Originals, Government, and Successes, till we have brought them into one hand, and then continue their Affairs, as one joint Estate. But first we will survey the ancient and present Fortunes of Christianity, and other Religions herein embraced or tolerated, wherein the whole, according to the bounds and limits before laid down, is alike concerned.

And for Religions in this Country, here is choice enough; those namely of the *Mahometan*, *Christian*, *Pagan*, and one compounded out of all, which is that of the *Drusians*: The *Mahometan* embraced by the generality of the People throughout the whole, and by all that be in any Office or Authority, is only countenanced and approved of, though all the rest be tolerated. The *Pagan* entertained only in the mountainous Countries bordering on *Armenia*, inhabited by a People whom they call'd *Curdi*, or the *Curdenes*, supposed to be descended from the ancient *Parthians*, as being very expert in Bows and Arrows, their most usual Arms. A Race of People who is said to worship alike both God and the Devil; the one, that they may receive Benefits from him; the other, that he may not hurt them. *Se alios deos colere ut profint, alios ne noceant*, as *Lactantius* doth affirm, of the ancient *Grecians*. But their principal Devotions are addressed to the Devil only, and that upon good Reasons, as themselves conceive: For God, they say, is a good Man, and will do no body no harm; but the Devil is a mischievous Fellow, and must be pleased with Sacrifices, that he hurt them not. And for the *Drusians* they are conceived to be the remainder of those *Franks* (by which name the *Turks* call all Western *Christians*) who driven unto the Mountains (when they lost the Sovereignty and Possession of the Holy-Land) and defending themselves by the advantage of the place, could never be wholly rooted out by the *Turks*, contented at the length to afford them both Peace, and liberty of their Religion. But they have so forgot the Principles of that Religion, that they retain nothing of it but *Baptism*, and not that generally neither; accounting it lawful, most unlawfully to marry their own Daughters, Sisters, or Mothers; and yet conform unto the *Turks* in their Habits only, wearing the white *Turbant*, as the *Turks* do; but abhorring Circumcision, and indulging to themselves the liberty of Wine, by Law forbidden to the *Turks*. A People otherwise very Warlike, Stout, and Resolute; with great both Constancy and Courage, resisting hitherto the Attempts of the *Turkish* Sultans. The Country they possess environed with the Confines of *Joppa*, about *Cæsarea Pa-*

lestinae, betwixt the Rivers of *Jordan* and *Orontes*, extending Eastwards as far as the Plains of *Damascus*; so that here is no part of *Syria*, except *Comagena*, unto which their Habitations reach not.

But for the *Christian* Faith, it was first preaced here by some of the dispersed Brethren, (which fled from the rage of Persecution in *Phœnicie*) and the City of *Antiochia*, amongst whom *St. Peter*, as he passed through all quarters, *Acts* 9. 31. is by the Fathers said to have been the chief. The Church more fully planted in it by *Barnabas* first, after by *Paul* and *Barnabas* jointly; who spending there a whole year together, enlarged the Borders of the Church, and gained much People, as is said, *Acts* 11. 19, &c. infomuch, that here the Disciples were first called *Christians*, ver. 26. Not call'd so accidentally, as a thing of chance, but on a serious consultation amongst themselves, and a devout invocation on the Name of God, to direct them in it. The word *Κηρυχίσαι* used in the Original, importeth somewhat of Oracular and Divine direction. And certainly it standeth with reason that it should be so. For if upon the giving of a name to *John Baptist*, there was not only a consultation had of the Friends and Mother, but the dumb Father call'd to advise about it; and if we use not to admit the poorest Child of the Parish into the Congregation of Christ's Church by the door of *Baptism*, but by the joint invocation of the Name of God for his blessing on it: with how much more regard of Ceremony and Solemnity, must we conceive that the whole Body of Christ's People were baptized into the name of *Christians*? And there is some proof of it too, besides probability and conjectures. For *Suidas*, and before him *Johannes Antiochenus*, an old *Cosmographer*, do expressly say, that in the days of *Claudius Cæsar*, ten years after the *Ascension* of our Lord and Saviour, *Euodius* received Episcopal consecration, and was made Patriarch of *Antioch* the Great in *Syria*, succeeding immediately to *St. Peter*: then addeth, that at that time the Disciples were first call'd *Christians*. Τὸ αὐτὸ Ἐπισκόπος Ἐυοδῖος χειροτονήσας αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἐπηθήσας αὐτοῖς τὸ ὄνομα τῆτο, &c. i. e. *Euodius* their Bishop, calling them to a Solemn Assembly, and imposing this new Name upon them, whereas before they were call'd *Nazarites* and *Galileans*. A People so hated by the Heathen, that they ceased not to slander them from the first beginning. For as concerning this Sect we know that it is every where spoken against, said the Jews of Rome to the Apostle, *Acts* 28. 22. *Tacitus*, a Roman, but a Gentle, goes yet further with them, calling them *Homines per flagitia invidios*, & novissima meritos exempla: The Calumny in his time being strong and general, that at their private meetings they devoured Infants, and had carnal company with their Mothers and Sisters. Which defamations notwithstanding, they grew in few years to so great numbers, that they were a terror to their Enemies; though grievously afflicted, tortured, and put to several kinds of Death, under the ten famous Persecutions, raised against them, by *Nero*, An. 67. 2. *Domitian*, An. 96. 3. *Trajanus*, An. 110. 4. *Marcus Antoninus*, An. 167. 5. *Severus*, An. 195. 6. *Maximinus*, An. 237. 7. *Decius*, An. 250. 8. *Valerianus*, An. 259. 9. *Aurelianus*, An. 278. 10. By *Dioclesianus*, An. 293. All, but this last especially, so extremely raging, that (as *St. Hierom* writeth in one of his Epistles) there was martyr'd 5000 for each day in the Year, except the first of *January*, on which they used not to shed Blood. But *Sanguis Martyrum, Semen Ecclesiæ*. This little grain of Mustard-seed, sowed by God's own hand, and watered by the Blood of so many holy Men, grew so great a Tree, that the branches of it spread themselves over all the World; and got such footing even in the *Roman* Army it self, (Men commonly not of the strictest kind of Religion) that when *Julian* the Apostate, had vomited out his Soul, with *Picisti tandem Galilee*, they elected *Jovianum*, though a *Christian*, for his Successor, with this Acclamation, *Christiani omnes sumus*, We are also *Christians*. But see how the baptizing

baptizing of God's People by the name of *Christians* in the City of *Antioch*, hath drawn me out of my way; I return again, both to the place, and to the Author. In whose Evidence, besides what doth concern the imposition of the name of *Christian* upon the body of the Faithful, we have a testimony for St. *Peter's* being Bishop of *Antioch*, the first Bishop thereof, (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at least) as is said positively by *Eusebius* in his *Chronology*, St. *Ilicron* in his Catalogue of Ecclesiastical Writers, St. *Chrysostom* in his *Homilie de translatione Ignatii*, *Theodoret* *Dialog.* 1. St. *Gregory* *Epist. lib. 6. cap. 37.* and before any of them by *Origen*, in his sixth *Homily* on St. *Luke*. With reference whereunto, and in respect that *Antioch* was accounted always the principal City of the East parts of the *Roman* Empire, (the *Præfect* of the East for the most part residing in it) the Bishop hereof in the first Ages of Christianity, had jurisdiction over all the Churches in the East, as far as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by *Constantine the Great*, the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Isauria*, with those of *Mesopotamia* and *Ostroene* were after added, containing 15 *Roman* Provinces, or the whole *Dioecese* of the Orient. And though by the subtracting of the Churches of *Palestine*, and the decay of Christianity in these parts by the Conquests of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, the jurisdiction of this Patriarch hath been very much lessened; yet *William* of *Tyre*, who flourished in the Year 1130, reciteth the names of 13 *Archiepiscopal*, 21 *Metropolitanal*, and 127 *Episcopal* Sees, yielding Obedience in his time to the See of *Antioch*. Since which that number is much diminished, *Mahometism* more and more increasing, and Christianity divided into Sects and Factions; insomuch, that of three sorts of Christians living in these Countries, viz. The *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and the *Melchites*, only the *Melchites* are subordinate to the Church of *Antioch*, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And first for the *Melchites*, who are indeed the true and proper Members of the Church of *Antioch*, and the greatest body of *Christians* in all the East; they are so named in way of scorn, by the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* *Schismaticks*, separating without just cause from their Communion. The name derived from *Melch*, signifying in the *Syriack* Language a King or Emperor; because adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and Decisions of preceding Councils, ratified by Authority of the Emperor *Leo*, by whom subscription was required to the Acts thereof; and were in that respect (as we use to say) of the Kings Religion. Conform in points of Doctrine to the Church of *Greece*, but that they celebrate Divine Service as solemnly on the *Saturday*, as upon the *Sunday*. Subject to the true and Original Patriarch, who, since the destruction of *Antioch*, doth reside in *Damascus*; and on no terms acknowledging the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*.

Next for the *Maronites*, they derive that name, either from *Marona*, one of the principal Villages where they first inhabited; or from the Monastery of St. *Maron*, mention'd in the first Act of the Council of *Constantinople* holden under *Menas*, the Monks of which call'd *Maronites*; were the head of their Sect. Some Points they hold, in which they differ from all *Orthodox Christians*; others in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*. Of the first sort, 1. That the *Holy Ghost* proceedeth from the Father only, without relation to the Son. 2. That the Souls of Men were created all together at the first beginning. 3. That Male-Children are not to be baptized together, but at several times by one and one. 4. That *Hereticks* returning to the Church are to be re-baptized. 5. That the Child is made unclean by the touch of his Mother, till her *Purification*; and therefore not baptizing Children till that time be past, which after the Birth of a Male-Child must be forty days; of a Female eighty. 6. That the *Eucharist* is to be given to Children presently after *Baptism*. 7. That the fourth

Marriage is utterly unlawful. 8. That the Father may dissolve the Marriage of his Son, or Daughter. 9. That young men are not to be ordained *Deacons* or *Presbyters*, except they be married. 10. That nothing strangled, or of Blood may be eaten by *Christians*. 11. That Women in their monthly Courses are not to be admitted to the *Eucharist*, or to come into the Church. 12. And finally, (which was indeed their first discrimination from the *Orthodox Christians*) that there was but one Will and Action in *Christ*; the Factors of which Opinion had the name of *Monothelites*. Of the last kind, 1. That the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper was to be administered in both kinds. 2. And leavened Bread. 3. That Bread to be broken to the Communicants, (and not each Man to have his Wafer to himself) according to the first Institution. 4. Not reserving that Sacrament. 5. Nor carrying any part of the consecrated Elements to sick persons in danger of death. 6. That Marriage is nothing inferior to the single life. 7. That Christ entereth the Kingdom of Heaven till the General Judgment. 8. That the *Saturday*, or old *Sabbath* is not to be altered. 9. Nor the Sacrament upon days of Fasting to be administered till the Evening. They withdrew themselves from the See of *Antioch*, and set up a Patriarch of their own many Ages since, (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schism, the honourable Title of the Patriarch of *Antioch*. His name perpetually to be *Peter*, as the undoubted Successor of that Apostle in the See thereof, dispersed about the spurs and branches of Mount *Libanus*, where they have many Townships and scattered Villages, of which four are reported to retain in their common speech the true ancient *Syriack*; that is to say, 1. *Eden*, a small Village, but a Bishop's See, by the *Turks* call'd *Echira*. 2. *Hutchteth*. 3. *Sherry*. 4. *Bolosa*, or *Blousa*, little superior to the rest in bigness, or beauty, but made the seat of their Patriarch, when he comes amongst them. At such time as the Western Christians were possessed of these parts, they submitted to the Church of *Rome*; but upon their expulsion by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, they returned again to the Obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever since depended. His Residence for the most part at *Tripolis*, a chief Town of *Syria*; but when he came to visit his Churches, and take an account of his suffragan Bishops (who are nine in number) then at *Blousa*, as is said before. Won to the Papacy again by *John Baptist*, a *Jesuit*, in the time of Pope *Gregory* the Thirteenth, who sent them a Catechism from *Rome*, Printed in the *Arabian* Language, (which is generally spoken by them) for their instruction in the Rudiments of that Religion; yet so that their Patriarch still retains his former Power, and the Priests still officiate by the old Liturgies of those Churches, in the *Syriack* Tongue. So that this reconciliation upon the matter, is but a matter of Compliment on the one side, and Ostentation on the other; without any increase of Power, or Patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the *Jacobites*, though dispersed in many places of this Country; yet since they are more intirely settled in *Mesopotamia*, where their Patriarch also hath his Abode, or Residence, we shall there speak of them.

The Language vulgarly here spoken is the *Arabick* Tongue, continued here ever since the subjugation of these Countries by the *Saracens*. But anciently they spake the *Syrian* and *Phœnician* Languages. Of which; the first (for of the other we shall speak when we come to *Phœnicia*) was the very same with the *Chaldean*, (as the learned *Brerewood* hath observed) either originally so, or else received by them when first conquered by the *Babylonians*. In which respect the *Jews*, when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the Language which they brought with them, the name of *Syriack*, being a compound of the *Hebrew* and *Chaldean* Tongues; *Chaldean* for a great part of it, as to the substance

substance of the Words: But *Hebrew* as to the notation of Points, & conjugations, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original Speech. And of this more hereafter also, when we come to *Palestine*. But whatsoever their Language was in former time, it is now so overtopped by the *Arabick*, that it is spoken in four Villages of the *Maronites* only in all these Countries; the *Arabick* being generally used in all the rest, as was said before.

Principal Rivers of these parts are 1. *Chorfaus*, call'd *Chiron* by the *Hebrews*, which hath its Fountain in *Palestine*, but it falls in *Phœnicia*, not far from Mount *Carmel*. 2. *Orontes*, now call'd *Saldino*, and by some Writers *Jordan* the less, ariseth out of the Hills call'd *Pieria*, not far from Mount *Libanus*; and after a while running under the ground, breaketh forth again about *Aparnia*, and passing by the great City of *Antioch*, falleth into the Sea not far from it. It was first call'd *Tiphon*, and took this name from one *Orontes*, who built first the Bridge over it, as we find in *Strabo*. 3. *Elutherus*, which riseth out of some part of *Libanus*, and glided with a speedy course thorow a strangely intricate Channel into the *Mediterranean* Sea: Guilty of the death of the Emperor *Fredrick Barbarasso*, who falling from his Horse as he pursued the *Infidels*, and oppressed with the weight of his Armour, was here drowned, and lieth buried at *Tyre*. It is now call'd *Casmer*. 4. *Singas*, by whom said to be call'd *Marsus* also, which arising in the mountainous parts of *Comagena*, and passing by the City of *Seleppo*, falleth into *Euphrates*. 5. *Euphrates*, the most famous River of the East; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1. *Carmel*, which being properly of *Phœnicia*, we shall there speak of it. 2. *Pieria*, out of which the River *Orontes* hath its first Original. 3. *Casius*, not far from *Antioch*, said to be four Miles high perpendicularly. 4. *Libanus*, famous for its multitude of *Cedars* growing thereupon; affording materials unto *Solomon* for the holy Temple. Besides which it affordeth such store of *Frankincense*, that some derived the name from *Algar*, signifying *Frankincense* in the *Greek*; and so replenished with Honey falling from the Heavens, and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees, that the Husbandmen used to sing (as *Galen* telleth us) that *God rained Honey*; and yearly filled their Pots and Vessels with the sweets thereof. This the most famous and greatest Hill of all these parts, extending in length 150 Miles; that is to say, from *Sidon*, a City of *Phœnicia*, to *Smirna*, one of the Cities of *Cælo-Syria*; and taking seven hundred Miles in compass. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the *Maronite* Christians, who to keep that Dwelling to themselves, without the intermixture of *Mahometans*, do yearly pay to the Great Turk, seventeen *Sultanies* a Man, for every one above twelve years of Age; each *Sultany* being reckoned at seven Shillings and Six-pence of our Money. And yet those *Maronites*, though intire, without intermixture, are held to be the smallest *Sect*, for numbers, in all the East; not estimated to exceed twelve thousand Households, by reason of the indisposition of this Mountain, in most places unfit for Habitation. For besides the cragginess and steepness of it, which makes many parts hereof to be inaccessible; the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with Snow, not melted in so hot a Climate at the nearest approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this Name; the word *Leban*, in the *Hebrew* and *Phœnician* Language, signifying *White*, or *Whiteness*; even as from the like whiteness of Snow, the highest part of the *Tyrenian* Hills had the name of *Canus*; and that perpetual Ridge of Mountains, which parts *Italy* from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. *Janfontus* saith it is the highest Mountain in *Palestine*, the Northern boundary of which it is; and may be seen at the distance of 40 Miles. It produceth *Frankincense*, and a precious Drug call'd *Sattar* by the Inhabitants, and by us *Manna*; out of it springs the *Chrysorrhoas*, *Jordan*,

Elutherus, *Leon*, *Lycus*, and the River *Adonis*. It is a fruitful pleasant Mountain, covered with *Cedars*, *Cypresses*, *Pines*, *Olives*, *Box*, and *Furze*, and under them with Aromatick and Medicinal Herbs, full of all sorts of ravenous wild Beasts, and no less replenished with pleasant and musical Birds. It is now inhabited by *Syrians*, *Armenians*, *Greeks*, *Jacobites*, *Georgians*, *Maronites*, and *Nestorians*. 5. *Anti-Libanus*, opposite to the former, and for that so call'd, a rich, but little Valley only being interposed; out of which Valley the *Orontes* hath its Spring, or Fountain, the Hill *Pieria* there beginning to advance it self. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges, or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South, being but a branch or excursion of it, call'd *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives some hint, in which both pass for one, by the name of *Lebanon*.

The whole Country was anciently divided into these six parts, viz. 1. *Phœnicia*. 2. *Palestine*. 3. *Syria* specially so call'd. 4. *Comagena*. 5. *Palmyrene*; and 6. *Cælo-Syria*, or *Syria Cæva*. But *Palestine* coming under a more distinct consideration, we shall now speak only of the rest.

I. P H O E N I C I A.

Phœnicia is bounded on the East and South, with *Palestine*; on the North with *Syria* properly and specially so call'd; on the West with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So call'd by the *Grecians*, from the abundance of *Palm-Trees* therein growing, the word *Phœnix* in that Language signifying a *Palm*. And for a farther proof hereof, (for I know there are other *Etymons* and Originations pretended for it) the *Palm* was anciently the special Cognisance, or Ensign of this Country; as the *Olive-branch*, and *Cony* of *Spain*, the *Elephant* of *Africk*, the *Camel* of *Arabia*, and the *Crocodile* of *Egypt*, being peculiar to those Countries. And in an old Coin of the Emperor *Vespasian's*, stamped for a memorial of his conquest of *Judæa*, the Impress is a Woman sitting in a sad and melancholick posture, at the back of a *Palm-Tree*, with these two words, *Judæa Capta*, inscribed thereon; in which, no question may be made, but that the desolate Woman signifieth the Land of *Judæa*, and the *Palm Phœnicia*; *Phœnicia* being seated immediately on the North, at the back of *Jewry*.

But it was thus first call'd by the *Grecians* only, the *Latins* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themselves, and the People of *Israel* their next Neighbours, they are call'd *Canaanites*, or the Posterity of *Canaan*, five of whose Sons, viz. *Zidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Senari*, and *Chamathi*, were planted here; the other six inhabiting more towards the South and East, in the Land of *Palestine*. For further evidence hereof we may add these Reasons: First, that the same Woman which in *St. Matthew's Gospel*, Chap. 15. 22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by *St. Mark*, Chap. 7. 26, call'd a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, Where mention is made in the Book of *Joshua*, of the Kings of *Canaan*; the *Septuagint* (who very well understood the History and Language of their Country) call them βασιλεῖς τῶν φοινίκων, or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, The *Pawni*, or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all dispute a *Tyrian*, or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their Original, would answer that they were *Channici*; meaning, (as *St. Augustine*, that Countryman, doth expound their words) that they were originally *Canaanites*, of the stock of *Canaan*. And lastly, From the Language of it, which anciently was the old *Hebrew*, *Canaanitish*, or the Language of *Canaan*; spoken both here, and in *Palestine* also, before that Country was possessed by the House of *Jacob*; as appears plainly by those names by which the places and Cities of *Canaan* were call'd, when, and before the *Israelites* came first to dwell amongst them,

them, which are meerly *Hebrew*. And so much, as unto the Language is acknowledged by *Bochartus* also, who in the entrance of his Book inscribed *Chanaan*, declares what profit may ensue from that undertaking to the *Hebrew* Tongue; *Cassius* Phœnicia linguæ dialecta fuit, of which the *Phœnician* Language was a *Dialect* only.

The Country of it self not great, extended in a good length, from the further side of Mount *Carmel*, where it joyns with *Palestine*, to the River *Kolanus* on the North, by which parted from *Syria*: But withal so narrow, that it is little more than a bare Sea-Coast, and therefore very rightly call'd *Terrarum angustissima*, by a modern Writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increase of Trade, (to which no Nation under Heaven hath been more addicted) than by the natural Commodities which the Land afforded; yet for the quantity thereof, no place could be more plentifully furnished with Oyl, Wheat, and the best sort of *Balm*, and most excellent Honey; the lower part hereof being designed for the seat of *Asher*, of whom *Moses* prophesied, *Deut.* 33. 24. that he should dip his foot in Oyl. So that the Country generally, was well-condition'd, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautiful Cities, than such a span of Earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammianus*, *Acclivis monti Libano Phœnicia Regio, plena gratiarum & venustatis, urbibus decorata magnis & pulchris, &c.* i. e. Falling from Mount *Libanus*, lyeth the Country of *Phœnicia*, full of all Graces and Elegancies, adorned with great and beautiful Cities, of which the most renowned for the fertility of their Soil, and the fame of their Atchievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, &c.

The People anciently, by reason of their *Maritime* situation, were great *adventurers* at Sea, trading in almost all the Ports of the then known World, and sending more Colonies abroad upon foreign *Plantations*, than any Nations in the Earth. An active and ingenuous People, said to have been the first *Navigators*, the first builders of Ships, the first inventors of Letters, (of which hereafter more on some other occasion) and the first Authors of *Arithmetick*, the first that brought *Astronomy* to an Art or Method, and the first makers of Glass. De-famed in holy Scripture for their gross *Idolatries*, by which they laid a Stumbling-block at the Feet of the *Israelites*; *Astarte* (or *Astarte*) the Goddess of the *Sidonians* (but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or some other, I dispute not here) being so highly prized amongst them, that *Solomon* himself, when he fell from God, made this one of his *Idols*. Once yearly, as *Eusebius* telleth us, they sacrificed some of their Sons to *Saturn*, whom in their Language they call'd *Moloch*: And in the inmost retreats of *Libanus* had a Temple to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of most filthy Lusts, intemperately using the natural Sex, and most unnaturally abusing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the *Christian* Faith prevail so far, as to extinguish these ungodly Rites, till *Constantine* finally destroyed both the Temples and *Idols*, and left not any thing remaining of them, but the shame and infamy. *St. Austin* addeth, that they did prostitute their Daughters unto *Venus* before they married them; and it is most likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cyprians* being so near Neighbours, and subject for a time to the same Princes also, could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another.

Rivers of note there can be none in so narrow a Region but what are common unto others, and shall there be spoken of. Most proper unto this is the River of *Adonis*, (now call'd *Camus*), so named most probably from *Adonis*, the Darling of *Venus*, whose Rites are here performed with as much solemnity, as they be in *Cyprus*. His Obsequies celebrated yearly in the month of *June*, with great howlings and lamentations, *Lactantius* fabling that the River usually streameth Blood upon that Solemnity; (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*), to give the better colour to their Superstitions. But the truth is, that this *rehearsal* of the

water ariseth only from the Winds; which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, do thereby carry down the Stream a great quantity of *Minium*, or red Earth, from the sides of those Hills, wherewith the waters are discoloured. Such use can *Satan* make of a natural Accident, to blind the Eyes, and captivate the Understandings of besotted People.

Chief Mountains of this Country are, 1. *Libanus*, spoken of before, which hath here its first advance, or rising. 2. *Carmel*, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Country, of which it is the utmost part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Palestine*. Washed on the North-side with the Brook *Chalon*, on the West with the *Mediterranean* Sea; steep of Ascent, and of indifferent Altitude; abounding with several sorts of Fruits, Olives, and Vines in good plenty, and stored with Herbs both Medicinable, and sweet of smell. The Retreat sometimes of *Elias* when he fled from *Jezabel*; whose Habitation here, after his decease, was converted to a *Jewish* Synagogue. To this place (being then in the possession of the Kings of *Israel*) did that Prophet assemble the Priests of *Baal*; and having by a miraculous Experiment confuted their *Idolatrous* Follies, caused them to be cut in pieces on the Banks of the River *Chalon* near adjoining to it. Upon this visible declaring of the Power and Presence of the Almighty, the *Gentiles* grew persuaded that Oracles were there given by God, by *Suetonius* call'd the God *Carmelus*. Where speaking of *Vespasian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperial Dignity, he addeth, *Apud Judæam, Carmeli Dei Oracula conspiciuntur ita confirmare sortes, &c.* That consulting in *Judæa* with the Oracle of the God *Carmelus*, he was assured that whatsoever he undertook should succeed well with him. In after-times the Order of the *Friars Carmelites*, as Successors unto the Children of the Prophets left here by *Elijah*, had their names from hence: The Ruins of whose Monastery are still to be seen, with a Temple dedicated to the Blessed *Virgin*; and under that a Cave, or Chappel, said to have been the lurking place of that holy Prophet, in the time of his troubles.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Ptolomais*, now nothing but a ruin of what it hath been, but formerly of great Strength and Consequence. Named *Acre* at the first, a Refuge for the *Persian* Kings in their Wars against *Egypt*. Enlarged, or rather new built by *Ptolomy*, the first of that Race, by whom call'd *Ptolomais*, which name still continued, though *Claudius Cæsar* planting there a *Roman* Colony, would fain have had it call'd *Colonia Claudia*. After the Conquest of it by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Omar* the great Caliph, it returned towards its first name, and was call'd *Acon*, or *Acre*; both names still remaining in vulgar Speech, as that of *Ptolomais* amongst *Latin* Writers. Situate in the flourish of it on a flat, or level in form of a triangular Shield; on two sides neighboured by the Sea, which comes up close to it; on the third looking towards the *Champaign*: environed with a double Wall, to each Wall a Ditch, fortified on the outside with Towers and Bulwarks, within the Walls so strongly housed, as if the whole Town had been a Conjunction of Fortresses, and not ordained for private Dwellings. In the midst of the City was one Tower of great Strength and Beauty, which had sometimes been the Temple of *Bezebut*, and was therefore call'd the Castle of *Phes*; on the top whereof was maintain'd a perpetual Light, like the *Pharos* of *Egypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to such Mariners as made towards this Port. Took from the *Christians* by the *Saracens* in the time of *Omer*, and from them wrested by the *Turks* with the rest of *Syria*. It became *Christian* again, Anno 1094, in the Reign of *Baldwin* the first, Brother of the Famous *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and second King of *Hierusalem*, by the help of the *Genoese*; who for their pains had the third part of the City assigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladine* to the *Turks*, in 1187, and from him taken again by the *Western Christians*, under the conduct

conduct of *Philip of France*, and *Richard the First of England*, An. 1191, it continued in the possession of the Kings of *Hierusalem*, notably defended by the *Hospitallers* (now Knights of *Malta*) till the year 1291. When besieged by an Army of an hundred and fifty thousand *Turks*, it was forced to yield, though lost by Inches; and the *Turks* fearing lest the *Christians* would again attempt it, razed it to the ground, demolishing the large Walls and Arches of it, which lie like massy Rocks on their old Foundations. Memorable in those times for the brave Service here done by the *Christians* of the Western parts, of which none more renowned than those of our *Richard the First*, and *Edward the First*. This latter here treacherously wounded by an Infidel, with a poisoned Knife, the Venom whereof could by no means be asswaged, till his most vertuous Wife (herein proposing a most rare Example of conjugal Affection) sucked it out with her Mouth. And for the former, he became so terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that when their Children began to cry, they would say *Peace, King Richard, is coming*; and when their Horses started, they would spur them, saying, *What you fades, do you think that King Richard is here?* By the *Mammalucks*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for Habitation rather than Defence; not peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have so many, but for the Haven adjoining; which though a small Bay, and of very ill Anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Western World, trading here for their Cotten Wools, with which the neighbouring Country is abundantly furnished. I have staid the longer in this place, by reason of the great Fame and Importance of it, as being the last Hold which the *Christians* had of all their Conquests; with the loss whereof, they laid aside all thoughts of those *Holy Wars*. 2. *Tyre*, seated in a rocky Island, about seventy paces from the main Land; well built, and circular of Form, as well by Art as Nature impreguably fortified. A Colony of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Isa.* Chap. 23. ver. 12. call'd the *Daughter of Sidon*; but by them built upon an high Hill, the Ruins whereof, by the name of *Palatyrus*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining still. Removed unto the Islands by *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, and by him named *Sor*, or *Tzor*, from the rocky situation of it, (as that word importeth.) Molli- fied by the *Greeks* to *Tyrus*, and from them taken by the *Latins*, though known to them also by the name of *Sara*, (the *Tyrtan Purple* being by *Virgil*, and some others of the ancient Poets, call'd *Sarrarum Ostrum*) and now at last returned to its first original Name, vulgarly at this day call'd *Sar*. *Josaphus* in the 8 Lib. of the *Ant.* c. 2. saith *Tyre* was built 2400 years before *Solomon's* Temple, which is to be understood of the second *Tyre* built in the Sea; which last *Petavius* parallels with the year of the *Juban* Period 3702, *An. Mundi* 2938; so that *Tyre* was built in 2698, in the times of *Gideon*. A City in elder times of great Trade and Wealth; the Prophet *Isa.* Chap. 27. ver. 8. calling the Merchants hereof *Princes*, and her Chapmen the *Nobles of the World*. Excelling all others of those times both for Learning and Manufactures, specially for the dying of *Purple*, first here invented; and that as *Julius Pollux* said, by a very accident; the Dog of *Hercules* (or if not his, some Dog or other) whose Lips by eating of the Fish call'd *Conchylis*, or *Purpura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reason of the Wealth and Pleasures, her destruction was fore-signify'd by the holy Prophets, accomplished in God's own time by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who with great Industry and Toil joyn'd it to the Continent. But his Works being demolished by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrtans*, it was after seventy years again re-edified; and having flourished after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander the Great* was again demolished, to whose indefatigable perseverance nothing was impossible. For having filled the

Channel with the Stones and Rubbish of old *Tyre*, and rammed them in with huge Beams brought from *Libanus*, he made a passage for his Army; and having once approached the Walls, so over-topped them with Towers and Frames of Timber, that at last he made himself Master of it, putting to the Sword all such as resisted, and causing two thousand of them to be hanged in cold Blood, all along the Shore, for a terror to others. This Rendition of the Town was divined by the *Southsayers*, who followed the Camp of *Alexander*, upon a Dream which he had not long before: For dreaming that he had disported himself with *Satyrs*, the Diviners only making of one word two, found that *Σατυρ* was no more than *Σατυρ* that is, *Tus Tyrus*; and it happened accordingly. Recovering once again both her Riches and Beauties, she became a Confederate of the *Romans* in the growth of their Fortunes; endowed by them with the Privileges of their City, for her great Fidelity. Made in the best times of *Christianity* the *Metropolitan* See for the Province of *Phœnicia*, the Bishop hereof having under him fourteen Suffragan Bishops. Subjected to the *Saracens* in the year Six hundred and thirty six, and having groaned under that yoke for the space of four hundred eighty and eight years, was at the last regained by *Guarimund*, Patriarch of *Hierusalem*, in the Reign of the second *Baldwin*, the *Venetians* contributing their assistance to it, An. 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious *Saladine* in 1187; but finally brought under the *Turkish* Thralldom, An. 1289, (or as others say in 1292.) as it still continueth. Now nothing but an heap of Ruins; but the very Ruins of it of so fair a Prospect, as striketh both Pity and Amazement into the Beholders, shewing them an exemplary Pattern of our human Frailty. Subject at the present to the *Emir*, or Prince of *Sidon*, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the best of the *Levant*, but of no great trading. 3. *Sarepta*, by the *Hebrews* call'd *Sarphatb*, situate on the Sea-Coast betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*. Memorable in Holy Writ for the Miracle here performed by the Prophet *Elijah*, in raising the poor Widow's Son; in Heathen Writers for the purest Wines, little inferior unto those of *Falernum* in *Italy*, or *Chios* in *Greece*: Of which, thus the Poet,

*Vina mihi non sunt Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,
Quæque Sareptano palmite missa bibas.*

In English thus:

I have no *Chian* or *Falernian* Wines,
Nor those of *Gazas*, or *Sareptas* Vines.

4. *Sidon*, the ancientest City of all *Phœnicia*, and the most Northern of all those which were assigned for the Portion of the Sons of *Asser*; beyond which the Country of *Phœnicia* having been hitherto nothing but a bare Sea-Coast, beginneth to open towards the East in a fine rich Valley, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South; once closed up from the rest of *Syria* with a very strong Wall, long since demolished. It was so call'd from *Zidon*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who first planted here; not (as some say) from *Sida* the Daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof; this City being mention'd in the Book of *Joshua*, when no such *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightful Soil, defended with the Sea on one side, and on the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it and *Libanus*, from whence descended those many Springs with which they watered and enriched their most pleasant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are said to be the first makers of *Crystall Glass*, the Materials of the Work brought hither from the Sands of a River running not far from *Ptolemais*, and only made subtle in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zerobabel* had their principal Workmen, both for Stone and Timber, in their several

several Buildings of the Temple. The People hereof so flourishing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zachariah*, chap. 9. v. 2. calleth them *the Wise Sidonians*. A City which at several times was both the Mother and Daughter of *Tyre*; the Mother of it in the times of *Heathenism*, *Tyre* being a Colony of this People; and the Daughter of it when instructed in the *Christian* Faith, acknowledging the Church of *Tyre* for its Mother Church. This City was taken by the *Saracens* in the Year of *Christ* 636, by the *Western Christians* under *Baldwin* in the Year 1103, rebuilt by *St. Lewis* King of *France* in 1250, and finally retaken by the *Saracens* in 1289. The City in those times very strong both by Art and Nature, having on the North-side a Fort or Citadel mounted on an inaccessible Rock, and environed on all sides by the Sea; which when it was brought under the command of the *Western Christians*, was held by the Order of the *Dutch Knights*; and another on the South-side of the Port, which the *Templars* guarded. Won by the *Turks*, with the rest of this Country, from the *Christians*, and ruined by those often interchanges of Fortune, it only sheweth now some marks of the Ancient greatness; the present *Sidon* standing somewhat West of the old, and having little worth a particular description, in respect of what it was in her Ancient Glories. The Haven at this time decayed, or serving at the best for Gallies; with a poor Blockhouse, rather for shew than service: the Walls of no greater strength, and as little beauty, and the Buildings ordinary; but that the *Mosque*, the *Bannia* of Bathes, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are somewhat fairer than the rest: yet gives a Title at this time to the *Emir* of *Sidon*, one of the greatest Princes of all this Country, of whom more hereafter. 5. *Berytus*, originally called *Geris*, from *Gergeshi*, the fifth Son of *Canaan*, took this new Name from *Berith*, a *Phœnician* Idol herein worshipped; and now called *Barutti*. Destroyed by *Tryphon* in the Wars of the *Syrians* against the *Jews*, it was re-edified by the *Romans*, by whom made a Colony, and honoured with the Name of *Julia Felix*, *Augustus* giving it the Privileges of the City of *Rome*. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the *Jews*, much adorned and beautified: and of no mean esteem in the time of the *Christians*, when made an Episcopal See under the *Metropolitan* of *Tyre*. Being a Place of no great strength, nor aimed at by every new Invader, it hath sped better than the rest of these Cities (though stronger than this) retaining still her being, though not all her beauties; well stored with Merchandize, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitful Valley, which they call *St. George's*, in which there is a Castle, and in that an Oratory of the same Name also: All sacred to *St. George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the Dragon, and thereby delivered a King's Daughter; but what King's I know not, nor they neither. 6. *Biblis* sometimes the Habitation of *Hevi*, the fourth Son of *Canaan*, and thence called *Hevea*. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyras*, Father and Grandfather of *Adonis* by his Daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already spoken when we were in *Cyprus*. Of such esteem in the Primitive Times of Christianity, that it was made a Bishop's See; desolate and of no repute since it lost that Honour, and became thrall unto the *Turks*. 7. *Ortobesia*, called also *Antaradus*, because opposite to *Aradus*, another old City of this Tract; but in After-Ages called *Tortosa*, and by that Name well known in the Histories of the Holy Wars, undertaken by the *Western Christians*: To whom it made such stout and notable resistance, that though besieged on all sides with united Forces (the whole Army formerly divided, sitting down before it) yet after Three Months hard siege, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themselves with spoiling the adjoining Country. 8. *Tripolis*, seated in a rich and delightful

Plain, more fruitful than can be imagined; one of which Fruits they call by the Name of *Ammuzza Francô*, i.e. *Kill Frank*, because the *Western Christians* whom they call by the Name of *Franks*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is said to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripolis* no less than 200000 Crowns. As for the Town it standeth about two Miles from the Sea, at the Foot of Mount *Libanus*; so called because built by the joint Purse of three Cities; that is to say, *Tyrus*, *Sydon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the *Romans*, for ought I can find, till made one of the Episcopal Sees, belonging to the Archbishop of *Tyre* in the Primitive Times. But thriving by degrees, it grew to principal account by the time that the *Western Christians* warred in the *Holy Land*: When conquer'd by them, it was made one of the Tetrarchies, or Capital Cities for the four Quarters of their Empire, which were *Jerusalem* for *Palestine*, *Edessa* for *Comagena*, or *Mejopotamia*; *Antioch* for *Syria*, and this for *Phœnicia*. Committed at the first taking of it, to the custody of *Raymond* Earl of *Tbolouse* in *France*; whose Posterity, whilst it lasted, had from hence the Title of Earls of *Tripolis*. A City, which I know not by what good hap, hath sped better than any of those parts, retaining still as much in strength and beauty as ever it had, if not grown greater by the ruin of all the rest. Situate two Miles from the Sea, as before is said; but not above half a Mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the West side of it: Compassed with a Wall, and fortified with seven Towers, of which the Fourth is commonly call'd the Tower of *Love*, because built by an *Italian* Merchant, who was found in Bed with a *Turkish* Woman, for which he had forfeited his Life, if not thus redeemed it. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbouring Bank of Sand, which every day groweth greater and nearer to it; by which in time there is a Prophecy which saith, *It shall be quite choaked*: On both sides of it many Storehouses for the Merchant to stow his Goods in, and Shops to sell them: the way from hence unto the City, having on both sides very pleasant Gardens, more curiously kept, than usually amongst the *Turks*. The Town itself stretched out in length from South to North, is situate, as before was said, at the foot of *Libanus*, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many pleasant Springs into the Chief of their Gardens: in which, and in those towards the Haven, and on other sides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great store of Silkworms, selling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in the Stuff or Manufacture. Their Buildings generally low, and the Streets but narrow, except that leading towards *Aleppo*, which is fair and open. Over the Brook, at the East-side of the City, are built two Bridges; and on the South-side a strong Castle mounted on an Hill, built by the *French* when they had the custody hereof: now Garrisoned for the *Grand Signior* with two hundred *Janizaries*. At this time it is looked on as the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Phœnicia*, honoured with the residence of the Patriarch of the *Maronites*, for the most part dwelling in this Town, and enriched with a great part of the Trade of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandretta*, removed hither some forty Years ago by the *Turks* appointment; that Haven lying unfenced, and more open to Pirates.

That the *Phœnicians* were descended of the Sons of *Canaan*, hath been proved already. And being descendants of that Stock, they were at the first governed like them, by the Chiefs of their Families, whom they honoured (as most Nations did) with the Title of Kings. But most of the *Canaanitish* Kings being overcome and slain by *Jeshua*, *Agenor* a stout and prudent man, one of those many Kings, which commanded in those parts of the Country, seeing how impossible it was to resist that Enemy, borrowed some Aid from *Egypt*, where he had his Breeding, to make good the

M m m m

Sea Coasts

Sea-Coasts of his Country ; in which the *Philistims*, who interposed upon those Coasts betwixt him and *Egypt*, concurred also with him. By which assistance, and by the fortifying of *Sydon*, *Tyre*, and *Ace* (or *Ptolemais*) which were all the Cities of this Country that were then in being, he did not only preserve his own Estate from the present danger, but left it so assured to the Kings succeeding, that neither *Solomon*, nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Israel*, durst attempt upon them. To *Agenor* succeeded his Son *Phœnix*, (*Cadmus*, his Elder Brother, going into *Greece* in search of his Sister *Europa*, ravished by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his Death) from whom, as some conceive, this Country had the Name of *Phœnicia*. And though I have declared my self for another reason of this Name, which I like much better, yet I shall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bochartus*, who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*, (as if the old *Phœnicians* were such Giantly men) which must first be contracted in *Beanack*, then by the *Grecians* turn'd into *Pbeanac*, and at last into *Phœnix*. Such farfetch'd and extorted Originations never please my Fancy, who had much rather hearken to the old receiv'd Opinions touching the first Originals of Names and Nations, where there is not very pregnant Reason to persuade me otherwise, than strain my self so far for a new Invention, or hearken unto those that do. But for what cause soever they were named *Phœnicians*, certain it is, that they were a very active and industrious People, trading in most parts of the *Mediterranean*, and planting Colonies in many. *Thebes* and *Sephyra* in *Bœotia*, *Nola* in *Italy*, *Gades* in *Spain* ; *Utica*, *Leptis*, *Carthage* in *Africk*, were of their Foundation. Nay, if we may believe *Bochartus*, there was no Island or Sea-Coast in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cantabrian*, *Gallick*, or *British* Ocean, wherein they did not keep some Factory, or erect some Colony. What Kings succeeded *Phœnix* in a constant and continued course, I can no where find. Most like it is, they were not under the command of any one Prince ; and that besides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were some others who called themselves Kings of *Phœnicia* also, as well as they. Of which sort were *Cyniras*, *Paphus*, and *Pigmalion*, who had their Regal Seat at *Biblis*, and lorded it over a good part of *Cyprus*, as did also *Belus*, who gave some part of that Isle to *Teucer*, as is said before. There is also found mention of one *Phœsis*, a *Phœnician* King, at such time as the *Grecians* conquer'd *Troy*. After him none, till the subjugation of this Country by the *Babylonians* ; *Tetramnestes*, *Tennes*, and *Strato*, mentioned in succeeding times, being Tributaries to the *Persian*, and no absolute Princes. Whether it were that the *Phœnicians* were made subject to the Kings of *Tyre*, or that the Kings thereof did nothing to preserve their memory, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that the Kings of *Tyre* came in a short time to be of very great repute, and to possess themselves of the Coasts of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, and a great part of *Cyprus* ; whereby, and by the benefit of their Trade and Shipping, they grew rich and powerful, and of great consideration in Affairs of the World. The Names and History of whom I shall here subjoin, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of TYRE.

A. M.

- 1 *Abibalus*, as *Josephus*, *Abemalus*, as *Theophilus Antiochenus* calleth him, Co-temporary with *Samuel* ; supposed to be the same which the Son of *Syrach* mentioned, *Ecclesi.* 46. 18.
- 2 *Saron*, the Son of *Abibalus*, whom *David*, as *Eusebius* saith, compelled to pay Tribute ; complained of by that Prophet, *Psal.* 83. 7.

- 2931 3 *Hiram*, the Son of *Saron*, Confederate with *David*, to whom he sent Cedars, with Carpenters and Masons, towards his Buildings in *Jerusalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebusites* ; as he did afterwards to *Solomon* when he built the Temple ; much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles.* 53.
- 2955 4 *Baleastartus*, or *Bazorus*, succeeded *Hiram.* 7.
- 2962 5 *Abdastartus*, Son of *Baleastartus*, slain by the four Sons of his own Nurse, having reigned nine Years ; the eldest of which four did for the space of Twelve Years usurp the Kingdom.
- 2983 6 *Astartus*, Brother of *Abdastartus*, recovered the Kingdom to his House, out of the hands of the *Ujursers.* 12.
- 2995 7 *Astorinus*, or *Arborinus*, as *Theophilus* calleth him, the Younger Brother of *Astartus.* 9.
- 3004 8 *Pbelles*, the Brother of these Three Kings, and youngest Son of *Baleastartus*, reigned eight Months only.
- 3037 9 *Irbobalus*, called *Ethbaal*, 1 *King.* 16. 13. Son of *Astorinus*, slew his Uncle *Pbelles*, and so regained his Father's Throne ; before which he was the High Priest of the Goddess *Astartoth*, or *Astarta*, (a Dignity next to that of the King.) He was the Father of *Jezebel*, the Wife of *Abab*, so often mentioned in the Scripture. 32.
- 3043 10 *Badezar*, or *Bazar*, Son of *Ethbaal.* 6.
- 3052 11 *Mettimus*, by some called *Matginus*, Son of *Badezar*, and the Father of *Elisa*, whom *Virgil* celebrateth by the name of *Dido*.
- 12 *Pygmalion*, the Son of *Mettimus*, who slew *Sicheus* the Husband of his Sister *Elisa*, to get his riches, but yet was cozened of his prey : his Sister *Elisa* accompanied with her Brother *Barca* (the Founder of the Noble *Barcine* Family, of which *Annibal* was, and her Sister *Anna*, flying into *Africk* ; where she built the renowned City of *Carthage*. The Names of his Successors we find not till we come to
- 13 *Elulæus*, descended from a Son of *Pygmalion*, who overthrew the Fleet of *Salamanasser*, the *Affyrian*, in the Port of *Tyre*.
- 14 *Ethbales*, or *Ethbaal* II. who vaunted himself to be as wise as *Daniel*, and to know all secrets, as saith the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *Chap.* 28. v. 1, 2. And yet not wise enough to preserve his Kingdom from *Nabuchadonosor* ; who after a Siege of 13 years took the City of *Tyre*, and subjected it unto his Empire.
- 15 *Raal*, the Son and Successor of *Ethbaal* the Second, but a Tributary to the *Babylonians*.

After whose Death the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but were governed by Judges, or by such Titular Kings only as were sent from *Babylon*. And though *Tyre* and *Sydon* did recover breath in the Fall of the *Babylonian* Empire, and the unsettledness of the *Persian* ; yet being of the *Persian* Faction, and having dependance on that Crown, they were by *Alexander* held unworthy to continue. Who therefore deposed *Strato* the King of *Sidon*, and overthrew the City of *Tyre* ; in the taking whereof he had spent more time, than in forcing all the Cities of *Asia*.

After this time *Phœnicia* being reckoned as a part of *Syria*, followed the Fortune of the whole, subject unto the *Syrian* Kings of the House of *Salucus*, till made a Province of the *Romans* ; subject to the *Constantinopolitans* till the fatal Year 636. when subdued by the *Sarracens*.

recent. Successively conquered by the *Turks*, *Christians*, and after their expulsion by the *Turks* again, then by the *Mamelucks* of *Egypt*, and finally with the rest of *Syria*, by *Soliman* the first, united to the *Turkish* Empire. Subject at this time, or of late, to the *Emir* of the *Drusians*, (commonly called the *Emir* of *Sidon*) of which people we have spoken before. A people who in the time of *Amurat* the third, were governed by five *Emirs* or *Princes*; one of which was *Man-Ogli*, who so resolutely resisted *Ibrahim Bassa*, Anno 1585. This *Man-Ogli* then kept his Court or residence at *Andirene*, a strong place situate on a hill, and was of that wealth, that he sent to make his peace unto the above-named *Ibrahim*, 320 Arcubuses, 20 Packs of *Andirene* Silks, and 50000 Ducats. At a second time he presented him with 50000 Ducats more, 480 Arcubuses, 1000 Goats, 150 Camels, 150 Buffes, 1000 Oxen, and 200 Weathers. By these rich gifts we may not a little conjecture of the Revenue of the present *Emir* of *Sidon*; who since the year 1600. hath reduced almost all the Countries belonging once to five *Princes*, under his own Empire; containing the Towns and Territories of *Gaza*, *Barut*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Acre*, *Saffet*, (or *Tiberias*) his seat of residence, *Nazareth*, *Cana*, *Mount Tabor*, *Elkiffe*, &c. This present *Emir*, by name *Faccardine*, was not long since driven out of his Countrey by the *Turk*, and forced to fly to *Florence*: but he again recovered his own, laid siege to *Damascus*, and caused a notable Rebellion in *Asia*; not quenched in a long time after. And finally, having possessed himself of the City and Castle of *Damascus*, prepared for the taking of *Hierusalem* also; threatening to make the *Christians* once more Masters of it. This was in the year 1623. How he sped afterward, and whether his Son, as stout and valiant as himself, hath since his death succeeded him in his Estates, I am not able to say: having of late heard nothing of them.

SYRIA PROPRIA:

SYRIA PROPRIA, or *Syria* especially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Palmyrene*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Cilicia*; on the South with *Phœnicia*, and some part of *Cælo-Syria*.

This part of *Syria* I take to be the Land of *Hamath*, so often mentioned in the Scriptures, the Kingdom of *Toi* or *Tou*, next neighbour, and sworn Enemy to *Adadzer* King of *Aram-Sobab*: who hearing of the great discomfiture which *David* had given unto that King, sent his Son *Foram*, or *Adoram*, (for the Scripture calls him by both names) with Presents to him, as well to congratulate his success, as to be assured for times to come of his love and amity. So called from *Hamath* one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who fixed his dwelling in these parts, and left many Cities of that name in *Syria* and *Palestine* (which we shall meet withal in the course of this work) either built by him or his Posterity. Now that the Land of *Hamath* was this part of *Syria*, I am persuaded to believe by these following reasons, viz. 1. From the neighbourhood hereof to *Arpad* or *Arphad*, conjoynd together, as in *Isa.* 10. 9. and *Jer.* 49. 23. So in other places, viz. *Where are the gods of Hamath and Arphad?* 2 *Kings* 18. 34. *The Kings of Hamath, and the King of Arphad*, *Isa.* 37. 13. And we know well that *Arvad* was the name of an Island over-against the mouth of the River *Eleutherus*, one of the Rivers of this Countrey so called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, alluded to by the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the name of *Aradus*; by which this Isle was known unto them. This River is small, and ariseth from mount *Libanus*, and falleth into the Sea between *Tripoli* the South, and the *Orentes* the North, but nearer *Tripoli*; and it separated *Syria Seleucidis* from *Cælo-*

Syria, as *Strabo* saith, *lib.* 16. 16. and the Island at *Arvad* is a Rock of Seven Stadias (almost one *English* mile) in compass, surrounded by the Sea, and nobly built with Houses of great height in his time; it lay seven miles from the Shoar and had no fresh water but what fell from Heaven, or was fetched from the Continent. This City was built by the *Sidonians*, and was of old a distinct Kingdom; and was very considerable afterwards though subject to the Kings of *Persia*, *Greece* and the *Romans*, but is now utterly perished. 2ly. By the vicinity which it hath to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Sobab* of the Scriptures, to which it joyneth on the East, with the King whereof (as bordering *Princes* use to be) the Kings of *Hamath* for the most part were in open War. Of which see 2 *Sam.* 8. 9, 10. and 1 *Chro.* 8. 9, 10. 3dly. From the authority of *St. Hierom*, who finding mention in the Prophet *Amos*, *Chap.* 6. 2. of a City named *Hamath* the Great, determineth it to be that City which afterwards was called *Antiochia* (the principal City of this part, and indeed of *Syria*;) the title of *Great* being added to it, to difference it from some other Cities of this name of inferiour note. And 4thly. from comparing the places in Scripture, with the like passage in *Josephus* the Historiographer. The Scripture telleth us, that *Hierusalem* being forced by the *Babylonians*, *Zedekias* the King was brought Prisoner to *Nebuchadnezzar*, being then at *Riblah*, 2 *King.* 2. 6. to *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, *ver.* 21. where the Poor Prince first saw his Children slain before his face, and then miserably deprived of sight, that he might not see his great misfortunes, was led away to *Babylon*. Ask of *Josephus* where this sad Tragedy was acted, and he will tell us that it was at *Reblatha* or (*Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, *Antiq.* l. 10. c. 10. And if we ask *Saint Hierom* what he thinks of *Reblatha*, he will tell us that it was *Urbs ea quam nunc Antiochiam vocant*, the City which in following times was called *Antioch*. On these grounds I conceive this part of *Syria* to be the land of *Hamath* intended in the Texts of Scripture above-cited; though there were other Towns and Territories of the same name also.

The Countrey is naturally fertile; the hedges on the high-way sides affording very good fruits, and the adjoining fields affording to the Passenger the shade of Fig-trees. Were it not naturally so, it would not be much helped by Art or Industry, as being very meanly peopled, and those few people without any encouragement either to plant fruits, or manure the Land. Their sheep are commonly fair and fat, but so overladed in the tail, both with flesh and fleece, that they hang in long wreaths unto the ground, dragged after them with no small difficulty. *Pliny* observes it in his time, that the tails of the *Syrian* Sheep were a Cubit long, and had good store of wool upon them, *Natur. Hist.* l. 8. c. 48. and Modern Travellers report that the Tails of these sheep do frequently weigh 25 pound weight, and sometimes 30 pounds and upwards. The like hath also been affirmed of the sheep of *Palestine* comprehended in old times in the name of *Syria*. And that may probably be the Reason why the rumps and tails of sheep (and of no beast else) were ordained to be offered up in sacrifice, of which *Lev.* 3. 9. But besides the store of Wool which they have from the sheep, they have also great plenty of Cotten Wool, which groweth there abundantly; with the seeds whereof they sow their fields, as we ours with Corn. The stalk no bigger than that of Wheat, but as rough as a Bean; the head round and bearded, in the size and shape of a *Medlar*, and as hard as a stone: which ripening breaketh, and is delivered of a white soft *Bombast*, intermixed with seeds; which parted with an instrument, they keep the seeds for another sowing, and sell the Wool unto the Merchant: a greater quantity thereof issuing from that little shell, than can be imagined by those that have not seen it.

The people heretofore were very industrious especially about their Gardens ; the fruitful effects whereof they found in the increase of their Herbs, and Plants. Whence the Proverb. *Multa Syrorum Olera*. But withal they were observed to be very gluttonous, spending whole days and nights in feasting ; great scoffers, and much given to laughter. Crafty and subtle in their dealings, not easily to be trusted but on good security : and so were the *Phœnicians*, their next neighbours also. Hence came the Greek Adage which *Suidas* speaketh of, *Σύροι καὶ Φοινίκαι, Syri contra Phœnices*, used by them when two crafty Knaves endeavoured to deceive each other. They were noted also to be superstitious, great Worshippers of the Goddess *Fortune*, but greater of their Syrian Goddess, whatsoever she was. Affirmed by *Plutarch* to be a Womanish and Effeminate Nation, prone unto tears, and such as on the death of their Friends would hide themselves in caves from the sight of the Sun. *Herodian* addeth, that they were wavering and unconstant, lovers of Plays and publick Pastimes, and easily stirred up into Innovations. But at this time, they are almost beaten out of all these humours, having been so often cowed and conquered, that they are now grown servilely officious to them that govern them : not without cause, defective in that part of industry which before enriched them.

Whereby the way we must observe, that this Character of the people, and that of the Countrey belong not to this part alone, exclusively of those which follow ; but to all Syria, and every part and Province of it, except *Chanaan*, which being planted by a people of another Stock, hath had its character by it self. The whole by *Ptolomy* divided, besides *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, and *Cælo-Syria*, into many petit Regions, and Subdivisions, as 1 *Pieria*. 2 *Casiotis*, from the hills adjoining. 3 *Seleucis*. 4 *Apimene*. 5. *Laodicene*. 6. *Cyrrhestica*. 7 *Chalcidice*. And 8 *Chalybanotis*, from their principal Cities. Of which in all he musters up the names of an hundred and upwards, then of some note, most of them now grown out of knowledge, and many of them of no mark or observation in the course of business. So that omitting his method, we will follow our own, and take notice only of such places as antient were, or at this present are, of most observation and importance in the course of Story : with reference notwithstanding to the subdivisions made by *Ptolomy*, as they come in my way, reckoning *Cyrrhestica*, *Chalybanotis*, *Casiotis*, and the Territories of *Seleucus*, *Laodicea*, and *Apamea*, into *Syria-Propria* ; and *Pieria* into *Comagena*.

First then to begin with those Cities which lye most towards the East, we have in *Cyrrhestica*, 1 *Zeugma*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, memorable for the passage of *Alexander the Great*, who there passed over his Army on a Bridge of Boats. The City is now perished, but the Ruins of a Bridge built here in after times by the *Romans* are still visible. *Pliny* saith on the other side of the River lay *Apamia*, the Capital of *Mesopotamia*. 2 *Barræa* ; supposed by some both antient and modern Writers, to be that which is now called *Aleppo* ; but the position of the place agreeth not with that supposition ; *Aleppo* being placed by our modern *Cosmographers*, in the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and the 38 of *Latitude* : whereas *Berræa* is assigned by *Ptolomy*, to the 36 degree of *Latitude*, and the 71 of *Longitude*. Besides that, the River *Singas*, on which *Aleppo* is situate, keepeth it self almost on an even course in the *Latitude* of 37, between 20 and 30 minutes over : which is more by a degree and a half than the sight assigned unto *Berræa*. *Ptolomy* placeth it on the River *Singas* and makes it to run from S. W. to N. E. but it is probable however, *Aleppo* stands much more to the North, and that it sprung out of the Ruins of *Berræa*. 3 *Cybrus*, as in the Latin Copies of *Ptolomy*, mistook for *Cyrrus*, once the chief City of this part, from

hence called *Cyrrhestica*. 3 *Heraclea*, near which *Antiochia* had a Temple ; in which, as in that sacred to her in *Laodicea*, they used once yearly to offer a Virgin for a Sacrifice, but afterwards on the sight of that gross impiety, changed it to an *Hart*. 5 *Regia*, now *Rugia*, two days journey from *Antioch*, took by the Christians in the beginning of the Wars for the Holy Land. 6 *Hierapolis*, of great renown in those dark times of Ignorance and Idolatry for the Syrian Goddess therein worshipped ; from whence it had the name of *Hierapolis*, or the Holy City : being formerly by the Grecians called *Callinice* ; by the Syrians, *Magog* ; one of the first seats of *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, and from him denominated. The Goddess so esteemed of in those wretched times, that from all parts, *Assyria*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and costly offerings. *Nero* himself, who scoffed at all Religions else, being for a while a great Votary of this Syrian Idol, though afterwards he grew weary of her, and defiled her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice*, the wife of *Seleucus*, in the midst of the City, compassed with a double wall, about the height of 300 fathom : the roof thereof inlaid with Gold, and made of such a fragrant and sweet-smelling wood, that the cloaths of them which came thither retained the scent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places inclosed for Oxen, and Beasts of sacrifice ; and not far off a Lake of 200 fathom in depth, wherein they kept their sacred fishes : the Priests attending here for their several Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, besides many more subservient Ministers. The tricks and jugglings of these Priests to deceive the People, he that list to see, may find them copiously described in the *Metamorphosis* of *Apuleius* : which changing but the names and times, may serve for a relation of those gulleries and Arts of *Leger-demain* which the Friars and Pardoners have practised in the Church of Rome. 7 *Chaliban*, whence the parts adjoining were called *Chalybanotis* ; conceived by *Postellus* and some others to be *Chalepium*, or *Aleppo*, but on no good ground ; this City having one degree less of Northern Latitude, than *Barræa* had. 8 *Barbarissus*, in the same subdivision, near the banks of *Euphrates*. 9. *Chalcis*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria*, which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwise memorable. 10. *Telmedissa*, another Town of the same division, and as little famous. 11 *Seleucia*, so named from the Founder of it, the first Eastern Monarch of that Race, and the greatest Builder of the World, founding nine Cities of this name, sixteen in memory of his Father *Antiochus*, six by the name of *Laodice* his Mother, and three in honour of *Apamia* his first Wife ; besides many others of great note in Greece and Asia, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this, the Countrey hereabouts had the name of *Seleucia*. 12 *Laodicea*, one of the Cities founded by *Seleucus*, in honour of *Laodice* his Mother, from which the Region adjoining is called *Laodicene* : built by him in the place where formerly stood the City *Rhamantus*, so called from a certain Shepherd, who being struck with a flash of lightning, cried out amazedly *Rhamantus*, that is to say, *Deus ab excelso* ; before which time it had been named *Leuca Atte*, from the whiteness of the Sea-cliffs near to which it is situate : the Countrey round about commended anciently for the best Wines, and choice of very excellent Fruits. 13 *Apamea*, so named in honour of *Apamia*, the Wife of *Seleucus* ; which together with *Laodicea* and *Seleucia* before mentioned, having the same Founder, and maintaining a strict League of amity with one another, were commonly called the Three Sisters. From this the Countrey near is called *Apamene*. 14 *Emesa*, (now *Hamse*) the Episcopal See of *Eusebius*, hence called *Emesens*, who flourished in the time of *Constantius*, the Son of *Constantine* : in whose

whose name are extant certain Homilies justly conceived to be of a later date. The City seated in a spacious and fruitful Plain of *Apamea*, watered with many pleasant and chearful Riverets: once of great note, as may easily be conjectured from the walls hereof, which are still perfect and entire, built of polished Stone, and of very large circuit; but the Dwelling-Houses so decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy of observation. *Al. Thevenot*, p. 1. p. 223. gives this account of its present State: It is a pretty Town, the Walls whereof are of Black and White Stones, intermixed and strengthened with 26 Round Towers. It hath 6 Gates, 5 Churches, the principal of which is very great and noble, which was built by *St. Helen*, the Mother of *Constantine the Great*, and continued in the *Christians* hands till within 160 Years, but is now a Mosque, &c. This is now the only Town in that part of *Syria* as is honoured by a *Sangiack* under the *Basha* of *Tripoli*. 15 *Epiphania*, in the Cantred or subdivision of *Cassotis*; called at first *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, the Founder of it; and upon that account mistaken by *St. Hierome* for another Town of the same Name, in the Tribe of *Naphtali*; so different from this place both in Longitude and Latitude (as we shall shew hereafter when we come to *Palestine*) that they can by no means be the same. But that old Town being gone to ruin, it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphania*; obeyed herein as *Josephus* telleth us by the *Macedonians*, though the *Syrians* still called it *Amatha*, as in former times, *Antiq. l. 1. c. 7.* 16 *Larissa*, which still preserveth its old Name, being now called *Laris*; much mentioned in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, especially for the death of *Baldwin* the first, Brother of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and second King of *Hierusalem*, Anno 1118. 17 *Gabal*, the *Gabala* of *Ptolemy*, and others of the Ancient Writers, situate on the South of *Laodicea*, from which Twelve Miles distant; mentioned *Psal. 83.* as a Confederate with *Tyre*, and other uncircumcised Nations, in their hatred and designs against the *Israelites*; at this day called *Gabella* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembred in the Stories of the *Holy Wars*. 18 *Albaria*, distant Two Days march from *Antioch*, remembred also in the Wars of the *Holy Land*. 19 *Aradus*, one of the Co-Founders of *Tripolis*, situate in a rocky Island, of a Mile in compass, directly opposite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and distant from the Continent about Twenty *Stadia's*. So called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that Name in the Prophet *Ezek. 27. 8, 11.* This once a Kingdom of it self, containing not this Island only, but some part of the Continent; especially about *Antaradus* (so called because built over against it) situate on the Northern Banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have spoken in *Phoenicia*. 20 *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*; but afterwards by the continual enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it; so named of *Daphne*, one of the Mistresses of *Apollo*, who was here worshipped by the name of *Apollo Daphneus*, and had here his Oracle and his Groves, with other the Additaments appertaining unto those Idolatries; as much esteemed of, but more sumptuous than those of *Delphos*. The Grove about Ten Miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypresses*, and other Trees, so tall and close to one another, that they suffered not the Sun to enter in his greatest heats. The Ground perpetually covered with the choicest Tapistry of Nature, watered with many a pleasant stream, derived from the *Catalan* Fountains as it was given out; and yielding the most excellent Fruits both for Taste and Tincture, to which the Wind and Air participating, and the sweetness of the place did add a most delightful influence.

A place devised for Pleasure, but abused to Lust: he

being held unworthy of the Name of a Man, who transformed not himself unto a Beast, or trod on this unholy Ground without his *Curtain*; inasmuch as they which had a care of their Good Names, did forbear to haunt it. A full description of it he that lists to see, may find in the Third Book and Eighteenth Chapter of *Socrates's Ecclesiastical History*, who is copious in it. The Temple said to have been built by *Seleucus* also, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperor; and therefore much resorted to by *Julian the Apostata*, for that purpose also. But the Body of *Basil the Martyr*, and Bishop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the Command of his Brother *Gala*, then created *Cæsar* by *Constantinus*, the Devil and his Oracles were both frightened away, as the Devil did himself confess to *Julian*; who being desirous to learn here the success of his intended Expedition into *Persia*, received this Answer, That no Oracle could be given so long as those Divine Bones were so near the Shrine. Nor was it long after before the Idol and the Temple were consumed by a Fire from Heaven, as was avowed by those who observed the Fall of it; though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent *Christians*, and in revenge caused many of their Churches to be burned to Ashes. 21 *Antioch*, situate in that part hereof which is called *Cassotis*, first built, or began rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Asia*, by whom named *Antigenia*; but finished and enlarged by *Seleucus*, after he had overthrown and slain him at the Battel of *Issus*. Built near the place, and partly out of the Ruins of an Ancient City, in the Second Book of *Kings* called *Riblah in the Land of Hamath*; *Hamath the Great*, in the sixth of *Amos*; by *Josephus* and the *Syrians*, *Rablata*; memorable in those days for the Tragedies of *Jeboah* and *Zedechias*, Kings of *Judah*, the first of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty by *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*, 2 *King. 23. 33.* the other of his Eyes and Children, by the Command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was said before. In following Times it was by some Greek Writers called *Epidaphne*, from the nearness of it to that Grove: as afterwards in the Times of *Christianity*, by the Name of *Theopolis*, or the City of God; either from the many Miracles there done in the Primitive Time, or from the great improvement which the *Christian Faith* did here receive, where the *Disciples* first obtained the Name of *Christians*. The Royal Seat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*; and in the flourish and best Fortune of the *Roman Empire*, the ordinary Residence of the *Præfect* or Governor of the Eastern Provinces; next, of the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*, who had not only the superintendency over the Diocese of the Orient, tho that large enough, but also of the Dioceses of *Egypt*, *Asia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*, extending so his Jurisdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured also with the Residence of many of the *Roman Emperors*, especially of *Perus* and *Falens*, who spent here the greatest part of their Times; and from the first dawning of the Gospel, with the Seat of the *Patriarch*. A Title of such eminency in all Times of the Church, the second in account to the See of *Rome* (till *Constantinople* being made the Imperial City, got precedency of it) that there are at this time no less than four great Prelates which pretend unto it; that is to say, the *True Patriarch*, governing the *Christians* of those parts, whom they call *Syrians*, or *Melchites*; the *Pseudo-Patriarchs* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which, for the great credit to their Schism, do assume this Title; and finally, a *Titular Patriarch* nominated by the *Pope*, who since the Time that the *Western Christians* were possessed of these *Eastern Countries*, hath assumed a Power unto himself of nominating *Patriarchs* for *Alexandria*, *Hierusalem*, and this City of *Antioch*.

The City seated on both sides of the River *Orontes*, about Twelve Miles distant from the Shores of the *Mediterranean*.

terranean; the River *Pbarfar* passing on the *South*-side of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration; compassed with a double Wall, the outermost of which was of Stone, the other of Brick, with four hundred and sixty Towers in the Walls, and an impregnable Castle at the *East*-end thereof; and on the other side defended with big broken Mountains, whereunto was adjoining a deep Lake coming out of the River *Pbarfar*, before mentioned; adorned in former times with many sumptuous Palaces and magnificent Temples answerable to the Reputation of so great a City; till taken by the *Saracens*, and after by the *Turks* and *Mamelucks*, Men careless of all State and Beauty in their fairest Cities, it began to grow unto decay. Recovered by the *Western Christians* from the power of the *Turks*, after a Siege of seven Months, *June 3. Anno 1098.* confirmed in their possession by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very sight hereof within few days after (*June 28*) obtained against *Corbanas*, Lieutenant to the *Persian Sultan*; in which, with the loss of Four Thousand and Two Hundred of their own, they slew a Hundred Thousand of the Enemy. The Town and Territory given by the Conquerors to *Bohemund* a Noble Norman, and Prince of *Tarrentum*; who by practicing with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the Chief Towers thereof, afterwards called *St. George's Tower*, was secretly let into the City, and so made way for all the rest. *Bohemund* thus made the Prince, or as some say, King of *Antioch*, left it to *Bohemund* his Son about Ten Years after; succeeded in this Principate by *Tancred* and *Roger*, Princes of great Renown in those *Holy Wars*; which last unfortunately slain by the *Turks*, not far from *Aleppo*, in the Year 1120. *Baldwin* the second having revenged his death by a signal Victory, joined this Estate to the Kingdom of *Hierusalem*. Betrayed above sixty Years after this, that is to say, in the Year 1188. it came into the power of *Saladine*, the victorious King of *Egypt* and *Damascus*, and therewithal no fewer than Five and Twenty Cities which depended on the Fortunes of it: The Glories of this Famous City so declining after this last Tragedy (but whether laid desolate of set purpose, or destroyed by the injury of the Time; I am not able to declare) that it is grown the Sepulchre of what once it was, and lieth buried in its own sad Ruins, hardly preserving the repute of a sorry Village. Such is the instability of all Worldly Glories. Some other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembred the same day with *Antioch*.

As for the Story of his Province, as a State distinct, we find it had a King of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the Kingdom of *Toi*, or *Tou* before remembred) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*, and the Isles adjoining. Vassals in Time succeeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who lorded it over all the Sea-Coasts hereof, and consequently had great Influence on the Inlands also. And it continued in this State till the *Assyrian* Kings began to turn their Forces Westward; when added to that Empire by *Tiglatb Pileser*, after the subversion of the Kingdom of *Damascus*; or by *Salmanasser*, after the destruction of that of *Israel*. The proud but dreadful vaunt which *Sennacherib*, the Successor of those mighty Monarchs made to *Hzekiab*, viz. *Where are the Gods of Hamath and Arphad?* shews clearly, that those Kingdoms had been conquer'd not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmanasser* or *Tiglatb Pileser*. Afterwards, in the struglings betwixt the *Babylonians* and *Egyptians*, for the chief Command, it was a while at the devotions of the King of *Egypt*, it being at *Reblatha* in this Province, that *Jehoaabaz* King of *Judab* was put into Bonds, by the Command of *Pharoah Necho*, as was said before. But *Necho* being not long after vanquished by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, it returned again to that Crown, and after followed the same Fortunes with the rest of *Syria*.

3 C O M A G E N A.

COMAGENA is bounded on the *East* with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Mesopotamia*; on the *West*, with the Mountains called *Amanus*, which divided from *Cilicia*; on the *North* with *Taurus*, by which separated from *Armenia Minor*; on the *South* with *Palmyrene*. Called also *Euphratenfis* and *Euphratesia*, when a Roman Province, by reason of its situation, bordering on the River.

The Reason of the Name I find not amongst my Authors; but find that many Learned men conceive it to be that part of *Syria* which the *Scriptures* call *Syria Maacab*, mention whereof is made *1 Chron. cap. 19. v. 6.* gainfayed by others, because they find a place called *Maacha* in the Tribe of *Manasses*, but with no great reason as I take it. For being it is joined (in *1 Chron. 19. v. 6.* above mentioned) in the same action with *Mesopotamia*, and *Syria Sobab*; and not so only, but placed between them in the Method of that Holy Penman, I dare not think but that they were all very near neighbours, and ranked according to the natural situation of them. Which agreeth very well with the site of *Comagena*, having *Mesopotamia* on the *East*, and *Aram-Sobab* on the *South*. Nor is it any stronger proof unto the contrary, that *Maacha* is a Town of the Tribe of *Manasses*; than if a man should say, That there is no such Province as *Mansfield* in *High-Germany*, because there is a Town of that Name in *England*; or no such place as *Savoy* amongst the *Alpes*, because there is a House of that Name in *London*.

As for the People hereof, besides what they have common with the rest of the *Syrians*, they were of old much given unto *Divination*, and for that cause derided thus in the Sixth *Saty*r of *Juvenal*.

*Spondet amatorem tenerum vel divitis orbi
Testamentum ingens, calidæ pulmone Columbæ
Tractato, Armenius vel Comagenus Aruspex.
Pectora pullorum rimabitur, exta Catelli,
Interdum & Pueri. Faciat quod deferat ipse.*

Thus Englished by my honoured Friend
Sir Robert Stapylton.

A childless rich man's Legacy, or young Love,
Are found i'th' Lights of a warm trembling Dove,
By *Comagene* Soothsayers; they look into
A dead Chick's breast, the same the *Armenians* do,
They view the Entrails of a Dog, and reach
A Child perhaps: They do it, and then preach.

Chief places of this part, 1 *Samosata*, the *Metropolis* or Head City of it, when a Roman Province, situate near the Banks of *Euphrates*, over which it had a Bridge for passage into *Mesopotamia*. Unfortunate for being the Birth-place of *Lucian*, that prophane Scoffer of *Christianity*, though otherwise a man of quick Wit, and of great Abilities: as also of *Paulus Samosatenus*, Patriarch of *Antioch*, condemned of *Heresie* in a Council holden in his own City, *Anno 273.* (by the great and most Learned Bishops of that Age, there assembled together) for teaching, That our Saviour was no other than a Natural Man; but neither God, nor the Son of God, as the *Scriptures* testifie. Now call'd *Scempsat* by the *Turks*. 2 *Germanicia* (by some called *Germanicopolis*) on the other side of the Country near the Mountain *Amanus*; no less unfortunate than the former, in being the Birth-place of *Nestorius*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who troubling the Peace of the Church with *Heterodoxie*, and Impertinent Niceties about the Blessed Mother of *Christ*, as also about the Nature and Person of *Christ* himself, was thereupon condemned of *Heresie*.

Heresie in the Council of *Ephesus*, Anno 435. In former times called *Aluta*, as some write *Alapa*; but took this new name from *Germanicus Cæsar*, in honour of whom it was made a Roman Colony by *Augustus*, testified by this Inscription extant in *Onuphrius* viz. COLONIA JULIA GERMANICIA, SACRA AUGUSTA FOELIX. 3 *Singa*, so called from the River upon which it is situate. 4. *Antiochia penes Taurum*, so called because seated at the foot of that Mountain, to differ it from the other of this name in *Syria*. 5. *Pinara*, one of the Chief Cities of that part which is called *Pieria*. 6. *Doliche*, a small Town, but made an Episcopal See in the best times of the Church, as appeareth by the Acts of the Councils of *Antioch* and *Constantinople*, in which there is some mention of the Bishops of it. 7 *Aleppo*, now the principal of all the Countrey, supposed by some to be the *Sepharvaim*, mentioned 2 *King*. 17. 24. It was thus called, as some say, from *Halep*, which in the Language of those parts signifieth Milk, afforded liberally by the Rich Pastures round about it: as others more improbably from *Aleph*, the first Letter of the Hebrew Alphabet, because the first in estimation of the Cities of *Syria*: Most probably from *Alepius*, Lieutenant here in the time of *Julian the Apostata*, who did here many notable Exploits, and amongst others, in or near the Ruins of some old Town of these parts, not yet agreed on (in case it be not *Sepharvaim* before mentioned) advanced this City. Situate on the Banks of the River *Singas*, which rising out of the Hill *Frabus*, with many windings and turnings, runneth through *Comagena*, and there falleth into *Euphrates*. About this English Merchants who have lived in this City, say the River ends in a Bog or Morass about ten Miles below this City: But *Knowles* in his *Turkish History* pag. 357. agrees exactly with what is said above; and the Maps of *Syria* make the River fall into the *Euphrates*. Destroyed by *Haalon King* of the *Tartars* at such time as the Western Christians were possessed of this Country, and the Holy Land: but being repaired and re-peopled, became by reason of the commodious situation of it, to be much frequented by Merchants from all parts of the World. Situate in the midst betwixt *Tripolis*, *Beritus*, and *Alexandretta*, the three prime Ports of *Turkey* on the one side, and the *Persian* Territories on the other: it was made choice of for the Staple of the Eastern Commodities, brought to *Euphrates*, and then brought hither by Caravans by Land. A City of great Trade at present, the English Merchants (amongst others which frequent the same) having here three Houses for the Stowage and disposing of their Commodities, and a chief Officer or Superintendent over the whole *Factory*, whom they call the Consul of *Aleppo*. But greater was the Trade hereof in the former times, before the *Portugals* found out a way by Sea to those Eastern Countries, since followed by the English, *Hollanders*, and other Nations. The building of it low, but of one Story high (as in most Towns of *Syria*) with a plain top plaistred to walk upon; and with Arches before their doors or Houses: as well to pass dry under them in time of Rain, as to shew their Wares. Pleasantly seated amongst Gardens, with the sweet smells whereof very much refreshed; the ordinary Residence of a *Turkish Bassa*; safe rather in the remoteness of it from any Enemy, than the strength of the place, as being nothing less than well fortified. Near one of the Gates they shew a Sepulchre, by them affirmed to be Saint *George's* (whom of all the Christian Saints they only worship) before which they maintain a Lamp which burns continually. *Monsieur Tavernier*, pag. the 576 of his Travels saith, it is not known what was the Ancient name of it; but it fell into the hands of the *Sarazens* in the 15th year of the *Hegyra*. A. C. 637. as all the *Arabian* Writers agree.

It stands upon 4 Hills, the highest of which is in the middle covered with a Castle of Freestone, and is about 600 Paces in circuit, but of no defence, though it has a Moat 6 or 7 Fathom deep, half of which is filled with nasty Water, the rest dry. The City is about 5 miles in compass, well watered, and supposed to contain 250000 Souls, whereof about 40000 are Christians. And the *Bassa* is one of the greatest in the Empire of the *Turks*, his Revenue 817772 Aspers a year; he has under him nine Sangiacks, and five Castles. Mr. *Knowles* supposeth it to have sprung out of the ruins of *Hieropolis*. *Gabriel Sionita* makes the compass of this City six Miles, Water'd and Ditched but not strong. It is at this day, saith he, (who in 1619 Translated and Printed the *Nubian* Geographer in Latin) a splendid rich City, better Traded than in former times, and next *Constantinople* and *Grand Cairo*, the best City in the *Ottoman* Empire, and the Mistress of the East. 8 *Aman*, in the way betwixt *Tripoli*, and *Aleppo*, supposed by some to be that *Hamat*, mentioned whereof is made 2 *King*. chap. 17. 12. A City of a large circuit, pleasantly seated on two Hills, which give it a fair prospect over six of the neighbouring Villages; a thing not to be boasted of, as the World now goeth, by the many the *Syrian* Cities. On a third Hill once stood a Castle, now decayed, ruinous, beneath it a fair River which runs gently by it; environed round about with Orchards of Palm-trees, and very good fruits. 9 *Chalmodora*, seated by *Ptolomy* on *Euphrates*, of which no ruins now remaining, unless the name be changed to 10 *Byrrha*, as perhaps it may be: that being made by *Ptolomy*, the most Northern Town of *Comagena*; this the utmost Town which the *Egyptian Mamalucks* (then Lords of *Syria*) had upon this River, and the boundary betwixt them and the Sultans of *Persia*. Memorable for an old Ceremony here used by those *Mamalucks*, who accounted not themselves worthy of the name of a Sultan of *Egypt*, till in this place in solemn pomp in the sight of their Army, they had forced their Horse into the River, and made him drink of the waters of it: testifying by that Ceremony, as well the extent of their Dominions, as their readiness to defend the same against all Invaders. A Ceremony performed with great State by *Camfon Gaurus*, in the War betwixt him and *Selimus* the first. But for all this he lost the field, and his life to boot in the fight near *Aleppo*: and therewith did not only leave him *Syria*, as the fruits of his Victory, but opened him a fair way to the conquest of *Egypt*, which soon after followed. And hereto I refer the Cities of 11 *Hena*, and 12 *Ivab*, with their several Territories, mentioned together with the City of *Sepharvaim*, *Isa*. 37. 13. and 2 *King* 18. 34. it being probable, that if *Sepharvaim* were the City now called *Aleppo*, as the *Jews* that dwell there say it was, that then the other two joyned together with it, must be hereabouts, though we find no tract of them in the old Geographers.

And if they were (as it seems probable to me) we have then more Kings in this Province in the elder times, than the Kings of *Maacha*; unless perhaps it may be said that the Kingdom of *Maacab* (or of *Aram-Maacab*) being broken in pieces, these petty States arose from the ruins of it. Of little observation in the course of business, whether entire or subdivided into parcels; but that the King hereof (the King of *Maacha*) aided the *Ammonites* against *David* with 1000 men: no very great number I confess (as one who lay more out of the danger than the rest of the *Syrian* Confederates did) but sufficient to engage him in the quarrel with them. Nor find we any thing after this touching their affairs, but that the Kings of *Hena*, *Ivab* and *Sepharvaim* (who shared the greatest part amongst them) being swallowed up by the *Affyrians* (as the fore-mentioned Texts do expressly say) some Colonies of the People hereof were sent by *Salmanasser* the *Affyrian* Monarch, to plant the desolate dwellings of the Tribes of *Israel*, as appeareth plainly in

in 2 *King* 17. 24. A course in which the Conqueror dealt exceeding wisely; weakning thereby the great Cities and mightier States of this Country, which otherwise might have been apt enough to revolt again; and strengthening therewithal their Conquest in the Land of *Israel*, which otherwise had lain open to the next Invader, and yielded little or no profit to the publick Treasury. More politick in this than the *Babylonians* in the like dissolution and destruction of the Kingdom of *Judab*. After this time it followed the same fortune with the rest of *Syria*, till *Tigranes* the last King hereof was subdued by the *Romans*. At what time all the rest of *Syria* being reduced under the form of a Province, this part being then in the possession of *Antiochus*, Son of that *Antiochus* surnamed *Eusebes*, whom *Tigranes* had spoiled of his estates, was left unto him by the Conquerors with the Title of King. Continuing in his Line till the death of another *Antiochus*, the last King hereof, when made a Province of the Empire by *Tiberius Cæsar*, as is said by *Tacitus*: *Qu. Servæus* being sent hither as the first *Roman Prætor* for the government of it; though *Sueton*, doth refer it to the times of *Vespasian*.

Tigranes was overcome by *Lucullus* in the year of *Rome* 684. The *Antiochus* here mentioned died about the year 770, and *Tiberius* thereupon sent *Germanicus* into *Asia*. It became a Kingdom again and was finally reduced into a Province in the year of *Rome* 826 by *Vespasian*.

4 PALMYRENE.

PALMYRENE is bounded on the East, by the River *Euphrates*; on the West, by *Syria* properly and specially so called; on the North, with *Comagena*; and on the South, with Mount *Libanus*, dividing it from the Province of *Cælo-Syria*, and part of *Arabia Deserta*.

It took this name from *Palmyra* the chief City of it. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a distinct Province of itself, it had the name of *Syria Secunda*, and *Salutaris*: called *Syria Secunda*, to distinguish it from *Syria* specially so called, which by them was named *Syria Prima*; and *Salutaris*, in regard of the Medicinal waters springing in many places of it. But before it had any of these names, it was in the Scriptures called *Aram-Sobab*, whereof *Adad-ezar* was King in the time of *David*, as we read 2 *Sam.* 8. 3. and 1 *Chron.* 18. 3.

The Country destitute of Rivers fit for Navigation, save that it bordereth on *Euphrates*; but liberally furnished with those hot Springs good for many Diseases, which gave it the name of *Salutaris*. Of which thus writeth *Marcellinus*, lib. 14. *In his tractibus navigerum nusquam visitur flumen, at in locis plurimis aquæ suapte natura calones emergunt, ad usum aptæ multiplicium medelarum.* So he: The sense whereof we had before.

Places of most observation, are 1 *Palmyra*, seated in a desert and sandy Plain one of the Cities built by *Solomon* in the Wilderness, mention of which is made 1 *Kings* 9. 17, 18. this *Palmyra* being supposed to be that City which is there called *Tadmar*, or *Tamar* in the *Vulgar Latin*. The cause for long time of much contention betwixt the *Parthians* and the *Romans*, as situate in the borders of either Empire; not fully settled in the *Roman*, till that they had subdued *Zenobia*, then the Queen hereof. By *Adrian* the Emperour, who repaired it, it was called *Hadrianople*, but it held not long; the old name in short prevailing above the new. 2 *Gezer*. 3 *Bethboron* the upper. And 4 *Bethboron* the nether, said to be fenced Cities, with Walls, Gates, and Bars, 2 *Chron* 8. 4. And 5 *Baalath*; four of the other Towns here built by *Solomon*; but either quite worn out of knowledge, or called by new names in the time of *Ptolomy*, who saith nothing of them. 6 *Adada*, built as the name doth intimate, by some of the *Adads* Kings of this Countrey, or of *Damascus*, to which last made subject. 7 *Sura*, more towards the River *Euphrates*, in the *Notitia*, called *Flavia Firma Sura*; which

sheweth that it was either repaired, or made a Colony by the Emperour *Vespasian*, whose fore-name was *Flavius*: honoured with an Episcopal See also in the times next following, as appeareth by the Acts of the Council of *Constantinople*. 8 *Alamath*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, which if it were lawful for me to criticize upon my Author, I should conceive to be *Hamath* of the Scriptures, which is called *Hamath-Sobab*, 2 *Chron.* 8. 3. against which *Solomon* prevailed: the mistake from *Camatha* to *Alamatha*, being not uneasy in the transcripts. Confirmed herein by that passage in 2 *Chron.* 18. 3. where it is said, that *David* smote *Hadad-ezar* King of *Sobab* unto *Hamath*, as he went to establish his Dominion by the River *Euphrates*: By which it seemeth that *Hamath* stood upon that River, as the *Camatha* or *Alamatha* of *Ptolomy* is said to do. And if it were the same, as I think it was, I should conceive it to be the chief Seat of those Kings: and the principal City of this Kingdom: the word *Sobab*, being added to it, not only for distinctions sake, but in way of eminency: But if the judicious Reader approve not this criticism, I should next think that this *Alamatha* of *Ptolomy* were that *Elam*, or *Helaus*, next unto which *David* discomfited that great Army of the *Mesopotamians*, mention whereof is made 2 *Sam.* 10. 16, 17. 9. *Rasapha*, a Town of note in the time of *Ptolomy*; but of greater in the Holy Scripture, where it is represented to us by the name of *Reseph*, *Isa.* 3. 20. *Reseph Civitas Syriæ*, as Saint *Hierom* hath it: and if a Town of *Syria*, then most like this. 10 *Betab*, and 11 *Berothai*, two other Cities of this Kingdom, taken by *David* in his War against *Hadad-ezar*, 2 *Sam.* 8. 8. the last supposed to be the *Barathene* of *Ptolomy*, though placed by him among the Towns of *Arabia the Desert*, to which it seems it was allotted in the change of time.

This part of *Syria*, as the rest, was once a distinct Kingdom of it self, by the name of the Kingdom of *Sobab*, or of *Aram-Sobab*. The first King thereof, whose name occurs in Holy Scripture, being *Rebob*, the Cotemporary of *Saul* King of *Israel*, by whom discomfited in battel, as is said, 1 *Sam.* 14. 47. But *Adad-ezar* the Son of *Rebob*, a Prince of greater power and valour than his Father was, having brought all the neighbouring Kings under his command (as is said 2 *Sam.* 10. 19.) conceived himself a fit match for *David*, and thereupon opposed his passage, as he went to recover his border at the River *Euphrates*. In which Action though he lost a thousand Chariots, and twenty thousand Foot, and seven hundred Horse, yet would he not so end the War: but first with the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, and after with the *Ammonites* and their Confederates; and finally by the aid of the *Mesopotamians*, renewed the Quarrel. But being discomfited also in this last enterprize with the loss of forty thousand and seven hundred men, and his life to boot, the Kingdom of *Zobab* was brought under by the Kings of *Damascus*. The story of this War we have in 2 *Sam.* ch. 8. v. 10. in 1 *Chron.* ch. 18. and 1 *King.* 11. 23, 24. yet were not the Kings of *Damascus* so well settled in it, but that *David* had possessed himself of *Betab* and *Berothai*, and other pieces of importance: the Regal City of *Hamath-Zobab* being won by *Solomon*, and many of the best Towns of it built by him to assure his Conquest. But the Kingdom of *Solomon* being rent in pieces in the next Succession, the Kingdom of *Zobab* fell unto those of *Damascus*: and so continued till *Damascus* it self was conquered by the Kings of *Assyria*: unless perhaps that *Hamath*, which *Joroboam* the second is said to have subdued (together with *Damascus* it self) to the Crown of *Israel*, 2 *King.* 14. 28. were this *Hamath-Zobab*, as perhaps it was.

After this nothing memorable in the Affairs of this Country, till the Time of *Gallienus* the *Roman* Emperour: during whose Reign, among the rest who contended that Empire betwixt themselves (commonly called the Thir-

ty Tyrants) *Odenatus* a man of great power and virtue assumed the Imperial Habit, and took unto him the command of these parts of *Syria*, together with *Mesopotamia*, and some other Provinces, which he had conquered from *Sapores* the King of *Persia*; against whom he had so good an hand, that he discomfited him in Battle, seiz'd upon his Treasures, and took many of his Nobles, and most of his Concubines. For which great Acts admitted partner in the Empire by *Gallienus*, he was not long after slain by *Maxonius* his Cousin German. Who by that Murder hoped to obtain the Principality of *Palmyrene* (for by that Name it was now called) but in that deceived. For after his death, *Zenobia* his unfortunate Widow, a most Masculine Lady, not only preserved the Principality of *Palmyrene* for the use of her Children; but took upon her both the Purple Habit, and the command of his Army: which she managed with great wisdom and gallantry, the rest of the Time of *Gallienus*, all the Reigns of *Claudius* and *Quintillus*, his Two next Successors. But vanquished and took Prisoner by *Aurelianus* (who had the happiness to unite the broken Limbs of that Empire into as strong a body as ever formerly) she was led in Triumph through *Rome*. The Terror of her Name, and the unusualness of the Sight, so generally heightning the expectation; *Ut ea specie nihil unquam esset pompabilius*, saith *Trebellius Pollio*; That never any Shew was esteemed so glorious. A Lady of so strong a Vertue, and of such command upon her self, that she is said never to have made use of her Husband's Company when she perceived her self with Child. After this nothing singular in the Story of *Palmyrene*. But when all the rest of *Syria* was subdued by the Christians of the West, this Province and the next only was made good against them by the Turkish Sultans of *Damascus*.

COELO-SYRIA.

COELO-SYRIA is bounded on the East with *Palmyrene*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West with the *Palestine*; on the North with *Palmyrene*, and some part of *Syria Propria*, from which divided by the interposition of Mount *Libanus*; on the South with *Ituræa*, and *Arabia Deserta* also.

This is the *Syria* so much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*, called by the Greeks, *Cælo-Syria*, i. e. *Syria Cava*, because partly situate in the hollow Vallies interjected betwixt *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; and sometimes also *Syro-Pheñicia*, from the intermixture of those people; as the *Pheñicians* which went with *Dido* into *Africk*, were called *Libo-Pheñices*. By the Romans when made a distinct Province of that Empire, it had the name of *Pheñice Libani*, or *Pheñicia Libanensis*, to difference it from the other *Pheñicia*, which they call *Maritima*. But before all this by the Hebrews named *Aram-Damasek*. *Syria Damascena* in the Latin, from *Damascus* the chief City of it: unless perhaps we should rather say, that *Aram-Damasek* contained only that which lay between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*, the rest being added by the Romans, out of the neighbouring parts of *Palestine* and *Arabia Deserta*, as perhaps it was.

Chief Rivers hereof are 1 *Abana*, and 2 *Pharfar*, the Rivers of *Damascus*, as the Scripture calleth them, 2 *King*. 5. The one of which is thought to be the River *Adonis*, spoken of already; the other that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Chrysorrhoas*, or the Golden Flood; which rising in the Hills of this Country, passeth by *Damascus*, and so together with the other into the *Mediterranean Sea*. Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Alfadamus*, by the *Pheñicians* called *Syrton*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; a ridge of Hills which beginning at the East-point of *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly Southwards, shutting upon that side the Land of *Israel*, whereof more in *Palestine*. 2 *Hippus*, a ledge of Mountains in the South parts of this Province, where it bordereth on *Arabia Deserta*.

Towns of most consideration in it: 1 *Heliopolis*, so called from an Image of the Sun there worshipped in the Time of Paganism; now *Belbec*, or (as some say) *Balbec*. 2 *Chalcis*, more Eastward towards *Damascus*, which gave the Title of a King to *Ptolemy Maeneus*, and his Son *Lysanias*, the Kingdom then extending over the City of *Abila*, and the whole Province of *Ituræa* in *Palestine*. But that Family being either expired or grown out of Favour, and *Abila* with *Ituræa* otherwise disposed of; the Title of the King of *Chalcis*, with the Town and Territory was given to *Herod*, Brother of *Agrippa*, the first, King of *Jewry*. Erroneously supposed by some Learned men to be that *Chalcis*, from which the Country called *Chalcidice* takes denomination; that *Chalcis* being placed by *Ptolemy* a degree and a half more East than *Damascus*, and Two degrees more towards the North; whereas this *Chalcis* lieth on the West of that City, in the shades of *Libanus*, and in the very same degree of Northern Latitude. 3 *Abila*, seated at the foot of *Libanus*, betwixt *Heliopolis* and *Chalcis* from whence the Country round about it is called *Abilene*; given to *Lysanias*, the Son of the former *Lysanias*, King of *Chalcis*, with the Title of *Tetrarch*, mentioned *Luke* 3. 1. with those other Princes which shared *Palestine* amongst them. Not that he was the Son of *Herod*, as anciently *Beda* and *Euthymius*, and of late Times some very industrious men have been of opinion; but partly because the Cities of the *Chalcis* and *Abila* of right belonged to those of the Tribe of *Naphtalim* (though never conquered or possessed by them) and so to be accounted a part of *Palestine*; and partly because the *Tetrarchy* of *Abilene*, when *St. Luke* wrote that Gospel, was possessed together with the rest by King *Agrippa*. Restored (as it seemeth) to the former Family, after his decease; for known it was by the name of *Abila Lisanie* in the Time of *Ptolemy*. 4 *Adida*, memorable for the Victory which *Aretas* King of *Arabia* obtained near unto it, against *Alexander* King of *Jewry*, the Kingdom of *Syria* then lying open as a prey to the next Invaders. 5 *Hippus*, or *Hippone*, as *Pliny* calleth it, not far from the Mountain of that Name. 6 *Capitolias*, now called *Suente*. 7 *Gadara*; a City mention'd by *Pliny*, *Lib*. 5, 6, 8. It stands upon the River *Hieromare* in *Manasses*, upon a Mountain, at the foot of which rise Hot Springs. *Alexander Jannæus*, King of the *Jews* took and ruined this City, *Joseph*. 13. *Anr*. 19. *Pompey* rebuilt it, and *Gabinus* made it the 2d in Honour to *Jerusalem*, *Joseph*. *Ant*. 14. c. 11. 8 *Scythopolis*. This City was anciently called *Bethsan*, and *Nysa*, and *Sandes* upon the River *Jordan*, at the South End of the Lake or Sea of *Galilee*. The *Philistians* hung on the Walls of this City the Bodies of *Saul* and his Sons. And the Inhabitants of it were no less cruel to the *Jews* in the Roman War than their Ancestors had ever been, as *Josephus* tells in the History of his own Life. It is now a poor desolate Village, but shews Ruins which testify it was once a Rich Noble well-built Pile, by the Marble Pillars found amongst the Rubbish. 9 *Gerasa*; and 10 *Philadelphia*, reckoned by *Ptolemy* as Cities of *Cælo-Syria*; but of right belonging unto *Palestine*, where we mean to take notice of them. 11 *Edin*, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, now a Town of the *Maronites*; and anciently of such esteem, that the whole Country of *Damascus* was called *Beth-Eden*, *Amos* 1. 5. 12 *Damascus*, situate in a large Plain environed with Hills, and watered with the River *Crysorrhoas*, which with a great noise descendeth from the Mountains, and so abundantly serveth the City, that not only most of the Houses have their Fountains of it, but their Orchards and Gardens have some Rivulets conveyed into them. The Country round about abundantly enrich'd with plenty of most excellent Wines (the Vines heréof bearing Grapes all the Year long) and great store of Wheat; as their Orchards with variety of most delicate Fruits: our *Damascenus*, (or *Pruna Damascena*, as the Latins call them) coming first from hence; as also our *Damask Roses* but

N n n n

infinite

infinite short of their natural Sweetness, by the Transplantation. A place so surfeiting of Delights, so girt about with Odoriferous and curious Gardens, that the Vile Impostor *Mabomet* would never be persuaded to come into it, for fear (as himself was used to say) lest being ravished with the ineffable Pleasures of it, he should forget the Business he was sent about, and make there his Paradise. But *Mubawias*, one of his Successors, having no such scruple, removed the Regal Seat unto it, where it continued (for the most part) till the building of *Bagdat* by *Bugiaser* the Twentieth Caliph, about an Hundred Years after this Removal: The Regal Seat before that Time being at *Mecca*, *Cusa*, or some other of the best Towns of *Arabia Felix*. The Chief Buildings of it, of late Times (till destroyed by the *Tartars*) were a strong Castle, in the Opinion of those Times held to be impregnable; and not without great difficulty forced by *Tamarlane*, whom nothing was able to withstand; and as Majestical a Church, garnished with Forty sumptuous Porches, and no fewer than 9000 Lanthorns of Gold and Silver; which with 30000 people in it (who fled thither for Sanctuary) was by the said *Tamarlane* most cruelly and unmercifully burnt, and pulled down unto the Ground. Repaired by the *Mamulucks* of *Egypt* when Lords of *Syria*; it hath since flourished in Trade, the people being industrious, and celebrated for most excellent Artizans; the branching of Satins, and fine Linnen, which we call by the Name of *Damasks*, being amongst many others, one of their Inventions. Renowned in the *Old Testament* for the Kings hereof, and the Birth of *Eliezer*, *Abraham's* Steward (so honourably ancient was this City;) and in the New, for the Conversion of *St. Paul*, who first preached the Gospel in this place, and here so narrowly escaped the Snares of his Enemies, that he was fain to be let down out of the House in which he was, by the help of a Basket.

But Ancient and Honourable though this City of *Damascus* was, we find nothing of the Story of it till the Time of *David*; the Kings thereof until those Days, being conceived to have been Homagers and Tributaries to the Kings of *Zobab*. The first Exploit ascribed unto them in the *Holy Scripture*, is their coming to the aid of *Adad-Ezar*, upon his first Defeat by *David*; in which Action having lost 22000 Men, they were so broken, that they did not only suffer *David* to put Garisons in the best Cities of *Damascus*, but patiently became his Servants, and brought Presents to him, 2 *Sam.* 8. 5, 6. The Name of this unfortunate Prince not made known in *Scripture*, is by *Josephus* affirmed out of *Nicolaus Damascenus*, to have been *Adad* (a Name much cherished and assumed by the Kings Successors) who keeping constant to the party of *Adad-ezar* in his following Wars, was at last slain with him, in that great discomfiture which *David* gave them, mentioned in 2 *Sam.* cap. 10. v. 18. In which Text the *Scripture* telleth us nothing of the death of those Kings, that being supplied to us by *Josephus* out of their Records; who also added, That *Rezin*, one of the Chief Commanders of *Adad-ezar*, taking his advantage, not only usurped his Master's Kingdom, but made himself Master of the Kingdom of *Damascus* also. From this Time forward the Seat Royal of the Kings of *Syria*. Nor is this the Tradition of *Josephus* only, but founded plainly on the *Scriptures*, of which see 1 *King.* 11. v. 23, 24. the *Scriptures* after this taking no notice of any other Kings of *Syria* (by the Name of Kings of *Syria*) but of those that reigned in *Damascus*; who in short time had swallowed up the petty Kingdoms of *Geshur*, *Ish-Tuk*, *Rehob*, besides that of *Sobab* before mentioned.

THE KINGS of SYRIA or DAMASCUS.

- 1 *Adad*, the Friend and Confederate of *Adad-ezar* King of *Sobab*, in whose Quarrel he was vanquished and slain by *David*, A. M. 2903.

2 *Rezin*, of whom the *Scripture* saith, in the 2d of *Chron.* That when *David* slew them of *Sobab*, he fled from *Adad-ezar* his Lord, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to *Damascus*, and dwelt therein, and reigned in *Damascus*.

- 2930 3 *Adad II.* an *Idumæan*, supposed to be of the Family of *Adad-ezar*, but rather as I think of *Adad*, for fear of *David* fled to *Egypt*, where he married *Taphnes* the Queen's Sister; and hearing that both *David* and *Joab* were dead, returned again into his Country, and as some write, expelled *Rezin* out of *Damascus*, and reigned there as King.

4 *Hezion*, Successor unto *Adad*.

5 *Tabrimon*, the Son of *Hezion*, as is said 2 *King.* 15. 18.

6 *Ben-badad*, the Son of *Tabrimon*, hired by *Asa* King of *Judab*, to aid him in his Wars against *Baasha* of *Israel*.

7 *Ben-badad II.* Son of the former, twice invaded *Israel* in the Reign of *Achab*, but both times notably repulsed; the first time by the Sally of 700 Men, at the Siege of *Samaria*; the next at *Aphec*, where with the like number in effect, he was taken Prisoner, and his Army routed.

8 *Hazael*, Captain of the Host to *Ben-badad*, anointed King of *Syria* by the Prophet *Elisha*, whom God appointed so to do, that by his hands he might avenge himself on *Ben-badad*, whom *Hazael* slew; but he proved as ill a Neighbour to the Kings of *Israel*, as those before him. He attempted upon *Judab* also in the Time of *Joas*, but bribed with the Treasures of the Temple, he withdrew his Forces.

9 *Ben-badad III.* Son of *Hazael*, discomfited in three set Battels, by *Joas* King of *Israel*.

10 *Ben-badad IV.* Son of *Ben-badad* the Third.

11 *Ben-badad V.* Son of *Ben-badad* the Fourth.

12 *Ben-badad VI.* Son of *Ben-badad* the Fifth, in the Time of one of which Three Kings, but which one we find not for a certain, *Jeroboam* the Son of *Joas* King of *Israel* subdued both *Chatham*, and *Damascus*; of which see 2 *King.* 14. v. 18.

13 *Rezin II.* Son of *Ben-badad* the sixth, and the last King of *Damascus*, who joining with *Pikab* King of *Israel*, against *Abaz* King of *Judab*, enforced him to call unto his aid *Tiglatb Pileser*, King of *Assyria*; by whom *Rezin* was taken and beheaded, and the City of *Damascus* won; the Kingdom of *Syria* by that means united to the *Assyrian* Empire. A. M. 3210.

After this Time, the *Syrians* continued subject to the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Monarchs; and in the overthrow of that Empire by the *Medes* and *Persians*, became a part of their Estate: remaining so till the first Battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, fought near *Issus* in *Cilicia*. The Victory wherein falling to the *Macedonians*, gave him without more trouble than the Siege of *Tyre*, the possession of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*. He dying not long after his Conquest of *Persia*. This Country lay as it were at stake betwixt *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, and *Antigonus* the Chief Lord of *Asia*; but the possession of it, together with the rest of the *Persian* Empire, in both *Asias*, fell in the conclusion to the share of *Seleucus*, for his many great and signal Victories surnamed *Nicanor*; a man strangely preferred. For being at the first Governor of *Cilicia* only, he was forced to leave *Babylon*, and to forsake his Province for fear of *Antigonus*, then dreadful to all the *Macedonian* Captains; and to fly into *Egypt*, where he became *Ptolemy's* Admiral. After which *Ptolemy* fighting at a pitch'd Field with *Demetrius* Son to *Antigonus*, took *Seleucus* with him, and having won the Battel, gave him aid and License to recover his former Government.

Seleucus,

Seleucus, well beloved of the People, soon made himself Master, not of *Chaldæa* only, but of all the *Persian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*: and not long after (being seconded by his good Friends *Ptolemy*, *Cassander*, and *Lysimachus*) he encountred *Antigonus* at *Ipsus* in *Ionia*, where *Antigonus* himself was slain, and his whole Army routed. This Victory made *Seleucus* Lord of all *Asia*, from whence passing over into *Europe*, he vanquished and slew *Lysimachus*: Seven Months after which Victory he was slain by *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, whose Patron and Protector he had formerly been; being yet the last Saviour of all *Alexander's* Princes, and the only Possessor of all the Dominions which his Master had, by the way of Conquest, *Aegypt* excepted. His Successors, although they were Lords of all *Asia*; yet since in *Syria* they kept their residence, to the end that they might the better furnish themselves with Soldiers out of *Greece* upon all occasions, as we said before, they were commonly called the Kings of *Syria*. But long they held not in that greatness of Estate and Power, which *Seleucus* left them; though a being full-bodied Tree, and of several Limbs, it endured the lopping off of many Branches, and many a sad blow at the very Root of it, before it fell. For in the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the Fourth of this House, *Arfaces*, a Noble *Parthian* recovered from it all the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire lying on that side of *Euphrates*; and erected the so much celebrated *Parthian* Kingdom, whereof more in *Persia*. And in the Reign of *Antiochus Magnus*, so called for his Victories in *Aegypt*, *Judæa*, and *Babylonia*, the *Romans* extorted from it all the *Asian* Provinces on this side Mount *Taurus*, not wanting many provocations to incite them to it: for he not only had made War against *Ptolemy Philopater* King of *Aegypt*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their Protection; but stirred up the Cities and States of *Greece* against them; invaded *Lysimachia*, and some other parts of *Europe*, in defiance of them, and had received *Annibal* the *Carthaginian*, and *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, their most mortal Enemies into his Dominion, governing his Councils by the Influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that Ambition and Avarice, to add to their Fame and Empire by the overthrow of so great a Prince, did persuade much with them. So that the Point being brought to a ready issue, they pleaded it on both sides in the Battel of *Magnesia*, a City of *Lydia*, to which *Antiochus* brought an Army of 300000 Foot, and as many Armed Chariots, besides store of Elephants, if the *Roman* Writers be not over lavish in their Reports. But rejecting the advice of *Annibal*, and committing his Affairs wholly to *Evil Counsellors*, he was vanquished by no more than Four Legions of Enemies, and for his Peace compelled to quit all his *Asian* Provinces on that side of *Taurus*, and to pay 15000 Talents in ready Money for the Charge of the War. The rest of his Estate they were content he should enjoy for a longer time, *Et libentius quod tam facile cessisset* (as *Plorus* handsomly puts it on him) because he had so easily relinquished that. Afterward in the Civil Broils among themselves, about the Succession of the Kingdom, *Alexander* King of the *Jews* took from them many of their best Towns in *Palestine*, as *Joppa*, *Gaza*, *Antbedon*, *Azotus*, *Rhinocoura*, almost all *Samarita*, and *Gaulonitis*, with *Scythopolis*, *Gadara*, and many other strong Towns in *Cæle-Syria*. Finally, when they had consumed almost all the Royal Race, and changed their Kings no less than ten times in Forty Years (a sure sign of a falling and expiring Kingdom) they were fain to cast themselves upon *Tigranes* the King of *Armenia*, a puissant and successful Prince, till ingaged in the Quarrel of *Mithridates* against the *Romans*; by whom stripped of all his Estates on this side *Euphrates*, he was fain to content himself with his own *Armenia*, leaving *Syria* to the absolute disposal of *Pompey*, who presently reduced it to the form of a Province. This said, we have not much more to do with the House of *Seleucus*, but to lay down their Names, and Times of their

Governments, till we draw towards the last end of

The *MACEDONIAN* KINGS
of *SYRIA*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A. M.
3654
3685
3704
3719
3739
3742
3778
3790
3802
3804
3814
3819
3821
3824
3827</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 <i>Seleucus Nicanor</i>, the first King of this House. 31. 2 <i>Antiochus</i>, surnamed <i>Soter</i>, or the Saviour; memorable for nothing so much, as marrying with <i>Stratonice</i> his Father's Wife, in his Father's life time. 3 <i>Antiochus</i> II. by his flattering Courtiers surnamed <i>Theos</i>, or the God; but being poisoned by his Wife, he proved a Mortal. 4 <i>Seleucus</i> II. surnamed by the like flattery <i>Callinicus</i>, or Fair Conqueror, because shamefully bearen by the <i>Parthians</i>. 5 <i>Seleucus</i> III. called for the like reason <i>Ceraunus</i>, or the Thunderer; the eldest Son of <i>Callinicus</i>. 6 <i>Antiochus</i> III. surnamed <i>Magnus</i>, the younger Son of <i>Callinicus</i>, a Prince that imbraced many great Actions, and was fortunate in his Success beyond <i>Euphrates</i>: he plagued the <i>Jews</i>, but lost all <i>Asia Minor</i> unto the <i>Romans</i>. 7 <i>Seleucus</i> IV. called <i>Philopater</i>, the Son of <i>Antiochus</i>, who first began to cast his Eye upon the Riches of the Temple at <i>Jerusalem</i>. 8 <i>Antiochus</i> IV. surnamed <i>Epiphanes</i>, or the Illustrious, but more truly <i>Epimanes</i>, or the Mad. The great Scourge of the <i>Jews</i>; Brother of <i>Seleucus Philopater</i>, with whom beginneth the Story of the first Book of the <i>Maccabees</i>. 9 <i>Antiochus</i> V. called by the Name of <i>Eupator</i>, the Son of <i>Epiphanes</i>; who by <i>Lysius</i> his Captain tyrannized over the poor <i>Judeans</i>, for the little time that he reigned; as did also, 10 <i>Demetrius</i>, surnamed <i>Soter</i>, Son of <i>Seleucus Philopater</i>; by the hands of <i>Nicanor</i>: having possessed himself of the Diadem, by the death of <i>Eupator</i>, slain in his favour by the Soldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards deposed for a time by <i>Alexander Bala</i>, pretending himself to be the Son of <i>Eupator</i>, supported herein by the <i>Antiochians</i>. 11 <i>Alexander Bala</i>, discomfited in his first Battel by <i>Demetrius</i>, whom he slew and vanquished in the second; married <i>Cleopatra</i> Daughter of <i>Ptolemy Philometor</i>, by whose aid he was victorious. But a Quarrel breaking out between them, <i>Ptolemy</i> invaded <i>Syria</i>, and caused himself to be crowned King of it; <i>Alexander</i> being slain by some of his Soldiers. 12 <i>Demetrius</i> II. surnamed <i>Nicanor</i>, Son of <i>Demetrius</i> the first, recovered his Father's Kingdom, a Friend of the <i>Maccabees</i>, but so cruel to his own People, that he was driven out of his Kingdom by <i>Tryphon</i> General of his Armies. 13 <i>Antiochus</i> VI. surnamed <i>Eutibius</i>, the Son of <i>Alexander</i> and <i>Cleopatra</i>, advanced unto the Throne by <i>Tryphon</i>, and after slain by him to make way for himself unto the Diadem. 14 <i>Tryphon</i>, called also <i>Diodorus</i>, having driven out <i>Demetrius</i>, and slain <i>Antiochus</i>, made himself King. 15 <i>Antiochus</i> VII. surnamed <i>Sedes</i>, Brother of <i>Demetrius</i>, having overcome and slain <i>Tryphon</i>, succeeded him in the Estate; for a while victorious against the <i>Parthians</i>, but afterwards |
|---|---|

3882 21 *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, during these Dis-
sentions was by the *Syrians* chosen King, that
by his Power they might be freed from the *Jews* and
Arabians: the most puissant Prince that reigned in *Syria*,
since the Time of *Antioch the Great*, as being King of
Syria by Election, of *Armenia* by Succession, of *Media*
by Conquest. But engaging himself with *Mithridates*,
(whose Daughter he had married) against the *Romans*,
was vanquished by *Lucullus*: who with the loss of five
Romans only, and the wounds of an hundred, is report-
ed to have slain of his Enemies above 100000 men. Fi-
nally, being again broken and vanquished by *Lucullus*,
he yielded himself to *Pompey* (who being appointed *Lu-*
cullus's Successor, deprived him of the Honour of end-
ing that War) and retaining to himself *Armenia* only,
he left all *Syria* to the *Romans*, 3890, having reigned
18 Years.

And tho *Antiochus Comagenus*, the Son of *Eusebes*, petitioned *Pompey* for a Restitution to the Throne of his Ancestors, yet it would not be granted: *Pompey* replying, That he would not trust the Country into such weak hands as were not able to defend it against the *Arabians*, *Parthians*, and the like Invaders; and so reduced it presently to the Form of a Province. The Government of this Country under these new Lords, was ac-

had almost tumbled *M. Antonius* out of his Throne. On this Occasion it was enacted by the Senate, That no man hereafter should have any Military or Legal Command in the Province where he was born; left perhaps supported by the natural propension of the People to one of their own Nation, and heartned by the power of his Friends, he might appropriate that to himself, which was common to the Senate and People of *Rome*. But this was when it was entire, and passed but from one Province only, *Phœnicia* being taken also into the accompt; which made the *Antiochians* so proud and insolent, that *Adrian*, in his Time intended to subduct *Phœnicia* from it, *Ne tot civitatum Metropolis Antiochia diceretur* (saith *Galicanus*) That *Antioch* might not be the chief of so many Cities. But what he lived not to accomplish, was performed by *Constantine*, by whom *Phœnicia* was not only taken off, but *Syria* it self divided into Four distinct Provinces, as was shewed before, each of them having its *Metropolis* or Mother City; but all subordinate to the Command of the *Comes*, or *Præfekt* of the *East*, as he to the Command of the *Præfektus Prætorii Orientis*, the greatest Officer of the Empire, of whom we have often spoken already.

For the defence hereof as well against all Foreign Invasions, as the Insurrections of the Natives (a wavering and inconstant People) the *Romans* kept here in continual pay Four Legions, with their aids, and other additaments. For so many *Mutianus* had here in the Time of *Galba*; and by the strength and reputation of those Forces, was able to transfer the Empire upon *Vespasian*. And tho the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors to whose share it fell, in the division of the Empire, rather increased than diminished any part of this strength, yet when the Fatal Time was come, and that Empire was in the declination, the *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Haunmer* their Third *Caliph*, Anno 636. possessed themselves of it, *Heraclius* then reigning in *Constantinople*. And it continued in their Power till *Tangolipix* the *Türk*, having conquered *Persia*, and the Provinces on that side of *Euphrates*, passed over the River into *Syria*, and made himself Master of a great part of that also. A Quarrel falling out betwixt him and the nearest Kinsmen, and thereby a great stop made in their furthest Progress, was thus composed by the Mediation of the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, in the Time of *Axon* his Successor. To *Cuthu Moses* was assigned a convenient Army, to be by him employed against the *Christians*, with Regal Power over the Provinces by him gained, without relation or subordination to the *Persian* Sultan; of whose successes and affairs hath been spoken elsewhere. To *Melich* and *Ducat*, two others of his discontented Kinsmen, but all of the same *Selzuccian* Family, he gave the fair Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, and those parts of *Syria*, with whatsoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Aegypt*, who then held all *Phœnicia*, and the Sea Coasts of *Palestine*; to be held in fee and vassalage of the Crown of *Persia*. To these Two Brethren then we are to refer the beginning of the *Turkish* Kingdom in *Syria*; who, with their Successors, by reason that here they held their Residence, caused themselves to be called

The TURKISH KINGS of DAMASCUS.

- 1075 1 *Melech* and *Ducat*, the first *Turkish* Kings of *Damascus*, by the Gift of *Axon*, the second Sultan of the *Türks*, in *Persia*, added to their Dominions all the rest of *Syria*, together with part of *Cilicia*, and some neighbouring Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*.
- 2 *N.N.* Sultan of *Damascus*, at such times as the *Christians* of the *West* won the *Holy Land*; against whom he notably defended the City and Territories of *Damascus*; and in a set Battle discomfited and slew *Roger* the *Norman* Prince of *Antioch*.

- 1146 3 *Noradine*, (the Son of *Sanguin*) General of the Armies, and Son-in-Law to the former King, succeeded him in the Estate. A Noble Prince, memorable amongst other things for a gallant Answer made to his Commanders, when they persuaded him to take the Advantage on the Death of *Baldwin* the Third, and to invade *Hierusalem* whilst the *Christians* were busie in solemnizing his Funerals. Not so (saith he) Compassion and Regard is to be had of the just sorrow of those *Christians*, who have lost such a King, as could not be equalled in the World.
- 1175 4 *Melechala*, Son of *Noradine*, contemned by reason of his Youth, by his Nobles, and Soldiery, who made choice of *Saladine* for their King; by whom dispossessed first, and after vanquished.
- 1176 5 *Saladine*, the *Turkish* Sultan of *Aegypt*, having vanquished the *Persians*, or *Partians*, coming under the Conduct of *Cacobed*, Uncle to *Melechala*, to restore that Prince to his Estate, remained King of *Damascus*: and by the puissance of his Armies, recovered from the *Christians* all *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hierusalem* also.
- 1199 6 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphzel*, the eldest Son of *Saladine*, succeeded in the Realm of *Damascus*; which he exchanged for that of *Aegypt* with his Brother *Elaziz*.
- 7 *Elaziz*, The second Son of *Saladine*, succeeded upon this exchange in the Realm of *Damascus*, murdered not long after by his Uncle *Saphradine*.
- 8 *Saphradine*, The Brother of *Saladine*, having barbarously murdered eight of the Sons of *Saladine*, (the youngest called *Saphradine* escaping only, who was after Sultan of *Aleppo*) possessed himself of the Kingdom of *Damascus*, left at his death to *Corradine*, his Son or Nephew.
- 9 *Corradine*, Son or Nephew to the Tyrant *Saphradine*, was by him at his death left Sultan of *Damascus*; to which all *Syria* and *Palestine* were then made *Provincials*. But the Treacheries and Murthers of *Saphradine* crying loud for Vengeance, *Haalon* the *Tartar*, in the Year 1262. having taken the King of *Damascus* Prisoner (but whether *Corradine*, or some other, I am not able to say) brought him before the Walls of the City, threatening to kill him in the sight of the People, if they did not deliver it unto him. Which the Citizens refusing to do, the wretched King was torn in pieces, and the City taken by assault: the Kingdom taken by the Conquerors, conferred upon *Agab* the Son of *Haalon*. And so ended the *Selzuccian* Family of the Kings of *Damascus* in the person of *Corradine*, or the Son of *Corradine*, most miserably murdered by the *Tartars*; as it had done in *Aegypt* 17 Years before, in the person of *Melechfela*, and *Elmutan*, the Son of *Meledine*, as villainously deposed and murdered by the *Mamelucks*. So slippery is the Foundation of those Kingdoms that are laid in Blood.

Nor did this Kingdom hold long in the Hands of the *Tartars*, recovered from them in short time by the *Mamelucks*, then Kings of *Aegypt*; from them once more regained by the furious *Tamarlane*: who in the Year 1400 besieged *Damascus* with an Army of 1200000 Men, (if the number be not mistaken, and one Cypher added more than should) in pursuit whereof he filled up the Ditches with his Prisoners, put all the People to the Sword; and with great Art raised three Towers as a Trophy of his Victory, built with the Heads of those whom he had so slaughtered. A Man so strangely made up of Vice and Vertues, that it is hard to say which had the predominancy. But the violence of this

Tempest

Tempest being overblown, the *Mamalucks*, from whom he had also conquered the Kingdom of *Egypt*, recovered *Syria* by degrees, and repaired *Damascus*, continuing in their Power till the Year 1516, when *Selimus* the First discomfited *Campion Gaurus* the *Egyptian Sultan* in the Fields of *Aleppo*. Upon the News whereof the Citizens of *Damascus*, fearing the spoil of their rich City, then of very great Trading, set open their Gates unto the *Victors*; as did all the other

Cities and Towns of *Syria*, by their Example. By means whereof, without any more Blows, the *Turks* became Lords of this Country; as the next Year of *Egypt* also, by the Vanquishment and Death of *Tamombeius* who succeeded *Campion*: So rooting out the Name and Government of the *Mamalucks*, and adding those rich Kingdoms to the *Turkish Empire*.

And so much for *Syria*.

MOUNT HERMON.

IN our Passage out of *Cælo-Syria* into *Palestine*, we must cross *Mount Hermon*; a ledge of Hills; which beginning at the East Point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly South: in different places, and by several Nations called by divers Names. By *Ptolemy* called *Alfadamus*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*, by the *Phœnicians*, *Syrion*; and by that Name remembered in the Book of *Psalms*. But *Alfadamus* they are called only where they border upon *Cælo-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Trachonitis* from *Arabia Deserta*, they are called by *Moses* and the Scriptures *Hermon*, part of the Kingdom of *Og*, the King of *Basan*, as is said *Joshua*, Chap. 12. 6. *Syrian*, by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed *Deut.* 3. 9. Running further after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead*, or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonitæ*, after the Name of the Region along which they pass, and are conceived to be the highest part of all *Mount Libanus*, or rather of that long ridge of Mountains which there take beginning. And so we are to understand the Words of the Prophet *Jeremy*, saying, *Galaad tu mihi Caput Libani*, as the *Vulgar* readeth it. That is to say, That as the Head is the highest part of a man; so these Hills, or this part of them, was the highest of all the Branches, or Spurs of *Libanus*, called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that Heap of Stone which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a Witness of the Covenant which was made betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. 27. the Word signifying in the Original, *An Heap of Witnesses*. And *Laban* said, *This Heap is a Witness betwixt me and thee this Day: therefore*

was the name of it called Galeed, ver. 28. By these Hills, and the main Body of the *Anti-Libanus* lying on the North, and the Mountains of *Phœnicia* and *Idumæa* on the West, the Land of *Palestine* is so shut up on every side, that no Fortrefs can be stronger by Wit or Art, than that Country by Nature: the Passages in some parts so narrow, as hardly to afford passage for a single person. *Clauditur undique montibus hinc abruptis rupibus, & profundis vallibus concursu Torrentium, inde artus & implexis anfractibus sic contractis, ut per angustos colles vix pateat transitus viatori*, as my Author hath it. I had almost forgot to add, That that part of these Hills, which is commonly known in Scripture by the Name of *Hermon*, is in one place thereof called *Sihon*, as *Deut.* 4. 48. where it is said, That the *Israelites* possessed the Land from *Aroer* on the Bank of the River *Arnon*, even to *Mount Sihon*, which is *Hermon*. As also, That one of the highest Tops or Summits of it, had the Name of *Amana*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the Fourth of the *Canticles*; by some mistaken for *Amanus*, a Branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia* in the Lesser *Asia*, with which *Solomon* had but small or no acquaintance. And so having cleared our selves of so much of this Mountain, as lay before us in our way, we pass over to *Palestine*: where we shall meet with it again, (or rather with the Western Parts and Branches of it) under the Names of *Gilead* and *Trachonitis*, as a part of that Country.

OF

PALESTINE.

PALESTINE is bounded on the East, with the Hills last mentioned, by which parted from *Cælo-Syria*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean Sea*, and some part of *Phœnicia*; on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus*; which divides it from *Syria*, and the rest of *Phœnicia*; and on the South with some part of *Arabia Petraea*.

It was first called *Palestine* from the *Philistims*, the most potent Nation of those parts. A name first found in the History of *Herodotus*, but generally used in times succeeding, by the *Greeks* and *Romans*. And this I look on as the proper and adequate name of the whole Countrey, according to the bounds before laid down: the others, by which commonly called, being more restrained, and properly belonging to so much hereof, as was in possession of the Tribes of *Israel*. And of this sort, are 1 *Canaan*, or the Land of *Canaan*, so called from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*, by whom first peopled after the Flood. 2 The Land of *Promise*, because by God promised to *Abraham*, and his seed, for an habitation. 3 *Israel*, from the *Israelites* or sons of *Jacob*, whose surname was *Israel*. 4 *Judæa*, and by us *Jewry*, from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, the most prevalent of the Tribes of *Israel*. And 5 *Terra Sancta*, or the *Holy Land*, because the subject of the greatest part of the Holy Scripture; and that the work of our Redemption was herein accomplished by our Lord and Saviour. Which notwithstanding we must know, that though these names do many times by a *Synecdoche*, express the whole Countrey of *Palestine*; yet neither the *Canaanites* or the *Israelites* were ever Masters of of the whole: except only in the time of *David*, and of some of the *Maccabæan* Princes, as also in some part of the reign of *Herod* the Great; all which had the great fortune to command it totally.

But being the most considerable people of it were the Tribes of *Israel*; we will look first upon the Countrey People under that capacity. And for so much hereof as was held by them, it is situate between the 3^d. and 4th. Climates; the longest day being fourteen hours and a quarter. The whole length but 200 miles and not above 80 in breadth; yet was of such a fruitful soil, that before the coming in of the *Israelites* it had 30 Kings: and after the coming in of that people, so extremely populous, that *David* numbred a Million and 300000 fighting men, besides those of the Tribes of *Levi* and *Benjamin*. But of the fruitfulness hereof more shortly.

As for the People they were by composition of a middle stature, but strong of body: in their best times a murmuring and stiff-necked generation, never well pleased either with God or Man, with their Priests or Princes, seldom conform unto the Commandments of their God, nor very much constant to themselves: So crippled in their goings betwixt Superstitions and Idolatry, that they knew not how to walk uprightly: Idolatrous above measure, and incorrigible in it, till their coming back from the Captivity of *Babylon*: and after that as Superstitions and severe, in the point of their Sabbath, as they had formerly been exorbitant in the worship of Idols. No Medium on either side, but extream in both. Divided anciently into the four ranks, that

is to say, 1 *Jews*, 2 *Hellenists*, 3 *Proselytes*, and 4 *Samaritans*; all of them pretending a Right unto this Countrey, though not all of them dwelling in it.

Of these the first called *Jews*, from *Judah* the predominant Tribe; and *Hebrews*, from *Heber* the Son of *Selah*, grand-son of *Sem*, and one of the Ancestors of *Abraham*, were such as naturally descended of the Tribes of *Israel*, and lived for the most part in their own Countrey; adhering to the Law of *Moses*, and embracing the whole Canon of the Old Testament, from the Book of *Genesis* to the Book of the Prophet *Malachi*. Called also *Israelites*, because descended from the loyns of their Father *Jacob*, to whom God gave the name of *Israel*, for his great honor. But after the ten Tribes were carried away by *Salmanasser* to an endless captivity: and two Tribes (with the remainder of the rest) returned from that temporary one which they found in *Babylon*, the name of *Israelites* was laid by, and that of *Jews* assumed, as more proper to them. These read the Scriptures, and executed all Divine Offices in their natural *Hebrew*.

2. The *Hellenists*, were such as were *Jews* by parentage, but lived dispersed in most Provinces of the *Roman Empire*; called by that name (we may *English* it, the *Græcizing Jews*) because they read the Scriptures in the Greek or *Septuagint's* Translation; and performed all publick Offices in that language also. In other things as superstitious in their Sabbath, as tenacious of their *Circumcision* and others of the Rites and Ceremonies of the Law of *Moses*, as the *Jews* of *Palestine*: and for that reason, scorned and derided by the *Gentiles*, amongst whom they lived; *Credat Judæus apellæ*, saith one of their Poets, relating to their circumcising; *Recutitaque Sabbata palles*, saith another of them, with scorn enough unto their Sabbaths. *Novi illic ritus & cæteris mortalibus contrarii*, saith *Tacitus*, a graver Author, of the whole body of their *Rituals*, or Acts of worship.

3. The *Proselytes* were such, as not being *Jews* by birth, or descent of Parentage, conformed themselves unto their customs, and desired to be admitted to their Religion. And these were all of two sorts, the one called, *Proselyti Portæ*; and the other, *Proselyti fœderis*. The first of these, admitted by the *Jews* to the worship of God, and instructed in the hopes of life to come, were only tyed to those Precepts which the *Hebrew Doctors* call the *Precepts of the sons of Noah*: but were neither circumcised nor otherwise conform to the Law of *Moses*. Which Precepts of the sons of *Noah*, so called, because supposed to be given by *Noah* unto his Sons, when he came out of the *Ark*, were seven in number: that is to say, 1 That they dealt uprightly with every man. 2 That they blessed and magnified the Name of God. 3 That they worshipped not any false Gods, but to abstain from Idolatry. 4 To refrain from all unlawful lusts and copulations. 5 To keep themselves from theft and robbery. 6 And from shedding blood. And 7 Not to eat the Flesh or Member of any Beast, taken from it when it was alive; by which all cruelty was forbidden. These, though they were admitted to the worship of God, and might repair unto the Temple; yet because of their Uncircumcision, they were not suffered to converse with the *Jews*, nor to come into the same Court of the Temple

Temple with them : but were accounted as unclean, and had their Court apart assigned them in the worship of God, which was called *Atrium Gentium*, or *Immundorum*, and was the outermost of all. The other *Profelytes*, which was called *Profelyti federis*, conformed in all things to the *Jews*, as in Circumcision, Sabbath-keeping, and all other Ceremonies : and were accounted of as adopted *Jews* ; privileged as they were, to worship in the *Inner-Court* ; bound as they were, from eating or drinking with a *Gentile* ; and in a word, partakers with them in all things both divine and humane, and different in nothing from them but their Race or Parentage. These last in the New Testament called simply *Profelytes*, without any addition : the former by the name of *Σεβόμενοι*, or the *worshipping Gentiles*, of which see *Act. 16. v. 14. & ch. 17. v. 4. 17. & ch. 18 v. 4. &c.*

4. As for the *Samaritans*, they possessed a great part of this Countrey, which the *Profelytes* did not ; yet were not so much *Jews* as they. But of these more anon, when we come to *Samarita*, the proper place of their abode.

As for the natural *Jews* themselves, they are divided also into several Sects ; as viz. 1 *Esseni*, 2 the *Sadduces*, 3 the *Scribes*, 4 the *Pharisees*, 5 the *Herodians*, and 6 the *Gaulonites*, or *Galilaens*. The *Essenes*, or *Esseni*, derive their name as some conceive, from *Asca*, which signifieth *facere*, to do, because they laboured with their hands : as others say, from *Asa*, which signifieth *θεραπεύω*, or to cure diseases, because they were much given to the Study and Practice of *Physick*. Their beginning is not yet agreed on. The first time they were heard of, was in the time of *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, about 150 years before Christ's Nativity ; then mentioned by *Josephus*, *Antiqu. Judaic. lib. 13. cap. 9.* A *Pythagorean* kind of *Jew*, and not much differing in opinion from those old *Philosophers*, professing as they did, 1 Community of Goods, 2 Abstaining even from lawful pleasures, 3 Forbidding of Oaths, 4 Forbearing Wine, and drinking Water, 5 Ascribing the conduct of Affairs to fate or destiny, And 6 Using only inanimate or unbloody Sacrifices. Some other *Dogmata* they had, but these the principal : forbidding Marriage not being common to the Sect, but only to some few amongst them. And though we find no mention of them in the *New Testament*, the Sect in those times being small and inconsiderable ; yet it is thought that *St. Paul* alludeth to their Tenets : as where he adviseth *Timothy* to make use of Wine, and glanceth upon those who prohibited Marriage, *1 Tim. 4. 3.* or condemned others in the use of Meat and Drink, *Coloss. 2. 16.* As for the manner of their life, they lived together as it were in *Monasteries*, or *Colledges*, and in every one had their *Συνεῖον*, or *Oratory* : admitting none into their Fellowships or Society, unless he brought all he had into their common Treasury ; and not then neither under a three years Probationership. More of them he that listeth to see, may satisfy himself in that Tract of *Philo*, intitled *De vita contemplativa*, where he most copiously describeth their *Institutes* and course of life, mistakingly applied by *Eusebius* to the *Primitive Christians*, as if that Tract had purposely been composed of them, by that learned *Jew*.

2. The *Sadduces* either derive their name from *Sadoc*, who lived about the time of *Alexander the Great*, and is thought to be the first Founder of them ; or from *Sadoc* an *Hebrew* word signifying *Justice* ; the men pretending to be so exact and strict *Justitiaries*, as if they would justify themselves before God's Tribunal. The occasion of the Sect or Heresie (for both it was) said to arise from a mistake of *Antigonus*, a right learned man, who teaching, That we ought not to serve God, as Servants do their Masters. for the hope of Reward, occasioned *Sadoc* and *Battus*, two of his Auditors, to conceive that there was no Reward nor Recom-

pence for a Godly Life ; and consequently, no *Resurrection* nor World to come, neither Angels nor Spirits. These were the most capital of their Errors, as appeareth *Act. 23. 6, 8. Matth. 22. 3. Luk. 20. 20, 27, &c.* But other *Dogmata* they had, not mentioned in the Holy Scripture ; ascribing nothing unto Fate or Predestination, but all things altogether to a man's free-will ; 2 Teaching the Soul to be annihilated at the hour of death ; 3 Rejecting all Traditions ; and 4 Allowing no more Scripture than the five Books of *Moses*. In most of their opinions contrary to the *Scribes*, and *Pharisees*, but joyning with them both in opposing Christ. and though like *Sampson's* Foxes they looked divers ways, and were tyed together by their Tails only ; yet in those Tails they carried Firebrands to destroy God's Harvest, and had done it, if they had been able.

3. But indeed the *Pharisees* were the men, who were the Master-wits in the Arts of Mischiefe, *Homines robustioris impietatis*, in the Father's words. Fellows of such a perfect and concocted Malice, that they were almost able to possess the Devil. Their name they derive from *Pharez*, which is to separate. *Separatists* we may rightly call them : For they were first *ἀφορισμένοι εἰς τὸ νόμον*, separated to the Study of the Law of God, as *Saul* was brought up to that purpose at the feet of *Gamaliel* : And 2dly, *ἀφορισμένοι εἰς τὴν ἀγιότητα*, separated from the rest of Mankind, by a more strict profession of sanctity, as the *Pharisee* boasted of himself, that he was not as other men, or as that *Publican*. And that they might so seem unto simple men, they did thirdly separate themselves from the Society and Conversation of others not so pure as themselves, whom they called *Populum terræ*, or the Sons of the Earth, upbraiding Christ that he kept company with *Publicans* and *Sinners* : and more than so, used a particular kind of Habit, and had a Garb unto themselves which no others had ; using it for a by-word amongst themselves, that *Vestes Populi terræ, sunt concubatio Phariseorum*. To which end, as their countenances were more clouded and severe than others ; so did they wear their *Phylacteries* of a broader size than others did : which, by the way, were scrolls of Parchment bound about their Heads, and upon their hands, wherein were writ the Ten Commandments of God ; foolishly so interpreting the words of *Deut. And they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes, &c. c. 6. v. 8.* They began at the same time with the *Sadduces*, which was about 300 years before Christ's Nativity. As for their *Dogmata*, besides those specified above, which were also practicable, they maintained, 1 A *Pythagorean Metempsychosis*, affirming that the Soul of a Righteous man passed from one into another at the time of his death : from whence the divers opinions touching Christ our Saviour, *Mat. 6. 14.* are supposed to spring ; as if his Body had been animated with the Soul of *Elias*, *John the Baptist*, *Jeremy*, or some other Prophet. 2 They adhered so tenaciously to unwritten Traditions, that in comparison of them they Neglected the written Law, as either insufficient or impertinent : And 3 ascribed so much sanctity unto frequent washings, especially when they came from Market, *Mark 7. 4.* (where possibly they might meet with some unclean persons) and before their sitting down to Meat, *Mat. 15. 2.* that if they came unto a place where there was not water enough both to drink and wash, the *Pharisee* would rather chuse to wash than drink, though he died for thirst. More of them he that list to see, may find it copiously set down in the four and twentieth Chapter of Saint *Matthew* ; and thither I refer the Reader. By means of which pretensions to so great a sanctity, and some other Arts they had to abuse the People, they grew so strong, and had such store of followers and dependants on them, that they became formidable in short time to their Kings and Princes. Insomuch that *Alexandra* durst not enter on the Government in her Childrens nonage, as *Josephus* telleth us, *Antiq. lib. 13. cap. 23.* until she had permitted all

all things unto their disposing; *ἡ μὲν δὲ τὴν ἐκείνων γράμματα, &c.* and promised to do nothing without their advice. And this she did by the direction of King *Alexander*, her dying Husband: whose Government, as she found by too sad experience had in many things proved unsuccessful, *διὰ τὴν ὑβρίδα πρὸς αὐτὴν*, because she had put some scorns upon them, and otherwise offended that prevailing Faction. A Faction so predominant amongst the People, saith the same *Josephus*, *Antiq. lib. 19. cap. 18* ὥς ἡ βασιλεία πλεονέκτης, ἡ καὶ Ἀρχιερέως, &c. that whatsoever they pleased to spread abroad, either of the High Priest, or the King himself, how false or scandalous soever, it was received for truth without more dispute, or any inquiry made into it.

4. But of the *Pharisees* enough, of the *Scribes* anon. Proceed we now to the *Herodians* and the *Gaulonites*, whom I look not on, as either the Authors or Promoters of any Sect of Religion in the Jewish Church; but as the names of two opposite Factions in the Civil State. The first were such who depending upon *Herod's* Fortune, as he did on the pleasure of the *Roman* Emperors, solicited the paying of Tribute to the *Romans*; and earnestly pressed upon that point, that *Herod* might be thereby the more endeared to his Masters of *Rome*, and they to him. Upon this ground nick named *Herodians* by the People, as men that more endeavoured the greatness and Estate of *Herod*, than the prosperity and liberty of their Native Countrey. And possible enough it is, that some amongst them seeing the Magnificence of *Herod's* Palace, and experimentally knowing his Prowess, might fancy him to be the *Messiah* so long looked for, and thereby own this name with a better Title, than the others did. Opposite unto these, were those called the *Gaulonites* (we may call the one the *Court-Faction*, the other the *Faction* of the Countrey, or common people:) so named from one *Judas a Gaulonite*, as *Josephus* calleth him, from the place of his birth; a *Galilean*, as *Gamaliel* calleth him, *Act. 5. 37*. from the place of his abode or habitation: By him the *Jews* were practised with to deny this Tribute, telling them that it was a manifest token of their servitude, and that they ought to know no Lord, but the Lord of Heaven: drawing them finally on this ground into open Arms, in which Actions he and his Adherents perished, and were brought to nothing. Most of his followers were of *Galilee*, though he had some Disciples in *Hierusalem* and *Samaria* also: and of these *Galileans* were those poor men, whose blood *Pilate* is said to mingle with their Sacrifices, *Luk. 13. 1*.

The Language of this People, by them called the *Hebrew*, was naturally and originally the same which *Abraham* found in the Land of *Canaan*, at his coming thither; as hath been shewn before when we were in *Phœnicia*. Used by them constantly till their subjugation by the *Babylonians*, when being led captive to that Countrey, and conforming themselves to the Speech and Dialect of it; they came at last to speak a kind of broken Language, neither true *Chaldean*, nor good *Hebrew*, but one made of both. *Chaldee* as to the main body of it; but *Hebrew* as to the affixes, points, and Conjugation: being the same with that which we now call the *Syriack*. And at their coming home, after seventy years, had so far lost the knowledge of their Mother-Tongue, that they were not able to understand the words of the Holy Scripture, when *Ezra* read it in their hearing: in so much that he was forced to imploy some learned in that Tongue to expound it to them. To this the *Scribes* so often mentioned in the New Testament, must refer their original: there being no such Office heard of till the time of *Ezra*, though long before that time the Law had ordinarily been read unto them in the Feast of Tabernacles. For this cause they were called *Scribes of the Law*, *Ezra 7. 6*. *Doctors of the Law*, *Luk. 5. 17*. and simply by the name of *Lawyers*, *Luk. 7. 30*. as men whose office was to expound the Law, and make it intelligible to the People. These we may best resemble

to the Canonists in the Church of *Rome*, or the Divinity-Reader in some School or College: and grew to such great estimation in the Jewish State, that it was hard to say at last whether the *Pharisees* or they were the better men. For what the *Pharisees* gained on the common people by pretence of Sanctity, these got more justifiably by their zeal to the written Word, which they endeavoured to preserve from the common dangers both of corruption and contempt. And though I look on those men especially, as the name of a Faction, not a Sect; yet being they held so close to the *Pharisees*, and concurred with them in most of their Superstitions, as appeareth *Mat. 23*. I consider them as a strong and potent Faction, of great authority and influence in affairs of moment.

For matters of Religion, the People of this Land were privileged above all others, had they had the grace to make good use of it: the Law being given to them by God the Father, the Gospel preached amongst them by God the Son, and that Gospel countenanced and confirmed before their eyes, by the miraculous Operations of the Holy Ghost. The Government of that Church in the time of the Law, by a subordination of Priests and Levites to their several Heads; the Priests divided by King *David* into twenty four Ranks or Classes, each Class serving in their turns at the Holy Temple: the Chiefs or Heads of which several Classes, made but that Body of men which are called *Principes Sacerdotum*, or Chief Priests, so often mentioned in the Writings of the Holy Evangelists. Over all which there was one Supreme, whom they called *Summum Sacerdotem*, or the High Priest, descended lineally from *Aaron*, till the *Romans* out of Avarice and Reason of State made the Office saleable. And because possibly the High Priest might be under some pollution, and so incapable by Law to perform his Office, he had his *Suffragan* (or *Sagan*) to discharge it for him. Of which sort was *Zephaniab*, the *Sagan* or second Priest to *Semiab*, mentioned *Jer. 52. 24*. And of this sort is *Annas* thought by some to have been to *Caiaphas*; and for that cause the title of High-Priest to be given to both, *Luk. 3. 2*. though others think that *Annas* was High-Priest in right, and the other in fact; the one being deposed by the *Romans*, and the other superinduced into the place. In time of Christianity they were governed as in other Churches, by a subordination of Priests to Bishops. The first Bishop said to be *St. James*, the Son of *Alpheus*, commonly called the Lord's Brother; affirmed by *Ignatius*, Scholar to the Apostles, in his Epistle ad *Trallianos*; by *Egesippus*, who lived in the Apostles times, as *St. Hierom* and *Eusebius* cite him; as also by *Clement* of *Alexandria* cited by *Eusebius*, *Hist. l. 7. c. 14*. by *Cyril* of *Hierusalem* *Catechism 4* and *14*. *Epiphanius*, *Hæres. 78. n. 7*. *St. Ambrose* in *Gal. 1*. *St. Chrysost.* on the last of *St. John's* Gospel; *St. Hierom* in his Catalogue of Ecclesiastical Writers; *St. Augustine* cont. *Crescon. l. 2. c. 37*. To whom there may be added the joynt consent of 289 Prelates assembled in the sixth General Council holden at *Constantinople*, affirming *James* the Lord's Brother to be the first Bishop of *Hierusalem*: all of them, with the Fathers before mentioned, taking the word Bishop in that sense, in which it generally passed for the times they lived in. His Successors subject at the first to the Bishop of *Cæsarea*, as their *Metropolitan*; though privileged in their own Diocese, with the rights of *Patriarchs*, as appears evidently by the Acts of the *Nicene Council*. But afterwards for the greater honour of the Holy City, wherein our Saviour wrought the work of our Redemption, it was ordained at *Chalcedon*, that the Bishop of *Hierusalem* should have as well the jurisdiction as the name of a *Patriarch*; the three *Palestines* (for *Constantine* had before divided it into so many Provinces) being subducted from the power of the See of *Antioch*, to make up his *Patriarchate*. So stood it in elder times, but now by the incroachment of

Mabometanism the *Christian Faith* is obscured, and the beauty of it so eclipsed, that were it not for some *Scets* of *Christians* dwelling in *Mount Sinai*, and about *Hierusalem*, it might be said without any manifest untruth, to be quite extinguished. The Bishop of *Jerusalem*, and the Church there settled, were in the *Apostles* Times looked on as the Head and Fountain of the *Christian Faith*, and *Jerusalem* as the *Metropolis* and Royal City of *Judea*. But when *Jerusalem* was utterly destroyed by *Titus*, Son of *Vespasian*, *Cæsarea* became the head City of *Judea*, and consequently the Bishop of *Jerusalem* became subject to the Bishop of *Cæsarea*, and continued so till he recovered a part of his former Power and Authority by the Decrees of Succeeding Councils.

But to look back upon the Country, it cannot be described more fully and significantly, than *Moses* hath done it to our hands, in *Deut. 8.* where it is said to be *A Land of Brooks and Waters, of Fountains and Depths, that spring out of the Valleys and Hills; a Land of Wheat and Barley, and Vines, and Fig-trees, and Pomegranates; of Olive, and Honey: a Land, wherein was Bread, without scarceness; a Land whose Stones were as Iron, and out of whose Hills one may dig Brass.* An ample commendation; and yet in some sort short of the Fertility of this flourishing Country, which did not only consist in the choice and plenty, but the perpetuity of its Fruits; it being on Record in the Epistles of the Emperor *Julian* (surnamed the *Apostate*) that the Fig-Trees and other Fruit-Trees herein, were seldom or never without Fruits, the old not fully falling off, till the new come on. Which his Report, if true, (as certainly he did not love our Saviour so well as to flatter the Country for his sake) we have then an Answer to the Difficulty, which hath so much perplexed all Commentators of Former Times; and that is, Why our Saviour should curse the Fig-tree for not bearing Fruit, when the Text saith, *That the time of Fruits was not yet come, Mark 14. 13.* For tho the Time for new Fruits was not yet come (it being then but early Spring) yet our Saviour being hungry might expect to find some of the old, and failing of his expectation, lay that Curse upon it. Nor is this solution of the Doubt discountenanced, (rather much confirmed) by the Character and Condition of the Country, as it stands at present; naturally adorned with beautiful Mountains, and luxurious Valleys, the Rock affording excellent Waters, and the Air never pinched with Colds, nor scorched with Heats. And tho either by the negligence of the Inhabitants, or some Curse laid upon the Land, far short of that Fertility with which once it flourished; yet still *Figs, Olives, Pomegranates, Palm-trees*, are here very frequently to be seen, some store of *Wine*, with *Oranges*, and the *Apple of Paradise*, which they preserve upon the Trees all the Year long (which agrees very well with that of *Julian* spoken of before) as well furnished with *Honey* and *Sugar-Canes*, and also with *Goats, Swine, Hares, Quails, and Partridges*: but pestered so in many places with *Rats* and *Mice*, that if it were not for certain *Birds* which feed upon them, it were not possible for the People to have any Harvest. *Balm* they had anciently, not now. Nor any *Nuts, Pears, Plums, or Cherries*, but what are brought hither from *Damascus*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are 1 *Chisou*, the *Chorsecus* of *Ptolemy*, which riseth out of *Mount Tabor* in *Galilee*, and falleth into the *Mediterranean Sea*, not far from *Mount Carmel* in *Phonicia*. 2 *Cedron*, a Torrent rather than a River, passing betwixt *Hierusalem* and the *Mount of Olives*; but more remarkable for many notable Actions, than many others, of a greater both name and course. For over this Brook did *David* pass when he fled from *Abulom*; and over this our Saviour, the Son of *David*, passed when he went to his Passion. On the Banks hereof did *Aza* the King of *Judab* burn his Mother's Idols, 1 *King. 15.* as *Josiah* did the Vessels which were made for *Baal*, 2 *King. 23.* 3 *Zared*. And 4 *Naphtha*, which arising out of the Hills of the Tribe of *Judab*, have their

fall into the *Mediterranean*. 5 *Arnon*, which hath his Spring in the Hills so called, and endeth his course in the *Mare Mortuum*. 6 *Jaboc*, oft mentioned in the *Scriptures*; which issuing out of the *Mountains of Galaad*, And 7 *Hermon*, which springing from the Hills so named, lose themselves in *Jordan*. 8 *Jordan*, so called from *For* and *Dan*, two neighbouring Fountains, out of which he seems to take his source; tho they do also fetch their Spring from *Phiala*, a round deep Well at the foot of *Anti-Libanus*, about Twenty Four Miles from these Fountains, into which he maketh his way like a Mole under ground. A River of more fame, than length, breadth, or depth, running from *Norib* to *Scuth*, almost in a strait line to the *Dead Sea*, where he endeth his course; not navigably deep, nor above 10 Yards in breadth, where broadest; shadowed on both sides with *Poplars, Tamarisk-trees*, and *Reeds* of many several sorts, of some of which the *Arabians* make Darts and *Javelins*, of others *Arrows*, and some again they fashion into Pens to write with. Passing along it maketh two Lakes, the one in the *Upper Galilee*, by the Ancients called *Samachonitis*, dry for the most part in Summer, and then covered with Shrubs and Sedge, not mentioned in the *Holy Scriptures*: The other in the *Lower Galilee*, about an 100 Furlongs in length, and about Forty in breadth; called the *Sea of Galilee* from the Country: The *Lake of Tyberias*, from a City of that Name on the Banks thereof, and for the like cause called also the *Lake of Genesareth*. And here it is to be observed, that the River passeth thorough this Lake with so swift a course, that it preserves it self distinct from the Waters of it both in Taste and Colour, as is affirmed of *Nilus* for a long space in the *Mediterranean*, and other great Rivers in their Falls. Finally, having run thorough the Plains of *Hiericho*, it finisheth its course at last in the *Mare mortuum*, or *Dead Sea*. Honoured with the Name of a *Sea*, because salt and large, seventy Miles long, and sixteen broad; furnishing with Salt the whole Land of *Jewry*, but called the *Dead Sea*, either because it had no visible efflux into the *Ocean*, nor is it at all increased with the Waters of this River, and many other *Torrents* which fall into it; or because no living Creature is nourished in it, suffocated with the *Bituminous* savour which it sendeth forth, from the abundance of which Matter it is also called *Lacus Asphaltites*. Nigh hereunto stood the once famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrab*, with three others more, whence the Valley had the name of *Pentapolis*, destroyed for their Abominations by a Fire from Heaven: now fruitful in shew only, but not in substance; the Fruits here growing, being very fair unto the Eye, *Sed levi tactu pressa in vagum fatiscunt pulverem*, but if touched, moulder into Ashes, as *Solinus* hath it. *Jansonius* saith, *Jordan* is the greatest River in *Palestine*, which arising from Two Fountains is united in one Stream beneath *Cæsarea Philippi*, thence passing to *Selencia*, it forms the *Lake of Meron*, so watering *Hazoreth Gentium*, and passing between *Corazim* to the East, and *Capernaum* to the West, into the *Lake of Tiberius*, or *Sea of Galilee*; it passeth by *Salem*, *Bethabara*, and *Livias*, into the *Dead Sea*, where it changeth its Waters into Salt. The Fish either return back, or die in this Sea. The River having at last forced its way through this Lake, is swallowed up by an horrible Whirlpit or Abyss. The whole length of the River is about 100 Miles. Monsieur *Therrenot* who saw it, saith it is about half as broad at *Jerico* as the *Seine* is at *Paris*, very rapid, and the Waters of it thick, and passing through Fat Lands, full of Fish, and on both sides shaded with pleasant Woods.

Chief Hills and Mountains of it, besides *Anti-Libanus* and *Mount Hermon*, spoken of already, which be only borderers, are 1 *Mount Sion*, memorable for the *Tower of David*, which was built upon it, called frequently *The Holy Hill of Sion*. 2 *Mount Moriah*, famous for the intended Sacrifice of *Isaas*, and the Temple of *Solomon*. 3 *Mount Calvary*, on which *CHRIST* suffered, supposed

sed to be the Burial-place of our Father *Adam*. 4 *Mount Tabor*, on which our Saviour was transfigured. 5 *Mount Olivet*, from which he ascended into Heaven. 6 *Mount Garizim*, whereon stood the Samaritan's Temple, their ordinary place of Worship, mentioned *John* 4. 20. 7 The Mountains of *Saron*, stretching with intermixed Valleys from the Sea of *Galilee* to the *Mediterranean*, not far from *Tyre*, there ending in a White Cliff, and for that cause called *Capo Bianco* by the Sailer. The whole Mountain pleasantly enriched with the fragrant smells of *Rosemary*, Sweet *Marjoram*, *Hyssop*, *Bayes*, and other Odoriferous Plants which do grow there naturally; but for all that, destitute of any other Inhabitants than *Leopards*, *Boars*, *Jaccals*, and such Savage Creatures. 8 The Mountains of *Gilboa*, the highest on the West of *Jordan*; as 9 those of *Basan*, celebrated for their height in the Book of *Psalms*. And 10 those of *Abarim* on the East-side of it: From one of the Summits of which last, called *Nebo*, by some Writers *Pisgah*, the Lord gave *Moses* a Survey of the Land of *Promise*.

As for this whole Country comprehended in the name of *Palestine*, it hath had divers divisions, according to the quality of the People, or the will of those who have been formerly Masters of it. Divided first betwixt the *Philistines*, *Perezites*, *Hittites*, *Jebusites*, and others of the Sons of *Canaan*, on this side *Jordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Amorites*, dwelling on the other. When conquered by the Sons of *Jacob*, it was divided into the Twelve Tribes, of 1 *Judab*, 2 *Benjamin*, 3 *Simeon*, 4 *Dan*, 5 *Aser*, 6 *Nephthali*, 7 *Zabulon*, 8 *Issachar*, 9 *Gad*, 10 *Reuben*, 11 *Ephraim*, and 12 *Manasseh*. When that great Breach was made by *Jeroboam*, in the Kingdom of *David*, it was broken into the Two Kingdoms of *Judab* and *Israel*; of which the first contained only the Two Tribes of *Judab* and *Benjamin*, the latter comprehending the other Ten. When the *Israelites* were led captive into *Affyria*, and a new set of People planted in their rooms, those new-comers from *Samaria*, their Capital City, had the Name of *Samaritans*: and when the men of *Judab* were released of their long Captivity, and came back from *Babylon*, they took to themselves the Name of *Jews*. After which Time, the whole Country of *Palestine*, anciently possessed or subdued by the Seed of *Abraham*, was divided into 1 *Peræa*, 2 *Ituræa*, 3 *Galilee*, 4 *Samaria*, 5 *Judæa*, and 6 *Idumæa*. When conquered by the *Romans*, all these were joined into one Province, which for a time was reckoned as a part of *Syria*, or at least subordinate. But *Constantine* not liking of the one or the other, went a way by himself, and cast it into three Provinces, viz. 1 *Palestina Prima*, 2 *Palestina Secunda*, and 3 *Palestina Salutaris*; the Metropolis of the first being *Cæsarea Palestine*; of the Second, *Samaria*; of the Third *Hierusalem*. But this Division of *Constantine*'s growing out of use, we will adhere unto the former: Beginning first with those parts hereof which lay on the other side of *Jordan*, because first conquered and possessed by the House of *Israel*; who at that Gate found entrance into all the rest; and coming round to *Idumæa*, which last of these Provinces was added to the State of *Jury*. In the Chorography whereof, I must confess my self a Debtor to Sir *Walter Raleigh*, whose Industry herein hath saved me a great deal of search, tho some times I make bold to differ from him, and add to him, as I see occasion.

PERÆA.

PERÆA, is that part of *Palestine* which lieth betwixt the River *Jordan*, and the Mountains of *Armon*, (which divide *Palestine* from *Syria* and *Arabia*) East and West; and reacheth from *Pella* in the North, to *Petra* the chief Town of *Arabia Petraea*, in the South. By *Pliny* it is made to bend more towards *Agypt*, who describes it thus: *Peræa Judæa pars est ulterior, Arabia, & Agypto proxima, asperis dispersis montibus, & à cæteris Judæis, Jor-*

dane amne discreta: Peræa (saith he) is the furthest part of *Judæa*, neighbouring *Arabia* and *Agypt*, interspersed with rough and craggy Mountains, and parted from the rest of the *Jews* by the River *Jordan*. So called from the Greek Word *πέρα*, in regard of the situation of it on the other side of that River; and not improperly might be rendred by *Trans-Jordana*. Blessed with a rich Soil, and large Fields belet with divers Trees, especially of *Olives*, *Vines*, and *Palms*. The Habitation in Times past of the *Midianites*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, as also of the Two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*. Of all which I shall speak in order, beginning with the *Midianites*, and the Children of *Lot*, as the first Occupants hereof; upon the knowledge of whole Affairs, the State and Story of the *Israelites* hath so much dependence.

And first the *MIDIANITES* inhabited on the South-East of the *Dead Sea*, at the very entrance of the Country; descended from one or more of the five Sons of *Madian*, the Son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned *Gen.* 25. 4. who leaving the rest of their Brethren to seek themselves new Habitations, more towards the Banks of the *Red Sea*, and the Deserts of *Arabia Petraea*; continued near unto the place of *Abraham*'s Dwelling; and mingling with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites* in Blood and Marriages, came in short time to lose all the knowledge of the True God, and to worship Idols, as the rest of their Neighbours did.

Their chief Cities were 1 *Recome*, built by one of the five Kings of the *Midianites*, which was slain by *Joshua*, afterwards called *Selah*, 2 *King.* 14. 7. accounted at that Time a City of the *Edomites*; next of the *Ismaelites* or *Arabians*, and by them called *Hogar*. Best known unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the Name of *Petra*, and by that Name we shall take further notice of it when we come to *Arabia*. 2 *Midian*, on the Banks of the *Dead Sea*, the ordinary Residence of their Princes, absolute of themselves at first, as in other places; but at the Time when *Moses* and *Joshua* led the people into their Possessions, subjected unto *Sibon* King of the *Amorites*; whose Dukes their five Kings and Princes are said to be, *Josh.* 13. 21. A People whom the *Israelites* had neither Commission or Intent to make War upon, if they had not causlessly provoked them, at the request of the *Moabites*, by sending amongst them (as *Balaam* the False Prophet had advised) the most beautiful of all their Women, not only to entice them to prohibited mixtures, but to allure them to the worship of their Idols also. A mischievous and successful Plot, but alike dangerous to both parties; God sending a fierce Plague amongst the *Israelites*, which cost them the Lives of 24000 persons; besides such as perished by the Sword; and giving a Command to *Moses*, to avenge him of the *Midianites*, who had so provoked him. On which Commission *Moses* called out 12000 Men, and sent them under *Phineas* against the *Midianites*; by whom all their Princes were slain, their Cities and goodly Cattles burnt with Fire, their Men, Women and Male-children put unto the Sword, as is related in the One and Thirtieth Chapter of the Book of *Numbers*; yet notwithstanding this great slaughter, they recovered their former power, if not a greater; and after the death of *Barak* the Judge of *Israel*, did for the space of Four Years so afflict that People, that they were fain to hide themselves in the Caves and Strong-holds of the Mountains, as is said, *Judg.* 6. 2. their Enemies having left them neither Sheep, Oxen, or Ales, or any Sustenance at all, v. 4. But *Gideon* being raised up by God for their deliverance, encountered with their four Kings, and put them to flight; of which four *Oreb* and *Zeeb* were taken and slain by the *Ephraimites* at the Passage of *Jordan*; *Zeba* and *Zalmunna* taken by *Gideon* himself, and executed by his own Hand, as the Story telleth us. In this War there are said to have perished of this People and their Confederates, no fewer than 120000 persons, by which so weakened, that we hear

no more of them from this time forwards, in any Act of importance; their Name and Country being first incorporated into that of the *Edomites*, and after into that of the *Imaelites*, and other the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petraea*.

2 The *MOABITES* possessed all the Country, from the *Midianites* in the South, as far as to *Esebon* in the North, on both sides of the River *Arnon*; having *Jordan* on the West, and the Hills of *Abarin* on the East. Possessed at the first by the *Emmins*, a Race of Giants, whose chief City was *Sheneth Kiriathaim*. But these being vanquished and broken by *Chedorlaomer* and his Associates, of which see *Gen. 14. 5.* their Forlorn Seats were taken up by the *Moabites*, descended from *Moab*, one of the Sons of *Lot*; who lived here in great prosperity till the Time of *Labeb*, Grand-Father unto *Balac*, the Son of *Zippor*; from whom *Sehon* King of the *Amorites* had taken all the parts of *Moab* on the North of the River *Saboc*, and made that River, which before was the middle of *Moab*, to be the North Bound or Border of it. In which estate it stood in the Time of *Moses*.

Chief Cities of it at that Time, were 1 *Rabbat*, the Regal Seat of *Balac* the King of *Moab*, the *Rhalmathum* of *Ptolemy*. 2 *Diblaham*, destroyed with the rest of *Moab*, by *Nebuchadnezzar*, as is said *Jer. 48. 22.* 3 *Gallin*, the Principality of *Phalti* the Son of *Laiish*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michal*, formerly married unto *David*, 1 *Sam. 25. 44.* 4 *Muthana*, and 5 *Nathaniel*, thorough which the *Israelites* passed after they had left the Well called *Beer*. 6 *Bamatb*, where *Moses* was encamped when he sent to *Sehon* to demand a passage through his Country, *Numb. 21. 19, &c.* 7 *Mizpah*, the City of Refuge to the Father and Mother of *David*, in the Time of his Troubles under *Saul*. 8 *Hor*, the chief City of *Moab*, not medled with by *Moses* in his march this way, the Lord himself forbidding him to touch upon it, or distress it, because it had been given by him for an Inheritance to the Children of *Lot*, *Deut. 2. 9.* Which prohibition was not only for this place particularly; (though this particularly there mentioned) but for all the Lands and Territories then in their possession. 9 *Kir-basareth*, of chief note for the barbarous and inhumane Fact of *Mesha* the *Moabitish* King, who being besieged herein by the Kings of *Judah*, *Israel*, and *Edom*, without hope of escape, sacrificed his own Eldest Son on the Wall thereof; which so moved the Kings of *Judah* and *Edom*, that they forsook the King of *Israel* whose the quarrel was. So the Siege was raised, 2 *King. 3. 17.*

Now as *Moses* did not at the present disobey God's Order, in leaving the *Moabites* in quiet; so neither did the *Moabites* on their part provoke him to any Hostile Act, giving him a free and open passage in his march for *Canaan*; out of an hope that when the *Amorites* were subdued, they should be put into possession of their lost Estates. And tho they were deceived of that expectation, the *Israelites* looking on that Country which they had conquered, as the Spoils of the *Amorites*, and giving it for a possession to the Tribe of *Ruben*; yet durst they not do any thing in the way of Arms, but sent for *Balaam* the False Prophet, to cast them by his Curses and Incantations into some Diseases, whereby their strength and courage might be taken from them. *Balac* the Son of *Zippor* was at this time King. After whom we find not the Name of any other, till we come to *Eglon*, who with the help of *Ammon* and *Amalek*, overmastered *Israel*, and for the space of 18 Years tyrannized amongst them; when slain in his own House, and afterwards 10000 of his People by the hands of *Ehud*. But this Indignity was in the Times succeeding revenged by *Saul* in some part, who made War upon them; but more by *David*, who subdued them, and made them Tributaries: and not so only, but subjected them to the vilest Offices, as is intimated in that Form of Speech, *Moab is my Wash-pot*, *Rsal 60. 8.* Taking their opportunity, they withdrew themselves from the House of *David*, and put themselves

under the command of the Kings of *Israel*, to whom they paid for Tribute in the Time of *Abab*, 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their Fleeces on: but quickly weary of those payments, and revolting from the House of *Abab* also, they were invaded by *Jehoram*, aided herein by the Kings of *Judah* and *Idumæa*; by whom being vanquished, *Misba* their King was fain to shut himself up in *Kir-basareth*, as was said before. After this joining with the *Ammonites* and the *Idumæans*, or Sons of *Edom*, they invaded *Jehosaphat* King of *Judah*, to whom God gave a memorable and signal Victory, without Blow or Battel: The *Ammonites* first setting upon the *Edomites*, and after upon one another till they were almost all destroyed, 2 *Chron. 20. 23.* From this Time we hear nothing of them; but probably they recovered some part of their former Dwellings, when that Two Tribes and a half on the East of *Jordan* were carried away captive by *Tiglath-Pileser*. Possessed hereof, and of other their habitations, till the Reign of *Zedekias* King of *Judah*; when vanquished, with the rest of these Nations, by the *Babylonians* and *Assyrians* under *Nebuchadnezzar*. Nor find we any mention of them in the Ages following; the Name of *Moab* being forgotten, or grown out of use: The South parts of their Country laid to *Arabia Petraea*, as the East parts were to that of *Arabia Deserta*; and all the rest, as well as that which had been conquered by the *Jews*, swallowed up in the general Name of *Palestinians*.

3 The *AMMONITES* inhabited on the North-East of the River *Arnon*, and possessed all that Tract from *Arnon*, on the head of the River, to the City of *Rabbat*; and on both sides of the River *Jaboc*, as well within the Mountains of *Galaad* as without the same. The Seat in elder Times of the *Rephaims*, and *Zanzummims*, a Giant-like Race of Men, as the *Emmins* were; but vanquished also, as the others, by *Chedorlaomer*; *Ashtaroth* and *Hetb* being then the principal of their Habitations. Succeeded too in their desolate and forsaken Dwellings, by the Children of *Ammon*, the other Son of *Lot*, and the Brother of *Moab*; both Houses running the same Fortune: These *Ammonites* being conquered, and deprived of the best part of their Country on the South-side of *Jaboc*, by *Og* King of *Basan*; as the *Moabites*, at the same time, of theirs by *Sehon*. A Monument of which subjection was the Bed of *Og*, found in the City of *Rabbat*, the chief City of *Ammon*, there to be seen when *Moses* had subdued the Kings of the *Amorites*, as appeareth in *Deut. 3.*

Chief Cities at such Time as the *Israelites* first conquered the Land of *Canaan*, were 1 *Rabbat*, the Regal City of their Kings; taken by *Og* of *Basan*, as is said before; but again quitted as it seemeth on the coming of *Moses*, that he might be better able to keep the Field. Memorable in succeeding Times for the death of *Uriah*, slain here by a design of *David's* when besieged by *Joab*. Who having brought it to Terms of yielding, sent for the King to come before it, that he might have the honour of taking a place so defensible, environed in a manner with the River *Jaboc*, and therefore called the City of Waters, 2 *Sam. 12. 27.* Afterwards repaired and beautified by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, King of *Agypt*, who having made himself Master of those parts of *Arabia* which lie near unto it, and liking the conveniency of the situation, honoured it with the name of *Philadelphia*. 2 *Datbema*, supposed to be *Ruthma*, by the Learned *Junius*, mentioned *Numb. 33. 18.* (the Hebrew Letters *D* and *A* being much alike) a place of great strength among the *Ammonites*. 3 *Minmeth*, in the South Border, and 4 *Abel-veinunim* in the East Border of *Ammon*; both mentioned in the pursuit of that People when subdued by *Jepthe*. 5 *Mitpa*, sometimes one of the Cities of the half Tribe of *Manasses*, and at that Time honoured with the residence of *Jepthe*; but afterwards recovered by the Children of *Ammon*: in whose hands it was when utterly destroyed and burnt by *Judas Maccabæus*, 1 *Mac.*

535. 6 *Magad*, and 7 *Bfor*, Two other strong places of the *Ammonites*, there also mentioned; but said to be in the *Region* of *Galaad*, by which name, or by that of *Gileadites*, all the Country of the *Ammonites* lying on this side of the Mountains was at that Time called.

As for those *Ammonites*, they had nothing at all to do with *Israel* as they passed towards *Canaan*; neither provoking them, nor being provoked by them, to any Acts of Hostility. Afterwards not well pleased that they were not restored to the possession of those Lands which had been taken from them by *Og* of *Basan*, (conferred by the Decree of *Moses* on the Tribe of *Gad*) they joined with the *Midianites* in their Expedition. But worsted by the puissance and Good Fortune of *Gideon*; they lay still a while, till stirred up by some secret motion from Almighty God, to avenge him on that sinful and Idolatrous People, who by worshipping the Gods of the *Heathen*, had provoked him to anger. Prosperous in it for a Time, till his Wrath was pacified; who having made use of them to chastise his people, delivered up his Rod to be burnt by *Jephth*, vanquished and driven home by him with a very great slaughter. Not so much crushed by the unsuccessfulness of this Attempt, but that in the Time of *Saul* they brake out again, and besieged *Fabesh Gilead*; *Nabash*, a Cruel Tyrant being then their King; who having brought the City into great extremity, would give them no other conditions than the loss of every Man's Right eye; to the end that using to carry a great Target on their Left Arms, wherewith the Eye on that side was wholly shadowed, they might by this means be disabled from all future Service. But *Saul* came time enough to save them from that Shame and loss; from that cause so offensive to *Nabash*, that to despight him, he shewed Friendship to *David* in the Time of his Trouble. A courtesie which *David* was so mindful of, that he sent Ambassadors to *Hanun* the Son of *Nabash*, to make acknowledgment of it, and to confirm the Amity which he had with his Father; but found so ill requital from him, that instead of Thanks and kind acceptance, his Messengers were despightfully handled, their Beards half shaven, and their Garments cut off by the Knee. Incensed therewith he sent *Joab* against them, by whom the Country was laid waste, and *Rabbah* their chief City taken; their King's Crown weighing a Talent of Gold, set on *David's* Head, and all the Prisoners executed with great severity, some of them being cast into Limekilns, and the rest torn in pieces with Saws and Harrows. Quiet a long while after this, we hear no great news of them till the Reign of *Jehosaphat*, against whom confederated with the *Edomites* and *Moabites*, they made open War, but fell by one another's Swords, as was said before. Not well recovered of this Blow, they were subdued and made Tributaries by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, and so continued in the Time of *Joatham* his Son; who so increased the Tribute laid upon them by his Father, that it amounted to an Hundred Talents of Silver, Ten Thousand Measures of Wheat, and as many of Barley. Taught by this Lesson how to value the Kings of *Judah*, they continued either quiet Neighbours, or obedient Subjects, tho much improved in power and reputation, by regaining the greatest part of their Ancient Dwellings, on the removal of the Two Tribes and an half, on the East of *Jordan*, to the Land of *Affyria*, by *Tiglath Pileser*. For after this (with reference to the common danger) *Baulis* their King was so strict a Confederate with *Zedechias*, that when *Nebuchadnezzar* had taken *Zedechias* with him unto *Babylon*, and left *Gedalsab* as his Deputy to command the Country, *Imael*, one of the Blood of the Kings of *Judah*, was sent by *Baulis* to slay him. But he paid dear for his Attempt, his Country being shortly after conquered by the *Babylonians*, and the Name of *Ammonite* forgotten: changed by the *Greeks* when they came to Lord it over them, to those of *Geleaditis* and *Philadelphias*, according to the new Name

of their principal City, and the old one of the Mountains and Hills adjoining.

4 The *REUBENITES* took name from *Reuben*, the Eldest of *Jacob's* Sons by *Leah*; of whom in the first Muster which was made of them at *Mount Sinai*, there were found 46000 fighting men; and 43700 at the second Muster, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their Dwelling was on the East of that Famous River, having the *Gadites* on the North, the *Desart Arabia* on the East, and the Land of *Moab* on the South, from which parted by the River *Arnon*.

Places of most observation here, *Abel-Sittim*, seated in that part of the Country which was called the Plains of *Moab*; the last incamping place of *Moses*: afterwards by the *Jews* called simply *Sittim*: Memorable for the Wood so often mentioned in the Scriptures, of which the Ark of the Lord was made. In after-times by the *Greeks* and *Romans* it was called *Abila*, nistock by some for that *Abila* or *Abilene* whereof *Lyfennas* was Tetrarch: That Town and Territory, as *Josephus* doth affirm expressly, being situate amongst the Spurs and Branches of *Libanus*, far enough from hence. 2 *Bethaborab*, or *Beth-Bara*, where *John* baptized, and *Moses* made his last and most Divine Exhortations to the Tribes of *Israel*, contained in *Deuteronomy*. 3 *Macherus*, the strongest In-land City and Castle in those parts of the World, standing aloft upon a Mountain every way unaccessible: first fortified by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, as a Frontier Town against the *Arabians*; and afterwards demolished by *Gabinus*, one of *Pompey's* Lieutenants, in the War against *Aristobulus*. Unfortunately remarkable for the Death of *John Baptist*, where murdered by the Command of *Herod the Tetrarch of Galilee*, and Lord of this Country of *Peræa*. It stood on the Banks of the Dead Sea. 4 *Lasa*, or *Leshab*, of which *Gen.* 10. 19. by the *Greeks* called *Callirhoe*, by reason of the Pair Fountains rising from the Hills adjoining, out of which issue Springs both of hot and cold Waters, as also bitter and sweet; all which soon after joined into one stream, make a wholesome Bath, especially for Convulsions and contraction of Sinews. 5 *Medeba*, upon the River *Arnon*, famous for the defeat given to the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by the conduct of *Joab*, 1 *Chron.* 19. 7. In the Time of the *Greeks* laid with some other Towns of this Tract unto *Cælo-Syria*; but in the declining Times of the *Seleucian* Family, regained unto the Crown of *Jewry* by *Alexander*, the second King of the Race of the *Maccabees*; and finally, with eleven others in those parts, delivered by *Antipater* the Father of *Herod* into the hands of *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, hoping thereby to gain him to the side of *Hircanus* the Son of *Alexander*, whose Cause *Antipater* most favoured. 6 *Bosor*, or *Bozra*, a City of Refuge, and one of those that were assigned unto the *Levites* on that side of the Water. Seated near the Dead Sea. 7 *Livias*, a Town new built by *Herod*, in honour of *Livia*, the Mother of *Tiberius Cæsar*, upon the River *Jordan*; different from that which the Geographers call 8 *Libias* (tho by some confounded) the same with *Laban*, mentioned *Deut.* 1. 1. 9 *Kedemoth*, another City of the *Levites*, seated near *Arnon*, giving name unto the adjoining Desert, from whence *Moses* sent his Ambassage to *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 10 *Bamath-Baal*, the chief City of the Worshipers of *Baal*, to which *Balaam* was brought by *Balaac* to curse the *Israelites*. 11 *Hishbon*, the Regal City of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. In the North Border of this Tribe. 12 *Adam*, or the City *Adam* (*Josh.* 3. 17.) where the Tribes passed dry-foot over *Jordan*, opposite unto *Gilgal* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. Within this Tribe is the Mountain *Nebo*, from which *Moses* took a view of the Land of *Canaan*; an Hill as it seemeth of Two Tops, whereof that which looketh towards *Ferlebo* is called *Pisgab*: That which looketh towards *Moab* being called *Hur*. Here is also a high Hill named *Peor*, where the filthy Idol *Baal* was worshipped also, who hath hence the addition of *Baal-Peor*.

5 The *GADITES* were so called from *Gad* the seventh Son of *Jacob*, begot on *Zilpah* the Hand-maid of *Leah*; of whom were found at the first Muster when they came out of *Egypt*, Forty Five Thousand, Five Hundred and Fifty fighting men; and at the second, when they entered the Land of *Canaan*, Forty Five Thousand bearing Arms. Their situation was betwixt the *Reubenites* on the South, and the half Tribe of *Manasses* upon the North; the River *Jordan* on the West, and the Mountains of *Arnon* on the East; by which last parted from the Dwellings of the Children of *Ammon*.

Cities of most observation, 1 *Aroer*, on the Banks of the River *Arnon*, the principal City of the *Gadites*. 2 *Dibon*, more towards *Jordan*; of great note in the Time of *Joshua*, and of no small account in the Time of *St. Hierom*. 3 *Beth-nimrah*, of which *Esa*y prophesied, That the Waters thereof should be dried up; seated upon the *Arnon* also. 4 *Nattoroth*, more in the body of the Tribe. 5 *Beth-baram*, mentioned by *Joshua*, chap. 13. ver. 27. by *Josephus* called *Betarampta*; new built by *Herod Antipas*, and called *Livias*, in honour of *Livia* the Wife of *Augustus Cæsar*, translated into the *Julian* Family; who also laid unto it Fourteen Villages, to make it of the greater Power and Jurisdiction. 6 *Beth-zob*, by *Josephus* called *Veteszabra*, the habitation of *Miriam*, who in the Siege of *Hierusalem*, when destroyed by *Titus*, was compelled by Famine to eat her own Son. 7 *Succoth*, not far from the River *Jordan*, so called from the Tents or Booths which *Jacob* set up there in his passage from *Mesopotamia* to the Land of *Canaan*: The People of which Town having denied relief to *Gideon*, as he followed the chase of *Zebah* and *Zalmunna*, were by him miserably tortured at his return, under a *Tribulum* or *Threshing-Car*, wherewith he tore their Flesh, and bruised their Bodies. 8 *Jabzor*, another of the Regal Seats of *Sehon*, King of the *Amorites*; first taken by *Moses*, after recovered by the *Moabites* (as appeareth *Isa*. 16. 8.) then possessed by the *Ammonites*; and finally from them regained by *Judas Maccabæus*, 1 *Macc*. 5. 8. 9 *Mahanaim* so called from the Army of *Angels* which appeared to *Jacob* (*Gen*. 32. 2.) as ready to defend him against all his Enemies the Word in the Original importing a double Army. A place of very great strength and safety, and therefore made by *Abner* the Seat Royal of *Ishbosheth*, the Son of *Saul*, during the War he had with *David*; as afterwards the retiring place of *David*, during the Rebellion of his Son *Abolom*. 10 *Rogelim*, the City of *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, so faithful to *David* in that War. 11 *Ramoth*, or *Ramoth Gilead*, so called from the situation of it near the Mountains of *Gilead*; a Town of special note in the Book of God; particularly, for the Pacification here made betwixt *Jacob* and *Laban*; for the Death of *Abab* King of *Israel*, who lost his Life in the recovery of it from the hands of the *Syrians*; and finally, for the Election of *Jehu* to the Crown of *Israel*. Anointed at the Siege hereof by a Son of the Prophets. 12 *Penuel*, so called from the interview which the Lord pleased to bestow there on his Servant *Jacob*, at his return out of *Mesopotamia*, mentioned *Gen*. 32. 32. the Word signifying the place of the Face or Vision of God; defaced by *Gideon* for their churlish usage of him, when he craved relief of them against the *Midianites*; to whom, together with the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*, the whole Territory appertaining to these Two Tribes did once belong. But being from them taken by *Og* King of *Basan*, and *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*, it came by the overthrow of those Kings to the hands of *Moses*; by whom assigned unto the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, for their Habitation. Continuing theirs till the Fatal Period of the Kingdom of *Israel* began to approach; at what Time these Two Tribes, with the half Tribe of *Manasses* lying on the East of *Jordan*, being carried captive into *Assyria*, by *Tiglatb Pilser*, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* recovered a great part of their Ancient Dwellings. Of which possessed, till their subversion by the *Babylonians*. After-

wards this whole Country coming into the hands of the Kings of *Syria*, had the Name of *Peræa*, for the Reason formerly delivered. And being won piece meal by the *Maccabæans*, came with the rest of the Kingdom of *Judab*, to the possession of *Herod the Great*; by whom bequeathed at his Death unto *Herod Antipas*, one of his Sons, who held, together with both *Galilees*, under the Name of *Tetrarch of Galilee and Peræa*, as *Josephus*; or of *Galilee* only, as *St. Luke*; who being dead, it was bestowed on *Agrippa* King of the *Jews*, of whom more hereafter.

2 ITURÆA.

ITURÆA hath on the East and North, *Cælo-Syria*; on the West, the River *Jordan*; and on the South, *Peræa*. So called from *Ietur* one of the Sons of *Ismael*, seated in this Tract; tho lost by his Posterity to the *Amorites* one of the most powerful Tribes amongst the *Canaanites*; and by them made the Patrimony of the Kings of *Basan*. The Race of which Kings ending in *Og*, the wealthiest and best parts hereof, were given by *Moses* to the half Tribe of *Manasses*; such parts of it as lay towards *Damascus* being seized on by the neighbouring *Aramites*, and made a Kingdom of itself, called the Kingdom of *Gessur*; and the more mountainous and unpleasant left to the first Inhabitants, as not worth the conquering. But both the Kingdom of *Gessur*, and those of the half Tribe of *Manasses*, shifting from one Lord to another, till they came into the hands of the *Grecians*; the name of *Ituræa* revived again, and grew into very good esteem: The *Ituræans* being reputed for good Soldiers, especially at his Bow and Arrows; of which thus the *Poet* in his *Georgicks*, lib. 2.

——— *Ituræas taxi torquentur in Arcus.*

Of the best Ewe that can be had

The *Ituræan* Bows are made.

The whole Country in the Times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, divided into *Trachonites* and *Ituræa*, specially so called: This last again being subdivided into *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Panæas*. For whereas it is said in *St. Luke's Gospel*, That *Philip* the Brother of *Herod* was *Tetrarch of Ituræa*, and the Region of *Trachonitis*; and by *Josephus*, That for his *Tetrarchy* he had the Provinces of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Panæas*; it must needs be that the Four last mentioned Provinces make up that one, which by *St. Luke* is comprehended in the Name of *Ituræa*; distinct from that of *Trachonitis*, tho a part thereof. Inhabited in the Time of *Josephus*, as in those of *Joshua* and *David*, both by *Jews* and *Syrians*; the *Syrians* dwelling in the more mountainous and more barren parts, the *Jews* in that which was assigned them in the Time of *Moses*; the whole not yielding unto *Galilee* for extent of Ground, but far inferior to it for Wealth and Fruitfulness; not well inhabited where best, and in some places which are desert and very barren, hardly inhabited at all, or bearing any thing but Wild Fruits. Such was it in the Time of *Josephus*, and not bettered since.

1 *TRACHONITIS* is that mountainous and hilly Country, which beginning at the Borders of the *Ammonites*, where the Hills are called the Mountains of *Gilead*, extendeth it self Northwards as far as *Libanus*: The Hills in those parts being by the *Jews* called *Gilead*, *Syrion*, and *Hermion*; but by the *Grecians*, for the craggedness and roughness of them, by the name of *Trachonites*. The People mischievously bent and much given to *Witchcraft*, as we find in *Strabo*. *Montanum regionem incolunt Ituræi & Arabes, malefici omnes*. So he, or his Translator rather, for I have not the Original by me. Where by *Arabians* he meaneth those of *Trachonitis*, which every where he maketh to be the same with *Ituræa*, tho differing from it as the *Cotswold* Countries do from the rest of *Gloucestershire*, or as a part doth from the whole, because united by that name into one Estate, at the Time

he

he lived in. *Solet & Trachonitis Ituræa nomine appellari.* saith the learned *Grotius*, according to the general consent of the ancient Writers. A people generally addicted to spoil and robbery, living especially on the spoil of those Merchants which traded to and from *Damascus*: Till with some difficulty restrained to a more orderly life by *Herod*, on whom *Augustus Cæsar* had bestowed the Country, to the end that by strong hand he might hold them in.

The People and the Country by *Josephus* are thus described. "The *Trachonites* (saith he) have neither Towns, nor Lands, nor Heritage, nor any other possessions, but only certain Retreats and Caves under the Ground, where they lived like Beasts: And having made abundant provision of Water and Victuals, were able to hold out a long time against any Assailant. For the doors of their Caves were made so narrow, that they could be entered but by one at once; and the way to them not direct, but full of turnings and windings, not possibly to be found out but by the help of a Guide: The whole Country naturally consisting of craggy Rocks. The passages of the Caves once entered, they were found to be very large and spacious; sufficient to contain great multitudes of those Thievish people; who when they had not opportunity to spoil their Neighbours, would rob one another, and omitted no kind of wickedness; being so accustomed to theft, that they could not live otherwise. So he. But I conceive this is not meant generally of all the people, but only of some body of Thieves or Out-laws, which possessed themselves of the streights of the Mountains, and from thence issued to assault and spoil the Passengers. For it is afterwards expressed, that revolting upon the news of *Herod's* death, and committing new outrages; they no sooner heard of his recovery but they fled the Country, and betook themselves unto a strong Castle in *Arabia*, where they increased to the number of 1000 persons, so that there is no question to be made at all, but they had Villages and Lands, and Heritages, in the more civil parts hereof, though not amongst those Mountainers which *Josephus* speaks of. And amongst those, I reckon, 1 *Gerra*, 2 *Elere*, 3 *Nelaxa*, 4 *Adrama*; all named by *Ptolomy*, and all placed by him in the Longitude of 70 degrees or upwards: More towards the East than well agreeth with the position of this Country, or with any part of *Batanea*, lying more towards the West than *Trachonitis*, though to that part of *Ituræa*, by him ascribed. Hither also I refer the City of 5 *Tishbe*, the Country of old *Tobit*, and of the Prophet *Elias*. 6 *Tob*, where *Jeptube* lived in exile, when oppressed by his Brethren, till the necessities of his Country called him to the publick Government. 7 *Hippus*, at the foot of those Mountains, reckoned amongst the Cities of *Cælo-Syria*, differing in Soil as well as Etymology from another of the same name in *Batanea*: This being so named from the Mountain *Hippus*, under which it standeth; that from a Garison of Horse there placed, as shall there be shewn. 8 *Bathira*, on the borders of this Country towards *Batanea*, built there by *Herod*, and planted with a Colony of the *Jews* which came thither from *Babylon*; the better to suppress the Insolencies, and prevent the Robberies of this thievish people, accustomed (as before is said) unto spoil and rapine.

2 *BATANEIA* is that part of *Ituræa* which anciently made up the best and greatest part of the Kingdom of *Basan*, whence it had this name: The changing of S. to T. as *Assyria* into *Attyria*, and the like, being usual amongst the *Greeks*. But that Kingdom being brought to an end by *Moses*, it was given to the half Tribe of *Manasse*, so called of *Manasses* the Son of *Joseph*; of whom there were found at the first muster near Mount *Sinai*, 32200 Men able to bear Arms; which though consumed in the Deserts, yet were they of such a swift increase, that they were found 52700 fighting

Men of them, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their Territory on that side of the River stretching from *Jaboc* on the South, to the Realm of *Gessur* on the North; and from the Mountains unto *Jordan*, East and West, was exceeding fertile: Replenished with all sorts of Cattel, and adorned with the goodliest Woods in that part of the World; the Oaks of *Basan* being celebrated in the Holy Scriptures.

It had in it sixty fenced Cities when first conquered by those of this Tribe. The principal of which, 1 *Pella*, formerly called *Burus*, but being rebuilt by *Seleucus*, the great King of *Syria*, was by him called *Pella*; with reference to a City of that name in *Macedonia*, the birth-place of *Alexander*, to whom *Seleucus* owed his Greatness and whole Estate. Destroyed by *Alexander Jannæus*, King of the *Jews*, because not willing to admit of the Law of *Moses*; it was afterwards restored by *Pompey* to its former lustre. Memorable in Church story for the Admonition or Premonishment, given by a voice from Heaven, to the Christians dwelling at *Jerusalem*, to remove thence and dwell at *Pella*, that so they might escape that destruction, which the Roman Army under *Titus* was to bring upon it. It stands on the River *Jaboc*, between it and Mount *Hermon*. 2 *Edrey*, the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Basan*. 3 *Carnaim*, on the Banks of *Jaboc*, taken by *Judas Maccabæus*, who set fire on the Temple of the Idols there, and burnt therein all such as fled thither for Sanctuary. 4 *Ephron*, a strong City upon *Jordan*, taken and burnt by the same *Judas Maccabæus*, for refusing to give a passage to his Army. 5 *Jabesh Gilead*, more near unto the Mountains, whence it had that Adjunct; memorable in the Scriptures for the siege of *Nabash* King of the *Ammonites*, the raising of that siege by *Saul*, and the gratitude of the People towards him again, in taking down, embalming, and the entombing the bodies of him and his Sons, which the *Philistines* had most despitefully hanged on the Walls of *Bethsan*. 6 *Astaroth*, a City of great note in the elder times: The Seat of the *Rephaims*, a Giant-like Race of Men, of whom descended *Og* of *Basan*; from whence the Country adjoining had the name of the Land of Giants. *Astaroth*, the Goddess of the *Sidonians*, had here her Worshipers. 7 *Gaulon* sometimes possessed by *Og* of *Basan*, and afterwards made one of the Cities of Refuge; of such esteem in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, that the North-part of *Basanitis* or *Batanea* was called *Gaulonitis*; divided into *Superior* and *Inferior*, so often mentioned by *Josephus*. And of this City or Country was that *Judas* of *Galilee*, spoken of in the fifth of the *Acts*, the Founder of the *Gaulonites*, or *Anti-Herodians*. 8 *Gamala* in the lower *Gaulonitis*, so called because the Hill upon which it stood was fashioned like the back of a Camel: Invincibly situate, strengthened both by Art and Nature; and at last with so great difficulty and hazard of *Vespasian's* person, stormed by *Titus*, that the *Romans* in the heat of the execution, spared neither Women nor Children; insomuch that all the Inhabitants perished, except some few Women which had hid themselves. 9 *Gadara*, after Ten Months siege, taken and destroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*; repaired by *Pompey*, and by *Gabinius* made one of the five seats of Justice for the whole Country of *Palestine*: The other Four being *Jerusalem*, *Scribo*, *Hamath*, and *Sephorab*. 10 *Gerasa*, or *Gergesa*, the chief City of the *Gergesites*, the people whereof on the loss of their Swine intreated our Saviour to depart out of their Coast, as *St. Matthew* hath it. *St. Luke*, and *St. Mark* ascribe it to the people of *Gadara*. Not that the Cities were both one, or the Evangelists at odds in their Relation; but because they were two neighbouring Cities, and their Fields lay in common *pour cause de voisinage*, as our Lawyers phrase it; and so the story might be common to both alike. 11 *Hippus*, not far from the River *Jordan*, so called from a Garison of Horse there placed by *Herod*, not far from the Mountain *Hippus*, as some suppose,

pose which is too far off to have any influence upon it. 12 *Julias*, built by *Philip* the *Tetrarch* of *Ituræa* in the Southern border of his Estate, in imitation of the like work of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Peræa*; to ingratiate himself with *Julia*, the Wife of *Tiberius Cæsar*. 13 *Sibek*, by *Josephus* called *Abel Maucha*, for distinctions sake: Where *Sheba* that grand Rebel besieged by *Joab*, and the City brought into some danger, had his Head cut off, and thrown over the Wall, at the persuasion of a wise Woman of the Town. So the Rebellion ended, and the City was saved.

North of *Basaniitis*, or *Batanea*, lieth the Kingdom of *GESSUR*, by a latter name called *AURANITIS*, from *Hauran*, a Chief City of it, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, chap. 16. 18. A Kingdom spoken of by *Moses* as the Northern bound of the half Tribe of *Manasses* on that side of *Jordan*, *Deut.* 4. 14. by *Joshua* as the Northern Border of the Kingdom of *Basan*, Chap. 12. 5. but reckoned as a part of *Syria*, because held by the *Aramites*, 2 *Sam.* 15. 8. A Kingdom though of no great Territory, yet of some consideration in the Eye of the World: *David* esteeming the Alliance of the Kings hereof of some use unto him; and therefore marrying *Maacha* the Daughter of *Tolmai*, King of *Gessur*, by whom he had *Abjalom* and *Tamar*. And to this King it was that *Abjalom* fled on the killing of *Ammon*, abiding here three years as the story telleth us.

Conterminous to this, or at least not very much distant from it was the petit Kingdom of *Ishtob*, which sent 12000 Men to the aid of the *Ammonites* against *David*: And not far off, but more towards *Palmyrene*, or *Aram-Zobab*, that of *Beth-Rebob*, Confederate in the same War also with the other *Syrians*; mention whereof is made in the second Book of *Samuel*, Chap. 10. 6. Which whether they belonged to *Syria*, or to those North parts of *Ituræa*, is of no great certainty, and as little consequence. For after this their greatest and last exploit we hear no more news of them; swallowed up not long after (as it seems) by the Kings of *Damascus*.

To return therefore into *Gessur*, as more certainly within the limits of *Palestine*, the places of most observation in it, were 1 *Gessur*, then the chief City of it, and giving name unto the whole. 2 *Mabacath*, or *Mucut*, as some call it, conceived to be that *Maucha* mentioned 1 *Chron.* 19. 6. But of this we have already spoken in *Comagena*. 3 *Cauran*, or *Hauran*, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, Chap. 47. whence these Northern parts of *Palestine* were called *Auranites*. 4 *Chatfar-Heven*, there mentioned by that Prophet also. 5 *Us*, near the Borders of *Damascus*, the first Habitation of *Us* the Son of *Aram*, and Grand child of *Sim*, by whose name so called: Supposed to be the Founder of *Damascus* also, and that more probably, than that the Country thereabouts should be the Land of *Hus* enobled by the dwelling and story of *Job*. 6 *Sueta*, mentioned by *Bochar-dus*, and by some conceived to be the habitation of *Bil-Ad*, surnamed the *Shuebute*, one of *Job's* three Friends, mentioned in that story: But both of him, and *Job* himself, and the Land of *Hur*, we shall speak more at large when we come to *Arabia*. More certainly remarkable for a Fort of great strength and use, for the commanding of the Country; recovered from the *Turks* in the time of *Baldwin* the second, by digging with incredible labour through the very Rock upon which it was seated.

As for the fortunes of this part, after the Tribes on that side of *Jordan* were led captive into *Assyria*, and the Kingdom of *Damascus* subverted by *Tiglath Pileser*; it followed the fortune of the *Babylonian* and *Persian* Empires, together with which it came to the *Macedonian* Kings of the Race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of which House it was conquered (or at least the greatest part thereof) by *Alexander* the Second, King of the *Jews*, of the Race of the *Maccabees*; but lost again for

the most part in the time of *Hircanus* the Son of *Alexander*; yet afterwards made up the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Chalcis*; possessed by *Ptolomy* the Son of *Mennæus*, in the beginning of *Herod's* greatness; who dying left it to *Lysanias* his eldest Son, murdered about seven years after by *Marc. Antony*, on the suggestions of *Cleopatra*, who presently seized on his Estates. But *Antony* and *Cleopatra*, having left the Stage, *Lysanias* a Son of the murdered Prince entereth next upon it, by the permission of *Augustus*. During whose time *Zenodorus*, Lord of the Town and Territory of *Pancas*, farming his Demesnes. and paying a very great Rent for them; not only suffered the *Trachonites* to play the Robbers, and infest the Merchants of *Damascus*, but received part of the booty with them. *Augustus*, on complaint hereof, giveth the whole Country of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, and *Auranitis*, to *Herod* the *Ascalonite*, before created King of *Jewry*; that by his puissance and power he might quell those Robbers, and reduce the Country into order: Leaving unto *Lysanias* nothing but the City of *Abila*, (of which he was the natural Lord) whereof and of the adjoining Territory, he was afterwards created *Tetrarch*, by the name of the *Tetrarch* of *Abilene*, mentioned *Luke* 3. Nor did *Herod's* good fortune end in this. For presently on the Death of *Zenodorus*, not long after following, *Augustus* gave him also the District of *Pancas* (of which we shall speak more when we come to *Galilee*.) which with the Countries formerly taken from *Lysanias*, made up the *Tetrarchy* of *Philip* his youngest Son; affording him the yearly Revenue of 100 *Talents*, which make 37500*l.* of *English* Money. On *Philip's* death, his *Tetrarchy* was by *Caius Caligula* conferred on *Agrippa* the Nephew of *Herod* by his Son *Aristobulus*; whom he had also dignified with the Title of King: After whose death, and the death of *Agrippa Minor*, who next succeeded, his Estate's escheated to the *Romans*, and have since had the same fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

3 GALILEE.

GALILEE is Bounded on the East with *Batanea*, and part of the half Tribe of *Manasses* on that side of *Jordan*; on the West, with the Sea-coast of *Phœnicia*, on the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Anti-Libanus*; on the South, with *Samaria*. So called as some say, from *Geliloib*, a *Phœnician* word signifying as much as borders; because the bordering Country betwixt them and the *Jews*. On the West it has the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North *Libanus*; on the East *Jordan*; and on the South the Sea of *Galilee*, and the River *Chison*, and it was divided into the upper *Galilee* which lay to the North and is call'd *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*; and the Lower which lay South. In which our Saviour spent the greatest part of his life, and wrought most of his wonderful Works.

The Countrey not so large as that on the other side of the River, but far more fertile; naturally fertile of itself, every where producing excellent fruits without much pains to the Husbandman, and so well cultivated in old times, that there was hardly any waste ground to be found in it. Thick set with Cities, Towns, and Villages, in the time of *Josephus*, and those so populous and rich, that the smallest Village in it is affirmed by that Author, to comprehend no fewer than 15000 Inhabitants. A number beyond all parallel, if reported rightly, and not mistaken in the transcripts. The people from their childhood very stout and warlike, not daunted for fear of want, or dread of penury: which seconded by their vast and almost incredible numbers, made them experimentally known for a tough piece of employment when subdued by *Titus*. And this, together with their zeal to the *Jewish* Religion, makes it more than probable, that there was something in them of the ancient *Israelite*; and that they were not merely of

of an *Affyrian*, either stock or spirit; but intermixt with such remainders of the Tribes as had saved themselves, either by flying to the Mountains or hiding themselves in Caves and Desarts, or otherwise were inconsiderable for strength and numbers; in the great transplantation of them made by *Salmanassar*. And in this I am the more confirmed by their speech or language, which was the same with that of the natural *Jews*, differing no otherwise from it than in tone, and dialect; as our Northern *English* doth from that which is spoke in *London*: as appeareth by the communication which the *Damofel* had with *St. Peter*, in the High-Priest's Hall; in which she plainly understood him, but so, that she pronounced him for a *Galilean*. For had the *Transplantation* been so universal, as some think it was, and that both sick and sound, old and young had been carried away, and none but Colonies of the *Affyrians* to fill up their places; it must needs be that those New-comers would have planted their own language there, as the *Saxons* did on the extirpation of the *Britans*, on this side of the *Severn*. The like may be affirmed of the other Tribes on this side of *Jordan*, especially *Simeon* and *Dan*, which either bordering upon *Judab*, or having their Lands and Cities intermingled with it, continued in great numbers in their former dwellings, under the Patronage or subjection of the Kings thereof.

Divided it was anciently into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Higher* so called from its situation more amongst the Mountains, had also the name of *Galilea Gentium*, or *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*; and that either because it lay betwixt the *Gentiles* and the rest of the *Jews*; or because a great part of it had been given by *Solomon* to the Kings of *Tyre*. But for what cause soever it was called so first, certain it is, it held this name unto the last; known by it in the time of the Apostles, as appeareth by *St. Matthew's Gospel*, Chap. 4. 15. The *Lower Galilee* is situate on the South of the other, memorable for the Birth and Education of our blessed Saviour, whom *Julian* the *Apostate* called for this cause, in scorn, the *Galilean*: as for the same, the Disciples generally had the name of *Galileans* imposed upon them, till that of *Christian*, (being a name of their own chusing) did in fine prevail. Both, or the greatest part of both, known in the New Testament by the name of *Decapolis*, or *Regio Decapolitana*, mentioned *Mat.* 4. 25. *Mark* 7. 31. So called from the ten principal Cities of it, that is to say, 1 *Cæsarea Philippi*. 2 *Aser*. 3 *Cedes-Nephtalim*. 4 *Sepphet*. 5 *Chorazim*. 6 *Capernaum*. 7 *Bethsaida*. 8 *Jotopata*. 9 *Tiberias*. And 10 *Scythopolis*. By which account it stretched from the *Mediterranean* to the head of *Jordan*, East and West; and from *Libanus* to the hills of *Gilboa*, North and South; which might make up a square of forty miles. With reference to the Tribes of *Israel*, the whole *Galilee* was so disposed of, that *Aser*, *Nephtali*, and a part of the Tribe of *Dan*, had their habitation in the Higher; *Zabulon*, and *Issachar* in the Lower: according to which distribution we will now describe them.

1. The Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, was so called from *NAPHTHALI* the sixth Son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*; of whom at their first muster were found 53,400 fighting men, and at the second 44,540 able to bear Arms. The Land allotted to them, lay on the West side of the River *Jordan*, opposite unto the Northern parts of *Ituraea*; where before we left: having on the West, the Tribe of *Aser*, and that of *Zabulon* on the South. Within which Tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which appertained to the Tribe of *Dan*: the chief of those which were with-holden by the *Gentiles*, being *Chuleis*, *Abila*, *Helopolis*, Cities accounted of as belonging to *Cælo-Syria*; where they have been spoken of already.

That which did appertain to the Tribe of *DAN*, lay on the North-East part hereof, confronting the most

Northern parts of *Ituraea*, as before was said; where the *Danites* held one Town of moment, besides many other of less note. And it seemed destined to this Tribe by some old Prefage; the Eastern Fountain of *Jordan* (which hath its original in this Tract) being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Abraham* gave to *Chedor-Ismer* and his associates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a possession in it. Of which see *Gen.* 14. 14. The Town of moment first called *Lishem*, by some Writers *Laishe*: afterwards subject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon strength thereof made good against those of *Nabath*; but taken by some adventurers of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is said, *Job.* 19. 47. That finding their own Country too little for them, they went up and fought against *Lishem* which they took, and called *DAN*. Accompted after this exploit, the utmost bound Northward of the Land of *Canaan*, the length thereof being measured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beersheba* in the South *LXXII* German miles, or 268 *English* miles: remarkable for one of the Golden Calves which was placed here by *Terobeam*, and for the two spring heads of *Jordan*, rising near unto it. When conquered by the *Romans* it was called *Panæas*, from a Fountain adjoining of that name: which with the Territory about it, after the death of *Zenodorus*, who held it of the *Roman* Empire, as before was said, was given by *Augustus Cæsar* unto *Herod* the Great: and by him at his decease to *Philip* his youngest Son, with the *Tetrarchy* of *Ituraea* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cæsarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour with *Tiberius Cæsar*; partly to preserve the memory of his own name: and partly to distinguish it from another *Cæsarea* situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cæsarea Palestinæ*: and being so repaired by him, it was made the *Metropolis* of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name, *Mat.* 16. 13. when *St. Peter* made that confession or acknowledgment of his Lord and Master, *That he was CHRIST the Son of the living God*. By King *Agrippa*, who succeeded him in his Estates, in honour of the Emperor *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the Adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance: the Town being called *Cæsarea Panæa* in the time of *Ptolemy*; and simply *Panæas*, as before, in the time of *St. Hierom*. Of this *Cæsarea* was that Woman whom our Saviour cured of the bloody Flux, by touching but the Hem of his Garment: who in a pious gratitude of so great a mercy, erected two Statues in this place, representing *CHRIST*, and her self kneeling at his feet; remaining here entire till the time of *Julian* the *Apostate*, by whose command it was cast down, and a Statue of his own set up in the place thereof, miraculously destroyed by a fire from Heaven. The City being at that time, and long before, an Episcopal See. Of less note there were, 1 *Haleb*, and 2 *Reccath*, both situate in the confines of it. And not far off the strong Town and Castle of 3 *Magdala*, (the habitation as some say of *Mary Magdalen*) where the *Pharisees* desired a sign of our Saviour *CHRIST*, as is said *Mat.* 15. 39. & 16. 1. the same, or some place near unto it, being by *St. Mark* (reporting the same part of the Story) called *Dalmanutha*, Chap. 8. 10. 11. But whether this Castle did anciently belong to these *Danites*, or to those of *Naphtali*, or to the half Tribe of *Manasses* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of those which were in the possession of the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, the Cities of most eminent observation were, 1 *Hazor*, or *Azor*, by *Junius* and *Tremellius* called *Chatzar*, the Regal City and *Metropolis* of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendezvous* of 24 *Canaanitish* Kings in the War with *Joshua*; by whom it was taken notwithstanding, and burnt to ashes. But being afterwards rebuilt, it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who so grievously for the space of 20 years, afflicted *Israel*; till vanquished by

Deborah and *Barak*. Destroyed in that War, and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in so good estate in our Saviour's time, that it was then one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*; it being so still, but known by the name of *Antiochia*. 2 *Capernaum*, seated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*; of which Countrey it was accounted the *Metropolis*, in the time of our Saviour, with whose presence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decapopolitans*. Some marks of its former greatness it retained when *St. Hierom* lived, who confesseth it to be a Town of some good capacity, but so decayed in the time of *Breidenbach* and *Brochardus*, that it consisted but of six poor Fishermens houses. 3 *Hamath*, so called from *Hamathi* the Son of *Canaan*, planted in these parts; a Town of such esteem in the elder times that it was reckoned to be one of the Gates of the Land of *Canaan*; and therefore called in Scripture, *Iavrouam Hamath*, or the entrance of *Hamath*; as *Numb.* 34. 8. *Josh.* 13. 5. *Judg.* 3. 3, &c. Mistaken by *St. Hierom* for another of the same name in *Syria*, by the *Greeks* and *Romans* after them, called *Epiphania*. And in this I say he is mistaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolomy* two degrees more Eastward than *Cæsarea Philippi*, the most Eastern City of all *Galilee*; and two degrees more North than that, though the most Northern City of all *Palestine*. The ground of this mistake we have seen before. Won by the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Israel*, by *Jeroboam* the second Son of *Joas*; and after added by the *Romans* (as were *Scythopolis*, *Pella*, *Gadara*, and some others of this tract) unto *Cælo-Syria*. 4 *Kadesh*, to difference it from others of the same name, called *Kadesh-Naphtalim*, high seated on the top of an Hill, as is said, *Josh.* 20. 7. the King whereof being taken and slain by *Joshua*, it was made one of the Cities of Refuge, and given to the *Levites*. Most memorable for the Birth of *Barak*, who discomfited *Sisera*, Lieutenant of the Host of *Jabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the Jewish State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, in the time of the *Romans*; and an Episcopal See in the first ages of Christianity. 5 *Riblah*, watered with the fountain of *Dauphis*, a little Rivier, which hereabouts falleth into *Jordan*: to which City, as some say (but I think erroneously) *Zelchibius* the unfortunate King of the *Jews* was brought Prisoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, who caused his children to be slain before his face, and then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Error in them that say it, the Scene of this Tragedy being by *Josephus* laid in *Riblah* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*; the same which in succeeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Josephus*, who for so long was Governor of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be so ignorant of the State of this Province, as to transfer that bloody execution to a City of *Syria*, if it had been acted in this Countrey. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greatest Towns in the Tribe of *Naphtali*, should be capable of the Court and Train of that mighty Monarch; especially for so long a time, as he is said to have attended in that place, the success of his forces then before *Jerusalem*, and the disposal of the State when the Town was taken. 6 *Saphet*, another of the *Decapopolitan* Cities, strongly if not impreguably seated; one of the strongest Fortresses of the Western Christians, as it was after their expulsion of the *Turks* and *Saracens*; who from hence wasted and subdued all the neighbouring Countrey, as far as to the very Sea. The only place, not of this Countrey only but of all the East, in which the *Jews* (who possessed a third part of this Town) have any shew or shadow of a Common Wealth. 7 *Beithshemeth*, mentioned *Josh.* 9. 38 made tributary unto those of this Tribe; though otherwise possessed by the *Canaanites* who held out against them. 8 *Cartham*, or *Knairbaim*, situate near the Mountain, which in following times was called *Mont Christi* because much frequented by our Saviour; who here

made choice of his Apostles, as is said *Mark* 3. 12. and where he made also that Divine Sermon, recited in the 5. 6. and 7. Chapters of *St. Matthew's* Gospel. 9 *Majcoloth*, a place of a great strength, but forced by *Bacchides*, General of the Armies of the Kings of *Syria*, in the time of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Cinnereth*, a strong City, after called *Genezareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring near unto it, is sometimes called the Lake of *Genezareth*, as *Luke* 5. 1. &c.

2. The Tribe of *A S E R*, was so called from *Aser*, the eighth Son of *Jacob*, begotten of *Zilpah* the Handmaid of *Leah*; of whom at their first Muster when they came out of *Egypt*, were found 41500 persons able to bear arms, all above twenty years of age, and at the second Muster when they entered the Land of *Canaan*, 53400 fighting men of the new increase. The portion of the Land allotted for their habitation was plentiful in Wine, Oyl, and Wheat, with great store of Balsom; extending from the Coast of *Sidon*, to *Ptolomais*, thirty miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eastward to the Tribe of *Neptali*, some twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Ptolomais*, *Tyre*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command; yet had they in this narrow compass many beautiful Cities and Towns of note; which they were quietly possessed of, till their subjugation by the King of *Assyria*.

The principal of those, and others which have since been founded, 1 *Aphik*, memorable for the great slaughter there made of the *Syrians* when besieged by *Benhadad*; of whom 100000 were slain by the *Israelites* under the leading of *Abab*, and 27000 killed by the fall of a Wall. 2 *Gabala*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* amongst the mid-land Cities of *Phœnicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe: one of those twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refusal peopled by the *Israelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards rebuilt and strongly fortified by *Herod* the Great. 3 *Giscala*, a Town of great strength and consequence; the birth-place of *John* or *Jebocanan*, one of the three seditious in *Jerusalem* when besieged by *Titus*, where he did more mischief than the Enemy. Attempting to betray this City to the power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrians* an opportunity to be Masters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being rebuilt by the authority of *Josephus*, then Governour of *Galilee* for the *Jews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon composition. 4 *Cana*, for distinction sake called *Cana-Major*, to difference it from another of that name in the Lower *Galilee*, affirmed for the dwelling of that Woman, whose Daughter Christ delivered of an evil Spirit; called by *St. Matthew* a Woman of *Canaan*, chap. 15. a *Syro-Phœnician* by *St. Mark*, chap. 7. the *Syro-lbanicians* of this Tract, being originally of the Race of *Canaan*, as was said before. 5 *Hethlan*, or *Cetblan*, the furthest City of the North; as 6 *Missal*, or *Masbeal*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Aser*. Of later Date there are 7 *Thoron*, a strong piece, built by the *Christians* on the Hills near *Tyre*, to hinder the Excursions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, of great importance in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and giving Name to the Noble Family of the Lords of *Thoron*; one of which being Constable to King *Raldwin* the Third, lieth buried in the Chapel adjoining to it, a curious piece of Workmanship, and dedicated by the Name of the Blessed Virgin. 8 *Belford*, so named from the strength and beauty of it; seated on the high Grounds near the River *Naar*, and memorable for the great repulse which *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turks* received before it; being forced to raise his Siege with dishonour and loss, on the coming of the *Christians* Armies. Some other Forts here are of the same Erection, as 9 *Montfort*, and 10 *Mount Royal* (or *Castrum Regium*) belonging to the *Dutch* Knights (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended against the Infidels. *Elurbe-*

Elutherus, a small River which springing from *Mount Libanus*, washeth *Hamath*, *Cana Major*, *Beisfort* and *Holma*, falls into the *Mediterranean*, North of *Tyre*. Near this River stood *Castrum Novum*, built by one *Humsfy de Torono*, which being besieged by the *Great Saladin*, he was so frightened by the death of one of his Favourites slain by an Arrow before it, that he raised the Siege, and left the Castle.

3 The Tribe of *ZABULON*, was so called from *Zabulon* the Tenth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leab*; of whom there mustered near *Mount Sinai* 57400 able Men; and 65000 at their second Muster, when they came into *Canaan*. Their Territory lay on the South of *Aser* and *Naphthalim*, and the North of *Zabulon*, extending from the Lake of *Tiberias* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Joknebam*, the King whereof was slain by *Joshua*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2 *Zabulon*, or the City of Men; a stately and magnificent City, till burnt to the Ground by *Cestius* a Roman President. 3 *Cana-minor*, so called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Aser*, the birth-place of *Nathaniel*, and as some say, of *Simon Zelotes*: Memorable for the Marriage at which our Saviour wrought his first Miracle, of turning Water into Wine: Called in *St. John's Gospel*, *Cana of Galilee*. 4 *Bersabe*, standing in the Border betwixt both *Galilees*, and therefore strongly fortified by *Josephus* against the *Romans*. 5 *Dotban*, where *Joseph* found his Brethren as they fed their Flocks; and where the Prophet *Elisha* strook blind the *Syrians*, who besieged him in it. 6 *Bethsaida*, situate on the Sea of *Galilee*, one of the Ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the Birth-place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*; but most renowned for the Miracles and Preaching of our Lord and Saviour. 7 *Nazareth*, now a small Village, seated in a Vale betwixt two Hills, not far from *Ptolemais*, or *Acon*; upon one of which Two Hills it was formerly built, where still are to be seen the Ruins of many Churches, here founded by the *Christians*; it being in the flourishing Times of *Christianity* an Arch-bishop's See. Of great esteem for being, if not the Birth-place, yet the Habitation of the Virgin *Mary*; who was here saluted with those joyful Tidings by an Angel, as she sat in her Chamber. Of which Chamber it is said in the Popish Legends, That it was after the Virgin's Death had in great reverence by the *Christians*, and remained in this Town till the *Holy-Land* was subdued by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, Anno 1291. Then most miraculously transported into *Sclavonia*; but that place being unworthy of the Virgin's Divine Presence, 'twas by the Angels carried over into the Sea-Coasts of *Italy*, Anno 1294. That place also being infested with Thieves and Pirates, the Angels removed it to the little Village of *Loretto*, where her Miracles were quickly divulged; insomuch that *Paul* the second built a most stately Church over this Chamber, and *Xistus* the fifth made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our Famous Lady of *Loretto*. Here did our Blessed Saviour spend a great part of his Life before his Baptism; from whence both he and his Disciples had for many years the name of *Nazarites*. 8 *Jesopata*, strongly seated on the top of a Mountain near the Lake of *Gennesareth*, fortified by *Josephus* in the War with the *Romans*, but after a long Siege taken by *Vespasian*, and in it *Josephus* the Historian, Chief Governor of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9 *Tiberias*, raised out of the ground by *Herod the Tetrarch*, and named thus in Honour of *Tiberius Caesar*. Situate in a fruitful Soil on the edge of the Lake, which afterwards took the name of the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*: This City being held to be the greatest of the *Lower-Galilee*, and the Metropolis of the *Decapolitan* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called *St. Matthew* from the Receipts of the Custom-House; and near unto it that he raised the Daughter of *Jairus*. The *Nubian Geographer* assureth us it was in the Twelfth

Century the greatest City on the River *Jordan*, and that it stood something further from *Tyre* than from *Ptolemais*. 10 *Bethulia*, more within the Land, seated on an high Hill, and of very great strength, as appears by the Story of *Judas* and *Isiofernes*. 11 *Japha*, a place of like strength, but forced by *Titus*; who in the fury of the storm slew in it above 15000 Persons, and carried away with him 2000 Prisoners. 12 *Sephoris*, or *Sippora*, the Habitation of *Jechim* and *Anna*, the Parents of the Blessed Virgin; fortified with strong Walls by *Herod the Tetrarch*, who made it his Regal-Seat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that Time, it had been made by *Gabinus*, one of the five *Judicial* Reivots for the *Palestinians*: after that not without great difficulty forced by *Vespasian*; and is nothing now but a Castle known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Saffet*. The ordinary Residence, for the most part of the *Turkish Sanziak* who hath the Government of this Province; and lately, if not still, of the *Emirs* of *Sidon*; *Faccardine* the late *Emir* having been made the *Sanziak* of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not far off is *Mount Tabor*, famous for the Transfiguration of our Saviour; for a sumptuous Chappel built on the Top of the Hill in memory of it, by the Empress *Helena*, Mother of *Constantine the Great*: and for the Fountain of the Brook *Chison*, which presently divided into Two Streams runneth Eastward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias*; and Westward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4 The Tribe of *ISSACHAR* is so called from *Issachar* the ninth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leab*, of whom were found at the first Muster 54400 fighting men, and 64300 at the second Muster. Their Lot, in the partition of the Land amongst the Tribes, fell betwixt *Zabulon*, and the half Tribe of *Manasses* on this side *Jordan*, North and South; extending from that River to the *Mid-land Sea*. A Territory not so well replenished with strong and eminent Cities, as was that before; nor yielding so much matter of observation in the course of Business.

Those of most note in it, 1 *Tarichaa*, on the side of the Lake, about 8 Miles from *Tiberias*, of great strength both by Art and Nature; as witnessed the notable resistance which *Vespasian* found when he besieged it, by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible slaughter. 2 *Cishion*, a City of the *Levites*. 3 *Remeth*, called also *Farmuth*, another City of the *Levites*; where the Hills of *Gilboa* take beginning, and thence range as far as the *Mediterranean* Westward, and the City of *Yezreel* towards the East. 4 *En-badda*, near which *Saul* being discomfited by the *Philistines*, slew himself for grief; or else for fear of falling into the hands of those merciless Enemies, against whom he had so often returned victorious. 5 *Naim*, on the Banks of the River *Chison*; where *CHRIST* raised to life the Widow's Son. 6 *Hapharaim*, or *Apbraim*, on the Banks of the same River also. 7 *Endor*, of chief note for the Witch with whom *Saul* consulted; and the discomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gideon*, who perished at *Endor*, and became as the Dung of the Earth, saith the Royal Psalmist. 8 *Dabarrath*, one of the Cities of Refuge. 9 *Arbela*, not far from the Cave of the Two Thieves, which so greatly infested *Galilee* in the Time of *Herod*. And of a later date, the Castle of *Pilgrims* (*Castrum Peregrinorum* in Latin Writers) built by *Raymund* Earl of *Tholouse*, and after fortified by the *Templers*, for the security of such as travelled to the *Holy-Land*, and for long time the Magazine or Store-house of the Western *Christians*, now called *Tortora*. Situate on the Shores of the *Mediterranean*, near a spacious Bay; on the North-side whereof *Mount Carmel*, described already.

As for those *Galileans* which succeed in the place of these Tribes, they were for the most part originally such as were sent hither by *Salmanassar* to inhabit there when the *Israhelites* were led away into endless Thraldom; but intermixed with some Remainers of the Ten Tribes, as was said before. And yet as if they had been whole

ly of the same Extraction, with the rest of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much despised by the *Jews* (as witnesseth that scornful by-word, *Can there any good come out of Galilee?*) as the others were: Tho these as Orthodox in Religion as the *Jews* themselves. In which so zealously affected, that neither Threats nor Force could make them offer Sacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperors, whom they looked on as the Enemies of their Law and Liberty, brought under the Command of the King of *Jewry* by the *Maccabæans*, and with the rest of that Kingdom bestowed on *Herod* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod* surnamed *Antipas*, the second of his Sons then living with the Title of *Tetrarch*, which he joined till the Death of our Saviour; and on his deprivation (being banished to *Lyons* in *France* by the Emperor *Caligula*) bestowed upon *Agrippa* his Brother's Son, the first King of the *Jews* so named. Under him, and his Son *Agrippa* the second, it continued till the general Revolt of the Jewish Nation. Subjected by the Sword of *Titus* to the Power of the *Romans*, it hath since followed the same Fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

4 SAMARIA.

SAMARIA is bounded on the East with the River *Jordan*; on the West with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North with *Galilee*; and on the South with *Judea*. So called from *Samariz*, the chief City of it: of which more hereafter.

The Country interchangeably composed of Plains and Mountains, excellent good for Tillage, and full of Trees, yielding variety of Fruits: watered both with the Dew of Heaven, and many Fresh Springs which the Earth affordeth it; occasioning thereby abundance of Grass, and consequently of Milch-Beasts exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy, and no less populous; but now famed for neither.

The People for the most part were originally the descendants of those *Assyrians* whom *Salmanassar* sent hither to possess the Dwellings of the Captive *Israelites*. *Gentiles* at first, till better instructed by the *Lyons* whom God sent amongst them, and after by the Priest sent hither by the Kings of *Assyria*; they entertained the five Books of *Moses*, and out of them learned the manner of the God of the Land, 2 *King*. 17. Further than this they would not go, rejecting all the rest of the sacred Canon; and no strict Observers of this neither. And tho at first they so embraced the Worship of God, as that they still adhered to the gods of the Nations where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Ashmab*, *Nibbas*, *Tartak*, and the rest of that Rabble, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17. yet they were soon taken off from those Impieties, and became zealous in the Worship of one only God; erroneous chiefly in the place which was destined to it. The wicked Policy of *Serobast* the Son of *Nebat*, was as natural to them, as if they could not have possessed his Estates without it; and therefore would not suffer their People to go up to *Jerusalem* to worship, as the Law required. More pious in this than their Predecessors, that they erected no Golden Calves in *Dan* and *Bethel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: Tho to divert the People from the Temple of God, they would have a Temple of their own. Mount *Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as sacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the *Jews*. Schismatical enough in this, but not Idolatrous and Schismatical too as the others were; yet so conceited of themselves, and their own Perfections, that they imagined themselves defiled by any Company but their own. If therefore they had visited any of their Neighbour Nations, at their return they used to sprinkle themselves with Urine; But if by negligence, or the necessity of Business, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themselves, Cloaths and all, in the next Mountain. But in this the *Jews* cried quittance

with them, not so much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appeareth *John* 4. 9. but loading them, on the other side, with all the bitterness of reproach and hatred. There are two manner of People (saith the Son of *Sirach*) which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people: they that sit on the Mountains of *Samaria*, the *Philistims*, and the foolish People that dwell at *Sichem*, *Eccles.* 50. And this continued to the Times of our Blessed Saviour, whom when the *Jews* endeavoured to reproach with their heaviest Calumnies, they could find out none so great, as to say, That he was a *Samaritan*, and (which they thought came all to one) a man that had converse with Devils and Familiar Spirits.

Of these there were some Sects also, as amongst the *Jews*. 1 The *Dositheans*, so called from *Dositheus* or *Dositheai*, supposed to be the first Priest who was sent thither by the King of *Assyria*: agreeing with the *Jews* in Circumcision, and the Sabbath, and the Doctrine of the Resurrection, (in which last they differed from the common *Samaritan*, who was a *Sadducee* in that Point) but differing from them in some Points of a signal consequence. For they rejected the Writings of all the Prophets, as not *Σοφιστικοί* inspired by the Holy Ghost; they ate of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoreans*; abstained from Marriage like the *Essenes*; and in the Point of Sabbath-keeping out-went the *Pharisees*; it being resolved upon amongst them, That in what Posture soever a Man was found on the Sabbath-day Morning, in the same he was to continue without alteration the next Day after. 2 The *Selwians*, so called from *Sebva*, one of the Companions of that *Dositheai*; who they kept all the Publick Festivals, as the *Jews* and the other *Samaritans* did, yet they kept them not at the same Time: Transferring the Passover to August, the Pentecost to Autumn, and the Feast of Tabernacles to the Time of the Passover; not suffered for that cause to worship in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3 The *Gortheni*, who kept the same Festivals, and observed the same Times of those Solemnities, as the Law required; but kept only one of the Seven Days of those great Festivals, and laid by the rest, as Days of ordinary Labour. In other Points not differing from the other *Samaritans*, who tho at first possessed of all the Land belonging to the Ten Tribes of *Israel*, were yet reduced at last to a narrower compass; shut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Jordan*, within the Ancient Territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manasses*, on this side of the Water.

1 The half Tribe of *MANASSES* on this side of *Jordan*, was situate betwixt *Iffachar* on the North, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South; extending from the *Mediterranean*, to the Banks of that River. In which the places of most consequence and consideration, 1 *Beth-san*, environed almost with the Land of *Iffachar*, situate near the Banks of *Jordan*, where it beginneth again to streighten and be like it self, having been almost lost in the Sea of *Galilee*; first called *Nisa*, and so called by *Bacchus*, or *Liber Pater*, the Founder of it, in memory of his Nurse there buried; but the Children of *Manasses* not being able to expel the Natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth-san*, or the House of an Enemy. Afterwards when the *Scythians* invaded those parts of *Asia*, and compelled some of the *Jews* to serve them against the rest (whom notwithstanding their good Service they put all to the Sword) they new-built this City: Called therefore by the *Græcians*, *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Cælo-Syria*. Memorable in the *Old Testament* for the hanging of the dead Bodies of *Saul* and his Sons on the Walls hereof, by the barbarous *Philistims*; in the Time of our Saviour, for being the greatest of all the *Decapollitan* Region; as afterwards in the flourishing Times of *Christianity*, for being the See of an Arch Bishop: now nothing but a desolate Village, and an heap of Rubbish, out of which many goodly Pillars, and other

other pieces of excellent Marble, are often digged. 2 *Terzib*, used by the Kings of *Israel* for their Regal Seat, till the building of *Samarita*, and the removal of it thither. 3 *Acrabata*, the Territory whereof called *Acrabata*, was afterwards made one of the *Toparchies* of *Judea*. 4 *Tobes*, not far from *Samarita*, where the Bastard *Abimelech* was wounded with a Stone, which a Woman threw at him from the Wall; and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to slay him, that it might not be said he perished by the hands of a Woman. 5 *Ephra*, or *Hophra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt: near whereunto there stood an Altar consecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*: and not far off the Fatal Stone on which *Abimelech* slew 70 of his Brethren. An Heathenish Cruelty, and at this day practiced amongst the *Turks*. 6 *Asophor*, an ignoble Village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Ptolemy Latbarus* here gave to *Alexander* the King of the *Jews*: which Victory he used with so great Barbarity, that he slew all the Women as he passed along, and caused young Children to be sod in Caldrons. 7 *Bezek*, The City of the bloody Tyrant *Adoni-Bezek*, whose Story (touched upon before) see at large in *Judges*, chap. 1. By *Josephus* it is called *Bala*, and seems to be the place in which *Saul* assembled the chief strength of *Israel* and *Judah*, to the number of 33000 men, for the relief of *Jabesh-Gilead*, then distressed by the *Ammonites*. 8 *Jezreel*, the Royal City of *Abab*, and the Kings of his Race, situate on the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*: so near unto the Borders of *Issachar*, that some have placed it in that Tribe. Memorable in Sacred Story for the stoning of *Naboth* by the procurement of *Jezabel*, and the breaking of *Jezabel's* neck by the Command of *Jehu*. A City which gave name to the Plains adjoining, called the Valleys or Plains of *Jezreel* (but by the Name of *Campus Magnus* in the Book of *Maccabees*, lib. 1. cap. 10.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the *Mediterranean*: Famous for the great and many Battels which have been fought in it; as namely, of *Gideon* against the *Midianites*, of *Saul* against the *Philistims*, of *Abab* against the *Syrians*, of *Jehu* against *Jeboham*; and finally of the *Christians* against the *Saracens*. 9 *Megiddo*, unfortunately observable for the death of the good King *Josiah*, slain hereabouts in a Battel against *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*; and before that of *Abaziah* King of *Judah*, who received his death-wound at *Gaber*, a Town adjoining, when pursued by *Jehu*. 10 *Dora*, or *Dor* as the Scripture calls it, on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the Castle of Pilgrims in the Tribe of *Issachar*. A very strong and powerful City, and therefore chose by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having first treacherously taken, and barbarously murdered *Jonathan* the *Maccabean*, after he had received 200 Talents for his Ransom; and no less villanously slain *Antiochus* the sixth of *Syria*, his Lord and Master whom he succeeded in his Throne, was by *Antiochus* the seventh, with an Army of 120000 foot and 8000 horse, besieged in this City, and most deservedly put to death. 11 *Cæsarea*, anciently called the Tower of *Straton*, from *Straton* a King of the *Zidonians*; new-built by *Herod*, and by him not only beautified with a large Theatre and Amphitheatre, both of polished Marble, with a fair and capacious Haven, which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection, in honour of *Drusus Cæsar*, Son-in-Law of *Augustus*, he caused one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Drusus*, the City it self to be called *Cæsarea Palestina*. The stateliness and magnificence of which City (when first built by *Herod*) he that lists to see may find the same described at large by *Josephus* the Jew, in the 15th Book of *Antiq.* cap. 13. In this City was *Cornelius* baptized by St. Peter: Here did *Paul* plead in defence of Christianity before *Festus* then the Roman President: and finally, here *Herod Agrippa* was smitten by an Angel, and devoured by Worms, after his Rhetorical Ora-

tion, which his *Parasites* called the voice of God, and not of man. The Metropolis of all *Palestine*, when one Province only; as afterwards of *Palestina prima*, when by *Constantine*, or some of his Successors, cantoned into three: the first Bishop hereof being said to be that *Cornelius*, whom Saint Peter here initiated in the Faith of CHRIST. *Uliny* saith this City was call'd *Apollonia*, *Vespasian* gave it the Title of *Flavia Colonia*. 12 *Antipatris*, another City of *Herod's* building, in the place where *Kapharsalama*, mentioned 1 *Maccab.* 7. 31. had sometimes stood; who in honour of his Father *Antipater*, gave it this new name. Near hereunto did *Judas Maccabeus* overthrow a part of *Nicanor's* Army: and not far off, the Mountain where *Obadiah* the Steward of *Abab* hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preserved against the fury of *Jezabel*: Finally to this City it was that Saint Paul was conveyed by the command of *Lysias* to save him from the *Jews*, who lay in wait to destroy him. *Act.* 23. 31. This place is built in one of the most fruitful spots of Earth in *Palestine*, and was considerably strong in the time of the Holy War, that *Godfrey* the first King of *Jerusalem* could not take it, but *Baldwin* his Successor however Conquered it. 13 *Alexandrium* a strong Castle in the Southern border of this Tribe, which *Alexander* the Son of *Aristobulus* fortified against the *Romans*, but was at last forced to yield it up and the Castle was demolished. *Aristobulus* escaping from *Rome* would have rebuilt it but was forbidden by *Gabinus*. *Herod* rebuilt it and left his Wife *Mariamna* in it when he went to *Augustus* to *Rhodes*. *Janfonius*.

2. The Tribe of *EPHRAIM* was so called from *Ephraim*, the second and youngest Son of *Joseph*; of whom were mustered in the Desarts 45000 fighting men, and 32500 in the Land of *Canaan*; where their Lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manasses*, on the North; and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South, extending from the River *Jordan* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of most consideration, 1 *Saron* on the *Mediterranean*, to the South of *Antipatris*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitful Valley which reacheth from *Cæsarea Palestina*, as far as *Joppa*. 2 *Lydda*, upon the same shores, where Saint Peter (*virtute Christi, non sua*) cured *Aeneas* of the Palsy. By the Gentiles it was called *Disopolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the Christians, in the time of the Holy Wars, it had the name of Saint George's; partly from a magnificent Temple which the Emperor *Justinian* there erected to the honour of that blessed Martyr; but principally from an opinion which they had amongst them, that he suffered Martyrdom in that place. An opinion founded on mistakes, first of a *Canotaphium*, or an empty Monument erected in this City to preserve his memory, for the Grave in which he was interred; the other, in taking the word *Passio*, used in the *Martyrologies*, for the place of his suffering, which is meant only of the Story or Celebration. But howsoever they entituled it by the name of Saint George's, as was said before, and made it on that account also an Episcopal Sec. 3 *Ramatha*, or *Arimathea*, a City of the *Levites*, supposed to be the dwelling of *Joseph*, who begged of *Pilate* the Body of CHRIST. 4 *Helon*, or *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* also; by some placed, and perhaps more fitly, in the Tribe of *Dan*, and there we shall hear further of it. 5 *Thermath-Cares*, given by the *Israelites* to *Josiah*, who enlarged the same, and made it a strong and goodly City; honoured with the Sepulchre of that brave Commander, one of the Nine Worthies of the World; and afterwards made one of the *Presidencies* of *Judea*, by the name of *Thammitica*. 6 *Adæsa*, or *Adarsa*, where *Judas Maccabeus* with 3000 *Jews* overthrew the Army of *Nicanor*. 7 *Jisetti*, called otherwise *Pelethi*, which gave name and birth unto the *Pelethites*, part of *David's* Guard, under the governance of *Bennab*. 8 *Silo*, si-

tuate

tuate on the top of a lofty Mountain; the receptacle of the Ark, till taken and carried thence by the *Philistims*. 9 *Michmas*, the habitation of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brethren, situate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hierusalem*, now called *Byza*. 10 *Naiotb*, where *Saul* prophesied. 11 *Bethoron*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*, but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow which *Judas Maccabæus* here gave to *Lyfias*. 12 *Pirbathon*, on the Mountain *Amelec*, the City of *Abdon* the Judge of *Israel*. 13 *Sichem*, called also *Sichor*, the habitation in the old times of *Sichem* the Father of that *Hamor*, who defloured *Dinah* the Daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cause destroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*; repaired again, and afterwards by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground: a third time re-edified by *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, and a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damascus*: yet notwithstanding these blows, it was of good esteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two days, and converted many. Memorable for *Jacob's Well*, which was very near it; more for his neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the blessings were to be read to the people (of which see *Deut.* 11. 27. and *Josh.* 8. 23) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the use of the *Samaritan* Nation, at the cost and charge of *Sanballat*, a great Prince amongst them. Who having married his daughter to *Manasses*, brother of *Jaddus* the High Priest of the *Jews*, and fearing he would put her away, to avoid the sentence of Excommunication, which he was involved in for that Match, promised him, that if he would retain her, he would build a Temple answerable to that of *Hierusalem*, and make him the High Priest thereof, which was done accordingly. But this Temple had not stood above two hundred years, when destroyed by *Hyrceanus* the *Maccabæan*; the place remaining notwithstanding a place of worship, as appeareth *John* 4. 20. As for the City of *Sichem*, or *Sichor*, it was by the *Græcians* called *Nicopolis*, afterwards made a Colony by the Emperor *Vespasian*, who caused it to be called *Flavia Cæsarea*: of which Colony was that renowned *Justin Martyr*. 14 *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Israel*, founded by *Omri* one of the Kings thereof, on the top of the Mountain *Samron* (which overlooketh all the bottom as far as the Sea-coast) whence it had the name. A stately and magnificent City, conjectured by *Brocardus*, who had traced the ancient Ruins of it, to be bigger than *Hierusalem*. Destroyed by the *Affyrians* when they carried away the Ten Tribes; but afterwards repaired again, and again beaten to the ground by the Sons of *Hyrceanus* above-mentioned. But *Herod the Great* who was pleased with the situation of it, did again re-edifie it, in more stately manner than before; as appeareth by the great store of goodly Marble Pillars, and other carved Stones, in great abundance found amongst the rubbish: and having rebuilt it to his mind, inclosed it with a strong wall, and beautified it with a goodly Temple; in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebastos*, he caused it to be called *Sebaste*. Memorable after this new erection for the Sepulchre of *John Baptist*, and being made the Metropolis of *Palestina Secunda*, (by consequence an Archbishop's See) now nothing but a few Cottages filled with *Græcian Monks*.

Nor were the *Samaritans* themselves (so called from this their principal City) less subject to the vicissitudes and change of fortune, than the City was. Descended for the most part from the *Affyrians*, and such other Nations as were sent thither to fill up the empty places of the captive Tribes: but called *Curbeans* by the *Jews*, either because most of them were of *Curb*, a Region of *Persia*, as *Josephus* telleth us, which is now called *Chuzestan*; or else by way of scorn, for *Chusites*, as being of the Posterity of the accursed *Cham*, by *Chus* his son. Having imbraced the Law of *Moses*, they began to think better of the *Jews* than the other Nations, but fitted

their affections to the change of times: it being the observation of the said *Josephus*, that as often as the *Jews* were in any prosperity, then they called them *Cousins*, and would be of the same Nation with them; but when their fortunes were on the declining hand, then they were strangers which came thither out of foreign Nations, and no kin at all. Nor doth he wrong them in that Character. For when *Alexander the Great* had granted the *Jews* a release of the seventh years Tribute, the *Samaritans* desiring the like exemption, pleaded for themselves *Ἐγγιστοὶ καὶ εἰσὶν* &c. that they indeed were very *Hebrews* though it pleased the *Sidonians* to call them *Sichemites*. But when *Antiochus* raged against them with fire and sword, the *Samaritans* sent Letters to him, disclaiming all relation to those of *Judah*, and challenging their descent from the *Medes* and *Persians*. Nor were they content only to disclaim all kindred with the *Jews*, in the times of trouble, when any persecution rose against them for the Law of God; but did them also all ill Offices, and joyned with their Enemies to their destruction: especially after the *Jews* had refused to admit of their assistance, in the re-building of the Temple; which after that they hindered with great malice, and no less perverseness. But the fortune of the *Jews* did at last prevail, the whole Nation being subdued by *Hyrceanus* the *Maccabæan*, who destroyed their Schismatical Temple also, and levelled *Samaria* itself to the very ground. After this, subject to the *Jews*, who possessed themselves of most of their Cities, and contracted them into a narrower compass than they were in formerly: but still so hated and contemned, that nothing was able to appease that inveterate malice, which they had conceived; till both Nations were extirpated in the time of *Adrian*, and made to seek their dwellings in other Countries. Made afterwards a Province of the *Roman Empire*, by the name of *Palestina Secunda*; successively subject with the rest to the *Persians*, *Sarazens*, and *Turks*, who do now possess it.

5 JUDÆA.

JUDÆA is bounded on the East with the *Dead Sea*, and the River *Jordan*; on the West with the *Mediterranean*; on the North with *Samaria*; and on the South with *Idumæa*. So called from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, who after their return from the captivity of *Babylon*, communicated the name of *Jew* unto all the Nation, as they did that of *Judæa* to this part of the Country.

The Soil of the same nature with that of *Samaria*, before described; but that it is more swelled with Hills, and more stored with Rivers, though of no great fame. And therefore we shall say no more, as to the general character and description of it; but look on the particular parts as it stood divided betwixt the *Philistims*, the Tribes of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Judah* and *Benjamin*.

And first, the *PHILISTIMS* commanded all the Sea coasts from the South of *Phœnicia*, to the North of *Idumæa*; or from the *Castle of Pilgrims*, to the City of *Gaza*, taking both into the account. But *Joppa*, and all the Towns on the North of that, being taken in by the *Israelites*, they held no more than six Towns of any importance, with the Countries and Territories adjoining to them: but those so populous and strong, that by their own power, and the assistance of the *Edomites*, and the rest of their Neighbours, not well affected to the Tribes, they kept them under terms, and lay more heavy on them than all the *Canaanites* together; as will appear when we sum up the story and successes of their affairs.

In the mean time let us survey the Country which was holden by them, notwithstanding all that could be done against them by the Kings of *Israel*: And therein we shall find worth our observation, 1 *Gath*, or *Gath*, the Birth place of the huge Giant *Goliath*, slain by

by *David*; as also of many others of the like Gigantine proportion, slain by *David's* Worthies. Destroyed by *David*, or rather slighted and dismantled, it was rebuilt by *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*; but again razed by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, who found the *Philistines* there Garisoned but ill Neighbours to him, and finally laid waste by *Hazael* the King of *Syria*. Not much regarded after that, though it kept the name of *Gath* in *St. Hierom's* time; till in these last ages *Fulk* the King of *Hierusalem* erected there a new Castle, from the ancient ruins. From hence, as I conceive, the Idol *Dagon*, so much worshipped by these *Philistines*, was by the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* called *Ater-Gatis*; and not from *Gatis* a *Syrian* Queen, as is said by many. 2 *Accaron*, on the South of *Gath*, of great wealth and power, and one that held out notably against the *Danites* and *Judeans*. Much spoken of in the Holy Scriptures, but for nothing more than their Idolatrous worship of *Belzebub*, that is to say, the Lord of *Flies*: so called by the *Jews*, either in contempt of the Idolatries committed to him, or because of that great multitude of *Flies* which attended his Sacrifices, whereof some say, the Temple of *Hierusalem* was wholly free. But whatsoever he was, or for what cause so named, certain it is that he was here had in special honour, and therefore called in Scripture the god of *Accaron*: and thither *Abaziah* the King of *Israel* sent his Messenger, to enquire of this Idol, concerning his health. 3 *Ashod*, (by the *Græcians* called *Azotus*) memorable in Holy Writ for the Temple of *Dagon*, into which the Ark of the Lord was brought; that Idol falling down before it, as not able to stand upright when the Ark so near. Near to this Town was *Judas Maccabæus* overcome and slain by *Bacchides*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*; and not long after the Town it self was taken by *Jonathan* the Brother of *Judas*, who put the Citizens to the sword, and burnt all such as fled into the Temple of *Dagon*, together with the very Idol, consumed in the same fire with the Idolaters. Rebuilt by *Gabinus* a *Roman* General, in the times of *Christianity* it was made an Episcopal See; and continued a fair Village till the days of *St. Hierom*. 4 *Ascalon*, on the Sea side also, said to be built by *Ascalus* a noble *Lydian*, employed by his King in a war against the *Syrians*; but this very uncertain. One of the chief and strongest Cities of the *Philistines*, of great note amongst the Gentiles for a Temple dedicated to *Dirceto*, the Mother of *Semiramis*, here worshipped in the form of a Mermaid: and for another of *Apollo*, wherein *Herod* the Father of *Antipater*, and Grand-father of *Herod the Great* (from his birth in this City called *Herod the Ascalonite*) is said to have served as the Priest. It had in the first times of *Christianity* an Episcopal See; and in the course of the Holy Wars was beautified with a new wall, and many fair buildings by King *Richard* the first. 5 *Gaza*, more within the Land, on the River *Beſor*; a fair and strong Town, formerly called *Aſſa*, from whence perhaps the name of *Gaza* was derived by the Heathens; or else it was so called by the *Persians*, in regard that *Cambyſes* here laid up the Treasure which he had provided for the War of *Agypt*, the word *Gaza* in the *Persian* Language signifying treasures. Of which *Cambyſes* it is said by *Pomponius Mela*, *Cum armis Agyptum peteret, huc bellioſes & pecuniam inſuebi curavit*. After which it was made the Redempt of Treasury, in which the *Persians* laid the Tribute of the Western Provinces, whence all riches had in time the name of *Gazæ*. Once *Caleb* took it, but not able to hold it against the *Philistines*, he again deserted it. Destroyed by *Alexander* the Great, and rebuilt again, it made notable resistance against the *Maccabees*; till at last forced by *Simon* the brother of *Judas*, who liked the place so well that he intended to have made it his place of residence: not so decayed in length of time, but that it was a goodly City in the days of *Brochardus*. And it is still the best of all this

Coast, built on an hill encompassed with rich and pleasant Vallies; the buildings low and mean, as in other places: but some of them adorned with Pillars of fair *Parian* Marble digged out of the remaining ruins. 6 *Maioma*, the Port Town of *Gaza*, but made a City of it self by *Constantine*, by whom called *Constantia*: but restored again by *Julian* unto those of *Gaza*, and by him commanded to be called *Gaza Maritima*.

These were the chief places holden by the *Philistines*, a strong and Giant-like race of men, such as the Scripture calls by the name of *Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*. Originally descended from *Cassubim* and *Caphorim*, of the race of *Mizraim* the Son of *Cham*: as appeareth both by the common consent of ancient Writers, and plain Texts of Scripture, *Jer.* 47. 4. and *Amos.* 9. 7. These being settled first in the borders of *Agypt* and *Libanus*, where the *Cassubim* gave name unto the Province of *Cassotis*, and the Mountain *Cassus*; proceeded Northward and subdued the *Avim*, a *Canaanish* people, planting themselves in their habitations, as is said expressly *Deut.* 2. 23. Here *Abraham* found them in his time, and here they were when *Isaac* went down to *Gerar*. Governed at first by one King, whom they called always by the name of *Abimelech*, as the *Agyptians* theirs by the name of *Pharaoh*; sometimes by five, according to the number of their principal Cities; but still united in the time of approaching dangers. Too strong to be subdued by the Tribes of *Israel*, they made head against them, and mastered them at several times, for above 150 years, tyrannizing over them, till broken by *Samſon* and for a time kept off by *Samuel*. Recovering again, they vanquished the *Israelites* in the time of *Saul*, whom they discomfited, and hanged his dead body barbarously on the walls of *Bethſan*. But *David*, a more fortunate Prince, overthrew them in many set battels, and at length took the Town of *Gath*, one of the strongest Towns they had; and by that means so weakened them, that they durst not stir all the time of *David*, nor a long while after. Beginning to be troublesome in the days of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their Army overthrown, *Ita* and *Arctia*, two of their strong Forts, took and razed, and the Town of *Gath* again dismantled. In the time of the Idolatrous *Achaz*, associating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the destruction of *Judah*) they brake out again; took *Bethſemes*, *Ajalon*, *Tinnab*, and some other Towns; carried away many Prisoners, and slew much People: But the good King *Ezekiah* made them pay dear for it, taking from them, the greatest part of their Country, betwixt *Gath* and *Gaza*. Which notwithstanding, they recovered to so great esteem, that the whole Countrey had from them the name of *Palestine*. But broken by degrees by the *Maccabæans*, they lost both their power and reputation, passing in common estimate as a part of *Jewry*; the fortunes of which it followed for the time succeeding.

2. The Tribe of *DAN* is so called from *Dan* the fifth Son of *Jacob*, by *Bilbab* the Hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were mustered at Mount *Sinai* 62700 fighting men; and 66400 at the second muster, in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt *Ephraim*, on the North, *Simeon* on the South, the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the East, and the *Mediterranean* on the West.

Places of most note in it, 1 *Joppa* (now called *Jaffa*) once a famous Mart-Town, and the only Haven to *Judea* in foregoing times: the Town where *Jonah* took ship to flee unto *Tarſhiſh*, where *Peter* raised *Dorcas* from death to life; and where he lying in the house of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in a Vision taught the conversion of the Gentiles. This City they report to have been built before the flood. And here they say reigned *Cepheus*; whose Daughter *Andromeda* was by *Perſeus* delivered from a Sea-monster, some of whose bones the people used to shew to strangers, even to the flourishing of the *Romans*. Just as our Citizens of *Coventry* and

Warwick shew the bones of the *Dun-Cow* of *Dunsmear* heath, and the bones of I know not what Giant, slain by *Guy Earl of Warwick*. In the time of the *Maccabees* it was garisoned by the *Syrians*, who having in the Port a Fleet of good power and strength, invited 200 of the chief Citizens to go aboard with them, and there drowned them all: for which their Fleet was fired by *Judas*, and such as did escape the fire, fell upon the sword. Twice taken by the *Romans*, and the second time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers by King *Lewis of France*, in the year 1250. the Holy Wars then drawing to their final end. Now nothing standing of it but two little Turrets where are certain Harquebusses for defence of the Haven, none of the best; defended from the South and West-winds with eminent Rocks, but exposed to the fury of the North; which makes it more unsafe than the open Seas when enraged by Tempests. Not much frequented by the Merchants, who trade here but for Cottens only, and hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2 *Rama*, by the *Moors* called *Remula*, situate in a sandy plain, on the rising of a little Hill; built of Free-stone, but the streets thereof narrow, and the houses contemptible. More beautiful in the ruins of some Christian Churches, and a Monastery built by *Philip the Good of Burgundy*, where the House of *Nicodemus* stood, than in any of the remaining Edifices. 3 *Jamnia*, near *Joppa*, where *Judas* burnt the rest of the *Syrian Fleet*, the flame whereof was seen to *Hierusalem*, 240 furlongs off: mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and in the times of Christianity an Episcopal See; now not discernable in the ruins. 4 *Cedar* or *Cedron*, fortified against the *Jews* by *Cendebeas* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus*, who hereabouts was overthrown by the *Maccabees*. 5 *Modin*, a small Town, but honoured with the birth and sepulchre of those *Maccabaeans*; the Sepulchre being seven Marble Pillars of so great an height, that they served as a mark for Seamen. 6 *Gibbethon*, in the Country called *Makats*, a City of the *Levites*, but afterwards possessed by the *Philistims*, at the siege whereof *Nadab*, the Son of *Jeroboam* King of *Israel*, was slain by *Baasha*, who succeeded; and *Omri* chosen King on the death of *Zimri*. 7 *Cariathiarim*, where the Ark of the Lord was kept for 20 years, in the house of *Amnidadab*; that is to say, from the sending it home by the *Philistims*, till brought to *Hierusalem* by *David*. 8 *Bethsemes*, to which the Ark was brought by a yoke of Kine, turned loose by the *Philistims*: for irreverent looking into which there were slain by the immediate hand of God, no fewer than 50070 persons of this City. 9 *Tjarab*, near which is a Fountain, called the Fountain of *Ethiopia*, because *Phillip* there baptized the *Ethiopian Eunuch*. 10 *Caspin*, taken with great slaughter by *Judas Maccabeus*. 11 *Lachis*, remarkable for the death of *Amaziah* King of *Judab*. 12 *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* also, touched upon before in the Tribe of *Ephraim*; in the borders whereof we find it situated; and therefore by some Authors reckoned to the same Tribe, and by some to the other, in the Valley whereof the Moon is said to have stood still at the prayers of *Joshua*, as the Sun did over the City of *Gibeon*: the motion of the Heavens being staid, that he might have the more time for execution on the Kings of the *Canaanites*. To this Tribe also belongeth the Town and Territory of *Dan*, or *Lasham*, afterwards called *Cæsarea Philippi*, in the Tribe of *NEPHTHALIM*, whereof we have there spoke already.

3. The Tribe of *SIMEON* was so called from *Simeon* the second Son of *Jacob* by his first Wife *Leah*: of whom were found at the first muster 59300 able men, and but 22200 at the second muster when they came into *Canaan*. Where they enjoyed but a small Territory to themselves, their Lot falling amongst the *Philistims*, whom they were not able to expel: and therefore they were taken into the Tribe of *Judab*, where they were

permitted to enjoy some Towns and Villages, intermixed with that more potent Tribe. Afterwards in the reign of King *Hezekiah*, some of them possessed themselves of *Gedar*, belonging to the Children of *Ham*; and others passing South-wards into *Idumæa*, smote the *Amalekites* which inhabited in the Mountains thereof, and dwelt in the places by them conquered. But for all this, wanting room for themselves and their children, many of them undertook the Office of Scribes or Scriveners, and dispersed themselves amongst the rest of the Tribes, teaching their children to write, and giving themselves to the employment of Publick Notaries. God herein verifying the Curse which *Jacob* had denounced on *Simeon*, that he should be divided and scattered in *Israel*. But for their fixed habitation which fell to them by Lot, it lay betwixt *Dan* upon the North, and *Idumæa* on the South; the Tribe of *Judab* on the East, and the *Philistims* upon the West.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Gerar*, the Royal seat of the two *Abimelechs*, Kings of the *Philistims*, with whom *Abraham* and *Isaac* had to do; and probably of some other of their Kings and Princes, till subdued by the *Israelites*. Situate in the South border of *Canaan*, not far from the Wilderness of *Beersheba*, but in a very healthful air; called therefore *Regio Salutaris* in the times succeeding. 2 *Siceleg*, or *Ziglag*, belonging to the *Philistims* till the time of *David*, to whom given by *Achish* King of *Gath*, for his place of retreat, when persecuted by *Saul*, from whom flying he lodged here all his goods and carriages; sacked by the *Amalekites*, but the booty recovered from them speedily by the diligence and good fortune of *David*. 3 *Haim*, a City of the *Levites*. 4 *Cariab-Sepher*, that is to say the City of Books, seated within the bounds of *Simeon*, but belonging to *Judab*: which some hold to be the University or Academy of old *Palestine*. A City of the *Levites* also, and at first possessed by the Sons of *Anak*, or men of a Gigantine stature, but taken by *Orbniel* the Son of *Kenan*; on the promise and encouragement which was given by *Caleb*, that whosoever took it should have his Daughter *Achsab* to Wife. Afterwards it was called *Debir*, *Judg.* 1. 11. known in the time of *St. Hierom* by the name of *Daema*. 5 *Chorma*, conceived by some to be that place mentioned *Num.* 14. 45. to which the *Canaanites* and *Amalekites* pursued those of *Israel*. 6 *Beersheba*, or *Puteus juramenti*; so called of the Well of waters, and the Oath which was there sworn betwixt *Abraham* and *Abimelech*, *Gen.* 21. 31. Memorable in the Scripture for the Grove which *Abraham* there planted, the wandring of *Hagar* thereabouts, when she was cast out of *Abraham's* house with her young Son *Ismael*; and the dwelling of *Isaac*, for which cause called the city of *Isaac*. Situate in the extreme South border of the Land of *Canaan*, the length whereof is often measured in the Scripture from this Town to *Dan*; and for that cause well fortified by the Western Christians, when they were possessed of this Country; as standing on the borders of *Idumæa*, and the Desarts of *Arabia*, in the way from *Egypt*.

4. The Tribe of *JUDAH* was so called from *Judab* the fourth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*: of whom there were numbered at the first general muster taken near Mount *Sinai*, 76600 fighting men; and no fewer than 76500 at their entrance into the Land of *Canaan*. The greatest Tribe, and therefore answerably fitted with the largest Territory, bordering on the *Dead Sea*, East; upon *Simeon* West; the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the North; and the *Idumæans* on the South. Comparatively large, with reference to the other Tribes; but otherwise unable to contain or feed those infinite multitudes, without the extraordinary Providence of Almighty God, which are recorded to be in it: King *David* mustering 470000 fighting men of this Tribe alone; which was more than half the number found in the rest of the Tribes. A Tribe which had a native Sovereignty over all the others; the Scepter, the Legislative power, and the World's *Mishab* being all promised to them.

Pla-

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Arad*, situate in the entrance of *Judæa*, in the way from the Wilderness of *Edom*. 2 *Hebron*, one of the ancientest Cities of *Canaan*; the Seat of the Gyants, called *Anakim*, or the Sons of *Anak*. This word *Anak* signifieth a Chain worn for Ornament, and it seemeth that this *Anak* enriched with the Spoils of his Enemies, wore a Chain of Gold, leaving both the custom and name to his Posterity. We read the like of *Manlius Torquatus* in the *Roman Histories*. This Town did *Abraham* buy for a Burial-place for his Dead; in which his Wife *Sarah* was first Buried, and after her four of the Patriarchs. Adjoyning to this Town is the Plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham*, the Father of the Faithful, sitting in his Tent, was visited from Heaven by God in the shape of a Man. *Caleb* took this Town from the *Philistims* in the Conquest of the Land of *Canaan*, and it was after assigned to the *Levites*. Here *David* kept his Court before the winning of *Hierusalem*; to this place came the Tribes to Anoint him King over *Israel*; and hither came *Abshalom*, under the pretence of paying his Vows, to Usurp the Kingdom of his Father. 3 *Tecoa*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet; and also of that Woman, who by the words which *Joab* put into her Mouth, perswaded the King to call *Abshalom* from Exile. In the Wilderness of this *Tecoa* there Assembled the Inhabitants of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and *Mount Seir*, to overthrow *Judab*. But the Lord being appeased by the publick Fast, proclaimed, and kept by *Jehosaphat* and the People, sow'd Dissentions among them: So that the Children of *Ammon* and *Moab* stood up against the Inhabitants of *Mount Seir*, utterly to slay and destroy them; and when they had made an end of the Inhabitants of *Mount Seir*, every one help'd to destroy one another. 4 *Cerith*, or *Cariot*, the Birth-place of *Judas*, hence surnamed *Iscaiot* (or the Man of *Cariot*) who Betray'd our Saviour. 5 *Fether*, or *Fatter*, in the North Border of this Tribe, towards *Eleutheropolis*, a City anciently of the *Levites*, and called in *St. Jerom's* time, *Jetbira*, and then altogether replenished with *Christians*, now nothing but the Name remaining. 6 *Maresa*, the Native Soil of the Prophet *Micah*, near whereunto first *Aza* King of *Judab* discomfited the vast Army of *Tera* the *Arabian*, or *Ethiopian*, consisting of above a Million of Men; and afterwards *Gorgias* was overthrown by *Judas Maccabæus*. 7 *Emaus* (after call'd *Nicopolis*) memorable for the third overthrow which *Judas* gave to the said *Gorgias*; for our Redeemer's shewing himself after his Resurrection to *Cleophas* and another of his Disciples; and for the hot Baths hereabouts, which gave the name of *Salutaris* to this part of *Palestine*. The Sovereign Virtue of which Waters *Sozomen*, a *Christian*, attributes to the washing of Christ's Feet in them, as he passed by at that time; but *Josephus* a few, ascribes (as is most likely) unto natural causes. 8 *Hasor*, or *Chatfor*, one of the Frontier Towns towards *Idumæa*. 9 *Odalla*, or *Hadullan*, an Ancient and Magnificent City, taken, and destroyed by *Joshua*, and long after much enlarged and beautified by *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Cela*, or *Keila*, where *David* sometimes hid himself when he fled from *Saul*; by him delivered afterwards from the Assaults of the *Philistims*. 11 *Eleutheropolis*, or the Free City, not far from *Hebron*; a City of later date than any of *Judab*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and much remembred by *St. Hierom*. 12 *Azecha*, not far from *Emaus*, to which *Joshua* followed *Dabir* the King of *Eglon*, and his four Associates, whom he discomfited in the Cause and Quarrel of the *Gibeonites*; molested by them for submitting to their Common Enemy. Seated in the Valley of *Terebinth*, and of very great strength; presuming upon which it Revolted from *Joam* King of *Judab*, at the same time that *Libna* and the *Edomites* had Revolted from him. 13 *Beth-Sur*, or (*Beth-Sora*) that is to say, the House on the Rock, so called from the situation on a Rocky Hill, one of the strongest places of *Judab*: Fortified first by *Rehobam* the Son of *Solomon*, after by *Judas Maccabæus*; and finally made impregnable by his Brother

Simæon. 14 *Aloram*, Bordering on the *Dead Sea* Beautified also by *Rehobam*. 15 *Zoar*, in former times called *Bela*, but took its name from the words of *Lot*, alledging that it was but a little one, *Gen. 19. 2*. as the word *Tjabor* doth import, in whose escape it was preserved, being otherwise one of the five Cities of the Region called *Pentapolis*, doomed unto Destruction; the other four, *Sodom*, *Gemorah*, *Adama*, and *Sebim*, being at the same time destroyed by Fire and Brimstone. 16 *Masfala*, frequently mentioned by *Josephus* as a place of great strength both by art and nature, and as it is by him described (in the seventh Book de *Bello Jud. Cap. 28*) to be thought impregnable; and therefore made by *Herod* (in the time of his Troubles) the place of Refuge in which he disposed of *Martha* his betrothed Wife, her Mother *Alexandra*, with divers Honourable Ladies; and where they were preserved in safety against all his Enemies, till he came Armed with Power from *Rome*, to dislodge their Forces, which was done accordingly. First built by *Jonathan* the Brother of *Judas Maccabæus* as a sure place of Refuge against the *Syrians*; and afterwards so esteemed by *Herod* for the reason above mentioned, that he not only much enlarged it, with all the requisite additions of Strength and Beauty, but built within the verge thereof a Magnificent Palace. The whole enclosed with a Wall of 7 Furlongs compass, 12 cubits high, and 8 cubits broad, built of white Stone, and situate on a high Mountain called *Collis Achilæ*, washed on the East side by the *Dead Sea*, or *Lacus Asphalites* and by that secured; on the other sides fenced with such deep Ditches that it was a terror to any man to look down into them: besides which natural situation, it was Fortified by *Herod* with 27 Turrets, who left therein as in a place impregnable and inaccessible, a Magazine of Arms and all warlike furniture for an Army of 10000 men, all sorts of Victuals to sustain them, and ground enough within the walls to yield Corn sufficient, when time and a long Siege should consume those victuals. A place of such strength, and so great concernment, that it held out against the *Romans* (when *Vespasian* and his Son *Titus* managed that great War) after all the rest of *Judæa* had been Conquered by them. 17 *Libna*, a strong City seated in a corner of *Judab*, running between the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*. This City Revolted from *Joam* King of *Judab*, at the same time the *Edomites* did, and continued a Free State, even as long as *Judab* continued a Kingdom. 18 *Zuph* in the Wilderness, wherein *David* hid himself from the Fury of *Saul*. Hither, when *Saul* pursu'd him, *David* came into his Camp (the Watch being all asleep) and took thence his Spear and a Cruse of Oyl and departed. *Abissai* indeed would fain have killed him: But *David*, tho' he knew that *Samuel* had by God's Command Abdicat'd *Saul* from the Kingdom, and that himself was appointed in his stead would not touch him; but left him to the Judgment of the Lord, whose Anointed he was. 19 *Bethlehem* (or to distinguish it from another of this name of *Zabulon* so called) *Bethlehem-Judab*. This City or Town was called *Ephrata*, from the Wife of *Calb*, and was the Birth place of *David*, and where Christ was born; and the Innocents suffered for him before he had suffered for them. In this general massacre of young Children, a Son of *Herod's*, which was at Nurse, was also slain; which being told unto *Augustus*, he reply'd, He had rather be *Herod's* Swine than his Son. His Swine being safe in regard the *Jews* were forbidden to log-meats; but his Sons frequently made away upon Tears and Jealousies. A Town for this cause had in great respect by the Primitive *Christians*, Beautified by *Helen* with a stately Temple, which yet standing entire; by the Lady *Paula* (much extolled by *St. Hierom*) with some goodly Monasteries, in one of which the Body of that Father lieth; and by the *Western Christians*, with a See Episcopal. On the Frontier of this Country towards the *Philistims*, was that strong Castle which *Herod* repairing, called *Herodium*, seated on a Hill, the Ascent into which

was made with 200 steps of Marble, exceeding fair and large. In this Country also are the Hills of *Engaddi*, in a Cave of which *David* cut off the Lap of *Saul's* Garment; and all along the bottoms whereof were the Gardens of *Balsamum* or *Opobalsamum*, the trees of which were by *Cleopatra* (at such time as she Governed *Mark Antony* and the East) sent for to be replanted in *Heliopolis* of *Egypt*; and *Herod*, who durst not deny them, plucked them up by the roots and sent them to her.

5. The Tribe of *BENJAMIN*, took name from the twelfth and youngest Son of *Jacob*, by *Rachel* his best beloved Wife, who died in that Child-birth: Of which at the first Muster, near unto Mount *Sinai*, were numbred 35000 able men; and at the second Muster, when they entred the *Promised Land*, there were found of them fit for Arms 45600 persons. A Tribe in great danger to have been utterly cut off, by the Folly of the Men of *Gibeab*, all *Israel* Arming against it as one man. For besides those that perished in the former Battels, there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the Sword: the fury of the Conquerors after that great Victory sparing neither Man nor Beast, nor any thing that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities also which they came unto. So great an havock was there made of innocent Maidens, that when the edge of this displeasure was taken off, there were not Wives enough found for those young men who had escaped; The other Tribes having bound themselves by a solemn Oath, not to bestow their Daughters on them: insomuch that they were fain to provide themselves Wives of the Daughters of *Jabesh-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manassites* beyond *Jordan*, whom they took by Assault; and of the Daughters of *Shilo*, whom they took by Stratagem. The whole Story see at large in the Book of *Judges*, chap. 19, 20, 21.

The Territories of this Tribe lay betwixt those of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Judab* on the South; having the *Dead Sea* to the East, and the Tribe of *Dan* to the Westward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities were, 1. *Michmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 *Sam.* 13. 2. and the abiding place of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabaean* Brethren, 1 *Maccab.* 9. 73. 2. *Mispah*, famous in being the ordinary place of Assembly for the whole Body of the People, in matters of War and Peace: as also in that standing in the midst of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the Seat of Justice, to which *Samuel* went yearly to give Judgment to the People. 3. *Gibeah*, the North Border of the Kingdom of *Judah* toward *Israel*. 4. *Gebrah*, the Country of *Saul*, the first King; where the abusing of the *Levite's* Wife by the young men of this Town, had almost rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the Garden of *Israel*. 5. *Jerico*, a great and strong City, in the Siege of which, the *Amorites* were first discomfited: but when by the death of *Abim*, who had stohn the accursed thing, the Camp was purged, *Joshua* by a Warlike Stratagem Surprized it. 6. *Gibeon*, the Mother-City of the *Gibeonites*, who prefiging the unresistable Victories of the *Israelites*, came to the Camp of *Joshua*, and by a wile obtained Peace of him and the People: employed by them in hewing Wood and drawing Water for the use of the Tabernacle, after the Fraud was made known unto them; called *Netbinims*, *Ezra* 4. 3. from *Nathan*, which signifies to give, because they were given to the Service of the Tabernacle first, of the Temple after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, slew some of them, for which Fact the Lord caused a Famine on the Land; which could not be taken away till seven of *Saul's* Sons were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This Famine did God send, because in killing those poor *Gibeonites*, the Oath was broken which *Joshua* and the Princes swore concerning them. In defence of those *Gibeonites* it was that *Joshua* waged War against the Kings of the *Canaanites*, and stay'd the motion of

the Sun by his fervent Prayers. 7. *Jericho*, destroyed by the sound of Rams-horns, was not only levelled by *Joshua* to the ground, but a Curse inflicted on him that should attempt the re-building of it. This Curse notwithstanding, at the time when *Abab* Reigned in *Israel* (which was about five hundred years after the Ruin of it) *Hiel a Bethelite*, delighted with the pleasantness of the place, re-edified it. But (as it was foretold by *Joshua*) as he laid the Foundation of the Walls, he lost his Eldest Son; and when he had finished it, and was setting up the Gates thereof, he lost also the younger. It may be *Hiel*, when he began this Work, minded not the Prophecy, it may be he believed it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Joshua* not so much to proceed from the Spirit of Prophecy, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being spoken in way of wish, or execration. And it is possible, it may be, he chose rather to build the Eternity of his Name on so pleasant and beautiful a City, than on the uncertain Lives and Issues of two young men. *Vespasian* took, and ruined this City, Anno *Christi* 68. and *Adrian* the Emperor rebuilt it. *Brocardus* found here only eight houses in his time, but *Thevenot* found thirty or forty Inhabited by the *Arabians*. 8. *Anathoth*, the Birth-place of the Prophet *Jeremy*, and the Patrimony of *Ahiathar* the High-Priest, sent hither by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own, when deposed from his Office by that King. 9. *Nob*, called, 1 *Sam.* 22. 19. the City of the Priests, destroyed by *Saul*, for the Relief which *Abimelech* the High Priest had given to *David*; the Ark of the Lord then residing there. 10. *Gilgal*, upon the Bank of *Jordan*, where *Joshua* did first eat of the fruits of the Land, and kept his first *Passover*; where he Circumcised such of the People as were born during their wandring in the Wilderness; and nigh to which he set up twelve Stones for a Memorial to Posterity that the Waters of *Jordan* did there divide themselves, to give passage to the twelve Tribes of *Israel*. Here *Agag*, King of the *Amalakites* was hewn in pieces by *Samuel*; and here *Samuel* once every year administred Justice to the People. For being seated in the midst of the Land of *Israel*, betwixt North and South, and on the East side of the Countrey near the Banks of *Jordan*, it served very fitly for that purpose: as *Mispah* also did, which stood in the same distance, in regard of the length of the Land of *Canaan*, but situate towards the West Sea, near the Land of the *Philistines*: used therefore interchangeably for the ease of the People. 11. *Bethel*, at the first called *Luz*, but took this new name in remembrance of the Vision which *Jacob* saw here, at going towards *Mesopotamia*, as is said, *Gen.* 28. 19. It signified the House of God, and was therefore chosen by *Jeroboam*, for the setting up of one of his golden Calves; though there (as the Prophet said) he made it to be *Beth-aven*, the House of Vanity, *Hos.* 3. 15. & 10. 5. For then it was a part of the Kingdom of the ten Tribes, and the Southern Border of that Kingdom on the Coast of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Abim* the King of *Judah*, and after that accounted as a Member of his Kingdom, till the destruction of it by the *Chaldeans*. Called with the rest of those parts, in the time of the *Maccabees*, by the name of *Apharima*, which signifieth a thing taken away; because taken away from the ten Tribes, to which once it belonged, 1 *Mac.* 11. 34. where it is said to have been taken from the Country of *Samarita*, and added unto the Borders of *Judaea*. 12. *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and said to have been added to the Realm of *Judah*, having been formerly the South Border of the Kingdom of *Israel*; and therefore strongly Fortify'd by *Baasha*, in the time of *Asa* King of *Judah*. 13. *Chadid*, or *Hadid*, one of the three Cities (the other two being 14 *Lod*, and 15 *Ono*) which were inhabited by the *Benjamites* after the Captivity, Destroyed in the Wars with the Kings of *Assyria*, and afterwards re built by *Simon the Maccabean*.

But

But the chief Glory of this Tribe, and of all the rest, and not so only, but of all the whole World besides, was the famous City of *Hierusalem*; seated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be ascended with steep and difficult ascents (except towards the North) environ'd on all other sides also with some neighbouring Mountains, as if placed in the midst of an Amphitheatre. It consisted in the time of its greatest flourish, of four parts, separated by their several walls, as if several Cities; we may call them, the *Upper City*, the *Lower City*, the *New City*, and the *City of Herod*: all of them but the *Lower City*, seated upon their several hills. Of these, that which we call the City of *Herod*, had formerly been beautified with the houses of many of the Prophets, as in our Saviour's time with that of *Mary* the Mother of *John Mark*, mentioned *Acts* 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Christians*: the western part whereof was wholly taken up by the Palace of *Herod*, (a wicked, but magnificent Prince) for cost excessive, and for strength invincible; containing Gardens, Groves, Fish-ponds, places devised for pleasures, besides those for exercise. Fortified with three Towers at the corners of it. That on the South-East of the Wall, fifty cubits high, of excellent workmanship, called *Mariamne's Tower*, in memory of his beloved but insolent Wife, rashly Murder'd by him. Opposite to which, on the South-west corner, stood the Tower of *Phaicolus*, so called by the name of his Brother, seventy cubits high, and in form resembling that so much celebrated *Egyptian Pharos*: and on the North Wall, on a high hill, the Tower of *Hippick*, exceeding both the rest in height by fourteen Cubits, and having on the top two Spires: in memory of the two *Hippici*, his very dear friends, slain in his Service in the Wars.

2. On the South side stood that part which was call'd the *Old City*, possessed, if not built by the *Jebusites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fort of *Sion*: but after called the City of *David*, because taken by him; who thereon built a strong and magnificent Castle, the Royal Court and Mansion of the Kings succeeding. In the West part hereof stood the Tower of *David*; a double Palace built by *Herod*, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cæsar*, composed of Marble; and every where enterlay'd with Gold; and not far off, the House of *Annas* and *Caiaphas*, to which the Conspirators led our Saviour to receive his Trial.

3. That which was called the *Lower City*, because it had more in it of the *Valley*, was also called the *Daughter of Sion*, because built after it, and did in Majesty and Greatness exceed the Mother. For therein, upon Mount *Morab*, stood the Temple of *Solomon* (whereof more anon) and betwixt it and Mount *Sion*, on another Hill, the Palace which he built for his Wife the Daughter of *Egypt*; and that which he founded for himself, from which by an high Bridge he had a way unto the Temple. West hereof, on a lofty Rock overlooking the City, stood the Royal Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabæans*, Re-edified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa*, (tho' of *Herod's* Race) and not far off the Theatre of *Herod's* Building, adorned with admirable Pictures, expressing the many Victories and Triumphs of *Augustus Cæsar*. In this part also stood Mount *Sion*, and on that once a Citadel built by *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, but razed by *Simon* one of the *Maccabæan* Brethren, because it overtopped the Temple; the House of *Helena* Queen of *Adiabene*, who converted from *Paganism* to *Judaism*, had here her dwelling, and he died and finally, *Herod's* Amphitheatre, capacious enough to contain 80000 people, whom he entertained sometimes with such shews and spectacles as were in use among the *Romans*. And in this part also, on a high and craggy Rock, not far from the Temple stood the Tower of *Barrab*, whereon the same *Herod* built a strong and impregnable Citadel, in honour of *Marc-antonny*, whole Creature he first was, called by the name of *Antonius*, ha-

ving a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them fifty cubits high, and the other seventy; afterwards Garrison'd by the *Romans*, for fear the *Jews* presuming on the strength of the Temple might take occasion to Rebel.

4. As for the *New City*, which lay North to the City of *Herod*, it was once a suburb only unto all the rest; inhabited by none but mechanicall persons, and the meanest Tradesmen, but after encompassed by *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with ninety Turrets. The whole City fenced with a wonderful Circumvallation on all parts thereof; having a Ditch cut out of the same Rock, as *Jacobus* an eye-witness writeth 60 foot deep, and no less than two hundred and fifty foot in breadth. First built, say some, by *Melchisedeck* the King of *Sehon*; by the *Jebusites themselves*, say others: by whomsoever built, called at first *Jebusalem*, afterwards *Jerusalem*, with the change of one Letter only: enlarged in time, when made the Royal Seat of the House of *David*, to the Magnificence and Greatness before described, till it attained unto the compass of 60 furlongs, or seven miles and a half. Unconquer'd for the first four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Israel*; and when *David* attempted it, the People presumed so much on the strength of the place, that they told him in the way of Scorn, that the *Blind and the Lame* which they had among them (as the Text is generally expounded) should defend it against him. But as I think, the late Learned Mr. *Gregory* of *Christ's Church* in *Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text than this, who telleth us, That the *Jebusites* by the *Blind and Lame* (as they knew well what the *Israelites* called *Blind and Lame*) did understand those Tutelar Idols, on whose protection they relied (as the *Trojans* did on their *Palladium*) for defence thereof: and then the meaning must be this, Those gods whom you of *Israel* call *Blind and Lame*, shall defend our Walls. Why else should *David* say, (had they meant it literally) that his Soul hated the *Lame and the Blind*? 2 Sam. 5. 8. or why should the people of *Israel* be so uncharitable as to say, That the *Blind and Lame* should not come into the House (or the Temple of God) were it meant no otherwise? but notwithstanding these vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Joab*, that Fortunate and Courageous Leader, and made the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Judah*.

Proceed we now unto the Temple built by *Solomon*, in providing the Materials whereof there were in *Libanon* 30000 Workmen, which wrought by 10000 every Month; 70000 Labourers, which carried Burdens; 80000 Quarry-men, that hewed Stones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overseers of the Work, no less than 3300 men. The description of this stately Fabrick, we have in the first of *Kings*, Chap. 6. 7. In the Year of the World 2350, it was destroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hierusalem*: re-built again after the return from the Captivity; but with such opposition of the *Samaritans*, that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tools in one hand, and their Swords in the other, to repulse, if need were, those Malicious Enemies. But yet this Temple was not answerable to the Magnificence of the former; so that the Prophet *Haggai* had good occasion to say to the People, chap. 1. ver. 3. *Who is left among you that saw this House in her first Glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing, in comparison of it?* Nor fell it short thereof only in the outward Structure, but some inward Adornments: For it wanted, 1. The Pot of *Alanna*, which the Lord commanded *Moses* to lay up before the *Testimony* for a Memorial, Exod. 16. 32, &c. 2. The Rod of *Aaron*, which only Budded of all the Rods of the Princes of *Israel*, and was commanded to be kept before the Ark of the *Testimony*, for a token against *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, Numb. 17. 10. 3. The Ark of the Covenant, the making whereof we have, Exod. 25. 10. and the placing of it in the Oracle, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 Kings 6. 19. 4. The *Table*

of the Law, writ by God's own finger, and by Moses laid up in the Ark of the Covenant, *Exod.* 40. 20. and *Deut.* 10. 5. And 5 The fire of Sacrifice, which came down from Heaven, mentioned, *Lev.* 9. 24. 2 *Chron.* 17. 1. which by the Priest was to be kept continually burning, never to go out. This second Temple, partly because it was grown Ruinous, partly because it seemed not Magnificent enough, but principally to curry favour with the Jews, Herod the Ascalonite pulled down, and set up another in the place; making it not much inferior (if at all) unto that of Solomon, but far superior to the other *Immensæ oppulentiae Templum*, as Tacitus most truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did sometimes vouchsafe his presence.

But here we are to understand, that by the Temple it is not meant the Fabrick only, or the House it self, but also all those several Courts with which encompassed, being four in number. That is to say, *Atrium Sacerdotum*, or the Priest's Court, which was next unto the Temple; wherein stood the Brazen Altar for the daily Sacrifice, and the Laver for the washing of the Priests and the Sacrifice also: into which Court might none enter but the Priests alone. 2. Then there was *Atrium Populi*, or the Peoples Court, separated from the other by a Wall of three Cubits height; to which the People did repair to perform their Sacrifices, to say their Prayers, and to make payment of their Vows. In the middle of this Court did Solomon make a Brazen Scaffold for the Kings his Successors, 2 *Chron.* 6. 13. and afterwards in imitation of his Porch built before the Temple, were many Porches built about it for the People to repair in Rainy weather; which gave to this whole Court the name of Solomon's Porch, whereof see *John* 10. 23. *Acts* 3. 11. Without that stood *Atrium Fœminarum*, or the Womens Court, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chron.* 20. 5. in the time of *Jehosaphat* King of Judah; in which stood the Treasury, or poor Man's Box, mentioned in St. Luke's Gospel, Chap. 21. from whence this whole Court had sometimes the name of Treasury, as appeareth *John* 8. 20. where it is said, that these words spake JESUS in the Treasury, that is to say, in the Womens Court, where the Treasury or Alms-box stood. Betwixt these last was an ascent of 15 steps, on which the Levites used to sing those 15 Psalms, which do immediately follow the 119 Psalm; upon each step one: from whence they had the name of *Psalmi Graduales*, or *Cantica Graduum*, i. e. the Psalm or Songs of Degrees. And so far all was counted Holy Ground, upon which none might tread but either natural Jews, or Circumcised Profelytes, whom they called *Profelyti fœderis*, as before was said; or such of the other Sex (not natural Jewesses) who having received all outward initiations, had bound themselves unto the observation of the Law of Moses. 4. So was it not with the fourth and last Court, called *Atrium Gentium*, or the Court of the Gentiles, designed for the use of those Gentiles whom they called *Profelytæ Portæ*, bound only unto the keeping of the Precepts given to the Sons of Noah; for in that, as unsanctified ground (tho' counted part of the Temple also) did they permit a Market of Sheep and Oxen, the Sale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of Money-changers, for the Oblations of the People: stabling the poor Gentiles among their Cattel, and ranking them with the worst of them. And out of this Temple, or Court of the Temple did CHRIST our Saviour cast the Buyers and Sellers, and overthrew the Tables of the Money-changers; asserting it to its primitive original use, which was to be an house of Prayer for all Nations. This last Court separate the other by a wall of three Cubits high, adorned with certain pillars of equal distance, bearing this Inscription, Μὴδεῖ ἀλλοφύλον εἰσὶν εἰς τὸ Ἁγίον περὶεῖναι, i. e. Let no Alien (or one that is no Jew) enter into the Holy Place: And to this Wall it is that the Apostle alludeth, saying, He hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us, i. e. between the Jews and

Gentiles) making one of twain, *Ephes.* 2. 14, 15. inferring hereupon, that the Gentiles are no more Strangers and Foreigners, but fellow-Citizens with the Saints, and of the Household of God, v. 9.

But to go forwards with the Temple, having continu'd in the Glories of which Herod brought it, not above 85 years, it was finally destroyed by Titus the Son of Vespasian, in the 69th year of Christ's Nativity. At what time the Temple of Delphos was utterly overthrown by Earthquakes and Thunderbolts from Heaven; neither of them ever since Repaired, tho' much endeavoured. The concurrence of which two Miracles evidently sheweth, that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the Jewish Ceremonies and Heathen Idolatries, that so the Kingdom of his Son might be all in all. For this Destruction of the Temple of Jerusalem I may call a Miracle, in regard it was done against the command of Titus; who was not only careful to preserve it, before his Soldiers had put fire to it, but did all that possibly might be to quench it. His reason was, Ῥωμαίων γὰρ εἶναι αἱ βλάβαι, as Josephus hath it, because thereof would redound so highly to the prejudice of the Roman Empire, in being deprived of such a Glorious and Magnificent Structure. But do he what he could with his utmost Industry, there was no quenching of it till it was consumed. And it adds somewhat to the marvel, that this should happen on the 10th day of August, on which day the first Temple had been burnt by Nebuchadnezzar. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope I shall not be accounted Superstitious for this observation) to see how happy or unfortunate, one or the same day had been found unto divers persons. In the Wars betwixt the French and Spaniards for the Realm of Naples, Friday was observed to be very lucky to that great Captain Gonzalvo; he having on that day given the French many notable overthrows. Wednesday is said to have been fortunate to Pope Sixtus V. for on that day he was born; on the same made a Monk; on that day created General of his Order; on the same day made a Cardinal, then chosen to be Pope; and finally, on the same inaugurated. To Henry VII. of England, Saturday was observed to be very Fortunate in all his Actions; as was the 24th of February unto Charles V. on what day soever, for on that he came into the World, and in that he took the King Francis Prisoner at the Battel of Pavie, and on the same received the Imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath, or Saturday, it was taken by Pompey, on the same day by Herod, and on that also by Titus.

But go we forward to Hierusalem as now it standeth, it lay in Rubbish and unbuilt (after the Destruction of it by Titus) till repaired by Adrian: and then the Temple not so much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the Reign of Julian, that politic Enemy of the Church; who, to diminish the infinite number of Christians by the increase of the Jews, began again to build this Temple. But no sooner were the Foundations laid, but a terrible Earthquake cast them up again; and Fire from Heaven consumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other Materials. As for the City it self after the Desolation in it which was made by Titus, it was Re-edified by the Emperor *Adrianus*, who named it *Ælia*, drove thence the Jews, and gave it to the Christians. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within this, Mount Calvary is comprehended, which was not in the old before. As on the other side, a great part of Mount Sion, part of the City of Herod, and the Soil where the New City stood, are left out of this: the Ruins of the other still remaining visible, to shew the ancient greatness and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it stands at present, it is now only famous for the Temple of the Sepulchre built by Helena (whom most report to have been Daughter to *Coylus* a British King) Mother to *Constantine* the Great. Much ado had the good Lady to find

find the place where the Lord's Body had been laid; for the Jews and Heathens had raised great hillocks on the place, and built there a Temple of *Venus*. This Temple being plucked down, and the Earth digged away, she found three Crosses, whereon our Blessed Saviour, and the two Thieves had Suffered. To know which of those was the right Cross, they were all carried to a Woman who had been long visited with Sickness, and now lay at the point of Death. The Crosses of the two Thieves did the weak Woman no good, but as soon as they laid her on the Cross on which the Lord Died, she leaped up, and was restored to her former health: The occasion of the Festival on the third of *May*, by the *Latins* called *Inventio sanctæ Crucis*. This Temple of the Sepulchre, even at the first building, was highly revered and esteemed by the Christians of these parts. And even until our days, it is much resorted to, both by Pilgrims from all the parts of the *Romish Church*, who fondly and superstitiously hope to merit by their Journey: And also by divers Gentlemen of the Reformed Churches, who Travel hitherwards, partly for Curiosity, partly for love to the Antiquity of the Place, and partly because their generous Spirits imitate the Heaven, and delight in Motion. Whosoever is admitted to the sight of this Sepulchre, payeth 9 Crowns to the *Turkish Officers*; so that this Tribute only is worth to the *Grand Seignior*, eighty thousand Ducats yearly. The other Building generally very mean and poor, if not contemptible. Built of Flint-stones, low, and but one Roof high; flat on the top for men to walk on, and fenced with Battlements of a yard in height to preserve them from falling, the under-rooms no better than Vaults, where they repose themselves in the heat of the day. Some Houses near the Temple of *Solomon*, and the Palace of *Herod*, adorned with Arches toward the Street; where Passengers may walk dry in a shower of Rain; but not many such, nor anything but the Ruins left of the ancient Buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles; and yet to those that take a Survey thereof from some Hills adjoining, where the Ruins are not well discerned from the standing Edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleasing Prospect. And as the place is, such is the people, inhabited for the most part by Artizans of the meanest quality, gathered together of the scum of divers Nations: the greatest part consisting of *Moors* and *Arabians*; a few poor Christians, of all the Oriental Sects, which dwell there for Devotion; and some *Turks*, who, for the profit which they make of Christians, are content to stay in it. In-somuch that when *Robert Duke of Normandy*, being then not cured of his wounds, was carried into this City on the backs of some of these rascally people, he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for *England*, and bad him say, that he saw Duke Robert carried into Heaven on the backs of Devils.

Come we now to the Tribe of *LEVI*, though indeed not reckoned for a Tribe, because not planted close together as the other were, nor had whole Provinces to themselves, but mingled and dispersed among the rest of the People; having forty eight Cities assigned them for their Habitation, proportionably taken out of the other Tribes. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly, that they being set apart for his Service, might be at hand in every place to instruct the People; and partly to fulfil the Prophecy which he had spoken by *Jacob*, who had fore-signified to *Levi* at the time of his death, that he should be divided in *Jacob*, and scattered in *Israel*.

The like fortune he had prophesied of *Simeon* also, of the accomplishment whereof, so far as it referred to him, and the dispersion of this Tribe, we have spoken before. Now to make up the number of the twelve Tribes, *Joseph* was divided into *Ephraim* and *Manasse*; and the *Levites* were reckon'd to belong unto that Tribe, within whose Territory that City which they dwell in, stood. Their Maintenance was from the Tenth or

Tithes, the First-fruits, Offerings, and Sacrifices of the People: and as it is in *Joshua* 11. 17. *The Priesthood of the Lord was their Inheritance*. There were of them four kinds: 1. *Punks* or *Tyrone*s, which from their Childhood till the five and twentieth year of their Age, learn'd the duty of their Offices: 2. *Graduates*, *ḥazzai*, which having spent four years in the study of the Law, were able to answer and oppose in it. 3. *Licentiate*s, *ḥazzai*, who did actually exercise the Priestly Function. And 4. *Doctors* (*Rabbins* they us'd to call them) who were the highest in Degree. For maintenance of whom, they had (as before is said) the Tithes, First-fruits, and Offerings of all the rest of the people, besides the 48 Cities assigned for their Habitation: which last, with the several Territories appertaining to them, extending every way for the space of two thousand Cubits, seem to have been a greater proportion of it self, than any of the other Tribes, with reference to the small number of *Levites* had in their possessions. Then for the Tithes, there was not only a full tenth set out of all kinds of increase, but such an imposition laid upon all sorts of Grain, as came to more than a sixth part of the Crop it self. For first, out of 6000 Bushels (and so accordingly in all after that proportion) a sixtieth part at least, (and that they termed the *Therumah*, or the evil eye, or the *niggards* First-fruits) was to be set forth as the First-fruits of the Threshing-floor, which was an hundred in the total. Out of the residue being five thousand and nine hundred bushels, the first Tithe paid unto the *Levites* came to five hundred and ninety bushels; and of the residue, being five thousand three hundred and thirty bushels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the second Tithe unto the Priest, which Ministered in the Holy Temple; yet so, that such as would decline the trouble of carrying it in kind unto *Hierusalem*, must pay the price thereof at the Priest's own estimate. Laying which several sums together, it appears demonstrably, that of six thousand bushels (& *sic cæteris*) there will accrue one thousand two hundred seventy and one bushels to the Priests and *Levites*; and but four thousand seven hundred seventy and nine to the Lord or Tenant; which is not fully a sixth part, as was said before. Then had they the first-born of Mankind, and all unclean beasts, redeemed at a certain rate; the first fruits of Wine, Oyl, and Wool; the first-fruits of the Dough; and of the firstlings of clean beasts (their blood being sprinkled upon the Altar, and the fat offered for a burnt-offering) the flesh remained unto the Priests. They had also the meat-offerings, the sin-offerings, the trespass-offerings, the shake-offerings, the heave-offerings, and the shew-bread, as also of all Eucharistical Sacrifices the breast and the shoulder; of others the shoulder, the two cheeks, and the maw; and of the whole burnt-offering they received the skin, besides the free gifts of the People, appearing thrice yearly before the Lord: and all this brought in unto them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident, that they were far more liberally provided for, than the rest of the Tribes, tho' they had no whole Country allotted to them, as others had. And so much for such parts of the Land of *Palestine* as were possessed in part, or wholly by the Sons of *Jacob*; proceed we now to the Inheritance of the Sons of *Esau*.

6. I D U M Æ A.

I D U M Æ A, or the Land of *EDOM*, is bounded on the East and South, with *Arabia Petrea*; on the North with *Judæa*, on the West with the *Mediterranean Sea*. So called from the *Edomites*, or Children of *Esau*, whose name is *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 1. the Father of the *Edomites*, v. 43. by whom it was planted and possessed; or as others say, from the *Idumæi*, a People of *Arabia*; who in a Mutiny being forc'd to forsake their Country, came and settled here. The first the more certain of the two, and therefore I adhere to that. The

The Country towards the Sea-side very fat and fruitful; but where it bendeth towards *Arabia*, exceeding mountainous and barren. Heretofore it afforded Balm, not now: but still it hath some store of Palm-trees, for which much celebrated by some Writers of ancient times, as *Arbusto Palmarum dives Idume*, in the Poet *Lucan*. Sandy, and full of vast Deserts, for which, and for the want of water, it is thought unconquerable. For though they have many Wells there for the use of the Natives, yet to them only are they known, and not obvious at all to the eyes of strangers, no not upon the strictest search that can be imagined. But all places are not so well furnished, as appeareth by the sad condition which the Kings of *Judah*, *Israel*, and *Edom* were fallen into, when they led their Armies through the Deserts of this Country, against the *Moabites*, finding herein no Water for Man or Beast: insomuch that the King of *Israel* said, *Alas, that the Lord hath called these three Kings together, to deliver them into the hands of Moab*, 2 Kings 3. 10. Not otherwise delivered out of this perplexity, but by a miracle from Heaven: God sending them the next Day an abundance of Water, without Wind or Rain, or any other visible Means.

The People anciently rude and barbarous, greedy of change in government, easily stirred to insurrections, and in love with tumults. Professed Enemies to the *Jews*, till conquered by them: and when compelled by *Hircanus* to the *Jewish* Religion, they were at the best but false Friends; and in the Siege of *Hierusalem* by *Titus*, did them more mischief than the *Romans*. At this time subject to the *Turks*, and differ not much in life and custom from the wild *Arabians*.

Rivers of note there can be none, where so little Waters. One Lake it had, though possibly it hath been better, had they been without it, now small, and every Day growing less; the passage being long since barred, which it had to the Sea. Anciently, though then narrow, it was two hundred Furlongs, or five and twenty Miles long: bordered on each side by Hills of Sand, which born by the Winds into the Water did so thicken the same, that it was not easie to be discerned from the dry Land; insomuch as whole Armies have been swallowed up in it. Thence called *Barathrum* by the *Latins*: The true name of it formerly was the Lake of *Syrbon*. By the *Italians* it is now called *Lago di Tevero*, by the Natives *Bayron*; the utmost bound of *Palestine*, where it joyneth on *Egypt*.

The chief Mountains of it are, 1 Mount *Ser*, the first habitation of *Noah*, after he left his dwelling in the Land of *Chanaan*, to make room for *Jacob*, as is said, *Gen.* 36. 7, 8. Not called so, unless by Anticipation (a thing not unlawful in the Scriptures) till the coming of *Ejau* thither; the word *Ser* signifying hairy or bristled, such as *Ejau* is described to be, *Gen.* 27. 11. To this St. *Hierom* doth accord, deriving the name *Ser* from *Ejau*, *Sumpto ab elute rumpere*. His Reason is, *Ser quippe interpretatur hirsutus & pilosus qualis Ejau fuit*. So he in his Comment on *Lam.* chap. 21. For the same Cause, is the whole Country of *Edom*, sometimes called Mount *Ser* in Scripture, by the name of this Mountain, as 2 *Chron.* 20. 10. 23. The second Hill of note is that called *Cassius*, not far from the Lake of *Syrbon*, now nothing but an huge heap of Sand; formerly famous for a Temple of *Jupiter*, and the Sepulchre of *Pompey* the Great; who being basely murdered here (after his defeat near *Pharsalia* by *Julius Caesar*) by the command of *Ptolemy* the younger, King of *Egypt*, unto whom he fled (or rather by the command of *Achilles* who then governed his Counsels) by the piety of a private Soldier was here interred in an obscure and homely, but honest Sepulchre. The Sepulchre afterwards re-edified, and made more suitable to the Man, by the Emperor *Adrian*. The Piety of the Soldier not a whit the less for the cost of the Emperor; in whose name *Lucan* had bestowed this Epitaph, on that first Monument.

Hic situs Est Magnus, placet hoc, Fortuna Sepulchrum Dicere Pompeii; quo conditus maluit illum, Quam terra caruisse Socer.

Which may be Englished to this purpose.

Here *Magnus* lies, such Fortune is thy doom,
That this vile Earth should be great *Pompey's* Tomb.
In which even *Cæsar's* self would rather have
His Son-in-Law interr'd, than want a Grave.

Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Dirhabarb*, the City of *Bela*, the first King of *Edom*. 2 *Anub*, the City of *Hadad*. And 3 *Pan*, the City of *Hadad*, two others of the Kings hereof: which three are mentioned *Gen.* 36. 32, 35, 39. 4 *Berzanna*, placed here by *Ptolemy*, supposed to be the same with *Becisheba* in the Tribe of *Simcon*, the utmost border Southwards of the Land of *Chanaan*, of which more there. 5 *Caparorfa*. 6 *Gammara*. And 7 *Elasa*, all of them mentioned by *Ptolemy*; which sheweth them to be of some consideration in those times, though now forgotten with the former. 8 *Antbedon*, on the South side of the River *Biser*, opposite to *Gaza* in the Tribe of *Simcon*, which is situate on the Northern Bank. A Port Town, once of good repute, till defaced by *Alexander* King of the *Jews*, re-edified afterwards by *Herod* the Great, and named *Agrippias*, in honour of *Agrippa*, the Favorite and Son-in-Law to *Augustus Cæsar*. 9 *Rossa*, a Fort of consequence, not far from *Massada*, before mentioned, when we were in *Judæa*; taken by *Herod* in his way to relieve that Castle. 10 *Raphia*, on the *Mediterranean-Sea* next *Antbedon*, memorable for the great defeat which *Ptolemy Philopater* there gave unto *Antiochus* surnamed *Magnus*. 11 *Rhinocurura*, so called from a mishap which befel the Inhabitants hereof, by mangling and defacing their Noses. By *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Rhinocurula*; and at this time *Pharamica*. Memorable for an old but ill grounded Tradition, that here the World was divided by Lots, betwixt the Posterity of *Noah*: and so considerable in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, that it was so strongly fortified by *Baldwin* the first, to obstruct the passage of such Forces as usually came out of *Egypt*, to aid the *Turks*. 12 *Ostracine*, now *Stagioni*, on the Sea-side beneath *Antbedon*, and that part of the Country which from Mount *Cassius* hath the name of *Cassotis*, ascribed by *Ptolemy* to *Egypt*: but being they are both on the North of the Lake of *Syrbon*, more properly belonging to *Palestina*. But most of these being now buried in their Ruins, there are left none but a few Castles and scattered Villages: the Villages inhabited for the most part by *Arabians*, the Castles garisoned by *Turks*. The chief of which lying on the Sea, in the Road of *Egypt*, are 13 *Hammunes*, a small Castle not far from *Gaza*, used chiefly for a Toll booth, to receive custom of such Merchants as pass that way. 14 *Harisa*, a small Castle also, serving specially for the same use; but stronger, and of more importance, because near the Sea, from which not above two Miles distant; and for that cause garisoned with an hundred Soldiers: Environed with a few Houses, by reason of the commodity of the Water, which is sweet and wholesome; else little better than a Desert. 15 *Catro*, another Castle or rather Toll-booth, with a Garison of about sixty Soldiers in it, seated in a place so desert and unfruitful, that nothing vegetable groweth in it, but a few starved Palm-trees. The Water which they have there, so bad and brackish, though esteemed good enough for the common Soldiers, that all which the Captain drinketh is brought from 16 *Tma*, a Town upon the Sea-shore, about twelve Miles distant, and the last upon this Coast towards *Egypt*.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were the *Horites*, the *Horites* that dwell in Mount *Ser*, as we read in *Genesis* 14. 6. that is to say, which dwelt in that hilly Country which afterwards was called Mount *Ser*. But whether it was so called from *Ejau's* dwelling here, as is said before, or from *Ser* the *Horite*, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 20. as perhaps they may probably be supposed, need not

now come into dispute. Broken in by *Chedor-Ismer*, and his Associates, they were the more easily subdued by *Eſau*, who leaving the Land of *Canaan* to his Brother *Jacob*, *Gen. 6. 7, 8.* because thoſe parts in which they dwelt did not afford them room enough for their ſeveral Cattel, came into this Country; and having *deſtroyed the Horites from before them*, ſucceeded in their Habitations, and dwelt there in their ſtead even unto this day, *Deut. 2. 22.* 'Tis true, we find *Eſau* in Mount *Seir*, before this remove: for it is ſaid, that *Jacob* at his firſt coming out of *Meſopotamia*, ſent Meſſengers before him to *Eſau* his Brother, unto the Land of *Seir*, the Country of *Edom*, *Gen. 32. 3.* And hence a Queſtion hath been moved, How *Eſau* dwelling there before *Jacob*'s coming, can be ſaid to remove thither to make room for him. To this *Sir Walter Raleigh*, and ſome others, answer, That at the time when *Jacob* came out of *Padan-Aram*, *Eſau* dwelt in thoſe parts of the Mountains which lye on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, called afterwards *Galaad* and Mount *Hermion*, by which *Jacob* muſt needs paſs in his way to *Canaan*; which Mountains then were called by the name of *Seir*, and from thence *Syrion* by the *Zidonians*, or *Phœnicians*, in the Ages following: from whence driven by the *Amorites*, at ſuch time as they vanquiſhed thoſe of *Moab* and *Ammon*, they were forced to ſeat themſelves on the South of *Canaan*, where *Moses* found them. But with this I am by no means ſatisfied. For beſides that it maketh *Eſau* to carry a Mount *Seir* with him whitherſoever he went; it doth expreſſly differ from the plain words of Scripture, both in occaſion, and the time of his ſetting there: the Victories which the *Amorites* had over the *Ammonites* and *Moabites*, being then freſh and newly gotten, when *Moses* with the Children of *Iſrael* came into theſe Parts; which was at the leaſt 200 Years after *Eſau* did withdraw himſelf to the Land of *Edom*. And therefore I ſhould rather think, that *Eſau* finding himſelf diſtaſted by his Father and Mother, in regard of his *Canaanitiſh* Marriages, and the hatred which he bare to *Jacob*, departed from thence, and ſojourned in the South Parts amongſt the *Horites* of Mount *Seir*; that thither *Jacob* ſent his Meſſengers, to make Peace between them; that the Reconciliation being made, *Eſau* returned unto the place where before he ſojourned; and having brought thence his Children, Cattel, and the reſt of his ſubſtance, fixed himſelf again near the Houſe of his Father: and finally, That on *Iſaac*'s Death, finding his Family increaſed, his Herds and Flocks augmented, and the reſt of his ſubſtance alſo doubled by the death of his Father, he thought it fit alſo to enlarge his dwelling, and ſo removed once more to *Edom*. A thing not needful to be done, had he dwelt in *Galaad*, *Hermion*, or any other part of that Mountainous Tract, conſidering the great diſtance betwixt thoſe Mountains and the City of *Hebron*, in which *Iſaac* dwelt; nigh to which *Jacob* alſo had ſet up his dwelling.

But on what ground ſoever *Eſau* left the poſſeſſion of the Land of *Canaan* to his Brother *Jacob*, certain it is, he did it not without ſome ſtrong Impuſſions from the Spirit of God, by whom the poſſeſſion of that Land was deſigned for *Jacob*, to whom the Bleſſing and the Birth right had been both preferred. And though *Eſau* over ruled by Almighty God, ſeemed to have forgotten all Diſpleaſure againſt his Brother; yet the Quarrel begun by them in the Womb of *Rebecca*, brake out more violently in the time of their Poſterity. Inſomuch that *Moses* could by no means obtain a Paſſage through *Edom* into the *Promiſed-Land*, though he ſought it by fair Addreſſes, and preſſed it by all thoſe Motives and Inducements, which a wiſe and an underſtanding Man could have ſet before them. For though the King of *Edom* then being, ſeemed to pretend nothing but the ſafety of himſelf and the People; both which he might have hazarded (in all human Reaſon) by opening the Cloſures of his Mountains, and letting in a Nation mightier than his own: yet it is poſſible there might be as much of

Stomach, as worldly Policy; and that as well the buying of the Birth-right for ſo ſlight a title, as the getting of the Bleſſing by ſuch fraudulent Means, might not be forgotten. For he not only denied them Paſſage, and ſent word expreſſly they ſhould not go thorow; but came againſt them with much People and a ſtrong Band, as is ſaid, *Numb. 20. 20.* But the *Edomites* could not for all this prevent their Deſtiny, or make the Word of God to be ineffectual; by which it hath been ſignified, when they were yet in their Mother's Womb, that the Elder ſhould ſerve the Younger. Nor verified in *Eſau*'s Perſon; for *Jacob* called him his Lord *Eſau*, profeſſed himſelf to be his Servant, and willingly ſubmitted to his Superiority; but in the iſſues of them both: then ſpecially when *David* had ſubdued the *Edomites*, and made them Homagers and Vaffals to the Crown of *Judab*, *2 Sam. 8. 14.* Nor is leſs intimated in theſe words of the 60 *Pſalm*, where it is ſaid, *Over Edom will I caſt my ſhoe*; it being a cuſtom of old times to ſling their Shoes upon a Country conquered, or deſigned for Conqueſt, *Projeſtio calceamenti ſuper Regionem aliquam, denotat ſubjicere*, as my Author hath it. And in Alluſion unto this, there is a Story in the Chronicles of the Kings of *Man*, how *Magnus* King of the *Iſles* ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Murchard* a King in *Ireland*, commanding him on the next *Chriſtmas-day* to carry openly the Shoes of King *Magnus* upon his Shoulders; in teſtimony, ſaith the Story, that he was his Vaffal. The caſting of the Shoe on a Conquered Country, or the treading of it under Feet, another Ceremony of this nature, mentioned, *Deut. 33. 29.* do come both to one, and ſignifie that Vaffalage or Bondage, which ſuch a captivated Country was reduced unto.

But on the other ſide, there was another part of the Heavenly Oracle, which made for *Edom*. *Iſaac* had ſignified to *Eſau*, that though the Bleſſing given to *Jacob* could not be revoked, and that he muſt content himſelf with being a Servant to his Brother for a certain ſeaſon: yet there ſhould one Day come a time, in which he ſhould not only break that Yoak from off his Neck, but obtain the Dominion over him, *Gen. 27. 40.* The firſt part verified, when the *Edomites* revolted from the Kings of *Judab*, in the time of *Joram*, or *Jehoram*, the Son of *Jehoſaphat*: and inſtead of a Vice-Roy ſent unto them from the Court of *Hieruſalem*, ſet up a King of their own Nation; never returning after that to the Houſe of *David*. For though *Joram* made War preſently upon them, and got the Victory; yet he did not proſecute it unto any effect, nor beat them out of any of their ſtrong Holds, nor reduce any of their Cities unto his obedience: as if he had got Honour enough in the Eye of the World by being Maſter of the Field; or ſhewing his Abilities in command of a greater Army, than the *Edomites* could bring againſt him. The like Error was committed by *Amaziah*, who by a vaſt Army of 30000 fighting Men, did no greater Wonders than the killing of 10000, and the taking of as many *Edomites*; but neither left Garifons in any of their defenſible Places, nor reduced any part of their Country under his obedience. And for the latter part thereof, it was as punctually fulfilled in the time of *Antipater*, an *Idumean*, *Herod the Aſcalente*, his Son, and their Succeſſors; who in the decrepit age of the Houſe of *Jacob*, became King of the *Jews*, and Lorded over them with inſolence and contempt enough.

Mean time to look upon the intermediate Paſſage of their State and Story. It ſeemeth that at firſt they were governed by Dukes, each having the command of thoſe ſeveral Families, of which they were the Heads or Princes. But as Ambition and Power did prevail among them, the more potent having vanquiſhed or awed the reſt, took to himſelf the name of King: which by the names of their Fathers, and their ſeveral Cities in which they reigned, ſeem to have been choſen by Election; or otherwiſe to come in by ſtrong Hand, as the Sword could

could carry it. The names of which are thus set down in the Book of *Genesis*.

The KINGS of EDOM.

- 1 *Bela*, the Son of *Beer*.
- 2 *Jobab*, the Son of *Zerab*.
- 3 *Hafham*, of the Land of *Temani*.
- 4 *Hadad*, the Son of *Bedad*, who warred against the *Midianites*, and vanquished them in the Fields of *Moab*, *Gen.* 36. 35.
- 5 *Samlah*, or *Mafrekah*.
- 6 *Saul*, of *Reboboth*, by the River *Euphrates*.
- 7 *Babal-Hanan*, the Son of *Achbor*.
- 8 *Hadar*, the Son perhaps of *Baal-hanan*, for I

find no mention of his Father. After whose death the Heads of the several Families resumed the Government again; ruling over their own Tribes, without any one Sovereign or Supreme. And all these Kings they had, before there reigned any King in *Israel*, *Gen.* 36. 31. that is to say, before any form of Supreme Government was established amongst them in the Person of *Moses*, called by the name of a King in the Book of *Deuter.* chap. 35. v. 5. But this distracted Government did not long continue, the *Edomites* being under a King again, at such a time as the Children of *Israel* came out of *Egypt*: for it was unto the King of *Edom* that *Moses* sent Messengers from *Kadesh*, to desire a passage thorow his Country. Which being denied, and the *Edomites* in Arms to defend their Passies, *Moses* forbore to force his way, though the nearest for him: partly because he had no mind to spend those Forces in fighting with Hills and Defarts, which were designed for the Conquest of another Country; but principally, because God commanded him not to meddle with them, or to take so much as a Foot of their Country from them, *Deut.* 2. 5. But *David*, upon whom lay no such obligation, having vanquished the *Syrians*, and other Nations round about him, followed his Fortunes unto *Edom*, whom he overcame, and put Garisons into all their Cities, and the *Edomites* became his Servants. Governed from thenceforth by a Deputy or Vice-Roy (as is said before) till the time of *Joram* the Son of *Jehoshaphat* King of *Judah*; in whose Reign they revolted, as before was said. Never regained to that Crown, and but twice endeaoured; that so the Word of God might be all in all. Only the *Simeonites* in the Reign of *Hzekiah*, wanting Pasture for their Cattel, and room for themselves, seized on the Parts that lay nearest to them, destroyed the Inhabitants thereof, and dwelt in their Habitations; because there was pasture for their Flocks, *1 Chron.* 4. 39. Provoked wherewith, and with the natural Antipathy which was between them, no People were more mischievously bent against *Judah* than these *Edomites* were: no Men so forward of themselves, to assist *Nebuchadnezer* against *Hierusalem*; none that so vehemently cried, *Down with it, down unto the ground*; none half so ready to set Fire unto the Holy Temple. But they got little by this Service to the *Babylonians*, their own thraldom following close upon that of *Judah*, with whom made fellow-Subjects to the *Chaldeans*; as afterwards to the *Persians*, and Kings of *Syria*, of the Race of *Sekmus*. In the declining of that House, subdued by *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Simon*, the fourth of the *Maccabean* Princes; by whom they were compelled to be circumcised, and to receive the Law of *Moses*: not only reckoned after that, as a Province of the Jewish Kingdom, but as natural *Jews*. Which notwithstanding, and that the setting of that Crown on the Head of *Herod* and his House, being originally *Idumeans*, might in all reason have extinguished their inveterate Malice: yet was their hatred of that Nation as great as ever. Forgetting therefore how they had been rewarded by the *Babylonians* they would needs aid the *Romans* against them also: putting themselves into *Hierusalem*, when besie-

ged by *Titus*, only of purpose to betray it; joyning with the seditious there, doing more mischief in the City than the Enemy had done without: and finally, setting fire to the second Temple, as they had done unto the first. Subjected afterwards by the *Romans*, they followed the same Fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

Having thus gone thorow with the Story of those neighbouring Nations which encompassed *Canaan*, it will be seasonable to look on the affairs of the *Canaanites* first, and after on the House of *Jacob*, who possessed their Country. First for the *Canaanites*, they descended from *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*, who with his eleven Sons were here settled immediately after the Confusion of *Babel*. Of those twelve (taking in the Father) five planted in *Phanicia*, and the Coasts of *Syria*; that is to say, *Sidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Semari*, and *Hamathi*: the other seven in those parts which we now call *Palestine*, though not all of that; the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Midianites*, *Amorites*, and *Ituræans*, being Occupants or Tenants with them. And of those seven came those seven Nations, which by God's appointment were totally to be rooted out, viz. the *Canaanites*, the *Amorites*, the *Hittites*, the *Jebusites*, the *Hivites*, the *Gergeshites*, and the *Perizzites*. But from which of the Sons of *Canaan* these last descended, is not agreed on; unless perhaps they were descended of the *Sinies* (not otherwise reckoned in this Muster) and got the name of *Perizzites* on some new occasion. Governed at first by the chiefest of their several Families, with the names of Kings; the number of which increased, as their Families were subdivided into smaller Branches: insomuch as *Joshua* founded 31 Kings of the *Canaanites* only, besides what might descend from those who were settled in *Phanicia*, and the Borders of *Syria*. The most potent of these Nations were the *Amorites*, the *Jebusites* and the *Canaanites* properly so called. Of which the *Amorites* had not only enlarged their Borders beyond *Jordan*, but in the Reigns of *Og* and *Sihon*, ruling at the same time at their several parts, had thrust the *Ituræans*, *Ammonites*, and *Moabites* out of most of their Countries; and so restored the same again to the Race of the *Emmims* and *Zanzumims* (of which Line *Og* and the Kings of *Basan* were) who had been dispossessed thereof by the Sons of *Loth*. These vanquished in the time of *Moses*, and their Habitations assigned over to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the one half Tribe of *Manasses*. The *Canaanites* properly so called, as they were the first which fought with the House of *Jacob*; so they were the last of all these People that contended with them. The first fought with them under the conduct of *Arad* their King, who thinking it more safe and prudent to encounter the Enemy in another Man's Country, than to expect them in his own gave Battel unto *Moses* in the Defarts of *Moab*; and having cut off some of the out-parts of his Army, and taken a few Prisoners, he went home again. But *Jabin*, under whom they make their second on set, went to work more resolutely; and taking a time when the Iniquities of that People cried aloud for vengeance, so prevailed against them, that he tyrannized over them for the space of twenty Years. After which time his Army being discomfited by *Barack*, in the time of *Deborah*, *Sisera*, his great Captain, slain by *Jael* the Wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, and most of his Cities taken and possessed by the *Israelites*, he perished himself in the close of that War; for it is said, That they prevailed against *Jabin* the King of *Canaan*, till they had destroyed him, *Judg.* 4. 24. As for the *Jebusites*, they were grown so formidable (at the time of the coming of the *Hebrews*) to the rest of their Neighbours, that their King *Adonibezek* bragged, that he had cut off the Thumbs and great Toes of 70 Kings, and made them eat the Crums which fell under his Table. But being vanquished by *Judah*, he was served in the same kind himself by *Judah* and *Simron*, and carried to *Hierusalem*, where he died: the whole Country of the *Jebusites*, and the City of

of *Hierusalem* it self the Fortrefs of Mount *Zion* excepted only, being made a prey unto the Victor. And though the *Jebofites* held that Fortiefs till the time of *David*; yet being they were only on the defensive side, and made no open War against those of *Israel*, I reckon the *Canaanites* as the last which did contend with them for the chief Command.

The *Canaanites*, thus Conquered and for the most part worn out of the Country, the *Israelites* Succeeded in their Possessions; according to the promise of God, made to *Abraham*, renewed to *Isaac*, and confirmed to *Jacob*. Governed after the death of *Moses* and *Joshua*, by the Congregation of the Elders, as appears by many passages in the Book of *Judges*; the Judges (as the Scripture calleth them) not being the ordinary Magistrates, but raised up occasionally by God for some special purpose, according to the exigence of their Affairs, carrying in this a likeness unto the Dictators in the State of *Rome*. So that the Government at first was an *Aristocracy*; though to say truth, it was rather a *Theocracy*, as the Fathers call it; that is to say, a Government wherein God presided more immediately than in other Nations. And thereupon when the People cried out to *Samuel* to have a King, God said unto him, *Hearken unto the voice of the People, for they have not Rejected thee, but they have Rejected Me, that I should not Reign over them*, 1 Sam. 8. 7. God was their King, and he had Mightily Reigned over them since they came out of *Egypt*; but they desired to have a King like other Nations, to go in and out before them, and to Fight their Battels; a King whom they might see with their Bodily Eyes, and converse with him in such manner as the People did, which dwelt round about them. And so came in the Monarchy of Kingly Government, begun in *Saul*, but confirmed in *David*: the first a *Benjamite*, the second of the Tribe of *Judab*; of which *Jacob* had foretold at the time of his death, that the Kingdom of his People should be vested in it. But there were only three in all, reckoning *Saul* for one, who had Dominion over the whole House of *Israel*; the Kingdom after *Solomon's* Death, being rent in twain; Ten of the Twelve Tribes Revolting unto *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*; and only *Benjamin* and *Judab*, and so much of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Simeon* as lay intermingled with, and in the Tribe of *Judab*, remaining firm to *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, who, misguided by some Evil Counsellors which were about him, had given occasion to the Breach. A Breach that could never be Solder'd or made up again, notwithstanding the fair Opportunities which were after offered of Uniting *Judab* unto *Israel*, (for so the two Kingdoms were distinguished in the time of *Joas*, and re-joyning *Israel* to *Judab*, in the time of *Asa*. The opportunity offered to *Asa* King of *Judab*, for regaining the Revolted Tribes, was the Confusions which in his time had fallen out among them, by several Factions; each challenging the Privilege of making a King unto it self: *Nadab* the Son of *Jeroboam* being Slain by *Baasha*, *Ela* the Son of *Baasha* Murdered by *Zimri*, *Zimri* Deposed by *Omri* the Father of *Abab*, and *Tibni*, a Competitor against *Omri* also. During which time, as the People must needs suffer many great Oppressions, which might make them think of their Allegiance to the House of *David*: So could not *Asa* have wanted many fair advantages (had he made his best use of them) of working on that divided Kingdom, and reducing it back unto this House. But there were two Reasons which prevailed more against this re-union than any that could be presented to invite them to it. First, the Imperiousness and Arbitrary Government of the Kings of *Judab*, putting to Death without formality of Law, those that had displeased them, as in the case of *Shimes*, *Joab*, and *Adonijab*, in the days of *Solomon*: and raising on the Subjects what Sums

they pleased, though more for Ostentation than for their own Magnificence, than the Necessities of the State. Of which Exactions *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon* was so far from promising a Release, or some Moderation, at least, that he threatened to make them more than double to what they had been formerly: And who knew they but that *Asa*, and all such as descended from him might be of the same Temper also, and according to those Principles which their Fathers left them. Whereas the Kings of *Israel* holding by no other Tie than the Love of their People, and the Moderate and Regular Form of their Government over them, had put their mouths into such a taste of the Sweets of Liberty, and made them so much Masters of their own, both Lives and Fortunes, that *Naboth* durst deny his Vineyard to *Abab*, though offering full compensation for it; and *Abab* durst not question the Life of *Naboth*, but by Suborning Witnesses to accuse him of Blasphemy. So that the present Confusions under which they suffered, by the Change and Violent Death of so many Kings one after another, being only Temporary, and not likely to continue long, were no perswasions unto them to accept of *Asa*, and much less to offer themselves unto him, who conceived all Adversity to be far more tolerable than the weighty Scepter of that House. And there was something also of preceding Profit, which swayed the business. The People were obliged by the Law of *Moses* to make three chargeable Journeys yearly to *Hierusalem*, to Worship there in the Holy Temple; and to pay a double Tenth yearly out of their Estate (besides Offerings and other Casualties) to the Priests and Levites. *Jeroboam* out of an ungodly Policy, fearing these frequent Journeys unto *Hierusalem* might be an occasion of reducing them to the House of *David*, released them of that Charge and Trouble, by setting up a new Form of Worship, erecting Golden Calves for them in *Dan* and *Bethel*; and leaving every Man unto the liberty of his own Opinion, so it tended not to the Establishment of the old Religion. And on the other side, the *Levites* which dwelt amongst them, and received their Tithes, not willing to conform to these new Impieties, and finding that their Ministry was no longer useful, withdrew themselves into the Kingdom of *Judab*, and left the ancient places of their Habitations: by means whereof, the people were released of those payments also. If they returned again to their old Obedience, and accepted *Asa* for their King, they must return again also to their old Religion; the Golden Calves of their own imaginations and inventions, must no more be Worshipped: and (which no doubt prevailed most on the common People, who like that Religion best that costs them nothing) the ancient payments to the Priests and Levites must come up again. Rather than so, they were resolved to suffer yet a little longer, to please themselves in expectation of more settled times; and so no falling off to *Asa*, tho' as Moderate and Religious a Prince as they could have wished for, had they had power of fashioning a King to their own desires. Now as this opportunity of re-joyning *Israel* unto *Judab*, proved unsuccessful unto *Asa*; so did the like of uniting *Judab* unto *Israel*, prove as unprofitable unto *Joas* the Son of *Jehonahaz*, and Grand-Child of *Jebu* King of *Israel*, who being provok'd by *Amaziah* King of *Judab*, made War upon him; and not only discomfited him without Battel, and took him Prisoner without Blows, but led him Captive to the very Walls of *Hierusalem*; and by his Authority got the Gates thereof to be opened to him. But not contented with this Honour (greater than ever had befallen to the Kings of *Israel*) he caused 400 Cubits of the Wall to be broken down; through which Breach he entred Triumphantly in his Chariot, carrying the unhappy Prince before him: and being entred, Sacked both the Royal Palace and the Holy Temple. This was the opportunity which was given to *Joas*, of uniting *Judab*

unto *Israel*; and this the loss of it. For the People, otherwise like enough to have accepted him for their King, as a Prince of whose Noble Acts they had heard much speech, were so exasperated by these rash and unseasonable outrages, that they looked upon him as a *Sacrilegious Church-Robber*, whom the Holy Altars were not safe from; and as a Covetous and Ungovern'd Tyrant, not able to concoct the fulness of his own Prosperities. If he were thus unsatiable in his Covetousness, and unsupportable in his Pride when he was a Candidate for their Kingdom; when in all common Prudence he would have sought their Love, and insinuated into their good Opinions, by easing them of former Taxes, and shewing them fair hopes of his moderate Government: what must they look for when their Towns were filled with Garisons, *Hurusalem* stuffed with Armed Troops, and all the Princes of the House of *David*, from whom they might expect Redemption from Bondage, Destroy'd or Banished, or otherwise made unable to afford them Succours? Rather than so, they were resolved to rise up as one Man against him, and let him see, that neither their Army was so scattered, nor themselves so cow'd, but that they durst adventure it to a farther Tryal. The fear of which made *Joas* sensible of the loss of his Opportunity: and so content with Hostages for his safe Retreat, he returned home again without other benefit of his Victory, than the Spoil and Honour. And that this possibly might be the motive of his going back, without putting the success of the Affair to a farther hazard, may be made probable by the like occurrence in the Story of *Guicciardine*, which in brief is this; *Peter de Medicis* had very weakly opened the Gates of *Florence* to *Charles VIII*, then in his passage towards *Naples*. *Charles* entreats it Triumphantly, as a Conquer'd City, Armed in compleat manner, and his Lance on his Thigh; his whole Army with him. Many insolencies being committed by the *French*, the Citizens prepare to Fight in defence of their Liberties. *Charles* willing to go forwards on his March towards *Naples*, propounds Conditions in Writing: but so Intolerable, that *Peter Cappony*, one of the Chief Citizens, catching the Papers out of the King's Secretary's hands, and tearing them before his face, *Do you* (saith he) *Sound your Trumpets, we will Ring our Bells, and see what will follow.* Which stout and peremptory dealing did so daunt the *French*, that they condescended upon very easie Terms to abandon the City, and restore all the places appertaining unto their Estate, which were then in his power. The like consideration probably might prevail with *Joas*, as did then with *Charles*; and prompt him not to fight with an enraged Multitude in the Streets of a City, where he could make no use of his Horse; and where he might be more galled with Women and Children, throwing Stones or Darts out of their Windows, and from the tops of their Houses, than with an Armed Enemy in the open Field. Nor wanted *Joas* an example of this kind, in the times before him; even that of *Abimelech*, in the Book of *Judges*: who having taken the Town of *Thebes*, and forced all the Men and Women into the Castle, was slain there by a piece of a Millstone, thrown at his head from one of the Turrets of it by the hands of a Woman.

To proceed further in the Story of these several Kings or recapitulate the summe of their principal Actions (as in other places we have done) may be thought unne-

cessary: The Scripture being in the hands of all sorts of Persons, in which their Actions and Successions are at large contained. So that I only shall subjoyn their names, with the time of their Reigns, and the year of the World in which they did begin their Empire: leaving the rest unto the industry and search of the Christian Reader, of whose acquaintance with the Scriptures I dare make no question. This only I premise as concerning the *Judges*, That the time of their continuance in that Authority, is not to be measured from the time of their coming to it, till the entrance of the next Successor, as in that of the Kings: these being occasionally raised by Almighty God, for some present Service, and no standing or established Magistrates; except *Moses* and *Joshua* only, who held the Government during Life, and managed it as absolute Princes.

The Judges and Captains of the *HEBREWS*.

A. M.

- 2454 1. *Moses*, a *Levite*, the Law-giver of the *Hebrews*, brought by him out of the Land of *Egypt*. 40.
- 2494. 2. *Joshua*, an *Ephramite*, who settled them in the Land of *Canaan*. 33.
- 2526. 3. *Othniel*, of *Judab*, by whom they were delivered from the *Mesopotamians*.
- 2530. 4. *Ehud*, a *Benjamite*, who Rescued them from the hand of *Eglon*, King of *Moab*.
- 2610 5. *Deborah* the Prophetess, and *Barack* the *Naphthalite*, who discomfited the Host of *Jabin*, King of the *Canaanites*.
- 2650 6. *Gideon*, a *Manassite*, who Ransom'd them from the Power of the *Midianites*. 40.
- 2690 7. *Abimelech*, the base Son of *Gideon*. 3.
- 2693 8. *Tola*, of the Tribe of *Issachar*. 23.
- 2716 9. *Jaire*, a *Gileadite*. 22.
- 2760 10. *Jephthah*, a *Gileadite*, by whom the People were redeemed from the hand of the *Ammonites*.
- 2766 11. *Ibsan*, of *Bethlehem*. 7.
- 2773 12. *Elon*, a *Zebulonite*. 10.
- 2783 13. *Abdon*, an *Ephramite*. 8.
- 2790 14. *Sampson*, a *Danite*, the avenger of the People upon the *Philistines*.
- 2809 15. *Eli*, the High-Priest, in whose time the Ark was taken by the *Philistines*.
- 2849 16. *Samuel* the Prophet, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*; in the latter end of whose Government, the People being weary of the Command of their former Rulers, desired to have a King to go in and out before them, like other Nations.

The Kings of the *HEBREWS*.

A. M.

- 2878 1. *Saul*, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the first King of the *Hebrews*, and an unlucky one to begin withal. 17.
- 2890 2. *David*, the Son of *Jesse*, of the Tribe of *Judab*, the most Victorious King of the *Hebrew Nation*. 40.
- 2930 3. *Solomon* the Son of *David*, Renowned for Building of the Temple. The Kingdom afterwards divided.

The

The Years from the Entrance into Canaan.	The IXth. TABLE of <i>Ludovicus Capellas's Chronologia Sacra.</i> Con- taining the History of the Bible, from the entring of the Chil- dren of <i>Israel</i> into the Land of <i>Canaan</i> to the Death of <i>Solomon</i> , and the Division of the Kingdom between the Ten Tribes, and that of <i>Judah</i> .	From the go- ing up out of <i>Egypt</i> .	The Years of the World,	
			The Years of the Judges.	
1	The Entrance of the Children of <i>Israel</i> into <i>Canaan</i> .	41		2549
6	The War for the Conquest of <i>Canaan</i> lasted six years.	46	6	2554
7	The Division of the Land amongst the Tribes took up one year.	47	1	2555
15	The Oppression of the Children of <i>Israel</i> by <i>Cushan</i> , K. of <i>Mesopotamia</i> .	55	8	2563
55	The death of <i>Othniel</i> , the first of the Judges.	95	40	2603
73	The Oppression by <i>Eglon</i> King of <i>Moab</i> .	113	18	2621
153	The Death of <i>Ehud</i> the second of the Judges. <i>Shamgar</i> .	193	80	2701
173	The Oppression by <i>Jabin</i> King of <i>Canaan</i> .	213	20	2721
213	The Death of <i>Debora</i> and <i>Barack</i> .	253	40	2761
220	The Oppression by <i>Midian</i> .	260	7	2768
260	The Death of <i>Gideon</i> .	300	40	2808
263	The Death of <i>Abimelech</i> the Son of <i>Gideon</i> .	303	3	2811
286	The Death of <i>Tholab</i> .	326	23	2834
308	The Death of <i>Jair</i> .	348	22	2856
326	The Oppression by the Children of <i>Ammon</i> .	366	18	2874
332	The Death of <i>Jephtha</i> .	372	6	2880
339	The Death of <i>Ibzan</i> .	379	7	2887
349	The Death of <i>Elon</i> .	389	10	2897
357	The Death of <i>Abdon</i> .	397	8	2905
397	The Oppression of the <i>Philistines</i> .	437	40	2945
417	The Death of <i>Sampson</i> .	457	20	2965
497	The Death of <i>Samuel</i> and <i>Saul</i> .	537	40	3045
537	The Death of <i>David</i> .	577	40	3085
577	The Death of <i>Solomon</i> .	617	40	3125
540	The Temple was begun to be Built in the 3d. Year of the Reign of	580	7	3088
547	<i>Solomon</i> and was finished in the IXth.			3096

JUDAH and ISRAEL.

The Kings of JUDAH.		The Kings of ISRAEL.	
A. M.		A. M.	
2971	1. Rehoboam, the Son of Solomon, the first King of Judah. 17.	2971	1. Jeroboam, the Son of Nebat, of the Tribe of Ephraim, the first King of Israel. 22.
2988	2. Abijah the Son of Rehoboam. 3.	2993	2. Nadab, the Son of Jeroboam. 2.
2991	3. Asa, the Son of Abijah, discomfited the numerous Army of Zera, the Ethiopian or Arabian King.	2995	3. Baasha, of the Tribe of Issachar, having slain Nadab, Reigned in his stead. 24.
3031	4. Jehosaphat, the Son of Asa, a great Reformer of the State, both Ecclesiastical and Civil, 35.	3019	4. Ela, the Son of Baasha. 2.
3056	5. Jehoram, the Son of Jehosaphat, 8.	3021	5. Zimri, a King of seven days only, the Murderer of Ela, and his own Executioner.
3064	6. Abaziah, the Son of Jehoram by Athalia his Wife, the Sister of Abab King of Israel. 1.		6. Omri, the Captain of the Host, who removed the Regal Seat from Tirza to Samaria. 8.
3065	7. Athaliah, the Daughter of Omri, and Sister of Abab, having destroyed the Regal Race of the House of David, usurped the Kingdom for seven years.	3029	7. Abab, the Son of Omri, and Husband of Jezebel, a Phœnician Princess.
3072	8. Joash, the only surviving Heir of the House of David, restored by Jehoiadab the Priest, to the Throne of his Ancestors. 40.	3051	8. Abaziah, the Son of Abab. 2.
3112	9. Amaziah, the Son of Joash, vanquished by Joash King of Israel, and a breach forced through the walls of Hierusalem. 29.	3053	9. Jehoram, the Brother of Abaziah. 12.
3141	10. Azariah, the Son of Amaziah, called also Uzziah; smote with a Leprosie by the Lord. 52.	3065	10. Jehu, the Captain of the Host, vanquished and slew Jehoram, Reigning in his stead. 28.
3192	11. Jotham, the Son of Uzziah, or Azariah. 16.	3093	11. Jehoahaz, the Son of Jehu. 17.
3208	12. Abaz, the Son of Jotham, in whose time, and on whose occasion the Kingdom of Damascus was Ruined by Tiglath Pileser King of Assyria, and the Tribes on the farther side of Jordan led into Captivity. 16.	3110	12. Joash, the Son of Jehoahaz. 16.
3224	13. Hezekiah, the Son of Abaz, a Religious Prince, in whose time the Kingdom of	3126	13. Jeroboam, II. the Son of Joash. 41.
		3178	14. Zachariah, the Son of Jeroboam the II. after an Interregnum of eleven years, Succeeded in the Throne of his Father: slain at the end of six Months by
			15. Shallum, who at the Months end was slain by
		3178	16. Menabem, the Son of Gadi. 10.
		3188	17. Pekabiah, the Son of Menabem, slain by
		3190	18. Pekab, the Son of Remaliah; served in the same kind, after a Reign of Twenty Years, by
		3210	19. Hosab, the Son of Ela; in the 5th Year of whose Reign, and the 18th Year from the death of Pekab, Salmasser King of Assyria, having by a Siege of Three Years carried the City of Samaria, destroyed the Kingdom of Israel, and led the greatest part of the people into Captivity. R r r r 2 the

the Ten Tribes was destroyed by the *Assyrians*, and that of *Assyria* by the *Babylonians*.

3253 14. *Manasses*, the wicked Son of the good King *Hezekiah*, restored Idolatry, and put to death the Prophet *Isaiab*, for opposing his irreligious courses. 55.

3308 15. *Amon*, the Son of *Manasses*, and as bad as he was, slain by a Conspiracy of his Servants, when he had reigned but Two Years only.

3310 16. *Josiah*, the Son of *Amon*, a right godly King; unfortunately slain by *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*, at the Battel of *Megiddo*. 31.

3341 17. *Jeboabaz*, the Son of *Josiah*, a King of Three Months only; deposed and sent Prisoner by *Pharaoh Necho*, to *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, since called *Antiochia*.

18. *Jeboiakim*, the Son of *Josiah*, and half Brother of *Jeboabaz*, advanced unto the Throne by *Necho*, who changed his Name from *Eliakim*, by which he formerly was called, into that of *Jeboiakim*. 11.

3351 19. *Jeboiachim*, or *Jechoniah*, the Son of *Jeboiakim*, at the end of three Months led captive unto *Babylon*, with his Wives and Mother, and the Great Officers of the Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

20. *Zedekiah*, another of the Sons of *Josiah*, and Brother by the whole blood of *Jeboabaz*, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Jeboiachim*, or *Jechoniah*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling against his Benefactor, contrary to the Counsel of the Prophet *Jeremy*, he was taken Prisoner in the Eleventh Year of his Reign, *Hierusalem* destroyed, the Temple ruined, and the People carried captive to the Land of *Babylon*, A. M. 3362. where they lived in Exile 70 years. Which Time expired, *Cyrus* the King of the *Persians* gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edifie their City and Temple: Which Work being finished, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah* and *Zorobabel*; and the Nation again settled in some part of their old Possessions, they were after governed by their *Higb-Priests*, and the Council of their Elders, which they called the *Sanhedrim*, the *Higb-Priest* bearing the chief stroke, and being looked on as a Man of the greatest Power. And therefore I will here subjoin the Catalogue of so many of them as governed the Affairs of this Country, from the Return of the People from the Captivity of *Babylon*, till the Time of the *Maccabees*; who managed the Estate hereof both as *Priests* and *Princes*, till their Subjection by the *Romans*.

The Higb-Priests of the JEWS after the Captivity.

A. M.

- 3427 1. *Joshua*, The *Higb-Priest* at the Time of the Return, assistant to *Zorobabel* in re-building the Temple, which he lived not to finish; tho continuing (as some say) in the Government 100 years. But I believe rather, that the Names of his Successors being lost, the whole Time is ascribed to him.
- 3530 2. *Jeboiakim*, said to be the Son of *Joshua*, in whose Time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah* the Temple was finished, and the Worship of God restored.
- 3580 3. *Jonathan*, or *Jobanan*. 30.
- 3610 4. *Jaddus*, who entertain'd *Alexander the Great* coming to *Hierusalem*, (of whom more anon) the Brother of that *Manasses*, for whose sake, and on whose occasion, the Temple on *Mount Gerizim* was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexander*. 20.

- 3630 5. *Onias* succeeded *Jaddus*, as *Jaddus* had done *Jonathan*; not by Birth (as formerly) but by Election of the People.
- 3651 6. *Simon*, surnamed *Justus*. 9.
- 3660 7. *Eleazer*, the Brother of *Simon*. 32.
- 3692 8. *Menelaus*, the Brother of *Eleazer* and *Simon*.
- 3718 9. *Onias II.* 14.
- 3732 10. *Simon II.* 10.
- 3742 11. *Onias III.* the Son of *Simon* the 2d.
- 3787 12. *Jason*, the Brother of *Onias* the 3d.
- 3789 13. *Menelaus II.* the Brother of *Jason*, in whose Time the Temple was prophaned by the *Syrians*, at the Command of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.
- 3794 14. *Alcimus*, under whose Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in defence of their Country and Religion, by whom succeeded in the Office of *Higb-Priest*, after his decease. Among these none of greater note than *Jaddus*, *Higb-Priest* at such time as *Alexander the Great* having conquered *Syria*, marched towards *Hierusalem*, and was encountred by this *Jaddus* in his Priestly Vestments, assuring him in the Name of the Most High God, and making it demonstrable from the Prophecie of *Daniel*, That he should prosper in his Enterprize against the *Persians*. An hope which *Alexander* did embrace with the greater confidence, because (as he affirmed to *Parmenio* his Chief Commander) he had once at *Diu*, a City of *Macedon*, seen in a Dream or Vision such a person as *Jaddus* was, so habited, and professing the same One God; by whom he was encouraged to pursue the Action which he had in hand with assurance of Victory. And upon this the Jews were so much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own Laws, and to enjoy with Freedom their own Religion. But it held only for his own Time: For shortly after his decease, they were on both sides plagued by the Kings of *Egypt* and *Syria*, who ransacked their Cities, slaughtered their People, made havock of their Goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of Forbidden Meats, and offer Sacrifice unto Idols. At the last God raised up *Mattathias* (descended from *Asmoneus* a Priest of the Rank of *Joarib*) and his five Sons, to resist these Insolencies; who in the Reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, undertook the protection of the people, and gave unto the *Syrians* many notable overthrows; insomuch that the Jews made choice of *Judas* surnamed *Maccabeus* (the Eldest of the five Brethren) for their Prince or Governor.

The ASMONEAN Princes of JEVRY.

A. M.

- 3799 1. *Judas Maccabeus*, the Third Son of *Mattathias* above-mentioned, one of the Nine Worthies, vanquished three great and puissant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Lisias*, Men of great renown, being Commanders of the Forces of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, before mentioned.
- 3805 2. *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas*, vanquished the Forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Captains of *Demetrius* King of *Syria*; and after many notable Exploits and Deeds of Arms, was tracherously murdered by *Tryphon*, aspiring at that time to the *Syrian* Diadem.
- 3823 3. *Simon* the Elder, Brother of *Judas* and *Jonathan*, subdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Joppe*, and *Jamnia*, and cleared *Judea* of the *Syrians*; perfidiously slain in the course of his Fortune, by his Son-in-law *Ptolemy*. 8.
- 3831 4. *Johannes Hyrcanus*, the Third Son of *Simon* (his two other Brethren being in the power of *Ptolemy*) succeeded in the Government. He destroyed

destroyed the Temple on *Mount Garizim*, conquered all *Samaria*, and subdued the *Idumæans*, compelled them to be Circumcised; transferred the War into *Syria*; and dying, left the Sovereignty to his Eldest Son *Aristobulus*.

The *ASMONÆAN* Kings of *JUDAH*.

A. M.

- 3862 1 *Aristobulus*, caused himself to be Crowned, and was the first King of *Judah* after the *Babylonian* Captivity; he starved his Mother, and slew *Antigonus* his Brother.
- 3863 2 *Alexander*, the Brother of *Aristobulus*, exceedingly enlarged the Kingdom of *Jury* by the conquest of *Iuræa*, and some parts of *Syria*; but was withal so great a Tyrant, that he causelessly slew of his own Subjects fifty thousand in Battel; and commanded 800 of his principal Enemies to be hanged before his face. He left behind him Two Sons, *Hircanus*, who was at last slain by *Herod* after all his Troubles, leaving no Issue Male behind him; and *Aristobulus* the Father of *Alexander*, and of *Antigonus*, of whom more anon: Of which Two, *Alexander* was the Father of another *Aristobulus*, the most beautiful Prince of all his Time, and of *Mariamne* the Wife of *Herod*, by whose command they were most villanously murdered.
- 3890 3 *Alexandra*, by some called *Salome*, the Wife of *Alexander*, and following the Counsel of her Husband at the time of his Death, committed herself and her Children into the hands of the *Pharisees*, then in great power and credit amongst the people; by means whereof she procured an honourable Burial for her Husband, obtained the Kingdom for herself, and finally left it to her Children, whose disagreements caused the ruin of this Famous Family.
- 3899 4 *Aristobulus* II. The Younger Son of *Alexander*, an active Prince, and beloved of the Military Men, having presently after the death of his Mother possess'd himself of the greatest part of the Forts and Castles, by the Forced consent of *Hircanus* his Elder Brother, succeeded in the Kingdom and High-Priesthood also; both which he held with great trouble and opposition both from his Brother and the *Romans*, whom most imprudently they called in to decide the Controversy: by *Pompey* sent Prisoner unto *Rome* (with *Alexander* and *Antigonus* his two Sons) he escaped thence, and raised a new Army for the recovery of this Kingdom; but being forced to yield himself to *Gabinus* one of *Pompey's* Lieutenants, he was sent back again to *Rome*, where he died in Prison, having reigned Three Years and Six Months.
- 3903 5 *Hircanus* II. a Prince of weak parts, and not fit for Government, was made High-Priest in the first Year of his Mother's Reign, but dispossest of that Dignity by *Aristobulus* his younger Brother. Restored again by the Favour of *Pompey*, he was again disturb'd in his Possession by *Alexander* the Eldest Son of *Aristobulus*; who escaping out of *Rome*, had raised some Forces; and began to dispute the Forces with him; but was soon after discomfited by *Gabinus* afore-mentioned, and slain by *Scipio*, another of *Pompey's* Captains. After the Death of *Aristobulus*, which happen'd in the year 3903. *Hircanus* was look'd on by the people, not only as their High-priest, but as their Prince and King,

commonly called so by *Josephus* in the course of his History. His Affairs managed for the most part by *Antipater* (an *Idumæan* born, and the Father of *Herod*) his constant and most Faithful Friend in all his Troubles, who governed the Estate with great care and prudence. But he being made away by Poison, *Antigonus* the younger Son of *Aristobulus*, set on foot his Title to the Kingdom, and drew in an Army of the *Partians* to make it good; by whose aid, having treacherously insnared *Hircanus*, he cut off his Ears (to make him incapable of the Priesthood for the time to come) and sent him Prisoner to *Babylon*; taking upon himself the Title of King, though never acknowledged for such by the Jewish Nation. But long he did not please himself with that Title neither, for being besieged in *Jerusalem* by *Herod*, then newly created King of the *Jews* by the *Roman* Senate, and by him taken Prisoner in the Sack of that City, he was sent in Bonds to *Mark Anthony*, and by him beheaded. As for *Hircanus* the Rightful Prince of his Country, he remained Prisoner for a time amongst the *Partians*, till hearing of the Death of *Antigonus*, he returned into *Jewry*, and lived contentedly under the Government of *Herod*, of whose greatness he had laid the first Foundation, and was by him in fine wickedly murdered.

The *Idumæan* Kings and Princes of *Jewry*.

A. M.

3940

- 1 *Herod* the *Ascalonite*, surnamed the Great, Son to *Antipater* the *Idumæan*, was by the power of *Mark Anthony* created, and by *Augustus* confirmed King of *Jewry*; under whom that Kingdom was more enlarged, and in greater Splendor than ever it had been in since the Time of *David*. A Prince of great Magnificence, but of greater Vices. During his Reign, the Scepter being now departed from *Judah*, the Lord *CHRIST* was born.

A. Christi.

6

- 2 *Archelaus*, Eldest Son of *Herod* at the time of his death, succeeded with the Title of King; but in truth and reality possessed only a *Tetrarchy*, or Fourth Part of the Kingdom, though the best and largest of the Four, containing *Judea*, *Samaria*, and *Idumæa*. The rest of *Herod's* Kingdom was divided into Three other *Tetrarchies*, i. e. the *Tetrarchy* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, given to *Herod Antipas*: Secondly, That of *Iuræa*, given to *Philip*, another of the Sons of *Herod*: And Thirdly, That of *Abilene*, conferred on *Lysanias*. Banished into *France*, his *Tetrarchy* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; governed by *Pontius Pilate* at our Saviour's Passion.

16

- 3 *Herod* II. surnamed *Antipas*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, on the Banishment of *Archelaus*, succeeded him, as chief of the *Herodian* Family, but not in his *Tetrarchy*; and at last followed him in his Banishment also. This is he who murdered *John Baptist*, and in whose Time *CHRIST* suffered.

40

- 4 *Herod* III. surnamed *Agrippa*; in Honour of *Agrippa* the Son-in-law, and most Trusty Favourite of *Augustus Cæsar*, Nephew to *Herod the Great*, by his Son *Aristobulus* begotten on *Mariamne* of the Race of the *Asmonæes*, was by *Caligula* first invell'd in the *Tetrarchy* of his Uncle *Philip*, with the Title of King; and next, in that of *Antipas* also; and finally by *Claudius*, in that also of *Lysanias*, some part of the *Tetrarchy* of *Archelaus* being added unto his Dominions. This was the Man that murdered *James*, and imprisoned

imprisoned *Peter* ; and in the end was stricken by an Angel, and devoured by Worms.
47 5 *Agrippa Minor*, Son of *Herod Agrippa*, was he before whom *St. Paul* pleaded in defence of the Gospel ; and the last which had the Ti-

tle of King of the *Jews* : For in his Time the City of *Hierusalem* was destroyed by *Titus* , and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the *Roman Empire*, Anno 69.

For the fuller clearing the Intricate Successions of the several Princes which Reigned in and over *Jerusalem* and the *Jewish Nation*, till the Final End of that State and People under *Vespasian* , I have added from *Ludovicus Capella* the following T A B L E S ; which commence with the Death of *Solomon*, and the Division of the Kingdom of *Israel* , and end with the Desolation of *Jerusalem*.

The of the World	Year com- ing out of <i>Egypt</i>	Places of Scripture.	Kings of <i>Ju- dah</i> .	Reigns.	When they began to Reign.	Life	Places of Scripture.	Kings of <i>Is- rael</i> .	Reigns.	When they began to Reign.
		<i>1 Kings</i>					<i>1 Kings</i>			
3126	618	14. 21.	<i>Rehoboam</i>	17	1 Of <i>Jerob.</i>	41	14. 20.	<i>Jeroboam I.</i>	22	<i>Rehoboam I.</i>
3143	635	15. 2.	<i>Abija</i>	3	18					
3146	638	15. 9.	<i>Asa</i>	41	20					
3147	639						15. 25.	<i>Nadab</i>	2	2 of <i>Asa</i>
3148	640						15. 33.	<i>Baasha</i>	24	3
3171	663						16. 8.	<i>Elah</i>	2	26
3172	664						16. 15.	<i>Zimri</i>	7 D.	27
3173	665						16. 21.	<i>Omri and Tibni</i>	3	27
3175	668						23.	<i>Omri alone</i>	12	
3183	675						16. 29.	<i>Ahab</i>	22	38
3187	679	22. 41.	<i>Jehosopbat</i>	25	4 of <i>Abab</i>	36				
3203	695						22. 51.	<i>Abaziah</i>	2	17 <i>Jehosoph.</i>
3205	697	2 <i>Kings</i>					2 <i>King.</i> 3. 1.	<i>Joram</i>	12	18
3209	701	8. 16.	<i>Joram</i>	8	5 of <i>Joram</i>	32				
3216	708	8. 25.	<i>Abaziah</i>	1	12	22				
3217	709	11. 13.	<i>Atthaliab</i>	6			10. 3.	<i>Jehu</i>	28	
3223	715	12. 1.	<i>Jehoas, Soas</i>	40	7 of <i>Jehu</i>	7				
3245	737						13. 1.	<i>Jehoabaz</i>	17	23 of <i>Josas</i>
3259	751						13. 10.	<i>Joaah, Joas</i>	16	37
3261	752	14. 1.	<i>Amaziah</i>	29	2 of <i>Joas</i>	25				
3274	766			12			14. 23.	<i>Jeroboam II.</i>	41	15 of <i>Amaz- zia</i>
3301	753	15. 1.	<i>Azaria</i>	52	27 <i>Jeroboam</i>	16				
3315	808							<i>Interregnum</i>	12	
3337	830						15. 8.	<i>Zachariah</i>	6 M.	38 of <i>Azari.</i>
3338	831						15. 13.	<i>Sballum</i>	1 M.	39
3550	842						15. 17.	<i>Menabem</i>	10 Y.	39
3552	844						15. 23.	<i>Pekabiah</i>	2	50
3553	845	15. 32.	<i>Jorham</i>	16	2 of <i>Pekab</i>	25	15. 27.	<i>Pekab</i>	20	52
3369	861	16. 1.	<i>Abaz</i>	16	17	22				
3372	864						17. 1	<i>Hoshea</i>	9	12 of <i>Abas.</i>
3375	868	18. 1.	<i>Ezechias</i>	29	3 of <i>Hoshea</i>	25				
3380	872	17. 6.	<i>Samaria taken</i>							
3404	896	21. 1.	<i>Manasses</i>	55		12				
3459	951	21. 19.	<i>Amon</i>	2		2				
3461	953	22. 1.	<i>Josiah</i>	31		8				
3492	984	23. 31.	<i>Jehoaz</i>	3 M.		23				
3493	985	23. 36.	<i>Jehoiakim</i>	11		25				
3504	996	24. 8.	<i>Jehoiachin</i>	3 M.		18				
3505	997	17.	<i>Zedechias</i>	11		21				
3515	1007	25. 2.	<i>Jerusalem ta- ken, and the Temple burnt.</i>							

The End of this Kingdom.

A.M.	Reges Babiloniæ.	
3496	Nebuchodonozor	44
3540	Evilmerodach	2
3543	Balthazer	4
3547	Darius the Mede.	27
P E R S I A N S.		
3574	Cyrus the Persian	3
3576	Cambyfes	7
	A Magus 7 Months	
3584	Darius Hyftaspis	21
3640	Artaxerxes Longima.	41
3681	Darius Notbus	19
3700	Artaxerxes Mnemon	43
3743	Ochus	23
3766	Arfes	2
3768	Darius Codomanus	7
3774	Conquered by Alexander the Great	
G R E E K S.		
3781	Ptolemæus Lagi. F.	39
3820	Ptolemæus Philadel.	38
3858	Ptolemæus Eurgetes	24
3882	Ptolemæus Philopat.	19
3901	Ptolemæus Epiphanes	23
3924	Ptolemæus Philometor	30
Asmonæan Princes.		
3954	Jonathan, B. of Jud.	9
3963	Simon, Brother of Jon.	8
3971	John Hircanus	30
4001	Aristobulus	1
4002	Alexander Jannæus	26
4028	Alexandra his Widow	9
4037	Aristobulus, Son of Alex.	6
4043	Hircanus cum Antipatro.	23
4066	Herod the Great	37
4103	Christ Born	1
Anni Christi.		
4103	Archelaus	10
4113	Coponius President	13
4117	Antonius Rufus	15
4118	Augustus Dies	16
	Tiberius fucceeds (2--)	
4131	Pilatus President	29
4135	Christ Crucified	33
4138	Caius Caligula (4)	38
4143	Claudius (14)	41
4156	Claudius Nero (13)	54
	Galba, Otho, and Vitellius Two Years	
4171	Vespasian	68
4172	Jerusalem Destroyed	69
4173	Capella faith	70

And here it is to be observed, that when *Salmanaffar* had subdued and captivated the Ten Tribes of *Israel*, he sent new Colonies of his own to plant this Country; that so fruitful and well-situate a part of his Empire might yield its Just Tribute, and not lie open to the Fury of the next Invader. But the *Romans* not having (it seemeth) so much Policy or Providence as those whom they counted barbarous; having laid the Country desolate, left it unfurnished of new Colonies; whereby the *Persians*, next the *Saracens*, and after them the *Turks*, entering the *Roman* Empire at this door, have successively driven the *Romans* out of the whole House. Now that

we may the better perceive how the *Romans* had weakened, and almost utterly rooted out the *Jewish* Nation, we will relate some of their particular *Massacres*, which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the Enemy, than justly deserved by themselves; they wishing tho' (I suppose) not desiring, that the Innocent Blood of our Saviour should be on them and their Children. First then the Inhabitants of *Cæsaria* slew of the *Jews* in one day, about 20000, and such as fled were took and imprisoned by *Florus* the *Roman* Lieutenant of *Judæa*. To Revenge this Slaughter, the *Jews* set upon the *Syrians*; in which skirmish 13000 of them were slain. The People of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the Sword; they of *Damascus*, 10000; *Antonius* a *Roman* Captain, slew in *Ascalon*, 10000 of them, and *Cestius* another Captain, 8040 persons. Now to come to the Wars here managed by *Vespasian*; This *Vespasian* in the Siege of *Aphaca*, slew and took Prisoner 17130 persons; in *Samarita* 11600 persons; In *Jotopata*, 42200 persons; In *Joppa*, so many killed and drowned themselves, that the Sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies; and the rest so totally perished, that there remained none to carry tidings to *Hierusalem* of the loss of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, were slain and made Captives, 45000 persons, besides those which were given to the King *Agrippa*. In *Gamala* there perished 90000, and none left alive but only two Women; In *Gascula*, 5000 Men died by the Sword; In the City of *Gadera* there were slain 32200, besides an infinite number which had drowned themselves. In *Hierusalem* it self, there died 1100000 of them, partly by the Sword, and partly by the Famine; the worse Enemy of the two; there were found 2000 in Privies and Sinks, and 9700 taken Prisoners; insomuch that 30 *Jews* were sold for a penny. So punctually was the Divine Justice in retaliating to this wretched people, according to the measure of their Iniquities that they who bought their Saviour for 30 pence, should be sold at thirty for a penny in the open Market.

Now that *Jerusalem* was able to contain such a number of People, is evident, in that when *Cestius* was Lieutenant of *Jewry*, the High-Priest did at his request number the People which came thither to eat the *Paschal Lamb*; and found them to be two millions and seven hundred thousand living Souls, all sound and purified: For to Lepers, or Men having a flux of Seed, or Women in their Monthly Terms, or to Strangers, it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid Siege to the City, it was in the Feast of the *Paschever*, when most of the People were there assembled; God (as it were) having thus Imprisoned them. All these *Massacres*, besides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite numbers which were slain in the fields and Villages, which drown'd themselves, and which were privily made away, amounting all to almost 2000000 of people hapned in the compass of four years; beginning at the 12th. of *Nero*, and ending at the 2d. of *Vespasian*; yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, till the year 136. For then this miserable people having stirred two notable Rebellions; the one under *Trajan*, and the last under *Adrian* the Emperor, were generally banished their Native Country, and never again permitted to Inhabit it, otherwise than as strangers. After this dissolution the *Jews* were dispersed all over the World, and especially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell; yet they found every where so little favour, that having divers times been put to grievous Mulcts and Ransoms, they were at last thrust out of most of the Kingdoms of *Europe* also. They were Banish'd out of *England* by *Edward I.* Anno 1290. Out of *France* by *Philip the Fair*, 1307. Out of *Spain* by *Ferdinand the Catholique*. 1492. Out of *Portugal* by *Emmanuel*, 1497. Out of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by *Charles the Fifth*, 1539. Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romish* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*; in most Cities of *Italy*, especially *Rome* it self, where are no less than 15000 or 20000 of them; and also in the Pope's

Pope's Country of *Avignon*. The reason why they are permitted to live thus under the Pope's Nose, is pretended to be an expectation of their Conversion, which is a meer pretence indeed; the true reason being the benefit hence arising to his Holiness's Coffers; the hopes of their Conversion being very small, and the means less. For besides the scandal, *Datum & acceptum*, by the *Papists* fond worshipping of Images, so peremptorily contrary to the first Table of the Law: They are not permitted to see any Book of Christian Religion, no not so much as the New Testament. And (which worketh much upon Men of their metal) because at their Conversion they must quit all their Goods unto the Church, as being ill-gotten, and by consequence the works of the Devil, which in their Baptism they promise to renounce. They have also a Synagogue at *Amsterdam*, and are pretty thick spread over the Dominions of the *Turks*: who, notwithstanding so hate them for crucifying of *CHRIST*, that they used to say in the detestation of a thing, *I would I might dye a Jew*. Neither will they permit a *Jew* to turn *Turk*, unless he be first baptized. And though their multitudes be so great both in *Thessalonica* and *Constantinople*, that it is conceiv'd they do amount to the number of 160000 persons; yet they are not only contemned but hated: But there, and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous assembly of the Common People, and constantly every *Easter*, wheresoever they be, in danger of death. Inasmuch that if a *Jew* do but stir out of doors betwixt *Maundy-Thurs'day* at Noon, and *Easter-Eve* at Night, the *Christians* of the East, amongst whom they dwell (though far fewer in number) will be sure to stone them; because at that time, they buffeted, derided, and in fine, crucified their Saviour. Hated in all the parts of the *Turks* Dominions, because employed as *Publicans* in gathering and enhancing the publick Tributes which they exact with all severity that may be, and improve unto the most. And no less hated in all parts of the *Christian* World, as Enemies to the Cross of *CHRIST*: so unreclaimably addicted to their ancient *Judaism*, and so abhorring from the conversation of other Men; that it is not possible they should reap any other harvest, than contempt and scorn from those amongst whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief; They are a People which know how to comply with the times, and the condition which they live in; especially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like Dogs, and used like Slaves, yet never shew so much as an angry Countenance. A Nation which will thrive wheresoever they come, but most by *Usury* and *Brokage*; not lending any thing but on pawns, and those once forfeited, never more redeemable. The best of both Sexes said to have an unfavoury rankness, not incident (if not caused by flutishness) to other People: From whom as different in their habits, as in their Religion. And as for that, they retain still *Circumcision*, as the badge and cognizance of their Nation; but mingled with many Ceremonies not prescribed by the Law, nor observed by the Ancients: Placing a void Chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be present, though unseen at the Solemnity. And upon this they are so besotted, that they conceive the Female Sex incapable of eternal life, because not capable of *Circumcision*; and therefore use to name them with no other Ceremony, than at six weeks end to have some young Wenches lift up the Cradle with the Child in it; which she that standeth at the Head, giveth the name unto. Of their *Sabbath* so extremely doting, that they have added to the *Superstitions* left them by the *Pharisees*: And herein they are so precise, that if a *Jew* travel on the *Friday*, and in the Evening fall so short of his Journeys end, that it amounts to more than to 2000 Cubits, or six Furlongs, which they account a *Sabbath-days* Journey, there must he sit him down and keep his *Sabbath*, though in a Wood, or Field, or the High-way side, without fear of Wind or

Weather, of Thieves or Robbers, and without taking order for Meat or Drink: *Periculo latronum prædonumque omni, penuria item omni cibi potusque neglectis*, as *Exactorius* hath it. And so far have they gone in despite of *Christ*, as to declare it unlawful to lift the Ox or Ass out of a Ditch; permitted in the strictest times of *Pharisaical* rigor. So pertinacious in retaining the difference of meats and drinks, that they will by no means sit at the Table with other Men, and so precise in the dressing of it, that they will eat of no flesh but of their own killing only; and that too with such cautions and reservations, that if any of the entrails be corrupt or dislocated, they will sell the whole Beast to the *Christians* for a very trifle. Beneficial in that only to the neighbouring *Christians*. Wine they forbear except it be of their own planting, not so much out of dislike of that Liquor, for they are generally good Fellows, and love their bellies, as for fear the Wine should be baptized: a Ceremony much used in the Eastern Parts. Of the coming of their *Messiah* so full of hopes, that there is no great Warriour stirring, but they look upon him as the Man; till some sad Tragedy or other, which they suffer under that persuasion, makes them see their Error: promising to themselves whensoever he cometh, a Restitution of their Kingdom: and such felicities therein, in the literal Sence of some Texts of Scripture, which carry in them a more mystical and sacred meaning. That in good time (but God's, not theirs) they shall be made partakers of the several blessings which those Texts do speak of, is both the hope and wish of all pious Men; who cannot chuse but grieve to behold the natural branches, so long dismembered and cut off from the tree of life. And this they neither hope nor wish for but on some fair grounds, presented to them by *St. Paul*: who said expressly, that when the fulness of the Gentiles is once come in, that then all Israel shall be saved, *Rom. 11. 25, 26*. The words are so plainly positive that they need no Commentary. Or if they did, we have the general consent of the Ancients, besides the constant current of most modern Writers; who cherish the glad hopes of their Conversion to the Gospel, which the Apostle doth there aim at. *Origen*, *Athanasius*, *Hierom*, *Augustine*, *Chrysostome*, for the Primitive Times; *Beda* and *Hugo Cardinalis*, in the times succeeding; *Gorran*, and *Thomas Aquinas*, for those of *Rome*; *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Bullinger*, and *Peter Martyr* for the Reformed Churches; besides divers others of great note, so expound that Text. Nor want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much, which he that doth desire to see, may find with the Expositions of most *Christian* Writers in a Book writ by Doctor *Willet*, Entituled, *De generali & novissima Judæorum vocatione*; and thither I refer the more curious Reader. Out of all I shall take these words of *Peter Martyr*, written on that passage of *St. Paul* to the *Romans*, viz. *Non ita Judæi perierunt ut nulla de illorum salute spes super sit*; The *Jews* (saith he) are not so wholly fallen from the favour of God, but that there still remains some hopes of their Salvation. Of their Salvation then by the Gospel of *Christ*, when the fulness of the Gentiles is once come in, we conceive good hopes: but whether there be any of their Restitution to their temporal Kingdom, is a farther Question; and not so clearly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be somewhat in that Book which may seem to intimate it. That the opinion of being restored by the *Messiah*, to that Temporal Power which was taken from them by the *Romans*, was prevalent as well amongst *Christ's Disciples*, as the rest of the *Jews*, is, I take it, clear enough in the holy Gospel. In such a Kingdom, and no other, did the two Sons of *Zebedee* desire to sit on both hands of their Master; and the same was it, and no other, which all of them expected, as appeared by the words of *Cleopas*, *Luke 24. 21*. that *Christ* should have restored unto them. *We thought*, said he, that this would have proved the Man, that should have redeemed Israel. Redeemed Israel? From what? from Sin and Satan, or the Curse and Bon-

Bondage of the Law? not so, ἂν' ὅτι τὸ ζύγος τῆς δουλείας, but from the Yoke of Vassallage, which the Romans had so lately imposed on them, say the Fathers rightly. Touching the same it was that they moved him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the Kingdom of Israel? Acts 1. 6. In answer whereunto, our Saviour makes them no denial, as unto the thing, nor tells them that they never must expect such a Restoration; but only puts them off as unto the time, and bids them rest themselves on the pleasure of God the Father, in whose Hands the disposing of all Kingdoms was: It is not for you, (saith he) to know the times and seasons, which the Father hath in his own power, ver. 7. By which answer (as it seems to me) there is a possibility of restoring them to their Kingdom also; though not in the τὸ νῦν, at that very instant when they were most desirous to have it done, or at any other time fit for them to know; that being a Secret, which the Father hath reserved to himself alone.

But leaving these Speculations of a Restitution of the Throne of Israel, and the great Power and Privileges it may then enjoy, let us look back on the Estate in which it flourished in the former times, when the Forces and Revenue of it were at the highest. And first for the Revenues, they amounted in the time of Solomon (as is said, 2 Chron. 9. 13.) to 600 Talents of Gold, besides the Benefits of his Customs and Impositions, which cometh to 2997000 Pounds of yearly income. A vast Sum for such a little Kingdom. Nor can we reckon them at less, if they were not greater in the time of David; of whom it is affirmed, 1 Chron. 22. 14. That he left to Solomon 100000 Talents of Gold, and 1000000 Talents of Silver towards the building of the Temple, besides 3000 Talents of Gold, and 7000 Talents of Silver, formerly deposited for that purpose, as is said 1 Chron. 29. 4. Which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a Jew's Talent, reckoning a Talent of Gold at 4500 Pound, and a Talent of Silver at 375 Pound, will amount in our Money to 840125000 Pounds. So vast a Sum, that it had been sufficient to have built a Temple of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the Temple of Solomon, without other Materials. I conceive therefore with our learned and industrious Brexewood, that by the Talent in those places we are to understand a far lesser Sum than the ordinary Hebrew Talents: which whether it doth there signifie a Sicle only, which is half a Crown of English Money, as Eusebius, cited by Eusebius, was of opinion; or that every Talent of Gold came to three Golden Crowns of Athens, which maketh forty five Shillings of English Money, as Julius Pollux hath it in his Onomasticon, I am not able to determine: But measuring it by the last estimate, which I more approve of, it will amount to two Millions and two hundred ninety and five thousand Pounds: a vast Sum for a King to leave in ready Money, which was always exercised in War. And though I do not find expressly what the Revenues of Judah might amount unto, after the division: yet by one circumstance I find them to be very great. For it is written 2 Kings 18. 14. that the yearly Tribute imposed upon Hezekiah, by the King of Assyria, was three hundred Talents of Silver, and thirty Talents of Gold: amounting (according to the ordinary Hebrew Talent, which questionless is there intended) to two hundred forty seven thousand and five hundred Pounds of English Money: and therefore probably his ordinary Revenue must be thrice as much, above that Tribute; else the Assyrian had not left him a subsistence for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the Revenues of this Crown were less to Herod, than formerly to Solomon, or David; considering his vast Expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, the immeasurable donatives bestowed upon Augustus, Livia, and the Court of Rome, together with the large Legacies he gave at the time of his death: not parallel'd by any King before or since, though of a more large and more ample Territory than he stood possessed of.

What Forces the Kings of the Hebrews were able to bring into the Field, may be best estimated by the Muster which David made, when he numbered the People; the enrolment of such as were able to bear Arms, and fit for Service, coming in all to five hundred thousand fighting Men, in Judah only, and eight hundred thousand Men in the Tribes of Israel. Tis true that David never brought into the Field so vast a Multitude; but when the Kingdoms were divided, and War denounced betwixt Jeroboam and Abijah, we find almost the whole number brought into the Field: that is to say, 800 thousand on the side of Jeroboam the King of Israel, and four hundred thousand by Abijah, the King of Judah. After this, out of that small Kingdom, Asa the Son of Abijah, being invaded by Zerah the Arabian or Ethiopian, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thousand Men, which was more than the enrolment made in the time of David. An infinite proportion for so small a Kingdom; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above Belief; had not that God who said to Abraham, that his Seed should be as the Stars of Heaven for multitude, been able to have made it good.

As for the Story and Affairs of this Country since the time of Adrian, the Jews being all expelled their native Soyl, and Christianity in fine prevailing over all those Parts, it was inhabited as the rest of the Empire was, by Men of that Religion only, in this Country so advanced and countenanced, that Helena the Mother of Constantine, is reported to have built in it no less than two hundred Temples and Monasteries, in places of most note for the Miracles of Christ our Saviour, or the dwelling of some of his Disciples. In the Year 615. the Persians, under the Conduct of Chosroes their King, became Masters of it; and possessed themselves of Hierusalem also: expelled thence by the valour and good Fortune of the Emperour Heraclius, who recovering the Cross on which Christ suffered, out of the Hands of the Pagans, carried it with as great a Triumph into Constantinople, as David once did the Ark into Hierusalem; occasioning thereby the annual Festival on the fourth of September, called Holy-Cross Day, or Exaltatio Sanctæ Crucis. But this Glory and Rejoycing did not long continue: For within twenty Years after the recovery of this City from the Power of the Persians, it was again conquered and subdued by Omar, or Aumar, Caliph of the Saracens, Anno 637. Under this Yoke the captivated Christians had long suffered, when they changed the Tyrant, but not the Tyranny, the Turks about the Year 1079. overcoming the Saracens, and domineering in their stead. Twenty Years did the Christians languish under this Oppression, when one Peter an Hermite, travelling for Devotion to the Holy Land, and being an Eye-witness of the Miseries under which they groaned; at his return, made his Addresses to Pope Urban the second, acquainting him with the sad conditions of the poor Christians in those Countries. A Council thereupon is called at Clermont in France, where the Pope (willing to imploy the Christian Princes farther off, that he might the better play his game at home,) did so effectually advance and endear the business, that no fewer than three hundred thousand fighting Men, under several Leaders, undertook the Service. And it prospered so well with them in the first beginning, that having beaten the Turks out of Asia Minor, taken the great City of Antioch, and most of the strong Towns of Syria, they incamped before Hierusalem, and in short time took it, Anno 1099. after it had been four hundred Years and upwards in the Power of the Infidels. The City being thus gained, was offered with the Title of King, to Robert Duke of Normandy, Son of William the Conquerour: but he upon hopes of the Kingdom of England, refused that honour; never prospering, as it was observed, after that refusal. Godfrey of Bouillon, Duke of Lorrain, had the next offer of it which with a Religious Joy he accepted of; though on the Day of his inauguration he refused the Crown: at-

affirming that it was not fit for a *Christian* Prince to wear in that City a *Crown of Gold*, where the Redeemer of the World wore a *Crown of Thorns*.

The Kings of *Hierusalem*.

- 1099 1 *Godfrey of Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrain*.
 - 1100 2 *Baldwin of Lorrain*, Brother of *Godfrey*, won *Ptolemais*, and many other Cities of *Syria*.
 - 1118 3 *Baldwin II.* surnamed of *Bruges*, Cousin of *Godfrey*, and *Baldwin*, the former Kings, overcame the Sultan of *Damascus*; and enlarged his Kingdom by the addition of *Tyre*.
 - 1131 4 *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having married *Milliscent* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the second succeeded after his Decease; unfortunately killed with a fall from his Horse.
 - 1142 5 *Baldwin III.* Son of *Fulk* and *Milliscent*, fortified *Gaza* against the Caliph of *Egypt*; and recovered *Paneade* from the King of *Damascus*.
 - 1164 6 *Almericus*, the Brother of *Baldwin* the third, so distressed the great Caliph of *Egypt*, that he was forced to call in the *Turks* to aid him; by whom slain, and his Kingdom transferred on *Saracon* the *Turkish* General.
 - 1174 7 *Baldwin IV.* Son of *Almericus*, overthrew *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turks* in a Fight near *Ascalon*, and valiantly defended his Dominions.
 - 1185 8 *Baldwin V.* Son of *Sybil* the Sister of *Baldwin* the fourth by *William* Marquis of *Montferrat*; unnaturally poisoned by his own Mother, having reigned only five Months, to make way for her second Husband, called
 - 1185 9 *Guy of Lusignan*, the last King of *Hierusalem*, that had the possession of the City: During whose time *Saladine* the Sultan of *Egypt* won that Kingdom, Anno 1187. which his Successors defended against all invasions, till the year 1517. in which *Selimus* the first, Emperor of the *Turks*, added the *Holy Land*, together with *Egypt*, to his Empire. When *Hierusalem* was taken by the *Christians*, it is said that the German Emperor's name was *Fredericus*; the Pope's *Urbanus*; the *Hierosolymitan* Patriarch, *Heraclius*; and that so also were they called, when the *Christians* again lost it. This is the conceit of *Roger Hoveden*, in the Life of *Henry* the Second; but how it can agree with Chronology, I do not see.
- After the taking of *Hierusalem* by Sultan *Saladine*, the *Christians* retired their Forces into some of the other Towns of the *Holy Land*; which they made good against the Enemy, and defended them under the Government of these Three Kings following, viz.
- 10 *Conrade* Marquis of *Montferrat*, Husband of *Isabel* the Daughter of *Almericus*, King of *Hierusalem*.
 - 11 *Henry* Earl of *Compagne*, second Husband of *Isabel*.
 - 12 *John di Brenne*, Husband of *Mary*, or *Yoland*, as some call her, Daughter of *Conrade* and *Isabel*, the last *Christian* King that ever had possession in *Syria* or *Palestine*: Inhabited ever since by *Moors* and *Arabians*; few *Christians*, and not many *Turks* but such as be in Garisons only. *Yoland* the Daughter of this *John di Brenne*, was Wife to *Frederick* King of *Naples*, who in her Right intitled himself King of *Hierusalem*: And so now do the Kings of *Spain*, as Heirs unto, and Possessors of the Kingdom of *Naples*. Concerning which Title, it would not be amiss to insert this Story. When the Wars in *Q. Elizabeth's* time were hot between *England* and *Spain*, there were Commissioners of both sides appointed to Treat of Peace. They met at a Town

of the *French* King's; and first it was debated in what Tongue the Negotiations should be handled. A *Spaniard* thinking to give the *English* Commissioners a shrewd gird, proposed the *French* Tongue as most fit; it being a Language which the *Spaniards* were all skilled in: And for these Gentlemen of *England*, I suppose (saith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the Language of their fellow-Subjects; their Queen is Queen of *France*, as well as of *England*. Nay in faith my Masters, replied Doctor *Dale* (a Civil Lawyer, and one of the Masters of Requests) the *French* Tongue is too vulgar for a business of this secrecy and importance, especially in a *French* Town: We will therefore rather treat in *Hebrew*, the Language of *Hierusalem*, whereof your Master is King; and I suppose you are therein as well skilled, as we in the *French*. And thus much for this Title.

The Arms of the *Christian* Kings in *Hierusalem* was *Luna*, a Cross Croset crossed, *Sol*; which was commonly called the *Hierusalem Cross*. But for their Forces and Revenues, I cannot see how any estimate may be made hereof, in regard they subsisted not by their own proper strength, but by the Purse and the Forces of the *Western* *Christians*, more or less active in that Service, as zeal, or emulation, or desire of glory, were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, after the Recovery thereof from the power of the *Turks*, were,

1. Of the *Sepulchre*, said to be instituted originally by Queen *Helena*. The Mother of *Constantine* the Great, by whom the Temple of the *Sepulchre* was indeed first built: But more truly, by *Philip* King of *France*, Anno 1099. at such time as that Temple was regained from the *Turks*. Their Arms the same with that of the Kings before blazoned, representing the five Wounds of our Saviour *CHRIST*. At the first conferred on none but Gentlemen of Blood and Fortune; now saleable to any that will buy it of the *Pater-Guardian*, who with a *Convent* of *Franciscans* doth reside near that Temple.

2. Of *St. John* of *Hierusalem*, begun by one *Gerrard*, Anno 1114. and confirmed by Pope *Paschalis* the second. Their Badge or Cognizance is a white Cross of eight points. Their duty, to defend the *Holy-Land*, relieve Pilgrims, and succour *Christian* Princes against the Infidels. They were to be of noble Parentage and Extraction; and grew in time to such infinite Riches, especially after the suppression of the *Templars* (most of whose Lands were after given unto this Order) that they had at one time in the several parts of *Christendom*, no fewer than 20000 Mannors; and of such Reputation in all *Christian* Kingdoms, that in *England* the Lord Prior of this Order, was accounted the Prince Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue is not a little diminished, by the withdrawing of the Kings of *England*, and other Protestant Princes, from the Church of *Rome*, who on that change seized on all the Lands of this Order in their several Countries; and either kept them to themselves, or disposed them to others as they pleased. Of these we shall speak more when we are in *Malta*, where they now reside: advertising only at the present, that their first Great Master, was that *Gerrard* by whom they were founded; the last that had his residence in the *Holy-Land*, one *John de Villiers*, in whose time being driven out of *Palestine*, they removed unto *Cyprus*, and in the time of *Fulk de Villaret*, Anno 1309. to the Isle of *Rhodes*; Out of which expelled by *Solyman* the Magnificent, Anno 1522. they removed from one place to another, till at last by the magnificence of *Charles* the Fifth, Anno 1530. they were settled in *Malta*: And there we shall speak further of them.

3. Of the *Templars*, instituted by *Hugh* of *Payennes*, Anno 1113. and confirmed by Pope *Eugenius*. Their Ensign was a Red Cross, in token that they should shed their blood to defend *Christ's* Temple. They were buried cross legged, and wore on their backs the Figure of the

the Cross, for which they were by the common people called Cross-backs, or Crouch backs, and by corruption Crook-backs. *Edmund* Earl of *Lancaster*, second Son to our *Henry* the Third, being of this Order, was vulgarly called *Edmund Crook-back*; which gave *Henry* the Fourth a foolish occasion to feign, that this *Edmund* (from whom he was descended) was indeed the Eldest Son of King *Henry* the Third; but for his crookedness and deformity, his younger Brother was preferred to the Crown before him. These Knights had in all Provinces of *Europe* their subordinate Governors, in which they possessed no less than 16000 Lordships: The greatness of which Revenue was not the least Cause of dissolving the Order. For *Philip* the Fair, King of *France*, had a plot to invest one of his Sons with the title of *King of Jerusalem*, and hoped to procure of the *Pope* the Revenue of this Order, to be laid unto that Kingdom, for support of the Title; which he thought he might the better do, because *Clement* the Fifth then *Pope*, for the love he bare to *France*, had

transferred his Seat from *Rome* to *Avignon*. But herein his hopes deceived him; for this Order being dissolved, the Lands thereto belonging were given to the Knights *Hospitallers*, or of *St. John*. The Causes objected against this Order were, First, Their Revolt from their professed Obedience unto the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, who was their Vitor; Secondly, Their unspeakable Pride; And Thirdly, Their sins against Nature. The House of our Law-Students in *London*, called the *Temple*, was the chief House of the Knights of this Order in *England*; and was by the Knights of *St. John*, whose principal Mansion was in *Smithfield*, sold unto the Students of the Law, for the yearly Rent of 10*l.* about the middle of the Reign of *Edward* the Third.

These Three Orders *Mr. Selden* (and deservedly) putterh not in his *Titles of Honour*, in that they were prohibited to kiss a Woman; honorary Knighthood, and the Love of Ladies, going together like Virtue and Reward. Thus much for *Palestine*.

O F ARABIA.

ARABIA hath on the East *Chaldæa*, and the Bay or Gulf of *Persia*; on the West, *Palestine*, some part of *Egypt*, and the whole course of the *Red-Sea*; on the North the River *Euphrates*, with some parts of *Syria* and *Palestine*; and on the South the main Southern Ocean. But at some times the name extended somewhat farther. *Pliny* enlargeth it as far as *Comagena*, the North part of *Syria*; in regard that many *Arabian* Colonies had been there planted by *Tygranes*: And *Xenophon* comprehended in it the greatest part also of *Mesopotamia*; because situate on the West of the River *Tigris*, and consequently the Western part of the *Assyrian* Empire, as the word *Erub* doth import, from whence some derive the *Etymon*, and name hereof. Which notwithstanding, in the general esteem of Authors, it is bounded only as before.

As for the Name, there be some that derive it from *Arabus*, a supposed Son of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*; others from three supposititious Sons of *Janus Pater*, one of the pretended Grand-sons of *Cham*, who is fabled to have sent his Son *Arabus* into *Arabia Deserta*; *Petrius*, into *Arabia Petraea*; and *Sabus*, into *Arabia Felix*, the dwelling place of the *Sabaæans*. And for this trim conceit we are beholden to the *Berosus* of *Friar Anninus*. More probable is their conjecture who derive the name from the *Hebrew*, *Arab*, signifying *Black*; by reason of the swarth or tawny complexion of the Inhabitants who are *inter nigrum & fulvum*, as *Vertomannus* an eye-witness hath informed us of them; on the same reason as one of the Provinces of *Africa*, is commonly entituled the *Land of Negroes*. But the most likely origination of it, as I conceive, is from *Harabi*, which signifieth in the *Hebrew*, a Thief or Robber, such as the *Arabians* in all Ages have been known to be. According unto that of the Prophet *Jeremy*: *In the ways thou hast sate for them, as an Arabian in the Wilderness*, as our *English* reads it: *Tanquam Latro insidians in solitudine*, saith the *Vulgar Latin*, *Jer. 32*. *St. Hierom*, though he render it *quasi Latro*, as the *Vulgar* doth, yet in his Commentary he informs us, That the word doth also signify an *Arabian*, *que gens latrociniis dedita, etque lohe incurfat Palestinae, fines, &c.* which being addicted to Theft and Robbery, do to this day (saith he) infest the Coasts of *Palestine* which border near them, and lay in wait for those which had any occasion to travel thither. Agreeable hereunto is the Observation of *Martin del Rio*; *Adeo latrocinium infames sunt, ut Hebraei Arabi latronem, denotat, sicut Chananæus Mercatorem, Chaldæus Mathematicum; i. e.* So

infamous were they for their Theft and frequent Robberies, that it was familiar with the *Jews* to call a Thief by the name *Arabian*, as by *Chanaanite* to signify a Merchant, or to use the word *Chaldæan* for a *Mathematician*. In the same sense they came in the succeeding times to be called *Saracens*, from *Sarak*, or *Saraka*, an *Arabian* word, which signifieth to steal; whereof more anon: No otherwise than one of the *American* Islands had the name of *Ladrones*, or *Insula Latronum*, given by *Magellanus*, from the thievishness of the Inhabitants, who had stolen his Cock-boat.

I have staid the longer on the Name, because it doth express so much of the Character of the People also; living for the most part upon Spoil and Robbery, as all that travel that way know by sad experience. Of mean stature, raw-boned, tawny or swarth-complexioned having feminine voices; of swift but noiseless gait, and upon you ere you are aware. Of no set-dwellings (except only in *Arabia Felix*) living in Tents, which they remove like walking Cities, for the benefit of Pasturage, and hope of Booty: for this last cause hanging about the skirts of more habitable Countries, and having robbed, retire with a marvellous speed; Mounted on *Dromedaries* for that purpose, a Beast of most incredible swiftness, satisfied with little Food, though without Water to it, and will easily carry a Man an hundred Miles a day, without any refreshing. Nor are such Horses as they have, though but poor and lean, of less speed, or less patient of travel; whom they feed twice a day with the Milk of Camels, and think them not worth keeping, if not able to out-go an *Ostrich*. As now, so formerly, all Horsemen, and but ill appointed; fitter to rob and spoil than to deal with Soldiers; as riding stark naked, and trusting rather to the swiftness of their Horses, than any other resistance, where they were opposed.

Their Language is the *Arabick*, so called from this Country, but not proper to this Country only; Spoken in all places where *Mahometanism* hath got any footing: The *Alcoran* being written in it, the publick Offices of their Religion performed in it, and the Tongue taught in Schools as generally, as with us the *Latin*: But made the natural Language in *Aleopetania*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, the three *Arabias* & *Egypt*, and all *Barbary*, except the Kingdom of *Morocco*. A great extent, but short of that which some give to it, who will have it spoken in two parts of the whole habitable World.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by *S. Paul*, of whose being in *Arabia*, after his Conversion he telleth us, *Gal. 1. 17.* to which the coming in of the *Sara-*

cent, gave a great increase, in the time of *Mavia* their Queen, during the Empire of *Valentinian I.* *Moses*, a Man of exemplary Piety, and famed for many Miracles, being created their first Bishop; after more generally propagated over all the Country, by the King *Alamandarus*, *Anastasia* then Reigning in the East. But long it had not been received, when supplanted by *Mahometanism*, which had its first beginning here; and hath so universally overspread the whole face hereof, that now there are no Christians left in all the Country, except only in *Elter*, a Port Town in the Bay of *Arabia Felix*, in *Arabia Petraea*, the chief City of *Arabia Petraea*, and in two small Monasteries about Mount *Sinai*.

It is in circuit about 4000 miles, but of so unequal and heterogeneous composition, that no general character can be given of it: and therefore we must look upon it as it stands divided into, 1 *Arabia Deserta*. 2 *Arabia Petraea*. 3 *Arabia Felix*. And 4 the *Arabick Islands*.

I. A R A B I A D E S E R T A.

AR A B I A D E S E R T A (called *Beriara* by the *Turks*) is bounded on the East with *Babylonia*; on the West with parts of *Palestine* and *Arabia Petraea*; on the North, with *Palmyrene* and *Mesopotamia*, from which last it is parted by *Euphrates*; and on the South, by some parts of *Petraea*, and *Arabia Felix*.

It hath the name of *Deserta*, from the vast Deserts which are in it, and the desolation thereof; call'd also by *Ausitis*, *Afpera*, from the roughness; by *Serenus inferior*, or the lower, in regard of the situation of it more towards the River; by *Luctan*, from the frequent Bottoms and Vallies in it, *Arabia Cana*; and finally by the *Jews* it was called *Kedar*, from the blackness or swarthiness of the People, the word in *Hebrew* signifying as much as Sun-burnt; whence the People are by some Writers called *Kedereni*, and by *Pliny*, *Cedraei*.

But the common and most usual name of it, is *Arabia Deserta*, agreeable to the nature of it, being generally a sandy Country, full of vast Deserts; in which all such as Travel, use to carry their provisions with them, and to guide themselves in their Journey by the course of the Stars, tho' in some parts which lie near *Euphrates*, and the Mountains of *Arabia Felix*, it hath some few Towns, and those resorted to by Merchants. But this is only in those parts; the residue of the Country being so desolate and waste, that one who had travelled in it, doth describe it to be so wild a place, *Ut nec homines nec bestiae videantur, nec arves; imo, nec arbores, nec gramen aliquod, sed non nisi montes saxosi, attissimi, asperissimi*: A Country, saith *Gulandinus Melchior*, where are found neither Men, nor Beasts, no not so much as Birds or Trees, nor Grass; nor Pasture, but only Stony, High, and most craggy Mountains.

The People for the most part used to dwell in Tents, alluded to by *David*, *Psal.* 120. v. 5. which they removed from place to place, as the Pasture for their Cattel failed them, taking no other care for houses, than the boughs of Palm-trees, to keep them from the heat of the Sun, and other extremities of Weather. Hence by the Ancients called *Scanitia*, or Men dwelling in Tents; in which respect the *Jews* call the *Tartarians Kedarim*, from the like course of life which these *Kedareni* or *Arabians* lived: but the name reaching into the other parts of *Arabia* also, where they use the same kind of living: Of whom more anon.

Yet notwithstanding most memorable is this Country in Sacred Story, both for the dwelling-place of *Job* and the habitation of those Wise-men, who came out of the East unto *Jerusalem*, to Worship *Christ*, the new-born King of the *Jews*. That *Job* was an Inhabitant here, appeareth by the situation of his dwelling, being in the East, as is said in the story of him, *cha.* 1. v. 3. that is to say, the Country lying East to the Land of *Canaan*, as this part of it doth; and therefore called simply by the name of the East, as *Judg.* 6. 3. where by the *Chil-*

dren of the East, are meant expressly the Inhabitants of *Arabia the Desert*, who together with the *Midianites* and *Amalekites* oppressed those of *Israel*. 2. By the ill neighbourhood which he found from the *Sabaeans*, who inhabited in this part also; and of the *Chaldeans*, mentioned *ver.* the next Borderers to it: and 3. By the inconsequences which needs must follow, if we place him, as some do, in the Land of *Us* near unto *Damascus*. For how improbable must it be for the *Sabaeans*, of the *Red Sea*, or the *Persian Gulf*, or the *Chaldeans* dwelling on the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, to fall upon *Job's* Cattel, grazing near *Damascus*, the Countries being disjoyn'd by such vast Deserts, and huge Mountains, that it is impossible for any Strangers to pass them, especially with any numbers of Cattel, in respect of those large Mountains, deep Sands, and the extreme want of Water in all that passage? And how impossible must we think it, that the Penman of the Story of *Job*, who certainly was guided in it by the Holy Ghost, should be so mistaken as to place *Job's* dwelling in the East, if the Land of *Us*, wherein he dwelt, bordered on *Damascus*, which lay not on the E. but on the N. of *Canaan*? A City called *Us*, or *Uz*, there was situate near *Damascus*, so called from *Us*, the Son of *Aram*, *Gen.* 10. 23. A Land of *Us* also among the *Edomites*, spoke of in the *Lamentations* of the Prophet *Jeremy*, *c.* 4. v. 21. so called from *Us*, one of the Posterity of *Esau*, mentioned, *Gen.* 36. 28. And finally a Land of *Us*, or *Uz*, so called from *Hus* the Son of *Nachor*, the Brother of *Abraham*, mentioned, *Gen.* 22. 21. which is that situate in this Tract, the Habitation and Possession of that Righteous Man: The Country hereabouts being called *Ausitis*, and the People *Ausitae*; tho' by mistaking in the Transcripts, we find them named, *Ausitas* or *Ausitae*; in the fifth of *Ptolemy*. The like I say also of the Wise men, or *Magi*, who came to *Jerusalem* from the East, That they dwelt in this Country, where the said *Ptolemy* placeth the City of *Saba*; according unto that fore signified by the Royal *Psalmist*, That the Kings of *Arabia* and *Saba* should bring their Gifts, *Psal.* 72. 10. Confirmed herein by the situation of the Country, lying East of *Canaan*; the Authority of those Fathers who lived nearest to the time of our Saviour's Birth, *Justin Martyr*, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*; and by the testimony of *Gulandinus Melchior* above-mentioned, affirming on the credible report of the People hereof, that they came neither out of *Mesopotamia*, or *Arabia Felix*, as many wise men do believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia the Desert*, which City (saith he) when my self was there, was, as I judge, called *Semiscasac*.

Cities of note in a Country so desert and uninhabited, we must look for few; yet some there are, inhabited by a more civil sort of People, whom they call by the name of *Moors*, giving that of *Arabian* to those only who live roving and robbing up and down. *Ptolemy* gives the name of forty Cities and Villages in it (*Civitates & vicus* saith the *Latin*) the memory of most of which is now utterly perished. Those of most observation, 1 *Saba* or *Saba*, the Habitation of the *Sabaeans* who pillaged *Job*; so called from *Sbeba*, the Grandson of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned, *Gen.* 25. 3. of whom, and of the rest of that Line, it is said, in *ver.* 6. of that chap. that *Abraham* gave them Gifts, and sent them away from *Isaac*, Eastward, unto the West Country, now called *Semiscasac*, as is thought by *Melchior*. 2 *Theman*, which possibly may be the Country of *Elphaz*, the *Themanite*, one of the Visitants of *Job*. As 3 *Shubab*, on the North hereof, was probably of *Bildad*, another of them, hence surnamed the *Shubite*. 4 *Thosacai*, by *Pliny* called *Aptisopolis*. 5 *Zagmar*, near the *Persian Gulf*, in the Country of the *Raubeni*, supposed to be descended from *Alsham*, the fourth Son of *Ismael*. 6 *Hunton*, the 37th. 7 *Oboth*, the 37th Mansion of the Children of *Ismael*. 8 *Rhepanna* another of those named by *Ptolemy*, in the Greek Copies called *Beganna*. Of any Town of Note now being, more than *Semiscasac* before named, I find nothing certain.

The

The first Inhabitants of this Country, of whom there is any certain Constat, were the Posterity of *Nachor*, the Son of *Nachor*, and the Sons of *Abraham* by *Keturah*; of whose being settled in these parts, we had before good Testimony from the Book of God: and intermix'd with them lived some of the Descendants of *Ismael* also. For if the *Adubeni*, whom *Ptolomy* calleth the *Agabeni*, fetch their Original from *Abdeel* the Third, and the *Raubeni* from *Mishmael* the fifth Son of *Ismael*, as some say they do, I see no reason but the whole Country might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar*, the second Son, as well as from the tawny complexions of the People of it. From them descended the Tribes or Nations spoken of by *Ptolomy*, that is to say, the *Orbomi*, *Chaurabeni*, *Zinve*, *Mosoni*, *Materna*, and *Agrati*, besides the *Adubeni*, and *Raubeni*, already specified. But being a di-jointed People, not under any settled form of Government, not possessed of any thing worth locking after, they were either held not worth the Conquering, in regard of their Penury; or else Unconquerable, in respect of their Country, impassable for great Armies, by reason of the rolling Sands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive, that lying so near to the *Chaldeans*, they followed the Fortunes of that Mighty Monarchy: Subjects unto it whilst it stood, and after Tributaries unto those who successively possessed themselves of the Supreme Power. Not looked at by the *Romans*, or regarded by them, who aimed at Wealth as well as Honour in their Expedition: nor otherwise Subject to the *Turk* at this present time, than as they make use of him and his Protection in their frequent Robberies: but counted of as a part of the *Turkish* Empire, because the more civil *Arabians* are indeed his Subjects.

2. A R A B I A P E T R Œ A.

AR A B I A P E T R Œ A (now called *Baraah* and *Baribalaba*) hath on the East *Arabia Deserta*, and part of *Sinus Persicus*, or the Bay of *Persia*; on the West the Isthmus which joyneth *Africa* to *Asia*, and part of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the North *Palastine*; and on the South a long Ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the Rockiness of the Soil hereof, or more properly from *Petra*, the chief City of it, called also by *Arabicus Sicaria*, but I know not why: by the *Hebrews*, *Chus*, generally Translated *Ethiopia*; by *William of Tyre*, *Arabia secunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the first. By *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pliny*, it is called *Nabathæa*, which Name it had from *Nabithoth*, the Eldest of the Twelve Sons of *Ismael*; though properly that name belongeth only to those parts of it which lay next *Judæa*: Fruitful, though joyning to the Deserts: and thus remembered by the Poet, as an Eastern Country.

Eurus ad Auroram, Nabathæaque regna recessit.

Eurus unto the East did fly,

Where fruitful Nabathæ doth lie.

The Country much of the same Nature with the other, but in some parts thereof more fertile, if well manured: and in the time of *Marc' Antonius*, affirmed to be a rich Land, flourishing with variety of Trade and Traffick. But for the most part full of untravellable Deserts, except to those which carry their Provisions with them for fear of Starving, and go in great Companies, or *Caravans* for fear of Robbing: and yet much Travelled by Merchants who Traffick into *Aegypt* and *Babylonia*; the Commodities whereof they lay on Camels, which are the Ships of *Arabia*, as their Seas the Deserts. For upon one of the Camels, they will lay ordinarily 600 and sometimes 1000 pound weight: yet not afford him Water above once in four days, not oftner in fourteen, if there be occasion. So that the Camel carrying so great a burden, and seldom fewer than 500 going in one Voyage, the Merchant, if he escapeth Robbing, makes a rich return. Of these Deserts the most memo-

table are those of *Sin* and *Liban*, in which the *Arabians* so long wandered, nor the first of *Liban*, nor adorned with Trees, the Palm only excepted; nor is watered with Water, but by Rain or Manna.

The People of it for the most part descended of the Sons of *Chus* and *Ismael*, intermix'd with the *Arabians*, descending from *Abraham* by *Keturah*, and the *Amalekites*, descended probably from *Abraham*, the Grandson of *Ismael*, mentioned *Gen. 25. 16*. but all united at last in the name of *Arabians*. This name derived, as some think, from *Sarra*, signifying a Desert, and *Saracen*, which signifieth to Inhabit, because they live for the most part in these Desert places: and others say, from *Sarak*, signifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia*, before delivered. This last most suitable to their nature, and best liked by *Strabo*. *Saraceni a vicinis dicuntur ab Elharak, i.e. a vicinis, quod rapinis vacillant.* So he, in his second Book de *Emend. Tem.* A People not reckoned in the former time till made remarkable by their Compect of a great part of the World, but always counted Warlike and Martial Men. Of whom take this Character out of *Arrian*. The *Saraceni* (saith he) whom we are ready to wish for our Friends nor Enemies, are a Martial People, half naked, clad as far as the groin with painted Cassocks, ranging up and down on Camels and swift Horses, as well in peace as troublesome times. Not used to the Plough, to plant Trees, or get their living by Tillage; they wander from one place to another, without house or home, or any constant dwelling place, or the use of Laws; nor can they long endure the same, either Air or Soil, the manner of their living being always sitting like ravenous Kites; which if they chance to spy a prey, snatch it up in their flight: or if they chance to fasten on it as it lieth on the ground, they make no long stay. Their food is chiefly upon Venison, and store of Milk, herbs which they gather from the ground, and Birds which they get by Fowling; but altogether ignorant of Corn and Wine. Their Wives they only hire for a time, though for a shew of Matrimony they present their Husbands with a Spear and a Tent, as in way of Dowry; but they part with them when they please. Both Sexes not extremely given to Carnal Lusts, the Women as rambling as the Men, Married in one place, and brought to bed in another; leaving their Children where they fall, without more care of them. So far, and to this purpose he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principal are, 1. that called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which passing through this Country endeth his Course in the *Red-Sea*. 2. *Rhinocorura*, called in Scripture the torrent of *Aegypt*, which rising in this Country, and passing by the Borders of *Idumæa*, hath its fall in the Lake of *Sirbon*; and together with the waters thereof, loseth it self at last in the *Mediterranean*.

With Mountains it is better stored, and those of eminent observation, as 1. Mount *Sinat* famous in all Ages for the promulgation of the Law; and of late times for a Monastery of *Maronites* on the Top thereof. The Hill so high, that both shores of the *Red-Sea* may be thence seen; but easie of ascent, by reason of steps cut out of the Rock: which notwithstanding, he that beginneth to go up it at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the afternoon. The Monastery made an Episcopal See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the Letters of *Eugenius* Bishop thereof, to the Arch Duke *Charles*, anno 1569. complaining that the *Turk* had sold all their Land, and that himself and the Monks were fain to pawn their holy vessels, and take up Money on Usury. Here is also a *Meque*, or *Mejquit* of *Turks*, who resort in Pilgrimage to this Hill as well as the Christians. 2. Mount *Horch*, where the *Israelites* worshipped the molten Calf, about a mile and a half distant from Mount *Sinat*, but not so high: on the top of which

is a Church also; and a Monastery of *Colories* or *Greek* Monks, at the bottom, exceeding Hospitable to Strangers, whom they entertain of free-cost and cheerfully shew them all the places worth observation, which the Scripture mentioneth in that tract. Both hills by *Ptolomy* called *Melany*, or the Black Mountains; the last now called *Orub*. 3 Mount *Hor*, bordering on *Idumæa*; and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of most observation, 1 *Petra*, the name given to this part, at first called *Rekem*, and at that time belonging to *Midian*: afterwards called *Sela*, when pertaining to the *Idumæans*. But falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Crat*. Best known in holy Scriptures by the name of *Sela*, before-mentioned, which signifies the same with the *Latin Petra*. A City of great note and strength in all times foregoing, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Judah*, 2 *Kings* 14. 7. and by him called *Jock-beli*; but in vain Besieged by *Scaurus*, a *Roman* General, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the perswasion of *Antipater*, to take a Sum of Money and Raise the Siege. Nor did the Emperor *Trajan* speed much better at it, his Soldiers being still beat off in all their Assaults, the very next man to him slain with a Dart and himself forced to cast away his Imperial Habit, and flee for his life; the Heavens themselves, if *Dion* (who is never sparing of the like Prodigies) may be believed, fighting against the *Romans* with Thunder and Lightning, Whirl-winds and Tempests, as often as they made any approaches to it: But in the end Subdued with the rest of the Country. In such esteem, by reason of the strength of it, by the Soldans of *Ægypt*, that they kept here their choicest Treasures; and in the course of the Holy Wars, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Christians*, as the Key that opened the Gates of *Palestine*; on the South border whereof, not far from Mount *Hor*, before-mentioned, the Town is situate. The Metropolis of the Province when first under the *Romans*; and made the Seat of a *Latin* Bishop, when the *Christians* of the West were the Lords thereof. 2 *Bosra*, said to have been built by *Augustus Cæsar*, because by him repaired, when decayed and Ruined; afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of the *Romans*. This last most certain, and for such testified by this ancient Inscription in an ancient Coin, *COL. BOSTRAIN. T. R. ALEXANDRIANÆ*. Memorable also for the Birth of *Philip* the Emperor, one of that *Alexander's* next Successors, by whom it was caused for a time to be called *Philippus*; for the Metropolitan Dignity removed hither from *Petra* somewhat before the time of *Justinian*, but by whom I find not; and for being the Episcopal See of *Titus* (hence surnamed) *Bosrenus*, a Reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the Apostate. A City of as great Antiquity as the most that be, mentioned, *Gen.* 36. 33. though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong; and is still remaining, and well known by the name of *Russeretb*. 3 *Elama*, on a Bay of the *Red-Sea*, called hence *Sinus Elamiticus*. 4 *Phara*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderness of *Paran* seems to take its name 5 *Berenice*, so called from some of the Queens of *Ægypt*, but better known by the name of *Exion-gaber*, one of the Stations or Encampings of the Children of *Israel*; and made by *Solomon* the ordinary Harbour for his Ships, which Sailed to *Ophir* in the *East-Indies*. 6 *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalakites*, giving name to the Wilderness or Desert of *Sur*, coming close up to it: remarkable for the first Encampings of the Tribes of *Israel* after their miraculous passage over the *Red-Sea*; and the defeat which *Saul* gave to the *Amalakites*, whom he smote from *Havilah* to this place. 7 *Havilah*, so called from *Havilah* the Son of *Chus*, being the farthest border of these *Amalekites*, and *Ismaelites*, on the Gulf of *Persia*, as *Sur* was on the *Red-Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*. 8 *Madian*, so called of *Madian*, the son of *Abram* by *Ketura*, situate towards the *Red Sea*

also; the City of *Jethro*, whose Daughter *Zipporah* was the Wife of *Moses*; who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Ægypt*, was by God's secret Providence directed hither: that keeping the Flocks of *Jethro* in the Desarts adjoining, he might acquaint himself with the ways and passages through which he was after to lead the House of *Israel*. 9 *Rephaim*, the Encamping place of *Moses*, where he discomfited the *Amalekites*; and to which the said *Jethro* came to him with his Wife and Children, advising him to ease himself of some part of that burden, which the Government of so great a People would else bring upon him. 10 *Kadesh-barnea*, the station of the Tribes, when the spies which were sent to discover the Land of *Canaan* returned back unto them; memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Prophetess. And 11 *Thara*, no less memorable for the Mutiny and Punishment of *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, the place remembered, *Num.* 33. 27. But others will have 12 *Mackbeloth*, mentioned *v.* 25. of that Chapter, to be the stage of that action, the Scriptures being silent in this particular. The rest of their Encamping places, being most of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpose, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do also some of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accounted of by *Ptolomy*, as Cities of this Province, but spoken of already in our Description of *Palestine*, to which more properly belonging.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Midianites*, the *Ismaelites*, the *Amalekites*, and the Children of *Chus*; who dwelling promiscuously together, are sometimes used for one another: the Merchants which bought *Joseph* of his Brethren, being indifferently called *Midianites* and *Ismaelites*. *Gen.* 37. 28. and *Zipporah* the Wife of *Moses*, who questionless was a Daughter of *Midian*, being by *Miriam* and *Aaron* called an *Ethiopian* or *Chusite*, as in way of Reproach, *Num.* 12. 1. But being they were different Nations, and such as had some special engagement with or against the Children of *Israel*, we will consider them by themselves, till we have brought them into one Body, by the name of *Chusites*, *Ethiopians*, or *Arabians*, which are all the same.

And first the *MADIANITES* were such of the Posterity of *Madian*, the Son of *Abram* by *Ketura*, who preserving the knowledge of the true God, withdrew themselves from all communion with the Idolatrous *Canaanites*, at such time as the rest of their brethren did associate with them; and settled themselves more towards the banks of the *Red Sea*, where they did all good Offices to the Children of *Israel*, as they passed through their Country. Of these the *Kenites* were a Branch, as appeareth, *Judg.* 1. 16. where *Jethro* the Prince or Priest of *Madian*, is called a *Kenite*: some of which turned *Prophets* and dwelt with the *Israelites* in *Canaan*; of which Race *Heber* the *Kenite*, the husband of *Jael*, who slew *Sisera*, was undoubtedly one. The rest, continuing mingled with the *Amalekites*, till the time of *Saul*, were by him warned (in memory of former Courtesies) to withdraw themselves from them; lest they should perish with them in the same destruction. Afterwards we hear little of either People, losing their name in the greater Nation of the *Israelites*, with whom intermingled, or passing with them in the same common notion of *Arabians*, *Chusites*, or *Ethiopians*.

Secondly, nor were the *AMALEKITES*, though a greater and more powerful Nation, of much more continuance; descended, as it is conceived, from *Amalek*, the Grandson of *Esau* (though I deny not but there are some reasons to be urged against that opinion) and planted on the backs of the *Edomites*, as their Guard or Out-work. A people mischievously bent against those of *Israel*, as if they had inherited the hatred which *Esau* their Fore-father did bear to *Jacob*, whom they violently set on at *Rephidim*, when they supposed them spent and wearied with their flight from *Ægypt*. And though discomfited in that Battel, yet they continued in their malice

lice against the Tribes, joyning first with the *Canaanites* against them when they were in their March; and after with the *Midianites*, when not well settled in their new Possession. A provocation so ill taken by the Lord of Hosts, because unnatural, and ill grounded, that he declared his resolution from the time of the Battel of *Rephidim* to put out the Remembrance of Amalek from under Heaven, *Exod. 17. 14.* Accordingly, when the Children of Israel were provided for it, he commanded *Saul* to set upon them, and to slay both Man and Woman, Infant and Suckling, yea, their Sheep and Cattle. But some of them escaped this slaughter, and fell not long after upon *Ziglag*, the retiring place of *David*, which they took and ransacked; but being by him followed on the first Intelligence, they were easily overthrown, and the prey recovered. Their Malice yet survived their Power; and what they could not do by their Forces, they endeavoured to effect by joyning with the *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, and other Enemies of *David*, in their Wars against him. And this was *ultimam conam*, one of the last flashes of their dying light; nothing done by them worth remembrance of the times succeeding, most of the Nation being worn out, and those few which were left, retiring to the Mountains of *Edom*, but thereof also dispossessed by the *Simeonites*, during the Reign of *Hezekiah*.

Thirdly, the *ISMAELITES*, descending from *Ismael* the Son of *Abraham* by *Hagar*, branched into twelve great Nations, and grown wondrous populous, spread themselves over a great part of these three *Arabia's*: all of them either Thieves or Merchants; Trading to *Egypt* in Spicery, and Balm, and Myrrh, or Robbing those which Traded in the like Commodities. Called also *Hagarens* in the Scripture, as *1 Chron. 5. 10. Psal. 83. 6, &c.* and by that name well known to many of the ancient Writers. A People for the most part of a vagabond and roguish life, more given to Spoil than any honest course of living, which made every Traveller and Merchant to be Armed against them; so verifying the prediction which was given to *Ismael*, that he should be a wild Man, having his hand against every man, and every man's hand against him. *S. Hierom* so conceives that Prophecy to have been accomplished. More fitly verified perhaps, when in and under the name of *Saracens* (by which, and by the name of *Scenites*, they were most generally known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*) they made such foul havock in the World, and were esteemed the common Enemies of all civil Nations. Never so governable in their best and most orderly times, as to acknowledge King or Law, till made one Body with the *Chusites*, and the rest of those Nations: and then no further, than it stood with their lust or liking.

Fourthly, As for the *Chusites*, tho' they permitted the Nations above-specified, to inhabit in those Desarts and wast places, which themselves either could not people, or cared not for; yet were they always of most power, and gave name to that whole tract of ground, containing now all *Petræa*, the South part of *Deserta*, and the Mountains which divide *Petræa* from *Arabia Felix*; which from them was called *Chus*, or the Land of *Chus*. Rendred in all places of the Old Testament by the name of *Ethiopia*, first by the Septuagint, and afterwards by all the Fathers *Greek* and *Latine*, the Vulgar Translation of the Bible, and almost all the other Translations at this day extant. And rendred right enough at first, as in all times since, tho' by some mistaken: who having never heard of any other *Ethiopia* than that in *Africk*, have transferred thither all those Actions and Texts of Scripture, which are meant of this. The Septuagint, no doubt, were not so ignorant of the Affairs of their next neighbouring Nation, as not to know by what name they were called by the *Greeks*, their then Lords and Masters. And he that looks into the History of *Herodotus*, who liv'd 150 years before that Translation, will find, that by the *Greeks* they were called *Ethiopiens* and called so questionless from the self same reason; that

is to say, the swartheiness, or Sun-burntneess of their Complexion, as the *Libyans* of *Africk* were: that name being framed from the *Greek* word, *ἠθίοψ*, signifying to burn; and *ὄψ*, a Countenance, by reason of their tawny and Sunburnt Countenances. For, speaking of the huge Army of *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, he doth thus proceed, 'Ἀραβίων δ' ἔχ' Ἀιθίοπων δ' ἔχ' Αἰγυπτίων ἐκὼς Ἀραβίων, &c. *Arames* (saith he) was Captain of the *Arabians* (he meaneth the *Trogludites*) and *Ethiopiens* which are beyond *Egypt*: but the Eastern *Ethiopiens* were ranked with the *Indians*, nothing differing from the other in the structure of their Bodies, but their hair and voice only; the Eastern *Ethiopiens* wearing their hair smooth, those of *Lybia* curled. The *Ethiops* of *Asia* were armed like the *Indians*, but the *Ethiops* of *Africa* were arrayed with the Skins of Beasts. Here then we have an *Asian Ethiopia* in the Time of *Herodotus*; the same acknowledged by *Strabo*, an old *Greek* Writer, and by *Philostratus* after him, though they look for it in the wrong place: The first amongst the *Seres*, in the North of *Asia*; the other on the River *Ganges*, too much in the East. Nor doth *Strabo*, one of the old *Cosmographers*, published by *Simlerus*, shoot more near the Mark, who speaking of the River *Tigris*, saith, That it burieth it self, and runneth under the Ground in *Ethiopia*. Which though *Simler* doth interpret of these parts of *Arabia*; yet questionless that Author meaneth it of the Country about *Mount Taurus*, where that River doth indeed run under ground, and having passed under those vast Mountains, riseth up again.

But what need further search be made to find out the situation of this *Ethiopia*, when it is bounded out so plainly in the Holy Scriptures? For when it is said of *Zipporah* the Wife of *Moses*, that she was an *Ethiopian* Woman, *Numb. 12. 1.* who is well known to have been a Native of this Country; and when it is said in *2 Chron. 21. 16.* That the Lord stirred up against *Jehoram* the Spirit of the *Philistines*, and of the *Arabians* that were near the *Ethiopiens*; it must needs be that the *Ethiopia* there spoken of, must be conterminous to the rest of *Arabia*, and be intended of that Country wherein *Madian* was. So where God threatneth by the Mouth of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, That he would lay waste the Land of *Egypt*, from the Tower of *Syene*, even unto the Borders of *Ethiopia*, *Cap. 29. 10.* that is to say, from one end thereof unto the other, it followeth necessarily, that *Ethiopia* there meant, must be this part of *Arabia*, or the Land of *Cush*, as the bound of *Egypt* most remote from the Tower of *Syene*, which all Geographers acknowledge to be in the extreme South parts thereof towards the Cataracts of *Nilus*. For to expound it, as some do, of *Ethiopia* in *Africk*, on the Borders whereof *Syene* stood; and stood so indifferently betwixt it and *Egypt*, that *Stephanus*, an Ancient Writer, makes it very doubtful to which of the two it did belong, were to make the Scripture speak plain Nonsense: As plain as if a Man should say, That the *French* conquered all the *Netherlands* from *Graveling* to *Flanders*; or that the *Sword* hath ranged over all *England*, from *Barwick* to *Scotland*. As then we have found this *Ethiopia* of the Old Testament to be near the *Philistines* on the one side, and the Land of *Egypt* on the other; so may we find it to be bounded also on the East, with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*: The River *Gibon*, which is said to compass the whole Land of *Ethiopia*, (or the Land of *Cush*) *Gen. 2. 13.* being no other than a Branch of the River *Euphrates*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldea*. So that the Translation of the Septuagint in reading *Chusites*, or the Land of *Chus* by *Ethiopia*, needs no such alteration or emendation as some men suppose. The Mistakes (whereof there have been many) which rise from hence, not being to be charged on them, or on their Translation, but on the Ignorance of the Reader, or Error of such Expositors, who dreaming of no other *Ethiopia* than of that in *Africk*, have made the Sep-

ture speak of such things as it never means, and carried these *Chusites* into the *African Ethiopia*, where they never were. And yet perhaps it may be said, that the Posterity of *Chus*, being straitned in their own Possessions, or willing to seek new Adventures, might have crossed over the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia* (being but seven Miles broad where narrowest) and mingling with the Sons of *Ludim* on the other side, might either give the Name of *Ethiopians* to them, or receive it from them.

Now to go forward with the story, the first great action attributed to these *Chusites*, or *Arabian Ethiops*, incorporated with the rest of those mingled Nations, is the expedition of *Zerab* the King hereof, against *Afa* King of *Judab*, drawing after him an Army of a Million, and 300 Charlots of War (the greatest Army ever read of in unquestioned story) but for all that discomfited by the Lord of Hosts, on the Prayers of *Afa*; and all the Spoil of that huge Army carried unto *Hierusalem*. After this, *Tirbakab*, another of these *Ethiopian* Kings, finding how dangerous the great growth of the *Assyrian* Kingdom might prove unto him, prepared a puissant Army against *Senacherib*, then besieging *Libna*, threatening the Conquest of all *Judab*, and invading *Egypt*: upon the news of whose approach, *Senacherib's* Forces, which were even upon the gaining of *Pelusium*, the Gate of *Egypt*, were fain to dislodge and provide for their safety. For tho' *Herodotus* calls *Senacherib* King of *Arabia*, and *Assyria*, yet was he Master only of those parts of *Arabia*, which had been formerly possessed by the Kings of *Israel*, being no more than some few Cities of *Petræa*, bordering next unto them: or perhaps called so only in respect of those parts of *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*, which were sometimes comprehended under the name of *Arabia*, as before is said. What part they after took in the great War betwixt *Nebuchadnezzar*, and *Pharaoh Neco* King of *Egypt*, is not hard to say. For besides that the same Reasons of State, obliging them to side with the *Egyptian*, were still in force; their giving *Neco* leave to pass thro' their Country with his Army, to invade the *Babylonians* on the Banks of *Euphrates*, make that plain enough. Now that both *Tirbakab* and *Zera* were Kings of this *Asia*, and not the *African Ethiopia*, is most clear and evident; partly in regard the Kings of *Egypt* would never suffer such huge Armies to pass through the whole length of their Dominions: but principally because 'tis said in the holy Scriptures, that *Afa* having overthrown that vast Army of *Zerab*, smote all the Cities about *Gaza*, which formerly had belonged unto these *Philistines*, but were then possessed by these *Chusites* and their Associates. After this, either as Confederates, or Subjects, we find them aiding unto *Xerxes*, in his War on *Greece*: and like enough it was that in *Alexander's* March from *Egypt* towards *Persia*, they submitted to him, as did all the other Countreys through which he passed. He being dead, *Antigonus*, one of his great Commanders, sent *Antibanius* with an Army to bring them in, who being trained into an Ambush was discomfited by them; *Demetrius* the Son of *Antigonus* thinking that he had done enough in revenge of that overthrow, by compelling them to sue for Peace. In the time of the *Seleucian* Race in *Syria*, we find them Governed by Kings of their own, most of them called by the name of *Aretus*, of which one was of special note in the declining Fortunes of the *Seleucians*, for bidding very fair for the Crown of that Country; and being a stickler in the Wars of *Jewry*. in the time of *Hircanus* the fourth King of the Race of the *Maccabees*, to whom, at the request of *Antipater*, the Father of *Herod*, he gave hopes of aid; and on those hopes was possessed of *Me laba*, and other Towns of good Importance, which *Alexander* the Father of *Hircanus* had regained from the *Syrians*, and laid unto the Crown of *Jewry*, to which, as parts of *Iudæa*, and anciently possessed by the Tribes of *Israel*, he might make some claim. Another there was of the same name,

and of no less power, whom we find to have been Warred upon by *Herod*, about the time of the Battel of *Actium*, and for the most part Vanquished by him; and finally a third of more power than either, mentioned by *S. Paul*, 2 *Cor.* 11. 32. as Lord of *Damascus*. In the flourishing of the *Roman* Fortunes, the King hereof having first aided *Mithridates* and *Tygranes* in the War against 'em, submitted themselves unto *Lucullus*, being then no nearer to them than *Armenia Major*. The like they did to *Pompey* also, being then in *Judæa*. First vanquished by *Ælius Gallus* in the time of *Augustus*; but the Victory not improved to an absolute Conquest, till the time of *Trajan*, when partly by his personal presence, and partly by the Valour and good Fortune of *Palma*, his Lieutenant, they were fully vanquished, and brought into the Form of a *Roman* Province: But so, that they had Kings of their own, (Vassals and *Feudataries* of the Empire) as in former times; continuing in that condition till the rise of *Mahomet*. Of which more hereafter.

3. ARABIA FELIX.

ARABIA FELIX, is bounded on the East with the *Persian*; on the West, with the *Arabian* Gulf; on the North with a long Ridge of Mountains, which part it from *Deserta* and *Petræa*; and on the South with the boundless Ocean. Environ'd on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough, impassable Mountains; in Situation and Figure much resembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Felix* from the Fertility and happy condition of it, being esteemed the most fruitful and pleasant Country in all *Asia*, abounding with *Myrrhe*, *Balsamum*, *Frankincense*, Gold, and Precious Stones: by *Curtius* called *Odorum fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincense*, wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a story, that when *Alexander* in his Adolescence or Boyage, was Sacrificing to the Gods, and cast into the Fire with both Hands, great store of *Frankincense* and *Myrrhe*, *Leonidas* his Governor, bid him be more sparing of those precious and dear Commodities, till he was Master of the Country in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembering, when he had brought almost all the East under his Obedience, he sent unto *Leonidas* a Ship Laden with *Frankincense*, bidding him from thenceforth to serve the Gods more Liberally. But as well for the reason of this adjunct, as a more perfect Character and Description of it, take this of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who describes it thus: 'On the East and South hereof' (saith he) are the happy *Arabians*: so called because so 'Rich in Corn; as well as plenteous in Cattel, Vines, 'and Odoriferous Spices of all kinds; shut up betwixt 'the *Red Sea*, and the *Persian* Gulf, and so acquainted 'with all Blessings, which either Element can afford: 'well furnish'd with Roads and quiet Harbours for Shipping, the Towns of Trade and Merchandize standing 'very thick; the retiring Houses of the Kings, passing neat 'and sumptuous. Besides most wholsom Fountains of 'n edicinal waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers 'very clear and pure, and a temperature of Air, exceeding healthy; so that whosoever considereth all things 'aright, may well conclude, that there is nothing wanting to the accomplishment of its felicity in the highest 'degree. So *Ammianus Marcellinus*. To which we need add nothing more to set forth its happiness, than that *Danaus* in his Comment on *St. Augustin's Enchiridion ad Laurentium*, is perswaded that it was the local place of *Paradise*. *Dicitur* (saith he) *Paradisi terrestris Regio pars quædam esse Arabiæ, quæ nunc dicitur Fœlix*. What is here said of the Fertility and happy state of *Arabia Felix*, is not found true in any tolerable degree by the latter Travellers. Nor doth it seem possible to have ever been otherwise. All that part of it that lies between *Nagran*,
Oman,

Oman, *Sochar*, and *Baharim* for thirty two days Journey in the middle of *Arabia Felix* is Sandy, Mountainous, desolate, and for want of Water very difficult to pass over, saith the *Nubian* Geographer: The people on the *Eastern* Coast about *Mascat* are very poor, even to extremity; and if the rest be like them, it is one of the unhappiest Countries in the World. *Tavernier*, p. 94. All that Part that lies towards the *Red-Sea*, on the *West* side as far as *Mecca* is found by the Caravans so wretchedly barren, that every Year they are forced to carry their Provisions with them, or the most part of the Passengers would starve in the Journey; so that all the Fertility of this large Country is confined to the *S. W.* Angle of this Country, which by the Map will appear the best watered with Rivers; and perhaps, to the Countries watered by those Rivers, which are by no means sufficient to maintain the Inhabitants, the Middle Spaces between these Rivers being either Sandy Deserts, or Mountainous. So *Spain* by the Ancients celebrated as a Country of wonderful Fertility, but not found so in this Age, but as to the far greatest part of it very barren, and not conceivable how it could ever be otherwise.

Now I think it is not probable the Ancients were so much deceived, or willingly deceived us in these Accounts, but rather that either the Earth by long usage is exhausted to that degree, that it can never be repaired; or else that the people of these latter Ages are less industrious than their Ancestors. A Fruitful Country may become uninhabitable by the neglect of it, for want of draining, stubbing, and clearing, as a great part of *Egypt*, *Campania di Roma* and *Syria* have, which were the best peopled parts of the Old World, but are now desolate.

Again, A Barren Country being filled with Industrious people, every Inch of it by great labour and industry is made like a Garden, to produce what the Earth could never yield without that Extraordinary Culture; yet Travellers do commonly celebrate the Fertility of it, if they find it full of Fruits, without considering what it is in its own Nature, nor how much pains the People have spent to make it such. On the contrary, in *America*, where the Lands have lyen untill'd ever since the Creation of the World, covered with Woods and Bushes (the first State of *Spain* and *Arabia*) there is very little or no Barren Lands: The Grass that grow, rotting for the most part on the Earth, cover it with a Coat of Muck of a considerable thickness, but when our Planters have for some time till'd it, and taken off that first Lustre, it is by no Art to be reduced to its former Fertility. *Arabia* about the Seventh and Eighth Century conquered so many Countries, that the far greatest part of the Inhabitants of it were drawn out in Armies and Colonies into *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Persia* and *Palestine*; the Remainder that stay'd in it for some Ages, lived on the naturally Fruitful Lands, and in the mean time lost much of the Industry and Agriculture of their Ancestors; so the Earth not being perfectly desolate, as *America* upon the Matter is, nor well till'd, has put on quite another Face than it appeared with to the Ancients. The Reader may pardon this Digression, because it will raise some useful Thoughts in him, and shew the danger of following Ancient Accounts, without considering the Present State of Countries. But it hath other Names besides this of *Felix*. By the *Arabians* themselves called *Jeman*, and *Al-jeman* (*Ayam* corruptly by the *Turks*) which in that Tongue signifieth the South, or Southern Region. By *Virgil* it is nam'd *Panchaia quasi tota debescens*, because of the many chops and chinks which the ardour of the Sun makes in the Sands thereof, though by him much extolled also for its plenty of *Frankincense*.

Totaque rburiferis Panchaia pinguis arena.
Famed are the whole *Panchaia* Lands,
For Rich and Incense-bearing Sands.

The people anciently, though more civil than the rest of the *Arabians*, had yet many strange and barbarous Customs. Adultery amongst them was punished with Death as in other places; but only he was held an Adulterer, which enjoyed any that was not his own Kinswoman, he sue his Sister or his Mother; and so they kept themselves in their own Families; Community of Wives or Women was esteemed no Crime. And of this there is a Tale in *Strabo*, that the King of this Country had fifteen Sons, and but one Daughter, who according to the Customs heretofore was the Common Wife of all her Brethren; every of which had a Staff of like making, which when he went in unto his Sister he did leave at the Door; and by so doing did forbid entrance unto the rest, till it were removed. The young Lady, wearied with a continual excess of Dalliance, secretly procured a Staff like unto the rest, which when she was desirous to prohibit their accesses to her, she left at her Chamber-door; and by that means did many times enjoy her desired privacy. At last it hapned that all the Brothers being together, one of them departed towards his Sister's Lodgings, where finding a Staff before the Door, and knowing that he had his Brethren in one place together, he accused her of Adultery: But the Truth being made known, the Lady was acquitted, and their Visits afterwards restrained. Of Death Bed they took no care, not so much as of their Children's Birth, but left them to the custody of the next Neighbour. They bragged much of their Nobility, and neglected all Sciences and Arts, excepting only to be great Nobility. Commendable only in the keeping of their Faith and Promises, and in their most punctual. Much of the same Condition are the present Inhabitants, save that less faithful in their Contracts. And by their Law restrained from meddling with the Wives of others, permitted many of their own. Some there are of them which apply themselves to the grazing of Cattel, and the rest to Merchandize, wherein very cautious and cunning; but hating to this day all Mechanical Arts. A Nation from the beginning unmixed with others, till the coming of the *Turks* amongst them, of which but few, and those disposed of in Garisons: boasting of their Nobility, and glorying in nothing more than their greatest shame; namely, that the False Prophet *Mahomet* was their Countryman; whose Impieties are here generally embraced, and followed.

Amongst the Rarities of this Country, some account the *Phanix*, which growing old burneth her self in a Nest of Spices, and from thence a Young one ingegred, one of them only at a time; which after a life of five or six hundred Years, thus reneweth her Kind. But this Tradition, questioned in Former Times by *Flory* and some others, is now proved a Fiction; contrary both unto Divinity and Natural Reason: Though some of the Fathers made use of it as an Argument to prove the Resurrection against the *Gentiles*, by whom the Tradition was believed. More common, but of no less observation, is the *Ostrich*, a Bird which swalloweth all it findeth, be it Stones or Iron. They delight chiefly in the Deserts, in the Sands whereof they lay their Eggs, and then forgetting where they left them, sit on those they meet next. In that respect accounted for a simple Fowl, tho otherwise of Wit enough to preserve themselves; keeping in Flocks, and oftentimes with their Fearful Skreeches affrighting Passengers, to whom they do appear afar off like a Troop of Horsemen. Their Wings, too little for their Bodies, serve them not for flight, but to run more speedily; and by that means not easily caught, though much laid in wait for, for their skins, which the People sell unto the Merchant with their Feathers on them. Nor of less note is the *Frankincense*, though of common use; almost peculiar to this Country, and here but to those parts thereof which were formerly possessed by the *Sabæi*: the wood out of which the Gum proceedeth, being about 100 Miles long and fifty

fifty broad; gathered only in *Spring* and *Autumn*. More of this anon.

The Country is much commended by *Ammianus* for plenty of Rivers, the Principal whereof are said by *Ptolomy* to be 1 *Betius*, 2 *Prin*, 3 *Harman*, 4 *Lar*; but the Modern names thereof I find not. Many fair Lakes and store of large capacious Bays on each coast of the Sea. 1 *Sinus Elaniticus*, 2 *Sachalites*, 3 *Leanites*, 4 *Sinus Magorum*, 5 *Sinus Jebthyphagorum*, 6 *Messanites*, 7 *Sacer Sinus*, or the Holy Bay; and 8 the Road or Naval Station called *Neogilla*. Mountains of most Note; 1 Those which are called *Melanes*, at the entrance of the *Persian Gulf*. 2 *Cabubutra*, at the entrance of the *Red Sea* or *Gulf of Arabia*, 3 *Hippus*, 4 *Prionotus*, not far from the River *Prion*, from whence so denominated, 5 *Climax*, 6 The Mountains called *Didymi*, &c.

Towns of note in ancient time it had very many, no Region affording unto *Ptolomy* the names of more; and amongst those many commodious Ports for Traffick, the Sea begirting it for the space of 3000 Miles and upwards. Of most Importance and Observation in those times were, 1 *Zebum*, 2 *Badeo*, 3 *Rhabana*, 4 *Carman*, 5 *Manambis*, 6 *Saba*. The Nubian Geographer saith, in his time it was called *Mareh*, but was then Ruined; of this City saith he, was *Belquis* the Wife of *Solomon*: this City stood on the Brink of the Ocean, but about five days Journey North, 7 *Are*; The Royal Seats of so many several Kingdoms, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the Title of *Regia*. Then there are, 1 *Maocofmos*, 2 *Meara*, 3 *Negara*, 4 *Sabbatha*, 5 *Mapba*, and 6 *Saphar*, which he called *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of some several Nations. Amongst the Ports he reckoneth, 1 *Sofippus*, 2 *Trulla*, 3 *Tretos*, 4 *Cryptus*, 5 *Itamos*, and 6 *Moscha*. Among the most noted Empories or Towns of Traffick, 1 *Musa*, 2 *Oceanus*, 3 *Arabia*, 4 *Cane*. Besides which, there are some which do preserve the memory of their first Plantations, as 1 *Saphta*, upon the *Persian Gulf*, so from *Sabta*, the first Son of *Chus*. 2 *Rbegama*, or *Regma* (as the Greek Copies of *Ptolomy* have it) so named from *Regma* or *Ruama* the Sixth Son; on the same Gulf also, 3 *Sabe*, on the Shores of the *Red Sea*. And 4 *Sabe Regia*, more within the Land, so named from *Sbeba* the eldest Son of the same *Chus*, from which the Rich and Potent Nation of the *Sabaeans* are to be derived. Out of all which, and many others by him named, we shall take more particular notice of some that follow. 1 *Musa*, a noted Port on the entrance of the *Red Sea*, frequented anciently by the *Ethiopian* and *Egyptian* Merchants, who there laded their Ships with *Frankincense*, *Myrrbe*, *Spices*, and other commodities of this Country, bringing in, in exchange thereof, *Saffron*, *Corn*, *Wine*, *Ointments*, *Purple Dyes*, &c. 2 *Saba*, the Regal Seat of the Kings of the *Sabaeans*, particularly of that Queen so memorized in holy Scripture: called in the Old Testament the Queen of *Sbeba*; from her Country and Place of Dwelling; In the New Testament the Queen of the South, because of the Southern Situation of it in respect of *Judaea*: said there to come from the furthest parts of the World, because there was no part of the World which lay South to the Country of the *Sabaeans*, over which she Reigned. Situate on a little Mountain, affirmed by *Agorhekoides* to be *καλὴ καλλίστη καὶ ἡ τῶν Ἀραβίων*, the most beautiful by far in all *Arabia*, and the Metropolis of the Rich and Potent Nation of the *Sabaeans*: Rich in all the Excellencies of Nature, especially in *Frankincense*, a Gum peculiar to them only, and growing here in a Wood of about 200 Miles long, and 50 broad; not gathered but in the Spring and Autumn, nor then without great care, and many ceremonies. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Thurifera*, and this sweet Gum appropriated solely to it. *Sabæi Arabum propter thura clarissimi*; as we find in *Pliny*; *Sals est thurea vinga Sabæis*, as it is in

Virgil: and finally, — *Thuriferos, felicia regna, Sabæos*, in the *Argonauticks* of *Valerius Flaccus*. It was called also *Mariaba*, and by that name occurreth in some ancient Writers, 3 *Saphar*, more towards the *Persian Gulf*, on the South side of the Mountain *Climax*, the chief City of the *Homeritæ*; Adorned in times of Christianity with a beautiful Temple, 4 *Sabatba*, or *Sabota*; as *Pliny* calleth it, seated about the midst of the Country, on the top of an high and lofty Hill, from whence it had a gallant Prospect on the Fields adjoining: anciently large and populous, and strongly Fortified, having no fewer than 60 Temples within the Walls; the Principal Consecrated unto *Sabis*, the God of their Nation, to whom they Offered the Tythe of their *Frankincense*, *ubi decimas Deo quem Sabin vocant, mensura non pondere capiunt Sacerdotes*, as we read in *Pliny*.

But these, and almost all the rest being grown out of knowledge, there have risen in their rooms, 1 *Egra*, on the Shores of the *Red Sea*, near the Bay called *Sinus Elaniticus*, by *Ptolomy* called *Agra*, by the *Arabians* themselves *Algjar*: The Port-Town to *Medina*, from which, about three days Journey distant, 2 *Fatbrib*, or *Fatrib*, in the way betwixt *Algjar* and *Medina*, the Birth-place of *Mabomet*; by whom Fortified with a Mud-wall, as his first place of retreat in the beginning of his Fortunes, 3 *Medina*, commonly called *Medina Talmabi*, corruptly for *Medinathalnabi*, that is to say, the City of the Prophet, so called from the Sepulchre of *Mabomet*, that vile Impostor, which is there to be seen; although not in such an Iron Coffin; or drawn up to the Roof of the Temple, by virtue of an Adamant there placed, as some deliver. The Town situate in a desolate and Barren place, bordering on *Arabia Petraea*, but of great Trade, Rich, and well Inhabited: The Sepulchre of that false Prophet drawing thither a continual resort of Pilgrims. The Temple gorgeous, having 3000 Lamps in it, which burn continually. The Sepulchre or Tomb enclosed with an Iron Grate, but of no Magnificence or Beauty: covered with a Carpet of green Velvet, which is sent hither yearly by the *Grand Signior*; the old one being taken off, and cut into innumerable shreds or pieces, and sold for Relicks by the Priests (to such as come in Pilgrimage thither) to their great enriching. About sixty Miles East from *Medina*, lies the City of *Taief*, or *Taref*, which, saith the Nubian Geographer, *Pag. 47.* though small, is very populous, seated in a well watered Soil, and abounding in Fruits, and especially Grapes, which are dried and Transported to *Medina*; from hence is brought most of the Diet eaten at *Medina*. It stands upon Mount *Gbazuan*, which is the highest, coldest, and most fruitful Mountain in all *Arabia*, 4 *Cusa*, the ordinary Residence of the first *Caliphs*, till the removing of the Imperial Seat to *Damascus* in *Syria*; and after that the usual place of meeting for Consultation in Affairs of State, relating to the Peace of this Country, and safety of this People; as Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Mortis Hali*, the Progenitor of the *Persian Sophies*, as *Medina* is for that of *Mabomet*, 5 *Meccha*, supposed to be the *Mechara* of *Ptolomy*, situate in the like barren Soil, 270 miles from *Medina*, but of far greater Resort and Traffick: The whole wealth in a manner of this Country, together with the Commodities of *Persia* and *India*, being first brought hither, and from hence on Camels backs transported into *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and other parts of the *Turkish Empire*. Unwalled, and either for that cause, or for concealment of their Fopperies from the eyes of the Christians, it is made death for any Christian to come within five miles of it. Utterly destitute of water, but what they keep in Cisterns, from one shower of Rain to another, or else brought thither with great charge; otherwise pleasantly seated, Rich, and containing about 6000 Families: Every year visited with three Caravans, or Troops of Merchants and Pilgrims, from *India*, *Damascus*, and *Grand Cairo*; who having done their Business and Devotions there, go afterwards

terwards in Pilgrimage to *Medina* also, to the great enriching of both places, 6 *Ziden*, the Haven-Town to *Mecca*, from which distant about forty miles, situate on the *Red Sea*, in a Sandy Soil, unwalled, and much exposed to Wind and Weather; but wealthy, well-built, and of great resort. 7 *Zebit*, now the Metropolis of the Country, situate about half a days Journey from the *Red-Sea*, in a large Plain. between too Mountains; a Riveret of the same name passing by it: well Traded for Sugars, Spice and Fruits: The ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg*, by whom taken not long after. This City is called by the *Nubian* Geographer, *Zabid*, and *Zebid*, and is placed twenty days Journey from *Mecca*, p. 50. He saith it is a vast, rich, populous City, and the Center of the Trade of *Ethiopia*, *Egypt*, and *China*, p. 24. It stands fifty miles from the *Red Sea*, 132 from *Saana* to the S. W. In a temperate Air and a fruitful Soil. 8 *Eltor*, a Port-Town of this Country, and the only Town where the Christians are suffered to Inhabit. 9 *Aden*, on the very entrance of the *Red Sea*, near the Straights called *Babel Mandel*; supposed by some to be the *Madoce* of *Ptolomy*, but more agreeing in situation with the famous Empory by him him called *Arabia*. The fairest Town of the whole *Peninsula*, of great strength, both by Art and Nature, well Traded, and well Fortified, having a large capacious Haven, seldom without good store of Shipping, and containing to the number of 6000 Persons. Once a distinct Kingdom of it self, but Treacherously Surprized by the *Turks*, Anno 1538. and therewith all the rest of the Country: made afterwards the Seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, under whom, and him of *Zebet*, are supposed to be no fewer than 3000 *Timariots*. The *Turks* were not long Masters of *Aden* before the *Arabians* Revolted, and put themselves under the Protection of the King of *Mocha*, a City on the same Gulf, more to the North. The *Nubian* Geographer saith it was in his time a small, but a Celebrated City, being a Port much frequented by the Ships which Sail d on the *Red Sea* and the Ocean, and a kind of Center of the Eastern and Western Trade. On the back of it, but at a distance lay a Mountain which reached to the said Seas, and had only two Passages, one to the East and the other to the West. 10 *Oran*, The Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean. 11 *Therna*, or *Theman*, the same, I take it, which our later Travellers call *Zeman*, situate more within the Land: affirmed by *Benjamin the Jew*, surnamed *Teudelenfis*, to be a Town of fifteen miles square, but to have within the walls thereof a great quantity of Ground for Tillage. 12 *Zarwal*, a retiring place of the *Caliphs*, when they lived in this Country. 13 *Hor*, on the Point, or Promontory, called *Chorodemus*, a Garison not long since of the Kings of *Ormus*, 14 *Muskabat*, on the *Persian Gulf* near the point of Land called *Cape Rozelgate*: opposite to *Surrat* in the *East-India*, and possessed by the *Portugals*, who have Fortified it with a well-built Castle, for the defence of their Ships and Frigots, which frequent those Seas. Of no great note till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Persians*, many of the Inhabitants wherof were since settled here. *Tavernier*, part 2. p. 16. of his Travels South, saith, The City of *Mascate*, or *Muscate*, is seated at the foot of a Mountain by the Sea-side; and has three Rocks at the entrance of the Harbour, which make the Access very difficult, and besides, in Summer, the heat is scarce to be endured: whilst this was in the Possession of the *Portuguese*, it was the fourth Government depending on the Vice Roy of *Goa*, and afforded a great Revenue, *Ibid.* p. 75. But one *Aceph-Ben-Ali*, Prince of *Norennæ* (a small Province, but the most fruitful in all *Arabia*) beat the *Portuguese* out of *Mascate*, and afterwards call'd himself King of that City. *Ibid.* part 2. p. 145. 15 *Hardranuit*, which was small, and produced some *Aloes*, but inferiour to that of *Zocotora*. 16 *Merbat*, a Mountain and City, famed and much

resorted to for *Frankincense*; of old *Sabea*. 17 *Sanaa*, a City seated twenty days Journey from *Mecca* to the South East, which is one of the greatest and most populous Cities of *Arabia*, as *Nubienfis* saith, p. 25. Seated in a Temperate Air, and a Fruitful Soil; 104 miles from *Aden*, to the N.E. 132 miles from *Zebet*. 18 *Saada*, a City in *Arabia Felix*, between *Zebet* to the S.W. and *Sanaa* to the N.E. twenty days Journey from *Mecca*. 19 *Schar*, the Capital of *Oman*, upon the entrance of the *Persian Gulf*, 450 miles from *Muskabat*, or *Muskabat* to the S.E. In ancient times Ships went from this Port to *China*, *Nubi.* page 53. Of the Affairs of this Country we shall speak anon; having first took a brief view of the Islands which belong unto it.

4. The ARABICK ISLANDS.

THE ISLANDS which lie round about the Shores of *Arabia Felix*, and have been anciently accounted as parts thereof, are dispersed either in the 1 *Red Sea*, 2 *Southern Sea*, or 3 the Gulf of *Persia*.

I. The RED SEA (called also by the Ancients *Sinus Arabicus*, and now *Golfo di Mecca*) is that part or branch of the Southern Ocean, which interposeth it self betwixt *Egypt* on the West; *Arabia Felix*, and some parts of *Petræa*, on the East; the North East bound of it touching upon *Idumea*, or the Coast of *Edom*, Extended in length from the Town of *Suez*, anciently called *Arsmoe*, in the bottom of it, to the Straights of *Babel-Mandel*, where it openeth into the Southern Ocean, for the space of one thousand four hundred miles: in breadth, for the most part, but one hundred, but in some places almost two; the Straights themselves not being above a mile and an half, anciently Chained by the Kings of *Egypt*, as is said by *Strabo*; but now left open by the *Turk*, who is Lord hereof. A violent and unquiet Sea, full of Sands and Shelves; inso much as they who pass in and out, are fain to make use of Pilots which dwell thereabouts, and are experienced in the Channel. Sufficiently famous in all Times and Stories for the Miraculous passage of the Children of *Israel*, and the drowning *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*. *Thevenot* in his Travels, page 1. chap. 33. observes, that this Sea is called in Hebrew, the Sea of *Rushes*, by the *Arabs*, *Rush-el Cal-zem*, from *Clysmæ*, an old Town now Ruined. That it Ebbs and Flows like the Ocean. That before the discovery of the *Cape of Good Hope*, it was much frequented, but now very little, as being narrow and dangerous. The *Geographia Nubienfis* observes that the *Zenguitæ*, which lay between the Kingdom of *Abascia* or *Ethiopia* to the South, and *Egypt* to the North, had *Iman* (*Arabia Felix*) to the North, and that the *Red Sea* was here 600 miles broad, whereas more Northward, *Thevenot* observes it was not above eight miles over. The *Nubian* Geographer, page 3. calls it *Zogor*, makes it sixty miles long, and twelve broad and saith, though it has no living Creature in it, the Water being hot and Putrid, yet small Ships passed upon it.

It took the name of the *Red Sea*, as some conceived from the Redness of the Sands; as others have deliver'd from the Redness of the Waters: but latter observations have discovered the weakness and absurdity of these *Etymologies*; the Sea and Sands being coloured here as in other places. By the *Grecians* it was called *Erythræum*, which in that Tongue signifieth *Red* also, not from the colour, either of the Sands or Waters, but from one *Erythras*, supposed to be the Son of *Persus* and *Andromeda*, who commanded the Eastern Shores hereof. And these come nearer to the mark than the others did. For the truth is, it was originally called the Sea of *Edom*, because it took beginning on the Coasts of that Country: which word in the *Hebrew* signifying *Red*, as appeareth, *Gen.* 25. 30. first given as a nick-name to *Esau*, and from him afterwards to *Mount Seir*, or the Land of *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 31. was by the *Greeks* rendred *Erythræum*, and

and *Mare Rubrum* by the *Latins*. Whence the name of the *Red Sea* became known to all, but the reason of the name to few.

Of the great Traffick which was anciently driven up this Sea, we shall speak hereafter, when we are in *Egypt*, on the other side of it. Look we now on the Islands which belong to *Arabia*; as they all generally do; known in the times of *Ptolomy* by the names of, 1 *Adani*, 2 *Eni*, 3 *Are*, 4 *Cardamin*, 5 *Combusta*, 6 *Damanum*, 7 *Hiracum*, or the *Isle of Hawks*, 8 *Maliaci*, 9 *Polybii*, 10 *Socratus*, 11 *Timagenis*, and 12 *Zigana*. But by what names now called, and of what note then, is a thing so doubtful, that I dare not offer a conjecture. Late Travellers report almost all of them to be small, desolate, or but meanly Inhabited, described by them under other names. One there is of indifferent largeness, said to be an 125 miles long, tho' but twelve broad, called *Dalagu*, with a City in it of that name, where they gather Pearls. 2. Then there is *Camaran*, most extremely hot, of most note for the many spoils there made by the *Portugals*. 3 *Xamoa*, the Earth whereof is said to be *Red* (perhaps to countenance the vulgar Tradition, of calling this the *Red Sea* from the colour of the Sands or Shores) and the King a *Moor*. 4 The *Samaritan Island*, spoken of by *Scaliger*, Inhabited by a remainder of that People, who as soon as they saw any Stranger Land upon their Coasts, would most Religiously desire him not to touch them. Such other Islands as lie upon the opposite shores, and seem to appertain unto *Ethiopia* shall find their place in our Description of the *African Islands*.

II. The *SOUTHERN OCEAN*, comprehendeth that vast Body of Waters, which from the Eastern Banks of both *Ethiopia's*, Coast along on the South of *Arabia Felix*, and so directly Eastward, to the furthest *India*: In this regard called by some Writers *Oceanus Indicus*, by others *Mare Australe*, from the situation; and by some also *Mare Rubrum*, or the *Red Sea*, from *Erythras* a great King (as they suppose) Reigning hereabouts, and giving name not only to the *Red Sea* (or Gulf of *Arabia*) strictly and specially so called, but to all the Sea-Coasts also, from the opening of the Bay of *Arabia*, to the Coasts of *India*, by them called *Mare Erythraeum*.

In this vast Ocean *Ptolomy* placeth many Islands which belong to *Arabia*, but of little note, viz. two Islands by the name of *Insula Agathoclis*, 2 Three more by the name of *Cocconati*, 3. *Dioscoris*, by *Pliny* called *Dioscurias*, with a City of the same name in it. 4 Seven others in the Bay called *Sinus Sachalites*, by the name of *Zenobii*, 5 *Organa*, by *Strabo* called *Tyrrina*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Erythras* before-mentioned, being a great Hill planted with Trees, 6 *Serapias*, by *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Turgana*, famed for a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Egyptian* Idol. None of them now of any Credit, nor formerly of any great Note, the two last excepted. The *Nubian* Geographer informs us that near the Streights of *Babel Mandel*, lies the Isle of *Socotora*, or *Zocotora*, great, large, and beautiful, and affording beautiful trees, and amongst them the best *Aloes*; which Island he saith, was by *Alexander* the Great, Peopled with *Grecians*, and in his time, the XII. Century, was possessed by none but *Christians*. He saith the leaves of these Trees are gathered in *July*, and the juice being forced out of them, it is in *August* exposed to the heat of the Sun in Brass pots till 'tis turn'd into that substance in which we see and use it. *Paris*, 1619. 4to. pag. 25. 5 *Chartan*. 6 *Martan*, both Celebrated very much by the same for their Amber, and Oyster, a shell-fish, of which the *Arabians* made Dishes.

III. On the East side of *Arabia Felix*, betwixt it and *Persia*, lieth another large Arm of the Southern Ocean, anciently called *Sinus Persicus*, or the Bay of *Persia*, now *Golfo di Elkarisso*. A Turbulent and unruly Sea,

the Southern Ocean breaking in at the one end and the River *Euphrates* at the other: the continual combating or clashing of which two great Waters, make it so unquiet. *Ptolomy* placeth in this Bay (but as parts or members of *Arabia*) 1 *Tylus*, which *Arianus* sets at the mouth of *Euphrates*, *Solinus* in the *Indian Seas*, affirming it to be well stored with Vines and Olives: another of this name being placed by *Theophrastus* in the Bay of *Arabia* (but probably the place mistaken) affording good Materials for Shipping. 2 *Apphana*, 3 *Tharo*, 4 *Ichbara*; of which nothing memorable. To these some late Travellers have adjoyn'd two others, if not some of the former, under these new names, that is to say, 5 *Bayer*. This Island is written *Bakron*, *Babaron*, and though seated on the Coast of *Arabia*, is subject to the King of *Persia*. The Waters in the Island are so salt, that they can be drunk by none but the Natives, so that the Island would be wholly deserted but for the Pearl-Fishery, which maintains the *Persian* Garrison in it, *Tavernier* part 2. page 145. And 6 *Confiar*, where they take the best Pearls in the World, in Beds of Oysters. Other Islands of this Bay (if any) belong to *Persia*; where, if occasion so require, we shall speak more of them.

To return therefore to the Main Land of *Arabia Felix*. The first Inhabitants thereof were the Sons of *Chus*, and the Families which they brought with them. Their Memories preserved in the names of some of the chief Towns and Nations till the daysof *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and some other of the Ancient Writers. Divided afterwards into the several Tribes or Septs of the *Cassanite*, *Cmaedocolpita*, *Homerite*, *Adramite*, *Elefari*, *Sachalite*, *Anarite*, *Gerraei*, *Aegwi*, *Sabaei*, *Minai*, *Leanite*, *Cattabani*, *Abuceni*, and divers others: each Governed seperately, and apart by their several Chiefs; whom they Honoured as in other places, with the name of Kings. One of which spoken of by *Justine*, named *Hierotimus*, is said to be the Father of 500 Children. Easie to have been overcome, because so divided, if any potent Neighbour had attempted the Conquest of them: as it is wondrous strange they did not, considering the Richness of the Country, and the many temptations which they had to invite them to it. More worthily deserving the name of *Felix*, in that never Conquered, than in all the other Rarities and Delights thereof. By *Alexander* once design'd for the Seat of his Empire, who probably had endeavoured the Conquest of it, having finished his War against the *Persians*, had he not died in *Babylon* at his coming back. Nor did the *Romans* ever extend their Empire beyond *Petræa*, tho' once *Augustus* did attempt it; employing in that Action *Largus*, his Lieutenant in *Egypt*: One *Sames* being then King of those parts which lay nearest to him. The *Romans* at their first entry found no resistance: but when by the extraordinary heat of the Air, and drinking salt waters, they began to grow sickly and diseased, the *Arabians* fell lustily upon them, and made them return back both with loss and shame. After this nothing done by the *Romans* to disturb their quiet; nor much done by the *Christians* to advance their Glories: the whole divided into almost as many Religions, as Principalities and Estates. Most of them Gentiles, but Circumcised, as the *Ismaelites*, and other *Arabians*, had been of old; many *Jews* intermingled with them, and some store of *Christians*, but those divided also into Sects and Factions. And in this state it stood, when *Mahomet* first began to broach his blasphemous dotage. By Birth of *Jathrip*, an obscure Village then not far from *Medina*: His Father called *Abdalla*, an Idolatrous Pagan; his Mother named *Hemina*, as perverse a *Jew*. Deprived of both his Parents when but two years old, he was left unto the care of an Uncle: who not able to give him Education, nor willing to be at the charge to keep him longer, sold him at sixteen years of Age to the *Ismaelites*; by whom exposed to sale in the open Markets, he was bought by one *Abdalmutalis*, a wealthy Merchant.

Merchant. By him employed at first in Drudgery, and fervile Offices, till noting his great Wit, and fitness for better Services, he at last used him as his Factor: sending him with his Camels and Loads of Merchindize into *Syria*, *Persia*, *Agypt*, and other Places, wherein he did behave himself with such dexterity, that he much encreased his Masters Wealth, and his own estimation. Of Person he is said to be low, and withal scald-headed, but otherwise comely to the eye, and of good Aspect. Much troubled with the Falling-Sickness, which Infirmary he made good use of afterwards, affirming that those Fits were nothing but Heavenly Raptures, in which he did converse with the Angel *Gabriel*. He is said to have been also well skill'd in Magick, by which he taught a white Pidgeon to feed at his Ear, which he gave out to be the Holy Ghost, by whom he was instructed in the Law which he was to publish: but this not till afterwards. By Sorceries, comeliness of Person, and the great knowledge which he had in his Master's Business, he gained so far on the Affections of his Mistress, that on the Death of *Abdulmutalis*, she made him her Husband. Possessed of all his Masters Wealth, he affected Ease; and being till then of no Religion, or at best a Pagan; he began to hearken unto *Sergius*, a *Nestorian* Monk, who flying out of *Syria* for fear of Punishment (the Heresies of *Nestorius* being newly both revived and Censured) came into *Arabia*; where he found entertainment in the House of *Abdulmutalis*, the Master of *Mahomet*. By his persuasions, who found him a fit Instrument for the Devil to work on, he began to entertain the thoughts of Hammering out a new Religion which might unite all Parties in some common Principles, and bring the *Christians*, *Jews*, and *Gentiles*, (into which the World was then divided) under one Profession. Resolved on this, he retired himself unto a Cave not far from *Mecca*, as if he there attended nothing but Meditations: *Sergius* in the mean time sounding in the ears of the People, both his Parts and Piety. The People being thus prepared to behold the Pageant, out comes the Principal Actor with some parts of his *Alcoran* (pleasing enough to sensual minds) which he professed to have received from the Angel *Gabriel*. And finding that this edified to his expectation, he next proclaimed Liberty to all Slaves and Servants, as a thing commanded him by God, by whom the natural Liberty of Mankind was most dearly tendered: which drew unto him such a Rabble of unruly People, that without Fear or Opposition, he dispersed his Doctrines, reducing them at last to a Book or Method.

The Book of this Religion he calleth the *Alcoran*, that is to say, the Collection of Precepts: the Original whereof they feign to be written on a Table which is kept in Heaven, and the Copy of it brought to *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. A Book so highly reverenc'd by the *Mahometans*, that they write upon the Cover of it, *Let none touch this but he that is clean*. The Body of it (as it now standeth) was composed by *Osman* the fourth *Caliph*, who seeing the *Saracens* daily enclining to divers Heresies by reason of some false Copies of *Mahomet's* Law, and that the Empire by the same means was likely to fall into Civil Dissention; by the help of his Wife, who was *Mahomet's* Daughter, he got a sight of all *Mahomet's* Papers, which he reduced into four Volumes, and divided into one hundred twenty and four Chapters; commanding expressly upon pain of death, That that Book, and that only, should be received as Canonical through his Dominion. The whole Body of it is but an Exposition and Gloss on the eight Commandments.

1. Every one ought to believe that God is a great God, and one only God, and *Mahomet* is his Prophet. They hold *Abraham* to be the Friend of God; *Moses* the Messenger of God; and *Christ*, the Breath of God: whom they deny to be conceived by the Holy Ghost, affirming, that the Virgin *Mary* grew with Child of him by

finelling to a Rose, and was delivered of him after Birth. They deny the Mystery of the *Trinity*; but punish such as speak against *Christ*, whose Religion was not (say they) taken away, but mended by *Mahomet*. And he who in his Pilgrimage to *Mecca* doth not, coming or going, visit the Sepulchre of *Christ*, is reputed not to have Merited, or bettered himself any thing by his Journey.

2. Every man must marry to execute the Dictations of *Mahomet*. Four Wives he alloweth to every man, and as many Concubines as he will; between whom the Husband setteth no difference, either in Affection or Apparel; but that his Wives only can enjoy his Sabbath Benevolence. The Women are not admitted in the time of their Lives to come into their Churches; nor after death to Paradise: And whereas in most or all other Countries, Fathers give some Portions with their Daughters, the *Mahometans* give Money for their Wives, which being once paid, the Contract is Registered in the *Cadie's* Book; and this is all their Formality of Marriage. More of this Theme we shall speak hereafter, when we are in *Turkomania*, and among the *Turks*.

3. Every one must give of his Wealth to the Poor. Hence you shall have some buy Slaves, and then manumit them; buy Birds, and then let them fly. They use commonly to free Prisoners, release Bond-slaves, build Caves or Lodgings in the ways for the relief of Passengers, repair Bridges, and mend High-ways. But their most ordinary Alms consist in Sacrifices of Sheep or Oxen, which, when the Solemnity is performed, they distribute among the poor; to whom also on the first day of every year, they are bound to give the Tithes or Tenth part of their gettings in the year foregoing: insomuch that you shall hardly find any Beggars among them.

4. Every one must make his Prayers five times a day. When they pray, they turn their Bodies towards *Mecca*, but their Faces sometimes one way, sometimes another way, believing that *Mahomet* shall come behind them, being at their Devotions. The first time is an hour before Sun-rising; the second at noon-day; the third at three of the clock afternoon; the fourth, at Sun-setting; the fifth and last before they go to sleep. At all these times the Cryers kept a bawling in the Steeples (for the *Turks* and *Saracens* have no Bells) for the People to come to Church. And such as cannot come, must, when they hear the voice of the Cryers, fall down in the place where they are, do their Devotions, and kiss the ground there.

5. Every one must keep a Lent one Month in a year. This Lent is called *Ramazán*, in which they suppose the *Alcoran* was given unto *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. This Fast is only intended in the day time, the Law giving leave to Frolick it in the night as they best please, for they abstain from Wine and Swines flesh; prohibited in their Law at all times, but never so punctually abstained from, as in the time of their Lent.

6. Be Obedient to thy Parents. Which Law is the most neglected of any in all the *Alcoran*; never any Children being so unnatural as the *Turkish*.

7. Thou shalt not kill. And this they keep inviolated among themselves; but the poor Christians are sure to feel the smart of their Fury. And as if by this Law the actual shedding of Blood only were prohibited, they have invented punishments for their offenders, worse than Death it self. As first, the *Strappado*, which is hanging of them by the Arms drawn backwards, when they are so bound, they are drawn up on high, and let down again with a violent swing, which unjoyneth all their Back and Arms. Secondly, they use to heat up their heels, and with a great Cudgel to give them one or four hundred blows on the soles of their feet. Thirdly, It is ordinary to draw them naked up to the top of a Gibbet or Tower, full of hooks, and cutting the Rope, to let them fall down again; and by the way they are caught by some of the hooks, where they commonly hang till they die for hunger.

8 Do unto others as thou wouldst be done unto thy self. To those that keep these Laws he promiseth Paradise, a place of all Delights, adorned with flowry Fields, watered with Christaline Rivers, beautified with Trees of Gold, under whose cool shade they shall spend their time with amorous Virgins, whose Mansion shall not be far distant. The Men shall never exceed the age of thirty, nor the Women of fifteen; and those to have their Virginities renewed, as fast as lost.

Friday he ordained to be the Sabbath-day, partly to distinguish his Followers from the *Jews* and *Christians*, who solemnize the Days ensuing; but principally, because he was on that Day proclaimed King or Emperor, and solemnly so created. Wine and Swines-flesh are the principal things forbidden by the *Alcoran*: from the last whereof they all unanimously refrain; but on the first they are so sorted, that when they come at it, they seldom go home again unled; insomuch that all the Wines in *Constantinople* have been thrown about the Streets, and Death made the penalty for any that will presume to bring any more into the City. *Mahomet* taught them, That every one should be saved by his own Religion; him only excepted, that revolted from the *Alcoran* unto another Law; but so, that under the Notion of Religion, he means only such as worship the one and only God, excluding by that means the old Idolaters of the Gentiles from the hopes of Salvation. And he taught too, That at the end of the World, all Men that professed any such Religion should go into Paradise; the *Jews* under the Banner of *Moses*; the *Christians* under the Banner of *Christ*, and the *Saracens* under the Banner of *Mahomet*. They compel no Man therefore to abjure the Faith in which he was born, but commend and approve secretly such as they find zealous and constant in their own Religion; yet holding it an especial honour to have daily new *Proselytes*, they incite them by hope of freedom and preferment, which with many are Motives too much prevailing. Hence I have heard many say, That it is better for a Man that would enjoy Liberty of Conscience, to live in the Countries professing *Mahometanism* than Papistry: for in the one he shall never be free from the bloody Inquisition; in the other he is never molested, if he meddle not with their Law, their Women, or their Slaves.

The Opinions which they hold concerning the end of the World, are very ridiculous; as that at the winding of a Horn, not all flesh only, but the Angels themselves shall die, that the Earth with an Earthquake shall be kneaded together like a lump of Dough; that a second blast of the same Horn, shall after forty Days restore all again; that *Cain* shall be the Captain or Ringleader of the damned, who shall have the countenance of Dogs and Swine; that they shall pass over the Bridge of Justice laden with their Sins in Satchels; that the greater Sinners shall fall into Hell, the lesser into Purgatory only; with a thousand the like Fopperies: which it is needless to add here, considering that the *Alcoran* it self is now extant in *English*, and every one that lists may read it. A thing so full of *Tautologies*, *Incoherencies*, and such gross Absurdities of so impure and carnal mixture, that he must lay aside the use of his natural Reason, who is taken by it, if Force, Ambition, or want of a Christian Education do not lead him on. For if we seriously look into the causes of the deplorable encrease and long continuance of this Religion, we shall find them to be chiefly these. 1 The greatness of the Victories gotten by the *Saracens*, who were compelled the conquered Nations to receive their Religion. 2 The great Zeal and Diligence of the *Arabians* themselves, who being a numerous People, and much given to Merchandize, have possessed themselves of all the Sea-Coasts of *Africk*, from the Streights of *Babel Mandel*, almost as far as to the *Cape of good Hope*; of all the Islands in those Seas, and many *Factories* and good Towns on the Coasts of *India*: in all which they have settled their Religion also, as a thing inseparable from

their Nation. 3. A peremptory restraint of all disputation in any point of Religion, whatsoever it be. 4 The suppressing of Philosophy, and the study of Humane Sciences; the light whereof might easily detect the grossness of their Superstitions. 5 The sensual liberty allowed of having variety of Wives, and as many Concubines as they are able to keep. 6 The promise of the like sensual Pleasures in the other World, with which a sense not illuminated with the Spirit of God, doth for the most part use to be more affected, than with the speculative hope of spiritual happiness. 7 The forbidding of *Printing* and printed Books, by which the People might come to see the verity and purity of the *Christian* Faith; the fallhood and impurity of the Law of *Mahomet*. These last not useful or at least not able to induce belief, if the first had not opened and prepared the way.

For indeed force of Arms was the strongest Argument by which *Mahomet* himself confirmed, and his Successors in their times have since propagated and dispersed his Doctrine. Strengthened by the resort of that rascal *Rabble*, which repaired to him, he assaults *Medina*, pretending a quarrel to the *Jews*, who had there a *Synagogue*. Repulsed at first with loss of Men, and a wound in his Face, by which some of his foreteeth were beaten out; there likely to have made an end of his new Religion, if not recovered by his Soldiers for a further mischief. At the next Onset he prevailed, the Battel being fought near a place called *Bedez*, situate betwixt *Mecca* and *Medina*, frequently mentioned in the *Alcoran*. After which fight he took the City, converting the *Synagogue* to a Temple for his own impieties: the news whereof so startled the *Phylarchia*, or Nobility of *Mecca*, that they armed all their Powers against him, and sped so well in the beginning of the War, that they drove him forcibly from their Territories; which not long after he subdued, and set his chief seat at *Mecca*. From that his flight, the *Saracens* began their Computation of Years (as we from *CHRIST*'s Nativity) which they call the *Hegyra*, which beginneth about the Year of our Redemption 617. (The *Hegyra*, as to all Chronological Accounts begins in the Year of Christ 622, which some not observing, have caused a Difference of 5 Years in reducing the Years of the *Hegyra*, to the Year of Christ.) Concerning which time, I cannot but observe that *Mahomet* compelled devilish Doctrine, beginning his Empire; and *Boniface* the third assumed his *Antichristian* Title, beginning his unlimited Supremacy nigh about the same Year. It was called the *Hegyra*, from the *Arabick* *Hegiratbi*, which by the Learned in that Tongue, is rendered by *διωγμὸς καὶ τῆς θρησκείας* i. e. the Persecution raised about Religion. *Joseph Scaliger* in his first Edition of his most glorious Work *De emendatione temporum*, casteth off this Etymology with *purum putum mendacium*. He will not have it called *Ara fugæ* or *persecutionis*, but *Ara Hagaranae*; because forsooth the *Arabians* were by some called *Hagarens*. I believe it would have puzzel'd *Joseph* with all his Reading, to shew unto us any *Æpochæ* or *Æra*, which is taken from the Name of a Nation. And therefore other Reason he giveth us none but this; *Nos autem scimus vocem illam primogeniâ significatione ab Hagarenis, non à fuga duci*. But time and opposition, at the last reclaimed him from his Error: and in the second Edition of his Work, he is content to follow the common opinion of those Men, whom in the first he whistled off with the famous appellation of mendaces.

But to proceed, it hapned much about this time, that the *Saracens* revolting from *Heraclius* the Eastern Emperor, joyned themselves unto him. They had long been displeased with their condition, and now hoped to mend it. Exasperated by *Julian* the *Apostate*, when they served in his Wars against the *Persian*, for telling them when they demanded their pay, that he had more store of Steel than Gold: but then they wanted a fit head to resort unto. Now serving *Heraclius* in the same War, they were used by his Officers in the same ill manner. Asking

ing their pay, the Treasurer of the Army made them this churlish answer, that *there was scarce Money enough to pay the Roman and Grecian Soldiers, and must those Dogs be so importunate for their Wages?* Provoked herewith, and hearing the fame of *Mahomet*, they betook themselves to him: who strengthened by ther Forces, and the coming in of the rest of their Country men soon brought the three *Arabias* under his Subjection. To which, having defeated the Emperor's Forces sent against him, he added some parts of *Syria* and *Aegypt*; and returning to *Mecca*, there died frantick and distempered, in the seventieth year of his Age, and three and twentieth of his Impostures, of which he had spent thirteen at *Medina*, and the rest at *Mecca*. His dead Body being kept four days in expectation of a Resurrection, which he promised to perform at the end of three; grown full of stench and putrefaction, was carried to *Medina*, and there Interred: his Successors out of wicked and worldly policy, keeping up the reputation of that Religion after his decease, which they derided in his life; and calling themselves *Caliphs* and *Vicars* General to him, their Prophet, to the Catalogue of which we hasten; made intricate, not more by their own confusions, than by the difference of those names by which they are presented to us by several Writers; according to the times and Languages in which they writ.

The Caliphs or Emperors of the Saracens.

A. C. A. H.

- | | | | |
|-----|----|---|---|
| 622 | 5 | 1 | <i>Mahomet</i> the Impostor, of whom before. |
| 632 | 15 | 2 | <i>Ebubexer</i> , or <i>Uquebar</i> , <i>Mahomet's</i> Father-in-law, and one of his great Captains, supplanted <i>Ali</i> , to whom the Empire was designed by the Will of <i>Mahomet</i> ; and took unto himself the name of <i>Caliph</i> . 2. |
| 634 | 17 | 3 | <i>Haumar</i> , the second of <i>Mahomet's</i> Great Captains, having the Command of the Army under <i>Ebubexer</i> , Succeeded him in the Estate, and added to it <i>Persia</i> , <i>Aegypt</i> , <i>Palestine</i> , with great part of <i>Syria</i> and <i>Mesopotamia</i> . 12. |
| 647 | 30 | 4 | <i>Osman</i> , the third of <i>Mahomet's</i> Great Captains, Husband of <i>Zeineb</i> , his second Daughter; Succeeded under that pretence, and added all <i>Barbary</i> to his Empire. Distressed by the Faction of <i>Hali</i> , and Besieged in his own House, he slew himself in the eighty seventh year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign. |
| 657 | 40 | 5 | <i>Hali</i> the Kinsman, and next Heir of <i>Mahomet</i> , and the Husband of <i>Fatime</i> his Eldest Daughter, Succeeded on the death of <i>Osman</i> : Murdered by the procurement of <i>Mubavias</i> , near <i>Cusa</i> , in <i>Arabia Felix</i> . |
| 660 | 43 | 6 | <i>Mubavias</i> , having murdered <i>Hali</i> his Son <i>Husem</i> , or <i>Ossan</i> , and eleven of the Sons of that <i>Husem</i> , the twelfth only escaping with Life, (from whom descended the Family of the <i>Alaweci</i> , and the <i>Persian Sophies</i>) assumed the Government as rightful Successor to <i>Osman</i> , whose Widow, the Daughter of <i>Mahomet</i> , he had took to Wife. He Conquered <i>Rhodes</i> , <i>Cyprus</i> , and a great part of <i>Asia Minor</i> , and was the Founder of the Family of <i>Aben Humeya</i> . |
| 681 | 64 | 7 | <i>Gizid</i> , the Son of <i>Mubavias</i> , more skilled in Poetry than in Arms. |
| | | 8 | <i>Abdalla</i> and <i>Marwan</i> , Competitors for the Supreme Dignity; but carried at last by <i>Marwan</i> . |
| 685 | 68 | 9 | <i>Abimelech</i> , the Son of <i>Marwan</i> Establish'd the begun Conquests of <i>Armenia</i> and <i>Mesopotamia</i> . 22. |

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|----|--|
| 707 | 90 | 10 | <i>Ulidor Ulit</i> , under whom the <i>Saracens</i> , or <i>Moors</i> , first Conquered <i>Spain</i> . 9. |
| 716 | 99 | 11 | <i>Zulcimin</i> , Brother to <i>Ulit</i> , whose Captain <i>Muljamus</i> Besieged <i>Constantinople</i> , till his Ships were burnt, and his Men consumed with the Plague. 3. |
| 719 | 102 | 12 | <i>Homar</i> , or <i>Haxmar</i> II. Son of <i>Ulidor Ulit</i> . 2. |
| 721 | 104 | 13 | <i>Izid</i> , or <i>Gizid</i> II. the Brother of <i>Haumar</i> , with whom, during his Life, he was Joynt-Caliph, and after his decease, enjoyed it wholly to himself. |
| 725 | 107 | 14 | <i>Evelid</i> , by some called <i>Isham</i> , in whose time <i>Charles Martel</i> made such havock of the <i>Moors</i> in <i>France</i> , Anno 734. their General then named <i>Abderamen</i> . 18. |
| 743 | 125 | 15 | <i>Gizid</i> III. the Son of <i>Gizid</i> II. |
| 744 | 126 | 16 | <i>Hyses</i> , by some called <i>Ibrahim</i> , the Brother of <i>Gizid</i> III. slain by <i>Marwan</i> . |
| 745 | 127 | 17 | <i>Marwan</i> II. the last of the House of <i>Ben-humeya</i> , slain by <i>Abdalla</i> of the house of <i>Fatime</i> and <i>Hali</i> . |
| 752 | 134 | 18 | <i>Abdalla</i> , of the House of <i>Alaweci</i> or <i>Alabeci</i> , descended from <i>Hali</i> and <i>Fatime</i> , the eldest Daughter of <i>Mahomet</i> ; called also the Family of <i>Abas</i> , because of their descent from <i>Abas</i> the Uncle of <i>Mahomet</i> , and perhaps Father unto <i>Hali</i> . |
| 756 | 138 | 19 | <i>Abdalla</i> II. |
| | | 20 | <i>Mahomet</i> II surnamed <i>Bugiafer</i> , or <i>Abugefer</i> , who built the City of <i>Bagdet</i> , made from that time the constant Seat of his Successors till their fatal Period. |
| 777 | 156 | 21 | <i>Mahadi</i> . 9. |
| 786 | 168 | 22 | <i>Musa</i> , or <i>Moyser</i> . 1. |
| 787 | 169 | 23 | <i>Aron</i> , or <i>Arachid</i> , who compelled <i>Irene</i> Empress of <i>Constantinople</i> , to pay him Tribute. 23. |
| 810 | 193 | 24 | <i>Mahamad</i> , or <i>Mahomet</i> III. |
| 825 | 198 | 25 | <i>Abdalla</i> III. who took, and spoiled <i>Crete</i> , and overthrew the <i>Greeks</i> ; he also spoiled <i>Sicilia</i> , <i>Sardinia</i> , and <i>Corfica</i> . 17. |
| 832 | 215 | 26 | <i>Mahomet</i> IV. wasted <i>Italy</i> , burnt the Suburbs of <i>Rome</i> , and harassed the fore-named Islands. 40. |

Others reckon these Caliphs to have Succeeded *Mahomet* the Second.

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|----|---|
| 815 | 198 | 25 | <i>Mamoh</i> . 12. |
| 827 | 210 | 26 | <i>Mutetzam</i> . 8. |
| 835 | 218 | 27 | <i>Wacek</i> . 4. |
| 839 | 222 | 28 | <i>Metbucal</i> . 12. |
| 851 | 234 | 29 | <i>Montacer</i> . 1. |
| 852 | 352 | 30 | <i>Abul Hamet</i> . 6. |
| 858 | 241 | 31 | <i>Almatez</i> . 4. |
| 863 | 245 | 39 | <i>Motadi Bila</i> . 7. After whose death, the <i>Egyptians</i> withdrew themselves from their Obedience due to the <i>Babylonian Caliph</i> , and chose one of their own, to whom all the <i>Arabians</i> , and those of the <i>Mahometan</i> Religion, in <i>Africa</i> and <i>Europe</i> , submitted themselves. Of the <i>Egyptian Caliphs</i> , when we come into that Country. Take now with you the names only of the <i>Syrian</i> and <i>Babylonian Caliphs</i> ; for Story of them I find little or none, the Power being totally in the hands of the <i>Sultans</i> of the several Provinces, and nothing left unto the <i>Caliphs</i> but an Airy Title, the shadow of that Mighty Tree, which formerly had spread it self over most part of the World. |

The Babylonian Caliphs after the Division.

A. C. A. H.

870	251	1	Mutemah.	21.
891	273	2	Mutezad.	8.
897	281	3	Muchtrapi.	8.
907	389	4	Mutchiedar.	24.
931	313	5	Elkaber.	1.
932	314	6	Ratze.	7.
939	321	7	Mutlade.	4.
943	325	8	Mufteraphe.	2.
947	324	9	Macia, and Taia.	44.
989	361	10	Kadar.	41.
1030	412	11	Kaim.	5.
1035	417	12	Mutladi.	60.
1095	477	13	Muftetaber.	22.
1117	499	14	Mufterafchad.	18.
1135	517	15	Rafchied.	25.
1160	542	16	Mufteneged.	9.
1169	551	17	Mustazi.	10.
1179	561	18	Narzi.	39.
1218	597	19	Taber.	
		20	Muftenatzar.	

1255 638 21 *Mustatzem*, the last Caliph, or High Priest of the Saracens of Bagdet, or Babylon, living in the account of a Prince or Emperor; or looked upon as the Supreme Lord of the Saracen Empire: starved in his Castle of Bagdet, and his whole Posterity rooted out by *Allan*, or *Haallon* the Tartar, in the first year of his Reign. Yet there is still remaining a Carak of the old Body, one whom they call Caliph, at whose hands the neighbour Princes use to receive their Diadems and Regalities: for so we find that *Solyman* the magnificent after his Conquest of *Chaldea*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Affyria*, to have been by one of these poor titular Califs, Crowned King of Babylon. Anno 1513.

This unweildy Body of the Saracen Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline, losing to the Kings of *Oviedo* and *Navarre*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Genoese*, *Sardinia*, and *Corfica*; to the *Norman*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally most of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Allan*, or *Haallon*, a Tartarian Captain, starved *Mustatzem* the Babylonian Caliph, in his Tower of Bagdet, and rooted out all his Posterity, (as before was said:) and *Sarracon* the first Turkish King of Egypt, brained the last Egyptian Caliph with his Horseman's Mace; leaving not one of Issue or Kindred Surviving. The Office of the Caliphs as to matters which concern their irreligion, (and the supreme determination of the doubts and controversies which occur therein) being now executed in the *Turks* Dominion, by the *Mufy*, or Chief Priest of the Turkish Mahometans.

As *Mars* shewed himself a friend unto those Saracens in their Wars and Triumphs; so also did *Phœbus* pour down no less Cœlestial Influence on such as addicted themselves to Scholarship. Bagdet in *Chaldea*, *Cairoan*, *Fes*, *Morocco* in *Barbary*, and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their Universities: out of which came the Philosophers, *Avicene*, and *Averroës*; the Physicians, *Rhass*, and *Me-*

sue; the Geographers, *Leo* and *Abulfada*; and almost all the Textuaries and profound Writers (as *Hali*, *Algazel*, *Albumazar*, &c.) in *Astrology*, from whom a great part of our *Astronomical* and *Astrological* Terms are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdom, Island, or Province which acknowledgeth the Empire of the Saracens, but the Kingdom of *Fes* and *Morocco* only: *Arabia* it felt, the very first Seat of their Power, acknowledging a subjection to the Turkish Empire. For first *Petræa* and *Deserta*, being subdued by the *Turks*, when they Conquer'd *Persia*, or otherwise following the Fortunes of the present Victor, were afterwards accounted of as Subject unto the *Mamaluks* of *Egypt*, who out of that Country and all *Syria*, had by degrees disseized the *Seljuccian* Family. And as the Vassals of that Crown, tho' but Subjects at will, they more molested *Selimus* in his March towards *Egypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their Night-alarms, than all the Forces of the *Mamaluks*, in the Field against him. But *Egypt* being Subdu'd, and the *Mamaluks* utterly destroyed, some of their Chiefs being gained by Money, and the rest by promise of Preferment; the whole Nation of these wild *Arabs* swore Allegiance to him: continuing in account as Subject unto his Successors, but in effect doing what they list; Governed as formerly by the Chiefs of their several Clannes, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turk* than they do of the *Christians*. And as for *Fœlix*, it continued also in a free condition, in respect of any foreign Power; till of late times the *Turks* and *Portugals* entrenched upon them. For in the Year 1538. *Solyman Bassa*, Admiral of the Turkish Fleet against the *Portugals*, who had diverted the Trade of the *Red Sea*, and otherwise given offence to *Solyman* the Magnificent, by aiding the *Persians*, went with a strong Army to take *Diu*, a Town and Island of *East-India*, then in their possession. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden*, one of the best Traded Ports of *Arabia Fœlix*, invited the King thereof aboard, most Treacherously hanged him, and surprized the City, which has since Revolted. The like he also did to the King of *Zibet*, the Port Town to *Mecca*: and by that means got possession of all the Coasts of this Country, bordering on the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; of which the *Turks* still continue Masters. But in the Inland parts, and towards the *Persian Gulf*, of no power at all; not suffered to Travel up and down without a Pass from some of the *Arabian* Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be set on by the Natives, who brook them not. Some parts hereof which lie next unto the Isle of *Ormuz*, made one Kingdom with it; but the Kings originally of this Country, by whom the City of *Ormuz* was first builded: and so continued till the taking of *Ormuz* by the *Portugals*, Anno 1622. who since the taking of that Isle by the King of *Persia*, hold *Muskabat*, and some other pieces upon this Continent. The residue of the Country Cantoned among a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before Ambition taught them to devour one another. The *Turks* have now not one Foot of Land in the Happy *Arabia*, as I have shewn above from *Tavernier*.

And so much for A R A B I A.

6 CHALDEA. 7 ASSYRIA.

8 MESOPOTAMIA.

THese Provinces, which properly and originally constituted the *Assyrian Empire*, I have joined together in the Title, because united in the Story and Affairs thereof; though severally to be consider'd in the Description and Chorography of them.

6 CHALDEA.

CHALDEA is bounded on the East, with *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; on the West, with *Arabia Deserta*; on the North, with *Mesopotamia*; and on the South, with the *Persian Bay*, and the rest of *Deserta*: Originally called *Chasdim* from *Chesed* the Fourth Son of *Nachor*, the Brother of *Abraham*. *Chesed quoque quartus est, à quo Chasdim, id est, Chaldaei postea vocati sunt*, as *St. Hierome* hath it. But why the *Chaldeans* should derive their Name from *Chesed*, being a People long before *Chesed's* Birth, I am not able to determine: unless he taught them the first Principles of the Art of *Astronomy*; or was the Author of some signal Benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards *Babylonia*, from *Babylon* the Chief City of it; and at this Day by *Bellonius*, *Azania*; by the *Arabians*, *Kelden*; by the *Turks*, *Curdistān*.

But the Name of *Chaldea* sometimes went beyond those Bounds, taking in some part also of *Mesopotamia*, as appeareth by that passage of *St. Stephen*, saying, *Acts* 7. 2, 3, 4. That the God of glory appeared to our Father *Abraham*, when he was in *Mesopotamia*, before he dwelt in *Charran*; and said unto him, Get thee out of this Country, and from thy Kindred, and come into the Land which I shall shew thee. Then he came out of the Land of the *Chaldees*, and dwelt in *Charran*, &c. Where clearly that part of *Mesopotamia*, which lay next unto *Assyria*, where then *Abraham* was, is included under the Name of *Chaldea*, or the Land of the *Chaldees*. Which I desire the Reader to take notice of, because I must make use of this Observation in another place.

The Country by *Herodotus* said to be so fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily two hundred, and in some places three hundred fold; the Blades of Wheat and Barley being (as he affirmeth) Four Fingers broad. By *Pliny* it is said of the *Babylonians*, That they mowed their Corn twice, and seeded it a third time, or else it would be nothing but Blades; and yet so, that the worst of their Land yielded fifty, and their best an hundred-fold increase. Nor is the nature of the Soil so alter'd in long tract of time, but that (as late Travellers have observed) it would in all likelihood attain to its first Fertility, if it were order'd with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be said as to the Natural Fruitfulness and Delights of this Country, than that it pleased God Almighty to make choice of some part hereof for the *Terrestrial Paradise* or *Garden of Eden*, in which he placed our Father *Adam*, at his first Creation? For there that *Paradise*, by men both skilled in Divinity and Geography, is affirmed to have stood. Yet amongst all sorts of Writers we find different Opinions. Some make *Paradise* to be a place of Pleasure, and the Four Rivers to be the Four Cardinal Vertues; but these Allegories on the Scripture are unwarrantable. Others place it in the Air, under the Circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence, and running all under the Ocean, rise up again in those places where they are now found: But this is so vain a Foppery, that I will not honour it with a Confutation. Such as make *Paradise* local, are divided al-

so into Three Ranks (for I omit the rest) whereof some place it under the *Aequator*; but this agreeth not with the Bounds prescribed by the Holy Ghost. Some conceive the Four Rivers to be *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, *Nilus*, and *Ganges*; and that *Paradise* was the whole World; but this cannot be: For then when *Adam* was driven out of *Paradise*, it must also follow that he was driven out of the World, which were most absurd. Those of the soundest Judgments place it here, in an Island which is made by the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and some Branches running from them both: The uppermost of which is called *Pison*, (falsly rendred *Ganges*) which watereth the Land of *Havilah*, or that part of the Land of *Havilah* which is now called *Chusistan*, or *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and the lowermost is named *Gibon*, (improperly by some translated *Nilus*) which compasseth the East parts of *Arabia Petraea*, by the *Septuagint* for the Reasons above-mentioned, rendred *Aethiopia*. And this agreeth both with the Position of this Country and the course of those Rivers: For that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* (which the *Hebrew Text* called *Hiddekel* and *Perab*) do here join their Streams, is confessed on all sides. Then as for *Pison*, it is no other than that River by *Ptolemy*, called *Basilus*, or *Regius*; by *Curtius* more nearly *Piso-Tigris*, or *Pasi Tigris*, *Perueni: ad fluvium, Pasi Tigrin incolae vocant*, as his own Words are. A little Stream, which watering the Land of *Havilah*, or the Country of the *Charvelei*, or *Chaulasei*, or *Chaulotæi*, (for by these several Names they are called amongst the Ancients, who place them betwixt the *Babylonians*, and the *Nabatheans* and *Arabian People*) poureth it self into the *Tigris*, and falls together with it into the Gulf of *Persia*. And finally for *Gibon* by *Ptolemy*, called *Marfarsis*, and by others *Marfyrus*, it is no other than a Branch of *Euphrates*, which watering the Land of *Chus*, or *Aethiopia Afiatica*, take which Name you will, loseth it self at last in the Lakes of *Chaldea*.

But though in general the Country was extremely fruitful, yet in some places was it covered with a slimy matter, which the overflowing of the Waters, and the nature of the Soil together, did bring forth abundantly. Used by them in their Buildings, instead of Mortar, than which more durable and binding; and therefore chosen for the Cement of the Tower of *Babel*, *Gen.* 11. 3. Some also tell of a Cliff, which opening sendeth out such a stink, that it killeth Birds as they fly over it; and others, of a like open place near a Town called *Ain*, which continually throweth out Boiling Pitch (named therefore *Hell-mouth* by the *Moor*s) filling therewith the adjoining Fields; and that herewith the people use to pitch their Boats. But this in some places only, the Country generally being both healthy and delightful, as before was said.

The people anciently were much addicted unto Sooth-saying and Divinations, and no less noted for being Authors of the first Idolatry that ever was practised in the World. Induced unto the last perhaps by the Power of their Kings, who would needs confer Divine Honours upon some of their Ancestors. But to the first inclined by their own Disposition, and the situation of their Country, yielding a fair sensible Horizon (for the Rational is alike in all places, both in Hills and Valleys) and consequently profitable to the observation of the rising and setting of the Stars, whether *Heliacal*, *Acronical*, *Matutine*, or *Vespertine*, as the Artists phrase it. Whereunto may be added the length of Life in those

elder times, furnishing them with the greater measure of experience, concerning the distinct Motions of each several Orb, and the full period of the courses of each several Planet. Certain it is that they grew so noted in this Art, that at the last every *Astrologaster*, or Figure-flinger, was called a *Chaldean*. *Geneis nomine ad eos homines translato, qui sese illius sapientiae specie venditabant*, as *Beza* has observed in his *Annotations*. For giving too much credit to them, the People thus flouted by the *Satyrist*,

*Chaldaeis sed major erit fiducia quicquid
Dixerit Astrologus, credent à fonte relatum
Ammonis, &c.*

That is to say,

Jove's Oracles no greater credit have,

Than Sooth-sayings of a *Chaldee* cozening Knave.

The Language which was spoken here, had the name of the *Chaldee*, or *Chaldaean* Tongue; of great Antiquity, and sanctified by the Holy Ghost, some Chapters of the Prophecy of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the *Hebrew* in its primitive purity, that the *Jews* did not understand it, as appeareth by the words of the Officers of *Hezekiah*, 2 *Kings* 18 26. desiring *Rabshakab* to speak to them in the *Chaldee* Tongue, that the common people of the *Jews* might not hear his Blasphemies. A further proof may be, That a Man may have some knowledge in the *Hebrew*, and yet be ignorant of the *Chaldee*; as many are, no doubt, at this present day. But whatsoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards when the *Jews* came to live amongst them, during the Captivity: out of whose long commerce with them, both Nations lost their proper Languages, and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syriac*. Of this we spake before, when we were in *Syria* and *Palestine*. And this is now the natural Language of this Country, and its Neighbour *Assyria*; but with a little mixture of the *Greek* and *Arabick*: Not vulgarly spoken elsewhere, for ought I can find; but used by many others in their Sacred Offices, by whom not commonly understood. For in this Language, all the *Seëts* of the Eastern Christians do associate their Publick Liturgies; that is to say, the *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who use the *Greek* Liturgy, amongst the *Seëtaries*.) The like do also the *Indians* or *Christians* of *Saint Thomas*, the *Copties* or *Christians* of *Egypt*, and the poor remainder of the *Christians* in the Isle of *Zocataria*, an Island on the Coast of *Africk*. Used to those Liturgies, when the Language was more understood amongst them; though now worn out of vulgar knowledge, by the overspreading of the *Arabick*, *Tartarian*, and *Turkish* Conquest. In which the Prelates of these Churches having fallen into the great Error of the Church of *Rome*: And without taking notice of the alterations, hapning in the vulgar Tongues of those several Nations, which are united under them in one Opinion, keep up a Language in their Liturgies which they understand not; as if the capacities of the People could be sooner raised to the understanding of an unknown Language, than the publick Liturgies be fitted unto their Capacities. The ancient Piety of the Church, and the modern Languages of God's People, are not inconsistent; though out of private ends some have taught us otherwise. But I fear this error (as some others) will not be so easily remedied, as apprehended. From the Tongue in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, pass we to the Religion it self, whose Sacred Offices are so celebrated.

The Christian Faith was first preached in this Country by *Saint Peter*, of whose being in *Babylon* (the chief City hereof) himself assureth us in the last words almost of his first Epistle: And other business he had none here, but to preach the Gospel. Much persecuted by the *Perfians* (who were then possessed of these parts) it prevailed at last; Christianity growing up the faster for the

cutting down. The Patriarchal See, originally planted in *Seleucia*, Successor unto *Babylon* in repute and greatness, if not also in name; the Bishop thereof, by order of the *Nicene* Council, had the Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction of those parts, with the name of *Catholick*; and the next place in Session, at all publick Assemblies of the Church, next after the Patriarch of *Hierusalem*. And besides this, the *Indians* or *Christians* of *Saint Thomas* acknowledge him for their Pimate or Metropolitan; as they did afterwards in his right, the Patriarch *Muzal*. At this present here are some remainders of Christianity, part of them *Jacobites*, but the most *Nestorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief Rivers hereof we have spoken already; and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our passage forwards: So that without more delay, we may take a view of their principal places. And in the first place, we meet with *Babel*, in the *Hebrew* signifying Confusion, famous for Confusion of Languages, which here hapned. For immediately after the Universal Deluge, *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, the Son of *Cham*, persuaded the People to secure themselves from the like after-claps, by building some stupendious Edifice, which might resist the fury of a second Deluge. This Counsel was generally embraced, *Heber* only and his Family, as Tradition goeth, contradicting such an unlawful attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majesty, 5146 paces from the ground; having its basis and circumference equal to the height. The passage to go up, went winding about the outside, and was of an exceeding great breadth; there being not only room for Horses, Carts, and the like means of Carriage, to meet and turn: But Lodging for Man and Beast, and, as *Versfegan* reporteth, Grass and Corn-fields for their nourishment. But God beholding from on high this fond attempt, sent amongst them (who before were of one Language) a confusion of Tongues; which hindred the proceedings of this Building, one being not able to understand what his fellow called for.

2 *Babylon*, on the Bank of *Euphrates*, the ancientest City in the World on this side of the Flood; first built by *Nimrod*, in the place destinated to the raising of the Tower of *Babel*, and by him made the Seat of his Kingdom: Afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, one of his Successors; and finally, much encreased both in bulk and beauty by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who therefore arrogated to himself the whole glory of it, saying in his Pride, *Is not this the great Babel that I have builded?* *Dan.* 4. 30. A City of great fame and state, accounted one of the Worlds nine Wonders, and deservedly too.

The compass of the Walls 365 furlongs (or 46 miles) according to the number of the days in the year; in height fifty Cubits, and of so great breadth, that Carts and Carriages might meet on the top of them; finished in one year, by the hands of 200000 Workmen, employed daily in it. Situate on both sides of *Euphrates*, over which there was a sumptuous Bridge, and at each end of that Bridge a magnificent Palace: beautified also with the Temple of the Idol *Bel*, and famous for the *Penfile Gardens*, made with great Charge, and born up with most stately Arches. In a word, so great and vast it was, that *Aristotle* saith, That it ought rather to be called a Country than a City: Adding withal, That when the Town was taken, it was three days before the furthest part of the Town could take notice of it. Which taking of the Town must be understood of the surprize hereof by the *Medes* and *Persians*; and not of the taking of it by the *Macedonians*, as *Pet. Ramus* (as great a Clerk as he was) in his Marginal Notes upon the Politicks of that Author, hath most vainly told us. Which, whether it were that there were Gates at the end of every Street, which made it be so long in taking; or that the *Babylonians* were not awakened from their drunken Feast, in the time whereof it was surprized, I determine

termine not. Revolting in the time of *Semiramis*, the news came to her as she was ordering her Hair: whereupon leaving her head half dressed, she went and Besieged it; never ordering the rest of her Hair, till she had recovered it. How it fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, we learn out of *Xenophon's Cyri-paideia*, which was in this manner. The River *Euphrates* ran quite through the Town, round about whose Banks the Politick Prince cut many deep Channels; into which when the *Babylonians* were securely merry at a general Feast, he suddenly drained and emptied the River, conveyed his own Forces into the Town all along the dry and yielding Channel, and in a little time made himself Master of it. From the *Persians* it Revolted in the Reign of *Darius Hystaspes*, and that Sustenance might not be wanting to the Men of War, they strangled the most part of the Women, being thought in Actions of this quality, not so much as necessary evils. When they had for twenty Months so resolutely defended the Town, that the *Persians* had less hope than ever of prevailing; *Zophyrus*, one of *Darius's* Captains, mangling his Body, and disfiguring his Face, by cutting off his Nose and Ears, fled to the *Babylonians*, complaining of the Tyranny of his King. They crediting his Words, and knowing his Prowess, committed the Charge of the whole Army unto him, as a Man to whom such Barbarous usage had made the King irreconcilable. But he taking the best opportunity, delivered both the Town and Soldiers into the hands of his Sovereign; which made *Darius* often say, that he had rather have one *Zophyrus* than twenty *Babylons*. Here died *Alexander the Great*, after whose death the *Grecian* Captains, regardful rather of their own Ambitions, than the common Loyalty, divided the Empire among themselves; leaving the Body of the King eight days unburied. A wonderful change of Fortune, that he, who living, thought the World too small for his Valour, being dead, should find no place big enough for his Body. After this taking of it by the *Macedonians*, the Glories and Magnificence hereof began to decline; lessened unto a fourth part in the time of *Quintus Curtius* the Historian; in solitudinem redacta, reduced to Desolation in the days of *Pliny*; and being turned into a Park, in which the Kings of *Persia* did use to hunt, in the time of *St. Hierom*. That wondrous change occasioned partly by the injury of the time, partly by the neglect of the *Macedonians*, who removed the Seat Royal of their Empire more towards *Greece*: but principally by *Seleucus Nicator*, who offended with the *Babylonians*, built the City of *Seleucia*.

Leonard Rauwolf, a Physician of *Ausperg*, or *Ausberg* in *Germany*, who saw the Ruins of this City in the year 1574. thus describes its present state: By a small Village on the *Euphrates*, called *Fulogo*, or *Fulugo*, is the seat of the old *Babylon*, a day and half Journey from *Bagdad*; the Lands about it are so dry and desolate that one might justly doubt of the fertility of it, and the greatness of this City, if the vast Ruins still to be seen did not Banish all Suspicion. There are still to be seen some Arches of a Bridge over the River which is near half a mile broad, and exceeding deep: These Arches are built with Brick, and wonderfully compacted. A quarter of a mile beneath the Village in the Plains is the Ruins of a Castle, and beyond that the Ruins of the Tower of *Babel*, half a German mile in compass, which is now the safe retreat of Serpents and Venomous Creatures, and amongst them of a Lizard with three heads, called by the *Persians* *Eglo*, and said to be very Venemous. A little above the fall of the *Tigris* into the *Euphrates*, is a City now called *Trax*, but formerly *Apamea*. All that Travel over these Plains will find vast numbers of the Ruins of very Ancient, Great, and Tall Buildings, Arched Towers and such like Buildings of wonderful Architecture, which being now for a long time deserted by all men, are in part sunk down

into heaps of Stone, and in part are yet standing. There is only one Tower, which is called *Daniel's* Tower, still perfect, and inhabited by a Family: From it may be seen all the Ruins of this vast City which lie about it, and sufficiently prove the truth of what Ancient Writers have said of the greatness of this City, by their vast extent. So vast a *Carkass* as this, shows the Mortality of all Human things. Thus far that Author. The Tower of *Babel* was built on the West side of the *Tigris* about eight miles above *Bagdad*, and is now a small Mountain without any entrance, because it was built at first with Bricks only dried in the Sun, each of which is half a yard thick, and three quarters long, between every Course lies a Matt of Canes, as sound as if they had been laid there but the last year. *Hacklutt's Travels*, Tom. 2. p. 25. and 269. It is very probable these Ruins belong rather to *Seleucia* than *Babylon*, by their being seated upon the *Tigris*, and so near to the City of *Bagdad*, whereas *Babylon* stood upon the *Euphrates*, 300 *stadia's* from *Seleucia* to the N. W. or, as *Pliny* saith, ninety miles, which City is placed at the conjunction of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, where *Felengo* is now placed; and it is probable none of the latter Travellers have gone near it, they passing to and fro upon the River, and not cross the Country where the old *Babylon* stood.

3. *Seleucia*, the second City of note in all this Country, situate in a place more commodious and healthy, near the meeting of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and about forty miles more North than *Babylon*; out of which he drew 500000 persons for the Peopling of it. Nor did this new City Rob the old only of its power and greatness, but also of its very name; being called *Babylon* in some of the ancient Authors, *Βαβυλων περσική πόλις, Μετρόπολις Ζελυία χαλμυλων*, as (for one) by *Stephanus*. In the Primitive times of Christianity, the Bishop of this See was accounted for the Primate of the *Chaldeans*; with a superintendency over the *Christians* of *India* also, as before was said. But this Supplanter was in time brought to ruin also. And

4. *Bagdad*, a new City raised from the Ruins of it: built near the Foundations of *Seleucia* by *Bugiafer* the 20th Caliph of the *Mahometans*, at the expence (as some write) of eighteen Millions of Crowns; which, because of the many Gardens contained in it, had the name of *Bagdad*, the word so signifying in the *Arabick* Tongue. First Built upon the Western Bank of the River *Tigris*, near to its confluence with *Euphrates*; but in the year 1095. removed to the other side of the River, by *Mustetabar*, the 45th Caliph of the *Saracens*, because less subject to the Inundations of that furious River. But it was reckoned still for the same City, as if built by *Bugiafer*: by whom being made the Seat of his Royal Residence (whose Successors were from hence called the Caliphs of *Babylon*) it flourish'd in great Pride and Splendor, till taken and sacked by *Allan*, or *Haalon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, who here starved *Musfeatzem*, the last Caliph of it, and rooted out his whole Posterity; as if the Caliphate and the City were to end together. But the Town reviv'd again, tho' the Caliph could not; continuing to this day a City of great Wealth and Traffick, but nothing comparable unto what it was, both for Beauty and Bigness; being not above seven miles in compass, and having nothing in the Buildings to be justly bragg'd of: The *Nubian* Geographer, Page 204. saith, in his time it was a great City, built at first on the west side of the *Tigris* by *Almansur*, and when he wanted Room on that side for his Friends to build on (which is nothing likely) he removed his Army to the other side of the River; so that the City after this became very great. The *Arabians* call it *Dar-Affalam*, the City of Peace: *Almansur* the Caliph begun this City in the year of the *Hegyra* 144. A. C. 761. He had removed the Regal Seat first from *Medina* to *Cufa*, but being provoked by an Insurrection of the Inhabitants of that City

against him, he removed the Second time, and Built *Bagdat* in a round form, and compassed with a double Wall, and placed his own Seat, a Castle in the middle of of it. In the year of the *Hegyra* 369. A. C. 979. it was so Ruined by the Contentions between the *Califs*, that *Adado Daula*, the then *Calif* Re-built the City, Adorning it with new Mosques, Market-places, and cleansing the River, and he also bestowed great Revenues on the Reader of their *Alchoran*. In the Year, 656. A. C. 1258. the *Tartars* took this City, and spent seven days in the Plunder of it.

In the Year 1563. It was a small City, but very Populous, and a great Trade, being a throughfare to *Persia*, *Turkey*, and *Arabia*; on the West side over against it, there was then a fair Suburb joyned to it by a Bridge of Boats chained together; at this time it was under the *Turks*, and it was thought to be two *English* miles in compass, and the *Tygris* by a Sluice might be brought round about the Walls, as Mr. *Hacklutt* observes. *Tom. 2. p. 214. 251, 269.* Taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent, with the rest of the Country, it became Subject to the *Turks* in 1524; from them recovered by *Abas* the King of *Persia*, Anno 1625. and again recovered by the *Turks*; about the year 1638 In which changes it can be no marvel, that she hath lost much of her former splendor. Maintained especially at the present by the Trade of *Aleppo*, to which, besides such Goods as go up the Water, there pass yearly many Caravans, or Troops of Merchants, each of them having in it some hundreds (if not thousands) of Camels laden with Commodities. For whose safe Lodgings, as they pass, (the ways being generally ill provided for Travellers in those Eastern Countries) there are some Houses of Receipt built at the publick Charge, or by some special Benefactor, to preserve his Memory: most of them strong, and many very fair and lovely, which in the Dominions of the *Persians*, they call *Caravane Rarwes*; in the *Turkish*, *Canes*. And for communicating the success of their business unto the place from whence they came, they make use of Pigeons, which is done in this manner. When the Hen-pigeon sitteth, or hath any young, they take the Cock, and set him in an open Cage; whom when they travelled a days Journey, they let go at liberty, and he straight flieth home to his Mate. When they have trained them thus from one place to another, and that there be occasion to send any Advertisement, they tie a Letter about one of their necks, which at their return home is taken off by some of the House, advertised thereby of the Estate of the Caravan. The like is also used betwixt *Ormus* and *Balsora*. But of this enough.

5. *Ctesiphon*, on the River *Tygris*, not far from *Seleucia*, by whose fall it rose; occasioning the decay thereof, as that did of *Babylon*. So *Pliny*, speaking of the fall of *Babylon*, by the Building of *Seleucia* so near unto it; then adding, *invicem ad hanc exhaurientiam*, *Ctesiphontem juxta certum ab ea lapidem condidit* Parthi. First Built, saith *Marcellinus*, by *Vardanes*; afterwards Beautified and Walled by *Pacorus*, a *Parthian* King; and by him made the Seat-Royal of the *Persian* Kingdom. Many times Besieged and Assaulted by the *Roman* Emperors; but most commonly without Success: and among others by *Jukan* the Apostate; that bitter enemy of the Gospel, who here breathed out his Soul to Satan in these dying words, *Vicisti tandem Galilee*. But *Vardanes* (whosoever he was) cannot of right be called the first Founder of it, who raised it rather from the Rubbish of an old Foundation: this City being the same with that which *Moses* calleth *Calne*, and *Ezekiel* *Canneh*, *Gen. 11.* and *Ezek. 27. 23.* and therefore rightly said by *Pliny*, to be Built in *Chalanthide*, or the Region of *Chalne*.

6. *Sipparum*, remarkable for the great Trench made near it, to receive the overflowings of *Euphrates*, which otherwise might have annoyed the City of *Babylon*: in

compass 1280 Furlongs, or 160 Miles; in depth 20 fathoms. A vast and expenceful work; but that nothing was to be admired, when *Babylon* it self was up and in full Prosperity.

7. *Apamia*, A City of *Seleucus's* foundation also, situate at the fall of *Pison* into the River *Tygris*.

8. *Vologesia*, placed by *Ptolomy* among the Cities of *Chaldea*, but by *Marcellinus* in *Affyria*: Built or Repaired by one of the *Vologeses*, Kings of *Persia*, and from him denominated.

9. *Bersippa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Barsita*, memorable for the great Victory which *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch obtained here against *Nabonidus* the King of *Babylon*, by *Scaliger* called *Darius Medus* (of which more anon) whom having vanquished, he pardoned him (as he saith) his life, and gave him the Government of *Carmania*.

10. *Balsora*, a Port-Town to *Babylon*, situate at the fall of *Euphrates* into *Sinus Persicus*, and consequently of great Wealth and Trading: the Riches of *Arabia*, *Persia*, and some parts of *India*, being landed here, and so carried to *Babylon*, and thence up the Water to *Aleppo*. Supposed to be the City of *Theredon*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*; Built or Repair'd by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and not long since taken from the *Turk* by *Abas*, the *Persian*. After the King of *Persia* in 1622. had taken *Ormus*, the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Portuguese* came to this place, and settled their Factories here: Before this time it was subject to the *Turk*. *Frederick Venetus* in 1563. finding it in their hands, and in probability it was won about the sametime with *Bagdat*, viz. 1524. about two Leagues from the City are the Ruins of the ancient City *Theredon*, or *Teredon*; the present Pile stands half a league from the *Euphrates*, and the Tyde runs up beyond it as far as the Fort of *Gorno*. It Revolted from the *Turks* some time since, and *Abbas* King of *Persia* attempted the Conquest of it after he had taken *Ormus*, and *Amurat* after he had taken *Bagdat*; but the *Arabians*, with the assistance of the *Europeans* prevented them from gaining it. *Hussen Emir* (Prince of *Balsora* in 1652. made it a free Port for all the World, and Governed it with great Order and Justice, so that it was thronged with all Nations, and was a Center of Trade between the *Indies* and the rest of *Asia*: and the West and North as far as *Smyrna*, *Constantinople*, and *Moscow*. He took but four per Cent, and yet was able to lay up three millions of *Livres* in a year, his principal gain arising from *Arabian* Horses, Camels, Dates, and Money remitted. The *Christians* of *St. John* are very numerous here, amounting to about 25000 Families, but degenerated for want of the Scriptures, which the *Mahometans* have taken from them: The ill effects of which are excellently described by *Tavernier*, Book 2. Chap. 8. *Avicenna*, the great *Arabian* Physician was born here in Anno Christi 980. and died at *Homada*, aged 58 years. The *Europeans* import Spice, Drugs, and export Wheat, Rice, Drugs, and Horses: About the year 1570, it was one *English* mile in compass, and was walled with Bricks dried in the Sun; in 1583 the *Turks* had 500 Janizaries in Garison in it, but their chief Strength was in thirty well provided Gallies, Armed with Ordnance. From *Ormus* it lies 600 miles. See *Hacklutt*. *Tom. 2. pag. 215. 251, 270.*

7. A S S Y R I A.

A S S Y R I A is bounded on the East with *Media*, from which parted by the Mountain called *Coartas*; on the West with *Mesopotamia*, from which divided by the River *Tygris*; on the South with *Sustana*; and on the North, with some part of *Turkomania*: So called from *Affur* the Son of *Sem*, by whom first Inhabited. But having long since lost that name, as to vulgar speech, it is by *Niger* called *Adrinfa*; by *Mercator*, *Sarb*; by the *Turks*, *Aizerum*.

The Country very plain and level, exceeding fruitful, and abounding in Rivers. For besides *Tygris*, which washeth one whole side thereof, *Ptolomy* assigneth to this

this Country the Rivers of 2 *Lycus*, 3 *Cyprus*, 4 *Gorgos*; all of good note, and all of them increasing, with their tributary Streams, the greatness of *Tigris*.

The People were anciently great Warriours, and together with the *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans*, commanded a great part of the East; extending their Dominion from the *Mediterranean Sea*, to the River *Indus*; inso-much that not the People of this Province only, but of all the Provinces almost of this spacious Empire, had the name of *Assyrians*. The utmost Bounds of the *Assyrian Empire* to the West was Mount *Taurus*, the lesser *Asia* being Subdued after the fall of that Empire, by *Cyrus the Great*: yet in *Syria*, *Palestine* and *Aegypt*, it reached westward to the *Mediterranean Sea*. The Men for all this exceeding Formal in their Habit, wearing long Robes which trailed on the very ground, their Hair long, their Hats or Caps Pyramydal, like the *Persian* Miters; not stirring out of doors but perfumed with Musk, Rings on their Fingers, and a Scepter in their Hands: and very frequent in their washings, especially after Copulation. As for the Women, it was an Ancient Custom with them to expose the Fairest unto Sale in the open Market; and with the Money given for those, to put off such as were deformed, and not so amiable. And hence, perhaps the Fathers of our times have learnt this Lesson, of giving less Portions with such Daughters as will sell themselves; but greasing the fat Sow (as the saying is) with the addition of some hundreds: which made the merry fellow say, *That the Money were a good match if the Wench were away*.

The *Christian Faith* was first here planted by Saint *Jude*, and took such deep root in that Plantation, that it could never be pulled up; notwithstanding the cruel Persecution raised against it, by the Kings of *Persia*: who when they saw there was no means to destroy it by Violence, attempted in the next place to corrupt it with Heresie. And to that end, as also to revenge himself upon the Emperor *Heraclius*, as Great Champion of the Orthodox Belief against *Nestorianism*, *Chosroes* the great King of *Persia*, enforced all the *Christians* of his Empire unto those Opinions, which he knew that the Emperor condemned; permitting none who were counted *Catholicks* within his Dominions. By means whereof, and afterwards for want of Preachers to instruct them otherwise (the *Saracens* having conquered the *Persian Empire*) *Nestorianism* prevailed so far, that it extended over all the Countries East of *Tigris*, as far as *India*; and Northwards too amongst the *Tartars*, of which more hereafter. Governed by their own Patriarch, who resideth at *Mesul*, now the chief City of this Country; and honoured by his People with the Title of *Jacelich*, mistaken or pronounced amiss for *Catholick*: an attribute given anciently to all Orthodox Prelates.

The Opinions held by them as *Nestorians*, were, 1 That there were two Persons in our Saviour, as well as two Natures; but confessing that *CHRIST* from the first instant of his Conception, was both God and Man: 2 That the Blessed Virgin ought not to be called *Our Mother* or the *Mother of God*; but yet acknowledging her to be the *Mother of God the Son*. 3 That *Nestorius* condemned for these Opinions in the third and fourth General Councils, was an holy Man; for whose sake they condemned Saint *Cyril* his professed Antagonist, and all those Councils wherein any Censure was laid upon him. In other points, though differing from the Church of *Rome*, they are right enough (their rejecting Episcopal Confirmation excepted only,) As 1. In celebrating the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper with leavened Bread. 2. Communicating in both kinds. 3. Enjoying no necessity of *auricular Confession*. 4. Contracting Marriages in the second Degree of Consanguinity. 5. Permitting second and third Marriages unto Men in Orders, after the Death of their first Wives. 6. Not praying before the Cross, nor giving religious Worship to the *Crucifix*, or other Images. So much for these *Nestorian* Sectaries, if so named

aright, considering the qualifications added unto their Opinions; now (but corruptly) called *Nestorians*: the greatest Sect of *Christians* in all the East.

The solemnities which these *Christians* use in contracting Marriage, because not very usual, I will here relate: Their Wives they never see till the Day of their marriage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her Parents for her. Agreed upon the Business, they meet in the Chancel of the Church, wherein there is a partition with a hole in it: the Bridegroom and his Friends standing on the one side; the Bride and her kindred, on the other. When there, the *Cassite*, or Church man biddeth the Bridegroom to put his Hand thorow the hole into the Partition, and to take his Bride by the Hand, which he doeth accordingly: the Mother of the Bride, with a sharp pointed Instrument, made of purpose, pricking the Bridegroom's Hand all over, with sufficient eagerness. If when he feelth the smart, he lets go her Hand, they take it for a Sign that he will not love her; but if he hold her fast, and wring her Hand till she cry again, they take it for a very good Omen, and are glad they have so well bestowed her. After the Marriage is consummate, if a Male-child be born unto them, the Father loseth his own name, and is called by the name of his eldest Son: so as if the Father's name be *Moses* and his Son's name *Joseph*, the Father is no more called *Moses* but *Abba Joseph*, or the Father of *Joseph*. So highly did they reverence Marriage, and the Fruit thereof, Posterity.

It was anciently divided into these six parts, 1 *Arraphachitis*, bordering on *Armenia Major*; so called for *Arphaxaditis*, or the Plantation of *Arphaxad* the Son of *Sem*. 2 *Adiabene*, bordering on *Mesopotamia*, so called, quasi *Adiaphans* or inaccessible: because fenced with such unfordable Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, that there was no easie coming to it, *Διὰ δυσχερέων τῶν διαβάνων*, as it is in *Suidas*: or rather for *Adiavena*, from *Diavos* and *Adiavos*, the chief Rivers of it (the same which *Ptolomy* called *Lycus* and *Caprus*) as in *Marcellinus*. 3 *Calacine*, and *Sitacine* from *Sittace*, and *Calach*, two chief Cities of it; of which more anon. 5 *Arbelites*, and 6 *Apolloniates*, from *Apolonia* and *Arbela*, two other of the principal Cities.

Here then we have four of the Cities of *Assyria* brought unto our Hand, 1 *Calach*, one of those four which *Nimrod* built in the Land of *Assur*, *Gen.* 10. 11. and one of them to which the ten Tribes were transplanted by *Salmanassar* 2 *Kings*, 17. 6. and 18. 11. of such esteem in those elder Days, that *Calacine* as *Ptolomy*, or *Calachene* as *Strabo* most rightly calleth it, did take name from hence. 2 *Sittace*, situate about two Miles from the Banks of *Tigris*, in the way from *Babylon* to *Susa*. A City when it gave name to the parts adjoining, both great and populous; well seated in a fruitful Soyl, and well shaded with Trees of several sorts; supposed by the situation of it to be that *Accad*, (or rather built in or near the place of it) which was one of the first four Cities of *Nimrod's Kingdom*. 3 *Arbela*, on the Banks of the River *Caprus*, built as some say by *Belus* (or *Belochus*) *Priscus* an *Assyrian* King, whence it had the name. Near unto which there is a place which *Strabo* calleth *Κρησσοῦρον*, or *Cupressum*, conceived by some to be the place where *Noah* framed the Ark. 4 *Apollonia*, built after the *Macedonian* Conquest, as appeareth by the name, which is wholly *Greek*: not otherwise observable, but for giving the name of *Appoloniates* to the Country adjacent. Add unto these, 5 *Gegnamela*, situate in the middle space betwixt *Lycus*, and *Caprus*, memorable for the last and greatest Battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* the King of *Persia*, who had he made good the Eastern Banks of the River *Tigris*, might easily have hindred the *Macedonians* from coming over the River being so extremely swift and violent, that the *Macedonians* were not able to pass it, but by linking their Hands and Arms together, and making one entire Body to oppose the Current; and therewithal of so great depth, that the Footmen were fain to hold their Bows and

Arrows over their Heads, to keep them from being moistened and made unserviceable. But having miserably lost this Opportunity by the Cowardise of *Mazeus*, who had the keeping of this Pass, he was enforced to venture all upon a Battel; drawing unto this place an Army of 50000 Horse, 200000 Foot, in their account who speak least of it (for *Arrianus* makes it above a Million,) opposed by *Alexander* with no more than 40000 Foot, and 7000 Horse of his *Europæans*; but these victoriously successful: 40000 of the *Persians* slain, (but *Diodorus Siculus* speaks of 90000) with the loss of 300 *Macedonians* only, as is said by *Curtius*. In memory of which notable Victory, a mountain near the place of the Battel, which by *Alexander* called *Nicator*, known by that name to *Strabo*, and some other Ancients. 6 *Riboboth*, another of the four Cities, which *Nimrod* is said to have built in *Assur*; by some supposed to be *Birrba*; an ancient City upon *Tigris*, and bordering so near unto *Mesopotamia*, that by *Ptolomy* it is placed in it. Of which more anon. 7 *Rhesen*, another of the Cities of *Nimrod's* building, seated by *Moses* between *Calach* and *Ninive*, *Gen. 10. 12.* and there commended for a great City. Which Character with the site hereof, have induced some learned Men to think it to be the same which by *Xenophon* called *Larissa*; seated by him on the River *Tigris* much about this place, and said to be a City of such strength and greatness, that it was no less than two *Parasangs*, or four Miles in compass: the Walls in height a hundred Foot, twenty five in breadth; so strongly cemented, that *Cyrus*, who besieged it, could never have taken it, if a casual Eclipse of the Sun had not discouraged the Defendants. But whether this conjecture be good or not, we have here *Larissa* for another of the principal Cities. 8 *Ninive*, by the *Greeks* and *Latins* called *Ninus*; first built by *Nimrod*, and called *Ninive* with relation unto *Ninus*, his Son or Nephew, after the Example of *Cain* whose Steps he followed; of whom is said, that he built a City, and called it after the name of his Son *Enoch*, *Gen. 4. 17.* I know the building of this City is by some ascribed to *Assur*, grounding themselves on that of *Moses*, *Gen. 10. 11.* Out of that Land went forth *Assur*, and built *Ninive*, &c. But I like better of their Judgment, who take *Assur* in this place for the name of the Country, and not of the Man; making the Text to speak of *Nimrod*, and to say of him, *Et egressus est in Assur*, &c. that is to say, And he went forth to *Assur* or the Land of *Assyria*, and there built *Ninive*, *Riboboth*, and the rest there named. A City so enlarged by some of the succeeding Kings, that it came at last to be bigger than *Babylon*, in compass 480 Furlongs or 60 Miles; and therefore said in the Book of *Jonah*, to be a City of three Days Journey in Circuit, as indeed it was: accompting 20 Miles for a Days Journey, according to the common estimate of those elder times; as also of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, in the times succeeding. Nor was that of less Strength than Greatness, the Walls an hundred Foot high, and so broad that three Carts might go abreast on the top thereof: and the whole Walls 1150 Turrets, each of 200 Foot in height: So strong, that it was thought to have been impregnable, especially because of an ancient Prophecy, which signified that the Town should never be taken, till the River became an Enemy to it. A Prophecy which induced *Sardanapalus* to make it the Seat of his War against *Belochus*, and *Arbaces*, then in Arms against him; who having besieged it three Years without hope of Success, at last the River overflowing, carried before it twenty Furlongs of the Wall. Which accident so terrified the effeminate King, that he burnt himself in the midst of his Treasures, and left the Town to the Besiegers. Threatened Destruction by the preaching of the Prophet *Jonah*, it escaped then upon Repentance. But the People going on in their wicked Courses, it was destroyed by *Astyages* King of the *Medes*, that it might no longer be an encouragement to the *Assyrians* to rebel against him, as formerly against some of his Predecessors: and so destroyed, that in the time of Saint *Cyril* of *Alexandria*, as

himself affirmeth in his Comment on the Prophet *Nabum*, *ὅς μὴδὲ ὅποι πρὸ γέροντος ὁρᾶσθαι λοιπὸν*, that one could scarce discern in what place it stood. 9 *Mosul* at this time, and for long since, the chief of *Assyria*; seated on the *Tigris*, and raised out of the Ruins of *Ninive*: of most note for being the ordinary abiding Place of the *Nestorian* Patriarch, who either in this City itself, or the Monastery of St. *Hermes* near adjoining to it, hath his constant Residence. The *Nestorians* in this City so considerable, both in Power and number, that though it be in the Hands of *Mahometans*, either *Turks* or *Persians*; yet there are numbred in it fifteen *Christian Churches*, and at least 40000 Souls. A *Seat* so maligned by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Bishop*) for the greatness of the Jurisdiction which this Patriarch hath, that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, set up an *Anti-Patriarch* against him, to whom he gave the Title of the *Catholic* of *Musal* also; to whom the *Nestorians* dwelling in the Northern Parts of *Mesopotamia*, (if some Writers of the *Papal* Party may be believed) do submit themselves. *Mosul* makes a great shew without the Walls, which are of Free stone, but within it is nothing but Ruins, yet it has many *Christian* Inhabitants, and there is a considerable Trade driven in it. The City is not built on the same side of the *Tigris* the old *Ninive* was; the whole Province is called now by the name of this City, and is Governed by *Turkish* *Basha*, *Tavernier*, p. 71. 10 *Arzeri* of greater strength than *Mosul*, though of less antiquity than repute; from which the whole Province of *Assyria* is now called *Arzurum*. And, 11 *Scheberuzal*, at this time of the greatest note, as being the ordinary residence of the *Turkish* *Beglerbeg* or *Bassa*; who hath 10000 *Timariots*, under his Command, to defend this Country, and be ready for any service, as occasion is.

8 M E S O P O T A M I A.

M E S O P O T A M I A, is bounded on the East, with the River *Tigris*, by whom parted from *Assyria*; on the West, with *Euphrates*, which divideth it from *Comagena*, a Province of *Syria*; on the North, with Mount *Taurus*, by which separated from *Armenia* Major; and on the South, with *Chaldæa*, and *Arabia* Deserta, from which last it is parted by the bendings of *Euphrates* also.

In the Scripture it is called most commonly by the name of *Padan Aram*, that is *Syria* *Culta*; but that name properly belonging to the North-parts of it; *Aram* or *Syria*, because inhabited originally by the *Aramites*, whom the *Greeks* call *Syri*; and *Padan*, or *Culta*, from the fruitfulness and riches of it, exceedingly plentifully stored both with Corn and Wine, and furnished with all necessities for the Life of Man; in that regard by *Strabo* called *Mesopotamia Felix* (The Southern Parts hereof being barren and full of Deserts, not having any herbage in them, *ὅτι ἄλλο σινδριν*, nor any kind of Tree, as we read in *Xenophon*; amongst some of the ancient Writers, had the name of *Arabia*, partly because so like in nature to *Arabia* Deserta, and partly being planted with *Arabian* Colonies. The name which comprehends both Parts is sometimes *Syria Trans-fluvialis*, or *Syria* beyond the River (*Euphrates*), of which see 2 *Sam. 10. 16.* But generally in the *Hebrew* it is called *Aram Narabajim*, which the *Greeks* render properly by *Mesopotamia*, or the Country in the middle of Rivers: environed by *Tigris* on the East, and *Euphrates* on the West and South; the River *Chaboras* or *Aloras*, passing also through it. The *Latins* generally call it by the same name which the *Greeks* had given it; *Priscian* only to shew his faculty in Grammar, calling it *Medamna*; By the *Turks* it is now called *Diarbeck*.

As is the Country, such the People, the most *Adjective* of any we have met with hitherto; able at no time to stand by themselves, but still requiring the addition of some neighbour Nation to be joyned unto them. Nothing

thing that they can call their own, their Name, their Language, nor their Country. Beholden for their Name in the North to Syria; in the South to Arabia: the Chaldeans also putting in for a share, and challenging those parts which lie next Assyria, to belong to them. Their Language anciently the Syriack, at this day the Arabick. Their Country successively subjected to the Babylonians, Assyrians, Medes and Persians. From them first Conquered by the Romans, under the Conduct of Pompey; reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor Trajan; more fully settled and confirm'd by Aurelianus. But being recovered by the Persians, they fell together into the power of the Saracens, and are now commanded by the Turks. Never appearing of themselves on the Stage of Action, but when once God shewed his Mighty Power in their many weaknesses; and raised them up to be a Scourge to the House of Israel, of which see Judges 3. 8. Hired afterwards by Adadazar, King of Syria Zobab, in his War against David; by whom most shamefully defeated, 2 Sam. 10. 16, 18. Yet notwithstanding memorable in the Book of God, for the Birth of Abraham and Rebecca; the long abode of Jacob, and the Birth of his Children, in that respect affording an Original to the Hebrew Nation.

The Christian Faith was first Preached here by S. Thaddæus, one of the seventy Disciples; Anno 43. upon this occasion. Abgarus the Toparch, or Prince of Edessa, one of the chief Cities of this Country, having been long afflicted with an incurable infirmity, and hearing of the Fame of JESUS, beseeched him by a special Message to come and help him: whereunto our Saviour made this Answer, That he could not visit him in person, the things he was to do, whilst upon the Earth, being to be performed only in the Land of Canaan; but that he would take care of his health in convenient time. Accordingly, not long after his Ascension, St. Thomas the Apostle, by immediate Revelation from our Saviour, sent Thaddæus thither; by whom the Prince was cured, and the Gospel Preached, and many of the Nation Converted to it: the Acts whereof together with the Copies of the several Letters from Abgarus to Christ, and from Christ to him, preserved in the Archives of Edessa, were by Eusebius Translated out of the Syriack, and inserted into the Body of his Ecclesiastical History, lib. 1. cap. 14. Once planted, it found good encrease, continuing in the purity of it till about the year 530. at what time one Jacobus Syrus (so called from his Birth and abode in Syria) took upon him the defence of the Errors of Eutyches, touching the Unity of Natures in Christ our Saviour. Whole followers finding the Patriarchs of Antioch too vigilant over them, removed for the most part further off; settling themselves in Babylonia, and Mesopotamia, where they continued in great numbers, Governed by their own Patriarch, to whom the Jacobites in Syria are also subject, who takes unto himself the Title of Patriarch of Antioch, and is successively called Ignatius, as is the undoubted Successor of that Saint and Martyr; superiour in that regard to the Patriarch of Hierusalem, who is also a Jacobite. The Patriarchal See, fix'd in the Monastery of Saphran, near the City of Merdin; but the Residence of the Patriarchs for the most part, at Caramit. The number of Christians under his Obedience, computed formerly at 160000 Families, reduced since unto 50000. That which they hold as Jacobites, distinct from all other Christians is, 1. The acknowledgment but of one Nature, one Will, and one Operation, (as there is but one Person) in Christ our Saviour. 2. In signing their Children before Baptism, in the Face or Arm, with the sign of the Cross imprinted with a burning Iron. 3. Retaining Circumcision, and using it in both Sexes. 4. Affirming the Angels to consist of two Substances, Fire, and Light. And 5. Honouring the Memory of Dioscorus (of Alexandria) and Jacobus Syrus, condemned by

the Ancient Councils. The Points wherein they differ from the Church of Rome:

1. Not enjoying the People the necessity of Confession to a Priest, before they admit them to Communicate.
2. Not admitting Purgatory, nor Prayers for the Dead.
3. Administering the Sacrament of the Eucharist in both kinds.
4. Allowing the Marriage of Priests; And
5. Teaching that the Souls of Men deceased, are not admitted presently to the Vision of God, but remain somewhere in the Earth, to expect Christ's coming. In which last, (setting aside the determination of the place) as they have many of the Fathers concurring with them; so to the first (touching the unity of Natures in our Saviour Christ) they have of late added such qualifications, as possibly may make it capable of an Orthodox sense.

Chief Rivers of this Country (besides Tigris and Euphrates, of which more hereafter,) 1 Chaboras, which rising in Mount Masius, passing directly South, falleth into Euphrates; as also doth 2 Singarus, by Pliny called Masca, arising out of the Mountain Syngarus; which is but the more Western part of the said Mount Masius. Which names of Masca, Masius, and the Masini, (being the name of a People dwelling thereabouts) shew plainly that they go upon very good grounds who place Masch, or Mesech, one of the Sons of Aram, in these parts of the Country.

It was divided anciently into, 1 Anthemasia. 2 Chalcitis. 3 Caulanitis. 4 Accabene. 5 Ancorabitis. And 6 Ingine: each part containing several Cities or Towns of note. These six when Conquered by the Romans, reduced unto two Provinces only, viz. 1 Mesopotamia, lying on the South of Mount Masius, or the head of Chaboras; and 2 Osrhoene, on the North: This last so named from one Osrhoes, the Prince, or Governor of these parts in the time of the Persians, as Procopius telleth us.

Chief place of the whole is, 1 Edessa, the Metropolis of Osrhoene, situate on the River Scirtas, which runneth through the midst of it, not far from the fall thereof into Euphrates. Memorable for the story of Abgarus, before related, among Church Historians: and in the Roman Histories, for the death of the Emperor Caracalla, slain here by the appointment of Macrinus, Captain of his Guard. The occasion this. The Emperor conscious to himself of his own unworthiness, employed one Martianus to enquire among the Magicians in the Empire, who was most likely to Succeed him: by whom accordingly advertised that Macrinus was to be the Man; The Letters being brought to Caracalla, as he was in his Chariot, were by him delivered with the rest of the Pacquet to the hands of Macrinus, (who by his Office was to be attendant on the Emperor's Person) that he might open them, and signifie unto him the contents thereof at his better leisure. Finding by this the danger in which he stood, he resolved to strike the first blow; and to that end entrusted Martialis, one of his Centurions, with the Execution; by whom the Emperor was here killed as he withdrew himself. *Levanda vesica gratia*, as my Author hath it. So impossible a thing it is to avoid ones Destiny; so vain a thing for any Prince to think of destroying his Successor; and therefore it was very well said to Nero, in the times of his Tyranny, *Omnis licet occideris, Successorem tuum occidere non potes*, that though he caused all the Men of Eminence to be forthwith murdered; yet his Successor would survive him, and escape the blow. But to return unto Edessa, in following times it was made one of the four Tetrarchies of the western Christians, when they first Conquered Syria, and the Holy Land: the two first Governours or Tetrarchs, successively Succeeding Godfrey of Bouillon in the Kingdom of Hierusalem. But in the year 1142. it was again recovered by Sanguin the Turk, Father of Noradine,

Noradine Sultan of *Damascus*; and by the loss thereof, no fewer then three Arch-Bishopricks withdrawn from the Obedience of the See of *Antioch*.

Erassia. The *Greeks* Re-built this City, and called it *Callirrhoe* from the fair Streams about it, or the Fountains in it. In the *Roman* times it was called *Justinopolis*: It is now called *Rhoa*, *Orpha*, *Urpha*, and *Urf*. It is by *St. Jerome* said to be the *Erech*, or *Urex*. Built by *Nimrod*, *Gen.* 10. in *Abraham's* time called *Haran*, or *Charan*; rebuilt by *Seleucus* King of *Assyria*, *A. M.* 3653. Taken by the *Saracens* first, *Anno Christi* 637. lost to the *Turks* in 1142. or as some others say, in 1150. This City was the Seat of *Zenobia*, one of the most famous Queens that has lived since the Creation; it is after all a great City at this day, and the Capital of *Diarbeck*, or *Mesopotamia*.

2. *Cologenbar*, another strong piece adjoining, Besieged on the taking of *Edeffa*, by the same *Sanguin*, who was here stabbed in a drunken quarrel by one of his familiar friends; and the Fort saved for that time.

3. *Nisibis*, situate somewhat to the East of Mount *Masius*, called also *Antiochia Migdonia*, from the River *Mygdonius*, which runneth through it, and afterwards *Constantia*, from *Constantius* the Son of *Constantine*. A City of great note in those elder times, a *Roman* Colony, and the Metropolis of the Province of *Mesopotamia*, properly and specially so called: which being Besieged by *Sapores* the King of *Persia*, (*Constantius* Ruling in the East) and in no small danger to be lost, was gallantly defended by *James*, the then Bishop of it, whom *Theodoret* calls not only, *Episcopum Civitatis*, sed *Principem & Ducem*, not the Bishop only of the City, but the Prince and Captain of it, *lib. 2. cap. 31*. So little inconsistency was there found in those early days, betwixt the Episcopal Function and Civil Business, that the Bishops were not interdicted from the Acts of War, when the necessities of the State did invite them to it. The City not long after most unworthily delivered to the said *Sapores*, by the Emperor *Jovinian*; which drew along with it, in short time, the loss of the Province. It is at this day a considerable City, and an Arch-Bishop's See, and the Capital of a *Turkish* Prefecture, called a *Sanguack*, and now call'd *Nesbin* by the *Turks*.

4. *Ur*, Seated on the East of *Nisibis*, betwixt it and *Tigris*; and so placed by *Ammianus* who had Travelled this Country; conceived to be the Birth-place of *Abraham*, and called *Ur of the Chaldees*, *Gen.* 11.28. either because the *Chaldees* were in those days possessed of the place, or because the name of *Chaldaea* did comprehend also those parts of this Country which lay towards *Tigris*, as was shewn before. For that the place from which *Terah* the Father of *Abraham* did return to *Haran* in *Mesopotamia*, was rather situate in this Coast where *Ur* is placed by *Ammianus*, then betwixt the Lakes of *Chaldaea* and the *Persian* Gulf, where most Writers place it, may appear probable for the reasons which are here subjoyned. 1 Because it is said *Joshua*, Chap. 24. 12. That *Terah* the Father of *Abraham*, and the Father of *Nachor*, dwelt on the other side of the *Flood*; that is to say, on the further side of the River *Euphrates* and that to *ἀπ' ἑξῆς* as the *Septuagint*; *ab initio*, as the *Vulgar Latine*, in the first beginning. Which cannot be understood of any *Ur*, placed on, or near the Lakes of *Chaldaea*, those being on this side of that River. 2 Because all the rest of *Abraham's* Ancestors from *Phalg* downward, were seated in the Northern parts of *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia*; and it were strange that *Terah* should be planted so far from the rest of his Kindred. 3 Because from *Ur* in *Mesopotamia*, near the Banks of *Tigris*, the way to *Canaan* (to which *Terah* did intend to go) was directly by *Haran*; whereas if he had dwelt (as some say he did) by the Lakes of *Chaldaea*, his way had been directly West thro' *Arabia Deserta*, and not to have Travelled with his Family so far North as *Haran*, and then to have fallen

back as much Southward, as he had gone Northward, crossing *Euphrates* twice with his Herds and Cattel. 5 *Haran*, the place to which *Terah* did remove, when he went from *Ur*; and from which *Abraham* did remove, when he went towards *Canaan*, so named in memory of *Haran* the Son of *Terah*: but called afterwards by the name of *Carrae*, and by that name well known to the *Roman* Writers for the death of *Crassus*, that wealthy *Roman*. Whose Estate (besides the tenth which he offered to *Hercules*, and three Months Corn distributed amongst the Poor) amounted to 7100 Talents which comes in our Mony to one Million 331250 *l*. But all his Wealth could not preserve him from the Slaughter, slain near this City with the routing of his Army also, by *Herodes* King of *Parthia*: of which briefly *Lucan*,

————— *miserando funere Crassus*
Assyrias Latio macularit sanguine Carros.
Which may be Englished to this purpose,
By a defeat lamented *Crassus* stains
With *Roman* blood the *Assyrian* *Carrae* Plains.

Called the *Assyrian Carrae* by Poetical licence, because the *Assyrians* formerly had been Lords thereof. And no less memorable was it in the times foregoing, for a famous Temple of the Moon, Worshipped here (but in no place else) under both Sexes; some honouring it as a Female Deity, then called *Dea Luna*; and others in the shape and dress of a Man, and called *Deus Lunus*. But with this Fortune and Success, as saith *Spartianus*, *qui Lunam foemineo homine putabat nuncupandum, is mulieribus semper inserviat* that they who Worshipped it in the form of a Woman, should be always subject to their Wives (I troth there were but few of that Religion) *qui vero Marem Deum crederet, is Uxori dominetur*: but he that Worshipped it as a Man, should preserve the Mastery. 6 *Amida*, near the River *Tigris* the Metropolis of *Mesopotamia*, when one Province only, and before it fell into the hands of the *Romans*; much beautified by *Constantius* Son of *Constantine*, by whom named *Constantia*. But that new name dying with him, the old revived: of great strength, as a Frontier Town against the *Persians*, and by them much aimed at. Honoured of late times with the residence of the Patriarch of the *Jacobite Christians*, as the chief City of this Province; for this cause also made the dwelling of the *Pseudo-Patriarch* of the *Nestorians* (or *Nostranes*) of the Popes Election; and the chief Seat also of the *Bassa* or other Officer, governing this Country for the *Turks*, by whom called *Caramit*, or *Rara Amida*, that is to say, *Amida the Black*, because it was Walled with black stone. This City is called *Diarbequir* as well as *Caramit*, by the *Turks*, and from it the whole Province is called *Diarbeck*. It is situate (saith a late Traveller, who saw it) on the right side of the *Tigris*, upon a rising ground, and is encompassed with double walls, strengthened with sixty Towers. It has three Gates, one of which has an Inscription in Greek and Latin, with the name of *Constantine* in it; It has two or three fair Piazza's and a beautiful Mosque, which was once a *Christian* Church. The Soil about it is good, yielding Bread and Rich Wine in abundance, and very cheap. The City is well Peopled, having in it about 20000 *Christians*. The *Bassa* of this place is one of the *Visiers*, and is able to bring 20000 Horse into the Field. *Anno Christi* 359, the *Romans* received near this place a great Defeat from *Sapores*, King of *Persia*, who took this City from *Constantius* (and *Julian*, Rebelling soon after against him) forced him to a dishonourable Peace, in the year 361. which was the last year of *Constantius's* Reign. *Tavernier*, page 104. The *Turkish* Governour a *Beglerbeg*, has a Revenue of 1200660 *Aspers*. *Rycant*, page 52 7 *Phalga*, or *Phaliga*, at the meeting of *Chaborus* with *Euphrates* not far from *Carrae*, mentioned by *Stephanus*, and *Arrianus*; and

and by *Ptolemy* mistakingly called *Ibarga*; the Seat or first Plantation of *Phaleg*, one of *Abraham's* Ancestors. *Serug*, another of them, giving name to 8 *Sarug*, about a days Journey off from *Haren*, spoken of by some latter Writers. 9 *Syngara*, on the River so named, a fortified City in the times of *Ammianus*, by whom mentioned, *Lib. 20.* 10 *Bezabde*, mentioned by the same Author, by whom said to have been a very strong Fort, seated on a pretty high Hill, and bending towards the Banks of *Tigris*, before whose Times it had anciently been called *Phanicha*. Both these places were taken by *Sapor* King of *Persia*, in the Year 360. 11 *Verta*, supposed to have been the work of *Alexander the Great*, circled with Walls, environed with Half-moons and Bulwarks, and made unaccessible; in vain besieged by *Sapor* the *Persian* King, after the taking of *Bezabde*. The same perhaps with the *Birtha* of *Ptolemy*. 12 *Merdin*, not far from which in the Monastery of *Sapbran*, is the Patriarchal See of the *Jacobite* Sectaries. The Cities of this Province that are now in being are recorded thus by *Tavernier*, p. 142. *Bir.* 2 *Car-emir* or *Caramit*, and *Diarbequir*. 3 *Ourfa*. 4 *Mosul*. 5 *Gezire*, and 6 *Merdin*. *Bir* is in probability the same with *Urtu* or *Birtha*; above it is seated on the East side of the *Euphrates*, and Passengers cross to it in Ferry-Boats. The Inhabitants call it *Berygeon*; it is large, and built on the Brow of an Hill; below upon the River stands a Castle, which has one Tower that scowrs the River with 8 or 9 *Culverins*; in the highest part stands another Castle, in which the Governor resides, who is an *Agá*, and has under him a Garison of 200 *Janizaries*, and 400 *Spahies*: The City is small and ill built, but it has plenty of Bread, Wine, and Fish; *Tavernier*, p. 67. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. p. 213, 251. *Ourfa* is described in *Edeffa*; *Mosul* is placed above by our Author in *Affyria*. *Gezire* is a small City, 20 Miles N. of *Nesbin*, built upon an Island in the *Tigris*, over which there is a Fair Bridge of Boats, and it is under a Beggar Prince of its own: Their best Trade is Galls and Tobacco, which grow in vast quantities in the Plains of *Taurus*, from whence it is brought to this City, and so transported thence into *Turky*. These Two Merchandizes make this City exceeding Rich. 6 *Merdin* lies in the Confines of the Greater *Armenia*, 20 German Miles from *Caramit* to the East; it is a little City built on a Mountain well walled, having a Fair Fountain replenished from the Castle, which stands on the North side of the City; on a Commanding Ground in it lives a *Basha*, who has under him a Garison of 200 *Spahies*, and 400 *Janizaries*, *Tavernier*, p. 69. The *Nubian Geographer* reckoneth 7 *Cusa*, as a City of this Province, which is by others ascribed to *Chaldea*; this was anciently a great and a populous City, and was the Residence of the *Caliph*, before they built *Bagdat*, renowned also and much frequented by the *Persians*, because *Ali* the Son in-Law of *Mahomet* was buried here, who is their Patron, and to whom they made Pilgrimages yearly; but the latter Kings of *Persia* have turned their Devotion another way, to avoid paying Tribute to the *Turks*, by which the City is become very small and poor, and almost desolate, it wanting Provisions and good Water, *Tavernier* pag. 62. The first Inhabitants of these Countries, though united from the first beginning under the same Princes and Form of Government, came from several Families; all the Three Sons of *Noah* concurring as it were in this Plantation. From *Nimrod*, *Ham*, and others of the Posterity of *Chus* the Son of *Ham*, came the *Babylonians*; with whom *Chesed* the Son of *Noah*, of the House of *Sem*, intermingling Families; or being the Author of their Language, or of some other signal Benefit, gave to them the Name of *Casdim*, whence came that of *Chaldeans*. From *Affur*, *Arphaxad*, and those of *Arphaxad's* Posterity, intermingled with the Sons of *Mash* the Son of *Aram*, came the *Mesopotamians* and *Affyrians*. And that *Japhet* also and his Children may put in for a part, the

Neighbourhood of the *Indians* and *Arabians* descended from him, makes it probable.

But whatsoever Parents they descended from, *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, made to hold with them, as to bring them under his Command; planting in *Chaldea*, the Cities of *Babylon*, and *Uruk*, in *Assyria*, *Mosul*, *Rebim* and *Calach*; and finally *Babylon* (if that were *Babylon*, as some think it was in *Mesopotamia*). By these strong Forts he curbed the Nations, and assured his Power; being the first that altered the Paternal Form of Government, and drew unto himself the Government of several Nations, not paying any dependance upon one another. The Foundation thus laid by him, his Successors soon raised the Building to a wondrous height, advancing the *Assyrian* Empire from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the River *Indus*, and that too in a shorter time than could be imagined, but that the World was then divided into petty States, not cemented together with the ligaments of Power and Policy. For so there be little found of *Belus* the Son of *Nimrod* but that he spent most part of his time in draining the Marshes, and making firm Ground of those vallies which lay near to *Babylon*, which were Works of Peace; yet by these and the like Works of Peace, he so settled his Affairs at home, that he gave his Son *Ninus* the better opportunity to look abroad; who mightily improved his Empire, and was the greatest and most powerful of all that Line, extending his Dominions from the River *Indus*, to the *Mediterranean*; and from the *Caspian* Sea to the *South* Ocean. His Successors we shall find in the following Catalogue of

The *Affyrian* Monarchs.

A. M.

- 1798 1 *Nimrod*, called by some *Saturnus Babylonius*, the Son of *Chus*, and Nephew of *Cham*, was the first who altered the Paternal Government, and usurped Dominion over others; making *Babylon* his Imperial City.
- 1845 2 *Belus* or *Jupiter Babylonius*, the Son of *Nimrod*, whose Image was worshipped by the old Idolaters under the Name of *Bell* and *Baal*. 62.
- 1907 3 *Ninus*, the Son of *Belus*, conquered *Armenia*, *Syria*, *Media*, *Bactria*, and the *Persian* Provinces; and removed the Imperial Seat to *Ninive*, by him much beautified and enlarged. 52.
- 1959 4 *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, subdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indians* also, she was vanquished and slain by their King *Stauvobates*. Of this great Lady it is said, That she was born in *Acalon*, a Town of *Syria*, and exposed to the Fury of Wild Beasts. But being born not to die so ingloriously, she was brought up by Shepherds, and at full age presented to the *Syrian* Vice-roy, who gave her in Marriage to his only Son. Going with him to the Wars, she fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her Person and Spirit, took her to his Bed. This bred in him a greater Affection towards her, so that he granted her at her Request the Command of the Empire for Five Days; making a Decree, That her Will in all things should be punctually performed: Which Boon being gotten, she put on the Royal Robes, and (as some Writers do report) commanded the King to be slain. Having thus gotten the Empire, she exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army consisting of one hundred thousand Chariots of War, Three Millions of Foot, and half a Million of Horse. A Woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded.

ed, but her insatiable Lust : in which, if the Greek Writers say true (as we have no reason to believe it of so gallant a Woman) she was very guilty.

2001 5 *Ninus II.* the Son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.

2039 6 *Arias* 30.

2069 7 *Arabius* 40.

2109 8 *Belus II.* 30.

2139 9 *Amamitrites*.

2177 10 *Belochus Priscus* 35.

2212 11 *Belochus Jun.* called also *Balaus* 52.

2264 12 *Altades* 32.

2296 13 *Mamitus* 30.

2356 14 *Mancalcus* 30.

2326 15 *Spherus* 20.

2376 16 *Mancalcus II.* 30.

2406 17 *Sparetus* 40.

2446 18 *Ascatades* 40.

2486 19 *Amintes* 45.

2511 20 *Belochus Jun.* 45.

2556 21 *Bellopares* 30.

2586 22 *Lamprides* 22.

2618 23 *Safares* 20.

2638 24 *Lampares* 20.

2668 25 *Panmas* 45.

2713 26 *Scromas* 19.

2732 27 *Mitreus* 27.

2759 28 *Tatanes* 32.

2791 29 *Tantes* 40.

2831 30 *Tineus* 30.

2861 31 *Dercillus* 40.

2901 32 *Eupales* 38.

2939 33 *Loastines* 45.

2984 34 *Pyritbiades* 30.

3014 35 *Ophrateus* 20.

3084 36 *Ophraganeus* 50.

3084 37 *Ascrasapes* 24.

3126 38 *Sardanapalus*, by *Eusebius* called *Tonoscoes*, the last King of this Race. Of which, being 38

in all, there is scarce any thing remaining but the very names, registred in this order by *Berosus*, or rather by *Frier Annus* a Monk of *Viterbium* in *Tuscany*, who hath thrust upon the World the Fancies of his own Brain, under the Name of that Ancient Historian. The chief Kings of note after *Semiramis*, were,

1. *Ninus*, or *Zameis* her Son ; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants subdued the *Arians*, *Bactrians* and *Cassians*, but was otherwise a man of effeminate and unkingly Carriage. And therefore is conceived to be the Elder *Bacchus*, so much celebrated amongst the *Grecians*.

2. *Belus* the Second, who recovered that Country which afterwards was called *Judea*, to the *Assyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predecessor, (on the defeat of *Amraphel*, one of his Lieutenants, by the Sword of *Abraham*;) and subdued many other Nations.

3. *Belochus Priscus*, the Tenth King, who by some Writers is said to be the Author of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Auspicium* : For of Sooth-saying there were in all four kinds.

1. This *Auspicium*, *quasi Avispicium*, taken from the flight of Birds, either on the Right Hand or on the Left; (and hence the Proverb cometh, *Avis sinistra*, good luck, because in giving, the Right Hand is opposite to the Receivers Left) or from the number of Birds, whence *Romulus* had promised to him the Empire before his Brother, because he had seen the double number of Vultures ; or lastly, from the nature of them : whence the same *Romulus*, seeing the Vultures, was (saith *Florus*) *specie plenius urbem bellatricem fore, ita illi sanguinis & praeae assuetas aves pollicebantur*.

2. *Auspicium*, *ab Aras inspiciendo*, in which the Sooth-sayers observed whether the Beast to be sacrificed came to the Altars willingly, or not : whether the en-

trails were of natural Colour, exulcerate &c. or whether any part were wanting. All Histories afford variety of Examples in this kind ; I need give no particular Instance. A kind of *Divination* said to be practised first by the *Tuscans*, or *Hebrurians* ; instructed in the knowledge thereof by one called *Tages*, who appearing to certain Plough-men out of a Furrow, taught them this Mystery, and so vanished.

3. *Tripudium*, so called *quasi Terripudium*, and *Terripavium*, from the trembling or shaking of the Earth, was a conjecture of future successes, by the rebounding of Crumbs cast unto Chickens. We have an Instance of this in the Life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being seditiously busie in promoting the Law *Agraria*, was forewarned by the keeper of his Chickens to desist from that Enterprize ; because when he had thrown the Crumbs to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickens only, and the same without eating went back again ; which was taken for a sign of Ill-luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been good : But *Tiberius* slighting the Advertisment, and pursuing his Design, was the same day slain.

4. *Augurium*, so called *ab avium garritu*, was a Prediction from the chirping and chattering of Birds ; as also from the Sound and Voices heard they knew not whence, nor on what occasion. In which latter kind the death of *Cæsar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his House ; and the poisoning of *Germanicus* by the sounding of a Trumpet of its own accord. In the former, an Owl screeching in the Senate-house, was deemed ominous to *Augustus* ; and a company of Crows following *Sejanus* to his House with great noise and clamour, was judged to be fatal to that great Favourite ; and so it proved.

4. *Manitus*, the Thirteenth King, who revived again the ancient Discipline, corrupted by the slothfulness and effeminacy of his Predecessors, and by the terror of his Name awed the *Egyptians*.

5. *Ascades*, the Eighteenth King, more absolute in *Syria* and the Western Parts, than any of the Kings before him.

6. *Sardanapalus*, the last King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern so great an Empire, gave opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conspire against him. By whom, associated by *Belochus* Governor of *Babylon*, he was besieged in the City of *Ninive* ; and there reduced unto such Extremities, that gathering his Treasures all together, he burnt himself and them in one Funeral Pile. *Eosolum factum virum imitatus*, as is said by *Justin*. The Treasure which he is said to have burnt with him, amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of Gold, and a thousand Millions of Talents of Silver ; which in our *English* Money comes to Twenty Thousand and Five Hundred Millions of Pounds. A Mass of Money, which as it must be long in gathering, so probably it had not seen the Sun in many Years, and therefore grown rusty, might require a Fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be, to end his Life with that, in which he placed his *Summum Bonum*. It may be in spite unto his Enemies, and it is possible it might be in policy, that so great a Treasure not falling to the possession of his Foes, might so much the more disable them from making resistance against, or detaining the Empire from his next rightful Successors. For it is of all things most foolish, both to lose our Treasure, and with it to enrich our Adversaries. On which consideration the *Spaniards* fired their *Indian* Fleet at *Gades*, and the *Genoese* theirs at *Tripolis*, that their Lading might not come into the possession of their Enemies, the *English* and *Mahometans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Media*, and *Persia*, with the confining Provinces ; *Belochus* strengthened himself in *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdom being called the new Kingdom of *Assyria*.

The new Kings of Affyria, and Chaldaea.

- A. M.
- 3146 1 Phul Belochus, the beginner of this new Monarchy, or Race of Monarchs.
- 3194 2 Phul Assur, destroyed Galilee, and subdued the Kingdom of Damascus; the same who is called Tiglath Pileser in the Holy Scriptures.
- 3217 3 Salmanassar, who Destroyed Samaria, and Ruined the Kingdom of Israel, and carried the ten Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the Nabonassar of the Chronologers.
- 3227 4 Senacherib, whose Blasphemous Host was vanquished by Angels from Heaven, and he himself murdered by his two Sons, Adramelech and Sharezer. 7.
- 3233 5 Assarhaddon, who Revenging his Father's Death on his Brothers, was Deposed by his Deputy of Chaldaea, and the Seat-Royal transferred from Ninive to Babylon. 10.
- 3243 6 Merodach Baladan, Governor of Eabylon. Succeeded his Master in the Throne, conceived by some, to be the Mardocempades of Ptolomy; by others, to be also the same King who by his Captain Holofernes did so plague Judaea.
- 3283 7 Ben. Merodach, the Son of Merodach Baladan. 21.
- 3304 8 Nabopolassar, who vanquished Pharaoh Necho King of Egypt. 25.
- 3339 9 Nabuchodonosor the great, by some called the Hercules of the East, who Conquered Egypt in the life of his Father; with whom he Reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of Babylon. He joyned also with Astyages King of the Medes, in subverting the proud City of Ninive; and in the eighteenth year of his Reign destroyed Hierusalem, and carried the People Captive unto Babylon. But in the last seven years of his Reign he was so Distracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beasts of the Field; according to the Word of God spoken by Daniel, Chap. 4. during which time his Son Evilmerodach, his Daughter Niccoris, with Niglissat her Husband, and Laborasoradach their Son, Governed his Empire as Protectors; and therefore are by some reckoned as Kings. Finally, Nebuchadnezzar having recovered his Senses, was again restored unto the Throne; and died, when he had Reigned in all forty four years.
- 3383 10 Evilmerodach, the Son of Nebuchadnezzar, slain by Astyages King of the Medes. 26.
- 3409 11 Baltassar, Son of Evilmerodach (the Nabonidus of Berosus) a Prince of a dissolute and cruel Nature, was in the latter end of his Reign Assailed by Cyaxares the Son of Astyages (whom the Scriptures call Darius Medus) and by Cyrus the Persian: by whom he was slain in the seventeenth year of his Reign, and the Empire of the Babylonians was transferred to the Medes and Persians.

A. M. 3426.

That this was the end of Baltassar, is the common opinion. But Josephus Scaliger in his learned and industrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be slain in a Tumult by his own People: who Elected into the Empire a Noble-man of the Medes, called in Prophane Stories, Nabonidus, in Divine, Darius Medus; who after a 17 years Reign was slain by Cyrus King of the Persians. But by the leave of so worthy a Man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord by his Prophet Jeremy,

had pronounced (*Chap. 27.*) That all Nations should serve Nebuchadnezzar, and his Son, and his Son's Son; whereas Nabonidus was a Prince of strange Blood, and so the Nations were not to serve him: and in Baltassar, the son's-son of Nebuchadnezzar, was this word accomplished. But let us examine his Argument, and withall the scoffs which very prodigally he bestoweth on such as maintain the contrary opinion: *N. r. o. Chronologorum*, the whole rout of Chronologers: *boni & diligentes viri*: good simple meaning men; & *addunt alia nihil veriora*; are his first Complements. *Ut igitur quod Chronologorum est, omnes recipiant*, &c. therefore that they may repent their ever being Chronologers, he bringeth in Berosus, cited by Josephus, in his first Book against Apion. But Berosus there maketh Nabonidus (to whom he saith the Kingdom of Baltassar was by the People delivered) to be a Babylonian, and not as Scaliger would have him say, a Noble-man of the Medes; neither can the Authority of Berosus countervail that of Daniel who, in Chap. 6. telleth Baltassar, that his Kingdom should be divided among the Medes and Persians. His second Argument is drawn from the nature of the word, *δ' αὐτῶν τῶν ἀσσυρίων*, as it is in the same Chap. and Darius the Mede took the Empire, by which word *took* is implied (saith he) not a forcible Invasion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we answer, that Darius indeed took the Empire quietly and willingly, being offered unto him by Cyrus, and his Army consisting of Medes and Persians, who according to the Word of God, had taken it from Baltassar, Darius being then absent. *Quid si probavero* (saith he) *cum cognominatum fuisset Medum?* He hath yet one trick more than all these; and Medus must not be the National name, but the fir-name of Darius; which he proveth out of a fragment of Megasthenes, cited by Eusebius, in his work *De Preparatione Evangelica*, where he is called *Μέδης*, *συβασιτὴς ἑσται Μέδης*, &c. an argument of all others the most slight and trivial. For besides that *Μέδης* may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and besides that it thwarteth the places of Jeremy and Daniel, already quoted; it is diametrically opposite to another place of the same Daniel, in his ninth Chapter, where he is called, *Darius, of the Seed of the Medes*. Of this Darius more anon when we come into Media. As for Nabonidus, questionless he was the same with Baltassar. For besides that Josephus and Berosus attribute to either of them the Reign of 17 Years, the same Josephus (who might best know the truth in this case) telleth us that Baltassar was by the Babylonians called Nabonidus, a name not so great a stranger to Nabonidus, as Scaliger's Darius, or Herodotus's Labinitus. But in this we must pardon Joseph. Scorn and Contradiction was a part of his Essence. For had he not been in some things singular, in all peremptory, he had neither been a Scaliger, nor the Son of Julius.

But leaving Joseph to the singularity of his own conceits, we find nothing done by the Affyrians or Chaldeans after this Subjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of so great an Empire. Successively enslaved by the Medes, Persians, and Macedonians; then by the Persians again, afterwards by the Saracens, next by the Turks, a third time by the Persians, once again by the Turks of the Ottoman Family, unto whom now subject: never endeavouring to assert in the way of War, or Opposition, either their ancient Reputation, or their native Liberties; but suffering themselves to be won, lost, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrellsome Masters; as if they had no Title to their own Country, but were born to follow the Fortunes of all Pretenders. The reason of which is principally to be ascribed to the form of Government used amongst the Persians. Which was so despotical and absolute, if not tyrannical, that they held all the People Conquered by them in the nature of Slaves, not suffering any to grow great in a state of Inheritance, or to enjoy any place of

Power and Profit under them in the Conquered Provinces, but at the pleasure of the Prince; as it is now used among the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Empire. By means whereof, the Great Men having no Alliance among themselves, and as few Dependants among the People, were never able to make head against the Conqueror; but in the fall of the present Prince fell, together with him: it being a good Rule of *Machiavel*, that where the Ancient Nobility is in good regard, linked in Alliances with themselves, and well respected by the common and inferior People; there it is difficult for the Invader, though a Conqueror, to win a Country, and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other side, where the Nobility is quite worn out, and the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of Slaves, there both the Conquest will be easie, and soon assured. For to what purpose should the Subjects resist the Conqueror, or stand any longer to their King, than he stands to himself, when they are sure the Conqueror can lay upon them no heavier burdens than they were accustomed to before, and have withal a flattering hope, that their new Masters may be gentler to them than their former were? It fares no other wise with them than with *Esop's* Ass, which refused to take the opportunity of an escape from the hands of the Enemy, by which he was taken, because he knew it was not possible they should lay more load upon his back than his old Master made

him bear. To which Condition the *Chaldeans* and *Assyrians* being brought by the *Persians*, and never accustomed to the taste of a better Fortune, have followed the same Successes as the *Persians* did, falling together with them from one hand to another: the particular account of whose estate we shall find in *Persia*; taking this only for the close, That when *Solzman* the *Magnificent* had discomfited *Tamás* King of *Persia*, and taken the great City of *Bagdat*, *Caramit*, *Merdin*, and the rest, both in *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and *Mesopotamia*, submitted to him without any resistance, and received his Garisons. And for a confirmation of his estate, he received at the hand of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* (who by an old Prerogative had the Nomination, or Confirmation, at the least, of the Kings of *Assyria*, and the Sultans of *Egypt*) the Royal Ornaments and Ensigns, *An.* 1534. incorporating by that means those Regions into his Estates, and making them Provinces of his Empire; in which he left a *Beglerbeg* at *Bagdat* to Command in Chief, and divers *Sanziacks* in their severall and respective Provinces. And tho' the *Persian* Kings have since taken and are still possessed of some places of Importance in them; yet I account them in regard of the said Investiture, and the long possession following on it, for Provinces of the *Turkish* Empire: as I do *Media* of the *Persian*, tho' some pieces of it be possessed by the *Turks*.

MOUNT TAURUS.

MOUNT TAURUS is a constant and continual Ridge of Hills, which extend from the *Mediterranean* to the *Indian Seas*; running through the whole length of *Asia*, from West to East, and dividing it, as the *Aequator* doth the *Globe*, into North and South. It was called *Taurus* from the word *Tur* or *Taur*, which in the *Syriac* and *Chaldean* signifieth a Mountain; the common name of all high Mountains being made peculiar unto this, by reason of its greatness and continued length: yet so, that it had other names also in some parts thereof, according to the Regions and Nations by which it passed, and on which it bordered. The Course whereof is thus set down by *Sir Walter Rawleigh*: premising only, that it beginneth in the Province of *Lycia*, a Region of *Asia Minor*, near the *Mediterranean*. These Mountains (saith he) which sunder *Cilicia* from the rest of *Asia*: the less, on the North thereof are called *Taurus*; and where they part it from *Comagena* a Province of *Syria*, they are called *Amanus*. On the East side of the River *Euphrates* (which forceth it self a way through it) it sometimes resumeth the name of *Taurus*, as in *Strabo's* three first Tables of *Asia*, and sometimes taketh the name of *Niphathes*, as in the fourth: retaining that uncertain appellation, so long as they bound *Armenia* from *Mesopotamia*. After the River *Tigris* hath also cut them asunder, they continue the name of *Niphathes* altogether, until they separate *Assyria* and *Media*, but then they call themselves *Coatras*: altho' between the upper and lower *Media*, they appear not always, but are seen discontinued, and broke in pieces: such parts of it as are found in the middle of that Country, being called *Orantes*; those which lie more towards the East being named *Coronus*, out of the Southern parts whereof issueth the River of *Bagradus*, which divideth the ancient *Persia* from *Caramania*. Continuing further Eastward by the name

of *Coronus*, they give unto the *Parthians* and *Hyracians*, their proper Countries; and afterwards change themselves into the Mountains of *Scriphi*, out of which riseth the River *Maurgus*. And now beginning to draw towards the end of their Course, they first make themselves the South Borders of *Bactria*, and are then known by the name of *Parapamisus*; and after take unto themselves the name of *Caucasus*, where the famous Rivers, *Indus*, *Hydaspes*, and *Zarædrus*, have their first beginnings. In this point do they hold their heads exceeding high, to equal the Mountains of *Imaus*; whom they encounter within the 35, 36, and 37 Degrees of Latitude, and the 140 Degree of Longitude: known by no other name than this, till finally they terminate their Course in the *Indian Seas*. So far, and to this purpose, that noble Gentleman. It may be added hereunto, that though the ancient Writers could trace the course of this Mountain, no further than the meeting of it with *Imaus*; yet latter Observations follow it to the Wall of *China*: the parts beyond *Caucasus* being not known by the names of *Delanguer*, and *Naugricor*. But this is to be understood only of the main Body of these Mountains, which hold on in an even course from West to East; not of those Spurs and Branches of it, which shoot either to the North, or South: such as are the *Anti-Taurus* in some parts of the *lesser Asia*; the *Gordian* Hills, and the *Montes Moschici*, with those which *Pliny* calleth *Pariedri*, others *Pariardri*, in *Armenia Major*; and that of *Caboras*, which sheweth it self on the North-east of *Assyria*, with divers others.

In such a continual Course of Mountains it must needs be that many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not easily subdued, nor so soon reduced unto civility as such who were possessed of Places less defensible, and fitter for commerce and traffic with the rest of Mankind. And they continued in these late times, the last which were brought under by the *Turk* and *Persians*, the mightiest

est Monarchs of those Parts ; though bordering on, or totally environed with their Dominions. Two Kingdoms they afforded of long continuance : one towards the West, where it closeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth *Syria Comagena* from *Armenia Major* ; the other towards the East, separating *Media* from *Hyrcania*. For want of other names to describe them by, we will call the first the Kingdom of *Aladules*, and the last the Kingdom of *Babaman* ; according to the names of the two last Kings.

1 The Kingdom of *ALADULES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it self as far towards the East, as to the Banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part *Mesopotamia* from *Armenia Major*. Inhabited by a People naturally very fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing than their want of all things ; who as Men dwelling in a rough and barren Country, could little profit themselves by Husbandry : and therefore gave themselves to grazing, breeding on their Pastures some store of Horse and Camels which they sold to others, but especially maintaining themselves and their Families by hunting and stealing. Supposed to come originally from the *Cappadocians*, and *Armenians* of the *less Asia*, which by long and continual Wars in the former Ages, were forced to forsake their dwellings, and for safety of their Lives to fly to these unpeopled and desolate Mountains. Where searching every Hill and Dale, and following the Opportunity of Springs and Rivers, but chiefly the mildest Temperature of the Air, and most cheerful Aspect of the Sun, they built in many places poor Villages, and afterwards some better Towns. The principal of which is named *Maras*, so called as it is conceived from the River *Maras*, which rising out of the Mountain *Calen*, passeth by the same, and not far off falleth into the River *Euphrates* : Near unto the Confines of this Kingdom, lies the ancient City, now call'd *Orpha*, of old *Edeffa*, as is supposed, because as yet there remain certain Monuments in Latin Letters, erected by *Baldwin* King of *Jerusalem*, and Brother of *Godfrey* the first King of the Western Christians, who is said to have taken *Edeffa*, and there to have Reigned. Not far from thence is also the ancient City of *Amida*, now call'd *Carimida*, seated between the two great Rivers of *Euphrates* and *Tigris* in *Mesopotamia*, now called *Diarbeck*. *Knowles*. So that this small Kingdom lies on the North of *Mesopotamia*, in the Confines of *Armenia*.

When it was made a Kingdom first, it is hard to say, the Kings hereof being mean and inconsiderable in the eye of the World, not worth the conquering ; and wanting power to conquer others and enlarge their territories : nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himself with reigning over Rocks and Mountains. The last was *Aladules*, so much spoken of in the *Turkish Histories* and by them called the *Mountain King*. Conceived by some Writers to have been the Author of such a *Paradise*, as we shall find described when we come to *Drangiana*, a Province of *Persia* ; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him most really and truly known, in the Stories of the former times, was the stout Opposition which he made against the *Turks*, in their Wars with *Persia*. He had before given no small check to the proceedings of *Bajazet* the second, in his conquest of the *Carmanian* Kingdom ; and no less troubled *Selimus* the Son

of *Bajazet*, in his *Eastern Wars*, impeaching : he could the greater of the *Ottoman* Family : Fought with by *Schirvan*, he overcame and his grand with a great deal of Courage killed *Aveny*, *Shirvan* raised him to the throne, and seeing his Army terrified by the host of the *Turks*, he was slain to him. But being at last taken, and put to Death by the command of the *Turks*, his head was converted to a *Prize* of War, and sent to the *Turks*, and continued to this Day. *See his Turkish History*, 1693.

2 The Kingdom of *BABAMAN* was in a more towards the East, and east the Mountains which divide *Media* from *Hyrcania*, as before was said. The Mountains in these parts so high, that Travellers at the end of a two Days Journey, may discern the *mountain* Region of the Air to be beneath them : exceeding troublesome to ascend, about 50 Miles in height when once got to the top, but more dangerous by reason of the Rocks and *precipices*, in the going down : full of inhospitable Streights, and so cold and barren, that were not *Sovereignty* a temptation above all Resistance, no Man would take upon him the command of so poor a Kingdom. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great quantity of *Sulphur*, which makes it sparkle in the Night, like the *Hill Venerius*, in *Italy*, by means whereof here are many *Hot-Baths*, three of them walled about, two open ; to which resort unbound and decrepit People, in very great Multitudes. The chief Town of it *Lary-Jo*, in the ordinary Road or Pass betwixt *Omael*, the last Town of *Hyrcania*, and *Darmian* the first of *Media*. But the Kings Seat was in a Village called *Reyna*, where he had a Castle so built upon the best Advantages of Art and Nature, that it seemed invincible ; adorned above with Gardens, Flowers, and most pleasant Fruits ; and furnished beneath with a Rivulet of purest Water, which pleasantly passing thorow the Castle, fell into the *Valleys*. A Castle of so large a Circuit, that besides the King's Family or Court, it was able to admit a Garison of 10000 Men.

The last King hereof was the foresaid *Babaman*, derived from a long descent of Royal Ancestors, comparing for antiquity with the *Persian Sophies* : who though ill-neighbourd on both sides, by the *Tartarian* on the one, and the Kings of *Persia* on the other ; yet had they with great Fortune, Policy, and Valour, maintained their *Royalities* against all Pretenders. But *Abas* the late *Persian Sophy*, having either conquered or reduced *Hyrcania*, picked a Quarrel with *Babaman* ; pretending that by the opportunity of his situation he might rob his *Caravans*, hinder his Progress towards the *Hyrcanian* Sea, and turn into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which rising from Mount *Taurus*, watered and enriched his *Persian* Territories. And though *Babaman* never had attempted any of the things objected ; yet it was cause enough of Quarrel that he might so do : and therefore is besieged in his Castle of *Reyna*, with an Army of 30000 Men. Finding no possibility to prevail by force, the General of the *Persians* proceeds by Treachery, invites the old King into his Camp under Colour of Parley, and by this means drew his two Sons out of the Castle to the Parley also. Whom having got into his Power, he first caused their Heads to be cut off ; and after making use of their Seals and Signers, obtains a surrender of the place, and with it the possession of this mountainous Kingdom, Anno 1601. or thereabouts, united ever since to the Crown of *Persia*. This Relation is transcribed from Mr. *Herbert's Travels into Persia*, Pag. 108.

O F TURCOMANIA.

TURCOMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and the *Caspian Sea*; on the West, with the *Euxine Sea*, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the North with *Tartary*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria*. So called from the *Turcomans* or *Turks*, who from hence made their first Expedition for the Conquest of *Persia*, and after spread themselves over all those parts of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africk*, now in their Possession. A Country which consisteth of four several Provinces, each Province having to its self its particular Story; and therefore we must look upon it, as it is now divided into those four Parts, that is to say, 1 *Armenia Major*, or *Turcomania* properly and specially so called; 2 *Colchis*, now called *Mengrelia*; 3 *Iberia*, now named *Georgia*; and 4 *Albania*, which they now term *Zuiria*.

1 ARMENIA MAJOR.

ARMENIA MAJOR is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and some part of the *Caspian Sea*; on the West, with the River *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Minor*, in the lesser *Asia*; on the North, with *Colchis* or *Mengrelia*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia*, and some part of *Assyria*.

It was called *Armenia*, as some say, *quasi Aram Mini*, or the *Mini* of *Syria*: but as others say, *quasi Har Mini*, that is to say *Mons Mini*, or *Montana Miniadis*: the *Mini*, or *Minni*, being a Region of this Tract, mentioned by *Jeremy* the Prophet, Chap. 51. 27. and by him placed betwixt *Ararat* and *Askenaz*, which shew the situation of it to be hereabouts. Major which add to it for distinction sake, to difference it from *Armenia Minor*: and now it is called *Turcomania*, as the first seat in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themselves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*.

The Country in the most part overspread with Hills, Branches of those huge Mountains of *Taurus*, and *Anti-Taurus*; but intermixt with fertile and delightful Valleys, liberally furnished with Cattel, and good store of Fruits, though much subject to deep Snows, which do much annoy it. The Riches of it not to be better estimated than by the frankness of *Tigranes*, once King hereof: Who being fined by *Pompey* at 6000 Talents, not only very readily laid down that Sum; but added of his own accord to every *Roman Soldier* 50 *Drachmas* of Silver, 1000 *Drachmas* to each Captain, and to every Colonel a Talent. For though *Tigranes* had added some part of *Media*, and the whole Kingdom of *Syria*, unto his Estate; yet those being new Acquests, and not fully settled, were not much likely, for the present, to enrich his Coffers: new conquered Provinces being for the most part more chargeable than beneficial to the Victor.

The People are generally great bodied, of comely personage, and patient of all kind of labour; good Archers, when put to it, but careless of honour got by War; merry, desirous to be at ease, and apt to be soothed. The Women tall, but homely, of a manly look, most of them skilful at their Bow, or some other weapon. Their Families for the most part great, the Father and all his Posterity to the third and fourth Generation, living under a Roof; after whose Death the eldest, whether Son or Brother, hath the

chiefest Rule. In diet and cloathing all alike, and in most Places they are said to be very industrious; painful in Tillage, and well seen in Manufactures, especially rich *Tapestries*, *Grograins*, and watered *Chamlets*: with which they traffick into most Cities of the *Turks* and other *Mahometans*; priviledged, as they say, by a Charter under *Mahomet's* own Hand, above other *Christians*, and upon that occasion more dispersed in the Eastern Countries than any Nation in the World, the *Jews* excepted.

They have a Language of their own, which they call the *Armenian*, not only used amongst them in common talk, but in sacred Offices: the Scriptures being translated into that Language also; and that, as the People do affirm, by the hand of *St. Chrysostom*, at such time as (on the solicitation of the Empress *Eudoxia*, his most eager Enemy) he was confined to the lesser *Armenia*, by the Emperor *Arcadius*: to whom also they ascribe the invention of the *Armenian Character*, or Letters still in use amongst them.

They received the *Christian Faith* by the preaching of *St. Bartholomew*, and were anciently of the jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, as a Province of the *Pontick Diocese*; which together with the *Asian Diocese*, and that of *Thrace*, were by the Council of *Chalcedon* laid unto that Patriarchat. But falling into the Opinion of *Eutyches*, touching one nature only in *CHRIST* our Saviour, they withdrew themselves long since from the Communion of the *Greeks*, whom they hold in greater detestation than all other *Christians*, and chose two Patriarchs of their own, of whom more anon. Other Opinions which they hold besides those of *Eutyches* (which yet they labour to make capable of an *Orthodox* sense;) and those wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, as 1 Denying *Purgatory*, and Prayers for the Dead. 2 Admitting none to be made Priests except those that be married. 3 Denying the Body of *Christ* to be really under the Species of Bread and Wine. And 4 *Rebaptizing* such as come to their Communion from the *Latin Churches*; Are these that follow, in which they differ also from most Churches else, viz. 1 In receiving Infants to the Lord's Table, immediately after Baptism. 2 In abstaining from unclean Beasts. 3 In fasting on Christmas-Day. And 4 In holding their Children over the Fire, as a necessary Circumstance in Baptism; because *John the Baptist* told the People which followed him, that *CHRIST* would Baptize them with the Holy Ghost, and with Fire; in which place he meaneth not material Fire, but the lively Purgation of the Holy Ghost, according to the nature of Fire. The Church of this Sect is governed by two Patriarchs; whereof the one hath under his jurisdiction this *Turcomania*, comprehending 150000 Families, besides very many Monasteries: and the other hath under him the two Provinces of *Armenia* the Lesser, and *Cilicia*, comprehending 20000 Families, or thereabouts: The first residing anciently in *Sebastia*, the Metropolis of the greater *Armenia*; the second originally at *Meliten*, the Metropolis of *Armenia Minor*; but of late at *Sis*, a small City, not far from *Tarsus* in *Cilicia*. Both honoured with the Title of *Catholiques*, and having under them to the number of 30 Bishops.

Chief Rivers of this Country, 1 *Araxes*, which rising out of Mount *Abos*, an *Armenian* Mountain, first runneth Eastward as far as *Media*, and then bendeth it self towards the North: and after a long Course is divided

into two Branches; whereof the one faileth into the *Caspian* Sea, the other into, 2 *Cyrus*, another great River of this Country. The Fountain of this last in Mount *Caucasus* in the furthest North of *Turcomania*; and falling into a Lake, there meeteth with, 3 *Cambyjis*, another great River of these parts; and so together hasten to the *Caspian* also. 4 *Euphrates*, by the *Turks* called *Frat*, by the *Hebrews* *Perab*, famous in Scripture for its watering the Garden of *Eden*, hath its Fountain in the hills, which they call *Niphates*, as it is said by *Strabo*. A River of great length and swiftneſs. For having forc'd it self a paſſage through the Mountains of *Taurus*, it runneth in the West of *Mesopotamia*, with a ſtream ſo violent, that they who go by water from *Bir* to *Birrah*, a Town on the North-west of *Mesopotamia*, to the City of *Bagdat*, are ſain to come back again by Land, ſelling thoſe Boats for eight Crowns which they bought for fifty at *Bir*; it is gathered firſt into one great ſtream, being above that City divided into ſo many branches that it is called the River with a thouſand heads, but it being here as big as the *Thames* at *Lambeth*, it is here firſt called the *Euphrates*. *Hackluit* Tom. 2. Page 269. At *Apamia*, a City of *Chaldaea*, it is joyned with *Tigris*, with which the greateſt Branch of it paſſeth through the City of *Babylon* and ſo into the *Persian* Gulf, the reſt of it being cut into many Channels, for fear it ſhould overflow and drown the Country, are quite loſt in the Lakes of *Chaldaea*. 5 *Tigris*, a ſwifter ſtream than that whence it had the name; the word in the *Median* Tongue ſignifying an *Arrow*. A River of ſo ſtrong a courſe, that it paſſeth through the Lake *Thonilis*, without mixture of Waters, and affordeth the *Armenians* an eaſie paſſage to *Bagdat*: who on a few *Rafts* born up with *Goat-fkins*, blown full of wind, and boards laid upon them, make their Voyage thither. It is called *Hiddekel*, in the Scripture, one of the four Rivers which watered the Garden of *Paradiſe*; ſituate in an Iſland made by the embracement of this River and *Euphrates*, with their ſeveral branches, riſing originally out of the Lake of *Thelpitis* in *Armenia Major*, where now we are. It is preſently almoſt ſwallowed by the gaping Earth; and paſſing under the huge bulk of *Taurus*, breaketh forth again; and compaſſing the Eaſt parts of *Mesopotamia*, which it divides from *Aſſyria*, meets with *Euphrates*, as before. Of which its firſt and ſecond Birth thus the Poet *Lucan*,

*At Tigriſin ſubito tellus abſorbet hiatus,
Occuſoque tegit curſus; rurſuſque renatum
Fonte novo flumen pelagi non abnegat undas.*

That is to ſay,

Tigris, ſoon ſwallowed by the thirſty Earth,
Finds there a Burial where it had its Birth:
But breaking out at a new Spring, vouchſafes
With the Salt Sea to mix its ſweeter waves.

At *Carna*, a Caſtle ſeated on a Point of Land, the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* joyn. The River in this place is nine *Engliſh* Miles broad; and ſo high the Tides of the Ocean reach, and it is Navigable both ways with eaſe. The overflowing of the River makes the Country produce plenty of Corn, Rice, Pulſe, and Dates. *Hackluit* Tom. 2. Page 270.

Mountains of moſt note, are. 1 *Abos*, glorying in the Fountains of the great River *Araxes*. 2 *Periarges*, as *Ptolemy*, *Partedri*, as *Pliny* calleth it, a branch or ſpur of the great Mountain *Taurus*. 3 *Uluceſpes*, another branch of that great Mountain. 4 Some part of *Anti-Taurus*. 5 The Mountains called *Montes Moſchici*, more towards the North, abutting upon *Cappadocia*, and the *Euxine* Sea, which name they took from *Meſech*, or *Moſoch* the Son of *Japhet*, preſerving the remembrance of his Planting there. 6 *Niphates*, one of the Spurs of *Taurus*, out of which the famous River *Euphrates* is ſaid to iſſue. 7 The *Gordian* Mountains, conceived by many Learned Men to be the Mountains of *Ararat*, on one of the tops

whereof, called *Barni*, the Ark of *Noah* is moſt generally affirmed to reſt. Affirmed by many ancient Writers of the Chriſtian Church, and countenanced not only by *Joſephus* and ſome others of the Elder Hiſtorians; but by the *Septuagint* themſelves: who in the 37th Chapter of *Iſa.* v. 38. and 2 *King* 19. 37. have rendred *Ararat* by *Armenia*. And be it ſo, let *Ararat* be *Armenia*, and conſequently the Mountains of *Ararat* be *Armenian* Mountains: yet doth it not follow hereupon, that the Ark reſted on the *Gordian* Mountains, or any other of this Country, as they would conclude. We may infer as *Logiceſte*, for ought I can ſee, that the Garden of *Eden* muſt be looked for in *Armenia* alſo, becauſe ſituate in the circlings of *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, two *Armenian* Rivers. Thoſe Rivers have indeed their Fountains in *Armenia Major*, but compaſs not the Garden of *Eden*, till after a long courſe they encounter each other in the ſpacious Plains of *Babylonia*. And ſo thoſe Mountains, though they have the name of the Mountains of *Ararat* or *Armenia*, becauſe there firſt grown to a diſcernable and ſuper-eminent height above all the Mountains of thoſe parts, became not the reſting place of the Ark, till after a further courſe towards the Eaſt, they were grown to their full height; which is in thoſe parts of it betwixt *Scythia* and *Persia*, which are called Mount *Caucasus*: not that Mount *Caucasus* which lieth on the North of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyrus* is ſaid to riſe; but that which lieth on the Eaſt ſide of the *Caspian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imaus* do croſs each other. But of this elſewhere.

It was divided heretofore into many Provinces, the Principal wherof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordian* Mountains, called in ſome Writers, *Cordia*; from whence the Province had the name of *Gordiana*, but moſt commonly called *Corduene*, Bordering on *Aſſyria*. The Kingdom once of *Zarbicus*, who ſiding with *Lucullus* againſt *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, was by *Tigranes* Murdered with his Wife and Children; but honoured by *Lucullus* with a ſtately and Magnificent Funeral. 2. The Second Province of note is called *Cotacene*: near the *Montes Moſchici*. 3 *Toſarene* Bordering on the River *Cyrus*. 4 *Colthene*, on the Banks of *Araxes*. 5 *Sophene*, near the turnings of the River *Euphrates*: miſtook by ſome induſtrious and knowing men, to be the *Syria Soba* of the Holy Scriptures. 6 *Baſſine*, on the North-west, near the Springs of that River. But what Cities did belong to each I find no where ſpecified.

Thoſe of moſt conſequence in the whole, 1 *Artaxata*, by *Florus* called *Caput Gentis*: of moſt eſteem in thoſe times, and the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Armenia* from its firſt Foundation. Built by *Artaxes*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the perſwaſion of *Annibal*, whiſt he abode in his Country: who liking the ſituation of the place, drew on it the Model of a ſtrong and gallant City, according to which Platform it was preſently built, taken, and ſacked by the *Romans*, as a daughter of *Carthage*, by *Corbulo* in the time of *Nero*, it never could revive again to its former ſplendor. In the middle Ages called *Eſechia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Coim*, *Choim*; if not Built rather out of the Ruins of it. A City memorable for two great Battels near unto it; the firſt between *Lucullus* on the one ſide, againſt *Antiochus* and *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the *Romans* were Victors: the ſecond between *Selimus* Emperor of the *Turks*, and *Hysmael* the *Persian* Sophy; wherein the *Turks* were Conquerors, Anno 1514. A Victory which he bought with the loſs of 30000 of his beſt Men, and ſuch a Terror to the whole Army, that the *Turks* to this day call it the only day of Doom. The Field adjoining to the Town wherein this Cruel Battel was fought, called the *Chalderan* Fields. *Coy*, *Coim*, *Choim*, which is here ſaid to have ſprung out of the Ruins of *Artaxata*, is an obſcure place, not mentioned to my knowledge in any Traveler, or Map, whiſt others ſay, *Teſus*, or *Miccherian*, or one of them was the Ancient *Artaxata*. That ancient City

City was however, seated for certain upon the *Araxes*, a River of *Armenia*. 2 *Sebastia*, now *Suassia*, seated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the Mountain *Taurus*; the Residence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, at their first separation from the See of *Constantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all *Armenia*: so named in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebastos*. But of late divested of that Dignity, the Patriarchal See, by reason of the fierce Wars raging in this Country, betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*, being removed to the Monastery of *Eomeazin*, near the City of *Erivan* in *Persia*; in the Dominions of which King, these *Armenian Christians* live in great abundance, by the name of *Jelpbelins*. 3 *Tigranocerta*, beautified and enlarged, if not first Founded by *Tigranes* above-mentioned; by whom replenished with People of several Nations, whose Countries he had taken from them, and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdom: there being no *Armenian*, either Prince or Peasant, who sent not somewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great resistance, those several Nations not agreeing amongst themselves; and therein besides other Treasure, no less than 8000 Talents in ready Money. The City situate near a River, which *Tacitus* calleth *Nicesorius*. 4 *Arsamesata*, by *Pliny*, called *Arfimote*, on the Banks of *Euphrates*. 5 *Cholna*, so called in memory of *Hul*, or *Cbul*, the Son of *Aram*, one of the first Planters of this Country. 6 *Baraza*, by the Emperor *Leo* much Enlarged and Beautified; dignified with the new name of *Leontopolis*, and for a while made the Metropolis of the Province. 7 *Arsarata*, by *Strabo* called *Arxata*. 8 *Theodosiopolis*, built on the foundation of some of the more ancient Cities, by the Emperor *Theodosius*, and of him thus named. 9 *Colonia*, the strongest and most defensible City hereof, when possessed by the *Romans*. 10 *Clamassum*, a strong Town on the Banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the first in his way towards *Persia*, and therewith livery & seisin of the rest of this Country, since wholly Conquered by his Successors. 11 *Chars*, not far from the same River also, supposed to be the *Chorsa* of *Ptolomy*, of which not long since the Ruins only; but in three weeks so Repaired and Fortified by the *Turks*, Anno 1579. that it is thought to be Impregnable. 12 *Thessia*, giving name of old to the Lake *Thespitis*, and to the Region called *Thespites*, but now not in being. 13 *Armining* now of greatest name, and esteemed the Metropolis of this Country: situate in that part of the Lake of *Vaslan* (the *Mariana palus* of the ancient Writers) which lieth next to this Country: and by that well fortified: the only City of *Armenia* possessed by the *Persians*, who are the Lords of all that Lake, of which more hereafter. 14 *Van*, both for natural situation, and the works of Art, accounted by the *Turks* for their strongest Bulwark in these parts against the *Persians*; and for that cause well Garisoned, and as well Munitioned.

The Principal Cities in it at this day are *Erivan*, or *Irvan*. 2 *Nacchivan*. 3 *Zulpha* (now Ruined) and 4 *Van*. 1 *Erivan* is a great City, but ill built, seated in a Plain between two Rivers. This City is supposed to be the ancient *Artaxata*, being seated as that was, between the *Araxes* and Mount *Ararat*: This City has been taken by the *Turks* and *Persians* as the Fortune of the War favoured them, but in 1635. it was finally united to *Persia*, Sir *John Chardin* page 245. *Tavernier* page 13. 2 *Nacchivan* lies 21 Leagues from *Erivan* to the South; it contains about 2000 houses, and has had many more, which are now rebuilding, it is now under the *Persian* King, but has been miserably harassed by the *Turks*, *Chardin* page 345. *Van*, in 1664. was a great City, seated on a Lake of the same name, and has in it a strong Fortrefs, or Castle, seated on a Mountain which is in the hands of the *Turks*; in 1636. it was Besieged by the *Persians* but without effect, *Tavernier* page 106. *Zulpha* was laid desolate by *Abbas* King of

Persia, and the Inhabitants removed to *Hispban*, where they built a great Suburb of that name; but the old City is since began to be rebuilt and repeopled with a few *Armenians*.

This Country was first planted by *Hul* or *Cbul* the Son of *Aram*, and by *Mesech* one of the Sons of *Japhet*, who with their Families or Colonies possessed the same: the one leaving the remainder of his name in the *Montes Moschici*; the other in the Town called *Cholna*, and the Region called *Colibene* by *Ptolomy*, *Cholsabene* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdom as soon as any, that of *Babel* excepted: *Ninus* the Third from *Nimrod*, finding *Barzanes* King hereof, whom he forced to acknowledge his Superiority, and to aid him in his Wars against *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*. Kings of most note in times succeeding, (for we have no constant Catalogue of them) were 1 *Araxes*, who being Warred on by the *Persians*, was promised Victory by the Oracle, on the Sacrifice of his two fair Daughters. Willing to satisfy the Gods, and yet spare his Children, he Sacrificed two of the daughters of *Miesalcus*, a Noble-man of this Country: by whom in Revenge hereof his own daughters were slain, and himself so closely followed, that swimming the River then called *Helmus*, he was therein drowned, and thereby gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2 *Artaxa*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; spoken of before. 3 *Tigranes*, the most mighty King that ever Reigned in *Armenia*, to which he added by his Prowess, *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia*, in *Asia Minor*, the whole Countries of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phoenicia*: but siding with *Mithridates*, whose daughter he had Married, against the *Romans*, he was by *Lucullus* overthrown in two great Battels, and outed of the greatest part of his Dominions. Hearing that *Pompey* had succeeded *Lucullus* in Command of the Army, and trusting more to his goodness than a Wise Man would, he put himself into his power: by whom condemned in a great sum of Money for the Charge of the War, and stripped of all the rest of his Estates, he was suffered to enjoy *Armenia Major*, *Syria* being made a Province, *Sophene* given to *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* left unto it self, and the lesser *Armenia* conferred on one of his Sons, who being found guilty of some practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carried Prisoner into *Rome*, and his Country brought into the form of a Province. 4 *Artavasdes*, circumvented by *Marc-Antony*, who led him Prisoner to *Rome*, but (catenis ne quid honori ejus deesset aureis, as the Historian tells us of him) it was in Chains of Gold for his great honour; giving *Armenia* to one of the Sons of *Cleopatra*. And tho' 5 *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdom, yet he and his Successors held it but as Vassals of the *Roman* Empire: the Senate after that confirming, and sometimes nominating the *Armenian* Kings. Continuing in this Estate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province (made after that a part of the *Partick Diocese*) who adding *Mesopotamia* also unto his Dominions, made *Tigris* the Eastern border of his Empire, which *Augustus* thought fit to limit with the Banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being Governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajan's* time, in the Reign of *Constantinus*, *Julian*, and the Emperors following, whom they acknowledged and revered as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Justinian* the second, (he began his Empire Anno 687.) when Subdued by the *Saracens*. Recovered by that Emperor, but soon lost again, it continued subject to the *Saracens* till the breaking in of the *Turks*, An. 844. of whom more anon. The greatest part of the *Turks* emptying themselves into *Persia*, and other Countries which they took from the Eastern Emperors; the Christians of *Armenia* began to take heart again, and to have Kings of their own, by whom Governed, till again Subdu'd by *Occadan*, or *Heccata* the Son of *Cingis*, the

the first *Cham* of the *Tartars*. Nor did the *Tartars* make so absolute a Conquest of it, as to extinguish either Christianity or the Race of the Kings, *Haithon*, surnamed *Armenius*, Reigning after this, and going in Person to *Mongo*, the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, 1257. And in our own Chronicles, in the Reign of K. *Richard* the Second, we find mention of one *Leon* an *Armenian* King, who came hither to sue for aid against the *Turks*; by whom then dispossessed of his Estates, by *Uffan Cassanes*, one of the Princes of this Country, (of whom more hereafter) who had the fortune to obtain the Crown of *Persia*, Anno 1472. it was made a Province of that Kingdom, and so continued till the year 1515. when Conquered by *Selimus* the First, and by him made a part of the Turkish Empire; more fully settled and assured in the Reign of *Amurat* the Third, who by causing many Forts and Garisons to be planted in it, made the Conquest Absolute.

The Arms of this Kingdom, when a Kingdom, Governed by Princes of its own of the Christian Faith, were *Gules*, three heads of a Buck, *Argent* Crowned, Or.

2. COLCHIS. MENGRELIA.

COLCHIS is bounded on the East with *Iberia*; on the West, with the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Tartars Precopenses*; on the North with *Tartary*, from which parted by those vast Hills, which the *Romans* called *Caucasi*; and on the South, with *Armenia Major*, from which separated by the *Montes Moschici*.

The reason of the name I find not. Nor can yield unto *Bochartus*, who fetcheth the Original of the Name and Nation from *Casubim*, one of the Sons of *Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*, the Etymology of the name being too much wrested, and *Aegypt* too far off to give a being to *Colchis* in those early days; tho' possibly in times succeeding, the *Aegyptians* hearing by the *Greeks*, of the Wealth of the Country, might send Colonies of their People thither, as to other places. It is now called *Mengrelia*.

The Country said to be very fruitful, if the care of the Husbandman were not wanting. Their Vines they plant at the feet of great Trees, which twining about the Arms thereof lade them full of Grapes: with which, and other fruits rising from the Earth, they used of late times to furnish the Store-houses of their Kings, for want of ready Money to fill his Coffers, their Tributes being paid in such Commodities. Formerly of great fame for abundance of Gold, found in the sands of their Rivers issuing from the *Caucasian* Mountains. The thing affirmed by *Appianus* in his *Mithridatica*; *χρυσόφορος ὃ ἐκ τῶ Κανχίδου ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς ἱστύριας ἀσφαλίδος*, Many of their Springs saith he, which come out of *Caucasus*, carry veins of Gold. The like saith *Strabo* also, and some other Ancients With which, and out of their Rich Mines both of Gold and Silver, the Kings hereof were so well furnished with those Metals, that the Furniture of their Chambers were all of Gold, and the beams of their Lodgings were made of Silver. But now so destitute of both, that the People for want of money to buy and sell with, are enforced to barter their Commodities, and change one for another.

The People at the present very Rude and Barbarous; so inhumane and void of natural affection, that they sell their Children to the *Turks*. The better sort of them much given to Belly-cheer, dancing, and singing loose Sonnets of Love and Dalliance; using much Wine in their entertainments, which the more their Guests drink, the better welcome; enflamed wherewith they offer them for a Cooler, their Wives or Sisters, with charge to yield them all content, esteeming it no small credit to them if it be accepted. Nor are the Women much averse from the entertainment, whether to please themselves or obey their Husbands, let them tell that can.

The Christian Faith was first here planted in the time of the Emperor *Justinus*, by whose persuasion *Tamus*

Prince of the *Colchi*, then at the Court in *Constantinople*, became a Christian; and being Baptized, was returned back into his Country with the Title of King. But *Cabades* the King of *Persia* much offended at it, proclaim'd War against him; which hindred the farther progress of the Gospel, till the year 860. About which time *Methodius* and *Cyril*, two Reverend Men, were by the Patriarch of *Constantinople* employed in this Service; which they successfully effected. In that regard they hold to the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, and belong to the jurisdiction of that Patriarch, to whom conform in most dogmatical points of their Religion, and in many practical. And though they have a distinct Language of their own, which hath no affinity with the *Greek*, yet do they celebrate Divine Offices in the *Greek* Tongue, and follow the *Rituals* of that Church; which few of em understand any better than the vulgar Papists of *France*, *Spain*, or *Germany* do the Latin Service. Whether it be that they have no Learned Men among them, either to Translate their old *Liturgie*, or to compose a new; or that they hold all alterations in Religion to be matters of danger; or that Ignorance is the best Mother of Devotion (as is thought by others) I am not able to determine.

The chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Hippus*, 2 *Cyanæus*, 3 *Chæristus*, all rising out of the *Caucasian* Mountains, and falling into the *Euxine*, 4 *Phasis*, the principal of all, rising out of the *Montes Moschici*, or *Armenian* Mountains, and there call'd *Bos*. Navigable with smaller Vessels a great way up into the Country, and with great Ships eighteen miles from the Sea. Memorable among the Ancients for the Landing of the *Argonauts* in the mouth thereof; and those delicate Fowl called from hence *Phasides*, or *Phasiani* (*Pheasants*) which they brought with them into *Europe*.

As for this Expedition of the *Argonauts*, being the most remarkable action in those elder ages of the World, when Piracies and Depredations were accounted for Heroical Virtues; 'twas no other than the adventure of some Noble *Græcians*, for the Gold of *Colchos*. The Age wherein it happen'd, was about the 11 year of *Gideon*, the Judge of *Israel*. The chief Adventurers, *Jason*, *Orpheus* the famous Poet, *Castor* and *Pollux* the Sons of *Tindarus*, *Telamon* and *Peleus*, the Sons of *Æacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Laertes* the Father of *Ulysses*, *Amphiarus* the Sooth-sayer, *Hercules*, *Theseus*, *Meleager*, with many others of like note. These moved with the great noise of the Wealth of *Colchos*, and the Riches of King *Ætes*, then therein Reigning, resolved upon a Voyage thither, Embarked in a Ship called *Argo*, (whence the name of *Argonauts*) whereof one *Typhus* was chief Pilot. Passing the *Hellepont*, *Propontick*, and *Thracian Bosphorus*, they came into the *Euxine* Sea: and after many difficulties and strange Adventures (which such *Knights Errants* could not chuse but encounter with) they Landed in the River *Phasis*, and came to the King's Court, and there were kindly entertained But finding the Kings Treasures to be too well guarded to be took by force (said by the Poets to be kept by a Dragon always waking) they practised with *Medea*, the daughter of *Ætes*, to assist them in robbing her Father. Who being in Love with *Jason*, on promise of Marriage with him assented to it: by whose Artifices (which the Poets call Magical Charms) the Guardians being circumvented, and the Treasure gotten, they all, together with *Medea*, embarked again, and after a long and tedious voyage returned into *Greece*. This is the substance of the Story; which being the greatest and most notable voyage which the *Græcians*, in those early days had undertaken, occasioned the Poets to advance it to the highest pitch, and to disguise it with many Fictions, and ingenious Fancies: but not without some ground entituled to the *Golden Fleece* (which they make the end of the design.) For the Rivers as before was said, having Golden Sands, which fell down from the Mountains (as in many other parts of

the world they are found to have) it was the custom of the People to lay many Fleeces of Wool in the descent of those Rivers, in which the grains of Gold remained, tho' the Water passed through; which *Strabo* witnesseth to be true.

But leaving these Adventurers to pursue their Fortunes, let us go forward to survey the Colchian Cities; the principal whereof, 1 *Dioscurias*, a Town of great wealth and Trade, founded by *Amphitus*, and *Telchius*, two Spartans the Charioteers of *Castor* and *Pollux* and so named in honour of their Masters, whom the Greeks call *Διόσκουροι*: which two Spartans passing further East, were afterwards the Founders of the Nation from them called *Heniochi*, or the Chariot-drivers. A Town of such resort by Merchants from most parts of the World, that here were spoken 300 different Languages; insomuch that the Romans (as *Pliny* saith, were fain to maintain here 130 Interpreters for dispatch of Business, and Negotiating with the Merchants 2 *Sybaris*, the Seat-Royal of the Colchian Kings, about nine miles from which was the Temple of *Mars*, to which *Medea* is reported to have brought the *Argonauts*. 3 *Siganeum*, near the mouth of the River *Cyanæus*: as is also 4 *Æa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Æapolis*, an Egyptian Colony, planted here by *Sesostris* (in the time of *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*) at what time he attempted, but without success, the Conquest of Colchis. 5 *Neapolis*, so called from the newness or foundation of it, when that name was given. 6 *Phasis*, so call'd from the River upon which it is situate, retaining both the site and name to this very day: the ordinary Residence of the Turkish *Beglerbeg*, by whom called *Phassum*. 7 *Alvasi*, a well Fortified place. More in the Land are placed by *Ptolomy* 8 *Mechelessus*. 9 *Syrace*. 10 *Zadris*. 11 *Zurium*. &c. not much observable in old Story, nor now known at all.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, most probably, came out of the neighbouring *Armenia*, and therefore the Posterity of *Hul*, or *Chul*, from whence perhaps the name of Colchis, to whom in tract of time some Colonies out of *Ægypt*, (a Sea-faring People) moved with the great fame of the riches and wealth hereof, did adjoyn themselves: the Colchians on that ground, (or from some part of his Army left there by *Sesostris*) being said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to be the ancient off-spring of the *Ægyptians*. The most ancient of their Kings was *Ætes*, spoken of before; who entertaining *Phryxus* flying out of Greece from the fury of his Step-dame *Ino*, with great store of Treasure, occasioned the *Argonauts*, as well in way of revenge, as in hope of booty, to make that famous expedition for the Gold of Colchos, disguised under the fiction of the *Golden Fleece*. Of most note after him, *Selaucus*, and *Esibopes*, who first discovered the rich Mines of Gold and Silver; of which Metals they made all their Utensils, even the Beams of their Chambers. The same whereof drew thither *Sesostris*, the great King of *Ægypt*, who being vanquished in the Field, was fain to lay aside all those hopes which he brought with him thither, and return back to *Ægypt* in worse state than he came, but that he left behind him an *Ægyptian* Colony in the City of *Æa*, which after occasioned others of that Country to repair hither also. Living in peace and unmolested from this time forwards, they were unhappily engaged by *Tygranes* of *Armenia*, to side with him against the Romans; and in his overthrow gave such advantage to the Victor, that *Orodes* the King of Colchis was fain to submit himself to *Pompey*, to dismiss his Forces, leave his fastnesses, and finally to redeem his peace, by sending him a Bedstead of purest Gold, and many other rich Presents. After this, the Romans had here their Agents, and received hence some annual profits, but never brought it to the form of a Province. Distressed between the Persians and Constantinopolitans, they had much ado to stand upright; tho' betwixt both they kept themselves in a kind of Liberty: as of late times, betwixt the Persians, Turks, and Tartars, their too potent Neighbours. But at the last, An. 1579. *Amurath III.* to make the safer pas-

sage for his Forces into Georgia, sent *Uluzales* his Admiral, with a great Fleet into the *Euxine* Sea, who coming up the River *Phasis*, took the City of *Phassum*, Fortified it, and laid so certain a Foundation of future Conquest, that though the *Mengrelians* did not long after demolish some of his Fortifications; yet they were afterwards repaired, and *Phassum* made the Seat of a Turkish *Beglerbeg*, as it still continueth.

Colchis is at this day called *Mengrelia*, and is divided as some say, into three small Kingdoms of *Royolets*, viz. *Imaretta*, the King of which is the true Sovereign of the whole Country, the second is *Mengrelia*, properly so called, and the third *Guriel*; to which some others have added *Abassa*, or *Aivogassa*. They are Christians by Profession, but so ignorant, that their Bishops and Clergy have lost the true form of Baptism. The Kings, Great Men, and Bishops sell their People to the Turks and Persians for Slaves, which, with the perpetual Wars among themselves, and with their Neighbours, have reduc'd them to the most dismal state of Poverty and Desolation that can be imagined. Sir *John Chardin*, who was amongst them is of opinion, the reason why the Turks will not (as they easily might) make a Conquest of these People, is because they find more advantage to keep it as a Nursery of Slaves, than once for all to subdue them. For the Bounds and Dimensions of these small Kingdoms the Reader may better have recourse to my *Geographical Dictionary*, or *Lexicon*, than to swell this Book with things of that nature, which are scarce worth his time, *Tavernier* page 125. 126. *Arch-Angel*, *Lambert*, and Sir *John Chardin* have given large Accounts of the Manners, and Government of the *Mengrelians*, but I have none of them at present by me.

3 I B E R I A.

IBERIA is bounded on the East, with *Albania*; on the West, with *Colchos*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; and on the South, with the *Montes Moschici*; by the first Mountains parted from *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and by the last from *Armenia Major*.

It was so called from the River *Iberus*, which running through it, falleth at last into the more noted River *Cyrus*. But is now called *Georgia*; and that as some say, from *St. George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr, whom here they have in great Reverence, as their tutelar Saint and Patron; as others say, from *George* a *Cappadocian* Bishop, by whose Preaching they were brought unto Christianity, and some again will have them called properly *Gordians*, and corruptly *Georgians*, from their near neighbourhood to those Mountains: But the most probable Opinion is, as I conceive, that they took this name from the *Georgi*, whom *Pliny* reckoneth amongst other of the *Caspian* Nations. Tho' to say truth, the name of *Georgia* extendeth somewhat farther than that of *Iberia*, as comprehending also that part of *Armenia Major* which lies next to *Media*, and the whole Country of *Albania*, if I guess aright.

The Country, for the greatest part, is covered with Mountains, Woods, and Thickets; and in that regard Unconquerable for the difficulty of the Mountainous passages: yet notwithstanding it is very fruitful in many places, having many fertile Plains, and wealthy Valleys, well watered, and of greater increase to the Husbandman, if he be not wanting to himself in care and industry.

Of the old *Iberians* it is written, that they were a very warlike Nation, and us'd to set as many Pillars about the grave of a dead man, as he had slain enemies in his life: as also that those of the same Tribe or Family had all things common, he being the Ruler which was eldest: and that some of them did derive themselves from the Children of *David* begotten on the wife of *Uriah*, for that cause never Marrying out of their Kindred. The present *Georgians* very Warlike, strong of Body, and valorous in Fight, for a long time defended themselves and Country

Country from the *Turks* and *Persians*, with great prudence making use of the one against the other; But over-powered by the vast multitude of *Turks* breaking in upon them, they have lost many of their best Forts, and much of their Liberty.

The Christian Faith was first here planted in the time of *Constantine the Great*, by means of a Christian Captive Woman (such extraordinary ways doth God find out to promote his Gospel) who being of a most devout Life, and exemplary Piety, had by her Prayers to *CHRIST* restored a young Child to health, which was thought past cure: and healed the Queen hereof of a desperate malady, when no help of *Physick* would prevail. Whereupon the King sent Ambassadors to *Constantine*, desiring Ministers and Preachers to be sent to *Iberia*, to instruct the People in the Faith, which was done accordingly. Since that time Christianity hath flourished in this Country without interruption; though by *Mahometans* and *Pagans*, on all sides encompassed: agreeable in doctrinal Points to the Church of *Greece*, whose *Rituals* also the People do to this Day follow. Not Subject for all that to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, (though of his Communion) but to their own *Metropolitan* only: who hath under him about 18 Bishops, and resideth for the most part, in *St. Katherine's Monastery* on Mount *Simas*. By means of which remote dwelling of their principal Pastor, *Mahometanism* hath got some footing, and *Jesuitism* began to creep in amongst them. The occasion of which last was this.

About the Year 1614. the *Persians* making an inroad into this Country, took the City of *Cremen*, and therein *Cetaba*, the Mother of Prince *Teimurazes*; whom, leading her Captive into *Persia*, and not able to prevail with her to turn *Mahometan*, they most cruelly murdered. Some of the *Jesuits* then travelling in those Countries, and willing out of that sad accident to advance the fame of their Society, together with the Catholick Cause, cut off the Head of a dead Man whom they found in the way, anointed it with Oyl and Odours, brought it into *Georgia*, and signified unto the Prince, that they had with them the Head of the blessed Martyr *Cetaba*: desiring leave to live in some Monastery, and have the keeping of the holy Relique committed to them. This easily believed, and granted, the Head was placed with great honour in the Church of *St. George* at *Aberdail*; much resort to it from all parts by diseased Persons: whom if past cure, the *Jesuits* sent home again, prescribing them in the way of preparation a long time of Repentance; if curable by outwards means which they applied, the cure was presently ascribed to the holy Relique. Grown famous by this means, they gained many *Proselytes* to themselves; and had no small hope of prevailing on Prince *Teimurazes* to submit himself to the Pope, as the *Vicar of CHRIST*. When in the heat of all their Glories, a Letter cometh from *Maacra*, a Lady attendant on the Princess, (but then living in *Persia*, as a Slave or Bondmaid) signifying that her Master by her perswasion, had got into his power the Body of his Mother *Cetaba*; which he might ransom if he pleased: two Travellers withal, who came out of *Persia* with the *Jesuits*, reporting what they see them do with the Dead Man's Head. By which means the *Imposture* being discover'd, the Body of the Queen was sent for, the false Relique was call out of the Church, and the false *Jesuits* into Prison, and next out of the Country.

Rivers of note I find not any, either in *Ptolomy*, or any of our modern Writers, but what are touched upon before, except only the River of *Iberus* spoken of already, from which the Country is thus named. The whole in general so destitute of Waters, that *Pompey* in his March this way against the *Albanians*, was fain to carry 10000 Bladders filled with Water for the use of his Army.

Places of most antiquity and importance in it, 1 *Ar-taxissa*, 2 *Vasada*, 3 *Lubium*, 4 *Armaftica*, all named by *Ptolomy*; this last by *Pliny* called *Harmastis*. 5 *Cremen*, the chief City now possessed by the *Georgians*. 6 *Cachete*,

honoured with a fair Church, the most beautiful of all the Country, dedicated by the name of Saint *George*. 7 *Triala*, where are to be seen the ruins of a large City and many Churches; by what name anciently called, I find not. 8 *Altuncala*, or the Golden Castle, a strong Fortrefs, and the ordinary residence of the *Georgian* Princes, since the time of the Wars betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*. 9 *Archibulech*, a strong Castle taken by *Selmar*, the Magnificent in his Wars against *Tamars* King of *Persia*, and ever since holden by the *Turks*. 10 *Telus*, a large and capacious Town, forsaken by the *Georgians* at the coming of *Mustapha*, General of *Amurath* the third, against the *Persians*: who liking the situation of it caused it to be repaired and fortified, planted thereon an hundred Pieces of Ordnance, and left therein a Garrison of 600 Soldiers. Sir *John Chardin*, pag. 208. who saw it lately, saith, It was then in the hands of the *Persians*, being seated at the bottom of a Mountain, upon the River *Cur*, *Kbur*, *Cyrus*, encompassed on all sides, but the South, with a strong and beautiful Wall, and the South side is secured by the River. It has 14 Christian Churches, but never a Mosque, because the Christians will not endure it; and the *Persians* are too wise to exasperate their Frontier People, who can with ease call in the *Turks* to revenge the Injuries of their Religion. The Bishop's See and Palace is now in this City. This City is well peopled, and full of Strangers, on the account of Trade. It was twice taken by the *Turks*, viz. under *Ighmac* II. and *Solyman* his Son. When or how it was recover'd by the *Persians*, I have not yet read. *Telus* is from *Scamaetri* 8 Leagues, as *Struys* saith, p. 249. 11 *Lori*, distant from *Telus* about two Days Journey of a Carrier's Pace, strengthened with a lofty Castle, environed with deep Ditches, and a thick Wall, amounting to a Mile in compass. Seized on by *Ferat Bassa*, the Successor of *Mustapha*, who repaired the Walls, planted thereon 200 small Pieces of Ordnance, and Garisoned it with 7000 *Turks* for Defence thereof. 12 *Tomanis*, a short Days march from *Lori*, the Country lying betwixt both, full of rich Fields and Pastures, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel. Nigh unto which the said *Ferat* raised a new Fortrefs, for the better command of the Streights and Passages, leading from thence to *Lori*, and so to *Telus*, (the Key of *Media* or *Sirvan*) the Wall whereof being 1700 Yards in compass, he caused to be planted with 200 Pieces of Artillery, and with incredible Diligence cut down a thick Wood which lay before it, which otherwise would have been a receptacle of Thieves, or Enemies. 13 *Glisca*, 14 *Bascapan*, possessed and fortified by the *Turks*, to make good their footing in this Country. But possibly most of these strong-holds now possessed by the *Turks* may be within the bounds of *Armenia Major*, and *Albania*, tho' within the Country of the *Georgians*; the name not being limited to *Iberias*, as was said before. I do not find that any of them are now extant; and it is probable, as they were built by the *Turks* to secure the possession of this Country against the *Persians*, so they were all destroyed by the latter, after *Telus* fell into their hands, which I reckon was in the Reign of *Sba Abbas*.

The first Inhabitants hereof were such who were brought hither by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*, from whom this People at the first, as *Josephus* hath it, had the name of *Thobeli*. But that name growing out of knowledge, the Nations in it of most note were the *Tikarini*, *Mossynaci*, *Chalybes*, and of less esteem, the *Biseri*, *Sapner*, *Macrones*, &c. united at the last in the name of *Iber*, from the River *Iberus*, of which *Pliny* speaketh, the principal of all this Country. Too fruitful of increase for so narrow a dwelling, some of them put themselves to seek their Fortunes; when after long wandering they fell upon the Coast of *Spain* next the *Pyrenes*, where they staid themselves; giving the name of *Iberus* to the chief River there, and of *Iberia* to the Country; Of which more before. Such of them as remained behind

continued an unconquered people, under the government of their own Kings, till the time of *Tigranes*, King of *Armenia*. By whom invited to his aid against the *Romans*, they came in accordingly; and in his Fall discomfited by *Lucullus* in three several Battels, were fain to stand upon their guard as well as they could: first holding fair with *Pompey*, who succeeded *Lucullus* in his charge; but breaking out again on a new Temptation, they were encountered by him: In which Battel 9000 of their Men being slain, and 10000 taken, they were constrained to sue for Peace; not otherwise to be obtained till *Attaces*, the King of these *Iberians*, gave his Sons for Pledges. After this *Endurance* to the *Roman* and *Gracian* Emperors, till the fatal Inundation of the *Saracens* had so weakened that Empire, that the Kings hereof acknowledged no more subjection to those of *Constantinople*, till *Constantinople* it self became the Imperial Seat of the *Ottoman* Family; in whose Quarrels with the *Persian* *Sophies*, this Country began to suffer a new Invasion; some Towns and Forts of it being taken by *Solyman*, in his March or Passage against *Tamas*. Afterwards in the Time of *Amurath* the Third, who set his Mind most eagerly on the War with *Persia*, a great part of it was subdued by *Mustapha*, the *Turkish* General: who inviting the Widow Princess and her Two Sons to come to his Tent, sent the young Princess to *Constantinople*; and by that means had opportunity to assure his purposes. And though the *Persians* did their best to assist the *Georgians*, yet proved they but a kind of miserable Comforters, as much punishing or plaguing this poor Country with their Aids, as the *Turks* by their Armies: So that now it stands divided betwixt the *Grand Seigneur*, and its Natural Princes, the *Georgian* Princes holding the greatest part, but the *Turks* being in possession of the strongest Holds; kept by them under colour of securing their way to *Persia*; for which this Country is indeed but unhappily seated. The *Turks* are now intirely beaten out.

4.

A L B A N I A.

A L B A N I A is bounded on the East with the *Caspian* Sea; on the West with *Iberia*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; on the South, with the *Moscibici*: So named from the *Albani*, who did once inhabit it; and of late called *Suiria* but reckoned in these last Ages as a part of *Georgia*.

The Country of so rich a Soil, that without the least labour of the Husbandman, the Earth doth naturally and liberally afford her store; and where it is but once sown, will yield two or three Reapings. But being ill Husbands on it in former Times, they occasioned *Strabo* to give them this Note for a remembrance. That they needed not the use of the Sea, who knew no better how to make use of the Land. The People anciently so simple, that they could not reckon above One Hundred; ignorant of Weights, Measures, and

the use of Money. Old Age they had in high esteem, but held it utterly unlawful to make speech of the Dead. And of these *Pliny* doth report, That they were gray-headed from their very Youth, and could see as well by Night as by Day: The verity of which last may be somewhat questionable. But withal, they are affirmed to have been a stout and courageous People, strong Bodies, patient of Toil and Labour, as they are at this Day. And well the men may be courageous and stout, when the Women are so truly masculine. Of whom it is affirmed by Authors of undoubted Credit, That they were exercised in Arms and Martial Feats, as if descended lineally from the Ancient *Amazons*, whom *Plutarch* placed in this Tract; reporting some of them to be aiding to these *Albanians*, in their War with *Pompey*: which possibly might be no other than some of the more noble *Albanian* Dames.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1 *Soana*, giving name to the *Soani*, one of the Nations of these parts mentioned by *Pliny*. 2 *Cæsius*. 3 *Gerrus*. 4 *Albanus*, whence perhaps the name of *Albani* came unto this People. 5 *Cyrus*, (by *Plutarch* called *Cyrnus*) spoken of in *Armenia* Major, but more properly belonging to this Country; because herein it hath its Spring, and the greatest part of its course also. For rising out of the Mountain *Caucasus*, which shuts up this Province on the North, it passeth thorow the midst of it, till it come to the Borders of *Armenia*, where it beginneth to bend more towards the East; and having received into its Channel all the former Rivers, besides many others of less note, falleth with twelve Mouths into the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. This River was a long time the Boundary between the *Turks* and *Persians*. Mountains of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with other Nations: The *Montes Moscibici* on the South, and *Caucasus* upon the North, being rather common boundaries betwixt several Nations, than peculiar unto any one; though from the last the *Iberians*, and these *Albanians*, be in some Writers called *Caucasice Gentes*.

Cities and Towns I find many in it, but little of them more than their very Names: 1 *Chabata*, by *Pliny* called *Cabalaca*, and honoured with the Character of *Insignis Albanie urbs*, the most noted City of this Country. 2 *Albana*, so called from the River *Albanus*, upon which it was seated. 3 *Teleba*. 4 *Nomechia*. 5 *Thelbis*. 6 *Getara*, near unto the Influx of the River *Cyrus*. How these are called, or whether any thing be remaining of them, I am not able to say. The chief now being, and worthy to be so accounted, is the City of *Derbent*, situate near the *Caspian* Sea; from which to *Teflis*, a City spoken of before, remain the Foundations of a high and thick Wall; affirmed to have been built by *Alexander the Great*, to defend these Parts against the irruptions of the Northern unconquered Nations. The Town invironed with two Walls, and so defended by difficult and narrow passages of the Rocks, that it is not easily accessible; but taken for all that, by *Mustapha*.

Muſtaſpha the *Turkiſh* General, Anno 1577. and made the ordinary Residence of a *Turkiſh* Baſia: Conceiv'd to be the *Caucaſiæ Porta* of the Ancients, which *Pliny* honoureth with the Title of *Ingens naturæ miraculum*: By *Egeſippus*, for the ſtrength of it, call'd *Porta Ferrea*; with reference to which by the *Turks* call'd *Demir-can*, the word ſignifying in their Language, A Gate of Iron. This City is now under the King of *Persia*: Mr. *Jenkenſon*, who ſaw it in 1562, ſaith it is an old City, ſeated on an Hill call'd *Ciſtow*, walled with very high, and thick Free-ſtone Walls; *Hackluit*, p. 1. p. 345. Strays a *Dutchman*, who ſaw it in 1670, ſaith, *It lies ſtreched from Eaſt to Weſt about two Engliſh miles, the Caſpian Sea waſhing its Walls, and was then the ſurtheſt City the Perſians had on this ſide, and their Frontier againſt the Ruſs and Tartar*, pag. 225. It had then a Garriſon of 1200 *Perſians*, but was going to decay, the lower Ward next the Sea being all turned to Gardens; the middle Ward inhabited by none but *Perſians*, and a few *Jews*, who dealt moſtly in Slaves. The Upper-Ward was a Fortrefs furniſhed with Braſs Cannon. Thus far, and much more that Author hath concerning this old and almoſt ruined City. The other places of this Tract are either of no account and eſtimation, or elſe are ſpecified before amongſt the Cities and good Towns of the *Georgians*, of whoſe Country this is now a part: yet we may add, 2 *Sabran*, upon the Borders of *Media*. 3 *Sancta Maria*, North of *Derbent*; both of them on, or near the Banks of the *Caſpian Sea*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country ſeem to have been of the Plantation of *Geſher* the Son of *Arum*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, whoſe Memory was long preſerved in the City of *Getara*, before mentioned: So call'd by him, or ſome of his Poſterity in remembrance of him. The people living ſomewhat out of the Common Road, were little troubled with Invaders from Foreign Parts; neither the *Perſians* nor *Macedonians* looking ſo far North. Nor poſſibly had the *Romans* taken notice of them, had they not engaged themſelves with *Tigranes* firſt, and afterwards with *Mitridates*: Falling on *Pompey* with an Army of 40000, and well beaten by him, they were content to ſue for Peace. But finding that the *Iberians* alſo had took up Arms, they engaged again; levying an Army of 12000 Horſe, and 90000 Foot, in which *Oroetes* their King, with his Brother *Cofis*, were in perſon preſent. And though they had made good the Banks of the River *Cyrus*; yet being ill armed, and for the moſt part only with Skins of Beaſts, they made but ſmall reſiſtance againſt the *Romans*: notwithstanding the gallant charge of *Cofis*, who aſſaulted *Pompey*, and had the honour to be ſlain by him in the place. After this overthrow, and their giving Pledges unto *Pompey* for their Good Behaviour, we find little mention of them in the Stories of the *Roman* Empire, till the Time of *Trajan*; who having conquered and reduced *Armenia Major* to the Form of a Province, reſolved to ſhew his Power to theſe Neighbouring Nati-

ons: and to that end impoſed a King on the *Albani*, of his own appointment, and made the Kings of *Colchis* and *Iberia*, do their Homage to him. In Times ſucceeding no News of them; either becauſe remote from the Stage of Action, or ſerving under the command of ſome greater Nation, where their name occurs not. Conquered by *Orcades*, or *Hocata*, the Chieſ of *Tartary*, together with *Georgia*, and *Armenia* they were a while ſubject to that Empire: and paſſing in ſucceeding times by the name of *Georgians*, did partake of the ſame Fortunes with them. Now at the mercy of the *Turk*, who by reaſon of the ſtrong footing which he hath gotten amongſt them is become a dreadful Neighbour to them; if not acknowledged by them for their Lord in chief. They are altogether ſubject to the *Perſians*, and not at all to the *Turks*.

Thus having taken a ſurvey of all the Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire, both in *Europe* and *Aſia*, and touch'd upon the means by which they are poſſeſſed of *Egypt*, whereunto all the reſt of their hold in *Aſrick*, ſerves but for an acceſſory, we will now look upon the Story of this People, their firſt original, the great ſucceſs of their Affairs, the Princes under whoſe command they have made theſe Conqueſts: Which having done, we will proceed to a Deſcription of the Perſons, Manners and Conditions of the *Turks* themſelves, their power and policy, with other things conſiderable in ſo great an Empire.

And firſt for the Original of the *Turkiſh* Nation, they were moſt probably the Deſcendants of thoſe *Turſæ*, whom *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* place about the Fens of *Maſotis*. Of whom thus *Mela*, ſpeaking of the *Gelani*, a *Scythian* people, *Juxta Thyſageta, Turcæque, vaſtas ſylvas occupant, clu-turque venando*, &c. Next unto them (ſaith he) live the *Thyſageta*, and the *Turce*, poſſeſſed of vaſt Woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and deſart Country with continual Rocks, as far as to the *Arympeians*. And *Pliny* muſtering up the Barbarous Nations of thoſe parts, joins the *Tuſſageta* (or *Thyſageta*) with the *Turks*, and placeth them next the *Arympeians*, as *Mela* doth, *uſque ad ſolitudines ſaltuoſis vallibus aſperas*, ſpreading themſelves unto the rough Deſarts and woody Valleys: Not known by action (tho by name) till the time of *Tiberius* the ſecond, who began his Empire Anno 577. when preſſing hard on the *Avares*, a Neighbouring Nation, they compelled them to forſake their Seats, and paſs into *Europe*; where they made themſelves Maſters of *Pannonia*, now call'd *Hungary*. In the Time of *Heraclius*, we find them, with other Barbarous Nations, at the Siege of *Conſtantinople*, in 619, but under the command of the *Perſians*. After which they began to ſet up for themſelves, and in the Year 763, made a Road into thoſe Countries which we laſt deſcribed; and loading themſelves with Prey and Booty, returned

turned home again. But liking better of these Parts than their own Poor Dwellings, in the Year 844. they brake once more thorough the *Caspian Streights*; and passing through *Iberia*, seized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themselves, giving it the name of *Turcomania*: In which wide and spacious Country they roamed up and down, without any certain Habitation, removing their Herds and Families from one place to another, as they had formerly been used to do in the Fens of *Albion*; and as the *Tartars* and Wild *Arabs* do until this day. And so they lived a poor and contemptible Nation, till *Mahomet* the *Sultan of Persia*, rebelling against his Lord and Master, the *Caliph of Babylon*, called in these *Turks* unto his aid; and by their help obtained a signal Victory. The Victory obtained, the *Turks* desire their Wages and a fair dismission; but could speed in neither, the *Sultan* being loath to part with such a necessary mischief till his Affairs were better settled; and therefore shutting up the passages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them. Provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tengrolpix* their principal Leader, they began to spoil and waste the Country; a multitude of needy People, and some of the discontented Soldiers coming daily to them. Assaulted by the *Persians*, in the first Battle they not only got a notable Victory, but such store of Armour, Horses, and other necessities, as made them able to encounter with the *Sultan* himself: whom having overthrown and slain in the second Fight, *Tengrolpix* is by both Armies proclaimed *Sultan*, or King of *Persia*, in the year 1030, or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongst the *Turks* two most noted Tribes; the *Seluccian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the *Seluccian*, *Tengrolpix*, *Cutlu Moses*, *Melech* and *Ducat* were the Heads; of which, *Tengrolpix* as the chief of that Clan or Family was settled in the Throne of *Persia*: *Cutlu Moses*, furnished with an Army against the Christians, possessed himself of a great part of *Asia Minor*: *Melech* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Cousin the *Persian Sultan*, were vested into the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, with their several Territories. But the Line of *Tengrolpix* and the rest being all wore out, as hath been shewn in our Description of *Syria*, and *Anatolia*, the man of most Nobility amongst the *Turks*, was *Ottoman* the chief of the *Oguzian* Family; Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Alachan*, a small Territory in the Realm of *Persia*. Which *Solyman* flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Persia*, was drowned in crossing the River *Euphrates*, as he passed with his few Subjects towards *Asia Minor*, the best place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the Chief-ship of his Tribe to *Etbrogul* his Son, who obtained of the last *Aladine* of the *Seluccian* Family, the Village of *Saguta* in *Bythinia*, for himself and his small handful of people. To him succeeded his Son *Ottoman*, in the Year 1280. who to revenge some Injuries done unto his People by the improvident Christians, took from them Castle after Castle; and in the end possessed himself of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperial Seat of the *Græcian* Emperors. Emboldened with such great Successes, and hearing of the death of *Aladine* the Second, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himself the Title of *Sultan*, Anno 1300. from which before he had abstained. To this time, and these small beginnings we must reduce the first foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire; increased unto its present greatness by the courage and good fortune of these Princes following.

The Kings of the *Turks* of the *Oguzian*, or *Ottoman* Family.

1320 1 *Ottoman*, or *Osman* the Son of *Etbrogul*, the first *Turkish Sultan* of this Line, added to his small Territory the greatest part of *Phrygia*, *Bythinia*, and some part of *Pontus*. 28.

- 1328 2 *Orchanes*, took the City of *Prusa*, and made it his Residence; and was the first that had footing in *Europe*, where he got *Gallipolis*, and other pieces.
- 1350 3 *Amurath*, won the *Thracian Chersonese*, the strong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; where he was slain by a Common Soldier in the Fields of *Cossova*. 23.
- 1373 4 *Bajazet*, made himself Master of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*. He was taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and brained himself in an Iron Cage, in which the Insolent Conqueror used to carry him. 26.
- 1402 5 *Solyman*, The Eldest Son of *Bajazet*, succeeded in the peaceable possession of the *Turkish* Provinces in *Europe*; but passing with an Army into *Asia*, for the recovery of those parts thereof usurped by *Mahomet* his youngest Brother, he was forced again into *Europe*, to make head against *Musa Bajazet* his Third Son (employed by *Mahomet* in that diversion) who having there vanquished and slain him, Anno 1406. succeeded for a time in the Throne at *Adrianople*.
- 1404 6 *Mahomet*, the youngest Son of *Bajazet*, a vigilant and active Prince, first wrested from his Brother *Isa* (*Bajazet's* second Son then living) the City of *Prusa*, with the Dominions thereunto belonging, thereupon taking to himself the Title of King or *Sultan*, by degrees recovered all which his Father had lost unto the *Tartars*. Afterwards making use of *Musa*, for the supplanting of *Solyman*, he followed him presently into *Europe*, where he fought with him, vanquished and slew him, about the year 1416. Thereby uniting in his own Person the whole *Turkish* Kingdom, which he enlarged with the more absolute Conquest of *Dacia*, part of *Sclavonia*, and the rest of *Macedon*. 17.
- 1416 7 *Amurath II.* subdued from the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, all *Achaia*, *Thessaly*, *Epirus*; he shook the State of *Hungary*, and died before the Walls of *Croy*. 34.

The *Ottoman* Emperors.

- 1450 8 *Mahomet II.* surnamed the Great, and first Emperor of the *Turks*, conquered the Two Empires of *Constantinople* and *Trabezond*, Twelve Kingdoms, and Two Hundred Cities. 31.
- 1481 9 *Bajazet II.* subdued the *Caramanian* Kingdom, and part of *Armenia*, and drove the *Venetians* from *Morea*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.
- 1512 10 *Selimus*, having poisoned his Father, subverted the *Mamelucks* of *Egypt*; bringing it, together with *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the Yoak of the *Turks*. 7.
- 1519 11 *Solyman II.* surnamed the Magnificent, surprised *Rhodes*, *Belgrade*, *Buda*, with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Affyria*, *Mesopotamia*. 48.
- 1567 12 *Selimus II.* an idle and effeminate Emperor, by his Deputies took from the *Venetians* the Isle of *Cyprus*; and from the *Moors*, the Kingdom of *Tunis* and *Algiers*. 8.
- 1575 13 *Amurath III.* took from the disagreeing *Persian*, *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City *Taurus*; and the Fort *Garriso* from the *Hungarians*. 20.

1595 14 *Mahomet III.* took *Agria* in *Hungary*; which Kingdom in all likelihood had been lost, if he had pursued his Victory at the Battel of *Keresztur*. Never but then in any Battel, and then so frightened, that he durst never see the face of an Army afterwards.

1603 15 *Achmet*, who the better to enjoy his pleasures, made Peace with the *German* Emperor, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.

1618 16 *Mustapha*, Brother to *Achmet* succeeded, which is a Novelty, never before heard of in this Kingdom; it being the *Grand Seigneur's* common Policy to strangle all the younger Brothers: howsoever this *Mustapha* was preserved either, because *Achmet* being once a younger Brother, took pity on him, or because he had no issue of his own Body, and so was not permitted to kill him.

1618 17 *Osman*, or *Ottoman II.* Succeeded his Uncle *Mustapha*; and being unsuccessful in his War against *Poland*, was by the *Fanizaries* slain in an uproar, and *Mustapha* again restored: yet long enjoyed he not his Throne; for the same hand that raised him, plucked him down again, and seated young *Amurath* in the place.

1623 18 *Morat* (or *Amurath* the IV.) Brother of *Osman*, of the age of 13 years, Succeeded on the second Deposition of his Uncle *Mustapha*; who proved a stout and Masculine Prince, and bent himself to the reviving of the ancient Discipline. To the great good of *Christendom*, he spent his Stomach on the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Babylon*.

1640 19 *Ibrahim*, the Brother of *Morat*, preserv'd by the *Sultaneſs* his Mother in his Brother's life; and by her power deposed again for interdicting her the Court. He spent a great part of his Reign in the War of *Crete*, against the *Venetians*; but without any great success.

1648 20 *Mahomet IV.* Son of *Ibrahim*, now reigning: Lord of all this vast Empire, containing all *Dacia* and *Greece*, the greatest part of *Sclavonia* and *Hungary*, the Isles of the *Ægean* Sea, and a great part of the *Taurican Chersonese* in *Europe*; of all the Isles, and Provinces which we have hitherto described in *Asia*; and in *Africk* of all *Egypt*, the Kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, with the Ports of *Suacem* and *Erocco*. Nor is their stile inferior to so vast an Empire, *Solyman* thus stiling himself in his Letter to *Villerius* Great Master of the *Rhodes*, at such time as he intended to Invade that Island: *i. e.* *Solyman King of Kings, Lord of Lords, most high Emperor of Constantinople and Trabezond, the most mighty King of Persia, Syria, Arabia, and the Holy Land; Lord of Europe, Asia, and Africa; Prince of Mecca and Aleppo, Ruler of Jerusalem, and Sovereign Lord of all the Seas and Isles thereof.*

1687 21 *Solyman III.* Brother of *Mahomet* the IV. Ascended this Throne by the means of a Tumult in the Army, *Novemb. 8. 1687.* *Mahomet IV.* was a Prince that was guilty of as few, and as tolerable Vices as any of his Predecessors. He was neither excessively Ambitious or Covetous, and to all his Subjects he was Mild and Merciful, but he was a soft and Effeminate Prince, and delighted more in Hunting than in War, or the trouble of a State-Council; so that his Government was for the most part managed by his Prime Vizers, in which the Son Succeeded the Father, contrary to the Maxims and Usage of this Government. In the Year 1682. this Prince was engaged in a War with the Emperor of *Germany*, and sent an Army of 100000 Men to Besiege *Vienna* in 1683. which was Baffled, and lost all

their Tents, Cannon, and Ammunition, and soon after *Vienna*; the next Year the Emperor Besieged *Nax-Haus*, but could not take it. 1684 *Buda* was Besieged, but not Taken; In 1685 *Nax-Haus* Besieged again, and Taken; in 1686 *Buda* also was Taken after a second Siege, and a great part of *Hungary* with it. The next Year the *Turks* lost to the *Germans*, the Battel of *Mohatz*. And in the mean time, they had lost to the *Venetians* the greatest part of the *Mores*, so they fell into a general Dependancy and Dissatisfaction, and nothing would serve them but the Deposing their Prince, who had angered God and their Prophet, by breaking his Faith with the Emperor of *Germany*; and tho' *Mahomet* had a Son at Age to Succeed him, yet they set up *Solyman* his Brother, who was then about 45 years old, tall, and of a strong Complexion: He had lived 40 years in Prison, and conversed more with Books than Men, or Business; so that he had never yet appeared at the Head of an Army; nor have their Affairs been at all bettered by this Change, but they have since his Reign lost the remainder of *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Serbia*, *Transylvania*, *Moldavia*, and *Wallachia*, and might have been driven over the *Bosphorus* into *Asia*, if *Lewis XIV.* of *France*, in the Year 1688 had not began a War upon the *German* Empire to save this.

1691 22 *Achmet II.* Succeeded his Brother, being set up by the *French* Faction at *Constantinople*, out of a double design, the first of which is, that the Great Men might under him Govern as they pleased, he being a Person utterly incapable of being the Governor of his People; the Second is, That the *French* Party might carry on the War against the *Germans*, how much soever it tended to the Ruin of the *Ottoman* Empire. The Deposed Sultan was exposed dead, the 4th of *January* 1692 and 93. and immediately after, the same day, sent away to *Constantinople* to be Buried. The Factions and Discontents running high at that time, because the War was continued, and the present Sultan having a Son Born this Summer, 'tis probable this Death was not Natural, and will be attended by other Tragick Deaths of his Children.

1695 23 *Mustapha*, Son of *Mahomet IV.* Succeeded *Achmet* his Uncle, who died, as was said, of a Dropsie at *Adrianople*, *January 6. 1694, 95.* in the 33d. of his Age. He is reported to have left an Infant Son of about an year old, who was of necessity to be set aside; There had been so much wrong done to *Mahomet IV.* and to his Family, (for he was a Good and Gracious Prince, and Reigned with more Clemency than any of his Predecessors) that the Great Men feared nothing more than to fall under that Branch of this Royal Family again; but now both the Brothers were thus quickly gone, there was a necessity for it: And he began his Reign with the Death of most of the Enemies of his Family; and then in Person took the Field against the Emperor, and had good Success in his first Campaign, which may be supposed to have much revived the drooping and dejected Minds of his Subjects, who by a long Series of Misfortunes were reduced to a mighty ebb of Valour. The truth of this Conjecture time will shew, it being now not one full year since he ascended that Throne.

The Succession of the Ottoman House, according to
Du Fresne's Pedigree.

- 1300 *Osman*, or *Ottoman*. 29.
 1328 *Urchan*, or *Orchan*. 32.
 1359 *Murat*, or *Aurath*. 32.
 1391 *Bajazet*, he was taken by *Tamerlane*, the 29th. of
 July 1402. and died in 1403.
 Solyman seven years.
 1402 { *Musa*
 Muchemet.
 1402 { *Musa* Slain in 1413 by his Brother
 1413 { *Muchemet*, or *Mahomet*, he Reigned eight years
 alone, and died in 1421.
 1421 *Murat II.* Died Feb. 11. 1451. Reigned 31.
 1451 *Muchemet II.* Took *Constantinople*, May 29. 1459.
 Died May 3. 1481.
 1481 *Bajazet II.* 31.
 1512 *Selim*. 8.
 1520 *Soleiman*. 46.
 1566 *Selim II.* 8.
 1574 *Murat III.* 20.
 1595 *Muchemet III.*
 1603 *Achmet* 14.
 1617 *Osman*, who was strangled by *Mustapha* his
 Uncle, May 20. 1622.
 1622 *Mustapha I.*
 1623 *Murat IV.* 16.
 1640 *Ibrahim*, Brother of *Murat*.
 1649 *Muchemet IV.* Deposed.
 1687 *Solyman*, Brother of *Muchemet*, died June 22.
 1691 *Achmet II.* (Brother of *Muchemet* then living) he
 died, January 6.
 1695 *Mustapha II.* Son of *Mahomet IV.*

As for the Persons of the *Turks*, they are generally well Complexioned, of good stature, proportionably compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things superfluous; Hot and Venereous, Servile to their Prince, and Zealous in their Religion. They nourish no hair upon their heads, except it be a tuft on the top of their Crowns, by which they think that *Mahomet* will snatch them up into Paradise at the day of Judgment. For which reason they keep on of all sides, tho' never so poor, accounting it an opprobrious thing to see any men uncover their heads; saying, when they dislike of any thing which they see, or hear, *I had as lief thou hadst shewn me thy bare skull*. In their familiar Salutation they lay their hands on their Bosoms, and a little incline their Bodies; but when they accost a Person of Rank, they bow almost to the ground, and kiss the hem of his Garment. Walking up and down they never use, and much wonder at the often walking of Christians. *Biddulph* relateth, that being at his ambulatory Exercise with his Companion, a *Turk* demanded of him whether they were out of their way, or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloister, why come you downwards? if to the nether end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief Recreation, which they also follow with much laziness, sitting on Carpets in the shade, and sending some of their Slaves to fetch their Arrows. They prefer, as they pass the streets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made Master of his Sword with whom they walk. As they shave their Heads, so they wear their Beards long, as a sign of Freedom; but their Slaves keep theirs shaven and close cut.

The Women are of small stature, for the most part ruddy, clear, and smooth as the polish'd Ivory; as neither afflicted with the weather, and often frequenting the Baths: of a very good Complexion, seldom going abroad, and then Masqued; Lascivious within doors, pleasing in matters of incontinency, and they are accounted most Beautiful which have the greatest eyes, and are of the

blackest hue. Every *Turk* is permitted to have four Wives, and as many Slaves as he is able to keep; yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending Woman being drowned, and the Man dismembred. These Women live in great awe and respect of their Husband, never sitting with him at the Table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into some Room. If their Husband hath been abroad, at his coming in they all rise from the stools whereon they sat, kiss his hand, and make an obeysance, and stand as long as he is in presence. The Children which they have, they carry not in their Arms, as we do, but astride on their shoulders; they live immured from the sight of the World: and permit not their Male Children, no not their own Sons, to come among them, after they are twelve years old. From their Husbands they cannot be divorced, but on special occasion: but the Husbands may put away their Wives, or give them to their Slaves, when, and as often as they list. Far better is it with the Sisters or Daughters of the *Sultan*; to whom, when her Father or Brother bestoweth her on one of the *Bassas*, he giveth her a Dagger, saying, *I give thee this Man to be thy Slave or Bedfellow; if he be not Loving, Obedient, and Dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this Canzharre or Dagger, to cut off his head*. When they are Married, their Husbands come not to Bed unto them, till they are sent for, and then also they creep in at the Beds-feet. That ever any of their Ladies made use of their Daggers, I could never Read. Only I find, that *Luizus Bassa*, the chief Man of the Empire next the *Sultan* himself, and of him very much beloved, having given his Wife, which was Sister to *Solyman the Magnificent*, a box on the Ear, was on complaint by her made, thrust from all his Honours, Banished into *Macedon*; and had doubtless been slain, if the Emperor's Love, and his own Merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the Prerogative of the *Sultan's* Daughter; her Sons being accounted as meer and ordinary *Turks* only, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain, for fear they should be apt to harbour some aspiring thoughts.

The better sort of the *Turks* use the *Sclavonian* Tongue, the Vulgar speak the *Turkish* Language; which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Persians*, their words of State; from the *Arabick* their words of Religion; from the *Græcians* their words or terms of War; and from the *Italians*, their terms of Navigation.

They were formerly Idolatrous Pagans, and were first initiated into *Mahometanism*, when they got the Sovereignty of the *Persian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion are, 1 The *Saffi*, or *Novices*. 2 The *Calfi*, or *Readers*. 3 The *Hogi*, or writers of Books; for Printing they use not. 4 The *Napi*, or young Doctors. 5 The *Caddi*, whereof there is at least one in every City to judge of Offences. 6 The *Mudrossi*, who use to oversee the *Caddis*. 7 The *Medlis*, or Principal Church-Governor under the *Musti*. 8 The *Cadelescais*, whereof there are only three; one of *Greece*, the other for *Anatolia*, the third for *Egypt* and *Syria*; and these sit with the *Bassas* in the *Divano*, to determine of temporal Suits. 9 The *Musti*, whose Sentence in Law and Religion is uncontrollable. He abaseth not himself to sit in the *Divano*, nor affordeth more Reverence to the Emperor, than he doth to him.

His Forces are either for the Sea or the Land. His Sea-forces are great in regard of his spacious Sea-coasts, vast Woods, and number of Subjects. He never suffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he shewed his Navy whole and entire. Gallies are his only Vessels, which being unable to cope with Ships of any bigness, were not only the occasion of that overthrow, but also have heartned the *Florentine*, with six great Ships of War only, to swagger in the Seas; so that for more safety, the Tribute of *Egypt* is of late sent to *Constantinople* by Land. The Captain *Bassa*, or Admiral, notwithstanding, with a Navy of 60 Sail, makes a yearly progress about the Seas and Sea-Towns, to annoy

roy the Enemy, suppress Pirates, collect his Tributes, and to redress the Abuses committed in the Maritime Towns, belonging to the Admiralty. Which Annual Circuit is begun in *May*, and ended in *October*. This Defect in the *Turkish* Navigation has lost him the Empire of the Sea, and will (by God's Blessing) in a short time deprive him of all his Islands, and in probability of *Europe* too. The *Turks* have a Superstitious Proverb, *That God has given them the Empire of the Land, which is stable and fixed; and the Christians the Empire of the Sea, which is fluid and inconstant*: And this is perhaps the Principal Reason why they never built any great Ships, or since the Battel of *Lepanto* endeavoured to recover the Dominion of the Seas.

Their Land-forces are either Horse or Foot. They which serve on Horse-back are either the *Spahi* or *Asapi*; these latter serving to weary the Enemies, and dull their Swords with their Multitudes; of whose Bodies the *Janizaries* use to make Mounts, whereon to assault the Wall of a besieged Town; and are by them so contemned, that a *Janizary* once sold two of them for a Sheeps-head: As for the *Spahi*, they, till they are inrolled into Pay, are of the same Original and Education with the *Janizaries*; and called by the same name, *Azamoglans*. Their Pay is ten Aspers a day. The *Turk* is able, and doth maintain 15000 Horse at little or no cost, which no other Prince can do with 14 Millions of Gold. For wheresoever any parcel of Land is conquered, it is divided into divers parts, and committed to the manuring of divers men, whom they call *Timariots*. These are to pay unto the Emperor certain Rents; and at their own charges to send to his Wars so many Horse, excellently appointed for the Field: And which is the chief point of their Service, to keep in awe the Subjects in all parts of his Empire. For being, as they are, dispersed in all quarters of his Dominions, the people can no sooner stir, but these will be assembled, and fall upon them. These *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 357000 have their abode in *Europe*, and 402000 in *Asia* and *Africa*. Were it not for these *Timariots*, as the *Turks* saying is, no Grass would grow where the *Grand Seigneurs* Horse hath once set his Hoof; for if the care of manuring the Ground were committed to the Peasants, and not to Military men, the greatest part of this Empire would grow waste and desolate. These *Timariots* were instituted by *Ottoman*, the first *Turkish* King of this Family; and a curse by him laid on them that should annihilate the Institution. The name is derived from the *Turkish* word *Timar*, signifying a stipend.

But the Nerves and Sinews of this warlike Body, are the *Janizaries*; who by original being Christians, are chosen by the *Turkish* Officers every five Years, out of his *European* Dominions; and so distributed abroad to learn the Language, Customs, and Religion of the *Turks*; afterward according to their strength, will, or disposition, placed in divers Chambers. They of the first Chamber are preferred, some to be *Chiausies*, such as go on Embassies, and execute Judgments; others to *Sanziacks*, or Governors of Cities; some to be *Bassas*, or Commanders of Horsentien; and others to be *Beglerbegs*, (i. e. Lord of Lords) to command the rest in general. They of the other Chambers are the *Janizaries*, or *Prætorian* Soldiers of the Guard; to whose Faith and Trust the care of the Emperor's Person is committed. The rithing of these young Springals is, as we have said every fifth Year; and oftner sometimes, as occasions serve. By which means he not only disarmeth his own Subjects, and keepeth them from attempting any stir or innovation in his Empire: but spoileth all the Provinces he most feareth, of the Flower, Sinew, and Strength of their People; choice being made of the strongest Youths only, and fittest for War. These, before they are inrolled in pay, are called *Azamoglans*, and behave themselves with much submissiveness towards

their Seniors and Governors: but when once they are honoured with the Title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intolerable pride and haughtiness. Till of late they were not permitted to marry, neither now can any of their Sons be accounted any other than a natural *Turk*, (whom of all the rest they account the basest) the eldest only excepted: To whom this Privilege was granted by *Amurath* the third, when he came to the Crown. They are in number 40000, of which 16000 are always resident in *Constantinople*. In this City they are diversly employed, being as Constables to see the Peace kept; as Clerks of the Market, to see to the Weights and Measures; as Officers, to arrest Common Offenders; as Warders, to look to the Gates, and guard the Houses of Ambassadors, and to travel with Strangers for their more safety; in which charge they are very faithful. Their Pay is but five Aspers a day, and two Gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, or 100 men being their greatest preferment: yet are they very obsequious to their Captain or *Aga*, who is in place inferior to the meanest *Bassa*, tho in power perhaps above the chiefest. For the crafty *Turks* join not Power and Authority; and if they observe the *Janizaries* to love and respect their *Aga*, they quickly deprive him of Life and Office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the first, Anno 1365. their greatest Establisher, *Amurath* the second: The name signifieth young Soldiers.

Now concerning these *Janizaries*, we will farther consider, 1. The sway they bear in designing the Successor. 2. Their Insolency towards the Emperor and his Officers. 3. Their Behaviour in the vacancy of the Throne. And 4. Their Punishments.

1. Concerning the first, I never find any particular sway the *Janizaries* carried, in the designation of their Emperor, till the death of *Mahomet the Great*: when the *Bassas* having chosen *Cercut* the Son of *Bajazet*, were over-ruled by the *Aga* and his *Janizaries*, who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father, and Son to *Mahomet*. Tho' I am not ignorant that when this *Mahomet* succeeded in the Throne, the Joyful Acclamations made by the Soldiers, was accounted the chiefest sign of his secure and perpetuated Establishment. But the chief Instance of their Power herein, was the inthronizing of *Selmas* the First, who being but the Seventh Son of this *Bajazet*, was not only prefer'd by them before his Brethren in his Father's Life-time; but by their Aids also he severally mastered them, and in the end poisoned his Father. To omit other Examples, even of late, Anno 1622. they slew the young Emperor *Orman*, drew his Uncle *Mustapha* out of Prison, and established him in the Royalty.

2. As for the next, the first Example in which I find them peccant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the Reign of the above-mentioned *Bajazet*; when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Bassa* whom they loved, they broke open the Court Gates, and told the Emperor, *They would teach him, like a Drunkard, a Beast, and a Rascal as he was, to use his Great Place and Calling with more Sobriety and Discretion*. Not long after, conceiving further displeasure against the said *Bajazet*, they shook their Weapons against him, and refused to take him into the midst amongst them; and were not, without great and vile submission on his part, appeased. Against *Selmas* the first they also mutined; when being resolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better pursuit of his Victories against the *Persian*, he was by them forced to turn home unto *Constantinople*. Against *Solyman* they mutined so violently, that they compelled him to displace *Rustan*, his chief *Bassa* or Favorite. Against *Amurath* the Third, for placing over them a new *Aga*, they so strongly opposed themselves, that first they set fire on

Constantinople, and burnt therein besides Shops, and Ware-houses, twenty five great Inns, seven Temples, and 15000 Houses : and in the end constrained him to give them money, and to yield also into their hands two of his chief Counsellors, by them supposed to be their Adversaries, whom they drew about the streets. Finally, (to omit the tumult 1622. above-named) in the year 1600. they grew so discontented with *Mahomet* the third, that they not only threatned to destroy the Principal Officers of the Court, and the banishment of the *Sultane's* his Mother, but the deposing of himself also.

3. Now for the third, I find it to have been the custom of these *Fanizaries*, between the Death of an Old Emperor, and the beginning of a New, to commit divers Insolencies; as the rifling of the Houses of the *Jews* and *Christians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Bassas*, and principal men about the Court, whom they suspected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outrageous mischiefs. Of these we find frequent mention, as after the death of *Amurath* the second, and *Mahomet* the Great : at which last time the Merchants at *Constantinople*, being natural *Turks*, escaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Mahomet-Bassa* avoid the fury of their Swords. This spoil they took for so certain a due, that if they were disappointed of it, they would presently raise Commotions both in Court, Field and City; unless some present satisfaction were made them. To this end, *Achmet* distributed among them two millions and a half of Ducats, *Selimus* the first, two millions; others made an increase of their daily pay. But *Selimus* the second, distributing among them 100000 *Sultanies* only, was by them prohibited to enter into his *Seraglio*, till he had enlarged his bounty: and the Great *Bassas* were rapped about the Pate with their Cavaliers, for perswading them to quietness. Now to prevent the dangerous and factious Liberty, which in the vacancy of the Empire was usually committed, the Death of the old Emperor was with all secrecy concealed, till the arrival of the new. To omit others, I will instance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the first, and *Solyman* only. This *Solyman* died at the Siege of *Siget* in *Hungary*, which was so cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Bassa* the space of twenty days; that before the *Fanizaries* knew of it, his Son *Selimus* had possessed himself of *Constantinople*, and came also to their Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately strangled the Physicians and Apothecaries, which knew of his Death; commanded the Soldiers to go on in their Siege; and divers times shewed them the Emperor sitting in his Horse-litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he used to do: and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead Body, sitting still in the same manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the First, the *Bassas* of the Court called their *Divanoes* as formerly they used; gave order for the levying of an Army, as if some War were intended; and the King's Physicians went up and down with their Potions, as if they had him still in cure. But the Pensioners and *Fanizaries* misdoubting the matter, with all eagerness desired to see him; which when the *Bassas* durst not deny, they appointed the next day for their visit. The next day, the body was apparelled in Royal Large Robes; placed in a Chair at the end of a long Gallery, and a little Boy cunningly set behind him, to move the Kings hand to his head as if he should stroke his beard, as his manner was; which signs of life and strength the Soldiers seeing, held themselves contented and so was his death concealed the space of 41 days.

4. As for the last, These insolent and unsufferable pranks committed so commonly by these masterful slaves, so exceedingly stomached *Bajazet* the second, that he secretly purposed with himself, for curing so dangerous a disease, to use a desperate remedy; which was to kill and destroy suddenly all the *Fanizaries*. It is like that this *Bajazet*, being a Scholar, had read how *Constantine* the Great had called the *Prætorian* Soldiers, and destroyed

their Camp, as men that were the causes of all the stirs in his Empire, and whose pride was come to an intolerable height: and having the same cause to destroy his *Fanizaries*, hoped to have done it with as much ease and safety as the other did. But they having notice of the Plot, for the time continued so united and linked together, that he durst not then attempt it; and afterwards siding with his Son *Selimus*, cast him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperors never durst punish them openly; but when any of them proved delinquent, he is sent privately in the night-time to *Pera* over against *Constantinople*: where by the way he is drowned, and a Piece of Ordnance shot of, to signify the performing of the *Sultans* command. Since our Author wrote, there seems to have been a formed but secret design carried on to soften and by degrees bring under the *Fanizaries*; to this end the Children of the *Fanizaries* and natural *Turks* are more often taken up than those of the *Christians*: And these are better used, and having Relations and Friends, make use of them to raise themselves the sooner. So that Personal worth and valour is now less regarded and encouraged: There is also a Feud kept up between the *Spahis* and the *Fanizaries* which has occasioned great slaughters on both sides: In the Siege of *Candia*, vast numbers of the *Fanizaries* perished, and as it was thought by the design of the *Sultan* and *Prime-Vizier*. And in this War in *Hungary* vast numbers of the *Fanizaries* have perished, so that they have been supplied as they could be had out of the *Turks*, brought up in a quite different way, so that the *Fanizaries* that now are, have nothing but the name and pay of the old *Fanizaries*; yet they are still as mutinous and insolent as before, but growing into contempt at home and abroad, and perhaps with them will fall the *Turkish* or *Ottoman* Empire.

Now for the Emperors themselves, we will consider them in matters of Pleasure, in matters of Ceremony, and in matters of State; the last being considerable in three main points, which are, the murdering of their Brethren, the removing of their Sons, their Revenue; and therein a touch of their Government. To these we will add, what apparent symptoms may be observed to prognosticate the standing, decreasing, and increasing of this puissant Monarchy.

For the first, he hath not so few as 500 (sometimes 1000) choice Virgins kept in a *Seraglio* by themselves, all Slaves born of Christian Parents, and indeed the Rarest Beauties of his Empire. When he is disposed to take his pleasure with any of them, they are all ranked in a Gallery; and she is by the *Aga* of the Women prepared for his Bed, to whom he giveth his Handkerchief. She that beareth him the first Son, is honoured with the title of *Sultane's*, (Queen-Mother we may call her.) neither can he make any of them free, unless he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his Women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are strictly looked to, and liberally provided for, and not seldom are bestowed by the succeeding *Sultan*, on his Great *Bassas*, and such as he chiefly favoureth, which is a principal honour. They are attended on by Women and Eunuchs; these being not gelded only, but deprived of all their Genitals, and supplying the uses of Nature with a Silver Quill; which inhuman custom was brought in among them by *Selimus* the second, because he had seen a Gelding cover a Mare.

2. These Ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the most part the building of a *Mosche* only to help to the Salvation of their Souls; or towards them by others, which are most apparent in the entertainment of Ambassadors. For when such come to his presence, they are led between two of his Courtiers, and coming before the Throne (on both sides whereof the *Bassas* sit with admirable silence, resembling rather Statues than (men) they bow themselves to the ground with all humility: laying their hands on their breast, but never uncovering

vering their heads, (which as was noted before) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards; it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts toward a Prince so glorious. The reason why they are thus brought in between two, is said to be for their greater honour, but is indeed a fear they have, lest the *Grand Seigneur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embassie, should be stabbed. Which wariness they have used, ever since the time that *Miles Cobelatz*, a *Serbian*, scrambling from among the slain at the battle of *Cassova*, and being admitted to the speech of *Amurath* the first, the Author of that overthrow, stabbed him into the belly with his Dagger.

3. Amongst all the Jars and Discontents that be, none have been with more Unkindness begun, or more Eagerness prosecuted, than those of Brothers; and that not only in private Families, but in the stems of Princes, the multitude of Pretenders being the Original of most *Civil Wars*. To prevent these publick Emotions, the Emperors of *Habsburg* use to immure up all their younger Children in the Hill *Amara*; the *Persians* do put out the Eyes of their younger Brothers, and the *Turks* do murder them. Strange and horrid courses, whereby to avoid the fear of a War in the State, they stir up a War in their own Bowels. The first amongst the *Turks* that began this barbarous cruelty, was *Bajazet* the first, on his Brother *Jacup*; whom immediately after his Fathers death, he strangled with a bow-string: this being the only instrument of their *Fratricide*, because thereby none of the blood royal of *Ottoman* is spilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet* the Great caused his young Brother, then at nurse, to dye the death; and was not without much ado persuaded from being the Executioner himself. *Amurath* the third, caused his five Brethren to be at once strangled before his face; and *Mahomet*, his Son, no fewer than nineteen in one day. By this course they imagine their own Estate to be infinitely secured, as knowing that *Mustapha* a younger Son, stirred a Rebellion against *Amurath*; and *Zemes*, against *Bajazet*, both the second of those names: that *Solyman*, *Musa*, and *Isa*, severally afflicted *Mahomet* the first; and *Corcut*, *Selimus*, the first of these names also. But yet they will not know, that nothing sooner putteth their younger Brothers into these acts of Hostility, than an inevitable certainty of a violent and unnatural Death: whereas were they but sure of Life, and a Liberal and Princely Maintenance, it is more than probable, they would rest content, as in other Kingdoms the younger Princes do. And notwithstanding their barbarous Policy, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the *Counterfeits* have heretofore much disturbed the quiet of their Predecessors: for thus we find *Amurath* the second to have been vexed by one, that took upon him the name of *Mustapha*, elder brother to *Mahomet* then late deceased; who was much furthered and aided by the *Greek* Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of sedition in their neighbours Countreys. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*, after that a counterfeit *Nero*; and before them, two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm so often troubled with these *Mock-Kings*, as *England*: a counterfeit *Richard* the Second, being made in the time of *Henry* the Fourth; a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Henry* the Sixth; a counterfeit Duke of *York*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Henry* the Seventh; and a counterfeit *Edward* the Sixth, under Queen *Mary*. To prevent these walking Spirits, *Mahomet* the Third laid out the dead Bodies of his Father and nineteen Brethren, as a common Spectacle for all that passed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Seigneur Mustapha* miraculously escaped the Bow-string twice; 1 When his Brother *Achmet*, and 2 When *Osman* his young Nephew were made *Sultans*; and was the first in this Empire that ever did succeed in the collateral Line, as *Ibrahim* the late *Sultan* was the second on the death of *Morat* or *Amurath* the Fourth, his

elder Brother. And in 1687, *Solyman*; in 1691 *Achmet* Brothers of *Mahomet* the Fourth, succeeded in the Life of their Brother, who has Children of his own, which is likely in a short time to embroil that Empire in a Civil War.

4 The removing of the young Princes is done for three Reasons: 1. To wean them from the pleasures of the Court. 2. To train them up in Arms, and inure them to hardness. 3. And principally to avoid the danger of a Competitor, whereof old Princes are especially jealous. The common places destinated to this Princely exile, are *Amasia*, in *Cappadocia*; *Magnesia*, in *Lydia*; and such like Towns of *Natolia*. Neither do the old *Sultans* by such a great distance think themselves secure altogether; but carry a vigilant eye over their Sons *Education*, and have intelligence of almost every particular thought, the least suspicion being cause sufficient to destroy them. So we find *Mustapha*, Son to *Solyman*, the hopefulest branch that ever sprang from the *Ottoman* tree, to have been shamefully strangled by the command of his Father: upon a rumour only of a Marriage, which he was said to have negotiated with the *Persian* King's Daughter. When these Princes are once settled in the Government, it is a crime meriting no less punishment than death to depart thence and come unto *Constantinople*, before their Fathers death; or unless they are by their Fathers sent for. Of this we have a Tragical Example in *Mahomet*, a Prince of great hope, Son to *Bajazet* the second: who desiring to see the fashion of his Fathers Court, left *Magnesia*, to which he was by his Father confined; and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a Sea-faring man to *Constantinople*, and having obtained his desire, he returned to his charge. This strange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variously interpreted, stirred such jealousies in the suspicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him secretly poisoned.

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it consisteth either in money received, or money saved. The money saved, is first by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continually 60000 to attend him in his wars, without any pay but the spoil of the Enemy. And secondly by the *Timariots*, who nourish and bring into the Field more Horse than any Prince in Christendom can keep (as we have already said) for 14 Millions of Gold. The money received (according to *Boterus*) is only 15 millions of *Sultanies*, which is nothing in respect of so great an Empire. The chief reason whereof is the tyrannical government of the *Turk*, which deterrs men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their estates; as knowing all their gettings to lye at the *Grand Seigneurs* mercy. His extraordinary revenue is incredible. For besides that no Ambassador cometh before him empty-handed; no man is Master of his own wealth, farther than it stands with the Emperors liking: so that his great *Bassas* are but as sponges, to suck up riches till their Coffers swell; and then to be squeezed into his Treasury. These men, as he advanceth without envy, so can he destroy without danger: no man here hoping for partakers, if he should resist, as not being ignorant that one mans fortune is built on the desired overthrow of another. Such riches as they gain, if they hap to die naturally, return to the Emperors Coffers, who giveth only what he pleaseth to the Children of the deceased. These *Bassas* have in their particular Provinces, their *Divanors*, or Law-Courts, where justice hath been administred formerly with great integrity but now not a little corrupted; yet the comfort is, that such as miscarry in their right, shall without delay know what to trust to: and the *Bassas* upon complaint to the Emperor, are sure to die for it. Over these *Bassas* (the chief of whom is the *Vizier Bassa*, or President of the Council) preside two *Beglerbegs*, one for *Greece*, the other for *Natolia*.

6. Concerning the present state of the Empire, many judge it to be rather in the wane, than the increase;

which judgment they ground upon good reasons, whereof these are the chief.

1. The Body is grown too monstrous for the Head, the *Sultans* since the death of *Soyman* never accompanying their Armies in person (except *Alerat*, or *Amurat* the Fourth) but rioting and wasting their Bodies and Treasures at home.

2. The *Janizaries*, who have been accounted the principal strength of this Empire, are grown more factious in the Court, than valiant in the Camp; corrupted with ease and liberty, drowned in prohibited Wines, enfeebled with the continual converse of Women, and fallen from their former austerity of discipline.

3. They have of late given no increase unto their Dominions; and as in the paths of virtue, *Non progredi est regredi*, so in Empires, by violence gotten, when they cease to be augmented, they begin to be diminished.

4. Rebellions have in these latter times been in this Empire strangely raised, and mightily supported; which Commotions the former *Sultans* were never acquainted with.

5. The greatness of this Empire is such, that it labour-eth with nothing more than the weightiness of it self, so that it must in a manner needs decline, *Pondere pressa suo*, overburthened with its own mightiness. For as in a natural body, a Surfeit killeth more than fasting; so in the Body Politick also, too much extent of Empire doth sooner draw on a ruin, than either too little, or a mediocrity. There lies some objections to this Fifth Reason, because the *Assyrian*, *Persian*, and *Roman* Empire were much greater than the *Ottoman* ever was; and the *Macedonian*, tho divided into Four Parts, did yet subsist many Ages after it began to decline. But there is one thing to be said of this *Ottoman* Empire, that is not true of any of the rest; *The Dominions of it are much too great for the People*. The *Turks* have destroyed more rich and populous Cities, after they were possessed of them, and have desolated more fruitful Provinces than any Government that ever was before them in the World; so that their Dominions being great and far distended, they are not able to find people to occupy, or Soldiers to defend them; and this is the true Reason the *Germans* and *Venetians* have had such prodigious success against them in the present War.

6. The Sons of the *Grand Seigneur*, whose bravery of mind is ever suspected by their Fathers, are nursed up (contrary sometimes to their natural Inclinations) in all effeminacy; which once rooted in them in their youth, doth always after subject them to the softness and baseness of Libidinous Pleasures.

7. They have lost much of that fear and terror, which formerly their very Name did carry with it; insomuch that not the *Venetians* only have by Sea often mated, and once overthrown them; the *Hungarians* withstood their greatest Forces for the space of 200 years by land; the *Polonians* forced them to dishonourable retreat and composition; but the poor Prince of *Transylvania* did divers times discomfit them, with the death of many of their *Bassas*: The *Florentine* with six Ships only, intercepteth their Trade; and the poor *Emir of Sidon* held it out against them many years together.

8. By the avarice and corruption reigning in the Court, all Peace and War, all Counsels and Informations, all Injuries and Favours being now made saleable. And

9. It is visible and apparent, that their Empire was long since at the highest: *Et naturaliter quod procedere non potest, recidit*, as *Vellius* hath it, When an Empire can ascend no higher, by the ordinary course of nature it must have a fall. All these are more than probable Prognosticks of a sinking Monarchy: and yet there is a greater than any of these, that is to say, the present State of Affairs. The young Emperor *Mahomet* the Fourth, now reigning is but a weak Staff to support so vast an Empire, considering not only the infinite casualties, to which children are naturally subject; but the dangers which he may

justly fear from a Rebellious Soldiery, and a Factious Court. Who by the Murther of one Emperor, and the deposition of two, have made themselves so formidable, but withal so odious in the sight of the Imperial House, that there is no way left to save them from a merited Vengeance, but to translate the Empire to some other Family; tho by the rooting out of this. Which whensoever it shall happen, either by the natural death or unnatural destruction of the present *Sultan*, it will draw with it an extermination of the *Ottoman* Race, which I look on as a matter not to be avoided, except by Miracle. Supposing then the Line of *Ottoman* to fail (as it is most probable that it will) what will become of this vast Empire? Three there will be to offer at it, *viz.* the *Crim-Tartars*, the *Jagizaries*, and the *Bassas*. And first the *Crim-Tartar* may plead a composition, made by his Ancestors, with the Princes of the *Ottoman* Family; which is, that he supplying them with 60000 men at his own charges, when their occasions so require, should on the failure of the Heirs Males succeed in this Empire. Besides which, he may hope for no small succours, not only from the rest of the *Tartarian* Princes, but even from the *Great Cham* himself, to recover his Estate herein, if with-holden from him; thereby to add to the present greatness and renown of the *Tartars*, the access of such a spacious Empire. 2. The *Bassas* may conceive no small possibilities of dividing this great Empire among themselves, partly by the Example of *Alexander's* Captains, who after their Master's death (there being yet some of the Blood-Royal remaining) parted amongst themselves not only the new gotten Provinces which they had conquered from the *Persians*, but even the Kingdom of *Macedon*, his old Inheritance: partly by an Example in their own Histories; by which it appeareth, that after the death of *Aladine* the second, *Caraman*, *Sarachan*, *Cnidin*, *Carasus*, and the rest of the more powerful Commanders, divided among them the whole *Turkish* Kingdom in the *Lesser Asia*: and partly by the opportunity which they have as Governors in their several Provinces, and having so many Bands of Soldiers under their command, which may easily invest them as Proprietaries in those Estates, of which they have already such a fair possession. And so we find the *Sultans*, or Provincial Governors, or the *Caliphs of Babylon* to have done before them. 3. The *Janizaries* may also build their hopes on as fair foundations, as being the Sword and Buckler of the *Ottoman* Empire; got, and maintained by their valour chiefly. Who to excite them to the Enterprize, have the example of the *Prætorian* Guards of the *Roman* Empire (a body far more Politick and better compacted than this is;) who out of their own Company created the far greater part of the *Roman* Emperors, neither the Provinces or Senate daring to oppose them in it. But above all Examples, that of the *Mamelucks of Egypt* doth make fairest for them; who were born of Christian Parents, as these are; appointed for the Guard of the *Sultans*, as these are; purposely entertained and inured to the Wars, to take from the natural Subjects the use of Arms, as these are; men of approved Valour, and the chief Bulwark of that Kingdom against the Christians, as these are; and then why may they not be like them in this last attempt, for sitting in their Masters Throne, as these *Mamelucks* did? Add hereunto, that they are already (in a manner) possessed of *Constantinople*, the head Town and heart of the Empire; and their hopes are not vain. For my part I hold them to be the men most like to carry it, unless the Princes of Christendom laying aside private malice, join all in Arms to strip this proud Peacock of his Feathers: and (upon so blessed an advantage) to break in pieces with a rod of Iron, this insolent and burthensome Monarchy: A thing rather to be desired than expected. But this by way of supposition, and as in a Dream, I awake again. See *Bernier*, p. 72, 73, 74. foretelling the ruin of this and the other Two *Mahometan* Empires, *Persia* and *Indo-*

The Emblem of this Empire (or Arms of it) is the *Croissant*, or Half-Moon; but how Blazoned I cannot tell you; nor are the Learned yet resolved on the beginnings of that bearing. Some derive it to them from the Eastern Gentiles, who worshipped the Moon under both Sexes, as we learn in *Scythians*. Some make it common to them with the other *Mahometans*; and they derive it from a pretended Miracle of *Mahomet*; who to shew his Power, is said to have made the Moon fall into his lap in two pieces, and to have restored her whole again to the Heavens. Others are of opinion, that it was taken by the *Grand Seigneur* at the winning of *Constantinople*; *Ut signum videlicet gentis penes quon Orientis imperium esset*. And of this mind is *Justus Lipsius*, induced thereto as it seemeth, by the figure of the *Croissant*, born in some old *Byzantine* Coins. A pretty plausible conceit; and therefore till we have a better, may pass as currant as the Money.

And thus much I thought convenient to insert in this place, concerning the original, proceeding, and continuance; the natural dispositions, policies, and forces of the *Turks*: This being as the only Province which retaineth their Name; so both the first they were possessed of, and the last which they have fully conquered of all their Dominions. Which said, we must here take our leave of the *Turkish* Empire, and once again of the *Roman* also, of which the River *Tigris* and the *Caspian Sea* were the utmost bounds; not meeting again with either of them, unless by accident (or some unprofitable expeditions) till we come to *Aegypt*, and there we shall hear farther of them.

The Reverend Dr. *Heylin* wrote thus of the *Turkish* Empire about the Year 1647, or 48. at which time their Fortunes were rather at a stand than declining; yet he and other Politicians did even then foresee their approaching Ruin: Since that time their good and evil Fortunes have promoted the Fall of it to that degree, that it is indeed a Miracle if ever this Empire recover what it hath lost. And it is now my business to shew by what step this is come upon them within a little more than forty years.

Sultan Mahomet the IV. was at the time of his Father's death a Child but of seven years of age; the government and tuition of him was thereupon put into the hands of his Mother: This was so ill resented by *Kiossem* his Grandmother, who had been the Betrayer and Murderer of his Father, that she formed a Party against him in his Infancy: which being defeated by *Kuperlee*, the then *Prime Visier*, *Kiossem* was put to death, and he established in his Throne. The Infancy of this Prince, and the Merit of this Action so fixed *Kuperlee*, that he enjoyed the Office to his Death, and left it to his Son after him, which never happen'd before. This great Man finding the *Spahies* and *Janizaries* at deadly enmity, and his Master young, employed the one against the other to ruin all he suspected, and in the mean time bred the Prince in a soft effeminate manner to secure his own Greatness: The consequence of which was, that he became a luxurious and unwarlike Prince, given wholly up to his Pleasure.

The War of *Candia* had been begun in the Life of *Sultan Ibrahim* his Father in the year 1645. and tho the greatest part of the Island was then reduced, yet *Canea* held out, and the *Venerians* being Masters at Sea, not only relieved it with ease, but stopped up the Passage of the *Archipelago*, frequently took the Succours sent to the Island

from the Continent, and defended the Town till the year 1669. In this Siege the *Janizaries* spent the *Janizaries* so very freely, that it was generally said, he designed the ruin of the whole Order. But however this Siege manifestly brought a Contingency upon the *Osman* Empire, or at least discovered it.

In the year 1672, there broke out a War between the Emperor of *Germany* and the *Turks*, and that year they took *New-Hampel* that year, yet the next year the *Turks* the *Rash* they received so great a defeat, that they were glad to come to a Peace with their Emperor upon their own Terms, having lost the flower of their Army by an Accident, more being drowned than were slain by the sword, a rainy night having made the River unpassable.

In the year 1673, the *Poles* obtained a great and signal Victory over the *Turks* on their own side of the *Niger*, in which there perished 20000 of their best men, and amongst them 5500 *Janizaries*, and they lost 2000 Pursses of Silver, 25000 Wagons of Provisions, and Ammunition, and all their Cannon and Baggage: This humbled the Pride of the *Turks*, and taught the *Poles* to despise them.

Being thus prepared for Ruin, in the year 1683, they began a War upon *Germany* with the Siege of *Praga*; in which they were finally batt'd, after they had lost in the Siege 48544 Men, besides what were lost in the Buliel and three days siege after this; all their Tents, Cannon, and Ammunition: After this they have had one continued Chain of Misfortunes, all *Hungary*, almost *Transylvania*, *Sclavonia*, the *Morea*, a great part of *Dalmatia* are lost, and tho they have recovered *Sovia*, yet is their Possession very precarious and uncertain, and so many of their own Subjects are revolted from them, as in a few years will be able to maintain a great part of the War against them.

They have lost three great Battels since, at *Strigonium*, *Mohatz*, and *Salankment*; they have deposed their *Sultan* without any cause but that of his Misfortunes, and set up Two Brothers one after the other, that were bred in Prisons till they were above forty years of age, and by consequence are never capable of being made fit for Government: They have suffered the *French* to get such a footing in their Court and Counsels, as will in all probability ruin them if the War goes on, or a Peace should follow: They have in a tumultuous way ruined all their rich, great and valiant men that have escaped the Swords of their Enemies: They are divided into irreconcilable Factions in the Army, Court and Cities, so that which way soever a man turns his Eyes, he can see nothing but symptoms of Ruin.

In this state of Affairs nothing was so much their interest, as to have made a Peace in 90, 91, and 92. but the *French* by their Intrigues have prevented it, tho the whole body of the Nation see how much it is their Interest: So that they seek Peace most ardently, and it flees from them, whilst they only fight to enrich their Enemies, and desolate and undo their own people.

May God of his Infinite Goodness put an end to this Cursed Empire, which having done more mischief to Mankind, and laid more Countries desolate, than all that ever went before it.

And thus much of T U R C O M A N I A.

O F

MEDIA and PERSIA.

These I have joyned together also, because the affairs thereof have been so united, in making up the second of the four great Monarchies, and running the same Fortunes ever since: that they are hardly to be parted in course of Story, tho' each must have unto it self a distinct *Choreography*. First then we begin with *Media*.

MEDIA is bounded on the East, with *Parthia*, and some part of *Hyrkania*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; on the West with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Assyria*; on the North with the *Caspian-Sea*, and those parts of *Armenia Major*, which now pass in the account of *Georgia*; and on the South with *Persia*. So called from *Madai* the Son of *Japhet*, by whom first Planted and Possessed, after that general dispersion made at *Babel*, known by this name among the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; but at this time *Sheirwan* by the *Turks* and *Persians*: the word signifying in the Language of this Country, a *Milky Plain*.

The Country of a large extent, and of so different nature, as one would think it not the same. The North parts lying betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Hyrkanian* Sea, very cold and comfortless: So Barren, that for the most part they make their Bread of dried *Almonds*, and their Drink of the juice of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and those but of Apples; nor any droves of tame Cattel, as in other places, their Food being generally on Venison, or the Flesh of wild Beasts took in Hunting. But on the South side of the *Taurus*, the Soil is very rich, and the Country pleasant, plentiful both of Corn and Wine, and all things necessary; full of fat Pastures, some of them so large in compass, that 50000 Horses do graze upon them. *Mandeflo* in his Travels, page 10. observeth that most of the Maps that have yet (in 1638) been made at *Persia* are very defective, because they put the *Caspian* Sea too high to the North, and consequently allow it a greater breadth from North to South than it really hath, for they put the City of *Resht* in 41 degree, whereas it lies in 37. and *Gameron*, or *Gambroon* in 25. which lies in 27. So that between them is but ten degrees, whereas *Botero* allows it eighteen degrees.

The People anciently great Warriors, as those who Ruined the great Empire of the *Babylonians*; and laid upon themselves and their own Virtue, the foundation of the second Monarchy. But being not long after incorporated into the same Empire with the *Persians*, have not only ever since followed the same fortunes with them, but participate of their nature also: and therefore we shall hear more of their Character, when we come to *Persia*. *Poligamy* anciently among them, so far from being esteemed a sin, or an inconvenience, that it was a punishment for the common *Villager* to have less than seven Wives; or the Woman, if of Noble Birth, fewer than five Husbands. In their Wars they use commonly to envenom their Arrows with an Oyl or Liquor, made of a *bituminous* water called *Napht*, whereof there is great plenty, both here, in *Persia*, and *Assyria*. The Oyl call'd *Oleum Mediacum*, from this People only, because their invention; and by them most mischievously used. The Arrow which was anointed with it, being shot from a flacker Bow, for a swift and strong motion took away

its virtue) did burn the flesh wherein it fasten'd, with so great a violence, that nothing but dust could mitigate the fury of it; water increasing rather than diminishing that malignant flame.

The *Christian Religion* was first here planted by *S. Thomas*, but never had the happiness to be so universally embraced, as in other places; always opposed and suppressed, either by *Paganism*, in the time of the old *Persian* Kings: or by *Mahometanism*, since the first Conquest of this Country by the Power of the *Saracens*. Some *Christians* yet there be among them, either of the *Armenian*, or *Nestorian* Sects, (as in all other parts of the *Persian* Empire) the specialties of whose Religion have been elsewhere spoke of. Here live also very many *Jews*, indulged the free exercise of their Religion: many which are descendants of those Tribes which were transplanted hither by *Salmanassir*. But the Religion generally embraced and contended, is that of *Mahomet*, according to the *Sophian* or *Persian* Sects; the Language of which Nation they do also speak, tho' they had a Language of their own, different from that of the *Parthian*, *Elamite*, or *Persian*, as appeareth *Acts* 2. 9. where they are reckoned as distinct.

Mountains of chief note, 1 *Orontes*. 2 *Coronus*. 3 *Chaboras*, the boundary betwixt *Media* and *Assyria*. 4 *Jasonium*. 5 *Lagoas*, all of them (except *Chaboras* only) the disjoynted branches of Mount *Taurus*: which is here more broken and divided, than in any part of his course besides.

Out of these flow their principal Rivers. 1 *Amandus*, 2 *Strata*, and 3 *Carindas*, of greatest eminence in this Country, in the time of *Ptolomy*, but otherwise of no great account or observation. 4 *Canac*, the divider of this Province from *Armenia Major*, but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to affirm. Add hereunto the great Lake, now called *Argus*, (by the *Persians* *Vasthlan*) but by *Strabo* named *Martiana Palus*, situate in the confines of *Assyria*, *Media*, and *Armenia*; of the fish whereof dried by the Sun and Wind, and sold into divers other Countries, the People of these parts raise a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many Provinces, the principal of which, 1 *Tropatene*. 2 *Charomithene*. 3 *Darites*. 4 *Marciane*. 5 *Amariace*. And 6 *Syro-Media*. These and the rest reduced to two in the latter reckonings, viz. *Atropatia*, and 2 *Media Major*.

1. *ATROPATIA* is that part hereof, which lieth betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Caspian* Sea. So called from that *Atropatus*, Governor of these parts in the time of *Darius*, the last *Persian* Monarch, who so Valiantly held out against the *Macedonians*. The *Tropatene*, (as I take it) of the ancient Writers. A Barren, Cold, and Unhospitable Country, as before described; and for that cause allotted for the dwelling of many of the Captive *Israelites*, brought hither by *Salmanassir* when he Conquered that Kingdom: their numbers being found so great in this Northern Region, that *Benjamin* the *Jew* reckoned no fewer than 50000 of 'em in one City only, which he calleth by the name of *Madai*. And that great numbers of 'em were transplanted hither, appeareth by that passage, 2 *Kings* 17. 6. where it is said, that they were placed in *Halab* and *Haber*, by the River of *Gozan*, and in the Cities of the *Medes*. Now *Halab* or *Chalab* seems most probably to be that Region of *Assyria* which

Ptolomy

Ptolemy calleth *Chalatene*, in the North of that Country, towards *Media*, *Habor*, or *Chabor*, to be that Mount *Chaberus*, which parteth this Country from *Assyria*, in which Mountainous tract there was in those times a City of the same name also. Betwixt which City and the Banks of the *Caspian* Sea, I find in *Ptolemy* the City of *Gauzan*, in the 40th. and 40 min. of the Northern Latitude: in which there are apparent footsteps of the name of the River *Gozan*, upon whose Banks it was most likely to be seated.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Hamadum*, by *Benjamin* the *Jew*, called *Mudai*, replenished in his time with Families of the Captive *Israelites*. 2 *Gauzan*, another dwelling of those Tribes spoken of before. 3 *Mandagarsis*, of which nothing extant but the name. 4 *Gelan*, inhabited by *Gelæ* of the Ancients, whom the *Greeks* call *Cadusii*. 5 *Bochu*, more towards the *Caspian* Sea, hence called *Mare de Bochu*. 6 *Eres*, a place of great strength, but possessed by the *Turks*, and made the Residence of some of their Principal Officers: Taken by *Mustapha* General of the *Turkish* Forces, in the time of *Amurath* the Third, and by him Fortified as the Gate and Entrance of this Country. 7 *Sumachia*, or *Shamaki*, betwixt *Eres* and *Derbent*, taken by *Osman Bassa*, at the same, Anno 1578, and made the Residence of a *Beglerbeg*, Anno 1583. Conceived to be the *Cyrnopolis* of *Ptolemy*, by the *Persians* called *Cyrekbat*; bearing the name of *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch, by whom Built or Beautified. Remarkable at the present for a Pillar of Flint-stones interwoven with the heads of many of the *Persian* Nobility, most Barbarously slain by one of the late *Sultans*, and this Pillar here erected for a Terror to others. *Scamachi*, or *Sumachi*, *Samachi*, *Syropolis*, is so handsomely seated in a Valley, that it is not visible till one is within Canon-shot of it. It is called by the *Persians*, *Circumbate*, and by the *Arabians*, *Chycleth*: In former times this was a place of some Strength, but in the Wars of *Sebac-Abbas* King of *Persia*, it was Dismantled and made a Village, to prevent the *Turks* from Neasting again in it, yet the Wall on the North side is still standing too, it has a Mote, but easily to be passed, and five Gates, which are shut every night, though to no purpose. The streets are narrow, and the Buildings low, consisting of Clay, Twigs, daubed over, and Planks, yet it hath a rich Market stored with Silks, Cottons, Furs, Cloath of Gold and Silver, Tapestry, &c. It was rebuilt in 1670. being entirely ruined by an Earthquake in 1667, (this shews the true reason why the Houses are no better): *Struyis* page 238. *Olearius* saith, it had once 5000 houses, but was destroyed by the *Turks*: The *Persians* Re-built it in 1637. it had about 900 Houses, page 222. In the Year 1573. before it fell into the *Turks* hands it was the fairest City in all *Persia*, *Hackluit*, Tom. 1. pag. 347.

2. *MAJOR MEDIA*, or *MEDIA* specially so called, is that part hereof, which lieth on the South of the Mountain *Taurus*. Commended by the Ancients for one of the goodliest Countries in all *Asia*: the Fields (saith *Ammianus*) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatness and fertility very rich, and no less pleasant for fresh Springs and clear veins of Water, where one may see plenty of green Meadows; and in them a breed of generous Horses, which they call *Nisæi*, Mounted by as Valiant and Generous Riders, who with great Jollity use to go unto the Wars, and Charge Furiously upon the Enemy. The Men commended by *Polybius* (*ἡ τὰς ἀρετὰς ἀνδρῶν*, &c.) as well as the Country.

Cities of most note in it, 1 *Ecbatana*, of as great antiquity as *Babylon*; for we find that *Semiramis* the Wife of *Ninus*, in a War made against the *Medes*, who had then Rebelled, taking an affection to the place, caused Water-courses to be made to it from the further side of the Mountain *Orontes*, digging a passage through the Hills, with great charge and labour. Destroyed by

the injury of Time, it was re-edited by *Deioces* the 6th King of the *Medes*; and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by *Sennacherib*, Successor unto *Alexander* in his *Assyrian* Conquests. For Beauty and Magnificence little inferior to *Babylon*, or *Ninive*, before described. In compass 100 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 *Italian* Miles. The Walls thereof affirmed in the Book of *Judith* to be 70 Cubits high, 50 Cubits broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 Cubits higher; all built of hewn and polish'd stone, each stone being six Cubits in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be understood only of the innermost Wall, there being seven in all about it; each of them higher than the other, and each distinguished by the colour of their several Pinnacles, which, gave unto the eye a most gallant Prospect. From which variety of Colours, it is thought to have the name of *Aghath*, or *Agbatbanu*. In former times the ordinary Residence of the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Persians*, in the heat of Summer; as *Susa* (the chief City of *Susiana*) in the cold of Winter: The Royal Palace being about a Mile in compass, was built with all the Cost and Cunning that a stately Mansion did require: Some of the Beams thereof of Silver, and the rest of Cedar; but those of Cedar strengthened with Plates of Gold. Said by *Josephus* to be built by the Prophet *Daniel*, which must be understood no otherwise in the truth of Story, than that he oversaw the Work-men, or contrived the Model, appointed to that Office by *Darius Medus*, to whom the Building of the same is ascribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the *Parthian* Race, it became a Ruin. 2 *Tauris*, situate in or near the Place of *Ecbatana*, out of whose Rubbish it was Built. Distant 150 miles from the *Caspian* Sea, under the shadow of *Orontes*, now call'd *Baronta*; but opening Southwards, towards a large and spacious Campaign, in compass about six miles, and beautified on the South-west with a large and pleasant Garden, the work of *Sultan Tamas*, who resided here often: the Buildings for the most part of Brick, with flat Roofs, (as generally in the East) well Peopled, as containing 200000 persons of all Sorts and Sects. Of great Trading, till Subdued by the *Turks*, by whom it was thrice taken within very few years, viz. by *Selimus I.* Anno 1514. by *Solyman* the Magnificent, Anno 1530. and by *Osman Bassa*, General of *Amurath III.* 1585. But this last finding it too chargeable always to be Garisoned, and not otherwise Tenable but by Force, pulled down the Walls, and built a large and capacious Citadel: both Town and Citadel recovered by *Emir-Hamze Mirza*, Prince of *Persia*, and Father of *Sultan Sopky*, Anno 1614. after it had been for an hundred years a continual prey unto the *Turks*. Sir *John Chardin* estimates the Inhabitants of *Taurus* now to be 550000 Souls, page 352. *Tavernier* page 20. *Minadoi*, page 311. 3 *Arsatta*, so named by *Ptolemy*, and by the name conjectured to be built by some of the *Parthian* Race. Ruined long since, but more beautifully revived than ever in the present. 4 *Casbin*, raised from the Ruins of that Town. Situate in a fair and open place on the Banks of a little River, which serveth it for household uses, but not for Traffick. Exceedingly enriched by the removal of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamas*; partly invited thereunto by the richness of the Soil, and the commodiousness of the Place; but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to encroach on his Dominions. In compass about seven miles, beautified with a large Market-place, many stately Mosques, and the Sultan's Palace: this last adjoining to the first, convenient enough, but neither of great State nor Beauty. In 1585 *Abbas* King of *Persia* removed the Royal Seat to *Ispahan*, which together with the unhealthfulness of the Air, in Summer for want of Sinks to carry away the filth, makes the City decline; yet Sir *John Chardin* estimated the Houses to be 12000, and the Inhabitants 100000. page 278.

Tavernier,

Tavernier page 26. *Hackluit*, tom. 1. pag. 398. *Struys*, page 304. See the *Lexicon Geographicum*. 5 *Rages*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the Book of *Tobit*, so called from *Reu*, or *Ragau* the son of *Phaleg*, the Founder of it: situate near the spacious Plain, so memorable for the great breed of Horses spoken of before; and therefore in that Book called the *Plain of Rages*. Repaired afterwards by the *Greeks*, it was named *Europus*, and so stands in *Ptolomy*. 6 *Nassruan*, supposed by some to be the *Artasata*, more probably the *Nasuana*, of the ancient Writers: A place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Persian Wars*. 7 *Ardoville*, on or near the Banks of the great Lake *Argis*, spoken of before: The Birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine*, and *Aider*, the first Authors of the *Sophian Sect*; and the Burial-place of *Sultan Hyfmael*, the first *Persian Sultan* of that Line. 8 *Sultania*, about six days Journey from *Tauris*, environed with high Mountains; the tops of which continually cover'd with Snow, may be seen far off: Founded by *Alyaptu*, the Eighth King of the Sixth or *Tartarian Dynasty*, and by him made the Royal Seat of the *Persian Sultans*, whence it had the name. But Ruinated by the *Tartars*, it retaineth nothing now of its former splendor, but the Mosques, or Temples (one of them the fairest in the East) which the *Tartars* spared. 9 *Troyan*, in the Territory of *Sultania*, situate in a large Plain, but not far from the Mountains; beautified with a fair Market-place, many pleasant Gardens of private men; and one belonging to the King, environ'd with a Wall of greater circuit than the City. 10 *Turcoman*, in the middle way betwixt *Taurus* and *Casbin*. 11 *Damoan*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 200 Houses, not here considerable, but for the signification of the name; which is said to signify a *Second Plantation*: And being situate at the foot of so high a Mountain, occasioned some of the *Jews* to think that the Ark rested not far off, as perhaps it did. 12 *Marrant*, in the extremity of the Country, but of lesser note.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the Posterity of *Madai*, as before was said; *Ragau* the Son of *Phaleg* taking up those parts, which lay next *Affyria*. Divided in long tract of Time into several Tribes, as the *Cadusii*, *Amariacii*, *Margasi*, *Sagartii*, *Delryces*, *Tapyri*, and some others. Governed by Kings immediately from the first Plantation; for we find that *Pharnus* King hereof, was overthrown and slain by *Ninus* the Grand-son of *Nimrod*. After this made subject to the *Affyrians*, their Kings were only Titular, at the best, but Homagers, perhaps no better than Provincial Governors under that great Monarchy. Of most esteem among 'em was that *Arfæus*, who with an Army of 800000 Men (if the number be not mistaken) encountered the *Cadusii*, by whom Discomfited, and Slain. But the *Cadusii* so broken, that they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Persians*, and so continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the last of these Provincials, and the first Monarch of the *Medes*. He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to see his Lord and Master in a Womans Dress, Spinning among his Concubines, and otherwise behaving himself in a Brutish manner; which so moved him, that he resolved to be no longer subject to so vile a Monster. Communicating his thoughts unto *Belochus*, Governor of *Babylon*, and well seen in *Astrology*, he was encouraged to proceed; and sped so well, that having made themselves Masters of *Ninive*, the Imperial City, (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them shrewdly to it) they divided betwixt them his Estates. To *Belochus* fell *Affyria* and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces on the West of *Tigris*: To *Arbaces*, *Media*, and the rest, which now make up the Kingdom of *Persia*. But being a mild-Prince, and desirous by fair and gentle means to assure his Empire, he confirmed the *Persian Satrapæ* in their former Governments; reserving nothing to himself but a *Titular Sovereignty*. Of whom and his Successors more, when we have taken in the rest of the Provinces.

P E R S I A.

P E R S I A is Bounded on the East with *India*; on the West with *Media*, *Affyria*, and *Chaldea*; on the North with *Tartary*; on the South, with the Main Ocean. So called from *Persis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave Law to all the rest: as that is said to do from *Perfæus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; affirm'd by the *Grecians* to have Conquer'd these Eastern Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus *Isidore*, *Persæ populi à Perseo Rege sunt vocati, qui à Græcis in Asiam transiens ibi barbaras gentes gravi diturnoque bello perdomuit, & victor nomen subactæ Genti imposuit*. In the Scripture it is constantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam*, the Son of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the *Medes* and *Persians* had subdued *Babylon*, and transferred the Supreme Monarchy to themselves, we find this People called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Persian* seems to come) the word *Paras* (or *Pharas*) signifying as much as Horseman. Given therefore to this Nation, as 'tis supposed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not only taught them the art of *Horsemanship*, but set forth a Law, that it should be a Reproach to any man to go on foot, *Sive multum sive parum itineris esset conficiendum*, whether the Journey that he had to go were long or little. Called sometimes also *Achæmenides*, from *Achæmenides* the Son of *Perles*, one of the first known Kings hereof; and by that name, (*Non tot Achæmeniis armantur Sula Sagittis*) they occur in the second of *Propertius*. Where by *Achæmenia Sagittæ*, he means *Persian Arrows*.

It is of very great extent, stretched out in length from the 82^d. degree of Longitude, to the 120, being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23^d degree of Northern Latitude, to the 43^d. being 20 more. According unto which position, with reference to the Heavenly Bodies, we shall find it seated under the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth Climates: the longest Summers-day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours almost three quarters, and fifteen hours one quarter in the parts most Northwards.

The Country not alike in all places, as it is impossible it should in so great a compass. But generally it is of a pure and wholesome air, the high hills shading it on the one side from the heat of the Clime under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sun, wherewith encompassed, cherishing a great part thereof. And so it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius*; *Regio non alia in tota Asia salubrior habetur; temperatum Cælum; hinc perpetuum jugum opacum & ombrosum, quod æstus levat; illinc mare adjunc-tum, quod modico tempore terras fovet*. Then for the Earth, it is by reason of the great heat of the Sun, very dry and Sandy, in many places destitute of Water; in the South parts thereof few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by consequence neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatness of it: Men loving to Inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the use of Water. Which notwithstanding, it is furnished with all necessities both for life and pleasure; one part affording that which the other wanteth, as shall be shewed in the description of the several Provinces.

The People anciently were train'd up to the Wars, but chiefly unto Archery, from their very Childhood. Indulged the liberty of having as many wives as they pleased; they never saw the Children begotten of them, until five years old. At that age sent unto their Fathers, they were taught presently to handle the Bow and Arrows. Upon this ground we find the Bow of *Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jeramy*, Chap. 4. and the Quiver of *Elam* by the Prophet *Isaiab*, chap. 22. 6. as the Arms peculiar to that Nation, or most used among them. They were good Horsemen also, and well skill'd at their Dart and Slings, till wealth and ease, and the pride of so great an Empire made them wholly feminine: depriving them of

of those abilities both of Mind and Body, wherein they did excel most Nations in their harder times. In all their Fortunes very obsequious, if not servile, to their Kings and Princes; in whose presence it was a crime to spit: but to deny obedience unto his Commands an offence so heinous, as was not to be punished with less than the loss of Life, and want of Burial. In this observance of their Kings, follow'd, if not outstripp'd, by the modern *Persians*. A Race of Men affirmed to be *cunctorum hominum mitissimi*, the most Meek or Patient of the World, especially compared with those of the same Religion, the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not haters of Learning, as the *Turks*, but studious, many of them in *Physick* and *Astronomy*; most of the better sort much delighted in Poetry, which they give their minds to. For the most part addicted to Hospitality, Magnificent in Expence, Lordly in their Compliments, Fantastical in their Apparel, Maintainers of Nobility, and desirous of Peace. Such as apply themselves to Trades, and Mechanick Arts, prove excellent in the making of Silks, and Cloath of Gold: those which betake themselves to War, proving very good Soldiers, as the *Turks* have found unto their cost, who by their long Wars against them have got nothing but blows. The Women said to be neat and cleanly, truly loving, gorgeous in Attire, and delightful in the sequesterations of Pleasure.

Their Religion at the first was *Paganism*, wherein directed principally by the Priests or *Magi*, Men of a strict, austere life, forbidding outward Ornaments, and the use of Gold; making the Ground their Bed, and the Herbs their Food; their whole time spent in Offering to the gods the Prayers and Sacrifices of the People, as if they only might be heard; or else in Divinations, and foretelling of things to come; from whence the name of *Magick* and *Magician* are derived unto us. Studious in the knowledge of God and Nature, and therefore called by *Suidas*, not only *Philosophy*, lovers of Wisdom; but *Philothei*, the lovers of God. Of such esteem, that as *Cicero* telleth us, the *Persian* Kings were not admitted to the Throne, till they were trained up in the Discipline of the *Magi*: and of such power and intimacy in the Royal Court, that one of those *Magi*, on the Death of *Cambyses* possessed himself of the *Persian* Monarchy. In a word, such as the *Druids* were to the *Galls* and *Britains*, the *Gymnosophists*, or *Brachmans*, to the ancient *Indians*, and the *Chaldeans* in the Empire of *Babylon*; the same, if not of greater sway in Affairs of Moment, were the *Persian* *Magi*. And *Persians* they must be, if *Magi*; none but the Natives of that Country being to be admitted of that Society; tho' by a Metaphor, applied to the Professors of the same Arts, tho' of other Countries, as those which came from the East to Worship Christ, are by St. *Matthew* called *Magi* (*Mat. 2. 1.*) though they came from *Arabia*.

The People then were *Gentiles* as to their Religion; and besides other gods which the *Gentiles* worshipped, they were great Idolaters of the Fire; which they offer'd Sacrifice unto in time of Peace, and carried it with them as their *Tutelar Deity* in the time of War. At what time (especially if the King were there in Person) it was born in the very Front of their Army, attended on by their Priests, and followed by a Train of Boys, all cloathed in Scarlet, to the number of 365. according to the number of the days of the year. In this Equipage, with a great deal of Pomp besides, did *Darius* set forwards to Fight with *Alexander*, at the Battel of *Iffus* in *Cilicia*. A Superstition derived from them to the *Medes* and *Assyrians*, their next neighbouring Nations, and not extinguished to this day in some parts of this Country; in which many of these *Fire-worshippers* are still remaining. But from a god, it grew in time to be a *Gentleman-Usurper*, and to attend on Kings, and persons of greatest Eminence: used to be born before the Emperors of *Rome*, as a point of State. Insomuch that *Commodus*, though fallen out with his Sister *Lucilla*,

permitted her notwithstanding to enjoy her Seat in the publick Theatre, *καὶ οὕτως περιπατοῦσα ἐν τῷ θέατρῳ* a fire to be born before her, as in former times, as we are told by *Herodian*.

The Christian Faith was first planted in the Provinces of the *Persian* Kingdom, by St. *Thomas* the Apostle, and held in all points answerable to those of the Catholick Church, till *Sapor* to despise the Emperor *Constantine*, a right Orthodox Prince, Commanded that all the Christians in his Dominions should conform themselves to the Opinions and Tendencies of the *Nestorian* Sect, by that means universally spread over all these Provinces. With whom here live now intermingled some *Armenian* Christians, who with their Patriarch removed hither, when their own Country was made the seat of a long and miserable War betwixt the *Armenians* and the *Turks*; but found not here so safe a dwelling as they did expect: 1200 of them being slain by *Abbas* the late *Persian* Sultan, on a suspicion that they went about to reconcile themselves to the Pope of *Rome*, whom he held to be more inclinable to the *Turk* than to him) in the year 1609. Which notwithstanding (so miserable a condition do these Christians live in) he suffered two Convents of *Augustine* and *Carmelite* Friars, to be settled at the same time, even in *Spaw-bain* it self, and many *Jesuits* to live peaceably up and down the Country, which serve for little else than to give intelligence. The Fury of *Abbas* King of *Persia* was temporary as to the *Armenians*; towards the latter end of his Reign, observing the great advantages that attended a Foreign Trade, he employed some of his own *Persians* that way, but they proved prodigal, and spent the Stocks he had trusted them with out of his Treasury; then he encouraged his *Armenian* Subjects, and they proving more Prudent and Fortunate, are become the Richest, and the greatest Traders of all the Eastern Countries, and send their Factors and Merchandizes into *Tartary*, *Indostan*, *Turkey*, *Russia*, and as far West as *England* and *Holland*. The vast Riches they bring to the Crown and People of *Persia*, make them now beloved by all Parties, and they live more splendidly and happily than any of the other Subjects of that Kingdom, enjoying the free Exercise of their Religion, adorning their Churches with great Bravery, of which they have ten at *Zulpha*, and two at *Isfahan*, the Capital of *Persia*, of which the first is a great and Magnificent Suburb, Inhabited by none but *Armenians*. In this place lives their Patriarch in a splendid manner, and many of their Festivals are so Magnificently celebrated, that the Kings of *Persia* have been pleased to honour them with their Presence, and send them besides a considerable Sum of Money towards the expence. This Suburb is about four *English* Miles square; the Houses are better built than those of the *Persians*, and their Children inherit Lands; so that they are the Freest, Richest, and most respected Subjects of *Persia*. *Struys*, page 325. *Tavernier* Lib. 4. Chap. 7. The latter faith they have fifteen, or sixteen Churches at *Zulpha*. Here are also many *Jews* dispersed over all the Provinces of this Empire, allowed their Synagogues, and publick places of Assembly. But the Religion publicly Authorized and Countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, imposed on this Country by the *Sarazens*, when by them Subdued: differing in some points from the *Turks*, especially about the true Succession of that false Seducer (of whom more anon;) the cause of the long Wars betwixt those Nations.

As for the *Persian* Language, it is very Ancient, supposed to be as old as the Confusion of *Babel*: some words whereof, by *Daniel* and *Ezra* which lived in the *Persian* Court, have been made use of in some parts of the Holy Scripture. A Tongue which still hath left some remainders of it, in the Language of the Modern *Persian*, (as those of judgment in this Tongue have delivered to us) notwithstanding so long tract of time, and the Conquest of this Country

by the Greeks, Arabians, Turks and Tartars. Not spoken only in this Country, nor limited within the Provinces of the Persian Empire; but used also in the Court and Camp of the Great Mogul, and some parts of *Zagathay*; and were not vulgar unto all, studied and understood by persons of more eminent sort, as the Latin by the Gentry of these Western parts. Infomuch as he that hath this Language, may travel over all the East without an Interpreter.

Rivers in the South parts there are but few, as before was said, and those few not navigable; by consequence of little note or estimation. The principal of those that be, are 1. *Eulæus*, the chief River of *Susiana*, emptying it self into *Sinus Persicus*: a River of so pure a Stream, that the great Persian Kings would drink of no other Water. The Northern parts more plentifully stored with that Commodity, as having in it the famous Rivers of 2 *Ochus* in *Bactria*, a River of the greater note amongst the Ancients, because it was navigable; opening with a fair Channel into the *Caspian Sea*, to which it hastneth from *Mount Taurus*: and so doth also 3 *Oxus* in *Margiana*, a fatal bound to these great Neighbours. A River which the Persians have seldom passed to enlarge their Dominions, but they received some notable overthrow at the hand of the *Scythians*; and when the *Tartars* made over it under the conduct of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*, for the invasion of *Persia*, they were shamefully beat back again by *Elymael Sophy*. Nor is it less memorable in old stories, for the famous passage of *Alexander* over it, in pursuit of the Murderers of *Darius*. For having followed *Bessus* to the Banks of this River, and not knowing how to pass over his Men, there being neither Ships upon it, nor Timber near at hand to build them, he caused a great number of Bags and Bladders to be stuffed with straw, and so in Three Days transported his Army. So that I may truly say with his own Historian, *Unum id Consilium quod necessitas suggesserat, iniit*; necessity is the best Author of fine Inventions. 4. *Zioberis* in *Hyrcania*, which rising out of the same mountainous Tract (as the Two last mentioned) after a long course above ground in the open light, hideth himself again for the space of 38 Miles, and then breaketh out at a new Fountain, and falleth into 5 *Rhadaga*, another chief River of those parts. And this *Alexander the Great* found to be true, by casting Two Oxen into the River *Zioberis*, which by the current of the stream were carried under the ground, and brought to light where the River had its rise again. 6. *Hidero*, by what name known unto the Ancients I am not able to say, but of great note amongst Modern Travellers, for the fall thereof into the Sea: so steep and strong, that the people are said to sacrifice or banquet under the Fall thereof, the stream so violently shooting over their Heads that it never wetted them.

Mountains of most note, are those which pass by the name of *Taurus*; which having left *Medi* on the West, passeth thorough the Northern Provinces of the Persian Empire, dividing *Parthia* from *Hyrcania*, and *Paropamisus* from *Bactria*, and *Aria* from *Margiana*. Known by the names of *Coronus*, the *Scribian hills*, *Paropamisus*, *Caucasus*; whereof more, as occasion serveth, in their proper places.

It is divided into the particular Provinces of 1 *Susiana*, 2 *Persis*, 3 *Ormus*, 4 *Carmania*, 5 *Gedrosia*, 6 *Drangiana*, 7 *Arachosia*, 8 *Paropamisus*, 9 *Aria*, 10 *Darthia*, 11 *Hyrcania*, 12 *Margiana*, 13 *Bactria*. Which we will severally survey in the Chorography and story, till we have joined them all together in the Persian Monarchy; and then pursue the History as conjunct and fashioned into the Body of one Empire.

1. SUSIANA. CUSISTAN.

SUSIANA is bounded on the East, with *Persis*; on the West, with *Babylonia*, or *Chaldæa*; on the North, with *Assyria*; on the South, with a Branch of the River *Tigris*, and some part of the Gulf of *Persia*.

It was so called *quasi Cusiana*, or the Land of the *Cusites*, from *Chus* the eldest Son of *Ham*, and the Grandson of *Noah*, by whose Son *Havilah* it was first peopled; and therefore called in Scripture, *The Land of Havilah*; this being that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Pison* is said to encompass, in the Book of *Genesis*. The difference betwixt them is, that that Land of *Havilah* lay on both sides of the River *Euphrates* (which the Country of *Susiana* doth not) and was the Eastern Bound of the *Ismaelites*, *Amalekites*, and other Nations intermingled in those parts of *Arabia*. For whereas *Saul* is said in 1 *Sam.* 15. 7. to have smitten the *Amalekites* from *Sur* to *Havilah*, that is to say, from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Persia*, it must be understood of *Havilah* in the first extent; but neither of *Havilah* in the East Indies (so called from a Son of *Jocktan*), or of that part of *Havilah* which lay on the East side of *Euphrates*, and is that *Susiana*, in which now we are: it being no where found that *Saul* was so great a Traveller as to see the Indies; or of such puissance as to force a passage through the Countries of the *Chaldeans* and *Babylonians*. But the name of *Havilah* being lost, that of *Cusiana* or *Susiana* did still remain; preserved to this day in that of *Chusestan*, by which now called.

The Country memorable in the Scriptures for Gold, *Bdellium*, and the *Onix-stone*; which doth abundantly set forth the richness and commodities of it: *Bdellium* being a Tree (for of the other Two nothing need be said) about the bigness of an Olive, yielding a certain Gum very sweet to smell to, but bitter of taste; which in time hardneth to a Pearl, as *Eugubinus* and *Beroaldus* have delivered to us.

Divided anciently into many particular Regions, or at least known by several Names in its several Quarters. For where it bordereth upon *Tigris*, it was called *Melitene*; *Cabandone*, where it toucheth upon *Persis*; where it confined on the *Elymaeans*, it had the name of *Cissia*; and near the Wall or Ditch called *Vallum Pasini*, it was called *Characene*. Watered besides *Eulæus*, and *Tigris* before spoken of, with the Rivers *Orontes* and *Masæus*; with that Branch of the River *Tigris* which *Ptolemy* calleth *Basilæus*, *Curtius*, *Pasi-Tigris*, and the Scriptures, *Pison*.

Chief Cities hereof, 1 *Aracca*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*, the same which the Scriptures call *Erech*, and one of the Four which *Nimrod* built in the first beginning of his Empire, *Gen.* 11. Remembred by *Tibullus* for the Fountains of *Naphtha* (of which the *Medians* made their Oyl spoken of before) a bituminous Liquor, easily taking fire, but not easily quenched. Of which thus the Poet;

Ardet Areccæis aut unda perhospita Campis.

Where by *unda perhospita*, he meaneth that bituminous Liquor called *Naphtha*, issuing from the Fields of *Erech*, as the Learned *Salmasius* hath observed in his Notes on *Solinus*. 2 *Susa*, The *Shusan* of the Book of *Hester*, and *Nebe-mia*; honoured with the residence of the Persian Monarchs in Winter, as *Ecbatana* in Summer. Situate on the River *Eulæus*, by the Prophet *Daniel* called *Ulai*. Built, as some say, by *Memnon* the Son of *Tithonus*, slain by the *Thebælians* in the Trojan Wars: the Walls whereof, as *Cassiodorus* hath reported, cemented with Gold. But howsoever, it was doubtless a magnificent City, and of infinite Wealth, *Alexander* finding in it 50000 Talents of Gold

Gold uncoined, besides Silver Wedges, and Jewels of inestimable value. Memorable for the great Feast here made by *Abaſuerus*, of 183 days continuance for his Lords and Princes; imitated by the *Persian Sultans* to this very day; who with a Royal Feast of the like continuance do annually entertain their Nobles. Now nothing but a ruin, and perhaps not that. *Herbert*, pag. 140. saith, it is now called *Valdac*, and that it lies upon the River *Chofes*, which falls into the *Persian Gulf* near *Balsora*: In what Estate it is he saith not, only he intimates, that it is an heap of Ruins. The *Chofes* or *Choazpes* was of such esteem, the Kings of *Persia* would drink no other Water: With its *Mianders* it encompassed *Suſhan*, saith that Gent. 3. *Elymais*, the chief City of the *Elimai*, by *Ptolemy* (unless his Copies be corrupted) mistakingly called *Eldimai*. Situate on the Banks of *Eulens* also, near the Border of *Persis* (the Nation of the *Elamites*, or *Elymai* taking part of both Provinces.) Of great note anciently for a sumptuous Temple of *Diana* sacrilegiously ransacked by *Antiochus*, of which see 1 *Mac.* 6. 2. and of such wealth, by reason of the concourse of *Pilgrims* thither, that *Severus Sulpitius* calleth it *Oppidum opulentissimum*, a most opulent City. 4. *Sela*, on the Banks of *Eulens* also; reckoned by *Ammianus* amongst the most eminent of this Province: so named from *Selab*, the Son of *Arphaxad*, who first planted there. To whom the building of the City of *Susa* is ascribed by *Eusebius*, in his *Hexameron*, Σαλα ἀφ' ἑ Σου-σωνοῖ, are that Author's Words; perhaps more truly than to *Memnon*: and unto whom the Original of the *Cossæi*, whom *Ptolemy* placeth in this Tract, is referred by *Eusebius*. 5. *Tarſiana*, another of the Cities mentioned by *Ammianus* (who takes notice only of the chiefest.) the same no doubt which *Ptolemy* calls *Tariana*, and joins next to *Sela*. 6. *Agra*, upon the Banks of *Tigris*, not far from *Erech*. But there is little left of these, but what is to be found in the Ancient Writers; now hardly visible in their Ruins. The Towns of most note now remaining, being 7 *Faarooone*, inhabited for the most part by *Jews*, of which here are no fewer than a thousand Families; supposed to be the descendants of those whom *Salmanasser* transplanted out of the Kingdom of *Israel*. 8. *Saum*. 9. *Casa*, of which little memorable.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Chusites* of the House of *Havilah*, the Son of *Chus*; an evident footstep of whose name we have in the *Chavilæi*, whom *Pliny* placeth in this Tract; by other Writers called the *Chaulotæi* & *Chaulasii*, as before was noted, with whom were joined in the first plantings of this Country, the *Cossæi* and the *Susiani*, descended from *Sala* the Son of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elimæi*, the Posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*. Betwixt the Two last Nations long and frequent Wars, till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Aſſyria* composed the differences, by making both subject to their Empire. After this nothing memorable in the story of it, till the transplanting of the Ten Tribes into the Regions of *Aſſyria*, and the Cities of *Media*. At which time, as many of the *Israelites* were removed hither; (so many of this Nation were sent out (with others) to possess themselves of the void places of those Tribes. Called *Cutbeans* by the *Jews*, because the most considerable number of them came from this Province. called in the Scriptures, *Cush*, by *Josephus*, *Cutba*; and by him reckoned for a Region of *Persia*, as indeed it was, the Time when he lived considered; different only in the Dialect or Form of Speech: That Country which the *Hebrews* called *Chus*, being named *Curb* by the *Caldeans*; by the *Persians*, *Cuzestan*; that Name continuing to this Day.

2. P E R S I S.

PERSIS hath on the East, *Carmania*; on the West, *Susiana*; on the North, *Mediana*; and on the South some part of the *Persian Bay*, or *Sinus Persicus*, which took name from hence. The reason of the Name we have had before; this being the predominant Province which in time gave both Name and Law to the rest of this Empire. It had anciently been call'd *Ceplene*, but now most commonly by the Name of *Fars*, or *Pharſiſtan*; more near to *Pharas*, the old Name of it, both in the *Arabick* and *Hebrew*.

Such parts hereof as lie towards the North are cold and hilly, not apt to bear either Fruit or Corn, in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very clear. Those parts which lie towards the *Persian Gulf*, of as bad a nature, tho of different quality; sandy and hot, and beareth little Fruit but *Dates*, and few Trees but *Palm*. But betwixt both there lieth a rich and pleasant Country, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel; great store of *Roses*, of *Rose-water* consequently: where-with, and with those *Skins* which we call commonly by the name of *Cordovans* from another occasion, they use to furnish all the adjoining Provinces. And to make up the Character of a happy Country, to which nothing wanteth, it is well stored with Lakes and Rivers; the chief whereof are, 1 *Bagradas* which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2 *Rhogomanes*, by some called *Araxes*, now *Bindimir*, on whose Banks stood the renowned *Perſepolis*. 3 *Orontes*, dividing *Persis* from *Susiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4 *Briſoana*, ending its course in the same Sea also.

Mountains of note I find not any, but those which part this Region from *Susiana*: Not known by any special name (for ought I can find;) but of sufficient note for the difficult passages out of one Country into the other, called *Pylæ Persidis*, defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Persian*, against *Alexander the Great*; who was here very handsomely beaten, and forced to save himself by a close retreat. And tho *Alexander* was shewed a By-path afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* ere he was aware: yet he was taught by this hard Lesson, that if those who kept the straits of *Cilicia*, and the Banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, had made like resistance, he had not bought the *Persian Monarchy* in so cheap a Market.

It was divided anciently into 1 *Parſicine*, bordering on *Media*. 2 *Mardiene*, joining on the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*. 3 *Misdia*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the several Nations intermingled here as in other places, had their several Cities. The chief whereof 1 *Auſſuza*, seated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas*, and *Briſoana*. 2 *Jonacapolis*, on the same Bay also, near the influx of *Rhogomanes*, or *Araxes*. 3 *Axima*, more within the Land, now called *Lanſilla*. 4 *Marrasium*. 5 *Obroatis*, or *Orebatis*, as some Copies have it. 6 *Pasarracha*, in the Greek Text of *Ptolemy* called *Pasacrada*, and *Pasagrada* by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the first *Persian Monarch*; which violated by a Soldier of *Alexander's*, in hope of finding some rich Booty, he met with nothing but this modest Inscription, *Cyrus ego ſum qui Perſicum regnum conſtitui: quicunque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantillum telluris inuideas, qui corpus meum obtegitur*. The Sacrilegious Soldier, though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7 *Perſepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the East, called therefore *Regia Orientis* by *Qu. Curtius*; situate near the Banks of the River *Araxes*, and built for the most part of *Cypres Wood*, the Walls of the Houses being made of *Marble*, digged out of an adjoining Mountain: Affirmed by *Diodorus Siculus*, who at large describes it, to be the richest and goodliest City in all the World. And well we may believe him for the richness of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talents* in ready Money

for his own share, after the Soldiers had made what Spoil they lifted of Coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of unspeakable value. But the chief Beauty of it was the Royal Palace, built on a Hill, environ'd with a treble wall, the first of 16 Cubits height, the second of 30, the third of 60, all of them of black polished Marble, with stately Battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Turrets; which gave to the beholders far and near a most goodly Prospect. Nor was the inside of less Beauty than the outside of Majesty: the Roof thereof shining with Ivory, Silver, Gold, and Amber; and the Kings Throne being wholly composed of Gold, and the richest Pearls. But Rich and Stately tho' it were, and one of the greatest Ornaments of the Eastern World, it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit consumed with fire, at the instigation of *Lais* that infamous Strumpet; as in revenge for so many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Persians* formerly had burnt in the *Grecians* Wars. And though *Alexander* in his sober sense did repent him of it, and gave order that it should be re-edified; yet did it never rise to its former height, the Conqueror dying shortly after, and that purpose with him. So Ruined in the Age of *Quin. Cur.* (who lived in the time of *Claudius Cæsar*) that he professeth, *vestigium ejus non inveniri nisi Araxes amnis ostenderet*, that no footsteps of it had been found, if not shewn and pointed out by the River *Araxes*. on whose Banks it stood. But by the fall thereof rose, 8 *Sbiras*, now the chief City of this Province, situate in a fair large Plain hemmed about with Mountains, under one of which it is pleasantly seated; in compass about nine miles, well Built, and Beautified with fair Gardens and Magnificent Mosques: two of which larger than the rest, are made more eminent by the addition of two Spires or Steeples covered with a painting of Gold and Azure; the Fabricks for the most part of *Mosaick* work, as light also by night as day, by reason of a thousand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is said by a Modern Traveller) which for good Wine, pretty Women, pleasant Fruits, and a gallant People, may hold comparison with the best in *Persia*. *Herbert*, page 60, 65. The whole Description is from the said Author, but abridged. See also *Struys*, page 336. 9 *Moyoun*, on the North East of *Sbiras*, delightfully situate among the Woods and fruitful Pastures, and Blessed not only with good Wine, but wholesome Waters; of which last, few parts of *Persia* have much cause to Brag. 10 *Bannaraw*, on the South west of *Sbiras* towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the Ruins of an ancient Castle, situate on the top of a lofty Mountain. 11 *Goyuam*, a Town of a thousand Houses. 12 *Berry*, of no great bigness, but of most esteem, by reason of a fair Mosque, a School for the *Arabick* Tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their false Prophets; of which the *Persians*, besides *Mahomet*, and *Mortis Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The first Inhabitants here were of the Posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, and such who under his Conduct were settled here; called from hence *Elamites*, in the usual style of Holy Scriptures; by the *Greeks* and *Latins*, *Elymæi*: who spreading themselves into *Sustana*, and by degrees also into other Provinces, became so considerable, that the name of *Elamite* and *Elam* were of great Renown: having a Language to themselves, distinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent *Acts 2.* and comprehending under that appellation, the adjoining Regions, as appears plainly in the eighth of the Prophet *Daniel*, where *Susa* is said to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was changed into that of *Persia*, hath been shewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of *Mesabata*, *Rapsi*, *Hippokagi*, *Suzæi*, *Megores*, and *Stabæi*, were at first under the Command of their own Princes only: among which *Cberdorasman* is of greatest fame, who having the conduct of some Adventurers of this Nation, Associated

himself with *Amraphel* the Leader of some *Assyrian* Troops: and by the name of the Kings of *Elam* and *Assyria* invaded *Palestine*, subdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* Prisoner, and in the end were overthrown by the Forces of *Abraham*. Of no Note after this Expedition, till the time of *Perfes* the Father of *Achæmenes*, who being Provincial Governor of these Countries under *Sardanapalus*, joyned with *Arbaces* and *Belochus* in the War against him: and by the Victory, got for himself the Dominion over those Estates, which he had Ruled for the *Assyrians*; with reference to the Kings of *Media* as the Supreme Lords. Whose Successors, till the time of *Cyrus*, take in order thus:

The KINGS of PERSIS.

1. *Perfes*, from whom perhaps the name of *Persis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Perseus* the Son of *Danae*, or the Son of *Perseus* by *Andromeda*.
2. *Achæmenes*, from whom the *Persians* had the name of *Achæmenii*, and the Succeeding Kings were called *Achæmenides*.
3. *Cambyfes*, in some places of *Herodotus*, called also *Darius*.
4. *Cyrus*, from whose second Son named *Tecispes*, descended that *Darius*, the Son of *Histaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the present Line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.
5. *Cambyfes* II. the son of *Cyrus*.
6. *Cyrus*, II. surnamed the Great, son of *Cambyfes*, and of *Mandane* the Daughter of *Astyages* King of *Media*: who joyning with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrew the *Babylonian* Empire; and translated thereby the Supreme Power to the *Medes* and *Persians*. Of which more hereafter.

3. CARMANIA. KHERMAN.

CARMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Gedrosia*, and some part of *Aria*; on the West, with part of *Persis*, and the Gulf of *Persia*, from hence call'd also by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*; on the North with *Parthia*, and on the South with the main *Indian* Ocean. So called from the *Carmani*, a chief People of it; but the reason of that name I find not. It is now generally called *Cbyrman*; those parts of it which lie next to *Parthia*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being now named *Mingia*, and by some *Dulcinde*.

The Country for the most part barren, and but ill Inhabited. That part which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being truly such; a Wilderness or very Desert, having in it neither Town nor Village, but some scattered Houses, and those but ill provided of food and necessaries, full of unprofitable Sands, destitute of Water, and of a very hot and unhealthy Air. And though the other part hereof which lieth towards the Ocean, hath a Sea Coast of above 200 Leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themselves into it, yet are they not the Richer by it, the Shores being full of Rocks, and the Rivers small; so that they neither have good Port, nor safe coming to it. The best Commodities hereof (besides their Manufactures) are Dates, Myrrb, Arsenic, some few Mines of Silver, more of Brass and Iron, and good store of Alabaster. The Inhabitants hereof were anciently called *Ichthyophagi*, because they lived

lived wholly upon Fish, the Country yielding little else for the life of Man. *Carmani sine veste, ac frugibus, sine pecore ac sedibus, piscium cute se velant, carne vescuntur, præter capita toto corpore hir sunt.* The *Carmanis* (saith *Pomponius Mela*;) have neither Fruits nor Raiment, nor House nor Cartel; but Cloath themselves with the Skins, and feed themselves with the flesh of Fishes; hairy, not only their heads, but over all their Bodies also. Where by the way, *Ammianus Marcellinus* must be out in his Informations, who telleth us of these very *Carmanis*, that their Country, though far less than that of *Arabia Felix*, and far more obscure, was as well replenished with Rivers; and for fertility of Soil not inferior to it. But we must understand the one of the best parts of *Carmania*, the other of *Deserta* only.

Amongst the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the rest, he mentioneth. 1 *Saganus*. 2 *Sagareus*, and 3 *Hydriacus*. Of which *Saganus* only is named by *Ptolomy*, the other Rivers, or the same under divers names, being 1 *Dara*, 2 *Andanius*, 3 *Cathrarpus*, 4 *Achindana*, 5 *Salarus*, (the *Zagareus*, as I take it, of *Ammianus*) 6 *Caudriaces*, 7 *Soramba*, and 8 *Samidace*, most of them falling into the Gulf of *Persia*, few Navigable, or of any use in the way of Trading.

Mountains of most note, 1 that called *Semiramis*, from some exploit of that great Lady; 2 *Strongilus*, so named from the roundness of it; and 3 a continu'd ridge of Hills, dividing this Country from *Gedrosia*:

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Canbarus*, 2 *Agria*, 3 *Tisa*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the names of Cities; 4 *Cirza*, and 5 *Bocabarta*, two Port Towns; 6 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conqueror, who here, or hereabouts, kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon. 7 *Portospana*, by *Ammianus* called *Ortospana*, and by him reckoned among the fairest and richest of all the Country. 8 *Armuzza* (or *Armuzium*, as *Pliny* calleth it;) on the shore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory near adjoyning, and to the noble Isle of *Ormuz*, of which more anon. 9 *Ganbroone*, not long since a poor Village; but since the fall of *Ormuz* (from which not above nine miles distant) grown a Populous Town, consisting at least of 1000 houses. The goodness of this Port hath since the Reduction of *Ormuz* raised it to a City of great Trade. The *Dutch*, *English*, *Arabian*, and *Persian* Merchants meet and Trade here for Stuffs, Velvet, Taffata, Raw Silk, &c. It is seated upon the *Persian* Gulf, in the Latitude of 27. between two good Castles, and at the entrance of the Haven there is a square Redoubt, with four pieces of Canon upon it, the Fortifications of the Castles are Antique, with round Bastions, but well furnished with Cannon. The Haven is convenient, affording good Anchorage at five or six Fathom Water. The Streets are narrow, irregular, and not kept clean. The Air is hot and unwholesome, the Winds turn round every day. It Rains very seldom here, as in 32. not in three years before, so that they have neither Grass nor Herbs, but what they nourish in the Gardens, by watering them three times a day, *Mondeffo*, page 10. *Kermish*, a small Island supplies them with Fruits and Fish, plentiful and Cheap, but their greatest want is of Spring-water, which they fetch two Leagues from the City. *Sbiras* Wine is scarce and very dear, brought hither only in Bottels. *Mondeffo* was here in 1638. *Herbert*, page 48. This Town in Winter is well Inhabited by the *Persians*, *Indians*, *Arabs*, and *Jews*, and by the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Portuguese*, but in Summer they fly away to avoid the intolerable heat. *Struys*, page 349. has the Prospect of this Town. The *English* ought to have half the Customs, but in 38 had but the tenth, which in 71 were worth 40000 l. *per Ann.* but then they consented to take 3000 l. *per Ann.* 10 *Fasques*, at the opening of the *Persian* Gulf, into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it, cal-

led *Carpota*, is of late named *Caspat* *laques*. 11 *Carmania*, the Metropolis or Mother-City of the Province, in former times of good esteem; and now of passing good repute both for Cloath of Gold, and the making of the best Scimitars. A Weapon, (wheresoever made) of such value among the *Alaborians*, and so esteemed of by the *Turks*, that at the overthrow of the Navy at the Battel of *Corsu*, Anno 1574. most of them who were taken Prisoners threw their Scimitars into the Sea, for fear the Christians should be Masters of such excellent weapons. It is now called *Chyrmun*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the ancient name. 12 *Lar*, more within the Land towards *Persia*, seated in a barren and inhospitable Country, full of huge heaps of Sand, both loose and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind setteth, into Plains and Mountains: without Grass, Water, Herbs, or any other necessities for the use of Travellers; the City being served with Rain-water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in Cisterns. The City notwithstanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long since to the number of 5000 Houses: of which the greatest part, in the year 1590. were thrown down by an Earthquake: Now most remarkable for a fair Market-place of about 180 paces square, a goodly Mosque, adorned with *Mosaic* work, and a strong Castle seated on the top of an Hill, furnished with great plenty of Ordnance, brought hither from *Ormuz*. This once a Kingdom of it self, or the head City of a Kingdom, acknowledging no subjection to the *Persian* *Sophies*, till Conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli Chawn*, Duke of *Sbiras*, who sent hence as much Treasure as was said to load 700 Camels; and put to death the poor King with his whole Posterity, Anno 1604. or thereabouts. *Herbert*, page 52. *Tavernier* page 253. *Struys*, page 346. 13 *Tecoa*, or *Dea-chow*, a Town of the Jurisdiction of *Lar*, not far from which is a huge Wall cut out of a solid Rock by incredible Labour, which served formerly both for a Boundary and Defence of that Sandy Kingdom against the *Persians*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the Posterity of *Sabta*, the Son of *Chus*, who wanting room on the Coast of *Arabia-Felix*, where they were first planted, passed over into *Sophia* (from them so named) an Island of the *Persian* Gulf, and afterwards into the Main Land of *Carmania*, where they Built, and gave name unto the City of *Sabus*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. Divided in some tract of time into the several Nations of the *Sozotæ*, *Aræ*, *Charadræ*, *Chelonophagi*, *Cabadinæ*, and *Pasagardæ*.

Neither the People nor the Country memorable in the way of Story; but by Accident only: it being here that *Alexander*, being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, in imitation of *Bacchus*, who first Conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually Feasting with his Friends, on a Scaffold drawn with eight Horses; his Companions following in their Chariots: Some adorned with Purple and Silk; others with Flowers and green Boughs; themselves wearing Garlands on their Heads, and carrying their carousing Cups in their Hands. In this Army there was neither Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler seen: all their Armour was Cups, Barrels, and Flagons; their Skirmishing, Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Minstrels, playing on their Flutes; by Women Dancing, Boys Shouting, all playing the drunken Fools most naturally. Thus March'd they through the Country of *Carmania*, in as great dissoluteness as if *BACCHUS* himself had indeed been there, and led the Mummery; and for seven whole days this sottishness continued. So that *Catullus* well observeth, *Si quid vitæ saltem adversus comestantes animi fuisset, nulle bercula viri, modo & sobrii, septem dies rum crapula graves in suo triumpho capere potuissent: a* Thousand

Thousand *Persians*, sober and well provided, had their Hearts been answerable to so good an opportunity, might have destroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the Honour of their Country, and their own liberty.

4.
O R M U Z.

OR M U Z, not so much memorable for the greatness, as the Wealth, and the conveniency of the situation of it, is an Island situate in the entrance of the *Persian Gulf*: Commanding not long since, over some part of the Continent of *Carmania*, and some few Towns of *Arabia Felix*, and most of the Islands of the Bay. And therefore before we come to speak of the Isle it self, we must take a brief survey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Persicus*, according to our method in other places.

SINUS PERSICUS, the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, so famous, so full of Islands, and so much frequented (I use the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Harmozonta*, (the same which *Ptolemy* calls *Armusa*) a Cape or Promontory of *Carmania*: from which unto a Cape or Foreland of *Arabia Felix*, which the Inhabitants calls *Maces*, the Passage is so strait and narrow, that one may very easily see to the opposite shore. The Strait once passed, the Bay beginneth to open and enlarge it self, as far as the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balsora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfalls is lost in the Sea. The whole Gulf measured by the Shores, of *Orbicular* form, in compass 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 *Italian Miles*) in all the Coasts and sides whereof the Villages and Towns stand exceeding thick, affording frequent passage to and fro for Shipping: So far, and to this purpose he. To which description of his, so exact and punctual, our late *Navigations* have not added much but the change of Names: the whole Bay being now called *Mare Elkerisse*, and the Entrances thereunto the Streights of *Balsora*; these last so called because they opened the way to the Town of *Balsora*, the most noted Empory of those parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Isles hereof, besides those on the *Arabian* Shore, of which we have already spoken, are 1 *Taxiana*, on the Coast of *Susiana*. 2 *Tabiana*. 3 *Soptha*. And 4 *Alexandria*, or the Isle of *Alexander*, on the Shores of *Persia*. Of which that which is called *Soptha*, seems to take name from *Sabta* the Son of *Chus*, planted upon the opposite shore of *Arabia Felix*; and therein giving name to the City of *Saptha*, which we find in *Ptolemy*: And finally joyning to *Carmania*, there are the Islands called, 5 *Sagdana*, the chief Town whereof was anciently named *Milus*; and 6 *Vorochtha*, situate at the very mouth of the Streights, now called *Ormuz*, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Armuzia*, in *Carmania*, near adjoining to it, and unto which it did in former times belong. 7 *Kismich* three Leagues from *Gambroon*, fifteen Leagues long, and three broad. It is so Fertile that it supplies *Gambroon* with all sorts of Fruits, Grapes, Damascens, Oranges, Lemons, Melons, Cucumbers, &c. in great plenty, and cheaper than in any other part of *Persia*. *Mandislo*, page 11.

This Island situate as is said, at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, is in compass about thirty miles, stony, and full of Rocks, in a manner barren of all necessities except Salt wherewith their very Rocks are covered, and of Salt-stones many Houses built. So destitute of all things fitting for the Life of Man, that the Inhabitants had all their Victuals, even the very Water which they drank, from some of the adjoining Countries. The Air so hot in time of Summer, that the people rest themselves in Caves covered over with Wood, where

they stand or sit in Water up to the Chin; and have Loop-holes in the Tops of their Houses to let in the Wind. Which notwithstanding, in regard of the situation, it was of late one of the richest Empories in all the World; the Wealth of *Persia* and *East-India* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by Water to the River *Euphrates*, and so by Boats, or on Camels Backs to *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, *Tripolis*; from whence dispersed into all the Countries on the *Mediterranean*, and to some beyond.

The people hereof in their Persons, Habit, and Religion, participate somewhat of the *Arabians*, but most of the *Persians*. *Mahometans* for the most part, of the *Sophian* Sect: The rest but few in number, of the *Christian*; to which converted by the preaching of Father *Gasper*, a *Portugal Jesuit*, since the settling of that Nation there.

The chief and only City was of the same name with the Island, founded some seven hundred years ago by one *Mahomet Dranku*, descended from the Kings of *Saba* in *Arabia Felix*: who, with many Families of the *Sabæans*, passed over the Streights into *Carmania*, and the Isles adjoining, and liking the situation of this Island, built this City in it, which he called *Ormuz*, or *Armuzium*, according to the name of the Town and Promontory upon which it lieth. The City seated at one end of the Isle, about two Miles in compass, well built, and adorned with a fair Marketplace, some Churches, and a well fortified Castle, furnished with all necessities to maintain a Siege. By reason of its wealth and resort of Merchants, grown to such esteem, that it gave occasion to this *Distich*;

*Si terrarum Orbis quaquapates annulus esset,
Illius Ormusium gemma decusque foret.*

That is to say,

Were all the World a Ring, this Isle alone
Might of that Ring be thought to be the stone.

It was first under its own King, whose Dominion extended also into some part of the Continent on either side, and over all the rest of the Islands within the Gulf. *Teixera* writes, That in the 10th. Age, *Scach Mahomet*, the Son of an *Arabian* King having reduced all the Provinces upon the *Persian Gulf*, as far as *Balsara* under him, he passed over into this Island, and laid the foundation of this City; *Schabadin Mahomet* the XI. King of *Ormuz* died in 1278. and *Seyfadin* Reigned there when the *Portuguese* took it. *Mandislo*, page 13. His Revenue of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was Discovered, under the Conduct of *Albukerque*, Anno. 1506. Who having Fortified some part of it for their own Defence, and made it the Staple of their Trade for the *Indian Merchandise*, so enriched the same, that the Revenues of those Kings (though *Vassals* and *Tributaries* to the *Portugals*) amounted to 140000 *Seriffs* yearly. In this flourishing state it stood till the year 1622. when *Abbas* the Sultan of *Persia* having received some affront at the hands of the *Portuguese*; or desirous to remove the Trade of *Ormuz* to some Port of his own, gave order to *Emangoli Chawn*, the Duke of *Sbiras*, to lay Siege unto it, with an Army of 15000 Men. Who seeing no hopes of mastering it by his Land-Forces only, furnished himself with the Ships and Cannon of some *English* Merchants, to whom he promised many things, which he never performed. For being once Master of the City, he destroyed it utterly, removing the Ordnance to *Lar*, the Wealth thereof to his own Treasury of *Sbiras*, the Materials of the Houses to *Gombroon*, spoken of before: the *Portuguese* and *Christian* Natives passing over into *Muskabat*, in *Arabia Felix*. Since which time though the

the *English* Captains that ventured in it, were disappointed of the spoil which they did expect; yet so much honour hath been given by the King of *Persia* to the *English* Nation, that their *Agent* who resideth at *Gombroon*, takes Custom of all Strangers which do Traffick thither. To the Year 1671. these Customs were worth 40000 *l. per An.* and duly paid to the *English East India Company*: That Year the Company being involved in a War with the Great *Mogul* of *Indostan*, they consented to take 3000 *l. per An.* in lieu of these Customs; which I suppose will never be removed again; this was all they got by that *Indian* War.

5.
GEDROSIA. CIRCAN.

GEDROSIA is Bounded on the West, with *Carmania*; on the East, with *Cambaja*, or *Guzarat*, a Province of *India*; on the South, with the Main *Indian Ocean*; on the North with *Drangiana*, and *Arachosia*. The Reason of the Name I find not. Now by *Mercator*, called *Gest*; by *Castaldus*, *Circan*.

The Country Desolate and Barren, like the worst part of *Carmania*, much destitute of fresh water, and covered over with loose Sands, dangerous to the Natives and Stranger both. Some Rain they have, but not sufficient to allay the Heat and Drought which they suffer under; and yet by reason of that heat it affordeth in some places *Nard* and *Myrrh*, with some other Spices. Some Brooks here are, or rather *Torrents*, which falling from the Hills do somewhat qualify the indisposition of the Soil, and make it Habitable; The chief of which was called *Arbius* anciently; the Chief Mountain, *Batius*.

Towns of most Name in it, 1 *Rbagiana*, Honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of a City; and 2 a Port, or Harbour called *Mulierum Portus*, or the *Haven of Women*. 3 *Arbis*, upon the Banks of the River *Arbius*, presented to us also by the name of a City. 4 *Musarna*, the chief of *Musarna*, a Chief Tribe of this Country. 5 *Parsis*, or rather, *Easis*, as the *Greek* Text hath it, the Metropolis of the whole Province in the time of *Ptolomy*. 6 *Gest*, the chief City at the present; but for nothing memorable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Masarna*, Bordering on *Arachosia*, the *Parfiræ*, towards *Carmania*, the *Rhamna* on the Borders of *India*, and the *Orbitæ*, or *Arbituri*, on the shores of the Ocean. The Country of no note in preceding times, till made Famous by the Follies of *Alexander*: who finding by the hard bout which he had with *Porus*, that there was little hopes of the Conquest of *India*, would needs make a fruitless Voyage to see the Ocean. And having satisfied himself with the sight of that Furious Element (as if his very seeing it had sufficiently Subdued it to him) landed his Army on this Coast. Where in his March, for want of Victuals, Water, and other Necessaries, he lost more Men in the vast and uncomfortable Desert of this Country, than in all the Military Services he had put them to; the Army which he carried with him into *India*, amounting unto 15000 Horse, and 120000 Foot; whereof hardly the fourth part came back to *Babylon*. So dearly did he pay for his indiscretion.

6.
DRANGIANA. SIGISTAN.

DRANGIANA hath on the South, *Gedrosia*; on the North and West Bounded with *Aria*; on the East, with *Arachosia*. So called from *Drangius*, now *Ilment*, the chief River of it; the Modern name

thereof being *Sigistan*, from *Sige*, the now principal City.

The Country very Hilly, and so closed with Mountains, that the River above-named is scarce able to force its passage thorough them. Of no great Beauty to Invite, or Reward a Conqueror, yet with the rest brought under the great *Persian* Monarchs; the Tunes of which Crown they have always followed. So meanly planted, that *Ptolomy* findeth in it but ten Towns of Name; the chief whereof, 1 *Arbis*, mistook perhaps for *Agriapæ*, and if so, then the Mother City of the *Agriapæ*, whom *Curtius* placeth in this Tract. 2 *Prothaspia*, by some of the Ancients called *Ibradag*, the Metropolis of this poor Province; much boasted of by the old Inhabitants hereof, who had seen no better, (as Country Villagers use to brag of the next Market-Town) and said by *Ammianus* to be Rich, and of high Renown, the quality of the place considered. Still of some note among the Natives, by whom called *Sistan*. 3 *Arivada*. 4 *Pharaza*, of which nothing memorable. 5 *Sige*, now of Credit in this Country, from hence called *Sigistan*. 6 *Timocani*. 7 *Mulebet*, the chief seat of the Kingdom of *Aladine*, or *Aleadine*, who had here a *Fools-Paradise* of his own, of which more anon.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Batii*, and the *Daraudæ*, from which last, the greatest of the two; the Country might perhaps be called Originally *Darandiana*; abbreviated to *Daradiana*, and at last corrupted easily into *Drangiana*. But I offer this only as a conjectural. They were called also by some Writers by the name of *Arabians*; and that, as *Ammianus* thinks, because they descended from that People: but I think rather from a branch of the River *Arabus*, which parteth this Country from *Gedrosia*. For I conceive the *Arabians* were too wise to forsake their own Country, and go so far, to get so little by the Bargain. Together with the rest of the *Persian* Provinces, subdued by *Alexander*; who being in this Country, hapned on the discovery of the Treason intended against him by *Philotas* the Son of *Parmenio*, the most Renowned of all his Captains. After this, little memorable till these latter days, when it grew famous by means of *Aladine*, a Seditious *Persian*, Lord of the Valley of *Mulebet*, spoken of before; who there made a *terrestrial Paradise*, which he promised to all his *Partizans*; but the Company growing too great for the safety of the Kingdom, they were quickly dispersed; and *Aladine*, with his *Fools-Paradise*, both taken away together, *Ann.* 1262. Some attribute this Fiction of *Paradise*, to *Aladenes*, the Mountain King of *Taurus*, Vanquished by *Selim I.* The whole Story is this, out of *Paulus Venetus*. *Aladine* Inhabited a Valley in this Country, the entrance into which he Fortified with a strong Castle, called *Tigado*. Hither he brought all the Lusty Youths, and *Beautiful Maidens* of the adjoining Provinces. The Women were confined to their Chambers, the Men to Prison, where having endured much Sorrow, they were severally cast into dead sleeps, and conveyed to the Women: by whom they were entertained with all the Pleasures Youth and Lust could desire, or a sensual mind effect. Having enjoyed this happiness a whole day, they were in a like sleep conveyed to their Irons. Then would *Aladine* inform them how they had been in *Paradise*, and that he could seat them there Eternally, if they durst hazard themselves in his Quarrels. This when they had sworn to do, they were destinated to the Massacre of such Princes as were like to prove his bad Neighbours; and they accordingly did Execution. But neither he, nor *Aladenes*, were the first who trained up their followers in the Arts of Murder. One there was before either of them, whom the Writers of those times call the *Old Man of the Mountains*, inhabiting the Mountainous parts

pirts of *Tyre* and *Sidon*; and from thence sending his Disciples on the like *Temptations*, to make away the Western Princes whom he stood in fear of, during the course of the *Holy Wars*. For out of his School came those Wretches who Murdered the Count of *Tripolis*, being in the Church at his Devotions, and desperately flew *Gonrade* Marquess of *Montferrat*, walking openly in the Market place at *Tyre*; and with like carelessness of their own lives, dangerously wounded Prince *Edward* (after King of *England*) sitting in his Tent. These the *Italians* call *Assassines* (whence the word to *Assassinate*) imitating thereby a desperate Cut-throat, but the reason of that name is not yet agreed on: mistakingly by some *Latin* Writers of the darker times, called *Arfacida*, and their Commander *Rex Arfacidarum*, as if descended from *Arfaces*, the Founder of the *Arfacidan* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

7.
ARACHOSIA. CABUL.

ARACHOSIA hath on the West, *Drangiana*; on the East, a Branch of the great River *Indus*; on the South, *Gedrosia*; and *Paropamisus*, on the North. So called from *Arachosia*, the chief City of it; but now best known by the name of *Cabul*, the name of the chief City at present.

Of the Country I find little spoken, but that it is watered with a Branch of the River *Indus*, or rather with some nameless River which falleth into it. By the overflowings whereof is made a Lake, which *Ammianus* calleth *Arachotoscrene*, by *Ptolomy* called *Arachotos*; after the name of *Arachotos* the chief Town of it, near to which it is.

Towns here were once thirteen, whose names and situation we find in *Ptolomy*, but little or nothing of them in other Writers. The principal, 1. *Arachotos*, on the Lake so named, said to be built by *Semiramis* in her March towards *India*, and by her to have been named *Cephene*. 2. *Alexandria*, or (for distinctions sake) *Alexandria Arachosiae*, the work of *Alexander* the Great, in his like March against the *Indians*: Built at the foot of one of the Branches of Mount *Taurus*, shooting towards the South, and Peopled with a Colony of 7000 old *Macedonian* Soldiers, far spent with Age, and with the Travel of the Wars, whom he left there to inhabit it, his Army being here recruited with the Forces that had Served under *Parmenio*, consisting of 12000 *Grecians* and *Macedonians*. It is now called *Cabul*, accounted the chief City of it, and in that capacity gives the name of *Cabul* unto all the Province. *Tavernier*, who saw this City, saith it is a large City, very well Fortified, and is the place to which the *Usbeck Tartars* Yearly bring about 60000 Horses to be sold. It lies 110 Leagues from *Candahar* to the North East, and 125 from *Ateck*, part 2. page 44. 3. *Arbaca*, seeming by the name, to be the work of one *Arbaces*; but whether of *Arbaces* the great King of the *Medes*, I am not able to say. 4. *Choaspa*, near some River of that name, as I conjecture; there being besides *Choaspes* the chief River of *Media*, another of that name also in *India*: and probably another hereabouts to give name to this Town. 5. *Phoclis*. 6. *Sigara*. 7. *Damania*, of which I find nothing but the names. 8. *Sim*, now a Town of Name among them, but not much observable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Pargyetae*, call'd also *Arimaspa*, and *Euergetae*, a powerful Nation of themselves, brought under the Command of *Alexander* by means of *Ammenides*, sometimes the Secretary of *Darius*, whom he made their Governor. And besides them the *Syeri*, *Rophitae*, and the *Eoritae*; which three made up the main Body of the *Aracosians*, committed by *Alexander* to the Government and Command of *Menon*. Following after this the Fortunes of the *Per-*

sian Empire, they changed their Masters as that did, till the coming of the *Tartars*. Since that time Governed for the most part, by a King of their own, especially since that dividing of the Kingdom of *Persia* amongst *Tamerlane's* Children. Some of which held it as a distinct Estate, by the names of the Kings of *Cabul*; till growing great by the Conquest of some parts of *India*, they took unto themselves the name of the Great *Mogul*: Now Lords, not only of this Country, but of the greatest part of *India* on this side of *Ganges*; of whom we shall speak more when we are in *India*; that being the chief Seat of their Power and Empire.

8.
PAROPAMISUS. CANDAHAR.
SABLESTAN.

PAROPAMISUS is bounded on the South with *Arachosia*; on the North with *Bactria*, from which parted by the main Body of Mount *Taurus*, which is here called *Paropamisus*, by the name of the Country; on the East, with some part of *India*; on the West, with *Aria*. So called *quasi* *Paropaneus*, from the resemblance which it hath to an Island, begirt on all sides almost with Rivers: In which respect by *Ptolomy* called *Propanisus*, and not *Paropamisus*; by which last name the *Latins* for the most part call it; some of them *Paropamissus*, with a double *ss*. But that name being lost long since, it is now by some called *Dache*, by others *Candahar*, but most commonly *Sablestan*.

The Country Mountainous and Hilly, here and there intermixt with Valleys: the Mountains of great height, and exceeding Barren; the Valleys indifferent Fruitful, but so overshadowed with those Hills, that the clearest day in some places seems but like a twilight. The People as obscure as their Country, scarce known to any of their Neighbours in the time of *Alexander*; the Barbarous Nations nearest to them esteeming them unworthy of their acquaintance. *Agreste hominum genus, & inter Barbaros maxime inconditum*, as it is in *Curtius*.

Rivers of most note herein, 1. *Oxus*, (of which before) which rising out of Mount *Caucasus*, passeth Northwards, and afterwards divideth *Bactria* from *Sogdiana*. 2. *Dargamanis*. 3. *Coacus*, both owing their Original to some of the branches of Mount *Taurus*. Which chain of Hills beginning hereabouts to draw towards their height, are towards the West called *Paroetes*, where they give being to the River *Dargamanis*, before-named: more Eastward they have the name of *Paropamisus*, and *Caucasus*, they are properly called where they are thwarted by *Imaus*, in the very point as it were, where *Scythia*, *India*, and the *Persian* Territories do encounter each other. The Hills in that place mounted to so great an height, that from the tops thereof, the Stars appear much greater than in other places; the rising and setting of which are from hence easily discerned. Made memorable by the Fable of *Prometheus*, who is said to have been bound here by command of *Jupiter*; on which, *Vinctum Prometheus fuisse antiquitas tradit*, saith the Historian. *Prometheus* is indeed by the Poets feigned to have stoln fire from Heaven, and to have made a man of clay: for which Presumptuous fact, *Jupiter* bound him on the hill *Caucasus*, where a Vulture continually fed on his Liver. But according either to the truth of Story, or their guess at least, who make some story the ground of every Fable, *Prometheus* being a very wise man, instructed the dead and claiely carcases of others in Wisdom; and that being very desirous to learn the nature of the Stars, (which is the fire he stole from Heaven,) he made the highest part of Mount *Caucasus* his Study: where the inward care he had to accomplish his desire, might justly have been compared to a Vulture gnawing on his Entrails; and of this Opinion

Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Naulibis*, and 2 *Ortestpana*, both named by *Ptolemy*, and reckoned by *Ammianus* for the most famous of this Country. But in what their fame consisted I cannot find. 3 *Parfiana*. 4. *Gazaca*. 5 *Doroacana*. 6 *Bagarda*, all named by *Ptolemy*, but not else observable. 7 *Candabar*, now the Metropolis of the Country, a Town of great Trade, by reason of the situation of it on the Borders of *India*; in that respect, giving to the whole Country the name of *Candabar*. By which name reckoned for a Kingdom, and used among the many Titles in the *Style Imperial*. Nothing considerable of it in the Course of Story, but that being once brought under by the *Persian* Monarchs, it followed the Fortune of the rest till these latter times; when the *Persians* being overlaid by the *Tartars*, it became subject to some Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, Reigning in this Province, till brought under by the Kings of *Cabul*, of the same Extraction. Finding those Kings intent on the Conquest of *India*, they freed themselves from all Subjection to that Crown, and had Kings of their own, till the year 1600. or thereabouts; when the last King, unable to defend himself against *Abdusa*, King of the *Usbeques* (a *Tartarian* People, but Subject in some sort to the Crown of *Persia*) surrendered his Kingdom to *Echebar* the *Great Mongul* (descended from the old Kings of *Cabul*) whose Dominions border close upon it. Recovered to the *Persian* Crown by *Mirza* the Son of *Abas*, and the Father of *Sophy* the now *Sultan*; a Prince of much Gallantry, but of more Misfortunes: the *Persian* *Sophies*, since that Conquest, using the Title of King of *Candabar* in the Regal Style. This City and Kingdom submitted to the King of *Persia*, upon Condition their Governor should always be of the Royal Family. In the Year 1651. *Sba Geban*, the *Great Mogul* sent his Eldest Son with an Army of 300000 Men to Besiege this City, the greatest part of which Army perished in the Expedition, yet he could not take the City. The two following years it was again Besieged by them with the same ill Success; and ever since it has remain'd in the peaceable possession of the Kings of *Persia*. *Tavernier* lib. 5. cap. 24. where the curious Reader may see a Plat of this remote City. *Bernier*, in his History of *Indostan*, page 57. calls it, *That Strong and Important Place, which is the Capital of the Noble, and Rich Kingdom of Kandahar, which yields a great Revenue to the Prince that bath it. Vide page 113.*

9. A R I A. E R I.

A R I A is Bounded on the East with *Parapamisus*; on the West, with *Partbia*; on the North with *Margiana*; and on the South, with *Drangiana*, from which last parted by the Mountain *Bagoas*. A name in old times given to the Province of *Media*, especially by the *Grecians*, till changed (as they say) into *Media*, on the coming thither of *Medea*. For so *Pausanias*, among others, Περσικομένη ἢ εἰς, τὴν λεγόμενὴν πρὸς Ἀσίαν, πρὸς ὀνόματι τῆς ὀνόματι καλεῖται Μέδου ἀπ' αὐτῆς, i. e. coming into the Country then called *Aria*, she caused it after her own name to be called *Media*; but the name of *Aria* was not lost, tho' it were removed; remaining proper to this Country till these later Ages, now changed with little alteration, into that of *Eri*.

The Country much subject unto heats, environed with Deserts, Heaths, and Forests; yet near the Mountains which defend them from the heat of the Sun, they have some fruitful Champagnes, bearing very good fruits, and among others, a strong Wine, and of long continuance; keeping both taste and colour above 80 years. They have also here a Drug somewhat like to *Myrrh*, and a kind of *Saphyr*, but not right.

Rivers of note I meet with none but that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Arias*, by the name of the Province, making a Lake of the same name; the Fountain of which River he maketh to be in *Paropamisus*, and the fall thereof in

the said Lake: the waters of it first increased by a nameless Stream, falling from the Mountains, called *Serphu*, being that part of *Taurus* which divideth this Country from *Margiana*.

Anciently it was populous and well Inhabited, containing above 30 Towns of name and note. Those of most consequence, 1 *Aria*, on the Banks of the River *Arias*, the Seat of the *Arii*, whom *Pliny* speaketh of in this Tract, but whether they received this name from the Province, or bestowed their own name upon it, I determine not. 2 *Bataxa*. 3 *Sotera*. 4 *Orbitana*. 5 *Sarmigana*. 6 *Artacanda*, by *Strabo* called *Artacana*. 7 *Nisibis*, mentioned both by *Ptolemy* and *Ammianus*. 8 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of the *Great Conqueror*, by whom planted and made a Colony of his *Macedonians* for the better awing of the Country, which by some former Rebellions had been troublesome to him. But these, and most of those remembred by *Ptolemy*, being grown out of knowledge, there remain now of special note, 9 *Heri*, or *Eri*, seated not far from the place of the ancient *Aria*, but much superior to it in strength and greatness. Said by *Maginus* to be in compass 13 miles, and so plentifully stored with Roses, that the Inhabitants of the Country call it the City of Roses. Naturally of a strong situation, compassed about with a very good Wall, and watered with deep Channels, conveyed unto it by *Tamerlane*, that most puissant *Tartar*, by whom either Founded or Repaired. The truth is, the City is built on an Island in the midst of the River, and so must be of difficult access. The Province of *Heri* is a part of that of *Corassian* and is not named in the Maps of *Persia*. This City is famous for Tapistry, and is much frequented by the *Indian* Merchants, who pass through it in their Journeys by Land to *Persia*. *Olearius* in his Travels. It is seated in the Lat. of 36. 20. 10 *Safuar*, a place of good importance, and the second in esteem next to *Heri* it self.

The old Inhabitants were the *Masdarami*, *Nisæi*, *Astareni*, the *Cassirotae*, *Obares*, *Drachamae*, *Borgi*, *Paranti*, &c. united altogether in the name of *Arians*, by that name subject to the *Persians*, and subdued by *Alexander*. Against whom, when they had Rebelled, and were worsted by him, they were compelled to betake themselves to the strength of a Cave, seated upon the top of an inaccessible Rock, and with small Force easily defended. But to *Alexander* nothing was impossible. For piling up a great Mass of Timber equal to the mouth of the Cave, when the Wind served opportunely, he put fire unto it, and by that means so filled the Cave with fire and smok that some of them were stifled, some half burnt, and the rest forced to yield to the Victor's mercy. Nor was this the only action of note during that Rebellion, tho' it was the greatest. The Common Soldiers also had this honour in it: *Saribarzanes*, a *Persian*, whom *Alexander* had trusted with the Command of this Province, had drawn them unto this Revolt, and became their Head. Who, to express his Courage in the sight of the *Arians*, challenged the proudest He of the *Macedonians*, to a single Combat. The Challenge cheerfully accepted by one *Erignis*, one of the most aged in the Army: and saying aloud, *Ostendam quales milites Alexander habet*, he valiantly charged upon the Rebel, and at the second *venew* slew him. The *Arians* after this trial of their disabilities, remained in quiet, taking the same Fortunes as the rest of the *Persians* did in their change of Masters. Of late by *Mabomet Codubanda*, it was aliened for a time from the Crown of *Persia*, and given to *Sultan Abas* his second Son; who took unto himself in his Fathers lifetime the Title of the King of *Heri*. But coming to the Crown by the Murder of his elder Brother, and the Death of his Father, he united *Heri* once again to the Regal Diadem; but kept it as a distinct Title in the Royal Style.

10. PARTHIA. HIERACH.

PARTHIA is bounded on the East, with *Aria*; on the West, with *Media*; on the North, with *Hyrcania*; and on the South, with that part of *Carmania*, which by *Ptolemy* and others of the Ancients, was call'd *Deserta*: The reason of the Name we shall see anon. But that Name being laid aside, it is now called *Arach*.

The Country walled, as it were, round with Mountains, and in most parts overgrown with Woods: by which defended from those heats to which otherwise it would be subject; it produceth many things of necessary use for the life of the people; but nothing for riot and excess. In other places where the shade of the Wood is wanting, the whole Country is in a manner but a *Sandy Desert*, dangerous to Travellers, and impassible even with the help of *Guides*; the Sands continually driven from one place to another, taking away all Tracks of a beaten way. For which cause there be certain Castles at each three Miles end built at the King's charge, as well for the direction as the reception of Passengers; and Causeys of many Miles in length, in some other places, for their better travelling; the Sands of each side of them so loose and light that if a man should fall aside, he were lost remediless.

The people anciently were very courageous and stout, as commonly they are in all barren Countries, and were withal of a *Scythian* Extract and Original; exceeding spare of Diet, and good reason for it: the Countrey not affording any superfluities; but otherwise much given to pleasures, allowing themselves plurality of Wives and Concubines. Good Horsemen, and to that so used, that they consulted of all Business, both private and publick, when they were on horse-back. Such lovers of the Wars, that they accounted no man happy after his decease, but who died in Battel; esteeming of all others but as Fools or Cowards. Their Soldiers for the most part Slaves, whom they trained up unto their weapons and to manage horses: in so much as of 50000 horse which the *Parthian* King had in the Field against *Marcus Antoninus*; there were not above 800 *Free men*. But their greatest Fame consisted in the handling of their *Bow* and *Arrows*, esteemed the best *Archers* in the World, and not undeservedly; having the art of shooting backwards, and making their Retreat or Flight more terrible than their Chase or Onset. Whence that of *Seneca*;

Terga conversi metuenda Parthi.

The *Parthians* slight

Doth most affright.

Which, with the manner of their fight, more copiously described by *Lucan* thus:

Fugna levis, bellumque fugax, turmaque fugaces,

Et melior cunctis leo quam pellere miles.

Illi a terra dolis, nec Martem cominus unquam

Aula pati virtus, sed longe tendere nervos.

Which I find thus *Englished* to my hand;

Light Skirmish, fleeing War, and scattered bands,

And better Soldiers when they run away,

Than to cut off an Enemy that stands.

Their crafty Gall-traps on the Ground they lay,

Nor dares their courage come to down right-blows,

But fight best farthest off, most trusting to their Bows.

From hence it was that *M. Crassus*, in his Expedition against them, being told by an Astrologer, That his Enterprise would prove unprosperous, by reason of some Ill Aspect which he had found in *Scorpio*; *Tush man* (said he) I fear not *Scorpio*, but *Sagittarius*. And to these Warlike Exercises of Horie and Archery, the Temper of the Air and Soil gave no small advantages; the dry air seasoning their Bow strings, and their large Fields affording them full Room to train their Horses. *Caelum enim quod fecum est, nervos intentos facit; Regio tota plana est, & ob eam rem equis accommodata*, as it is in *Dion*. But this is to be understood not of *Parthia* only, but the whole Country of *Persia*; subject at that time to the power of the *Parthian*

Kings. Next to these *Parthians*, the *English* have been looked on formerly, as the ablest Bow-men; having gotten by their *Bow* and *Arrows* as many notable Victories over the *French*, as the *Parthians* ever did obtain upon the *Romans*. But at this time, *Archery* both here and elsewhere, is quite laid aside, the Gun silencing all offensive Weapons; how justly I determine not. The Point hath been long since debated betwixt *Sir John Smith*, and *Sir Roger Williams*; many great Wits appearing upon either side; and the sum of their several Arguments drawn up together by *Sir Clement Edmunds*, in his *Judicious Observations upon Caesar's Commentaries*, to which the Reader may repair for his satisfaction. All I shall say is only this, That Victories as great as any in those Elder Days, have been obtained with far less Bloodshed, since the Gun came up, than in any of the Times before it.

The Religion of this people hath suffered under the same changes with the rest of *Persia*, but they have a Language of their own, mixt of *Medes* and *Scythian*. For which besides the Testimony of human Authors, we have the Authority of *Scriptures*; where the *Parthians*, *Elamites*, and *Medes* are named as Nations of a several Language, or a different *Dialect* at the least, *Acts* 2.

Rivers of note I find not any, nor any Mountains proper and peculiar to them: *Coronus* part of the great Mountain *Taurus*, lying in common betwixt them and *Hyrcania*; as *Masderamus* doth betwixt them and *Aria*, and the Hills called *Parchoatras*, betwixt them and the *Deserts of Carmania*. So that for want of such known Landmarks, the finding out of their ancient Cities would be very difficult, if any learned *Antiquary* should undertake it.

The Country anciently more populous, the Towns and Villages thicker set than they be at the present, many Cities, and 2000 Villages having been overthrown with *Earthquakes*. In *Ptolemy* we find the Names of 25 of the Cities, distributed into the Four Provinces or *Tetrarchies* of *Camiscene* towards *Hyrcania*; *Parthiene*, bordering on *Media*; *Paracanticene*, confining on *Aria*; *Tabiene*, neighbouring *Carmania*. The principal of which, and of those that are now in being, 1 *Genonia*. 2 *Charax*. 3 *Artacana*. 4 *Apamia*, which by the Name seems to have been of the foundation of *Seleucus*. 5 *Dardamana*. 6 *Syndaga*. 7 *Pasacarta*. 8 *Hecatompyle*, the Royal City, so called from the number of an hundred Gates in the Walls thereof, by which we may conjecture at the ancient greatness: The *Parthians*, which had seen no greater, calling it by the glorious Name of *Half the World*. 9 *Hispan*, commonly called *Saphan*, or *Spawhawn*, raised out of the Ruins of *Hecatompyle*; and as that was, the Regal City for these parts. In compass about nine Miles, of figure round, and seated in the midst of a large and capacious Plain; beautified with many pleasant Gardens, goodly Bathes, and handsome *Mosques*. But the greatest glory of it lieth in the Market place of *Medun*, quadrangular in form, but the sides unequal; cloistered about, and well stored with Merchandize of all sorts, but Druggs especially: The Court or *Quodrigle*, serving for Horie-races, and other warlike Exercises which are done on horse-back. On the West side a Magnificent *Mosque*, built of White Marble five Yards high, and the rest above that of Brick; curiously interwoven with *Arabic* Poesies. In the midst a fair Conduit, wherewith they purify themselves when they go to their Prayers. On another side the Royal Palace, wrought in the Front with *Antique Works*; the Floors on the inside covered with rich *Persian* Carpets, and the Roofs chargeably embossed with Gold and Azure. *Herbert*, p. 82. Others make it eight German Miles in compass, and to contain 18000 Houses, and 500000 Inhabitants; the Walls of it are ill built, ill kept, and out of repair. It has Gardens of Twenty Acres of Ground, which makes the City much greater than it would otherwise be. See *Olearius* and *Thevenot*, *Tavernier*, pag. 143. *Struyt*, pag. 315. *Ist.* 32. 26.

10 *Jelphaz*, on the other side of the River on which *Spawbawn* is Seated, as the Burgh of *Southwark* is to *London*; wholly Inhabited (at this time) by *Armenian* Christians, from hence called *Jelphelines*; who live here in great freedom, both for Person and Conscience, but that their *Poll-money* is tax'd at an higher rate. 11 *Croom* a right pleasant and healthy City, well Built, of large Streets, and seated on the Banks of a small, but delightful River, issuing out of the *Coronian* Mountains, near to which it standeth. Consisting at the present of 2000 Families, but anciently, as may be gathered from some Ruins, of far greater compass. Much honoured by the *Persians* for the Sepulchre of *Fatima*, the daughter of *Mahomet*, from whom the *Sophian* Sect and Princes do derive their Pedigree. 12 *Casham*, a Rich and pleasant City, about sixty miles from *Spawbawn*, well built, and Peopled by a number of *Artizans*; who for the making of Silks, Satins, and Cloath of Gold, are in great esteem. Beautified amongst other things with a stately and magnificent *Caravans-Raw*, built by Sultan *Abbas*, for the reception of Strangers, whether Merchants or other Travellers, but fit to entertain any Prince of *Asia*. The City of no great Age, the work either of *Ussan-Cassanes*, the *Armenian*, who got the Crown of *Persia*, in the year 1470. or at the highest of *Cassum*, the Son *Axan*, and Grandson of *Tangrolipix*, the first *Turk* here Reigning; from one of which it had this name. 13 *Tawgebawt*, where the *Persian* Kings have a house of Pleasure, of no great receipt, but for the cost and ornaments of it, and the delectableness of the Gardens adjoyning to it, not yielding to any in this large Empire: and for *Grots*, *Ecchoes*, *Labyrinths*, and the other excellencies of Art, perhaps not followed in the world; especially considering that it standeth in the middle of a Sandy Desert.

The *Parthians* were originally a *Scythian* Nation Bannished their own Country, and glad to plant themselves in this barren Region; calling themselves by the name of *Parthians*, which in their Language signifieth as much as *Exiles*. A People so obscure and poor, either not knowing, or not caring for the use of Money, that none of *Alexander's* great Captains would vouchsafe to be their Governor; but let it lie as an Appendix of *Media*, to the Kings whereof it had originally been subject; till one *Philip*, a man of small regard, took the place upon him. Falling at last, with the rest of *Alexander's Asian* Purchases, into the hands of *Seleucus*, it was Governed by the Lieutenants of the *Syrian* Kings, till the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the fourth of that House. During whose Reign, *Arfaces* a Noble *Parthian*, provoked by some Indignities, slew the Governor, and took the Estate upon himself; perswading all the rest of the Provinces to do the like: and thrived so well in his design, that he not only gained the Kingdom of *Parthia*, but united to it all the Provinces lying on the East of *Euphrates*. Of whom and his Successors, more in the story of *Persia*. After this nothing singular which concerns this Province, but that as this *Arfaces* did recover the *Persian* Liberty from the Power of the *Greeks*; so *Gempfar*, one of the Sultans of this Province also, redeemed (tho' but for a little time) this *Parthia* and the parts adjoyning, from the Yoke of the *Tartars*, as shall be shewn in prosecution of the *Persian* History.

11. HYRCANIA. DIARGUMENT. MESENDRAM. CORCUM.

HYRCANIA is bounded on the South with *Parthia*; on the North, with the *Hyrcanian*, or *Caspian* Sea; on the East, with *Margiana*; and on the West with *Atropatia*, or *Atropatene*, (as *Ammianus* calleth it) the North part of *Media*. Divided from *Parthia* by the interposition of *Coronus*, part of the main Body of Mount *Taurus*. The way through which, said by the *Persians* to be cut out at one blow, by the Scymiter of *Mortu* *Hali*, their second *Mahomet*, is not above forty yards in

breadth, in the broadest parts of it; the hills on both sides rising to the very Clouds: With small strength easily defended against mighty Armies, and possibly may be the same which the Ancients called *Porte Caspiae*, before described.

It took the name of *Hyrcania*, from *Hyrcania*; a large and spacious Forest betwixt it and *Scythia*; sometimes called *Caspia* also, from the *Caspia*, a chief People of it: Of whom it is reported, That when their Parents came to the age of 70 years, they used to shut them up, and starve them; as being then no longer useful to the Commonwealth. But both those Names growing out of use, it is by *Alexander* called *Diargument*; by some late Travellers *Mesendram*; by some others, *Corcum*.

Those parts hereof which lie towards the South, are said to yield abundance of Wheat, Wines, Figs, and Fruit: those toward the *Caspian* Sea, as plentiful of Grass and Pasture. But betwixt both, nothing in a manner but continual Forests; and those so intricate and thick, that it is a matter of no small difficulty to find passage through them. Full, as most other Forests are in those Eastern parts, of *Panthers*, *Leopards*, *Lions*, *Tigers*: These last of such an horrible fierceness, that it grew into a Common Proverb used of cruel Men, that they had sucked an *Hyrcanian* Tiger, *Hyrcanæque admorant ubera Tigres*, as it is in *Virgil*.

Principal Rivers of this Country: 1 *Ziobert*, spoken of before. 2 *Maxera* or *Mazeras*, mentioned by *Pliny*, *Protony*, and *Ammianus*. And 3 *Secanda*; all falling into the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. A Sea which had the names of *Caspian* and *Hyrcanian*, from the *Caspia* and *Hyrcania* bordering next to it; now from the Town of *Bochu* in *Atropatia*, called *Mare di Bochu*. Fashioned in an Oval Form, the length thereof from North to South 700 miles, and 600 miles from East to West. Stormy and troublesome, by reason of those many great Rivers which fall into it from all the Provinces adjoyning: Which notwithstanding, it hath no visible commerce with the Ocean, nor doth it at any time overflow its Banks, finding some passage under ground to discharge it self of those vast streams of water, which are poured into it. Well traded by the *Moscovite* Merchants; who having the command of the River *Volga* (which with 70 mouths doth open into this Sea) sail over it, and land at *Parabant*, or some other of the Port-Towns, where they trade for Silks. Some Islands here are in it, but not many, or of any great Fame; but only that they served the Nations which lay near it for a place of retreat, in time of the *Tartarian* Tempest under *Tamerlane*; as the Isles of *Venice* did to the *Italians*, at the coming of *Attila*. This Sea doth neither Ebb nor Flow, as all those Seas do that have Communication with the Ocean. It hath in a manner never a safe Harbor: *Manguslave* on the *Tartarian* Shoar, is yet the best. It is generally very shallow, and full of Flats, which make it Tempestuous and Dangerous. In many places the Water is fresh, and in others as salt as our Seas. See *Olearius*, *Hacklutt. To. 1. Page 243. 328. 334. Struys. The Nubian Geographer, p. 6. Bobun's Geographical Dictionary in Hyrcania. Herbert 95.*

Places of most consideration, 1. *Hyrcania*, once the Metropolis of the Province, and so called by *Protony*; still extant, but of less esteem, and still called *Hyrcan*. 2. *Tambrace*, in old times of the greatest strength, and most defensible; but taken by *Antiochus Magnus* in the War against *Arfaces* the *Parthian*, for the recovery of those Countries then revolted from him. 3. *Adrapa*. 4. *Mafaca*. 5. *Anarofa*. Of which we find the names, amongst others, in the ancient Writers. 6. *Asbaraffe*, two miles from the Sea, in a spacious Plain, containing about 2000 Houses; and now of most reputation of all this Province, by the long residence therein of *Abas*, the late *Persian* Sultan, who built there a magnificent Palace, and another two miles off at a place called *Abassabaur*. The furniture whereof besides costly Carpets, in Plate and Jewels, at

such time as Sir *Dodmore Cotton* was there Ambassador, is said to have been valued by a knowing Merchant, at twenty millions of pounds. But I fear the Merchant had more skill in Silks than Jewels: such a vast sum to be expended on the Furniture of one Palace only, being beyond the possibility of the Revenue of the *Persian* Sophies; hardly amounting towards all charges to five millions of Crowns. *Herbert's Travels*, page 94. This Embassie was made in the year 1626, and 27. and *Tho. Herbert Esq;* was one of his Retinue, and wrote a Relation of his Voyage, which was Printed in 1634. And out of it *Dr. Heylin* took the greatest part of what he has concerning *Persia*. It was reprinted lately with Additions, by the Author, who was then said to be living, but I have not seen this second impression; but all my Quotations refer to the first Edition. 7 *Farabant*, on a Navigable Arm of the *Caspian* Sea; for Beauty, Wealth, and Greatness, of most note in this Country. Well Traded from all parts of this Inland Sea, especially by the *Russian* Merchants, as before is said, whose Ships come hither in *March*, and return in *July*; it being from hence to *Astrachan* but ten days Sail. Beautified with goodly Gardens, a Royal Mansion of the Kings, and a spacious Market-place. *Herbert* page 96. page 105. All the other places here mentioned are in the following pages. 8 *Chiacoporo*, near the Sea also, but on the Banks of a River; the water whereof is said for eleven months to be fresh and sweet, and for the 12th month very salt. 9 *Barfrushdee*, twelve miles from the Sea, well furnished with wood and water. 10 *Omoal*, a Town of about 3000 houses, seated on the North side of *Taurus* in a pleasant and fruitful Soil; resorted by the People of so many Nations, that seven Languages are there commonly spoken. Once Larger, as appeareth by some Ruins, than it is at the present; by some conceived to be the *Nabarca* of the Ancients, honoured in those times with an Oracle. 11 *Strava*, a Town of great Traffick, for Raw Silks especially. 12 *Mesandra*, whence the whole Province (or rather the parts adjoining to it) hath the name of *Mezendrum*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, besides the *Caspii*, were the *Maxerae*, *Astabenii*, *Chirindi*, and the *Arstenses*, united in the name of *Hyrcans*. in the time of the *Persians*; and by that name well known at the coming of *Alexander*. Against whom they so defended themselves by tying the boughs and twigs of their trees together, that it was impossible for him to come at them, till with incredible pains and labour he had caused their Woods to be cut down: at sight whereof the People, who supposed the King had too much other Business, and of more importance, than to put himself unto that trouble, did submit unto him. Falling to the share of *Seleucus*, they were the first People that were gained by *Arfaces*, and joyn'd with him in recovering their former Liberty; tho' they got nothing by the Bargain but the change of their Master. In all times since they have been looked upon as Members of the *Persian* Empire, till the Conquest of it by the *Tartars*; in the distractions of whose great Empire after *Tamerlane's* death, it fell to some Princes of his House, who Governed here under the Vassalage and Protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathy*. Recovered not long since to their old Obedience by Sultan *Abas*; who for the better settling the affairs hereof, removed the Seat-Royal from *Spawbawn*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Casbin*, to *Ashtarasse*, then a small Town, now the chief of this Country.

12. MARGIANA. TREMIGEN. J E S E L B A S.

MARGIANA is bounded on the West with *Hyrcanis*; on the East, with *Bactria*; on the North with part of *Tartary*, from which severed by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Asia*, divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus*,

which runs through the Country: but is now named *Tremigen*, and *Jeselbas*.

The Country environed with Mountains, and in most places of it full of Sandy Deserts. But where it is watered with the Rivers *Arias* and *Margus*, it is very fruitful, stretching it self into a large and spacious Plain, containing in the circuit near 200 miles. The Plain once compassed with a Wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*; more memorable for the huge stocks of Vines which are said to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fathom, and sometimes bearing bunches of Grapes two Cubits long. The more to be admired, in regard there is no other place near unto it where the Vine will grow. And if the Ark rested on the top of Mount *Caucasus*, as it is most probable it did; why may not this be some of the remainder of that first Vineyard which was Planted by *Noah*, when he descended from these Mountains, as is affirmed by the constant tradition of the People which inhabit here?

The People mixt of *Scythian* and *Persian* breed, partaking of the fierceness of the one, and the behaviour of the other; conform unto the *Persians* in Religion, Language and Apparel; distinguished from them in the colour of their Turbants only, which are commonly green, and therefore by the *Persians* called *Jeselbas*, or *Green-caps*: the Turbants of the *Persians* being always red.

Chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Margus*, the peculiar River of it, which rising out of the foot of the Mountains, and passing through the midst of the Province, receiveth into its Channel the River, 2 *Arias* hastening out of *Aria*; and so together lose themselves in 3 *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*: out of the joynt streams of which several Rivers, is made a large Lake, now called *Sabacamber*, but anciently, *Palus Oxiana*, from the principal River.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Alexandria* or *Alexandria Margianæ*, for distinction sake; one of the six Towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Country: called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus*; next, *Antiochia*, from *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*, by whom Fortified with a very strong Wall. It is now called *Indion*, and esteemed the chief of the Country. 2 *Jasonium*, seated on the confluence of *Margus*, with a nameless River, issuing from the *Seripbian* Mountains. 3 *Nigæa*, as the printed Books of *Ptolomy* call it, but mistook for *Nissa*, or *Nysæa*. 4 *Argadina*. 5 *Rhæa*, of which nothing memorable. 6 *Maran*, near which *Ismael*, the first of the *Sophian* Race, discomfited the Forces of *Saba*, *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

The old inhabitants hereof were the *Massagetes*, and the *Parni*, taking up the mid-lands; the *Derbicæ* bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Tapyri*, dwelling towards the East. United by the name of *Margians*, they were subdued by the Kings of *Persia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to to his Empire; who to assure himself hereof built six Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the East; all situate on the tops of hills, and built at such convenient nearness that they might afford Succour to each other, as occasion served. After this nothing singular in the Story of them, involved in the same fortunes with the rest of *Persia*, till *Persia* was Conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, tho' the rest of the *Persian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoke by *Gempas* the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Persia* for a time; yet part of this Province, and of *Bactria*, are still Subject to them.

13. BACTRIA. CHORASIN.

BACTRIA or *BACTRIANA*, is bounded on the West with *Margiana*, on the East and North with the River *Oxus*, dividing it from *Sogdiana*; on the South, with *Paropamisus*, from which parted by the hills so named, and the mountain *Caucasus*. It took this name from *Bactria*, the chief City of it, and is now called *Chorasin*, but by some named *Battrer*.

The

The Country towards the River *Oxus*, is for the most part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all sorts of Fruits, excepting Olives, Rich Metals, and some precious Stones; as *Emeralds*, *Chrysolites*, and *Jacinths*. Plenty of Pastures there be also, well stored with Cattel, and those of bigger bulk than in other places. But the greatest part hereof to the South and West, is nothing but a sandy Desert; and by reason that the sands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no tract or beaten way is to be discerned: Insomuch as Travellers rest all day, and take their Journey in the night, that they may guide themselves by the course of the Stars, as upon the Sea; not without great danger of being lost or buried, whilst alive, in that sandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puissant and warlike Nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Affyrians*, nor with less by the *Persians*; always in Arms, cruel, and resembling the *Scythians*, whose near Neighbours they were: And (which may very well pass for their greatest virtue) *Mulum à Persarum luxu abhorrentes*, abhorring naturally from the *Persian* Luxuries. But withal unnatural to their Parents; whom when old, they cast unto their Dogs, kept for that purpose, and called *Canes Sepulchrales*, or Burial Dogs. The Women gorgeous in Apparel, and proud of Gesture, but prodigal of their Bodies to their meanest Slaves. The Men to this day do retain their ancient stoutness; but hard beset betwixt the *Persians* and the *Tartars*, who severally pretend a Dominion over them.

No Province of the *Persian* Empire hath so many Rivers. The principal of which are 1 *Artamis*, and 2 *Zariaspes*, mingling streams together; as do also, 3 *Ochus*, and 4 *Orgomanes*, all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a Boundary betwixt the *Persian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either, we have spoken already.

Towns of most observation in it, 1 *Bactria*, the Metropolis, or the chief City of it, situate at the foot of the Mountain *Sogdii*, giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Bochor*, and still keeps the dignity of the Metropolis: The Seat of the Chief Priest or Bishop of the *Mahometans* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Country also doth now belong) having here his Residence, in Power and Reputation equal to the King himself. Well fortified, and stored with all military Provisions: The Birth-place (as *Maginus* saith) in these latter Ages of *Avicenna*, that learned Philosopher and Physician; and in the first Ages, of *Zoroaster* the more learned *Astrologer*. *Bogbar* (saith Mr. *Jenkenston*, a famous *English* Merchant and Traveller, who was in this City in 1558.) is seated in a low Land, surrounded with an high Wall of Earth, in which are divers Gates; It is great, but the Houses are mostly built with Earth, except the Temples, and some few houses which are of stone. There is a small River passeth through it, but the Waters are not wholesome. It was heretofore under the *Persian*, but when he was here, it was Subject to a *Tartarian* Prince, who was at cruel Wars with the *Persians*, because they wear hair on the upper Lip, which the *Tartars* count a great Sin, and for it call the *Persians*, *Caphers*, i. e. *Hereticks*. The King was very poor, and a great Tyrant, and seldom, or never Reigned above two or three years before he was slain, or driven out. Heretofore (saith he) there was great resort to this City by the Caravans of *India*, *Persia*, *Baigh*, *Russia*, and *Cathaya*, and whilst he was there, there came some Merchants from *Bengala* with Linnen and Cottons. It is from *Cathaya*, nine Months Journey by Land. Lat. 39. 10. The King of *Samarcand* Besieged this City soon after this Gentleman left it, *Hackluit* Tom. 1. page 331. This City in the Maps is called *Bochara*, and the Trade of it at that time was wholly Ruined. 2 *Eubusmi*, once the Regal Seat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy*, with the Ti-

tle of *Regia*. 3 *Zaripse*, or *Charipse*, the chief City of the *Charispæ*, a great Tribe of this Country. 4 *Charracharta*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*: these two, upon the River *Oxus*. 5 *Eucratidia*, Built, or Repaired by the *Macedonians*; as the name, being merely *Greek*, doth seem to intimate. 6 *Alicodra*, as ancient as the rest, but of no great note in the course of business. 7 *Istigas*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of those before spoken of: Superior to *Bochor* in Elegancy, State, and Greatness, though not in Dignity; and held by some to be the pleasantest of the East.

This Country was as soon peopled as any since the general *Deluge*. It had not else been possible that *Zoroaster*, King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him assaulted, should bring into the Field an Army of 400000 Men, of this, and perhaps some other of the Neighbouring Provinces, as most credible Writers say he did. Encountering *Ninus*, with this Army he prevailed at first, and slew of the *Affyrians* near an hundred thousand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his Forces, invaded him a second time with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 20000 Horse (the greatest on Record in all Ages since that time, except that of *Semiramis*:) with which he overcame *Zoroaster*, slew him in the Field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroaster* is ascribed the invention of *Astronomy*, but on no good ground; that Art or Science being studied before the Flood, (if *Setb's* Pillars mentioned by *Josephus*, be of any credit:) And therefore probably no otherwise to be ascribed to *Zoroaster*, than as to the *Reviver* of it; or because he first committed that unto writing, which he had received by Tradition; or because he brought those confused Notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being slain, and *Bactria* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semiramis*, then the Wife of *Menon*, (but on the merit of that service made the Wife of *Ninus*) the *Bactrians* became subject unto the *Affyrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Persians*. In the expiring of which great Monarchy, *Bessus* a false and cruel Traytor, did command this Province: And having villanously slain *Darius*, his Lord and Master, assumed unto himself the title of King of *Persia*, under the name of *Artaxerxes*. But being betrayed by *Spitamenes*, one of his Confederates, by him delivered unto *Alexander*, and by *Alexander* put to a cruel death: The *Bactrians* became subject to the *Macedonians*, and in that right unto *Selucus* and the Kings of *Syria*. But long it held not in that state; one *Theodarus*, who formerly had the Government of it for the *Syrian* Kings, taking unto himself the Title of King, and the Possession of the Country, about the same time that *Arfaces* and the *Parthians* made the like Revolt. Wrested from his Posterity by one *Euthydemus*, the Recovery of it was attempted by *Antiochus Magnus*: and the whole cause put to the trial of a Battle. In which, tho' *Antiochus* had the better, and shewed more personal Valour in it than any time after: yet he was glad to come to a composition, and left to *Euthydemus*, both the Crown and the Country. Made not long after an accession to the *Parthian* Kingdom, it continued part thereof whilst that Kingdom stood; and in the time of *Ptolomy* (as long time before) had for the chief Tribes or Nations of it, the *Salataræ*, and *Zariaspa* towards the North; the *Contani*, or *Coamoni* (as *Pliny* calleth them) dwelling in the South, the middle parts being taken up by the *Thocari*, said to be *gens magna*; the *Scordæ*, *Savardii*, *Maricæ*, *Tambixi*, *Amarispæ*, and others of as little note. In the often changes and alterations of the *Persian* State, one of the last Nations which submitted to the new Pretenders, and at this time so neutral betwixt the *Persians* and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, that it is not wholly under the power of either. More averse from the *Persian* Government, since the alteration of Religion made there by *Hyssmach*, and the rest of the Sect of *Mortis Hali*: these *Bactrians* being of the old Race of *Mahometans*, which

which adhered to *Haumar*, *Osman*, and *Abubecker*, as the true Successors of their false Prophet, and therefore ill-affected to the *Sophian* Faction, whom they call commonly *Caphers*, or *Hereticks*, for the innovations by them made in the Law of *Mahomet*.

Thus having taken a survey of those several Provinces, which constitute the *Persian* Empire, and shewn by what means they were first united into one Estate, we must next look upon the names and actions of those mighty Monarchs, who have successively, and from time to time enjoyed the Sovereignty. By what good chance *Arbaces* from a Deputy or Lieutenant of *Media*, obtained the Diadem for himself, we have shewn before: And we have shewn how liberally he enfeoffed the *Vice-Roys* of the several Provinces (which in the division made betwixt him and *Belochus*, fell unto his share) in the propriety and command of those Countries which before they held. Nothing reserved unto himself, and his Posterity, but the Title only; and perhaps some acknowledgments made to them, as the Lords in chief. Nor left he less liberty to his own *Medians*, than to the rest of the Provinces; which turning to licentiousness was so hurtful to them, that they were glad at last of that wholesome severity, which *Deioces*, a more Lordly King, began to exercise: who taking to himself a guard, building the Royal City of *Ecbatana*, and fortifying some other places of importance, first brought the people under the command of Law; in that regard not unfitly called by *Herodotus*, the first King of the *Medes*.

KINGS of the MEDES.

A. M.

- 3146 1 *Arbaces*, at first Governor of the *Medes*, under *Sardanapalus* the *Assyrian*; but joyned with *Belochus*, overcame his Master, and was the first Founder of the *Median* Monarchy. 28.
- 3174 2 *Mandanes*, the son of *Arbaces*. 50.
- 3224 3 *Sisarmus*. 30.
- 3254 4 *Medius*, by some called *Artyras*. 25.
- 3279 5 *Cadiceus*, whom some call *Arbianes*. 13.
- 3292 6 *Deioces*, the Founder of *Ecbatana*, and the Legislator of the *Medes*, whom he first brought under the command of Law and a Regal Government; the former Kings having left the Reins so loose on the Necks of the people, that they seemed to Reign by Courtesy only; and had no more Authority amongst their Subjects, than any of the mean Lords had upon their Vassals. 40.
- 3303 7 *Phraortes*, a Man of great Prowess and Fortune: He made all *Asia* stand in fear, and compelled the *Persians* to be his Tributaries; but was after overtopped by the *Scythians*. 22.
- 3331 8 *Cyaxares*, united to his Empire the *Saracens*, and the *Partians*. The King was so overlaid by the *Scythians*, who in the Reign of *Phraortes*, had broke into *Media*, that he was little better than their Rent-gatherer. But having endured them for above two years, he Plotted their final Extirpation, and committed his Design to the Nobles, who willingly gave ear to it. One night they invited the chief of the *Scythians* to a Banquet; where having well Liquored them, and put 'em all to the Sword, the baser sort willingly returned homewards. 40.
- 3371 9 *Astyages* the Son of *Cyaxares*, who having Married his Daughter *Mandane* to *Cambyses*, the Tributary King of *Persia*, dreamed that she had made as much water as drowned all

Asia: hereupon he commanded *Harpagus*, one of his Noble-men, to see the Child kill'd; but he loathing so cruel a fact, committed the charge of executing the King's Commandment, to *Mitridates* the King's Herdsman. He preserved the Life of the young Infant, to whom he gave the name of *Cyrus*, whose Fortune at last lifted him up to the Kingdom of *Persia*: when abhorring his Grandfather for that intended Cruelty, he both bereft him of his Kingdom, and confined him in *Hyrcania*, when he had Reigned thirty five years, A. M. 3406. 35.

3406 10 *Cyaxares* II. In the Scripture called *Darius Medus*, Son to *Astyages*, at the Age of 52 years Succeeded his Father. For *Cyrus*, pretending no quarrel to his Uncle who had never wronged him, left him the Kingdom of *Media*, and took unto himself the Sovereignty of *Persia*, which before was Tributary to the *Medes*; not making any other alteration in the State of *Media*.

At this Division of the *Median* Empire, as *Torniellus* in his *Annals* (and that not improbably) is of opinion, it was also agreed on, that *Cyrus* should take the Daughter and only Child of *Cyaxares* to Wife; that they should both joyn together in subduing their Neighbours; that whatsoever they won, should belong to *Cyaxares*, (who was even then an old Prince) during his Life; and that *Cyrus* should be his Heir. In the twentieth year of their several Reigns, they took *Babylon*, slew *Baltazar*, and destroyed the Empire of the *Chaldeans*. This Action the Scriptures attribute wholly to *Cyaxares*, who is by them called *Darius Medus*; whereof *St. Hierom* alledgeth three Reasons: 1. *Ordo ætatis*. 2. *Regni*. 3. *Propinquitatis*. 1. *Darius* was the Elder. 2. The Empire of the *Medes* was more famous than that of the *Persians*; and 3. the Uncle ought to be preferred before the Nephew. We may add to these three, the composition above-mentioned, made between these Princes, at the beginning of their Reigns on the death of *Astyages*. The *Greek* Writers attribute the Victory only to *Cyrus*, and that on three Reasons also. The *Persians* desirous to magnify *Cyrus* their own Country-man, gave him all the Glory of the Action; and from the *Persians* the *Greeks* had it. Secondly, *Cyrus* was only employed in the Siege, (*Darius* then being absent) and by his Valour and Conduct was the Empire of the *Chaldeans* Ruined. And Thirdly *Darius* lived not fully two years after this great Victory; so that before remote Nations had taken notice of the Conquest, *Cyrus* was actually in the Throne. *Josephus* only in the 12th Chapter of his 10th Book, curteth the thread even between these two Princes; and telleth us that *Darius*, with *Cyrus* his Ally, destroyed the Estate of the *Babylonians*. Ἐπὶ τοῦτον (Ναβοαδνηλον) στρατεύουσι ὡς ὅτε δ' ἐπεσὼν βασιλεὺς, καὶ δαρείῳ ὁ μνηστὴρ, καὶ πολιορκουμένῳ αὐτῷ, &c. That this *Darius Medus* of *Daniel* is the *Cyaxares* of the *Greeks*, is more than manifest. For *Josephus* in the place above-cited, telleth us, ὅς τ' ὦν Ἀστυάγου υἱὸς καὶ ἑταῖρον πατρὸς ἑλλήσιν ἠκαλεῖτο ὄνομα That he was *Astyages*'s Son, and is otherwise called by the *Greeks*: now ask the *Greeks* what was the name of the Son of *Astyages*, and *Xenophon* will tell you, that it was *Cyaxares*. As for the name of *Nabonidus*, which *Joseph Scaliger* in spite of Reason, and the whole World of Chronologers, would thrust upon this *Darius Medus*, we have already refuted it: tho we are not ignorant that *Helvicus* and *Calvisius*, two most worthy Writers, have followed him, as in all his *Canon*, so also in this particular Error: But to proceed unto the course of the *Persian* History; after the death of this *Cyaxares*, *Cyrus* Succeeded in his Throne, and the Empire of the *Medes* was incorporated into that of the *Persians*, (as it hath ever since continued) if not Subject to it.

The

The first *Dynasty*, or Race of the *Persian* Monarchs, of the House of *Achemenes*.

Note that *Helvicus*, and *Isaackson* place the beginning of *Cyrus*, A. M. 3391. Sir *John Marsham*, in 3402.

- 3406 1 *Cyrus*, who having vanquished *Astyages*, united to the Empire of *Persia* the whole Kingdom of *Media*; the Countries of *Armenia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, some part of *Arabia*, and all the Provinces possessed by the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Monarchs. After which Victories, he was slain by *Tomyris*, a Queen of the *Scythians*, as some Writers say; others affirming, that he escaped alive (but wounded) out of the Battle, died in his own Kingdom, and was buried at *Pasagarda*, a Town of *Persia*. This *Cyrus* is Magnified by *Xenophon*, as *Aeneas* by *Virgil*, and *Ulysses* by *Homer*. Before the time of this Prince, no part of the lesser *Asia* was Subject to the Eastern Empire; and by consequence, it was very little known to the *Greeks*; but this Conquest of *Phrygia* and *Lydia* made them better inform themselves of the same, which hapning just as the Sacred History of the Bible was upon a conclusion; The *Greeks* took up and continued the History; and but for this, that part of the History of the World had in all probability been lost. 29.
- 3434 2 *Cambyfes*, the Son of *Cyrus*, Subdued *Psammiticus* King of *Egypt*, which Country he united to his Empire. Having a mind to Marry his own Sister, he was told by his Lawyers, that they knew no Law which admitted such Marriages; but that there was a Law, that the *Persian* Kings might do what they listed. This King was a very bloody Tyrant. 7.

The Interregnum of the Magi.

Cambyfes, at his Expedition into *Agypt*, constituted *Patzathes*, one of the *Magi*, Vice-Roy in his absence. He hearing of the King's death, conferred the Kingdom on his own Son *Smerdis*, making the People believe that he was the Brother of *Cambyfes*; a matter of no difficulty, considering how retirement from the publick view, was a chief point of the *Persian* Majesty. But the Nobles either knowing the true *Smerdis* to be slain, or suspecting the overmuch retiredness of the new King, began to search out the matter. *Otaues* had a Daughter, which was one of the King's Concubines: Her he commanded when the King took next his pleasure with her, to feel whether he had any ears; for *Cambyfes* (in I know not what humour) had cut off the ears of this *Magus*. This commandment she obeying, found out the falshood. The *Seven Princes* informed of this Impostor, joyned together, and slew this *Pseudo-Smerdis*, in the 8th Month of his Reign. This done, to avoid contention, they agreed among themselves, that the *Seven Princes*, meeting on the Palace-green, should acknowledge him for King, whose Horse before the rising of the Sun first Neighed. The evening before the day appointed, the Horse-keeper of *Darius*, the Son of *Hystaspes*, brought his Master's Horse into the Green, together with a Mare, which the Horse then Covered. In the Morning the Princes met; and *Darius*'s Horse knowing the place, and longing for his Mare, Neighed lustily: on which the Princes presently acknowledged *Darius* for their King.

The Restoring of the Kingdom.

- 3443 3 *Darius Hystaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, descended from *Cyrus* the fourth King of the *Persians*, thus Elected King, took *Babylon* (which had Revolted) by the ingenious fetches of *Zopyrus*, and over-ran all *Asia*, and some part of *Greece*, where he was overthrown at the Battel of *Marathon*. 36.
- 3479 4 *Xerxes*, to Revenge the Overthrow of *Marathon*, attempted to subdue the *Greeks*, by whom he was overthrown in the Naval Battel of *Salamis*; and that Famous and Honourable Exploit of the *Grecians*, at *Thermopylae*. 21.
- 3500 5 *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, was he who sent *Ezdras* to Re build the Temple of the Lord; and received *Themistocles*, being Banished from *Athens*. This also was he, as some would have it, whom the Scriptures call *Abasuerus*, the Husband of *Hester*; tho others chuse rather to place that Story in the time of *Xerxes*. 44.
- 3544 6 *Darius II.* Surnamed *Nothus*, in whose time the *Egyptians* Revolted, and chose a King of their own. 19.
- 3563 7 *Artaxerxes II.* from the greatness of his Memory surnamed *Mnemon*; under whom hapned that famous retreat of *Xenophon*, with an handful of his *Grecians*, through most of the Provinces of this Empire; by which they shewed the way to the *Macedonians*, how easie a Conquest they might make of that Mighty Empire. 36.
- 3599 8 *Ochus*, A great Tyrant, but a Valiant Prince, recovered *Egypt*, subdued *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and some part of *India*, and was at last slain by *Bagoas*, one of the Eunuchs of his Chamber. 26.
- 3625 9 *Arses*, the Son of *Ochus*, most Villanously Murdered by the same Eunuch, for fear he should Revenge the Death of his Father. 4.
- 3629 10 *Darius III.* Governor of *Armenia*, and Cousin-german of *Ochus*, before his coming to the Crown, named *Codomanus*, by the means of the said *Bagoas* made sole Monarch of *Persia*: But being Vanquished by *Alexander the Great*, in the three Battels of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Persians* was transferred to the *Grecians*, A. M. 3635. 6.

The certain Revenues of this Great Monarchy, seem to have been 14560 Talents; for so much the last *Darius* received yearly. But what the casual and extraordinary *Intrado* was, is not easie to say; tho' manifest it is, and demonstrable by many strong and evident reasons, that they far exceeded the certain. For first, the *Persian* Monarchs were Kings of 127 Provinces. Secondly, *Darius* offered to *Alexander* for the Ransom of his Mother and two Daughters, 30000 Talents of Gold. Thirdly, *Alexander* found in the Treasury of *Damascus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Susa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoin'd; in that of *Pasagardus*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Persipolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents; besides the infinite Riches of the Treasury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly specified: an huge and most unspeakable sum; Fourthly, in that the Gold and Riches which *Alexander*, now a Conqueror, sent from *Persia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (besides which, every Captain and Common Soldier had provided and laid up for his own Maintenance) loaded ten thousand Mules, and five thousand Camels.

For

For the fixing in one View the True Succession of the *Eastern Princes*, I shall here transcribe the *Canon* or *Catalogue* of the *Kings of Assyria, Media, and Persia*, according to *Mr. Dodwell's Copy*, which is the most Ancient Collection, and Fountain of all True *Chronology*.

The <i>KINGS</i> of <i>ASSYRIA</i>		Reigned	<i>Nabonass. Era.</i>	<i>Helv. A.M.</i>
1	<i>Nabonassar</i>	14	14	3204.
2	<i>Nadius</i>	2	16	
	<i>Chinzirus and Porus</i>	5	21	
3	<i>Fugaius</i>	5	26	
4	<i>Mardocempadus</i>	12	38	
5	<i>Arcianus</i>	5	43	
The First Interregnum.		2	45	
6	<i>Belibus</i>	3	48	
7	<i>Apranadius</i>	6	54	
8	<i>Rigebelus</i>	1	55	
9	<i>Mesessimordack</i>	4	59	
The Second Interregnum.		8	67	
10	<i>Affaradin</i>	13	80	
11	<i>Saosdouchin</i>	20	100	
12	<i>Chuniladan</i>	22	122	
13	<i>Nabopolassar</i>	21	143	
14	<i>Nibocolassar. Nabuchodon</i>	43	186	
15	<i>Iloarondam. Evilmerodach</i>	2	188	
16	<i>Nirsassolassar</i>	4	192	
17	<i>Nabonad</i>	17	209	
P E R S I A N K I N G S				
1	<i>Cyrus</i>	9	218	
2	<i>Cambyfes</i>	7	226	
3	<i>Darius I.</i>	36	262	
4	<i>Zerxes</i>	22	284	
5	<i>Artaxerxes I.</i>	41	325 (24)	
6	<i>Darius II.</i>	19	343	
7	<i>Artaxerxes II.</i>	46	389	
8	<i>Ochus</i>	21	401	
9	<i>Aragus</i>	12	412 (13)	
10	<i>Darius III.</i>	4	416	
M A C E D O N I A N K I N G S.				
	<i>Alexander the Great</i>	8	424	
	<i>Phillip Son of Arideus</i>	7	431	
	<i>Alexander II.</i>	12	443	

The rest of the *Kings* in this *Table* belong to *Egypt*; where it shall be continued. This being the most Valuable Piece of Antiquity now extant, as to *Chronology*.

After this overthrow of the *Persian Monarchy*, the *Persian Nation* lay obscure 535 years, viz. from the 3635 year of the *World*, to the 228 year of *CHRIST*: of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Successors of *Alexander*; and 452 years under the *Arfacidan Kings* of *Parthia*. *Μακρὰ δὲ Δακρίων, &c.* as *Herodian*. For after *Darius* had lost his *Kingdom* to *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, and after the *Victor* himself was dead also, the more potent *Captains* divided *Asia* among them: But *Discords* often arising, and the *Macedonians* puissance, by these often *Broils*, not smally broken. *Arfaces*, one of the *Parthian Nobility*, perswaded the *Barbarous people* of the *East*, and among them the *Persians*, to cast off the *Greek Yoke*, and stand for their *Liberty*: he himself taking upon him the Title of *King*, and investing himself with a *Diadem*, *A.M.* 3718. The *Persians* by this *Revolt* got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrant* only: These *Parthian Princes* Lording it with as high an *Insolency* as ever the old *Persian Monarchs*, or the *Kings of Syria* did before. From this *Arfaces*, all the rest of his *Successors*, and those too of the *Family of Artabanus*, or second *Race* of *Parthian Kings*, took that

name upon them: as the *Roman Emperors* that of *Cæsar*, or the old *Egyptian Kings* the name of *Pbaraob*. Their usual *Style* was *Rex Regum*, or *King of Kings*: and by that *Style* with *Arrogance* and *Insolence* enough, *Vologes* thus inscribed his *Letters* to *Vespasian* the *Roman Emperor*, viz. *Arfaces, Rex Regum, Flavio Vespasiano*: giving himself the Title of *King of Kings*, but the other nothing but his bare names only. To which, *Vespasian* without taking notice of the *Parthian's Pride*, returned his *Answer* to him with this *Superscription*, *Fl. Vespasianus Regi Regum Arfacidis*: whether with more *scorn* or *modesty*, it is hard to say. They also called themselves the *Brethren* of the *Sun* and *Moon*, which were the chiefest gods they worshipped. Great *Princes* questionless they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the *Kings* and *States* in the *World* besides: whose *Names* and *Acts* occur in these following *Catalogues* of

2. The *Arfacidan* or *Parthian Race* of the *Kings* of *Persia*.
A.M.
- 3718 1 *Arfaces*, the *Founder* of the *Parthian Family*.
3741 2 *Mithridates*, or *Arfaces* the second, assaulted by
Antiochus Magnus with an *Army* of 120000 men,
but without success. 3761

- 3761 3 *Pampatius*.
 3773 4 *Phraartes*, the Son of *Pampatius*.
 3783 5 *Mithridates* II. Brother of *Phraartes*, subdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates*.
 6 *Phraartes* II. slain in a War against the *Scythians*.
 3857 7 *Artabanus*, Uncle to *Phraartes* the second.
 8 *Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus*.
 9 *Mithridates* III. Brother of *Pacorus*.
 3903 10 *Horodes*, Brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and caused to be slain in his own sight. He also vanquished *M. Crassus*, and slew 20000 *Romans*; and because *Crassus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he caused Molten Gold to be poured down his Throat. A miserable death, but in respect of the Divine Providence, a most just revenge upon him for his Sacrilege, in robbing the Temple of *Hierusalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians*. The overthrow, and the disgrace which thereby happened to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompensed by *Ventidius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony* the *Triumvir*, who slew great numbers of them in a pitched Field, and amongst others, *Pacorus* the King's Son: The day of the Battle being the same in which *Crassus* had before been vanquished. After this Victory, for which *Ventidius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the first *Triumph* that ever the *Romans* had held for a *Parthian* Victory) he was in a fair way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have shrewdly shaken it at the least, had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that service. Finally, *Horodes* was slain by his Son *Phraartes*.
 11 *Phraartes* III. a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruel, as the Murther of his own Father and many of his Brethren doth clearly evidence. Against him marched *Marcus Antonius* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an absolute overthrow; of 16 Legions, scarce six returning home in safety. This King submitted himself and Kingdom unto *Augustus*, restoring the *Roman* Ensigns, and freeing the Captives taken at the defeat of *Crassus*. The only Mark of the *Parthians* Subjection was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperors of *Rome*; which also was of no long continuance.
 12 *Phraartes* IV. Son of *Phraartes* the Third, whom he slew and succeeded.
 13 *Horodes* II. Son of *Phraartes* the Fourth, slain in a conspiracy.
 14 *Vonon*, substituted in the place of *Horodes*, but outed by
 15 *Tiridates*, who was also dispossessed of his life and Kingdom by *Artabanus*, the people flocking to him as a man of courage, and being offended with the Two last Kings, because they either had received the Kingdom, or at least the Confirmation in it, from the *Roman* Emperors. Which *Artabanus*, tho descended either from a Female, or some of the Collateral Line of the former Family; yet being not direct Heir thereof, he is looked on as a stranger to the Blood of the *Arfacidae* the Family of *Arfaces*, giving place to that of this *Artabanus*, of which Family we have the names of Twelve Kings successively reigning: The most considerable of them being *Cbofroes*, the eighth King of this Line, from whom the Emperor *Trajan* gained *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, adding them to the *Roman* Empire. Members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Persian* Crown, by *Sapores* the ninth King of the next *Persian* Dynasty. But for those Twelve Kings of this House, they are these.

The Third Dynasty of the Kings of *Persia*, and the second of the *Parthian* Race.

- 1 *Artabanus*:
 2 *Bardanes*:

3 *Goteris*.
 4 *Vonones*.
 5 *Vologesius*.
 6 *Artabanus* II.
 7 *Pacorus*.
 8 *Cbofroes*.
 9 *Parthaspates*.
 10 *Vologesius* II.
 11 *Vologesius* III.
 12 *Artabanus* III. The last King of this new Race of the *Parthians*, whose overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the first *Persian* King of the fourth Dynasty, occasioned the Translation of the Diadem to the natural *Persians*; after it had continued in Two *Parthian* Families, for the space of 470 years. Which Translation, as it was wrought by the unresistable power of God, who only hath the disposing of Crowns and Scepters; so in the way of second causes it may be principally referred to the Barbarous Massacre of this people, by *Antonius Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperor; who having negotiated a Marriage with the Daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to solemnize the Nuptials, was met by the old King accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choicest of his Soldiers, and other Subjects, in Triumphal Ornaments. Which honourable Train was no sooner come near his Army, but he commanded his Soldiers (on a Watch-word given) to put them all to the Sword, the King himself hardly escaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* succeeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* set upon him to revenge that slaughter. But understanding after a long fight of three days continuance, that *Macrinus* had slain *Caracalla*, they made peace with him; but were so weakned and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Persians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation the Regal Power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Persian*, (his Name perhaps suggesting some high Thoughts unto him) did so well husband the opportunity, that he slew *Artabanus* the last King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the Royal Seat into *Persia*. Yet was not this so easily effected, the *Parthians* notwithstanding their former losses, maintaining another cruel Fight for three days together: so difficult was it to vanquish that Nation when their Forces were broken; impossible when they were entire. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this success, sent a peremptory Embassy to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman* Emperor, to have all the Provinces of *Asia*, which had formerly belonged to the *Persian* Monarchy, re-delivered to him: a matter not so easily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to suppress so insolent an Enemy, marched towards *Persia* with an Army *Romanly* appointed; which, to find his Enemy more work, he divided into three parts: whereof the first was to march into *Media*, the second into *Persia*, the third himself led in the Midway between both, to succour both, or be succoured by both, as occasion required. But his device succeeded not happily; for his two Armies being by the *Persians* broken, he with much danger and hast retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Persian* Kingdom; the establishment followed not long after: *Valerianus* the Emperor being vanquished, and taken Prisoner by *Sapores*, the second King of this Race. So that now the name of the *Persian* grew so terrible to the *Romans*, that *Constantine the Great* transplanted many of the Colonies and Garisons of the North-west parts of the Empire, into the East, to keep the *Persian* from growing too far upon the *Roman* Provinces; and removed also the Seat of the Empire nigher unto them, from *Rome* to *Constantinople*. And thus having shewn the Beginning and Establishment, the Foundation and Building of the new Kingdom of the *Persians*, take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, until they once more lost the Sovereignty of their own Nation, and became Slaves again to more barbarous Masters.

The Fourth *Dynasty*, or Race of the *Persian* Kings.

- 228 1 *Artaxerxes* 15.
 243 2 *Sapores* 31.
 274 3 *Ormisdates* 1.
 275 4 *Vararanes* 3.
 278 5 *Vararanes* II. 16.
 294 6 *Vararanes* III.
 294 7 *Narjes* 7.
 302 8 *Misdates* 7.
 310 9 *Sapores* II. 70.
 380 10 *Artaxerxes* II. 11.
 391 11 *Sapores* III. 5.
 396 12 *Vararanes* IV. 10.
 406 13 *Isdigertes* 21.
 427 14 *Vararanes* V. 20.
 447 15 *Vararanes* VI. 17.
 464 16 *Perozes* 20.
 484 17 *Valens* 4.
 488 18 *Cabades*, dispossessed by
 499 19 *Lambases* 4.
 503 20 *Cabades*, again restored.
 533 21 *Cosroes Magnus* 48.
 581 22 *Hormisda* 8.
 589 23 *Cosroes* II. 39.
 628 24 *Siroes* 1.
 629 25 *Adbesir*.
 26 *Sarbatus*.
 27 *Barnarius*.
 630 28 *Hormisda* II the 28th and last King of the Race
 of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth *Dynasty*: of whom
 besides the Two first Kings, whose Acts are spoken of
 before, the most remarkable were, 1 *Vararanes* the second,
 in whose Time *Carus* the Emperor passing over *Euphra-*
tes, and laying siege to *Ctesiphon* was there slain by a Thun-
 derbolt. 2 *Narjes*, the Son of *Vararanes*, who first discon-
 fited *Galerius*, one of the *Cæsars*, in the Empire of *Dio-*
clesian, and totally ruined his Army: for which *Galerius*
 being forced to Lacquey it by the Emperor's Chariot in
 his Purple Robes, was so highly shamed, that to recover
 his credit he set upon *Narjes* once again, routed him,
 and took Prisoners his Wives and Children. 3 *Sapores* the
 second, the Son of *Misdates*, who began his Reign be-
 fore his Birth. For his Father dying without Issue, left
 his Wife with Child: which Child the *Magi* having sig-
 nified by their Art to be a Male, the *Persian* Princes cau-
 sed the Crown and Royal Ornaments to be set upon
 his Mother's Belly, acknowledging him thereby for their
 future King. A great and puissant Prince he proved,
 holding continual War with *Constantine*, and his Succes-
 sors till the death of *Valens*; and gaining from them the
 best parts of *Mesopotamia*: but withal a great Persecutor
 of the *Christians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are said
 to have suffered in his time. 4 *Isdigertes*, a Prince so e-
 steemed of by *Theodorus*, the *Eastern* Emperor, that he made
 him Protector of his Empire, during the minority of his
 Son *Theodosius*: which Trust he royally performed, and
 was a great Friend unto the *Christians* in his own Do-
 minions. 5 *Cabades*, first outed of his Kingdom by *Za-*
maspes, and restored again, was the first *Persian* King who
 permitted the free exercise of the *Christian* Religion. He
 slew *Zachabes*, a King of the *Huni*, coming to his Aid a-
 gainst the *Romans*, because he had before promised to as-
 sist the Emperor; and rooted the *Manichean* Sect out of
 his Estate. 6 *Cosroes* the Son of *Cabades*, surnamed the
Great, a constant Enemy to the *Romans*; from whom he
 conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and sacked the
 City of *Antioch*. But finding the War brought home to his
 own door, by *Mauritius*, who was afterwards Emperor,
 and his own Countries in a flame, he took such thought
 of it, that he died of a Fever. 7 *Cosroes* the Second, as
 great an Enemy to the Emperor *Heraclius*, from whom
 he took all that was left of *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and the
Holy Land, with the City of *Hierusalem* it self; most of it
 recovered by *Heraclius*: in despite of whom he caused all
 the *Christians* in his Kingdom to turn *Nestorians*. 8 *Hormis-*

da the second, the last of the *Dynasty*, who being first weak-
 ned by Civil and Domestick diffentions, was vanquished
 by *Haumir* and his *Saracens*, Anno 634. burying so the
 Glory of this Renowned Nation in the Grave of Obliv-
 ion, or at least Subjection.

The *Saracenic* Caliphs, having added this Kingdom to
 their large Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom
 they honoured with the name of *Sultans*; not one Su-
 preme for the whole Kingdom, but several Governors
 or *Sultans* for each several Province: called by new names,
 and moulded into many *Toparchies*, as *Chorazan*, *Mouzcna-*
bar, *Usbeck*, and I wot not what; the *Sultans* acting of
 themselves, and warring upon one another, as their hu-
 mours led them, without relation to the Caliph or Lord in
 chief. During which bustles it so hapned, that *Mahomet*,
 the Sultan of *Persia* (so called because he was the chief
 in Command and Power) picking a quarrel with his
 Neighbour the Sultan of *Babylon*, (*Isafirus* he is called in
 some *Christian* Writers, by whom taken or mistaken for
 the Caliph himself) made War upon him. But finding him
 countenanced and supported by the power of the Caliph,
 invited the *Turks*, then possessed of some part of *Armenia*
Major, to come to his aid: by whose means he overthrew
 the Caliph's Forces, and might have got the Sovereignty
 of *Persia* unto himself, if he had used his Victory and his
 Friends with any tolerable discretion. But denying to
 pay these *Turks* their Wages, and send them home he oc-
 casioned them to make head against him, under the con-
 duct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader; to whom be-
 ing once in Arms, several discontented persons of the na-
 tural *Persians*, did unite themselves. Encouraged with
 which addition, and being furnished with Horse and Ar-
 mour, and other necessities, by the spoil of the Country,
 they gave battel to the Sultan himself: whom having
 vanquished and slain, *Tangrolipix* by the joint consent of
 both Armies is made King of *Persia*, the Founder of

The Fifth *Dynasty*, or the *Turkish* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

- 1030 1 *Tangrolipix*, of whom sufficiently before.
 2 *Axan*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*, by whom *Culu Mo-*
ses, his near Kinsman was sent with great For-
 ces against the *Christians*; whom he dispossessed
 of a great part of *Asia Minor*.
 3 *Balak*, Sultan of *Persia*, in the beginning of the
 Wars in the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the *Western*
Christians; against whom he is reported to have
 sent his Forces. Of whose Successors I find no-
 thing till the Time of
 1198 4 *Cassanes*, The last King or Sultan of the *Turks*,
 vanquished in the year 1202. by the *Cham* of
Tartary. Which makes me very apt to think, that
 after the death of *Axan*, or his next Successor, the
Turks lost the Sovereignty of *Persia*, tho they kept
 the possession of some parts of it; the Sovereign-
 ty thereof being recovered by the Caliphs of *Ba-*
bylon: and that it was so held by both, till the
Tartars dispossessed the one, and destroyed the
 whole Progeny of the other, as before was noted.
 And this I find to be the Opinion of *Benjamin*
Tudelensis, a Learned Jew, which had travelled
 most part of the *East*, to whose Judgment herein
 I subscribe as most sound and rational.

The sixth *Dynasty*, or the *Tartarian* Race of the
Kings of *Persia*.

- 1260 1 *Haalon*, or *Ulab-Kubkan*, by *Ogata* the great
Cham, made King of *Persia*; exterminated the
 whole Race of the Caliph of *Bagdet*.
 1266 2 *Hakkakaton*, the Son of *Haalon*.
 1282 3 *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haalon* called *Tangador*,
 who made himself a *Mahometan*, and was na-
 med *Hamed*, the Brother of *Hakkakaton*.
 1284 4 *Argon-Khon*, the eldest Son of *Hakkakaton*.
 1292 5 *Gemotukhon*, Brother of *Argon-Khon*.
 1295 6 *Badukhon*, the Uncle of the last, of which
 three there is little memorable.

1296 7 *Gazun*, the Son of *Argon-Khon*, who made *Cashin* his Imperial See.

1305 8 *Alyaptu*, who transferred the Court to *Taurus*, and is said to have been the Founder of *Sakania*, a chief City of *Media*; the Brother of *Gazun*.

1317 9 *Abusaid*, Son of *Alyaptu*, the last of the Race of *Hialon*, that Reigned in *Persia*. After whose death, Anno 1337. (being the 736th of the *Mahometan Hegira*) the more Potent Princes of the *Tartars* seized on the several Parts and Provinces of it; every one calling himself King of that Part or Province which he was Possessed of. And amongst them *Gempus* the *Sultan* or *Souldan* of *Parthia*, (tho' a *Persian* born) put in for a share, and made himself Master of his own Province, and some parts adjoining: made on that Ground by some of our Christian Writers (who very imperfectly have transmitted to us the affairs of this Country) the sole King of *Persia*. In this Confusion it continued till the coming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind, driving all before him, composed the differences, by getting all unto himself. But as Philosophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance; so the course of Business, and the success of Actions may instruct us also, that a Kingdom forced to bow under the Command of a Prosperous Army, is not so well assured to the Victor, but that the fury of the War once past, it may return again to its former Liberty, or open a more easie passage to some new Invader. And so it fared with the Conquests and Successes of *Tamerlane*, whose Issue quickly lost this Kingdom, and almost all the rest of his other Purchases: leaving but little memory of their names and actions. For partly by his own imprudence, in Cantoning his Estates among his Children; and partly by the weakness of his Successors in the Realm of *Persia* this Kingdom did relapse immediately to the same confusions in which he found it; having almost as many Sovereign Kings as Provinces. Most of them Homagers perhaps to the Kings of the House of *Tamerlane*, and those who afterwards Succeeded in the Title of Kings of *Persia*, of the *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Dynasty: not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithstanding the great and prosperous successes of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, who only in their times had the honour to be called Kings of *Persia*, (and well enough content with that:) such as they were, we find them in this order following.

1405 10. *Mirza Charock*, the fourth Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded by his appointment in the Realm of *Persia*.

1447 11 *Olegbegg*, Son of *Mirza Charock*, vanquished and slain by his own Son.

1450 12 *Abdalatife*, slain not long after by his Soldiers.

1451 13 *Abdulla* the Son of *Olegbegg*, and Brother of *Abdalatife*, vanquished by

1453 14 *Abusaid* II. descended from *Moroncha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded on the death of *Abdulla*.

1461 15 *Zeuzes*, whom some call *Jooncha*, others, *Ma-laonchres*, discomfited and slain in Battel by *Ussan-Cassanes*, Anno 1472. which was about 70 years from the death of *Tamerlane*.

The seventh Dynasty of the *Turcoman*, or the *Armenian* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

1472 1 *Ussan-Cassanes*, by some called *Azymbeyus*, by others more truly *Ozem-Aizambeck*, was the Son of *Tracheton*, one of those poor *Armenian*, or *Turcoman* Princes, dispossessed by *Rajazer* the First, and restored by *Tamerlane*. Encroaching on his Neighbours, he was warned to desist by *Zeuzes*, last *Persian* King; with whom encountering in a pitch'd Field, he overcame him, and got that Kingdom by the Victory.

1478 2 *Jacub*, the second Son of *Ussan-Cassanes*, having put by his older Brother, attained the Throne, and repulsed the *Marmalucks* out of *Mesopotamia*

and *Assyria*, which they had Invaded. He was after Poysoned by his Wife.

1490 3 *Jularar*, A Kinsman of *Jacub's* succeeded him in the Estate; which he held only three years, and then left it to

1493 4 *Raisinger*, A Prince of the same Blood; who living in Adultery with the Wife of *Jacub*, had conspired his death. 2.

1495 5 *Rustan*, Assaulted by *Aider*, or *Secaider*, of the *Sophian* Faction, who then began to be of power.

1498 6 *Alamat*, or *Hagarit*, the last King of this *Turcoman*, or *Armenian* Race; first vanquished *Secaider* at the Battel of *Derbent*, and cut off his head: but was after overthrown and slain by *Hysmael* the son of *Aider*, on the quarrel and occasion which here followeth.

Mahomet the Impostor, and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, by his Last Will and Testament, bequeathed the succession of that Estate to *Hali* his near Kinsman, and Husband of *Fatima* his eldest daughter. But *Abuderer*, *Haumar*, and *O'man*, three powerful men, and the chief Commanders of the Army in the time of *Mahomet*, successively followed one another in the Supreme Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that Honour for a little while, supplanted first, and afterwards vanquished and slain by *Muharras*, a great Man of War, who succeeded in it: and to secure himself therein, slew *Hafson* or *Offen*, the son of *Hali*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Offen* XII. called *Musa Ceredine*, escaping with life. From him descended lineally one *Guine*, the Lord of *Ardeville* in *Media*; who considering that there had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the establishing of that high honour in his own Family, as the right heirs to it. A man of so great reputation among the People, that *Tamerlane* having made a Conquest of *Persia*, thought it no dishonour to his greatness to bestow a friendly visit on him. Dying, he left his hopes and projects to his Son, called *Aider*, who afterwards for the purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Tzophy*; the word so signifying in that Language: who also prov'd of such esteem and power with all sorts of men, that *Ussan-Cassanes*, the first King of the *Armenian*, or *Turcoman* Race, thought fit to make him Husband to one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the Son of *Ussan*, and some of his Successors, seeing him grow unto such power and estimation with the common People; and fearing what he could do, and not what he would do, endeavoured to depress him by all means that might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the case then stood, practised to add unto his Party under the popular pretence of reforming things that were amiss in their Religion; and grew so powerful in the end, that he gave Battel unto *Rustan* and *Alamat*, the two last Kings of the former Race. But *Alamat* having got the Victory, caused him to be slain; and delivered *Hysmael* and *Solyman* his two Sons, into the hands of *Amazar*, a chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual Prison. But *Amazar*, a man of a more ingenious disposition, afforded them not only liberty, but also good education: insomuch that *Hysmael Sophi*, a towardly young Gentleman, undertook Revenge for the death of his Father, which work he fulfilled, having overcome and slain King *Alamat*, and his Son *Elwan*. After this Victory, he being Crowned King or *Sbaugh* of *Persia*, altered the form of Religion: making *Hali* and himself the true Successors of *Mahomet*, but condemning *Abuderer*, *Haumar*, and *O'man*, with the *Turks*, as Rebels and *Schismaticks*.

Hence proceeded the Bloody Wars, which to the *Persians* loss, have hapned between them and the *Turks*: the *Persians* burning whatsoever Book or Monument they find concerning those three; and the *Turks* holding it more Meritorious to kill one *Persian* than seventy *Christians*: *Strius* in his Commentaries, writing purposely of the acts of *Hysmael*, saith, that the *Jews* on some fond conceit, were perswaded that he was the *Messia* they had so long looked for: But it proved quite contrary, there never being a Prince that more vexed and grieved 'em.

The

The 8th Dynasty, or Sophian Race of the Kings of Persia.

- 1505 1 *Hyfmael Sopbi*, the Founder of this Family, overthrown by *Selimus* the First, in the *Calderan Fields*. 20. The Father of this Prince was one *Aidar*, a *Cheik*, or *Lawyer*, and this *Hyfmael Sopbi* was the 3d. Son of *Aidar*, and became King of *Persia* by the Conquest of *Azimont* his Master near *Taurus*.
- 1525 2 *Tamas*, the Son of *Hyfmael*, vanquished by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, who took from him the Countries of *Chaldæa*, *Affyria*, and *Mesopotamia*, with some part of *Media*. 53.
- 1578 3 *Aider*, the 2d Son of *Tamas* obtain'd the Kingdom, Imprisoning his Elder Brother; but his Cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the practice of *Periancona* his own Sister, having only Reigned fifteen days.
- 4 *Hyfmael II.* Eldest Son of *Tamas*, restored unto his Father's Throne; but Murdered with the privity of his Sister also, who found him of too rough a nature for her to Govern; having Reigned near two years.
- 1579 5 *Mahomet Codabanda*, advanced to the Throne by his Sister's Faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable nature) at his first entrance caused her to be Beheaded for the former Murders. During his time, not fully settled in the State, *Amurath III.* by his Lieutenants won from him almost all *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.
- 1585 6 *Abas*, the 2d Son of *Mahomet*, having Treacherously practised the death of *Mirza*, his elder Brother, succeeded his Father, recovered almost all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdoms of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candabor*, and *Hircania*, to the Crown of *Persia*. This Prince, by the help of the *English* won the strong City of *Ormus* from the *Portuguese*, in the Year 1622. After which he opened a Trade to all Nations by Sea and Land into his Kingdom, which has at once enriched and softned this once Martial Nation.
- 1628 7 *Sophy*, the Nephew of *Abas* by his Son *Mirza*. (whose eyes he caused to be put out on a false suspicion) at the Age of fifteen years succeeded: committed by his Grandfather during his Minority. to the Protection of *Emangolt*, *Chawn*, or Duke of *Shiras*. A Prince, who since he came to Age hath had a good hand against the *Turks*, attempting the recovery of *Bagdat* and other places, which had been taken from them in the time of *Abas*. In the Year 1638. the *Turks* won the City of *Bagdat*, soon after which there was a Peace made between the *Turks* and *Persians*, which has lasted ever since.
- 1642 8 *Shah Abas II.*
- 1666 9 *Shah Sepbi*, or *Sopbi II.* The now Reigning King of *Persia*. These two last Princes have had no Wars with the *Turks*, and have been so Bridled by the *Moguls* on the other side, that they have not attempted to recover *Bagdat* from the *Turks*. but have like the *Turks*, degenerated into a soft, effeminate Sloth, which hath in a great degree unmanned this once fierce Nation.

The Government of these *Persian* Kings, tho' it be *Despotic* and Severe, hath a great deal less of the Tyrant in it, than any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes: these cherishing their Brethren, maintaining Nobility among them, and encouraging Industry; which makes them to be better served than the *Turks*, or *Tartar*: to both whom they are far inferior both in Power and Treasure. Their Officers of State, and Men of principal Employment, for the most part *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the East:) such persons being thought most trusty, because abstracted from the obligations of Wife and Children, they study more the Princes Service than their own advantages. Their Forces consist most of Horse, to which they are inclined more generally, than to

serve on Foot, and yet the greatest Body of Horse which they have brought at any time into the Field, came not to above 30000; but those well furnished and appointed; maintain'd on Lordships and Estates after the manner of the *Turkish Timariots*. The Foot Soldiers of his own Countries but poor and raw, and very seldom stand their ground; that defect being for the most part supplied by *Mercenaries*. The inconveniency of which being found by Sultan *Abas*, he served himself of Children bought of *Christian* Parents near the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Egyptian* Sultans had their *Marmalucks*;) whom they call by the name of *Cozal-Bessas*, or *Red-Caps* so nam'd from the colour of their Turbants; trained up by them in their Religion and Warlike Discipline, as the *Turks* their *Fanizaries*; yet far inferior to the *Turks*, against whom if they have prevailed since the time of *Abas*, they may ascribe the greatest part of their good fortune to those Divisions and Rebellions, which in these late times have been frequent in the *Turkish* Empire. And as for their Sea-Forces, they are inconsiderable. For tho' they have large Sea-coasts both on the *Persian* Bay, the *Caspian* Sea, and the *Southern* Ocean; yet are they very poor in Shipping: suffering the *Muscovite* to ingross the Trade of the *Caspian* Sea; the *Portugals*, to manage that of the *Southern* Ocean; as formerly that also of the *Persian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormuz*.

The Revenues of this Kingdom in the time of *Hyfmael* the first *Sophy*, were exceeding great: in so much that *Tamas* his Successor, to ingratiate himself with all sorts of People, released them of all kinds of Customs imposed on Merchandise, either imported, or exported. And this amounted to 90000 *Tomans* yearly: which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a Million and 800000 Crowns of annual income, which notwithstanding, his Revenue was computed at 4 or 5000000 of Crowns yearly; raised out of *Demam* Lands, the tenth of Fruits, the profit of Mines, and the Fine paid by every Subject when he sets up Shop. But *Tamas* finding this not sufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his Money, and thereby for the present, his Revenue also. Since that they have been much impaired by the Conquest made on them by the *Turks*, who got from them so much Land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*; and yielded to the *Grand Seigneur* one Million of yearly income: whether improved again to their former height, I cannot determine. *Tavernier*, a great man, that Travell'd through these Countries, observes, that the *Turks*, *Persians*, and *Moguls* having taken all propriety from their Subjects, they must all three, sooner or later fall to Ruin and Desolation, p. 73. 'Tis certain that the *Turks* have desolated all their *Asiatick* Provinces to that degree, that they are able to contribute little to the preservation of themselves, or the rest of his Dominions; but are over-run by the wild *Arabs*, who pay him little or no Tribute, and not much Service, but Rob and Spoil his Subjects almost as far as the *Archipelago*; whereas in the *Roman's* time, they scarce ever entred into *Syria* or *Palestine*, but were forc'd to lurk in their own Desarts, tho' they sometimes made Incursions into these, then Richer and more Populous Countries. It may be supposed that *Persia* and *Indostan*, but especially the latter, are equally depopulated, and by consequence prepared for Ruin, according to that *French* Gentleman's observation, tho' by other means, of which I shall give an account in *Indostan*. *Persia* is however the best Peopled of the three, and in the best state, but they are strangely unmann'd by a long Peace with all their Neighbours, for they have had in a manner no War since that of *Candabar* in 1651. In which *Abas II.* defeated an Army of *Moguls* of 300000 men. This loss has ever since been a curb upon that Nation: and *Mahomet IV.* the last Grand Seigneur of the *Turks*, was an unwarlike Prince that never engaged against the *Persians*; so that this Nation hath mostly apply'd themselves to Manufactures and Husbandry; are now become very Populous and Rich, beyond the *Turks*, or the People of *Indostan*.

And so much for *Persia*.

O F T A R T A R Y.

TARTARIA is bounded on the East, with China, the Oriental Ocean, and the Streights of Anan, (if such Streights there be) by which parted from America, or rather from the Terra de Jesso, or Jesso, discovered by the Dutch East-India Company in the Years 1652. and 1653. which is not certainly known, whether it is a Part of America, or a Part of Asia, or a Part of another Continent, towards the North Pole, of vast extent; Parts of which have been discovered in the Latitude of 59. and bend to the N. E. on the back of Island, where it has been discovered in the Lat. of 64. and 65. and in the Lat. of 75. and in the Lat. of 77. and so Northward to 80 degrees, over against the North Cape of Finmark, and may probably be supposed to surround the Samoeds, and here shoot it self to the Southward again, a part of which Japan is supposed to be; and more to the Westward the Terra de Jesso, which was found to lie in the Latitude of 50. in the Years above said. It is commonly called Greenland by the English, Spitzberg by the Dutch, but may more properly be called the North Continent, equal to any of the other Parts of the World, and disjoyned from Asia and America as well as from Europe. See *Isaaci Vossii varia Observationes*, pag. 187. Lond. 1685. 4to. On the West with Russia, and Podolia, a Province of the Realm of Poland; on the North with the main Scythick or Frozen Ocean; and on the South with part of China, from which separated by a mighty Wall, some part of India, the River Oxus parting it from Badria, and Margiana, two Persian Provinces; the Caspian Sea, which separates it from Aludra, and Hyrcania; the Caucasian Mountains interposing betwixt it and Armenia; and the Euxine which divideth it from Anatolia, and Thracia. So called from the Tartars, a puissant and mighty People now possessed hereof; the reason of whose Name we shall shew hereafter.

It containeth all those great and spacious Provinces, which the Ancients called Seres, Scythia extra Imaum, Scythia intra Imaum, Saccæ, Sogdiana, the greatest part of Sarmatia Asiatica, and part of Sarmatia Europæa: extending it self the whole length of Asia, from the River Tanais, to the Eastern Ocean; taking in Taurica Cherfoneusus, and some other parts of Europe also. So that if we measure it by Miles, it is said to contain 5400 from East to West, and 3600 from North to South: a greater quantity of ground than the Turkish Empire, but of less fertility and accompt.

In measuring by the way of Degrees, it reacheth from the 50 Degree of Longitude, to the 195, which is 145 Degrees from West to East: and from the 40th Degree of Northern Latitude, unto the 8th, which is within 10 Degrees of the Pole it self. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the sixth Clime, where the longest day in Summer is 15 hours, till they cease measuring by Climates, the longest day in the most Northern parts hereof, being full six months; and in the Winter half of the year, the night as long.

The Country lying under such different Meridians, and such distant Climes, must needs be such, as no general Character can be given of it; and therefore we shall defer that, with the names of the Rivers and chief Mountains, to the description of the several and particular Provinces.

But for the People, being much of the same nature in every part, we may take the measure of them here. Affirmed to be of square Stature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noses, ugly countenances, swart of complexion, not so much by the heat of the Sun, (which keeps far enough off) as their natural fluttishness. Barbarous every where in behaviour, especially in those parts which they call Asiatica, and Antiqua: but withal very strong of body, swift of foot, vigilant in time of service, and patient of all extremities both of cold and hunger. The Women suitable to the Men, scorning or wanting Ornaments to set themselves out; or when they do, they seldom go beyond Copper, Feathers, or such precious Jew-gaws.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was said; eating their Enemies when they take them, as in way of Revenge; first letting out their Blood, which they receive into Cups, and use it as Wine unto the feast. Though swift of foot, yet generally they love to ride, though it be but on Oxen; about whose necks, as about Horses, when they travel, they use little Bells, with which Music they are much delighted. Their speech, even in their common talk, is a kind of whining, and their singing little better than the howling of Wolves. They eat commonly with unwashed hands, the dirt and grease about their fingers serving as a sauce for their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing; and for their ordinary drink use Mares milk. Homely of habit, made of the coarsest stuff, and reaching no lower than the knee; and if they go to the charge of Furs, contrary to the custom of other People, they wear the hairy hide outwards, and the Skin next their own bodies; only to shew the richness of their Apparel. And yet so proud in this beggary, that they account the Christians but as Dogs, condemn all the rest of the world, and think their Cham the only considerable Prince; by whose name they swear, as by their Gods.

In matter of Religion it is hard to say, whether Mahometanism or Paganism, be of most extent: some parts hereof being wholly Pagan, some wholly Mahometan, and some mixt of both. But of the two the Pagan is the better Gentleman, as being of the elder house, and of more Antiquity: the Sect of Mahomet not being entertained amongst them, till the year 1246.

And yet these have not so prevailed, as to extinguish the remainders of Christianity, of which there are amongst them many several Churches. The Christian Faith first planted amongst the Scythians, by the Preaching of S. Andrew, and S. Philip, two of the Apostles. Overgrown in these latter Ages by the Sect of Nestorians, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or for want of others to instruct them in more Orthodox Tenets. Before the prevailing of the Tartars, besides the Circassian Christians, of whom more anon, there are in the most remote parts of Tartary, whole Kingdoms of that Religion; as namely that of Tenduc, then the chief of all: besides some numbers of them in Tanguth, Cauchintales, Cassar, Samarchan, Karthim, Suchair, Ergimul, and Caraiam; where in the time of Paulus Venetus, who surveyed these parts about the year 1270. they lived intermingled with the Pagans. Not so diminished since the Conquest of those Countries by the Tartars, but that they are of a considerable number, especially in Cathay it self: where they are said to have a Metropolitan in the City of Cambalu, (the principal City of

that Empire) and he to be so honoured by the *Great Cham*, that for a time they received their Crowns from no hands but his.

As for the *Tartars*, they are by the Chronologer *Genebrard*, said to be the off-spring of the *Ten Tribes*, whom *Salmanassar* led away Captive; and that especially for three reasons. The first is, that the word *Tartari*, by which name (saith he) they ought rather to be called, than by that of *Tartari*, signifieth in the *Syriack* and *Hebrew* Tongues, a Remnant. But unto this it is answered, that the name of this people is derived from the River *Tartar*, as some; or from the Region called *Tartar*, where they first dwelt, as most think: and again, that though the *Hebrew* word *רְחִימָה* signifie a Remnant, yet can it not properly be applied to the *Tartars*; who so infinitely exceed the *Jews*, that they cannot be thought to be a remainder of them. Secondly, he alledgeth for proof hereof, that this people use *Circumcision*, the Character of the *Jewish* Nation. And hereunto it is Replied, that *Circumcision* was common to many People, besides the *Jews*, as to the *Egyptians*, *Aethiopians*, &c. and that rather as a National Custom, than a Religious Ordinance; and again, that the *Tartars* cannot be proved to have received *Circumcision*, before they received *Mahometanism*. Thirdly, there is brought to confirm this Opinion, a place of *Eldras*, cap. 13. lib. 2. where it is said, that the *Ten Tribes* (that they might the better keep God's Statutes) passed over the River *Euphrates*; and after a journey of one year and a half, came into a Country called *Arfareth*. To refell which, those of the contrary Opinion find no better course, than by shewing the impossibilities of it. For the *Tartars* (when their name was first known) were meer Idolaters, had no remembrance of the Law, observed not the Sabbath, nor any other point of *Jewish* Religion: and so the *Ten Tribes* retired not hither to keep God's Statutes. Secondly, *Euphrates* lyeth quite West from *Assyria*, and those places to which *Salmanassar* transplanted the *Israelites*; and so it could not be passed over in a journey towards the North. And thirdly, it is very improbable, that the *Ten Tribes* should either be so simple, as to leave *Assyria*, where they were peaceably settled, or so Valiant as to force a passage through those Countries of *Scythia*, which neither *Persians*, *Greeks*, or *Romans*, were able to withstand in the best of their Fortunes.

To let pass therefore all imaginations of a Foreign Pedegree, the truth is, that they were no other than a Ruder and more Northern brood of *Scythians*; who pressed by want, or otherwise oppressed by the King of *Tenduc*, unto whom they were subject, Armed themselves against him, obtained a memorable Victory, and settled *Cingis* their chief Captain in the Royal Throne, Anno 1202. After which, growing of more power, and enlarging their Dominions further, they united in the name of *Tartars* all the *Scythian* Nations; as *Mahomet* did those of the three *Arabias*, in the name of *Saracens*; or as in former times, the many several Tribes of the *German* Nations, were united in the names of *Franks*, or *Alemans*. Not known in *Europe* by this name, till their many great and signal Victories had made them formidable; which was about the year 1212, within very little of which time they had made themselves Masters of a larger Empire, than that of *Macedon*, or *Rome*, in their greatest glories. But being of a hasty growth, it decayed as suddenly; the greatest part of their *European* purchases, being conquered from them by the Dukes of *Muscovy*, and the Kings of *Poland*, as their acquets in *Asia*, and *Africk*, by the *Turks* and *Persians*. Yet still are they possessed of so large a Territory, that were they not distracted into several States; or did those several States depend upon one *Supreme*, that one *Supreme* might very easily give Law unto all his Neighbours, and make the *Turks* and *Persians* Tributaries, as in former times. The Curious Reader that would willingly farther inform himself of this People, may have recourse to Mr. Hack-

luyt's Collection of Voyages, Tom. 1. where he will find the Voyage of *Joannes de Plano Carпинi*, sent Ambassador to them in 1246. pag. 21. And that *William de Rubruquis* a Minor Fryer sent to them in 1253. pag. 71. Of late years the *Great Cham* has Conquered *China*, and his Dominions extend from the *Chinean Ocean* to the River *Obb*; where he is bounded to the West by the *Great Duke of Russia*, of which I shall speak more in *China*. But laying aside these speculations of what they might do, if united under one command, let us now look upon them as they are divided into these five parts, that is to say, 1. *Tartaria Precopensis*, 2. *Asiatica*, 3. *Antiqua*, 4. *Zagathay*, and 5. *Cathay*.

1. TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS. Crim-Tartars.

TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS is bounded on the East with the River *Tanais*, now *Don*; on the West, with the River *Borysthenes*, now called *Nipér*, by which last parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*; on the North, with *Russia*; and on the South, with some part of the *Euxine* Sea: by this accompt lying totally within *Europe*.

It had the Name of *Precopensis* from *Precopia*, a chief Town thereof. By some called *Tartaria Minor*, to distinguish it from the greater body of that People: the Inhabitants hereof most commonly passing by the name of *Crim-Tartars*, from the Town of *Crim*, in which their *Cham* or Emperour doth reside most usually. The Country by them now possessed, part anciently of *Sarmatia Europæa*, was inhabited by a Warlike Nation, called the *Tauri*: from whom those parts hereof which lye betwixt the Empire of *Russia*, and the two Rivers *Tanais*, and *Borysthenes*, were called *Tauro-Scythia*; that which shooteth out into the Sea, encompassed with the *Euxine* on the one side, and *Palus Mæotis* on the other, being called *Taurica Chersonesus*. In the Description whereof at this place and time, as formerly I made bold with some part of *Asia*, to lay together the Estate of the *Russian* Empire: so now to satisfy for that trespass, I shall make bold with part of *Europe*, to lay together the discourse and affairs of *Tartary*.

The whole Country plentiful of Fruits, and the Soil indifferently disposed to Tillage and Grazing, though more accustomed unto the last: the people more delighting in their Herds of Cattel, than in the fulness of their Garners. Camels, Horse, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats they have plenty of; great store of delicate Fowl, and abundance of Fish, bred in the large Fens of *Mæotis*: and in their Forests plenty of all sorts of Venison. Which Character as it belongeth generally to all the Country, so most especially to the *Chersonese*, or *Demy-Island*. United to the main Land with so narrow an *Isthmus*, that the *Tartars* once went about to dig it thorow; from whence some say they had the name of *Precopenses*, *Precoph* in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, signifying a deep Trench, or digging through. In length not above 24 *German*, or 96 *Italian* miles; in breadth but 60 of the one, or 15 of the other. Blest with a very temperate Air, and a gentle Winter: which beginning with the last of *December*, ends the first of *March*. Never extreme; and when the frosts are at the sharpest, but of short continuance. Divided in the midst with a Chain of Hills, extended from the East to the West; the boundary of the Dominions of the *Turk* and *Tartar*.

The people of the same complexion and composition as the rest of the *Tartars*; and not much different in manners. Their Diet, Roots, Cheese, Garlick; and of the poorer sort, for the most part Horse-flesh, (none but the better sort presuming upon Beef or Vention, though of both abundance) which they eat without Bread, or any thing else: and therefore when they go to the Wars, every Souldier takes two Horses with him, the one to serve upon, and the other to kill. And yet for all this havock which they make of Horse-flesh, there are few years in which

which they sell not 45 or 50 thousand in the Fairs of *Moscow*. Towns they had money, and were willing to maintain trade which were lent to their Lords. Nor have they except men of *Tatars* and *Moscovites* any standing in arms; removing up and down with their droves of Cattle, moving their houses with them (which they build on wheels) from one place to another. Of Money they make no mention, preferring Lead and Steel before other things, but use money still to them for Swords and Pistols, and small Shields for the most part, especially at the Siege of *Orsk*; to which I was accustomed from their Customers, for they can shoot as readily backward as forward. I learned also of the *Artines* to the *Angulife*, who are like *Bandoggers*, *Turkish Savvaters*, and their *Hussars* of *Armes*. None can be vanquished but by death, as they are ready rather to die than be taken *Prisoners*. But the *Victors* are more intent upon taking Captives, especially young Boys and Girls, whom they sell to the *Turks* than upon any other booty or spoils of War.

The Religion most universal and countenanced is that of *Jesus Christ*, mingled with some of their old Principles of *Idolatry*: for they confess that CHRIST shall be the *Judge both of the quick and dead* in the day of Judgment; and punish those that speak irreverently of him.

are regard more favourable to the *Christians* than o-
ther *Antichristians*; which makes great Hosts of *Grecian*
and *Roman* Christians to dwell upon it them. The
Language which they speak is their own *Partavian*, but
written with most of the *Syriack* & *Turkish* Tongues,
which we write, they use either *Chaldean*, or *Ar-
abic* Characters. See Sir John Chardin, pag. 67.

Rivers, and contribute in it, the 1. *Boyithicus*, and 2. *Tanais*, which both have their spring-heads in the Empire of *Russia* (as is there declared) have their falls in this the first in the *Euxine*, in the 5th, the other into *Palus Maotis* in the 67th degree of *Longitude*; by which we may conjecture somewhat of the length of the Country. 3. *Iberus*. 4. *Carcinatus*, falling into the *Euxine*. 5. *Agaris*, and 6. *Byces*, which lose themselves in the Fens of *Alcotis*; as do also 7. *Pasiascus*, 8. *Gerus* 9. *Lycus*, from the main Land; and 10. *Istrianus* from the *Taurian Chersonese*. By the confluence of which waters, and many others falling into the *Asian* side, the Lake or Fens of *Alcotis* are of great extent, in compass at least a thousand Miles; well stored with Fish, and still retaining somewhat of sweetness of those many Rivers which are emptied into it. So called from the *Alcota*, who formerly inhabited on the Banks hereof; and giving name to all excellent kind of Fish which were called *Meotides* by the Ancients. At this day generally called *Mar d. le Zabake*, by the *Italians* commonly *Mar della Tana*, the Sea of *Tanais*, and sometimes also *Mer Bianco*, or the white Sea, no difference it from the *Euxine*, which they call the *Black*, for the reasons formerly delivered. Passing directly towards the South, it is streightned by a narrow-Channel, not above four miles in breadth, though about 24 in length, called anciently by the name of *Bosphorus Cimmerius*; *Bosphorus*, because Oxen did use to swim over; *Cimmerius* from the *Cimmeri* who possessed the adjoining Countrey on the *Asian* side: but known at this day by the name of *Stretto di Caffa*, from the City *Capba* near unto it; and by the Inhabitants, *Vospero*, more near the Original. Out of this Streight that confluence of waters which do meet in the *Meotick* Fens, do make their way into the *Euxine*, according to that of *Lucan*.

Quaque fretum currens Mæotidas egerit undas.

Where the *Mæotick* Pool at last

Thorow a narrow Streight makes haft.

Chief Cities of it at present, 1. *Capha*, or *Cassa*, in the *Chersonese*, not far from the Streight, called hence *Stretto de Cassa*; a flourishing Empory, and furnished with a large and capacious Haven. Heretofore possessed by the *Genoese*, who by the benefit of this Port, and the Plantation which they had in *Perah* on the North side of *Constantinople*, engrossed into their own hands the whole Trade of the

Euxine. Taken by *Mithomet the Great*, Anno 1475. it became subject to the *Turks*, and drew into that unal-
dom all the Southern parts of the *Chersonese*, which de-
pended on it: deprived thereby of the greatest part of its
former lustre, the *Christian Churches* being destroyed, the
Towers and publick buildings razed; the houses of *Genoa*
Merchants which were fair and beautiful, destroyed and
ruined: yet still the principal of this *Biland*, or *Demy-*
Island; and anciently better known by the name of *The-*
odusia, and by that name remembered in *Ammianus*. See
J. de Chardin, who saw this City, saith it is a great Town
built at the foot of a small hill upon the Sea Shore,
stretching N. and S. and having strong walls which end
in the Sea both ways; so that it appeareth at Sea in the
form of an half Moon. On the South it hath a Castle
which is the Seat of the *Turkish Basha*. It is thought to
have 4000 Houses, 800 of which are Inhabited by Christi-
ans. The Lands about it are dry and sandy, and the Wa-
ter not good, but the Air is very pure, provisions are
very cheap, but the fruits unpleasant. He saw in 40 days
whilest he was here 400 Sail of Ships go out and come
in. Their Trade consists in Salt-Fish, Corn, Butter, and
Cheese, all of it driven by the *Turks* and *Jews*. The *Ge-*
netians in 1672. were denied a Trade here. *Chardin*, pag.
67. *Tavernier*, pag. 113. and 115. 2. *Perecop*, in Latin
called *Perecopia*; a Town and Castle situate in or near the
place, where stood the *Eupateria* of the Ancients, called
also *Pompeiopolis*, *I'eraclea*, *Achillis Curfus*, and *Isthmus*,
and so commanding both the *Euxine*, and the Lakes of
Maotis, as *Corinth* betwixt the *Aegean* and *Ionian* Seas.
This City is built on the neck of Land which joyns the
Peninsula to the Continent, and is the Bulwark to all the
rest; and therefore the *Russ* have often attempted to
gain it, but they could never get up to it by reason of
the great distance, and desolate Lands between them and
this Town; so that the Summer is spent before their
Armies can march so far; I have not yet met with any
Traveller that hath given any account of the present state
of it. 3. *Corfunum*, the *Chersonesus* of *Ptolomy*, anciently a
Greek Colony; and then accounted for the chief of the
whole *Peninsula*: rich, populous, and well-traded, by
reason of the Haven which was safe and large; and of
great beauty and magnificence, as the ruins testifie. By
the *Turks* at this day called *Sari-Germanum*, or the *Yellow*
Tower, the soyl about it being of a *Saffron* colour. 4. *Ger-*
man or *Crim*, the ancient Seat of the *Chams*, or Princes
of these *Tatars*; and at that time the fairest and greatest
of this *Biland*: Situate in the midlt hereof, and fortified
with a strong Castle, for the height of the Walls, and
depth of the ditch esteemed impregnable: supposed to
be the *Taprae* of *Pliny*, or the *Taphros* of *Ptolomy*: Men-
tioned by *Florus*, as then lately taken by some *Roman*
Emperour, and so most likely to be *Trajan*, the first that
ever extended the *Roman Empire* beyond *Danubius*, and
the *Euxine*: Situate in the very Center of the *Peninsula*,
equally distant from *Perecop* and *Cassa*; *Baudrand* saith,
upon what authority I know not, that it is very small
now, and not much better than a Village: what the Re-
verend Author saith of the situation of this place belongs
to *Perecop*. 5. *Panticapaeum*, situate on the very *Bosphorus*,
and now called *Vospero* by the Natives: the ancientest
City of this *Peninsula*, and said by *Ammianus* to be the
mother of all the *Greek Colonies*, which were planted in
it. 9. *Tanas*, the *Tanais* of *Ptolomy* and other Ancients, because
situate on the mouth of that River; or rather betwixt the
two mouths of it, distant from one another a degree of
Longitude. A Town of great Trade, and well frequent-
ed by the Merchants of all those Countries, which border
on the *Euxine Sea*: but subject to the *Turks*, who have
there a Garrison, and by them called *Azac* and *Asoph*; it
has a large Haven, and a strong Castle which stands upon
the River; in the year 1569, when the *Turks* went to the
Siege of *Asfracan*, the heavy Cannon were sent by Sea to
this City, and were intercepted by the *Russ* before they
came to the Camp at *Asfracan*; which ruined the *Turkish*
design and Army. *Guagninus Hist. Poland*. In 1638 it

was taken by the *Russ*, and upon a false accusation it cost *Cyrillus Lucaris*, then Patriarch of *Constantinople*, his Life. The *Russ* enjoyed it quietly till 1641, when it was besieged with the loss of 11000 *Turks* and not taken: The next year the *Turks* returned with a greater Army and Fleet, and the *Czar* of *Russia* refusing to aid his own *Cossacks*, then possessed of the Town, it was pillaged, burnt, dismantled, and left an heap of Rubbish before the *Turks* came up, and so then retired. The *Turks* immediately fell to the repair of it. It is, saith my Author, built on the side of an hill, in form four square, 1200 paces about, fortified with ancient Walls, flanked with capacious Towers, and having a Castle in the middle on the water-side, which divideth the City into two parts; but the Garrison was not above 400 men when it was taken from the *Turks*. Heretofore it was a well-traded Mart, but was then an unregarded Frontier. Sir *Paul Rycaut's* continuation of the *Turkish History*, pag. 35. 52. and 53. 7. *Ingermenum*, situate on a large and lofty Mountain, and fortified with a Tower or Castle of stone; under which there is a Church, with great Charge and Art cut of the Rock: formerly of great wealth and fame, now decayed and ruinous. 8. *Jamboli*, by some called *Belachium*. 9. *Mancopia*, by the *Turks* called *Mangutum*. 10. *Circum*; all boasting of their several Castles. 11. *Oczakow*, or *Oczacovia*, situate near the influx of the great River *Borysbene*s, into the Bay of *Carcinitis*, and so most like to be built in the place of that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Olbia*; *Pliny*, *Olbiopolis*: Honoured of late times (since the taking of *Taurica* by the *Turks*) with the residence of the *Great Cham*: from whence these *Tartars* are by some called *Olsenenses*. This is (saith *Gauguinus*) at this day a City, and has a Castle Garrison'd by the *Turks*, tho' the *Preccopenian Tartars* inhabit the City. Whether it be the *Axiote* of *Ptolomy* I know not; but the present Pile was certainly built by *Vitoldus* Duke of *Lithuania*, a Colony of his Subjects planted in it. Thus far he. Near this City, in 1644, the *Poles* gave the *Tartars* a great overthrow. It lies 40 *Polish* miles from *Perecop* to the West. 12. *Metropolis*, as *Ptolomy*, or rather *Melitopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth it; a Colony in old times of the *Milesians*, not far from *Olbia*. Besides all which, and many others mentioned by the ancient Writers, of which there is nothing now remaining; the Court of the *Great Cham* in Summer time makes a moveable City, built upon *Wheel-houses*, and transported from one place to another, as occasion serveth; which houses at every station are orderly disposed of into Streets and Lanes, and by the *Tartars* are called *Agara*, or a Town of Carts.

The reason why there is so few Towns or Cities in *Tartary*, is from that Nation's way of living; they rove about a large and spacious Country, and employ themselves in nothing but War, Rapine, feeding Cattle, which is their only Treasure; and Fishing. They will curse their Children in their Anger, *May you live in one place till the stench of your Dung comes up into your Nostrils*. No part of the Country is settled or divided to any man, but lies all in common to the whole Nation. They have no Manufactures, no Trade, but for Horses and Slaves; and they sell not only what they take in War, but their own Children, and what they can steal from their Neighbour Clans. They have no Husbandry, sow no Corn, eat no Bread, wear nothing but skins of beasts, and a coarse Cloath which they make themselves, and employ a great part of it in coverings for their Tents. They never built any one of the Towns or Cities in their Country, but they in the *Peninsula* were built by the *Greeks* and *Genoese*, and those on the *Nieper* by the *Lithuanians*. When Christianity prevailed amongst the old *Scythians* some Towns and Cities were built, but about the year 1200 the irruption of the *Tartars* ruined all. So that what the Reverend Dr. *Heylin* saith of the Towns and Cities in *Tartary*, is transcribed from ancient Histories, and is not true of them at this day. *Cassa*, *Azac* or *Asoph*, and *Ocsacom*, are kept up by the *Turks* and not by the *Tartars*, who might have these Towns if they would, but they do

not desire them. The *Russ* have prevailed greatly against the *Tartars* by nothing more than the building Forts and strong holds in their Country; and from thence making incursions on them, till they forced them to submit, and then by degrees Civilizing them. The *Russ* Nation have an infinite number of these *Tartar* Slaves in all places; and one of the best things that can possibly be done for the *English*, in the great scarcity of People brought upon us by our western Plantations, were to pass first an Act of Parliament, for the reviving *Vilénage*, and the enjoying them and their Children; and then the entering into a Treaty with the *Czar* of *Russia*, for a liberty to export them. The reason why I mention this here, is because they are an hardy people, and are fitter for our cold Climate than the *Negroes*; and might in a short time be taught to till our Lands, and they would be cheaper fed and maintained every way than our *English* can be, and be more at command: and by mixing them with *Negroes* we might in a few years have a great plenty of Servants, and our own people might be employed in Navigation, Manufactures, and the governing and overseeing these Servants; and without this our Nation will be desolated, and our Husbandry, and consequently our Nobility and our Gentry, will be ruin'd. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were of *Scythian* Race; for by that name elder Writers call not only the true and proper *Scythians*, lying on both sides of *Imaus*; but even the *Sauromatae* or *Sarmatians* also; and those not only of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, bordering next unto them; but even such *European Nations*, as lived on the Northern banks of *Isther*, and the *Euxine* Sea. And so they are affirmed to be by *Ptolomy* himself; though otherwise more exact than any, in distinguishing *Sarmatia Europea* from *Asiatica*, and *Asiatica* from the *Scythians*. For speaking of the Nations of *Sarmatia Europea*, inhabiting on the *Palus Maotis*, he ranks them thus, *Kai par' ollw tlu pleuegn t' Maotid*, &c. i. e. and all along the Coasts of *Maotis*, dwell the *Fazyges* (distinct from those called *Metanastæ*) and the *Rboxolani*; and more within the Land, the *Ilamaxobii* and *Alani*, *Scythians*. More towards the banks of the *Euxine*, and in the *Chersonese* itself, dwell the ancient *Tauri*, subdivided into the several Nations of the *Sinchi*, *Napæi* and *Arinchi*; by the said *Ptolomy* included in the general name of *Tauro Scythæ*. To none but these, of all the *European Sarmatians*, doth he give this name. And therefore I conceive them to have been those *Scythians*, against whom *Darius* King of *Persia* made his fruitless war. Picking a quarrel with this People, because their King had denied to give him one of his Daughters to Wife; or to revenge, as others more probably say, the inroad which the *Scythians* formerly had made into *Asia*, he drew together an Army of 700 thousand. Passing over the *Thracian Bosphorus*, he came at last to the banks of *Isther*, where it parteth *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*; and there for the passage of his men caused a Bridge to be built, to the keepers whereof he left a Cord of 60 knots, commanding them every day to untie one knot; and if he came not back before all were untied, to return to their houses. This done, he marched towards his Enemies, who still fled before him, leading him into the most desert and uninhabitable parts of their Country, and when they had brought him into a streight, sent Embassadors to him with a *Bird*, a *Mouse*, a *Frog*, and an handful of Arrows; willing the *Persians*, if they could, to expound that Riddle. *Darius*, willing to hope the best of his design, conjectured that the *Scythians* did submit unto him, by delivering into his hands their *Air*, *Earth*, *Water*, and *Arms*, Hieroglyphically signified in their Present: But *Gobrias*, one of their seven Princes, made this Exposition, That if the *Persians* could not fly like a *Bird* thorow the Air, or like a *Mouse* creep under the Earth, or like a *Frog* swim over the Water, they could by no means escape the *Scythian* Arrows. And to say truth this Commentary best agreed with the Text. For these *Scythians* following close upon him, or rather driving him before, and vexing him with continual skirmishes, forced

forced him to make such haste to get over the River, that he lost 80000 of his men in fight and flight. This was the only memorable Action of these *European Scythians* in those elder ages: more memorable in the times succeeding for their horrid cruelty, than any argument of their valour. For it is said of these *Tauri*, or *Tauro Scythæ*, that for the pleasing of their Gods, especially of *Diana*, whom they called *Orsiloebe*, they used to sacrifice all such strangers as they could lay hands on; and with their heads most barbarously adorned the Walls of her Temples. An inhumanity with which the *Christian Advocates* of the Primitive times did much use to upbraid the *Gentiles*; taunting them with the Sacrifices of *Diana Taurica*, (so named from hence) as inconsistent with the nature of a God or goodness; most rightly giving them this brand or censure, that they were not *Sacra*, but *Sacrilegia*. *Et præstat profanus esse quam sic religiosus*. Better it was to be no Religion, than of one so cruel.

But to go forwards with the story, In the actions of the *Greeks* and *Romans* we hear nothing of them, unless it were that the Emperour *Trajan* (as *Florus* seems to intimate) took the City of *Taphre*: Which if he did, he added by that action somewhat to his own honour, but nothing to the *Roman Empire*: this people being never reckoned amongst the Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name of their infesting the *Roman Territories* (as the other barbarous Nations did:) except they passed in the account of the *Goths*, *Alani*, *Hunns*, *Avars*, or other of the *Scythian*, or *Sarmatian* People; by which the Majesty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Persians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans* were not able to do, was with ease effected by the *Tartars*: who in the time of *Jocchata*, or *Hoccata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Batbu*, or *Roydo*, one of their most renowned Commanders, subdued all these parts; together with *Russia* on the North, *Bulgaria*, and *Hungaria*, on the East. Subject at first to the Command of the great *Cham* of *Cathai*, as the rest of the *Tartarians* were. In the Year 1250 the *Tartars* first entered the *Taurick Chersonese*. In 1252 they took *Caffa* from the *Genoese*. *William de Rubruquis*, who in 1253 crossed *Tartary*, found this *Chersonese*, call'd then *Gassaria*, or *Cassaria*, that is *Casaria*; there was then in it three Cities, that on the West side was then called *Kersona*, now *Cassovia* or *Cassovia*; where he pretends *St. Clement* suffered Martyrdom; and over against it he saw an Island in the Sea, in which was a Church pretended to be built by Angels. In the middle, on the South Cape, was the second City called *Soldia*, over against *Sinope* in the lesser *Asia*; and this was the great Port for the *Turkish Merchants* from the lesser *Asia*. On the East side, was *Matriga*, where the *Tanais* falls into the *Euxine* by a Mouth 12 Miles over. The great Ditch on the North side was then cut, and all the Plain Country without the *Chersonese* was inhabited, before the Invasion of the *Tartars*, by a *Scythian* Nation, called the *Comani*, who forced the Cities in this part to pay them a yearly Tribute. The *Tartars* drove so vast a number of these *Comanians* into the *Chersonese* before them when they invaded it, that the Living eat the Dead, (as a Merchant told him who saw it with his Eyes) preying upon the raw Carcasses like Dogs. *Will. de Rub. Cap. 1.* This War proved in the end the total Extirpation of the *Comanians*, who all Perished by Hunger, the Sword, and Sickness, or were made Slaves by the *Tartars*. These *Tartars* came at last to have a Prince of their own; one *Lochtan Cham*, descended from the aforesaid *Batbu*, and (as it was pretended) of the blood of *Cingis*. They grew at last of so great power, by conquering the *Asiatick Tartars* which lay nearest to them, that *Mahomet* the Great thought fit to keep them down before grown too strong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capha* then possessed by the *Genoese*, made himself Master of the greatest part of the *Taurican Chersonese*, and the Port of *Tanais*; thereby commanding both *Mæotis* and the *Euxine* Sea. In the time of *Selimus* the first, who had married a Daughter of this *Crim Tartar*, (for so they call him) and was aided

by him with an Army of 15000 men against his Father, the *Turks* and these *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief Conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* should aid the *Turk* upon all occasions, with 60000 Horse, if it were required; that they shall not make War with any of their neighbours, (except the *Muscovite*) without leave of the *Turk*; that they shall pay yearly to the *Grand Signior* in the way of Tribute 300 Christians; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or deposition of his Predecessor, shall receive from the *Great Turk* a Royal Banner, in token of his Confirmation in that estate; that in reward of these services, the *Crim Tartar* shall have yearly from the *Grand Signior* 5500 *Ducats*, in the way of Pension; and succeed finally in the *Turkish Empire*, if ever the male Issue of the House of *Ottoman* should chance to fail. According unto this agreement, the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time, against the *Persians*, *Polanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not? and that with great and puissant Armies; the great *Cham* sometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects, (leaving but one man in an house to attend their Cattel;) and sometimes adding 50000 *Circassians*, and others of the *Asian Tartars*. And for the *Muscovite*, whom he is left at liberty to assault by this *Capitulation*, he hath had so hard an hand upon him, that in the year 1571 they pierced as far as to the City of *Mosco*, and set fire on the Suburbs: which flaming into the City, built most of wood, and then reckoned to be 30 Miles in compass, within the space of four hours burnt the greatest part of it; and therein no fewer than 800000 of all sorts of people. A quarrel not to be composed; the *Tartar* not only laying claim to the Kingdom of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, which the *Russ* possesseth; but even to *Moscovy* it self, as hath there been shewn. Nothing so punctual is the *Turk* on his part, to perform the contract; who not content to have the *Tartar* for his friend, or at the worst his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his Slave or *Vassal*. For *Amurath* the third, quarrelling with *Mahomet* the *Crim Tartar*, for a design to intercept *Osman-Bassa* in his way from *Persia* to *Constantinople*, authorized the said *Osman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by some of his own Councillors (corrupted with *Turkish Gold*) were strangled with a Bowstring; *Islan* a Brother of the *Crim*, first sworn a *Vassal* to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him a *Turkish Beglerbeg* or *Bassa*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of succeeding in the *Turkish Empire*, if the house of *Ottoman* should fail, hath been already taken into consideration, in our discourse upon that subject.

What the *Revenue* of this Prince is, it is hard to say; his Subjects having little Money, and living most upon the bartery of their Cattel. But besides what he hath in Lands or Customs, and the 5500 *Ducats* which he receiveth yearly from the *Turk*, he hath the tenth of all the spoils which are got in the Wars, and a *Checkine* for every Captive, for some two or three (whosoever taketh them) according unto their Estates.

As for his power, what he can do in Horse, we have seen already; as for Foot, and Ammunition, and other necessities, he is supplied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth sometimes espouse his quarrels:) by whose assistance they have brought the *Muscovites* to some extremities. And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Signior*, the *Cham* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Bathori*, (whom *Amurath* the third commended to the Crown of *Poland*) sent Embassadors to negotiate his Election to that Kingdom; and to induce them therunto promised them in his Letters, amongst other things, that their *Pope* should be his *Pope*, their *Luther* his *Luther*; and that rather than put them unto any charge to find his Table, he could live with *Horse-flesh*. His Emballie entertained with Laughter, as it well deserved.

2. TARTARIA DESERTA.

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the West, with *Preopentis*, and the Empire of *Russia*; on the East, with *Antipia*, and *Zagathay*; from which last parted by the River *Sine*, which falleth into the *Caspian* Sea about the middle of it, and with the great Lake of *Kitay*, from East to West; on the North, with the *Scythic* or *Frozen Ocean*; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucasian* Mountains, and some part of the *Caspian*.

It took this name from the many *Deserts* which are in it; and is call'd also *Asiatica*, to difference it from *Preopentis*, which is wholly in *Europe*: or because it taketh up the whole continent of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, according to the bounds thereof laid down by *Ptolemy*, except some part hereof incorporated to the *Russian* Empire.

The Country of it self sufficiently fruitful, if well manured; and were it in the hands of a laborious and industrious people, would yield large increase: as appears by the ill-husbandry of the *Tartars*, who sow nothing on it but *Asill* and *Punicum* (grains unknown to us) and yet without giving it any tillage, receiving very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a Nation that hateth *Agriculture*, and laugheth at *Christians* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (so they call our bread) neglect all that which is not of a rank Pasture for their Herds and Cattel: moving from one place to another, as the Grass faileth them; which maketh it so full of *Deserts*, and so empty of Towns as to deserve the name of *Tartaria Deserta*.

The People or Inhabitants of it are of several sorts, derived from three several Originals, and disposed of in three several parts. 1. The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are wholly Idolaters, now reckoned as a part of *Zagathay*, and there we shall hear further of them. 2. The *Circassians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the most part *Christians*; and, 3. the *Tartars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Idolaters*. These again subdivided into several Tribes, which they call their *Hordes*: of which the most considerable are, 1. The *Nagaian Tartars*, 2. The *Zavolhenses*, 3. The *Thumunenses*, 4. The *Kirgessii*; besides the *Hordes* or Kingdoms of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, added unto the Empire of *Russia*, where described already; and others of inferiour note, not here considerable.

But before we come to speak with these people in their several places, we must first look upon the whole Country, as presented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*; bounded by *Ptolemy* as before, save that it did extend more Westwards; and was unknown to him, in the Northern parts of it: now possessed by the *Moscovite*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of forty several Nations which did then inhabit it, and of about as many Towns of good estimation. Of which there are but few or none remaining; and for the names of some of the principal of them, we shall have them presently.

Rivers of most note in it, 1. *Marabius*, 2. *Rombitis*, the Greater, and, 3. the less; 4. *Antecus*, 5. *Theophanius*, 6. *Psatthis*, 7. *Theysiris*, 8. *Corax*, and 9. *Vardanes*; all of them falling into the *Euxine*, and *Maotic* Fens. 10. *Vidonis*, 11. *Alnata*, and 12. *Rba*, paying their tributes to the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of these the principal is *Rba*, by the modern Latines called *Volgo*; by the *Tartars*, *Edi*; rising in *Russia*, not far from the City of *Mosco*, (where we have described it.) Most memorable, besides the seventy Mouths or Channels, wherein it openeth into the *Caspian*, for a *Medicinal* and wholesome root growing on both sides thereof; which the Physicians call *Rba*, by the name of the River; and for Distinction sake, *Rba-Pontick*, to difference it from *Rhubarb*, or *Rba Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it; this last being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13. *Ob*, a River unknown to *Ptolemy*, rising out of the Lake of *Kitay*, a Lake in bigness like the Sea, and full of many little Islands (most of them

inhabited.) Which River at its first parting from this Lake, is said to be of 8 miles breadth; and growing still bigger and bigger, emptieth it self at last in the *Northern Ocean*: the present boundary betwixt the *Russian*, and the People in the North of this Country. The *Rufs* say this River is 80 *Versts* or *Russia* Miles over, a great distance from the Sea: *Hackluit*. Tom. 1. pag. 593. If this is true (for I much suspect it, none of our People having ever seen it) then it is the greatest River by far in the World, which is not at all probable. It is now accounted the North Eastern boundary of *Europe* and *Asia*, and is certainly the boundary between the *Rufs* and the *Great Cham* of *Tartary*, whose Dominions reach from hence to the *Chinian* Ocean in the East, including all the Countries in that space, with *China* it self.

Principal Mountains of this part, 1. *Corax*, giving name unto the River issuing out of it. 2. *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Montes Ceramici*, lying in the furthest parts hereof (then known to my Author) to the North and East. 4. *Caucasus*, or *Caucijii Montes*, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caspian* Seas; and parting *Sarmatia Asiatica* from *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*; A chain of Hills of which *Aristotle* saith, *Acumine & latitudine omnium maximi*, &c. that for height and breadth they are the greatest of the East; the tops whereof are lightned by the Sun beams in midnight till almost day-break, when it is dark night in the valleys beneath. Not passable for horse or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* shore) but at one place only, called *Sarmaticæ Pyle*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucasice Portæ*, from the Hills adjoyning. Situate in the 81 degree of *Latitude*; and not far from the *Caspian* Sea: but that so intricate and narrow, that very small force may keep it against strong Armies. *Riphei Montes*, on the West between *Russia*, and the *Samoyeds*, now call'd *Petzora*, and by the *Rufs* call'd *Zienmoipoias*, that is, the Girdle of the World. The tops of it are always naked, and covered with Snow; yet on the sides grow Cedar Trees, and it affords the blackest Sables in the World. These are the *Hyperborean* Mountains so celebrated of old. So high they are, that some *Rufs* spent seventeen days in ascending it, and yet never gained the top; so that they that go to the Province of *Petzora* beyond it, go by *Ustiga*, *Dwina*, and *Permia*, 250 *Polish* Miles about. *Guagninus*. They stretch from North to South, a vast length. So carefully did Almighty God in his Heavenly Providence, shut up this fierce and barbarous People, from the rest of Mankind, by such unfordable Waters, and unpassable Mountains: not to be freed out of this Prison, till he thought good to use them, as the Executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the punishment of sinful and impenitent Nations. This said, we will consider those particular Nations, which before we named, and are now possessed of it in their several places.

1. Opposite to the *Preopenses* lie the *CIRCASSIANS*, extended from the *Cimmerian Bosphorus* and the Fens of *Maotis*, towards the Eastern shores of the *Euxine* Sea for the space of 500 miles; and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name imposed on them by the *Tartars*, whereas, before they were called by *Phry*, *Zigæ*, by some Writers, *Zichy*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Ptolemy*.

The Country is very fitly seated for Trade and Merchandise, as having a fair and large Sea-coast, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of those spoken of before, passing thorow these Tracts:) and not a few capacious Bays, and commodious Havens. Of which the principal were *Sinus Cerceticus*, or the Bay of *Cercetis*, *Syncla*, and *Bata*, two known Havens, and specified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. *Ptolemy*, Lib. 9. Cap. 1. But these conveniences not much looked after by the present Inhabitants, who are more inclined to the Wars, than to Trades, or *Merchandize*. A Stout and Military People, trained to their Weapons from their Childhood, and sold as soon as trained to it by unnatural Parents. For from these parts did the *Mamelucks* of *Agypt* fetch their first

first *Original*; and from hence supply themselves with a perpetual *Seminary* of Slaves and Souldiers, raised by degrees unto the highest dignities of that slavish Empire; And from these parts the *Persian Sophies* are supplied with their *Cozzel-Bassas*, disciplined and instructed by them like the *Turkish Janizaries*.

The *Christian Faith* was here planted in the year 860 or thereabouts, by the Ministry of *Cyrill* (or *Chiuril*) and *Metbodius*; employed in that service by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. In which respect their Churches are of the *Greek Communion*, conforming thereto in Rites and Doctrine, and of the jurisdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters *practical*. For it is ordinary with these half *Christians*, not to baptize their Children till eight years old; to hear divine Service standing without their Churches, into which they very seldom enter (especially the Gentlemen) till the fortieth, or (as some say) the sixtieth year of their age: dividing the whole course of their life betwixt *God* and the *Devil*, in dedicating their youth unto Theft and Robbery, their old age (when they can no longer commit those villanies) to the difficult business of repentance. *Tavernier*, a *French Gentleman*, gives a large account of the Country, Manners and Religion of this barbarous Nation: The Country, saith he, is pleasant, and full of variety; abounding in Springs and Rivers, yet it hath no Fish. It has delicate Flowers, Strawberryes, and a vast plenty of Tree-fruits, easily produced: Cattle in abundance, and Race-horses; Goats, and Sheep, whose wool is equal to that of *Spain*, which they sell to the *Russ*. They have no Corn but Barly, and Millet; but they have Venison and Fowl in vast plenty. They are very Thievish, preying in the Night one upon another, and are neither Christians nor *Mahometans*; all their Religion consisting in certain Ceremonies. There is neither City nor Fort in all their Country, but certain Villages all round, and with a round Piazza in the middle. *Pag.* 128, 129. *Guagninus* gives them the character of a strong and valiant Nation, who trusting to the mountains about them, do easily defend themselves against the incursions of the *Turks*. They have a peculiar Language, profess Christianity after the *Russ* manner, and have their Divine Offices in the *Sclavonian Tongue*. They are great Pyrats upon the *Palus Maotus* and the *Euxine*, to the damage of the *Turks*.

Places of most observation amongst the ancients, 1. *Cimmerium*, a Town and Promontory, so called from the *Cimmerii*, once the chief People of these parts, of whom more anon; situate on the very shore of the *Bosphorus*, from hence denominated. 2. *Phanagoria*, in old times a well traded Empory; situate on a little Island raised out of the Sea, by the care and industry of the *Greeks*, who had here a Factory. 3. *Apathurgus*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturum*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus* surnamed *Apaturia* (which name she gave unto this place;) because (saith *Strabo*) when the Giants assaulted her, she craved help of *Hercules*, who slew them all one after another. 4. *Gerusa*, by *Ptolomy* honoured with the title of *Civitas*, the *Gargaza* of *Diodorus*, now called *St. George's*. 5. *Oenuntia*, near the mouth of the River *Thebyris*. 6. *Araza*, more within the Land, which with 7. *Ampfacis*, hath the name of a City also. The names of their chief Havens we have seen before. But few of these, or any other mentioned by the Ancient Authors, being now visible in their ruins: the chief of those which are now extant, are 1. *Locoppa*, 2. *Conioce*; but of no great note. The best description of this Coast is that in *Ptolomy*, it being much more frequented, and better known in his time than in ours. The reason of which is, the *Turks* shutting up the Navigation of the *Euxine*, against all other Nations but their own.

The People anciently, though divided into the several Tribes of the *Thirsagatae*, *Zigae*, *Turcae*, the *Huns*, *Avarae*, and *Maotae*, all noted Nations; besides the *Coaxtræ*, *Zinchi*, *Tyrambae*, *Pselii*, and others as obscure as they, were better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which those several Tribes concentrated. Descended in the right

of that common original, from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, first planted in the Mountainous places of *Albania*: his Posterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themselves in the Mountains called *Cimmerini*. But that Country proving both too barren, and too narrow for them, some of them passed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmeris*, not unknown to *Pliny*, in whose time it was extant: and others in some Tract of Time, keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand, fixed themselves in these parts; here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerion*, to the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*, and generally to all the people descended of them. From these particularly, as the stout and valiant Nation of the *Cimbri*, do derive their Pedegree; so from these and the Children of *Mesoch*, *Magog* and *Tubal*, the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Asia*, the *Moscovites*, and perhaps the *Scythians*, are to fetch their Original: all of them great and puissant Nations, and all involved promiscuously in the name of *Scythians*. Renowned for no other action more than the memorable Expedition, which they made into *Media* in the *Greater*, and *Lydia* in the *Lesser Asia*: the *Cimmerians* by themselves alone, or by them as principal; the rest of these *Sarmatians* in a body together as a *Scythian* People. Distressed with want, or to disburden their small Country of superfluous multitudes, these *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabukassar*, or *Salmanassar*, King of *Assyria*, communicating their design with the rest of the *Scythians*, to enlarge their quarters; holding along the course of the *Euxine* Sea, and passing thorow the Country of *Colchis*, first seized on some parts of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*. Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built; and leaving there their Carriages, and the weakest of their Train with sufficient guards, they marched into *Lydia*, reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they possessed themselves of *Sardis*, the Royal City; and after of the rest of the Country, or the most part of it, *Ardes* the Son of *Giges*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withstand them. Both sides being wearied with long War, and grown more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like case betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halyattes*, the Grand-child of *Ardis*, to compound the business: assigning to the *Cimmerians* all those parts of his Dominions, which lay beyond the River *Halys*; and settling his *Lydians* in the rest. By this transaction there were so good correspondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyaxares* King of the *Medes*, invaded the Country of these *Cimmerians*, under colour of the invasion which the *Scythians* had made in *Media*, *Halyattes* did espouse the quarrel, and appeared in their aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in Marriages and blood, they became one People; or at least passed not under the account of strangers, or the name of *Aliens*. Such end had this most notable expedition of these *Cimmerians*; not much remembered after this, for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many Petty-Princes, but all associated with *Mitridates* against the *Romans*: that King being so great amongst them, that his Son *Archares* having married into some of their Families, was made King of *Bosphorus*. But *Archares* having made his peace with *Lucullus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in succeeding times, till the invasion of the *Tartars*; by whom subdued, they acknowledge at first the great *Cham* for their Sovereign Lord; whose power declining, they have successively been subject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, and *Muscovite*; but most commonly to the *Crim-Tartar*, as their nearest neighbour, and most able to hurt them. And him they furnished on command with 50000 horse for the *Grand Signior's* Service. Yet so that they supply the *Persians* with his *Cozzel-Bassas*, and sometimes serve under him for pay, as they do under any which will entertain them. Governed like the *Swissers*, by their several *Commonalties*: yet so, that every *Commonalty* hath some principal man (which the *Swissers* have not)

not) whom they call *Morseys*, (that is Dukes) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt these and the River *Volga* dwell the *ZAVOLHENSES*, one of the greatest *Hords* or *Tribes* of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called *Horda Magna*. Of these the *Crim*, or *Precopenses* were a *Castling* only; proceeding out of this great Swarm or nest of Hornets, though afterwards they became their Masters. Of the Country or the People, we say nothing here, having sufficiently spoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, situate on the River *Volga*, and from thence so named: *Volgar* and *Bolgar* differing but little in Orthography, and not much in sound.

This Country, as I take it by the situation, should be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether so called in honour of him by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted allegiance: or that he had made any *Conquest* there; or from some other Prince of the same name, I determine not. And in this Tract were those two Pillars, advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Ptolomy* called *Columnæ Alexandri*, in whose time they stood without defacement: there being *Altars* erected to him, or in memory of him, near the Banks of *Tanais*, occurring in the same Author by the name of *Aræ Alexandri*. Which probably occasioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander* in pursuit of the *Scythian* Wars, as far as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the course of his Actions, that he never got beyond the River *Taxartes*; distant from *Tanais* no less than 2000 miles.

This Tribe first governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, or the *Great Cham*, was in the year 1506 subdued by the *Crim-Tartar*, and made subject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Basilus* the great Duke of *Moscovy*, who thereupon assumed the Title of King of *Bolgar*: which his Successors still preserve, with the Town it self: well garrisoned to keep open the whole course of the River *Volga*, by which they manage the great Trade of the *Caspian* Sea. But for the main body of this people they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a Limb of the same body with him; and are subject unto his Commands: though by reason of their neighbourhood to the *Moscovite*, and commerce with that Nation, they frame themselves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. East of the *Zavolhenses*, on the other side of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NAGAIANS*, spreading as far the borders of *Zagathay*, and declining Southward towards the *Caspian* Sea, and the *Montes Hippici*: Accompted the best men of war of all the *Tartars*, but more fierce and cruel than the rest; void of all Arts, not having, or contemning Money, or the use of Corn. *Horse-flesh* and *Mares-milk* their best diet: the flesh either roasted by the Sun, or heated by continual hanging at the Saddle-bow. And with such cheer (nor worse nor better) did *Azim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinson* and other *English* men in their travels to the *Caspian*, from the River *Volga*. This Mr. *Jenkinson* lived in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*; And this and all his other more remarkable Voyages are in Mr. *Hackluit's* 1. Vol. of *English Travels*. Their chief Town, if possibly it deserve that name, is called *Scharayirzick*, the Residence of one of their Princes; and the next, *Sellisture*, where the said *Jenkinson* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by several *Morseys*, the Heads or *Chiefs*, no doubt, of their several *Clans*: agreeing well enough together against the *Moscovite*; whom they infest with frequent inrodes, and put him to the charge of continual Garrisons, at *Casan*, *Astrachan*, and *Viarka*. Their Wars for the most part only *Prædatory*, rather to get some present booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their Dominion; and therefore commonly pacified, and sent home with Presents. The *Great Duke* is so good a Statesman, as to think the expense of Money cheaper than that of Blood; especially when he hath to deal with such an Enemy, who hath neither any

Town of consequence, or fixt place of dwelling, and consequently nothing to be got but blows. Their *Morseys*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he of *Scharayirzick* was the chief: to whose direction and appointment (especially in matters which concerned the publick) the other two do commonly submit themselves.

4. Betwixt the *Nagaians*, and the *Circassians*, lie those Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSI*, spreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*; but intermixt with the *Heslites*, and *Baschurides*, two other of the *Tartarian* Tribes, but of less power. Their life, for the most part in continual motion, removing with their Wives and Families from one place to another; and governing themselves in their removes, by the sight of the *Pole-star*. Partly *Mahometan*, partly *Gentile*; but the *Gentiles* make the greater number; not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a Tree, though they stink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or sweetened, before they return back to the same Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Priests*, by whom sanctified and besprinkled in their publick meeting, with a certain mixture compounded of Blood, Milk, Earth, and Cow-dung, a most sweet Confection, but good enough for them that desire no better. And yet with these the *Moscovite* is fain to hold fair compliance, and to send them every year some Presents for fear they should joyn with the *Nagaians*: or otherwise disturb him in his *Caspian* Trade down the River *Volga*.

5. The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS* lie more North than any of these *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolhenses*, and the Territory of *Viarka* in the Empire of *Russia*. A Warlike People, and living near a dangerous neighbour; for which cause they do not straggle so abroad in petit companies as the others do, but keep together in great bodies: For the most part much delighted in *Negromancy*, and *Conjurations*. In which the Devil so befools them, that he suffereth them to raise Tempests; and sometimes, by *Diabolical* illusions, to defeat their Enemies. The only *Hord* of all *Deserta*, which still continue in obedience to their natural Lord, the *Great Cham* of *Cathay* (if such *Cham* there be.) And unto these we may adjoyn the *Molgomozens*, all *Gentiles*, and the most barbarous of all: living in Caves, and feeding upon Worms, and Mice, and Serpents, and such other vermine as would be poyson unto any but such *Molgomozens*, who are more poysonous than those Creatures.

These *Hords*, together with the Kingdoms of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, and such of the *Russian* Provinces as lie on the East of *Tanais*, and the River of *Duina*, make up that Country which anciently passed under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: inhabited originally by the Descendants of *Gomer*, *Mesech*, *Tubal*, *Magog*, the Sons of *Japhet*, spreading themselves more Northwards as they grew in numbers out of *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colchis*, and the *Pontick*, or *Cimerian* Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the *Olandæ*, *Gerri*, *Samocolebi*, *Socani*, *Seci*, *Scimnira*, *Agarita*, *Merdi*, *Canapseni*, *Chanides*, *Basilici*, *Hyperborei*, *Hippophagi*, and others of as little note: these last so called from their eating of Horses, which diet they have left unto their Successors. So like in manners and conditions, to the neighbouring *Scythians*, that they passed commonly by that name; and by that name are memorable for the great expedition by them made into *Asia* the *Greater*, at such time as the *Cimmerians* fell into *Asia Minor*. For passing without opposition thorow the *Sarmatian Streights*, where they might have been easily kept out; and leaving behind them the more barren Country of *Albania*, they fell into *Media*: where they were encountered (but victorious) by *Phraartes*, then King of the *Medes*: Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, assayed it by cunning; and first perswaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countries, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon

upon, full of Prey and Presents, they marched towards *Egypt*, but were met in *Syria* by *Psammiticus* the *Egyptian* King, who heard of their coming; and thought it best to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his great cost. Outvying the *Median* (as of the two the richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treasures, and so sent them back again into *Media*, from whence they came: where for many years they afflicted that People and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their Tributes, and using all kind of Insolences: till in the end, *Cyaxares*, the Son and Successor of *Phraartes*, acquainting some of his most faithful Subjects with his design, caused the better part of them to be plentifully feasted, made them drunk, and slew them; recovering thereby the possession of his whole Estate. Afterwards imitated by the *English* in their *Hock-Tide* slaughter. Such of them as escaped this blow, and were not willing to be subject to the Kings of *Media*, (as many of them were) were suffered to return home by the same way they came; where at their coming, they found foul work made by their Wives and their Slaves, the story whereof we had when we were in *Russia*. After this we hear nothing of them in the stories of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, unless those *Amazons*, who attended their Queen *Thalestris*, when she bestowed a visit on *Alexander*, were rather of these *Sarmatian Amazons*, than of those of *Pontus* and *Thermodon*, as I think they were: the nearness of their dwelling to *Hircania*, in which place they found them, inducing me to this opinion. But possible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that some of these *Sarmatian* Tribes, though by other names, hearing of the successes of the *Huns*, *Avars*, and other barbarous Nations, which made havock of the *Roman* Empire, might joyn themselves unto them, and make up their numbers: those Nations being else too small to compound such Armies, as by them were brought into the field against the *Romans*, without such like helps. What their Estate had been, since subdued by the *Tartars*, hath been shewn already.

3. ZAGATHAY.

ZAGATHAY is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imaus*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythick*, or *Frozen Ocean*; on the West, with *Tartaria Deserta*, from which separated by the River *Soane*, and the Lake of *Kitay*; and on the South, with the *Caspian* Sea, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Persia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the Great *Chams*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; the *Scythia intra montem Imaum* of the ancient Writers.

The Country spreading out so far, on all sides, as before appeareth, comprehendeth all those Provinces and tracts of ground, which anciently were called, 1. The Country of the *Sacæ*, 2. *Sogdiana*, with 3. *Zagathay*, specially so called, and 4. *Turchestan*, included anciently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and 5. the *Terra Incognita*, which *Ptolemy* makes to be the Northern boundary of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a survey of all which Particulars, we shall find the temper of the whole.

1. *SACÆ*, or the Country of the *Sacans*, is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imaus*; on the West, with *Sogdiana*; on the North with *Zagathay*, properly and specially so called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Sacæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not.

The Country anciently either barren, or ill manured; full of vast Forests, wide Deserts, and the like uninhabitable places, few or no Cities in it, and not many Villages (*Civitates autem non habent* as my Author hath it, *Ptol. lib. 6. c. 13.*) the People living most part in Caves, or otherwise wandring up and down with their droves of Cattel; called for that reason *Nomades* by some ancient

Writers. The name not proper to these only, but common to all those who followed the like roving life, as the *Sarmatians*, wild *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Lydia* and *Numidia* in *Africa*. Only one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (*λίθινος πύργος*, in the *Greek*) or the Castle of Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the most part by *Camels*, or travelling only with those Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was anciently into many Tribes, the *Cavata*, and *Comari*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Majigetæ*, and *Gomedæ*, near the hills called *Ascatanus*; the *Bylæ*, and *Grynæi*, more within the Country. All joyned in one by the name of *Sacæ*; and by that name made a very fortunate Progress into *Armenia* (to which they had an easie passage by the Northern Banks of the *Caspian* Sea) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacafena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there slain by the *Persians* in the midst of their Feastings, they left there also some resemblance of their name, in an annual Festival called *Sacæ*; celebrated by the *Persians*, in memorial of their good success in the War against them. Such as staid here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch, did so good service to that Prince, that *Amorges* the King of these *Sacæ*, is said to have rescued him from the hands of the *Scythians*, by whom otherwise he had been slain, or taken Prisoner. In the declining of that Kingdom, they were subdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian* and *Sogdian* Wars; who hereabouts, by *Cobortanes* a noble *Persian*, was presented with a Bevy of Beautiful Ladies; one of the which was that *Barsine*, whom he made his Wife, and had by her that *Hercules*, whom *Polysperchon* and his Faction proclaimed King of *Macedon*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or suffered; as they have been made by the opinion or mistake of others, who building Castles in the Air, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Ancestors) from this Original: as if they were called *Saxons*, quasi *Sacæ* Jones, or the Sons of the *Sacæ*. A fancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of these *Sacæ*, when they left these parts, must be great, or little. If little how can we conceive it possible, they should force their way through those valiant Nations of both *Sarmatia's*, who to the last maintained their Liberties and Estate against the *Romans*? If great enough to force their passage (for stout and provident Nations use not to give passage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it possible they should be shut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albis* and the *Cimbrick Chersonese*? The *Saxons* then, whatsoever they were, were no Sons of the *Sacæ*; and what in likelihood they were, hath been elsewhere shewn.

2. *SOGDIANA* hath on the East, the *Sacæ*; on the North and West, *Zagathay* specially so called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdii*, being the chief of all this Country, though of themselves a spur or branch of the Mountain *Caucasus*.

The Country indifferently fruitful, and very rich in Pasturage, because very well watered. For besides *Oxus*, and *Jaxartes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The Principal of which, 1. *Dymus*, and 2. *Araxates* both navigable, and capable of very good Ships; both also running down the hills with a headlong course, and passing through the Champion Country, empty themselves at last in the Lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*, but as *Ptolemy* saith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of most consideration are. 1. *Drepfa*, the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of this People. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus* *Darapsa*, situate on the River *Oxus*. 2. *Oxiana*, on the same River, and from thence denominated. 3. *Maruca*, on the same River also. 4. *Alexandria*, called for distinction sake, *Alexandria Oxiana*, which name declareth both the founder and the situation.

E e e e

5. Alex

5. *Alexandria*, for the same cause of distinction, named *Alexandria ultima*: either because the last City which he built in these parts: or because it lay furthest off on the borders of the *Scythians*, against whose invasions or irruption it was said to be built. 6. *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Cyresebita*, more memorable, and not less ancient than any of these named before, by *Qu. Curtius* called *Cyropolis*, built by *Cyrus* to fortifie his borders against the *Scythians*. It held out against the great *Macedonian*, a long time; and he himself coming nigher to the Walls than discretion would permit an ordinary General, had such a blow on the neck with a Stone, that he fell to the ground, his Eyes swimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for slain: but reviving he took the Town by a Mine, and level'd it with the ground, in revenge of so great a danger.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxydraca*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* Mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Cherosmii*, near the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jessii*, and *Tachri*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepstani* in the East parts bordering on the *Sacæ*; whose chief City was *Drepfa*: descended from their several roots but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own person, as before was said; at the solicitation of *Spitamenes* a noble *Persian*, it rebell'd again. Who being suppressed, and the Country in some measure quieted, *Arimazes*, a Native of the Province, renewed the War. Who followed with 30000 men, encamped upon the top of an hill, in a place of such notable advantage, that *Alexander*, neither by force nor fair words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 3000 of his youngest and most active men, on the promise of great reward, to climb the hill; and without any noise to shew themselves at the back of the Enemy: Which having performed with the loss of 30 of their company, *Alexander* sent one *Cophes* to *Arimazes*; to let him know that the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back; who terrified with what he saw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was scourged and crucified for his labour. So necessary in the Art of warfare is a piece of wit. After this time, it ran the same alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Persians* did, till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom still subject.

3. *ZAGATHIA* specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Cathay*; on the West, with the Kingdom of *Astracan*, and part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the North, with the Country of the *Samoyeds*, the *Terra Incognita* of the ancients; on the South, with the *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*. Anciently part of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the first Prince hereof since the time of the *Tartars*.

These *Tartars* are planted by *Hondius* on the North of the *Caspian* Sea, on the West of *Turkestan*. It is probable this whole description of the *Asiatick Tartary* is taken from *Paulus Venetus*, whose Itinerary I have not seen, but it is certain it will not agree with the present state, or divisions of these Nations. *Hondius* placeth here the *Kalmuchi Tartars*, which signifieth *unshaven*. Nothing is more usual than for these wandering Nations to change their seats.

The Country reasonably fruitful, but not so rich in the natural temper of the soyl, as the industriousness of the People, more civil far than any other of the *Tartars*, studious of good Letters, lovers of Arts, as well ingenious as *Mechanick*; well skill'd in *Manufactures*, and very seldom without the confluence of Foreign Merchants. Populous, and well stored with Towns and Villages; both for their own more handsome dwelling and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Jaxartes*, now called *Chesel*, the principal of all this Country; great of it self, but made much greater by the waters of, 2. *Daix*, another River of good note, rising out of the Mountain called *Norofus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with

those streams they are dischannelled in the *Caspian* Sea: 3. *Jartus*, 4. *Polytimetas*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are whose names I find not in my Authors, descending from the Mountains of this Northern Region, which are great and many: As viz. 1. *Norofus*, spoken of before. 2. *Aspisi*, on the North of that. 3. *Toporus*, more unto the North. 4. The Mountains called *Sychi*, more Northward still. 5. Those called *Anarai*, besides 6. *Imaus*, of most name, but common unto *Cathay*, as well as to *Zagathay*, and there we shall hear further of it.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Aspabota*, the only Town ascribed by *Ptolomy* to this Country, and by him honoured with the title of *Civitas*. 2. *Zabaspia*, of less antiquity, but of greater estimation at the present time, situate on the mouth of the River *Oxus* (now called *Abias*) on the brink of the *Caspian*; and much frequented by the Merchants of foreign Countries, chiefly from *India* and *Cathay*. 3. *Marachanda*, *Samarchand*, ancient, and of fame, but placed by *Ptolomy* (why I know not) amongst the Cities of *Bactria*: differing herein from the common and received opinion of other Authors, by whom this City is affirmed to be on the North side of *Oxus*, and consequently not within that Province. Made good by *Spitamenes*, (who having delivered the Traitor *Bessus* into the hands of *Alexander*, revolted from him) against the *Macedonian* Army; by which besieged under the command of *Menedemus*. But *Menedemus* being slain, with some of his Souldiers, *Spitamenes* escaped hence to *Bactria*, where he was slain by his own Wife, and his head presented to the Conquerour. Here was it also that *Alexander*, being then Master of the Town, in a drunken fit slew his dear friend *Clitus*; who at the battle of *Granicus* had saved his life, by receiving a blow which was aimed at him. It was afterwards called *Samarchand*, the Seat-Royal of *Tamerlane*, by whom enriched with all the spoils and treasures he got in the Wars; there being brought hither from *Damascus* only (and by that one instance we may guess at the rest) 8000 Camels laden with the choicest movables. Still the chief Residence of the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, but far short of that magnificence which once it held. 4. *Bichend*, of no Antiquity, nor of such great name as the Regal *Samarchand*, but at this time of greater wealth: situate somewhat in the midland, but populous, and a well-traded Town. 5. *Azara*, memorable for being made the *Rendezvous* of that mighty Army, which *Tamerlane* raised against the *Turks*, consisting in the total of 1200000 fighting men when it was at the biggest. *Maranus*, from which place the said *Tamerlane*, having received his aids from *China*, began his march.

These *Tartars*, called *Zagathayans*, by the name of their Country, are of a different government from that of the Great *Cham* of *Cathay*, though subject to him at the first, and have so been ever since the time of *Zaicham* or *Batbu*, the third great *Cham*; who gave it unto *Zagathay*, a younger Son, whence it had the name. To *Zagathay* succeeded *Og*, by some called *Zain Cham*; (the Father of *Tamerlane*) a peaceable and quiet Prince, who rather studied to preserve than enlarge his Empire. But *Tamerlane* being of a fierce and more warlike nature, made the first proof of his valour and good fortune against the *Moscovite* (for spoiling a City which had put itself under his protection) whom he overthrew with the slaughter of 25000 Foot, and 15000 of his Horse. Moved with this notable exploit, and the hopes of greater, *Gino Cham*, the Great Emperour of the *Tartars* gave him to Wife his only Daughter, and therewithal declared him his Heir apparent. Encouraged and enabled with this advancement, he first brake down the Wall of *China*, encountred with the King thereof, overcame him in battle, and imposed on him the sum of 300000 Crowns of yearly Tribute. Having left things quiet at his back, and taking with him a great part of the Forces of *China*, he advanced forwards against *Bajazet*, the fourth King of the *Turks*; of the greatness of whose growing Empire he began to be jealous. Passing along the left hand shores

shores of the *Caspian Sea*, and so through *Albania*, and the rest of the Provinces which lay in his way (which he took and conquered as he went) he came at last into *Asia Minor*, where near the City of *Sebastia*, he encountered with *Bajacet*, vanquished him, slew 200000 of his men, and carried him away Captive in an Iron Cage; Restored those Princes dispossessed by *Bajacet* unto their Estates, and taking to himself all the *Turkish* Provinces in *Anatolia*, he bestowed a private visit on *Constantinople*; which seen, he marched towards *Syria*, subdued both that Province and the Kingdom of *Egypt*, then possessed by the *Mamelucks*; visited *Hierusalem*, and did honour to the *Holy Sepulchre*; returned by *Babylon*, and won it. and with it the whole Countries of *Babylonia* and *Affyria*. And taking *Persia* in his way impatronized himself of that Kingdom also; and such Parts of *India*, as either lay near *Persia*, or his own Dominions; now made the *Sovereign Lord* of all the Regions and Kingdoms in both *Asia's*, excepting *India*; for which the rich Kingdom of *Egypt*, may be put in balance. Come home at last to *Samarchand*, he there died in peace. A Prince of strong body, but lovely lineaments, his eyes bearing in them such rayes of Majesty, that ordinary men could scarce endure to look upon them. His Hair long, contrary to the custom of the *Mahometans*, (for the most part shaven on their heads) for which he pretended a descent from *Sampson*. Perfect in the *Arabian Learning*, and a lover of all Learned men, a hater of *Idols*, and *Polytheism*, and a great friend to the *Christians*. More fortunate in the conquering of so many Kingdoms, than in laying any sure foundation to maintain his conquest. For by holding his Seat-Royal in *Samarchand*, *Cambalu*, and others the chief Cities of *Cathay*, he gave the remote Provinces the opportunity of returning to their former Governours; and by parcelling his Estates amongst his Children, and Kindred, this mighty flood which had so quickly overflowed both *Asia's*, returned in very little time within its own proper and original banks. Even *Zagathay* it self divided from the Empire of *Cathay*, had its King apart (hardly acknowledging the great *Cham* for the Lord in chief) the most considerable of whom was that *Saba*, who in the new beginnings and unsettledness of the *Sophian* Empire, invaded *Persia*; but instead of recovering that Kingdom into the Power of the *Tartars*, he lost some Provinces of his own: *Hyrkania*, *Margiana*, and some part of *Bactria*, being since subdued by *Abas* the late *Sultan*. Nothing since memorable, that I meet with, in the affairs of this part of the Empire of *Tartary*. The great *Moguls* or Kings of *Indostan* in the *East Indies*, derive themselves from this fortunate Prince *Tamerlane*. I have not been so fortunate as to see any late Traveller, that hath been in these remote parts of *Tartary*.

4. *TURCHESTAN* is bounded on the East with *Zagathay*, specially so called; on the West, with the River *Zoane*, parting it from *Deserta*; on the North, with those desarts which *Ptolomy* blindeth under the name of *Terra incognita*; and on the South, with the *Caspian Sea*. So called from the *Turks*; some of which people when they left their first Seats near the Fens of *Maotis*, settled in this Country, and here still continue. This position is impossible, according to the present state of the *Tartars*, *Hondius* placeth it on the South of *Zagathay*, having *Sogdiana* to the West, *Imaus* to the East, and *Tagalistan* to the South; *Baudrand* placeth *Indostan* on the South, and saith it is now called the Kingdom of *Thibet*, or *Tobat*, but withal adds, that most of the modern Geographers are of opinion, that there is no such Province as *Turchestan*, to be sure there is none such on the North of the *Caspian Sea*, between *Zagathay* and the Kingdom of *Astrachan*, which is all of it now possessed by *Nogay Tartars*, as appeareth by all Travellers that way.

The Country as desert and ill planted as the rest of *Tartary*, not so much out of any defect in the soil it self, as in the humour of the people: who though originally *Turks* yet do compose themselves unto the lives of the *Scythian* or *Tartarian Nomades*, neglecting tillage, and abiding in

no place longer than that place affords them pasturage for their Cattel: huge herds of which they keep as their greatest treasure, but more to cloath their backs with the skins, than to fill their bellies with the flesh.

Amongst the Rivers of most note we may reckon, 1. *Rhymnus*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, which by the position of it in the 91 degree of Longitude, seems to be of this Tract. It riseth out of the Mountains called *Montes Rhymnici*, giving name to the River, or taking name from it. 2. *Ardock*, not known by that name amongst the ancients, and whether known at all or not, I am not able to say. Shaping its course towards the North, and weary of so cold a Clime, and such barbarous people, after a long and swift course of a thousand miles, it hideth it self under the ground for five hundred more: but breaking out again, and finding little or no hope of a better fortune, loseth it self for ever in the great Lake of *Kitay*.

To look for Towns amongst a people which delight not in settled Houses, were a labour lost: yet some I find ascribed unto them; the principal, but of no great note, 1. *Calba*, and 2. *Ocerra*. Then there is 3. *Crustiana*, situate on or near the Lake of *Kitay*, never without the Company of *Russian* and *Tartarian* Merchants: the *Russians* sayling to it by the River *Ob*; and the *Zagathayan Tartars* travelling to it by Land. By these two Nations more peopled, to maintain their Traffick, than by the *Turcomans* themselves, in whose Land it standeth.

These *Turcomans* are of the Posterity of some of those *Turcs*, who wanting Room, or otherwise oppressed with want, forsook their ancient dwelling near the Fens of *Maotis*, and the Coasts of the *Euxine Sea*, to seek new seats, Anno 844. That their whole body settled here; and from hence made their conquest of *Persia*, as some very industrious men are of opinion, I by no means grant. For when the *Sultan* of *Persia*, having by the means of *Tangrolipix* and those Mercenary *Turks* whom he invited to his aid, obtained the Victory, and thought it fit for his affairs to detain them longer in his Service, it is said he shut up the River *Araxes*, to hinder them from returning to their habitations. The shutting up of which River, and fortifying against them all the passages and bridges of it, had not served his turn, if the *Turks* had come from this place, for then he must have manned against them the River *Oxus*, and such as lay betwixt them and him in the common road. Nor is it probable, that the *Turcomans* dwelling in this Province, on the East side of the River *Volga* would undertake the foarding of that dangerous and violent Water, and force themselves away thorow *Albania* and *Armenia*, with no greater numbers than 3000 men, which was the whole strength that they carried with them. So that it is not to be doubted but that they came first into *Persia* out of *Turcomania*, and not out of *Turchestan*: and probable enough, that when they first left their own abode, and came into the Northwest shores of the *Caspian Sea*, they might there divide themselves. Some of which leaving that Sea on the left hand, and passing thorow the *Sarmatian* or *Albanian* Streights, made their way into *Armenia*, and those parts of *Iberia*, which from them are now called *Turcomania*. The residue keeping that Sea on the right hand, and crossing the *Volga*, where they found the passage most easie for them, settled themselves in these parts of *Scythia* which they found less peopled, now from them named *Turchestan*. Some of which hearing of the good success of their Country-men in the Conquest of *Persia*, might afterward joyn with them to assure that purchase. Governed since their first coming hither, by the Chiefs of their several Clans, whom they honour with the title of *Chams*; but all of them Tributaries and Vassals of the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

5. That part of the Kingdom of *Zagathay*, which anciently passed under the name of *TERRA INCOGNITA*, and was accounted the Northern limit of *Scythia intra Imaum*, hath on the South *Turchestan*, and part of *Zagathay*, strictly and specially so called: extending Northwards to the *Scythick* or *Frozen Ocean*, and bounded on the West with the River *Ob*, on the East with *Imaus*.

The Inhabitants of this Northern Tract are now called by the name of *Samoyeds*; neither the people nor the Country known to the ancient *Romans*: and indeed neither of them worth the knowing. The men black-haired, naturally *Beardless*, and not to be discerned from women, but that the women wear a long lock down to their ears. Clad from the head to the feet in *Deer-skins*, or *Seil-skins*, with the hairy side outwards; (nothing more wise in that than the other *Tartars*.) Their kind of life more rude than theirs, if more rude may be, ranging from place to place, without any propriety of house or dwelling; the leader of each company their Priest, whom they call their *Popa*, who at every one of their removes is to offer Sacrifice. *Idolaters* they are all, and most of them *Witches*; especially such as live most towards the East, and furthest off from the *Muscovite*, who many times destroy their Idols, and rob them of the skins of *Bevers*, black *Foxes* and *Sables*, wherewith these Idols are set forth to the publick view: but bestow on them greater heats in a good Fire, into which they commonly use to cast them. The *Samoyeds* or *Self-eaters*, are not bounded on the West by the River *Ob*, but extend to the *Riphaean* Mountains, and beyond them to the River *Pet-zora*. The Provinces of *Obdora* and *Siberia* in *Russia* being part of their Country, as appeareth by *Burrows*, who met with them on the East of *Nova Zembla* in 1556. The *Dutch* in 1595. *Hackluit*. Tom. 1. pag. 279. *Olearius* his Travels. All that part of their Country that lieth on the West of the River *Ob*, is subject to the *Russ*, and Christianity was began to be settled here in 1618, *Guagninus*. That part on the East is subject to the King of *China*. The *Samoyeds* are by the Climate they live under, forced to a different way of living from that of the other *Tartars*, for they do not live a roving kind of Life, but dig Vaults in the Sides of the Hills, in which they live all the Winter, with passages from one Vault to another for their mutual Comfort and Assistance; each of which habitations hath an hole in the top which lets out the Smoke, and lets in the Air: for as for light they have none, but that of the Moon. This vast Country became Subject to the *Russ*, by the means of the *Zaporoge Cossaks* that inhabited beyond the *Boristhenes*, for they having been subdued by the *Russ*, and not being willing to live under their Conquerors, went to *Casan*, and from thence to *Irtis*, a River which falls into the *Zobol*, in which place they built a City, and called it *Zobol*, and extended their Dominions to the River *Ob*, which is properly called *Siberia*, which in the *Sclavonian* Language signifieth the North; yet the few Commodities they have for the subsistence of life, and the necessity of vending their *Sable Martins*, obliged them to submit afterwards to the *Russ*, who have since filled, civilized, and assured these Provinces, by sending thither their Malefactors of State, and also the Officers of the Army, and the *Boyars* who have not behaved themselves well. The *Zaporoge Cossaks* have since, by their Hunting after *Sables*, discovered beyond the *Ob* the River *Szilka*, which has a great City called *Nero-zinki*, 2. *Argus*, that falls into the River *Yamour*, beyond this to the South East, (as I understand it) lies the Lake *Dalay*, one Weeks journey beyond *Nero-zinki*, and there you meet with the Subjects of the King of *China*, who have manured all the Lands about that Lake. Out of this Lake springeth the second River, which is fairer and Navigable to the *Yamour*. *Father Avril's Travels into China*. Upon the *Yamour* is a Fort built by the *Russ* lately, and called *Albazin*, three Weeks journey from *Pekin*, and three Months from *Moscom*, which occasioned a War between the *Russ* and the King of *China*, each claiming the *Pearls* in the River, and the Hunting the *Martins* on the Land. This caused the sending frequent Embassies to *China*, by which the *Russ* have much more discovered the passages to *China* by Land, than otherwise they could have done, and opened a Trade between these Nations. The first of these Ambassadors, was *Knez Theodore Jacowitz*, who went from *Zobolks* to *Pekin* in 1653.

These *Zagathayan* Provinces, with those of *Margiana*, and *Bactria*, before described, made that part of *Scythia*, which anciently was called *Scythia intra montem Imaum*: though in the time of *Ptolomy*, when *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*, were reckoned of as Provinces of the Kingdom of *Persia*, this *Scythia* was restrained within narrower bounds, and comprehended only *Turchestan* and the *Special Zagathay*, Inhabited, besides the several Nations dwelling in the four *Persian* Provinces, by many fierce and savage Tribes, as the *Alani*, *Alanofsi*, *Saubeni*, and *Massæi*, towards *Terra incognita*; the *Tectofages*, and *Asiotæ*, near the Mountain *Imaus*; the *Jaxartæ* on the banks of the River so called, and the *Mologene*, not far off; the *Zaratæ*, and *Safones*, near the Mountains *Alani*; the *Galaſtophagi*, or Milk-eaters, more towards the East; the *Taporæi*, and the *Sychi*, by the hills so named: and many others not material to be here remembered. All now united under the general name of *Tartars*, by whom first subdued.

And now we are at last come to *Scythia*, truly so named; *Sarmatia Europæa* and *Asiatica* being called so only by way of participation and resemblance; because the Inhabitants thereof had so much in them of the manners and conditions of these natural *Scythians*. Here therefore we intend to speak something of them, their Name, Antiquity, Dispositions, Customs, and the most memorable Actions relating to them, as far as we can go by the light of story.

First, for the name, the *Græcian* Fables have derived it from one *Scythes*, the Son of *Hercules*, begotten by him on a Monster, half Woman, half Viper. The *Grammarians* ἀνδρῶν ὀργιστῶν, signifying to be fierce and angry; whence it is said of the *Jewish Puritans*, who fasted to be seen of men, Σιωπῶντες ἀνδρῶν, that they looked with a sower, severe, and disfigured Countenance. *Geropius Becanus* doth derive it rather from the *Dutch* word *Schutten*, signifying to shoot: agreeable enough to the custom and exercise of the *Scythians*, who are observed by *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Lucian*, and other of the ancient Writers, to be very good Archers. But that the word *Schutten* signifieth the same in the ancient *Scythick*; or that the *High-Dutch* was originally the Tongue of the *Scythians*, will not so easily appear.

Letting that pass therefore as a matter not to be defined, let us look on the Antiquity of these *Scythian* Nations: and we shall find it to be great, if not greatest of all. *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*. That the *Scythians* were of all others, the most ancient people, was received for an Oracle, in the elder ages of the world: and so resolved by way of Verdict, when the great Controverlie touching the Antiquity of those Nations, was to be determined, betwixt the *Egyptian* and the *Scythian*, who contended for it. And this hath passed with such a general approbation, that it is not now to be disputed. In which regard I am so far of the judgment of *Becanus* in that particular, as to conceive that the Countries lying on the North of the Mount *Caucasus* (on which the *Ark* is thought most probably to have rested) were peopled by the Sons of *Noah* before they travelled towards the West, or set themselves on building the Tower of *Babel*. We had else no doubt heard somewhat amongst the Antiquaries, of the settling of some of those *Adventurers* in these Northern Regions; when giving off that enterprise, and falling upon new Plantations, they either went themselves, or sent forth their Colonies into all places of the World. But of any such Plantations, *ne gry quidem*, not one word say they. Nor can it probably be supposed that *Zoroaster*, the King of *Bactria*, could have raised 400000 fighting men out of that one Province (though some of the adjoining Provinces were took into the reckoning) in those early days, in which he did encounter *Ninus* the great *Assyrian*; had the *Bactrians*, and the rest of these *Scythian* Nations, been but a Castling as it were of some second swarm, and not co-æval with the rest. But besides these presumptions we have other proofs: viz. An old and constant tradition on this side the Mountains,

tains, that the greatest Vineyard of *Margiana* was of *Noab's* planting; and, 2. the affirmation of *Portius Cato*, (though one of the Writers of *Frier Annus*) in *Scythia Saga renatum mortale genus*, that mankind was repaired in these parts of *Scythia*, so called from *Sabatius Saga*, an *Armenian* King, whose Dominions did extend thus far. So that I look upon it as a matter of strong presumption, if not demonstrably concludent, that these people were of the first Plantation which was made after the Flood; before the rest of the world was peopled by the Confusion of Languages: *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*, could not else hold good.

As for their dispositions, and natural inclinations, they are said by *Trogus*, or his *Epitomator Justine*, to be *Gens & laboribus & bellis aspera*, "A Nation patient of labours and fierce in War; of bodily strength immense and vast; yet so much Masters of their affections, that they made no further use of their greatest victories than the augmentation of their fame. Theft they esteemed the greatest crime, and that they punished so severely, that their flocks and herds might and did safely wander from one place to another, without fear of stealing. In them they placed their greatest wealth, feeding themselves with the Milk thereof, and making their Rayment of the Skin. Silver and Gold they contemned as much as it was coveted by others; there being no desire of Riches where there was no use. *Meum*, and *Tuum*, those common *Barretours*, and Authors of debate amongst other men, were not known amongst them: and therefore did not care for tillage, or made any inclosures, nor troubled themselves with the care of building. But putting their Wives and Children upon Wains, or Waggon, covered with Hides against the weather, they removed from one place to another, no longer staying upon one than they found grass and herbage to sustain their Cattel. So just in all their actions that they needed not the restraint of Laws; and had attained to such an eminent degree of humane perfection, as not to covet. In a word, that moderation which the *Greeks* endeavoured to attain unto by the help of Learning and Philosophy, was to these so natural, that the ignorance of Vice did as much contribute to their welfare as the knowledge of Virtue. Such are the ancient *Scythians* affirmed to be. And being such, it was a wonder that the great Monarchs of the world, who had wealth at will, should make war upon them; amongst whom there was nothing to invite an Army, or reward a Conqueror. Yet either on desire of glory, or to add unto the former multitudes over whom he reigned, they were first invaded by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch: who quarreling with *Tomyris* Queen of the *Massagetes*, a warlike Nation, inhabiting on both sides of the River *Oxus*, discomfited her Army, and slew her Son *Spargapises*, who commanded it. In revenge whereof, the Queen having in a second battel obtained the Victory, and took *Cyrus* prisoner, is said to have cut off his head, and cast it into a bowl of blood, with this scornful taunt, *Satia te sanguine quem sitiisti*, Now drink thy fill of blood, for which thou hast so thirsted. But others tell us otherwise of the success of this fight. By whom it is reported that the Horse of *Cyrus* being disordered on the sight of some Elephants, which came from *India* to her aid, and himself dangerously wounded, the *Scythians* had won the victory but for the coming in of *Amorges* King of the *Sacans*, (who of a conquered enemy was become his confederate:) by whom he was rescued, and by the 20000 fresh men which he brought with him, obtained the honour of the day, though long he lived not to enjoy it, dying not long after of the wounds he had received. With *Alexander* they are said to begin the War, as loath to be behind-hand with him; arming themselves upon the building of *Alexandria ultima*, so near their borders, which they conceived rather intended for a curb to hold them down, than for a bridle to keep them in. But being repulsed, and wise enough to suffer what they could not hinder, they sued for peace, and had it granted; *A-*

lexander being called away by the revolt of the *Bactrians*: a matter of more consequence than these *Scythian* brables. With *Alexander's* Successors they had nothing to do, nor with the *Persian* Kings of the *Parthian* Race; the *Parthians* being their Allies, and of *Scythian* breed. And for the *Romans*, it is well observed by the *Historian*, *Romanorum arma audire magis quam sentire*, that they had heard much of their valour, but never felt it. Remaining undisturbed in their honest poverty, till the *Tartars*, an obscure and beggarly people brake out of their Prison, and carried the whole World before them.

As for their Kings, I find some of their names laid down, but without any note of time in which their reigns might be supposed to begin or end. Nor can I think that the Kings occurring in that Catalogue, did either reign in the same place, or over the same Nations; or that they succeeded one another. Howsoever we will take their names as they come before us, in this list of

The Kings of *Scythia*.

- 1 *Scythes*.
- 2 *Napis*.
- 3 *Phitra*.
- 4 *Sagillus*.
- 5 *Targitana*.
- 6 *Plinus*.
- 7 *Scholypethus*.
- 8 *Panaxagora*.
- 9 *Tanais*.
- 10 *Indathyrfus*.
- 11 *Saulius*.
- 12 *Spargapises*.
- 13 *Tomyris*.
- 14 *Aripethes*.
- 15 *Seiles*.
- 16 *Ostimafdes*.

17 *Lanthinus*, the last of all those *Scythian* Kings who are conceived to have the Government of these warlike Nations. But for my part I dare not say that ever any one King did command the whole people generally; each Tribe or Nation having their particular Kings, as in other places not reduced into form and order. And therefore for those Kings, if such Kings there were, (as for some of them I durst venture to swear the contrary) they must be such as in their several Countries were of greatest fame, most taken notice of in the world, or employed in the conduct of their joyned and united forces; and so conceived to be the Kings of the whole *Scythian* Nation: as *Cassibelane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, and perhaps not that, is by some Writers said to be the King of the *Brittains*; because he had the conduct of their forces against *Julius Caesar*.

4. CATHAY.

CATHAY is bounded on the West with *Zagathay*, from which parted by the Mountain *Imaus*; on the East with the *Oriental* Sea, and some part of *China*; on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*; and on the South with part of *India*. So called from the proper or special *Cathay*, the principal Province of the whole, the other parts into which it is commonly divided being 2 *Altay*, the Countries of the *Eastern Tartars*.

In probability this part of *Tartary* hath no boundary to the North, but the Frozen Sea, except it be to the North East, which is utterly unknown, but said by the *Tartars* to be separated by the Sea from all other Lands. The *Russ* affirm, that *Nova Zembla* is the most northern Cape of *Tartary*, and that from thence the Coast on the East side tends towards the South. The *Chinians* also in their Maps say, that from their Wall to the Sea is but fourteen days Journey. The Country of the *Samoyeds* testifie the same thing, for the farther they travel towards the East, the more warm and temperate they find the Air, which is a sign the Sea is not far from them. And

And besides, the *Russ* have observed there are great Rivers, large Cities, and plenty of all things pertaining to the life of man; which is not possible, if there were great Continents, or spaces of Lands between them and the Sea. *Vossius de navigatione ad Indos*, pag. 191. This *Nova Zembla* is in probability the *Promontorium Tabinum* of *Pliny* and the Ancients, tho' placed by the Geographers in this part of *Tartary*. The Southern Boundary of this part of *Tartary*, is *China*: and very little of it, if any part bounds on the *East Indies*, or *Indostan*. It will appear hereafter in the account of the Rivers, that to the North East, *Tartary* is washed by the Ocean, which as it comes nearer to *China*, inclines more to the South.

1. *CATHAY*, more properly and especially so called, is bounded on the East, with *China*; on the West, with the Mountain *Imaus*, by which parted from *Zagathay*; on the North, with *Alta*; and on the South, with *India extra Gangem*: So called from the *Chata*, an old *Scythian* people, who having conquered the *Ceres*, and the rest of the neighbouring Nations, gave their own name unto the whole, according to the Custom of victorious people.

This Country is exceeding long, if it be measured by the Scale, and Rules laid down by *Ptolomy*; who placeth *Auzacia*, the most Western Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, in the *Longitude* of 144 degrees, and *Sera* the Metropolis and most Eastern City of *Cerica* in the *Longitude* of 177 degrees and 15 Minutes; as on the other side he placeth *Seta* the most Southern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, in the *Latitude* of 35 degrees, and 20 minutes; and *Damna* the most Northern Town of *Serica* in the *Latitude* of 51 degrees, and 40 minutes. By which accompt, supposing these four Towns to be placed in the very extremities and out-parts of this Country, it must extend from North to South 960 miles and somewhat upwards, and about 1500 miles from East to West in the length thereof; which as it sheweth the dimensions and extent of it to be very great, so it may probably infer that the Country is not in all places of the like fertility; the West parts of it being very mountainous and barren, and consequently not very fruitful, as being overgrown in most places with the spurs and branches of *Imaus*. But in those parts thereof which lie towards the East, it is said to be abounding in Wheat, Rice, Wool, Hemp, Silk and Musk; Great store of that medicinal Root called *Rhubarb*, or *Rha-Barbarum*, to difference it from the *Rha-Pontick*, growing on the banks of *Volga*. They have also very great Herds of *Camels*, of whose hair they make those stuffs which are hence called *Camelets* or *Chamlets*; and such an infinite breed of Horses, as besides those which they reserve for their own use, they furnish the whole Realm of *China* with such multitudes of them, that at one time there were sent no fewer than 80000 for a present to the King of that Realm by the Princes of these Western *Tartars*, as the *Chinois* call them; of which he that writ the Book called *Bellum Tartaricum*, affirmeth himself to have been an eye-witness, and to his credit I refer it, that the great *Cham* feedeth yearly 10000 white Mares, which he keeps for their Milk. Some of their Rivers are reported also to yield *Golden Sands*; but whether it be so or not, certain it is, that it is so well provided of all things both for necessary use, and the pleasures of life, that it is thought to be inferiour to few Countries of *Europe*. The Air indeed not so temperate, as in many places; the Summer-times extremely hot, and in Winter miserably cold: the thunders and lightnings being here so terrible, that in Summer many men die for fear, when they hear it. The winds no less violent than the thunder, do sometimes tear up trees by the roots, and beat men from their horses; but seldom bring with them any storm of rain: the greatest showers which they have hardly wetting the ground.

The people are generally very warlike, strong of body, quick of action, fearless of the greatest dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean stature, little eyes, sharp sight, and thin beards. Industrious they are in se-

veral *Manufactures*; of a good wit for dispatch of business: more honourable than the rest of the *Tartars*, as loving to dress themselves gorgeously, to fair sumptuously (if there be occasion) to live in handsome houses, and to frequent the most populous and best-traded Cities. All which civilities or effeminacies, call them which you will, together with the greatest part of their Arts and Manufactures, they first learned of the *Chinese*, during the time that the *Chinois* lived as Subjects under the great *Cham*, and the Nations had continual intercourse with one another. They account not any for a Wife till she bear them Children, nor till then do they meddle with their Dowries; but repudiate them at a certain time, if they find them barren. They reverence their *Cham*, or Emperour, even to adoration: not suffering any Stranger to come in his presence, except he be first purged: if any otherwise presume, it is present death.

The Religion publickly allowed and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*; but so that they retain the *Pentateuch* of *Moses*, and observe many things therein commanded. It was much laboured by Pope *Innocent*, and King *Lewis* of *France*, that they should receive the *Christian* Faith; and they found some inclinations in the People, and chief Princes to it. But finding by the *Mahometan* Agents, who then laboured to bring them to their Superstition, that *Mahomet* allowed of many Wives, and other things more agreeable to their fleshly lusts, they conformed to that; Yet so, that there are many *Idolaters* in *Cathay* it self (I mean *Cathay* strictly so called) and some *Christians* also; the state of whose affairs we have shewn before.

Chief Rivers of the whole. 1. *Polysanga*, which falling into the Eastern Ocean is navigable up to the City of *Cambalu*, to which it is a means of conveying great store of Merchandise. 2. *Caromoram*, so broad and deep that no bridge can be made over it. 3. *Quiam*, one of the greatest in the world; in length about an hundred days journey; for breadth, in most places six miles, in many eight, and in some ten. 4. *Quiautu*, about half a mile over, and well stored with Fish: of all which we shall speak more fully when we come to *China*. Here are also very many Lakes, both large, and useful; as, 1. the Lake of *Cannichu*, in which are said to be so many Pearls as would make them of no value, if every man might have leave to fish for them; which is therefore interdicted (without special license) upon pain of death. 2. The Lake of *Cararmi*, about an hundred miles in circuit, and so full of fish, as might suffice for all the Country, did they love to eat of it. The Mountains we shall climb over in their several places. Amongst the Rivers belonging now to this Country, the first is, 1. *Genessa*, East of the *Obb*, a great River, but full of *Poroki*, or *Cataracts*, nine of which hinder it from being Navigated. 2. *Lena*, great, but full of Rocks, and not Navigable. 3. *Argus*, a great and navigable River, which falls into, 4. *Yamour*, which is now the contested boundary between *China* and *Russia*. It falls into the Sea of *Japan*; and tho' great, has so many *Sea Bul-Rushes*, (or rather Canes;) as big as a man can grasp with his Arms: and therefore not navigable, as the *Russ* pretend. This proveth that this River is much more to the South, than any of the other three before mentioned; it having less ice, and such great Reeds, which grow not in cold Countries so very great. The most Eastern River of all, is *Chingala*, which has a good pearl Fishery. Whether these are the same Rivers with those mentioned by the Author above, but under other names, or other Rivers, I cannot determine: but this proves that the Coast of *Tartary* turneth to the South beyond *Nova Zembla*, and is not joyned to the Coast of *America*. Father *Aviril's* Travels towards *China*. The River *Lena*, saith *Mouchim Poukim*, *Vayvode* of *Smolensko*, who had lived here, emptieth it self into another, called, 6. *Kawoina*, at the mouth of which, in the Frozen Sea, is a specious well-peopled Island; the Inhabitants of which, he supposeth passed upon the floating Ice into *America*.

Principal Cities of the whole at this present time, under the notion of *Cathay*, are, 1. *Cambalu*, supposed to be

be the *Iffedon Serica* of the ancients, and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans* which made the notable resistance unto *Cingis* the first King of the *Tartars*, in his first attempts upon this Country, of which more anon. Made afterwards, in regard of the pleasantness of the situation and extream fertility of the soyl, the chief Seat of his Empire; and being exceedingly enlarged and beautified, had the name of *Cambalu*, that is to say, the Seat or City of the *Cham*, in the same sense as the chief City of *China* had the name of *Pequin*, signifying in that Language the Court or City of the King. Built of Free-stone, and situate in the midst of the Country, as the heart and center to the rest. It is seated on the River *Polysanga*, honoured with the great *Cham's* residence, and enriched with a mighty confluence of Merchants of all sorts. Besides other Merchandises there are every year 10000 Carts loaded with Silk sent thither from *China*. Affirmed to be in compass 28 miles besides the Suburbs, in which, besides other Inhabitants of all sorts, are said to be 50000 Astrologers or rather Fortune-tellers. 2. *Xaindu* the Royal Palace of the Emperour, of a foursquare figure, every side extending eight miles in length: within this Quadrant is another, whose sides are six miles long, and within that another of four miles square, which is the Palace it self; between those several Walls are Walks, Gardens, Orchards, Fish-ponds, places for all manner of exercise, and Parks, Forests, and Chases for all manner of Game. 3. *Caraio*, where the Women are said to gild their Teeth. 4. *Gonza*, a fair City and a great, adorned with many Idol Monasteries. 5. *Careanfu* near which there groweth an herb called *China-Cathay*, of admirable effect against many Deseases; and so esteemed of by the Natives, that they value an ounce of this at a sack of *Rhubarb*. 6. *Segni*, the residence of a *Nestorian* Bishop.

Having thus took as good a view of the present face of this Country, as the time affords us, we will next look upon it in those integral parts, of which it specially consisteth, comprehending (as before was intimated) those two long and ample Provinces, which the Ancients called, 1. *Serica*, and 2. *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, according to those Bounds and Characters which are given us of them.

1. *SERICA*, hath on the East, some part of *China*; on the South, *India extra Gangem*, and some part of the Country then inhabited by the ancient *Sinæ*; on the North, *Alta*; on the West, *Scythia* beyond the Mountains of *Imaus*. In which I follow not the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, who for want of that knowledge in these remote Countries, which these latter Ages have afforded, is fain to shut it up on the North and East with a *Terra Incognita*. At the present it is called *CATHAY*, and that most probably from the *Chataæ*, a *Scythian* People, who subduing the old Inhabitants, became Masters of it.

But for the name of *Serica*, it was derived originally from *Sera* the chief City of it; whence the people had the name of *Seres*, very industrious in their times, and amongst other things in the making of *Silks*, (made of a fine wooll growing on their leaves of Trees) from hence named *Serica*. Of great esteem amongst the *Romans*, as is said by *Pliny*, *Tam multiplici opere, tam longinquo orbe petitur, ut in publico Matrona transluceat*; being far fetched and dear bought, they were good for Ladies. Nor were they industrious only, but chaste and temperate. The names of Thieves and Whores were not known amongst them. They eat not any unclean flesh, nor used the company of their Wives either after conception, or during their Menstrual Purgations. So moderate of diet, that they lived commonly to the age of 200 years; the quietness and mildness of their disposition helping much thereto. Of yellow hair, watchet or Sea-green eyes, and good composure. Men of few words, but very just in all which they said or did. Governed by a Common Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the use of the State.

If you will take the Characters both of the Country and people from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, he will give it thus. "First of the Country, that it is plentiful and

"large, circled about with a chain of Mountains, the two
"famous Rivers *Oechardes*, and *Banthusis*, with a still
"and flow stream running thorow the middle of the inclosed Plain, speciously stretched out to the sides of the
"precipices: in one place large and open, in another lying
"flat and low with an easie descent; in which regard they
"have abundance of Corn, store of Cattel, and plenty
"of Orchards. The temperature of the Air pleasant
"and wholesome, the constitution of the weather clear
"and pure, the blowing of gentle winds most commodious, and the Woods with a pritty glimmering of
"light, both within and under them: from whence the
"people with much sprinkling of water, softening that
"which the Trees bring forth like a kind of *Fluce*, kemb
"a most fine and tender matter, which they spin into
"Silk, serving in former times for the Nobility and Gentry, now become common to those also of inferior
"rank. Then for the People, he saith, that they are a
"frugal Nation, lovers of quiet, not troublesome unto
"their Neighbours, without the use of Arms, and the
"knowledge of battels, declining the company of Strangers, and so far from covetousness, or curiosities, that
"when any Merchants come unto them to buy their
"Silks, without much beating of the price, they let them
"have such things as are bred amongst them, without
"looking after the Commodities of other Countries. So he. And if he did over-act the *Panegyrist* (as I see no reason why he should) never were people happier in the place of their dwelling, nor Country happier in its people.

Chief Mountains of it (and Mountains they had very many) were 1. the *Montes Casii*, and 2. *Auzacii* towards the East. 3. The *Annibæ*, environing a great part of the Country. 4. The *Asmarai*, 5. and those called *Serici*, near the City *Sera*. 6. *Tagurus*. 7. *Ennodorus*, and 8. *Ottorocorus*: but all of them probably the spurs and branches of the great Mountain *Imaus*; but by what names now called it is hard to say; and no less hard to say how to accommodate the names of the Rivers spoken of before, to those which we find mentioned in the ancient Writers; the principal of which (all flowing out of these great Mountains) are, 1. *Oechardes*, by *Pliny* called *Cambis*, rising out of the *Montes Auzacii*; 2. *Psitara*, issuing out of the *Asmiri*. 3. *Banthus*, whose Fountain is in the *Montes Casii*. And 4. *Lanos*.

Towns or chief note amongst them, 1. *Sera*, which gave the name of *Serica*, and *Seres*, to the Province and people. 2. *Ottorocora*, near the hills so called; whence it had the name. 3. *Iffedon*, for distinction sake called *Iffedon Serica*, to difference it from another of that name in *Scythia*, called *Iffedon Scythica*; the chief City of the *Iffedones gens magna*, one of the greatest Nations in all the Country, as it was said by *Ptolomy*; and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable resistance unto *Cingis* (which before I spake of) in his first attempts upon this Country. 4. *Orofana*, 5. *Drosabe*, 6. *Daxara*, of which little memorable. Some other Cities there were in it (about Nine more being named by *Ptolomy*) of which we find nothing, but the names, and therefore I shall pass them over without further mention.

But here it is observed, 1. That *Ptolomy* gives unto this Country, and some of the Towns or Cities of it, such a Northernly Latitude (ranging the furthest parts thereof in the same parallel with the Isle of *Thy*) as cannot possibly agree with that fertility of soyl, and delightful temper of the Air, which is given to *Serica*. 2. That he tells us of a *Promontory* called *Talyn*, situate in *extrema Terræ*, in the extremities of the Country between North and East, which I cannot but extreamly wonder at, considering that he shuts up this Country on the East and North with a *Terra Incognita*, and extends not any part thereof towards the Sea, rendering it thereby incapable of any such *Promontory*. This is misplaced, and belongs to *Russia*, as I said before. 3. That some of our late Writers, both in their Table and their Maps, have placed the Regal City of *Cambalu* so far towards the North,

as very ill agreeth with that pleasantness and sweetness of situation, which induced the great *Chams* to make choice thereof for the Seat Royal of their Empire. The Author of the last relation of *China* Father *Magelhanes*, has proved that *Pekin* in *China* is the *Cambalu* of *Paulus Venetus*; which if our Author had known, he would more confidently have averr'd that *China* was the *Serica* of the Ancients, tho' the City so called might not be *Pekin*; but some City more Southerly Seated, and towards the Western boundary of *China*; and as I believe, as high as *Thibet* or *Cochin-China*, which was then a part of *China* and subject to it. But as we may easily pardon these mistakes of *Ptolemy* in places so far distant from him, and then but little known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; so we may as easily pardon these of the latter times, who grounding on the authority of so eminent an Author, have in some things been misguided by him: it hapning very many times (which I find somewhere mentioned on the like occasion) *Magnos errores, magnorum virorum auctoritate, transmissos*, that great errors are often entertained upon the credit of their authors.

There is no place in all this Eastern part of the World so likely to be the *Serica* of the ancients, as *China*; tho' being very far distant from them, they might very easily mistake in the position of it. This Country also abounds in Silk and Cotton, one of which was the *Serica* of the Ancients. The Caravans have also in all times of peace, passed from *Persia* to *China* by land, the beginning of which Trade is not known. The Kingdom of *Thibet* which lies between *Cathay* towards the North, *China* to the East, *Indostan* to the South, and *Imaus* to the West, is said to be very Rich by *Tavernier* Part 2. Pag. 156. And much more conveniently Seated to be the *Serica* of the Ancients than any part of *Tartary*. But by reason of the vast Mountains between it and *Indostan*, *China* and *Mawaralnabar*, it is little more known than by the name. This however shews *Tartary* doth not reach so far to the South as *Indostan*. This Kingdom of *Thibet* shews also there can be no *Scythia extra Imaum*, but what is comprehended in the former description or in this Kingdom, which immediately Butts upon *India*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, in those parts which lay next the *Scythians*, are said to have been *Anthropophagi*, or Men-eaters, most probably a *Scythian* Nation, that Custom being so abhorrent from the mildness of the *Serican* temper. Or else we must correct the Copies of *Ptolemy*, by the History of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who instead of *Anthropophagi*, placeth the *Alitrophagi* in the self-same Tract. The other nations not distained with the like Reproaches, are the *Sizyges*, and *Anabi* not far off from the *Auzacian* Mountains; the *Pialæ* near the River *Occardes*, the *Geranæi*, *Rhabbanæi*, their nearest neighbours; the *Throani* dwelling towards the East, the *Batæ* and *Ottocororæ* more towards the South. These with the residue, Governed by a Common-Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the service of the Common-Wealth, as was said before. And more than this, we hear not of them in the way of Story; the Natives never going abroad with their Wives, and having little speech with Strangers, when they come amongst them. Being vanquished by the *Chataæ*, a *Scythian* Nation, from whom it is like that it took the of name *CATHAY* (for in this we go but by conjecture) they continued under Kings of their own, till subdued by the *Tartars*, against whom they made such stout resistance, being besieged by *Cingis* in their principal City, that when they wanted stones to cast out of their Engines, they supplied that want with molten Silver; and held it out so long, that *Cingis* finding Victuals to grow short in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man should be eaten. But at last being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens Massacr'd, and their King or Emperour (as some call him) slain; after whose death, and not before, *Cingis* assumed the Title of the *Cham*, or Emperour. The residue of their Story we shall have hereafter.

SCYTHIA EXTRA IMAUM, was bounded

on the East with *Serica*; on the West with *Imaus*; on the South, with *India extra Gangem*; and on the North, with the Countreys comprehended in the name of *Altay*, which *Ptolemy* hath given us in the notion of the *Terra Incognita*. Called *Scythia*, because planted by a brood of the *Scythians*. *Extra Imaum* was put to it, to difference it from that part of *Scythia* which lay on the West side of that Mountain, nearest unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain, and the Countrey, have the name of *Altay*.

To look upon it as it standeth by the name of *Scythia extra Imaum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring Nations: the Mountains called *Auzacii*, and *Casii*, and *Ennodorus*, being common unto this with *Serica*; as *Imaus* joynly to both the *Scythia's*, which it divided anciently the one from the other; though now this last be reckoned to belong to *Cathay* alone, because the *Tartars* on both sides of it profess themselves subject to that *Cham*. This is the most famous Mountain in the East of *Asia*, beginning at the shores of the *Scythick* or Frozen Ocean, and extending thence directly Southwards unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the Southern or Indian Seas. By which account it divideth the greater *Asia* into East and West, as *Taurus* doth into North and South, which Mountain it crosseth in right Angles, about the Longitude of 140, as before was said. That part hereof which lyeth on the South of *Taurus*, was by the Ancients called *Bitigo*; and by the modern is named *Gates*; of which we shall speak more when we come to *India*. That on the North of *Taurus*, called *Imaus* properly, was anciently most memorable for dividing the vast Countries of the *Scythians*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*; a division much observed by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of some of the *Chams* of *Tartary*; most generally known by the name of *Altay*, but by some called *Belgion*.

Chief Towns hereof were 1. *Auzacia*, at the foot of the hill so named. 2. *Chaurana*, the chief City of the *Chauranæi*. 3. *Sata*. 4. *Iffedon Scythica*, so called to difference it from the other of that name in *Serica*. These with the rest, and all the Country, as far as it was known in the days of *Ptolemy*, inhabited by the *Abii Hippophagi*, or Horse-eaters, a diet still used by the *Tartars* or modern *Scythians*. 2. The *Iffedones*, who are said by *Pomponius Mela* to make carousing-cups of their Fathers heads, first trimmed and gilded. 3. The *Cauranæi*, and 4. The *Chataæ*, who being (as it seemeth) the most potent Nation, caused all the rest to be called by the name of *Cathay*, communicating that name also to the conquered *Seres*. Besides the possessions of which Tribes, there were also the Regions of *Acassia*, *Cusia*, and *Auzuatis*; these last so called from the Mountains upon which they stand. More than this, we have not to say of this Country by the name of *Scythia*; there being nothing memorable of it in the course of Story, or worth the observation in the way of Chorography. See the notes above.

ALTAY is bounded on the South, with *Cathay*, especially so called, and part of *China*; on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; on the West with the great Mountain *Imaus*, and on the East, with the Nations or Countries of the Eastern *Tartars*. So called from its neighbourhood to that mighty Mountain, which the *Tartars* in their Language call by the name of *Alta*.

The Country utterly unknown to the Ancient Writers, and not much canvassed or travelled by our Modern Pens. In which respect I shall now trouble my self no further, than by giving a brief touch upon the several parts of it. Of which the most that can be said, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not something in them of further use. Now for these Provinces, the Principal of them are, 1. *Cascar*, 2. *Chesmur*, 3. *Lop*, 4. *Camul*, 5. *Tainfu*, 6. *Camdu*, 7. *Carazan*, 8. *Cardandan*, 9. *Erginul*, 10. *Tanguth*.

1. *CASCAR*, bordering on the North-West of *China*, a *Mahometan* Country, but admitting of some Christians also; the largest Kingdom in all *Altay* except *Tangut* only, and furnished with many Towns or Cities both of Trade and note, the Principal whereof are, 1. *Nishan*, the Royal City of this Country, a Mart famous for concourse of Merchants, and variety of Merchandizes. 2. *Cadie*, the chief Town of a Province or Kingdom so named, but subject to the King of *Cascar*, who in the year 1653 was called *Mahomet Cham*, a Prince of credit in those parts, but neither equal in Port or Power to the King of *Tangut*. The People generally rude and barbarous, in so much that some parts here of both Sexes do indulge themselves this mutual privilege, that if the Husband or the Wife be absent above twenty days, the other party is at liberty to marry again. This account seems taken from the Voyage of *Benedict Goz* a Portuguese *Jesuit*, sent from *Indostan* in 1653 to *China* by Land, he arrived there in 1655, but died before he reached *Pekin*, being poisoned as was suspected. It is this year Printed at the end of *Fatner's Travels towards China*.

2. *CHESMUR*, the Inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters* and *Incanters*, causing the dumb *Winds* to speak, the winds to rise, and the Sun to be darkened. For studying which *Black Arts* (if they come to them by study) they have many *Monasteries*, in which their *Hermites* or *Monastics* live a strict kind of life, and are very abstemious.

3. *L O P*, memorable for a great Desert of thirty days journey; so true a Desert, that whosoever doth not mean to be starved, must carry all his Victuals with him. Dangerous to Travellers, if not before-hand made acquainted with their danger: the evil Spirits using to call men by their names, and make them go astray from their Company, where they perish with Famine, or are devoured with wild Beasts. The chief Town hereof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4. *CAMUL*, an Idolatrous Country, the People whereof accounted it a great honour to them to have their Wives and Sisters at the pleasure of such as they entertained. From which brutish Custom when restrained by *Atango Cham*, they petitioned him at the three years end to be restored again to their former liberty; protesting they could never thrive, since they lost that Custom. Which desire of theirs was at last granted, and is still in use.

5. *TAINFU*, more civil than the rest, the People being very industrious, and good Artificers; making the most part of the Arms which are used by the *Cham*; and some also which they sell to Merchants.

6. *CALINDU*, with a Town in it of the same name, of great resort by Merchants (such as we commonly call *Pettit Chapmen*) for *Womens Veils* here made, with very great Art, of the Barks of Trees. And it is well that they have Veils to hide their shamefulness, the Women of this Tract being prostituted to every Traveller.

7. *CARAZAN*, inhabited by a Barbarous and Savage people, who in the day-time live in Dens for fear of Serpents, with which (and some of them ten paces long, and ten spans in thickness) they are much infested, and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lions. They have an use that when any stranger cometh into their Houses, of an handsome shape, to kill him in the night, not out of desire of Spoil, or to eat his body; but that the soul of such a comely body might remain amongst them.

8. *CARDANDAN*, near *Carazan*, and as Savage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their Bodies, which they count for the greatest Ornament. In case of Sickness they send not to the *Physitian* but the next *Incanters*, who taking Counsel of the Devil, apply some remedy; or if they think the man past cure they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help, and so put him off.

9. *ERGIMUL*, possessed by an Idolatrous people, but mixed with some *Mahometans*, and *Nestorian* Christi-

ans. in which Country they have certain Bulls as big as Elephants, with man's or fine white hair, like Silk, some of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine, engender a Race of strong and laborious Beasts, not inferior in that kind to Oxen. Here is also found a Beast of an exquisite shape, but not bigger than a Goat, which at every Full Moon hath a swelling under the belly; which being cut off by the Hunters, and dried in the Sun, proveth to be the best Musk in the World.

10. *TANGUTH*, the greatest and most potent of all the rest, bordering on the North of *Cathay*, especially so called, and (like that) inhabited by an industrious and laborious people, among whom the art of Printing is said to have been extant a thousand years. Blessed heretofore with a great increase of Christianity; but now the *Gentiles* or *Idolaters* make the greatest part, with some *Mahometans* amongst them. And for the serving of those Idols, they have not only many large and beautiful Temples, built in the manner of Christian Churches, and capable of 4 or 5000 persons: but also many fair Monasteries for the use of their *Votaries* and *Recluses*. They are possessed of many Towns, most of them well fortified, and planted with good store of Artillery. The chief of which, 1. *Sachian*, bordering on the Desert of *Lop*, inhabited by some of all three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they first used the Art of printing. 2. *Campion*, the *Metropolis*, or Mother-City of this Country; where the Christians in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had three fair Churches: now over numbered by the *Gentiles*, who have here many Monasteries for the use of their *Idols*, and many Religious Persons dedicated to their Service only. Who though they live more honestly than the rest of their Order, and hold it an impiety to tempt a Woman to the act of Lust; yet if the Woman make the offer, they hold it no small sin to refuse her courtesie: 3. *Sauta*, a Town in the middle way betwixt *Campion* and *Succuir*, as being five days journey from the one and six days journey from the other; by which we may conjecture at the long extent of this King's Dominions. 4. *Succuir* situate amongst Mountains cloathed with *Rhubarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the World; but so neglected by the Natives, that did not the Foreign Merchants bring it into request, they would scorn to gather it. This once a Kingdom of it self, made subject afterwards with *Tangut*, to the *Cham* of *Cathay*, or the great *Cham* of *Tartary*. But the fury of this *Tartarian* Tempest, being over-blown, the Kings of *Tangut* did not only recover their ancient Royalty, but by degrees possessed themselves of the most part of the rest of *Altay*, and perhaps part of *Cathay* also, being looked on at the present as the greatest and most Puissant Prince betwixt the Mountains of *Imaus*, and the Eastern *Tartar*, to the description of whose Countries we next proceed.

The Countries of the *Eastern Tartars*, are bounded on the West with *Altay*, on the East with the *Oriental Ocean*, on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*, and on the South with *China*; so called from their Eastern situation, in regard of those of *Cathay* and *Altay*, which by the *Chineses* are called commonly the *Western Tartars*.

The Country not very fruitful, because ill cultivated, so that the chief Commodities which they send abroad are the Root called *Ginseng*, so much esteemed amongst the *Chineses*, and all sorts of precious skins, as those of *Castor*, *Martron* and *Zibellus*; and also Horse-hair, of which the *Chineses* make their Nets, and the men (tho' madly) use it in tying up their hair, as the handsomest dress they can appear in. With these Commodities they traffick into *Leantong*, a Province of the North-East of *China*, (from which they are parted only by an Arm of the Sea) where commonly they make good Markets, their Merchandize being thence dispersed into all parts of the Kingdom. The people are generally of broad faces, their colour white, but their nose is not so flat, nor their eyes so little as the *Chineses* are, sparing of speech, and somewhat pensive, but neither so untociable as their neighbours of *China*, or so barbarous and rude as the *Tartars*.

of *Europe*. They shave both the head and the beard, reserving only the Mustachoes which they extend to a great length, and in the hinder part of their head they leave a Tuft, which being curiously woven and plated they let hang down carelessly below their shoulders; they have a round and low Cap, which is always garnished round with some precious skins three fingers broad, of *Castor* or *Zibellin*, and serveth to defend their Temples, Ears, and Foreheads from Colds and other Tempests. That which appears above the skin being covered over either with curious red Silk, or else with black and purple Horse-hair, which they dye and dress most curiously; so as their appurtenances being handsomely joyned together make the Cap commodious and handſom. Their Garments are long Robes falling down to the very foot, but their Sleeves are not so long and large as the *Chineſes* use but rather such as are used in *Poland* and *Hungary*, only with this difference, that they fashion the extremity of the Sleeve ever like a Horse's hoof. At their girdle there hangs on either side two handkerchiefs to wipe their face and hands, besides there hangs a knife for all necessary uses; with two Purses, in which they carry Tobacco, or such like Commodities. On their left side they hang their Scymeters, but so as the point goeth before, and the handle behind; and therefore when they fight they draw it out with the right hand behind them without holding the Scabbard with the other. They seldom wear shoes, and no Spurs to their Boots, which they make either of Silk or Horse-skin very neatly dressed; but they often use fair Pattens, which they make three fingers high. In riding they use Stirrups, but their Saddles are both lower and broader than ours. In matters of War they are very nimble, never carrying any Baggage with them, nor taking care for Provision, but filling themselves with what they find; yet commonly they eat Flesh, though half washed or half boyled: and if they find none, they fall upon their Horses and Camels. The Earth covered with their Horse-cloaths is their Bed, for they care not for Houses and Chambers; but if they are forced to dwell in Houses, their Horses must lodge with them, and they must have many holes beaten in the walls to let in the air; but yet their Tents are most beautiful, which they fix and remove with such art and dexterity, as they never retard the speedy march of an Army.

They Inhabit amongst many other Provinces, those of *Sumabania*, *Tanaiu*, *Gupi*, *Niulban*, and *Niuche*; of which I am able to say nothing in the way of *Chorography*, or of the four first in the way of *History*; only I find that those of *Niulban* were aiding to the King of *Niuche*, in the Conquest of *China*: and of the *Gupi*, it is written, that they are so called, by reason they make their Coats of defence or Breast-plates of Fishes Skins, which grow (as is affirmed) in a manner impregnable. None of which Nations count themselves originally of *Tartarian* Race. Yet either terrified by the noise of their great successes, or willing to partake of some part of their fortunes, they not only aided them in their Wars on that side of *Imaus*, but were contented to take their very name upon them. Never invaded nor subdued till the time of *Hombu* King of *China*, who having driven the *Western Tartars*, then Lording it over that Kingdom, from one part of it to another, compelled them finally to betake themselves unto those parts and Provinces of the *Eastern Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom and Province of *Niuche* where the War followed after them also, till by little and little they became more quiet; compelled to begg their Peace of the Conquering Enemy; divided into seven Hords or Tribes, and Governed for a long time by their several Chiefs, they became at last united into one Kingdom called the Kingdom of *Niuche*, Anno 1550 or thereabouts. Oppressed by the Prefects of *Leotong*, in the way of their Trade, and suffering amongst many other indignities the death of their King, whom those Prefects had intrapped and murdered, they make complaint of these outrages to the King of *China*, and finding no remedy at his hands put themselves into Arms,

invade the Province of *Leotong*, take the City of *Leotong*, and having besieged the King himself in the Royal or Imperial City of *Pekin*, they returned home (finding no hope of taking it at that time) with the spoil and plunder of all those parts through which they marched. The War thus first begun was managed for many years with great loss on both sides, the *Tartars* having got nothing by it, but the Eastern parts of the Province of *Leotong*, and the honour of having shewed themselves twice more at the Walls of *Pekin*, till in the year 1644. being invited into *China* by *Uſangueius* to support the then failing fortune of the Royal Family; they husbanded the opportunity so well, as to make themselves the absolute Masters of that mighty Kingdom. The whole story and Successes of this notable action, we shall sum up in brief when we come to *China*. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of

The KINGS of *NIUCHE*, or
East *Tartary*

- | | | |
|------|------|---|
| 1550 | 1, 2 | <i>N. N.</i> advanced the Kingdom after the reducing of the main Body of the Tartars, who had succeeded in the treachery of the Prefects of <i>Leotong</i> , as before was said. The Annals of <i>China</i> say that in 1597, these <i>Eastern Tartars</i> being united, the <i>Western Tartars</i> entered into a League with <i>Xin Zum</i> King of <i>China</i> , against them. |
| 1616 | 3 | <i>Theienmingus</i> , who to revenge his Father's death, invaded <i>China</i> , took the City of <i>Leotong</i> , braved the great Emperour at the Walls of the Regal City, and having enriched himself with the spoils of the Country returned home again. |
| 1627 | 4 | <i>Theienzungus</i> , the Son of <i>Theienmingus</i> , followed the War with the same Fortune as his Father did, both of them growing greater in Renown and Riches than in Power and Patrimony. |
| 1636 | 5 | <i>Zungteus</i> , the Son of <i>Theienzungus</i> , secretly brought up amongst the <i>Chineſes</i> , by means whereof he grew not only acquainted with the conditions of that People, but their weaknesses also; and consequently was the better prepared to lay the foundation of that greatness to which the <i>Tartars</i> have attained by the Conquest of it. Called into <i>China</i> by <i>Uſangueius</i> , as before is said; he possessed himself of the City of <i>Pekin</i> , and though he died as soon as he was Master of that City only: yet left he such Instructions to his Brothers, and the rest of his Council, that very easily and speedily they possessed themselves of all the Kingdom. |
| 1644 | 6 | <i>Xunchius</i> the Son of the former, of the Age of nine years only, at the death of his Father; the management of his affairs both for War and Peace being committed to his Uncle's, but chiefly unto <i>Amavangus</i> the eldest of them, by whom so prudently conducted, that within the space of four years he was quietly settled in that Throne, all opposition and pretenders to the Royal Succession, being beaten down, of which more hereafter. |
| 1661 | 7 | <i>Chamili</i> , Son of the former <i>Xunchi</i> , Succeeded his Father being then but eight years of Age, and is supposed to be now living; he perfected the Conquest of <i>China</i> in the year 1680, Reigned over all the <i>Tartars</i> from <i>Imaus</i> and the Banks of the River <i>Obb</i> , and is one of the most Potent Princes in the World. |

5. TARTARIA ANTICUA.

TARTARIA ANTICUA, hath on the South, *Altay* and the Countries of the *Eastern Tartars*; on the West and North, the main *Scythick Ocean*, on the East, the Straights of *Anian*, (if such Straights there be) by which parted from *America*. So called, because the first habitation of the *Tartars*; who from this Den or Goal, made their first eruptions, and have since overgrown so much of *Asia*.

The Country cold and comfortless, as lying under the Polar Circle, and in part beyond it; not fit for any but such as can live no where else: yet heretofore a receptacle of many Christians (though those of the *Nestorian* Sect) who here enjoyed that liberty of their Religion which the *Persian* and *Sarazens* denyed them in more pleasing Countries. It containeth many Regions, some not considerable. Those of most note are 1. *Thebet*, 2. *Tabor*, 3. *Tenduc*, 4. *Barbu*, 5. *Anian*, and 6. *Tartar*.

T H E B E T, a Fenny Region, and full of Woods, rich in Coral, which they find on the Sea-shore, and use it instead of Money. So named from the chief City of it, the ordinary Seat of the *Abasie*, or Pope of this Idolatrous People; much revered, and having in his power the disposing of all Offices, which concern the Service of their Idols. They have also good store of Musk, and abundance of wild Beasts which are bred in their Forests: but no beasts wilder than the People, who in times past (if not at the present also) used to bury their Parents in their own Bowels, and to make drinking cups of their Skulls; for fear least in the midst of their jollity they should forget their Progenitors. Yet not more Barbarous than Immodest; it being contrary to their Custom to take a Wife that is a Virgin. And therefore the Mothers use to prostitute their Daughters to the Merchant Strangers, who having had their pleasures of them, gratifie them with a Jewel, or some other present, which they wear on their Wedding-day; she being the most acceptable Bride to her Husband who bringeth the greatest Dowry with her of those base rewards. It contained once several petty Kindoms, (Homagers to the Kings of *Tenduc*) with many Cities; but now laid desolate by the *Tartars*. I suspect this is the famous Kingdom of *Thibet* or *Tobat* described above, and placed here too far to the North; whereas in truth it abutts upon *Indostan* to the South, and is divided from it by the *Emuli Montes*, now called *Moghati* and *Delanguer*, being a part of *Taurus*.

2. **T A B O R**, once a distinct Kingdom also. One of the Kings thereof in the Year 1340, came to the Courts of *Charles* the Fifth, and *Francis* the first; where he found Princely Enterainment. But upon proof that he was a Factor for the Jews, and secretly solicited many unto that Religion, by the command of *Charles* he was burnt at *Mantua*.

3. **T E N U C**, A Populous Kingdom of it self, but greater in name and power; the Kings hereof commanding all these North-East parts, as far as the borders of *Cathay*. Christians in Religion, till the Conquest of it by the *Tartars* though according to the *Nestorian* tendries: but now *Mahometans* for the most part, with some remainders, and but few of Christianity. Divided into many large and spacious Provinces, as *Chincintales*. *Cerguth*, *Egrigaia*, *Cerchaus*, and others of less note; so called according to the names of their Principal Towns, or having some Towns in them of the name of the Provinces.

Those of most note in *Tenduc* it self, 1. *Coras*, the ordinary Sepulture of the Kings of *Tenduc*, before it was subdued by the *Tartars*, and since that also. 2. *Caracoras*, where *Cingis* was first honoured with the title of King, the Kings hereof bearing the port of Kings, and the Office of Priests, were anciently called by the name of *Presbyter Johannes*, or *Prester John*: a Title now erroneously conferred by some on the Emperour of the *Abassines*, or *Ethiopians* in *Africk*. Concerning which it is a wonder, that *Joseph Scalager*, a man of such infinite reading, should

be so deceived: and by the authority of his judgment deceive so many. For finding that there was a *Presbyter Johannes*, in the North of *Asia*, and hearing vulgarly that Title given to him in *Africk*, he fell upon a fancy that this *Abassine* Emperour was formerly of so great power, as to extend his Empire over *India*, and the North of *Asia*; and in this last for the assurance of his Conquests to hold his residence. A monstrous and undefensible fancy! For besides that, all Histories, even those of the *Abassines* themselves, are silent in it: how improbable is it, that a King Reigning in the heart of *Africk*, should subdue the most remote parts of *Asia*, and there keep his Court, so many great States and most Puissant Nations being interposed; or that so memorable an exploit should be buried in silence, and found in no Record but in *Scaliger's* Head! Besides it is well known, and generally granted, that *Presbyter John* of *Asia*, was by Sect a *Nestorian*; but he that is called in *Africk*, of the Sect of the *Jacobites*: and further, that the Christians of *Ethiopia* are Circumcised, which never was reported of those of *Asia*.

Letting this pass therefore as an unwarrantable, and ill grounded fancy, we are to know that formerly this Province of *Tenduc*, was under the old Kings of *Cathay*, till the time of *Cin Cham*, the King thereof. After whose death a certain *Nestorian* Shepherd (that is to say, the Master of great Flocks of Sheep) being Governor of the *Taymans*, a People of *Tenduc*, took to himself the Title of King of *Tinduc*, whom they called by the name of *Prest John* or *Prince John* (the same word in their Language as in the *Hebrew*, signifieth both Priest and Prince.) Dying he bequeathed his Estate and Flocks to his Brother *Unt-Cham*, (commonly called in one word *Uncham*) a greater Sheep-Master than he; whose Flocks ranged over all the Pastures of the *Moles*, or *Mongul Tartars*, though dwelling fourteen days Journey off, whom he had in subjection: the Title of *Prest John* or *Presbyter Johannes*, going along with the Dignity and Royal Estate. And though afterward this *Uncham* was subdued by the *Tartars*, yet his Posterity for a long time were suffered to enjoy the Title of Kings and *Presbyters*: (but Vassals and Homagers to the great *Cham*) the great *Chams*, in regard of their Nobility and Royal parentage, bestowing their Daughters on them in Marriage; as is said by *William de Rubruquis*, who Travelled in these Countries, Anno 1253, the King hereof being then named *George* (the fourth from *Uncham*) but commonly called *Presbyter Johannes*, as his Fathers were.

4. **B A R G U**, on the extreme North-West, bordering on both those sides the cold *Scythick Ocean*, situate under the North-Star; of the same nature, both for the Soil and People, as that of the *Tartars*. And,

5. **A N I A N**, on the North-East, opposite unto it, giving name unto the Straights of *Anian* lying betwixt *Tartary* and *America*; which Straights (if any such Straights there be) the *Tartars*, and some others of these Northern Nations, are thought to have passed over, and to plant that Country. This is made the more probable by our Country-Men's observation, that the farther they go to the North-West in *America*, the more the People resemble the *Samoyedes* in Customs, and Language: besides these most northern Nations have neither Horle, Cows or Sheep; and none of these Creatures were found in any part of *America*, till the *Europeans* transported them thither. *Mochim Poukim*, the *Vayvode* of *Smolensko*, who had lived many years in *Siberia* as Intendant of the Chancery in that Government, reporteth that beyond the *Obb* to the East, was the River *Lena*, which falleth into the *Kawoina*; at the mouth of which is a great populous Island, the inhabitants of which hunt upon the Ice about it in the *Frozen Sea*, for a Fish called *Bebemot*, affording Excellent Ivory; they being often surprized by a Thaw are carried away (said he) I know not whether; but I believe to the most Northern parts of *America*, which is not far distant. And I am confirmed in this, because the most Northern *Americians* have the

same Physiognomy as those unfortunate Islanders that are thus carried away. Father *Avril's Travels* towards *China*, Pag. 177. Who saith he had it from the *Vayvod's* mouth in 1586. So that all Nations hereabout, do agree that *Tartary* is surrounded by the Sea to the North and East; and that *America* is not very far from it; and consequently that there is such a Straight as this of *Anian*, which must lye very remote towards the North to answer to the River *Lena*; and it is likely this great Island is the Southern Boundary of this remote *Fretum*, which is not yet discovered.

TARTARY, is so called of the great River *Tartar*, the Principal of this Northern Tract, and giving name unto the Tartars; this being their original Country, where they lived like Beasts, having neither Faith, nor Letters, nor Habitation, nor the use of Arms, nor any Reputation amongst their Neighbours. In matters of Religion, the worst sort of Gentiles, Worshipping the Sun, Moon, Fire, and the very Earth; to which they offered in the Morning fasting, the first of their meats and drinks.

Their Idols made of Felt, and placed on both sides of the doors of their Tents or Booths, as the preservers of their Cattel, and the Authors of Milk. Divided into five Clans or Tribes, denominating so many Towns and Territories in which they dwelt, that is to say, 1. *Mongui*, 2. *Teka Mongul*, (or the great *Mongul*), 3. *Sammongul*, or the *Water-Mongul*, 4. *Marcat*, 5. *Motret*: each of them Governed by its Chief as commonly it is amongst Barbarous Nations; though all those Chiefs are subordinate to some higher power. Oppressed by *Uncham*, or *Untcham*, the King of *Tenduc*, who invaded their Pastures, and compelled them to pay unto him the tenth of their Cattel; with joynt consent they removed somewhat farther off, and denied their Tribute. This opportunity was taken by *Cingis*, one of the Tribe of the *Teka Monguls*, and so well husbanded, that they admitted him for their King. For publishing abroad amongst the credulous people, that an Armed man appeared to him in his sleep, with a white Horse, and said, *O Cangius or Cingis, it is the Will of immortal God, that thou be Governour of the Tartars, and free them from bondage and paying Tribute*; he found a general belief, especially amongst those of his own Clan, who joyning themselves to him, followed him as their Ring-leader, in all his actions. Thus backed and strengthened, he made War against the *Sammonguls*, slew their Commander, and subdued them: and by their help successfully assaulted the *Mercates*, and *Metrits*, whom he also vanquished. And having thus subdued all the Clans of the *Tartars*, and added the Estates of *Thebet* and *Tanguth*, unto his Dominions, he was by the consent of the seven Princes, or Chiefs of their Clans, (*Thebet* and *Tanguth* being added to the former number) placed on a Seat of a piece of Felt, (the best Throne they had or could afford) and saluted King with as great Reverence and Solemnity as their State could yield. And first to make Tryal of his Power, and their Obedience, he commanded the seven Chiefs, or Princes to surrender their Places, and each of them to cut off the Head of his eldest Son; which was done accordingly. Had *John of Leyden* been a Scholar, as he was but a Butcher, I should think he had studied the Acts of *Cingis*, and proceeded by them. Assured by this of their Fidelity and Obedience, he set upon the *Naymans*, a People of the Kingdom of *Tenduc*, whom he overcame. And now conceiving himself fit for some great Alliance, he sent to *Uncham*, and demanded one of his Daughters for his Wife; which *Uncham* with some threats, but more scorn, denying, he marched against him, slew him in the Field, and possessed his Daughter, and with her also his Estate. Proud with this good success, and encouraged by so great an increase of Power, he invaded the Kingdom of *Cathay*; pretending for that also the authority of an Heavenly Vision, in the name of the *Immortal God*: in which attempt, discomfited at first with a very great overthrow, but at last Victorious; conquering the several Nations of it one by one, till in the end he brought the War to the chief City of that King-

dom, which at last he took, and therewithal the Title of *Cham* or Emperour. Continuing this Dignity for the space of six years, and every year adding somewhat to his Dominions, he was at last wounded in the Knee at the Castle of *Thaygin*; of which wound he died, and was honourably buried in Mount *Altay*.

This is the best account I am able to give of the beginning of this great Empire, the Original of this spreading Nation, and the description of the Country, of their first Habitation. They that have Christned some of the most Northern part of it, by the names of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Naphthalim*, and accordingly placed them in their Maps, might with more Credit have supplyd those vacant places which they knew not otherwise how to fill, with the Pictures of wild Beasts, or monstrous Fishes; which might well enough have pleased the Eye, without betraying the Judgment of the looker on. Of his successors I am able to make no certain Catalogue: their names being doubtfully delivered, and the Succession much confounded amongst our Writers: the names of the *Provincial Sultans* being many times imposed upon us instead of those of the *Chams* themselves. But we will wade through those difficulties as well as we can, and exhibit as perfect a Catalogue of them, as the light of Story will direct me: first adding (what should have been before remembered) that it is Recorded, that *Cingis* before he joynd Battel with *Uncham*, consulted with his Diviners and Astrologers of the Success. They taking a green Reed, cleft it asunder; writ on the one the name of *Cingis*, and *Uncham* on the other: and placed them not far asunder. Then fell they to reading their Charms and Conjurations, and the Reeds fell a fighting in the sight of the whole Army, *Cingis's* Reed overcome the other: whereby they foretold the joyful news of the Victory to the *Tartars*, which accordingly happened. And this was the first step, by which this base and beggerly Nation began to mount unto the Chair of Empire and Sovereignty; whereas before they lived like Beasts, having neither Letters, nor Faith, nor Dwelling, nor Reputation, nor Valour, nor indeed any thing befitting a man, as before was said.

The Great CHAMS of the TARTARS.

A. C.

- 1162 1. *Cingis, Cingius, Zingis* or *Changius*, was made King or *Cham* of the *Tartars*; he subdued *Tenduc*, and *Cathaya*, changing the name of *Scythians* and *Scythia*, to *Tartarians* and *Tartaria*. 6.
- 1168 2. *Jocuthan Cham*, or *Hocata*, succeeded. In his time the name of *Tartar* was first known in *Europe*, Anno 1212. in which year they drove the *Polesockies* from the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea. By his Captain *Bathu* of *Roido*, he subdued *Moscovia*, or *Russia*; planted his *Tartars* in *Taurica Chersonesus*; wasted *Hungaria*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*; and by his other Captains took *Persia* from the *Turks*.
3. *Zaincham, Bathu*, or *Barcham*, ruined the *Turks* Kingdom of *Damascus*, and *Asia* the less.
4. *Gino Cham*, whose Daughter conveyed the Empire unto her Husband *Tamerlane*, or *Tamberlane*.
- 1370 5. *Tamur-Cutlu, Tamir Cham*, or *Tamerlane*, a great Tyrant, but withal an excellent Soldier. It is thought, that he subdued more Provinces in his life time, than the the *Romans* had done in 800 years. Of whose Acts we have spoke at large. Dying, he divided his great Empire amongst his Children, as *Persia* to *Amerza Charack* his fourth Son, *Zagathay* to another, (perhaps unto *Sautochus* his eldest Son) and so to others.
- 1405 6. *Lutrochin*, the second Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded in *Cathay* though the eldest was at first proclaimed, which his Father had before prognosticated: who when his Sons came to him before

before his death, laid his hand on the head of *Sautobus*, who was the eldest but lifting up the Chin of *Lutrochin*, who was the second. He lived not long, succeeded by

7. *Allan*, who added little to his Estate.

8. *Mango Cham*, to whom *Haiton* an *Armenian* Prince (and the chief Compiler of the *Tartarian* History) went for aid against the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*. By whose perswasion the said *Mango Cham* is said to have been Christned, with all his Household, and many Nobles of both Sexes.

9. *Cublay Cham*, the Son of *Mango*,

10. *Tamor Cham*, the Nephew of *Cublay* by his Son *Cingis*.

11. *Demyr Cham*, the great *Cham* of *Cathay* in the year 1540 or thereabouts. What the names of the *Chams* are who have since reigned, we cannot learn; nor what memorable Acts have been done among them. The great distance of Countries, and difficulty of the Journey, have hindred further discoveries. For the Great *Cham*, and his next Neighbour the King of *China*, will neither suffer any of their Subjects to Travel abroad, nor permit any Foreigners to view their Dominions, or enter into them; unless their Ambassadors or Merchants, and those but sparingly, and under very great restraints, to avoid all giving of intelligence touching their affairs; saving that in these latter times the *Jesuits* have found some footing in *China*, by whom notwithstanding, we have received little or no Intelligence in matters which concern this Country.

The Government is Tyrannical, the Great *Cham* being Lord of all; and in his tongue (besides which, they have almost no Laws) consisteth the Power of life or death. He is called by the simple vulgar, *the shadow of Spirits, and Son of the Immortal God*: and by himself is reputed to be the Monarch of the whole World. For this cause, every day as soon as he hath dined, he causeth his Trumpets to be sounded; by that sign giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the Earth to go to Dinner. A fine dream of Universal Monarchy. At the death of the *Cham*, the seven chief Princes Assemble to Crown his Son; whom they place on a black course Cloath: telling him if he live well, Heaven shall be his reward; if ill, he shall not have so much as a corner of that black Cloath to rest his body on: then they put the Crown upon his Head, and kissing his feet, swear unto him Fealty and Homage. And at the Funeral of these great Monarchs, they use to kill some of his *Guard-Soldiers*, whereof he hath 12000 in continual pay, saying unto them, *Itē & domino nostro servite in alia vita*. *Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obsequies of *Mango Cham*, no fewer then 10000 were slain on this occasion.

These *Chams* are for the most part severe Justicers, and punish almost every small fact with sudden death; but Theft especially: insomuch that a man in *Cambalu* taking a Pail of Milk from a Woman's head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the Woman's out-cry was apprehended, and cut asunder with a sword; so that the Blood and Milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *Lying* punished with less than death, and so ordained to be by the Laws of *Cingis*, their first Emperour. A wiser man than possibly could be expected from so rude a Country, and of so little Breeding in the knowledg of Books or Business; the *Tartars* being utterly without the use of Letters, till the Conquest of the *Huyri*, a *Cathayan* Nation but of Christian Faith.

What Forces the Great *Chams*, in the height of their Power, were able to draw into the Field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, consisting of 1200000 Horse and Foot, as was said before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we shall find them not inferior to the greatest Princes. For *Cutlay Cham*, long after the division of this great Estate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the Field against *Naian* his Uncle, and one *Caiadas*, who had then Rebelled, an Army of

100000 Foot, and 360000 Horse: there being 500000 Horse on the other side; which made almost a Million of men in both Armies. And this is probable enough, it report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, and those of *Turchestan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the first is said have been able to raise 300000 Horse, and the last an hundred thousand more. For standing Forces, he maintains 12000 Horse, distributed amongst four Captains, for the Guard of his Person; besides which he has great Forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call, if occasion be; so that he need not fear any outward Invasion, and much less any home-bred Rebellions. But on the other side, admitting this for truth which before is said, we find him of no power at Sea, without which great Princes are exposed most commonly to the Invasions and affronts of such as are strong in Shipping: For either the *Eastern Tartars* interposed betwixt him and the main Ocean, whereby he is Landlocked (as it were) from all Trade at Sea; or if he have any Port in the North-East parts of this long Country, where it joyneth on *Tartaria Antiqua*; it is so far off, and so much out of the way, that it adds nothing to his Power and not much to his Purse.

Of the Revenues of the *Cham*, I can make no estimate, but may conclude them to be what he list himself: he being the absolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrew unto him, is the tenth of Wooll, Silk, Hemp, Corn, and Cattel. So then doth he draw into his own hands all the Gold and Silver which is brought into the Country: which he causeth to be melted, and preserved in his Treasury: Imposing on his people instead of Money, in some places Cockle-shells; in other a black Coin, made of the Bark of Trees, with his stamp upon it. And besides this he hath to himself the whole Trade of Pearl-Fishing, which no body upon pain of death dare fish for, but by leave from him. So that his Treasure is conceived to be very Rich, though his Annual Income be uncertain, or not certainly known.

Hitherto I have prosecuted the affairs of this mighty Monarch upon the common credit of approved Authors, yet must confess I am not very well satisfied in the truth and reality of the thing it self; it being rather my opinion, That there is no such man at this present time as a Great *Cham* of *Tartary*, with Sovereign Power and Jurisdiction over all the other members of that vast body; but that this Empire being broken in pieces by the Sons of *Tamerlane*, the conquered Countries did by little and little return again to their former Governments, or else were seized on by the *Viss Chams*, or Governors of the several Provinces. For first I consider it is as impossible that there should be such a mighty Monarch, of such absolute authority, such an infinite power, and such unlimited Revenue; and yet that for the space of an hundred years and more, we should hear neither tale nor tidings of them, no not so much as of their names, especially in an active Age; and when this great building of the World hath such Casements in it. For it must needs seem strange to a rational man, that neither *Jenkinson* who passed into *Persia* by the *Caspian Sea*, nor *Sir Robert Shurley* who spent much time in the *Persian* Court, nor *Sir Thomas Roe*, or *Sir Dodmore Cotton* (the first Ambassador to the great *Mogul*, the other to the *Persian Sophy*) should tell us any thing of this Prince, if such Prince there be; or that the Travellers of our Nation who have rambled over all parts of *India*, the next neighbouring Country, should bring us home no tidings of him; or the *Jesuits* with all their diligence should not find him out. Secondly, I consider it as a thing improbable, that if there were any such mighty Prince, keeping his Royal Court in the City of *Cambalu*, so near unto the Kingdom of *China*, he should permit the beggerly Nations of the *Eastern Tartars* to Conquer that Rich and mighty Empire in so short a time; he in the mean season sitting still as a dulk spectator, neither considering his own danger, nor put-

ting

ting in for a share of so great a Booty. Thirdly, I observe that in the treating of a Marriage between *Xunchius* the great King of the *Eastern Tartars*, now reigning in *China*, with a Daughter of the King of *Tanguth*, the King of *Tanguth* is called Prince of the *Occidental*, or *Western Tartars*, by which name the *Chinese* call all the *Tartars* Inhabiting the vast Countries of *Altay* and *Cathay*, especially so called, (i. e. being Westward of themselves, and the *Eastern Tartars*) which Title the King of *Tanguth* had not merited or durst have assumed unto himself, if there had been any such great *Cham* then reigning in *Cathay*, and residing in *Cambalu*, as our Authors speak of. And fourthly, I observe it as a matter probable, That as at the breaking of this Empire into pieces upon the death of *Tamerlane*, the *Precopenses*, or *European Tartars* submitted to a Prince of their own Nation, under the Power and Government of whose Successors, they do still continue: and much of the *Asiatick Tartary* being subdued by the *Moscovites*, the Neighbouring *Tartars* did return to their ancient Government by Hords or Tribes; that so the Kings of *Tanguth* might not only recover their own Inheritance, but by degrees possess themselves of the greatest part of *Altay*, if not of some part of the *Proper Cathay* also. And therefore that some of the last great *Chams* mentioned in the former Catalogue, are no other than the Kings of *Tanguth*, or the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, in whom (if any were) remaineth the Succession of the House of *Cingis*. *Gabriel Magehanes* or *Magellan*, in his History of *China*, Printed at London in 1688, spends his first Chapter to prove, that *China* is the same Country with that which *Paulus Venetus* calleth *Cataio*; He finds all the Cities, Rivers, and Towns mentioned by that *Venetian* Author, in *Cataio* in *China*; but the names are varied according to the *Tartars* dialect. Pag. 3. *The Moscovites as I was informed* (saith he) *call China by the name of Kirai in imitation of the Tartars. The Kingdom of China Malaha, (supposed to be the Usbeck Tartars) the Inhabitants of which are Mahometans, and which Border on the Province of Kensi. The Kingdom of Tomet or Tibet, which environ a good part of Xenlici and Xanli, and that of Usangue, (to the East of Tibet) Bordering upon Suchuin; having corrupted the word Kita, call it Katai; and the Merchants that come from Indostan and other parts of the Indies, call it Cataio. This Author lived in China from 1640 to 1677, when he died at Pe-Xim; which puts it past all doubt that China is Cathay to much sought after.*

From these Premises I conclude, that all which hath before been spoken touching the great Power, Authority, and Revenue of the great *Chams* of *Tartary*, must either be referred unto the times of their greatest glory, when their Empire was entire, or not much dismembred; or else relate, with some qualifications, to the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, or the Kings of *Tanguth*. But these my observations and considerations, with the conclusion issuing from them, I willingly submit unto better Judgments.

The Catalogue of the Kings of *Niuche*, which in the *China* Language signifies the *Eastern Tartars*, entered above, Pag. 777 of this Book, shews that this Kingdom was in 1550, divided into 7 Hords, each of which had its Chief, which about the year 1596, were all united under one head; whose name is not expressed in the *Annals of China*. Hereupon, *Xi Zum* then King of *China*, made a League with the *Western Tartars*, who in former years had much invaded *China* against this new Family, which was then become terrible to both: This shews that there was then no *Cham* at *Cambalu*, which is in *East Tartary*, before that time, and that the *Western Tartars*, were before this more considerable than the *Eastern*. *Annals of China*, Pag. 89. And in the year 1683, the present King of *China* made a Progress with a great Army into the *Western Tartary*, none of the Chiefs of the Hords daring to oppose him; the Bounds of his Empire extending as I have said already, to *Russia* and the Mountain of *Imaus*, the Kingdom of *Thibet*, and the *Chinian Ocean*; so that there is now no *Cham* of *Tartary* but the King of *China*, who succeeded *Xunchi* his Father in the year 1661, and was then a Child of about eight years of Age; and whether he is still living is uncertain. It is very much to be remarked, that the *Western Tartars* submitted without any contest or War to this Family; tho' they were more Powerful than the *Eastern Tartars* when the War of *China* began; which shews they were not united under any one Prince or Head: and tho' they were able to invade and vex *China*, which was a weak tho' populous Nation, yet they never durst resist this victorious Prince. So that what the Reverend Doctor *Heylin* saith is true, viz. That the *Chams* of *Tartary* derived of *Cingis*, were long since extinct.

And thus much for *TARTARY*.

O F

C H I N A.

CHINA is bounded on the North, with *Altay*, and the *Eastern Tartars*, from which separated by a continual Chain of Hills, part of those of *Ararat*; and where that chain is broken off, or interrupted, with a great wall extended 400 Leagues in length; built, as they say, by *Tzianzon*, the 117th King hereof; on the South, partly with *Cauchin-China*, a Province of *India*, partly with the Ocean; on the East, with the *Oriental Ocean*; and on the West with part of *India*, and *Cathay*; viz. with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*, *Thibet*, and the *Western Tartars*; the two latter of which are no part of *India*: from which no otherwise separated than by such natural Bounds and Ramparts as commonly divide great Countries from one another.

The Northern Parts thereof were utterly unknown unto the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Latines*; but for the

Southern parts hereof, they make up that Country which *Ptolemy* call *Sina*, or *Sinarum Regio*, by which name the whole Country is called at present by our modern *Latinists*; and from whence that of *China* seems to be derived, by *Paulus Venetus* called *Mangi*, by the neighbouring Countries *Sanglai*, by the Natives *Taine*, and *Tabinco*: which last signifies no other than a Realm; or by way of Excellence, the Realm. By the *Arabians* it is called *Tzin-in*; and the Inhabitants call themselves by the name of *Tangis*.

There is no part of this Country that was at all known to the Ancients, by the name of *Sina*; that Country they called by that name, abutting to the West, upon the Bay called *Sinus Magnus* in *Ptolemy*, and now the Gulf of *Bengala*, and was no other than the Kingdom of *Pegu*, or *Siam*; to the East of which are the Kingdoms of *Cauchin-China*, and *Tonkin*, all of them without the bound

bounds of *China*, as now it stands; tho' the two East are said to have been parts of *China*, yet the other two were never any part of it. It is notwithstanding probable, the present name *China* is derived from the ancient name of *Sinæ*, but misplaced.

It is said to contain in circuit 69516 *Dies* of *China* measure, which reduced to our *European* measure, will make a compass in the whole of 3000 Leagues: the length thereof extended from the Borders of *India*, to the most Northern Provinces of this Continent, 1800 Leagues. But they that say so, speak at random. For besides that 1800 Leagues in length must needs carry a greater compass than 3000 Leagues, they make it by this reckoning to be bigger than *Europe*, which I think no sober Man will grant. And answerable to this vast compass, it is said also to contain no fewer than 15 Provinces, every one of which is made to be of a greater Continent than the greatest Realm we know in *Europe*: Yet not a Continent of waste ground, or full of uninhabitable Desarts, as in other Places; but full of goodly Towns and Cities. The names of which Provinces, and the number of their Towns and Cities, I have thought fit once for all to lay down in this *Diagram* following.

The Provinces, Cities and Towns in *China*.

	Prov.	Cit.	Towns.
1	<i>Canton</i>	37	190
2	<i>Foquien</i>	33	99
3	<i>Olam</i>	90	130
4	<i>Sifnam</i>	44	150
5	<i>Tolenchia</i>	51	155
6	<i>Cansay</i>	24	122
7	<i>Minchian</i>	25	29
8	<i>Ochian</i>	19	74
9	<i>Honan</i>	20	102
10	<i>Pagnia</i>	47	150
11	<i>Taitan</i>	47	78
12	<i>Quinchen</i>	45	113
13	<i>Chagnian</i>	43	94
14	<i>Sufnam</i>	41	105
15	<i>Quinsay</i>	31	114

By which it doth appear, that in these fifteen Provinces there are 591 Cities; 1593 walled Towns; and besides them 1154 Castles, 4200 Towns unwall'd; and such an infinite number of Villages, that the whole Country seems to be but one City only. But here we are to understand, that these great Provinces are divided into many lesser, and some of them presented to us (in late stories) under other names, according to the Languages and Appellations of those several nations, which either have recourse unto them, or do traffique with them; which the Reader may take notice of with less doubt or wonder, in regard that the main Country of *China* it self is called by so many several names, as before was shewn.

It reacheth from the 130th to the 160th Degree of Longitude: and from the Tropick of *Cancer*, to the 53d Degree of Latitude. So that it lieth under all the Climes from the third to the ninth, inclusively: the longest Summer's day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours, and forty minutes; increased in the most Northern parts, to sixteen hours, and three quarters. Enjoying by this site an Air somewhat of the hottest, especially in those parts which lie under the Tropick; but withal very sound and healthy, and fit for the production of the choicest fruits.

The true extent of this great Country is from twenty two to forty Degrees of North Latitude, as appeareth by the latest and best Maps. So that our Reverend Author by misinformation extends it 13 Degrees towards the North further than it lies. Father *Magelbanes* saith it lies under 23 Degrees from North to South, from the Fortress of *Cai Pim*, placed on the Frontiers of the Province of *Pekim* in 41 Degree of Lat. to the Meridional Point of the Island of *Hui-Nan*, in 18 Degr. of Elevati-

on and to the South of the Province of *Quantum*: So that the length of it, at 60 *Italian* Miles to a Degree, is 1360 *Italian* Miles; and the breadth, from *Nim Po* in the *Kiam* to *Lean Po* in *Suchuen*, in a straight line from East to West, is 1020 *Italian* Miles.

The Country is very rich and fertile, inasmuch that in many places they have two, and in some three Harvests in a year: well cultivated, and sowed with all manner of Grain, and planted with the best kind of Fruits; which do not only come to a speedy maturity, but to more excellency and perfection than any of these Western parts. The like is also said of their Pearls and Bezoar; fairer and of greater virtue than those of *America*, or any other part of the World besides. Particularly it aboundeth with Wheat, Barley, Rice, Wool, Cotton, Olives, Vines, Flax, Silk, all kind of Metals, Fruits, Cattel, Sugar, Honey, Rhubarb, Camphire, Ginger, all kinds of Spices, medicinal wood, called *China wood*, by the name of the Country, Musk, and Salt; the Custom for which last in one City only, which is that of *Cantan*, amounteth to the yearly value of 180000 Crowns. It yieldeth also an Herb, our of which they press a delicate juyce, which doth not only serve them instead of Wine, but preserveth their health, and freeth them from many of those inconveniences which the immoderate use of Wine doth breed to others. Such store of Poultry of all sorts, but of Ducks especially that in the Town of *Cantan* only before-mentioned, it is thought there are 12000 eaten every day, one day with another.

The People are for the most part of swarthy Complexion, but more or less according to their nearness to the heat of the Sun, short-nosed, black-eyed, and of very thin beards. They wear their Garments very long, with long loose sleeves, and their hair much longer than their neighbouring *Tartars*, who wear their hair exceeding short, and their cloaths much closer; to which two Fashions so addicted, that more of them took up Arms for their Hair and Habit (when required to conform in those particulars to the will of the Conqueror) than had done either for their King, or their common Liberty. So much delighted with their own Fashion and composure, that as the *Negroes* use to paint the Devil white, as a colour contrary to their own; so when these *Chinois* use to draw the Picture of a deformed Person, they set him forth in a short Coat, broad Eyes, long Nose, and a bushy Beard. They are much given unto their Bellies, and eat thrice a day, but then not immoderately; drink their Drink hot, and eat their Meat with two flicks of Ivory, Ebony, or the like, not touching their Meat with their hands at all, and therefore no great foulers of Linnen. The use of Silver-Forks with us, by some of our spruce Gallants taken up of late, came from hence into *Italy*, and from thence into *England*. Their Marriages they celebrate most commonly in the *New Moon*, and many times put them off till *March*, when the year beginneth with them as it doth with us: In which solemnity they spare for no cost or charge, Musick and Stage-plays, and good cheer many days together. Yet doth not this take them off a jot from their natural industry, and their proficiency in Manufactures and Mechanick Arts. For the Son is bound to follow his Father's Occupation: which Law, preventing the roving about of idle people, and exciting in each breast an emulation in every Art, maketh the Inhabitants excellent Artificers. In giving Alms they are bountiful to the maimed, and lame; but reject the blind, as being sufficiently able to get sustenance for themselves by corporal labour, as grinding of Corn, &c. They have long enjoyed the benefit of *Printing* before it was known in *Europe*, but Print not as we do, from the left hand to the right; nor as the *Jews*, from the right hand to the left; but from the top of the leaf downward to the bottom. *Guns* also have been used among them time out of mind; whence they are so well conceited of themselves, that they use to say, They themselves have two eyes, the *Europeans* one, and the rest of the People of the World not one. A pretty flourish of self-praising. Now that *Guns* were in use in these

Eastern Countries, and consequently also amongst them, even when *Bacchus* made his Expedition into *India*, which was some three or four years before, or after the departure of *Israel* out of *Egypt* (as Sir *Walter Raleigh* seemeth to affirm: because *Philostratus*, in the life of *Apollo-nius Tyanus*, telleth us how *Bacchus* was beaten from a City of the *Oxydrace* by Thunder and Lightning; which he interpreteth to be *Cannon*. But certainly himself in another place of his most excellent Book, acknowledgeth this *Philostratus* to have written fabulously; and therefore no fit foundation for a conceit so contrary to probability, and the opinion of all times. Besides, whereas *Dion* telleth us, that by the benefit of Thunder and Lightning from Heaven *Severus* discomfited *Pescennius Niger*; and by the same means was himself repulsed from the Walls of *Petra* in *Arabia*: we may (if this interpretation hold good) as easily maintain, that *Severus* had great Ordinance in his Camp; as the *Arabians* in their Town. As for *Printing*, whether *John Gutenberg* learned it of the *Chinois*; or whether good Inventions, like good wits, do sometime, jump, I dare not determine: sure I am that he first taught it in *Europe*; and as some say, in the year 1440. At *Harlem* a Town of *Holland* it was first said to be practised, and at *Mentz* perfected. Now whereas it is by some doubted, whether the Art of *Printing* be available to the proficiency and advancement of Learning, or not, I must not herein be both a Judge and a Party; but must leave the decision of the point to men uninterested. Only this I dare boldly say, that this most excellent Invention has been much abused, and prostituted to the lust of every foolish and idle paper-blurrier: The Treasury of Learning being never so full, and yet never more empty; over-charged so with the froth and scum of foolish and unnecessary Discourses. In which (though all Nations have their share therein, and we of late as much as any) the *Dutch* have been accounted the most blame-worthy: who not content to scatter their poor conceptions amongst themselves, and Print them in their own Tongue only (as our *English Paper-blurriers* do) publish them in the *Latin* to the eye of others, and send them twice a year to the publick *Marts*, though neither worth the Reader's eye, nor the Printer's hand. *Scriptorum plus est hodie quam muscarum olim cum caletur maxime*; the complaint once of an old *Comedian*, was never truer than at the present.

But not to dive too deep into this Dispute, the People, as before was said, are good *Artificers*, ingenious and excellent in all things which they take in hand: the *Porcellan* Dishes, curious Carvings, and the fine painted Works which we have in Tables, Leather, Stuffs, being brought from thence. Effeminated with much ease and pleasure, they are not much given unto the wars, which make them the more ealie prey to the Neighbouring *Tartars*, whose very name hath bred more terrors in them, than their Arms or Conquests. Insomuch that when *Usanguicus* requested Aid of *Zungteus* King of the *Eastern Tartars*, against *Lycunstzus*, and his rabble of Rogues, which sacked the City of *Peking*, and placed himself in the Throne Imperial; the *Tartarian* having but few men in readiness, advised him to array a good part of his own Soldiers with the Arms and Colours of the *Tartars*, that on the Terror of that sight he might obtain the cheaper and more certain Victory; which prudent Counsel was pursued, and it proved accordingly. As the *Lacedemonian* Government was more fitted for War than Peace, which was the great design of the Founder of it; so the *China* Government was fitted for Peace, and not for War: The strict Government of the People, and severe Punishment of the least breach of Peace, added to the softness of the Climate, very much tending to the softning and effeminating of the Inhabitants. The building the great Wall against the *Tartars*, was also an impolitick contrivance; rendring the *Tartars* more terrible to the *Chinians*, by this over-great care to keep them out; and softning the *China* people, and making them overmuch secure: Whereas it had been better to have left that part

open, that by perpetual Incurssions the People of *China* might have been taught the use of their Arms, and hardened to War: Nor was it to be thought such a Wall could be defended, when a considerable Body of the *Tartars* should at any time attack it in any one place. What they want in Courage they supply with Wit, being said to be a politick and judicious people; but withal very jealous of their women, and great Tyrants over them; not suffering them to go abroad, or sit down at the Table if any Stranger be invited, unless he be some very near Kinsman. A Tyranny or Restraint which the poor Women give no cause for, being said to be very honest and much reserved; not so much as shewing themselves at a window for fear of offence: And if they use painting as most of them do, it is rather to preserve themselves in the good affections of their Husbands, than for any other lewd respects. For the most part of a fair Hair, whereof very curious, binding it about their heads with Ribbands of Silk, and garnished with Pearls and precious Stones. Neat in their dress, and very costly in their apparel, with reference to their estates, and the degree of their Husbands; the richer sort wearing Sattin strip'd with Gold, and interlac'd with very rich Jewels; the poorer in Serge, and razed Velvets. They have most of them little Feet, which they take great pride in, and for this cause bind them up hard from their very Infancy; which they endure patiently though it be very painful, because a small Foot is accounted for so great a grace. And yet it is conceived that this proceeded not so much from their own curiosity, as from the jealousy of the men, who have brought it in, to the end that they should not be able to go but with a great deal of pain; and that going with so ill a grace, and so little ease, they should have no desire to stir much abroad. A Custom so ancient and received, that it hath got the force of Law; and if any Mother should do otherwise in breeding their Daughters, they would undergo some censure or mark of Infamy. If a desire to see their Parents get them the Freedom of a Visit, they are carried to them in close Chairs, and attended by so many waiters, that it is not possible for any man either to see them, or hold any discourse with them.

Of both Sexes it is thought that this Country containeth no fewer than 70 Millions. Which though it seems to be a number beyond all belief; yet it is knowingly averred, and may be thought probable enough, if we consider the spaciousness of the Country. 2. The secret goodness of the Stars, and temperature of the Air. 3. The abundance of all things necessary to life. 4. That it is not lawful for the King to make any wars, but merely defensive, and so they enjoy perpetual peace. 5. That it is not lawful for any *Chinois* to go out of the Country. And, 6. That here the Sea is as well peopled as whole Provinces elsewhere. For the Ships do resemble a City, in which they buy, sell, are born, and die. And on the several Rivers which water the Walls of *Nanquin*, and *Peking*, for no less than 300 Leagues, the Ships are said to be so thick ranked, that it seemeth to be a continual Street.

The People hereof in matters of Religion, are generally all *Gentiles*, and conceive thus of the Creation; viz. That there was one *Taine*, who created *Panxon*, and *Panxina*, whose Posterity remained 90000 years; but they for their wickedness being destroyed, *Taine* created *Lutitzam*, who had two horns; from the right came men, from the left came women. When any of them dieth, they cloath him in his best Apparel, all perfumed, set him in his best Chair, and there all his nearest Kindred kneeling before him, take their leave with tears. When he is collid, they place him in a room richly furnished, and set by him a Table full of viands and good cheer, with Candles continually burning on it. Not much unlike to which Ceremonies, we find, how whilst the Funeral was preparing for *Francis* the French King, his Statue appoynted in Royal Robes, with the Crown, Scepter, &c. was laid on his Bed; whither Dinner and Supper was daily served in, with the like State and Solemnity as when he was living.

But

But to return again to my dead *Chinois*, when he has lain as is above said, fifteen days, he is carried forth to his Funeral, the place whereof is in the Fields; for to be buried within the Walls were a thing of all others the most wretched. Hither, when they are in the manner of a procellion, come; they burn his body, and with it Men, Cattel, and other provition, for his attendance and sustentance in the other world: as they use in the Funerals of *Tartary*. As great Idolaters as any, sacrificing to the very Devil, and that upon the same reason as the most ignorant sort of the Gentiles do; because forsooth he is a wicked and mischievous Creature, and would otherwise hurt them.

Yet in the middle of this darkness there apareth some light, whereby we may perceive that Christianity had some footing here, in times foregoing; for they believe that God is an immortal Spirit, that by him the first Man was made of nothing; that the Soul dieth not with the Body, but is capable of reward and punishment in another life, according to the works it hath done in this. Which left they should be thought to be only some remainders of the light of nature, (the learned Men amongst the Ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, having so much Divinity as this, without the Gospel) we may here add, that the Idol most generally worshipped by them, is painted with three heads looking one on another; signifying as themselves affirm that they have all but one will, which makes some think they had been anciently instructed in the Doctrine of the Holy Trinity. They have also the Pictures of a very fair Woman holding a Child in her Arms, who, as they say, was the Daughter of some great King; and that she was delivered of that Infant when she was a Virgin. And as some add, they have portraitures of the Fashion, and with the marks or Characters of the twelve Apostles, (as usually painted in some part of the Christian Church:) of whom they are able to say nothing but that they were great Philosophers who lived vertuously here, and were therefore made Angels in Heaven. And finally they hold that there is a great number of Saints, or Men estated in an eminent degree of happiness, who in their times exceeded others in knowledge, industry or valour, or lived an austere life without wronging any man: or otherwise deserved nobly of the Common-Wealth, as the Authors of some signal benefit unto their Country. These I conceive to be some evident remainders of Christianity, or the Remembrances rather of that Christianity which formerly was known amongst them: first planted here (as may be probably collected) by St. *Thomas*, or some of his Disciples; an Ancient *Breviary* or *Liturgy* of the *Indian Churches*, giving good hint to it: Where it is said, *Per D. Thomam regnum celorum volavit, & ascendit ad Sinas: i. e.* That by St. *Thomas* the Kingdom of Heaven was preached unto those of *China*. Some Characters here were also of it, in the time of the *Tartars*, though now obliterated and not visible but in these detacements: And in this state it stood till the time of our Fathers, in which the *Jesuits* (commendably industrious in the propagation of the Christian Faith) not without great danger to themselves, have endeavoured, and in part effected, their Conversion. For though they have gained but few Proselytes, (in regard of those infinite numbers of People which are said to live here) yet some Converts they have made amongst them; and thereby sown those seeds of that saving Truth, (though mingled with some Tares of their own) which may in time increase and spread over all the Country. For at the present they have not only got footing in the Ports and Sea-Towns, but also in many mid-land Cities, and in some also very far distant from the Sea; in all which, they have both Churches for their followers, and Cells or Monasteries for themselves; and finally have gained so far upon the Court, as not only to have their doings well approved of by Authority Royal; but have also gained unto the Faith, the Mother, Wife, and eldest Son of *Jungly* the last declared Emperour of the *Chinoises*, which eldest Son they have Baptized (and be-

it an happy Omen for the good of *China*. The name of *Constantine*. This Prince by the *Chinoises* is called *Yumlie*, he was elected in the year 1644; his Mother, Wife, and eldest Son, were by his permission all Baptized by *Andrew Coffler* a *Jesuit*; the Son was called *Constantine*, and it was hoped he would have proved a *Constantine*. But in the year 1661, *Yumlie* the Father was driven into the Kingdom of *Pegu*, and the *Tartar* sent a threatening Letter to the King of *Pegu*, if he did not deliver up this Prince; thereupon the King of *Pegu*, put him and all his Family into the hands of the *Tartar*, who ordered *Yumlie* to be presently Hanged; with him ended the whole Race of the Family *Mim*; and by this last effort, an end was put to the Wars of *China*, and the present hopes of the *Jesuits* to Establish a King of their Religion.

In truth the Religion they would settle here, is nothing less than Christian, they Paint our Saviour like a *China-Philosopher*, conceal the whole History of his Crucifixion because the *Chinians* are offended with it; and suffer their Converts to Sacrifice in the Idol-Temples with the unconverted; they have drawn up a new Gospel after their own fancy for them, and conceal from them the true Gospels: So that the other Orders that have gon thither, have loudly declaimed against them for Preaching this mungrel Christianity; which I doubt not, will have the same end with that of *Japan*, where the same things were put in Practice by them. This Order, though they pretend very much to the spreading of Christianity, never did so; nor believe never will where they have not the Sword to back their Art; their whole design being to enrich themselves, and enlarge the Pope's Kingdom, rather than truly to seek the Salvation of Souls. This perhaps was not so well known when our Author wrote as it is now; books of this nature since that time, have been Printed at *Paris*, and other places, some of which I have seen.

Hills of great note here are not many, here being but one Mountain touched upon by *Ptolemy*, in his description of the Country called *Sinarum Regio*, which we conceive to be the Southern part of this *China*: agreeable unto the observation of Modern Writers, by whom it is affirmed to be so plain and level, and so unswelled with Hills at all, that they have Carts and Coaches driven with Sails as ordinarily as drawn with Horses, in these parts. Not the less destitute of Rivers for this want of Mountains, *Ptolemy* naming in it, 1. *Aspbara*, 2. *Senus*, 3. *Ambastus*, and 4. *Cottaris*; all which had here their fount and fall: and yet he knew the out-skirts of the Country only. But because the Country of the *Sinæ*, of which *Ptolemy* speaks, makes but a South part of this great Country, and the Rivers which before we mentioned in *Seneca*, pass into it also, it is possible enough, that we may find them all amongst the chief Rivers of this Country, whensoever we shall come to have a more perfect Chorography hereof than former times have given us. In the mean season we may know, that the names by which the principal Rivers are now called, are 1. *Yalo*, which rising in the North-East parts of the Country, and passing by the Southern Skirts of *Leatong*, falleth into the Ocean over against the Island of *Corea*, making a little Illet at the Influx of it; fortified with a strong Castle called *Xang-bai*, to secure that entrance. 2. *Croesus*, which arising in the West-Borders hereof, first bendeth its course to the North-East, watering the City of *Kiangchan*, and after passeth directly Eastward, till it falls at last into the *Yalo*. 3. *Polasanga*, which issuing out of some of the branches of Mount *Imaus*, first palleth by the great City of *Cambalu*, and falls at last into the mighty Lake of *Quinsay*, and finally again contracted to its proper Channel, doth either lose it self in the Eastern Ocean, or in the great River of *Kiang*, of which more anon. 4. *Cacamican*, another of these great Rivers which falleth into the Lake of *Quinsay*, and possibly may be the same which the *Cathayan Tartars* call by the name of *Caramoram*. 5. *Kiang*, (or *Quiam*, as the *Tartars* call it) which having its ori-

ginal from Mount *Imaus*, and passing thorow the whole breadth of *Cathay*, cutteth thorow the middle of this Country, which divideth (like an *Æquator*) into North and South, watering therein the stately Cities of *Nanquin* and *Caijung*, where it is no less than 4. miles broad, encreasing more and more in breadth by the falling in of other principal Rivers, till it come at last to be ten miles over, and casting up such Mountains of Water, that the *Chineses* call it not undeservedly, *The Son of the Sea*. 6. *Cianthang*, the same (I think) which the *Tartars* call *Quiantun*, which rising out of some other spurs or branches of the Mount *Imaus*, falleth at last into this Country, and passing by the goodly City of *Hangcheu* on the North, and the fair Town of *Xaoking* on the South, endeth its course at last in the Eastern Ocean. 7. *Queio*, a River of the Southern parts, but not much observable. Here are also many great Lakes, not inferiour to some Seas in bigness; so plentiful in Fish, as if they contended with the soil, which should be most profitable: and yet so swelled with winds (though the winds many times blow strongly) that both upon these Lakes, and on the Rivers and Sea-Coasts they pass up and down in small Barks, with no other Sail than a Bough set up an end in the midst of them; by the help whereof they make good speed in their Navigations. Nor do these Lakes or Rivers use to overflow their banks, or endamage the Country: but when they do, it brings some fatal ruine with it; as in the year 1527, when the Lake of *Sancy* breaking out, overwhelmed seven Cities, many Towns and Villages, and Country People, almost infinite numbers.

Towns of most note amongst the *Sinæ*, though nothing but the names be remaining of them, 1. *Bramna*, and 2. *Rhabana*, honoured with the title of *Civitates*; 3. *Aspithra*, 4. *Achatara*, more within the Land; but all four under some degree of Northern Latitude. 5. *Thine* the Metropolis of the Country, by some called *Sinæ*; 6. *Sarata*, 7. *Catoranagara*; these on the South side of the Line. But in this *Ptolemy* was mistaken; it being found by the more certain observations of our later Writers, that no part of *China* comes within 20 degrees of the *Æquinoctial*; and so not capable of having any Towns or Cities of a Southern Latitude. Here was also a large Bay called *Sinarum Sinus*, a Promontory named *Notium*, in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude; and another named *Satyrorum*, lying under the *Æquinox*. More than this of the Cities of the ancient *Sinæ*, I have nothing to say, which I dare offer to the Reader.

But to behold them as they are presented to our view in the modern *China*, it hath been said, that for number there are no fewer than 591 Cities; and those so uniformly built, so conformable one to another, that they differ not in form and fashion, but in quantity only. Much like the Cities of *Utopia*, mentioned by Sir *Thomas More*, *Idem situs omnibus; eadem, quatenus per locum licet, rerum facies*; so near resembling one another, that he who knoweth but one of them, may conjecture at all. And this is the manner of their building. Most of their Cities have the benefit of some navigable River, near which they stand: the waters whereof serve them both for Navigation, and domestick uses. Two great Streets crossing one another in the very midst, so broad that ten horsemen may ride a-breast in the narrowest of them; so straight, that a Man standing in the middle may see either end; each end being shut up with a Gate of great strength and beauty; and those Gates fortified and strengthened with thick plates of Iron. Generally greater and more stately than those of *Europe*, but defective in that point of elegancy, which the Magnificent Churches, and more sumptuous buildings for the dispatch of publick businesses, in these parts abound with. Their private houses for the most part are so low, and destitute of Porches, Windows, Galleries, the principal ornaments and graces of Architecture. Nor are their Cities built only for resort or trade, but for strength and safety, environed with deep and broad ditches, the Walls of Brick or Stone, strong above belief, planted with Ordinance

and Artillery in convenient places, and every night the Gates not only locked, but sealed; not to be opened till unsealed by the principal Magistrate. So like they are to one another, that we may say with *Ovid* on the like occasion;

———*Facies non omnibus una,
Nec diversa tamen, qualem decet esse sororum.*

Which I find thus Englished by Sir G. Sands.

Amongst them all no two appear the same,
Nor differed more than Sisters well became.

But not to rest our selves on this general Character, let us take a more particular view of some of the principal. And in that list we find, 1. *Quinsay*, called *Suntien* by the Natives, situated somewhat towards the South, on the Western borders of this Kingdom, where it confineth on *Cathay*; of this Town many things are reported beyond all belief, as namely, that it contained once in circuit an hundred miles, and had in the midst of it a Lake of thirty miles compass; in which Lake were two goodly Islands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all necessaries, either for Majesty or convenience; in which are celebrated the publick Feasts, and the Marriages of the better sort. The Lake nourished with divers Rivers, the chief being *Polifango*, and *Cacamacan*; on which Rivers, 12000 Bridges are said to have lifted up their stately heads: and under whose immense Arches, great Ships with Sails spread abroad, and top and top-gallant, might and did usually pass. It is also said to have had ten Market-places, each of them four miles asunder, and every one in form *Quadrangular*, the sides thereof half a mile in length. Here were said also to be twelve Companies of Tradesmen or Artisans, each Company having 12000 Shops, and in all a million and 600000 Families. But whatsoever it was in former times, certain it is that at this time (if it hath at this time any being at all) partly on the removal of the Court from hence to *Cambalu* by the *Tartars*; and since to *Nanquin* and *Pequin* by the Princes of the House of *Hombu*, and partly the fury of Wars, and partly by the violence of Earthquakes, it hath lost no small part of her ancient beauty and renown. 2. *Unguen*, famous for the abundance of Sugar there made. 3. *Nanquin*, seated 9 Leagues from the Sea, on the great River *Kiang*, whereon ride for the most part no fewer than 10000 of the King's Ships, besides such as belong to private Men. The Town is in compass 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and stately Gates. The Streets in length two Leagues wide, and paved; the number of houses is about 200000; so that it may equal four of the fairest Cities of *Europe*. 4. *Pequin* or *Pagnia*, in the middle of the Province so named; (being one of the four Northern Provinces which take up the whole breadth of this mighty Kingdom) where the King continually resideth; and that either because the Air hereof is more healthful and pleasant, than any of the other, or because it lieth near unto the *Tartars*, with whom the *Chinois* are in perpetual War: so that from hence the dangers which may by their Invasions happen unto the Country, may with more convenience be either prevented, or resisted. The City said to be inferiour to *Nanquin* for bulk and beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Soldiers, and Magistrates, occasioned by the King's abode. Environed on the South with two walls, of so great breadth, that twelve Horse-men may run a-breast upon them; on the North with one Wall only, but that so strong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear as little annoyance on that side as they do on the other. But the greatest Ornament hereof is the Royal Palace, compassed about with a triple Wall, the outwardmost of which would well environ a large City; within which space, besides the many Lodgings for *Eunuchs*, and other Courtiers, are Groves, Hills, Fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleasure, large in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of Architecture to the Royal Palaces of *Europe*; first built

built by some of the *Tartar* Kings of this Country, in imitation of the Royal Palace of *Xaindu*, mentioned in *Cathay*; honoured sometimes with the residence of the *Chams* themselves, which as it gave unto the City the name of *Pequin*, that is to say, the Court or City of the King, in the Language of *China*; so gave it occasion unto some Writers, to make this and *Cambalu* the same; both names being of the same signification, though in divers Languages. 5. *Cantan*, supposed to be the *Cattigara* of *Ptolemy*, by the *Chinois* called *Quamchen*, the least of the Metropolitan Cities of this Country, but beautified with many Triumphant Arches, a Navigable River, large Streets, and many goodly Bridges. Fortified with deep Trenches, 83 Bulwarks, and seated in so rich a soil, both for Fowl and Cattel, that here are said to be eaten daily 6000 Hogs, and 12000 Ducks, besides a proportionable quantity of other Victuals. If this be one of the least of their Metropolitans what may we fancy of the greatest? A Town in which the *Portugals* drive a wealthy Trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City it self, but at night excluded, and forced to find Lodging in the Suburbs. By reason of which restraint they have settled their Mart at *Macao*, the Port-Town to this, where they have their Factor, and many Families; the Town being almost wholly Peopled by them. 6. *Leaotong*, the chief City of *Leaotong*, (another of the four Northern Provinces) and the first Town taken by the *Eastern Tartars* in their attempts upon this Kingdom, by this door making themselves an entrance into all the rest. 7. *Ninguiwen*, made the Metropolis of *Leaotong* after the taking of *Leaotong* by the *Eastern Tartars*. 8. *Sigan*, or *Singan*, the chief City of *Xenji*, another of the four Northern Provinces and honoured sometimes with the King's residence. 9. *Xaoking*, on the South side of the River *Cientbang* one of the fairest Cities of *China* so environed with sweet waters, as a man may contemplate its beauty, surrounding it in a Boat; consisting in large and fair Streets, paved on both sides with white square stones, and in the middle of them all runs a Navigable Channel whose sides are garnished with the like ornament; and of the same stone there is also built many fair Bridges, and Triumphant Arches; the Houses being all of the same stone also, which render it the neatest (though not the biggest) City in this mighty Kingdom. 10. *Sucbeau*, about two days journey from the Sea, seated in Marshes like *Venice*, but more commodiously, because those Marshes are of fresh water: the Streets and Houses founded upon Piles of *Pine-Tree*, with many Bridges, and conveniences for Passage both by Land and Water. Well Traded, as the fittest Center for dispersion of Merchandize from all the other Ports of the Kingdom: by the multitude and frequency of Ships, almost denying Faith to the Eyes, which would think all the Ships of *China* to be here assembled. So Infinitely rich, that the small Region whereof it is the Head, containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12 millions to the King of yearly income. 11. *Hamsen*, or *Hangchen*, on the North side of the River *Cientbang*, out of which furnished with a Channel of great length and breadth, by which it trades into the Northern parts of this Kingdom; the Metropolis of the Province of *Chequian*, about two days journey from the Sea; in compass less than *Nanquin*, but better builded: no places in it taken up with Gardens, Orchards, or other Pleasures; but all employed for Shops, Houses, and other Edifices. So beautified with Triumphant Arches, erected to the honour of deserving Magistrates, that in one Street there are 300 of great mass, of workmanship. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-sides of the Channels watering every Street, beset with Trees of shade, and most excellent Fruits: and in the middle of the City a round high Mountain, which gives the Eye a gallant prospect into every Street. And not far off a pleasant Lake of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with Groves and Gardens, and the Lake it self even cloathed with Vessels of all sorts, on which the Citizens used to feast,

and entertain their idle time with Plays and Spectacles. Two Cities so replenished with all kinds of Pleasures, that the *Chinois* use it for a Proverb, *Thien Xam, then thum, ti Xamsu bum*, that is to say, Look what the Hall or Presence-Chamber is in Heaven, that *Hamsen* and *Sucbeau* are on Earth. 12. *Foebea*, beautified amongst many other stately Structures, with a magnificent Tower erected on forty Marble-Pillars, of great elegancy, cost and bigness, every Pillar being forty spans in height, and twelve in breadth: not to be parallel'd as some say, by any the like work in *Europe*. 13. *Lachiau*, in which are 70000 Families. 14. *Colans*, famous for the best Porcellane. 15. *Seianbay*, by some called *Thiencin*, a station to which an incredible number of Ships resort, both by Sea and River, from all parts of the Kingdom; seated within 24 hours sail of the Isle of *Japan*, and therefore defended with a strong Garrison, and a Navy. Situate in a pleasant and wholesome Soil, the whole Country so set forth with Trees, as if it were one continued Orchard. So Populous, that it containeth 40000 Households, most of which get their livelihood by weaving Cottons, it being supposed that there are 200000 Persons which attend that Manufacture. 16. *Chinchamsu*, whence by a River made by hand, there is a passage to *Sucbeau*; the water of which never freezeth, and for that cause so clogged with Ships in time of Winter, that the passage is stopped with the multitudes of them. 17. *Zuanchen*, a most rich and beautiful City, environed with large waters, and the only Southern Port within the Land to which Ships or Boats may have access. 18. *Canton*, or *Caifung*, seated upon the River *Giang*, a City once of three Leagues in compass, whose Harbour was seldom without 500 Ships and sometimes honoured with the Seat or Residence of the Kings themselves; most miserably destroyed Anno 1642, by *Zunchinius* the late King of this Country, who breaking down the Dams and Sluces to let in the River, for the dislodging of some Thieves and Out-laws, who had then besieged it; gave it so great and forcible a passage towards the Town, that it bare down the greatest part of the Houses of it, and therein drowned above 300000 of the natural Citizens; before which time the Metropolis or chief City of the Province of *Honan*. 19. *Kaingcheu*, on the South side of the River *Croceus*, the richest and the fairest City in this part of the Country, commodiously seated to command that River. 20. *Chatking*, the head City of the Province of *Quamtung*, for the strength and conveniency of its situation thought fittest for the Seat of *Jungly*, the last declared Emperour of the *Chineses* against the *Tartars*. 21. *Quelin*, the chief City of the Province of *Quangsi*. 22. *Taitung*, the Metropolis or chief City of *Xamsi* or *Cansay*, another of the four Northern Provinces, but not else observable for any thing I find of it, either in point of Trade or Story. 23. *Manchange*, a chief City of the Province of *Kiansi*, of which little memorable; and less of, 24. *Cegiron*, but that it is like unto the rest in form and structure.

Besides the Provinces before-mentioned there are three others not directly under the Dominion of the Kings of *China*, though depending on it, that is to say, 1. The Province of *Suchuen*, 2. The Island of *Corca*, 3. The Island of *Cheuxan*.

1. The Province of *Sucbeau*, lyeth on the South-West of this Kingdom, of the same nature both for Soil and Air with the rest of *China*, but possessed by a more warlike people; the Women here being trained up to feats of Arms, and so well practised on their weapons; that when the Queen hereof went to the Aid of the Emperour *Kimly* against the *Tartars*, Anno 1618, she took with her a small Army of 3000 women: performing actions not unworthy the bravest men: The chief City hereof is called *Cingru*, of great capacity, and so exceeding populous withall, that *Changhienchungus* (that most barbarous Tyrant) caused no fewer than 600000 of them (men, women, and children, all indifferently) to be slaughtered in one day before his face. The whole Country Governed for a long time by its own Kings of the

same *Taimingian* Race with the Kings of *China*, from whom having received their investiture, they were afterwards of absolute Authority over their own Subjects, who acknowledg no other King but him. And in this state it did continue till the year 1644, when *Chanbientchungus*, whom before I named, entering into this Country with his rabble of Rogues, made a Conquest of it, murdered the young King, Son to the *Amazonian* Queen, which before we spake of: dispeopled the great City of *Cingtu*, butchered at one time twenty thousand Priests, at another time eighteen thousand Students; and finally committed such unspeakable outrages, that the *Tartars* in meer pity to that wretched People, sent an Army against him, by which he was vanquished, and slain; this Province thereupon submitting to the *Tartars* as their great deliverers.

2. *Corea*, is a Peninsula of the Eastern Ocean, not far from the North-East of *China*, over against the fall of the River *Yalo*. The quality of the soil, the demensions of it, and what Cities it containeth in it, I have no where found. The People far more warlike than those of *China*, by reason of the ill Neighbourhood of the *Japonites*, with whom they have always either open Wars, or uncertain Peace. Invaded by those Islanders and in danger to be conquered by them, they made an offer of their Country to the King of *China*, who having repulsed the Invaders, restored their Country freely to them, without laying any other Imposition on them than of love and gratitude, which obligations those of *Corea*, have discharged most fully. For when *Vanley*, the late Emperour of *China*, was first invaded by the *Tartars*, they sent unto his aid twelve thousand men well Armed and Exercised in the Wars; increasing their supplies in the time of *Theinkius*, who next but one succeeded *Vanley*. Drawing the whole storm upon themselves by those friendly aids, they were accordingly assisted by the King of *China*, whose Forces came so seasonably in the heat of Battel between the *Coreans* and the *Tartars*, that the *Tartars* after a long and terrible fight, were driven out of the Peninsula, but with such incredible loss on all sides, that few or none escaped of the Army of *China*, seventy thousand of the *Coreans* slain, and the *Tartars* leaving fifty thousand of their men behind them; after this they were unmolested, till the fatal and final Conquest of the Kingdom of *China*; when seeing the *Tartars* Lords of all, and no possibility of resistance, they submitted to them, about the year 1648, upon condition of retaining their Hair and Habit, which no extremity of personal danger, or fear of publick desolation, could compel them to alter.

3. *Cheuxan*, is an Island of the same Seas, on the South of *Corea*, opposite to the City of *Nympus*, in the main Land of *China*; an Island which being heretofore a dwelling-place of poor Clowns and Fishermen only, is now become a potent Kingdom. For *Lu. Regulus*, chosen by a party of his own to succeed to the broken Crown of *China*, and finding no hopes of withstanding the great power of the *Tartars*, retired himself into this Island with his friends and followers, followed not long after by great multitudes of the natural *Chineses*, who chose rather to forsake their Country, than to conform in Hair and Habit to the will of the *Tartars*; insomuch that there are now found in this Island threescore and ten Cities, with a strong and formidable Army, which hitherto hath contemned all the *Tartarian* Power and Forces, and watch for some happy occasion to advance again their Kingdom in *China*.

The Ancient Inhabitants of the *Sinæ*, in the time of *Ptolemy*, were towards the North, the *Semantini* bordering a Mountain of that name, and the only one remembered in all this Country: more Southward, the *Acadrae*, and *Aspithrae*, towards the Sea *Anabastæ*, and *Ichthyophagi* (these last so called from living wholly upon Fish.) United into one body by the name of *Sinæ*, and known by that name to the Romans, in the time of *Ptolemy*, who boundeth them on the North with *Serica*, on the West

with *India extra Gangem*, and on the East and South with a *Terra Incognita*: which though it make up the least part of the Modern *China*; *Serica* touching only on a Corner of the North-West of it, and the main Ocean washing it on the East and South: yet the *Arabians* in their *Tzinin*, and our late *Latine* Writers in their *Sinæ* and *Sinensium Regnum*, do from hence give the denomination to this mighty Kingdom. How far they stretched beyond the bounds laid down by *Ptolemy*, and whether they subdued the Eastern and more Northern Nations, or were Conquered by them, it were hard to say; nor is it easie to resolve, from what original these and the rest of the Inhabitants do derive themselves, whether from the *Indians*, or the *Scythæ*: or that it was primitively planted by some of the Posterity of *Noah*, before the enterprize of *Babel*: which last may probably be concluded from the extreme populousness of the Country, the many magnificent Cities, their Industry and Ingenuity in all Arts and Sciences, not to be taught them by their Neighbours, more ignorant in those things than themselves. And hereunto the Chronicles of *China* seem to give some ground, which tell us of three hundred and forty Kings, which for the space of four thousand years have therein reigned. For as their Chronicles inform us, (if they may be credited) the Country being without Rule or settled Government, was first reduced into order by one *Vitey*, the Son of *Ezolem*; by whom the people were instructed in *Physick*, *Astrology*, *Divination*, and the Art of Tillage: to which, this *Vitey*, having found out the way of cutting or sawing Timber, added the use of Ships and Houses, and many other the effects of Mechanical hands. Having by the valour of *Lincheon* one of the Commanders, subdued a great part of the Country, he drew them into Towns and Villages, distributed them into Offices, and several Trades, disposing those of the same Trade into Streets by themselves; and commanding that no man without leave from himself, or his Officers, should follow any other Trade than that of his Father. He prescribed them also the fashion of their Garments, taught them the Art of making and dying Silks: and having reigned an hundred years, left the Kingdom well established unto his Posterity. Of this Race there are said to have been 217 Kings, who held the State 2257 years.

The last of them was that *Tzaintzon*, who being ill-neighbourred by the *Scythians* (not yet called *Tartars*) is said to have built that vast Wall spoken of before: extended 400 Leagues in length, and at the end of every League a strong Rampart or Bulwark, continually garrisoned, and well furnished with all warlike necessaries. He being slain by some of his Subjects, burdened and wasted with his work, the Race of *Vitey* ended; and that of *Anchosan* succeeded, a Prince of much prudence, but greater courage. In his Line it continued under 25 Kings, but shrewdly shaken towards the close by a Civil War, betwixt *Trunthey*, the 23 of his House, and his Nephew *Laupy*. Hardly well settled under *Quiontey*, the latest of this House when *Tzobu*, a great Tyrant of the other faction, set upon him and slew him. And so the Majesty of the Blood Royal being trod under foot, the Crown was also tossed from one hand to another, and made a Prey unto the strongest: there being of the Race of this *Tzobu* eight Kings, Reigning sixty two years; Of the Race of *Dian*, five Kings, who Reigned thirty one; of the Race of *Tzoy*, three only who Reigned thirty seven; of the Race of *Tenco*, one and twenty, who held the Crown 294 years, and eight there were who Reigned 120 years, of the House of *Tautzon*. Of other upstart Families to the number of five, were fourteen Kings also, who Governed only for the space of sixty six years: And then one *Zaitzon*, deriving himself from *Vitey*, the first King of the Country, obtained the Kingdom which he and seventeen of his Posterity, for the space of 320 years, Governed with much Peace and Honour. Forfar, the last King of that Royal Family, foretold by Prophecy that he should be deprived of his Kingdom by one who had an

hundred

hundred Eyes, neglected the *Advertisement*, as unworthy credit: but it fell out agreeable to that Prediction, when vanquished by *Chifan-baan* (which word signifieth an *hundred Eyes*) Lieutenant unto *Ufan*, a *Tartarian* Prince, but Feudatary and Vassal to the *Great Cham*. *China* thus made a Province of the *Tartarians*, was Governed for the space of 93 years, under nine *Tartar* Kings, Tributaries to the *Great Cham* and dependants on him: the *Chams* themselves many times passing into *China*, and abiding there according as their pleasures or affairs did invite them to it, which occasioned such a continual intercourse betwixt those of *China* and *Cathay*, that they have much participated ever since that time of the manners and customs of each other. But here it is to be observed, That the *Tartars* spent almost as much time in the Conquest of *China*, as they did in the possession of it; the war being first begun *Anno* 1206, finished 1268, the *Tartars* being totally routed when they had Reigned here 90 years only, that is to say, *Anno* 1358 or thereabouts. For then happened that a mean Person called *Hugh*, considering with himself the discontentedness of the *Chineses* under so long Bondage, the Luxury of the *Tartars* effeminated with the pleasures of that Country, and the unwarlike temper of *Gino Cham*, then Reigning over all in the City of *Cambalu*, raised to himself so strong a Party, that in a short time he drove the *Tartars* out of all; forcing them to betake themselves to those parts of the *Eastern Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom of *Nieuche*.

1. Finally turning towards the West, he not only recover'd back to *China* such parts thereof as had been laid unto *Cathay*, and incorporated with it by the *Tartars*; but growing thereby a formidable Neighbour to the *Cham* himself; Advanced for this great Service to the Crown of *China*, *Anno* 1269, he took unto himself the name of *Hungus* (our late Writers commonly call him *Hombu*) which signifieth as much as the *Famous Warrior*, and gave unto his Children and their Posterity, the name of the *Taingian* Family; which they still continue. For the recovery of this Country, great *Tamberlane* mustereth up his Forces, and though *Hombu* brought into the Field 350000 Horse and Foot, yet nothing could resist the powerful Genius of that mighty Conquerour, who obtained here a signal Victory with the death of 60000 *Chineses*: but wisely moderating his prosperity; and mainly bent upon his War against the *Turks*, he thought it his best and safest way to let the people of *China* have a King of their own, imposing on him a Fine of 300000 Crowns in ready money, a certain annual Tribute (long time after paid) with certain other conditions, which as they were pleasing to the Victor, so they were not destructive to the vanquished. By means hereof it came to pass, that such an long communication in affairs of State, having passed between *China* and *Cathay* (those of *China* in old times Lording it over part of the *Cathayans*, as the *Cathayans* in late times did over the *Chineses*) there grew a great resemblance between both Nations, in Manners, Conditions, Arts and Manufactures, as before is said, which circumstances layed together, may afford some reason why in some Writers, easily misguided by such probabilities, *Cathay* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the same. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinois* extend in old times only over part of *Seythia*, but also over part of *India*, and some of the *Oriental* Islands. But the Princes of the House of *Hombu*, finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their desires, abandoned all the Accessories and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereto not only by their own moderation, but by some misfortunes which befell them. For as we find that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempests, lost no fewer than 260 of their Ships and Gallies, resolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the Seas, which had used them so unkindly: So the *Chinois* having received a great overthrow, and loss of 800 Ships, near unto *Zeilan*, they freed all the Islands from obedience unto them, and contented themselves with the bounds which Nature had bestowed on them.

And of their moderation herein we have a very rare example: For when the People of *Corea*, a small Island abutting on the Confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japonites*, they submitted themselves unto the King of *China*; who having repulsed the Enemy, and thereby freed his own Country from danger, presently re-delivers over unto the *Coreans*, their Town and Liberty. A rare fact of a contented people, which whether it favoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this Family hath the Realm continued under 15 Kings, for the space of 266 years and upward, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Boneg*: who being the twelfth of this Line, succeeded his elder Brother, unfortunately slain with a fall from a Horse, Reported for a Prince of good disposition, great judgment, and a severe Justiciary. This *Boneg* (otherwise called *Vanley*) begun his Reign, 1573. Governing this Kingdom in great prosperity and glory for the space of 40 years and upwards; when causing the Christian Subjects and the *Jesuits* their Converters to be hardly dealt with, and denying Justice to the *Eastern Tartars* for the many wrongs done them by his Prefects in the Province of *Leaotong*, he drew that People into Arms, as it marked out for Executioners of Divine displeasure. Stript by them in the year 1618, of a part of *Leaotong*, and braved by their Forces within sight of *Peking*, he contracted some melancholick Distempers, of which he died about two years after, leaving the Crown to his Son *Taichangus*, who having held it but four months, left it, and all the troubles of it to his Son *Theinckius*, a Valiant Prince and fortunate against the *Tartars*, but of short continuance. For dying in the year 1627, he was succeeded in that Kingdom by his Brother *Zunchinius*, a Prince of contrary disposition, cruelly bent, a great Oppressor of his Subjects; and for these causes ill beloved; yet they continued in obedience (though for fear rather of the *Tartars*, than for love of him) until the year 1640 or thereabouts. At what time the people in many places oppressed with Taxes, and in the Northern parts with Famine, arise in eight Companies of Armies, which growing wanton by success, and warring upon one another, they are at last reduced under two chief Leaders, that is to say, *Lycungzus* and *Changhienchungus*.

These two being come to an agreement took their several ways, the last of them falling into *Suchuen*, whose villanies and deserved destruction we have there related. *Lycungzus* the more fortunate villain, in the year 1641, besieged *Chifang*, the chief City of the Province of *Honan*, a place of great strength, but far greater riches; on the ruin whereof by the King's improvidence, and his subduing the whole Province of *Xenji*, he took to himself the Title of King, and would be called *Lycungzus* the *Prosperous*; and not long after easing the people of the Taxes which the avaricious King had imposed upon them, putting the Tax-masters to death, and gaining upon all sorts of men by his courteous usage, he took unto himself the name of Emperour. *Zunchinius* succeeds his Brother, hindered by Factions in the Court, from sending seasonable Forces against the Rebels, who passing over the great River *Crocerus* without any resistance prevailed in all places where they came, even to the taking of the great City of *Peking*, and the Palace Royal; at the hearing whereof, the Emperour seeing to way to escape their hands, hanged himself in his own Orchard, *Anno* 1644; his example therein followed by the Emperess and his principal Servants. The body of the Emperour cut in pieces, his two younger Sons beheaded, the principal Magistrates murdered, and that great City sacked by command of the Victor, Forced to remove back again to *Xenji* by *Ufangueius* Commander of the Army in *Leaotong*, who called in the *Tartars* to revenge those Outrages, the Rebels taking with them all the Wealth and Treasure which the Emperours of the *Taimingian* Family had amassed together in the space of 260 years and upwards. *Zungteus* the King of the *Tartars* having thus got the City of *Peking*, died presently after, leaving his Son at nine years

hundred Eyes, neglected the *Advertisement*, as unworthy credit: but it fell out agreeable to that Prediction, when vanquished by *Chifan-baan* (which word signifieth an *hundred Eyes*) Lieutenant unto *Ufan*, a Tartarian Prince, but Feudatary and Vassal to the Great Cham. China thus made a Province of the Tartarians, was Governed for the space of 93 years, under nine Tartar Kings, Tributaries to the Great Cham and dependants on him: the Chams themselves many times passing into China, and abiding there according as their pleasures or affairs did invite them to it, which occasioned such a continual intercourse betwixt those of China and Cathay, that they have much participated ever since that time of the manners and customs of each other. But here it is to be observed, That the Tartars spent almost as much time in the Conquest of China, as they did in the possession of it; the war being first begun Anno 1206, finished 1268, the Tartars being totally routed when they had Reigned here 90 years only, that is to say, Anno 1358 or thereabouts. For then happened that a mean Person called *Hugh*, considering with himself the discontentedness of the Chinese under so long Bondage, the Luxury of the Tartars effeminated with the pleasures of that Country, and the unwarlike temper of *Gino Cham*, then Reigning over all in the City of *Cambalu*, raised to himself so strong a Party, that in a short time he drove the Tartars out of all; forcing them to betake themselves to those parts of the Eastern Tartars, which now make up the Kingdom of *Nieuche*.

1. Finally turning towards the West, he not only recover'd back to China such parts thereof as had been laid unto Cathay, and incorporated with it by the Tartars; but growing thereby a formidable Neighbour to the Cham himself; Advanced for this great Service to the Crown of China, Anno 1269, he took unto himself the name of *Hungus* (our late Writers commonly call him *Hombu*) which signifieth as much as the *Famous Warrior*, and gave unto his Children and their Posterity, the name of the *Taingian* Family; which they still continue. For the recovery of this Country, great *Tamberlane* mustereth up his Forces, and though *Hombu* brought into the Field 350000 Horse and Foot, yet nothing could resist the powerful Genius of that mighty Conquerour, who obtained here a signal Victory with the death of 60000 Chinese: but wisely moderating his prosperity; and mainly bent upon his War against the Turks, he thought it his best and safest way to let the people of China have a King of their own, imposing on him a Fine of 300000 Crowns in ready money, a certain annual Tribute (long time after paid) with certain other conditions, which as they were pleasing to the Victor, so they were not destructive to the vanquished. By means hereof it came to pass, that such an long communication in affairs of State, having passed between China and Cathay (those of China in old times Lording it over part of the Cathayans, as the Cathayans in late times did over the Chinese) there grew a great resemblance between both Nations, in Manners, Conditions, Arts and Manufactures, as before is said, which circumstances layed together, may afford some reason why in some Writers, easily misguided by such probabilities, Cathay and China have been reckoned to be one and the same. Nor did the Empire of the Chinese extend in old times only over part of *Seythia*, but also over part of *India*, and some of the *Oriental* Islands. But the Princes of the House of *Hombu*, finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their desires, abandoned all the Accessories and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereto not only by their own moderation, but by some misfortunes which befell them. For as we find that the Romans having by the fury of two violent tempests, lost no fewer than 260 of their Ships and Gallies, resolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the Seas, which had used them so unkindly: So the Chinese having received a great overthrow, and loss of 800 Ships, near unto *Zeilan*, they freed all the Islands from obedience unto them, and contented themselves with the bounds which Nature had bestowed on them.

And of their moderation herein we have a very rare example: For when the People of *Corea*, a small Island abutting on the Confines of China, were invaded by the Japonites, they submitted themselves unto the King of China; who having repulsed the Enemy, and thereby freed his own Country from danger, presently re-delivers over unto the Coreans, their Town and Liberty. A rare fact of a contented people, which whether it favoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this Family hath the Realm continued under 15 Kings, for the space of 266 years and upward, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Boneg*: who being the twelfth of this Line, succeeded his elder Brother, unfortunately slain with a fall from a Horse, Reported for a Prince of good disposition, great judgment, and a severe Justiciary. This *Boneg* (otherwise called *Vanley*) begun his Reign, 1573. Governing this Kingdom in great prosperity and glory for the space of 40 years and upwards; when causing the Christian Subjects and the Jesuits their Converters to be hardly dealt with, and denying Justice to the Eastern Tartars for the many wrongs done them by his Prefects in the Province of *Leaotong*, he drew that People into Arms, as it marked out for Executioners of Divine displeasure. Stript by them in the year 1618, of a part of *Leaotong*, and braved by their Forces within sight of *Peking*, he contracted some melancholick Distempers, of which he died about two years after, leaving the Crown to his Son *Taichangus*, who having held it but four months, left it, and all the troubles of it to his Son *Theinckius*, a Valiant Prince and fortunate against the Tartars, but of short continuance. For dying in the year 1627, he was succeeded in that Kingdom by his Brother *Zunchinius*, a Prince of contrary disposition, cruelly bent, a great Oppressor of his Subjects; and for these causes ill beloved; yet they continued in obedience (though for fear rather of the Tartars, than for love of him) until the year 1640 or thereabouts. At what time the people in many places oppressed with Taxes, and in the Northern parts with Famine, arise in eight Companies of Armies, which growing wanton by success, and warring upon one another, they are at last reduced under two chief Leaders, that is to say, *Lycungzus* and *Changhienchungus*.

These two being come to an agreement took their several ways, the last of them falling into *Suchuen*, whose villanies and deserved destruction we have there related. *Lycungzus* the more fortunate villain, in the year 1641, besieged *Chifang*, the chief City of the Province of *Honan*, a place of great strength, but far greater riches; on the ruin whereof by the King's improvidence, and his subduing the whole Province of *Xenji*, he took to himself the Title of King, and would be called *Lycungzus* the *Prosperous*; and not long after easing the people of the Taxes which the avaricious King had imposed upon them, putting the Tax-masters to death, and gaining upon all sorts of men by his courteous usage, he took unto himself the name of Emperour. *Zunchinius* succeeds his Brother, hindered by Factions in the Court, from sending seasonable Forces against the Rebels, who passing over the great River *Crocerus* without any resistance prevailed in all places where they came, even to the taking of the great City of *Peking*, and the Palace Royal; at the hearing whereof, the Emperour seeing to way to escape their hands, hanged himself in his own Orchard, Anno 1644; his example therein followed by the Empress and his principal Servants. The body of the Emperour cut in pieces, his two younger Sons beheaded, the principal Magistrates murdered, and that great City sacked by command of the Victor, Forced to remove back again to *Xenji* by *Ufangueius* Commander of the Army in *Leaotong*, who called in the Tartars to revenge those Outrages, the Rebels taking with them all the Wealth and Treasure which the Emperours of the *Taimingian* Family had amassed together in the space of 260 years and upwards. *Zungteus* the King of the Tartars having thus got the City of *Peking*, died presently after, leaving his Son at nine years

years old to succeed him in that glorious fortune. By him commended to the care and protection of Uncles, who very faithfully discharged the trust reposed in them; infinite numbers of *Tartars* thronging into *China* upon this occasion, and those not only of the Eastern but the Western Nations.

By these the Infant-King was proclaimed Emperour of *China*, by the name of *Xaunchius*, styling the new Imperial Family by the name of *Tailing*, the eldest of the Uncles whom the *Tartars* called *Amavangus*, having the chief conduct of affairs.

Usanguetus by the *Tartars* not long after is declared King of *Xenfi*, out of which he shortly drove the Rebels, and possessed himself of it; *Lycungzus* being either killed in the fight, or else otherwise lost. *Hunquangus* Nephew to *Vanley*, and Cousin German to *Zunchinius*, elected Emperour by the *Chineses* of the Southern parts, is opposed herein by one that pretended himself to be the eldest Son of *Zunchinius*; which division gave the *Tartars* a notable victory over all their Forces, and the great City of *Nanquin* in reward thereof.

The new Emperour being shortly after betrayed into the hands of the *Tartars* is by them hanged on the Walls of *Peking*; which death the *Tartars* count most noble. The pretended Son of *Zunchinius* discovered, and served in the same sort also. And though *Loangus* first, and afterwards *Jungley* and *Lu. Regulus*, were chosen and declared Emperours by their several parties, Anno 1648. Yet nothing could prevail against the fortune of the *Tartars*, *Loangus* being forced to put himself into their power, *Jungley* to fly into the Mountains, and *Lu. Regulus* to secure himself in the Isle of *Cheuxan*.

What hath succeeded since that year, future times will shew.

The Reverend Author has given an imperfect account of the progress of the *Tartarian* War, from the year 1644, to 1648, which from the *Annals of China* I shall farther enlarge.

Usanquei perceiving when it was too late, that he had imprudently called in Lions to curb the insolences of the *China*-Dogs, took upon him by the permission of the *Tartar* King, the Title and Honour of King of *Xenfi*; and had for his Seat the City *Singnan*, which a little before had been ruined by *Li* a Rebel *Chinian*. The *Tartar* having by this time, made himself master of all the Northern Provinces, proceeded to the Conquest of the Southern. In 1645, *Hunquan* the Nephew of *Vanley*, was proclaimed King of *China* at *Nan-kim*, but was soon after taken prisoner with his Son *Zunchim*, and sent to *Peking*, where they were both Hanged. From thence the *Tartar* goes to *Chekiam*, where he found *Lavam* President, who wisely refused the Title of King of *China* when it was offered him: When the *Tartar* came before this City, he kneeled upon the wall and submitted to them without any resistance, saying, *He willingly Sacrificed himself for the safety of his people*.

In the Province of *Fokien*, *Vanley* the Nephew of *Lumvu*, had been proclaimed King, but upon the coming of the *Tartars*, the Province was reduced without resistance, and he was put to death. *Chimchilum*, a Native of this Province was then Admiral of *China*, who had before been Servant to the *Portuguese* at *Macao*, and was by them Baptized by the name of *Nicholas*; from small beginnings by a Trade with the *Spaniards* and *Hollanders*, he became very rich, and turn'd Pirate, pretendingly submitting with his Fleet, first to *Zunruu*, and after he was slain to the *Tartar*, who gave him a Government to blind him; and so surpriz'd him by sending for him to Court: *Quesium* his Son escaped their hands, and took upon him the Command of his Father's Fleet, and would never after trust the *Tartar* more.

In the mean time the *Tartar* proceeded to the Conquest of *Quantum*, and *Quamsi*, the two most Southern Provinces, in which he met with little resistance except in *Quamsi*, where *Kiu Thomas* was President, and *Chin Lucas* (both Christians) was his General; and they had

got together a great Army, with which they fought and beat the *Tartar* Army. After this Victory, they elected *Yumlie*, of the Family of *Vanley*, King of *China*, who settled at *Chaokin* a City of *Quantum*. This Prince suffered his Son and Wife to be Baptized as is said above. Hereupon *Vama* Priest, and *Zuesim* the Admiral, recovered the greatest part of *Fokien*, and *Kim* Governour of *Kiamfi*, revolted from the *Tartar* at the same time.

And in the North, *Ho* and *Kiam*, two other *Chineses* took Arms against the *Tartars*, and got great Armies together. *Ho* took many Cities in *Xenfi*, and besieged without success the Metropolis. And *Kiam* had in the same Province under him, 140000 Horse, and more Foot, and he beat the *Tartar* in two set Battels, so that they durst fight him no more in open field; but by Craft, Strategems, Gold, Promises, Delays and Treachery, they at last prevailed against him, and in four years recovered again, all the South Provinces. On the West of *China* in the Province of *Suchuen*, *Chambienchun* got together a parcel of Rogues, and over-run the Provinces of *Huquam*, *Honan*, *Nankim* and *Kiamfi*; and at last spent the dreggs of his fury upon *Suchuen*: He murdered the Governour of it; would destroy whole Streets for the offence of one of the Inhabitants, yet at the same time he pretended to be a great friend to the Christians. In the year 1646, he slew all the Inhabitants of *Chimtu* the Capital of *Xenfi*, and did so many other Barbarous Actions, that the *Tartar* sent a small party against him who slew him, he being hated by all men for his exorbitant cruelty; whereupon, the People of *Suchuen* submitted to the *Tartar* as to their deliverer. By this time that Prince, was master of all the Northern and Western Provinces, only four of the Southern Provinces viz. *Chekiam*, *Fokien*, *Quantum* and *Quamsi*, were under *Yumlie* the last of the *Chinian* Kings: The *Tartar* sat down before the Metropolis of *Quantum*, and after a year's Siege took it, the 24th of November, 1650; in the seventh year of *Yumlie's* Reign, in which there perished 100000 *Chinians*: From thence he went against *Chaokin* his Royal City, but *Yumlie* distrusting his Forces, fled first into *Quamsi*, and from thence fled to the King of *Pegu*. This year *Xunchi*, the *Tartar* King of *China*, being fourteen years of Age, and married to a Daughter of the King of the *West Tartars*, upon the death of *Amavam* his Guardian, took upon him the Government of that Kingdom. He settled the Laws, Letters, and Customs of *China*, with some small changes, retained the six Supreme Courts, putting in an equal number of *Chinians* and *Tartars*; committing the Civil Government to the *Chinians*, and the military to the *Tartars*. In 1661, *Quisim* the Admiral, beat the *Hollanders* out of *Formosa*, but hearing the next year the *Hollanders* had made a League with the *Tartars* against him, he died of despair and rage. *Yumlie* having fled into *Pegu*, as is abovesaid, continued there till 1661, and then upon the threatening Letters of the *Tartar*, was delivered up by the King of *Pegu* with all his Kindred, and hanged by the *Tartars*.

The same year, *Xunchi* the *Tartar* King of *China*, died of the Small-pox, and *Cambi* his Son, a Child of less than eight years of age succeeded him. The first twelve years of his Reign were very peaceable, but in 1673, a new war broke out; *Usanquei*, who had called in the *Tartars* and was now Vice-Roy of *Yunnan*, refused to come to the Court without a guard of 80000 men; hereupon a War ensued, and he soon possessed himself of *Suchuen*, *Queicheu* and half *Huquam*. In 1675, the Vice-Roys of *Fokien* and *Quantum*, revolted, with them joyned the Inhabitants of *Formosa*, and there had been an end of the *Tartar* Kingdom if they had all united against him; but the Prince of *Fokien* fell upon the Governour of *Quantum* and a war followed between them, till the *Tartar* came down against both, and put an end to it by their ruin. But *Usanquei* held out still and defended his Province against the *Tartars*, till the year 1679, in which he died, and *Humbor* his Son was made King in his stead; who in the year 1681, was reduced by the *Tartar* to that necessity

cessity, that he hang'd himself to avoid falling into his hands. Thus ended the *Tartar War* in *China*, which was began in 1616, and lasted 65 years, and had never in all probability had this effect, if the *Chinians* by their own divisions, animosities and Imprudence had not promoted the Conquest of their Country.

In the year 1682, *Cam-Hi* the present *Tartar King* of *China*, being now the peaceable possessor of the whole Kingdom of *China*, resolved to visit his paternal Kingdom, and made a Royal progress into *East Tartary* with an Army of 70000 men; and the next year he went into *West Tartary* in the same manner, and forty of the Princes there submitted to him quietly, and became his Subjects: an account of both these Journeys were written by one *Verbiest* a *Jesuit*, who was in both these Expeditions. This potent Prince (if still living) Reigns over *China*, and all the *Tartars* beyond *Imaus*, to the borders of *Russia*; which sufficiently shews there is no other great *Cham* of *Tartary* besides he.

A CATALOGUE of the KINGS of C H I N A.

Before
Christ.

- 2697 1 *Hoam Ti*, the Founder of their Monarchy, was Elected at twelve years of Age, Reigned 100 years.
- 2597 2 *Xao Hago*, 84.
- 1517 3 *Chuin Hio*, 78.
- 1457 4 *Ti Co*, 70.
- 1397 5 *Yao*, 100. This Prince was their Law-giver, the author of their Calendar, and instituter of the six Courts of Justice.
- 1297 6 *Xun* began his Reign under *Yao* but he Reigned alone 50.
- 1217 7 *Ta Yu Chuenbio* the Nephew of *Xun*, was the Founder of a new Family, which under seventeen Kings, Reigned 458 years. He Reigned 20.
- 8 *Ti Ki*, 9.
- 9 *Tai Cam*, 29.
- 10 *Chum Cam*, 13.
- 1157 11 *Ti Siam* 27.
- 12 *Hanzo*, an Usurper 40.
- 1097 13 *Xao Cam* of the former House, 22.
- 14 *Ti Xu*, 17.
- 15 *Ti Hoa*, 26.
- 16 *Ti Main*, 18.
- 17 *Ti Sie*, 16.
- 18 *Ti Pu Kiam*, 59.
- 1977 19 *Ti Kium*, 21.
- 20 *Ti Kin*, 21.
- 1857 22 *Ti Pu Xiam*, 13.
- 23 *Ti Cao*, 11.
- 24 *Ti Fa*.
- 25 *Kie*, 13. This proved so bad a Prince, that he was deserted by all his Subjects and died in Exile.
- 1797 26 *Chimtam* the Nephew of *Hoamti*. was Elected at 87 years of Age, and founded the Family of *Xam*, which lasted 644, under 28 Kings. he Reigned 13.
- 27 *Tai Kia*, 33. Grand-Child of *Chimtam*.
- 1737 28 *Vo Tim*. 29.
- 29 *Tai Kem*, 25.
- 30 *Siao Kia*, 17.
- 1677 31 *Yum Ki*, 12.
- 32 *Tai Vu*, 75.
- 33 *Chum Tim*, 13.
- 34 *Vai Cin*, 15.
- 35 *Ho Tan Kia*, 9.
- 36 *Zu Ye*, 19.
- 37 *Zu Sin*, 16.
- 38 *Vo Kia*, 25.
- 1497 39 *Zu Tim*, 32.
- 1437 40 *Nan Kem*, 25.
- 41 *Tam Kia*, 7.

- 42 *Puon Kem*, 28.
- 43 *Siao Sin*, 21.
- 1377 44 *Siao Ye*, 28.
- 45 *Vu Tim*, 59.
- 46 *Zu Kem*, 7.
- 47 *Zu Kiu*, .
- 48 *Liu Sin*, 5.
- 49 *Kem Tim*, 21.
- 50 *Un Ye*, 4.
- 1197 51 *Tai Tim*, 3.
- 52 *Ti Ye*, 37.
- 53 *Cheu*, 33.
- 1137 54 *Vu Vam*, 7. The founder of the Family of *Cheu*, which lasted 878 years, under 35 Kings. He came old to the Crown and Reigned 7.
- 55 *Chim Vam*, 37.
- 56 *Cam Vam*, 26.
- 57 *Chao Vaus*, 51.
- 1077 58 *Chao Vam* 2. 51.
- 1017 59 *Mo Vam*, 55. This was the first Prince that began a War with the *Tartars*.
- 60 *Cum Vam*, 12.
- 61 *Ye Vam*, 25.
- 62 *Hiao Vam*, 15.
- 897 63 *Y Vam*, 16.
- 64 *Li Vam*, 51. Died in Exile, having forbidden his People to speak to one another, which they observed three years.
- 837 65 *Siven Vam*, 46.
- 66 *Yeu Vam*, 11. He made the second War upon the *West Tartars*, in which he was slain.
- 777 67 *Pim Vam*, 51.
- 68 *Huo Vam*, 23.
- 717 69 *Chuam Vam*, 15.
- 70 *Li Vam*, 5.
- 71 *Hoei Vam*, 52.
- 72 *Siam Vam*, 33.
- 73 *Kim Vam*, 6.
- 74 *Quam Vam*, 21.
- 597 75 *Kien Vam*, 14.
- 76 *Lim Vam*, 27.
- 77 *Kim Vam*, 25.
- 537 78 *Kim Vam*, 2. 44.
- 477 79 *Yuen Vam*, 7.
- 80 *Cbin Tim Vam*, 28.
- 81 *Cao Vam*, 15.
- 82 *Guei Lie Vam*, 24.
- 417 83 *Ngan Vam*, 26.
- 84 *Lie Vam*, 7.
- 85 *Hien Vam*, 48.
- 357 86 *Xin Cin Vam*, 6.
- 87 *Nan Vam*, 59.
- 88 *Cheu Kiun*, 7.
- 89 *Chuam Siam Vam*, Reigned but three days; yet he Founded the Family of *Cin*, which lasted 43 years under four Kings.
- 237 90 *Xi Hoam Ti*, 37. A warlike Prince, subdued six Kingdoms, and sent his Fleets to *Bengala*. In the 24th year of his Reign, he founded the famous Wall against the *Tartars*.
- 91 *Uluxi*, 2. Son of the former. 3.
- 92 *Im Vam*, 45. days.
- 93 *Cao Zu* or *Ieupam*, Founded the fifth Family called *Han*, which lasted 426 years, under 25 Kings. 12.
- 94 *Hoei Ti*, 7.
- 95 *Quie Hea* a Woman, Usurped and Reigned eight years.
- 96 *Ven Ti*, Son of the Founder. 23.
- 97 *Kim Ti*, 17.
- 98 *Vu Ti*, 54.
- 99 *Chao Ti*, 13.
- 100 *Siven Ti*, 25.
- 57 101 *Yuen Ti*, 16.
- 102 *Chim Ti*, 26.

- 102 *Hiao Ngai Ti*, 6. } Is the end of the one, and
 103 *Hiao Pim Ti*, 13 } the beginning of the
 other's Reign, was our Bleſſed Saviour Born.

Anno
 Chriſti.

- 58 104 *Hiao Pim Ti*, 5. He was murdered by *Vam Mam* his General.
 105 *Ju Zu Yin*, 3. Depoſed by the ſame Traytor *Vam Mam*, 14, and then was ſlain.
 106 *Huai Yam Vam*, of the Family of *Kim Ti*, 2.
 107 *Quam Vu Ti*, 3. Elected from the Plough, yet he proved an Excellent Prince.
 108 *Mim Ti*, 18.
 64 109 *Cham Ti*, 13.
 110 *Ho Ti*, 17.
 111 *Xam Ti*, 1.
 112 *Nigan Ti*, 19.
 124 113 *Xun Ti*, 19.
 114 *Chum Ti*, 1.
 115 *Che Ti*, 1.
 116 *Huon Ti*, 12.
 117 *Lum Ti*, 22. Of the Houſe of *Cham Ti*.
 118 *Hien Ti*, 31.
 119 *Chao Lie Vam*, of the Line of *Xim Ti*, the Founder of the Houſe of *Hen Han*, 3.
 120 *Hien Ti*, 41.
 121 *Xi Zu Vu Ti*, 25. Founder of the Family of *Cin*, which under 15 Kings Reigned 135.
 122 *Hoei Ti*, 17.
 304 123 *Huai Ti*, 6. The twentieth Son of the Founder.
 124 *Mim Ti*, 4. A Grand-Child of the Founder.
 125 *Tuen Ti*, 6.
 126 *Mim Ti*, 3.
 127 *Chim Ti*, 17.
 128 *Cam Ti*, 2.
 139 *Mo Ti*, 17.
 130 *Ngai Ti*, 4. Son of *Chim Ti*.
 131 *Ti Ye*, 5.
 132 *Kien Ven Ti*, 2.
 133 *Vu Ti*, 24.
 134 *Ngan Ti*, 22.
 135 *Cum Ti*, 2.
 136 *Cao Zu Vu Ti*, 2. Called alſo *Lieu Vu*, the Founder of the eighth Family called *Sum*, which under eight Kings ſtood 59 years.
 424 137 *Xao Ti*, 1. Depoſed and murdered.
 138 *Ven Ti*, 30.
 149 *Vu Ti*, 11.
 140 *Fi Ti*, 1.
 141 *Mim Ti*, 8.
 142 *Zam Ngu Vam*, 4.
 143 *Xun Ti*, 2.
 144 *Xao Ti*, 4.
 145 *Vu Ti*, 11.
 494 146 *Mim Ti*, 5.
 147 *Hoen Heu* 2.
 148 *Ho Ti*, 1.
 149 *Cao Zu Vu Ti*, The murderer of two Kings and ſix Princes; Founded the Family of *Leam*, which under four Kings laſted 55 years, of which he Reigned 48.
 550 150 *Kien Ven Ti*, 2. } All Sons of the Founder.
 151 *Tuen Ti*, 3. }
 152 *Kim Ti*, 2 }
 153 *Cao Zu Vu Ti*, called alſo *Chim Pa Sien*, Founder of the Family of *Chin*, of which five Kings Reigned 33 years, and he Reigned but 8.
 154 *Ven Ti*, ſeventh Brother of the Founder.
 155 *Lim Hai Vam*, 2.
 156 *Sivem Ti*, 14. Nephew to the Founder.
 157 *Cham Chim Cum*, 7.
 158 *Cao Zu Ven Ti*, called alſo *Yam Kien*, Founder of the Family of *Suy*, which under

- three Kings, laſted 29 years, of which he Reigned 15.
 604 159 *Yam Ti*, Second Son of the Founder, and the murderer of his Father, and Brother. 13.
 160 *Cum Ti*, 1.
 161 *Xin Eao Ti*, Founder of the Family of *Tam*, which under 20 Kings, laſted 289 years; of which he Reigned 9.
 162 *Tai Zum*, 23. A wiſe and good Prince, who was the Eſtabliſher of this Family.
 163 *Cao Zum*, 34.
Veu Heu, a Woman, 21. Not numbered.
 164 *Chum Zum*, 5. Son of *Cao Zum*.
 165 *Juy Zum*, 2. Son of *Cao Zum*.
 166 *Huen Zum*, 44. The Reſtorer of his Family.
 167 *So Zum*, 6.
 168 *Tai Zum*, 17.
 169 *Te Zum*, 25.
 795 170 *Xun Zum*, 1.
 171 *Hien Zum*, 15.
 172 *Mo Zum*, 4.
 173 *Kim Zum*, 2.
 847 174 *Sinem Zum*, 13. Nephew of *Hien Zum*, Elected againſt a Son of *Ven Zum* and proved a wiſe man.
 175 *T Zum*, 14.
 176 *Hi Zum*, 15.
 177 *Cao Zum*, 16.
 904 178 *Chao Sinen Zum*, 2.
 189 *Tai Zu*, 6.
 180 *Mo Ti*, 10.
 181 *Chuam Zum*, 3.
 182 *Mim Zum*, 8.
 183 *Min Zum*, 1.
 184 *Fi Ti* or *Lovam*, 1.
 185 *Cao Zu*, the Father in Law of *Mim Zum*, Uſurped the Throne and Founded the Family of *Heu Cin*, which laſted but eleven years, of which he Reigned 7.
 186 *Ci Vam*, 4.
 187 *Cao Zu*, Founder of the Family of *Heu Han* which laſted but four years. 2.
 188 *Yn Ti*, 2.
 199 *Tai Zu*, Founder of the Family of *Heu Cheu*, nine years under three Kings, of which he Reigned 3.
 190 *Xi Cum*, 6.
 191 *Cum Ti*, a few Months.
 161 192 *Tai Zu*, 17 years, The Founder of the Family of *Heu Cheu*, in which 18 Kings Reigned 319 years. This was one of their beſt Princes and Head of the Happieſt Families.
 193 *Tai Zum*, 21.
 194 *Chin Zum*, 25. In his time the *Tartar War* began,
 195 *Gin Zum*, 41.
 196 *Yum Zum*, 4.
 197 *Xin Zum*, 18.
 198 *Che Zum*, 15.
 1100 199 *Hoei Zum*, 25.
 200 *Kim Zum*, 1.
 201 *Cao Zum*, 36. This Prince ſubmitted to the *Tartars*, and own'd himſelf their Subject.
 202 *Hiao Zum*, 27.
 203 *Quinn Zum*, 5.
 204 *Nim Zum*, 30. In his time, about the year 1204, the *Weſt Tartars* fell under the Family of *Tuen*, which 32 years after Conquered *China*.
 1225 205 *Li Zum*, 40. This Prince joined with the *Weſtern Tartars* to ruin the *Eastern*, and at laſt effected it; to the ruin of *China*.
 1264 206 *Tu Zum*, 10. A *Luxurious* Prince, who hereby provoked his Subjects, to join with the *Tartars* againſt him.
 208 *Cum*

208 Cum Zum, 2. } The Sons of Tu Zum, all
209 Tuan Zum, 2. } Children; the last was
210 Ti Pim, 2. } thrown by his Mother into
the Sea, and the Kingdom possessed by the
Tartar.

The Monarchy of China had subsisted under
nineteen Families 4222 years, when it was
now first forced to submit to the Yoke of
a Foreign Prince. The King of the West
Tartars, who yet by the Sincerity, Faith,
Love and Beneficence, that he and his Suc-
cessors shewed to the Chinians, (tho' a Con-
quered Nation) so obliged and won them
that they call his Race *Xim Chao*, the holy
Government to this day.

1281 211 Xi Zu, 15. The Son of Tai Zu King of Tar-
tary, and Founder of the Family of Yuen,
which under nine Kings lasted 89 years.
This was a brave, prudent, valiant King,
and a great Lover of Learning.

212 Chim Cum, or Zum, 13.
213 Vu Zum, 4.
214 Gin Zum, 9.
215 Ym Zi, 3. The Son of Chim Zum.
216 Tai Tim, 5.
217 Mim Zum, 1.
218 Ven Zum, 3.
219 Xun Ti Ti, 35, a good natured but Luxuri-
ous Prince, so that one *Chu* a Servant of
the Bonzi's, gathered a Band of Thieves and
beat the effeminate Tartars in every place.

1370 220 Tai Zu, or Cheu, 31. The Conquerour of
the Tartars, and Founder of the Family of
Chau, which under sixteen Kings lasted
276 years.

221 Xin Vu Ti, 4. Grand-Child of Tai Zu.
222 Chim Zu, alias Yum Lo Son of the Founder,
13.
223 Gin Zum, 1.
1426 224 Siven Zum or Te, 10.
225 Ym Zum, 14. He led an Army against the
Tartars beyond the Wall, was beaten and
and carried Captive into Tartary where he
died.

226 Kim Ti, or Tay, 7. a Child of two years
of Age.

1457 227 Ym Zum, 8.
1465 228 Hien Zum, 23.
1488 229 Hiao Zum 18.
1506 230 Vu Zum, 16. This Prince would have gon
to War in Person against the Tartars, and
was dissuaded by his Council. The Tartars
in his last year invaded China, and put him
upon thoughts of leaving the North-parts,
which was also opposed by his great Men.

1522 231 Xi Zum, 45. He was but 13 when he began to
Reign; in the 29. year of his Reign, (1551.) the
Tartar brought an Army of 60000 to Peking,
which was beaten by the Chinenses. The next
Year after, he sent an Embassy to excuse
the Inroad, and desire leave to send his
Horses to China for sale as before; which
was at first granted and then revoked.
After this various Rebellions happened in
the Provinces of China; the King neglect-
ing all things and not minding his King-
dom.

1561 232 Mo Zum, 6. A good Prince but impatient of
Advice.

1573 233 Xin Zum, 48. A wise Prince, very just
and merciful. The second year of his
Reign the Tartar was beaten in *Leao-tum*,
by Chin the Prince or Governour of that
Province. In 1597. the East Tartars be-
ing become terrible, a Peace was made
with the Western Tartars, against them. In

1616, The Eastern Tartars began the War
against China, which ended in its Ruin. In
1617, they again invaded China, and gain-
ed a great Victory, 50000 Chinians being
slain in that Battel. This King is often call-
ed *Kan Lu*.

234 Quam Zum, Reigned but one Month.

1620 235 Hu Zum, 7. He was successful against the Tar-
tars, but ruined by the insurrections of his
own Subjects.

1628 236 Hoai Zum, or Zum Chin, 17. In his time
the War of China with the Tartar, and
with the Rebels in Arms against him, grew
greater. In 1642, Lie one of the Rebels
took the Palace of Peking by Treachery, and
and forced this poor King to hang himself.
Ufanquie, General of the Army against the
Tartar, joyned with them to revenge this
Death of his Master.

1644 237 Xun Chi, the first of the present Tartar Kings
of China; his Father dying in the Expedi-
tion and never being inthroned.

1662 238 Cam Hi, the perfecter of the Conquest of
China, and present King for ought that
is known.

A T A B L E of the XXII Families that
have Reigned in C H I N A.

	Kings	Years
I Hia.	17	458
II Xam.	28	644
III Cheu.	35	873
IIII Cin.	3	43
V Han.	27	426
VI Heu Han.	2	44
VII Cin.	15	155
VIII Sum.	7	59
IX Ci.	5	23
X Leam.	4	55
XI Chin.	5	33
XII Suy.	3	29
XIII Tam.	29	289
XIV Heu Leam.	2	16
XV Heu Tam.	4	13
XVI Hen Cin.	2	11
XVII Hen Han.	2	4
XVIII Hen Cheu.	3	9
XIX Sum.	18	319
XX Yuen.	9	89
XXI Mim.	21	276
XXII Cim.	2	40

From Chin the eleventh Family this Country
took the name of China; and at this day is
called Chin in Indostan.

The Government of this Kingdom is meerly Tyran-
nical; there being no other Lord but the King, no Title
of dignity or Nobility ever known amongst them; nor
Toll or Duty paid unto any but him: the younger Prin-
ces of the Blood being maintained by Stipends, and an-
nual Pensions, large enough to support their Trains; but
without any Lands or Tenants, for fear of drawing
on them any great dependances. The King alone is the
general Land-lord, and him the Subjects do not only re-
verence as a Prince, but adore like a God. For in the
chief City of every Province, they have the King's Por-
traiture made of Gold, which is always covered with a
Vail: and at every new-moon, the Magistrates and o-
ther inferiour Officers use to kneel before it, as if it were
the King himself. By these and other Artifices of like
contrivement, the Common people are kept in such
awe and fear, that they are rather Slaves than Subjects:
calling their King *the Lamp of the World*, and *Son of the
everlasting sun*, without whose light they were able to
see nothing.

In every Province, except *Pequin* and *Tolombia* only. he hath his Deputies or *Vice-Roys*, maintained by liberal stipends from the publick Treasury: but those he governeth by himself. Some Laws they have, and those affirmed to have been written 2000 years since, as is like enough they were. So strongly do they favour of the ignorance and *Atheism* of the darkeſt times: the manner of life by them allowed, moſt obſcene and ſhameleſs; their *Idolatry* moſt groſs and palpable; their *Exorcifms* ridiculous, and the proſtitutions of their *Virgins* moſt abominable; and the variety of ſenſual prophanations, to an illuminated mind moſt baſe and contemptible. In a word, nothing commendable in their courſe of life (notwithſtanding the brags which they make of themſelves) but their Arts and Induſtry.

The Forces which this King is able to draw into the Field muſt needs be infinite, conſidering that incredible number of Subjects under his command. For whereas *France* is thought to contain 15 millions of people, *Italy* with the Iſles, as many; *Germany*, with the *Switzers* and *Belgick* Provinces, about that proportion; *Spain* not above ſeven millions; and the Kingdom of *England* about four; this Country only is computed at 70 millions; which is more by 15 millions than all together. Proportionably his Levies muſt be ſo much greater, than can be ordinarily raiſed out of thoſe Countries. But becauſe it may be thought that his Subjects, though more in number, may be leſs trained to the wars than thoſe of *Europe*; the contrary is affirmed by ſuch as have taken an eſtimate of the Forces, which every Province is bound to entertain in continual readineſs. And by that eſtimate it appeareth, that in the year 1557. (though a time of peace) there were diſperſed in the fifteen Provinces of this Realm, to the number of five millions, 846500 Foot, and 948350 Horſe. Which notwithstanding it may be ſaid, and not unfitly, that he is able to bring into the field, amongſt ſuch multitudes of Men, but few good Soldiers, the people being generally unwarlike, and of no great courage, as was before obſerved of them in their general Character. Nor is he leſs powerful for Sea-service, having continually great Fleets for the guard of his Coaſts, in continual attendance, and many more ready to ſet out when there is occaſion: inſomuch that the *Chinois* uſe to ſay in the way of a Proverb. That their King is able to make a Bridge of Ships from *China* to *Malaca*, which are 500 Leagues aſunder. Some of theſe Ships (whereof the King hath above a thouſand of his own, beſides thoſe of his Subjects) of great magnificence and beauty: the Officers and Soldiers in all which are exceeding well paid, and rewarded answerably to their merits. And as this King is able to raiſe greater forces than any, from his own eſtates; ſo doth he alſo *de facto* do it, when the urgency of his affairs doth require it of him: his ordinary ſtint being 300000 Foot, and 200000 Horſe, without which compleat number (not only in the muſter-rolls, but in bodies of Men) he vouchſates not to go into the field.

Answerable unto theſe great Levies of Men, muſt be his Revenue: which they who have travelled in this ſearch, if they tell us true, and do not build upon an hope of not being confuted, (as for my part I fear they do) affirm to be 123 millions of Crowns, answered unto him out of the profits of the Mines of Gold, Silver, and other Metals: the tenth of all commodities which the Earth brings forth; tolls impoſed on that unſpeakable quantity of Merchandize, which paſſeth on ſo many navigable Rivers from one Town to another; the Cuſtoms taken of all thoſe rich wares which are brought into *Europe*, and the Gabel laid on Salt in all parts of his Kingdom. Out of which ſum, the payment of his Fleet diſcharged, the entertainment of his Soldiers ſatisfied, and his Court defrayed, there remaineth forty millions of Crowns *de claro* to be diſpoſed of, either in his treasury or private pleaſures, or the works of magnificence and oſtentation.

And thus far alſo according to the general current of

received opinions have I followed the deſcriptions and affairs of *China*, as a diſtinct Country from *Cathay*; not ignorant that there are many probable reaſons which might incline us to believe them to be one and the ſame; for firſt it is alledged in favour of this opinion, That it is neither new nor ſtrange, for one and the ſame Country, to be called by divers names, according to the languages and fancies of ſeveral Nations; that Country which we call *Germany*, being by the Natives called *Dutch-land*, not long ſince known moſt commonly by the name of *Almaine*; that part of *Britain* which we call *Wales*, being by the *French* called *Gailles*, and *Cambria* by the *Latine* Writers; thoſe mountainous people which the *Romans* know by the name of *Rheti*, being by ſome of our Northern *Latinifls* called *Conſederati Cani*, *Campi Camini* by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Grauntpunnor* by the neighbouring *Dutch*, and finally *Griſons* by the *French*, which four laſt names do carry all the ſame ſenſe and ſignification, though in different words; that *China* it ſelf, is by the Natives called *Tabinco*, *Tzynin* by the *Arabians*, *Mangi* by *Paulus Venetus*, and by the neighbouring Nations *Sanglag*; that as it cannot be enforced from the like diverſity of appellations, that *Almany*, *Germany*, and *Dutch-land*, make three ſeveral Countries, (& ſic de cæteris) ſo neither can it be concluded on the ſame grounds, that *China* and *Cathay* make two ſeveral Empires. In the next place it is alledged, That ſince by later Voyages and Navigations, this mighty Kingdom hath been diſcovered and made known unto us of *Europe* by the name of *China*, the name and Empire of *Cathay* hath grown out of knowledge. For proof whereof they bring in the Itinerary of *Benedictus à Goeſ*, a Jeſuit, who in the year 1605, croſſing from the North-eaſt parts of *Persia* to the Realm of *China*, and naming all the ſeveral Countries and Towns of any note which lay in his way, makes no mention of any ſuch Country as *Cathay*; nor any ſuch Prince as the Great *Cham* thereof: telling us alſo that *Martin Martinus*, who had lived long in *China*, in his Books entituled *Bellum Tartaricum*, comprehendeth all the Countries betwixt *China* and Mount *Imaus*, under the general Name and Notion of *Western Tartars*, not taking notice of any ſuch Country as *Cathay*; nor of any greater Prince amongſt them, than the King of *Tanguth*; and that *Remuſſo* in his notes on *Paulus Venetus*, reporteth ſome conference which he had with *Chaggenmet* a *Persian* Merchant, who told him, That he had ſeen *Campion* and *Succur* Cities of *Cathay*, in the reign of *Demercan*, which muſt be underſtood of *Cathay* in the general Notion, as it comprehendeth all the *Tartarian* Countries beyond *Imaus*; it being well known that *Campion* and *Succur* are two Cities of *Taguth*, and not of the proper *Cathay*, or *Cathay* ſpecially ſo called. In the third rank of proofs they inſtance in the ſimilarities or reſemblances betwixt both Countries, and both People, which are ſo great and viſible in the temperature of Air, fertility of Soil, and pleaſantneſs of Situation, in Cuſtoms, in Ingenuity, Arts and Manufactures, as may be thought to carry an Identity, or ſimilarity with them; which ſimilarity or identity they do alſo find in *Pequin* the chief City of *China*, and *Cambalu*, the ſuppoſed chief City of *Cathay*, being two words of the ſame ſenſe and ſignification, though of divers ſounds; for *Pequin* ſignifieth the Court or City of the King in the *Chinian* Language, and *Cambalu* ſignifieth the Court or City of the *Cham*, in the Language of *Tartary*. The like they alſo have obſerved of the Royal Palaces, adjoining to the ſaid two Cities, ſo like in the vaſt greatneſs and extent of the outer Walls, the Parks and Forests intermingled, the magnificent form and ſtructure of the inner Palaces, with all the reſt of the particulars before-recited, that a Man might very well conclude them to be one and the ſame; adding withal that ſuch an immense, and unparalleled work, as the great *Cham*'s Palace called *Xaindu*, muſt needs require more hands and a longer time than the great *Chams* (conſidering their continual Wars, and little intervals of leiſure) could beſtow upon it. But their four head-proofs, which

which seem indeed to be the strongest, they derive first from the Testimony of *Benedict à Goes* above-mentioned, who without taking notice of any such Country as *Cathay*, in so long Journey, telleth us that at *Ciales* a City of the Kingdom of *Cascar*, and not far from *China*, he was first informed that *Cathay* and *China* were the same.

2. From the Testimony of an old *Mahometan* Pilgrim, who returning from *Mecca* by *Labor* (the Royal Seat and City of the great *Mongul*) affirmed there that he had lived long in *Cambalu*, the chief City of *Cathay*, which Kingdom had in it one thousand and fifty Cities, the King thereof being a mighty Prince, and having a strength of 400 Elephants brought thither from *Malacca* and *Pegu*, and that much Merchandize was brought into the Country by Sea: which if it be not meant of *China* (to which the story may agree in all particulars) must needs be one of the loudest lies that ever came from the Mouth of a *Mahometan*, or a Pilgrim either; our Geographers finding very few Cities or Towns of note in *Cathay* specially so called, no access thither by Sea for any Merchandize, nor any way to bring those Elephants from *Pegu* and *Malacca*, which the Pilgrim dreamt of.

3. A clear Testimony of some other *Mahometans* repairing to *Pequin* every fifth year, either as Merchants or Ambassadors, or as both together; by whom the *Jesuits* there living were informed, That the Dominions of the *Persian*, and the great *Mongul*, from whence they came, the Kingdom of *China* was called by no other name than by that of *Cathay*, they knowing no other Country of that name but *China* only. And 4. from the asseveration of *Pontogia* another *Jesuit*, who in his Letters dated from *Pequin*, much blamed our ordinary Maps for placing *Cathay* next to *China*; whereas (saith he) *China*, or *Sania* is *Cathay* as this *Pequin* where we now are is the City of *Cambalu*; which two last evidences coming from the Pen of one who had lived many years in *China*; and not conducing any way to the advancement of the Catholick Cause, must needs be thought to carry some great credit and authority with them.

These reasons if they be of force and moment to the point in hand, we must then act *Penelope's* part, unravelling all the Web which before was woven; *Atque iterum in lanas omne redibit opus*, in the Poet's Language; which that we may the better do, and with as little defacements to the whole piece as possibly we can, I shall thus proceed. First then it is to be conceived that *Cathay* specially so called, was an aggregate body, containing many several Kingdoms, and distinct Estates, though Homagers to the Kings of *Cathay*, or dependants on them: as anciently in the Realm of *France* besides the Kings of *France* themselves, there was a King of *Burgundy*, a King of *Metz*, a King of *Soissons*, a King of *Orleans*; and after that a Duke of *Normandy*, a Duke of *Bretagne*, a Duke of *Aquitain*, an Earl of *Champagne*, an Earl of *Tbolouse*, all absolute and uncontrollable in their own Estates. And then the Kingdom of *Tanguth*, which he placed in the Southern parts of *Altay*, must be made one of the Kingdoms of *Cathay*; and *Demercan*, whom we ranked in the Catalogue of the *Chams* of *Tartary*, must be brought a peg lower, and looked on as a King of *Tanguth* only, and no more than so. 2. it must be taken for granted, That the *Tartars* having Conquered the Realm of *Cathay*, and afterwards, by the help of that People, subdued *China* also, caused all the Northern parts of *China* to be called *Cathay*, as being in the same Latitude and Parallels with it, and much of the same nature and complexion, both for Soil and Air; giving unto the Southern parts (which was the true and proper Country of the *Sinæ*) the name of *Mangi*, transferred afterwards by some Authors to

the Country generally: and having thus extended the Name and Territory of *Cathay*, upon the first foundation of their greatness, they fixed their Regal Seat in the City of *Pequin*, which by a new *Tartarian* name (but of the same sense and signification) was from thence called *Cambalu*. Thus in the first place the *French* Kings of the *Caroline* Family, communicated the name of *France* (East-*France* it was most commonly called) to the greatest part of *Germany*, then Conquered by them; the *Castilians* of *Spain* extended the name of *Castile* on every side, as they got ground upon the *Moors*, till it became the largest Province of any one name in all that Continent; and *Roger* Earl of *Sicily*, having Conquered the Eastern parts of *Italy* (which now make up the Kingdom of *Naples*) commanded it to be called the farther *Sicily* and himself to be Crowned King of both, by the name of King of both *Sicilies*. And in the second place, the Dukes of *Zweibrucken* in high *Germany* are by the *French* called *Dukes De Deux ponts*, by the late *Latine* Writer *Duces Bipontani*, all in the same sense and signification; the Town of *Shertzogen Bosch* is by the *French* called *Bois le Duc*, by the *Latine* Writers *Sylva Ducis*: And here at home, the Military Towns or Stations of *Leffodurum*, *Colonia*, *Præsidium*, *ad Lapidem*, and *Portus Magnus* were turned by the Conquering *Saxons* (the former significations being still retained) into *Bedford*, *Colchester*, *Warwick*, *Stoncham* and *Portsmouth*, commonly now called *Portsmouth*; *Castrum Alatum* into *Edenburg* by the *Picts* or unconquered *Britains*. 3. We may take it for a truth unquestioned, That *Hombu* having expelled the *Tartars* out of *Mangi*, or the Southern parts, and fixed the Royal Seat at *Nanquin*, on the South side of the River *Kiang* (tho' paying both Fine and Tribute to Victorious *Tamerlane*) did afterwards on *Tamerlane's* engagements beyond the Mountains and the Cantonizing of that great Empire amongst his Children, expell them out of the North parts also; his Successors thereupon removing the Court to *Pequin* (from henceforth known again by its true, proper and *Chinian* name) the better to attend the motion of that dangerous Enemy. *Jerusalem*, commanded to be called *Alia* by the Emperour *Adrian*, and *London* named *Augusta Trinobantum* by some other of the *Roman* Emperours; returned to their old names again, as soon as that authority failed which imposed the new. And 4. as from this time forwards the Northern parts of *China* might still retain the name of *Cathay*, and being most traded to by the *Persian* and *Indian* Merchants, might be best known by that name in their several Countries: so by dividing this great Empire into so many parts, removing the Imperial Seat to *Samerchand*, on the other side of the Mountains, erecting many new Estates out of the ancient Prefectures, and the Governments of *Cathay* it self, and parcelling the remainder of it between the Kings of *Tanguth*, *Cascar*, and such other Princes of the *Tartars*, as were not wanting to themselves in those opportunities, the true *Cathay* might lose that name by little and little, which formerly it had communicated to those parts of *China*. Thus the *Burgundians*, *Lombards*, *Vandals*, and *Hungars*, lost those names at home, in their ancient and native habitations, which still remain unto those Countries that were Conquered by them. These reasons and considerations I willingly submit to the Reader's Judgment, being my self so great a *Sceptick* in this point, that I dare determine nothing positively on either side. It is enough that I have laid the Cause open without partiality, or byassing on either hand, before the Jurors; let them give up their verdict in it as they like the Evidence.

O F I N D I A.

INDIA, is bounded on the East with the Oriental Ocean, and some part of *China*, or as some others say, with a great Country called *Mangi*, which is only the South part of *China*, (not much known unto us of *Europe*) interjected betwixt it and *China*; on the West, with the *Persian* Empire; on the North, with some branches of Mount *Taurus*, which divideth it from *Tartary*; and on the South, with the *Indian* Ocean. So called from the River *Indus*, the nearest of esteem and note in all the Country, towards these parts of the World.

It is conceived to be the largest Country, of any one name in the World, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of such a great extent on the Sea-Coasts of it, that it was as much as a Ship could sail in 40 days. Extended from 106, to 159 degrees of Longitude, and from the *Aequator* to the 4th degree of Northern Latitude. By which account it lieth from the beginning of the first, to the end of the sixth *Clime*: the longest Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12 hours only, and in the parts most North, fifteen hours and a half. *India* is bounded to the North by *China*, *Thibet* and the *Usbeck Tartars*, and is separated from them by one continued Ridge of Mountains, of great height and difficult passage, called in *Ptolemy* *Ottorocoras Mons*; and is indeed a branch of the *Taurus* placed by him in 35 degrees of North-East, and by the latter Travellers in 36; where it lies most to the North between *Thibet* and *Indostan*. This Mountain is now called *Delanguer* in the Kingdoms of *Pegu*, *Siam*, and against *Tunkin* it runs more to the South.

Concerning the monstrous Fables which the Ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Country, give me leave to say, that as the Poets used of old to fill up the times of which they were ignorant, with strange Fictions, and prodigious *Metamorphoses*; or as our modern Geographers, in the Maps of the World, fill up those unknown parts thereof, of which they can give us no certain description with strange Pictures and uncouth shapes of Beasts and Trees so also the Writers in former Ages have filled the more remote Countries, of which they knew little, with such impossible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the Fables of Men with Dog's heads, of Men with one leg only, yet of great swiftness; of such as live by scent; of Men that had but one eye and that in their foreheads; and of others, whose ears did reach unto the Ground. It is reported also that this people by eating a Dragon's heart and liver, attain to the understanding of the Languages of Beasts; that they can make themselves when they list, invisible; that they have two tubs, whereof the one opened yields wind, the other Rain, and the like. But these relations, and the rest of this strain, I doubt not but the understanding Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the mind with *Curtius*, *Plura equidem transcribo quam credo; nec enim affirmare ausus sum quæ dubito, nec subducere sustineo quæ accepi*; I may perhaps relate some things which I do not credit, but shall not let them pass without some censures, that so I may neither impose any thing on the Reader's belief, nor defraud him of any thing conducing to his contentation.

The Country (to report no more of it than it doth deserve) enjoyeth an exact temperature of the Air, two Summers, (or one as long as two) and a double encrease, blest with all things which are either necessary to the life of Man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with Mines of Gold and Silver, and with precious Stones; with Spices of all sorts, and Civets; with the best medicinable Drugs; Metals of all kinds, except *Copper* and *Lead*; abundance of all sorts of Cattel, except Horses: Somewhat defective also in Wheat and Vines, that so this Country might be beholding unto others, as well as others to this. Famed also for abundance of Camels, Apes, Dragons, Serpents, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants. These last more favouring of reason and humane ingenuity, or else more tractable and docile, than any brute Creature whatsoever. Of this we have a fair instance in the Story of the Acts of *Alexander*. The Elephant which King *Porus* sat upon, finding his Master strong and lusty, rushed boldly into the thickest of the Enemies Army: but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himself out of Battel, kneeled down, and into his Trunk received all the Arrows which were directed at his Master. The greatness of the Creature makes it yet more admirable that either he should have Soul enough of his own, to actuate so vast a Body; or being of such strength and bigness, should submit himself to the instructions of another: some of these *Indian* Elephants, as *Alianus* hath affirmed, being nine *Cubits* high and as many long; and in breadth or thickness about five *Cubits*. Nor doth the Sea afford less plenty or variety, than we find on shore, yielding abundance of the richest and fairest Pearls, huge shoals of fish, and amongst them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that Land-monster the Elephant. For though the ordinary dimension of the Whale be but 46 *Cubits* in length, and eight in thickness; yet *Nearchus* in *Arrianus* is said to have measured one, in these *Indian* Seas which was of the length of 50 *Cubits*, and of breadth proportionable: not to say any thing of that incredible report of *Pliny*, who speaketh of some *Indian* Whales, which were nine hundred and threescore foot, or four Acres long.

The People are of five sorts, and as many Religions; that is to say the natural *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it. 2. *Moors* or *Arabians*, who more than two hundred years ago, possessed themselves of some Sea-Towns, driving the Natives up higher into the Country: 3. *Jews* scattered and dispersed (as in other places) into all parts of it. 4. *Tartars*, in those Parts and Provinces which are under the Great *Mogul*. And 5. *Portugueses*, who have many Colonies and Factories in the Ports and Islands, but brag as if they had made a Conquest of all the Country. Which notwithstanding, considering that the natural *Indians* are by far the greatest number, we must relate to them only in the Character which is made of this People. Affirmed to be of tall stature, strong of body, and of Complexion inclining to that of the *Negroes*: Of manners civil and ingenious, free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The common sort but meanly clad, for the most part naked, content with no more covering than to hide their shame. But those of greater Estates and Fortunes

Fortunes (as they have amongst them many Ancient and Noble Families) observe a Majesty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparel; sweetning the last with Oils and perfumes, and adorning themselves with Jewels, Pearls, and other Ornaments befitting. They eat no Flesh, but live on Barley, Rice, Milk, Honey and other things without life.

The Women not of much fairer Complexion than the Men, yet of lovely Countenances, wear their hair long and loose, but covered with a thin Vail of *Calicut-Lawn*. Their Ears hung with many Rings, so great and heavy, that they are torn and stretched to much disproportion: their Noses also ringed, and behung with Jewels according to their Estate and Quality. Servilely obsequious to their husbands, whose affections they divide amongst them without jar or jealousy: the Men allowed here, as in all the East, the use of many Wives, whom they buy of their Parents for a yoke of Oxen; and marry as often as they list. In which they have too great a privilege above the Women, who after the decease of their common husband, do either burn in the same flame with him, or else are forced to doom themselves to perpetual Widowhood. But of this we may speak more hereafter, when we come to the particulars.

The Christian Faith was first planted in these Countries by St. *Thomas*, from whom the remainders of Christianity take denomination; and unto whom the Records and Monuments of that Church do ascribe their conversion. For in one of their *Breviaries* written in the *Chaldaick* Tongue, and translated into *Latine* by Father *John Maria Campanin* a *Jesuit*, we find it thus, *Per D. Thomam evanuit error Idololatriæ ab Indis, &c. i. e.* by St. *Thomas* the errors of Idolatry vanished out of the *Indies*; by St. *Thomas*, they received the Sacrament of Baptism, and the Adoption of Sons; by St. *Thomas*, they believed and confessed the Father, the Son and the Holy Ghost; by St. *Thomas*, they kept the Faith received of one God: And finally by St. *Thomas*, the splendor of saving Doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body, as they say, intombed in the City of *Maliapar*, upon the Coast of *Choromandel*; the truth of which tradition I dispute not here. But this plantation of the Gospel by the hand of St. *Thomas*, was not universal over all the Country, but in some Parts and Provinces only: or else was forced to give ground a while to prevailing *Heathenism*. For in the Reign of *Constantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the farther side of the River *Ganges* (for so I understand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the Ministry of one *Fruementius*, of the City of *Tyre*; who having spent the greatest part of his time amongst them, was employed in that service, and consecrated the first Bishop (for those Churches) by the great *Athanasius* of *Alexandria*. But being the Foundation of this building was laid by St. *Thomas*, the remainder of Christians here, ascribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Christians* of St. *Thomas*. Governed originally by their own Bishops, subordinate to an Arch-Bishop of their own also, residing at *Guagamale* fifteen miles from *Cochin*, one of the chief Cities of this Country; who for a long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Musal*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by these Christians of *India* he is still termed. The number of the Christians computed at 15 or 16 thousand Families; or at 70000 persons in the account of others; inhabiting for the most part in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the outlets of *Indus* and *Ganges*, stretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called *Cape Comari*. The points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*. 1. Their administering the Sacrament of the Eucharist in bread seasoned with Salt; 2. Administering in both kinds, but using instead of Wine (which is scarce, or not at all to be had in this Country) the juyce of Raisins softened in water over night, and so pressed forth; 3. Not baptizing Children untill 40 days old except it be in danger of death; 4. Permitting no Images in their Churches, but that of the Cross; 5. Allowing one marriage to their Priests, but

debarring the second; 6. In painting God with three heads on one body to denote the Trinity; 7. Denying the use of *extreme unction*; And 8. not acknowledging the Pope's Supremacy; but besides these remainders of those ancient Christians, there are some others now of late of a new plantation, by the pains and travel of the *Jesuits*, though not with such success here, as they found in *China*; many of the Inhabitants partly by the diligence of the *Arabians*, and partly by the power of the great *Mongul*, having embraced *Mahometanism*; and being consequently less inclinable to admit the Gospel, than when they were in the condition of their natural *Gentilism*. Yet have they made such good progress in it, that *Echebar* the *Mongul*, not only founded a fair Church for the use of the Christians in the City of *Agra* (the Regal City of that Empire) but committed to the care of the *Jesuits* the Education of two Princes of the Regal Family. And possibly they might have made a great increase of Christians before this time, had they not been opposed therein by *Sultan Curroon*, a bitter Enemy to their proceeding in the Reign of his Father, and no great favourer of them since. Infomuch that hearing a *Jesuit*, called *Francisco Carfi*, report unto his Father, how miraculously a wooden Cross of his had escaped the fire, he was very urgent with his Father to have a great fire presently made, and the same Cross to be thrown into it, upon these conditions, that if the Cross consumed not, his Father and himself would become Christians; but if it did, the *Jesuit* should be burned in the same fire with it. A fiery trial which the poor *Jesuit* had much ado to put off, and preserve his credit. Howsoever by their practising amongst the old Christians, they have gained one point of very great consequence and importance to the Church of *Rome*. For in the year 1599, by the sollicitation of the *Jesuits* and others, the *Indian Christians* renounced their obedience to the Patriarch of *Musal*, and submitted their Churches to the Jurisdiction of the Pope of *Rome*, in a National Synod held at *Liamper*, not far from *Maliapar*, by the Arch-Bishop of *Goa* the Primate of the *Portugals* in those Parts; not only rejecting all opinions contrary to the *Roman* Tenets, but delivering all their Books and *Liturgies* to be altered and refined by the said Arch-Bishop, according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*, which was done accordingly.

But these comparatively to the rest, come not to an handful, the main Body of the People wallowing in their *Gentilism*, and still retaining many of those ancient Customs, which they used of old: as *viz.* 1. Not knowing their Wives after they had born them two Children; nor keeping them, if after five years Cohabitation they can raise no Issue by them, but then exchanging them for others: 2. Rewarding none for any Military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands, the head of an Enemy: 3. Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decayed by Age, or Sickness. To these they have added others of a later invention, perhaps more barbarous; of which we may have opportunity to speak anon. Their Priests or Learned Men in the time of old were called *Brachmans*, from one *Brachman* the prescriber of their Rites and Laws, by whom instructed in the *Rudiments* of their *Philosophy*; some of which, from their going naked, had the name of *Gymnosophists*; who were to them as the *Chaldaei* to the *Assyrians*, the *Magi* to the *Persians*; and the *Druids* to the ancient *Britains*. Had in great Reverence by the People, and living for the most part an austere and solitary life, in Caves and deserts, feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abstaining from all carnal pleasures; but that time past, they may indulge themselves more liberty, and admit the company of Women. Others of them live together with the common people, as being their ordinary Priests. Of these the great *Alexander*, when he was in this Country surprized ten; one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many strange questions, and receiving back to many of them, (as himself confessed) some

not unsatisfying, though strange, answers. To these *Gymnosophists*, or *Brachmans*, the *Bramines* do now succeed, both in place and authority; but differ from them most extremely in point of Learning, and the civilities of their lives: these *Bramines* being the most impure, libidinous, and sensual beasts in all the Country; privileged with the first night's lodging of every Bride, which when satiated with their filthy lust, they sell, or traffick with, to strangers, serving as *Stallions* to old Men, and as *Panders* to young: so fished in wickedness, and ignorant of all good Letters, that they have nothing of a Man but the voice and shape. *Mahometanism* is also entertained in a great part of the Country; first brought in by the *Tartars*, and neighbouring *Persians*, unto whom conterminous; but much increased by the Victories of the great *Mongul*: who being originally a *Tartar*, and of that Religion, hath caused it to be propagated in most Parts of his large Dominions. The *Gymnosophists* of *India* are still extant as appeareth by *Tavernier* who gives us the Icons of these mad Philosophers, for such they must appear to any sober Man.

Mountains of most note in it, besides *Caucasus*, and some other of the branches of *Taurus*, or *Ararat*, common to this, and the *Tartarian* and *Persian* Empires, 1 *Sardonyx*, full of Mines of those precious Stones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2 *Vindius*, 3 *Bittigo*, 4 *Adisathras*. 5 Those called *Apocopi*, and 6 Those named *Orodii*. And on the further side of *Ganges*. 7 *Beryrrhus*. 8 *Macandrus*. 9 Those called *Damusi*, and 10 *Semanthinus*; part of this last extending also unto *China*. All of them very fruitfull in the production of Mines, and Rivers, as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of chief note of all, is that which *Ptolemy* called *Bittigo*, and is now named *Gates*; the Southern Part of the great Mountain *Imaus* spoken of before; extended from Mount *Caucasus*, where it crosseth the *Taurus* in right Angles, to Cape *Comary*, a known Promontory of *Indostan*, or the hither *India* (which it divideth into East and West) for the space of 400 Leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Postellus*, a Learned Writer to be that Mount *Sephar*, mention whereof is made in the tenth Chapter of *Genesis*, where it is said to be the utmost Eastern limit of the Sons of *Joktan*, *Gen. 10. 30*. With probability enough, for ought I can see; the Sons of *Joktan* being settled in these Parts of *India*, and the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire which lie nearest to them. And so far *Stephanus* doth concur with *Postell*, as to affirm of this Mount *Sephar*, that it is *Mons India*, an *Indian* Mountain: both of which grounding on *St Hierom*, who expressly saith, *Sophera Mons Orientis in India, juxta quam habitaverunt filii Joktan. i. e. That Sephar, or Sopher, is the name of a Mountain of the East in India*; near to which dwelt the Sons of *Joktan*. More probably, without doubt, than that we should transfer it into *America*, as I see some do, and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*; which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other, and thence, as some will have it, to the Straights of *Magellan*. Which should we grant, we must not look for *Joktan*, or the Sons of *Joktan*, either in *Arabia Felix*, where *Bochartus* placeth them; nor in the Eastern Parts of *Asia*, where most probably they may be found; but we must cross the vast Oriental Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were; besides, that granting this for true, we must allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moses*, which no Author that I ever met with, did so much as dream of.

Rivers of most note are, 1 *Indus*, which riseth out of that part of *Taurus*, which the Ancients called *Paropamisus*, the Moderns, *Naturocot*; and having received into it 19 other Rivers, after a course of 900 miles, falleth into the Ocean at seven Mouths, that is to say, 1 *Sagappa*, being the most Western; 2 *Sinthum*, 3 *Aureum*, 4 *Cariphi*, 5 *Sappara*, 6 *Sabalassa*, 7 *Lonibare*, the most Eastward. But five of these being choaked with Sands, or

drawn into the neighbouring Channels, there now remains but only two. A River famous in Records and ancient Stories, for giving name unto the Country and that so celebrated voyage of *Alexander*, who sailed down it towards the *Indian* Ocean: the voyage holding above five months, of which there is said to have passed no day wherein he sailed not 15 miles, or 600 Furlongs. 2 *Ganges*, which riseth, as some say, from the Mountain *Imaus*, (or rather from that part of *Taurus*, where *Imaus* falleth right upon it,) and falling headlong down the Rocks, is first collected into a Lake or Pool, (supposed by others for the fountain and original of it) whence with a gentler pace it passeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is said by *Pliny*, 30 navigable Rivers: In the narrowest place of eight miles breadth, in the broadest 20, seldom so shallow but that the depth thereof is 100 foot, or 20 *Geometrical* paces. Parted into five great channels it falleth at last into the Sea; the first of which most towards the West, is called *Canbysum*, 2 *Magnum*, 3 *Camberychus*, 4 *Pseudostomum*, and 5 that which lieth farthest towards the East, called *Autiboli*. This River erroneously supposed to be that *Pison* which watered *Paradise*: and to increase the reputation of the error we find it countenanced by *Josephus*, and other no less eminent names; and also backed by some traditions of the people which inhabit near it. By whom it is affirmed, That one of the *Bengalan* Kings sent Men up the River, who came at last to a pleasant place, blest with a fragrant Earth, sweet air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth so possess them, that at the mouth of this River called *Gangasagie*, such as are weary of this world use to cast themselves into the Current, and are presently devoured by a Fish, called *Sea-dogs*, by whom they hope to find a quick passage to *Paradise*. The occasion of which error among the Ancients, proceeded from those words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Pison*, that it compassed the Land of *Havilah*: which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River must be *Pison*, or that *India* is intended by that *Havilah*. For besides *Havilah* the Son of *Jocktan*, planted in some part of *India*, there was another *Havilah* the Son of *Chus*, settled in the Land of *Flavilah* or *Chusiana*, not far from *Babylon*: this last indeed watered by the River *Pison* and the first by *Ganges*; too far asunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken or mistaken one for another. But no less famous, because none of those which neighboured the Garden of *Eden*; perhaps of greater fame than any of those which did. For to this River do the superstitious *Indians* make their solemn pilgrimages, vainly conceiving that they shall be sure of their Eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the people ascribe the fertility of the Countries adjoining, as the *Egyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Country anciently, and at this present is, divided into two main parts, (each subdivided into many particular Provinces) viz. 1. *India intra Gangem*. 2. *India extra Gangem*. Of each of which we will first take a brief survey, with reference to the state and story of it in preceeding times; and then consider them with reference to the present Age.

1. INDIA EXTRA GANTEM.

INDIA EXTRA GANTEM is bounded on the East, with the River *Ganges*, till the fall thereof into the Sea; and after that, with that large and spacious Bay, called anciently *Sinus Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*; on the West, with *Paropamisus*, *Arachosia*, *Gedrosia*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; and part of the *Arabian* Seas; on the North, where it is the broadest, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Paropamisus*, *Caucasus*, and other parts: and on the South, where it endeth in a sharp Point or Promontory, by *Ptolemy* called *Communia extrema*, but now Cape *Commari*, with the *Indian* Ocean. So named from being situate on the side of *Ganges*; by the Moderns, *Indostan*. The

The Country of the same nature formerly, as it is at the present, not altered but by changing of the Channels of *Indus*; which being shifted by an *Earth-quake*, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a sandy Defart: *Indus* (as many other of the *Indian Rivers*) fatning and enriching all the Land which it overfloweth. The people of those elder times much like the *Scythians*, especially in their course of life, living without Cities, Temples, or Houses, in their movable Tents; their food the bark of a Tree, called *Tala*, which served for bread; and the flesh of Bucks, Does, and other Venison, with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them Free-men, and no Slaves to be found among them. Less warlike than the *Scythians*, but as great contemners of death as they; the very women contending eagerly amongst themselves, who should accompany their Husband (one Husband having many Wives) to his Funeral-Pile. Of which thus St. Hierom, *He igitur contendunt de amore viri, & ambitio summa certantium est ac testimonium castitatis, dignam morte censerit.* A Custom still retained amongst them; of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said in another place.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Hydaspes*, by *Ptolemy* (and by him only) called *Bidaspes*, one of the furthest bounds of *Alexander's* Conquests. 2. *Suastrus*, 3. *Coa*, 4. *Acceines*, very memorable in the Gestis of *Alexander*. 5. *Saudabilis*, 6. *Zaradrus*: all coming from the Northern Mountains and all falling (*Hydaspes* with three other Rivers first received into it) into the great bed of *Indus*. 7. *Diamna*, 8. *Sorabius*, and 9. *Soa*, falling from the like Northern Mountains, into the main Channel of *Ganges*. 10. *Naragonus*, issuing from Mount *Vindius*. 11. *Baris*, from *Bittigo*. 12. *Chaberis*, from *Adisathris*. 13. *Tindis*, from the Hill called *Uxentius*: and 14. *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains, with many others of less note. By what names called at the present, I determine not; nor find I any which have dared to adventure on it. But doubtless to be found in 1. *Catamul*, 2. *Cebcha*, 3. *Rba*, 4. *Chenon*, 5. *Rebeth*, all Tributaries unto *Indus*, which is now called *Schind*. 6. *Tapbi*, 7. *Harunda*, 8. *Chamehl*, 9. *Jamena*, which empty their waters into *Ganges*; the which, with such others of the principal Rivers as are now known by name to us, shall occasionally be touched on in that which followeth. Besides which Rivers, here is a famous Lake mentioned in the Gestis of *Alexander*, (but the name occurreth not) not much above a mile in circuit, but exceeding pleasant, shaded on every side with Woods memorable for the great refreshment which it gave to *Alexander's* Army, when even pined with thirst.

The Country so exceeding populous in the time of *Ptolemy*, that it affordeth him the names of more noted Cities, than any one Country in the World. Of which 1. *Cotiara*, 2. *Nigana*, 3. *Sageda*, 4. *Rarasia*, 5. *Mafopelle*, and 6. *Pitandra*, are honoured with the name of *Metropoles*; as being the Head-Cities of their several and respective Nations. 7. *Ozenes*, 8. *Sora*, 9. *Palibothra*, 10. *Gange*, 11. *Batana*, 12. *Hippocura*, 13. *Carata*, 14. *Madura*, 15. *Orthura*, and 16. *Atalanga*, mentioned, as the Royal Seats of several Princes, by the name of *Kegia*. 17. *Bardaxema*, 18. *Tyddis*, 19. *Argari*, 20. *Cunula*, 21. *Chaberis*, on the River so called, 22. *Palura*, on the shores of the Gulf of *Bengala*, and 23. *Palura*, on the banks of *Cambysum*, 24. *Telegramocum*, marked out above the rest with the name of *Civitates* (Cities) and therefore probably of more note than others not so distinguished. And finally, 25. *Monogassum*, 26. *Simylla*, near a Promontory of the same name, 27. *Nitra*, 28. *Ataziris*, 29. *Elanchorum*, 30. *Colchi*, 31. *Salur*, 32. *Sobura*, 33. *Poduca*, 34. *Atelange*, 35. *Maliarpha*, 36. *Contacissyla*, 37. *Nosygne*, 38. *Barygaza*, specified as the most noted and celebrated Empories; besides 39. *Canthynus*, 40. *Statbmus*, and 41. a Road opposite to *Chrysar*, two Commodious Stations or Roads for shipping. The names and situation of these Places is the most we find of them, which makes me pass them over with a bare recital, only to shew how populous and well planted this Country was in the time of my

Of less name, but of more note in the course of *Ptolemy*, 1. *Nyssa*, built by *Baculus* at the time of his *Indian* Conquest, and called thus by the name of his *Aurife*, to preserve her memory, his Mother dying in Child-birth of him. Replenished by him with his best and wounded Soldiers, whose Posterity continued here till the time of *Alexander*, who loved the City and People for his love to *Baculus*, who was therein worshipped in a Temple of his own foundation, planted about with Rays, Vines and Ivy; whose flaky branches covered the Roof of it. In the midst thereof an Image, with all the Instruments belonging to a plentiful *Image*; all of Gold or Silver. 2. *Taxilla*, or *Taxila*, as *Ptolemy* calleth it, founded betwixt *Indus* and *Hydaspes*, in the Region called *Taxila*; and built most probably by *Taxiles*, a puissant King of *India*, in the time of *Alexander*. Adorned in former times with a Temple dedicated to the Sun, and then in with an Ivory-Image of *Ajax*, a Golden Statue of *Alexander*, and the Portraiture of King *Perus* made of Copper. The floor of *Alexander's* work polished with Pearls, the Walls of red marble interlaid with Gold, which made it shine afar off, like a flash of Lightning. 3. *Nagara*, called also *Dionysopolis* in memory of *Baculus*, who was also called *Dionysius*, and *Liber Pater*. 4. *Aornus*, by *Diodorus* called *Aornus*, and *Zivernus* by *Strabo*: so strongly seated on a Rock, that *Hercules* was not able to force it: which made *Alexander*, (imitating and therein out-going the Acts of *Hercules*) assault it with the greater force and at last he carried it. 5. *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Hydaspes*, and named thus in memory of *Bucephalus*, his beloved Horse, which had served him in all the course of his Fortunes, and dyed hereabouts, being then thirty years old. 6. *Pireta*, another of his Foundations, so called by the name of his Dog whom he dearly loved, 7. *Alexandria*, on the banks of *Indus*, another of his Foundations also. 8. *Mazage*, on the West of *Indus*, one of the first Towns of *India*, taken by the *Macedonians*, though garrisoned within, and environed without with an Host of 300000 Men: but yielded after some resistance, with the use of her own body, by *Cleopbe* the Queen thereof, who received it back with other favours, from the hands of the Conqueror. 9. *Nora*, a strong City on the same side of *Indus*, taken by *Polysperchon*, one of his Commanders. 10. *Samus*, on the banks of the same River, taken by *Alexander* in the course of his Navigation down that Sea of waters; the Inhabitants whereof fought against him with poisoned Arrows, with one of which *Ptolemy* (afterward King of *Egypt*) was dangerously wounded, and cured with an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had seen in the mouth of a Serpent. 11. *Oxydrace*, the chief City of the *Oxydriceans*; at the Siege whereof *Alexander* is said to be the first that scaled the Walls, and the last that could do so, the Ladder breaking as soon as he was at the top. Standing thus alone as a mark to all their Darts, he was by the Soldiers desired to leap down amongst them: he in a daring bravado leaped into the Town amongst his Enemies; where it was not only his good hap to light upon his feet, but to have an old Tree at his back to defend him behind. In this posture he is said to have maintained the fight a long time, against all the Soldiers of the Town; killing two of them with his own hands, and by that example teaching the rest to be more mannerly, till being wearied and dangerously wounded, he was forced to leave his feet, and commit the weight of his body to his knees. In this case *Leonatus*, *Peucestes*, and some other of his Captains came to assist him; who defended their dying Master, till the whole Army entered the Town; and put all the people to the sword, in revenge of their King, whose life they had little hope to enjoy: though he with much danger did afterward recover. For my part I give little or no credence to this story, ranging it in the same Catalogue of truth with the Adventures of *Donzel del Phabo*, *Rosicler*, *Belianis*, *Amadis*, and the rest of the rabble of *Knights Errant*. Neither is this the first time that *Curtius* hath disgraced the soundness of

Alexander's Judgment, and the truth of his Actions with the like idle and impossible Fables: though indeed in that particular, he saith it was *multò magis ad temeritatis quàm de gloria famam*. And 12. *Nicæa*, built by Alexander on the banks of *Acesines*, in memory of his many great and signal Victories. Not far from which, finding how willing his Soldiers were to pass farther East, he purposed to leave behind him some monument of his great Exploits, and to make his fame immortal amongst the *Indians*. And to that end he caused the form of his Camp to be enlarged, and the Cabbins to be made bigger than sufficed for his Men to lodge in; the Mangers to be set higher than his Horses could reach; *Armour* and *Bitts* for horses of too great a size (made not for use, but ostentation of his might) to be scattered up and down the Camp, for the Savage People to wonder at in the times to come. By means whereof he got nothing amongst knowing Men, but suspicion that his Actions were intended less memorable, than they are reported to have been; since he so vainly laboured to have them thought greater indeed than they were.

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Indo-Scythæ* inhabiting on the North-West of *Indus*, the *Mazagæ*, *Sadam*, *Pirataæ*, *Limeryces*, *Aii*, the *Soringi*, *Arvari*, *Oxydracaæ*, *Molli*, and *Lambataæ*; the *Gandarites*, or *Gangarides*, near the mouth of *Ganges*, the *Caspiræi*, under the shades of Mount *Vindius*. The *Musicanî*, *Chatziæi*, *Polindæ*, *Phyllitæ*, *Bittigi*, *Chadramotitæ*, *Pezuari*, *Adisabtri*, *Mandalæ*, *Drylphitæ*, *Sabaræ*, and *Pandioni*, with many others, to the number of 122 several Nations, if *Magasthenes* be not out in this reckoning, too many and too impertinent to be mustered here.

Originally descended from the Sons of *Noah*, before they left the Eastern parts to go towards the unfortunate Valley of *Shinaar*. We could not else have found this Country so full of people in the days of *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*: who leading an Army compounded of several Nations, to the number of four millions and upwards (if *Ctesias* and *Diodorus Siculus*, who reports it from him, be of any credit; but certainly the greatest Army that ever was raised) was encountered by *Staurobates*, a King of *India*, with greater force made up of natural *Indians* only; by whom she was vanquished and slain. A matter beyond all belief, though neither Army could make up a fourth of that number, if the *Indians* had been no other than some one of those Colonies, which were sent from *BABEL*; or rather a second or third Swarm of those former Colonies, which went thence under the command of the first *Adventurers*: For that any of the first *Adventurers*, who were present at the building of the Tower of *BABEL*, travelled so far East, is not affirmed by any who have laboured in the search of their Plantations. So that I take it for a matter undeniable, That the plantation of *India* preceded the attempt of *BABEL*; though by whom made, there is nothing to be said for certain: Yet if I might have liberty to express my own conceptions, I am inclinable to believe, That all the Eastern parts of *Persia*, with *China* and both the *India's*, were peopled by such of the Sons of *Sem*, as went not with the rest to the Vally of *Shinaar*. For otherwise I can see no reason, that the Posterity of *Japhet* should plant the greatest part of the lesser *Asia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Isles thereof; and that the Sons of *Cham* should spread themselves over *Babylonia*, *Palæstina*, the three *Arabia's*, and the whole Continent of *Africk*: the Posterity of *Sem* being shut up in a corner; the greater *Asia*, hardly so big as some one of the Provinces, taken up by the other *Adventurers*. And therefore that I may allow to the Sons of *Sem* an equal Latitude, I think it not improbable to fix them in these Eastern Countries; spreading themselves this way as they grew in numbers, before the rest of the *Adventurers* went to seek new fortunes at the Tower of *BABEL*. And being that Country was large and wealthy, and might have room enough to spare for some second comers (especially descending from the same

root with them) I doubt not to place here all the Sons of *Jocktan*, *Havilah*, *Chatsarmaveih*, *Saba*, and *Abimail*, who left here some Tract or Monument of themselves, as hath been shewn at large in our *GENERAL PREFACE*; and as concerning *Ophir*, shall be shewed hereafter. To proceed therefore to our story, the next who made any invasion on this Country, after that of *Semiramis*, was *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Semele*, accompanied with *Hercules Ægyptius*, not much more fortunate than she: the Forces of *Bacchus* being defeated and *Hercules* forced to throw away his Golden Shield. But what they could not do by Arms, they effected by Arts. *Bacchus* instructing them in the use of *Wine*, *Oil*, *Sacrifices* and the Art of *Architecture*, and Drawing them into Towns and Cities; for that cause honoured as a GOD. To *Hercules* they ascribe the Nation of the *Pandioni*, proceeding from a Daughter of his called *PANDÆA*: the memory of both preserved in Statues and Pillars erected by them.

After this, unattempted till the time of *Alexander*, who having made a full Conquest of the *Persian* Empire, invaded *India* with an Army of 120000 fighting Men. Beginning with *CLEOPHE*, Queen of the *Magazæ*, a People of *Indo-Scythia*, he brought her to conformity, possessed himself both of her Person and Estate; on whom he begat a Son called *Alexander* who is said to have succeeded in her Dominions. Being passed over the River *Indus*, *Taxiles* (by some called *Omphis*) a prudent Prince whose Kingdom is affirmed to be bigger than *Ægypt*, submitted of his own accord: offering his service and assistance to promote his Conquest, and presenting him with a Crown of Gold, and 80 Talents of ready money. This King made welcome, but his money not so much as looked on; the *Macedonian* being so far from fingering of this *Indian* Gold, that he gave him a thousand Talents of his own Treasure. Encouraged by this Royal dealing *Abiajares*, another puissant Prince of the opposite Faction unto *Taxiles*, submitted also, and was as graciously received. *Porus*, whose Kingdom lay on the other side of *Hydaspes*, would not be so Conquered and therefore mustereth up his Forces, and valiantly made good the banks of the River. But vanquished at last, not without much difficulty, he was made a Prisoner to the Victor, who honouring the Man for his brave resistance, gave him his liberty and Kingdom, with a great enlargement. The Conqueror had a great desire to go farther East, but the Soldiers would not be perswaded: sufficiently taught by *Porus* what they were to look for, if the *Indians* should unite their Forces. Unable to prevail, he erected in the place twelve Altars, as high as Towers; where he observed many solemn Games and Sacrifices: and having Sacrificed to *Hydaspes*, *Indus* and *Acesines* he sailed down *Indus* towards the Southern Ocean; which seen at a distance, he turned towards *Gedrosia*, and thence to *Babylon*, where he dyed.

After his death, *Eumenes* raised some part of his Forces hence, but the *Macedonians* being plunged in a Civil War, one *Adracottus* stirred up the *Indians* to recover their freedoms, making himself at first their Captain, but at last their King. Possessed of all that had been conquered by the *Greeks*, he was encountered by *Seleucus*, who had then got the command of *Asia*: against whom he brought an Army of 600000 fighting Men. Frighted therewith, *Seleucus* made Peace with him, and contracted a Solemn League betwixt them, continued with the interchange of friendly Offices amongst their Posterity; and more confirmed by an interview betwixt *Antiochus* the Great and *Saphagæsenus*, one of the Successors of *Adracottus*; by whom *Antiochus* was presented with 150 Elephants, and the promise of some Treasure to be sent after him. By the Posterity of *Adracottus* was the Kingdom held, till the prosperity and full height of the *ROMAN* Empire. The Power whereof though they rather knew by report than tryal, yet was it not amiss to entertain a potent, though a remote State, in terms of amity. Therefore they sent Ambassadors unto *Augustus*, who

who presented him with a number of *Tigers*, (which Beasts, with *Dromedaries*, till then, the *Roman* People had never seen) and which was most pleasing, a little Boy born without Arms, who with his feet could bend a Bow, shoot and play on wind-Instruments as exactly as others with their hands. *Trajan* the Emperour had a great desire to see this Country, but was diverted from that purpose by matters of more necessary importance to the state of his Empire. Moved with the fame of *Antoninus* the *Roman* Emperour, they sent a solemn Embassie unto him, making him Umpire in some Controversies which they had with the *Bactrians*: from which Ambassadors it is probable that *Ptolemy* the Geographer who then lived, might receive his informations of the Estate of this Country. The like they did to *Julian* the *Apostate* also, then setting forwards on his expedition against the *Persians*, desiring his Friendship and Alliance. How it was with them in the time of *Constantine* and *Justinian*, hath been shewn already. After these times by little and little, Histories have in a manner been silent concerning the affairs hereof; but for some Conquests made on the parts next *Persia*, by the *Caliphs* of *Bagdad*. For notwithstanding that there was continual Traffick from the *Red Sea* hither; and between the *Persians*, *Arabians* and *Indian* Merchants for Spices, and the other Commodities of this Region: yet were not these Merchants acquainted with the state of the Country, because they entered not into it; but were met by the *Indian* Merchants at *Samarchand*, being as it were the common Empory. Neither did the *Agyptians* at all enter *India*, but were met by the *Indians* at *Ormus*, or some other Island, even as now the *Chinois* make some of the *Philippines*, the Staple of their Trade with the *Spaniards*, whom they Licence not to come into the Continent among them. But our modern Travellers and Navigators have withdrawn this mask of obscurity, and shewed her lively portraiture in as lively Colours. One of the first who brake the Ice, and gave us any certainty of their affairs, was Sir *John Mandeville*; accompted at his coming back for the greatest Fabler in the World: so incredible seemed his reports of the magnificence of those Kingdoms, and the wealth of their Countries, and the many rarities which he found amongst them. But better thought of by our Neighbours, he obtained a Monument in a Convent at *Lige* (where he ended the long course of his Life and Travels, 1372) The Friars of which keep some things of his, *Comme pour honorable memoire de son excellence*, for an honourable memorial of his excellency. Many of his Relations since confirmed by the *Portugals*, who under the conduct of *Vasquez de Gama* first discovered this Country, by the new way of the *Cape of Good Hope*, Anno 1499, or thereabouts. For so it happened, that the *Portugals* having discovered all the Coasts of *Africk*, as far as *Cape Ford*, by the encouragement and at the charge of *Henry Duke of Viseo*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the first, began to think upon some way to the wealth of *India*, and getting into their own hands the rich Trade of that Country. To which end it was first thought, that *Pedro de Cannanilla*, and *Alphonso de Padua*, should make a journey into the East Parts, to learn the certainty of the Spice-trade, and make report of such other Commodities as these Countries yielded. Being come at last by long journeys to the City of *Calicut*, and having satisfied themselves in the enquiry which they came about, they prepare for their return to *Portugal*. *Padua* dying in the journey, and *Cannanilla*, tho' detained by the *Habassine* Emperour (commonly, but corruptly, called *Prester John*) sends home a full relation of his successes; inflamed with which, King *John* the second sends out *Bartholomew Diaz*, Anno 1487, to find out a way into the *Indies* by the back of *Africa*: who having sailed as far as the *Cape of good Hope*, without giving end to the adventure, returned back to *Portugal*. Undertaken with better fortune 10 years after, at the command of King *Emanuel* by *Vasquez de Gama*, above mentioned; who doubling the *Cape*, and sailing Northward, all along the shores of *Africk*, as far as the King-

dom of *Melinde*, received from the King thereof both Pilots and instructions to bring him to *Calicut*, where he found all true which *Cannanilla* had before reported. Full of good news at the end of 26 Months from his first setting out, he returns to *Lisbon*, received for the present with joy and triumph, and about two years after (that is to say 1502,) furnished with 13 Ships and three Caravals, he sets forward again, followed by *Stephen de Gama* the same year with 5 Ships more, by which great strength he made himself Master of some Ports; and by that means laid the Foundation of that great Command, which the *Portugals* have attained unto in these Eastern Countries. Seconded in this great enterprize by *Ferdinando de Almeda*, and *Alphonso de Albuquerque*, and other noble Adventurers of the Realm of *Portugal*, as after them by such of the *European* Nations as had the benefit and trade of the Western Ocean.

If it be asked, why the *Castilians*, or *Spaniards*, being strong in Shipping, bent not themselves to the discovery of these wealthy Countries? it may be answered, 1. That they were busied at the same time in the discovery and Conquest of the *New World*, which they looked on as a nearer, and no less profitable Booty than this of *India*. 2. The Commodities of this Country, being brought home by the *Portugals*, were sold to them at far cheaper rates, than they could have fetched them in their own bottoms. 3. And chiefly because by the definitive sentence of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, both the *Castilians*, and the *Portugals*, were so limited in their Navigation, that the *Castilians* might not intermeddle in the Eastern, nor the *Portugals* in the discovery or Conquest of the Western Parts, beyond the bounds which he had set to those several Nations before-mentioned; and by some latter observations we have been informed, That in this part of *India* were no fewer than 47 Kingdoms, whereof some few have still their own natural Kings, the rest all subject to the power of the Great *Mongul*, contracted into a lesser number by joyning many lesser Territories into one Division. We shall look on it as distributed into 15 Provinces. Some have reduced them into five, but give us neither the bounds nor extent of any of them. And others in the description of their Travels, ramble up and down with such uncertainties (most of them being Men of trades and ignorance) that tho' they tell us where they lodged, and what entertainments they did meet with, yet we shall hardly know by them (for I think they did not know themselves) in what Province they were, or to what part the several Towns, through which they passed did of right belong. So that our passage through these Countries (having such blind guides to follow) will be full of difficulty, and not satisfactory to the Reader as he might expect. Howsoever, I desire him to bear me company, whilst I take the best survey I can of these 15 Provinces, to which the whole may be most handsomely reduced: that is to say, 1. *Duljinda*, 2. *Pengab*, 3. *Mandao*, 4. *Delly*, 5. *Agra*, 6. *Sanga*, 7. *Gambat*, 8. *Deccan*, 9. *Canara*, 10. *Malabar*, 11. *Narjunga*, 12. *Orissan*, 13. *Botanter*, 14. *Pantenar*, and 15. *Bengala*.

The *Persians* and *Arabians*, call all *India* by the name of *Indostan*. It reacheth on the West, from the River *Indus*, or *Sindo*, as far as the *Ganges*, in the East; on the Western border it hath a Port called *Guader*, in 2 Degrees Latitude, (which I find in none of the Maps, but I suppose it to be *Goadel*.) On the East it hath the Kingdom of *Mavy*; on the North, *Caucasus*, and Great *Tartary*; and on the South, *Deccan*, and the Gulf of *Bengala*, with the *Arabian* or *Indian* Ocean. The extent of it from East to West, is 600 Leagues, from North to South, 700 French Leagues; the South lying in 20 D. Latitude, the North border at 43. This is to be understood of *Calicut*, which is the most Northern Town in *Indostan*, and lyeth to the North-West of that Kingdom, but I believe is placed 2 degrees too much to the North. That part of *Indostan* which is next to *Persia*, was of old called *Cannania*, and now by the *Persians* *Sindo Dind*; by Dr. *Heylin* *Duljinda*; it should be *Dind-Sindo* from *Dind*, which

lands on the Western Branch of the *Indus* towards *Persia*. It is divided into 37 great Provinces, which were heretofore so many Kingdoms. *viz.* *Candabar*, now belonging to *Persia*; but in 1638, under the *Mongul*. 2. *Kaul*, 3. *Multan*, 4. *Hacs-chan*, 5. *Bachar*, 6. *Tatta*, 7. *Soret*, 8. *Iselmeer*, 9. *Attach*, 10. *Pang-ab*, 11. *Chismer*, 12. *Bankisch*, 13. *Fengapar*, 14. *Fenba*, 15. *Delly*, 16. *Bando*, 17. *Malway*, 18. *Chitor*, 19. *Gufuratta*, 20. *Candisch*, 21. *Bevar*, 22. *Gualer*, or *Dulsinda*; 23. *Agra*, 24. *Sambit*, 25. *Bakor*, 26. *Narwar*, 27. *Nagracut*, 28. *Siba*, 29. *Kakares*, 30. *Gor*, 31. *Pitan*, 32. *Kanduana*, 33. *Porena*, 34. *Femal*, 35. *Menat*, 36. *Voesa*, 37. *Bengala*. *Texira*, names *Utrat*, but saith not whereabouts it is seated. The *Portugueses* call *Gufuratta*, *Cambaya*. *Mandeflo's* Travels into *Indostan*, from Pag. 18. to 21.

1. D U L S I N D A. G U A D E L. G U A L E R

D U L S I N D A is bounded on the East, with the River *Indus*; on the West, with *Paropamisus*, and *Arachosia*, two *Persian* Provinces, but for the most part under the command of the Great *Mongul*; on the North with *Caucasus*, by which parted from *Tartary*; or rather from the Kingdom of *Candabar*, which is now a part of the Kingdom of *Persia*, being yielded to that Crown by the *Mongul*, in 1653, after a bloody War of three years continuance, *Tavernier*: on the South, with the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean. So that it taketh up all the Western parts of this Estate, which lye upon the West of the River *Indus*; from which River called by the Natives *Sinda*, most probably it is that it took its name: and therefore I have written it with an *s*, *Dulsinda*, and not *Dulcinda* with a *c*, as I see some do, but on no good reason, for any thing that I am able to understand.

The Country, by reason of the Northern situation of it, more temperate, but less fruitful than the rest of *India*. The Seat in ancient times, of the *Muzages* and *Indo-Scythæ*, when subdued by *Alexander*. Made up at present, of many lesser Kingdoms, and smaller Provinces; denominated for the most part, from the principal Towns and Cities of them, as in other places. This Country, lyeth between 25, and 30 Degrees of Latitude, and therefore the temperature of the Air is not to be ascribed to its Northern situation; I rather suspect it is exceeding hot, as all those parts of *Persia* that lye in the same Latitude, and are of the same nature are; and the Mountains to the North of it, must of necessity make it such.

Amongst which those of the most esteem, are 1. *Caximir*, *Cascimur*, or *Chesmur*, (for by all these names it is called) the chief of a Kingdom once, unto which it gave name, till subdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*; who in a pleasant Island, (in the midst of a great and deep Lake, about three Leagues off the City) beset round with Trees, built a Royal Palace: which he honoured sometimes with his Court, removed hither from *Labor* partly the better to assure this new conquered Kingdom; but principally because his Palace of *Labor*, and therein an infinite deal of Treasure, had but newly been consumed by fire. The City it self situate in the most healthy Country of all *India*, encompassed with high Mountains, covered for the most part of the year with Snow, the rest a delicate, goodly Plain diversified with Pastures, Woods and Cornfields, Meadows, Parks, Gardens, and Rivers, even to admiration. The Air hereof, and of the Country round about, by reason of the Northern situation of it, and the snowy Mountains very cool and temperate. The Soil abundantly productive of Wheat, Rice, and Vines, which last they plant at the foot of the Mulberry-Tree, which seemeth by this means to bear double fruits. Both Town and Kingdom subdued by *Echebar*, the *Mongul*, about the year 1597: their own dissensions more conducing to that subjugation, than any visible force which he brought before it. This City and Kingdom, is placed at the foot of the *Taurus*, to the North of *Labor*; and on

the East of the *Indus*, a vast distance from the Province of *Dulcinda*, or *Dulsinda*; it stands near the Fountain of this River, in the Latitude of 38 or thereabouts. 2. *Roree*, a Fort of the *Monguls* towards *Paropamisus*; but bordering upon the Country of *Multan*, to which people it properly belongeth: Garrisoned not so much for fear of the *Persian*, (for *Paropamisus*, now called *Cabul*, is his ancient Patrimony,) but to preserve the people from the spoil of the Thieves, who always hang about the Mountains. 3. In the most Northern parts hereof, stood the *Nagara* of *Ptolemy*; mistook by some for the modern *Agra*, of which more anon. 4. *Segistan*, the chief City, as I take it, of the Kingdom of *Rebat*; situate on the East of *Caximir*, betwixt it and the *Indus*: in the same Latitude with that, but not of so temperate an air; the snowy Mountains much conducing to the temperature of the Realm of *Caximir*. 5. *Multan*, a great and ancient City and the chief of a Kingdom on the South of *Caximir* or *Chusmur*; and about three French Leagues from the banks of the River *Indus*. The ordinary thorough-fair of the *Caravans* in the way from *Labor* to *Spaban*, (the chief Seat of the *Sophy* or King of *Persia*) forced to a bide there divers days, sometimes ten or twelve to enrich the Town; which of it self is of no great trading, nor otherwise able to subsist but by this device; famed most especially for many excellent Bows and Arrows made in it. The Bows made of Horn, excellently glewed and put together; the Arrows of small Canes or Reeds, both of them set off by rich Paint and Varnish. They which are made here being more neat and good than in any part of *East India* besides. There is another Town or Kingdom of or near this name on the other side of the River *Indus*, of which we shall speak more in its proper place. 6. *Lumkee*, a Fort or Garrison, situate in the Straights of the Mountains to secure the *Caravans*, and protect either Passengers from the danger of Robbers, hovering in these Hill-Countries, the out-parts of this Empire. *Dulcinda*, the Capital City of this Province, (if any such there be in *Indostan*) is seated upon the River that goeth to *Patanis*, to the West of *Ilment*, and is a part of *Carmania Deserta*, or at the least bordereth upon it. So that I see no reason why the Cities he sets down, should be reckoned as a part of this Province.

2. P E N G A B.

O Pposite to *Dulsinda*, on the Eastern side of the River *Indus*, but more inclining towards the South lieth the Country, or division rather, which my Author calleth by the name of *PENGAB*: bounded on the West, with *Indus*, which divideth it from *Dulsinda*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Mandao*; on the North, and East, with those many Kingdoms, which we have comprehended under the name of *Botanier*. The *Persians* and *Indostans*, call the River *Indus* *Pang-ab*, that is to say, five waters, because so many Rivers come into it, before it unites into one great Channel. The first is *Bugat* or *Begut*, which riseth near *Kabul*. 2. *Chanab*, which riseth in *Cassamier*, fifteen daies journey North of *Labor*, the 3. *Ravy*, or *Rave*, which runs by *Labor*. 4. *Via*, and the 5. *Osvia* or *Sindo*, come from a great distance and meet near *Bakar*; which lieth at an equal distance from *Labor*. *Mandeflo*, Pag. 18. This is one of the most fruitful Provinces in *Indostan*, being Seated within, and Watered by all these five Rivers, and *Labor* is the Capital City of it.

The reason of the name I find not, nor any thing memorable of the Country; but that it was divided in the time of *Ptolemy*, into the Provinces of the *Lambate*, *Cassiria*, *Cylindrine*, and *Saustene*: subdued by *Alexander* in his Expedition into *India*: the famous Rivers of *Acisines* and *Hydaspis* (but by what names now called I find not) having here their source. So that it seemeth to have been a part of the Kingdom of *Porus*, or that the Kingdom of *Porus* was a part of this.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Labor*, on the Eastern banks of *Indus*, affirmed to be the fairest and most ancient

ancient City in both the *Indies*; of most esteem for wealth and greatness. In compass about sixteen miles, and honoured for a while with the ordinary Residence of the Great *Mongul*; till on the burning of his Palace, spoken of before, he removed his Court to *Cascimir*, from thence to *Fatipore*, and at last to *Agra*. Since that time made the Seat of the eldest Son, or Heir apparent, sent hither for avoiding all occasion of Factions, which their living in the Court might breed. A City of exceeding Trade, as being the chief Staple for the Spices in these parts, and other commodities of *India*, from hence transported into *Persia* by the way of *Candabor*, the principal Town of *Arachosia*; and so to *Spahan*, the chief City of the *Sophian* Empire; where they are sold, by reason of so long and chargeable a journey, for excessive rates. It is said that 12000 Camels at the least, pass every year thorough it with their lading; besides what is ferried down the River, and brought up by the *Portugals*, who therewith traded unto *Ormuz*, till that Town was Taken. By this we may conjecture at the wealth hereof, but more by that great mass of Treasure which a late Governor hereof did leave behind him. At whose death *Echebar* the *Mongul* (for the *Mongul* is the Heir General unto all Mens Wealth) found in his Coffers three millions of Gold ready coyned, great quantity of Gold and Silver uncoyned, and some store of Jewels; besides Horses, Elephants, Household-furniture, and other goods almost invaluable. The Castle of *Labor* being very strong, retains its ancient Beauty with part of the Royal Palace; the rest of it is much decayed both in Extent and Beauty. The Houses are higher than those of *Agra* and *Delly*, but not so well peopled; the River is also gone off from it as well as the Court, which has made it much less in compass, yet it has five or six Streets still, two of which are above a League long. *Tavernier* part 2. p. 45. *Bernier*. p. 123.

2. *Sultan-puarc*, of more antiquity than beauty; yet of good esteem. 3. *Atbec*, in the common Road from *Labor* to *China*; reported in the description of the Travels of *Benedictus à Goes*, a *Portugal Jesuit*, to be a month's journey from *Labor*, and yet in the same Province with it. Which if it be true, either the Province must be large, or his journeys short: or if not true, we must remember that we had it from the Pen of a *Jesuit*. And yet as great as this Province or Division is affirmed to be, we do not find the names of any more Towns of consideration, which may be said with confidence to belong unto it; unless perhaps we may reduce under this Division the Kingdoms of *Haiacan* and *Buchor*; of which last the chief City is called *Bucorsuccor*, enriched by the neighbourhood of the *Indus*, but not else observable.

3. M A N D A O.

THE Kingdom of *MANDAO*, is bounded on the North, with *Pengab*; on the South, with the Realm of *Agra*, on the East, with *Delly*; and on the West, with the River *Indus*. So called from *Mandao*, the chief City of it.

The Country more Mountainous and rugged than the rest of these Provinces, by reason of the many branches of Mount *Bittigo* (the Southern part of the *Imaus*) which do over-run it: in other things partaking of the riches of *India*. The Men, as most of those who live in such Mountainous Tracts, of a warlike temper, comparatively with the rest of the *Indians*: the Women here anciently as valiant as the Men in other places: riding astride, and practised in the Arts of Horsemanship, for that cause called *Amazons*; some of which are said to be still remaining. Inasmuch as it is written in the stories hereof, that the King of this Country not long since going to the wars, was accompanied by the Queen his Wife, marching in the Front of two thousand Women all well mounted and prepared for service.

Chief Cities hereof, 1. *Mandao*, seated on the banks of the River *Mandavo*, (the *Manda* of *Ptolemy* and the An-

cients) whence it had the name. A City of great note, said to be 30 miles in compass; yet so well fortified and furnished with all manner of necessities for defence and resistance, that it held out twelve years against *Mirumudius*, or *Merbamed* the Great *Mongul*, who then besieged it. Surrendered at the last, and with it the Kingdom. Memorable for the great battle fought before it betwixt the said *Merbamed* then coming to the relief thereof, and *Badurius* King of *Cambaia*, who had then distressed it: in which *Badurius* lost his Tents and Treasures, and was fain to fly disguised unto *Diu*, to crave aid of the *Portugals*. 2. *Moltan*, which being mistaken for another Town, of or near the same name, on the Western side of the *Indus*, is by some Writers, said to have been once the chief City of a Kingdom, or a Kingdom rather of it self, but of no great note: the Women whercof, though not so good soldiers as their Ancestors of the Female Sex, yet to come as near them as they can, use boots and spurs when they take a journey, and so fitted set astride the saddle. This and the former are the same; it is still a great City, and makes vast quantities of *Calico*, but the length of the Carriage of them to *Surat* has much abated the Trade of it. *Tavernier*. p. 2. pag. 43. 3. *Scernus* on the River so called of more antiquity than greatness, as is also, 4. *Polymbotie*, the *Polibothra* of *Ptolemy* and others of the ancient Writers; then the chief Town of the *Palibothri* (by *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Prasii*) a people of as great authority and power as any in *India*.

This once a Kingdom of it self of great power and wealth, till *Badurius* King of *Cambaia* having conquered the Realm of *Citor*, and therewith a great part of *Sanga*, made an attempt upon this also. *Galgee*, then King of *Mandao*, finding himself too weak for so strong an Enemy, craved aid of *Merbamed* (or *Miramudius* according to the *Latines*) the *Mongul Tartar*, then reigning in *Chambul* or *Arachosia*, and possessed of some parts of *India* also since the times of *Tamerlane*. Who compounding an Army of his own Subjects, some mercenary *Persians*, and a great body of *Zagathian Tartars*, from whom originally descended, came in accordingly: discomfited the vast Army of *Badurius*, consisting of 150000 Horse and 500000 foot, in two set battels; the first at *Decti*, the next at *Mandao*, and following his blow, possessed himself of the whole Kingdom of *Cambaia*. But not content with that success, quarrelled the *Mandoan* King in whose aid he came; besieged him in his principal City, which at last he won, and therewith all the Kingdom also: the wretched King shewing hereby both a fair evidence and example to succeeding Ages, that the easiest way for a Prince to ruine his own Estate, and endanger his neighbours, is to admit a Foreign power into his own Dominions; which he cannot as easily thrust out, as he hath brought them in.

4. D E L L Y.

DE L L Y is bounded on the West, with *Mandao*; on the East, with the Kingdom of *Botantur*; on the North, with the Eastern parts of *Pengab*; on the South, with the Eastern parts also of the Kingdom of *Agra*. So named from *Delly*, the chief City of it, by some called *Delin*. The Provinces of this great Kingdom, and those of *Russia*, are not like our Counties and the Provinces in the populous Kingdoms, where the whole Country is peopled and divided by exact bounds; but here the Principal Cities have Governours sent to them, who reside in them and Administer justice to the People: by which means the parts about the Cities are reasonably well inhabited, those that lye more remote are in a manner desolate; partly by the Nature of the Country, and partly for want of protecting the People from the insults of thieves and wicked Men: So that the shewing the situation of the principal City, is sufficient to shew where the Province lies that depends upon it, without pretending exactly to bound it, which for the most part is impossible and needless. This Note is founded

upon *Tavernier*, but I have not that Book now by me to quote the Page.

The Country, besides what is common to it with the rest of *India*, is said to be more abundantly stored than any other part of it, with Horses, Elephants, and *Dromedaries*. Of the people nothing singular, Except it be that many of them taking more delight in thievery than honest trades, live for the most part upon spoil; but those especially whom they call by the name of *Belemi*, being such of the Nobility or better sort, who since the Conquest of their Country by the *Great Mongul*, have lived like *Out-laws* on the Mountains. Of the same temper with the *Resbutes* in *Cambaia*, and the *Agwans* in *Sanga* and *Dulsinda*; who rather than submit themselves to a Foreign yoke, (as they count that of the *Mongul*) chuse to forsake their proper dwellings, and all honest ways and means of living.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Delly*, a City not only honoured heretofore with the residence of the great *Monguls*, who from hence pass in common appellation, by the names of the Kings of *Delly*, and that amongst their most knowing Subjects; but beautified with many Sepulchres of their ancient Kings, whose Funerals and Coronations were herein celebrated. And though deserted of late times, by the *Great Mongul*, moving their Courts from place to place; as they enlarged their Empire, and increased their Conquests: yet still a great many of the Nobles, and not a few Captains and Commanders, do frequent the same, and have their houses of pleasure and retirement into it. This City is supposed to be the Seat of that *Porus* who made himself famous in the invasion of *Alexander the Great*, by his resistance; for the Proof of which, the *Indians* do now shew an *Obelisk*, or *Pyramid* of stone, which by its unknown Characters seems to be of great Antiquity, and which is said by them to have been built by *Alexander the Great*, after the defeat of *Porus*. The City is seated on the River *Gemna*, which runs East by *Agra*, and falls into the *Ganges*; The fortress is half a League in compass, with round Towers at the distance of every ten Battlements, and the Ditches are full of Water, wharfed with stone and it has lovely Gardens round about it; this having been the Court or Royal Palace of the *Monguls*. The Town has no Ditches, but is defended with Walls filled up with Earth behind, and Towers. The Air is more temperate than that of *Agra*. *Tavernier*, Part. 2d. Pag. 45. 2. *Tremel*, upon the Western side of the River *Mandao*; but not much observable. 3. *Doceti*, memorable for the great battle fought near unto it, in which *Merhamed the Mongul* overthrew the Forces of *Badurius*, and thereby opened a fair way to the Realm of *Cambaia*.

This Country Governed a long time by its natural Princes, was at last conquered by some *Moors*, or *Saracens* coming from *Persia* and *Arabia*, but I find not which; who grew to so great power and wealth, that *Sanosaradine* a *Mahometan*, one of their descendents, dreamt of no less than the Conquest of all *India*, if not of the whole Continent of *Asia* also. Having about the year 1300 (memorable for the beginning of the *Ottoman Empire*) subdued by little and little all the neighbouring Princes which made head against him; he pierced at last into *Canora*, now called *Decan*, and conquering a great part of it, returned back to *Delly*. The pursuit of his Victories he left unto one *Abdessa* his Lieutenant there, who added the rest of that Country to his Master's Territories, but kept the possession to himself; confirmed therein by *Sanosaradine*, with the title of *Regent*. But *Sanosaradine* dying in a War against the *Persians*, left for his Successor a Son so unlike his Father, that the conquered Provinces revolted from him unto other Masters, more able to govern and protect them. Confined unto its former bounds, it remained notwithstanding of sufficient power to preserve it self, from any of their equal neighbours, till the rising of the great *Monguls*: whose puissance being unable to withstand, it submitted at the last to *Adabar* the Son of *Merhamed*, the second Emperour of this

Line: who to assure himself of the peoples loyalty, and conquests, settled his Court a while at *Delly*, the chief City of it; from whence removed on the next prosperous emergency, as before was noted.

5. A G R A.

THE Realm of *A G R A* is bounded on the North, with *Delly* and *Mandao*; on the South, with *Sanga* and *Cambaia*; on the West, with *Indus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Sinda*, a part of the Kingdom of *Cambaia*; on the East, with *Oristan* or *Orixa*, so call'd from *Agra* the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal of late times of the *Great Monguls*.

The Country said to be the best and most pleasant of *India*, plentiful in all things, and such a delicate even piece of ground, as the like is hardly to be seen. Well watered as with other Rivers, so most especially with those of *Tamlico* and *Jemena*; which last runneth thorough the midst of it, North and South; or rather from the North-west to the South east, from whence bending more directly Eastwards, it falleth at last into the *Ganges*, or that which is supposed to be *Ganges*; for the head of that great River is not certainly known. The people for the most part *Gentiles*, *Mahometanism* coming in with the *Great Mongul*; and generally inclining somewhat to the *Pythagorean* Sect. For such as live upon the banks of the River *Jemena*, neither eat flesh nor kill any thing. The waters of which River they esteem so sacred, that thereof they usually make their Temple, and say their Prayers therein, but naked (in which posture they both dress their meat and eat it) lodging upon the ground, being imposed by them as penance, and so conceived.

Places of most esteem herein, 1 *Fattipore* or *Fettibarri*, on the West side of the River, a very fair and goodly City once beautified with a Royal Palace here built by *Echebar* (after the removal of his Court from *Cascimer*) with many spacious Gardens belonging to it; but much decayed, since the fixing of the Court at *Agra*, to which most of the stones are carried, and no small quantity of Corn sowed within the Walls. 2 *Agra*, on the North bank of the River *Jemena*, inferiour to *Labor* for wealth and greatness, but far more populous: the constant residence of the Court here in these latter times, drawing to it great resort of all sorts of people. By some supposed to be the *Nagara* of *Ptolemy*, but such a supposition as is built on no better ground, than some resemblance of the names. For *Ptolemy's* *Nagara* is by him placed on the Western side of *Indus*, in the Latitude of 33, whereas this *Agra* standeth on the East of the River *Jemena*, five degrees more Southwards, in the Latitude of 28. But what it loseth in antiquity, it hath got in honour: the Town and Territory being a peculiar Kingdom, till *Echebar* the *Mongul* subdued it, Anno 1598, in his passage from *Labor* to *Decan*. But it lost nothing by the hand: for *Echebar* delighted in the situation of it (and that withall it stood in the middle of his Kingdoms) made it the Seat-Royal of his Empire; fixt there, for the most part ever since: by means whereof exceedingly increased in wealth, beauty and greatness; the very Castle in which the *Mongul* usually resideth, being two miles in compass, environed with most high and unscalable Walls, and fortified with great store of Ordinance. The whole space betwixt it and *Fattipore*, being 18 miles, beautified with many *Mahometan* Temples; and with one also built by *Echebar*, for the use of such Christians as had been gained unto the faith, by the care and diligence of the *Jesuits*. For the supply hereof with Victuals, and other necessary Provisions, and the security of such as resort unto it, affirmed to be a continual market: and all the Interval from hence to the Town of *Labor* (from which distant 400 miles towards the South) adorned with continual Rows of Trees on both sides of the ways, most of them bearing a kind of Mulberry; and at every ten miles end, houses erected by the King or some of the Nobles, for beautifying the way to the Regal City, for preserving their own memory;

memory, and the safe lodging of Passengers, in danger otherwise by night, of Thieves and Cut-throats. The true *Latitude* of *Agra*, is 27. 31. It is seated in a Sandy Soil, and very Hot, yet it is now the biggest City in *Indostan*; tho' the *Moguls* have removed their Palace to *Geban Abad*, which in probability, in a short time will waste it, as it has ever done all other Capital Cities. It has no Walls, nor are the Streets built in any order, or adorned with any fine buildings as *Tavernier* pretends: For our Countryman who saw it in 1584, saith, it was populous, built with Stone, and divided into large and fair Streets, having a large River running by it. The Prince that built the City, was then living in it, so that the Reverend Author is certainly mistaken as to the date of it. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Pag. 254. 3. *Hendee*, a Town more towards the South, beautified with a fair Castle of the Kings, cut out of the main Rock, and wrought with carved work round about; fortified with 50 Pieces of Ordinance, and thought impregnable; for that cause made a Prison for great Persons. Here are also two Hospitals for such Captains (and Captains only) as are maimed in the Wars. 4. *Biani*, twelve course or 18 miles from *Battipore*; the most noted place for *Indico* in all the *Indies*; for the making whereof they have here twelve mills. Which *Indico* (by the way) groweth on a small shrub like our Goosberry-bushes, bearing seed like Cabbage-seed: which being cut down are laid in heaps for half a year, and when rotten, brought into a Vault to be troden with Oxen from the stalks; and being ground small and fine at the mills, is last of all boiled in Furnaces, refined and sorted, and sold to the Merchants.

To this division also, we may reduce the Kingdom of *Gwalior* so called of *Gwalior* the chief City, where the *Mogul* hath a very rich Treasury of Gold and Silver; kept in a strong Castle, wherein his Prisoners are secured likewise; and for those reasons, continually guarded by a strong Company of stout and well appointed Soldiers.

THE Emperours of *INDOSTAN*, commonly called the *Moguls*. *Tavernier*, Part. 2. Pag. 106.

- 1 1370 *Tamer-Leng*, that is to say, the *Lame Prince*, because one of his Legs was shorter than the other; was the most Potent Prince that has Reigned for many Ages in the East; he died in the year 1405, and lies buried at *Samar-chand*, in the Country of the *Ubeeg-Tartars* the place of his Nativity.
- 2 1405 *Miram Cha*, the Son of *Tamer-Leng*.
- 3 1411 *Sultan Mahomet*, Son of *Miram Cha*.
- 4 *Sultan Mirza*, Son of *Mahomet*.
- 5 *Hameth Sheck*, the Son of the *Sultan* above-said.
- 6 *Sultan Babur*, i. e. the Valiant Prince; the first *Mogul* that was of great power in *India*. he died in the year 1532.
- 7 1532 *Homajon*, i. e. the Happy Son of *Sultan Babur*.
- 8 1552 *Abdul Feta*, *Gelal Eddin*, *Mahomet*, commonly called *Akaba*, that is the Great. He Reigned 54 years.
- 9 1605 *Sultan Selim*, otherwise called *Jehan-guir Patsha*, that is the Victorious Emperour of the World. He had 4 Sons, *Sultan Kofrou*, 2. *Sultan Kouroum*, 3. *Sultan Perviez*, and 4. *Cha Daniel*, opposed by *Sultan Kouroum*, and died of Grief.
- 10 1627 *Sultan Kouroum*, the 2. Son, succeeded him and was called *Cha Jehan*. This Prince built a City which he called by his own name, *Jehan-abad*, and removed the Seat of the Empire from *Agra*. He was a Prince of great Goodness and Justice, and Governed his Empire for 40 years, more like a Father than a Prince. He had these 4 Sons, 1. *Da-*

ra-cha, a good prince. 2. *Sultan Suja*, 3. *Aureng Zeb*, 4. *Morad Bakche*: falling Sick in the year 1659, the second and fourth Son entered into a War against the eldest, who by the Father's order was proclaimed King; and the third joined with the fourth, but made himself Master of all, and kept his Father a Prisoner, Revenging the Rebellion of this Prince against *Jehan-guir* his Father, and *Sultan Boulaki* his elder Brother's Son; who for some time Reigned after his Grand-father. He died in confinement in the year 1666.

- 11 1659 *Aureng Zeb*, is an Ambitious Dissembling Prince, and outwitted both his Father and all his Brothers, and much enlarged his Dominions; he laid a Foundation also for the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, by the Marriage of the second Daughter of that King, to *Mahmoud* his Eldest Son. He took Prisoner, and beheaded *Dara-cha* his Eldest Brother, and then he caused himself to be proclaimed King of *Indostan*, the 20. of October 1660, tho' he was sick in effect long before. *Mahomet* his Eldest Son had a great hand in all his Wars, and of him too, he at last became jealous, and put him with *Morad Bakche*, and *Soliman Chekour* his Eldest Brother's Son, into the Fort of *Goualeor*, the 30. of January 1661. *Sultan Suja* his remaining Brother, perished in the *Desarts* of *Ara-kau*; his Father died in the end of the year 1666. To gain the Crown he pretended to have a design to cause the Law of *Mahomet* to be more exactly observed, which had been much neglected in the Reigns of *Sha Jehan* his Father, and *Geban-guir* his Grand-father; and to shew himself Zealous for the Law, he turned *Faquir* or *Derwich*, that is a Poor Volunteer: under which pretence of Piety, he cunningly made way to the Empire. He is a follower of the Sect of *Sounnis* or *Turkish Mahometism*, to which he forceth his very *Persian* Soldiers to conform. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 159.

Mr. *Herbert* in his Travels, thus sets down the Great *Moguls*, Pag. 30. 1. *Tamberlaine*, 2. *Alancham*, 3. *Bar-cham*, 4. *Emanpaxda*, 5. *Shaugb Mahumed*, 6. *Adabar*, 7. *Mahumed Selabdyn* surnamed *Ekbar*, 8. *Tangbeer*, surnamed *Shaw Selym*. 9. *Blokic*, slain presently after his Coronation. 10. *Courrone*, surnamed *Shaw Jehan*, this happened in October in 1627, the Author being then in *Surat-Road*.

The C A T A L O G U E of the *Moguls*, from Dr. *Pocock's* Supplement to the Compendium of the *Dynasties*.

- 1 1284 *Argan*, the Founder of the *Mogolian* Empire. He Reigned 7 Years.
- 2 1291 *Caichu* in *Texira Ganjatu*, he Reigned but 4 Years.
- 3 1294 *Baidu*, Son of *Targibi*, he Reigned but 8 Months.
- 4 1294 *Kazan*, Son of *Argun* the Founder; he embraced *Mahometism*, and took the name of *Mahomet*. In 1299, he took *Damascus*. He Reigned 18 Years.
- 5 1303 *Giyathoddin*, *Chodohandah*, *Mahomet*, the Son of *Argun*, the Son of *Abga* the Brother of the former succeeded, call'd also *Al Fattu*, and *Alyaptu*. He died in *Soltania* built by him.
- 6 1316 *Abu Said Bahadur Chan*, a Child of 11 years of Age, was the last of this Family; he died in 1335; upon which this Kingdom of the *Tartars*

Tartars, was divided into Factions and destroyed

- 1 1368 *Timur Lenc*, commonly called *Tamerlanes* (the Lame Prince) a Prince of great renown; he Reigned 36 Years. His name is at renown; he known to us, tho' his Successors are not of Asia.
- 2 1404 *Chalil Son of Tamerlanes*, Founder of the *Moguls of Indostan*.
- 3 1411 *Shah Ruch*, *Badhadur*, Soltan, Son of *Tamerlanes*, Brother of *Chalil*. Reigned 43 years.
- 4 1446 *Ala'adaulab Mirza*, Son of *Baisen Kari*, Son of *Shah Ruch*, Seized *Chorasan* and Reigned there.
- 5 1448 *Olug Beg*, a Son of *Shah Ruch*, dispossessed the former.
- 6 1449 *Abdo'llatiph Mirza*, Son of *Olug Beg*.
- 7 1454 *Mirza Abdollab*, Son of *Abraham*, Son of *Shah Ruch*, succeeded in *Samarchand*, *Mabomet Mirza*, Son of *Baigenkari*, Son of *Shah Ruch*, was slain by
- 8 1454 *Baber Mirza*, in 1451, this Prince after the death of his elder Brothers, continued the Succession.
- 9 1456 *Abu Said*, a Grand-Son of *Tamerlanes*.
- 10 1458 *Hofain Mirza*.
- 11 1505 *Mibafer* and *Badio'zzaman Mirza*, Sons of *Sultan Hozain*.
- 12 1509 *Abal*, *Maban*, *Mirza*, the last of *Tamerlanes's* Posterity in *Chorasan*, *Bactria*.

6. S A N G A.

S A N G A is bounded on the North, with the East Parts of the Realm of *Agra*; on the South, and West, with *Cambaia*; from which parted on the West, by the Mountain Gate; and on the East, with *Oristan*. The reason of the name I find not: this Country being too far South to be so called from *Sangalassa*, a Town of chief note near the Fountains of *Indus*; where Placed by *Arianus*, lib. 5.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Azimere* or *Agimer*, 180 miles from *Agra*. At the end of every course (each course a mile and a half) a fair Pillar erected, and at every tenth course a fair *Seraglio*, (such as we call Inns) for the entertainment of Travellers. All built by *Echebar* who wanting Children, is said to have gon in Pilgrimage on foot from *Agra* to *Azimere*, saying his Prayers at the end of every course, and lodging all night at the tenth. 2. *Citor*, the chief City of *Sanga*, and once a Kingdom of it self, or the chief of that Kingdom. Situate in the middle way betwixt *Surat*, a known Port of *Cambaia* and *Agra* spoken of before; and most magnificently built on the top of a rocky hill, to which the passage is so narrow and so well fortified, (there being in it three Gates, at the top, the middle, and the bottom) that thereby, and by other advantages of Art and Nature, it was thought impregnable. Affirmed to be 12 miles in compass, beautified with many good buildings both publick and private; but once more glorious than now it is; here being to be seen the ruins of 100 Temples, and above 100000 houses, either demolished by the Wars, or suffered to decay by the great *Monguls*, who would not willingly have any thing in the *Indies* of more Antiquity than themselves; and therefore are rather inclined to build new Cities, than uphold the old. The greatness and antiquity of it have made some Men think, that it was the Royal Seat of *Porus*. Others affirm the same of *Delly*, but neither rightly: the Kingdom of *Porus* lying more towards the River *Indus*, and not so far South. Governed not long since by a Queen called *Crementina*, not more fair than valiant, who revolting from *Badurius* King of *Cambaia*, to whom she formerly had paid Tribute, was dispossessed of the Town of *Citor*, where she had fortified her self with 30000 Foot, and 2000 Horse: the People in a desperate resolution, laying all their Treasure on

which they burnt together with themselves; in which flame it is said that their perished 70000 Persons. But the *Cambaian* did not long enjoy his Victory, for not long after both the City and a great part of the Country was conquered by the Great *Mongul*; the mountainous parts hereof being held against him by *Ramee*, the Son or Successor of Queen *Crementina*: till seeing himself destitute of all better helps, he put himself into the hands of one of the Sons of the late *Sultan*, by whom reconciled to his Father. Some other Towns there are in this Province and in the rest before mentioned; and those of good esteem perhaps amongst the Natives: but of no observation or importance in the course of business. Under this name we may also comprehend the Kingdom of *Nagrakil*, so called of the chief City of it, and that most memorable for a rich and sumptuous Chappel, cieled and paved with Plate of pure Silver, most curiously imbossed over-head in several figures, which they keep exceeding bright, with often rubbing and continual burnishing. *Malway*, another of these Kingdoms, for it is a near neighbour to *Citor*, may be Placed here also, affirmed to be a fruitful Province and the chief City of it, to be called *Rantipore*.

7. C A M B A I A.

C A M B A I A hath on the East, *Delly*, and part of *Mandao*; on the West, *Gedrosia*, a Province of the *Persian* Empire; on the North, *Dulfinda*, and the rest of *Mandao*, on the South, the main Ocean, and some part of *Decan*. It lieth on both sides of the *Indus*; and is so called from *Cambaia*, the chief Province of it. The whole divided into 1. *Sinda*, 2. *Guzarate*, and 3. *Cambaia*, especially so called.

1. *S I N D A*, (by some called the Kingdom of *Tutta*, from *Tutta* the chief City of it) hath on the East, the River *Indus*, by which separated from *Mandao*; on the North, that part of *India* which is called *Dulfinda*; on the West, part of *Gedrosia* and *Guadel*; and on the South, the *Indian* Ocean; coasting along the Western banks of the River *Indus*, whence it had the name; that River being now called *Schind*, as was said before. And for this reason, as I take it, the Western part of *India* lying North of this took the name of *Dulfinda*, and not *Dulcinda* (with a *c*) as most commonly written.

The Country for the generality very rich and fertile; but in some places nothing but a sandy Defart, inhabited for the most part by wild Asses, Foxes, Deer, and some wilder beasts; but none so wild as the *Calies*, a robbing Nation, so numerous withal, that they sometimes rob whole *Caravans* as they pass that way; notwithstanding the many Forts and Castles built of purpose to secure those passages.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Tutta* (*Gutu Negar Tutta*) on the banks of *Indus*, a Town of great Trade but most frequented by the *Portugals*, who here receive such *Indian* Commodities as come down the water from *Labor*, returning *Pepper* in exchange, which they bring up the River from their other *Factories*. 2. *Lawribander*, at the mouth of the out-let of *Indus*, three days journey from *Tutta*, the Port-Town unto which it is, notwithstanding that distance. Supposed to be situate in or near the place of that *Alexandria* which *Alexander* built in memory of his Navigation down this River to the *Indian* Ocean. An Haven much frequented, because free from Worms; which at *Surat*, and at other Havens on these Seas, so infest the Ships, that without much cost and care bestowed upon them, they make them unable to return. 3. *Calvalla*, memorable for the *Tamers*, as given by *Ecbatay* the *Mongul* to a company of *Monks* and their posterity for ever, to bring up their Daughters to dancing, and more wanton exercises. 4. *Redampoon*, a great Town with a strong Castle, seated on the edge of the *Desarts*: thorough which those that are to pass use here to provide themselves of water, and other necessaries for their journey. 5. *Naraqumir*, a pretty Town on the further side of

of the Defarts, esteemed a *Paradise* by such as have passed thorough those uncomfortable and dangerous Sands, for the space of ten or twelve days journey. 6 *Sarrama*, a large Town, twenty miles from *Tutta*, the Center in which all lines meet; and from whence distances of all Towns of *Sinda* are accustomably measured.

The Country anciently subject to the King of *Cambaia*, and in the right of that Crown to the *Great Mongul*: but the people for the most part so untamed and masterless that except in some of the greater Towns, they pay no *Tribute*; and in some places, even within half a day's journey of *Tutta*, will acknowledg no King, but rob and spare whom they Please. If at any time the *Mongul* sends a force against them, (as he doth sometimes) they fire their houses, made like a *Bee-Hive* of Straw and Morter, which are soon rebuilt, and retire themselves unto the Mountains. Yet one good quality they have amongst many ill ones: When they have robbed a *Traveller*, took mony of him in the way of Toll or Custom for his Passage by them, they will conduct him honestly to the end of the Defarts, lest any should rob him but themselves.

2. *GUZARATE* hath on the North, *Sinda*; on the South the main Ocean, and *Cambaia*; *Clitor* to the East; and *Tutta* to the West, with the *Indus*.

The soil of the same temper and fertility with that of *Cambaia*, especially so called; and there we shall speak further of it: The Common people whom they call *Guzarates*, of the same disposition generally with the rest of the *Indians*: but the greatest part of the Country is possessed by the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract. Who when their Country was subdued by the *Moors* or *Saracens*, retired unto the Mountains or Fastnesses of it, standing upon their guard; and were never yet subdued by the *Great Monguls*. Who though possessed of the Sea-shores, and most Towns of consequence, are fain to leave the In-land parts and open Countries to the power of the *Out-laws*; who either prey upon the people, or force them to compound for their peace and quiet at uncertain rates, Their Arms most commonly a Sword, Buckler, and Lance; well horsed and resolute in any thing they undertake; which made one of the *Monguls* say of them, *That no Men in the world knew to dye, but they*.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Diu* in a *Peninsula* looking towards *Persia*, but on the East side thereof near the mouth of *Indus*. Possessed by the *Portugals*, and by them fortified with strong and impregnable Cittadels, built with the leave and liking of King *Bedurius*; thereby to buy their aid against *Amerbamed* the *Mongul*, who had newly vanquished him. A matter of such consequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, that *John Botelius*, confined to *India* for some crimes by him committed, undertook (in hope by the merit of that service to obtain his pardon) to carry the first news of it in a small Vessel, not above 18 foot long, and about 6 foot broad (the best which for the present could be provided:) Which with great courage he performed, and through that large, wide, and tempestuous Ocean came in safety with his news to *Lisbon*, to the great joy of the King; but greater admiration of all sorts of people. Scarce settled in their new possession, when besieged by *Solyman Bassa* Admiral to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with a Fleet of 80 Ships and Gallies, Anno 1537. offended with the *Portugals* for aiding the King of *Persia*; more for diverting the Spice-trade from *Alexandria*. In which he had so ill success, that having assaulted it in vain with his Land-Forces, he was fain to raise his siege in such haste and tumult, that he left his great Ordnance behind him. 2 *Sauran*, a Town and Castle of the *Resbutes*, spoken of before, and by them held against the power of the *Great Mongul*. 3 *Boldra*, a very fair and beautiful City, but of no great compass. 4 *Ardowat*, not far from the banks of the *Indus*, on the North of this Region towards *Sinda*. 5 *Madabat*, by some called *Amadabat*, affirmed to be both for wealth and greatness the chief of *Guzarate*, near as big as *London*, well walled, and situate

on a Plain near the River-side: seldom without Merchants of all Religions, *Jews*, *Gentiles*, *Christians*, *Moors*, some of all and neither. *Amadabath*, the Metropolis of *Guzurat*, lies in the Latitude of 23. 32. 18 Leagues from *Cambaia* to the South; and 45 from *Surat*, to the North upon a small River, comprehending with its Suburbs and the Villages about it, which are a part of it, 7 Leagues in compass; the Streets are very broad, and the publick and private buildings are very magnificent. There is not any Nation or Merchandize in *Asia*, which may not be met with in this City; and which much improves the Trade of it, there is nothing paid for Exportation or Inportation: It hath Jurisdiction over 25 great Towns and 2998 Villages, which yield yearly six Millions of Crowns, all expended again upon the Garrison. There are so many Gardens about this City, and so many Trees in it, that the whole City looks like a Garden at a distance. *Mandeflo*, Pag. 29. 6 *Sparinga*, 7 *Ferlane*, 8 *Skerkeffe*, this last remarkable for the Sepulchres of the old Kings of *Cambaia*; fair, and well kept, and visited from all parts of the Kingdom.

Nothing considerable in this part of the Country as to point of story, but what is common to them with the rest of *Cambaia*; but that the *Resbutes*, or *Rasbooches* still remain unconquered. Possessed not only of the Hills and Mountains, but of some strong holds; and governed by the heads of their *Casts* or Tribes, all which acknowledge the *Mongul* for their *Superiour*, in regard of his power, but none of them obey him as their Lord or Sovereign: conceiving it to be some abasement of their own authority, if they admit him as an Umpire to compose their differences, which they sometimes do.

3. *C A M B A I A* specially so called, hath on the North, *Mandao*; on the South, the main Ocean, and some part of *Deccan*; on the East, *Surat*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains; on the west, the main Ocean, with some part of *Guzarate*. It standeth on the East sides of the out-lets of *Indus*, running along the Sea-shore for 500 miles, and took this name from *Cambaia*, the chief City of it.

The Country said to be the most fruitful of all *India*, abounding in Rice, Wheat, Sugar, Spices of all sorts, and choicest fruits: of Silk and Cotton so great plenty, that they fraught yearly forty or fifty Ships with those commodities. In the mountains they find *Diamonds*, *Chalcedonies*, and a kind of *Onyx-stone*, which are called *Cornelins*, and corruptly *Cornelians*. Amongst the rarities hereof, they reckon the *Abades*, a great beast, twice as big as a Bull, having on their snouts a little horn, and the Hide so hard, as no Man can pierce it with a thrust, which is the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients.

The people effeminate and unwarlike, and therefore not much used by the *Monguls* in a war of consequence; to supply which defect he furnisheth himself with Soldiers out of *Persia*, of which his standing-bands consist; most of their Sultans and Commanders of that Nation also. More given to Merchandize than War, and therein thought to be as cunning (if not deceitfull withall) as any people in the World: treacherous in their trust, proud in their carriage, bloody upon advantage, and much given to *Venerie*; ignorant of Letters, but well practised in *Mechanical Arts*. In matters of Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, not knowing, or contemning the Law of *Mabomet*; but very punctual in their own heathenish superstitions. The *Bannians* in this Country, being natural *Indians*, nussed in Paganism, and so wedded to their old Idolatries, that no persuasions can prevail with them, make the greatest number; and seem to be all *Pythagoreans* in some opinions, for they eat not any thing that hath blood or life, but feed on Rice, Roots, Plantoons and such natural fruits: paying a large *Revenue* yearly to the *Great Mongul*, that no Oxen may be killed amongst them. And because that new opininos should not grow amongst them, they marry in their own Tribes only, and never out of their own Trades; secure thereby as they conceive from all innovations

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Cambaia*, three miles in compass, one of the greatest and best built of all the East. So populous withal, that it is thought to contain 130000 Families; and is therefore called the *Cairo* of the *Indies*. Of most esteem in all this Kingdom (though far less than *Madabat*) to which it doth impart its name. *Cambaia*, the Capital of the Kingdom of *Guzurat*, and a noble Port; lying in a very great Bay of the same name. This Kingdom is now subject to the great *Mogul*: the City lies in Longitude 105, Latitude 22, 30. This is one of the greatest, the richest and best traded Cities in the *East Indies*; seated in a fruitful soil and full of people: It is walled with a fair Wall of free-stone, and hath very large houses with straight and broad Streets; it is greater than *Surat*, being 10 Leagues in compass, and hath 3 *Basars* or Market-Places, and 4 noble Tanks or Cisterns, able to find the Inhabitants water all the year; tho' there is 7 Fathom water in the Haven of this City at a high water, yet at low water the Ships lie dry on the Sand and Mud which cover the bottom of it: the Inhabitants are partly Heathens and partly *Mahometans*; and in 1638, the English had here a Factory, as *Mandello* acquaints us, from whom the latter part of this Description is taken. The Province belonging to it, has the same name, and is bounded to the East, by *Mandao*; to the West, by *Gedrosia*; and to the South, by the *Indian Ocean*. It is a great, rich and fruitful Province; the Inhabitants *Moors*, *Persians* and *Bannians*. *Herbert*, Pag. 42. *Mahometans* and *Pagans* as to their Religion. It is the most Populous Kingdom in *Indostan*, and the Capital City is 3 miles in compass, and thought to contain 80000 Men. In 1423, it was conquered by an *Arabian* Prince, whose Posterity in the 3d Descent were conquered by the *Mogul*. 2. *Baracho*, Southwards of *Cambaia* on the top of a hill, with a fair River underneath it; well walled and noted for the best *Calicuts* (a kind of Linnen-Cloath so called from the City of *Calicut*, where it was first made) not to be matched in all the *Indies*. *Mandello*, Pag. 26. calls this City *Broitschia*, placing it in 21. 56. Latitude, 12 Leagues from *Surat* to the North, and 8 from the Sea, upon a pretty high Mountain with a River at the foot of it, having Walls of free-stone so well built that it may be numbered amongst the strongest Places in the *Indies*: It has a good Garrison for its Defence, and is saith he, sufficiently well peopled; and also its Suburbs; but there live in it few persons of Quality, most of the Inhabitants being Cotton-weavers. 3. *Smalley*, still more to the South, and about a mile from the Sea-shore; but giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, where the Ships ride that trade at *Surat*. 4. *Surat*, about ten miles from the Bay of *Smalley*, from whence the River navigable but by Boats and Shallops, fortified with a Castle of stone, well stored with Ordnance. The Houses for the most part of Sun-dried Bricks, very large and lasting: built with flat Roofs, but Battlemented on all sides for fear of falling; and beautified with goodly Gardens of Pomegranates, Melons, Figs, and Lemmons, enterlaced with Rivulets and Springs. Made of late years a Factory for the English Merchants, who have here their President, and a magnificent House for their reception, and Staple of their Commodities. *Surat* is seated in the Latitude of 21. 42. upon the River *Tapta*, which riseth near *Barampour*, and four Leagues beneath this City falls into the Sea. The City is four square, and one of its sides is washed by the River, for which cause it is not Walled, but the three sides to the Landward have a good Rampart of Stone, and a Castle of free-stone. The Trade of this City was brought to what it is by the English and Dutch, who settled their Factories here, and made it thereby one of the best Traded Ports in the *Indies*. The English President of this Factory, was then the principal of all the English Trading in the *East Indies*. *Mandello*, Pag. 23. *Thevenot*, Part. 3. Pag. 15. *Tavernier*, Part. 2. Pag. 109. *Bernier*, Pag. 58. 5. *Neriand*, a great Town, and as remarkable for the making of *Indico*, of the matter and making whereof we have spoke already, when we were at *Biani*, a Town, or

City of the Kingdom, or Division of *Agra*; as memorable for that Commodity as this *Neriand*, or any other of *India*. 6. *Daman*, upon the Sea-side over against *Diu*; and possessed as that is by the *Portugals*. A beautiful and pleasant Town, fortified with a strong Castle at the North end of it, of white chalky stone, well planted with ord'nance: opposite whereunto on the South side of the Town, a goodly Church, edged on the top with white. Which with the houses for the most part of the same colour also, afford a pleasant prospect to the Sailors by. 7. *Campanels*, situate on the top of an high Mountain, and environed with a seven-fold wall, once the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Cambaia*. 8. *Dicaitote*, a place of such strength, that the Great *Monguls* could never get it by force. Surrendred at last upon composition, conditioned they should still be governed by a King of their own. 9. *Netherby*, a great Market of Brazen ware, Beasts, and Armour. 10. *Bandare*, 11. *Tanai*, &c. 12. *Brodra*, a City 27 Leagues North from *Surat*, upon a little River called *Wasset*, which was lately built by *Rafia Ghie*, Son of Sultan *Mahomet* the last King of *Guzarate*. It is fortified with good Walls and Bastions, after the old way; and hath 5 Gates. It hath under it 210 Villages, and a Garrison sent thither by the *Mogul*. I am doubtful whether this be not *Boldra* mentioned above in *Guzerat*. *Mandello*, Pag. 27.

This Kingdom taking in *Guzarate* and *Sindia*, as parts hereof is extremely populous; said to contain 60000 Towns and Villages, very well inhabited: but the people not accustomed to, or unfit for wars. Anciently governed by Kings of their own, it was first subdued by the *Arabians* or *Moors*, Anno 1423. under the conduct of one *Mahomet* or *Machamut*; who having forced the *Resbutes* or *Naturals* of the Country to betake themselves to the Mountains, was made King hereof. To him succeeded his Son *Mamudius*, one of no great action. But what he wanted was supplied by his Son *Badurius*, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Citor*, invaded that of *Mandao* also. His Army for that war consisted of 500000 Foot, 150000 Horse, 1000 great Pieces of Ordnance, 500 Wagons loaded with Powder and Shot, and as many Wain-loads of Gold and Silver to pay his Army. But being discomfited in two great Battels by *Merhamed* the *Mongul Tartar*, whom *Galgoe* the *Mandaoan* King had called in to his aid, he shaved his beard, and fled in a disguise to *Diu*, then possessed by the *Portugals*; whom he licensed in that distress to build the Cittadel; slain afterwards by a mean Mariner, at his return from the *Portugal Vice-Roy*, whom he had Visited on Ship-board. And though *Mamudius* his successor endeavoured to free his Kingdom from both pretenders, yet weakened with the loss of so great an Army, he was not able to effect it. First driven from *Diu*, which he had besieged both by Sea and Land, to his great dishonour; and after vanquished in battel by *Adabar*, the Son of *Merhamed*, not far from *Serkeffe*, the ancient burial-place of the Kings of *Cambaia*, but then the Sepulchre of the Kingdom; which by that victory fell to the Great *Monguls*, who have since enjoyed it.

4. D E C A N.

D E C A N is bounded on the East, with *Narlinga*; on the West, with the *Indian Ocean*; on the North, with *Cambaia*; on the South, with *Atalabar* and *Camra*. The reason of the same we shall have anon.

It lyeth along the Sea-Coast for the space of 250 miles betwixt *Aliga* and *Bate*, two noted Rivers; extending East; as far as the Mountain *Gates*, and afterwards thrulling into the North betwixt *Cambaia* and those Mountains till it meet with *Cambaia*. The Soil much of the same nature with the rest of *India*, but not so flourishing as *Cambaia*. The people for the most part *Mahometans*, which Religion was first planted there by the conquests of *Sanofaradine*, 350 years ago; yet not without some intermixture of their ancient *Gentilism*.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Bidor*, the Seat-Royal

Royal of *Mamudza*, once sole King of this Country; who to beautify and adorn this City, commanded every one of his Prefects, or subordinate Governours, being eighteen in number, to build here a Palace, and to reside therein certain months in the year: each one to leave a Son there in perpetual Hostage. Situate in the most Northern parts of the Country more near the borders of *Delly*: from the King whereof *Mamudza* had then newly revolted; and therefore would make sure of this place, as most in danger. 2. *Visapore*, bordering on *Cambaia*, the Princely Seat of *Indalcan*, one of the Kings of *Decan*, after it was dismembered into several Kingdoms. 3. *Danager*, confining on *Canara*, a beautiful and flourishing City, once the chief Seat of *Nisalamoccus* or *Nizalmoxa*, another of the Kings hereof, after that division. 4. *Decan*, so called by the name of the Province; of which the chief City next to *Bider*, the Imperial Seat. Six miles from which there is an hill encompassed with an high wall, and kept by a strong Garrison, because of the great store of *Diamonds* which are digged out of it. The Town so wealthy, that the people generally are attired in Silks, or the purest *Tiffany*. 5. *Sintacora*, on the mouth of the River *Aliga*, where it falleth into the Sea. 6. *Goa*, a Sea-port Town also, situate in a little but most pleasant Island, called *Ticuarinum*, fifteen miles in compass; opposite to the mouth or out-let of the River *Mandavo*. A noted Empory, and one of the chief keys which unlock the *Indies*; for number of Inhabitants, magnificent buildings, and pleasantness of situation, one of most note in all this Country. Possessed by the *Portugals*, who have here their *Arsenal*, and Harbour for their *Indian* Fleet; by which they command these Seas. So strongly fortified withal, that though beleaguered by *Indalcan* (of whom before) with 35000 Horse, 6000 Elephants, and 250 Pieces of Ordinance, *Anno* 1573, yet he could not force it. Made in regard of the convenient situation and strength thereof, the ordinary residence of the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, who hath here his Council, Chancellour, and other Officers, for the Government of such parts of *India* as belong to that Crown: as also of the Arch-Bishop or Primate of the *Indian* Churches planted by that Nation, who is hence called the Arch-Bishop of *Goa*. 7. *Chaul*, a Sea-Town, in the hands of the *Portugals* also, and by them well fortified: infomuch that *Nisamalocco* assaulting it at the very same time with a very great Army, was fain to leave it as he found it. 8. *Balaguete*, in the Up-lands or Hill-Country, whence it had the name; *Baia* in the *Persian* Language signifying a top or summit of a Mountain, and *Guate* an Hill. 9. *Brampore*, once the chief Seat of another Kingdom, called the Kingdom of *Chandis*, now the chief City of those parts of *Decan* which are Subject to the Great *Mongul*. Situate on a great River in the midst of a spacious Plain, beautiful, and of very great Trading; in bigness equal unto *Paris*, yet yielded to *Echebar* the *Mongul* without any resistance, *Anno* 1600. *Miram* then the King thereof forsaking it, and betaking himself to, 10. *Syca*, a strong hold both by Art and nature; situate on the top of an Hill, which is in compass five Leagues, and environed with a triple Wall: furnished with Victuals, and all other necessary Provisions, sufficient to maintain 60000 Men many years; 3000 great Pieces of Ordinance planted on the Walls. Besieged herein by *Echebar* with an Army of 200000 fighting Men, he held out against him; till overcome by promises of fair correspondence, drawn out of his hold (some of his Counsellors being bribed to persuade him to it) he was detained by the *Mongul*, and the Commanders won by rewards and hopes, yielded up the Fort, and therein all the Princes of the Royal Family, accustomedly kept therein when the Throne was full; which vacant, the next Heir was taken thence to succeed unto it. Of the same nature as it seemeth, with the hill *Amara* in *Aethiopia*, or the *Abassine* Empire.

The Country formerly inhabited by a People called *Venazarari*, by Religion Gentiles; and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sa Nofaradine* a *Mabo-*

metan, and King of *Delly*: who driving the Inhabitants into the hill-Countries possessed himself of a great part of it, compelling them to submit to his Religion. The residue hereof subdued by *Abeliffa*, whom *Sa Nofaradine* left here to pursue the War; was by him Governed with great Justice for 20 years, when dying he left his Government to his Son *Mamudza*, confirmed by the Successour of *Sa Nofaradine* in his Father's Regency, on the payment of an annual Tribute. *Mamudza* soon finding that the young King was of no great spirit, not only refused to pay the Tribute imposed on him, but took unto himself the title of King of *Decan*, giving this name unto the Country (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a mongrel body of *Christians*, *Mahometans*, and *Gentiles*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in Language, Customs or Religion; the word *Decan* signifying in that Tongue, as much as an illegitimate Brood, or a body of Bastards. Out of these he made choice of twelve (others say eighteen) whom he appointed Governours of so many Provinces: not daring to trust any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the Country; and hoping that these Slaves, so promoted by him, would be more subject to command. But here his silly hopes deceived him. For these Slaves either governed by their Master's example, who had done the like unto the Son and Heir of *Sa Nofaradine*; or presuming on their own strength, and some Foreign Aids, left to their Master nothing but an empty Title; each one becoming absolute in his several Province. Nor did his Successours for any long time enjoy that Title; *Daquem*, the last of them being taken at *Bider* his chief City, and thereupon the name of King usurped by every one of these petty Tyrants; reduced at last into fewer heads. Such of them as were left, became considerable Princes, as appeareth by the great Army raised by *Indalcan* for the Siege of *Goa*. But in the end, distressed on the one side by the *Portugals* who embarrased their Trade, and invaded on the other side by the Great *Mongul* with most puissant Armies; *Melic* entituled King of *Decan*, and *Miram* King of *Brampore*, were in fine subdued by *Echebar* about the year 1600. Against whom and his Successours, tho' the *Venazarari* still hold out as the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches* do in the Realm of *Cambaia*; and that the King of *Am-danager*, perhaps also some other petty Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country, the residue of these *Roytelets*, and petty Princes (if any of them be remaining) being Homagers or Vassals to him. Against whose farther Progress to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* so greedily aimed at, the puissant Kings of *Narvinga*, and those of *Malabar* have opposed their power; whose Kingdoms and Estates we must next survey, before we take a view of those other Provinces which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

9. C A N A R A.

C A N A R A is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof formerly it was a part;) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the East, with *Narvinga* from which separated by the Mountain Gates; on the West, with the Ocean. The reason of the name I find not, nor is it much worth the searching.

The Country hath a fair Sea-coast, with many capacious Harbours in it, which cannot but add much to the Wealth thereof; as liberally furnished in the in-land parts with Rice, Figs, and Sugars: but destitute of Wheat; Pulse, and Barley. Nor much the poorer for that want; the People either not knowing, or not regarding the use of bread; but living on such fruits as the Earth produceth of it self, without the charge or care of the Husbandman. In other things but little differing, if at all, from the rest of the *Indians*: their Religion for the most part *Paganish*, but intermixt with *Mahometans*.

Principal Towns and Cities of it, 1. *Melinde*, a commodious Haven. 2. *Onor*, a Port-Town of good note, sometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3. *Batalia*, situate in the

the richest part of all this Country; never possessed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4. *Mangalor*, a Town of great Wealth and Trade; fortified with a strong Castle, once destroyed by the *Portugueses*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Narsinga*, who is of this Country. 5. *Mayendre*, more within the Land. And so is also, 6. *Lispor*, famous for her Quarries of Adamant. 7. *Salfette*, in a *Peninsula* of 20 miles compass, containing 36 Villages, and 80000 Inhabitants; the Town about 9 miles from *Goa*, and subject with the whole *Peninsula* to the *Portugals*.

This Country is now subject to the King of *Narsinga*, but formerly under the command of its own Princes: the name of *Canara* comprehending in those times all that Country also, which is now called *Decan*. Conquered by *Sa Nosaradine* and *Abdissa*, and by *Mamudza*, cantoned into many *Prefectures*; this part reverting to its old name, fell to the *Narsingan*, who taking his advantages in the Minority of one of their Princes, became Master of it. And when *Idalcan* (for I take that not so much for the name of a Man, as a Title of dignity) questioned his Title to it, as appertaining properly to the Kingdom of *Decan*; *Chrisamorao* then King of *Narsinga*, brought a powerful Advocate to defend his right; that is to say, an Army of 606000 Foot, 29650 Horse; and 537 Elephants; every Elephant having a Tower on his back with four Men in it; with which strong Argument the *Idalcan* being confuted in the Schools of War, with much difficulty saved himself though he lost his cause; the *Narsingan* ever since continuing quiet in the possession of this Country, except only some of the Sea-Towns in the power of the *Portugals*: who in the year 1567, destroyed in those few places by them possessed, no fewer than 200 of their Idol-Temples, with many of their *Pagodes*, or Idols in them; converting the Rents and Lands which belonged unto them, with the *Revenues* raised from the several Ports which they hold herein, to the maintainance of a College of *Jesuits* in *Salfette*, and other Religious Houses founded by them, in their other Cities.

10. M A L A B A R.

M A L A B A R is bounded on the North, with *Canara*, from which parted by the River *Gangeraco*; on the East, with the great Mountain *Gates*, by which divided from the Realm of *Narsinga* South-East; on the West and South, with the main *Indian Ocean*. On the Coast whereof, it doth extend for the space of 300 miles; that is to say, from the River *Gangeraco* to the Cape *Commari*: which I conceive to be the *Commaria Extrema* of *Ptolemy*, though others take it for the Promontory by him called *Cory*. But the breadth hereof is nothing answerable to the length, not above 50 miles where broadest, and ending towards the Cape in a point or *Conus*.

The Country more populous for the bigness, than any in *India*, enjoying a very temperate Air, and a fruitful soil; well watered and indented with many Creeks: unfit for Corn, but plentiful in Rice, and all manner of Spice, as Ginger, Cinnamon, *Cassia*, Pepper, and most excellent Fruits. Amongst their Trees there is one whose name my Author speaks, which bears Dates like unto the Palm; out of which they have not only Wood for fuel, but they draw from it Wine, Sugar, Oil, fine Cloath, and Cordage; another Tree, which beareth Cotton, Cyprus or Cobweb-lawn, of the Leaves whereof they make a fine stuff like to *Sattin* or *Taffatic*. They have also great store of Apes and Monkeys, Parrots, Paraquettos, and other Creatures not known in these parts but from thence: not to say any thing of their Lions, Elephants, Bears, Bugles, common to them with others of their *Indian Neighbours*. The flowers there always in their *Verdure*, and the Trees perpetually green; by reason that the Air is so sweet and temperate.

The People are of a coal-black colour (differing therein from the rest of the *Indians*, swarthy and complexioned like the *Olive*) well-limb'd, wearing their hair long and

curled: about their heads an handkerchief wrought with Gold and Silver; and about their middle a cloth which hangeth down to conceal their nakedness. Of manners treacherous and bloody, more properly to be termed desperate than stout and valiant; and for more surety in their Wars, they use poysoned Arrows, as they do also in their thieving both by Sea and Land, to which more addicted. In Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, and more belotted generally on their Idolatries, than the rest of these Nations. The *Pagode*, or Idol which they worship, seated upon a brazen Throne, and Crowned with a rich Diadem; from his Head issue out four horns; from his Mouth four tusks; his Eyes fiery like a Glow-worm, his Nose flat and ugly, his Visage terrible; his hands like claws, his Legs and Thighs like those of a Lion. In a word, we cannot paint the Devil in a more ugly figure than they do their God. Unto this *Pagode* or his *Priest*, they offer the Virginity of all their Daughters: the *Pagode* having in the place of his privy parts a Bodkin of Gold or Silver, upon which the Bride (married most commonly at ten or twelve years of Age) is forcibly set; the sharpness of it being such, that it forceth out the blood in great abundance: and if she prove with Child that year, it is said to be of his begetting, and more esteemed. Others with more humanity, instead of torturing their Daughters on this wretched Idol (parallel almost to the offering of their Sons to *Moloch* amongst the *Syrians*) present them to the *Bramin*, or *Idol-Priest*, to be deflowred the first night of the Wedding: and without one of these two handfels no Man is suffered to enjoy the use of his Wife, not their Kings themselves. More privileged yet than many Women neighbouring on them, in that they are not compelled to burn themselves with their Husband's bodies; but may have many husbands either successively or at once, as they list themselves: and if at once, she sends her Children to that Husband (as we know who did) who she thinks to have the best right to them.

The Country very well watered, as we said before, and parted by large Rivers into many Provinces; as if intended naturally to be Cantoned into many Kingdoms. Divided at present, and long since into those of 1. *Cononor*, 2. *Calicut*, 3. *Cranganor*, 4. *Cochin*, 5. *Cai-Colam*, 6. *Coulan*, and 7. *Travancor*.

C O N O N O R joyneth to *Canara*, extending Southwards on the shore about 20 miles, where it bordereth on the Kingdom of *Calicut*. The chief Cities of which, 1. *Cononor*, giving name to the whole Kingdom, well built and beautified with a very fair Haven no more safe than spacious, capacious of the greatest Vessels, and for that cause much frequented by Foreign Merchants; but especially by the *Portugals*, who for the assuring of their Trade have here a Cittadel, erected and well garrisoned with the King's consent. 2. *Cota*, not far from *Cangeraco*, the border betwixt this and *Canara*. 3. *Peripatan*, on the confines of *Calicut*. 4. *Marabia*, 5. *Tramopatan*, 6. *Main*, intermediate Towns, but not much observable.

2. **C A L I C U T**, South from *Cononor*, extended on the Sea-shore 25 Leagues, and situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of all *Malabar*. Chief Towns whereof, 1. *Pandarano*, on the skirts of *Cononor*. 2. *Tanor*, a retiring-place of the Kings. 3. *Partangale*, 4. *Chatua*, on the borders of *Cranganor*. 5. *Chale*, a strong place, once in the hands of the *Portugueses*; but in the year 1601, recovered by the King of *Calicut*, who had besieged it with an Army of 90000 Men. 6. *Capacote*, the Haven of *Calicut*. 7. *Calicut*, the chief City of the Kingdom, to which it gives name, in length upon the Sea, three miles and a mile in breadth; containing about 6000 houses, but standing some of them far asunder; mean and low-built; few of them exceeding the height of a Man on horseback; the soil being so hollow and full of water, that it is not capable of the foundation of an heavier building; for that cause unwall'd. Inasmuch that Merchants houses are here valued but at 20 Crowns, those of the common sort at no more than ten. Which notwithstanding, of great trading, and much frequented by *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Syrians*

Syrians, Indians, yea the very Tartars; these last from the furthest parts of *Cathay* (taking *Cathay* in that general sense as it comprehendeth all the Countries of the Tartars, between mount *Imaus*, and the Eastern Ocean) being 6000 miles distant from it, insomuch that it is said by some of the Spanish Writers, that when *Vasques de Gama*, the first discoverer of the way to the East Countries by the *Cape of Good Hope*, first arrived in this Haven in 1498; he found in it no fewer than 1500 Merchants Ships of all sorts, but without Anchors and the Compasses, few of them fit for Sea-fight, not able to sail (in regard they had not the use of the Compass) but by four winds only. The common Staple in thosetimes of all Indian Merchandize, till distracted into several Ports by the power of the Portugals: who being more industrious and better Architects, have forced a foundation on the Shore, for a very strong Castle; by which they command the Haven, and receive Custom of all Merchandize going in and out. The inconvenience whereof being found by the King of *Calicut*, he besieged it with 100000 Men, and though the Portugals held it out a whole Winter together, yet in the end they were fain to quit it; but first demolished it to the ground, that it might not be made useful to those of *Calicut*. A City of exceeding wealth, and of no less wantonness; the Men here using to exchange Wives with one another, to confirm their Amities: and the Women spending their whole time in adorning themselves with Rings and Jewels about their Ears, Necks, Leggs, Arms, and upon their Breasts, though going naked for the most part, one would think that a little dressing might suffice them. If covered it is only with a Smock of *Calicut*, a kind of Linnen-cloth here made, and from hence so called: and that not used but by those of the better sort.

3. *CRANGANOR* lieth on the South of *Calicut*, a small Kingdom, and affording little worth the speaking of; but that a great part of the Inhabitants of it are of those old Christians, whom they call *Christians* of St. *Thomas*. *Cranganor*, the chief City, which gives name to the whole, affirmed to be so full of them, that they amount unto the number of 70000; vexed and exposed to publick scorn both by the Idolaters and *Mahometans*, amongst whom they live. The City rich, commodiously built for trade, at the mouth of a River, which watering with its crooked streams the most part of the Country, makes it fat and flourishing.

4. *COCCHIN*, more South than *Cranganor*, extended on the shore for the space of 40 Leagues; and therein many Christians of the first Plantation, besides some *Converts* made of latter times by the *Jesuits*. Towns of most note herein, 1. *Augamale*, the Arch-bishop's See of those ancient Christians, fifteen miles from *Cochin*. 2. *Cochin*, a Bishop's See, but of later erection and the chief City of this Kingdom, which takes name from hence. Situate on the mouth or out-let of the River *Maugat*, by which almost encompassed like a *Demy Island*. Of great trade in regard of its Haven, very safe and spacious; as also by the friendship of the *Portugal* Nation. By whose power and favour they have not only freed themselves from the King of *Calicut*, to whom before they did acknowledge some subjection; but drawn from thence a great part of the traffick also: this King permitting them to erect a Castle on the Haven, to secure their trade, which the other on good reasons of State forced them to destroy. The King hereof in some respect superiour unto that of *Calicut*, who is a *Vassal* to him: this King being the Pope or chief Bishop, as it were of all the *Bramines*: for which cause revered by all the Kings of *Malabar*, (as the Pope by many Princes of these Western parts) who look upon him as the head of their superstition, and pay him many annual duties.

4. *CALCOLAM* is on the South of *Cochin*, with which agreeing both in temper of the Air, and fertility of the Earth: which notwithstanding, the King hereof is not so rich as his other neighbours. Here live also many of the old *Christians*, taking name from St. *Thomas*: but

those so destitute of Priests and Ministers to instruct them in the Principles of Christianity, that once in three years there came some formerly from the Patriarch of *Muzal in Assyria*, to baptize their Children. Better I hope provided for in these latter daies, since their embosoming and reconciliation to the Church of *Rome*. Their chief Town of the same name with the Country, hath a very fair Haven in the fashion of a *Semi-Circle*; well traded till destroyed by the Portugals, but since that re-edified. Of less note there are many both Towns and Villages, but such as do deserve here no particular mention.

6. *COULAN* upon the South of *Cai-Colam*, extended 20 Leagues more Southwards upon the shores, is said to be destitute of Corn, but plentiful of Pepper, and most sorts of Spices. So stored with Horses, and fit Riders to serve upon them, that the King hercof keeps 20000 Horse in continual readiness either for invasion or defence. This Kingdom as the rest before, takes name from the chief City of it, which is called *Coulam* 24 miles from *Cochin*, and once a member of that Kingdom; of great resort by foreign Merchants, by reason of the fair and commodious Haven. In former times the ordinary seat of the *Cobritin*, or chief Priest of the *Bramines*, till moved to *Cochin*; and held to be the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of all *Malabar*, the rest being thought to be but Colonies of this. Both in the City and the Country there are many Christians, as well of the original foundation of Christianity, as of the late improvements which are made by the *Jesuits*.

7. *TRAVANCOR*, called also *TRANCANOR*, reacheth from the Kingdom of *Coulam*, to the Cape of *Comari*, and turning towards the East, bendeth again unto the North, as far as *Cael* in the Kingdom of *Bisnagar* or *Narsinga*. By which accompt it hath the benefit of the Sea on all sides except towards the North: reaching in breadth from the West Seas unto the East, about 90 miles. The Country as the rest before, inhabited by many with the name of *Christians*, if they may be called so who want *Sacraments*: the condition of these *Thomæan Christians* in former times being so unhappy, that in 50 years before the coming of the *Jesuits*, (if the *Jesuits* may be believed from whom we have it) they had seen no Priest, nor other Minister of the Gospel. Chief Towns hereof, (for of those many others of less note I shall make no mention) are, 1. *Travancor*, the chief City, which gives name to the Province, but neither well built, nor of very much trading. 2. *Quilacare*, the Head-City of a Signiory, but held of the King of *Trancanor*, as their next and immediate Lord; though all those Kings are also *Feudataries* of the Crown of *Narsinga*. And were that the worst *Tenure* by which they hold, it might be tolerable; but there is a matter of worse consequence which attendeth these besotted Princes. The Kingdom here is but a pomp of twelve years continuance, and then endeth in a sad *Catastrophe*. For at the end of those twelve years, the King repairs to *Quilacare*, prayeth before the Idol above-mentioned, then mounteth on a Scaffold covered with Silk or Tapestry; and in the sight of all his People, gathered together to behold this strange solemnity, cutteth off his nose, ears, lips, and other parts, which he casts towards the Idol, and in conclusion cuts his own throat for his final Sacrifice: his designed Successor being present at this bloody Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was Scepter bought at so dear a rate. For though all Crowns be lined with thorns, yet here the pomps of Sovereignty are less lasting than in other places; the entrance full of fears and the end of horrors.

These Kingdoms heretofore but one, till the year 900 or thereabouts, were branched and cantoned into these seven by *Sarama Percimal*, the sole Monarch. He by the solicitations of some *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein so devout, that he resolved upon a Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, there to end his daies. At his departure he divided his Estates into these seven parts, distributing them amongst the nearest of his

Kindred; alligning unto him of *Coulan* the preheminance in sacred matters: and the Imperial dignity unto him of *Calicut*, with the title of *Samorin*, that is to say, *Chief Emperor*, or as some write, a God on Earth. He only privileged with the right and power of *Coinage*; the rest to be subordinate, if not subject to him. From *Pereimal's* setting forwards to the City of *Meccha*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings, and begin their years; as the *Christians* from the birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his Hests were punctually observed. But the Kingdom of *Calicut* being weakned by the power of the *Portugals*, the other Kings began to free themselves from that subjection; and in the end to cast off all relation to him, and to his Prerogatives. Yet still he is esteemed of more Power and Majesty than any of the rest of the Kings of *Malabar*; and looked on with more reverence than any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* I have nowhere met with, but conjecture them to be very great; first in regard of that infinite trading which is managed from most parts of the World in this Port of *Calicut*, the Customs and Imposts upon which must needs be of exceeding value; and secondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are said to equal some Kings in *Africk*; and Dukes in *Europe* not a few.

Quid Domini faciant, audent cum talia Fures?
And if the Man such Riches have,
Then what must he that keeps the Knave?

What Forces he is able to raise may be fully seen by that which hath been said before; wherein we find him with an Army of 90000 Men besieging and taking in the Forts of *Chalen*, with another of 100000 beleaguering the Castle which the *Portugals* had built near the City of *Calicut*. And when the said *Portugals* stirred up the King of *Cochin* to make head against him, he fell upon them suddenly, both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-Soldiers, and 200 good Vessels of War for his Service at Sea. Sufficient force to reduce the rest of these petty Kings to their old acknowledgements, but that some of them to avoid the danger, have put themselves under the *Vassalage*, or protection at the least, of the Great *Mongul*: others by suffering the *Portugals* to build Forts in their Kingdoms, have engaged them in defence of their Estates against this pretender. His Forces consist most of Foot, Horse being unserviceable in these Countries, by reason of the many Rivers which interlace it, and these Foot are compounded most of Gentry, which they there call *Nairos*, train'd up to their Weapons when they are but seven years of Age; every one to that Weapon which he most delighteth in, which makes them very expert and nimble at them; much privileged for that cause by the Laws of the Country, and so esteemed by the King, that out of them his Sisters chuse what Men they please to their Husbands, some of them by that means being made the Fathers of the succeeding King.

Nothing else memorable touching the affairs of *Calicut*, but the way of succession to the Kingdom; the Crown descending upon none of the King's Children, but on the Son of his eldest Sister, or nearest Kinswoman. For being that one of the *Bramines* hath always the maiden-head of his Queens and that some of these Stallions are continually allowed to keep them Company, it is presumed, or very probably supposed, that the Queen's Children are the *Bramines* and not the King's.

8. N A R S I N G A.

N A R S I N G A, is bounded on the South, with *Travancor*; on the West, with the Mountain Gates; on the North, with *Oristan* or *Orixa*; on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Narsinga* the chief City of it, and the Royal Residence of the King.

The Country is said to be in length 500 miles, or as some say, of as much extent as can be travelled in six months; plentiful in the same Commodities which the

rest of *India* doth afford, except Pepper and some other Spices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not so well furnished with Rivers as some other places: which want is liberally supplied by water falling from the Mountains and received into Trenches, Meers, and Lakes, which do wonderfully cool, moisten and enrich the Land, causing the Corn and Cattel to prosper above all imagination. Most destitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*, in which if any year passeth without rain they fall into such extremities, that they are fain to sell their Children.

The People as to Religion, *Gentiles*, so worshipping one God as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature, that they joyn the Devil or their *Pagodes* in Commission with him; whereto induced by the perswasion of their beastly *Bramines*, who thereout suck no small advantage. Some *Christians* there are intermixt of the old Plantation; especially in *Maliapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*; but not so well instructed in the Principles of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*; nor to dissuade them from the use of some *Heathenish* Customs though barbarous, inhumane, and against all reason; nor used in any place but amongst the *Indians*. Amongst which I reckon for most savage, the forcing of poor Women to burn themselves with their Husband's bodies; the Women's Kindred, not the Husband's, thrusting them on these hard conditions; who reckon it a disgrace to their Family, if she should refuse. And because they will be sure not to have that infamy stick upon them; they have ordered that the Woman who shall so refuse, must shave her head, and break her Jewels, and not be suffered to eat, drink or sleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miserable than the Flames which they seek to shun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greediness, and to contend which shall be foremost; she being thought to have been most loving during his life, who is now most willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her self to his *Manes*, at the Funeral Pile: whereunto thus alluded the Poet:

Et certamen habent, lethi, quæ viva sequatur
Conjugium; pudor est non licuisse mori,
Ardent viâtrices, & præbent pectora flammæ;
Imponuntque suis ora perusta viris,
A shame it's not to die; they therefore strive,
Who may be fam'd to follow him alive,
The Victor burns, yields to the flame her breast;
And her burnt face doth on her husband rest.

Chief Cities of this Country, 1. *Cael*, on the borders of *Travancor*, belonging anciently to the Kings of *Coulan*, now to those of *Narsinga*; the people whereabout called *Paravi*, are a kind of *Christians*, who live for the most part by fishing for Pearl; which they sell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengalian* Merchants. 2. *Golconda*, the chief City of the Province called *Masulipatan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sopbian* Sect; but a Vassal to the Kings of *Narsinga*. In the year 1686, a Monk from *Hispahan* in *Persia*, gave an account that *Sultan Adoxem*, Son of *Aurangzeb* Great *Mogul* or King of *Indostan*, had beaten the King of *Golconda*, and had made a Peace with him upon payment of double tribute. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Page 253.

Golconda, saith Mr. *Fitch* an *Englishman*, is a fair pleasant Town, the Houses built with Brick and Timber, having plenty of Fruit, and Water, but the Air is very hot. The Kingdom more frequently called *Orixa* is very great, and lyes extended for the space of 260 French Leagues upon the Bay of *Bengala*, and takes the name of *Golconda*, from the Capital City of it; which lyes between the River *Gunga*, and the Mountains of *Balagua*; and is a great and noble City, and lyes 60 Leagues from the Port of *Masulipatan* to the North; and 50 from the nearest Coast of the Ocean to the Westly, 24 from *Syrat* to the East. The other Cities are *Donizapatam*, *Caragaro*, *Orixa*, *Masulipatan*, *Narsingapatam*, and *Maliapaura*, or *St. Thomas*. This Prince is one of the

the most powerful in the *Indies*. It is a pleasant Country to travel in, by reason of the Rice and Corn, and the many lovely reservatories. Monsieur *Thevenot*, in his Travels, assures us, That *Golconda* is only a Castle, where the King of *Orisa* resides; and that the City is called *Bagnagar*, and is a great and a populous, rich, and well traded City, in Southern Latitude, 17. 10. Adorned with many noble Structures and fine Gardens, tho' the common People live in low Thatch'd ill contrived Huts. The Castle of *Golconda* stands 2 miles West of *Bagnagar*, upon an hill rising like a Sugar-loaf, secured by a Ditch which is very deep, and a Wall made of stones 3 foot in length and breadth: The Ditches are filled with fair and good water, and besides this Wall it has five round Towers, with a great many Cannon mounted, both on the Wall and Towers for the defence of the Place. The Prince of this Country is a *Mahometan*, and is Tributary to the Great *Mogul*: he has vast Revenues being the Proprietor of all the Lands in his Kingdom, and his Toils yield him a great sum of money. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Chap. 10. Agrees with the former as to the fertility and plenty of this Kingdom. He saith farther, *Bagnagar* signifies the Garden of *Nagar*, the Wife of one of the late Kings who prevailed with him to build this City; yet *Aurengzeb* sacked it afterwards, which occasioned the removal of the Court to *Fort-Golconda*. This City lyes in 16, 58 Latitude; the Country about it is flat, but near the City are certain Rocks like those of *Fountain-Bleau*; a great River washeth the walls on the South-West, which after (at *Maslipatan*) falls into the Bay of *Bengala*. This City is little less than *Orleans*, and has beautiful houses, and a delicate Stone-Bridge, with a Suburb beyond it a League in length, called *Erengabad*, in which live all the Handicrafts-men, and meaner people, the City being reserved for the Nobility, Officers, of the Court, Justice and Army. Our Author exactly describes it, but I must be short. This City lyes 329 Leagues from *Surat* to the East; and 100 from *Maslipatan* to the North-West. The present King of *Golconda*, is *Koutob Cha*, who zealously maintains the Sect of *Chiaïs*, or *Persian Mahometans*. *Tavernier* Part 2. Pag. 159. For the reasons why the Great *Mogul* has not reduced the Kingdom of *Golconda* to an intire subjection, See *Bernier*, Pag. 59. 60. 3. *Chamdagrîn*, one of the Seats-Royal of the King. 4. *Prepeti*, three miles from *Chamdagrîn*, memorable for a yearly Feast here celebrated, in honour of *Pereimal* (once sole King of *Malabar*) reckoned for a Saint at least in these parts of *India*: and the offerings at which accustomedly amount unto 200000 Crowns. 5. *Chadambaram*, the Mother-City of those *Pagan* Solemnities, which are done to *Pereimal*; who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of Annual Rent, all consumed by the *Bramines* belonging to it, who pretend to have been born out of *Pereimal's* head. 6. *Madura*, honoured with the residence of the *Chochananda*, or the chief *Prelate* of the *Bramines* of this Kingdom; so numerous, that in this Town, and the Territories of it only, are thought to be no fewer than an hundred thousand. *Madura*, a City in the *East Indies*, in the Promontory of *Malabar*, which is great and populous; it was heretofore under the King of *Bisnagar*, but is now together with the Country in which it stands, subject to a Prince of its own, who is yet a kind of subject to the King of *Bisnagar*. It lyes between *Malabar* to the West, and the Gulf of *Manar*, which parts *Malabar* from *Ceylon* to the East, and he is Sovereign of this Coast and draws a considerable Revenue from it. The Seat also of one of the three *Naicbi*, or Tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narsinga*; the other two residing at, 7. *Gingi*, and 8. *Tanjaor*, the chief Towns of their Principalities, but not else observable. *Gingi*, a great City which gives name to a Province. This was heretofore under the Kings of *Bisnagar*, but has now a Prince of its own: it is very strong and has a Castle built upon a Rock. The Province or Kingdom of *Gingi*, has *Bisnagar* to the North; the Gulf of *Bengala* on the East; the Mountains of *Malabar*, on the West, and the Kingdom of *Tanjaor* to the South.

Tanjaor, a City in the *East Indies*, which was formerly subject to the King of *Bisnagar*, but has now a Prince of its own, who is yet a Tributary to the former. It yes 60 miles from the Coast of *Choromandel* to the West. 9. *Maliapur*, called also *St. Thomas*, from an opinion that the body of the Apostle was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolatrous Indians*, whose Posterity in other things like unto other Men, are said to have one leg and foot as big as an *Elephant's*: a punishment inflicted on the whole Generation for the sin of their Ancestors. How true this is I cannot say, but sure I am that *Dorotheus* saith, That he rested at *Calamina*, where he was slain with a Dart. However the *Portugals*, to make some use of the old Tradition, removed some bones from this place, which were said to be his, and enshrined them in *Goa*, their own City; much visited by profitable *Pilgrims*, to their great enriching. The City once so large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples, for the use of divers Nations which resorted thither. In these latter daies desolate and forlorn, inhabited only by some old Christians, till the *Portugueses* began to people it with new Colonies. 10. *Choromandel*, giving name to a large Sea-Coast, lying on the West-side of the Gulf of *Bengala*. 11. *Castia*, a Town of *Choromandel*, in which the Woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Country, but buried quick in the same grave with him. 12. *Negapatan*, in the same Region, inhabited for the most part by *St. Thomas-Christians*. *Negapatau*, now under the *Dutch*, formerly under the *Portugueses*. This City is 72 miles from the Island of *Zilan*, on the East of *Malabar*, and is very great and full peopled, with *Portugueses* and Christians of the Country converted by them, yet there are some *Gentiles*. The Trade here is not great, being only Rice and Bombast; but the Country has plenty of Provisions. The City belonged to a Lord of *Bisnagar*, who treated the *Portugueses* very well; but in 1565, plundered all their houses for denying him some *Arabian* Horses he sent for. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Pag. 226. 13. *Tarnassari*, once the chief City of a Kingdom so called, the King whereof was able to bring into the Field 100000 Horse and Foot, and 100 Armed Elephants, but now subject to the King of *Narsinga*. The people black, but so out of love with their own colour, that they willingly prostitute their Wives or Daughters, to any people of a whiter and more clear complexion. 14. *Bisnagar*, this Kingdom is bounded on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Decan* and *Cuncam*; on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*; on the West, with the *Indian Sea*; and on the South, with the Kingdoms of *Malabar*, and *Singa*: it is sometimes called the Kingdom of *Narsinga*. The City that gives name to this vast Kingdom, lyes almost in 15 Degrees of North Latitude and 107 of Longitude; on the Eastern side of a long chain of Mountains, that divide this Promontory from the North to the South; it lyes 45 Leagues West from the shores of the Bay of *Bengala*; and 35 from *Narsinga* to the West. This Kingdom is by the late Travelers and *Indians*, called *Karnatêck*, or *Caratica*; and is at this day possessed by a *Raja*, who is descended from the potent *Ramras*, Lord of all the *Peninsula*, from whom the Kings of *Decan*, *Misapour*, and *Golconda*, about 200 years since, revolted. *Bernier's*, History of the Empire of the Great *Mogul*, Pag. 59. This was once the chief City of this Kingdom, whence the King is sometimes called the King of *Bisnagar*. It was in those times 24 miles in compass, with nine Gates in it, (amongst others) continually guarded with Soldiers; and a magnificent Palace, not elsewhere equalled. In the year 1565, sacked by four *Mahometan* Kings of *Deccan*, who with their joyn't Forces had invaded this Kingdom; it became desolate and forsaken; and the Court removed to *Pene-gardo*, eight daies journey within the Land (*Bisnagar* being seated on the borders of *Deccan*) but long it had not staid there when removed to 16. *Narsinga*, where it hath since been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdom, unto which it gives name; though the King many times calls himself by the name of that City where he resideth for the present.

Of the Antiquity of this Kingdom I have little to say, these Eastern parts not being known at all till these later times, nor well known in these. About the year 1550 their King then Reigning, was imprisoned by three of his Captains or Commanders; who shewed him only once a year to his Subjects, parting the Power and Government amongst themselves. He being dead, and his Son kept in the like restraint, ; *Romaragio* the first Captain ascended the Throne, *Timaragio* managed the Estate, and *Bengabe* commanded the Army. But these Usurpers being overthrown by the Kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565, *Timaragio* the Survivor took the charge of all; whose Son, to make himself sure of the Kingdom, murdered his imprisoned Sovereign (the life and liberty of Kings being much of a date) whence followed many broils and troubles touching the succession, till settled in the Person of *Chrismarao*, the undoubted Heir: who did not only restore peace and quiet to *Narsinga* it self, but recovered *Canara* out of the hands of the *Indalcan*, who had before endangered his Estate therein. Of the great Army which he led against this *Indalcan*, we have spoke already; adding here only, that before he went upon this enterprize (called the journey of *Rachiol*) he sacrificed in nine daies 2036 Beasts to the Country-Idols, the flesh whereof he caused to be distributed amongst the Poor. Routed at first, and being perswaded by some about him to go out of the field, he is said to have made this noble Answer *That he had rather the Indalcan should boast that he had slain him, than vanquished him.* And thereupon leaping into the thickest of his Enemies, and well followed by the valiantest of his Friends, he obtained the Victory. But this vast Army of 600000 Foot, 30000 Horse, 537 Elephants with necessaries answerable to such infinite multitudes, speaks only what he can do on extreme necessity, or when he had some long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better measured by their Standing-Forces, than by necessitated Levies. And herein this Prince comes not much short of his greatest Neighbours: his Standing-Bands consisting of 40000 *Nairos*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, that serve on foot; 20000 Horse, who are either *Persians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants; well paid, and kept in continual readiness; his Foot defrayed out of his Revenues, his Horse maintained like the *Turks Timariots*, out of certain Lands distributed amongst his Captains (some of which are said to have a million of Crowns *per annum*) to furnish him with these stable Bands of Horses and Elephants.

As for his Revenue, it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three; defraying with the rest the expence of his household, and the entertainment of his Foot. This Sum amassed together out of the Lands, Mines, and Forests of the Country, which are wholly his; and the waters of some Rivers (sold by him to his Subjects) which he monopolizeth, the common people having nothing but their Arms and Labour. Of which, the Mines, Forests and one third of the Lands he retaineth to himself; the other two being divided amongst his Captains. So that it is no marvel if so rich a Country yield him such an income, considering it is all his own. I do rather wonder (of the two) it should yield no more.

9. O R I S T A N.

O R I S T A N or O R I X A, is bounded on the South, with *Narsinga*; on the West, with *Delly*, and *Sanga*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Botanter*; on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patane*; so called from *Orissa*, the chief City of it. This is the name of a City, a Province, and a Kingdom; that here described, is the Province of *Oristan*: which when the *Mogul* conquered it was a distinct Kingdom.

The Country hath plenty of Rice, Cloath of Cotton, and a fine stuff like Silk, made of grass, and there called

Yervia; with which, together with *Long Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Mirabolans*, and other Commodities here growing, they use to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Orissa* only. The people so well governed, or so hating theft, that in the time of their own Kings, before they came under the *Monguls*, a Man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points, of the same Temper and Religion with the rest of the *Indians* subject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moisten and refresh it; but none so beneficial to the Kings hereof as the River *Guenga* (of old called *Chaberis*) the Waters whereof esteemed sacred by the Kings of *Calicut* and *Narsinga*, and much used by them in their sacrifices and superstitious purgations, are wholly engrossed by this King, who selleth them to those Princes at excessive rates. Besides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-Coast, of 350 miles in length; that is to say, from *Cape Guaderino* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narsinga*, to *Cape Leogora* in the East, which parts it from *Bengala*. But for all that not very much traded, because not so well provided of Commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far less Territory.

Towns of most note herein, 1. *Orissa*, on the Sea-side or not far from it, the best traded Port of all this Kingdom; to which the name thereof is to be ascribed, as the Head-City of the Country. 2. *Cateoba*, six daies journey within the Land, the ordinary residence of their Kings before it was subdued by the Great *Monguls*. 3. *Angeli*, a well frequented Port, at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; from whence many Ships are yearly laded with *Indian* Wares. 4. *Bacoli* or *Bacola*, more within the Land, and once the Head-City of a Kingdom, but a very poor one. 5. *Simergan*, where they held it an impiety to eat flesh, or to kill any beast. 6. *Senerpate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deserves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom, but that the Kings hereof were *Gentiles*, subdued not many years since by the King of *Patanaw*; and both grown weaker by that War, with *Echebar* the Great *Mongul*.

10. B O T A N T E R.

B O T A N T E R (under which name I comprehend all those petty Kingdoms which are crowded together in the North and North-East of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Oristan* and *Patanaw*; on the West, the River *Guenga* or *Chaberis*, by which parted from the Realms of *Pengab*; on the North, the *Zagathaian Tartars*, divided from it by some branches of Mount *Taurus*; on the East, the Famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Botia*, the principal City of *Botanter*, which is the chief of these small Kingdoms.

The Country great, of three months journey in extent, full of high Mountains, one of which may be seen five daies journey off, in which are said to dwell a People with ears of a Span long or more, whom otherwise those of the Valleys count as *Apes*. In those parts which are next *Pengab*, they are white, and *Gentiles*; in others, more inclined to the *Olive-colour*. Their Garments they wear close to their bodies, so straight that one cannot see a pleat or wrinkle; and those they never put off by night nor day whilst they are able to hang on: nor do they wash at any time, for fear of defiling so pure a Creature as the Water. Contented with one Wife (deserved to be held a miracle in these Eastern parts) and yet cohabit not with her after two or three Children. When any of them die, the *South-sayer* is to tell them what to do with his body; according to whose direction (first consulting his books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towns of note there are amongst them. The principal, 1. *Bottia* the *Metropolis* of it. 2. *Clamur*, of which little memorable. 3. *Kukares*, the second Kingdom of this rank, large, but exceeding mountainous, as being over-run by the branches of mount *Caucasus*, which divides it from *Tartary*. So named

named of *Kakares* the chief Town thereof, by some called *Negariet*, their Staples for the sale of their Cloath (most of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chinese*, and *Tartarian* Merchants, who resort frequently to those Markets. This is a distinct Kingdom of it self, the Kings whereof are called *Dermain*, but Vassals to the Great *Mongul*. And so is he of, 3. *Couche*, another Kingdom of this Tract, frontiering upon *Cauchin-China*, beyond *Ganges*; so called from *Cauche* the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reason it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will: full of good Pastures by that means, and those well stored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Dear, and other Cattel; though the people neither kill nor eat them, but on the contrary build Hospitals for them, in which when lame and old, they are kept while they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them, their small money being *Almonds*.

4. *G O U R E A*, the most Northern Realm in this general division, so called of *Gor*, or *Goren*, the chief Town of it. The Country in some parts mountainous, out of which springeth the River *Sicilly*, one of the Tributaries unto *Ganges*; the rest a kind of a Desert or unpeopled Country, joyneth close to *Couche*, in which are few Villages, grafs (or Reeds rather) longer than a Man, and therein many *Bufs*, *Tigers*, and other wild Beasts; none wilder than the Thievs, who frequent the Wildernesses.

In this Tract also are the Kingdoms of 5. *R A M E*, and 6. *R E C O N*, joyning upon *Zagathay*, or inclining towards it; possessed by the *Mongul-Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, if not before: but *Feudataries* to the Kings of *Chabul* or *Arachofia*, who commanded in the North-East of *Persia*, and these North parts of *India*; and from those places drew his Army or the greatest part of it, when called unto the aid of *Galgee* the King of *Mandao*. Here is also the Kingdom of, 7. *T I P P U R A*, naturally fenced with Hills and Mountains, and by that means hitherto defended against the *Mongul-Tartars*, their bad Neighbours, with whom they have continual Wars. But of these Northern Kingdoms lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be said; and that little of no certain knowledge, those parts being hitherto so untravelled, that they may pass in the account of a *Terra Incognita*. Most of these petty Kingdoms are become so far Tributaries to the Great *Mogul*, that their *Raja's*, or Princes, serve in their Armies for pay; and attend his Court: but if he oppresses them in any instance, then they revolt; and in all the Civil Wars of *Indostan*, they are able to turn the ballance, by joyning with which of the Parties they think fit. This has made that Kingdom very unquiet, and often has endangered the ruin of it.

11. P A T A N A W.

P A T A N E or P A T A N A W, is bounded on the North, with the Realm of *Botanter*; on the East, with *Ganges*; on the West, with *Oristan*; and on the South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patane* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdom of this name in the farther *India*: but whether it were so called because a Colony of this; or from some resemblances in the nature of the several Countries, or from the signification of the word in the *Indian* Language, I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that tho' they have the same name, yet they are under several Governments, and situate in far distant places: no otherwise agreeing than in some resemblances, as *Holland* in the *Low Countries* doth with *Holland* in *Lincolnshire*.

The Country yieldeth viens of Gold, which they dig out of the Pits, and wash away the earth from it in great Balls. The people tall, and of slender making, many of them old: great praters, and as great dissemblers. The Women are so decked with Silver and Copper, especially about the feet, that they are not able to indure a shoe. Both Sexes use much washing in the open Rivers, and

that too intermixt together in their natural nakedness; especially such as live near the banks of the River *Jamena* (esteemed more holy than the rest) which from *Agra* passing thorough this Country falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns hercot, 1. *Patane*, a huge Town and a long one, built with very broad streets; but the Houses very mean and poor, made at the best of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The Metropolis of this Kingdom, because the ancientest, and that which gives the name unto it. 2. *Banaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the *Gentiles* from remote Countries use to come in Pilgrimage, to bath themselves in the Holy Waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanam*, very fair and flourishing, and beautified on the Road with handfom Villages. 3. *Siripur*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of the Country; not yet subdued by the Great *Monguls*. 4. *Ciandecan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Jesuits*, when blamed by them for the worship of so many *Pagodes*, as contrary both to the Law of God and nature; For causing them to rehearse the *Decalogue*, he told them that he did offend no more against those Commandments in worshipping so many *Pagodes*, than they themselves in worshipping so many *Saints*. 3. *Satagam*, a fair City (for a City of *Moors*) once part of *Patanam*, since ascribed to *Bengala*. 4. *Satagam*, which lyes at the mouth of the *Ganges*, seated in an Island, in the Latitude of 29. in the Map of *Indostan*; this place is 100 miles from the Sea, yet they row to it in 18 hours, by force of the Tide, which is very great: but this is done only with small Barks, the Ships go only to *Butor*. It is a reasonable fair City, abounding with all things, and in 1568, was under the King of *Patane*, but was about that time conquered by the Great *Mogul*. This City was built by the *Moors*, or *Arabians*, *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Pag. 230. In the latter Maps, it is placed in 24 Latitude. 5. *Hugueli*, where the *Portugueses* live, is one League from this Place, and is in the Latitude of 23. Ibid. Pag. 257.

The People of this Country properly called *Pataneans*; but corruptly *Parthians*, were once of great command and power in these parts of *India*: Lords for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Bengala*, into which driven by *Beburxa*, the *Mongul-Tartar*, the Father of *Emanpaxda*, and Grandfather of *Echebar*. Their last King being slain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joyned in an *Aristocracy*, and waiting upon *Emanpaxda* had the better of him. After this, their Successours attempted *Oristan*, and added that also to their Estate, but they could not long make good their fortunes, subdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*, and made subject to him. Three of them viz. the Prince of *Siripur*, the King of *Ciandecan*, and he whom they call *Mausadalin*, retain as yet, (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their ancient *Paganism* as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Maometism*, have vassalled themselves to the Great *Mogul*, now the Lord Paramount of the Country.

12. B E N G A L A.

B E N G A L A is bounded on the North, with *Patanam*; on the East, with the Kingdom of *Pegu* on the South and West, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth in length on the Gulf and River 360 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land. A Country stored with all things necessary to the life of Man; great plenty of Wheat, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, and long Pepper. Such abundance of Silk and Cotton, and of flesh and fish, that it is impossible that any Country should exceed it in those commodities. And which crowns all, blest with so temperate and sweet an air, that it draws thither people of all sorts to inhabit it. Here is also amongst other rarities, a Tree called *Moses*, which beareth so delicate a fruit, that the *Jews* and *Maometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* sin. The Riches, Fertility, and Beauty of

of this Kingdom, are preferred before those of *Aegypt*; and indeed of the whole Earth, by *Tavernier*, and *Bernier*, who had seen it. Pag. 140. This Kingdom in time past hath been as it were in the power of the *Moors*, [*Arabians*] yet there are great numbers of *Pagans* or Idolaters. *Hackluit*, Tom. 2, Pag 231. At this time it was for the most part under the *Mogul*; as *Aegypt* was taken for the product of the *Nile*, so it is thought *Bengala* is of the *Ganges*, see *Ganges*. The greatest and best part of it is a knot of River-Islands, made by the *Ganges* and some other Rivers, which from the Kingdom of *Pegu*, pass through this of *Bengala*, into the Ocean. This together with the heat of the Climate, is the true cause of the fertility of this Country. There is at the mouth of the River *Orenoque* in South *America*, a Country exactly like this, but not equal to it, by reason it wants culture and inhabitants, sufficient to improve and adorn it; and perhaps all the advantages of this, are owing to the *Arabians*, the great builders of Cities and improvers of this part of the World, before the arrival of the *Portugueses* here.

The natural Inhabitants for the most part are of a white complexion, like the *Europæans*, subtil of wit, and of a curious disposition; well skilled in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandize, if not somewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with some smattering in *Philosophy*, *Physick*, and *Astrology*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparel: not naked as in others of these *Indian* Provinces, but clothed in a shirt or smock reaching to their feet, with some upper Garment over that. The Women of an ill name for their unchastity, tho' *Adultery* he punished with cutting off of their noses. Neat, if not curious and too costly in this one custom, that they never seeth meat twice in the same Pot, but for every boyling buy a new one. In Religion for the most part *Mahometans*, especially on the Sea-shores, which lay most open and commodious to the *Arabians*; by whom *Mahometanism* was here planted many Ages since.

Of Rivers we need take no care, having spoken of the *Ganges*; that with its many channels may abundantly serve to water so small a Province. But hereof more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now to the Cities. The principal whereof, 1. *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, situate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned for one of the most beautiful Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by Pilgrimages, by reason of the holiness and divine operations ascribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it: there being few years in which not visited by three or four hundred thousand Pilgrims. 2. *Gouro*, the Seat Royal of the ancient Kings. 3. *Carigan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4. *Taxda*, once a Town of great traffick, and situate in those times on the banks of *Ganges*; but now by the changing of the channel (occasioned by the frequent over-flowing of it) above a League off from the River. 5. *Porto Grande*, and 6. *Porto Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*; but without Forces for defence, or rules for Government. Places like the *Asylum*, which was built by *Romulus*; whereunto such as dare not stay in their own Countries, or any well regulated Cities, use to make their resort; privileged here to live in all kind of licentiousness.

Here is also in the South parts of this Province, or adjoining to it, the City and Kingdom of *Arachan*; lying, along the banks of *Ganges*, but so remote from the Sea that it is 50 miles distant from the nearest branch of it. Wealthy and populous withal; governed heretofore by a King of its own, so wallowing in wealth and sensual pleasures, that he had in this City, and the parts adjoining twelve Royal Palaces or *Seraglio's*, all stowed with Women for his lust. Now subject with *Bengala* and *Patanaw*, to the Empire of the Great *Monguls*.

There are some small Islands in the Gulf of *Bengala* which I account unto that Kingdom. 1. *Bazacata*, now called *Basse*. 2. *Barasse* of which name there are five in

Ptolemy, three of them, by *Mercator* said to be *Mindanao*, *Cailon*, and *Subut*. 3. Two called the Islands of *Good Fortune*, by him placed under the *Aequator*, and said to be inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters; as also were three more which he calls, 4. *Sadadibæ*, now named *Cainam*. 5. *Insulæ Satyrorum*, or the Isles of *Satyrs*, three in number, the people whereof were reported to have tails like *Satyrs*. And 6. those called *Maniola*, in number ten, (now *Islas de Præcel*) reported by *Ptolemy* to be so stored with *Adamant* stones, that they violently drew to them any Ships or Vessels which had Iron in them; for which cause they who used these Seas fastned the planks of their Ships with wooden pins. But our later *Navigators* find no such matter, unless perhaps it may be in the exploits of Sir *Huon of Bourdeaux*, where indeed we meet with such an Island, in the course of his *Errandrie*. This story was invented to give a reason, why no Iron was used in the Ships that were employed on this Coast; as very little or none was before the *Portugueses* came thither. This is mentioned in *Hackluit's Voyages*, very frequently and alone by this very Author; and in all probability was the custom in *Ptolemy's* time.

But to return again to the Kingdom of *Bengala*, we find it of a different constitution from the rest of the Kingdoms of these parts. Not Governed by a Family of Successive Princes, descended from the Stem of a Royal Ancestry, as others are. Chance or necessity, had brought thither many *Habassines*, or *Ethiopians*, who made a Conquest of the Country; and chose a King out of themselves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Regal Honour to the *Habassine* Nation, they procured thence yearly, thirty thousand Slaves, whom they trained up unto the wars; advanced unto the highest commands in Civil and Military Service; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Sovereign; as the *Mamlucks* in the Kingdom of *Aegypt*, whom herein they followed. By some *Arabians* trading with them, they came in time to admit *Mahometanism*, amongst them; on the Sea-coasts especially. Dispossessed first of some part of their Kingdom, lying about *Satagan*, by the *Pataneans*, when driven to seek new dwellings by *Baburxa* the *Mongul Tartar*; and of their whole Kingdom, by the valour and good fortune of *Echegar*, who added it unto the rest of his Estate.

Thus have we drawn together all the *Indian* Provinces on this side *Ganges*, (the Kingdoms of *Malabar* and *Narsinga* being but a *Parenthesis* in the construction of this sentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his descent from the *Mongul-Tartars*, one of the five great Tribes or Nations into which that people were divided. Derived originally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almost all the Greater and Lesser *Asia* unto his Estates, left *Persia*, with the parts of *India* which lay nearest to it on the North, to *Myrza Charork*, his fourth Son. But his Issue failing in *Abdula*, the fourth of that Line, those Estates fell to *Abusaid*, descended from *Maromcha* the third Son of *Tamerlane*: Whose Son and Successour called *Zeuzes*, by some *Malaoncles*, being dis seized of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Persia*, by *Ussan-Cassanes*; the rights of all, with the possession of *Arachosia* (now called *Cabul*) and *Paropamisus* (now *Candahor* or *Sablestan*) together with so much of *India* as was held by those Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger Sons of *Abusaid*: whose Posterity laying hold on such opportunities as were offered to them, have made themselves Masters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whose Successours and their achievements we shall here present.

THE Great Monguls.

1473 1 *Hamed*, the Son of *Abusaid*, of the Race of *Tamerlane*, after the Conquest of *Persia* by *Ussan-Cassanes*, succeeded in *Cabul*, *Candahor*, and the parts of the Realms of *India* subject to the *Tartars*

- 1500 2 *Babor* or *Baburxa*, in danger to be dispossessed of most of his Estates by the neighbouring *Usbeques*, living upon the borders of *Persia*, *Tartary* and *India*, whom at last he quieted; enlarging his Dominions by the Conquests of some Part of *Patanaw*, and other Kingdoms in the North.
- 1532 3 *Hamoyen*, the Son of *Babor* or *Baburxa*, commonly called *Amanpaxda* vanquished by the *Parthians* or *Pataneans*, and their Confederates, craved aid of *Thomas*, the second *Persian* Monarch of this Line, on promise to conform to the *Sopbian* Sect: and by that aid confirmed and settled his affairs; but held himself to the principles of Irreligion.
- 4 *Merhamed* or *Miramudius*, Son of *Emanpaxda* called in by *Galgee* the King of *Mandao* against *Badurius* the *Cambaian*, vanquished the *Cambaian* King in two pitched fields; and conquered the Kingdoms of *Mandao* and *Balassia*, with some other Provinces.
- 5 *Adabar* the Son of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambaia*, unto his Dominions.
- 1550 6 *Mahomet Selabden*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the most fortunate and victorious Prince of all his Family, subdued the Kingdoms of *Caximer*, *Agra*, *Decan*, *Orissa*, *Bengala*, *Patanaw* and divers others of less note.
- 1605 7 *Selim*, surnamed *Fangheere*, the Son of *Echebar* 2. who added nothing that I hear of, to his Father's Conquests.
- 1627 8 *Blockie*, the Grand-child of *Selim* by his eldest Son, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* at *Agra*) proclaimed King on the death of his Grand-father; but shortly after made away by *Asaph Chawn*, so to make room for,
- 1627 9 *Curroon*, the third Son of *Selim* or *Fangheere* or *Cha Jehan*, and Son-in-law unto *Asaph Chawn*; having by his own Ministers, and the hands of his Father-in-law, murdered the proclaimed King his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royal blood; succeeded to the Estates, and was Crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince, still living for ought I hear to the contrary.
- 1659 10 *Aurence-Zeb*, younger Son of *Cha Jehan*, taking advantage of a Sickneſs his Father fell into, deposed him, and entering a war with his elder Brother, beat him in the field and so obtained the Kingdom. He kept his Father in restraint to the day of his death, but with great respect and civility. He has been a Prince of great action and success, and has added to the Kingdom several Provinces, on the South side, being a warlike and cunning Prince. He is still living for ought that I know.

Above in the Kingdom of *Agra*, I have added several Catalogues of these Princes, differing from this here, and from each other; so that I cannot reconcile them: the Reader if curious, may turn back to them.

To look a little on these Princes, their Estate and Power; in matters of Religion they have generally been *Mahometans*, that Religion being long since embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally descended. But not so scrupulous or precise in that profession, as to endeavour the suppressing of any other opinions: both *Echebar*, and his Son *Fangheere*, being so inclined unto Christianity, that they permitted the *Jesuits* to build Colleges and Churches in *Agra* it self, the Imperial City, and many other chief Cities in his Dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, That being doubtful what Religion to adhere un-

to, he caused thirty Infants to be so brought up, that neither their Nurses nor any body else should speak unto them; resolving to addict himself to the Religion of that Country, whose Language should be spoken by them, as most agreeable to nature; and he did accordingly. For as those Children spake no Language, so was he positive and resolved in no Religion; able to see the vanities of *Mahomet*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the strictness of Christianity. And tho' *Selim* who succeeded, to content his *Mahometan* Subjects declared himself for that Religion; yet his affairs being once settled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as neutral as his Father, *Sulian Curroon* now Reigning, (in 1648) is of the same neutrality, and 'tis well he is so; there being no Religion so impure and bloody, which he would not dishonour by his own ungraciousness.

The Language spoken by these Princes, and their natural subjects the *Magores*, or *Mongul-Tartars*, is said by some to be the *Turkish*. But I think rather, that it is some Language near it, than the very same: And that the Language which they speak is the ancient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from which the *Turks* (a *Scythian* People) differ but in *Dialect*, a sprinkling of the *Persian* intermixt amongst them. A mixture not to be denied in regard of their long dwelling in that Country, the intercourse which their Subjects of those parts have with these of *India*; and that the greatest part of their Soldiers, Officers, and Commanders are supplied from thence.

Their Government is absolute, if not Tyrannical, the *Great Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every Man's estate which is worth the having: the Persons and Purſes of his Subjects at his sole disposing; so that he may amass what Treasures, and raise what Forces for the Wars his need requireth; or the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Ministers shall suggest unto him. First, for his Treasures, it is conceived that his Revenue doth amount yearly to fifty millions of Crowns; and there are reasons to persuade that it may be more. The Country very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the World, the Impost upon which, is of infinite value; besides the vast sums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countries whatsoever, which hold traffick here; their Commodities not being to be parted with but for ready Coyn. The whole Land being all his, he estates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himself, and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleasure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themselves, but him: it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbents death, to enter on the whole Estate of the Tenant by the way of *Eſcheat*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him in course; the Wife and Children of the deceased being fairly dealt with, if he content himself with the personal estate, and leave the Land to them to begin a-new; for instance of those huge sums which in so rich a Country may be had this way, it is said, that when the Vice-Roy of *Lahoa* dyed, he left to *Echebar* three millions of Gold, besides Silver, Jewels, Horses, Elephants, Furniture and Goods almost invaluable: And of one *Raga Gagnar*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the *Great Mongul* seized of his into his hands 3300 pound-weight of Gold, besides Plate, and Jewels. Besides these means of heaping up Treasure, all the Mines of the Country are wholly his, and the Presents given by all sorts of Suiters, hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his presence which comes empty-handed. Finally if *Badurius*, who was King of *Cambaia* only, could bring into the field at once 500 Tun of Gold and Silver to pay his Army; and after his loss of all that treasure, advanced upon the sudden the sum of 600000 Crowns, which he sent to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* to come to succour him; both which it is well known he did: What infinite Treasures must we think his Prince to be Master of, who hath more than four times the estate of the King of *Cambaia*, and far more trading now than in former times?

By the like Parallel we may conjecture somewhat at his Forces also; *Badurius* the *Cambaiian* brought into the field against *Merbamed*, and the King of *Mandao*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horse, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 Pieces of brass-Ord'nance, of which were 4 *Basilisks*, each of them drawn with 100 yoke of Oxen; and 500 Carts loaded with Powder and Shot. What then may we conceive of this Prince, who is Lord of so much a greater Estate than he, but that his *Levies* may be raised proportionably to so great Dominions? But because possibly *Badurius* did extend himself to the utmost of his power, and having lost two Battels, was never able to recruit again, which no wise Prince would do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mon-gul*, without running any such hazards on the loss of a Battel can in an instant raise 50000 Elephants, 300000 Horse, and Foot proportionable; and yet have stock enough for an *After-game*, if that he should chance to lose the first. But it is seldom that he hath advanced to so high a *Mustel*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Decan*, he had but an hundred thousand Men, and a thousand Elephants for fight; though possibly of all sorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in times of *Progress*, it is said that his followers of all sorts amount unto two hundred thousand; and that his Tents do usually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithstanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire have not only been at a stand, since the death of *Echebar*; but the *Rasbooches* in *Cambai*, the *Venazarari* in *Decan*, and other puissant Rebels in other parts of his dominions, hold out still against him; some of them being said to command as much Land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have always in readiness 20000 horse, and 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature, or Divine Providence hath given to Empires, as to Men, a determinate growth, beyond which there is no exceeding.

There are two Reasons why this Vast and Rich Empire has, of Late, Grown no more; the First of these is owing to the Climate: The *Tartars*, when they made the first Conquest, were an hardy and a valiant Nation, but their Children that Succeeded them, are, in time by the Climate, softened, and become almost as Effeminate as the *Indians* they have Conquered; so that these Princes are forced to call in mercenary Forces from the *Persians* and *Tartars*, to Keep what they now have, which must, in Policy, be few in Proportion; and the children of these too, in a short time degenerate and become meer *Indians*.

The Second Reason is, because the Conquest at first was too Rapid; the *Moguls* did not clear the Way as they went, but left several Potent *Raja's* or Princes in the Mountains, in the Body of the Empire, who maintain their Possession to this Day, and tho' Tributaries, are yet not so far Subject, but they can defend themselves if they are injured, and divide the Empire, when they find a fit opportunity: Which the Contentions and Civil Wars, commonly happening at the Death of every Regent Prince, gives them occasion to do; the Succession not being so regulated, but that the Brothers that Survive, do commonly fight for the Throne: This is the cause of Great Slaughters of Men, and dispirits and Weakness the Empire very much: It is observable also, That most Princes that believe their Empires so Strong as to be in no danger of their Neighbours, do thereupon betake themselves to an easy, luxurious life; and Laying aside all thoughts of Enlarging their Dominions, spend their Time and Thoughts in Pleasures, till after a while, they and their Subjects being rendered soft and unmanly, they become a Prey to some Potent hardy Foreigner, or some Daring Rebel at home.

Luxuria Senior Armis

Incubuit victumque ulciscitur orbem.

Auranga Zeb, the Present King of *Indostan*, being unfortunate in his first Wars against *Persia*, in his Father's life-time hath since Employed all his Forces against the Inhabitants of *Cape Malabar*, with no great Success, tho'

some say he has lately forced the King of *Colconda* to become Tributary to him after a War of 30 years, which is not much, considering the inequality between the Forces of these two Princes. He is now very old, and no great matters are to be expected till he go off the Stage to make way for a younger Prince.

2. INDIA EXTRA GANGETEM.

INDIA EXTRA GANGETEM is that part of the great Continent of *India*, which lieth on the further side of the River *Ganges*, from the spring or fountain of it, wheresoever it be, to the fall thereof into the Sea by the fifth and last mouth thereof, which is called *Antiboli*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this side of that River: From hence extended Eastward as far as *China* and the *Oriental Ocean*, on other parts bounded as before.

The Country in those elder times so renowned for wealth, that one Tract of it hath the name of *The Silver-Region*, and another of *The Golden Chersonese*: this last supposed to be the *Ophir* of *Solomon*, of which more hereafter. The people of the same nature and disposition, in the elder times, as those who did inhabit on the hither side of the *Ganges*; not so well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reason of the remoteness of their situation; nor so well discovered at the present: So that the best account we shall be able to give of (though that lame enough) will not be so exact and peculiar as of that before; with reference either to the times hereof in the times of the Ancients, or the affairs of it in these days.

Mountains of most note in it, 1 *Bepyrus*, 2 *Maandrus*, 3 *Semanthinus*; and 4 those called *Damasi*, touched upon before, in our general discourse of *India*. Out of which, and from other springs, flow these following Rivers, 1 *Catabeda*, 2 *Borsanna*, 3 *Sadus*, 4 *Temala*, 5 *Bosynga*, 6 *Chrysaoras*, 7 *Polandas*, 8 *Attabas*, these three last in the part hereof called the *Golden Chersonese*, 9 *Daonas*, and tenth *Dorias*, rising out of the Mountains called *Damasi*. Others there are whose names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now distinguished it is hard to say. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns, 1 *Balanga*, 2 *Cirtatba*, 3 *Tasale*, 4 *Tagma*, and 5 *Maltburas*, have the name of being the *Metropolis* of their several Nations, *Triglyphon* only honoured with the name of *Regia*: more memorable perhaps for the *white Crows*, and *bearded Hens*, which are said to have been thereabouts, than for being the Seat-Royal of some petty Prince. After these, 1 *Sada* on the banks of the River *Sadus*. 2 *Samba*, 3 *Sabara*, 4 *Coly*, 5 *Zaba*, and 6 *Sinda*, have the name of Cities. 7 *Baracura*, 8 *Berabonna*, 9 *Bebynga*, 10 *Tacola*, 11 *Sabana*, and 12 *Thibonobastus*, are marked out for the most noted *Empories*, or Towns of Trade: the memory of *Sabana* being still preserved in the Frith of *Sabaon*, betwixt this *Chersonese* and *Sumatra*. Others there are not noted by those special Adjuncts, of which, 1 *Cocconagora*, and 2 *Balonca*, in the *Golden Chersonese*. 3 *Rbandamarcotta*, in the Midlands. 4 *Pentapolis*; near the mouth of *Ganges*, called *Antibolum*; 5 *Aganagara*, near the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; and 6 *Corygaza*, one of the principal Towns of the *Maranda*, may be some of the chief.

The old Inhabitants hereof, besides the *Maranda* last spoken of, were the *Gangarides*, and *Gangæni*, inhabiting on the banks of *Ganges*; the *Tacoræi*, bordering on the Mountain *Bepyrus*; as the *Tilodæ* on *Maandrus*; and the *Animachæ* and *Cabocæ*, near the hills called *Damasi*. The *Basadæ*, said to be crooked, short, and thick; but of a cheerful aspect, and clear complexion: of which composition also the Inhabitants of the *Golden Chersonese* were observed to be: the *Barrie* and *Cudutæ*, on the Bay called *Sinus magnus*; the *Lestori*, a thievish and pyratrical people, who lived in Caves, and were affirmed to be of so hard a skin, that it was not penetrable by an Arrow.

These

These with the rest too many to be here recited, issue in most likelyhood of *Chavilah* and *Saba* the Sons of *Jocktan*; of whom we find so many footsteps in *Sabara Civitate*, *Sabaraco*, *Siam*, *Sabana Emporia*, *Sobanus Fluvius*; and in the Countries now called *Ava*, and the Kingdom of *Cavellan*. Of any of their actions we find little in ancient stories, or of the power of any of their former Kings, but that it was given out in the time of *Alexander*, that beyond the *Ganges* lived a Prince called *Agramenes* (the most powerful King of all those Countries) able to bring into the field 200000 Foot, 20000 Horse, 3000 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots. With which report though *Alexander* was the more inflamed to try Masteries with him; yet his Soldiers were so terrified with it (remembering the hard bout which they had with *Porus*) that no persuasions could prevail with them to go further Eastward. Nor hear we much of them after this, unless the conversion of the *Indians* in the time of *Constantine*, may be applied to those on that side of the River, as perhaps it may.

As for the latter observations and discoveries of it we find it (as most barbarous Countries else till reduced to order) dismembred and subdivided into many Estates; almost as many Realms as Cities, and distinct governments amongst them, as Tribes and Nations. Most of them Gentiles in Religion, with whom the name of Christ and Christianity not so much as heard of, till the coming of the *Jesuits* thither; who have not only obtained leave but some invitations, for the promoting of the *Gospel*. And for *Mahometanism*, though it had got some footing on the Seacoasts of the Gulf of *Bengala*, lying most convenient for the trade of the *Arabian* Merchants: yet on the North, and midland parts, and those towards *China*, and the *Oriental* Seas, it was as little heard of as *Christianity*. But for the Kingdoms of this part, I mean the chief of them, to which as many of the rest who are worth the looking after are to be reduced, they are those, 1 *Brama* or *Barma*, 2 *Cauchin-China*, 3 *Camboia*, 4 *Jangoma*, 5 *Siam*, and 6 *Pegu*.

1. B R A M A.

THE Kingdoms of *B R A M A* or *B A R M A* have on the West, the River *Ganges*; on the North, part of *Cathay* in *Tartary*: on the East, *Cauchin-China*, and *China*; and on the South, the Kingdom of *Pegu*. So called from the *Brachmanes*, *Bramanes*, or *Brames*, possessed for many Ages past of these North-West Countreys. By the transposing of a Letter, they are now called the Kingdoms of *Barma*.

The Country of these *Brames* or *Bramanes*, extendeth Northwards from the nearest of the *Peguan* Kingdoms, for the space of 150 Leagues, but far more from West to East: watered with many great remarkable Rivers, issuing from the Lake *Chiama*, which though 600 miles from the Sea, and emptying it self continually into so many Channels, contains four hundred miles in compass, and is nevertheless full of waters for the one or the other.

By the overflowing of which Rivers, and commodiousness of the Lake, the Country is wonderfully enriched, as *Egypt* by the overflowings of *Nilus*. Which notwithstanding, there are in it many huge Forests, in the West especially; and therein many Lions, Tigers, Ounces, Serpents and other Creatures of a mischievous and hurtful Nature.

The whole Country containeth the Kingdom of 1 *Calam*, 2 *Prom*, 3 *Melinta*, 4 *Miranda*, 5 *Bacan*, 6 *Tangu*, 7 *Ava*, and 8 *Brama*.

Of 1 *MELINTAY*, and 2 *MIRANDA*, I find little written, but that they were conquered with the rest, by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, in the first rising of his fortunes becoming the foundation of his following greatness. Of 3 *BACAM*, it is said, that it is plentifully enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver. In 4 *CALVILAN*, commonly and contractedly called *CALAM*, we find apparent foot-steps of the name of *Cavilah* the Son of *Jocktan*. Of the rest more is to be said, but not much.

5 *PROMA*, though it be a little Kingdom is exceeding populous, and stored with a warlike people. Given by the second King of *Pegu* of the *Tangum* Race, to a younger Son; who being by his Father commanded to the siege of *Marmorian*, which had then revolted, not only declined the service, but rebelled against him, and by the strength of this small Kingdom held it out three years. But seeing his Father's fortunes in a manner desperate, he repented of his disobedience, and went unto his aid with an Army of 50000 Men of his natural Subjects. Treacherously poisoned on the way by his chiefest Counsellour, for fear the Crime of his Revolt would be charged on him.

6. *TANGU*, is the name of one of these *Braman* Kingdoms, so called from the chief Town thereof: formerly subject with the rest to the Kings of *Pegu*, and governed by their several Vice-Roys. One of which taking his advantage of the wars between the Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam*, began to set up for himself; and husbanded his affairs so well, that he became sole Lord of the *Braman* Kingdoms; as afterwards of all the rest in this part of *India*. Not long enjoy'd by his Successour, when dispossessed and slain by one whom he married to his Sister, and made governour of this very Province. In which he bore himself so stiffly, that being sent for by his King to aid him against some of his Rebels, and to bring all the Inhabitants of the Country with him: he answered that he would send one half; to send all being unreasonable. Incensed with which denial, the King armed against him; but he put the Leaders to the sword, and seized their followers. After this being now in Arms, and despairing of reconciliation, he took upon himself the Title of King of *Tangu*; and to secure himself therein joyned with the King of *Arrachan* against his Sovereign: whom he most barbarously slew (after he had put himself into his hands) with his Wife and Children. Neither enjoyed he long the fruits of his villainy, subdued not long after, with the rest of these *Indian* Princes, by the of King *Barma*, of which more hereafter.

7. *AVA*, another of these Kingdoms, and one of the Plantations of *Cavilah* also, is liberally furnished with all things necessary for the life of Man. It affordeth also store of *Rubies*, which they dig out of the Mountains, a certain creature which breeds *Musk*, together with great plenty of Horses and Elephants. Their chief City is called *Ava*; which name it giveth to the River upon which it is built, issuing out of the Lake of *Chiamor*, or *Chimai*, and communicates the same to the whole Province. Subject for many Ages past to the King of *Pegu*, till conquered by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, as before is said; and by him given, with the Title of King, unto one of his brothers. Who rebelling against the Son and Successour of his Benefactor, and by him slain in single Combat, this Kingdom was conferred on a Son of the Conquerour. A Prince of more vertue than his Brother, and one who grew at last unto so great power, that in the bustle or combustions of the Kingdom of *Pegu*, he surprized or forced the Fort of *Siriangh*, formerly given to the *Portugals* by the King of *Arrachan*, slew all the Soldiers, and spitted *Philip de Britto*, who commanded it. After which, gathering together the dispersed *Peguans*, and repairing part of the City for them, he was likely to have made himself a good bargain by it; if the sudden coming of the King of *Barma*, had not spoiled his markets.

8. *B R A M A* or *B A R M A*, the most Southern of these *Braman* Kingdoms, the King whereof was *Feudatarie* to the Kings of *Pegu*, or of their appointment. Of no account when the *Portugals* came first acquainted with *India*, nor in many years after; now of most renown. For sitting still when all the rest of their neighbours were embroiled in wars, they gathered so much power and strength, that in the end, one of the later Kings hereof observing how the Forces of his neighbouring Princes were consumed, and their Treasures wasted, levied an Army of 300000 fighting Men, 20000 Elephants; with all things suitable. And with this power subdued the

Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*; conquered the Cities of *Pegu* and *Odia*, (the two chief Cities of these parts) invaded the Kingdom of *Siam*, and possessed himself of it making in a little time all the lesser Princes to become his *Tributaries*, as they still continue.

2. CAUCHIN-CHINA.

CAUCHIN-CHINA is bounded on the West, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the East, with part of the great Realm of *China*; on the North, extending towards *Tartary*; on the South bordering on *Cambodia*.

The Country aboundeth with Gold, Silver, *Aloes*, and great store of Silks, of which the Inhabitants make *Taffata*, and other stuffs. It affordeth also plenty of *Porcellane* earth which being made up into Cups, Dishes and other Utensils of household, is sold by the name of *China-ware*; well counterfeited of late amongst us, by putting a white crust on our *Potters* earth, as neat for use and shew as the natural *China*.

The people very stout and warlike, especially for Foot-service; though they have many horses here, and those fit for War. Well practised on their *Pieces* also, on which they spend great store of powder, but not so much in War, as in Sports and Triumphs: yet making much more than they spend, earth in some parts yielding very fit *materials* for that commodity. Trained up to *Manufactures*, especially to the making of Powder, Silks, and *Porcellane*, which they sell to the *Chinese*. *Idolaters* for the most part as are those of *China*, whose Characters and Language they also use: but so that there appear some inclinations unto Christianity, in many of them; who have erected many *Crosses*, and do admit the Pictures of our *Blessed Virgin*, and the final Judgment. Men not unlikely to have made a further Progress in the Gospel, if they had met with better Teachers than those *Laymens* Books.

The chief City hereof is called *Cauchin-China* by the name of the Province, situate on a River coming out of *China*, and passing hence into the bottom of a large and capacious Bay. The whole Country divided in three Provinces, and as many Kings; over which one *Paramount*: *Cauchin-China*, was, in Ancient Times, subject to the Kings of *China*, but it Revolted some Ages Since, and is now Subject to a Prince that is able to wage War with *China*. Belonging hereunto is a little Island called *Ainao*, ten miles from the Land, where the Inhabitants have a great trade of fishing for *Pearls*. The *Portugals* hold in this Continent many Towns and Cities, but no whole Provinces of *Cauchin-China*: *Alexander de Rhodes*, a French Jesuit, has lately given a Large Account of this Country.

3. CAMBOIA.

CAMBOIA is bounded on the North, with *Cauchin-China*, on the East and South, with the Ocean; on the West with part of the Kingdom of *Siam*, and the Realms of *Jangoma*. So called from *Cambodia*, the chief City of it. Divided commonly into the Kingdom of *Champa*, and *Cambodia* specially so called. This Kingdom is almost equally divided by a vast River which in *July*, or *August* overflows all the Country, as the *Nile* doth *Egypt*: The King of this Country is a great Friend to the *Portugueses*, as he of *Siam* is to the *Dutch*. Upon the most Eastern Branch (for there are Three of the River mentioned before) stands *Cambodia*, the Principal City, built upon a rising Ground to prevent the yearly Deluges. This Kingdom is extreme Fruitful, but not Potent, The King not being able to bring above 25 or 30000 Men into the Field. It was first discovered by *Alphonso d'Albuquerque*, in the year 1511, as *Mandelo Smith*. About the year 1550, The King of *Cambodia* was Slain by the *Portugueses* under the Walls of *Diu*; his Captains Divided the Kingdom, and fell to Civil-Wars amongst them themselves, till the King of *Indostan*, the

Great *Mogul*, conquered it, *Hackluit* T. 2. p. 217. *Cambodia* lies in Long. 135. 00 Lat. 10. 35.

1. *CHAMPA*, the northern part hereof, bordereth on *Cauchin-china*; and is liberally provided of all necessities: besides which, there is plenty of Gold, and of the Wood called *Lignum Aloes*, prized at the weight thereof in Silver, much used in *Bathes*, and at the Funerals of great Persons. This a distinct Kingdom of it self, but subject with the rest to the King of *Barma*. The chief City of it, called by the name of *Champa*, which it communicates to the Country, is situate near the Sea-side, and of a very good traffick.

2. *CAMFOIA* specially so called, lyeth South of *Champa*, a very great and populous Country, well stored with Elephants and *Rhinoceros*, which last the *Indians* call *Abades*. It yieldeth also great plenty of Sweet-wood, which they call *Calamba*; as precious and as much esteemed of as the wood of *Aloes*, (if not the same, or some *Species* of it as I think it is) together with abundance of Rice, Flesh, and Fish; well watered with the River *Mecon* which issuing out of *China*, and having received many lesser streams falleth first into a great Lake of 200 miles compass, and thence into the *Indian Ocean*: making betwixt the Lake and that an hundred Islands. By the overflowings of this River the whole Country is enriched (as *Egypt* by the like overflowing of *Nilus*) the Inhabitants at those times betaking themselves to their upper Rooms, and passing altogether by boats from one place to another.

The people are conceived to be strong and warlike; though more inclined to Merchandize and Navigation, than to deeds of Arms. *Idolaters* of the worst kind, esteeming Men and Beasts of a like condition in regard of any future Judgment: of late beginning to set up, and adore the *Cross*, which is (it seems) the first *Principle* of Religion in which the *Friers* are wont to instruct their *Converts*. Not weaned as yet by these new Teachers, from burning the Women with their Husbands, common to them with many other *Indian* people, nor from burning their Nobles with the King, used only here; but voluntarily to express their loves, not upon constraint.

The chief Towns of it, 1 *Cambodia*, one of the three prime Cities of this part of *India*; the other two being *Odia* and *Pegu*, of which more anon. Situate on the River *Mecon* before it was destroyed; where it hath its fall into the Sea. Well traded, as the Staple for all this Country the Commodities whereof are brought hither, and here sold to the Merchants. 2 *Cudurmuch*, twelve Leagues from *Cambodia*, on the same River also. 3. *Toul* on the Sea-side in the very South-west Angle of all the Country. The Kings whereof, once absolute, and at their own disposing, till invaded by a vast Army of the neighbouring *Laos*: in which their King being slain, and his forces weakned, his Son and Successour was constrained to become a *Vassal* to the Crown of *Siam*. But fearing the loss of his Estate, when the Kingdom was made subject to the Kings of *Pegu*, in the year 1598. he applyed himself unto the *Portugals*, offered them a *Peninsula* (part of his Dominions) extending three Leagues into the Sea; and sent to the *Jesuits* for some of their *Society* to live and preach amongst the people. Not able for all these honest Policies to preserve himself from being made a *Feudatary* of the King of *Barma*.

4. JANGOMA.

JANGOMA, or the Country of *LAOS*, is bounded on the East, with *Cambodia* and *Champa*, from which parted by the River *Mecon*; on the West, with the River *Pegu*, by which divided from that Kingdom; on the South, with the Realm of *Siam*; on the North, with *Brama*.

It took its name from *Jangoma* the chief Province of it; the other two (for there are three of them in all) being those of *Levea*, and *Curroy*. All of them joyned together called the Country of *Laos*, by the name of the people.

ple. A mighty Nation and stout, by Religion *Gentiles*, naked from the middle upwards, and trussing up their hair like a Cap. Their Country very rich and level but very much neighbored by the *Gauoni* (*Paulus Venetus* giveth them the name of *Gangigu*) who possess the Mountains; whence falling in great companies to hunt for Men, whom they kill and eat they commit cruel butcheries amongst them. Inasmuch as this people, not able to defend themselves against their fury, or rather wanting good Leaders to conduct and order them (for it is said that they can make a Million of Men) were fain to put themselves under the protection of the King of *Siam*, whom they obeyed no farther than the humour took them.

Towns they have none of any note, except those three which give name to the several Provinces, and those of no note neither but for doing that. The people for the most part live on the banks of their Rivers, where they have Cottages of Timber, or else upon the Rivers in Boats and Shallops as the *Tartarians* of the Desarts in their Carts or Wheel-houses. One of their Rivers (commonly called the River of *Laos*) said to extend 400 Leagues within the Land, as far as *Tartary*, and *China*; and from *July* to *September* to invert its course, and flow back strongly towards its Fountain. Not governed by any certain rule or order, till they submitted to the Patronage of the King of *Siam*; and then no other than they listed: though for their sakes, that King engaged himself in a War against the *Cannibals*, their most deadly Enemies, accompanied with 25000 Foot, 20000 Horse, and 10000 Elephants. Secured by his protection from the teeth of those *Cannibals*, (of whom otherwise they had been devoured) in the year 1578. they descended the River in great multitudes, to the number of 200000; and fell into the Realm of *Camboia*: but they made an unprosperous adventure of it. For though the King of *Camboia* lost his life in the Battel, yet he gave them such a fatal Blow, that they were almost all slain, drowned, or captivated in the fight. Weakned wherewith they became an easy prey to the *Vice-Roy* of *Tangu*, when he first made himself sole Master of this part of *India*. Who giving to his Brother the Kingdom of *Ava*, and leaving to his eldest Son the Kingdom of *Pegu*, with the Sovereignty over all the rest, conferred this Country, with the Title of King of *Jah-goma*, on a younger Son. But he, begotten on a Daughter of the King of *Pegu*, and born after his Father had attained this whole Empire, was easily perswaded by the *Talapies*, (so they call their Priests) that his Title was better than that of his Elder Brother, who was born before it. Prevented in his claim by the Kings of *Arracham* and *Tangu*, by whom that King was slain, and his Kingdom wasted. How he sped afterwards I find not: But probable it is, that he submitted with the rest to the King of *Barma*.

5. S I A M.

S I A M is bounded on the North, with *Tangoma*, and part of *Pegu*; on all other parts, with the wide Ocean, save that it toucheth on the East, with a part of *Camboia*; and on the West with a Point of *Pegu*. So called from *Siam* the chief of all those Kingdoms which pass under this name as that from *Siam* the chief City of it.

The Country of greater length than breadth, stretcheth it self Southwards into the Sea many hundred miles, in form of a *Peninsula* or *Demy-Island*, called anciently *Aurea Chersonesus*, or the *Golden Chersonese*: one of the five famous *Chersoneses* or *Peninsula's* of the elder Writers; the other four being *Peloponnesus* in *Greece*, the *Thracian Chersonese* near *Propontis*, the *Taurican Chersonese* in the *Euxine*, and the *Cimbrian Chersonese* in the North of *Germany*; now part of *Denmark*. It had the name of *Aurea*, or the *Golden*, superadded to it, from its plenty of Gold, for which much celebrated by the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, (and therefore not improbably thought by some to be *Solomon's Ophir*) still famous with the rest of the Countries of the Kingdom of *Siam*, for

abundance of Gold, Silver, Tin, and other Metals; great quantity of Pepper sent yearly thence, with store of Elephants, and Horses. The whole Country very fat and fertile, well stored with Rice, Corn, Grass and all other necessities.

The people generally much addicted to pleasures, if not to Luxury, delighted much in Mulick and rich Apparel: and such as stand much upon their honour. For their instruction in good Letters they have Publick Schools, where their own Laws, and the mysteries of their own Religion are taught them in their natural Language; all other Sciences in strange Tongues understood by none but by the Learned. To Tillage they can frame themselves, and are painful in it; but by no means will follow any *Mechanical Arts*, which they put over to their Slaves. In Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, worshipping the four Elements amongst other Gods; to each of which as they are severally affected, so are their bodies to be disposed of: either burnt, buried, hanged or drowned, after their decease; as in their lives they were most devoted to the Fire, Earth, Air, or Water. Some Christians here also in and about the parts possessed by the *Portugals*, but more *Alahumetans*; who possessing 200 Leagues of the Sea-coasts of this Country, have planted that Religion in most parts of the Country now by them possessed.

It containeth in it many Kingdoms some of little note; Those of most observation, 1. *Malaca*, 2. *Patane*, 3. *Jor*, 4. *Muantay*, and 5. *Siam*, properly and especially so called. Of which *Malaca* is now in the hands of the *Portugals*, *Jor* and *Patane* are possessed by the *Arabians*, or *Saracens*, the other two have followed the fortunes of the Kings of *Siam*.

1. The Kingdom of *MALACA*, taketh up the South part of the *Golden Chersonese*, extended towards the North from the Cape or Promontory which *Ptolemy* calleth *Malanconia*, in the extreme South point hereof, near unto *Sabana*, then a noted Empory for the space of 270 miles. So called from *Malaca* the chief City of it, of old times called *Musicana*, or built very near it; from whence this Tract is called by *Strabo*, *Musicana Terra*. The City seated on the banks of the River *Gaza*, which is here said to be 15 miles in breadth; by the frequent overflowings whereof, and the nearness of it to the *Line*, (being but two degrees in the North) the Air hereof and all the Territory belonging to it, is very unwholsome; and for that cause the Country but meanly populous. In compass it is said to be 20 miles; of great wealth, because of almost infinite trading, for Spices, *Unguents*, Gold, Silver, Pearls and Precious Stones, the most noted Empory of the East. Inasmuch that it is said by *Ludovico Barthema*, who was there before the *Portugals* knew it, that it was traded by more Ships than any one City in the World; more by far since the coming of the *Portugals* to it, than it was before. The People (as in all this Tract) of an Ash-colour with long hair hanging over their faces, bloody and murderous; especially when they meet one another in the Night. Few other Towns of any note, in a place so unhealthy, except, 2. *Sincapura*, situate East from *Malaca*, near the Promontory of old called *Magnum*, supposed by some to be the *Zaba* of *Ptolemy*: and that more probably, than that it should be his *Palura*, as *Maginus* would have it; *Palura* being a City of the *Hither India*, and different at least 20 degrees of Longitude from any part of this *Chersonese*. But whatsoever it was called in the former times, it was in these late Ages the Mother of *Malaca*; the greatest part of the Trade and People being removed from thence to this newer foundation: before which time it was the best frequented Empory in these parts of the East. 3. *Palo Zambilan*, 120 miles on the West of *Malaca*, from whence to *Sincapura*, coasting about the Southern Cape (now called *Lape Liampo*) we have a Sea-shore of 270 miles, as before was said. No other habitation of any reckoning, but a few Sheds upon the shore for the use of Fisher-men, and some scattered Villages in the Land: the People dwelling most on Trees for fear of Tigers.

This Tract in former times possessed by the Kings of *Siam*, about the year 1258, became a Kingdom of it self; founded by *Paramisera*, and some other of the *Javan* Nobility, who flying the Tyranny of their own King, came into this Country; where they were lovingly received by *Sangasinga*, then reigning under the *Siamite* in *Sincapura*. Him they perfidiously slew, and invested *Paramisera* in his Dominion. Outed of which by the King of *Siam*, he was forced to seek a new dwelling; and after two or three removes, fell upon the place where *Malaca* now standeth: which City, pleased with the commodiousness of the situation, he is said to have built. The trade of *Sincapura* in a short time removed hither also, which so increased the wealth and power of the Kings hereof, that joyning with the *Moors*, who began to plant themselves on the shores adjoining and receiving withal the Law of *Mahomet*, they began to cast off all subjection to the Kings of *Siam*, to whom the Son and Successour of *Paramisera* had submitted his new raised Kingdom, and became their *Homager*. Incensed wherewith, the *Siamite* about the year 1500, sent out a Navy of 200 Sail to distress it by Sea; and an Army of 30000 Men and 400 Elephants to besiege it by Land. But before he was able to effect any thing, hindred by tempests, and the insolencies of some of his Soldiers, the *Portugals* in the year 1511 under the conduct of *Albuquerque*, had possessed themselves of it, who built there a Fortrefs and a Church. And though *Alodinus* the Son of the expelled King (whose name was *Mahomet*) endeavoured the regaining of his Estate, and that the *Saracens*, *Hollanders*, and the Kings of *Jor*, and *Achen* (two neighbouring Princes) envying the great fortunes of the *Portugals*, have severally and successively laboured to deprive them of it: yet they still keep it in defiance of all opposition which hath been hitherto made against them. This City stands on the Western shore, in Longitude 127, 25. Latitude 03, 40. and was subject to the King of *Ibor*, till the *Portugals* in the year 1511, took it from him under *Alphonso Albuquerque*: and in the year 1640, the *Dutch* took it from them, after a Siege of six months. It is a celebrated Mart, and has a large Haven, and a strong Castle, and a River of the same name with the City but lying a mile from it to the South-East. This was the second Government depending on the Vice-Roy of *Goa*, by reason of the Customs paid here by all the Ships which went to the East. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 75. The *Hollanders* can now hardly get enough to pay the charge of their Garrison which is here kept, 1660.

2. North unto that of *Malaca*, lyeth the Kingdom of *Y O R*, *J O R*, or *J O H O R*, so called of *Jor* or *Johor*, the chief City of it. Inhabited for the most part by *Moors*, or *Saracens*, *Mahometanism* by their means prevailing on the Natives of the Country also. A Kingdom of no great extent, but of so much power, that joyning his Land-Forces with the Navy of the King of *Achen*, he besieged *Malaca*, and built a Royal Fort before it; in which when taken by *Paul de Lima* by the defeat of this King, were found 900 Pieces of Brass-Ordinance. After this picking a quarrel with the King of *Paban*, he burnt his Houses, Barns, Provisions, and the Suburbs of his City it self; but in the course of his affairs was interrupted by the King of *Achen* (one of the Kings in the Isle of *Sumatra*) his old Confederate; who after 29 days siege took the City of *Jor*. What afterwards became of this King or Kingdom I am not able to resolve. In former times it did acknowledge him of *Siam* for the Lord in chief.

3. More Northward yet lyeth the Kingdom of *P A T H A N E*, denominated from *Patane*, the chief City of it: but different from *Patane* in the other *India*, as *Cleveland* in *York-shire* from *Cleveland* in *Germany*; or *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* from *Holland* in *Lincoln-shire*, as hath been fully shewn before. The City made of Wood and Reed, but artificially wrought and composed together; the *Mesquit* only (most of the people being *Adabometans*) is built of brick. The *Chinois* make a great part of the Inhabitants of it, insomuch that in this small City

there are spoken three Languages, viz. the *Chinese*, used by that people; the *Malayan*, (or Language of *Malaca*) which is that of the Natives; and the *Siam*, to the King whereof this small Crown is *Feudatary*. Built of such light stuff and combustible matter, it must needs be in great danger of fire; and was most miserably burnt in the year 1613, by some *Javan* Slaves in revenge of the death of some of their fellows: at which time the whole City was consumed with fire, the *Mesquit* the Queen's Court and some few Houses, excepted only. The Country, Governed of late years by Queens, who have been very kind to the *English* and *Hollanders*, granting them leave to erect their *Factories*, in *Patane*. Not memorable for any great exploit by them performed, but that a late Queen a little before that dismal fire, offended with the King of *Pan* or *Paban*, who had married her Sister, and reigned in a little Island not far off, she sent against him a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 4000 Men; by which compelled to correspond with her desires, he brought his Queen and her Children with him to make up the breach.

4. The Kingdom of *Siam*, strictly and specially so called, is situate on the main land (the rest before described being in the *Chersoneuse*) betwixt *Camboia* on the East, *Pegu* on the West, the Kingdom of *Muantay* on the North, and the main Ocean on the South. The chief Cities of it 1. *Socotai*, memorable for a Temple made wholly of metal 80 spans in height, raised by one of the Kings; it being the custom of this Country, that every King at his first coming to the Crown, is to build a Temple; which he adorned with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2. *Quedoa*, renowned for the best Pepper, and for that cause very much frequented by foreign Merchants. It is seated upon the Promontory of *Malaca*, over against *Sumatra*. Longitude 125, 31. Latitude 5. 50. It has an excellent port, and a very great Trade, being the Capital of a Kingdom of the same name which was subject to the King of *Siam*; but has now a Prince of its own. 3. *Tavay*, upon the Sea-Coast where it joyneth to *Pegu*. Whence measuring along the shores till we come to *Champa* before mentioned, being all within the Dominions of the King of *Siam* (not reckoning the *Chersoneuse* in this account) we have a Sea-Coast of the length of 600 Leagues. 4. *Lugor*, upon the Sea-side also, near that little *Isthmus*, which joyneth the *Chersoneuse* to the Land; from whence to *Malaca*, is 600 miles sail all along the Coast. 5. *Calantan*, the Head-City of a little Kingdom but subject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6. *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the Kingdom, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very commodiously seated on the River *Mecam*, for Trade and Merchandize. So populous and frequented by foreign Nations, that besides the Natives, here are said to be thirty thousand households of *Arabians*. The houses of it high-built by reason of the Annual deluge, during which time they live in the Upper-rooms; and unto every house a Boat for the use of the Family. Those of the poorer sort dwell in little sheds, made of Reed and Timber; which they remove from place to place for the best convenience of their Markets: and yet so strong, that being besieged by the *Tanguan* Conquerour, then King of *Pegu*, Anno 1567, with an Army of fourteen hundred thousand fighting Men, for the space of 20 months together, it resolutely held good against him: not gained at last by Force, but Treason; one of the Gates being set open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Christianity; but hitherto so ill instructed in the Principles of it, that they maintain amongst many other strange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years, (from what time I know not) the World shall be consumed with fire; and that under the ashes of it shall remain two Eggs, out of which shall come one Man and one Woman, who shall people the World anew. *Siam* and the Forests are no less pestered with Lions, Tigers, Rhinoceroses, Apes, and Serpents. The Rivers are large but full of Cataracts and Crocodiles of a monstrous bigness, that devour Men if they

they be not very careful; but the water is wholsom, and makes the Earth very fruitful. *Siam* the Capital City is 3 Leagues in circuit, seated on a River-Island. The Inhabitants are all Slaves to the King or the great Men. The King is one of the richest Princes of the East; but a Tributary to *China*, which borders on him to the North-East: He and all his Subjects are *Pagans*. It is thought there are above 200000 *Bonzas* or Priests in this Nation, wonderfully revered by the King himself, but if they prove Traitors to him, he makes no scruple to execute them. In the year 1665, Father *Thomas* a *Neapolitan Jesuit*, taught them to fortifie *Siam* after the modern way, for which he was much honoured by the King and had a House given him in the City. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Cap. 18. Lib. 3. It has five Wall'd Towns, *India* &c. The Soil of it is very fertile as to Rice and other Corn, and nourishes plenty of wild and tame Beasts; the Inhabitants are great lovers of Mechanick Arts; the meanest Man has Land of his own, that he cultivates with great industry. All the Kings furniture is solid Gold. This Kingdom has Mines of Gold and Silver; Lead and Pewter, and Brasil-wood. The Soldiery has no pay from this rich King, but an allowance of Rice for their diet, and are indeed no other than his Slaves, and treated accordingly in times of Peace. The common people are Rich and Gawdy in Apparell, and very chaste in their behaviour tho' *Pagans*, especially the married Parties; but they allow *Polygamy* and *Divorces*. They protect all Nations that come thither, *English*, *Dutch*, *Portugals* and *Moors*, equally with their own people; which encrease the Strength, Arts and Wealth of this Nation. *Struy's*.

The City of *Siam*, *Odia*, *Udia*, the vast Capital of the Kingdom of *Siam*, is seated on the East side of the River *Menna*, 3 Leagues from the *Indian Ocean* in the Latitude of 15.00. in a large Plain; and doth every day grow greater. Some think it was anciently called *Samarada*; there is a branch of the River runs through the City, *Baudrand*. In 1567, the King of *Pegu* came before this City with an Army of a million and 400000 Men, and besieged it 21 months, and then took it with the loss of 500000 of his Men, one of the Gates being betrayed to him in the night. I was then in *Pegu*, and saw the King return with the spoils of that City. Mr. *Frederick* an *Italian*, *Hackluit*, Tom. 2. Pag. 229, 259.

5. *MUANTAY*, the last of these Kingdoms, lieth betwixt *Jangoma* and *Siam*, memorable for nothing more than the City of *Odia*, or *Udia*, the principal of all the Kingdoms of *Siam*; and the usual residence of those Kings. Situate on the banks of the River *Caipumo*, and containing in it 400000 Inhabitants, of which 50000 are trained to the Wars, and in continual readiness for present service. For tho' this King be Lord of nine several Kingdoms, yet he useth none of them in his Wars but the natural *Siamites* and those of this City, and the rest of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is said that for the use of this City only (being seated like *Venice* upon many little Islands, not bridged together) there are no fewer than 200000 Skiffs or Shallops, serving to waft the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great strength, and almost impregnable. But being beleaguered by the *Tanguan* or *Bramin* Conquerour, with 1000000 fighting Men (an Army big enough to have buried a greater City than this, if every Man had but cast a shovel full of earth upon it) it was won at last.

The Government of these Kings of *Siam*, was absolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being sole Lord of all the Land in his Kingdoms; which he either gave to his Nobles, or Farmed out to Husband-men, during life or pleasure, but never passed over unto any the right of inheritance. And these he grants unto his Subjects, besides rents in money upon condition to maintain a determinate number of Horse, Foot, and Elephants: thereby enabled without further charge unto the Subject, to levy 20000 Horse, and 250000 Foot, for present service; besides far greater numbers out of the residue of his people, if occasion be. And for his ordinary Guard he was

said to keep 6000 Soldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which Beasts he is reported to have 3000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the War. By reason of so great a power he became Master of the Realms of *Cambaya* and *Campa*; held those of *Malacca*, *Tor*, *Pahm*, and *Putane*, as his Vassals and Tributaries; with that of *Jangoma* and the *Lao*, under his Protection. But when the fatal time was come, and that his City of *Siam* was betrayed to the King of *Pegu*, he poisoned himself upon the news, his Son becoming Tributary to the *Peguan* Victor. This Son of his too much a Prince to be a Subject, revolted from a Son of the *Peguan*, a vicious and tyrannical King, degenerating from the gallantries of so worthy a Father; by whom he was besieged in *Siam* with 900000 fighting Men. Unable to resist his Army if he had presently declared such a resolution, he entertained the King with Treaties, and promises of delivering the City to him, till the third month after, (which was *March*;) when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Country, for 120 miles about: by which sudden and violent inundation and the Sword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there perished all of this great Army except 70000. After this blow, the conquering *Siamite*, Anno 1600, besieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more anon; and dying in the year 1603, left his Estate unto his Brother. Whose Son succeeding settled a Factory in *Siam* of the *English* Merchants, Anno 1612. and was in a fair way of obtaining the Sovereignty of *Pegu*, then destroyed and wasted, if the violent and unresistable coming of the King of *Barma* had not crossed him in it: to whom now subject with the rest of the *Indian* Princes on that side of the River.

6. P E G U.

P E G U is bounded on the East, with *Jangoma* and a part of *Siam*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the West and South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City. as that by the name of the River upon which it standeth. Divided commonly into the Kingdoms and Estates of 1 *Verma*, 2 *Macbin*, 3 *Orachan*, 4 *Martavan*, and 5 *Pegu* specially so called.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a small Kingdom bordering upon *Bengala*; and so denominated from *Verma* the chief Town thereof. A Kingdom which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moors* and *Mahometans*, which can be said of no other of these *Indian* Kingdoms.

The people black, naked above the Waste, and covered beneath it only with a Vail of Cotton; in matter of Religion, *Gentiles*; and in war, right valiant. This last apparent by the long and frequent Wars which they had with the *Peguans*; to whom made tributary in conclusion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACHIN*, so called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of these *Peguan* Kingdoms. Of small esteem, but for the great quantity of the Sweet-wood, by the *Latines* called *Lignum Vitæ*, by the Natives *Calamba*, so much in use for Funerals and Bathes, (as was said before) held also by the *Indians* for a sovereign and unparalleled *Medecine* against many dangerous diseases; great quantities hereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchants. One of the first Kingdoms which was conquered by the King of *Barma*, (upon whom it borderth) in the beginning of his Fortunes.

3. *ORACHAN*, or *Arrachan*, lieth on the West of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*, environed round with Mountains, and impassable Woods. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Dianga*, taken and destroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels betwixt them and the King of *Arrachan*, Anno 1608. 2 *Sundiwa*, situate in an Island unto which it giveth name, six Leagues off from the Continent of *Bengal*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, Anno 1602. And from them taken by this King about two years after; and made a member of his Kingdom.

The

The Island 30 Leagues in compass, very strong, fruitful, and the Town well fortified. 3 *Arrachan*, the Head-City, which gives name to all, distant from the Sea 45 miles, but seated on a large and capacious River. The King and Kingdom of no note, till the Ruins of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the Desolation of which State the King hereof combining with him of *Tangu*, besieged the Second *Peguan* King in the Castle of *Mucac*; and had betwixt them the whole Pillage of that wealthy City, together with the Possession of the best Towns of it. After this victory, he returned to *Arrachan* in triumph leading with him the *White Elephant* of the King of *Pegu*, sumptuously adorned; the Brother and two Sons of the *Peguan* following in the Pageant. A solemn and magnificent entry. The better to assure himself of his new Dominions, this King bestowed upon the *Portugals* the Fort of *Siriangh* on the River *Pegu*. For which favour, ill-requited by the *Portugals*, who had taken his Son, and put him to a grievous ransom, they brake out into open Wars. In the pursuit whereof, after many losses, the King recovered from them the Isle of *Sundiva*; and manning out a Fleet of 1200 Sail (of which 75 were of so great burden, as to carry every one twelve Pieces of Ordnance) and in that Fleet 30000 Souldiers, 8000 hand-guns, and 3500 great Pieces, besieged the Fortress: assisted in that action also by the King of *Tangu*. And though he failed in his design, yet like enough he had prevented the King of *Ava*, who took it in the year 1613. as before is said, had he not been outed in the mean time of his own Kingdom by the King of *Burma*: of whose great rise, the conquering of the Realms of *Achin* and *Arrachan* were the first foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richest of these Kingdoms, lieth South to *Arrachan*, a little turning towards the West. The soil so fertile, that it yieldeth three Harvests in a year; and sent annually fifteen Ships to *Cochin*, and as many to *Mulaca*, laden with Rice. Rich also in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steel, Brass, Silver, Gold and *Rubies*, and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Forests well stored with Harts, Boars, and *Buffles*; store of Pines and Palms: the Woods with *Sugar-Canes*, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and shrubs either *Medicinal* or *Odoriferous*. The principal City of it called also *Martavan*, situate on a Haven open at all times of the year and not choaked with Sands, as usually other Havens are in the *Indian Winter*: of great trading, much splendour, and a temperate air. Faithful unto the last to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were subject; and in that constancy they twice repulsed the King of *Siam*, who then had conquered the most part of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* caused two of his cowardly Captains to be cast into a Caldron of scalding Oyl; and at the third Assault became Master of it. *Bannalatus* the old King hereof (99 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects being compelled to hide themselves in the Woods and Desarts. This City is styled *Martavan*, in *Hackluit* T. 2. p. 232. Where is the History of a notable Tumult made by the *Portugueses* in 1557. The Kingdom, belonging to it, lyes between that of *Pegu* to the North; and *Ligor*, a Promontory of the Kingdom of *Siam* to the South.

5 *PEGU*, the most Predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Crescent* or Half-Moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on the coast from *Negrats* unto *Tavan*, the next Town of *Siam*, for the space of three hundred miles, and upwards; but little less in breadth, if not quite as much. So called from the River *Pegu*, which runs through the midst of it, and gives this name also unto *Pegu* the most noted City.

The Soil hereof exceeding fruitful, by reason of the annual overflowings of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth also many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lacca*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make Wax) store of *Elephants*, and abun-

dance of Parrots, which speak plainer, & are much fairer than in any place else.

The people of mean stature, somewhat corpulent, and naturally beardless. If any straggling hair thrust forth, they always carry Pincers with them to pull them out. Nimble and strong, but not very fit for War; spending too much of their strength in the love of Women, to whom most passionately addicted. They black their teeth because they say that dogs teeth are white; and wear no cloaths but on their heads and about their nakedness. Said by the *Jews* to be descended from some of the Tribes of *Israel*, confined hither by *Solomon*; but by the *Peguans* themselves, to be begotten of a Dog and a *China-woman*, which were saved here upon a Shipwrack. By Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable Worlds one after another, and a determinate number of Gods for every World: more *Orthodox*, in assigning after this life according to the merits of the party deceased, one place of *Torments*, and another of *Delights* and Pleasures, if they had not added a third also for *satisfaction*.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, 1 *Cosmi*, seated in a Territory full of Woods, as those Woods of Tigers, Wild Boars, Apes, and Parrots; the houses made of *Canes*, which serve here for Timber, (some of them being as big as Hogheads) covered over with Thatch. 2 *Jocabel*, a great City on the River *Pegu*. 3. *Dian*, on the same River also, where they make Barks or Vessels as big as *Galleasses*; which serve both for Trade and Habitation. 4 *Coron*, a City four square, and each square four miles. 5 *Lanagon*, a pleasant Town, and full of *Palm-trees*. 6 *Dala*, in which were the King's Stables for his ordinary Elephants; his four *White Elephants* (for so many he had) being always kept about the Court, not seen abroad, but in great solemnities, when trapped in Furnitures of Gold; and no less honoured by the people, than the King himself: called therefore King of the *White Elephants* by the neighbouring Princes. 7 *Silvanpede*, where many victualling Barks are made to serve for dwelling on the Sea. 8 *Mecac*, where they use to unload such goods, as are to pass by Land to *Pegu*. Neighbour'd by the strongest Castle in all this Kingdom, and therefore chosen by the King for his place of Retreat, when distressed by the Kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangu*. To the last of which making choice to yield up his Person, with his Wife and Children, because he had marry'd him to his Sister, he was by him perfidiously and basely murdered. 9 *Siriang*, a strong place on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Arrachan* to the *Portugals*, and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Britto*, in the year one thousand six hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good against him, and the King of *Tangu* his associate for the space of thirteen years together, was at last forced to yield himself Prisoner to the King of *Ava*, by whom cruelly tortured on a Spit. 10 *Pegu*, the glory of these parts, great, strong, and beautiful: Divided into two Towns, the *Old* and the *New*; the *Old* inhabited by Merchants, the *New* by the King and his Nobility. The Houses made of Wood but covered with Tiles: a *Coco-Tree* before every house yielding a comfortable shade, and a pleasant shew. The streets as straight as any line and so broad that ten or twelve Men may ride a-breast in the narrowest of them. In figures square, each square having five Gates, besides many Turrets, all of them beautifully gilded. The whole well walled with Walls of stone environed on all sides with great Ditches; and in the midst the Royal Palace, walled and ditched about, most sumptuously gilded; but especially the Temple or *Idol-chappel*, the walls whereof were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver. *Pegu* is in truth Two Cities, The *Old* and the *New* but the first is the Place of Trade. The City is not great, but the Suburbs are vast, and is built with Reeds and covered with Leaves, and so very Subject to Fires. In the New City is the Royal Palace which was built in 1568. It is a great City, very plain and Flat, four Square, Secured by Walls and a Ditch full of Water. It hath 20 Gates, but no Draw-Bridges: The

The Streets are the Fairest I ever saw, and straight as a Line from Gate to Gate, and as broad as 10 or 12 Men may ride a-breast, planted on both sides with *Indra-Nits*. The Houses are of Wood, covered with Tiles; the place is in the middle like a Castle, but built with Wood, Gilded, Ditched, Walled, and Moated round, *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 234.

The Kingdom of *Pegu* was, Once, a most Potent Empire, but is now much diminished: It lies between the Kingdom of *Tungking* to the East, and that of *Arrachan* to the West. About the Year 1567. One, who was in this Kingdom, assures us the King of *Pegu* besieged *Siam* with an Army of a Million and 400,000 Men, and took it after 21 Months. He had then Vast Treasures of Gold and Silver, Mines of Rubies, Sapphires, Spinels; and he had 26 Crowned Kings, that were his Vassals. *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 236. The Goods exported hence are Gold, Silver, Benjamin, Long-Pepper, Lead, Lacca, Rice, Wine, Sugar, p. 239. This Gentleman who gives the Account, was here in 1569. *Hackluit* Tom. 2. p. 258.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleasure as the World could yield: his Empire not extending only over these Kingdoms now described, but over all the Provinces or Kingdoms of the *Bramines* also; which he governed by his several *Vice-Roys*, or rather *TRIBUTARIE* Kings. A happiness too great to continue long. For in the year 1567 the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* King of *Tangu*, by the aid of his Faction, and reputation of his Vertues, entred into rebellion; and slaying the Nobles of the Land, usurped that Kingdom. After this he subdued the Cities and Kingdoms of *Calam*, *Mehintay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Brames* or *Bramines*, and therefore taking to himself the Title of the King of *Brama*, because his frame and fortunes took their rise from his victories over them. Following the course of his successes he first assayed the Cities of *Odia*, and *Siam*, but repulsed with loss. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleaguered *Pegu*, and subdued it; and by the reputation which he got in that action, returning to the siege of *Siam*, had it yielded to him. Dying, he gave the Kingdom of *Ava* unto one of his Brothers; that of *Prom*, to one of his Grand-sons; the Kingdom of *Jangoma* to a younger Son, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Sovereignty over all the rest, to his eldest Son, a Prince of a vicious and tyrannical nature: and not more cruel to his Subjects, than they disobedient to him. Whereupon preparations are made on both sides, the people, to defend their liberty; the King, to preserve his Royalty.

During these civil disorders, the barbarous *Kan-ai-Siam*, whose late overthrow was not yet fully digested, came violently into the Country of *Pegu*; burning Cities, Churches, and Fruits; killing Men, Woman, and Child: and having finished his Fury, returned to his home. This Spoil of the Fruits of the Earth, was but a poor recompence to an unsupportable Famine, which consumed all the Inhabitants of this flourishing Kingdom, except such who in the *Granaries* of the City of *Pegu* preserved some store. For here the Fathers devoured their Children, the stronger preyed upon the weaker; not onely devouring their more fleshy parts, but their entrails also: nay they broke up the skulls of such as they had slain, and sucked out their brains. This calamity incited another *Tributary* Prince of *Tangu* to make his best advantage out of his neighbour's affliction; though made his Brother-in-law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For justly fearing the displeasure of his angry Prince, to whose aid he had refused to come, when sent for by him, he joyned himself with the King of *Arrachan*, besieged his Lord and Sovereign in the Fort of *Alacm*. Brought to extremities the unfortunate Prince, thought best to put himself into the hands of his Brother of *Tangu*, who entered and entred *Pegu*: where he found as much Treasure as 600 Elephants, and as many Horses, as he could conveniently carry away. This havock being made, he villainously murdered the King, Queen, and their Children and departed; leaving the gleanings of his spoil to the King of *Arrachan*: who, Anno, 1600. was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Burma* having with an Army of an hundred thousand fighting Men, and forty thousand Elephants, subdued the Kingdoms of *Alacin*, and *Arrachan*, followed the currents of his Victories; conquered *Siam*; drove the King thereof from *PEGU*: where he hath built a most magnificent Palace, and is now the sole Monarch of the Twelve Kingdoms of this *India*.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new-settled estate, we cannot yet understand: what his *Revenues* are, what his Government, what his Forces; Merchants, whose inquisitiveness into the State-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading, cannot give us any full satisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statists* are not permitted to observe; and such of the Natives as could give us the most light, are not suffered to travel. Onely we may conjecture by the great wealth of those several Princes, and the vast Armies by them raised in their several Territories, That his *Annual Revenues*, *Casualties*, and united Forces must be almost infinite.

And so much for *INDIA*.

O F

The Oriental Islands.

THE ORIENTAL ISLANDS, so called from their situation in the Oriental, or Eastern Seas, may be divided into the Islands of 1 *Japan*; 2 the *Philippinæ*, and Isles adjoining; 3 the Islands of *Bantam*; 4 the *Moluccoes*; 5 those called *Sinda*, or the *Celebes*; 6 *Borneo*; 7 *Java*; 8 *Sumatra*; 9 *Ceilan*; and 10 certain others of less note.

1. J A P A N.

J A P A N is an aggregate body of many Islands, separated by small Gulfs, Straights, and Turnings of the Sea; but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be 66 in all; others ascribe that number to so many Kingdoms, into which these Islands (be they in

number more or less) use to be divided. But whatsoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can no where find) there are three only of account, to which the several petty Kingdoms are now reduced, that is to say, 1 *Japan* specially so called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms, of which 26 are under the King of *Meaco*, 12 under the King of *Amagunce*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferiour note. 2 *Ximo* which containeth in it nine Realms, the principal whereof are those of *Bungo* and *Figen*. 3 *Xicoum*, which comprehendeth four only of these petty *Seignories*.

J A P A N, the chief of all these Islands, to which the residue may be accounted of but as *Appurtenances*, is situate over against the Straights of *Amian* (if such Straights there be) towards which it looketh to the North: distant

M m m m m

from

from new Spain on the East 150 Leagues, or 450 English miles and 60 Leagues from *Cantan* a Province of *China* opposite to it on the West. On the South it hath the vast Ocean, and those infinite shoals of Islands which are called the *Philippine*, and the Isles neighbouring upon them. Extending in length from West to East 200 Leagues, but the breadth not proportionable thereunto: in some places not above 10 Leagues over, and in the broadest part but 30.

The Country Mountainous and barren, but a very healthy air, if not too much subject to cold, yet in some places they have Wheat ripe in the Month of *May*; but their Rice, which is their Principle sustenance, they gather not before *September*. The surface of the Earth, cloathed with Woods and Forests, in which some Cedars of so tall and large a body, that one of them onely is sufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it stored with divers Metals, and amongst others with such inexhaustible Mines of Gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth some of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered, in his time with sheets of Gold, as ours in *Europe* are with Lead. But I find no such matter in our latter Travellers. Their Fields and Meadows full of cattel, and hitherto not made acquainted with the making of *Butter*; their Fens much vilited by wild Ducks, as their house-yards with Pigeons, Turtles, Quails and Pullets.

The people for the most part of good understanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and subtil in their dealings. Of body vigorous and strong, accustomed to bear Arms until 60 years old. Their complexion of an *Olive-Colour*, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads shaved off. Patient they are of pain, ambitious of glory, incapable of suffering wrong, but can withal dissemble their resentments of it till opportunity of revenge. They reproach no Man for his poverty, so it come not by his own unthriftiness, for which cause they detest all kinds of *gaming*, as the ways of ill husbandry; and generally abhor *Slander*, *Theft*, and *Swearing*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their feasts in black; their teeth they colour black also, to make them beautiful: they mount on the right side of the horse, and sit (as we are used to rise) when they entertain. In *Physick* they eat salt things, sharp, and raw; and in their *salutations* they put off their shoes. The very *Antipodes* of our World in customs though not in sight, and the true Type or Figure of the old *English Puritan*, opposite to the *Papists* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that opposition. In other things they do much resemble those of *China*, if not the more *ceremonious* of the two: washing their Infant-children in the nearest River, as soon as born, and putting off their shoes when they go to meat.

The People have but one *Language*, but so intermingled with the words of other Nations, that it seems rather to be many Languages than one. They have long used the Art of *Printing*, which probably enough, they might have from *China*: the *Characters* whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and signifie not onely Letters, but some whole Words also. In matters of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring anciently the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven; and giving divine honour to wild beasts, and the Stags of the Forests: but specially worshipping some of their deceased Priests and Princes; by the names of *Fotoques* and *Cames*; to the first of which they use to pray for goods of the other World, and to the last for *Temporal* blessings. Their Priests they call by the name of *Bonzes*, settled in goodly *Convents*, and endowed with very large Revenues: who though divided into eleven different (if not contrary) Sects, do well enough agree in denying the Providence of God, and the immortality of the Soul. Of late times by the care and diligence of the *Jesuits*, *Christianity* hath begun to take footing here; whether with such a large increase as their Letters called *Epistolæ Japonicæ* have been pleased to tell us, I am somewhat doubtful. They tell us there of some Kings of these Islands, whom they have converted and baptized, that within 50 miles of *Meaco* they had 50 Churches, 200 at the least

in all, and that in the year 1587. the number of their Converts were two hundred thousand. Of this, if the one half be true, we have great cause to praise God for it, and to give them the commendation of their pains and industry; not letting pass the memory of the first *Advertiser*, who was Father *Xavier*, one of the first foundation of this *Society*, (employed in this business by *Ignatius*, the first founder of it) who landed here about the year 1556.

It lyes 36. Degrees North, from the Line, the Country is hilly and Subject to great Snows and is much colder and Poorer than *Portugal*, and yet it has plenty of Silver-Mines; the People are civil, courteous and very honest in their Dealings, very proud, and very poor *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 2. p. 80. The Cities in it are *Meaco*, *Cangoxima*, *Coia*, *Negru*, *Homi*, *Frænoi*, and *Blandu*. 16. p. 81. It is supposed to be an Island of 150 German miles in Length and Seventy in breadth. The Inhabitants are all under One Prince, Heathen Idolaters, and the Sworn Enemies of Christianity, which had begun to take some rooting amongst them, by the Preaching of the *Portugueses* but was extirpated by fire, and Sword, and the bloodiest persecution that ever was practised amongst Men. The *Dutch* who Trade here are secured with the utmost caution, that they may not Surprize any part of the Shore, or build any Fort, or do any other Act, whereby they may settle themselves, nor will they permit them to see any more of the Country than one small *Peninsula*, or of the Inhabitants than those they are to Trade with; and for a long time they would not permit them to Land, or buy or Sell till they had renounced their Christianity. This Island lyes 60 Leagues from *Cantan* a Province of *China* to the East. The Country is Mountainous and generally barren, but yet maintains a vast number of Cattel; yet the Inhabitants know not how to make either *Butter* or *Cheese*. This Island which was totally unknown to the Ancients, was first discovered by *Antonio Mota* a *Portuguese* in 1542. The *Jesuits* in 1556. Sent *Xavier* to Preach here, and at first they had great Success; insomuch that in the year 1587. they pretended to have gained over 200000 converts. But this Lasted not long, for about the year 1629, they began so dreadful a persecution, as is no where to be met with, and these New converts being not well grounded in their New Religion *Apostatized* so fast, that in 20 years there were very few Christians to be found, and perhaps at this time there are none. This Country lyes in 35 Degrees of Lat. and the Principal City of it is *Meaco*, though the Emperour of late resided at *Jendo*. On the coast of this Island are found excellent Pearl, but they are not much sought for because the Natives regard no *Jewels*. Tavern. p. 2. p. 145. This Empire consists of several Islands Seated North-East, of *China* and yields the greatest quantity of Gold of any Kingdom in *Asia*. 16. p. 156. This which has been represented as one Island is indeed a knot of Isles, *Nippon*, *Ximo*, or *Sayock* and *Xicock*, being 3 distinct Kingdoms. *Nippon*, is divided into 5 Provinces (*viz*) *Jamajoit*, *Jetsessen*, *Quanto* and *Ochio*. The Capital City is *Yeddo* which is now 3 Leagues long and as many broad, very populous and close built; the Summer is very hot and the Winter is as cold; Whirlwinds and Earth-Quakes are so common that they are not feared. The Country is barren by default of the Natives, rather than by the Nature of the Soil. The Air is healthful, the waters good, the Natives fair and well bodied, very hardy and valiant by nature and Custom. In great Towns the most of them can write and read. Their houses are built with Timber mostly, and covered within with fine Matts; which are their beds, Couches and Tables. Of old 300 or 400 years since it was all Subject to one Prince, now divided into 66 Kingdoms; the cause of Endless Wars *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 2. p. 82.

Rivers of note I find not any, though the Island be generally well watered, more memorable for two Mountains in it, than for all the Rivers. One of which called *Pigenoituma*, is said to transcend the clouds in height; the other

other (but without a name) useth to cast forth dreadful flames, like *Sicilian Aetna*: on the top whereof the *D-ent*, environed with a white and shining cloud, doth sometimes show himself unto such of his *Notaries*, as live about this hill an abstemious life, like the ancient *Hermites*.

Chief Cities of the whole Islands, 1 *Meaco*, seated in *Japan* and the chief of that Island, formerly 21 miles in compass, but now by reason of their wars, scarce a third part of it: The ordinary residence of the *Triumviri*, or three principal Magistrates, which sway the affairs of all these Islands: of whom the first, entituled *Zizo*, hath the chief care in sacred matters; the second named *Voo*, doth preside in Civil; and the third, called *Cabacama*, manageth the concerns of *Peace and War*. At this time it is used for the common *Empory* of the trade of *China*, that people not permitting Merchants to come amongst them, but bring to this place their Merchandise, as the common *Staple*; where they are sure to meet Chapmen to buy it of them. Here is also a Royal and Princely Palace in which their Kings formerly Lived and a good Haven and is still very great and Populous, but yet it is much diminished since the Court went to reside at *Isdo* 125 miles from this City to the West. This City is said at this day to contain above a 100000 houses and is now the Seat of the *Dairi* a Prince descended of a very ancient and venerable house, but now Subject to the Kings of *Nippon*, who acknowledgeth his Right and Marries his Daughter if he has one. 2 *Offacay*, a great and renowned City, conceived to be the richest in all the East; of so great trade, that every ordinary Merchant is said to be worth 30000 Crowns. 3 *Fenoiana* or *Fegenioiana*, at the foot of the hill so called, and about nine miles from *Meaco*. An University of *Bonzes*, for whose convenience and study, one of the Kings of *Japan* is said to have founded in this Town, and about that Mountain 3800 *Convents*, and to endow it with the third part of the *Revenues* of the Kingdom of *Vorn*. These Colleges or *Convents* now reduced to 800 only: but still the University of such fame and credit, that they give not the command or government of it unto any but the King's Son, or his nearest kinsman. 4. *Banoun*, another of their Universities, where they give degrees; affirmed to be as big as *Paris*. 5. *Bongdo*, the chief of all that Province, in which the *Jesuits* have a College; the *Japonites* learn the *Portugal* Language, and the *Europeans* that of *Japan*. 6 *Coia*, the Sepulture of their Princes, or some part of them: it being anciently ordained, That if their whole bodies be not here interred, they must at least send one of their Teeth. 7. *Fiongo*, about 18 Leagues from *Meaco*, the subject of many great misfortunes. Destroyed in part by *Nabunanga*, one of the Kings of this Island, who lived Anno 1550. that which he left, terribly scattered by an *Earth-quake*, Anno 1596. most of the ruins of it since consumed by fire. 8 *Amangasaqui* five Leagues from the Sea. 9 *Surungo*, as big as *London* with the Suburbs. 10 *Edoo*, much fairer than that, and the chief Seat of one of their Kings. 11 *Firando*, a Seat-Royal also of some other King, where in the year 1613. there was a *Factory* established for the *English* Merchants. 12 *Ochinofamanus*, one of their most noted Havens. 13 *Tosa*, or *Tousa*, giving name to one of the Islands.

These Islands utterly unknown to the Ancients, were first discovered by *Antonio Aboto* a *Portugal*, in the year 1542. I know *Mercator* taketh it for the *Aurea Chersonesus*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*; and I cannot choose but wonder at it: The situation of it so far distant from that of the *Chersonese*, that either *Mercator* must be grossly out in his conjecture; or *Ptolemy* as much mistaken in his informations; which no Man hitherto can justly accuse him of. But passing by the improbability of *Mercator's* fancy, we are to know, that in former times these Islands were subject to one Prince, whom they obeyed and revered with great affection: which government continued, as themselves report, 1600 years in great State and Majesty. But in the end, the *Dairi*, (so they call their King) addicting himself wholly unto pleasures, and laying

the burden of Government upon other Mens shoulders, his Deputies, or other interior Officers, usurped *King* power, plumed themselves with the *Eagle's* feather, and in their *Style* the name of *Yacitas*, or *Yacitas*, in other word, left nothing but the name of *Dairi* to their Lord and Sovereign. His Issue to this day do enjoy that title, but little else: the Princes bordering on *Meaco*, once in Royal Seat, hardly allowing him sufficient means to furnish himself Victuals and Apparel; but otherwise bestowing him with as glorious Titles, as if he were possessed still of his ancient power. Only they let him execute the place of an *Herald*, in giving Arms, and settling Dignities and Honours; which brings him in the greatest profit he hath to trust to. Of all these Kings, he who can make himself Lord of *Coquinai* (which are the five Realms about *Meaco*) is called Prince of *Tenza*, and esteemed Sovereign of the rest. Which height of dignity, *Nabunanga*, before mentioned, in this time attained to; after him *Faxiba*, and since him *Tacofuma*: that Sovereignty being now in a likely way to become *hereditary*. For *Faxiba* having brought under his command most of these small Kingdoms, transported the vanquished Kings, and the chief of their Nobles out of one Country into another: to the end that being removed out of their own Realms, and among strange Subjects, they should remain without means to revolt against him: a merciful and prudent course. Having reduced into his power at least 50 of these petty Kingdoms, he divided the greatest part of the conquered Territories amongst his own faithful friends and followers; binding them to supply him with certain numbers of Men upon all occasions. By which, and other politick courses he so settled himself in those Estates, that *Tacofuma* his Son succeeded without opposition; who, had he lived, would have abolished the vain title of the *Dairi*, or took it to himself, as he had the power; solicited thereto by the King of *China*. But dying in or about the year 1607. *Fereicifama* his Son succeeded, and may be still alive for ought I can learn.

What the *Revenues* of this King are, it is hard to say. I guess them to be very great, in regard he maketh two millions of Crowns yearly, of the very Rice which he reserveth to himself from his own Demesne. The store of Gold and precious Stones which these Islands yield, being wholly his, must needs add much unto his *Coffers*. And for his power, it is said, That *Faxiba* was able to raise so good an Army out of the Estate demised by him to his faithful followers, that he resolved once on the Conquest of *China*: and to that end caused Timber to be felled for 2000 Vessels for the transporting of his Army. And had he lived a little longer, 'tis probable enough he might have shaken that great Kingdom, the *Japonites* being so much the better Soldiers, that a small party of them would defeat a good Army of *Chineses*. The fear whereof made the King of *China*, after his decease, correspond so fairly with his Successour.

2. The PHILIPPINÆ, and Isles adjoyning.

South of *Japan*, lyeth a great fry of Islands, which are now called *PHILIPPINÆ*, in honour of *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*; in whose time discovered by *Legaspi*, a *Spanish* Captain, Anno 1564. Strangely mistaken by *Mercator* for the *Baruffa* of *Ptolemy*, those being placed by him in the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, five degrees South of the *Equator*, these situate on the East of *China*, in 13 or 14 degrees of Northern Latitude: those being onely five in number, these reckoned at above ten thousand.

The Air in all of them generally very mild and temperate, especially in the mid-land parts; that on the shores somewhat inclining unto heat. The soil abundantly fruitful of all Commodities both for necessity and delight, that is to say, Rice, Pulse, Wax, Honey, Sugar-Canes, many pleasant Fruits, the fairest Figs of all the World, plenty of Fish, variety of Birds and Beasts, as well wild as tame, great store of Cotton-Wooll, some Mines of Gold, and of other Metals great abundance.

Of all these Islands there are onely forty in possession of the King of *Spain*, belonging properly to *Asia*, but by him placed under the Government of *New Spain* in *America*, because discovered by *Lagassi* at the instigation or procurement of *Don Lewis de Velasco*, who was then Vice-Roy of that Province. In these forty Islands there are thought to be at least a million of people, subject to that Crown; many of which have been converted by the *Friers* and *Jesuits* unto Christianity. Of these the principal in account are, I. *LUSSON*, affirmed to contain in compass 1000 miles; beautified by the *Spaniards* with a fair City, seated on a commodious Haven, which they call *Munilla*: in which resides the Deputy or Lieutenant-Governor for all these Islands, and the Bishop of the *Philippines* for ordering all affairs of those Churches. It lyes between Longitude. 145. and 150. and 14. and 20. North Latitude. II. *MINDANAO*, 380 Leagues in compass; in which are many good Towns, as 1 *Cailon*, 2 *Pavados*, 3 *Subut*, 4 *Dapiro*, and some others. This is one of the greatest of the *Philippine* Islands, which was heretofore under the Dominion of the *Spaniards* but has now revolted from them; it is in length from East to West 400 *Spanish* miles, and lies in Longitude, 150 and Latitude between 5 and 10. The Principal City lyes on the South West side of the Island and is of the same Name. III. *TANDAIR*, more fruitful than any of the rest, and of good extent, 160 Leagues in Circuit, more specially called *Philippina* because first discovered and so named. IV. *PALLOHAN*, as much mistaken by *Mercator* for the *Bazacata* of *Ptolemy*.

These with the rest were subject in former times to the Kings of *China*, till they did voluntarily abandon them and confine their Empire within the Continent. On this relinquishment the people fell into Civil Wars, every Man getting what he could for himself and the stronger preying on the weaker: which factions and divisions gave great help to the *Spaniard*, in the Conquest of those few which are under their power. Islands of more importance to the *Spaniards*, than is commonly thought; and therefore furnished by them at their first Plantations with Bulls, Kine, Horses, and Mares, which before they wanted, and do now reasonably abound with. For besides the abundance of victuals, and some plenty of Gold, which they find therein, the situation is very fit to subdue the rest of the neighbouring Islands to settle the commerce betwixt *China* and *Mexico*; to bring on a continual Trade betwixt the Islands of this Sea, and those of *America*; and finally, to prevent the *Moors* or *Arabians* from planting their *Mahometanism* any further Eastwards.

Not far from these, on the South of *Japan* bending towards the West is another great heap of Rocks & Islands. Some of them rich in Gold, and furnished with very choice fruits, and other necessities; and peopled with a stout and warlike breed of Men, well skilled in *Archery*. The chief whereof have the names of 1 *Lequin Major*, 2 *Lequin Minor*, 3 *Hermosa*, 4 *Reix Magos*, &c. of which little memorable, but that *Hermosa*, as the *Spaniards*, or *Formosa* as the *Latines* call it, hath lately got the name of *New-Holland*; because not long since taken, planted and strongly fortified by some Adventurers of that Country. And not far off are those called 5 *Cumbabon*, in which is said to be a *Plant-animal* or sensible tree. 6 *Mattan*, unfortunately remarkable for the death of *Magellanus*, slain there in a battel with the Natives, in favour of the King of 7 *Sebat*, an adjoining Island; by the King whereof he had been kindly entertained: and whom by his perswasions he had gained to the Christian Faith, and baptized him by the name of *Charles*, in honour of *Charles* Emperour and King of *Spain*, under whom he served in this Present voyage. But long this miscreant King (*Hamabar* he was called before his Baptism) continued not in this good opinion; treacherously killing *John de Sarran* chief Pilot of *Magellanus's* small Navy, with about 70 of his Men, and probably relapsing to his former *Gentilism*.

3. The Isles of *BANDAN*.

THE Isles of *BANDAN* are in number seven that is to say 1 *Mira*, 2 *Rosolargium*, 3 *Aii*, 4 *Rom*, 5 *Nerra*, 6 *Gannape*, the last of all, continually burning; and for that cause deserted of its Inhabitants: 7 *Bandan*, bigger than any of the rest, and therefore giving name to all. Situate South of the *Philippines* in the seventh degree of Southern Latitude. More fruitful of *Nutmegs*, than any other of all these parts; for which cause never without the concourse of foreign Merchants from *Java*, *Malaca*, and *China*: and of late times from these Northern Countries of *Europe* also. Where by the way, the *Nutmeg-tree* is like a *Peach*, or *Peach-tree*, the innermost part whereof is the *Nutmeg* it self, covered over with a thin film or coat, which we call by the *Arabian* name of *Maciz*, or *Mace*, and over that the fruit it self, as it is in *Peaches*, *Malacotoons*, and such fruits as those. *Banda* lieth in the Southern Latitude 5. to the South-East, of *Amboina*.

The People barbarous & rude, slothful, of weak bodies, and dull of wit; living confusedly together without rule or order. Some of them still continue in their ancient *Paganism*; but the greatest part are thought to be *Mahometans*: in which Religion very zealous, and so devout, that they will not go unto their work or worldly businesses, till they have visited the *Mosquits*, and done their devotions. A shame or pattern shall I say in this, unto many *Christians*: All of them bloody and revengful, but yet so far from wronging the body of a Dead Enemy; that they use to bury it with sweet Odours.

Some Towns they have, of which the principal, 1 *Nera*, and 2 *Lontore*, joyned in a League against the rest; (the quarrel rising from the cutting down of certain trees) proceeding to the butchery of one another, and ending in the loss of their common liberty. Subject in shew to the King of *Botone*, one of the *Moluccoes*, but too much at their own disposing. They had not else entred into quarrels with one another. Which opportunity being taken by the watchful *Hollanders*, they did not onely settle four *Factories* there; but for the security of their Trade, and to awe the Natives, they have built three Forts. They had also turned one of their *Mosquits* to a *Fortress*; whereat the people were so incensed that they promised liberty to their *Slaves*, to get them out of it, who falling desperately on, fired it over their heads, and killed every Man of them. The *English* Merchants have some trading also in these Islands, more acceptable than the other; because not so insolent, and grounding their possession on a better title: the people of *Lantore*, voluntarily submitting themselves to the protection of King *James*, the first Monarch of the *British* Islands, and to this use giving possession of their Country to Captain *Robert Hayes*, Novem. 24. 1620. The like done at the same time by the Inhabitants of *Wayre*, and *Rosingen*, two other Islands; which, if they be not the same with those of *Mira*, and *Rosolargium* spoken of before, are probably some lesser Islands, neighbouring to *Poleon* and *Poolamay*, of which more hereafter:

There is not far off another Island, not in this account, called *Timor*, situate in the tenth degree of Southern Latitude; the chief of many little Islands which lie round about it: but not else observable, except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabitants for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

4. The *MOLUCCOES*.

THE *MOLUCCOES* are in number many; the King of *Terenate* which is one of them, being said to have Dominion over 70 Islands: but the determinate number of them I do no where find. Situate on both sides of the *Aequator*, and consequently of an hot and intemperate air: the soil so dry and spongiuous, that it sucketh

sucketh up the greatest Shower of Rain that falls amongst them before it can pass into the Sea. Not very well furnished with necessaries for the life of Man; but that defect supplied with the abundance of Spices which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Mustick*, *Aloes*, *Pepper*, and the like commodities; for which, the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But 'tis the *Clove*, which is the great Riches of these Islands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A Spice, which groweth on Trees, like Bay-trees yielding blossoms, first white, then green, (at which time they yield the pleasantest smell in the world) and last of all red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature so extreme hot, that if a Pail of water should onely stand in the room, in which they are cleansed and sorted, the *Cloves* in two days would dry it up. Of which nature the unspun Silks of *China* are affirmed to be.

The People for the most part *Idolaters*, intermixt with some *Mahometans* dwelling on the shores; and of late time with *Christians* in their several *Factories*. Of several *Originals*, and different Languages, but all in general fraudulent, perfidious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickedness. Few of them clothed, nor much caring to hide their shame. Not civilized by the cohabitation of more modest and civil Nations; pity such ill conditions should be lodged in such handsome bodies: the people being said to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*; and for strength and valour not followed by any of them. About the year of Christ 1013 The *Chinian* Empire being then in a flourishing State, first became Masters of these Islands, but not without blood and Treasure: about 60 years after they were expelled by the Inhabitants of *Molucca*; after which Succeeded the *Persians*, mixed with *Arabians* and by the latter they were called the *Molucca* Isles. The Ancient *Greeks* and *Romans* knew nothing of these Islands though they had Spices from them, brought in by the *Indian* and *Arabian* Merchants, by the Way of the Red Sea. In latter times they were brought by *Persia* to the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Seas, and from thence dispersed over Christendom by the *Genoueses* and *Venetians*. After the *Turks* prevailed in *Asia*, the Trade was again turned by the way of *Grand Cairo* and *Alexandria*. But after the *Portugueses* by many Discoveries had opened their way to the *East-Indies* about the year 1512; they first arrived in these Islands, and cut off all Trade between the *Arabians* and these Islands, by which the *Sultan* of *Egypt* lost 8000 *Ducats* by the year. The *Spaniards* first came hither under *Ferdinando Magelhaens* about the year 1520; whereupon ensued a contest between *Charles* the 5th and *John* 3d King of *Portugal*, concerning the Dominion of these Islands, and *Charles* resigned his Right to *John* for 200000 *Ducats*. About the year 1579 the *English* under *Drake* began to disturb the *Portugueses* here. About 1599, the *Hollanders* began to send Numerous and strong Fleets into these Seas; by which, and the great Wars, and changes which have since happened in *Spain* and *Portugal* they have intirely possessed themselves of these Islands. The Earth in them is extremely dry and Porey like a Pumice-Stone, and drinks up not only the Rain as fast as it falls, but all those Springs and Rivers too which fall from the hills before they can reach the Sea; and in many places it sends out fire and Smoak. The Plains are covered with sand and Shells, so that except Spice it scarce affords any thing useful to the Life of Man.

Of all the Islands which pass under this name, there are not above five or six of any reckoning: that is to say, 1 *Terenate*, is the chief of the 5 *Molucca*-Islands now in the Hands of the *Hollanders*, tho' it has a King of its own who resides in the Town of *Malay*. The *Dutch* have some Forts in this Island to assure its possession. 2 *Tidor*, 3 *Macir*, 4 *Rachian*, 5 *Machin*, and 6 *Botone*: None of them above six Leagues in compass, many not so much; the whole cluster of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 Leagues in the Circumference: yet of such consequence and importance, that the two famous

voyages of *Americus Vesputius*, and *Ferdinand Magellanus* the first employed by *Immanuel* King of *Portugal*, the other by *Charles* the Emperour, and King of *Spain*, were undertaken only to find out the next way unto them.

Of the rest, *Machin* and *Tidor* have their proper Kings; so hath *Botone* also, if that be one of them: the King whereof had anciently some title and authority over those of *Randon*, *Macir*, and *Machin*, which are subject to the King of *Terenate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion; and said to be the Lord of 70 Islands. This the most puissant Member of this scattered body; and for that cause most aimed at by all Competitors; the *Spaniards* having here one Fortress, and the *Hollanders* three. Both Nations hated by the Natives, whom they consume and waste in the wars betwixt them; but of the two the *Spaniard* looked on by the people as the more a *Gentleman*; the other stomached and despised for their sordid dealings. Nothing else memorable in the story of *Chorography* of them, but that they were discovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the Reign of *Charles* the Fifth, who employed him in it, Anno 1519. and that there is in *Terenate* a Prodigious Mountain, in height above the Clouds of the Air, and in nature agreeing with the Element of Fire, which it seems to mount to: huge flames whereof, with dreadful thunders, and dark smok, it sends forth continually. Reckoned by some amongst these Islands, but howsoever neighbouring near them, are those of *Polerone* and *Poolaway*; the first more plentiful of Cloves, the second more proper for the Nutmeg, but both acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Kings of *England*: for *Polerone*, by the general and voluntary Act of all the chief Men of the Country, was surrendered into the power of King *James* I. the possession of it being given for his Majesty's use to Captain *Courttop*, Decemb. 23. Anno 1616. no other Nation at that time having any interest in it, or Pretensions to it: which notwithstanding it was not long after seized on by the insolent and ungrateful *Hollanders*, who being to restore it upon composition, cut down all the *Clove-Trees*, so to deprive the *English* of the benefit of them. *Poolaway* made the like surrender at the same time also, declared by setting up the *English* Colours on the top of their Castle, giving to *Courttop* a green turf (whereby as by Livery and Seisin) to take possession of the Country, promising the annual tribute of a branch of *Nutmegs*; and that they should sell neither *Mace* nor *Nutmegs* to any, but to those of the *English* Nation. The like done at or near the same time, by *Wayre* and *Rosingen*, two other Islands of these Seas; which if they be not those two of *Randon*, pointed at before, must needs be brought within the number of this scattered Company.

5. The *SINDAE* or *SELEBES*.

Near the *Moluccoes*, and almost intermingled with them, are a set of Islands which *Ptolemy* calleth *SINDAE*; and the Moderns *SELEBES*; many in tale, but not above four of any weight; that is to say, 1 *SELEBES*, 2 *Gilolo*, 3 *Amboma*, 4 *Macassar*; of which the two first are situate under the Equator, and the last somewhat on the South of it: all of them in the time of *Ptolemy* inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, and a long time after; insomuch as the Kings of the *Moluccoes* did use to send their condemned Persons into these Islands, there to be devoured. Which said in general, we will take a more particular view of them, as they lye before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the rest, and hath under it many lesser Islands, is large and rich. The soil thereof exceeding fertile, the People tall and comely, and of colour, not so much black as ruddy. Much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* till of late; governed by many Kings or petty Princes, the cause of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are said to have been converted to Christianity; and for that cause much hated by their heathenish Subjects, who thereupon rebelled against them. It is situate West of the *Moluccoes*, and hath therein a Town called *Sion*, honoured with the abode of one of their Christian Kings: but possibly not so called until

until their conversion; the proper name thereof being *Cian*. 2. *Nibon*, in the South, and 3. *Terolli* in the North Parts of it.

2. *G I L O L O*, called also *Batachina*, is one of those Islands which our late Navigators include under the name of *Del Moro*. Of large extent, conceived to be half as big as *Italy*: By that account (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater than *Zeilon* it is in compass, tho' of less reputation: That being Governed by its own Princes; This subject for the most part to the King of *Terenate*. Situate East of the *Molucco's*, exceeding plentiful of Rice, well stored with wild Hens; and on the shores provided of a kind of Shell-fish, which in taste much resembleth Mutton. A Tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their bread; and of the sap or juice of it they compose a pleasant drink, which serveth them instead of Wine. The Air intemperately hot, the people well proportioned, but rude and savage; some of them *Gentiles*, some *Mahometans*, of which last Religion is their King. The chief Town of it is *Batchame*, or *Batachina*. (whence the new name unto the Island) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their Factory.

3. *A M B O I N A*, South of the *Aequator*, and the third of the *Sindæ* hath many Islands of less note, which depend upon it, and do communicate in the name. In compass about five hundred miles, said by *Maginus* to be extremely rough and barren; which must be understood with reference to some kinds of Grain. For otherwise it is very fertile, abundantly productive of Rice, Citrons, Lemmons, Oranges, *Coco-nuts*, *Sugar-Canes*, and other fruits, and very plentiful of *Cloves*; which last, as it makes some to reckon it amongst the *Moluccoes*; so may it be the reason why the Island is defective in such fruits as require much moisture: the *Clove* being of so hot a temper as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moisture of the Earth, which is near unto it. This Island lyes West of *Bandao* 24 Leagues, and very near the Line.

The people much given to Piracy, wherewith they do infest all the neighbouring Islands, defamed for *Cannibals* or Man-eaters: it being here a constant Custom, that when their Parents are grown old, or sick of any incurable Disease, they give them to one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note than other, which they call *Amboina*, by the name of the Island. First taken by the *Portugals*, and by them secured with a strong Fortrefs: during whose power here, the *Jesuits*, who had in their several Residences, converted many to Christianity. But in the year 1605, the Island and the Fort both were conquered by *Stephen* of *Hagan*, for the States of the United Provinces: who having cleared the Country of the *Portugal* Forces, possessed themselves of it. Received by the Natives at their first coming with joy and Triumph: but they got little by the change, as they found soon after; their new Masters being more burdensome and insufferable, than the old had been. For claiming it by the right of Conquest, they think they may oppress the Natives by the Law of Arms; and ingross all trade unto themselves as the true Proprietaries. Infamous even amongst the rude and savage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity, executed upon some of the *English* (the greatest Patrons under God which they have in the World) whom in the year 1618, they most cruelly tortured; and most wickedly murdered; under colour of some Plot to betray their Fortrefs: but in plain truth for no other reason but because they were more beloved by the Inhabitants, and began to gain upon their trade.

4. West of *Amboina* and South-West of *Selebes*, lyeth the fourth of these Islands, called *MACASSAR*; said to contain from East to West 600 miles: It is extended from North to South, 200 *French* Leagues; and is 100 broad. There are in it six Kingdoms; *Macassar*, *Cion*, *Sanguin*, *Cauripana*, *Gotigan* and *Supara*. The two principal Cities are *Macassar*, and *Bantachia*. The South parts of this Island are much frequented by the *English* and *Dutch*, which latter of late in 1669, have severely

treated the King of *Macassar*, whose Dominions lye in the South part of the Island, and comprehend the far greatest part of it. This Island lyes between the *Moluccoes* the East, and *Borneo* to the West; and is sometimes ascribed to the former. The Line cutteth the Northern part of it. The Inhabitants of it heretofore went naked and eat Man's-flesh; and had all the Criminals of the *Molucco's* sent over to them for that purpose, but they are now much civiliz'd. There is Gold found in the Rivers mix'd with the Sand. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 156. The heats are excessive in the day, but the night is cooler. The Capital City is of the same name, and is seated on the most Southern Point. The King is a *Mahometan*, and will not suffer his Subjects to turn Christians; yet the *Portugueses* in 1656 got leave to build a fair Church in *Macassar*; but the next year it was destroyed. The *Hollander* in 1658, sent an Embassy to *China*, which being opposed by the *Jesuits* there, they revenged this quarrel on the *Jesuits* and *Portugueses* in *Macassar* in 1660; which they effected by burning all their Ships, and forced the King to expel the *Portugueses* out of his Dominions. This Prince's name was *Sumbaco*, who was also forced to give 200 Loaves of Gold to redeem the Royal Fort, which the *Dutch Fleet* had taken. It is but lately that this Prince became a *Mahometan*. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 191. Plentiful of Rice, Flesh, Fish, Salt, and Cotton-Wooll; not destitute of Gold and Pearls, and well stored with *Sandar* (*Sandalum* it is called in Latine) a medicinal Wood, growing like a Nut-tree; of several colours, white, red, yellow, but red the best: the fruit in make like a Cherry, but of no esteem. In some parts overgrown with wood, in which certain fiery Flies make nightly such shining light, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle. In the middle covered with high Mountains, out of which flow many navigable Rivers.

The people for the most part *Gentiles*, intermixt on the Sea-coasts with some *Mahometans*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Senderem*, the King's Seat, situate near a large Lake very commodiously for Traffick. 2. *Macassar*, an *English* Factory, so called according to the name of the Island.

Near to these Islands, and somewhat North to *Batachina*, are some other Isles, plentiful of all things necessary for the life of Man; but inhabited by a thievish and Piratical people: the principal of which, 1. *Terrao*, 2. *Sanguin*, 3. *Solor*, 4. *Moratay*; in which last they eat *Battata* Roots instead of bread; besides some others of less note. Most of the people *Gentiles*, except those of *Sanguin*, the King whereof being gained to the Christian Faith, by some of the *Jesuits*, hath brought many of his Subjects to the same Religion.

6. B O R N E O

West of these *Selebes*, lyeth *B O R N E O*, of more note and greatness, than any hitherto described, in these *Indian* Seas. In compass after their account who speak most sparingly, 2200 miles; but as some say, no less than three months sail about. Situate under the *Aequator*, which parteth the Dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Laus*: opposite on the North to *Camboia*; on the South, to *Java*; on the East, to *Selebes* on the West, unto the Isle of *Sumatra*. The Inhabitants of this Island are so curious to have a lawful Heir upon the Throne, that the Husband not being certain the Children which he has by his Wife are his own, but she is certain they are hers, therefore they rather chuse to be Governed by a Woman to whom they give the Title of Queen; her Husband being only her Subject, and having no power but what she gives him. *Tavernier*, Part 2. Pag. 140. In this Island there is a River called *Succadan*, in the Sand of which are found *Diamonds*, but the Queen will not suffer them to be exported. Whether this Custom of being always Governed by a Queen is taken up since this Author wrote, or that there is more Kingdoms than he reckons in this Island is not known to me.

But

but some years since there was in our Gazette a famous controversy mentioned between one of these Sovereign Queens and her Rival, who pretended to be the true Heness, and that the Reigning Queen was a Counterfeit; this came to a civil War, and several Battels were fought between them. It may be here observed, That all these female Kingdoms are in the hot Countries, and seem to be an effect of the Raging Lust of the Men, who overvaluing the soft Sex not onely call them, but really make them their Mistresses; whereas our furious Lovers can very hardly submit to the Goddesses they adore for any long time: in Ancient times many parts of *Ethiopia*, and *Arabia Felix* were ever Governed by *Women*, some of which are mentioned in the Sacred Scripture.

The Country said to be provided naturally of all things necessary; yet said withal to be unfurnished of Asses, Oxen, Herds of Cattel, except onely Horses, and these but small of stature neither: the greatest riches of it being *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and some Mines of *Adamants*; erroneously conceived by *Mercator* to be the *Insula bona Fortuna*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*; that being seated opposite to the outlets of *Ganges*, in the Latitude of a hundred forty five Degrees, and fifteen Minutes; this Eastward some degrees of the *Golden Chersonese*, and consequently twenty Degrees distant at the least from that Island in *Ptolemy*.

The people generally more white than the rest of the *Indians*; of good wits, and approved integrity, though all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two Religions; the King of *Borneo* and his subjects being all *Mahometans*, those of *Laus* still remaining in their ancient *Gentilism*. These think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their children; ascribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* especially; whom they salute at his first rising with great Reverence, saying certain Verses. Their publick busineses are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the Counsellors of State meet, and ascend some tree, viewing the Heavens till the *Moon* rise, and then go to the *Senate-House*. The same Apparel generally of both Religions; but thin, by reason of the great heat of the Air: a shirt of Silk; or of *Calicoe*, or some such slight stuff, worn more for modesty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Borneo*, situate in the North-West part of the Island near a goodly Bay, but in the middle of the Fens like the City of *Venice*, and seated as that is, on *Piles*; the building sumptuous, of hewed stones, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-tree*. The Town so large as to contain 25000 Families. 2 *Taiopura*, 3 *Tamaoratas*, 4 *Malano*, all of them noted for fair Cities, or commodious Havens. 5 *Sadana*, a Factory of *English*. 6 *Lavi* on a large Bay in the South-East part of the Island, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Laus*. 7 *Paro*, on another capacious Bay, not far from *Lavi*, and directly opposite to *Borneo*: that being seated on the North-West, and this on the South-East of the Island. Betwixt these two Kings is the whole divided; but so that he of *Borneo* hath the greatest part of it, and therefore keeps the greater State: not to be spoken with, but by the mouth of some of his own Interpreters; and in his Palace served by no other Attendants, than *Maids* or *Women*: A manifest token of their Effeminacy.

7. J A V A.

Opposite to *Borneo* towards the South lie the Isles of *J A V A*, two in number; both situate South of the *Equator*, both of great Circumference, and commonly distinguished into *Major* and *Minor*, or the greater and the lesser *Java*.

1. *J A V A M A J O R*, the More Northward of the two, and by much the bigger, is said to be in compass 2000 miles; and that by them who reckon elsewhere *Borneo* for the biggest of these Seas. But the truth is, That the South parts of this Island not being perfectly discovered, make the admeasurements thereof to be very uncertain,

Conceived most properly to be the *Aladin* of *Ptolemy*, the most Northern part whereof is placed by him in the eighth degree of *Southern Latitude*: said by him to afford much Gold and Silver, to be exceeding fruitful of all other necessaries; and finally, that the name did signifie *zeibis mōr* or the Island of Barley. All which agreeth punctually with the present Island, the word *Java*, signifying a kind of grain much like our *Barley*; and *Dia* in the *Persian* and *Indian* Tongues signifying an Island. And so in *Java*, we have found the Island of *Java*, the mutation of B. into V. being ordinary.

Then for the riches and fertility of it, it is said to yield great plenty of Fruits, and Corn, but of *Rice* especially: flesh of all sorts, salted and sent from hence into other Countries; great store of Fowl, both wild and tame, plenty of Gold, some precious stones, and the best kind of Brass; Silks in abundance, and great quantities of Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, and some other Spices. In a word, so befriended by the bounty of Nature, that *Scaliger* calleth it *Epitome Mundi*, or the whole World contracted in a lesser Volume. But withal it is much exposed to storms and tempests, from which seldom free.

This Island lyes 200 Leagues in Length. On the *West* it has *Sumatra* another Island, on the *East* it has some other small Isles; on the *South* the vast Ocean Plays full upon it, and on the *North* it has the Island of *Borneo* at the distance of 45 *German* miles. In the year 1591. *Odericus* a Frier minor was in this Island, and calls it *Java*; though he gives other names to all the other places he was in, than they now have. He saith it was in circuit 3000 miles, divided into 8 Kingdoms, but all subject to one Supreme Prince, full of People and one of the Richest Kingdoms in the World; the Palace Royal being paved with Bricks of Gold and Silver chequered. And that this Prince always beat the *Tartars* when they invaded him *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 45. This Frier I believe was the first *European* that Pierced into *India*, and came back. It is divided into 9 Kingdoms the greatest of which is the Kingdom of *Bantam*. The whole Island produceth great quantities of Spice, and is on that account much frequented by the *English* and *Dutch*; which last had heretofore only the Fort or City of *Batavia* in this Island, and not contented with this neither, about the year 1684 Joyning with a Son of the King of *Bantam*, who was then in Rebellion against his Father, upon pretence of assisting of him; they Seized the City of *Bantam*, and kept the old King a Prisoner in the Castle of *Bantam*. But finding there were several attempts to restore him to his former Possession, in the year 1686, the young King by the Advice of the *Dutch* removed his Captive Father to *Batavia*. The *Dutch* have yet left the Son to Govern the Kingdom as a vassal to them, they regarding nothing but the trade and City; and the *English* have erected another Factory in the other parts of the Island, that in *Bantam* being Seized by the *Hollanders*. It lyes between 130. and 140 Longitude, and 5 and 10 of the *Southern Latitude*.

The people of a middle stature, corpulent, and of broad Faces, most of them naked, or covered onely with a slight silken stuff, and that no lower than the knee; accounted the most *Civil* people of all the *Indians*, as fetching their descent from *China*: but withal treacherous, very proud, much given to lying, and very careless of their words, to which so used, that they count it not amongst their Faults. And therefore when a King of theirs had broke promise with the *Hollanders*, and was challenged for it, he answered, That his tongue was not made of bone. Cruel they are also said to be, and implacable, if once offended: accustomed of old to eat the bodies of their friends; accounting no burial so honourable, nor obsequy so applaudive. This also a custom amongst many of the rest of the *Indians*, and so hath it been ever since the beginning of the *Persian* Monarchy. *Herodotus* reporteth how *Darius Hystaspes* understanding of this custom, and without knowing how the *Gracians* use to burn their dead; sent to the *Greeks*; that it was his pleasure they should eat the bodies of their dead. But they used all kinds of devices.

sion and intreaty, not to be forced to so brutish and barbarous a custom. Then commanded he the *Indians* to conform themselves to the fashion of the *Gracians*; but they all more abhorred to burn the dead, than the *Greeks* did to eat them. So impossible it is for a custom either to be suddenly left off, or to seem undecent and inconvenient if once thoroughly settled.

In matter of Religion they are all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*, according to the fancy of their several Kings, whereof in this Island there are very many; one for every great Tribe, or more powerful Family. Zealous in their Religion whatsoever it be, as appears by the sad story of the Daughter of the King of *Balambua*, murdered by her Husband the King of *Passarua*, the second night after her Wedding, with all her Attendants; because they would not be *Mahometans*, which was his Religion. Yet in some common Principles they agree well enough, punishing *Adultery* with death; in which case the Woman chooseth her nearest Kinsman for her Executioner: but otherwise spending the Day and Night in much Sloth and Dalliance. Of the two, *Gentilism* is the more diffused, because most ancient; the Sect of *Mahomet* not being introduced till the year 1560. though of a very swift growth, and of a great increase for so short a time.

Their chief Towns, 1 *Panarucan*, near a burning hill, which in the year 1686. broke forth exceedingly, oppressed infinite numbers of Men, and cast great stones into the City for three days together. This lyes 30 miles from *Passarua* to the East, and 45 from *Balambuan* to the North, on the East side of the Island. 2 *Fortam*, a Town of a 1000 Households, the Inhabitants whereof are *Gentiles*, and have their Temples in the Woods: the Chief-Priest of whose superstition hath his dwelling here of great authority and power over all the Island. There is also a River of the same name. 3 *Ballambua*, 4 *Passarua*, 5 *Taban*, 6 *Matara*, This is a great City on the South-side of the Isle of *Java*, one hundred Leagues from *Bantam* to the East, 120 from *Ballambuan* and only 40 from *Japara*. This is the Capital of a Kingdom of the same name, which is of great extent from East to West, and was once the Capital City of the whole Island of *Java*; Longitude 135. 40 South Latitude 8. 20. 7 *Daunia*, 8 *Taggal*, 9 *Surrabea*, 10 *Gatabaon*; the seats of so many of their Kings: some of them also furnished with convenient Havens. 12 *BANTAM*, the seat also of a King, but of most trade in all the Island, seldom without the company of *English*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*; the principal Factory of the *English* in all the *Indies*, though they have many besides this. The Town unwholsomly seated in a moorish ground, and much subject to fire. This City is seated at the foot of an hill 18 Leagues from the City of *Batavia* towards the West, upon a Narrow Passage called the Straights of *Bantam* and was at first subject to the Emperour of *Japar* Prince of *Java*, but rebelled against his Master and was therein upholden by the *Hollanders*, who reap the Advantage of Joyning with one of these Princes against the other, as occasion serves till they can ruin both, as in effect they have ruined the King of *Bantam*. This City stands right over against the Island of *Sumatra*. It has a very good harbour belonging to it, called the Sound, and was much frequented by the *European* Merchants, especially the *English* and *Dutch*: the Kingdom of *Jacatra* was subject to this Prince, and he had often made War with the *Dutch*, and had reasonable good Success in it; till about the year 1684. a Son of the King of *Bantam*, rebelling against his Father, called the *Dutch* to his Assistance, by which means the *Dutch* possessed themselves of *Bantam*, Seized the *English* Factory and their effects, and made themselves sole Masters of that Trade; the Controversy between them and the *English* not being determined to this day. 12 *Sunda*, situate in a place abounding in Pepper. 13 *Agracan*, a convenient Port. Here was also in the time of *Ptolemy* a Town called 1 *Argyropolis* or the Silver-City, long ago destroyed. And now here is, 15 *Sura*, a new Town in the Territories of the King of *Bantam*, built by some of the Subjects of the King of

Passarua; who being oppressed by their own King, came into this part of the Country, where they got leave to build this City. The people whereof live quietly according to their own Laws, follow their Husbandry abroad, but never marry; and yet do not want a constant Succession, adopting some of the other *Javans* into their Society, as they find their number to diminish.

16 *Jacatra* one of the Royal Cities of *Java* which had a King of its own when the *English* first came thither; the *English* took the Town from the King, burnt it and built a Fort in the place where it stood; but in the year 1619. the *Dutch* by treachery Surprized this Fort, cut off the *English*, and have since built the Capital City of their Trade in the *East-Indies* in the same Place and called it *Batavia*; by this means they are become the Masters of the Island of *Java* to a great Degree.

Of the story of this Island I can say but little. Divided into many petty and inconsiderate Kingdoms; and those divided too by Mountains, crossing the Island in the middle from West to East, which cut off all commerce and correspondence betwixt one another. Some of these Kings *Mahometans*, some *Gentiles*, as before was said; all subject or homagers at least to one of the Kings of the *Gentiles*, who hath his dwelling in the midst of the Island. Next him, the King of *Tuban* was conceived to be richest, and the King of *Ballambua* of the greatest Territory; whose Family after long war and blood-shed, begun in the murder of his Daughter, is said to be wholly rooted out by the King of *Passarua*. These Kings much revered by their subjects, and so well obeyed, that whatsoever they command, is done, be it never so dangerous.

2. *JAVA MINOR*, situate on the South of the other, is said to be 2000 miles in compass, and to be very near the firm Lands of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Not very well known to any of our late *Adventurers*; but generally affirmed (not so much on certain knowledge as uncertain conjecture) to be of the same nature and condition with the greater *Java*. The Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who had travelled in it, reported to be *Cannibals*, *Idolaters*, devourers of their Parents and dearest friends; and to worship all day whatsoever they saw first in the morning. Divided then into eight Kingdoms, distinguished by the names of their principal Towns. Six whereof he had seen, which are these that follow. 1 *Felch*, where the Townsmen were *Moors*, and the Peasants *Gentiles*. 2 *Basma*, which did acknowledge the Great *Cham* of *Tartaria* for Lord in chief; but without paying of any tribute. 3 *Samara*, where none of the North-stars could be seen. 4 *Sambri*, in which some Men were said to have tails like Dogs. 5 *Fansur*, in which they have a Tree, the wood whereof put in water, will sink like Iron; of which they use to make *Launces* that will pierce an Armour. And 6 *Dragorian*, of which there is nothing memorable or prodigious, but that the people of it use to eat their nearest Kinsmen; and that no *Prodigie* at all, because used by others.

To these two we may joyn *MADURA*, on the North of the greater *Java*, fertile of *Rice*, but otherwise of so waterish and moist a Soil, that Men and Cattel use to go knee-deep when they sow it. The chief Town whereof is called *Arosbay*. And on the East the same *Java* the Island *Baly*, exceeding populous for the bigness, supposed to contain 600000 Inhabitants; and very well provided of *Bulls*, *Buffles*, *Goats*, *Horses*, *Swine*, many kind of fruits, and some store of metals.

8. SUMATRA.

SUMATRA lieth on the North of the greater *Java*, betwixt it and the Strait of *Sincapura*, the most Southern Town of the *Golden Chersonese*. The Strait in that place so straight and narrow, not above a Musket-shot in breadth, that some conceive this Island to have been formerly joyned unto it by some little *Isthmus*; since worn away by the violence and working of the Sea; and that

that this Island, and not the Land of *Malaca*, was that *Golden Chersonese*, which we find in *Ptolemy*. More probably by far than that we should run after it to the Isle of *Japan*, situate on the East of *China*, so far from any part of *India*, where it is placed by the Author of the *Atlas Minor*.

The length hereof, extended from the North-west to the South-east, is said by some to be 900, by others but 700 miles, the breadth 200, and the whole compass 2100. Strangely affirmed by some Writers to be the biggest of all the East; who yet assign a greater circuit unto *Java*, and as great to *Borneo*. Situate under the *Equator*, which divideth it into two parts very near an equality: that on the North-side reaching unto five degrees, that on the South-side but to seven degrees from the Line it self. By which account there is little difference betwixt the length of a day and a night; both much at one in all times of the year whatever.

The air hereof by consequence must be very hot, but withal unwholsome: not so much in regard of the extreme heats, as by reason of the gross vapours drawn from the many Fens and Rivers which are found to be in it; and the thick Woods which intercept the free course of a purging wind. The Soil not capable of such grain as in other places, except Rice, and Millet (for I know not otherwise how to render the *Latine*, *Millium*) but yielding Ginger, Pepper, *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and *Cassia*, in great abundance. It affordeth also great plenty of Wax and Honey, store of Silks and Cottons, rich Mines, not only of Tin, Iron, Sulphur, and other Minerals, but of Gold such quantity, that some conceive this Island to be *Solomon's Ophir*. And if *Pedruca Siric*, one of the Kings of this Island, in a Letter Written to King *James I.* did not brag too impudently; it may be probable enough. For by that Letter it appeareth, That all the furnitures of his house, and trappings of his Elephants and Horses, with all his Armour, were of pure Gold, and that he had in his Dominions a whole Mountain of Gold; King of which *Golden Mountain* he entituled himself in his *Regal Style*. The Gold is thus found: After the Rainy Season, when the Torrents are Wasted, they find veins of Gold in the Flints, which the Waters wash down from the Mountains, which lye Towards the North-East, but it is very Course: Tavernier p. 2. p. 156.

The Inhabitants are many of them good *Artificers*, cunning *Merchants*, or expert *Mariners*. All of them *Gentiles* till about two hundred and thirty years since, at what time by the diligence of some *Arabian* Merchants trading to this Island, *Mahometanism* began to spread upon the Coasts. But in the In-land parts of the Country they are *Gentiles* still, and still retain amongst them their old barbarous customs. The most loving Men unto their Enemies that were ever known; for otherwise they would never eat them. Having eaten, they use their skulls instead of Money, which they exchange or barter for such necessities, as their wants require: and he is thought to be the wealthiest Man amongst them, who hath most of this coyn. Those of the other Religion, though in most points and customs they agree with the rest of the *Mahometans*, have this one singular to themselves: which is, that once every year on a certain day, they go solemnly unto their *Mosquits* to see if *Mahomet* be come, leading a spare horse for him to ride upon: which (missing him) is mounted at their coming back, by the best Man in the company. Of any great Progress that Christianie hath made here, I have no good evidence.

That here are many and great Rivers, hath been said before, but their names I find not. Here are also many Mountains, and those great and high; that of most note called *Balakuanus*, said to burn continually, out of which, or not far off do arise two Fountains, of which the one is said to run pure Oyl, and the other the best *Balsamum*: which I bind no Man to believe, but such as have seen it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Achen*, the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom, beautified with the Regal Palace, to which they pass thorough seven Gates one after another, with

green Courts between the three outermost; those three continually guarded with Women expert at their weapons and using both Swords and Guns; the only ordinary guard that he hath for his Person. The materials of this Palace mean, but the furniture costly, the Walls thereof being hanged commonly with *Muske* and *Damask* and sometimes with cloth of Gold. The King of this City is in League with the *Dutch*, who export from hence many rich Commodities and rich Spices, 1 *Pepper*, 2 *Cambar*, 3 *Menantabo*, 4 *Aura*, and 5 *Indragie*, the seats of so many of their Kings. 6 *Passaman*, a Town of great Trade, but situate in a Moorish and unhealthy place; found so experimentally by too many of the *English*, who have there their Factory. 7 *Priamon*, and 8 *Tecoo*, of a more healthy air, but not so commodious in their Havens as is that of *Passaman*: these three Towns standing in that part of the Country where the *Pepper* groweth.

All that we know touching the story of this Country is, That the *Portugals* when they first came hither, found in it nine and twenty Kings; reduced since to a smaller number. For *Abraham* sometimes a Slave, afterwards King of *Achen*, having turned *Mahometan*, by the help of the *Turks* and *Arabians*, subdued the Realms of *Pedir* and *Pacem*. *Aladine* who succeeded him, being once a *Fisherman*, and grown famous for his exploits at Sea, was by this King preferred to the marriage of one of his Kinswomen, made his Lord *Admiral*, and by him trusted with the protection of his Son and Heir: of whom instead of a Protector he became a murderer, and usurped the State unto himself. When King, he added to his Crown the Kingdom of *Aru*, or *Aura*, and *Manucabo*: and almost all the rest on the North part of the Island. In this King's time, the *English* were first settled in their factory there: Grown old (a hundred years at the least) he was imprisoned by his eldest Son, impatient of a longer stay, alledging that his age had made him unfit for Government Anno 1604. The name of the new King *Sultan Pedruca Siric*, who in his Letter to King *James I.* spoken of before, styles himself the sole King of *Sumatra*: either with greater brags than truth, or else became the Kingdoms of *Tecoo*, *Priamon*, and *Baronje*, being conquered by him, all the rest were become his *Tributaries*. Associated with the Forces of the King of *Jor*, or *Jabor*, who had married his Sister, he besieged *Malaca*, and distressed it; but being beaten from it by the *Portugals*, he turned the tide of his displeasure upon his *Confederate*, and subdued that Kingdom; who with the King of *Siak* (some other petty Prince near *Jor*) and two of their brethren, were in the year 1613. brought Prisoners to *Achen*.

The Government of this King is absolute, and meerly arbitrary, executing what he hath a mind to, without form of Law. So cautelous, that without his *Placard* no stranger can have *Ingress* into his Dominions, or free *Egress* out of them. Nor is admittance to his presence granted unto any whom he first sends not for by an Officer with a *Gilded Staff*. He is conceived to be strong, both by Sea and Land, his Country populous, his Elephants many and well trained, able to put to Sea 120 or if need be 200 Gallies and *Frigats* fit for any service, most of which carry *Demie-Cannon*, Culverin, Saker, Minion, and other the like Ordnance of Brass: So great a Master of his Subjects, that in 21 daies he had a goodly Channel drawn about his Palace, from a River which was eight miles off. Of his *Revenues*, I am able to make no conjecture, but think him to be full of Gold, by that great quantity of Golden Furnitures which he hath about him.

And now I am fallen on this King's Gold, I cannot but take notice of some Islands on the West of *Sumatra*, called *Auræ Insule*, or the *Golden Islands*; the chief of which named *Andromania*, is possessed by *Camels*, or *Man-eaters*. Opposite unto which on the East side of this Island, are those called *Linga*, *Bunta*, and *Buntan*. which last is said to be very woody, well watered, and to afford a commodious Station for shipping. The houses built

built of Stone, but thatched, except that of the King (for even these sorry Islands love to have a King of their own, as the far greatest part of the Earth doth; this most Ancient form of Government having spread it self with Mankind round the Globe) whose house more eminently reared, is more handsomely covered.

2. ZEILAN.

West of Sumatra, somewhat inclining to the North, is the Island of ZEILAN, ten degrees distant from the Equator, and near adjoining to the Promontory in the Indian *Indi* which *Ptolemy* calleth by the name of *Cory*. The length hereof computed at 250 miles, the breadth at 150 miles only, the whole circumference at 700 or 800 miles. Conjectured by the situation, and other probable inducements, to be the *Taprobane* of the ancient Writers. *Ocellus* and most other intelligent Men of these latter times are of that opinion. Only *Mercator* who hath carried the *Golden Chersonese* to the Isle of Japan, and fixed *Taprobane* in that of Sumatra, (in which last I must confess he hath many Partners) will have this Island to be that which *Ptolemy* calls *Nanigeris*, though that be four Degrees more West than the Promontory of *Cory*, to which this Isle in former times seems to have been joyned. This Island produceth Spice in great abundance, which has drawn the *Dutch* to settle here, and they have possessed themselves of *Columbo* and *Negombo*, which belonged before to the *Portugueses*. There is lately published an exact account of this Island in *English*, by a Person who lived there many years. For *Zeilan* see *Hicklutt*. T. 2. p. 225. especially for the *Cinnamon-Tree*.

Taking it therefore for an evident and undoubted truth, That this *Zeilan* or *Ceilan* is the *Taprobane* of the Ancients, we will a little look on the state of that Island, with reference to the times when those Authors lived. By *Ptolemy* affirmed to be plentiful in Rice, Honey, Ginger, Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, and all kind of Metals. By *Pliny*, That the Gold is purer, and the Gems rarer than any in *India*; that there were also Groves of Palm-trees, and great store of Elephants, is declared by *Ælian*, and some others; watered with many fair and pleasant Rivers, viz. 1 *Soana*, 2 *Azanus*, 3 *Baracus*, 4 *Gandes*, 5 *Phasis*: the Hills in many places having a full prospect over the adjoining Valley; the chief of which were *Matra*, and those called *Calibi*; the Vallies perpetually enriched with the choicest fruits. Exceeding populous for the bigness, and stored with many Towns of note. Of which *Metropolitum* only hath the name of a *Metropolis*, 1 *Margana*, 2 *Jogana*, 3 *Sindocanda*, 4 *Hodoca*, 5 *Nabartha*, 6 *Dogana*, 7 *Dionysopolis*, 8 *Bocana*, 9 *Abaratha*, 10 *Pso-curum*, 11 *Nagadiba*; and 12 *Anubingara*, have the name of Cities, 13 *Meduttum*, and 14 *Talacorum*, noted for the Towns of Traffick. 15 *Priapæ*, 16 *Mardus*, 17 *Rhizala*, 18 *Spatana*, and 19 that of the Sun, for commodious Havens. 20 *Anurogrammum*, being honoured with the title of *Regia*, or the Royal City. As for the name, it is said by *Ptolemy* to have been first called *Taprobane*, then *Simondi Insula*, and finally in his time *Salice*, and the People *Sale*; from whence the name of *Selan* or *Seilan* seems to be derived.

To take a view of it at the present, I find it said to be of an *Oval* form, divided from the main Land by a narrow Channel; the Heavens refreshing it with their Dews, the Air with a fragrant freshness, and the waters with their many Rivers and Fountains: the Earth diversified into lofty hills, and lowly valleys; her inward Chambers filled with Metals, and Jewels; her outward Coat of the pleasantest colour, stored with whole Woods of *Cinnamon*, besides *Fruits*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*, &c. bettering those of *Spain*. Of *Fowls* and *Beasts* great plenty both wild and tame: and the best breed of Elephants in all the World. Destitute only of the *Vine*, the want of which supplied with a pleasant drink made of the juice of fruits, more natural to them than the other, and so preservative of life, that the people are reported to be longer lived than in any

other parts. In a word, so abounding in all contentments, that the *Indians* hold it to be *Paradise*, and take upon them to find out some of *Adam's* footings, left for a memorial in some parts of it. And to confirm them in their Error, they have an Hill there which the *Spaniards* call by the name of *Pico de Adam*, affirmed to be seven Leagues in height, from whence *Adam* ascended into Heaven; for that cause visited by the *Moors* or *Arabians* with continual *Pilgrimages*.

The people for the most part are tall and straight of body, naked from the girdle upwards, unwarlike, and much given unto ease and pleasures; So queasie stomached that the poorest of them will not eat that meat which another hath touched; inclined to bravery, and therefore make wide holes in their ears, which they stretch out with *Jewels* to their very Shoulders. Cunning *Artificers* in all Metal, one of them making a *Crucifix* of such exquisite workmanship, that it seemed to give life to the dead; and was sent by the Archbishop of *Goa* to the King of *Spain*, as the rarest Jewel which had ever graced his Royal Cabinet. They are also very active, and well skilled in *Juggling*, both Men and Women, travelling thorough *India* with their tricks and *Hobby-horses*, by which they get themselves both delight and money. In the matter of Religion, they are generally *Idolaters*, especially the Natives, whom they call *Cingalas*, that live in the In-lands; the Sea-coasts (as in other Islands) being filled with *Mahometans*. No Christians that I hear of but in *Columbo*, a Town of the *Portugals*.

Cities of most repute amongst them, 1 *Candie*, the seat of one of their Kings, supposed to be the *Sindocande* of *Ptolemy*, memorable for the Statute of their supposed *Adam*, most artificially wrought, of five or six Fathoms high, Symmetrically proportionable to the print of his foot, which they conceive to have amongst them. 2 *Ventane*, of great renown for an *Idol-Temple*, in compass 130 paces, of great height, and all white except the top, which hath the Spires thereof so gilded, that when the Sun shines, Men are not able to look upon them. 3 *Fanasipatan* 4 *Triqui Lemale*, (supposed to be the *Tarichi* of *Ptolemy*) 5 *Batecolom*, 6 *Vilassam*, 7 *Tanamaca*, 8 *Laula*, 9 *Galle*, the seats of many of their Kings; 10 *Nagarita*, conceived to be the *Nigari*; as 11 *Agana*, the *Iogana* of *Ptolemy*; 12 *Colmuchi*, the seat Royal of the chief King of this Island, situate on a capacious Bay on the South-west of it; and of most trade in all this Country: many great Ships laden with *Cinnamon*, *Gems*, *Elephants*, and other *Indian* Commodities going yearly hence. Fortified by the *Portugals* (by whom called *Columbo*) with a very strong Castle, built with the King's leave at first, to secure their trading, but since used by them as a curb to hold him in with, and to compel him to pay Tribute. now Possessed by the *Hollander*.

This Country first discovered to be an Island by *Onesicritus*, Admiral of *Alexander's* Fleet, was in the time of *Ptolemy* inhabited by several Nations. The principal of which were the *Galthi*, and *Muduttæ* dwelling in the North, the *Rhogandani* and *Nanigeris* in the South; the *Sindocandæ* in the West, and the *Tarachi* in the East, the middle parts being taken up by the *Anurogrammi*, *Magabdi*, *Soani*, *Semni*. But little or nothing is said of them in the way of story, but that they were good *Mimicks*, did imitate the tunes of birds, and could speak to two at once, as if double-tongued; that they were very studious of *Astrology*, and worshipped the Sun and the Host of Heaven; that some of their Ambassadors coming to *Rome*, in the time of *Claudius Caesar*, *Solem à læva oriri mirati sunt* &c. admired to see the Sun rise on the wrong side of them, and finally, that the King was chosen by the people with respect had to his age and clemency; who being enthroned, appointed thirty Judges to administer Justice to the Subject, without the Major part of whom, sentence of Death was to pass on no Man. In following times this Monarchy (for such it was in the time of those Authors) was broken into many Pieces: the *Portugals* finding nine Kings in it, at their first coming hither, all Homagers

Homagers or Tributaries to the King of *Colmuchi*. After that, this their chief King was wickedly murdered by his Barber, who drove the other Kings out of the Country, and for a while usurped the Monarchy to himself. Since which time, having once again recovered their Kingdoms, six of them (as I have somewhere read, but remember not where) put themselves under the protection of the Great *Mongul*, and became his Fendataries.

Near hereunto on the Coasts of *Malabar*, are the Islands which they call *Maldive*, many in number, but so called from the principal of them, as that from *Maldiva*, a noted and well-traded Empory, where the King resideth: Not very plentiful of necessaries for the use of Man, did not the *Palm* alone supply them in all other wants. Inhabited by an industrious and sober people, who make themselves long Garments of Silk or Flax, brought from other places, wherewith more modestly adorned than the rest of the *Indians*: and by their Fishing draw up shells of such mingled colours, that they serve amongst the *Siamites* instead of money.

10. ISLANDS of less note.

Besides these Islands represented to us by their several names, and some that have nothing but their names to take notice of; there are many thousands of less note which we find in gross: these *Indian* Seas being so prodigiously full of Islands, that it is almost impossible to believe there should be such multitudes; but utterly impossible to credit what is told of us of them: Some of the most remarkable of them we have touched upon, as Accessories or Appurtenances to some greater Islands. The rest we shall present onely in the general Muster, together with a taste of some of those strange reports, with which some Men have fouled their Papers, and abused their Readers. Of the *Philippines* there are said to be 11000, though but 40 of them in possession of the King of *Spain*. More South, but over against *Cbina*, is another *Frie* of them, affirmed by Mariners to be no fewer than 7448; and (as if nature had delighted to disport her self by sowing Islands in these Seas) another Shoal of them about *India*, no fewer in

number than 127000, all which laid together would make a Continent as large as three or four parts of *Europe*; and are still groining under the burden of Heathenism. These *Islands* stand so high unto one another, that they seem onely to such as are afar off, to be all but one firm Land; but whosoever also passeth between them, may with his hands touch the Boughs of the Trees on the one side, and on the other. Of these and the other *Indian* Islands, Travellers relate many incredible Fables, viz. That there are Hogs that have two teeth growing out of their snouts, and as many behind their ears, of a span and a half long; a Tree whose Western part is rank poison; and the Eastern part an excellent preservative against it. They tell us also of a Fruit, that whosoever eateth, shall for the space of twelve hours be out of his Wits; and of a Stone, on which whosoever sitteth, shall suddenly have a rupture in his body. We are told also, that hereabouts are taken Tortoises of that bigness that ten Men might sit and dine within one of the shells; and that there is a Tree, which all the day-time hath not a flower on it, but within half an hour after Sun-set, is full of them. A huge and monstrous lye, and not fit for credit. *Galium* reporteth also, that in some of these Islands there is a Fruit, of which if a Woman that is with child eat, her Child will presently move; that there is a River plentifully stored with Fish, whose water is yet so hot, that it doth immediately scald off any skin of the Beast that is cast into it; that some of the Men have tails; and most of their Swine horns; that they have Oysters which they call brass, the shells whereof are of so large compass, that they Christen Children in them; that in the Sea there are stones which grow and increase like Fish, of which the best Lime is made: that there is a bird called *Monocodonta*, which having no feet is in a continual motion; and that there is a hole in the back of the Cock, in which the Hen doth lay her eggs and hatch her young ones. I bid no Man to believe these Relations: for my part I say with *Horace*,

Quodcunque ostendis mihi sic, incredulus odi.

Whatever thus thou tell'st me, I

Will always hate it as a lye.

And so much for these *EASTERN ISLANDS*.

An Advertisement to the Reader touching the ERRATA of this PART.

IN the first place the Reader is to be advertised that Fol. I have adventured to prove the Aalmatha of Ptolemy to be the Chamath, or Hamath-Sobab, of the Holy Scriptures; The place ill pointed, but the judicious Reader will easily find out the scope and meaning. Yet if this shall not be approved of, I should then think it to be that Elam or Helam where David discomfited the Army of the Melopotamians; mention whereof is made 2 Sam. 10. 16, 17. In the next place he is to know, that Fol. within the compass of five lines, the Victory which Asa King of Judah obtained against the numerous Army of Æthiopians, is twice repeated: in the first place ascribed to Jethir, in the next to Maresha, (though the other also have good Authors) let that of Jethir be supplied in this manner following. 5. Jethir or Jethir, in the North Border of this Tribe towards Eleutheropolis: a City anciently of the Levites, in St. Hierom's time called by the name of Jethira, and then replenished altogether with Christians: now nothing but the name remaining. 6. Maresa, &c. And finally, whereas Ajalon p. is placed in the Tribe of Ephraim, and p. in the Tribe of Dan; the reason is, because being situate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by some Writers ascribed to Dan, and by others to Ephraim. The like also may be said of Michpas, mentioned also in two Tribes according as it is disposed of by several Authors.

TABLE

A

Long.	Lat.
132. 30	3. 40
82. 0	13 50
118 10	44. 0
72. 30	38. 0
162. 50	4.20 <i>A</i>
169. 50	23. 10
72. 30	39. 0
61. 30	43. 40
129. 10	10. 24
140. 50	25. 0
76.	44
142. 30	27. 50
66. 30	44. 30

Coulan
Cantar
Chaul

Damascus
Decan
Delly
Derbent
Dia
Dornate

Long.	Lat.
114.30	7.10
149.	25.
109.40	17.30

D

74.30	35.0
113.20	44.0
114.0	19.10
84.53	42.20
108.0	20.30
137.50	7.50

E

60.30	39.40
87.40	40.50
50.0	58.20

B

Babylon
Baccu
Balfora
Banda
Baticalla
Bengala
Bethlehem
Bisnagar
Bulgar

82. 20	33. 0
88. 50	42.
82. 40	31. 10
164. 0	4. 50 <i>A</i>
111. 30	12. 40
125. 10	21. 20
65. 45	31. 50
114. 20	14. 10
88. 30	54. 40

Famagusta
Fasso
Gabarn
Gaza
Gest
Gilolo
Goa

下

69.20	30.30
57.50	45.40

59

80.50	36.10
70.50	39.10
107.30	26.30
161.30	1.10
112.20	14.30

C

Cabul
Catindu
Calecut
Cambalu
Camboia
Campion
Cananor
Candahor
Capha
Calamines
Cauchin-China
Cranganor
Cerafo
Choromandel
Chefmar
Chianfu
Chirman
Cincapura
Cochin
Colmucho
Comori

212. 20 31. 0
137. 30 47. 40
112. 40 10. 30
161. 10 51. 40
342. 20 11. 40
148. 0 57. 30
112. 50 11. 0
110. 40 33. 40
68. 50 48. 0
149. 0 9. 0
140. 30 20. 0
113. 0 9. 40
73. 0 44. 40
115. 20 22. 30
115. 10 3. 0
147. 30 27. 30
98. 30 27. 30
136. 43 1. 2
114. 0 9. 4
117. 30 6. 4
115. 10 7. 2

Heri
Hormar
Hierusalem

H

99.53	30.00
165.25	35.10
72.20	33.00

94.40	32. 6
105.40	38. 0
73.	33. 0
71.30	34. 0
110.30	39.40

E.

165. 0	28. 0
160. 20	34. 40
134. 20	53. 0

M

140. 10	23. 20
160. 40	0. 30
	<i>Machine</i>

	Long.	Lat		Long.	Lat.
<i>Macin</i>	85.30	25.50	<i>Rhodes</i>	61.40	37.20
<i>Malaca</i>	136.30	2.50	<i>Rages</i>	79.10	28. 0
<i>Maldiva</i>	113. 0	3. 0	<i>Regis</i>	82.10	36. 0
<i>Maliapar</i>	118. 0	13.20			
<i>Mamora</i>	155.40	0. 40	S		
<i>Mandao</i>	121. 0	25. 0	<i>Sablestan</i>	114. 0	30. 0
<i>Mangaler</i>	112. 0	11.30	<i>Sarmachan</i>	130. 0	47. 0
<i>Martavan,</i>	134.30	17.10	<i>Samaria</i>	72.20	33.40
<i>Meccha</i>	73.30	25. 0	<i>Sciro</i>	57.30	41.10
<i>Medina Talnabi</i>	73. 0	27.30	<i>Siam</i>	139.10	14.30
<i>Meaco</i>	170.30	37. 0	<i>Sidon</i>	72.10	36.30
<i>Mindanas</i>	160.40	7. 0	<i>Sind</i>	109.30	27. 0
<i>Moltan</i>	114.20	24.30	<i>Siras</i>	90.40	30.40
<i>Multan</i>	109.50	29.20	<i>Smyrna</i>	60.20	40.30
<i>Mongul</i>	159.29	60.40	<i>Sigestan</i>	205. 0	31. 0
<i>Musbal</i>	84. 0	34.50	<i>Sultania</i>	92.40	37.20
			<i>Succuit</i>	143.10	56. 0
N			<i>Sunda</i>	138.86	40. A
<i>Nagulan</i>	97. 0	53.30	<i>Sufis</i>	73.40	48.
<i>Naim</i>	94.10	33.40	<i>Scarpanto</i>	62.10	36. 0
<i>Nayman</i>	140. 0	65.10			
<i>Narsinga</i>	119. 0	18. 0	T		
<i>Nazareth</i>	72.40	34.10	<i>Tangu</i>	152. 0	63. 0
<i>Nicomedis</i>	63.10	44.20	<i>Talcan</i>	85. 0	47. 0
<i>Nisabul</i>	102.10	38.40	<i>Tarnassur</i>	119.40	17.10
<i>Nice</i>	57.41	40.	<i>Tarfus</i>	71.20	40. 0
<i>Ninine</i>	82.36	60.	<i>Tauris</i>	90.30	38.10
			<i>Tenduc</i>	168.30	67.30
O			<i>Thebet</i>	138.50	44. 0
<i>Odia</i>	138.30	12. 0	<i>Trapezond</i>	74.30	44. 4
<i>Onor</i>	111.40	19.10	<i>Tripolis</i>	72.20	37. 0
<i>Orixa</i>	118.40	20.40	<i>Troy</i>	59. 0	42.30
<i>Ormus</i>	91.20	27.30	<i>Tyre</i>	72.10	38. 3
<i>Oziana</i>	107.41	20.	<i>Tidore</i>	160.40	0.
P			V		
<i>Pacopa</i>	132. 0	4. 0	<i>Van</i>	86.30	36.50
<i>Pedir</i>	131.10	4. 0	<i>Varma</i>	130.20	20.10
<i>Pegu</i>	135. 0	20.10			
<i>Ptolemais</i>	66.40	29.40	X		
<i>Persepolis</i>	90.40	30.40	<i>Xamdu</i>	168.40	55.40
<i>Patane</i>	138.10	6.50	<i>Xava</i>	130. 0	17. 0
Q			Z		
<i>Quainfu</i>	144.40	42.30	<i>Zagaspi</i>	101.20	42.30
<i>Quinsa</i>	153. 0	40. 0	<i>Zama</i>	74.40	11.40
			<i>Zibit</i>	70. 0	22.20
R					
<i>Rhabana</i>	196.30	47. 0			

The End of the Third Book.

The End of the Third Book.

COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
AFRICA:
AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By PETER HEYLYN.

C. JUL. SOLIN. cap. 33.

Ultra hos (Æthiopes) monstrosæ gentium facies: Aliæ sine naribus æquali totius oris planitie, informes habent cultus: Aliis concreta ora sunt modicoque tantum foramine calamis avenarum pastus hauriunt: Nonnullæ linguis carent, in vicem sermonis utentes nutibus, manibusque.

PTOLEM. GEOG. lib. I. cap. 5.

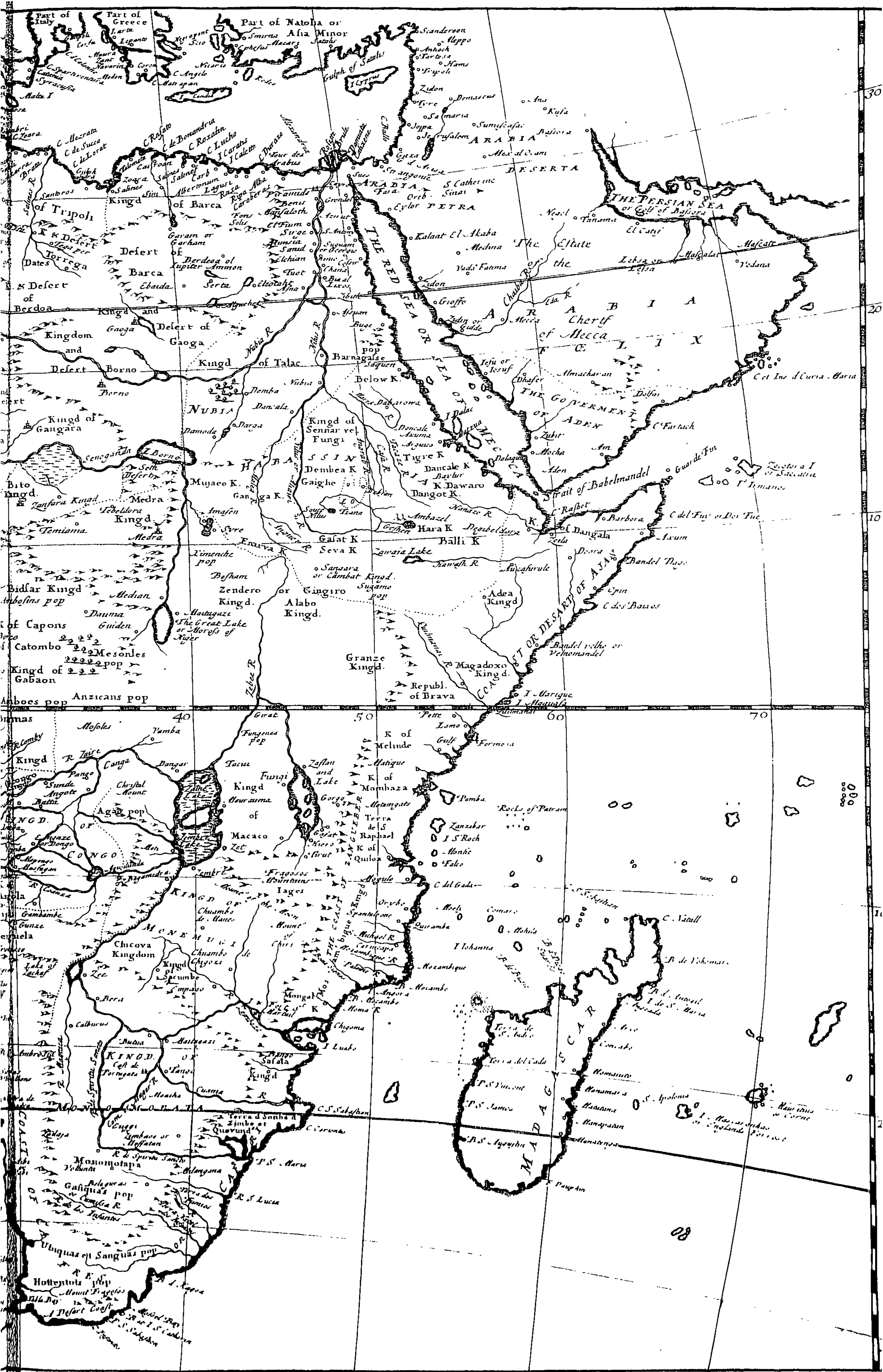
Constat per ipsas temporum traditiones, quasdam partes Continentis terræ quæ à nobis habitatur nondum propter difficilem magnitudinis peragrationem, ad notitiam pervenisse: quasdam verò non tales, ac fertur, esse, &c. necesse ergo est ut ibi novissimis temporis nostri traditionibus penitus quasi adhareamus.

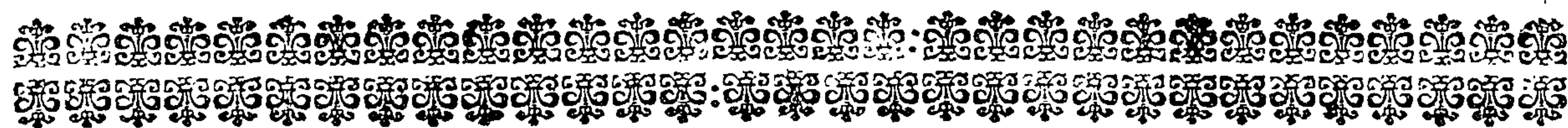
L O N D O N:

Printed in the year 1702.



AFRICA





COSMOGRAPHY,

The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY

OF

AFRICK.

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF AFRICK.

AFRICK is bounded on the East by the *Red-Sea*, and Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Asia*; on the West by the main *Atlantick Ocean*, interposing betwixt it and *America*; on the North by the *Mediterranean Sea*, which divides it from *Europe* and *Anatolia*: and on the South, with the *Æthiopick Ocean*, separating it from *Terra Australis incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Parted from all the rest of the World, except *Asia* only, to which joyned by a narrow *Isthmus*, not above 60 miles in length, and memorable for the great design which *Cleopatra* the last Queen of *Egypt* had upon it, which in brief was this. When *Mark Anthony* was encountered by *Augustus* in the Naval Battel of *Actium*, *Cleopatra* fearing the success, fled through the midst of all

his Fleet, with the 60 Gallies which were appointed for her Guard. Being come to the North part of this *Isthmus*, she gathered together all her portable Treasures, and intended to hoist her Shipping out of the *Mediterranean*, and hale them over the Land to the *Red-Sea*, from whence she had purposed to take Sail, and together with her Sweet-heart *Anthony*, and some other choicest Friends, to seek out some other place of dwelling far enough from the *Romans*. But from this, *Anthony* who fled after her, and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at last disswade her.

The Form hereof is like a *Pyramis* reversed; the Basis of which, from *Tanger* on the Strait of *Gibraltar*, to the point where it joyneth unto *Asia*, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920 *Italian Miles*, the Comur of

O O O O O

of it very narrow. But from the *Conus* or *Pyrus* to the most Northern part of the *Basis*, it extendeth it self the space of 455 Miles, being much less than *Asia*, and far bigger than *Europe*.

By the *Grecians* it is called most commonly *Libya*, (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole: by the *Ethiopians*, *Alkebulam*; by the *Indians*, *Besecath*. But the most noted name thereof is *Africa*, which *Josephus* out of *Cleodenus* and *Polyhistor* deriveth from *Epher* or *Apher* one of the Nephews of *Abraham* by *Midian* the Son of *Keturah*. The *Arabians*, by whom it is called *Isreebea*, derive it from the Verb *Faruch*, signifying to divide; because more visibly divided both from their own Country, and the rest of the World, than any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the *Greek* Fblers fetch it from one *Afer*, a companion of *Hercules*, whom he attended unto *Spain*. Some fetch it out of *Aphar* an *Hebrew* word, signifying *Dust*, agreeable to its sandy and dusty Soil. *Festus* an old Grammarian, from *A Privativum*, and the *Greek* word *peba*, which imports a country void of cold, as suitable to the fiery temper of the Air. By *Bochartus*, who brings all from the old *Phœnician*, it is said to be derived from *Peruc*, *Spica*, an ear of Corn, which mollified into *Ferie*, came at last to *Africa*, that is to say, a Country plentiful in Corn. Which Etymology of his may receive some countenance from that great plenty of Corn which was bred in this Country: especially in those parts hereof which the *Romans* called the *Proper Africk*, whereof we shall speak more when we come to *Barbary*: the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africk*. But in my mind, (if that from the *Hebrew* *Epher* or *Aphar*, be not worth accepting) I should prefer the Etymon of *Festus* before any other, unless we might be sure that *Carthage* anciently was called *Africa*, as *Suidas* telleth us it was; for then without all peradventure we should seek no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in some elder Writers, i. e. *Olympia*, *Oceania*, *Eschatica*, *Coryphe*, *Ammonis*, *Hesperia*, *Ortygia*, and perhaps some others, it is enough to our design to take notice of them.

It is situate for the most part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Aequator* crossing it almost in the very midst: and for that cause supposed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly, in the middle and more Southern parts of it; or if at all, with such strange people, as hardly did deserve to be counted Men. *Pomponius* among others was of this opinion, guessing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by such strange Brutes as the *Cynophanes*, who had heads like dogs; 2. The *Scæpodæ*, who with the shadow of their foot could and did hide themselves from the heat of the Sun; 3. The *Gamofaphantes*, a naked people, ignorant of the use of Weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the sight of Men; 4. The *Blemysæ*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their Breasts; 5. The *Aripiani*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be Men, but the shape and making of their bodies. These people (as they thought) possessed some small portion of the mid-land parts of this great Country; the rest they knew not, or conceived to the uninhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late discoveries and navigations have found the contrary; the Country proving in most parts to be well inhabited, and the coolness of the nights, by mists, dews, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

That is to say,

What the Sun burns by day, the Night renews,
And doth as much refresh with moist'ning Dews.

For notwithstanding that it be in some places full of sandy deserts, a disease incident to some parts of *Arabia*, *Persia* and other Countries of a more Northerly situation: yet it is said by some, who speak it upon knowledge, that the greatest part of those Regions which lie under the Line, or near it, (both in *America* and here) have so many goodly Fountains, Rivers, and little Brooks, such abundance of Cedars, and other stately Trees of shade, so many sorts of delicate Fruits ever bearing, and at all times beautified with blossoms; as may make them hold comparison with any others, supposed to be of a more temperate situation.

But as was said before, the Ancients knew not much of this Country, and therefore spoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful hear-say. For though *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian* employed by that State, discovered much of the Western Shores of this great *Peninsula*, yet he ventured not so much into the Land: nor did his *Journal* (either suppressed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to pursue those Voyages; being writ in the *Carthaginian* Tongue, but since translated into *Greek*, and published at *Basil* by *Sigismund Gelenius* Anno 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that some *Phœnicians* in the days of *Pharaoh Necho*, passing down the *Red-Sea*, should sail about the Coasts of *Africk* to the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and so return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what those Ages disbelieved or esteemed impossible, is now grown ordinary; the *Circumnavigations* about this Country being very frequent, since first performed by *Vasquez de Gama*, an adventurous *Portugal*, in the year 1647 being 80 years after or thereabout, from the time that the *Portugals* first attempted the discovery and circumnavigation of the Coasts of *Africk*, which at the last, to the no small glory of their Nation, was accomplished by them. For so it happened, that having extended their Dominions as far as they could upon the Continent of *Spain*; and having withal a large Sea-coast and fit for Shipping, they turned their Forces on the *Moors* that dwelt in *Africk*, from whom they took many of their best Towns which lay along upon the Shores of the main *Atlantick*. Encouraged by this good success, *Henry Duke of Viseo*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the first, resolved to spend his purse and credit upon new discoveries. And to that purpose, having had some conference with some Persons of knowledge and experience in Cosmography, he draweth together the best Men of Action, both in *Spain* and *Italy*. By their means, and his own good fortune, he first discovers the Isle of *Madera*, An. 1420. This Island lyes on the Western Shore of *Africa* called *Madeira* by the *Portugueses* of old *Cene Atlantica*. This Island being in the Latitude of 32 was first found by an English-man, whose name was *Macham* in the year 1344. This Man was left here by the Ship with a few Men and in an open boat, made of one Tree arrived in *Barbary* and was by the *Moors* presented to *Poter* the Fourth King of *Arragon* as a Wonder. In 1395 *Henry King of Castile* sent some Ships the Second time to find out this Island, and the *Canaries*, which, it seems Succeeded; for in 1417. *Mosnier Reuben de Bracamont* a French Gentleman, was sent to Conquer *Canaria*. *Hackluit*. T. 2. p. 2. p. 1. Its Latitude is 32. T. 2. p. 2. p. 7. Its principal City is called *Funchal*, which is a Bishop's See, and has a fair harbour for Ships, with a Strong Fort. This Island yields plenty of Wine, and Sugars which are transported abroad, and *Peaches*, *Melons*, *Oranges*, *Lenimons*, *Pomegranates*, *Citrons*, *Figs* and Garden-Herbs; but it yields little Corn, which is brought for the most part, from

Quodque, die Salis, vehemens excanduit aestu,
Furnis non reficit, paribusque refragrat horis.

from *France* or *Tenerif*. It is in Circuit about 30 Leagues. 16. p. 7. *Madera* from *Palma*, one of the *Canaries* is 57 Leagues to the South-East. It was discovered by the *Portugueses* in the year 1419. and called by this name, from its plenty of Wood. Its Length is 25 Leagues, its Circuit 60. The principal Town is *Funchal*. It lyes in 32 Degrees Latitude and Longitude 360. It is prodigiously fruitful, but especially in Sugar, and *Mather*, a dying Stuff, and Wines, the Slips whereof were brought from Candy. The birds were at first so Ignorant, as to suffer themselves to be taken up, but have since learned to fear Mankind. It has plenty of water, and of all other things needful for the Life of Man. Though an *English*-man is said to have first Landed here in the year 1344. yet the *Portugueses* were the first that peopled this Island and still possess it: when they first found it, it was one great Wood, and to clear it they put fire to it, which raged, so horribly at first, that they were forc'd to go to Sea to avoid its fury; but then the Ashes contributed exceedingly to its Fertility, but that is long since fail'd and is now returned to its Natural strength, which is sufficient to maintain a vast number of Inhabitants. *Funchal* is an Archbishop's See and the residence of the Governour. This is the greatest Island in the *Atlantick* Ocean, saith Mr. *Pory*, as being in compass 160 Miles: besides Plenty of Springs, it has 8 small Rivers which make it as fruitful and pleasant as a Garden, and every thing it produceth is extraordinary good in its kind. But its Principal Commodities are Sugars, Wines and Cedar- chests. The Bishop of *Funchal* had a Revenue of 8000 *Ducats*. The Isle of *Lisly Port*, Anno 1428. The Islands of *Cape Verd*, Anno 1440. These Islands are the most Western part of *Africa* in 14 Degrees of Latitude. This Cape is called by *Ptolemy* *Arfinarium*, and is one of the most famous Head-Lands in *Africa*; it is imbraced by the Branches of the *Niger*; the South branch is called *Gambra*, *Gambia*, and the North Branch *Senega*, *Sanega*, *Pory* p. 43. Just upon this Cape is a knot of Seven small Islands utterly destitute of Inhabitants and called the *Barbacene*; for the greater Islands see the Islands of *Cape Verde*. This Cape was first discovered by *Alovis de Cadomosta*, a *Venetian* for the *Portugueses* in 1455. They are 9 in number the greatest *St. Jago* is 70 miles Long, the *Portugueses* have built a Town upon it by a pleasant River which contains 500 families. The Maritime parts of the Land of *Guinea* Anno 1452. This is a large Country upon the Shores of the Ocean, between *Maguleta* to the West, from which it is separated by the *Cape of Palmes* and the Kingdom of *Ben* to the East, from which it is divided by the *River de la Volta* and it is divided into *La coste d'or* which lyes East between the Rivers *Asien*, by which it is parted from the former: on the *Coste d'or* are many Castles belonging to the *English*, *Sweeds*, *Danes*, and *Hollanders*; this Country was discovered in the year 1365 by the *French* as is pretended. *Baudrand*. But in the dismal Wars between the *English* and *French* under *Charles VI.* and *VII.* they were forced to omit the Prosecution of this Navigation. *Hoffman*. But it is much more probable and better attested, that it was discovered in the year 1452 or 1475. by *Henry Duke of Viseo* as above. But then the *Spaniards* in 1477 pursued this discovery and till 1479 excluded the first discoverer. In 1482 *John II* King of *Portugal* sent Ambassadors to *Edward* the IV King of *England* to desire, That a Fleet prepared by *John Tintam* and *William Fabian* 2 *English* Men to trade to *Guinea* might be stopp'd and not suffered to pass. *Hickluit*. T. 2. p. 2. p. 2. They regaining the trade in the Island of *St. George* built the strong Town or Fort of *Mina* in 1486. to secure their Trade there for the future, and to command all the rest of this Coast; and this was the first place built by the *Europeans* on this Coast; these Countries seem to be those which the *Nubian Geographer* p. 8. 9. calls *Lam-*

lem. Which fair foundations being laid, and the way opened to those great discoveries which after followed; that glorious Prince deceased in a good old age, Anno. 1463. leaving this Character behind him, That he was the first that made the *Portugals* in love with the Sea; discontinued after his decease above 20 years, it was resumed again by King *John* the second of that name, who by the conduct of *Diego Con* Anno 1486. discovered the Realms of *Angola* and *Congo*, with the Isle of *St. George*, and thereupon resolves in the next year following to try his fortunes for compassing the whole Coast of *Africk*, thereby to find a way to the wealth of *India*; in which he employed Captain *Bartholomew Diaz*, who passing beyond *Cape Verd*, discovered first the *Princes* Island, and sailing from thence Southward to the furthest Promontory (since called the *Cape of good Hope*) returned home again; either discouraged by cross Winds, or unruly Seas, or the untractableness of his Mariners, or by all together. The Man to whom the honour of this Enterprize was reliev'd, was that *Vasquez de Gama* above-mentioned, employed in this service by King *Emanuel*, Anno 1507. who having in his way discovered the Islands of *St. James*, and *St. Helen*, and after doubled that terrible Cape, which *Bartholomew de Diaz* durst not pass, gave it the name of *Cabo di Buena Esperanza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*; because of the good hope it gave him of finding the desired way to the Trade of *India*: and having so doubled this Cape, and got *Africk* on the left hand of him, he kept his course on towards the North, till he discovered the Countries of *Quiloa*, *Mosambique*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinde*, with the King of which last he contracted an especial friendship, and by his favours and directions, found the Port of *Calicut* in *East-India*, from whence with infinite joy and honour he returned to *Lisbon*, Anno 1500. The design followed the next year by *Alvarez Caprale*, furnished with 12 ships and 1500 Soldiers; but he being cast upon the Coasts of *Brasil*, and diverting wholly in a manner on the discovery of that large Country, it was pursued the next year with greater strength, by *Vasquez*, and his Brother *Stephen*; afterwards by *Ferdinand de Olmeda*, and *Alphonso de Albuquerque*, and divers others of that Nation; and finally by the *English*, *Hollanders*, and Merchants almost of every Country, which have any Trade upon the Ocean. By means whereof the latter Ages are better instructed in the particulars of it than the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman* Empire, and some parts adjoining upon *Egypt*, more than the strange beasts and more strange reports which they had from hence; occasioning hereby the By-word, *Africa semper aliquid apportat novi*.

Touching the state of Christianity in this great Continent, it is very weak; most of those Regions which Christian Religion had once gained from *Idolatry*, *Mahometanism* having since regained from Christianity: Infomuch that not only the North part of *Africk* near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Gospel once so exceedingly flourished, that three hundred Catholick Bishops were at one time banished thence by *Genfericus* King of the *Vandals*; is at this present utterly void of Christians, (except some few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*;) but even in all this vast Country, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely Christian, but the Kingdom of *Abassia* only, and perhaps not that; none where the Christians are intermingled with *Mahometans*, but only *Egypt*; nor where mingled with *Idolaters*, but in *Congo* and *Angola*, and some few Towns upon those Coasts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have those Nations gotten by our late discoveries; it being *Gain*, not *Godliness*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Country, or dispersed

in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly so called, *Egyptians*, *Habassines*, *Arabians*, *Jews*, and some *European* Christians only in their Forts and Garrisons; the *Jews* in all the good Towns where Trading is stirring; the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-coasts bordering on the Red-Sea; but wandering in great hords or companies all about the Country with their Wives and Children: the *Habassines* and *Egyptians* in their several Kingdoms: The *Africans* again subdivided into *Moors* and *Caseres*; of whom the *Moors*, are wholly under the Law of *Mahomet*, the *Caseres* dwelling in the in-land and more Southern parts, not discovered anciently in their wonted *Gentilism*. Accordingly, the Languages herein spoken are different also. 1. The *Portugal* or *Spanish* being used by the *Europeans*; 2. The *Chaldæ* or *Syriack* by the *Jews*; 3. The *Arabick* by those of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* only; 4. The *Habassine*, and 5. the *Egyptian* in those Kingdoms: 6. That called *Aquel-amarig*, or the *Noble Language*, supposed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixt with some *Arabian* words, and spoken generally in *Morocco*, and so amongst some of the Inhabitants of *Barbary*, nearest to Mount *Atlas*: 7. That named *Sungai*, used in *Tombutum*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8. That called *Gubco*, spoken by those of *Ethiopia inferior*, and such of the Land of *Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the state of the *Roman Empire*, it contained only the *Diocesis* of *Egypt*, *Africk*, and part of the *Diocesis* of *Spain*. The *Diocesis* of *Egypt* subdivided into the Provinces of 1. *Libya superior*, 2. *Libya inferior*, 3. *Thebais*, 4. *Augustanica*, 5. *Arcadia*, and 6. *Egyptus*, especially so called, distinguished by other Names in the *Nicene Council*: That of 1. *Africk Tripolitana*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Zeugitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Casariensis*, 6. and *Mauritania Sitifensis* the other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the *Diocesis* of *Spain*. The rest of this *Peninsula*, as they never conquered, so it never was much taken into consideration. But being more perfectly discovered now than in former times, (though not so perfectly, as that I can be able to promise an exact account of it) it is divided commonly into these seven parts. 1. *Egypt*, 2. *Barbary*, or the *Roman Africk*, 3. *Numidia*, 4. *Libya*, neither of which the same with those of the *Ancient Romans*; 5. *Terra Nigritarum*, 6. *Ethiopia superior*, and 7. *Ethiopia inferior*. Such of the Islands as do not properly belong unto any of these, shall make up the eighth. In the descriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Plantations*, and begin with *Egypt*, as being peopled and possessed before all the residue.

Africa, one of the four principal Parts of the Earth, was so called by the *Grecians*, because it never feels almost any cold; it is bounded on the North by the *Mediterranean Sea*; on the West and South, by the Ocean; and on the East, by the *Arabian Gulph* and the *Red Sea*; being only joined to *Asia* by a Neck of Land twenty five Miles over; so that it is, perhaps, the greatest *Peninsula* in all the World; its breadth from *Cape Verde* [*Hesperium*] to *Cape Guarda* (*Aro-*

mata) at the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, is 600 *German Miles*; from *Cape Bona* on the *Mediterranean Sea*, to the *Cape of Good Hope*, is 68 Degrees, 16 Minutes, or 1160 *German Miles*; in the *Hebrew Tongue* it is called *Phul*, *Pul*, *Phut* and *Put*, *Esa.* 66. 19. *Neb.* 3. 9. From the *Mediterranean Sea* to the *Line*, it carries the breadth of 60 Degrees in Longitude, and 35 in Latitude, but beyond the *Line*, it runs into a triangular form, and ends in a *Cape* called the *Cape of Good Hope*, because the *Portugueses* hoped for the doubling this *Cape*, to find a Passage by Sea to the *East-Indies*, as it came to pass. It was anciently known no further, than to the Mountains of the Moon, 'till the *Portugueses*, of late, discover'd the Southern Parts.

Africa is, by *Leo Africanus*, divided into these Parts, *Barbary*, *Biledulgerida*, *Sarra* and *Nigritia*, or the Land of *Negroes*; but as for *Ethiopia*, he will not allow it any part of *Africa*; and all that part of *Egypt* which lies on the East of the Nile, he ascribes to *Asia*. The Original People of *Africa* are divided into five Tribes, who have yet but one Language, called by them *Aquel-amarig*, the noble Tongue; it is different from all others, but has some Words in common with the *Arabian*, which makes some say, they are derived of the *Sabæans*: The *Negroes* have that's called *Sungay*, spoken in *Galata*, *Tombuto*, *Guinea Melli* and *Gago*. 2. *Guber* in *Guber*, *Cano*, *Casena*, *Perzegreg*, and *Guangara*. 3. *Barno*. 4. *Nubia*, which is of great Affinity with the *Chaldean*, *Arabian*, and *Egyptian* Tongues. The Sea-Towns on the *Mediterranean* speak corrupt *Arabick*: The rest of *Barbary*, *Biledulgerid* and *Sarra* speak the natural *African*. The *Africans* that inhabit the Sea-Coast, had been long subject to the *Romans*, and had learned their Tongue; and the *Arabians* coming in amongst them, they became one Nation, mixed in Language and Blood, p. 10. In the Year of Christ 637, the *Mahometans* first entred *Egypt* under *Omar*. In 650 they went to the Conquest of *Barbary*; which, in 699 became wholly subject to them. In 710 they fell upon *Numidia* and *Libya*; in 973, they passed into *Nigritia*; in 1067, they entred on the lower *Ethiopia*; by all which steps they have spread their Faith over all the North part of *Africa* to *Guinea*.

Africa, properly so called, *Africa propria*, is a part of that which afterwards was reckoned amongst the parts of the World; and in truth, but a small part of that which is now called *Barbary*. On the West it was bounded with the River *Ampfaga*, which divided it from *Mauritania Casariensis*; on the North by the *Mediterranean Sea*; on the East by the *Aræ Philenorum* or *Cyreniaca*, and on the South by *Libya Zeugitana*: This was one of the most fruitful places in all the then known World, and had *Carthage*, one of the most celebrated Cities for its capital City. A Bushel of Seed has in this Province yielded at the Harvest 150 Bushels: so that *Titus* called it, *Altricem Orbis terrarum*, the Nurse of the World; and *Salvianus*, *Animam Reipublice Romanæ*, the Soul of the Roman Empire: The People of it were a Crafty, Perfidious, Wrangling, Drunken, Lustful, and Impudent sort of Men, as *Salvianus* saith, *Lib. 7. de Providentia*.

OF EGYPT.

EGYPT is bounded on the East with *Idumæa*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the West with *Barbaria*, *Nūmidia*, and part of *Libya*; on the North with the *Mediterranean Sea*; on the South with *Æthiopia superior*, or the *Habassine Empire*.

This Country in the Holy Scripture is called *Misraim*, from *Misraim* the Son of *Chus*, and Grandson of *Cham*, by whom first planted after the Flood; the Footsteps of which Name do remain among the *Arabians*, who still call it *Misre*. Named in the same regard in the Book of *Psalms*, the Land of *Ham*; a Name retained in some of the sacred Offices of the Old *Egyptians*, where (as *Plutarch* witnesseth) it was called *Chemia*, for *Chamia* no doubt; as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the first Stock of their Nation. In prophane Authors it hath had the several Names of 1. *Aeria*, from the serenity of the Air, which is never clouded; 2. *Potamia*, from the propinquity of the Sea, washing two sides of it; 3. *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges*, a supposed King thereof; 4. *Melampodus*, from the black colour of the Soil; 5. *Osiria*, from their God *Osiris*, here in high esteem; 6. and finally, it was called *Ægyptus*, which in the end prevailed over all the rest, either from *Ægyptus* the Brother of *Danaus*, once King hereof (in the Stories of his Nation better known by the name of *Rameses*;) or from *Ægyptus*, the old Name of the River *Nilus*, by whose annual overflowings made both rich and famous; and of the Soil and Rubbish which that River brought with it from the higher Countries, it was, by some, supposed to have been raised into firm Land, and gained out of the Sea. Called therefore in some Writers by the Name of *Nili donum*, or the Gift of *Nilus*. Yet some there be who would have it called *Ægyptus* for *Aiguphtus*, and that derived from *Ai coptus*, which signifieth the Land or Country of *Coptus*, that being supposed to have been anciently the chief City of it. And some again will have the Name derived from *Chioth*, by which the *Egyptians* call themselves to this very day.

Egypt is called by the Inhabitants, *Chibili*; by the *Arabians*, *Bardamasser*; by the *Turks*, *Misir*, which is very near the Hebrew *Misraim*; by the *Italians* and *Spaniards*, *L'Egitto*; by the *Germans*, *Egypten*; being the first, the most fruitful, most ancient, and most celebrated Kingdom of all *Africa*: On the North it has the *Mediterranean Sea*; on the East, *Arabia Deserta*, and the Red Sea; on the South, *Æthiopia*; and on the West, *Cyrene*, and the Deserts of *Libya*: *Nubiensis Geographia*, p. 96. bounds *Egypt* thus; on the South it has *Nubia*; on the North the Sea of *Damascus*; on the East the Red Sea, and on the West, *Arabat*, by others, called *Alfoat*, p. 97. He saith, It extends in length, from *Ajuan* to the *Mediterranean*, 25 Days Journey, which is about 655 English Miles, and is in Breadth, eight Days Journey, or 200 Miles. *Leo Africanus*, pag. 296 bounds *Egypt* to the West, upon the Deserts of *Barca*, *Nūmidia*, and *Libya*; to the East on the Deserts between it and the Red Sea; to the North on the *Mediterranean*; and to the South on the People of *Bugiba*, and the Nile; from North to South it is 400 Miles, from East to West 50; being narrow towards the South, but broader at the North end upon the

Mediterranean Sea. The River *Nile* running the whole length of it, and towards the *Mediterranean Sea*, dividing and spreading it self into many Branches, is the only cause of its Fertility, by overflowing it every Year in the Month of June. Monsieur *Thevenot*, who travelled *Egypt*, saith, *In my Voyage from Rosetto to Cairo, I observed that all the Lands upon the side of the Nile are excellently good; and really Egypt may be styled an earthly Paradise, but inhabited by Devils; the Inhabitants being so wicked and so poor, that they will kill a Man for a Penny.* *Travel*, Part 1. p. 127. *Gabriel Sioneta de Urbibus Orientalium*, p. 26. saith, *Egypt* is fruitful in *Cassia*, Sugar-Canes, Wheat, and an other sorts of Grain, so that in many places it reaps two most plentiful Crops in a Year: Hay they mow four times a year; and for Pease, Beans, and other Garden-Fruits, they grow all the Year round. They have seldom any Rain, yet they do not want it; all sorts of Fruits are plentiful but Grapes: so that for want of Wine, they, of old, generally drank Beer, but they had excellent Grapes for their eating. *Cluverius* saith, From the City of *Pelusium* to the Cataracts of the *Nile*, it is 150 Miles; from the same place to *Conza* in the West, is 100 Miles broad; but then in some places towards the South, (as Mr. *Sandys* saith) above *Grand Cairo*, it is for a long tract confined between Mountains; in many places scarce Four, and in few above Eight Miles broad; but then he extends it from North to South, 560 Miles, and in breadth 140 English Miles at the North End. This Country maintained its Liberty under Princes of its own, till God gave them into the Hands of *Nebuchadonozor*, in the Year of the World 3365, 5 Years after the Ruin of *Jerusalem* by the same Prince. Yet that Empire lying far off, and shaken by intestine Divisions, they recovered their Liberty again: *Cambyses* reduced them a second time, *Anno Mundi*, 3425: *Nirxes* conquered them in the Year 3473, and yet *Artaxerxes Ochus* was necessitated to reduce them again; for they had set up Princes of their own, and had beat his Generals, who were sent to reduce them: so he went in Person, and having driven their King into *Æthiopia*, he levelled their strongest Fortifications, and made them so weak and helpless, that they have been in servitude ever since. This Prince began his Reign in 3587, and reigned 23 Years, and Conquer'd them in 3602. Next, *Alexander the Great* became their Master in the Year 3620, to whom they most willingly submitted, out of a Detestation of the *Persian Government*. *Ptolemy*, the Son of *Lagus* began his Reign over them in 3626; and *Cleopatra*, the last of his Posterity, destroyed herself to avoid Captivity, Eighteen Years before the Birth of our Saviour; from thenceforward they were under the *Romans*. In the Year of *Christ*, 610, *Chosroes*, King of *Persia*, subdued *Egypt*, and kept it till the Year 623, when he was overthrown, and had 5000 of his Army taken Prisoners in *Armenia* by *Heraclius* the Emperor: This wretched Nation, weary of the *Greek Government*, called in, at length, *Haymaria* the 3d. of the *Saracen Califfs*, and by his help call out the *Greek Garrisons* about the Year 637. *Leo Africanus*, p. 298, saith, It was done under the Reign of *Homar*, the Second *Califf*, who cunningly pretended to suffer all

Men to enjoy their own Religion, and desir'd nothing of them but Tribute; but this lasted no longer than 'till he had established himself, and there are now no true Egyptians, but a few Christians still remaining, the rest of that Nation having embraced the Mahometan Faith, and mingled with the Arabians and Moors; thus was Liberty of Conscience made the Pretext of extirpating the Christian Religion in Egypt. In the Year 933 there was a distinct Califf of Cairo set up against the Califf of Bagdat. The Saracens began the Conquest of Egypt in 637, and in 640, they took the City of Alexandria, and pushed their Conquest as far as the Atlantick Ocean, on this side of the Mediterranean Sea. In 1163, another Race of these succeeded, called the Turkish Kings, or Califfs, which ended in 1245. Leo Africanus placeth this Revolution about 1276, under Saladine the 11th. whilst the Christians were in possession of the Holy Land, when the Mamalucks or Slaves of that Race deposed their Masters, and erected an elective Kingdom out of their own Body; the Prince of that Nation being for many Ages chosen out of a number of Men, whose Beginning was always in slavery, and Profession of War; they were in some sort the Janizaries of that Age. Leo Africanus saith, Saladine was the Inventor of this sort of Militia, consisting of Circassian Slaves, and that they continued 150 Years under his Posterity, and then it failing, they elected one of their own Number to succeed him. Tonombeius 11, was the last of all these Princes, who, in 1517, was forced to submit to the prevailing Valour and Fortune of Selymus, one of the Ottoman Princes; under which Family, that Nation still groans. And now let any Man but compare the Ancient and the present Maps of Egypt, and his Eyes will shew him in one Minute, the difference between the Ancient and the later Governments. Eusebius cited by Hornius de Antiqua Geographia, p. 6. saith, There were more Cities in Egypt than in all the World besides. Pliny, That there were 20000 in the Reign of Amasius; and Diodorus Siculus, That in his time, there were in Egypt, then extant, 3000 Cities; but Ortelius could no where find above 300 mentioned by Name in any Ancient Author, which are all said to be represented in Janfonius his Map of the Old Egypt. The fruitful and populous Land of Egypt, that was of old, over-spread with Cities and Towns, being now almost desolate, and all its ancient Glory, Magnificence, Riches and People, being buried in Rubbish and Ruines: Names of Places that have no Inhabitants, or the Pictures of Beasts and Antiquities, are almost all that is to be found here; Grand Cairo, Alexandria, Rosetta, and Damietta, are the only considerable places which are left; and Christianity is almost extirpated here, as well as it is in Barbary. It is observed of the incomparable Lands of this Country, That within less than 80 Years, more than the Tenth part of it is lost; no People being to be found that will maintain the same against the Nile and the Sands, Bernier, p. 71. Leo Africanus, p. 296. This Province is most fruitful in Corn and Grass, and a Level Plain, adorned with lovely green Meadows; the People are of a swarthy brown Colour, but the Citizens are White, and they are of an honest, chearful, and liberal Disposition, since the Mahometans were Lords of it. It is divided into 3 Parts or Provinces; that part which lies between Cairo and Rosetta on the West of the Nile, is called the Shoar of Errif; from Cairo to Bugiba, Southward, it is called Sabid, the firm Land; all that lies on the Eastern side of the Nile, from Cairo to Damietta and Tenesse, is called Bechiria or Maremma: Sabid excelleth in Corn, Cattel, Fowl and Flax: Maremma aboundeth with Cotton and Sugar, but then the Inhabitants of Errif and Maremma are far more civil than the People of Sabid, because they have greater intercourse with the Merchants of Europe, Barbary, and Asia; but those of Sabid trade with none but the

Aethiopians. The Air of this Country, especially in Summer, is exceeding hot and unwholesome, and it raineth very seldom, and when it doth, it occasioneth many Diseases. At Cairo there die sometimes 12000 in a Day of the Plague, and the French Pox is very frequent; about the beginning of April is their Harvest, and in the middle of June the Inundation of the Nile beginneth, *ibid.* 299. In ancient times, the Inhabitants of Egypt were innumerable for Multitude; Diodorus estimated them at 750 Millions, besides the Inhabitants of Alexandria, which were 300000 Free-men. It was an Ingenious, Sagacious, and Learned Nation too, capable of learning any thing, but at the same time it was a Furious, Light, Inconstant, Faithless, Insolent, and a most wicked People; boasting without Modesty, Delicate and Luxurious; Lazy, Effeminate, Lustful, Avaritious, and ever propping for their Pleasures, and Money to maintain them; apt to Tumult and Rebel upon the least Provocation, but soon vanquished; for they were fitter to begin a War than to end it with advantage. Lastly, they were Superstitious above all other Nations; nay, some of the things they worshipped are out of Modesty, not to be named; there was scarce a City in Egypt that did not worship some Beast or other, and it was made too a Subject of mortal Feuds amongst them, because they eat those very things their Neighbours adored, as it was impossible to avoid it.

It containeth in length from the Mediterranean to the City of Asna, or Syene, bordering on Aethiopia, 562 Italian Miles in breadth (exclusively of Cyrene and Libya) from Rosetta unto Damietta, or from the most Westerly branch of Nilus to the farthest East, 160 of the same Miles; to which the adding of those two Provinces makes a great accession: Situate under the second and fifth Climates, so that the longest day in Summer is but 13 Hours and a half.

By reason of this Southerly situation of it, the Air is here very hot and offensive, so that to avoid the insupportable Heats thereof, and to have the benefit of some fresh Wind, the Inhabitants are accustomed to build high Towers in all their Towns, on which they use to solace and refresh themselves. The Soil made fruitful by the overflowings of Nilus (whereof more anon) is so exceeding plentiful of all sorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum Populi Romani*, the Granary or Store-house of the People of Rome; which City it did annually furnish with four Months Provision, insomuch that it was said by Pliny, That the greatness of the Roman Empire could not long continue, without the Corn and Wealth of Egypt; the Plenty or Famine of that City, depending wholly on this Country. It abounds also with rich Pastures, in which they feed great store of Camels, Horses, Asses, Oxen, Sheep and Goats, greater of growth than usually in most places else; and by reason of the moistness of the Country, they have great store of Fowls. Of Poultry they have also good numbers about their Houses, hatched in a different manner from all other Countries, not by the sitting of the Hen, but by the heat of Furnaces or Ovens; in which their Eggs are orderly laid in Dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is also liberally furnished with great plenty of Metals, some precious Stones, good Wines, and the choicest Fruits, as Lemmons, Oranges, Pomegranates, Citrons, Figgs, Cherries, and such as these, excellent both for Taste, and Colour. Of Palm-trees also great abundance; of which though we have spoke before, yet we shall here more fully declare the nature and strange properties of them. They grow in couples, Male and Female, both thrust forth Cods full of Seed, but the Female is onely fruitful, and that not, except growing by the Male, and having his Seeds mixt with hers. The pith of these Trees is an excellent Sallad, better than an Artichoke, which in taste it very much

much resembleth. Of the Branches they make Bedsteads, Lattices, &c. of the Leaves, Baskets, Mats, Pans, &c. of the outward husks of the Cod, Cordage; of the inner, Brushes. The Fruit it bears best known by the name of Dates, are in taste like Figs: And finally, it is said to yield whatsoever is necessary to the Life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never so ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the Burden, but still to resist the heaviness of it, and to endeavour to lift and raise it self the more upwards. For this Cause planted in Church-Yards in the Eastern Countries, as an Emblem of the Resurrection: In stead whereof we use the Ewe-Tree in these cold Regions. For the same reason given to Conquerours as a Token of Victory; it being the Emblem or Hieroglyphick of a Soldier's Life. Hence, figuratively used for Precedency, as *Huic equidem confilio Palmam do*, in Terence; sometimes for the Victory it self, as *Non auferent tamen hanc Palmam*, in Pliny; & *Plurimarum Palmarum homo*, for a Man that had won many Prizes in the Fence-School, as in Tully *pro Roscio*: More naturally for the sign of Victory, as in that of Horace;

——— *Palmaque nobilis
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.*

That is to say;

The Palm, of Victory a sign,
Equals Men to the Powers Divine.

The People, though the Country lie in the same Clime with *Barbary*, are not Black, but Tawny, or Olive-Coloured, affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to weep and mourn over the Bodies of their dead, daubed over with Dung; to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having embalmed them, to lay them in some inward Room of their Houses: The Men to keep themselves at home, for the Household-Business, the Women to follow Merchandize and Affairs abroad; the Men to carry Burdens upon their Heads, and the Women theirs upon their Shoulders; *Antipodes* in these last to most other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenious People, the first Inventors of Geometry, Arithmetick, Physick, as also of Astronomy, Necromancy, and Sorcery. They first taught the use of Letters to the neighbouring *Phœnicians*, by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accustomed at the first, to express their Conceits in the shape of Birds, Beasts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphicks*; of which, two or three Examples out of *Orus* will not be impertinent. For *Eternity*, they painted the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end: For a *Year*, they painted a Snake, with his Tail in his Mouth, to shew how one Year succeeding another, kept the World still in an endless Circle. For a *Month*, they painted a Palm-tree, because at every new Moon it sendeth forth a new Branch. For *God*, they painted a *Falcon*; as well for that he soareth so high, as that he governeth the lesser Birds. For *Integrity* of life, they painted Fire and Water, both because these Elements are in themselves most pure, and because all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was abominable to the Gods, they painted a Fish, because in their Sacrifices the Priests never used them; and the like. From this manner of expressing one's self, the Invention of Letters is thought to have had its Original (though learnt by them no question of the Children of *Israel* when they lived among them); the History whereof take briefly, and word for

word, out of *Tacitus*. *Primi per formas animalium Egyptii, &c.* "The Egyptians first of all expressed the Conceptions of the Mind, by the shapes of Beasts, and the most ancient Monuments of Man's memory, are seen graven in stones; and they say, that they are the first Inventors of Letters. Then the *Phœnicians*, because they were strong at Sea, brought them into *Greece*, and so they had the glory of that which they received from others: For there goeth a report, That *Cadmus* sailing thither in a *Phœnician* Ship, was the Inventor of that Art among the *Greeks*, when they were yet unexpert and rude. Some report, That *Cecrops* the *Athenian*, or *Livius* the *Theban*, and *Palamedes* the *Grecian*, did find out sixteen Characters at the time of the *Trojan* War; and that afterwards *Simonides* added the rest. But in *Italy* the *Etrurians* learned them of *Demaratus* the *Corinthian*; and the *Aborigines* of *Evander* the *Arcadian*. So far *Tacitus*. That the *Phœnicians* were the first Inventors of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory hereof to the *Egyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were herein skilled before either: Yet that the *Phœnicians* were herein School-Masters to the *Greeks*, I think I may with safety maintain, having *Lucan* in consent with *Tacitus*.

*Phœnices primi (fama si creditur) ausi
Mansuram rudibus vocem signare figuris.*

*Phœnicians (first if fame may credit have)
Dar'd in rude Characters our words ingrave.*

Of this Mind also is *Isidore* of *Sevil*, in the first Book of *Originations*, who also addeth, That for that cause the Fronts of Books, and the Titles of Chapters were written in *Red Letters*, as it is by some still in use. *Hinc est quod & Phœnicio colore librorum capita describantur, quia ab ipsis literæ initium habuere, cap. 3.* As for the less vulgar Letters, which the *Latines* call *Cyphræ*, and whereof every exercised *States-man* hath peculiar to himself, they were first invented by *Julius Cæsar*, when he first began to think of the *Roman* Monarchy, and were used by him in his Letters to his more private and tried Friends, that if by Misfortune they should be intercepted, the contents of them should not be understood; *ὅπως ἀσφαλὲς τῆς πολλῆς καὶ γενομένης: Ne obvia literarum lectio cuiusvis esset. Augustus*, one of the greatest *Politicians* of the World, had another kind of obscure Writing; for in his Letters of more secrecy and importance, he always used *πρὸς ἄλλους ἀπὸ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ*, to put the Letter immediately following in the order of the Alphabet, for that which in ordinary Writing he should have used. As for *Brachygraphy*, or the Art of Writing by short Characters, so useful for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is spoken: I find in *Dion*, that *Mæcenas*, that great Favourite of *Augustus Cæsar*; and favourer of Learning, did first invent them; *ad celeritatem scribendi*, for the speedier dispatch of Writings; *καὶ πρὸς ἄλλους ἀπὸ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ* (they are the very words of my Author) *πρὸς τὴν ἑξέσιν*. *Isidore*, in the second Chapter of this Book above mentioned, ascribeth it to *Aquila*, the *Libertus* or *Free-man* of his *Mæcenas*; and to *Tertius Persannius*, and *Philargius*, who added to this Invention. Yet had all they their chief Light in it from *Tullius Tiro*, a *Free-man* of *Cicero's*; who had undertaken and compassed it in the *Propositions*, but went no further. At the last it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into Order and Method; the whole Volume of his contractions consisting of 3000 Words. *Deinde Seneca contracto omnium diglossaque & aucto numero, opus effecit in quinque millia.*

So

So eminent in Arts and Learning were the old Egyptians, that from them *Pythagoras* and *Democritus* learnt their Philosophy; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato*, their Forms of Government; *Orpheus* and *Homer*, their Poetical Fictions of the Gods. Particularly here flourished 1. *Aristarchus*, the Famous and Learned Grammarian; 2. *Herodian*, a diligent Student and Searcher into curious Arts; 3. *Ammonius*, the Master of *Plotinus*; 4. *Didymus*, surnamed *Calceuteres*, for his indefatigable Industry in several Sciences; 5. *Manetho*, an old Historian, of whom we have nothing but some fragments; 6. *Appianus*, an Historian of a later date, whose Works are extant in part. 7. *Didymus* the Grammarian; 8. *Cl. Ptolemaeus* the Geographer, 9. *Achilles Tatius* the Poet; 10. And before all, the profound Philosopher *Mercurius*, surnamed *Trismegistus*. And after their Conversion to the Faith of Christ, 1. *Pantenus*, the first Reader of Divinity in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2. *Origen*, and 3. *Clemens Alexandrinus*, both skilled in the Universality of Learning; 4. *Dionysius*, 5. *Athanasius*, and 6. *Cyril*; all three Bishops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their several times.

This notwithstanding, their Religion before the embracing of *Christianity*, was the worst of *Gentilism*; these People not onely worshipping the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, Creatures of greatest Use and Glory; nor only sacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollo*, and the rest of the Gods, (many of whom were Authors in their several times of some publick Benefit to Mankind) as did other *Gentiles*; but attributing Divine Honours to Crocodiles, Snakes, Serpents, Garlick, Leeks, and Onions. For which, as worthily condemned by the Christian Fathers, so most deservedly exposed unto publick scorn, by the Pens of the Poets.

*Porrum & caepe nefas violare, & ledere morsu;
Felices populi, quibus hæc nascuntur in Hortis
Numina! — Quis nescit qualia demens
Ægyptus portenta colat, &c.*

Which may be rendred to this purpose;

*To bite an Onion or a Leek, is more
Than deadly sin, the Numen they adore.
Grows i' their Gardens. And who do not know,
What frowns Shapes for Gods in Egypt go?*

But the God most esteemed by them, and by all sorts of the Egyptians the most adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black Ox, with a white Star in his forehead, the Effigies of an Eagle on his back, and two hairs only in his Tail. But it seems his Godship was not so much respected by Strangers. For *Cambyfes* when he Conquered *Egypt*, ran him with his Sword through the Thigh, and caused all his Priests to be scourged. And *Augustus* being here, would not vouchsafe to see him, saying, *Θεὸν ἀλλ' ἢ ξύβητος προσκύνειν ἐβόλα*; that the God, and not the Oxen of *Egypt* were the Object of his Devotions. A Speech most truly worthy so brave an Emperour.

But it is time we should proceed to a survey of these Egyptians, as they stand at the present, much differing from the ingenuity and abilities of their Predecessours; nothing but ignorance and Barbarism to be found amongst them. For such as have observed the nature of the Modern Egyptians, affirm them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Ancestors; prone to Innovations, devoted to Luxury, cowardly, cruel; addicted naturally to cavil, and to detract from whatsoever is good and eminent. In their dealing with other Men, more observant than faith-

ful; of a Wit much inclining to craftiness, and very eager on their Profit. Of a mean stature, tawny of Complexion, and spare c Body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities, apply themselves to Merchandize, grow rich by trading, reasonably well habited, and not much differing from the Turks in Dress and Fashion. Those in the Country, who betake themselves to Husbandry, affirmed to be a savage and nasty People, crusted over with Dirt, and stinking of smoak; fit company for none but those of their own condition. Nothing now left amongst them of the Arts of their Ancestors, but an affection which they have unto Divinations; to Fortune-telling great Pretenders; by which and some cheating-Tricks, in which very well practised, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and so get their livelyhood; occasioning the Vagabonds and Stragglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the same false Arts, to assume their Names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an Hochpotch or Medly of many Nations, Moors, Arabians, Turks, the natural Egyptians making up the least part of the reckoning.

The Women of the same Complexion with the Men, but well formed and Featured, did not they too much affect a seeming corpulency; which if they cannot get in Flesh, they will have in Cloaths. Very fruitful in Child-bearing, and quick of dispatch when they are in labour: Some of them having three or four Children at a Birth; those that are born in the eighth Month living to good Age, and not in danger of Death, as in other Countries. Such of them as dwell in Cities, cover their Faces with black *Cypress* bespotted with red; their Arms and Ankles garnished with Bracelets and Hoops of Gold, Silver, or some other Metal. Those in the Country for a Vail, use some dirty Clout, having Holes only for their Eyes, which little is too much to see and abstain from loathing. Both in the City and the Country, contrary to the custom in all places else, the Women use to make water standing, and the Men crouching on their knees.

The Christian Faith was here first planted by *St. Mark*, whom all Antiquity maketh the first Bishop of *Alexandria*. His Successours, 'till the time of *Heraclius* and *Dionysius*, chosen continually out of the Presbytery or Cathedral-Clergy; afterwards out of the Clergy at large. Their Jurisdiction settled by a Canon of the Council at *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole Diocess of *Egypt* (taking the word *Diocess* in the Civil notion) containing *Libya*, *Pentapolis*, and *Egypt* specially so called; to which, though *Epiphanius* adds *Thebais*, *Marcotica* and *Ammoniaca*, yet he adds nothing in effect; *Thebais* and *Marcotica* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammoniaca* was of *Libya*. Afterwards the *Æthiopian* or *Abassine* Churches became subject to this Patriarch also, and do acknowledge to this day some relation to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens* and the subjugation of this Country, Christianity fell here into great decay; languishing so sensibly since those times, especially since the Conquest of it by the Turks: That whereas *Bochartus* in his time reckoned three hundred Thousand Christians; in the last estimate which was made of them, they were found to be but fifty Thousand. This small remainder of them, commonly called *Copti*, either from the Greek word *κοπτο* *Scindo*, because they retained the use of Circumcision with their Christianity; or from *Coptus* a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reside; or finally by Abbreivation from *Ægypti*, corrupted from *Ægyptii*, their own National Name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithstanding in some particulars, in some from all Christian Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The Points most proper

proper to them, 1. Using Circumcision with their Baptism, but rather as a National than Religious custom; though in that sense also laid aside, as is said by some, by the persuasion of some Legates from the Pope of Rome, in a Synod held in *Cairo*, Anno 1583. 2dly. Confering all sacred Orders under the Priesthood, on Infants immediately after Baptism; their Parents, till they come to sixteen years of age performing what they promised in their behalf, viz. Charity, fasting on Wednesday and Friday, and four Lents of the year. 3dly. Reputing Baptism not to be of any efficacy, except ministered by the Priest in the open Church, in what extremity soever. 4thly. And yet not baptizing any Children till the fortieth day, though they die in the interim. 5thly. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Eucharist*, as soon as Christened. 6thly. Contracting Marriages even in the second degree of Consanguinity, without dispensation. 7thly. Observing not the Lord's day, nor any of the *Festivals*, except only in Cities. 8thly. And in their Liturgies, reading the Gospel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of Rome. 1. Administering the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper under both kinds. 2dly. Administering in leavened Bread. 3dly. Admitting neither *Extreme Unction*, nor the use of the *Eucharist*, to those that are sick. 4thly. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead. 5thly. Nor using Elevation in the Act of Administering. And 6thly. Reckoning the Roman Church for Heretical, and esteeming no better of the *Latine*, than they do of the *Jews*. In these Opinions they continue hitherto against all Opponents and Perswasions. For though *Baronius* in the end of the sixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath registred an Ambassage from *Marcus* the then Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8, wherein he is said to have submitted himself and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of Rome; yet upon further search made, it was found but a Cheat, devised to hold up the Reputation of a sinking cause. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* still adhereth to his own Authority; though many of late, by the practice and sollicitation of some busie *Friers*, have been drawn to be of the Religion of the Church of Rome, and to use her Liturgies.

Among the *Rarities* of this Country, some were the Works of Nature, and some of industry and magnificence. Of this last kind I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramids*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their several kinds, the envy of the Ages past, and the astonishment to the present. Look we first on the *Pyramids*, many in number, three more celebrated, and one the principal of all; situate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Western Banks of *Nilus*. This last, the chief of the World's Seven Wonders, square at the bottom, is supposed to take up eight Acres of ground. Every Square 300 single Paces in length, ascended by 255 Steps, each Step above three Foot high, and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top consisting but of three Stones only, yet large enough for Sixty Men to stand upon. No Stone so little in the whole as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the *Arabian* Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted, is an equal wonder. Built for the Sepulchre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were the rest for others of those mighty Princes) who employed in it day by day twenty years together, no fewer than 366000 Men continually working on it. The Charges which they put him to, in no other Food than Garlick, Radishes, and Onions, being computed at a thousand and eight hundred Talents. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is said to be

the Work of a Daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Herodotus* writeth) both to finish her Father's Undertaking, and raise her own unto the height, by the prostitution of her Body, requiring but one Stone towards the Work from each one of her Customers; but the Tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater Truth, though affirmed by *Josephus*, and supposed by many good Divines, That the Drudgery put upon the *Israelites* did concern these *Pyramids*: The Materials of these Works being Stone; their Employment Brick. But past all doubt, advanced by those considerate Princes upon good advice, and not for ostentation only of their Power and Glories. For by this means they did not only eternize their memory to succeeding Ages, but for the present kept the Subject from sloth and idleness; who being a People prone unto Innovations, were otherwise like enough to have fed that sin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently corrected.

As for the *Labyrinth*, it was built by *Psammiticus* on the Banks of the River *Nilus*, situate on the South of the *Pyramids*, and North of *Arsinoe*, or the City of *Crocodiles*. It contained within the compass of one continued Wall a thousand Houses and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble; and had only one entrance, but innumerable turnings and returnings, sometimes one over another; and all in a manner invious to such as were not acquainted with them: The Building more under ground than above: The Marble-stones laid with such Art, that neither Wood nor Cement was employed in any part of the Fabrick; the Chambers so disposed, that the Doors upon their opening did give a Report no less terrible than a crack of Thunder. The main entrance all of white Marble, adorned with stately Columns, and most curious Imagery. The end at length being attained, a pair of Stairs of 90 Steps conducted into a gallant *Portico*, supported with Pillars of *Theban* stone, which was the entrance into a fair and spacious Hall (the place of their general Conventions) all of polished Marble, set out with the Statues of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Dædalus*, in the *Cretan* Labyrinth; though that fell as short of the glories of this, as *Minos* was inferiour unto *Psammiticus* in Power and Riches.

Next unto these, I place the Isle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Island opposite unto *Alexandria*, once a Mile distant from the Land, but joined to the Continent by *Cleopatra*, on this occasion. The *Rhodians*, then Lords of the Sea, used to exact some Tribute or Acknowledgment out of every Island within those Seas, and consequently out of this. Their Ambassadors sending unto *Cleopatra* to demand this Tribute, she detained with her seven days, under colour of celebrating some solemn Festivals; and in the mean time, by making huge Dams and Banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and speed; united the Island to the shore; which finished, she sent the *Rhodians* away empty-handed, with this witty Jeer, telling them, That they were to take Toll of the Islands, and not of the Continent. A Work of great Rarity and Magnificence, both for the bigness of it, taking up seven furlongs of Ground, and for that cause called *Heptastadium*; and that incredible speed where-with it was finished. As for the *Watch-Tower*, called in *Greek* and *Latin*, *Pharos*, by the Name of the Island; it was built by *Ptolemy Phadelphus*, for the benefit of Sailors, (the Seas upon that Coast being very unsafe, and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deservedly esteemed another of the World's seven Wonders; the other five being, 1. the *Mausoleum*, 2. the Temple of *Ephesus*, 3. the Walls of *Babylon*, 4. the *Colossus* of *Rhodes*, and 5. the Statue of *Jupiter Olympius*. This *Watch-Tower*, or *Pharos* was of wonderful height, ascend-

ed by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein Lights burned nightly, as a direction to such as sailed by Sea. The Materials were white Marble; the Chief Architect *Softratus* of *Guidos*, who ingraven on the Work this Inscription: *Softratus of Guidos, the Son of Dexiphanes, to the Gods Protectors, for the safeguard of Sailors.* This Inscription he covered with *Plaster*, and thereon ingraven the Name and Title of the King the Founder: To the end that the King's Name being soon washed away, his own which was written in Marble, might be eternized to Posterity as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cæsar* pursuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*, and having discontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Soldiers, had his Navy which here lay at Anchor, assaulted by *Achilles*, one of young *Ptolemy's* Servants, *Cæsar* himself being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the Skirmish, he hastened to the *Pharos*, meaning to succour his Navy in Person: But the *Egyptians* making towards him on all sides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and swim for his Life. And though (to avoid their Darts) he sometimes ducked, yet held he still his left hand above the Water, and in it divers Books, which he carried safe unto his Ships, and animating his Men, got the Victory. It is said that *Egypt* hath only two Doors, the one by Land, which is the strong Tower of *Peleusium* or *Damiata*; the other by Water, which is this *Pharos*: *Tota Egyptus maritimo accessu, Pharos; pedestri vero, Pelusio, velut claustris munita existimatur*, saith *Opius*.

Amongst the Rarities of Nature, we may reckon those strange Beasts and Fishes, proper almost unto this Country, *i. e.* the *Crocodile*, the *Ichneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horse) the *Ibis*, the *Asp*, and many several sorts of Serpents. To speak of which particularly were a Work more proper to a Natural History, than a Geographical. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* than all the rest, cannot be parted with in silence: A Creature of a strange nature, hatched of an Egg no bigger than that of a *Turkey*, and increasing to the length of thirty Foot; his Tail as long as all the rest of his Body, with which he is accustomed to inchain his Prey, and draw it into the River; his Feet armed with Claws, and his Back with impenetrable Scales; his Mouth so wide (of which he only moveth the upper Jaw) that he is able to swallow a Heifer; equally used to both Elements, but better sighted in the Water than on the Land; Cowardly, though a Creature of prey, and such as usually flies from those that dare set upon him; and easily vanquished by the *Dolphin*, which swimming under the Water woundeth him in the belly, where assaultable only. Whether so easily destroyed by the *Ichneumon* (a kind of Water-Rat) skipping into his Mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers say, hath of late been questioned.

Of less dispute, but not less Rarity in Nature, are these that follow: 1. That in all this Country it never raineth; or if a Cloud do sometimes happen to dissolve upon them, it bringeth on their Bodies innumerable Sores, and strange Diseases. 2. The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable things which are said to follow on the same. Of which it is thus said by *Lucan*;

*Terra suis contenta Jovis, non indiga Mercis,
Aut Jovis, in solo tanta est fiducia Nilo:*

*The Earth, content with its own Wealth, doth crave
No Foreign Mart, nor Jove himself; they have
Their hope alone in Nilus fruitful Wave.*

The *Nile*, is a vast River in *Africa*, which ariseth from two Fountains in the higher *Ethiopia* in the *Abissins* Empire, in a Country called *Sacabala*, amongst high Mountains, and being enlarged by the *Genna Kelti* and *Exanti*, it passeth through the South part of the Lake of *Dambea*, to the greatest Cataracts; before it enters *Nubia*, it takes in the River *Meleg*, and afterwards the *Tacafe*, a great River at *Jalac*; and entering and traversing the Upper *Egypt*, Four Miles beneath Grand *Cairo*, where it is one Mile over; it divides first into two, and after into more Branches, which anciently made the number of seven, but are now reduced to four; the rest being stopped up by the Sands of the *Mediterranean* Sea, and those brought down by the River; as *William*, Archbishop of *Tyre*, upon exact search, avers in the 19th Book *de Bell. Sac.* c. 33, who was in *Egypt* in the Year 1167. The *Mahometan* Princes, who have been many Ages Lords of *Egypt*, taking no care to keep them open. The Eastern Branch falls into the *Mediterranean* Sea by *Damiata*, and was of old called *Os Pelusiacum*; the Western was then named *Canopus*, and falls into the same Sea below *Rosetto*; these two make the *Delta* an Island, which is the richest portion of Land in *Egypt*, and there are two other Outlets between these, but poor in Waters saith Mr. *Sandys*. This *Nile*, from the 15th day of *June*, swelleth above its Banks, for the space of 40 days, and in as many more, gathereth its Waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen Cubits, then the Earth is deficient in her abundance of increase, for want of moisture: and if the Waters surmount the superficies of the Earth, more than seventeen Cubits, then like a drunken Man, it cannot produce its natural operation; as having his Stomack (as it were) overlaid and furcharged with too much Liquor; but if the Mean be granted, there is no Country which can brag of the like Fertility; the Corn being all housed before the 20th of *May*. During this Inundation, they keep their Beasts and Cattel on the tops of such little Hills, which either the Providence of Nature, or the Industry of Man hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decrease of the Waters; and on these Hills also stand most of their Towns and Villages, appearing in the time of the Flood like so many Islands; and holding a Commerce and continual Traffick by the intercourse of Boats and Shallops, by which they transport their Marketable Commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time, that the River doth not thus overflow the Country, it is not only the fore-runner to a following Dearth, but prognosticath some ensuing mischief to the Prince and State: Confirmed by the testimony of good and creditable Authors, who have told us, That in the 10th and 11th years of *Cleopatra*, the River increased not at all; that it was noted as a Fore-teller of the Fall of those two great, but unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* and her Sweet-heart *Antonius*. A second Commodity which ariseth from the overflowings of *Nilus*, is health, which it bringeth with it in most parts of the Country; the Plague which oftentimes miserably rageth upon the first day of the Flood, abating instantly; insomuch that whereas 500 may die of that Disease in the City of *Cairo* but the day before, there dyeth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River is, That keeping its Waters united in a Body together, after it falleth into the Sea, it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean*, further than any part of it can be seen from the shore. Add unto these, the many living Creatures which the slime thereof engendereth, on the withdrawing of the River to its natural Channel; whereof *Ovid* thus;

Sic

*Sic ubi deseruit madidos Septemfluvius agros
Nilus, & antiquo sua flumina reddidit alvo,
Plurima Cultores verſis Animalia glebis
Inveniunt.*

Which I *English* thus :

*So when the Seven-mouth'd Nile the fields forſakes,
And to his ancient Channel him betakes ;
The Plough-men many living Creatures find,
By turning up the Mud that's left behind.*

Amongst which Creatures so engendred, are said to be such innumerable heaps of *Frogs*, that if Nature, or *Divine Providence* rather, did not furnish this Country with a proportionable number of *Storks*, by whom they are greedily devoured, the *Plague of Frogs* would come a second time upon them to their utter destruction.

On the Banks of this River also grew those sedge Weeds called *Papyri*, of which, Paper was made in former times, which I reckon amongst the Rarities of *Egypt* also, but a Rarity of Art and Nature mixed. They divided it into thin flakes, (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moistening them with the glutinous Waters of the River, they pressed them together, and after dried them in the Sun. By means of which Invention, Books being easier to be transcribed and preserved than formerly, *Ptolemy Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*; and understanding how *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by the benefit of this *Egyptian* Paper, strove to exceed him in that kind of Magnificence, prohibited the carrying of it out of *Egypt*. Hereupon *Attalus* invented the use of *Parchments*, made of the Skins of Calves and Sheep; from the Materials called *Membræ*, and *Pergamena* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cause, that in a short time the *Egyptian* Paper was worn out of use; in place whereof succeeded our Paper made of Rags; the Authors of which excellent Invention, our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the use of these Papers and Parchments were first made known, I observe three ways of Writing amongst the Ancients, (I hope I shall be pardoned this short digression.) 1. On the inward side of the Bark of a Tree, which is in *Latine* called *Liber*; and whence Books have the name of *Libri*. 2. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Caudex*, gave the *Latins* occasion to call a Book *Codex*. 3. They used to cover their Tables over with Wax, and thereon to write what they had to signify; from whence a Letter-Carrier was named *Tabellarius*; the Instrument wherewith they wrote, was a sharp-pointed Iron, which they called *Stylus*; a Word now signifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kind of Phrase which any Man useth; as *Negligens stylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exercitatus stylus*, in *Cicero*. I should have also noted, That they used sometimes to write in *Leaves*; that the *Sibyls* Oracles being so written and scattered abroad, had the name of *Sibyllæ Folia*; and that from thence we have the Phrase of a *Leaf of Paper*. But of this Argument enough.

Now to these Rarities of Nature, and Magnificent industry, most of them near the River *Nile*, or relating to it, we are to add another of far greater moment, and such as plainly seemeth to be supernatural, which is, That above five Miles from

the City of *Cairo*, there is a place, in which, on every *Good Friday* yearly, there appear the Heads, Legs, and Arms of Men rising out of the Ground, to a very great number; which if any Man draw near unto them, or touch any of them will shrink again into the Earth. Supposed by some to be an *Imposture* of some *Water-men* only; who stick them over-night in the Sands, and keeping them secret to themselves, obtain thereby the ferrying over of many thousands of People to behold the sight. But *Stephen Duplessis*, a sober and discerning Man in the Opinion of *Goulartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwise of it; affirming soberly, That he was an Eye-witness of the Wonder, that he had touched divers of these rising Members; and that (as he was once so doing to the Head of a Child) a Man of *Cairo* cried out unto him, *Kali, Kali, ants metaralde*; that is to say, *Hold! hold, you know not what you do*. A strange Fore-runner (if it be of undoubted credit) of the *Resurrection* of the whole Body, presented yearly, in the rising of these several Parts.

Monsieur Thevenot begins the encrease of the *Nile*, *May* 16 or 20, and saith the Publication is made *June* 28 or 29; and he saith, *They give me no Account of its encrease beyond September the 24th*. Though it often swells about the beginning of *October*, and that it gradually abates till the Month of *May*. He gives also this Account of the Head of the *Nile*, from the Report of an *Ethiopian* Ambassador he met at *Grand Cairo*. The head of *Nile* is a Spring that swells out of the Ground in a large Plain called *Ozembromma* in the Province of *Ago*, which casts up the Waters very high, the Well being twelve days Journey from *Goutbar*, the Capital of *Ethiopia*; and these Waters running on, pass by seven Cataracts before they enter into *Egypt*; and he saith, There are no Mountains near its Head by three Weeks Journey. If the River doth not rise Sixteen Foot, a Famine follows for want of Water; if it swells to twenty four, there is a Dearth, because the Seed-time is lost.

Bernier, p. 44. Gives this Account of the Head of the *Nile*, from an *Ethiopian* Ambassador in the *Mogul's* Court. It issueth out of the Earth by two Springs in the Province of *Agaus*, which form a Lake of about 30 or 40 Paces long, and issueth thence a considerable River, but is soon augmented by other Springs. It circles about, and forms almost an Island, and then tumbles from steep Rocks into a great Lake in the Province of *Dambaz*, three Days Journey from *Gondar*, &c. See *Bernier*, pag. 143. The *Nubian* Geographer, p. 16. makes the *Nile* to spring from the Mountains of the Moon, where I have represented his Notion of its rise, entering *Nubia*, it washeth *Cusa*, *Ghalva*, *Dancalia*, and *Iluck*, Cities of *Nubia*, and then precipitates it self from Mount *Gianadel* down into *Egypt*, so that no Boat can pass farther that way, p. 17. There are two falls of the *Nile*, one at *Iluck* in *Nubia*, and the other above *Affuan* into *Egypt*, which are twelve Days Journey each from the other; this is darkly expressed by the *Nubian*, but clearly in *Ptolemy*, who calls the most Southern, the great Cataract, and the other the lesser, which he placeth above *Syene*, now *Affuan*; for the encreases of the *Nile*, see *Jossat. Leo Africanus*, p. 335. Observeth, That the *Crocodiles*, in this River, are more destructive to Men, since the *Atabometans* became Masters of *Egypt*, than they were under the *Egyptians* and the *Romans*, and above *Cairo* than beneath it; and he cannot find out the Reasons of it, which is nothing but the Desolations they have made in *Egypt*, which encourageth these Dragons to destroy Men. He ascribes the swelling of the *Nile* to the Rains that fall in

Ethiopia in *May*. In his time the Fountains of the Nile were not known to the *Ethiopians* themselves. This Author wrote in the Year 1526, and had travelled over a great part of *Africa*: *Gabriel Sionata* observes in his piece *de Urbibus Orientalium*, p. 27. That the Waters of the Nile being only retained in Pans 3 Days, and exposed to the heat of the Sun, turns to a pure white Salt; so that the Land of *Egypt* has an inexhaustible Supply of that which is so needful to the Life of Man, and at small Charges. This Author was a *Syrian* by Birth, and wrote in the Year 1619. The Waters of the Nile are thick and muddy, but being exposed to settle a small time, they become clean, perspicuous, and so sweet and pleasant, that they excel all other Waters for smoothness and pleasantness.

Having thus done with the *Rarities* concerning *Nilus*, and that great increase of Wealth which accrued thereby to all the Country, in the improvement of the natural Commodities of the Earth; let us next look on the *Red Sea*, and the Riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of Trading. A Sea whereof we have spoken already, as to the reason of the Name, the extent thereof, and the several Islands contained in it, and therefore shall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to this Country, and to this alone, is the fame it hath for the miraculous passage of the *Israelites* through it as upon dry Land, and the drowning of *Pharaoh Cenchres* and all his People, at large commemorated in the Books of Holy Scriptures; as also for that through it the Spices of *India* and *Arabia*, were brought to *Alexandria*, and thence by the *Venetians* dispersed through all *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*. *Nub.* p. 4. Mr. *Pory*, the Translator of *Leo Africanus* a Learned Man, observes, That the middle of this Sea is safely Navigable by Day or Night, it being clear, and 25 or 50 Fathoms deep, but the Eastern and Western Shores are so full of Rocks, Shoals, and small Islands, that it is impossible to pass them but by Day-light, and with most expert Pilots, who are taken in at the Ile of *Babel-Mandel*; he saith also, This Sea has little Fish, and the Shores have no green Grass, Herbs or Weeds, (Pag. 8.) in which he is contradicted by others; the Ancient Kings of *Egypt* barr'd the entrance of this Sea against the *Africans*, by drawing a Chain from *Arabia* to *Babel-Mandel*, and from the West side of that Island again to *Egypt*, as he observes out of *Strabo*. And that the *Turk* at this Day, will suffer no Ship to pass upon this Sea but his own, as far as they can help it, the *Portugals* having provoked him to this by their Depredations on this Sea. The *Hebrews* call this Sea *Jamsuph*, and *Exodus* 15. 22, it is called *Mare Algosum*. Its Waves are agitated by great Ebbs and Flows, whence some have had the Impudence to say, The *Israelites* passed at low Water; and that the *Egyptians* were drowned by the return of the Tide. *Hornius Antiq. Geo.* p. 11.

I suppose I shall not do amiss to set down Historically out of *Galvano*, a Relation of the beginning, continuance, and period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all *Europe* formerly received so great Commodity. Know then saith he) that *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, 277 years before the Incarnation, was the first that set on foot this Navigation: *Colir*, (of old called *Myos*, *Hormos*) on the Sea-side, being the ordinary Haven out of which they hoised Sail for *India*; and into which they returned full fraught with their Commodities. From hence they were by Land conveyed to *Coptus*, and so down the Nile to *Alexandria*, by which Traffick the City grew exceeding Rich; insomuch that the Custom-House there yielded *Ptol.* Annetes 7 Millions and an half of Gold yearly. The Ro-

mans being Lords of *Egypt*, enhanced the Customs to double that Sum: They sent into *India* every Year (as *Pliny* witnessed) 120 Ships, whose Lading was worth 120000 Crowns; and there was made in return of every Crown 100. When the *Vandals*, *Lombards*, *Goths*, and *Moors*, had torn in pieces the Roman Empire, all Commerce between Nations began to cease. At last, perceiving the inconvenience, they began a-new; conveying the Indian Commodities partly by Land, partly by Water, unto *Capha* in *Taurica Chersonesus*, belonging to the *Genoeses*. Next, *Trapezond* was made the Mart-Town, then *Sarmachand* in *Zagathay*, where the Indian, Turkish, and Persian Merchants meet to barter Wares; the *Turks* conveying their Merchandizes to *Damascus*, *Bairutti*, and *Aleppo*; from whence the *Venetians* transported it to *Venice*, making that the common Emporium of Christendom. Once again, viz. Anno 1300, the Soldans of *Egypt* restored the Passage by the Red-Sea, which having continued more than 200 years; is now discontinued by the *Portugals*, *Spaniard*, *English* and *Dutch*, which bring them to their several Homes by the backside of *Africk*: So that not only the Traffick of *Alexandria* is almost decayed, and the Riches of the *Venetians* much diminished; but the Drugs and Spices have lost much of their Virtue, as impaired by too much moisture in so long a Voyage. So much saith he, touching the Course and Alteration of this Trading; to which I shall take leave to add, That for the better and more quick return of such Commodities as were usually brought into this Sea; some of the Kings of *Egypt* attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it to the River *Nilus*, passable by Ships of greatest Burden; the Marks of whose proud Attempts are remaining still; *Sesostris* was the first who designed the Work, having before with good success cut many Trenches from the River, and some Navigable, into many places of the Country; by which, unprofitable Marshes were drained, the Country strengthened, Trade made easie, and the People better furnished with water than in former times: *Darius* the great *Persian* Monarch, seconded the same Project; so did one of the *Ptolemies*: The like is said of a Capricious *Portugal* in these latter times. But they all gave it over on the same Consideration, which was a fear, lest by letting in the Red-Sea, they might drown the Country, and perhaps make a second Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Asia Minor* which lay nearest to them; that Sea being found to be much higher than the *Mediterranean*, and the Flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to understand, That all which hitherto hath been spoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* strictly, and specially so called; containing only so much of the Country of *Egypt* as lieth upon the Banks and Channel of the River *Nilus*; and not to all that Tract of Ground which lay betwixt the Red-Sea and the Borders of *Libya*, which was reckoned in the Compass of the Kingdom of *Egypt*; much less as comprehending *Libya* and *Cyrene* also, though now accounted Members of that Body, and anciently Parts or Provinces of the Diocess of it. For *Egypt*, in the largest Sense and acception of the Word, may be, and generally is divided into these three Parts, viz. 1. *Egypt*, in the general Notion, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean* from the Borders of *Idumæa* to the *Roman Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying Westward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heracleoticum*; and on the Borders of *Ethiopia Superior* from the said Red-Sea, to the Country of *Libya Interior*. 2. *Libya* or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly so called, and the Province of *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*. And 3. *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*, reaching from that *Libya* to the greater *Syrtis*; where it bordered with that part of the *African* Diocess, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in

in this first description of it, we shall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains and chief Cities; which done, we shall describe the other in their proper Places; and then unite them all in general terms.

As for the Mountains of this Country, there are very many; there were no living else for the People in the time of the overflowing of the River. The principal of them, 1. Those called *Mount Zambra*, lying in a long Chain on the West of *Nilus*. 2. *Silphyrus*; 3. *Prophyritus*; 4. *Trogus*; 5. *Babylonus* on the East thereof. Betwixt these Hills the Course of the River is so hemmed in on both sides, that at the upper part of the Stream, where it first entereth into *Egypt*, the space betwixt the Mountains, is not above four Miles broad; enlarging afterwards to eight, then about *Cairo* to thirty seven; then opening wider and wider, 'till we come to the breaches of the *Delta*, as the Country doth increase in breadth. On these and other of the Mountains and lesser Hills, stand most part of the Towns and Receptacles of the Country-People in the time of the Flood, rising when least, to fifteen *Cubits*, or seven Yards and an half.

Rivers of Note here are none but *Nilus*, nor indeed any one but that; that being sufficient of it self to enrich this Country, which otherwise would be nothing but a *Sandy Desert*. The head thereof not in the *Mountains of the Moon*, as was once supposed, but in the Lake *Zembre* in *Ethiopia interior*; passing from thence through the *higher Ethiopia*, or *Habassine* Empire, till it falls at last into this Country; and running in one continual Channel (excepting where it brancheth into little Islands, as it sometimes doth) before its influx into the Sea, is divided into seven great streams, opening into the Sea with so many mouths. Namely; 1. *Heracleoticum*; 2. *Bolbiticum*; 3. *Sebaniticum*; 4. *Patinicum*; 5. *Menditicum*; 6. *Caniticum*; 7. *Pelusiaticum*. The first and last of these Currents (which are the only two now left) being far distant from the other, and growing into one at the first point of the River's division, make that part of *Egypt* which is called *Delta*; because so much as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy*, or *Anatolia*, it resembleth that Letter in the *Greek Alphabet*. Now because *Nilus* so runneth in its certain Channels, that the People have no other Water to make use of for all necessities; there are many By-trenches, and deep Ditches cut in convenient places (by the Care and Munificence of their Kings) to receive its Waters, and to communicate them to the People, who know almost no other Drink than the Waters thereof, and indeed they need not; the Waters of this River being of such excellent, both Taste and Virtue, that when *Pescennius Niger* saw his Soldiers murmur for want of Wine; *What* (said he) *do you grumble for Wine, having the Water of Nile to drink?*

But besides the Waters of this River, and the Trenches of it, the People are supplied with that Commodity by Lakes and artificial Channels, which serve for watering their Cattel, tempering of Morter for their Buildings, and other such inferior uses; sometimes perhaps for Drink for the poorer sort, who cannot be conveniently furnished with the Waters of the *Nile*. Amongst the Trenches (which were many, as before was said) those of most estimation were the Works of *Ptolemy*, and the Emperour *Trajan*; the first falling into that Branch of the *Nile*, which maketh the Isle called *Heracleotis*; the other into the main body of it not far from *Cairo*. These two, by reason of the many fresh Springs which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authors: And betwixt these was seated the Land of *Goshen*, extending from *Nilus* to the *Red-Sea*

in the East and West. The chief of the Canals of the *Nile* were those called, 1. *Arctus*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Ptolemy* called *Arctus*, and by *Strabo* by *Ptolemy*. All which names are now lost, and changed to that of *Lago d. Saline*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2. *Lacus* supposed to be the same which in the Book of *Maccabees* is called *Lacus*. 1. cap. 9. And 3. *Morus*, now called *Babylon*, is more memorable than the rest. In compass 35. Miles long, 50 fathom deep; in the middle whereof were the *Pyramids*, 50 fathoms above the water, and as much beneath it: the Fish of this Lake for one fix months in the year, is said to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the King's Exchequer; for the other six, each day a Talent. 4. The Lakes called *Libanus*, into which the Trench, or River called *Ptolemaeus* doth discharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the *Red-Sea*.

The whole divided anciently into two parts only. 1. That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extreme branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which Letter it resembleth to him who standing on the Sea-shore, could take a view of it, as before was said. 2. That called *Thebais* from *Thebe*, the principal City of it comprehending all the rest of the course of the River, shut up on both sides with the Mountains spoken of before. But this division leaving out all those parts hereof, which lay on the East-side towards the *Arabian Gulf*, and on the West, as far as to the borders of *Libya Marmarica*: the *Macedonians* having it all together, divided it into 18 *Cantreds*, or *Districts*, by them called *Nomi*; increasing in the time of *Ptolemy* the Geographer, to 46; *Ortelius* out of divers Authors hath found 20. more. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a *Diocesis* of the Empire; it was divided into four *Provinces* (not reckoning *Marmarica* and *Cyrene* into the account) that is to say, 1. *Egyptus*, specially so called, containing all the *Delta*, and the *District* or *Nomus* of *Mareotica*, bordering on *Marmarica*. 2. *Augustanica*, so called from *Augustus Caesar*, on the East of the *Delta*, betwixt it and *Arabia Petraea*. 3. *Arcadia*, so called from the Emperour *Arcadius*, in whose time it was taken out of *Thebais*, lying on both sides of the River from the *Delta* to the City of *Antinous*. 4. *Thebais*, extending on both sides of the River, from the borders of *Libya Marmarica* to the *Red-Sea*, (as the other doth) from *Antinous* unto *Ethiopia*: Divided otherwise by some into *Superiorem*, reaching from *Ethiopia* to the City of *Antinous*; *Mediam*, stretching thence to the point of the *Delta*; and *Inferiorem*, which comprehendeth all the rest. But at this time, that part hereof which lieth on the South and East of *Cairo* is called *Sand* or *Salid*; honoured heretofore with the dwelling of the ancient *Pharaohs*, because nearest unto *Ethiopia*, their most puissant Neighbour. 2. That betwixt *Cairo*, *Rosetta*, and *Alexandria*, hath the name of *Errisja*, wherein the *Ptolemaean* Princes did most reside; because most convenient for receiving Supplies of Men from the States of *Greece*. And finally, that from *Cairo* to *Tineja* and *Damiata* is now called *Maremma*, in which the *Mamaluks* anciently made the seat of their Empire; because more neighbouring to the Christians, whom they stood in fear of, as likeliest to invade them upon that side. The Present Visier or Governour of *Egypt* and all the latter *Mamaluks* resided at *Grand Cairo*, from the times the Western Christians were driven out of the Holy Land, which is seated in that part of *Egypt*, where the Ancient Kings of *Egypt* resided, and the first, of the *Saracen Califfs*; because it was then more convenient for the corresponding with *Arabia*, from whence they came, and which was then mostly under them. The *Mamaluks* removed thither upon the taking *Damiata* by the Western Christians as being a place

place of greater Security; the *Turks* have continued there because perhaps they found it the capital City when they Conquered *Egypt*, and also as being near the center of that Kingdom, and lastly because they regard not trade or Commerce nor are Masters at Sea, as the *Ptolemies* were in a good degree; thus Reason of State, fancy, and humour have often changed the Seats of Empires and Kingdoms, by which Great Cities have been ruined and laid desolate, and others have Sprung up and Grown considerable; as may be seen in *Egypt* and every where, if their stories were as well known as this is. In the whole Country there was reckoned in the time of *Amasis* the second, no fewer than 20000 Cities; but if the Towns and Villages be not reckoned in, I should much doubt of the accompt. By *Diodorus Siculus*, it is said that there were 3000 in his time: but *Ortelius* on a diligent search, finds 300 only.

Those of most note in the Province of *Augustanica*,
 1. *Pelusium*, the most Eastern City of *Egypt* toward *Idumæa*, situate on the most Eastern Channel of *Nile*, called hence *Pelusiaceum*; by *Ammianus* said to be the work of *Peleus* the Father of *Achilles*, commanded by the Gods to purge himself in the Lake adjoining, for the murder of his Brother *Phocus*. Accounted for the chief door of *Egypt* towards the Land, as *Pharos* was to those who came thither by Sea; the Metropolis of the Province of *Augustanica*, the birth-place of *Ptolemy* the Geographer, and the Episcopal Seat of St. *Isidore*, surnamed *Pelusiotes*, whose eloquent and pious Epistles are still extant. Out of the ruins hereof (if not the same under another Title) arose,
 2. *Damiata*. A city upon one of the most eastern Mouths of the *Nile*; it was anciently called *Tamiata*, and is now called by the *Arabs*, *Damiat*: memorable for the often Sieges laid unto it by the Christian Armies; none more than that under *John de Brenne*, the Titulary King of *Jerusalem*, and the Princes of *Europe*, Anno 1220. During which (being of 10 months continuance) the Famine and the Pestilence so extremely raged, that the Town in a manner was dispeopled, before the Besiegers knew any thing of their Condition: till in the end two venturous Soldiers admiring the Silence and Solitude of so great a City, in a bravado scal'd the Walls, but found no Man to make resistance. The next day the whole Army entred, where they found in every House, and every corner of the Streets, whole heaps of dead Bodies, none to give them burial: A lamentable and ruthless spectacle. It was taken by the Christians in the year 1218, but in 1221 they were forced to restore it, being involved in such miseries by the Waters that were set loose upon them, that they must otherwise have perished: after this it was taken by *Lewis* the 10th in the year 1249; but that Prince being afterwards taken Prisoner by the *Sultan* the 5th of April 1250, in a Battel at *Faramia* together with *Charles* and *Alphonfus* his two Brothers, was again forced to restore it at his Ransome; after which the *Saracens* burnt it. This is an *Arch-Bishop's* See and under the *Patriarch* of *Alexandria* Longitude 63. 25. Latitude. 31. 10. The *Nubian Geographer* (saith p. 103.) That *Damiata* is placed some distance from the *Mediterranean Sea*, and there is a branch derived to it from that Branch which falls into the Lake of *Tennis*, which is the most Eastern Branch of all, and begins below *Tucha*, from which *Damiata* stands as our Author proves 91 miles to the North-West, *Nubian Geogr.* p. 104. The Writers of the holy War who lived in the same time with the fore-cited Author, say that when *Almarick* King of *Jerusalem* attacked it the first time, it was encompassed with three brick-Walls and was so strong that though he took and destroyed *Pelusium* in 1667, yet he could not force *Damiata*: That when it was afterwards taken after a long siege, it was thought

a wonder; for they found in it, vast Treasures of Gold, Silver, Jewels and rich Merchandize till they grew Weary of Spoils, and restored it to the *Soldan*. And when *Lewis* King of *France* took it, it was defaced by fire and was yielded without any Defence, and restored by him as easily for his Ransome; so that the City was burnt before he took it. This City Stands 25 miles more to the West than *Pelusium* and upon the two Branches of the *Nile*. *Damiata* is an Ancient City environed with Walls containing 5 miles in compass, and but of Small strength: It is Governed by a Sanjac without other Company but his household. It is a delightful City abounding in Fine Gardens and fair Fountains. *Hackluit.* T. 2. p. 200. This account given by one that saw it about 1566. 3. *Heros* or *Civitas Heroum*, in the *Arabian Isthmus*, at the very bottom of the *Gulf*; remarkable for the first interview betwixt *Jacob* and *Joseph*, after his first coming into *Egypt*. 4. *Heliopolis*, or the City of the Sun, now called *Betsames*; in the Scriptures *On*, of which *Potiphar* the Father of *Arsenath* (whom *Pharoah* married unto *Joseph*) was Priest or Prince; as is said, *Gen.* 14. 45. Given (as *Josephus* telleth us) for an habitation to the Sons of *Jacob*; by consequence one of the chief Cities of the Land *Rameses* or *Goshen*: and memorable in time succeeding for a publick Temple built for the *Jews*, with the consent of *Ptolemy* surnamed *Philadelphus*, by *Onias* the High-Priest, then dispossessed of his Authority and Office by the power of *Antiochus*: a Temple much esteemed by the *Hellenists*, or *Grecizing Jews*; and though Schismatical at the best, in its first original, yet not Schismatical and Idolatrous too, as was that of Mount *Garizim*. This Temple is like that of *Jerusalem* and built in the Reign of *Ptolemy Philometor*, about the year of the World 3780 which remained till the time of *Vespasian* 350 years after. In this place it is supposed, Our Saviour Lived when he was carried in Infancy into *Egypt*. This City stood upon the East-side of the *Nile* 45 English miles from *Memphis* to the East, 120 Miles from *Pelusium* to the South and the same distance from *Clisma* to the North-West; *Ptolemy*. Longitude. 62. 30. Latitude. 29. 50. In this place the Balsame was first planted when brought from *Jericbo*, removed to *Grand Cairo*, and from thence to *Mecca*. 5. *Bubastis*, somewhat more North than *Heliopolis*, by some of the Ancients call'd *Avaris*, by the Scriptures *Pibeseth*, another City of that tract; now better known by the name of *Ziorb*: supposed to be the same which the *Notitia* call'd *Castra Judæorum*; memorable in times of *Paganism*, for a famous Temple of *Diana*. This old City was ruined intirely by *Nebuchadnezzar* the victorious *Assyrian* Monarch, about the year of the World 3380 (for the certain time is not Known) as was foretold by *Jeremiah Chap.* 44. *Ezekiel* 29. 30. *Jeremiah* 43. 46. *Nahum* 3. 6. *Arsinoe*, on the shore of the *Red-Sea*, so called in honour of *Arsinoe*; Sister of *Philadelphus*, and Wife to *Lysimachus* King of *Thrace*; afterwards called *Cleopatra*, in honour of Queen *Cleopatra*, now better known by the name of *Sues*. Of great Commerce and Trading in the time of the *Ptolemies*, now almost abandoned; and would be utterly deserted, were it not made the station of the *Turkish* Gallies, that command the *Gulf*; which being framed at *Cairo* of such Timber as is brought thither by Sea from the Woods of *Cilicia*, and sometimes from the shores of the *Euxine Sea*; are again taken into pieces, carried from *Cairo* unto this City on the backs of Camels, and here joyned together. Conceiv'd to be the same which in former times was call'd *Baal-Zephon* (of which see *Exod.* 14. 9.) the last incamping-place of the Tribes of *Israel*, who from hence pass'd through the *Red-Sea* upon dry Land. 7. *Gleba Rubra*, by the *Greeks*

Greeks called *Thera Bolus*, and sometimes *Erythra Bolus* also, more near the *Latin*; the redness of the Soil giving name unto it; situate on the River or French of *Traban*: more memorable for a Misfortune that befell it than any thing else; purposely burnt by *Amenophes* the fifth, upon this occasion: Being blind, he was assured by some of his Wizards, that if he washed his Eyes with the Urine of a Woman, who had never known any but her own Husband, he should be restored unto his Sight; after a long search and many vain tryals, he met with one whose Water cured him, whom he took to Wife; and causing all the rest whom he had made tryal of, to be brought together to this Town, he set fire on the City, and burnt both it and all the Women there assembled; which Tale, if true, is little to the honour of the Dames of *Egypt*.

Places of most note and observation in the Province of *Egypt*, strictly and specially so called; are 1. *Alexandria*, situate Westward of the *Delta*, over-against the Isle of *Pharos*; and built upon a Promontory, thrusting it self into the Sea; with which on the one side, and the Lake *Mareotis* on the other, it is exceeding well defended, the Work of *Alexander* the Great, and by him peopled with Greeks immediately after his Conquest of *Egypt*; the Regal Seat of the *Ptolemies*, whilst *Egypt* did maintain the State of a Kingdom; and afterwards the Metropolis of it, when a Roman Diocesis. It was built *Anno Mundi*, 3618, that is 330 years before Christ, in the form of a *Macedonian Chlamys*, or Cloak, in the space of seventeen days, as *Justin* saith, *Lib. 11.* the Walls then extending to a Compass of six Miles (*Italian*) and he gave it his own Name. It grew hereupon, to be the biggest City next to *Rome* in all the World, and was once 30 *Stadia's* long, and 10 broad, and had 15 *Italian Miles* in compass, *Joseph. 11. de Bell. 16. v. 11.* Yet the most remarkable thing it had was its Haven, so secured that it had a difficult access in the most serene Weather. The entrance was narrow, and made winding by concealed Work in the Water; to the left hand it had an artificial Mole, to the right, the Island called the *Pharus*, from a Light-House-Tower placed on it, which might be seen 300 *Stadia's* off at Sea. In the Year 3920, *Augustus Caesar* took it the second time, and made *Egypt* a Province of his Empire; yet it continued, even then, the Metropolis of *Egypt*, and *Strabo Lib. 13.* saith, It supplied four Months Corn to *Rome*, and paid more Tribute in one Month, than *Jerusalem* in a whole Year; Its Inhabitants being then 300000 Free-men, as *Diodorus* saith. St. *Mark* planted the Gospel here, and watered it with his Blood, when he had preached twenty Years: It was considered much more than now it is, before the building of Grand *Cairo*: It is inhabited by about two thousand Souls, which are too few for so vast a City; accordingly much of it is nothing but Ruins. The *Pharos*, once an Isle, is now joyned to the City, and a Fort built upon it by the *Turks*, with a Garrison for the security of the Port. The first Conquest the *Saracens* made of *Egypt*, was in the Year of Christ (as they say) 641; but this City was taken in 641, so that Invasion was made sooner. This City was taken by *Amrus* the *Moor*, after a Siege of Thirteen Months: it was retaken from them in the times of the Holy War, *Anno Christi* 1167, but it fell soon after into their Hands again. At the same time, with the *Nabian* Geographer, lived *William*, Archbishop of *Tyre*. And he, *lib. 19. de Bell. Sacro*, saith, *Almaravick*, King of *Jerusalem*, had this City delivered up to him in the Year 1167, after a long and tedious Siege. It was then a very Potent and Rich City, but more accustomed to Merchandize than War, and had but a small Garrison of

Turks, who distrusted the Citizens, and were hated by them; when the Christians entered the City, the Inhabitants admired, That so great a Multitude of Citizens and Strangers, who had done their utmost to defend it, had yet been kept within the Walls, and reduced to such necessities, as they had suffered by so small an Army; there being not above 500 Horse, and 4 or 5000 Foot that were in the City; *Leo Africanus. John Plano Carpini*, saith: About the Year 1246, it was besieged by the *Tartars*, but what was the Event, he then knew not, *Hacklunt. Tom. 1.* The Buildings of which this City now consists, are mean and few, erected on the Ruines of the former, in that part which is next the Haven, the rest being Desolate; the Walls are almost quadrangular, and have Four Gates; they have neither Tillage nor Pasture, but upon the Lake, and that is little, and ill Husbanded, all the rest is Desert. The Haven is now so unsafe, that 22 Ships perished in it the Night before our Author enter'd it, by a North-Wind, *Sandys Travels, p. 90.* This City is an old decayed thing, having been a fair one in Ancient time, near two English Miles in length, being all vaulted under for preserving fresh Water, when the *Nile* overflows in September: The Fields about it yield plenty of good Corn; the Port is secured by two strong Castles, and the City by a third, all well planted with Cannon; this was the state of it in 1586, *Hacklunt, To. 2. p. 281.* It hath 3 Gates, 100 Churches and Mosques, but the part deserted is six times greater than that inhabited, *ib. p. 284.* Adorned Anciently with many stately Buildings; of which most memorable, the *Serapium*, (or Temple of their God *Serapis*,) for sumptuous workmanship, and the magnificence of the Fabrick, inferiour to none but the *Roman Capitol*; and next to that, the Library erected by *Philadelphus*, who had stored it with 700000 Volumes; unfortunately burnt in the War against *Julius Caesar*. A City of great Trading, and infinite Riches, μέγιστον ἐμπορείον καὶ οἰκουμενὸν the greatest Empory of the World, as is said by *Strabo*. Wanton with which, the Citizens so abounded in all Licentiousness both of Life and Speech, that they spared not the Emperour himself, if he came in their way; but they paid dearly for their Folly. For *Caracalla*, not so patient of a Contumely as some wiser Princes, having felt the Lashes of their Tongues when he was amongst them, assembled all the Youth of the City, as if out of them he would have chosen some to attend his Person; and suddenly gave command to his Soldiers, to put them all to the Sword: A slaughter so great and universal, that the River *Nilus*, coloured with the Blood of the slain, might not improperly at that time be called a Red-Sea. In this City, *Anno* 180. *Pantæus* read both Divinity and Philosophy to all such as would come to hear him: Which, as it is conceived to give the first hint to the instituting of Universities in the rest of Christendom; so from that small beginning, the Schools of *Alexandria* grew so great and eminent; that *Nazianzen* calleth them *Ἰασησὶας παιδεύσεως ἐργαστήριον*, the Shop, or Work-house, as it were, of all kinds of Learning: Much short of what it was, even in point of Trading, especially since the diversion of the Spice-Trade from the Bay of *Arabia*, and utterly divested of those Beauties which once it had. Inhabited at the present by a mixture of Nations, *Moors*, *Jews*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Christian Coptics*; more for some little gain which they reap by Traffick, than any pleasure in the place; Now called *Scanderia* by the *Turks*, remarkable onely for the house of the Patriarch (though he dwell for the most part in *Cairo*) and a Church in which St. *Mark* their first Bishop was said to be buried. 2. *Cannopus* situate East of *Alexandria*, and on the principal branch of the *Nile*, called *Heracleoticum*; so called from

from *Canopus* the Pilot of *Menelaus*, who having suffered shipwreck upon this Coast, was there interred by his Master. A Town so branded in old times, for varieties of all kind of beastliness, and Luxury, that as *Seneca* very well observed, he that avoided the viciousness and debauchery of it, could not scape the infamy: the very place administering matter for suspicion. 3. *Rosetta*, on the same branch of the River, and not far from *Canopus*, out of whose ruins it arose; built by a Slave of one of the *Egyptian Califfs*; unwall'd, and destitute of all Fortifications, but plentifully accommodated with all sorts of Commodities, and well frequented by the Merchants. The *Nubian Geographer*, pag. 106, Sets this city which he always calls *Rasid* 95 Miles from *Malig*, which is 98 Miles from *Sciataf*, where the *Nile* is first divided and that is from *Grand Cairo* 50 Miles. So that this City is 243 Miles from *Grand Cairo*, and from *Alexandria* it is 60 Miles towards the East; wherein he agrees with *Monsieur Thevenot*. *Leo Africanus* placeth it upon the East side of the *Nile*, 3 miles from the *Mediterranean Sea*. It has very many beautiful houses on the *Nile*, and a fair Market-place. It has also a harbour will hold about 4 Barks. It has no walls, the grounds about it yield plenty of Dates and Rice; the inhabitants civil to strangers. Our Author was here when *Selim* the Grand Seignior returned to it from taking *Alexandria*, that is in 1517. Thus far *Leo* p. 303. 4. *Nicopolis*, now called *Munia*, the Monument of some eminent Victory, and probably of the Conquest of *Egypt* by the *Macedonians*; the name being *Greek*, and the Town standing within 30 Furlongs of *Alexandria*. 5. *Aphrodites* and *Aphroditopolis*, so called from *Venus*, who was here worshipped: situate betwixt the two middle branches of the *Nile*. 6. *Sais*, betwixt the same branches of the River also: whence that *Nomus* or Division had the name of *Saites*. It is now called *Sibnit*, or *Signiti*. 7. *Plinthine*, on the sea-side; and 8. *Hierax*, more within the Land: the chief Towns of the Region called *Marsotica*.

In *Arcadia*, called also *Heptanomus*, because it contained seven of the *Nomi* or Divisions, into which *Egypt* was distributed by the *Macedonians*, the places of most note were and are, 1. *Memphis*, on the Western banks of *Nile*, not far from the sharp point of the *Delta*; where the River first begins to divide it self; the Regal City of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*: by one of which who removed the Seat-Royal from *Thebæ* hither, it is said to be built, and called thus by the name of his Daughter. In compass, when it flourished about 20 miles; great, populous, and adorned with a world of Antiquities; amongst others with the Temples of *Apis*, *Venus*, *Serapis*, beset with *Sphinxes*: now nothing left of the Ruines of it, but the Statues of some monstrous Resemblances, sufficient to shew what it hath been formerly. The *Pyramids* before described, stood not far from hence; to which the Poet relateth, saying.

Barbara Pyramidum flectat miracula Memphis.

*Let barbarous Memphis brag no more
Of her Pyramids, as before.*

The Priests of this place were so much celebrated for their Learning, that *Plato* and *Pythagoras* went to hear them; yet they were noted to be excessive Superstitious: In St. *Hieroni's* time they worshipped here a Brafs-Bull as a God, *Antipater*, the Father of *Herod* took this City, which was afterwards called *Babylon*, now *Grand Cairo*, and of whose greatness Strange in-

credible things are related in our time, as that it is twice as big as *Paris*; but in Truth it is equal to *Rome*, 11 Miles in Compass, and much more Populous; as *Leod. Romanus de Navigat.* Lib. 1. C. 1. saith, *Selim* took this City and added it to his Dominions, in the year 1515. It is now sensibly decayed as to its Greatness; in the year 1566 it was 18 miles in compass, and so populous, that it could receive no more, and they were then building new Houses about it, *Hackluit.* Tom. 2. pag. 202. In 1585 It had 2400 Mosques *ibid.* 287. *Leo Africanus* makes it much greater as to the number of the Inhabitants, and Populous Suburbs, when it was Conquered by the *Turks*, pag. 316. Eng. But in the present age it is reduced to 8 miles in compass, and nothing near so populous as it was then; yet it is still by far the most populous City in *Egypt*, the rest being by the oppression of the *Turks* brought almost to nothing; the Wealth of *Egypt* being perpetually drained away and carried to *Constantinople*, from whence it never returns back again; and this I look upon to be the true reason why *Egypt* and its Cities have been more Ruined by the *Turks*, in less than 200 years, than by all the *Mahometan* Princes that possessed it 800 years before that time.

2. *Babylon*, called for distinction's sake, *Babylon Egyptiorum*, built on the other side of the River, and somewhat more unto the North: said to be founded by *Cambyfes* the *Persian* Monarch, the first that made this Kingdom stoop to the yoke of a Foreigner; and by him peopled with some *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans* transplanted hither. Great, as appeareth by the ruins; amongst which, many of the Christian Temples and Monasteries do lie there in rubbish; the Castle whereof served long after for the Garrison of three Legions, appointed to defend this Country in the time of the *Romans*. This, thought by some to be the *Babylon* mentioned by *Saint Peter*, in his first Epistle Chap. ult. which the following words, and *Mark my Son*, (*Saint Mark* being the first Bishop of the *Alexandrians*, and the Apostle of *Egypt*) may make somewhat probable, but the truth and reality hereof, I dispute not now. Out of the ruins of this City arose 3. *Cairo*, now, and for many Ages past, the chief of this Country: raised from the ashes of old *Babylon* by the *Califfs* of *Egypt*, and by the *Mamaluks* made the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. In compass not above eight miles; but full of Streets, the number of which said to be 18000, every one of them fortified with a Great Gate at each end; which being well barred, made every several street an impregnable Fortress. Found so by *Selymus* the first, when he conquered *Egypt*, who spent three days in forcing his way through it with his numerous Army. The private buildings very mean; the publick, especially the Mosques, beyond thought magnificent. Visited every seventh year with a dreadful Pestilence; yet still so populous, that it is conceived to be in good health, if there die not above a thousand in a day, or three hundred thousand within that year. Adorned with many delicate Orchards, both within the City and without; full of variety of contentments, and neighboured by a pleasant Lake; but made more pleasant by the company which meet there in Boats, for their mutual solace and delights. Fortified at the South-end with a Stately Castle (the Palace of the *Mamaluck-Sultans*) situate on the top of a Mountain; overlooking the City, and a great part of the Country also: so large, that it seemeth a City of it self: immured with high walls, divided into many partitions of several Courts, in times past the places of exercise; and entred by doors of Iron. Destroyed for the most part by *Selimus*, for fear of giving opportunity to some rebellion; or envying the *Mamaluks* the glory of having been the Masters of so brave

brave a Mansion. That which is left, now serving for the habitation of the *Turkish Bassa*, who hath the Government of this Kingdom. 4. *Metarad*, or *Maurea*, not far from *Cairo*; the soil whereof is said to be so rich and fertile, that the People are fain to cover it with Sand or Gravel, so moderating the extreme rankness of it. 5. *Arsinoe*, on the West-side of the *Nile*, and somewhat South of the famous *Labyrinth* before described; called also (to difference it from another of the same name on the shore of the *Red-Sea*) the *City of Crocodiles*, in regard of the divine honours there done that Monster. 6. *Nilopolis* or *Nili Civitas*; in the Island called *Hieracleotis*, made by the imbracements of the River; most memorable for being the Episcopal Seat of *Cheremeon*, a right Godly Prelate; of whom see *Eusebius* in the 6. Book, and 34 Chapter of his Ecclesiastical History. 7. *Troia* on the Eastern stream which makes that Island not much observable, but for giving name to the *Montes Troici* lying near unto it; out of which were digged the Stones which made the Pyramids. 8. *Cinopolis* in a little Island upon the water. 9. *Hermopolis*, or the City of *Mercury*; called also *Hermopolis magna*, to difference it from another of that name not far from *Alexandria*, to which they give the Adjunct of *Parva*. 10. *Antinous*, now *Antius* founded by *Adrian* the Emperour, in honour of *Antinous* his especial Favourite; the most Southern City of this Province, on the banks of the *Nile*. 11. *Dionysias*, or the City of *Bacchus*, situate on the South end of the Lake of *Moeris*, in the *Nomus* or Division called *Oasias parva*. 12. *Clysma*, upon the shores of the Gulf, a Roman Garrison.

Cities of most note in the Province of *Thebais*, 1. *Panopolis*, the *Panos* of *Antoninus*, one of the greatest of this part. 2. *Ptolemais*, the foundation of one of the *Ptolemies*, and the goodliest City of this Province, succeeding unto *Thebe* both in power and greatness. 3. *Saiet*, a fair and large Town, six days Journey from *Cairo*, going up the water; but by what name called amongst the Ancients, I do not where find. Affirmed (erroneously, I think) to be the dwelling-place of *Joseph* and *Mary*, when they fled with *CHRIST* our Saviour from the fury of *Herod*. Beautified with a goodly Temple, but now somewhat ruinous, of the foundation of *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine*. This City much resorted to (on the strength of this Tradition only) by many aged Christian *Copties*, who desire to die there. 4. *Diospolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; all of them on the Banks of the River. 5. *Tentyra*, in a little Isle so called, made by the circlings of the *Nile*: The Inhabitants whereof were the only Men who durst encounter the *Crocodile*; a Creature of a terrible Name, but a cowardly Nature; of which it is said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, That it assaulteth those that flee from it, and flieth from those who do assault it: In that point very like the Devil, of whom it is said by the Apostle *James* 4: 7. that if he be resisted, he will flee from us; Or as the good old Poet hath it,

Est Leo, si fugias; sit stat, quasi Musca recedit.

*Give ground, a Lion he will be;
Stand to it, and away flies he.*

6. *Coptos*, upon the head of a Trench or Water-course, which falleth into the *Nilus*, on the South of *Tentyra*, but on the other side of the River; in old times, a most noted Empory for Indian and Arabian Wares; from whence not only the Christians of this

Country are thought to have the name of *Copties*; but the whole Country to be originally called *A. Egyptus*, from *Ai-Coptus*, or the Land of *Coptus*.

7. *Thebe* the residence and foundation of that great Tyrant *Buſiris*, in compass 140 furlongs, or 17 Miles and an half; called also *Hecatompyla*, from the number of an hundred Gates, which were said to be in it. So beautified with Colosses, Temples, Palaces, the Sepulchres of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*, and other Ornaments of State, that it was thought *μνηστέριον τῆ ἐπὶ τῇ ἡλίῳ ἔτι κεκοσμημέναι* to be the *Monestich* of the World. Decayed on the removing of the Court to *Memphis*; it became a ruine so long since, that there was nothing left of it in the time of *Juvenal*, as he telleth us, saying,

Atque vetus Thebe centum jacet obruta portis.

*Old Thebe yielding to the Fates,
Lies buried with his hundred Gates.*

8. *Abydos*, now called *Abutick*, once the Seat-Royal of *Memnon*, from thence called *Memnonium*; renowned for the Temple of *Osiris*, more for the Statue of *Memnon*, which, though made of stone, did at the rising of the Sun yield a vocal sound. 9. *Elephantis*, on the Banks of *Nile*, neighboured by *Chroph* and *Mophi*, two sharp Rocks, betwixt which the River falling down with a violent current, makes the *Lesser Cataract*; of which, and of the greater, we shall speak more fully in *Aethiopia*. The City seated in an Island of the River *Nile*, on the Borders of *Aethiopia sub Egypto*, (as the Ancients called it) known unto *Ptolemy* by the name of *Elephantina*, but to our Ecclesiastical Writers by that of *Tabenna*. Memorable in times of Heathenism for the Town and Temple of *Onuchis*, wherein stood the *Nilometrium* or standing-Pillars, by which they did observe the increase of the River; removed since to the Castle of *Michias*, two Miles from *Cairo*: in times of Christianity, for the dwellings of infinite numbers of Monks and Hermits, called from this place *Tabenistotæ*. 10. *Syene*, (now *Asina*) a little North of *Elephantis*, situate directly under the Tropic of *Cancer*, and memorable for a deep Well there digged by some Astronomers; which when the Sun entered the Sign, was wholly enlightened with his Beams, without any Shadow, so perpendicularly did the body of it stand over the Pit. This the last City of *Egypt* towards *Aethiopia*.

And now I shall proceed according to my Method in other places, to the Story of *Egypt*; but being that *Libya* and *Cyrene*, are now accounted Members of it; the Fortunes whereof they have also followed in all or most of the mutations of State and Government; I shall first take a view of them as the Limbs of this Body, and shew you how they were united under that one Head, by which now directed.

1. M A R M A R I C A.

2. **L** I B Y A or M A R M A R I C A, hath on the East, *Egypt*, properly so called; on the West, *Cyrene*; on the North, that part of the Mediterranean Sea, which was hence called *Mare Libycum*, and sometimes *Parthensum*; and on the South, some part of *Aethiopia Superior*.

It had the name of *Libya*, from the old Greek word *λίβος* signifying Black, agreeable to the Complexion of the People, which is black and swarthy; *λίβος*, *antiqua lingua Græca niger*, saith a learned Writer; or possible enough from *Lub*, an *Arabian* word signifying Thirst; as suitable unto the nature of the Soil, which is dry and sandy, in which respect called by the Greeks *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*. From hence the South-wind, blowing from these Coasts towards *Greece* and *Italy*, had the name of *Lybs*, and the Promontory in *Sicily* opposite unto it, that of *Lilybæum*. It was also called *Marmarica*, perhaps from the *Marmaridæ*, a chief People of it, though placed by *Ptolemy* in *Cyrene*; and sometimes *Barca*, from *Barce* a chief City in it; of late times *Barca Marmarica*, by both names united.

The Country for the most part very dry and barren, and but meanly peopled; insomuch as *Alexander* passing thorough part of it towards the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, in the space of four days, saw neither Man, Beast, Bird, Tree, nor River; covered over in most places with a thick light Sand, which the Winds remove up and down continually, turning Valleys into Hills, and Hills into Valleys. Found by *Cambyfes* to his cost, who as basely esteeming of the Gods as he did of his Subjects, sent part of his Army into this Country to destroy the Temple above mentioned; but in the passage towards that prohibited place, Fifty thousand of them were overwhelmed and smothered in a Storm of Sand; the rest with much ado escaping. Called therefore *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*, as before was noted; and *Libya sitiens*, thirsty *Libya*, (—per calidas Libyæ sitiens arenas) in that verse of *Lucan*.

The People, Neighbours unto *Egypt*, and consequently much of the same condition. Said by *Herodotus* (by whom they were called *Adyrnachidæ*) to be govern'd by the like Laws and Customs as the *Egyptians* were; but do differ from them in their habit. Of colour dark and black; of Constitution, lean and dry, and inclining to Melancholy; angry on every little occasion, very litigious and eager Prosecutors of their Dues. By an old Observation among themselves, they abstained both from Beef and Hog-meat. So obstinate in denying their accustomed Tributes, that he who could not shew the Marks of his Sufferings for it, either *Black* or *Blem*, was accounted nobody: And so resolved to conceal any thing disgraceful to them, that if any of them were apprehended for a Robbery, no torment could compel him to tell his Name. At this time little differing in Person, Temper, or Condition, from the *Egyptians*, *Moors*, and *Arabes* intermixt amongst them.

Converted to the Faith of *Christ*, with, or not long after the rest of *Egypt*, of which then reckoned for a Province, it became part of the *Patriarchate* of *Alexandria*; whose Jurisdiction over it was confirmed by the Council of *Nice*; to the calling of which famous Council, this Country occasionally concurred, by bringing into the World that wretched *Arius*, who with his *Heterodoxies* and contentious *Cavils*, had disturbed the Church. His *Herésie* condemned in that famous Council; but his Person, by the Divine Justice of God, reserved to a more remarkable punishment: Being sent for by the Emperor *Constantine* to make a Recantation of his former *Herésies*, he first writ out a Copy of his own Opinions, which he had in his Bosom; and then writing out the Recantation expected from him, took Oath that he did really mean as he had Written; which Words the Emperor referred to the Recantation, he to the Paper in the Bosom. But God would not be so cozened, though the Emperor was. For as he passed in Triumph through the Streets of *Constanti-*

nople, he drew aside into a private House of Ease, where he voided his Guts in the Draught, and sent his Soul as an *Harbinger* to the Devil, to make room for his Body.

Not more infamous for the Birth of this *Miscreant*, who denied the Divinity of *Christ*; than famous for the Birth of one of the *Sibyls*, hence surnamed *Libyca*, by whom the same had been fore-shewn. Which *Sibyls* seem to have taken denomination from *Διδασκαλῆς*, i. e. *Jovis consiliorum conscia*. They were in number Ten, viz. 1. *Perfica*, 2. *Libyca*, 3. *Delphica*, 4. *Cumæa*, 5. *Samia*, 6. *Hellepontica*, 7. *Tiburtina*, 8. *Albunea*, 9. *Erythræa*, and 10. *Cumana*; which last is affirmed to have written the Nine Books of *Sibyls*. They were all presented by an Old Woman to *Tarquinius Superbus*; but he not willing to pay so great a Sum of Money as was demanded, denied them; whereupon the Old Woman burnt three of them, requiring as much Money for the other six as for all; which being denied, she also burnt another three, asking as much for the three remaining as for the rest; which *Superbus*, amazed, gave, and the old Trot vanished. These Books contained manifest Tokens of the Kingdom of *Christ*, his Name, his Birth and Death. They were burned by the Arch-Traytor *Stilico*. So that those Prophecies of theirs, which are now extant, are for the most part only such as had been extracted out of other Writings, where their Authority had been quoted. Concerning which, though *Casaubon*, and some other of our great *Philologers*, conceive them to be *pia fraudes*; composed of purpose by the Fathers of the *Primitive Times*, to win credit to the Faith of *CHRIST*; yet dare I not so far disparage those most godly Men, as to believe they would support so strong an Edifice with so weak a Prop, or borrow help from Falsehood to evict a Truth. Or if they durst have been so imprudently venturous, how easie had it been for their learned Adversaries, *Porphyrie*, *Julian*, and the rest of more eminent note, to have detected the Imposture, and silenced the Christian *Advocates* with reproach and scorn? But of this enough here, more at large elsewhere.

Rivers of Note I find not any. 'Tis well, if in a Country so full of Sands, there be any at all: Some Lakes I meet with in my Authors; the principal of which, 1. *Laccus*, 2. *Lacus Lacomedis*, now *Linxamo*, 3. *Clærtus*; sufficient to preserve their few Cattel from the taint of thirst. The Mountains of most note, 1. those called *Anogambri*, 2. and that named *Azar*; this last extended West and East, in a straight Line from the 51 degree of Longitude, to the 53. 3. *Aliphus*, 4. *Ogdomus*, 5. *Timodes*, 6. *Alpis*; not much observable, but that they serve for Land-marks to discover the Country.

Towns of note there are none now in it. Of most esteem in former times, 1. *Batrachus*, by some called *Menelaus*, an Haven-Town, 2. *Phthia*; and 3. *Anisisphyra*, two Port-Towns also. 4. *Tetrapyr-gia*, so called from its four Towers, the *Antipyrgus* of *Ptolemy*, 5. *Mesuchis*, more within the Land, 6. *Mazacilla*, another Mid-land Town. 7. *Chæreola*, mentioned amongst the chief Cities of this Tract by *Ammianus*, 8. *Paratonium*, now *Porto-rassa*, which with *Pelusium* are by *Florus* called the two Horns of *Egypt*; which whosoever held fast, would be sure to master it. By some old Writers it had formerly been called *Ammonia*, as we read in *Stephanus* and *Strabo*; from the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, seated very near it. So anciently honoured with an Oracle, (if that were any honour to it) that *Semiramis* is said to have come hither to enquire of her death; *Persous* and *Hercules*, touching their Ad-
ventures

ventures. The like, but not long after, was done by *Alexander* the Great; but the Oracle by that time had learnt to flutter, and puffed him up with a proud conceit of being the Son of that God whom he came to worship. The Temple seated in the middle of a vast sandy *Desart*, environ'd with a pleasant and delightful Grove, about six Miles or more in circuit; watered with whollome Springs, refreshed with a temperate Air, and shaded with Fruit-bearing Trees, which carried in their Leaves a perpetual Spring. Fortified with a Triple Wall, within the first whereof was a *Royal Palace* of the Kings; within the second a *Seraglio* for his Women; in the third, Lodgings for the Officers at Court: The Oracle fitly placed (so the *Priests* would have it) near the *Seraglio* of the Ladies; before the entrance a fair Fountain, wherein the Oblations were first washed, then offered. A place of great repute in sacred and civil estimate; all the adjoining Country taking hence the Name of *Ammoniaca*, and by that Name reckoned amongst the Provinces of the Patriarchate of *Alexandria*. 9. *Antipbra*, on the East border of it towards *Alexandria*. 10. *Barce*, called afterwards *Ptolemais*, by the Name of one of the *Ptolemies*, by whom repaired and beautified. Of such account, that from hence the whole Country had the Name of *Barca*, and the Inhabitants of *Barcæi*, (——— *Lateque furentes Barcæi*) as in that of *Virgil*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Libyrarchæ* and *Bassachitæ*, in the North; the *Ogdoni*, *Buzes*, and *Adyrmachidæ*, in the South; the *Goniataæ* and *Profaditæ*, in the midland parts; the *Libyægyptii*, bordering nearest unto *Egypt*, with the People whereof so intermingled, as to make up betwixt them but one Name and Nation. Others there were of less, or as little note, but all descended properly of *Naphtubim*, the Son of *Misraim*; from whom the Name of *Neptune*, originally a *Libyan* Deity, seems to be derived; yet so that *Lehabin* his Brother must come in for a share; the Founder, as it is conceived, of the *Libyægyptii* before mentioned. Being then of the same original with those of *Egypt*, they followed the same Fortunes also, till the times of the *Ptolemies*; by whom sometimes given for portion with the Title of a Kingdom to their younger Children. By the last Will and Testament of *Apion*, the last King hereof, a Bastard-Son of *Ptolemy* surnamed *Euergetes* the seventh King of that House; bequeathed unto the Senate and People of *Rome*. By whom first suffered to live under them, as a *Free-state*, till the Conquest of *Egypt*; then reckoned as a part of that, and so accordingly described by *Ptolemy*; where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammoniaca* occur amongst the *Nomi*, or Divisions of it. Afterwards made a distinct Province of that Diocese, and govern'd by a Lord-President, under the *Præfectus Augustalis*, or supreme Commander of the Emperors.

2. CYRENE.

CYRENE is bounded on the East, with *Marmarica*; on the West, with *Africa propria*, or the Realm of *Tunis*, and some part of the *Mediterranean*, and the greater *Syrtis*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South, with *Libya Inferior*, or the *Desarts* of *Libya*.

It took this Name from *Cyrene*, the chief City of it, from whence sometimes also called *Cyrenaica*; by *Pliny* and some other *Roman* Writers, it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, viz. 1. *Cyrene*, 2. *Ptolemais*, 3. *Arfinoe*, 4. *Darnice*, 5. *Berenice*: by *Ammianus* for the same Reason *Libya Pentapolis*, the Name of *Libya* extending over many of these *Roman* Provinces. And finally, at the pre-

sent, it passeth with that last described by the Name of *Barca*, or *Barca Marmarica*: the whole extent whereof in length from the greater *Syrtis* unto *Egypt*, is no less than 1300 Miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Country in the South parts desolate and barren, stored with few Towns, and not many Villages; the People living up and down in scatter'd Houses, and at such a distance, as if it were in so many Islands. Destitute not of Springs and Rivers only, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping; if any fell, it was dried up presently by the Sands. But within fifteen Miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitful and well inhabited.

The People in old times were said to have been utterly ignorant of buying and selling, of fraud and stealing, not knowing, or not caring for the Use of Money; content with little, not superfluous in their Cloaths or Buildings; their Houses for the most part (except only in their greater Cities) made of Olive-Twigs. Much alter'd in the first part of their Character, since the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Thieving Nation, given wholly to Robbery and Spoil. So lazy that they will not Manure or Till their Land, but provide themselves with Corn from *Sudy*; laying their Children to pawn for it, till by their Thieving they can raise a sufficient Sum to discharge the Debt.

One only River I find in it, but of Fame enough to serve for many; by *Ptolemy* called *Luthon*, by *Pliny*, *Lethon*; by the Poets *Lethe*. Swallowed by the Earth not far from its first Original, it riseth up again about *Berenice*; feigned therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create forgetfulness in all them that drink of it; it being the condition of the Dead to remember nothing. Thence the occasion of the fancy. Some Lakes I find also in it, whereof one occasioned by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the Land (where indeed more necessary) near *Paliurus*. With Mountains better stored (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, 1. Those called *Herculis Arena*, the Sands of *Hercules*, thwarting the Country East and West, 2. *Bucolicus*, on the South of those: And, 3. *Volpus*, a long ridge of Hills, bordering upon *Africa Propria*.

Cities of most note in it, 1. *Apollonia*, in the East parts near the Promontory called *Zephyrium*, in the Confines of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*. 2. *Cyrene*, in the West of that; once of such power, that it contended with *Carthage* for some preheminiencies: Then the chief Lady of this Tract, which it gave this name to. The birth-place of *Eratoſthenes* the Mathematician, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon* of *Cyrene*, whom the *Jews* compelled to carry our *Saviour's* Cross. 3. *Ptolemais*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Arfinoe*; built or repaired by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*; the Episcopal City of *Syneſius*, a learned and a religious Bishop of the Primitive times, as appears by his Epistles extant. 4. *Arfinoe*, on the East-side of the River *Luthon*; so called in honour of *Arfinoe*, the Sister of *Philadelphus*, and Wife of *Magus*, once King of this Country. 5. *Berenice*, on the Western Bank of the said River, so called from *Berenice* the Mother, or (another of the same nature) the Daughter of *Magus*: The furthest Town of all this Country, bordering on the Promontory called *Boreum*, and the greater *Syrtis*. This last a Quick-sand very dangerous to Mariners, in compass 635 Miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6. *Paliurus*, more within the Land, but on the Borders of *Libya* or *Marmarica*, South to *Apollonia*. 7. *Aptungis*, now *Lungisari*, by *Ptolemy* called *Aptuchi Fanum*. 8. *Herculis Turris*, the Tower of *Hercules* near the Greater *Syrtis*; erected in the honour of *Hercules*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing

robbing the Orchards of the *Hesperides* of their Golden Apples. Those *Hesperides* said to be *Ægle*, *Arethusa*, and *Hesperethusa*, the three Daughters of *Atlas*; Their Orchard placed by *Ptolemy*, betwixt this Tower and *Pellicurus*; by *Pomponius*, in the *Atlantic* Islands; by *Virgil* in *Mauritania Tingitana*; by *Pliny*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and possibly in all alike. 9. *Zemithus*, 10. *Acabis* in the mid-lands; all worn out of memory. 11. *Fessan*, of greatest name now, though scarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Asbetæ* on the East, the *Barcitæ* near the *Greater Syrtis*, the *Macatutæ* and *Leganici* near the Mountains of *Hercules*; all probably descended from *Naphtubim* the Son of *Mizraim*, of whom there still remain some Foot-steps in *Aptuchi Fanum*, the Fane or Temple of *Aptuchus*. This *Aptuchus*, by some mistakingly called *Autuchus*, and by the *Grecians* said to be the Son of *Cyrene*, and the Brother of *Aristæus*; who being sent out to seek their Fortunes, *Aristæus* fell into the Island named *Cæos*; and *Aptuchus*, or *Autuchus* into *Libya*, both by them first planted. *Neptune*, the Deity of this Country, by the *Egyptians* called *Neptitim*, seems to come from *Naptubim*; most highly worshipped by this People, because he first taught them *τὴν ἄρτιον καὶ δέξιον*, the Art of training Horses to the Coach or Chariot; in which the *Cyrenians* afterwards grew so expert, that they could drive their Chariots in a Round or Circle, and always keep their Chariot-wheels in the self-same tract. Of no great power, till *Battus* a noble *Spartan*, landing in this Country, had built the City of *Cyrene*; and founded it in so good a course of Life and Discipline, that in short time it came to have Dominion over the most part of this Country; and to contend with *Carthage* about their Territories. Warred on by *Apries* King of *Egypt*, they sued unto the *Greeks* for aid, and by their assistance overcame him. Long after which, falling at odds among themselves, they craved aid of *Ptolemy* the first of that Race, by whom they were finally subdued. Left by him at his Death to *Magus*, a Son of his last Wife by a former Husband, whom he had married to *Arfinoe*, one of his Daughters; it came again to the Crown of *Egypt*, by the marriage of *Berenice*, the Daughter and Heir of *Magus*, with the Son of *Ptolemy Philadelphus*. Alienated from which Crown again, for the preferment of some of the younger Princes; and in the end given by one of the *Ptolemies*, the last King hereof, to the People of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Augustus Caesar*, by whom united in one Government with the Isle of *Crete*; but made a Province of it self by the following Emperors, never since separated from the fortune and Affairs of *Egypt*, to which now we hasten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of *Egypt* was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the question in this point, betwixt them and the *Scythians*, being not easily decided. Whether it were so Ancient, as the *Egyptians* say, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, That they had the Memory and Story of 13000 years, and a Succession of 330 Kings in the time of *Amasis* the second, who was contemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if understood of *Solar* Years, measured by the Course of the Sun, must not be allowed of; because it maketh them many thousand Years older than the Creation: but if of *Lunary*, which is most agreeable unto the Account of the *Egyptians*, who reckoned their Years by Months; it will amount unto no more than to 1000, or 1100 years, and so fall answerably to the times following after the Flood. But for their Kings, 330 in their reckonings, and those of twenty four or twenty

five several *Dynasties*, the matter is not so soon made up. For either those Kings must not be all Kings or supreme Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were, but their several *Regents* or *Viceregents*, armed with Regal power; and those *Dynasties* not the succession of so many Regal Families, but of their Substitutes and Lieutenants, many of which might live successively under one supreme; or else we must needs look on *Egypt* as distracted in those times into several Kingdoms, amongst the Princes of those *Dynasties* before remembered; or finally, we must look for some of those Kings and Princes before the Flood; by either of these ways, the business may be well agreed. For if that most of them were but the names of several *Regents*, (as probably enough it is) there might be many such in the Reign of one King; according to the King's fancy, the merit of particular Persons, or the necessities of State: Changes of great Officers, especially if grown too great, are not new nor strange. If they were all Kings, or supreme Rulers, (as it is also probable) we find not any one thing of moment to persuade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their several parts (as in other Countries in those times) till the greater had devoured the less. Or if they were the Names of such sovereign Princes, as had the sole Command of *Egypt* before the Flood, (as some think they were) they might amount in all to so great a number, and so many *Dynasties*; the Iniquity of those times, the ambition of great Persons, and consequently the short lives of the Kings being duly pondered. That *Egypt*, and most part of the World, was peopled before the Flood, hath been already proved in our general Preface: If peopled, then without question under some Form of Government: The names of which Governours (call them Kings or Rulers, or what else you please) might be preserved in *Egypt* on Pillars of Brass or Stone; or otherwise transmitted by Tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Mizraim*, by whom this Country was first planted after the Confusion of *Babel*. But that old Stock of Kings and People being destroyed in the general Deluge, the Children of *Mizraim* succeeded next in their desolate Dwellings; yet so that the Posterity of *Chus* and *Lchabin*, two others of the Sons of *Cham*, had their shares therein. From the first of which descended the Inhabitants of those parts of *Egypt*, which lay along the shores of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: In which respect, not only one of the *Nomi*, or divisions bordering on the *Isthmus*, had the name of *Arabia*; but the People dwelling on those shores, were called *Arabes*, divided into the *Arabes Azarei*, and *Arabes Adei*. And from the other came that mixture of Nations, called *Liby-egyptii*, or *Libyans* and *Egyptians* intermixt together, inhabiting in *Maræotica*, and the Western parts. But though these People were derived from several Ancestors, they made one Nation in the total; subject to *Mizraim* as their Chief, and after his decease, unto his Successors in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Concerning whom we may observe, That in *Cham*, our greatest Antiquaries find the name of *Jupiter Hammon*: *Mizraim* they guess to be *Osiris*, the great God of *Egypt*. To him succeeded *Typhon*, not by right of Blood, but by Usurpation; who dispossessed by *Lchabin*, the Brother of *Mizraim* (whom the *Greeks* call *Hercules Egyptius*) the Kingdom was restored to *Orus*, the Son of *Osiris*. During the time of these few Princes, happened all those things which were recorded in the Scriptures concerning *Egypt*; from the first going down of *Abraham* in the time of *Osiris*, to the advancement of *Joseph* in the Reign of *Orus*, in which there passed the 15, 16, and 17

Dynasties

Dynasties of Regal Vice-Roys; Lieutenants only, as I take it, to those mighty Princes. The Kings themselves called generally by the name of *Pharaoh*, though they had all their proper and peculiar Names; as afterwards their Successors here had the name of *Ptolemy*, and the *Roman* Emperors, that of *Cæsar*. Few of them famous in the Stories of other Nations, or of renown for their Atchievements and Exploits abroad; contenting themselves with the Revenues of their own Dominions, and spending the surplufage thereof in building Cities, draining the Marshes of the *Nile*, or other works of Ostentation and Magnificence. Only *Sesoftris* is of fame for his undertakings, though when he had cast up his Accompt, he got nothing by them; of whom it is reported, That being a King of great Wealth and Puissance, he had brought under subjection all his neighbouring Princes whom he compelled in turns to draw his Chariot. It happened that one of these unfortunate Princes cast his Eye many times on the Coach-wheel, and being by *Sesoftris* demanded the cause of his so doing, he replied, *That the falling of that Spoke lowest, which but just before was the highest in the Wheel, put him in*

mind of the instability of Fortune. The King deeply weighing the Parable, would never after be so drawn in his Chariot. He was also the first that encountred the *Scythians* in Battel; having already in conceit conquered them, before he led his Army against them. The *Scythians* much marvelled, that a King of such great Revenues would wage War against a Nation so poor, with whom the fight would be doubtful, the Victory unprofitable; but to be vanquished, a perpetual Infamy and Disgrace. For their parts they resolved to meet him as an Enemy, whose overthrow would enrich them. When the Armies came to joyn, the *Egyptians* were discomfited, and pursued even to their own Doors by the Enemy. But the *Scythian* could not enter the Country, because of the Fenns, with whose passage they were unacquainted; and so they returned. Which said, without troubling our selves with their many *Dynasties*, we will lay down the Succession of their Kings, as well as we can; the disagreement of Historians and Chronologers, touching this Succession, being irreconcilable.

SIIII

THE

THE

PHARAOS, or KINGS of EGYPT of Egyptian Race.

A. M.			A. M.		
	1	M Izraim, the Son of Cham, by the Grecians called <i>Osiris</i> : In whose time <i>Abraham</i> went into <i>Egypt</i> .	2987	40	<i>Pseucenes</i> , conceived to be the <i>Cheops</i> of <i>Herodotus</i> , Founder of the vast <i>Pyramis</i> before described. 41.
	2	<i>Typhon</i> , an Usurper.	3028	41	<i>Nepher-Cherres</i> . 4.
	3	<i>Orus</i> , the Son of <i>Osiris</i> , restored unto the Kingdom by his Uncle <i>Lehabim</i> ; the Advancer of <i>Joseph</i> .	3032	42	<i>Amenophthis V.</i> 9.
2207	4	<i>Amasis</i> , <i>Themosis</i> , or <i>Amos</i> , in whose time <i>Jacob</i> went down into <i>Egypt</i> . 25.	3041	43	<i>Opsochon</i> , the <i>Asychis</i> of <i>Herodotus</i> .
2233	5	<i>Chehorn</i> . 12.	3047	44	<i>Psamuchos</i> . 9.
2245	6	<i>Amenophis</i> , or <i>Amenophthis</i> . 21.	3056	45	<i>Pseucenes II.</i> 14.
2266	7	<i>Amersis</i> , the Sister of <i>Amenophthis</i> . 22.	3070	46	<i>Sesonchis</i> . 21.
2288	8	<i>Mephres</i> . 12.	3091	47	<i>Uforthon</i> . 15.
2300	9	<i>Mesphormuthesis</i> . 25.	3106	48	<i>Takellotis</i> . 13.
2325	10	<i>Thamosis</i> , or <i>Thuthmosis</i> . 10.	3119	49	<i>Patubastis</i> . 40.
2335	11	<i>Amenophthis II.</i> supposed to be <i>Memnon</i> and the Vocal Statue. 31.	3159	50	<i>Oserchon</i> , the second <i>Hercules Egyptius</i> , as some will have it. 8.
2366	12	<i>Orus II.</i> the <i>Busiris</i> of the Grecians, a bloody Tyrant; who commanded the Male-children of <i>Israel</i> to be slain. 37.	3167	51	<i>Psamnis</i> . 15.
2403	13	<i>Acencheres</i> , by some called <i>Thermutis</i> , the Daughter of <i>Amenophthis</i> the second, and afterwards the Wife of <i>Orus</i> ; who preserved <i>Moses</i> , and survived her Husband. 13.	3185	52	<i>Bochoris</i> , called by the name of <i>So</i> , 2 Kings 17. 4. taken and burnt by <i>Sabakon</i> the King of <i>Ethiopia</i> . 44.
2416	14	<i>Rathosis</i> , the Son of <i>Orus</i> . 6.	3229	53	<i>Sabakon</i> King of <i>Ethiopia</i> . 8.
2422	15	<i>Acencheres II.</i> 12.	3238	54	<i>Sevacus</i> Son of <i>Sabakon</i> , 14.
2449	16	<i>Cencbres</i> , by some called <i>Arenasis</i> ; <i>Bochoris</i> by others; drowned in the <i>Red-Sea</i> , with his Horses and Chariots. 16.	3252	55	<i>Taracon</i> , falsely supposed to be the <i>Zerab</i> of the Scriptures. 10.
2453	17	<i>Acherres</i> . 8.	3270	56	<i>Stephinales</i> . 7.
2462	18	<i>Cherres</i> . 10.	3277	57	<i>Nicluspes</i> , after whose death followed an Aristocracy of 12 Princes, who having governed 15 years, were divested of their Authority by one of their own number, called
2472	19	<i>Armais</i> , by the Grecians called <i>Danaus</i> , whose fifty Daughters being married to the fifty Sons of his Brother <i>Egyptus</i> , murdered their Husbands; for which cause <i>Danaus</i> , being forced out of <i>Egypt</i> , passed into <i>Greece</i> , where attaining to the Kingdom of <i>Argos</i> , he gave unto the Grecians the name of <i>Danai</i> .	3288	58	<i>Psamniticus</i> , who first made the Grecians acquainted with <i>Egypt</i> , whom he invited to his aid against the <i>Syrians</i> ; the Founder of the famous <i>Labyrinth</i> before mentioned, and no less memorable for his prudent preventing of the <i>Scythians</i> from breaking into his Country; of which we spake before, when we were in <i>Tartaria</i> . 54.
2575	20	<i>Rameses</i> , surnamed <i>Egyptus</i> , the Brother of <i>Danaus</i> .	3335	59	<i>Necho</i> , who slew <i>Josiah</i> at the battel of <i>Megiddo</i> . 25.
2580	21	<i>Amenophthis III.</i> 10.	3360	60	<i>Psamnis II.</i> 44.
2590	22	<i>Sethos</i> , or <i>Sesothis</i> . 55.	3366	61	<i>Apries</i> , called <i>Hophra</i> , Jer. 44. subdued by <i>Nebuchadnezzar</i> , and deposed by <i>Amasis</i> . 25.
2645	23	<i>Rhaphaces</i> , or <i>Ranses</i> . 66.	3391	62	<i>Amasis II.</i> 44.
2711	24	<i>Amenophthis IV.</i> 40.	3435	63	<i>Psammitas</i> or <i>Psamniticus II.</i> a King of six months only; vanquished by <i>Cambyses</i> the second Monarch of <i>Persia</i> , who united <i>Egypt</i> to that Empire; under which it continued till the time of <i>Darius</i> , the sixth King of the <i>Medes</i> and <i>Persians</i> : in the 2d. year of whose Reign it revolted from him, and became a Kingdom of it self, as in former times.
2751	25	<i>Rameses II.</i> 26.	3555	64	<i>Amyrteus</i> , the first King after the Revolt. 6.
2777	26	<i>Thuoris</i> 7. After whose death succeeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the <i>Diopolitani</i> , who held the Kingdom for the space of 177 years. Their Names we find not, but that one of the latest of them, whose Daughter <i>Solomon</i> married, was called <i>Vaphra</i> ; and perhaps <i>Ogdoos</i> , who removed the Royal Seat from <i>Thebes</i> to <i>Memphis</i> , might be another, and the eighth, as his name importeth.	3561	65	<i>Nepherites</i> , 6.
2961	39	<i>Smendes</i> , the <i>Sisac</i> of the Scriptures, who made War upon <i>Rehoboam</i> the Son of <i>Solomon</i> ; conceived to be the <i>Sesostris</i> of <i>Herodotus</i> , and others of the ancient Writers, of whom sufficiently before.	3567	66	<i>Achoris</i> , 12.
			3579	67	<i>Psammites III.</i> 1.
			3580	68	<i>Nepherites II.</i> a King of two Months only.
				69	<i>Nectanebos</i> . 18.
			3598	70	<i>Teos</i> or <i>Tachos</i> , deposed by

3600

3600 71 *Nectanebus II.* the last King of the natural *Egyptian* Race, that ever govern'd *Egypt* by the name of a King. For in the 18th. of the Reign of this King, *Egypt* was again recovered by the valour of *Ochus*, the eighth Emperour of *Persia*. And when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came, and without Blows won this fertile Kingdom; which yielded him, during his Life, the yearly value of 8000 Talents. After his Death, this Kingdom fell to the share of *Ptolemæus* the Son of *Lagus*, from whom all the subsequent Kings of *Egypt* were called *Ptolemæus*.

The Second DYNASTY, or the PTOLEMEAN Kings of Egypt.

- A. M.*
- 3481 1 **P**tolemy, one of *Alexander's* Captains, repured the Son of *Lagus*; but supposed to be the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, half-brother to *Alexander*, 40.
- 3681 2 *Ptol. Philadelphus*, who filled the Library of *Alexandria* with 700000 Volumes, and caused the 72 Interpreters to translate the Bible.
- 3717 3 *Ptol. Euergetes* the Son of *Philadelphus*, vanquished *Seleucus Callinicus* King of *Syria*, and probably had subdued the Kingdom, if not called back by Domestick dissensions, 26.
- 3743 4 *Ptol. Philopator*, a cruel, voluptuous and incestuous Prince, cruelly slew *Cleomenes* the last King of *Sparta*, who had fled to his Father for relief, in the time of his exile, 17.
- 3760 5 *Ptol. Epiphanes*, at the age of five years succeeded his Father; protected by the *Romans*, against *Antiochus* the Great of *Syria*, who had an aim upon his Kingdom, 28.
- 3784 6 *Ptol. Philometor*, the Son of *Epiphanes*, by *Cleopatra* the Daughter of *Antiochus*; protected in his nonage by the *Romans* also: Caused himself to be Crowned King of *Syria*, but again relinquish'd it, 35.
- 3829 7 *Ptol. Euergetes II.* for his deformity called *Physcon*, the Brother of *Ptol. Philometor*, a wicked Prince, and one that spent the greatest part of his Reign in a causeless War against *Cleopatra*, his Wife and Sister, 29.
- 3858 8 *Ptol. Latbargus* reigned 16 years with *Cleopatra* his Mother, by whom dispossessed of his Estate for the space of ten years; after her death was sole Lord of *Egypt*. His Brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-mother as her Associate, in the time of his deprivation, and passing in the account of the Kings of *Egypt*.
- 3892 9 *Ptol. Auletes*, the Son of *Latburus*, surnamed also *Dionysius*, whose Brother being settled by him in the Isle of *Cyprus*, was most unjustly stripped of it by the power of the *Romans*: And he himself ousted of *Egypt* by his own Subjects, but restored by the aid and love of *Pompey*.
- 3922 10 *Ptol. Dionysius*, called also *Junior*, or the younger, together with *Cleopatra* his Wife and Sister, succeeded *Auletes* in the Throne, which they held together by the space of three Years. In the last of which, *Pompey* was barbarously slain on the Shores of *Egypt*, by the command of *Julius* the young King's Governour; and the young King himself unfortunately slain in the *Alexandrian* Tumult against *Julius Cæsar*.
- 3925 11 *Cleopatra*, the Wife and Sister of *Dionysius*, restored to the Crown of *Egypt* by the bounty of *Cæsar*, of whom exceedingly beloved for her Wit and Beauty. After which she governed *Egypt* 19 years in her own sole Right, with great Pomp and Splendour: When being embarked in the Bed and Fortunes of *Marc Anthony*, she killed her self not long after his fatal Overthrow at the Battel of *Actium*, that she might not be led in triumph through *Rome*.
- These *Ptolemean* Princes of *Egypt*, were for the most part, in Wars with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they were by turns victorious, and vanquished; neither Prince having cause to boast of his Bargain. After the death of *Cleopatra*, whose Life and Love with *Marcus Antonius*, I will not now relate, this Country fell to the share of the *Roman* Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governour hereof was but a Gentleman of *Rome*, no Senator being permitted to come into it; it being a Maxim of State, not to suffer Men of great Houses to come into that Country, whose revolt might endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was *Egypt*: For besides the natural situation of the place, very defensible; and besides the abundance of Money with which it was stored; this Country alone furnished the City of *Rome* with Corn for four Months yearly. Whence *Vespasian* being chosen Emperour by the *Syrian* Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his Concurrent *Vitellius*, hastened hither; to this end only, that detaining the ordinary provision of Victuals, he might by Famine compel the City of *Rome* to stand at his Devotion: *Ut urbem quoque externæ opis indigam fame urgeret*, as the Historian hath observed. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperour's sole Peculiar: Afterwards made (as well it might) an entire *Dioecesis* of it self, subordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*. In the division of the Empire allotted to the *Constantinopolitans*, whose Government being thought to be insupportable by this wanton People, they called in the *Saracens*, by whom the *Greek* Garrisons were cast out, and the Country made subject to *Haumar* the third of the *Caliphs*. Afterwards weary of them also,

they would have a *Caliph* of their own, revolting totally from the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. So that from this time forwards, we shall meet with two *Caliphs* at a time; the one residing at *Cairo*, in *Egypt*, to whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* of *Spain* and *Africk*

did submit themselves: The other at *Bagdat*, who Lorded it over all the rest, at least as to the Supreme Title, and some chief Prerogatives; though the main power was cantoned and disposed of among their Sultans.

The Third DYNASTY, or the CALIPHS of EGYPT.

A. C.	A. H.	
870	247	1 A Achmades, or Achmat, 10.
880	257	2 Tolen, 3.
883	260	3 Hamaria, 29.
903	280	4 Abarun, slain by Mustaphi, the Caliph of Babylon, 37.
940	317	5 Achid Muhamid, the Son of Tangi, 3.
943	320	6 Abigud, the Son of Achid, 27.
970	347	7 Meaz, Ledin, Illabi, of the race of Phatime and Hali, 5.
975	352	8 Aziz, the Son of Meaz, 21.
996	373	9 Elbachain, 23.
1019	396	10 Etaber Leazizdin Illabi, 16.
1035	412	11 Musteratzer Billabi, 60.
1056	472	12 Musteale, 5.
1100	477	13 Elamir Bahacan Illabi, 35.
1135	512	14 Elhapit Ladin Illabi.

15 Etzabar.

16 Elphaiz.

17 Etzar Ledin Illabi, the Son of Elphaiz, the last Caliph, or King of Egypt, of the Race of Phatime; the Turks succeeding after his death in this opulent Kingdom. Concerning whom we are to know, That Elphaiz the Father of Etzar, being overpowered by Almericus King of Hierusalem, craved aid of Norradine the Turkish Sultan of Damascus; which he received under the Conduct of Sarracon, or Shirachoch, a right valiant and stout Commander; who taking his advantages, not only cleared the Country of Almericus, but got the whole Kingdom to himself; dashing out the Brains of Elphaiz with his Horse-man's Mace. And though Etzar his Son assumed for a while the Title of Caliph; yet the destruction of himself, and the whole Phatimean Family rooted out by Sarracon, soon put an end to that Claim, and left the Kingdom in the peaceable possession of the Turkish Sultans.

THE FOURTH

DYNASTY, or the Race of the *TURKISH*
KINGS or CALIPHS of *EGYPT*.

- 1163 1 *Afereddin*, surnamed *Shirachob*, called *Sarracon*, by the Christian Writers; the first of the *Turks* that reigned in *Egypt*; of the Noble Family of *Aiub*.
- 1186 2 *Zeli-beddin*, called *Saladine* by the Christian Writers; the Son (or as some say, the Nephew,) of *Sarracon*, or *Shirachob*; confirmed in his Estate by the Caliph of *Bagdet*, under whose Jurisdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Schismatics. He obtained also the Kingdom of *Damascus*, conquered *Mesopotamia* and *Palestine*; and in the year 1190. regained the City of *Hierusalem*. A Prince who wanted nothing to commend him to succeeding Ages, nor to glorify him in the Kingdom of Heaven, but the saving Knowledge of *CHRIST JESUS*.
- 1199 3 *Elaziz*, the second Son of *Saladine*, succeeded in the Realm of *Egypt*; which he exchanged afterwards with his Brother *Eladel* for the Kingdom of *Damascus*.
- 4 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphtzel*, by the Christian Writers called *Meledine*, succeeded upon this exchange in the Kingdom of *Egypt*: and overcame the *Christians* without the loss of a Man, at the siege of *Cairo*, by letting loose the Sluces of *Nilus*, which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleasure.
- 1210 5 *Elchamul*.
- 1237 6 *Melech Affalach*, by the Christian Writers called *Melechfala*, the Son of *Elchamul*, who overcame *Lewis* the 9th of *France*; and going with that King towards *Damietta*, was slain by the Soldiers of his Guard, called *Mamaluks*.
- 1242 7 *Elmutan*, the Son of *Melech Affalach*, succeeded for a time in his Father's Throne. But the *Mamaluks* being resolved to obtain the Kingdom for themselves, enforced him to flee to a Tower of Wood, which they set on fire; the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran close by it) was there drowned, and the *Mamaluks* settled in the Kingdom, *An.* 1245.

The *Mamaluks* were the Off-spring of a People on the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea, vulgarly called the *Circassians*; whom *Melechfala* either bought of their Parents, or (at the second hand) of the *Tartars*, then newly Masters of those Countreys, to supply the want of Valour in the idle and effeminate People of *Egypt*, and out of them selected a choice Band of Men for the Guard of his Person: No Jew or *Mahometan's* Son could be admitted into this Order; they knowing their strength, and finding their opportunity, treacherously slew *Melechfala* their Lord and Master; appointing one *Azeddin Ibek*, a *Turcoman* by Nation, and therefore by most Christian Writers called *Tarquimencius*, (one of their own number) a Man of great Spirit and Valour, to suc-

ceed in the Throne. Unwilling to re-give the Supreme Authority into the Hands of the *Egyptians*; and not permitting their own Sons to enjoy the name and privilege of *Mamaluks*; they bought yearly certain numbers of *Circassian* Slaves, whom they committed to the keeping of the *Egyptians*, by them to be instructed in the *Egyptian* Language, and the Law of *Mahomet*. Being thus fitted for Employment, they were taught the Discipline of War, and by degrees advanced into the highest Offices of Power and Trust, as now the *Janizaries* are in the *Turkish* Empire: In choice and ordering of whom, as the *Ottoman Turks* were preceded by those of *Egypt*; so it is possible enough that the *Janizaries* may make as great a Change in the *Turkish* Empire, as the *Mamaluks* did in the *Egyptian*. So unsafe a thing it is for a Prince to commit the sole guard of his Person, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of such, whom not the sense of a natural Duty, but the hopes of Profit or Preferment may make useful to him. For thus we find, That *Constantinus*, a King of the *Britains*, was murdered by his Guard of *Picts*: Most of the *Roman* Emperours, by the hands of those whom they entrusted, either with the guard of their Persons, or the command of their Armies: And I think no Man can be ignorant, how many times the Princes and Estates of *Italy* have been brought into the extremest dangers, by trusting too much to the Honesty of mercenary Soldiers and Commanders. Take we for instance the proceedings of *Giacopo Picennio*, who with his Followers first took pay of *Ferdinand* the first of *Naples*; left him to fight for his vowed Enemy, *John* Duke of *Calabria*, the Son of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, whom he also forsook in his greatest need. The like we find of *Francisco Sforza*, first entertained by the Duke of *Milan*, from whom he revolted to the *Florentines*; from them to the *Venetians*; and being again received into the pay of the State of *Milan*, made use of their own Army to subdue that City. Nor can I speak better of the *Switzers*, or their dealing in this kind with the *French* Kings, the *Sforza's* Dukes of *Milan*, and with whom not, (to say the truth) that ever trusted or employed them?

Now as it is unsafe for a Prince to commit the custody of his Person, or the defence of his Estates to the Faith of Foreigners; so it is dangerous to him to call in such Aids, and to commit his Fortunes either wholly or principally, unto their Fidelity. A moderate supply of Men, Money, or Munition from a Confederate King, is, I confess, in most cases convenient, in some necessary: As well to save their Natives from the Sword, as to try a Friend, and interest an Ally in the same Cause. But to invite so great a number of Succours, as from Helpers may become Masters, and oppress the People whom they came to defend; is that Rock on which many *Realms* have suffered Shipwreck, and which a good Pilot of the State should with all care avoid; for as in the sickness of the Body natural, it is hurtful to a Man's Health and Life to take more Physick than it may (after the effect thereof be wrought) either digest

digest or put out again; so in the Body Politick, it is a perilous matter to receive more Succours, than what (after they have done the Deed they were sent for) we may either with conveniency reward and settle with us, or at liberty Expel. Of all surfeits, this of Foreign supplies is most incurable; and *Ne quid nimis*, it in nothing else true, is in this case Overt. There is no Kingdom; (I am verily perswaded) under the Sun, which hath not been by this means conquered; no Common-wealth, which hath not been by this means ruined. To relate all Examples, were infinite and tedious; to infer some pleasing to the Reader; and to illustrate the Point not unnecessary. To begin with former times, *Philip of Macedon*, called into *Greece* to assist the *Thebans* against the *Phocians*, brought all that Country, in a manner, under his command. The *Romans*, by aiding the *Sicilians* against the *Carthaginians*, possessed themselves of that flourishing Island; by assisting the *Hidui* against the *Sequani*, mastered *Gallia*; by succouring *Androgeus* against *Cassibelan*, seized on *Britain*; by siding with the *Ætolians* against *Perseus*, united to their Empire all the Kingdom of *Macedon*; and by the same course what not? In after-ages, the *Britains* called in the *Saxons*, and were by them thrust out of all; the *Irish* called in the *English*, by whom they were in process of time totally subdued; and the *Indians* called in the *Mongul-Tartars*, who now Lord it over them. These Foreign Supplies are invited, or let into a Country, commonly in four cases. First, when some one Man upon Discontent, or desire of revenge, openeth them a way into a Country: Upon which Motives, *Narses* invited the *Lombards* into *Italy*; and Count *Julian* brought the *Moors* into *Spain*; the one to be revenged on the Empress *Sophia*, who had despihtfully reviled him, the other to revenge himself on King *Roderick*, who ravished his Daughter. Secondly, when a weaker Faction makes way for them, to maintain their cause against a stronger. On which ground, the Duke of *Burgundy*, being oppressed by the Faction of *Orleans*, made way for *Henry* the Fifth to pass into *France*; and the *Leaguers* drew the *Spaniards* in, to hold up their declining Cause against *Henry* the 4th. Thirdly, when an Ambitious Prince makes use of a Foreign Power, to usurp upon the Rights of another Man. And for that cause *Ludowick Sforza* perswaded *Charles* the 8th. to undertake the Conquest of the Realm of *Naples*; that by the countenance of his Arms, he might appropriate to himself the Dukedom of *Milan*. Fourthly, when a King over-burdened by a foreign or domestick Force, which he is not able to resist, requires the help of a foreign Friend: In which case, *Plus à medico quàm à morbo mali*, the Physick proves many times worse than the Disease. For thus the Kings of *Naples* of the House of *Aragon*, being in danger of the *French*, drew in the Aids of *Ferdinand* the Catholick, the Cousin-German once removed of the King then being; and the *Caliphs* of *Egypt*, not able to withstand the Forces of *Almericus*, craved aid of the *Turks*: By which means, both those Kingdoms were made a prey to their foreign Friends, and by avoiding *Scylla*, fell into *Charybdis*. Nay, many times

it so happeneth, that these Foreign Succours joyn in design with those, against whom they were called, and divide the conquered State between them. And so we find, That the *Burgundians* being called by *Stilico* into *Gaul*, to prevent the breaking of the *Franks*, or *French*, joyned with them in a common League against the *Romans*, whom they dispossessed at last of all that Country. Only amongst so many Examples to this purpose, we find the *Low-Country-men* to have prospered by these Foreign Aids; who by the assistance of the *English*, ransomed themselves from that Yoke of bondage which was intended to be put upon them by the King of *Spain*. This I acknowledge to be true, and look upon it as a great Argument of the Integrity and Honesty of the *English* Nation; although it be as true withal, that the *English* never had such an Army there, as to be able to subdue them. But give me such another instance, I will quit the Cause: For the same *Low-Country-men* found it otherwise with the Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Henry* the 3d. of *France*, whom they created Duke of *Brabant*, and their Governour-General, permitting him to bring in as many of the *French*, as either his Authority, or their own Moneys were able to raise: who was no sooner settled in that command, but he made it his chief business to seize upon their strongest Holds, and to be a more absolute Prince amongst them, than ever the *Spaniards* or *Burgundians* had been before. So that I think I may conclude, That these foreign Succours are the last to be tryed, and the least to be trusted, of any remedies in State. It is wonderful that a thing so often tried and so well known, should be so stubbornly pursued by the *Jacobite* Faction now in *England*, who for four Years together are restlessly plotting to bring the *French* Forces into *England*, under pretence of restoring *James* the Second, after he had fled thither, with an apparent intention to return with a *French* Army to Conquer this Nation, and extirpate the *English* Liberties and the Protestant Religion; the issue of which, if it should succeed, by the just judgment of God on a proud and sinful Nation, would be the desolating these Kingdoms, the Destruction of the Royal Family, for which these Men pretend a wonderful Love, and in the end, reduce the late King, together with these Kingdoms, under the Vassalage of the most formidable Natural Enemy of our Nation. These consequences being so visible, it is a wonderful thing any *English* Protestant can be so infatuated as to be guilty of it; but when Men are thoroughly incensed against each other, their Passions so blind their Reasons, that they often chuse a certain Ruin, to involve those they too much hate in the same with them. This Reflection might perhaps have been omitted here, but that I was willing to leave a Testimony to Posterity, of my detestation of their Folly; and for the Confusion also of another Faction, who, after all that is possible to be written, done, or said by me to the contrary, have so lately attempted to ruin me on that Pretence, and for the present, in a great Degree have effected the same. But it is now more than time to return to the *Mamelucks*; and in them to

THE FIFTH

DYNASTY of the EGYPTIAN KINGS, of
the Race of the MAMALUCKS.

A. Cb.

1255

1 **T**urquimenius, who being promoted to the Kingdom, released King Lewis, whom *Melechfala* his Predecessor had taken Prisoner, but performed not half the conditions agreed upon.

2 *Clothes* (by some called *Elmutabaz*) taking advantage of the Miseries of the *Turks*, then distressed by the *Tartars*, seized on the the greatest part of *Syria* and *Palestine*.

1260

3 *Bandocader* perfected the begun Conquests of *Clothes*, and took from the *Christians* the strong City of *Antioch*; carrying on his Armies as far as *Armenia*, where he did much spoil.

4 *Melechfai*, or *Melechfares*, restored the power of the *Mamalucks* in *Syria* and *Palestine*; where it had been much impaired by *Edward* the Son of *Henry* the 3d. of *England*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, &c.

1286

5 *Elpis*, or *Alphis*, recovered from the dissenting *Christians* the strong Cities of *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Tyre*, and *Sydon*; all which he razed to the ground, that they might not be any more serviceable to the Affairs of the *Christians*.

1291

6 *Araphus*, or *Eustrephus*, by birth a *German*, released *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, after he had been Prisoner 26 years. He rooted the *Christians* out of *Syria*, took *Ptolemais* the last Town they there held: and so razed it, that he made it fit to be ploughed.

7 *Melechnefar*, when he was Lieutenant to *Araphus*, was discomfited by *Cassanes*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*, with the loss of 40000 *Egyptians*: but *Cassanes* being departed, he recovered again all *Syria*, and destroyed *Hierusalem*; for which Service he was afterwards made Sultan of *Egypt*.

8 *Melechadel*, who I suppose to be that Sultan that govern'd *Egypt* when *Tamberlane* with irresistible violence conquered it; but of this I am not certain: neither can I meet with any constant and continued series (which I dare rely on) of his Successors in this Kingdom, till I come to

9 *Melechabella*, or *Melechnasar*, who in the year 1423, subdued the Isle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamaluck* Sultans.

1465

10 *Cathbeyus*, who much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a professed Enemy of *Bajazet* 2d. the 8th. King of the *Ottomans*.

1498

11 *Mahomet*, the Son of *Cathbeyus*, deposed by the *Mamalucks*, for fear the King-

dom might by him be made hereditary; it being against their usual custom, that the Son should succeed his Father, in the name and privileges of a *Mamaluck*.

1499

12 *Campson Charsesius*, succeeded on the deposing of *Mahomet*.

13 *Zanballat*, who deposed *Campson*, and not long after was deposed by

1500

14 *Tonombeus*, cited of his Office by the joyn't consent of the *Mamalucks*, so to make way for *Campson Gaurus*.

1501

5 *Campson* II. surnamed *Gaurus*, reformed the disordered and factious Estate both of Court and Country; and for the space of 16 years govern'd very prosperously. But siding at the last with *Hysmael* the *Persian* Sophy, against *Selimus* the first of that name, the 3d. Emperour, and tenth King of the *Ottoman* Family; he drew his Kingdom into a War, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himself slain in battel.

1517

16 *Tonombeus* II. succeeded *Campson Gaurus*, both in his Kingdom and Misfortunes; vanquished in his first year by the said *Selimus* the first, An. 1517. Who having conquered this rich Kingdom, was used to say, That he had gotten a Farm to feed his *Gemogians*, or young Soldiers. So *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, as it still continueth.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the time of the *Pharaohs*, I am not able to affirm. Great they must be, beyond the proportion of belief, or else they could never have been Masters of such sufficient Treasure to finish those vast Structures which they undertook. Twelve thousand and five hundred *Talents* they amounted annually unto, in the time of the *Ptolemies*; which of our Money makes the Sum of two Millions, and 347750 pounds. Which Sum *Augustus Caesar* (appropriating this Province to himself) is said to have doubled; but whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the rest in Corn I determine not. Certain it is, That there was yearly shipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperour, Two hundred thousand Measures of Wheat, every Measure weighing Twenty hundred pound weight; which cometh to seven Millions, and an hundred forty thousand of our *English* Bushels; sold by him, or distributed gratis amongst the Poor, as he saw occasion. So that there might be very well some abatement in Money, considering that the Corn amounted to so great a Sum. Nor were they much less, it ought at all, when the *Mamalucks* ruled in this Country. For *Campson Gaurus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no less than Ten Millions of *Duckats* at one clap amongst his Soldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyrannical Government, and

and partly through the discontinuance of the usual Traffick through the *Red Sea*, receive no more than Three Millions of Crowns; one of which is hoarded in his own Coffers; the second is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Bashaw*, for support of this Charge; the third is distributed among his Garrison-Soldiers, and such of them as by Land guard his own Motion to *Constantinople*, for by Sea he dares not venture it, for fear of the *Florentine*, who with a few Ships Lordeth it in the *Mediterranean*.

I have taken the pains exactly to compare the state of *Egypt* as it was in the Year 1515, when it was Conquered by the *Turks*, represented very well by *Leo Africanus*, who was then in this Kingdom, with the state it is now in by the Report of *Sandy's*, *Thevenot*, and others who have lately travelled in it. And the difference is so very great, that to a Man who has not well considered both, it will seem incredible. A great part of the Trade of the *East-Indies* till that time came through *Egypt*, which has since been entirely cut off by the *Portugueses*, *English*, and *Hollanders*. 2. The *Mamelucks* resided in *Egypt*, and spent what they took amongst the People that paid it, but the *Turks* transport one third part every year to *Constantinople*, from whence it never returneth. 3. The *Bassa's* in their turns too send great Presents every year to the Port, to make them Friends; the consequences of which is, First, That the People being reduced to the utmost degree of Poverty, tho' the Country is so warm that they bring up their Children naked, yet they are not able to find them Food sufficient, and to enable them to till the Land, and to repair their mean Cottages: So that every year the People decrease, and the same Taxes being paid by the Remainder, it operates upon *Egypt* in the manner of a quick Consumption, and this good Land eats up its Inhabitants: Of about 100 great Cities and Towns there were in 1515 in *Egypt*, there are now not above 4 or 5 that are considerable, and not so many People perhaps now in all *Egypt* as was then in *Grand Cairo*; so that not on-

ly the Riches and Revenues of *Egypt* are wasted to almost nothing, but the strength too. Some may object, that the Possession is thereby the more secured, as it is indeed against the Natives; and if it were wholly desolate, would be yet more secured than now it is, but of what use is a desolate Country to the Owner? Yet after all, the People of *Egypt* have a property in their Lands, which none of the *Turkish* Subjects besides have. From hence it will appear, First, That oppressing any People is impolitick, because it destroys the Fund, and prevents the Sowing that Seed which shou'd raise the Increase. 2. It weakens the Possession, by disheartning and diminishing the Hands that should defend as well as till the Earth. 3. It in time renders the thing not worth the possessing. 4. It infallibly in time makes way for a new Conquest, and planting the Country with a new set of Men: I wish these Considerations may be seriously weighed with Respect to *Ireland*, and our *Western* Plantations, but especially the first of these, which depends intirely upon the Number and strength of the *English* that inhabit there; and if they be few and poor, will be subject to the Insults of the Natives, who are the implacable Enemies of the *English*. The want of giving due encouragement to the Trade and Commerce of *Ireland*, has kept the *English* so much under, and discourag'd others from going thither, that it hath in all times been the occasion of great Devastations by War and Massacre, and at one time or other may be the Loss of the Island, to the endangering first our Trade, and then our safety; because for want of People, we are not now so able as heretofore, to re-people and re-conquer that Nation. And without doubt, should any potent Neighbour Attack *Egypt*, the *Turks* would be driven out much more easily than they at first got it; but it is the felicity of the *Grand Seignior*, That he has no considerable bordering Prince on that side of his Empire.

And so much for *Egypt*.

Folio 877 follows this.

OF

O F

B A R B A R Y.

B A R B A R Y is bounded on the East, with *Cyrenaica*; on the West, with the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and some part of the *Atlantick* also; on the South, with Mount *Atlas*; by which separated from *Libya inferior*, or the Desarts of *Libya*.

It containeth in it the whole Diocese of *Africk*, and part of the Diocese of *Spain*; subject in former times to the Common-wealth of *Carthage*, and the Great Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Numidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they gave to that part of it, which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*; calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninsula*, and afterwards extended it over all the rest of the Country, on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the subjugation of it by the *Saracens*: by whom called *BARBARY*, either from *Barbar*, signifying in their Language an uncertain murmur, such as the Speech of the *Africans* seemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar*, signifying a *Desart*, which doubled, made up first *Barbar*, and after *Barbary*.

It is situate under the Third and Fourth Climates: so that the longest Summers day in the parts most South, amounted to thirteen Hours three quarters, increased in the most Northern parts to fourteen Hours and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantick Ocean* to the greater *Syrtis*, for the space of 1500 Miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narrowest 100 Miles; but towards the *Straits*, where the broadest, almost three Hundred.

Leo Africanus excludes the Kingdom of *Barca* out of it, which he calls the best and most celebrated part of *Africa*, inhabited by a Brown Civil People, who are Governed by excellent Laws. *Pag. 23.* he saith, The *Arabians* which inhabit *Barbary* are much more wealthy than those of *Biledulgerid*; which appears in their rich Cloaths and Tents. Their Horse are better shaped, more corpulent, but not so swift as the other; they have plenty of Corn, and innumerable Drovers of Cattel; yet after all, they are more morose and covetous than the Inhabitants of the Desarts.

The Country, in such parts as lye nearest to the *Mediterranean*, is full of Hills covered with Woods, and stored with plenty of Wild Beasts; provided reasonably well of most sorts of Fruits, but unfit for Wheat, insomuch that most of the Inhabitants live of Barley Bread. Betwixt which and Mount *Atlas* is a Champion Country, watered with many pleasant Rivers issuing from that Mountain, and liberally furnished with Cherries, Figs, Pears, Plums, Apples of all kinds; abundance of Oil, Honey, Sugar; some Mines of Gold, and that for purity and fineness no where to be better'd. Here are also besides, large Herds of Cattel, some Elephants, Lions, Dragons, Leopards, and others of the like savage nature, and of Apes great multitudes; Horses good store, excellent both for Strength and Beauty. But taking it in the best parts, it saith extremely short of that infinite fertility, which is ascribed to it by the Writers of elder times. For besides the miracle of 500 Ears of Corn growing on the stalk, (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, That not far from the City of *Tucape*, in the way to *Leptis*, a Man might see a great Date-tree overshadowing an Olive, under the Olive a Fig tree, under that a Pomegranate, under that a Vine, and under all, Pease, Wheat, and Herbs, all growing

and flourishing at one time. It is affirmed also by the same Author, that the Vine beareth twice a year, that some Fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year; and that a piece of Ground of Four Cubits square was usually Rented out at so many *Denarii*: by which Account, (as the Learned *Budæus* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground must be worth yearly, 12800 of the *Roman Sestertii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinite and unparalleled increase of the Fruits of the Earth, if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The People are of a duskyish Colour, but inclining to Blackness: much of the same nature with the *Arabians*, by whose numerous Families formerly they were overspread, but the *Africans* of the two the better: active of Body, well skill'd in Horsemanship, but impatient of Labour, covetous of Honour, inconstant, crafty, and unfaithful: Studious in matters of their Law, and in some of the Liberal Sciences, especially Philosophy and the Mathematicks, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countries they are admitted to be Readers. They are also said to be stately of Gate, exceeding distrustful, in their Hate implacable, and jealous of their Women beyond all compare. The Women of a comely Body, and well Featured, beautiful in Blackness, of delicate soft Skins, and in their Habit and Apparel beyond measure sumptuous; so drest, to make themselves more amiable in the Eyes of their Husbands; for otherwise not permitted to stir abroad, and seldom to see any body but those of their own Houses.

The Language spoke at the present in most of the Maritime Towns, except those of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabick* Tongue. In those two Kingdoms, and most part of the Country Villages, the *Punic* or old *African*, the ancient Languages of the Country: the *Punic* spoken in all places, where anciently the *Carthaginians* were of any Power; the *African* (whatsoever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not subject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder, which though it was the Language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it spread so far as to extinguish or suppress the old natural Tongues: and in the Colonies themselves so much degenerated in a short time, so barbarously and imperfectly spoken; that a Sister of the Emperour *Severus*, who lived in *Leptis*, a *Roman* Colony, coming to *Rome* to see her Brother, spoke it so incongruously, that the Emperour was ashamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of *St. Augustine*, an *African* Bishop, were Preached in *Latin*, because Preached in *Hippo* his Episcopal See, which was then a Colony of the *Romans*; yet he confesseth, that he was sometimes fain to use such words as were not *Latin*, to be the better understood of his Congregation.

The Christian Faith was first planted in that part hereof which was called *Africa Propria*, by *Epanetus*, one of the 70 Disciples; by *Dorotheus* in his *Synopsis*, affirmed to be the first Bishop of *Carthage*: In *Mauritania*, by *S. Simon* the Apostle, surnamed *Zelotes*. *Metaphrastes* addeth, that *S. Simon Peter* Preached here also, when by the Decree of *Claudius Caesar* he was forced from *Rome*; and at his going hence, left *Crescens* his Disciple to promote the work. But by whomsoever planted first, it found good increase, and was so propagated in short time over all this Country, that in the year 250, or before, there were in it above 90 Bishops; for so many were assembled

in the Synod of *Labefium*: and in the year 398. when the Faction of the *Donatists* was of greatest Power, we find no fewer than 214 Catholick Bishops met together in the Council of *Carthage*. Which as it is an Argument of the great increase of Christianity in those parts of *Africa*; so it shews also, that the Church was in ill Condition; so overpower'd by the violence of that mighty Faction, who had at least 270 Bishops of their own Opinion, that the Orthodox party was necessitated to increase the number of Bishops, for fear of being over-balanced by the contrary side, if ever the difference should come to be examined in a publick Meeting. These Bishops ranked into six Classes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Bishops of each Province subject to their own Metropolitan, who in this Diocese (contrary to the usage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primates*: but all of them subordinate to the *Primate* of *Carthage*, originally invested with Patriarchal Jurisdiction over all these parts. *Latius fusa est nostræ Previncia; habet enim Numidiam, & Mauritanias duas sibi coherentes*, are *S. Cyprian's* words. Which shew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better Geographer, than an Historian or Divine. He would not else have told us in such positive terms, that those of *Barbary* remained in their old Idolatry, till 250 years before *Mahomer's* Birth; at what time they received the Gospel, and not before. But the good Man mistook the reviving of the Orthodox Faith in the time of *Justinian*, after it had been long suppressed by the *Vandals* of the *Arian* Faction (who at one time banished hence 300 Catholick Bishops) for the first planting of the Gospel, otherwise not to be excused. But after this *Reviver* it held not long, when suppressed by the *Saracens*, and so suppressed, that except it be in some few Towns possessed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of Christianity to be discerned in all this Country; *Mahometanism* being elsewhere universally embraced amongst them.

Here was a most flourishing Church till the 5th. Century, in the beginning of which the *Vandals* then *Arians* entred it, and brought in their Heresie with them: but that which more effectually contributed to the ruine of Christianity here, was the Conquest of it by the *Moors*, in the year 669. One *Huchba* a famous General, whom *Osman* the third Caliph of the *Saracens* employed to that purpose, finally expelled the *Romans* in 699. and ever since they have possessed it; who being the most enraged Enemies of Christianity that ever professed the *Mahometan* Law, have so far extirpated Christianity, that there is very few, if any of the Inhabitants of this vast Tract of Land which profess it.

Amongst the Men of most note for Soldiery, which have been born in this Country, we may reckon, 1. *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his three Sons: 2. *Annibal*: 3. *Asdrubal*: and 4. *Mago*; Men hardly to be parallel'd in any Ages: 5. *Masimissa*, King of the *Numidians*, one of their Contemporaries: and in the following times, 6. *Septimius Severus* the *Roman* Emperor. Amongst those addicted to the Muses, those of most note, 1. *Terence*: 2. *Apuleius*. But for Divines, no Region in the World afforded Men of more eminent note, nor better deserving of the Church. 1. *Tertullian*, 2. *Cyprian*, 3. *Julius Africanus*, 4. *Arnobius*, 5. *Lactantius*, 6. *Victorinus Afer*, 7. *Optatus Milevitanus*, 8. *Victor Uticensis*, 9. *Fulgentius*, 10. *Primasius*. And above all, the most Learned and Divine *S. Augustine*; a Man of such admirable Abilities, and indefatigable Industry, so constant a Defender of all Orthodox Doctrines against the Hereticks of those times, that he deservedly got the name of *Malleus Hæreticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Country besides Mount *Atlas*, (of which hereafter by it self) 1. *Phorca*, 2. *Hepstadelphus*, and 3. *Atlas minor* in *Mauritania Tingitana*; 4. *Cinnaba*, 5. *Garas*, 6. *Madetubadus*, and 7. those called *Gariphi*, in *Cæsariensis*; 8. *Thambes*, 9. *Mamapsarus*, 10. *Ujaletus*, and 11. *Zuchabarus*, in *Africa Propria*. Of which, and others, we may speak more, if occasion be, in our Description of the Provinces in which they are.

And for the Rivers of most Note, though none of any long course in so narrow a Country; we have in *Tingitana*, 1. *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantick*, out of *Atlas minor*; 2. Another of the same name, and the same exit also, but far more to the North, towards the Strait of *Gibraltar*; 3. *Melochath*, mollified by *Salust* the Historian into *Mulucha*, and by him placed betwixt the *Namidians* and the *Moors*; 4. *Malva*, the boundary at this day betwixt the Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Algiers*; 5. *Phthuth*, of more Fame than any, of which more anon: In *Cæsariensis*, 6. *Nasabuth*, 7. *Sisaris*, and *Sorbetos*: In *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Tunis*, 8. *Rubicatus*, which issuing out of Mount *Thambes*, falleth in the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*; 9. *Triton*, which issuing out of the Hill called *Ujaletus*, and making the great Fenn called *Tritonia Palus*, endeth its course also into the *Mediterranean*; and finally, 10. *Bagradas*, the greatest in all this Tract, which rising out of Mount *Atlas*, first runneth towards the East, and then receiving from the Hill called *Mamapsarus* the addition of another Stream, passeth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there ends his Course.

Having thus laid together the chief Metes and Landmarks, I should now proceed to the Description of the several Provinces hereof, as in other places. But because each part almost hath had for these latter times its particular History, and that it is divided at the present into several Governments, and under the Command of several Princes: I will here lay down so much of the Story of it as concerns the whole, before such division; and afterwards pursue the History and Chorography of the several parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Country was first Peopled by *Phut* the third Son of *Cham*: who leaving his Brother *Misraim* well settled in the Land of *Egypt*; passed towards the West; and leaving *Lebaim* his Nephew betwixt him and *Misraim*, possessed himself of all the rest from the greater *Syrtis* to the Ocean. Remains of whose name we find in the River *Phut* (by *Ptolemy* called *Phthuth*, with but little difference, save that it favoureth more of the *African* roughness) near which *Josephus* findeth a Region called the Country of *Phut*, a Nation called the *Phuteans*: seconded herein by *S. Hierom*, who speaking of this *Regio Phutensis* in *Mauritania*, (where the River *Phthuth* is placed by *Ptolemy*) voucheth in general terms the testimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and *Latin*. So that of this there is no question to be made. Such Nations as descended of this Plantation, shall be hereafter spoke of in their several Provinces. Governed at first by the Chiefs of their several Families; but in the end, reduced under the Command of the Kings of *Mauritania* and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two first, Natives of this Country, of the Race of *Phut*: the last descended also of the Seed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*: who on the Conquest of their Country by the Children of *Israel*, forced to seek new Dwellings, and having store of Ships to transplant themselves and their Families; settled in the Maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa*, properly so called. For, that the People of those parts, though lost into other Names and Families, were anciently of a *Canaanitish* or *Phœnician* Race, may be made apparent, 1. By the nearness of their Language, the *Punick* or *Phœnician*, and old *Hebrew* Tongue, differing only in the Dialect and Pronunciation. Secondly, by the name *Puni*, or *Phœni*, little differing from that of the *Phœnices*. 3ly, By this Testimony of *S. Augustine*, who telleth us in the Comment on *S. Paul's* Epistle to the *Romans*, begun, but not finished by him; *Interrogati Rustici nostri quid sint, respondent, Punici Chammii*; that is to say, 'That when any of the Inhabitants of this Country (he himself was one) were asked what they were, they answered, *Canaanites*. 4ly, We find in *Herodotus*, how *Cambyses* had totally Conquer'd *Egypt*, intending a War against the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it seemeth) of some power:

But

But the *Phœnicians*, being the only Sea-faring men *Cambyses* then had, absolutely denied to be employed in that Service; they being sprung from the same Tree that the *Carthaginians* were. *gly*, We read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Evagrius Scholasticus*) how on two Marble Pillars, situate nigh unto *Tingis*, or *Tangier*, there was in the *Phœnician* Language and Character engraved *Nos fugimus à facie Joshuah prædons filii Nave*; that is to say, *We flee from the face of that R bber Joshuah the Son of Nun*. The Settling of this People there, was a great Incitement questionless unto *Dido* to come thither also: who feared as much danger from her Brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whose hands had been imbrued in the blood of her Husband, as the others did from the Sword of *Joshuah*. Gathering together all her Treasures, which were very great, accompanied with her Brother *Barca*, and her Sister *Anna*, she set sail for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after stood the City of *Carthage*, she obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigness than she could compass round with an Oxes hide. This the beginning of that City; hence the name of *Byrsa*, which at first it had. First founded in, or about the year of the World 3070. which was about 144 years after the building of *Solomon's* Temple, 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the destruction of *Troy*. By which account (I note this only by the way) it is impossible that *Dido*, or *Eliza* (for by both these names we find her called) should ever see the Face of *Aeneas*, unless it were in Picture, or Imagination; and therefore as impossible she should either fall in love with him, or be got with Child by him, or finally kill her self on her being forsaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a general belief with most sorts of men. Hereunto consenteth *Ausonius*, who honouring the Statue of his abused Princess with an *Epigram* of 18 Verses, among others, gives us these four.

*Invida cur in me stimulasti Musa Maronem,
Fingeret ut nostræ damna pudicitia?
Vos magis Historicis (Lectores) credite de me,
Quam qui furtiva deum, concubitusque canunt.*

Why did'st thou stir up *Virgil*, envious *Muse*,
Falsly my name and honour to abuse?
Of me let *Histories* be heard, not those,
Who to the World *Jove's* thefts and lusts expose.

Credible it is, *Aeneas* being driven on the Coast of *Africk*, was by some Prince there courteously entertained, as a Man whose fame had been his *Harbinger*: but why the story should be fastned on *Dido*, I see not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her self, gave occasion to the Poet to feign, that it was for the love of *Aeneas*; whereas, it was indeed to avoid the lust and fury of *Jarbas*, a potent King of the *Getuli*, a powerful Nation, neighbouring those Parts of *Africa* in which *Carthage* stood, who violently desired to have his Pleasure on her.

Some (says the Learned *Vossius*) ascribe to *Carthage* a Circuit of 360 *Stadia* which makes it equal to *Babylon*, whereas *Strabo* gives only that dimension to the Peninsula it was built in. *Livy* saith it was 22 miles in Circuit when it was destroyed by the *Romans*, which is but little above the fourth part of the Peninsula: So much it was diminished by length of Time and her Wars in *Sicily* with the *Romans*, and other Nations, and also by her Domestick Troubles; by all which it was reduced to what *Livy* found it at the Desolation of it. I am confident, the greatest height of the Prosperity and Power of this City was before the *Trojan* Wars, and that Queen *Dido* only brought thither an Additional Colony, which may be proved by *Appianus Alexandrinus*, who placeth it 500 years before the Sacking of *Troy*: And by the Voyage of *Hannō* without the Streights, which in part is still extant; which was

made soon after the *Trojan* War, to find new Seats for the over-swollen Inhabitants of this City upon the Ocean: So that *Carthage* was older than the New *Tyre*, from whence Queen *Dido* came, and was a Colony of the Ancient *Tyre*; and the *Byrsa* she built was only an Addition to the old City. *Vossius de magnitudine Urbium*, Cap. 11. See *Bechart. De Phœnicum Colonis*, Lib. 1. Cap. 24. p. 511, 12, 13, 4to. In all Probability it was one of the most ancient Plantations the *Canaanites* made on this Coast soon after the Conquest of *Canaan* by *Joshuah*, though it got not the Reputation of a City till some Ages after, as is usual.

But to proceed, This City thus founded in a Place commodious for Trade and Merchandice, in short time grew exceeding wealthy. And having wealth enough to hire Mercenary Soldiers (of which the Needy *Mauritanians* and *Numidians* did afford good store) they Conquered all the Sea Coasts from *Cyrene* to the Streights of *Hercules* (now called the Streights of *Gibraltar*:) and so much also towards the South as was worth the Conquering. Within which space possessed of 300 Cities; grown to such height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongst them the Kings of *Numidia* and *Mauritania* were at their devotion: They began to cast their Eyes on *Sicily*, a wealthy island, lying near unto their Coasts; which questionless they had possessed, if the *Romans*, envious of their greatness, and fearing their Neighbourhood had not took upon them the defence of the *Alamortines*, and under that pretence got some footing in it. The end of this War, after many brave Exploits on both sides, was the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*; their abandoning all the Islands betwixt them and *Italy*, and the payment of 3200 Talents, amounting to about two Millions of Crowns. And such end had the first *Punick* War, managed for the most part in *Sicily*. During which time, and the first War there, managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it self was twice invaded, first by *Agathocles* Tyrant of *Syracuse*, (or so commonly called) and afterwards by *Regulus* a *Roman* General, but with no other great success than the Spoil of the Country. The second followed not long after, but the Scene was altered; begun in *Spain*, prosecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, descended from *Barca* the Brother of *Dido* or *Eliza*: who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increased his Reputation and Experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes* into *Italy* it self; defeated the Armies of the *Romans*, and slew some of their Consuls: So prosperous in the Battle of *Cannæ*, where the whole strength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good Fortune, and made use of his Victory, he might within four or five days after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africk* from the Forces of *Scipio*; who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently translated the War to *Carthage*. The issue was, that on the loss of the Battle of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were necessitated to submit themselves to the will of the Conqueror; that is to say, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships and Gallies, excepting ten; to make no War without leave of the *Romans*; to pay for the Charges of the War 10000 Talents; and such other extremities. So ended the second *Punick* War, *A.U.C.* 602. And the third followed not long after, not any way occasioned by those of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the People of *Rome*, who would not think themselves safe whilst that City stood; and therefore sent another *Scipio* to lay Siege unto it. By whom, after a long and stout Resistance, it was at last taken and destroyed. The Treasure which was found in it, notwithstanding their former Losses, and the low estate it was reduced to, besides what was consumed by Fire, and reserved by the Soldiers, amounting to 470000 pound weight of Silver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thousand Pounds of our *English* Money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and therewith all the rest of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed against her, and aided the *Romans* in these Wars; yet they soon found their own Fortunes buried in the self-same Grave. Subverted one after another, as occasion was, they became all subject unto *Rome*; their Kingdoms and Estates turned to *Roman* Provinces. Of these were reckoned seven in all, that is to say, 1. *Africa Propria*, called also *Zeugitana*, and *Proconsularis*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Tripolitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, 6. *Sitifensis*, and 7. *Tingitana*. Of which the last (I know not why) was laid to the Diocese of *Spain*, called therefore *Hispania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other side of the Sea, by some elder Writers; the other six made up the Diocese of *Africk*, subordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Italy*, who had here his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till subdued by the *Vandals*, a German Nation, inhabiting beyond the *Elb*, on the Coast of the *Baltick*; where now lie the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*. Their memory still retained there in the file of those Princes, who call themselves *Duces*

Vandalorum, and in the Confederacy of the *Hanse-Towns*, called by some *Latin* Writers *Civitates Vandalicæ*. A Nation of great Power and Numbers, (the *Burgundians* being only a Part of these) one of the Five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*. In the 11th Year of the Empire of *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul* by the treacherous Practices of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Western Empire; and after an abode of three years, passed into *Spain*, together with the *Suevi* and *Alani*, their Associates. But after 18 years; the *Goths* made that place too hot for them also: So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *Bonifacius*, the Emperor's Vice-gerent in *Africa*; who stomaching to see his Office bestowed on *Castinus*, an unworthy Man, and his Enemy, betrayed the Country to these *Vandals*, in the last year of the Life and Reign of *Gundericus*, an *Arian* in Religion, as were the rest of the Nation, to which induced by their Neighbourhood and Acquaintance with the *Goths*: Which *Herese* as they brought with them into *Africk*, driving thence all the *Orthodox Christians*, so they continued in it till their Extirpation.

The Vandal Kings of A F R I C A.

A.C.

- 412 1. *Gundericus*, who first invaded *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Africk*, 16.
- 428 2. *Genfericus*, who at the request of *Eudoxia*, the Widow of *Valentinian*, invaded *Italy*, and sacked the City of *Rome*, the Spoil whereof for fourteen days he gave to his Soldiers; but at the request of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterwards married, he did not burnt it. This *Eudoxia* was Wife to the Western Emperor *Valentinian*; who having a mind to a Lady of *Rome*, the Wife of one *Maximus*, he cunningly slipped the Ring of *Maximus* off his Finger, and by that token sent for the Lady to the Court, and when she was come, ravished her. To revenge this disgrace, *Maximus* slew *Valentinian*, made himself Emperor, and forced *Eudoxia* to be his Wife. But she stomaching a Match so unequal to her high Birth, and having some incling of her Husband's death sent for *Genfericus* into *Italy*. This *Genfericus* conquered *Carthage*, and *Hippo*, and reigned 48 years.
- 476 3. *Honorius* Son of *Genfericus*. 7.
- 484 4. *Gundebundus*, Son to *Genzo*, the Brother of *Honorius*. 15.
- 499 5. *Transimundus*, Brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.
- 523 6. *Hildericus*, the Son of *Honorius*, deposed by
- 530 7. *Gilimir*, the Son of *Genzo*, one of the Descendents of *Genfericus*; overcome by *Belisarius* a worthy and politick Leader, whom the Emperor *Justinian* employed in that Service.

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals* (having continued in *Spain* and *Africa* 146 years) by the Valour of *Belisarius*. Who after this good Service was employed by *Justinian* against the *Goths*, then reigning in *Italy*; against whom he proceeded very fortunately: But being, on I know not what Envy, called to *Constantinople*, his Eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his Bread at the Gate of the Temple of *St. Sophia*. A bad Reward for so good a Servant. But to go on, *Justinian* having regained *Africk*, to honour his new Conquest, exempted it from the command of the *Prætorio Præfectus* of *Italy*, to which formerly subject; and increasing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Isle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of itself: Appointing his *Præfectus Prætorio Africa* to reside in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his Charge; which he then also raised to a *Consular* Province, having in former times been *Proconsular* only. But long it held not in this state; for in the year

647. the *Romans* were finally expelled by *Hucha* a famous Leader; whom *Osman*, the third Caliph of the *Saracens*, had designed to this Service. *Africk*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongst the Provinces of the *Saracenic* or *Mahometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the Caliphs growing less and less, and every one of their *Sultans* or *Provincial* Officers, getting what he could for himself; this Country was distracted in many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at last reduced to four of most consideration: That is to say, the Kingdom of 1. *Tunis*, 2. *Tremesen* or *Algiers*, 3. *Fesse*, and 4. *Morocco*. To the *Chorography* and *History* whereof we do now proceed; adding hereto in the Fifth place, the Isles of *Barbary*.

I. T U N I S.

THE Kingdom of *TUNIS* (in *Latin* called *Regnum Tunitanum*) hath on the East, *Cyrene*; on the West, the Kingdom of *Algiers* or *Tremesen*; on the North the *Mediterranean*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Tunis*, the chief City of it; extended all along the Coast of the *Mediterranean* for the space of 800 miles, or thereabout, but the breadth not answerable.

The Country towards the East, barren and destitute of water; but in the Western parts, sufficiently plentiful of Corn and other Fruits, and generally well set with Trees. The People more patient of labour than the rest of *Barbary*, and for that cause perhaps more healthy; but questionless of so good constitution, that they live commonly to great age, unless a violent Death prevent them; and are not much afraid of Sicknes, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as some call it) and the *Numidia* of the *Romans*; called since *Numidia Antiqua*, to difference it from the present *Numidia*, lying on the other side of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countreys, besides those spoken of already, were, 1. *Audas*, 2. *Buzara*, 3. *Cinna*, 4. *Dios*, or the Hills of *Jupiter*, 5. *Gillius*, by some named *Gigun*, and 6. those called *Thizibi*. Rivers of most esteem with them, though not much with others, besides those mentioned before. 1. *Ampfage*, now called *Collo*, and by some *Sar Gemar*, which divideth this Kingdom from that of *Tremesen*; 2. *Catuda*, 3. *Cynphut*, issuing from the Hills called *Zuchabarnus*, and falling into the Sea, not far from *Tripolis*. Be-

Besides which, there were some great *Lakes*; the chief whereof, 1. *Hipponites*, near Mount *Cinnia*; 2. The Lake of *Pallas*, or that called *Palus Tritonia*, where *Minerva* was said to have shewed her self the Inventress of Spinning and of Oyl, and for that much worshipped by this people; 3. *Sylura*, another great Lake; but not so famous as the former, because not honoured by a Goddess.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into these four parts, viz. 1. *Africa* especially so called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Amphage* to the lesser *Syrtis*; 2. *Tripolitana*, from the lesser *Syrtis* to the greater; 3. *Numidia*, lying on the West of *Zeugitana*, or *Africa Propria*: And 4. *Byzacena*, so called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it; the Territory whereof so extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of Corn were sent to *Rome* in the time of *Augustus*, and 360 in the time of *Domitius Nero*, growing on one stalk. But this division being long since worn out of memory, it is divided at the present into the Provinces of 1. *Ezzab*, 2. *Tripolis*, 3. *Tunis*, 4. *Constantina*, 5. *Bugia*. This King in the year of the *Hegyra* 915. (*A. C.* 537. was overthrown by the *Africans* on his Southern Borders whose Prince became very famous and Puissant. on this Score *Leo Af.* p. 27.)

1. *EZZAB*, is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A small Reigon, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich (the richer, in regard they are free from *Tributes*:) their wealth not rising from the Commodities of their own Country, which affordeth them little else besides *Dates* and *Olives*, but from such Merchandise which they buy of the *Venetians*, and sell to the *Numidians*. The richest, those of *Mesrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath some, but none of note: the chief of which, 1. *Mesrata*, 2. *Sibeoa*, both upon the Sea; of which the first gives name unto that little Province spoken of before. Of more note in former times was *Phileni Villa*, situate on the greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory than called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Surta*; memorable for the adjoining *Altars* called *Phileni Aræ*, erected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occasion. Some Controversies being grown betwixt those of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their Bounds; it was agreed, that two Men at a set hour should be sent out of each City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meet-stone* of their several Territories. The *Phileni*, two Brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were so quick of foot, that they had gotten a good way into the Country of the *Cyrenenses* before they were met; wherewith the *Cyrenians* much enraged, put them to this choice, either to go so much back again, or to die in the place. This last accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Country before their own, for preservation of whose name and honour to succeeding Ages, the grateful *Carthaginians* did erect these *Altars*.

2. West of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of *TRIPOLIS*, which together with *Ezzab*, made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*. Not much more fruitful than the other, except in Barley, but more commodiously seated in regard of the Sea, which is here more safe for Navigation; the former lying wholly on the greater *Syrtis*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leptis Magna*, so called, to distinguish it from another, but of less note, and therefore called *Leptis Parva*, situate in the (now) Province of *Tunis*. A Town of so great wealth and Trade, that it was worth a *Talent* daily to the *Carthaginians*. 2. *Euphranta*, called also *Pyrpos Euphranta*, from some strong Tower in it on the Western bank of the greater *Syrtis*. 3. *Cintheria*; on the Eastern side of the River *Cymphus*. 4. *Cabis*, the utmost City of this Province Westward; the same which *Ptolemy* calls *Tacapa*, situate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the lesser *Syrtis*. This City has a River derived to it from a Lake behind it; and a Port, though of no great use because exposed to all Winds which makes the River though Small, of the great or Value, the Tides filling it and bringing up those Ships it

will bear; from this City the *Syrtis Minor*, is now called *Golfo de Caps*. It lyes 70 miles from *Safucos* to the East and two Stations from *Cairuan* to the South East and 20 miles from *TUNIS*. South East the Lake is called *Tritonis* in *Ptolemy*, and is said to be hot and to cure the Leprosy. *Leo Africanus* p. 256. makes it a Strong Roman Town &c. 5. *Sabratba*; and 6. *Herua*; not else observable, but that together with *Leptis Magna* they made up that one City, which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis*. 7. *Tripolis*, founded by the *Romans*, and by them peopled with Colonies from those three Cities before mentioned. A City of great Name and Riches, till destroyed by the *Saracens*. By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colleges, and Hospitals; and flourishing in much Wealth and Lustre, it became a Kingdom of it self, but subject to the King of *Tunis*, till taken by the *Genouese* with a Fleet of 20 Sail, and by them sold to the King of *Fesse*. Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis*, it came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter* of *Navarr*, it was conquered for *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, the first Monarch of *Spain*: whose Nephew *Charles* the 5th. conferred it on the Knights of St. *John* of *Jerusalem*, then expelled from *Rhodes*: Whom the *Turks* under *Sinan Basha* General of *Selimus* the Second, dispossessed by force, *An.* 1551. In 1559 the Christians attempted to regain it without Success. And since that it is Govern'd like a Comon Wealth. It lies over against the Isle of *Malta*, and is the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg* for these *African* Provinces; and made an usual Retreat for Pyrates, who infest these Seas, and do much mischief to the Coasts of *Sicily*, *Italy*, and others of the *Christian* Countries. The *Nubian* Geographer (pag. 88) saith, *Tripolis* is a Strong City, walled with White Stone, and adorned with beautifull Streets. *Roger* King of *Sicily* took this City from the *Moors* in the year of the *Hegyra* 540 *A. C.* 1157. who carried the Women into Captivity, and Slew all the Males: From *Tripolis* to *Sort* Eastward is 230 miles English, *Leo Africanus* p. 259. The Old *Tripolis* was built by the *Romans* and taken by the *Moors* in the time of the *Calif Homar* after a Siege of 6 Months. The New *Tripolis* is encompassed with an high and beautiful Wall, but of no great Strength; the Houses are better than those of *TUNIS*, they have none but Cistern Water, the City standing in a Sandy Soil, which yet yeilds *Dates*, but Corn is dear. To the North it had better Lands, which are now eaten up by the Sea. Between this and *Alexandria* there is no place of Note, which makes the *Venetians* Trade with this Port. It was Subject to the King of *TUNIS*; after this it was taken by the *Genouese*, and sold to *Habdul Mumen* King of *Fesse*, and not long after became free again, and continued under Princes of its own till it was taken by *Pedro de Navarra* for *Ferdinand* King of *Spain* as abovesaid.

3. The Province of *TUNIS* lying Westward to that of *Tripolis*, taketh up so much of this Kingdom, as anciently contained the Province of *Byzacena*; and so much of the *Roman Africk*, as lyeth on the East of the River called *Guadilbarbar*, the *Hipponites Lacus* of the ancient Writers. The Country anciently so fruitful, that it yeilded usually an Increase of an hundred and fifty fold: For proof of which, besides the testimony of approved Authors, the wonderful, if not prodigious Ears of Corn, which before we heard of, may serve sufficiently. Now indigent, and so unprovided of all Grain for the use of their Families, that they are fain to furnish themselves of other places: The people not daring to mature or sow their Land, for fear of the *Arabians*, who ever and anon fall into these parts, and spoil what they meet with. The *Arabians* here mentioned are the Wandering *Arabs*, a Nation that will fix nowhere, but moving from Place to Place with their Wives and Children, Flocks and Herds, prey upon the Substance and Labours of the Settled *Moors*, who are of the same Nation Language and Religion; which necessitates the Republic of *Arglers* to keep an Army always on foot against them.

Leo Africanus, pag. 7. 6. saith they were first suffered to pass the Nile in the year of the *Hegira* 400. by a Caliph of *Grand Cairo*, because one of his Sultans had rebelled against him, and with drawn *Alcaira* and almost all *Barbary* from his Obedience. This People has ever since been the Plague of all the *Moors*, and perhaps may at last prove the bane of that Nation; as they have ruined all *Palestine* and *Syria* in the *Turkish* Empire, and spread further into the Lesser *Asia* every year, to the Ruine of the Tillage, Trade, Traveling and Commerce of that Country: They are a lazy, thievish and unprofitable People, depending upon their Cattle and what they can steal for a Subsistence.

Places of most note in it, in the elder times 1. *Adrumetum*, or *Adrumysus*, now called *Machometta*, once a Roman Colony, and the Metropolis of the Province of *Byzacena*; by consequence, in the times of Christianity, an Archbishop's See: walled and repaired by the Emperor *Justinian*, and by his Command called *Justiniana*. 2. *Zama*, the incamping place of *Annibal*, before his Battel with *Scipio*. 3. *Nadagara*, memorable for the great Battel betwixt the two renowned Generals of Rome and Carthage; not parallel'd since their own times, nor in those before them; in which the great Controversie between those Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day tell unto the Romans: For though *Annibal* shewed his singular Judgment in ordering his Souldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in Horse, and by an Order of the Senate of Carthage, constrained to fight in a place of disadvantage, he could do no marvels: The Romans, with the loss of no more than 1500 of their own Men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians* in the Fight and Chase. 4. *Salera*, the first place took by *Scipio*, after the landing of his Army. 5. *Utica*, a Tyrian Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greatest Ships; much spoken of in the Wars of Carthage, and memorable for the Death of *Cato* (hence surnamed *Utican*) who here slew himself, for fear of falling into the Hands of *Cæsar*. It is now called *Biserta*. This City, in the *Nubian Geographer*, p. 87. is called *Benexert*, who saith it is a Maritim City of very great Strength, but Less than *Susa*, and that it lyes a days Journey from *TUNIS* (by Sea.) On the East of it lyes a Lake of the same Name, 16 Miles long and 8 broad, which passeth into the Sea by a Mouth it has; and this serves instead of a Haven to the Town. On the West of the Town the River *Bagrada* or *Megrada* falls into the Sea, so that it seems to be naturally a place of Strength, and seated for Trade. From it to *Tubarca* by Sea is 70 miles, by Land about 58 to the Westward. *Leo Africanus* pag. 244. saith it is also called *Benzart* and was founded by the Africans 35 miles from *TUNIS*, but in his time was meanly Inhabited by a beggarly people, who were Fishers in that Lake mentioned by *Nabienus* (between which and the River it stands, having the River on the West and the Lake on the East) but the King of *TUNIS* and the *Arabians* so vexed the Inhabitants with their Exactions, that it fell into this wretched State pag. 244. In the Map of Carthage, this place is exactly represented by *Mercator*. 6. *Byzacium*, seated in a liberal and fruitful Soil, as was shewn before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena*. 7. *Russinum*, made by *Cæsar* the seat of his War in *Africk*, against the Sons and Faction of *Pompey*; as memorable in the times succeeding, for being the Episcopal See of St. *Fulgentius*. 8. *Thystrus*, remarkable for the Tragedy of *Gordiani*: Of which the Father in this City was saluted Emperor by the Souldiers, in hatred to *Maximinus* then their Emperor, whose *Procurator* they had slain in a tumult: But his party being dissolved by *Capellianus*, whom *Maximinus* sent against him, and his Son killed in the defeat; upon the hearing of the News, he here hanged himself. 9. *Hippagreta*, on a great Lake betwixt Carthage and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held it out longest for the Mercenaries, in their desperate Rebellion against the *Carthaginians*; by which the Estate of that great City was in danger of Ruine at the end of the first *Punick* War. 10. Carthage,

once the Lady and Mistress of *Africk*, called by the *Grecians* *καρχηδών*, built by Queen *Didio* a Tyrian Princess, Anno. Mundi 3725. 72 years after Rome was founded, 874 years before the Birth of our Saviour; situate in the bottom of a safe and capacious Bay, the entrances whereof were very strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, environed with the Sea, except upon one side only, where joyned unto the Land by a narrow *Isthmus*, about two miles and an half in breadth, in compass 24 miles but measuring by the outward Wall, it was 45. for without the Wall of the City it self there were three Walls more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults underground of 30 foot deep; wherein they had place for 300 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horse, and all their Provender, and Lodging in those out streets for the Riders of the said Horse, and for 20000 Foot besides, which never came within the City to annoy or pester it. On the South-side stood the Castle called *Byrsa*; which took up two miles and an half in compass: First built by *Dido*, on that ground which she obtained of the *Libians*, when she got leave to buy only so much Land of them, as she could compass round about with an Oxes Hide. In that the sumptuous Temple of their ancient Deities, *Juno*, *Appollo*, *Æsculapius*, *Belus*. On the West side a standing Pool made of the Sea-water, let into it by so narrow a passage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a stately *Arsenal*, with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the Foundation and Affairs of this mighty City we have spoke already. The Government of it first by Kings, those absolute enough at first, afterwards limited by the Senate; and finally made merely titular by the Power of the people: which unproportionable mixture is much condemned by *Aristotle*, in the Second of his *Politicks*. Their Territories, before the second *Punick* War, when they were at the greatest, extended on the Sea-coasts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syrtis* to the *Streights*, and unto the River *Iberus*, for the space of 2000 miles in length: their *Revenues* answerable, and readily brought in, by reason of their infinite Trading. Which made the Roman People think themselves unsafe, whilst this City stood. Resolved on the destruction of it, they sent against it *L. Martius*, and *M. Manlius*, their two *Consuls*, with a puissant Army: To whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the Preservation of the City it self, which was faithfully promised. But when they had withal given up the Sons of their Principal Men to be sent to Rome for Pledges of their future Loyalty; they were told, That a City consisted not in Walls, but in Laws and Government. These, with the Corporation, should remain as formerly; the Town to be removed Ten miles further off, where there was no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was resolved to abide the utmost: but they wanted Necessaries for Resistance. That want supplied for want of Iron to make Arms with Gold and Silver; the Houses pulled down to furnish them with Timber to build a Navy; the noble Ladies cutting off the Hair of their Heads, to make Ropes and Cordage, 25000 Women listed to defend the Walls. But the fatal moment being come, a second *Scipio* is sent thither to dispatch the Work; by whom at last the Town was taken; and for 17 days together consumed with fire: The Queen and multitudes of the People burning themselves in the Temple of *Æsculapius*, because they would not fall into the Hands of the Romans. Re-edified by *Julius Cæsar*, and made a Colony, it recovered some part of her former lustre; but so, that her chief Glory was rather to be sought for in her ancient, than her present Fortunes. *Populi Romani Colonia, olim Imperii ejus pertinax amula, et prius excidia rerum, quam opa, presentium clarior*, was her Character in the times of *Pomponius Mela*. But in the last estate, accounted for the Metropolis of the Diocese of *Africk*, the Residence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief *Primate* of the *African* Churches; who had 164 Bishops under

under him in that one Province wherein *Carthage* stood. Destroyed in the succeeding time by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it revived again, and had the Reputation of a City of no mean Importance, till the year 1270. at what time being forced by the *French*, under *Lewis* the 9th. and thereupon deserted by its old Inhabitants, it began to languish, and was at last reduced to nothing but a few scattered Houses, not above five and twenty Shops, one Temple; all the rest a Ruine. So truly said the ancient Poet:

Sic patet exemplis Oppida posse mori.

Thus by Examples do we see,
That Towns may die as well as we.

It sustained 3 sharp Wars with *Rome*; the first of which lasted 24 years, the Second 18. and had ended in the Ruine of *Rome* if the *Carthaginians* had but supplied their General effectually, and in time; the third lasted 3 years, and ended in the Total Subversion of this City, *Anno Mundi* 3803. Yet it was made a *Roman Colony*, and rebuilt under the *Gracchi* 25 years after the Ruine of it, and was, as *Vell. Paternulus* affirms, the first Colony the *Romans* sent out of *Italy*. After this, it flourished greatly. and the Primate of this City had 125. Suffragan Bishops under him, *Anno Christi* 432. It was taken by the *Vandals* from which time it was their Royal Seat, till the year 533. it was recovered to the *Roman Empire* Under *Justinian*. In 617 it was taken and Sackt by *Cosroes* King of *Persia*, who came through *Egypt* as far as this City. About 632 this City fell into the hands of the *Saracens*, who made it Tributary only; before the year 684 they took it again, and treated the Inhabitants barbarously. About 690 *Justinian* 2 recovered it again from them. About 703 the *Saracens* returned the third time and made a perfect Conquest of it; since which they have enjoyed it to the total Ruine of Christianity. *Boniface* Earle of *Corfica* being deserted by his Christian Neighbours, and driven out by the *Saracens* in 830. landed in *Africa* between *Carthage* and *Utica*, and fought 4 Prosperous Battels against them; by which he forced them to recall their Forces out of *Sicily*. In 1030. the *Pisans* took this City from the *Saracens*, or as others suppose rather *TUNIS*, ho it is called *Carthage*; and in the year 1269 it was retaken by *Lewis* the Ninth. In *Camden's Letters*, pag. 378. mention is made of *Alphonfus Comte de A'la* who died under the Walls of *Carthage* in the Kingdom of *Tunis* in September 1270. which Words are graven upon his Tomb-stone at *St. Denis*, the same year the King of *France* died here (*viz.*) 24 of *August*. After his Death they went to the Seige of *Tunis*, which is called in the Inscription *Carthage*: Here they had no good Success by reason of a Plague in the Army, but were forced to take Money of the King of *Tunis*, and return as they came. So that *Carthage* was then extant, but an open place; and *Tunis* was called also *Carthage*, because built out of the Ruines of it. In the Life of *St. Lewis*, *Paulus Emilius* saith the Castle was taken before the City, and by the Mariners whilst the Garrison of *Carthage* made a Sally, so that then it seemed to be a place of some Strength. Yet he calls *Tunis* a nobler City than *Carthage*, and the King's Seat. Mr. *Eversham* an English Man, saw this City in 1586. It was narrow and long; for yet there is to be seen saith he a Street 3 English Miles long. But the rest was then Desolate and uninhabited *Hackl. T.* 2 page 282.

Of chief note at the present, 1. *Tunis*, supposed to be the *Themisa*, or *Thumisa* of *Ptolemy*; of small account till the last destruction of *Carthage*, by whose fall it rose. Situate not far from the Ruines of that famous City, in compass above five miles; and in that compass said to contain 10000 Houholds. Of great Traffick, and well frequented by the Merchants of foreign Nations; chiefly from *Genoa* and *Venice*. Remarkable in the Story of the Holy Wars, for the Seiges and Successes of two of our English Princes; that namely, of King *Edward* the First, in his Fathers times; and that of *Henry* the Fourth, then but Earl of *Derby*: by both which (though the last ser-

ved only under the Command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a Composition; *Lewis* the 9th commonly called *St. Lewis*, dying at the First Siege of it. 2. *Goleta*, a strong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a demy-Iland, divided from the main Land by two narrow passages, but so that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extreme difficulty, by *Charles* the 5th. *Anno*. 1535. together with the *Turkish* Navy riding in the Lake fast by it; but again recovered by the *Turks* about 40 years alter, *An*. 1574. 3. *Cairean*, built by *Huchar*, who first conquered *Africa* for the *Saracens*, in a sandy Desert, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36 from any of the Sea, to secure himself from any Invasion, which the commodiousness of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the First Founder of it, with an admirable Temple raised on Pillars of Marble: who placed also in it a Colledge of Priests, and made it the chief Residence of his Posterity for the space of 170 years, who reigned here under the great Caliphs as the Sultans of *Africa*. Destroyed by the *Arabians*, in the 424th. year of their *Higra*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco*, and still of such esteem amongst these *Mohammittans*, that their chief Men are brought hither to be buried from all parts of the Country, hoping by the Prayers of those Priests to find a shorter way to Heaven, than in other places. This was intended only a Retreat for that Nation to store up the Spoils of *Africa*; to that end it was surrounded with impregnable Walls: This was in the year of *Christ* 991. when this General led 80000 Men to the Conquest of *Africa*; after which he made the *Arabs* conquer *Spain*. It is leated in a Sandy Plain which beareth neither Corn nor Trees, but has plenty of Water from Mount *Guslet*, 12 miles from it. For a great while it was the Seat of the *Arabian* Learning in *Africa*. Afterwards it was sackd, and could never recover its ancient splendour, being only now inhabited by Tanners, and subject to the Kings of *TUNIS*. It can have no trade, but with difficulty; and therefore it is not to be wonder'd it was so easily at once destroyed. A Court may raise, but it is Trade that must preserve A City, when the other is removed.

4. More Westward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, so called from *Constantina* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hippomites*, now named *Guadilbarbar*, to *Constantine* a Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which I conceive to be the same with *Mons Audus* in *Ptolemy*: The Soyl hereof said to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of Fruits, and great store of Butter. *Rubricatus*, by *Orisius* called *Ordalio*, now *Ludog*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Tabraca*, on the East; and 2. *Hippo Regius*, on the Western Bank of *Rubricatus*; Both *Roman Colonies*, but this last most famous, in being the *Episcopal See* of renowned *St. Augustine*. 3. *Bona*, the Birth-place of that Father, built by the *Romans* about a hundred miles from the Sea; but situate in a large Plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25 in breadth: so Rich and Fertile, that the Town flourisheth to this day; adorned with a sumptuous *Mosque*, and never without the Company of Merchants coming from *Genoa*, *Tunis* and the Ile of *Zerby*, for their Fruits, and Butter. It is seated on the West of *TUNIS* 216 miles on the South of Mount *Jadogh*, which was taken by the *Saracens*, *Anno Christi* 8165. *Nubiensis* 88. and seems to have been the last place that held out against the *Moors*, in their Conquest of *Barbary*. Mount *Jadogh* is very high, and affords Mines of Iron. The Sea Charts place *Bona* 45 Leagues West of *TUNIS*, and 35 from *Sardinia* to the South. It was taken by *Hutmen* the Third, Calif of the *Saracens* (between 644 and 654.) and utterly destroyed; and what now stands, was built out of the Ruines of *Hippo*, 2 miles distant. It contains now 300 Families, who live in mean Houses: They are ingenious, and have some Trade for Linnen, which they carry into *Numidia*; their greatest Want is good Water, for they have none but what falls from Heaven and is reserved

served in Cisterns. They have Coral, but know not how to get it, which turns to the Advantage of the *Genouese*, *Leo Africanus* pag 241. It is strong, and has a large Haven, *Baudrand*. 4. *Thuburnica*, another Colony of the Romans. 5. *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the same nature; by *Solinus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6. *Culcua*, another of the Roman Colonies, by the Moors now called *Cucutina*, but *Constantina* by the Latins, and most Nations else, now the chief City of this Province, situate near a Mountain of the same name, near the edge of *Bugia*. An ancient City, but containing still 8000 Families; many sumptuous Buildings, amongst which a large Temple, two Colledges, and three or four Monasteries; Frequently visited by the Merchants, every Trade having here its peculiar Street; their chief Commodities Wool, Cloth, Silks, Oyl, and some sorts of Fruits, which they exchange for *Dates*, or *Slaves*, who are here good Merchandise. The City for the most part fenced about with high craggy Rocks; and where those want, with strong Walls, of a great height, and most exquisite workmanship, declaring the Antiquity of it. A further Argument whereof may be a fair *Triumphal Arch*, not far from the City, and some *Hot Baths*, after the manner of the Romans. This City is called by *Nubiensis*, *Constantina*. It stands upon the River *Ladogh* which runs Round the Walls as a Ring. It had only 2 Gates, *Mila* on the West, and *Alcantara* to the East: The River having fetch'd a Compass to secure this City, runs to the North. *Leo Africanus* observeth the Wall is strongest to the North, the rest being secured by Rocks as well as the River, and is the Main for the *Numidian* Trade. In his time it was under the King of *Tunis*, but had been before a distinct Kingdom. *Leo Afr.* pag 238. It is now subject to the City of *Argier*.

5. Most Westward lieth the Province of *BUGIA*, extended from Mount *Constantine* to the River *Ampsia*, now called *Chello*, or *Sef-Gemar*: which, with so much of *Constantina*, as lieth on the West side of *Rubricatus*, made up that province which the Romans called by the name of *Numidia*. The length hereof 150 miles on the *Mediterranean*, the breadth not above half so much. Narrower than *Mauritania*, as is said by *Pliny*; *Sed ditior & magis culta*, but the richer of the two, and the better peopled. The Country of a fat Soyl, plentiful both in Fruits and Corn, but most fit for Pasturage, to which the people were so addicted, that many of them cared not for building Houses, (instead whereof they used the Hold of a ship with the Keel turned upwards) but removed from one place to another, as their Pastures failed them. From thence called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, ἀπό τοῦ νέμεν, signifying to feed or graze. The people of good metal, swift of Foot, and well skilled in Horsemanship: but better in the Onset, & to give a Charge, than in standing to it; such as the wild *Arabians* are now said to be. So here was anciently a people like to them, but fixed I suppose before they entered *Africa*, to renew that sort or way of Living, which is one of the worst Mankind can betake them to.

Chief Towns hereof (besides *Thuburnica*, *Culena*, *Bona*, *Hippo*, spoken of before, belonging to *Numidia* though not to *Bugia*) 1. *Bugia*, built by the Romans on the side of a lofty Mountain looking into the Sea; by

some conceived to have been the *Thebuacha* of *Ptolemy*, now the chief City of this Province, adorned with many sumptuous *Mosques*, some Monasteries and Colledges for Students in the Law of *Mahomet*, and many fair *Hospitals* for relief of the Poor; fenced also with a strong Castle. Secured by strength whereof, and growing rich by the fruitfulness of the situation, the Citizens began to grow proud and wanton, working much mischief to the *Spaniards* by their Gallies, which they had at Sea; till taught more modestly by *Peter* of *Newarr* a *Spanish* Captain An. 1508. by whom the Town was taken, and the people plundered. This City was retaken by the *Turks* and is now under the *Algerines*. In 1671. *Sr. Edward Sprague*, an *English* Admiral, took and burnt under the Guns of this Castle 9 of the best Men of War the *Algerines* had; who thereupon cut of the Head of their King, and made a Peace with us much to the Advantage of *England*. *Geo Nubiensis* p. 82. saith it is seated upon a Rock at the foot of Mount *Amesum* to the South; That it was employed for an Arsenal to build Ships, having plenty of Timber and Mines of Iron. He calls it *Begiaia*. The Inhabitants were always at War with the *Spaniards*, who took it at last without any Resistance, and sacked it 6 years after. *Barbarossa* endeavoured to retake the Forts the *Spaniards* had built in 1508 but was beaten off with great Loss. 2. *Chello*, upon the Sea-side, the *Chollopbus Magna* (as I take it) of *Ptolemy*; reported for a wealthy City. 3. *Nicaus*, seated towards Mount *Ailas* in a pleasant and delightful Country: which though interspersed with many Hills, yet being those Hills are clothed with Woods, yield them good store of Goats and Horses, and feed the Vallies with fresh Springs, which do issue from them; they rather add than detract any thing from the pleasures of it. 4. *Madaura*, by some called *Madurus*, the birth-place of *Apuleius*. 5. *Tunudromum*, another of the Roman Colonies. 6. *Cirta*, or *Cirta Julia*, the Metropolis of *Numidia*, when a Roman Province, and formerly the Seat-Royal of *Syphax* King of the *Maslyli*, within whose Country it was reckoned in former times, though afterwards laid unto this Province. Situate near the mouth of the River *Amsaga*, and memorable for the Tragedy of *Sophonisby*, the Daughter of *Ajdrubal* of *Carthage*; a Lady of most exquisite beauty, and yet carried more Charms in her Tongue than in her Eyes. Espoused first unto *Masinissa* King of the *Numidians*, but after, upon the Reason of State, married unto *Syphax*; who being took Prisoner by his Rival, and brought to *Cirta*, the Lady upon hopes of liberty and honour both, bestowed her self on her first Lover: But *Scipio* fearing lest that marriage might withdraw *Masinissa* from the Roman party, caused the Lady to be seized on; which *Masinissa* not being otherwise able to prevent or remedy, sent her a Cup of Poyson, which she drank, and died.

Of these *Numidians* there is much mention in the Stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*; employed by this last City in all their Wars, both in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Sicily*. Siding at last with *Scipio* against that State, they did good Service to the Romans in the weakning and destruction of that City, whose fall they did not long survive: First conquered in the War of *Jugurth*; after the death of *Juba*, made a Roman Province. Their Kings, as far as I can trace the succession of them, follow in this Order.

The Kings of the NUMIDIANS.

1. **G**ala the Father of Masinissa.
2. **D**esulces, the Brother of Gala, according to the Law of the Country, which gave the Crown unto the Brother, not the Son of the former King, (like the Law of Tanistry in Ireland) succeeded Gala.
3. **N. N.** a Son of Desulces, in the absence of Masinissa then serving under the Carthaginians in the Wars of Spain, possessed himself of the Throne: Slain not long after by a Rebel.
4. **Masinissa**, Son of Gala, recovered the Kingdom of his Father; but again outed by Syphax and the Carthaginians, betwixt whom and Masinissa, touching Sophonisba there was deadly Feud. Aided by Scipio and the Romans, with whom associated against Carthage, he not only recovered his own Kingdom, but was gratified with the greatest part of that which belonged to Syphax. A professed Enemy to Carthage, (the final ruine whereof he lived to see) till the time of his death, being then Ninety years of age.
5. **Micipsa**, the Son of Masinissa, of whom nothing memorable.
6. **Jugurth**, the Son of Mastanabalus, one of the brethren of Micipsa, having wickedly made away the two Sons of Micipsa, usurped the Kingdom, and manifestly withstood the Romans, whose attempts sometimes by force, sometimes by subtilty, but chiefly by Money and Bribes, he overthrew and made frustrate: *Et fuit in Jugurtha (saith Florus) quod post Annibalem timeretur.* At last being broken by Metellus, vanquished by Marius, and by Bocchus delivered into the hands of Sylla, he was by Marius led in Triumph to Rome. In this Triumph was carried 3700 pound weight in Gold; in Silver wedges, 5775 pounds weight; and in ready Coin, 28900 Crowns: it being the custom of the Romans in their Triumphs, to have carried before them all the Riches and Money, which they had brought out of the conquered Countries, to put into the common Treasury.
7. **Hiempsal**, Son of Bocchus King of Mauritania, gratified for his Father's Treachery in betraying Jugurth, with the Kingdom of Numidia; Relieved Marius in his Exile.
8. **Hiarbas**, another of the Maurian Faction, preferred to the Numidian Crown, but vanquished and deprived by Pompey, at that time one of Sylla's Captains.
9. **Hiempsal II.** preferred by Pompey to this Kingdom.
10. **Juba**, the Son of Hiempsal the Second, who siding with Pompey against Caesar in the Civil Wars, gave a great Overthrow to Curio, one of Caesar's Lieutenants; Curio himself slain, his whole Army routed, such as were taken prisoners murdered in cold Blood. But being discomfited by Caesar, after Pompey's death, Numidia was made a Province of the Roman Empire.

Thus by the fall of Carthage, and the death of Juba, came the whole Provinces of *Africa Propria*, and *Numidia* (containing the now Kingdom of *Tunis*) into the power of the Romans. Of which, the Nations of most Note were the *Nigritimi*, on the Eastern parts of the *Mediterranean*, the *Machini*, near the lesser *Syrtis*; the *Lybia-Phanices*, and *Mudini*, bordering upon Carthage; the *Jonii*, *Nuvatrae* and *Certesii*, taking up all the Sea-coasts of *Numidia*. Such as inhabited more Southwards on the back of these, not so much considerable; None of them to be staid upon, but the *Lybia-Phanices*, a mixt People of the old *Libyans*, and new *Phanicians*, as the *Liby-Egyptii* were of the said *Libyans* and the neighbouring *Egyptians*. The memory of all of them so defaced by the violent Inundation of the *Arabians*, that there is scarce any tract, or footsteps in all the Country. When conquered by

the *Saracens*, they were at first subject to the Caliph of Grand Cairo, and after that to the Sultan of Cairo; after the Spoil whereof by the *Arabians*, subdued by *Abdul Mumen* King of Morocco, and by him added to that Kingdom. In the distractions of that State, made a peculiar Kingdom by some one of the Relicts of the Stock of the *Almoheads*, who took unto himself the Title of King of *Tunis*, that City being his Chief Seat. By him transmitted unto his Posterity, till the days of our Grandfathers; when *Muleasses*, one of the youngest Sons of Sultan *Mahomet*, having first murdered *Maimun* his eldest Brother, and put out the Eyes of 20 of the rest, usurped the Sovereignty. *Rafetta*, the only one of those Princes who escaped this Massacre, upheld a while by the *Arabians*, and by them deserted, was slain to put himself into the hand of *Barbarossa* King of *Algiers*, and Admiral of the Turkish Navy; by whom he was carried to Constantinople, and so presented to *Solyman*, who under colour of restoring him to the Throne of his Fathers, conquered that Kingdom for himself; outed thereof not long after by *Charles* the Fifth, appearing in favour of *Muleasses*. An. 1535. But the Tyrant did not long enjoy his gotten Sovereignty, when his Eyes were also put out by his own Son *Amyda*, and so committed to close Prison: Nor did *Amyda* enjoy it long, dispossessed by *Abdamelech* his Father's Brother. To *Abdamelech* *Muomet* his Son succeeded; who being a Child, and his Affairs ill governed by his Tutors, and other Ministers of State, gave opportunity to *Amyda* to regain the Kingdom, During which broils the *Turks* again recovered footing, possessed themselves of a great part of the Country, and forced *Amyda* into exile, who flying to *Don John of Austria*, then newly victorious at *Lepanto*, invaded him to the Conquest of *Tunis*, but he got little by the bargain; for *Don John* having subdued the Kingdom, conferred the same on *Mahomet* the Brother of *Amyda*, and carried *Amyda* in Bonds to the Isle of *Sicily*, where he after died. Nor did *Mahomet* enjoy it long; for the next year the *Turks* besieged and took the City of *Tunis*, with the strong Fort of *Gazetta*, with all the other Forts and Holds of that Kingdom, made ever since a Province of the Turkish Empire; the poor King being carried Prisoner to Constantinople at the end of the War, which was in the year 1574. and the last of *Selimus* the Second. This Kingdom is at this day subject to the Republick of *Algiers*; but when, or how Conquer'd, I cannot Assign Till the year 1642. that State was subject to the *Port*, or *Ottoman* Family, and then freed it self; and as I suppose, took Possession of this Province.

2. TREMESEN, or ALGIERS.

THE Kingdom of TREMESEN is bounded on the East with the River *Amfaga*, (now called *Major*) by which parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the West, with the Kingdom of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, from which separated by the River of *Malutha*, or *Malwa*. So called from *Tremesen*, or *Teleusine*, the chief City of it. Called also the Kingdom of *Algiers*, from the City so named, sometimes the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

In the flourish of the Roman Empire, it had the name of *Mauritania Caesariensis*: *Mauritania*, because of the Kingdom of *Juba* King of *Mauritania*, of which more anon; *Caesariensis* from *Casarea* the chief City of it, as that so called in honour of *Augustus Caesar*, on whom the King hereof depended. More anciently the Kingdom of the *Masæsyli*, one of the most powerful Nations in all this Tract, over whom Reigned *Syphax* before-mentioned, called therefore by *Strabo*, *Masæsyliæ*, with good Propriety; and corruptedly, *Massyliæ*.

Uuuuu

The

The Kingdom extended in length from East to West, for the space of 380 Miles, but of breadth not answerable; is generally of the same nature (as to the Soil and Air) with the rest of *Barbary*: sufficiently fruitful towards the Sea, more barren and uncomfortable in the Southern parts; but meanly peopled, by reason of the continual spoils made by the *Arabians*, who possess the Desarts; and the Cities of it much wasted by continual Wars. Nor have the People any peculiar Character, but what belongeth to others of these *Africans* also.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Guagya*, inconveniently seated, as paying their accustomed Tributes to the King of *Tremesen*, their natural Prince; and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here so numerous and powerful, that the Kings themselves of this small Kingdom were fain to buy their Peace of them at excessive Rates. 2. *Tigedent*, sometimes famous, and abounding with Men of Learning; now almost forsaken, by reason of the ill neighborhood of these *Arabians*. 3. *Tebocrit*, inhabited for the most part by Weavers. 4. *Bresch*, the Inhabitants whereof use to paint a black Cross on their Cheek, and another on the Palm of their Hands: The reason of which Custom they are ignorant of, but some conceive it to be a remembrance of their Christianity. 5. *Ned-Roma* built, as the People do pretend, by the ancient *Romans*, as an Epitome, or Abridgment of that mighty City, to which it is said to have some resemblance; and that imported by the name, which signifieth in their Language, *Like to Rome*, perhaps the same which *Ptolemy* calleth *Novum Oppidum*, or the New Town, then a *Roman* Colony. 6. *Batha*, once a great City, since decay'd by Wars. 7. *Oran*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, said to contain no fewer than 10000 Families. Powerful at Sea, and much infesting with their Gallies the Coasts of *Spain*; till taken for *Ferdinand* the Catholick by *Peter* of *Navarr*, *An.* 1506. It was taken in the year 1509. by the Cardinal of *Ximenes* for the *Spaniards*, in whose hands it still is. *Natalis Comes*, upon occasion of a Siege which it suffered in the year 1556. from the *Moors*, saith its ancient Name was *Buyza*, Populous and great, seated over against *Barcelona* in *Spain* (but it lies above three Degrees more to the West) and not far from the Straights of *Gibraltar* (that is 300 *Italian* Miles to the East) that it lies extended on the shoars of the *Mediterranean* Sea. There was but 2000 Men in Garrison then in the Town, and they were attacked by 12000 *Turks*, yet they defended the Place with that Bravery, that the *Turk* was forced to draw off with great Shame and Loss. In 1687. the *Spaniards* sent thither a greater Garrison than formerly it had. *Nubienfis* p. 80. placeth it three Stations from *Tremesen* to the North; he calls it *Vabaran*, and says it stood near the Sea, and fortified with strong earthen Works (*Propugnacula Terrea*) that had spacious Streets, many Trades, and much Merchandise, and stood over against *Almaria* in *Spain*, the Sea between them being two Days Journey (35 Leagues) and in his time the Sea-coasts of *Spain* had their Corn from hence; at its Gates the Harbour was unsafe, but two Miles off it had both a large and safe one; and that a River from the Continent gave Drink to the Inhabitants. Thus far *Nub* p. 80. It stands, saith he, p. 81. 204 Miles from *Temes* (30 Leagues *Eng.*) to the West. *Leo Africanus*, p. 225. calls it a great and populous Town that had once 6000 Families, and was built by the *Africans*. Its distance from *Tremesen* is 140 Miles, well built as to its Mosques, Colledges, Baths, Inns, &c. encompassed with high and strong Walls, a Plain on one side, and Mountains on the other: it Trades with *Venice*, *Genova* and *Spain*, and the Inhabitants were free from the King of *Tremesen*, and lived much by Piracy, which filled them with Christian Slaves: This provoked *Ferdinand* King of *Spain* to send an Army against it, who took it *A. C.* 1597. with great slaughter of the Inhabitants; the King sending no Relief: Since which time Peopled and Possessed by the *Spaniards*: in vain besieged by the *Turks*, *An.* 1562. 8. *Musalquiver*, a

fair and spacious Haven on the same Sea also, and taken by the said *Peter* of *Navarr* about the same time. 9. *Haresgol*, in former times of much esteem amongst the *Moors*; but being destroyed by the King or Sultan of *Castroan*, it bequeathed its Greatness unto *Tremesen*, which after grew into Renown. 10. *Tremesen*, once Adorned with many beautiful Mosques, and five sumptuous Colledges, curiously wrought with *Mosaick* work: so Populous, that there were reckoned in it 16000 Families: and so well fortified, that it held out seven Years against *Joseph* the Great King of *Fesse*: nor taken after that, though they were very much weakened by *Abulhasen*, or *Albobacen* his Son and Successor, under a Siege of 30 Months. By those, and the succeeding Troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in Strength and Beauty. The *Nubian* Geographer saith, it stands nine Days Journey from *Fesse*, and is compassed with very strong and antient Walls: the City was parted also within by a Wall. On the South, at some distance stood Mount *Sachratain*, and out of it sprung a Fountain which turned some Mills. Upon this River stand Monasteries, Oratories, and other Religious Houses, &c. 11. *Siga*, an *African* City, and a *Roman* Colony; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Bocchus*, sometimes Kings of this Country. 12. *Arsenaria*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 13. *Jol*, the Seat-Royal of King *Bocchus*, after such time as this Country was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*: called afterwards *Cæsarea*, in Honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, whose Feudatories the Kings hereof were then accounted, or as some say, in honour of *Claudius Cæsar*; by whom made a Colony: the Metropolis of it also when a *Roman* Province, which from hence was called *Cæsariensis*. Situate in, or near the place where *Oran* now stands, which seemeth to have risen out of the Ruins of it. 14. *Saldie*, a *Roman* Colony, also, out of whose Ruins rose *Algiers*. 15. *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Gezeir*, now the chief City of this Kingdom, situate near the Sea, in the form of a Triangle, with an Haven to it; but neither great, nor safe from the North Winds, which do much annoy it. The Buildings very beautiful; the publick Inns, Baths, and Mosques, exceeding sumptuous; every Trade having a several Place, or Street by it self: but that which is the greatest grace of it, is the situation of the Houses standing in even Streets one above another, upon the rising of a steep Hill; so that the Windows of one Street, or row of Housing, do all along over-look the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a most pleasant prospect. A City, not so large as strong; and not so strong as famous. Famous for being the receptacle and retreating place of the *Turkish* Pyrates, who domineer so infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great damage of the Merchants of all Nations that frequent those Seas. Famous also for the Shipwrack which *Charles* the Fifth here suffered who besieged this Town, lost in the Haven of it at one Tempest, besides an infinite number of Karvals and small Boats, divers strong Gallies, 140 Ships, a great many excellent pieces of Ordnance; such a number of gallant Horses, that in *Spain* the Race of Horses for Service had like to have been lost for ever; and above half his Men. It long enjoyed the benefit of Proprietary Princes, (but Homagers, or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremesen*,) till such time as *Selimes* and *Mabomet*, falling out, made the first, and that an irreparable Breach in the Government. So *Selimes* to strengthen his side, implored the aid of *Hairaccius Barbarossa*, a noble Pyrate; who taking his best advantage, slew the disjointed Brethren, and settled himself in the Kingdom: which he had scarce made warm, when he left it to *Hairadine Barbarossa* his Brother, *An.* 1514. This *Hairadine* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Rugia*, and was so renowned for Martial Prowess, that *Solyman* the Magnificent made him Lord High-Admiral of his Fleet: Which Office, when to the prejudice of Christendom he had fortunately, and for long time undergone, he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the Heir of his Kingdom; the Kingdom of *Tremesen* being made subject to the

the *Turk* much about that time. This Kingdom and City continued subject to the *Turks* to the year 1642. and then taking the opportunity of their *Bassas*'s absence, they slew him, and Revolted from the *Turks*, the Port has since sent them *Bassas*, and they receive them, but they sit not in the *Divan* (Senate) nor have any Authority over them: Thereupon they chose a *Dey* or Governor. Between 1642, and 1672 there were Thirteen of these Officers, and but one had died in his Bed, and all the rest were murder'd by the Tumults of this City: He has under him a Lieutenant without the City for the Commanding the Land Army, and an *Aga* within for the Government of the City. The *Divan* formerly 1000 Persons is now reduced to 48. which has made the Government much more easie and peaceable. In 1688 *Lewis* 14. of France sent 48 Gallies to Bomb this City, which more provoked than hurt the Inhabitants: and the Year after he made a dishonourable Peace with them. *Marmolinus*, in his *Africa*, observeth, That this is now the richest and most splendid City in *Africa*; it having many noble splendid Palaces, that were built by the Admirals and other Renegado Christians, who have grown Rich by their Pyracies. This Author wrote about 1636. I suspect the Case is much alter'd, the *English* having twice destroyed their Fleets since that time. The *English* or *Dutch* might easily Ruine this City, but it's said to be their Interest to preserve it, because thereby they have a great share in the Trade of the *Mediterranean Seas*, which would be taken from them by the small Vessels of other Nations, if this Town by preying upon their Ships did not prevent it. 16. *Tetuan*. And 17. *Sargel*, situate Westward of *Algiers*; Towns of Trade and Pyracies.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman* Province, were the *Herpeditani*, *Tiladusi*, *Ibalussi*, *Malchubii*, *Maccurebi*, *Cittiva*, and others of as little note; the most predominant Nation being the *Musæyli*, over whom (and in that over all the rest) Reigned *Syphax*, spoken of before, unfortunately famous for his Tragical Love to *Sophonisba*: For whose sake, siding with the *Carthaginians* against the *Romans*, he was vanquished and sent Prisoner to *Rome*; his Kingdom given to *Masiniussa* King of the *Numidians*, continued in his Line till the death of *Jugurth*, and then bestowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*; part of whose Kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a Province of the Empire by the Emperor *Claudius*; won from the *Romans* by the *Vandals*, and then by the *Saracens*; it followed the fortunes of these last, while they stood and flourished: But growing into many Distractions, and every Sultan, or Provincial Governor shifting for himself, it became a Kingdom, under the Style and Title of the Kingdom of *Tremesen*. The Majesty of it much impaired by *Abulbasen* or *Albobaecen* King of *Fesse*, who brought it not long after under his Command. Recovering after some short time its former Liberty, it became a Kingdom once again, and so continued till the time of *Abuchemen*: who incurring the Hatred of his People, because by his supine Neglect the *Spaniards* had surprized and taken *Oran* and *Musalquivet*, their two best Havens, made an easie passage for his Brother *Abuzeiden* to the Regal Diadem. *Abuzeiden* scarce well settled, lost it to *Haïradine Barbarossa*, An. 1515. and he to *Charles* the Fifth, by whom *Abuchemen* was restored, becoming Homager and Tributary to the Crown of *Spain*. But his Successor *Abdulla*, weary of the *Spanish* Servitude, put himself under the Protection of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his decease, he left the possession of his Kingdom also: ever since subject to the *Turks*: whose *Beglerbeg*, or Supreme Officer for these *African* Provinces, resides for the most part in *Algiers*, and hath 4000 *Timariots* under his Command, which continued to 1640, as is said above.

3. F E S S E and M O R O C C O.

These Kingdoms I have joined in Title, because united for the most part in the Story and Affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Estate under the *Ariffs* of *Morocco*: and therefore handled both together in the point of History, though of a different Consideration in the way of Chorography.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly so called; divided anciently into *Tingitana* and *Sutisoris*; *Cæsarica* being naturally a *Numidian* Region, the *Musæyli* and the rest of the Inhabitants of it, of *Numidian* breed; not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accounted any part thereof till the death of *Jugurth*, when given to *Bocchus* King hereof in regard of his Treason, for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, when that name was first given; the word *Tania*, signifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britania*, *Lybætanica*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps some others; and the name of *Mauri* given them *αὐτὸς ὁ σκῆνος* which signifieth amongst other things obscure or black, by reason of the darkness of their Complexion. Accounted in these times an hardy, but a bloody People; careless of life, ready of Death; implacable if once offended. Their thirst of Revenge not to be quenched but by Blood. *genus hominum sumpsit natura cæcis aversum, nilque non facile audens, & desperatus simile, contra vitam, & mortis & periculum.* A Character given of them in *Herodian's* time; and it holds good still, notwithstanding the intermixture of *Gæths* and *Saracens* incorporated into the same Nation with them, and passing by the same name to the Writers of the middle time. *Post hæc Mauri totam Hispaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam, &c. Dominos se emanciparunt*, as my Author hath it; where by *Mauri* we are to understand the *Saracens*, which came out of *Africa*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1. *Atlas minor*, so called, to difference it from the greater Mountain of that name, from which it is seven degrees more North, but shooteth as that doth with a Point or Promontory into the main *Atlantick Ocean*, on the South of *Salé*. 2. *Durdus* extended also into *Cæsarica*. 3. *Diur*. 4. *Plana*, of which little memorable. Rivers of most note, 1. *Salé*. 2. *Salur*. 3. *Zilia*. 4. *Phath*. 5. *Diur*. 6. *Cusa*; all falling into the *Atlantick*: The last the same, as I conjecture, which our Modern Writers call *Ommirabli*. And for the rest, we must find amongst them. 1. *Sifemel*. 2. *Tefsa*. 3. *Niffis*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans* were the *Metagonitæ*, near the Straits, giving name unto *Metagonitis* an adjoining Promontory, the *Succæ*, *Carbia*, *Nétiæres*, *Vacuatæ*, *Volæ*; and on the East side the *Maurusii*: These last participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the *Latines*, *Mauri*; by the *Greeks*, *Maurusii*: The Etymology as before. Their descent originally from *Phut*, the Son of *Cham*: whose memory preserved here in the River *Phat*. To that, the coming of the *Canaanites*, of the same extraction, served but as an Accessory. From those two Fountains sprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*, Governed by Kings: the most considerable of which, when first known to the *Romans*, was that *Bocchus*, who betrayed *Jugurth* his Friend and Son-in-law, into the hands of the *Romans*; gratified for that Treachery with the Country of the *Musæyli*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hompfal* one of his Sons was not long after, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*. The whole Estates of *Bocchus*, *Syphax* and *Masiniussa*, united by this means in the Person of *Juba*, one of his Posterity, the most potent Prince of all these parts: who falling in the *African* War against *Julius Cæsar*, *Numidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; *Conf-*

pus Salustius, the Roman Historian, being made the first Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Amsagus*, he gave to *Bocchus* and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but descended of the old Regal Family. *Bogud* unluckily taking part with *Mark Antony* against *Augustus*, was by *Bocchus*, who declared for the other side, dispossessed of his part, (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Fesse*) in which confirmed for his good Service, by the Conquering Emperour. *Juba*, the Son of the former *Juba*, grown Famous for his Eminent Learning, was of a Prisoner made a Prince: invested after the death of *Bocchus* in all the Dominions of his Father, except *Numidia*: and by the Bounty of *Augustus*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the Marriage of *Selene*, Daughter of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*. After whose death, and the death of *Ptolemy* their Son, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the Patrimony of the Roman Empire: divided into two Provinces, viz. *Cæsariensis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Malva* and *Amsaga*, now the Kingdom of *Tremesen*; and *Tingitana*, from the River *Malva* to the Western Ocean. This last divided into *Tingitana* and *Sitifensis*, (the River now called *Omirabili* being the Boundary betwixt them) by the Emperour *Constantine*: who leaving *Sitifensis* to the Diocese of *Africk*, laid *Tingitana* (why, I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the Romans by the *Goths*, after by the *Saracens*, they became Members of those Empires; in the declining of the last, divided into the two Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, to the Description and History whereof, we now proceed.

3. MOROCCO.

THE Kingdom of MOROCCO hath on the East, the River *Malva*, by which parted from *Tremesen*; on the West, the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, the Kingdom of *Fesse*, so called from *Morocco*, the chief City of it, in former times known by the name of *Mauritania Sitifensis*, from *Sitiphis*, in those times the principal City, as *Procopius* telleth us.

The Country said to be fruitful of all things necessary to life, pleasing to the sight, and sweet to smell to; particularly, well stored with Grain and Pulse, plentiful of Oyl, Honey, and Sugar, liberally furnished with Dates, Grapes, Figs, Apples, Pears, and all sorts of Fruits: exceedingly well stocked with Cattel, but with Goats especially; whose Skins afford a very excellent kind of Cordovan Leather, and their Fleece Materials for the finest Chamlets, which are here made in most of their Cities. The whole Country divided commonly into these seven parts viz. 1. *Guzzula*, 2. *Sus*, 3. *Morocco*, specially so called. 4. *Hea*, 5. *Hascora*, 6. *Duccala*, and 7. *Tedles*.

1. *GUZZULA*, the most Southern Province of this Kingdom, hath on the East, some part of *Tremesen*; on the West, *Sus* or *Susa*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains called *Ilda*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, part of the Territory of *Morocco*, and the rest of *Susa*. The Country rich in Mines of Brass, Iron and other Metals; of which are made many *Ustensils* for domestick uses, exported hence into other places; for which they return Linen Wollen and Horses.

The People barbarous and rude, not easily acknowledging Subjection to the Kings of *Morocco*, and at continual Wars amongst themselves, except only for two months in the year; which being the time of their publick Marts, and then much visited with Strangers from other Countries, they lay aside their private quarrels, and cheerfully entertain such Merchants as repair unto them. They have neither King nor Governour, but every one is his own Captain and Commander, and consequently ever imbroil'd with Wars at home. Once a year they have a Fair, where Merchants of all Countries do resort: and during this time they make a Truce, and appoint Officers to do Justice and keep the Peace. *Leo Africanus* p. 80. Tho'

this was the State of the Country in that time, yet it may be presumed very different now and perfectly conquered by the Kings of *Fesse* who were then beginning to do it. He wrote in 1515. or thereabouts. Walled Towns here are not any, but some very great Villages: the chief where of, 1. *Guzzula*, on the Northern bank of the River *Sus*, whence the name of the Province. 2. *Tagressa*, not far off, but on the other side of the water towards the foot of Mount *Atlas*, 3. *Tedza*, inclining towards the borders of *Morocco*. Of these nothing memorable.

2. West of *Guzzula* lieth the Province of *SUS* or *SUSA*, so called from the River *Sus*, (with which well watered) or giving name to it. Rich in Gold Mines, the cause of continual Wars amongst the people: well stored with Sugar-Canes, which the Inhabitants know neither how to boil or purifie; and on the Sea-shores furnished with great plenty of Amber, bought by the *Portugals* of the people at an easie rate. *Nubiensis* p. 75 saith it hath plenty of excellent Fruits. Between *Taradant* and *Teyuying*, its 2 greatest Towns, is a days Journey through Vineyards, Gardens, and Orchards, which makes it very pleasant. To the North by a Ledge of Mountains it is divided from *Morocco*, which extend from the *Atlantick Ocean* to Mount *Atlas*, and are called *Serra de Quique*. *Taradante* is called *Sus*. In the *Nubian Geographer's* time it was independent and distinct. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Cape D'Aguer*, on a Promontory so called; a place of so great Importance to the *Portugals*, that the taking of it by *Mahomet*, then King of *Sus*, (after of *Morocco* also) made them quit all the Forts which they had in this Country. 2. *Tagavast*, a rich and wealthy Town; the greatest in the Province, and situate in a large Plain near the foot of Mount *Atlas*; containing 8000 Families, walled with Stone, seated 60 miles from the Ocean to the East, and 50 from the *Atlas* South; built by the *Africans*. The Inhabitants are at War among themselves and employ the Wild *Arabs* (their mortal Enemies) as their *Auxiliaries*. Corn and Cattle is plenty, but the Wool coarse; yet they make Cloth of it, and send it to *Tombuto*. 3. *Teijent*, situate in a spacious Plain also, but on the Banks of the River *Sus*, divided into three parts, each a mile from the other, which joynted together, make the exact figure of a Triangle. This City was built by the *Africans*; it yeilds plenty of Corn, Grapes, Sugar, Figs, Peaches, and Gold: it contains 4000 Families, who only trade with Gold and Iron. Their Leather is excellent. The Inhabitants are rude, fierce and warlike. In Civil Cases they have Judges; but Murder is revenged by Conspiracies against the Murderer, or Banishment for 7 years. The Jews here are many, and pay no Tribute. It is seated on the *Sus*, South of *Messa*. 4. *Messa*, or *Massa*, seated at the Influx of the said River on the Promontory called *Cape Gillon*; three Towns in one; not much the better for the Sea, and but ill befriended by the Land; as seated in a barren and unpleasing Soil; remarkable for a fair Temple, the Beams and Rafter of which are made of the Bones of *Whales*, which usually are left dead on the shore. 5. *Taradant*, a large Town built by the *Africans*, before the conquest of this Country by the *Goths* or *Saracens*: The Residence of the Vice-Roy for the Kings of *Fesse*, when the Lords of this Kingdom; but more enriched of late by the Merchants of *France* and *England*, who have here a Staple for their Sugars. By this Commerce, the people made more civil than in other parts of this Province: The whole number of them thought to amount to 3000 Families. This City is governed as a Common Wealth by its Nobility, who govern by turns 6 Months. The Inhabitants being at War with the wandering *Arabs*, who inhabit the Deserts on the South side of their City, in the year of the *Hegyra* 920. they yeilded to the *Seriffo*, or Prince of *Morocco*, for Protection. This *Seriffo* was a *Mahometan* Prince, set up by the Inhabitants of *SUS* about that time against the *Portuguese*, having before been their General. From *Tedza* to *Taradant* is 30 miles to the West. *Leo Africanus*. 6. *Tedza*, more within the Land, bigger than *Taradant*, but less wealthy; the chief Ornament of

of it being a fair *Mahometan* Temple, liberally furnished with Priests and Readers of that Law, at the common charge. Not far from hence the Hill *Anchisa*, where it snoweth at all seasons of the year, and yet the people go extream thin in the sharpest Winter. Nothing else memorable of this Province, but that a little before the *Xeriff* made himself King of *Morocco*, it had the Title of a Kingdom; and gave the Title of King to *Mahomet* the Second *Xeriff*, made King of *Taradant*, or *Sus*, before he dispossessed his Brother of the Crown of *Morocco*.

3. Northward of *Sus*, lieth the Province of *MOROCO*, specially so called, the most fruitfull and best peopled Part of *Barbary*; not much unlike to *Lombardy* in wealth and pleasures; the very Hills thereof as fruitful as the Valleys in other places. To which Fertility of the Soil, the Rivers, 1. *Tensift*, and 2. *Asifnuad*, give no small advantage. This River *Tensift*, saith *Nubieusis*, rising from that part of the *Atlas*, and running West, takes in the *Niftis*, the *Sifibuel*, and the *Aghmat*; passeth within 3 miles of *Morocco*; 100 miles beneath which, it falls into the *Atlantick Ocean*. *Leo Africanus*, p. 326. saith, near *Morocco* there is a Bridge over this River of 15 Arches, thought the best of the *African* Buildings: But *Abu Dubius* last *Calif* of *Morocco*, broke three of the Arches, to hinder the Passage of *Jacob* the First, King of *Effe*, but it had not that effect. This is thought the *Asama* of *Ptolemy*, though much defaced by frequent Incursions of the *Portugals*, who have extreamly spoiled this Country. Places of most observation in it, 1. *Delgumaba*, built upon a very high Mountain, and environed with many other Hills; at the foot whereof the Fountain of *Asifnuad*. 2. *Elgiumba*, a small, but ancient Town on the River *Siffewa*. 3. *Tefrast*, a small Town upon *Asifnuad*. 4. *Imizimi*, situate on a Rock, spacious and seated near the entrance of a narrow way leading into *Guzzula*. 5. *Tenezze*, an old Town, but very well fortified. 6. *Agnet*, upon the River *Tensift*; all ruined, except this Fort, and some scattered houses: Formerly second unto none but *Morocco* (from which distant 24 miles) the Hills and Valleys about it adorned with pleasant Gardens, fruitful Vineyards, a fair River, and Fields so fertile, that they yield a fifty-fold increase. 7. *Secfina*, where they have snow at all times in the year. 8. *Tennella*, an *Heresical* Town, differing in Opinion from the rest of the *Mahometan* Sects; and so well grounded in their Tenets, that they challenge all their *Opposites* to a Disputation. 9. *Hantera*, very full of *Jews*. 10. *Morocco*, the principal of this Province, and of all the Kingdom, situate in or near the place where once stood the *Bocanum Hemerum* of *Ptolemy*. Once reckoned amongst the greatest Cities of the World, at what time it was said to contain 100000 Families: Since so defaced and wasted by the Depredations of the *Arabians*, and the Removal of the Seat-Royal to *Fesse*, when that Kingdom was in the Ascendant, that it is hardly a third part so great as formerly. The Founder of it, *Joseph*, surnamed *Tefsinus*, the second King of the House of the *Amoravides*; but much enlarged and beautified by *Abdul-Mumen*, one of his Successors. The principal Buildings in it, are the Church and the Castle: The Church or *Mosque*, one of the greatest in the World, adorned with many sumptuous Pillars brought out of *Spain*; when the *Moors* had the possession of that Country; and beautified with a stately Steeple, in compass at the bottom an hundred yards, and of so great height, that the Hills of *Azati* (one of the Branches of the lesser *Atlas*) being 130 miles distant, may be thence easily discerned: The Castle very large and strong, on a Tower whereof stands three Globes made of pure Gold, weighing 130000 *Barbary* Ducats: Which divers Kings have gone about to take down, and convert into Money, but all desisted in regard of some cross accident or other which befell them in it; insomuch that the common people think them to be guarded with Spirits. The *Nubian* Geographer p. 76. saith, this City was built by *Joseph*, King of *Tefsin*, in the year of the *Hegyrd* 470 *Ann. C.*

1187. which was in the Century he lived in, That the Ground it was built on, he bought of the Inhabitants of *Aghmat Varicha*, a City at the foot of *Mount Atlas*, 17 miles to the South. It stands in a Plain: the Water for their Gardens is drawn by a wheel out of a Well. This City was then a mile square; and about 3 miles from the City ran the River *Tensift*, which tho' not great was yet never dry. He saith in that Plain there was but one small Hill, called *Aigilin*, which afforded the City Quarries of Stone for their Buildings. This is one of the greatest Cities in the World, saith *Leo Afr. p. 68.* In *Hali's* time, the Son of *Joseph*, it had 100000 Families, 24 Gates, and a Stone Wall very strong and thick. It is seated 6 miles from *Tensift*; Not one third part of the City was inhabited in his time, the rest filled up with Ruines which made its passage difficult. It was built in the year 424. In 516 it was taken by a Rebel Prince, whose Posterity Reigned till the year 668. when those of the Tribe of *Marin* ruled till 785. whose Seat was at *Fesse*; and *Morocco* was managed by *Viceroy*s ever after. There is in it a Vast strong Castle, built all of Marble, as big as a small City: the greatest part of this noble Castle is now desolate, with its Gardens and Park, and the former used for a Dungfield to the City.

4. North of *Morocco*, on the further side of *Tensift* and *Asifnuad*, is the Province of *HEA*: *Hea* is bounded on the West and North with the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the South with *Mount Atlas*, which separates it from *SUS*; and on the East with the *Esfivale*, which falls into the *Tensift*. It is uneven, Mountainous and Rocky, but well Watered, Rich and Populous. Their Fruit is scarce; no Corn but Barly, Milk not plenty, but much Honey. *Leo Africanus*, Rough, Mountainous, and Woody, yet watered with many pleasant Rivers, and would be plentiful enough in all Commodities, if the Industry of the People were not wanting to it. A sort of People little better than merely Barbarous; without all *Artists*, either Ingenious or Mechanick; except some *Chyrurgeons*, whom they keep to Circumcise their Children; and some few Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read. Their Food a Pap, made of Barly-meal, which in stead of Spoons, they claw with their Fingers; the Ground they eat on, serving for Table, Stools and Napkins: At endless feud with one another; yet so kind to Strangers, that in one of their chief Towns, called *Tedneft*, the Gentlemen used to cast lots who should entertain them: A Town of good esteem in former time, situate in a large plain on the River *Tensift*; but in the year 1514 almost wholly abandoned, upon a rumor, that the *Arabians* had a purpose to sell it to the *Portugals*. 2. *Teculeth*, seated on a good Port, and once very well traded, there being in it at that time 1000 Families, some Hospitals and a beautiful *Mosque*; in the year 1514. destroyed by the *Portugals*. 3. *Tenent*, a Sea-Town in the hands of the *Portugals*. 4. *Elmuriden*, a strong place, as the name importeth, the word signifying the *Disciples Fort*; so called because a certain *Heresick* in the Law of *Mahomet* (whereof this Kingdom yields great plenty) retired hither with his *Disciples*; fortified it, and defended it against the King of *Morocco*. 5. *Iguilinguil*, seated on the top of all, and fortified by the Country-people (or old *African Moors*) against the *Arabians*. 6. *Tefetbne*, beautified with a pretty Haven, but not capable of any great Shipping. It is seated on the North side of *Mount Atlas* 3 days Journey from *Messa* (N.) in the Province of *Sus*. It consists of about 600 Families. The *Portugal* Merchants frequent it for Goat Skins and Wax. It was built by the *Africans* and the Wall of it of Stone and Brick. The Inhabitants are now *Mahometans*, who have Judges for their Civil Causes, but revenge Murders by the next of Kin by way of Retaliation; but if the Murderer escapes he is Banished 7 years, and returns and pays a fine, and is then acquitted. *Leo Africanus*. 7. *Tagles*, a den of Thieves and Cut-Throats. 8. *Tefegdel*, as courteous and as civil, as the other barbarous; at the Gates whereof a Guard is set for entertainment of Strangers; whom, if they

they have no Acquaintance there, they are to provide of Accommodation in some Gentleman's House, where it costs them nothing but Thanks, and some kind Acknowledgment.

5. Northwards of *Hea*, stands the Province of *DUCALIA*, bounded on the West, with the main *Atlantick*; and on the North, with the River *Ommirobili*, by which parted from the Kingdom of *Fesse*. Of three days journey long, about two in breadth; thrusting into the Ocean with a craggy Promontory, which some of the Ancients called *Ulagum*, others the Promontory of the Sun, but by the *Christians* of Europe, called the Cape of *Cantin*; by the *Mos, Gschubdic*. This and *Tedles* were Inhabited by the *Arabian* Family called *Eibeg*, which was the most Noble in *Arabia*, and maintained their Possession against the Kings of *Portugal* and *Fesse* with 100000 Men, most Horse. This Family, saith *Leo Africanus*, p. 14. being assaulted by the King of *Portugal*, who took *Asafi* and *Fesse*, and divided into Factions at home; a Famine following, forced them to yield Slaves to the *Portuguese* for Bread, and so exported or destroyed, *ib. p. 24*. Populous enough, the quality of the Men considered; ignorant both of Letters and all Good Manners: Yet not so populous as it hath been in former times, much of the Country being abandoned for fear of the *Portugals*, who have taken all their best Towns on the Sea-coasts, and destroyed the rest. Amongst these, 1. *Asafi*, at the foot of the Hill so called; surpris'd by the *Portugals*, under colour of making a Store house for their Merchandise. *Leo Africanus* p. 82. saith it was built by the *Africans*, and contain'd 4000 Families, but Rude and Barbarous. The Soil is fertile, but they know not how to improve it. The *Portuguese*, by the Disorders of these People, took advantage, pretending fear of their Lives, fortified their Factory, and furnished it with Ammunition and Cannon, and then picking a Quarrel with a Townsman slew him, and after it 150 Townsmen who should have revenged his Death. The King of *Portugal* thereupon sent an Army of 5000 Men, who joining to them the *Arabians*, conquered the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Morocco*, and burnt and laid desolate the most populous and flourishing Cities in it. 2. *Azme*, seated at the Mouth of the River *Ommirobili*, the furthest Town of this Kingdom towards that of *Fesse*; the People whereof were extremely addicted unto *Sodomy*, till subdued by the *Portuguese*. 3. *Elmedina*, once the Metropolis of this Province, but now for fear of those Invaders, in a manner desolated. It stands upon the *Atlantick* Ocean, between *Asafi* to the South, and *Tu* to the North, on the South side of a Bay made by Cape *Cantin*, *Leo Africanus*, p. 85. *Ortelius*. 4. *Comte*, of the Foundation of the *Gibbs*. 5. *Tic*, built by the old *African Moors*, but possessed by the *Portugals*. 6. *Subeit*. 7. *Teneracost*. 8. *Cempuis*. 9. *Terga*. 10. *Culubuan*; all sacked and ruined by the same People, when they took *Azamor* (the Key of this Province) which was in the year 1513. At which time it is said, that *Atahmet* King of *Fesse* passing through this Province with an Army, to repress these Insolencies, at every Altar (whereof here are many in the Roads) kneeled, and said unto this effect: Lord, thou knowest that the cause of my coming into this wild Place, is only to free this people of *Duccala* from the rebellious and wicked *Arabians*, and their cruel enemies the *Christians*; which purpose, if thou dost not approve of, let the punishment fall upon my Person, but not upon my Followers, who deserve it not. With greater Piety than could be looked for from a blind *Mahometan*.

6. Eastward of *Duccala*, along the Banks of *Ommirobili*, lieth the Province of *HA SCOR A*, a fruitful Country, intermixt of rich fields and pleasant Gardens: furnished with most sorts of choicest Fruits; and amongst others, Grapes of such extraordinary greatness, that they are said to be as big as a Pullets Eggs. Good store of Honey it hath also, and some Mines of Iron: Inhabited by a more civil People than any of the rest, and consequently more deserving so rich a Soil, *Leo Africanus* p. 90, 91. This

Province and Town was subdued to the King of *Fesse* in the 15th Century, after which the Inhabitants lived in greater Peace, p. 92. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Ezo*, an old Town, situate on a lofty Mountain. 2. *Elvinina*, of a later erection. 3. *Almedine*, conquered for the King of *Fesse* by a Merchant, whose Paramour the Prince or Governor hereof had taken from him: Situate in a pleasant but little Valley, but begirt with Hills, and well inhabited by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers. 4. *Togodest*, on the top of an Hill, environed with four others of equal height.

7. More East, between *Hascora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *TEDLES*, bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Tremesen*; and on the North, with that of *Fesse*, from which last parted by the River *Servi* which on the North-East border of it meets with *Ommirobili*. The whole Province in form Triangular, of no great length or breadth, but sufficiently fruitful, and well inhabited for the bigness. Some Towns it hath, and those not meanly populous for so small a Province; the Chief whereof, 1. *Tefza*, built by the old *African Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan* Mosques; the Walls of which made of a kind of Marble, which they here call *Tifza*, whence the Name of the Town. 2. *Efsa*, seated on the River *Ommirobili*, where it receiveth that of *Deym*; which rising out of *Atlas Minor*, and passing by *Tifza* last mentioned, doth here lose its Name. 3. *Chyrbite*, renowned for the stout resistance which it hath made from time to time against those of *Fesse*. 4. *Ethaid*, abounding in all sorts of Victual.

These Provinces make up the Kingdom of *Morocco*: infested miserably while it remained subject to the Kings of *Fesse*, by the *Portugals* on the one side, and the wild *Arabians* on the other. Concerning which last People, we are to know, that when the *Saracens* conquered *Africk* they contented themselves with the Command, and left unto the Natives the Possession of it, forbidding the *Arabians* (with whose course of Life they were well acquainted) to pass over *Nilus*. *Elcain*, the last of the Successors of *Hucha* in the Kingdom of *Cairoan*, having subdued the rest of *Africk*, and added it unto his Estate, passed forward into *Egypt*, which he had conquered also; assuming to himself the Title of Caliph: But in his absence, the Lieutenant, whom he left in *Africk*, rebelled against him; and acknowledging the Caliph of *Bagdet* for his Lawful Lord, received of him for his good Service, the Kingdom of *Africa*. *Elcain* thus dispossessed of *Africk*, despairing to recover his lost Estate, and yet not willing that it should be useful unto his Enemies, licensed the *Arabians*, for a Ducat a Man, to pass over the *Nile* with their Tents and Families. On which Agreement, almost half the Tribes of *Arabia Deserta*, and many of *Arabia Felix*, went into *Africa*; where they sacked *Tripolis*, *Cairoan*, and the rest of the principal Cities; Tyrannizing over all *Barbary*, till restrained at last by *Joseph* the Founder of *Morocco*, (of whom more hereafter.) Since which time, though they lost their unlimited Empire, yet they still swarm like *Locusts* over all the Country, and neither apply themselves to Tillage, or building Houses, or any civil course of Life; nor suffer those to Live in quiet, who would otherwise Manure and Improve the Country. The rest of the Story of these Kingdoms we shall have anon, when we have taken a Survey of the Kingdom of *Fesse*.

4. F E S S E.

THE Kingdom of *F E S S E* is bounded on the South with the Realm of *Morocco*; on the North, with part of the *Atlantick* and *Mediterranean*; on the East, with *Malva*, parting it from the Kingdom of *Tremesen*, and on the West, with the *Atlantick* wholly.

It takes this name from *Fesse*, the chief City of it. Known to the ancients by the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*, so called from the City of *Tingis* (now *Tangier*) then of greatest note. Called also *Hispania Transfretana*, Spain on

on the other side of the Sea, because a part of that *Dioceſe*: And by ſome (*Pliny* amongſt others) *Bogudiana*, from *Bogud* one of the Kings hereof, to whom given by *Cæſar*; by others *Ampeluſia*, from its abundance of Vines. The Inhabitants of it, by the *Spaniards*, now called *Alarbes*.

The Country of good temperature in regard of the Air, if not in ſome places of the coldeſt: but very unequally diſpoſed of in reſpect of the Earth; here being in it many Deſerts and large Forreſts, not well inhabited; but intermixt with many rich and delightful Fields. So that taking the eſtimate in the groſs, it may be ſaid to be a rich and flouriſhing Country, hardly inferior unto any. Its Soil yields Corn, Cattle, and Fruit in great plenty, yet it is meanly Peopled as to the Plains and Valleys, *Leo Africanus*, p. 116. The particularities of which are to be conſidered in the *Characters* of the ſeveral Provinces, into which it now ſtands divided, that is to ſay, 1. *Temefna*, 2. *Fefſe*, eſpecially ſo called, 3. *Elchams*, or *Chaus*, 4. *Garet*, 5. *Afgara*, 6. *Erriſſe*, and 7. *Habat*.

1. *TEMEſNA* hath on the South, the River *Ommirabili*; on the Weſt, the Ocean; extended in length from Weſt to Eaſt 80 miles, and in breadth 70. A Champain Country, very level; and once ſo populous, that it contained 40 Cities, and 300 Caſtles; moſt of them ruined by the Wars, and the wild *Arabians*, the greater deſtroyer of the two. The principal of thoſe remaining, 1. *Teyeger*, near the River *Ommirabili*, once of greater note, but now inhabited only by poor People, and a few Smiths compelled to live there for the making of Iron Inſtruments to manure the Land. 2. *Thagia*, on the courſe of the ſaid River; much viſited by thoſe of *Fefſe*, for the Sepulchre of an Holy Prophet, who was there interred; the *Fiffians* going thither in *Pilgrimage* with ſuch numbers of Men, Women, and Children, that their Tents ſeem ſufficient to lodge an Army. 3. *Alendum*, more towards the Sea, but on a ſmall River called *Guirlu*; well walled, and fenced on one ſide by a Lake or Poll. 4. *Amsu*, on the ſhore of the *Atlantick*, once of great Trade, and well frequented, both by the *Engliſh* and *Portugals*, by which laſt deſtroyed. 5. *Munſor*, deſtroyed in like manner by the wild *Arabians*. 6. *Nuchaida*, ſituate in ſo fertile and rich a Soil, that the Inhabitants would have given a Camels burden of Corn for a pair of Shoes. Nothing now left of it but one Steeple, and a piece of the Wall. 7. *Rabut*, or *Rubut*, built by *Manſor*, or *Almanſor*, a King of *Morocco*, near the mouth of the River *Burugrug*; and by him made one of the beſt Peopled Towns in *Africk*: built after the Model of *Morocco*, but now ſo waſted that there are not in it above 500 Families; moſt of the Ground within the Walls being turned into Meadows, Vineyards, and Gardens. 8. *Fanzara* on the River *Subu*, the *Subur* of *Ptolemy*, falling not far off into the other. 9. *Mobmora*, in the ſame tract alſo, once poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; near which the *Portugals* received a great defeat by the King of *Fefſe*, for want of good Intelligence betwixt them and the *Caſtilians*. 10. *Salla*, the *Sala* of *Ptolemy*, by the Inhabitants called *Zale*, or ordinary Maps by miſtaking, *Cale*; at the Mouth of the River *Rebato*, which the ancient Writers called *Sala*, as they named the Town. Beautified by King *Almanſor* (who is here interred) with a ſtately Palace, a goodly Hoſpital, a fair Temple, and a Hall of Marble, cut in *Moſaick* works; intended for the Burial-place of his Poſterity. A Town much traded formerly by the Chriſtian Merchants of *England*, *Flanders*, *Genoa*, and the Gulph of *Venice*. Took by the *Spaniards*, *An*. 1287. and within ten days loſt again; and of late times made a Neſt of Pirates, as dangerous to thoſe which ſailed in the Ocean, as the Pirates of *Algiers* to the *Mediterranean*. Whole Intolencies the King of *Morocco* not able to ſuppreſs for want of Shipping, deſired the Aid of his Maſteſty *Charles*, King of *Great Britain*; by whom the Town being blocked up by Sea, and beſieged to the Landward by the King of *Morocco*, it was at laſt compelled to yield; the Works thereof diſmantled, the Pirates execu-

ted, and 300 Chriſtian Captives ſent unto his Maſteſty, to be by him reſtored to their former Liberty; to the great Honour of his Maſteſty, and the *Engliſh* Nation, *An*. 1632. The *Nubian* Geographer ſaith, it ſtands nine days Journey from *Morocco* to the North; and that the old Town ſtood two miles more remote from the Sea, than the preſent *Sale* doth. The preſent new Town is ſeated on ſo ſteep a Rock, that from the Sea it is not approachable; the Soil is barren, yet the City is beautiful, and wants nothing, the Ships importing into its River whatever it needs. This City ſtands 12 miles from *Fadhala*, another Sea port to the North, 85 from *Aſaphi* or *Aſuſi*, (now *C. Cantin*) the old Boundary of the Known World to the South, p. 76. The River of *Sale* is called *Rebata*, and is one of the greateſt in that Kingdom. The Ships that come there are not ſecure till entred into the River, the Road being too much expoſed to all Winds. *Leo Africanus*, p. 116. calls it *Sella*, and ſaith it was built by the *Romans*, ſack'd by the *Goths*, and rebuilt by *Tarick* the Celebrated *Arabian* Captain; the Buildings repreſenting a Majellick Antiquity, Splendid and Coſtly, frequented much by the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Genouefe*: This was the ſtate of it in the Times of *Leo Africanus*. After it came into the Hands of the King of *Fefſe* it was kept in order for ſome time, but then relapſing into the former Trade of Piracy; this Town has been a grievous Plague to our Trade on the Ocean, and eſpecially to our Plantation Trades, many of which Ships it takes, and makes our People Slaves. Some have attempted to renew the Trade which we had anciently here; but the Ships have been ſeized after they were Laden, and the Men made Slaves; this Nation being become ſo barbarous, that they do not underſtand the Benefit of a Trade. The Reader may be Admoniſhed here, that all the Deſcriptions are taken from *Leo Africanus*; and ſo great a Change for the Worſe, has ſince that time been brought upon the Country, that there is ſcarce any one Place in the Country which is not in a worſe Condition than it was then.

As for the Fortunes of this Province, they have been ſomewhat different from the reſt of this Kingdom: trained by a factious Prophet to revolt from the King of *Fefſe* and *Morocco*, whoſe Eſtate they very much endangered; ſending an Army of 50000 Men to the Gates of *Morocco*. But being diſcomfited, by *Joſeph* ſurnamed *Telephus*, he followed them into their own Country, which he waſted with great Cruelty for ten Months together; conſuming above a Million of them, and leaving the Province to the mercy of Wolves and Lions. Repeopled afterwards by *Almanſor* with *Arabian* Colonies: Given about Fifty years after that, by the Princes of the *Marine* Family, to more civil Inhabitants; by whom the *Arabians* were expelled, and the Province conſequently reduced into ſome good order.

2. Weſtward of *Temefna* lieth the Province of *FESSE*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; Extended in length from the River *Burugrug* to the River *Inavis*, for the ſpace of 100 miles. A very fruitful Province, well ſtored with Cattel, and exceeding Populous; the Villages hereof as big as the better ſort of Towns in other places; but contrary to the Cuſtom of other Countries, better inhabited on the Hills than among the Vallies; the People making choice of the Mountains for their Habitation, as places of Defence and Safety, but Huſbanding the Vallies which lie neareſt to them. This Cuſtom of Inhabiting the Mountains and Tilling the Valleys, depended upon two Reaſons; 1. The Heats of the Valleys in the Summer time: 2. The Security the Mountains afford againſt the Wandering *Arabs*, or any other Enemy that ſhall aſſault them, to which theſe Countries have been heretofore much Expoſed; for I have not of late heard any mention of the Wild *Arabs*, and therefore I believe they have been wholly driven out of this Part by the late Kings of *Fefſe*. Places of moſt conſideration in it. 1. *Macarmedo*, on the River *Inavis*, in a goodly Plain, but in a manner all ruined, except the Wall. This Town lies 20 miles Eaſt

East of *Fesse* upon the Bank of a beautiful River, anciently Strong, Rich, and Populous; but in *Leo Africanus* his time wholly laid Desolate by the Wars, p. 166. 2. *Gazili*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the first Founder of *Fesse*. 3. *Petra Rossa*, where they have some Lions so tame, that they will gather up Bones in the Streets like Dogs, without hurting any body. 4. *Agla*, where they have brought their Lions to so strange a cowardise, that they will run away at the voice of a Child; whence a *Brachadochis* is called proverbially a Lion of *Agla*. 5. *Pharao*, by reason of the name thought by the vulgar to be founded by some King of *Egypt*; but the *Latine* Inscriptions therein found, declare it to have been some work of the ancient *Romans*. 6. *Maquille*, of more antiquity than note. 7. *Fesse*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the chief of the Kingdom, supposed to be the *Volubilis* of *Ptolemy*, but much enlarged and beautified by some new Accessions. Situate for the most part upon little Hillocks, and watered by a pleasant and gentle River (derived by Aqueducts and Conducts into all parts of the City) which they now call the River of *Fesse*, conceived by some learned Men to be that which was anciently called *Phuth*, from *Phut* the first Planter of the *African* Nations. A City so beautiful and well seated, as if Nature and Art had plaid the Wantons, and brought this forth as the fruit of their Dalliance. The Founder or enlarger of it, one of the Race of the false Prophet *Mahomet*, his name *Idris*, who built on the East side of the River; that on the West side, being the work of one of his Sons: both so increasing, that at last they were joyned together. To these the Suburbs being added, have made a Third. The whole called *Fesse*, from *Fez*, an *Arabick* word signifying Gold; whereof great quantity was found when they digged the Foundations. Divided into three parts by the River, all of which contain 28000 Households, and 700 *Moschees*, or *Saracenic* Temples: the chief of which is *Carne*, or *Carnven*, being a mile and a half in compass. It hath 31 Gates, great and high, the Roof 150 yards long, and 80 broad: round about, divers Porches, containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth; under which, the publick Store-houses of the Town. About the Walls are Pulpits of divers sorts, wherein the Masters of their Law read unto the People such things, as they think to pertain to their Salvation. The Revenue hereof is 200 Ducats a day of the old Rents; for so it was, *An. 1526*. when *Leo Afr.* wrote. The Merchants have here a Court, or *Exchange*, inclosed with a strong Wall, with 12 Gates, and 15 Streets. There is also a Colledge called *Amoradoc*, a most curious and delicate Building. It hath three Cloysters, of admirable Beauty, supported with eight square Pillars of divers colours; the Roof curiously carved, the Arches of *Mosaique* work of Gold and Azure; the Gates of Brass, fair wrought; and the Doors of the private Chambers of Inlaid work. This Colledge did cost the Founder King *Abuchenen*, or *Abu Henen*, 380000 Crowns. Here are finally said to be in it many Hospitals, little inferior to the Colleges in Building and Beauty, all very liberally endowed; and about an hundred Hot Baths well built, with four Halls to each, and certain Galleries without, where they put off their Cloaths when they go to bathe themselves: And besides these, 200 Inns, built three Stories high, each of them having 120 Chambers in it, with Galleries before all the Doors for their Guests to walk in.

3. Eastward of the Territory of *Fesse*, lieth the Province of *CHADUS*, extended in length from the River *Gurgut*, or *Gurguigurn*, by which parted from *Tremesen* and *Fesse*, to the borders of *Tremesen*, for the space of 190 Miles, and 170 Miles in breadth. So that it is thought to contain one third part of the whole Kingdom; but meanly populous for the bigness, the Country being poor and barren, and the Inhabitants fierce and warlike; more given to prosecute their Quarrels, than to Trade or Tillage. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Tedza*, *Tezza*, *Teza*, This City is five Miles from Mount *Atlas*, fifty from *Fesse* to

the South: and a hundred and thirty from the Ocean to the East, and from the *Mediterranean* a hundred and seventy; of old, it had about five thousand Families, and was stately built, especially the Palaces Colledges, and Temples: A small River ariseth out of the *Atlas*, which heretofore passed through the *Mosque*, but diverted to the great damage of the Inhabitants, when they quarrell'd with their Neighbours; so that they have been forced to use Cistern Water: The Inhabitants are more Liberal and Civil than those of *Fesse*. It has a bigger Temple, three Colledges, and divers Baths, fruitful Fields, and learned and rich Inhabitants; and about 500 Families of *Jews*, who make the best Wine in *Africa*. In the Castle resides the Governor, who is the King of *Fesse* his second Son and to defend it from the wild *Arabs* the King often visits it; the Jurisdiction is very large which belongs to it, and extends over divers Mountains. Thus far *Leo Africanus*, who saw it. p. 104, 105. 2. *Ham Lisnan*, a Town built in the more Mountainous parts of the Country, by the old *Africans*. Famous for the Temple of an Idol here worshipped; to which at certain times Men and Women resorted in the night; where, after their Devotion's ended, and the Candles put out, every Man lay with the Woman he first touched; the exact Platform of the *Family of Love*, if all be true which is told us of them; and anciently, but falsely, charged on the *Primitive Christians*. In both these Towns Men of the same Trade have a Street by themselves. *Leo Africanus*, p. 200. *Turerto* was the Capital of it, whose Walls are Marble; and it had once Three thousand Families in it. The present Capital City is *Tezza Tedza*. 3. *Dubdu*, an ancient Town, but not much observable. This City was built by the *Africans* on an exceeding high Mountain, from the top of which fall Springs that supply the Town; the Ascent is five Miles to it by crooked winding ways; it hath Gardens on each side of a small River; the Corn is not sufficient for the Inhabitants, but what comes from *Tezza* or *Tedza*; being only considered as a Fortress by the old Kings of the *Marni* Family, where they subsisted when driven out of *Fesse*, and vanquished by the *Arabians* and *Fessians* in War. These Kings were *Mose*, *Ibnu*, *Chamu*, *Acmed*, *Mahomet*, who in the year 1495. repelled the King of *Fesse*, and slew 3000 of his Army; and that King made a Peace with him, and Married his Daughter to *Mahomet* his Son who was King of this City in the year 1526. *Leo Africanus*, p. 202. 4. *Twert*, seated on the top of an Hill, in the midst of a Plain, but compassed about with Desarts. 5. *Beni Fesseten*, neighboured by Iron Mines, in which their greatest Bravery and Wealth consisteth: the Women here wearing Iron Rings for Ornaments to their Ears and Fingers. 6. *Tezargui*, subject to the *Arabians*. 7. *Adaggia*, the most Eastern Town of all the Region; situate in a Peninsula made by the confluence of *Mulufo* and *Malwa*. In this Country is the head of the River *Subur*, which rising out of a great Lake in the Woods of the Mountains *Scelligus*, and receiving many lesser Waters, with a large and Navigable Stream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northward of *Chaus* lieth the Region called *G A R E T*, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*; and reaching East and West, from the River *Malwa*, where it bordereth on *Tremesen*, to that of *Nochor*, where it toucheth on *Errif* and *Ascara*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth but 20. The Soil in most places dry and desart, like the Sands of *Numidia*; especially all along the Banks of the *Malwa*; near unto which from the *Mediterranean* to *Chaus*, it is wholly desart and unpeopled, not well Inhabited in the most fruitful parts of it, being full of Mountains; the worse for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, possessed of 1. *Cbesusa*, and 2. *Medela*, two chief Towns hereof. 3. *Pennon de Velez*, by some called *Pelez de Gomera*, situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains, built by the *Africans* or *Gorbs*; but now in the possession of the *Spaniards* also. 4. *Jasserin*, situate on the Sea also, founded by the *Mahometans*

metans of the *Marine* Family. 5. *Tessora*, standing on an Hill, to which there is but one passage only.

5. Westward of *Garet* lieth *ASCARA*, extended from thence unto the Ocean: shut up on the South-East side with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaren*, and *Gomara*, out of which last runneth the River *Luccus*, called *Lix*, by *Ptolemy*. The Air hereof very temperate, and the Soil as fertile; supplying with the overplus of its Commodities the Mountainous parts of *Fesse*, and the Desarts of *Garet*. These Desarts are a part of the said Province, and begin Northward from the *Mediterranean* Sea, and run South to the Desart of *Chaurz*. West it hath the Mountain of *Guardan*; and East the River *Mulvra*; it's 60 Miles in length, and 30 in breadth; there is no Water, but the River; full of wild Beasts; but in Summer the *Arabians* take up the parts about the River, and the *Batalisæ*, a fierce People in War with the wild *Arabs*, possess great numbers of Horses, Camels, and other Cattle, and fight for Pasture with them, *Leo Africanus*, p. 200. Once full of Towns, till ruined and destroyed by the Wars. A Monument whereof, 1. *Giumba*, built by the Ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches. 2. *Larace*, in *Latine* *Larissa*, the *Lixa* of *Ptolemy*, situate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Luccus*, and furnished with a good Port, but of difficult entrance; Garison'd when possessed by the *Moors* with 300 light Horse, and 300 *Harcabusters*; but better fortified than before, since possessed by the *Spiniards*, into whose hands it was put by *Muley-Sheck* King of *Morocco* and *Fesse*, when worsted by *Muley-Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the Civil Wars betwixt them. This Town was lately taken from the *Spiniards* by the *Moors*, I think in 1689. 3. *Cular Elcibir*, given by *Almanzor* to a poor Fisher, who had entertained him unknown, one night in his Cottage, when he lost his Company in Hunting: Adorned with many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a stately Hospital.

6. On the North of *Ajara* is the Province of *E L H A B A T*, or *H A B A T*, coasting along the *Atlantic* Ocean to the mouth of the *Streits*, in length 100 Miles, about 80 in breadth. The Country very plentiful of all manner of necessities, and very well Peopled; the Mountains, which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times replenished with many Cities, both of the Foundation of the *Goths*, *Romans* and old *African Moors*, now much diminished by the Wars. Those of most note, 1. *Asaggen*, the Inhabitants whereof by ancient Privilege granted by the King of *Fesse*, were licenced to drink Wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a Mountain near the River *Guarga*, about 35 Leagues from *Fesse*; and Garison'd with 400 Horse for fear of the *Portugals*, who sometimes make their excursions thither. 2. *Bafra*, once a Walled Town, and the Walls still standing, but very little or no Town in them; it lies 30 Miles distant from *Sala* Eastwards, and not far from the confines of the Province of *Afgar*. *Leo Africanus*, p. 177. saith it is seated between two Mountains, 80 Miles from *Fesse*, and has its name from a City so called in *Arabia*; it did once contain 2000 Families, and strongly Walled, but became Desolate by the Wars, when the Family of *Ibris* failed. 3. *Homar*, sometimes well Peopled, but now little Inhabited, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Portugals*, who command that Coast. 4. *Bamirenda*, in a manner deserted for the same reason. 5. *Alcazaer*, to distinguish it from another of this name, called *Alcazer Guer*, taken, together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier*, by *Alfonso* the sixth of *Portugal*, *An.* 1470, nigh to which Town the three Kings, *Sebastian* of *Portugal*, *Mahomet* and *Abdelmelech*, Competitors for this Kingdom, were slain in a day. There was also slain at the same time, the great *English* Rebel *Struckley*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, *An.* 1570. where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church: by whom appointed for the Conquest of *Ireland*, and for that end furnished with 800 Soldiers,

paid by the King of *Spain*; and by his Holiness created Marquis of *Lomper*, Earl of *Wexford* and *Carolagh*, Viscount *Marraugh*, and Baron of *R.* Thus furnished, he began his Journey towards *Ireland*, *An.* 1578. but hearing of these Wars, and desirous to make a party in them, he lost all his Honour with his Life. 6. *Arzilla*, a Sea-Town, 70 Miles distant from the *Streits*, now possessed by the *Portugals*; This is a great City built by the *Romans*, on the Coast of the Ocean, 140 Miles from *Fesse*, N. W. *An.* C. 685. it was taken by the *Moors*. In the year 905. the *Saxons* took it, and totally destroyed and laid it waste many Years. In 1473. The *Portuguese* surprized it. It seems to be retaken by the *Moors* in 1512, *Leo Afr.* p. 177. 7. *Tangier*, a great Town and very ancient, distant from the *Streits* about 30 Miles, belonging to the *Portugals* also. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Cananites*, and by them built at their first coming thither, when they fled from the Sword of *Jshua*; testified by the two Pillars erected near this City, which before we spoke of: and from that name caused all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingitania*; made afterwards a Colony by the Emperor *Claudius*, who named it *Treducta Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and outlived the new. Near to this Town, it is said, that *Hercules* overcame *Anteus* a monstrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was a high Mountain called *Abyla*, opposite to which in the Coast of *Spain* was another called *Calpe*, on which the said *Hercules* placed his so famous Pillars; it stands at the mouth of the *Streits* of *Gibraltar*, towards the *Atlantic* Ocean, 32 Miles from *Cuta*, to the W. and a days journey from *Arzilla* to the N. *Nub.* p. 150. placeth it in the 4th. Climate. *Leo Africanus*, p. 179. maketh it a *Roman* work (he knowing nothing of the more ancient Stories) he placeth it from *Fesse* 150 Miles: it was won by the *Moors* about the year 685. with *Arzilla*. The fields about it are fruitful; it was well Peopled, till *Arzilla*, in the year 1473. was taken by the *Portuguese*; when being deserted by the Inhabitants, the *Portuguese* took Possession of it without opposition; from which time they kept it, and was anciently an Arch-Bishop's See. In the year 1662. the *Portuguese* put it into the hands of the *English*; and *Charles II.* having been at an immense Charge upon the Haven, and outworks of it, after it had prosperously repelled several Attacks of the *Moors* in 1663, 1664, and 1682. in the year 1683, the Lord *Dartmouth* was ordered to blow up all the Ports and Works, and the Mole to be slighted, and the Garison withdrew into *England*; the Benefit being not equal to the Charge of keeping it. Thus one of the oldest Cities in the World was destroyed in a few days. 8. *Septa* or *Senta*, situate on or near that Mountain, unfortunately memorable for giving the Title of an Earl to *Julian*, who first brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*; beautified in the following times with many Temples, Colledges, and Learned Men; taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *English*, *An.* 1415. and now in the possession of the King of *Spain*. The only Town of all the Estates of *Portugal*, which in the late Revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. This lies on the Eastern point of the *Streits* of *Gibraltar*, over against the City of *Gibraltar* in *Spain*, from which it stands eight *French* Leagues to the South, being seated upon a Peninsula, and surrounded on all sides by the Sea, except that to the W. The *Nubian* Geo. calls this place *Insula Viridis*, the *Green Island*; and that against it the *Ile of Taris*, and he calls it *Sabta*, as *Leo* doth *Septa*; and the latter saith the *Portuguese* call it *Seupta*: The *Nubian* placeth it 18 Miles from *Gibraltar*. (*Tarif*) It is built on Seven Hills, stretching from East to West: to the West about a Mile it hath fruitful Grounds, affording such plenty of Fruit as furnishes distant places: This Place is called *Belunes*, and by reason of the fertility of the Soil, and quantity of Springs, 'tis mighty pleasant. *Leo Afr.* in his 3 Book, saith, it was a *Roman* Building. *An.* C. 709. the *Saracens* took it, and in 1435. it was taken by the *Portuguese* from them: now it

is in the hands of the *Spaniards*, and strongly Fortify'd and Garison'd. *Bunon*. 9. *Julia Constantia*, so called, and made a *Roman* Colony by *Augustus Cæsar*. 10. *Laxus*, a *Roman* Colony of the Plantation of *Claudius*, in old times said to have been the Court or Palace of the Giant *Antæus*. Not far from whence (that *Antæus* might not dwell alone) the old Geographers have placed the Habitation of *Geryon*, as proper a Gentleman as himself, in a small Island of the *Streits*, called *Geryonis Insula*, and by some *Erythia*.

7. Eastward of *Habat* is the Province of *E R R I F*, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joyneth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Nachor*, (supposed to be the *Melochath* of the ancient Writers) by which parted from *Garet*: A Mountainous and cold Country in respect of the rest of *Barbary*, full of Woods and Forests; but plentiful enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives; and not without some Herds of Goats, though otherwise not well stored with Cattel. In Length 140 Miles, in Breadth 40 only; inhabited by a race of valiant Men, but excessive Drunkards. The Towns hereof not many, though full of Villages. The Chief of which, 1. *Mazagon*, near unto the *Streits*; a very strong Town and of great importance, but possessed by the *Portugals*: in vain Belieged by *Abdalla* the first, with an Army of 200000 Men, *An*. 1562. 2. *Mazemme*, seated on a Mountain. 3. *Beni Ferfo*, of like situation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Professors of the *Mahometan* Law, who here publickly taught it, as in an University; the Inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all exactions. Destroyed, together with the Library of it, by some wicked Tyrant, *An*. 1509. the Books therein being valued at 4000 Ducats, 4. *Terga*. 5. *Togassa*. 6. *Gebbe*, of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of these two Kingdoms, we must next look upon them also in the general Story, from the time of the *Saracenic* Con-

quest; first let into this Country by the Treason of *Julian*, and for a while subject to the great Caliph, or Successor of *Mahomet*: Afterwards to the King, or Caliph, of *Caircan*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, these Provinces, with the rest, were afflicted by them till the rising of the Kingdom of *Fesse*; begun in the Person of *Idris*, of the blood of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, and his Daughter *Fatima*, commonly called the Family of *Alaweci*; who persecuted by the opposite Faction, fled into *Mauritania*; where he grew into such Reputation, that in short time he got both Swords into his Hands. Dying about the 185th. year of the *Hegira*, he left his Power unto his Son, of the same name with his Father, the first Founder of *Fesse*. Opposite whereunto on the other side of the Water, one of his Sons (but his name I find not) built another City, which in time grew into emulation with it; and raising by that means a Faction in the House of *Idris*, which occasioned the subversion of the Kingdom of *Fesse*, after it had continued in the Family of the *Alaweci* for the space of 270 Years. The Estate hereof first weakned by *Abu Tifin*, or *Texifien*, of the House of the *Almoravides* or *Lautunes*, and so weakened, that he thereby gave an opportunity to *Joseph Aben, Teifin*, or *Telephine* his Son and Successor, then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the City of *Morocco*, to suppress that Family: Who killing the Princes of that Line, and 30000 of their Subjects, brake down the Walls which parted the Two Cities from one another, united them by Bridges, and so made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the dissention of the *Saracens* there amongst themselves, he added all which they held in that Kingdom unto his Dominions, held by his Successors, as long as they were able to hold *Morocco*: The Catalogue of which Princes, called the House or Family of the *Almoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almohades*, is this which followeth.

The Kings or Miramomolins of MOROCCO.

A. Ch. 1. **T** Eifin, *Texien*, or *Telephine*, the first of the *Almoravides* that Reigned in *Africk*. 668.

2. *Joseph*, surnamed *Telefinus*, the Son of *Teifin*, founded *Morocco*, subdued the Kingdom of *Fesse*; and added the Estate of the *Moors* in *Spain* unto his Dominions, *An*. 1091.

3. *Hali*, the Son of *Joseph*.

4. *Abu-Halus*, the Son of *Hali*, supposed to be the Publisher of the Works now extant in the name of *Avicenna*, compiled at his Command by some of the most learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquished and slain by

5. *Addelmon*, or *Abdel-Mumen*, the first of the *Almohades*, of obscure Parentage, but raised to so great Power by the practices of *Almohade*, a juggling Prophet of those times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the Kingdom of *Almoravides* both in *Spain*, and *Africk*, *An*. 1150. to which he also added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairoan*.

6. *Joseph II.* or *Aben Joseph*, the Son of *Abdelmon*.

7. *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, surnamed *Almansor*, a puissant and prudent Prince, of whom much before: Son of *Joseph II.*

8. *Mahomet* surnamed *Enasur*, or the Green, the Brother of *Almansor*. Discomfited by the Christians of *Spain*, at the Battle of *Sierra Morena*, *An*. 1214. lost his Dominions, there being slain in this Battel 200000 of the *Moors*, as some Writers say; who added, that the *Spaniards* for two days together burnt no other Fuel but the Pikes, Launces and Arrows of their slaughtered Enemies, yet could not consume the one half of them.

9. *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of *Mahomet Enasur*, by his Son *Buxaf*: slain at the Siege of *Tremezexir*, a Castle of *Tremelin*, which was held against him.

10. *Almorcada*, a Kinsman of *Caid Arrax*, outed of his Estate, and slain by *Budebuz*, of the same House of the *Almohades*.

11. *Budebuz*, the last of the House of the *Almohades*, settled in his Estate by the Aid and Valour of *Jacob Ben-Joseph*; the new King of *Fesse*: but dealing faithlessly and ungratefully with him, he was Warred on by the said *Jacob Ben-Joseph*, vanquished and slain in Battel; the Sovereignty by that means translated unto those of the *Marine* Family, *An*. 1270. or thereabouts.

But before I do proceed further with this *Marine* Family, I must again look back upon *Mahomet Enasur*, whom I conceive (the computation of the time being so agreeable) to be the *Admiratus Mummelinus*, mentioned by *Matthew Paris*, to whom our King *John*, *An*. 1214. is said to have sent such a degenerate and unchristian Ambassage. Which strange name of *Admiratus Mummelinus*, was by that good Writer unhappily stumbled at instead of *Miramomolin* which also is corrupted from *Amir Elmumenim*, that is to say, *Princeps Fidelium*: An Attribute which the great Kings of the *Saracen-Moors* did much affect, and retained it long time amongst them. The Story this; King *John* being overlaid by his Barons Wars, and the Invasions of the *French*, sent Ambassadors to this great Prince (then Ruling over a great part of *Spain* and *Barbary*) for aid against them; offering to hold his Kingdom of him, and to receive withal the Law of *Mahomet*. The *Moor* exceedingly offended at it, told the Ambassadors, that he had lately read the Book of *Paul's* Epistles; which he liked so well, that were he now to choose a Religion, he would have

have embraced Christianity before any other. But every Man (saith he) ought to die in his own Religion; the greatest thing which he disliked in that Apostle, being (as he said) the changing of the *Earth* in which he was born: This said, he called unto him *Robert of London*, Clerk, one of the Ambassadors (a Man ill chose for such an Errand, if the Tale be true) of whom he demanded the Form of the *English* Government, the Situation and Wealth of the Country, the Manners of the People, the Life and Person of the King; in which being satisfied, he grew into such a dislike of that King, that ever after he abhorred the mention of him. This is the Substance of the Story in *Matthew Paris*: But you must know he was a *Monk*, to which brood of Men King *John* was held for a mortal Enemy; and therefore this Relation is not to pass for Gospel.

But whatsoever opinion King *John* might have of the Power of this King, to whom 'tis possible enough he might send for Aid, certain it is, that he was grown so low in his Reputation, after the loss of that great Battel in *Sierra Morena*, that not only the *Spanish* Moors withdrew their Obedience from him (as a Prince unable to support them) but those of *Africa* did revolt also from the Crown of *Morocco* (extreamly weakened by that blow) after his decease: For *Gomoranca* *Aben Zein* of the house of *Abdeluad*, seized upon *Tremesen*, in the time of *Cord Arrax* his Successor; as *Bucar* *Aben Merin* of the noble *Marine* Family, (descended from a Christian Stock) did the like at *Fesse*. Settled in his Estate by the Vanquishment of *Almoracada* the *Miramamolim*, he left it to *Hiya* his Son, under the Governance and Protection of a Brother of his called *Jacob Ben-Joseph*. But the young Prince dying shortly after, left his new Kingdom to his Uncle; who aiding *Budebuz* (before mentioned) dispossessed *Almoracada* of the Realm of *Morocco*: And afterwards having just cause of Quarrel against this *Budebuz*, invaded his Dominions, overcame and slew him; and once again transferred the Imperial Seat from *Morocco* to *Fesse*. In him began the Empire of the *Marine* Family, who held their Residence in *Fesse*, as the first Seat of their Power; *Morocco* being govern'd by an under-King, the rest of the Provinces of that Kingdom Cantoned into several States; the Sea coasts in some tract of time being gained by the *Portugals*. And in his Line (but with great confusions) the Royal Dignity remained till the year 1500. and somewhat after. Three only were of note in the course of Business, that is to say, 1. *Jacob Ben-Joseph*, the Advancer of the *Marine* Family to the Realm of *Morocco*; the Establisher thereof in that of *Fesse*, and of great power and influence in the Affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain*, where he held *Algazir* and *Tariffe*, Towns of great importance: slain treacherously by one of his familiar Friends, at the Siege of *Tremesen*. 2. *Aben-Joseph* the Second, a younger Son of the first *Joseph* (the Issue of *Bucalo* his elder Brother being quite extinct) succeeded after *Abortane*, the sixth of the *Marine* Family in the Throne of his Father; and had added thereunto the Realm of *Tremesen*, if not diverted by the Revolt of *Albuali* his eldest Son, continually in Arms against him. 3. *Alboacen*, the Son of this *Aben-*

Joseph, and the eighth of the *Marine* Family, who after a Siege of 30 Months took the City of *Tremesen*, and with that the Kingdom. But not so fortunate in his Wars against the Christian Kings of *Spain*; against whom he led an Army of 12000 Foot, and 7000 Horse, with all other necessaries: but vanquished by the two Kings of *Castile* and *Portugal*, with far lesser forces; (their Army consisting but of 25000 Foot, and 1200 Horse) at the River of *Salado*, not far from *Tangier*, Anno 1340. Deceased soon after his return, by his Son *Abelacan*, who lost all which his Father and the first of the *Aben-Joseph* had gained in *Spain*; their Empire after this declining, even in *Africa* it self: the Kingdom of *Tremesen*, and the greatest part of the now Kingdom of *Tunis*, withdrawing themselves from their Obedience in the East parts of *Barbary*, as the *Portugals* prevailed upon them in the West. The Kingdom of the *Marins* thus approaching near its fatal Period, it fortuned about the year 1508. that *Mahomet Ben-Amet*, a Native of *Dra*, in the farther *Numidia* or *Bibulgerid*, pretending a Descent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, caused himself to be called *Xoriff*, the Name by which the Kindred and Successors of that *Imam* came to call themselves, and being a poor Hermite (with which Mountebanks, and the high opinion of their sanctity, this People have from time to time been extremely fooled) plotted to make his sons the Chief Prince of *Morocco*. To this end he sent them in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, whence they returned with such an opinion of Sanctity, that *Mahomet* King of *Fesse*, made *Amet* the second of them Governor of the famous Couege of *Amadorach*; the youngest called *Mahomet*, Tutor to his Children; the eldest named *Abdel*, staying at home with his Father, to expect the issue; slain afterwards in the War undertaken by the other two against the *Portugals*. In those days the *Portugals* grievously infested the Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; to repress whose Insolencies, *Mahomet* and *Amet* obtained Commission, though much opposed therein by *Muley* the King's Brother, who told him how unsafe it was to trust to an armed Hypocrite: Assuring him, That if they once came unto any Power (which under colour of Religion they might quickly raise) it would not be easie to suppress them. But this good Counsel was rejected, and the War went forward. Furnished with an Army, they discomfit *Lopes Barriga*, Commander of the *Portugal* Forces under King *Emmanuel*, compell'd that King to abandon all his footing there; they subdued *Ducala*, *Sus*, and *Ilea*, three Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; enter that City, poison the tributary King, and salute *Amet* King thereof, by the Name of the *Xoriff* of *Morocco*, investing *Mahomet*, the other Brother, in the Kingdom of *Sus*. In the Career of their Successes died the King of *Fesse*; and *Amet* his Successor, an Improvident young Prince, confirms his *Quondam* Tutors in their new Estates, conditioned they should hold of him as the Lord in Chief, and pay him the accustomed Tributes.

The Xeriffs of MOROCCO.

- A. C. 1. **A** MET denied both Tribute and Supertority to the King of *Fesse*, whom he overthrew in a set Field; and was after vanquished and dispossessed of his Kingdom, (upon some quarrel breaking out) by his Brother *Mahomet*.
 1544. 2. *Mahomet* King of *Sus*, having got the Kingdom of *Morocco*, united *Fesse* unto it also by the vanquishment of *Amet* the King thereof; slain after all his Victories by the *Turks* of his Guard.
 1557. 3. *Abdalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*.
 1572. 4. *Abdalla* II. Son of the former, had twelve Brothers, of which he slew ten, *Hamet* being spared by reason of his supposed simplicity, and *Abdelmelech* escaping to the *Turks*.
 5. *Mahomet* II. Son of *Abdalla* the Second, ex-

- pelled by *Abdelmelech* and the *Turks*, fled to *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*, who, together, with the two Competitors, were slain in one day at the Battel of *Alcazar Guer*, Anno 1578.
 1578. 6. *Hamet* II. the Brother of *Abdalla* II. who added parts of *Libya* and *Numidia* to the Realm of *Morocco*, not absolutely subdued before.
 1603. 7. *Muley Sheck*, the eldest Son of *Hamet*, opposed in his Succession by *Roseres* and *Sidan*, his two younger Brethren, in which War he died; as did also *Roseres* his Brother. From whom *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheck* had regained *Morocco*.
 1607. 8. *Sidan* the third Son of *Hamet*, immediately on the Death of his Father, caused himself to be proclaimed King of *Fesse* (where he was with
 X X X X X his

his Father when he died) and having won Morocco from *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sbeck*, became Master of that Kingdom also. Stripped afterwards of *Fesse* and *Morocco* both, by the opposite Factions, distressed by *Hamet Ben Abdulla* a Religious Hermit, who hoped to get all for himself; and aided by *Sidi Ham* one of like Hypocrisy, who seemed to aim but at a Limb of that great Estate, by whose assistance he was once more possessed of *Morocco*. These Tumults on the Land being pacified in long tract of time, and the Country brought to some degree of Peace and Quietness, (though never absolutely reduced under his Command, as in former times;) a Rabble of Pyrates nest themselves in *Salla*, a Port Town of the Realm of *Fesse*; creating thence great Mischief to him both

by Sea and Land; and not to him only, but to all the Merchants of other Countries, whose Business led them towards those Seas. Unable to suppress them for want of Shipping, he craved Aid of King *Charles* of *England*: by whose assistance he became Master of the Port, destroyed the Pyrates, and sent Three hundred Christian Captives for a present to His Sacred Majesty, *An.* 1632. Nor staid he here; but aiming at the general Good of Trade and Mankind, he sent a Letter to His Majesty, to lend him the like Aid against those of *Algiers*, who did as much infest the *Mediterranean*, as the Pyrates, of *Salla* did the Ocean.

The Tenor of which Letter, as favouring of more Piety than could be possibly expected from a *Mahometan*, and much conducing to the Honour of His Sacred Majesty, I have here subjoined.

The Letter of the King of *MOROCCO* to the King of *ENGLAND*.

When these our Letters shall be so happy as to come to your Majesty's sight, I wish the Spirit of the righteous God may so direct your Mind, that you may joyfully embrace the Message I send, presenting to you the means of exalting the Majesty of God, and your own Reward amongst Men. The Regal power allotted to us makes us common Servants to our Creator; then, of those People whom we govern: So that observing the Duties we owe to God, we deliver Blessings to the World, in providing for the Publick Good of our States, we magnifie the Honour of God, like the Cælestial Bodies, which though they have much veneration, yet serve only to the Benefit of the World. It is the excellency of our Office, to be Instruments, whereby happiness is delivered unto the Nations. Pardon me, Sir, This is not to instruct, (for I know I speak to one of a more clear and quick sight than myself) but I speak this, because God hath pleased to grant me a happy Victory over some part of those rebellious Pyrates, that have so long molested the peaceful Trade of Europe; and hath presented further occasion to root out the Generation of those who have been so pernicious to the good of our Nations: I mean, since it hath pleased God to be so auspicious to our beginnings in the Conquest of *Salla*, that we might join and proceed in hope of like success in the War against *Tunis*, *Algier*, and other Places (Dens and Receptacles for the inhumane Villanies of those who abhor Rule and Government.) Herein whilst we interrupt the Corruption of malignant Spirits of the World, we shall glorifie the great God; and perform a Duty that will shine as glorious as the Sun and Moon, which all the Earth may see and reverence: A Work that shall ascend as sweet as the Perfume of the most precious Odours, in the Nostrils of the Lord; A Work grateful and happy to Man: A Work whose Memory shall be revered so

long as there shall be any that delight to hear the Actions of Heroick and Magnanimous Spirits; that shall last as long as there be any remaining amongst Men that love and honour the Piety and Virtue of Noble Minds. This Action I here willingly present to you, whose Piety and Virtues equal the Greatness of your Power, that we, who are Servants to the Great and Mighty GOD, may hand in hand triumph in the glory which this Action presents unto us. Now because the Islands which you govern have been ever famous for the Unconquered Strength of their Shipping, I have sent this my trusty Servant and Ambassador, to know whether in your Princely wisdom you shall think fit to assist me with such Forces by Sea, as shall be answerable to those I provide by Land: which if you please to grant, I doubt not but the Lord of Hosts will protect and assist those that Fight in so glorious a Cause. Nor ought you to think this strange, that I, who much reverence the Peace and Accord of Nations, should exhort to a War. Your great Prophet CHRIST JESUS was the Lion of the Tribe of JUDAH, as well as the Lord and Giver of Peace: Which may signifie unto you, that he which is a Lover and Maintainer of Peace, must always appear with the terror of his Sword, and wading through Seas of Blood, must arrive to Tranquillity. This made JAMES your Father of Glorious Memory, so happily renowned amongst all Nations. It was the most noble Fame of your Princely Virtues, which resounds to the utmost Corners of the Earth, that perswaded me to invite you to partake of that Blessing, wherein I boast my self most happy. I wish GOD may heap the Riches of his Blessing on you, increase your Happiness with your Days, and hereafter Perpetuate the Greatness of your Name in Ages.

Such was the Letter of that King; whose motion in all probability might have took effect, had not the Troubles, which not long after brake out in *Scotland*, put off the design. And therefore laying by the thoughts of his future purposes, let us take a view of the *Revenues* and *Forces* of this mighty Empire; before the late distractions made it less considerable. And first for the *Revenues* of it, the *Xeriffs* are the absolute Lords of the whole Estate, and of his Subjects Goods and Bodies. The tenth and first Fruits of all sorts of Fruits, Corn and Cartel, he demands of course; though many times contented in the name of the first fruits, with one in twenty. The fifth part of a *Ducat* he receiveth for every Acre of Land throughout his Dominions; the other four parts for every Fire, and as much for every Head, whether Male or Female, which is above fifteen years of age. In Merchandise he receiveth of every Native two in the hundred, of an Alien ten; and hath a large Impost also upon every Mill. When any of his greater Officers or Judges die, he is sole Heir of all their Goods; and yet advanceth great Sums by the sale of those Offices. And in the levying of such Taxes as are extraordinary, he useth to demand more than he means to take; that the People finding him content to abate somewhat of his Due, may think themselves to be fairly dealt with.

As for their *Forces*, it is evident in matter of Fact, that *Abdulla* the first, at the siege of *Mazagen*, a Town held by the *Portugals*, An. 1562. had no less then 20000 Men; and that *Abdel-Melech* at the Battel of *Alcazar Guex*, against King *Sebastian*, had 40000 Horse, and 80000 Foot, besides Voluntaries, and wild *Arabians*; it being supposed that he might have raised 20000 Horse more (notwithstanding the strong part which was made against him) had he thought it necessary. It is said also that *Abdulla* kept in constant pay 60000 Horse of which 15000 were quartered in the Realm of *Sus*, 25000 in *Morocco*, and the other 20000 in the Kingdom of *Fesse*: out of which he called 5000 of the best and ablest for the guard of his Person, well mounted, and as richly furnished. Besides these he hath Bodies of Horse in continual readiness, maintained according to the manner of the *Turks Timariots*: and by Pensions given amongst the Chiefs of the *Arabians*, who live like Outlaws in the Mountains, and up and down in the Skirts of this Country, is furnished at his need with Supplies from them. Well stored with Ammunition also, there being 46 *Quintals* of Gunpowder laid up monthly in his famous *Arsenal* at *Morocco*: and yet not able to stay long (not above 3 Months) upon any action, in regard that all his Souldiers live on his daily allowance; which maketh them, when his Provisions are consumed, to dissolve and scatter. I can give no account of the Prince since the time in which the Author Wrote.

The ISLES of BARBARY.

THE ISLES of BARBARY, which make up the fifth and last part thereof, are situate near the *African* shores of the *Mediterranean*, assigned by *Ptolemy* to the Province of *Africa Propria*. In number sixteen: 1. *Hydras*, 2. *Calatbe*, 3. *Draconus*, now called *Chelbi*, 4. *Egymnus*, by *Strabo* called *Egynarus*, and now *Gaietta*, 5. *Larunessa*, now *Mollium*, 6. *Lapedusa*, now *Lampedusa*, 7. *Mesyrus*, 8. *Pontia*, 9. *Gaia*; all of little note. 10. *Insula Glauconus*, with a City of the same name in it, now called *Goxa*, and subject to the Knights of *Malta*; 11. *Etbusa*, by some called *Egusa*, and consequently mistaken for *Egates*, which lieth near *Sicily*. Of more note are the five that follow: *Viz.*

1. *COSTRA*, now called *Pantalania*, equally distant from *Africk* and the Isle of *Sicily*, 60 miles from each. In length about thirty miles, and in breadth not above ten: Mountainous for the most part, and full of black kind of Stone, the Soil not very proper for Corn, and void of Rivers; but plentiful of Figs, Melons, and Cot-

ton-Wool; well stored with Kine and Oxen, but without Horses. The People Poor; by Religion *Christians*, and subject to the King of *Spain*. Very good Swimmers of both Sexes, and in their speech and habit differing from the *Mors*. It hath a Town in it of the same name with the Island, situate on the Sea side in the Northern part of it; defended with a very strong Castle. On this Island the 13 of July 1586. there was a Sea fight between 3 English Ships and 11 Spanish Gallies and 2 Frigates, in which the Spaniards were sufficiently beaten: but so few English, being Turkey Merchants heavy Laden, that none of them taken. This was the first Fleet the *Dutch Company* (then incorporated) sent into the *Mediterranean* Sea, before this time they traded with single Ships. This fight lasted 5 hours; yet the English lost but 2 Men and one Wounded. *Hackl. T. 2. p. 288.*

2. *CERCINA*, now with little difference called *Carchana*, situate near the Coast of *Africk*, at the entrance (as it were) of the lesser *Syrtis*: in length twenty five miles, in breadth half as much, but in some places not above five. Exceeding fruitful in old times, able to furnish (as they did) the wants of *Cicero* and his Army, when he warred in *Africk*; *Magna frumenti numero Cercinæ invento, naves onerarias, quantum ibi satis magna copia, complet, atque in castra ad Casertem mittit*, are the words of the History. It hath a Town of the same name. Of no great note in way of Story, but for an handsome piece of Wit here shewed by *Annibal*; who flying from *Carthage*, met here some Merchants of that City, who had there some Shipping in the Haven; and standing in some doubt, lest by their discovery of his flight, he might be pursued, pretended a Sacrifice to *Hercules* the *Tyrian* Deity, to which he invited all the Sailors, and borrowed all their Sails to set up a Tent for their Entertainment; which having got into his hands, and leaving them asleep, he made on for *Asia*; secure enough not to be pursued, until out of danger.

3. *LOTOPHAGITIS*, now called *Zebby*, and by some *Gerbe*, is situate in the bottom of the Bay of *Tripolis*, divided from the Main Land by a narrow Ford. The Island full of Bogs and Marishes, without other Water, and in the midst of it somewhat hilly; indifferently fruitful, yeilding Dates, Olives, Barley, Mill, and the like Commodities; inhabited by 30000 Men, dwelling in low Cottages, and but simply apparelled: it had in it anciently two Cities, 1. *Meninx*, which sometimes gave name unto the Island, called *Meninx* by some elder Writers. 2. *Gerrapolis*; both now destroyed: instead whereof there is now one of more note than the rest, called by the same name with the Island, and fortified with a very strong Castle. Subject unto the *Turks*, but governed by a poor King of its own. Both Fort and Island taken by the *Christian* Fleet, in the year 1559. for the King of *Spain*, to whom *Caravanus* the King thereof did submit himself, conditioning to pay the yearly Tribute of 6000 Crowns, one Camel, four Ostriches, four Sparrow-Hawks, and four Faulcons. But the *Christians* were scarce warm in their new possession, when besieged in the Castle by *Paul Bassa*, to whom after some extremities they were fain to yield; there perishing in this unfortunate Action, by Sword, Famine, and Sicknes, 15000 *Christians*.

4. *GAULOS*, or *GAUDUS*, by the inhabitants called *Gaudica*, is distant about five miles from the Isle of *Malta*; to the Knights whereof it doth belong: given to them by the bounty of *Charles* the Fifth. The Island 30 miles in compass, well watered, and very fruitful. So great an Enemy to Serpents, and all venomous Creatures, that they neither breed here, nor will live here, brought from other places. The People *Christians*, but they speak the same Language with the neighbouring *Saracens*. The chief Town is of the same name with the Island, beautified with a capacious Haven, lying betwixt the West and South, and strongly fortified. Cruelly pillaged by the *Turks* in the year 1551. who carried hence 3000 Souls into endless Thraldome.

5. *MALTA*, the chief of the *African* Islands, lieth betwixt *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, and the Isle of *Sicily*; distant from this last about 60 miles, and from the other 180. In circuit about 60 miles, in length 20, and in breadth 12. Situate in the Beginning of the fourth *Clime*, and eight *Parallel*; so that the longest day in Summer is but 14 hours.

Anciently it was called *Melite*, and by that name occurreth not only in *Ptolemy* and other Writers, but also in the Book of the *Acts*, in the Story of *St. Paul's* Shipwreck; this being the place where he and all his company were cast on Land; in memory whereof was built a little Chapel in the place of his Landing. So called most probably, ἀπό τῆς μέλιτος, from the abundance of Honey which it yielded in former times; *Cicero* charging it on *Verres*, that he came home loaded with 400 measures of Honey, and store of *Melitenian* Raiments; *Fam non quero unde 400 amphoras mellis habueris, unde tantum Melitenium Vestium*, saith that famous Orator. The joyning of which two together, declare that he had robbed the same place for both; this Island being a near Neighbour of *Sicily*, which *Verres* governed then as Prator. Nor is it strange, that an Island of the Coast of *Africa*, and using for the most part the *Phenician* or *Punick* Language, should borrow its Appellation from the *Greek*: many of that Nation coming thither from the Isle of *Sicily*, and inhabiting here, and the whole Island sometimes subject to the power of *Sicilian Greeks*, though for the most part under the command of the State of *Carthage*.

It is situate wholly on a Rock, being not above three foot deep in earth; by consequence of no great fertility, the want of which is supplied with the plenty of *Sicily*. Yet have they here no small store of Pomegranates, Citrons, Oranges, Melons, and other excellent Fruits, both for taste and colour. They have also great abundance of Cotton-Wool (*Gossypium* the *Latinists* call it) which they sow as we do our Corn; the growth and ordering of which Wooll, hath been shewn already, when we were in *Syria*. For the commodity of this Wool, and the Cloth made of it, the *Romans* had this Island in great esteem; thinking themselves happy when they gained it from the *Carthaginians*. *Montieur Thevenot*, says this Island lyes low, and is only a white soft Rock, fit for building and Lime, but yeilds too soon to the South East Winds that eat it away. The Earth on the Rock is little and stony, yet its product is excellent Mellons, Figs and Grapes: Their Cottons they plant, and thrive well; but their Corn comes from *Sicily*. In Summer the heat is not to be endured, and the *Musketoos*, flies, at Night as insufferable. A Serene wholsom Air and no Winter. By Order of the Viceroy of *Naples* in 1590 a Calculation was made, and they found in the Bourg, the Old Town, *Valetta*, the Isle of *St. Michael*, and 36 *Villa* Isles 27000 Men, besides the Knights and their Servants. The Natives speak the *Arabian* Tongue; but the *Italian* is very Comon. It has 2 great and safe Havens, opening to the East North East, which are secured by Castles and strong Forts. *Tavern* p. 78. It has an Arsenal, in which are Arms for 20000 Men, kept in good Order. In the year 1692 this Island and *Sicily* suffered so much by an Earthquake, both at the same time, that it was feared they would be both destroyed. This happened *January* 11. N. S.

The natural Inhabitants of it are said to be churlish and uncivil; of the *African* Language and Complexion, but Followers of the Church of *Rome*, the Religion whereof these Knights are sworn to defend. The Women fair, but hating company, and going covered. The whole number of both Sexes, supposed to be 20000, possessed of 90 Villages, and four Cities. Places of note, 1. *Malta*, so called by the name of the Island, in the middle of which it is situate; built on an hill, but counted of no great importance, the strength and safety of the Island lying in the defence of the shores and Havens. 2. *St. Hermes*, a strong Castle at the point of a long *Languet*, or Tongue of Rock,

thrusting out betwixt the two best Havens, both which it notably defendeth. Took by the *Turks*, *Ann* 1565. but at no cheaper rate than 2000 shot of Cannon, and the loss of 10000 of their Men. 3. *Valetta*, situate on the same *Languet*, not far from the Castle of *St. Hermes*, (or rather lying close unto it) extended the whole breadth of the said *Languet*, from the one Sea to the other; and so commanding both the Havens. Built since the departure of the *Turks*, impregnable fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valette* the Great Master, who so gallantly repulsed their Fury. In this Town the Great Master hath his Palace, and the Knights their several *Alberges* or *Seminaries*; all very fair and handsome Buildings. 4. *Burgo*, a little Town or City on another *Languet*, lying in the Eastern Haven; at the extremity of which Promontory in a demy-Island stands the strong Castle of 5. *St. Angelo*, built on a Rock, opposite to *Valette*, on the other side of the Haven, and found impregnable by the *Turks*; who in vain besieged it. 6. *Isoia*, a small City, and better deserving the name of a Town, situate in another Promontory on the South of the other, defended on the West-side by a strong Platform, at the point of the *Foreland*; and on the East-side by the impregnable Castle of *St. Michael*; in vain assaulted by the *Turks*, who on their ill success at the Siege hereof, gave over the Enterprize, and sailed home.

The People of this Island originally were a *Tyrian* or *Phenician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with some *Greek* Plantations, coming thither out of *Sicily*, as before was said. For the most part dependant on the Fortunes of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till subdued by the *Saracens*: by the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moors*, and by *Charles* the Fifth given to the Knights of *Rhodes*, not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the Magnificent, *An*. 1522. These Knights are in number 1000; of whom 500 are always to be resident in the Island. The other 500 are dispersed through *Christendom*, at their several *Seminaries* in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; and at any Summons are to make their personal Appearance. These *Seminaries* (*Alberges* they call them) are in number seven, viz, one of *France* in general, one of *Auvergn*, one of *Provence*, one of *Castile*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany*; over every one of which, they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Country where he liveth, is of great reputation. An eighth *Seminary* they had in *England*, till the suppression of it by *Henry* the Eighth; yet they have some one or other, to whom they give the Title of *Grand Prior of England*. Concerning the original and riches of these Knights, we have spoken when we were in *Palestine*; now a word or two only of their places, and the Election of their Great Master. None are admitted into the Order, but such as can bring a Testimony of their *Gentry* for six Descents; and when the Ceremonies of their admission (which are many) are performed, they swear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their Superiors, to live upon the Revenues of their Order only, and withal to live chastly. Of these there be 16 of great Authority (*Counsellors of State* we may fitly call them) called the *Great Crosses*; out of whom the Officers of their order, as the *Marshal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellour*, &c. are chosen: and who, together with the Master, punish such as are convict of any Crime, 1. by degrading him, 2. by strangling him; and 3. by throwing him into the Sea. Now when the Great Master is dead, they suffer no Vessel to go out of this Island till another be Elected, lest the *Pope* should intrude on their Election; which is performed in this manner: The several *Seminaries* nominate two Knights, and two also are nominated for the *English*: these 16 from amongst themselves choose eight; these eight choose a Knight, a Priest, and a Friar-servant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Crosses*, elect the Great Master. The Great Master being thus chosen, is stiled (though but a Friar) The most Illustrious and most Reverend Prince, The Lord Prior, N. N. Great Master of the Hospital of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*, Prince of *Malta*,

Malta, Gaules, and Goza. Far different, I assure you, from that of the first Masters of this Order, who called themselves only *Servants to the poor Servitors of the Hospital of Jerusalem*; or that of the Master of the Temple, who was only entituled, *The humble Minister of the poor Knights of the Temple*.

This Island is conceived to yield to the *Great Master* the yearly Rent of 1000 *Ducats*, the greatest part whereof ariseth out of *Cotton-Wool*: besides which, he hath towards the maintaining of his Estate, the tenth part of the

Prizes which are won from the *Turks*; and certain thousands of Crowns yearly out of the Treasure of the Order, which is great and rich; and one of the best *Commanders* in every Nation. And for the securing of the Seas and securing of their Harbours, they have many good Gallies, each of them able to contain 500 Soldiers, and to carry 16 pieces of Ordnance, with which they make Excursions many times to the Coasts of *Greece*.

And so much for *BARBARY*.

MOUNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbary* to *Libya Interior*, we must pass over *Mount Atlas*, a ridge of Hills of exceeding great height, and of no small length. So high, that the top, or *Summit* of it, is above the Clouds, at least so high, that the eye of Man is not able to discern the top of it. *Exstat in hoc Mari mons cui nomen Atlas (scilicet Herodotus) ita sublimis, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortaliū pervenire non possint.* Yet notwithstanding, it is always covered with snow in the heats of Summer. Difficult of ascent, by reason of the sharp and craggy *Precipices*, which occur in many places of it; the rest were plainer and more even, of such wonderful steepness, that the *Precipices* of the Rocks seem the safer way. Full of thick Woods, and yeilding to the Countries on the North-side of it, the greatest part of the Rivers which refresh and moisten them: and where it bordereth on the proper, or *Roman Africa*, of such self-fertility, that it affordeth excellent fruits of its natural growth, not planted, grafted, or inoculated by the hand of Man. The beginning of it on the shores of the Western Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantick Ocean*; in the 26 Degree and 30 Minutes of the Northern Latitude: and passing on directly Eastward, draw near unto the Borders of *Egypt*, part of *Mauritania*, or the *Roman Libya*, only interposing. It is now called *Archija*, and *Montes Clari*: And took the name of *Atlas*, from *Atlas* King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; feigned by the Poets to be turned into this Hill by *Perseus*, and the head of *Medusa*. Of the Daughters of this King, their golden Fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Hesperides*, we have spoke already, though some remove the place of their habitation more into the West (then by us disposed of) and others into certain Islands of the *Western Ocean*, which we shall meet withal hereafter. He was said to have been a Man of such wonderful height, that the Heavens rested on his Shoulders; of which, when weary, he discharged his burthen on the Shoulders of *Hercules*. The ground of the fiction is either taken from the height of the Mountain, the top whereof seemeth to touch the Sky; or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Astronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets; in which Knowledge he instructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more *Authentick* description of it, take it thus from *Virgil*:

— Jamq; volans apicem & latera ardua cernis
Atlantis duri, Caelum qui vertice fulcit;
Atlantis, cinctum assidue cui nubibus atris
Pmiferum caput, & vento pulsatur & imbrī.
Nix humeros infusa tegit, tum flamina mento
Præcipiant sens, & glaci riget horri la barba.

Which may be *Englisht* in these words:

Then flying, he the top and sides descries
; Of *Atlas*, whose proud head supports the Skies.

Atlas, whose Piny head with Clouds inclos'd,
Is to the Storms of Wind and Rain expos'd.
Now hides the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down
Upon his Chin; his Beard with Ice o'er-grown.

The *Nubian Geographer* p. 75 tells us Near the Rise of this Mountain it is called *Mount Dara*, which exceeds most of the Mountains in the World in Height, Fertility, Length and plenty of its Castles and other Buildings. It begins from the West Ocean in the borders of the Kingdom of *SUS* to the South, and running East as far as *Tripoli*; where it ends: the most Eastern part of it being called *Natsua*. There is upon this Mountain above 70 Castles and Strong holds, The most inaccessible of which is *Tanimal*. This Mountain begins at *Cape de Non*, or *Nao*, in 28.40 Lat. between the Desarts of *Zanbaga* to the South and *Tessit* to the North; and running East to almost 15 Degrees of Long. it turns North East as far as the Borders of the Kingdom of *Fesse*, separating *Tessit*, *Sus* and *Morocco* on the West, from *Biledulgerid* to the East at 29 Degrees of Latitude, it turns North-East and divides *Barbary* to the North from *Biledulgerid* to the South: and tho' about *Tripoli* it takes the Name of *Serviz*, yet it continues its Course by various Turnings to the Red Sea, parting *Nubia* from *Egypt*, where the Nile crosseth it. It is called *Giandel*, and ends at *Bugia* on the Red Sea; yet the Author's account of its ending at *Tripolis* is not to be blamed, because there it grows very low, and those that begin there turn South till they meet with *Mount Schuba*, which runs parallel with *Mount Atlas* at the South of *Biledulgerid* till it Joyns with those that encompass the Kingdom of *Gagaa* on the West, South and East, and encompassing *Nubia* on the North West, and North, they pass South East to *Bugia*; the Nile cutting them above *Ziquan* in *Egypt*. It is still inhabited by the old Natural *Africans*, who speak their old Tongue and tho' they are Tributaries to the *Arabians*, are still under their own Princes; and some are perfectly free, and continue in the *Pagan Idolatry* of their Ancestors: this is also true of the other Mountainous Countries *Leo* p. 26: They worship the Sun and Fire, which have had stately Temples where the fires were never suffered to go out: They also worship'd each a distinct Planet. *Mount Atlas* beginneth at the *Atlantick*, and rangeth East to the Borders of *Egypt*, about 190 miles, at its greatest distance from the *Mediterranean Sea*, p. 30: They are exceeding cold and baren, and yeild but little Corn; they are covered also with Woods replenish'd with wild Beasts, and produce most of the Rivers, that water the North of *Africa*, whose Springs in Summer are very cold. The North sides of it are covered with such deep Snows, that if they continue there too long in the Winter, they destroy both Men and Beast; but in the Summer they yeild good Pasture, p. 29 31. The Winter on it begins in *October* and ends in *April*.

OF LIBYA INTERIOR.

LIBYA INTERIOR is boundeth on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary* and *Cyrenaica*; on the East, with *Libya Marmarica*, interposed betwixt it and *Egypt*, and part of *Aethiopia Superior*, or the *Habassine* Empire; on the South with *Aethiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the West with the main *Atlantick* Ocean.

The reason of the name we have seen before, given to this Country in regard of its countiguoulness and resemblance to the other *Libya*; or else because descended from the Children of *Lebabin*, by which that Country was first planted. For of King *Lybs*, or Queen *Libya* (the Daughter of *Epachus*, and *Cassiope*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I shall take no notice. Distinguished from the other by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main Land of *Africa*, the other being partly a *Maritime* Country.

Of the nature of the Soil and People we shall speak anon, when we come to take a view of its several parts. Look we on it now as it stood in the time of the *Romans*, when though not so well travelled, or discovered, as in these last times; yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and situation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns, than any of our late Writers have presented to us. The Rivers of most note, 1. *Salathus*, 2. *Chusarus*, 3. *Ophiodus*, 4. *Noius*, 5. *Mussa*, 6. *Sobus*, 7. *Daradus*, 8. *Stachiris*, and 9. *Mathisobus*; all of them paying tribute to the Western or *Atlantick* Ocean. Mountains of most note, 1. *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salathus*, 2. *Sagapula*, which gives being to the River *Sobus*, 3. *Rysadus*, from whence *Stachiris*, 4. the Mountain called *Deorum Currus* (of which more anon) whence *Mathisobus*, and Mount *Capus*; out of which *Daradus* have there first Originals. Then there are, 5. Mount *Ujurgala*, and 6. Mount *Gurginis*, from the first of which the River *Bagradas*, and from the last that of *Cynypbus* do derive there waters: and Passing through the breaches of *Atlas* (of which these Mountains seem to be some dismembred Limbs) cross the whole breadth of the *Roman Africk*, to make themselves a way to the *Mediterranean*. Besides these, more within the Land we find the famous Rivers of *Gir* and *Niger*, of which the first maketh the two great Lakes of *Nubia* and *Cheloidas*: the second those as great, or greater, called *Nigritis*, and the Lake of *Libya*. Which makes me wonder by the way, that in a Country so well watered as this seems to be, our Modern Writers should complain of such want of water: as if there were neither Spring, nor River, nor Pond, nor Lake, nor any thing to moisten and refresh the Earth, but the Dews of Heaven, or some Pits of salt and brakish water, not worth the tasting. *Ptolemy* must either be mistaken, which I hardly think; or our late Travellers not so punctual in their Observations, which I rather credit: or else the Rivers which were here in the time of my Author, *In his arenarum vastitatibus disperduntur*, must be dried up and swallowed in these sandy Deserts, as *Maginus* telleth us; or finally there hath happened some later Conflagration than that of *Phaeton*, to which the want of water may be better attributed than it was to his. Of which thus the Poet:

*Hinc facta est Libya, raptis humoribus aestu,
Arida.*

Which *Geo. Sandys* thus rendereth;

A Sandy Desert *Libya* then became,
Her full veins emptied by the thirsty flame.

Places of note and name in those elder times, 1. *Salathus*, on the River so named, 2. *Bagaxi*, 3. *Jarziba*, and 4. *Babiba*, all honoured with the name of Cities, 5. *Gamara*,

6. *Gira*, and *Nigira*, the Metropolis of their several Nations. Then there were two Havens of some good esteem, the one called *Magnus Portus*, the other *Portus Perphosius*, besides 43 other Towns and Cities (twelve of these on the banks of the River *Niger*) whose names and situation do occur in *Ptolemy*, which shews the Country not to be so uninhabitable and void of People, as was pretended by some other (but less diligent) Writers.

Nations of most note in it in the former times, were 1. the *Getuli*, on the back of *Mauritania*, a resolute and unconquered people, *Genus insuperabile bello*, as we find in *Virgil*. 2. the *Garamantes*, dwelling South of *Cyrenaica*, and giving name to a large and spacious Territory, called *Vallis Garamantica*, supposed to be the most remote Nation towards the South, as the *Indians* were towards the East; whence we have *ultra Garamantas & Indos*, in another Poet; 3. the *Pyrrhai*, an *Ethiopic* Nation on the South of the River *Gir*; 4. the *Nigritæ*, originally *Ethiopian*, also inhabiting on the North of the River *Niger*, 5. the *Odranguli*, of the same original extraction, possessing the Country between the Mountains *Capha* and *Tbala*; 6. the *Perorsori*, dwelling near the Hills called *Deorum Currus*; 7. the *Minaci*, at the foot of Mount *Tbala*; 8. the *Nubæ*, on the West of *Vallis Garamantica*; 9. the *Derbi*, dwelling on the West of the Hill *Aranga*; and 10. the *Pjylli*, placed by *Ptolemy* amongst the Inhabitants of *Cyrene*, but so near the Borders of this Country, and so far from the Civilities of those Nations which conversed either with *Rome* or *Carthage*, that they may more properly be thought to belong to this. Of a Nature so venomous, that they could poison a Snake. Inasmuch, that when their Wives were delivered; they would throw their Children amongst a bed of Serpents, supposing that child to be born of an adulterate bed, the very smell of whose Body would not drive away a whole brood of the like poisonous Vermin. Others there were of less note, which that Author calleth *Minores Gentes*; many in number, of small fame, and therefore not material to be here inserted; those of most note, the *Africæ*, (whom some Authors call the *Gampaphantes*) honoured with the Attribute of *Gens Magna*, the greatest as it seems of those lesser Nations. None of them of much note in the way of Story, except they were these *Libyans*, which are so famous in *Herodotus*, for an Expedition they made against the *South-Wind*. For when this Wind, blowing abroad the Hills and Deserts of Sand, had dried up those many pools and waters they had among them; they to revenge this injury, by common consent armed themselves, and went to fight against him. But they took not the *South-Wind* unprepared. For he mustered up his forces, and encountered them with such a brave volley of Sand, that he overwhelmed and slew them all. A better Friend was the *North-Wind* to the Citizens of *Rhegium* in *Italy*, and better was he rewarded for it: for having scattered a mighty Fleet, which *Dionisius* prepared against them, he was by the Common-Council made free of their City. That part of *Cæsar's* War which was managed here, we shall hereafter meet with on another occasion.

Thus having took a view of the state of this Country, as it stood of old; we will next look upon it in its present condition; as comprehending the whole Provinces of 1. *Biledulgerid* or *Numidia*; 2. *Libya Deserta*, or *Sarara*; and 3. a great part of that Country which is now called *Terra Nigritarum*. But because the greatest part of this last Country is to come under another Account; we will here only take the two first into consideration.

1. NUMIDIA.

NUMIDIA, is bounded on the East, with *Egypt*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, which parteth it from *Barbary* and *Cyrene*; on the South, with *Libya Deserta*.

It was thus first called by *John Leo*, an *African* Writer, to whose description of all *Africa* we are much beholding; because of that resemblance which the People of it have to the old *Numidians*; which is after the Custom of the *Nomades*, living without Houses, under their Wagons and Carts, as *Lucan* testifieth of them, thus:

*Nulla domus, planstris habitant, migrare per arva
Mos, atque errantes circumvecitare Penates.*

They dwell in Wains not Houses; and do stray
Through Fields, and with them lead their Gods each
way.

And worthily may they owe their Names to them, from whom they borrow so much of their Nature, for the People to this day spend their lives in Hunting, and stay but three or four days in a place, as long as the Grass will serve the Camels. This is the cause why this Country is so ill Peopled, the Towns so small in themselves, and so remote from others. An example hereof is *Taffer*, a great City in their esteem, which yet containeth but 400 Households and hath no Neighbours within 300 Miles of it.

The Country aboundeth with Dates, whence it is called *Dactylorum Regio*, and in the *Arabick*, *Biledulgerid*, which signifieth also a *Date-region*. These Dates (to speak properly) the Fruit of the Palm-trees, usually growing in hot Countries, of which some are Male, some Female; the first bringing forth only Flowers, the other Fruit: and yet the Male so beneficial to the increase of the Dates, that unless a Flowred Bough of the Male be ingrafted into the Female, the Dates never prove good, in case they bear any Dates at all, as before was noted. This Fruit is the chief Diet of the People; but this sweet Meat hath sower Sauce, for it commonly rotteth their Teeth betimes. As for the Stones of these Dates, they feed their Goats with them, whereby they grow Fat and yield store of Milk. The Air hereof of so found a nature, that if a Man be troubled with the *French Disease*, he shall there, without any course of Physick find a present Remedy: The capital City lies 500 *English* Miles to the South West from *Tunis*, and something more from *Algiers* to the South East *Ortelius*. *Leo Africanus* saith, it was called by the Antients, *Numidia*; and that the *Arabians* gave it the new name. It beginneth East at *Elocat*, a Hundred Miles West of *Egypt*; to the West he bordereth it to the *Atlantick* Ocean, including *Teffet* in it. The natural Inhabitants of this Country are said to be a base and vile People, Thieves, Murderers, Treacherous, and ignorant of all things; feeding most commonly on Dates, Barley and Carrion; accounting Bread a Diet for their Festival days. But the *Arabians*, who are intermingled with them, in most part of the Country, affirmed to be (comparatively with the Natives) Ingenious, Liberal and Civil. The Garments of these *Numidians*, of the coarsest Cloth, so short, that they cover not half the Body: the richer sort, distinguished by a Jacket of *Blew Cotton* with wide Sleeves. Their Steeds are Camels, which they ride on without Stirrups or so much as a Saddle, a Leather thrust through an hole made in the Nose of the Camel, serves them for a Bridle; and to save the charge of Spurs, they make use of a Goad. Their Religion *Mahometism*, to which perverted (Christianity having once had some footing here) in the year 710. the *Azanaghi* and other People of those parts then subdued by the *Saracens*; who held them for a Nation of so little reckoning, that no Man of account amongst them would descend so low as to be their Prince; but left them to be ruled as in former times, by the Chiefs or Heads of their several Clans. They are jealous of their Women to an implacable Rage, and will never marry a Whore. *Leo Afric.* p. 20. Those that live on the borders of *Tremesen* and *Tunis*, being in the Pay of those Kings, are more rich and noble than the rest, but as Thievish as they, addicted much to Poetry, and fond of their Women, who Paint to attract more their Love and Regard. *Leo*, p. 24. The Soil of

this Country is generally Sandy. The *Moors* began the Conquest of this Country in the year of Christ 710.

The chief River which is left, hath the name of *Dara*, and possibly enough may be the *Daradus* of *Ptolemy*. The rest which are mentioned in that Author, rising out of *Mount Atlas*, and falling headily this way, finding these barren Wildernesses to afford them the readiest Channels, are trained along by the allurements of the Sands, and are either swallowed up in great Lakes; or being too liberal to the thirsty Sands in their way to the Sea, die at the last for Thirst in the midst of the Desarts.

The Principal of their Provinces (if capable of a distinction into better and worse) 1. *DARA*; more cultivated than the rest, because of the River running thorough it, whence it hath its name: 250 Miles in length, indifferently fruitful, where the River doth overflow and water it; and of so different a nature from all the rest, that here the Country People have some scattered Villages, the better sort their several Castles. 2. *PESCARA*, so called from the chief Town of it: exceedingly infested with Scorpions; the sting whereof is present death. 3. *FIGHIG*, so called from the chief Town also; inhabited by an industrious and witty People (in respect of the rest) some of which betake themselves to Merchandise; some to the study of the Law, which they study at *Fesse*, and grow rich upon it. 4. *TEGORARIN*, a large Region, and well inhabited better than any except *Dara*; as having in it 50 Castles or Gentlemens Houses, and 100 Villages. The People wealthy, in regard of the great Trade which they drive with the *Negroes*; and pretty good Husbands in manuring their Land, on which they are forced to lay much Soil; and will therefore let some of it Rent-free to Strangers, reserving only the dung of themselves and their Cattel. 5. *BILEDULGERID*, specially so called, abundantly fruitful in Dates, whence it had the name; but destitute of Corn, by reason of the extreme drinels of the Soil: and yet hath in it many Towns of good Note among them. of less Note, *Teffet*. This City lies towards the *Atlantick* Ocean, containing (with *Leo Africanus*) 400 Families, and seated 300 Miles from any habitable place; it was anciently Built by the *Numidians* in the borders of *Lybia* (*Nigritia*) and Walled with Bricks dried in the Sun in a Sandy Plain, which yields some Dates, Mill-Seed and Barley, on which they live and pay Tribute to the wandering *Arabs*. They Trade into the *Negro* Countries, *Guzula*. They are Black and Unlearned, and inured betimes to hard Labour, *Ibid.* p. 266. *English*. 7. *Segelmess*. This City is regardable for its greatness and number of Inhabitants, and a Center of Trade, having delightful Gardens and beautiful Meadows. It has no Castle, but is full of Houses, all built upon a River full of Water, which swells in the Summer as the *Nile* doth, and makes the Fields as fruitful as *Egypt*. *Nub.* p. 74. The name of the River is *Zis*, which springing from *Mount Atlas*, Waters many considerable places above and below *Segelmess*: the reason of its increase is the melting of the Snow on *Mount Atlas* in the Summer. But then *Segelmess* stands in a Land of Rivers; to the East fall the *Gir*, and two other small Rivers; to the West the *Dara*, and two more that have no Names; all which to the South of it unite their Streams in the *Gir*. From *Segelmess* to *Sighamat Varichae* is almost eight days journey: To *Dara* is three days journey West. *Nub.* p. 78. says it is 13 days journey from *Fesse*, which stands to the N. W. beyond the *Atlas*. In the year of the *Hegyra*, Five hundred and thirty, the *Marubetens* travelled from *Grand Cairo* to *Segelmess*, through the frightful Desarts of *America* in 41 days, though they found no Water in three or four days sometimes. *Nub.* p. 160. This Voyage was performed in the year of Christ 1147. *Leo Africanus* p. 269. The Province stretcheth from N. to S. by the River *Zis* 120 Miles. On the W. it hath *Dara*, on the N. *Fesse* and *Tunis*, on the E. *Tigorain*, and on the S. *Lybia*, now *Nigritia*. The Inhabitants are mostly barbarous *Africans*. It was subject to the King of *Fesse*, and after to its own

Princes; the last of which being slain in a Rebellion, the City of *Segelmessa* was destroyed, and is now desolate. Some suppose it built by the *Romans*; the *Africans* call it *Bieri*: It stood upon a Plain, and was environ'd with a high and strong Wall, part of which is still remaining. The *Moors* sack'd the old City, and then rebuilt it, and it grew rich by the *Negro Trade*. The Air is temperate, but unhealthful in Winter. 8 *Zeb*. 9. *Tebelbeti*. And 10. *Fessin*, so called from the chiefest of their Towns and Villages.

Towns of most Note, both now and in former times, besides those spoken of before, 1. *Timugadi*, in the Province of *Dara*, the Birth-place of *Mahomet Ben Amet* and his three Sons, the Founders of the *Xeriffian Empire*. 2. *Tassilette*, in the said Province, to which place *Mahomet* the second of these Sons, and second King of *Morocco* of that Family, confined his elder Brother *Amet*, having took him Prisoner, *Anno* 1544. 3. *Tiffer*, a great Town of 400 Houses, but so poorly neighboured, that there is no other inhabited place within 300 Miles of it; but of that before. 4. *Techont*, the Inhabitants whereof are very courteous to Strangers whom they entertain at Free cost; and chuse rather to Marry their Daughters to them, than to any of the Natives. This City was built by the *Numidians* upon a Hill, near a River, over which it hath a Draw-bridge. On three sides the Walls are Freestone, and a Rock on the fourth; it stands Five hundred Miles from the *Mediterranean Sea* to the S. and Three hundred from *Tegorom* to the S. E. and may contain Two thousand five hundred Families. The Houses are built with Brick dried in the Sun, but the Temples more stately. They exchange Dates for Corn with *Constantina*. 'Twas then subject to the King of *Tunis*, and paid 50000 Ducats Tribute a year; But the Governour Levied 130000. *Leo Af.* p. 275. 5. *Eboacab*, the most Eastern Town in all this Country, distant about 100 Miles from the Borders of *Egypt*. 6. *Debris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for the Wells or Fountains of the Sun: The Water whereof being Luke-warm at the Sun-rising, cooled more and more till Noon, and was then very cold, and so continued until Midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter; as if it had a natural Antipathy with the Sun, hottest when that was farthest off, and cold when nearest. 7. *Masuche*, seated on a Rock, Garison'd by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Marius* in the prosecution of that War. 8. *Cupsa*, the chief City of all this Tract, said to be built by *Heracles*; but questionless of very great strength; *Anguibus arenisque vallata*, made inaccessible (saith the Historian) by the thick Sands, and a multitude of Serpents which were harboured in them; but easily forced by *Marius* in his Wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly destroyed by *Cæsar* in his War against *Juba*.

It seems by this, that those People neighbouring Mount *Atlas*, were much at the disposal of the Kings of *Mauritania*, in the times foregoing; and so they have been also in these later times. For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of Wisdom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saracens* had not long possessed themselves of those parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698, but within Twelve years (*An.* 710.) they subdued this Country, and planted their Religion in it, though not themselves. Nor was *Amet*, the first *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, warm in that Estate, when he thought it best for him to secure himself in it by the Conquest of this: to whose Successors, the Chiefs of the Tribes hereof render some acknowledgments.

2. LIBYA DESERTA.

LIBYA DESERTA, is bounded on the North with *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid*; towards the South with the Land of *Negroes* wholly; and on the West with *Gulata*, another Province of these *Negroes*, interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantic*.

The reason of the name of *Libya* we have had before. To which *Deserta* was added upon very good reasons, as well to difference it from the other *Libya*, a Province of *Egypt*, as to express the barren and sandy condition of it; in which respect by the *Arabians* called *Sarra*, signifying in their Language a rude and uninhabitable Desert, as this Country is so truly such, that Men may travel in it eight days together without finding Water, or seeing any Tree, and no Grass at all. The Water which they have is drawn out of Pits, exceeding Brackish; and many times those Pits so covered with the Sands, that Men die for Thirst: the Merchants therefore carrying their Water with them on the backs of Camels; which if it fail, they kill their Camels, and drink a Water which they wring out of their Guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as these Deserts be, they are very much travelled by the Merchants of *Resse* and *Tremesen*, trading to *Agades* and *Tambutum*, in the Land of *Negroes*. *Leo* p. 34. saith, it Raineth in the middle of *October*, and continueth till *February*; during all which time they have wonderful plenty of Grass and Milk, and great Lakes of Water; and therefore they travel in, or soon after those times of Rain, to the Land of *Negroes*, through these Deserts.

The People differ not much from the *Numidians* in Shape or Qualities; but if a worse Quality, it must be the *Libyan*. They did once worship a God called *Pasaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then set at liberty, to say these words, *viz.* *Pasaphon is a great God*; which the simple People hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine Honours. Converted at last to the Christian Faith, they remained a while in the profession of the Gospel: Exterminated by the *Saracens*, about the year 710. who having added *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid* to their former Conquests, planted their Superstitions in this Country also.

This Country is divided, (as others into Provinces) into five great Deserts, to which those of less Note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the borders of *Gualata*, (interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantic Ocean*) and extending Eastward to the Salt-pits of *Tegaza*; having on the South *Gualata* and *Tombutum* in the Land of *Negroes*; so destitute of Water, that there is one Pit only at the end of each hundred Mile, brackish and unwholesome; and in the Deserts of *Azaoa* and *Araoan*, which are parts of this, but one in 150 or 200 Miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eastward, to the Desert of *Targa*: bounded on the North with *Segelmess* and *Tebelbaty*, *Numidian* Provinces; and on the South, with the Desert, and *Ghir* and *Guber*. So void of Water, (especially in that part thereof which is called *Goguden*) that in Nine days Travel there is not so much as one drop to be seen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended Eastward to the Desert of *Ighidi*, and reaching from *Tegerarin* in the North, to the Desert of *Agades* in the South; the best Conditioned part of all this Country, well Watered, of a temperate Air, and a Soil reasonably Fruitful. In length from North to South 300 Miles, and liberally stored with Manna, which they gather into little Vessels, and carry to *Agades* to sell; mingled in Water, or with Pottage, it is very cooling; and drank of in their Feasts, as a special Dainty.

4. *LEMBETA*, extended from the Deserts of *Ighidi*, unto that of *Bordea*.

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia*. Of these two there is little to be said in several, but that this last was lately discovered by one *Hmar*, a guide to a Caravan of Merchants; who blinded with the Sands, wandered out of his way, and causing Sand to be given him at every Twenty Miles end, found by the smell at last, that they began to draw nigh some inhabited place; and told them of it Forty Miles before they came to it.

Cities of Note we hope for none, where we find no Water. Of such as go for Cities here, the most considerable, 1. *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, resembling Marble; which the Inhabitants, being Twenty days distant from any Habitation, and consequently many times in danger to die for famine, exchange for Victuals with the Merchants of *Tombutum*, who come hither for it. Much troubled with the *South-Wind*, which doth so drive the Sands upon them, that it causeth many of them to lose their sight. 2. *Huaden*, or *Hoden*, a known resting place, and a great refreshment to the Merchant in the midst of these Deserts. 3. *Guargata*, on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot Water; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building, and inhabited by a wealthy people. 4. *Toberaum*, of little note, but that it serveth for a Stage or halting-place to the weary Traveller. Of which kind there are said to be others at the extremities or ends of each several Desert; the Harvans of such men as sail in those Sandy Seas; but not else observable.

Nor is there much, if any thing observable of them in the way of Story, but that not looked after by any of the great Conquerors, either Greeks or Romans, much of the Country possessed by Arabian Colonies, (men fit enough to plant in such barbarous Nations) at such time as the *Savacens* planted their Religion here. The Government of the Country since, as it was before, by the Chiefs of their several Clans or Families; who as they know no Law themselves, so do the people shew as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions, differing but little from brute Beasts, more than in shape and speech. The vast greatness of these Deserts, and the Barbarity of its Inhabitants, were the Causes that the Ancients knew of no People beyond them to the South; so that this is the Boundary of All the old Geography; what lies further that way having been since discovered by the *Arabians* and the *Portuguese*.

And so much for *LIBIA INTERIOR*.

O F

TERRA NIGRITARUM.

TERRA NIGRITARUM, or THE LAND OF NEGROES, is bounded on the East, with *Aethiopia Superior*; on the West, with the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the North, with *Libya Deserta*; and on the South, with the *Aethiopic Ocean* and part of *Aethiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigritæ*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Ptolemy*, and they so named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

This Vast Tract of Land extending from East to West on both sides of the *Niger*, and upon the Rivers that fall into it to the North and South, is bounded by Desolate Sandy Deserts, uninhabited for want of Water, which is not to be found but at great distances, once in 5, 6 or 14 days Journey, and therefore carried by the Caravans from Place to Place. *Nubiensis*, p. 7. There are no Fruits to be found in it but Dates, which are brought by the Inhabitants of *Vareclan* from *Segelmessa*, or *Zab*. On the Banks of the *Niger* there grow Indian Reeds or Canes, and Woods of *Ebony*, *Box*, *Sallows*, *Tamarisk*, &c. of great extent, in which the Negroes and their Cattle Shelter themselves in the heat of the day from the Scorplings of the Sun. In these Woods are also Lyons, Leopards, Deer, Hares, white Weasels, and Hedgehogs: And the *Niger* affords excellent Fish of severall sorts. Bows and Arrows, and Clubs of *Ebony* are their Arms, which they use with great Dexterity and Courage: Their Bows and Arrows are made of *Recus*; their Houses are built of Earth and small Timbers, and their Bravery lies in Necklaces and Bracelets, and going almost naked by the excessive heat of the Country. Near the Cities they plant Onions, Gourds, and Mellons, which grow to great Bulk; they have little Corn, besides *Gumma* Wheat, of which they make their Drink; and Camels Flesh and Fish is their best Flesh-Meat. *Nubiensis* p. 9. *Leo Africanus*, p. 2. bounds this Country East on *Egypt* or *Gagaa*, West on *Gualata* and the *Atlantick Ocean*. The truth is, the Ocean runs in from 5 to 35 Degrees of Longitude, and was then the utmost Bound they heard of by the Merchants of *Tombuto*; for in Truth it extends much further even to the River *Zaire*.

The Country very hot, by reason of its situation under the *Torrid Zone*; yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in some places always green: well watered, and exceeding fruitful, especially in those parts which lie within

the compass of the overflowings of the River *Niger*; and on the further side of the River *Sanaga*: abundantly well stored both with Corn, Cattel and Garden-ware for the use of their Kitchens; well Wooded, and those Woods well furnished with Elephants and other Beasts, both wild and tame. Their greatest wants (but such a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-Trees*, few of which they have; and those they have, bear one kind of Fruit only, which is like the *Chestnut*, but somewhat bitterer. Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greatest welfare consisting in the overflowings of *Niger*; as that of *Egypt* in the inundations of *Nile*. In some parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and silver; very fine and pure: so that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of discovering *New Worlds*, as much as *Wealib*, they might have made as rich a *Factory* here, as the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants, till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the most part so rude and barbarous, that they seem'd to want that use of Reason which is peculiar unto Man; of little Wit, and destitute of all Arts and Sciences; prone to Luxury, and for the greatest part Idolaters, though not without some small admixture of *Mahometans*. When the *Portugals* first sailed into these Coasts, the People hereof took the Ships for great Birds with white Wings: and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the Eyes which were casually painted on the Beaks of the Ships were the Eyes by which they saw how to direct themselves in their course. *Guns* seemed to them, for their hideous noise, to be the work of the *Devil*; and for *Bag-pipes*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had been permitted to feel them, would they be persuaded but that they were the work of God's own Hand. The very Nobles (if so noble a name may without offence be given to such blockish people) are so dull and stupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to Civil Society: and yet so reverent to their King, that when they are in his presence, they never look him in the face, but sit flat on their buttocks, with their elbows on their knee, and their hands on their faces. They use to anoint their hair with the fat of Fishes, which makes them stink more wretchedly than they would do otherwise. Of Complexion they are for the most part Cole black, whence the name of *Negroes*; but on the South side of the River *Sanaga* they

Y y y y y 2

they are only Tawny: the Blacks so much in love with their own Complexion, that they use to paint the Devil White; which I find thus verified:

*The Land of Negroes is not far from thence,
Never extended to th' Atlantick Main;
Wherein the Black Prince keeps his residence,
Attended by his fatty-coloured Train:
Who in their Native Beauty must delight,
And in contempt do paint the Devil White.*

They have tried all Religions, but agree in none. Idolaters at the first, as other the Descendants of Chavn: Afterwards it is said, that they received the Rites and Religion of the Jews, (but the time and occasion of it I do nowhere find) in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the last, Christianity prevailed in some Kingdoms of it. In the year 973. Mahometism began to get ground amongst them, by the diligence and zeal of some of the Preachers of that Law: the first who were seduced that way, being those of Melli: after which Tombuto, and then Gualata, were infected with the same poyson also. In the end, all the rest of this Country followed their example, except the Kingdom of Borneo, some part of Nubia, and the Coasts of the Atlantick Ocean which continue in their ancient Gentilism; Christianity being confined to a corner of Nubia (if still there remaining) and some few Garrisons belonging to the Crown of Portugal. And as they are of different Religions, so are they also of several Languages; those of Gualata, Guinea, Tombutum, Melli, and Gugonti, speaking the Language called Sungai; the Guberio, Canonies, Chæsenæ, and Gangretes, &c. that called Guber: Gualata, a language of its own: and those of Nubia, one resembling the Arabick, Chaldean and Egyptain.

Mountains of most note in it, in the former times, were those of 1. Arvaltes, and 2. Arangus, and 3. that called Deorum Currus; this last supposed to be the same which is now called Puntæ de Lopes Gonfales, but that more probably, which they now call Cabo de Sierra Leona, a large Promontory, thrusting it self into the Sea; discerned afar off by the Sailers and the Country people, as well by reason of its height, reaching to the Clouds, as the continual Lightnings and Thunders which do issue thence.

Rivers of most note, besides Nile, which watereth it on the East, 1. Senaga, or Canaga, which riseth out of the Lake of Guoga, supposed to be the same which Ptolemy calleth Lacum Chelonidem. And if so, then must this be the River Gir; of which he saith, that having fallen into that Lake, and there swallowed up, it thence Produced another River, whose name he telleth not; little inferiour unto Nilus, for the length of its course, the variety of strange Creatures which are bred therein, or the distinction which it maketh in the face of this Country; the People on the one side of it being Black, on the other Tawny; the Soil on the one side very barren, on the other fruitful: In the end, having run his race, he falleth into the Atlantick by two great Outlets. 2. Niger, a River better known to Ptolemy by name than nature; now found to have its rise from a great Lake, within two degrees of the Equinoctial; whence running Northwards for a time, he hideth himself under ground for the space of 60 miles together: when rising up again, and making a great Lake called the Lake of Borneo, he bendeth his course directly Westward; and taking in many less Channels, he teareth the Earth into many Islands, and at last falleth into the Sea. Of as long course, and the same wondrous nature as the River Nilus. For from the fifteenth day of June it overfloweth all the adjacent fields, the space of 40 days together; and in so many more, recollecteth his Waters into their proper Channels: the whole Country being indebted to these Inundations for its Fertility, which otherwise could be but small, since the driness of the Soil can afford no Exhalations, whereby Clouds may be generated, and the Earth refreshed with moistures, or revived with dews.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of Ptolemy, 1. Nigua, the Metropolis of the Country, 2. Panagra, 3. Malachath, 4. Anygath, 5. Thumondacana, 6. Suluce, and others, to the number of 17 in all; situate all along the course of the River Niger: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the situation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the ancient Towns and People being quite defaced, we must look upon it now as it standeth divided at this time into several Kingdoms, 25 at the least in all, (some say many more) the chief of which are these that follow.

1. ORA ANTEROSA, a large Tract of Ground on the Western Ocean, extended from Cape Blance to the River Carnuga, sandy and barren, but reasonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hercof called Azanbays, were accounted formerly very rude and barbarous; much civilized since the Portugals and other Christian Nations began to trade there; of middle stature, complexioned between black and ash-colour; great liars, very treacherous, poor, and parsimonious, and very patient in extremities both of heat and hunger. The chief Towns, 1. Porta di Dio (we may call it Gods Port) and 2. Porto del Riscatto, two frequented Havens, thus named occasionally by the Portuguese, at their first coming thither. 3. Arquim, a strong Fortress of the Portugals, situate on or near the Promontory now called Cape Blance; and giving name unto some Islands, five or six in number, lying near unto it, called the Isles of Arquim; inhabited by a barbarous people, named the Azanbays, but of no great note. These Coasts discovered first by the Portugals, Anno 1452. under the Conduct of Prince Henry, Son of John the first, or by his encouragement and directions.

2. GUALATA, distant from the Ocean 100 miles, (the Province of Ora Anterosa being interposed) is but a small Country, though a Kingdom; containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with some Territories of ground and petty Hamlets belonging to them. Fruitful only in Dates, Mill, and Pulse; but of these two last no great abundance. This was ever the Principall Nation of the Negroes, and the Seat of their Prince, till the Trade in after-times was removed from Gualata to Tombuto; the King of which last conquered Gualata in Leo's time. The Inhabitants Cole-Black, hospitable towards Strangers to their power, but poor and miserable, without Laws, settled form of Government, Gentry and Judges. Their King paid Tribute to the King of Tombuto, Leo Africanus p. 285.

3. AGADEZ, bordering on Targa, one of the five Deserts of Libya; the people of it generally given to grazing, their houses made of green Boughs, which upon every change of Pasture they carry with them upon the Backs of Oxen. So that we are to look for few Towns amongst them, but these movable Villages. One of good note it hath, called Agadez, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the most part by Merchants Strangers, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and Tremesen. The Town well walled, the Houses of a better building than the Country promiseth; the people civiler, and more fair conditioned than the rest of the Negroes; seated commodiously on a River which falleth into the Senaga, and by that means hath correspondence with the Ocean also. The City is mostly Inhabited by Barbary, and other Merchants, who Trade between that place, Cano, and Borno. The Subjects of the King of this City are wont frequently to depose him, and set up another: This Kingdom pays the King of Tombuto 150000 Ducats Tribute, Leo Africanus, p. 290. It lies on the North of the Niger, between Tombuto to the West, and Cano to the East, Guber to the South, and Zuinziga to the North.

4. CANO, a large Province on this side of the River Canaga, full of Woods, Mountainous, and in some parts Desert; but plentiful enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons and Pomegranates, with good store of Cotton-Wooll. Well watered, besides that great River, with some lesser Streams. Sufficiently populous, and stored with good Towns and Villages,

Villages, the Habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen, as the chief Town called *Cano* is of wealthy Merchants. This is the Seat-Royal of their King, a Tributary also unto him of *Tombuto*, environed with a Wall, built of a Chalk-stone, as most part of the Houses are.

5. *CASENA*, on the East of *Cano*, but less fruitful far; the Country over-grown with vast Woods, and the Soil untractable, affording only Mill and Barly, but of that good plenty. The People as Black as any Coal, with great Noses, and most prominent Lips. They had a King, who was slain by the Victorious *Iscbia* King of *Tombuto*. *Leo Afric. p. 291*. Their Houses very poor and mean, and their Towns accordingly, none of them numbering more than 300 Families.

6. *SANAGA*, lying on the other side of that River, from which thus named; extendeth to the *Atlantick* Ocean, as far as to the Promontory which by *Ptolemy* named *Arfinarium*, is now called *Cape-Vert*, or *Caput Viride*. The Country full of rich Pastures, goodly Trees, and most sorts of Fruits; plentiful enough of Mill and Pulse, but ill provided of other Corn, and no Grapes at all. Well watered both with Lakes and Rivers. No tame Beasts about their Fields, but Goats, Cows, and Oxen; of Lions, Leopards, Wolves, and Elephants, too great a plenty. The People extream black, much given to Lying, Treacherous, very full of Talk, excessively Venerous, and extreamly Jealous. A King they have, but such a one as holdeth but by Courtesie only, having no certain Rents or Revenues, but what is given by his Nobles. The Name of this Country is Communicated to that Branch of the *Niger* which here falls into the Ocean. At the Mouth it is a Mile broad; *John Berros*, a Spaniard, asserts, that it springs out of the Lake of *Gagoa*, but *Nub.* who knew more than he of it, proves clearly that it ariseth in *Ethiopia* with the *Nile*, and shews what People lived upon it from the Ocean to *Numidia*. The Western Ocean runs up into it 60 Leagues, but it is pestered with Banks of Sand and Gravel, so that it cannot be sailed on. About 150 Leagues from its Mouth, it has a Cataract or great Fall from the Rocks; so that a Man may walk dry under the Stream of it. From the 15th of June, this and the *Gamba* overflow for 40 Days as the *Nile* doth, and the same time decreasing, which makes the Land between them wonderfully Fruitful, even like to *Egypt*; yet it will not Ripen Wheat, Rice, Barley, or Grapes, but wants no Pulse or Millet, and *Guinea-Wheat*, a wonderful Grain. It Rains every day at Noon between the latter End of *October* and *July*, with frequent Thunder and Lightning. This River is the most Northern Bounds of the *Negroes*. *Pory*. The same with the *Niger*. *Huckl. T. 2. Part 2. p. 17*.

7. *GAMBRA*, or *GAMBFA*, a small Kingdom on the River so named, but bordering in some places on the *Atlantick*. In those Parts very Pleasant, the Trees always flourishing, the Air very hot; in other Parts of the same Nature with *Sanaga*, but that this affords good store of Rice, which the other doth not.

8. *TOMBUTUM*, on the further side of the River *Sanaga*: exceeding plentiful of Corn, Cattel, Milk, and Butter. Destitute of Salt, but what they buy of Foreign Merchants at excessive Rates; and small store of Horses. Well watered by a Branch also of the River *Niger*, and many Wells of purpose made to receive such Waters as by Artificial Dikes and Channels are derived from both. The People courteous, rich, and pleasant, spending whole days and nights in Singing and Dancing. Their Food, Flesh, Butter, Milk, and Fish, which they mingle together, and make it neither Toothsome nor Wholesome. The chief Towns, 1. *Tombuto*, which gives Name to this Kingdom, situate about 12 Miles from a Branch of the *Niger*, and 400 French Leagues from *Morocco* to the South; and founded by the *Saracens* or *Arabians* in the 610th year of their *Hegira*, *Anno Christi* 1231. The Houses all of Mud and Thatch, except one fair Church, and the King's Palace, both of Lime and Stone; built by a *Granada* Moorish Architect. It weaveth Linnen and Cotton, and hath some

Cloth brought out of *Europe*. It is inhabited by wealthy Merchants, who manage a great Trade betwixt this and *Fesse*, and are become very Rich. They want nothing but Salt, which is very Dear, being brought from *Tigra*, 500 miles through the Deserts. The King is the Richest Prince in *Africa*, and has 3000 Horses and a great Body of Foot in Pay: Their Horses come from *Barbary*. The King's Hatred to the Jews, suffers none of them to Trade there; they prize the Books and Learned Men that come from *Barbary*, highly. They use Gold for Money, but without any Stamp, *Leo African. p. 287*. *Cabra* is the Port of this City, upon the *Niger*. In later Times, the Kingdom of *Tombuto* was conquered by the King of *Gago*. About the year 1590. it was conquered by the King of *Morocco* and *Fesse*, who sent one *Alexide-Himode*, a Moor, for that end, with 1700 Men, the greatest part of which perished in the Deserts for want of Water; yet they that escaped took *Gago* and *Tombuto*, and forced the latter to pay 60 Quintals of Gold for a yearly Tribute: In 1594 there came from hence to *Morocco* 30 Mules laden with Gold, and the King was sending 300 Men and a Viceroy, which were thought enough to conquer all the Lands of the *Negroes*, they having nothing to defend themselves but poisoned Poles and Arrows; so that a handful of the *Moors* beat an innumerable Number of them, as *Daffel* an English Man wrote into *England*. *Huckl. p. 192. T. 2*. 2. *Gago*, the Residence of the King, large, without Walls, the Buildings very poor and mean, except such as belong unto the King, or the chief Nobility. The Merchants rich, and their Wares sumptuous and precious, but excessive Dear. The Town about 400 miles distant from *Tombuto*, situate in a fruitful Country, for Rice, Fruits, and Flesh, and well replenished with fresh Water. They have a Market for Slaves, which are sold at 15 Ducats a-piece if young. The King in Person decideth Controversies between his Subjects. The Trade here is wonderful great, a *Barbary* Horse is sold for 10 Ducats, and an Ell of Scarlet for 30. and Salt much dearer. The People of this Kingdom are either Shepherds or Husbandmen, who in Winter wear Beasts Skins, and in Summer go Naked. Very Ignorant and Unlearned, not one in 100 miles being able to Write or Read, and they pay excessive Taxes to the King, *Leo African. p. 289*. 3. *Cabra*, a large Town, but unwalled, and of no better building than the other two. This is the Port of *Tombuto* upon the *Niger*, seated 12 miles from it, where all that pass to *Guinea* and *Melli*, imbarck, and to which many *Negroes* resort for Trade. The King of *Tombuto* has here a Judge to end all Controversies. The Town is large, but the People are silly, by reason of their mixing Fish, Flesh, Milk, and Butter, in their Diet; which is also used at *Tombuto*, *Leo African. p. 288*.

9. *MELLI*, lying on the East of *Tombutum*, is a spacious and fruitful Province, situate all along on a Branch of the River *Niger*, in breadth 300 miles, and abundantly fertile, especially in Corn, Cattel, and Cotton-Wool: The People generally very wealthy; of greater Wit, Civility, and Industry, than the rest of the *Negroes*. The chief Town of it is called *Melli*, unwalled, but large, as containing in it 600 Families; furnished with many Temples, Priests, and Readers of the *Mahometan* Law, which those of this Country did first unhappily admit of. This the Seat-Royal of their Kings, who are very courteous unto Strangers; but Homagers and Tributaries to the King of *Tombutum*.

10. *GHENEOA*, situate betwixt *Gualata*, *Tombutum* and *Melli*, but so, that it bordereth in one place on the Ocean also; is a wealthy Country; but hath neither Town or Castle in it, except that wherein the King resideth, who is a Vassal also to the King of *Tombutum*. That Town the Residence also of their Priests, Doctors and Merchants; of which the Priests and Doctors are apparell'd in white, but all the rest in black or blue Cotton. The People have great Traffick with the Merchants of *Barbary*, and though made very rich by the overflowings of the *Niger*, and the wealth

wealth of the Country, they have great store of Gold uncoined; yet in buying and selling at Home they use Iron-Money. This Country was called by the Ancients *Auto-lux*, *Ichthyophagi*, and by *Pliny*, *Autoles*. The Coastiers at this day live mostly of Fish; the rest eat Lizards, or any other Vermin. During the Summer they keep in all Day, and Travel and Labour in the Night, to avoid the scorching of the Sun; so little fond of their Children, that they sell them for Slaves, believing them more happy elsewhere. They have no Trees, and little Corn, which is often devoured by the *Locusts*, which swarm here. The People on the contrary kill and dry them for Food, which is the common practice of all Countries they afflict, *Pory* p. 42. *Leo Africanus*, p. 286. saith, This Nation from North to South, was 500 miles; and from East to West, on the *Niger* 250. It yeilds, Barly, Rice, Cattel, Fish, and Cotton in abundance: no Fruit but Dates. This Kingdom gave the Name of *Guinea* to that which lies more South, when it came to be discovered by the *Portuguese*.

11. *GUBER* lieth on the East of the former Provinces; of the same length, and naturally well fenced with lofty Mountains. Exceeding populous, and thick set with Villages, in which dwell their Husbandmen and Shepherds; rich in their numerous herds of all sorts of Cattel, as also great quantities of Rice and Pulse: the People very Industrious and good Artificers. Their Principal Town is called *Guber* also, a Town of 6000 Families; the usual Residence of their King; full of wealthy Merchants, and rich in Manufactures.

12. *GLALOFI* lieth betwixt the two great Rivers of *Sanaga* and *Gambia*. The People whereof are of such admirable dexterity, that they can leap upon an Horse when he is in his full Gallop, stand in the Saddle when he runneth fastest, turn themselves about upon his Back, and suddenly down. Of their Country I find little, of their Story nothing, but that *Bemcin*, one of their Kings, being overlaid with Civil Wars, in the year 1489. went for Aid to the King of *Portugal*, and gave great hopes of his Conversion to the *Christian* Faith. But being shamefully murdered by *Petro de Vaz*, the *Portugal* General, the hopes of *Christianity* in these Parts fell together with him.

13. *GUINEA*, is a Sea-coast Country, extended from *Sierra Leona* (so called from the Lyon-like roaring of the Waves beating on that Promontory) in the 10th Degree of *Longitude*, to the Borders of *Benin* in the 30th. But the *Portugals* comprehend under this Name the whole Sea-coast of *Africk* from Cape *Blanco* and the Country of *Ora Anterosa*, to *Angola* and *Congo*, inclusively, in the Lower *Ethiopia*. But take it in the proper Sense, as before-limited, and we shall find it to be rich in Gold, Ivory, Rice, Barly, Cotton-Wool, and a sort of Pepper, which the *Portugals* call *Pimienta del Rabo*, the Natives *Melegneta*, and we *Guinea-Pepper*, of double the Efficacy of the Pepper which comes from *India*; and therefore forbidden to be sold by the King of *Portugal*, for fear their *Indian-trade* should be discontinued. Well stored with Sheep and Poultry, and of Dates good plenty. All other Fruits which they want, or care for, are brought hither from *Gualat*. Birds in abundance, and of Elephants and Apes too many. A Tree they have, by them called *Mignolo*, the Bark whereof being cut, doth afford a most excellent Liquor, more pleasant, strong, and nourishing than the choicest Wines, which they drink of in their great Feasts, even to Drunkennels. The People of both Sexes very rude and barbarous, as well in their Habit as their Manners; yet amongst many barbarous Customs they have one most commendable, which is the breeding of their Maidens. When Marriageable, they place them in a house severed from the rest of their Cities, like a Cloyster or Monastery, where for a space they are trained up by some old Man of best Estimation. At the Years end they are brought out well Apparrelled, with Musick and Dances; where the young Men please themselves in the Choice of their Wives: for whom having bargained with

their Parents, they satisfy the old Man for his Care and Pains in their Education. They keep one day of Rest weekly, but therein differ from all Nations of the World besides, that they keep their Sabbath upon the *Tuesday*. Distracted into as many Kingdoms as great Tribes or Families; the Kings thereof subordinate unto one another, as they lie more within the Land, till they end all in a Subjection to the King of *Mandinga*. The Multitude of their Kings is the Occasion of frequent and very often unjust Wars amongst them, and all the Prisoners they take they sell to the *European* Merchants for Slaves; and some times make Wars for no other cause but to take their Neighbours Subjects, and sell them for Merchandizes, who for the most part revenge the Injury in the same manner, and sell the Prisoners to the same Ship that bought of the Aggressor; so that it is a wonder the Country is not laid desolate. Places of most Note, 1. *Songus*, the Principal of *Mandinga*, about 100 Leagues distant from the Cape of *Palmes*. 2. *Budem*, the chief Town of the Kingdom so called. 3. *Uxoo*, in the Centre of all the Country. 4. *Mina*, a strong hold of the *Portugals*, situate near the Cape called *Cabo de trois pontas*, the Three Pointed Cape; named sometimes also *St. George de Mina*, by the Name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr, and the Mines of Gold, which they hoped to find there: By which, and by the Fort of *Arquin*, which they have upon Cape *Blanco*, in the North part of this Land of the *Negroes*, they command all the Countries, which they call by the Name of *Guinea*. This Town was not built until the Year 1486. in the beginning of the Reign of *John* the Second, though the Discovery of these Coasts had been made before, *Anno* 1452. under the Conduct of Prince *Henry* Duke of *Viseo*, Son of *John* the First. By whose Encouragement the *Portuguese* did first employ themselves in Foreign Discoveries, and became enamoured of the Seas. For in this Interval, the *Portugals* being more covetous of new Discoveries, than of fortifying and securing the Old, gave opportunity to the *Castilians* to look after this Country, who having took a view of it in the year 1477. pursued the Enterprize the next year with a Fleet of 35 Ships, under the Command of *Petro de Cobides*, who brought thence great quantity of Gold; but in the year 1479. by an Agreement or Capitulation between those Princes, the Trade hereof was again left free to the *Portugals*; who thereupon discovering the Isle of *St. George*, and finding it a fit Place to secure and command the rest, built in it the strong Fort or Castle of *Mina*, which before we spoke of. This Castle was first built, as is pretended, by the *French*, in 1383. but being forced to leave it, the *Portuguese*, in 1482. built another in the same Place, which continued in their hands till the year 1637. when the *Hollanders* took it from them: By this Castle in 1556. was a great Town, called by the *Negroes* *Dondou*. The Castle stands about five Leagues to the East of the Cape de *Tres pontas*. *Hackl. To. 2. Part 2. p. 38.*

14. *BENIN* lieth directly East of *Guinea*, by the *Portugals* reckoned for a Province, or Kingdom of it; the King whereof is said to have 600 Wives, with all which twice a Year he goeth out in Pomp. The Gentlemen (if I abuse not the Name) have most of them 80 Wives, some more; He that is Poorest 10 or 12, and the more the merrier. The People hereof do cut and raze their Skins with three Lines drawn to the Navil, esteeming it necessary to Salvation. They use all, both Men and Women, to go Naked till they are Married; and then to be Cloathed only from the Waste to the Knees; so that had our *Sir Thomas Moor* lived in these Parts, he had in some measure had his desire: For he, among other strange Plots in his *Utopian* Commonwealth, telleth us, how it is the Custom for some Reverend Old Sire to bring in Naked the young Man, and some Hoary Old Matron to present Naked the young Woman, between whom a Marriage is propounded. For, saith he, in buying a Horse, the Chapman not only vieweth his Naked Carcass, but taketh off all his Trappings and Saddle, lest under them

them some Blain or Ulcer might be hidden: Why then in chusing of a Wife should we take one, of whom we see no more than the Face, (*unius Palmæ spatium*) and perhaps scarce that? The Learned and Ingenious Author of the *New Atlantis*, though he dislike of Marriages made upon such Uncertainties, yet he would have this Discovery made by some Friends of the Parties, not by themselves; it being, as he saith, very inconvenient, that after a plain and familiar Sight of each others Person, there should be a Refusal on either side. But these new Projects I refer to your modest Censures.

15. *GUANGARA* lieth on the North of *Benin*, a weakly and well-peopled Country, but their Towns and Villages very mean, except that called by the same Name with the Country, where the King resideth, which is somewhat better than the rest, well Traded and full of rich Merchants. The King hereof of so great Revenues, that he keepeth seven thousand Archers, and five hundred Horse in continual pay; but Homager and Tributary to the King of *Bornum*. To the South is a Nation rich in Gold, but they were then much laid at by the King of *Tombuto*, which hindred their Trade; but the King of *Gagou* lent him Assistance against the King of *Borneo*, who pressed him at the same time, *Leo African.* p. 292. Their Slaves carry their Goods.

16. *BORNUM*, a large and opulent Country on the West of *Guangara*, is there extended to the length of 500 miles. Distinguished equally in a manner into Hills and Valleys: the Hills inhabited by Neat-herds and Shepherds, breeding great Flocks and Herds of Cattel, with Mill, and many other Fruits to us unknown; the Valleys replenished with many Market-Towns, and as full of Corn. The People are of no Religion, but live like Beasts; without Propriety so much as in their Wives, or Children: Nor are they differenced by Names, as in other Places, but by some Mark upon their Bodies: Which though it seem strange to us of this present Age, yet was it thus in part with our *Saxon Ancestors*. Whence have we else the names of *White*, *Brown*, *Black*, *Grey*, *Green*, and *Tawny*; or that of *Long*, *Short*, *Low*, *Curl*, *Crisp*, and others, but from such Originals? Not to say any thing of the names of Trades and Occupations, so familiar with us. The name of their chief City is *Borneo*, where the King resideth. A potent Prince, who keepeth in continual pay 3000 Horse, and great numbers of Foot, and yet is said to have no other Revenue, than what he getteth by strong hand from his Enemies. Which if it be true, those Kings must needs be good Warriours, and have great success in their Undertakings: It being also said of these Kings of *Borneo*, that all the Furniture of their Houses, all the Dishes, Cups, and Platters, which they eat or drink in, yea the very Chains for his Dogs, were of the finest Gold.

17. *GAGOA* lieth betwixt *Borneo*, and the Desarts of *Nubia*: the Country almost square, each side thereof extended 500 miles. The People ignorant, rude, uncivil, but especially those which dwell in the Mountains; their Houses built most of Boughs and Leafs, which once dry, easily take Fire; but the best is, they are soon repaired: their greatest wealth is in their Cattel, which they keep most tenderly. About the year 1420. they were brought into subjection by a *Negro Slave*, who having slain his Master, by the help of his Wealth grew strong enough to incroach on his Neighbours; and selling such Captives as he took for Horses of *Egypt*, became King of *Gagou*; his Son, Brother, and Grandson succeeded him. The Name of the last was *Hamara*, who made a League with the Soldan of *Egypt*. He was a great Lover of the *Mahometans*, and they failed not to bring him rich Presents, which he returned in greater and more valuable Acknowledgments, *Leo African.* p. 294. and in fine, very gracious with the *Mamuluck Sultans*. His Successors have since so enlarged their Territories, that they are second unto none but the Kings of *Tombuto*.

18. *NUBIA* hath on the West *Gagou*, bounded on the North with *Egypt*, extended Eastward unto *Nilus*, by

which parted from *Ethiopia Superior*, or the *Habassine* Empire. So called from the *Nubæ*, an ancient and potent People of this Tract, spoken of by *Ptolemy*; the great Lake anciently called *Nubæ Palus*, being hence denominated. A distinct People from those of the same name, dwelling on the shores of the *Red-Sea*, near unto *Sinus Aualites*, who from the shortness of their Stature passed in account for *Pygmies*: *Nubæ* *Πυγμαῖοι*, saith *Hesychius* an old Grammarian; these being a strong and potent Nation, and well skilled in Wars. Inasmuch, as *Cynaelus*, once a King hereof, understanding of some pressures laid upon the Christians of *Egypt*, is said to have raised 10000 Horse for their Aid and Succour; but by the persuasions of the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, went back unsought with. For at that time the Country was wholly Christian, and had been so from the very days of the Apostles; but are now fallen off again to their former Idolatries, or become *Mahometans*, for want of Ministers to instruct them. It is recorded by *Alvarcz*, the Writer of the *Ethiopic History*, that at his being in the Court of the *Abassine* Emperor, there came Ambassadors out of *Nubia*, to intreat a supply of Pastors to instruct their Nation, and repair Christianity amongst them; but were Unchristianly rejected. The *Nubian Geographer*, p. 15. Part 4. of the first Climate, saith, In this Country is also seen the Separation of the two *Niles*, which from the South do pass through our Country, passing Northward: Upon the Banks of the Eastern *Nile* are most of the Cities of *Egypt* built, or within its Island. The Western *Nile* (the *Niger*) flows from the East to the most Western part of *Africa*, and upon that Branch of the *Nile* are all or at least the principal Places of *Nigritia*. This Kingdom lies extended so far upon the *Nile* from North to South, that it cannot be Travelled by the Banks of the *Nile* in less than two Months. *Nub.* p. 17. The Reason is, the vast windings of the *Nile* in *Nubia*. This Kingdom is bounded to the North by the Mountain *Gembita*, to the East and South it had in his time *Ethiopia*, or *Habascia*, and on the West *Vantara*, and towards the North the Kingdom of *Tagna*; but *Ethiopia* is reduced since into a much less compass; all its Northern Provinces from *Bugia* to Port *Ercoco* or *Arkiko* having defected from it, and that Port too being now in the hands of the *Turks*.

Here is a Poison in this Country, of which the Tenth part of a Grain will dispatch a Man in a quarter of an Hour, and is sold for Ten Ducats an Ounce: the Custom for which unto the King, is as much as the price unto the Merchant. But for this one ill Commodity they have many good; that is to say, Corn, Sugar, Civet, Sanders, Ivory, all in great abundance; some store of Gold, and other Metals. The Country naturally Sandy, but well refreshed with Lakes and Rivers which do much enrich it, inasmuch as the People generally are very wealthy, and manage a great Trade with the Merchants of *Cairo* and *Egypt*. Their chief City is called *Dangala*, large and well frequented; said to contain no fewer than 10000 Families, but their Houses built of nothing but Thatch and Mortar. In other parts, especially towards the River *Nilus*, they have many Villages, few or none of them worth the naming.

There are many other Kingdoms in this Land of *Negroes*, besides these in *Gumæa* but of lesser Note; as 19. *BITO*. 20. *TEMIANO*. 21. *ZEGZEG*. This Kingdom lies on the S. of the *Niger*, bounded to the W. by *Guber*, to the E. by *Zanfara*, to the N. by *Casan*, and to the S. by *Benin*; some parts of it are plain, and the rest Mountainous: the first of it are excessive hot, and the later are very cold. The Fields are well Watered and Fruitful, and the People Trade much with the neighbour Nations; they had a King who was conquered, and slain by the King of *Tombuto*, *Leo Africanus*, p. 292. 22. *ZANFARA*. This Kingdom is bounded to the W. by *Zegzeg*, to the N. by *Gagou*, cut off by the *Niger*, to the S. by *Benin* and *Bosana*; the People

are bafe and rude, and exceffive black: To this place *Ifchia* the victorious *Mahometan* King of *Tombuto*, pushed his Conquefts, *Leo Africanus*, p. 292. This Kingdom borders to the Eaft, on *Nubia*. 23. *GOTHAN*. 24. *MEDRA*. This Kingdom lies in the middle of *Africa*, between 5 and 10 Degrees of N. Lat. The People of which are abominable Sorcerers. *Pory*. 25. *DAUM*. This small City and Kingdom lies on the Eaftern fide of *Guinea*, in *Africa*, having the Kingdom of *Arda* to the S. and *Guber* to the N. Of which there is nothing to be fpoken, but of their Poverty or Riches, Bleffings or Curses, common to them with the reft of thefe Nations, and therefore I purpofely omit them.

The Country, or a great part of it, was anciently accounted part of *Lybia Interior*, inhabited befides the *Nubæ*, and *Nigritæ* fpoken of before, by the *Nabathræ* dwelling about the Hill *Arwater*, the *Aroncæ*, near the Hill *Aran-gus*, the *Agarginæ*, *Xylince*, and *Alchalince*, *Ethiopic* Nations. Nor much confiderable in the bufinefs of former times; not much difcovered (not very perfectly at this day) till the year 973. at what time certain *Mahometan* Preachers, out of a Superftitious Zeal to propagate their Sect, firft opened the way into thefe Countries: the People then living like brute Beasts, without King, Law, or any form of Government, fcarce knowing how to fow their Lands, clad in the Skins of as very Beasts as themfelves, and challenging no propriety in Wives or Children. Firft conquered by *Joſeph* King of *Morocco* of the race of the *Almohades*; and after that by the *Five Nations* of *Lybia Deferta*, who divided them into Fifteen parts, every one of thefe five Nations poſſeſſing three of them. One of the Kings of thefe *Libyans*, named *Soni Heli*, being ſlain by *Abuaci Ifchia*, General of his Forces, and the reft terrified with that blow, Anno 1526. the *Negroes* once again recovered their long loſt Liberty, and inſtituted divers Kings of their own. Amongſt them, *Ifchia* was moſt deſervedly made King of *Tombutum*, who managing his Affair ſo well, that he conquered the Kings of *Guber*, *Agaderz*, *Cano*, *Melli*, *Zanfara*, *Zegzeg*, *Ghenæoa*, *Gamben*, and *Cafena*, which he made his Tributaries. So that his Succeſſors are now the greateſt of thefe five Kings, who have the ſupream Power over all the reſt. But yet before the end of that Century, his Succeſſors were again

reduced under the obedience of the Kings of *Morocco* and *Fefſe*; and I believe this Kingdom is ſtill ſubject to them, and Governed by a Vice Roy. This Conqueſt happened in 1590. *Hacklitt. To. 2 p. 192*. The other four, 1. the King of *Mandinga*, lording it over the Realm of *Benin*, *Gioloſi*, and the Kings of *Guinea*; 2. the King of *Berne*, the only one that is deſcended of the *Libyan* Race, in greatneſs of Command next to him of *Tombuto*; 3. the King of *Gualata*, whoſe Kingdom is confined within that one Province, but therein Abſolute and Supream; and 4. the King of *Goaga*, Paramount over all the reſt of theſe Provinces.

But becauſe the greateſt Power is in the hands of the King of *Tombuto*, who poſſibly enough may in ſhort time bring all the reſt under his Command, we will take a more particular view of his Eſtate, affirmed to be the richeſt Prince in theſe parts of *Africa*, and to have many Plates and Scepters of Gold, ſome of which weigh 1300 pound weight. When any of his Subjects do appear before him, they kneel on both their Knees, and bowing their Heads unto the ground, caſt Sand over their Shoulders and upon their Head, going forward ſtill upon their Knees. His Court he keeps in a Royal manner, continually guarded with 3000 Horſe, but with many more Foot, all armed with Bows and empoifoned Arrows. To the *Jews* a very bitter Enemy, whom he admitteth not to Trade in his Kingdoms, and conſiſcateth the Goods of all ſuch of his Subjects as hold Traffick with them. Zealous of the *Mahometan* Law; and liberal in ſtipends to the Doctors and Profeſſors of it. Of greater Power than any other beyond *Atlas*, but the *Haboſſine* Emperour. And though *Amet* the Xeriff of *Morocco*, in the year 1589. had ſome hand upon him, and conquered a great part of this Kingdom even as far as *Gago*, extending his Empire ſix Months Journey, by Camels, beyond *Morocco*, yet it held not long: this King again recovering what was taken from him; and being ſince that time in as eminent Power, as ever in any times before. I think the Slaves lately returned from *Barbary*, do ſay, that at this day *Tombuto* doth pay Tribute and ſubmit to a Governour ſent by the King of *Morocco*; but I have none of their Relations now by me.

And ſo much for *TERRA NIGRATARUM*.

OF

ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Red Sea*, and the *Sinus Barbaricus*; on the Weſt with *Lybia Interior*, the Realm of *Nubia* in the Land of the *Negroes*, and part of the Kingdom of *Congo* in the other *Æthiopia*; on the North with *Egypt*, and *Lybia Marmarica*; and on the South with the Mountains of the *Moon*, by which parted from the main body of *Æthiopia Inferior*.

It was firſt called *Ætheria*, and afterwards *Atlantia*, as *Pliny* telleth us. In the end, the *Grecians* gave it the name of *Æthiopia*, from the *Greek* words *Alθw*, ſignifying to burn, and *ἴς* a Countenance; becauſe the violent Heats of the Sun had ſo ſcorched the Countenances of the Inhabitants. The Additions of *Sub Egypto*, *Superior* and *Inferior*, ſerve only to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Æthiopia*, which lyeth further off from *Egypt*, on the outſide of this. It is called alſo *Regnum Abyſſinorum*, from the *Abajeſi*, or *Abyſſini*, a People of *Arabia Felix*; who paſſed over the *Red Sea*, (not above ſeven Miles broad in the narroweſt place) came and ſetled here. And in the Scripture it is ſtiled by the name of *Ludim*, from *Lud* the

Son of *Mizraim*, who firſt planted it, as hath been proved by many ſtrong and concluded Arguments in our *General Preface*.

It is ſituate on both ſides of the *Equinoctial*, extending from the South Parallel of ſeven Degrees, where it meeteth with ſome part of the other *Æthiopia*, to the Northern end of the Iſle of *Meroe*, ſituate under the fifth Parallel on the North of that Circle. And though by this accompt it fall ſhort of the dimensions aſſigned by ſome, who extended it from one Tropick unto the other; yet is it of a very great length, no leſs than 1500 Miles; the breadth about half as much: the whole circumference amounting to 4300 Miles. Yet ſo, that all this vaſt Tract of Ground is not to be underſtood of that part of the Country which is under the Command of the *Abaffine* Emperour, commonly, but miſtakenly called *Prefter John*: but of the whole Country of *Æthiopia*, as before limited and extended, containing beſides his Eſtate, the Kingdom of *Adel* and *Adea*, and the Provinces of *Quiloa* and *Melindi*; which two laſt are now reckoned of as parts of *Æthiopia Inferior*. The Iſle of *Meroe* in the North

North is possessed by *Muhometans*, the most bitter Enemies of this King: all on the West of *Nilus*, betwixt it and the South-east of *Nubia*, inhabited by the *Anzichi*, an Idolatrous and Man-eating Nation, subject to a great Prince of their own: and all the Coasts of the *Red Sea*, as well within the *Streights* of *Babel Mandel*, as without, except the Port of *Erocco* only, enjoyed by *Arabians* and *Moors*, who do acknowledge no subjection unto his Commands, but are under the Kings of *Adel* and *Adex*, before-mentioned.

But taking in the largest signification and extent hereof (according unto which we must here describe it) it comprehenderth the three Countries called antiently *Æthiopia sub Egypto*, *Trogloditica*, and *Regio Cinnamomifera*. Of these, the two last are by some reckoned but as parts of the first; though certainly the *Troglodites* were a different Nation from the *Æthiopians*. For past all doubt the *Troglodites* were originally an *Arabian* People, so called *quia πώγας subeunt*, from their living in Caves and Dens, in which respect their part of this Country had the name of *Arabia Trogloditica*, in *Dioscorides*, and some others of Ancient Writers. Of these it is affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, that they were not the Masters of any Wealth, and their Speech was rather a gnashing of the Teeth, than any articulate and intelligible Pronunciation. *Nullarum opum Domini sunt Trogloditæ, strident magis quam loquuntur*. As for their Houses, they were (saith he) no better than Caves, and their Food than Serpents. With whom concurrerth *Pliny* also for their dwelling in Caves, and consequently for the reason of the name, saying positively *Trogloditæ speluncas excavant*, called for the same reason in the Holy Scripture, 2 *Chron.* 12. 3. by the name of *Succæi*, the word *Succoth* (whence that name derived) not only signifying in the *Hebrew*, Tents or Tabernacles, but Caves and Dens; and so Translated *Psal.* 10. v. 9. and *Job* 38. v. 40. As for that part hereof which was called *Regio Cinnamomifera*, taking up the Southern parts in the time of *Ptolemy*, it took that name from the abundance of Cinnamon, which was then growing in it; now not a Tree of it to be found in all this Country, as the *Portugals*, who have look'd narrowly for it, have affirm'd unto us Shipp'd at *Myslon*, a noted Emporie, placed by *Ptolemy* in the ninth degree of Northern Latitude; it was thence transported into *Egypt*, and other Countries, as is said by *Pliny*; *Portus Mofyritus quo Cinnamomus devehitur*: the Spice in some Authors being called *Mofulum*, by the name of the Town: *αἰεῖσεν δὲ τὸ λεγόμενον Μισυρίον, τὸ ἀπὸ Μισέων πλεῖον*. Of Cinnamon the best is that which is call'd *Mofulum*, because brought from the City of that name in *Æthiopia*, saith *Simæon Sethi* in his *Tract de Facultatibus Ciborum*. As for this *Cinnamon* (I note this only by the way) it is the inner Bark of a Tree as big as an Olive, with Leaves like Bay-leaves: the drying of which maketh it roll together, and every three Years is renewed, and stripped off again. Some think it came first from the *Sinæ*, or the Country which the *Romans* called *Sinarum Regio*, the Moderns *China*; and that it was so called, *quasi Sinæ Amomum*, the *Amomum* of the *Sinæ*: *Amomum* being the name of a sweet Perfume growing in *Affyria* and *Armenia*: But then it should be written *Cinamomum*, and not *Cinnamomum*; yet to give the greater credit to the former Opinion, they of *Ormus* called it *Bar-China*, or the Wood of *China*. But of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Æthiopia* it self; the People of it in old times were said to have been great Astrologers; the first Ordainers also of Sacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were also noted to be very good Archers, and to draw the longest and strongest Bows of any Nation: the *Persian* Bow (though those the greatest of all *Asia*) being only three Cubits long; but these of *Æthiopia* four. *Utuntur etiam Æthiopes quatuor Cubitorum arcibus*, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is said also by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*. Their Arrows small, but strong, for the most part poisoned; *Æthiopum geminata venenis vulnera*, as we find in *Claudian*; and for

that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to spend our time too much upon these particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two strange things of this Country: 1. That the Air and Ground are so parching hot, that the People not only dare not go out of doors without Shoes but that they roast their Meat also by setting it in the Sun. 2. That there is a Lake whose Waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding Salt and unpleasing, but at all other times most sweet and delicate to the Palate.

This Country being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy*, laid together, is but meanly populous, the disemperature of the Climate, and the dry barrenness of the ground, not admitting a multitude. For this cause *Afrack* is by *Strabo* compared to a Leopard's Skin, the distance of whose Spots sheweth the dispersedness of the Towns and Habitations in those torrid Countries. A Country scarce in Wheat, but sufficiently plentiful in Rice, Barley, Beans, Pease, and the like: they have abundance of Sugars, Minerals of all sorts, and infinite herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally there is no Country under Heaven fitter for increase of Plants, and living Creatures, if Industry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are destitute of many necessary things, which otherwise the natural Commodities of the Country would supply them with. For they have here great store of Flax, but make no Cloth; plenty of Vines, yet make no Wine, except it be to serve the Palaces of the King and Patriarch; abundance of Sugar-Canes, and Mines of Iron, but know not how to make use of either unto any advantage: Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig Channels or Trenches, to derive their Waters to the rest of the Land which want them, those Rivers almost clogged with Fish, their Woods crammed with Venison, which they trouble not themselves to catch.

By this we may conjecture somewhat of the People also; Lazy, and given unto their ease; ill clothed, and not much better housed; extremely inclined to Barbarism, destitute of all Learning; not to be credited unless they swear by the life of their Emperours; they hate a Smith equally with the Devil: their colour is generally Olive-tawny, excepting only their King himself, who is always of a white complexion; a wonderful Privilege, if true. This Blackness of their Bodies, by the Poet, attributed to the burning of the World by *Phæton*.

*Sanguine tum credunt in corpora summa venire,
Æthiopum populos nigrum transisse colorem.*

Which may be English'd thus,

Their Blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part,
The *Æthiopians* grew so black and swart.

But the true cause hereof, whatsoever it be, may perhaps be looked upon hereafter, when we come to *America*.

The *Christian* Faith was first made known in this Country by the Eunuch of Queen *Candace*, who was Baptized by *Philip* the Evangelist, and one of the Seven; more generally embraced by the Pains and Preaching of *S. Matthew* the Apostle heretofore, but not totally propagated over all this Empire, till the Reign of *Abraham*, Anno 470. who in his Life entituled himself the Defender and Propagator of the Religion of *CHRIST*, and after his Death was generally Honoured as a Saint. Suppressed in part by the coming in of the *Abissines* and other *Arabians*, it was again revived and more universally received than in former times, in the Reign of *Deion* King of the *Axumite Æthiopians*; who in a War against *Dumma* King of the *Homerites* in *Arabi Felix*, solemnly vowed to the God of the *Christians* to become one of his Followers, if he got the Victory; and so accordingly he did, sending his Ambassadors to the Emperor *Julianus*, for some Bishops and other learned Men to instruct his People. The particulars of those Opinions, whereunto they have since corrupted the Purity of the true Religion, I find thus Registered: 1. They use to Circumcise their

Children, both Males and Females. 2. They baptize the Males 40. and the Females 18 days after their *Circumcision*. 3. After the receipt of the Sacrament, they are not to spit till Sun-set. 4. They profess but *one Nature* and *one Will* in *CHRIST*. 5. They accept only the three first General Councils. 6. Their *Priests* live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg. 7. They baptize themselves every *Epiphany* day in *Lakes* and *Ponds*, because that day they suppose *Christ* to have been baptized by *John* in *Jordan*. 8. They eat not of those Beasts, which in the old Law are reckoned for *unclean*. 9. They keep the *Saturday* or *Jewish Sabbath*, equally solemn with the *Lords Day*. 10. They administer the *Eucharist* to Infants presently after Baptism. 11. They teach that the Reasonable Soul of Man is deriv'd from their Parents by *seminal Propagations*. 12. That Infants dying unbaptized, are sanctified in the womb, by virtue of the *Eucharist* received by the Mother after her *Conception*. And finally, they shew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they say, by the Apostles at *Jerusalem* for that purpose; the Contents whereof they observe most solemnly. These are the most material Points in which they differ from the Tendries of the *Catholique Church*: And there are other Points in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, viz. 1. Administring in both kinds. 2. Without either *Elevation*, or *Reservation*. 3. Rejecting massie Images; and 4. *Extreme Unction*. 5. Allowing the first marriages to their Priests and Bishops. And 6. In renouncing all relation to the Church of *Rome*; who to the business of these Churches is a very stranger, and so hath been from the very first foundation of them. For it appears by the Canons of the *Nicene Council*, extant in the *Arabick*, and translated into *Latine* by *Pisanus*, that the Patriarch (or *Abuna* as they called him) of these *Abassine Churches*, was in those times subordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacy by the Fathers, which there were assembled; and constantly ever since approved and practised by these Churches; in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembred before their own. To this Patriarch, by an ancient privilege belongeth the seventh place in the *Sessions* of all *General Councils*; the Archbishop of *Seleucia* (or *Babylon*) only interposing betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. Elected by the *Abassine Monks* of *S. Anthony's Order* remaining in *Jerusalem*, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, (of which Order, and of whose Jurisdiction he must always be) he is sent into this Country to take his Charge; where in some points of *Civil* nature, he hath equal Privilege with the Emperour himself; and in *Spiritual*, hath the sole Power of excommunicating an obstinate Sinner. All other *Ecclesiastical Dignities*, from the Bishoprick to the lowest Benefice, are conferred by the Emperour only.

The Principal Mountains of it, in the former time, had the names of 1. *Prinotus*, 2. *Isus*, 3. *Monodactylus*, 4. *Gaurus*, and 5. *Mons Satyrorum*; all of them in that part which was called *Trogloditica*: 6. *Garbale*, 7. *Elephas*, and 8. *Masse*; in the Isle of *Meroe*: the rest of the Country flat and level, or the hills not eminent. Rivers of most note, 1. *Astapus*, (now *Albanni*) arising out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barcena*. 2. *Astaborus*, now *Tacassie*; both falling into the River *Nilus*. 3. *Nilus*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*; whose Spring unprofitably sought for in the elder times, is now said to be out of the Lake *Zembre* in the other *Æthiopia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Æquator*; whence passing through spacious *Deserts*, large Lakes, and many great Kingdoms, he at last entrencheth into this. Here in some places struggling amongst broken Rocks, and less free passages, he falleth with such a wonderful noise into the Vallies beneath, that a Colony planted by the *Persians* near one of these *Cataracts*, (so they call those huge falls of his) were so dunned and deafened with the noise, that they were fain to abandon their Habitations. Nor doth it only dull and deafen the neighbouring People, but the very Hills do seem to

tremble at the noise it maketh. Of which thus the Poet.

*Caucta tremunt undis, & multo marmure montis,
Spumeus invictis albescit fluctibus amnis.*

Which may be Englished in these words;

*The noise the mountains shakes, who roar for spite,
To see th' unconquish'd Waves cloath'd all in white.*

Of the *Cataracts* here are two most noted: the one called *Cataractes Major*, in the borders of this Country towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Philæ*, and *Pselcis*, *Æthiopian Cities*; the other called *Cataractes Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syene* the last City of that Country towards this. So turbulent is this River amongst the Hills. And yet as terrible as these Falls are supposed to be, one may divers times see the Country people in a little Boat not able to contain above two persons, to venture down them without fear; appearing after they have been long tossed in the water, a great distance off, as if they had been shot out of an *Engine*. Nor is he of such quiet passage in the open Countreys, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are fain to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels, to receive his Waters; which if not curbed and lessened by such ways as these, might by some sudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in respect whereof the *Sultans* of *Egypt* have paid for a long time to the *Abassine Emperours* an annual Tribute: Which when the *Great Turk*, supposing it a needless charge, had once denyed; this people, by the command of their Emperour, did open their Sluces, and brake down the Dams: whereby the water fell so violently and so fast into *Egypt*, that the *Turk* was not only glad to continue Tribute, but to give them great Sums of Money to make up their Works. But others say, that this Acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptain Kings*, not so much for keeping up the Waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Abassine Emperours* should divert the Stream, and so deprive that Country of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are also said to be some *Lakes* of that poysonous nature, that whosoever drinketh of them doth either immediately fall mad, or else is troubled for long time with continual *drowsiness*, of which thus *Ovid*.

*Æthiopsque Lacus; quos si quis faucibus hausit,
Aut furit, aut patitur mirum gravitate soporem.*

Which may be paraphrased in these Words:

*Who doth not know the Æthiopian Lake?
Of which whoever drinks, his thirst to slake,
Either grows mad, or doth his soul oppress
With an unheard of drowsiness.*

To look upon the State as it stood in the former times we find in it besides the *Lakes* and *Rivers* before mentioned, three capacious Bays; that is to say, 1. *Sinus Adulcius*, 2. *Sinus Avalites*, and 3. *Sinus Barbaricus*; the two last neighboured by the now Countreys of *Adel* and *Melinde*. Havens of note and Rodes for shipping, there were five in all, viz. 1. *Buthus*, or the deep Haven; 2. *Dioscorum Portus*, or the Haven of *Castor* and *Pollux*; 3. *Theon Soterum*, or the Haven of the Saviour-Gods; 4. *Portus Evangeliorum*, *Gospel-Port*, or the Port of good News; and 5. *Serapionis*, the Port of *Serapion*, with a Promontory of the same near adjoining to it. For other Promontories which in so long a tract of Sea must needs be many; the Principal were, 1. *Bafium*, 2. *Alnemum*, 3. *Dimetis*, 4. *Appis*, 5. *Ara Ameris*, 6. *Colobon*, 7. the Promontory of *Satun*, 8. *Mosylon*, with a noted Empory of the same name; 9. *Aromata* near another well frequented Empory of the same name also; and 10. that of *Noticornu*. Then for

for the Towns of greatest Trading, besides those last mentioned, we have, 1. *Avalites*, 2. *Malao*, 3. *Mundi*, 4. *Cabe*, and 5. *Aceme* in the Bay of *Avalites*, 6. *Opone*, in the Bay of *Barbaria*, 7. *Esfra*, on the South of the *Equinoctial*. Then for their Cities, we have amongst many others, the names of 1. *Epitheria*, by *Ptolemy* called *Ptolemais Fenerum*, 2. *Adulis*; and 3. *Avalites*; giving names unto their several Bays. 4. *Ripta*, the Metropolis of that part of this Country which was called *Barbaria*, lying along the shores of the *Sinus Barbaricus*; which as it taketh name from the River *Riptus*, upon which it is situate, so they do both agree in communicating it to the Promontory called *Riptum*. 5. *Meroe*, the chief City of the Isle so called, 6. *Sabat*, in the Bay of *Adulis*, which possibly might be some Colony of the *Sabæans*, in *Arabia Felix*. 7. *Cela*, by *Pliny* called *Tolen*, not far from the great Lake so named. 8. *Cambusis*, by *Ptolemy*, called *Cambysis Aerarum*, from some Treasures laid up here by *Cambyses* the *Perſian*, in his invasion of this Country. 9. *Auxum*, the chief City of the *Auxumites*, a most potent people of these parts, and the Seat-Royal of the old *Æthiopian* Kings. 10. *Nipata*, as *Ptolemy*; but by most others called *Tinape*: of old the residence of the *Æthiopian* Emperours, sacked and ruined by *Petronius*, President of *Egypt*. For when *Candace* (the Predecessor, I believe, of her whose Eunuch was baptized by *Philip*) had ransacked and wasted *Egypt* with Fire and Sword; *Petronius*, Lieutenant to *Augustus*, drave them home, harrassed the whole Country, put this City to the spoil; and to prevent the like Inroads, fortified the Frontiers of his Province. 11. *Phile*, upon the borders of *Egypt*, Garrisoned, by the *Romans* till the time of *Dioclesian*, and by him abandoned. Of some of these, and others not here mentioned, we may have opportunity to speak more hereafter, in the survey of some of these particular Provinces, into which this Country stands divided at this present time.

And for the Provinces comprehended at this time within the bounds and limits of this *Æthiopia*, as before laid down, they are said to make up 70 Kingdoms; most of them subject to the *Abſſine* Emperour. The principal of which are, 1. *Gaugere*, 2. *Tigremoon*, 3. *Angete*, 4. *Anma*, 5. *Damut*, 6. *Goijami*, 7. *Bigamedrum*, 8. *Barnagassum*, 9. *Adel*, 10. *Adca*, 11. *Danfali*, 12. *Dobas*, 13. *Fatigar*, 14. *Xoa*, 15. *Barut*. Concerning which I must premise, that I find the Relations of them to be very imperfect, many times disagreeing, sometimes false: So that I must profess my self to be less satisfied in the description of this Country, than in any of the rest which have gone before. Such as it is, I here present it to the Reader.

I. GAUGERE.

GUAGERE containeth only the Island of *Meroe*, an Island of much note and fame among the Ancients; made by the confluences of *Nilus* and *Astaborus*, the two chief Rivers of this Country. The length hereof 350 miles, the breadth 125. abundantly plentiful of Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, Ivory, Precious Stones, and an excellent kind of Mineral Salt. Well stored with most sorts of Beasts, both tame and wild, and of the last sort with Lyons, Leopards, *Rhinoceros*, Elephants, and Dragons. All the latter Travellers, to a Man, are agreed, that the Nile makes no Island, in *Æthiopia*, or *Nubia*.

The people are of the same nature and complexion with the rest: *Mahometans* by Religion, and the professed Enemies of the *Abſſine* Emperour; against whom they do not only defend themselves, by the advantages and benefit of their situation, but confederating with the *Torks* and *Arabians*, fall many times with great Forces into his Dominions. It is said by *Pliny* of the Inhabitants of this Island, that twice a year, viz. when the Sun is in the 16 degree of *Taurus*, and the 14 of *Leo*, they have the Sun so perpendicular above their heads, that he casts no shadow. More anciently memorable for their long lives, than their great exploits, attaining ordinarily to

120 years of Age; and therefore called *Meroe* by the old Greek Writers. The Women said to be of such great breasts in the former times, that they did suckle their children over their shoulders (as some Women are now said to do near the Cape of good Hope) the Dug being bigger than the Child. Of which thus *Jacenal*.

In Meroe crassi majorum Infante mamillam.

In *Meroe* the Mothers Pap
Is bigger than the child in lap.

The Principal Cities hereof. 1. *Meroe*, which gave that name unto the Island, but took the same from *Meroe*, a sister of *Cambyses* King of *Perſia*; or as *Euphorus* saith, from *Merida*, the mother of *Chenephres*, a King of *Egypt*. *Josephus* telleth us, that in former times it had been called by the name of *Saba*; on authority of whose mistake it hath been made the Regal City of that Queen of *Saba* (the Queen of *Egypt*, and *Atiabopia*, as *Joseph* calleth her) who came to *Solomon*. An opinion so received amongst these Islanders, that the name of *Meroe* being laid by, they have restored the name of *Saba* to this City, as of greater eminence. The City said by some to contain about 5000 houses, great and sumptuous; the streets thereof to be large and spacious, with Galleries on each side before the doors of their houses, where Men walk safe from all extremities of heat, or rain. Beautified with four chief Gates, (besides other of inferior note) built of *Alabaſter* and *Fastper*, wrought with *Antick* works: the doors belonging to those Gates of *Cedar*, curiously wrought; the ways which lead unto them, for the space of two leagues, beset with Palms, Orange trees, Cedars, Cypresses, and others no less useful both for shade and Fruit. In the place where the four streets going from the Gates, do cross each other, a goodly Arch erected upon stately pillars, fairly wrought and gilded, with the Statue of St. *Mathew* made of brass, but gilded, on the top thereof. Such it is said to be by some. Others think there is no such City; it may be not so beautiful, as some have made it. The other Towns of note and name in it, in former times, 2. *Sabat*, 3. *Darorum Vicus*. 4. *Eſer*; of which we have little but the name.

This Island was once a peculiar Kingdom; he being chosen for their King, who excelled the rest in strength, person, or in stock of Cattel; but those Kings so subject to their Priests, that by a Messenger, or Herald, they were sentenced by them unto death, and others advanced unto the Throne. And thus it stood till one of the more provident Kings, forcing the Temple with his Armed Soldiers, slew all these Priests; and freed himself and his Successors from so great a *Straw*; afterwards made a Province of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*; honoured for the most part with the Seat of those Kings, and memorable in those times for the Table of the Sun; which was a place near the City of *Meroe*, always furnished with variety of roasted meat, set there by night at the charge and command of the King (much taken as it seemeth with this costly vanity) and eaten in the day time by all that would; called therefore the Table of the Sun, because ascribed unto his bounty by the ignorant people. In the declining of this Kingdom, occasioned by the Inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, this Island was seized on by that people, and hath been ever since kept by them; together with the rest of the Country, lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, in which are contained, as some write, the Kingdoms of *Damote*, *Sua*, and *ſaculuet*, anciently belonging to this Empire, now dismembered from it: not much observable, but for being a thorough fare to great Troops of Pilgrims, which every Year pass by them out of the *Abſſine* Dominions, to the Sepulchre and other like places in and near *Jerusalem*.

2. TIGREMAON.

TIGREMAON, hath on the North *Guagere* and the River *Atarab*, by which last parted from *Barnagasso*; on the South, the Realm of *Angote*; on the West, *Nilus*. On the East it is said to extend to the *Red Sea*, but the Sea-parts thereof possessed by the *Turks*, and the adjoining Coast by the *Alors* and *Arabians*; the In-Land parts promiscuously inhabited, especially more towards the Sea, by *Christians* and *Ethnicks*. Divided into many inferior Regions, the Principal whereof, 1. *Sabian*, 2. *Torates*, 3. *Balgada*, so called perhaps from the chief Towns of them; and 4. *Tigrai*, the most large and ample of all these subordinate Provinces; as containing in it 17 great Tracts under so many Lieutenants, which rule all Affairs both of Peace and War. The People black of colour, deformed of shape, in condition miserable, of principles wicked. Some Rivers they have, but dried up in Summer; yet so, that with a little digging they find Water in them. Their chief City *Caxumo*, or *Cassumo*, supposed to be the same which *Ptolemy* calleth *Auxume*; *Stephanus*, *Axomites*; *Procopius*, *Auxomide*; by all of them esteemed the Metropolitan City of *Æthiopia*, and the Seat-Royal of their Kings. In witness whereof are many ancient Buildings yet remaining, some Pillars which resemble the *Egyptian Obelisks*, admirable for their height and workmanship, 60 foot high, and full of Characters, or Letters engraven on them, which now none can read. The *Æthiopian Auxumites*, the most potent Nation of this Country, had their Name from hence; more probably conceived to be the Regal Seat of *Candace*, (mentioned in the *Acts*) than any other in the Kingdom; and still affirmed to be honoured with the Court of their Emperors. Others I know have fixed his Court in *Beimalechi*, but I know not in what part to find it: Some in a Royal Palace near the Lake of *Zembre*, built in the year 1570. by some *European Architects* sent hither by *Francis Duke of Florence*; and many will allow him no fixed Seat at all, but tell us that he moveth with his Tents in a Royal Progress from one Place to another; which *wandering Court*, or *moving City* is said to be no less than ten miles in compass, when the Pavilions which belong to it, are disposed of into Rank and Order.

This Kingdom is governed by a Prince of its own, but one who is an Homager and Tributary to the *Abassine Emperor*; to whom he payeth yearly 200 Horses of the best *Arabian* breed, infinite quantities of Silks, great store of Cotton-Wooll, and abundance of Gold; but the determinate proportion I have no where met with.

3. ANGOTE.

ANGOTE is bounded on the North with *Tigremason*, on the West with *Nilus*, on the South with the Kingdom of *Amara*, on the East with *Dancaly*, and *Xoa*. Indifferently compounded of Hills and Vallies, both extremely fertile, productive of the choicest Fruits, and great Herds of Cattel. This Kingdom or Province lies in the middle of *Æthiopia*, environed with steep and impassible Mountains, like an *Amphitheatre*, in which are kept all the Children of the Royal Family, till one of them is called to the Throne. The People eat but once in 24 hours, and for the most part make that Meal in the Night; their Diet raw Venison, or smoaked Beef: the Money most in use amongst them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which custom of using Salt, Pepper, and the like, instead of Money, was in former times amongst most People the only Bartery, or way of Exchange. So in *Homer*, *Glaucus's* Golden Armour was valued at an 100 Kine, and *Diomedes's* Armour at 10 only. Afterward in Justice *Commulative*, it was deemed convenient to have some common Measure or Standard, or valuation of the Equality or Inequality of Goods; the Invention of which, the *Jews* attributed to *Cain*; the *Græcians* to *Hermodice*

the Wife of *Midas*; the *Romans* to *Janus*. It is called *Nummus*, or *νῦμμος* from *νῦμμεν*, because it was ordained by the Law: *Pecunia*, either because in elder times the chief of their Wealth consisted in Cattel, as now among the *Irish*; or from a *Cow* (*Pecus*) which was stamped on it: and *Moneta*, à *Monendo*, as *Suidas* saith, because when the *Romans* stood in need of Money, *Juno moneta*, *Juno* admonished them, that they should use Justice, and there should be no want of Money. To this Goddess, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worshipped it in the Figure of a Woman, holding a Pair of Scales in one hand, and *Cornucopia* in the other; by the Poet called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unfitly, the greatness of her Power considered.

But to return again to *Angote*, I find not much spoken of the Country in the way of Story; nor meet I with the Names of any of their Towns, or Cities; unless that 1. *Angote* it self; as also 2. *Abugana*, 3. *Giannamora*, two of the principal Provinces of it, may possibly be so called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

4. AMARA.

AMARA hath on the North, *Angote*; on the South, *Damua*; on the West it stretcheth towards the *Nile*; and on the East, bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Country very Plain and Champaign, little swelled with Hills, sufficiently fruitful, and well stored with all sorts of Cattle. The chief City of it called *Amara*, by the name of the Province, situate in the midst of the Empire, and though not much distant from the *Æquator*, if not plainly under it, yet, blessed with such a temperate Air, such a fruitful Soil, such ravishing pleasures of all sorts, that some have taken (but mistaken) it for the Place of *Paradise*: So strangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and Humane Industry have joined their helps together to enrich and beautifie it.

But that which is the greatest Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Amara*, situate in a large and delightful Plain: the bottom of the Hill in Circuit 90 miles, and a days journey high; the Rock so smooth and even (but lesser and lesser towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly polished; the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the Light; so easie of ascent, that one may ride up with great pleasure; and in the midst of the Ascent a spacious Hall, as it were to rest in: the top it self is a large Plain 20 Leagues in circuit, compassed with an high Wall, to the end that neither Man nor Beast fall down upon any chance; beautified towards the South with a rising Hill, out of which issueth a sweet Spring, which watering the several Palaces and Gardens of it, uniteth it self into a Lake for the use of Cattle: the Plain enriched with all sorts, both of Fruit and Grain; adorned with two magnificent Monasteries, in each of which are found 1500 Knights of the Order of *St. Anthony*, a Religious Militia; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger Sons of the Emperor are continually inclosed, to avoid Sedition. They enjoy there whatsoever is fit for delight, or Princely Education; and from hence some one of them, who is most hopeful, or best liked, is again brought out, if the Emperor die Son-less, to be made Successor. This Mountain hath but one Ascent up, as before was said, which is impregnablely fortified; and was destinate to this use, *Anno* 460. or thereabouts, by the Emperor *Abraham Philip*, advised hereunto, as he gave out, by an Heavenly Vision. In one of these Palaces is a famous Library, wherein are said to be many Books, which with us are either in part or totally lost; as the Oracles of *Enoch*, with the Mysteries which escaped the Flood, being by him engraven on Pillars; the whole Works of *Livy*, and others. Which being heretofore translated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabick* Tongue (when having plundered all the most famous Libraries of the East and West, they

they burnt the Originals, out of a Plot to make that Language as unknown, and as generally Studied, 'as the Greek or Latin) are said by some good fortune to be here preserved.

5. *DAMUT.*

D*AMUT* hath on the North, *Amara*; on the West, *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Goiamy*; and on the East, the great Lake of *Burcena*, and some part of *Zanguebar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Exterior*. The Country plentifully furnished with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits, and living Creatures of all sorts. For none more famed than for their Slaves, sold in great numbers into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Persia*, *India*; and much esteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in War, dexterity in Business, but especially for their Fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this Cause placed in Offices of great Trust and Power, by many of the *Eastern* Princes; who using a Tyrannical form of Government, and not daring to trust the Sword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto Places of Court, or Council, do for the most part arm these Slaves, and trust them also with the Conduct of their chief Affairs. A Trust, in which they never falsified, or failed in a true Discharge, but when presumpting on their Power, and those Advantages which so great a Trust and Power had presented to them, they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Bengala*, and kept it many years in a Succession of the *Abassine* Slaves, wherewith they still made up their numbers, till oured not long since by the Great Mogul.

The Oxen of this Country are said to be near as great as Elephants; their Horns so large, that they serve as Tankards to carry, and as Barrels to keep either Wine or Water. Here is also said to be a kind of *Unicorn*, very fierce and wild, fashioned like an Horse, but no bigger than an Ass; but we must think these *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinoceros*, or else we shall very much mistake the truth of the Matter. And for the People (to go them both over once again) they are for the most part, *Gentiles*; some *Christians* intermixt amongst them, who have sundry Monasteries.

To this Kingdom belongeth the Principality of *Couche*, said to have more Gold in it than all *Peru*; a Mountain all of Gold, if the Fryars say true. The People *Gentiles*, but the Prince not long since gained to the Christian Faith; into which he was Baptized by the Abbot, or chief Governour of the Monasteries, on the Hill *Amara*; *Gradets* the Emperor being his Godfather, by whom named *Andrew*. And here they have an Hill of great height, and very difficult ascent; from the top whereof they use to cast headlong such of the Nobility, as by the Emperor's Sentence are condemned to die. What Towns they have either in that Kingdom, or their Principality, I am not able to resolve, unless, 1. *Damut*, and 2. *Couche* may be two, and the two most Eminent, as giving name to those Estates.

6. *GOIAMT.*

G*OIAMT* hath on the North, *Damut*; on the West, *Bagamedrum*; on the South and East, some Provinces of the other *Æthiopia*. The Country in the North parts full of Deserts and Rocky Mountains, in the residue plentifully furnished with all things necessary. Great store of Gold they find, but drossly; the People not knowing how to refine and purifie it; or loath here (as in other places of this Empire) to take pains that way, for fear of drawing the *Turks* and *Arabians* to partake of the Booty.

It containeth in it many Rivers, or rather Torrents, which come tumbling down the Hills with a mighty violence, and a terrible fall, making a noise, not much inferior to a Clap of Thunder: And amongst other Lakes, two of special Note, which for their greatnels seem to be

Seas; in which, as some report, *Men* and *Beasts*, or *Men* themselves, use to throw themselves: and out of which it is thought by others, that the Fountains of *Nile* do arise, and both true alike. But past all doubt the *Æthiops* themselves are of this opinion, and therefore in the Title of *Negaz*, (so they call their Emperor) he is termed King of *Goiomy*, with this Addition, *In which are found the Fountains of Nile*. Deceived alike in their Opinion touching this Particular, the Springs or Fountains of that River being further South: though possibly having lost himself in these vast Lakes, and issuing hence into a more contracted Channel, he may be said to have a second Birth from hence, though not the first. And these I take to be the Lakes which were discovered by the *Romans* in the time of *Nero*. Who following the design of some other great Potentates, *Sisostus*, *Cambyses*, *Alexander*, and *Philadelphus*, in discovering the true Original of this famous River, employed the *Centurions* in that Service; who aided in it by the then King of the *Æthiops*, are said to have come at last unto certain great Marishes (most probably the lower and fedy parts of these Lakes now mentioned) of whose extent the Inhabitants themselves were ignorant, not possible to be discovered any further, the Weeds having so overgrown the Water, that there was no further passage to be made by Boat, and less by Wading. This Kingdom is surrounded on all sides by the *Nile*, which riseth in the Western part, and passing through that vast Lake called *Demba* or *Tzana*, runs round this whole Kingdom; yet the North parts in which are the Fountains of the *Nile*, are barren and desolate, full of Mountains; the rest is wonderful Fruitful and has great plenty of Gold. *Pory.*

Betwixt this Country and *Damut*, which we last passed through, is said to be a Province of *Amazons*, warlike and fierce, and very expert at the Bow; whose Queen knoweth no Man, and by the rest honoured as a Goddess. These they say, were first instituted by the Queen of *Saba*; as true, as that which some have added of the *Phoenix* visible in this Country; of *Griffens*, and of Fowls so big, that they make a shadow like a Cloud. Which strange reports I have here added, to supply the defect of Towns and Cities, of which I meet not with so much as the naked names; as undiscovered Places in our Maps and Charts, are filled up with Monsters.

7. *BAGAMEDRUM.*

B*AGAMEDRUM*, or *SAGAMEDRUM*, (for I find both names) lieth on the West of *Goiamy*, betwixt the Northern parts thereof, and the River *Nile*; and keeping all along the Course of that River, as far as *Guagere*, or *Meroe*, encountreth with the Southern Point of *Bannagasso*; some do extend it also beyond that Island, but making the whole length thereof but 600 miles, do confute themselves. The greatest Province of this Empire it may probably be, *Cæteris hujus Æthiopiæ amplissimum*, as they say it is; but if extended the whole length of it, it must be 1500 miles, not 600 only.

The Country plentiful in Mines of the purest Silver, which they cannot draw thence but by Fire, which makes it run like long rods, or ropes of Metal. And yet as large and as wealthy as they say it is, I am more to seek for Towns and rich Cities in it, than in the Deserts of *Libya*, or the Sands of *Arabia*. Merchants and Travellers for the most part go no further than the Sea-coasts of the Country, of which they give us more exact and full informations, knowing but little of the In-Lands; and of the Natives, such as have travelled abroad in other Kingdoms, rude and ignorant Men, know little more of their own Empire than the Place they lived in: Or probably their best Cities not containing above 2000 houses, few of them so many, and those patched up of Thatch, Dirt and Hurdles, (unless some of the Nobility or Wealthier Merchants are provided better) they may have no greater Reason to speak much of them; or to acquaint

us with the names of such sorry Places, as are indeed not worth the naming. Which I conceive to be the true condition of most, or all the Inland Towns in this large Estate.

8. BARNAGASSO.

BARNAGNES, or BARNAGASSUM. Hath on the West, *Guagere*, or the Ile of *Mroe*; on the South-west, as some say, a Point of *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Dangali* and *Adel*; on the East, the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*; on the North it stretcheth towards *Egypt*; the Kingdoms of *Jasculum* and *Sua*, possessed by the *Mahometans*, being interposed. This is the most Northern Province of *Abassinia*; it is bounded on the South by the Kingdom of *Dangala* and *Tigre*; on the West by the *Nile*, which separates it from *Nubia*; on the North by *Balour*; and on the East by the *Red Sea*, upon which it hath the Port of *Erocco* or *Arkiko*, which is now in the *Turks* hands. This was the best known part of that Kingdom, by reason it lay upon the *Red Sea*, and much frequented by the *Portuguese* in the last Century. *Bar*, in their Tongue is the Sea, and *Naguz*, a King or Kingdom, as this the only Province of that Empire that lies upon the Ocean. *Pory*. The *Turks* first invaded this Province in the year 1558. and forced the Governor to pay 1000 Ounces of Gold for his Peace every Year.

The Country very fertile, full of Towns and Villages, and exceedingly well stored with pleasant Rivulets, besides the Neighbourhood of the *Red-Sea*, on the one side *Nile*, and *Abanki* on the other. Remarkable for a Mountain in the Western part of it, which being spacious in the beginning, growing strait by little and little, and then enlargeth it self again to a League in Circuit. On the top thereof a Royal Palace, a Church, a Monastery, and two very large Cisterns, with a piece of Ground able to entertain and keep 500 Men. To be ascended one way only, and that but to a certain Mark; to which being come, they are drawn up with Cords and Baskets to the top of all; not to be took by Force, by reason of the Impossibility of Ascent; not by long Siege, or any extremity of Famine, in regard it yields Provision enough to maintain it self. Accounted therefore the chief Hold of all this Province against *Turks* and *Moors*.

It containeth besides *Barnagasso* it self, the two Provinces of *Casfila* and *Dasila*; though rather subject to the Governor or Vice-Roy of it, than Parts and Numbers of the same. Towns of most moment in the whole, 1. *Beroa*, or *Barua*, conceived by some to be the Colony of *Ptolemy*, the Residence of the Vice-Roy, situate on a pleasant River, stor'd with Fish. 2. *Zameta*, honoured sometimes also with the Vice-Roy's presence; but rather as a retiring Place in times of leisure, than a Town of strength. 3. *Suachen*, situate in an Island of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, one of the richest Cities of the Eastern parts, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, secured by Nature from all Storms, of smooth Tides, sure Anchorage, and able to receive 300 great Ships of Burden. Situate in a little Island, the whole Circumference whereof it taketh up; insomuch, that Vessels of all sorts, both within the Haven, and without, do usually unlade themselves at the doors of the Merchants, to which the Ship-Beaks serve for Bridges. A wealthy and well-traded Town, both by Sea and Land, to which from the more In-Land parts of the *Abassine* Empire, the Mountains open a safe Passage for the carriage and recarriage of their Commodities. Taken by the *Turks* long since, with all the rest of the Country lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, and made the Seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, or *Bassa*; whom in imitation of the *Romans*, they call the *Beglerbeg* of *Abassia*; as if by the Possession of this small part of the Empire, they would entitle the Grand Signior unto all the rest. It is now the princi-

pal Port in the *Red Sea*, and the *Bassa* with 3000 Soldiers resides in it, and Governs those Provinces they have conquered upon the *Abassinians*. *Pory*, p. 16. The Town conceived by some to be that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Omar Sebastum*, or rather *Sebastum*, as called by *Strabo*. Others will have it to be the *Ptolemais Perarum*, or the *Epibotus*, as *Pliny* calleth it, of the ancient Writers. And some again will have it to be the *Sucke* of *Pliny*, by whom reckoned among the Cities of the *Troglodites* (who are all called *Suckei* in the Scriptures, as before was noted) in whose part of the Country it is seated, and to which name it hath some resemblance. 4. *Bisam*, not far from *Erocco*, remarkable for a Monastery situate on the top of an high Rock, environed with dreadful Precipices upon every side; in which live 3000 Monks, eating by three and three together, in a common Refectory: this being the Chief of six others in the Province of *Barnagasso*, the farthest not above 30 miles distant. For maintenance of whom, and a great number of poor Children which they daily feed, besides the Tythes of all the Mountain in which it standeth (fruitful and rich, and at least 30 miles in compass) they have many good Farms at the Foot of the said Mountain, and an hundred small Villages appertaining to them, out of which they raise yearly great provision of Corn, and above 2000 head of Cattel, their Revenues out of *Tigrematon* being reckoned in. A Revenue able to maintain them and their Hospitality, in regard their Novices or young Monks are sent abroad to earn their Living, or to manure their Lands, and attend the Husbandry of the House: the Elder only being found at the charge of the Monastery, though all alike bound to the performance of Religious Offices. 5. *Erocco*, another noted Port on the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, to which a Passage openeth through the Streights of the Mountains, as it doth to *Suachen*, conceived to be the *Adulis* of *Ptolemy*, the *Aduliton* of *Pliny*, now in possession of the *Turks*, or at their command. From *Suachen* to this Place all along the Coast, is one Wood of Shrubby-Trees of small value. 6. *Santa*. 7. *Giabel*. 8. *Laccari*. And 9. *Abarach*; these four last in the Province of *Dasila*.

This Country at the present, and for long time past, is subject both to the Great *Neguz*, or the *Prestigian* of *Æthiopia*, and the Grand Signior of the *Turks*; naturally Subject to the one, and Tributary to the other. Governed by a King of their own, whom they call *Barnagassus*, by the name of his Province; a Vassal and an Homager to the *Æthiopian*; to whom he payeth the yearly Tribute of 150 of the best breed of Horses, besides some quantities of Silk, and some other Commodities: but so ill-neighbour'd by the *Turks*, that he is fain to pay also to the *Beglerbeg* or *Bassa* resident at *Suachen*, 1000 Ounces of Gold yearly for a Composition. For the *Turks* having by the Conquest of *Egypt* made themselves Masters of those Countries towards *Æthiopia*, which formerly were allied to, or confederate with the *Mamuluck* Sultans; within short time (*viz.* An. 1558.) possessed themselves also of the Town of *Suachen*, and the Parts adjoining; made it the Residence of one of their *Beglerbegs* or *Bassas*, and gave him the Title of *Beglerbeg* of *Abassia*, as before was said: forgot by the industrious Collector of the *Turkish History*, in his Enumeration of the *Beglerbegs* or *Bassas* of *Africk*. To this they added not long after, all the rest of the Sea-Coasts, and the Port of *Erocco*; and not content therewith, after some short breathing made a farther Inroad; in which they did so waste the Country, that in the end they compelled the *Barnagassian* (not being aided by the *Neguz*) to this Composition.

9. DANGALI, and 10. DOBAZ.

South and South-East of *Bannagasse*, lie the two Kingdoms of *DANGALI* and *DOBAS*; that of *Dangali* bordering on the *Red Sea*, the other more within the Land: both of them held by the *Mahometans*, or *Arabian Moors*, both in continual Enmity with the *Abysine* Emperours, and both of like nature, in regard of the Soil and People.

DANGALI hath on the North, *Bannagasse*; on the South, some part of the Kingdom of *Ahl*; on the East, the *Red Sea*, or *Gulf of Arabia*; on the West, *Dobas* before-mentioned. It taketh up some part of the *Arabick Bay*, within the Straits of *Babel Mandel*; and without those Straits, the greatest part of that spacious Bay, which anciently was called *Sinus Arabicus*, as far as to the Promontory then called *Mosylon*, (neighbouring by a noted Empory of the same name) now the Cape of *Docomo*; near unto which the Sea makes a little Gulf; and suddenly straitneth it self again; so as the Channel cannot be above ten or twelve Leagues broad. And in this Channel are five or six Islands, which hinder the passage; so as Sailers must have good experience to avoid the Rocks which lie near those Islands.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Rebal* or *Babel*, which gives name to the Straits of *Babel Mandel*, a narrow *Frith*, opening out of the Bay of *Arabia* into the *Æthiopian* or *Indian Ocean*. 2. *Mosylon*, a well frequented Port, conceived to be the same which *Strabo* calleth *Antiphila*; not found by that name in *Ptolemy*. 3. *Zaguan*; and 4. *Zana*, in a Province of this Kingdom called *Lacca*. 5. *Docomo*, near the Cape so called, and therefore probably the *Mosylon* of the ancient Writers. 6. *Dangali*, not far from the Sea side, which gives name to the Kingdom. The City of *Dangali* is seated on the Western Bank of the *Nile*, between *Cusa* to the South and *Golba* to the North, five days journey from the latter; *Nub. p. 17*. It consists also of 1000 Houses, as *Aleves* a *Spartan* reports, who travell'd *Nubia* in these latter times. *Leo Africanus, p. 295*. confirms this Report of *Aleves*, as to the number of Houses, and adds, that they are built with Chalk, and covered with Thatch: The Townsmen are Rich, and a Civil People, and drive a great Trade with *Grand Cairo* in *Egypt*: all the rest of their Towns are Villages and Hamlets. Thus far *Leo*, who wrote about the year 1526. Nothing else memorable of this Kingdom, but that there are in it two great Lakes, wherein live *Crocodiles*, as in *Nilus*.

On the South-west of *Dangali* lieth the Realm of *DOBAS*, extended on the West to the borders of *Angote*. The Country large, containing Twelve, or as some say, Twenty four several Prefectures. Of so good Pasturage, that the Kine hereof are of greater size than in any other places, and those for number not easily matched in all this Empire. The People such professed Enemies of the *Christian* Faith, that they suffer not any Man to Marry, till he hath killed Twelve *Christians*. Some reckon them for Tributaries to the *Prete*, or *Negus*; but it is only when they list; so far from being Contributioners towards the support of his Estate, that they take from him what they can. The chief of their Towns, 1. *Dobas*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom. 2. *Bally*, upon the same River on which *Dobas* standeth, but more near the head.

11. ADEL.

A*DEL* is bounded on the North with some parts of *Dangali* and the *Red Sea*; on the South, with *Adeas* on the East, with the *Red Sea*, and the *Indian* or *Arabian Ocean*; on the West, with *Patiga*: extended on the Sea Coast from the Cape of *Docomo*, to the Cape of *Guardafu*; conceived most probably to be the *Acomata* of *Ptolemy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

The Country plentiful of Fish, Honey, Wax, Corn, Gold, and Ivory; great flocks of Sheep, and many of those Sheep of such burdensome Pieces, that their Tails weigh 25 pounds. Some Kine they have, which have Horns like a Stag: others but one Horn only, and that in the Forehead, about a Foot and an half long, but bending backwards. The People inhabiting on the Sea coasts are of *Arabian* Parentage, and of the *Mahometan* Religion: those towards the Inland Countries, of the old *Æthiopic* Race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Zeila*, a noted Port-Town, situate in or near the place where *Ptolemy* placeth *Acomata*: stored with variety of Merchandice, and vinding some representation of Antiquity in the building thereof, being Lime and Stone; Materials not much used amongst them in these latter times. Of great Beauty and Eileem, till they ear 1516. when sacked and burnt by the *Portugals*; before that time the most noted Empory of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian Trade*. This City in the time of the *Nubian* Geographer (the 12th Century) was called *Zabgha*, and was the principal Port of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*, but then a small Place, yet very Populous; most of the Ships that sailed on the *Red Sea*, and Traded with that Kingdom unacing at this Port, *Nub. p. 20*. 2. *Ezbara*, situated on the same sea coast, well frequented by *Negus*; and possibly may be the *Mund* or *Mialuo* of *Ptolemy*, neighboured by a lofty Promontory, which they call *Mount Felles*. 3. *Mette*, another of the sea-Towns near the Cape of *Guardafu*, supposed to be the *Acane* of the Ancient Writers. 4. *Zim*. 5. *Silva*. and 6. *Bidar*, on the Sea-coasts also. 7. *Ahm*, the Principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 38 Leagues from *Zeila*.

This Country, formerly a member of the *Æthiopian* Empire, is of late grown to so great strength and reputation, that the Kings hereof have freed themselves from all signs of Subjection to that Crown, and think then selves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power by *Gradegma*, or *Gradameth*, who Reigned here in the year 1540. by whom *Claudius* the *Negus* was so overlaid, and his Country so destroyed by continual Incursions, that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himself into the heart of his Estates, and crave aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their assistance, and the help of their Shot, he was twice victorious, yet in the third Battel he was vanquished, and in the fourth, anno 1559. slain upon the place. This King, accounted for a Saint by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual Wars against the *Christians*, did so establish the Affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it so well settled unto his Successors, that the *Abysine* Emperor hath ever since left it out of his Titles; though many other of those small Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial* Scile, in which he hath as little Power as he hath in this. It is said also, That in the Battel wherein *Claudius* was slain, and his Army routed, consisting of 60000 Foot, 5000 Horse of his own Subjects, besides the *Portugals*, the King of *Ahl* got into his possession the greatest mass of Coin and Treasure that was ever seen. A Victory obtained as well by Policy as Force: the *Abissines* being seldom fought with, or their Country wasted and depopulated by the Kings of *Ahl*, till by the strict observance of their *Lenten Fast*, they were grown so weak, that they were not able to discharge their domestick business, and therefore most unable to resist a prevailing Enemy. In the 12th Century, the *Nubian* Geographer found this Kingdom subject to the King of *Æthiopia*, but possess'd by *Pagans*, whose whole Religion consisted in erecting Pillars of Stone, and anointing them with the Fat of Fishes, and then worshipping them. *Nub. p. 27*. The *Arabians* came in after this time, and sending what People they took in their Wars into *Arabia* to be sold for Slaves, obtained great Supplies from thence to carry on the War; the *Portuguese* for a time supported; them but after their return, the King of *Æthiopia* was beaten, as is above related.

12. ADEA.

12. ADEA.

ADEA, or ADEX as some call it, hath on the North the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the South, and West, some parts of the *Abassine* Empire; on the East, the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafu*, where it joineth with *Adel*, along the greatest part of the Bay, called of old *Sinus Barbaricus*; of the reason of which name, hereafter.

The Country plentifully fertile, shaded with Woods and spacious Forests, and those Woods liberally furnished both with Fruits and Cattle; the Champion Country not less fruitful in Wheat, Barley, and other necessities, besides a great store of Horses. The People of an Olive colour, in some places more inclined to black: not clothed, but from the Girdle downward: nor very well armed in the time of War, but with poisoned Arrows; *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original Extraction, whose Language they retain with some little difference in pronunciation.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Adia*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, because of the old Residence of Kings. 2. *Casur*, upon the Sea-Coast, sometimes called *Opone*, then a noted Empory, and situate near the Promontory called *Zingis extrema*. 3. *Azum*. and 4. *Zazelle*, supposed to be the *Ejina* and *Tonica* of the Ancient Writers. 5. *Magadazo*, a petit Kingdom of it self; a wealthy and well Traded Town, situate in a fruitful and delightful Soil, and Neighbourhood by a safe and capacious Haven: much Traded by the *Portugals*, who bring from *Adre* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambaja* in *India*, their Spices, Silks, and other *Indian* Commodities; which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abassine* Slaves, which last they value as the chiefest Merchandise which this Country yieldeth. First built by some *Arabian Moors*, who flying from the King of *Laza* their Mortal Enemy, under the Conduct of seven Brethren, came into these parts, where they founded this City, and that of *Brava* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was said; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-Coasts of both *Æthiopia's*, as far as to the Cape *Des Corrintes*, which is somewhat to the South of the Tropic of *Capricorn*. The Kings hereof in former times Vassals to the *Abassine* Emperour, to whom they paid a yearly Tribute; this Kingdom still remaining amongst his Titles: but since the taking of *Magadazo*, made so obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*, that the Estate of the *Abassine* in it is but meerly titular. In former times this was the Capital of the *Arabian* Colonies yet was taken by the *Portuguese*. It is Strong, Rich, and Populous, and is not mentioned by the *Nubian* Geographer, who speaks of *Melinda*. *Pory*.

13. FATIGAR, and 14. XOA.

FATIGAR hath on the East *Adel*, and some part of *Adia*; on the West, the little Realm of *Xoa*; on the South, *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Country *Champagne*, sufficiently fruitful of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furnished with pleasant and delicious Fruits. Most memorable for a Lake of twelve miles in compass, on the top of a Mountain, well stored with Fish: from whence, and from the rest of the Mountain, issue many Rivers, which much enrich the Vallies and Fields adjoining. The chief Town hereof (if any one be better than another) I conceive to be a *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or so called from it.

Westward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of *XOA*, bordering West on *Amara*: Southward upon *Damur*; furnished with great store of Corn and Cattel, but not much beautified with Towns of any consideration. No-

thing observable in the History or description of it, but that together with *Fatigar*, and others of the Mid-land Provinces, it hath continued constant in obedience to the *Abassine* Emperours, notwithstanding all those Misadventures which have happened to that Empire in these latter days. Mr. *Pory* bordereth it on the West with *Ambara*, but on that side it hath *Gatame*; on the North *Walaka*; on the East, *Fatigar* and *Galla*; and the last and best Map is called *Sloa*. It consisteth in Mountains and deep Val-
lies.

15. BARUS.

ON the South East of *Adia*, lieth the Province of *BARUS*, extended Eastward to some part of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and touching at the Western Point upon that of *Fatigar*. The Soil and People much of the same condition with the rest of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Christians* for the generality in the Mid-land parts. Those *Christians* subject (as the rest) to the *Abassine* Emperour; but he hath neither place of strength or consideration in all the Country; those of most note, 1. *Brava*, once a free Town and governed after the manner of a Common-wealth, by Twelve Aldermen or Common-Counsellors, descended from the seven *Arabian* Brethren, by whom first built; the Founders of *Magadazo* also, as before was said. But now, together with 2. *Pate*. and 3. *Gugia*, all upon the Sea, made subject to the *Portugals*; by whom taken, under the Conduct of *Tristram de Cugua*.

Besides these, there are many other Kingdoms mustered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the swelling vanity whereof, we shall see anon) but of so little observation in the course of business, and so obscure in the esteem of such as have spoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to find their names; and having found their names, to bid you not to seek for more; there being nothing else in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the Body aggregated of those several Members, it was first planted, as is noted and proved elsewhere, by *Ludim* the Son of *Mizraim*, and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture hath the name of *Ludim*. A Nation not much taken notice of in the first Ages of time, but by an Error of *Josephus*: who giving too much credit to some *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the Reputation of the *Jews* to the highest pitch, telleth us a Story, how the *Æthiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, how they were beaten back by *Moses*; the City of *Meroe* besieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his hands by *Tharbus*, the Daughter of the King, who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the City was married unto him. All this not only questioned but rejected by discerning Men, as a *Jewish* Fable, that hath no Ground to stand upon in true Antiquity. With little better Fortune, and as little Truth, do the *Æthiopians* tell the Story of their own Original. By whom we are informed, that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, first reigned in this *Æthiopia*; to whom succeeded his Son *Regma*, and next after *Dedan*; that from the Death of *Dedan*, till the Reign of *Aruch* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the People lived in Caves and Holes digged under the Ground; as did the *Troglodytes*, an ancient Nation of this Country, in the times long after: That *Arac* first built the City of *Aruma*, and by that Pattern taught them the use of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend, is the Story of *Maqueda*, a Queen hereof, and fourth from *Aruch*; whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Testaments, for the Royal Visit which she bestowed upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with Child by *Solomon* when she was in the Court, she was delivered of a Son, whom she caused to be called *Melech*, or *Melilech*; and at the age of 20 years to be sent to his Father: By whom instructed in the Law, and circumcised, and called by the name of *David*; he was returned into his Country, with
Azarius

Azarias, the Son of *Zadok* the Priest, who had stolen the two Tables of the Law, and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen resigned the Empire to her Son. His Successors afterwards called *David*, till *Indion* (as they call him) the Eunuch of Queen *Candace*, returning home, baptized the young Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the substance of the Legend, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Gospel.) That *Chus* planted in *Arabia*, hath been shewn already, as also what absurdities must needs arise from supposing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore most probable it is, that this Country was first peopled by the Children of *Ludim*, as before was said. To whom the *Abassines* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added; and in some tract of time be of such great power as to put their name upon the Country. For that the *Abassines* were originally an *Arabian* people, appears by *Stephanus*, one of the old *Chorographers*, who out of *Uranus* (an ancienter Author than himself) hath told us this, Ἀβασσινὸν ἔθνος Ἀραβίας. Another *Stephanus*, and he a very learned Grammarian and Lexicographer, hath, as he thinks decided the Controversie, by making *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Shiba* the Son of *Regma*, the Father of the *Æthiopians*: and for this cause hath fitted us with this pretty Criticism, that *Sheba* when it is written with *Samech*, must be rendered *Æthiopia*; and *Arabia*, when writ with *Shin*. But this by no means will be found to agree the controversie; it being evidently clear that both *Sheba* the Son of *Chus* and *Shiba* the Son of *Regma*, were originally settled in *Arabia*, as hath here been shewn; though I deny not, but that some of the posterity of *Chus* in those elder times, (before the coming over of the *Abassine* Nations) might either out of too much Populosity, or desire of Change, cross over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up such part of this Country as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled: with whom conjunct at last, both in name and government. And for *Maqueda* (supposing that to be her name) she was doubtless Queen of the *Sabæans* in *Arabia Felix*, not of the *Æthiopians* in the Waste of *Africa*: For besides the longsomeness of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel; it is very probable, that the Son of *Solomon* by this Lady, would never have suffer'd *Egypt* to have lain in quiet, whilst *Sesac* the King thereof made war upon *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon* also, and so by consequence his half Brother. But to leave these uncertain Fables, the first action of moment which we meet with in unquestioned Story, touching those *Æthiopians*, is that which hap'n'd betwixt them and *Cambyses* the *Persian* Monarch; who having by force of Arms united *Egypt* to *Persia*, conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Æthiopia* unto *Egypt* also. Upon this Resolution he sent Embassadors to that King to search into the Passages of his Country, and discover his strengths; and by them sent a Tun of Wine, some Bracelets, a Purple Habit, and a Box of sweet Ointments to present him with. Which Presents being tendered to him, he looked upon the Unguents and the Purple Robe, as too slight and effeminate: the Bracelets he conceived to be Bonds or Fetters, and openly laugh'd at them, as too weak to hold in a Prisoner: but with the Wine he was very well pleased, and sorrowed that his Country yielded no such Liquor. But understanding well enough what his Visit aimed at, he gave the Embassadors at their parting (amongst other Gifts) an *Æthiopian* Bow of great length and strength; requiring them to tell their Master, That until every *Persian* could bend that Bow (the *Æthiopian* Bows being a foot longer than the *Persian*, as before was noted) it would be no safe warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cause to thank the Gods for giving the *Æthiopians* so contented minds, as not to think of conquering their Neighbours Kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from *Egypt* by vast Mountains, we find them not looked after by the *Macedonians*. Nor had the *Romans* meddled with them, had they not been provoked by *Candace*, the Queen

hereof, during the Empire of *Augustus*: who having made a War on *Egypt*, was by *Petronius*, Governor of that Province, brought to such conformity, that she was fain to sue for Peace, and to purchase it with the loss of some part of her Country. To keep them quiet for the future, *Philæ* an *Æthiopian* City, but on the borders of *Egypt*, is made a Garrison by the *Romans*, and the Seat of their Deputy for these parts: held by them till the Empire of *Dioclesian*, and by him abandoned, because the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the *Æthiopian* Kings were reckoned of as friends to the *Roman* Empire: insomuch as *Justinian* sent unto *Helistheus*, as *Junius* his Successor did unto *Archetas*, the then Kings of this Country; to crave their brotherly assistance against the *Persians*.

Of their Conversion to the Faith in the Reign of a second *Candace*, (unless as *Pliny* thinketh, *Candace* was the general Name of all their Queens) we have spoken already. To which the *Æthiopians* add, that after the baptizing of their first *Philip* (the Son of that *Candace*) by the hands of the Eunuch, the Emperours succeeding had the name of *Philip*; till the Religious life of *John*, a Contemporary of the Emperour *Constantine*, honoured as a Saint after his decease, made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of *John*, prefixed that of *Presbyter*, because (as they affirm) he executeth as well the Sacerdotal as the Royal Office: *Rex idem hominum, Presens; Sacerdos*, the very *Animus* of the Poet. And this is commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of *Priester John*, and his Estate, the Empire of *Priester John*, with no truth at all. Others more probably conceive that this vulgar name of *Priester John*, is but a corruption, or mistaken for *Pretagian* (or *Precrus John*) and that the word *Prete* (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no less. And yet I more incline to those, who finding that the word *Pretegan* signifieth an *Apostle*, in the *Persian* Tongue; and *Preteganis*, an *Apostolical* Man; do thereupon infer, that the title of *Padescha Prestigiani*, an *Apostolick* King, was given unto him for the Orthodoxy of his Belief. Which not being understood by some, instead of *pretegan* they have made *Priest John* in Latin *Presbyter Johannes*: as by a like mistake, one *Pregent*, or *Pregiant*, (as the *French* pronounce it) Commander of some Gallies under *Levis* the XII. was by the *English* of those times called *Priester John*. *Prestigiani* then, not *Priest John*, is his proper adjunct; contracted, yet commonly called the *Prete*, by the Modern *French*, who usually leave out *s* before a Consonant. Their Empire greater heretofore, than it is at the present, shrewdly impaired of late times by the *Turks* and *Arabians*; Of which the first have taken from him all his Country, from the Isle of *Meroe* unto *Egypt*, with all the Sea-coasts of *Barnagassi*; the latter as much encroaching on them, on the rest of the *Maritime* parts of his Dominions. But from none have they suffered more than the Kings of *Adel*, who have divers times laid wast their Country, discomfited some of them in the open Field, and in the year 1558 slain their King in battel: not cured of those wounds to this very day. For *Adam*, who succeeded *Claudius* that was slain in battel, was so far from being able to revenge the death of his Predecessor, that being suspected to incline to *Mahometanism*, he was defeated by the under-King of *Barnagassi*. Since which time they have so languished by intestine dissensions, that though *Alexander* the Third (if there were ever such a King, which I find much doubted) is said to have settled his affairs by the aid of the *Portugals*, and that some strange successes have been since reported of a later Emperour: yet the truth is, that the Estate hereof hath been so imbroiled in Civil Wars, and so many of their Emperours successively murdered, that the power and reputation of it is exceedingly weakned, and the Country made a prey to impuissant Enemies. For in the year 1603. the Emperour *Meleb Godad*, who succeeded in the Throne by the Deposition and Imprisonment of his Predecessor, (under colour of Bastardy) was not long after slain by one *Zezelebens*: and *James* or *Jacob*, advanced unto the Empire:

A a a a a

piece: *James* not long after vanquished and slain in the fields of *Guera*, by one *Saxinifus* (contractedly by some called *Sufneus*) his three Sons being forced to fly to provide for safety. What became of the two Eldest, I have no where found. The youngest, called *Ziga Cristos*, after many hazardous Wandrings and Accidents, arriv'd at last into *Italy*, and thence he came to *Paris*, Anno 1638. where he was entertained in the quality of a Prince, but without hope of being restored to the Throne of his Fathers; for *Saxinifus*, or *Sufneus*, immediately upon the Victory, had possessed himself of the whole Empire; though for a time to terribly disquieted with Treasons and Conspiracies, that in the year 1657. he was fain to sue for aid to the King of *Spain* and tender a submission of the *Abassine* Churches to the Pope of *Rome*. But the Spirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not so easily be laid down, (though there followed a long calm between) but that it brake out again within a few years after (that is to say, about the year 1628.) more violently than it did before: a powerful Rebel starting up, who followed by an Army of 50000, had unquestionably dispossessed the *Prete* of his whole Dominions; if not prevented and discomfited beyond expectation. For it happened, that one *Vermeile*, a *Frenchman*, a Jeweller by Trade but exercised in the Wars of *Holland*, understanding that the *Abassine* Empress was much delighted with the Rarities and Jewels of *France*, found means to convey himself into the Court; where understanding the great danger which that great Emperour was in, and the ignorance as well of the good Subjects, as of the Rebels, in the Arts of War, he got leave to have the disciplining or training of 8000 Men; with which small Army, he utterly discomfited and routed that vast body of Rebels, and was thereupon deservedly made Commander in Chief of all the Forces of the Empire. This is the last News of any certainty that hath come from thence: it being An. 1634. in which that Victory was obtained) but that there hath been a report of some new Commotions, An. 1648. the particulars and truth whereof, must be sought elsewhere. In the year 1686. an Account was given from *Hissbahab*, the Capital of *Persia*, by a *Romish* Monk, that *Nigus Fassick Adiam Saguid* had succeeded *John De Basilides*, Grandchild of *Sufneus*, in the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*; and that the *Guleas* disquieting him, he had resolved to lead all his Forces against him: This, said he, is all the Changes that have happened there in Church or State since 1631. By which it is plain, what Princes have Reigned Since, and that they are the Descendents of the last King mentioned by the Author.

Yet notwithstanding these disasters, these later Emperours have still preserved their Majesty among their Subjects whom they hold in Servitude enough, though they keep not such a distance as in former Ages, when the *Prete* was honoured as a God, and used to shew himself but thrice in a year, viz. on *Cristmas*, *Easter*, and *Holyrood-day*: by which retiredness it was thought that he made his presence more acceptable; some holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majesty of a King, than to make himself too common an object for the eye of the Vulgar. The like kind of state was once kept by those Kings of *France* of the first *Merovignian* line; who withdrawing themselves from all publick Affairs, used only to shew themselves (as we have already said) on *May-day*. A greater retiredness than this, was that which *Velleday* Queen of the *Teusteri*, (a people of the *Rhine*) is reported by *Tacitus* to have used; for when the rest of the *Germans* then in Arms, sent Ambassadors to her to inform her of their Victory against the *Romans*, they were prohibited either to speak to her, or to see her; *Arcebanter aspectu, quo venerationis plus inesset*. Such a keeping of State the Politick Prince *Tiberius* used, when the *German* Legions mutined; for he deigned not himself to see them pacified, but sent his Son; the reason was, *quia majestati major & longinquo reverentia*. And no doubt, the same keeping of distance swayed much with him, when he forsook *Rome*, and kept Court privately at *Caprea*: though I deny not, but a propension to follow

his unnatural pleasures the more securely, together with his deformities on his face, had also their powers upon his resolution.

The Title of this great and mighty Emperour, (but neither so great or mighty in power as title) runneth thus: *N. N. Supream of his Kingdoms, and the beloved of GOD, the Pillar of Faith, sprung from the Stock of Judah, the Son of David, the Son of Solomon, the Son of the Column of Sion, the Son of the Seed of Jacob, the Son of the hand of Mary, the Son of Nahu after the flesh, the Son of St. Peter & Paul after the Spirit; Emperour of the Higher and Lesser Æthiopia, and of the most mighty Kingdoms, Dominions and Countries of Xoa, Goa, Caffares, Fatigar, Angotæ, Balig-nazo, Adea, Vangne, Goyami, where are the fountains of Nile, Amara, Banguamedion, Ambea, Vangucum, Tigre-maon, Sabaim, the birth-place of the Queen of Saba, Barnagallum; and Lord of all the Regions under the Confines of Egypt.*

It seemeth by this Title, that these *Æthiopian* Emperours, however the truth of Story goeth, conceive themselves to be sprung from *Solomon* and *Miqueada*, (or *Nizante*, as *Joseph* nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by some reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the same with those of the Tribe of *Judah*, which are a *Lion Rampant* in a Field Or: and that the *Motto* of them is to this effect, viz. *The Lyon of the Tribe of Judah shall overcome*. But *Bava*, an expert Herald, giveth this Prince no such Coat-Armour; his Arms, according to him, being *Luna*, a Cross Portate *Mars*, charged with a Crucifix *Sol*, between two Scourges of the Second. And yet not altogether to discredit the old Tradition so generally received amongst them; it may be probable enough, that when the *Abassins* came into *Æthiopia*, some of the *Sabeans* their next Neighbours, came along for company, and amongst them some of the Royal Race of the Queen of *Saba*; with some of which, by reason of their great Nobility, some of the *Abassine* Emperours might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impossibility, but that *Solomon* (considering his course of life) might get a Son upon the body of that Queen, from whom the *Æthiopian* Princes might be thus descended.

As for the Government of these Emperours, it is absolutely *Regal*, or to say better, perfectly *Despotic*: the people being treated by them more like Slaves than Subjects; taking away *Seigniories*, and giving them unto whom he pleaseth, the deprived party not daring to express the least discontent. By them so revered, that it was anciently a custom, if the King were blind, or lame, or maimed, for the Subject to inflict on his own Body the like impression: still had in so much honour by the greatest Subject, that at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their Fingers; and reverence his *Parvilion* as they pass by, though he be not in it. He on the other side seldom appeareth to his Subjects, but with his *Crown* upon his head, and a *Silver Crucifix* in his hand; his face then covered with a piece of *Watchet-Tuffata*, which he lieth up and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his Forces and Revenues, some of our late Observators speak nothing but wonders. Some say his Empire reacheth from the *Red-Sea* to the *Atlantick Ocean*, and from one *Tropick* to the other: Some, that he is of so great Riches, that he is able to purchase a moiety of all the world if it were to be sold; others, that he is able to raise for present service a Million of Men. And he himself is said to have offered to the *Portugals* one Million of Money, and another of Men, if they would imploy it in a War against the *Infidels*. But notwithstanding these great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be such a *Miracle* as some of these reports have made him. For they that speak most knowingly of his Revenue, affirm that the ordinary expenses of his Court and Army being discharged, he coffereth up but three Millions of Crowns *per annum*; which is no great

great matter: and upon extraordinary emergencies of War and Trouble, will be easily waisted, or brought into a narrower compass. And yet to make up this *Revenue*, besides the Crown-Lands, or *Domin Imperial*, he layeth some *Tax* or other upon every house, receiveth the *Tenth* of all that is digged out of their Mines; and levieth on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaseth to chuse, so it be not that in which the Lords themselves inhabit.

This, though it be no great *Intrado*, considering the large extent of his *Dominions*, and *Form* of his *Government*; yet it is greater in *proportion* than his *Forces*, are. For notwithstanding the report of *Alvarez*, and his own great brag of raising a Million of Men for present service; it is well known, that he was never able to advance half that number in his greatest necessity; and amongst those whom he can raise, there are but few who can deserve the name of Soldiers. For the People being poor and beggarly, and brought up in a servile and base condition, are naturally destitute of that courage and alacrity of Spirit which should be in Men professing *Arms*, or fit for Noble Undertakings, and are besides, on certain *Jealousies* of State, so disused from War, that they know not how to use their Weapons, when there is occasion. So that for my part, I consider him as a weak and *Impuissant* Prince, of no Authority or Influence out of his *Dominions*; nor able to defend himself from the continual *Inursions* of his Neighbours (some of them mean and petit Princes) which lie nearest to him. *Landlocked* on every side from Traffick and Commerce with the Seas; incroached upon *Northward* by the *Turks*; confronted on the West by the King of *Borneo*, who possesseth not a tenth part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the East, continually bearded and baffled by the King of *Adel*, some-

times a *Kajal* of his own; and on the South with the *Galla*, a barbarous Nation of the other *Æthiopia*, who lay all waste before them wheresoever they come; and finally in the latter time by his own Subjects. Injuries not to be endured, had he power to help it.

But the chief stay of this Estate, is an *Order of Knight-hood*, entituled by the name of *St. Anthony*, to which every Father that is of the degree of a Gentleman, is to destinate one of his Sons, if he have above two, but not the eldest; and out of these they cull about 12000 Horse, which are to be the standing Guard of the Emperour's person: their Oath is, to defend the Frontiers of the Empire, to preserve Religion, and to make head against the Enemies of the Faith. The *Abbots* of this Order (for it is partly *Religious*, partly *Military*) live in the Mountain of *Amara*, where they have two *Monasteries*, as well for the training up of these Knights in the time of their Youth, as their *retirement* when grown old, and discharged from Service: When the *Portuguese* in the last Century sent Succours to *Claudius* the then Emperour, tho' the Main body returned, some part staid behind, and were married to the Women of *Æthiopia*; and their Posterity has since encreased to many thousands, and are trained up as Foot-men to the use of Fire-Arms; for which they are accounted the best part of the Forces of this Kingdom, and have lands and Good Privileges allowed to them for their Support and Encouragement.

The Arms of this Empire we have seen before.

And so much for ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

OF

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR is bounded on the East with the *Red Sea*, (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulph of *Arabia*, to the Southern Ocean) on the West, with the *Æthiopic Ocean*; on the North, with *Terra Nigritarum*, and the *Hyper Æthiopia*; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or *Conus*, with the Main Ocean, parting it from the Southern undiscovered Continent.

It was called *Æthiopia* for the reason before delivered; *Inferior* was added for distinction sake, because some what of a lower situation than the other is. By *Ptolemy* called *Æthiopia Interior*, because lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge, than the nearer did: and by late Writers, for the contrary reason, called *Æthiopia Exterior*, because situate without and beyond the other. Mr. *Pory* thusounds it: On the North it has the great River *Zaire* and the *Upper Æthiopia*, and on the other sides it is encompassed with the Ocean, stretching it self Northwards to the entrance of the *Red Sea*, and bounding the *Upper Æthiopia* East, West, and South; and divided into the Kingdoms of *Congo*, *Monotapia*, the Coast of *Casares*, *Zanguibar*, and *Adel*, with many other smaller Kingdoms. by which Description, he brings it more to the North than our Author doth, who takes *Adel* and *Aldea* into the *Upper Æthiopia*.

It comprehendeth all *Ptolemy's Æthiopia Interior*, part of his *Æthiopia sub Ægypto*, and all those Lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of *Terra Incognita*. The Country so little discovered in those elder

times, that we find mention only of some eminent Mountains, as 1. *Ganchis*, 2. *Lon*, 3. *Zipsia*, 4. *Bardis*, 5. *Amara*; one only Region known by name, called *Agisimba*, and of that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of a huge extent. The People not distinguished here as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but only by their kind of diet; some of them being called *Anthrophagi*, from their eating of Men; and others *Ichthyophagi*, from their living on fish. Of these, the first inhabited on the Eastern shores, near the Bay of *Barb*, the principal of which had the name of *Ropji*; the second on the shores of the Western Ocean, near *Alaput* *Sum*, or the Great Bay; called also from their Western situation, by the name of *Esperii*. Nothing else told us of these parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the Lakes or Pans of *N* were occasioned by the great abundance of Snow, which fell from the Mountains of the Moon: and that in many places hereof, there were *Rhinoceros*, Tygers, Leopards, but these last all white.

Such was the face of this Country in those elder days. The Character of it at the present, generally and in brief, is thus given by *Aubame*, viz. That it is Mountainous in the West, Sandy in the middle, and Desert towards the East. But for the several qualities of the soil and people being of very different tempers; we shall give the better description of them in their several *Indoures*, then as presented thus in common. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills and Rivers of most reckoning in it; the principal of their Mountains are, 1. those called *Cantaber* in the Province of *Apola*, abounding in excellent Silver

A A A A A A

Mines

Mines; 2. *Lunæ Montes*, formerly accounted for the boundary of both *Æthiopia's*, now found to belong to this alone. A Chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the *Tropick of Capricorn*; full of sharp Rocks, of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous and savage people: the Vallies underneath of so great a depth, that they seem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Country is the Lake of *Zembre*, so much renowned for giving birth to the greatest Rivers of the World; though it self but 50 miles in compass. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1. *Nilus*, which passing through some part of this Country and traversing the whole length of the *Abassine* and *Egyptain* Empires, endeth its long course in the *Mediterranean*. 2. *Zaire*, the greatest of all *Africk*, but unknown to the Ancients; which running Westward through the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and taking in the lesser Streams of 1. *Vumba*, 2. *Barbela*, 3. *Coanza*, 4. *Lelunda*, makes many Islands in his way, and, at the last by a mouth of 28 miles wideness, disgorgeth his full stomach in the Western Ocean. 3. *Cuama*, which making his passage towards the East, and much increased by the addition of six great Rivers, after a long course of 700 miles (in all which it is Navigable) loseth it self in the *Indian*, or *Arabian Ocean*. And 4. *Fluvius Spiritus sancti*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*, which shaping a Course opposite unto that of *Nilus*, endeth it in conclusion in the Southern Seas. It is divided most properly into these four parts, that is to say, 1. *Zanguebar*, 2. *Monomotapa*, 3. *Cafra-ria*, 4. *Manicongo*. Some also add the Country of *Aium*, subdivided into the two Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*. But these we have ascribed with better reason to the other *Æthiopia*, within the Bounds whereof they are wholly situate.

It may be observed here once for all, that in all the barbarous Nations round the Globe, we meet with *Man Eaters* or *Cannibals*; the Reasons of which I conceive are two; first, their Barbarous Feirceness against their Enemies, so that not content to Kill them, they afterwards Eat them too: It being observed, the *Americans* eat none but their Enemies, tho' some Nations have been observed to eat the Dead Bodies of their Friends out of Respect and Love: Secondly; their Improvidence in making due and timely Provisions for Famines and Times of great Scarcity; so that when such seasons happen, they are soon reduced to eat one the other, or Starve. And it is probable this Custom arose at first from one of these Causes, tho' it might afterwards be carried on out of pure Ferity and Rudeness. The Civiler Nations abhor this as the utmost Barbarity; whereas they ought rather to Consider, that some few Ages since, it was the Custom of the Countries they now inhabit; and so they ought rather to Pity and Reduce these Poor *Barbarians* to better Manners, than to hate them for it.

1. ZANGUEBAR.

ZANGUEBAR, or ZANZIBAR, is bounded on the East with the *Red Sea*, or the *Indian Ocean*, on the West with the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and part of the other *Æthiopia*; on the North with the *Higher Æthiopia* only; on the South with *Monomotapa*. The reason of the name I find not.

It containeth in it the great Province of *Agisimba*, placed by the old Writers in *Æthiopia Interior*, and in so much of the other also as lieth on the South of the River *Raptus*; now called *Quilimanci*, by which parted from the Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*. The Country on both sides of that River, known in old times by the name of *Barbaria*, giveth to a large adjoining Bay the name of *Sinus Barbaricus*, and was much famed in those Elder Times for the best sort of *Myrrh*: the *Myrrh Tropoditica*, and *Myrrh Barbara*, or *Barbarica*, being used for the same by some of the Ancients, because the *Tropodites*, and the people of this *Barbaria* joyned on one

another. Here was also in those elder times a good Race of *Ginger*, of which saith *Dioscorides*, *Μάρος φλοιός ἐστὶ καυζόμην* ἐκ τῆς Βαρβαρίας, That it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of *Barbaria*. Where by the way, the *Scholiasts* upon that Author, and *Pliny* in the 12. Book, have been much mistaken; of which the first takes this *Barbaria* or *Barbaria* for some part of the *Indies*; the other thinketh, that the *Myrrh* of these parts had the name of *Barbara*, from the drossiness and coarseness of it, as if so called only because unrefined. The Principal Town hereof called *Rapta*, by the name of the River, seated not far from the Sea; and by reason of the great Trade of it, esteemed the *Metropolis* of *Barbaria* in the time of *Ptolemy*. A noted Promontory of the same name was not far from hence.

To come again to *Zanzibar*, as it is now called; The Country is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflowed with unruly Rivers; and withal so full of Woods and Forests, that for want of passage for the Wind, the Air is generally (as in all Fenny Countries of the like obstruction) exceeding pestilent. The People of Complexion black, and of curled hair; *Mahometans* on the Sea-Coasts; in the Inland-parts *Idolaters*; extremely given to Witchcraft and Divinations. Naked above the Waste, and beneath covered only with the skins of Beasts or some such mingled colour stuff, as the *Scottish Plaid*. The *Moors* which dwell on the Sea-coasts, use to adventure on the Seas in little Vessels, sow'd together with leathern thongs, and calked with Gum; having no other Sails in them than the leaves of Palm-trees. Boats of as slight making as those used anciently by the *Britans*, whereof thus the Poet:

*Primum cana salix, madefacto vimine parvam
Texitur in puppim; caesoque induta juvenco
Vectoris patiens, tumidum superenatat Annem.*

Which I find thus rendred to my hand:

*The moistned Oser of the hoary Willow
Is woven first into a little Boat;
Then cloath'd in Bullocks Hides; upon the Billow
Of a Proud River lightly doth it float.*

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Melinde*, 2. *Bombaza*, 3. *Quiloo*, 4. *Mosambique*, 5. *Sofala*, all along the Coasts, 6. *Moenbamage*, 7. *Corova*, 8. *Calen*, 9. *Anzuga*, 10. *Monzabo*, 11. *Budin*, 12. *Mombra*, 13. *Mombizo*, 14. *Embroe*, and 15. *Marcaos*, more within the Land. Of the ninelast, not being perfectly discovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we shall now be silent. But the first six lying upon the Shores, or near it, and consequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like Adventurers, shall be surveyed in order as they lie before us.

1. *MELINDE* is the name of a little Kingdom, on the South of the Realm of *Adea*, in the higher *Æthiopia*, from which parted by the River *Raptus*, now called *Quilimanci*: so named from *Melinde*, the chief City of it, well Walled, and seated in a fruitful and delightful Soil; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Flesh, Lemons, Citrons, and most sorts of Fruits; but not well furnished with Corn, the greatest part whereof is brought out of *Cambaia*, a Province of *India*. The Houses built of Lime and Stone, after the manner of *Europe*. The Inhabitants on the Sea-Coasts of *Arabian* breed, and of that Religion; those of the Inlands, which are of the Original Natives, for the most part *Heathens*. Most of them of an Olive colour, but inclining to White; the Women generally of as white Complexion as in other places; but they have some black People also: and all of them more civil in their Habit, Course of Life, and Entertainment in their Houses, than the rest of this Country. Great Friends to the *Portugals*, and befriended by them, ever since the kind Entertainment which

which they gave to *Vasques de Gama*; whom they furnished with Pilots to direct in his way to *India*, when first discovered by that People, *Anno* 1497. They have an Iron Mine which they work to great advantage, *Nubiensis*, p. 27. This City stands six days Sail South of *Berna*, now *Brava*, and two North of *Monbaza*. *Pory* saith, the Kingdom stretcheth into the Land 100 Miles; the Capital City is strong and very rich. From *Chaul* the *Portuguese* Trade along the Coast of *Melinda* in *Æthiopia*, within the Land of *Casraria*. On that Coast are many good Harbours, kept by the *Moors* (*Arabians*.) Thither they bring corse Bombast, and carry back Slaves, Ivory, and some Amber and Gold. *Hackl. T. 2. p. 242.* This was in 1569.

Note here, that all the Cities on the East of *Africa*, beyond Cape *Guarda Fuy* to the South, were built by the *Arabians*, who from the 12th Century, drove a great Trade here, and the most of them are mentioned by the *Nubian* Geographer, by the same Names they now have.

2. *MOMBAZA* is the name of another of these petty Kingdoms, of the same nature for the temper of the Soil and People that *Melinde* is. So called from *Mombaza* the chief City of it, situate from *Melinde* about 70 Miles, in a little Island of 12 Miles compass; but of good influence on some part of the Continent also. The Isle and City said to have some resemblance unto the *Rhodes*. The Town about a League in circuit, environed with a Wall, and fortified with a Castle; built by the *Portuguese*, and a fine Sea-Port or Haven, the Streets thereof very narrow but well built, most of the Houses being Brick, and the Mosques capacious. The King hereof a *Mahometan*, as are most of his Subjects, and a bitter Enemy of the *Christians*. For which cause, and upon some discourtesies received from them, the Town was taken by *Vasques de Gama*, *An.* 1500. but abandoned again by reason of the unhealthy Air, not well agreeing with the constitution of the *Portugals*. Afterwards having taken in *Alibeg*, and five *Turkish* Gallies, the better to enable themselves against the *Portugals*; the Town was taken and ruined by *Thomas de Catigno*, sent thither *Anno* 1589. by the *Portugal* Vice-Roy residing in *Gua*, there being taken at that time (besides the spoil of the City) all the *Turkish* Gallies, and in them 23 greater, and as many lesser Pieces of Ordnance. Such of the *Turks* and Citizens as escaped the slaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themselves into their power, to avoid the fury of the *Imbians*, a Man-eating People, who had before besieged the City; and gathering up such gleanings as were left by the *Portugals*, devoured the King, and as many of the Principal Citizens as they could get into their hands: 2. *Ampaza*, the second Town of Note, was taken by the *Portugals* about two years after.

3. *QUILOA* lieth on the South of *Mombaza*. The Country rich and pleasant, the Inhabitants for the most part of *Arabian* Ancestry; of Complexion near unto a White: their Women comely, sumptuous in Attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their Houses, which are generally well built, and richly furnished. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whose Honour they are very tender) the People of this *Quiloo* are said to have a strange Custom amongst them, more to be mention'd for the rarity than the decency of it: which is the sowing up of the private passages of Nature in their Female Children, leaving only a small vent for their Urine. Thus sowed, they keep them carefully at home, till they come to be Married. And she that is by her Husband found to want this sign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kind of Ignominy sent back to her Parents, and by them as disgracefully received.

It took this name from *Quiloo*, the chief Town hereof, situate in a little Island, but near the Shore, from which parted by a narrow *Fryth*, opposite to the mouth of the River *Corva*, by some called *Quiola*, which my Author erroneously saith, springeth from the same Lake with the *Nile*, in a fresh and cool Air, and surrounded with Trees always Green, and a fruitful Country, yielding plenty of Victuals; first built in the 400 year of the *Hegira*,

by *Ali*, the Son of *Sultan Hiseben*; who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, because their Mothers were *Persians*, and his an *Abassine*, sought new Adventures in these parts, and bought this Island. His Successors grown Rich and Powerful by the Trade of *Sofala*, extended their Dominions far within the Land; and so Adorned *Quiloo*, the chief Town of their Kingdom; that for Sumptuous and Magnificent Buildings, there were few like it in those parts. Proud of their many good Successes, they provoked the *Portugals*, by whom, under the Conduct of *Vasquez de Gama*, *An.* 1500. the City it self was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave some Fortresses erected by them in convenient Places. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a Quarrel with *Abraham*, then the King of this Country; whom in the year 1505. they Deposed from his Kingdom, and placed another in his Throne, under the colour of not paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* rose in Arms, displaced their new King, demolished their Fortifications, and sent them to learn better moderation in their prosperous Fortunes. *An.* 1509. it was taken by *Franci. Almaida*, the *Portugal* Viceroy of *Africa*. The business coming after to a Composition, the *Quiloo* covenanted for the yearly Tribute of 1500 Marks of Gold, paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in Peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble. The *Portuguese* built a Fort on the City Island, which is since demolished by order of the King of *Portugal*. *Pory*. The Inhabitants are *Moors*, Tall of Stature, and Contemptible as to Courage. The Island has plenty of Rice, Millet, Cattle, Woods, Palm-trees, Lemons, Oranges, and Sugar-Canes, which cannot improve.

4. *MOSAMBIQUE* lieth on the South of *Quiloo*. So called of *Mosambique* the chief City of it, situate in a little Island, the principal of three, opposite all of them to the mouth of the River *Moghincats*, and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Uassum*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*, and by him made the furthest known place of all this Coast. In the Island there are said to be Sheep, whose Tails are 27 pound weight, as in other places of these Countries, and some parts of *Syria*; Hens, black in Feathers, Flesh, and Bone; and if soddin, make the Water as black as Ink, but yet sweeter in Taste than any other. Of Pork good store; the more, because the People are for the most part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all Hog-meat is forbidden. The Inland parts more barren, but very populous; so ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* first came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they sold fifteen Kine, and then fell out among themselves, who would have the Bell. The Town conveniently seated on a large and capacious Haven, and fortified with a very strong Castle, in the hand of the *Portugals*; who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, use to call in here, and fit themselves with all things necessary to pursue their Voyage. A Town of so great Wealth and Trading, that the Captain of the Castle in the time of his Government (which continueth only for Three years) is said to lay up 300000 Ducats for his lawful Gains, out of that Gold that cometh from *Sofala*, a Gain so great, that at the end of his Three years, he is to serve for three years more at some place or other of the *East Indies*, at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*, and then permitted to return into his Native Country. Such of that Nation as are suffer'd to inhabit here, are enjoined to be Married, to the end the Island should be well Peopled, and as well maintained; which otherwise perhaps might have few else in it but the Garrison Soldiers, and the Factors of particular Merchants. This City is seated in a low Fenny Ground, in an unwholesom Air, but for the security of the Haven, defended by a strong Fort, and for the plenty of Victuals and Trade, it was frequented beyond most of the Ports of this Ocean, especially whilst the *East India* Trade was in the hands of the *Portuguese*. On the Coast of *Melinda* the King of *Portugal* hath the Castle of *Mosambique* which is of as great Importance

Importance as any Castle that he hath in all his *Indies*, *Huckl. T. 2 p. 242.*

5. *SOFALA* lieth on the South of *Mosambique*, from which, parted by the River *Cuama*, the greatest River of those parts, and thence extended to the Mountains which they call *Manica*, by which separated from *Monomotapa*: So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it, situate in a little Island (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoining. Both Town and Island subject unto the Power of the *Portugals*; who have a Fort, the better to secure the Factory by them here erected, one of the richest in the World; the People bringing in hither great quantity of Gold, of which they have most plentiful Mines; which they exchange with them for their Cloth and other Commodities. It is supposed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two Millions yearly. The supposition so agreeable to all other circumstances, that little question need be made of the truth thereof. Inasmuch as this Country for its abundance of Gold and Ivory, is by some thought to be that Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* sent: And of this Opinion *Ortelius* in his *Thesaurus* was the first Author; but in my Mind, upon no probable conjecture, and against very strong presumption. For first, *Ophir* the Son of *Jochan*, of whom mention is made *Gen. 29. verse 10.* and from whom the Land of *Ophir*, in all likelihood took its name, is in the next verse said to have planted in the East; whereas this *Sofala* is situate South-West from *Chaldea*, in which the confusion of Tongues, and dispersing of the People began. And Secondly, it is impossible for the Navy of *Solomon*, which lay at *Ezion-Geber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*, to have spent three years in coming hither and returning: which we find to have been the usual time of finishing the Voyage to *Ophir*, *1 Kings, 10.* *Ophir* then is some part of *India*; but whether it were the Island of *Sumatra*, or that of *Zeilan*, or one of the *Moluccoes*, or the Land of *Malaca*, called by the Ancients *Aurea Chersonesus*, I dare not determine; considering what worthy Men maintain these several Opinions. *Nubiensis, p. 30.* mentions this Country, and saith, in his time it had these Mines of Gold, and the Cities of *Hantema*, *Dandema*, *Saiona*, the Princes Residence, *Bocha* and *Gasta*. The Gold of this Country was the best in the World. This was the most Southern part then known on the Eastern part of *Africa*; it lying 21 Degrees beyond the Line on the Western Coast; they knew nothing beyond the Southern Mouth of the *Niger*, which lies in 11 Degrees of Northern Lat. The King is a *Moor*, and a Tributary to the Crown of *Portugal*, not being able to oppose the King of *Monotapia* without that Dependance. Before the *Portuguese*, the *Moors* of *Magadoxo* and *Quiloa* had this rich Trade. *Pory.*

6. *MOENHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMUG*, the only Inland Province of any note, hath on the East *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*; on the West, the famous River *Nilus*; on the North, some part of the Dominions of the *Abassine* Emperors; on the South, *Mosambique*. The Country very plentiful of Mines of Gold, yet the People use it not for Money; but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks and Taffaraes, with which they use to cloath themselves from the Girdle downwards. Instead of Money they make use of Red Counters, much resembling Glasse. Governed by a King of their own, who holds confederacy with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are also subject a wild and cruel People, called *Agag*, inhabiting on the Lake *Zembre*, and the Banks of the *Nilus*; dispersed about the Fields in their homely Cottages, black Cannibals, and of an horrible Aspect; more horrible than otherwise they would be, by drawing Lines upon their Cheeks with an Iron Instrument, and forcing their Eye lids to turn backwards. By the assistance of this People, the King of *Moembemage* hath hitherto preserved his Estate against the King of *Monomotapa*; and they themselves by some of their own Leaders did so distress the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a small Island, where he hardly escaped a vio-

lent and untimely death, most of his People being starved. Of which more hereafter.

Touching the rest of these Provinces, we can say but little; and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the most part from one another, both in speech and Behaviour; each Village under a several King, and each in a continual Quarrel with its next neighbours; whom, if they overcome, they eat. At leisure times they live by Hunting, and the flesh of Elephants. And amongst these, but more upon the borders of the *Abassine* Empire, I place the *Galle*; a Nationless Nation as it were, without House or Dwelling, without Law or Government; as barbarous and horrid as the *Agags* (whom some call *Jagge* or *Giacqui*) are affirmed to be, who watching their advantages, and joined together in some Arts of doing mischief, have made of late such Desolations in the Country of *Prestor-John*. It is very remarkable, that the Coast of *Africa* was known to *Mosambique* in *Ptolemy's* time, and but to *Sofala* in all the times that followed, till the *Portuguese* doubled the *Cape of Good-hope*, and so came from the South to meet and stop the further progress of these *Mahometans*.

2. MONOMOTAPA.

MONOMOTAPA, *BENOMOTANA*, or *BENOMOTAXA* (for by all these names it is called) is bounded on the North, with the River *Cuama*, by which, and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar*; on the West and South, by the River of the *Holy Ghost*, by which separated from *Cafraria*; and on the East by the main Ocean. So that is almost an Island; said to contain in compass 750 *Spanish* Leagues, or 3250 *Italian* Miles. It contains in it 25 Kingdoms, which are all governed by Kings, subject to the Emperor of *Monotapia*. The principal City is of the same name.

The Air hereof is said to be very temperate, and the Country very good and pleasant, yet full of Forests. Well watered, besides the two great Rivers before mentioned, with the Streams of 1. *Panami*, 2. *Luanga*, 3. *Arruga*, 4. *Mangeano*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their sands. By means whereof it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great store of Pasturage; on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beasts very large and great, such store of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reason, but to make Merchandise of their Teeth: Their Gold-Mines, great and small, reckoned to 3000; some in the hills of *Magnice*, others in the Province of *Matuca* and *Boro*; the places where the Mines are, known without further art in the discovery of them by the dryness and barrenness of the Soil; as if Nature could not hold up Gold in her spacious Bosome, but she must needs be barren of all good Works. This Gold is the purest in all *Africa*, dug out of the Earth with ease, lying not above three Foot deep, and in some desert places, the People find great pieces of Gold upon the surface of the Earth, some of which weigh an Ounce. The *Portuguese* have seated in this Kingdom upon the River *Sene* at *Sofala*, and some of them have 5000 *Cafres* to their Slaves, with which they make War, upon slight occasion; the Governour of *Mozambique* furnishing them with Calico's, Arms, &c. at his own Rates. *Tavernier, p. 2. p. 156.* *Pory* in his Introduction to *Leo Africanus* gives a large Account of this mighty Empire; which he saith, is supported principally by *Amazons*, or *Female Warriors*, *p. 32.*

The People are of mean stature, and black complexions; but strong and active, courageous, and of such footman-ship that they out-run Horses. Their apparel Cotton-Cloth, which they make or buy from some other place: their Diet Flesh, Fish, Rice, Mill; and an Oil called *Sufiman*. Their Religion Paganism for the most part; yet they worship not Idols, but believe in one God only, which they call *Moximo*; and seem not muchaverse from the

Christian

Christian Faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They punish nothing more severely than *Wucherafi*, *Adultery*, and *Töft*: and in the Punishment of *Delinquents* they use no Prisons, but execute them as soon as apprehended; which is the Reason that the Vulgar have no Doors to their Houses, that being a Privilege for the Nobles. They may have as many Wives as they will, but the first the Principal, and her Children only to be Heirs: The Women here very much respected (as a second *England*) the Emperor himself, if he meeteth any of them in the Streets, he giveth them the Way. They are not to be Married till their *Menstrua*, or Natural Purgations testify their Ability for Conception; and therefore they Solemnize the first *Flux* thereof with a liberal Feast.

Provinces of most note in it, and adjoining to it, but reckoned as Members of his Empire are.

1. *MATUCA*, rich in the Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Botonghi*; who though they dwell between the Line and the Tropick, have in the Winter such deep Snows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not speedily down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy Ghost*, or *di Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corrintes*, (*Caput Currentium* in the *Latins*) wealthy in fat Pastures, and great herds of Cattel; more in her inexhaustible Mines of Gold. Memorable for a large, and in those times an impregnable Fortrefs, built formerly by some Foreign Prince to secure the Mines; of square Stone, and every Stone of marvellous greatness, without any sign of Cement or other Mortar; the Walls hereof 25 spans thick, but the height not answerable; over the Gate certain Characters written, which the most Learned of the *Moors* could never read. Perhaps the work of some of the *Æthiopian* or *Abessine* Emperors, when their Power and Empire was at the highest. By the Inhabitants who conceive it to be a work beyond Humane Power, it is thought to have been built by Devils; but by those who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, ascribed to *Solomon*, though situate 510 miles more Westward than *Sofala*, by their own account. The Air here very cold, by reason of the sharp blasts coming from the *Pole-Antarctic*; so much the colder, in that they have no wood, or other fuel, but what they make themselves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*, and 4. *QUITICUL*, both furnished with Gold also in their Mines and Rivers, but not so pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet such as serves their turn so well, as to spoil all industry: the People here being very careless in providing necessaries, which they presume the *Moors* (I mean the *Arabian Moors*) will bring them in exchange hereof.

5. *INHABAN*, Governed by a King of its own, but Vassal and Tributary to the Emperor of *Monomotapa*, the King whereof in the year 1560. was Christened by *Gonsalvo Silvera* a Spanish Jesuite, by the Name of *Cobstantine*; his Queen baptized by the Name of *Mary*: but I find nothing of the further Progress of Christianity Touching 6. *Mitana*, 7. *Milemba*, 8. *Buinbebe*, 9. *Berteca*, and 10. *Bavagul*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their Names.

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages; the Houses being here so thin, that from the Border of *Sofala* to the Fort of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is said, there is no sign of any Building either old or new. The Principal of those that be, 1. *Tongum* in the Province of *Inbamban*, and the Seat-royal of those Kings: Memorable for the Baptism of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2. *Simbus*, supposed to be so called from the *Agisymba* of *Ptolemy*, the chief Town of the Province of *Torra*, or *Banet*; distant from *Sofala* one and twenty days journey, and neighboured by the Remains or Ruins of the old Fortrefs before described.

3. *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperor makes his usual residence; giving this Name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himself, whom they call *Benomotaxa*, or *Monomotapata*, the word in their Language signifying a King or Emperor.

The King hereof, accounted one of the greatest of *Africk*, hath under his command, besides the Provinces described, some part of *Casraria*. Of great Riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which so abundantly supply all the Royal occasions, that he exacteth no kind of Tribute from his Subjects, but some certain days Service in his Works; and from his Nobles Gifts and Presents, without which none of them are to come before him. His Forces great, the multitudes of Men considered; but weak, for want of Skill to use them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for modern Service; the Arms they most use being only Darts and Targets. For which cause, (and in regard the People of the subject Kingdoms are so prone to Rebellions, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the Tributary Kings as Hostages of their Fathers Loyalty) he wageth Mercenary Soldiers of other Nations, whom he distributeth abroad in his several Provinces; and amongst these it is affirmed, that he hath a strong Battalion of *Amazons*, a Warlike Race of Women, who inhabit about the Lake of *Zambre*, and the out-skirts of *Zanzibar*, compared by some for their Fidelity and Prowess, to the *Turkish* Janizaries. And yet, not trusting wholly to the Faith of these Mercenaries, it is said that he keeps 2000 Maltives for the Guard of his Person. Much revered by his Subjects, by whom he is served upon the Knee; and when he Cougheth or Drinketh, all those that are about him make such a shout, that the Town rings of it. In one particular they differ from most Nations else, which is, That such as are admitted into his Presence, are bound to Sit down in token of Reverence; to Stand before him, being a sign of the greatest Dignity which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced Christianity in his Dominions, when in the year 1560. the King hereof was baptized by *Gonsalvo* the Jesuit, by the Name of *Sebastian*, that being the Name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning. But afterwards, on the suggestions of some *Arabians* then in great place about him, having caused the Jesuit to be slain, he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 Men, under the Conduct of *Francisco Barretio*; to whom he offered very honourable amends for the Injury done: But *Barretio* having in hope swallowed all the Gold in the Country, would not admit of any Peaceable Agreement; but referred the Business to a Battel; in which being overcome himself, and his whole Forces not long after consumed by Sicknes, the hopes of Christianity, and the *Portugals* Interest in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

3. *C A F R A R I A.*

C A F R A R I A is bounded on the East with *Rio di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*; on the South and West, with the main Ocean; on the North, extended to some parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Casra*, which in the *Arabian* Tongue signifieth an *Heretic*; a Name by them given to Christians, Heathens, and those of their own Religion also, which differ in Opinion from them; but given to this Region by some late Writers, because destitute of another name.

The Country, for so much of it as hath been discovered, is said to be full of great Herds of Cattel and Flocks of Sheep, abundance of Deer, Antilopes, Baboons, Foxes, Hares, Ostriches, Pelicans, Herons, Geese, Ducks, Pheasants, Partridges; in a word, all things necessary for the Life of Man, were it somewhat better stored with Corn, Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally stored with Woods and Forests: the Hills thereof intermixt with grassy Vallies, that ply 'tis so beautiful and rich a Country should be inhabited by so barbarous and rude a People,

ple, who being utterly unprovided of Towns and Houses, live in Woods like Beasts. Of colour Black, thick Lips, flat Noses, long shaped Heads, and most monstrous Ears, extended far beneath their Shoulders, by hanging in them Iron chains, Glafs, Bullers, Bells, and such ponderous baubles. These Ornaments common to both Sexes, who also use (for their greater beauty) most hideously to flash themselves in all parts of their Bodies, even their very Belies; as if no lace could better suit with their Naked skins; with which only, except some flap of an Hide or other Leather to hide their Privates, they are here apparelled.

Their best Habits for the most part are the Hides of Beasts, undressed, unfashioned, just as they tear them from the Flesh; but when they cloath themselves with Sheep skins, they have so much wit as to wear their Fleece next their Bodies in cold weather, which at other times they expose (with no small Pride and Glory) to the open view. Their Voice so inarticulate, that it is hard to be distinguished into Words and Syllables; which being compared with that brutishness, which commonly appeareth in all their actions, makes it hard to say, whether the People generally may be thought to be Men in the Skins of Beasts, or Beasts created in the likeness and shape of Men. But they make a greater use of their Cattel, than for Garments only, their raw Flesh serving them for Food, and the Guts for Ornament, which hang about their Necks uncleansed, and with all the filth in them, in as great a bravery as Ropes of Pearl, or Chains of Gold in more civil Countries. Gold here so valued, that they exchange it gladly for Brass, or Iron, and that not only quantity for quantity, and weight for weight, but in such senseless disproportion, as rendreth Brass and Iron the more excellent Metals.

But amongst all the several Nations which inhabit this most flourishing Country, none are more barbarous than those whom they call the *Imbians*, they call themselves *Hottentots*, dwelling not far from the *Cape of Good Hope*; tall, square, and strong, addicted always to War and Rapine, and feeding on the Flesh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying Friends, whose death they halten for the Shambles; the Skulls of whom they use for their drinking Cups. *Tavernier*, Part 2. p. 204 saith, the Mother cuts out the right Stone of every Male as soon as it is born. They know nothing of Gold or Silver; God or Religion: neither Men nor Women are ashamed to shew their Nakedness, for indeed they are but a sort of Humane Beasts; yet after all they have some Knowledge in Simples, and cured several *Dutchmen* of desperate old Sores, with Herbs. They sell their Cattel for *Aquaviva*, Tobacco, Chrystal, and Agat-Beads, and old Iron. In all this he agrees exactly with Mr. *Herbert*, who was in these Parts. Their Weapons are poisoned Arrows, and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they always carry Fire before them, menacing thereby to Roast or Boil all such as they overcome. Their King (if such a sacred Name become such an impious Monster) they account for Lord of all the Earth; as the *Portugals*, of all the Seas: and he with the old Giant-like Arrogance, not only threatneth the Destruction of Men, but shooteth his poisoned Arrows against Heaven it self, as often as the Rain or Heat offends him. In the year 1589. about 80000 of them made an inroad into *Zanzibar*, laid desolate all the Country as far as *Mombaza*, which City they besieged, sacked, and devoured the People of it; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our description of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, scarce so much as Houses; and those so mean, that they deserve not to be so called: except it be some Sheds on the Sea sides, for the use of Sailors. Of most note in it, is *Soldania*, a large and capacious Road, about fifteen or sixteen Leagues on the North-West from the *Cape of Good Hope*; not so much noted for the Buildings adjoining to it (if there be any such) as the Bay it self; environed on all sides with a

pleasant Country, enriched with variety of Herbs, not only pleasing to the Sense, but very Medicinal for many Diseases, especially for those that are troubled with the *Scorbute*, (or *Scurvy*, as we use to call it) the Hills adjoining stored with great multitudes of Cattel, both Sheep and Cows, though less in size than those in these Northern parts: great helps unto our Sea-men in their Eastern Voyages; for here such as are to sail towards the *Indies*, use to take in fresh Water, and make provision of things necessary for so long a Voyage. I have heard that some of our *English* Ships in their return from the *East-Indies*, seized on two Savages, living near this Bay, whom they brought on Ship board, with an intent to carry them into *England*, to the end, that having learned the *English* Tongue, we might be more particularly informed by them of the Estate and Affairs of this Country. One of these which was called *Goore*, being brought to *London*, (for the other died upon the way) was dieted and cloathed according to the *English* fashion, gratified also with beads, Rings, Beads, and such other things, by which they thought they might most gain upon him to affect the change of his Condition. But *Home is home*, though *home* but *homely*, as the saying is. For this poor wretch learned so much *English* as to bemoan his Misfortune, would throw himself upon the Ground, and cry out in great anguish and vexation of spirit, *Goore home go, Goore home go*, out of which unquietness of humour, when they could not get him, they sent him back in the next Ships which were bound to the *Indies*. After which time, as oft as he saw any Ship with *English* Colours, he would joyfully make towards the Bay with Guts and Garbage hanging about his Neck (as their Custom is) and readily perform all good Offices towards them; yet so, that it was found withal, that by discovering to the Natives how low esteem the *English* had of Brass and Iron, they thenceforth raised the Value of those richer Metals, which formerly they had parted with for such sorry trifles, as have been spoken of before.

But that which is of most consideration in all this Country, is the Cape it self; discovered by the *Portugals*, under the Conduct of *Bartholomew Diaz*, in their first *Indian* Undertakings; by whom, for the continual Tempests which he found about it, was first called *Tormentosa*. But afterwards the *Portugals* having doubled the Cape, and thereby finding good hopes of a prosperous Voyage, they caused it to be called, *Cabo di Buena Esperanza*, or the *Cape of Good Hope*: *Vaques di Gama*, the first Discoverer of this way to the Wealth of *India*, being then their Admiral, Anno 1497. The Discovery was first designed to be made in the year 1484. but much time was spent in procuring from the Pope a Grant of all the Lands and Trade they should find: And when they began the Enterprize, it was some years before they reached to this Cape. It consisteth of three great Points of head lands, of which that which is nearest us, is the *Cape of Good Hope*; the middlemost hath the Name of *Cabo Falso*, because mistaken for the other, by some of the *Portugals*, returning homewards; the third called *Cabo della Gupha*, or the *Cape of Needles*, by reason of those sharp Points which shoot towards the Sea. On the top of the Cape, is a large and pleasing Plain, adorned with great variety of Flowers, and covered with a Carpet of Grass: it is called the *Table of the Cape*, and yieldeth a large prospect over the Sea on all sides. The Sea here is very rough and tempestuous, and hath to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkind: whereupon a *Spanish* Captain being sore vexed with a Storm, expostulated with GOD, why he suffered his *Good Catholics* to endure such Torments; and permitted the *English* Hereticks, and Blasphemers, to pass so easily.

The Country is not subjected to any one Prince, the Natives being governed by the Chiefs of their several *Clans*; nor find I hitherto that either *Portugals* or *Spaniards*, have took possession of any one Part of it, in the Name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the best Title

Title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom Possession was taken of it in the Reign of King *James*, by one Captain *Fitz-Herbert*, who called the *Ascent* unto the *Table* King *James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his begat any good Title, or whether the Title of a Country lying so far off be held worth the owning, I leave to be determined of by *Lawyers* and *Statesmen*.

4. MANICONGO.

MANICONGO is bounded on the South with *Cafraria*, and the Mountains of the *Moon*; on the West with the *Aethiopic*, or *Atlantick* Ocean: on the North with the Realm of *Bein*, and other parts of the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the East with *Zanzibar*, and some part of the *Abassine* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Mantongo*, the Principal of those many Kingdoms which are united in this Name.

The Air hereof so temperate, that their Winter is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*; inasmuch, as the People do not use to Change their Garments, or to make more Fire than at other times: the tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the Nights so equal to the Days: that for the greatest part of the year there is little difference; the Country being situate under the *Aequator*, though more of it on the North than the South thereof. Not over-hot notwithstanding in the heats of Summer, by reason of the cool Winds which then blow continually; and the great Dews, which falling in the Night make some compensation for the extream fervour of the Day. The Soil so exceeding fruitful in the Production of Herbs, Plants, Fruits, and such store of Pasturage, that they have here great herds of Cattel, large flocks of Sheep, plenty of Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares, and Conies: Elephants of that bigness, that their Teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of so vast a bulk, that they will eat a whole Deer at once; Tygers too, which destroy Man and Beast: Not to say any thing of their Fowl, both wild and tame, which they have in great abundance.

The People of mean Stature, black of Complexion, thick Lips, and having the Apple of the Eye of divers colours, which makes them ghastly to behold; strong and long lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In Religion for the most part Heathens, some worshipping the Sun and Moon, others the Earth, as the Mother and Nurse of all things; and some again, wild Beasts and Serpents. So populous, that without any sensible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is supposed that they sell 28000 Slaves to the *Portugals* yearly: by whom they are sent into *Brasil*, there to work in the Mines and Sugar-houses. The *Christian* Faith admitted in some few of their Provinces, but especially in that of *Congo*: where first preached, in the Reign of *John II.* King of *Portugal*, Anno 1490. by *Gonzalvo de Sisa*; who having converted and baptized the King's Uncle, and one of his Sons, prevailed so far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects, did embrace the *Gospel*. Received there by the People with such infinite joy, that when their first Bishop came to live amongst them, they caused the Ways from the Sea-side to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered to him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partridges, Fish, Venison, and other Necessaries, to testify their Rejoicings in that happy Change. And though many of the Subjects, in the other Provinces were Baptized accordingly, and for a time embraced the Faith; yet after some small trial of it, they relapsed to their former *Heathenism*; either unable, or not willing to conform to so strict a Rule. Mr. *Pory* saith, in the 15th Century, the *Agags* *Giachi's* or *Galla's*, a barbarous, wandering, naked People, of great Valour, invaded this Kingdom, overthrew the King in several Battels, who was called *Don Alvaro*, and forced him to fly to the *Ile of Horfes*, in the River *Zaire*, where he fell into an incurable Droopie, and his

People in vast numbers died by Famine; so that for Bread they were forced to sell their Wives and Children for Slaves to the *Portugals*. This was the occasion of the dividing and ruining that once so potent a Kingdom. East and West it stretcheth from the Ocean to *Aquetunda*, and from 2 to 13 South Latitude; the breadth from East to West is 600 miles, according to its more ancient bounds, but now it lies between 4 and 10 Degrees. *St. Salvador*, the principal City, and the Residence of the King, (who is a *Christian*) stands in *Pemba*. *Phillippus Pigafetta* wrote an account of the Kingdom of *Congo*, translated into *English* by *Abraham Hartwell*, and is the Fountain of what can be said of this Kingdom. *Pory*, p. 41.

Principal Rivers of this Country. 1. *Bengo*, 2. *Cuanza*, 3. *Dande*, 4. *Barbela*, 5. *Ambrezi*, 6. *Loza*, 7. *Zaire*. This last the greatest of them all, if not of all *Africk* also: Of which though we have spoke already, we shall add this here, That it falleth into the *Aethiopic* Sea with so great a Violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen sometimes, the waters of it do retain their natural sweetness; not intermingled nor corrupted with the salt Sea-waters. Nor can the People sail above five miles against the Stream, by reason of the Cataracts, or huge Falls which it hath from the Mountains; more terrible and turbulent than those of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of most note, they are, 1. *Sierra conpula*, or the long Mountain; 2. *Mons Crystalli*, or the *Crystalline* Mountain, so called from the abundance of *Crystall*, which is found therein; 3. *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the *Sun*, of excessive height; 4. *Montes Sal-Nitri*, so called from their abounding in that kind of Mineral; and 5. the Mountains of *Cabambe*, rich Mines of Silver.

It containeth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general Muster in the *Stile Imperial*; wherein their King calleth himself King of *Congo*, *Bamba*, *Sango*, *Samdi*, *Bangu*, *Batti*, *Pemba*, *Abundi*, *Matana*, *Quijoni*, *Angola*, and *Cacango*; Lord of the *Congemes*, *Amozale*, *Languelungi*, *Anzuichi*, *Cucchi*, and *Zuungbi*. Many of these not so well discovered, as to afford us any Matter fit for our Discourse; the Principal of those that be, are,

1. *ANGOLA*, bounded on the South with *Cafraria*; on the North, with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*; on the East, with some part of *Zanzibar*; on the West, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean. The Country rich in Mines of Silver and most excellent Copper; some store of Kine and Horses brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their Tails, (the wearing whereof is held for a special Ornament) than keep for any other use; their chiefest Diet being Dogs, which they fat for the Shamblers; and to that Dainty so affected, that at the first coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give 20 Slaves and upwards for a good large Dog. By this we may conjecture somewhat at the Nature of the People, who, besides this, are said to be much given to *Sorcery* and *Divinations* by the flight of Birds; Skillful in Medicinal Herbs and Poysons, and by familiarity with the *Devil* able to tell things to come. Permitted, as most *Pagans* are, to have as many Wives as they will; who with the rest of the Women, whether Maids, or Widows, use at the first sight of every *New-Moon* to turn up their bare Bums in defiance of her, as the Cause of their troublesome Purgations.

In this Country are the Mountains called *Cantabaries*, rich in Mines of Silver; but those Mines not suffered to be digged, for fear of drawing some unnecessary War upon them: so that they use Glass Beads for Money, and therewith also do adorn the Persons of greatest Eminence. Their principal City called *Cabazza*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal Residence of their Kings; but not else observable.

B b b b b

This

This Country was first discovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Diego Can*, Anno 1476. the King hereof at that time *Vassal* unto him of *Congo*, and so continued till that King did embrace the Gospel: whereupon they revolted from him, and have since subsisted of themselves without such dependance. At first they held good correspondency with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free Traffick in their Dominions: but after their revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals* were in league, they put to death as many as they found in *Cabazza*, An. 1578. under colour of some pretended treason. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governour of these parts for the King of *Portugal*, arming such people as he had, with two Gallies and some other Vessels, passed up the River of *Coanza*, wasting the Country on both sides. Against whom the King of *Angola* raised an Army of a Million of men (as some Writers tell us:) but amongst those multitudes of Men, there were so few Soldiers, that an handful of the *Portugals*, aided with some of the Forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, An. 1582. Since that, the Trade with *Portugal* was revived again, and the King hereof hath expressed some good affections unto *Christianity*; sending unto the King of *Congo* for some *Priests* to instruct him in it, but obtained them not; the state of *Religion* in that Kingdom being then declining. The *Portugals* having thus gotten the upper hand, built, or repaired a strong Fort, situate near a convenient Bay, by which they did not only secure their Trade but command a great part of the Country, till dispossessed thereof by the treachery and fallhood of the *Hollanders*, An. 1640. or thereabouts: For the *Portugals* having withdrawn themselves from the Crown of *Spain*, a Cessation from all Hostility with them was proclaimed in *Holland*, and not long after, a firm peace made between the Nations; in the Articles whereof it was conditioned, that this peace should not begin in the *East-India*, till the end of the year, nor in *Brasil*, till the end of half a year from the making thereof. Which being obtained, they gave order to their Fleets and Forces which were abroad, to make themselves Masters of any thing then belonging to the *Portugals*, which they could lay hold on; who following these instructions, and Anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, were by the *Portugals* received with joy into the Castles as their Special Friends, which presently they possessed themselves of, turning the poor *Portugals* in a very weak Bark to seek new adventures. But of this more hereafter in the Isle of *St. Thomas*.

To this King belong also the two Provinces of *Matana* and *Quifoma*, though both used in the titles of the King of *Congo*: of which the first lying towards the Sea, is said to be of a wholesom air, and a fertile soil; outwardly furnished with fruits, and inwardly with mines of *Cryſtal* and others metals; but not very rich, for want of some convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great Lake called *Aque Lunda*, was once governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth*; but tributary at that time to the King of *Congo*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke by reason of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their wars against him.

2. *BAMBA* hath on the South the River of *Coanza*, by which parted from *Angola*; on the North, the River *Ambrize*, by which divided from *Songo*; on the East, *Pemba*; on the West, the *Aethiopic* or *Atlantick* Ocean. The Country rich in Mines of Silver, well stored with Beasts and Birds, as well tame as wild. Amongst the Birds, *Parrots* both green and grey, and many which are taught to sing; not much inferior for their musick to the Birds of the *Canaries*. Amongst the Beasts of most note, is that called the *Zebra*, shaped like a *Mule*; but from the ridge of the back to the belly so streaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and those streaks so naturally set in such even proportion, as yieldeth to the eye a most pleasing object. But wild, and of so swift a foot, that

velox ut Zebra, to be as swift as a *Zebra*, is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Portugals*. The Men so strong, that it is said of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Ox, or strike a slave quite thorow the middle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a Vessel of wine, weighing 325 Pound weight, containing the fourth part of a Butt; and hold it so till it quite be drawn out. It containeth in it many *Seignories*, most of them called by the names of their principal Towns. The chief of which, 1. *S. Paul*, situate on the Sea side, opposite to the Isle of *Loanda*; inhabited for the most part by *Portugal* Families. 2. *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is situate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Loſe* and *Ambrizi*.

3. *PEMBA* hath on the West, *Bamba*; on the East, the Lake *Zombra*; and the River *Barbela*; on the North, *Batta*; and on the South, *Angola*, Esteemed to be the richest and most pleasant Country of all *Manicongo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beset with *Palm-trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are always green. The Water of so good a nature, that it never hurtech any that drink of it: the Air exceeding wholesom, and earth as fruitful; productive of all sorts of grain, but specially of that which they call *Luco*, in form like *mustard-seed*, but bigger, which they grind in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferiour to Wheat. The people much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbarism* since the coming of the *Portugals* thither; whom they imitate both in behaviour and apparel. So well skilled in the vertues of *Medicinal* herbs, that every one is his own *Physician*, *Chirurgion*, and *Apothecary*. Anciently clothed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers; retained still by the *Villagers* and poorer sort, in some part of the Country. Their chief City formerly had the name of *Banza*, so called, because the King's Court (as the word doth signify) but since the receiving of the Gospel it is called *S. Saviours*: distant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (since it became *Christian*) with a Bishop's See, and a fair Cathedral, in which are 28 *Canons*, with other Officers and Ornaments accustomably belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it self situate on the side of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a spacious Plain, two Dutch miles in compass, full of Villages, Burroughs, and scattered Houses; which are thought to have 100000 persons, most of them *Portugals* and their Servants.

4. *BATTA* hath on the West and South, *Pemba*; on the East, the Mountains of the *Sun*, and those called *Salmiri*; on the North, *Pango*. Of the Soil and People there is nothing singular to be said, but that the Inhabitants hereof are more Military, and better furnished for the Wars, than the rest of these Provinces: necessitated thereunto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and savage people, dwelling about the spurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jaggas* or *Giaccis*. These naturally and originally of the Land of *Negroes*, abandoned the parts about *Sierra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 12000 fell into the Mountainous part of this Region, under the Conduct of one *Elembe*, where they are since grown into a people, and become a terrour to their Neighbours. Greedy devourers of mans flesh, which they prefer before that of Beeves or Mutton; not yet so qualified by the change of their Country, as to build Houses, sow or plant, or to breed up Cattel; finding it far the easier life, to maintain themselves by the labour and spoil of others. And which is yet most strange of all, though they have each of them many Wives, ten or twenty apiece, yet they have no Children, but strangle them as soon as born, lest they should be an hinderance to their often wandrings. But as *Pliny* once said of the *Lisseni*, *Gens æterna est in qua natus nascitur*; so we may also say of these, that they do not want succession, though they breed no Children: selecting out of their Captives and stolen Children, some of either Sex, (but neither

neither steal nor take them captive, under twenty years old) to the *Seminny* (as it were) of a new posterity. Against these *Abnizers* thole of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwise able to defend themselves, their Wives and Child en, from their hands and teeth: insomuch as this one Province, though none of the biggell, is able to raise 70000 Men, well armed, and fit for any service. The principal of their Towns is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province, situate on the Banks of the River *Lalmda*; and the Seat of the *Pee-Roy*, who is always of the *Black Royal*, honoured sometimes with sitting at the King's own Table, which none else may do; and of so great authority in all *Consultations*, that no body dares to contradict him.

5. *PANGO* is bounded on the South with *Batta*; on the East, extended to the Mountains of the *Sam*, which close up this Country: on the North with *Sunda*; and on the West, with parts of *Pamba*, and *Sango*. Of the people, little singular, of the Country, less. Neighbouring on the North-East towards *Sarra de Crystal*, with the *Languelangi*, supposed by some to be the *Æthiopic Hefferii*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*: a barbarous Nation but of so considerable power, that they are found amongst the rest in the *Sith Impud.* This once a Kingdom of itself, not subject till of late times to the Kings of *Congo*. The chief Town of it, called *Pango*, is seated on the Western Bank of the River *Buleb*, the ordinary Residence of the *Pee-Roy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6. *SUNDA* is bounded on the South with *Batta*: on the North with the great River *Zaire*; on the East with *Barbele*: and on the West with part of *Sango*. The Country, rich in several Metals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron before any other, because it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives and Armour; well furnished also with *Martins*, *Sables*, and other Furs of great esteem among Foreign Merchants. This is the best *Region* of this Kingdom, not above 40 miles in breadth, betwixt *Batta* and the River of *Zaire*: not much more in length. Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*, which it communiceth to the whole.

7. *SONGO* is bounded on the East with *Batta* and *Anzichana*: on the West with the *Æthiopic*, or *Atlantic* Ocean: on the North with the Kingdom of *Loango*: and on the South with the River *Ambriza*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bambo*. It lieth on both sides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here so turbulent and broad, and so full of *flands*, that the one part of it hath little or no Commerce with the other. The chief Town hereof called *Songo*, gives this name to the Country; in which is nothing singular for the Soil or People.

8. *ANZICHANA* hath on the West, part of *Songo* and *Loango*, extended thence unto the East, as far almost as the Lake of *Zaire*; on the North, some part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South, the *Zaire*. So called from the *anziqui*, the Inhabitants of it; the cruellest *Cannibals* in the World: for they do not only eat their Enemies, but their Friends and Kinsfolk. And that they may be sure not to want these Dainties, they have *Shambles* of Mans flesh, as in other parts of Beef or Mutton. So covetous withal, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when sold joint by joint, than if sold alive; they will cut them out, and sell them so upon the *Shambles*. Yet with these barbarous qualities they have many good. Assumed to be so cunning at the Bow and Arrows, that they will discharge 28 Arrows (for so many do their *Quivers* hold) before the first of them falls to the ground: and of so great fidelity to their Masters, and to those which trust them, that they will rather chuse to be killed, then either to abuse their trust, or betray their

Masters: for that cause more esteemed by the *Peoples*, than their other *Slaves*. And for the same, and that cause, worthy of so good a Country; said to be rich in Mines, of Copper, and very plentiful of *Snack* both red and grey, which tempered with *Ungur*, is found by the *Peoples* to be a certain remedy against the *Pox*; as the *Snack* thereof against the *Malady*. Towns they have none, or none at least of any reckoning, which deserve place here.

9. *LOANGO* hath on the East the *Atlantic* Ocean; on the West the *Æthiopic* or *Atlantic* Ocean; on the North *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Gambia*, in the Land of *Negroes*; and on the South, the Province of *Sango*, from which parted by the River *Loango*, whence it hath its name. The Country very hot, as lying under the *Line*, but well peopled, indifferently fruitful, and more stored with Elephants, than any other of these parts; stretching in length 200 miles within the Land and for the most part very well watered. The Inhabitants whom they call *Bramies*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of late time Christianized (as the *Anziqui* and others of the Barbarous Nations) unto *Circumcision*. Governed by a King of their own, subject to the King of *Congo*: but of late time, both he and the King of *Anziqui* (for they are still under the command of one *Sovereign Prince*) have been at war from that subjection; though still the King of *Congo* is called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mami Loango*. Their Towns of note, 1. *Pengo*, the chief to the rest. 2. *Ambriza*, the chief more Northwards and within the Land; the Inhabitants of which Towns, being more civil than the rest, appear then fives with the leaves of *Palm-Trees*; but not so well skilled in the nature of that excellent Tree, as the more civilized people of the Realm of *Congo*, who out of the leaves thereof well cleansed and purged, draw a fine long thread, of which they make Velvees, Demasks, satins, Taffataes, Sarcenets, and the like fine stuffs.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom seated on the Continent, let us next look upon the Islands. The principal of which *LOANGO*, situate over against the Town of *Sunda* in the Province of *Bambo*, said to be first made out of the sands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Congo*, cast into an heap, and last made into an Island. Now beautified with a fair Haven, of the same name with the Island, possessed by the *Portugals*. The Island delicate of Rivers, but so well furnished with Waters, that every where within less than half a yard digging, they find sweet and good Waters, so contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be salt and brackish; when it floweth towards the Island, then most fresh and sweet. But most remarkable is this Island for the *Cock fishing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, take up together with the sands, in baskets, and put them from the sand, as they lye on the shore; the *fish* of which being naturally distinguished into divers colours, serve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, instead of Money; which is a matter of such moment unto this King, that he entertains a Governour in the Island for no other reason, but to take care about this fishing.

Besides this, there are many Islands in the River of *Zaire*, now subject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars against them, fighting in Boats which they made of the Bodies of a Tree, by them called *Laconde*. The Tree so big, that two or three Men or more are not able to fathom it: insomuch that many times a Boat is made of one of the largest of them, able to contain 200 Men. Upon the shores of these Islands, and in other of their *Bays* and *Creeks*, they have so great numbers of *Anchovies*, that in Winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of those several Members, and of the rest expressed in the *Stile Imperial*, is the Realm of *Congo*: so called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now distinguished from the rest by the name of *Pemba*; which being of more power, or better fortune, than any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and name unto them. Discovered by the *Portugals*, under *Diego Chm, An. 1486.* at what time these Kings were at the

greatest: called by their Subjects *Mani Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the Word *Mani*, signifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated since to the Kingdom also. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath since happened in this Kingdom, may best be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of CONGO.

1436. 1. *John*, not so called till converted to the Faith of *Christ*; and then *Baptized* by this name, in honour of *John* the Second King of *Portugal*, Anno 1490. in whose Reign this discovery and Conversion happened.
2. *Alphonso*, eldest Son of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Christian* Faith, and for that opposed by *Panse Aquitine* his younger Brother: whom with a very small Army, zealously invoking the assistance of *Jesus*, he is said to have vanquished. A Prince, who, during his long Reign of 50 years, did seriously promote the *Gospel*, and caused all *Idols* in his Kingdom to be overthrown: and Churches to be built, and furnished in convenient places.
3. *Pedro*, the Son of *Alphonso*, in whose time was founded the Colledge of 28 *Canons*, in the Cathedral Church of *S. Crosse*, in the Town of *S. Saviours*.
4. *Francisco*, the Son of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.
5. *Diego*, or *James*, one of the Kinsmen of *Francisco*, in whose time Religion growing into discredit, by the scandalous lives of some of the *Secular Clergy*; *John* the Third, King of *Portugal*, sent four *Jesuits* thither; who are said to have converted in five Months 5000 Persons, and to build three Churches.
6. *Henry*, the brother of *Diego*, after a sharp War touching the Succession, in which were slain all the *Portugals* of *S. Saviours*, except the *Priests*, at last succeeded: not long after slain in battel against the *Anziques*.
7. *Alvarez*, the Son of *Henry*, forced by the *Jagg*es or *Giacchi* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himself, together with the *Portugal* *Priests*, to an Island of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till restored to his Crown by the Aid of *Sebastiam* King of *Portugal*, after by Famine he had lost almost all his company.
8. *Alvares* II. Son of *Alvares* the first, who much solicited *Sebastiam* and *Henry*, Kings of *Portu-*

gal, to send him a new supply of *Preachers*; the old store being wasted in the Islands of *Zaire*.

9. *Alvarez* III. Son to *Alvarez* the Second, not being born in Lawful Wedlock, was opposed by one of his Sisters and a younger Brother, both of Lawful birth; whom he overthrew, Anno 1587. and in the place of the Victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the *Forces* and *Revenues* of these Kings of *Congo*, I am able to say nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great Power and Riches. His *Riches* visible by the great *Treasures* which he draweth from the *Mines* of Silver, and of other Metals in his Kingdom; from the Trade of *Cockle-shells*, the only Money of his Realm, which he keeps wholly to himself; the great gain which he makes by *Slaves*, and from Elephants Teeth; the Presents which he hath in way of Tribute from the King of *Angola*. And though it be not easie to say what he layeth up yearly, because he hath not his *Revenue* in Coin, as most Princes have, yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furnished with all things as any Monarch in *Africk*.

As for his *Forces*, they consist most in the multitudes of his Subjects; which were they well armed and used to the Wars, would make him formidable to the rest of the *African* Princes. And though he hath no Garrisons or Towns of War, but must trust, if once invaded, unto *Castles of Bones*; yet he doth rest secure enough from all Fear of Danger, except out of *Europe*: being able to raise against his *Rebels*, or any of his invading Neighbours, 400000 Men out of *Bamba* only, all armed according to their Manner, and 70000 Men at least, well exercised in Wars against the *Jagg*es, from the Province of *Batta*: besides what may be drawn from his other Provinces.

The *Arms* of this King are *Mars*, five Swords meeting in Base *Sol*: which Coat was taken by *Alphonso*, the second King in this Catalogue, because in the Battel which he fought against *Panse Aquitine*, he and his Souldiers saw (or supposed they saw) such a number of shining Swords hanging in the Air, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And so much for ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

O F

The ISLES of AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Isles of *AFRICK*, we must observe another course than that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Asia*: these Islands not belonging to any part of the Continent, nor under the Command of any great Prince in *Africk*, in the Account of whose Estates they might be considered; but being all of them Independent and *sui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themselves apart. In our *Chorography* of which and the Stories of them, (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to Travel; beginning first with those that lie in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and so proceeding by the *Cape of Good Hope*, through the Main *Atlantick Ocean*, to the Straits of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the shorter passage into *America*, and there our Sea & this *Mozambique* conclude our Journey. These then we will consider either joint or separate, as delivered to us by the names of 1. The *Æthiopick Islands*. 2. *Socotara*. 3. *Madagascar*. 4. *Mobelia*. 5. *Mauritius*. 6. *St. Hellens*. 7. *Ascension*. 8. *St. Thomas*. 9. The *Prince's Island*. 10. The *Island of Annobon*. 11. The *Gorgades*, or *Islands of Cape Verde*. 12. The *Canaries*, or the *Fortunate Islands*. 13. *Madera*. 14. The *Island of Holy Port*; and 15. The *Hesperides*. Of all which, the four first only are dispersed in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*; all the rest scattered up and down in the main *Atlantick*, on this side of the famous Promontory, called the *Cape of Good Hope*.

I. The ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS.

I. THE ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS, so called, because they lie upon the Coast of *Æthiopia Superior*, together with all those which lie on the further side of the *Cape of Good Hope*, or scattered, or dispersed in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, (for by those names these mighty Oriental Seas, are most commonly known) of which we have spoke more at large when we were in *Arabia*, and therefore shall say nothing here which concerns the same; but for the Islands of those Seas, such as we comprehend here under the Name and Notion of *Æthiopick Islands*, which were only known unto the Ancients, they are more in number than in weight; some of them situate within the Straits of the *Red Sea*, or the Gulf of *Arabia*, others without those Straits, in the open Ocean.

1. Of those within the Straits, not reckoning such as lie upon the Shores of *Arabia Felix*, of which we have already spoken; there is 1. *Astarte*, or *Astrata*, now called *Causa*. 2. *Ara Palladis*, so called from some Altar of that Goddess which was there erected. 3. *Gypseria*, by *Pliny* called *Cypria*, but *Gypsis* in *Justinian's Code*, renowned in former time for its plenty of Metals. 4. *Malaria*, or the *Fortunate Island*, so called from the fertility and pleasures of it. 5. *Orneon*, or the *Isle of Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein. 6. *Daphnia*, by *Ptolemy* called *Daphnine*, opposite to a famous Port Town of the same name in the Continent. 7. *Bacchias*, so called from *Bacchus*, unto whom consecrated. 8. *Anti Bacchias*, so named because opposite to it. 9. *Alambine*, supposed by some to be now called *Angbotina*. 10. *Insula Diodori*, conceived by the Learned to be the same which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and giveth name unto the Straits, or entrance of the Bay of *Arabia*, now called the Straits of *Babel Mandel*. 11. *Isidis Insula*, memorable for a Temple Dedicated to the Goddess *Isis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Isidis*; the same which is now called *Pafana*, as *Bel Forest* thinketh. 12.

Mundi, an Island in the Bay of *Avalites*, opposite to a noted *Empory* of the same name on the shores of that Bay. Besides all which, we find in *Ptolemy* two Islands by the name of *Thriftides*; two more called *Chelomitides*, or *Catbratæ*, two others passing by the name of *Gomadeo*; together with the Isles of *Myron*, *Pan*, and that called *Insula Magorum*: which make up One and twenty in all, but of no Note or Observation in the course of Business, or the conduct of humane Affairs.

Those of most Note in the open Ocean, which still preserveth the name of the *Red Sea*, and is sometimes called the *Indian*, sometimes the *Arabian Ocean*, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hypadis*; are but four in number, that is to say, 1. *Myrica*, by the Translator of *Ptolemy* called *Myrsiaca*; 2, 3. Two Islands called by the name of *Menan*, a Degree more Northwards than the other: and 4. *Amicusia*, as *Stephanus*; or *Amici Insula*, as called by *Ptolemy*, the most North of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the most noted Island of this Sea. I know that many Learned Men will have this Island to be that, which *Ptolemy* and others of the Ancients call *Dioscoridis*: but because *Dioscoridis*, by all those Ancients, is made to be an Island of *Arabia Felix*, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Isle of *Africk*; I can by no means yield unto it. Again, it is affirmed by our best Modern Geographers, that *Socotara* lieth over against *Cape Guardafu*, (the *Arumæa* of *Ptolemy*, as before is said) from which distant not above 30 Leagues: which site and distance fore well with *Amicusia*, but can by no means be applied unto *Dioscoridis*, *Amicusia* being placed but two Degrees on the East of that Promontory, in the Longitude of 85. whereas *Dioscoridis* is situate from it almost four Degrees in the Longitude of 86. and 40 Minutes; besides as great, or greater difference in their several Latitudes. So that supposing for granted that *Socotara* is that Island which was anciently called *Amicusia*; and having cleared my way so far, I now proceed to the Description and Affairs thereof.

2. SOCOTARA.

2. SOCOTARA, the greatest Island of these Shores, is situate, as before was said, against *Cape Guardafu*, from which distant about 30 Leagues, *Abadalenry* a small Island lying in the midst, that is to say, 15 Leagues from the *Cape*, and 14 from the Island. The length hereof 60 Miles, 25 in breadth; divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height; the top of which are for the most part covered with Sands. *Mamdeslo* saith it is seated 21. 40 Lat. and is 25 Leagues long, and but 10 broad, indifferently well Peopled, and still subject to the King of *Arabia*, under whom Governed by a Sultan. The Inhabitants are Lean, of a dark Complexion, and very Laborious, and Temperate. p. 15. The Principal Town is *Tamany*; The Island extremely vexed with Winds, and molested with Drinets, inasmuch as it is destitute of most things necessary for the life of Man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but some small quantity of Mill, Dates, and some kind of Fruits. Provided notwithstanding of some good Pastures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furnished with Medicinal Drugs, as *Cinnabar*, *Dragons Blood*, which is a Red Gum issuing from the Bark of a Tree; and the best Aloes in the World, from hence called *Aloes*.

Aloes Socotrina. The Nubian Geographer makes this one of the most Fruitful and Beautiful Islands in the World, and saith this Aloes is fetched from the Leaf of a Tree, gathered in July, and the Juice exposed in Brass Pots to the Sun in August. The Inhabitants in his time were all Christians and Greeks, and, as he fancied, brought thither by Alexander the Great, after his Conquest of India, to gratifie Aristotle his Master. It lies, saith he, (p. 22.) two Days Sail from the Continent of Arabia Felix, over against Hales, a City of Hadramut, p. 23. This Island is of great extent, fruitful as to Trees, but especially the Aloes Tree. The North-West part of it the Continent of Arabia; and therefore it is esteemed a part of Arabia on the African Shore. Melinda and Monbaza lie over against this Island. Nub. p. 23. By which it is plain he had a very false Notion of this Coast of Africa; for Socotara lies nearest to the Cape Guardafu, on the Coast of Africa, 60 English Miles from the Coast of Arabia; and not 40 from the Coast of Africa: and Melinda lies 12 Degrees more to the South, and 330 Miles more to the West. Mr. Pory makes it 60 Miles long, and 20 broad, divided with a high ridge of Mountains, subject to most terrible Winds, and now destitute of Victuals, by reason of the Sloth and Ignorance of the Inhabitants; for it hath no Wheat, Rice, Wine, nor Honey; but hath a small quantity of Millet, and in its Vallies some Fruits and Pasture, and is only frequented for its Aloes. The Portuguese have in it the small Towns of Coro and Benin, in which the King of Fartac in Arabia had a Castle, which they took, and after abandoned.

The People of an Ash-colour, very rude and barbarous; their Bread for the most part of Dates; the rest of their Food being Milk and Butter; their Hair long, and their Cloathing only enough to hide their Nakedness. The Women as good Soldiers as the Men, and countenancing, or occasioning the Tradition of the Arabians, that they came from the Amazons; and the better Husbands of the two, governing all Affairs both within and without. All of them by profession Christians, who have an ancient Church Walled about, with three Doors and three Allies, governed by a Bishop of their own, with some few Priests; but ignorant enough of all things which concern Religion. More generally Circumcised than Christiansed, though both used among them. Jacobites in Sect, as the Abissines their Neighbours are; and zealous worshippers of the Cross, which they always hang about their Necks. So pertinaciously addicted unto Magick, and therein so expert, that they bring incredible things to pass; not to be weaned from those Black Arts, though the Bishop Excommunicate all such as use them. They hold Opinion, That S. Thomas suffered Shipwrack upon their Coast, as he sailed towards India; and that his Ship being drawn to Land, was turned into a Church; but it appeareth neither by their Life, or Doctrines, that any Apostolical Man hath set foot amongst them. They have no use of Navigation or Traffick, and wear coarse Cloth or Skins of Beasts: they fight with Bowes and ill Swords. They are proudly conceited of their Nobility, but very Ignorant and Poor. These are the Relicks of the old Greek Colony, mentioned by Nubienfis, who have forgot whence they came. They live for the most part in Caves or Cabins, of no other stuff than the Boughs of Trees; so that we are to look for few Towns among them. The Principal, 1. Socotara, giving name to the Island, the place of the King's Residence, and a Bishop's See. 2. Tamarind, and 3. Deliba, two Port Towns, and reasonably well Traded, in the hands of the Natives: as 4. Coro, and 5. Benin, two other Ports, possessed and Garrisoned by the Portuguese. The King thereof a Vassal to the King of Fartac, one of the petit Princes of Arabia Felix, not far from Aden: in Habit and Religion Turkish: attended on when the Relater was there, Anno 1614. by five Camels and five Horses only, yet those all in the Island. An Author Printed at the end of Leo Africanus in English, saith, This Island was conquered by the King

of Fartac in 1482. from whose Dominion they were freed by Tristan d'Acuna a Portuguese, twenty years after; but the Portuguese deserted them soon after.

Nigh hereunto are two Islands, (those possibly which Ptolemy calleth Menan) the one inhabited by Men only, and the other by Women, who do meet at their accustomed times to preserve their kind, but make no long stay; the Air of the one being found unhealthy for the constitution of the other Sex. The other Islands of these Coasts, scattered up and down in the Bay of Barbaria, (but not known by any name in the time of Ptolemy) as 1. Dor Garcia. 2. The Three Brethren. 3. S. Brandon. 4. Francis. 5. Mascadenna. 6. Comoro. And many others of as small note, are not worth the speaking of.

3. MADAGASCAR.

3. **M**ADAGASCAR, the greatest Island in the World, is situate over against *Mozambique* in *Aethiopia Inferior*, supposed to be the *Menubias* of Ptolemy, the only Island by him named on the Coast of that Country; but by the Portuguese called the Isle of St. Lawrence, because discovered by them on the day of that Saint, An. 1506. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 Miles (which is longer than Italy) and 400 in compass: the middle part hereof opposite to the Promontory, which Ptolemy calleth *Prossium*, now the point of *Mozambique*, from which distant 170 Miles: in reference to the Heavenly Bodies, situate from the 17th Degree of Southern Latitude, to the 26th.

The Country plentiful of all things necessary for the Life of Man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Honey, Wax, Cotton-Wool, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wild and tame; Lemons, and other cooling Fruits, some store of Ginger, Cloves, but little different from those of India, Red Sanders, Saffron, Amber, and some Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to say any thing of their Beefs and Muttons, so large and good, and so good cheap, that for a Two-penny Bead, or some such trifle: they will sell Beefs and Sheep of good taste and bigness; such numbers of Elephants, that they send thence yearly great store of Ivory. And amongst other rare Fruits, they have plenty of those which they call Cocos, or Coconuts: a kind of Date as big as a Cabbage; the Liquor in it, about the quantity of a pint, tastes like Wine and Sugar; the Kernel big enough to content two Men: and like *Good Ale*, it affords not only Meat and Drink, but Cloathing; as also Furniture for their Houses, Tackle for their Ships, Fuel for the Fire, and Timber for Building; the body of the Tree being strait and high, and towards the top diversified into many Branches. A Country far too good for so bad a People. For they, as Travellers report, and most Writers testify, are Treacherous, Inhospitable, Ignorant both of Prayers and Festivals; destitute both of the distinction of Time into years and Months, not knowing any proper Names for the days of the Week, nor able to reckon above ten; naked, except their Privities, which they cover with Cotton; Idolaters in the mid-land parts, and Mahometans upon the Shores, commendable only for their Hate to Polygamy, and restraining themselves to one Wife; the defiling of the Marriage Bed, severely punished: but otherwise so eager upon Copulation, that their Boys, at the age of twelve Years, and their Girls at Ten, think they stay too long if they keep their Virginities any longer: some of them, like *Quartilla* in *Patrenius Arbitrator*, begin so early, *ut nunquam meminerint se Virgines fuisse*, that they remember not the time when they lost their Maidenheads. Of colour they are Black, and of strong Composition; their Breasts and Faces cut and pinkt, to appear more beautiful. Much given unto the Wars, well armed according to their Country manner, and exceeding good Archers. Amongst them there are some White People, said to come from China. They are large of Stature, and exceeding Black, much addicted to

to Fishing, great Eaters, and Nature has accordingly provided them plenty of Cattel, Fish, Fowl, Fruits, and whatever is necessary for the Life of Man, which they use without Labour or Care, regarding neither Silver nor Gold, nor any thing else but Beads and Bracelets for Ornament, and Mulick and Dancing for their Recreation. *Nubiensis*, p. 28. calls this Island *Saranda*, and saith it is 1200 miles in Circuit, yielding Camphor, Sugar, and Millet; the Sea yields Pearls, and the Land Spice: this Author wrote in the 12th Century. P. 31. he calls it *Sarandib*, and saith, it is 80 Leagues square, having a vast high Mountain, called *Rabon*, and it afforded the *Jacinth*, and in the Valley the *Diamond* is found, and many Spices and Perfumes, as *Lignum Aloes*, &c. In its Rivers are found the Beryl, and on its Shores, Pearls. The King's Residence is at *Aghena*, who has 16 Councillors, four *Christians*, four *Mahometans*, four *Jews*, and four *Pagans*, &c. who professed all sorts of Learning. There is no City in it. See *Pory*, p. 49. who maketh it 400 miles in compass, and bigger than *Italy*. The Inland Inhabitants are *Negroes*, but on the Coast live *Arabians*, and in some places *Chinese*: As to the Fertility, he agrees with the rest, and adds to its Commodities Silver. *Struys*, p. 15. adds Medicinal Balsams, Oyles, Roots, coarse Gold, and the best Steel in the World.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their Names I find not: and at the Mouths of those Rivers some convenient Havens, into which they admit the Foreign Merchants, but suffer none to come on Land; which the Merchant hath no cause to be sorry for, finding himself not safe on Shipboard from their treacherous Practices; so that we can give but small account of their Towns and Cities except it be the bare recital of their Names; as, 1. *St. Augustines*, on a fair Bay in the South-west point. 2. *Gangomar*, in the North-east of it. 3. *Antaloff*. 4. *Point-Antogil*. 5. *St. Joabe*. 6. *Matatana*. 7. *Ang-da*. 8. *Herendo*. 9. *Andro-arco*. And 10. *Roma*, or *New-Rome*, so entituled by some zealous *Romanists*, in hope to have it thought that the Popes of *Rome* have got some footing in this Island.

This Island known but very imperfectly in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, who telleth us many strange things of it; but none more strange than that of the Bird called *Ruck*, of such incredible strength and bigness, that it could snatch up an Elephant as easily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Discovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506 as before was said; and since frequented by the *English* and *Holland* Merchants: by whom we are informed no further, touching the Estate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four Parts, under so many Kings, each of them in continual Wars against one another, but well enough agreed to defend themselves against the coming in of Strangers. Yet, as some say, they would be well enough content with an *English* Plantation: either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more Courteous than the *Portugals*, and not so Covetous as the *Dutch*; or else by the Strength of our Shipping, and the Reputation of our Interest in it, to keep off all others. The *French* have of late settled some Colonies on the Southern Shore; and *Stephen Flacourt*, a *Frenchman*, has given a large account of this Island.

4. MOHELLA, and 5. MAURITIUS Island.

ADjoining to *Madagascar*, and as it were attending on it, I find divers Islands; and some on the North-west we have, 1. *Adottey*. 2. *Chamroe*. 3. *Mobelia*, and 4. *Joanna* Island, on the East. 5. The Island of *Mauritius*; and 6. *England's Forrest*. Of these *Mauritius* is the greatest, but *Mobelia* the best Inhabited.

4. MOHELLA, situate on the Northwest of *Madagascar*, is about 23 miles in length, and 10 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens, Coco Nuts, Limons, Oranges, Pom-Citrons, Pulse, Sugar-Canes, store of Fish taken on the Shores, and other Necessaries. It is of great use

to Ships that sail for *India*, the *Red-Sea*, and *Persia*. The People of complexion Black, of composition Large and Strong; Courageous, Affable, less Treacherous than their Neighbours of *Madagascar*. Of the same Language and Religion with those of *Arabia*, from whence they seem to have descended; but by reason of their Commerce and Intercourse with the *Portugals*, they speak that Tongue also. The Women of the like complexion; to amend which, and seem more lovely, they Pink their Arms and Faces in several shapes. Both Sexes no otherwise Apparellled than their Natural Garments, with some *Plantane* Leaves about their middle to hide their Shame.

Their Religion that of *Mahomet*, as before is said; their Priests in great Esteem among them; so their Temples also: which they keep clean and neatly matted; not suffering any Man to enter with his Shoes on his Feet. Their chief Town *Meriangua*, at the West-end of the Isle, strong and well Garrisoned: Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities; one of the last Kings leaving two Daughters, the one married to a Native, the other to an *Arabian* Lord.

5. Larger than this, on the East of *Madagascar*, is the Isle of MAURITIUS, so called by the *Hollanders*, in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whose time they first set footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Cerne*, and by some *Cygnæa*. In compass about 100 miles; well stored with Beeves, Hogs, Goats, most sorts of Fish: and liberally endowed with all the Blessings of Nature, sweet Waters, most delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any use both of Food and Building; plenty of Ebony of all colours, but the best Coal-black: Yet altogether destitute of humane Inhabitants; insomuch as we may say of this, as the Poet of the World, before Man was made;

*Sanctius his Animal, mentisque capaxius altæ,
Deerat adhuc, & quod dominari in cætera posset.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

*But yet the Chief, with supream Power possést,
Was wanting, he that should command the rest.*

In the Year 1640. the *Hollanders* began to supply this Defect, by a Colony they sent thither to inhabit it; for the Defence of which they built a Fort.

*Of the ATLANTICK OCEAN, and
The Isles therein.*

HAVING thus looked upon such Islands as lie upon the Eastern side of *Africk* in the *Indian Ocean*, let us come homeward by the *Cape of Good Hope*, into the main *Atlantick*, the greatest body of Waters which is given to us by one name in any of our *Cosmographers*, either old or new: a Name peculiar to that part of the Western Ocean, which lieth between the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the Land of *Negroes*, to which Mount *Atlas* sheweth it self with a cloudy top, and gives name to the Seas adjoining, but generally communicated to all that vast Region of Waters which lieth between *Spain* and *Africk* on the one side, and the *New World*, or *America* on the other side: Extended further by *Strabo*, and some other of the ancient Writers; who not knowing any thing of the interposition of *America*, carry the Name of the *Atlantick* to the Shores of *India*, which they make to be terminated by this on the East and South. *Macrobius* goeth farther in it, affirming positively, *omnem terram, quæ à nobis colitur, Atlanticæ mari (quod Oceanum appellamus) circumfundit*, that the whole Habitable World (so far as it was then known and Peopled) was compassed round about with the *Atlantick Ocean*. The like affirmed by

by *Julius Firmicus*: also by *Aristotle* in his Book *De mundo*, and by others, who have took it upon their Authority. And though some parts hereof, which wash the Western Shores of *Ethiopia Inferior*, be called the *Ethiopick Ocean*; yet that it doth derogate no more from the great extent that is given formerly to the main *Atlantick*, than that some parts of the *Mediterranean* should be called *Mare Siculum*, *Sardoun*, *Tyrrhenum*, *Criticum*, according to the shores of those several places which it passeth by; which having said in general of the Sea it self, according to our method in other places, we next proceed unto the rest of the *African Islands*, which we named before, but could not meet with but in this Sea and this side of *Africa*.

6. *St. HELENS*; and 7. *The Isles of ASCENSION*.

AND the first Isle we meet with in this side of *Africa* is, 6. *The Isle of St. Helens*, situate on the West of the *Cape of Good Hope*, and in the 16 degree of the Southernly Latitude, no other Island interposing betwixt *Madagascar* and it, except those of *Don Alvarez*, and of *Tristram de Acugna*, near the *Cape* it self; but of so little note, as not worth the Naming. The Island very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with so steep an Ascent, that the Mariners have amongst them a merry Saying that a *Man may chuse whether he will break his Heart going up, or his Neck going down*.

It was thus called, because discovered by the *Portugals* on *St. Helens day*; not then inhabited, nor since; the King of *Spain* suffering none to dwell there, because it had been an unlawful *Receptacle* for *Uncustomed Goods*; whereby he lost exceedingly both in *Power* and *Profit*. Stored by the *Portugals* at the first *Discovery*, with *Goats*, *Hogs*, *Hens*, and other *Creatures*: as also with *Figs*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*, and the like *Fruits*, which there thrive exceedingly, and grow all the Year long, intended by them for a *Stage* in their going and coming to and from the *Indies*: in which they might refresh themselves, and bestow their *Sick*, whence they are taken off by the next years *Fleet*. Used for the same purpose by the *English* and *Hollanders*, who so domineer about the Island, that the *Portugals* dare not *Anchor* near it, or own their *Property*, if they see any *Shipping* in the *Road*. No *Buildings* in it, but the *Ruines* of a little *Chapel*, destroyed by the *Hollanders*; and some fragments of a little *Village* begun by some *Portugal Mariners*, but demolished by the King of *Spain*.

St. Helen was first *Discovered* by *Joannes de Nova* a *Portuguese*, on *St. Helen's day*, in 1502. It is 13 miles in compass, Mountainous, but Fruitful, and abounding with many things of great use to the *Life of Man*. It has four *Valleys* and many *Springs*, especially towards the *North End*. For a long time it lay in common to the use of all that sailed to the *East-Indies*, but since the Year 1660. the *English East-India Company* settled a *Colony* in it to secure it; the *Hollanders* having done the same at the *Cape of Good Hope*, which was another *Place of Refreshment*.

7. Northwest from hence is the *Isle of Ascension*, so called, because discovered on *Ascension Day*, by *Tristram de Acugna*, a *Portuguese*, in the Year, 1508. but not inhabited, nor any use at all made of it for ought I can find. Of the same bigness with *St. Helens*, 30 miles in compass, and about 700 *English miles* distant from it.

8. *St. THOMAS*, 9. *The PRINCES Island*, and 10. *The Isle of ANNIBON*.

8. THE *Island of St. THOMAS*, is situate directly under the *Equator*; of *Orbicular Form*, the *Diameter* being 60 miles, by consequence the *Perimeter* or *Compass* 180. and just so many from the *Shore of the Realm of Congo*. The *Land* of this *Island* lies very high; upon the *West-side* you shall see a very high *Pike*, which

is very small and straight, as if it were the *Steeple* of a *Church*, which *Pike* is directly under the *Line*; at the *South-end* towards the *West*, lies a small *Island* a mile from the great *Island*. *Hackluit*. It was found the 23d of *December*, 1405. by a *Portuguese*, and Dedicated to *St. Thomas*, because found on that *Day*. At the first *Discovery* nothing but a continual *Forrest*, now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negroes*: these last brought hither from the opposite *Continent*; with whom the *Air* agrees so well, that they attain generally to 110 years of *Age*, few of the *Portugals* unto 50. The *Air* so vehemently hot, that it sorteth not with the *Constitution* of the *Europeans*.

The *Country* destitute of *Wheat*, which if sown here turneth all to *Blade*, and brings forth no *Ear*: nor will any *Fruits* here prosper, that have any *stone* in them: but so abundant in *Sugar Canes*, and well stored with *Sugars*, that 40 *Ships* are hence loaded yearly with that one *Commodity*; for making which, they have here 70 *Ingenios*, or *Sugar-houses*, and in each of them 200 *Slaves*, in some 300. which belong to the *Works*. Six days in seven these *Slaves* work for their *Masters*, and the seventh for themselves; which they spend in sowing and planting their *Seeds*, *Fruits*, and *Provisions*. Where, by the way these *Sugar-works*, or *Ingenios*, are a late *Invention*; the *Boiling* and *Baking* of *Sugar* (as it is now used) not being above 200 years old; and the *Refining* of it more new than that. First found out by a *Venetian* in the days of our *Fathers*, who is said to have got above 100000 *Crowns* by this *Invention*, and to have left his son a *Knight*; who, (though he was no *Knight* of the *Order*) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which *Art* of *Boiling* and *Refining Sugars*, our *Ancestors* not having such *luxurious Palates*, sometimes made use of rough *Sugar*, as it came from the *Canes*; but most commonly pleased themselves with *Honey*, more wholesome because more natural than these forced *Inventions*. But to proceed in the *Description* of this *Island*; in the midst thereof is said to be a *wooden Mountain*, over-shadowed continually with *Clouds*; which so moisten the *Trees* that grow there in great abundance, that from thence falleth a sufficient quantity of waters to refresh their *Fields*, and feed their *Sugar Canes*, notwithstanding the extreme heat of the *Clim*e and *Air*.

The *Religion* here allowed of, is the *Christian* only, first preached here by the *Portugals*, or brought hither with them. The *Church* hereof governed by a *Bishop*, his *Title*, the *Bishop of St. Thomas*; but his *Charge* extendeth also over all the *Churches* in the *Realm of Congo*. The principal *City* of it hath the Name of *Parvaesan*, a *Colony* of *Portugals*, consisting of 700 *Families*, or about that number; situate on a fine *River*, and a pleasant *Haven*: seldom without the company of *Portugal Merchants*, who bring hither in exchange for *Sugars*, *Wheat*, *Wine*, *Cheese*, *Hides*, and other *Things*, more necessary than those *Sugars* for the *Life of Man*. Took by the *Hollanders*, in the year 1599. but again recovered, or abandoned in 1641. and since possessed again by the *Hollanders*, not as before by force of *Arms*, but by *Fraud* and *Faithhood*, at the same time, and by the same dishonest *Arts* by which they made themselves *Masters* of the *Castle of Angola*, before-mentioned. And though the *Portugal Ambassador* presented this *injurious dealing* to the *States of Holland*, yet all the *Answer* he could get at the present, was, That their *People* had done nothing but what was justified by that *Clause* of the *Article*, that both sides might take and keep whatsoever they could within such a time: and though the *Ambassador* replied very rationally in behalf of his *Country*, and pressed the *Restitution* both of this *Island*, and that *Castle*, by all honest *Arguments*, yet he could then get no reason from them: The *Portuguese* finding that *Arguments* would not prevail, entered the *Island* with *Force*, and in short time drove out the *Hollanders*; and have ever since peaceably enjoyed it, the exact time of which action I cannot now assign.

The

9. The *PRINCE'S ISLAND*, (*Insula Principis* in the *Latin*) so called, for that the Revenues of it were allotted to the Prince of Portugal; is situate in three Degrees of the Northern Latitude, on the Western Coasts of *Africa*, 120 miles from *St. Thomas* to the North-East, and something less from *Africa*. The Country very Fruitful for the bigness of it; but not much observable, except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Clerchagen*, Anno 1598. abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended, as is fit for a Prince's Island, by a *Me/s* of Chaplains, viz. 1. the Isles of *St. Matthew*, 2. *St. Cross*, 3. *St. Paul*, and 4. *St. Conception*; and waited on by seven Servants (so many Islands near *Cape Verd*) all in Coats of Green, called by one common name, *Barbacene*. But because the former four yield no matter of History, and these last seven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought, having said thus much of them, to have said enough.

10. South-west hereof, but on the other side of the Line, lieth the Isle of *Annobon*, (*Insula Annoboni*, as the *Latines* call it.) So named, because discovered upon *New-years-day*. Inhabited, and of very good fishing all along the Coasts of it; but that fishing made unsafe by *Crocodiles*, and other venomous and hurtful Creatures, which are said to be about the shores in great abundance.

11. The GORGADES, or the Isles of CAPE VERD.

11. THE GORGADES, or the Islands of *Cape Verd*, (*Insulae Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latines* call them) are nine in number; called by the last name, because situate over against *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negroes*. Their Names, 1. *Saint Anthony*. 2. *Saint Vincent*. 3. *Buenavista*. 4. *Saint Lucies*. 5. *Insula Salis*, the Isle of Salt. 6. *Del Fogo*, or the Isle of Fire. 7. *Saint Nicholas*. 8. *Maggio*, or *Majo*. 9. *Saint Jago*. Some add to these a tenth, called *Brava*. Discovered all in the year 1440. by a *Genoese* called *Antonio de Noli*, employed therein at the charges and direction of *Henry Duke of Vise*, one of the younger Sons of King *John of Portugal*, the first of that name. Of the most, little to be said. The principal, and indeed the only ones which are now inhabited, are *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, *St. Jago*. 1. *Majo*, is of most repute for a Lake of two Leagues long; the Waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2. *Del Fogo*, is so called from the flakes of fire which it sends forth usually; and felt so thick upon the Ship of *Sir Anthony Sherley*, when he took the Island, Anno 1596. that one might have writ his name in the ashes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger. 3. The principal of all, *St. Jago*, yet but 7 miles long: Rocky and Mountainous, but full of very pleasant Meadows and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Velera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; situate on a fine River and a beautiful Haven: taken and sacked by *Sir Francis Drake*, in the year 1585. and after by *Sir Anthony Sherley*, Anno 1596. This place was yielded without any Defence: when the *English* came to rattle it, they found no Gold, but store of Meal, Wine, and Oyle; but the Men falling into *Calentures* after 14 dayes stay, he left it, and Set Sail for *America*: This Fleet consisted of 21 Ships, and had on board 2300 Men in all. *Camden. Hackluit T. 3. p. 536.*

This Town lies in a low valley, in form of a Triangle, having on the East and West sides 2. Rocky Mountains or Cliffs, as it were hanging over it; on the Tops of which are Fortifications. On the South side of the Town is the Main Sea, on the North is a Valley lying between the 2 Mountains, which growing Narrower next the Town, is not above 12 score over. In the Midst of this Valley runs a Rivulet of fresh Water, which near the Sea makes a Pond or Pool to Water the Ships:

The Valley from the Town-ward openeth broader, and is fill'd with Gardens, Orchards and Vineyards; full of Limons, Oranges, Sugar-Canes, Cocho-Nuts, Plantains, Potato-Roots, Cucumers, Onyons, Garlick, &c.

The name of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almost forgotten. Given to those Islands, as supposed (but I cannot see upon what Grounds) to be the seat of the *Gorgons*; the proper habitation or dwelling place of *Medusa* and her two fair Sisters. This *Medusa*, said or rather fabled by the Poets to have been a Woman of great beauty; who either for suffering her body to be abused by *Neptune*, in one of the Temples of *Pallas*, or for preferring her self before *Palas*, had by the said Goddess, her hair turned into Snakes, and this property annexed unto them; That whosoever looked on her, should be turned into Stones: which quality was retained after she was slain, and beheaded by *Perseus*. Thus and far more fabulously the Poets. The Historians (for as some think, *omnis fabula fundatur in historia*) relate how this *Medusa* was indeed a Lady of such exceeding beauty, that all Men that saw her were amazed; and of such a wise and subtle brain, that for that cause only Men attributed unto her a Serpents head. She abounding in wealth, and by Piracy molesting the Seas of *Europ*, was invaded by an Army of *Grecians*, under the leading of *Perseus*, who in a single combat slew her. *Perseus* when he plucked off her Helmet, admiring that beauty which he had destroyed, cut off her Head, and carried it unto *Greece*: where the People beyond measure wondred at the rare composure of her Face, and the exceeding beauty of her hair; and are therefore said to have by her head been metamorphosed into Stones. *Pausanias* in his *Corinthiacks* so reports the Story.

12. THE CANARIES.

THE CANARIES are in number seven, situate over against the Coast of *Libya Interior*; so called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and other of the ancient Writers, they were called *Insulae Fortunatae*, the Fortunate Islands: and amongst them of greatest note, for being made the fixed place of the first Meridian, removed since to *St. Michael*, one of the *Azores*. But those Ancients knew but six of them by name, and in the naming of those six do not well agree. By *Pliny*, whom *Solinus* followeth, they are said to be 1. *Ombrio*, 2. *Junonia Major*, 3. *Junonia Minor*, 4. *Cypria*, 5. *Nivaria*, and 6. *Canaria*. By *Ptolemy* thus reckoned, 1. *Aproditus*, 2. *Hera*, (or *Junonia*,) 3. *Plutania*, 4. *Cypria*, 5. *Canaria*, and 6. *Pincuria*. Where we may note also to our purpose, that though these Authors differ in all the rest of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Translator unto *Ptolemy's Hera*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one: which sheweth that one to be of eminence enough, to give the name of *Canary Islands* unto all the rest. Called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the ancients had of their Fruitfulness, and other Excellencies; in which respects several Countries in those times had the names of *Macaria*, *Felix*, *Fortunate*. Now better known by the new names of 1. *Canary*. 2. *Palma*. 3. *Tenariffe*. 4. *Gomero*. 5. *Ferro*. 6. *Lanzarote*. And 7. *Puerto Ventura*.

1. CANARIA, or *Canaria Magna*, because the biggest of the Cluster, is said to be 90 miles in compass, and to contain 9000 Persons: plentiful in Barley, Honey, Wax, Sugar-Canes, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which and of their Cheese and the skins of Beasts, they raise great profit: but from nothing more than from their Wood (whereof they have very great abundance) used by the Clothier for the well-colouring of his Cloth. From hence and from the other of these Islands which bear this name, come the fine singing Birds, called *Canary-Birds*; and so do also those rich Wines, (the Fruit of the *Rbenish-Grape* transplanted) which we call *Canaries*. A sort of Wine, if not sophisticated and abused, which is said to sume less in-

head, please the palate more, and better help the weakness of a cold stomach (if moderately and diffused) than any other Wines whatsoever. Brought in such abundance to supply our luxury, that no more than 3000 Tuns hereof are vended yearly into England, and the Netherlands only. By Adulteration so much soiled now, that they, are not enquired after.

John de Borequena, Earl of Comberland, in the year 1598, put out a Fleet of 11 Ships at his own Charge; he took *Lanzarote*, *Borequena*, and *Porto Ricco*, in which he intended to have settled a Colony of English, but was forced to give over the Design by a Sickness amongst his Men. The First discoverer was *Lewis de Colon*; but they were not attempted to be Conquered till the year 1492. *Bricamontius*, a French Gentleman, in the year 1493, began another Conquest by Grant from the King of Castile. [The old People that were before did abhor the Killing of a Beast as dishonourable, and therefore imposed it on their Prisoners] *Herbert. p. 3.* They were attempted by the French in 1417, and Conquered by the Spaniards in 1418. *Hackl. T. 2. p. 2.*

La ciudad de las Palmas, *Palmarum civitas*, the principal City of the Island of *Canaria*: This City is the Capital of all the *Canary-Islands*, and to it there lies an Appeal from all the other Cities and Islands; It hath also a Beautiful Cathedral Church, with all the Dignities thereunto belonging. The City is Beautiful, and the Citizens gallant in their Apparel: After the greatest Rain a Man may go clean here in a Velvet Slipper, because the Ground is a Sand. The Air is very Temperate, without extream heat or cold. This Account was given by *Nichols*, an English Man, who lived here 7 years, *Hackl. T. 2. p. 2. p. 3.*

2. *PALMA*, one of the least in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitful in Wine and Sugars, abundantly well stored with Cattel, and great plenty of Cheese; and therefore made the victualling place of the Spanish Fleets as they pass to *America*. This Island, together with *Canary* and *Tenariffe*, make up the Bishoprick of the *Canaries*. One of the Bishops whereof was that *Melchior Canus* a Dominican Frier; whose works now extant in defence of the Church of *Rome*, shew him to have been a moderate and learned Man, and Master of a perfect *Ciceronean* stile. This Island was Conquered by the Spaniards in 1491. The Principal Town of which is *Santa Cruz de la Palma*. The residue of the Islands are of the Diocese of *Madera*.

3. *TENARIFFE*, somewhat less than the *Grand Canary*, but of the same fertility and condition with it, is most remarkable for a Mountain of so great an height, that it may be seen 90 Leagues at Sea, in a fair clear day. Some reckon it 15 Miles high, others 15 Leagues, and some advance it to 60 miles, but with little credit. With truth enough most of our Travellers and Geographers hold it to be the highest in the whole World. The Form *Pyramidal*, in shape agreeing to those Prodigies of Art and Wonder, the *Egyptian Pyramids*. The top whereof ending in a sharp point, called the Pike of *Tenariffe*, is said to be seldom without Snow; and therefore probably conceived to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny*. This Island is about 48 Spanish Leagues in Circumference, Fruitfull, Populous, and Rich, and has been subject to the Spaniards ever since the year 1496. The Antients called it formerly *Nivaria*. The Principal Towns in it are *St. Croce* and *Laguna*, to which belong an excellent Haven, into which *Blake*, an English Admiral, Entered April 20. 1657. notwithstanding a Castle, and 7 Forts, and 16 great Galeons, all well Mann'd, and provided with Canon and Amunition, which threatened his inevitable Ruine, and in 6 hours time he beat the Spaniards out of their Ships and Ports too, and put the English in Possession of this Vast Treasure, (it being a *West-India* Fleet;) and Burnt all those Spanish Ships which they found there. This Island is remarkable for having been made the first Meridian by many of the later Geographer's. *Tenariffe*

is seated 27. 30. from the Equator to the North, and is 17 South Leagues in length: The Land lies all very high; but the Pike in the midst is 45 English Miles Perpendicular; out of which oftentimes flameth a Fire of Brimstone; at the top it is halfe a mile broad, and form'd like a Caldron, that is, a Concave: Within 2 miles of the top it is nothing but Ashes and Pumice Stones; beneath that, all the year covered with Snow. Something lower grow Vast Trees that rot not in the Water; beneath these are Woods of Bay-Trees for 10 or 12. miles, very pleasant to be travelled through, being full of Melodious Birds. It yeilds more Corn than any of the rest in this Knot, and besides yeilds all that the rest do. It has a fair City called *Santa Cruz*, standing 3 Leagues from the Sea. The other Towns are *Lanzarote*, *Rialeio* and *Garachio*. Before the Conquest of this small Island, there Reigned 7 Kings in it, who dwelt in Caves, and were all cloathed in Goatskins. *Canaria*, *Tenariffe*, and *Palma*, Pay the King of Spain for Customs 50000 Ducats per Annum; and the Bishop 12000. *Nichols*, an English Man, who lived here 7. years. *Hackl. T. 2. P. 2. p. 5.*

4. *HIERO*, or *FERRI Insula*, so called from the Iron Mines therein, is by some thought to be the *Pluitalia*, by others the *Aprisus* of *Ptolemy*; and some again more probably the *Ombrio* of *Pliny*, if this and *Ptolemies Pluitalia* be not one and the same, as for my part I think they be. And it might possibly have those names in the *Greek* and *Latine*, because it hath in it no fresh Waters but what they do receive in showers and preserve in Cisterns: it being added by later Writers (which the Ancients knew not) that these showers do daily fall upon them from the leaves of a Tree, which always covered with a Cloud doth distill these Waters; preserved in a large Cistern underneath the Tree, for the use of Man and Beast throughout the Island. It is about 6 Leagues in Compass, and belongs to the Earl of *Gomera*; it yeilds *Orchel* and Goats Flesh, and has but one Vineyard planted by one *Hill*, of *Taunton* in *England*, amongst the Rocks. It has only one Cistern of Water at the foot of an Olive-Tree in the midst of the Island, which yet is sufficient for the Inhabitants, and their Cattle. *Hackl. T. 2. P. 2. p. 6.*

5. *GOMERA*, now as civil and well cultivated as any of the rest, was the most barbarous of all, when first discovered: it being here and here only, the ordinary sign and evidence of their Hospitality, to let their friends lie with their Wives, and receive theirs in testimony of reciprocal kindness: for which cause here, as in some places of the *Indies*, the Sister's Son did sue accustomably to inherit. This Island is about 22 Leagues in Compass, and has a Town of the same Name, and a large Haven: This is supposed to be that which the Ancients called *Theode*. It standeth on the West of *Tenariffe*, and is but 8 Leagues long: The Proprietor of it is an Earl. The harbour is so good, that the Spanish *West-India* Fleet of ten stop here for Refreshments. It yeilds Corn, Fruit, Wine, and Sugar, *Hackl. T. 2. P. 2. p. 6.*

6. *LANZAROTE*, the first of those Islands which was made subject to the Crown of *Castile*, discovered by some adventurous *Biscains*, An. 1393. by whom spoiled and pillaged; and the poor King and Queen thereof, and 170 of their Subjects of better quality brought away Prisoners into *Spain*. On this discovery the Kings of *Castile* challenged a propriety in all these Islands; of which more anon. In this of *Lanzarote* there was an Episcopal Sea erected by Pope *Martin* the fifth, removed unto the Isle of *Canary* in the time of *Ferdinand* the Catholick. This Island, as appeareth by the above cited relation in the last Century, was an Earldom belonging to the Family of *Herrera*; who also was possessed of *Fuerte-ventura*. The Latitude of it is 26. 00. and the length 12 Leagues.

7. *FUERTE VENTURA*, of the same Nature with the rest, supposed to be the *Capraria* of *Pliny*, and the *Cassperia* of *Ptolemy*; but not else observable. Near unto these, but not within the name and notion of the

the *Fortunate* or *Canary* Isles, are certain others of less note, that is to say, 1. *Gratiola*, 2. *St. Clara*, 3. *Roca*, 4. *L. bee*, 5. *Allegrencia*, and 6. *Isferna*, small and of no account, nor yielding any matter of Observation. This Island is 15 Leagues long, and 12 broad, and stands 50 Leagues from *Cape de Guer* in *Africa*, to the West; 24 from *Canary* to the East; in the Latitude of 27. 00. It yields plenty of Wheat, Barley, Beef, Goats, and Orcher, but very little Wine. *Hacklur*.

The knowledge of these Islands being lost with the *Roman* Empire, they lay concealed and undiscovered till the Year 1350. or thereabouts, when an *English*, or as some say, a *French* Ship, distressed by Tempest, did in that Mistorane fall upon them. Notice whereof being given in the Court of *Portugal*, in the Reign of King *Alphonso* the Fourth, *Lewis d. Ordo* was designed for the Conquest of them: who being repulled at *Genera*, Anno 1334. gave the Enterprize over, though on this Ground the *Portugals* build their first claim unto these Islands. But the News spreading by degrees to the Court of *Rome*, *Clement* the Sixth thought fit to make a grant of them to Prince *Louis* of *Spain*, Son of *Alphonso de la Cerde*, the right Heir of *Castile*, by the old Name of the *Fortunate-Islands*; and to assist him in the Conquest, caused Levies of Soldiers to be made both in *France* and *Italy*. Which coming to the Ears of the *English* Ambassadors in the Pope's Court, they feared that some transport had been made of the *British* Islands, (than which they thought that none could better deserve the Name of the *Fortunate-Islands*) and in all haste dispatched a Post to the Court of *England*, for the preventing of the Danger.

The People at the time of this first Discovery, were so rude and ignorant, that they did eat their Flesh raw for want of Fire; and tilled or rather turned up the Earth with the Horns of Oxen for want of Ploughs, or Tools of Iron; their Beards they shaved with a sharp Flint, and committed the Care of their Children to the Nursing of Goats. To kill a Beast was conceived to be the best Office that could possibly be put on them, and they commonly imposed on Prisoners and condemned Men; who being thus made the common Slaughter-house, were to live separate from the rest. Their Government by Kings, in each Island one; whom at their Deaths, they set up naked in a Cave, propped against the Wall with a Staff in his Hand, and a Vessel of Milk fast by him, the better to enable him for his Journey to the other World, and leaving him in the Grave with these solemn Words, *Depart in peace, O thou blessed Soul*. The like Funeral they bestow also on the Chief of their Nobles. Yet was not the Government in those times so purely Regal, but that they had a Common Council (as it were) out of all the Islands, consisting of 120 Persons; who did not only direct in Civil Matters, but in Sacred also, prescribing to the People both their Faith and Worship; and for their Palms were privileged with the first Nights Lodging with every Bride, which the Husband was to offer to some one of them. The Natural Inhabitants are said then to have been of a good and mild Disposition, and that they all agreed in the Acknowledging one GOD the Creator of the World, and in nothing else. They were clothed in Goat-skins and lived in Caves; they eat Dogs-flesh to this day.

But to return unto the Story; nothing being done by *Lewis de la Cerde*, in pursuance of the Pope's Donation, it happened in the year 1393. that some Adventurers of *Biscay*, setting out certain Ships from *Sevil* to seek their Fortunes at Sea, fell amongst these Islands. And having pillaged *Lanzarote*, as before was said, and observed the number, greatness, and situation of all the rest, returned into *Spain* with great store of Wax, Hides, and other Commodities, with which those Islands did abound: extremely welcome to King *Henry*, who then reigned in *Castile*, and did intend from that time forwards to possess himself of them. By *Katharine* one of the Daughters of *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, the Dowager of this King *Henry*,

during the Minority of *John* the Second, the Conquest of them was committed to *John* of *Burancourt*, an adventurous *Frenchman*, (conditioned he should hold them under the Sovereignty of the Crown of *Castile*) by whom four of the Islands were subdued, though he himself perished in the Action, Anno 1417. Young *Burancourt* the Son, not being able to subdue *Canary*, to which most of the Islanders had retired, fortified himself as well as he could in the Isle of *Lanzarote*, and took unto himself the Title of King; which he left not long after to one *Menaunt*; in whose time the Islands under his command received the Gospel, and had a See Episcopop in the Isle of *Lanzarote*. But this new King making Money by the Sale of his Subjects, (as well of the new *Christians*, as of the old *Indians*) complaint was made of him in the Court of *Castile*; and *Pedro Barzade Campos* with three Ships of War, was sent against him; with whom unable to contend, with the good leave and liking of the King of *Castile*, he sold his Interest in these Islands to one *Fernando Peres* a Knight of *Sevil*, who, by the wealth and power of that City made good his Purchase, and left it unto his Successors. But we must know, that the Posterity of this *Peres* enjoyed the four lesser Islands only; *Canary* it self, *Tenariffe*, and the Isles of *Palmes*, being under the Command of their own Kings: And so continued till the Reign of *Ferdinand* the Catholic, who in the year 1483. under the Conduct of *Alphonso* of *Mexico*, and *Pedro de Vera*, two Noble Captains, became Master of them; and translated the Episcopal See from *Lanzarote* to the great *Canary*. So that although the *Portugals* claim these Islands in right of the first Discovery, yet the Possession hath gone always with the Crown of *Castile*. Divided at the present into two Estates, (but the one subordinate to the other) *Genera*, *Lanzarote*, and *Hierra*, being in the hands of some private Subjects; those which belong unto the Crown, being *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, and *Fuerte Ventura*, are said to yield yearly to the King 50000 Ducats; the Seat of Justice being fixed in the Isle of *Canaria*, unto which all the rest resort as they have occasion.

13. MADERA, and 14. HOLYPORT.

13. **M**A D E R A, the greatest Island of the *Atlantic*, is situate in the Latitude of 32. over against the Cape of *Cantin* in *Morocco*; in compass 140 miles, some add 20 more. So called of the Wilderness of Trees there growing when first discovered; the *Portugals* naming that *Madera*, which the *Latins* call *Materia*, and we *English* *Timber*: with which the Isle was so overgrown, that the best way to clear it, and make it habitable, was by consuming them with Fire; which raged so horribly for the time, that the People employed in it were fain to go far into the Sea to refresh themselves. But the Husbandry was well bestowed, the Ashes making so good compost to enrich the Soil, (as burning the Turf of barren Lands and ploughing the Ashes of it, on some Grounds with us) that at the first it yielded Sixty-fold increase. And though the first virtue of that Experiment be long since decayed, yet still it yieldeth Thirty-fold in most places of it; fruitful withal of a kind of Plant used in Dying Cloath, which is hence called *Mador*; and of Sugar-canes in such a wonderful manner, that for a time the Filths of the Sugars herein made, amounted yearly to 60000 *Arrobes*; now not half so much. The Isle wonderfully fruitful also of Honey, Wax, rich Fruits, and the choicest Wines; the Slips whereof were brought from *Candy*, bringing forth here more Grapes than Leaves, and Clusters of two, three, and four spans long. The Hills well stored with Goats, the Plains with numerous herds of Cattel; the Woods with Peacocks, Thrushes, Pigeons; these last so ignorant of the Injury which Man might do them, that at the first coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would suffer themselves to be taken up; but now have wit enough to keep out of danger.

This Island was first found by an *Englishman*, whose name was *Machan* in the year 1344. The Man was left here by the Ship with a few Men, and in an open Boat made of one Tree, arrived in *Barbary*, and was by the *Moors* presented to *Peter* the Fourth, King of *Arragon*, as a Wonder. In 1395. *Henry* King of *Castile* sent some Ships the second time to find out this Island and the *Canaries*, which it seems succeeded, for in 1417. *Monsieur Ruben de Bracamont*, a *French* Gentleman, was sent to conquer *Canaria*. *Hackl. T. 2. Part 2. p. 1.* — In 1419. it was again discovered by the *Portuguese*, and called by this Name for its plenty of Wood. Its length is 25 Leagues, its circuit 60. And though it is said an *Englishman* first Landed here, yet the *Portuguese* first Peopled this Island, and still Possess it.

The whole Island in all parts well watered, having, besides many pleasant Springs, eight handsome Rivulets, wherewith the Earth, refreshed and moistened, yields the sweeter Herbage; which otherwise by reason of the Heat of the Air (never very cool) might not be so nourishing.

The chief City of it hath the Name of *Euchid*, the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of Justice: known to the *Romans* by the name of *Junonis*, or *Antolala*, as many Learned Men conceive, and again forgotten; it was of later times discovered by one *Machan*, an *Englishman*, who was cast upon it by a Tempest, *Anno* 1344. (as has been said above) who burying there his Wife, or some other Woman which he had in his company, writ on her Tomb his name, and coming thither, with the Cause thereof; which gave the *Portugals* occasion to look farther after it. Desolate and Unpeopled at the first Discovery, now exceeding Populous; and of no small advantage to the Crown of *Portugal*, to which first united, *An.* 1420. under the Conduct of Prince *Henry*, before mentioned. Every thing it produceth is extraordinary good in its kind, but its principal Commodities are Sugars and Wines, and Cedar Chests: The Bishop of *Touchea* had a Revenue of 8000 Ducats. This is a fair City, which has a good Port, and a strong Castle for its defence; and the Cathedral is very Magnificent. It has a great plenty of good Wines, which are laden here mostly for *America*. It has also another considerable Sea port Town call'd *Machio*. *Hackl. T. 2. Part 2. p. 319.* but misfigured, for it should be 7.

14. *INSULA PORTUS SANCTI*, or the Isle of *HOLY-PORT*, is distant from *Madera* about 40 miles; neighbouring the Coasts of *Mauritania Tangitana*, and therefore probably conceived to be the *Cerne* of *Ptolemy*. So called, because discovered by some *Portugal* Mariners (by the Direction and Encouragement of the said Prince *Henry*) on *Allhallows-day* *Anno* 1428. Desolate and uninhabited at the first Discovery, but now very well Peopled. In compass about 15 miles; well stored with Corn and Fruits, great shoals of Fish upon their Shores, plenty enough of Bees and Goats; but such abundance of Coneys (bred of one Doe-Coney brought thither when great with young) that the Inhabitants were no less pestered with them in these later times, than the *Baleares* were of old; insomuch that they were out of hope to withstand the Mischiefs, or repair the Damages sustained by them. A little Island not far off, breedeth nothing else.

The chief Town of it *Porto Santo*, or *Holy-Port*, seated on a convenient Rode, but a sorry Haven, was taken by Sir *Amias Prellon*, in our Wars with *Spain*, *Anno* 1596. but being sacked and spoiled, was again abandoned. In former times called *Cerne*, as before was said, and reckoned for the most remote Colony which the *Carthaginians* or *Phœnicians* had in the Western Ocean; beyond which they conceived the Sea to be Unnavigable, (proved otherwise by *Hanno's* voyage) choaked with Mud and Weeds. Called therefore *Cerne ultima* (*Aethiopum populos alit ultim. Cerne*) by *Festus Rufus*, and others of the Ancient Writers

15. The HESPERIDES.

THE *HESPERIDES*, by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, are said to be two in number, situate in the *Atlantick* Seas, but we find not where. Much memorized and chanted by the ancient Poets, for giving a safe and pleasant Habitation to the Daughters of *Atlas* (which they call by the Name of *Hesperedes* also;) the curious Gardens by them planted, and the Golden Apples of it which were kept by the Dragon, and took hence by *Hercules*. But the *Historians* remove these Gardens out of the Sea, into the main Land of *Africk*, and fix them in *Cyrene*, where already spoken of. Which, notwithstanding, it is granted, that there were anciently some Islands in the *Atlantick* Ocean, noted by this name, and said to be exceeding fruitful of their own accord: and therefore probably the same which *Plutarch* in the Life of *Sertorius* calleth *Insula Atlantica*, and describes them thus: *Αἱ δὲ μὲν αὖτ', λέπειν παντάπασι ποσὶ μὴ δακνύνουσιν, &c.* They are (saith he) two Islands parted by a narrow Strait of the Sea, distant from the main Land of *Africk* 10000 Furlongs (which in our Account cometh to 1250 miles) called also the Isles of *Blessed Souls*, and the *Fortunate Islands*. They have Rain there very seldom, but a fine sweet Dew, which makes their Earth exceeding fruitful both for Tillage and planting Fruits, which sometimes grow without any care or labour of the Husbandman; sufficient by their plenty and sweetness to maintain the People; much given to Ease, and hardly troubling themselves with any Business. The Air for the most part very temperate, never extrem in any changes of the Season; the rigour of the Northern and Eastern Winds, being by so long a passage thither very much abated; as on the other side the Western and South-Eastern Winds, do much refresh it with such Mists as they bring from the Sea, to the great comfort of the People. A Place so generally sweet, that the barbarous People in it have a constant and approved Opinion, that these should be the *Elysian-Fields*, the Seats of the Blessed Souls departed, described by *Homer*: with the report whereof *Sertorius* was so highly taken, that he intended to have given over the pursuit of the Civil Wars, and there to spend the rest of his days in Peace and Happiness; which he had done, if the *Cilicians*, Men accustomed unto Spoil and Rapine had not took him off. So far, and to this purpose *Plutarch*. But what these Islands are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their great distance from the Coast of *Africk* they cannot be the *Fortunate Islands* spoken of before) I cannot easily determine: unless we should conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that they are the Islands of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola* on the Coasts of *America*; to the Story and Chorography whereof we are now to hasten.

A O Z O R E S.

THE *A O Z O R E S* is a knot of Islands seated in the *Atlantick* Ocean, to the North-West of the *Canary* Islands in the Latitude of 40. and are in number nine, viz. *Tercera*, *St. Michael*, *St. Mary*, *St. George*, *Pico*, *Faial*, *Flores*, *Corvo*, and *Grattosa*. They are now under the Crown of *Portugal*; and it may be questioned whether they belong to *Europe*, *Africa*, or *America*: Though I think it is better to place them here, than totally to omit them. They were first discovered by a *Flandrian*, in the year 1449. The Soil is said to be Stony, but wonderfully Fruitful, and affording excellent Bees. In the year 1597. the *English* under the command of the Earl of *Essex*, took and burnt the Town of *Faial*, and might have taken more of them, but that they came thither to wait for the *Spanish West-India* Fleet, which escaping into the Harbour of *Tercera*, the Principal of these Islands, escaped from them, but however, they took three of their best Ships.

And so much for the Isles of *AFRICK*.

A TABLE of the Longitude and Latitude of the Principal Towns and Cities mentioned in this Part.

		Long.	Lat.			Long.	Lat.
A	Gadex	39 20	25 30	Malta		46 0	45 30
	Alexandria	67 0	31 20	Manicongo		47 20	7 0 A.
	Algiers	33 0	35 20	Morocco		20 0	30 30
	Amara	63 30	5 0 A.	Melinde		71 20	3 20 A.
	Angola	45 10	7 0 A.	Meroe		68 20	16 15
	Asna	66 30	25	Mezzata		47 40	30 40
	Azamora	18 30	32 40	Mina		28 50	6 20
	Atquin	11 10	20 0	Mombaza		72 0	4 50 A.
	Adrimetum			Mosambique		70 20	14 40
				Memphis			
B	Babel Mandel	80 01	12 50	Nubia	N	60 0	17 40
	Bagamedrum	62 36	6 0	Oran	O	29 40	35 0
	Barca	62		Palma	P.	6 20	28 0
	Benin	41 0	7 40	Pascar		59 40	1 20 A.
	Bona	37 10	35 40	Quiloa	Q	69 50	8 56
	Borneo	44 30	17 10	Rameses	R	68 30	30 30
	Brava	74 30	0 30	Sabaim	S	68 20	8 40
	Budomel	10 20	14 30	Septa		22 0	35 40
	Bugia	34 30	35 10	Suachim		72 40	18 40
	Babylon Egypt			Sus		27 30	
C	Cairo	67 30	30 0	Tangier	T	30 50	35 0
	Cyrene	53 30	32 0	Tefethne		16 10	30 0
	Canaria	9 30	27 20	Tegnit		27 40	28 10
	Carthage			Teient		17 0	30 30
D	Cirta			Tena-iffe		8 10	27 30
	Damiata	60 0	32 40	Theset		20 0	29 10
	Damut	51 0	11 20	Teleffine		29 0	34 10
	Dancali	65 0	17 30	Tigremoon		65 0	6 0
	Dara	66 50	12 0	Tombuto.		20 50	15 0
	Docono	78 20	12 30	Tunis		40 0	36 0
F	Fatigar	74 0	2 40 A.	Thebes in Egypt	V	77 0	13 0
	Fesse	21 50	32 50	Vella			
	Fierro	6 20	26 30	Utica	Z	88 0	12 50
	Forte ventura	11 0	28 0	Zacatera		36 40	14 40
	Fouchial	8 10	31 30	Zegreg		80 0	11 20
G	Gamba	64 49	70 30 A.	Zila		45 50	40 50
	Gonga	55 0	22 0	Zigec		59 0	25 20 A.
	Goyami	57 0	14 0 A.	Zimbaus			
	Gualata	13 30	23 30				
	Gnber	29 20	10 40				
H	Holy Port	10 0	32 30				
L	Lanfarote	11 40	29 30				
M	Madagascar	77 0	19 0 A.				
	Midazo	46 0	5 10				

A. is the mark of a Southern Latitude.

The End of the First Part of the Fourth Book.

COSMOGRAPHY

The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY
AND
HISTORY
OF
AMERICA,
AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

By PETER HEYLYN.

MATTH. XXIV. XIV.

*Et prædicabitur hoc Evangelium regni in universo orbe, testimonium omnibus
Gentibus: & tunc veniet consummatio.*

S. Hieronym. in locum.

*Signum Domini adventus est Evangelium in toto Orbe prædicari, ut nullus sit excusa-
bilis: quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.*

L O N D O N:

Printed in the Year, MDCCII.

An Advertisement to the READER, concerning AMERICA in General.

HE that Travelleth any Part of America, not inhabited by the Europeans, shall find a World very like to that we lived in, in or near the times of Abraham the Patriarch, about Three hundred years after the Flood. The Lands lie in Common to the Natives and all Comers, though some few small parcels are Sown, yet the Tiller claims no right in them when he has reaped his Crop once. Their Petty Kings do indeed frequently sell their Kingdoms, but that in effect is only the taking Money for withdrawing and going farther up the Country; for he is sure never to want Land for his Subjects, because the Country is vastly bigger than the Inhabitants, who are very few in proportion to its Greatness and Fertility.

Those Parts that are fit for Trees are all covered with Woods full of vast large Trees, with very few Bushes or Shrubs under them; so that it is in most Places easy and pleasant Travelling under the shady old Trees. Those Parts that lie next the Rivers and Lakes are full of Bogs and Quagmires, that were never Drained nor Improved any way. The sandy and barren Grounds that have neither of these, are rare in North America, but more frequent in South America. There is another sort of Lands that bear rich Grass, but neither Trees nor Bushes, a vast Tract of which lyeth to the S.W. of Virginia, the Bounds of which to the S. and W. are unknown, and these though one would think the easiest to fit for Humane habitation, are yet said not be inhabited, perhaps only because not frequented by the Deer, which the Indians ever follow and live upon a great part of the Year. The Springs of Water also not breaking out so frequently upon the Earth, and the Indians having neither Art nor Patience to Dig for them into the Bowels of the Earth.

Cities and Towns built with Timber, Brick or Stone, they have none; their Villages are encompassed with whole Trees set in the Ground like Pallisadoes, and the Houses within them are built like the old tents of Boughs and Poles, and covered with Straw or Leaves to secure them from the Injury of the Weather: And being thus Mean, they as lightly esteem them, and do leave or burn them without regret; yet they will defend their Towns for the Security of their Lives, rather than for any Value they have for them. So that a Man may say, the Indians rather are, than are settled in the Land.

Sometimes whole Nations change their Seats, and go at once to very distant places, Hunting as they go for a Subsistence; and they that have come after the first Discoverers, have found those places Desolate, which the other found full of Inhabitants. This will shew, that we have done them no Injury by Settling amongst them; we, rather than they, bring the prime Occupants, and they only Sojourners in the Land: we have bought however of them the most part of the Lands we have, and have purchased little with our Swords, but when they have made War upon us.

But then as to the Inhabitants, they are infinitely more Barbarous than the Inhabitants of Canaan were in the times of Abraham. They have none or very few tame Cattel of any sort, such as Cows, Horses, Sheep, Goats or Hogs, except what we have carried to them, which is a good Argument to prove they are descended from the Sa-

moydes, or very Northern Tartars of Asia, who by reason of the excessive Colds, have no Cattel but a sort of Deer, which will not live in warmer Countries, and so failed them when they came to turn towards the South. They have no Manufactures, Arts or Sciences, a bad Government, under Petty Princes, and a worse Religion, consisting mostly in Worshipping the Sun, and the Devil; and Managed by Witches, Conjurers, and Wizards, who pretend to raise the Devil, to be informed by him of what they desire to know: All that they pretend to claim any Propriety in, is, their Wives and Children, and what they carry about them; only their Kings have a Propriety in their Subjects.

Hence we may observe, that Learning and Arts, Religion and Government, are not the Productions of Time, and that they came not into the World by humane Invention, as many have averr'd; for these People are of a greater standing than those ancient Heroes that so mightily Adorned and Improved the Ages in which they lived, and Civilized us as their Inventions came forward. Let us, History, and Philosophy, are Things of which they have no Notion; nor should we ever have had any, if God had not inspired the first Inventers of Letters. The whole World might have been to this Day, as Barbarous and Ignorant as they now are, if the Divine Providence had not drawn it out of its Chaos of Moral, as well as Material Confusion; and therefore it seems he has discovered them to us in these latter Ages, that we may Civilize these Nations, and fit them for the Reception of Christianity, of which they could otherwise never have heard.

The Spaniards entred with Armed Forces, and with an handful of Men Conquered two most flourishing Kingdoms in a small time: It is true, their Fire-Arms, Horse, and Discipline, were vast Advantages against a naked number of Indians; yet the bare disproportion of Number, without the Divine Assistance, would certainly have cast the Victory on the side of the Indians, as any rational Man must grant that considereth it well. The English and French went the way of Treaty, and settled as Planters by leave of the Inhabitants, who were very Numerous, and might at first easily have destroyed them; but their Numbers are so diminished by the Small Pox, Brandy, and their mutual Feuds, that the English are now much more Stronger and more Numerous than they be; so that they are forced to remove higher up into the Country, which affords the English Means and Opportunity to gather Strength and Improve the Country, which would otherwise have been Difficult, if not Impossible.

Tho' Spain and England have for the Present very much increased their Trade and Riches, by the Discovery and Plantation of America, yet it is disputable, whether in the End it will not turn to their greater Damage than Advantage. As to Spain, it hath so very much exhausted the People of that Kingdom already, that the Possession of it is not now kept without great Difficulty; and yet the Consumption goes on daily; and were the Passage to the Indies a little more Open and Cheap, very many more would pass thither, and Spain would fall under the Sword of the next Invader, for want of Hands to defend it. Nor is Spain considerably enriched by these Treasures of America, they

D d d d d

being

being yearly drawn out again by the neighbour Nations, which supply Spain with Necessaries.

The Depopulation of Spain is mostly attributed to the Banishment of the Moors and their Wars abroad, and these had their share in it; but the American Plantations seem to have had a principal Share in it; vast numbers of Spaniards every year being invited thither to partake of its Riches, who seldom or never return back again; so that the rest that are left behind, being hereby made more uneasy, do desire also to pass thither: And if ever Spain be vigorously Attacked, it will be the less manfully Defended, because they have this Empire in America to retreat to at the worst. But, however this Depopulation came upon Spain at first, nothing is more certain, than that America has very much encreased it: So that as far as a Man may judge of future things, the Possession of Spain will pass in a few Generations to another People, or at least it will become an Accession to some other Crown.

England began its Plantations near 100 Years after Spain, and consequently the Effects of it are not yet so visible as in the other Kingdom; but the People of England are sensibly wasted already, and it has a very ill Effect upon the Tillage and Husbandry of England in all the Southern Parts, and upon the Soldiery; so that the Armies that have hitherto been raised in England cannot now be had: This Scarcity grows greater every Year, and will be the Cause of many more Families removing to those Plantations than have hitherto gone, which must have a very ill effect upon us at long run.

It is the Nature of Mankind to desire to live where they may subsist most easily, especially if any ways pent. So if any Tenant, Shopkeeper, or Tradesman, find his Trade fail, his Debts too great, or his Condition uneasy, away he goes to the Plantations with as much as he can carry off, and within a while the Wife and Children follow, and sometimes many others of their Acquaintance and Relations. The Planters draw over as many as is possible to serve them, very few of which ever return to us again; so that one way or other some thousands are drawn over, and settled there every Year: This lessens the People of England, and rendereth them that stay more uneasy, and by consequence disposeth them to follow the other.

Hands are the Father, and Lands the Mother of all Wealth; as Hands grow scarcer, so they grow dearer, and Lands cheaper: As our People grow less, so less is spent in Meat, Drink, and Apparel, and that is another Cause of the fall of Lands; so that as the Trade of England grows by the Plantations, the Lands of England fall, the Gentry and Nobility sink, and the Security and Strength of England abateth. As the Merchant groweth hereby much richer than the old Families, so they grow more insolent, and desirous of a Change in the Government to bring the other under them, or at least to a Level with them.

We neither can nor ought to think of forcing these Planters to return back to us; nor is it our interest, or just, to oppress them, by over-charging the Goods that go thither or come from thence; but as they are ever dreining out our People, we ought to be as careful to supply that Consumption for our own security, and encourage Marriage amongst our manner People, and the Settlement of Strangers amongst us by introducing a more easie way of Naturalization than that by Act of Parliament now in use.

Next to that of inviting and encouraging Strangers to settle amongst us, by allowing them equal Privileges with the English, the taking Care for Negro and Tartar Ser-

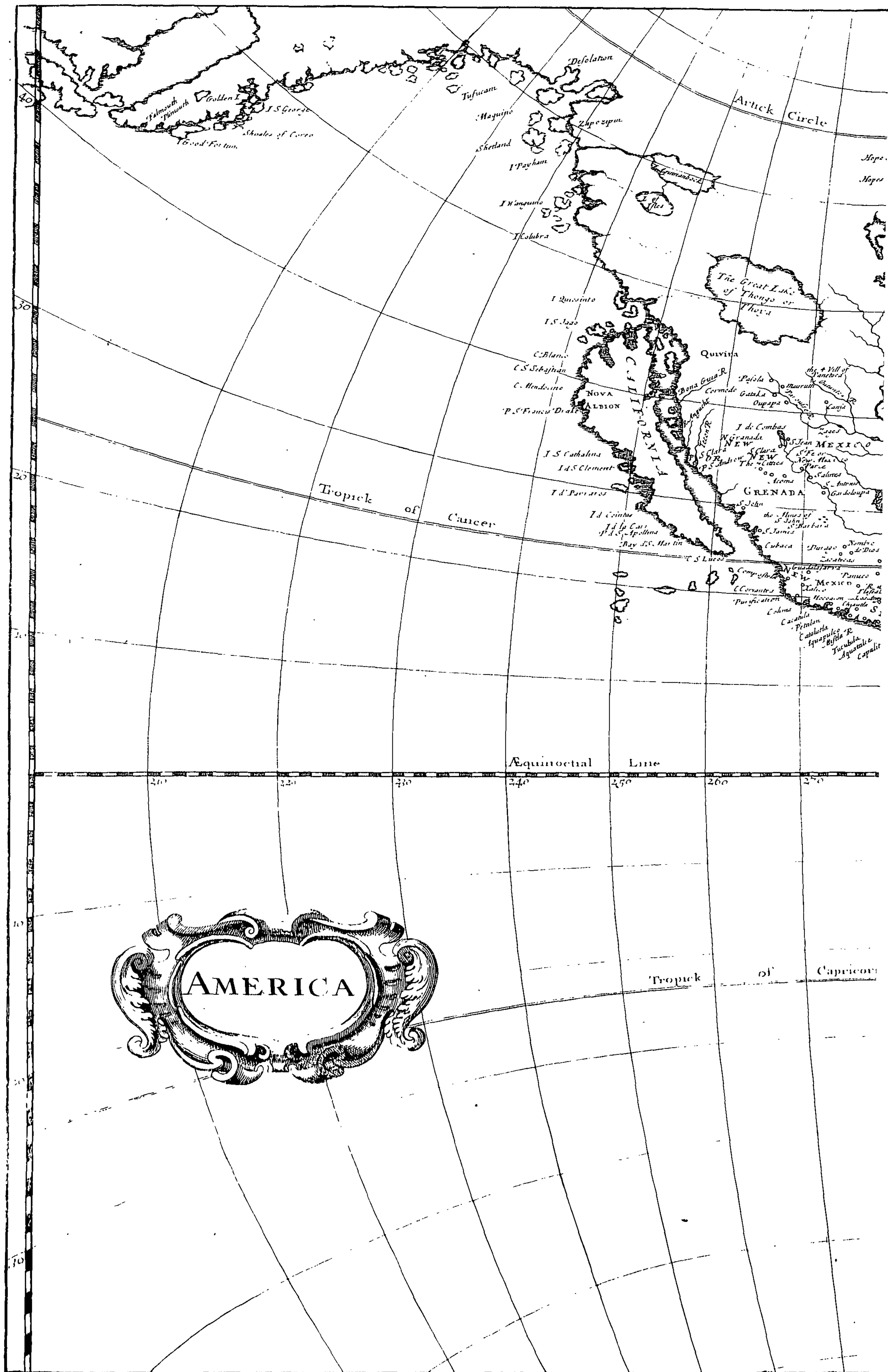
vants to manage our Husbandry, is of great use. The bringing in Negroes for Footmen and for Women-Servants in London is become pretty frequent and common, but there were never any of them employed to Agriculture here in England, as in truth they seem to be somewhat of the Tenderest for that Work in our cold Climate; but the Negro Children born here might do very well, especially the Mulatto-Negroes, half white half black, many of which sort are born amongst us, tho' we do not yet distinguish them. But there is one thing of absolute Necessity before this can be done, which is to revive the Laws of Villenage, and settle a way of Governing them, like that practised in our Plantations, without which they will be of no use to us. And when that is done, that it be made a Part of the Law, that they shall be Servants, tho' Baptized, as much as before, so that they may be admitted to Christianity without any damage to their Masters, as is practised with good success by the Spaniards and Portuguese; and to give the Children and Women of the white Women that shall mix with the Negro Men, to the Master of the Negroes, he taking care to bring them up; and that no Parish shall be charged with the Maintenance of any Negro, Old or Young, Sick or Well, but to be always maintained by the Families to which they belong, with a severe Penalty upon any Person that shall Harbour or Entertain any other Man's Negro.

I do not certainly know whether we might not have Tartar Slaves from Russia by the Bay of Archangel; if we may (for they are plentiful enough there) by the Laws of the Country, then they would certainly be much fitter for Husbandry than the Negroes, as coming out of a wilder Country, and brought up hardily: These also might be mixed with our Negroes, and a Race of Men be raised between them of a different Colour, and much more hardy than the English, which would very much contribute to the raising, or at least keeping up the value of Land in England; and as these encreased we should be able to spare more of our People to Navigation, Trades, and Manufactures; and when the Foundation were once well laid they would encrease, and abate the Now exorbitant Prices given to Servants and Day-Labourers, which is treble to what it was in the beginning of James the First; and encreasing every Day.

We have Wars in America sometimes with the Natives, and if their Children were brought hither they might be taught Husbandry here, tho' there can be no use made of them in America, because they will run away to the wild Americans rather than Serve the English when they grow up.

Without these or some such effectual Methods be taken to make good the Loss of our People to America and Ireland, we shall in a short time pay very dear for our now great Advantages of Trade; which tends to the Enriching the Merchant, but to the Impoverishing the Gentry and the Nobility, and all those that depend upon the Land Revenues of England; a Consideration which should never be omitted when Trade is under a Debate: For to say the Nation is Enriched, when the Principal Parts of it are indeed Impoverished, and never think more of it, is a very wonderful Delusion, and may be understood when it is a little more set.

Much more might have been said; but I consider some things are only to be hinted to awaken the Thoughts of Men, and not to be followed too far; of which sort perhaps this is one, which for the good of my Country I thought I was bound not wholly to omit.





COSMOGRAPHY,

The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AMERICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iles thereof.

OF AMERICA.

AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantick Ocean* and the *Verigivian Seas*, by which parted from *Europe* and *Africa*, which Seas the Mariners call *Mare del Noerdt*; on the West, with the *Pacifick Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South, with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long but narrow *Streight*, called the *Streights of Magelan*: the North bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Island* or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: New for the late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatness of it. The most usual, and yet somewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vesputius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to find out those Parts came from the Directions and Example of *Columbus*, who first led the way; and that *Sebastian Cabot* touched at many places which *Americus Vesputius* never saw, it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebastiana*, or *Cabotia*. The most improper name of all, and yet not much less used than that of *America*, is the *West-Indies*; *West*, in regard of the Western situation of it from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mislook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Sea-Men

use to call all Countries, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on conjectural Presumptions, than demonstrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries; Their Reasons drawn, 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the Ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the World which are opposite to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the Ancients was by Supposition, at the best by Demonstration only, and not in fact: or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2. It is said that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, discovered a great Island in the Western Ocean, and after a long Voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous Voyage, (which some conceive to be *Hanno* himself) informs us that he sailed not Westward, but more towards the South: and therefore this *Great Island*, whatsoever it was. (whether *Madera*, or some one of the *Fortunate Islands*, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3. It is alledged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* speaks of a great Island of the *Atlantick Ocean*, *Libyam & Africam adequans*, (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Libya* and *Africk*, properly so called: which he confesseth to be drowned long before his time, and therefore possibly never extant but in some Mens fancies. 4. That

D d d d d i

Aristotle

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AMERICA, AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF AMERICA.

AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantick Ocean* and the *Verigivian Seas*, by which parted from *Europe* and *Africa*, which Seas the Mariners call *Mare del Nordt*; on the West, with the *Pacific Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South, with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long but narrow *Streight*, called the *Streights of Magelan*: the North bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Island* or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: New for the Late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatness of it. The most usual, and yet some what the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vesputius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to find out those Parts came from the Directions and Example of *Columbus*, who first led the way; and that *Sebastian Cabot* touched at many places which *Americus Vesputius* never saw, it might as properly have been called *Columbina*, *Sebastiana*, or *Cabotia*. The most improper name of all, and yet not much less used than that of *America*, is the *West-Indies*: *West*, in regard of the Western situation of it from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mislook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Sea-Men

use to call all Countries, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on conjectural Presumptions, than demonstrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries; Their Reasons drawn, 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the Ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the World which are opposite to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the Ancients was by Supposition, at the best by Demonstration only, and not in fact: or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2. It is said that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, discovered a great Island in the Western Ocean, and after a long Voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous Voyage, (which some conceive to be *Hanno* himself) informs us that he sailed not Westward, but more towards the South: and therefore this *Great Island*, whatsoever it was. (whether *Madera*, or some one of the *Fortunate Islands*, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3. It is alledged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* speaks of a great Island of the *Atlantick Ocean*, *Libyæ & Africæ æquans*, (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Libya* and *Africk*, properly so called: which he confesseth to be drowned long before his time, and therefore possibly never extant but in some Mens fancies. 4. That

D d d d d i

Aristotle

Aristotle in the Book *de mundo* (if that Book be his) speaks of an Island very fruitful, and full of Navigable Rivers, discovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Island being affirmed by that Author to be *Mulorum dierum itineri* & *Gadibus remota*, hath made some Men conceive it to be this *America*, or some of the great Islands of it. As if it might not as well be one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*, or some other of the Islands in the Road of *Hanno's* Voyage. Certain I am, that one of the best Friends the *Phœnicians* have, who would not gladly lose such an opportunity of ennobling their performances in Navigation, (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtful credit; and knoweth of no such place as is there described by that Author, whosoever he were. 5. Some have produced these Verses of *Seneca*, to infer a knowledge of this Country amongst the Ancients, viz.

Venient annis secula feris,
Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum
Laxet, & ingens pateat Tellus,
Nephaeque Tiphys detegat Orbes,
Nec sit Terræ ultima Thule.

Which we may *English* in these words:

In the last days an age shall come
Wherein the all-devouring Foam
Shall lose its former bounds, and shew
Another Continent to view.
New Worlds, which Night doth now conceal,
A second *Tiphys* shall reveal;
And frozen *Thule* shall no more
Be of the Earth the farthest Shore.

But this Argument can bring no necessary, nor so much as a probable inference, of any such Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* shewing as well the continual dangers as the possible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were, more Lands discovered than those formerly known. 6. Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* is said in the holy Scriptures to have sent for Gold. But *Ezra's* *Giber*, which is there also said to be the Station where his Navy lay, was situate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had sent this way, his shipping must have lain at *Joppa*, or some other Port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence set forwards through the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and so plainly Westward. 7. Finally in the History of *Wales*, writ by *Dauid Powel*, 'tis reported that *Madoc* the Son of *Owen Gwynedd*, Prince of *Wales*, of purpose to decline engaging in a Civil War raised in that Estate, in the year 1170. put himself to Sea, and after a long course of Navigation came into this Country: where after he had left his Men, and fortified some places of advantage in it, he returned home for more Supplies, which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the rest of that Nation. To which some add, that there is still some smattering of the *Welsh* or *British* tongue to be found amongst them; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Penguin*, and the like: in which regard some sorry States-men went about to entitle Queen *Elizabeth* unto the Sovereignty of these Countries. Others more wise, dissuaded from that vain Ambition, considering that *Welsh-men*, as well as others, might be cast upon these parts by force of Tempest, and easily implant some few words of their own among the People there inhabiting. And though I must needs say for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they say, than those which look for this New World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantic* Islands of *Aristotle* and *Plutarch*, or the Discoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*: yet I am not so far convinced of the truth thereof, the use of the Mariners Compass being not so

ancient, (without which, such a Voyage could not be performed) but that I may conclude with more satisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former Ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer said once of *Britain*, then newly conquered by the *Romans*, *Britannia qualis sit, qualesque progeneret, mox certiora & magis explorata dicuntur*; quippe jam diu clausam aperit ecce Principum maximus, (he means *Claudius Cæsar*) nec indomitum modo sed & incognitarum ante se Gentium Victor: so may we say of *America*, on these late Discoveries. What kind of Country it is, and what men it produceth, we do and shall know more certainly than in former times; since those puissant Kings of *Spain* have laid open almost all the parts thereof, inhabited not only by unvanquished, but even unknown Nations. For God remembering the promise of his Son, that his Gospel before the end of the World should be preached to all Nations, stirred up one *Christopher Columbus*, of *Columbus*, born at *Nerzy* in the Seignoury of *Genoa*, to be the Instrument for finding out those parts of the World, to which the Sound of the Gospel had not yet arrived. Who being a Man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not persuade himself (the motion of the Sun considered) but that there was another World to which that Glorious Planet did impart both his Light and Heat, when he went from us. This World he purposed to seek after, and opening his design to the State of *Genoa*, Anno 1486 was by them rejected. On his repulse, he sent his Brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the Seventh of *England*; who in his way hapned unfortunately into the hands of Pirates, by them detained a long while, but at last enlarged. As soon as he was set at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England*; where his Proposition found such a cheerful entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Christopher Columbus* was sent for to come thither also. But GOD had otherwise disposed his rich purchase. For *Christopher*, not knowing of his Brother's imprisonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his Service to have been neglected; and thereupon made his desires known at the Court of *Castile*: where after many delays, and six years attendance on the business, he was at last furnished with three Ships only, and those not for Conquest, but Discovery. With this small strength he sailed on the main Ocean more than 60 days, yet could see no Land, so that the discontented *Spaniards* began to mutiny; and partly out of scorn to be under the Command of a Stranger, partly desirous to return, would not go a foot forwards. Just at that time it hapned that *Columbus* did discern the Clouds to carry a clearer colour than they did before: and probably conceiving that this clearness proceeded from some high habitable place, restrained the time of their expectation within the compass of three days, passing his word to return again, if they did not see Land within that time. Towards the end of the third day, one of the Company, called *Rodrigo d' Triane* (he deserves to have his name recorded, being no otherwise rewarded for such joyful News) descried Fire, an evident Argument that they drew near unto some shore. The place discovered was an Island on the Coast of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guabani*; by *Columbus* S. *Saviours*; now counted one of the *Lucas*. Landing his Men, and causing a Tree to be cut down, he made a Cross thereof; which he erected near the place where he came on Land; and by that Ceremony took possession of this *NEW WORLD* for the Kings of *Spain*, October 11. Anno 1492. Afterwards he discovered and took Possession of *Hispaniola*, and with much Treasure and Content returned towards *Spain*. Preferred for this good Service by the Kings themselves, first to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and afterwards to a Coat of Arms with this Inscription, *For Castile and Leon Columbus hath gotten a NEW WORLD*; and in conclusion unto the Title of Duke *De la Vega*, in the Isle of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Discovery being sent to Pope

Pope Alex. 6. by the Kings of *Castile*, he very liberally bestowed upon them all those Countreys which they already had, or should afterwards discover in the Western World; advising them to use their Diligence and Endeavors for converting these people to the Faith: which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbus* being furnish'd with 18 Ships for more Discoveries, and his Brother *Bartholomew* made Governor of the Countreys discovered by him, they took along with them one *Bayl*, a *Benedictine* Monk, as the Pope's Vicar Gener. accompanied with the learned Clerks which were to be assistants to him in the converting of that People to the Christian Faith. In this second Voyage he discovered the Islands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the Town of *Isabella* (afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo*) in *Hispaniola*; from whence, for some Severities used against the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was sent Prisoner into *Castile*, but very honourably entertained, and absolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1499. he began his third Voyage, in which he discovered the Countreys of *Paria* and *Cumana*, on the firm Land, with the Islands of *Cubagua* and *Margarita*, with many other Islands, Capes, and Provinces, which shall be touched upon particularly in their several places. In the year 1500 he began his 4th. and last Voyage, in the course whereof coming to *Hispaniola*, he was unworthily denied entrance into the City of *Domingo*, by *Nicolas de Ovando*, the then Governour of it: after which, scouring along the Sea-coasts as far as *Nombre de Dios*, but adding little to the fortune of his former Discoveries, he returned back to *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about six years after (that is to say, Anno. 1506.) he departed this Life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where to this day remaineth this Epitaph on his Tomb, bald in it self, and otherwise exceeding short of so great a Merit. Of which I must tell you by the way, that the *Philip* whom the *Verse* (I do not say the Poet) called *Philippus Hispanus*, should rather have been called *Philippus Austriacus*, or *Philippus Burgundus*, as being meant of that *Philip* of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Juan*, sole Daughter and Heir of the King of *Spain*, and after the Death of *Isabella* succeeded in the Realm of *Castile*: or else, the Epitaph must be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the II. Son of *Charles* the Fifth who was not born until the year 1527. and came not to the Crown above twenty years after. Now for this Epitaph, such as it is, it is this that followeth:

*Cristophorus genuit quem Genoa clara Columbus,
(Numine percussus quo nescio) primus in altum
Descendens Pelagus, Solem versusque cadentem
Directo cursu, nostro hactenus addita Mundo
Littora detexi, Hispano paritura Philippo;
Addenda hinc aliis plura & majora relinquens.*

Which may be Englished in these Words:

*I Christopher Columbus, whom the Land
Of Genoa first brought forth, first took in hand,
I know not by what Deity incited,
To scour the Western seas, and was delighted
To seek for Countreys never known before.
Crown'd with Success, I first descri'd the Shore
Of the NEW WORLD, then destin'd to sustain
The future Yoke of Philip Lord of Spain.
And yet I greater matters left behind,
For men of more Means, and a Braver Mind.*

Dying, he left two Sons behind him, of which the youngest, called *Ferdinand*, died unmarried; the eldest, called *Diego*, succeeded his Father in the Admiralty of the *Indies*, and the Dukedom of *Vega*, and married *Mary* of *Toledo*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*; but having (as it seemeth) no Issue by her, he spent the greatest part of his Estate in founding the Library at *Sevil*, spoken of before, which he furnished with 12000 Volumes, and endowed

with a liberal Revenue to maintain the same. But though his family be extinct, yet his Fame shall live, and grow to all posterities, as the first discoverer of this new world, and consequently the greatest and most fortunate Advancer of the *Spanish* Monarchy; though in his life time to maligned by most part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla*, being sent into those Parts for redress of Grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him Prisoner into *Spain*. Nor did they only stick after his death to deprive him of the honour of this Discovery, (attributing it to I know not what *Spaniard*, whose Charts and Descriptions he had seen) but in his life would often say that it was a matter of no such difficulty to have found these Countreys; and that if he had not done it when he did, some body else might have done it for him. Whole Peevishness he confuted by this modest Artifice, desiring some of them, who insolently enough had contended with him touching this Discovery, to make an Egg stand firmly upon one of its ends: Which when they could not do upon many Trials, he gently bruising one end of it, made it stand upright; letting them see without any farther reprehension, how easie it was to do that thing which we see another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was seconded by *Juan Cabot* a *Venetian*, the Father of *Sebastian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the Seventh of *England*; who in the year 1497. discovered all the North-East Coasts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South, to *Newfoundland*, and *Terra di Labrador* in the North, causing the Róyelets to turn Homagers to that King, and the Crown of *England*. Next after him succeeded *Americus Vesputius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, employed therein by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, Anno. 1501. on a design of finding out a nearer way to the *Moluccas* than by the Cape of good hope, who though he passed not farther than the Cape of *S. Augustines* in *Brasil*, without so much as having a sight of the Great River *de la plata*, which washeth the South Parts of that Country; yet from him (to the great Injury and Neglect of the first Discoverers) the Continent or Main Land of this Country hath the name of *America*; by which it is still known, and most commonly called. Followed herein by divers Private Adventurers and Undertakers out of all Parts of *Europe* bordering on the Ocean. *Ferdinand Magellanus* was the first that compassed the whole World, and found the South Passage, called *Fretum Magellanicum* to this day: followed herein by *Drake* and *Cavendish* of *England*. *Frobisher* and *Davis* attempted a Discovery of the North-west Passage: *Willoughby* and *Barrroughs* of the North-east. So that, according to that elegant saying of the learned *Verulam* in his *Advancement of Learning*, this Great Building, the World, had never thorough Light made in it, till these our days; by which, as almost all parts of Learning, so in especial this of Navigation, and by consequence of Cosmography also, hath obtained an incredible Proficiency in these later times.

For in the Infancy and first Ages of the World, (pardon me, I beseech you, this short but not unprofitable Digression) Men lived at home, neither intent upon any foreign Merchandise, nor inquisitive after the Lives and Fortunes of their Neighbours; or in the Language of the Poet,

*Nondum caesa suis, peregrinum ut viseret Orbem,
Montibus, in liquidas Pinus, descenderat undas.*

The Pine left not the Hills on which it stood,
To seek strange Lands, or rove upon the Flood.

But when the Providence of God had instructed *Noah* how to build the Ark, for the preservation of himself and his Children from the general Deluge, the Posterity which descended from him, had thereby a Pattern for the making of Ships and other Vessels (perfected in more length of time)

time) whereby to make the Waters passable, and maintain a necessary intercourse betwixt Nation and Nation. 'Tis true, the Heathen Writers, which knew not Noah, attribute the invention of Shipping to sundry Men, according to such Informations or Traditions as they had received: *Strabo*, to *Minos* King of *Crete*; *Diodorus Siculus*, to *Neptune*, who was therefore called *The God of the Seas*; and *Tibullus*, to the People of *Tyre*, (a Town indeed of great wealth and Traffick, and the most famous Empory of the elder times) saying,

Prima Ratem ventis credere docta Tyrus.

The *Tyrians* first the Art did find
To make Ships Travel with the Wind.

And questionless the *Tyrians* and the rest of the *Phœnicians*, enjoying a large Sea-coast, and many safe and capacious Havens, being in these times most strong at Sea, and making so many fortunate Navigations into most parts of the then known World, might give the Poet some good colour for his affirmation. From the *Phœnicians* the *Egyptians* (their next neighbours) might derive the Art of Navigation; tho' being an ingenious People, they did add much to it. For whereas the first Vessels were either made of the body of some great Tree, made hollow by the Art of Man, or else of divers rods or twigs fashioned into a Boat, and covered with the Skins of Beasts, (which we have spoken of before, when we were in *Sanguibar*, and which are still in use amongst these *Americans*) the *Phœnicians* brought them first into strength and form; but the *Egyptians* added Decks unto them. By *Danaus* King of *Egypt*, when he fled from his Brother *Rameses*, the use of Shipping was first brought amongst the *Grecians*, who before that time knew no other way of crossing the narrow Seas, but on Beams or Rafters tied to one another, *Narde primus ab Egypto Danaus advenit; ante enim Ratibus navigabatur*, as it is in *Pliny*: where we may see the true and genuine difference betwixt *Ratis* and *Navis*; though now both be used indifferently for all sorts of Shipping. Amongst the *Grecians*, those of *Crete* were the ablest Seamen; which gave occasion to *Aristotle* to call *Crete* the *Lady of the Sea*; and to *Strabo*, to make *Minos* the Inventor of Ships. In following times the *Carthaginians*, being a Colony of *Tyre*, were most considerable in this kind, and by the benefit of their Shipping much distressed the *Romans*. But so it hapned (as all things do and must concur to God's publick Purposes in the alteration of Estates) that a Tempest separating a *Quinqueremis*, or Gally of five banks of Oars, from the rest of the *Carthaginian* Fleet, cast it on Shore of *Italy*; by which accident the *Romans* learning the Art of Shipwrights, soon became Masters of the Sea. That *France* and *Spain* were taught the use of Shipping by the *Greeks* and *Phœnicians*, is a thing past questioning; *Marseilles* in the one being a *Phœcean*, and *Cades* in the other a *Tirian* Colony. As for the *Belgians* and the *Britans*, it is probable that they first learnt it of the *Romans*, (tho' formerly they had some way to transport themselves from one Shore to the other) for *Cæsar* telleth us of the *Belgæ*, *Ad eos Mercatores minimè commeant*, that they were not at all visited by foreign Merchants. And the same *Cæsar* found the Seas betwixt *France* and *Britain* so ill furnished with Vessels, that he was fain to make Ships to transport his Army: *Singulari militum studio circiter sexcentas & duodeviginta Navis invenit*, as his own words are.

Having thus brought Navigation to the greatest height which it had in those days; let us look back again on the Inventors of particular Vessels, and the Tackle unto them belonging. That the *Phœnicians* first invented open Vessels, and the *Egyptians* Ships with Decks, hath been said before, and unto them also is referred the Invention

of Gallies, with two banks of Oars upon a side; which kind of Vessels grew so large in the course of time, that *Ptolemy Philopater* is said to have made a Gally of Fifty Banks. Great Ships of Burthen called *Circerus*, we owe to the *Cypriots*; Cock boats, or Skiffs (*Scaphas*) to the *Illyrians*, or *Lyburnians*; Brigantines, (*Celoces*) to the *Rhodians*; and Frigats or light Barks, (*Lembos*) unto the *Cyrenians*. The *Phæli*, and *Pamphyli* (which we may render *Men of War*) were the Invention of the *Pamphylians*, and the Inhabitants of *Phæli*, a Town of *Lycia*, in *Asia Minor*. As for Tackle, the *Bæotians* invented the Oar; *Dædalus*, and his Son *Icarus*, the Masts and Sails: which gave occasion to the Poets to feign, that flying out of *Crete*, they made Wings to their Bodies; and that *Icarus* soaring too high, melted the Wax which fastened his Wings unto his Shoulders, and thereby perished: the Truth being, that presuming too much on this new Invention, he ran himself upon a Rock, and was cast away. For *Hippagines*, Vessels for Transporting of Horse, we are indebted to the *Salimanians*; for Grapling hooks, to *Anacharsis*; for Anchors to the *Tuscans*; and for the Rudder, Helm, or Art of Steering, to *Tiphys*, the chief Pilot in the famous *Argo*, who noting, that a Kite when she flew, guided her whole Body by her Tail, effected that in the devices of Art, which he had observed in the Works of Nature. By these helps some great Voyages were performed in the elder times; the greatest, those of *Jason*, *Ulysses*, and *Alexander*, with the Fleets of *Solomon* and the *Egyptian* Kings. Of these, *Jason* and his Companions sailed in the Ship called *Argo*, through the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Mediterranean*; *Ulysses*, through the *Mediterranean* only; small Galleys, if compared with the Ocean. *Alexander's* Journey, so famous, and accounted then so hazardous, was but sailing down the River *Indus*, and four hundred Furlongs into the Ocean. And for the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the Kings of *Egypt*, it is very apparent that they went with great leisure, and crawled close the Shore-side: otherwise it had been impossible to have consumed three whole Years in going from *Ezion-Geber* into *India*, and returning again; which was the usual times of these Voyages, as appeareth in *1 Kings* 10. 22. After the fall of the *Roman* Monarchy, the most potent States by Sea in the *Mediterranean* were the *Genoese* and *Venetians*; in the Ocean, the *English* and the *Hanse Towns*, neither of which attempted any great Discoveries.

But in the year 1300, one *Flavio* of *Malphi* in the Realm of *Naples* found out the Compass, or *Pyxis Nautica*, consisting of 8 Winds only, the four principal, and four collateral: and not long after, the People of *Bruges* and *Antwerp* perfected this excellent invention, adding 24 other subordinate Winds or Points. By means of this excellent Instrument, and withal, by the good success of *Columbus*, the *Portugals* Eastward, the *Spaniards* Westward, and the *English* Northward, have made many glorious and fortunate Expeditions: which had been utterly impossible to have been performed, and had been foolishly undertaken when that Help was wanting. I know there hath been much pains taken by some Learned Men to prove the use of the Mariner's Compass to be far more Ancient than is now commonly pretended. *Fuller*, a very learned and industrious Man, but better skilled in the *Hebrew* Tongue than the Philology of the *Greeks* and *Latines*, will have it known to *Solomon*, and by him taught unto the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* (the most famous Sea-men of old times:) but he brings no Argument of weight to make good the Cause. Nor is it possible that such an excellent Invention, so beneficial to the common Good of all Mankind, should have been forgotten and discontinued for the space of more than 2000 Years, if ever the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* had been Masters of it, who could not possibly conceal it (had they been so minded) from the common Mariners, or they not have communicated

municated it for Gain, or desire of Glory, to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, under whom successively they lived. As little moment do I find in some other Arguments; as that the *Lapis Heraclius* of the Ancient Writers, or the *Verforia* of *Plautus*, should be by them intended of the Mariner's Compass. For plainly the *Verforia* of *Plautus* is no other than that piece of Tackle which our Mariners now call the *Bolin*; by which they use to turn their Sails, and fit them to the change of every Wind. And so much doth appear by the Poet himself, in the Comedy which he calls *Mercator*, saying, *Hinc ventus nunc secundus est, cape modo Verforiam*. So called from *Verfo*, to turn often, or from *Verfum*, the first Supine of *Verto*: Whence *Velum vertere* is a common Phrase amongst the *Latins*, used for the shifting of the Sail as the Wind doth vary. As for the Load stone, it is called indeed *Heraclius Lapis*, *Ἡράκλειος λίθος* by the *Greeks*: not because *Hercules Tirus* whom the *Phœnicians* invocated when they were at Sea, had first found out the virtue of it, as our *Fuller* thinketh, but because first found near *Heraclea*, a City of *Lydia*; *Ἡράκλειον δ' ἔπος ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείου τὸ ἐν Λυδίᾳ πόλις*, saith *Hesychius*, the old Grammarian. Called for the same reason *Magnes*, by the Writers both *Greek* and *Latine*, because first found in the Territory of *Magnesia* a City of *Lydia* also, whereof *Heraclea* was a part. So *Suidas* telleth us of the *Greeks*, *Ἡράκλειον λίθον πνέει τὸ Μαγνησίαν ἀπέδωσαν, διὰ τὸ τὸ Ἡράκλειον τὸ Μαγνησίας εἶναι*, *Heracium Lapidem quidam Magnesiam rediderunt, quia Heraclea pars est Magnesiæ*. Called for the very same reason *Lydius Lapis* also, but by them known only as a Touchstone. Thus old *Lucretius* for the *Latins*.

*Quem Magneta vocant patrio de nomine Graii,
Magnetum quia sit patriis de finibus ortus.*

Which Stone the *Greeks* do *Magnes* name,
Because it from *Magnesia* came.

But I have rambled farther than I did intend, drawn by the virtue of the Load stone too much out of my way. It is time now to return again into *America*, where the *Spaniards* at their first arrival found the People without all manner of Apparel, not skilled in Agriculture; making their Bread either of a Plant called *Matze*, or a kind of Root called *Jucca*; a Root wherein is a venomous Liquor, not inferior to the most deadly Poisons; but having first squeezed out this juice, and after dried and prepared the Root, they made their Bread of it. They worshipped the Devilish Spirits, whom they called *Zemes*; in remembrance of whom they kept certain Images made of Cotton wool, like our Childrens Babies; to which they did great Reverence, as supposing the Spirit of the *Zemes* to be in them: and to blind them the more, the Devil would cause these Puppets to seem to move, and to make a noise. They stood also in so great fear of them, that they durst not displease them: for if their Wills were not fulfilled, the Devil strait executed vengeance upon some of their Children; so holding this insatuated People in perpetual Thralldom. So ignorant they were of all things which they had not seen, that they thought the Christians to be Immortal: wondering exceedingly at the Sails, Masts, and Tacklings of their Ships; themselves knowing no Ships or other Vessels, but huge Troughs made of some great bodied Tree. But this Opinion of the Christians Immortality (in the sense they meant it) did not long continue, for having taken some of them, they held their Heads under the Water till they had quite choaked them; by which they knew them to be mortal, like other Men. Quite destitute of all good Learning, they reckoned their time by a confused Observation of the course of the Moon: and strangely admired to see the *Spaniards* know the Health and Affairs of one another, only by reading of a Letter. Of a plain and honest nature, for the most part they were found to be; loving and kind in their Entertainments, and apt to

do good Offices, both private and publick, according to their Understandings: encouraged thereunto by an opinion which they had, that beyond some certain Hill (but they knew not where) those which lived honestly and justly, or offered up their Lives in defence of their Country, should find a place of everlasting Peace and Happiness. So natural is the knowledge of the Souls Immortality, and of some *Ubi* for the future Reception of it, that we find some Tract or other of it in most barbarous Nations. And as for Gold and Silver, which the new come Christians so Adored, they esteemed them no otherwise than as dross: though many times they Adorned themselves therewith for the colour's sake: as they did also with Shells, Feathers, and the like fine Gew-gaws.

Of Complexion, most of these *Americans* were reasonably Fair and Clear, little inclining unto Blackness: notwithstanding that a great part of this Country lieth under the same parallel with *Ethiopia*, *Lybia*, and the Land of *Negroes*. So that the extraordinary heat of the Sun is not (as some imagine) the cause of that Blackness, though accidentally it may turn the Skin into such a colour; as we see in many Country Lasses, even in colder Climates, whose Faces are continually exposed to the Sun and Weather. Others more Wise in their own Conceits, (but in no bodies else) will have the natural Seed of the *Africans* to be Black of Colour; contrary both to Sense and Reason, Experience and true natural Philosophy being both against it. And some will have this Blackness laid as a Curse on *Cham*, (from whose Posterity the *African* Nations do derive themselves) because, forsooth, he had carnal knowledge of his Wife when they were in the Ark: a Fancy as ridiculous as the other false. So that we must refer it wholly to God's secret pleasure; though possibly enough the Curse of God on *Cham* and on his Posterity (though for some cause unknown to us) hath an Influence on it.

Touching the Original of this People, it is most probable that they descend from the *Tartars*; for which there are some Arguments of special weight. For first, it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*; as having no remainders of the Arts, Learning and Civilities of it. And Secondly, that they came not from *Asiick*; in regard they have no Black men amongst them, except some few which dwell on the Sea-Coasts over against *Guinea* in the Land of the *Negroes*, from whence they are supposed to have been brought hither by some Tempest or other. Thirdly, that they have not the least token or shew of the Arts and Industry of *China*, *India*, or any civil Region on that side of *Asia*. The affirmative Arguments prove first, That they came from *Asia*, next in particular from *Tartary*. That they came out of *Asia*, is more than manifest, in that the West side of the Country towards *Asia*, is far more populous then the East towards *Europe*: of which there can be no other reason assigned, than that these parts were first inhabited, and that from hence the rest was Peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this People, and the particularities thereof, their Incivility and barbarous qualities, tell us that they are most like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the West side of *America*, if it be not Continent with *Tartary* is yet disjoyned by a very small Streight, as may be perceived by all our Maps and Charts, as also in the Description of these Countries: so that there is thence into these Countries a very quick and easie passage. And fourthly, The People of *Quivira*, which of all the Provinces of *America*, is the nearest unto *Tartary*, are said to follow, in the whole course of their Life, the Seasons and best Pasturing of their Cattel, just like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Hordes*: an evident Argument of their Original Descent.

But from what Root soever they did first descend, certain it is, that they had settled here many Ages since, and overspread all the parts and quarters of this spacious Continent; there being no place which the *Spaniards*, or any other Adventurers, found desolate or waste, and without Inhabitants.

Inhabitants. But their numbers are much diminished since these late Discoveries; the *Spaniards* behaving themselves most inhumanely towards this unarmed and naked People, killing them up like Sheep appointed for the Slaughter, or otherwise consuming them in their Mines and Works of Drudgery. And had not *Charles* the Fifth ordained with most Christian Prudence, that the Natives should not be compelled to work in the Mines against their Will, but that the *Spaniards* should provide themselves of Slaves elsewhere; the Natives in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of Christianity and the Gospel. For so exceeding barbarous and bloody were they at their first coming thither, that *Hutbny*, a Nobleman amongst them, being persuaded to embrace the *Christian* Faith, demanded first what he should get by being of that Religion? and was answered, That he should get Heaven, and the Joys thereof: Then would he know what place was destinate to such as died unbaptized; and was answered, That they went to Hell, and the torments of it. Finally, asking unto which of these two places the *Spaniards* went, and being told they went to Heaven, he renounced his Baptism: protesting that he would rather go to Hell with the Unbaptized, than to live in Heaven with so cruel a People. The rest were driven unto the Font, like so many Horses to the watering place, and received into the Church of *Christ* without any Instruction: insomuch, that one old Frier (as himself confessed to *Charles* the Fifth) had Christened 70000 of them, and another of that rank 300000; never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the *Christian* Faith, or points of Religious Conversation, (except it were to be obedient to their Pastors and Teachers.) Yet here I must confess, (for I am loth to defraud any Man of his due) there hath been made a great improvement of Christianity: the number of *Christians* in this Country being thought by some Learned Men of the Church of *Rome*, to equal all those of the *Latine* Churches in *Europe*. And though perhaps constrained at first unto it as a new Religion, and of a stricter Rule than that which before they had; yet by long time and Education it is now grown more plausible and familiar to them. The Church hereof is governed by the four Archbishops of 1. *Mexico*. 2. *Lima*, 3. *S. Foy*. and 4. *Dominico*, who have under them 25 Suffragan Bishops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When this new World came first acquainted with the Old, *Isabel* Queen of *Castile* would not permit any of her Husband *Ferdinando's* Subjects to be planted here, viz. *Aragonians* or *Valentinians*; but licensed the *Castilians*, *Andalusians*, *Biscainers*, and the rest of her own People only, envying the Wealth hereof to the rest. When she was dead, *Ferdinando* Licensed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding only the *Portugals*. But such a rich Prize could not so warily be fenced, but that the *Portugals*, *French*, *English*, and now of late the *Low Country-men* have laid in their own Barns part of the *Spaniard's* Harvest; who well hoped to have had a Monopoly of so wealthy a Region, and to have enjoyed without any Rival or Competitor the Possession (I cannot say the Love) of a Country so abundantly fruitful. For though some of the Kings of *Spain* have been used to say, that they loved the *East-Indies* as their Mistress only, in whose favour they could patiently enough endure a Rival; but esteemed *America* as their Wife, in whose Love they could not brook a Competitor without a foul Dishonour: yet by his leave, (or without it rather) some of his Neighbours have made bold with his Wife in these later times, though in the Affections of his Mistress they have greater Interest. But these Attempts of the *English* and *Hollanders* have been an occasion of great strength to the whole Country. For whereas in our first Wars with *Spain*, in Queen *Elizabeth's* time, our private Adventurers found the Sea-coasts almost naked of Defence, and thereupon made many a rich and prosperous Voyage to these parts: the *Spaniards*, upon sight of that weakness and disadvantage, so strongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the

Reign of that Queen we were not able to accomplish that with great and Publick Forces, which before had been performed by small and Private. Which caused our Captains and Adventurers, failing oftentimes in their Designs upon the Continent, to take up their Market on the Seas in the return of *Spanish* Navies, as they yet do.

This new World is very fruitful of Spices, Fruits, and such Creatures which the Old World never knew; stocked with such store of Kine and Bulls, (brought hither out of *Europe* since the first Discovery) that the *Spaniards* kill Thousands of them yearly for their Tallow and Hides only; blest with such abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines more Gold than Earth: a Metal which the *Americans* not regarding it, greedily exchanged for Hammers, Knives, Axes, and the like Tools of Iron; for before they were wont to make their Canoes or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of Fire. Other particularities shall be specified in the particular Descriptions of the several Countries. I shall now only take a brief view of such of their Beasts and Fowls as either this Old World did not know, or knew not in such shapes and qualities as are there presented. Their Lions less in greatness than those in *Africa*, are said to be of colour gray, and so nimble as to climb Trees; their Dogs snouted like Foxes, but deprived of that property which the Logicians call *Proprium quarto modo*, for they could not Bark; their Hogs with Talons sharp as Razors, and the Navil of their Bodies on the ridge of their Backs: their Stags and Deer without Horns; their Sheep (they call them *Lamas*) not only profitable, as with us, for Food and Raiment, but accustomed to the carrying of Burthens, some of 150 pound weight. Amongst such strong Beasts as this Old World knew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whose name I find not) whose fore-part resembleth a Fox, the hinder-part an Ape, except the Feet only, which are like a Man's: beneath her Belly a receptacle like a Purse, where she keeps her young till they be able to shift for themselves; never coming thence but when they Suck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a Barbed Horse, seeming to be Armed all over, and that with artificial (rather than natural) Plates, which do shut and open. The *Vicugue* resembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the Fleece whereof they make Rugs, Coverings, and Stuffs; and in the Belly find the Bezoar, sometimes two or three, a sovereign Antidote against Poisons, and venemous Diseases. A kind of Hare, resembling a Want in his Feet, and a Cat in his Tail; under whose Chin nature hath fastned a little Bag, which she hath also taught him to use as a Store-house; for in this, having filled his Belly, he preserveth the remnant of his Provision. The *Pigritia*, a little Beast, (not so named for nought) which in fourteen Days cannot go so far as a Man may easily throw a Stone. Then for their Birds, they have them there in such variety of Colours, that the *Indians* will perfectly represent in Feathers whatsoever they see drawn with Pencils: insomuch as a Figure of *St. Francis* made of Feathers was presented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*; whose Eye could not discern them to be natural Colours, but thought them Pencil-work, till he made tryal with his Fingers. One called the *Timinejo*, of all Colours, so little, that it seems no bigger than a Bee or Butter-fly, the Mouth thereof no bigger than the Eye of a Needle, yet yieldeth not to the Nightingale in the sweetness of its Note and Musick; the Bird and Nest, put into Gold Scales not weighing above 24 Grains, yet beautified with Feathers of so many Colours, especially in the Neck and Breast, that the *Indians* make great use of them in their Feather-pictures. Others as big as these are little. The *Condors* of such strength and greatness, that they will fall upon a Sheep or Calf, open it and eat it. Like Miracles of Nature have they in their Fruits and Plants, more proper unto natural History than to this Discourse, and many Medicinal Drugs of rare operation, which I

leave to the consideration of the learned Herbalists. I am too much a stranger to be a Physician, and therefore will not deal in such things as are out of my Element. Yet somewhat of this kind we may chance to meet with in the Description and Survey of the several Provinces into which this *New World* is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great *Peninsulas*; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana* from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, supposed (for the most Northern parts of it are not yet discovered) to contain 13200 Miles in compass. That towards the South hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Country of *Peru* the Circumnavigation whereof is reckoned to be 17000 Italian Miles. The *Isthmus* which joineth these two together is very long, but narrow; in some places not above twelve Miles from Sea to Sea, in many not above seventeen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the *Streight of Darien*, from a River of that name called *Peruana* near unto the *Isthmus*; and is so small a Ligament for so great a Body, that some have thought of turning these two *Peninsulas* into perfect Islands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Council of *Spain*, the cutting of a Navigable Canal through this small *Isthmus*, to shorten their common Voyages to *China* and the *Moluccas*. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it; partly, because if he should employ the *Americans* in the work, he should lose those few of them which his People have suffered to live, partly, because the Slaves which they yearly buy out of *Africa* do but suffice for the Mines and Sugar-houses; but principally, lest the passage by the *Cape of Good Hope* being left, those Seas might become a Receptacle of Pirates. Which doubtless was a very prudent and politic Consideration. Many times I have read of the like Attempts begun, but never of any finished. *Sesostris* King of *Egypt*, *Darius* of *Persia*, one of the *Ptolemies*, and a late capricious *Portugal* had the like Plot, to make a Passage from the *Red Sea* to the *Mediterranean*. So had *Cæsar*, *Caligula*, and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Corinthian Isthmus*. Another of the same nature had *Charles* the Great, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danow*: the like had *Lucius Verus*, to join the *Rhene* and the *Rhous*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicanor* also, King of *Syria*, intended to have made a Chanel from the *Caspian* to the *Euxine* Sea, an impossible project. But neither he nor any of the rest could finish these works: God, it seemeth, being not pleased with such proud and haughty Enterprizes. And yet perhaps the want of Treasure hath not been the least cause why the like Projects have not proceeded: besides the dreadful Noises and Apparitions, which (as we have already said) continually affrighted the Workmen.

Not less observable than this great, but unsuccessful Design of cutting a passage through the *Isthmus*, from one Sea to the other, was that notable, but like successless Attempt of *Juan Ovelando*, an adventurous *Spaniard*, in a passage over it by Land. This Man being one of the Followers of *Sir Francis Drake*, arriving in a small Bark with 20 of his Companions, a little above *Norwich Point*, the chiefest Town of all the *Arucas*, drew his Ship on Land, covered it with Boulds, and marched over the Land with his Company, guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinnace, entred the *South Sea*, went to the Ill of *Trinidad*, where he stayed ten Days; intercepted in two *Spanish* Ships (who feared no Enemy on that side) 60000 pound weight of Gold, 120000 pound weight in bars of Silver, and returned in safety to the Land. And so by the mutiny of some of his own company, he neither returned into his own Country, nor unto his Ship: yet it is an Adventure not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other, and by the *Spanish* Writers Recorded with much Admiration.

But to return to the Division of this Country, and the two main parts thereof which this *Strait* united; *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninsula*, may be most properly divided into the Continent, and Islands: the Continent again into the several Provinces of 1. *Yucatan*, 2. *Nova Francia*, 3. *Virginia*, 4. *Florida*, 5. *Californy*, 6. *Nova Galicia*, 7. *Nova Hispania*, 8. *Guatemala*; each of them branched into many Subdivisions and lesser Territories. *Peruana*, or the Southern *Peninsula*, taking in some part of the *Isthmus*, as before we did, hath on the Continent the Provinces of 1. *Castilla Aurea*, 2. *Nova Granada*, 3. *Peru*, 4. *Chile*, 5. *Paraguay*, 6. *Brasil*, 7. *Guiana*, and 8. *Paria*, with their several Members, Parts, and particular Regions. The Islands which belong to both, dispersed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mar del Zur*; where there is not any one of Note, but 1. Those called *Los Ladrones*, and 2. The Islands of *Salomon*: or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mar del Norte*, reduced unto, 3. the *Caribes*, 4. *Porto Rico*, 5. *Hippaniola*, 6. *Cuba*, and 7. *Jamaica*: in the Survey of which Particulars we will begin with those which lie on the North-East of this great Continent, not possessed by the *Spaniards*; and passing through the Plantations of such other Nations as have any footing in the same, come by degrees to the Estates of the King of *Spain*, that we may lay them all together without interruption: beginning with *Estotiland*, the most Northern Part, and that which (as some say) was discovered first.

O F ESTOTILAND.

ESTOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend those Regions of *Mexicana* which lie most towards the North and East, hath on the East the main Ocean; on the South, *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*; on the West, some unknown Tract not yet discovered; and on the North, a Bay or Inlet of the Sea, called *Hudson's Streights*, and called so from *Henry Hudson* an English Man, who by this way endeavoured to find out a more commodious and quick passage to *Cathay* and *China* than had been formerly discovered. It comprehends, 1. *Estotiland*, specially so called, 2. *Terra Corterialis*, 3. *Newfoundland*, and 4. the Isles of *Bacalaes*.

1. And first *ESTOTILAND*, specially so called, is the most Northern Region on the East side of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudson's Streights* on the North, and *Terra Corterialis* on the South. This is a part of *Canada*, and is now commonly called *New Britain*, and *Terra Laboratoris*. The Soil, sufficiently enriched with natural Endowments, is said to have in it Mines of Gold, and other Metals; but I doubt it lyeth too much North for Gold, whatsoever it may do for Brass and Iron. The People rude and void of goodness; naked, notwithstanding the extreme cold of the Country; not having either the wit, or the care, to cover their Bodies with the Skins of those Beasts which they kill by Hunting, though their Bellies teach them to keep life by the Flesh thereof: said by the first Discoverers to sow Corn, to make Beer, or Ale, and to have many Barks of their own with which they traded into *Greenland*; as also to have many Cities and Castles, some Temples consecrated to their Idols, where they first sacrificed Men, and after eat them. The Language which they speak is expressed in Characters of their own; but some knowledge of the *Latin* Tongue there hath been amongst them, and *Latin* Books in the Library of one of their Kings, understood by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Country by the first Discoverers, who were certain Fishermen of *Friesland*, cast by a Tempest on this coast about the year 1350. almost 200 Years before *Columbus* his Discovery. Six of them only got on Land, where all died save one; who after a long wandering from one Prince's Court to another, found means to return into his own Country: the King whereof, called *Zichuni*, being a great Adventurer in the feats of Arms, prepared for the further Discovery and Conquest of it. Animated thereunto by the opportune coming of *Nicolo* and *Antonio Zeni*, two noble Gentlemen of *Venice*, who desiring to see the Fashions of the World, furnished a Ship at their own Charges, and passing the Straits of *Gibraltar* held their course Northward, with an intent to see *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by Tempest on this Island, *Ann.* 1380, they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly prosperous in a War against those of *Norway*; who liked *Nicolo* so well, that he gave him a command in his Navy, and under his good conduct won many Islands, discovered *Greenland*, and provided for the Conquest of *Estotiland* also. But *Nicolo* in the mean time dying, the business was pursued by his Brother *Antonio*, the King in Person making one in the Undertaking; who liked the Country so well, being once possessed of it, that he built a City in it, and there determining to spend the rest of his days, sent back *Antonio* unto *Friesland*, with the most of his People.

This is the substance of the Story of the first Discovery, published long since by one *Francisco Marcellino*, out of the Letters of the *Zeni*: which had they been considered of as they might have been, we had not so long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the world. But whether it were that their Reports were esteemed as fabulous by the States of *Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Discovery; there was nothing done in pursuance of it: *Zichuni* never going back to his own Country, and *Friesland* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite lost again, till these later days. *Joh. Skalen*, a *Poleman*, in the year 1456. about 86 years after the first Discovery, sailing past *Norway*, *Greenland*, and *Friesland*, and entering into the *Streights* beyond the *Arctic Circle*, arrived at this Country. *Hofman*. Said, in the Letters of the *Zeni*, to be well stored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds, which they found there for their refreshing; the Haven where they landed to be called *Cape Trin*; the People to be of small stature, fearful, and to hide themselves in Caves at the sight of the *Frieslanders*: that there was a Mountain always burning, or casting smoke; together with a certain Spring, whence issued a water as black as Pitch, but no such Cities, Ports, and Temples, as the Fishermen spake of, are now to be found. The Country West from *Friesland* 1000 miles. This Relation seems altogether fabulous, tho' something of it may possibly be true; but there hath not of late been any Foot steps of Learning or Arts found in these parts of *America*. Nor is it at all probable they were ever cultivated, or that in those early times there was a Voyage made to them.

To give you the Face of it as it stands at the present, it is said to be well cultivated, fruitful of all Necessaries for the life of Man, and rich in Metals, but extreme cold; watered with four Rivers, which rising out of an high Mountain in the midst of the Country, disperse themselves over all parts of it. The people said to be more ingenious; of better judgments, and more skilled in most Mechanick Arts, than the rest of the *Americans* were at the first Discovery; which argueth some more Civil people to have been formerly amongst them. Their Garments of the Skins of Beasts, or Sea Calves, with which also they covered the out side of their Boats, to keep out the Water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What Towns they have, and whether the name of *Cape Trin* be still remaining, I am not able to discover; this Country lying still for the most part hidden in a Northern Mist. All we can say is, that some English names have been imposed of late on some Capes and Promontories lying on the Northern Shores hereof towards *Hudson's Streights*, by *Hudson* and such others of the English Nation who pursued that Enterprize. Of which sort are Prince *Henry's Boreland*, towards the East, almost at the entries of those Streights; and then proceeding towards the West, *Cape Charles*, *Kings Parland*; and last of all *Cape Walsingham*, at the end thereof where these Streights open into a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudson's Bay*. But of these more particularly in another Place, where we endeavour the Discovery of such parts of the World as are yet unknown, and so within the compass of a *Terra Incognita*.

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North *Estotiland*; on the South *Canada*, or *New-France*. So called from *Casspar Corterialis*; who in the year 1500 left

left his name unto it. It is called also *Terra di Laboro-doro*, both from the pains required of the Husbandman, and the great Recompence which it gives him: in the same sense as *Campania* in the Realm of Naples is named *Terra di Lavoro*. By the French, who succeeded in the Possession hereof after the Spaniard had forsook it, it was called *New Bretagne*, with reference to *Bretagne* in France, their own natural Country.

The people, at the first coming of *Cortereal*, were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, swift of Foot, and very good Archers: their cloathing of Beasts skins; their Habitations Caves, or some sorry Cottages; their Religion *Paganism*, or none; their Directions South saying. Not so forgetful of the Law which Nature had Planted in them, as not to know the necessary use of marriage; but extremely jealous. Better conditioned at the Present than in former times, by their near neighbourhood to the French, and commerce with Foreigners: affirmed to be very well disposed, to feed most generally on fish, and to adorn themselves with Bracelets of Brass, or Silver. Their chief Towns, 1. *Brest*, 2. *Santa Anna*, 3. *Cape Marzo*; of which, little memorable.

The Country first discovered by *Sebastian Cabot*, the Son of *Joh. Cabot*, before mentioned: who in the year 1497. at the Charges and Encouragement of King Henry 7. setting sail from *Bristol*, first made the Discovery of these parts as far as to the Latitude of 67 and an half, (which brings *Estotiland* within the compass also of his Discoveries.) The Land which he first saw he called *Prima Vista*; an Island lying before it he called *S. John's*, because discovered on the day of *S. John Baptist*. They found upon the Country plenty of White Bears, Stags greater than ours, Seal-fishes of a yard long, and such store of Cod-fish (which the Inhabitants called *Baccalaos*) that their multitudes sometimes stayed his Ships: hence the occasion of their name. Returning home, he found great Preparations for War in *Scotland*; so that nothing else was done in this Discovery by the English Nation. But three years after, *Cyprian Cortereal* a Portuguese, setting sail from *Lisbon*, fell upon these parts of *Cabot's* Discoveries, which since bear his name; from whence he brought the piece of a gilded Sword of Italian workmanship, left there most probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of; drowned in the Sea, or slain by the Savages on the Land as was his Brother *Michal* in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the French, having planted in *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, cast an eye upon it; who gave the name of *Brest* to a Town hereof, (according to the name of a noted port in *Little Bretagne*;) but whether they settled any Colony in it, or only did resort unto it in the way of Trading, I am not able to determine.

3. *NEUF OUNDLAND*, (*Terra Nova*, as the Latins call it) is a great Island, lying on the South of *Corterialis*, from which parted by a Frith, or Streight, called *Golfe des Casseaux*. So called from the late discovery of it, when discovered first, though it be some scores of years ago: as *Wickham's* Colledge in *Oxford* hath the name of *New Colledge*, though founded divers years past; because it was the Newell when that Name was given.

The dimensions of the Country I have no where met with: But for the quality hereof, it is said to be better inhabited in the North-parts, than in the South; though the South the fitter of the two for Habitation. Furnished upon the Sea-Coasts with abundance of Cod-fish, as also with Herrings, Salmonis, Thornbacks, Singles, Oysters, and Muscles, with Pearls in them. Within the Land a goodly Country, naturally beautified with Roses, flowers with Pease, planted with stately Trees, and otherwise diversified both for Pleasure and Profit: the Air hereof never very extravagant, more Temperate in the depth of

Winter than with us in *England*, the Brooks being never so frozen over, that the Ice is able to bear a Dog; and those little frosts but seldom holding three Nights together. The People of reasonable Stature; full-eyed, broad-faced, but beardless, their Faces coloured with Oker; their Houses, poles set round meeting together in the top, and covered over with Skins, an Hearth, or Fire place in the midst: their Boats of Bark, twenty Foot long and four in breadth, not weighing above 100 Pounds weight; every of which will carry four Men, and is by them carried to all the places of their Removes.

Places of most Importance in it, are the several Havens (of which it is conceived to have more, and more commodious, than any one Island of the World; but itself of it;) not beautified with Towns or Villages, but yielding very safe stations to the greatest Ships. The chief whereof, 1. *Ramisa*, or *Rignate*, on the North of the Promontory called *Cape de Ray*, the South-east Angle of the Island: of much resort for Fishing, from several Countreys. 2. *Portus Ramisus*, or *Fish Haven*, three Miles North of the other; capable of great Ships, and bearing into the main Land above 20 Miles: fronts in the Latitude of 40, and 40 Minutes. 3. *Thomby*, by the Portuguese named *Sancti Michaelis*. 4. *Trinity Bay*, on the North of *Cape S. Michael*, by the Portuguese called *Sancti Michaelis*: a large Bay, the most commodious and narrow place; yet safe within, and of very good Anchorage. 5. *B. Bay*, the name of a Port and promontory. 6. *H. Bay*, or *Bay Blanche*, (as the Latins call it) safe and capacious, on the North of the Promontory of *S. John*. Betwixt which and *Cape de Ray*, on the South-east Angle of the Island, is no Port of Note. 7. On the South side of the Island, and the West of *Cape de Ray*, is 8. *Port Ingressus*, 8. *Portus Ingressus*, and 9. *Portus Ingressus* (or the *Niceus Haven*;) and on the West side, having doubled the *Cape de Ray*, in the South-west Angle of the Island, there is 10. *S. George's Bay*: All of them safe, capacious, and of great resort. The Western side of *Newfoundland*, and a part of the South, is now in the Possession of the English, who have made Settlements upon it, and built some Ports to defend them from the Inplots of their Enemies. These Plantations were begun by *Sr. George Calvert*, Kt. Principal Secretary of State, and afterwards *Lord Baltimore*, who obtained A Patent in 1623. for a part of this Island, by the Name of the Province of *Mendocia*; and afterwards he transported himself and Family thither, and settled a Plantation there, building a stately House and Fort at *Perry's Point*, from whom, at his Death, it descended to *Col. Lord Baltimore*, who was reinvested in it by *Charles the II.* after his Restoration. There are many other Settlements besides this along the Coast, but under what Form of Government, is not known to me. The English live altogether by Fishing, which they sell to those that come thither, and have all other Necessaries in Exchange for their Fish. The Country next the Shore is generally Barren and Rocky; and they having but few hands as yet, they can buy their Corn of the *New England* Men cheaper than they can raise it themselves: They that have settled here, being mostly Men, and wanting Women, have not as yet much increased the Number of the people; so that only the Shore is inhabited, and a few Cattle fed on the Land for their use; but doubtless higher up into the Land there is better and more fruitful Lands, and a great Advantage might be made of it, if a good Government were sent thither to Unite the people for their own Defence, and settle Plantations in the Inland Parts of the Island. On the South West part of it, the French have some Settlements Towards *Canada*, which were attempted by the English, but without any good Success, since the present War began; about 1690. The well settling this Island in our hands would be a thing of mighty Consequence to the British Monarchy, and our Western Plantations much of the Felicity of them depending

pending on the preserving this Fishery, without which they can hardly subsist. The most that have of late settled here are broken Seamen, as I am informed, who live here out of pure necessity, and take no care for a Posterity, or to plant or build, or any way Improve the Country: Besides, it is probable, the Lord *Barltimore*, when he took his Patent for *Mary-land*, left this Island, though I cannot affirm it is so.

4. Before the Island, at the distance of 25 Leagues from *Cape de Raye*, lyeth a long bank or ridge of Ground, extended in length many hundred Leagues, in breadth 24 Leagues where broadest, in other places but sixteen; and all about it certain Islands, which *Cabot* by one common name called *BACALAO S*, (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitude of Cod-fish (by the Natives called *Bacalaos*) which swarmed hereabouts so numerous, that they hindred the passage of his Ships, as before was noted, and lay in such Shoals upon the coasts, that the Bears caught them with their Claws, and drew them on Land. The Governmet at that time by Kings, before whom the people in the most formal expressions of Duty and Reverence used to rub their Noses, or stroke their Foreheads: which if the King observed, or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had so adored him, he turned his head to his left Shoulder, as a mark of Favour.

The first Discoverers of this Country (but not known then to be an Island) were the two *Cabots*, *John* and his Son *Sebastian*, employed herein by *Henry* the 7. 1497. as before was noted. The business being laid aside at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Eliot* two of *Bristol*; who taking a more perfect view of it than was took by the *Cabots*, ascribed to themselves the

Discovery of it, and animated King *Henry* the 8. unto the Enterprize, which was done Anno 1527, but with ill success. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Britains* of *France* had resorted to it, and changed the names which by the *English* had been given to the Bays and Promontories. But the *English* would not so relinquish their pretensions to the premier Seisin. And therefore in the year 1583, Sir *Humphery Gilbert* took possession of it in the name of the Queen of *England*, interdicted all other Nations the use of Fishing, and intended to have settled there an *English* Colony. But being wrecked in his return, the sending of the Colony was discontinued till the year 1608. when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Bristol*, who most successfully performed it; the Colony so prospering in a little time, that they had Wheat, Rye, Turneps, Coleworts, of their own sowing, some probability of Metals, a certainty of Sables, Musks, and other precious Commodities, besides their Fishing; though that the great occasion of their settling there. Such plenty is there found of Ling and Cod-fish all about the Coasts, that ordinarily our Men take 200 or 300 of them within four hours space, which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*. The Pease and Wheat that were Sown here by the first Planters, yeilded great Increase, though the Soil is fleet, and at the bottom a meer Rock. It has plenty of Fish Fowl, Deer, Deals, and Cedars. On the West and North sides they found afterwards some barbarous People, which did resemble those of the opposite Country. The length from East to West is 400 miles; from North to South, about the same length. The first Discoverers thought it to be scarce habitable, by reason of the cold. *Laet. Hackluit.*

O F

CANADA.

CANADA is bounded on the North with *Corterialis*; on the South, with *New-England*; on the East, with the Main Ocean: the Countreys lying on the West either not yet discovered, or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greatest, not of this Province only, but of all this *Peninsula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiscovered parts of this Northern Tract: sometimes enlarged into great Lakes, and presently reduced to a narrower Chanel, with many great Windings and Reaches in it. Having embosomed almost all the rest of the Rivers of this Country, it emptieth it self into the Great Bay of *S. Lawrence*, over against the Isle of *Assumption*, being at the Mouth 40 Leagues in breadth, and 150 Fathom deep. There is to the West of *Virginia*, beyond the *Apalachean* Mountains, a vast lake of many Leagues in compass, out of which spring this great River which runeth towards the North, and Another which runeth to the South; and the *French* say it falls into the Gulf of *Mexico*, through *Florida*.

It is also called *Nova Francia*, from the *French*, who following the Tract of *Cabot* and *Corterialis*, made a further Discovery of these parts, and planted several Colonies in them. The Business first undertaken by *Jacques Cartier*, Anno 1534. received here gladly by the Natives with Singing, Dancing, and expressing much sign of Joy: pursued by *Monsieur Roberval*, sent thither in

the year 1542, by King *Francis* the first, not only to discover the Country, but to plant some part of it, who built there a fair Fortress for his greater safety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their several times.

The nature of the Soil, and People, we shall best discover in the several parts of it, each differing from one another, and so not easily conformed to a general Character. Look we now only on the principal Rivers of the whole. 1. *Canada*, of which before. 2. *Pemeganet*, or *Norumbegue*, as some call it, of which more hereafter. 3. *Quimbeque*, falling into the Ocean as the others do. 4. *Ribo S. Johan*, ending its course in a large Bay called, *Bay Francoise*, interposed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the rest of this Country. 5. *Les Trois Rivières*, which rising far North, and passing through two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*. 6. *Saguenay*, of the same Original, Course, and Fall. A River of so strong a Current, that it suffereth not the Sea to flow up its Chanel; so deep, that in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards, and having receiv'd many lesser streams, loseth it self at last, where the other doth.

It containeth in it several Regions, 1. *Nova Francia* specially so called, 2. *Nova Scotia*, 3. *Norumbegue*, and 4. the Isles adjoining.

NOVA

1. *NOVA FRANCIA*, specially so named, is situate on the South of *Cortierialis*, and on the North of the great River of *Canada*, towards the East; but on both sides of it, in the Western and more In-land parts. The Country is naturally full of Stags, Bears, Hares, Martens, and Foxes, whose Flesh the People did eat raw, (till more civilized) having first dried it either in the Smoke or Sun, as they do their Fish. They have also store of Conies, Fowl, and Fish great plenty; one Fish more memorable than the rest, which they call *Adunel*, whose Body and Head is like that of a Grey-hound. But their greatest Jewels are their Chains of *Ejurgme*; a Shell-fish of the whitest colour, excellent for the stanching of Blood; which they fashion into Beads and Bracelets, and so wear, or sell them. Not very plentiful of Fruits, or fit for Tillage, yet it breedeth some Corn; of Pulse good plenty. The Air more cold than in other Countries of like height, partly by reason of the greatness of the River, which being wholly of fresh Water, and so large withal, chilleneth the Air on both sides of it; partly because of the abundance of Ice and those hills of Snow which the North-wind paterh over in the way to this Country. The true reason why these Countries are colder than those of *Europe* in the same Latitude, can be supposed to be only from the Vainness of the Land towards that Quarter, which is the reason why the North-East wind with us is the Coldest, and the North-West with them; the North-East on the contrary, coming to them off the Ocean, is very Temperate; nor have our People in *New-England* or *Newfoundland* complained of the Cold after they had built Houses, and provided Necessaries against the hardship of the Winter, which was only grievous to them who first Planted here, when they were destitute of Necessaries.

The People, when the *French* first discovered them, were very rude and barbarous; few of them furnished with Houses, but removing from one place to another, as their Food decayed; and carrying all their Goods with them (a thing easily done) upon those removes. Such as lived toward the Sea, or the greater Rivers, somewhat better housed. For in the day-time they fish in their Boats, when they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them up side down, sleep under them. As ill Apparelled as Housed, for they went all Naked, except a little piece of Skin before their Privities. Some of them had their Heads quite shaven, excepting one bush of Hair on the top of the Crown, which they suffered to grow to the length of an Horses Tail, tied up with Leather-strings in a knot. Each Man allowed his two or three Wives apiece; and they so constant to their Husband, that they never marry after his death but keep themselves continually in a mourning habit, a Vizard, as it were, made of Grease and Coal-dust, which they spread over all their Bodies. The Women labour more than the Men, both in Fishing and Husbandry; digging the Ground instead of ploughing, with certain pieces of Wood, where they sow their *Maiz*, (a Plant of which they make their Bread in most parts of *America*.) Idolaters in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are most of them at this day: the *French* and others which have planted in these Northern parts having added little more unto Christianity, than by the Colonies they brought with them. Yet in the midst of this darkness they saw so much light, as to believe that when they died they went immediately to the Stars; from thence conveyed to certain green and pleasant Fields, full of flowers and fruits. Plain Evidence that they believed the Immortality of the Soul, and that there was some place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1. *Hochelaga*, round in Figure, compassed about with three Course of Timber Ramparts, one within the other; sharp at the top about two Rods high, with one Gate only to give entrance, and that well fortified (in their kind) with Piles and Bars. It had in it 50 great Houses, in the midst of every one a Court, and in the middle of that Court a place which they made their Fire on. Each Family retire to their own

Room; all things else are possessed in common. *Hackl. T. 3. p. 220, 21.* Situate far within the Land, about six or seven Leagues from the Banks of the River *Canada*, in the most pleasant part of the Country; and therefore made the Seat of their King, whom they highly reverenc'd, and carried him on their Shoulders sitting on a Carpet of Skins. 2. *Stadac*, or *Standacne*; and 3. *Quebecque*, which the *French* call *St. Croix*, on the Course of the same River also; this last a Colony of the *French*, and at this time the Capital Plantation they have on the River, most of their other Settlements being ruined by the *English*, but this defended it self, and in 1693. was in their Hands. 4. *Tadonfac*, a safe but small Haven, not capable of above 20 Ships, at the mouth of the *Saguenay*. It is seated upon the Bay of *St. Lawrence*, where it receives the River *Saguenay* a 100 miles from *Quebec* to the South East. 5. *France R.*, a Cattle built by *Monsieur Roberval*, when he came first into this Country. 6. *St. Lewis*, designed for a *French* Colony by *Monsieur de Champlain*, Anno 1611 but never came to great effect: yet so much *Champlain*, that by the Undertaking, that he left his name to a great Lake of this Country (full of little Islands, in the Lands of the *Uroqueis*, inhabiting on the South of the River *Canada*, into which it emptieth it self at the last.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA*, containeth that part of the Countries of *Canada*, or *Nova-Francia*, which the *French* call *Acadie* or *Cadie*, (being a Peninsula or Denny-Island;) with so much of the main Land as lieth between the River *Canada*, and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoise*, from the River of *St. Croix* upon the West, to the Isle of *Assumption* on the East. So called by King *James*, in the Grant of these Countries to Sir *William Alexander*, after Lord Secretary of *Scotland*, and by King *Charles*, for his approved Fidelity, most deservedly created Earl of *Stirling*. The Letters Patents of which Donation bear date Anno 1621. What time the *French* having been ejected of their Holds here by Sir *Sam. Argal*, Governor of *Virginia*, had abandoned the South-parts of *Canada*, and betook themselves more into the North, and the higher parts of the Course of that River. And in pursuance of this Command, the said Sir *William Alexander*, in the year 1622. sent a Colony hither: and having procured a new Map to be made of the Country, caused the Peninsula, lying on this side of the *Bay Francoise*, to be called *Nova Caledonia*; that on the North thereof, to be called *Nova Alexandria*; giving new names also unto most of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accomplishment of which Business, he obtained also a Patent for the advancing a certain number of Persons to the Hereditary Dignity of Barons, or Knights of *Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly, distinguished from others by a Ribon of *Orange-Tawny*, the Money raised upon which Patent was to be wholly employed towards this Plantation. But being unable with those helps (as certainly Plantations are of too great burthens for a private Person) or willing to employ his Money to more profit, he sold *Port-Royal* to the *French* and after discontinued his Endeavours in it.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Port Royal*, in *Acadie* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the *Bay Francoise*; once made a Colony of the *French*, by *Monsieur de Monts*, Anno 1604. continued with much difficulty till the year 1613. when destroyed by Sir *Samuel Argal*, then Governor of the *English* Plantations in *Virginia*, by reason that the *Jesuits*, whose Neighbourhood he liked not of, had begun to nest there. Sold since again unto the *French*, as before is said, by whom still possessed. This was taken by the *English*, but restored to the *French* by the Treaty of *Breda*, in the year 1667. It stands at the bottom of the Bay of *France*, and has a safe and large Harbour. 2. *S. Lukes Bay*, by the *French* called *Port au Monton*. 3. *Gaspe*, a noted Port in *Nova Alexandria*, opposite to the Isle of *Assumption*. 4. *Gachepe*, on a fair Bay in the same Coast also.

3. *NORUM*.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the South West of it *New-Scotland*; on the North West of it *New-England*. The Air is of a good temper, the Soil fruitful, and the People indifferently civil; all of them, as well Men as Women, painting their Faces. The Men are much affected to Hunting, and therefore never give their Daughters to any, unless he be well skill'd in that Game also. The Women here are very Chaste, and so well love their Husbands, that if at any time they chance to be slain, the Widows will neither marry, nor eat flesh, till the Death of their Husbands be revenged. They both dance much; and for nimbleness, sometimes stark naked. The Sea upon the Coasts so shallow, and so full of Sands, that it is very ill sailing all along these Shores. The Towns or Habitations rather, so differently called by the *French*, *Portugals*, and *Spaniards*, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet most have formerly agreed upon *Norumbegue*, or *Amuric*, as the Natives call it; said to be a large, populous and well-built Town, and to be situate on a fair and capacious River of the same name also. But later observations tell us, there is no such matter; that the River which the first Relations did intend, is called *Pempegouet*, neither large nor pleasant; and that the Place by them meant is called *Aggancia*, so far from being a fair City, that there are only a few Sheds or Cabins, covered with the Barks of Trees, or the Skins of Beasts. Howsoever, I have let it stand on the first reports, it being possible enough that Town might fall into decay, deserted on the coming of so many several Pretenders, and that the Sheds or Cabins which the last Men speak of may be only the remainders of it.

4. Adjoining unto these Countries of *Canada*, are several Islands, not joined in any common name, but yet deserving some consideration in this place and time. The principal whereof, 1. *NATISCOTEC*, called the Isle of *Assumption*, situate in the very mouth of the River, was first discovered by *Jaques Cartier*, Anno 1534. in length 35 Leagues, seven or eight in breadth. The Island very plain and level, of a fruitful Soil, beautified with Trees of several sorts, replenished with great plenty both of Fowl and Fish, and furnished with convenient Roads, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabited for ought I can find. 2. *RAMEE*, a frie of little Islands in the great Gulf of *St. Lawrence*, on the South of *Natiscotec*, first found out or frequented by the Citizens of *St. Malo* in *Bretagne*, Anno 1590. of great resort for the *Morse-fishing*, used upon the Coasts, which is here so gainful, that a *French* Bark, in a very little time killed 1500 of them. These *Morses* (take this by the way) are a kind of Sea-Horses, or Sea-Oxen; with two Teeth of a Foot long, growing downward out of the upper Jaw; sold dearer than Ivory, because esteemed a sovereign Antidote against Poisons. They have also four Feet, no Ears, the Horns about half an Ell in length; the Skin, when dressed twice as thick as that of a Bull; their Flesh, when young, as sweet and tender as Veal. So fat and unctuous, that with the Bellies of five of them, there is made usually an Hog-head of Train-oil, as good as that of the Whale. 3. *BRION*, a small Island on the South of *Ramee*, about two leagues in length, and as many in breadth; of a rich Soil, fit for Pasturage, well shaded with tall and lofty Trees; and neighboured by a smaller Island called *Isle Blanche*, of the like Fertility. 4. *BRITON*, (*Insula Britonum*) so named from *Jaques Briton* a *Frenchman*, in the time of *Francis* the First, called also the Island of *St. Lawrence*, is situate on the South-East of the Isle of *Brion*; in form Triangular, in compass about 80 Leagues; pleasant and fruitful, though for the most part swelled with Hills. Destitute of Rivers, but interlaced with great Arms of the Sea, well stored with Shell-fish; and in the midst thereof a great Lake full of little Islands; the Woods replenished with plenty of Deer, black Foxes, and a Bird called *Penguin*. Inhabited by the Natives only, though the *Portugals* did sometimes endeavour a Plantation in it; but finding the Air too cold for them, they again deserted it. The chief Haven is by

the *English* called now *Newport*; by the *French*, *Port aux Anglois*, from the great resort of the *English* to it, in regard of their Fishing. 5. *ISLE DE SABLE*, by the *French* so called, from the Sands which lie high about it; distant from the *Briton Isle* about 30 Leagues to the South; 15 Leagues in compass, but more long than broad, and of unsafe landing. The planting of it, in regard of the safety of the Place, attempted twice by the *French* and once by the *Portugals*; but without success. 6. Others of less note, as *Mengo*, and *Les Isles des Oiseaux*, I pass over purposely, there being nothing, or but little to be spoken of them.

So it appears by this Account, that though the *French* have given the Name of *Nova Francia*, to all these Countries; yet they never had the honour of the first Discovery, wherein the *English* and *Portuguese* had precedency of them: nor are possessed of any considerable part thereof, the *Scots* putting in for a large share; the *English* Masters of the best Ports, and all the Islands of the Country in the hands of the Savages. Of these some great and powerful Nations over-sway the rest. The chief whereof are the *Yaguas*, on the North-East of *Norumbegue*, neighboured by the *Ojibaguins*, the *Alboumequins*, and the *Nebicrines*, the *Samiquois*, and *Etechimins* of *Accadie* and *New Alexandria*; the *Montagnets*, and the *Antegovantans*, on the Banks of the *Canada*. All of them stout and hardy People, false of their Words, treacherous in their Practices, and merciless in their Revenges. So well acquainted with the Factions and Divisions of *Europe*, that they know how to make use of one Nation against another; and by that means to keep themselves in their first Estate, without being subject to any. So that the footing which the *English*, *French*, or *Scots* have obtain'd amongst them, serves rather to secure themselves in the way of their Trading, than to entitle them unto any Possession and Command in the Country: the *French* being shut up in a few weak Ports on the North of the *Canada*; the *Scots* pretending only to a Bay or two in the South of *Canada*; and the *English* being only *Tenants at the Will* of the Natives, for such conveniency of Fishing as they have in the adjoining Islands.

This seems to have been the true state of these *French* Plantations, when our Author wrote about the year 1648. or sooner; but *Louis XIV.* the present King of *France*, having wonderfully encreased the *French* Navigation on the Ocean, (so that they have lately twice Engaged the *English* and *Dutch* Fleets united) he set his Heart upon the *Newfoundland* Fishery, as a Nursery for his young Seamen; and to that end sent plentiful Colonies to *Quebecque*, and other Places, supplied them largely with Ammunition and Provisions, and sent good Soldiers to command there, who have pushed on their Affairs with that good Success, that they have reduced all the Inhabitants of this Country under their Obedience, or forced them to retire; they have ascended the River of *Canada* to the great Lakes out of which it springeth, and found another River which falls into the Bay of *Mexico*; and they have built Forts upon these Rivers and Lakes, and thereby stoppt the Trade our Colonies of *New-York* and *New-England* had before with the Natives of *Canada*, for Beaver and other Furs: And since this War about 1689 or 90. they raised considerable numbers of the Natives, and fell upon our *New-England* Plantations; but were happily repulled with great loss, and the visit was returned them the next Year by the *New-England* Men, with an Army by Land and a Fleet by Sea; which had an unprosperous effect by the difficulty of timing their approach; so as to meet there both at once; by which means *Quebecque* escaped, and the *French* for the present maintain their Possession. All these Advantages the *French* gained upon us during our Civil Wars, by the care of Cardinal *Mazarin* and Monsieur *Colbert*, which after the Restoration of *Charles II.* by the Negligence of that Prince, were improved so as to be a terror to our Western Plantations, and at last to *England* too. The first step to the Redress of which, is, to boat them out of their Plantations in *Newfoundland*, and then to send a strong Colony

Colony or two, well furnished with Ammunition and Necessaries to build Forts and Houses to inhabit in, and to till the Country: And lastly, to send every year a competent Number of light Frigots, to secure the Fishery there, and succour our Planted Colonies.

These Colonies ought not to be such as our Southern were, settled in scattered Houses about the Country; but old Soldiers drawn out of our Armies, and sent under good Commanders, with their Wives and Families to fill the Country, and to raise a Posterity to succeed them, after the manner of the *Roman Colonies*; and the Coun-

try being Cold, and not likely to yield any great encouragement, (though it will doubtless in a short time maintain the Inhabitants, and at last enrich them by their Trade with their Fish) they must at first be sent and be maintained at the Charge of the Crown, which will be a Reward to those that have well served the Crown; and turn at length to the security of *England* and of our Plantations in *America*, and bring the *French* Navigation on the Ocean to an end: And will, after all, be an excellent Nursery of Seamen to Strengthen our Nation at Home and Abroad too.

OF

VIRGINIA.

VIRGINIA hath on the North, *Canada*; on the South, *Florida*; on the East, *Mare du Nord*; the Western boundaries not known or not well discovered. It is now bounded on the South by *Carolina*, a Plantation taken out of *Florida*; on the East by the *Virginian Ocean*; on the North by *Mary Land*; and on the West by Mountains and a vast Tract of undiscovered Lands; having the *Apatatean Mountains* on that side, by which it is separated from *Canada*; in our times much better discovered by the *French*. Out of these Mountains arise all the Rivers that water *Virginia*, and have their course towards the East, into the *Virginian Ocean*, whereas these on the other side fall to the North and South, and so into the Bay of *St. Lawrence* and the Gulf of *Mexico*, as the *French* report. So called in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, that Virgin Monarch; when discovered (to any purpose) by Sir *Walter Raleigh* Anno 1584. By the Natural Inhabitants called *Apalchen*, from a Town of that Name, one of the Chief in all the Country.

The Inland parts hereof are mountainous and barren, but more healthful; full of thick Woods, a Receptacle for wild Beasts, and wilder Savages. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitful; as will appear by the Survey of its several Provinces; premising first, that *Virginia* in the full Latitude thereof extendeth from the 34 degree, where it joins with *Florida*, unto the 44. where it quartereth on *Norumbegua*.

The first Discovery hereof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, Anno 1497. did first entitle the Crown of *England* to this Country. The Design after seconded by Mr. *Hare*, bringing thence certain of the petit Kings or Princes hereof, who did Homage to King *Henry VIII.* then sitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Westminster*: but nothing farther done in pursuance of it. And though *John Verazzani* a Noble *Florentine*, at the Encouragement and Charge of King *Francis* the First, Anno 1524. discovered more of the Country than *Cabot* did; yet the *French*, too much in love with the Pleasures of *France*, or intangled in Civil Wars amongst themselves, looked no farther after it: Insomuch, that the Country lying thus neglected, was re-discovered, by the Charges and Direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then Captain of the *Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1584. who sending Master *Philip Amadas*, and Master *Arthur Barlow* upon this Employment, did by them take possession of it in Queen *Elizabeth's* Name, in honour of whom he caused it to be called *Virginia*. He sent thither a Colony, under the Conduct of the Noble Sir *Richard Greenville*; who not supplied with Necessaries for their Subsistence, returned home again. Sir *Francis Drake* in the year 1585 came thither, after he had visited *St. Iago*,

St. Domingo, *Carthagena*, &c. found this Colony placed here in 1584 by Sir *Walter Raleigh* and then Governed by one Mr. *Rudolf Lane*, who came away with *Deale*, the Fleet being dispersed by a Tempest that should have relieved them: They at their return brought *Deale* into *England*, which before was never seen in this Island. In the year 1587. a second Colony is sent thither, but as unsuccessful as the first; the Business being undertaken only on a private Purse, not owned as the Interest of the State, or of publick Moment, till the year 1606. For the third Plantation, See *Johnstonius*, see *Laert.* p. 62. In the mean time, the North parts of this Country being more perfectly discovered by Captain *Bartholomew Gould*, Anno 1602. it was again planted in the year 1607. by Sir *Jos. P. Smith*; and the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to say, in the year 1609. the whole became divided into these three Parts 1. *New England*, 2. *Novum Belgium*, 3. *Virginia*, strictly and specially so called. To which the Isles of the *Bermudas* shall come in for a Fourth.

NEW ENGLAND hath on the North East *Norumbegua*; and on the South West, *Novum Belgium*, now called *New York*. So called by the Adventurers by whom first planted, not so much because opposite to *Nova Zibibion*, as some Men conceive, as an intimation of the like adjuncts of Distinction given by the *French* and *Spaniards* to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Nova Gallia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like. It was discovered by *Sebastian Cabot*, under *English* Colours, in 1497. entered upon for the *English* by Mr. *Philip Amadas* in 1584. It lies in 40. and 41 degrees of North Latitude, 70 miles upon the Ocean, which affords it plenty of Harbour. The Air is healthful but the Weather very uncertain. It was first begun to be planted in 1606. In 1610. one *Robinson* an Independent Preacher struck in with the Design, and much promoted that Plantation. In the year 1629. there was a considerable Addition made to this Colony; so that till the year 1636. they flourished, and very much encreased in Buildings and Trade; but this year the *Nazaganet Indians*, which are the most Warlike and Fierce, began a War upon them, which in the next year was so well revenged by the *English*, that this whole Horde was destroyed. These *Indians* in Speech, Shape, Habit, and Manners are so very like the *Samoiets*, or the North-East *Tartars* bordering upon *Russia*, that it cannot be doubted but that they are descended from them; which will give an easie Account of the Origine of the *American Nations*, if it were a little better enquired into.

The Country situate in the middle of the Temperate Zone, betwixt the degrees of 41 and 44. equally distant from the Arctick Circle and the Tropick of *Cancer*; by consequence, naturally of the same degree of heat with *France*

France or Italy. But by reason of the thick Mists which arise from the Seas adjoining, those Heats so moderated, that the Air is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *English* body. The Soil not only fruitful of such Commodities as grow there naturally, but also of all sorts of Grain which were brought from *England*. Great store of Woods and Trees, both for Fuel and Building; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of Salt and Fish upon the Shores; and as for Turkeys, Partridges, Swans, Geese, Cranes, Ducks, Pigeons, such a full variety, as serves not only for Necessity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of most note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many sorts of Fish, some Amber, Flax, Linnen, Iron, Pitch, Masts, Cables, Timber fit for Shipping: in a word, what soever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might at better rates, and with far less trouble, be supplied from hence, at least it we believe the Relations of it, published in the year 1622. This Colony is very strong; and they have built seven great Towns, the chief of which is *Boston*, which in 1670 had 50 sail of Ships belonging to it. In the Reign of King *James* the II. they would never submit to any Governour sent from *England*, but live like a free State. But a *Quo Warranto* being sent against them in the year 1683. by His late Majesty, they submitted to *Henry Cranfield* Esq; and in 1686 accepted Sir *Edward Andrew*, as Governour for King *James*.

The People for the most part well enough disposed, if not roughly handled; hospitable, and more civil than the rest of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in matters of Religion, that liking well the Rites and Ceremonies of the *English*, at their first settling there, Anno 1608. they would use to say, that *King James was a good King, and his God a good God, but their Tanto naught.* Which *Tanto* was an evil Spirit, which did haunt and trouble them every Moon, and therefore they worshipped him for fear. Which notwithstanding, I find not any great increase of Christianity among the Natives: our *English* Undertakers thinking it sufficient, if *they and their houses serve the Lord*, without caring what became of the Souls of the wretched People, which hitherto have *sate in darkness and the shadow of death*, notwithstanding those New Lights which have shined amongst them. And as for those New comers which have planted there, all *English*, though some immediately out of *Holland*; I cannot better tell you of what strain they were, than in the words of *John de Laet*, *Novi Orbis lib. 3. cap. 8.* where he observeth, *Primos hosce Colonos, uti & illos qui postea accesserunt, potissimum aut omnino fuisse ex eorum hominum Secta, quos in Anglia Brownistas & Puritanos vocant, quales non pauci & in Belgium superioribus annis se receperunt, & hinc ad socios sunt profecti.* They were (saith he) either for the most part, or altogether, of that Sect which in *England* are called *Brownists* or *Puritans*; many of which had formerly betaken themselves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to join with their Brethren in *New England*. When our Author wrote, it was early days with this Plantation: But since that time they have Translated the Bible into the Language of the Natives, and converted many of them. I wish the Episcopal Clergy in the other Plantations would reflect upon the Drs. Reproach, and Amend as they have done; especially in relation to the *Negroes* in our own Plantations which might easily be converted to Christianity, (if their Masters pleased.)

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Tamascot*, where our Men found Oysters of nine Inches long. 2. *Nansick*, a River of the *Tarentines*; one of the chief Nations of this Tract. 3. *Sagadahock*, of most Note, and deservedly too, a Mile and half broad at the Mouth or Influx, and so upwards for the space of a days journey, where it maketh a large Lake three days journey broad, with six Islands in it; nourished with two large Channels, the one from the North-East, the other from the North-West; each of them rising from a Lake; the least of which being four days journey long, two broad, the other doubleth it. The River which points to the North-West, falls into

the River of *Canada*, 40 German Miles above *Quebec*. In which place, if a good Garrison were planted in a strong Fort, and well supply'd with Ammunition, it might easily hold a correspondence with *New England*, by the Lake, and secure the Trade of *Furs* with the Natives; and also be a curb upon the *French* Plantations on that River, and without this Caution, they will in time (if they have not already) do the same thing; to the great annoyance and impoverishing of *New England*. Of less note, 4. *Apanawapesk*, 5. *Rantaffec*, 6. *Ashmahaga*, &c.

The Country on the Sea-side is full of notable Havens, populous, and very well inhabited, insomuch as Captain *Smith* reckoned in the space of 70 Miles above twenty Havens, some of them capable of 500 or 1000 Sail; most of them sheltered from the fury of Winds and Sea, by the interposition of some Islands, of which about 200 lye upon that Coast. In the space of 70 Miles he reckoned 40 Villages of the Barbarous People; the chief of which, are, 1. *Macadacut*, 2. *Segocket*, 3. *Panmaquit*, 4. *Nuconcus*, 5. *Kennebecque*, &c. all being called by the name of some Brook or Water, upon which they were seated. Since added by the *English*, 1. *St. George's Fort*, the first Plantation of the *English*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagadahock*, in a Demi Island, Anno 1607. 2. *New Plimouth*, seated in a large and capacious Bay; at the first Building (Anno 1620) consisting of Nineteen Families only, but in short time improved to an handsome Town: which as it was the first Town, so it was the Church which was settled there, modelled according to the form of Mr. *Robinson's* Church in *Holland* (that notorious Separatist,) and after made a pattern to the rest of these Churches: each Absolute and Independent in it self, without subordination unto any Superiour. For my part, I behold Episcopacy as the Primitive Government of the Church of *Christ*. But if there were no other Pretenders to it than *Presbytery* and *Independency*, I should as soon look for the Scepter and Throne of *Christ* (as they please to phrase it) in the Coordination of *New England*, as in the *Presbyteries* of *Geneva*, or the *Kirk* of *Scotland*. 3. *Bristow*, upon the Seaside also, but more North than *Plymouth*. 4. *Barnstable*, so called with reference to a noted Sea-Town of that name in *Devonshire*; as 5. *Boston*, with like reference to as noted a Sea port in *Lincolnshire*, which is now the Capital of this whole Plantation, a very large and spacious Town, seated on the Sea shore, at the bottom of a large Bay; well inhabited by Merchants and Tradersmen, who drive a good Trade with *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, the *Caribee-Islands*, *England* and *Ireland*, by exchange of Commodities. It is a place of good Strength, founded upon three Hills, on which are raised Fortifications, with Cannon mounted, and well guarded. To this Town also belongs a considerable Fleet of Ships, employed first in Fishing at *Newfoundland*, and on their own Coast, and then compounding a freight with Corn and the other Commodities, they pass to our Southern Plantations, which are wholly from hence supplied with Victuals for their *Negro* Servants; it being to be had cheaper than they can raise it. The best of their Fish they Sell or Transport to the *Portuguese* and *Spain*; and the Sugars of *Barbadoes*, to the *English* Merchants; and oftentimes they themselves Transport them to *England*. This Plantation has ever pretended to be more free than any of the rest of our Western Plantations, and will not be Governed by the Acts of the Parliament of *England*, as the rest are, but have set up a Mint of their own, and Trade whither they please in their own Ships; and although they Reverence the Crown of *England*, and so Trade not with its Enemies, yet they in the two last Reigns did scarce acknowledge themselves to be Subjects, till their Charter was taken away, and a Governour sent to them, on whom they wreaked their Fury at the Revolution: This, tho' true of the whole, is mostly applicable to *New Boston*, which about 20 years since, had about 50 Sail of stout Merchant Ships; and now (in 1692.) are

are much more in number without doubt, if not diminished by the present War. 6. *Quilpiack*, on the Bay of *Massachusetts*, a Town of an old Name, but a new Plantation. The other Towns are, 7. *Charles Town*, between the Rivers *Charles* and *Mistick*. 8. *Dorchester*. 9. *Cambridge*, consisting of several Streets and two Colledges, and divers fair well built Houses; the first University opened in our Western Plantations. 10. *Reading*, commodiously seated above a great Pond, and well inhabited, having one Mill for Corn, and another for Timber. 11. *Salem*, pleasantly placed between two Rivers: and about 30 or more other Towns, all of *English* names, as *Bristol*, *Dorset*, &c. which shews the Populoufness and Riches of this Plantation above the rest, which have but one or two Towns apiece; none of which are equal to *Boston*.

This part of *Virginia*, first discovered by Captain *Gosnold*, Anno 1602. and the next year more perfectly surveyed by some of *Bristol*, was by King *Jam's*, Anno 1606. granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, to be Planted and disposed of for the Publick: Sir *John Popham*, then Chief Justice of the *Common-Pleas*, being one of the chief also in that Commission. By his encouragement, and principally at his Charge, a Colony was sent thither, Anno 1607 under the Presidency of Captain *George Popham*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, who built the Fortress of *St. George* at the mouth of *Sagadahoc*. But the President dying the next year, and not long after him the Chief Justice also; the Colony despairing of good Success, returned home again. Successfully again attempted, Anno 1614. the Undertakers were resolved to make farther trial of their fortune; and in the year 1626. sent out eight Ships more: but it never settled into form till the year 1630. When by the building of *New Plymouth*, and some encouragements sent thither to bring others on, it grew in very short time to so swift a growth, that no Plantation for the time ever went beyond it. The growth of *Old Rome* and *New England* had the like Foundation; both Sanctuaries, *Ad quæ turba omnis ex finitimis gentibus novarum rerum cupida confluit*, as *Livy* telleth us of the one; resorted to by such of the Neighbouring Nations as longed for Innovations in Church and State.

NOVUM BELGIUM, or *NIEU-NEDERLAND*, hath on the North-East *New-England*; on the South-West, *Virginia*, specially so called. This part of *Virginia* is now erected into another Plantation, distinct from *Virginia*, and called by the name of *Mary land*. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their Plantation in it, Anno 1614. the Country being then void, and consequently open to the next Pretender, according to that Maxim in the Civil Laws, *quæ nullius sunt in bonis, dantur occupanti*. And yet they had some better Title than a bare Intrusion, having bought *Hudson's* Charts and Maps, and otherwise contented him for the Charge and Pains of his Discovery, Anno 1609. of which more anon.

This part of the Country extended from the 38 Degree and a half to the 41. 15. of a good temperature both Air and Soil: fruitful of those things which the Earth brought forth of its own accord; abundance of wild Grapes, Nuts, and Trees of great height and bulk for Shipping; plenty of Herbage, store of Plants, the effects of nature: and where the People did their part, such encrease of *Maize* (a Plant of which they make their Bread) as shewed their Care and Industry to be well bestowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furnished (within their command) with Wheat and other sorts of Grain; as also with Flax, Hemp, and such other Commodities as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Woods replenished with Deer, and the Plains with Fowl; the Rivers not inferior to any in Sturgeons, Salmon, and other the best sort of Fish which can swim in the Water.

The People, though divided into many Nations; and of different Languages, are much of the same disposition with the other Savages; clad in Beasts-Skins, for the most part without certain Dwellings; dwelling together

many Families of them under one poor Roof made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the Bark of Trees. Their Household-stuff a Tobacco-pipe, a wooden Dish, and a Hatchet made of a broad Flint; their weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of Fishes. Their Religion Idolatry, or worse; their chief God the Devil whom they worship under the name of *Menetto*; but with less Pomp and Ceremony than is used in *Africk*. Of Manners, fearful and suspicious, (not without cause) wonderfully greedy of revenge, but, if well used, tractable and obedient unto their Superiours; fickle, but very faithful unto those who trust them; conceived to be inclinable to the *Christian* Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of those who had studied Godliness more than Gain.

Rivers of Note they have not many. That want is supplied by many large and capacious Bays, all along the Coast. The Principal of those that be, 1. *Mambatten*, by some called *Nassauus*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Noordt River*, which falleth into the Bay at *May-port*, so called by *Cornelius May*, the Master of a Ship of *Holland*, at their first Plantation: another Channel of it, which from the noise thereof they call *Hell-gate*, emptying itself against an Island called the *Ile of Nuts*. The River is at Fifteen or Sixteen Fathom deep, at the mouth thereof affordeth a safe Road for Shipping, but of difficult entrance. 2. *Zuid River*, so called, because more Southerly than the other; as fair as that, but hitherto not so well discovered.

Towns here are few, either of the old or new Plantations. The natural Inhabitants live together in Tribes, many Families of those Tribes under one Roof, as before was said; but those Families so remote from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a scattered Village. Nor do I find, that either the *Hollanders* or the *English* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to Building: the Title of the *Dutch* being subject unto some Disputes; and the Possession of the *English* not confirmed and settled. *Hudson* an *Englishman* had spent some time in the Discovery of this Country, and given his Name to one of the Rivers of it. With him the *Hollanders*, Anno 1609. *Hudson* is said, compounded for his Charts and Maps, and whatsoever he could challenge in the Right and Success of that his Voyage. But they were hardly warm in their new Habitations, when Sir *Samuel Argal*, Governour of *Virginia* specially so called, (having dispossessed the *French* of that part of *Canada* now called *Nova Scotia*, Anno 1613.) disputed the Possession with them, alledging that *Hudson*, under whose Sale they claim'd that Country, being an *Englishman*, and licensed to discover those Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or dismember it (being but a part or Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governour submits himself and his Plantation to his Majesty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for and under him. But a new Governour being sent from *Amsterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes, but began to fortifie himself, and entitle those of *Amsterdam* to a just Propriety. To which end he gave unto the Country the name of *New-Netherland*, conferred new Names on all the Bays and Rivers of it, and Possessed himself of a little Island near that Branch of the *Noordt River* which themselves called *Hell-Gate*: where he laid the Foundation of a Town called *New Amsterdam*; and built a Fortress by the name of *Orange Fort*, which he Garison'd, and Planted with five pieces of Canon. Complaint whereof being made unto King *Charles*, and by him represented to the *States of Holland*, it was declared by the said *States*, in a publick Instrument, that they were no ways interested in it, but that it was a private undertaking of the *West-Indian Company of Amsterdam*; and so referred it wholly to His Majesty's pleasure. Which being declared, a Commission was forthwith granted to Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, to Plant the Southern parts thereof, which lie

F f f f f

next

next *Virginia*, by the name of *MARY-LAND*; the like not long after to Sir *Edmond Ploydon*, for Planting and possessing the more Northern parts, which lie towards *New England*, by the name of *New Albion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then seem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there for the Sum of 2500*l.* yet taking advantage of the Troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raised their Demands to a greater height, but furnished the Native *Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to use their Weapons. A most mischievous and wicked Act, not only tending to the damage and discouragement of the present Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Christians out of all these Countries. But the best is, they were the first that smarted by it. The Savages thus armed and trained, fell foul upon them, destroying their Farm Houses, and forcing them to betake themselves to their Forts and Fastnesses. What hath been since done, (for the giving of new names to some of the old Places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *English*, I can hardly say; but I fear that little will be acted, or to little purpose, till it be made a work of more publick Interest.

In the year 1664. there being then a War between *Charles* the II. and the *Dutch*; that Prince sent over four Commissioners to reduce the Colony; who marching with 300 Red Coats to *Manhades*, or *New Amsterdam*, the 29th. of *August*, turned out their Governour, and all the rest, but those that would swear Allegiance to the King of *England*, who were suffered wisely to enjoy their Houses and Lands as before. Thirteen days after, Sir *Robert Carr* took the Fort and Town of *Aurania*, now called *Albany*: Twelve days after that, *Arasapha*, now *Delaware*, by which the *English* became Masters of three handsome Towns, and as many Forts. The Province was thereupon given to *James* then Duke of *York*; and from his Title, with the principal place, it was called *New York*. It is seated very conveniently for Trade, Security, and Pleasure, in a small Island called *Manhatan*, made so by *Hudson's* River, which severeth it from the *Long Island*, which River is two Leagues broad, and Navigable above 100 Miles up into the Country. It contained then about 500 well built Houses, with *Dutch* Brick, the meanest not valued under 100*l.* To the Land-ward it had a thick Wall, and at the entrance of the River a good Fort, now call'd *Charles Fort*. And for Civil Government it was Incorporated, and Governed by a Mayor, Aldermen, Sheriff, and Justices of the Peace: The Inhabitants *English* and *Dutch*; they had a considerable Trade with the *Indians* for Elkes, Deer, Bears, Beaver, Otter, Raccoon Skins; for Venison and Wild Fowl in the Winter; and for Fish in Summer. The Island is Fourteen Miles long, and Two broad, stretching East and West, and the Town is at the West end next the Sea. Upon the same River 100 Miles higher stands *New Albany*, a place of considerable Trade with the *Indians*: between them, on both sides of the River is as good Corn as the World affords.

The Province of *MARY-LAND* is situate between the Degrees of 37 and 50 m. and 40 of North Latitude, and is bounded on the North by *Pensylvania*, *New England*, and *New York*; on the East by the *Atlantick* Ocean and *Delaware Bay*; and on the West by *Virginia*, parted from it by the River *Parowmeck*. The Bay of *Chesopeak* admitteth Ships 200 Miles up the Country. The Rivers are 1. *Parowmeck*, 2. *Patuxent*, 3. *Sewern*, or *Ann Arundel*, 4. *Sacquo Sabamough* on the East side of the Bay: on the West 5. *Nantecoke*, 6. *Pocomoke*. The Air is very healthful, and agreeable to the *English* now, the Woods are fell'd; the Air temperate, the Breezes from the Sea cooling its Heats, and the Winter being of no great duration; the Soil is Rich, and much of the same nature with *Virginia*; the chief Trade of it being Tobacco, more esteemed by Foreigners than the *Virginians*. The Lord *Baltimore*, the Proprietor of it, has erected a Mint;

and there is a competent store of Foreign Coin besides this. There have some years since, been 100 Ships laden in one year, by this and the neighbour Plantations. The Principal Town is *St. Marys*, where the Courts Sit, and Justice is Administred according to Laws enacted by the common Consent. It is divided into Ten Counties; *Cecil*, *Dorchester*, *Kent*, *Somerset*, and *Talbot*, East of the Bay, *Ann Arundell*, *Baltimore*, *Calvert*, *Charles*, and *St. Marys* on the West of it: The Inhabitants about five years since, being estimated to be 16000 Persons, and they have begun to build *Calverton*, *Herrington*, and *Harvey Town*: *St. Marys* is seated on the River of *St. George*, and is beautified with many well built Houses, and is the chief Scale of Trade for that Province.

Since our Author wrote, there has been a new Plantation by *Charles* II. in 1681. granted to *Pen* a Quaker, by the name of *Pensylvania*, bounded on the East by the River *Delaware*, 12 Miles distance from *Newcastle*; So it is bounded on the North by *New York*; on the East by *New Jersey*; on the South by *Mary-land*, and on the West by undiscovered Countries, extending to 43 Degrees of North Lat. and settled upon the said *William Pen*, and his Heirs for ever. The Proprietor has divided it into six Counties, called *Philadelphia*, from the capital City begun by him to be built, *Buckingham* *Chester*, *Newcastle*, *Kent* and *Suffex*. *Philadelphia* is seated between two Navigable Rivers, *Delaware* and *Skulkill*, having two Fronts upon the Water, each a Mile; the latter is Navigable 100 Miles up by Boats, falling from the North-East into the River *Delaware*. In the year 1685 there were 600 Houses built in this City, the Foundation of which was laid in 82. This Plantation, tho' so lately settled, is become very numerous, and in a thriving condition; but then the beginning it with the Building of this great Town, before the Country was cleared, and the Trade settled, was observed to have an ill effect upon many of the Builders, who being run in Debt, were afterwards forced to sell their Houses to others; the Builders for the most part enjoying a very little while the benefit of their own Labours and Expences.

East and *West JERSEY* lye between 39 and 41 Degrees of Latitude between the River *Delaware* to the South, and *Hudson* to the North, having the *Vergivian* Ocean to the East. The chief Towns are *Shrewsbury*, *Middletown*, *Burgin*, *Newark*, *Elizabeth-Town*, *Woodbridge* and *Piscataway*. It has plenty of Springs, Rivolets, In-land Rivers and Creeks; and the Up-lands yield plentiful crops of *English* Grain of all sorts, besides *Indian* Corn, Flax and Hemp, which the Inhabitants began some years since to manufacture. It hath plenty of our *European* Cattle sent thither, and of Furs, Whale-Oil and Whale-Fins for a Trade. This Country was at first granted to the Lord *Barclay*, and Sir *George Carteret*, who are called in my Author, the late Proprietors thereof; there was then no Town in it.

New Jersey, between both these and *New York* River, and was granted to Sir *Edward Billing*; the Principal Town in it is *Burlington*, which was then newly begun, about 1680.

3. *VIRGINIA*, specially so called, hath on the North-East, *Nieu-Nederlandt*; on the South-West, *Florida*: the name restrained to this part only, since the two last Plantations, which before was common to the whole. (Since our Author's time, by other Settlements *Jersey* is Planted between it and *New-York*, then *New-Netherland*, to the West *Maryland*, and to the South *Carolina*, is taken out of *Florida* and added to our Plantations.) The Country lieth extended from the 34. to the 38. Degree of Northern Latitude: and by consequence the Air is inclined unto Heats, if not refreshed and moderated by a constant gale of Eastern Winds, which they call the Breeze, and the Blasts driving on it from the open Seas. Diversified most pleasantly into Hills and Valleys; the Mountains cloathed with Woods, and the Fields with Fruits. The Soil so fruitful, that an Acre of Land well ordered,

ordered, will return 200 Bushels (25 Quarters) of Corn. Said also to be rich in veins of Allom, as also Pitch, Turpentine, store of Cedars, Grapes, Oil, plenty of sweet Gums, several sorts of Plants for the Dyer's use, some Mines of Iron and Copper, of Timber Trees almost infinite numbers; as also great abundance of Cattle, Fish, Fowl, Fruit, and of Maiz no scarcity. Some Chrystal is found amongst the Mountains, on the Shore some Pearls. Nothing deficient either in the Soil, or Air, for the encouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The People are but few in number for so large a Country, and those as different in Size as in Speech or Manners. Some of them whom they call *Sasques-banoxi*, of so vast a greatness, that in comparison of the *English* they seemed as Giants; clad with the Skins of Bears and Wolves in so strange a manner, that the Head of the Beast hung before their Breasts instead of a Jewel; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other side, whom they call *Wigocomici*, of so low a stature, that in relation to the other they appear as *Pygmies*. But generally they are all of tall stature, well limbed, for the most part without Beards, and the one half of the Head kept shaven; cloathed in loose Mantles, made of the Skins of Deer, with an Apron of the same to hide their nakedness; the rest of their Bodies painted over with figures of Serpents, or of some other Creature of as horrid shape. Strong and accustomed to the Cold, which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconstant, craky, and somewhat more industrious than the rest of the Savages, but given to anger and as greedy of revenge as any. Gods they have many, for they worship all things, (and them only) which are like to hurt them; as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, &c. So that it may be said of them, as once *Lactantius* said of the ancient *Romans*, (did not the ignorance of these poor Wretches render them excusable, and make them fitter Objects for our Prayers and Pity, than our Scorn) *Dignissimi homines qui Deos suos semper haberent presentes*. One Devil-God above all the rest, (they call him *Oke*) whom they worship, as themselves confess, more for fear than love. Not yet converted from these horrible and gross Idolatries by the long neighbourhood of the *English*; accused in that respect most justly by those of *Rome*.

No Country for the bigness of it can be better watered, or yield fairer Rivers. The principal of which are 1. *Powhatan*, (so called by the name of that petit *Royelet* whose Territory it passeth through) which having run a course of an hundred miles, and navigable all that way by smaller Vessels, is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad, 2. *Apamattuck*, 3. *Nansamund*, and 4. *Chikabamania*; all Tributaries to *Powhatan*. 6. *Pamunike*, fourteen miles more North then *Powhatan*, but of lesser note. 6. *Topabanoek*, navigable 130 miles. 7. *Patanomoke*, passable by Boat 140 miles, and six or seven miles broad where it falleth into the Sea; encreased by many lesser streams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well stored with Fish. 8. *Pautuxut*, of a shorter Race, but a deeper Channel, than most of the former (16 or 18 fathom deep) and of more choice of Fish than the others are.

The Air of *Virginia*, is pleasant and wholesom, except in the Low-lands and Marshes; But then it is subject to violent Changes, especially when the North west Winds blow, (which is Common to it, with all the Counties on this Coast to the North of *Virginia*) which coming from the Mountains that are always covered with Snow (the *Apalatean* Hills) are violently cold. It abounds with all things useful to the Life of Man, except *Wine* and *Oyl*, which perhaps too may be raised, when it is more thoroughly planted, if Advatage be taken of the Position of Grounds exposed to the South East Sun, and secured against the North West Wind.

Along the Banks of the Rivers dwell their several Tribes, scarce any one of which make up an hundred Men, (that of *Patanomoke* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160) many not yielding above 30, and

some not so many. Their habitations, not containing above ten or twelve houses apiece, but in those houses sundry particular Families, are for the most part covered with the Barks of Trees; so placed that the common Market place standeth in their midst, at an equal distance; the houses of the *Weroances*, (or the Chiefs of their Tribes) and that which serveth them for a Temple, being somewhat finer than the rest. And of these habitations some are presented to us by the names, of 1. *Ojaneck*, by the *English* called the *blind Town*. 2. *Pemeoke*. 3. *Sbycooke*, said by my Author to be *Croitas ampla*, a large City; but we must understand him with Relation to the rest of this Country. 4. *Chowanock*. 5. *Sicatan*. 6. *Mattaken*. 7. *Wapemioke*. 8. *Pyshoconock*, said to be inhabited by none but Women. 9. *Chipano*. 10. *Muscarnunge*, both upon the Sea: most of them called by the name of those several Tribes which inhabit them.

This Country was first Granted by the Illustrious Queen *Elizabeth* to her Favourite Sir *Walter Raleigh* Kt. the Patent bearing date the 25th of *March*, in the 26th of her Reign, 1584. By which it was granted to him and his Heirs and Assigns forever: And accordingly the 27th of *April*, the same year, he sent Mr. *Philip Amadis*, and Mr. *Arthur Barlow*, with too Barks, to take Possession of it, as they did for him the 13th of *July* following, in the Island of *Wokoxen* on the Coast of *Carolina*. They only took Possession then, and immediately after returned, observing that *Virginia* was then called by the Indian Inhabitants *Wingandacoa*: The next year, 1585. Sir *Walter* sent Sir *Richard Greenville* with 7 Sail of Ships, and with him Mr. *Ralph Lane*, Mr. *Thomas Candish*, Mr. *John Arundel*, Mr. *Raymond*, Mr. *Stukeley*, Mr. *Bremiger*, Mr. *Vincent*, and Mr. *John Clark*. In this Voyage was left 150 Men, who remained there all that year under the Command of Mr. *Philip Amadis*: These Men returned the next year with Sir *Francis Drake* for want of Victuals, the Natives being combin'd against them. Sir *Walter* sent Supplies the same year; but they were gone before that ship arrived. In 1587 he sent another Colony of 150 under the Command of *John White* in 3. Ships, which remained there; but what came of it afterwards, I know not; for the next Expedition was in 1590. and then they were not seen, nor any account brought of them. *Hackluit*. In the year 1603. Diverse Persons who had purchased Sir *Walter's* Patent, made a Voyagethither, and discovered *Wasson's Bay* in 41. but these made no great Progress, till Sir *John Popham*, in 1606. who sent a Colony under Captain *James Davis*, whose first Settlement was at *Sagadahock*, where they built *St. George's Fort*: soon after which, *James Town* was begun.

In reference to the *English* and their Plantations, we are to know that they made choice of the South-side of a large and goodly Bay for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thrusting it self a great way up into this Country, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before mentioned, is by the Natives called *Chesepoack*, and yieldeth the only safe entrance into this part of the Country: the *Capes* thereof for that cause fortified by the *English*: that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charles*, according to the names of the two young Princes. Towns of most note, which have been either since built, or frequented by them, 1. *James Town*, (*Jacobopolis*) so named in honour of King *James*, on the South-side of that Bay, not far from the River *Chikabamania*: first founded in the year 1606. at what time it was trenched about, and some Ordnance planted on the Works. 2. *Henries Town*, (*Hemicopolis*) so named in honour of Prince *Henry*, the eldest Son of King *James*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 18. miles from *James Town*. 3. *Dales gift*, so called, because built and planted at the charge of Sir *Thomas Dale*, Anno. 1610. 4. *Bermuda*, an open Burrough five miles from *Hemicopolis*. 5. *Kentoughton*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Chesepoack*, very much traded by the *English*.

6. *Wicocomac*, the chief Town of *Powhatan*, one of the Royalties of this Country; much courted by the *English* at their first settling here, and a long time after; a Crown being sent him by King *James*, with many other rich Presents, the better to sweeten and oblige him: but for all that, he proved a treacherous and unfaithful Neighbour.

The sum of the affairs of this last Plantation is, that the business being resumed in the year 1605, and a Commission granted to certain Noblemen and Merchants to advance the work, they fell in hand, by the Counsel and Encouragement of Captain *Smith*, with the building of *James-Town* (having first fortified *Cape Henry*) in which Town he fixed a Colony of 100 men. These, being almost consumed by Famine and other miseries, were the next year recruited with 120 more, brought by Captain *Newport*: but a Fire having casually consumed their Houses, once again discouraged them. But the Houses, being re-edified, and a Church added to the Houses by the industry of *Smith* their Governour, the Colony began to flourish, and encrease in reputation among the Savages, especially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Powhatan*. In the year 1609, the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return; who left here 490 Persons, (and of them 200 expert Soldiers) 3 Ships, 7 Boats, 24 great Guns, 300 Muskets, with Victuals and Ammunition necessary; and 39 of their *Weroances*, or Petit Kings, Tributaries, and Contributioners to the *English*. Sir *Thomas Gates* and Sir *George Summers*, sent thither with 9 ships and 500 Men, lost a great part of their numbers in the Isle of *Bermudaz*: the rest not well according with the old Plantation, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three ships more, *An*, 1610. But falling into a desperate sickness, and come home to *England*, he recommended the Estate of the *English* there to Sir *Thomas Dale*, who furnished them with Men, Cattel, and other necessities; after whom came Sir *Thomas Gates* with 300 men, and some heads of Cattel. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Henry Earl of Southampton*, the Affairs here began to settle in a prosperous way: when unexpectedly in the year 1621, the Savages falling on them (fearing no such treachery) kill'd 340 of their Men; and had then also surpriz'd *James Town*, if one of the Savages who had received the Christian Faith, had not discovered their Intention. In the year 1623 a Complaint was made against the Proprietors of this Plantation, and thereupon their Patent was declared void, and leave given to all *English* Men that would to trade thither, which perhaps tended more to the Security of the Plantation, than the former way. Since that, recovered of that Blow, it went happily forwards, and might by this time have been raised to some Power and Greatness, if the *English*, by diverting on some by-Plantations, and by employing indigent and necessitous Persons in so great a work, had not discouraged the design. For certainty one might say of this Plantation, as the Scripture doth of the *Camp of David* in the time of *Saul*, that few or none were sent unto it (except the principals) but such as were in distress or debt, or some way or other discontented; Men never likely to advance and pursue a business of such publick Interest. Commendable howsoever in this particular, (though perhaps that Commendation do belong to their Governours) that being here, they kept themselves constantly to those *Forms of Worship* which were established and observed in the Church of *England*.

To Erect and settle a Plantation at the distance that *Virginia* lieth, must be very difficult at all times; but it was made more difficult by the Troubles that ensued under the Reign of *Charles the II.* yet after the Colony was once so far settled as to subsist and plant *Tobacco*, the Trade went on with it, and they spread their Conquest and cleared and planted the Country apace; so that the Country became divided into these

Counties; *Caratuck*, *Charles*, *Gloucester*, *Hartford*, *Henrico*, *James*, *New Kent*, *Lancaster*, *Middlesex*, *Nansemond*, *Lower Norfolk*, *Northampton*, *Northumberland*, *Rappahanock*, *Surrey*, *Warwick*, *Westmoreland*, *Weight*, and *York*. In each of these Counties are held Petty Courts once a Month for the Administration of Justice, from which there lieth an Appeal to the Quarter-Session held at *James Town*.

The Number of the *English* Inhabiting this Country about 1680. was estimated at 40000. and they may now be near double, by reason of the Numbers that have since gone thither, or are born and grow up in the place; the Inhabitants encreasing here much faster than in *England*, partly by reason of the Warmness of the Country, so that they become Marriageable sooner, and partly by reason of the great facility they find in bringing up and providing for their Children, by reason of the uncultivated Lands about them.

The Natives, which were very numerous when the *English* settled amongst them, have been so wasted without any War by the small Pox, and Brandy, and other such strong Liquors brought in use amongst them by the *English*, (of which liquors they are great Admirers) that there is now very few left; and those that are, are in no Condition to contest with the *English*. At first the *English* were forced to labour themselves, to plant and clear their own Ground; but now they have trained up *Negroes* to work, and they are only their Governours and Directors; and the Children of these *Negroes* born there, prove much better, and more usefull than their parents, being born in a state of servitude, and accustomed to Labour from their Childhood, which the other were not. As the *English* encrease, so they begin to furnish themselves with Necessaries for Clothes and Linnen, &c. by the Product of the Country, and to depend less upon *England* for Supplies: So that many of the more Ancient Families live in a State and Equipage equal to that of the best Gentry in *England*; and for Plenty, and the Number of their Attendants, much above them; they having all that is necessary to the life of Man, or the pleasure of it, in great abundance; only they want Metals, and have not introduced that Plenty of Gold and Silver in the way of Trade (which is mostly by Truck or Barter) which we have.

Whilst I am writing this, Their Majesties have consented to the opening an University in this Country for the Education of their Childeren, and have granted a part of the Royal Revenue to that purpose.

I have never heard of any War that has been between this Colony and the Inhabitants. It is to be wished, that some of the Inhabitants would send over better Instructions, that what is wanting of the History of this or any of our other Plantations might be preserved; particularly, what became of the Colony sent thither in 1587. and whether it subsisted till 1607. when the final Settlement began?

As for the Natives of the whole, they were divided, as was said, into several Tribes, every Tribe under the command of their several Chiefs: which Chiefs, though many in number, and of little Power, knew well enough how to keep their State unto their Subjects, and to shew it also unto Strangers. For when *Powhatan* was pleased to give Audience unto Captain *Newport*, and the rest of the *English* sent from *Smith*, they found him upon a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather, embroidered with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a Robe of Skins like an *Irish* Mantle: at his head and feet an handsome young Woman; on each side of the room twenty others, with their necks and shoulders painted red, and about their necks a great Chain of Beads: his principal Men sitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithstanding this great State, (and great it was indeed for such petit Princes) he and the rest became so subject to the *English*, that in *Smith's* time they did not only pay their Tributes, or Contributions, but

at his command would send their Slaves and Subjects to *James-Town*, to receive correction for wrongs done to the Colony. And it is probable enough that those of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerful Plantation, (as followed with the stronger Zeal, and carried on by the united purses of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence also amongst the Natives, though I find it not expressed in so many particulars.

To the South of *Virginia* is another Plantation, now settled and called *CAROLINA*, from *Charles* the II. late King of *England*, extending from the Latitude of 36 to 29. which is its most Southern Bounds. It was in this Part of *America* that all the Colonies sent by Sir *Walter Raleigh* endeavoured to settle; *Wokokon*, *Roanoke*, and *Oran*, being all within these Bounds; and this was the Country he gave the Name of *Virginia* to; that which now beareth the Name, being discovered afterwards in 1606 or 1607. It was granted in 1603 to *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albermarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkely*, *Artho.* Lord *Ashly*, after Earl of *Shaftsbury*, Sir *George* Cartret and Sir *John* Colleton Knights and Baronets, and Sir *William* Berkley Kt. And they settled 2 Colonies, one at *Albermarle* River, and the other at *Ashly* River, in the lat. of 32. This of *Albermarle* was settled in April, 1670. upon a point of land 7 miles from the fall of *Ashly* River: in 1680 was built the Port Town, and called *Charles-Town* which in 1685 had about 200 Houses, and was growing daily, many of the Inhabitants of our Sugar-Islands retiring to this Town and Plantation before its Foundation were well laid. There rode before this Town at one time 16 Sail of large Ships. It suffereth nothing by the North East Wind, and is as to heat and cold much more temperate than *Virginia*. This Country is capable of all manner of Improvements, as well yeilding the same with the torrid Zone, as those of *England*, by reason of their short Winter, and the Land being of great Fertility, and wonderfully watered, there is nothing comes amiss to it. The first *English* that went thither found such plenty of Grapes, that there was few Trees or Shrubs without Vines about them, of which, the Country has 5. several sorts, and care has been since taken to Plant the *Rhenish*, *Canary*, *Claret*, *Muskat*, *Madera* and *Spanish* Grape; of all which, there were long since Compleat Vineyards. The *Oyle* Olive thrives here too wonderfully; as also *Cotton*, *Indigo*, *Silk*, *Ginger*, *Tobacco*, *Flax*, and *Hemp*; and *Sugar* they may have when they please. The Inhabitants they found there are of a mild nature, and neither able nor disposed to hurt the *English*; they being few in Number, and disunited amongst themselves by their Broils.

4. The Isles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number, (some say 400 at the least) are situate directly East from *Virginia*, from which they are distant 500 *English* miles; 3300 of the same miles from the City of *London*. So called from *John* Bermudaz, a *Spaniard*, by whom first discovered. Called also the *Summer Islands*, from the Shipwreck of Sir *George* Summers upon that Coast; so much delighted with the sadness of the misadventure, that he endeavoured what he could to settle a Plantation in it.

That of more fame and greatness than all the rest, to which the name is now most properly ascribed, is situate in the Latitude of 32 and 30 minutes: Well stored, when first discovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers Fruits, Mulberries, *Palmites*, Cedars; as also of *Silk*-worms, Pearls, and Amber, and such rich Commodities; of Fowl so in finite an abundance, that our men took a thousand of one

sort as big as a Pigeon, within two or three hours. The Air hereof very found and healthy, found by experience the best argument in such a point to be agreeable to the body of an *English* man; yet terribly exposed to Tempests of Rain, Thunder and Lightning. For which, and for the many Shipwrecks hapning on the Coasts thereof, and want of other Inhabitants to be lild to own it, the Mariners have pleased to call it the *Island of Devils*. The Soil affirmed to be as fertile as any; well watered, plentiful in *Mauze*, of which they have two Harvests yearly: that which is sowed in *March* being cut in *July*; and that which is sowed in *August* being mowed in *December*. No venomous Creature to be found in all the Island, or will live brought hither. And besides these Commodities, of so late a being, so fenced about with Rocks and Isles, that without knowledge of the passages, a Boat of ten Tuns cannot be brought into the Haven; yet with such knowledge there is entrance for the greatest Ships. The *English* have since added to these strengths of nature such additional helps, by Block-houses, Forts and Bulwarks in convenient places, as may give it the title of Impregnable.

It was first discovered (but rather accidentally than upon design) by *John* Bermudaz, a *Spaniard*, about the year 1522. and thereupon a Proposition made in the Council of *Spain*, for settling a Plantation in it, as a place not to be avoided by the *Spanish* Fleets, in their return from the Bay of *Mexico*, by the *Streights* of *Bohama*. And the King gave One *Ferdinando* Camelo, a *Portuguese*, large Privileges to encourage him to plant here; but the design miscarried. In the year 1595. *Barboto*, a *French* Pilot, suffered Shipwreck, 26 of his Men escaping on Shore, amongst whom was *Henry* May an *Englishman*. Neglected notwithstanding, till the like accidental coming of Sir *George* Summers, sent to *Virginia* with some Companies of *English* by the Lord *De la Ware*, Anno 1609. Who being shipwrecked on this Coast, had the opportunity to survey the Island, which he so well liked, that he endeavoured a Plantation in it at his coming home. Anno 1612. the first Colony was sent over under *Richard* Mene, who in three years erected eight or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordnance. Anno 1616. a new supply is sent over under Captain *Daniel* Tucker, who applied themselves to sowing Corn, setting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and Planting that gainful weed Tobacco. Anno 1619. the business is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the Publick, many great Lords and Men of Honour being interested in it; Captain *Butler* sent thither with 500 men; the Isle divided into Tribes or Cantreds, to each Tribe a Burrough; the whole reduced to a settled Government both in Church and State, according to the Law of *England*. After this all things so succeeded, that in the the year 1623. here were said to be three thousand *English*, ten Forts, and in those Forts fifty pieces of Ordnance; their numbers since encreasing daily, both by Children born within the Island, and Supplies. from *England*. In the year 1685. the Inhabitants were estimated at about 5000. so that this small Knot of Islands began to disburthen it self into *Carolina*, which lies in the same Climate, and is as good and as soft an Air. The long life and health of the Inhabitants is a great cause of their encrease; but then the Isle being small, the Trade is not great, so that Men rather live than get much in it; which to Men of more Active Spirits is a great cause of their Removing to people other places that want them.

O F FLORIDA.

FLORIDA is bounded on the North-East with *Virginia*; on the East with *Mare del Noordt*; on the South, and some part of the West, with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the rest of the West, with part of *New-Gallicia*, and some Countries hitherto not discovered. Extended from the River of *Palms* in the 25 degree of Latitude, to *Rio de Secco* in the 34. which evidently speaketh it for a Country of large Dimensions.

It was first discovered by the *English* under the Conduct of *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1479. afterwards better searched into by *John de Ponce*, a *Spaniard*, who took possession of it in the name of that King, Anno 1527. and by him called *Florida*: either because he landed there upon *Palm-Sunday*, which the *Spaniards* called *Pascua di Flores*, or *Pascha Florida*; or else quia *Florida erat Regio*, by reason of that fresh Verdure and flourishing Estate in which he found it. But by the Natives it is said to be called *Jaguasa*.

This Country lying paralld to *Castile* in *Spain*, is said to be of the same temper both for Air and Soil, but that is abundantly more Fruitful: the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage, as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of Maize, (the natural Bread-corn of the Country) which they sow twice a year: viz *March* and *June*, and reap in the third month after, laying it in some publick Barns, and thence distribute it to the Necessities of particular persons. Well stored with several sorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Chestnuts, Grapes and Plums, of both excellent taste and colour: Beasts wild and tame, of all kinds which these Countries yield; and of like sorts of Fowl. The Woods and Forrests full of the largest Oaks, and the loftiest Cedars; some Cypress Trees and Bays, of a large proportion: with great plenty of that Wood, which the Inhabitants call *Pavame*, and the *French* name *Sassafras*, the Bark whereof is Medicinal against some Diseases; and another Tree which we call *Esquine*, affirmed to be a Sovereign and present Remedy for the *French* Disease. It is also said to be enriched with some Mines of Gold and Silver; neglected by the Natives, till the coming of the *Spaniards* and *French* put a price upon them; and to have in it Emeralds of great worth and beauty, with many Turquoises and Pearls. Others report, that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongst them came from some Ships which had been wrecked upon those Coasts: contrary whereunto it is said by the Natives, that in the Hills which they call *Apalæi*, there are found great Veins of a reddish Metal, which the *French* concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to search into them.

The people are of an Olive colour, great stature, and well proportioned; naked except their Privities, which they hide with the Skins of Stags: their Arms and Knees stained with divers paintings, not to be washed off; their Hair black, and hanging down as low as their Thighs. Cunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of Dissimulation. So stomachful, that they do naturally love War and Revenge; insomuch that they are continually in War with one or other. They are crafty also, and very Intelligent, as appeareth by the Answer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a *Spaniard*, who was here among them, Anno

1594. For when he went to perswade the people that he was the Son of God, and came to teach them the Law, Not so, replied a *Floridan*; for God never bad thee to kill and slay, and work all kind of mischief against us. The Women, when their Husbands are dead, use to cut off their Hair close to their Ears, and strew it on his Sepulcher, and cannot marry again till their Hair be grown long enough to cover their shoulders. *Hermophradites* are here also in great plenty, whom they use as Beasts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kind of drudgery. They have all a gross belief of the Souls Immortality, but are otherwise Idolaters.

Mountains this Country hath not many, as being generally plain and level; the chiefest, those called *Apalæi*, before-mentioned, supposed by the Inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of most note; 1. *Rio Secco*. 2. *Rio Grande*. 3. *Serrevabi*. The two first named so by the *Spaniards*, and the last by the Natives. 4. *Garrumna*. 5. *Ligeris*. 6. *Axona*. 7. *Sequima*; and 8. *Charente*; so called by the *French*, according to the names of the best Rivers in *France*: both *French* and *Spaniards* having had severally and successively the possession of it. Here are also 9. *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers. 10. *Rio de Nieves*, or the River of Snow: And 11. *Rio de Spirito Santo*, or the River of the Holy Ghost; all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico*. A particular description of these Rivers, their Rise, Course, and Greatness, I find not in any of my Authors. Only *Mercator* telleth us of a twelfth River called *Porte Riale*, reckon'd the chiefest of this Country; the Mouth whereof is three miles broad where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the West, and the other pointing to the North. Some of these Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with Crocodiles; a Creature dangerous alike both by Land and Water. The *French* of latter times, in their Discoveries of *Canada*, and the great River and Lakes thereof, found one River which ran to the South; they enter'd and pursued the same so far, that they concluded it fell into the Bay of *Mexico*: But they going down, the same only in Boats, and not many in Number durst not pursue it too far, lest they should fall into the hands of the *Spaniards*, or never be able to get back again.

The Country, not so well discovered and planted hitherto, as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly distributed into several Tribes, as were all Nations of the World at their first Discovery. The principal of these they reckon the *Quevenes*, *Marianes*, *Canagadi*, *Camoni*, *Avanares*, and *Malicones*, the *Susolas*, *Quitones*, and other names not usual unto us of *Europe*; though these more passable than many which have gone before; mollified perhaps by the *French* and *Spaniards*, and not presented to us in their natural roughness: all governed by their *Paracussi*, or several Chiefs, and those at deadly Feuds and continual Wars with one another. Some have adventured on the names of particular Provinces, as *Panuca*, *Avanares*, *Abarduofia*, *Jaguazia*, *Apalchia*, *Anthia*, *Samovia*, *Colas*; but they acquaint us neither with their Site nor Bounds; except it be that *Panuca* lieth on the borders of *Hispania Nova*, beyond the large and spacious Bay of the Holy Ghost; and *Calos* near the Cape called *Cabo di Florida*. Others distinguish it by the names of the several Roylets; which varying with the change of the Person, makes that division to be very variable and uncer-

uncertain also. But it is generally agreed, that the *Peninsula* which pointeth on the Isle of *Cuba* hath the name of *Tequesta*, or *Florida* specially so called; the name of *Florida* being first given by *John Ponce* unto this part only, though afterwards communicated unto all the rest of this Country. A Demy-Island, stretching in length from the South to the North, 100 Leagues; in breadth, where broadest, 30 Leagues, and in some places 20 only. Well known by the Cape of *Martyrs*, looking into the Isle of *Cuba*, the River of the *Holy Ghost*, and three goodly Bays, the chief whereof, that intituled to *S. Joseph*, all opening into the Gulf of *Mexico*, or the Bay of *New Spain*. The whole invironed about, save where it is joyned unto the Continent, with Bars of Sands, and scattered Islands, which serve unto it as the Out works to some notable Fortress.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Hellens*, on or near a Promontory so named, where this Country bordereth on *Virginia*, once fortified and possessed by the *Spaniard*, but not long since abandoned. 2. *Port de Charles*, *Aux Carolina* in the *Latine*, built by the *French* upon the Banks of the River *Maio*; and so called in honour of *Charles* the Ninth, in whose time the Conquest of this Country was undertaken; but ruined by the *Spaniard*, in the War between them. 3. *Port Royal*, a well frequented Haven, on the mouth of the River of that name; but whether there be any Town now remaining I am not able to say. More in the Land (for these lie all upon the Borders towards *Virginia*) *Apalche*, supposed to be a place of great consideration, in regard of the opinion which was had of the Wealth thereof; (but found to be a small Town, of but 40 Cottages) and therefore first attempted and took in by the *Spaniard*, in their Invasion of this Country under *Pamphilus* of *Narvaez*, Anno 1528. Recovered by the Natives after his departure. 5. *Ante*, an open Burrough, nine days journey from *Apalche*, where the Savages gave the *Spaniards* a sharp Encounter, and slew many of them; but being vanquished at the last, they forsook the Town, of it felt not tenable. 6. *Ocalis*, an unwall'd Town, but consisting of 600 Sheds (for I dare hardly call them Houses) the chief of the Kingdom of *Acuera*. 7. *Ofachile*, the chief Seat of the King so called. And 8. *Vitacuchus*, a Burrough of 200 Cottages, the principal of the Kingdom of *Vitacuchus*: both taken by the *Spaniards* at the same time also. 9. *S. Matthews*, on the Eastern shore of the Demy Island above mentioned, possessed and fortified by the *Spaniard*. 10. *S. Augustines* on the same shore, but more South than the other, situate at the mouth of a small River so named, fortified by the *Spaniard* with many a strong Castle: but for all that taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1585. there being found in the Fort of *S. John*, in which the strength of the Town consisted, 28 Brass Pieces, and 20000 Florens in ready Money, for the pay of the Garrison. Repaired afterwards more strongly than ever formerly. The *Spaniards* have also Garrisons in two other places of this Country, viz. *S. Philip*, and *S. Jago*; but I cannot say distinctly in what part they are.

The Government of this Country is of one kind only, though managed by several persons: the Supreme Power residing in the Chiefs of their several Tribes; at such continual Enmity with one another, that they very seldom joyn together in any Councils wherein the publick is concerned. So that the *Spaniards* may affirm of the present *Floridians*, as the *Romans* did of the ancient *Britains*; *Nec quicquam adversus validissimas gentes utilis nobis fuit, quam quod in commune non consulebant*; the not communicating of their Councils hastned on their Bondage. Yet in the Government of these Chiefs there was somewhat of the Parliamentary way used with us in *Europe*: For as in all matters of Concernment those Chiefs advised with their Council; so if it were a business which concerned the Publik, their Priests and others of most note for Gravity and Wisdom were admitted to the Consultation. But being severally too weak

for a strong Invader, and never joyned together to defend themselves, they made themselves an easie prey to the *French* and *Spaniards*. *Et sic dum singuli pugnabant, universi vincuntur*; by trusting to their single Forces, they were all subdued. For in the year 1512. *John Ponce*, a Native of *Lyon* in *Spain*, setting sail with three Ships from the Island of *Porto Rico*, on *Palm Sunday* fell on the *Peninsula* before described; and for that cause, or from the flourishing Verdure of it, called it *Florida*; but did no more than scour along upon the Coasts, and give new names to such of the Promontories and Rivers as he had discovered; and having only a slight Skirmish with some of the Savages, returned back again. The business eight years after was again revived by *Vasques de Sylion*, who setting sail from the Haven of *Plata*, in *Hispavilla*, attained unto the North-east parts of this Continent, bordering on *Virginia*, where he left names unto the Promontory of *S. Hellens*, and the River of *Jordan*: and having treacherously inflamed some of the Natives, (whom he had invited to a Feast) prepared for *Spain*: where he obtained the King's Patent for a new Plantation. But his perfidiousness could not prosper: For in the year 1544. coming with his Ships upon this Coast, one of them perished on the Rocks, and 200 of his men being killed at their landing, he gave over the Enterprize: the *Spaniards* hitherto making no more use of these Discoveries, than wickedly to enrich themselves by stealing men, whom as wickedly they sold for Slaves. Nor had the Voyage of *Pamphilus de Narvaez*, Anno 1528. any better end; though undertaken with a band of 400 Foot, and 20 Horse. For having took possession of the Country in the name of his Sovereign *Charles* the Fifth, finding some hopes of great Treasures to be had at *Apalche*, (distant above a Months Journey from the place of his Landing) he would needs march thither. In which Action, which he got that and some other Towns, yet he lost himself, few of his men returning safe into their Country, and they not knowing what became of their General. As fruitless, but more famous, was the Enterprize of *Hernandes de Soto*, begun in the year 1538. and continued til 1543. who with a little Army of 350 Horse, and 900 Foot, over-ran a great part of the Country, and brought many of the petit Princes under the Command of *Spain*. But making only a depredatory War of it, to enrich himself, and waste the Country, without settling any Colony, or building any Fortifications in it to make good his garrisons, the Action ended with his Life, which he lost by a Fever: the remnant of his Souldiers, whom the War had spared, under the Conduct of *Luis de Mucopo de Alvarado*, recovering *Mexico* not without great difficulties. The *Spaniards* having such ill Success in their Martial Expeditions in the year 1549. they sent some Priests to convert these thus exasperated Nations, which were all cut in pieces by the Natives.

And so the *Spaniards* leave the Stage, and the *French* enter; sent on this Voyage by *Guyot Coligni*, Admiral of *France*, Anno 1562. under the Conduct of *Ribault*, who falling on that part of the Continent which lieth on the East-side of the *Peninsula*, gave the first Promontory which he touched at, the name of *Cape François*; and after running Northward along that Coast, new-named the Rivers thereof by the names of the *Seine*, the *Loire*, the *Somme*, the *Garonne*, and others of most note in his own Country. Coming as far North as the great River of *Porto Royal*, he there built a little Fortress, which he called *Fort Charles*, where he left 26 of his men to keep possession, and returned for *France*; his Soldiers following not long after, as well as they could; destitute of Supplies from home, and not able with so small a number to command them there. The Action reinforced about two years after, under the Conduct of *Landonier*, who had accompanied *Ribault* in the former Voyage: by whom some farther progress was made in this Undertaking, and a little Town built on the Banks of the River *Maio* (so called by *Ribault*, because in that Month

Month discovered by him) which he named *Charles Fort*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latin*. But a Mutiny happening amongst his Men, and some Complaints made of him in the Court of *France*, he was called home, and *Ribault* sent again to pursue the Enterprize; who entering on his Charge in *August*, Anno 1565. was presently set on by the *Spaniards*, both by Sea and Land; his Ships forced violently upon the Rocks, the new Town sacked, the Colony put unto the Sword, very few escaping: *Ribault* himself murdered in cold blood by the Enemy, after Faith given him for his Life. It was thought that above 600 *French* were slain in this Action. So ended the *French* hopes in *Florida*, the King being then preparing for a new Civil War, and loath to engage himself against the *Spaniard*, till the year 1627. when at the Charge of *Dominicus Gurgins*, a private Person, out of an honest Zeal to the honour of his Country, and to cry quittance with the *Spaniards* for their treacherous Cruelty, it revived again. And though he found the *Spaniards*, after the defeat of *Ribault*, had repaired and fortified *Arx Carolina*, and raised two Castles more on the Banks of the *Maio*, which they had furnished with such pieces as they took from the *French*, and Garrison'd with 400 Soldiers; yet giving a courageous Onset, by the Aid of the Savages, (to whom the Name and Neighbourhood of the *Spaniards* was exceeding odious) he forced them all, demolished the Works, and hanged all such of the Soldiers as the Sword had spared, and so returned into *France*; where, instead of Honour and Reward for so great a Service, he was in danger of losing both his Life and Fortunes, compelled to lurk among his Friends till the Times were changed. The *Spaniard*, after this, to keep some kind of Possession, though not finding in it Riches answerable to their greedy desires, fortified *St. Matthews* and *St. Augustines*, on the East-side of the Demy-Island, with the Castles of *St. Philip*, and *St. Jago*, in other parts of the Country towards the North-East; thinking himself so strong in the Gulf of *Mexico*, that no Foreign Forces durst appear on that side of the Country. So that it seems he plays the Part of *Aesop's* Dog in the Manger, neither resolved to plant there himself, nor willing that any others should.

All this Care of the *Spaniards* has, however, been of no effect; for as the *English* under *Sebastian Cabot* were the first Discoverers of this Tract of Land; so the Providence of God has reserved the Possession of it to them: And they since 1663. have settled a strong and a thriving Colony in that very Part, upon the same Rivers the *French* before endeavoured to settle on, and have called it *CAROLINA*, from *Charles II.* And considering we are in Possession of all the Countries to the North of it, it was good Prudence to secure this Part, lest a powerful Nation should prevent us, and give us some Disturbance in it. But that which is of a more concernment to our Plantations, is the searching of the Rivers on the West-side of the *Apalatean* Hills, which has not as yet been much minded by the *English*. I have been informed by some of good credit that have been in *Carolina*, That these Mountains are not continued to so far as *Carolina*, but on the back of that Country all is Level and Plain, divided by Rivers which all fall to the South into the Bay of *Mexico*. The searching out the Truth of this, is a thing of great Consequence; but especially the finding the River *Colbert*, which would settle an easie Communication between *Jamaica* and these Northern Plantations; for the building a Town and Fort at the Mouth of this River, would afford means for our Plantations to send Corn and Provisions of all sorts to *Jamaica*, much more easily and safely than can be done the way of the long Sea; the Torrent of the Streights of *Bahama* forcing all Ships that go to the South to fetch a great compass to gain it; but if it were once sent down this River into the Bay of *Mexico*, it would be a short and an easie Passage to *Jamaica*. But this being a work of time, need be no farther insisted on here.

Having thus taken a Survey of the Main Land of *Florida*, let us next take a View of such Islands as lie disper-

sed up and down in the Seas adjoining; called by one general name *LUCALIOS*, or *LUCALIA INSULAE*, many in number, but reducible to these three Heads, viz. 1. *The Tortugas*. 2. *The Martyres*. And 3. *The Lucaios*, specially so called.

1. The *TORTUGAS* are Seven or Eight little Islands, lying on a heap at the South-west point of the *Peninsula*, called the Cape of *Florida*, in the height of 25 Degrees; distant from the Port of *Havana*, in the Isle of *Cuba* (opposite unto which they lie) about six Leagues. Well known among the Sailors, because much avoided, or rather avoided because known; the danger of their Company making their farther Acquaintance shunned.

2. The *MARTYRES*, called also the *Caios*, are three great Rocks rather than Islands, covered with a white Sand, and full of Bushes; the middlemost of the three the greatest: Situate over against the South-East Promontory of the said *Peninsula*, called from hence *Cabeza de los Martyres*; or, *The Cape of Martyrs*. Denominated thus by *John Ponce* the *Spaniard*, in his first Discovery of this Country, because they seemed afar off to have some resemblance to Men impaled upon Stakes, as many of the Martyrs were in the Primitive times. Infamous for the many Shipwrecks which have since there happened; but of great observation amongst Sea-faring-men, because they know by leaving these Rocks or Islands on the Left hand of them, that they are already entered in the Streights.

3. The *LUCALIOS*, specially so called, lie dispersed on the East of the *Peninsula*, many in number, and so called from *Lucaioneque*, the greatest and most Northern of them; situate in the 27 degree of Latitude; of more length than breadth, but hitherto known by name only. Of greater note, though not so big, is that called 2. *Bahama*, in the middle way betwixt *Lucaioneque* and the *Peninsula*; in length 13 Leagues, and 8 in breadth; memorable for giving name to the violent Current interposing betwixt it and the Demy-Island, called the Streights of *Bahama*; yet not so streight, but that they are 16 miles in breadth, though of so forcible a Course, that many times neither Wind nor Oars can prevail against it. 3. *Guanabani*, the most Famous of all these Islands, because the first that was discovered by *Columbus*, *Thursday*, the 11th of *October*, 1492. being then almost out of hope of proceeding any farther; who thereupon caused it to be called *St. Saviours*, because his finding it that Day saved his Life, the *Spaniards* having otherwise resolved to have slain him. Well shaded at that time with Trees; full of fresh Springs, and very plentiful of Cotton; now overgrown with Shrubs and Bushes. It is one of the *Lucaios*, between *Florida* and *Hispaniola*, between *Guanima* to the North, and *Triangula* to the South: It has a safe and large Haven. 4. *Guanima*, by *Columbus*, when first discovered, called, *St. Maria de Conception*; begirt about with Rocks and Quick-sands, but otherwise of a pleasant and fruitful Soil, full of delicate Springs. Others there are, to the number of 24. or thereabouts, whose Names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we find nothing of them but their very Names, I shall not trouble my self with the Nomenclature.

Of all in general it is said, that they obeyed their King so strictly, (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from a high Rock, they performed the same; though he gave no reason but his Will. The Women of so perfect Beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forsook their own Countries to enjoy their Loves: their Shape and Beauty the more discernable, in regard not suffered to wear any thing till their Purgations; nor after that, but Nets of Cotton filled with Leaves of Herbs. But now, and long since, there are neither Men nor Women to be found in any of them; the People being long since

since wasted by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*, or consumed by Famine and Diseases, or otherwise made away in Prisons, and by several Torments, to the number of a Million and two hundred thousand, as some have told us. And so we pass unto the other side of those Northern Countries, opposite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the Main Land of *Florida*; that when we fall into the Countries now possessed by the *Spaniard*, we may not wander out of them till this Work be finished, except it be to take a Progress into some of the Islands, which cannot otherwise be visited, but by such a Start.

The securing to our selves the Possession and the Trade of these Plantations on the Continent, is of so great Use, Strength, and Advantage to the *English* Nation, now so great a Body of our People are settled there, that there is nothing of greater Consequence to us. The *Tobacco's*, and other Goods brought from *Virginia*, *Mary-Land*, and *New-York*, do not only serve these three Kingdoms, but the Remainder of it is transported by the *Dutch* to all the Kingdoms on the *Baltick* Sea, and to *Russia*; out of which there springs to *England*, in conjunction with our Sugar Trade, a Ballance to all our Trades with *Germany* and *Holland*; so that though the *Spaniards* much wondered that our *English* should so much please themselves with the planting that Stinking Weed, yet Experience has taught us, that the Riches arising from our Trade, are a far greater Advantage to us than their Mines of *Potosi* are to them, which have destroyed so many of their People, and made *Spain* so Poor and Lazy, that as fast as it is Imported it is carried away a gain by their Neighbours for meer Necessaries, very little of it remaining with them. The Corn and other Provisions of *New-England*, *New-York*, and *New-Jersey*,

are of so great use to our Plantations on the Bay of *Mexico*, that they are not able to subsist without them, as was seen in this present War, upon an Interruption of that Trade: But as long as the *French* are possessed of the River *Canada*, they are on our Backs, and all the Nations we have driven up before us are at their Service, to return under their Command, and destroy us: So that the Securing to our selves the Trade of those Rivers, is a thing of absolute Necessity for our own Safety. The common Objection against things of this Nature, is the Charge and Difficulty of maintaining such remote Garrisons or Plantations; but as to the Charge, the Trade will in a short time pay that; many Nations that now know not the Use of Clothes being by this means brought to know and use them, and by degrees they will be also taught to manure their Ground too.

To shew this by an Example; the *Germans* and *Britains*, when the *Romans* came amongst them, were as Barbarous as the Northern *Americans* are now; but having from them learned the use of Tilling their Ground and Cloathing themselves; they became as Civil and Polite as the *Romans* themselves, and at last their Masters. The *Indians* do now drive a Trade with the *French* and *English*, for Beaver, and other Furs and Skins; and that brings them into a liking of our Commodities, which is a Foundation for a larger Trade, where before none was ever driven; and this in time will spread till it reach the *Mur del Zur*: So that if our Colonies be but maintained and supplied for a few years, they will at length maintain themselves, as the *Hanse-Towns* did in *Germany*, which were at first either *Roman* or *French* Garrisons fixed there, to Civilize the People, and Secure the Peace of Conquered Countries.

O F CALIFORNIA.

CALIFORNIA, in the large and general acception of it, containeth all those Provinces of *Mexicana*, which lie on the West-side of that Northern *Peninsula*, beyond *Nova Galicia*, and *New Spain*: though in the stricter, limited to that Province only which lieth on the other side of a long and spacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *California*. But taking it in the largest sense, it hath on the West *New Spain*, and *New Galicia*, and so on to those undiscovered Parts which lie farthest North, to the Streights of *Anian*. So witnesseth *John de Laet*. *Lib. 6. Cap. 11. CALIFORNIA communiter dicitur quicquid terrarum Novæ Hispaniæ atque Galliciæ ad Occidentem obijcitur, ad extremos Americæ Septentrionalis terminos, & Fretum quod vulgo 'Anian' vocant.* Limited in the stricter sense and acception of it to an Island (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the West hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the Chorography and Story of it, we must divide it into the Continent, and the Island: the Continent subdivided into the two large Provinces of 1. *Quivira*; and 2. *Cibola*: the Island into 3. *California*, specially so called; and 4. *Nova Albion*.

And first, The Continent of this Part which we call *California*, hath on the East some parts of *Nova Galicia*; and besides that, those vast and undiscovered Countries which lie on the West-side of *Canada* and *Virginia*, on the opposite Shore: Bounded on the North with the unknown Parts of this *Mexicana*; on the North-west, with the Streights of *Anian*, if such Streights there be; on the West, with the Sea interposing betwixt it and the Island, called *Mer Vermiglio*; and on the South and South-west, with the rest of *Nova Galicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Noordt*: A River which rising in the 40 degree of Northern Latitude, first parteth *Tiguez*, a Province of *Quivira*, from that of *New Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Galicia*; and after a long course falleth into the Sea, called *Mer Vermiglio*, above *Cinoloa*, another of the Provinces of that Division. Divided, as before was said, into the two great Provinces of, 1. *Quivira*; and 2. *Cibola*.

1. *QUIVIRA*, taking up the most Northern parts of this side of *America*, is said to be very plain and level; of few Trees, not many Houses, nor much store of People; quite destitute of Fruits and Corn, and yielding nothing for Man's Life but the Flesh of Beasts, which they eat raw, and swallow down in great bits without any chewing. The Men apparelled in Bulls Skins from the Head to the Feet; the Women, though in a cold Country, with no other Garment than their Hair, which they wear so long, that it serveth them instead of a Veil to hide their Nakedness. They live in Hoords and Companies, like the Hoords of the *Tartars*, not having any certain dwellings, (except some chief Men) but remove from one place to another, like the ancient *Nomades*. Near Neighbours unto *Tartary*, (from whence (not being much distant from it) it is supposed that

the Inhabitants first came, and from hence by degrees Peopled all *America*. This has in all times been so far confirmed by the Observation and Experience of all those that have travelled in the North part of *America*, either upon the *Mar del Zur*, or upon the *Virginian Ocean*, that it may be set down for a certain Truth. I have above set down the Opinion of a *Russ* Commander, that *Tartary* afforded the stock that Peopled *America*. One *Stockwell*, an *Englishman*, was taken Captive the 19th of September, 1677. by the *Indians* of *Canada*, and by them carried Prisoner to *Quebeck*. "This Country (saith he) is inhabited by divers sorts of People, who are judged to be of the *Tartars*, called *Samoieds*, being divided into Tribes; their Speech is a Dialect of the *Tartars*; their Habit, before the *English* came amongst them, was the Skins of wild Beasts dressed with the Hair on, and drawn with Lines into several Works. In Winter they wear Snow Shoes fastned to their Feet, made like a large Racket for Tennis play; but now they wear Trading Cloth bought of the *English*. All these are *Samoied* Customs: And he observeth, the farther one goes to the North, the more the *Indians* resemble the *Samoied Tartars* in Language, Religion, Cloathing, Diet, and their way of Living; and amongst them that there are Man-eaters, as the *Samoieds* were about 1550. tho' they are now much civilized by the *Russ*. The Observation that the *Indians* wore Skins for Clothes before the *English* came amongst them, and since a sort of Cloth called *Trade-Cloth*, is a sufficient Instance how much the Trade of the World might be enlarged. *America* is of vast extent between *California* on the West, and *New-England* on the East; all the Nations inhabiting this Country, and all that lieth more to the North, go Naked, or only Cloathed in Skins of Beasts; but as the Trade goes on, may by degrees be brought to covet and wear our Cloth. Thus about 200 Years ago the *Russ* made all their Cloaths of Skins of Beasts, but by Trade and Commerce have been brought to wear Cloth.

The Country being full of Herbage, breeds great store of Cattel, differing not much in bigness from those of *Europe*, but that they have a high Bunch betwixt their Shoulders; bristled upon the Back like Boars, with somewhat which resembleth the Mane in Horses, and the Beard in Goats; their Legs short, and clad with Fetlocks, their Horns short, but sharp: the whole Beast of an Aspect so horrid, that a Horse will not venture near them, till well acquainted. Yet in these Beasts lie all their Riches, these being to these People, as we say with us of our Ale to Drunkards, Meat, Drink, and Cloth, and more too. For the Hides yield them Houses, or at least the covering of them; their Bones, Bodkins; their Hair, Thread; their Sinews, Ropes; their Horns, Maws and Bladders, Vessels; their Dung, Fire; their Calveskins, Budgets to draw and keep Water; their Blood, Drink; and their Flesh, Meat. There is thought to be some Traffick from *China*, or *Cathay*, hither; for when *Vasquez de Coropado* conquered it, he saw in the farther Sea certain Ships, not of common making, which seemed to be well

well laden, and did bear in their Prows the Figure of Pellicans; which could not be conjectured to come from any Country but one of these two. I know, some place this Country more within the Land; and others are so far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it close unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coast, upon good Authority, though I deny not but that some Parts hereof may be more remote. Or else to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; That the Maritime parts being known by other Names, the In-lands might retain more specially the Name of *Quivira*, as we have seen in many other Countries before described.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, because I find mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*; the one called *Scio*, the other called *Cicuic*, and the third *Tiguez*, which I look upon as the Maritime Parts of the same one Country, but better Peopled and frequented than the Islands are, because lying in the way of Traffick. The principal Towns of which Provinces are, 1. *Acus*, or *Acuco*, a small Town, but situate in a strong and defensible Place, about which grows some store of Cotton, which from the Place the Natives call by the Name of *Acuco*. 2. *Tiguez*, on the Banks of a River so called; inhabited by a stout and courageous People; who being resolved not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when besieged by *Vasquez de Coronado*, after they had held out above six Weeks, laid all their Household-stuff and Treasure in an heap together, which they set on fire; and taking their Wives and Children into the midst of their Ranks, made a desperate Sally on the Enemy. A Resolution worthy a better Fortune, most of them being slain in the Fight, and the rest trod under the Horses Feet, or drowned in passing over the River. Yet would not those few which were left give up the Town, till it was fired about their Ears, and no longer Tenable; the *Spaniards* buying this Victory (notwithstanding the great odds of their Arms) with the loss of most of their Horses, the death of seven of their Men, and the wounding of 80. 3. *Cicuick*, a small Borough, but the Chief of that Province, four days journey from *Tiguez*; from whence the whole way unto *Quivira*, specially so called, being 90 miles; hath in it neither Stone nor Tree, nor any Land mark; insomuch as the *Spaniards* were fain to make heaps of Cow-dung to serve for their direction in their coming back.

The first discovery of this Country is to be attributed to the diligence of *Antonio de Mendoza*, Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, who desirous to get Wealth and Honour by some new Adventures, employed in the Discovery of these Northern parts Fryer *Marco de Niza*. By him, and by a Negro which he had for his Guide, there was some light gotten of *Cibola*, the next Province to this; but so disguised in Lies, and wrapt up in Fictions, that that Light was little more than Darknes. Yet by that glimmering, *Francisco Vasquez di Coronado*, in the year 1542. undertook the Business; and sped so well, that having made his way through *Cibola*, he took the Town of *Tiguez*, as we heard before, and laid his way open to *Quivira*. Moved to a farther journey by the report of the Savages, (who desired to harken him out of their Country) telling him of the Wealth of *Tatarax*, who reigned in the In-land parts of *Quivira*, a Bearded Man (those of this Country wearing none) of a white Complexion, and one who in his Chapel worshipped a Cross, and the Queen of Heaven: On went the *Spaniards* towards *Quivira*, and found out the *Tatarax*, a

poor naked Prince, Master of no more Treasure than a Brazen Plate hanging on his Breast, and without any such Sign of Christianity as they did expect. So frustrated of all their hopes, and having got nothing but their Labour for their Pains, and the Honour of a new Discovery, with the loss of many of their Men, they returned to *Mexico*, Anno 1542. Some Fryars made bold to stay behind, but were all slain by the People of *Quivira*, except only one, who like *Jab's* Messenger was left to carry the News of the Murders; the *Spaniards* never after looking into these cold Countries, where nothing else was to be gotten but Blows and Hunger.

2. *CIBOLA* hath on the North *Quivira*; on the South and South-east parts, *New Galicia*; from which divided by the River called *Rio del Nord*, as before was said; the West-side of it washed with the *Mar Vermiglio*, interpolated betwixt it, and the Island of *California*, specially so called. By the Natives it is called *Zuni*.

The Air hereof indifferently temperate, if not too much subject in the Winter to Frosts and Snows. The Country for the most part level, rarely swelled with Hills, but those very Rocky. No Trees that bear them any Fruit; few Trees at all, except it be a Wood of Cedars, from which abundantly supplied both with Fuel and Timber. Plenty of Maize, and small white Pease, which they make their Bread of; great store of Venison, but they kill it only for the Skin; some quantities of Sheep, known for such by their Fiecces only, but otherwise as big each of them as an Horse, or Oxe, some of their Horns weighing Fifty pounds. Of Lions, Bears, and Tygers, so great a number, that they have more than enough for themselves, and could well spare them to their Neighbours.

The People generally well Limbed, and tall of Stature, ingenious in respect of some other Savages; and though Naked except their Privities only, or covered only with a Mantle, yet those Mantles wrought in divers colours; which, with some quantity of Cotton which they have amongst them, (none of it growing in their Country) shew them to be an industrious Nation, and to maintain a course of Trade with some of their Neighbours. A farther Argument of which, is those painted Skins which they have from *Cicuick*, or some other Country which lies towards the Ocean, my Author telling, that they travel for them eight days journey towards the North: And probably enough, may be some of those Commodities which the Inhabitants of the Maritime Provinces of *Quivira* do receive from *Cathay*, or *China*, with which they are supposed to Traffick, as before was said. Like industry is noted in the Women also, one of which will grind and knead more Maize in a Day, than the Women of *Mexico* do in four. In other things not differing from the rest of the Savages.

This Country was first made known to the *Spaniards* by the Travels of Fryer *Marco de Niza*, employed on new Discoveries by *Antonio de Mendoza*, as before was said. Leaving *Couliacan*, the most Northern Province of *Nova Galicia*, he overcame a tedious Desert four days journey long; at the end of which he met some People, who told him of a pleasant Country four days journey farther, unto which he went. And staying at a place called *Ucapa*, he dispatched the Negro, whom he took with him for his Guide, to search towards the North, by whom he was advertised after four days absence, that he had been

informed of a large and wealthy Province called *Cibola*, a Months journey thence; wherein was seven great Cities, under the Government of one Princess, the Houses of which were built of Stone, many Stories high, the Lintels of their Doors adorned with *Turquoises*; with many other strange Reports of their Markets, Multitudes and Riches. But neither the Fryer nor the *Negro* had the hap to see it; the *Negro* being killed on the very Borders, and the Fryer so terrified with the news, that he thought it better to return, and satisfy the Vice-Roy with some handson Fiction, than put himself upon the danger of a farther journey. To that end he enlarged and amplified the Report which the *Negro* sent him; gave to the Defarts in his way the names of the Kingdoms of *Tonteac*, and *Marata*; ascribed unto this last a great City called *Abacu*, once well inhabited, but at that time destroyed by Wars; to the other a more Civil and well-clothed People than in other places. Inflamed with which Reports, *Vasquez de Coronado* undertook the Action, but found the Fryer to be a Fryer; nothing of moment true in all his Relations: the Kingdom of *Marata* to be found only in the Fryer's Brains; *Tonteac* to be nothing but a great Lake, on whose Banks had once been many Cottages now consumed by Wars. And as for the seven Cities of such Wealth and Bigness, he found them to be seven poor Boroughs, all situate within the compass of four Leagues; which made up that so famous Kingdom which the Fryer dreamt of. The biggest of them held about 500 Cottages; the rest of them not above half that number. One of them, lest he might be said to return without doing something, he besieged and took, but found it such an hot piece of service, that he was twice beaten down with Stones as he scaled the Rampiers: but having taken it at the last, he found in it great plenty of *Maize* to refresh his Army, and caused the Town, (consisting of 200 Houses, or thereabouts) to be called *Granada*, for some resemblance which it had to that City in *Spain*. Such as have since endeavoured the discovery of these North west parts, and sailed along the Shores hereof on *Mer Vermiglio*, have added hereunto the names of some Points or Promontories, known in the Maps by the names of 1. *Porto de S. Clara*, not far from the Mouth or Influx of *Rio del Noordt*. 2. *Las Plaias*. 3. *S. Michael*. 4. *Rio de Teron*. 5. *Laques del Oro*, bordering on *Quivira*. And 6. *Roy Cornado*, on the East of that.

Betwixt this Region and *Quivira*, specially so called, lieth a Country, which the said *Vasquez* names *Tucayan*, memorable for the famous River of *Huex*; on the Banks whereof, for the space of 20 Leagues, stand 15 Burroughs well built, and furnished with Stoves, (if he hath not in this part of the Story out lied the Fryer) as in other cold but more civil Countreys, against the extremities of Winter. This Region, stretching seven days journey to the River of *Cicuick*, I reckon to belong to the North-east parts of *Cibola*: As I do also the fruitful Valley of *Aroia de Coraxones*, which they passed in their way hither from *Couliacan*; with the Town and Territory of *Chichilticalla*, and the Valley of *Nuestra Senora*, or our *Ladies Dale*, in the South parts, of it: not knowing otherwise what Province to refer them to.

Proceed we now unto the Island, the other general part of this Division, parted from *Cibola* and *New Galicia* by a narrow Sea called *Mer Vermiglio*, and by some the Gulf of *California*; environed on all other parts by the Main Ocean. Extended in a great length from the 22 degree of Northern Latitude to the 42, but the breadth not answerable. The most Northern point hereof called *Cabo Blanco*, of which little memorable. The most

Southern, called the Cape of *S. Lucas*, remarkable for the great Prize there taken from the *Spaniards* by Captain *Carvendish*, in his Circumnavigation of the World, Anno 1587. Supposed in former times to have been joyned in the Northern parts of it, above the Latitude of 27, to the rest of the Continent; and so described in most of our later Maps, till the year 1626. and after that in the Chart or Map of *John de Late*, Anno 1633. which I wonder at; himself affirming, that in many of the old Maps it was made an Island, lib. 6. 1. and that he had seen a fair Map in Parchment, very fair and ancient Draught, *Quæ Californiam, in ingentis Insulæ modum à Continente divideret*, in which it was expressed for a spacious Island, lib. 6. cap. 17. The reason of the Error was, that those who first endeavoured the discovery of it, sailing up the Sea of *Mer Vermiglio*, found it to grow narrower and narrower towards the North, till it seemed to be no bigger than some mighty River; but that of such a violent Current, that no Boat was able to pass upwards with Wind or Oar, unless haled up with Cords by the strength of Men. And taking it to be a River, they gave it the name of *Rio de Bona Guia*, known by that name, and continued in that Opinion of being a River, till the year 1620. or thereabouts. At what time some Adventurers beating on these Coasts, fell accidentally upon a streight, but violent passage, on the North hereof, which brought them with a strong Current into *Mer Vermiglio*, discovering by that accident, that the Waters falling into that Sea, was not a River, as formerly had been supposed, but a violent breaking in of the Northern Ocean; by consequence, that this part of *California* was not a Demi-Island, or *Peninsula*, but a perfect Island. And looking on it as an Island, we have divided it into *Nova Albion*, and *California*, specially so called.

And first, 3. *CALIFORNIA*, specially so called, containeth the Southern parts hereof, as far as to the Latitude of 38. where it bordereth on *Nova Albion*. Of which Country, though so near to *New Spain*, and *New Galicia*, and though discovered so long since, we yet know but little: the *Spaniards* either wanting Men for new Plantations, or finding small encouragements here to invite them to it. Furnished on the Sea-coasts with great plenty both of Fish and Fowl, which they find in great Islands of Weeds floating on the Seas; and more within the Land, with a kind of Beast haired like a Goat, and with Teats like a Cow, but otherwise resembling Deer, which they kill with their Dogs. Some Mountains in it are said to cast Fire-ashes, which the *Spaniards* for that reason call *Cacofogo*. The People are numerous and thick set, insomuch that on the Banks of the supposed River of *Bona Guia* were numbred three and twenty Nations all of several Languages. In their Persons like the rest of the Savages, but of different Dresses. Some of them painting their Faces all over, some half way only, others with painted Vizards, resembling Faces: Holes in their Nostrils for their Pendant; the tips of their Ears loaded, if not over-loaded with the bones of Fishes hanging at them; a Girdle about their Waste, to which they fasten a bunch of Feathers that hang down behind them like a Tail: the Women using the like Bunches before them also. Their chief God the *Sun*, (as that of *Cibola* is the *Water*) which they most affectionately worship as the cause of the increase of their Fruits and Plants. Joined in Commission with which God, they were taught by *Alarcon* a *Spaniard* to worship a wooden Cross (the more irrational Idolatry of the two) which he caused to be erected at his coming away; with instructions to kneel before it every Morning, at the first rising of the Sun: so teaching them to worship their two Idols at once, or translate

translate their Devotions from the Sun, a Creature of God to a plain wooden Cross (of which they knew nothing but the form) the work of a Carpenter. It is also told us of this People, that each Family is ordered by the Father of it, without other Government: yet so well managed, that they allowed but one Wife to a Man, and punished Adultery with death: The Maids not suffered to converse or talk with Men before their Marriage, but to abide at home and work: the Widows not to Marry again, till they had mourned at least half a year for the death of their Husbands: Matters more favouring an Utopian Commonwealth, than a Californian.

Places of most observation in it; 1. The Capes of St. Clara, and St. Lucas: the first on the South-east point of the Island, towards new Galicia; the other on the South-West towards Asia. 2. St. Croixes, (*Sinus St. Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven near the Cape of St. Clara; so called, because discovered upon Holy-Rood day. 3. *Cabo de las Platas*, more within the Bay; so named, because the Shore shewed in little Hillocks, without Grass or Shrubs; the Spanish word signifying as much. 4. *Cabo Boque*, towards the bottom of the Gulf, (from whence the Land on the other side may be easily seen) in the Latitude of 29. 5. St. Andrews, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Island of the same name, with some Cottages in it. 6. St. Thome, an Island of 25 Leagues in compass, at the mouth of the Gulf; rising towards the South in an high Mountain, under which is a convenient Road for Shipping, the Sea being thereabouts 25 Fathoms. Then on the other side towards the Sea, we have 7. St. A-bad, a convenient Haven, surrounded with a Country which seemed Rich and Pleasant. 8. Cape Trinidad, a Promontory well known to Seamen. 9. Cape de Cedro, so called from the Cedars growing near it; in the Latitude of 28 and 15 Minutes; with an Island not far off of the same name also. 10. Cape Enganno, in the Latitude of 31. 11. *Puebla de las Canoas*, so named from the multitude of Boats (by themselves called *Canoes*) which the People used four degrees more Northward than that Cape. And 12. *Cabo de Galera*, so named from the resemblance which it had to an Hat, in the Latitude of 26. But these two are placed by John de Laet within the Country of *Scyo*, one of the Provinces of *Quirina* Understand here, that these are only the names of Places, not of Towns nor Villages (for whether there be any such I am yet unsatisfied:) and that there are many other Promontories, Bays, Rivers, and Islands on both sides of this Region, which I find no names for.

The first discovery of this Country we owe to *Ferdinando Cortez*, (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534, furnished out two Ships from the Haven of St. Jago, on the Western Shores of *Hispania Nova*, to search these Seas: who making some small progress in it, encouraged him the next year to pursue it in Person; and passing up the Gulf, as high as to the River of St. Peter, and St. Paul, (so called, because discovered on the 29th. of June, the Annual Feast of those Apostles) for want of Victuals and other necessary Provisions, he returned back again. The business having slept a while, was in the year 1539. awakened by *Francisco de Ulloa*, one that had accompanied Cortez the time before; who did not only search to the bottom of the Gulf, but having thoroughly canvassed all the Eastern Shores, he turned his course, and made as fortunate a Discovery also of the Western Coasts. Landing, he took possession of the Country, with the wonted Ceremonies, for the King of Spain; and in the place set up a Cross to serve as a Remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Ferdinando de Alarcon*, who discovered many Leagues up the course of the supposed River of *Buena Guia*; where *Naguacatus*, one of the Chiefs of

their Clans or Tribes, did submit unto him: advancing so far towards the North, that at the last he heard news of *Cibola*; but was unprovided at that time for a Journey thither. And on the other side, *Roderico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642. coasting along the Western Shores of this Country, discovered two small Islands beyond *Cape Galera*; the one of which he called St. Luke's, and the other the Island of *Possession*, and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinia*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was Gold and Silver, and hungry Honour yielding but a poor Subsistence; the farther search of these Countreys was quite laid aside, almost as little known now, as before *Columbus* first set sail upon new Discoveries. About the year 1680. The *Spaniards* sent a Colony to settle at the South end of *California*, who could give no great Account of the Place, more than the Customs and Manners of the People, of which enough has been said by the Author.

4. *NOVA ALBION*, formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but some part of this Island; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and so Northwards as far as to *Cape Blanco*, as they call it now. Discovered by Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the World, Anno 1577. and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of *England* his own Country, which was once called *Albion*.

The Country is abundantly replenished with Herds of Deer, grazing upon the Hills by Thousands: as also with a kind of Conies, in their Feet somewhat like a *Wombat*, and on each side a Sack, where they keep such Victuals as they cannot eat. The Flesh of these Conies serves the People for Food; and of their Skins the Kings or Chief of their several Tribes make their Royal Robes. The Men go quite naked, the Women with a piece of Matt instead of an Apron; Chaste, and Obedient to their Husbands. Their Houses made of Turf and Osier, so wrought together, as serves to keep them from the cold: in the midst whereof they have an Hearth where they make Fire, about which they lie along upon Beds of Bulrushes. What Towns they have, or whether they have any or not, and by what Names called, if they have any, must be referred to a farther Discovery; there being nothing to that purpose delivered hitherto. And yet not seated so far North, but that it may be capable of a farther Light, if any Noble Undertakers would adventure on it.

The English were no sooner landed, but the Inhabitants presented themselves before the General with Presents of Feathers, and Cauls of Network made of Bull rushes; which he received, and requited with great Humanity. The news of their arrival being carried farther, one of their Kings thought fit to bestow a visit on them: A Person of a goodly stature, attired in Cony-Skins, with many Tall Men attending on him, one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged Three Crowns, with as many Chains; the Chains of Bone, but the Crowns of Knit-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniously composed. After him followed many of the common sort, every one having his Face painted white, black, and some other Colours; and every one with some Present or other in their Hands, even the very Boys. Being brought into the General's Presence, the Mace-bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not understood: and that being ended, the King caused the Crown to be put upon the General's Head, and the three Chains about his Neck; the common People offering Sacrifices about the Field in great Solemnity. Not to be interdicted those Superstitions, though the English (whom they took for Gods) seemed to be offended at them. Finally, after much kindness expressed on both sides, the General promising in the name of the Queen

of

of *England* to take them into his Protection, he caused a Pillar to be erected in the Place; on which he fastned the Arms of *England*, the Queen's Name, and his own; and so returned unto his Ships; but the Country lying so far off, that no benefit could redound by it to the *English* Nation, but the honour of the first Discovery; the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at last quite left out of the Maps or Charts; only a Point or Promontory, by the name of *Po. de Francisco Draco*, being left unto us to preserve his Memory. And though we have caused the name of *Nova Albion* to be restored unto the Maps, as it was before; yet we must let the Reader know, that the name of *New Albion* hath been

given lately with as much Propriety, but more hopes of Profit and Advantage, to that part of *Virginia* which lieth betwixt *Mary-land* and *New-England*, as before was noted.

Opposite to *Cape Blanco*, and the extream North parts of *Amerita*, the supposed Kingdom of *ANIAN*, from whence the *Streights* of *Anian*, which are thought by some to part *America* from *Asia*, do derive their Name, is conceived to lie. Supposed, and supposed only, for not certainly known: the very being of such a Kingdom, and such *Streights*, being much suspected.

O F

NOVA GALLICIA.

NOVA GALLICIA is bounded on the East and South with *Nova Hispania*, or *New Spain*; on the West, with *Mer Vermiglio*, better known heretofore by the names of the River *Buena Gusa*, and the Gulf of *California*; the Countries beyond it on the North-East not fully discovered hitherto. So called because of some resemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallicia*, a Province of *Spain* in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for distinction-sake.

It is situate between the 18 and 20 degrees of the Northern Latitude, which measured from the Port of the *Nativity*; (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Nawidad*) where it confineth on *New Spain*, to the most Northern border of *Cinaloa*, makes 300 Leagues; the breadth hereof, for so much as is possessed by the *Spaniards*, being but an hundred only. But taking in *New Biscay*, and *Nova Mexicana*, into the Account, the breadth will be greater than the length.

The Air hereof is generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat than cold; many times subject unto Thunders, and great Storms of Rain, in *June*, *July* and *August*, and at all times to Earthquakes; in the rest of the year the Air is serene, but for the most part of so found a Constitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old Age; contagious Diseases seldom known amongst them. The Ground by consequence somewhat of the driest, if not moistened with the morning Dews, which fall very frequently, and no way Marshy; about *Christmas* 'tis subject to gentle Frosts, but very healthful. And whether by the temperature of the Air, or Soil, apt to produce a kind of Gnat, (which the *Latines* call *Cimices*) affirmed to be as big as a Bean, which by their stings do very often plague the People, and raise Blisters on their Bodies as big as Walnuts.

The Country more mountainous than plain, and in most parts sandy. Quarries of Stone in many places, but little Marble, or any other Stone of value. Good store of Mines of Brass and Silver, few of Gold or Iron; and amongst all their Metals a great mixture of Lead. The Soil so rich, that it yields 60 Measures of Wheat for one; and for one of Maize, above two hundred: The Rivers plentiful of Fish, and the Woods of Beasts: Great store of Bees without stings, which make their Honey in the Forests without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figs, Malacatons, and other *European* Fruits, they thrive better here than they do in *Spain*, except the Cherry and the Olive; of which the last is most an end undermined by Embers; and the first thrusts out such a Harvest of Leaves, occasioned by the natural rankness of the ground, that they seldom come to their perfection. But this in time will be effectually cured as these Trees come to maturity, those Trees which natural grow very fast, not bearing Fruit till they have done growing. This was observed of the Olives of *Greece* also when they were first planted there, but afterwards the depauperating the Soil cured it.

The People are wavering and inconstant, apt upon any discontent to forsake their Houses, betake themselves unto the Woods, and many times to return to their ancient Barbarism; crafty, and docile even in matters which concern Religion; but slothful and impatient of any labour, to which not to be hired but for very great wages.

Much given to Singing, Dancing, and sometimes to Drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquor, few of them would betake themselves to the cares of Husbandry. When the *Spaniards* settled here they were exceeding wild and fierce, and not easily reduced from eating Man's flesh. Of Stature reasonable tall; their Garments for the most part a Shirt of Cotton, with a Mantle over it, fastned with two Buckles about their shoulders. They dwell in Villages and Towns, according to the greatness of their several Tribes: Those Tribes commanded by their Chiefs, who succeed hereditarily; but subject to the Judges, and other Officers, of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themselves generally to Merchandize, and the search of Metals; some few to Husbandry and Grazing, but make not the best use which they might of the Country: For tho' here be great plenty both of Sugar-Canes and of *Cochineel*, yet they neglect to refine the one, or to attend the ordering of the other, finding perhaps an easier or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

The Mountain of most note in all this Country is that betwixt *Guadalaajara* and *Zacatecas*; a League in height, but of such a Precipice withal, that no Horse nor Cattle can ascend it: their other Hills rocky, but clothed with Woods full of vast Pines, large Oaks, and great store of Wolves. The River of most name is that called *Bazania*, which, rising out of the Lake of *Mechuacan* in *Nova Hispania*, falls down a Cataract about four Leagues from *Guadalaajara* of ten Fathoms deep, and so tumbleth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place Fordable, nor having any passage over it but on Reeds and Rafts, on which the Passenger sitteth with his commodities, his Horse swimming by; not safe at any time, and at most times dangerous. Some Lakes here be of 20, some of 12 Leagues compass, environed with rich Pastures on every side. Those of less note shall be remembered in their proper places.

It comprehends the Provinces of, 1. *Cinaloa*. 2. *Couliacan*. 3. *Xalisco*. And, 4. *Guadalaajara*, on the Western Shores. 5. *Zacatecas*. 6. *New Biscay*. 7. *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all these somewhat shall be said, though of each but little.

1. *CINALOA* is the most Northern Province of *Nova Galicia*, bounded upon the West with the supposed River of *Buena Gusa*, and some part of the Bay of *California*; on the East, with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepefcan*; on the North, with the South parts of *Cibola*; on the South with *Couliacan*.

The Air for the most part clear and healthy, the Soil fat and fruitful, productive of Maize, Pulse, a sort of long Pease, which the *Latines* call *Phascoli*, but we have no Proper *English* name for; of which abundantly plentiful. Great store of Cotton-wool, wherewith both Sexes are apparelled. Well watered with the Rivers; 1. *Petatlan*. 2. *Tarahochala*. 3. *Paschua*. 4. *Taquim*; of no long course, all of them rising from the Hills of *Tepefcan*, and those but 36 Leagues distant from the Sea-shores. By reason of these Rivers, here are very rich Pastures, which breed great store of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattle.

The People are generally tall, higher than the *Spaniards* by an hand-breadth, warlike and strong; not conquered by the *Spaniard* without great difficulty; their Arms a Bow and poisoned Arrows, with great maffy Clubs. Their Garments for the most part of Cotton-wooll; their Hair nourished to a great length, which the Men tie up in a Knot, but the Women suffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both Sexes, at the first coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without Cloaths at all, but to hide their shame; most miserable poor; worshippers of the Sun, and not a few Cannibals amongst them.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Philip* and *Jacob*, situate on the Bank of a River, about 42 Leagues from the Town of *Couliacan*, but of no great note. 2. *S. Johns de Cinaloa*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, Planted here long since, and re-inforced by a Supply brought thither in the year 1554, by *Francisco de Tharra*; scarce able to defend themselves from the old Inhabitants, who ever and anon disturb them with a fresh alarm. Besides these, here are only some scattered Villages, and those not many: the *Spaniards* finding only 25 old Forts in all the Countrey, when they first made themselves Masters of it, under the Conduct of *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1542. People every-where submitting without any resistance; or, if they gathered to an Head, soon dispersed again. For what could naked Men do against an Army?

2. *COULLICAN*, or *CULUCAN*, lieth on the South of *Cinaloa*, coasting along the Bay of *California*, which it hath on the West, and part of *New Biscay* on the East, and the *Purple Sea* to the South and West, within the Jurisdiction of the Governour of *Guadalaxara*; the Countrey well provided of Fruits, inferiour unto none for all sorts of Provisions, and not without some Mines of Silver found out by the *Spaniards*. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Rio des Mucheras*, or the River of Women, in the North part of the Province; so called, because the *Spaniards* found there more Women than Men, occasioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*. 2. *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River, both sides whereof are very well Peopled. 3. *Piaftla*, more towards *Xalisco*.

The People not much different from the rest of *Gallicia*; save that their Women were more handsome, both for Dress and Personage; all cloathed in Garments of Cotton Wooll, when first known to the *Spaniards*; and yet the Men not free from the sin of *Sodom*. Their Houses neatly thatched with Straw, and over the Lintels of the Doors some Paintings, as shameless as the very foulest of *Aretine's* Postures. Ignorant of Gold, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted to their cost with Silver, which they are compelled to dig and refine for the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Piaftla*, on the River so called, about a days Journey from the Sea, well built, and artificially contrived in respect of others; never recovered of that blow that it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conquest of this Country wasted all before them. 2. *Quinola* near *Rio de Mucheras*. 3. *Quatrabarríos*, an old Town, but new named by the *Spaniards*, because it consisted of four parts. 4. *El Leon*, an old Burrough, which from a Lion there found had this new name also. 5. *Couliacan*, on a River so named, once the chief of this Province. 6. *S. Michael*, on the River of Women, built by *Nonnez de Guzman*, in the Latitude of 25, but afterwards deserted, or removed rather to a siter Place, and now fixed in the Valley of *Harroba*, two Leagues from the Sea, in a flourishing and wealthy Soil both of Corn and Pasturage. The whole Countrey conquered by the *Spaniards*, Anno 1531, under *Nonnez de Guzman*, most barbarously burning down the Towns, and destroying the People; as if they came not to subdue, but root out the Nation.

3. *XALISCO*, or *GALESCO*, as some Writers call it, hath on the North *Couliacan*; on the South, *New Spain*;

on the East, the Province of *Guadalaiaara*; on the West, the large Bay of *California*: So called from *Xalisco*, the chief Town of it, when subdued by the *Spaniards*.

The Soil hereof very fit for Maize, which it yields good store of, but not often. Herbage good for Cattel, which is reckoned for their greatest want. The North parts called *Chiametla*, of the two most fruitful, and better Peopled, having in it store of Wax and Honey, with some Mines of Silver. The People formerly Man-eaters, and much given to quarrel; from which reformed since their Conversion to the Gospel. Tenacious still of one of their ancient Customs, which is, to carry the smallest Burthen upon their Shoulders, and not under their Arms; which to do, they think very much misbecoming.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *St. Sebastians*. 2. *Rio de Spiritu Santo*; and the great and famous River of *Barania*, spoken of before. Upon the Banks of which are situate their most principal Towns, viz. 1. *Xalisco*, giving name to the whole Province, and to a large Promontory, called by the *Spaniards* *Sierre de Xalisco*, thrusting it self into the Bay of *California*, over-against the Islands called *The Three Maries*; the City taken and destroyed by *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1530. 2. *Compostella*, now the chief City of the Country, and a Bishop's See, founded by the said *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1531, when he had fully conquered the Country; by whom peopled with *Spaniards*, and by him called *Del Spiritu Santo*. But founded in so ill a place, and so bad an Air, destitute both of Food for Men, and Grass for Horses, as plainly shewing him to have better judgment in souldiery than in Architecture. This City is 100 Miles from *Guadalaiaara* to the West, and not far from the South Sea. In 1570, the Bishop removed his See from this City to *Guadalaiaara*, by reason of the great Thunder and Lightning. 3. *Purification*, a small Borough on the Sea-side, and in the extremity of this Country towards *Nova Hispania*, near the Port of *Natividad*. 4. *S. Sebastian* in *Chiametla*, on the River so called, first built by *Francisco de Tharra* above-mentioned; who having found hereabouts some rich Mines of Silver, brought hither in the year 1554, a new *Spanish* Colony, and building Houses for his Miners in convenient places, occasioned the whole Tract to be called *de Tharra*.

4. *GUADALAIARA* hath on the West *Xilisco*; on the East and South, by *Mechoan*, a Province of *Nova Hispania*; on the North, the Province of *Zacatecas*, well watered with the River *Barania*, which runneth through the midst thereof, some of his by-streams moistening the other parts. The Country very wealthy in Mines of Silver, plentiful of Maize, and fortunate in the production of Wheat, and such other Fruits as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the People we have before, applied in general to all the Natives of *New Gallicia*, but most peculiar unto these.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Guadalaiaara*, so called with reference to a Town of that name in *New Castle*, and giving name unto the Province, situate on the Banks of the River *Barania*, or some branch thereof, in a sweet Air, and a most rich and pleasing Soil; there founded by *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1531, when he had perfected his Conquest: better advised in the choice of the place, then in that of *Compostella* before-mentioned. A City of so good esteem, that it passeth for the Metropolis of all *New Gallicia*; honoured with the Courts of Judicature, the Residence of the Kings Treasurers, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Compostella*, Anno 1570, and the Seat of the Parliament or Courts of Justice, of this Province. Beautified on this last occasion with a fair Cathedral, a Convent of *Franciscans*, and another of *Augustine* Friers. It is 40 Leagues distant from the South Sea, and 80 from *Mexico* to the West. 2. *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the said *Nonnez* in that part of this Country which is called *Tepique*; but not

not esse observable. 3. *Santo Maria de los Lagos*, built by the same Founder, 30 Leagues on the East of *Guadalajara*; and the best defence of all this Province against the *Chichimecas*, a barbarous and untamed People on the North and East parts of this Country, who harbouring themselves in the thickest of the Woods, and some unknown Caves, do many times prey upon the Country; which they would utterly destroy, if they were not thus repressed.

5. *ZACATECAS* is bounded on the South with *Guadalajara*; on the North, with *New Biscay*; on the West, with *Calisco*, and some part of *Xalisco*; on the East, with *Panuco*, one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Country is of a different nature. In the West parts, called properly *Los Zacatecas*, rich in Mines of Silver (no one Province more) but destitute of Wheat, Maize, Water, and all other Provisions; as if it were designed for some wealthier Miler, who could live upon the sight of Treasure. The Eastern parts, properly called *Uxitipa*, not so well furnished with Silver, but most abundantly provided with all sorts of Fruits; their Woods replenished with Deer, their Fields with Corn, and every Tree giving Entertainment to some Bird or other: In a word, nothing wanting in it either for Necessity or Pleasure. Of the People I find nothing singular, but that they are affirmed to be more industrious than the most of their Neighbours; whether by force or nature, (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their Silver-Mines) I determine not.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Los Zacatecas*, neighbored by most wealthy Mines, 40 Leagues on the North of *Guadalajara*; inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciscans*. 2. *S. Martins*, 27 Leagues from *Zacatecas*, the Mines whereof were first opened by *Francisco de Tharra*, before-mentioned; who with many Slaves, and all things necessary for a War, was sent upon that Errand by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Viceroy of *Mexico*, Anno 1554. The Town inhabited by a Colony of 400 *Spaniards*, besides Women and Children. 3. *S. Lukas*, and, 4. *De Avinnon*, built amongst Mines as wealthy as those before, by the same *De Tharra*: As also was, 5. *Erena* a small Town, but of the same Estate for Silver, distant from *Zacatecas* 25 Leagues towards the North-west. 6. *Nombre di Dios*, in the most Northern parts of this Country, 68 Leagues from *Guadalajara*, the foundation of the same *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the Natives, and quiered them, after some Rebellions, by gentle usage, built this Town in a pleasant and fruitful Soil; and having got the Government of the Countries which he had discovered, drew hither so many of the *Spaniards*, and chief Men of the Natives, by granting them the propriety of some silver Mines, that it became the chief and best peopled Town of all this Province. 7. *Durango*, in the Valley of *Guadiana*, about 8 Leagues distant from *Nombre di Dios*, Peopled by a Colony of *Spaniards*, conducted thither by *Alonso Pachico*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this Treasure. 8. *Xeres de Frontera*, first built for the repressing of some of the Savages, who use to infest the Borders towards *Guadalajara*, during the Regency of the Marquis of *Villa Maurique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for *UXITIPA*, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*, subdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, employed therein by *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1529, at that time Governour of that Province; dismembred from it since the Conquest of *Zacatecas*, and made a Member of the Prefecture of *New Galicia*. The chief Town of it is called *S. Lewis*, built in a pleasant Valley by the said *Pachico*, and by him Peopled with a Colony of *Spaniards*; the Town not distant from *Panuco* above 20 Leagues.

6. *NOVA BISCALIA*, or *New Biscay*, hath on the South

Los Zacatecas; on the West, *Cinaloa*; on the North, *Nova Mexicana*; the Countries towards the East not discovered hitherto. So called by *Francisco de Tharra*, by whom first subdued, from the near Neighbourhood which it had unto *Nova Galicia*, of which it hath been always since reckoned for a part.

The Country is subject in the Winter to great Frosts and Snows; but notwithstanding, well provided of all things necessary, and wonderfully enriched with Mines of Silver. They have also some of Lead, which serve very fitly for the melting and purifying of the other; used to this purpose not alone in these Mines of *New Biscay*, but in those also of *New Spain*. The People resolute and stout, not conquered at the first Attempt, nor won so much by Force, as by fair Persuasions.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *S. Barbara*, and, 2. *S. John's*, about three Leagues distant; built only for the benefit of the Mines adjoining. 3. *Ende*, the farthest Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North, of whom a Colony was there planted (by reason of the adjoining Mines) by *Roderico del Rio*, who did also fortify it by the direction of *De Tharra*, under whom a Colonel. Distant from *S. Barbara* and *S. John's* about 20 Leagues, and 120 Leagues from *Los Zacatecas*. More North by 70 Leagues at least, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniards*, are said to be those four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Las Quatro Ciengas*; but I have nothing of them certain.

This Country was first subdued by *Francisco de Tharra*, who after he had built *Durango*, in the North parts of *Los Zacatecas*, and assured that Province, advanced with a Troop of 130 Horse for the Discovery and Conquest of his Northern Neighbours. Encountred at the first more with hunger and thirst, than with any opposition of the Inhabitants; insomuch, that they were fain to eat their Horses: and afterwards, by the Rebellion of the Natives, who killed the greatest part of such Horses as were left uneaten. But not discourag'd herewith, nor with the many difficulties which he found in his way, being compelled to hew his Passage through the Woods by the Swords of his Soldiers, he prevailed at last; and having settled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinaloa*, which he also conquered, and planted there a Colony in the Town of *S. John's*, as was said before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA* is bounded on the South with *New Biscay*; on the West, with *Quivira*; the Countries on the North and East, not discovered hitherto, tho' some extend it Eastwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250 Leagues from the Town and Mines of *S. Barbara*, and how much beyond that, none can tell; the Relations of this Country being so uncertain, and indeed incredulous, that I dare say nothing positively of the Soil or People, but much less of the Towns and Cities which are said to be in it. So named by *Antonio de Espejo*, a Citizen of *Mexico* in *New Spain*, by whom discovered and subdued.

For first, they tell us of the People, that they are of great Stature, and that like enough; but not so probable that they have the Art of dressing Chamois, and other Leather, as well as the best Leather-dresser in all *Flanders*: or that they have Shoes and Boots so well sewed and soled, that no Shoe-maker in all *St. Martins* could do it better. Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the Houses well-built of Lime and Stone, some of them four Stories, and in most of them Stoves for the Winter-season. The Streets even, and ordered in an excellent manner. Particularly, they tell us of a Town called, 1. *Cbia*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Cuames*, which is said to contain eight Market-places, and all the Houses to be plaistered and painted in most curious manner. 2. Of *Acoma*, that is situate on

the top of a Rock, a great Town yet no way unto it but by Ladders; and in one place a pair of stairs, but exceeding narrow, hewn out of the Rock, exceedingly well fortified by Nature, (they say true in that, if any things are true which they tell us of it) and all their Water kept in Cisterns, (but no body can tell from whence they have it.)

3. Of *Combas*, on a Lake so called, the City seven leagues long, two broad; (a second *Ninive*) but the Houses scatteringly built amongst Hills and Gardens, which take up a great deal of the Room: Inhabited by a People of such strength and courage, that the *Spaniards* only faced it, and so went away. Much of this stuff I could afford you, but by this taste we may conjecture of the rest of the Feast.

The Country was first discovered by *Augustino Royoz*, a *Franciscan* Frier, Anno 1580. who out of zeal to plant the Gospel in the North, accompanied with two other Friers of that Order, and eight Souldiers, undertook the Adventure. But one of the Monks being killed by the Savages, the Souldiers play'd the Poltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Beltram*, a Frier of the same Order (from whose mouth we must have the former Fictions) desirous to preserve the Lives of his Fellows which staid behind, encouraged one *Antonio de Espeio*, a Native of *Corduba*, but a Citizen of *Mexico*, to engage in such an holy Cause: who raising a Band of 150 Horse, accompanied with many Slaves and Beasts of Carriage, undertook the business. I omit the many Nations of the

Conchi, *Pasagates*, *Tobosi*, *Patarabyes*, *Tarrabumares*, *Tepoanes*, and many others as hard names, which he passed through in his way. But coming at the last to a great River which he called *Del Noerdt*, there he made a stand; caused the Country on both sides of it to be called *Nova Mexicana*, and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, situate in the 37 degree of Northern Latitude, and distant from *Old Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name since changed to that of *S. Foy*, but still the Metropolis of that Province, the Residence of the Governour, and a pretty Garrison, consisting of 250 *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming hither, viz. 2. *Socorro*, so called by the *Spaniards*, because that of Succour & Relief they found there for their halt-starved Bodies. 3. *Senecu*, 4. *Pilabo*, and 5. *Seviletta*; old Towns, but new Christened by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Gospel; each of them beautified with a Church. 6. *St. Johns*, built afterwards in the year 1599. by *John de Onmate*, who with an Army of five thousand followed the same way which *Espeio* went, and having got a great deal of Treasure, laid it up in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his Advance. This is the most I dare rely on for this Country. And this hath no such Wonders in it, but what an easie Faith may give credit to: Though I had rather believe the Frier's whole Relations, then go thither to disprove any Part thereof.

OF

NOVA HISPANIA.

NOVA HISPANIA is bounded on the East with a fair and large Arm of the Sea, called the Bay of *New Spain*, and the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the West, with parts of *Nova Galicia*, and *Mare del Zur*; on the North with the rest of *New Galicia*, some part of *Florida*, and the Gulf; on the South with *Mare del Zur*, or the South-Sea only. So called with relation to *Spain* in *Europe*, as the chief Province of that Empire in this *New World*; with reference to which the Kings of *Spain* call themselves *Reges Hispaniarum*, in the plural number. It contains all that space of Land between the North and the South Sea, and between the *Terra firma*, and the streight of *Panama* to the East, and *Florida* to the West; which by the *Indians* was called *Anahuac*; that is, the Land by the Water.

It extendeth from the 15 degree of Latitude to the 26 exclusively, i. e. measuring it on the East-side by the Bay of *Mexico* to the North of *Panuco*; but six degrees less measuring it on the West-side to the Port of *Natividad*, where it joyneth with *Gallicia Nova*. Or making our account by Miles, it is in breadth from *Panuco* unto *Mare del Zur*, 200 *Spanish* Leagues, or 600 *Italian* miles; but hardly half as much on the other side. The length hereof, from the East point of *Jucatan*, to the borders of *Gallicia Nova*, 1200 *Italian* miles, or 40 leagues; which is just double to the breadth.

The Air exceeding temperate, though situate wholly under the *Torrid Zone*, the heats thereof much qualified by those cooling Blasts which fan it from the Sea on three sides of it; and by those frequent Showers which fall continually in *June*, *July*, and *August*, the hottest seasons of the year. Abundantly enriched with inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver, some of Brasse and Iron, plenty of Coco-

Nuts, of which we have spoken before; great store of *Cassia*; such a wonderful increace of *Cochineel*, that 5670 *Arrobas* of it (each *Arroba* containing 25 *Bushels* of our *English* measure) have been shipped for *Europe* in one year. Where by the way, this *Cochineel* groweth on a small Tree or shrub having very thick Leaves, which they call a *Tuna*; planted and ordered by them as the *French* do their Vines: out of the Seed whereof ariseth a small Worm, at first no bigger than a Flea, and the greatest not much bigger than our common Lady-Cows, which they much resemble; which feeding on the Leaves, and over-spreading all the ground in which they are, are gathered by the Natives twice a year, stifled with Ashes, or with Water, (but this last the best) dried to a powder in the shade, and so transported into *Europe*. Here is also great plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pulse of all sorts, and of all such Plants and Roots as we set in gardens for the Kitchen; Pomegranates, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Malacatons, Figs, and Cherries, even to superfluity; Apples and Pears in less abundance; few Grapes, and those few they have, not fit for Wine; plenty of *Maize*, and other Plants unknown in *Europe*; Birds and Beasts wild and tame of all sorts, and of each no scarcity. Not thus in all places of it, nor in all alike; but some in one, some in another, according to the constitution of the Soil and Air: which is so different in this Country, that in such parts hereof as are hot and dry their Seed-time is in *April* or *May*, their harvest in *October*; but in such places of it as are low and moist, they sow their Corn in *October*, and reap in *May*: thus having two Harvests in a year, and yet but one. This Kingdom had Kings of its own, from the year 1322 to 1520; about two years before which time, *Francis Cortez*, a *Spaniard*, entred this Kingdom with 11 Ships and 550 Men; by help of which, he Sack'd the

the Town of *Pontonchon*, and defeated by his Cannon and Horse 40000 naked *Indians*, who came to revenge this Injury; by which he got such Footing in that Kingdom, that in the year 1531 he took the City of *Mexico*, August the 13th, and put an end to this *Indian* Empire.

The People more ingenious than the rest of the Savages, exquisite at some Mechanick Arts, especially in the making of their Feather Pictures; and so industrious withal, so patient both of Thirst and Hunger, that they will sit at it an whole day without meat or drink; turning every Feather to the light, upwards and downwards, every way to see in which posture it will best fit the place intended to it. No better Goldsmiths in the World, nor men more expert any where in refining Metals; curious in painting upon Cotton whatsoever was presented to the Eye. But yet so barbarous withal, that they thought the Gods were pleased with the blood of men, which sometimes they sacrificed unto them. So ignorant, that when they first saw the *Spaniards* on Horse-back, they thought the Horse and Man to have been one Creature; and would ask what the Horses said, when they heard them neigh. So careless of the worth of Gold, that they would part with great quantities of it for Knives, Glass Beads, little Bells, and such petty Trifles. But whatsoever they once were, is not now material: The *Spaniards* having made such havock of this wretched People, that in 17 years they destroyed above six millions of them, roasting some, plucking out the Eyes of others, consuming them in their Mines, and mercilessly casting them amongst wild Beasts, where they were devoured. As for those who do remain, besides their own natural ingenuities, they have since learned the Civilities and Arts of *Europe*. What else concerns this Soil and People, we shall shew more particularly, if we find it necessary in their proper places.

Amongst the Rarities of this Country, (though there be many Plants in it of a singular nature) I reckon that which they call *Magney*, or *Meth*, said to be one of the principal: a Tree which they both plant and dress, as we do our Vines. It hath in it 40 kind of leaves fit for several uses. For when they be tender, they make of them Con-ferves, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Mats, Shoes, Girdles, and Cordage: upon them there grow certain Prickles so strong and sharp, that the People use them instead of Saws. From the top of the Tree cometh a Juice like Syrup; which, if you seeth it, will become Honey; if purified, Sugar: they may make also Wine and Vinegar of it. The Bark of it roasted maketh a good Plaister for Hurts and Sores; and from the highest of the Boughs comes a kind of Gum; which is a sovereign Antidote against Poysons.

Nor is it a less Rarity, though less useful to the good of Mankind (except it be to keep them in continual mind of the Fires of Hell) that they have a Mountain in this Country called *Propocampeche*, (situate in the Province of *Mexico*) which vomiteth Flames of Fire like *Aetna*: and another in the Province of *Guanaxaca*, which sendeth forth two burning streams, the one of red Pitch, and the other of black; a fit resemblance of those Fountains of Fire and Brimstone. Though they have many other Mountains yet these are most Memorable. The *Vulcano's* dispersed here and there on the Globes of the Earth, are of great use to Mankind, because they spend and vent those fiery Vapours and Exhalations; which gathering in the Cavern's below, are the cause of Earth quakes; and but these Vents, would be much more frequent and destructive than now they are. And of this we have had both ancient and late Examples in the Countries that are better known to us. And as for Rivers, though very well provided of that watery Commodity; yet here are none remarkable for length or greatness, but *Panuco* only, of which more presently. The want thereof supplied by some famous Lakes, and the Neighbourhood of the Gulf of *Mexico*. Amongst

the Lake, the principal are those of *Mexico*, (whereof more anon) and that of *Chapala*, bordering upon *Gallicia Nova*; which for its greatness hath the name of *Mare Chapalicum*, out of which there is made yearly great abundance of Salt. But that which is of greatest beauty in the Gulf of *Mexico*, the greatest and goodliest of the World: in form compleatly Circular, its compass no less then 900 miles; environed with the main Land, the *Peninsulas* of *Florida* and *Jucatan*, and the Isle of *Cuba*. Two only passages in and out: the one betwixt the point of *Jucatan* and the Isle of *Cuba*, where the Tide with a violent Current entrencheth; the other betwixt the said Island and the Cape of *Florida*, where it makes as violent an Exit: the Sea so heady in the midst, and yet safe enough that ships are not to sail in it directly forwards, but must bend either towards the North or South, as their Journey lieth. Upon this Gulf the King of *Spain* hath always some Ships in readiness, by which he more assureth his Estates in this part of *America*, than by all his Garrisons. As indeed without a Fleet of ships, it is utterly impossible to guard these Passes; they being about 40 English League broad, nor perhaps with a Fleet, because the Current both in and out is so Rapid; so that few *Buccaners* of late times have been able to confute all the pretended strength of these Passes; and to shew all that will venture at it, may pass there without restraint: But it is here as in the Ocean, the slow Sailer, and weaker Fleet must yield to the stronger. The *Spanish* Ships when such attack, when otherwise are in their turn forced to retreat. This weakness of the *Spaniards* in the Bay of *Mexico*, is grown upon them since the Author wrote; and therefore is not so much to be attributed to him as a fault, as to the change of the times. The Reader may by the way observe, he Divides this great Bosome of the Ocean, encompassed to the East with Islands; and to the South, West, and North, with the Continent of *America* into two great Gulfs or Bays, That of *Mexico* to the North; and that of *Hondura* to the South; called also by the *Spaniards*, *Mar del Nora*; in which lieth *Jamaica*, now in a great degree the Mistress of it.

It comprehendeth the Provinces of 1. *Panuco*, 2. *Mechuacban*, 3. *Mexicana*, 4. *Tlascala*, 5. *Guanaxaca*, 6. *Jucatan*. Some others of less note but reduced to these.

1. *PANUCO*, the most Northern Province of all *New Spain*, by some called *Guaftecan*, is bounded on the East with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the West with *Uxitapa*, a Member of the Province of *Zacatecas* in new *Gallicia*; on the North with *Florida* and some Countries not yet discovered, from which parted by the River of *Palms*; on the South-west, with *Mechuacan*; and on the South with *Mexicana*. So called from *Panuco* the chief River of it, which rising out of the Hills of *Tepecuan*, bordering upon *Cinacoua* and *Couliacan*, and dividing *New Biscay* from the Province of *Zacatecas*, passeth through the middle of this Country, and so at last into the Gulf.

The length hereof is reckoned to be 50 Leagues, and the breadth as much. Divided into three Provinces. That towards *Mexicana*, called *Aiotuxetlan*, of a fruitful Soil, and not without some Mines of Gold; once very populous till in the year 1522, dispeopled in a manner by *Ferdinando Cortez* in his War against them. The other called *Chila*, less fruitful, but possibly for want of people to improve the Land: for being formerly of a stout courageous nature, and trusting overmuch to their Fens and Fastnesses, they put the *Spaniards* to such trouble when they warred upon them, that the Conquerors, to secure themselves from all future dangers, endeavoured to root them out, and destroy them utterly. The third lieth towards the River of *Palms*, inclined to barrenness, and unpleasant, but the name I find not.

Chief Towns hereof, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither. 1. *Las Caxas*, 2. *Yxcuyan*, 3. *Nachapatan*, 4. *Taquimite*,

quinte, 5. *Tuxeteca*, desolate and laid waste by the cruel Spaniards. Of most note now. 6. *Tanebipa*, and 7. *Tameclipa*, two small Burroughs in the Province of the River of Palms, (for so I call it) inhabited by the Natives only. 8. *S. Kallap*, another small Town, but in the Province of *Chila*, inhabited by a few Christians with a Convent of *Augustinian* Friars: sacked by the Savages in the year 1571. 9. *Tampice*, or *S. Lewis de Tampice*, a Colony of the Spaniards situate on the North Banks of the River *Panuco*, and at the very mouth thereof; where it hath a very large Haven, but so barred with Sands, that no Ship of great burthen can make use of it: the River otherwise so deep that Vessels of 500 Tun might sail 60 Leagues at least in it against the Stream. 10. *S. Stevan del Puerto*, on the Southern side of that River, in the Latitude of 23. about 65 Leagues on the North of Mexico, from the Sea eight Leagues; now the Metropolis, and Town of greatest Trade in all this Country. Built by *Ferdinando Cortez* in the place where formerly had stood *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province, but by him destroyed. Opposite hereunto, on the other side of the River lie great store of Salt-Pits, out of which the people of this Town raise their greatest profit. In the year 1572 it had but Ten Christian Inhabitants, and one Priest; and was much oppressed by the most Numerous Indians. 11. *S. Jago de los Valles*, or *S. James* in the Vallies, 25 Leagues Westward (but inclining to the South withal) from *S. Stevan del Puerto*; situate in an open Country, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth: To the Inhabitants whereof (all Spaniards, as in that before) the King of Spain hath granted many fair possessions, to defend those parts (then being the borders of his Estates) against the Savages.

This Country first attempted by *Francisco Garai*, but the Conquest of it finished by *Cortez*, as before is said: each striving, as it seemeth, who should most delace it, and be enrolled for the greatest Man slayer of the two. But having carried on the course of their Victories almost as far as to the River of Palms, they desisted there; either because already glutted with humane Blood, or that the conquest of those parts would not quit the charge. Inasmuch as in all that Country, from the River of Palms to the Cape of Florida, though lying all along on the Gulf of Mexico, the Spaniards have not one foot of ground secure enough, because it lieth all along that Gulf, that no other Nation can possess it. How much soever of Probability this might seem to English men to have, when this Author Wrote, viz. 1630. yet since that by the great Trade and perpetual Navigation which we have to *Jamaica* and *Barbadoes*, it is known now, that the Spaniards cannot hinder the setting of Colonies upon the Coast of Florida: as I believe, it is not their Interest to do it: And we are already possessed of the right of the Countries, out of which these Rivers arise to 29 degrees of Latitude; which will also include the falls of a great many of them, as parts of Carolina

2. *MECHOACHAN* hath on the North-East *Panuco*; on the East, *Mexicana*, on the South part of *Tlascala*; on the west, the main Ocean; and on the North, the Province of *Xalisco* in *New Galicia*. So called from the abundance of Fish, which their Lakes and Rivers did afford them; the word in their own Language signifying *Locum Piscis*, or a Country of Fish.

The breadth hereof on the Sea-coast is 80 Leagues, in the borders towards *Mexicana* but sixty only. The length I find not yet agreed on. Bled with an Air so sound and sweet, that sick Folks come hither out of other Countries to recover their Health. Well stored with Rivers, some Lakes, innumerable Springs of Running Water, and here and there some hot Baths issuing from the Rocks. The Soil so plentifully productive of all sorts of Grain, (even to admiration) that in some parts hereof four measures of Seed have brought forth 600 measures of

the same Grain in the following Harvest. Well wooded, and by reason of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Pastures; and yet not yielding unto any part of all America for Medicinal Herbs and Plants, of every sovereign nature for the Good of Mankind. It affordeth also store of Amber, Mulberry-Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and such other things as chiefly serve for Pomp and Pleasure.

The People tall of Stature, but strong and active; of a good Wit, and skilled in many excellent Manufactures. They speak four Languages of their own, but that most generally used is by the Spaniards called the *Tarascan* Tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious Language, yet most of them speak the Spanish also. More pliant to the Manners and Apparel of that Nation, than the rest of *New Spain*, (the Mexicans excepted only;) and so inclinable to the Gospel, that they are almost all gained from their old Idolatries. Inasmuch that the whole Country being divided into fifty Parishes, every Parish hath its several Priests and inferior Ministers, who in the Language of the place, do instruct the people in which they preach to them, and hear their Confessions; besides many Convents of *Dominicans* and of *Augustine* Friars.

It containeth in it upwards of 150 Towns or Burroughs, besides scattering Villages; ninety of which have Free Schools in them, and almost every one a Spittle for relief of the Sick. The Principal thereof, 1. *Zinzoutza*, the Seat of the old Kings of *Mechuacan*; in the first Times of Christianity in this Country made a Bishop's See, till removed to *Pascuar*. The first Bishop *Nasquez de Quiroga*, 2. *Pascuar*, of no great note at present, but that the Bishop's See was removed thither because nearer to Mexico; from which distant 47 Leagues. 3. *Valladolid*, now the chief City of this Province, and the Bishop's See, removed hither from *Pascuar*, and here finally settled in a Fair Cathedral, Anno 1544. situate near a large Lake, (said to be bigger than that of Mexico) which doth not only afford the City great store of Fish, but yieldeth them the opportunity of several pleasures, which they take in Boats upon the Water. The Lake and City by the Natives called *Guayangareo*. The Fish that is taken here, is sold to the Provinces near the Lake, to the great enriching the Inhabitants. Laet. p. 268. 4. *S. Michael*, in the way from Mexico (from which distant about 40 Leagues) to the Silver Mines of *Zacatecas*. First built by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Vice-Roy of Mexico, to defend the People of this Province from the *Chichimechas*, a barbarous and hitherto an unconquered People, who terribly molest the Nations upon whom they border. 5. *S. Philips*, built at the same time by the said *Velasco*. 6. *Conception de Saylaa*, 17 Leagues from *Valladolid*, 35 from Mexico; of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez*, the Vice-Roy, Anno 1570. to be a Stage for Travellers in their Journeys Northwards. 7. *Guaxanato*, bordering on *Panuco*, and not far from *S. Jago de Los Valles*, rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea we have, 8. *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Galicia*, two miles from the Ocean; a Town of not above 30 Houses, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and safe Road for Shipping, (by the Spaniards called *Malacca*) which makes it seldom without the company of Sailors. 9. *Natividad* (or *Portus Nativitatis*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly set sail to the *Philippine* Islands; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Cavendish* in his Circumnavigation of the World. 10. *S. Jago*, (or *S. Jago de Buena Esperanza*) a little on the South of *Natividad*, the Shores whereof are said to be full of Pearls. 11. *Colima*, ten Leagues from the Sea, but more South than the other; built in the year 1522. by *Gonzalvo de Sandoval*. 12. *Zacatula*, by the Spaniards called *Conception*; situate on the Banks of a large (but nameless) River, which rising about the City of *Tlascala*, passeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This

This Province, at the coming of the *Spaniards*, hither was a distinct Kingdom of it self, not subject nor subordinate to the Kings of *Mexico*, as were most of the Princes of these parts: the Frontiers of the Kingdom fenced with Stakes of Wood like a Palizado, to hinder any sudden Incurtion of the *Mexican* Forces. The last King, called *Tangaywan Bimbycha*, submitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, Anno 1522. and willingly offered himself to Baptism. But the *Spaniards* were not pleased with either, because deprived thereby of the Spoil of the Country. But at last, *Nonnez de Guzman*, then President of the Courts of Justice in *Mexico*, picked a Quarrel with him, accused him falsely (as is said by the very *Spaniards*) of some practices against his King, burnt him alive with most barbarous and unheard-of Cruelty, and so confiscated his Estate.

2. *MEXICANA* is bound on the East with the Gulf of *New Spain*; on the West, with *Mechuacan*; on the North with *Panuco*; and some part of *Nova Galicia*; on the South, with *Tlascala*, and part of the Southern Sea. So called from *Alexico*, the Chief City, not of this Province only, but of all *America*.

It is in breadth from North to South, measuring by the Bay of *Mexico*, 130 Leagues; thence growing narrower, in the midland parts hardly above sixty; and on the Shores of *Mare del Zur* not above seventeen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other; that is to say, from the Point of *Lobos* in the Province of *Papantln*, on the Gulf of *Mexico*, to the Haven of *Acapulca* on the Southern Ocean: but the determinate number of Miles I do not where find. But measuring it from 17 degrees and an half of Latitude, unto the 22, and allowing something for the slope, we may conclude it to be much of the same length as it is in breadth, that is to say, about one hundred and thirty Leagues.

The Country is inferior to *Peru* in the plenty and purity of Gold and Silver, but far exceeding it both in the Mechanical and Ingenious Arts which are here Professed, and in the abundance of Fruits and Cattle: of which last here is such store, that many a private man hath 40000 Kine and Oxen to himself. Fish is here also in great plenty; that only which is drawn out of the Lake whereon *Mexico* standeth, being reported worth 20000 Crowns yearly to the King's Exchequer. The People for the most part witty and industrious, full of Valour and Courage: good Handicraftsmen, if they stoop so low as to Trades and Manufactures; rich Merchants, if they give themselves to more gainful Traffick; and hardy Souldiers, if trained up and employed in service. Their Ancient Arms were Slings and Arrows; since the coming of the *Spaniards* practised on the *Hurquebuse*. In a word, what was said before of *New Spain* in general, as to the Soil and People of it most applicable to this.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Los Topes*, which parteth this Province from that of *Tlascala*. 2. *Citala*, and 3. *Mitla*, both running Eastward towards the Gulf. 4. *Papagato*, in the way from *Mexico* to *Acapulco*; with a fair Bridge over it. 5. *Las Balsas*, of a violent Course and in bigness equal unto *Tagus* in *Spain*; passable only by a Bridge made of Ralls and Reeds, not very strongly joyned together. 6. The River of *S. Francis*, both large and swift, but in some parts fordable. Mountains of note I find not any which require a more particular consideration; and so pass them over the more easily.

Towns of most note in it, 1. *Mexico*, the Seat of an Archbishop, and of the *Spanish* Vice-Roy, who hath the power to make Laws and Ordinances, to give Directions, and determine Controversies; unless it be in such great Causes which are thought fit to be referred to the Council of *Spain*. This City was first situate in the Lakes and Islands, like *Venice*; every where interlaced with the pleasant Currents of Fresh and Sea-Waters; and carrying a face of more Civil Government then any of *America* though nothing if compared with *Europe*. The Inhabitants pretend it was built in the year 1322; but the *Spaniards*

by the Current and Thread of their Story, say, it was built in Year 902. It was many Ages since, the Royal Seats of the Kings of *Mexico*, and had then a great and splendid Palace, called in their Tongue the *Cepac*. But the Town being August 13. 1521. destroyed by *Cortez*, it was built afterwards on the firm Land on the edge of the Lake, and bordering on a large and spacious Plain; and made the Capital of all his Conquests. Streets are great, straight and beautiful. Its Churches Magnificent, and its publick buildings Noble. It has an *Aqueduct* three Miles long, and many Monasteries. *Jehn de Turre Cremita*, our Country Man *Mr. Gage*, and some others, have given large Accounts of this Noble City, which is the greatest in *America*. It has no Walls, Forts, Bastions, nor any Cannon, or defence whatsoever, but what the number of its Inhabitants afford, which is a part of the *Spanish* Jealousie, for fear a *Vice roy* should set up for himself. In the Year 1527. *Pope Clement* the VII. made it a Bishops See. In the Year 1547 *Paul* the III. made it an Arch-Bishops See; in which Year *Cortez* the Conquerour of it Died. In 1551 it was made a University by *Charles* the V. The Plain on which it bordereth is said to be 70 Leagues in compass, environed with high Hills, on the tops whereof the Snow lieth continually. In the middle of which Plain are two great Lakes, the least of them forty miles in circuit, the one salt, and the other fresh: each of them alternately ebbing and flowing up into the other. On the Banks of the salt Lake standeth the City of *Mexico*, with many other goodly Towns and stately Houses: on which Lake also 5000 Whearies are continually plying. The Town in compass is six miles, and containeth 6000 Houses of *Spaniards*, and 60000 *Indians*. It is a by-word, That at *Mexico* there are four fair things; viz. The Women, the Apparel, the Houses, and the Streets. Here is also a Printing-House, an University, and a Mint, the Cathedral Church, Ten Convents of Nuns, several Houses of *Jesuits*, *Dominicans*, *Franciscans*, *Augustinians*, and other Religious Orders; some Colledges, many Spittles and Hospitals, and other publick buildings of great state and beauty. By the Natives it was anciently call'd *Temistitan*, the name of *Mexico* being given on a new occasion, of which more hereafter. Most miserably endamaged by the breaking in of the Waters, September the 21. Anno 1629. which swelled so high, that they not only overwhelmed the meaner Houses, but the Vice Roy's Palace; drowned many thousands of the People, and destroyed the Household-stuff of the rest. Occasioned by the Avarice of the Kings Ministers, who had inverted the Money to their private use, which should have fortified the Banks. But being a rich and wealthy City it soon recovered of that Blow, attained in short time to such infinite Riches, that generally the Merchants, Trades-Men and Artificers, do brave it in a greater State and more splendid Equipage than any People under Heaven of the like condition. In the Year 1555. *Thompson*, an English Man, estimated the Inhabitants that were *Spaniards* at 1500 Families; but the *Indians* in the Suburbs were then thought to be above 300000 Souls. It is seated 65 Leagues from the North Sea, and 75 from the South Sea. It was then increasing, being seated in a temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil, and abounding with all things needful to the Life of Man, at cheap rates. *Hacklutt*, To. 3. p. 454. In 1572 the Families were estimated at 50000; about 6000 of which were *Spaniards*. *ib.* 463. It is very subject to Earthquakes, well Watered, and enjoying plenty of all things. There is no way to the City but over three Causeways on the North, West, and South sides, the latter of which is the longest. There are also two Lakes of Water, called by the name of this City; one of which is fresh water, and Seven Leagues long, and Six broad; the other is salt Water, and is 40 Leagues in Compass.

When

When Cortez rebuilt this City, there were 100000 Houses rebuilt mostly by the *Indians*, in the latter end of the former Century, there were 4000 *Spanish* Inhabitants, and 30000 *Indians*; but in the Year 1625, the *Spaniards* were estimated at, between 30 and 40000, and the *Indians* are so consumed by hard usage, and the work of the Lake, that they were not thought above 2000 mere *Indians*, and 1000 *Mestizos*. It is the greatest and one of the richest Cities in the World; enjoying a vast Trade on the South Sea to *China*; and the East Indies, and on the *Atlantick* to *Europe*, but then it is the weakest, all Arms are forgotten, and the *Spaniards* live so securely, that there is neither Gate, nor Wall, Bulwark, Platform, Tower, Armory, Ammunition, or Ordnance, to secure it from a Domestick or a Foreign Enemy, but they rely on the Protection of St. *John de Ulbuack* their Patron St. for all, as Mr. Gage assureth us who saw it. It has however about 15000 Coaches for Pleasure, and a Magazine of Wealth, that will both tempt a Conquerour and reward him too. 2. *Texcuco*, situate on the same Lake, but six Leagues from *Mexico*; heretofore twice as big as *Sevil*; and for the beauty of the Streets, and elegancy of the Houses, not inferiour to any. Served with fresh Water from the Hills, brought in Pipes and Conduits, though seated on the brink of a salt Lake 3. *Quitlavaca*, built wholly in the Lake, like *Venice*, and therefore by the *Spaniards* called *Venezuela*; a City of 2000 Households: the way unto it over a Causey made of Flints, half a League long, and about twenty Spans in breadth. 4. *Uztacpalapa*, half in the Lake, and half without, with many Ponds of fresh Water, and a beautiful Fountain. A City of 10000 Households, six Leagues from *Texcuco*, and two from *Mexico*. 5. *Mixicalzingo*, a Burrough of 4000, and 6. *Cuyocan*, one of 6000 Families; both upon the Lake: beautified in the Times of their Paganism with many Temples, so gorgeously set out to the Eye, that a far off they seemed of Silver; most of them now converted into Monasteries and Religious Houses. 7. *Chulula*, the fairest of all the Lake, scarce excepting *Mexico*, with which it anciently contended both for state and bigness: said to contain 20000 Families, and to be beautified with so many Temples, that their Turrets equalled the number of the days of the year. The People so addicted unto their Idolatries, & so barbarous in their bloody and beastly Sacrifices, that no fewer then 6000 Infants of both Sexes were yearly murdered on their Altars. 8. *Mestiland*, seated on an high Hill, begirt about with most pleasant Groves and shady Woods. A Town of about 30000 Inhabitants, the Villages about the Hill being reckoned in: situate 14 Leagues or two days Journey from *Mexico*, in the way to the Province of *Panuco*, the Highway on both sides set with fruitful Trees, to the great comfort and refreshment of the way-faring Men. 9. *Clantimoleper*, twenty Leagues from *Mestiland*, a Mannor to which 40000 of the Natives do owe Suit and Service. 10. *Antepeque*, on the South of the City of *Mexico*, at the foot of the Mountain *Propopampeche*; a Town belonging to the Marquels of *Valla*, and seated in the most delicious place of all *New Spain*. 11. *Acachicba*, on the North east of *Mexico*, betwixt it and the Gulf, bordering on the Province of *Pepantla*. 12. *Acapulco*, an Haven-Town of the South-sea, situate on a safe & capacious Bay, at the entrance of it a league broad, and in the body of it full of convenient Stations & Docks for shipping: so that it is accounted the safest Haven of all those Seas. At the bottom of it towards the West stands the Town and Castle, the Castle opportunely seated on a little Foreland, both to command the Town and secure the Port: well walled, and fortified with four very strong bulwarks, on which are planted good store of Ordnance; the Garrisons consisting ordinarily of 400 Souldiers: strengthened the rather in regard of the usual intercourse which is betwixt this Port and the *Phillippine* Islands. When an English Man Travelled this Road in 1603. the Town

was not great. The Dutch entered this Port in 1615. 1624. and forced the *Spaniards* to a Composition, *Laet*.

The original Inhabitants of this Country (as far at least as their Records are able to reach) were the *Chichimecas*, now the most rude and barbarous Savages of these parts; together with the *Ottomies*, somewhat more civil than the rest, but yet rude enough. By these possessed till about the year 902, as it is conjectured from their Annals, when vanquished and disseized by some new Comers, whom they called by one Name *Nawatlacos*: issuing, as it is conceived, from those parts of *Gallicia Nova*, which are now called *Nova Mexicana*, Anno 720, or thereabouts, but lingering in their March, and waiting all the Countries as they lay before them. Of these there were seven Tribes in all, i. e. the *Sachimilci*, the *Chalca*, the *Tepaneca*, the *Culva*, the *Tlafluci*, the *Tlascalteca*; all of them settled in these parts, and the five first about the Lake, before the coming in of the seventh Tribe, which was that of the *Mexicans*, so called from *Mexi*, their chief Captain; who much delighted with the situation and conveniences of *Temistlan*, then a ruined Town, caused it to be re-built and beautified by the name of *Mexico*. This Town from that time forwards was reputed the Head City of their Common-wealth; the six Tribes governing in common, or the Chiefs rather of those Tribes in the names of the whole, after an Aristocratical manner. But weary at the last of this equal power, which the prevalency of some Tribes had made very unequal; the *Mexicans* one of the weakest of the Tribes, oppressed by the rest, resolved to separate themselves, and to commit the ordering of their Affairs to a King of their own at first elected by themselves, but afterwards, when once they had conquered most of the other Tribes, the choice was entrusted unto six, one for every Tribe, (the *Tlascalteca*, which was the seventh of their Tribes, and the Founders of *Tlascala*, governing themselves long before as a State apart: Who in their choice had an especial eye on those which were strong and active, and fit for Military employments; the People holding it a commendable meritorious act to kill their King, if once they were reputed Cowards. The Polity and Institutes of this *Mexican* Kingdom I forbear to write of, farther then as they lie before me in way of their Story, digested by the Government and succession of their several Kings, whose names and actions do occur in the following Catalogue of

A. Ch. The Kings of MEXICO.

- | | |
|------|---|
| 1322 | 1. <i>Acamapitzli</i> , Nephew to the Kings of <i>Couliacan</i> , but of the <i>Mexican</i> blood by the Fathers side, elected for the first King; who joyned <i>Couliacan</i> and <i>Tongancan</i> unto his Estate, and settled that Kingdom at his death in the way of election. |
| 1373 | 2. <i>Vizovitzli</i> , Son of <i>Acamapitzli</i> , subdued the Tribe of the <i>Sachimilchi</i> , and others of the neighbouring Nations. |
| 1394 | 3. <i>Huizilbuiel</i> , Son of <i>Vizovitzli</i> , conquered the Tribes of the <i>Chalca</i> and <i>Culva</i> , with many other Nations of the old Inhabitants. |
| 1415 | 4. <i>Chimalpupuca</i> , Son of <i>Huizilbuiel</i> , won the Town of <i>Tequixfuiac</i> , and reduced the rebellious <i>Chalca</i> under his Command. |
| 1425 | 5. <i>Ischoalt</i> , Brother of <i>Huizilbuiel</i> , by the Valour of his Cousin <i>Tlacaellec</i> , freed himself from the yoke of the <i>Tepaneca</i> , to whom the <i>Mexicans</i> had before that been Tributaries, and added their Dominions unto his Estate, conquering all the Nations round about him. After whose death the Electors by a joynt consent chose <i>Tlacaellec</i> for their King |

King, as a man of whole Vertue they had formerly made trial. But he very nobly refused it, saying, that it was more convenient for the Common wealth that another should be King, and that he should execute that which was for the necessity of the State, than to lay the whole burden upon his back: and that without being King, he would not leave to labour for the Publick, as well as if he were. Upon this generous refusal they made choice of *Motecuma* the first.

- 1438 6. *Motecuma*, one of the Brothers of *Chimalpuuca*, brought in the Custom of using no other Sacrifices at their Coronations, but of such Prisoners as the new King should first take in the Wars. By the Valour and good Fortune of *Tlacaelle* he subdued so many of the Nations (whose names I hold unnecessary to be here repeated) that he extended his Estate from one Sea to the other.
- 1467 7. *Axayacaci*, the Nephew of *Isechalt* by his Son *Teco somoliquito*, enlarged his Empire by the Conquest of *Tetentepeque* 200 miles from *Mexico*, to fit himself with Sacrifices for his Coronation; and brought the Lord of *Tlaxcalco*, who rebelled against him, to so hard a freight, that he was forced to break his neck from the top of a Temple.
- 1479 8. *Ticocatzitzi*, the son of *Axayacaci*, added twelve Cities with their Territories to the *Mexican* Empire.
- 1484 9. *Abucosom*, Brother of *Ticocatzitzi*, extended his borders to *Guatemala*, repaired or rebuilt a great part of *Mexico*, and brought thither a Channel of fresh Water.
- 1502 10. *Motecuma II.* Son of *Axayacaci*, before his Coronation conquered 44 Cities. He ordained that no Plebeian should bear any Office in his Court, and in the 18. year of his Reign was subdued by *Cortez*.

As for this *Cortez*, to whom the *Spaniards* stand indebted for the Kingdom of *Mexico*, he was born in *Medelline*, a Town of *Extremadura*, 1485. and in the nineteenth year of his Age imployed himself in the Trade and business of *America*; for the improvement of his Fortunes, Anno 1511. he went as Clerk unto the Treasurer for the Isle of *Cuba*; where he husbanded his affairs so well, by carrying over Kine, Sheep and Mares, and bringing Gold for them in Exchange, that in short time he was able to put in 2000 *Castellans* for his stock, as Partner with *Andrew de Duero*, a wealthy Merchant. Grown richer, he was taken to be a Partner with *James Valesques*, in the Discovery of *Tabasco* and the parts near *Fucutan*, Anno 1518. And now resolved to venture all his stock both of Friends and Money, he furnished himself with eleven Ships, and with 550 Men, set sail from *Spain*, and arrived at the Island of *Acusamil*, (now called *Santa Cruz*) and sailing up the River of *Tabasco*, sacked the Town of *Pontoonchon*, the Inhabitants refusing to sell him Victuals. After this by the help of his Horse and Ordnance, he discomfited 40000 of the naked Savages, gathered together to revenge themselves for the sack of that Town; and received the King thereof in Vassallage to the Crown of *Spain*. Being told that Westward he should meet with some Mines of Gold, he turned his course for the Haven of *S. John de Ulloa*; where landing he was entertained by *Tendilla*, Governour of the Town and Country for the King of *Mexico*: who understanding of his coming, and that he was the Servant of so great an Emperour, (of which *Tendilla* had informed him by special Messengers) sent him many rich Presents both of Gold and Silver. Inflamed at the sight hereof, he resolved to go unto the place where such Treasures were, took possession of the Country in the name of *Charles* the fifth King of

Spain and Emperour of the Indies. He first sent *la Herrera*, but in his Expedition he perished. After this more than 400 Foot, 100 Horse, and six pieces of Ordnance, he pursued his Journey; by private means he understood to be invited to the Town of *Cholula* (a Town of 10000 Inhabitants) to his March kindly received into the Town by the highest Honour, he caused to acknowledge himself a Vassal to *Spain*, and to present him, in the name of a Tribute, with so much Treasure as amounted to 100000 *Castellans* of Gold. A Quarrel growing not long after, *Motecuma*, the Emperour King was by one of his own Subjects killed in a Tumult; and the *Spaniards* driven out of the Town. He aided with the whole Forces of *Tlaxcalm*, and a Recruit of more *Spaniards* (sent thither on a Design against him) he made up an Army of 10000 Savages, 1000 *Spanish* Foot, 80 Horse, 17 pieces of Ordnance; and having with great diligence made ready a Navy of 12 Gallies, and 6000 Canoes or Boats, laid siege unto the City both by Sea and Land. After a Siege of three months the City is taken sacked and burnt August 13. 1521. But afterwards rebuilt more beautifully than it was before. Thus fell this mighty Kingdom into the hand of the *Spaniards*, by the valour and good fortune of *Cortez*, a private Adventure; endowed for that good service by *Charles* the fifth with the Town and Territory of *Tecoatepecque*, in the Province of *Guaxaca*, and many other fair Estates in the Province of *Mexico*, and dignified with the Title of Marquis of *Valia*.

As for the Kings of *Mexico*, they are said to have worn a Crown resembling that which is now used by the Dukes of *Venice*. His Coronation was held with great Pomp, but most bloody Sacrifices. His Revenues thought to be almost infinite, raised out of all Commodities, and paid in kind, whether Natural, or Artificial only: the King participating of the fruits of all mens Labour, and sharing with them in their wealth: some paying in Cups full of powder of Gold, of two handfuls apiece; some Diadems, and Beads of Gold; Plates of Gold of three quarters of a yard long, and four fingers broad; Turquoise-stones, Golden Targets, rich Feather-Pictures, &c. not to say any thing of matters of inferior value. All which in such a wealthy and large Estate, must needs afford him a Revenue equal to the greatest Monarch. And for the encouragement of his Souldiers and Men of War, there were ordained three Orders of Knighthood, (or at least such distinctions of personal merit as had resemblance to such orders:) the first distinguished by a Red Ribband, the second called the *Lion* or *Tiger Knight*, and the third the *Grey Knight*: all privileged amongst other things to be clothed in Cotton, wear Breeches to adorn themselves with Gold and Silver, and to have Vellies gilt or painted; high points, and not permitted unto any else. But it is time that I proceed to the rest of the Provinces.

4. *T L A S C A L A* lieth betwixt *Mexicana* and *Guaxaca*, extended from one Sea to the other. The length hereof from Sea to Sea an hundred leagues; the breadth along the Shores of the Gulf reckoned 80 Leagues, on the South Sea not above eighteen. So called from the abundance of Maize which they make their Bread of; the word in that Language signifying *Locum Panis*, or the Place of Bread, the same with *Bethlehem* in the Hebrew.

The Country is very plentiful both of Corn and Cattel, full of rich Pastures, and wonderfully stored with Maize; Level and Plain, except towards the Sea, where occurreth a large Chain of craggy Mountains. The richer in the fruits of Nature for those fair and pleasant Rivers wherewith it is watered. The principal of which, is *Rio de Grijalva*, so called from *John de Grijalva*, who first discovered it; imployed herein by *James Valesques*, the ad-

vancer of *Cortez*. 2. *Rio de Zempoal*, so called from the Town of *Zempoallan*, about which it riseth. 3. *Zabuate*, which makes it way through the Chain of Mountains before mentioned, and falleth with the former into the Gulf. 4. *Rio di Zacatula*, a River of the longest course in all this Province; rising near *Tlascala*, and falling many leagues off into *Mare del Zur*. The people much of the same nature with those of *Mexico*, though upon jealousies of State their most bitter enemies; of which the *Spaniards* made good use to advance their Conquests on that Kingdom.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Tlascala* it self, which gave name to the Province: in former times governed after the form of a Common-wealth, according to the Democratical Models. Situate in a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, and in the middle of a large, but pleasant Plain, 60 miles in compass. So populous at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, that it contained 300000 Inhabitants, now scarce 50000. It had four Streets, (or rather Quarters) each of them governed by a Captain in time of War: and in the midst a Market place so fair and spacious, that 30000 persons might assemble in it to buy and sell, or for any other business. The Inhabitants of this City, being the ancient Enemies of the *Mexicans*, joyned with *Cortez*, and enabled him to take *Mexico*, and he obtained from *Charles* the V. that they should never pay any Tribute, except to the King of *Spain*; which was a Sheaf of Wheat for every Person, which amounteth to above 13000 Bushels the Year. The *Spaniards* have fixed here a Bishops See, and extended the bounds of the Diocels from Sea to Sea 100 Leagues. This City is a very great Mart of Cattle, Cochineel, and all *Indian* and *Spanish* Merchandise. But the Bishops See in the year 1550, was removed to *Puebla de los Angeles*. 2. *Pueblos de los Angeles*, (the City of Angels) but most commonly *Angelos*: built by *Sebastian Remirez*, Anno 1531. in the way from *Vera Cruz* to the City of *Mexico*, from which last 22 leagues distant. A Bishop's See, and thought to contain in it 1500 Families, in 1555. it consisted of about 600 *Spanish* Families, being seated in a pleasant and a fruitful Soile. 5. *Hackluit* To. 3. p. 453. In 1568. it had 1000 *Spanish* Inhabitants. This City was built by the *Spaniards* after the Conquest of *New Spain*, *ib.* 456. It lies four Leagues North from *Taxala*. *ib.* 3. *Zempoallan*, on the River so named, the Inhabitants whereof did great service to *Ferdinando Cortez*, in his Conquest of *Mexico*. 4. *Napuluca*, of great resort for a Fair of Cattle; and such a kind of Court for ordering the Trade thereof, as we call the *Pie powders*. 5. *Guaxocingo*, a pleasant and well-peopled Town, situate at the foot of the burning Mountain, before mentioned, by the ashes and embers whereof the Fields are many times annoyed. 6. *Segura*, or *Segula de la Frontera*, in the Region of *Tepeac*, built by *Cortez* the next year after the Conquest of *Mexico*, with fair streets and handsom Houses; by whom peopled with *Spaniards*. This Town lies in the Road from *Vera Cruz* to *Mexico*; consisting of about 2000 Inhabitants; part *Spaniards*, part *Indians*. It was called before *Tepeacac*. The Inhabitants being all slain by *Cortez*, for Sacrificing Twelve of his Men, and eating their Flesh. It is plentifully supplied with all necessaries and yields plenty of Grapes; but the *Spaniards* will suffer no Wine to be made, to keep the *Indians* in subjection to *Spain*, *Gage*. *Last*. placeth it *Lat.* 11. 48. 7. *Vera Cruz*, the first Town built in this Country by the said *Cortez*, now a Bishops See: situate near unto the Gulf, and a great Thorough-fare from thence to the City of *Mexico*, from which it is distant about 60 Leagues. Seated upon a Plain, and washed on the South by a River, on the East by the Sea. In 1555. it had about 300 Families, and was only used as a Store-house, for the Goods passing to and fro between *Mexico* and *Spain*. The Air being very unwholesom, and subject to burning Agues, and other Distempers, so that many of the Seamen died here. *Hackluit* T. 3. p. 453. *Vera Cruz*, is the

same with *Villa Rica* 16. p. 455. It is only Inhabited from the end of *August* to the beginning of *April*, for the discharging and loading of the Goods; and then all the Merchants retire to *Xalapa*, or some other more healthful place, so that none of that Nation are delivered in the Town. This has kept it small and poor, though the greatest Wealth passes through it of any place in the World, *Ibid.* 456. 8. *S. John de Ulloa*, the most noted Port of all this Province; tenced with a Peer against the fury both of Winds and Sea; defended naturally by Rocks and Quick-sands lying before it, and by two Bulwarks well fortified and manned on both sides of the entrance. This lyes in the Gulf of *Mexico* in the North *Lat.* of 18. 30. in a small Island, but in an unwholesom Air. The entrance of the Harbour is by three Channels; the best of which lyeth to the North. This Harbour is the best they have, but very much exposed to the violence of the North Wind, so that many Ships perish in it. The *Spaniards* had here no Defence, till *John Hawkins* an *English* Captain took it, upon which in 1572 they built a strong Fort here to preserve the Town. Five Leagues from the North lyes *Vera Cruz*, *Hackluit* T. 2. p. 462. 9. *Medellin*, built by *Cortez*, Anno 1525. and planted with *Spaniards*: so called in memory of a Town of the same name in *Extremadura*, in which he was born: situate on the banks of the River *Almeria*.

The *Tlascalans* were originally one of the seven Tribes which drove the *Chichimeca's* out of their possessions: and either finding no room left for them on the banks of the Lake, or else willing to subsist alone, withdrew themselves from the rest, founded the City of *Tlascala*, and there erected a Democratical Estate. Stomached for this by the other Tribes, and many times invaded by those of *Mexico*, after they had subdued the rest, they still maintained themselves against all Attempts; and in the end assisted *Cortez* in the destruction of that Kingdom they so deadly hated. Priviledged for that reason by the *Spaniards*, and exempted from all kind of Tribute, (except it be a Sheaf of Wheat for every person) and suffered to live under his Protection in the former Government. The Province given us by this name, is said to contain 200 good Towns and Burroughs, 1000 Villages and upwards; and in them 15000 of the Natives, besides *Spanish* Colonies, distributed into 36 Classes or Rural Deanries for Ecclesiastical Government, in which are thought to be 30 Convents and Religious Houses.

5. *GUAXACA*, is bounded on the West with *Tlascala*, on the East with *Jucutan* and *Chiapa*, one of the Provinces of *Guatemala*; on the North, with the Bay of *Mexico*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*. Extended on the South-sea to the length of an hundred miles, but on the Bay to 50 only: in breadth from Sea to Sea, where it bordereth on *Tlascala*, 120 leagues; not above 60 where it confineth on *Chiapa*. So called from *Guaxaca*, once the Chief Town of these parts, now named *Antequera*.

The Air hereof is very sound and sweet, and the Soil as fruitful; plentiful not only of those Commodities which are common with the other Provinces of this Country, but of such quantities of Silks, and store of Mulberries, that if the Natives paid their Tithes as the *Spaniards* do, that very Revenue, would suffice to endow five Bishopricks, as good as that which they have already. Scarce any River of this Country but hath Sands of Gold: such plenty of *Cochineel*, (a rich Grain used in dying Scarlets, of which before) as also of *Cassia*, Gold, Silver, and other Metals; that if the People did but add some industry to the wealth of the Country, they might be the richest men in all *America*. But being naturally slothful, and impatient of labour, they lose all opportunities of gathering riches, and live but from hand to mouth, as we use to say. Docile enough, and so indulgent unto those who take pains to teach them, that here

here are reckoned 120 Convents of *Dominican* Friars, besides other Schools: these last conceived the greater number.

It is subdivided into many particular Provinces, (we may call them *Wapentakes* or *Hundreds*;) as 1. *Misteca*, 2. *Tutopeque*, 3. *Zapoteca*, 4. *Guazacoalco*, 5. *Gueztaxatla*, and the 6. *Vale of Guaxaca*, this last most memorable, in that it gave the Title of *Marquess de Valle* to the famous *Cortez*. It is a Bishops See, fair and beautiful: seated 60 Leagues from *Mexico* to the South in a pleasant Valley. It has no manner of Defence, but is an open Town, like the rest of their Inland Towns. And in 1626. it had about 2000 Inhabitants. The Air is temperate; the Soile very rich; and it enjoys so commodious a Trade, both with the South Sea, and the *Atlantick* Ocean, by the Port of *St. John de Ulbuck*, that no City was then in a more thriving State. Mr. *Gage* who saw this Town in 1626 was so pleased with it, that he would fain have lived here if he might. Towns of most observation, 1. *Tiozopotlan*, once the chief Town of *Zapoteca*; and the seat of their King. 2. *Cuortlavaca*, of great note for a Labyrinth nor far off, hewn out of the Rock, but by whom none knoweth. 3. *Antequer*, in the Valley of *Guaxaca*, a stately City and beautified with a fair Cathedral; as that is with Marble pillars of great height and thicknes. It is 80 Leagues from *Mexico*; which in 1535 was made a Bishops See, under the Arch Bishop of *Mexico*, by Pope *Paul* the III. It stands in the Road that leads from *Chiapa* to *Guatemala*, on a small River that ariseth near *Cimulan*. Once it was inhabited by 500 *Spanish* Families, as *Herrex* said: but *Cbilton* an *English* Man in the year 1570. found not above 50 *Spanish* Families, and the rest *Indians*, *Laet. p. 262.* 4. *S. Iulionso* in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 5. *S. Jago*, in the Valley of *Nexapa*, seated upon a lofty Hill. 6. *Del Spiritu Santo*, distant about three leagues from the shores of the Gulf, in the Province of *Guazacoalco*; the foundation of *Gonsalvo de Sandoval*, Anno 1526. It was built by *Cortez*, in the year 1522. to curb the Barbarous *Indian* Nations in those parts. 7. *Aguatulco*, or *Guatulco*, a noted and convenient Port on the South Sea, much used by those which trade from *Peru* to *Mexico*, and from *Mexico* to any Port of the Southern Seas. By consequence rich, and therefore plundered to the purpose both by *Drake* and *Cavendish*, in their Voyages about the World. This Town lyes upon the *Mar del Zur*; and has a very good Harbour. In the year 1587. it was taken by *Tho. Cavendish* without resistance; though it had then 100 Houses, and burnt down to the Ground, *Lat. 15. 40. North* of the Line. It has a Church and a Custom house, and is one of the most considerable Towns in *New Spain*. 8. *Tacoantepeque*, a Port of the same Sea also, but of far less Note. Burroughs and Villages in all 650. inhabited by 150000 of the Natives liable to Tribute, besides Women and Persons under Age; not reckoning the *Spaniards* in the number.

6. *JUCUTAN*, environed on three parts by the Sea like a Demi-Island, is fastened to the Continent only where it meeteth with *Guaxaca*, the farthest point of it opposite to the Isle of *Cuba*. Discovered first by *Fernandes de Cordova*, imployed therein by *Don Christopher Morante*, Anno 1517. and called *Jucutan*, not as some conceit it, from *Jotlan* the son of *Heber*, who they think came out of the East, where the Scripture placeth him, (*Gen. 10. 30.*) to inhabit here; but from *Jucutan*, which in the Language of the Country signifieth, *What say you?* For when the *Spaniards* at their first coming hither asked the name of the place, the Savages, not understanding what they meant, replied, *Jucutan*, that is, *What say you?* whereupon the *Spaniards* always after called it by this name.

The compass of it, taking the Province of *Tabasco* into the account, is said to be 900 miles, or 300 Leagues.

The Air hot, and the Country destitute of Rivers; not otherwise provided of Water but by Pits and Trenches, which abundantly supply that want. Sufficiently barren, the Soil not bearing Wheat, or any *European* Fruits, nor many of the growth of *America* in other places. Nor have they Mines of Gold or Silver, or any other Metal to enrich the people; who must either live by Trades and Labour or else beg their Bread. Nothing remarkable in the Country, but that here seemed to be some remnants of Christianity at the *Spaniards* first coming hither: the people constantly observing a kind of Baptism, which they call in their own Language a *second birth* expelling by that word a Regeneration; not suffering any one to marry until so initiated. And possible enough it is, that this may be the Country upon which *Madoc ap Owen* fell; who though he might by some good fortune be brought back to *Wales*, yet that he should make any such second Voyage hither as is said in their Chronicles, I by no means grant. There is vast Foundations of Stone buildings; though they have no Iron, nor any other Metals whatsoever. They never contracted Matrimony before they were Baptized, and fasted three days before admitted to it: but they had nothing of Christianity besides this Ceremony, without any Form of words; so that it was nothing but a shadow of Baptism. They have now a plenty of *European* Cattle brought in by the *Spaniards*. Mountains running from East to West divide it into two parts, the North part is very Populous, because better watered, and cold by the *Breezes*; but those that live on the Mountains are most healthful and live longest.

Towns of most observation in it, 1. *Merida*, almost in the Navel of it, situate in the 20 degrees of Latitude, the ordinary seat of the Governour, and the See of a Bishop: distant from the Sea on each side about twelve Leagues; and called thus from a Town of that name in *Spain*, with which it is thought to have some resemblance. 2. *Valladolid*, 30 Leagues from *Merida*, beautified with a most sumptuous Monastery of *Franciscan* Friars. 4. *Campeche*, (or *Francisco*, as the *Spaniards* call it) situate on the Shore of the Gulf. A Town, when first known to the *Spaniards*, of 3000 Houses, and beautified with such Monuments of Art and Industry, as shewed there was somewhat in this People which was not barbarous: since that more observable for being suddenly surpris'd by *Parker*, an *English* Captain, *An. 1596*, who carried away with him the Governour, the wealth of the Town and many Prisoners; besides a great Ship full of Gold, Silver, and other the like precious Commodities, designed for the King of *Spain*'s own use. 4. *Tabasco*, situate in the best part of this Country, so different from all the rest, that it is made by some a distinct Province from it. By the *Spaniards* called *Villa de Nuestra Señora de la Victoria*, most commonly *Victoria* only; and that in memory of the first fortunate Victory which *Cortez* had upon this People, arming themselves against him for the Sacking of *Pontouchan*. *Laet.* bounds it thus, To the East saith he, it hath *Yucatan*, of which it is a district, to the West *Guazacoalco*; to the South the Mountains of *Chiapa*, and *Vera Paz*; and to the North the Gulf of *Mexico*; on this side it is 40 Leagues, and as much from North to South: but it is Triangular and not Square. The Soil is plain and Marshy, full of Lakes and other Rivers, in which are plenty of Fish, and some very large. It has also great Woods. The Air is very moist, and subject for Nine Months to great and frequent Rains, which with the heat generates many Gnats and other troublesome Insects: but then it has plenty of Cattle, Maize, and Coco Nuts, Vines, Figs, and Oranges, Planted here by the Natives, but brought from *Spain*, &c. The Inhabitants were very numerous, but now they are much abated. The *Spaniards* live only in *Tabasco*, which is from *Ciudad Real* 70 Leagues to the East; from *Mexico* 160. to the South East. It stands upon a branch of the River *Orizaba* 8 Fathom deep, iiiiii 2 into

into which many other Rivers and Torrents do fall. 5. *Pontonchan*, sacked by *Cortez*, for denying to supply him with Victuals. 6. *Salamanca*, so called with reference to a Town of that name in *Spain*.

Along the Coast of this Country lie many Islands, viz. 1. *La Zarza*, 2. *Desconocida*, 3. *Triangulus*, 4. *Vermeia*, 5. *Los Negrillos*, 6. *Los Alacranes*; all within the Gulf. Without it, 7. *Zaratan*, 8. *Pantoia*, 9. *Lamany*, 10. *De Mucheres*, or the Isle of Women, 11. *Coxamul*, by some called *Acusamul*. This last the biggest, is 15 Leagues long, 5 broad; and the most remarkable, as being the usual way which the *Spaniards* travelled in their Discoveries of this Country from the Isle of *Cuba*. For here first landed *Ferdinando de Corduba*, An. 1517. who passing over to *Jucutan* (but four Leagues distant) brought back nothing but Stripes. Here the next year arrived *John de Grijalva*, in the same pursuit; who passing by *Jucutan* to the Province of *Guaxaca*, left his name behind him to a River. And finally here landed the most fortunate *Cortez*, who coasting about the Demi-Island, landed near *Tabasco*, and there first handelled his good fortune with a notable victory. Yet neither the Island nor Peninsula were discovered perfectly till the year 1527. when both were subdued by *Francisco de Madeteio* to the Crown of *Spain*. The Island is now called *Sancta Crux*.

The Inhabitants have two Customs, viz. That of Humane Sacrifices, and that of Governing themselves in the Form of a Common wealth or Aristocrasie; which strongly perswade me that they are a *Phœnician* or *Carthaginian* Colony; which is in part Confirmed by their Tradition, that they are *Advene*, and Conquerors of the Province. Their Buildings, Cities, Living, every thing shew they are of a very different Original from the rest of the *Americans*. And it is also reported some Books were found in their Temples, not understood by them, and burnt by the *Spaniards* only for that cause. Now though their Transmigration is pleased too near our times to be of that Nation; yet that may well have happened for want of Chronologie, and Books to preserve the Memory of it, and keep up the true distance of time; the length of the time may also have very much changed their Language, from what it originally was. However, this may be, no man can shew any place on the Globe where Humane Sacrifices, and a Common-wealth has been found, (this excepted) but it is apparent, the *Phœnician* Colonies had been there, and I think no other Reason can be assigned why these had both contrary to the Practices of all the rest of *America* but this.

O F

G U A T I M A L A.

GUATIMALA, is bounded on the North by *Jucutan* and the Gulf of *Honduras*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, (or the South-east rather) with *Castella Area*; on the West, with *New Spain*. Extended 300 Leagues in length, upon the Coast of *Mare del Zur*; but measuring by a strait line, not above 240. the breadth thereof 140 leagues where broadest; in most places narrower. So called from *Guatimala* the chief Province; as that from the prime City of it, honoured with the seat of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice. It yields plenty of Maize, Wheat, Cotton, and Coco-Nuts, which is their principal Merchandize. This Country was Conquered by *Petro Alvaredo* a *Spaniard* in the year 1524, *Laet. p. 332*.

The nature of the Soil and People (if differing in any material thing from those before) we will consider in the View of those several parts into which this Country is divided. The Principal whereof, 1. *Chiapa*, 2. *Verapaz*, 3. *Guatimala*, specially so called, 4. *Honduras*, 5. *Nicaragua*, 6. *Veragua*. The rest of less note easily reduced to these.

1. *CHIAPA* hath on the West *New Spain*; on the East, *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucutan*; and *Mare del Zur* on the South. Extended 40 leagues in length, not much less in breadth; and anciently inhabited by four Nations all of several Languages.

The Soil not very natural for Corn or Fruits, though Pot-hearbs brought from *Spain* thrive well, as do Beans and Lentiles; yet Vines and other richer Fruits seldom come to good. Wood-Vines they have, which yield a very pleasant Pulp, and, if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their Trees most of them greater than in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the Cypress; whole Woods of Walnuts, but the Nut not so big as those of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield Rosin, some such precious

Gums as in other places are not usual; and some there are whose leaves being dried unto a powder, afford a sovereign Plaister for exulcerate Sores. And they have need too often to make use of these Plaisters, the Country being full of Snakes and other venomous Creatures, (some of the Snakes no less than 20 foot in length) whose poison being strong and deadly, doth require such help. Of the People nothing singular that I have met with, but that they are more musical and exact in Painting than the rest of the Natives.

Towns of most note in it, 1. *Ciudad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Country of the *Chiapenser*, at the foot of an Hill; situate in a round Plain, encompassed about with Mountains like an Amphitheatre; afterwards made a Bishops See, and Priviledged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by such City-Magistrates as they call *Alcaldes*. 2. *Chiapa*, in a Vale adjoining; before the building of the others of most note in this Province, yet still before it in regard of its situation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and Maize, than all the rest of the Country. 3. *Tecpatlan*, once the chief of the *Zoaques*, Possessed of 25 Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monastery of *Dominican* Friars. 4. *Capanavatzla*, the principal Town of twenty five which the *Quelenes* held in this Tract; remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the same *Dominicans*. 5. *S. Bartholomew*, another Town in the Territory of the same *Quelenes*; near which is said to be a great Pit, or opening of the Earth, into which if any man cast a stone, though never so little, there presently followeth a loud and fearful noise like a clap of Thunder. 6. *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvarado* when he was Governour of these parts; the Chief Town of a little Province called *Soconusco*. 7. *Casapualca*, a small Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the Fields adjoining, the Waters whereof are noted to rise and fall as the Ocean doth flow or ebb, and at equal distances of time. Of thirteen Townships which the

Zeltules were possessed, I find no one named; though painted all of them, and set forth to the Eye of the Traveller, with *Cochineel*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon the Rarities of Nature, I cannot but take notice (though somewhat out of my Method) of a River by the Spaniards called *Rio Blanco*, which turns Wood to Stones: of a Spring in the *Cantred* of *Tafixa*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry, of another in the same *Cantred*, which for one three years, though it rain never so little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all; and so successively by turns: and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many lesser streams, is swallowed up near a Village of the *Chirapenses*, called *Ostutan*, never after seen. None of them famed for Golden Sands, as are those of *Guaxaca*; though it be thought there be some Veins of Gold and Silver, but hitherto neglected for want of Slaves to work in the Mines.

2. *VERAPAZ*, is bounded on the West with *Chiapa*; on the East with *Guatemala* and *Honduras*; on the North, with *Jucutan*; and on the South, with the Territory of *Scampuco*. In *Latine* called *Provincia Verae Pacis*, by the Spaniards *Verapaz*; because not conquered by the Sword, but won to the obedience of the King of Spain by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friars.

The Country is 30 leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high hills and deep Valleys, but no fruitful Plains; generally overgrown with Woods, very large and thick, which so hinder the free passage of the Wind, and the Air hereof is very showry: insomuch that for nine months in the year they have always rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reason of this moisture much annoyed with *Mosquitos*, a kind of Gnats very injurious to their Fruits, with which otherwise (as with Fish and other necessaries) they were well provided. It has also plenty of Corn and Cattle enough, but no Wheat, Reeds like Trees, and imployed as Timber in building; Flowers, and Bees some of which have no Stings. No Mines of Gold or Silver discovered hitherto, though the Spaniards have many times in vain attempted it. In stead whereof some of their Trees drop a kind of Amber, which they call *Liquid Amber*, some *Mastick*, and some other Gums: they have also many Medicinal Woods, as *Sarsaparilla*, that called *China-Wood*, and many others.

The people tractable and conformable to the Spanish Government, except the *Lecandones* and *Pachutees*, some Remainers of the ancient Savages; who keeping in the Mountains and craggy Rocks of this Country, have hitherto retained both their native Freedom and their old Idolatries. No Towns herein possessed by the Spaniard, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. They are for the most part Christians; and inhabit two third parts of the Country; the rest is left to the Barbarous Nations about them. The *Dominicans* have one Monastery. The Inhabitants are very poor, as wanting Cotton and some other things, and having little or no Trade with any of their Neighbours, *Lact.* The principal of these is *S. Augustines*, not so much memorable in it self, as for the neighbourhood of a Cave betwixt two Mountains from which the Rain descending turns into Alabaster, naturally fashioned into Pillars and other Pourtraitures, into which also many Springs do convey their waters, which there being joyned into a body make a handsome River, able almost at the first appearance to bear a Boat. A Port they also have at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*: but of so little a use and trading, that I find no name for it, unless it should be that *Xetapa* which *Herrera* speaks of, by whom it is placed in *Guatemala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* specially so called, is bounded on the West with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the

River *Xicalpa*, on the East, with *Nicaragua*; on the North, with *Honduras*; and on the South, with *Amacul Zur*, or the *Pacifick* Ocean. Extended 30 leagues from the North to the South, and on the shores of *Amacul Zur* not above seventeen. But reckoning in *Verapaz*, *Chaluteca*, and *S. Saviours*, three adjoining Regions, by some made Provinces distinct, the dimensions of it must be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Country is Mountainous, but withal very full of Rivers, by consequence commodious both for planting and Hunting, Fruitful of Wheat, Maize and other Provisions, but those Fruits not lasting. Not so much subject unto War as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with Wounds. Full of Rich Pastures, and those Pastures of great Herds of Cattle: good store of Cotton wool, some *Balsammum*, and other medicinal Liquors; also of the best Sulphur, and many Apothecaries Drugs, which I have no skill of. The People pusillanimous, and fearful, greater proficients in Christianity and Civility than most of the Savages, but so that it is thought they would relapse again to their ancient Paganism, and revive again their old Customs, if not held in by the brittle opinion of the Power of God. The men assumed to be good Archers, the Women good Spinners.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Guacapa*, a River of a course but of 13 leagues, yet of great depth, and navigable the way, which falleth into the *Mare del Zur*. 2. *Lecap*, watering the Burrough of *S. Saviours*; which hath its rise from a great Lake, and his fall into the *Same Sea*. 3. *Here* is also said to be a Lake near the Village of *Ataquepeque*, of the Waters whereof are made both sulphur and Allum. And here is said to be a *Volcano*, or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited in Fire of late, the matter of it being spent, yet the sad Monuments of his Furies do remain among them: another not far off which still calls out smoke.

Towns of most note, 1. *Guatemala*, or *S. Augustines*, so called by the Spaniard: the chief Town of the Province, situate on a little River betwixt both *Volcanos*, but one of which most terribly wasted Anno 1541, when the Widow of *Alvaredo*, the Conquerour of it perished with many other. But being re-edified, it hath since exceedingly flourished, by reason of the Bishops See, the Residence of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice. In 1570. *Chilton* found here but 60 Spaniards, though *Herrera* saith, there were in his time 600. From the middle of May to that of November, there is no passage by this place to *Mexico*, by reason of the Rain. In 1634. Mr. *Gage* who lived here, saith there was about 5000 Families, besides an *Indian* Suburb, and the Trade very great by both the Oceans and by Land, with *Mexico* and *Guaxaca*, &c. p. 274. *Guatemala* stands 14 Leagues within the Land from the South-Sea, and is very rich by reason of the Gold passing through it from *Veragua*. *Chilton* in *Hackluit*. T. 3. p. 457. 2. *S. Salvador*, 40 leagues Eastwards from *Guatemala*, by the Natives called *Guzculan*; situate on the River *Guacapa*, seven Leagues from the Sea, and neighboured by a great Lake of five leagues compass. From the line towards the North, it is 13. 00; from the South Sea 7 Leagues; the Port being *Acaxutla*. The Fields about it are very Fruitful, and the Air temperate and healthful. *Chilton* found here in 1570. but 60 Spanish Inhabitants, *Lact.* p. 335. 3. *Acaxutla*, at the mouth of the same River, the Port Town to *S. Saviours*. Here all the Ships of *New Spain* come every year to load and unload. 4. *S. Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Samfonate*, the most noted Empory of this Country; the Place of Bartery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain* and those of *Peru*. 5. *S. Alibachi*, two leagues from the Bay of *Fonseca*, which serves unto it for an Haven. 6. *Xeres de la Frontera*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Chalutecan*, (by which it was formerly known) situate on the Frontiers toward's *Nicaragua*, and to the South-east of the

the Bay of *Fonseca*. That Bay so named in honour of *Roderico Fonseca*, Bishop of *Bruges*, and President of the Council for the *Indies*, Anno 1532. by *Giles Gonfales de Avila*, who first discovered it. About and in this Bay are ten little Islands, four of them inhabited, and plentifully furnished with Wood, Water and Salt.

4. *HONDURA* hath on the South *Guatemala*, specially so called; on the West, the Bay, or Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*; on the North and East, the Sea called *Mare del Noordt*: on the South-east, *Nicaragua*; on the South, *Guatemala* specially so called. In length from East to West by the banks of that Sea 150 leagues, and about 80 leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Fonduras*, imposed upon it from the depth of the Sea about the principal Head land of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Country is either Hills or Valleys, little Champain in it; fruitful of Maize and Wheat, and of very rich Pasturage; made so by the constant overflowings of their Rivers about *Michalemas*, which do not only soil their Grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them, 1. *Hungara*, 2. *Chamalucon*, 3. *Ulna*; all neighbouring by fertile Fields & pleasant meadows. Some Mines of Gold and Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet discovered; the people being so slothful and given to idleness, that they rather live on Roots, than take pains in tilling of their Land; and therefore not easily entreated to toil for others, but where necessity and a strong hand do compel them to it. The Inhabitants are thin, the *Spaniards* destroying in a few years, at least two Millions of People, as *Barthol de las Casas* informed *Charles* the 5th.

Towns of most note, 1. *Valladolid*, by the Natives called *Commyagna*, 40 leagues distant from the Sea, situate in a pleasant and fruitful Valley, on the banks of the River *Chamalucon*; and honoured with a Bishops See, fixed here about the year 1558 but built near the place where once *Francisco de Montez*, Governour of this Province, had planted a Colony of *Spaniards*, Anno 1530, or as others 1539, by the name of *S. Maria de Commyagna*. And in 1558 the Bishops See was removed thither from *Truxillo*. The Inhabitants have endeavoured to turn the Current of the Trade of *Lima* in *Peru*, from *Panama* to this Place, as shorter, safer, and more healthful than the former; however this Town stands in the shortest cut between the Ports of *Fonseca* on the *Mar del Zur*, and that of *Cavallos*, on the Bay of *Mexico*, between which there is but 53 Leagues, yet at last there were other difficulties that could not be removed, that prevented the design. 2. *Gracios de Dios*, 30 leagues Westward of *Valladolid*, built by *Gabriel de Rojas*, Anno 1530. to be a place of defence for those who worked in the Mines against the Savages. But finding himself unable to make it good he defaced and left it. Re-edified again in (1536) by *Gonsalvo de Alveredo*, and since well inhabited. 3. *S. Peters*, eleven leagues distant from the Port of *Cavallos*, but seated in a most healthy Air; and therefore made the dwelling-place of the Farmers of the Kings Customs, who have their houses in this Town, and follow their business in the other, as occasion is. 4. *Porto de Cavallos*, so called from some Horses thrown overboard in a violent Tempest: the most noted Haven of these parts, and strong by natural situation, but so ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591. it was pillaged by Captain *Christopher Newport*, Anno 1596. by Sir *Anthony Sberley*. Deserted on those spoils, and not since inhabited. 5. *S. Thomas de Castille*, 11 leagues from *Cavallos*, naturally strong and fortified according to the Rules of Art; to which, as to a place of more strength and safety, *Alphonso Briado de Castilla*, President of the Sessions of *Guatemala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallos*. 6. *Truxillo*, seated on the rising of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, (one of them that which is called *Haguara*) distant from *Cavallos*. 40

leagues to the East and 60 leagues to the North of *Valladolid*; surprized and pillaged by the *English*, Anno 1576. Not far hence towards the North-east lieth the Cape of *Honduras*, from hence the shore drawing inwards till it joyn with *Jucutan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay, called the Gulf of *Honduras*. 7. *S. George de Olanco*, so named from the Valley *Olancho*, in which it is seated; a Valley noted heretofore for some Golden Sands, which *Guajape*, a River of it, was then said to yield.

5. *NICARAGUA* is bounded on the North with *Honduras*; on the East with *Mur del Noordt* and the Province of *Veragua*; on the South, with *Mur del Zur*; on the West, with *Guatemala*. By *Didaco Lopez de Salfedo*, who first subdued it, it was called the *New Kingdom of Leon*; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither would not be so lost. It extends from East to West 50 Leagues, from North to South 80.

The Country is destitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua*, called *Costa Rica*, reckoned a Province of itself. The want hereof is supplied by a great Lake, or a little Sea, called the *Lake of Nicaragua*, 120 Leagues in compass, ebbing and flowing like the Sea; upon the Banks of which stands many pleasant Villages and single Houses. A Lake well stored with Fish, but as full of Crocodiles: and having made its way by a mighty Cataract, emptieth it self into the Sea about four Leagues off. Not very rich in Corn (most of which is brought thence from *Peru*) but well stored with Cattle: level and plain, and shadowed with frequent Trees; one amongst others of that nature that a man cannot touch any part of it, but it withereth presently. Affirmed to be as full of Parrots as *England* of Crows; stored with great plenty of Cotton Wool, and abundance of Sugar Canes. In a word so pleasing generally to the eye, that the *Spaniards* call it by the name of *Mabomet's Paradise*.

The People for the most part speak the *Spanish* Tongue, and willingly conform themselves to the *Spanish* Garb, both of behaviour and apparel: well weaned from their old barbarous Customs, retained only by some Mountaineers, whom they call *Chontales*. All of good Stature, and of Colour indifferent white. They had before they received Christianity a settled and politick form of Government. Only as *Solon* appointed no Law for a man's killing of his Father, so had this people none for the killer of a King; both of them conceiving that men were not so unnatural as to commit such Crimes. A Thief they judge not to death, but adjudged him to be a Slave to that man whom he had robbed, till by his Service he made satisfaction. A course more merciful and not less just than the loss of Life. Considering the want of Men, we now have, and the great Depopulation of our Country, by our Plantations and Wars, more necessary to be put in Practice by us than by our Ancestors, who saw the *English* Nation over Peopled, when they settled those Laws which we now practice, in a quite different state of things. But if it be thought inconvenient to retain them in *England*, let Transportation to the *West-Indies*, Abjuration, &c. be the Judgment, and not Death, till they be taken in the same Fact after Transportation.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, situate on the Lake aforesaid, the Residence of the Governour, and the Bishop's See; built in Sandy Soil, and begirt with Woods. Here resides the Governour of the Province; in which are about 12000 *Indians*, who pay a yearly Tribute to the *Spaniards*. The North east is a burning Mountain, which continually throweth up burnt Stones and Sulphur. It was once thought very convenient for Managing the Trade between *Peru*, and *Europe*, by means of the Lake, and a River which falls into the Bay of *Hondura* as *St. Juan*, from which it stands but 70 Leagues to the West. This City (saith Mr. *Gage* who saw it in 1637) is very curiously built: The chief delight of the Inhabitants, consisting in their

their fine Houses, and in the abundance of all things for the Life of Man, more than in Riches, which are more plentiful in the other parts of *America*. 2. *Granada*, on the same Lake, sixteen Leagues from *Leon*; beautified with a fair Church and strong Castles, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordova*; the City seated in a liberal and wealthy Soil, well furnished with Sugar-Canes; for the refining of which here are many Work-houses, which they call *Ingenio's*. 3. *Segovia*, distant from the former about 30 Leagues, rich in Veins of Silver. 4. *Jane*, (all called according to the names of some Towns in *Spain*) situate at the end of the Lake aforesaid; from whence by a long and narrow Channel, it disembogueth into the Sea near the Port of *S. John*. 5. *Realio*, about a league distant from the Port of *Possession*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees and 40 minutes; inhabited for the most part by Shipwrights and Mariners. 6. *Nicoia*, giving name to a little Territory, within the bounds whereof standeth, 7. *Avarines* also. 8. *Cartago*, 40 Leagues from *Nicoia*, equally distant from both Seas, each of which hath a convenient Port: this Town is the Principal of that part which is called *Costa Rica*. Mr. Gage placeth it twenty Leagues from each Sea. In 1637 he found here many rich Merchants, and about 400 *Spanish* Families, two Abbies, 1. Nunnery, and a Bishop's See. The City was indeed small, but in a growing condition, it having a good trade with *Panama*, and *Porto Bello*. The City as he observed was seldom mentioned by the *Spanish* Writers, Page 426.

6. *VERAGUA* hath on the West *Costa Rica*; on the East; bounded with the District of *Panama*; washed on both the other sides by the Sea; extended 50 Leagues in length from West to East; not above 25, where narrowest, from one Sea to the other. It is the most Eastern Province in the Circuit of *Guatemala*, having on the North the Bay of *Mexico*, and on the South, the South Sea. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of greatest note in it at the first Discovery.

The Soil hereof is Mountainous and exceeding Barren, not fit for Tillage, and less useful in feeding Cattle; sufficiently provided of Maize and Pot-herbs, but else of little necessary for the Life of man, unless the People could eat Silver, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Metals, but especially of Gold, here are such never-perishing Mines, that the *Spaniards* think them able to supply all Wants, and cure all Diseases. Once being asked what made them so greedy of that Metal, it was answered, *That they were much troubled with Grief of Heart, for which Gold was a most sovereign Medicine*. And as the Country, such the People, hardy, courageous, and warlike, and such as bear the *Spanish* Yoke with great impatience: the stoutest and most untamable People being bred most commonly in Mountains and woody Countreys. *Christopher Columbus* discovered this Province in the Year 1502; when the Inhabitants gave the *Spaniards* the value of 90 Marks in Gold for 36 Brass Bells, and said there was much Gold in the next Province: which simplicity of theirs, was the occasion of a much greater Calamity, than their Ignorant bargain for those Bells; but that the Christianity the *Spaniards* brought thither, will make good all their Temporal Losses.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1. *Veragua* which gives name unto it. 2. *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Yebra*; at the mouth of which *Columbus* purposed to have settled a *Spanish* Colony, for the better transporting of his Gold. But finding that the Channel, on the ceasing of some Rain which had fallen before, was become so shallow, that no Ship could go in or out he gave over that purpose. 3. *La Trinidad*. 4. *La Concepcion*; all falling into *Mare del Noordt*. Their Chief Towns, 1. *Concepcion*, upon the mouth of that River, the Seat of the Governour. 2. *La Trinidad*, on the Banks of that River near the Port of *Belen*, and six Leagues Eastwards of *La Concepcion*. 3. *S. Poy*, (*Oppidum S. Pidei*) twelve Leagues from *Concepcion* on the South; where the *Spaniards* melt and cast their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, not far from the Shores of *Mare del Sur*. 5. *Philippina*, on the West of *Carlos*. Each seated on a large and capacious Bay. Before which Bay lie a Frie of Islands, which the *Spaniards* call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongst them. Thirty in all; the principal, *Zebaco*, *Cabaio*, *S. Marie*, *S. Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented; the people being dragged into the continent to work in the Mines.

This Country oweth its first discovery unto divers men, according to the several members and divisions of it. The last in order being the first that was discovered, but the last that was conquered had the honour to be visited by *Columbus* himself. Who driving up and down these Coasts in the year 1502, hit on the entrances of the River, which afterwards he caused to be called *Belen*, where, hearing that there was plenty of Gold in the Mines of *Hurira* not far off, he intended to fortifie. But the River failing him, as was said before, and finding nothing fit to sustain his men; he bent himself, though unwilling, to a farther search. He had before touched upon *Honduras* also, but I find not that he Landed on it: the settling of these Countreys being destinated to another hand. Twenty years after this the most fortunate *Cortez*, having fully quieted and composed the affairs of *Mexico*, resolved to make his Master Lord of the rest of *America*; and to that end sent out his Officers and Commanders into several Parts. By *Pedro de Alvarado* he subdued *Guatemala*; *Hondura*, by *Christopher de Olid*; *Veragua* and *Nicaragua* by *Gonzales de Cordoba*. But fearing lest the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he resolved to visit them in Person. Attended by a choice Band of 150 Horse, and as many Foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his journey in October 1524, and held on his Progress as far as to *Truxillo*; where finding that *Gonzales de Cordoba* had so plaid his Game, as there was no necessity of going farther, he made a stand, having marched above 400 leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in April 1526, he came home to *Mexico*: with whose return we conclude also our Survey of the Northern *Peninsula*, containing all *America Septentrionalis*, or *Mexicana*.

And so much for *MEXICANA*.

O F P E R U A N A

PERUANA, the other of the two great *Peninsula's*, into which the vast Continent of the *NEW WORLD* doth now stand divided, hath the form of a *Pyramis* reversed; more answerable thereunto than *Africk*, though that be so resembled. Joyned to the other by a strait and narrow *Isthmus*, called the *Streights of Darien*, whereof we shall have opportunity to speak more anon: which looks but like a Stone mislaid in so great a Building; or the first step by which we are to climb the top as in other *Pyramids*.

The name is derived from *Puru*, the chief Province of it: the Circumnavigation said to be 1700. miles. Nothing else to be said in the general, but what will serve more fitly for particular Places; except it be the description of some prime Mountains and Principal Rivers, which being of two long a course to be reckoned unto any one Particular Province, may more properly deserve place here. Of these chief are, 1. *Orellana*, or the River of *Amazons*: called by the first name from *Francisco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard*, who first discovered it; in the year 1541. by the second, from the *Amazons*, a kind of stout and warlike Women who are said to have inhabited on the Banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Peru*, the fall of the North Sea, or *Mare del Noords*. A River of so long a course, that the said *Orellana* is reported to have sailed in it 5000 miles, the several windings and turnings of it being reckoned in: and of so violent a Current, that it is said to keep its natural taste and Colour above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea; the Channel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accounted 60 leagues from one Point to the other. It is one of the biggest Rivers of the World, and riseth near *Quitum* a City of *Peru*, out of two Marshes, which lye within two Leagues of each other at the foot of the Mountains of *Cordillera*; then running to the East, and being augmented by the streams of *Coca Napo*, and others, it passeth the Province of *Canela* and *Pacamor*, where it receives the River *Xauxa*, or *Marania*, so passing many other Provinces: after a Course of 1200 Leagues, it falls in the North Ocean between *Brasile* and *Gutana*. The Mouth of it is very large, being 80 Leagues over, and full of Islands. *Peter Texeira*, a *Spaniard* has made a very exact description of it, having in the year 1639 spent 10 Months in Surveying it. This relation was Translated into *French*, in the year 1682. and Printed at *Paris*. The *Spaniards* being then possessed of *Brasile*, and having heard that the Head of this River was in *Peru*. They designed by this River to transport their Rich Cargo's of Plate from that Kingdom to *Para* in *Brasile*, whereby they might be better secured from the *Holland* and *English* Ships. The first discovery was by *Pizaro* and *Oralan* in 1539. the latter of which was lost in the expedition, as was *P. Orfua* in 1561. in the same Attempt, and two *Jesuits* in 1606. In 1634 *Caello* Governour of *Para* failed in the Design; but two Monks came down from *Quito*, a Province of *Peru* to *Brasile*, which occasioned this Discovery. The Governour of *Brasile* sending *Tixeria*, after this with an Army up the River in Boats, which in one year arrived at *Quito*, and returned in another. This River runs from West to East 1356 *Spanish* Leagues. It is never above 5 Degrees from the Line to the South, for 600

Leagues, it is 30 or 40 Leagues over: abounding with Fish, and Fruitful Countries on its Banks. The Air is more Temperate and healthful than *Peru*, by reason of the high and Snowy Hills; and it has plenty of Trees for building; and it passeth by 150 Nations, in about 4000 Leagues. By the *Indians* this great River is called *Tobo* and *Para*, as indeed they call all Rivers, Lakes, and Seas, by the Last Name; by the *Spaniards*, *Ias Amazonas*, *Orellana*, and by mistake *Oronoque*. They all agree the outlet is very great, 50 or 60 Leagues over. It is very swift and rowls down a vast quantity of Water to the Ocean, so that it makes it fresh many Leagues from the Land. My Author says, the Principal Outlet is known both to the *Dutch* and *English*, who have frequented it on the account of the Trade with the Natives; but then they Industriously conceal it: And that he met with an *English* Man, who said he had been 300 Miles up this River, and had at last fallen into a vast Lake, the Waters of which were very Green, and not Potable; and also met one *Indian* Town of 300 Houses, and about 1000 Souls, *Laet. Liber 17. ch. 3.* This great Lake seems to me *Parima*. In the year 1598. the *Dutch* being Prohibited all Trade with the *Spanish* Dominions, began to trade to the parts of *America* washed by this River. They fell this first year into that Branch of this River, which was afterwards planted by the *Portuguese*, and called *Para*. In the following Years the *Zea-landers* viewed this River, and built two Forts upon it, which they call *Nassaw* and *Orange*, the first 20 Miles from the Continent, in a River Island, and 80 from the Mouth of the River; and the second 7 Miles lower. The *English* and *Irish*, did the like about the same time; but all these Colonies were destroyed by that of *Para*, *ib. p. 634.* 2. *Oronoque*, Navigable 1000 miles by Ships of burthen, and 2000 miles by Boats and Pinnaces. Having received into it an Hundred Rivers, it openeth into the same Sea with 16 mouths, which part the Earth into many Islands, (some equal to the Isle of *Weigh*;) the most remote of those Channels 300 miles distant from one another. By some it is called *Raltana*, from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the Discovery and Description of it; or rather in discovering it so far as to be able to describe it. *Oronoque*, this River is called also *Vyapari*, and Springs from the East side of the Mountains of *Popayan* or *New-Granada*, and entreth the Ocean over against the Island of *St. Trinida*, yet is confounded with *Meragnan*, *Laet. p. 608.* This Noble River was in all probability discovered by *Columbus* in his third Expedition in 1498. In 1499 by *Vespicius Americus*, and in 1500 by *Pinzonius*, but none of these entered and searched it, till *Dilaco de Ordes*, in 1531 obtained a Commission from *Charles* the V. to Conquer this part of South *America*; he entered the River, but was soon oppressed with want of Provisions: yet he Wintered here and endeavoured (but without success) to fix a Colony, for he was Defected by all his Souldiers. The most Southern Outlet is a 100 Leagues from the most Northern, and altogether make 300 *English* Miles; so that it is much greater than that of the *Amazons*. 3. *Maragnon*, of a longer course than any of the other, affirmed to measure at the least 6000 miles from his first rising to his fall; and at his fall into the Sea to be less than 70 leagues from one side to the other. More properly

perly to be called a Sea, than many of those great Lakes, or largest Bays, which usually enjoy that name. *Maragan, Maranon, Marabanon*, is a River of *Brasil* in the South Latit. 2. 30. by which it must be by the River *Amazons*, the same name is given to *Orenoque*; both which are already described, and to *la Plata*, which followeth. *Abevil* a French man in 1612. published an Account of this part of *Brasil*; in which he saith, there is an Island 25 Miles over in the mouth of this River. In the Bay made by this River and Island, there fall three fine Rivers, *Mounin, Toboucour, Miaru*. These Rivers are very great and rapid, and the Sands also on the East side of the River considered, it is of difficult Access. It has upon it 27 Villages, each consisting of 235. or six hundred *Indians*. The Air upon it is Serene, and neither subject to too much heat or cold. When the Sun returneth from the Winter Solstices, it raineth here 40 days, which is their Winter; and in the Summer, the Eastern Brizes blow from Sun rising to Sun setting, and are most strong at Noon. The Country about it has Plenty of Springs, and is so fertile, that tho it is never sowed nor helped, yet it brings forth plenty of Maze. The Merchandize to be met with upon this River are *Saffron, Cotton, Balsum, Tobacco, Pepper, Dying-stuff, Sugar* might be had here too if it were planted. *Laet. pag. 620. from Abevil.* 4. *Rio de la Plata*, a River of a less course than the other, but equal unto most in the World besides: In length from its first Fountain 2000 miles, in breadth at his fall into the Sea about 60 leagues; and of so violent a Stream, that the Sea for many leagues together altereth not the taste of it. All these, as they do end their race in the *Atlantick*, so they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at least some spur or branch of that body. The *Americans* call this River *Paranaguazu*, by the *English* and *French* the River of *Plate*. It riseth in *Paragua*, above the Lake *de Los Xirates*, and running a Vast Course to the South, and separating *Paragua* from *Chaco* beneath the City *de Buenos Ayres*. It entereth the Sea of *Paraguay* by a Mouth of Sixty *English* Miles in Breadth, or 40 *Spanish* Leagues; this River was first discovered by *Sebastian Cabot*, sent to that end by *Ferdinand King* of *Arragon*; And he it was that first gave it the name of *Rio de la Plata*, in which he sailed six Score Leagues. *Hucklutt T. 3. p. 9. c. 7.* After *Cabot* the next discoverer was *John Diaz*, a *Portuguese* in 1513. or as some say, 1515. he Perishing by the treachery of the Inhabitants upon it. In 1526. *John Cabots* Expedition is placed. In 1527. that of *Didacus Carcias* who found *Cabot* still here.

In 1535. *Petro Mendoza* was sent of purpose to discover it more thoroughly with 800 men in 11 Ships, and he built *Buenos Ayres* upon it. In 1540. *Arvares Nunez*, perfected the Discovery of it. The mouth is 32 *Spanish* Leagues over, and within it is 10 Leagues.

But before we venture farther on more particulars, we are to tell you of these *Andes*, that they are the greatest and most noted Mountains of all *America*; beginning at *Timama*, a Town of *Popayan*, in the new Realm of *Granada*, and thence extends Southwards to the Streights of *Magellan* for the space of a 1000 leagues and upwards. In breadth about 20 leagues, where they are at the narrowest; and of so vast an height withal, that they are said to be higher than the *Alps*, or the head of *Caucasus*, or any of the most noted Mountains in other parts of the World. They are much of the same height, and are seldom above 20, 30, or 40 Leagues from the *Pacific Ocean*. There are many of them which burn perpetually towards *Chili*. Not easie of ascent, but in certain Parts, by reason of the thick and unpassable Woods, with which covered in all parts thereof, which lie towards *Peru* (for how it is on the other side, or by what People it is neighbored, is not yet discovered:) barren and cragged too withal, but so full of venomous Beasts and Poisonous Serpents, that they are said to have destroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Peru*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a People as rude and savage as the place, and as little hospitable. The most noted Mountain of *America*, as before was said, and indeed the greatest of the World. Of same sufficient of themselves, not to be greatened by the addition of impossible Fictions, or improbable Fictions. Amongst which last I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius*, a right learned man, who will have these Mountains to be that which the *Scripture* called by the name of *Sephar*, *Gen. 10. 30.* and there affirmed to be the utmost East or limit of the Sons of *Jockton*: the vanity and inconsequences of which strange conceit we have already noted when we were in *India*, *Laet. p. 483.*

Proceed we now unto the particular Descriptions of this great *Peninsula*, comprehending those large and wealthy Countries which are known to us by the names of 1. *Castella Aurea*. 2. The New Realm of *Granada*. 3. *Peru*. 4. *Chile*. 5. *Paraguay*. 6. *Brasil*. 7. *Guiana*; and 8. *Paria*, with their several Islands. Such other Isles as fall not properly and naturally under the name of these, must be referred unto the general Head of the *American* Islands, in the close of all.

OF

CASTELLA del ORO.

CASTELLA del ORO, Golden Castile, (*Aurea Castella*, as the *Latines*) is bounded on the East and North with *Mare del Noordt*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, and some part of *Veragua*; on the South, with the new Realm of *Granada*. Called by the name of *Castile*, with reference to *Castile* in *Spain*, under the Favour and good fortune of the Kings whereof it was first discovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for distinction sake, and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the first discoverers found in it. It is also called *Terra Firma*, because one of the first parts of *Firm Land* which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before discovered nothing but some Islands only.

The Soil and People being of such several Tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will consider both apart in the several Provinces of, 1. *Panama*. 2. *Darien*. 3. *Nova Andalusia*. 4. *S. Martha*, and 5. the little Province *De la Hacha*.

1. *PANAMA*, or the District of *Panama*, is bounded on the East with the Gulf of *Uraba* or *Darien*, by which parted from the Land of this large *Peninsula*; on the West, with *Veragua*, one of the Provinces of *Guatemala* in *Mexicana*; washed on both the other sides with the Sea. So called of *Panama*, the Town of most esteem herein, and the Juridical resort of *Castilla Aurea*.

It taketh up the narrowest part of the Streight or *Isthmus*, which joyns both *Peninsula's* together: not above

7 or 8 leagues over in the narrowest place, betwixt *Panama* and *Porto bello*, if measured by a straight line from one Town to the other ; though 18 leagues according to the course of the Road betwixt them, which by reason of the Hills and Rivers is full of turnings. Of some attempts to dig a Channel through this *Isthmus* to let one Sea into the other, and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by Land, we have spoken already.

The Air hereof is foggy, but exceeding hot, and consequently very unhealthy, chiefly from *May* unto *November* : the Soil either Mountainous and barren, or low and miry ; naturally so unfit for Grain, that it yeildeth nothing but maize, and that but sparingly ; better for Pasturage, in regard of its Plenty of Grass, and the goodness of it : so full of Swine at the *Spaniards* first coming hither, that they thought they never should destroy them ; now they complain as much of their want, or paucity. As for the Inhabitants, whatsoever they were formerly is not now material ; most of the old stock are rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their room ; so that the Country in all parts, except towards the Sea, is almost desolated or forsaken.

The Country, as before was said, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers ; the principal whereof, 1. *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Legatos*, or the River of Crocodiles, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Noort*, betwixt *Nombre de Dios* and *Porto Bello*. This River lies between the South and North of *America*, upon which the Merchandies bound for *Panama* and *Peru* do pass, so far as is Navigable. 2. *Sardinilla*. 3. *Sardina*. 4. *Rio de Colubros*, or the River of Snakes, and 5. *Rio de Comagre* ; all falling into the same Sea. Then on the other side. 6. *Ghepo*, whose Sand in former times yielded plenty of Gold. 7. *Rio de las Balsas*, on the Banks whereof groweth great store of Timber for the building of Ships. 8. *De Congos*, emptying it self into the Bay of Saint Michael.

Towns of most note, 1. *S. Philip*, seated on a safe and strong Haven, called *Porto bello* : built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the second, but by the Counsel of *John Baptista Antonelli*, to be the Staple of the Trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama* ; partly in regard of the unhealthiness of *Nombre de Dios*, where it was before, but chiefly, because that Town was found to have lain too open to the Invasions of the *English*. Fortified with two strong Castles ; (on each side of the Haven one ;) but for all that surprized and pillaged by the *English* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. This City was also since taken and plundered by the *Buccaniers*. It lyes five Leagues from *Nombre de Dios* to the W. Lat 9.20. The Harbour is Large and very good, having good Anchoring and fresh water 6 Fathoms near the shore, and 12 in the middle. There falls into the Sea here 12 Small Rivers or Brooks of water. There is about it plenty of Timber and of stones to ballast the ships with. Within this Harbour is a Small Creek safe from all winds, 500 yards Square, and 4 fathom one Quarter Deep. A Ship may go out with any wind but a Western, which doth seldom blow. To the South it has a good Scituation, for a City well watered and encompassed with ground fit for Tillage. This Account was given (by *Baptista*) to the King of *Spain*, Anno 1587. Hackl. T. 3. p. 552, 553. *Nombre de Dios*, conveniently seated in the upper Sea for a Town of Trade ; and for that Reason made the Staple of such Commodities as were trucked betwixt *Peru* and *Spain*, which brought from *Spain*, and landed here, were from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there shipped for *Peru* ; or brought from *Peru*, and landed at *Panama*, were by Land brought unto this place, and here shipped for *Spain*. It took this name by *Didaco Niquisa*, a *Spanish* Adventurer, who having been distressed by Tempests was driven in here, and bid his men go on shore in *Nombre de Dios* in the name of God. *Nombre de Dios* was taken first by Sir *Francis Drake* in 1572. It was after this neglected and not much regarded, *Baptista Antonio* finding but 30 Houses when

he came to Survey it : The badness of the Air and Port, and Water, and Situation, all conspiring to the Demolishing of it, *Gage's Travels* page 170, 180. In reference hereunto by the *Latines*, borrowing a *Greek* word it is called *Theonyma*. Of great Trade once on the occasion before mentioned : but in the year 1614. the Trade was removed unto *Porto Bello*, by the counsel of *Antonelli* before named ; and some years after that, the Inhabitants also. To hasten which, the taking of this Town by Sir *Francis Drake* served exceeding fitly, who took it in his Second Voyage into *America*, in the year 1572, and plundered it. It was in part neglected afterwards, and in the year 1614. the King of *Spain* ordered it to be pulled down, and the Town of *Porto Bello* to be built with the same Timber ; which was accordingly performed by *Peter Arias*, *Gage's Travels* p. 170. 180. It is Seated in an unhealthful Marshy Ground, the Harbour bad, and the water not good, being Subject to the Violence of the North and East Wind, the Haven Fleet unsafe, and exceeding troublesome, and the way to *Panama* very bad. Hackl. T. 3. p. 551. Before the Town was half built, the *English* took *Nombre de Dios*, and destroyed it in 1601. in Sir *Francis Drake's* last Expedition, in which he died near this City, *Gage's*, p. 170. Laet. p. 153. The former of these observed the Haven to be very strong, having two Castles at the Mouth, and one in the bottom. 3. *Acla*, on the Coast of the same Sea also, but on the South-east of *Nombre de Dios*. 4. *Nata*, or *S. Fago de Nata*, situate on the lower Sea, on the Borders of *Veragua*, about 30 leagues on the West of *Panama*. 5. *Panama*, the chief City of *Castella Aurea*, the Residence of the Governour and the Courts of Justice, honoured with a Bishops See, a Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lima*, and beautified with three fair Monasteries, and a Colledge of *Jesuits*, Seated in the 9. degree of Northern Latitude ; and so near the Sea, that the waves come close unto the Wall. A Town through which the Wealth of *Spain* and *Peru* passed every year ; yet not containing above 350 Houses : the number of the Souldiers greater than that of the Citizens. It was built by *Petrus Arto* for the reception of the effects brought from *Peru*, as *Nombre de Dios* was on the opposite side of the *Isthmus*, for those brought from *Spain*. It was honoured with the Birth-day of a Modern Saint, *Rose of Panama*, whose Sanctity was so conspicuous, that the Gnats and Flies in her Cell observed and revered it, as Father *Oliva*, the late General of the *Jesuits*, informs us in her Life. But alas ! This Saint has not been able to protect the Town from another sort of Flies, for *January* 25. 1671. it was plundered by the *French*, and in 1686. by Captain *Lawrence* a *Buccaneer*. This city is Govern'd by a President and Six Judges, and a Court of Chancery. It hath more Strength towards the Sea than any other Port I had seen, having Ordinance Planted for its Defence, but the Houses and Churches are built of Timber and Boards for want of Stone and Lime. The heat here is extraordinary great, Fish, Fruits, and Herbage for Sallads, is more plentiful than Flesh. The *Spaniards* are very Loose and Libidinous. The *Moors* being the objects of their Lust, and by it made very rich and Gallant. It is held to be one of the Richest Places in *America*, having by Land and the River *Chagre*, Commerce with the No. Sea, and by the Sou. Sea Trading with *Peru*, *East India*, *Mexico* and *Honduras*. It consisteth of about 5000 Inhabitants, and has 8 Monasteries. Every Ebb the Sea falls from it 2 or 3 miles, but leaves a stinking Mud behind it, which makes the Air unhealthful, *Gage's Travels* 80. p. 442. It has 5000 Inhabitants and eight Monasteries. 6. *S. Cruix la Real*, a League from *Panama*, inhabited totally by *Negroes*, brought out of *Guinea*.

This Province was the first of those on the Firm Land which were discovered by *Columbus*. But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Island lying on the Shore near

Porto

Porto bello, which he caused to be called *Los Bastimentos*; because being cast hereon by chance, he found good store of Maiz and other Provisions, called *Bastimentos* by the *Spaniard*. But the chief Islands of this Province are those which *Columbus* never saw, called the *Islands of Pearls*, situate in the Southern Sea, opposite to *Panama*, from which distant 17 leagues, or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called *Tarorequi*, the other *Del Rio*; the rest of them rather Rocks than Islands. Much famed not only for the abundance, but the excellency of the Pearls there found; fairer than those of *Margarita* and *Cubagua*, so much commended. Once very profitable to the *Spaniards*, till by their cruelty and coverousness they unpeopled the Islands, and destroyed the Pearls. Inhabited now only by a few *Negroes*, and some Slaves of *Nicaragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Masters Cattle in the Fields and Pastures.

2. *DARIEN* hath on the North the district of *Panama*; on the South, *New Granada*; on the East, the River of *Darien*, whence it hath its name, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; and on the West, the main Southern Ocean.

The Country is of a temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil: so happy in the production of Melons, and such other Fruits, that within twenty days after they are sown they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth Grapes and other Fruits; either Natural hereunto, or brought either from *Enrope*. A Tree here is called *Hovo*, not elsewhere known; the shade of which is conceived to be so wholsom, that the *Spaniards* seek them out to sleep under them. Out of the Blossoms of it they distil a perfumed Water; of the Bark a Bath or Lavatory, good for the opening of the pores, and redress of Weariness; and from the Roots they draw a Liquor, which they use to drink of. Of Beasts and Fowls great Plenty, whether wild or tame; and some of them not heard of in other places.

Principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Darien*, whence it hath the name. A clear Water, and much drank of, but of a slow course and a narrow Channel, able to bear no bigger Vessels than those of one piece of wood, used among the Savages, we may call them Troughs. But with this slow course it falleth at last into the Gulf of *Uraba*, a large arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is said to be eight Leagues over. 2. *Rio de las Redas*, and 3. *De la Trepadera*, both emptying themselves into the Gulf of *Uraba*. 4. *Corobaci*, on the same side of the Country also. 5. *Beru*, a River of the South Sea, not much observable, but that some have laboured to derive the Etymology of *Peru* from thence.

Towns of most note, though few of any, 1. *Darien*, on the Bank of the Gulf of *Uraba*; oftentimes so unhealthy by the Mists which do thence arise, that the Inhabitants use to send their sick people to the fresh Air of *Corobary* to revive their Spirits. By the *Spaniards* it was called *S. Maria Antique*, afterwards the *Antique of Darien*, being new built by one *Encisus* a *Spanish* Adventurer, Anno 1510, and grew so suddenly into Wealth and Reputation, that within four years it was made an Episcopal See. But being built too near the banks of *Darien*, in a moorish and unhealthy place, both the Episcopal See, and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the *Spaniards* have been planted here; but either forsaken by themselves, or destroyed by the Savages; so that now from *Acla* to the bottom of the Gulf of *Uraba*, the *Spaniards* have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but some few scattered houses in all that Tract, for the use of the Natives; who formerly made their Nests like Birds on the tops of Trees. 2. *Blizu*. 3. *Los Angadefos*; two small Villages on the other side of the Country, possessed by the Savages. Besides these, and some sorry Sheds here and there dispersed, all the rest is a desert. So that not being able to maintain the reputation of a distinct Province, the Government hereof hath of late been devolved on the Prefect of *Panama*.

3. *NOVA ANDALUZIA* hath on the West the River *Darien*, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; on the East, the Province of *S. Martha*; on the North, the main Ocean; and on the South, the *New Realm of Granada*. So called with reference to *Andaluzia*, a Province of *Spain*. Called also by some Writers *Carthagina*, from *Carthage* now the chief City of it.

It is in length, from the Gulf of *Uraba* to the River of *Magdalen*, 10 leagues, and near upon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of Woods, but in those Woods great store of *Rosin*; Gums and some kinds of *Ballams*. Here is also said to be a Tree, which whosoever toucheth, is in danger of poisoning. The Soil, by reason of the abundance of Rain which falls upon it, very moist and spewy; insomuch that few of our *European* Fruits have prospered in it. Few veins of Gold in all the Country, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zena*; where the *Spaniards* at their first coming found great store of Treasure. But it was taken out of the Graves and Monuments of the Dead, not found in Mines, nor digged for, as in other places: such being the Reputation of that Territory in former time, that the Nations far and near did carry the Bodies of their Dead to be buried in it, with great quantities of Gold, Jewels, and other Riches. The Natives very fierce and stout, whilst they were a people. But giving the *Spaniards* many overthrowes before fully conquered, they have been so consumed and wasted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Rio de los Redas*, and 2. *Rio de los Anades*, both falling into the Bay of *Uraba*. 3. *Zedu*, which passing through the Province above mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the Ocean over against the Island *Fuerte*. 4. *S. Martha*, of long course and much estimation. For rising in the most Southern parts of the *New Realm of Granada*, near the *Equinoctial*, it passeth through the whole length of that Kingdom, and at last mingleth its stream with that of the River *Magdalen*, not far from *Mopox*. By the Natives it is called *Cauca*. And as for Mountains, those of most note are a continual ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Cordellera*, by the Natives *Abibe*; craggy and difficult of ascent; in breadth affirmed to be 20 Leagues, but the length uncertain, the farthest ends of them towards the South not discovered hitherto.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Carthagena*, situate in a Sandy Peninsula, ten degrees distant from the *Equator*: well built, and for the bigness of it, of great Wealth and State; consisting of 500 Houses, or thereabout, but those neat and handsome. To the South it hath a Morals, so that is it approached by a Causeway of 250 Paces Length, well built, and a Bishops See, subject to the Arch Bishop of *Granada*. Beautified with a Cathedral Church, three Monasteries, and one of the best Havens of all *America*. This city was founded in the year 1532. by *Petro Heredia*, well fortified on both sides; since the taking of it by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1585. took it by Assault, and carried thence, besides inestimable sums of money, 240 Brass pieces of Ordnance. The *English* Landed five miles from the City and Marched directly to it, the *Spaniards* having sufficient time to provide for their Security by Sea and Land. And as to the first they defended themselves so well, that *Drake* could not break into the Harbour with his Ships by Sea, nor the General by Land, till the Sea retiring opened him a way into it. The *Spaniards* then fled and were forced to pay 100000 Ducats to redeem the City from fire, which was forthwith divided among the Soldiers and Seamen; the rest of the Prey was little, because the Inhabitants had sent away all that was Valuable to other Places. Yet the Terror of this expedition dwells still among the Inhabitants, as Mr. *Gage* saith in his Travels. This was also the first place the *Spaniards* Walled in the *West Indies*. In 1587. it had then 450 *Spanish* Families, and most of the houses were built with Stone, being vastly traded by all the

other Plantations of the Spaniards in America. About this time the Spaniards first fortified it, and in the year 1630. it was encreased to 4000 Spaniards and 14000 Negroes, and the best Mart in America; encompassed with a Wall 18 foot high above the Level, and guarded with Bastions, and filled up with Earth, and Arm'd with 70 Brass Guns. See Hackluit To 3. p. 549. 2. Tolu, by the Spaniards called Saint Jago, 12 Miles from Carthagena: memorable for the most sovereign Balsom of all these parts, called the Balsom of Tolu; little inferiour, if at all, to the Balsom of Egypt. This Balm or Balsom is in my belief, the same with the Balm of Giliad and Jeriebo in latter times, found only in Egypt, and said to be now also found at Mecca in Arabia; The form of the Plant being the same, as appeareth by a Comparison of the description of it in the Authors that have wrote of both. 3. Mopox, or Santa Cruz de Mopox, near the Confluences of the Rivers of Martba and Magdalena. 4. Baranca de Melambo, on the Banks of the River Magdalen, six Leagues from the Ocean, where such Commodities as are brought by Sea for the New Realm of Granada use to be unshipped, and carried by Lighter or small Boats up the River. 5. Sebastia de Buenavista, built by Alfonso de Oieda, Anno 1508. in the first Attempt upon this Country; situate on a rising ground, near the mouth of the Bay of Uraba, a League and half from the Sea. 6. Villa de Maria, 30 Leagues South of Carthagena, but of no great note.

4. S. MARTHA hath on the West Nova Andalusia; on the East, Rio de la Hacha; on the North the main Ocean; on the South the New Realm of Granada: about 70 Leagues in length, and as much in breadth. So called from S. Martba the chief City of it.

The Country is Mountainous and barren, not fit for Pasturage or Tillage; productive notwithstanding of Limons, Oranges, Pomegranates, and such other Fruits as are brought hither out of Spain. The Air on the Sea coasts very hot and scalding, and in the mid-land parts as cold, because of the Neighbourhood of some Mountains always covered with Snow. The principal of those Mountains, a long ridge of Hills, by the Spaniards called Las Sierras Nievadas, or the Snowy Mountains; discernable by the Mariners 30 Leagues at Sea, by whom called the Mountains of Tairona, from a Valley of that name beneath them, the Inhabitants whereof, by the Advantage of those hills, have hitherto preserved their liberty against the Spaniards. The rest, though subject to the Spaniards, have their several Kings, affirmed to be an arrogant ill natur'd people; made worle perhaps then indeed they are, by reason of their hate to the Spaniards, whose Government they live under with great unwillingness.

Chief Rivers of this Province are, 1. Rio Grando de la Magdalena; which hath its Fountain in the Hills of the New Realm of Granada, not far from the Equator, but its fall into the Ocean betwixt Carthagena and S. Martba, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; where dividing it self, it maketh an Island of five Leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; discernable for ten Leagues space, from the rest of the main by the taste and colour of the Water. This River is Navigable above 100 Leagues up into the Continent of America, so that by it the Marchandize of Europe is carried to Granada, and the Treasures of the latter are in three weeks brought down to the Atlantick Ocean, into which this River falls with a vast Mouth 26 Leagues East of Carthagena Nueva, so that it maintains its current 10 Leagues into the Ocean, and by reason of the Vortices made by the Contest between the River and the Ocean, it is dangerous falling into it. There is an Island in the Mouth of this River Five Leagues long, and half a League broad. The Hollanders do all affirm it has three mouths where it falls into the Ocean. Last. p. 369. The Mouth lyes in the Lat. of 12.40. from the Line to the North. Its head is near the City Popayan in the Andes, and washeth first Cassi, from the head to the fall

400 Leagues, and is Navigable to St. Fe de Bogota. This River is more properly St. Martba than Magdalena; and my Author in his Maps calls it so, but in his Description calls Magdalena, Cauca, both which Rivers unite at Mopox. 2. Rio de Cazaze, which falleth into the Magdalen; as doth also 3. Caesar, by the Natives called Pompatan; which having its Fountain near the City of Kings, in the Vail of Upar, passeth directly towards the South, till it meet with 4. Ayumas, another River of this Tract; accompanied with whom he runneth Westward for the Space of 70 Leagues, and endeth in the great River of Magdalen, as before is said, near the Forest of Alpuerte. 5. Bubia. 6. Piras. 7. Don Diego. 8. Palamini. 9. Gayza, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of most observation. 1. S. Martba, situate on the Shores of the Ocean, in the latitude of ten degrees and 30 minutes: neighboured by a safe and convenient Haven, defended from the Winds by an high Mountain near unto it, and honoured with an Episcopal See. Small, and ill built when it was at the best; nor well recovered of the Spoil it suffered by Sir Francis Drake, Anno 1595. and by Sir Anthony Shirly, the next year after. and in 1630 by the Dutch Admiral Adrian James Patre. In 1626. the Governour gave an account, that the Inhabitants were poor, few, and not well united among themselves. 2. Tenariffe, on the Banks of the Magdalen, 40 Leagues from S. Martba. 3. Tenalameque by the Spaniards called Villas de las Palmas, 20 Leagues to the South of Tenariffe. Ciudad de los Reyes, or the City of Kings, situate in the Vail of Upar, on the Banks of a deep and violent River called Guatepers, which not far off falleth into the Caesar: ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of Tairona, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of Spain. 5. Ramada, by the Spaniards called New Salamanca, in the same Valley of Upar; as liberally furnished with Veins of Brass, as it is with stones. 6. Ocanman, on the Western Reach of the River Caesar, equally distant from its Confluence with Ayumas, and its fall into Magdalen.

5. RIO DE LA HACHA is the name of a little Province lying on the North-east of S. Martba, environed on two sides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the East) with large and spacious Arm of the Sea called Golfo de Venezuela, the extremities hereof North West, called Cabo la Vela; on the North east, Cabo di Coquibocoa.

It took this name from the Town and River of La Hacha, a small Town, consisting of no more than an hundred Houses, but big enough to give name to so small a Province; built on a little Hill about a Mile from the Sea: the Haven inconvenient, and exposed to the Northern Winds, but the Soil about very rich, fruitful of all such Plants as are brought from Spain, well stored with Veins of Gold, excellent Salt wiches, and some Gems of great worth and virtue. Distant 8 Leagues from New Salamanca, and 18 Leagues from the Cape la Vela: surprized and sacked by Sir Francis Drake, Anno 1595. 2. Rancheria, six Leagues on the East of De la Hacha, inhabited for the most part by such as get their living by Pearl-fishing. 3. Topia, five Leagues from La Hacha, and almost as much from the Sea: the fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and New Salamanca were terribly wasted by the English in the year aforesaid, because the Governour of New Salamanca, with whom they had contracted for 4000 Ducats not to burn that Town, would not stand to his Bargain.

These Countries, discovered by Columbus, and by him called Terra Firma, as before was said, were afterwards brought under the power of Spain, by two several men, employed in the subduing of their several parts, Anno 1518. To Didaco Niqueja was allotted the Government and Conquest of those parts hereof, which lie on the West of the Bay of the Uraba, containing the Prefectures of Darien and Panama, by the name of

Castella de Oro; and to *Alfonso Oidea*, all that lay on the East of that Gulf, by the name of *Nova Andalusia*. But these two finished not the work, though the first began it: *Encisus* discovering farther on the River of *Darien* than *Niqueſa* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South-Sea, where *Panama* and the best of their trading lieth, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Prefectures of *S. Martha*, and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and subdued by the Spa-

niard) being added to it. One of their last Kings which held out against the Spaniard was called *Abibesa*, who had his Palace on the top of a Tree, (as most of his Subjects had their Houses;) from which when *Francisco de Vasquez*, a Spanish Captain could by no other Rhetorick win him to descend, he laid his Axe to the Root and began to fell it: which ſeen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his Life and Palace at the will of his Enemies.

OF

NOVA GRANADA.

NOVA GRANADA, or the New Realm of *Granada*, is bounded on the North with *Castella Aurea*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Venezuela*. The Countries lying on the South, are not yet discovered, shut up with vast Hills, and impassable Mountains, except only in those Parts which lie near the Sea, where the way lieth open to *Peru*. Thus called by *Gonsalvo Ximenez*, the first Discoverer; in the year 1536. who being a Native of *Granada* in *Spain*, gave this name unto it: It lying very remote from the Sea, upon the River of *St. Magdalena*; and in about two years it was reduced.

It is in length 130 Leagues, and as much in Breadth; reckoning *Popayana* for a part of it, though by some made a distinct Government. So that we may divide the whole into these two parts, 1. *Granada* specially so called, lying on the West; and 2. *Popayana*, lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA*, specially so called, hath an Air for the most part well tempered betwixt heat and cold; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and shortness of days. It lying three or four Degrees from the Line to the North. The Country is full of Woods, but of great fertility, well stored with Corn and Pasturage, many Herds of Cattle, some Veins of Gold, and other Metals, and in that part hereof which is called *Tunia*, great plenty of Emeralds: and amongst their Woods, that called *Guaiacum*, medicinable for the French Disease, grows in great abundance. The People are tall and strong of Body, not very industrious, the greatest part of their time being spent in Songs and Dances; and very Barbarous, which the Spaniards had not reduced in 1630. The Women of a white and more clear Complexion than any of their Neighbours, and more handsomely habited, apparelled in black or Parti-coloured Mantles girt about their middles, their Hair tied up, and covered most an end with Chaplets intermixt with Flowers and artificially composed.

Rivers of note I find not any, but those of *S. Martha* and *S. Magdalen*, described before: nor any distinction of it into several Provinces; but by the names of *Tunia*, *Bagota*, *Panches*, *Colymæ*, and *Musi*, by which the Savages were distinguished when first known to the Spaniards; with reference to which the Principal of their Towns are by some described.

Towns then of greatest note, 1. *S. Foy de Bagota*, but commonly *S. Foy* the Metropolis of this new Realm, the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of the Government. Built by *Gonsalvo Ximenez de Quesada*, at the foot of the Mountains, upon the River *Pati*, not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the Banks of which they used

to sacrifice to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of Spaniards, besides those of the Natives; and situate in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude. The Arch-Bishop has three Suffragans, *Cartagena*, *St. Martha*, and *Popayana*. It yields plenty of Cattle, Corn, and Fowls, for the subsistence of the Inhabitants, but not much Gold or Silver. 2. *S. Michael*, 12 Leagues on the North of *S. Foy*, a well traded Market. 3. *Toycama*, in the Territory of the *Panches*, a barbarous and Man-eating People, till reclaimed by the Spaniards; and Masters of the richest part of all the Country. The Town is about 15 Leagues from *S. Foy*, towards the North-east; and seated on the Banks of *Pati*, a little River, which not far off is swallowed up in the body of *Magdalen*. 4. *Tudela* in the Country of the *Musi* and *Colymæ*, two warlike Nations; situate on the Banks of the River *Zarbi*, and made a Colony of the Spaniards at their first coming hither; but deserted by them not long after, for fear of the Savages, though the want of Provisions was pretended. 5. *Trinidad*, on the same River, but somewhat lower, and more remote from the Savages, by them notwithstanding much annoyed: the Fields thereof full of Veins of Crystal, Emeralds, Adamants, and Chalcedonies. 6. *La Palma*, built by the Spaniards in the same Territory of the *Musi* and *Colymæ*, Anno 1572. 7. *Tunia*, so called according to the name of the Tribe or Province in which it is situate; built on the top of an high Hill, that it might serve for a Retreat and Fortrefs against the Savages; now a well traded Empory, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to impress 280 Horse for present service. 8. *Pampelona*, 60 Leagues from *S. Foy*, towards the North-east, rich in Mines of Gold, and Herds of Cattle. 9. *Merida*, on the North of *Pompiana*, the farthest Town of all this Province, on the North-east towards *Venezuela*: as 10. *S. John de los Planos*, or *S. John* upon the Plains, is in the South east, 50 Leagues from *S. Foy*, and seated in a corner full of Veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA*, lieth on the West of *New Granada* strictly and specially so called; from which it is parted by the River *Martha*, which hath its original in this Country: on the North bounded with *Nova Andalusia*, or *Cartagena*; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the West; on the South by *Peru*: Extended in length from North to South 130 Leagues at the least; and from the River to the Sea betwixt 30 and 40. The Capital City is *Popayan*, seated near the rise of the River *St. Martha*, 140 Leagues from the South Sea to the East.

The Country over-cloy'd with Rain, yields but little Maize, less Wheat, and almost no Cattle; though in some places richer then it is in others. The People anciently Man-eaters, and as rude as any; now more industrious and affable than the other Americans, especially

ally about *Popayan*, where the Soil is also better tempered than in other places. The Rivers of most note, beside that of *S. Martha*, which we have spoken of already, and some lesser streams which fall into it are, 1. *Rio de S. Juan*. 2. *Rio de Cedros*. 3. *Rio de S. Jago*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greatest note, 1. *Popayan*, called by the name of the King hereof, when first known to the *Spaniards*, in the year 1537; situate on a nameless, but pleasant River, in the midst of a Plain, of great Wealth and healthy Air, in two degrees and 30 Minutes of Northern Latitude; the ordinary residence of the Governour, and the See of a Bishop, under the Arch-Bishop of *Santa de Te Bogota*. The Building fair unto the Eye, but slight; excepting the Cathedral, and a Monastery of the Friars called *De Mercede*, which are strong and lasting. The Air is Temperate and healthful, but too much subject to Rain, Thunder and Lightning. It has plenty of Corn, Cattle, Fruits, and Herbs, and a double Harvest every Year. The *Indians* are more civil, Industrious, and Ingenious than most of the other *Indians*: The Houses are large, but mean as to the matter of them. 2. *Antiocha*, (or *Sancta fides de Antiocha*) on the borders of *Nova Andalusia*, 100 Leagues distant from *Popayan*. Seated upon a little River which falls into the *Martha*, from which twelve Leagues distant. 3. *Caramanta*, on the *Martha*, it self. 4. *Patia*, in a pleasant Valley on the banks of a small River, but of excellent water. 5. *S. Anne*, in the *Cantered of Anzerman*, by which name it is sometimes called: built on a little Hill betwixt two sweet Rivers, and compassed round about with a Grove of most pleasant Fruits. 6. *S. Jago de Arma*; the chief Town of the *Cantered of Arma*; situate on a Territory very rich in Gold, but otherwise unprovided of all manner of necessities; fifty Leagues to the North-east of *Popayan*. 7. *Carthage*, in the Province of *Quimbaia*, 22 Leagues from *S. Jago de Arma*; seated in a Plain betwixt two Torrents, seven Leagues from the River of *S. Martha*. 8. *Cali*, a League from that River, but on the Banks of another, in the Latitude of four degrees: neighboured by a vast and mighty Mountain, at whose feet it standeth; there built by *Sebastian de Betalcazar*, the first Discoverer of this Country. 9. *Bonaventure*, on a Bay so called in the Southern Ocean; a small Town, but of great use for the ready conveyance of the Commodities of *New-Spain* unto *Popayan*, and to other Towns of this Province. 10. *Timana*, 80 Leagues from *Popayan* towards the East, at the foot of that vast ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which hereabouts taking their beginning, extend as far Southwards as to the Streights of *Magellan*. 11. *S. Juan de Pasto*, situate in a pleasant Valley, but one degree from the *Aequator*. 12. *Sebastian de La Plata*, so called from its Silver Mines in the South-east confines of the Province. 13. *Almagra*, on the side of a Plain, but barren Mountain. 14. *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapan Chicu*; in a barren Soil, were not Gold a Supplement of all wants, which there is found in some abundance.

To this Province belong also some Islands in the Southern Ocean: that is to say, 1. The Isle of *Palmes*, South

of the Cape of *Corientes*, so called from the abundance of Palms which are growing in it. 2. *Gorgona*, opposite to the mouth or Outlet of *Rio de S. Juan*, an Island of three Leagues in compass; the Hills so high, the Valleys so extremely low, the Sun so little seen amongst them, and the Woods so dark, that some hath likened it to Hell. Not much observable, but that it did afford a lurking-place unto *Franci Pizarro* in his attempts upon *Peru*, when repulsed from landing on that Coast. 3. *Eel-Gallo*, a small Island, not a League in Circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Country thus divided into two Prefectures, but both subordinate to the Juridical Resort in the City of *S. Foy de Bagota*, is indebted for its first Discovery to two several persons, *Granada* specially so called was first discovered by *Gonsalvo Ximenez de Quesado*, employed therein by *Ferdinando de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canary Island*, Anno 1536. who passing up the River of *Magdalen* without Molestation (more then the difficulties of the ways through Fens and Forests) as far as the *Cantered of Bagota*, was there encountered by that King, whom he easily vanquished, and waisting all his Territories, carried with him thence great quantity of Gold, Emeralds, and other Treasure. The residue of those Petit Princes, which then Governed in their several Tribes, either submitted to him without opposition, or else were vanquished at the first rising. Having discovered and subdued every several Province, and miserably murdered *Sangipa* the last King of *Bagota*, of whom he had made use in subduing the *Panches*, he caused it to be called the *New Realm of Granada*, for the reason formerly laid down: and summing up the Spoils he had gotten in this easie War, he found them to amount to 1800 Emeralds, 191294 *Pezoes* of the finest Gold, 35000 of a coarser and inferior Alloy. In his return, he heard the news of *Sebastian de Betalcazar*'s marching on the other side of the River of *S. Martha*; who having at the same time discovered and subdued the Province of *Popayan*, was beating out his way towards the North Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Betalcazar*, being by *Francisco Pizarro*, the Conquerour of *Peru*, made Governour of the Town and Province of *Quito*, and having secured all the Country to the very Sea, resolved to open a way homewards through those Regions which lay betwixt his own Province and *Mare del Noort*. And this did he resolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Countrey, full of Gold, was in that Tract possessed by *Popayan* and *Columbaz*, two petit Princes, but yet the greatest in those parts. Encountred in his march by the Royelets of *Patia* and *Pasto*, he soon made them weary, and retire themselves into the Woods and impassible Mountains; and passing slowly on, came at last to *Popayan*. Where, though the Savages entertained him with some frequent Skirmishes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to possess themselves of their best Towns, and to build others in such place as they thought convenient. But this was after the first Conquest, according to the coming over of succeeding Colonies. The first Conquest being finished Anno 1536, when the *New Realm of Granada* was subdued by *Ximenez*.

OF
PERU.

PERU is bounded on the East with that vast ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the west with *Mare del Zur*; on the North with *Popayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*; on the South, with *Chile*. So called from the River *Peru*, which being one of the first of Note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Country, occasioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700 Leagues, but the breadth not equal. In some Places 100 Leagues broad, in others 60, in the rest but 40; more or less, according to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of so different a nature from one another, as if they were far distant both in Site and Soil. These parts are, the Plains, the Hill-Countries, and the *Andes*; the Plains extend on the Sea-shore, in all places level without Hills; the *Andes*, a continual ridge of Mountains without any Valleys; the *Sierra*, or Hill-Countries, composed of both. Each part stretcheth out from North to South, the whole length of the Country: the Plains from the Sea-Shore to the Hill-Countries, for the most part ten Leagues broad, in some places more; the Hill-Countries 20 Leagues in breadth where narrowest, and as much the *Andes*. In the Plains it never raineth, on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the Hill-Countries it raineth from *September* to *April*, being alter that fair weather. In the Hill-Country the Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*; in the Plains their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*. So that a man may travel from Summer to Winter in one day; be frozen in the morning at his setting forth, and scorched with heat before he come to his journeys end. Some other differences there are: as that the *Andes* are covered with Woods and Forests, whereas the Hill-Countries are bare and naked; the Plains, where there are store of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea besides, sandy and dry, and in most places destitute both of Fruits and Corn: in some parts of the Hill-Countries, where there are no Rivers, and Rain but seldom, plenty of Roots, Maize, Fruits, and all other necessaries. In the Plains there never bloweth any but the Southerly Wind, though it bring no Rain with it; and in the Hills Winds from every Coast, and of every nature; some bringing Rain, some Snow, some claps of Thunder, and other fair Weather at the Heels of them. Inasmuch that it is observed, that such of the Inhabitants of the Plains as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do find such pain in the Head and Stomach, as Fresh water Soldiers when first Sea-sick.

Not to pursue these differences any further in the several parts, we will look upon the whole in gross; which we shall find but meanly furnished for the bigness, with those Commodities which so large a Country might afford; inasmuch as many of the people live most on Roots, here being little Wheat, and not such quantities of Maize (the ordinary Bread-grain of the *Americans*) as to serve their multitudes. Nor find I, that the Cattle of *Europe* have been either brought hither in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increase. Instead of which they have in their Woods and Pastures infinite numbers of Beasts, somewhat like wild Goats (which they call *Meagras*) and great store of a kind of Sheep, by them called

Pacos, profitable both for Fleece and burthen; as big as a small breed of Horses, but in taste as pleasing as our Mutton and no less nourishing. A Creature so well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himself over-loaded, no blows or violence shall make him move a foot forwards, till his load be lessened, and of so cheap a Diet, that he is content with very little, and sometimes passeth three whole days without any water. The Camels of these parts are not much unlike them.

This, as it is by some accounted for a Creature proper to this Country only, (though in that mistaken) so may it pass among the Rarities hereof: many of which it hath both in Beasts and Plants, and inanimate Bodies also. Among their Plants they have a Fig tree, the North-part whereof, looking towards the Mountains, bringeth forth its fruits in the Summer only. the Southern part looking to the Sea, fruitful only in Winter. Some as deservedly do account the *Coca* for a Wonder, the Leaves whereof being dried and formed into Lozenges, (or little Pellets) are exceeding useful in a Journey. For melting in the mouth, they satisfy both hunger and thirst, and preserve a man in strength and his Spirits in vigour, and generally are esteemed of such sovereign use, that it is thought that 100000 Baskets full of the leaves of this Tree, are sold yearly at the Mines of *Potosi* only, each of which at the Market of *Cusco* would yield 12 pence or 18 pence apiece. Another Plant they tell us of, but I find no name for it, which if put into the hands of a sick person, will instantly discover whether he be like to live or die. For if on the pressing of it in his hand he look merry and chearful, it is an assured sign of his Recovery: as on the other side, of Death if sad and troubled. Amongst their Beasts, besides those spoken of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huanacu*; of which it is observed, that the Males stand Sentinel on the Mountains, while the Females are feeding in the Valleys; and if they see any men coming towards them, they set out their throats, to give their Females notice of some danger near; whom, when they come up to them, they put in the Front of the Retreat, interposing their own bodies betwixt them and their Enemy. Nor want the Rarities of Nature even in things inanimate: here being said to be a round, Lake near the Mines of *Potosi*, whose water is so hot, tho' the Country it self be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themselves are not able to endure the heats thereof, if they go but a little from the Banks; there being in the midst thereof a boiling of above twenty foot square. A Lake which never doth decrease, tho' they have drawn a great stream from it to serve their Metal-Mills.

More profitable, though less rare, are those Metals which those Mills are made for; and not less profitable, one of those Vulgar Plants, I mean Tobacco, growing more abundantly here than in other Countries of *America*: for which cause, and the resemblance which it hath to Henbane in form and quality, it is called the *Henbane of Peru* by *Gerard*, and from other of our Modern Herbalists. A Plant, which (though in some respect, being moderately taken, it may be serviceable for Physick, yet) besides the consumption of the purse, and impairing of our inward parts, the immoderate vain and phantastical abuse of this stinking Weed, corrupteth the natural sweetness of the breath, stupifieth the Brain, and indeed is so prejudicial to the general esteem of our Country-men, that one faith of

of them, *Anglorum corpora, qui huic plantæ tantopere indulgent, in Barbarorum naturam degenerasse videntur.* The two chief Virtues ascribed unto it (pardon me I beseech you this short Digression) are, That it voideth Rheum, and is found to be a soveraign Antidote against *Lues Venerea*, that loathsome disease of the *French Pox*. For this last, like enough it is, that so unclean a Disease may be helped with such an unfavoury Medicine. But for the first, it may perhaps consist more in Opinion than truth or reality; the Rheum, which it is said to void, being no more than what it breedeth at the present. We may as well conclude, that Bottled Ale is good for the breaking of wind, (which effect we find commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the same Wind which it self conveyed into the stomach. But Tobacco is by few now taken as Medicinal; it is of late times grown a good fellow, and fallen from a Physician to a Compliment. An Humour which had never spread so far amongst us, if the same means of prevention had been used by the Christian Magistrates, as was by *Morat Bassa* amongst the *Turks*; who commanded a Pipe to be thrust through the nose of a *Turk*, whom he found taking Tobacco, and him to be carried in derision all about *Constantinople*. It is observed, that the taking of Tobacco, was first brought into *England* by the Mariners of *Sir Francis Drake*, Anno 1585. and that it happened not unfitly, in the way of an Antidote to that immoderate use of Drinking, which our *Low-Country* Soldiers had brought out of the *Netherlands* much about that time, An. 1582. before which time, the *English* and all Northern people were deemed to be most free from that Swinish vice, wherein it is to be feared, that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the *Dutch*. Certain it is, that it is taken so excessively by both these Nations, that I may justly say with a learned *Fleming*, *Herbæ ejus, non dicam usus, sed abusus, non modo in Anglia, sed in Belgio, & alibi, insanum in modum jam adolevit.*

But the greatest Riches of this Country is most out of sight, hid in the bowels of the Earth, but found in those never-decaying Mines of Gold and Silver, more eminently abounding in this own Province than in all *America*. For instance, whereof we may take the Silver-Mines of *Potosi*, discovered in the year 1545. the fifth of which, payable into the King's Exchequer, amounted in forty years to 111 Millions of *Pezoes*, every *Pezo* being valued at six shillings and six pence: and yet a third part of the whole was discharged of that Payment. By this one we may guess somewhat of the rest, as by the proportion of one member the Dimensions of the whole Body may be probably aimed at: unless the riches of these Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by some knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold than Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arias Montanus*, and some other very learned men, That this *Peru* is that Land of *Ophir* to which *Solomon's* Navy went for Gold; induced thereunto by that Text of the *Chronicles*, lib. 2. cap. 3. vers. 6. *That the Gold was the Gold of Parvaim.* A fancy not of so sandy a Foundation as many others of that kind, if *Peru* had been the old name of this Country, and not newly given it by the *Spaniards*. By means whereof, not only *Spain* but all *Europe* also is better furnished with Gold and Silver than ever formerly. For in the first Ages of the World, our Ancestors, the *Britans*, (I must digress here once again) had no other money than Iron Rings and brass-Rings, which they used for Instruments of Exchange; and in the *Roman* Provinces, we read that the most usual materials of their Coin was most times Brass, and sometimes Leather. *Corum forma publicè percussum*, as it is in *Seneca*. Of which last sort we find, that *Frederick* the Emperour made use at the Siege of *Millain*, and the *English* in the time of the Barons Wars. And why not so? considering that no longer since than in the year 1574, the *Hollanders* being then reduced to some Extremities made money of Past-board. But this happeneth only in cases of Necessity, the two Metals of Gold and Silver having for many hundred years (though not in

such abundance as in latter times) been the chief Instruments of Exchange and Bartery betwixt man and man, and questionless will so continue to the end of the World. I know *Sir Thomas More* in the second Book of his *Utopia*, preferred Iron before Gold, because more necessary for all uses; *Ut sine quo non magis quam sine igne atque aqua vivere Mortales queant*: and that he giveth us there a Plot to bring Gold and Silver into contempt; telling us, how the *Utopians* use to employ those Metals in making Chamber pots and Vessels of more unclean necessities, eating and drinking for the most part in Glass or Earth. He telleth us also, how they make Chains and Fetters of Gold to hold in their rebellious Slaves and Malefactors; how they punish infamous persons by putting Gold-Rings upon their Fingers, Jewels of Gold in their Ears, and Chains of Gold about their Necks: how they adorn their little Children with precious Jewels, which Gayeties, when they come to Age, and see them worn by none but such little Children, they use to cast away of their own accord; as with us our elder Boys, leave off without constraint, their Babies, Cobnuts and other *Crepundia*. He farther tells us, how the Ambassadors of the *Anemolii*, (a confederate State of the *Utopians*) coming amongst them richly and gloriously attired, were took for Slaves, by reason of their Golden Chains, and the meanest of their followers thought to be the Ambassadors: how the elder Boys derided the Strangers for wearing Jewels, as if they had been Children still; and how the people laughed at their Chains of Gold, as being too weak to shackle such sturdy Fellows. Now though it pleased that wise State to have any Gold or Silver at all amongst them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any esteem which themselves had of it; but therewith to provide themselves of foreign Aids, and pay their Armies, when the necessities of their affairs, or other reason of State did require the same. How this Device would sort with the humours of those People whom *Lucian* anciently did fable, and some of latter times more really do fancy, to have their dwelling in the Moon, I am not able to say, as having hitherto had no commerce nor correspondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though possibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and find it to sort well enough with their condition. Certain I am, this sublunary World of ours, will never brook it. And so I leave it, and look back again on the Mines of *Peru*: the extraordinary plenty of Gold and Silver, which those and the rest of the *New World* have furnished the Old World withal; being conceived by many knowing and judicious men, to be the cause of the dearness of all Commodities at the present times, compared unto the cheapness of the times foregoing. For where much is, there will be greater prices given than in other places. And yet there want not some that add also other causes of the high prices of our days, viz. Monopolies, Combinations of Merchants and craft-men, Transportation of Grain, pleasure of great Personages, the excess of private men, and the like: but these last I rather take to be Con-causes, the first being indeed the principal. For (as that excellent *Sir Henry Savil* hath it in the end of his notes on *Tacitus*) the excessive abundance of τὰ ὑβρίων ὄντα, things which consist merely on the constitution of men, draweth necessarily τὰ φύσιν ὄντα, those things which Nature requireth, to an higher Rate in the Market. *Captâ ab Augusto Alexandria, (saith Orosius) Roma in tantum opibus ejus crevit, ut dupla majora quàm antehac rerum venalium pretia statuerentur.* As for that Question, Whether of the two Kingdoms be happier, that which supplieth it self with Money by Traffick and the works of Art, or that which is supplied by Mines growing as the gift of Nature; I find it by this Tale in part resolved. Two Merchants, departing from *Spain* to get Gold, touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buying *Moors* to dig and delve with, the other fraughteth his Vessel with Sheep; and being come to the *Indies*, the one finding Mines, let his Slaves to work; and the other hap-

pening

pening in grassy Ground, put his Sheep to grazing. The Slaves grown cold and hungry, call for Food and Cloathing; which the Sheep-master by the increase of his stock had in great abundance: so that what the one got in Gold with toil, charges and hazard both of life and wealth, he gladly gave unto the other in Exchange or Bartery, for the continual supply of Victuals, Cloaths, and other Necessaries for himself and his Servants. In the end the Mines being exhausted, and all the money thence arising exchanged with the Shepherd, for such Necessaries as his Wants required; home comes the Shepherd, in great Triumph, with abundance of Wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his Travels. But I dare not take upon me to determine this point. Only I add, that the *English* and *Hollanders*, by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick, did in conclusion weary the late King of *Spain*, King *Philip* the Second, and outvied him (as it were) in wealth and Treasure; notwithstanding his many Mines of Gold and Silver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexicana*, *Guinea*, some in *Spain* and *Italy*, and these of *Peruana* which now we handle, and which have given occasion unto this Discourse, or Digression rather. Before the *Spaniards* reduced it, this Kingdom was Civilized by the *Inca's*, who had reduced them from their barbarous Rites and Customs, to a more regular form of Government. They had no Humane Sacrifices like the *Mexicans*, and detested their Custom of eating Mans Flesh. They were all clothed with Garments made of Cotton or Hair, and had the Art of Spinning and Weaving, which was managed, for the most part, by the Men within doors, whilst their Women took care of their Agriculture, and all their outward business.

It is now time to take a view of the People also, affirmed to be (for the most part) of great simplicity, yet some of them (those especially which lie near the *Aequator*) to be great dissemblers, and never to discover their conceptions freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in Wars, well skilled in managing such Weapons as they had been used to, and fearless of Death: the rather prompted to this last, by an old opinion held amongst them, that in the other world they shall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great person, who was attended on in his life, they use to kill and bury with him one or more of his Servants, to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living, much like the *Jews*, but not in Habit; conforming therein to the other Savages, but that those cover their upper parts with some decent Garment, and leave the other Members bare. But this is only near the *Aequator*; both Sexes elsewhere wearing Mantles to their very Heels. Habited in one fashion over all the Country, except the dressing of their Heads, wherein scarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his Fashion to himself. The Women less esteemed here than in other places, treated as Slaves, and sometimes cruelly beaten upon slight occasions: the men (as *S. Paul* saith of the ancient Gentiles) leaving the natural use of the Woman, and burning in their lust towards one another. For which, if God delivered them into the hands of the *Spaniards*, they received that recompence which was meet. Those on the Sea Coast lived mostly in the open Air, under Shady Trees, or houses covered with a Mat and a little Earth, because it never Rains. The Mountaineers lived in houses covered with Turfs, and were more Industrious, Ingenious, Valiant and Active: their Women were White, of better Education, and very useful to the Men, in assisting them in the Tillage of the Earth; their worship was mostly paid to the Sun, as to the Minister of the great God, and they thought the Moon was his Wife, but they did not worship her. They had one Temple dedicated to God, but many very magnificent Piles to the Sun; and they had an Imperfect Notion of Heaven and Hell, and the Immortality of the Soul, and of the Rewards and Punishments in another Life.

Lact. lib. 10. c. 1.

Rivers of most note, 1. *St. Jago*, on the borders towards *Popayana*; a River of a violent course, and so great a depth, that it is 180 Fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2. *Tombez*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over against the Isle of *Puna*, on the further side of the *Aequator*; an Island of twelve Leagues in compass, and exceeding fruitful. 3. *Guagaquil*, of a longer course than any of the other two, and falling into *Mare del Zur*, on the South of *Tombez*, over against the Isle of *Lobos*. No Island after this of note upon all this Coast. If any come in our way which runneth towards the East, we shall meet with them in view of the several Provinces; and so we shall with the Hills or Mountains which are most considerable; the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaca*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to lose themselves; in Compass 80 Leagues, and usually Navigable with Ships and Barks. The Waters of it not so salt as those of the Sea, but so thick, that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many Habitations as good as any in *Peru*. By a fair Water-course or River it passeth into a less Lake, which they call *Aulaga*; and thence most probably findeth a way into the Sea, or else is swallowed in the bowels of that thirsty earth: but the first more likely.

It is divided commonly into three Juridical Reforts; viz. of 1. *Quito*. 2. *Lima*: and 3. *Charchos*; each having under it many several and subordinate Provinces, too many and of too small note to be here considered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greatest reckoning: 1. *Quito*. 2. *Los Quixos*. 3. *Lima*. 4. *Cusco*. 5. *Charchos*: and 6. *Collao*; three on the Sea, and the other three in the mid-lands; to which the Islands of it shall be joyned in the close of all.

1. *QUITO*, is bounded on the North with *Popayan*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, or the Pacifick Ocean; on the South, with the Province of *Lima*; and on the East, with that of *Los Quixos*. So named from *Quito* the chief Town and Province of the first Division. It had at first Kings of its own, but before the arrival of the *Spaniards*, was conquered by the King of *Peru*, and together with it fell under the Dominion of *Spain*.

The Soil is as fertile, and as fit for the Fruit of *Europe* as any other in *Peru*: well stored with Cattle, especially the *Paco's* or *Peruvian* Sheep; and plentifully furnished both with Fish and Fowl. In many parts great store of Nitre, of which they make most approved good Gunpowder; and in some Rivers, especially that of *S. Barbara*, many veins of Gold. The People generally industrious, especially in making of Cloath of Cotton, equal almost to silks for fineness: of constitution strong, and healthy, but given to lying, drinking, and such other Vices; with which they are so much in love, that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the Christian Faith, not willingly reclaimed from their ancient Barbarism. Extremely punished with the Pox, an hereditary Disease amongst them; the very Girls and untouched Virgins so infected with it, that neither Tobacco, *Guaiacum*, nor *Sarsaparilla*, all which this Country doth afford, in a great abundance, is able to preserve them from it.

Towns of most observation in it, 1. *Caranguet*, a large and sumptuous Palace of the ancient Kings, so named, because situate in the Territory of the *Caranguet*, a barbarous, bloody, and a man-eating People; subdued by *Guayanacapa*, one of the mightiest of the Kings of *Peru*; from whom revolting, and withal killing many of his Ministers and Garrison Soldiers, they were upon a second Conquest brought to the Banks of a great Lake, into which 20000 of them being killed were thrown. The Lake from thenceforth called *Yaguarcocha*, or the lake of blood. 2. *Otavallu*, another Palace of the Kings, but far inferior to the other; yet giving name unto the Cantred in which it standeth. 3. *Quito*, the chief of this Refort, and once the Regal Seat of its proper Kings, (till made Subject by *Guayanacapa* before mentioned) the Ruines of whose

L I I I I

Palace

Palace are now remaining. By the *Spaniards* it is called *S. Francisco*, built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30 minutes from the *Equinoctial*; well fortified, and as well furnished with Ammunition: inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, besides the Natives. The Streets thereof strait and broad; the Buildings decent: the principal of which, the Cathedral Church, the Courts of Justice, and two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a flaming Mountain, or *Volcano*; which in the year 1560. cast out such abundance of Cinders, that if Rain had not happened beyond expectation, had made great spoil upon the place. Its See is under the Arch-Bishop of *Limas*, and stands in the fruitful Valley, at the foot of a Mountain called *Volcano Pinta*, near *Machangara* and *Machangavilla*, two Rivers almost under the Line, 250 *Spanish* Leagues from *Lima* to the North, and six from the *Pacifick* Ocean to the East. In 1586. there was an University opened here. The Soil seems barren, yet yields Corn, Fruits, and Cattle plentifully. The Position is pleasant, the Temperature of the Air like that of *Spain*. The natural Inhabitants are more Civil and Industrious than those of the greater part of *Peru*. In my Author's time it was inhabited by 500 *Spanish* Families, some *Portugals*, and some other *European* Nations. *Lact.* p. 512.

4. *Tacunga*, fifteen Leagues from *Quito*; and 5. *Rbio-bamba*, in the Territory of the *Purwasu*, 40 Leagues from that: each of them honoured with another of those ancient Palaces. 6. *Thomebamba*, neighboured by another of the King's Palaces, but more magnificent than the former, situate in the Country of the *Canaries*, amongst whom anciently the Women tilled the Land, and did all without doors, whilst the men staid at home and spun, and attended Housewifery. 7. *Cuenca*, 64 Leagues from *Quito*, on another Road, situate in a Country full of Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, and Veins of Sulphur. 8. *Loxa*, sometimes called *Zarza*, sixteen Leagues Southward of *Cuenca*, situate in the fifth degree of Southern Latitude, and in a sweet and pleasant Valley called *Guxibamba*, between two fine Rivulets. The Citizens well furnished with Horse and Armour, but not otherwise wealthy. This place is free from Serpents and all troublesome Insects. The Air is healthful, but rather hot than cool, subject to Rains from *March* to *August*, but never saw any Snow. It has plenty of Oak and Cedar Timbers, and fine Springs of Water, Maize and Wheat, Cattle, Fish and Fowl. The Natives of it encrease much, and willingly embrace the Christian Religion, *Lact.* p. 418. 9. *Zamora*, twenty Leagues on the East of *Loxa*: and 10. *Jaen*, 35 from that, both situate in the Province of *Quichimayo*, and both so called in reference to two Cities of those names in *Spain*. Then on the Sea-coasts there are, 11. *Portus Vetus*, (*Puerto Viejo*, as the *Spaniards* call it) not far from the Sea-side, but in so ill an Air, that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the first Towns of this Country possessed by the *Spaniards*, who digged up hereabouts the bones of a monstrous Giant, whose Cheek-teeth were four fingers broad. 12. *Mantu*, the Port-Town to *Porto Viejo*, from whence the Trade is driven betwixt *Panama* and *Peru*; the Town itself situate in a rich Vein of Emeralds. 13. *Guayaquil*, or *S. Jago de Guayaquil*, called also *Gulata*; seated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, near the influx of the River *Guayaquil*, a noted and much frequented Empory. 14. *Castro* a Colony of *Spaniards*, planted Anno 1568. in that part of this Country which they call *Provincia de los Esmeraldos*, bordering on *Popayan*. 15. *S. Michael*, by the old Natives called *Piura*, the first Colony which the *Spaniards* planted in *Peru*, but otherwise of no estimation. 16. *Payta*, a small Town, but neighboured by the safest and most frequented Haven of all this Country, as guarded from the Wind by the Cape of *S. Hellens*: on the North, and *Punta Piurina* on the South, two eminent Promontories. The Town burnt, Anno 1587. by Captain *Cavendish*; who at the same time also pillaged

the Isle of *Puna*, the most noted Island of this Tract, situate in the Bay of *Tombez*, as was said before. Fruitful of all things necessary to the life of man; Parrots for pleasure; *Sarsaparilla* for his health. The people in preceding times so stout and warlike, that they Maintained a long War with those of *Tombez*, till in the end, composed by the mediation of the King of *Peru*, to whom the King hereof (for a King it had) became an Homager, as since their embracing of the Gospel, to the Kings of *Spain*.

2. *LOS QUIXOS* lieth on the East of *Quito*, and the West of *El Dorado* (one of the *Cantreds* or *Guiana*, so called from its abundance of Gold:) little different in the nature of the Soil and People from the Province of *Quito*; but that this is somewhat the more barren, and less stored with those rich Metals which the *Spaniards* come for. This was first discovered in the year 1557. The *Spaniards* have only four Colonies in it. The people have also a distinct Tongue of their own, though they both understand and speak the *Peruvian* Language.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Baeza*, built in the year 1559. (which was within two years of the first Discovery of this Region) by *Giles Ramirez de Avila*; 18 Leagues from *Quito* towards the East, now the Seat of the Governour. 2. *Archidona*, 20 Leagues on the South-East of *Baeza*. 3. *Avila*, on the North of *Archidona*; so called with reference to *Ramirez de Avila* before mentioned, or to a Town of that name in *Spain*. 4. *Sevilla del Oro*, a Colony of *Spaniards*, as the others are.

On the East of this Province both the *Cantred* of *Canelam*, inhabited by a blockish and ignorant people, and destitute of all things necessary for the comforts of Life. Most mercilessly tormented, and cast to Dogs, to be devoured, by *Pizarro*, because they could not shew him the readiest way to some richer Country than their own; this being the most barren Region of that part of *Peru* which they call *La Sierra*, or the Hill-Countries. More Eastward yet in that part which they call the *Andes*, lie the *Cantreds* of the *Bracomori*, commonly called *Judan de Salinis*, by the name of the first Discoverer of it. A Country not inferiour unto many for the quantity of Gold; superiour to any for the pureness of it. Chief Towns of which, 1. *Valladolid*. 2. *Loiola*, by the Natives called *Combinama*. 3. *S. Jago de las Montanas*, (or *S. James* of the Mountains:) all *Spanish* Colonies; and all of the foundation of *John de Salinis a Loiola*, once the Pro-Prefect of the Province, by whom first thoroughly subdued to the Crown of *Spain*.

3. *LIMA*, called also *LOS REYES*, is bounded on the North with *Quito*; on the South, with *Charcas*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Colloa*, and the Province of *Cusco*. So named from *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, the chief City of it. Extended from the sixth to the sixteenth degree of Southern Latitude: or measuring from the Promontory *del Aguja* North, to *Arequipa* on the South, it reacheth to 250 Leagues. The Soil is of the same nature with that of *Quito*, but more distributed into Valleys, and better peopled.

Places of most observations, 1. *Miraflores*, in the Valley of *Zana*, 110 leagues on the North of *Lima*, and about 5 leagues distant from the Sea; on which it had an Haven belonging to it called *Chencepen*. The Town is well seated, and inhabited by a wealthy People, made such by the abundance of Sugar-canes in the neighbouring Valley. 2. *Truxillo*, in the rich and flourishing Valley of *Chimo*, on the banks of a small but pleasant River, and about two Leagues from the Sea, where it hath a large but unsafe Haven, which they call *El Azzeise de Trigillo*. The Town itself situate in the seventh degree and 30 minutes of Southern Latitude; well built and rich, one of the principal of *Peru*; inhabited by 1500 *Spaniards*, besides the Natives, and beautified with four Convents of several Orders. The *Spaniards* have planted here Vines, Fig-trees, Oranges, Wheat, and all other *Spanish* Fruits; so that they

they have a Plenty of Provisions ; its *Lat* is 7. 30. to the South 80 Leagues from *Lima* to the North. It was then one of the principall Cities of *Peru*, containing 500 houses, four Monasteries, and having in the Neighbourhood 50000 *Indians* that paid Tribute to the *Citizens*. This Tribute is more properly a rent ; with in two Leagues of the City, it has a Port upon the South Sea, which is not safe, yet much frequented about the year 1630. *Laet* p. 428. 3. *La Parilla*, in the Valley of the *Santa*, in which it standeth, and by which it is furnished with a safe and convenient Road for Shipping: 20 Leagues Southwards of *Truxillo*, and neighboured by rich Mines of Silver, not long since discovered. 4. *Ayacucho*, seated amongst Vineyards in the Valley of *Chancay*, ten Leagues North of *Lima*. 5. *Lima*, by the *Spaniards* called *Ciudad de Los Reyes*, or the City of Kings, situate in the Valley of *Lima*, the most fruitful part of all *Peru*, in the Latitude of Twelve Degrees and an Half. Built with much Art, for all the chief streets answer to the Market-place ; scarce any private House which hath not water conveyed into it from the River ; environed round about with sweet Fields and most pleasant Gardens. The Founder of it *Francisco Pizarro*, who laid the first stone on Twelfth-day, (which the *Spaniards* call the Feast of Kings) whence it had the name, Anno 1553. A Town of greater Wealth than Bigness, the Riches of *Peru* passing yearly through it, well housed, whether we respect the private or publick Edifices : the Cathedral Church made after the Model of that of *Sevil* ; the Convents of Religious Orders, the Courts of Justice, and the Palaces of the Archbishop and Vice-Roy, being all fair and goodly Buildings ; the Cathedral Church so well endow'd that the Revenues of the Archbishop do amount yearly to 30000 Ducats, besides what belongeth to the Canons and other Ministers. The Air is so temperate, that there is no Need of Fire, and yet the heats are not troublesome, which are greatest in *December*, *January*, *February*, and *March*, their Vintage is in *Aprill* : From *May* to *September* is their Winter, which is very cloudy, yet it never Rains ; but a small dew falls, that makes the Earth very fruitful. This is their most pleasant season, and that which yeilds them all sorts of Fruit. The Valley of *Lima* is watered by three Rivers, and beautified by a Vast number of Farms, yeilding plenty of Sugar, Figs, Vines, and Flesh ; the Ocean affords it equal plenty of Fish. The City is seat on the South side of a Vast River, covered by a stone Bridge. It has six Parish Churches, fifteen Monasteries, four Hospitals ; each House has an *Aqueduct*, a Court, and most of them have Gardens, but low and ill built. The City is without doubt very rich, the Viceroy enjoying a Revenue of 400000 Ducats. The Prebends 5 or 6000. It is also the General Mart of south *America*, and almost the only Port on the South Sea ; hither is first brought all the Gold and Silver of *Peru* and *Chile*, and all the *European* Merchandize from *Panama* with those of *New Spain* ; from hence many millions of Gold and Silver is sent every year to *Panama* for *Europe*. The City is altogether open without any Wall, Garrison, or Watch, by Day or Night, only the Gardens about it are Secured by a Bank of Earth. The *Spaniards* of both Sexes were thought (about 1630.) to be 5000, the *Negroes* 40000. The Viceroy had two Troops of Horse, and eight Companies of foot, who were paid by the King of *Spain*, but the foot were not, but the *Citizens* were Armed for their Security, *Laet*. p. 432. The 20th of *October*, 1687. this City was intirely Ruined by an Earthquake, not one house escaping and 1000. of the Inhabitants perished by the Sea, and falls of Houses. 6. *Collao*, the Haven Town to *Lima*, from which two Leagues distant ; a Town of 600 Families, for the most part Seamen : every House having some Cellar in it for the stowage of Wine, Tobacco, Cables, Pitch, &c. for the use of Mariners ; besides those publick Ware houses for the several Commodities which pass from *Lima* hither, or from hence to *Lima*. Unfortified till the year 1579. when

lacked and spoiled of infinite Treasures by *sin Francisco Drake* ; since that time strengthened by two Belworks and a Wall of Earth, with 30 peices of Brass Ordnance planted on the Works. In 1624. the *Dutch* took the Island over against the Port, and fortified it ; but they could never take *Callao*. Yet of 50 Ships they found there, they burnt 30. The goevell Year a great Fleet from hence to *America* in *March*, 1624. the *Spanish* Fleet from *Potosi*, which with the rest of the Treasures of the Kingdom in *May* is sent to *Panama*. In the last quarter of 1687. this suffered as much as *Lima*, the Queen calling the Ship a League on Land, and *Dutch* from a finite number of the Inhabitants on the shore, *Panama*, in the Valley so called, but four Leagues on the South of *Lima* : memorable for a Temple, in which *Pizarro* found above 900000 Ducats of Gold and Silver, not reckoning those infinite Treasures when the Soldiers had laid hands on before his coming. 8. *Guarco*, a Colony of 300 *Spaniards*, sixteen Leagues on the South of *Pachacama*, environed with the best Fields for Wheat in all *Peru*. 9. *Valverde* in a Valley of the same name, so called from the perpetual Greenness of it ; best furnished with Vines, and those affording the best Wines of all this Country. A large Town, consisting of 500 *Spaniards*, besides Women and Children, and other Inhabitants of the Country, well Traded, considering its distance from the Sea, (*Puerto Quemado*, the Haven to it being Six Leagues off) and beautified with a fair Church, and Hospital, three Frieries, and the handsomest Women of these parts, distant from *Lima* 35 leagues. The Air is pure and healthful, the Women the most beautiful in *Peru* ; The Governour was nominated by the King of *Spain*. It stands 35 Leagues from *Lima* to the South, *Laet*. p. 436. 10. *Cajaro Verreyna*, in the Valley of *Chocolococha*, 60 leagues from *Lima*, enriched with Mines of the purest Silver, digged out of a dry and barren Hill, always covered with snow ; and standing in so sharp an Air, that the *Spanish* Women will not be delivered in it, but are carried farther off to be brought to bed. From hence, as I conjecture, comes that Vein of Tobacco, which our Good fellows celebrate by the name of the right *Varreinas*. 11. *Arequipa*, in the Valley of *Quilca*, 120 Leagues from *Lima*, a pleasing and delightful Town ; which situate at the Foot of a flaming Mountain, (from which in the year 1600 it received much harm) enjoyeth a fresh and temperate Air, and a Soil always flourishing. The Silver of *Plata* and *Potosi* passeth through this Town, and is Shipped for *Panama*, as an Haven belonging to it, situate at the Mouth of the River *Chile*, (upon which *Arequipa* standeth) but distant from the Town about 14 Leagues. This City lieth 150 Leagues from *Potosi*, a long and a difficult Passage, and yet for a great while the Silver was brought hither that was to be shipped for *Spain* ; but it is now carried to *Arica*, which is much nearer. In the Year 1572. this City was almost wholly ruined by an Earthquake, and in 1600. a *Volcano* near it raged so horribly, that the Noise was heard to *Lima*, and the Ashes of it spoiled all the Fruit in *Peru* that year. If this One Mountain had that dreadful Effect, what will follow when all the combustible Matter in the Bowels of the Earth, shall at once be fired at the Command of the great Former of it ? This is a Bishops See, under the Archbishop of *Cusco*, and it is Governed by a *Corregidore*. The *Indians* of these parts are much destroyed by the *Spaniards*, *Laet*. p. 439. 12. *Caxamalca*, more within the Land, but more towards the North, heretofore beautified with a Royal Palace of the Kings of *Peru* ; memorable for the imprisonment and murder of *Attilaba*, or *Atinabpa*, the last King of this Country, vanquished not far off by *Francisco Pizarro*. 13. *Cachapoyaro*, in the *Cantred* so called ; the best inhabited of any one *Cantred* of those parts, supposed to contain in it 20000 of the natural inhabitants, which pay Duties to the King of *Spain* ; and is esteemed for beautiful Women, that from hence the

Kings were anciently furnished with their Concubines. 14. *Leon de Guanaco*, (the addition given it from the Province in which it standeth) a Colony of *Spaniards*, rich sweet and very pleasantly seated: beautified heretofore with a most magnificent Palace of the Kings; as now with some Religious Houses, a College of *Jesuites*, and the dwellings of many of the Nobility. Many other midland Towns there are, but of no great note, and therefore purposely passed over.

4. *CUSCO*, comprehendeth, as the chief of all those several Provinces of the Hill-Countries, and the *Andes* which lie Southwards of the Province or *Cantred* of *Guanaco*. Blest with a sweet and temperate Air, not over scalded with the Sun, nor chilled with the distempers of the Evening Mists: the Country full of fresh Rivers, notable good Pasturage, and great Herds of Cattle; well stored with *Coco*, which is gathered here in some abundance, and most excellent Venison.

Places of most repute in it, 1. *Bombon*, in the same Latitude with *Lima*, neighboured by a Lake called *Laguna de Chíncha cocha*, ten Leagues in compass, begirt about with pleasant Hills, and built upon with many rich and as pleasant Villages: out of which runneth the River *Marranon*, one of the greatest of these parts, supposed by the Inhabitants to end his course in *Mare del Noort*. 2. *Parcos*, once beautified with a regal Palace, seated on the top of a little hill, and begirt about with craggy Mountains. 3. *Guamanga*, by the *Spaniards* called *S. Juan de la Victoria*, situate under the 13. degree of Southern Latitude, on the banks of a fresh and pleasing Stream, well built, the Houses being all of Stone, and tiled or slated; three Churches one of them a Cathedral, besides divers Convents. 4. *Bicar*, supposed to be built in the very Centre of *Peru*; where still remain the ruins of a sumptuous Palace. 5. *Guanacablica*, a new Town, or but newly raised into esteem, supposed to contain at the present 2000 *Spaniards*, and double that number of the Natives. Increased, since the year 1566, from a beggarly Village to this greatness, by the Mines of Quick-silver then discovered: Mines of such Riches, that the Kings part out of them amounted yearly to above 40000 *Pezoes*, which is about 130000 *l.* of our *English* money. And yet this is not all the benefit he receives from them neither; that Mineral being found so necessary for the purifying and speedy extraction of their Gold, that it is not said without cause by the Chymists, that *Quick-silver gives the matter to Gold, and Sulphur the form*. 6. *Cusco*, in the Latitude of 13 Degrees and 30 minutes, about 130 Leagues on the East of *Lima*, and situate in a rugged and unequal Soil, begirt with Mountains, but on both sides of a pleasant and commodious River. Once the Seat-Royal of the *Ingas* or *Peruvian* Kings; who the more to beautifie this City, commanded every one of the Nobility to build here a Palace for their continual abode. Still of most credit in this Country, both for beauty and bigness, and the multitude of Inhabitants; here being thought to dwell 3000 *Spaniards*, and 10000 of the Natives, besides Women and Children. The Palace of the King, advanced on a lofty Mountain, was held to be a work of so great a magnificence, built of such huge and massie Stones, that the *Spaniards* thought it to have been the work rather of Devils than of Men. Now miserably defaced, most of the Stones being tumbled down to build private Houses in the City: some of the Churches raised also by the ruins of it, and amongst them perhaps both the Bishop's Palace and Cathedral, whose annual Rents are estimated at 20000 Ducats. Yet did not this vast Building yield more lustre to the City of *Cusco*, than a spacious Market-place, the Centre in which those Highways did meet together, which the *Ingas* had caused to be made cross the Kingdom, both for length and breadth, with most incredible charge and pains for the use of their Subjects. Of which more hereafter. The principal Temple was Dedicated to the Sun, and was a rich and magnificent Pile on the *Acra*, of which the Monastery

of *St. Dominick* is now built, which is of great Fame and extent. When the *Spaniards* came into *America*, they found never a Town but *Cusco*, that had the form of a City, nor is it any wonder that it was the Richest City in *Peru*, since it was the Royal City, to which the Treasure of so many and so distant Provinces were brought, which the *Spaniards* found lodged in many Vaults, amounting to an Immense Sum in Silver and Gold. It has now four Monasteries, four Churches, and many Hospitals: The Air is cold but very Healthful, and the City has all things necessary in great abundance. In the midst of the City is a Fountain that yields the purest white Salt, though 140 Leagues from the Sea, *Lact. p. 450.* *Cusco* was built by *Inca Manco Capac*, the first King of *Peru*, 400 years before the Arrival of the *Spaniards* in *America*, *ibid 469.* 7. *S. Francisco de la Victoria*, at the foot of the *Andes*, a Spanish Colony, and about 20 Leagues from *Cusco*. 8. *S. Juan del Oro*, in the Valley of *Caravayan*, neighboured with rich Mines of the purest Gold, whence it had the name; a Colony of *Spaniards* also. Beyond the *Andes* lie some Countrys, much famed for Wealth; the Discovery whereof hath often been attempted by the *Spaniards*, sometimes with loss, not seldom with some hopes of a better fortune, but hitherto without success. It seems a mighty wonder that the *Spaniards* should not follow the course of the Rivers that in this Kingdom cut the *Andes*, and fall certainly into the *Atlantick Ocean*, for though they may possibly meet with *Cataracts*, or great falls, yet supposing their Boats are small, they may there drag them over the Land, and with greater facility Travel down a stream 1000 Miles, than up the stream 500, or on the dry Land 200; and besides their Boats will carry their Provisions as well as men, which are most likely to be wanting in such long Journeys, amongst Barbarous Nations. We are told two Priests by Boat came down from *Peru*, to the mouth of the River of *Amazons*; and that a Spanish General went up the same River to *Peru*; which shews, this is not a meer Speculation; but the *Mulato* or *American Spaniards* are much less Courageous and Active than their Ancestors, and having vast spaces of Rich unpeopled Lands, have no Temptation for the present to seek for new Conquests. These are in part also the Reasons why the *English* have not searched the Rivers on the West side of the *Apalatean Hills*, dividing *Carolina*, *Virginia*, and *New England*, from *Canada*: though the discovery of the falls of these Rivers, especially if any of them pass into the Bay of *Mexico*, would be of equal Advantage to the *English*, that these would be to the *Spaniards*.

5. *COLLAO* lieth on the South of those Provinces, which we have comprehended under the name of *Cusco*; having on the West the rest of *Lima*; on the South, *Los Charcos*; on the East, those unknown Countrys beyond the *Andes*. Shut up on the East and West by two Mountainous Ridges, which keeping in one main body till they come beyond the City of *Cusco*, do there divide themselves, and grow wider and wider, not to meet again.

The Country is plain and full of Rivers, well stored with rich Pastures, and those Pastures with great Herds of Cattle, barren of Corn, and not well furnished with Maize; instead whereof they make their bread of a Root called *Papa*, dried in the Sun and bruised to powder: of which the *Spaniards* make great gain at the Mines of *Potosi*. Yet notwithstanding this great want, it is thought to be the most Populous part of all *Peru*: the soundness and temperature of the Air (which is here very much commended) as much conducing to the populousity of a Country, as the richness and plenty of the Soil. The People are also of a clearer and more solid Judgment than the rest of *Peru*, and so well skilled in the observation of the Course of the Moon, that the *Spaniards* at their coming hither, found the Year distinguished into Months, Weeks, Days, for each of which

which they had a proper and significant name. The famous Lake of *Titicaca* is within this Province.

Places of greatest note in it, 1. *Cbuinga*, naturally strong and almost inaccessible, environed either with unfordable Waters, or impassable Mountains; one Causeway only leading to it, which for the space of three Leagues, is said to be capable but of one at once. 2. *Ayavire*, ennobled with many fair and costly Buildings; especially with Monuments of the dead, which exceed the rest both in cost and number: for that cause by the Spaniards called *Las Sepulturas*: The Inhabitants of this Tract were much wasted by the Civil Wars which the Spaniards had among themselves. 3. *Hatuncolla*, the Metropolis or chief Town of this Province, as the name doth signifie: not far from which the famous River *Carabaya*, famous for the abundance of Gold in the sands thereof, hath its first original. 4. *Cbiquita*, a Colony of the Spaniards, on the Banks of the Lake of *Titicaca*: a Town of so great Trade and Riches, that the Governour hereof is named immediately by the King; his place being estimated at the worth of 50000 Ducats yearly. 5. *Tiaguanaco*, at the mouth or out-let of that Lake; supposed to be the most ancient Burrough of *Peru*: now most remarkable for the Ruines of certain great and stupendious Buildings, some of the stones whereof are said to be 20 foot long, fifteen foot in breadth, and six in thickness; not to be brought thither without the help of Iron Engines (which this people had not till of late) but by some strange Arts. 6. *De la Paz*, or *Nuestra Señora de la Paz*, by the Spaniards called also *Pueblo Nuevo*, and by the Natives *Cbiquiabo*, according to the name of the Cantred in which it standeth, is situate at the foot of a little Mountain, by which defended from the injuries of Wind and Weather, but over-looking a large Plain of great fertility, well watered, and well wooded both for Fruits and Fuel. 7. *Chilane*, 8. *Acos*, 9. *Pomata*, 10. *Cepita*: and some others of as little note.

6. *LOS CHARCAS* on the North is bounded with *Lima* and *Collao*; on the South, with *Chile*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, on the East, with some Countreys not well discovered, interposed betwixt it and the Province of *Kio de la Plata*. This is also called by the name of *Plata*, according to the name of the chief City of it.

The Country extendeth in length from North to South but 300 Leagues, but measuring by the Sea-shores, above 400. Not very rich in Corn or Cattle, though in many places furnished with good Pasture-grounds; but for the inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver, not to be equalled in *Peru*. Of these the principal are those of *Porco* and *Potosi*, but these last the chief: out of which comes that Mass of Silver which yieldeth the King so much profit yearly, as before was mentioned. The Mine 200 Fathoms deep, to which they do descend by Ladders made of raw Hides, 800 steps, some of the workmen see not the Sun for many months together; many fall down with their loads of Silver on their backs, pulling others after them. and many die in the works for want of Air. For the refining of this Silver there are 52 Engines of Silver Mills, upon a River near unto it; 22 more in the Valley of *Tarapia* not far off, besides many which they turn with Horses. The Poets words never more literally verified then in these deep Mines, where speaking of the Iron Age, he describes it thus.

*Nec tantum segetes alimentaque debita dives
Poscebatur humus, sed itum est in viscera terræ;
Quasque reconcliderat Stygiisque admoberat Umbris,
Effodiantur opes, irritamenta malorum,*

Which I find thus rendred by *George Sandys*:

* Nor with rich Earth's just nourishments content,
For Treasures they her secret Entrails rent.
That powerful evil, which all power invades,
By her well hid and wrapt in *Stygian* Shades.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Plata*, so called from the rich Mines of Silver found in Mount *Porco* near

adjoyning; well emptied by the ancient *Incas*, and replenished into again by *Francisco Pizarro*, who (as is thought) might have raised hence 200000 Ducats of yearly incomes, if hopes of greater at *Potosi* had not took him off. The Town is commodiously seated in a fruitful soil in the 19. degree of Latitude, and 18 Leagues distant from the City of *Cusco*, honoured with the seat of the Governour and the Courts of Justice, and beautified (besides many Religious Houses) with a fair Cathedral, the See of the best endowed Bishoprick in all *Peru*; the Revenues being estimated at 8000 Ducats of yearly Rents. By the Natives it is called *Cbiquisaca*. This was built by the Spaniards in the Valley of *Cbiquisaca*, 165. Spanish Leagues from *Cusco* to the South, some say, and 18 from *Potosi*, and 110 from the *Pacifick* Ocean. The Country about it yields Wheat, Barly, Grapes, and Fruit in plenty. The Air Temperate, but inclining to Cold. *Potosi* lyes in the same Latitude, 18 Leagues from it to the West, and much colder and barren also. It is very Populous, and besides the Cathedral, several Monasteries. The old Kings of *Peru*, employed many People in their digging and refining Silver in a Mountain called *Porco*, or *Porco*, from which was fetched that vast Treasure the Spaniards found in *Peru* when they Conquered it. And *Pizarro* began to work these Mines again, but the discovery of the Richer Veins of *Potosi* put a stop to these. The Spaniards are estimated at 800, the Indians at 6000, but to be understood of the Diocess and not of the City, *Laet. p. 161.* 2. *Oropesa*, twenty Leagues from *Plata*, built by *Don Francis de Toledo*, when Viceroy here, in the rich and pleasant Valley called *Cochabamba*, Anno 1565. 3. *Potosi*, neighbored by these wealthy Mines already mentioned. Discovered first in the year 1545, before which time this Town was but a sorry Village; now the best peopled and frequented in all the Province: said to be constantly inhabited by four or five thousand Spaniards, many more of the Natives: not so few as 30000 workmen appertaining to it, but lodged in the Villages adjoyning: besides the infinite resort of Merchants in pursuit of Profit, and idle Gallants, who come hither for their lulls and pleasures. Situate in the 21. Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, in a cold and very barren Soil, yet plentifully furnished with all commodities both for Necessity and delight. For as the money is, so is the Market always. The Spaniards call it the Imperial City of *Potosi*. Its *Lat.* is 20. 40. to the South. About the year 1630. it had between four and 6000 Spanish Inhabitants. It was then governed by a Spanish *Corrigidore*, sent away every third year from *Spain* by the King, who had 10000 Ducats allowed him, and immense Emoluments or Perquisites which he carved to himself besides. The Monasteries are Numerous and very rich, the Fields about it are cold, barren, and bare, nothing but Oats, which scarce ever ripen, but are cut and given for Forrage in the Blade; yet after all, there is nothing wanting here, that can serve the Needs and Pleasures of the Inhabitants. The City is two Leagues in compass, and far the greatest City in *Peru*. 4. *Misque*, a small Town, but one which furnisheth *Potosi* with good plenty of Wine: as 5. *Lagunilla*, and 6. *Tarixa*, do with Wheat, Maize, Sugar, and choice of Fruits. 7. *Arica*, is a small Town, but the most noted Haven of this Country, in the Latitude of 19 degrees, and 80 Leagues, or thereabouts from the Mines of *Potosi*, and as much from *La Plata* to the South East; the wealth whereof brought hither on the backs of their Sheep, is here shipped for *Lima*. The truth hereof was experienced by Sir *Francis Drake*, who seized here on three Spanish Ships, in one of which was 57 Bars of Silver, each of them twenty pound apiece. Mr. *Tho. Cavendish* our Country man, who visited it in the year 1587. saith, it lies in 18. Deg 31. *Lat.* and he having but a few Men, he durst not attempt it, but he took two Ships in the Port. The Dutch in 1599. failed

failed to this Port, and found it to be rather a safe Road, than a Haven. It being well defended from the North, East and South winds, but not from the West, nor of easy and safe Approach. The Gold and Silver is brought hither from *Potosi* by *Peru* Sheep, guarded by a few *Indians* and *Spaniards*, who came hither in *March* or *April*; and here they Ship the Plate, which in *May* goes to *Lima*. In the beginning of this Century, the *Spaniards* first Fortified this place, being driven to it by the Depredations of the *English* and *Dutch*. The Town is Governed by a *Corrigidore*; Nominated once in six Years by the King of *Spain*. When *Sir Francis Drake* was here, the Town consisted but of 20 Houses; afterwards it arose to 100, *Laet*. p. 465, 66. This Town stands as *Accofta* faith, 70 Leagues from *Potosi*, or as others 80. *Oliver* *Vander Noordt* placeth it *Lat.* 18. 40. *Drake* and most others 18. 30. or 31. Few other Towns, if any, upon all this coast, which is altogether Rocky, barren, and unfit for Habitation, accordingly but little peopled, or not at all.

Come we now to the *Peruvian* Story, which we shall sum up with as much brevity as we can. The people were generally governed by the chief of their Tribes, as in all Countrys else, where neither the Arms of Foreigners,

* This is found from Pole to Pole round the Globe in all unconquered Countrys, and sprung from an Ancient Custom of Fathers of Families, governing their own Families whilst they Lived; and dividing them at their Deaths as they thought fit, till some found the mischief of it, and kept the Government to one Son intirely.

nor the Ambition of some few of the Natives had diminished any thing of their natural Rights. * Not subject to any one Supreme till these latter times; the *Igas* or Monarchs of *Peru* growing unto their greatness but a little before their fall. Their Territory at the first so small, that it was not above five or six Leagues in compass, situate in that part of the Country where the City of *Cusco* now standeth. Opposed at their first Encroachments by the *Cannares*, a valiant Nation, and likely to have had the better, if the *Igas* had not helped themselves by a piece of Wit;

giving it out, that their Family had not only been the Seminary from which Mankind came, but the Authors of that Religion also which was then in use; particularly that the whole World had been destroyed by a Flood, except only seven, (so far they hit upon the truth) which seven had hid themselves in a Cave, called *Paticambo* where having lived in safety till the fury of the Water had been asswaged, they came abroad at last and re-peopled the Country; that *Viracocha*, the Creature and great God of Nature, had appeared to one of them, and taught him how and with what Rites he would be worshipped, and which Rites were afterwards received over all *Peru*; and finally, that the same *Viracocha* had appeared lately to the chief of their Family, assuring him, that he would aid him with invisible Forces against all their Enemies. This Tale soon gained belief amongst those *Barbarians*, and that belief drew many to take part with the *Igas* who by that Aid became victorious. This is supposed to have happen'd 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an end to this flourishing Kingdom, which was in the year 1533. Within which time they had brought all this Country, which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoining Provinces, under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Igas*, as the *Egyptians* *Pharaoh*, the *Tartars* *Cham*; the word *Inga*, signifying and Emperor, as *Capa Inga* (by which they sometimes called them) the only Emperours. Much revered by their Subjects, and so faithfully served, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of Treason: Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to endear their Subjects, and keep them out of leisure to foment new Factions. The way of indearment, by the fair and satisfactory distribution of the spoils gotten in the Wars, whether Lands or Goods; all which they divided into three parts: allotting the first unto the service of the Gods; the second for the mainte-

nance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third, to the relief of the common people. A distribution far more equal than that of *Licurgus*, or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cause of War, they kept the people busied in the works of Magnificence; as building Palaces in every one of the conquered Provinces, which served not only as Forts to assure the Conquest, but were employed as Store-houses to lay up Provisions, distributed amongst the People in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of greater trouble, so of chiefest use, was the Crofs ways they made over all the Country, the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains, extending 500 Leagues in length, a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome* and *Egypt*. For they were forced to raise the ground in many places to the height of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flattest Plains; to cut through some Rocks, and underprop others, that were ruinous; to make even such ways as were uneasy, and support the Precipices; and in the Plains to vanquish so many difficulties, as the uncertain foundation of a Sandy Country must needs carry with it. Kept to these Tasks, the people had no leisure to think of Practices; yet well content to undergo them, in regard they saw it tended to the publick benefit. And for the *Caciques*, (so they called the Nobility) the *Inga* did not only command them to reside in *Cusco*, to be assured of their persons; but caused them to send their Children to be brought up there, that they might serve as Hostages for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered also, that all such as repaired to *Cusco*, the Imperial City; should be attired according to his own Country fashion; so to prevent those Leagues and Association which otherwise, without any note or observation, might be made amongst them. Many such Politick Institutions were by them devised, which had little of the Barbarous in them; and clearly shewed that there were other Nations which had Eyes in their Heads besides those of *China*. What else concerns the Story of them, offereth it self in the following Catalogue of

The Kings of PERU.

1. *Mango Capac*, descended of the chief of the first seven Families, the first who laid the foundation of this puissant Monarchy: he subdued the *Cannares*, and built the City of *Cusco*.

2. *Sinchi-Rocha*, eldest Son of *Mango*, subdued a great part of *Collao*, as far as *Chancara*.

3. *Longue-Yupanqui*, the Son of *Sinchi*, conquered *Chiquito*, *Ayavire*, the *Canus*, and the Inhabitants about *Titicaca*: the first Advancer of the service of *Viracocha*, from whom he did pretend to have many Visits.

4. *Moyta-Capac*, the Son of *Yupanqui*, subdued all the rest of *Collao*, the Provinces of *Chibquiapa*, and a great part of the *Charcas*.

5. *Capac-Yupanqui*, or *Yapanque II.* the Son of *Moyta*, enlarged his Kingdom Westward unto *Mare del Zur*.

6. *Rocca II.* of *Yncha Rocha*, eldest Son of *Yupanqui* the second enlarged his Kingdom towards the North, by the Conquest of the great Province of *Antabuyallam*, and many others.

7. *Jabuar-Huacac*, Son of *Rocca* the second, added to his Estates (by the Valour of his Brother *Moyta*) all the Southern parts from *Arequipa* to *Tucaman*. Distinguished by the practice of his Son.

8. *Viracocha*, the Son of *Huacac*, having settled and enlarged his Empire, raised many great and stately Works, and amongst others many *Aqueducts* of great use, but charge. For fear of him, *Hancobuala*, King of the *Chuncas*, with many thousands of his people, forsook their Country.

9. *Pachacutec-Incha*, son of *Viracocha*, improved his Kingdom by the Conquest of many Provinces lying towards the *Andes* and South-sea; with that of *Caxamalca* Northwards.

10. *Tu-*

10. *Yupanqui III.* or *Yncha-Yupanqui*, son of *Pachacutec*, subdued the *Chonches* and *Moxes* with some part of *Chile*.

11. *Yupanqui IV.* or *Tapac Yncha Yupanqui*, Son of *Yupanqui* the third, extended his Dominions as far as *Quito*.

12. *Huayna-Capac*, or *Guaynacapac*, son of *Yupanqui* the fourth, the most mighty Monarch of *Peru*, conquered the whole Province of *Quito*, and is supposed to be the Founder of those two great Roads spoken of before.

13. *Huascar*, or *Guaſcar-Yncha*, the eldest Son of *Guaynacapac*, after a Reign of five years deposed and slain by his Brother.

14. *Athualpa* or *Atubaliba*, the third Son of *Guaynacapa*, by the Daughter and Heir of the King of *Quito*; into which Kingdom he succeeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his Brother to do Homage for the Kingdom of *Quito*, he came upon him with such power, that he overcame him, and so gained the Kingdom. Vanquished afterwards by *Pizarro* at the battle of *Caxamalca* he was taken Prisoner. And though he gave him a ransom for his Life and Liberty, an House Piled up on all sides with Gold and Silver, valued (as some say) at ten Millions of Crowns, yet they perfidiously slew him.

15. *Mingo Capac II.* the second son of *Guaynacapac*, substituted by *Pizarro* in his Brothers Throne, after many vicissitudes of Fortune, was at last slain in the City of *Cusco*; and so the Kingdom of the *Ingas* began and ended in a Prince of the same name, as it happened formerly to some other Estates.

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who subdued this most potent and flourishing Kingdom, and made it a Member of the *Spanish Empire*. And we shall find that he was born at *Trusiglio* a Village of *Navar*, and by the poor Whore his Mother laid in the Church-Porch, and so left to God's Providence; by whose direction (there being none found that would give him the Breast) he was nourished for certain days by sucking a Sow. At last one *Gonsales* a Souldier, acknowledged him for his Son, put him to Nurse, and when he was somewhat grown, set him to keep his Swine: some of which being strayed, the Boy durst not for fear return home, but betook himself to his heels, ran unto *Sevil* and there shipped himself for *America*; where he attended *Alfonso de Ojeda*, in the discovery of the Countries beyond the Gulf of *Uraba*; *Balboa* in his Voyage to the South-sea; and *Pedro de Avila* in the Conquest of *Panamá*. Grown rich by these Adventures, he associated himself with *Diego de Almagro* and *Ferdinando Loques* a rich Priest; who betwixt them raised 220 Soldiers, and in the year 1525. went to seek their Fortunes on those Southern Seas, which *Balboa* had before discovered. After divers Repulses at his landing, and some hardships which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took some of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the Wealth of the Country; and returning thereupon to *Spain*, obtained the Kings Commission for the Conquest of it; excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furnished and landed in *Peru* again, at such time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two Brethren for the Kingdom, and taking part with the Faction of *Guaſcar*, marched against *Atubaliba*; whom he met with in the Plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a Parley, than to fight a Battle. *Pizarro* taking this Advantage, picked a Quarrel with him, and suddenly charged upon him with his Horse and Ordnance, slaying his Guard without resistance; and coming near the Kings person, (who was then carried on mens shoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him Pri-

soner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 8000 Castellans, and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 Marks (every Mark weighing eight ounces) of his Household Plate; and in the Spoil of *Caxamalca*, almost infinite Riches. This, with the Kings ransom, came to so great a sum, that besides the fifth part which *Pizarro* sent to the Emperour, and that which *Pizarro* and his Brethren kept unto themselves, every Footman had 7000 Ducats, and every Horseman twice as much, for their part of the Spoil; besides what they had got in the way of plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miserable King, their Prisoner, hath been shewn already. Upon which Act, though they put many fair pretences, yet God declared that he was not pleased with their proceedings; few of the greatest undertakers going to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro*, in reward of so great a Service, was made the first Vice-Roy of *Peru*, and created Marquis of *Anatilla*; yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief Companion, who had raised a strong Faction in that State, he was after slain at *Lima* by some of that Faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befel all the rest: his Brother *John* slain by the *Peruvians*; *Martin* in *Lima* with himself; *Ferdinando* secretly made away in prison; and finally *Conſales* the fourth Brother, with the Son of *Almagro*, severally executed for their Treasons and Insurrections, which they had acted in this Country against their King. So little Joy doth Wealth ill gotten bring along with it to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whose strange birth, fortunes and misfortunes in the course of his Life, are to be paralleled only with the like of *Sinan*, a great Bassa in the Court of *Selimus* the first; who being born of a base Parentage, as he (being a Child) was sleeping in the Shade, had his Genitals bitten off by a Sow. The *Turkish* Officers which usually provided young Boys for the Service of the Grand Signiour, being in *Epirus*, (for that was *Sinan's* Country) and hearing of this so extraordinary an Eunuch, took him among others along with them to the Court: where under *Mahomet* the great, *Bajazet* the second, and his Son *Selimus*, he so exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief Bassa of the Court; and so well deserved it, that he was accounted *Selimus's* right hand; and was indeed the man to whose Valour especially the *Turks* owe their Kingdom of *Egypt*: in which Kingdom then not tully settled he was also slain.

But to return to *Peru*. No question but the Forces and Revenues of it were exceeding great. For, though we find no particular musters which they made of their men, or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field, yet by their great Successes and many Victories we may conclude them to be Masters of great Bands of men, and skilful in the Arts of Conduct. Nor can we otherwise conjecture at the greatness of their yearly income, but by the greatness of their Treasure; so infinite and almost incredible, that all the Vessels of the Kings House, his Table and Kitchen, were of Gold and Silver: Statues of Giants in his Wardrobe, together with the resemblances in proportion and bigness of all the Beasts, Birds, Trees, Plants, and Fishes, which were found in that Kingdom of the purest Gold: Ropes, Budgets, Throughs, Chests, all of Gold or Silver; Billers of Gold piled up together, as if they had been Billers of Wood cut out for the fire; three Houses full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, besides infinite other Treasures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew so wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an Horse, 60 Crowns for a small Vessel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shoes; consuming all upon their lusts, and sacrificing their Gods of Gold to their God the Belly.

O F C H I L E.

CHILE is bounded on the North with the Defart of *Alacama*, 90 Leagues in Length, interposing betwixt it and *Peru*; on the West with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the streights of *Magellan*; and on the East, as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main *Atlantick*; the Countries lying on the East betwixt it and *Paraguay* not well discovered. When the *Spaniards* entred the New World, it was first discovered by them in 1535. This Province reacheth from the Valley of *Copiapo* in 26 Degrees of South Lat. to the Mouth of the Streights of *Magellan* 500 Leagues, but it is no where broader from East to West, than 40. 50. or at most 90 Leagues; so that it has vast Provinces that no *Spaniards* ever entred into; but *Chile* properly so called, is nevertheless but a small part of this, and in Length from North to South, but 300 Leagues, in breadth but 25.

This Country lieth wholly beyond the Tropick of *Cancer*, by consequence in the temperate Zone, extended in length, from the borders of *Peru* to the mouth of the Streights, 500 Leagues, but the breadth variable and uncertain. Called *Chile* from the word *Chil*, (which in more Tongues then ours doth signifie as much as Cold) from the extreame coldness of the Air and Clime; so vehement here in our Summer Solstice, that many times both the Horses and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardened like a piece of Marble.

The Soil hereof in the Midland parts Mountainous and unfruitful; towards the sea-side level, fertile, and watered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: Productive of Maize, Wheat, and most excellent Pasturage: Plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, store of Cattle, and Wines enough for the use of the People; the Vines brought hither out of *Spain* prospering here exceedingly; as do also all the Fruits and Plants, which are sent from thence into this Country. The People very tall and warlike, some of them of a Gigantick stature, affirmed (but I believe it not) to be eleven foot high, yet well conditioned with his greatness, where not much provoked. Their Garments of the Skins of Beasts, their Arms, Bow and Arrows: white of Complexion, but as hirsute and shaggy-haired as the rest of the Savages. They are white, but have low foreheads, they went naked also heretofore, but now have learned to Spin and Weave Cloaths for their use; by reason of the perpetual Wars with the *Spaniards*; the Country is not very well Peopled. It was first entred by the *Andes* in 1534. from *Charca*, but they found the Passages by Land over the *Andes*, and through the Defart of *Atacama* which parts it from *Peru*, and is a 100 Leagues over, so dangerous, that the *Spaniards* have since gone ever by the South Sea. This Province is subject to the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, and has one Governour, two Bishops, and 11 Towns Inhabited by *Spaniards*. The People of *Chili* in 1552. slew *Valdivia* the conqueror of this Country, and have since so improved in the Art of War, that they equal the *Spaniards*, and have forced them to desert most of the Towns they had built amongst them. They have learned to fight in order, fortified their Camps, form Weapons both of Defence and Offence, and fear not to fight their Enemies in the Field, and yet upon occasion can lay their Ambuscades with Great Art and good success,

Laet. In the Year 1599. they took and destroyed *Valdivia*, *Imperiale*, *Angol*, and *Santa crux*, *Chile* and *Concepcion*.

Rivers of Note there are not any, but what will fall within the view of its several Provinces. Divided Commonly into 1. *Chile*, especially so called, and 2. *Magellanica*.

1. *CHILE* specially so called, is bounded on the North with the Defart of *Alacama*; on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; and on the East, with some unknown Countreys, lying betwixt it and *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*: not above 20 Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reason of the name, together with the nature of the soil and people, we have seen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Rio de Copayapo*, giving name unto a Promontory near the influx of it, in the Northern borders of this Province. 2. *Rio de Coquimbo*. 3. *La Ligua*. 4. *Topocalma*, 5. *Cacapoel*, 6. *Canten*, all falling into *Mare del Zur*. And besides these, a nameless, but more famous River, which in the day-time runneth with a violent Current, and in the night hath no Water at all. The reason of it is, because this River, having no constant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the Snow falling from the Mountains, which in the heat of the day, melted into water, is precipitately carried into the Sea: but congealed in the coldness of the night, yields no Water at all, whereby the Channel becometh empty.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Copayabo*, giving name to a fertile Valley in the most Northern Tract hereof, and neighboured by a small, but commodious Haven. 2. *Serena*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea side; not far from the influx of *Rio de Coquimbo*, on whose banks it is seated, there built by *Baldivia*, the Conquerour and first Governour of this Province, Anno 1544. The Territory round about it is rich in Mines of Gold: The Town it self of 200 Houses, but so well Peopled, that at the landing of some of the *English*, under Captain *Drake*, they presently sent out 300 Horse and 200 Foot to compel them back unto their Ships, which they did accordingly. The Fields about it are watered by a small River, which makes it exceeding Fruitful, tho it seldom rains above three or four times in a year. 3. *S. Jago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80 Houses in it) because the Residence of the Governour and the Courts of Justice; adorned with a Cathedral Church; and some Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars; situate in the 34. degree of Southern Latitude, on the banks of the River *Topocalma*, at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val Paraisa*, the best and most noted of this Country; out of which the *English* under *Drake* took a *Spanish* Ship, and therein 25000 *Pezoes* of the Purest Gold, besides other Commodities. The Country about it is very fruitful, and full of Inhabitants, there being as it is said 80000 *Indians* in this Diocess. 4. *Concepcion*, 70 Leagues on the South of *S. Jago*, situate on the Shores of the large and capacious Bay, (by the Natives called *Penco*) by it and the Mountains on all sides so strongly fenced, that the Governour, when distressed by the Savages, (as sometimes they are) retireth hither for safety. Well fortified in such places as are accessible, and garrisoned with 500 Soldiers, besides the Townsmen. Opposite hereunto lieth the Isle of *S. Mary*, so near the Shore, that it seems to have been rent from

from it by the force of the Sea; fruitful and very well provided of Swine and Poultry; but the people so in fear of the Spaniards dwelling in *Concepcion*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5. *Auracoa*, (so I think they call it) a strong Fort in the Country of the *Auracans*, the most Perverse Nation of these parts; who weary of the Spanish Yoke, revolted against *Baldivia*, overcame him in a battle, and at last killed him: this Place being thereupon taken, and of no more use. 6. *De las Confesiones*, built by *Baldivia* in the borders of the Country of those *Auracans*, to serve for a defence to the Mines of *Orogos* near adjoining: distant from the Sea shore about 13 Leagues, situated by *Garcias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Tierra Nueva de los Infantes*. 7. *Imperiale* in the 38 degrees and 41 Minutes of Southern Latitude, situate on the banks of the River *Cauten*; a Bishop's See, and the best Fort of the Spaniards in all this Province. Fortified and made a Colony of Spaniards in the year 1551, and by *Baldivia* called *At Imperial*, because they found an Eagle with two heads made in Wood on the doors of their houses; a Monument perhaps of some Germans who had here been shipwrecked. The Indians the next year after the conquest of this Town, slew *Baldivia*, and reduced the Town to such straits, that it has not been able to grow to any greatness. A Town of great Wealth and Power, before known to the Spaniards, that in a War betwixt them and the *Auracans*, spoken of before, they are said to have brought into the field 20000 men. The Soil about it is fruitful in corn, and Wine, and Pasture; the River bears boats, the Bishop of it is the second in *Chile*, and has about 80000 Indians in it under his Care. It has good Mines of Gold, but for want of Slaves, and by reason of the Wars, they are not wrought, *Laet* p. 492. In the Year 1600. It was taken by the Indians, after a Years Siege by Famine, when the most part of the Inhabitants were destroyed by Hunger and other Miseries, they burnt the Town, and desolated the Country about it, and then went to the Siege of *Soforna*. They took in this War *Valdivia*, *Angol*, &c. before mentioned, after which they became so confident of their Strength, that they fight the Spaniards without fear, and after their own method, and with their own Weapons, revenging in some sort the wrongs done to the other Indians their Country Men, whom the Spaniards had most Inhumanely Murdered without Cause or Measure, *Laet* p. 500. *S. Villa Rica* another Colony of Spaniards, 16 Leagues on the South East of *Imperiale*, and 25 Leagues from the Shore of *Mare del Zur*. 9. *Baldivia*, the most noted Town of all these parts, situate in the Valley of *Guadallanguen*, in the Latitude of 40 Degrees, or thereabouts: adorned with a safe and capacious Haven, and neighbored by Mines of Gold of such infinite Riches, that *Baldivia* (by whom built for defence of those Mines) received thence daily by the labour of each single Workman 25000 Crowns a man, and sometimes more. Sacked by the Savages Anno 1599; since repaired by the Spaniards. 10. *Oforno*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chiloe*, (or *Ancud*, as the Savages call it) situate in a barren soil, but well stored with Gold, and thought to be more populous than *Baldivia* itself. This City lies 70 Leagues South of *Concepcion*, seven from the Ocean, 42 D. from the Line South. It has about it 200000 Indian Subjects, who are Employed in Weaving Linen and Wollen, *Laet* p. 494. In the Year 1600. the Indians besieged this Place, and had certainly taken it, had it not been relieved by a supply under *Francis de Campo*, who was sent from *Peru*, for they had then taken *Valdivia*, *Imperiale*, and *la Concepcion*, and three other Towns, p. 499. 11. *Castro*, the most Southern Town of all this Province, in the Latitude of 44: built in a large and fruitful Island of the Bay of *Ancud*, said to be 50 Leagues in length, but the breadth unequal: in some parts nine, in others not above two Leagues. 12. *S. Juan de la Frontera* on the farther side of the *Andes* towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong also certain Islands ly

ing on the coasts and shores hereof, 1. *S. Maria*, spoken of before. 2. *Mocha*, upon the South of that, five Leagues from the Continent, fruitful of Grain, and very good Pasturage, sufficient to maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the descendents of those Americans who fled hither to avoid the Tyranny of the Spaniards, chose to have made good their Liberty against that Nation: of which they are so jealous, that they would not suffer the English under *Drake* and *Cook* to land amongst them, for fear they had been Spaniards, or some Friends of theirs. 4. *Castro*, which we have spoken of already.

2. *MAGELLANICA* Island situate at the Mouth with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata* on the South, with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Straights of *Magellan*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*: on the East, with *Mare del Nord*, or the *Mina del Zur*. So called from *Magellanus*, by whom first discovered: of whom we shall speak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the Straights 300 Leagues; in breadth, from one Sea to the other, where broadest, about 400 Leagues, in some but 90 only, and in others less, according as it draweth towards the point of the Pyrenees. The Inland parts of the Country not yet discovered: those on the Sea side observed to be rocky and unfruitful, exposed for the most part of the year to such bitter colds, that the Snow lyes always on the Mountains. The People said to be tall of Stature, and some of them of a Gigantick bigness, reported to be ten or eleven foot high: and by the Spaniards for that reason are called *Patagons*. Both great and less sufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurnished of any Houses, notwithstanding the rigour of the Cold.

No Houses doth imply no Towns, and therefore we must look for none in so rude a Country, as hath not hitherto conversed with more civil Nations. So that the most that we can do is to coast the Shores, and see what names of Ports or Promontories we can find therein. And first upon the Sea coasts towards *Mare del Zur*, they place (beginning at the North, and so descending) 1. the Promontory called *Cabo de las Islas*. 2. The Port or Haven of *S. Stephen*. 3. The Valley of *Nuestra Señora*, or our Ladies Valley. 4. The Promontory called *Punta Delgado*. 5. *Porto de los Reyes*. 6. *Sanben Simfudada*, on the Banks of a semi-circular Bay, the mouth of many Rivers, and not a few Islands. 7. *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of Victory, situate betwixt that Bay and the mouth of the Straights; so called from the name of the Ship, in which some of *Magellan's* Soldiers did first compass the World. For *Ferdinand Magellan*, a noble Portugal, and well skilled in Navigation, at the Persuasion or command of *Charles* the fifth, to whom (upon some discontents received in the Court of *Emmanuel* King of Portugal) he had made offer of his Service, undertook the finding out (if possible) a shorter cut to the *Moluccas* then discovered formerly. In the year 1520. he began his Voyage, his Fleet consisting but of five ships, whereof that called *S. Antonio* forsook him in some great displeasure, and returned to *Spain*; another of them being lost not long after in a storm. Keeping along the Coast to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of October, he fell upon the Cape of *Vergins*, at the very entrance of the Strait, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon; and by the end of November (not before) was fully clear of these Narrow Seas, since called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entered into *Mare del Zur*. Having refreshed himself in a little Island called *Juvaganawa*, he passed unto that also but not far from the *Philippines*: the Prince whereof, called *Humabar*, he perswaded to become a Christian, baptizing him by the name of *Charles*: and finally engaging in a Quarrel of his against the King of *Matan*, or *Matan*, an adjoining Island, he was there unfortunately slain, Anno 1521. After his death *Serran* chief Pilot of the Navy, together with 70 of his men, being treacherously slain by *Humabar*, the other three ships departed with no more

M m m m m

men

then 115 men aboard them; which put them to a necessity of burning one of their ships, that they might have men enough to make good the others. With these two Ships they came at last to the *Molucca's*, where being kindly entertained by the King of *Tidore*, they divided themselves, that called the *Trinity*, under Captain *Spinosa*, designed for *Panama* in *New Spain*, but from thence driven back by contrary Winds to the Isle of *Tidore*, was seized on and spoiled by *Antonio Brito*, a Captain commanding there a small Navy of the King of *Portugal*. The other ship, which by a happy Omen was called *Victoria*, having in her but 47 *Spaniards*, under the command of *Sebastian del Cano*, after a very long and dangerous Voyage, wherein it was thought that he had sailed at the least 14000 Leagues, returned to *Spain* in safety, and brought the welcome news of their good Success.

We use to say that Sir *Francis Drake* was the first that sailed round about the World: which may be true in a qualified sense, viz. that he was the first Captain or man of note that achieved this enterprize, *Magallanus* perishing in the midst of it: and therefore he is reported to have given for his Device a Globe, with this Motto, *Tu primus circumdedisti me*. This Navigation was begun Anno 1577. and in two years and a half, with great vicissitude of fortune finished. Concerning which his famous Voyage, a Poet then living directed to him this Epigram,

*Drake, pererrati novit quem terminus Orbis,
Quemque simul mundi vidit uterque Polus,
Si tacant homines, facient te Sydera notum,
Sol nescit comitis non memor esse sui.*

Drake, whom th' encompass'd Earth so fully knew,
And whom at once both Poles of Heaven did view;
Should men forget thee, *Sol* could not forbear
To Chronicle his fellow Traveller.

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, these *Magellan Streights*, are in the 52. degree, and are by Mr. *John Davis*, who professeth to know every Creek in them, thus described. "For 14 Leagues within the Cape of *S. Mary* lieth the first Streight, where it ebberh and floweth with a violent swiftness, the Streight not being fully half a mile broad, and the first fall into it very dangerous and doubtful. "Three Leagues this Streight continueth, when it openeth into a Sea eight miles long, and as much broad; beyond which lieth the second Streight, right West-South-West from the first, a perilous and unpleasant Passage, three Leagues long, and a mile in breadth. "This Streight openeth it self into another Sea, which is extended even to the Cape of *Victory*; where is the Streight properly called the Streight of *Magellan*; a place of that nature, that which may soever a man bend his course, he shall be sure to have the Wind against him. The length hereof is 40 Leagues; the breadth in some places two Leagues over, in others not fully half a mile. The Channel in depth 200 Fathoms, so no hope of Anchorage; the course of the Water full of turnings and changing, withal so violent, that when a Ship is once entred, there is no returning. On both sides of it are high Mountains continually covered with snow, from which proceed those Counter-winds which beat with equal fury on all parts thereof. A place assuredly not pleasing to view, and very hazardous to pass. So far, and to this purpose Mr. *Davis*.

But to proceed: the way thus opened was travelled not long after, Anno 1525, by *Garcias de Loyasa*: next in the year 1534, by *Simon de Alcazaro*, and four years after by three ships of the Bishop of *Placensa* in *Spain*: but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure thro', till undertaken and Performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1577. or as others August 20th. 1578. and he found the same full of Islands, shut in with high Mountains, and the Havens cold and Snowy, *Camden*; after which it grew more familiar amongst the Sea-men. In the year 1587 on the seventh of January, *Thomas Cavendish* arrived here, and found the entrance in 52 Degrees of South Latitude. The *Spaniards* had then built upon it

a City called *King Philips City*, with four Forts, and he sent 400 men to secure the Passage, but they never thrived, and in two years time were reduced to twenty three, the Town left desolate: The *English* call it *Port Famine*, *Hacklitt*, part. 3. p. 806. Howsoever we are so much Debtors to the Attempts of others, as that we owe to them the most part of the names of those Bays and Promontories which they discovered in the search: though many of them be since new named by the *English* and *Hollanders*. Those of most note, Proceeding from *Cabo de la Victoria*, are 1. *Cabo de Quaila*, 2. *Cape Gallant*, 3. *Cordes Bay*, 4. *Cape Froward*, being the very point or Conus of this great *Pyramis*. 5. *Porto Famine*, 6. A little Isle called *Elizabeths Island*, and at the exit of the Streight in *Mare del Noordt*, the Cape of *Virgins*. Then bending northwards towards the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the Main Ocean, 1. *Ria de la Cruz*, neighboured by a Promontory called *Cabo de las Barreras*, where *Magallan* staid all September, and the greatest part of October, in expectation of an opportunity to discover farther, 2. The Bay of *S. Julian*, out of which he set sail for this Adventure about the latter end of August, leaving there two of his Companions Condemned of Mutiny. 3. The Port of *Disire* 4. A large Promontory, called the Cape of *S. George*. 5. The outlets of a fair River named *Rio de los Camerones*. 6. A goodly Haven, entituled *Puerto de los Leones*. 7. The Cape called *Punta de terra plana*. 8. The Bay of *Amagada*. 9. The Promontory called the Cape of *S. Andrews*. And 10. the River of *S. Anne*, beyond which lieth the Province of the River of *Plata*. This is the most that I can say touching *Magallanica*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points, and Promontories; and this is nothing (as we see) but a *Nomenclator*; it must be better peopled and more discovered before it can afford Discourse of more variety. All we can add is, that the passage back again from *Mare del Zur*, to the *Atlantick*, hath not been found so safe and easie, as from the main *Atlantick* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted first by *Ladrillero* a *Spaniard*, at the command of *Gracia de Mendoza*, Governour of *Chile*, and attempted only: performed not long after the Voyage of Sir *Francis Drake* by *D. Pedro Sarmienta*, employed therein by *Francis de Toledo*, Viceroy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no less danger; so much, that few have since endeavoured to return that way.

As for the Fortunes and affairs of the Province of *Chile*, to which we have made this an Appendix, we are to understand that it was first discovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro's* chief Friends and Associates. But he having other designs in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himself, and to out *Pizarro*, did discover it only; the Conquest of it being reserved for *Baldivia*, whom *Pizarro*, on the settling of his Affairs by the death of *Almagro* had employed in that action. He going Soldier-like to work, not only did subdue the People; but, as he gained ground, built some Fortresses, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. This done, about the year 1544. his ill luck was to meet with a more stubborn and untractable people than either *Cortez* or *Pizarro* had done before him; who, quickly weary of the Yoke, besieged one of his Forts, encountred *Baldivia* himself, coming with too small a power to relieve his people, vanquished and slew him in the Field. Some add, that they poured Gold into his Throat: (as the *Parthians* are reported to have done *Crassus*) bidding him *satisfie himself with that which he so much thirsted after*. After this blow given in the year 1551. the Savages recovered the rich Valleys of *Auranco Tucapel*, and *Purene*, which they keep from them to this day. The Towns of *Los Confines* and *Villa Rica*, both on the borders of those Valleys, were deserted also. Nor staid they there, though they took time to breath a little. For in the year 1599, (having provided themselves of 200 Corslers and seventy Mulquets) they break out again, surprised and sacked the Town of *Baldivia* forced im-
periole,

periale, after a whole years Siege to surrender without any Conditions, and in the year 1604. took *Osono* by Famine. Of thirteen Cities which the *Spaniards* had possessed amongst them, they had taken nine: some of them since recovered, but the most demolished. As ill it thrived with them in *Magallanica*, where *Pedro de Sarmiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies to command those Streights, Anno 1584. The one he settled near the mouth of the Streight, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jesus*, and left therein 150 of his men: the other he intended on the narrowest place of the Streight, to be called *Ciudad del Rey Philip*, which he resolved to

fortifie and Plant with Ordnance. But winter coming on, he left there other of his men, promising to relieve them shortly with all things necessary. But such was his unhappy fate, that after many shipwrecks and disappointments which befel unto him in the pursuit of his Design, he was at last taken by the *English* under the command of *Sir Walter Raleigh*, who was there in person; and his two Colonies, for want of timely Succors, either starved at home, or eaten by the Savages, as they ranged the Country.

And so much for *CHILE*.

O F

PARAGUAY.

PARAGUAY is bounded on the South with *Magallanica*; on the East, with the main *Atlantick*; on the North with *Brasil*; on the West, with some unknown Countrys betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River of *Paraguay*, which signifieth the River of *Feathers* (one of the greatest of the World) which runneth through it; the River and the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great store of Silver they expected from it. It is divided into seven Counties, which yet has not many *Spanish* Colonies settled in it, yet it has one Bishop.

The Country (for so much as hath been discovered) is said to be of a fruitful soil, capable of Wheat, and other of the Fruits of *Europe*, which thrive here exceedingly: nor do the Cattle encrease less which were brought from *Spain*, both Kine and Horses multiplying in a wonderful manner. Well stored with Sugar-Canes, and not unfurnished of Mines both of Brass and Iron, some Veins of Gold and Silver, and great plenty of Amethysts. Of Staggs great plenty, and of Monkeys almost infinite numbers; not to say any thing of Lyons, Tigers and such hurtful Creatures, of which a few would be thought too many. Of the people there is nothing said but what hath been observed of other Savages.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *De la Plata*, whose course we have described already. 2. *Rio de Buenos Ayres*, so called from the chief Town, by which it runneth. 3. *Zarcaramana*, which riseth in the Country of the *Diagnitas*, and falling into a Lake at the end of his course, doth from thence pass into the body of *De la Plata*. 4. *Estero*, which rising in the Valley of *Chalcaqui*, and passing through two great Lakes, meets with 5. the *Bermeio*, and both together fall into *De la Plata* near the Town of *S. Foy*. 6. *Pilcomayo*, which hath its Fountain near the Mines of *Potosi*, in the Province of *Charcos*, but his fall in the same River with those before. Then on the North side of that River there is, 7. that of *S. Saviour*, or *S. Salvador*; as the *Spaniards* call it. 8. *Rio Negro*, or the Black River, of a longer course, but buried in the end, as the other is, in the deeps of *La Plata*. 9. *Yguazu*, and 10. several others, whose united Streams make the great River *Parana*, the second River of esteem in all this Country, but swallowed in that of *Plata*. Besides these, 11. *Rio de S. Martin*, and 12. *Rio Grande*, falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of, 1. *Rio de la Plata*, 2. *Tucuman*, and 3. *S. Cruz de Sierra*. The rest not conquered by the *Spaniards*, or not well discovered cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of

De la Plata, lieth upon both sides of that River, ascending many Leagues up the Water, but not extended much upon either side. The reason of the name, the quality of the Soil and People, we have seen before.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Buenos Ayres*, or *Nuestra Señora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Ciudad de la Trinidad*, seated on the Southern Bank of the River of *Plata*, there built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, Anno 1535. Deserted by the Inhabitants, and again new-peopled by *Cabeço de Vacca*, Anno 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned; and finally, in the year 1582, re-edified and planted with a new Colony; after which last settlement it has ever been Inhabited. Situate on the rising of a little Hill, in the 34 degree and 45 minutes of the Southern Latitude, and about 64 Leagues from the mouth of the River, having *La Plata* to the North, and another River to the South, on an advanced Ground. Fortified with a Mud-wall and a little Castle, with some pieces of Ordnance: yet neither large nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. To this place the King of *Spain* was perswaded to bring his Silver from *Potosi*, but found it not convenient, by reason of the Vicinity of the *Portugals* in *Brasil*. *Potosi* is 400 Leagues from this City to the West, but good easy Passage, by the perpetual fall of the Rivers this way. 2. *S. Fe*, or *S. Fides*, 50 Leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the same side of the Water, near the confluence of it with the River *Estero*: of the same bigness as the other, but somewhat richer; the people here being given to Cloathing, which Manufacture they exchange with the *Brasilians* for Sugar, Rice, and other necessary commodities. 3. *Nuestra Señora del Assumption*, but commonly *Assumption* only, higher up the River, from the mouth thereof 300 Leagues distant: situate in the Latitude of 25, and almost in the midst betwixt *Peru* and *Brasil*, well built, and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Country. This is a Bishops See, under the Arch Bishop of *La Plata*. The Country about it is very pleasant and fruitful, and the Air so temperate, that the Trees are ever green, *Laet. p. 529*. Inhabited by three sorts of men: first, natural *Spaniards*, of which here are accounted 400 Families. 2. the *Mestizo's* begotten by the *Spaniards* upon the Natives, and 3. *Mulatto's*, born of the *Spaniards* and *Negroes*; of which two last here are thought to be many thousands. Not far off is a great Lake called *Yrupuam*, in the midst whereof is an huge Rock above 100 Fathom high above the Water. 4. *Ciudad Real*, by the *Spaniards* called also *Ontiveros*, by the Natives *Guayra*, 80 Leagues North from the Town of *Assumption*, situate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in

M m m m m m 2

a fruit-

a fruitful Soil but a sickly Air ; for which cause, and the frequent Insurrection of the Savages, but meanly peopled. 5. *S. Anne*, on the banks of the same River *Parana*, 6. *S. Salvador*, on a River of the same name. Besides these, there are up the River above *Assumption* three noted Ports. 7. *Puerto de Guaybiamo*, 8. *Puerto de la Candalaria*, and 9. *Puerto de los Reyes* ; but whether Towns, or only Havens on that River for dispersing and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to say. The last save one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolas*, and the death of 80 of his men by the hands of the Savages.

2. *TUCUMAN* lyeth on the West of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the confines of *Chile*, through which they made their way unto *Mare del Zur*, as through the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto *Mare del Noordt* ; the exact bounds hereof to the North and South not yet resolved on. This Province is 300 Leagues broad, and 200 long, and has eight small *Spanish* Cities in it.

The Country, for so much hereof as lieth towards *Chile*, is well manured and fruitful, that towards *Magallanica* barren, untilld, and not well discovered. No Veins of Gold or Silver in it, though situate in a temperate and agreeable air. Watered by the two Rivers of 1. *Salado*, so called from the brackishness and Saltiness of it; and 2. *Del Estero*, spoken of before, so named, because sometimes it breaketh out of his Banks. The Inhabitants now civilized both in manners and habit, in both which they conform to the Garb of the *Spaniards*. It is inhabited by three *Indian* Tribes, the *Tucumans*, *Juries*, and *Diagnits*. The *Spaniards* possess *St. Jago del Estero*, *St. Micbeal*, *Talarvera*, *Corduba*, and *Sala*, the first of these was by the *Indians* called *Varco*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Jago del Estero*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Varco*, the principal of that small Province, honoured with a Bishop's See and the Seat of the Governour, and distant about 180 Leagues from *Buenos Ayres*. This place saith a *Flandrian* that saw it, stands 80 Leagues from *Corduba*, the Fields about it are covered with Woods, and not very fruitful, since the River hath failed to overflow them as before; so that the City has not so great a number of Inhabitants for want of Provisions; the *Indians* too are much diminished in number, and do daily decrease by reason of the cruel usage of the *Spaniards*, who execute their Authority over them with Rigour, and waste them with immoderate labour, in gathering, beating, and spinning Cotton; beating them till they dye very often under their hands, for not performing the Task enjoyned them, *Laet. p. 535.* 2. *S. Michael de Tucuman*, seated at the foot of a Rocky Mountain, but near a very fruitful soil both for Corn and Pasturage, distant 28 Leagues from *S. Jago*. 3. *Talarvera* or *Nuestra Señora de Talarvera*, but by the Natives called *Esteco*; situate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitful soil, and inhabited by an industrious People, grown wealthy by their Manufactures of Cotton wools, which grow hereabout in great abundance, with which they drive a great Trade, at the Mines of *Potosi*, from hence distant but 140 Leagues. 4. *Corduba*, in a convenient place for Trade, as being equally distant from *S. Juan de la Frontera*, in the Prefecture of *Chile*, and *S. Poy*, in *Rio de la Plata*. 50 Leagues from each, and seated in a Road from *Peru* unto *Buenos Ayres*, much travelled consequently by these who go from *Peru* to *Brasil* or *Spain*. 5. *New London*, and 6. *New Corduba*; built at such time as *Garcias de Mendoza*, Son of the Marquess of *Cannete*, and Vice roy of *Peru*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Besides these, 7. *Moata*, 8. *Chocinoca*, 9. *Socochoa*, and 10. *Calabinnia*; Townships belonging to the Natives.

3. *S. CRUX DE SIERRA*, is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Peru*, on the North of the River *Guapay*, and in the Country of the *Chiquites* and *Cheriguanes*, two Tribes of the Savages. By some accounted to *Peru*, because under the Juridical Resort of *Charcos*, but so far distant from the nearest bounds of that Province, (100 *Spanish* Leagues at least) that I think fitter to account it to the Province of *Paraguay*, betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guapay* it is wholly seated.

The Soil is abundantly productive of Maize and Wines, plenty of most sorts of *American* Fruits, which I can give no *English* name to; a kind of Palm, of whose Trunk they make great store of Meal, of good taste and nourishment. But neither Soil nor Air agreeable to the Fruits of *Europe*, which ripen slowly, and soon die. So destitute of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make use of Rain-water preserved in pits: the cause of no small Wants, and of many great Murthers; the people either dying for thirst; or killing one another for some water to quench it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Santa Cruz*, situate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but situate in an open Field, enlarging it self into many Plains and thirsty Valleys, neighboured by a Brook or Torrent, breaking from the Rocks, which four Leagues from the Town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth supply the Town with fish. 2. *Baranca*, 60 Leagues from the Mines of *Potosi*. 3. *Tornina*, 4. *Lagunilla*, and 5. *Tarixa*, three Forts erected for defence of this Province against the Incursions and Alarms of the *Cherignanaes*. 6. *Neyva Rioja*, once a Colony of the *Spaniards*, but sacked and dispeopled by the *Cherignanaes*, when the Count of *Neyva* was Vice-roy of *Peru*: at what time *Nuefio de charves*, who in the year 1548. first discovered those parts, was treacherously slain by one of the Savages.

The principal Nations of this Country, when first known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Querandies*, *Timbues*, and *Carcates*, the *Chunes*, *Chiminei*, *Guaranyes*, the *Guayacurvis*, *Cacoves*, *Guaxarapi*, &c. on both sides of the River of *Plata*; the *Tucumanes*, *Juries*, and *Diagnites*, in the Cantred of *Tucuman*: more Northward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no hold, the *Chuneses*, *Xaqueffes*, *Xacoes*, and the *Xarayes*, great and powerful Nations, hitherto unconquered. The first Discovery of this Country is ascribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a *Spanish* Adventurer; who in the year 1515. passing up the River to the Latitude of 34 Degrees and 40 minutes, and unadvisedly landing with too small a power, was there unfortunately slain. The Design was after prosecuted by *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1526. who sailed against the stream as high as the River *Parana*; at the reception of which, the great River, called till then by the name of *Paraguay*, begins to be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Fortress called *Fort Cabot*, and 30 Leagues more up the River that called *S. Anne*, (both long since ruined) where *Diego Garcias*, a *Portugal*, found him in the year next following. In the year 1535, the business was resumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*, and sent *John de Ayolas* to discover Northwards; of whose unhappy end we have heard before. Not fully settled till the year 1540, when *Alvarez Nonnez*, commonly called *Cabeza de Vacca*, made a more full discovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing since done for the farther planting of the Country, though some places have been marked out for new Plantations; here being little Gold and Silver, and consequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the work.

And so much for PARAGUAY.

OF

BRASIL.

BRASIL is bounden on the East with *Mare del Noordt*, or the main *Atlantick*; on the West, with some undiscovered Countries lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; on the North, with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maragnon*; and on the South, with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reason of the name I find not, except it came from the abundance of that Wood called *Brasil-wood*, which was found amongst them; as the famous Isle of *Cyprus*, from its plenty of *Cypresses*.

It reacheth from the 29 to the 39 Degree of Southern Latitude; or measuring it by miles, it is said to be 1500 miles from North to South, and 500 miles in breadth from the Sea to the *Andes*: which must be understood with reference to the whole extent of it; for otherwise all that which is possessed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Brasil* is so short of taking up all the breadth hereof, that they possess nothing but the sea-coasts, and some few Leagues (comparatively) within the Land; the greatest part of it being so far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been discovered. This part came under the Dominion of the *Portugesse* in the Year 1503. though the *Spaniards* claim it. *Ferrera* pretends this Country was first discovered by the *Spaniards*, by one *Jean Pinzone*, and after that by *Didaco de Lepe*, in the Year 1500; about the same time *Catabus* a *Portugesse* sailing to the *East Indies*, and running too much to the West by accident, fell upon this opposite Shore, and called it *Santa Cruz*, but the World have since new named it, from the Plenty of *Brasil Wood* here found. It is much hotter and moister than *Peru*, subject to great Rains, Snow, Clouds, and the Earth is covered with great Woods, so that it is unhealthful, full of Serpents, and troublesome Insects; others say on the contrary, it is a pleasant healthful Country, and cooled by the Brises from the Ocean, which they call here the Tropick winds. The Soil is strangely fertile, and yields Sugar canes in great plenty. It yields nothing fit for cloathing but Cotton, and is much of it marshy, and in Winter, (i. e. from *March* to *August*) very wet and troublesome to travel. Yet some of the Inhabitants have lived to 90 or 100 Years of Age. The Rayes of the Moon in this Country are observed to be hurtful. Both the Males and Females of the barbarous Nations go stark naked, without any shame.

The Country is full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forests, diversified into Hills and Plains always pleasant and green. The Air for the most part sound and wholesome, by reason of the fresh Winds which do reign amongst them; there being all along the Coasts certain quick Winds rising from the South about two hours before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants; yet in regard it is somewhat moist, it is held to be more agreeable to old men than to young. The soil is in most parts very fruitful, were it not too much cloyed with Rain; but howsoever liberally provided of Sugar canes, (no one Country more) for the refining of which they have their *Ingenios*, (as they call them) or Sugar-houses, in most parts of the Country, in which they entertain many thousand slaves, brought hither yearly from *Guinea* and *Congo*, and other Maritime parts of *Africk*. A Trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and I cannot blame them; there being few years, in each of which they bring not out

of *Brasil* to *Portugal* 150000 *Arrobes* of Sugar; every *Arrobe* containing 25 Bushels of our *English* measure. Here is also infinite quantities of that red Wood used in dying cloth, which we commonly call *Brasil-wood*; (but whether the Wood took that name from the Country, or the Country rather from the Wood, I determine not;) the Trees whereof are of that incredible greatness, that whole Families live on an arm of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the most of our Villages. In other Commodities, common to them with the other *Americans*, we need not give particular instance.

This vast Trade of *Sugars* is since our Authors time in a great degree abated, for that during the War between the *Hollanders* and *Portugesse* in *Brasil*, about the time of our Wars in *England*, most of the Sugar Plantations were destroyed, and the *Portugesse* being also engaged in a War with *Spain*, which lasted till 1669. or thereabouts, and so could not attend to the Improving and peopling this Country: In the mean time the *English* in *Barbado's* and *Jamaica* so well imployed their times, that they not only supplied *England* with Sugars, which before we bought of the *Portugesse*; but we became able to supply *Holland*, which in effect is all this Northern part of the World. So that our Sugar Trade is one of the best Trades we have belonging to us, and ought most diligently to be cultivated. *Lisbon* having thus lost the advantage of the Spice Trade before to the *Hollanders*, and of the Sugar Trade to the *English*, shrunk in its riches and Splendor, and with it *Brasil* also, which now languisheth, and is the unenvied Possession of the *Portugesse*, and serves to little other use, than to exhaust that Kingdoms People, and to fit it for a Conquest, when it and *Spain* shall be a little more weakned.

Amongst the Rarities hereof are reckoned, 1. the Plant called *Copiba*, the Bark of which being cut doth send out a Balm, the sovereign virtue whereof is so well known to the very Beasts, that being bit by venomous Serpents, they resort unto it for their Cure. 2. The Herb called *Sentida* or *Viva*, which roughly touched will close their Leaves, and not open them again till the man that had offended it be gone out of sight. 3. A kind of Wheat in the Valley near unto *S. Sebastian*, which is continually growing, and always ripe; or never wholly ripe, because always growing, for when one ear doth grain, another doth Bloom; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4. The Ox-fish, with Eyes, and Eye lids, two Arms a Cubit long, and at each an hand with five fingers and Nails, as in a Man; under the Arms two Teats, inwards like a Cow, in every Female. 5. A Creature found of late about the Bay of *All-Saints* which had the Face of an Ape, the Foot of a Lion, and all the rest of a Man; of such a terrible Aspect, that the Soldier who shot him fell down dead. But this I rather look on as an Aberration of Nature, than a Rarity in her. 6. Beasts of such strange shapes, and such several kinds, that it may be said of *Brasil* as once of *Africk*, *Semper aliquid appertat novi*, every day some new object of Admiration.

The People here are endowed with a pretty understanding; as may seem by him who tartly blamed the Covetousness of the *Spaniards*, for coming from the other end of the World to dig for Gold, and holding up a Wedge of Gold, cried out, *Behold the God of the Christians*. But in most places they are barbarous, the Men and Women go stark

stark naked, and on high Festivals days hang Jewels in their Lips. These Festival days are when a company of good neighbours come together to be merry over the roasted body of a fat Man, whom they cut in Collops called *Boucon*, and eat with great greediness and much delectation. They have two vile qualities, as being mindful of Injuries, and forgetful of benefits. The Men Cruel without measure, and the Women infinitely lascivious. They cannot pronounce the Letters *L. F. R.* The reason of which one being demanded, made answer, because they had amongst them neither Law, Faith, nor Rulers. They are able Swimmers, as well Women as Men; and will stay under Water an hour together. Women in Travel are here delivered without any great Pain, and presently go about their business belonging to good Housewives: the good man (according to the fashion of our kinder sorts of Husbands in *England*, who are said to breed their *Wives Children*) being sick in their stead, and keeping their Bed; so far that he hath Broath made him, is visited by his Gossips, or Neighbours, and hath Junckets sent to comfort him. And amongst these there are some Rarities, if not monstrosities in nature: it being said of those which live towards the *Andes*, that they are hairy all over like Beasts, such as *Orjon* is feigned to have been in the old Romance, and probably so ingendred; also that the *Guaymares* disbowel women with Child, and roast the Children; and finally, that the Savage Nation of *Camucuiara* have their Paps almost down unto their Knees, which they tie about their waste when they run, or go faster then ordinary.

Rivers of note I find not any till I come to *Maragnon*, though that be a Boundary rather betwixt this and *Guiana*, then proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way as we cross the Country, we shall not pass them over without some remembrance. And so proceed we to the Division of the Country, not into Provinces or Nations, as in other places, but into Prefectures, or Captainships, as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13 in all, which we shall severally touch on as we trace the Coast, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto that of *Guiana*; that is to say,

1. The Captainship of *St. VINCENT*, bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the most civil people of all *Brasil*; Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Santos*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, capable of good Ships of burden, but distant from the Main three Leagues. A Town of no more then 120 Houses, yet the best of this Prefecture; beautified with a Parish Church, and two Convents of Friars. Taken and held two months by Sir *Tho. Cavendish*, Anno 1591; since that environed with a Wall and fortified with two Castles. 2. *S. Vincents*, better built, but not so well fitted with an Haven, of about 70 Houses, and 100 Inhabitants. This is the most Southern Town in all *Brasil*, inhabited by the *Portuguese*. It lyes in the Southern Latitude of 23. 50. or as my Author saith, in another place, 24. It is an elegant fine Town, but little, and is seated upon a Bay that will not admit a great Ship. They had great commerce with the *Carrigi*, a civil *Indian* Nation, but in 1596. they surprized a part of them, since which time this Prefecture never thrived. This shews the time of this Plantation, *Laet. p. 578. 3. Itange*, and 4. *Cananea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of lesser Vessels. 5. *S. Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleasant Rivers, which fall not far off into the River *Iniambis*, a Town of about a 100 houses, one Church, two Convents, and a Colledge of Jesuites; neighboured by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains called *Pernabiacaba*. 6. *S. Philips*, a small Town on the banks of *Iniambis*, which there begins to enlarge it self, and passing thence falleth at last into the River *Parana*, one of the greatest Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. Of *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *January*, so called, because entered into that month by *John Diaz de Solis*. Anno 1515, neglected by the *Portugals*, it was seized on by the *French*, under the conduct of *Villigagnone*, employed herein by Admiral *Castillon*, a

great friend of the *Hugonots*, to whom it was intended for a place of Refuge, (as *New England* afterwards for the like) but within three years after their first coming hither (*An. 1558*) regained by the *Portugals*, and the *French* put unto the sword. Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Collignia*, the Fort and Colony of the *French*, so named in honour of *Gaspar Colligni*, (commonly called *Castillon*) by whose encouragement it was founded. Situate on a Bay of the River *Janeiro*, which the *French* called *Ganabara*. 2. *S. Sebastian*, built at the mouth of the same Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the *French* and fortified it with four strong Bulwarks. This is now a Bishop See, under the Archbishop of *St. Salvador*, and built on the South shore of the River *Janeiro*, Latitude. 23. 15. two miles from the Ocean, between the years 1558. and 1618. upon a circular Bay, upon a level ground, but surrounded by rising Hills, and not having above 10 or 12 houses a breast. [At the time of the last date, it had no Paved Streets, no Gates, no Walls, but it had then four Forts.] It took this name from *Sebastian*, then King of *Portugal*, the Founder of it. In 1580. the *French* who had first planted here in 1555. returned, and endeavoured to take it but in vain, *Laet. p. 583.* 3. *Angra des Reyes*, distant 12 Leagues Westward from the mouth of the Bay; not long since made a *Portugal* Colony. Besides these, there are two great Burroughs of the natural *Brasilians*, in which are said to be above 2000 Inhabitants.

3. Of the *HOLY GHOST*, (*del Spiritu Santo*) one of the most fertile Provinces of all *Brasil*; well stored with Cotton-wool, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large and full of Fish. The only Town of note in it is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugals*. The chief building of it, a Church Dedicated to *S. Francis*, a Monastery of *Benedictines*, and a Colledge of *Jesuites*: the chief conveniency, a safe and commodious Haven, capable of the greatest Vessels. This stands 60 *Spanish* Leagues from the River *Januario*, to the North, and 50 from *Porto Seguro* to the South, 20 Degrees from the Line to the South; *Brasilwood* and Cotton is very plenty, but not much Sugar. The Prefecture belonging to it, is thought the most fruitful Country in *Brasil*. The *Indians* of it are called the *Margajates*, at first bitter Enemies to the *Portuguese*, but now are good Friends and Allies. It stands on the Right hand of the River, three Leagues from the Main Ocean, and had three Monasteries, *Laet. p. 585.*

4. Of *PORTO SEGURO*, The secure Haven, so called by *Capralis*, who first discovered it, when being tossed at sea by a terrible Tempest, he had here refreshed himself. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Porto Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity then Fame, of more fame then bigness, as not containing fully 200 Families. It lyes 50 Leagues from *Spiritu Santo* to the North. 16. 30. from the Line to the South; It stands upon a high white Rock. Before our Authors time, the *Indians* had ruined this Town, so that but few lived here, and with great difficulty, *Laet. p. 585.* This shewed the weakness of the *Portuguese* in these parts, which was owing in great part to their Vassalage under the Crown of *Spain*, which as it afforded them an entrance into *Spanish Indies*, where Gold and Silver was more plentifully, so it deprived *Brasil* of its necessary supplies in the Infancy of its Plantations. 2. *Santa Cruz*, three Leagues from the other, a poor Town, with as poor an Harbour: the Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Averia* in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3. *Santo Amaro*, or *S. Omers*, once of great note for making Sugars, for which use here were five *Ingenias* or Sugar Engines: deserted by the *Portugals* for fear of the Savages, against whom they'd not power enough to make good the place, and the Sugars destroyed of purpose, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous people.

5. Of *DES ILHEOS*, or of the Isles so named, from certain Islands lying against the Bay, on which the principal Town is seated, called also *Ilheos*, or the Island, (with like Analogy as a Town of good note in *Flanders* hath

hath the name of *Insula* or *Isle*:) the Town consisting of about 150 or 200 Families, situate on a little River, but neighboured by a great Lake of 12 Leagues in compass, (out of which that River doth arise) full of a great, but wholesome Fish, which they call *Monates*, some of which are affirmed to weigh 28 pounds. This Colony was much endangered by the *Guymuri*, a Race of Savages, more savage then any of their Fellows, who being driven out of their own Country, fell into this Prefecture, which they had utterly destroyed, if some of *S. George's* Reliques, as the Jesuites tell us (but I bind no man to believe it) sent by their General from *Rome*, Anno 1581, had not stayed their fury, and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. Of *TO DOS L O S S A N T O S*, or *All Saints*, so called from a large Bay of that name, upon which it lieth, in breadth two Leagues and an half, 18 Fathoms deep, and full of many little Islands; but flourishing and pleasant, and well stored with Cotton-wool. A Bay in which are many safe stations, and Roads for shipping, and therefore of great use and consequence in those furious Seas. Memorable for the hardy enterprize of *Peter Hyens*, a *Dutch man*, Admiral of the Navy of the *United Provinces*, who in the year 1627, seized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, consisting of 26 sail of ships, (four of them being Men of War) all lying under the Protection of the Forts and Castles, built for the safety of that Bay. For thrusting in amongst them with his one Ship only (the rest not being able to follow) he so bid about him, that having sunk the Vice Admiral, he took all the rest, conditioning only for their lives, notwithstanding all the shot which was made against him from the ships and Castles, and 42 pieces of Ordnance planted on the shore. This seems to have been the first attempt the *Hollanders* made upon *Brasil*, which was carried on with great success, till the Crown of *Portugal* fell on the head of *John Diake* of *Braganza* in 1640. After which they began by degrees to recover this Country from the *Hollanders*, but with great difficulty. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Salvador*, built on a little Hill on the Northside of the Bay by *Thomas de Sousa*, adorned with many Churches and Religious Houses, and fortified (besides the Wall) with three strong Castles; the one called *S. Anthony*, the other *S. Philip*, and the third *Tapefipe*. Yet not so strong by reason of some Hills adjoining which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1624. recovered by the *Spaniards* the next year after, and since lost again. This in 1635 was the most populous City in *Brasil*. In 1676 it was made an Archbishops See, by the Pope *Innocent XI*. It had once 40 Sugar Mills, and a very rich Trade; when the *Hollanders* were finally Beaten out, I cannot now expressly assign. 2. *Parripe*, more within the Land, four Leagues from *S. Saviours*, 3. *Seregippe del Rey*, a small Town, and seated on as small a River, but amongst many rich pastures, and some Veins of Silver.

7. Of *FERNAMBUCK* one of the richest Prefectures for Tobacco, Sugar, and the great quantity of *Brasil* wood which is brought hence yearly for the Diers, in all this Country; but destitute of Corn and most other necessaries, with which supplied from the *Canaries*, and sometimes from *Portugal*. *Portugal* is not able without the assistance of *France* to supply it self with Corn in our days, and this Tobacco Trade is lost to *England*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Olanda*, the largest and best peopled of all *Brasil*, containing above 2000 persons; not reckoning in the Church men, nor taking the great number of slaves which they keep for their Sugar-works into the account: for whose use they have here eight Parochial Churches, five Religious Houses, and some Hospitals. Situate near the Sea side, but on so uneven a piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a regular fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance by a well built Castle, and that well planted with *Bras*-pieces. Which notwithstanding, in the year 1595, the Castle and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they use to

flow all their chief Commodities) were taken by Captain *James Lancaster* and some few of the *English*, who having tarried in the Haven above a Month, brought home with him eight of his own Ships, four *French men*, and three *Hollanders* which came in by chance, all laden with the choicest Marchandise of *Brasil* and *India*. 2. *Amatta de Brasil*, ten Miles from *Olanda*, the inhabitants whereof live by selling the *Brasil*-wood. It was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1629, but afterwards restored. 3. *S. Lameira*, a well frequented Village, but as yet unwalled, 4. *Pineur*, upon a River so named, 5. *Antonio de Cax*, near the Cape of *S. Vincent*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugar which are made in each. 6. *Ganah*, about five Leagues from *Olanda*, inhabited for the most part by poor and Mechanical persons, till the year 1632, when taken by the *Hollanders*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This Prefecture, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque*, (a great House in *Spain*) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* United, the Town of *Olanda* being taken by them in the year 1629, the Port and all the Avenues unto it so strongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it. The *Dutch* have not now one foot of Land in *Brasil*, which said once for all.

8. Of *T A M A R A C A*, so called from an Island of that name, distant about five miles from *Olanda*, of no great note but for the Haven, and an impregnable Castle on the top of an Hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a strong Bulwark at the mouth of the Port, and so blocked it up, that it hath since been of no use to the *Spaniards*. This is the least Prefecture in *Brasil*, but withal the richest; extended three Leagues only in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earls of *Mansanto* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly when entire, thirty thousand Ducats. But his Rents are much diminished, if not quite inverted, since the loss of the Haven.

9. Of *P A R A I B A*, so called from a River of that name (but by the *Spaniard* called *Domingo*) of most note herein, on the Banks whereof standeth *Paraiiba*, the chief Town of it, at the bottom of an Arm of the sea, about three Leagues from the Main, but capable of pretty good Ships to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long since by 500 *Portugals*, besides Slaves and *Negroes*. Not walled, till they began to stand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loss of *Olanda*; but more secured by a strong Castle on the Promontory called *Cabo D. Jo*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, then by any works within the Land. A Castle which acknowledgeth the *French* for the Founders of it, who for a while were possessed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoining Haven, called *Port Francois*, but ousted by the *Portugal*, Anno 1585, who have since held their footing in it, but are in fear of the *Hollanders*; especially since their taking of a little Island lying over against them, called the Isle of *Noronba*.

10. Of *R I O G R A N D E*, so called from the River *Potengi*, (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River; not made a Prefecture till of late. For lying open, as it were, to the next Pretender, some of the *French* began to fix here, Anno 1597, but the King of *Spain*, not willing to have any such Neighbour, commanded the Captain of *Paraiiba* to drive them thence; which was done accordingly. But then the Savages beginning to rise up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiiba* was fain to seek aid from him of *Frenambuck*; by whose help having slain five thousand, and took three thousand of them, the rest became Vassals to the *Portugals*, who built here an impregnable Castle, (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned, and furnished with Ammunition and all other Necessaries; very few *Portugals*, except those of the Garrison, being yet come over.

11. Of *S I A R A*, a late Prefecture also, in which the *Portugals* have no more then a Castle, with a dozen Houses

Houles, or thereabouts, besides that of the Governour adjoining to it. So named from an Haven called *Sara* but of no great note, and capable but of little Vessels. Of some Trade in regard of the Chrystal, Cotton-wool, and some precious stones found in the Country hereabouts: and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and pursue their conquest, here being great plenty of Sugar Canes, but no Works to make it.

12. Of *MADRAGNON*, an Island lying in the mouth of the great River so called, in the farthest parts of *Brasil* Northwards, and many Leagues distant from *Sara*, the last of their Prefectures; the Country intervening not yet discovered, or otherwise made known unto us, then by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the Coast. An Island of a fruitful soil; if pains and Husbandry were not wanting; affording naturally Maize, and a Root called *Maniot*, both which the Savages use for Bread; good store of Cotton-wool, Saffron, *Brasil*-wood, and the best Tobacco; and in some places Balm and Amber. Watered with many fresh Rivers and pleasant Springs; well wooded both for Timber and Fuel; and, in a word, blest with so temperate an Air, (though so near the *Equator*) that no place can be more commodious for the Life of Man. The people strong of body, healthy and long lived, without any baldness, industrious in their Feather works and Manufactures of Cotton; the Women curious in ordering their Hair, fruitful in Child-bearing, and that till 80 years old, and sometimes more Both Sexes naked till their Marriage, and then apparelled only from their Waist to their Knees.

The Villages hereof possessed by their Natives, consisted but of four great Houses; each of them two or three hundred foot in length, and twenty or thirty foot in breadth, so placed as they resembled a quadrangular Cloyster; and in each House so many Households, that commonly each of their Villages, or *Taves*, (for so they called them) contained three hundred persons, and some twice that number. Of these were twenty seven in all, whose names I hold impertinent to be mustered here, the total estimate of the people when the *French* came thither amounting to 12000 Souls. For the *French* trading in this Island, and carrying themselves courteously amongst the Natives, found them not unwilling to admit a Colony of that Nation, if sent over to them, by whose Aid they might free themselves from all other Pretenders; and being instructed in the Gospel, accordingly a Colony and four *Capuchin* Friars are sent over to them, Anno 1612. Some Savages gained unto the Faith, and a strong Castle, called *S. Lewis*, commodiously built, and planted with 22 pieces of Ordnance, the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not rested there, when dispossessed by the *Portugals*, sent thither under the conduct of *Hierome de Albuquerque*, Anno 1614. Who to the Castle of *S. Lewis*, which the *French* had built, added those of *S. Mary*, and *S. Francis*, planted two Villages in the Island by the names of *S. Andrew*, and *S. Jago*, and ever since have held it without molestation.

13. Of *PARA*, the most Northern Prefecture of *Brasil* towards *Gutana*; so called from the River of *Para*, (supposed to be a branch of the River of *Amazons*) which runneth through it. The River at the mouth of it is two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Channel fifteen fathom deep: on the Banks, whereof (but on an higher ground then the rest) the *Portugals* have built the Castle of *Para*, in form quadrangular, and well-walled, except towards the River. This River is vast, but very much incumbered with Shoals; *Nauclerus Eusitanus*, placeth it in the Southern Latitude 02, 30. The *Portuguese* built a Town called *St. James*, I suppose this is that which is called *Para*, from the River, *Lact. p. 606*. This River is nothing but the South Branch or outlet of the great River of *Amazons*, as is averred by this Author, *p. 630. and 634*. The *Indians* in these parts call all Rivers Lakes, the Sea and Ocean by the Name of *Para*, *ib. 16. 630*. The Country thereabouts being inhabited by 300 *Portuguese*, besides the Garrison.

Now for the Fortunes of the whole, it never did ac-

knowledge any one Supreme. Divided into many Tribes, and each Tribe Governed by their Chiefs, as in other Countries. These Tribes so many, and the Muster of their names so useless, that I now forbear it. In this estate they lived when discovered first; but by whom first discovered will not be agreed on. The *Spaniards*, to get some colour of a Title for the Crown of *Castile*, ascribe to *John Pinhone* and *Diego de Lope*, two of their own Country, who, as they say, had landed on it in the year 1500 before the coming of *Capralis*, though the same year also. The *Portugals* attribute the Discovery of it to *Pedro Alvarez de Capralis*, sent by their King *Emanuel* to the *East-Indies*; who being driven over hither from the Coast of *Gutana*, took possession of it, and as a Monument thereof, advanced a Cross giving the name of *S. Elae Crucis*, or the Holy Cross, to this new discovery. That name changed afterwards to *Brasil*, from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongst them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of *Portugal*, *Americus Vespusius*, a noble *Florentine*, Anno 1501. and after him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation, in the year 1503, were by *Emanuel* employed in a farther Discovery. Who speeding fortunately in it, the *Portugals*, did accordingly send over some Plantations thither. But a great controverſie growing betwixt them and the *Spaniard*, to whether of the two it of right belonged; the *Spaniard* was content to yield it to the Crown of *Portugal*, though by the Bull or Edict of Pope *Alexander* the sixth (by whom the whole undiscovered World was divided betwixt those two Kings) it seemed to fall within the Grant made to the Crown of *Castile*. Enjoyed by this *Emanuel*, and the Kings succeeding, till the death of *Sebastian*, (which *Sebastian* the *Jesuites* look on as the Founder of all the Colledges in this Country) and by the *Spaniards* since the death of *Henry*, (whose Reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Crown of *Portugal*; that Nation being so prudently jealous of their Interest in it, that they would not suffer any of the Subjects of *Spain* to grow great amongst them. By them possessed entirely without any Rivals, (I mean for so much of the Country as they had subdued) till of late years the *Hollanders* put in for a part, and got the Prefectures of *Fernambuck* and *Todos los Santos* (or the Bay) by the right of War. The rest with all the other members of the Crown of *Portugal*, in the late Revolt of that Nation from the King of *Spain*, submitting unto *John* the fourth, of the House of *Braganza*, whom the *Portuguese* had made their King, Anno 1639.

The *Portuguese* having thus freed themselves from the Yoke of *Spain*, their next care was to recover *Brasil* from the Intrusion of the *Hollanders*, which they in part effected, during the time of our Civil War, and perfected it in or about the time of our first *Dutch War*; which hindered the *Hollanders* from sending the supplies that were necessary to support their conquest. But the War going on between *Portugal* and *Spain* till 1669. the *Portuguese* were not in a capacity to make the best Advantage of their good success, so that the *English* in the mean time gat the main of the Sugar and Tobacco Trade, and supplied the North parts of the World, besides these with Cotton, Indigo, Wool, and many other Commodities we had before from hence. This was the greatest Blow that *Portugal* has received, and never to be retrieved, till by our Imprudence we destroy our own Trade, and discourage our Plantations from going on with them, or force them to something which is worse. The Crown of *Portugal* seems to me to have committed two great Errors in relation to this Planting this Country; the first was the Planting by the way of Force or Conquest: Their Kingdom being small and exhausted by their *East-Indian* Garrisons and Settlements in *Africa*, was not able to spare any considerable quantity of Men, for the reducing and keeping so long a Coast as this is, against such numerous and valiant Men, as the *Brasilians* are; And which made it worse, was, that it was not the Crown

Crown of *Portugal* that was immediately concerned, but certain private Adventurers of the Nobility of that Kingdom, who were not able to do it so effectually, as the Crown might have done it, but spent the Subjects of that small Kingdom to no very great and good effect! The second Error was the Grasping at so much, and making the Settlement so far distant from each other, that they were not able to Succour each other. Had all the *Portuguese* in *Brazil* been settled together, in a smaller compass of ground, they might have despised the Natives, and any forainer that could have attacked them at that distance; but being so dispersed, and so few in Number, they fell a prey to both. If the War with *England* had not diverted the *Dutch* Supplies, it is more than probable, they would have driven the *Portuguese* at length out of *Brazil*. So before that, if the the *French* civil

Wars had not hindered *Castilion*, the Admiral of *France*, from sending Reinforcements in due time, and proposition to them, he had sent thither, they would have fixed here in the despite of the *Portuguese*.

Portugal also by this means lost her own liberty, and was reduced under the Vassalage of *Spain*, for want of Men to defend the Country; and had not *Spain*, been more exhausted by the Plantations in *America*, Banishment of the *Mores*, and the tedious *Netherland* War, *Portugal* had never been able to recover out of this Vassalage; So that whilst they conquered in *America*, they were Conquered in *Europe*: this will also in fine be the Fate of *Spain* too, tho being a Greater Kingdom, it may subsist for some time.

And so much for *B R A S I L*.

O F

G U I A N A.

GUIANA is bound on the East with the main *Atlantick*; on the West, with the Mountains of *Peru*, or rather some undiscovered Countries interposed betwixt them; on the North, with the River *Orenoque*, and on the South, with that of the *Amazons*. The reason of the name I find not, unless it be so called from the River *Wia*, of which more anon. It is yet said to have had this name given it, because it lieth in the same Latitude with *Guiana* in *Africa*, and is not much unlike it in other Circumstances; but we may be sure of this, it had its name from the other.

It is situate on both sides of the Line, extended from the fourth degree of Southern to the eighth of Northern Latitude. The Air notwithstanding this situation under the *Aequator*, is affirm'd to be temperate, the Eastern winds (which they call the *Briezes*) constantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extream heats thereof by their cooler blasts. The Country towards the Sea-side flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and swelled with Hills: in all places so adorned with Natures Tapestry, the boughs and branches of the Trees never unclothed or left naked, (Fruits either ripe or green growing still upon them) that no Country in the World could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we shall see anon, when the particular parts hereof come into discourse.

Of the People it is said in general, that they have amongst them no settled Government, and though they acknowledge some Superiority in the Chiefs of their Tribes, yet it is only voluntary, as long and as little as they please. Adultery and murder which are only punishable, are not otherwise expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer sort have two or three Wives, and sometimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her: they that have more, and they who have but one, alike jealous of them; and if they take them in Adultery, without any farther Ceremony or Formalities of Law, they beat out their Brains. Their Wives, especially the elder, they use for Servants, and he which hath most such is the greatest man. Without Religion, or any notion of a Godhead; not so far on wards on the way to the worship of the true God as to be Idolaters: for though Idolatry be mistaken in the proper Object, it supposeth a Deity; and they who have this principal that there is a God, have

learned one and not the least, of the points of their Catechism. Their Accounts amongst themselves they keep with a bundle of sticks, which they diminish or increase according to the times of their Contract. Their Funerals they solemnize with a Feast, but with such diversity in the deportment of both Sexes, that while the Women houl extreamly, the men perform the Obsequies with singing and excessive drinking; the one as improper for a Feast, as the other for a Funeral.

Rivers of most note in it, besides 1. *Orenoque*, and 2. the River of *Amazons*, and those rather Boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, then proper unto this alone. 3. *Arrawary*. 4. *Conawene*. 5. *Caspurough*, or *Cassipure*; all falling into the same main *Atlantick*, betwixt the River of *Amazons* and *Wiapoco*: the last rising out of the Lake of the *Arachosi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or influx into the Sea, and but five spans deep. 6. *Wiapoco*, of which more hereafter. 7. *Wia*, This River is 4. 40. from the Line to the North, beautiful and of a long Course, of a Fruitful Soil, and very broad at its fall. *L. Keymis* found a large safe Haven, made by some Islands at the mouth of it, *Laet.* p. 639. 8. *Cajane*. 9. *Marwine*, this is a vast River, and is 5. 45. from the Line to the North, and one German mile at the mouth over, and very deep. *Harcourt*, in 1608. sailed up this River, and was kindly treated by the *Indian Ryoletts*; about 20 Leagues from the mouth he found Cataracts very difficult in passing. The Soil about this River is low, and of a Red Colour, and not so fruitful towards the Sea. Nigher up seven or eight Miles, it riseth higher into Hills, but else like the former, *Laet.* p. 646. 10. *Essequabe*, a River of twenty days journey long, betwixt *Wiapoco* and the River of *Orenoque*, or *Raliana*.

The whole divided commonly into these four parts:

1. *Rio de las Amazonas* or the River of *Amazones*. 2. *Wiapoco*, or *Guiana* specially so called. 3. *Orenoque*. And 4. The Isles of *Guiana*.

1. *RIO DE LAS AMAZONES*, or the River of *Amazons*, containeth that part of this Country which lieth along the Tract of that famous River. The Soil is in some places dry and barren, in others fertile and Productive of the choicest Fruits, full of large Woods, and in those Woods most sort of Trees which are to be found in *America*: One amongst others of most note, (and perhaps peculiar to *Guiana*) which they call the

N n n n n

Torako

Totocke, a Tree of great Bulk, and as great a Fruit; this last as big as a mans head, and so hard withal, that when the Fruit grows ripe and Ready to fall, the people dare not go into the Woods without an Helmet, or some such shelter over their heads, for fear of beating out their Brains. The kernels of it, for the most part ten or twelve in number, have the taste of Almonds, and are said to be provocative in point of Venerie. Of which the Savages have this By-word, *Pigue secke in Saccowe pingean Totocke*; that is to say, Eat *Totocke* if thou wouldst be potent in the acts of *Venus*. Here are also Sugar-Canes in some places; and the Plant called *Pita*, the taste whereof is said to be like Strawberries, Claret Wine, and Sugar.

The Principal Inhabitants of this part of the Country, the *Taoes*, *Cuckettuay*, *Pattecu*, *Tockianes*, *Tomoos*, and *Wackebanes*, dwelling on the Continent; the *Maraons* and *Arowians*, possessed of the Islands. Towns of note I have met with none amongst them, though every house (most of them 140 foot in length, 20 in breadth, and entertaining at the least an hundred persons) might pass sufficiently for a Village. Yet they are safer housed then so, for otherwise their Houses would afford them but little comfort in the overflowings of the River which drown all the Country: and therefore they betake themselves to the tops of Trees, and there remain like Birds, with their several Families, till the Waters be drawn in again, and the Earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find some of these their dwellings called by proper Names: as, 1. *Matarem*. 2. *Roakery*. 3. *Anorcaprock*. 4. *Haaman*. 5. *Womians*: and 6. *Cogemymne*. But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The first Discoverer of this River and the parts adjoining was *Orellana*, the Lieutenant of *Gonzales Pizarro*, whom his Brother *Francisco Pizarro*, then Vice-roy of *Peru*, had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved with the noise of some rich Countrys beyond the *Andes*, he raised sufficient Forces, and passed over those Mountains, where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a Boat, and sent this *Orellana* to bring in Provisions. But the River which he chanced into was so swift of course, that he was not able to go back; and was therefore of necessity to obey his fortune in following the course of that strong water. Passing along by divers desolate and unpeopled places, he came at last into a Country planted and inhabited; where he first heard of the *Amazons*, (by whose Savages called *Comapuyaras*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people. And in the end, having spent his time in passing down this River from the beginning of *January*, to the end of *August* 1540. he came at last into the Sea, and getting into the Isle of *Gubagna*, sailed into *Spain*. The course of this Voyage down the Water, he estimated at 1800 Leagues, (or 5400. *English* miles) but found no *Amazons* in his passage, as himself affirmed; only some masculine Women shewed themselves intermixt with the Men, to oppose his landing; and in some places he found Men with long Hair like Women: either of which might make these parts believed to be held by *Amazons*. But to proceed, arriving at the Court of *Spain*, he got Commission for the Conquest of the Countries by him discovered; and in the year 1549. he betook himself unto the service. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at least, he could never hit upon the Channel which brought him down, though he attempted often. Which ill success, with the consideration of his loss both in Fame and Fortunes, brought him to his Grave; having got nothing but the honour of the first Discovery, and the leave of his name to that famous River, since called *Orellana*. The Enterprize was pursued, but with like success, by one *Pedro de Orsua*, Anno 1560, after which the *Spaniards* gave it over. And though the *English* and the *Hollanders* have endeavoured an exact Discovery, and several begun some Plantations in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the other; their Quarters being beaten up by the neighbouring *Por-*

tugals, before they were sufficiently fortified to make any resistance.

2. *WIAPOCO*, or *G U I A N A* specially so called, taketh up the middle of this Country, on both sides of the River of *Wiapoco*, whence it hath its name. A River of long Course, but not passible up the Stream above 16 miles, by reason of the Cataract or great fall from the higher Ground: in breadth betwixt that Cataract and the *Estuarium*, about the tenth part of a mile; at the *Estuarium*, or Influx, a whole mile at least, and there about two Fathoms deep. This great River is four Degrees 30. Minutes from the Line to the North, it falls into a Bay three miles over, but within it is both deeper and narrower. In the year 1608. *Harcourt* an *English* man, left 10 *English* men, and one *German*, with the *Indians* that live upon this River, and lived there three years, and but six of them died in that time, and that by Misfortunes rather than Diseases. *Laet*. p. 637.

The Country on both sides of this River very rich and fertile; so natural for Tobacco, that it groweth to nine handfuls long. Sugar-canes grow here naturally without any planting, and on the Shrubs great store of Cotton, and the Dye by some called *Orellana*. Plenty of Venison in their Woods, and of Fish in their Rivers: their Fields well stored with Beasts, which themselves call *Moyres*; in shape and use resembling Kine, but without any Horns. The people generally of a modest and ingenuous countenance, naked, but would wear cloaths if they had them, or knew how to make them, (one would think this might be said of all the naked nations, but it cannot, many of them being hardly, and with great difficulty to be brought to Change this Custom, and that not suddenly neither) Their Bread is made of a Plant called *Cassavi*, of which also being dried and chewed, and then strained through a Wicker Vessel, they make a kind of Drink, in colour like new Ale, but not so well tasted, and of less continuance. The greatest part of their Food is Fish, which they intoxicate with a strong scented Wood, and so take them up as they lie floating on the top of the Water. Much troubled with a Worm like a Flea, (by the *Spaniards* called *Niguas*) which get under the nails of their Toes, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no less torture to the Patient, without speedy prevention. No better Remedy found out, then to pour Wax melted hot on the place affected; which being pulled off when its cold, draws the Vermin with it, sometimes 800 at a pull. The women have such easie child birth, that they are delivered without help, and presently bring the Child to his Father, (for they have so much natural Modesty, as to withdraw from company upon that occasion) who washeth it with water, and painteth it with several colours, and so returneth it to the Mother.

Rivers of note here are very many; no Country under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleasant and goodly Streams. The names of some of them on both sides of the *Wiapoco* we have had before; the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long course, a goodly River all the way, and at the Mouth thereof to be large and broad, which passing through the heart of the Country, in the fourth degree and 49 minutes of Northern Latitude, may possibly occasion both the whole and this part more especially to be called *Wiana*, and by the *Dutch*, who cannot pronounce the *W*. *Guiana*. Certain I am, that by the name of *Wigna*, I have found it written in approved Authors. But what need farther search be made after lesser Rivers, (which will offer themselves to us of their own accord) when we have a Lake to pass over like a Sea for bigness, (*Magnum, famosum, & vastum, in scar maris*, as my Author hath it) by the *Taos* or *Taos* called *Rapanowinin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Country) *Parimin*; situate about a days journey from the River *Essequibo*, and neighboured by the great and famous City *Manoa*, which the *Spaniards* call *El Dorado*, (or the Golden City) from the abundance of Gold, in

Coin, Plate, Armour, and other Furniture, which was said to be in it. The greatest City, as some say, not only of *America*, but of all the World. For *Diego de Ordaz*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his *Mexican Wars*, and by him condemned for a Mutiny, put into a boat alone without any Victual and so cast off to seek his Fortune, affirmed at his return; that being taken by some of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King, then residing at *Minoa*, he entered the City at high-noon, travelled all the rest of that day, and the next also until night, before he came to the Kings Palace; but then he saith that he was led blind fold all the way: And therefore possibly enough this City might be no such Miracle as the story makes it; *Don Diego* being either abused by the Reports of the Savages, or willing to abuse the World with such empty Fictions. For though the *Spaniards* and the *English* have severally sought, and that with incredible diligence, to find out this City; yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be said in the Poets Language,

—*Est quod non invenis usquam,*

Esse putas nunquam———i. e.

That which is no where to be found,

Think not to be above the Ground.

Nor is there much more credit to be given unto his Relations of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingas*; who being, forsooth, one of the younger Brethren of *Atabaliba*, the last King of *Peru*, at the Conquest of that Kingdom, with many thousands of his Followers, came into this Country, and subduing the *Caribes*, erected here a second *Peruvian* Monarchy. For besides that *Atabaliba* had no Brethren but *Guaspar* and *Mango*, who both died in *Peru*, how improbable must it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing so well the thirst of the *Spaniards* after Gold, would either suffer him to return and disclose the Secrets of his State, or send him away loaded with Gold, as tis' said he did? Who sheweth his Treasure to a Thief, doth deserve to lose it. And therefore letting pass these dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us descend to places of less Magnificence, but of greater Reality. Amongst which I reckon, 1. *Caripo*, most memorable for a Colony of *English* planted by Captain *Robert Harcourt*, Anno. 1608. situate on the banks of the *Wapoco*, near the Mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock so difficult of access, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Air so sound and answerable to the constitution of an *English* body, that of 30, which were left there for three years together, there died but six, and those six rather by misfortune, and some Cross accident, than by any Diseases. 2. *Gomeribo*, on the top of an Hill, near the mouth of the Bay of *Wapoco*; possessed a while by some *Hollanders*, but soon deserted. 3. *Moyemon*, a Village of the *Paragoti*, on the banks of the River *Merwinen*. 4. *Crewinay*, on the other side of the same River, possessed by the *Caribes*. The King of the first (for each Tribe had its several Princes) being named *Maperitaka*, affirmed to be a virtuous man, and kind to Strangers; of the latter, *Minapa*. 5. *Tamparamunen*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River; and 6. *Moreshego*, four days journey from the other: both possessed by the *Caribes*. The King or *Cacique* of those last, at Captain *Harcourt's* being there, (of which time we speak) was named *Areminta*; affirmed to have a skin like a piece of Buff.

The principal Families of this part, besides the *Yaos* or *Jaos*, and the *Maraons*, (spoken of before, who possess almost all the Sea Coasts of this Country, are said to be the *Arwacca*, the *Sopayoy*, the *Mayos*, and the *Aracours*; of different Languages and Customs, though near neighbours unto one another. Originally Inhabitants of the Island of *Trinidad*, and the River of *Orenoque*: whence driven by the *Spaniards* they came into this Tract, and beating the old Inhabitants, whom they call by the common name of *Caribes*, higher into the Country, possessed themselves of the Sea shores and the parts adjoining:

each Tribe or Family being Governed by its several Chief, as before was intimated. The *Netherlanders* for a time had some footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their short stay amongst them, than to make the people disaffected to the *English*, of whose pretensions to these parts and designs to plant them, they had good intelligence. And to me it was confessed by some of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance how much the *English* were abused in those ill-reports. Afterwards in the year 1604, Captain *Charles Leigh* sailed from *Hoolwich* on the *Thames*, and in May fell upon the River of *Wapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, furnished with an House and Garden, and his Aid craved against the *Caribes* and their other Enemies. He took possession of the Country in the name of King *James*, and the Crown of *England*, and called the River of *Wapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caraleigh*; but that name ended with his Life, and that shortly after, he dying in his return on ship board. The design went forwards notwithstanding, and in the year 1608, an *English* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new possession taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before mentioned, the Country farther searched into by that noble Gentleman, then ever formerly by any or by many since. After three years, the Colony, wanting fit Supplies returned home again; the Plantation never since pursued though by some projected. Yet so far are these Savages beholden to the *English* Nation, that as they did defend them at their being there against the *Caribes*, so at their going off they taught them the use of Arms, and put them into a posture of defence, enabling them thereby to preserve themselves against all their enemies.

3. *ORE NO QUE*, or the Province of the River *Orenoque*, comprehendeth the North parts of *Guiana*, lying upon and towards the banks of that famous River, of which we have already spoken. The Country is very rich and pleasant, consisting of large Plains many miles in compals, adorned with the Embroidery of Flowers and unknown Plants, exceeding pleasant to the Eye; and sometimes interlaced with Hills reported to be furnished with rich Mines of Gold and Silver. The Country is daily stored with Fish, and the Forrests abound with Beasts and Fowls. No Country in *America*, nor *Peru* it is said, can be comparable to it for abundance of Treasure. Some will add a whole Mountain of Crystal to be seen afar off from *Winecaporo*; and tell us (but in general terms) of more goodly Cities then elsewhere in all *Peruana*; but neither the *Spaniards* nor the *English* could never see them, though they diligently searched into most parts of the Country.

The People, as of several Nations, so of several Natures. The *Capury* and *Macureos*, for the most part Carpenters, live by making *Caanos* or Boats, which they sell into *Guiana* for Gold, and to *Trinidad* for Tobacco, in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a *Cacique* or Commander dieth, they make great lamentation; and after the Flesh is putrid and fallen from the Bones, they take up the Skeleton, and hang it up in the House where he dwelt, decking his skull with feathers of all colours, and hanging Gold Plates about the bones of his Arms and Thighs. Of the *Tritivas*, dwelling upon some of the Northern Branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, that they are a goodly and valiant people, and to have the most manly and most deliberate speech of any Nation in the World. A people which eat of nothing that is let or sown; the Children of Dame Nature, and therefore will not be beholden for their livelihood unto Art or Industry; using the tops of the *Palmist* Tree for Bread; Fish, Deer, and Swines flesh for the rest of their sustenance. The *Affway*, *Sayme*, *Wickers*, and *Aroras*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with smoother Hair; and to use Arrows dipt in so strange a poison, as doth not only bring death, but death with most unspeakable torments, especially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arwacca*, of this Tract I find

nothing singular, but that when any of their Kings or Caciques die, their Wives and nearest of the Kindred beat their Bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink, like Spice.

Places of most importance in it (for to speak any thing particularly of those many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque* were an endless labour) are, 1. *Comolaba*, on the South of *Orenoque*, but somewhat distant, in which they keep some annual Fairs for the sale of Women. One of our *English men*, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1595, affirmeth that he bought eight of them (the eldest not above eighteen) for a half-peny red haisted Knife, which he brought from *England*. But withal tells us, for his credit, that he gave them to some Savages of his acquaintance. 2. *Moriquito*, a known Port upon some branch of the *Orenoque*; of much use to the *English* in their first Discovery of these parts. 3. *Winecaporo*, so called from whence was shewed an high Hill, said to be of Cristal, but so far off, that it was thought better to believe them there to go and see. Others report of this Mountain, that above it there is a mighty River, which, falling down this Cataract on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noise, as if a thousand Bells were knocked one against another. And possible enough it is, that this great fall of Water discerned far off may (with the help of Sun-shine) carry some resemblance of a Crystalline Mountain. 4. *S. Thome*, situate on the main Channel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 Houses, stretched out in length for half a mile, but slightly built; a Parish Church in the midst of it, and at the West end a Convent of *Franciscan* Friars. The only Town of all *Guiana* possessed by the *Spaniards*; not fortified till against the last coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1617. but taken by him at that time, and since that by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1629; though by both quitted, not long after it returned to the *Spaniards*.

The several Nations of this Tract have been named before; discovered first by *Diego de Ordaz*, Anno 1531. furnished with a Patent for the Conquest of it by *Charles* the Fifth. But not hitting on the right Channel, or otherwise not able to overcome the difficulties which lay before him, he returned to *Spain*, effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hierom de Ortal*, Anno 1533, and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded farther then the others Anno 1536. and finally by *Gonsalvo Ximenes de Quesada*, and *Antonio Berreo* with far better fortune: who beginning their journey from the *New Realm of Granada* in the search of *Guiana*, fell casually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazons*. But yet not perfectly discovered till the year 1595, in which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Prisoner this *Antonio Berreo*; and learning of him the success of his Expedition, resolved upon the Undertaking; and searched so far into the Country by the course of this River that some have since called it *Raliana*. The business was followed the next year (after his return) by Captain *Laurence Krymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that Service, who at his coming found the Country possessed by the *Spaniards*, by whom 20 or 30 of the moveable houses of the Savages had been laid together like a Town, and all the Natives, who wished well to the *English*, dispersed and scattered. So that without any other affect of his journey, then the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he first discovered) he set sail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the Court, that a Colony of *English* should be planted there, and some proportionable force sent over to make good the Action, but the motion was upon good advice rejected, first in regard of the distance of it from the main body of our strength; and secondly, because the *Spaniards*, bordering near upon it, might easily destroy a small force, and make the enterprise dishonourable to the *English* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of honourable Achievement. It was permitted notwithstanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State: whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh*

and *Harcourt*, before spoken of. But they, not being able to go through with so great a business, let it fall again. And so it rested till the last unfortunate Voyages of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, licensed by Commission under the Great Seal to search into some Mines of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Country. A design followed with great hopes by the Undertakers, most of them being persons of Honour, and well attended: but so unfortunate in the issue (the *Spaniards* being made acquainted with it before his coming) that at the taking of *S. Thome* he lost his own son, and a great part of his Forces, and after his return (not able with the residue to make good his ground against the enemy) was executed on a former Attender in the old Palace of *Westminster*, Octob. 29. Anno 1618. Of whom I cannot chuse but note what is said by *Camden* *Clarencieux* in his *Annals*: *Vir erat nunquam satis laudato studio & Regionem remotas detegendi, & Navalium Angliæ gloriam promovendi*. And so I leave him to his rest in the Bed of Peace.

4. The ISLANDS which properly are accounted of as parts of *Guiana*, lie either scattered on the shore, or in the mouths or bodies of the greater Rivers; some of them not inhabited, others of no name, and none at all of any reckoning. Only the Isle of 1. *Trinidad*, and 2. *Tabago*, are of some esteem: which though somewhat farther off from the shores of this Country, yet being that of *Trinidad* lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* pass but for one Prefecture, or Provincial Government, we shall describe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDAD*, or *Insula S. Trinitatis*, lieth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque*, over against *Paria*, from which separated by a Frith, or Streight, by *Columbus*, who first discovered it, called *Boca del Drago*, or the Dragons mouth, because of the dangerousnels of the passage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth degree of Northern Latitude; the most Southern Angle of it called *Punta del Gallo*, as that on the North East, *Punta de Galera*. The Frith, or Streight but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the Interposition of four or five little Islands, which the Sea breaketh through with great violence, leaving only two entrances for shipping into the Gulf called the Gulf of *Paria*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth 18. Of a Cloudy and unhealthy Air, but a fertile soil, abundantly well stored with such Commodities, as are of the Natural growth of *America*, viz. Maize, Sugar-canes, Cotton-wool, and the best kind of Tobacco, much celebrated formerly by the name of a Pipe of *Trinidad*. Here is also a sufficiency of Fruits and Cattle for the use of the Natives; and here and there some Veins of Gold, and other Metals: such store of Pitch, that innumerable Ships might be laden with it, but that it is conceived to be unfit for the calking of ships, because it softneth in the Sun. The place in which it groweth is by the *Spaniards* called *Terra de Braa*, by the Natives *Pichen*.

The People of the same nature and disposition with the other *Americans*, distinguished into several Tribes, but most of them reduced under the power of two petit Princes. But the greatest part of the Inhabitants, to avoid the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, forsook their Country, and ferried over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called *S. Josephs*, situate on the South-side of the Island, on the banks of a little River which the Natives call *Caroue*, the ordinary Residence of the Governour, who hath under him besides this Island the Provinces of *Guiana*, and *El Dorado*, (for so goes his Titles) yet a small Town, consisting but of 40 Houses when it was taken, Anno 1597. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; or as others 1595. He observed the North part was barren and Mountainous. The rest was very fruitful in Maize, Sugar Canes, and such other things as are common in this Climate. I suppose, saith my Author, it is not much encreased, since the *Spaniards* minding here nothing but the Planting of Tobacco. It has much mineral

ral pitch, but of no use, because it melts with the heat of the Sun, *Laet.* p. 661. *Antonio Berreo* the Governour of it being then made Prisoner, who furnished his taker with many Notions (and some meerly fabulous) towards the Discovery of *Guiana*.

This Island, first discovered by *Christopher Columbus*, in his third Voyage, Anno 1497. was by him called *La Trinidad*, it may be with some reference to the form hereof, shooting into the Sea with three points or Promontories. Nothing else memorable in the fortunes and story of it, but what is touched upon before. *Oviedo a Spaniard* saith, the South Cape of it lyes in nine Degrees of Latitude, and the North in 10, the *Dutch* say 10. 30. and the South 9. 30. It lyes from *Hispaniola* 200 Leagues South, from *Domingo*, *Margarita*, and *Cubagua* 40. In length it is 50 Leagues, in breadth 30. in form it is *Triangular*.

2. *TABAGO* lieth on the North east of *La Trinidad*, from which it is eight miles distant: full of safe Harbours for the bigness, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well stored with Woods: amongst which some *Palmito* Trees, some like that of the *Brasil-wood*, others not else where to be found. Of Fowl and Fish sufficient to maintain it self. Now called *New Walcheren*, with reference to an Island of that name in *Zealand*, by some of the *Low Country men*, who begin to plant there. As the *Hollanders* observe it lyes in the North Latitude of 11 16. The East side of it lyes very high and has two smaller Islands, and some Rocks lie near the Creeks in it are ve-

ny fit for the riding of ships. Its length is from North to South. The Soil is fruitful, and the Air very Pleasant. The best Harbours are on the West side of the Island. *Laet.* saith, the *Dutch* were in possession of the Island some years before he wrote, and from them he had an exact account, p. 666. His Description of *America* was finished in 1633. This Island in the year 1673. was plundered by the *English* under Sir *Tobias Bridges*, and they carried away 400 Prisoners, and as many *Negrees*. In 1677. the *French* being desirous to expel the *Dutch*, sent the Count *D'Estree*, with ten Ships which entered *Klips Bay*, and for several days engaged a Fleet of eight *Dutch* Ships lying under the Command of *James Binkins*, a *Dutch Man*, who so well defended the Island, that though the *French* pretended they destroyed the Fort the *Dutch* had built, yet the *French* were forced to draw off and leave the *Dutch* Masters of the Island. It is in length 32 miles, and in breadth about 11. This Island was Granted by *Charles* the second to *James Duke of Courland*, his Heirs and Successors only, to be peopled with *English* and *Courlanders*, who employed one Master *John Poincz* in that affair, but with what effect I know not, but it being in the hands of the *Hollanders* in 1677. it is probable they retook the Island, or that it was returned to them by the Treaty of Peace, the Articles of which I have not now by me.

And so much for *GUIANA*.

O F

P A R I A.

P A R I A is bounded on the East with *Guiana*, and the Islands in the mouth of the *Orenoque*; on the West, with the Gulf or Bay of *Venezuela*, and part of the new Realm of *Granada*, on the North, with the main *Atlantick Ocean*, or *Mare del Noort*; the Countrys lying on the South not discovered hitherto.

It took this name from a mistake of the *Spaniards*, (as *Peru* and *Jucatan* on the like) who asking, as all men do the names of those new Regions which they discovered, and pointing to the Hills afar off, were answered *Paria*, that is to say, high Hills or Mountains, (for here begins the ridge of Mountains, which are thence continued for the Space of 3600 miles, to the streights of *Magellan*; and so hath it ever since held the name of *Paria*. By some writers it is called *Nova Andalusia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the Soil and People being very different, will be more properly considered in the several parts. The whole divided into the Continent and the Islands, which, with their sub-divisions may be branched into these particulars, viz. 1. *Cumana*, 2. *Venezuela*, 3. *S. Margarita*. 4. *Cubagua*; and fifthly the lesser Islands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the East the Gulf of *Paria*, and the River *Orenoque*; on the West, *Venezuela*; on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana*, one of the Rivers of it on the banks whereof some *Dominican* Friars (who first set footing in this Country) built themselves a Monastery; that name being communicated afterwards unto all the rest of this Tract.

It is extended East and West to the breadth of 110 Leagues; the length thereof, from North to South, said to be 400. But there is little of it known, and less of it

planted by the *Europeans*; except some places near the sea: there being no part of all *America*, the description whereof hath come so imperfectly to our hands as it hath of this. For except it be the names of some Bays or Promontories, and of two or three most noted Rivers, there is not much that doth require our considerations.

The Country, for so much as hath been discovered, neither rich nor pleasant; and consequently the less looked after: covered with shrubs, and overgrown with unprofitable Briets and Bushes. Heretofore famed for Pearl fishing all along the Coast: from the Gulf of *Paria* to that of *Venezuela*, called therefore *Costa de las Perlas*; but that gainful Trade hath long since failed. Now only of esteem for a Vein of most excellent Salt, found near the Promontory of *Araya*, and the Bay of *Cariaco*, gathered and digged up thereabouts in great abundance, and never diminishing. The parts adjoyning take from hence the name of *Salina*; the Promontory bordering on the Frith called *Bocco del Drago*, the Title or Appellation of Cape *Salinas*. Of some strange Creatures in this Country, as the Beast called *Capa*, the soles of whose Feet are like a Shooe, a kind of Hog, which lives altogether upon Ants or *Pismires*, Parrots and Bats of more then ordinary greatness, I forbear to speak.

Of the people I find nothing singular, except it be, that having plenty of good Fruit, and of Fish and Flesh, they use themselves to a far worse diet, feeding on Horleeches, Bats, Spiders, Grasshoppers, Worms, Lice, and such other Vermin; In other things they seem to have a mixture of an ill Custom used amongst the Savages of *Asia*, *Africa* and *America*; as multitudes of wives, prostituting these Wives for the first Nights Lodging to the *Pisacos* or Priests, and for any after, to their Guests; taking great pains to black their Teeth, and putting strange colours

lours on their Bodies instead of Garments ; high-minded, treacherous, and revengeful ; accustomed to the use of poisoned Arrows, which they envenom with Snakes Blood and other mixtures. In one thing only differing from the rest of their neighbours, which is, the fencing of their Grounds or Orchards with a Cotton thred, as high as ones Girdle, and an opinion which they have, that whosoever breaketh it, or goes over or under it, shall die immediately ; more safe in that perswasion than by brazen Walls. The Women tilled the Earth, and planned all their Provisions, whilst the Men were employed in War and hunting. The Women went naked, and exposed themselves to all Men till they were married ; but after this wear some slight thing to cover their Nakedness, and were more reserved, *Laet.* p. 672. The Spaniards were so cruel to this People, that in 1513. the Monks of St. *Dominick* interceded with the King of Spain, to have the civilizing of them, which was granted by *Charles* the fifth.

River of most note, though of little, 1. *Rio de Canoas*, 2. *Rio de Neveri*, 3. *Cumana de Bardoneir*. The chief Havens or Roads for shipping, 1. *Moximo*, 2. *S. Foy*, and 3. that called *Commenagot*. The places of most consideration, 1. *Cumana*, a Colony of Spaniards on the Bank of the river of that name, but distant about two miles from the sea, on which it hath a safe and convenient Harbour : the Town is hedged about with Woods, that nothing can be seen of it till one come into it, except it be the Governour's House, seated upon the top of a lofty Mountain. 2. *S. Fago*, a strong Fortrel built by the Spaniard for defence of the salt Lake, by *Salinas*, in the year 1622, on some intelligence that the *Hollanders* had a purpose to rake them from him ; fortified to the Rules of Art, and planted with 30 pieces of Ordnance, the one half of Brals. 3. *S. Michael de Neveri*, on the River so called, a Fort of the Spaniards, 4. *Guaniba*, a Village of the Natives.

The Country first was discovered in the third Voyage of *Christopher Columbus*, but the possession of it was first taken by two *Dominicans*, who out of a Religious zeal to plant the Gospel in these parts, founded themselves a little Cell in the place where the Burrough of *Cumana* was after built, Anno 1513. and doubtless had sped very well in their holy purpose, if some covetous Spaniards had not treacherously seized upon one of the Chiefs of their Tribes ; and carried him with his Wife and Train into Spanish bondage. For this the poor Monks suffered death, I may call it martyrdom, which was revenged by *Alonso de Oieda*, Anno 1520. and he not long after slain by the Savages, who also at the same time destroy'd two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Fryers, which had been founded in the year 1518. A Second force sent higher under *Gonsalvo de Ocampo*, wasted a great part of the Country, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs some of his people. But that strength being withdrawn or defeated also, *Diego de Castellon* is sent over by the Council resident in *Hispaniola*, to secure the possession of the Country ; by whom the Castle first, and after the Burrough of *Cumana* was built and planted. Some other attempts there were for a farther Conquest ; but they proved nothing but attempts ; except the building of the Castle of *S. Michael de Newers*, by *Hierom of Orta*, and the Discovery of some of the inland Provinces, 150 Leagues from the sea-side, by *Antonio Sedenno*. Anno 1537. of which nothing followed, but the Registring of that tedious March.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounden on the East with *Cumana* ; on the West, with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alonso de Oieda*, one of the first Discoverers of it, Anno 1599. because he found a Burrough of some of the Savages situate in the midst of the waters, to which was no passage but by Boat : the word importune as much as *Little Venice*. It was first attempted to be conquered in 1528. by the *Germani*. On the East it is bound by the *Maracapana*, and to the West by *Cape de la Veba*, in

Length 200 Leagues. There was scarce a year alter this to that of 1553. but there was an expedition made by the *Germani* or *Spaniards* for the Conquest or discovery of this large Province, as is related by *Laet. lib. 18. cap. 8, 9, 10.* to the North it has the Bay of *Mexico*, and to the South *Orenoque* and the Provinces upon it.

It is in length from East to West 130 Leagues ; in breadth where broadest about 80. The Soil so plentiful of all sorts both of Fruit and Grain, the Country so replenished with all kind of Cattle, and excellent Pastures to maintain them, that the Neighbouring Nations call it by the name of *the Granary*. Such store there goeth from hence of Wheaten Meal, Bisket, Cheefe, Hogs flesh, Ox-hides, and Cloth of Cotton ready made, as very well deserves that Title. Here is also very great plenty of Fish, wild Beasts for hunting, Mines of Gold and other Metals ; beside an infinite deal of *Sarsaparilla* sent to *Europe* yearly. The people are of the same Nature and Disposition with those of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that Character. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and swim, as well as the men to Till the Land ; and look to the business of the house, whilst the men hunt or fish to bring in Provision. They count it a great part of Beauty to have very thick Thighs ; which they effect by binding their Legs hard below the Knee from their very Childhood. Shameless enough till married, after more reserved ; tho' rather for fear of a Divorce, than for love of Modesty.

Rivers of note I meet with none, instead of which are many convenient Harbours and capacious Bays. The chief that called *Golfo triste*, from some Shipwracks, or the like misfortune happened to the Namer of it. 2. The Bay of *Coro* or *Venezuela*, large and capacious, which by the Frith or Streight of half a League over, receiveth the Tributé of 3. The great Lake called the Lake of *Maracaybo*, by the Spaniards called *Lago de Nuestra Sennora*, or our Ladies Lake, in compass about eighty Leagues ; on the Banks whereof dwell many Nations of the Savages, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain Commerce with one another.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Meracapana*, the farthest Port upon the East, and one of the best on all this Coast, in which the Spaniards of *Cubagna* had once a Garrison, under colour of defending the Country against the Savages, but in plain truth to use it for an opportunity to seize upon their persons, and carry them away for Slaves. Those parts are hereby unpeopled, or but meanly populous. 2. *Venezuela*, the most Western Town of all the Province, commonly called *Coro*, situate in the Latitude of 11 Degrees, built on the Sea ; where it hath an Haven on each side ; the one capacious, but not safe, the other safe enough, but not very capacious. But being built in a sweet and healthy Air, and neighboured by the richest soil of all the Country, it had been long the ordinary seat of the Governour, and the See of a Bishop, (Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Domingo* in *Hispaniola*.) Once suddenly surprized by the English, Anno 1595. and burnt to ashes, but as suddenly repaired again, 3. *Caravalleda*, or *Nuestra Sennora de Caravalleda*, 80 Leagues from *Coro* towards the East, seated upon the sea near an unsafe Haven, and defended from assault by the Castle of *Caracas*, so called from the name of the Tribe in which it standeth. Near unto which the Hills arise to so great an height, that they seem to equal the *Pike of Tinariff*, so much talked of. 4. *S. Fago de Leon*, in the same Tribe of *Caracas*, taken by the English in the same year. This lies seven Leagues from the Bay of *Mexico*, seventy from *Coro* to the East, and four from *Caravalleda*. It is seated in a fruitful plain, having a Ridge of high Mountains between it and the Sea, *Laet.* p. 682. 5. *Nova Valentia*, 25 Leagues from *S. Fago de Leon*, and from *Coro* 60. 6. *New Xeres* lately built, fifteen leagues on the South of *New Valentia*. 7. *Nova Segovia*, one league only from *New Xeres* ; situate on the Banks

of *Baraquicemiti*, the most noted River of this Tract. This City was built by the *Germans*, about the year 1552. near Mount *St. Pedro*, and afterwards for the unhealthful sight of it, removed to the aforementioned River, which falls into the *Orenoque*. It stands 80 Leagues from *Coro*, to the South East Latitude 7. 40. About it live many *Indian Nations*, of different Languages. The Soil is barren, but feeds vast quantities of wild Beasts, and the River equally plenty of Fish; The Mountains near it have plenty of Gold, which occasioned the building this City, but they want Servants to work the Mines. The Cattle the *Spaniards* brought hither have encreased wonderfully, but the *Indians* that were Numerous then, are since waited to nothing, *Laet* p. 683. 8. *Tucayo* in the Valley so called; not very large, but plentifully loaded with rich sugar canes, for which some sugar-works or *Ingenios* are here lately built. 9. *Truxillo*, or *Muestra Sennara de la Paz*, 18 leagues on the South of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*, on which the Inhabitants hereof have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a Factory for the Sale of their Wares. 10. *Laguna*, on the bottom of the Lake it self; not else observable but for the Multitude of Tigers which do haunt about it.

This Country, discovered by *Columbus*, and named by *Alonso de Ojeda*, as before is said, was first pretended to, for Neighbourhood sake, by the *Spaniards* planted in *Cubagna*. Afterwards *John de Ampuez*, by order from the Council resident at *Domingo* in *Hispaniola*, was employed in the Discovery of it, Anno 1527. But *Charles* the Fifth, having taken up great sums of money of the *Vesperi*, a wealthy Family of *Augsburg*, pawned this Country to them, by whom *Ambrosius Alfinger* was sent with 400 Foot, and 80 Horse to take possession. But he and his successors in that Employment not minding so much the Conquest as the spoil of the Country, the Council of *Domingo* undertook the business once again; and in the year 1545 sent over one *John de Caravayal*, who treading in the steps of the *Germans*, or rather out-going them in all sorts of rapine, was outed on a second Order by one *John Perez de Tolosa*, by whom the Province was reduced into some good order. In the year 1550. the *Negroes*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africa*, began to mutiny; but their design was discovered, and themselves all slain, Peace and contentment following after all these Troubles, the Country was in little time so thoroughly Planted, and the Natives so encouraged in their several Tribes, that notwithstanding the destructions made by the *Germans* and *Spaniards*, here were reckoned not long since above 100000 of the Savages; not numbring those above 50, or under 18 years of age; who, by an order of the Council of *Spain* for these parts of *America*, are exempt from Taxes.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Island situate over against the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*, from the main Land, whereof it is distant above seven Leagues. So called from the abundance of Pearls which the *Spaniards* found at the first discovery, which the *Latinists* call *Margaritas*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it signifie no other than the vulgar or common Pearl, yet here were also store of those of the greater estimate, such as the *Romans* by the figure of *Antiphrasis* called *Uniones*, because they always grew in couples. *Nulli duo reperiuntur indistricti*, saith *Pliny*; unde nomen *Unionum* scilicet *Romanæ* imposuere *delicæ*.

The Isle is affirmed to be 16 Leagues in length, and six in breadth, situate under the 11 Degrees of Northern Latitude. Well stored with Pearls upon the Shores, when first discovered; but even then, when most plentifully stored with that Commodity, she had not water of her own to quench her thirst, compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwise plentiful enough both of Maize and Fruits. The people obsequiously servile to their Lords the *Spaniards*, so long accustomed unto Bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Monpater*, in the East Corner of the Island; a Fort of the *Spaniards*, built for securing their rich Trade of Pearl-fish-

ing, and to defend their Ships, which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Burrough, and the House of the Governour. 2. *El valle de Santa Lucia*, two leagues from the Sea, a *Spanish Colony*. 3. *Makamar*, the chief Village of the Natives.

This Island, first discovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, Anno 1498. grew suddenly into great esteem, by reason of the rich Pearl-fishing which they found on the Shores thereof. And in regard the Natives were so ready to betray their Treasures, (of which themselves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the *Spaniards*, and obtained more Liberties from the King, than the rest of the Savages. Inasmuch that the *Spaniards* either could not, or would not compel them to dive into the Sea for Pearl; but bought *Negro* Slaves from *Guiana* and the Coast of *Africa*, whom they enforced with great Torments to dive into the bottom of the Sea, many times seven or eight fathom deep, to bring up the shells in which that Treasure was included: where many of them were drowned, and some maimed with Sharks and other Fishes. But that rich Trade is much diminished of late, it is said not quite. The cause thereof to be imputed to the insatiable Avarice of the *Spaniards* so greedy upon Pearl, that they destroyed the very Seed, and making gain of whatsoever they could meet with, for a little present profit, lost the hopes of the future. The Island is since less famous, and not much frequented. Visited to its cost in the year 1601. by the *English* under Captain *Parker*, who received here 500 l. in Pearls for the ransom of Prisoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coast of *Angola*, laden with 370 *Negroes* to be sold for Slaves. Mr. *Gage* saith, it wants Corn, Grass, Trees, and Water; but the great abundance of Pearl and other Jewels, make amends for all these wants; there is also many rich Merchants, who have 30, 40, or 50 *Negro* Slaves to fish for Pearls; but then he says, that he has known at sometimes a Tun of Wine given for a Tun of Water, which shews either that they have no River, or sometimes died p. 174. This Gentleman was at *Carthage* in 1637. and might easily inform himself of the state of this Island. This Island saith *Laet* (p. 667) lies in length fifteen Leagues, in breadth six and seven from the Continent of *America*, is from *Trinidad* 20 to the West. The middle of the Island is eleven Degrees from the Line. It has no Potable Waters, but what is brought from the Continent, but very fruitful in Maize, Pasturage, and Fruit Trees. The *Hollanders* however report it to be unfruitful. The Pearl fishery also began to fail then, it being a very difficult and a dangerous Work for the *Negroes* to go down into five or six Fathom into the Water, to force the Oysters from the Rocks. In 1626. the *Holland* Admiral took the Principal Fort in this Island. The Natives are more numerous, and better used in this Island than in the other *Spanish* Conquest, because they willingly submitted to the *Spaniards*.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Island lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Aroya* upon the Continent; from the first distant but one League, from the other six; it fell in compass about three. Rich on the Shores by the abundance of Pearls which were found about them, but very beggerly on the land. Destitute both of Grass and Water, by consequence of Cattle also, except only *Cornies*, and but few of those. So that like many a Gallant, who spend all upon the Back, and nothing upon the Belly, she had her out side laced with Pearls, but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their bread and Water brought them out of other Countrys, and their Fruits too, if they desired to have any; here being very few Trees, and those most of *Guaiacum*. But so abundant in this treasure, that the Kings Filths for many years amounted to 15000 Ducats yearly out of this poor Island.

In this respect it was presently resorted to and possessed by the *Spaniards*, who planted here a Colony, which they call *New Cadix*, and grew in short time unto so great power, that they made themselves Masters of the Port

Port of *Maracapana* in *Venezuela*, one of the best upon those Seas. But in the year 1521. hearing that the Savages of *Cumana* had destroyed the Convents of *Franciscans* on the opposite shore, they cowardly forlook the Islands, and fled to *Hispaniola*. Sent back again by the Council there, under the Conduct of *James de Castellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautiful and strong then ever formerly. In greatest esteem as long as the Pearl-fishing did continue; now, with that decayed. Yet still the Island doth deserve some consideration, for a Fountain on the East part of it near unto the Sea continuing, though the Pearls be gone; which yieldeth a Bituminous substance like Oil, medicinable for Diseases, and is found two or three Leagues off floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of mankind, and more easily found, then the Pearls which sunk unto the bottom, and maintained our Pride. The *Spaniards* in 1521. built in it *Norvo Cadiz*; the *Indians* destroyed it, but it was rebuilt and flourished more after it than before, *Laet. p. 669.*

Four miles from hence, but appendent to it, lieth a little Island called *Coche*, 3 miles in compass, but so abundantly stored with Pearls, that it hath been worth in that one commodity, for some Months together, above a thousand pounds a month of our English money. First peopled upon that occasion, *Anno 1529.* but the occasion failing, the Plantation ended, the Isle being now unpeopled as not worth the looking after.

5. The LESSER ISLANDS of this Prefecture, or Provincial Government lie all along upon the Coast of *Venezuela*, from East to West. The Principal of which, 1. *Tortuga*, 12 or 14 miles on the West of *Margarita*: four miles in length, hardly one in breadth; but yielding such good store of Salt, that three or four Ships are laden with it every year. Well furnished with Goats and *Guaicum*, but not else considerable; except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks, and yielding a convenient Harbour for the use of Mariners. It is so seated, that in a clear day, both *Margarita* and the Continent of *America* may be seen; the greatest part especially to the East is Rocky and barren, by the Shore it has some Woods, but the Shores are Marshy and useles, *Laet. p. 686.* 2. *Catelina*, by the English called *The Isle of Providence*, as the former is by the name of *Association*; both which, being void of all Inhabitants and tame Beasts, were possessed by them about the year 1629, at such time as there was open War between *England* and *Spain*. After which, not being claimed by the *Spaniards* in making up the Peace ensuing, they were granted by King *Charles*, by his Letters Patent under the Great Seal of *England*, to certain Noblemen and Gentlemen, and their Successors, who for the space of 20 years, or thereabouts, have enjoyed them quietly; the Islands being planted by them with their several Colonies, and all things necessary to maintain and enrich the same. This Island is seated on the South of *Jamaica*, 130 Leagues South West of *Cape Falcon*, 60 from *Panama* to the North. It is not now reckoned amongst our Plantations, the Inhabitants being probably removed to *Jamaica* for more safety. The *Buccaniers* hereupon took possession of it, and built a very large Town, peopled with a lawless sort of Men, of all gatherings, who grew in a short time very rich, but none of them taking any care to fortify the Place, or furnish it with Arms or Ammunition; The Spanish Fleet surprizing the Town, put all the Inhabitants to the Sword, and burnt it to the Ground, the Crown of *England* not regarding it. The Town was however rebuilt and in a thriving condition, when in 1692. the *French* the second time destroyed it. This sheweth a necessity of Government, for the Preservation of Mankind, which how rich soever, would soon perish for want of some to take care of the Publick defence and safety, which private men are neither able nor willing to do. The Right of it having been so long in the Crown of *England*, it seems worthy of more re-

gard by reason of its situation; And might easily be made a staple or Port, for the furnishing the *Spaniards* with *Negroes*. 3. *Bonaire*, opposite to the Bay of *Golfo triste*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; well furnished with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattle brought out of *Spain*, and peopled with some Savages out of *Hispaniola*, whom the *Spaniards* Christened, and sent thither some *Spaniards* with their Governour intermixt amongst them. The Island 16 miles in compass; not fruitful naturally, but in Trees, which are great and numerous. The Shores of this Island are rugged, and the Land high, and the Sea to the South West so deep, that they tie the Ships to the Trees for want of Anchorage. It was taken from the *Dutch* by the *Buccaniers* in 1686, it lyes on the Eastern Shore of *America*, in 12 degrees of Latitude. 4. *Curacaos*, nine miles on the West of *Bonaire*, and as many in compass; of a more fertile soil by far, and of very rich Pastures. The people are given to Grazing, make good store of Cheese, transporting it thence to other places; the Island having toward the North a convenient Harbour. 5. *Aruba*, on the North-East of *Curacaos*, from which nine miles distant, in compass not above five miles, for the most part level. One Hill it hath (amongst some others) fashioned like a Sugar-loaf, Inhabited by few Savages, and fewer *Spaniards*.

The other Islands on this Coast, as 1. the *Tostigos*, lying Eastward of *Margarita*, 2. *Blanca*, which lyes twelve Degrees from the Line to the North as others say, 48. 40. Leagues from *Granada* to the South-West. In compass six *German* miles, the West side *Campagne*, the East Woody and full of sweet shrubs, under the greater Trees. The Soil is barren and Rocky, and destitute of Water, excepting Rain. The Woods filled with Thorny plants, yet the Plains are covered with a Grass Knee deep, on which the Goats thrive so well, that they are encreased to thousands. There live neither *Spaniards* nor *Indians* upon it, but the former go to hunt the Goats, and the *Hollanders* for that and Salt, *Laet. p. 686.* 3. *Orquilla*, This Island lyes in the Gulf of *Mexico*, 15 Leagues from *Tortuga* to the North-West, and 19 from *La Blanca* to the South-west Latitude 11. 15. others 11 30. and some 11. 50. The middle the truest; it is divided by the Waves of the Sea into several parts the most of it is plain. But it has some Mountains to the North-east Angle of it. The Sea so deep on the South, that a great Ship may lay her sides to the Shores, but on the North and East are the most Trees. It has Fountains of fresh Water, but no Birds, Beasts, or Men to inhabit it, *Laet. p. 687.* 4. *Rocca*, This Island lyes six Leagues from *Orquilla* to the Southwest, 12. 04 Latitude. The name imports rather a knot of Rocks than an Island, yet clothed with Trees five Leagues from East to West, in breadth three. The Continent of *America* is not easily seen from it, to the North it has a small Island, which is a very high Mountain, so white, that it is seen at a great distance. The south side of it has so deep a Sea, that no bottom can be found. It has neither Birds nor Beasts, the soil being rocky, and for the most part level with the Sea, *Laet. p. 687.* and 5. the *Isle des Aves*, or of Birds, interposed betwixt *Tortuga* and *Bonaire*, some of them rather Rocks than Islands, few stored with any living Creature for the use of Men, and none of them at all with men to manure and dress them. I pass over here, and so proceed from these Islands of the Province of *Paria*, to those which are subordinate to the Council of *St. Domingo*, and make a Province of themselves. But first we must go back, and bring up some of the Islands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former Provinces.

And so much of P A R I A

Of the American Islands:

And first of those which are in

MARE del ZUR.

THE AMERICAN ISLANDS scattered up and down the Shores of this New World, are commonly divided into those of *Mare del Zur*, or the Pacifick Ocean, and those of the *Atlantick*, or *Mare del Noort*. The first so called by *Magellanus*, the first Discoverer, who passing through those troublesome and tempestuous Streights, which now bear his name, found such a change upon his coming into the main that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur*, (*quod à tranquillitate vocavit Mare del Sur*, saith the Author of the *Atlas Minor*) from the calm and peaceable temper of it; by the *Latines* called *Mare Pacificum*, in the same regard: Called also the Southern Ocean, because of its situation on the South-side of *America*, in reference to some part of the Gulf of Mexico, and the Streights of *Anian*.

Not known unto the *Spaniards* till discovered by *Nonnus Vajquez de Balboa*, conducted hither by one of the *Caciques* or petty Kings of the Country about *Nombre de Dios*; who seeing the *Spaniards* so greedy after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirst should be satisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the opposite shore; this *Balboa* being the chief man in that Adventure: who discovering farther on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the rest that followed, to the Golden Treasure of *Peru*. He was executed notwithstanding this good service, by *D. n Pedro de Arila*, within a short time after. But the more full discovery of it is to be ascribed unto *Magellanus*, and some latter Adventurers, though the *Spaniards* got nothing by the bargain. For formerly, as long as the Southern Sea was unknown to any but themselves, they conveyed their Gold and Treasures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without loss or charge, and thought their Ports upon that Shore to be unaccessible: But after the way unto this sea was found out by *Magellanus*, *Drake*, *Cavendish*, and the rest of our *English* Adventurers, did so scour these Coasts, that they left them neither Port nor ship which they did not ransack; as hath been evidenced before in some particulars.

As for the Islands of this sea, they lie most of them so near the Shores, as if placed there by Nature, to serve as Outworks to defend the Continent. Many in tale, but few of consideration; and of those few, some of the chief have been described already in their proper places, as parts and members of the Province upon which they lie. The residue, which lie too far off to come under such consideration, must be mentioned here; and those reduced to these two Heads, 1. *Los Ladrones*, 2. The Islands of *John Fernandes*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Islands situate betwixt the main land of *America* and the *Philippine* Islands, in the Longitude of 185. and the 4. Degree of Northern Latitude. So called by *Magellanus*, who first discovered them, because of the Thievishness of the Inhabitants, (*Insulae Latronum* is their name in *Latine*) who had stolen his Cock-boat, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue still both their name and nature. Found first by *Cavendish* and *Noort* in their

several Voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying Iron (a commodity which they highly prize) but either closely or openly stealing whatsoever they met with. The People tall of stature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulency; extremely active, and good Divers, continuing a long time under the Water, as if alike fitted to both Elements; inasmuch that the *Hollanders* then with *Noort*, to make trial of it, cast five pieces of Iron into the sea, all fetched out by one of them. The Women as good at it as the Men. Both Sexes given to filthy and promiscuous Lusts; for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their Incontinency, the Pox having eating up both their Lips and their Noles.

Their Religion is worshipping the Devil, whose Images they have in Wood on the head of their Boats; the Chapple and the Saints fit for such Devotions. But for the nature of these Islands, and what subjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of Spain, I am yet to seek. But like enough they yield as little as some others do, which yet are reckoned by our Authors to be parts of *America*.

2. The Islands of *John Fernandes* are two in number. So called from *John Fernandes*, the first Discoverer, Anno 1574; each of five or six miles in compass, and about 300 miles distant from the shores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33 Degree of Southern Latitude; rocky and barren, but well wooded, and those woods replenished with Goats, but their flesh not savoury as in other places. Some store of Sanders there is in them, and of Palms no scarcity. Plenty of Fish upon the shores, for which cause visited sometimes by the *Spaniards* lying in *Peru*; and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads for shipping, which makes them not neglected by other Nations as they pass this way. None else of note in all this sea, but such as lie upon the Shores of their several Provinces; which we have looked upon already. And therefore passing through the Streights, and coming up unto the Islands of *Paria*, where before we left, we will now look on those of *Mare del Noort*, or that part of the *Atlantick* which washeth the Shores of this New World (the reason of which Names we have seen before) subordinate to the Council or Government of *S. Domingo*. viz. 1. the *Caribes*, 2. *Porto Rico*, 3. *Hispaniola*, 4. *Cuba*. and 5. *Jamaica*. The rest are already spoken of in their proper places.

1. The CARIBES.

THE *CARIBES*, or *Cannibal* Islands, are in number many; 27 of them known by their proper names, the rest of less note, (tho some of these of little enough) not yet so distinguished. Called thus in general, because inhabited by *Cannibals*, and man-eating people (at their discovery) as the word *Caribes* imports. They lie extended like a Bow from the Coast of *Paria* unto the Isle of *Rico Porto*: of different temper, as must needs be in such variety, and therefore not within the compass of a general Character. Some of the principal we shall consider more distinctly; and for the rest, it is enough to name them, or else we will pass them by.

1. *GRANADA*, the nearest of this crew to the Main Land

O o o o o

Land of *Cumana*, is situate in the Latitude of 12 Degrees and 11 Minutes, in form like a Crescent or a half Moon, the two horns not a mile asunder, the whole length but six, shaded all over with thick woods, but notwithstanding of a rich and fruitful soil. A Haven in it of good use, but no Town of note. The people of the same ill condition with the other *Savages*, but more wit to hide it; most mischievously intended when they seem most kind, and then most to be avoided.

2. *S. VINCENT*, 18 miles on the North of *Granada*, is of so blessed a soil, that it brings forth abundance of Sugar-canes, without charge to the Husbandman; watered with many pleasant Rivers, and full of safe and convenient Bays for the use of Mariners. In figure Circular: the Diameter being six miles over; the circle by consequence 18. the people but of mean stature, slothful, and studious only for the Belly: their love to which, makes them adventure in their small boats, hewn out of the body of a tree, to pass into the Continent, and return again without the help of a Compass, tho distant from it, at the nearest, above 30 miles. Its Latitude 16. 00. 24 miles long, 18 broad. It has many Mountains with fruitful Valleys between them, well watered with Rivers, and blessed with several convenient Harbours and Bays for Ships. The *English* have some Settlement upon it, but the *Caribbeans* are the more powerful, who have in it fair pleasant Villages, in which they dwell without the least Disturbance; and though they are jealous of our Ships, yet they Trade freely with them for Iron Wares. the *English* employ themselves in making Sugars.

3. *BARBADOS*, on the North-east of *St. Vincent*, in the Latitude of 13 Degrees and 20 Minutes, of an Oval form, 18 miles in compass. The soil in the like that of *England*, but far more fruitful. On the East thrusting out it self with Points and Angles, which yields some Bays, but full of Quick sands, and unsafe for shipping; on the South furnished with a large and commodious Harbour. Not very well provided of Fruits or Cattle, till made a Colony of the *English*, who brought hither from their own Country Swine and Kine, Oranges and the like from others. The chief Commodity hitherto made of this Plantation comes by the planting of Tobacco, and by a kind of coarse Sugar called *Barbados Sugar*, which must be quickly spent, or it will melt to nothing. Were they in stock and not forced to make a quick return of their commodities, they might make here as good Sugars as in other places. Yet this Plantation is said to be worth all the rest which are made by the *English*, who (as I take it) are the sole Colony in the Island; but at the courtesie of the *Spaniards*, without whole leave and liking not of force to hold it. This might be the state of it in 1648. but is not so now. The *English* said to inhabit here are above 50000, besides the *Negroes*. The first discovery of this Island to the *English* was by Sir *William Curteen*, in the Reign of *James* the first, but it was then wholly Desolate. In 1627. the *English* planted it, but driven at first to great extremities, because Ships came very rarely and slowly thither from *England*; afterwards its Reputation and Wealth encreased, by raising Tobacco, Indico, Cotton Wool, Tuftick-Wood, and Sugar Trade. And this Colony which for a long time subsisted by the Courtesie or negligence of the *Spaniards*, grew so strong and numerous, that all their after Attempts signified nothing. Their Sugars which were at first coarse, and would quickly melt, if not spent, are now improved to a great perfection. This Island is not well watered, with Rivers or fresh Springs, yet lying low, they want not that Element, being supplied by Pools, Ponds, and Cisterns. It is very fruitful, and enjoys a perpetual Summer; Hot but cooled by the Breizes of wind which rise with the Sun, and blow fresher as the Sun gets higher. The chief Town of this Island is *Saint Michaels*, situate at the bottom of *Carlyle Bay*, in the Southern part of the Island; where Ships have a very secure Harbour. In the year 1690. on the

fifth of *April* an Earthquake happened in these Islands, which did great mischief in *Nevis*, *Antego*, *Montserrat*, *Martinoque*. The stone buildings and Brick being generally cast down and destroyed. It was felt in the *Barbadoes*, but no manner of hurt done to Men or Beasts. The Sloops passing at Sea between *S. Lucia* and *Martinico* felt it at Sea, the Agitation of the Water being so violent, that they thought themselves on Rocks or Shelves, their Vessels shaking as if they would fall in pieces. Others passing by an uninhabited Rock or Island, called *Redunda*, found the Earthquake so violent there, that a great part of that Rocky Island split and tumbled into the Sea, making a Noise like many Cannons, and a Cloud of Dust ascending into the Air at the fall. By this it appears all the *Carribbe* Islands are united by subterraneous Vaults to each others, and it is probable, they were at first one Chain of Mountains, drowned some Ages since by the Ocean, when only these higher parts escaped.

4. *MANTININO MARTINIQUO*, on the North-west of the *Barbados*, by the *Savages* called *Mandanimam*, with little difference. Every where swelled with Hills of which three are most eminent for height; one of them, which way soever a man looks upon it, carrying the resemblance of an Hat. Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr* the Historian, with none but women; afterward with a more fierce and barbarous people than the rest of these Islands: but neither men or women to be seen of late: whether destroyed, or removed farther from the shores, for fear of their destruction, is a thing uncertain. *Martiniquo* has for a considerable time been a *French* Plantation, well inhabited and improved; but it is said the *French* are now driven out by the *English*, which time must discover.

5. *DOMINICA*, seated on the North of *Mantinino* 12 leagues in length; exceeding fruitful of Tobacco, which they sell unto the *Europeans* for Hatchets, Knives, and other instruments of Iron. Famed for two Fountains of hot water, and a commodious Haven at the West-side of it, into which falleth a River 20 paces broad. The people as barbarous as ever, *Cannibals* or Man eaters to this very day. At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, and to no man trusty, but where they cannot hurt, or dare not. Both Sexes wear their hair long, and colour their bodies over with Oaker. Yet bloody and barbarous, though they be, they are Ruled by a King of their own, distinguished from the rest in his dress or habit, whom they most readily obey. *Dominica*, This Island was discovered first by the *Spaniards* on a Sunday, and thence so called. It lies in Longitude 32. Latitude 14. 35. North-west of *Barbados*. The *English* lay the Latitude 15. 30 and 12 Leagues long, eight broad. It has a convenient Harbour on the West, the middle is Mountainous; the *English* have now planted it with Tobacco in part, but the *Caribbeans* being mixed with them, the Colony doth not thrive as it might do otherwise.

6. *DESEADA*, or the Land of *Desire*, on the North-east of *Dominica*, discovered by *Columbus* in his second Voyage, naked of Trees, and at the first sight afar off, not unlike a Galley. Of great use to the *Spaniards*, who always take it in their way to the *Canaries* to these parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The like use do they make of 7. The Island of *GUARDALUPE*, parallel to this, but directly Westward: at which the Fleets which come from *Spain* use to take fresh water, and there disperse themselves to their several Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in most parts of the sea adjoining. North-east from hence lieth *GUARDALUPE* is now at least in part peopled by the *French*, who are better thought of, and more kindly used by the *Caribbeans* than the *English*.

8. *S. Marin del Antigua*, commonly called *ANTIGUA* only, and by some mistakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven leagues in length, and as many in breadth, difficult of access, and destitute of fresh water; but well replenished with Woods and

and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colony of the *English*, who do still possess it.

9. *S. CHRISTOPHERS*, on the North-west of *Guadalupe*, in the Latitude of 17 Degrees and 20 Minutes. The length six miles, the breadth in many places four, and in some but two; much swell'd with Hills, and towards the East provided of several Salt wiches. The *French* and *English* had sometime in it several Colonies, by whom the Natives were destroyed, or otherwise compelled to forsake their dwellings; convict, as was pretended, of some manifest Treacheries. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the sole possession; ejected by *Fredrick de Toledo*, as he passed this way with his Navy; though suffered to return to their former dwellings, as rather profitable than dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief Employment and commodity lies in their Tobacco, by some much commended. This Island is 75 miles in Circuit, and planted by *French* and *English*, *Desnambuck* for the *French*, and *Sir Thomas Warner* for the *English*, taking possession of this Island, the same day, in the year 1625, being done by Mutual agreement of the two Nations. In 1629. *Don Frederick de Toledo*, had orders from the *Spaniards* to force the *English* and *French* out of the Island, with a Navy of 24 great Ships. The *French* were forced to retire for a time, the *English* eluded the storm, by an accommodation; and the *French* returning soon after resettled here. The *English* being constantly and plentifully supplied from *London*, are in the better condition, but the *French* were a long time too much neglected by their Country Men; and this contributed very much to the forcing them then to submit to the hard Usage of the *Spaniards*. The *English* are more in number than the *French*; but then the *French* to counterbalance this have four Forts, and the *English* but two, one of which commands the great Haven, and the other a descent not far from *Point de Sable*; and to prevent differences between the two Nations, each of 'em have a Guard upon the Frontiers of their Divisions, which is renewed every day. It is one of the most delightful Islands in the World, swelling in the midst into high Mountains, which afford upon the descents several Stages, which are planted one above the other, the higher enjoying the pleasure of the prospect of the lower, which are all made more lovely by Rows of Trees always Green, and fair Houses covered with glazed Slate. The soile is Light and landy, and is apt to produce all sorts of Fruits, as *Sugar*, *Tobacco*, *Cotton*, and *Ginger*; and wants not Springs and some hot waters fit for natural Baths. *Christopher Columbus* first discovered this Island, and called it by his own Christian name, to preserve the memory of it. The *English* have so encreased here, that they have sent Colonies from thence to *Barbados*, *Monserat*, *Antego*, and *Barbadoes*. The *French* have built a Town of good bigness call *le Basse Terre*, the Houses of it are Bricks, Freestone, and Timber, which is well Inhabited by Tradersmen and Merchants. In 1692. the *French* were beaten out, and the Island reduced intirely under the *English*. Joyning hereto, or but a league from it at the most, is,

10. The Isle of *NEVIS*, which is affirmed to be five leagues in compass, well wooded, and as pleasantly watered; insomuch as the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Dominica* used to come hither for their pleasures but for hunting chiefly. Now famed for some Baths or Hot-waters, found out by the *English*, who, in the year 1628. placed a Colony in it. But whether subsisting of itself, or a part of their Plantation in *S. Christophers*, I am yet to learn.

Nevis, this Island lies in 17. 19 North Latitude, and is 18 miles in compass, in the midst of it it has one high Mountain, but of easy Ascent, and covered with Trees to the top. In 1628. the *English* planted here, and in 1680. they were thought 4000 Men, and traded in *Sugar*, *Cotton*, *Ginger*, and *Tobacco* &c. It has three Churches for the Service of God, and a strong Fort for their security. The Soile is indifferent

fruitful, and feedeth plenty of Deer, and Game for Hunting. In the year 1689. this Island sent out *Sir Timothy Thornhill* with 500 Men, who burnt the *French* Islands of *S. Bartholemew*, *St. Martins*, *Mary Gallanta*; in this Expedition they took 700 Prisoners, besides *Negroes*, and plundered to the value of 80000 Pounds. Then they had 1200 Men well armed, and their Fort lines and Breast Works in so good order, that they did not fear any attempt of the *French*. It has *Barbados* to the West, *S. Christophers* to the North, and *Antego* to the South-east. On Sunday the sixth of *April* 1690. about five in the Evening, there was for some few Minutes heard a strange hollow noise, which was thought to proceed from the great Mountain in the middle of this Island, to the admiration of all People; but immediately after, to their greater Amazement, began a mighty Earthquake with that violence, that almost all the Brick and stone Buildings in *Charles Town* (the principal City) were in an instant levelled with the Ground, and the Timber Houses were shook, so that every one made what halt they could to get out of them. In the Streets the Ground in several places clove a foot asunder, and hot stinking water Spouted out of the Earth a great height, the Sea left the Land about three quarters of a Mile, so that large Fish lay bare upon the Sand, but the water presently returned again. There were several lesser retreats of the Ocean followed this. The Earth in many places broke open, and some thousand of great Trees fell into it, which were seen no more. It was very fierce in *St. Christophers*, *Antego* and *Monserat*, and *Barbados* had a feeling of it. Between this and the 30th of that Month there were several Smaller Earthquakes. This shewes that there is a Communication under the Water between all the *Carribbe* Islands, which seem at first to be a Ridge of Mountains, surrounded since by the Ocean, and so turned into Islands, So that Earthquakes will often happen.

11. *SANCTA CRUX* by the Inhabitants called *Ayay*, on the North west of *S. Christophers*, and the South east of *Porto Rico*, from which last distant 15 Leagues Woody and Mountainous, not well provided of fresh waters; but on the west-side furnished with a safe and commodious Road, under the covert of the Mountains. Amongst their fruits are some that resemble a green Apple, which tasted, so inflames the Tongue, that for 24 hours it swellerh in so great extremity, as makes it altogether useless; but after that by little and little it abates again. The like happeneth also to the Face, if washed before Sun rising with clear Fens-waters, which are very frequent in this Island; after the rising of the Sun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colony of the *English* also, but of latter standing than those of *S. Christophers* and *Barbados*. This was either a misinformation, or that Colony is since cut off, or withdrawn to some other place, for there is now no Plantation of *English* on that Island.

Some of the principal of the rest are. 1. *Anguilla* 2. *Barbada*, 3. *S. Bartholemews*. 4. *S. Lucies*, 5. *S. Martins*, 6. *Monserat*, 7. *Rotunda*, 8. *Saba*, 9. *Virgogorda*, and 10. *Sumbrero*; of which we have little but the names: Of which *Anguilla*, so called from its shape, stands in the Latitude 18 21 in length 10 Leagues, in Breadth three. Inhabited by about 300 *English*, and live mostly by *Tobacco*. 2. *Barbada* is 15 Miles long, possessed by the *English*, and though very fertile, yet of no great account; being too much Exposed to the incursions of the *Caribbeans* of *Dominica*, who kill and destroy all they can Catch, and carry away the Women and the Children, together with the spoile and plunder. No nation but the *English* would bare this so long, when one Summer well followed with Doggs and Men, would in fair probability Destroy all the *Caribbeans*, in any one of these Islands. 3. *Monserat* is ten miles long, and 9 broad, stands in the 17 degree of Northern Latitude, mostly Mountainous, but the valleys are very fruitful, chiefly inhabited by *Irish*, but with a mixture of some *English*, in all about 700. *S. Martins*, *S. Bartholemews*, and *Mary Gallanta*, were

all hitherto possessed by the *French*, but have been Plundered and ruined by the *English* in this War. The rest are either desolate, or possessed by the *Caribbeans* which is full as bad; the rest, though known by several names, are not worth the naming. Only we are to add concerning the whole Nations of *Caribes*, once here inhabiting, that they did usually hunt for men, as men for Beasts, roving as far as *Porto Rico*, to seek after their prey; and what they caught was lured to go to the pot, in the worst sense too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Isle of *Guadalupe*, found 30 Captive Children which were reserved to be eaten, and in their houses divers Vessels filled with Man's flesh, and some upon the Spit ready to be roasted. Nor had they laid aside this Diet till after the year 1564 but how long I know not: For at that time a *Spanish* ship coming to water at the Isle of *Dominica*, they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the Land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Islands have been of late times well cleared of those Monsters; some of them brought unto better order, but the most destroyed as the common enemies of Mankind; the Islands where they dwelt being either totally deserted, or taken up by *Europeans*, and their several Colonies.

The severe revenges the *English*, *French* and *Spaniards*, have taken of them for this Barbarity, have in some degree cured it, so that they pretend not to eat any of the *Europeans* when they have slain them, but it is to be feared they eat the Women and Children they carry away. They pretend in excuse the Devil forced them to this course, which is a good reason they should be either necessitated to leave it or be extirpated from off the face of the Earth; at least all the Men and Women to the Children of tender years, who may be better educated in Servitude. Some pretend this is not possible, by reason of the difficulty of entering their Country, but fire or Sword will pierce thro' all, and their poisoned Arrows, are small defence against our Cannon and Muskets. Their rage is so great against the *English*, that nothing will appease them, and therefore we ought to pursue them till they submit and yield to mercy, which might be done in a short time, if it were well followed.

2. PORTO RICO and MONICO.

PORTO RICO lieth on the North-west of *Sancta Crux*, from which it is distant about 15 Leagues, and near upon as many from *Hispaniola*; 136 Leagues from the main Land of *Peria*, and not much less from the Cape of *Coguibocco* in *Rio de la Hacha*, a Province of *Castella Aurea*. It took this name from the chief Town and Haven of it, but was called by *Columbus* at the first Discovery *S. Jobannis Insula*, or the Isle of *S. John*, by the Natives *Boriquen*.

It is situate under the 18 and 19 Degrees of Northern Latitude, in form quadrangular, but of a greater length than breadth, such as the Geometricians call *oblongam*: the length hereof being 30 Leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Air hereof is very pleasant and temperate, not scorched with furious Heat in Summer, nor made offensive by the fall of continual Rains; exposed sometimes (chiefly in *August* and *September*) to the troublesome of sudden tempests, called *Hurricanes*. The soil is indifferently fruitful, though somewhat Mountainous: here being (besides other Hills of inferior note) a Ridge of high Hills which run cross the Country, from the one end unto the other. Their chief Commodities are Sugar-canes, Ginger, *Cassia*, and great store of Hides: the *Europeans* Cattle having so abundantly increased, that they kill thousands for their Skins, leaving the flesh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some Mines here were of Gold and Silver, but consumed long since. And so are all the Natives also; of whom, in respect, it is impertinent to give any Character.

Chief Rivers of the Island, 1. *Cairobon*, 2. *Boyaman*; of divers Fountains, and of several and divided Courses. 3. *Luyfa*, and 4. *Toa*; two Rivers growing out of one, The Spring of that one is in the Mountains of *Guayamo*, whence running Northwards in one Channel 16 Leagues together, it afterwards divides it self into those two

streams. 5. *Guiano*, 6. *Arezibò*, 7. *Guadiabo*, of lesser note; but all of them, as well as all the rest before, concluding in some safe and capacious Haven.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Porto Rico*, the chief Town, built in a little Island, on the North-side of the greater, but joined unto it with huge Piles at vast expences, by the command of *Philip* the first, Anno 1504. well built, with large Streets and convenient Houses, according to the Model of the Cities of *Spain*, and beautified with a fair Cathedral; the Bishop one of the Suffragans of the Archbishop of *S. Domingo* in *Hispaniola*. The Town unwall'd, but fortified with two strong Castles; the one of which secures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loss of 40 or 50 men, by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1595. but taken two years after by *George Earl of Cumberland*, who had a purpose to have peopled it with an *English* Colony. The History of this Expedition is thus delivered to us, by our Great Annalist *George Clifford Earl of Cumberland*, who his year put out a Fleet of 11 Ships, at his own Charges, with which he prevented the sending a Fleet to the *East Indies*, or receiving One from the West; he took *Lancerata* in the *Canaries*, and then passing on, took this Port, though it had a Garrison of 400 Soldiers, besides Inhabitants to defend it. Observing that the *Spaniards* looked upon it, as one of the Keys to the *Indies* he resolved to keep it, and refused a good ransom which was profered him for the Town. But finding his Men dye very fast, the Air not agreeing with them, he was forced to return home. Discouraged from it by the death of 400 of his Men, by change of Air, and some intemperance of Diet, he set sail for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Island but the dismanning it of 70 pieces of Ordnance, and some part of their Treasure, which he brought home with him. Which was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1625. when they burnt the City, but could never take the Castle. This Island lies eight Leagues from *Hispaniola* to the East. 2. *S. Germans*, in the Western part of the Island but four Leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Island, now both unfortified and small. 3. *Arezibo*, on the River so called. 4. *Luyasa*, the most noted Port of the Eastern parts, situate on the mouth of the River so named.

Eastward hereof, betwixt it and *Hispaniola*, lies the Island of *Mona* (might not this, think we, be so called by *Modoc ap Owen Gwynedd*, of whom before?) three leagues in compass; Rocky, and of a brackish Earth, but fit for the production of Limons, Oranges, and such kind of Fruit, which are here in plenty. Not far off but more towards the West, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *English* call it; where they found such infinite store of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as Hail, and made them almost deaf with the very noise; their Eggs so thick upon the ground that they loaded two Boats with them in three hours, and could hardly pass forwards without treading on them.

But to return to *Porto Rico*, or the Island of *S. Johns*, it was touched upon by *Columbus* in his second Voyage, Anno 1493. but first inhabited by *John Ponce of Leon*, Anno 1510. who being courteously entertained by *Aiguabana*, the chief Prince thereof, planted a Colony of *Spaniards* in the North part of the Island, which he called *Capparra*. The Colony ten years after that removed to *Guayama*, and from thence to *S. Germans*: carrying with it the repute of the chief Town of all the Island upon every remove, till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it since hath fixed. The Island very populous for the bigness of it when the *Spaniards* came to it: but the Natives were long ago consumed by several Butcheries; and, as some write, not above 1500 *Spaniards* are in all the Country. What else concerns the Story of it, we have seen before.

2. HISPANIOLA.

HISPANIOLA lieth on the West of *Porto Rico*, the distance we have seen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haity*, and by some *Quiquoa*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hispaniola*, or *Little Spain*, and of late times beginneth to be called *S. Domingo*, from the chief Town of it. The

The form thereof is Triangular, extended in a sharp Angle, called *Cabo del Enganno*, towards *Porto Rico*; the Western end fashioned like a Bay or Semicircle; the Northern point of which is named *S. Nicholas*, the Southern *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150 Leagues, the breadth in some places 60, in some but 30, thence growing less and less, till it come unto the Eastern Angle; the whole compass estimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18 and 20 Degrees of Northern Latitude. Of an Air much infested with Morning heats; but cooler in the afternoon, by the constant blowing of a Sea-Gale, which they there commonly call *Virfon*.

The Country is for the most part beautiful and flourishing; the Trees always in their Summer livery, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual spring. In many places well'd with high Craggy Mountains whence the name of *Huty*, that word so signifying in the natural Language of the Natives. Of such an excellent Herbage; that the Cattle brought hither out of *Spain*, have increased almost beyond Arithmetick; grown wild for want of proper owners, and hunted unto death like the Stags of the Forrest, though only to rob them of their skins. The soile so fertile, that in the space of 16 days, Herbs and Roots will grow ripe and fit to be eaten.

So plentifully stored with Cigge and Sugar-canes, that in the year 1587 there were shipped hence 17500 pound weight of Ginger, and 900 Chells of refined Sugar: an evident argument of the richness and fertility of it. A farther proof hereof may be. 1. The rich Mines of Gold, in which they used to find Gold without mixture of dross or other Metal. 2. The great increase of Sugar, one Cane here filling 20. sometimes 30 measures. 3. The wonderful yield of Corn, amounting in some places to an hundredfold. But the Mines were long ago exhausted, inasmuch as the Inhabitants are fain to use brass money: but instead of those of Gold, they have found out others of Brass and Iron, and some few of Silver; but not much feared into use for want of Workmen.

The reason of that want is to be ascribed unto the Cruelty and cruelty of the Spanish Nation: who, out of an insatiable thirst for Gold, consumed the people in their Mines; and out of the like thirst for Blood, killed so many of them, that in few years they destroyed three Millions of the Natives. And it is probably supposed, that had not *Charles* the Fifth restrained them by a penal Edict, from compelling the Natives against their wills to those works of servitude, there had not been one Native left in this Island, nor in any other part of their Plantations. Such as are left are said to be of a low stature, of black hair, and a Complexion somewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in Manners, Habit, or Religion, from the Spaniards there.

Rivers of most note are, 1. *Ozama*, on whose Banks stands *Domingo* the chief Town of the Islands, capable of the greatest ships to the very Wharf. 2. *Nigua* which passing through the rich Pastures, or making the Pastures rich by its secret virtue, runneth towards the West: as do also, 3. *Yaquimo*, 4. *Nizao*, and 5. *Neyba*, 6. *Hayna*, of a contrary course to the other three. 7. *Yagu*, or *Jacho*, which fall into the Northern seas. 8. *Nicayagu*, 9. *Cocitemico*, 10. *Xanique*. These three last famous heretofore for their lands of Gold. Some speak of 30000 Brooks and Rivers which are found in this Country; two parts of which vast number had their Golden sands. A thing so far beyond the charity of the strongest Faith, (though reported by a Grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-course, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The whole divided when the Spaniards first came amongst them into several Provinces or Kingdoms: as 1. *Higuy*, 2. *Jacuagnia*, *Samana*, in the Eastern parts; 4. *Yaquimo*, 5. *Boaruco*, and 6. *Xaragua*, towards the South; and 7. *Guababu*, and 8. *Cabaya*, in the West; and in the North, 9. *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold, 10. *Maricu*, the Landing place of *Columbus*, and 11. *Maguana* in

the Centre of the Island, the King when of in the time of *Columbus* was named *Conabo*, of greatest power of any of those petit Roylets. Another division of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all rising from one Mountain in the midst of the Island into four Divisions; 1. the River *Jacho*, running towards the North, 2. *Nubiba*, halting to the South. 3. *Yana*, or *Jamaica*, towards the East, and 4. *Hatibonico*, to the West. But these divisions being long since grown out of use, we will survey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us.

And they are, 1. *S. Domingos*, first built by *Bartholomew Columbus*, Anno 1494, on the East Bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1504) removed by *Nicholas de Obando*, then Governour of the Island, to the opposite shore. Upon occasion of an Earthquake that destroyed most of the Houses, but was not to the best advantage, it now wanting water, and being exposed to the Vapours of the Rivers at the Sun rising, which makes it less healthful. This City is situate in a pleasant Country, among Rich Pastures, and neighboured with a safe and capacious Haven: the houses elegantly built, most of them of stone, and the whole well walled; beside the Castle at the West end of the Peer to defend the Haven; enriched by the Residence of the Governour, the Courts of Justice, the See of an Archbishop, and (besides many Convents and Religious Houses) an Hospital endowed with 20000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Esteemed of greatest trade and concourse of Merchants, till the taking of *Mexico* and the discovery of *Peru*; since that time sensibly decaying, and now reduced unto the number of 600 Families of Spaniards; the greatest part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Negroes*, *Mulattoes*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by *Sir Francis Drake*, who in the year 1586. took it by force, and held it for the space of a month, burning the greatest part of the Houses, and suffering the rest to be redeemed at a certain price. The English General arrived here the first of January; 150 Spanish Horse endeavoured to have stopped his March, but being driven away by the small shot, he entered the Town with them; the Inhabitants at the same time running out at the North Gate, they found the City too big for them to pretend to Man, and therefore they took a part out, and cut it off from the rest. The Inhabitants would not redeem the City at first, but when a great part of it was burnt, then they were forced to pay 25000 Crowns to redeem the rest from Ruine. The rest of the Prey, the Cannon, Meal, and Sugar excepted, was worth very little; They found under the King of *Spain*'s Arms, this inscription, *Non Sufficit Orbis*. The Money in common use was Brass, and the Utensils most of China, and but little of Plate. *Camden* very narrowly escaped the vassilage of the English, once more in the year 1655. under *Pen* and *Venables*, who landed an Army of about 20000 Men on the Island. The Spaniards forsok the Town, and the English had taken it without resistance, if they had not come on shore too far from it, but in this time the Enemy recollecting themselves, got into the Town and defended it so well, that the English were forced to leave the Island, after which they took *Jamaica*. 2. *S. Salvador*, 68 Leagues to the East of *Domingo*. 3. *Jaguana*, called also *Santa Maria del Porto*, from a safe and beautiful Haven adjoining to it; situate in the West part of the Island: of no great bigness, consisting of no more then 150 Houses when it was at the greatest; but made much less by Captain *Newport*, who, in the year 1591. burnt it to the ground. 4. *Cotuy*, in the North of the Island, opposite to *Santa Domingo*, from which it is distant almost sixty Leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great esteem for its Mines of Gold. 5. *Conception de la Vega*, the foundation of *Christopher Columbus*, for whole lake afterwards adorned with a See Episcopal. 6. *Puerto de la Plata*, 40 Leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern shore, there built

on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando* before mentioned, by him also fortified, the second Town of Wealth and Trade in all the Island. 7. *Azua*, now called *Compostella*, a noted Haven, and resorted to for Sugars, which it yields abundantly.

This Island was first discovered by *Columbus*, (for I believe not that it was any of the Fortunate Islands, which we read of in the life of *Sertorius*) in the first Voyage which he made, conducted hither by some of the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Cuba*. Landing and gaining the good will of the Savages by gentle usage, he obtained leave of one of their Kings or *Caciques*, to build a Fortress in his Country, which he called *Navidad* or *Natividad*, leaving in it 36 *Spaniards* to keep possession: whom he found both murdered and murdered at his coming back. Being now better furnished for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Isabella*, (in honour of *Isabella* Queen of *Castile*) near the Mines of *Ciabo*; which afterwards was deserted also, and the Colony removed unto *S. Domingo*: the *Spaniards* sending one Colony after another, till at last their number was increased to 14000. besides Women and Children. But having rooted out the Natives by their infinite cruelties, and exhausted the riches of their Country with as infinite Covetousness, they betook themselves to fresher Quarters, abandoning the Island to devour the Continent. Once the Islanders rebelled and fortified themselves in the Province of *Baoruco*; a place so naturally strong, that there was little need of the Helps of Art. Not brought to leave that Fastness but on such Conditions as made the *Spaniard* less insolent, and themselves less Slaves.

4. C U B A.

CUBA lieth on the West of *Hispaniola*, from which parted by a Frith, or narrow Channel, interposed betwixt the two Capes of *S. Nicholas*, and that of *Mexico*, backed on the North with a Frie of Islands called the *Lucayos*, and some part of the *Peninsula* of *Florida*; extended towards the East to the extream point or Foreland of *Jucatan*, called *Cape de Cotache*, from which distant about 50 Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Isle of *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West, that is to say, from *Cape Maxie* towards *Hispaniola*, to the Cape of *S. Anthony*, 230 leagues; in breadth where broadest hardly 40, and but 15 in others. For the fertility of the soil contending with *Hispaniola* for the pre-eminence; but in the temperature of the Air a great deal before it. It being covered with woods of Cedar and other Trees, which makes it more easy for the Traveller, the shade abating the heat of the Sun. Liberally stored with Ginger, *Cassia*, Mastick, Aloes, Cinamon, and Sugar, (not reckoning such commodities as are common unto this with others) besides great plenty of Flesh and Fish, and of Fowl no scarcity. The Gold more droffie in the Mine than in *Hispaniola*, but the Brass more perfect. Hilly, and full of lofty Mountains; but those Mountains clad with divers Trees, some of which drop the purest Rosin, and the Hills sending to the Valleys many notable Rivers, that do all abound in Gold Sand, and in short, it wants nothing but Inhabitants, the *Spaniards* having left it for the Lucre of getting more Gold on the Continent. These Rivers are pestered with many sorts of Serpents, not so much out of any ill condition of the soil and air, as by an old superstition of the Savages, in former times not suffered to kill them when they might, (this being a Dish reserved for the higher powers) not able afterwards to destroy them, when it would have been suffered.

What other Savage Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they should not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much we may add in memory of the first Inhabitants, that an old man of 80 years, one of the *Caciques* of the Island, addressed himself unto *Columbus* at his first coming hither, advising

him to use his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the souls of men have two journies when they leave this world, the one foul and dark, prepared for the injurious and cruel person; the other delectable and pleasant, for the men of Peace. It is said also of them, they knew not the use of money, nor understood the niceties of *Meum* and *Tuum*; Tenants in common to the Blessings which the Earth brought forth, and Coheirs of Nature.

Amongst the Rarities of this Island, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy substance, which is found frequently on the Seas into which it falleth, excellent for the calking of ships. Secondly a navigable river (but the name not told us) the waters of which were so hot, that a man could not indure to hold his hand in them. They tell us also, thirdly, of a Vally 15 leagues from *S. Jago*, which produced stones exactly round, as if made for pleasure; but yet meerly natural. But these are no greater rarities than in other places, nor altogether so great as in *Hispaniola*. In which they tell us of a fair river whose waters are salt, and yet none but fresh streams fall into it. Of another Lake (three leagues in compais) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any Exit. Neither of these so strange or rare as the *Cucayo*, a kind of *Scarabe* or Beetle; the eyes and whings whereof, when opened, give so great a light in the darkest places, that a man may see to read and write by it, as well as by a Candle. This Island was infinitely peopled when the *Spaniards* discovered it; but they have destroyed all the Inhabitants, and not able yet to people it themselves, so that the greatest part of it is Desolate. This *Hispaniola* and *Jamaica* were the first places of *America* which *Columbus* discovered in the year 1492. There are six Cities in this Island, the principal *S. Jago* on the South side, and *Havana* a noble and well fortified Sea port on the North side, which is under the *Tropic* of *Cancer*.

Rivers of most note, 1. *Cante*, much annoyed with Crocodiles, (a Beast not common in these Islands, nor elsewhere in this) exceeding dangerous to such as repose themselves on the Banks of the River. 2. *Arimao*, which disburdeneth it self near the Port of *Xagua*. 3. *Rio de Porcos*, full of Rocks and Quick sands at the entrances of it. 4. *Rio Escondida*, passing betwixt *Havana* and the Port of *Marcanas*. 5. *Marien*, and 6. *Tanne*, of less note. Besides these there is *Xagua*, a safe Station and Road for Shipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and spacious when once entred; above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all sides from the Winds, that Ships lie here in safety without any Anchor. Some other Bays there be as useful though not so considerable. The *Dutch* traded safely to *Cuba* till the year 1606. when the *Spaniards*, after a severe Proclamation fell upon them with a Fleet, and a bloody fight ensued, in which the *Spaniards* prevailed, but not without great loss.

Towns of most consequence, 1. *S. Jago*, in the South part of the Island, situate about two Leagues from the Main, but in the bottom of a large and capacious Gulf, the most noted Port of all these Seas. Built by *Don Diego de Velasquez*, Anno 1514; afterward made a Bishop's See: beautified with a Cathedral, some Religious Houses: once not inferiour unto any for numbers of people; though now few enough, 2. *Caracao*, 30 Leagues on the East of *S. Jago*; the same foundation as the other, and neighboured by great quantities of *Eben-wood*. 3. *S. Salvador*, by some called *Baymo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it standeth; built by *Velasco* in the most pleasant and richest part of all the Island, but not so fitly as the other for Trade and Merchandise. *S. Porto del Principe*, an Haven-town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchy or bituminous Liquor, spoken of before, which I conceive to be much of the same nature with the Fountains of *Naphta* in the East. 5. *Trinidad* another of *Velasco's* foundations, nine or ten Leagues Eastward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well frequented, but now

now forsaken, and meer nothing. 6. *Havana* in the North parts, opposite to *Florida*, a noted and well traded Port; so strongly situate and fortified both by nature and Art, that it seems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Castles; a greater then either opposite to the mouth of the Haven; all so commodiously built and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and scatter the greatest Navy. Near one of them standeth an high Tower, from the top whereof, notice is given unto the Guards of every Ship that cometh within view of the Watchmen. The best assurance not only of this Island but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the most part with the Seat of the Governour, and the greatest Trade of all these Seas, the Ships which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the Gulf carrying here for one another till all meet together, and setting sail from thence by the Streights of *Bahama*, amongst the Isles of the *Lucaios*. This is the Harbour to which all the Fleets from *Spain* direct their Course; here they unlade their *European* Merchandizes, and here again they take in Plate and other Riches of the *Spanish West Indies*, in order to their Transportation into *Europe*; so that it is one of the most frequented Ports in the *West Indies*. And whilst all this Wealth passeth too and fro through it, much must stick here, so that it is become very rich and populous, and the *Spaniards* to secure this Important place, have built a strong Castle, and settled here a Governour, and a good Garrison of *Spaniards*. It is able to receive and secure 1000 sail of Ships, the shore defending them against the Sea, and the Mountains from the winds, without any Anchors. It has about 300 families of *Spaniards*, and many *Portugesse*. The Neighbouring Woods affords it plenty of Timber for Ships, and Houses, but they have no Iron to turnish and finish them, but what is brought from *Spain*. The time of the building this City is not mentioned, but was after *S. Jago*, and grew up insensibly, as that decay'd. A Fleet went hence for the discovery of *Florida* in the year 1539. In the Year 1568. *Chilton* an *English-man* saith, it was the chief Port the *Spaniards* had then in the *Indies*. The entrance of the Harbour is so narrow, that two Ships can hardly come in together; Yet it is six fathom Deep in that narrow place. In his time it had but 300 *Spanish* Inhabitants, and 60 Soldiers, who lived in the Castle, that was then newly built. *Hackluit*. T. 3. p. 458. Yet after all this caution, the *Buccaneers* in our time surprized these Castles, and the Town, and could have kept it, if our King would have consented to it, to whom they sent for Protection.

This Island was one of the first which was discovered by *Columbus*: who having almost tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, first fell upon the Island of *Guabanani*, one of the *Lucaios*, to which he gave the Name of *S. Savours*. From thence he sailed to *Baracoa*, on the North of this Island, which he caused to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick King of *Castile* and *Arragon*, at whose charge, and the encouragement of *Isabella* his Heroick Queen, he pursued this enterprize. Landing, he asked the people if they knew *Cipango*, (by which name *Paulus Venetus* calls the Isle of *Japan*:) and they conceiving that he inquired after *Cabao*, (of great note for the richest Mines in *Hispaniola*) pointed towards *Haity*; some of them going with him to conduct him thither. *Cuba* was by this means laid aside, and all the thoughts of *Spain* bent unto *Hispaniola*, where they found many Golden Provocations to invite their stay; till hungering after more Gold, and some new Plantations, they passed over hither, and in few years, by the prudent conduct of *Velasco*, got such footing in it, and made that footing good by so many Colonies, that their Title and possession was beyond dispute, and so continues to this day.

5. JAMAICA.

JAMAICA lieth on the South of *Cuba*, from which it is distant 20 Leagues, and as much, or very little more from *Hispaniola*. Discovered in the second Voyage of *Columbus*, by whom named *S. Jago*; that name changed afterwards to *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West about 50 Leagues, and in breadth 20; the whole compais estimated at 150; the middle of it under the 18 Degree of Northern Latitude. Of a rich soil, abundantly provided of all things necessary; well stocked with Cattle, and no less plentifully stored with most sorts of Fruits, which either industry or Nature have supplied it with. Great store of cotton-wool, and such abundance of *Juca* (a Root whereof the Savages once made their Bread) that it is deemed the Granary of the neighbouring Island. And were it not dis-furnished of Convenient Ports, (which is all the want of it) it would be as much frequented by sea-faring men, as any other in those parts. Once very populous, now destitute of all the natural Inhabitants; this Island, and that of *Porto Rico*, losing in few years 60000 by the *Spaniards* Cruelties. Cruelties which not only raged upon the Men, but destroyed Posterity: the Women here and elsewhere, so abominating their sad condition, that they strangle their Children at the Birth, so that they might not live to serve such a Cruel Nation.

Chief Towns hereof, (for though it be well watered it hath no great Rivers,) 1. *Sevilla*, in the North part of the Island, beautified with a goodly Monastery; the Abbot whereof hath all Episcopal Jurisdiction, and is privileged to wear a Mitre: in nothing more ennobled, than that *Peter Martyr* the Historian (to whose Decads all succeeding Ages are beholden for the Chorography and History of these parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2. *Millilla*, a small Town; but memorable for the unfortunate Shipwreck of *Columbus* on the Shores adjoining. 3. *Oristan*, on the South of the Island, fourteen Leagues from *Sevil*. 4. *De la Vega*, now a Ruine only, once a *Spanish* Colony; and of great fame for giving the Title of *Dukes* to *Christopher Columbus*, and his Brother *Bartholomew*. Since whose time nothing happened prejudicial to the State of this Island, by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*, till conquered, but not held by Sir *Anthony Sberly*, Anno 1596. In 1638. One *Jackson* an *English* Man, with a Fleet of *English* Privateers, surprized and plundred *S. Jago*, and then left it to the *Spaniards* again. The time being come when the *Spaniards* were to pay for their ingratitude to *Columbus*, and their cruelty to the Natives (some millions of which they had barbarously murdered) the *English* under *Pen* and *Venables* landed here, about 20000 strong, being most ruined Royalists, and Necessitous persons, who had been undone by Our then Tyrant and the times, May 3 1655. And the *Spaniards* being unable to resist so great a Force, retired into the Woods, and other fastnesses, hoping to have retrieved what they thus left, by a Treaty, but it proved otherwise, for part of the *English* fell to plant, and the rest to Privateer upon the *Spaniards*, by which they got Wealth; the same of this so encreased, that many going over to them, it became in a few years a very powerful Colony, and is now able alone to manage a War against all the Forces the *Spaniards* have in the *West Indies*. This Island is situate between 17. and 18 degrees of Northern Latitude, within the *Tropicks*, in the *Mare del Noord* 140 Leagues North of the main Continent of *America*, 15 South from *Cuba*, 20 West from *Hispaniola*, 160 North from *Bello Porto*, and 140 from *Carthagene Nova*. It is of an Oval from 170 miles long, and 70 in breadth, and contains four or five Millions of Acres, 900000 of which were planted in the year 1675. In the middle of it there is a lofty chain of Mountains, which run the whole Length of the Isle from East to West, from which spring great plenty of pleasant and useful Rivers, to the great refreshment and convenience of the Inhabitants.

The

The Soil is very rich and fat, which is black and mixt with Clay, except in the South-west parts, where it is generally a more loose Earth, but then it every where answers the Planters Care and Cost. The Air is always serene and clear, and the Earth in her Summer Livery here being a perpetual Spring. It has frequent showers of Rain, and constant cooling Breezes of Wind, which blow from the East, and the Dews which fall in the Night, quicken the Growth of what is planted; so that it is the most delightful temperate healthful pleasant Island, of all those in the *West-Indies*, and will be extremely considerable, when it comes once to be thoroughly peopled. *John de Laet*, saith, that for the Fertility of the Soil, the Pleasantness of the Woods, and the Plenty of all things, it is equal to the best of the Islands about it, but by reason of the want of Ports, and difficult access, infamous for Shipwrecks; otherwise it being seated in the midst of the other Island, between them and the Continent, it would be the most useful of them all to sail in the Bay of *Mexico*. Thus far he who wrote in 1633. Since that the *English* having obtained the Dominion of it, it is indeed more considerable, Strong, Rich, and Populous, than all the other Islands put together, and the most thriving Plantation we have in all the *West-Indies*.

The *English* being possessed of the Island, began to build *Port Royal*, upon an excellent Harbour, on the South-side of the Island, very commodiously seated for Trade, but upon a loose Sand, that neither yielded any firm foundation for the Houses, nor so much as fresh water for the life of Man; yet it became very large and populous, containing above 1500 Houses, and extending 12 miles in length upon the Harbour, and yet the Houses were as well rented as those in *London*. It became hereupon rich and well-traded from all parts, and was every day encreasing when in the year 1692, it was overtaken by one of the most dreadful Earthquakes that had been heard of, many of the Houses and Inhabitants being swallowed up alive by the Earth. Since that the Town is removing to the opposite Shore of the Harbour, where they have better foundation for their Houses, and many conveniences they had not before, though they will want some others.

This Town is a kind of Center of Trade, not only to the whole Island, but in some sort to all the Countries and Islands upon the Gulf of *Mexico*; The Riches that thus flowed in upon them, corrupted their manners, and may justly be thought to have hastened and encreased their calamities. The securing and encouraging this Great *Emporium*, is of infinite use and consequence to the Crown of *England*, there being no place to which a greater or more profitable Trade is driven.

Thus having took a short survey of the several parts of this great Body; we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government is committed chiefly to two great Vice-Roys; the one of *Nova Hispania*, who resides at *Mexico*, the other of *Peru*, who abideth at *Lima*, the principal City of those Kingdoms. The first hath Jurisdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Guatemala*, *Castella Aurea*, and the Provinces of the *Mexican* Islands; the other over those of *Peru*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Plata*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. Such scattered pieces as they hold in *Guiana*, *Paria*, and the *Caribes*, with their Forts in *Florida*, being reduced to some of these. Of these the Vice-Roy of *Peru* is of greatest power, because he hath the nomination of all the Commanders and Officers within his Government; which in the other are reserved to the King himself. But that of *New Spain* is counted for the better preferment, because of its nearness unto *Spain*, (in respect of the other) the Beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the People. For the administration of Justice, and ordering the affairs of the several Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there lieth no appeal; that is to say, 1. *Guadalajara*, for *Gallicia*

Nova; 2. *Mexico*, for *New Spain*; 3. *S. Domingo*, for the Province of the Islands; 4. *Guatemala*, for the Division so named; 5. *Panama*, for *Castella Aurea*. Then for the other Government, 6. *Quitos*, 7. *Lima*, and 8. *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Peru*, 9. *Imperiale*, for *Chile*; 10. *S. Fay*, for the *New Realm of Granada*. From these though no appeal do lie in matter of Justice; yet both from them and the two Vice-Roys, an appeal may lie in affairs of State, or point of Grievance. And to this end there is a standing Council in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the *Council of the Indies*, consisting of a President, eight Counsellours, two Proctors Fiscal (which we call the Solicitors general) and two Secretaries, besides other Officers; to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of these Countries, to appoint the Vice-Roys, to dispose of all the great Offices (except those of the Government of *Peru*) and spiritual dignities, to appoint Visitors to go into those Provinces, for the examining the actions of all Officers, hearing the Grievances of the People, and to displace or punish as they find occasion, but with the Kings privity and consent.

As for the Estates of private men, they which hold Lands or Royalties from the Crown of *Spain*, hold them but for life, (except it be the Marquess of *Valla* in *New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*) after their death returning to the King again; who gives them commonly to the eldest son, or the next of blood; but so, that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not for any right of theirs. And though they have many times attempted to make these Commanderies and Estates hereditary, and offered great sums of money for it, both to *Charles* the fifth, and *Philip* the second, yet they could never get it done; the Kings most prudently considering, that these great Lords having the command of the Estates and Persons of their several Vassals, would either grind them to powder without any remedy, or upon any Inquisition into their proceedings take an occasion to revolt. Both dangers of no small importance; both by this uncertainty of their present Tenure exceeding happily avoided.

The Revenue which the King received hence, is said to be three Millions of Ducats yearly; most of it rising out of the Fifths of the Mines of Gold and Silver; the rest by Customs upon Manufactures and all sorts of Merchandise, and the acknowledgments reserved upon Lands and Royalties. But out of this there go great Exits: that is to say, to the two Vice-Roys 12000 Ducats; to the President and Officers of the Council of the Indies in *Spain*, 20000 Ducats; to the Judges and Officers of the several Courts of Judicature very liberal Pensions; to every Archbishop and Bishop, of which there are 29 in all, 2000 Ducats at the least, and to some much more, to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite charges in maintaining Garrisons, and entertaining standing Bands both of Horse and Foot, in several parts of this Estate, and the continual keeping of a strong Armada to conduct his Plate Fleets to *Spain*; there must be made a great abatement, and the sum will bear it. For howsoever at the first his Revenue came from thence without any great charge, more then the keeping of a few Soldiers to awe the Savages; yet after he fell foul with *England*, and startled the *Hollanders* to Rebellion, he was compelled to fortifie all his Havens, and secure his Ports, and to maintain a strong Armada at the Sea, to convey his Treasures. Before which time the *English* (as is instanced in several places) did so share in his Harvest, that they left him scarce enough to pay his workmen; which if they should attempt again upon any Breach, they would find it very difficult, if not impossible, to effect any other way, but by making themselves too strong for him at Sea, and thereby either intercept his Fleets, or hinder them from coming to him to supply his needs.

And so much for the *AMERICAN* Islands.

Having

Having thus travelled over (with Gods Blessing) the Known Parts of the World, and sailed through the most difficult Seas which embrace the same ; we should now man our Barque again, and try what Discovery we can make of the Parts *Unknown*, or not fully known to us as the others are.

atque
Quò properas, mea cymba ? redi, satis ardua ponti
Navimus : ecce Aulter pluvias jam cogere nubes
Incipit, hic tutum non est (mibi crede) morari.
Dum licet, in Portum tendamus, nubila clarum
Reddiderint ubi pulsa diem, revocabit ab alto
Nos Triton Scopulo, atque iterum tentabimus Aequor.

That is to say,
But whither goes my Bark ? Return : for we
Have slic'd the Capering Brine enough : see, see,
The South wind 'gins to gather Clouds apace ;
'Tis no safe tarrying in so fierce a place.
Whilst thou hast time, retire, thou wearied Bark,
Into safe Harbour ; when the Clouds which dark
The World's Bright Eye shall be dispell'd away,
And shining *Phæbus* make a lightsome day,
Triton's shrill Trump shall thee recal again,
From the safe Harbour to the toaming Main :
And we with all our Powers will boldly try
What of this *UNKNOWN WORLD* we can descry.

A T A B L E of the Longitude and Latitude of the Chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second Part.

	Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.
A Capulco	276 0	18 0	Margarita	314 10	10 50
Almeria	272 15	20 0	Mexico	283 0	38 30
Ancon	321 0	6 20	Martha	301 20	10 40
Anegadas	296 0	50 0 A.	S. Michael	291 40	6 10
S. Anna Equitum	318 10	27 30 A.	S. Michael	327 10	47 20
Antigua	330 20	16 10	Mona	309 30	18 0
Antiochia	300 50	6 40	Monferrat	319 10	15 40
Arica	300 30	20 0 A.	Montroyal	301 0	45 40
Ajcenfion	353 20	18 50 A.	Mopox	301 10	10 0
Aravalo	298 10	1 30			
Acuzamil	289 30	19 0	Navaca	300 20	17 10
S. Augustin	293 0	29 50	Nicoia	284 30	10 40
			Nevis	318 40	16 20
Bahama	296 30	27 0	Nombte di Dios	294 30	9 20
Bahados	322 0	13 0	Norembega	215 40	43 40
Bovincas	296 50	15 50			
			Paca	302 50	13 10 A.
Campa	351 40	62 50	Paito	290 30	5 10 A.
Cartagena	300 0	20 10	Panama	294 30	8 30
Cartago	299 30	3 10	Panuco	270 10	22 20
Caxamulca	298 30	11 30 A.	Pasto	304 0	11 40 A.
Casafajake	308 0	38 0	Pina	296 20	3 0
Chajmetlan	260 0	25 40	Plata	305 0	9 50 A.
Chie	299 30	3 30	Popayan	297 20	1 50
Colima	267 20	19 50	Possession	241 30	32 20
Coilao	300 0	16 0 A.	Potosi	315 10	21 10 A.
Coquimbo	301 20	20 40			
Corduba	316 20	33 0 A.	Quicon	298 50	16 30 A.
Corno	259 40	31 0	Quinter	303 40	34 40 A.
Couliacan	266 30	27 0	Quito	293 10	10 0
Cusco	397 20	13 30 A.	Quivira	233 0	41 40
Darien	295 40	5 30	Roca	311 0	11 10
Deffrada	320 10	15 20	Roquelay	314 10	50 0
Dominica	359 40	14 0			
			Saba	317 30	17 20
Eflade	305 10	47 40	Salinas	321 40	52 0
Farnambuck	351 40	9 20	S. Salvadore	321 10	5 0
			Sante	294 40	9 30
Gorgona	295 10	3 20	Saona	309 0	16 50
Granada	310 20	11 0	Sorana	351 40	61 0
Guaiquil	294 30	2 30 A.			
Guadalquabot	282 20	31 0	Tabaco	322 10	10 40
Guanape	294 50	8 10 A.	Tarneco	270 15	24 40
Guardaliga	319 20	15 20	Tavasco	275 40	18 20
Guatemala	303 0	24 20	Tefligos	316 10	11 0
			Thomehamba	293 40	1 50 A.
Hargnedo	310 30	54 0	Tiquisana	305 20	16 0 A.
Havana	292 10	20 0	Tochipe	274 40	19 0
Hochelaga	300 50	44 10	Tortuga	303 50	20 20
Hunedo	304 0	51 30	Totontecac	248 20	36 0
			Trinidad	295 50	21 20
Jabaquo	315 15	17 15	Tumbez	291 40	4 10 A.
S. Jago	298 10	30 10			
Isabella	305 20	18 50	Val paraise	300 0	33 0 A.
			Ullao	242 10	30 30
Lempa	274 10	16 50	Uraba	297 20	7 30
Lima	296 40	23 30	Urcos	301 0	14 50 A.
Losa	293 30	9 50 A.	Woccan	307 30	34 0
Malagnana	306 0	23 40	Zacatula	269 4	20 0
Malones	279 40	13 40			
Maracapanza	312 10	8 0			

A in the Mark of Southern Latitude

A N
 A P P E N D I X
 T O T H E
 F O R M E R W O R K,
 Endeavouring a Discovery of the
 Unknown Parts of the World:
 E S P E C I A L L Y O F
Terra Australis Incognita,
 O R T H E
 S O U T H E R N C O N T I N E N T.

An Advertisement to the Reader.

There is nothing of Greater Advantage to the World than the discovery of new Countries, and yet there is nothing goes on with more difficulty, for which many reasons may be given; but to make them throwly understood, they must be divided between Princes and Merchants, and those that are common to both.

Our Princes have of late been so engaged in Wars, and other such Avocations, that they have had no time or money to spend in things of this nature, which are Works of Curiosity and Grandure, rather than of Necessity and Policy. Secondly, All the Nations that are famed for Navigation, have found the lately discovered Countries in *Africa* and *America*, have so exhausted their Countries of their Inhabitants, that they have no desire to give a Temptation to more of them to leave their Kingdoms to their Ruine.

As to the Merchant, his design is profit, and nothing else, and these discovery Voyages will certainly for some time be driven to loss, and when they are once found certain and profitable, then others that had no share in the charge or hazard, will as certainly be putting in for their Shares of it, without any regard to the first Discoverer; nor can this be prevented, without the Princes will grant them Charters, to restrain the Trading thither for some time.

Both Princes and Merchants do very hardly pursue those things which they can never so Appropriately, as to exclude others from partaking with them in the thing so found; yet it cannot be denied, but the first Finder has always been well paid, but men are not satisfied with this, but envy all other men the least advantage they may make from their labour and experience. And it is impossible to hinder this, without sending potent Colonies, which in the present State of Affairs, are not to be spared out of any of our Maritim Kingdoms or States.

Thus the *Dutch East-India* Company having found the *Terra Jassi*, to the North of *Japan*, and the parts of the South Continent over against the Islands of the *East-Indies*, would never suffer either of them to be any further discovered or discoursed of, for fear the States of *Holland* should Erect a new Company to Trade in this new discovery, and take from them some part of their profit: And the same humour without doubt possessed our *East-India* and *African* Companys, and kept from endeavouring a perfect discovery of this South Continent, and also from giving any good account of that which they Accidentally met with.

The best way to promote it is, to erect a Company for that purpose; and in the mean time, let not any Man complain that there is want of Trade in the World, when it is apparent, that not one fourth part of that which is known is Traded to, and there is as much more to be discovered as is now known. Above half the North Hemisphere, and all the South, being either not known, or not Traded to. And 'tis the cold Countries that want most things, and Consequently do afford the best Trades. But in the South Continent there is both hot and cold Countries, and Men may take their choice as they think fit.

How much Trade may be enlarged by new discoveries, will appear to any man that compares the State of *England* as now it stands with what it was when *Julius Caesar* entered the same Country, about fifty years before the Birth of our Saviour; when the *Britans* went naked, and lived by hunting, and had no Towns but great Woods fenced in. Yet had the *Greeks* and *Phenicians* been here before him, and taught them to fight in Chariots, and to make use of Iron for Weapons, and to till the Ground. The same observation will be made good in *Germany*, *Holland*, *Denmark* and *Sweden*, and all the parts upon the *Baltick* Sea, and more Northward.

Such as the *Romans* found these Northern Nations, such were the *Greeks*, *Italians*, *Spaniards*, and *Africans* when

when the *Phœnicians* first discovered them, and sent Colonies to civilize them ; and as civility and knowledge spread, so commerce followed, and being once began, it seldom or never fails to go on. And there is no doubt but the Company of *Hudsons Bay*, that Trades with the Northern *Americans*, is one of our best Companies, and doth deserve the greatest encouragement for that cause amongst many other, because they have opened a Trade where none was before, which will encrease and grow greater every year, as those people came to learn the use of all our Manufactures, and to value them, and they will as certainly spread the knowledge of them to their Neighbour Nations, which will enlarge the Trade every year.

The great design of God has ever been the Civilizing mankind, and that of the Devil has ever been the making them more barbarous; and those Men that promote that work of God, and behave themselves well in it, shall find the effects of his favour, in the prospering their affairs; but then they must deal civilly with the barbarous Nations, as far as is possible bearing with their simplicity and folly, and use no Treachery or Cruelty against them, and further than is necessary to their own defence, as to the last, for the first is never necessary or useful.

An Appendix to the former work, Endeavouring a Discovery of the Unknown Parts of the World

AN D here we are upon a new and strange Adventure, which no Knight Errant ever undertook before. Of things unknown, as there is commonly no desire, so less Discourse can probably be made upon them. By *unknown* therefore we must understand *less known*, or not well discovered; and in that sense we may as well endeavour to say somewhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the Discovery. And to say truth, even in the known parts of the World there is much unknown; as in the best and most flourishing Kingdoms of the Earth, there is some vast ground, either not cultivated at all, or not so well inhabited as the rest of the Country. For besides many vast Tracts of ground in the North and North-west parts of *Lararia*, and as such parts of *India* as lie North-wards towards *Delanguer Nancrocot*; the East-parts *Caucasus* and the Realms of *Cathay* it is conceived that the greatest part of the Midlands of *Africk* are undiscovered to this day, or the knowledge of them so imperfect, as comes near a Nescience; and for *America*, not reckoning in the Northern Borders, (which are in part to be the Subject of this Enquiry) it is affirmed of the Midlands by *John de Laet*, (who hath made the most exact description of it that ever was extant) *minima sui parte perlustratum esse*, that the least part of them hath been discovered hitherto to any purpose. Leaving these therefore as before without farther search, we will divide the *UNKNOWN WORLD* into these two parts: 1. *Terra Incognita Borealis*, and 2. *Terra Incognita Australis*: which with their subdivisions we will now pursue.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS is that part of the *Unknown World* which lieth towards the North; and is to be considered in these three Notions. 1. As directly under the Pole, which for distinction sake we will call *Orbis Arcticus*; 2. as lying to the North-east on the back of *Europe* and *Asia*; or 3. on the North-west on the back of *America*.

1 *ORBIS ARCTICUS* is that part of *Terra Borealis Incognita* which lieth under or about the *Arctic Pole*; the situations and dimensions of which being taken with the *Astrolabe* by an *Oxford Frier*, are by *Mercator* thus described out of the Itinerary of *James Cnoxe* of *Bois le due*, or the *Boische*, a Town of *Brabant*.

“Under the *Arctic Pole* (saith he) is said to be a black Rock of wondrous height, about 33 Leagues in compass, the Land adjoining being torn by the sea in-

to four great Islands. For the Ocean violently breaking through it, and disgorgeing it fell by 19 Channels, maketh four *Euripi* or fierce Whirl pools, by which the Waters are finally carried towards the North, and there swallowed into the Bowels of the Earth. That *Euripus* or Whirl-pool which is made by the *Scythick Ocean* hath five Inlets, and by reason of his streight passage and violent course is never frozen: the other on the back of *Greenland*, being 37 Leagues long, hath three Inlets, and remaineth frozen three months yearly. Between these two there lieth an Island on the North of *Lappia* and *Burmia*, inhabited, as they say, by *Pigmies*, the tallest of them not above four foot high. A certain Scholar of *Oxford* reporteth, that these four *Euripi* are carried with such furious violence towards some Gulf, in which they are finally swallowed up, that no ship is able with never so strong a Gale to stem the Current, and yet that there is never so strong a Wind as to blow a Windmill: The like is reported by *Giraldus Cambrensis* in his Book *De mirabilibus Hiberniæ*. So far and to this purpose he. But *Blundevil* our Countryman is of another opinion, (as indeed who not?) neither believing that *Pliny* or any other of the *Roman Writers* came hither to describe this Promontory; or that the *Oxford Frier*, without the assistance of some cold Devil of the middle Region of the Air, (and consequently able to endure all Weathers) could approach so near, as to measure these cold Countrys with his *Astrolabe*, or take the height of this black Rock with his *Jacob's staff*. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucian's* Dialogues, then any serious Discourse: we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. The *NORTH WEST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are those which lie on the back of *Estotiland*, the most Northern Province of *America*: by which it hath been much indeavoured to find out a passage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to go so far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Streights of *Magellan*. Attempted first by *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1497, at the charge of *Henry the seventh of England*. But having discovered as far as to the 67. Degree of Northern Latitude, by the mutiny of his Mariners he was forced to return; when finding great preparations for a war with *Scotland*, that business for the present was laid aside. Resumed by *Gaspar Corterialis* a *Portugal*, Anno 1500, and after by *Stephen Gomez* a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525; but neither of them went so far to the North as *Cabot*. The *Spaniards* notwithstanding would not so give over, but first with five Ships from the *Groyn*, and afterwards by two from *New Spain*, sent out by *Cortez*, pursued the enterprize: which proving as successless as the former had been, occasioned *Charles the fifth* then preparing for *Italy*, on the payment

of 35000 Ducats by King *John* the third, to suspend the Prosecution of it. Followed with greater industry, but as bad success, by Sir *Martin Frobisher*, who made three Voyages for these parts, (the first of them in the year 1579) and brought home some of the Natives, a Sea Unicorns horn, (still kept in the great Wardrobe of *Wind-
for Castle*) and a great deal of the Ore of that Country, found upon trial, when in *England*, not to quit the Cost. A great Promontory which he passed by he called *Queen Elizabeth's Foreland*, in whose name he took possession of it; and the Sea running not far off he called *Frobisher's Straights*. The Seas full set with Icy Islands, some of them half a mile about, and eighty Fathoms above Water: the People like the *Samoeds*, the worst kind of *Tartars*, in their lives and habit. *John Davies* followed the design Anno 1585, at the encouragement of Sir *Francis Walsingham*, then principal Secretary of estate: and having in three Voyages discovered to the Latitude of 73, by reason of the many difficulties which he found in the enterprise, and the death of Mr. Secretary, he was fain to give over; leaving unto a narrow Sea on the North of *Estotiland* the name of *Fretum Davies*, in the Latitude of 65 and 20 Minutes, by which name it is still called. After him followed *Weymouth, Hall, Hudson, Button, Baffin, Smith*; all *English*. The result of whose Endeavours was the finding of some cold Isles and points of Land, which they named King *James* his *Cape*, *Queen Ann's Cape*, *Prince Henrie's Foreland*, *Saddle Island*, *Barren Island*, *Red-goose Island*, *Diggs* his *Island*; all of them betwixt 80 and 81: and the imposing on some passages and parts of the Sea the names of *Hackluyt's Headland*, *Smith's Bay*, *Hudson's Straights*, *Maudlin's Sound*, *Fair Haven*, and the like marks and monuments of their Undertakings. Nothing achieved of publick moment, but the Discovery of an Island called *Cherry Island* in the Latitude of 74. and the Shores of a large piece of the Continent, which they caused to be called King *James* his *New Land*, most commonly *Greenland*; where they found many white Bears, with white, gray and dun Foxes, Partridges, Geese, and some other Provisions. Sea Unicorns Horns, great store of *Morses*, (or Sea-Horses) the Oil and Teeth whereof yield no small Commodity. But most considerable for the Trade of Whale-fishing, which our men use yearly upon those Coasts; of whose Oil, Bones and Brain (this last supposed to be the true *Sperma Ceti*, now used as Medicinal) they raised very great profit.

3. The NORTH EAST parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are those which lie on the North of *Russia* and *Tartary*, by which the like passage towards *Cathay* and *China* hath been oft attempted; and hitherto with like success. Endeavoured first by *Sebastian Cabot*, the son of *John Cabot*, so often mentioned before, by him trained up in the Discovery of the North-east parts of *America*. His Employment failing here in *England*, he betook himself into the service of the King of *Spain*; and coming out of *Spain*, Anno 1549, was by King *Edward* the sixth made Grand Pilot of *England*, with an Annual Pension of 166 l. 13. s. 4. d. In the year 1553, he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Discovery of *Russia* and the North-east Voyages, undertaken and performed by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, *Chancellor*, *Burrough*, *Jenkinson*; and after prosecuted by *Pet* and *Jakman*. Some of which perished in the Action, and were frozen to death; their Ship being found the next year hemmed about with Ice, and a particular account of all things which had happened to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Russia* (since that time made a common Voyage without dread or danger) and passing down the *Volga* to the *Caspian* Sea, and by that to *Persia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophie*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594, and in some years after, tried their Fortune also, under the Conduct and Direction of one *William Barendson* their chief Pilot; but went no farther then the *English* had gone before them; yet gave new names unto all places as they passed, as if they had been the first

Discoverers, with Pride and Arrogance enough. Nothing since done of any note or consideration for the opening of the North-east passage, or giving us any better account of the North of *Tartary*, or any Country beyond that, but what we had many Ages since out of *Paulus Venetus*: so that we are but where we were, in a *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly discourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant Undertakings, yet when I look upon the natures of those Shores and Seas, those tedious Winters of ten months, with no Summer following, the Winds continually in the North, and the main Ocean paved with Ice so long together; I cannot chuse but rank the hopes of these Northern Passages amongst those adventures which are only commendable for the difficulties presented in them.

A great part of this attempt has miscarried, by the supposal that *Wigats* Streight between *Nova Zembla* and *Russia* was a thoroughfare lying in the Latitude of 70. and thereupon they have entered it, and been driven about by the Winds and Ice, till they have with great difficulty found the Way out again: *Charles* the second thereupon sent a Letter to the *Czar* of *Russia* to have it examined by Land, and it was found *Nova Zembla* was Joined to the Continent by a neck of Land on the East side, and that this Sea was nothing but a Lake. This is confirmed by the experience of our Mariners, who could never find any Tyde in that Sea. The *Dutch* on the contrary, who have kept the high Sea, have passed to 75. degrees of Latitude on the coast of *Nova Zembla*, and discovered *Spitzberg* to 81 degrees of Latitude, without any difficulty, of equal greatness. Now the greatest height of *Nova Zembla* is but 75. Though there be some small Islands on the East of that Cape, that reach to 80; so that the Cape of *Nova Zembla* may certainly be doubled, as has been found by experience. But in the next place, men fright themselves with another vast promontory in *Tartary*, called by the Ancients *Cape Tabin*. For it is agreed by all, that after *Nova Zembla* is passed, the Shore bendeth to the South. To which I reply that *Nova Zembla* is their *Cape Tabin*, but placed by information too much to the East by *Ptolemy*, and that it is wonderful in those dark Ages, they should ever be able to gain the knowledge of it, and of the *Ryphean* mountains, which butt upon it, beyond which they knew nothing, as neither did the *Russians* till of late, they found a passage above it to the South, but called it the *Belt* or *Girdle* of the World, and thought it unpassible. So that upon the whole we may safely conclude, there is a passage beyond *Nova Zembla*, and that it is most probable, this is the most Northern Cape they can meet with; and consequently that there is a passage this way to *China*. But if it should be otherwise, there are certainly Inhabited Countries beyond it, in which a Trade might be raised that would be more profitable than any of our other Trades are, and would open a passage by some of the great Rivers beyond that Cape to *China*, which would afford a more profitable Trade than that upon the Sea Coast usually is.

The way to discover this is, to send some Ships that shall Winter at *Arch Angel*, and set out in the opening of the Summer in *May* or *April* upon the discovery, and so pass straight away for the Cape of *Nova Zembla*, and in probability the Ship will be able to effect the discovery that Summer; if not the men must be furnished with provisions and materials to build an house to subsist anywhere, the want of which was the loss of Sir *Hugh Willoughby* on the Coast of *Lapland*.

To encourage this Discovery the more, there ought to be a Charter granted to a certain number of men, that they only shall use the passage by them so to be discovered for twenty, thirty, or forty years, as shall be thought fit, and to Trade by it to any part of the Eastern or Western World, but not exclusive of others. The profit of this Discovery is so great and well known, that I need say nothing of it, the World being already well satisfied of it. As

As for any passage by the North-west, it has been so well searched, that we may conclude it highly improbable, if not impossible.

There is two other ways besides that I mentioned, to discover the North-east Passage; one is to send some Marriners and Ship Carpenters by Land to the River *Obb*, and there to build a small ship, and go down that River, but this will be found hard, for want of Iron Work. The other is to send a ship from the *East-Indies*, to search the shores of the *Corea*, cutting North on *China*, and so to pass North-east as far is possible. This is more easy than the other, and perhaps more profitable; because at the worst, it will open a Trade between the hot and cold Countries on that side, which do most need each other, to the great profit of the Discoverer.

England is the Country in the World that is the most concerned to find this out, for a place to vent our cloaths and other manufactures, which are more saleable in the cold, than in the hot Countries.

But whatever be the Event of this, what I have added here, is all that has been discovered in these Northern parts of the world since the Author wrote, and has come to my Knowledge.

TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA.

With better hopes we may go forwards on the next Discovery, and try what may be done on *Terra Australis*, or the Southern Continent, though hitherto *Incognita* also, almost as much unknown as the *Artick* Islands, which none but my good Frier of *Oxon* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our Learned *Brerewood* to be as large as *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*: and that upon such strength of Reasons, as cannot be easily overborn by any opposite. His Arguments in brief are these. 1. That as touching Latitude, some parts thereof come very near to the *Aequator*, if they come not also on this side of it: and as for Longitude, it keepeth along, though at several distances, the whole continual course of the other Continents. 2. It is clearly known, that in the other two Continents the Land which lieth on the North side of that Line, is four times at the least as large as that which lieth South thereof; and therefore, since the Earth is equally poized on both sides of the Centre, it must needs be that the Earth in answerable measure and proportion must advance it self in some places above the Sea on the South-side of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By consequence, what is wanting in the South parts of the other two Continents to countervail the North-parts of them, must of necessity be supplied in the Southern Continent.

To these two Reasons, with the Readers leave I may here subjoin a third from experience, all Marriners that in dubling the Cape of *Good Hope*, have by contrary winds been driven to 40 or 45 degrees of South Latitude, have by experience found the Southern Winds exceeding cold, though they were then in the height of *Spain*, or at most equal with the South parts of *France*; which proves, that those Winds come off a vast Tract of Land to the Southward, and not very remote neither, for all Winds that come off the Land, are colder and more piercing than those that come off the Sea.

The Country being so large, so free from the Incumbrances of Frosts and Ice and endless winter, I have oft marvelled with my self, that no farther progress hath been made in Discovery of it: considering chiefly by the Sites and Position of the Country, especially in those parts which lie nearest *Asia*, that there is nothing to be looked for, else where, either of profit or pleasure, but may there be found. Whether it be that there is some *Nihil ultra* put to humane endeavours, or that this people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the Gospel, or that the great Princes of the Earth think it no good Policy to engage themselves in new Discoveries, till the old be thoroughly planted and made sure unto them; or that the Merchant, who in matters of this nature hath a pow-

erful influence, thinks his hand full enough already, and being settled in so many and so wealthy Factories, will not adventure upon more: Which of all these, or whether all these together be the cause of the Stop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that here is a large Field, enough for Covetousness, Ambition, or desire of Glory, to spend themselves in, enough to satisfy the greatest and most hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth and Worldly pleasure; besides the Gallantry and Merit of so brave an Action. Most which hath hitherto been done in it, hath been by the encouragement of the Vice-Roys of *New Spain* and *Peru*: by the first of which we came acquainted with the Coast of *Nova Guinea*; by the latter, with those Countrys called the *Islands of Solomon*, but whether Continent or Islands, not yet fully known.

And yet we must not rob *Magellanus* of his part of the Honour, who, passing through the Streights which now bear his name, discovered those parts of it which, from the Fire thence seen, he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James le Maire* to be an Island. Nor do the *English* or the *Dutch* want their parts herein, though what they did was rather accidental than upon Design. For in the year 1593, Sir *Richard Hawkins*, being bound for the Streights of *Magellan*, was by a cross wind driven on some parts of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hawkins* his *Maiden Land*; a Promontory of it shooting into the Sea with three Points he called *Point Tremontain*; and a pleasant Isle not far off by the name of *Fair Island*. Sailing along these Coasts in the 50. Degree of Southern Latitude, for the space of sixty miles and upwards, he found the Country as he passed to be very pleasant; and by the Fires which he saw in the night, to be well inhabited. By the like accident, Anno 1599, *Sibald de Weert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the Streights of *Magellan*, fell upon some Islands of this Southern Continent, in the Latitude of fifty Degrees and forty Minutes, which he caused to be called *Sibald's Island*. And besides these, we owe to the *Portugals* the Discovery of such parts hereof, as they fell on in their way to the *Eastern Indies*, of which we have little but the names: as 1. *Psitacorum Terra*, so called from the abundance of parrots which they saw on the Coasts over against the *Cape of good Hope*; 2. *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and possessed by Idolaters, with the two Kingdoms of, 3. *Lucach*, and 4. *Maletur*; all three against the Isles of *Java*, from which little distant.

But the greatest light we have to see by into this dark business, is by the Voyages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Vice Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, as before was said. For in the year 1543, the Governour of *New Spain*, then being, sent *Villa Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccas*, who in that Voyage made a Discovery of a rich and flourishing Country, which he named *Nova Guinea*, by others since his time called *Terra de Piccinacoli*: and in the year 1563, *Castro* the Licentiate, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, sent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the Conduct of *Lopez, Garcia de Castro*, discovered the Islands of *Solomon*. To which if we subjoin the success of the *Hollanders* in the discovery of *Fretum le Maire*, and the Land adjoining, the best Description we can make of this Southern Continent must be in the Chorography and History of their Adventures; viz. 1. *Terra del Fogo*, 2. *Insula Solomonis*, 3. *Nova Guinea*: beginning first with *Terra del Fogo*, because nearest to us.

1. *TERRA DEL FUEGO* lies on the other sides of the Streights of *Magellan*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now discovered to be an Island by one *Jacob Maire* of *Amsterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Schouten* of *Hloorn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voyage on the 15 of June, Anno 1615, and on the 19. of January following they fell even with the Strait of *Magellan*. On the 24. of the same month they had the sight of another Strait, which seemed to separate this

Terra

Terra del Fuego from the rest of the Southern Continent; and on the 25 they entered into it. That part of the Land which (being entred into the Streights) they had on the West, they called *Terra Mauriti de Nassau*; that on the East, *Statenland*; the Streight it self, *Fretum le Maire*. The entrance into the Streight they found to be in 55 Degrees of Southern Latitude and 50 Minutes; the water running into the North Sea with so violent an Eddy, *ut adversum maris aestum difficulter superare possemus*, saith he who in the way of Journal or Ephemerides hath described the whole course of this Voyage. In the whole course thereof nothing so much observable (besides the Discovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had lost a Day, (as must needs happen unto such as in so tedious a Voyage had travelled Westward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders* and the rest of *Europe*; though they had calculated the Days since their going out with all exactness. So that if there were any such Morality in the Sabbath, as some men pretend, these men must either keep their Sabbath on a different day from the rest of their Countrymen, or otherwile, to comply with them, must be guilty of the breach of the Sabbath all the rest of their lives. But of this more at large elsewhere. To return therefore to this Streight: it is said to be seven *Dutch* miles or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth; plentiful of good Fish, especially of Sea-Calves and Whales. About the inferting of which Streight into the third Edition of my *Microcolm*, I receiv'd a Letter at such time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon* Anno 1625. subscribed G. B. and a little under that, *Sub granda floridus*, which whether it were the Gentlemans Motto, or the Anagram of his name, I am not able to say, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his desire were satisfied in the next Edition of that Work. For my encouragement wherein he gave me this direction following, "The news (saith he) of this *New Streight* coming into *Spain*, it pleased the King, in the year 1618, "to send and search whether the truth were answerable "unto the Report. And finding it to be much broader "then the other, and not above seven *Dutch* miles long, "he decreed, that being the more easie and compendious "way for Navigators, and less subject to dangers, his "Auxiliary Forces should be sent that way into the *East-Indies* to defend the *Phillipine* and *Molucca* Islands, and "the way by the *Cape of good Hope* to be left. In regard "that every such Voyage requireth twice as much time; "besides the variety of Winds, and often change of the "Air, not only troublesome, but full of diseases, confu- "meth the one half of the men before the return. "Whereas this way gaineth time (and, if need be, they "may dispatch business in the West as they travel into "the East) without any extraordinary danger or loss of "men. So far the very words of my Letter. The Intelligence given me in this Letter I find confirmed in a Relation of the Voyage made by Captain *Don Juan de More*, Anno 1618, at the command and charge of the King of *Spain*, who presently arm'd and furnish'd eight tall Ships to send this new way unto his *Philippines* and *Molucca's*, under the conduct of *Petrus Michaelus de Cordoelen*. Since it hath been found by experience that even from our parts to the *Molucca's* through this *Fretum de Maire*, is but a passage of eight months, *sine ulla insigni navigantium clade*, saith the Narrator. But of this Streight enough to satisfy my unknown Well willers Request, and inform my reader, being extreamly sorry that the Gentleman was not pleased to impart his name, that so his memory might have lived in these Papers, if they themselves be destinate to a longer life.

Now for the nature of the Soil, it is said to be very full of Mountains; but those Hills apparalled with Woods, intermixt with Valleys; the Valleys for the most part full of little Brooks, which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good pasturage; the Sea-coasts well provided with Bays and Roads, not unsafe for Ship-

ing; though the Air every where, but chiefly near the Sea, be much subject to Tempests. As for the People, they are said to be of a white Complexion; but their Faces Arms and Thighs, coloured with a kind of Oker. of full Stature and well proportioned, their Hair black, which they wear long, to seem more terrible. The Men most generally naked, the Women only shaded on their secret parts with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deserve the name of Houses: so that the most which we can do is to coast the Island. In which we find towards *Mare del Noordt*, 1. A large Arm of the Sea called *Entrado de S. Sebastian*. 2. The Cape of *S. Ives*. 3. *Mauritius* Land. 4. *Promontorio de Buen Suceso*, or the Cape of Good Success. Opposite whereunto in another Island, is the Cape of *S. Bartholomews*, and betwixt them the Streight called *Fretum le Maire*. Then in the *New South-Sea*, as they call it, there are, 5. *Barnard's* Island. 6. The Islands of *S. Ildefonso*: 7. *Cape Horn*, on a fair Promontory, in the South-west *Ande*, which doubled, the Country goes along with a Streight Shore, on which I find some Bays and Capes, but no names unto them: till we come to the Western entrances of the Streight of *Magellan*, opposite unto *Cape Victoria*, then mentioned.

2. *INSULAE SOLOMONIS*, or the Island of *Solomon*, are situate on the West of *Terra del Fuego*, 11 Degrees on the South of the *Aequinoctial*. Discovered in the year 1567, by *Lopez Garcia de Castro*, sent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to find out new Countries. By him thus named, in hope that man would be rather induced to inhabit in them; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from these Lands of *Ophir*.

In number they are many, but 18 the principal, some of which 300 miles in compass, others 200, and others of them less, till we come to fifty, and beneath that none. All liberally furnished with Dogs, Hogs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinamon, and some Veins of Gold. The chief of these eighteen are, 1. *Guadalcanal*, supposed to be the greatest of them; upon the Coast whereof the *Spaniards* sailed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and sacked, because the people of it, by a sudden surprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2. *S. Isabella* 150 Leagues in length, and 18 in breadth; the inhabitants some black, some white, some of brown Complexion. 3. *S. Nicholas*, 100 Leagues in compass, inhabited by a People which are black of hue, but said to be more witty then the other Savages. All of them situate betwixt the Streights of *Magellan* and the Islands of *Thieves*; and yet not well agreed upon amongst our Authors, whether to be accounted Islands, or a part of the Continent; the *Spaniards* having sailed 700 Leagues on the Coast hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they pass generally in account for Islands, and by that name are under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governours, let them pass so still.

3. *NOVA GUINEA* lieth beyond the Islands of *Solomon* in respect of us, proceeding, as we have begun, from the Land of Fire. Discovered, as before was said, Anno 1543, by *Villa Lopus*, (*Herrera* attributes the Discovery of it to *Alvarez de SAVEDRA*, and sets it higher, in the year 1527.) more perfectly made known, if I guess aright, by *Ferdinando de Quirs*, who being sent with two Ships to make a more full Discovery of the Islands of *Solomon*, and taking his course about the height of the *Magellan* Streights, discovering a main Land coming up close to the *Aequinoctial*, on the Coast whereof he sailed 800 Leagues, till he found himself at last in the Latitude of 15 Degrees, discovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purposed to settle a Plantation, and to that end presented a Petition to the King of *Spain*. This Country I conceive, by the Site and Position of it, to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up close as that doth to the *Aequinoctial*; and after turning to the South towards the Tropick of *Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Maletina*. And

And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I shall afford the Reader this Description of it, out of his Memorial; in which it is soberly affirmed to be a Terrestrial Paradise for Wealth and Pleasure. The Country is plentiful of Fruits, Coco-nuts, Almonds of four sorts, Pome-citrons, Dates, Sugar canes and Apples; plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Partridges, and other Fowl, with some Kine and Buffals. Nothing inferiour (as it seemeth) to *Guinea* in the Land of *Negroes*, and from thence so named. For as he saith, he saw amongst them Silver and Pearls, and some told him of Gold; the Countrys on the Coast seeming to promise much felicity within the Land. The Air he found to be wholesom and temperate, the Sea-shores to be full of Bays, Havens, and the exits of Rivers, making shew of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmeth to be innumerable, some white, some like the *Mullattos*, others like the *Negroes*; diversified in Habit as well as Colour. Their Bread made of three sorts of Roots: without Government, but not without Religion; for they had their several Oratories and places of Burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in daily Wars with one another: their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other Weapons, but all made of Wood. Of this Country, whatsoever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took possession in the name of the Catholick King, and set up both a Cross and a Chappel in it; the Chappel dedicated to the Lady of *Loretta*.

The precise time of this Discovery I have not yet found, but that the time spent about it is by him affirmed to be fourteen years, to the no small endamage of his Health and Fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his Petition, or any thing else done by others in pursuance of his Propositions. Whether it were on any of the Reasons before laid down; or that there was no credit given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the Bays or Promontories as he passeth along; but he either took such names as were given before, or found not any thing worth the naming. And for such names as were given before, (still taking *Ferdinando Quir's* new Country for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontory called *Cape Harmosa*, in the East parts hereof, near the Island of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Aequator*. 2. Another in the Western part, but as near the *Equinox*, called *Point Primiro*. 3. A third in the first bending of the Coast towards the South, called *Capo de Buena Deseada*, or the Cape of good Desire. 4. *Rio de Valcanes*. 5. *Rio de Lorenzo*. 6. *Rio de S. Augustine*, on the East of *Cape Formoso* towards the streights. 7. The Rivers of *S. Peter*. 8. *S. Paul*. 9. *S. Andrew*, and 10. *S. James*, betwixt *Cape Formoso* and *Primiro*.

But being there is little certain of these last Discoveries, and the greatest certainty we have of that little is nothing but a list of names without any thing observable in the state and story of the same, they may still retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore try my Fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, or taking out Commission for a new Discovery, will make a search into this *Terra Australis* for some other Regions, which must be found either here or no-where. The names of which are, 1. *Mundus alter & idem*, 2. *Utopia*, 3. *New Atlantis*, 4. *Fairy Land*, 5. *The Painter's Wives Island*. 6. The Lands of *Chivalry*, and 7. *The New World in the Moon*.

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ET IDEM*, Another world and yet the same, is a witty and ingenious Invention of a Learned Prelate, writ by him in his younger days, (but well enough becoming the austerity of the gravest Head) in which he distinguisheth the Vices, Passions, Humours, and ill Affectious most commonly incident to mankind, into several Provinces; gives us the Character of each, as in the description of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it: and sets them forth to the Eye in such lively Colours, that the Vicious man may see therein his own Deformities, and the well-minded man his own Imperfections. The Scene of this Design is laid by the Revo-

rend Author in this *Terra Australis*, the *Decorum* happily preserved in the whole Discovery; the stile acutely clear, in the invention singular. Of whom and his *New World* I shall give you that Eulogy which the Historian doth of *Homer*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, neque post illum qui eum imitari posset, inventus est*.

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country first discovered by *Sir Thomas More*, after Lord Chancellour of *England*, and by him made a Scene of a Common-wealth, which neither *Solon*, nor *Lycurgus*, nor any of the Legislators of former times did ever dream of; nor had been fantasied by *Plato*, *Aristotle*, *Tully*, or any who have written the *Ideas* of a Form of Government, though not reducible to practice. Some of his Plots we have taken notice of already: viz. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, by making of those Metals Chains and Fetters for their Malefactors, Pans, of Close stool, Chamber-pots and Vessels of such unclean use; by imposing it as a penalty on infamous persons, to wear Gold-rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices: as also his device to prevent mistakes and dislikes in Marriages, by giving the parties a full view of each other naked. Many more projects of this nature, some of them possible enough, but so unpracticable, so beyond hope of being looked on in the modelling of a Common-wealth, that we may reckon this device amongst those strange Fancies, *que nuncquam antea spe concepta, nedum opere tentata erant*. The man indeed (considering the times he lived in) was of rare abilities; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the Meridian of this Southern Continent, this *Terra Australis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place else.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Island of this Southern Continent discovered by *Sir Francis Bacon*, the Learned Viscount of *S. Albans*; one of *Sir Thomas More's* Successors in the place of Lord Chancellour, but far before him in the excellency and fecibility of his Invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Island of the Western or *Atlantick* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*, both alike invisible. But for his falling into this Island, his description of it, the City of *Ben-salem*, and the manner of his reception there, such handsome probabilities, and so fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the state of the World it would seem a Reality. But above all things, the Inventions and Designs of *Solomon's* House; for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving Nature to the best advantages of Life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond comparison. The man I must confess had his personal errors, (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded: *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtissimi*, as *Paterculus* once said of *Piso*, not one amongst many thousand (to pursue that Character) *qui aut otium validius diligeret, aut facilius sufficeret negotio*. A man of a most strong Brain, and a Chymical Head, who, if he had been entertained with some liberal Salary, abstracted from all Affairs both of State and Judicature; and furnished with sufficiency both of means and helps for the going on in his Design, would, I am confident, have given us such a Body of Natural Philosophy; and made it so subservient to the publick good, that neither *Aristotle*, or *Theophrastus* amongst the Ancients, nor *Paracelsus*, or the rest of our later Chymists would have been considerable.

4. *FAIRY-LAND* is another part of this *Terra Incognita*, the habitation of the Fairies, a pretty kind of little Fiends or pigny Devils, but more inclined to sport than mischief; of which old Women, who remember the times of Popery, tell us many fine Stories. A cleaner and more innocent Cheat was never put upon poor ignorant People, by the Monks and Friers. Their habitation here or no where, though sent occasionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings, to our Ports of the world. For not being reckoned amongst the good Angels, nor having malice enough to make them Devils, (but such a kind of midling Spirits as the Latines call *Lemures*, or *Larvæ*) we must find out some place for them, neither Heaven
nor

nor Hell, and most likely this. Their Country never more ennobled then by being made the Scene of that excellent Poem called the *Fairy Queen*. Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greatest persons in her Court: but shadowed in such lively colours, framed so exactly by the Rules of Poësie, and presenting such *Idea's* of all Moral goodness; that as there never was a Poem more artificial, so can no Ethical discourse more fashion and enflame the mind to the love of Virtue. *Invisurum facilius aliquem quam imitaturum*, shall be *Spencer's* Motto; and so I leave him to his rest.

5. The *PAINTERS WIVES ISLANDS*, is an Island of this Tract, mentioned by Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, in his *History of the World*. Of which he was informed by *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a Spanish Gentleman, employed by his King in planting some Colonies on the Streights of *Magellan*, (which we have touched upon before) who being taken Prisoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about some Island which the Maps presented in those Streights, and might have been of great use to him in his Undertaking. To which he merrily replied, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Island*, saying, that whilst the Painter drew that Map, his Wives sitting by, desired him to put in one Country for her, that she in her imagination might have an Island of her own. His meaning was, that there was no such Island as the Maps presented. And I fear the Painter's Wife hath many Islands, and some Countries too upon the Continent in our common Maps, which are not really to be found on the strictest search.

6. The *LANDS of CHIVALRY* are such Islands, Provinces, and Kingdoms in the Books of *Errantry*, which have no being in any known part of the World, and therefore must be sought in this. A gross absurdity, but frequent in those kind of Writers, who in describing the Adventures of their Knights, in despite of Geography, (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not only disjoyned Countries, which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the description of many Islands, Provinces, and mighty Kingdoms, which as the ingenious Author of the *History of Don Quixot* merrily observeth, are not to be found in all the Map. Of this sort is the Isle of *Adamant*, in Sir *Huon of Burdeaux*; the *Firm Land*, in the *History of Amadis de Gaul*; the *Hidden Island*, and that of the Sage *Aliart*, in Sir *Palmerin of England*; the Islands of *Lindaraja*, and the *Devilish Fauna*, with the Kingdom of *Lyra*, (of which the *Amazonian Lady Anchisiloria* was the rightful Queen) and many others of that kind, in the *Mirror of knighthood*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primaleon*, and *Belianus of Greece*, *Parisimus*, the *Romance of Romances*, and indeed whom not of all that Rabble? handsomely humoured by *Michael de Cervantes* in his *Island of Barutaria*, of which the famous *Sancho Pancho* was sometime Governour, and the Kingdom of *Micomicona*. And yet I cannot but confess (for I have been a great Student in these Books of Chivalry) that they may be of very good use to Children or young Boys in their Adolescence. For besides that they divert the mind from worse cogitations, they perfect him that takes pleasure in them in the way of Reading, beget in him an habit of speaking, and animate him many times to such high conceptions, as really may make him fit for great Undertakings.

7. The *NEW WORLD IN THE MOON* was first of *Lucians* discovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a conscience, apostatizing from the Faith in which he was bred. *Aristophanes* had before told us in one of his Comedies of a *Nephelococgia*, or a City of Cuckoes in the Clouds. But *Lucian* was the first who found out this *New World in the Moon*; of which, and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his Dialogues a con-

ceited Character. But of late times, that World which he there fancyed, and proposed but as a fancy only, is become a matter of a more serious Debate; and some have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another *World* in the Moon, inhabited as this is by persons of divers Languages, Customs, Politics and Religions? and more then so, some means and ways proposed to Consideration for maintaining an intercourse and Commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like endeavours to prove that the Earth may be a Planet, why may not this Southern Continent be that Planet, and more particularly that Moon, in which this other world is supposed to be? Certainly there are stronger hopes of finding a New world in this *Terra Australis* then in the body of that Planet, and such perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleasure the later Discoveries of *America*.

But I am no discourager of Industry and Ingenuity, which I love and honour wheresoever I find it. I know great Truths have many times been started upon less presumptions. Nor would I be mistook, as if in my pursuit of this *Terra Incognita* I put scorn on any of sublimer thoughts, or that I would have any man so much in love with the present world, as not to look for another world in Heaven above. It is reported, that in some Controversie betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Moscovy*, the King of *Poland* sent the *Moscovite* a curious Globe, representing the whole Heavenly Bodies, with the particular motion of each several Sphere. To which the *Moscovite* returned this unworthy answer, *Tu mihi Cœlum mittis, ut redde mihi Terras de quibus contendimus*; You send me Heaven, saith he, but that will not satisfy, unless you give me back those Lands which are now in question. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not lose their part on earth for all Heaven it self: whom I desire, if any such peruse these Papers, to consider, that as much as the most flourishing Country which is here described doth fall short of that Paradise wherein God placed our Father *Adam*, so much, and infinitely more did that Earthly Paradise fall short of the unspeakable Glories of the Kingdom of Heaven. To the diligent and careful search of which Heavenly Kingdom I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of God which are here presented, and that vicissitude of humane Affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to some serious thoughts of that mighty God who made all these Works, in whom is no shadow nor shadow of change to whom he given all Glory both in this World, and that to come.

*Quicquid enim Lunæ gremio complectitur Orbis,
Permutat variâque vices, trepidoque tumultu
Æstuat, & nunquam sentit pars una Quiescentem
Nam ruit in sese, & civili vulnere semper
Aut cadit, aut perimit; alioque renascitur ore,
Rursus ut intereat: sic non est omnibus unum
Partibus Ingenium, non vis nativæ. Sed Orbis
Astriferi, & nixidæ sublimis Regio Cœli
Immunis semi, & vultu immutabilis uno,
Perpetuum servant solida & singera tenorum.*

The Verses are *G. Buchanan's* in his Book *De Sphæra*, which I thus Translate, and therewithal conclude this Work.

The World beneath the Moon its shapes doth vary,
And change from this to that; nor can it tarry
Long in one state, but with it self doth jar,
Kills and is kill'd in endless Civil War.
Now form'd again, 'tis but to die; the frame
Neither of Bodies nor of Minds the same.
But that above the Sphæras, the Heavens on high,
In which GOD Reigns in glorious Majesty,
Free from old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,
Always presents it self in equal Grace.

Non nobis, Domine, non nobis, sed Nomini tuo detur Gloria.

F I N I S.

A TABLE of some Principal Things herein contained, not properly Reducible to the following Index.

A.		Zocatrina, from what place it comes	Antoninus's Army in distress, relieved by the prayers of Christians,
A Bades, a strange Beast, the Rhinoceros of the Ancients, <i>lib.</i> 3. 807		<i>l.</i> 4. 929	<i>l.</i> 2. 398
Abasenes, by whom converted, <i>l.</i> 4. 909		Amara, a Mountain in <i>Aethiopia</i> , described	Apennage, what <i>l.</i> 1. 145
their Heterodoxies and Opinions, <i>ibid.</i>		<i>l.</i> 4. 912	Archery, where most practised in elder times, <i>l.</i> 3. 746, the excellency of the <i>English</i> at it, <i>ib.</i> whether Guns or that to be prefer'd, <i>ib.</i> Cezere-missi good Archers <i>l.</i> 2. 460
Abilene, the Tetrarchy of <i>Lysanias</i> , where it was, <i>l.</i> 3. 649, 664. why reckoned, <i>Luke</i> 3. amongst the Portions of <i>Herod's</i> Children, 649		Amazons, why so called, <i>l.</i> 3. 601	Aram, the Son of <i>Sem</i> , the founder of the <i>Syrians</i> , 7. <i>l.</i> 3. 635, the large extent of that Name in Holy Scripture <i>ibid.</i>
Abydus, besieged by <i>Philip</i> of <i>Macedon</i> , and in distress, is fired by the Inhabitants, who likewise slew themselves, <i>l.</i> 3. 610. betrayed since to the <i>Turks</i> by the Governors Daughter <i>ibid.</i>		Amber, where it groweth, how gathered, and the Virtues of it, <i>l.</i> 2. 473	Areopagites, what they were, and from whence so called, <i>l.</i> 2. 529
Adamites, why so called, and what, <i>l.</i> 2. 395. by whom destroyed, <i>ibid.</i>		Amber liquid <i>l.</i> 4. 1081	Argonauts, who they were, and whence so denominated, <i>l.</i> 3. 721
Adolphus II. Earl of <i>Berg</i> , shut up in an Iron Vessel, and miserably stung to death by Bees <i>l.</i> 2. 358		America, not known to the Ancients, <i>l.</i> 4. 943. by whom first discovered, 944, 945, the People of it not so black as the <i>Africans</i> , 947. that they are descended of the <i>Tartars</i> , <i>ibid.</i> the estate of Christianity in it, <i>ib.</i> the ingenuity of the People in their Feather Pictures 948	their Expedition into <i>Colchis</i> , <i>ibid.</i>
Adriatick-Sea, whence it had the name, <i>l.</i> 1. 101. the great extent thereof in some ancient Writers, <i>ib.</i> married to the Duke of <i>Venice</i> , every Holy Thursday <i>ibid.</i>		Amerbyst, a precious Stone, and the virtues of it <i>l.</i> 3. 603	Argosies, great Ships of burthen, whence they had their Name, <i>l.</i> 2. 493.
Advice of an old <i>Casique</i> to <i>Columbus</i> <i>l.</i> 4. 1022		Amiantus, a Stone whereof Cloth is made, <i>l.</i> 2. 552. which stained, is cleansed by fire <i>ibid.</i>	Ariamnes, a <i>Galatian</i> , feasted the whole Nation for a Year together <i>l.</i> 3. 603.
Afolus, why made the God of the Winds <i>l.</i> 1. 71.		Amphietyones, what they were, and of their Authority, <i>l.</i> 2. 532	Aristomenes, his strange escape out of Prison <i>l.</i> 2. 521
As Corinthium, what it was, how highly prized, and how occasioned <i>l.</i> 2. 526		Amphiscii, why so called, and what they are in Geography 18	Aristotle, the precursor of Christ, in <i>rebus naturalibus</i> 2, why he conceived the World to have been eternal <i>ibid.</i>
Atna, the violent burnings of it, <i>l.</i> 1. 68. and the cause thereof 69		Amyclas silentium perdidit, a by-word, and from whence it came, <i>l.</i> 1. 63.	Arius the Heretick, his dissimulation and death <i>l.</i> 4. 858
Africa, whence it had the Name, <i>l.</i> 3. 842. the monstrous things reported of it by some of the Ancients, <i>ibid.</i> the state of Christianity, how much decay'd, 843. the several Languages therein spoken, 844		Amyris insani, an old Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it <i>ibid.</i>	Ark of <i>Noah</i> , where made, <i>l.</i> 3. 709
Agarnus, Prince of <i>Edeffa</i> , his Message to our Saviour <i>l.</i> 3. 711		Anabaptist cuts off his Brother's Head, <i>l.</i> 1. 136, their furies and proceeding in the City of <i>Munster</i> , <i>l.</i> 2. 420, their demands in the Insurrection of the Boors 481	in what place it rested after the Flood 5, 6
Albigenses, what they were, and why so called, <i>l.</i> 1. 184. the sum and substance of their Story <i>ibid.</i>		Anakim, the Name of a Gigantine race of Men, and why given unto them <i>l.</i> 3. 673	Arnadilla, a strange Beast in <i>America</i> , the description of it <i>l.</i> 4. 948
Alcoran, the Book of the <i>Mahometan</i> Law, why so called, <i>l.</i> 3. 701. how highly revered, <i>ibid.</i> the Doctrinals thereof, &c. reduced unto eight Commandments <i>ibid.</i>		Ananim, the Father of the <i>Hamanientes</i> , an <i>African</i> People 10	Armenians, in what points they differ from other Christians, <i>l.</i> 3. 718
Alfonse Tables, by whom compiled, and the cost bestowed in the compiling of them <i>l.</i> 1. 221		Avastaculæw, an old By-word, and the meaning of it <i>l.</i> 2. 554	how and by whom their Church is governed <i>ibid.</i>
Allusion, of a <i>French</i> Gentleman, concerning the cause of their civil Broils <i>l.</i> 1. 147		Anchorets, whence so called, <i>l.</i> 1. 96	Arms, why first used <i>l.</i> 1. 50, by whom first quartered 210, why those of <i>England</i> give place in the same <i>Escocheon</i> to the Arms of <i>France</i> 260
Almans, from whence so called, <i>lib.</i> 2. 345; of what several Nations they consisted, 375. their Affairs and Story <i>ibid.</i>		Annals, what they are, and how they differ from Histories 16	Arphaxad, the Father of the <i>Chaldeans</i> 7. first settled in the Region called <i>Aravallitis</i> <i>l.</i> 3. 709
Almodad, the Son of <i>Tocktan</i> , where most probably fixed 9		Answer, a feeling one of an <i>English</i> Captain to a scoffing demand of the <i>French</i> , <i>l.</i> 1. 147, a smart one of <i>Spinola</i> to <i>Maurice</i> Prince of <i>Orange</i> , 56	Arroba, a <i>Spanish</i> Measure, the content thereof <i>l.</i> 4. 1072
Alors, a precious Wood, worth its weight in Silver, <i>l.</i> 3. 820. Aloes		of <i>Richard</i> I. to the Pope, writing for the Release of the Bishop of <i>Beauvois</i> 150, of <i>Dr. Dale</i> to the <i>Spanish</i> Commissioners <i>l.</i> 3. 690	Arvisian Wines much celebrated <i>l.</i> 3. 625, in what place they grow <i>ib.</i>
		Anticyram naviget, a Proverb, and to whom applicable <i>l.</i> 2. 531	Arundel, created a Count of the Empire by the Emperor <i>Rodolphus</i> , and afterwards Lord <i>Arundel</i> of <i>Wardour</i> by King <i>James</i> <i>l.</i> 2. 483
		Antipodes, what they are 18, the tenet touching them decided by some of the Ancients, <i>ib.</i> condemned of Heresie in the darker times of the Church <i>ib.</i>	Asia, whence so called at first, <i>l.</i> 3. 595
		Antioch, the same with <i>Riblatb</i> , <i>l.</i> 3. 643, its Story 645	the several notions of the word, and in what sense used in holy Scripture 597, the state of Christianity in it 596, among whom divided <i>ibid.</i>
		Antaci, what they are in Geography 18	Askenaz, the Son of <i>Gomer</i> , first settled in <i>Bitynia</i> and <i>Phrygia minor</i> , 11. <i>l.</i> 3. 598, 609

A T A B L E.

<i>Aspendus Citbarista</i> , a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 620	increase <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Canes sepulchrales</i> , what l. 3. 741
<i>Assur</i> , the Son of <i>Sem</i> , where planted 9. l. 3. 708. the <i>Assyrians</i> descended of him <i>ib.</i> why so easily conquered by all Invaders 715	<i>Berrie</i> , abundantly stored with Sheep l. 1. 168. <i>Charles</i> the 7th in derision called King of <i>Berrie</i> <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Capuam esse Cannas Annibali</i> , a by-word, and the occasion of it l. 1. 58.
<i>Athens</i> l. 2. 527	<i>Bezoar</i> , the sovereign nature of it l. 4. 948. found in the Belly of a Beast called the <i>Vicugue</i> <i>ibid.</i> that of <i>China</i> and the East more excellent than that of <i>America</i> l. 3. 783	<i>Capuchin</i> Friars, by whom first instituted, and why so called l. 1. 95
<i>Attala</i> the <i>Hum</i> , why called <i>Flagellum Dei</i> l. 1. 177. his bloody end <i>ib.</i> his Coat of Arms l. 2. 488	<i>Bishop</i> of <i>Spalato</i> , his Levity, Apostacy, and Death l. 2. 492	<i>Cappadocians</i> , generally so lewd, that they grew a by-word l. 3. 604. not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous <i>ibid.</i>
<i>Augur</i> , and <i>Aruspex</i> , how they differ, and whence they had their Names l. 3. 714	<i>Bishops</i> coæval with Christianity l. 1. 30, 140, 144, 244. l. 2. 432, 516. l. 3. 657. how, and why hated by the <i>Biscaines</i> l. 1. 208. and the ill consequences thereof <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Caracalla</i> the Emperor, slain by <i>Marcrinus</i> , where, and upon what occasion l. 3. 711
<i>Augustine</i> Confession, why so called l. 2. 374. by whom, and where confirmed 377	<i>Black-Fryers</i> , or <i>Dominicans</i> , by whom founded, and why so called l. 1. 95	<i>Captchorim</i> , to be found in <i>Coptus</i> , a Town of <i>Egypt</i> 11. carried against all reason into <i>Cappadocia</i> l. 3. 605
St. <i>Augustine's</i> tart reply to an Atheistical demand 1. the Order of <i>Fryers</i> by him founded, l. 1. 94.	<i>Blind</i> and <i>Lame</i> , mentioned 2 <i>Sam.</i> 5. 8. what most probably they were l. 3. 675	<i>Cardinals</i> , by whom first ordain'd, l. 1. 88. the Election of the Popes assign'd to them only, and by whose authority 120
<i>Augustus</i> , or an Essay of the Means and Counsels by which he reduc'd the Common-wealth of <i>Rome</i> to the state of Monarchy l. 1. 35.	<i>Bos in Lingua</i> , a Proverb, the meaning and original of it l. 2. 527	<i>Carmel</i> , a Mountain of <i>Syria</i> l. 3. 639. mistook by the <i>Gentiles</i> for a God <i>ibid.</i> the <i>Fryers Carmelites</i> thence named <i>ib.</i> & l. 1. 94
<i>Avi sinistra</i> , what it meaneth, and the reason of it l. 3. 714	<i>Botelius</i> his strange adventure l. 3. 807	<i>Carthusian</i> Monks, by whom instituted l. 1. 95. their strict kind of Life <i>ibid.</i>
<i>Aulæa</i> , Tapestries, why so called, and by whom invented l. 3. 611	<i>Brackmanes</i> , what they were amongst the <i>Indians</i> l. 3. 797. their authority and course of life <i>ib.</i> succeeded in the first by the modern <i>Bramines</i> <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Caslubim</i> , more likely to be found in <i>Cassotis</i> than <i>Calchis</i> 11
<i>Austrasia</i> , what Provinces it contained, when first made a Kingdom l. 2. 370. the Story and Kings thereof <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Brachygraphy</i> , or the art of short writing, by whom first invented l. 4. 847	<i>Centaurs</i> , the Fable of them, whence it took beginning l. 2. 539
<i>Australis Incognita</i> , the vast greatness of it l. 4. 1129. why not yet discovered <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Britain</i> , from whence the Name probably derived l. 1. 236. not from <i>Brutus</i> , <i>ibid.</i> that there was no such Man, proved, <i>ib.</i> Southern Parts thereof called <i>England</i> 239. its Plenty and Ornaments briefly set forth <i>ibid.</i> plenty of Mines therein 241. and number of Parks <i>ibid.</i> its Seas stored with Fish; <i>ib.</i> quantity of Flesh spent in one City thereof 242. Christian Faith planted therein by whom 244. first peopled out of <i>Gaul</i> 249	<i>Chaldeans</i> , great Astrologers l. 3. 705 the Name communicated unto all who professed that Art, <i>ibid.</i> so called from <i>Cheled</i> , the Son of <i>Nachor</i> 753
B	<i>Bucentaure</i> l. 1. 120	<i>Charles</i> the 8th of <i>Navarr</i> , his strange death l. 1. 205
B <i>Abel</i> , the attempt only of some bold Adventurers, and not of all the Sons of <i>Noah</i> 13. the Languages occasioned there not 72 in number, as by some supposed 6. the stupendious greatness of the Project l. 3. 706	<i>Burgundians</i> , why so called l. 1. 181 when first converted to the Faith, <i>ib.</i> their Affairs and Story <i>ib.</i>	<i>Chaos</i> , or first Matter of the World, expressed by <i>Moses</i> in the names of Heaven and Earth 3. how described by <i>Ovid</i> <i>ibid.</i>
<i>Babylon</i> <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Biscainers</i> , some of their Customs l. 1. 207	<i>Chattermarveth</i> , the Father of the <i>Chadromatites</i> an <i>Indian</i> People 9
<i>Bacchus</i> , called <i>Mæonius</i> , why l. 3. 614	C	<i>Chersoneses</i> , what they are, why so called, and how many of them l. 2. 428
<i>Baleares</i> , why so called l. 1. 231	C <i>Cæsar</i> , the Name at first of the Roman Emperors l. 1. 48. after of the designed Successor, <i>ibid.</i> the unfortunate end of most of them, 49	<i>Chimæra</i> the Monster, what it was, and how tamed by <i>Bellerophon</i> , l. 3. 617
<i>Baltick-Sea</i> , why so called l. 2. 433 why it doth not ebb and flow like other Seas <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Cæsar</i> <i>Borgia</i> , Son of Pope <i>Alexander</i> the Sixth, after divers changes of Fortune, where slain l. 1. 204	<i>Chorography</i> , what it is, and how differeth from <i>Geography</i> 22
<i>Baths</i> , not permitted by the Emperor <i>Adrian</i> to be used promiscuously by both Sexes l. 1. 136. the inconvenience arising from that intermixture <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Calais</i> taken by the <i>English</i> , and retaken by the <i>French</i> l. 1. 154, 155	<i>Christians</i> , where first so called, and with what solemnity l. 3. 636. extremely hated by the <i>Gentiles</i> , <i>ibid.</i> their persecutions and increase <i>ib.</i>
<i>Battle</i> at <i>Mutina</i> , and the success thereof l. 1. 122. between the <i>Sarmatians</i> and their Slaves l. 2. 458, 461 of <i>Kerefture</i> 484. of <i>Lapento</i> 561. the last betwixt <i>Alexander</i> and <i>Darius</i> King of <i>Persia</i> l. 3. 709	<i>Cales</i> , taken by the Earl of <i>Essex</i> l. 1. 213	<i>Christmas</i> Sports in <i>Twelf-tide</i> , by whom first instituted l. 1. 251
<i>Bdellium</i> , mentioned <i>Gen.</i> 2. 12. what conceived to be l. 3. 738	<i>Caliph</i> , the Name of the Successors of <i>Mahomet</i> , and the Succession of them l. 3. 703	<i>Chronologies</i> , how they differ from History 16. by whom best performed <i>ib.</i>
<i>Beaufort</i> , why made the surname of the Children of <i>John</i> of <i>Gaunt</i> l. 1. 162	<i>Calvoires</i> , what, and where seated, their number and manner of life l. 2. 542	<i>Chus</i> , the Son of <i>Cham</i> , first planted in <i>Arabia</i> 9. l. 3. 695. his Posterity the <i>Chusites</i> why called <i>Æthiopi-ans</i> <i>ibid.</i> mistaken for the <i>Æthi-opsians</i> of <i>Africk</i> <i>ib.</i>
<i>Bel</i> and <i>Baal</i> , whence the Names derived l. 3. 713. why called <i>Belzebub</i> the Lord of Flies 671	<i>Cambyfes</i> his Present to the King of <i>Æthiopia</i> , with the King's Answer return'd l. 4. 917	<i>Chusites</i> , why render'd <i>Æthiopi-ans</i> in our <i>English</i> Bibles, l. 3. 695. the Translation justified, and the mistake laid on the Expositors, <i>ibid.</i> the Actions ascribed unto them, not possible to be understood of the <i>Æthiopi-ans</i> of <i>Africk</i> 696
<i>Bellerophontis</i> <i>Literæ</i> , a by-word, the occasion of it l. 3. 617	<i>Campi Catalaunici</i> , where l. 1. 177	<i>Cimmerians</i> , the Posterity of <i>Gomer</i> 11. l. 1. 148. first settled in <i>Albania</i> and <i>Phrygia Major</i> <i>ibid.</i> and l. 3. 609. gave
<i>Belgæ</i> , the valiantest of the <i>Gauls</i> in the time of <i>Cæsar</i> , and for what reasons l. 2. 315, 316		
<i>Benedictines</i> , or <i>Black Monks</i> , by whom instituted l. 1. 95. their habit and		

A T A B L E.

gave Name to <i>Bosphorus Cimmerius</i> l. 2. 351. in Europe better known by the Name of <i>Cimbri</i> , the same with the <i>Cimmerians</i> l. 1. 180. the <i>Cimbrick Chersonese</i> named from them l. 2. 428. their attempt upon the Roman Empire, and overthrow by <i>Marius</i> l. 1. 178	<i>Cosmography</i> defined 22. the general Latitude of the Notion <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Drabimira</i> , her cruelty, swallowed alive l. 2. 395
<i>Cimon</i> in one day overthrew the Sea and Land Forces of the <i>Persians</i> l. 3. 620	<i>Cotys</i> , his rare temper in mastering and preventing passion l. 2. 545	<i>Druides</i> , what they were, and from whence so called; their chief Seat in France and Britain l. 1. 284
<i>Cinnamon</i> , what it is, where and how it groweth, and from whence so called l. 4. 929	<i>Cotton Wooll</i> , where it groweth, and how l. 3. 643. l. 4. 898. & <i>Passim alibi</i>	<i>Druisians</i> , what they are, l. 3. 633. of their Power and Strength 643
<i>Ciphers</i> , or private Characters for Writing, by whom first invented, l. 4. 847	<i>Council of Trent</i> l. 2. 383	E
<i>Circassians</i> , where they dwell, their Opinions and Practice l. 3. 766	<i>Creation of the World</i> , and the Motives of it 1. how long since done, 2. the concurrence of each Person to it 3. the matter of it, and the method <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Ecco la Fico</i> , a Scoff used amongst the <i>Italians</i> l. 1. 119
<i>Cisterians</i> , or <i>White Monks</i> , whence so called l. 1. 95. by whom ordained <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Crete</i> , things most observable there, l. 2. 557	<i>Edgar</i> rowed over <i>Dee</i> by eight Kings l. 1. 262
<i>Cities</i> , by whom first built, and on what design 4. the causes of the greatness and magnificence of them <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Cretense mendacium</i> 556	<i>Edward III.</i> his claim unto the Crown of France, mistaken in our common Chronicles, l. 1. 146. not prejudiced at all by the <i>Salique Law</i> , 147
<i>Citim</i> , the Son of <i>Japhet</i> , first settled in the Isle of <i>Cyprus</i> 12. l. 3. 632 his Posterity spreading into <i>Macedonia</i> l. 2. 539, 542. from thence into <i>Aetolia</i> , and so into <i>Italy</i> , l. 1. 30	<i>Cretenfis nescit Pelagus</i> , a Proverb, the occasion of it 557	<i>Egypt</i> peopled in probability before the Flood, some of the Dynasties of their Kings to have been before it l. 4. 860
<i>Climes</i> , what they be, how many, and how distinguished 18	<i>Crocodiles</i> , their monstrous shape, and where most usual l. 4. 850	<i>Elam</i> , the Son of <i>Sem</i> , where planted 7. l. 3. 736
<i>Cluves</i> , where they grow most plentifully, and the nature of them l. 3. 829	<i>Cusretes</i> , what they were, and from whence so called l. 2. 534	<i>Election of Popes</i> l. 1. 93. of the Dukes of <i>Venice</i> 105. of the German Emperors l. 2. 425. of the great Master of <i>Malta</i> , l. 4. 898 means for obtaining the Crown of <i>Bohemia</i> l. 2. 394
<i>Coa</i> , and <i>Vestis Coa</i> , a light Garment much used by the Dames of <i>Rome</i> l. 3. 628 the <i>Cean Wine</i> (<i>Vinum Cos</i>) as much cried up by the good-fellows of that City 627	<i>Cuspinian's</i> happy guess at the Arms of <i>Germany</i> 426	<i>Electors of Germany</i> , how many l. 2. 425. by whom ordained <i>ibid.</i> their Officers, and how performed <i>ibid.</i>
<i>Cocoanuts</i> , a most excellent Fruit, and of several uses l. 4. 93	<i>Cyprian Women</i> , their Unchastity l. 3. 630. the Heroick Act of a <i>Cyprian Lady</i> 634	<i>Elephants</i> , their vast greatness and docile nature l. 3. 796
<i>Cochinele</i> , a precious Dye, how, and where it groweth, l. 4. 1072	<i>Cyzicum</i> , besieged in vain by <i>Mithridates</i> , l. 3. 610. its glorious Temple <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Elisba</i> the Son of <i>Javan</i> , settled in <i>Elys</i> of <i>Peloponnesus</i> , 12. and after in the Isles of <i>Greece</i> l. 2. 520. thence called the Isles of <i>Elisba</i> , <i>Ezek.</i> 27. 7. 15.
<i>Codrus</i> , his love to his Country l. 2. 529	D	<i>Emir of Sidon</i> , what he is, l. 3. 641 his power and strength 643
<i>Colonies</i> , why planted by the <i>Romans</i> , l. 1. 176. the number of them, and how distributed, <i>ib.</i> whether more useful than a Fortrefs <i>ibid.</i>	<i>D</i> ays observed as lucky or unlucky unto divers Men l. 1. 82	<i>Endymionis somnum dormit</i> , a Proverb, the occasion of it l. 3. 616
<i>Colophonum addere</i> , a Proverb, and from whence it came l. 3. 613	<i>Damascus</i> , how situated, l. 3. 649	<i>Enemies to be licensed flight</i> l. 1. 169 how to be dealt withal when they are in our power 60
<i>Colossus</i> of <i>Rhodes</i> 629	<i>Damascen Plums</i> , <i>Damask Roses</i> , <i>ib.</i> and <i>Damask Linnen</i> , thence so called 650	<i>Entrevues</i> betwixt great Princes reckoned inconvenient l. 1. 114
<i>Commentaries</i> , what they properly are, and how they differ from History 16	<i>Damiata</i> besieged and taken by the Christians l. 4. 854	<i>Epaminondas</i> slain at <i>Mantineia</i> , l. 2. 521
<i>Constantine</i> converted to the Faith, and on what occasion l. 1. 49. his new modelling of the Empire 50. of which one of the chief subverters, <i>ib.</i> He caused the Pretorian Guards 49. his Donation forged 90	<i>Darius</i> his fruitless Wars against the <i>Scythians</i> l. 3. 764	<i>Escorial</i> l. 1. 220
<i>Constance</i> , the Council there holden, l. 2. 373	<i>David George</i> , a monstrous Heretick, and what his Tenets l. 2. 334	<i>Esseni</i> , why so called, their Opinions and Dogmata l. 3. 656
<i>Consuls</i> , when first ordained in <i>Rome</i> , l. 1. 32. who the first sole Consul, <i>ib.</i> when the Office ended 33	<i>Dedan</i> the Son of <i>Regma</i> , planted on the Shores of the <i>Persian Gulf</i> 13	<i>Etymologies</i> , ridiculous of Europe, l. 1. 26 of the <i>Hugonots</i> 162. of the <i>Wallons</i> l. 2. 316. of the <i>Lombards</i> 485
<i>Cophti</i> , the name of the Christians of <i>Egypt</i> , whence to be derived l. 4. 848. their Tenets in matters of Religion, and Estate at the present, 849	<i>Delinquents</i> , how to be proceeded with, l. 1. 60. gained more by favour than by rigour <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Ephesus</i> , and the Temple there dedicated to <i>Diana</i> l. 3. 613
<i>Corybantes</i> , the Priests of <i>Cybele</i> l. 2. 556	<i>Despot</i> , the Title of Heir apparent in the Eastern Empire, l. 2. 505. communicated to interior Princes, <i>ib.</i> the Despots of <i>Rascia</i> , of <i>Servia</i> , and <i>Bulgaria</i> <i>ib.</i>	<i>Epoche</i> , what it is in account of time 16. the several <i>Epoches</i> in Story, <i>ibid.</i>
	<i>Diaries</i> , what they are, and how they differ from History 16	<i>Eunuchs</i> , why most employed by the Eastern Monarchs l. 3. 760
	<i>Dictators</i> , what they were in state at <i>Rome</i> , l. 1. 34. a Catalogue of them, <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Europe</i> , whence so called, l. 1. 26. the Original Languages still in it 27
	<i>Divination</i> by Birds, and the kinds thereof l. 3. 714	<i>Exarch</i> , what he was, and by whom ordained, l. 1. 77. his proper Territory <i>ibid.</i> the Catalogue and succession of them <i>ibid.</i>
	<i>Dioclesian</i> deposes himself, and follows the Trade of a Gardner l. 2. 492	F
	<i>Dodanim</i> the Son of <i>Javan</i> , first settled in <i>Rhodes</i> 12. his Posterity passing into <i>Epirus</i> , l. 3. 629. and there naming the <i>Dodanian Grove</i> , l. 2. 536	<i>Fides Attica</i> , a Proverb, the Original of it l. 2. 528
	<i>Dog-fish</i> , how taken 336	<i>Fieds</i> ,
	<i>Dositheans</i> , a Samaritan Sect, and their Superstitions l. 3. 668	
	<i>Drake</i> , Sir <i>Francis</i> , how said to be the first that sailed about the World, and by whom followed l. 4. 1102	

A T A B L E.

Fieds, a barbarous custom among the
Scots, l. 1. 268. abrogated by King
James *ibid.*
Fig-Tree, why curst by our Saviour
l. 3. 658
Fire, worshipped by the *Tituani*, l. 2.
470. and by the *Persians*, l. 3. 737
carried in state before the *Romans*,
ibid.
Fleas drive the Inhabitants from the
City Myos l. 3. 612
Flight to be permitted an Enemy, and
debar'd a Soldier l. 1. 169
Formalities, of the Homage done by
Edward III. to the *French King*,
l. 1. 175. at the Degradation of
Priests, l. 2. 373. at the Investiture
of the Dukes of *Carinthia*, 383. of
Maurice Duke of Saxony, 413. of
Albert Duke of Prussia, 475. of the
Duke of *Muscovy*, 564. at the ad-
mitting the new Duke of *Wurtz-*
burg, and interring the old 388. at
the Marriages of the *Nestorians*, l. 3.
709. at the Coronation of the *Great*
Cham, 780. at the presenting of Am-
bassadors to the *Grand Seignior*, 731
at the Funerals in *China* 784
Foreign Guards dangerous to a Princes
Person, l. 4. 865. as foreign Aids
unto a Kingdom, *ib.* on what oc-
casions usually fought, and when
most necessary *ib.*
Fornication and Adultery punished
with Death l. 2. 481
Franks, or *French*, of what Nations
they consisted, l. 1. 189. Their
Actions and Atchievements, *ibid.*
by whom converted to the Faith,
and on what occasion, 144. their
Character, 143. the Antipathy be-
tween them and the *Spaniards*, 147
the vastness of their Empire, and
the reasons of the decay thereof,
189. The name of *Franks* given
by the *Turks* to all Western Chri-
stians l. 3. 641
Frankincense, where it groweth, l. 3.
696. offered to the Gods, *ibid.*
Frankincense growing out of the
Earth l. 2. 398.
Franciscans or *Grey Friars*, why so cal-
led, and by whom founded, by the
French called *Cordeliers* l. 1. 95
Free Cities, what they are, how many,
and in what Estates l. 2. 350
Friers, and their several Orders, l. 1.
94. and in what esteem amongst
the People 96
Fruitfulness of *Rhesan*, l. 2. 459. and
Podolia 471

G

Gabates, a Leprous kind of People,
in what parts they dwell, l. 1. 174
Galileans, of what stock they were
l. 3. 665. scorned by the *Jews*, 667
their zeal unto Religion, 668
our Saviour called a *Galilean* *ibid.*
Gallican Church, the power and pri-
vileges of it l. 1. 145
Gaulonites, what they were, for what
cause named *Gualileans* l. 3. 657
Gentlemen of Venice, what they are,

and in what esteem l. 1. 105
Geography defin'd, 16. the benefit there-
of 22
St. George the Cappadocian, a famous
Martyr, l. 3. 604. his *Cenothaphium*
at *Lydda* in the *Holy Land*, 669
highly esteemed among the *Turks*,
647. his Bank in *Genoa*, l. 1. 116
made Patron of the most Noble
Order of the Garter 260
Germans, whence so named, l. 2. 345
how terrible at first to the *Romans*,
351. their original extraction, *ib.*
possessed of the Western Empire,
the power of the Emperors impair-
ed, and by what means now meer-
ly titular 355
Geter, the Son of *Aram*, planted in
Albania 8. l. 3. 725
Gippies, from whence they have both
their Names and Feats, l. 4. 848
Gomer, the Son of *Japhet*, first settled
in *Albania*, also of his Posterity, see
Cimmerians 11. l. 2. 351
Gotthes, their Original and first Seat,
l. 2. 445. their Kings before they
left the East, 447. their Successes
and Affairs in *Italy*, l. 1. 51. in
France, 177. in *Spain* 202
Grecians, in what they differ from the
Church of *Rome*, by which malici-
ously and unjustly persecuted, *ibid.*
their Language not of such extent
as in former times l. 2. 517
Guelfs and *Gibellines*, whence so called,
and when, the fancy of the *Elfs*
and *Goblins* derived from thence,
l. 1. 108. l. 2. 394
Guelpbian Family, their Original, l. 2.
416
Guicciardine yielded by the Inquisition,
and the substance of him in that
place l. 1. 90
Guns, where invented, and by whom,
l. 2. 347. not used in *India* at the
expedition of *Bacchus* l. 3. 784
Gyges, how he came to be King of
Lydia, l. 3. 615. whence said to
have a Ring, by which made in-
visible *ibid.*

H

H A Letter ominous to the State of
England l. 2. 567
Hameth, or the Land of *Hamath*, l. 3.
643
Hanse-Towns, why so called, how ma-
ny, and of what power at Sea,
l. 2. 350
Harpies, the Fable and the Moral,
l. 2. 560
Hatto, Archbishop of *Mentz*, devour-
ed of Rats and Mice, l. 2. 363.
So also *Popielus Duke of Poland*,
446
Havilah, the Son of *Chus*, first planted
about *Babylonia*, 10. called thence
the Land of *Havilah* in the second
of *Genesis* l. 3. 738
Havilah, the Son of *Jocktan*, first sea-
ted in *India* 9. the Kingdoms of
Ava and *Chavilah*, so called from
him l. 3. 819

Hebrew, not the primitive Language
14. nor at all peculiar to the *Jews*
ibid.
Hegira, the *Mahometan* Epoche 16.
from whence so called l. 3. 702.
the unstedfastness of *Scaliger* about
it *ibid.*
Hellenists, what they were, and why
so called l. 2. 516. l. 3. 655. in
what differing from the other *Jews*
ibid.
Hercynian Forest, the beginning and
extent thereof l. 2. 351
Herodians, what they were, and from
whence denominated l. 3. 657
Heterosci, what they are in *Geography*,
and from whence so called 18
Hieroglyphicks, what they were, and
by whom first used l. 4. 847. some
particulars of them *ibid.*
S. Hierome, a Father of the Church,
where born l. 2. 431. the Order
of Monks by him instituted l. 1. 94.
History defined 16. the necessary use
of it, and to whom, how it dif-
fereth from *Annals*, *Commentaries*,
&c. *ibid.*
Hock-tide Sports, the Original of
them, and from whence so named
l. 1. 257
Hollanders, their great Strength at
Sea, l. 2. 333. the great benefit
they make by fishing on the Coast
of *England* l. 1. 241. l. 2. 317. their
base cheat upon the *English* at *Pol-*
lerone l. 3. 829. and bloody butche-
ry at *Amboyna* 830
Holy Oyl of Rhemes, in what state at-
tended, not so ancient as the *French*
pretend l. 1. 153
Homer's Birth, how contended for
l. 3. 613. where born, and why
call'd *Mwonides* *ibid.*
Huanacu, a strange Beast, and the na-
ture of it l. 4. 1091
Hugonotos, whence so called, l. 1. 162
their great Power once, and pre-
sent condition 144, 145
Hul, or *Chul*, the Son of *Aram*, in what
parts first settled 7. l. 3. 720, 722
Hydrography what it is, and by whom
best written 22

I

I *Jacobites*, what they are, and where
most numerous, l. 3. 711. their
Opinions *ibid.*
Janizaries, their institution and num-
ber, their Office and Power, their
Insolencies and Punishments, l. 3.
729, 730. the likeliest Men to car-
ry the *Turkish* Empire, if the Line
of *Ottoman* should fail 732
Japhet, how made partaker of the
blessing of God, *Gen.* 9. 27. both
in the literal sence, and the mysti-
cal l. 1. 26
Japyx, the name of the North-west
wind, and why given unto it l. 1.
62
Jarech, the Son of *Jocktan*, more pro-
bably to be found in *Arachosia*,
than *Insula Hieracum* 8, 9
Ja-

A T A B L E.

Javan, the Son of *Japhet*, the Father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* 12
Jealousie, a predominant Passion amongst the *Italians*, l. i. 55. as also amongst the *Moors* and *Spaniards*, 197. the *English* little subject to it, 240
Jesuits, by whom first instituted l. i. 95. their vow of *Mission* *ib.* grown formidable to the Pope 96. industrious in planting Christianity in the barbarous Nations l. 3. 785. Chief Factors for the King of Spain l. i. 200. They and the *Presbyterian* or *Puritan* Preachers the greatest Incendiaries of Christendom 96. expelled *Georgia*, on what occasion l. 3. 723
Jetur, the Son of *Ismael*, the Father of the *Itureans* l. 3. 662
Jews not suffered to land in *Cyprus* l. 3. 630. expelled out of *England*, *France* and *Spain* 687. in danger to be stoned every *Maunday-Thursd*ay 688. The hopes and hinderance of their Conversion *ib.* the restitution of their Kingdom not denied by *Christ* *ibid.*
Islands, how caused, whether better seated than the Continent 17
Imperial Chamber, why erected, and where seated, l. 2. 365.
Imperial Cities 350
Indians, or *Christians* of *S. Thomas*, what they hold in matters of Religion l. 3. 797. The submission of their Churches to the Pope *ibid.*
Indico, where and how it groweth l. 3. 805
Influence of the Heavenly Bodies on particular Countries 14
Inquisition, when, and why ordained, the manner of proceeding in it, not admitted into many of the *Papal* Countries l. i. 199
Interim of *Germany*, what it was, and how ill liked of all Parties l. 2. 374.
Invention of Clocks and Watches l. 2. 316. of Pictures in Glass, and laying Colours in Oyl *ibid.* of Printing 334. of Guns 347. of Wild-Fire 564. of Battel-ax l. 3. 601. of Dice and Chess 613. of Tragedies 625. of Sail for Ships 626. of Arithmetick and Astrology 639. of Purple Dye 640. of Crystal Glass *ibid.* of Pastorals, Hour-glasses, &c. l. i. 68. of Comedies 69. of Mariners Compass 59. l. 4. 946. of Tackle for Ships, *ibid.* of Letters and Cyphers l. 4. 847. of Paper 851
Ireland, why never conquered till the reign of King *James* l. i. 281.
Irish, their barbarous Customs 276.
Isthmian Games l. 2. 526.
Israel and *Judah*, when divided, the reasons why no more United, tho' some opportunities were offered l. 3. 681
Italians, derived from *Citim*, the Son of *Japhet*, so called from the *Atolians*, by whom converted to the

Faith l. i. 36. their scandalous Lives, how punished, and by what Instruments 52
Italy, the name at first of the East parts of the Country, only communicated after to the whole l. i. 34. the Kings thereof, after the ruine of the Empire 54. abandoned by the Emperors, and for what reasons 55
Joan the Virgin, not a Witch, as the *English*, not miraculously sent as the *French* pretend, what she was indeed l. 2. 370.
Jocktan and his Posterity settled originally in the East 10. l. 3. 798. the improbabilities of their fixing in *Arabia Felix* 8. greater of their transplanting into *America* l. 3. 798.
Julius Scaliger, his censure of *Hesiodus* controuled by *Velleius* l. 2. 531. his base Character of the *English* l. i. 242
Joseph Scaliger, his singularity about *Nabonidus*, and *Darius Medus* l. 3. 715. His unstedfastness about the *Hegira* 702.
Julian the Apostate, where he died l. 3. 708
Judges of Hell, what, and who they were l. 2. 553, 556. and why so accounted of *ibid.*

K

Καὶ κατὰ χάριν, a Proverb, and of whom intended l. 2. 556
Καππαδοκίαι & *Καππαδοκίαν* *τέρας* proverbially used for a wicked Person l. 3. 604
Kings called an Ordinance of Man, and why, 4. who of them anciently anointed l. i. 205. how they take precedence 260. not to use their People to the Wars l. 2. 342. the Legend of the Kings of *Colen*, 360, 361. Kings but for twelve Years, and then in sacrifice themselves l. 3. 811. Kings subject to Priests, where l. 4. 911.
Kings-Evil, a Disease l. i. 125. the Cure thereof hereditary to the King of *England* l. i. 258.
Knighthood, vid. Orders.

L

Labyrinth of *Egypt*, imitated by *Minos* in that of *Crete* l. 2. 557.
Lachrymæ Christi l. i. 113 the Expression of a Dutch-man thereon *ibid.*
Lady of *Loretto* her Legend l. 3. 667. the sumptuosity of her Temple l. i. 80.
Lamissus thrown an Infant into the Fish pond, found by King *Agilmond*, brought up in the Court, and after chosen King of *Longobards* l. 2. 485.
Latines, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence so called l. i. 28. The *Latin* Tongue not the *Latin*

guage of *Italy* 29. The reasons of the spreading and extent thereof *ibid.*
Lampsacus, how saved by *Anaximenes* when threatned by *Alexander* l. 3. 610, 611.
Laws of *Oleron* l. i. 188
League between *France* and *Scotland* l. i. 271. the condition thereof *ibid.*
Lebabin, the Father of the *Lybi* *Aegyptii* 10. l. 4. 932.
Lemmers, an infectious Beast, l. 2. 437.
Lemnia, or *Terra Lemnia*, the sovereign Vertues of it l. 2. 551. how made and ordered *ibid.* why called *Terra Sigillata* *ibid.*
Letters, the first Original and History of them l. 4. 847.
Levites, why scattered and divided among the Tribes l. 3. 677. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ibid.*
Libanon, a famous Mountain, why so named l. 3. 638. the length, course, and branches of it *ibid.*
Libertas Prophetandi, what, and where most in use l. 2. 466.
Liburni, the name of a light Vessel l. 2. 495. and of such Chairs as we call *Sedans*, *ibid.* and from whence so named *ibid.*
Lions, its famous Mart l. i. 183, 184. in it a Temple dedicated to *Augustus* *ibid.* before whose Altar Exercises instituted of the *Greek* and *Roman* Eloquence *ibid.*
Lomi, a strange Beast in *Bohemia*, l. 2. 394
Lombards, their Original and first Kings l. 2. 485. their Affairs in *Italy* l. i. 52. the subversion of their Kingdom there 53.
Lud, the Son of *Sem*, the Father of the *Lydians* in *Asia minor* 9. l. 3. 613.
Ludim, the Son of *Mizraim*, the Father of the *Ethiopians* in *Africk* 10. improperly rendred *Lydians* in our *English* Bibles, *Jer.* 46. 9. *ibid.*
Luther, his Birth l. 2. 410. his first contention with the Pope 348. the success and spreading of his Doctrine *ibid.* and by what means especially 349. the Government of the *Lutheran* Churches 350. the condition of their Ministers *ibid.* the Rites and Ceremonies not much different from those in the Churches of *England* *ibid.*
Lyfanius, the Tetrarch of *Abylene*, whose Son he was l. 3. 649. why reckoned, *Luke* 3. among *Herod's* Children *ibid.*

M

Mackbeth, his Story l. i. 721.
Madai, the third Son of *Japhet*, the Father of the *Medes* 12. l. 3. 734
Magi, what they were in *Persia*, their esteem and power l. 3. 737.
Magnet,

A T A B L E.

- Magnes*, why used to signifie the Load-stone by the *Latin* Writers l. 4. 947.
- Magog*, the Son of *Japhet*, settled in *Syria propria*, and the borders of *Iberia* 12. l. 3. 644.
- Mahomet*, his Birth and Breeding, l. 3. 701. his design to coin a new Religion *ibid.* the causes of the great growth and increase thereof 702 his Success and Victories *ibid.*
- Maires* of the Palace, their institution and authority l. 1. 190. the Catalogue and Succession of them *ibid.*
- Malefactors* flying to *Geneva*, how punished l. 1. 132.
- Man*, why created unarmed and naked, the Image of God in him, what it doth consist in 3
- Manly Exercises* allowed at *Geneva* on the Lord's day l. 1. 132.
- Marcheta mulieris*, a barbarous Custom of the *Scots*, l. 1. 268. whence named, and by whom abrogated *ibid.*
- Mares*, why used to Battel among some of the Ancients l. 2. 511.
- Margaret* Countess of *Henneberg*, delivered at one Birth of 365 Children l. 2. 335
- Mariners* Compass, by whom first invented, and by whom perfected l. 1. 59. erroneously ascribed to *Solomon* l. 4. 946
- Morbrites*, whence so called, their Tenets and places of dwelling, l. 3. 637. their reconciliation with the Pope but a matter of Complement *ibid.*
- Marulla*, her Valour in preserving *Hæphestias* from being surpriz'd by the *Turks* l. 2. 551.
- Massacres* of the *Scythians* by the *Medes* l. 3. 750. of the *Romans* by *Mithridates* 602. of the *Danes* by the *English* l. 1. 257. of the *French* in *Sicily* l. 1. 72. of the *Hugonots* by the *French* 144
- Mastick*, what it is, where growing, and how gathered l. 3. 625.
- Mastiff* Dogs, why called *Molossi* by the *Latins* l. 2. 536.
- Mamelukes*, their Institution, Office, and Power l. 4. 865.
- Medusa*, the Fable, and true Story thereof l. 4. 933
- Melchites*, what they are, and from whence denominated l. 3. 637.
- Mercés*, an Order of Religious Persons, their institution and employment l. 1. 221.
- Mesech*, the Son of *Aram*, planted about *Mons Masius* 9. l. 3. 720.
- Mesech*, or *Mosoch*, the Son of *Japhet*, settled among the *Montes Moschici* in *Armenia major* 12. l. 3. 719
- Misha*, and Mount *Sepbir*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. in what place they were 8
- Messingo* of *Waldermal K.* of *Denmark*, to the Pope l. 2. 427.
- Messene Servilior*, a Proverb, the occasion of it l. 2. 521
- Minotaur*, the Fable, and true Story of it l. 2. 557
- Mithridates*, the Author of the Antidote so named, the sum and substance of his Story l. 3. 602.
- Miramomoline*, what the word doth signifie l. 4. 895. the *Miramomolines* of *Morocco* 894
- Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*, the Father of the Nation of *Egypt* 10. l. 4. 845.
- Monarchy*, the nearest form of Government to that of God 4. the Monarchs of *Spain* l. 1. 234. of the *English Saxons* 256. of the *Assyrians* l. 3. 713. of the *Medes* and *Persians* 751.
- Monastick* Life, how accounted of in former times l. 1. 96. whether to be preferred before a sociable *ibid.*
- Money* not only the instrument of exchange in ancient times l. 4. 912 by what names called, and why *ibid.* made sometimes of Leather and Past-board 1092
- Monks*, their original and increase l. 1. 94. by whom first brought under certain Rules *ibid.* their several and particular Orders 94, 95.
- Mongul*, a Tribe of the *Tartars*, l. 3. 779 the Title of the great Emperors of *India* 816. their Catalogue and Succession *ibid.*
- Montmorency*, the Family extinct l. 1. 151.
- Moors*, the lust of *Roderick* occasioned their coming into *Spain* l. 1. 203. and the lust of *Magnutza* their Expulsion thence 209. forced to quit *Spain* 216
- Morses*, or Sea-Horses, the description and use made of them l. 4. 954.
- Mosaick* Work, what it is l. 1. 103.
- Muscovites*, by whom converted, and of what opinions in Religion l. 2. 455. from what original they come 462 their Government Tyrannical 464. the great Dukes Habit and Royal State *ibid.*
- Musoli*, or *Mufrones*, a strange Beast l. 1. 115.
- Musick*, the several sorts and effect thereof l. 3. 608. used by the Primitive Christians in God's publick Service *ibid.*
- Myrtoum Mare*, where it was, and from whence so named l. 3. 627
- Myriorum Postremus*, a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 610.
- N
- N**Ames fatal to some Kingdoms l. 2. 566.
- Naptha*, the nature of it, and where most used l. 3. 738.
- Naphtuchim*, Son of *Mizraim*, where first planted l. 4. 859. the name of Neptune by some said to be thence derived *ibid.*
- National* Animosities, to what cause ascribed 14
- Navigation*, the original and story of it l. 4. 945. what Nations most famous for it in former times, and who, at present 946
- Nemæan* Games, by whom first instituted, and on what occasion l. 2. 524.
- Netbinims*, what they were, and in what employed l. 3. 674.
- Nestorians*, whence so called l. 3. 709. their Tenets in Religion. *ibid.* Solemnities they use in contracting Marriage *ibid.* much hated of the Pope, and why 710.
- Nimrod*, the Founder of the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Kingdoms l. 3. 713
- Ninive* l. 3. 710.
- Noah's* seven Precepts, or the Precepts of the Sons of *Noah* l. 3. 655
- Nomades*, where they dwelt, and from whence denominated l. 3. 769.
- Noradin's* gallant answer made to his Commanders l. 3. 653
- Normans*, what they were originally l. 1. 159. their Actions and Achievements *ibid.* when first fixt in *France* *ibid.*
- North-East* Passage, by whom attempted and pursued l. 4. 1028. of the *North-West* Passage *ibid.* the little probability of doing any good in either *ibid.*
- Nuns*, why so called, and by whom first instituted l. 1. 96. their particular Orders *ibid.* of ill report for their unchastity *ibid.* Nunnery of *Valdrude* in *Hainault* l. 2. 323.
- Nutmegs*, how they grow, and where most plentiful l. 3. 829.
- O
- O**bits of the Saints kept as Festivals l. 2. 545.
- Ocean*, the collection of Waters 21. the causes of its ebbing and flowing *ibid.* the Etymology of the Name, and vast greatness of it l. 1. 227.
- Offa's* Dike 261.
- Oleum Mediacum*, see *Naptha*
- Olympick* Games, by whom first instituted and restored l. 2. 520. where held, and who were Judges of them *ibid.* all the Victors, at one time of one City in *Italy* l. 1. 63.
- Ovoquavilla*, a kind of Divination, an experiment of it l. 1. 52.
- Ophir*, not the Province of *Sophala* in *Ethiopia* l. 4. 922. where it rather was *ibid.*
- Oracles*, which most famous l. 2. 532. their ambiguity and decay *ibid.*
- Oratorians*, an Order of Religious Persons, by whom first instituted, used for a counterpoise to the *Jesuits* l. 1. 96.
- Orders* of Knighthood, of *St. Mark*, l. 1. 106. of the *Glorious Virgin* *ib.* of *St. Stephen* 111. of the *Blood* of our Lord *Jesus Christ* 121. of the *Annuntiada* 130. of the *Crescent* 164. of

A T A B L E.

of the *Gennet* 194. of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers *ibid.* of the *Star* *ibid.* of St. *Michael* *ibid.* of the *Holy Ghost* *ibid.* of the *Lilly* 206. of *Merced* 221. of *Calatrava* 222. of St. *Jago* *ibid.* of *Alcantara* *ib.* of *Avus* 227. of *Christ* *ibid.* of St. *Saviour* 233. of *Montesa* *ibid.* of the *Round Table* 260. of the *Garret* *ibid.* of the *Bath* 261. of *Baronets* *ibid.* of St. *Andrew* 275. of *Nova Scotia* *ibid.* of the *Golden Fleece* l. 2. 341. of the *Elephant* 443. of the *Marian*, or *Dutch Knights* 479. of the *Port-glaiwe* *ibid.* of the *Dragon* 488. of the *Sepulcher* l. 3. 690. of the *Templars* *ibid.* of St. *John* *ibid.* *Great Master*, how chosen, his Title l. 4. 898.

Ostracism, what it was, whence called, and with whom in use l. 2. 528.

Ostrich Feathers, why, and how long the cognizance of the Princes of *Wales* l. 1. 267.

Ovation, how differeth from a *Triumph* l. 1. 33. from whence so called *ibid.* in what cases granted *ibid.*

Ovid, why banished into *Pontus*, l. 2. 510.

Oxenham, his adventurous Attempt l. 4. 949.

Oysters grow on Trees l. 2. 495.

P

Paisants Slavery in *Livonia* l. 2. 467.

Palms, anciently used as a sign of *Victory*, set by the *Christians* in *Church-yards*, and for what reason l. 4. 846, 847. the rare nature of the Tree *ibid.* a further description of it 901.

Pamphyli, what they were l. 1. 112.

Paper, where first invented, and why so called l. 4. 851.

Paradise, where it was indeed, the several Fancies and Opinions touching the particular l. 3. 705.

Paradise terrestrial of *Aladine* 747.

Parchment, in *Latin* *Pergamena*, where invented first l. 3. 611.

Paris never taken by force, why l. 1. 152.

Pasiphae, how far the Fable of her may be thought *Historical* l. 2. 556.

Patrusim, first planted in the Land of *Patros* 19.

Partition Wall, alluded to *Ephes.* 2. 14. what, and where it was l. 3. 676.

Patriarchatus, a new Order devised by *Constantine*, and what it was l. 1. 51.

Peletites, who, and why so called l. 3. 669.

Pellenæa vestis, a by-word, and the meaning of it l. 2. 519.

Persepolis l. 3. 739.

Petalisme, what it was, and where most in use l. 1. 70.

Peter-pence, by whom first granted to the Pope l. 1. 93.

Periscii and *Periæci*, what they are in *Geography* 18.

Phaleg, where probably first planted 8.

Pharisees, whence they had their name, l. 3. 656. their *Dogmata* and Authority amongst the People *ib.*

Pharos l. 4. 849.

Phaselus, whence so named l. 3. 617.

Phileni aræ l. 4. 881.

Philippicks given by *Tully* for the name of his *Orations* against *M. Anthony* l. 2. 533.

Phut, the Son of *Cham*, Father of the *Moors*, or *Mauritanians* 11. l. 4. 878.

Phryges sero sapient l. 3. 608.

Picts, what they were, and the story of them l. 1. 271.

Pigritia, a strange Creature in *America* l. 4. 948.

Py'd Piper, the story of him l. 2. 499.

Pigeons Letter Carriers l. 3. 708.

Pizarro, his Birth, Breeding, Rise, and Death l. 4. 1099.

Pledging one another, why first used in *England* l. 1. 257.

Pluto, why fancied by the Poets for the God of Hell l. 2. 536.

Pompey's successful War against the *Cilicians* l. 3. 621.

Polycrates for long time Fortunate, dies miserably l. 3. 626.

Pope, or *Papa*, what it signifieth l. 1. 86. common at first to other Bishops *ibid.* the opportunities those of *Rome* had to advance their Greatness 85. the means and steps by which they did attain to their Temporal Power 91. and still keep the same, *ib.* how easie to be made Hereditary 92. their Forces and Revenue 93.

Portugals, their Character, their Antipathy to the *Castilians* l. 1. 222.

Portugals, *Spaniards*, *French*, *Italians*, compared *ibid.*

Poultry hatched in Ovens by heat l. 4. 846.

Prediction of the *Moors* conquering *Spain* l. 1. 203.

Prætorian Guards, by whom instituted and by whom cashiered l. 1. 49.

their Power, the great Authority of their Captains 41.

Presbyter John, the name of the King of *Tendac* l. 3. 779. erroneously ascribed by *Scaliger* to the *Abassine* Emperor *ibid.* the ground of the Mistake, and right Name of that Prince l. 4. 917.

Presbyterian Discipline, by whom first framed l. 1. 132. and how after propagated *ibid.* the introduction of it into the Seigniorship of *Geneva* *ibid.* and the Realm of *Scotland* 269. why so importunately desired by some in *England* l. 1. 245.

Priests of the *Jews* provided of a liberal maintenance l. 3. 677. who they were, whom they called the Chief Priest 657. of the High-

Priest, and when made a saleable Office *ibid.* how *Annas* and *Cai-phas* were High Priests at the same time *ibid.* their Power and Succession after the Captivity 684.

Printing, where first invented, and by whom l. 2. 334. how much abused in these latter Times, said to have been long used in *China* l. 3. 783.

Prometheus, why feigned to be tortured by a Vulture l. 3. 744.

Protestants, where first so called, and why l. 2. 348. the whole story of them *ib.* the causes of the great increase of their Doctrines *ibid.* their principal oversight *ibid.*

Psalms of Degrees, how many, and why so named l. 3. 670.

Pyramids of *Egypt*, their vast greatness, by whom built, and why l. 4. 849.

Q

Quivira, a strange Beast there, which supplies them with most necessities l. 4. 966.

R

Rain falling turns to *Alabaster* l. 4. 1081. Rain obtained by the Prayer of *Helena* l. 2. 559.

Rarities in *Arabia Felix* l. 3. 697. in *Egypt* l. 4. 849. in *America* 948. in *Nova Hispania* 1073. in *Chiapa* 1080. in *Peru* 1191. in *Brasil* 1105. in *Cuba* 1123.

Red-Sea, whence it had the Name, how far extended by that Name l. 3. 699.

Regma, the Son of *Chus*, first planted on the Shores of the *Persian Gulf* 10. l. 3. 698.

Religion, naturally ingrafted in the Heart of Man l. 1. 25. how it standeth in relation to the parts of the World 25, 26.

Retiredness from the vulgar Eye used by divers Princes l. 4. 918.

Rex Romanorum, what he is, l. 2. 354. by whom, and for what cause ordained 426.

Richard the First terrible to the *Turks* l. 3. 640. taketh *Cyprus* 633. is slain by a Shot from an *Arbalist* l. 1. 170. the Man that shot him set at liberty and rewarded *ibid.*

Riphab, the Son of *Gomer*, found in *Papblagonia* 11.

Rivers, their use and conditions requisite for Navigation 21, 22. the Banks of great Rivers how defensible l. 3. 610.

Rhabarb, or *Rhubarb*, where it groweth l. 3. 774.

Rhamnusia, why given for an adjunct unto *Nemesis*, and what *Nemesis* was l. 2. 527.

Rhene,

A T A B L E.

<i>Rhene</i> , the fountain and course thereof l. 2. 318. the several branches by which it falleth into the Ocean <i>ibid.</i>	537. what became of his Body 538.	<i>Spaniards</i> , from whence they do descend l. 1. 201. by whom converted to the Faith 198. the dependence of the Popes on the Crown thereof 200. their aim at the fifth Monarchy <i>ibid.</i> the greatness of their Empire, and weakness of it 225. <i>Spanish</i> Nobility very serviceable to their King, why 225, 226. the <i>Spaniards</i> cruelty towards the <i>Americans</i> l. 4. 948.
<i>Rochel</i> l. 1. 171.	<i>Scæva's</i> Valour l. 2. 537.	<i>Squachi</i> , a thievish Beast l. 3. 621.
<i>Rhodes</i> , taken by <i>Solyman</i> the Magnificent l. 3. 629.	<i>Sclaves</i> or <i>Sclavonians</i> , whence so called l. 2. 496. their Affairs and Story 497. given as a Name to Bond-men, on what occasion 489	<i>Sterling</i> Money, why so called l. 1. 270.
<i>Rhodian</i> Laws, the Rule in former times of all Marine Causes, and for how long they so continued <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Schola</i> <i>Salerni</i> , by whom written, and to whom dedicated l. 1. 59.	<i>Streights</i> of Mountains, not to be abandoned by the Defendants l. 3. 621. the losing of such Passes of what fatal consequence 610
<i>Rome</i> , of what circuit in her Glory, and the number of its Inhabitants l. 1. 83. the extent of her Dominions 50. once made a Goddess, and by whom l. 3. 615. Her Revenues computed at 150 Millions of Crowns l. 1. 50. her Empire subverted by <i>Constantine</i> , and how <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Scots</i> , why so called l. 1. 268. their proceedings in their Reformation 270. their Kingdom held in Vassalage to the Crown of England 275.	<i>Stukely</i> , where and when slain l. 4. 893.
<i>Roman</i> Emperors, the Succession of them l. 1. 48. cut off by violent Deaths till the time of <i>Constantine</i> , and the cause thereof 49. their negligence and degenerate sloth 51.	<i>Scribes</i> , what they were, when instituted, and of what Authority l. 3. 657.	<i>Styx</i> , a River of Greece, the usual Oath of the gods l. 2. 522.
<i>Rosamond</i> , Wife to <i>Albonius</i> , King of the <i>Lombards</i> , procures her Husband to be murdered, and why l. 1. 53. her Death <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Scythians</i> , their Original, Antiquity, and Achievements l. 3. 772, 773. their Expedition into <i>Media</i> , and success in <i>Lydia</i> 767.	<i>Sugars</i> , when, and by whom first refined l. 4. 932. what used instead thereof in elder times, <i>ibid.</i> the great quantities thereof sent yearly by the <i>Portugals</i> from the Isle of <i>S. Thomas</i> <i>ibid.</i> and from the Sugarworks in <i>Brasil</i> l. 4. 1005.
<i>Roy d'Yvoidot</i> , a French by-word, the meaning and occasion of it l. 1. 108.	<i>Sebe</i> , the Son of <i>Focktan</i> , planted upon the River <i>Indus</i> , or the <i>Golden Chersome</i> 9.	<i>Syrian</i> Language, what it was, and of what ingredients l. 3. 637, 657. when first made vulgar to the <i>Jews</i> <i>ibid.</i>
S	<i>Sebvians</i> l. 3. 668.	<i>Syrian</i> Goddess, what she was l. 3. 644. her magnificent Temple <i>ibid.</i> the deceits and juggling of her Priests <i>ibid.</i>
	<i>Sela</i> , the Son of <i>Arphaxad</i> , in what parts settled 8. l. 3. 739.	<i>Syrorum multa</i> , <i>olera Syri contra Phœnices</i> , two Proverbs, and the meaning of them <i>ibid.</i>
<i>Sabbath-day</i> not so moral as some pretend l. 4. 1130.	<i>Seleucus</i> , a great Builder l. 3. 644. his strange rise and fortunes 651.	T
<i>Sabeans</i> of <i>Arabia Felix</i> , from what Race they came l. 3. 698.	<i>Semiramis</i> l. 3. 713.	
<i>Sacredge</i> , a Crime unpardonable even amongst Heathens l. 2. 533.	<i>Seminaries</i> for the English, by whom first erected, and where l. 1. 153.	<i>Tails</i> of Sheep (and of no Beast else) why used in Sacrifice l. 3. 643.
<i>Sadduces</i> , whence they had their Name l. 3. 656. their Opinions and <i>Dogmata</i> <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Seneca's</i> happy Memory 198.	<i>Tamerlane</i> , his Birth and Parentage l. 3. 770. the sum and substance of his Story <i>ibid.</i>
<i>Salique</i> Law, what it truly is, not so ancient as the French pretend, not at all was regarded by them, but to serve the turns of some Usurpers, the inconveniences, and injustice of it l. 1. 145.	<i>Seriphie</i> Rana, an old Proverb, the occasion and meaning of it l. 2. 554.	<i>Tarshish</i> , the Son of <i>Javan</i> , planted about <i>Tarsus</i> in <i>Cilicia</i> 12. not in <i>Tartessus</i> , as some say <i>ibid.</i>
<i>Salmacida spolia</i> , a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 3. 616.	<i>Serpents</i> worshipped by the <i>Samogites</i> , and <i>Lituani</i> , the barbarous Customs of those People l. 2. 470.	<i>Tartarians</i> , not the Progeny of the Tribes of <i>Israel</i> l. 3. 762. from whom most probably descended <i>th.</i> their Affairs and Victories 779
<i>Salvages</i> lately found in Spain l. 1. 219.	<i>Sforza</i> , his strange rise and story l. 1. 119.	<i>Taxus</i> , a Tree so called, &c. l. 1. 115.
<i>Samia vasa</i> , what, and how highly prized l. 3. 626.	<i>Sbeba</i> , <i>Sabta</i> , and <i>Sabteca</i> , the Sons of <i>Chus</i> , all planted in <i>Arabia Felix</i> , and there the Founders of the puissant Nation of the <i>Sabeans</i> 10. l. 3. 698.	<i>Temple</i> re-edified by <i>Zorobabel</i> , in what it differeth from the former l. 3. 675. repaired and beautified by <i>Herod</i> 676. the several Courts about it <i>ibid.</i> all of them in the name of the Temple <i>ibid.</i> Temple of <i>Sophia</i> l. 2. 547.
<i>Samaritans</i> , what they were, their Religion, Tenets, and Sects, how hated by the <i>Jews</i> , and why l. 3. 668.	<i>Sybils</i> , what they were, how many, and where they dwelt l. 4. 858. not counterfeit by the Fathers <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Tenedia Securis</i> , a By-word, the occasion of it l. 3. 624.
<i>Saracens</i> , why so called l. 3. 691, 693. their Character in former times, <i>ib.</i> their resort to <i>Mahomet</i> 701. their Successes, Victories, and Caliphs 703.	<i>Sicule</i> <i>Gerræ</i> l. 1. 68. <i>Vesperæ</i> <i>Sicule</i> 72. <i>Siculi</i> Tyranni <i>ibid.</i>	<i>Themistocles</i> banished by his Country, flies to, and is entertained by <i>Artaxerxes</i> l. 3. 612.
<i>Sardanapalus</i> , an effeminate King, why he burnt his Treasure l. 3. 714.	<i>Silks</i> , why called <i>Serica</i> by the <i>Latins</i> l. 3. 775.	<i>Theocratia</i> , or the Government of the <i>Jews</i> by God himself l. 3. 681.
<i>Sardonius</i> <i>Rifus</i> , a Proverb, and the meaning of it l. 1. 74.	<i>Silver</i> and <i>Gold</i> where most plentiful l. 4. 1092. the rich Mines of <i>Potosi</i> 1097. how vilified by the <i>Utopian</i> 1092. the causes of the darkness of things in our days <i>ibid.</i> not so advantageous to a State, as Trade and Merchandise 1093.	<i>Thyras</i> , the Father of the <i>Thracians</i> 13. by some called <i>Thryacians</i> l. 2. 544.
<i>Scanderberg</i> , his Life and Story l. 2.	<i>Simeon</i> , the Son of <i>Jacob</i> , how dispersed in <i>Israel</i> , as his Father prophesied l. 3. 672.	Sir
	<i>Solæcismus</i> , whence 621.	
	<i>Solomon's</i> Porch, mentioned <i>John</i> 10. 23. where, and what it was l. 3. 676.	
	<i>Soothsaying</i> , how many kinds thereof l. 3. 714.	
	<i>Soldiers</i> and great Commanders unfortunate for the most part, and why l. 2. 528.	
	<i>Spa</i> , Medicinal Waters, where, and for what most useful l. 2. 329.	

A T A B L E.

Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Fri-
ers l. 1. 96. his new Plot of woo-
ing not approved of l. 4. 906. his
device to bring Gold and Silver in-
to contempt, fit for none but *Uto-*
pians 1092.
Thracians, their Customs l. 2. 545.
Tigranes his frankness l. 3. 718.
Timariots, what they be, their institu-
tion and number l. 3. 729.
Titus, Bishop of Crete l. 2. 556.
Title of most *Christian* King, why
given unto the Kings of France
l. 1. 190. of *Catholick* King to the
King of Spain 234. of *Defender* of
the Faith to England 259. of *Defen-*
ders of the Church to the *Switzers*
138. of *Basileus* to the Kings of
Bulgaria l. 2. 511. of *Flagellum Dei*
to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* l. 1.
177.
Tobacco, where most plentiful l. 4.
1091. why called the *Henbane* of
Peru *ibid.* the fantastick use there-
of condemned, and the Vertues
ascribed unto it examined *ibid.* by
whom first brought into England
l. 4. 1092.
Togarma, or *Torgama*, the Son of
Gomer, Founder of the *Trocmi*, or
Trogmades in *Cappadocia* 11.
Tholosanum Aurum, a Proverb, the
meaning and occasion of it l. 1.
177.
Tomineio, a Bird in *America* l. 4. 948.
Topography, what it is, how it differ-
eth from *Geography* 22
Traffick, and the Story of it, more
advantageous to a State than Mines
of Gold and Silver l. 4. 1902.
Treason, how rewarded l. 2. 484.
Tragedies, by whom invented l. 3.
625.
Tree that withereth if touched l. 4.
1082. beneficial Trees in *India* l. 4.
930, 1087.
Triumphs, their Original and Majesty,
in what they differed from an *Ova-*
tion, in what cases denied a *Con-*
queror, when discontinued and
laid by l. 1. 33, 34.
Troy not besieged ten Years together
by the *Greeks*, and at last how ta-
ken l. 3. 608. *Timbra's* boast of
taking *Troy* in eleven days tartly
answered *ibid.*
Tubal, the son of *Javan*, first planted

in *Iberia* 12. the *Spaniards* how de-
rived from him l. 3. 723.
Turks, their Original and Conquests
l. 3. 725. their Kings and Empe-
rors 726. their Persons, Customs,
and Religion, their Estate and
Power 728, 729.

V

V *Airval*, the meaning of the word
l. 2. 500. the *Vairvols* of *Tran-*
silvania *ibid.*
Vandals, their first Seat l. 4. 880. their
Affairs, Story, and the Succession
of their Kings *ibid.*
Vaudois, the same with the *Waldenses*
l. 1. 184. their Life and Doctrines
ibid.
Venus, whence called *Erycina* l. 1. 70.
whence *Cytheræa* l. 2. 555. whence
Dea Cypri l. 3. 630. whence *Paphia*
631. whence *Dea Cnidia* 616. the
brutishness of the *Cypriots*, both
Men and Women, in their Feasts
and Sacrifices l. 3. 630.
Versoria in *Plautus*, what it is, not
used there for the Mariners Com-
pafs, as by some supposed l. 4. 947.
Victory of *Annibal* at *Cannæ* l. 1. 61.
Vidames in France, how many and
what they are l. 156.
Vienque, a strange but profitable Beast
among the *Americans*, and the na-
ture of it l. 4. 948. the Bezoar
found in the Belly of it *ibid.*
Vina Massica, whence so called, and
of what esteem l. 1. 59.
Virgil's Fable of *Dido* disproved, and
his *Aneas* suspected l. 4. 879.
Ulysses travelled not so far as *Lisbon*
l. 1. 223. the sum and substance
of his Story l. 2. 562.
Ur, the Birth-place of *Abraham*, a
Town of *Mesopotamia* l. 3. 712.
that it was not in *Chaldea*, as by
most supposed *ibid.*
Ufury, the *Genoese* much addicted to it
l. 1. 113. the faying of a Merry
Fellow thereon *ibid.*
Uz, or *Hus*, the Country and Dwel-
ling of *Job*, whereabouts it was
l. 3. 692.

W

W *Willms*, what they are, and
why so called l. 1. 261.
l. 2. 310.
Whales, their dimensions, and vast
greatness l. 3. 796. how driven
from the Coast of *Norway* l. 2. 437.
White-Friers, from whence so called,
and by whom first instituted, cal-
led also *Carmelites*, and why l. 1.
95, 109.
Wolves destroyed in England, how
l. 1. 241.
World, why created 1. how long
since 2. peopled before the gene-
ral Flood 4. East parts planted
before the attempt at *Babel* 13.
l. 3. 800. called *Cosmos* by the
Greeks, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*,
for the beauties of it, unequally
divided in respect of Religion
l. 1. 25.
Writing, the Original of it l. 4. 847.
and the several Forms *ibid.*

X

X *Eriffe*, why used for the Title
of the Kings of *Morocco*, the
Catalogue and Succession of them
l. 4. 895.
Xerxes, his numerous Army l. 2. 550.

Y

Y *Eugh Tree*, why planted in
Church-Yards l. 4. 847.

Z

Z *Aleucus* his Laws l. 1. 63.
Zenobia, a most masculine Lady
her Story l. 3. 649.
Zopyrus, his A&T l. 3. 707.



A Computation of the Foreign COINS herein mentioned,
with the ENGLISH.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
H ebrew Talent in Gold	4300		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandrian Talent	375		
Egyptian Talent	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Sestertium of Rome	7	16	3
A Shekel	00	2	6
Argenteus, Mat. 26. 15.	00	2	6
A Drachma	00	00	7ob
A Rubble	00	13	4
A Sultany	00	7	6
A Ducat	00	6	8
A French Crown	00	6	6
A Xeriffe	00	6	0
A Rix Dollar	00	4	8
A Floren	00	3	0
A Frank	00	2	0
A Liver	00	2	0
A Gulden	00	2	0
A Spanish Real	00	0	6
A Sous	00	0	190
A Turkish Asper	00	0	19
A Marividis	00	0	19

The T A B L E.

Amberg <i>u</i>	393	Arii <i>p</i>	476	Aceſines <i>fl</i>	799	Alvari <i>u</i>	722	Aracca <i>u</i>	738
Ambidraunum <i>pr</i>	380	Arlun <i>u</i>	326	Achæmenides <i>p</i>	736	Alydda <i>u</i>	611	Arach <i>pr</i>	746
Ambilici <i>pr</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Armenia <i>f</i>	540	Achatara <i>u</i>	786	Amadabat <i>u</i>	817	Arachan <i>pr. u</i>	816
Ambilontes <i>p</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Armentiers <i>u</i>	321	Achen <i>u</i>	833	Amagance <i>pr</i>	825	Arachosia <i>pr. u</i>	744
Ambra <i>fl</i>	377	Armyden <i>u</i>	335	Collis Acchillæ <i>m</i>	673	Amalec <i>m</i>	671	Arachatos <i>u. l</i>	<i>lib.</i>
Ambracia <i>u</i>	536	Arnhem <i>u</i>	339	Achillis Curtius <i>u</i>	763	Amalekites <i>p</i>	694	Arad <i>u</i>	673
Ambrones <i>p</i>	423	Archeramii <i>p</i>	449	Achindana <i>fl</i>	741	Aman <i>u</i>	647	Aradus <i>u</i> 641. 645. <i>inf</i>	643
Amelungsborne <i>u</i>	415	Aroe <i>inf</i> 434.	<i>u</i> 519	Acon <i>u</i>	639	Amanus <i>m</i>	620. 654	Aræ <i>p</i>	741
Amerlander <i>pr</i>	423	Aroſe <i>u</i>	448	Acra <i>m</i>	675	Amandus <i>fl</i>	734	Aræi <i>pr</i>	675
Amesfort <i>u</i>	345	Arras <i>u</i>	321	Acre <i>u</i>	639	Amangafai <i>u</i>	827	Sabah	635. 648
Amifus <i>fl</i> 318. 345.	351	Arſchor <i>u</i>	330	Acrobata <i>u</i>	669	Amariace <i>p</i>	734	Damaſcœ	649
Ampelas <i>u</i>	542. 557	Arſia <i>fl</i>	489	Leuca Aſte <i>u</i>	644	Amariacle <i>u</i>	736	Naharaim <i>p</i>	635
Amphaxatis <i>pr</i>	542	Arſus <i>fl</i>	546	Adada <i>u</i>	648	Amalia <i>u</i>	600	Maachah	635. 647
Amphilochia <i>pr</i>	535	Arthuſen <i>pr. u</i>	432	Adam <i>u</i>	661	Amaſtris <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Aramathia <i>u</i>	669
Amphipolis <i>u</i>	541	Artoys <i>pr. u</i>	321	Adani <i>inf</i>	700	Amatha <i>u</i>	645	Ararat <i>m</i>	719
Amphrife <i>fl</i>	518	Aruncis <i>u</i>	368	Adapa <i>u</i>	647	Amathylia <i>inf</i> 630.	<i>p. u</i>	Aravari <i>p</i>	810
Amphyſia <i>u</i>	533	Arusberg <i>u</i>	358. 420	Adara <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>			Aravena <i>pr</i>	616
Amſterdam <i>u</i>	334	Arx Britannica <i>u</i>	335	Adarſa <i>u</i>	669	Amaverza <i>u</i>	612	Araxes <i>fl</i>	718
Amſtelodamum <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Aſcandt <i>u</i>	409	Aden <i>u</i>	699	Amabaſtus <i>fl</i>	785	Aræza <i>u</i>	767
Amurgos <i>inf</i>	555	Aſcens <i>u</i>	434	Adena <i>u</i>	622	Amboina <i>inf. u</i>	829	Arbaca <i>u</i>	744
Amycle <i>u</i>	522	Aſciburgius <i>m</i>	398	Adiabene <i>pr</i>	709	Amdanager <i>p</i>	819	Arbela <i>u</i>	667
Anaſtorium <i>u</i>	536	Aſcræa <i>u</i>	531	Adiavas <i>fl</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Amida <i>u</i>	712	Arbelites <i>u</i>	709
Anaphe <i>inf</i>	555	Aſcruvium <i>u</i>	493	Adida <i>u</i>	649	Amiſta <i>m</i>	625	Arbis <i>u</i>	747
Anarti <i>p</i>	500	Aſilia <i>u</i>	467	Adiſachri <i>m</i> 798	<i>p</i> 800	Amiſus <i>u</i>	602	Arbituri <i>p</i>	<i>lib.</i>
Anchiola <i>u</i>	515	Aſiocaſtron <i>u</i>	550	Adonis <i>fl</i>	639	Ammonites <i>p</i>	660	Arbius <i>fl</i>	<i>lib.</i>
Anclan <i>u</i>	403	Aſloia <i>u</i>	437	Adopiſſus <i>u</i>	618	Amorites <i>p</i>	680	Arceſline <i>inf</i>	629
Andefort <i>u</i>	439	Aſprocaſtron <i>u</i>	503	Adorani <i>u</i>	673	Amnia <i>c</i>	671	Archelaus <i>u</i>	605
Andernach <i>u</i>	360	Aſopus <i>fl</i>	527	Adorne <i>u</i>	799	Ampfacis <i>u</i>	767	Archichelech <i>u</i>	722
St. Andrews <i>inf</i>	338	Aſſened <i>u</i>	320	Adrama <i>u</i>	663	Anabaſta <i>p</i>	870	Ardeck <i>fl</i>	771
Andros <i>inf</i>	553	Aſſorus <i>u</i>	542	Adramitæ <i>p</i>	700	Anabi <i>p</i>	776	Ardoval <i>u</i>	888
Caſtello St. Angelo <i>u</i>	562	Aſtragan <i>pr. u</i>	460	Adramittium <i>u</i>	611	Anactoria <i>u</i>	616	Ardeville <i>u</i>	736
Angelofſtadium <i>u</i>	376	Aſtypale <i>inf. u</i>	555	Adrapſia <i>u</i>	747	Anakims <i>p</i>	671	Are <i>u</i> 698.	<i>inf</i> 700
Angerburg <i>u</i>	474	Athamaneſ <i>p</i>	534	Adraſtia <i>u</i>	611	Anaræi <i>m</i>	770	Arga <i>u</i>	698
Angerman <i>pr</i>	447	Athaneum <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Adriſa <i>p</i>	708	Anarita <i>p</i>	700	Argadina <i>u</i>	748
Angermond <i>u</i>	357	Achelin <i>pr</i>	449	Adubeni <i>p</i>	693	Anaroſa <i>u</i>	747	Argari <i>u</i>	799
Anghien <i>u</i>	324	Athens <i>u</i>	527	Æapolis <i>u</i>	722	Anathemufa <i>inf</i>	626	Argentea Regio	818
Angli <i>p</i>	428. 432	Atheſis <i>fl</i>	383	Æchera <i>u</i>	637	Anathoth <i>u</i>	674	Argæus <i>m</i>	604
Angra <i>fl</i>	356	Athos <i>m</i>	542	Ægæi <i>p</i>	700	Anatolia <i>pr</i>	596	Argis <i>l</i>	734
Angrivaria <i>pr</i>	420	Athyras <i>fl</i>	518. 545	Ægæum <i>u</i>	602	Anchiola <i>u</i>	621	Argus <i>fl</i>	774
Anhalt <i>pr</i>	409	Attica <i>pr</i>	527	Ægypti Torrens	693	Ancorabites <i>p</i>	711	Argyropolis <i>u</i>	832
Aniſus <i>p</i>	381	Atrebates <i>p</i>	318. 321	Ælam <i>u</i>	648	Ancyra <i>u</i>	603	Aria <i>pr. u. l fl</i>	745
Annium <i>u</i>	500	Avares <i>p</i>	485	Ælia <i>u</i>	676	Andanum <i>fl</i>	741	Ariaſen <i>p</i>	747
Ansbach <i>pr. u</i>	389	Avarini <i>p</i>	474	Æni <i>inf</i>	700	Andirene <i>u</i>	643	Arimalſæ <i>p</i>	744
Anſeling <i>u</i>	422	Audomarus <i>u</i>	321	Æolis <i>pr</i>	611	Andraca <i>u</i>	605	Arinchi <i>p</i>	764
Anſlo <i>u</i>	437	Aveſeneſex Hainault, <i>u</i>	<i>u</i>	Æroſa <i>inf</i>	630	Andragide <i>u</i>	833	Arivada <i>u</i>	747
Antandros <i>inf</i>	553		324	Æſcite <i>p</i>	692	Andramania <i>inf</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Armaſſica <i>u</i>	723
Antenacum <i>u</i>	360	Aveſnes le ſec	<i>lib.</i>	Æſopus <i>fl</i>	607	Andrapa <i>u</i>	603	Armenia <i>major</i>	718
Antebari <i>u</i>	493	Auf de Berne <i>u</i>	356	Æthra <i>inf</i>	628	Andrapus <i>u</i>	602	<i>minor</i>	606
Antigoniam <i>u</i>	36. 542	Augſt <i>u</i>	395	Aganagora <i>u</i>	818	St. Andrea <i>c</i>	630. 635	Arminig <i>u</i>	720
Antirrhiom <i>c</i>	519	Augur <i>u</i>	356	Agariſ <i>fl</i>	763	Andraſia <i>u</i>	603	Armura <i>u</i>	742
Antonina <i>u</i>	345	Auguſta Tiberii	377	Agarita <i>p</i>	768	Angauri <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Armuzum <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>
Antwerp <i>u</i>	331	Auguſta Veromanduo-	rum <i>u</i>	Agathoclis <i>inf</i>	700	Angeli <i>u</i>	814	Arnon <i>fl m</i>	658
Anticyra <i>u</i>	531		326	Agbatha <i>u</i>	735	Anian <i>fretum pr</i>	729	Aror <i>u</i>	662
Aorli <i>p</i>	471	Auguſtow <i>u</i>	473	Agbarhana <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Animachæ <i>p</i>	818	Aroſbay <i>u</i>	832
Apia <i>p</i>	519	Aulis <i>u</i>	531	Agemer <i>u</i>	806	Anirh <i>u</i>	678	Arphad <i>inf</i>	643
Apidanus <i>fl</i>	518	Aulon <i>u</i>	538	Agena <i>u</i>	834	Annibæ <i>m</i>	775	Arachan <i>pr. u</i>	823
Apollonia <i>u</i> 538. 542.	546	Aurictis <i>u</i>	422	Agra <i>u</i> 739.	<i>p u</i> 804	Antaradus <i>u</i>	641	Arſacia <i>u</i>	735
Apſalus <i>u</i>	541	Ausberg <i>u</i>	374	Agracan <i>u</i>	832	Anthedon <i>u</i>	678	Arſarata <i>u</i>	720
Apluſ <i>fl</i>	537	Auſtraſia <i>pr</i>	339. 352.	Agratii <i>p</i>	693	Anthemalia <i>pr</i>	711	Arſamofata <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>
Apulum <i>u</i>	500		371	Agriaſpæ <i>p</i>	747	Anthropophagi <i>p</i>	776	Arſimoto <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>
Aquen <i>u</i>	357	Auſtria <i>pr</i>	380	Agriroma <i>u</i>	603	Antiboli <i>fl</i>	798	Arſinoe <i>u</i>	631
Aquiſgranum <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Awerback <i>u</i>	393	Agrippias <i>u</i>	678	Anticus <i>fl</i>	766	Arſione <i>u</i>	632
Arrabon <i>u</i>	482	Axele <i>u</i>	320	Agris <i>u</i>	741	Antigoniam <i>u</i>	599. 645	Arſitentes <i>p</i>	748
Aræthus <i>u fl</i>	534	Axenus <i>mare</i>	549	Agubeni <i>p</i>	693	Antilibanus <i>m</i>	638	Artacona <i>u</i>	746
Aranias Zeck <i>p</i>	500	Axiuſ <i>fl</i>	541	Agwans <i>pr</i>	804	Antioch <i>u</i>	645	Aracanda <i>u</i>	748
Aravaſci <i>p</i>	484	Axiopolis <i>u</i>	498	Ai <i>u</i>	674	Anriochia <i>u</i>	1090	Artaſia <i>fl</i>	749
Araxum <i>c</i>	519	Axiu <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Ajalon <i>u</i>	669. 672	Piſidia <i>u</i>	619	Artaſata <i>u</i>	736
Arbe <i>inf. u</i>	496	Azorium <i>u</i>	540	Aiazzo <i>u. f</i>	622	Mygdonie	712	Artaſata <i>u</i>	719
Arbogel <i>u</i>	448	Azuli <i>p</i>	484	Adinia <i>p</i>	609	Penes Taurum	647	Artaſiſſa <i>u</i>	725
Arbon felix <i>u</i>	373			Adinilli	<i>lib.</i>	Antiochiana <i>p</i>	605	Aru <i>p</i>	833
Arbor <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>			Aii <i>p</i> 800	<i>inf</i> 828	Antiochia <i>u</i>	666	Arvad <i>inf</i>	642
Arcadia <i>pr</i>	521	<i>Lib. III.</i>		Aiano <i>inf</i>	820	Antipatris <i>u</i>	669	Arvari <i>p</i>	810
Archangel <i>u</i>	462	Abanah <i>fl</i>	649	Alabanda <i>u</i>	615	Antitaurus <i>m</i>	604. 717	Arvis <i>m</i>	625
Arches <i>inf</i>	550	Abaratha <i>u</i>	834	Aladeules <i>p</i>	717	Anubingram <i>u</i>	834	Arxata <i>u</i>	720
Archingen <i>u</i>	390	Abardal <i>u</i>	723	Alamatha <i>u</i>	648	Anurogrammum <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Armiſphani <i>p</i>	725
Archipelago <i>u</i>	550	Abarim <i>m</i>	659	Alani <i>p</i> 764	<i>inf</i> 772	Aornus <i>u</i>	799	Arzerum <i>pr</i> 708.	<i>u</i> 710
San Arckel <i>p</i>	334	Abafſebant <i>u</i>	747	Alanoefi <i>p</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Apamia <i>u</i>	609. 644	Aſcalon <i>u</i>	671
Arcteli <i>p</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Abel <i>u</i>	664	Albania <i>pr</i>	724	Apamene	644	Aſcanius <i>fl. f. l</i>	598
Ardenne <i>u. p</i> 317.	319	Maachia	<i>lib.</i>	Albana <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Apathurum <i>u</i>	767	Aſcania <i>p. i</i>	609
	326	Sittim <i>u</i>	661	Albanus <i>fl</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Apanomera <i>pr</i>	626	Aſcatanus <i>m</i>	769
Ardium <i>m</i>	490	Vinearum	650	Albaria <i>u</i>	644	Aphæk <i>u</i>	666	Ather <i>pr. u</i>	665
Aredaro <i>u</i>	381	Abias <i>fl</i>	770	Aleppo <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Aphærema <i>u</i>	674	Atharaffe <i>u</i>	747
Arenberg <i>u</i>	421	Abii <i>p</i>	776	Alexandria <i>inf</i>	742	Aphraim <i>u</i>	667	Athdod <i>u</i>	671
Arenacum <i>u</i>	339	Abela <i>u</i>	649	Alexandria <i>u</i>	607. 622	Aphrodiſium <i>u</i>	632	Aſia <i>pr</i>	595
Arethuſa <i>u</i>	542	Abos <i>m</i>	718	741. 744. 745. 748		Apollonia <i>u</i>	607. 611	Minor	597
Argentoratunum <i>u</i>	776	Abucent <i>p</i>	700				719	Proconſularis	610
<i>m</i>	513	Abydos <i>u</i>	610	Algiar <i>u</i>	698	Apocopi <i>m</i>	798	Propria	600
Argolis <i>p</i>	524	Acadra <i>p</i>	788	Alicodra <i>u</i>	749	Apphana <i>inf</i>	700	Aſiote <i>p</i>	771
Argos <i>u</i>	<i>lib.</i>	Acamas <i>c</i>	630	Aliga <i>fl</i>	808	Arabia <i>pr</i> 691.	<i>u</i> 698	Aſkenaz	718
Argaſtollis <i>u</i>	561	Acarnæa <i>u</i>	612	Alitrophagi <i>p</i>	776	Deſerta	692	Aſmirai <i>m</i>	778
Argyro Caſtro <i>u</i>	536	Achaſſa <i>pr</i>	776	Alnata <i>fl</i>	766	Felix	696	Aſophon <i>u</i>	669
Argyritum <i>u</i>	495	Accabene <i>p</i>	711	Alfidamus <i>m</i>	649. 654	Petra	769	Aſpabora <i>u</i>	771
Arthuſen <i>u</i>	432	Acad <i>u</i>	709	Altay <i>m</i> 596	<i>p</i> 776	Arabicus <i>f</i>	699	Aſpendus <i>u</i>	610
Arta <i>inf</i> 545.	<i>pr</i> 544	Accarnon <i>u</i>	671	Altuncala <i>u</i>	723	Arabillius <i>u</i>	606	Alperia <i>inf</i>	Alpa

Արքա-

The TABLE.

Aspalites <i>l</i>	658	Africerones <i>p</i>	900	Paide Antogil <i>u</i>	931	Terra Australis <i>Incognita</i>	Bedin <i>p</i>	212	
Aspitii <i>l</i>	770	Agadez <i>pr u</i>	904	Antolala <i>inf</i>	936	<i>pr</i> 1129	Begorre <i>p</i>	172	
Aspithra <i>u</i> 786.	<i>p</i> 788	Agag <i>pr</i>	922	Antono de Cabo <i>u</i>	1107		Bela <i>u</i>	123	
Asphara <i>fl</i>	785	Agargynæ <i>p</i>	908	Anygath <i>u</i>	904		Belcastro <i>u</i>	63	
Affa <i>u</i>	671	Agguncia <i>u</i>	954	Anzerman <i>pr</i>	1090		Bela <i>u</i>	129	
Affyria <i>pr</i>	708	Aggylinaba <i>pr u</i> 919	923	Anzichana <i>pr</i>	927		Belge <i>p</i>	249	
Affus <i>u</i>	607	Agla <i>u</i>	892	Anziqui <i>p</i>	16		Begua prima <i>pr</i>	142	
Aftabeni <i>p</i>	748	Agnet <i>u</i>	889	Anzuga <i>pr</i>	981		Secunda	150	
Aftareni <i>p</i>	745	Agver <i>c. u</i>	888	Anzuchi <i>p</i>	925		Bellay <i>u</i>	133	
Aftaroth <i>u</i>	663	Agvia <i>c</i>	1094	Apaderet <i>m</i>	962		Belle Isle	131	
Asterian <i>u</i> 624	<i>inf</i> 628	Aguatulco <i>p</i>	1079	Apachia <i>pr u</i>	16		Belle Isle	131	
Ataberia <i>inf</i>	628	Aioruxetlan <i>pr</i>	1073	Apachen <i>p u</i>	905		Bellinzana <i>u</i>	135	
Athec <i>u</i>	803	Alabastrinus <i>m</i>	853	Apamatuc <i>fl</i>	909		Belmont <i>u</i>	170	
Atropatia <i>pr</i>	734	Alacama <i>u</i>	1100	Apanawapiesk <i>p</i>	950		Bellocati <i>p</i>	159	
Attabas <i>fl</i>	818	Alacranes <i>inf</i>	1080	Aprolirus <i>inf</i>	903		Belovani <i>p</i>	150	
Attalia <i>u</i>	620	Alarbes <i>p</i>	891	Apollonia <i>u</i>	859		Beliz <i>p</i>	164	
Ava <i>p. u. fl</i>	819	Albion Nova	958. 969	Aprodites <i>u</i>	856		Beliz <i>u</i>	123	
Avares <i>p</i>	767	Alboumequins <i>pr</i>	954	Aprodigopolis <i>u</i>	16		Belzin <i>p</i>	157	
Audima <i>pr</i>	631	Alcazar <i>u</i>	893	Aptuchli Ivanum <i>u</i>	859		Benacus <i>l</i>	97	
Avernus <i>u</i>	799	Alchalinfes <i>p</i>	908	Aptungis <i>u</i>	16		Benacum <i>u</i>	172	
Augamalo <i>u</i>	811	Alagranco <i>inf</i>	935	Aqua Lunda <i>l</i>	926		Benaventum <i>u</i>	159	
Avim <i>pr</i>	671	Alemidine <i>u</i>	890	Ara Amoris <i>c</i>	910		St. Benet le Chateau <i>u</i>	168	
Aura <i>u</i>	833	Alexandria <i>u</i>	855	Palladis <i>inf</i>	929				
Aurantis <i>p</i>	664	Nova <i>pr</i>	953	Aracoli <i>l</i>	1109				
Aurea <i>inf</i>	833	Algiers <i>pr. u</i>	885	Arampec <i>u</i>	954				
Aureum <i>fl</i>	798	Aliphus <i>m</i>	858	Arangus <i>u</i>	904 908				
Aureus Cherfonefus	621	Alkebulani <i>pr</i>	842	Arasani <i>def</i>	902				
Aulinza <i>u</i>	739	Almagra <i>u</i>	1090	Ararates <i>l</i>	853				
Ausitis <i>pr</i>	692	Alpis <i>m</i>	858	Arar <i>u</i>	915				
Australe <i>m tre</i>	700	Alpuente <i>u</i>	1088	Araya <i>c</i>	1113				
Auzatia <i>u</i> 776.	<i>m</i> 775	All Saints <i>fl</i>	1107	Acadia <i>pr</i>	853. 856				
Axima <i>u</i>	739	Alvarez <i>inf</i>	932	Archidona <i>u</i>	1094				
Aza <i>u</i>	602	Amaro <i>pr. u. m</i>	912	Orbis Arcticus <i>p</i>	1127				
Azac <i>u</i>	764	Amari <i>l</i>	853	Arequippa <i>pr. u</i>	1095				
Azania <i>pr</i>	705	St. Amaro <i>u</i>	1106	Arcibia <i>fl u</i>	1120				
Azara <i>u</i>	770	Amatta <i>u</i>	1107	Arica <i>u</i>	1097				
Azannus <i>fl</i>	834	Amazones <i>pr</i> 923.	1109	Arizao <i>fl</i>	1123				
Azekah <i>u</i>	673	<i>fl</i> 1084		Arma <i>pr</i>	1091				
Azmere <i>u</i>	806	Ambrezi <i>fl</i>	925	Herculis <i>m</i>	859				
Azor <i>u</i>	665	Amegada <i>f</i>	1102	Arnedo <i>u</i>	1095				
Azotus <i>u</i>	671	America	943	Aroia de Corazon <i>p</i>	968				
Astracan <i>u</i>	768	Amicula <i>inf</i>	929	Aromota <i>c</i>	910				
		Ammonia <i>pr. u</i>	858	Aronca <i>pr</i>	908				
		Amozale <i>p</i>	925	Aroras <i>pr</i>	1111				
		Amaza <i>u</i>	921	Arowiani <i>p</i>	1110				
		Ampaza <i>u</i>	921	Arquire <i>inf. u</i>	904				
		Ampelusia <i>pr</i>	891	Arrawary <i>fl</i>	1109				
		Ampfage <i>fl</i>	880	Arruga <i>fl</i>	922				
		Amfa <i>u</i>	891	Arfenaria <i>u</i>	886				
		New Amsterdam <i>u</i>	957	Arfinarium <i>c</i>	905				
		Anades <i>fl</i>	1087	Arfinoc <i>u</i>	854 857				
		Anacaproock <i>u</i>	1110	Arvales <i>m</i>	904				
		Anclusa <i>m</i>	899	Aruba <i>inf</i>	1116				
		Ancon Sincalia <i>f</i>	1101	Arwaccæ <i>p</i>	1111				
		Ancud <i>f</i>	16	Arzalla <i>u</i>	893				
		Nova Andalusia <i>pr</i>	187	Asbetæ <i>p</i>	860				
			1113	Ascensionis <i>inf</i>	932				
		Andes <i>m i</i>	1085	Algara <i>pr</i>	891				
		St. Andrews <i>u</i>	1108	Alhamahaga <i>fl</i>	956				
		<i>c</i> 1102. <i>fl</i>	1131	Alfinuad <i>fl</i>	889				
		Androarco <i>u</i>	931	Alfia <i>u</i>	857				
		Angedefos <i>u</i>	1087	Alphar <i>l</i>	853				
		St. Angelo <i>u</i>	898	Alpis <i>c</i>	910				
		De los Angelos <i>u</i>	1078	Aslam <i>u</i>	915				
		Anghotina <i>inf</i>	929	Atlawy <i>p</i>	1111				
		Port aux Anglois <i>u</i>	954	Association <i>inf</i>	1116				
		Angoda <i>u</i>	931	Assumption <i>inf</i>	954				
		Angola <i>pr</i>	925		1003				
		Angote <i>pr. u</i>	912	Assaboras <i>fl</i>	910				
		Angra des Reys <i>u</i>	106	Assapus <i>fl</i>	16				
		Anguilla <i>inf.</i>	1119	Assare <i>inf</i>	929				
		Anian <i>fret</i>	1068	Assara <i>inf</i>	16				
		Antiphyra <i>u</i>	858	Atlantia <i>pr</i>	908				
		St. Ann <i>u</i>	1090. 1104	Atlanticæ <i>inf</i>	936				
			1128	Atlanticus Oceanus	931				
		Annobon <i>inf</i>	929. 931	Atlantis Nova <i>pr</i>	1131				
		Annogambri <i>m</i>	858	Atlas <i>m</i>	899				
		Antaboila <i>u</i>	931	Minor <i>m</i>	878				
		Antecon <i>l. u</i>	853	Attagovantani <i>p</i>	954				
		Ante <i>u</i>	964	Avalites <i>u. f</i>	910. 911				
		Antego <i>inf</i>	1118		915				
		Antigua <i>inf</i>	16	Avanaræ <i>p</i>	962				
		Antepeque <i>u</i>	1076	Avarines <i>u</i>	1083				
		Antequera <i>u</i>	1079	Avaris <i>pr</i>	854				
		Ora Anterola <i>pr</i>	94	Audes <i>m</i>	880. 883				
		Antia <i>pr</i>	962	Augustanica <i>pr</i>	853				
		St. Antonies <i>inf</i>	933	St. Augustine <i>u</i>	931 964				
		Anthropophagi <i>p</i>	919	<i>1081. fl</i>	1131				
		Antibacchus <i>inf.</i>	929	Aves <i>inf</i>	1116				
		Antiochia <i>u</i>	1090	Avila <i>u</i>	1094				
		Antiphila <i>u</i>	915	De Avinno <i>u</i>	1071				
		Anuphra <i>u</i>	859	Aulaga <i>l</i>	1093				
		Antipygus <i>u</i>	858	Auracona <i>u</i>	1101				
		Antius <i>u</i>	857	Auranco <i>pr</i>	1102				
		Antinous <i>u</i>	16						

The T A B L E.

Bourges u	168	Basilica pr	435	Bogh fl	467. 472	Buden inf	403	Batax u	745
Boutonne fl	171	Basterna p	507	Bohemia R	394	Budina u	510	Bate fl	808
Boyne fl	277	Batavi p	318. 336	Bohus pr. fl	437	Budweis u	395	Batecolom u	834
Boys de St. Pol	229	Batavodurum u	345	Boiaria pr	376	Bulgaria pr	509	Batchame u	830
Vincennes C	152	Bathune u	321	Boiemi p	394	Bullensted u	409	Barthiras u	663
Boisson u	170	Bathynias fl	545	Boiodurum u	377	Buran pr. u	339	Baticalia u	809
Bozilia u	120	Bavaria pr	376	Boiohemum u	394	Burglave pr. inf	432	Batri p	747
Bracaria Augusta u	223	Bavaren pr	1b.	Boion u	534	Burgundie p	355	Batter pr	748
Bracciani l	107	Bautzen u	399	Bolduc u	330	Burich u	356	Bautifus fl	775
Bracciano u	82	Beaumont u	324	Bolgiano u	383	Burii p	399	Bayrema l	678
Brading u	285	Beauvois u	323	Bollano u	383	Buris u	519	Bayren inf	700
Braga u	223	Auf de Beaurne u	356	Boko fl u	434	Burredentii p	500	Bazacata inf	816
Bragane u	1b.	Becke fl	467	Bomel u	338	Buthorum u	536	Bebricia pr	598
Braid Albin u	268	Beckem u	420	Bonifacio u	558	Buriada pr	423	Bebynga u	818
Branogenium u	250	Beckhusen u	423	Bonn u	360	Butringto u	536	Beertheba u	672
Brecken m	262	Bedgost u	476	Boplingen u	374	Butzaw u	400	Beganna u	692
Brecknock p	263	Bedtiede u	439	Boppart u	361	Buxtertrude u	421	Bela u	673
St. Bregoa u	174	Befort u	368	Boplingen u	374	Byblus inf	554	Belfort u	666
St. Brieu u	160	Beggerhuis p	437	Borbetomagus u	365	Byzantium u	546	Belgion m	596. pr 776
Bremenium u	250	Behaimet u	351	Borcholm u	468			Bengala f. p. u	816
Bronta fl	97	Beirani p	400	Borcolm u	328			Benjamin pr	674
Bronnorville u	150	Belgica pr	316	Boreostoma fl	498			Bepirrhos m	818
Brescia u	98	Prima & secunda	1b.	Bornheni u	320			Barabonna u	1b.
Bressi p	182	Belgium pr	315	Bornholm inf. u	434			Berenice u	694
Brest u	160	Belgrado u	483	Bortholm u	429			Berara p	692
Bretagne pr	1b.	Beilstein u	362	Borshulm u	336			Beritus u	641
Brianlon u	182	Belvedere u. C	558	Boruffi p	473			Berothai u	638
Bridg-Casterton u	249	Belzo u	472	Borysthenes fl	456			Berthaa m	644
Brig pr	133	Bemi p	394	Bolcum Ducis u	330			Berry u	740
Brigantes p	249	Bender u	503	Boferlitz u	398			Berfabe u	667
Brignolis u	179	Benones p	399	Bosnia pr. fl	490			Berzamina u	678
Brigantio u	182	Berea u	541	Bosporus	549			Befor fl	671
Brionde u	167	Berg p	357	Bostizan u	519			Betah u	648
St. Brioci fanum u	160	Berga u	541	Bostonoch u	326			Betarampha u	662
Brixellum u	122	Bergen u	437	Bouchain u	323			Bethabora u	661
Bristol u	248	Op-Zome u	331	Bouillon pr. u	329			Bethel u	674
Britannia prima & secun-		Bergio pr	449	Bouines u	325			Bethezob u	662
da	250	Berkel u	339	Bouquenon u	370			Berharam u	1b.
Britannia inf	227	Berken u	356	Bourbourg u	320			Eden pr	649
Britannodunum u	270	Berlin u	356. 400	Boxtehude u	421			Horon u	670
Brous la Galliard u	170	Berlinck u	1b.	Boys le Duc u	330			Bethlem u	673
Bruck u	136	Bernberg u	90	Brabant pr	330			Nimrah u	662
Brundusium u	62	Bessarabia pr	503	Bracant p	320			Rhehob p	664
Brune f	184	Bessimburg u	468	Braclaw u	470			Saida u	665. 667
Brutii p	63	Bessi p	503	Bracingliac u	388			San u	668
Brye pr	153	Bethom u	399	Bragodunum u	374			Shemesh	666 672
Buche pr	172	Betuiwe pr	338	Brakel u	421			Sora u	673
Buckingham p. u	246	Beverland inf	336	Brala u	420			Sur u	1b.
Buolth u	261	Beybas l	467	Bramsted u	429			Berhulia u	667
Bugey u	183	Bialo fl	476	Brandenburg pr	400. 474			Betius fl u	698
Buguham p	271	Biana u	381	Brando inf	434			Bezabde u	713
Burgedala u	172	Biaolograd u	503	Branionarium u	389			Bezek u	669
Burette u	171	Biarmia pr	457	Branki u	460			Bianco c 659. l	763
Burgos u	219	Bibrach u	374	Brailovia u	504			Biani u	805
		Bideloyliero l	456	Brassovia u	499			Biblis u	641
Burgundy } Comit.	186	Biela pr	458	Bratuspantium u	330			Bichend u	770
Burgundy } Ducat.	184	Bielsco u	473	Braunsberg u	474			Bidaspes fl	799
Burgundy } Regn.	180	Bielsco u	473	Brazia inf	496			Bider u	808
Burgundia Transjurana		Biephi p	500	Breda u	331			Billezuga u	609
		Bierulier u	320	Breden u	429			Bindimir fl	739
Burtina u	232	Biefcid m	480	Bredene u	334			Binta inf	833
Busfontus f	64	Bigla u	470	Bredervode u	339			Bintam inf	1b.
Busque u	128	Bihighn u	490	Bregen fl	375			Birraha u	710. 719
Buthe inf	283	Bille fl	428	Breme pr u	421			Biseries p	723
La Butte du Mont u	188	Billow fl	1b.	Breslaw u	399			Bisnagar u	813
Byrsa f	136	Bilsen u	328	Brest pr	470			Bithynia pr	598
		Binche u	324	Brestys pr	476			Bitigi p	800
		Bing u	360	Bretta u	388			Bittigo m 596. 776.	798
		Bingst. u	403	Brewers Haven u	336			Blacktower u	609
		Bipontini u	364	Brill u	335			Bloufa u	637
		Birkholm inf	434	Brin u	398			Boas fl	721
		Birkara u	449	Brigartinus l	373			Bocana u	834
		Bischoffstein u	363	Arx Britannica c	335			Bochor u	749
		Bishopstoffs u	378	Brifach u	374			Bochu u	735
		Bistrice fl. u	499	Brifachus u	1b.			Bodeus fl	631
		Bitterfelt u	406	Brifgow pr	1b.			Boldra u	807
		Bium u	534	Brixawes p	375			Bolgar u	768
		Black Sea	546	Broick u	422			Bolofa u	617
		Towers	550	Brookhurst u	339			Bongo pr. u	827
		Blanch fl	323	Bros u	500			Borgi p	745
		Blaucostein u	358	Brouci p	484			Borgylin u	616
		Blangis fl	322	Bructeri p 318. 338.	440			Borneo inf. u	830
		Blave fl	375	Brug fl	319			Borfauna fl	818
		Bleking pr	435	Bruges u	1b.			Borsyppa u	708
		Blescia pr	1b.	Brunfells u	387			Borysthenes fl	763
		Blida u	510	Brunsko u	473			Bosor u	661
		Blokawes u	468	Brunswick pr. u	415			Bosphorus Cimmerius	763
		Bodenzee l	373	Brusch fl	367			Thracium	597
		Bodenia p	449	Brussels u	331			Bosra u	694
		Bodmin C	373	Bruella u	1b.			Boranter pr	814
		Bodnerslea	449	Bucaresta u	504			Botone inf	828
		Bodobrica u	362	Bucha u	374			Bottia u	814
		Bodon u	505	Bucorne u	373			Bozza u	661
		Bodum inf	432	Buda u	482			Brama u	819
		Bogens u	434					Brama	

The T A B L E.

Bramna u	786	Berenice u	859	Caer Laverack u	271	Carick p	271	Cherfunum u	115
Brampore u	809	Bermeio fl	1003	Caer-lion u	250	Carriou fl	209	Chester u	284
Brifoana fl	739	Bermuda u	959	Caer-marthen p. u	263	Carteiz u	212	Cheviot m	267
Brodra u	808	Bermudaz inf	961	Caerleon u	261	Carthage u	217	Chianus fl	168
Bucephalus u	799	Beroa u	914	Caeria int 188. u	118	Carthagenensis p	212	Chiarana u	141
Buchor pr	803	Bertecca pr	923	Augusta u	332	Carthema u	216	Chiavenna p	140
Bucorsuccor u	1b.	Befecath pr	842	Caeris Burgum u	158	Casal u	123	Chichester u	252
Bugiales inf	629	Befames u	854	Caerodunum u	162	Caserte u	59	Chientus fl	80
Burfa u	599	Bicar u	1096	Caeromagus u	150	Cassile u	280	Chiltern m	239
Buffereth u	694	Bidar u	915	Cagedo fl	231	Cassiterides inf	284	Chiochia inf	102
Bofynga fl	818	Biledulgerid pr	901	Cagliari c u	74	Castellani p	229	Chiuli u	109
Butis u	663	Bifam u	914	Calhous u	170	Castellona u	109	Chorges u	182
Byconi pr	603	Biscala Nova pr	1071	Cajeta u	57	Castille p	219	Chur u	140
Byces fl	763	Biserra u	882	Calabria pr	63	Castillon u	183	Churburg u	158
Byclæ p	769	Bito pr	907	Inferior	64	Castlefrance u	99	Cilini p	210
Byra u	670	Blanca inf	1091	Superior	63	Castles c	141	Cimbri p	148
Byrrha u	647	Blance c	904. 968	Horra		Castletown u	283	Cimmeni p	1b.
		Blanch inf	954	Cala Gorina } u	204	Castro u	62	Cimmerius m	80
		Blanco fl	181	Guris }		Castro Giovanni u	70	Cinia fl	228
		Blemyæ p	842	Calais u	154	Castrolda u	109	Cinnium u	230
		Blind Town u	959	Calaris u	74	Castres u	151	Circe u	83
		Boaruco pr	1121	Calataiub u	232	Castro villare u	64	Cirencester u	250
		Bocanum u	889	Calatum u	250	Castrum Alatum u	270	Cislanester u	252
		Bogudiana pr	891	Calatrava u	218. 222	Heraldi u	169	Cisteron u	179
		Bocadel Drago fret	1112	Caledonia pr	271	Theodorici u	153	Citeriorem u	223
			1113	Caleres p	159	Castulo u	220	Citta de Castella u	81
		Bolriticum f	853	Callota de Nesquin	225	Caston u	1b.	Citta del Chieta u	59
		Bolus Erithra u	855			Castulonensis saltus m		Cittadella u	230
		Hiera	1b.	Calpe m	212			Cita Nova u	100
		Bombaza pr	920	Calypso inf	64	Catalonia pr	228	Civita Vecchia u	82
		Bombon u	1096	Cam fl	254	Catana u	71	Civdad de Austria u	100
		Bona u	883	Camalodunum u	249	Caterlough p. u	278		
		Bona speic	924	Camargue p	179	Citelauni p	152	Real u	209
		Bonaire inf	1116	Camboriturum u	254	St Catharines c	129	Roderigo u	219
		Bona vista c	951	Cambridge pr u	246. 248	Cathneffe pr	271	Clacrac u	175
		Bonaventure u	1090			Cattieuchlani p	249	Clarecounty	279
		Bordea def	902	Cameracastrensis u	151	Cavan p	278	Claffi u	77
		Borealis Terra Incognita		Camerine u	123	Cavari p	182	Clavenna u	141
			1127	Campagna de Roma	82	Cavillon u	180	Cleri u	164
		Boreum c	859	Campania	29	Cauci p	280	Clermont u	150. 167
		Boriguen inf	1120	Antiqua p	57	Caux u	158	Clevenertal u	141
		Borneo fl 904	u 907	Nova p	1b.	Ceano u	59	Clavius fl	169
		Bornum pr	1b.	Campaigne p	152	Cel l	134	Clin fl	1b.
		Boro pr	923	Campi Canini p	140	Celtiberia p	231	Cliffon u	160
		Boston u	956	Campi Lapidei p	178	Celtica pr	214	Clonmel u	230
		Botongi pr	923	Campi Catalaunici	pr	Celto Galatia p	142	Clugni Monaster	180
		Boxo c	969			Cenomani p	77. 117	Clulium u	107
		Boyaman fl	1120	Can fl	254	Cenomanses p	163	Cluyd fl	263
		Bracomori p	194	Candale u	1b.	Centrum cellæ u	82	Cluyddale	270
		Bramas p	927	Cangani p	280	Centrones p	128	Coctia m	125
		St. Brandon inf.	930	Cannæ u	61	Cerdague p	229	Coignac u	170
		Brasil pr	1105	Canus m	195	Cerretani p	230	Coim u	216
		Brava u 916. inf	933	Canigo m	1b.	Cervia u	76	Coira u	140
		Terra de Brea pr	1112	Cantabri p	207	Cervillan u	217	Colchester u	253
			886	Cantabrie m	201	Cessena u	76	Collebræ u	229
		Brech u	951	Cantabricum Mare	196	Cex u	215	Coln fl	253
		Brest u	956	Cantæ p	271	Chabannes u	170	Colonnes c	64
		Bristow u	954	Canterbury u	249	Chabriers u	179	Colonia London u	258
		Briton inf	1b.	Cantiani p	1b.	Chalday inf	284	Colrane pr	278
		Brion inf	854	Cantiui p	1b.	Chalaris u	73	Comachia u	77
		Bubastis u	1088	Cantire p	271	Chalon u	152. 185	Comacina inf	118
		Bubia fl	859	Cantium inf	285	Chaluz u	170	Combraille p	166
		Bucolicus m	906	Canusium u	62	Chambarie u	128	Cominges p	174
		Budomel c	933	Cape de Istrie u	100	Champaigne pr	152	Como u	118
		Buenavista inf	1104	Capitinate p	61	Chancelle u	166	Compeigns u	150
		Buenos ayres fl. u	884	Capori p	210	Chantille u	151	Compendium u	1b.
		Bugia pr. u	923	Capraria inf	110	Chapelle u	156	Complutum u	220
		Bumbebe pr	898	Capreæ inf	64	Charboniers u	129	Compostschin pr	140
		Burgo u	891	Caprula inf	102	Charente fl	169. 171	Compostella u	210
		Burugrug fl	880	Capuae u	58	Charenton u	150	Conirela inf	230
		Buzara m	859	Caraceni p	59	Charmis u	73	Concordia u	100
		Buzes pr	882	Carara u	108	Charoiles u	185	Concreffant u	168
		Byrla u	1b.	Carbantorigum u	271	Charroux u	166	Condabora u	210
		Byzacena pr. u		Cardafone u	176	Chartres u	164	Condare u	160
				Cardano u	230	Chateau Briant u	160	Condivincinum u	1b.
				Cardigan pr	262	Dun u	164	Condon u	175
				Caribdis f	67	Moron u	172	Confulat u	170
				Cariofergus u	279	Neif u	170	Conflans u	129
				Caristi p	207	Portian u	156	Conil u	211
				Carinthia pr	125	Roux u	168	Conimbre u	223
				Carlat u	167	Sarasin u	171	Connacia pr	279
				Carlingford u	279	Thierry u	153	Connaught pr	1b.
				Carlike u	254	Chasteler u	157	Cononium u	261
				Carmanvogla u	128	Chastel Chalons u	229	Conwey u	262
				Carmanden pr	262	Herald u	169	Conquer u	160
				Cararvan pr. u	262	Jalone u	175	Consensia u	64
					263	Neau u	174	Conferani p	172
				Carnice m. p	125	Chastillon u	172	Conferans p. u	174
				Carniola pr	1b.	Chatham u	252	Constance l	157
				Carnutes p	164	Chaumont u	153, 183	Contestani p	228
				Caro c	68	Chaune u	156	Contini p	271
				Carpentani p	220	Chedlady fl	262	Convenarum p	174
				Carpentras u	180	Chenil fl	212	Cavenares p	172
				Carpi u	77	Cher fl	168	Conwey fl	261

The **T A B L E**

Corbeil u	151	Carnutum u	482	Cifamus u	558	Cronstad u	499	Canaan pr	658. 655
Corbes l	277	Carodunum u	476	Citeum u	1b.	Crossen u	399	Canac p	734
Corbie u	156	Carpathii m	480	Citheron m	531	Crunitznach u	364	Canapieni p	768
Corcagia u	280	Carthea u	555	Citium u	542	Culemburg p. 339. m	351	Canara pr	809
Corfinium u	60	Carpen u	328	Clarewang u	365	Culm u	474	Candahor pr. u	744
Corinium u	250	Casan pr. u	460	Clagnefurt u	382	Culmbach u	428	Candari p	770
Coriondi p	280	Casimira u	476	Claude inf	555. 559	Curetes p	534	Candic u	834
Corduba pr. u	211	Caspium Mare	456	Claudiopolis u	500	Curiapagniana u	408	Cane u	612
Coritani p	249	Cassandria u	542	Claufenberg	1b.	Curicum u	495	Caniclu l	774
Cornavii p	250	Cassandt inf. u	320	Cleaveland pr u	356	Curieta inf	1b	Canis fl	639
Cornet c	188	Cassels u	418	Cleve	1b.	Curland pr	468	Canne u	618 708
Cornubii p	271	Cassiope u	536	Clivia	1b.	Curta u	482	Cantharis u	741
Cornwal p	246	Cassovia u	482	Clyssa u	491	Curula inf u	496	Canthymus u	799
Corfica inf	29. 115	Castegnaza m	515	Cnemis m	533	Curolari inf	561	Canton u	787
Cortona u	108	Castel u	389. 393	Cobandi p	432	Custrine u	400	Capacote u	810
Corve fl	263	Novo u	482. 493. 558	Coburg u	389	Cyclades inf	550	Caparoria u	678
Corvo inf	225	Caster u	356	Cobolentz u	361	Cydonia u	557	Capernaum u	669
Corunna u	210	Argiro Castro u	536	Cochina u	503	Cynthinium u	534	Capitolias u	649
Cosetani p	229	Castrolin u	449	Cochino u	551	Cynthus m	553	Cappadocia pr. fl	604
Cosmopolis u	110	Catena Mundi m	515	Cocytus fl	535	Cynus u	533	Secunda	605
Cossa u	1b.	Catharo f. u	493	Codonania inf	433	Cyparissi u	521	Caput Calidoni c	630
Cossium u	172	Catti p	385. 419	Coeten u	409	Cyria u	532	Gentis u	719
Cotswold m	239	Catzenebbogen u	385	Cognamus m	381	Cythra inf	550	Caracantium u	620
Coventry u	255	Cauron inf	553	Colambes u	515	Cythus pr	555	Caracoras u	770
Cournoville pr	160	Cazach u	491	Colberg u	403	Cytia u	558	Carami l	774
Cowes c	285	Cebium u	504	Colen pr. u	360	Cytinum u	554	Caramania pr	621
Crathii fl	64	Cecropia u	528	Colchidium u	493	Cyzicus inf	550	Caramit u	713
La Craux pr	178	Celidnus fl	537	Colluga u	460	Czandre u	506	Carata u	729
Crecy u	155	Cell u	415	Colmagro u	461	Czeremilli p	461	Carafia pr	608
Crema u	98	Celeya u	382	Colmar u	446	Czernigo u	460	Carata p	769
Cremera fl	82	Cenchrea u	525	De Cholachino f	552	Czirko u	473	Carathra u	618
Cremien u	182	Centauroi p	539	Colocza u	484	Czyk p	500	Carazan pr	777
Cremona u	118	Centron u	328	Colonamich u	509			Carabalia pr	620
Crevice fl	169	Ceos inf	554	Colonia u	360			Carcinitis fl	763
Creuse fl	168	Cephalenia inf. u	561	Agrippina u	1b.			Cardimine inf	700
Croissie u	160	Cephalo u	554	Trajana	356			Cardandan pr	776
Croffero u	109	Cephissus fl	518	Colubraz	506			Careanfu u	775
Crotona u	63	Ceratus u. fl	557	Columbella u	505			Caria p. inf	628
Crovy u	156	Ceraunii p	496	Comara inf	482			Cariattharim u	672
Cuenca u	220	Ceresi u	541	Comenolitati p	539			Cariatth Sephir	1b.
Cullera u	228	Cerenides u	1b.	Comines u	320			Carindas fl	734
Cuma u	58	Cerigo inf	555	Conadus f	433			Carioth u	673
Cumberland pr	246	Ceronia u	531	Conde u	323			Cariphi fl	798
Cunici u	230	Cessine u	399	Condora pr	459			Carmen u	698
Cunningham pr	271	Cecerigo inf	560	Confluentz p	361			Carmania u 741. pr	746
Curi fl	184	Cetius u	351	Congel u	437			Carmel m	639
Curia u	140	Chabris fl	541	Connigeberg u	474			Carnaim u	663
Cyclopes p	68	Chalcidice p	542	Constance l. u	373			Caromaiam fl	774
Cyclopum Scopuli inf	71	Chalcis u	534. 552					Carpatia inf	635
Cynos inf	115	Chali p	432	Constantinople u	547			Carpassus pr	631
		Cham u	393	Constat	390			Carpathus inf u	628
		Chaminisa u	519	Conteslo f	541			Carpathium mare	595
		Charani p	420	Copenhagen u	433			Carpella c	741
		Chaonia pr	535	Copperdale pr	447			Carræ u	712
		Charafon fl	545	Corbach u	418			Carthian u	666
		La Charbonniere u	318	Corcyra inf	496. 561			Casa u	739
		Charitni p	390	Corfu inf	1b.			Casbin u	735
		Charlemont u	325	Corelia pr	458			Casfar pr	776
		Charudes p	432	Corenberg u	459			Cascimur u	802
		Charmes u	370	Corinth pr u	525			Casham u	747
		Chausuarii p	408	Corycus u. c	557			Casfi m	775
		Chatti p	418	Cornah u	408			Casilmach fl	598
		Chauci p	416. 420	Corona u	499			Casiotis pr	644
		Chedini p	440	Corone f. u	521			Casius m	638
		Chelmo pr. u	472	Corlira u	460			Castum p	671
		Cherona u	531	Cort China u	336			Calmer fl	638
		Cherlo inf	495	Cortina u	557			Caspia pr	747
		Cherufci p	412. 416	Coryphasium c	521			Caspia portæ m	596. 747
		Chestin c	555	Costova u	510			Caspin u	672
		Chiarenza u. c	519	Costin u	403			Caspirai p	800
		Chiers fl	326	Corthuse u	399			Caspiria pr	802
		Chilonite c	520	Coub u	364			Caspium mare	724
		Chilonium u	429	Covin u	505			Cassanito pr	700
		Chimay u	323	Courtray u	320			Cassirota p	745
		Chisamo u	558	Crabuts pr	490			Casta u	813
		Christenburg u	435	Cracovia u	476			Castamona u	600
		Christendorp u	1b.	Cracow u	1b.			Castol Gera u	625
		Christiana u. 1b. inf	560	Crapack m	480			Castum Peregrinorum	667
		Christianopolis u	435	Cratova u	506			Novum	1b.
		Chronack u	388	Cranenburg u	356			Regium	666
		Chronus fl	467. 473	Cremia u	381			Catabeda m	818
		Chrysites u	542	Crems u	1b.			Catamorea p	626
		Chrysonicum u	505. 506	Crempe u. fl	419			Catamul fl	799
		Chum p	484	Cremier u	398			Catania pr	605
		Cia inf	554	Crenides u	541			Catarchus fl	610
		Ciabrus fl	498	Crestonia pr	544			Catehoa u	814
		Cibinium u fl	499	Creta inf	555			Cathay pr	773
		Cicynethus inf	551	Creticum Mare	1b.			Cathrapis fl	741
		Ciland inf	432	Crisia u	532			Catigan u	816
		Cimaros c	555	Croatia pr	490			Catio u	678
		Cimbri p	351	Croia u	538			Catoranagara u	786
		Cimeris u	1b.	La Croix m	438			Cattabani p	700
		Cimolis inf	555	Cronaburg u	440			De la Catti c	630
		Cireus fl	552	Cronach u	388			Catti	
				Cronenburg c	433				

The , **T A B L E.**

Cattigara π	787	Chios <i>inf</i> 625.	626	Coptorini <i>p</i>	671	Cajulla <i>inf</i>	929	Fort de Chateaux	964
Caucalia portæ m	596	Chifon <i>fl</i>	638	Coras u	779	Calabinda u	1104	Golf de Chateaux <i>f</i>	981
Caucalus m	766. 769	Chiti c	630	Coraz <i>fl. m</i>	766	Calathe <i>inf</i>	897	Chaus p	892
Caudriaces <i>fl</i>	741	Choaspa $u. fl$	744	Corcam p	747	Caledonia Nova <i>pr</i>	953	Chelbi <i>inf</i>	897
Cauchin-China p	820	Cholna u	720	Cordia i	719	Calen u	920	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	920
Cavilan p	819	Chorazin p	748	Corduene <i>pr</i>	16.	Cali u	1090	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Caulanitis <i>pr</i>	711	Chorazin u	665	Corde u	602	Californi <i>pr</i>	958	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Caximer u	802	Chorma u	672	Corona <i>inf</i>	878	Calpe m	893	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Caystrus <i>fl</i>	598. 614	Chorodamus c	699	Coronyum c	630	De los Camerones <i>fl</i>	1102	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cebcha <i>fl</i>	799	Choromandel u	813	Cornochiette	16.	Cambylis u	911	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cedes Nephtalim u	665	Chorfa u	720	Coronus m	716. 734	Camoni p	962	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cedrei p	692	Chorseus <i>fl</i>	638	Corfunum u	763	Campeche u	1079	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cedron $u. fl$	672	Chrindri p	748	Cory c	810	Camucuar p	1106	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cedar u	16.	Chrysopolis u	598	Corydalla u	617	Canada <i>pr. fl</i>	952	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Ceila u	673	Chrysorrhoas <i>fl</i>	649	Corigaza u	818	Canaga <i>fl</i>	924	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Ceilan <i>inf</i>	825	Chufestan p	738	Corymbia <i>inf</i>	628	Canagadi <i>pr</i>	962	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cene u	612	Chesmur u	802	Colmi u	824	Cananea u	1106	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cephene <i>pr</i>	739	Chyrman <i>pr. u</i>	741	Collai p	739	Canaries <i>inf</i>	933	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cerastis <i>inf</i>	630	Cialie u	777	Cota u	810	Canares p	1094	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cerasus u	601	Cian u	830	Cotacene p	719	Canchis m	919	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Ceraunii m	766	Ciandecan u	855	Cotiaris <i>fl</i>	785	Candelaria u	1104	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cerceticus <i>f</i>	16.	Cianthang <i>fl</i>	786	Cottiar u	799	Candelam <i>pr</i>	1094	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cerchaus p	779	Cidnus <i>fl</i>	621	Couche <i>pr. u</i>	815	Canila <i>pr</i>	914	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cergiron u	787	Cilicia aspera p	620	Coul u	820	Caniticum <i>fl</i>	853	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cerguth <i>pr</i>	779	Cilicia <i>pr</i>	16.	Coulan <i>pr. u</i>	811	Cano <i>pr. u</i>	94	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cerines $p. u$	631	Cilicia portæ m	16.	Coy u	719	Canoas <i>fl</i>	1114	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cerioth u	673	Cimmeris u	621	Cragas $u. m$	617	Canopus u	855	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cesi <i>inf</i>	629	Cimmerii p	767	Crananor <i>pr. u</i>	810	Contaberes $m. 919.$	925	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cestrus <i>fl</i>	620	Cimmerium $u. c$	16.	Crat u	694	Canten <i>fl</i>	1100	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cethinia <i>inf</i>	630	Cinædocolpita p	700	Cremen u	723	Capanavatzla u	1080	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cethlan u	666	Cingtu u	787	Cremna u	619	Caparra u	1120	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Cetium u	631	Cinnereth u	666	Cressa u	616	Capas m	900	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Ceraunia u	632	Cyparissa <i>inf</i>	627	Cretopolis m	620	Capha m	16.	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chabala u	805	Circan <i>pr</i>	747	Crim $u. pr$	763	Capraria <i>inf</i>	933	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chabalaca u	16.	Circassiani p	766	Croceus <i>fl</i>	785	Capla u	902	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chaberis <i>fl. u</i>	799	Circum u	764	Croom u	747	Capuri p	1111	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chaboras m	734	Cirtatha u	818	Crufocus <i>pr</i>	631	Caput Currentium c	923	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chabor u	735	Cishion u	667	Crustina u	771	Caracas u	1114	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chadambaram u	813	Ciffia <i>pr</i>	738	Cryptus u	698	Caramanta u	1090	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chadid u	674	Cithera u	631	Cryfaoras <i>fl</i>	818	Carangues u	1093	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chadramotica p	800	Citium u	16.	Cresyphon u	708	Caravalleda u	1114	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chænides p	768	Citer u	806	Cucufon u	606	Caravaya <i>pr</i>	1096	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chæristus <i>fl</i>	721	Ciumbabon <i>inf</i>	828	Cudute p	818	Carcare p	1104	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalanitide p	708	Clamanienfes p	605	Cufa u	713	Carfur u	916	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalatene <i>pr</i>	735	Clamassum u	720	Cuma u	612	Carchana <i>inf</i>	897	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalcidice p	644	Clamur u	814	Cunula u	799	Carirche <i>f</i>	1113	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalcis u	644	Clatos <i>inf</i>	627	Cupressitum u	709	Carlos u	1083	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalcitis p	710	Claudiopolis u	620	Cuprus <i>fl</i>	709	Carone <i>fl</i>	1112	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chaldea <i>pr</i>	596	Clazomene <i>inf. u</i>	614	Curdi p	636	Carnuga <i>fl</i>	904	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chale u	810	Clides c 630. <i>inf</i>	635	Curdurmuch u	820	Caribes <i>inf</i>	1117	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalmodora u	647	Climachus u	602	Curias c 630. <i>u</i>	632	Caripo u	1111	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalyban u	644	Climax m	698	Curroy p	820	Carthage u	882. 1090	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalybanotis <i>pr</i>	16.	Cnidus $u. c$	616	Cursus Achillis u	763	Cartago u	1083	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chalybes <i>pr</i>	723	Coa <i>fl</i>	799	Cusia <i>pr</i>	776	Carthagenæ <i>pr. u</i>	1087	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chamatha u	648	Coacus <i>fl</i>	744	Cush, Cusha <i>pr</i>	738	Casapualca u	1080	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chambel <i>fl</i>	799	Coatras m	708. 716	Cusiana <i>pr</i>	16.	Casena <i>pr</i>	905	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chamdagrin u	813	Coamoni p	749	Cutheans p	670	Casperia <i>inf</i>	933	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Champa p	820	Coaxtra p	767	Cyaneus <i>fl</i>	721	Calpurough <i>fl</i>	1109	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Characene <i>pr</i>	738	Cocalia u	602	Cybro u	644	Cassipure <i>fl</i>	16.	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chara-chisar u	609	Cocconagora u	818	Cylendrine p	802	Cassumo u	912	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charadra p	741	Cochin <i>pr. u</i>	810	Cyprus <i>inf</i> 630. <i>fl</i>	709	Casteaux <i>f</i>	951	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charax u	746	Cogni u	617	Cyreckbata u	735	Castella aurea <i>pr</i>	1085	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Thermath Chares u	669	Coia u	826	Cyrestica <i>pr</i>	644	Castra Judæbrum u	854	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charispe u	749	Coilon u	824	Cyrnus <i>fl</i>	724	Castro u	1094. 1101	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charomithrene p	734	Coim r	719	Cyropolis u	735	Catoractes major	910	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charraccharta u	749	Colans u	787	Cyroschata u	770	minor	857	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chars u	720	Colchi u	799	Cyrrhus u	644	Catelina <i>inf</i>	1116	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chasdim <i>pr</i>	705	Colchis <i>pr</i>	721	Cyrus <i>fl</i>	719. 724	Cathrata <i>inf</i>	929	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chata p	774	Coli u	818	Cyrza u	741	Catuda <i>fl</i>	880	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chacking u	787	Collinia <i>inf</i>	630	Cyzicus <i>inf. u</i>	610	Porto de Cavallos u	1082	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chathrapis <i>fl</i>	741	Colmuchi u	834			Cauca <i>fl</i>	1087	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charzarhevum u	664	Colobraslius u	620			Caxamalca u	1095	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charua u	810	Cologenber u	712			Las Caxas u	1073	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charzar u	665	Colonia u	720			Caximo u	912	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charziari p	800	Colophon u	613			Cazaze <i>fl</i>	1088	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Charzor u	673	Colofa u 609. <i>inf</i>	629			De Cedros c 569. <i>fl</i>	1090	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
Chaucabeni p	693	Colthene p	719			Centpuis u	890	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Columbo u	834			Cepita u	1097	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Comagena <i>pr</i>	646			Cercina <i>inf. u</i>	897	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Comana u	601. 605			Cerne <i>inf</i>	931. 936	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Comari c	769. 798			Chagre <i>fl</i>	1086	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Combusta <i>inf</i>	700			Chalce p	1076	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Comodie p	769			Chalcaqui p	1003	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Communia Extrema c	798			Chaluteca <i>pr</i>	1081	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Conapioni p	768			Chamalucon <i>fl</i>	1082	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Conlata u	603			Chamnoe <i>inf</i>	931	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Conica u	16.			Champlain i	953	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Conloco u	767			Chancay p	1095	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Connellia u	631			Chanes p	1104	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Cononor <i>pr. u</i>	810			Chapala i	1073	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Constantia u	632			Chopen Chict u	1090	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Contacillya u	799			Charcas <i>pr</i>	1093	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Contani p	749			Charente <i>fl</i>	961	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924
		Coos, Cous <i>inf</i>	627			Cape Charles c	950	Cheloni <i>fl</i>	924

The TABLE.

Conception / 951 fl 1083	Decenfes p 182	Damalis u 550	Dove u 325	Diavas fl 709
De Salaya u 1704	Decenti p 113	Dammun u 405	Doveland inf 336	Diablatham u 660
De la Vega 1121	Dedier u 153	Dampuillers u 326	Douge fl 331	Didymi m 698
Conchi p 1172	DeDyme inf 71	Dandutii p 428	Doway u 321	Dihon u 662
Conlines u 1111	Dee fl 270	Danow fl 350	Dray fl 381	Dilop fl 598
Congemes p 925	Dechenbarth p 265	Danubius fl 16.	Draun fl 16.	St. Dimitri u 611
Congo pr 16.	Deira p 255	Dantiscum u 475	Dravus fl 381. 481	Dindyme m 609
De Congo u 1086	Delvin u 278	Dantzick u 16.	Drebnitz fl 473	Dinhath u 678
Combas u. l 1072	Denbigh pr 262, 263	Dardanelli c 550	Drent p 338	Dio Cafaria u 605
Julia Conflantia u 894	Denia fl 277. u 228	Dardania pr 507	Dresden u 477	Dionysopolis u 834
Constantina pr. u. m 881	St. Dennis u 151	Darmstadt u 418	Driana fl 493	Diofcoris inf. u 700
Conte u 890	Dervogel m 140	Darlaw u 475	Drinus fl 489	Diofcurias u 722
Copayabo ? 1100	Desmond pr 279	Daucianes p 436	Drimago u 510	Diofpolis u 600. 669
Coptus u 857	Deva fl 262	Davi p 498. 503	Driopis pr 541	Diu u 807
Coquiboccon u 1088	Devana u 271	Daulis u 532	Droic u 473	Doceti u 804
Coquimbo fl 1109	Devonshire pr 246	Daurii p 496	Dromos inf 550	Dogana u 834
Arviz de Corozones pr 963	Devania u 261	Dayna u 538	Drufomagus u 374	Doliche u 647
Cordes 1102	Dianium m 228	Darfovia u 475	Duacum u 321	Don fl 762
Cordellera u 1087	Die u 182	Deborus u 537	Dubin u 468	Dora u 669
Corduba u 1104	Die Furchen p 126	Deckala u 449	Duerin u 356	Dorias fl 818
Nort Corduba u 16.	Diepe u fl 158	Defe fl 330	Duerfted u 345	Doris pr 616
Coro u 937. fl 1114	Dijon u 184	Delde u 338	Dugublini p 416	Doroacana u 745
Corobaci fl 1087	Dimetie p 261	Delf u 334	Duiffle u 356	Doryleum u 608
Coronado c 968	Dinan u 160	Delm fl 422	Duina fl 456	Dothan u 667
Corova pr 920	Dinevour fl 264	Delmenhorft u 423	Duisberg u 356	Drachamæ p 745
Corrientes c 916. 1090	St. Deliderii fanum u 153	Delos inf. u 553	Dinflake u 358	Dragorian u 832
Cortiallis terra 950	Diomedes inf 64	Delphos u 532	Dunamund u 468	Drangiana pr 747
Coryphe p 842	Dion, or Diamum u 16.	Demetrius u 540	Dulichium inf 562	Drangius fl 16.
Costarica pr 1082	Diofcores inf 16.	Dender fl 320. 323	Dulcigno u 493	Drepanum c 630. u 631
Cofyra inf u 897	Diferntis u 140	Dendermond u 320	Durazzo u 537	Drepta u 709
Cotui u 1121	Ditani p 220	Denmark R 427	Duringen pr 407	Drofache u 775
Couche pr. u 913	Dive fl 162	Dennere fl 330	Dunkirk u 320	Dryphitæ p 800
Couliacin pr 1069	Divio u 185	Derbork u 434	Dunort u 422	Dryufa inf 626
Cozamul inf 1080	Dobuni p 250	Derbren u 468	Duringerwald m. u 408	Duckec caft 802
Crewinay p 1111	Doglian u 128	Derpt u 16.	Durlach u 391	Dulfinda pr 801. 806
Crocodilorum u 857	Dole u 186.	Derii p 496	Duro fl 368	Dymus fl 769
St. Croix u 953	St. Dominico inf 64	Derris u 542	Duffel fl 356	
Crophy rupes 857	Donne fl 270	Defna fl 470	Dulfeldorp u 357	
St. Crofs inf 933	Dorat u 170	Dellaw u 409	Dwina pr. u 461	
Dela Crux fl 1102. f 968	Dorchester u 249. 253	Deva u 500		Lib. IV.
St. Crux inf 1180. u 1119	Dorcinia u 250	Deventer u 338	Dyctynneum c 554	Dactylorum Regio 901
r 1088. u 1106	Dordonne fl 148. 170	Deuxpouts u 364	Dyme u 519	Dafila pr 914
De Real u 1086	Dorsetshire pr 246.	Dia inf 560	Dyrachium u 492	Ladies Dale pr 968
Sierra 1104	Dorra u 224	Dibra u 537		Dalegift u 959
Vera Crux u 1078	Dove fl 184	Dictæa inf 557		Damiata u 853
Cuama fl 920	Dover u 252	Dicte m 16.	Lib. III.	Damote pr 911
Chamaſ p 1071	Doufenac u 170.	Dicte m 16.	Dabarath u 667	Damut p. u 913
Chba inf 1123	Downe pr 278.	Dicte m 16.	Dacaitote u 808	Dande fl 925
Chabagna inf 1113. 1114	Doux fl 186.	Dicte m 16.	Dache pr 744	Dangala u 907
Cube u 911	Dragonago inf 230	St. Die u 370	Daema u 672	Dangali pr. u 915
Chéchi p 925	Dragonera inf 16.	Diest u 331	Dainta u 610	Daphnis inf 929
Cicutina u 884	Drepanum u 70	Dierz u 418	Daix fl 770	Dara fl pr 901
Chienca u 1094	Dreux u 164.	Dikilappe p 459	Dala u 824	Daradus fl 900
Chertlavaca u 1079	Drogheda u 278.	Diles inf 553	Dalaque inf 700	Darien u. pr. fl 1087
Culahuan u 890	Drothe fl 182	Dille fl 331	Dalmanutha u 665	Darorum Vicus u 911
Caleua u 884	Druentus fl 56.	Dillingbourg u 385	Daman u 808	Davis fretum 1128
Calican pr 1070	Duafzo fl 207.	Dimentii p 511	Damanum inf 709	Daum pr 908
Calva p 1076	Dublin pr. u 278.	Dimula fl 421	Damafcus u 649	De Arinnon u 1071
Cumana fl. pr. u 1113	Dubris u 249. 250	Dinant u 328	Aram. Damafec. p 649	Debris u 902
Cumbinana u 1094	Duerus fl 200. 249	Dinkelfpuel u 374	Damali m 818	Del Eſtero u 1104
Curacuos inf 1116	Dumna inf 282	Dinogutia u 510	Dammata u 744	Delgado c 1101
Currentium caput c 923	Dumo u 16.	Dinogetia u 509	Damoan u 736	Delgumaba u 889
Deorum Currus m 900	Dunbritton u 270.	Dioclea u 493	Damuli m 798	Delitha u 930
Cuſa fl 887	Dundalk u 479	Dionysia inf 554	Dan fl 655, 658. pr 671	Delo c 1107
Cuſco pr u 1093	Dundee u 270	Dionysipolis u 510	Danager u 809	Del Spiritu Santo u 1070
Chyocan u 1076	Dunagal u 279	Dipolis inf 551	Daonas fl 818	Delta pr 853
Cuſar Eleabir u 893	Dungannon u 16.	Dioſteine pr 328	Daphne u 645	Deorum currus m 900
Cygrene inf 931	Dunholm u 255	Dipnoſus fons 553	Daphnis fl 666	Derbici p 16.
Cynphut fl 880	Dunk-Iran u 280	Ditſcaw u 475	Dapiro u 828	Deſconſcidea inf 1080
Cynophanes p 1043	Dunois p 164	Ditſmarch pr 429	Dara fl 741	Deſire port 1102
Cyrbopolis u 1037	Dunſtable u 249	Dium u 534. 541	Darandæ p 747	Deſcenda inf 1118. c 1131
Cyrtis inf 1039	Dunwich u 254	Divodurum u 370	Dardamana u 746	Deyne fl 890
Cyrene pr. u 839	Durance fl 179	Divotro fl 557	Dardania u 607	Diagnitas pr 1003
	Durham u 246.	Dobelein u 468	Dargamans fl 744	Diagnites p 1104
	Duria fl 127	Dobezin pr 476	Daritis pr 734	Don Diego fl 1088
	Durpyaria u 249	Dodona u 535	Dathema u 660	Dimetris c 910
	Durobrivis u 252	Doesburg u 339	Daunia u 832	Diodori inf 929
	Durocorti p 153	Dotecum u 16.	Daxata u 775	Dionysius u 857
	Durphis u 249	Doſtrine m 444	Dea chow u 741	Dios m 880
	Durotriges p 161	Doliche u 540	Debir u 672	Dioſcoridis inf 929
	Durovernum u 16.	Dallaert fl 422	Debrices p 736	Dioſcorium portus u 910
		Dolenci p 548	Decan p. u 809	Diolpolis u 857
		Dolopes p 539	Decapolis pr. 665	Devils inf 961
		Don fl 454. 456	Delanguere m 746	Dhur m. fl 887
		Donawert u 375	Delly pr. u 803	Dobas pr. u 915
		Donghiery u 326	Demerecan u 725	Docono c. u 16.
		Dort u 334	Derbe u 628	Dominica inf 1118
		Dordrechtum u 16.	Derbent u 724	Domingo fl 1107
		Doris p. u 534	Diamma fl 799	St. Domingo inf. u 1121
		Dorobiza u 491	Dian u 824	Dorada p 1094
		Doroſtorum u 510	Diangæ u 823	Draconitis inf 897
		Dornick u 321	Diarbeck pr 710	Dubdu u 891
		Doromond u 358	Diargument pr 747	Ducala p 890
				Dulce f 1081
				Du-

419
Killing

Freistat u	381		Groine u	210	Goritz u	382	Gebah u	674
Freisach u	382		Guadalander fl	227	Gorlitz u	399	Gebala u	645
Friesland West	336		Guadalcanal u	214	Gose fl	415	Gedrolia pr	747
East	422		Guadalquivir fl	212, 213	Goslar u	1b.	Geguamela u	709
Frestad u	377		Guadalupe u	214	Gotha u	408	Gelan u	735
La Frette u	326		Guadarama fl	219	Gothini p	399	Genech pr	606
Friberg u	385		Guadiana fl	200	Gothland p. inf	445, 449	Genella fl	774
Friburg u	374, 407		Guadix u	215	Gothones	446	Genefareth u. l	658, 666
Fridburg u	377		Gualena u	253	Gotenburg u	1b.	Genonia u	746
Fridland u	405		Gualne u	224	Gotorp c	431	Caput Gentis u	719
Frischaffe f	474		St. Guermier u	166	Gorzberg u	408	St. George	669, 767
Frisii pr	336		Guernica u	207	Goude u	334	Georgia pr	722
Mayores p	339		Guernsey inf	188	Grabaw u	411	Castle Gera u	625
Minores p	318		Guetaria u	1b.	Gradiskia u	490	Geranai pr	776
Frisling u	377		Guienne pr	172	Gran u	483	Gerar u	672
Frislar u	418		Guilford u	252	Grandmount u	320	Gerafa u	649, 663
Frisons pr	336		Guipulcoa pr	206	Grandvic f	461	Gergefils p	663, 688
Fucciantia u	553		Guise u	156	Granii p	449	Germanicia u	646
Fuinen inf	433		Guises p	251	Grans u	368	Germanicopolis u	642
Fulda u fl	418		Guistres p	154, 155	Grave u	331	Germanopolis u	603
Fulmina fl	504		Guisors u	158	Graveling u	319	Sari-Germanum u	763
Funium u	490		Guith inf	285	Graven Hague u	335	German	1b.
Furstenburg u	375		Gurdis p	133	Gravosa inf	495	Gerra u	663
			Gymnasia inf	231	Gratz u	381	Gerru p	768
			Gyresfoem u	218	Greece pr	516	Gerrus fl	724
					Greenland inf	439	Gerus fl	763
					Greichs Weissenburg u	483	Gerusa u	767
						356	Gessut pr	662, 664
						390	Gest pr. u	747
						403	Getarra u	724
						331	Geth u	670
						375	Gezer u	648
						403	Gibbethon u	672
						472	Gibeah u	674
						470	Gibeon u	1b.
						339	Gihon fl	695
						429	Gilboa m	659
						393	Gilead m	654
						432	Ramoth u	662
						415	Gilgal u	674
						468	Gilolo inf	829
						408	Gingi u	813
						470	Giscala u	666
						338	Glisca u	723
						476	Goa u	809
						356	Gochatta u	741
						382	Golchonda u	812
						436	Gomorraha u	658
						554	Gonza u	775
						500	Gordici m	719
						474	Gordiene pr	1b.
						484	Gordium u	609
							Gorgos fl	709
							Gorneas u	606
							Gouren pr. u	815
							Gouro u	816
							Goyaam u	740
							Gozalvia u	601
							Gozan fl	734
							Porto Grande u	816
							Granicus fl	610
							Grynai p	769
							Guadarino c	814
							Guenga fl	1b.
							Gueone u	821

The T A B L E.

Gariphi <i>m</i>	878	Guaxaca <i>pr. u</i>	1278	Heldin <i>u</i>	522	Helon <i>u</i>	669
Garunna <i>fl</i>	962	Guaxanato <i>u</i>	1074	Helli <i>p</i>	318	Hem <i>u</i>	647
Gaspe <i>u</i>	953	Guaxarapi <i>p</i>	1104	Hetteild <i>u</i>	418	Hendec <i>u</i>	835
Gaudus <i>inf</i>	897	Guaxocingo <i>u</i>	1178	Heutiden <i>u</i>	334	Hemera <i>u</i>	603
Gaulos <i>inf</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Guaya curoes <i>p</i>	1124	Hexholm <i>u</i>	489	Hemimont <i>p</i>	723
Gaudica <i>inf</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Guayamo <i>m</i>	1124	Heydebur <i>u</i>	457	Hep comete <i>p</i>	602
Gaurus <i>m</i>	911	Guayngaco <i>u l</i>	1704	Heyft <i>u</i>	332	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gayza <i>fl</i>	1108	Guayquil <i>u</i>	1094	Hernice <i>inf</i>	412	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gebbe <i>u</i>	894	Guaybiano <i>u</i>	1104	Hierat <i>inf</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gebelehudic <i>c</i>	890	Guaymuri <i>p</i>	1107	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
St. George <i>fl</i>	951 <i>u</i> 956	Guayra <i>u</i>	1113	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
	<i>c</i> 1102	Guazacoalco <i>pr</i>	1079	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
De Mina <i>u</i>	906	Guber <i>def. p. u</i>	922	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Olanco <i>u</i>	1082	Guevelthan <i>u</i>	1080	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
St. Germans <i>u</i>	1120	Guetaxalta <i>pr</i>	1079	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gerrapolis <i>u</i>	897	Guglia <i>c</i>	924	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Geryonis <i>inf</i>	894	De Bona Guia <i>fl</i>	968	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gevetland <i>u</i>	1080	Guiana <i>p</i>	1109	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gezeir <i>u</i>	886	Guietta <i>inf</i>	897	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gheneoa <i>pr</i>	905	Guinea <i>pr</i>	906	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Ghir <i>def</i>	912	Nova <i>pr</i>	1130	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Giabel <i>u</i>	914	Gulata <i>u</i>	1094	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Giacchi <i>p</i>	922	Guoga <i>l</i>	924	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gilofi <i>p</i>	906	Gurguigarn <i>fl</i>	892	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Ginnamera <i>pr. u</i>	912	Gurngrut <i>fl</i>	10	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gigion <i>m</i>	880	Guxibamba <i>pr</i>	1094	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gillius <i>m</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Guzculan <i>u</i>	1081	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gir <i>fl</i>	900	Guzzula <i>pr. u</i>	888	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gira <i>u</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Gypheris <i>inf</i>	929	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Girgitis <i>m</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Gyplis <i>inf</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Giumba <i>u</i>	893			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Glauconis <i>inf</i>	897			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gleba rubra <i>u</i>	854			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Goguden <i>def</i>	902			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gogia <i>u</i>	916			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Goiamy <i>pr</i>	913			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Goletta <i>fl</i>	883			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Golfo trieto <i>l</i>	1114			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gomadez <i>inf</i>	929			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gomara <i>m</i>	893			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Feletz de Gomerena <i>u</i>	892			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gomero <i>inf</i>	933			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gomeribo <i>u</i>	1111			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Goniatæ <i>p</i>	859			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Good Hape <i>c</i>	924			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Virgo Gordæ <i>inf</i>	1119			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gorgades <i>inf</i>	933			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gorgona <i>inf</i>	1090			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Goshen <i>p</i>	854			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gothan <i>pr</i>	908			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Goza <i>u</i>	897			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Granada <i>u</i>	1083			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
	<i>inf</i> 1117			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Nova <i>pr</i>	1089			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Grande <i>fl</i>	962 <i>u</i> 1103			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
	<i>p</i> 1107			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
De Grat <i>c</i>	951			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gratias de dios <i>u</i>	1082			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gratiosa <i>inf</i>	935			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Greenland <i>pr</i>	1128			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Grijalva <i>f</i>	1077			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guadiabo <i>fl</i>	1120			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guacapa <i>fl</i>	1081			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guadalaira <i>pr</i>	1070			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guadalcanal <i>inf</i>	1130			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guadallanguen <i>u</i>	1101			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guadalupe <i>inf</i>	1119			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guadilharber <i>l</i>	881			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guagaquil <i>fl</i>	1093			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guagere <i>pr</i>	911			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guagyda <i>u</i>	886			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guahabu <i>pr</i>	1111			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guahannani <i>inf</i>	1123			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gualata <i>pr</i>	904			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gualili <i>u</i>	892			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guamanga <i>u</i>	1096			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Gitanahani <i>inf</i>	964			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guancabelica <i>u</i>	1096			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guangara <i>pr</i>	907			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guaniba <i>u</i>	1114			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guanica <i>u</i>	1120			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guanima <i>inf</i>	964			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guanuca <i>pr</i>	1096			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guaranies <i>p</i>	1104			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guardastu <i>c</i>	929			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guarga <i>fl</i>	893			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guargata <i>u</i>	903			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guastecan <i>pr</i>	1073			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guatapori <i>fl</i>	1088			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guatape <i>u</i>	1082			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guatco <i>u</i>	1095			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guapay <i>fl</i>	1104			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guatimala <i>pr</i>	1080, 1081			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602
Guatulco <i>u</i>	1079			Hierat <i>u</i>	418	Heracla <i>u</i>	602

The T A B L E.

Hiera u	881	Iſcha Damioniorum	250	Juhar u	lb.	Inichis u	599	Junna fl	1121
Hiera Bolus u	855	Silurum u	lb.	Juites p	407. 428	Israel p	655	Junonia I	933. 936
Hiero inf	934	Iſchia inf	64	Juitland pr	431	Ilactar p	667	Juries p	1104
Hierax u	856	Ilis fl	248	Juliers u	356	Illedon u	775	Juvaganava I	1101
Higuesy pr	1121	Iſle de Dieu pr	187	Juliacum u	lb.	Illus u	622		
Hippagreta u	882	Iſaudum u	168	Julicum I u	403	Iſtigias u	749		
Hippi c	881	Iſtrad fl	263	Julio Bona u	381	Iſtranus fl	763		
Hipponitis l	lb.	Iſola Roſſa inf	75	Julis u	555	Ira u	671	K.	
Hippo Regius u	883	Iſtria pr	19	Ivois u	326	Itamos u	698		
Hiſpania Nova pr	1072	Cape de Iſtria u	lb.	Juſtiniana prima	510	Iturea p	662	Lib I.	
Transfretana pr	880	Iſuvium u	81	Secunda	506	Ivah u	647		
Hiſpaniola inf	1120	Italy pr	28	Juvavia u	377	Judah pr	672		
Hochelaga u	953	Itchencheſter u	253	Juanagorod u	458	Judaa pr	659. 670	K Alin fl	279
Hoden u	903	Judecha I	102	Iwanoweſero I	456	Julia felix u	641	Kantiani p	249
Holy Port inf	936	Ivernus u	280			Julias u	664	Kemper Corentin u	160
Homar u	893	Juga Aſturum m	201			Juliopolis u	600. 609	Kendal u	254
Hondura pr	1082	Jubalda m	lb.	Lib. III.		Juſtiniana u	602	Kennet fl	253
Good Hope c	924	Juginnium u	81					Kent pr	251
Myos Hormos u	852	Ividot pr	158	Jarroone u	739			Kerry pr	279
Horne c	1130	St. Julian m	71	Jabadin inf	831			Kerton u	252
Huaden u	903	Julia Lybica u	230	Jabeſh Gilead u	663	Lib. IV.		Kildare pr. u	278
Hudſons fretum	950	Julio-magus u	162	Jaboc fl	658	Jacho fl	1121	Kilkenny pr. u	lb.
	1128	Juſtinopolis u	100	Jack-heel u	694	St. Jacobo u	931	Kings County pr	lb.
Hueux fl	968	Juremont p	133	Jaffa u	671	Jacuagnia p	1121	Kingſton on Thames u	
Hungara fl	1082	Jura m	148	Jahzor u	662	Jaen u	1083. 1094		252
Hydras inf	897			Jamboli u	764	Jafferin u	892	Kinfale u	280
Hypadis pleagus	929			Jamena fl	799. 804	Jagge p	922	Kirckwal u	282
				Jamia u	672	St. Jago inf	933. 964	Knockfergus u	279
				Janifapapatan u	834	u 1704, 1079, 1088		Kyle p	271
				Jangoma pr	820	1100, 1114, 1123			
				Janizarie c	624	fl 1090, 1093.			
				Japan inf	825	St. Jago de Arma u	1090	Lib II.	
				Japha u	667	del Eſterio	1104	Kinach fl	382
				Jarmuth u	lb.	de Guyaquil u	1094	Kala u	408
				Jartus fl	770	de Leon u	1114	Kaliſch pr	476
				Jalii p	lb.	de Montanos u	1094	Kallo u	432
				Jafonium m. r	734 748	de Nata u	1086	Kamine fl	460
				Jalques u. c	741	de los Valles u	1074	Karnten p	382
				Jatter u	673	Jaguana u	1121	Kele u	503
				Jathrib u	698	St. James fl	1131	Kelhaim u	393
				Jatrib u	lb.	Jamaica I	1123	Keltorp u	434
				Java inf	831	James u 959. c	1111	Kemberg u	406
				Jaxartes fl	770	Janeiro fl. p	1106	Kempenland pr	330
				Jazyges p	764	January fl. p	lb.	Kempton u	374
				Iberia pr	722	Jaos p	1110	Kerefture u	484
				Iberus fl	lb.	Jarzitha u	900	Kerldbee u	449
				Ibera u	602	Jafculum p	911	Keromenzee u	471
				Icaria inf	627	Java I	1129	Kertominde u	434
				Ichara inf	700	Ichthiophagi p	919	Kethim pr	539
				Ichliafa inf	627	Beni Jerfo u	894	Keykerks u	339
				Ichthyophagi p. S	788	Beni Jeſſeten u	892	Keiſersberg u	368
				Iconium u	617	Ighidi deſert	902	Lautern u	364
				Ida m	607	Iguillinguil u	889	Word u	357
				Idalium u. m	632	Ilda m	888	Kexholm u	459
				Idumea p	677	Ilheos I u	1106	Kiburg u	374
				Jebusites p	680	St. Illeſonſo u 1079 I	1130	Kien inf	469
				Jelleti u	669	Imbians p	921. 924	Kies u	468
				Jelphea u	747	Imizizim u	889	Kimarorubath u	482
				Jehryphagorum S	698	Imperiale u	1101	Kintrick fl	374
				Jericho u	674	Inavis fl	891	Kiovia, or Kiof u 470.	510
				Jether u	673	Les Infantes u	1101	Kiratow u	506
				Jews p	655	Infierno I	935	Kifdy p	500
				Jezreel u	669	Inhaban p	923	Kitagorod c	457
				Heron inf	627	Iniambis fl	1106	Kittim pr	539
				Ilium u	607	Joanna I	931	Klow pr. u	471
				Ilment fl	747	Joguazia p	962	Knyſſim u	473
				Imaus m	596. 716	St. Johan fl	952	Koburg u	389
				India pr	796	St. John I 1120. u	1072	Kokenhauſe u	468
				intra Gangem	798	St. John de Cinalon u		Kolding u	432
				extra	818		1070	Komora inf u	482
				Indicus Oceanus	700	de los Planos u	1089	Koningsberg u 363.	437
				Indo-Scythæ p	800	de Ulloa u	1078		474
				Indus fl	716. 798	Iol u	886	Konengſtal m	364
				Ingermenum u	764	Ionii p	885	Koping u	434
				Ingine pr	711	St. Joſeph u	1112	Koſcien u	476
				Jocabel u	824	Iſabella u	1123	Kotim u	503
				Jogana u	834	Iſidis I	929	Krain pr	382
				Johor pr. u	822	Ilius m	910	Krivicue m	515
				Jokneham u	667	Da las Illas c	1101	Kruſwick u	476
				Jonacapolis u	739	Iſola u	898	Kulph fl	490
				Ionia pr	612	Iſrechea p	842	Kyel u	429
				Joppa u	671	Itange u	1106		
				Jor fl 658. p. u	822	St. Juan fl	1090		
				Jordan fl	658	de Frontera u	1101	Lib. III.	
				minor fl	638	del Oro u	1096	Kadeſh u	666
				Jortam u	832	de Paſto u	1090	Barnea u	694
				Jotopata u	667	de Salinas p	1094	Kaingcheu u	787
				Ipfus u	612	de Victoria u	1096	Kaphartalamia u	669
				Iris fl	598. 604	Jucutan p	1078	Kara Amida u	711
				Iſauria pr. u	620	St. Ives c	1130	Kawoia fl	774
				Iſaurus pr u	lb.	Julia Certa u	884	Kedar pr	692
				Iſopolis u	601	Conſtantia u	894	Kedemeth u	661
				Iſhmaelitæ p	694	Traducta u	893	Kella u	672
				Iſk-tob pr	664	St. Juhan f	1102	Keldan	

Keldan <i>pr</i>	705	Lecloure <i>u</i>	<i>lb.</i>	London Derry <i>u</i>	279	Lauslein <i>u</i>	303	Lubeck <i>u</i>	423
Kenitæ <i>p</i>	694	Le four <i>c</i>	160	Loncaster <i>u</i>	254	Lauterne <i>u</i>	364	Lublin <i>u</i>	476
Kiang <i>fl</i>	785	St. Legier <i>u</i>	183	Longford <i>u</i>	278	Lebadia <i>u</i>	511	Luchemburg <i>u</i>	323
Kirgeffi <i>p</i>	768	Legeris or Loyre <i>fl</i>	148	Longovicius <i>u</i>	254	Leete <i>u</i>	422	Luxemburg <i>u</i>	326
Kir-hafareth <i>u</i>	660	Legio <i>u</i>	209	Longueville <i>u</i>	158	Lechum <i>u</i>	525	Luceora <i>u</i>	471
Kiriathaim <i>u</i>	666	Legio vicefima	Victrix	Loquehalre <i>pr</i>	271	Leck <i>fl</i>	334	Lugdunum Batavorum	327
Shenith Kiriathaim <i>u</i>	660	246. <i>u</i>	249, 250	Lorea <i>u</i>	217	Leccopolis	477	Lutetia	334
Kitay <i>l</i>	766	Legium Lepidi <i>u</i>	122	Lorette <i>u</i>	80	Leell <i>u</i>	337	Lutland <i>u</i>	338
Kianfi <i>p</i>	787	Leicester <i>pr</i>	255	Lorn <i>p</i>	271	Leewarden <i>u</i>	336	Lumagne <i>u</i>	329
Kukares	815	Leighlin <i>u</i>	278	Lot <i>fl</i>	172	Leewards <i>fl</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Luna <i>u</i>	331
		Leith <i>p</i>	270	Lothien <i>pr</i>	270	Leibnitz <i>u</i>	482	Lunden <i>u</i>	320, 435
		Lemanus <i>l</i>	128	Louche <i>fl</i>	184	Leige <i>pr</i>	327	Lunenbergh <i>u</i>	417
		Lemavi <i>p</i>	210	Lough-cough <i>l</i>	277	Leine <i>fl</i>	415	Lunsted <i>u</i>	437
		Lemovices <i>p</i>	171	Loventium <i>u</i>	261	Leiegra <i>pr</i>	522	Lutina <i>pr</i>	399
		Lemster <i>pr</i>	277	Lough Erne <i>l</i>	277	Below <i>u</i>	470	Luten <i>fl</i>	417
		Lennox <i>l</i>	269, <i>p</i>	Lough Foyle <i>l</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Lemburg <i>u</i>	472	Lutra <i>fl</i>	307
		Lentini <i>u</i>	70	St. Loup <i>u</i>	151	Lemiro <i>u</i>	551	Cappua Lutra <i>u</i>	<i>lb.</i>
		St. Leon <i>u</i>	79, <i>cast.</i>	Lourde <i>u</i>	174	Lemgow <i>u</i>	421	Luxemburg <i>pr</i>	326
		Leon <i>pr</i>	209	Loxa <i>u</i>	216	Lemnos <i>inf</i>	550	Luske <i>u</i>	471
		St. Pol de Leon <i>u</i>	160	Louth <i>pr</i>	278	Lenaus <i>inf</i>	557	Lycollonios <i>u</i>	524
		Leontium <i>u</i>	68, 70	St. Luca de Barmeda <i>u</i>	212	Lens <i>u</i>	322	Lycus <i>fl</i>	375
		Lepontia <i>m</i>	125			Leoburgum <i>u</i>	411	Lyet <i>fl</i>	482
		Lerida <i>u</i>	232	Lucania <i>p</i>	63	Leodium <i>p</i>	328	Lylmactia <i>u</i>	540
		Lerina <i>inf</i>	187	Lucania <i>u</i>	61	Leortan <i>u</i>	521		
		Lerigi <i>u</i>	113	Lucern <i>u</i>	134	Leopoli <i>u</i>	311		
		Lerma <i>u</i>	219	Lucca <i>u</i>	111	Lepanto <i>fl</i>	518, 533		
		Lescar <i>u</i>	172	Luciferi forum <i>u</i>	212	Leidam <i>u</i>	334		
		Lefina <i>l</i>	61	Lucopibia <i>u</i>	271	Lerna <i>l</i>	522		
		Lefmore <i>u</i>	280	Lucotefia <i>u</i>	151	Lettenland <i>pr</i>	468		
		Lestoracium <i>u</i>	174	Lucon <i>u</i>	169	Letoa <i>inf</i>	560		
		Lethes <i>fl</i>	222	Lucus Auslurum <i>u</i>	209	Levadia <i>pr</i>	531		
		Letrim <i>m</i>	277, <i>pr.</i>	Ludlow <i>u</i>	263	Leucas <i>u</i>	530		
		Leuco Petra <i>c</i>	64	Lugano <i>pr</i>	135	Leuci <i>p</i>	357, <i>u</i>		
		Leuin <i>fl</i>	270	Lugdunum <i>u</i>	184		557		
		Leuk <i>pr</i>	133	Lugdunensis Prima <i>p</i>	180	Leucolia <i>inf</i>	551		
		Lewis-Burg <i>u</i>	171	Secunda	157	Leuctia <i>u</i>	522, 531		
		Lewis <i>inf</i>	283	Tertia	162	Levoni <i>p</i>	449		
		Levilia <i>inf</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Quarta	150, 164	Ley <i>fl</i>	318		
		Lexovii <i>p</i>	158	Lugudore <i>c</i>	74	Leyden <i>u</i>	334		
		Libnius <i>fl</i>	277	Lulles <i>u</i>	172	Lezina <i>inf.</i>	495		
		Libora <i>u</i>	218	Luna <i>u.</i>	112, 223	Libetris <i>m</i>	541		
		Liburnum <i>u</i>	109	Lunagiana <i>pr</i>	112	Liburnades <i>inf</i>	495		
		Libici <i>p</i>	128	Lundy <i>inf</i>	284	Liburnia <i>pr</i>	489		
		Libouon <i>u</i>	172	Luneburg <i>u</i>	128	Lica <i>fl</i>	473		
		Lichtfield <i>u</i>	255	Luparetha <i>u</i>	60	Lichtal <i>u</i>	391		
		Liddeldale <i>pr</i>	271	Lulignan <i>u</i>	169	Lichteberg <i>u</i>	387		
		Lieran <i>fl</i>	176	Lusitania <i>pr</i>	201	Liebenzel <i>u</i>	391		
		Lift <i>fl</i>	277	Luslon <i>u</i>	169	Liesland <i>pr</i>	467		
		Liga Cadi Dio <i>pr</i>	140	Lutetia <i>u</i>	151	Lignitz <i>u</i>	399		
		Ditture	<i>lb.</i>	Luzark <i>u</i>	150	Lilea <i>u</i>	534		
		Grifa	<i>lb.</i>	Lymen <i>l</i>	284	Lim <i>fl</i>	506		
		Ligni <i>u</i>	153	Lymni <i>l</i>	<i>lb.</i>	Limburg <i>pr</i>	327, <i>u</i>		
		Ligorne <i>u</i>	109			Limens <i>fl</i>	328		
		Liguria <i>pr</i>	113			Limene <i>inf</i>	557		
		Ligustica <i>m</i>	125			Limers <i>u</i>	551		
		Lilybeum <i>c</i>	68			Limford <i>f</i>	358		
		Limachus <i>fl</i>	134			Limoges <i>u</i>	432		
		Limagne <i>fl.</i>	167			Lincopen <i>u</i>	446		
		Limacum <i>fl</i>	99			Lindaw <i>u</i>	373		
		Limerick <i>pr</i>	280			Linges <i>fl</i>	334		
		Limoges <i>u</i>	170			Linghen <i>u</i>	422		
		Limolin <i>pr</i>	<i>lb.</i>			Linge <i>fl</i>	339		
		Limavi <i>p</i>	210			Linkaw <i>u</i>	470		
		Lincoln <i>p</i>	246, <i>u</i>			Lintz <i>u</i>	360, 381		
		Lindisfaru <i>inf</i>	286			Liothida <i>pr</i>	449		
		Lindum <i>u</i>	249, 271			Lippe <i>fl</i>	356, <i>p</i>		
		Lingones <i>p</i>	152			Liplique <i>u</i>	407		
		Linlithquo <i>u</i>	271			Liv <i>fl</i>	318, 321		
		Lionois <i>p</i>	183			Litonzo <i>fl</i>	382		
		Lions <i>u</i>	<i>lb.</i>			Litta <i>inf</i>	495		
		Lipara <i>inf.</i>	71			Lillus <i>u</i>	493		
		Liris <i>fl</i>	30			L'Isle <i>u</i>	321		
		Lisbon <i>u</i>	223			Litomissel <i>u</i>	395		
		Lisieux <i>u</i>	158			Lituania <i>pr</i>	469		
		Lisse <i>fl</i>	172			Livonia <i>pr</i>	467		
		de Joudain <i>u</i>	174			Lochem <i>u</i>	339		
		en Dodon <i>u</i>	174			Locris <i>pr</i>	533		
		Littleborough <i>u</i>	249			Loduse <i>u</i>	446		
		Lixentes <i>fl</i>	166			Lon <i>fl</i>	385		
		Llanes <i>u</i>	209			Londen <i>u</i>	429		
		Llanvillin <i>u</i>	261			Londenbergh <i>u</i>	431		
		Lobregat <i>fl</i>	228			Longi-diduni <i>u</i>	404		
		Locarna <i>u</i>	136			Nani <i>u</i>	<i>lb.</i>		
		Loches <i>u</i>	162			Longobardi <i>p</i>	412		
		Lockmannier <i>m</i>	140			Loni <i>u</i>	329		
		Loeris <i>u</i>	63			Lootz <i>u</i>	328		
		Lodi <i>u</i>	118			Lorrain <i>pr</i>	369		
		Logia <i>l</i>	277			Los <i>inf</i>	555		
		Logronno <i>u</i>	204			Losinger <i>u</i>	448		
		Loir <i>fl</i>	148			Lotharingia <i>pr</i>	369		
		Lombardy <i>pr</i>	117			Louburg <i>u</i>	411		
		Lombes <i>u</i>	174			Louvaine <i>u</i>	331		
		London <i>u</i>	247			Louch <i>fl</i>	368		
		Lon <i>fl</i>	254			Lozara <i>u</i>	473		
						Lubben <i>u</i>	399		

The T A B L E

Lycæonia p	617		Media pr	278	Mont Alcinou u	109	Marcedurum u	356
Lycia p	616	M.	Medilino u	214	Argentorati prom	11	Marcomanni p	384. 398
Lycus fl	598. 631. 709		Medina u	285	Argis u	151	Mariboane u	434
Lydda u	669	Lib. I.	Carli u	218	St. Aubin C	188	Marienbourg u	323. 474
Lydia p	613		Sidoniu u	212	Brison u	166	Marienwerder u	42
Lyrnellus u	607		Mediolanum u	118. 171	Dedion u	153. 155	Marisch fl	498
Lyfennia u	619			261	St. Deliderii u	1b.	Mariza fl	546
Lystra u	617		Medoc pr	172	Montereau u	1b.	Mark p	357. fl 381
			Meduacus major & minor	fl 97	Montfaleon u	12. 168	Marmora inf	550
					Montfelle p	79	Marobodurum u	395
Lib. IV.			Meduana u	163	Montferrat u	167	Maron Campi u	484
Laboradora p	951		Medulli p	128	ferrat p	123	Marous Zeck pr	5
Lacca p	915		Medway fl	240	Monfort u	164	Marpurg u	418
Laccari u	914		Megarid u	69	Montgibul m	68	Marquillatus Imperii p	351
Laccus l	853. 858		Meinfield u	141	Montgomery pr	263	Marshow u	473
Lacomedis inf	858		Meine u	179	Monthault u	173	Marli p	429
Los Ladrones l	1117		Meisac u	170	Monticella u	122	Marligni p	399
Laganici p	860		Meldi p	153	Montleherry u	151	Marlpurg u	382
Lagartos fl	1086		Mellortæ inf	110	Montmelian u	129	Marstrand u	437
Laguna u	1115		Melodunum u	151	Montmorency pr	151	Marta fl	370
Lagunilla u	1097. 1104		Melun u	1b.	Montonous fl	76	Martane fl	1b.
Lamanay l	1080		Menai fl	263	Mont Orgueil cast	188	Martenburg u	325
Lampedosa l	897		Menapia u. p	280	Montpellier u	176 pr 230	Martenwald u	376
Lampedusay l	1b.		Menavia inf	283	Montpenier u	167	Martiana u	351
Languelongi p	927		Menaw inf	1b.	Montpuciane u	108	St. Martin's Dike u	336
Lanferotti l	933		Menew u	261	Montreal u	113. 204	Marville p	326
La Parilla p	1095		Mendip m	239	Montriville u	155	Marulus fl	498
Laques del Oro c	968		Mendrisio pr	135	Montico u	207	Masch u	490
Larace u	893		Menteith pr	271	Montfeguer u	172	Masf-munster u	368
Larissa u	1b.		Mercaria u	120	Montferrata m	229	Masovia pr	473
Larunefia l	897		Mercia pr	255	Moregeau u	174	Matapan c	522
St. Lawrence l	930. 952		Merida u	214	Moret u	151. 174	Mutiaci p	318. 336
St. Lorenzo u	1107		Merindol u	179	Morgetes p	68	Matzan m	485
Laxus u	894		Merioneth pr	263	Morini p	155	Mawheuge u	323
Lelanda l	927		Mereville u	170	Moriton u	159	St. Maure inf. u. c	536
Leluda fl	920		Mernis p	271	Morlais u	160	Maxima Sequanorum p	316
Lempas fl	1081		Mellina inf. u	67, 68. 71	Mortreal u	70	Mazai p	496
Lempta def	902		Mellapia pr	62	Mortaigne u	159	Mecklenburg pr. u	404
De Sierra Leona c	904		Metaurus fl	79	Morvedre u	228	Medemlick u	335
De los Leones port	1102		Meth pr	277	Molon u	232	Medielus u	500
Leon u	1082. 1096. 1114		Methaucum inf	101	Mounster pr	279	Medwith u	1b.
Leptis magna u	881		Metremo fl	79	Mown pr	1b.	Mediomatrices p	370
Lethe fl	859		St. Michael's inf	224	Muliades fl	222	Medon u	493. 520
Lethon fl	1b.		Middlesex pr	249	Muhio fl	80	Megalopolis u	521
St. Lewis u	953. 1071		Milafe u	71	Munda u	215	Megarid pr u	530
	1108		Milefino u	114	Munow fl	263	Megra pr. u	1b.
Libia pr l	900		Milford u	265	Mur Murus u	140	Meillen p. u	407
deferta p	902		Millan p. u	118	Muralia u	217	Melana inf	496
interior p	899		Millar fl	227	Murat u	167	Melapus m	545
Libyægyptii p	859		Milly u	151	Marcia pr	217	Melas fl	1b.
Libyæ Phœnices p	885		Millengen u	134	Murgis u	216	Meldorp u	419
Libyarchæ p	859		Minus fl	201. 210	Murian inf	101	Meler fl	444. l 448
Lybicum mare	857		Minorca inf u	230	Murrey pr	271	Melida inf	496
Lygeris fl	962		Minturni u	57	Matina u	122	Melipotamos fl	557
Ligua	1100		Miramont u	170			Melilla u	524
Lima p	1094		Miranda u	223	Lib. II.		Mellum u	423
Linxamo l	858		Mirande u	173	Macaronefus inf	555	Mellos inf	554
El Leon u	1070		Mirandul u	122	Macedonia p	539. 541	Mellingen u	418
Ham Lilhan u	892		Mirapente u	173	Salutaris p	538	Melving u	474
Lix fl	893		Mirepoix u	1b.	Machlin pr u	332	Memel fl	467. u 474
Lixa u	1b.		Milenus u	58	St. Macor u	558	Memmingen u	374
Loanda l	927		Minerus fl	120	Macris inf	551	Menapii p	318. 339
Loango p	1b.		Moandus fl	279	Macronisco inf	555	Menebria u	510
Lobos l	935. 1093. c 1075		Modena u	121	Macropolis u	510	Mengerickhufe u	418
Loiola u	1094		Modona fl	278	Mædara m	557	Mentz pr. u	362
Lon m	919		Modoceum u	118	Mænus fl	351. 363. 387	Meran u	385
New London u	1104		Moia u	204	Meli p	557	Merheren pr	398
De Lopes Gonzales m	904		Molfette u	62	Melianus s	437	Merellus u	542
Lorenzo fl	1130		Molina u	220	Maes fl	318	Merks fl	331
Lose fl	936		Molinga u	278	Marfecke u	328	Meroden u	356
Lothophagites l	897		Molins u	166	Mästricht u	331	Mersburg u	407
Lôxa u	1094		Molon fl	168	Magdeburg pr u	411	Merspurg u	373
Loza fl	925		Momblane u	229	Magiore mare	549	Mesembria u	510
Luanga fl	932		Mombrum u	181	Maine fl	385 387	Mesenia pr. u	520
Lucach p	1139		Mona, Monabia inf	283	Malchow u	405	Mestho fl	545
Lucaios l	964		Momonio pr	279	Malea c	521	Meranilla p	484
St. Lucas c	968.		Mona pr	71	Maliacus s	540	Methon u	520
Luccus fl	893.		Monaco u	113	Malk u	383	Metz pr	369
St. Lucies l	933. 1119.		Monaghan pr	278	Malmoge u	435	Meuse fl	1b.
Ludin p	908		Moncada u	229	Malo c	555	Meydenburg u	411
Ludog fl	883		Monceaux u	153	Malvelia u	522	St Michael u	462
Lugo de nuestra señora	1114.		Moncolibre inf	230	Malvisin u	558	Michlow pr	474
	1114.		Mondego fl	222	Mandras u	1b.	Micole inf	555
St. Luke's u	953. 1071.		Mondeni u	127	Manheim u	364. 193	Miconus inf	1b.
	969.		St. Monhaud u	156	Mansfelt pr u	410	Middelfar u	434
Lunæ montes	920		Monkehester u	254	Mantegna u	521	Midleburg u	335. 363
Aquæ Lunda c	926		Monmouth pr. u	263	Mantinea u	1b.	St. Miel u	370
Lungisari u	859		Monoeda inf	283	Marathon u	527	Miellaw pr	471
Luyfla fl. u	1120		Monopolis u	61	Marback u	390	Milberg u	391
St. Luzia u	1115		Monseguer u	172	Marche pr	358	Miletum u	557
Lybici m	853.		Monspepulanus u	176	Marke pr	358. fl 381	Millenbach u	500
Lybia p	857. 858.		Regis u	174	Marcianopolis u	510	Milo inf. u	554
			Montaigne u	166				
			Montalkan u	171				

The T A B L E.

Milopotamo u	558	Maces c	742	Mafoni p	693	Mologene p	771	Mordoc	771
Minden u	421	Machernus u	661	Mafopelle u	799	Moltan u	811	Mordoc	771
Minca u	557	Machian inf	829	Maforum pr	631	Moluccoes inf	828	Mordoc	771
Minoa inf	554	Machin pr	823	Maffada u	613	Monogastium u	799	Mordoc	771
Minsko pr	470	Macir inf	829	Maffagetes p	748	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mirabello u	558	Macris inf	627	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mirecour u	370	Macrones p	723	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Misceneck u	461	Macuti u	664	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Misnia pr	407	Madabat u	817	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mittaw u	468	Madai u	734	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mlawa u	476	Madoc frez	699	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mockern u	411	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Modrish u	490	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moeln u	411	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moenland inf	434	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mæotis pal	503	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mogus fl	363	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moganus fl	16	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moguntiacum u	16	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moldavia pr	502	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Molneck u	395	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moloffia pr	536	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Molycrea u	533	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mona inf	469	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Monachium u	376	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moncastrum u	503	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Monheim u	393	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mons Regius u	363	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Montmedi u	366	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Montbelgard pr. u	368	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Montrenes p	357	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
De Monte iacro f	541	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Montfort u	343	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mont Gerard u	321	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mons u	323	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moravia pr	398	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Morava fl	398	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Morea pr	519	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mordevit Tartars	461	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Morini p	321	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Morlee pr	432	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mors-munster u	368	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Morville u	326	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Morus fl	510	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mofa fl	369	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mofaiski p u	458	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mofco u. fl	457	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mofelle fl	351	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mofophia u	527	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mospach u	364	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mofch u	490	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
La Mothe u	370	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mouchant u	321	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mountabor u	426	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moufeturne cist	363	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Moufon u	326	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Muers pr. u	356	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Muerte fl	369	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Multravius fl	395	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mulhaufen u	368	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mulheim u	357	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mulhuifen u	408	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mulmberg u	474	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mulsberg u	407	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Munchen u	376	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mund inf	434	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Munderpe u	439	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Munfter u	420	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Munfterberg u	399	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Munfter Eyphel u	356	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mur fl	381	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Murgo inf	555	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Murfa u	483	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mufcovia pr	457	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mufcek u	328	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mufun-Court u	329	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mycenæ u	524	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mygdonia p	541	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Myrina u	551	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Myrmansby mare	438	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Myrmidones p	539	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Myrmidonia inf	553	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mytia pr	506	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
inferior	509	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Lib. III.									
Maachah pr	635.	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Maarlæres fl	705	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macao u	787	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macaria u	624.	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macaria u	630	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mocaffas inf u	83	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Lib. IV.									
Macadacur u	556	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macaria inf	929	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macarmede u	891	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macaturæ p	860	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macurebi p	887	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Machini p	885	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Machomette u	882	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macrobi p	911	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Macureos pr	1111	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Madagafcar inf	930	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Madaminam inf	1118	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Madura u	884	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Madera inf	935	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Medethubada m	878	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Madrigal u	1090	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Madutus u	884	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Magaduza u	916	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Magdalen fl	1087	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Magellanica p	1101	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Maggio inf	933.	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Maio I	933	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Magnice m	922	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Magnus f	919	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Magnana p	1121	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Magorum I	929	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mabmora u	891	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Major fl	885	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Makannow u	1115	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malachath u	904	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malacca u	1794	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malambo pr	1088	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malao u	911	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malchubii p	887	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malctun p	1129	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malitones p	962	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Maltha inf. u	897	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malva p	878.	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Malutha fl	16	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mampfarus M	878	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mandininam I	1118	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mandinga pr	906	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mandrus m	900	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mangiano fl	922	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Manhartes fl	957	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Manicongo pr	920	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Manoa u	1110	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mantinio I	1118	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Mantu u	1094	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Maquille u	892	Madura u	799	Maffa p	772	Mongul p	779	Mordoc	771
Y y y y y y									

The T A B L E.

Messa u	888	Neara fl	81	Nemea u	524	Namechia u	724	Negro's p	906
Mesurata u	881	Nebbia u	115	Nemetes p	365. 369	Nanchang u	787	Rio de Neives fl	962
Mesyrus inf	897	Negro fl	81	Neocaſtion u	550	Nanigeri p	834	Neveri fl	1114
Metagonitæ p. c	887	Nemauium u	176	Neomagus u	365	Nauquin u	787	Newfoundland p	951
Mette u	915	Nemours u	151	Nericia p	449	Napai p	764	Newport u	954
Mexicaltzingo u	1076	Neomagus u	249	Neritos u	536	Napththara fl	658	Nexapa pr	1079
Mexicana p	1075	Neptunum u	82	Nertereates p	408	Naphthali p	665	Neiba fl	1121
Nova p	1071	Nerac u	275	Nervu p	318	Naragonus fl	799	Neyva-tioya u	114
Mexico u 1075. f	1073	Nereum c	211	Nellum u	506	Narlinga p 812. u	813	Nicaragua fl	1082
Mezemme u	894	Nestes u	174	Nellus fl	545	Natuana u	736	Nicaus u	884
St. Michael u 1070. 1074		Nevers u	165	Netherlands p	315	Nativau u	16.	Nicayagua fl	1121
1081. 1089. 1094. 1104		Neury fl	278	Newborg conj	434	Nathaniel u	660	Nicola u	1083
1114. c 968. f 1086		Neorus fl	16.	Newburg u	393	Natolia p	597	St. Nicholas inf	933
Michius u	857	Neuidum u	129	Newhewfol u	182	Natoroth u	662	1130. c 1121	
Mina u	906	Neustria pr	159	Newkirk u	429	Nava Claudiopolis u	603	Nicopolis u	856
Miraflores u	1094	Newark on Trent u	249	Newmarckt	382	Naugrocot m	716	Nievades m	1. 88
Misque u	1097	Newburg u	284	Newnburg u	390	Naulibis u	745	Nieves fl. inf 962. 1119	
Misraim p	860	Newcastle u	261	Newport u	320	Naymans p	779	Niflis fl	857
Misteca p	1079	Newhaven u	158	Newslide u	381	Nazareth u	667	Niger fl	920. 904
Mitla fl	1075	Newport u	285	Newfol u	182	Nazianzum u	605	Nigra u	16.
Mnemium c	910	Newton u	16.	Newflat u	364. 381	Neapolis u	722	Nigitimi p	885
Mohenhemage p	922	Nicastro u	64	Nyborch u	434	Nebo m	659. 661	Nigitæ p	909. 903
Moeris l	853. 857	Nicea u	127	Nibourg u	16.	Negapatan u	813	Nigitis pr l	900
Moghincats fl	921	Nicosia u	71	Nicalidi u	542	Negara u	698	Nigro fl	1077
Mohelia inf	931	Niddefdale pr	271	Niclasberg u	398	Negariot u	815	Nigua fl	1121
Mollium inf	897	Niebla u	223	St. Nicholas u 370. f	461	Neicheia u	599	Nidopolis u	857
Mombaza p. u	921	Nigie pellice u	171	Nicopen u	432. 448	Nelaxa u	663	Nilus fl	852. 920
Mombra p	920	Nintius fl	120	Nicopolis u 510. 536.	546	Neo-Cæſaria u	601	Nivaria inf	933
Mona inf	1120	Nirton l	269	Nictia inf	554	Neogilla f	698	Nizao fl	1121
Monetta inf	16.	Nismes u	176	Nid fl	476	Nera u	828	Nochor fl	894
Monica inf	16.	Nivernois p	165	Nider fl	438	Nerian d u	808	Noius fl	900
Monodactylus m	920	Nivernium u	16.	Nidrosia u	438	Neronia u	665	Nomades p	884
Monoemug pr	922	Nies pr	133	Nidrosia u	16.	Nerra inf	828	Nombre de Dios u	1071
Monomotapa pr	16.	Nizze p. u	127	Niemen fl	467	Netherby u	808	1086	
Monpater u	1115	Nocera u	81	Niepe u	317	Nethinims p	674	de Jeſus u	1103
Montagnets p	954	Nogent le Retrou u	158	Nieper fl	457	Nibon u	830	Nordt River	957. 967
Montferrat inf	1119	Noironde u	166	Nielle u. fl	399	Nicæa u	599. 800	Noranha inf	1107
Port au Monton u	953	Nola u	58. 114	Niefter fl	467	Nicator m	710	Norumbegue fl 952. pr. u	
Monzabo p.	920	Nontron u	170	Nigebol u	510	Niceria inf	627	954	
Mophi rubes	857	Norba Cæſaria u	214	Niger fl	545	Nicomedia p	598	Noticomu c	910
Mopox u	1088	Norfolk pr	246	Nimmegen u	338	Nicopolis u	606. 622	Novum oppidum u	886
Morata u	1104	Normandy pr	157	Nirli fl	306	Nicolia pr. u	632	Nubæ palus l	907
Morequito u	1112	North Elham u	254	Nirfa fl. u	506	Nieper fl	762	Nubia l 900. pr 907	
Morefhigo u	1111	Hampton pr 246.	249	Nitus fl	518	Nigama u	799	Nubiba fl	1121
Morocco p 888. u	889	Humberland pr 16.	16.	Nitria u	482	Nigaxa u	748	Nuchaida u	891
Morumba u	927	Norwich pr 248.	254	Nivelle u	331	Nihulhan pr	778	Nueſtra ſennora p	968
Mofambique p. u	921	Nottingham pr 246.	255	Nivelia u	360	Nilus fl	705	1101. l. u 1114	
Mofchi m	919	Noto p. u	69. 70	Nogar fl	473	Ninguiven u	787	Numidia p	884. 900
Mofylon u. c	910	Novantes p	271	Nona u	594	Nimphaæ inf	628	Nuſconcus u	956
Moxino port	1114	Novara u	118	Nonuen u	317	Ninive u	710	Nuts inf	957
Moyemon u	1111	Novempopulonia pr	172	Norderborg u	434	Niphates m	719		
Mucheras fl 1070. inf 1080		Noviodunum u 129.	156	Norden u	422	Niſa u	668		
Mulatto's p	1103	Noyors u	185	Nordenburg u 459.	474	Niſai p	745		
Mulucha fl	878	Noyon u	156	Nordlundi p	437	Niſibus u	712. 745		
Molufo fl	892	Nuceria u	59. 81	Noreia u	382	Niſla u	748		
Mundi u 911. inf 929		Numantia u	219	Noricia p	382. 447	Nitra u	779		
Munia u	856	Nun u	129	NoricumMediterraneum		Niuche pr	778		
Munſor u	891	Nurfia p. u	81	* pr 380. 490		Nixaria u	601		
Mafcamunge u	959			Ripenſe pr	380	Nob u	674		
Muſi p	1089			Noricum u	393	Noiacenſes p	768		
Mundus alter & idem				Norimberga u	16.	Nomades p	769		
				Norlingen u	374	Nora u	799		
				Normault u	317	Noroſus m	770		
				Northern Sea	438	Noſigue u	799		
				Northgoia pr	393	Notium c	786		
				North-huiſen u	408	Nuraquimere u	806		
				North-Schawben pr	374	Nymphas u	788		
				Norway R	417	Nyſa u	799		
				Novarino u	520	Nyſea u	748		
				Noveharde u	505	Nyſſa u	605		
				Novograd u	506				
				Noveliu u	360				
				Novigrad u	590				
				Noviomagus u	338				
				Novogord p u 458.	460				
				Novogrod p. u	16.				
				Nuremberg u	389. 393				
				Nuys u	360				
				Nyſſat u	434				
						</			

The T A B L E.

Oribuela u	227	Orbay pr	1b.	Orixa pr	1b.	Panormus u	70	Portland pr	1b.	
Orius u	211	Orbelus m	545	Ormu. inf u	742	Pap-Castle u	251	Pouilly u	151	
Orleanoyse p	164	Orchemus u	536	Orodii m	798.	Papia u	158	St. Pol de Leon u	165	
Orleans u	1b.	Orchies u	321	Oromandus u	606	Parente u	153	Pola u	100	
Orne fl	157	Orchomenus u	531	Orontes fl	638.	Paris u	151	Poleine p	77	
Orospea m	201.	Orebo u	448		m	734	Patilii p	150	Polygonum p	62
Ortegal c	211	Orestria u	521	Orosana u	775	Parmia u	122	Pelagiu u	186	
Orthes u	172	Orozahow u	472	Orrachian pr	823	Parnietes u	172	Polycastru u	64	
Ortono u	59	Orsey u	356	Ortholia u	641	Parthenope u	58	Pomigues m	187	
Ortygia inf	70	Ortygia inf	553	Orthura u	798	Parthois p	153	Pomponius p	282	
Orvietto u	83.	Orum cast	432	Ortolana u	745	Patloria c	68	Pomponius u	24	
Osa fl	1b.	Oscenbridge u	421	Orymagdus fl	621	Patrimonium Petri p	81	Pont del Arch u	158	
Osariano u	123	Oseriates p	484	Osrhoene pr	711	Pau u	173	Pontona u	278	
Osca u	232	Osero inf	495	Ostacay u	827	Pavia u	118	Pontsedre u	211	
Ossimi p	160	Osel inf. u	469	Cistacine u	678	St. Paul de Vences u	179	Pontieu pr	155	
Ossonaba u	223	Ostia inf	1b.	Ottomangruch fl	598	Pax Julia u	223	Pontigni u	165	
Ostuna u	212	Osnaburg u	420	Ottorocorus m u	775	Peak m	239	Pontia m	64	
Ostury u	278	Osta fl 473.	m	Oxiana u l	769	Pedeleuco l	81	Pontius Pilate m	136	
Ostia u	83	Ostendorf u	421	Oxus fl	738.	Peira Sancta u	159	Pontoyse u	158	
Terra d' Otranto pr	62	Ostend u	320	Oxydrace pr	770.	Peligni p	59	Pontremuli u	213	
Ottadini p	249	Ostenreick pr	318.	Ozenes u	799	Pelorus c	67	Pontsture u	123	
Ottilana pr	176	Osterberg u	400			Pembroke pr	261	Populonia p	109	
Oviedo pr. u	209	Ostergoe u	336			Pendennis c	253	St. Porcin u	166	
D' Ourlans u	156	Osterholme u	434			Penkridge u	250	Portalegre u	213	
Ouse fl	248	Osterhout pr	331			Penmarch c	160	Port Hercule u	110	
Oxford u	246.	Osterwicke pr	330			Pennocrium u	250	Telamon u	1b.	
Oxilii p	113	Ostholme inf	432			Perch pr	158	Porto u	82	
Oyse fl	158	Ostrezow u	476			Perigort pr	172	Bentonia u	109	
		Ostrich p	381			Perigues u	1b.	Portona u	110	
		Ostrinand p	323			Peronne u	155	Grutac u	100	
		Ostrowitz u	490			Perpignan u	229	Longone u	110	
		Oswitz pr	399			Perpinianum u	1b.	Real u	213	
		Osyli p	462			Pert u	153	Urechio u	115	
		Othingi p	449			Præentis ager	1b.	Portugallia u	222	
		Orthonia u	434			Pertu u	270	Portugallia u	27	
		Othrys m	439			Perugia u	81	Portus Delphinus u	113	
		Otreberg u	474			Perulia u	1b.	Iccius u	14	
		Otterendorp	421			Pescara fl	57	Romatinus u	10	
		Ottaver pr	461			Pesici p	209	Syracusanus u	115	
		Oudenard u	320			Pest u	64	Pollidonia u	64	
		Oudwater u	334			Pesara u	79	Potentia fl	85	
		Ovelgard u	423			Petavium u	98	Povegia u	102	
		Overyssel pr	317			Peturburg u	256	Poville pr	61	
		Ovilabis u	381			St. Peters Port u	188	Piana pr	1b.	
		Ourbo u	448			Petilla u	63	Powisland pr	263	
		Oxenford u	363			Petrogorii p	170	Præcatini u	59	
		Oxholme inf	432			Petuarina u	250	Prænestes u	83	
		Oystinger pr	423			Petula u	120	Prato u	108	
		Ozbelus m	498			Peucetia pr	62	Praye u	224	
		Ozera l	459			Peuplement u	204	Pettigower-berg m	141	
		Ozole p	533			Phanicausa inf	71	Principate pr	59	
						Phanissa u	231	Privernum u	83	
						Phaleria u	107	Prochita inf	64	
						Phintanis inf	75	Provence pr	178	
						Phocenses p	176	Province u	153	
						Philips-Town u	278	Puglia p	59	
						Phicernus fl	61	Monte Pulciano u	158	
						Picardy pr	154	Punta del Gada u	214	
						Picentini p	59	Pureolis u	58	
						Pico inf	224	Pyrenæi m	195	
						Picentes p	80	St. Patricks Purgatory l	277	
						Pictavia p	169			
						Picti p	271			
						Pictones p	169			
						Pied de Port u	204			
						Piemont pr	127			
						Pienza u	109			
						Pierre-Port u	153			
						Pietas Julia u	100			
						Pignerolle u	128			
						Des Pinas c	209			
						Pintia u	219			
						Piomolino u	109			
						Piguigni u	156			
						Pila p u	108			
						Pisaurum u	79			
						Pisica fl	75.			
						Pistatello fl	76			
						Pistoria u	108			
						Pistuerge fl	219			
						Pityodes inf	230			
						Pityusa inf	1b.			
						Pizonia u	108			
						Placentia u	122			
						Placenza u	207			
						Planasie inf	110			
						Plinlimon m	262			
						Plun u	100			
						Plura u	141			
						Plurs u	1b.			
						Plumbino u	109			
						Po fl	97.			
						Podiensis u	177			
						Poictiers u	169			

The TABLE.

Paffaria fl	473	Plendoftoma fl	498	Panda u	769	Pharamica u	678		
Paffaw u	377	Pleurona pr. u	534	Pandarana u	810	Pharan dif.	693		
Paffewang u	308	Pliskow u	458	Pandioni p	800	Pharas pr	736. 739	Lib. IV.	
Patavia u	377	Pliffes fl	407	Paneas pr. u	665	Pharmacia u	601		
Patrae u	519	Plocksko pr. u	476	Panticapeum u	763	Pharphar fl	649	Pachacama u	1095
Patras fl	518	Podlaffia pr	473	Paphia inf 630.	u 631	Phariffan pr	739	Pacificum mare	1117
St. Paul p. u	321	Podolia pr	471	Pathos inf u	631	Phatilis u	617	Pami p	878
Pechora pr. fl. u	459	Pogonock u	382	Paphlagonia pr	603	Phatis fl. u	721. 834	Painters Wives inf	1132
Peeland p	330	Polada u	503	Paracanticene pr	746	Phallum u	722	Palamim fl	1088
Pegæ u	530	Poland p	466. 475	Paradifus pr	705	Phara u	625	Paliurus u	859
Pegafa u	540	Polino inf	555	Paralais u	618	Philadelphia u	614. 649	Pallas l	881
Pegniana curia u	408	Pollen u	383	Parenti p	745	Cæfarea Philippi u	665	Palma inf 937. u	1089
Peirustæ p	496	Poln fl	454	Parapomifus m	716	Philippinae inf	827	Palmas u 1088. inf	1090
Pelafgia pr	521. 541	Polotskie pr	470	Parapomifus pr	745	Phillis fl	598	Palms fl	1073
Pelafgiotis pr	lb.	Poltovoskie u	473	Paras pr	736	Phillium u	601	Pamanuke fl	959
Pella u	lb.	Polyegros inf	555	Paraticene pr	739	Philomenia pr	603	Pampelone u	1089
Pellene u	519	Polyftillo u	545	Paravi p	812	Philiftins p	653. 671	Pan inf	929
Pelion m	539	Pomeriana pr	403	Parchoatras m	746	Phoceæ u	612	Panagra u	904
Pelodes u	536	Pomerella pr	403. 475	Parfar fl	646	Phoclis u	744	Panama pr	1085
Peloponnesus pr	518	Pomesania u	533	Pargyete p	744	Phradag u	743	Panami fl	922
Pence fl	498	Pomortzi p	403	Pariardi m	716	Phrygia major pr	608	Panches p	1090
Peneus fl	518	Pone fl	lb.	Pariedri m	lb.	Minor pr	607	Pango pr. u	927
Peparinthus u	551	Ponsko u	471	Parium u	611	Phryx fl	lb.	Panopolis u	857
Pera u	546	Pons Sarvix u	362	Parni p	748	Phuntan u	692	Pantoia inf	1080
Perinthus u	lb.	Pondsberg u	317	Paro u	831	Phyllitæ p	800	Pantilaria inf. u	897
Permia pr. u	460	Ponta Molon u	370	Paroetes m	744	Pialæ p	776	Panuca pr	962
Pern u	321	Pontico inf	551	Parlana u	745	Pieria m. pr	638. 647	Panuco pr	1073
Pernow u	468	Ponticum mare	549	Parfiræ p	743	S. Pifano c	630	Papagaio fl	1075
Perfant fl	403	Pontus pr	510	Parlis u	lb.	Pigrine u	626	Papantla pr	lb.
Perftalaw u	510	Populear fl	557	Partangale u	810	Pilæ c	630	Para fl. pr	1118
Perftaba u	lb.	Porphyris inf	555	Parthemius fl	598	Ciliciæ m	596. 621	Paratonium u	858
Peruli p	404	Pofna u	476	Parthia pr	746	Perfidis m	739	Paragoti p	1111
Peft u	484	Posonium u	482	Parthiene pr	lb.	Sarmatiæ m	766	Paraguay fl pr	1103
Petalia pr	542	Potidæa u	542. 545	Parthia pr	lb.	Pilgrims caft	667	Paraiba fl. pr u	1107
Petaline pr	lb.	Potuvolo u	460	Pafacarta u	739	Pinara u	647	Paraito u	1100
Petavia u	381	Pozovia u	458	Pafagada u	lb.	Pirathon u	670	Parana fl	1103
Petaw u	lb.	Pozow u	lb.	Pafagardæ p	741	Piretæ p	800	Parcos u	1096
Petra Alba u	537	Prague u	395	Pafarraca u	739	Pifgah m	659	Paria pr	1113
Petrella u	lb.	Pralobus m	515	Pafafcus fl	763	Pifidia pr	619	Parilla u	1095
Petrocow u	476	Prailaba u	504	Pafini vallum fl	738	Pifon fl	705	Parimen l	1110
Petrowya u	490	Pregel fl	473	Pafitygrif fl	lb.	Pifo-cygris fl	lb.	Paripe u	1107
Petzora pr. fl. u	459	Premiften u	472	Paffaman u	833	Pirane u. fl	612	Parthenium mare	857
Pezechium u	510	Presburg u	482	Paffarva u	832	Pityndra u	799	Pafcu u 929. fl	1069
Pffaffenhofen u	387	Prevalitana pr	538	Patanaw pr. u	815	Pityufa u	611	Pafcuat u	1075
Pfirr u. pr	368	Prevefa u	536	Patangale u	810	Plutaneflus u	619	Pafnugates p	1072
Pforthheim u	391	Prignitz pr. u	399	Patara u	617	Podalia u	617	St. Jazan de Paflo u	1090
Pfrient u	393	Prifden u	506	Parthæne pr	822	Pœduca u	799	Patarabyes p	1072
Pfullendorf u	374	Proconnefus inf	550	Patmos inf	627	Polandas fl	818	Patawomeke fl	959
Phæacia inf	561	Proponticum mare	lb.	Patras u	617	Polemonium pr	601	Pate u	916
Phæacia inf	555	Propontis fretum	lb.	Palura u	821	Poleroone inf	829	Patia u	1090
Phænice u	536	Prope of Flanders pr	320	Pavados u	828	Polindæ p	800	Patinicum fl	853
Pharfalis u	540	Pruck u	381	Pedir u	833	Polybii inf	700	Patecui p	1110
Pharus inf	495	Pruffia pr	473	Pegia pr	606	Polymbothy u.	803	St. Paul u	926. 1106
Phavonæ p	449	Pruth fl	504	Pegu pr. fl. u	823	Polyfanga fl	774. 785	Pavoafan u	932
Phera u	519. 540	Pfalts caft	364	Pelafgia inf	625	Polytimetas pr	770	Pawtunxut fl	lb.
Phialia u	521	Pfiloriti m	557	Pelethi u	669	Pompeyopolis u	603. 763	Payta u	1094
Phile u	527	Pfkow pr. u	458	Pella u	663	Pontus pr	596	De la Paz u 1097.	1115
Phillippe Ville u	323	Pfophis u	521	Pendalium c	630	Cappadocius pr	601	Pearls inf	1087
Philippi u	540	Puente l	449	Panegardo u	813	Galaticus pr	600	Peitra Roffa u	892
Philippolis u	546	Puellach u	390	Pengab pr	801	Polemoniacus pr	601	Pelufiacum fl	853
Philipsberg u	365	Puflozera u	459	Pentalia pr	631	Poolaway inf	829	Pelufium u	854
Philocandros inf	555	Pydna u	541	Pentapolis pr	658. 818	Portæ Cæfpia m	596	Pemba pr	925
Phini p	474	Pydos u	520	Penuel u	662	Caucalia m	596. 725. 766	Pemecke u	959
Phinopolis u	546	Pyrene fons	526	Peor m	lb.	Terreæ caft	725	Pemmaquid u	956
Phiræti p	449	Pyrrhæa pr	541	Pequeno porto u	816	Porto Grande u	816	Pentegonet fl	952
Phlegra pr	542	Pithæum u	lb.	Pequin u	786	Pequeno u	lb.	Penge u	1100
Phocis pr	531	Pythion u	lb.	Perah fl	719	Portofpana u	741	Pennon de veles u	892
Phocula inf	555	Pythia u	531	Perea pr	659	Poffidium inf	629	Pentapolis pr	859
Phrungudiones p	474	Pytho u	lb.	Pergamus u	606	Pracel inf	816	Pepantla pr	1076
Phthyotis pr	541			Perga u	620	Prajanopolis u	611	De les perlas pr	1113
Phullinium u	495			Periano u	807	Præpemiſſus u	lb.	Pernabiaca m	1106
Phundulii p	432			Periades m	719	Pralii p	803	Perorfori m	900
Philace u	541	Lib. III.		Periardges m	lb.	Precopia u	763	Peru pr. fl	1091
Phyfco u	542	Pacatiana pr	609	Perigrinorum caft	667	Preperi u	813	Peruana pr	1084
Piarenzii p	511	Pacom u	833	Perizits p	680	Priamon u	833	Pefcara pr u	901
Picardy Inferior pr	323	Pactolus fl	614	Peripatan u	810	Priapæ u	834	Petatlan fl	1069
Picenlii p	507	Padan Aram pr	635	Perſepolis u	739	Priene u	612	St. Peter fl 1031. u	1082
Pieria pr	541	Pæffa inf	628	Perſia p	736	Prion fl	698	Peublo nuevo u	1097
Pierſchille inf. u	335	Pagnia pr. u	786	Perſicus S 693. 700.	742	Prionotus m	lb.	Pharao u	892
Pigiada u	524	Palæmonium u	601	Perſidis Pilæ m	739	Prom p	819	Phileni villa u	881
Piguricium u	493	Palæpharphos u	631	Perlis pr	lb.	Propontis	597	Philo u	911
Pilfen u	395	Paleſceplis u	611	Pefinus u	609	Propthalia p	743	St. Philip u	964. 1074
Pimple m	541	Paleſtine pr	655	Petra u	694	Proſelinitæ p	603	1086. 1106. 1107	
Pindus m	535	Paleſtina Secunda pr	670	Petræcrum civitas	602	Protoſeline u	611	St. Philip, S. Jacob u	1070
Pinnegue u	461	Palibothra u	799. 803	Pezuari p	800	Prufa u	599	Philippina u	1083
Pinnenberg u	429	Palmoſa inf	627	Phabarena u	603	Pſathis fl	766	Phorca m	878
Piræus u	527	Palmyra u	648	Phænica u	713	Pſellii p	767	Phthia u	858
Piræthi u	506	Palmyrene pr	lb.	Phœnicia pr	638	Pſeudoſtomum fl	798	Pſichuth fl	878
Piſa u	520	Palohan inf	828	Lybanenſis pr	649	Pſitara fl	775	Phut pr	lb.
Pittersdorp u	434	Palo-Zambilan u	821	Maritima pr	lb.	Pſocurum u	834	Phuth fl	887
Pizina fl inf	511	Palura u	799	Syro-Phœnicia pr	lb.	Ptorium u	605	Piaſta fl	1070
Platea u	530	Pamphyliæ pr	619	Pholiga u	712	Ptolemais u	639	Piccinacoli p	1129
Platze l	481	Pan u	678	Phanagoria u	767	Punta Malota c	630	Pichen pr	1111
Pleinfelt u	389	Panarucan u	832	Phara u	694	Pyramus fl	621	Pilabo	

The T A B L E.

Pilabo u	1072		Rheba u	280	Ravenberg pr u	421		
Pilcomayo fl	1103	Lib II	Rhebun u	278	Raventem pr	358		
Pincur u. fl. inf 933	1107		Rhedones p	160	Raveitem u	331		
Piras fl	1088	Quadi p 38. 398	Rhegium u	64	Rauracae p	422	Rabat u	603
Piura u	1094	Quakenburg u	Rhem p	152	Rauraci p	359	Rabbat u	604
De la Plata fl	1085	St. Quaranta u	Rhene fl	110	Rauragnici p	240	Rabul u	605
pr. fl 1103 u	1121	Quedlenburg u	Rhetel u	156	Rejmitz u	350	Rabul u	606
Las Plaias c	968, 969	Quernero f	Rhetice p m	125	Rees u	350	Rabul u	607
Plata u	1097	Querrfort u	Rhetico m	141	Regen fl	357	Rabul u	608
Sebastian de la Plata u	1095	Quiminimo inf	Rhigia u	280	Regensberg	357	Rabul u	609
		Quinque Ecclesia u	Rhogodunum u	250	Regium u	357	Rabul u	610
			Rhobogum p	280	Regimont u	357	Rabul u	611
New Plimouth u	956		Rhodes u	157	Regius mea. u	357	Rabul u	612
Plinthine u	856	Lib III	Rhoine fl	148	Richenbach u	359	Rabul u	613
Pluitania inf	933		Rhodius fl	15	Rempen u	331	Rabul u	614
Point-Antogil u	931	Quamchen pr	Rhutupe u	249	Rensborg u	459	Rabul u	615
Pomata u	1097	Quantung pr	Rialto inf	102	Renty u	357	Rabul u	616
Pompatan fl	1088	Quangfi p	Ribadeo u	211	Rettel u	457	Rabul u	617
Pontia inf	897	Queilin u	Ribchester u	155	Rets u	357	Rabul u	618
Pontonchan u	1080	Queio fl	Rible-Christi u	155	Ruben fl	457	Rabul u	619
Popalana pr. u	1089	Quedoa u	Richien u	162	Reuhon fl	15	Rabul u	620
Porco m	1097	Quiam fl	Rimne u	156	Reudigni p	454	Rabul u	621
Des Porcos fl	1123	Quiantu fl	Rion u	167	Reuthing u	359	Rabul u	622
Porphyrius m	853	Quilare u	Riojay p	254	Rha fl	456	Rabul u	623
Porto de Dio u	954	Quinfay l -8 u	Rippon u	255	Rhati p	351	Rabul u	624
Des Basques	951		Rippon u	255	Razia Prima pr	357	Rabul u	625
Del Principe u	1122		Ritmo fl	150	Secunda pr	376	Rabul u	626
Raffa u	858	Lib IV.	Rivella u	59	Rhatiaria u	506	Rabul u	627
Rico l	1120	Quachimayo pr	Robee fl	157	Rhetopolis u	377	Rabul u	628
Del Riscatto u	954	Quade u	Rhebohlidum u	279	Rhamnus u	527	Rabul u	629
Seguro u	1106	Quade u	Rochelle u	171	Rheems fl	374	Rabul u	630
Sancto inf u	936	Quatrabarris u	Rochester u	252	Rheichenberg u	389	Rabul u	631
Bello u	1086	Quatre Canagas u	Rochfalco u	170	Rheineck u	15	Rabul u	632
Prefenza u	951	Quebecque u	Rochfort pr	151	Rhene fl	317	Rabul u	633
Royal u 953 964 fl	116	Quelenes p	Roch fur yen u	169	Rhenen u	345	Rabul u	634
Trespallez u	951	Quemado f	C. Rodero u	219	Rhetimo pr. u	458	Rabul u	635
Portus Dioscurorum u	910	Querandies p	Roffa u	252	Rhezan pr. u	460	Rabul u	636
		Quevenes p	Rohan u	160	Rhineberg u	360	Rabul u	637
Evangeliorum u	116	Quilca pr	Rome u	83	Rhium c	519	Rabul u	638
Formosus u	951	Quillmanci fl	Romandiola pr	76	Rhizana fl	493	Rabul u	639
Magnus fl	900	Quillpiack u	St. Romberg u	166	Ruine fl	16	Rabul u	640
Perphosius u	116	Quilloa pr 920. u fl	Romons u	182	Rod le Duke u	328	Rabul u	641
Vetus u	1094	Quimbata pr	Romorian u	164	Rhodope m pr	545	Rabul u	642
Possellion inf	969	Quimbeque fl	Roncevallis u	254	Rhodopolis u	510	Rabul u	643
Potamia pr	845	Quinola u	Ronchus fl	76	Richcourt u	357	Rabul u	644
Poteingi fl	1107	Quiloma pr	Ronda u	215	Richus u	454	Rabul u	645
Potoli p u	1097	Quilquoa inf	Rofanna u	63	Rieawald u	356	Rabul u	646
Powhatan fl	959	Quiticui p	Rofas u	229	Riga u	468	Rabul u	647
Prassum c	921	Quito pr. u	Rofcommon pr u	279	Ringlenstein u	421	Rabul u	648
Prima Vista pr	951	Quitones p	Rofu u 271 pr	263	Rintelen u	15	Rabul u	649
Primiro c	1131	Quitlavaca u	Rofillan u	182	Rip Ripen u	432	Rabul u	650
Principis inf	933	Quivira pr	Roflur u	284	Riphari m	456	Rabul u	651
Prionotus m	910	Quixos pr	Rothomagus u	157	Rivalba u	468	Rabul u	652
Prophyrus m	853		Rothlay inf	283	Rochfort u	322	Rabul u	653
Propocampeche m	173		Rotwel u	136	Rotke de Match u	326	Rabul u	654
Profadix p	859	R.	Rouillon pr 230. u	331	Rochte m	457	Rabul u	655
Providence inf	1116	Lib I	Rouen u	157	Rodemberg u	320	Rabul u	656
Pfelcis u	910		Rovigno u	100	Roe fl	356	Rabul u	657
Plitacorum terra	1129		Rovergn pr	157	Roga fl	403	Rabul u	658
Plylli p	955		Roy u	155	Romania pr	545	Rabul u	659
Ptolemeus fl	853		Rubicon fl	76	Roma nova u	547	Rabul u	660
Ptolemais u	857 859		Ruddildale pr	250	Romberville u	370	Rabul u	661
Pterarum u	911 914		Ruel cast	152	Romerwal u	336	Rabul u	662
Puebla de los Angeles u	158		Rudri u	61	Romoso inf	434	Rabul u	663
			Rulla u	140	Rofchild u	433	Rabul u	664
Puebla de los Canoas p	969		Rupella u	171	Rofindale pr	331	Rabul u	665
Puna inf	1094		Rus u	217	Roflock u	455	Rabul u	666
Punta de Lopez Gonzales m	954		Rufimonentis pr	230	Rotelen u	391	Rabul u	667
De Terra Plana c	1102		Ruffino u	16	Rotenberg u	365 389	Rabul u	668
Purene pr	116		Rulle fl	174		410 416	Rabul u	669
Purification u	1075		Ruffin u	283	Rottenby u	435	Rabul u	670
Purzati p	1094		Rutene p.	177	Rotterdam u	334	Rabul u	671
Pyramids	849		Rurand pr	246	Rotwel u	375	Rabul u	672
Pyrrhai p	950		Rutuli p	83	Rouelle fl	321	Rabul u	673
Pythokonnock u	959				Roxalani p	462 472	Rabul u	674
					Rubeacum u	368	Rabul u	675
					Ruer fl	338	Rabul u	676
					Rufac u	368	Rabul u	677
					Rugard cast	434	Rabul u	678
					Rugen inf	404	Rabul u	679
					Rugii p	16	Rabul u	680
					Rugufci p	375	Rabul u	681
					Rupel fl	320	Rabul u	682
					Rupelmund u	16	Rabul u	683
					Ruremond u	338	Rabul u	684
					Rufchow u	457	Rabul u	685
					Ruffia pr	454	Rabul u	686
					Nigra pr	472	Rabul u	687
					Ruffingen pr	423	Rabul u	688
					Ruffow u	457	Rabul u	689
					Rutheni pr	462	Rabul u	690
							Rabul u	691
							Rabul u	692
							Rabul u	693
							Rabul u	694
							Rabul u	695
							Rabul u	696
							Rabul u	697
							Rabul u	698
							Rabul u	699
							Rabul u	700
							Rabul u	701
							Rabul u	702
							Rabul u	703
							Rabul u	704
							Rabul u	705
							Rabul u	706
							Rabul u	707
							Rabul u	708
							Rabul u	709
							Rabul u	710
							Rabul u	711
							Rabul u	712
							Rabul u	713
							Rabul u	714
							Rabul u	715
							Rabul u	716
							Rabul u	717
							Rabul u	718
							Rabul u	719
							Rabul u	720
							Rabul u	721
							Rabul u	722
							Rabul u	723
							Rabul u	724
							Rabul u	725
							Rabul u	726
							Rabul u	727
							Rabul u	728
							Rabul u	729
							Rabul u	730
							Rabul u	731
							Rabul u	732
							Rabul u	733
							Rabul u	734
							Rabul u	735
							Rabul u	736
							Rabul u	737
							Rabul u	738
							Rabul u	739
							Rabul u	740
							Rabul u	741
							Rabul u	742
							Rabul u	743
							Rabul u	744
							Rabul u	745
							Rabul u	746
							Rabul u	747
							Rabul u	748
							Rabul u	749
							Rabul u	750
							Rabul u	751
							Rabul u	752
							Rabul u	753
							Rabul u	754
							Rabul u	755
							Rabul u	756
							Rabul u	757
							Rabul u	758
							Rabul u	759
							Rabul u	760
							Rabul u	761
							Rabul u	762
							Rabul u	763
							Rabul u	764
							Rabul u	765
							Rabul u	766
							Rabul u	767
							Rabul u	768
							Rabul u	769
							Rabul u	770
							Rabul u	771
							Rabul u	772
							Rabul u	773
							Rabul u	774
							Rabul u	775
							Rabul u	776
							Rabul u	777
							Rabul u	778
							Rabul u	779
							Rabul u	780
							Rabul u	781
							Rabul u	782
							Rabul u	783
							Rabul u	784
							Rabul u	785
							Rabul u	786
							Rabul u	787
							Rabul u	788
							Rabul u	789
							Rabul u	790
							Rabul u	791
							Rabul u	792
							Rabul u	793
							Rabul u	794
							Rabul u	795
							Rabul u	796
							Rabul u	797
							Rabul u	798
							Rabul u	799
							Rabul u	800
							R	

The T A B L E.

Realeio u	1083	Mont u	188	Scaful m	283	Solothurn u	136	Salus Carbonatus pr	323
Rebato fl	891	Johnstown	270	Scaffhausen u	136	Solothurn u	136	Salzach fl	377
Redas fl	1087	Julian m	71	Sherland inf	282	Some fl	148	Salutaris pr	344
Redgoose inf	1128	Lawrence m	220	Scilleticus finus	63	Sondrio u	141	Salza fl	381
Rennosa port	951	Legier u	185	Scilly inf	284	Soria u	259	Samandrachi inf. u	550
Los Reyes u	1095	Leon u. cast	70	Scombrarii inf	23	Sorlings inf	284	Sambria pr	474
Port	1101	Loup u	150	Scone u	270	Solway fret 250 fl	267	Sambre fl	323
Rhiobamba u	1094	Lucar de Barameda	212	Scopuli Cyclopum inf	71	Somerfet pr	246	Samelcot u	439
Riblera u	933	Malo u	160	Scotia minor inf	276	Sorbiodunum u	248	Sammin u	448
Costa Rica pr	1082	Marceline u	182	Scotland R	268	Soubterion u	170	Samogiti pr	469
Villa Rica u	1101	Maria u	213	Scultenna fl	76	Soulac u	171	Samonum c	555
Porto Rico I. u	1117	Maries inf	64. 284	Seally u	252	Souldre fl	164	Samothrace inf	550
Del Rio inf	1087	u	224	Seculani p	183	Souri u	168	Samotz Kefelma pr	469
Ney p. Rioya u	1104	Martins u	188	Sedan p	125	Souvine u	166	Sandoe inf	432
Porto del Riscata u	954	Maudits c	253	Sedunum u	133	South-ham; ton pr	245	Samus fl	555
Les troyes Rivieres fl	952	Maurice u	133. 166	Segalauni p	182	Southflex pr	255	Santen u	356
Roakery u	1110	inf	284	Segilla u	71	Soylons u	156	Santa Quaranta u	536
Roca inf	935	Michael inf	224	Segilana u	219	Spain R	196	Santenini inf	555
Rocca inf	1116	Monhaud u	156	Segobriga u	217	Spartimente c	64	Sapai pr	548
Roigneuse port	951	Morits u	133	Segontium u	231	Spey fl	270	Sar fl	362. 369
Ned Roma u	886	Paksi u	204	Segorve u	227	Spoletto u	80	Sapienza inf	521
Roma Nova u	931	Paul de Vences u	179	Segre u	228	Squillacy f	63	Sarbrucken u	362
Rofetta u	856	Peters inf	75	Seguria f	14	Stafford pr	246	Sardica u	546
Rorunda inf	1119	Peters port u	188	Segustani p	166	Stalla u	147	Sardiotæ p	496
Rubicatus fl	878	Hol de Leon u	160	Seile fl	179	Stamford u	249	Sarentine u	455
Rubra Gleba u	854	Porcin u	166	Seine f	148. 184	Steholm inf	254	Sarmatia Europæa pr	462
Rubicatus fl	883	Quintan u	156	Selame inf	284	Sterling pr u	270	Sarmatici m	455
Ruspinum u	882	Reperata u	74	Selgovæ p	271	Storchach u	187	Saromicus f	518
Rubut u	891	Rimberg u	166	Selinus u	68	Stonar u	285	Sarguinus inf	551
Ryfladius m	920	Rombert u	16	Semur u	135	Strombolo inf	71	Savali p	471
		Saviours u	123	Semnonex p	117	Strada Romana m	125	Savarden u	370
		Sebastians u	224	Sena Gallica u	79	Strathern pr	271	Savia fl pr	480
		Severine u	61	Senones p	117. 152	Strathavem pr	16	Sauromate p	462
		Stephens u	166	Sens p. u	16	Sture fl	123	Sauli u	329
		Vas u	123	Senes fl	277	Sublano u	209	Saulin u	325
		Valeries u	158	Senga f	231	Sucion fl u	227. 228	Savus fl	382. 481
		Vincent c	223	Sengala	136	Suitlions p	154	Saxenfelt u	16
		Urbis u	153	Sensli p	180	Suevi p	211	Saxenburgh u	389
		Salafci p	127	Senlis u	150	Suffolk pr	246	Saxenbourg u	406. 409
		Salamanca u	219	Senogalle u	79	Sutle u	58	Scacius fl	557
		Salduba u	232	Sentica u	219	Sulehi u	73	Scatherton u	370
		Salentini p	62	Sentinus f	80	Sulmo u	60	Scagen u	437
		Salerno u	59	Sequana f	148	Sunderland inf	285	Scalavonia pr	474
		Salu pr	125. 179	Sequani p	136	Surrey pr	246	Scaldi fl	318
		Sallinellus fl	57	Secirus f	107	Surus fl	227	Scalhoft u	439
		Salines u	186	Seraval u	223	Susco inf	284	Scambly pr	435
		Salisbury u	248	Serum fl	184	Suse u	128	Scandinavia pr	16
		Sallien pr	133	Sella u	58	Suffex pr	246		
		Salop pr	250	Sella u	58	Sutherland pr	271	Scania pr	16
		Salpe u	61	Seltri u	113	Switzerland pr	134	Scanzia pr	16
		Salfutæ u	229	Selvern fl	240	Sybaris fl 57. u	63	Scara u	446
		Salfus u	16	Seugne fl	171	Sylla rupe	67	Scardona u 495. inf	496
		Salvi u	59	Seuri p	210	Syracusa u	69	Scardonici m	489
		Saluzzes p. u	128	Sex Sexicanum u	215			Scardus m	428. 541
		Samathan u	174	Shanon fl	277			Scarphia u	532
		Samnitæ p	164	Showre fl	16			Schamlat u	420
		Samnites p	59	Shrewsbury u	253			Scanderborg u	432
		Samnium u	16	Sienna p. I	68			Scharp fl	321
		Samona fl	148	Sicilia inf	29. 67			Scheld fl	319. 323
		Samson inf	284	Sider pr	133			Schelnk inf	336
		Sana fl	136	Sienna u	109			Scheyre pr	377
		Sancetre u	168	Sierra Morena	201			Schesburg u	500
		Sandalioris inf	73	Novada m	16			Schin u	437
		Sanguessa u	204	Sigdiles inf	284			Schinusa inf	555
		Sanifera u	230	Sigestorii p	180			Schleffad u	368. 389
		Santa Crux u	225	Signenica u	220			Schlesi pr	398
		Santillana u	209	Signi u	156			Schneberg u	408
		Santome p	171	Silarus fl	57. 64				m 480
		Saragossa u	232	Silinges p	214			Schon u	437
		Saraval u	99	Silliers u	174			Schonen pr	435
		Sarazal u	217	Silline inf	284			Schoonhoven u	334
		Sarca fl	97. 120	Silures inf	16			Schorndorf u	390
		Sardaigne pr	230	Silimum inf	16			Schowen inf	336
		Sardano u	16	Silvanectus p u	150			Schwaben pr	373
		Sardina inf	29. 73	Silvis u	223			Schwas u	382
		Satenaza u	113	Siluris p. inf	261. 284			Schweinfurt u	389
		Sargan u	135	Silus fl	98			Scolleum c	554
		Sark inf	189	Sinnada pr. u	140			Scotari p	406
		Sark u	170	Sintra u	223			Scirtones p	16
		Sarnia inf	188	Sinuessa u	58			Selavi p	396
		Satlina u	76	Sion u. p	133			Slavonia p. pr	459
		Sarte fl	162	Sipontum u	61			Schlys u	320
		Sarum u	253	Sironagus u	249			Scodia u	495
		Sassari u	74	Sitimi u	133			Scombrus m	515
		Savardum u	171	Sevil u	212			Sconhullen u	393
		Saubize u	172	Skye inf	283			Sconri u	520
		Savillan u	128	Slane fl	277			Scopelos inf	551
		Sault fl	152	Slego pr u	279			Scopi u	506
		Saumur u	162	Snowdon u	262			Scordisci p	484
		Savona u	114	Soana u	109			Scetusa u	541
		Savoy pr	127	Soaline fl	148. 184			Scrifinnia pr	448
		Saxole u	77	Sobrarb p. u	204			Scriellon u	364
		Scabificus u	223	Sodoro u	283			Scriflia u	495
				Sologne pr	164			Scupi m	506
								Scutari	

The T A B L E.

Springer

The T A B L E

Transit.

The T A B L E.

Transilvanian p	420	Tanais u	813	St. Thomas u	813	Tacunga u	94	Tharab u	88
Transilvania pr	499	Tanais p	813	Thaoan u	666	Tadonlac u	953	Thibet u	88
Transilvania pr	345	Tanais p	762	Thaoan p	776	Tadonlac u	953	Thibet u	88
Trave p	428	Tanamaca u	834	Thumenenles p	766	Tahira pr	181	Thibet u	88
Travenund u	428	Tanais u	763	Thumenenles p	766	Tagavall p	813	Thibet u	88
Traun p	378	Tandair inf	828	Thyni p	598	Tagles u	889	Thibet u	88
Traunheim u	16	Tangis pr	782	Tibareni p	611	Tairona u	188	Thibet u	88
Treider p	468	Tangu pr u	819	Tiberias u l	667	Tagralla u	555	Thibet u	88
Trelleberg u	435	Tanguth pr	777	Tiberopolis u	619	Taladum p	857	Thibet u	88
Tremonia u	358	Tanru p	778	Tienarinum inf	809	Talavera p	114	Thibet u	88
Trent u	383	Tanium u	653	Tidor inf	829	Tamochala p	169	Thibet u	88
Trescortum u	524	Tanon u	811	Tigado u	743	Tamaraca inf	117	Thibet u	88
Trevers pr 318. u	362	Taphu p	799	Tigranocerta u	726	Tamarind u	93	Thibet u	88
Triballi p	510	Taphu u	763	Tigris p	719	Tameclipa u	174	Thibet u	88
Tribel u	399	Taphros u	16	Tiade pr	818	Tamecler p	956	Thibet u	88
Tribochi p	369	Taporai pr	772	Tilegramocum u	799	Tampice u	114	Thibet u	88
Tribbles u	413	Taprobane inf	834	Timagenis inf	711	Tanaleque u	188	Thibet u	88
Trica u	540	Tapyri p	748	Timocani u	713	Tapepe u	913	Thibet u	88
Tricornitum u	527	Tarichi u. pr	834	Timor inf	828	Tanchipa u	174	Thibet u	88
Tricornelii p	507	Tariana u	739	Tina u. p	799	Tanger u	193	Thibet u	88
Tridentum u	383	Tarichia u	667	Tindis p	15	Tanne u	115	Thibet u	88
Triers pr u	362	Tarnasseri u	813	Tiphon p	638	Tanparamunen u	111	Thibet u	88
Trieffe p	374	Tarlana u	739	Tippura pr	815	Tapeipe u	117	Thibet u	88
Trimontium u	546	Tarlus u	621	Tila u	741	Taquinite u	174	Thibet u	88
Tripolis u	542	Tartar p	779	Tilibe u	663	Taradant u	888	Thibet u	88
Tristolis u	541	Tartaria pr	761	Timolus m	598	Tarapia pr	1097	Thibet u	88
Tritæ u	519	Antiqua pr	779	Tob u	663	Tarentines p	956	Thibet u	88
Trock pr	470	Deserta pr	766	Toi pr	646	Targa desert	922	Thibet u	88
Troglodyte p	511	Procopentis pr	762	Tolibosti p	613	Tarixa u	114	Thibet u	88
Tronheim pr. u	16	Tafale u	818	Tolistobogi p	16	Tarorequi inf	137	Thibet u	88
Trophonium antrum	531	Tavay u	822	Tolius p	631	Tarahumares p	172	Thibet u	88
Trotmanni p	358	Tavium u	603	Tomanis u	723	Tabelbeti p u	92	Thibet u	88
Trulle p	323	Tauri p	762	Toporus m	770	Tebocrit u	866	Thibet u	88
Trunden pr u	438	Taurica Cherfonesus	16	Tola inf. u	827	Techon u	92	Thibet u	88
Truderenburg pr u	339	Tauris u	735	Tolarene pr	719	Tecoantipeque u	177	Thibet u	88
Tubero p	387	Tauro Scythia pr	764	Tou pr	646	Tecpatlan u	108	Thibet u	88
Tubingen p	390	Taurus m	596. 617	Toula inf u	827	Teculeth u	889	Thibet u	88
Tuen inf	432	Tawgebawt u	747	Black Tower	619	Tedles pr	828	Thibet u	88
Tuent pr	338	Taxda u	816	Maiden Tower	598	Tednet u	886	Thibet u	88
Tuentana p	358	Taxiana inf	742	Trabezond u	611	Tedza u	888	Thibet u	88
Tuichberg u	356	Taxiala u	799	Trachonita m p	662	Tefethne u	889	Thibet u	88
Turcia pr	446	Taxilla u	16	Trajanopolis u	617	Teffet u	902	Thibet u	88
Turcones p	351	Taybyncu pr	782	Trajanus p	693	Tegalla u	394	Thibet u	88
Tulla u	460	Teco u	673	Trallis u	615	Tegaza u	903	Thibet u	88
Tullum u	370	Tectofages p	603. 772	Tramopatan u	810	Tegesta pr	963	Thibet u	88
Tungres u	328	Tellis u	723	Trancanor pr. u	811	Tegorain pr. u	901	Thibet u	88
Tupatum u	4	Teleba u	724	Trapano c 630. u	631	Tejent u	888	Thibet u	88
Turcheim u	368	Telmediffa u	644	Trapezus u	601	Teleuline u	885	Thibet u	88
Turcilongi pr	418	Telmefus u	617	Travancor pr u	811	Temelna pr	891	Thibet u	88
Turingia pr	16	Temala p	818	Tremel u	84	Temiano pr	907	Thibet u	88
Turlach u	391	Tenduc pr	779	Tremigen pr	748	Temestian u	1076	Thibet u	88
Turuntus p	456	Tenedos inf u	624	Tremitus u	632	Temnella u	889	Thibet u	88
Tusing inf	434	Tenza pr	827	Trequi Lemale u	834	Tenarisse inf. u	1088	Thibet u	88
Tuxer pr u	101	Teos u	612	Tretos u	698	Tenent u	889	Thibet u	88
Twentzen pr	358	Tetalla u	622	Triala u	723	Teneracost u	891	Thibet u	88
Twische p	418	Terebinth vallis	673	Triarra u	770	Tenezze u	889	Thibet u	88
Tychenberg u	478	Terenate inf	828	Trinachia inf	628	Tenlift p	889	Thibet u	88
Tychopolis u	16	Termessus u	619	Tripolis u	641	Tentyra inf u	857	Thibet u	88
Tycockzyn u	473	Terolli u	830	Troas pr u	617	Teozopotlan u	1079	Thibet u	88
Tydlholm inf	432	Terra Incognita	771	Alexandria u	16	Tepaneca p	1076	Thibet u	88
Tyna inf	553	Sancta	655	Troemi p	613	Tepecluan m	1069	Thibet u	88
Tyris p	467	Tetiao inf	830	Trogni p	16	Tepeique pr	1070	Thibet u	88
Tyrnthia u	524	Tertia u	622	Troglyllum inf u	612	Tepoanes p	172	Thibet u	88
Tyrtia u	541	Terzah u	669	Tropatene pr	734	Terga u	890	Thibet u	88
Tyrol pr u	583	Tetrapolis inf	628	Troy u	607	Telegdelt u	889	Thibet u	88
		Tevela l	678	Trojan u	736	Tetall u	16	Thibet u	88
		Thamnirica u	669	Trulla u	698	Tetlet pr u	901	Thibet u	88
		Tharo inf	700	Tryglyphon u	818	Tetza u	89	Thibet u	88
		Thaygyn cast	779	Turah u	672	Tetapyrgia u	858	Thibet u	88
		Thebes u	669	Turca p	725	Tetuan u	887	Thibet u	88
		Thebet pr. u	779	Turchellin pr	771	Teyeger u	891	Thibet u	88
		Thelbis u	724	Turcoman u	736	Tezcucu u	1076	Thibet u	88
		Thelpitis l	719	Turgana inf	700	Tezurgui u	892	Thibet u	88
		Theman u	692	Tullageta p	725	Tezza u	16	Thibet u	88
		Themiscyra pr. u	600	Tutta pr. u	816	Tezzora u	893	Thibet u	88
		Themnath Chares u	669	Tyana u	615	Thapia u	891	Thibet u	88
		Theodon u	625	Tylus inf	710	Thala m	910	Thibet u	88
		Theodolia u	763	Tyddis u	799	Thalassii p	855	Thibet u	88
		Theodosiopolis u	720	Tyambe pr	767	Thambes m	813	Thibet u	88
		Theophamus p	766	Tyre u	640	Thebais pr	853	Thibet u	88
		Theredon u	708	Tyna inf	700	Thebe pr	16	Thibet u	88
		Therma u	603	Tzinin pr	782	Thata pr	170	Thibet u	88
		Thermodon p	598	Tzor u	640	Thebucha u	884	Thibet u	88
		Therlageta p	767			Themisa u	884	Thibet u	88
		Thilve u	663			Theon-Soterum u	910	Thibet u	88
		Thelis p	766			Thizibi m	880	Thibet u	88
		Thetpia u	720			Thomebamba u	1064	Thibet u	88
		Thiatyra u	614			St. Thomas inf	929. 932	Thibet u	88
		Thibonastus u	818			De Castille u	1082	Thibet u	88
		Thiencu u	787			Thornbay l	951	Thibet u	88
		Thimi p	600			Thuridales inf	929	Thibet u	88
		Thine u	786			Thuburnica u	884	Thibet u	88
		Thobelli p	723			Thumondacana u	914	Thibet u	88
		Thocari p	749					Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
								Thibet u	88
			</						

The T A B L E.

Val de Noro pr	69	Vindocinum u	165	Vermiand pr	447	Vidonis fl	766	Westrasia pr	142
Valence u fl	182	Vinovium u	250	Verodonenses p	370	Vilaflem u	834	Wexford u	278
Valentes p	133	Virgivium mare	279	Veromandui u	326	Villa Nova u	629	Wey fl	252
Valentia pr	227	Virgao u	216	Verma u	449	Vindius m	798	Wheallop cast	250
Valentini p	182	Vironne u	183	Vesalia u	356	Vitra u	713	Withern u	271
Valeria pr	81	Viscaia pr	207	Superior u	362	Vilapore u	809	Wiaton u	168
Valkenburg u	328	Viterbo u	82	Vestigard u	537	Ulai fl	738	Wicciensis u	262
Vallage pr	153	Vitrey u	153	Vetera u	357	Unguen u	786	Willespurg p. u	134
Vallis Olitana	219	Vitrum u	163	Veteravia pr	385	Volanus fl	639	Wilton u	253
Telina pr	141	Viviers u	177	Verzet u	504	Volgo fl	766	Wilts pr	249
Valois pr	150	Ulfie u	166	Vexime u	446	Vologesia u	708	Winchelsey u	16
Valtoline pr	141	Ultonia pr	278	Vexio u	16	Vorn pr	827	Winchester u	253
Vandura u	271	Ulster pr	16	Vianen u	334	Vospero u	763	Wight inf	285
Vannes u	160	Ulyssippo u	223	Viborg u	449	Ur u	712	Windsor u	253
Varanus l	61	Umbri pr	80	Vidina u	506	Us u	664	Windlefores u	16
Varduli p	207	Underwald pr	134	Vidre fl	338	Uz pr	692	Wolds m	239
Varennes Ganat u	166	Vocontii p	182	Vienna u	381			Worcester pr. u	250
Varo fl	179	Vodii p	280	Villach u	382			Wroxeter u	16
Varus fl	113. 127	Der Volgel m	140	Vilenskie u	470				
Vafates p	172	Volca u	249	Villengen u	375				
Vafcones p	203	Volca p	177	Vilna fl. pr. u	470				
Vafconia	16	Volfinius l	107	Vendelici p	374. 376	Vacapa u	967		
Vafon p. u	180	Volfci p	82	Vils fl	390	Vacuata p	887		
Vafle fl	153	Volterra u	108	Vindebona u	381	Valcanes fl	1131		
Vafley u	16	Volontii p	280	Vindis fl	376	Valentia Nova u	1114		
Vauge m	148	Vomanus fl	57	Vindomanæ u	490	Valette u	898		
Ubeda u	209	Urbis u	75. 79	Vinundria u	16	Vallidolid u	1074. 1079		
Uden u	100	Ure fl	248	Virland pr	467		1082. 1094		
Veddis inf	285	Uren pr	134	Viridonenses p	370	Val Paraiso u	1100		
Veda inf	230	Urgel u	229	Virthungi p	390	Valverde pr	1095		
Veientes p	107	Urconium u	250	Vifchore fl	460	Vamba fl	920		
Veit u	82. 107	Uterni p	280	Viftorna fl	16	La Vega u	1121. 1123		
Velauni p	177	Utina u	100	Viftula fl	351	Vela c	1088		
Veles Malaga u	215	Ulcanae inf	71	Vifurgis fl	16	Yelez de Gomenera u	892		
Velibori p	280	Uzarche u	170	Vitebico p	470	Vella u	915		
Velinus l	81			Vites p	407	Veneria u	884		
Velitræ u	83			St. Viti u	382	Fuerte Ventura inf	933		
Vellica u	204			Uladiflaw u	476	Venezuela u 1076. f	1088		
Venafre u	59			Ulandæ inf	449		pr. u 1114		
Venafcine pr	179			Ulcinium u	493	Vera Crux u	1078		
Venafque u	232			Ulm u	375	Veragua pr. fl	1082		
Vencienfes p	180			Ulpianum u	506	Verapaz pr	1080		
Vendofme u	165			Ulpia Trajana u	504	Verbica p	887		
Venelocaffi p	159			Ultrajeftum u	345	Vermiglio f	968		
Veneris Templum c	195			Unixia p	449	Vermeia inf	1080		
Veneti p	160			Unna u	358	Verreina u	1095		
Veneria pr 97. u	102			Una fl	490	Vert c 905. inf	933		
Venicnii p	280			Uobfo u	458	Bona Vifta c	951		
Venieffinus pr	179			Vodena u	541	Vetus Portus u	1094		
Ventimiglio u	114			Vogefius m	351	Victoria u 1079. 1096	1096		
Vent-cafter u	253			Voitland pr	407	St. Vincent inf 933. 1118	1118		
Ventra Belgarum u	249			Voitsperg u	381		pr. u 1106		
Ventones p	220			Volga fl. l	456	Virginia pr	955. 957		
Venofa u	62			Volhinia pr	471	Virginum c	1101		
Venusium u	16			Volocoluc u	458	Viride c 905. inf	933		
Vera u	216			Volodomir u	471	Vitacuchus u	963		
Veragri p	125			Vologda u	457	Ulagium c	890		
Verbanus l	30			Voloy fl	369	St. John de Ulloa u	1078		
Vercelli u	127			Volks pr	458	Ulna fl	1082		
Verdun u	185			Voorne inf	335	Voli pr	887		
Verine fl	150			Voftiza u	519	Volpus m	859		
Vermines p	271			Upland pr	447	Volubilis u	892		
Verneville u	158			Upfal u	16	Upar pr	1088		
Vernelium u	16			Uranopolis u	434	Uraba f	16		
Veromandois p 154. 156	156			Urenberg u	16	Uroqueis p	953		
Verona u	98			Uraftillavia u	399	Ufaletus m	878		
Verulamium u 249	256			Uraftiffaus	16	Ufurgala m	900		
Vefcal u	186			Uredeberg u	422	Utica u	882		
Vefcontio u	16			Urefe u	411	Utopia u	1131		
Vefune u	170			Uriejade u	423	Uxitipa pr	1071		
Vefuni p	59			Ufcudama u	546	Uxoo u	906		
Vefulus m	126			Ufedom inf. u	403	Uzracpalapa u	1076		
Vefuvius m	59			Ufted u	433				
Vezere fl	170			Ufting u	461				
Viane u	204			Utrecht pr. u	345				
Viarzon u	168								
Victoria u	204								
Vidofa fl	207								
Vienna u	181								
Vienne fl 163	169								
Vienenfes pr	181								
Vigila u	61								
Villa Faftini u	249								
Vilain fl	160								
Ville Vova u	223								
Vitiofa u	209								
Villeboir u	170								
Ville Franche u 1. 8	166								
Villeneufe u	175								
Vilumbri p	81								
Vincentia u	97								
Vindelis u	249								
Vinderius u	279								
Vindinum u	163								
		Lib. II.							
		Vacia u	482						
		Vada u	339						
		Vagoth pr	449						
		Valachia pr	503						
		Valachria inf	335						
		Valenciennes u	323						
		Valencourt u	325						
		Valeria pr 480.	490						
		Valersleve u	411						
		Vallenhoven u	338						
		Vallona u	538						
		Valpo u. l	483						
		Vames u	449						
		Vandalia pr	432						
		Vandalis fl	467						
		Vangiones p	365						
		Vardæ p	496						
		Vardari fl	541						
		Varieca fl	492						
		Varini p	400						
		Varna u	510						
		Varta u	449						
		Vafcie u	325						
		Vafera fl	473						
		Vafilkow u	16						
		Vafzow u	472						
		Vaucoleur u	370						
		Vaudemont u	16						
		Vauge m 351.	368						
		Uberlingen u	373						
		Ubii p	360						
		Udden u	449						
		Udenheim u	365						
		Uduarheli p	500						
		Vecht fl	338						
		Vegia inf	495						
		St. Veit u	432						
		Veldentz u	362						
		Velin u	468						
		Veluwe pr	338						
		Vendenis u	506						
		Venedi p	474						
		Venedicus f	433						
		Veneris inf	554						
		Venerus l	373						
		Venlo u	338						
		Ventilia pr	432						
		Ventiffel pr	16						
		Ventza u	536						
		Venuzina u	510						
		Venusium u	500						
		Verden u	416						
		Verdun u	370						
		Vere u	316						
		Verendia pr	446						
				Lib. III.					
				Vallos fl	717				
				Vallum Pafini	738				
				Vardanes fl	766				
				Varfa pr	799				
				Vafada. u	723				
				Vafilica u	625				
				Vafian l	720				
				Vafchlau l	734				
				Udacofpes m	719				
				Udie u	823				
				Venazarari p	809				
				Ventane u	834				
				Vorma pr. u	823				
				Vetezabra u	662				
						Lib. IV.			
						Vacapa u	967		
						Vacuata p	887		
						Valcanes fl	1131		
						Valentia Nova u	1114		
						Valette u	898		
						Vallidolid u	1074. 1079		
							1082. 1094		
						Val Paraiso u	1100		
						Valverde pr	1095		
						Vamba fl	920		
						La Vega u	1121. 1123		
						Vela c	1088		
						Yelez de Gomenera u	892		
						Vella u	915		
						Veneria u	884		
						Fuerte Ventura inf	933		
						Venezuela u 1076. f	1088		
							pr. u 1114		
						Vera Crux u	1078		
						Veragua pr. fl	1082		
						Verapaz pr	1080		
						Verbica p	887		
						Vermiglio f	968		
						Vermeia inf	1080		
						Verreina u	1095		
						Vert c 905. inf	933		
						Bona Vifta c	951		
						Vetus Portus u	1094		
						Victoria u 1079. 1096	1096		
						St. Vincent inf 933. 1118	1118		
							pr. u 1106		
						Virginia pr	955. 957		
						Virginum c	1101		
						Viride c 905. inf	933		

The T A B L E.

Wiathka pr. u	460	White-Bay	951	Yenlade fl	16.	Zabefus u	500	Zephirium c	621
Wiborg u	449	Wia fl	1109	Yeur fl	168	Zacinthus inf	560	Zeugma u	644
Wiborch pr. u	432	Wiapoco fl	16.	Yonne fl	152	Zant inf	560	Ziden u	699
Wichidaw pr	458	Wigcocomoci pr	959	York pr 246	u 248	Zara pr. u 494.	inf 496	Ziga p	767
Wich u	403	u 960		Youghal u	280	Zarmigerhula u	504	Zigana inf	700
Wien u	381	Wikeri p	1111	Your fl	240	Zarnovia u	505	Ziglag u	672
Wieper fl. u	410	Winecaporo m. u	16.	Yssoire u	167	Zator u	399	Z. nchi p	767
Wiert u	331	Womians u	1110	Yuica inf. u	230	Zea inf	554	Zioheni p	758
Wihits u	490	World in the Moon	1132			Zecklar pr	500	Zioph u	673
Die Wilde u	470					Zegedin u	484	Zoar u	16
Wildefhut u	378					Zegna u	494	Zuanchen u	186
Wildshufen u	421					Zell u	274	Zulpha fl	626
Wilini p	400					Zeland inf	335	Del Zur mare	595
Wildung u	418					Zembla nova l	462	Zurium u	722
Willoughbies inf	462					Zenderin u	560	Zychi p	766
Wilstre u. fl	429					Zeng u	490		
Wiltberg u	390					Zerbenic u	560		
Wimpfen u	16.					Zeringen cast	374		
Window fl	142					Zeugma u	500		
Windischland pr	490					Zeukirk u	374		
Windisch-gratz u	16.					Zigeth u	493		
Wineta u	403					Zilachi u	500		
Winheim u	364					Zirickzee u	336		
Winichi p	396					Ziron f	540		
Winili p	546					Zittaw u	399		
Winocksberg u	320					Znaim u	398		
Winsberg u	394					Zogabria u	490		
Winsheim u	389					Zome fl	504		
Wirtenberg pr. u	390					Zoroe inf	434		
Wisbad u	385					Zorza u	504		
Wisby u	449					Zucconia u	503		
Wislicza u	476					Zuider Sea	334		
Wismar u	404					Zuidfen pr	339		
Wittenberg u	406					Zulp u	360		
Witterberg u	418					Zunchi c	521		
Wolfenhaiten u	415					Zutphen u	339		
Wolfenbuttcl u	16.					Zweibrucken u	364		
Wolferidike inf	336					Zwinghe fl	421		
Wolgast u	403								
Wolkonskie u	456								
Wollin inf	403								
Wolmar u	468								
Wolodomir pr. u	461								
Wolfperg u	382								
Worda u	408								
Worms u	365								
Wormse inf	468								
Wormsted u	411								
Worotine pr u	461								
Wortheim u	389								
Wrangen inf	468								
Wrusten u	421								
Wurtzburg pr u	388								
Wurtzgarten m	480								
Wyeregen inf	335								

F I N I S.